

imagePRESS C7000/C6000 Series

SERVICE MANUAL



Canon

DU7-1225-020

MARCH 2008

REV. 2

Application

This manual has been issued by Canon Inc. for qualified persons to learn technical theory, installation, maintenance, and repair of products. This manual covers all localities where the products are sold. For this reason, there may be information in this manual that does not apply to your locality.

Corrections

This manual may contain technical inaccuracies or typographical errors due to improvements or changes in products. When changes occur in applicable products or in the contents of this manual, Canon will release technical information as the need arises. In the event of major changes in the contents of this manual over a long or short period, Canon will issue a new edition of this manual.

The following paragraph does not apply to any countries where such provisions are inconsistent with local law.

Trademarks

The product names and company names used in this manual are the registered trademarks of the individual companies.

Copyright

This manual is copyrighted with all rights reserved. Under the copyright laws, this manual may not be copied, reproduced or translated into another language, in whole or in part, without the written consent of Canon Inc.

COPYRIGHT © 2001 CANON INC.










Printed in Japan

Caution



Use of this manual should be strictly supervised to avoid disclosure of confidential information.

Symbols Used

This documentation uses the following symbols to indicate special information:

Symbol	Description
	Indicates an item of a non-specific nature, possibly classified as Note, Caution, or Warning.
	Indicates an item requiring care to avoid electric shocks.
	Indicates an item requiring care to avoid combustion (fire).
	Indicates an item prohibiting disassembly to avoid electric shocks or problems.
	Indicates an item requiring disconnection of the power plug from the electric outlet.
 Memo	Indicates an item intended to provide notes assisting the understanding of the topic in question.
 REF.	Indicates an item of reference assisting the understanding of the topic in question.
	Provides a description of a service mode.
	Provides a description of the nature of an error indication.

The following rules apply throughout this Service Manual:

1. Each chapter contains sections explaining the purpose of specific functions and the relationship between electrical and mechanical systems with reference to the timing of operation.
In the diagrams,  represents the path of mechanical drive; where a signal name accompanies the symbol, the arrow  indicates the direction of the electric signal.
The expression "turn on the power" means flipping on the power switch, closing the front door, and closing the delivery unit door, which results in supplying the machine with power.
2. In the digital circuits, '1' is used to indicate that the voltage level of a given signal is "High", while '0' is used to indicate "Low". (The voltage value, however, differs from circuit to circuit.) In addition, the asterisk (*) as in "DRMD*" indicates that the DRMD signal goes on when '0'.
In practically all cases, the internal mechanisms of a microprocessor cannot be checked in the field. Therefore, the operations of the microprocessors used in the machines are not discussed: they are explained in terms of from sensors to the input of the DC controller PCB and from the output of the DC controller PCB to the loads.

The descriptions in this Service Manual are subject to change without notice for product improvement or other purposes, and major changes will be communicated in the form of Service Information bulletins.

All service persons are expected to have a good understanding of the contents of this Service Manual and all relevant Service Information bulletins and be able to identify and isolate faults in the machine."

Contents

Chapter 1 Introduction

1.1 System Construction	1- 1
1.1.1 System Configuration of Pickup/Delivery Accessories	1- 1
1.1.2 Communication Method of Pickup/Delivery Accessories	1- 3
1.1.3 System Configuration of Print/Transmission Accessories	1- 4
1.1.4 Function List of Print/Transmission Accessories	1- 5
1.2 Product Specifications	1- 6
1.2.1 Names of Parts	1- 6
1.2.1.1 Station Configuration	1- 6
1.2.1.2 External View	1- 7
1.2.1.3 Internal View/Lever	1- 10
1.2.1.4 Cross Section View	1- 12
1.2.2 Using the Machine	1- 13
1.2.2.1 Power Switch	1- 13
1.2.2.2 Points to Note When Turning OFF the Main Power Switch	1- 13
1.2.2.3 Control Panel	1- 14
1.2.3 User Mode Items	1- 15
1.2.3.1 Common Settings	1- 15
1.2.3.2 Timer Settings	1- 17
1.2.3.3 Adjustment/Cleaning	1- 17
1.2.3.4 Report Settings*2	1- 18
1.2.3.5 System Settings	1- 18
1.2.3.6 Copy Settings*2	1- 21
1.2.3.7 Communications Settings*2	1- 21
1.2.3.8 Mail Box Settings	1- 22
1.2.3.9 Address Book Settings*2	1- 22
1.2.3.10 Device Management Settings	1- 23
1.2.3.11 Limited Functions Mode	1- 27
1.2.4 Safety	1- 28
1.2.4.1 Safety of the Machine's Laser Mechanism	1- 28
1.2.4.2 CDRH Regulation	1- 28
1.2.4.3 Handling the Laser Assembly	1- 29
1.2.4.4 Safety of the Toner	1- 30
1.2.4.5 Points to Note When Handling the Lithium Battery	1- 31
1.2.4.6 Points to note when connecting to IT power distribution system	1- 31
1.2.4.7 Shutting Down the Machine in an Emergency	1- 31
1.2.4.8 Points to note when assembling and disassembling	1- 31
1.2.4.9 Point to Note When Performing Trouble Analysis	1- 32
1.2.5 Product Specifications	1- 33
1.2.5.1 Main Body Specifications	1- 33
1.2.5.2 Main Body Specifications	1- 34
1.2.5.3 Main Body Specifications	1- 35
1.2.6 Function List	1- 36

Contents

1.2.6.1 Printing Speed	1- 36
1.2.6.2 Printing Speed.....	1- 41
1.2.6.3 Printing Speed.....	1- 48
1.2.6.4 Paper Types	1- 52

Chapter 1 Introduction

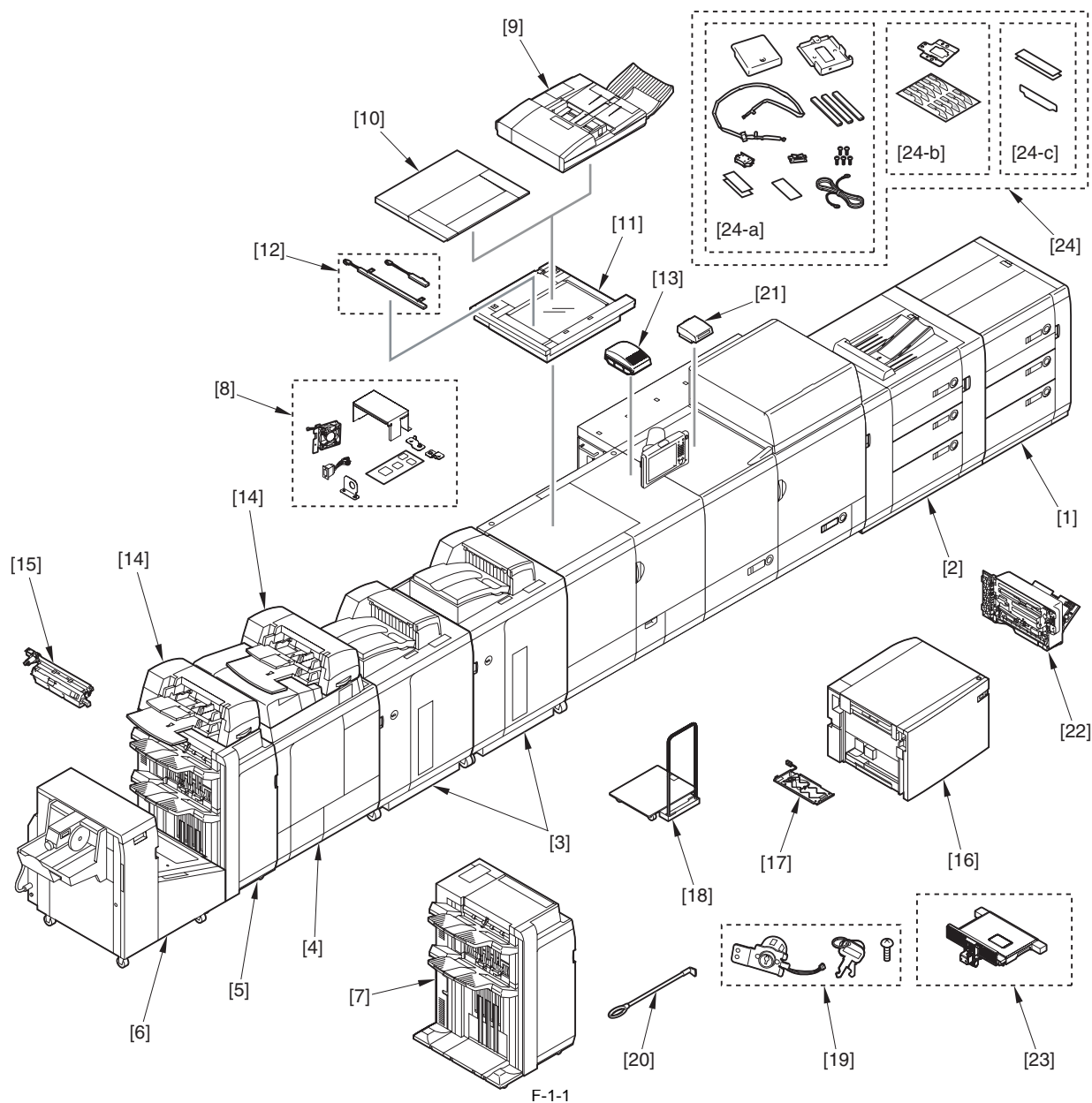
Contents

1.1 System Construction	1-1
1.1.1 System Configuration of Pickup/Delivery Accessories	1-1
1.1.2 Communication Method of Pickup/Delivery Accessories	1-3
1.1.3 System Configuration of Print/Transmission Accessories	1-4
1.1.4 Function List of Print/Transmission Accessories	1-5
1.2 Product Specifications	1-6
1.2.1 Names of Parts	1-6
1.2.1.1 Station Configuration	1-6
1.2.1.2 External View	1-7
1.2.1.3 Internal View/Lever	1-10
1.2.1.4 Cross Section View	1-12
1.2.2 Using the Machine	1-13
1.2.2.1 Power Switch	1-13
1.2.2.2 Points to Note When Turning OFF the Main Power Switch	1-13
1.2.2.3 Control Panel	1-14
1.2.3 User Mode Items	1-15
1.2.3.1 Common Settings	1-15
1.2.3.2 Timer Settings	1-17
1.2.3.3 Adjustment/Cleaning	1-17
1.2.3.4 Report Settings*2	1-18
1.2.3.5 System Settings	1-18
1.2.3.6 Copy Settings*2	1-21
1.2.3.7 Communications Settings*2	1-21
1.2.3.8 Mail Box Settings	1-22
1.2.3.9 Address Book Settings*2	1-22
1.2.3.10 Device Management Settings	1-23
1.2.3.11 Limited Functions Mode	1-27
1.2.4 Safety	1-28
1.2.4.1 Safety of the Machine's Laser Mechanism	1-28
1.2.4.2 CDRH Regulation	1-28
1.2.4.3 Handling the Laser Assembly	1-29
1.2.4.4 Safety of the Toner	1-30
1.2.4.5 Points to Note When Handling the Lithium Battery	1-31
1.2.4.6 Points to note when connecting to IT power distribution system	1-31
1.2.4.7 Shutting Down the Machine in an Emergency	1-31
1.2.4.8 Points to note when assembling and disassembling	1-31
1.2.4.9 Point to Note When Performing Trouble Analysis	1-32
1.2.5 Product Specifications	1-33
1.2.5.1 Main Body Specifications	1-33
1.2.5.2 Main Body Specifications	1-34
1.2.5.3 Main Body Specifications	1-35
1.2.6 Function List	1-36
1.2.6.1 Printing Speed	1-36
1.2.6.2 Printing Speed	1-41
1.2.6.3 Printing Speed	1-48
1.2.6.4 Paper Types	1-52

1.1 System Construction

1.1.1 System Configuration of Pickup/Delivery Accessories

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000



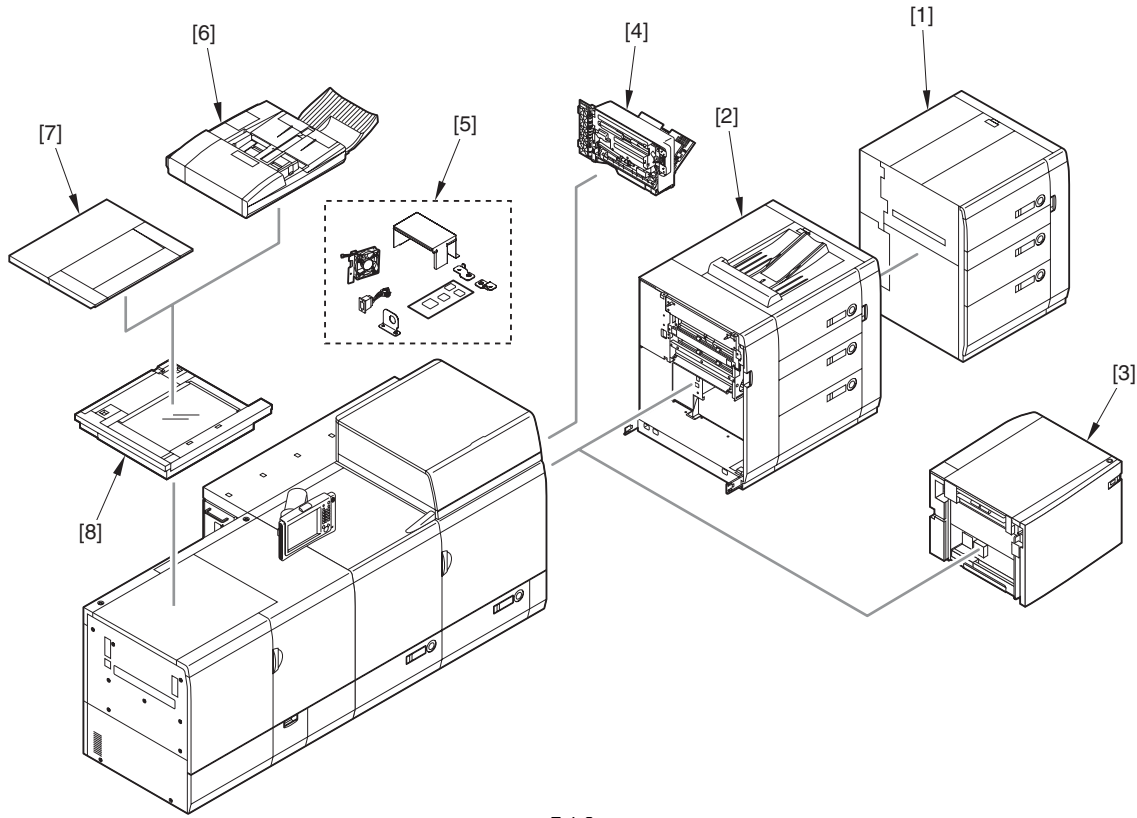
F-1-1

- | | | | |
|--------|-------------------------------|--------|------------------------------------|
| [1] | Secondary POD Deck-A1 | [2] | POD Deck-A1 |
| [3] | High Capacity Stacker-C1 | [4] | Perfect Binder-B1 |
| [5] | Saddle Finisher-AB2 | [6] | Booklet Trimmer-C1 |
| [7] | Finisher-AB1 | [8] | Reader Attachment-A1 |
| [9] | DADF-R1 | [10] | Platen Cover Type K |
| [11] | Color Image Reader-H1 | [12] | Reader Heater Unit-E1 (JPN only) |
| [13] | Voice Guidance Kit-A2 | [14] | Document Insertion Unit-C1 |
| [15] | Punch Unit-U1, V1, W1, X1 | [16] | Side Paper Deck-AC1 |
| [17] | CST. Heater Unit-32 | [18] | Stacker Dolly-A1 |
| [19] | Key Switch Unit-A2 | [20] | ADF Access Handle-A1 |
| [21] | Card Reader-C1 | [22] | Stack Bypass-A1 |
| [23] | Tab Feeding Attachment-C1 | [24] | System Accessory Attachment Kit-A1 |
| [24-a] | Card Reader Attachment Kit | [24-b] | Key Switch Attachment Kit |
| [24-c] | Voice Guidance Attachment Kit | | |



- Either the side paper deck AC1 or the POD deck A1 can be mounted.
- The manual pickup unit-A1 cannot be mounted when the POD deck-A1 is mounted.
- The secondary POD deck-A1 can be mounted only when the POD deck-A1 is mounted.
- The booklet trimmer-C1 can be mounted only when the saddle finisher-AB2 is mounted.
- When mounting the Color Image Reader-H1, the Reader Attachment-A1 is required.
- The finisher-AB1 cannot be mounted when the perfect binder-B2 is mounted.

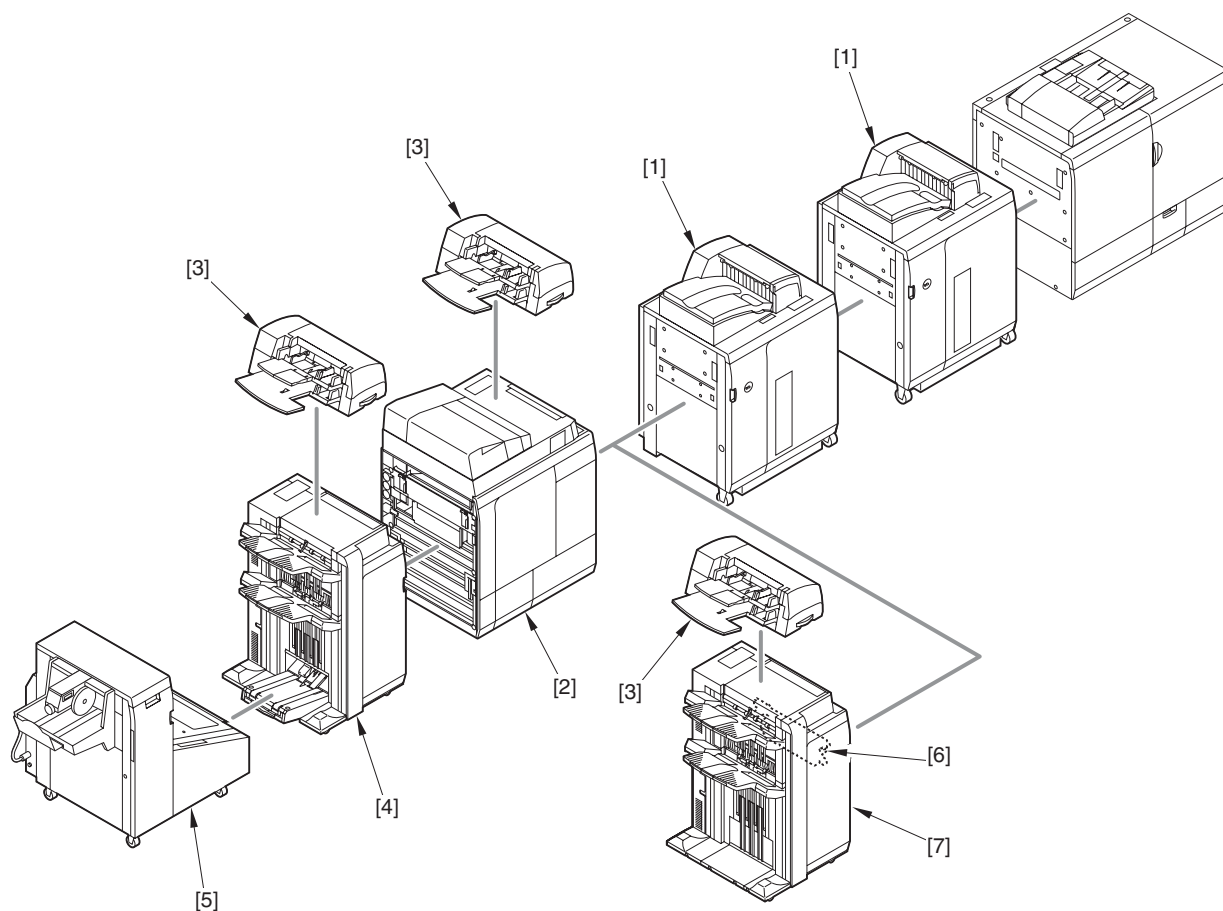
configuration of Pickup Accessories



F-1-2

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|---------------------------|
| [1] Secondary POD Deck-A1 | [2] POD Deck-A1 |
| [3] Paper Deck-AC1 | [4] Stack Bypass-A1 |
| [5] Card Reader Attachment Kit-A1 | [6] DADF-R1 |
| [7] Platen Cover Type K | [8] Color Image Reader-H1 |

configuration of Delivery Accessories



F-1-3

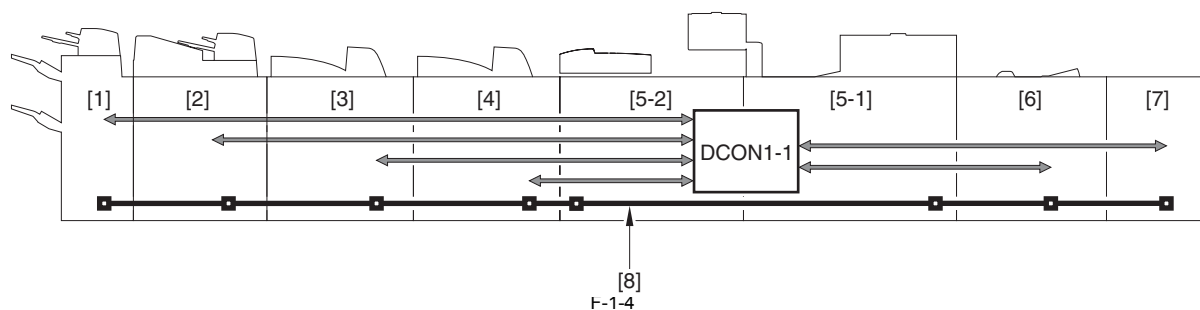
- | | | | |
|-----|---|-----|---------------------------|
| [1] | High Capacity Stacker-C1 | [2] | Perfect Binder-B1 |
| [3] | Document Insertion Unit-C1,
Inserter Attachment Kit-A1 | [4] | Saddle Finisher-AB2 |
| [5] | Booklet Trimmer-C1 | [6] | Punch Unit-U1, V1, W1, X1 |
| [7] | Finisher-AB1 | | |

1.1.2 Communication Method of Pickup/Delivery Accessories

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

1. Overview of communication method

The ARCNET communication method is introduced between the host machine and the pickup/delivery accessories.



F-1-4

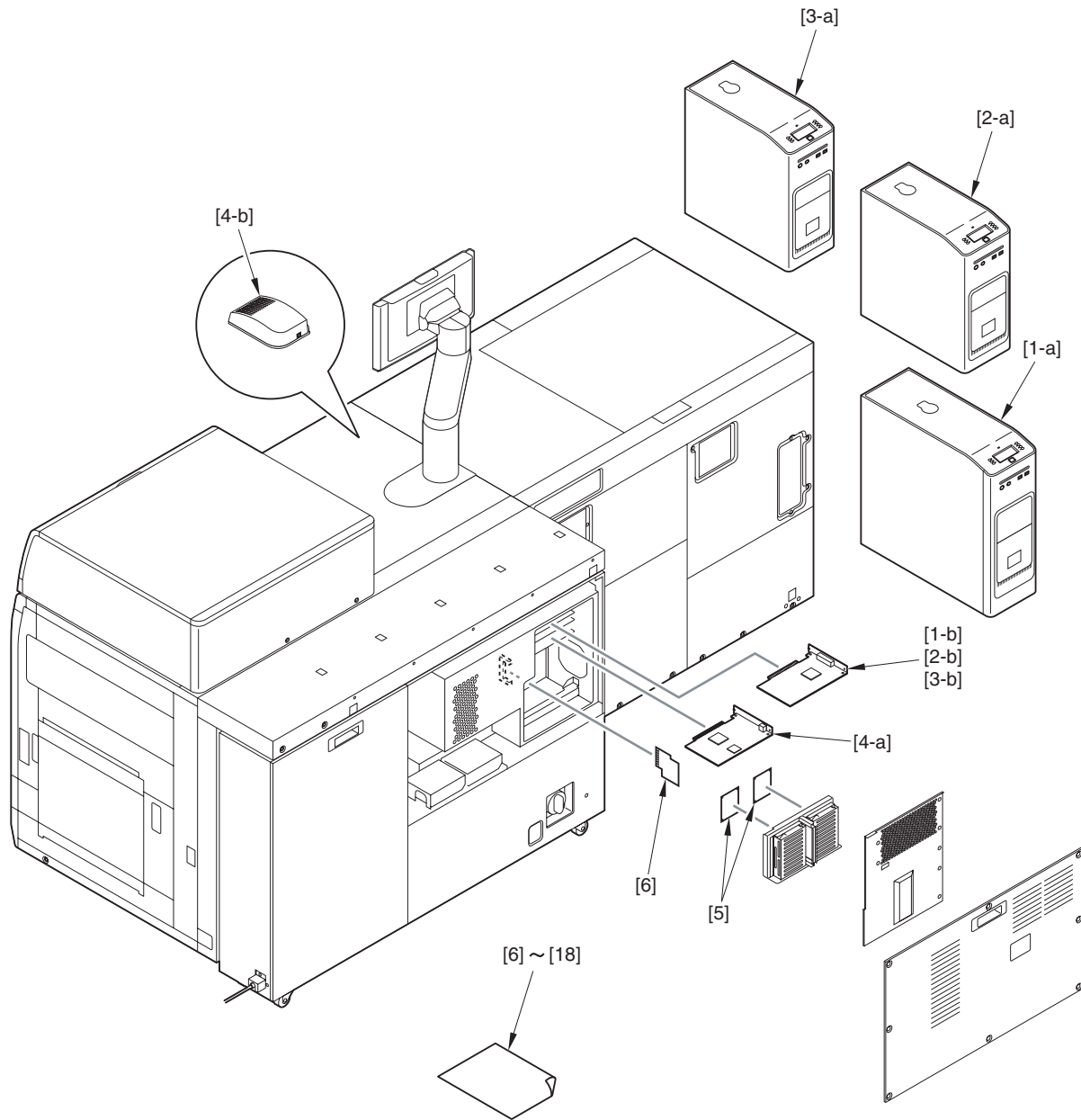
- | | | | |
|-------|--|-------|-----------------------|
| [1] | Finisher/saddle finisher
(The finisher cannot be mounted when the perfect binder is mounted.) | [2] | Perfect Binder |
| [3] | Additional stacker | [4] | High capacity stacker |
| [5-1] | Main station | [5-2] | Sub station |
| [6] | POD deck | [7] | Additional POD deck |
| [8] | ARCNET cable | | |

2. Characteristics of ARCNET

- Realize real-time communication even when multiple accessories are connected.
- Easy machine expansion (extensibility)

1.1.3 System Configuration of Print/Transmission Accessories

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000



F-1-5

- | | |
|--|---|
| [1] imagePRESS Server A3000/A3100 | [1-a] Main unit
imagePRESS Server A1100 (imagePRESS C6000 only) |
| [1-b] Interface board | [2] imagePRESS Server A2000/A2100 |
| [2-a] Main unit | [2-b] Interface board |
| [3] Voice Guidance Kit-A2 | [3-a] Voice board |
| [3-b] Speaker unit | [4] HDD Encryption Kit-B3 |
| [5] Color UFR II/PCL/PS Printer Kit-T1 (RB-A PCB + license) | [6] COLOR SEND KIT-G1 (license) |
| [7] Universal Send Searchable PDF Kit-A1 (license) (EU only) | [8] Digital User Signature PDF Kit-A1 (license) |
| [9] Secure Watermark-A1 (license) | [10] HDD Data Erase Kit-A1 (license) |
| [11] Web Access Software-E1 (license) | [12] Encrypted Secure Print Software-C1 (license) (US Only)
Encrypted Printing Software-C1 (license) (EU Only) |
| [13] Remote Operator's Software Kit-A2 (license) | [14] ACCESS MANAGEMENT SYSTEM KIT-A1 (license) |
| [15] Universal Send PDF Security Feature Set-A1 | [16] Universal Send PDF Advanced Feature Set-A1 |
| [17] Barcode Printing Kit-A1 | |

1.1.4 Function List of Print/Transmission Accessories

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

1. List of Functions for Print/Send Options

T-1-1

Functions	Options required	Restrictions	
Send function	Send Expansion Kit	The Send Expansion Kit needs to be enabled to use the Send function.	
Send function - High compression PDF	Send Expansion Kit	The Send Expansion kit needs to be enabled to use the high compression PDF function.	
Send function - Outline PDF	Send Expansion Kit	The Send Expansion kit needs to be enabled to use the outline PDF function.	
Send function - Encryption PDF	Encryption PDF Expansion Kit, Send Expansion Kit	To use the Encryption PDF function, the Encryption Expansion Kit needs to be enabled in the condition where the Send Expansion Kit is being enabled.	
Send function - Searchable PDF	Searchable PDF Expansion Kit, Send Expansion Kit	To use the searchable PDF function, the Searchable PDF Expansion Kit needs to be enabled in the condition where the Send Expansion Kit is being enabled.	
Send function - Device signature PDF	Device Signature PDF Kit, Send Expansion Kit	To use the device signature PDF function, the Device Signature PDF Expansion Kit needs to be enabled in the condition where the Send Expansion Kit is being enabled.	
Send function - User signature PDF	User Signature PDF Expansion Kit, Send Expansion Kit	To use the user signature PDF function, the User Signature PDF Expansion Kit needs to be enabled in the condition where the Send Expansion Kit is being enabled.	
Send function - Time stamp PDF	Time Stamp PDF Expansion Kit, Send Expansion Kit	To use the time stamp PDF function, the Time Stamp PDF Expansion Kit needs to be enabled in the condition where the Send Expansion Kit is being enabled.	
Watermark printing	Watermark Expansion Kit	The Secure Watermark-A1 needs to be enabled to perform tint block printing.	
LIPS LX print function	Multi-PDL Expansion Kit	The Multi-PDL Expansion Kit needs to be enabled to use the LIPS LX/LIPS V/PS print function.	
PS print function	imagePRESS Server	It is necessary to make a setting in the service mode and connect one communication cable and two signal cables.	
PDF/TIFF/JPEG direct print function	Direct Print Expansion Kit, Multi-PDL Expansion Kit	The Multi-PDL Expansion Kit needs to be enabled to use the PDF/TIFF/JPEG direct print function.	
Sorting Grouping Stapling Shifting	Finisher AB1 or Saddle Finisher AB2	-	
Punching	Punch Unit U1 Finisher AB1 or Saddle Finisher AB2	-	
Section ID management *1	Card Reader C1	This function cannot be simultaneously used with the IC card authentication function expansion kit.	
Large-size paper pickup cassette	POD Deck A1 or Side Paper Deck AC1	POD Deck A1 and Side Paper Deck AC1 cannot be used simultaneously.	
	Tandem POD Deck A1, POD Deck A1		
Security management (Complete deletion of user data on HDD)	HDD Data Overwriting Deletion Kit	The HDD Data Overwriting Deletion Kit needs to be enabled to use the security management function.	
Displaying of web pages	Viewing	Web Browser Expansion Kit	The Web Browser Expansion Kit is required to display a web screen on the control panel.
	Printing of web pages / PDF files	Multi-PDL Expansion Kit, and Direct Print Expansion Kit	The Direct Print Expansion Kit needs to be enabled to print a PDF file displayed in a web screen.
Enhancement of security of print jobs (Encryption printing)	When entering a password	Multi-PDL Expansion Kit, Encryption Secure Print Kit	The Encryption Secure Print Kit needs to be enabled to encrypt a print job sent from the computer to the host machine. Encryption Add-in is added to the printer driver of the computer.
	When using an IC card	Multi-PDL Expansion and IC Card Authentication Function Expansion kit, Encryption Secure Print Kit	This function cannot be simultaneously used with Card Reader C1. The Encryption Secure Print Kit needs to be enabled to perform encryption. Add a driver to the system of the host machine by SST so that the IC card reader is recognized by the main controller. Add Encryption Add-in for the IC card in the printer driver of the computer.

2. Outline of Each Option

- Color UFRII/PCL/PS Printer Kit-T1

This is an expansion option to use a device as a UFR/PCL/PS printer.

- imagePRESS Server A3000/A2000/A3100/A2100

This is a print control server in which genuine PostScript3 software manufactured by Adobe Systems Incorporated is installed. This is an optimal option for users who use PostScript application or in an office environment where large quantity of printing is performed.

- Color Send Kit-G1

This is an expansion option to use the Send function. This kit sends a scanned document by email or as an I-Fax document or saves it in the file server or box. This kit also sends a high compression or outline PDF file.

- Universal Send Searchable PDF Kit A1

This is an expansion option to enhance performance of PDF files created by this machine. When sending a PDF file to an email address or a file server, this kit performs OCR (Optical Character Reader) processing to a scanned document and creates a PDF file in which text searching can be performed (a searchable PDF).

- Digital User Signature PDF Kit-A1

This is an expansion option to enhance performance of PDF files created by this machine. When sending a PDF file to an email address or a file server, this kit displays 'whose signature is put in the document' in the signature field of Acrobat or Acrobat Reader.

- Secure Watermark-A1

This is an option to perform copy/print operation by hiding a character string that is embossed when copied in the background of the output sheet as a hidden

character string. A message such as "Copy Inhibit", date and time, or section name is hidden in the background as a hidden character string, and it is embossed when the sheet is copied.

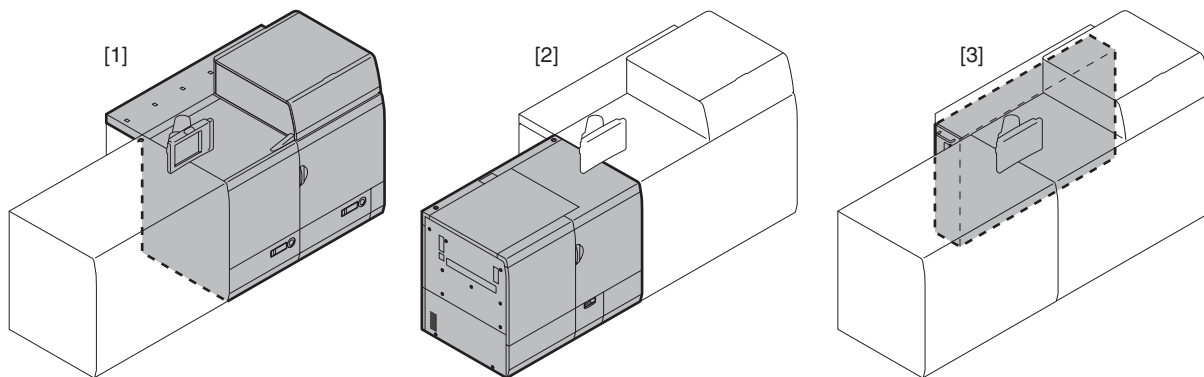
- HDD Data Erase Kit-*A1
This is a security option to completely delete data saved in the HDD of this machine.
- HDD Encryption Kit-A1
This is an expansion option to prevent data leakage by encrypting information in the HDD of this machine.
- Web Access Software-E1
This is an expansion option to view a web page on the control panel of this machine.
- Encrypted Secure Print Software-C1/ Encrypted Printing Software-C1
This is an expansion option to enhance security by encrypting the target data in the PC and decrypting it in this machine.
- ACCESS MANAGEMENT SYSTEM Expansion Kit-A1
This is an expansion option to restrict the use of each function such as copying, printing, box saving, or sending, etc. for each user. This kit reduces the risk of data leakage by restricting the use of the Send function or reduces cost by restricting single-sided printing of a document with multiple pages.

1.2 Product Specifications

1.2.1 Names of Parts

1.2.1.1 Station Configuration

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000



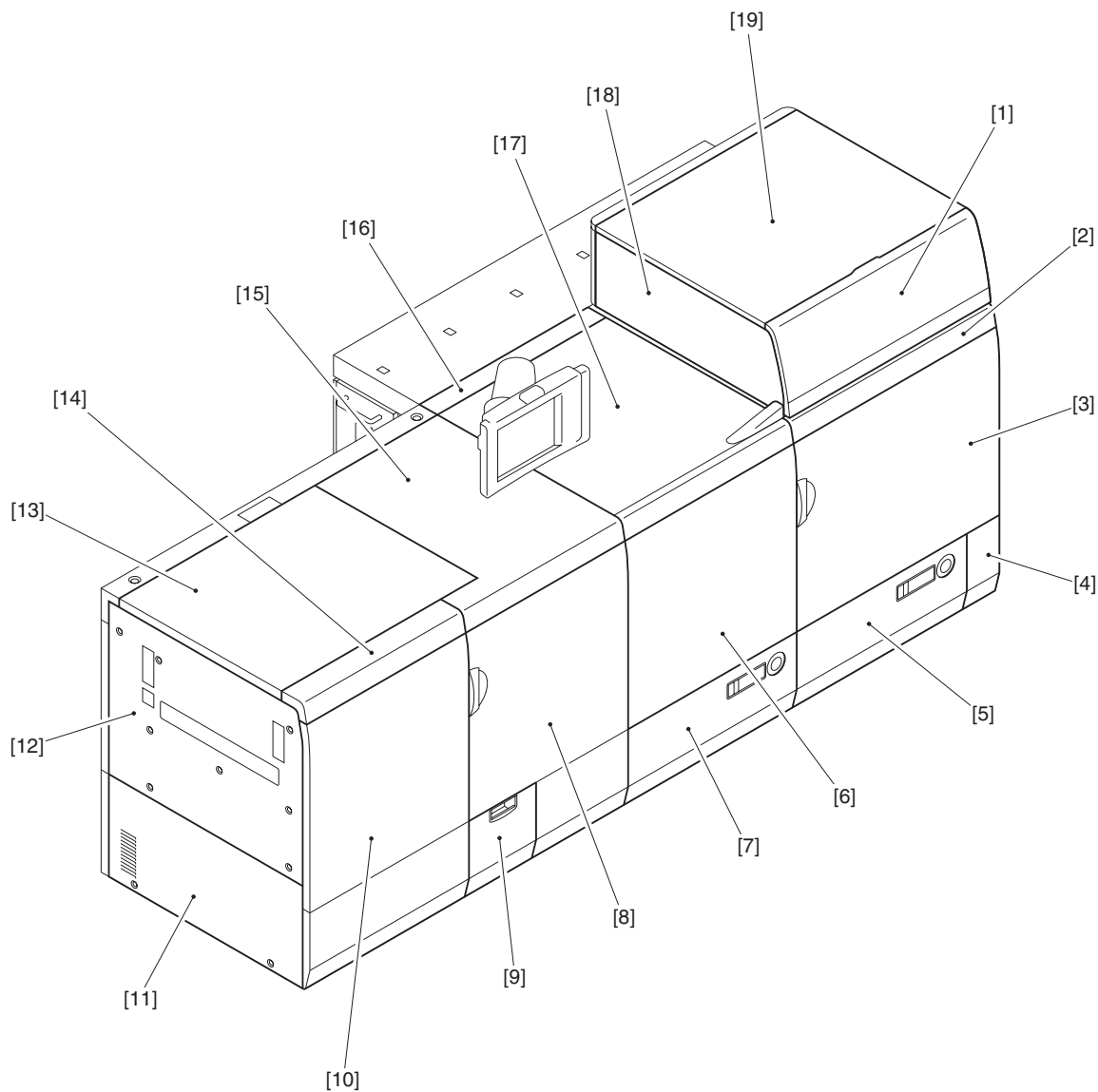
F-1-6

- [1] Main station
- [3] Power Unit Station

- [2] Sub station

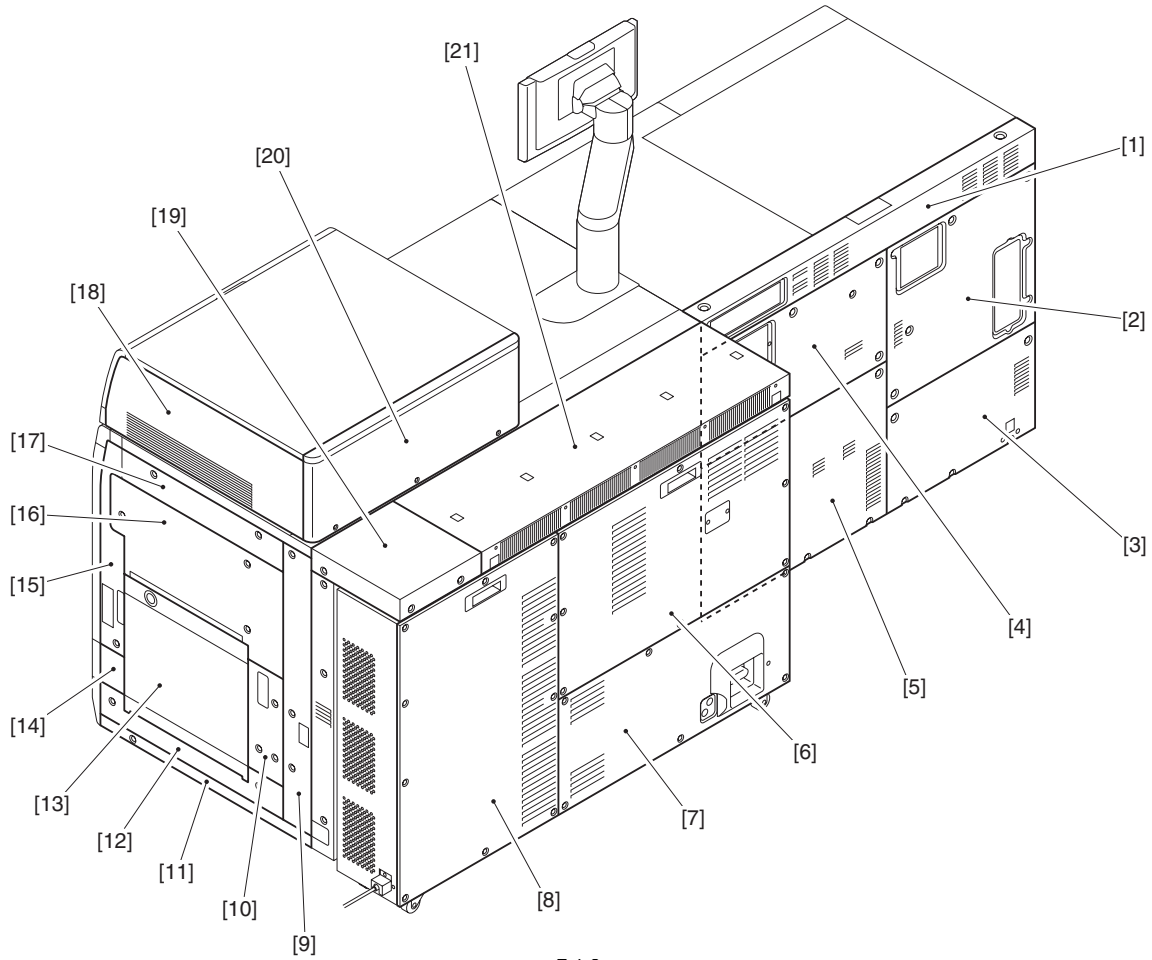
1.2.1.2 External View

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000



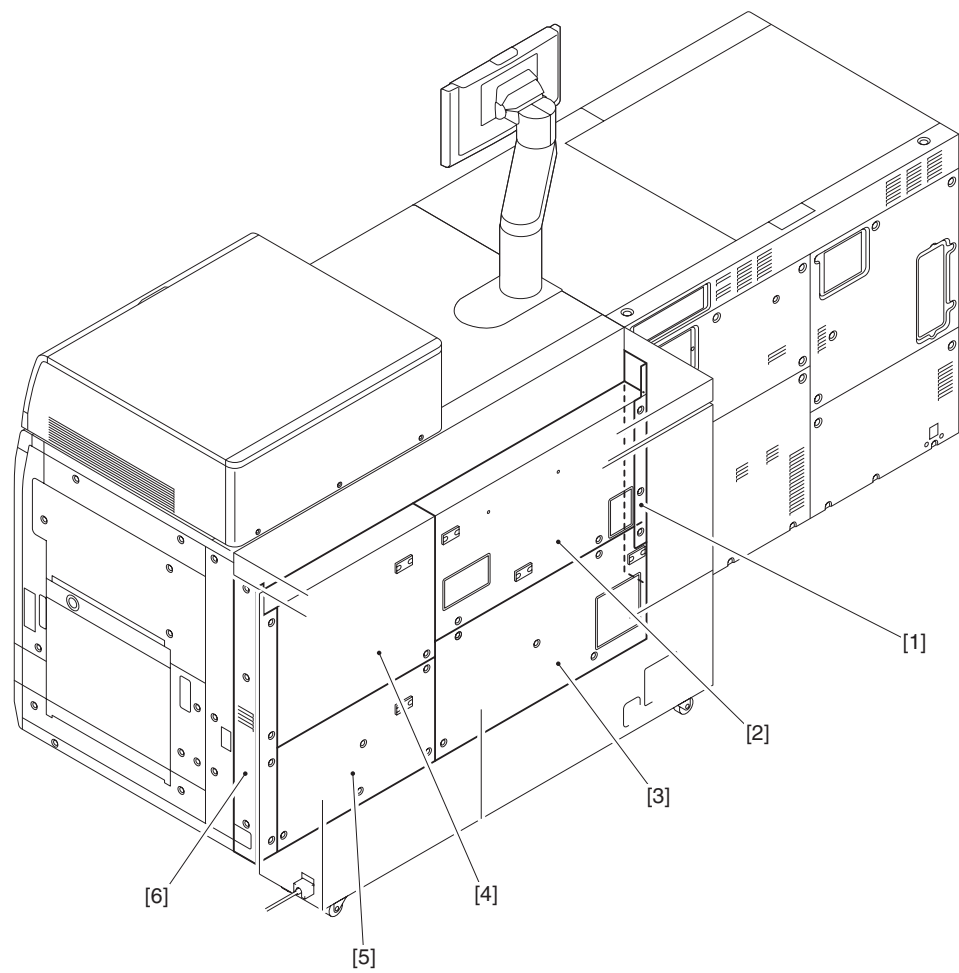
F-1-7

[1]	Toner Replacement External Cover	[2]	Main-Station Upper Front Cover
[3]	Main-Station Right Front Cover	[4]	Main-Station Lower Right Front Cover
[5]	Right Deck	[6]	Main-Station Left Front Cover
[7]	Left Deck	[8]	Sub-Station Right Front Cover
[9]	Waste Toner Receptacle	[10]	Sub-Station Left Front Cover
[11]	Sub-Station Lower Left Cover	[12]	Sub-Station Upper Left Cover
[13]	Sub-Station Left Upper Cover	[14]	Sub-Station Front Upper Cover
[15]	Sub-Station Right Upper Cover	[16]	Main-Station Middle Upper Cover
[17]	Main-Station Front Upper Cover	[18]	Toner Supply Left Cover
[19]	Toner Supply Upper Cover		



F-1-8

- | | | | |
|------|---------------------------------|------|---------------------------------|
| [1] | Sub-Station Rear Upper Cover | [2] | Sub-Station Rear Cover 1 |
| [3] | Sub-Station Rear Cover 2 | [4] | Sub-Station Rear Cover 3 |
| [5] | Sub-Station Rear Cover 4 | [6] | Power Unit Station Rear Cover 1 |
| [7] | Power Unit Station Rear Cover 2 | [8] | Power Unit Station Rear Cover 3 |
| [9] | Main-Station Rear Right Cover | [10] | Vertical Path Rear Cover |
| [11] | Main-Station Lower Right Cover | [12] | Vertical Path Lower Cover |
| [13] | Vertical Path Cover | [14] | Vertical Path Front Cover |
| [15] | Main-Station Front Right Cover | [16] | Main-Station Middle Right Cover |
| [17] | Main-Station Upper Right Cover | [18] | Toner Supply Right Cover |
| [19] | Main-Station Rear Upper Cover 2 | [20] | Toner Supply Rear Cover |
| [21] | Main-Station Rear Upper Cover 1 | | |

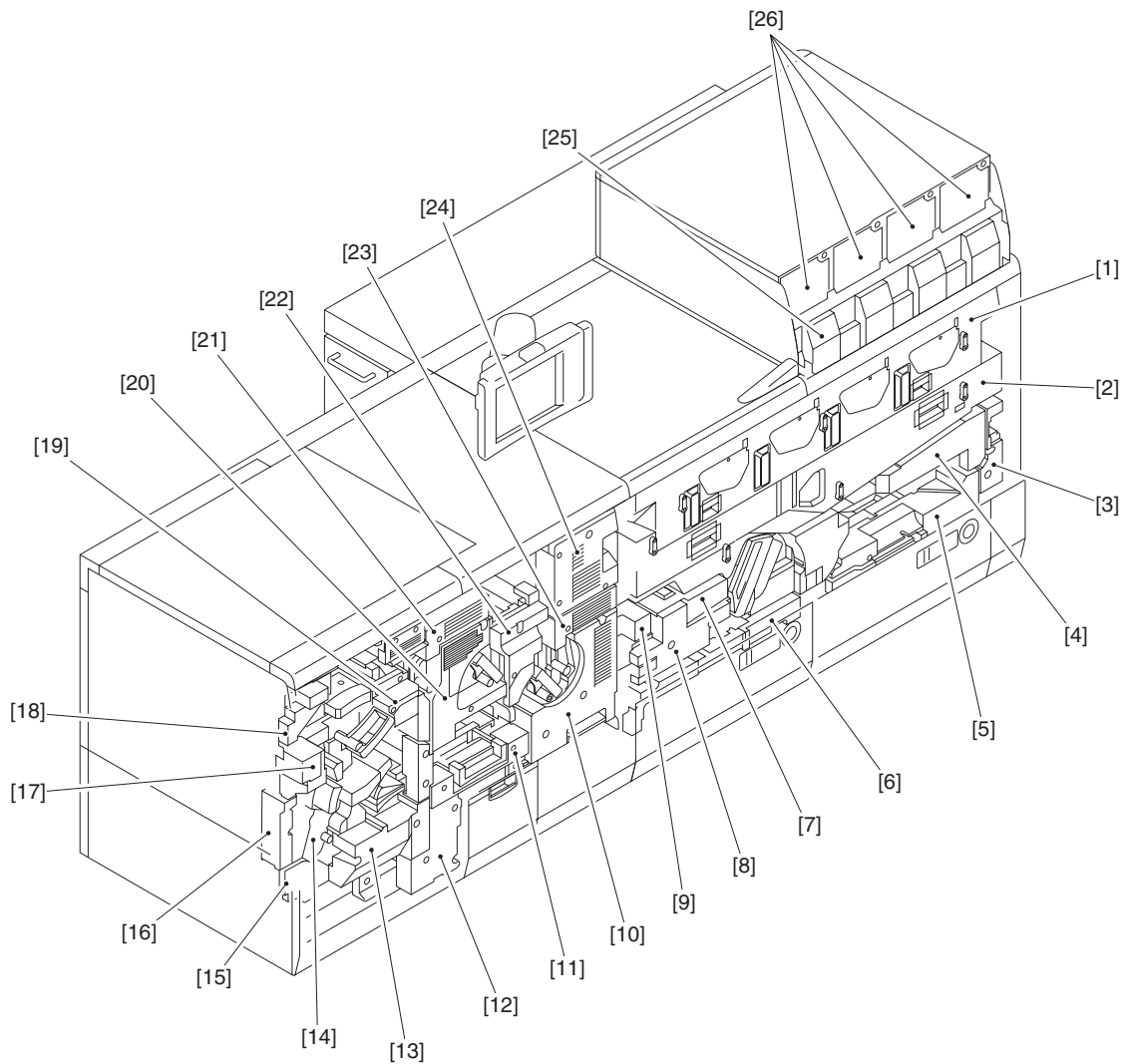


F-1-9

- | | | | |
|-----|-------------------------------|-----|------------------------------|
| [1] | Main-Station Right Rear Cover | [2] | Main-Station Rear Cover 1 |
| [3] | Main-Station Rear Cover 2 | [4] | Main-Station Rear Cover 3 |
| [5] | Main-Station Rear Cover 4 | [6] | Main-Station Left Rear Cover |

1.2.1.3 Internal View/Lever

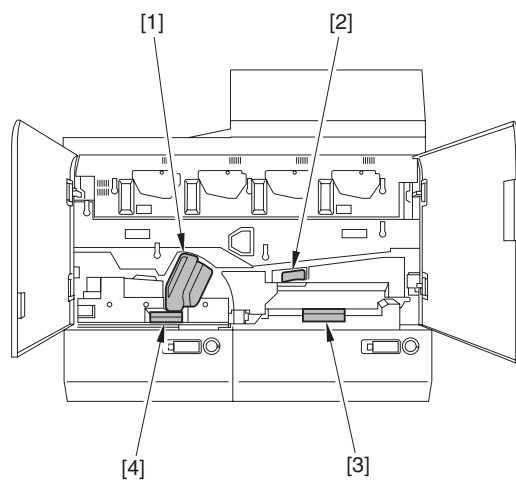
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000



F-1-10

[1]	Process Unit Cover	[2]	Intermediate Transfer Unit Cover
[3]	Main-Station Lower Right Internal Cover	[4]	Pre-Registration Cover
[5]	Lower Feeding Cover	[6]	Main-Station Duplexing Feeding Cover
[7]	Pre-Fixing Feeding Upper Cover	[8]	Pre-Fixing Feeding Lower Cover
[9]	Pre-Fixing Feeding Left Cover	[10]	Primary Fixing Lower Front Cover
[11]	Sub-Station Duplexing Feeding Cover	[12]	Sub-Station Internal Cover 2
[13]	Sub-Station Duplexing Inlet Cover	[14]	Delivery Reversing Cover 3
[15]	Delivery Reversing Cover 5	[16]	Delivery Reversing Cover 4
[17]	Delivery Reversing Cover 2	[18]	Delivery Reversing Cover 1
[19]	Fixing Confluence Cover	[20]	Secondary Fixing Lower Front Cover
[21]	Secondary Fixing Upper Front Cover	[22]	Tandem Feeding Cover
[23]	Primary Fixing Upper Front Cover	[24]	Sub-Station Internal Cover
[25]	Toner Supply Front Cover	[26]	Toner Replacement Internal Cover

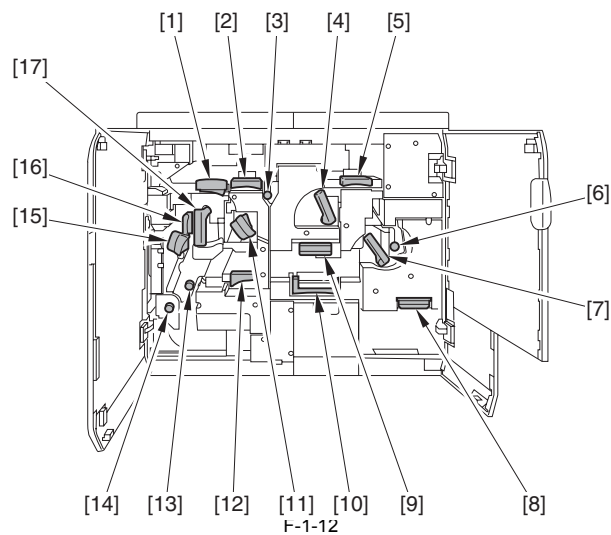
- Main Station



F-1-11

- | | | | |
|-----|--------------|-----|--------------|
| [1] | Lever (B-E1) | [2] | Lever (B-E2) |
| [3] | Lever (B-A) | [4] | Lever (B-E6) |

- Sub Station



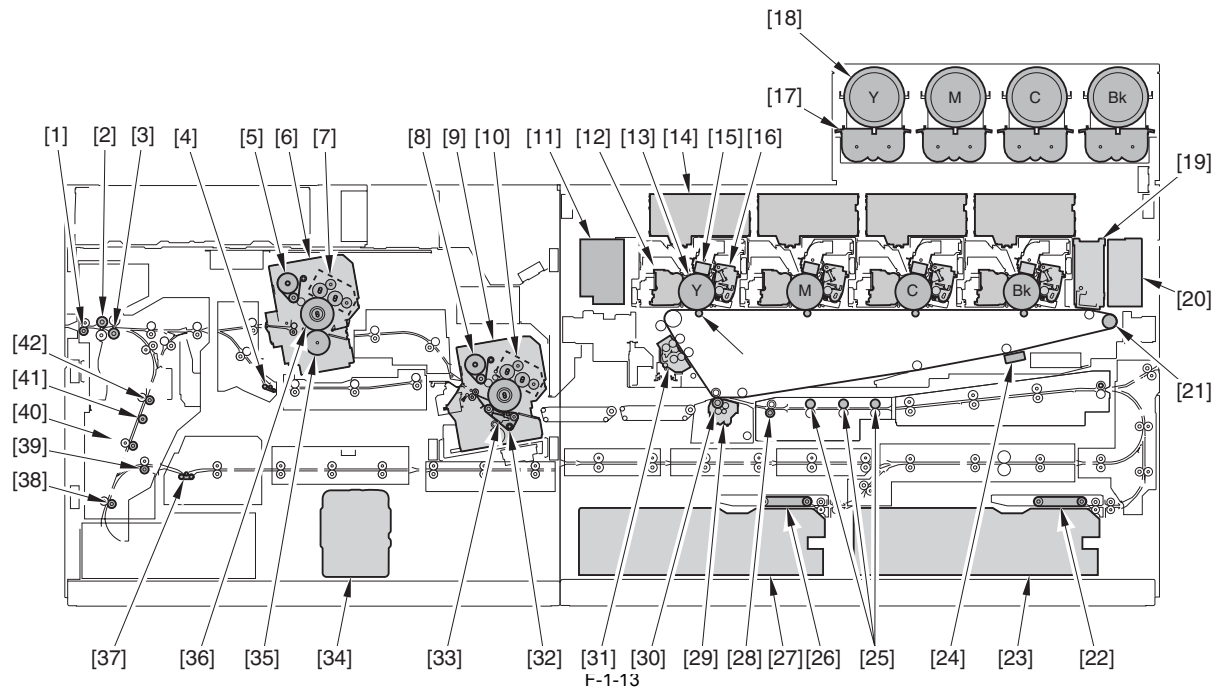
F-1-12

- | | | | |
|------|--------------|------|--------------|
| [1] | Lever (C-B2) | [2] | Lever (C-B1) |
| [3] | Lever (C-B5) | [4] | Lever (C-B4) |
| [5] | Lever (C-A1) | [6] | Lever (C-A5) |
| [7] | Lever (C-A4) | [8] | Lever (C-E) |
| [9] | Lever (C-A2) | [10] | Lever (C-A3) |
| [11] | Lever (C-B3) | [12] | Lever (C-D1) |
| [13] | Lever (C-D2) | [14] | Lever (C-C3) |
| [15] | Lever (C-C1) | [16] | Lever (C-C2) |
| [17] | Lever (C-D3) | | |

1.2.1.4 Cross Section View

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- Main Station



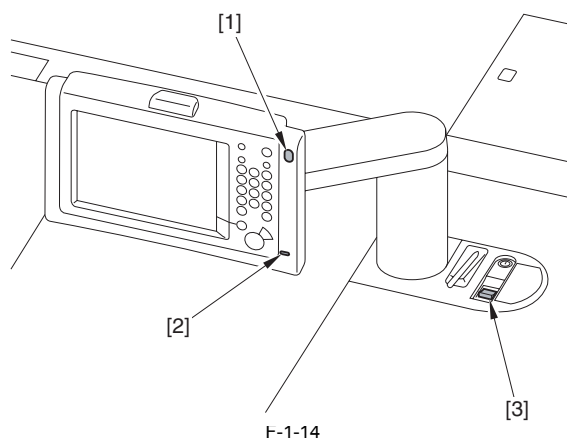
[1] Delivery roller 3	[2] Delivery decurker 2	[3] Delivery decurker 1
[4] Bypass decurler drive roller	[5] Cleaning web 2	[6] Secondary fixing assembly
[7] External heating roller unit 2	[8] Cleaning web 1	[9] Primary fixing assembly
[10] External heating roller unit 1	[11] Environmental/potential sensor unit 1	[12] Developing unit
[13] Photosensitive drum	[14] Laser scanner unit	[15] Primary charger assembly
[16] Drum cleaning unit	[17] Hopper	[18] Toner case
[19] Color registration patch sensor unit	[20] Environmental/potential sensor unit 2	[21] Steerin roller
[22] Right pick-up unit	[23] Right deck	[24] Pre-transfer charging assembly
[25] Skew roller	[26] Left pick-up unit	[27] Left deck
[28] Lower registration roller	[29] Secondary transfer cleaner unit	[30] Secondary transfer outer roller
[31] ITB cleaner unit	[32] Steerin roller	[33] Fixing belt
[34] Waste toner case	[35] Pressure roller	[36] Secondary fixing roller
[37] Duplexing decurler upper roller	[38] Duplexing reversing rear roller	[39] Duplexing reversing rear roller
[40] Duplexing reversing roller 2	[41] Color sensor backup roller	[42] Duplexing reversing roller 1

1.2.2 Using the Machine

1.2.2.1 Power Switch

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

This machine is equipped with the following 2 switches: the main power switch and the control panel power switch. Power is supplied to the machine by turning on the main power switch. Turn on the control panel switch to cancel the power save/low power/sleep mode.



- [1] Control panel power switch
- [2] Main power lamp
- [3] Main power switch

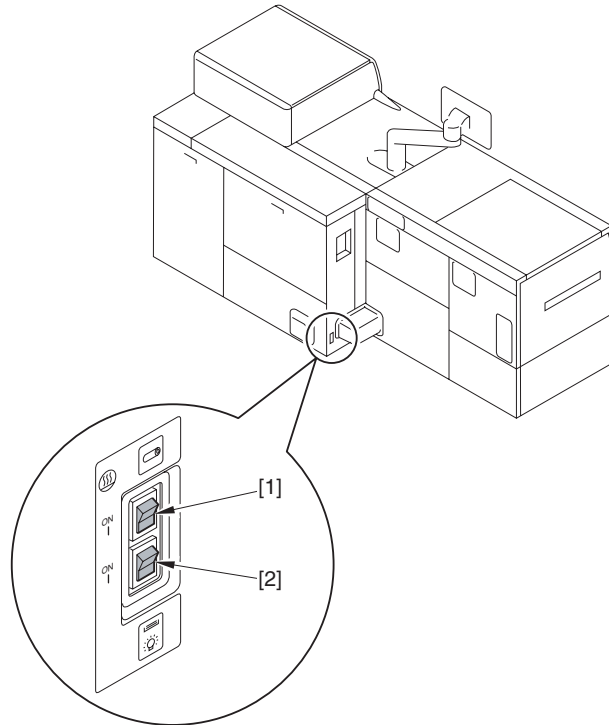
⚠ Do not turn OFF the main power while the progress bar is displayed because access to HDD is executed. If turning OFF the power, it may cause the HDD failure (E602).

1.2.2.2 Points to Note When Turning OFF the Main Power Switch

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- ⚠**

 - When turning OFF the main power switch, hold down the control panel power switch for 3 sec or more. By doing so, the shut-down sequence activates, and the main power will go off automatically.
 - Be sure to operate the main power switch while the execution/memory lamp is OFF.
 - Do not turn off the main power switch while downloading otherwise it may cause the machine failure.
 - If turning off the main power switch while the cassette heater switch/environment heater switch is activated, power is distributed to each heater.

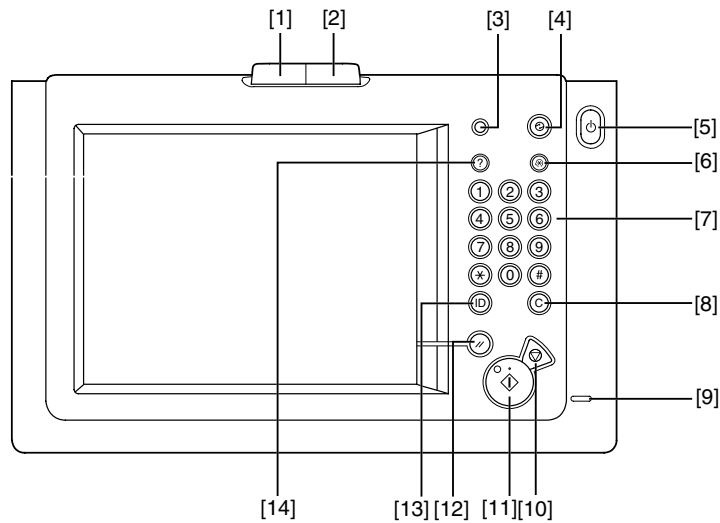


F-1-15

- [1] Environment heater switch
- [2] Cassette heater switch

1.2.2.3 Control Panel

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000



F-1-16

- | | |
|--------------------------------|------------------------------|
| [1] Execute/Memory lamp | [8] Clear key |
| [2] Error lamp | [9] Main power lamp |
| [3] Check Counter key | [10] Stop key |
| [4] Power Save key | [11] Start key |
| [5] Control panel power switch | [12] Reset key |
| [6] Additional Functions key | [13] ID (authentication key) |
| [7] Keypad | [14] Help key |

1.2.3 User Mode Items

1.2.3.1 Common Settings

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

*1 Indicates the default setting.

*2 Indicates items that appear only when the appropriate optional equipment is attached.

*3 Indicates information that is delivered only if the number of output trays in the host machine and client machines is the same.

T-1-2

Item	Settings	Delivered
Function Display Settings	-	No
Initial Function and Function Order Settings	Settings: Copy*1, Express Copy, Send, Mail Box, Print Job, Scan, MEAP, Hold, Web Access	
Copy Screen Display Settings*2	Settings: Regular Copy Only, Regular and Express Copy*1 (Regular Copy Screen Priority: On*1, Off), Express Copy Only	
Set System Monitor as the Default Screen	On*1, Off	
Set the Default Screen for System Monitor	Print Status*1, Consumables, Others (Copy, Send, Receive)	No
Auto Clear Setting	Initial Function*1, Selected Function	Yes
Audible Tones	Entry Tone: On*1, Off Invalid Entry Tone: On, Off*1 Restock Supplies Tone: On, Off*1 Error Tone: On*1, Off Job Done Tone: On*1, Off Forgot Original Tone: On, Off*1	Yes
Display Remaining Paper Message	On*1, Off	No
Text/photo priority when ACS is set to Black*2	Text Priority, Photo Priority*1	Yes
Display the Black Mode Shortcut Key	On, Off*1	No
Inch Entry	On*1, Off	Yes
Drawer Eligibility For APS/ADS	Optimal Productivity: Checked*, Unchecked Copy, Printer, Mail Box, Receive, Other: (Stack Bypass: On, Off*1, All Other Paper Sources: On*1, Off) Copy: Consider Paper Type: On*1, Off	No
Register Paper	Paper Source Selection	No
Paper Select Screen Priority	Simple*1, Detailed	No
Energy Saver Mode	-10%*1, -25%, -50%, None	Yes
Energy Consumption in Sleep Mode	Low*1, High	Yes
LTRR/STMT Original Selection*2	Distinguishing Manually, Use LTRR Format*1, Use STMT Format	Yes
Tray Designation*2	If the Optional Finisher-AB1 or Saddle Finisher-AB2 Is Attached: Tray A: Copy*1, Mail Box*1, Printer*1, Receive*1, Other*1 Tray B: Printer*1, Receive*1, Other*1 If the Optional Finisher-AB1 or Saddle Finisher-AB2, and High Capacity Stacker-C1 Are Attached: Tray A: Copy*1, Mail Box*1, Printer*1, Receive*1, Other*1 Tray B: Copy*1, Mail Box*1, Printer*1, Receive*1, Other*1 Tray C: Receive*1, Other*1 If the Optional Finisher-AB1 or Saddle Finisher-AB2, and Perfect Binder-B1 Are Attached: Tray A: Copy*1, Mail Box*1, Printer*1, Receive*1, Other*1 Tray B: Copy*1, Mail Box*1, Printer*1, Receive*1, Other*1 If the Optional Finisher-AB1 or Saddle Finisher-AB2, High Capacity Stacker-C1, and Perfect Binder-B1 Are Attached: Tray A: Copy*1, Mail Box*1, Printer*1, Receive*1, Other*1 Tray B: Copy*1, Mail Box*1, Printer*1, Receive*1, Other*1 Tray C: Receive*1, Other*1	Yes*3
Stacker Output Tray Settings*2	Stacker b Output Tray, Stacker a Output Tray	Yes
High Volume Stack Mode*2	On, Off*1	Yes
Printing Priority	Copy: 1*1, 2, 3 Printer: 1, 2*1, 3 Mail Box, Receive, Other: 1, 2, 3*1	Yes

Item	Settings	Delivered
Register Form for Composition	Register, Erase, Check Print, Details	No
Image Priority for Form Composition	Auto*1, Original Priority, Form Priority	Yes
Register Characters for Page No./ Watermark	Register, Edit, Erase	Yes
Stack Bypass Standard Settings*2	On, Off*1	No
Registering Irregular Size	Stack Bypass Register/Edit, Erase, Register Name Perfect Binder's Sheet Inserter*2 Register/Edit, Erase, Register Name Perfect Binding Finishing Size*2 Register/Edit, Erase, Register Name	Yes
Standard Local Print Settings	-	No
Paper Select	All Paper Sources, Auto*1	
Copies	1*1 to 9,999 sets	
Finishing	If the Optional Finisher-AB1 or Saddle Finisher-AB2 Is Attached: Do Not Collate, Collate, Offset Collate*1, Group, Offset Group, Staple (Corner: Top Left, Bottom Left, Top Right, Bottom Right) (Double: Left, Right) If the Optional Punch Unit-V1 Is Attached to the Optional Finisher-AB1 or Saddle Finisher-AB2: Do Not Collate, Collate, Offset Collate*1, Group, Offset Group, Staple (Corner: Top Left, Bottom Left, Top Right, Bottom Right), (Double: Left, Right), Hole Punch If the Optional High Capacity Stacker-C1 Is Attached: Do Not Collate, Collate, Offset Collate*1, Group, Offset Group If the Optional High Capacity Stacker-C1 and Finisher-AB1 or Saddle Finisher-AB2 Are Attached: Do Not Collate, Collate, Offset Collate*1, Group, Offset Group, Staple (Corner: Top Left, Bottom Left, Top Right, Bottom Right) (Double: Left, Right) If the Optional High Capacity Stacker-C1 and Punch Unit-V1 Are Attached to the Optional Finisher-AB1 or Saddle Finisher-AB2: Do Not Collate, Collate, Offset Collate*1, Group, Offset Group, Staple (Corner: Top Left, Bottom Left, Top Right, Bottom Right) (Double: Left, Right), Hole Punch Offset: 1*1 to 9,999 copies Face Up/Face Down: Auto*1, Face Down (Normal), Face Up (Reverse) Stacker Output Destination*3 (if the optional High Capacity Stacker-C1 is attached)* Auto Output Destination*3 (if two optional High Capacity Stacker-C1 units are attached)	No
2-Sided Print	On (Book Type, Calendar Type), Off*1	No
Erase Document After Printing	On, Off*1	No
Merge Documents	On, Off*1	No
Language Switch	On, Off*1	No
Reversed Display (Color)	On, Off*1	No
Offset Jobs*2	On*1, Off	Yes
Job Separator between Jobs	On, Off*1	Yes
Job Separator between Copies	On, Off*1	No
Number of Copies/Job Duration Status Display	On*1, Off	No
Different Paper Sizes for the Output Tray*2	On*1, Off	Yes
Cleaning Display for the Original Scanning Area*2	On*1, Off	No
Data Compression Ratio for Remote Scans*2	High Ratio, Normal*1, Low Ratio	Yes
Gamma Value for Remote Scans*2	Gamma 1.0, Gamma 1.4, Gamma 1.8*1, Gamma 2.2	Yes

Item	Settings	Delivered
Limited Functions Mode*2	On, Off*1	Yes
Finisher Tray A/B	On, Off*1	
Finisher Saddle Stitcher Unit	On, Off*1	
Finisher Inserter	On, Off*1	
Puncher Unit	On, Off*1	
Stacker a (right)	On, Off*1	
Stacker b (left)	On, Off*1	
Perfect Binder	On, Off*1	
Erase Remaining Toner Error Message	Erase	No
Shutdown Mode	Press [Start]	No
End the Perfect Binder Energy Saver Mode*2	Sync. with Main Unit, Do Not Sync. with Main Unit*1	Yes
Suspend Job if Multiple Sheet Feed is Detected	On, Off*1	Yes
Default Screen for Hold*2	Single List Display, Double List Display*1	No
Unfinished Tab Paper Forced Output	On, Off*1	Yes
Initialize Common Settings	Initialize	No

1.2.3.2 Timer Settings

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

*1 Indicates the default setting.

*2 Indicates items that appear only when the appropriate optional equipment is attached.

T-1-3

Item	Settings	Delivered
Time Fine Adjustment	00:00 to 23:59, in one minute increments	No
Auto Sleep Time	10, 15, 20, 30, 40, 50 min., 1 hour*1, 90 min., 2, 3, 4 hours	Yes
Auto Clear Time	0 (Off) to 9 minutes, in one minute increments; 2 min.*1	Yes
Daily Timer Settings	Sunday to Saturday, 00:00 to 23:59, in one minute increments	Yes
Low-power Mode Time	10, 15*1, 20, 30, 40, 50 min., 1 hour, 90 min., 2, 3, 4 hours	Yes
Perfect Binder Energy Saver Mode Time*2	0 (Off), 10, 15*1, 20, 30, 40, 50 min., 1 hour, 90 min., 2, 3, 4 hours	Yes

1.2.3.3 Adjustment/Cleaning

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

*1 Indicates the default setting.

*2 Indicates items that appear only when the appropriate optional equipment is attached.

T-1-4

Item	Settings	Delivered
Zoom Fine Adjustment*2	X, Y: -1.0% to +1.0%, in 0.1% increments; 0.0%*1	No
Saddle Stitch Position Adjustment*2	All paper sizes: -2.0 mm to +2.0 mm, in 0.25 mm increments; 0.00 mm*1	Yes
Double Staple Space Adjustment*2	4 3/4" to 5 7/8" (120 mm to 150 mm), 4 3/4" (120 mm)*1	Yes
Trim Width Adjustment*2	2.0 mm to 20.0 mm, in 0.1 mm increments; 2.0 mm*1	Yes
Perfect Binding Finishing Size Fine Adjustment*3	Horizontal: -0.03" to 0.03" (-1.0 mm to 1.0 mm), in 0.01" mm (0.1 mm) increments; 0.00" (0.0 mm)*1 Vertical (Top + Bottom): -0.07" to 0.07" (-2.0 mm to 2.0 mm), in 0.01" mm (0.1 mm) increments; 0.00" (0.0 mm)*1	Yes
Auto Gradation Adjustment	Full Adjust, Quick Adjust	No
Exposure Recalibration*2	Copy/Inbox, Send (B & W), Send (Color): Light, Dark: 1 to 9 levels; 5*1	No
Shading Correction	Densitometer Correction, Visual Correction, Print Server Correction	No
Character/Background Contrast Adjustment	Black, Cyan, Magenta Relative Contrast Value: -7 to +7; 1*1 (Black)/0*1 (Cyan)/ -1*1 (Magenta), Sample Print, Sample Print Settings Standard Value Settings: 0 to 64; 8*1 (Black)/12*1 (Cyan, Magenta), Sample Print, Print Settings Latent String Density: 0 to 36, 5*1 (Black)/7*1 (Cyan, Magenta)	No

Item	Settings	Delivered
Feeder Cleaning*2	Press [Start].	No
Wire Cleaning	Press [Start].	No
Roller Cleaning	Press [Start].	No
Curl Correction for Each Paper Source	Settings Face Up Output: -15 to +15, 0*1 Face Down Output: -15 to +15, 0*1	No

1.2.3.4 Report Settings*2

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

*1 Indicates the default setting.

*2 Indicates items that appear only when the appropriate optional equipment is attached.

T-1-5

Item	Settings	Delivered
Settings: Send	-	-
TX Report	For Error Only*1, On, Off Report with TX Image: On*1, Off Report with Color TX Image: On, Off*1	Yes
Activity Report	-	Yes
Auto Print	On*1, Off	
Daily Activity Report Time	On, Off*1 Timer Setting: 00:00*1 to 23:59	
Send/Receive Separate	On, Off*1	
Print List: Send	-	-
Address Book List	Address Book 1 to 10, One-touch Buttons, Print List	No
User Data List	Print List	No

1.2.3.5 System Settings

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

*1 Indicates the default setting.

*2 Indicates items that appear only when the appropriate optional equipment is attached.

*4 Indicates items that appear only when the appropriate optional equipment is attached to the imagePRESS C7000VP/C6000VP/C6000. For the imagePRESS C7000VP/C6000VP/C6000, these items are displayed as default.

T-1-6

Item	Settings	Delivered
System Manager Settings	-	-
System Manager ID	Seven digit number maximum	Yes
System Password	Seven digit number maximum	
System Manager	32 characters maximum	
E-mail Address	64 characters maximum	
Contact Information	32 characters maximum	
Comment	32 characters maximum	
Dept. ID Management	-	-
Dept. ID Management	On, Off*1	Yes
Register Dept. ID/Password	Register, Edit, Erase, Limit Functions	Yes
Page Totals	Clear, Print List, Clear All Totals	No
Allow Printer Jobs with Unknown IDs*4	On*1, Off	Yes
Allow Remote Scan Jobs with Unknown IDs*2	On*1, Off	Yes
Allow Black Copy/Inbox Print Jobs*2	On, Off*1	Yes
Allow Black Printer Jobs*4	On, Off*1	Yes
Communications Settings*2	-	-

Item	Settings	Delivered
E-mail/I-Fax Settings	-	Yes
Maximum Data Size for Sending	0 (Off), 1 to 99 MB; 3 MB*1	
Full Mode TX Timeout	1 to 99 hours; 24 hours*1	
Divided Data RX Timeout	0 to 99 hours; 24 hours*1	
Default Subject	40 characters maximum; Attached Image*1	
Print MDN/DSN on Receipt	On, Off*1	
Always send notice for RX errors	On*1, Off	
Use Send Via Server	On, Off*1	
Allow MDN Not Via Server	On*1, Off	
Memory RX Inbox Settings	-	-
Memory RX Inbox Password	Seven digit number	No
Use I-Fax Memory Lock	On, Off*1	Yes
Memory Lock Start Time	Everyday, Select Days, Off*1	Yes
Memory Lock End Time	Everyday, Select Days, Off*1	Yes
Remote UI	On*1, Off Use SSL: On, Off*1	Yes
Restrict the Send Function*2	-	-
Address Book Password	Seven digit number	Yes
Access Number Management	On, Off*1	Yes
Restrict New Addresses	E-mail: On, Off*1 I-Fax: On, Off*1 File: On, Off*1	Yes
E-mail/I-Fax Domain Sending Restriction	Restrict Sending to Domains; On, Off*1 Register, Edit	Yes
	Erase	No
Allow PDF Send with Expired Certificates	On, Off*1	Yes
Always Add Device Signature to Send PDF	On, Off*1	Yes
Device Information Settings	-	No
Device Name	32 characters maximum	No
Location	32 characters maximum	No
Forwarding Settings*2	E-mail Priority, Edit, Erase, Print List	No
	Validate/Invalidate, Register, Forward w/o Conditions	Yes
Clear Message Board	Clear	No
Auto Online/Offline*2	-	Yes
Auto Online	On, Off*1	
Auto Offline	On, Off*1	
Date & Time Settings	Date and Time Setting (12 digit number) Time Zone: GMT -12:00 to GMT +12:00; GMT -05:00*1 Daylight Saving Time: On*1, Off	No
Limit Functions with the Security Key OFF	Partial Functions*1, All Functions	Yes
License Registration	24 characters maximum	No
System Monitor Screen Restriction	-	-
Display Status Before Authentication	On*1, Off	No
Allow Secured Print from Print Status Screen	On, Off*1	No
Job Log Display	On*1, Off Obtain Job Log From Management Software: Allow, Do Not Allow*1	No
Register LDAP Server*2	Register, Edit, Erase, Register/Edit LDAP Search, Print List	No
MEAP Settings	-	-
Use HTT	On*1, Off Use SSL: On, Off*1	Yes
Print System Information	Print	No

Item	Settings	Delivered
Copy Set Numbering Option Settings	Copy Set Num. Op: On (ID/User Name: On, Off*1; Date: On, Off*1; Characters: On, Off*1), Off*1	Yes
Display Remaining Toner Error Message	On, Off*1	No
Display ID/User Name	On*1, Off	No
USB Settings	-	-
Use USB Device	On*1, Off	Yes
Use USB Host	On*1, Off	Yes
Device Information Delivery Settings	-	-
Transmitting Settings	-	-
Register Destinations	Auto Search/Register, Register, Details, Erase, Print List	-
Auto Delivery Settings	Everyday, Select Days, Off*1 Add. Functions Settings Value: On (Network Settings: Include, Exclude*1), Off*1 Dept. ID: On, Off*1 Address Book: On, Off*1 Printer Settings: On, Off*1 Paper Information: On, Off*1	-
Manual Delivery	Add. Functions Settings Value: On (Network Settings: Include, Exclude*1), Off*1 Dept. ID: On, Off*1 Address Book: On, Off*1 Printer Settings: On, Off*1 Paper Information: On, Off*1	- - - - -
Receiving Settings	-	-
Restrictions for Receiving Device Info.	On*1, Off	-
Restore Data	Add. Functions Set. Value, Dept. ID, Address Book, Printer Settings, Paper Information: On, Off*1	-
Receive Restriction for Each Function	Add. Functions Settings Value: On*1, Off Dept. ID: On*1, Off Address Book: On*1, Off Printer Settings: On, Off*1 Paper Information: On*1, Off	- - - - -
Paper Information Settings	All, Standard Only*1	-
Communication Log	Details, Print List, Report Settings Auto Print: On*1, Off Daily Activity Report Time: On (00:00 to 23:59), Off*1 Separate Report Type: On, Off*1	- - - -
Initialize All Data/Settings	Initialize	No
Use Asterisks to Enter Access No./ Passwords	On*1, Off	Yes
Secure Watermark Mode*2	-	-
Forced Secure Watermark Mode	Copy: Do Not Set*1, Set Mail Box: Do Not Set*1, Set Printer: Do Not Set*1, Set	Yes
Printer Driver Secure Watermark	Do Not Set*1, Set	Yes
Encrypted Print Settings*2	-	-
Only Allow Encrypted Print Jobs	On, Off*1	Yes
Device Management Settings	-	-
Auto Gradation Adjustment	Full Adjust, Quick Adjust, Auto Gradation Adjust Method	No
Shading Correction	Densitometer Correction, Visual Correction, Print Server Correction	No
Dither Pattern Settings	Gradation (For Printer), Resolution (For Printer), Reproduce Scan Image: Newspaper, Gradation, High Gradation, Color Tones, High Resolution, Reproduce Scan Image	No

Item	Settings	Delivered
Color Balance	Yellow, Magenta, Cyan, Black: -8 to +8 (in 1 increments); 0*1, Density Fine Adjustment	No
Exposure Recalibration when Scanning	Left Edge: 0 to 5; 0*1 Right Edge: 0 to 5; 0*1	No
Density Adjustment Mode	A Mode*1, B Mode	No
Refresh the Fixing Roller	Press [Start].	No
Fixing Roller Auto Refresh Level	Level: -5 to +5; 0*1	No
Color Cast Correction	Yellow, Magenta, Cyan, Black: -2 to +2; 0*1	No
Tail End Color Fading/Graininess Correction	On, Off*1	Yes
White Gap Correction	1 to 4; 3*1	Yes
Fixing Temperature Mode Switch	Productivity Priority, Image Priority*1 Frequently Used Min. Basis Weight: 64*1 to 300 g/m2 Frequently Used Max. Basis Weight: 64 to 300*1 g/m2	No
Low Temperature Environment Mode	On, Off*1	No
Uneven Gloss Correction	-3 to 0*	No
Paper Type Management Settings	Details/Edit Name, Category, Basis Weight, Type, Finish, Creep (Displacement) Correct. Color, Curl Correction Level, Gloss Adjustment, Paper Separation Fan Level, Paper Fiber Direction Selection, Image Location Adjustment, Secondary Transfer Voltage, ITB Paper Detachment Adjust., ITB Image Clear Adjustment, Saddle Stitch Position Adjust, Hole Punch Position Adjust, Tail End White Patch Correct.	Yes
	Duplicate, Erase, Paper Database Allow Changes from Paper Details Info: On, Off*1	No
Time until Hold Job Auto Erase*2	0 (Off), 1, 2, 3, 6, 12 hours, 1, 2, 3*1, 7, 30 days	Yes

1.2.3.6 Copy Settings*2

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

*1 Indicates the default setting.

*2 Indicates items that appear only when the appropriate optional equipment is attached.

T-1-7

Item	Settings	Delivered
Paper Select Key Size for Express Copy Screen	Large*1: Four paper sources maximum (Stack Bypass, Stack Bypass Settings, 1: Paper Deck 1, 2: Paper Deck 2, 3: Paper Deck 3, 4: Paper Deck 4, 5: Paper Deck 5, 6: Paper Deck 6, 7: Paper Deck 7, 8: Paper Deck 8), Small	No
Standard Key 1, 2 Settings for Regular Screen	Various modes; No Settings*1	No
Standard Key Settings for Express Copy Screen	Displayed Standard Keys: Up to 5 Set Keys*1, Up to 10 Set Keys, Settings: Various modes; No Settings*1	No
Auto Collate	On*1, Off	Yes
Image Orientation Priority	On, Off*1	Yes
Auto Orientation	On*1, Off	Yes
Standard Settings	Store, Initialize	No
Initialize Copy Settings	Initialize	No

1.2.3.7 Communications Settings*2

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

*1 Indicates the default setting.

*2 Indicates items that appear only when the appropriate optional equipment is attached.

T-1-8

Item	Settings	Delivered
Common Settings: TX Settings	-	-
Unit Name	24 characters maximum	No

Item	Settings	Delivered
Erase Failed TX	On*1, Off	Yes
Data Compression Ratio	High Ratio, Normal*1, Low Ratio	Yes
Handle Documents with Forwarding Errors	Always Print, Store/Print, Off*1	Yes
Retry Times	0 to 5 times; 3 times*1	Yes
Edit Standard Send Settings	Scanning Mode: Clr/B&W 200x200 dpi File Format: TIFF/PDF Auto Select	No
Register Favorites Button	Register/Edit, Erase (M1 to M18) Display Comment: On, Off*1	Yes
Display Confirmation for Favorites Button	On*1, Off	No
Image Level for PDF (Compact)	Image Level in Text/Photo Mode or Photo Mode: Data Size Priority, Normal*1, Image Priority Image Level in Text Mode: Data Size Priority, Normal*1, Image Priority	Yes
PDF(OCR) Settings	Smart Scan: On*1, Off Num. of Char. for Doc. Name Setting: 1 to 24 characters; 24 characters*1	Yes
Check Device Signature Certificate	Certificate Details: Certificate Verification	No
Check User Signature Certificate	Certificate Details: Certificate Verification	No
Default Screen for Send	Favorites Buttons (Enlarged Display: On, Off*1), One-touch Buttons, New Address*1	No
TX Terminal ID	On*1, Off Printing Position: Inside, Outside*1	Yes
Use Chunked Encoding with WebDav Sending*2	On*1, Off	Yes
Gamma Value for YCbCr Send Jobs	Gamma 1.0, Gamma 1.4, Gamma 1.8*1, Gamma 2.2	Yes
Initialize TX Settings	Initialize	No
Common Settings: RX Settings	-	-
2-Sided Print	On, Off*1	Yes
Select Drawer	Switch A: On*1, Off Switch B: On*1, Off Switch C: On*1, Off Switch D: On*1, Off	Yes
Receive Reduction	On*1, Off RX Reduction: Auto*1, Fixed Reduction Reduce %: 75 to 97% (in 1% increments); 90%*1 Reduce Direction: Vertical & Horizontal, Vertical Only*1	Yes
Received Page Footer	On, Off*1	Yes
2 On 1 Log	On, Off*1	Yes
Gamma Value for YCbCr Received Jobs	Gamma 1.0, Gamma 1.4, Gamma 1.8*1, Gamma 2.2	Yes

1.2.3.8 Mail Box Settings

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

*1 Indicates the default setting.

*2 Indicates items that appear only when the appropriate optional equipment is attached.

*6 Information is not delivered if a password is set for the inbox.

T-1-9

Item	Settings	Delivered
User Inboxes Settings	Inbox No.: 00 to 99 Register Inbox Name: 24 characters maximum Password: Seven digits maximum Time until Document Auto Erase: 0 (Off), 1, 2, 3, 6, 12 hours, 1, 2, 3*1, 7, 30 days URL Send Settings Print upon storing from the printer driver: On, Off*1 Initialize	Yes*6
Standard Scan Settings	Store, Initialize	No
Confidential Fax Inboxes Settings*2	Inbox No.: 00 to 49 Register Inbox Name: 24 characters maximum Password: Seven digits maximum URL Send Settings Initialize	Yes*6

1.2.3.9 Address Book Settings*2

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

*2 Indicates items that appear only when the appropriate optional equipment is attached.

T-1-10

Item	Settings	Delivered
Register Address	Register New Address, Edit, Erase	Yes
Register Address Book Name	Register Name	Yes
One-touch Buttons	Register/Edit (from 001 to 200), Erase	Yes



- If you are performing user authentication using the SDL or SSO login service and you are logged in as a general user, you cannot change the Additional Functions settings of the machine.
 - If you are logged in as an Administrator, you can change the Additional Functions settings of the machine. (When the dialog box prompting you to enter the System Manager ID and System Password appears, enter the System Manager ID and System Password.)

MEMO:

Information that is delivered when the Device Information Delivery Settings mode is set, is marked with "Yes" in the "Delivered" column.

1.2.3.10 Device Management Settings

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

The overview of Device Management Settings is described in the table below.

This mode provides the adjusting functions to user administrators, who were positioned higher than the general users, and roughly divided into:

1. Device Management Settings, and;
2. Paper Type Management Settings.

1. Device Management Settings

This setting aims at reproducing the optimal images under any variable factors (changes in environment, deterioration due to aging, etc.) by adjusting color properties (gradation, toner density, color, image quality, etc.).

This setting can be found in the following hierarchy in the setting screen of the control panel:

Additional Functions>System Settings>Device Management Settings

Please see the table below for the details of setting items.

Panel Display	Item	Setting	Objective	Use/Suppl.	Service Mode
Default Display	Auto Gradation Adjustment	Full Adjust./Quick Adjust./Auto Gradation Adjust Method	In a copy/print job without special settings, adjust gradation, density or hue to reproduce the original image.		
Default Display	Shading Correction	Densitometer Correction/Visual Correction	Improve minor shading typically appeared in the halftone area of a printed image.		
Default Display	Dither Pattern Setting	Gradation (For Printer)/Resolution (For Printer)/Reproduce Scan Image:	Select a dither pattern. Dither means a technique to express colors/gradation by small dots. The source data for a dotted image is called 'dither pattern'. By changing this, expression of a printed image can be modified.	Change this setting if Sample F of the faulty images appears. The setting of Resolution should be changed from 'High Resolution' to 'High Gradation' or 'Color Tones'.	
Displayed by Service Mode (*1)	Color Balance	Fine-adjustment of toner density each for Yellow, Magenta, Cyan and Black: -8 to +8 (0*)(by 1)	Adjust the color balance or fine-adjust the default density each for Yellow, Magenta, Cyan and Black.		
Displayed by Service Mode (*1)	Exposure Recalibration when Scanning	Left edge: 0 to 5 (*0) Right edge: 0 to 5 (*0)			COPIER>ADJUST>C CD>BLTVG2
Displayed by Service Mode (*1)	Density Adjustment Mode	A/B Modes (refer to *3)	Switch the methods to control toner density.		COPIER>OPTION>B ODY>REDU- CNT(Level2)
Displayed by Service Mode (*1)	Refresh the Fixing Roller	Start key	Slightly glossy lines parallel to the feed direction sometimes appear on the both side of paper when using wider paper after copying/printing over hundreds on paper in narrower width (ex: using A3 paper after printing on A4R). Specifically in the high-density area on heavy/coated paper, cloudlike glossy shading appears occasionally. Refreshing the fixing roller and/or wiping the surface of the roller can improve these symptoms.	This setting should be set to ON if Sample E of the faulty images appears.	COPIER>FUNCTION >CLEANING>FXD- CL-E
Displayed by Service Mode (*1)	Fixing Roller Auto Refresh Level	Level: -5 to +5 (0*)	The fixing roller is automatically refreshed after a certain copies are printed. This mode provides adjustment in refreshing frequency and time level for refreshing operation.		COPIER>OPTION>U SER>FX- CLNLV(Level2)

Panel Display	Item	Setting	Objective	Use/Suppl.	Service Mode
Displayed by Service Mode (*1)	Color Cast Correction	Yellow, Magenta, Cyan, Black: -2 to +2 (0*)	When 'color cast' is seen in blank area, this can be corrected by color with this function.	This setting should be set to ON when Sample D of the faulty images appears.	COPIER>ADJUST>V-CONT>VBACK-Y,M,C,K(Level2)
Displayed by Service Mode (*1)	Tail End Color Fading/Graininess Correction	ON/OFF*	Color fading/white grains at the tail end can be corrected, which typically appear in printing halftone images.	This setting should be set to ON when Sample A (tail end color fading) or Sample C (white grains) of the faulty images appears.	COPIER>OPTION>B ODY>VCONT-UP(Level2)
Displayed by Service Mode (*1)	White Gap Correction	1 and 2: Select to eliminate the white gap. If "1" is selected as a setting value, you can eliminate the white gap more effective than "2". However, the image tends to have a jagged appearance or the density of the image tends to be light. 3: This is the default setting. Select when you want to leave the original image as it is. 4: Do not select normally. If you select this setting value, contact your local authorized Canon dealer.	If the dark colored area follows right after the halftone area, 'white gap' can be appeared near the border in the halftone area. This can be improved with this function.	This setting should be set to ON when Sample B of the faulty images appears.	COPIER>OPTION>B ODY>ADJ-BLNK(Level2)
Displayed by Service Mode (*1)	Fixing Temperature Adjustment Mode Switch	Productivity Priority, Image Priority* Frequency Used Min. Basis Weight: 64 to 300g/m2, 256* Frequency Used Max. Basis Weight: 64 to 300g/m2, 256*	Temperature Adjustment Mode is set to the optimum for each paper type in Image Priority Mode (default). When different paper types are mixed, the wait time may be inserted for switching mode to adjust temperatures. By setting this mode to ON, the waiting time can be reduced for the print jobs with mixed paper types (it will be impossible depending on the paper types mixed). Note that the setting to 'ON' may affect gloss.		COPIER>OPTION>B ODY>FX-MODE, GSM-MAX, GSM-MIN
Displayed by Service Mode (*1)	Low Temperature Environment Mode	ON/OFF*	When printing on the heavy paper under L/L environment, the fixing for the first 10 some pages may be insufficient in high-density images. By slowing the printing speed for certain duration under the low temperature environment, insufficient fixing can be avoided.		COPIER>OPTION>B ODY>LL-DWN
Displayed by Service Mode (*1)	Uneven Gloss Correction	-2 to +2, 0*	When a temperature of the pressure belt is excessively high, uneven gloss can appear. By changing the temperature control level, uneven gloss can be controlled.		COPIER>OPTION>U SER>FX1BC-SW

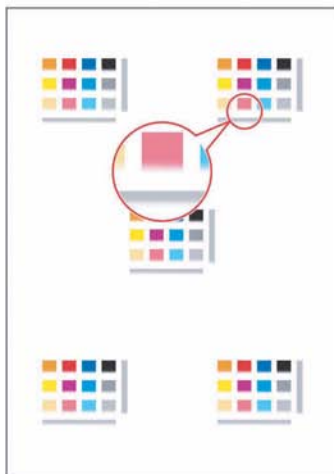
*1: This item is displayed by executing service mode (COPIER > OPTION > BODY > IMAG-ADJ)

*2: Correction with the print server is valid only when the imagePRESS Server is mounted.

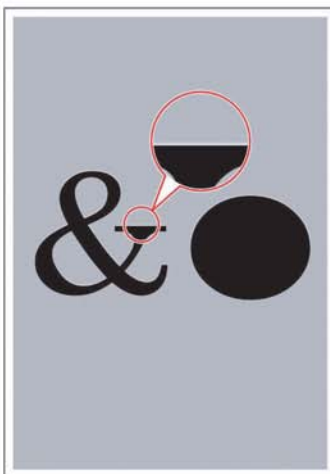
*3: A mode: restriction on the amount of toner deposit is 'Yes'. (Although adjusting the color balance or performing fine adjustment for the density, the amount of toner deposit is restricted.)

B mode: restriction on the amount of toner deposit is 'No'. (When adjusting the color balance or performing fine adjustment for the density, the amount of toner deposit may exceeds its limit.)

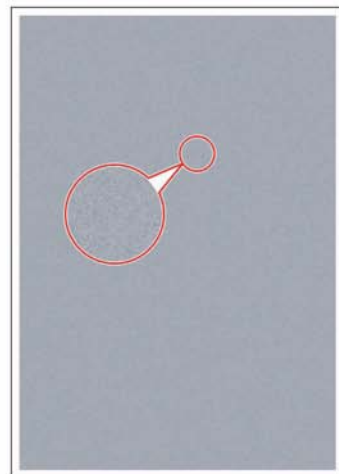
[A]



[B]



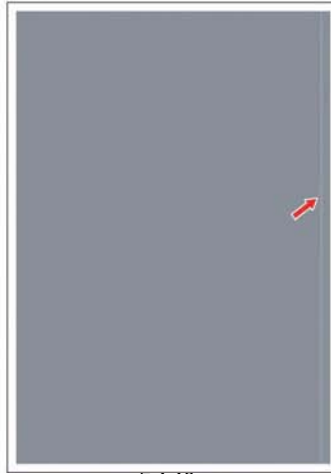
[C]



[D]

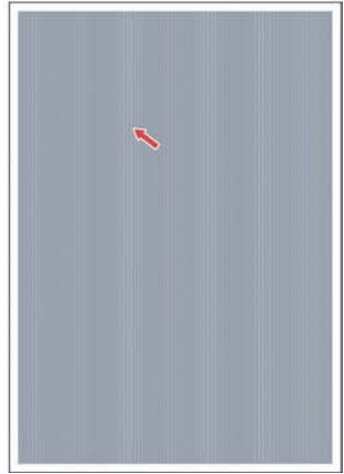


[E]



F-1-18

[F]



2. Paper Type Management Settings

This setting provides the optimal printing properties for each paper type if the properties of each paper type to be used are registered in the printer engine. In addition the parameters (curl correction, image location adjustment, etc.) can be changed by paper type.

This setting can be found in the following hierarchy of the setting screen on the control panel:

Additional Functions>System Settings>Paper Type Management Settings

T-1-11

Panel Display	Item	Setting	Objective	Use/Suppl.
Default Display	Name	Enter any name.		
Default Display	Category	Editing prohibited (standard/custom)		
Default Display	Basis Weight	64 to 300 g/m ²	Set the paper thickness.	
Default Display	Type	Normal, Tab Paper, Pre-punched Paper	Set the paper type.	
Default Display	Finish	Uncoated, Recycled, 1-Sided Coated, 2-Sided Coated, Embossed, Vellum, Film/Transparency, Label, Cotton	Set the paper type.	
Default Display	Creep (Displacement) Correct.	Range: 0.00 to 2.00mm Larger value -> more offset	Set the offset by paper type for saddle-stitched finishing.	
Default Display	Color	White, Blue, Cream, Golden Yellow, Gray, Green, Ivory, Orange, Pink, Red, Yellow, Clear, Other	Set the paper color.	
Displayed by Service Switch (*1)	Curl Correction Level	Can be set for Face Up/Face Down Range: -15 to +15 Increased values: higher curl correction level Decreased values: lower curl correction level	Adjust the paper curl level.	Can be adjusted in 30 positive/negative levels.
Displayed by Service Switch (*1)	Gloss Adjustment	Range: -2 to +2 Increased values: glossier Decreased values: less glossy	Adjust the paper gloss. By changing the values, switch fixing temperatures and the paper feed methods either going through only the primary fixing unit or both primary and secondary fixing units.	
Displayed by Service Switch (*1)	Paper Separation Fan Level	Measure for raw curl. Range: 1 to 7 Increased values: enhanced separation capability	When problems occur in paper feeding from Side Paper Deck or in uneven transfer, change the paper separation fan level.	Set bigger value for jam or double feeding; set smaller value for curl or uneven transfer.
Displayed by Service Switch (*1)	Paper Fiber Direction Selection	Range: On/Off If set to On, select vertical/horizontal (against the paper feeding direction)	Set the paper fiber direction.	This setting should be set to ON when the paper curl cannot be corrected or when paper jam frequently occurs in the post-fixing process under H/H environment.
Displayed by Service Switch (*1)	Image Location Adjustment	Adjust the image location on the paper.		
	Test Print	Output the test print below for the image location adjustment.		
	Lead Edge Alignment Adjustment	Can be set for 1-sided/2-sided Range: -18 to +18 Unit: 1 pixel (equivalent to 42.3 um) Decreased values: shift to the leading edge (sub scanning direction) Increased values: shift to the tail edge (sub scanning direction)		
	Left Edge Alignment Adjustment	Can be set for 1-sided/2-sided Range: -18 to +18 Unit: 1 pixel (equivalent to 42.3 um) Decreased values: shift to the front (main scanning direction) Increased values: shift to the rear (main scanning direction)		
	Zoom Fine Adjustment	Can be set for 1-sided/2-sided Range: -1.00 to +1.00% Increased values: enlarged Decreased values: reduced		
	Back Side Lead Edge Alignment Auto Correction	Range: On/Off Default value: On		
	Skew Correction Level Adjustment	Can be set for 1-sided/2-sided Range: -2 to +2 Unit: 1 Default value: 0 Increased values: Higher skew correction level Decreased values: Lower skew correction level		

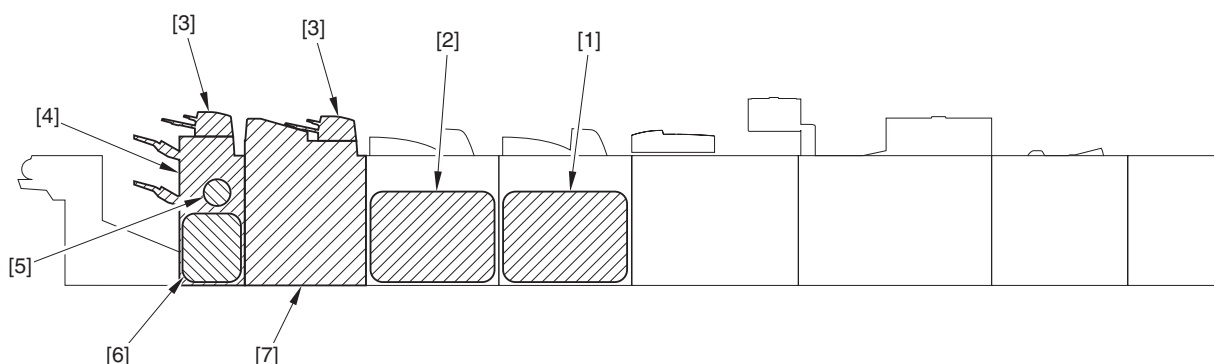
Panel Display	Item	Setting	Objective	Use/Suppl.
Displayed by Service Switch (*1)	Secondary Transfer Voltage	Can be set for 1-sided/2-sided Range: -10 to +10 Increased values: Higher secondary transfer bias Decreased values: Lower secondary transfer bias	Adjust the secondary transfer bias when any faulty image (uneven density, color fading, etc.) appears.	Set to the negative direction (change in 100V by unit).
Displayed by Service Switch (*1)	ITB Paper Detachment Adjust.	Range: -5 to +5 Increased value: Higher detachment bias Decreased value: Lower detachment bias	Adjust the ITB-paper detachment bias.	Under L/L environment, thin paper is hard to detach from ITB that resulted the smudged image in high-density area. If this occurs, increase/decrease the value on the step-by-step basis until the symptom is improved.
Displayed by Service Switch (*1)	ITB Image Clear Adjustment	Range: -10 to +10 Increased values: Higher ITB cleaning bias Decreased values: Lower ITB cleaning bias	Improve ITB cleaning performance.	If residual toner is attached on the paper, ITB cleaning may be insufficient. If this occurs, increase/decrease the value on the step-by-step basis until the symptom is improved.
Displayed by Service Switch (*1)	Saddle Stitch Fold Plac. Adj.	Range: -3.00 to +3.00 mm	Adjust the fold place for saddle stitch function of Saddle Finisher.	Change the value when the fold place is slightly offset from the paper center in saddle-stitched finishing. If this occurs, increase/decrease the value on the step-by-step basis until the symptom is improved.
Displayed by Service Switch (*1)	Saddle Stitch Position Adjust	Range: -2.00 to +2.00 mm	Adjust the saddle stitch position for saddle stitch function of Saddle Finisher.	Change the value when the saddle stitch position is slightly offset from the paper center in saddle-stitched finishing. - Increased values: the saddle stitch position is shifted to the right of the printing side. - Decreased values: the saddle stitch position is shifted to the left of the printing side.
Displayed by Service Switch (*1)	Hole Punch Position Adjust	Range: -2.0 to +2.0 mm	Fine-adjust the punch hole position.	Use this function when the punch hole position is offset due to the paper type used. - Increased values: the punch hole position is shifted to the bottom. - Decreased values: the punch hole position is shifted to the top.
Displayed by Service Switch (*1)	Tail End White Patch Correct.	Can be set for 1-sided/2-sided. Correction Level: -10 to +10 Correction Amount: -20 to +20 Increased values: Higher secondary transfer bias Decreased values: Lower secondary transfer bias	Improve white patch/fading at the tail end of paper. This can typically appear on curled paper or curl-prone paper types in 2-sided printing.	- Correction Level: Fading in high-density area; choose negative values. White patch: choose positive values. - Correction Amount: Range of White patch/Fading seen (distance from the tail end: mm)

*1: This item is displayed in service mode (COPIER>OPTION>BODY>IMAG-ADJ).

1.2.3.11 Limited Functions Mode

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

This mode is to be used as a temporary preventive measure in case of inappropriate function operation (frequently-occurred jam) or in case of fault (E-code is displayed) with pickup/delivery accessories.



F-1-19

- | | |
|-------------------|-------------------------|
| [1] Stacker | [2] Secondary stacker |
| [3] Inserter area | [4] Finisher area |
| [5] Puncher area | [6] Saddle sticher area |

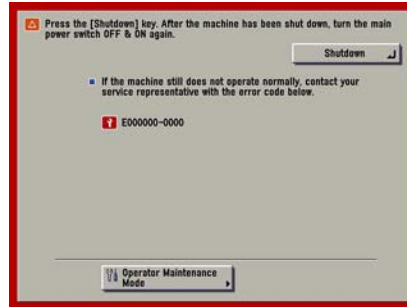
By going through the steps below, printing can be continued until recovery to deactivate only the functions that cause inappropriate operation or fault. Method to activate this mode:

-In case the function operation is partially faulty (jam occurs by using the function)

- 1) Go through the following: Additional Functions > Common Settings > Limited Functions Mode
- 2) Select the function to be restricted
- 3) Select either [ON] or [OFF], and then hold down [OK].
- 4) Turn OFF and then ON the power.

-In case of error

- 1) Hold down [Limited Functions Mode] button on E-cord display



F-1-20

- 2) Turn OFF and then ON the power.



If the faulty status/area is recovered by the maintenance work after turning 'ON' the limited functions mode, be sure to turn 'OFF' the restricted function by selecting the following: Additional Functions > Common Settings > Limited Functions Mode.

MEMO:

There is no function control mode in POD deck/secondary deck. Even if some deck has an faulty operation, if other decks work normally, it is not regarded as an error but an alarm. (If printing operation can be done with pickup from normal deck.)

1.2.4 Safety

1.2.4.1 Safety of the Machine's Laser Mechanism

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

Laser beam radiation may pose a danger to the human body. A laser scanner mounted on the machine is sealed with the protection housing and external cover to prevent the laser beam from leaking to the outside. The laser beam never leaks out of the scanner as far as users operate the machine normally

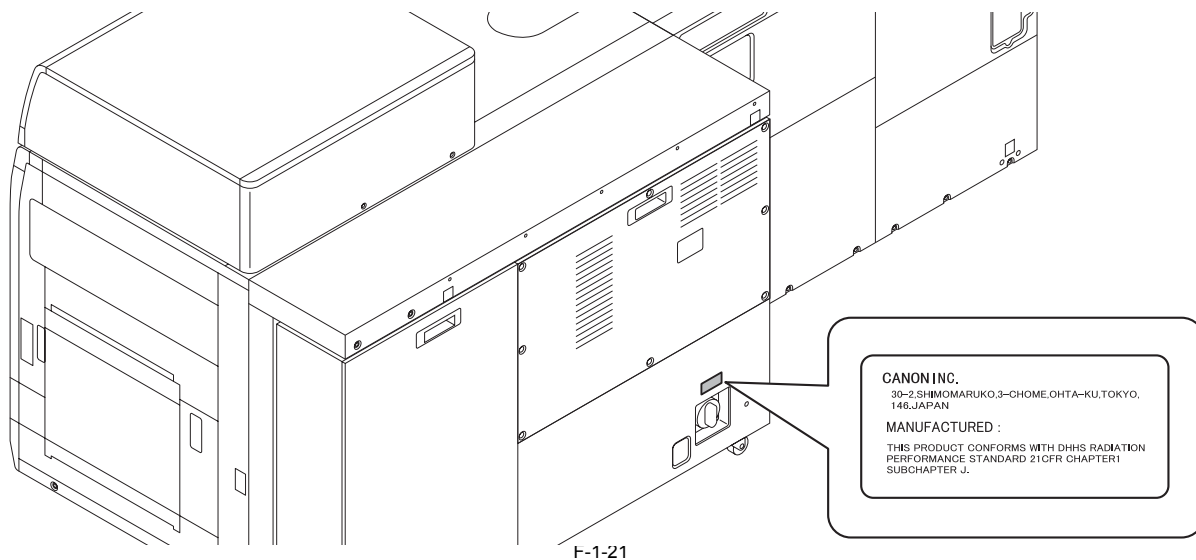
The following warnings are given to comply with Safety Principles (EN60950).

Laserstrahlen können für den menschlichen Körper gefährlich sein. Aus diesem Grund ist das optische Lasersystem mit einem Schutzgehäuse und einer Außenabdeckung dicht verschlossen und hat eine Struktur, die keine Laserstrahlen nach außen dringen lässt. Unter der Voraussetzung, dass der Benutzer dieses Gerät normal bedient, ist ein Austritt von Laserstrahlen daher ausgeschlossen.

1.2.4.2 CDRH Regulation

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

The Center For Devices and Radiological Health (CDRH) of Food and Drug Administration in U.S. has implemented a regulation regarding laser products on August 2nd, 1976. This regulation is applied to all products manufactured since August 1st, 1976, and prohibits the sale of laser products without certification. The following labels certify compliance with the CDRH regulations, and must be attached to all laser products that are sold in the US.

**MEMO:**

The description on the label may differ among models.

1.2.4.3 Handling the Laser Assembly

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

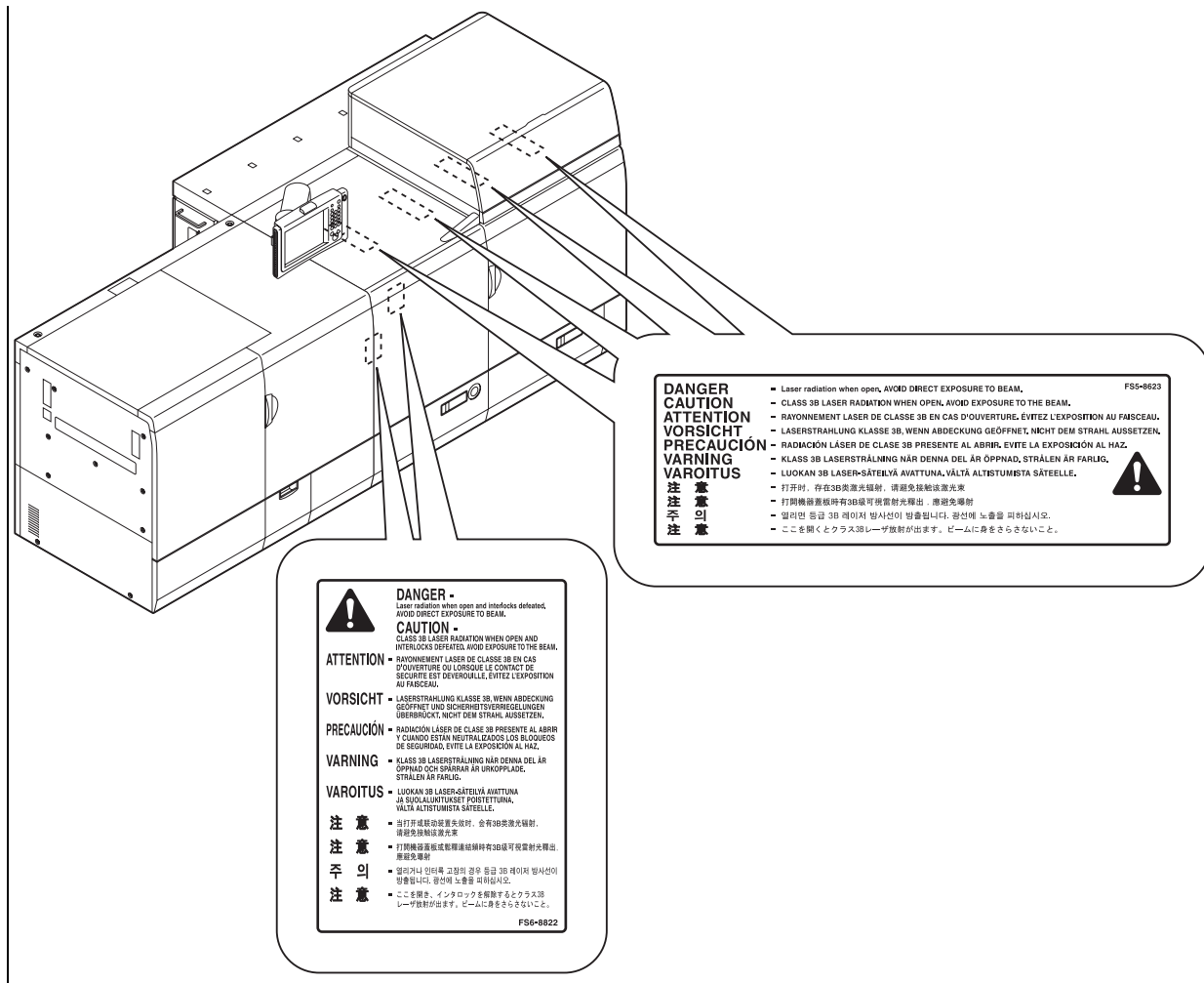
Points to Note When Servicing the Area Around the Laser Scanner

When servicing the area around the laser assembly, be sure to turn off the main power.

If you must service while the power is turned on, be sure to keep the followings:

- Do not use a screwdriver or tools that have a high level of reflectance in the laser path.
- Remove watches and rings before starting the work. (They can reflect the laser beam, possibly hitting the eye.)

The machine's covers that can reflect laser light are identified by means of a warning label (Figure). If you must detach a cover showing the label, be sure to take extra caution during the work.



The following warnings are given to comply with Safety Principles (EN60950).

Handhabung des Laserteils

Bei Servicearbeiten am oder in der Nähe des Laserteils zuerst das Hauptgerät abschalten.

Bei Servicearbeiten, die unbedingt bei eingeschaltetem Gerät durchgeführt werden müssen, auf jeden Fall die folgenden Vorsichtsmaßnahmen beachten.

- Keine stark reflektierenden Schraubenzieher oder ähnliche Werkzeuge direkt in den Lichtpfad des Laserstrahls bringen.
- Vor Beginn der Arbeit Uhren, Ringe und ähnliche Gegenstände abnehmen. (Reflektierte Laserstrahlen könnten sonst in die Augen geraten.)

Abdeckungen, die möglicherweise Laserstrahlen reflektieren, haben in der auf dem Bild gezeigten Position einen Aufkleber. Bei Servicearbeiten auf der Innenseite von Abdeckungen mit Aufkleber ist besondere Vorsicht erforderlich.

F-1-22

1.2.4.4 Safety of the Toner

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

1. Toner in General

Toner is a non-toxic material made up of plastic, iron, and small amounts of dye.



Do not throw toner into fire. Doing so can lead to explosion.

2. Contact with Toner

- Toner on the skin or clothes must be removed using dry tissue and then washed with water.
- The use of warm water must be avoided, doing so will cause the toner to turn gel-like and to permanently fuse with the fibers of the clothes.
- Contact with vinyl must also be avoided, as toner can readily react.

3. Store of Copy/Print Output

- Be sure to use transparency cases for storing copy/print output.
- Do not use transparency cases made from polyvinyl chloride materials. If the copied surface contacts to the case, toner on the surface of the output dissolves and the output may adhere to the case.

1.2.4.5 Points to Note When Handling the Lithium Battery

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

T-1-12



RISK OF EXPLOSION IF BATTERY IS REPLACED BY AN INCORRECT TYPE.
DISPOSE OF USED BATTERIES ACCORDING TO THE INSTRUCTIONS.

The following warnings are given to comply with Safety Principles (EN60950).

T-1-13



Wenn mit dem falschen Typ ausgewechselt, besteht Explosionsgefahr.
Gebrauchte Batterien gemäß der Anleitung beseitigen.

1.2.4.6 Points to note when connecting to IT power distribution system

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

<English>

When connecting a neutral line to the IT power distribution system, please provide a quadruple interrupter as part of the building facility.

<German>

Wenn Sie eine neutrale Leitung an das IT Stromverteilungssystem anschließen, stellen Sie bitte einen vierpoligen Unterbrecher als Teil der Gebäudeanlagen bereit.

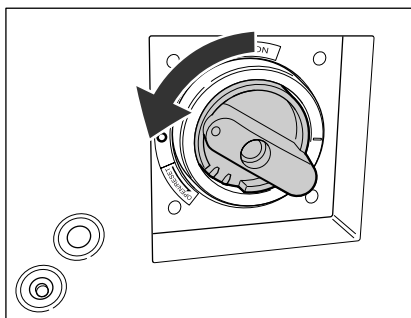
F-1-23

1.2.4.7 Shutting Down the Machine in an Emergency

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

This machine has a breaker that detects excess current or leakage current.

Make sure to turn the breaker dial to the OFF ("○" side) position, and then turn OFF the main power switch in an emergency.



F-1-24

1.2.4.8 Points to note when assembling and disassembling

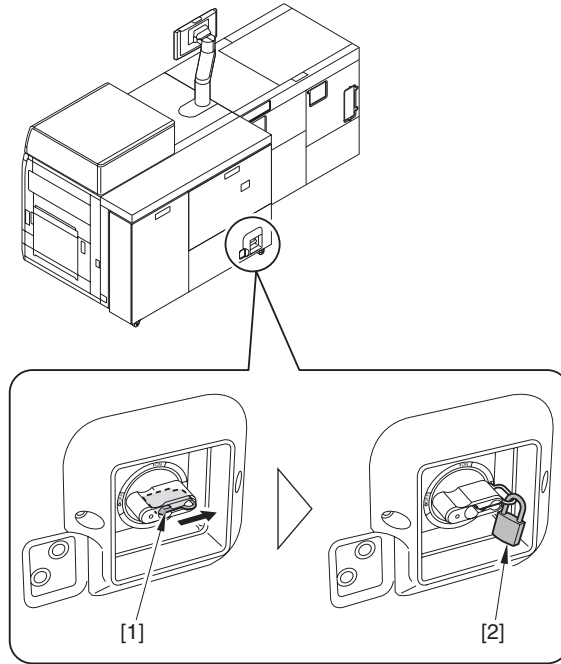
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

Execute the following Procedures when assembling and disassembling:

1. Turn off the main power.
2. Turn off the leakage breaker.
3. Unplug the power plug.
4. Put a lock on the leakage breaker.

How to Put the Lock

Shift the loop [1] of the knob in the direction of the arrow, and put the lock [2] on.



F-1-25

Purpose:

Fix the knob for preventing to turn on the power by mistake during the operations.

1.2.4.9 Point to Note When Performing Trouble Analysis

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

Be sure to perform the work after turning off the power at the normal service.

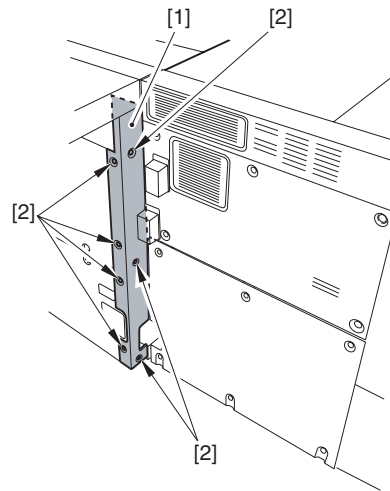
However, mainly at the trouble analysis, the situation needing to access inside of the back of the main station while the power is supplied is expected (e.g., supplying the power to the PCB, checking input/output of the signal, and checking the drive of the motor).

There is high risk to perform the work while the power is supplied. Thus, in order to secure the safety, be sure to perform the following preparation before starting the work. Moreover, be sure to perform the work with utmost care.

Separating Power Unit Station from Main Station

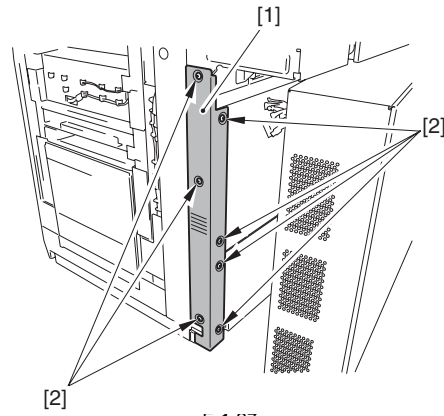
1) Detach the main station right rear cover [1].

- 7 screws [2]



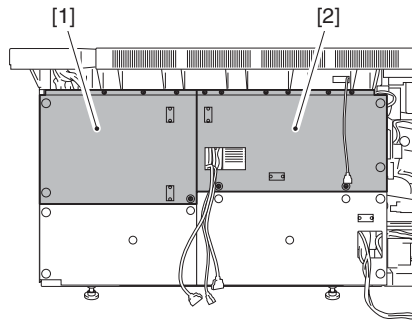
F-1-26

- 2) Detach the main station left rear cover [1].
- 7 screws [2]



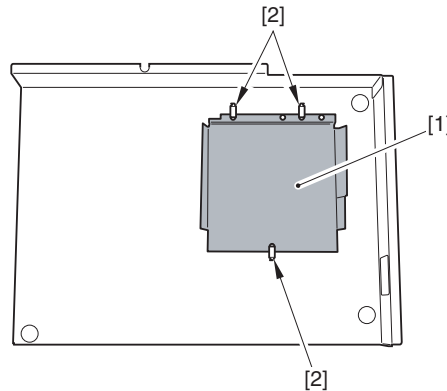
F-1-27

- 3) Detach the main station rear cover [1] and the main station rear cover 3 [2].



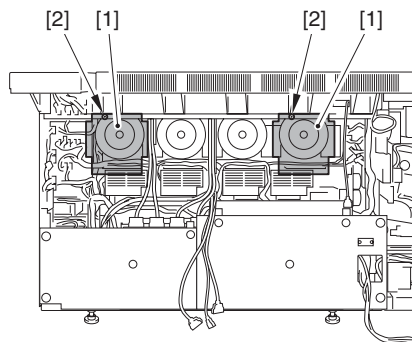
F-1-28

- 4) Remove the 2 flywheel protective sheets [1] from the back of the main station rear cover 3.
- 3 clamps [2]



F-1-29

- 5) Attach the protective sheet [1] onto the flywheel for Y and Bk, respectively.
- 1 screw for each flywheel [2]



F-1-30

- 6) Connect the cables of the power unit station to the original position.

1.2.5 Product Specifications

1.2.5.1 Main Body Specifications

imagePRESS C7000VP

Body	Console
Photosensitive medium	OPC drum (84-mm dia) x 4
Exposure method	Laser + IAE
Charging method	Corona charging
Development method	Dry, 2-component, toner projection development
Transfer method	ITB + roller transfer (primary, secondary)
Separation method	Curvature separation+ static eliminator separation
Pickup method	2-paper deck (switch by user), POD deck/Side paper deck (accessory), Stack Bypass (accessory) Center reference, air separation method
Drum cleaning method	Cleaning blade + brush roller
Transfer cleaning method	Brush roller + cleaning web
Fixing method	Belt fixing + roller fixing
Toner type	Non-magnetic negative toner
Toner supply type	Set-on
Toner level detection function	Yes
Original type	Sheet, book, 3-D object (max.2 kg)
Maximum original size	13"X 19.2" (330.2 X 487.7 mm)
Image margin (leading edge)	2.5 +/- 0.5 mm (1-sided), 2.5 +/- 0.5 mm (2-sided)
Image margin (left/right)	2.5 +/- 0.5 mm (1-sided), 2.5 +/- 0.5 mm (2-sided)
Warm-up time	7 min at the time of power on, 7 min at the time of recovery from sleep mode
Number of gradations	256 gradations
Reading resolution	600 dpi x 600 dpi
Writing resolution	1200 dpi x 1200 dpi
Paper deck paper size	B5R to 13" X 19.2"(330.2 x 487.7 mm)
Paper deck capacity	Paper deck: 1,000-sheet per deck (left/right) (80 g/m2) POD deck (accessory): 1,000-sheet x 2-deck + 2,000-sheet x 1-deck (80 g/m2) Side paper deck (accessory): 3,500-sheet x 1-deck (80 g/m2)
Duplex method	Through path method
Continuous reproduction	9999-sheets
Memory	1.5 GB standard
Hard disk	80 GB X 2
Auto gradation correction	Yes
Operating environment (temperature range)	See the Installation section
Operating environment (humidity range)	See the Installation section
Operating environment (atmospheric pressure)	810.6 to 1013.3 hpa (0.8 to 1.0 atm)
Noise	Standby: 72dB Copying: 82dB
Power supply rating	200V model: single phase/3-wire system 200V 60A 208V model: 3-phase/5-wire system 208V 30A 400V model: 3-phase/5-wire system 380-415V 32A
Power consumption (maximum)	8.5 kW
Dimensions	See the Installation section
Weight	About 1200 kg

1.2.5.2 Main Body Specifications

imagePRESS C6000

Body	Console
Photosensitive medium	OPC drum (84-mm dia) x 4
Exposure method	Laser + IAE
Charging method	Corona charging
Development method	Dry, 2-component, toner projection development
Transfer method	ITB + roller transfer (primary, secondary)
Separation method	Curvature separation+ static eliminator separation
Pickup method	2-paper deck (switch by user), POD deck/Side paper deck (accessory), Stack Bypass (accessory) Center reference, air separation method

Drum cleaning method	Cleaning blade + brush roller
Transfer cleaning method	Brush roller + cleaning web
Fixing method	Belt fixing + roller fixing
Toner type	Non-magnetic negative toner
Toner supply type	Set-on
Toner level detection function	Yes
Original type	Sheet, book, 3-D object (max.2 kg)
Maximum original size	13"X 19.2" (330.2 X 487.7 mm)
Image margin (leading edge)	2.5 +/- 0.5 mm (1-sided), 2.5 +/- 0.5 mm (2-sided)
Image margin (left/right)	2.5 +/- 0.5 mm (1-sided), 2.5 +/- 0.5 mm (2-sided)
Warm-up time	11 min at the time of power on, 11 min at the time of recovery from sleep mode
Number of gradations	256 gradations
Reading resolution	600 dpi x 600 dpi
Writing resolution	1200 dpi x 1200 dpi
Paper deck paper size	B5R to 13" X 19.2"(330.2 x 487.7 mm)
Paper deck capacity	Paper deck: 1,000-sheet per deck (left/right) (80 g/m2) POD deck (accessory): 1,000-sheet x 2-deck + 2,000-sheet x 1-deck (80 g/m2) Side paper deck (accessory): 3,500-sheet x 1-deck (80 g/m2)
Duplex method	Through path method
Continuous reproduction	9999-sheets
Memory	1.5 GB standard
Hard disk	80 GB X 2
Auto gradation correction	Yes
Operating environment (temperature range)	See the Installation section
Operating environment (humidity range)	See the Installation section
Operating environment (atmospheric pressure)	810.6 to 1013.3 hpa (0.8 to 1.0 atm)
Noise	Standby: 72dB Copying: 82dB
Power supply rating	200V model: single phase/3-wire system 200V 30A 208V model: single phase/4-wire system 208V 30A 230V model: single phase/3-wire system 220 - 240V 32A
Power consumption (maximum)	6 kW
Dimensions	See the Installation section
Weight	About 1200 kg

1.2.5.3 Main Body Specifications

imagePRESS C6000VP

Body	Console
Photosensitive medium	OPC drum (84-mm dia) x 4
Exposure method	Laser + IAE
Charging method	Corona charging
Development method	Dry, 2-component, toner projection development
Transfer method	ITB + roller transfer (primary, secondary)
Separation method	Curvature separation+ static eliminator separation
Pickup method	2-paper deck (switch by user), POD deck/Side paper deck (accessory), Stack Bypass (accessory) Center reference, air separation method
Drum cleaning method	Cleaning blade + brush roller
Transfer cleaning method	Brush roller + cleaning web
Fixing method	Belt fixing + roller fixing
Toner type	Non-magnetic negative toner
Toner supply type	Set-on
Toner level detection function	Yes
Original type	Sheet, book, 3-D object (max.2 kg)
Maximum original size	13"X 19.2" (330.2 X 487.7 mm)
Image margin (leading edge)	2.5 +/- 0.5 mm (1-sided), 2.5 +/- 0.5 mm (2-sided)
Image margin (left/right)	2.5 +/- 0.5 mm (1-sided), 2.5 +/- 0.5 mm (2-sided)

Warm-up time	7 min at the time of power on, 7 min at the time of recovery from sleep mode
Number of gradations	256 gradations
Reading resolution	600 dpi x 600 dpi
Writing resolution	1200 dpi x 1200 dpi
Paper deck paper size	B5R to 13" X 19.2"(330.2 x 487.7 mm)
Paper deck capacity	Paper deck: 1,000-sheet per deck (left/right) (80 g/m2) POD deck (accessory): 1,000-sheet x 2-deck + 2,000-sheet x 1-deck (80 g/m2) Side paper deck (accessory): 3,500-sheet x 1-deck (80 g/m2)
Duplex method	Through path method
Continuous reproduction	9999-sheets
Memory	1.5 GB standard
Hard disk	80 GB X 2
Auto gradation correction	Yes
Operating environment (temperature range)	See the Installation section
Operating environment (humidity range)	See the Installation section
Operating environment (atmospheric pressure)	810.6 to 1013.3 hpa (0.8 to 1.0 atm)
Noise	Standby: 72dB Copying: 82dB
Power supply rating	200V model: single phase/3-wire system 200V 60A 208V model: 3-phase/5-wire system 208V 30A 400V model: 3-phase/5-wire system 380-415V 32A
Power consumption (maximum)	8.5 kW
Dimensions	See the Installation section
Weight	About 1200 kg

1.2.6 Function List

1.2.6.1 Printing Speed

imagePRESS C7000VP

Regardless of the paper configuration, surface nature, grammage, or paper size, the printing speed is normal speed only. However, in case of the automatic duplexing, the speed will decrease if the speed changes for the second side.

In Case of 1-Sided (Straight/Reversing Delivery):

The symbol '-' indicates non-supporting.

T-1-14

Paper				In Case of 1-Sided (Straight/Reversing Delivery)		
Size	Paper width (mm)	Paper length (mm)	Grammage (g/m2)	Right/left deck of the main body / POD deck (ipm)	Side paper deck (ipm)	Manual Pickup Tray (ipm)
B5	257	182	64 to 105	70	70	50
			106 to 170			
			171 to 300			
Exective	266.7	184.2	64 to 105	70	70	50
			106 to 170			
			171 to 300			
K16	270	195	64 to 105	70	70	50
			106 to 170			
			171 to 300			
A5R	148.5	210	64 to 105	-	-	50
			106 to 170			
			171 to 300			42.4
A4	297	210	64 to 105	70	70	50
			106 to 170			
			171 to 300			
STMT-R	139.7	215.9	64 to 105	-	-	50
			106 to 170			
			171 to 300			41.3
LTR	279.4	215.9	64 to 105	70	70	50
			106 to 170			
			171 to 300			
BSR	182	257	64 to 105	57.9	57.9	42
			106 to 170	46.1	46.1	
			171 to 300	34.7	34.7	

Paper				In Case of 1-Sided (Straight/Reversing Delivery)		
Size	Paper width (mm)	Paper length (mm)	Grammage (g/m ²)	Right/left deck of the main body / POD deck (ipm)	Side paper deck (ipm)	Manual Pickup Tray (ipm)
Executive-R	184.2	266.7	64 to 105	55.8	-	-
			106 to 170	44.4		
			171 to 300	33.4		
LTR-R	215.9	279.4	64 to 105	53.2	53.2	38.6
			106 to 170	42.4	42.4	31.9
			171 to 300	31.9	31.9	
A4R	210	297	64 to 105	50.1	50.1	36.3
			106 to 170	39.9	39.9	30
			171 to 300	30	30	
LGL	215.9	355.6	64 to 105	41.8	41.8	30.4
			106 to 170	33.3	33.3	25.1
			171 to 300	25.1	25.1	
B4	257	364	64 to 105	40.9	40.9	27.7
			106 to 170	36.9	36.9	
			171 to 300	30.9	30.9	
K8	270	390	64 to 105	38.1	38.1	27.7
			106 to 170	34.4	34.4	
			171 to 300	28.8	28.8	
A3	297	420	64 to 105	36	36	25.7
			106 to 170			
			171 to 300			
LDR	279.4	431.8	64 to 105	35	35	25
			106 to 170			
			171 to 300			
SR-A3	320	450	64 to 105	33.6	33.6	24
			106 to 170			
			171 to 300			
12x18	304.8	457.2	64 to 105	33.1	33.1	23.6
			106 to 170			
			171 to 300			
13x18.5	330.2	469.9	64 to 105	32.2	32.2	23
			106 to 170			
			171 to 300			
13x19	330.2	482.6	64 to 105	31.3	31.3	22.4
			106 to 170			
			171 to 300			
13x19.2	330.2	487.7	64 to 105	31	31	22.1
			106 to 170			
			171 to 300			
A4-Tab	297	220	64 to 105	68.7	68.7	49.1
			106 to 170			
			171 to 300			
LTR-Tab	279.4	225.9	64 to 105	66.9	66.9	47.8
			106 to 170			
			171 to 300			

In Case of Duplexing (Without Magnification Change in the Vertical Scanning):

The symbol '!' indicates non-supporting.

T-1-15

Paper				In Case of Duplexing (Without Magnification Change in the Vertical Scanning)				
Size	Paper width (mm)	Paper length (mm)	Grammage (g/m ²)	Right/left deck of the main body / POD deck (ipm)	Side paper deck (ipm)	Manual Pickup Tray (ipm)		
B5	257	182	64 to 105	70	70	50		
			106 to 170					
			171 to 300				61.8	61.8
Executive	266.7	184.2	64 to 105	70	70	50		
			106 to 170					
			171 to 300				61.1	61.1
K16	270	195	64 to 105	70	70	50		
			106 to 170				68.9	68.9
			171 to 300				57.7	57.7

Paper				In Case of Duplexing (Without Magnification Change in the Vertical Scanning)			
Size	Paper width (mm)	Paper length (mm)	Grammage (g/m ²)	Right/left deck of the main body / POD deck (ipm)	Side paper deck (ipm)	Manual Pickup Tray (ipm)	
A5R	148.5	210	64 to 105	-	-	50	
			106 to 170			42.4	
			171 to 300				
A4	297	210	64 to 105	70	70	50	
			106 to 170				
			171 to 300				
STMT-R	139.7	215.9	64 to 105	-	-	50	
			106 to 170			41.3	
			171 to 300				
LTR	279.4	215.9	64 to 105	70	70	50	
			106 to 170				
			171 to 300				
B5R	182	257	64 to 105	46	46	42	
			106 to 170			34.7	
			171 to 300			34.7	
Executive-R	184.2	266.7	64 to 105	45	-	-	
			106 to 170				44.4
			171 to 300				33.4
LTR-R	215.9	279.4	64 to 105	45	45	38.6	
			106 to 170				42.4
			171 to 300				31.9
A4R	210	297	64 to 105	45	45	36.3	
			106 to 170				39.9
			171 to 300				30
LGL	215.9	355.6	64 to 105	41.8	41.8	30.4	
			106 to 170				33.3
			171 to 300				25.1
B4	257	364	64 to 105	40.9	40.9	27.7	
			106 to 170				36.9
			171 to 300				30.9
K8	270	390	64 to 105	38.1	38.1	27.7	
			106 to 170				34.4
			171 to 300				28.8
A3	297	420	64 to 105	36	36	25.7	
			106 to 170				
			171 to 300				
LDR	279.4	431.8	64 to 105	35	35	25	
			106 to 170				
			171 to 300				
SR-A3	320	450	64 to 105	33.6	33.6	24	
			106 to 170				
			171 to 300				
12x18	304.8	457.2	64 to 105	33.1	33.1	23.6	
			106 to 170				
			171 to 300				
13x18.5	330.2	469.9	64 to 105	32.2	32.2	23	
			106 to 170				
			171 to 300				
13x19	330.2	482.6	64 to 105	31.3	31.3	22.4	
			106 to 170				
			171 to 300				
13x19.2	330.2	487.7	64 to 105	31	31	22.1	
			106 to 170				
			171 to 300				
A4-Tab	297	220	64 to 105	68.7	68.7	49.1	
			106 to 170				
			171 to 300				
LTR-Tab	279.4	225.9	64 to 105	66.9	66.9	47.8	
			106 to 170				
			171 to 300				

In Case of Duplexing (With Magnification Change in the Vertical Scanning):

The symbol '-' indicates non-supporting.

T-1-16

Paper				In Case of Duplexing (With Magnification Change in the Vertical Scanning)		
Size	Paper width (mm)	Paper length (mm)	Grammage (g/m ²)	Right/left deck of the main body / POD deck (ipm)	Side paper deck (ipm)	Manual Pickup Tray (ipm)
B5	257	182	64 to 105	69.1	69.1	50
			106 to 170			
			171 to 300			
Executive	266.7	184.2	64 to 105	70	70	50
			106 to 170			
			171 to 300			
K16	270	195	64 to 105	69.1	69.1	50
			106 to 170			
			171 to 300			
A5R	148.5	210	64 to 105	-	-	50
			106 to 170			42.4
			171 to 300			
A4	297	210	64 to 105	65.4	65.4	50
			106 to 170			
			171 to 300			
STMT-R	139.7	215.9	64 to 105	-	-	50
			106 to 170			41.3
			171 to 300			
LTR	279.4	215.9	64 to 105	64	64	50
			106 to 170			
			171 to 300			
B5R	182	257	64 to 105	46	46	42
			106 to 170			34.7
			171 to 300			34.7
Executive-R	184.2	266.7	64 to 105	45	-	-
			106 to 170			
			171 to 300			
LTR-R	215.9	279.4	64 to 105	45	45	38.6
			106 to 170			
			171 to 300			
A4R	210	297	64 to 105	45	45	36.3
			106 to 170			
			171 to 300			
LGL	215.9	355.6	64 to 105	41.8	41.8	30.4
			106 to 170			
			171 to 300			
B4	257	364	64 to 105	40.9	39.5	27.7
			106 to 170			
			171 to 300			
K8	270	390	64 to 105	38.1	38.1	27.7
			106 to 170			
			171 to 300			
A3	297	420	64 to 105	36	36	25.7
			106 to 170			
			171 to 300			
LDR	279.4	431.8	64 to 105	35	35	25
			106 to 170			
			171 to 300			
SR-A3	320	450	64 to 105	33.6	33.6	24
			106 to 170			
			171 to 300			
12x18	304.8	457.2	64 to 105	33.1	33.1	23.6
			106 to 170			
			171 to 300			
13x18.5	330.2	469.9	64 to 105	32.2	32.2	23
			106 to 170			
			171 to 300			

Paper				In Case of Duplexing (With Magnification Change in the Vertical Scanning)		
Size	Paper width (mm)	Paper length (mm)	Grammage (g/m ²)	Right/left deck of the main body / POD deck (ipm)	Side paper deck (ipm)	Manual Pickup Tray (ipm)
13x19	330.2	482.6	64 to 105	31.3	31.3	22.4
			106 to 170			
			171 to 300			
13x19.2	330.2	487.7	64 to 105	31	31	22.1
			106 to 170			
			171 to 300			
A4-Tab	297	220	64 to 105	63.1	63.1	49.1
			106 to 170			
			171 to 300			
LTR-Tab	279.4	225.9	64 to 105	61.8	61.8	47.8
			106 to 170			
			171 to 300			

1.2.6.2 Printing Speed

imagePRESS C6000

In case of the automatic duplexing, the speed will decrease if the speed changes for the second side.

In Case of 1-Sided (Straight/Reversing Delivery):

The symbol '-' indicates non-supporting.

T-1-17

Paper				In Case of 1-Sided (Straight/Reversing Delivery)					
Size	Paper width (mm)	Paper length (mm)	Grammage (g/m ²)	Right/left deck of the main body / POD deck (ipm)	Side paper deck (ipm)	Manual Pickup Tray (ipm)			
B5	257	182	64 to 105	70	70	41			
			106 to 135	65.1	65.1				
			136 to 170						
			171 to 220				49	49	
			221 to 300				47.5	47.5	
Executive	266.7	184.2	64 to 105	70	70	41			
			106 to 135	64.3	64.3				
			136 to 170						
			171 to 220				48.4	48.4	
			221 to 300				47	47	
K16	270	195	64 to 105	66.4	66.4	41			
			106 to 135	60.7	60.7				
			136 to 170						
			171 to 220				45.7	45.7	
			221 to 300				44.4	44.4	
A5R	148.5	210	64 to 105	-	-	41			
			106 to 135						
			136 to 170						
			171 to 220						
			221 to 300						
A4	297	210	64 to 105	61.7	61.7	41			
			106 to 135	53.6	53.6				
			136 to 170						
			171 to 220				53.6	53.6	
			221 to 300				41.2	41.2	
STMT-R	139.7	215.9	64 to 105	-	-	41			
			106 to 135						
			136 to 170						
			171 to 220						
			221 to 300						
LTR	279.4	215.9	64 to 105	60	60	41			
			106 to 135	52.1	52.1				
			136 to 170						
			171 to 220				52.1	52.1	
			221 to 300				40.1	40.1	
B5R	182	257	64 to 105	50.4	50.4	34.4			
			106 to 135	46.1	46.1				
			136 to 170						
			171 to 220				34.7	34.7	
			221 to 300				34.7	34.7	
Executive-R	184.2	266.7	64 to 105	48.6	-	-			
			106 to 135	44.4			44.4		
			136 to 170						
			171 to 220					33.4	33.4
			221 to 300					33.4	33.4
LTR-R	215.9	279.4	64 to 105	46.3	46.3	31.7			
			106 to 135	42.4	42.4				
			136 to 170						
			171 to 220				31.9	31.9	
			221 to 300				31.9	31.9	

Paper				In Case of 1-Sided (Straight/Reversing Delivery)		
Size	Paper width (mm)	Paper length (mm)	Grammage (g/m ²)	Right/left deck of the main body / POD deck (ipm)	Side paper deck (ipm)	Manual Pickup Tray (ipm)
A4R	210	297	64 to 105	43.6	43.6	29.8
			106 to 135	39.9	39.9	
			136 to 170			
			171 to 220	30	30	
			221 to 300			
LGL	215.9	355.6	64 to 105	36.4	36.4	24.9
			106 to 135	33.3	33.3	
			136 to 170			
			171 to 220	25.1	25.1	
			221 to 300			
B4	257	364	64 to 105	35.6	35.6	24.3
			106 to 135	32.5	32.5	
			136 to 170			
			171 to 220	24.5	24.5	
			221 to 300	23.8	23.8	
K8	270	390	64 to 105	33.2	33.2	22.7
			106 to 135	30.4	30.4	
			136 to 170			
			171 to 220	22.8	22.8	
			221 to 300	22.2	22.2	
A3	297	420	64 to 105	30.8	30.8	21.1
			106 to 135	26.8	26.8	
			136 to 170			
			171 to 220	20.6	20.6	
			221 to 300			
LDR	279.4	431.8	64 to 105	30	30	20.5
			106 to 135	26.1	26.1	
			136 to 170			
			171 to 220	20	20	
			221 to 300			
SR-A3	320	450	64 to 105	28.8	28.8	19.7
			106 to 135	25	25	
			136 to 170			
			171 to 220	19.2	19.2	
			221 to 300			
12x18	304.8	457.2	64 to 105	28.3	28.3	19.4
			106 to 135	24.6	24.6	
			136 to 170			
			171 to 220	18.9	18.9	
			221 to 300			
13x18.5	330.2	469.9	64 to 105	27.6	27.6	18.8
			106 to 135	23.9	23.9	
			136 to 170			
			171 to 220	18.4	18.4	
			221 to 300			
13x19	330.2	482.6	64 to 105	26.8	26.8	18.3
			106 to 135	23.3	23.3	
			136 to 170			
			171 to 220	17.9	17.9	
			221 to 300			
13x19.2	330.2	487.7	64 to 105	26.6	26.6	18.2
			106 to 135	23.1	23.1	
			136 to 170			
			171 to 220	17.7	17.7	
			221 to 300			
A4-Tab	297	220	64 to 105	58.9	58.9	40.2
			106 to 135	51.1	51.1	
			136 to 170			
			171 to 220	39.3	39.3	
			221 to 300			

Paper				In Case of 1-Sided (Straight/Reversing Delivery)		
Size	Paper width (mm)	Paper length (mm)	Grammage (g/m ²)	Right/left deck of the main body / POD deck (ipm)	Side paper deck (ipm)	Manual Pickup Tray (ipm)
LTR-Tab	279.4	225.9	64 to 105	57.3	57.3	39.2
			106 to 135			
			136 to 170	49.8	49.8	
			171 to 220			
			221 to 300	38.3	38.3	

In Case of Duplexing (Without Magnification Change in the Vertical Scanning):

The symbol '-' indicates non-supporting.

T-1-18

Paper				In Case of Duplexing (Without Magnification Change in the Vertical Scanning)		
Size	Paper width (mm)	Paper length (mm)	Grammage (g/m ²)	Right/left deck of the main body / POD deck (ipm)	Side paper deck (ipm)	Manual Pickup Tray (ipm)
B5	257	182	64 to 105	70	70	33.2
			106 to 135	65.1	65.1	
			136 to 170			
			171 to 220	49	49	
			221 to 300	47.5	47.5	
Exective	266.7	184.2	64 to 105	70	70	33.2
			106 to 135	64.3	64.3	
			136 to 170			
			171 to 220	48.4	48.4	
			221 to 300	47	47	
K16	270	195	64 to 105	66.4	66.4	33.2
			106 to 135	60.7	60.7	
			136 to 170			
			171 to 220	45.7	45.7	
			221 to 300	44.4	44.4	
A5R	148.5	210	64 to 105	-	-	33.2
			106 to 135			
			136 to 170			
			171 to 220			
			221 to 300			
A4	297	210	64 to 105	61.7	61.7	33.2
			106 to 135	53.6	53.6	
			136 to 170			
			171 to 220	41.2	41.2	
			221 to 300			
STMT-R	139.7	215.9	64 to 105	-	-	33.2
			106 to 135			
			136 to 170			
			171 to 220			
			221 to 300			
LTR	279.4	215.9	64 to 105	60	60	33.2
			106 to 135	52.1	52.1	
			136 to 170			
			171 to 220	40.1	40.1	
			221 to 300			
B5R	182	257	64 to 105	45	46	34.4
			106 to 135	34.7	34.7	
			136 to 170			
			171 to 220			
			221 to 300			
Exective-R	184.2	266.7	64 to 105	44	-	-
			106 to 135			
			136 to 170			
			171 to 220	33.4		
			221 to 300			

Paper				In Case of Duplexing (Without Magnification Change in the Vertical Scanning)		
Size	Paper width (mm)	Paper length (mm)	Grammage (g/m ²)	Right/left deck of the main body / POD deck (ipm)	Side paper deck (ipm)	Manual Pickup Tray (ipm)
LTR-R	215.9	279.4	64 to 105	44	45	31.7
			106 to 135	42.4	42.4	
			136 to 170			
			171 to 220	31.9	31.9	
			221 to 300			
A4R	210	297	64 to 105	43.6	43.6	29.8
			106 to 135	39.9	39.9	
			136 to 170			
			171 to 220	30	30	
			221 to 300			
LGL	215.9	355.6	64 to 105	36.4	36.4	24.9
			106 to 135	33.3	33.3	
			136 to 170			
			171 to 220	25.1	25.1	
			221 to 300			
B4	257	364	64 to 105	35.6	35.6	24.3
			106 to 135	32.5	32.5	
			136 to 170			
			171 to 220	24.5	24.5	
			221 to 300	23.8	23.8	
K8	270	390	64 to 105	33.2	33.2	22.7
			106 to 135	30.4	30.4	
			136 to 170			
			171 to 220	22.8	22.8	
			221 to 300	22.2	22.2	
A3	297	420	64 to 105	30.8	30.8	21.1
			106 to 135	26.8	26.8	
			136 to 170			
			171 to 220	20.6	20.6	
			221 to 300			
LDR	279.4	431.8	64 to 105	30	30	20.5
			106 to 135	26.1	26.1	
			136 to 170			
			171 to 220	20	20	
			221 to 300			
SR-A3	320	450	64 to 105	28.8	28.8	19.7
			106 to 135	25	25	
			136 to 170			
			171 to 220	19.2	19.2	
			221 to 300			
12x18	304.8	457.2	64 to 105	28.3	28.3	19.4
			106 to 135	24.6	24.6	
			136 to 170			
			171 to 220	18.9	18.9	
			221 to 300			
13x18.5	330.2	469.9	64 to 105	27.6	27.6	18.8
			106 to 135	23.9	23.9	
			136 to 170			
			171 to 220	18.4	18.4	
			221 to 300			
13x19	330.2	482.6	64 to 105	26.8	26.8	18.3
			106 to 135	23.3	23.3	
			136 to 170			
			171 to 220	17.9	17.9	
			221 to 300			
13x19.2	330.2	487.7	64 to 105	26.6	26.6	18.2
			106 to 135	23.1	23.1	
			136 to 170			
			171 to 220	17.7	17.7	
			221 to 300			

Paper				In Case of Duplexing (Without Magnification Change in the Vertical Scanning)		
Size	Paper width (mm)	Paper length (mm)	Grammage (g/m ²)	Right/left deck of the main body / POD deck (ipm)	Side paper deck (ipm)	Manual Pickup Tray (ipm)
A4-Tab	297	220	64 to 105	58.9	58.9	40.2
			106 to 135			
			136 to 170	51.1	51.1	
			171 to 220			
			221 to 300			
LTR-Tab	279.4	225.9	64 to 105	57.3	57.3	39.2
			106 to 135			
			136 to 170	49.8	49.8	
			171 to 220			
			221 to 300			

In Case of Duplexing (With Magnification Change in the Vertical Scanning):

The symbol 'L' indicates non-supporting.

T-1-19

Paper				In Case of Duplexing (With Magnification Change in the Vertical Scanning)		
Size	Paper width (mm)	Paper length (mm)	Grammage (g/m ²)	Right/left deck of the main body / POD deck (ipm)	Side paper deck (ipm)	Manual Pickup Tray (ipm)
B5	257	182	64 to 105	69.1	69.1	41
			106 to 135	65.1	65.1	
			136 to 170			
			171 to 220	49	49	
			221 to 300	47.5	47.5	
Exective	266.7	184.2	64 to 105	70	70	41
			106 to 135	64.3	64.3	
			136 to 170			
			171 to 220	48.4	48.4	
			221 to 300	47	47	
K16	270	195	64 to 105	66.4	66.4	41
			106 to 135	60.7	60.7	
			136 to 170			
			171 to 220	45.7	45.7	
			221 to 300	44.4	44.4	
A5R	148.5	210	64 to 105	-	-	41
			106 to 135			
			136 to 170			
			171 to 220			
			221 to 300			
A4	297	210	64 to 105	61.7	61.7	41
			106 to 135	53.6	53.6	
			136 to 170			
			171 to 220	41.2	41.2	
			221 to 300			
STMT-R	139.7	215.9	64 to 105	-	-	41
			106 to 135			
			136 to 170			
			171 to 220			
			221 to 300			
LTR	279.4	215.9	64 to 105	60	60	41
			106 to 135	52.1	52.1	
			136 to 170			
			171 to 220	40.1	40.1	
			221 to 300			
B5R	182	257	64 to 105	45	46	34.4
			106 to 135			
			136 to 170	34.7	34.7	
			171 to 220			
			221 to 300			

Paper				In Case of Duplexing (With Magnification Change in the Vertical Scanning)		
Size	Paper width (mm)	Paper length (mm)	Grammage (g/m ²)	Right/left deck of the main body / POD deck (ipm)	Side paper deck (ipm)	Manual Pickup Tray (ipm)
Executive-R	184.2	266.7	64 to 105	44	-	-
			106 to 135			
			136 to 170			
			171 to 220	33.4		
			221 to 300			
LTR-R	215.9	279.4	64 to 105	44	45	31.7
			106 to 135	42.4	42.4	
			136 to 170			
			171 to 220	31.9	31.9	
			221 to 300			
A4R	210	297	64 to 105	43.6	43.6	29.8
			106 to 135	39.9	39.9	
			136 to 170			
			171 to 220	30	30	
			221 to 300			
LGL	215.9	355.6	64 to 105	36.4	36.4	24.9
			106 to 135	33.3	33.3	
			136 to 170			
			171 to 220	25.1	25.1	
			221 to 300			
B4	257	364	64 to 105	35.6	35.6	24.3
			106 to 135	32.5	32.5	
			136 to 170			
			171 to 220	23.8	23.8	
			221 to 300			
K8	270	390	64 to 105	33.2	33.2	22.7
			106 to 135	30.4	30.4	
			136 to 170			
			171 to 220	22.2	22.2	
			221 to 300			
A3	297	420	64 to 105	30.8	30.8	21.1
			106 to 135	26.8	26.8	
			136 to 170			
			171 to 220	20.6	20.6	
			221 to 300			
LDR	279.4	431.8	64 to 105	30	30	20.5
			106 to 135	26.1	26.1	
			136 to 170			
			171 to 220	20	20	
			221 to 300			
SR-A3	320	450	64 to 105	28.8	28.8	19.7
			106 to 135	25	25	
			136 to 170			
			171 to 220	19.2	19.2	
			221 to 300			
12x18	304.8	457.2	64 to 105	28.3	28.3	19.4
			106 to 135	24.6	24.6	
			136 to 170			
			171 to 220	18.9	18.9	
			221 to 300			
13x18.5	330.2	469.9	64 to 105	27.6	27.6	18.8
			106 to 135	23.9	23.9	
			136 to 170			
			171 to 220	18.4	18.4	
			221 to 300			
13x19	330.2	482.6	64 to 105	26.8	26.8	18.3
			106 to 135	23.3	23.3	
			136 to 170			
			171 to 220	17.9	17.9	
			221 to 300			

Paper				In Case of Duplexing (With Magnification Change in the Vertical Scanning)		
Size	Paper width (mm)	Paper length (mm)	Grammage (g/m ²)	Right/left deck of the main body / POD deck (ipm)	Side paper deck (ipm)	Manual Pickup Tray (ipm)
13x19.2	330.2	487.7	64 to 105	26.6	26.6	18.2
			106 to 135			
			136 to 170	23.1	23.1	
			171 to 220			
			221 to 300			
A4-Tab	297	220	64 to 105	58.9	58.9	40.2
			106 to 135			
			136 to 170	51.1	51.1	
			171 to 220			
			221 to 300			
LTR-Tab	279.4	225.9	64 to 105	57.3	57.3	39.2
			106 to 135			
			136 to 170	49.8	49.8	
			171 to 220			
			221 to 300			

1.2.6.3 Printing Speed

imagePRESS C6000VP

Regardless of the paper configuration, surface nature, grammage, or paper size, the printing speed is normal speed only. However, in case of the automatic duplexing, the speed will decrease if the speed changes for the second side.

In Case of 1-Sided (Straight/Reversing Delivery):

The symbol '-' indicates non-supporting.

T-1-20

Paper			In Case of 1-Sided (Straight/Reversing Delivery)			
Size	Paper width (mm)	Paper length (mm)	Grammage (g/m ²)	Right/left deck of the main body / POD deck (ipm)	Side paper deck (ipm)	Manual Pickup Tray (ipm)
B5	257	182	64 to 105	70	70	41
			106 to 170			
			171 to 300			
Executive	266.7	184.2	64 to 105	70	70	41
			106 to 170			
			171 to 300			
K16	270	195	64 to 105	70	70	41
			106 to 170			
			171 to 300			
A5R	148.5	210	64 to 105	-	-	41
			106 to 170			
			171 to 300			
A4	297	210	64 to 105	61.7	61.7	41
			106 to 170			
			171 to 300			
STMT-R	139.7	215.9	64 to 105	-	-	41
			106 to 170			
			171 to 300			
LTR	279.4	215.9	64 to 105	60	60	41
			106 to 170			
			171 to 300			
B5R	182	257	64 to 105	57.9	57.9	34.4
			106 to 170	46.1	46.1	
			171 to 300	34.7	34.7	
Executive-R	184.2	266.7	64 to 105	55.8	-	-
			106 to 170	44.4		
			171 to 300	33.4		
LTR-R	215.9	279.4	64 to 105	53.2	53.2	31.7
			106 to 170	42.4		
			171 to 300	31.9		
A4R	210	297	64 to 105	50.1	50.1	29.8
			106 to 170	39.9		
			171 to 300	30		
LGL	215.9	355.6	64 to 105	41.8	41.8	24.9
			106 to 170	33.3		
			171 to 300	25.1		
B4	257	364	64 to 105	40.9	40.9	24.3
			106 to 170	36.9		
			171 to 300	30.9		
K8	270	390	64 to 105	38.1	38.1	22.7
			106 to 170	34.4		
			171 to 300	28.8		
A3	297	420	64 to 105	30.8	30.8	21.1
			106 to 170			
			171 to 300			
LDR	279.4	431.8	64 to 105	30	30	20.5
			106 to 170			
			171 to 300			
SR-A3	320	450	64 to 105	28.8	28.8	19.7
			106 to 170			
			171 to 300			

Paper				In Case of 1-Sided (Straight/Reversing Delivery)		
Size	Paper width (mm)	Paper length (mm)	Grammage (g/m ²)	Right/left deck of the main body / POD deck (ipm)	Side paper deck (ipm)	Manual Pickup Tray (ipm)
12x18	304.8	457.2	64 to 105	28.3	28.3	19.4
			106 to 170			
			171 to 300			
13x18.5	330.2	469.9	64 to 105	27.6	27.6	18.8
			106 to 170			
			171 to 300			
13x19	330.2	482.6	64 to 105	26.8	26.8	18.3
			106 to 170			
			171 to 300			
13x19.2	330.2	487.7	64 to 105	26.6	26.6	18.2
			106 to 170			
			171 to 300			
A4-Tab	297	220	64 to 105	58.9	58.9	40.2
			106 to 170			
			171 to 300			
LTR-Tab	279.4	225.9	64 to 105	57.3	57.3	39.2
			106 to 170			
			171 to 300			

In Case of Duplexing (Without Magnification Change in the Vertical Scanning):

The symbol '-' indicates non-supporting.

T-1-21

Paper				In Case of Duplexing (Without Magnification Change in the Vertical Scanning)		
Size	Paper width (mm)	Paper length (mm)	Grammage (g/m ²)	Right/left deck of the main body / POD deck (ipm)	Side paper deck (ipm)	Manual Pickup Tray (ipm)
B5	257	182	64 to 105	70	70	41
			106 to 170			
			171 to 300			
Executive	266.7	184.2	64 to 105	70	70	41
			106 to 170			
			171 to 300			
K16	270	195	64 to 105	70	70	41
			106 to 170			
			171 to 300			
A5R	148.5	210	64 to 105	-	-	41
			106 to 170			
			171 to 300			
A4	297	210	64 to 105	61.7	61.7	41
			106 to 170			
			171 to 300			
STMT-R	139.7	215.9	64 to 105	-	-	41
			106 to 170			
			171 to 300			
LTR	279.4	215.9	64 to 105	60	60	41
			106 to 170			
			171 to 300			
B5R	182	257	64 to 105	45	46	34.4
			106 to 170			
			171 to 300			
Executive-R	184.2	266.7	64 to 105	44	-	-
			106 to 170			
			171 to 300			
LTR-R	215.9	279.4	64 to 105	44	45	31.7
			106 to 170			
			171 to 300			
A4R	210	297	64 to 105	44	45	29.8
			106 to 170			
			171 to 300			
LGL	215.9	355.6	64 to 105	41.8	41.8	24.9
			106 to 170			
			171 to 300			

Paper				In Case of Duplexing (Without Magnification Change in the Vertical Scanning)		
Size	Paper width (mm)	Paper length (mm)	Grammage (g/m ²)	Right/left deck of the main body / POD deck (ipm)	Side paper deck (ipm)	Manual Pickup Tray (ipm)
B4	257	364	64 to 105	40.9	40.9	24.3
			106 to 170	36.9	36.9	
			171 to 300	30.9	30.9	
K8	270	390	64 to 105	38.1	38.1	22.7
			106 to 170	34.4	34.4	
			171 to 300	28.8	28.8	
A3	297	420	64 to 105	30.8	30.8	21.1
			106 to 170			
			171 to 300			
LDR	279.4	431.8	64 to 105	30	30	20.5
			106 to 170			
			171 to 300			
SR-A3	320	450	64 to 105	28.8	28.8	19.7
			106 to 170			
			171 to 300			
12x18	304.8	457.2	64 to 105	28.3	28.3	19.4
			106 to 170			
			171 to 300			
13x18.5	330.2	469.9	64 to 105	27.6	27.6	18.8
			106 to 170			
			171 to 300			
13x19	330.2	482.6	64 to 105	26.8	26.8	18.3
			106 to 170			
			171 to 300			
13x19.2	330.2	487.7	64 to 105	26.6	26.6	18.2
			106 to 170			
			171 to 300			
A4-Tab	297	220	64 to 105	58.9	58.9	40.2
			106 to 170			
			171 to 300			
LTR-Tab	279.4	225.9	64 to 105	57.3	57.3	39.2
			106 to 170			
			171 to 300			

In Case of Duplexing (With Magnification Change in the Vertical Scanning):

The symbol '-' indicates non-supporting.

T-1-22

Paper				In Case of Duplexing (With Magnification Change in the Vertical Scanning)		
Size	Paper width (mm)	Paper length (mm)	Grammage (g/m ²)	Right/left deck of the main body / POD deck (ipm)	Side paper deck (ipm)	Manual Pickup Tray (ipm)
B5	257	182	64 to 105	69.1	69.1	41
			106 to 170			
			171 to 300			
Executive	266.7	184.2	64 to 105	70	70	41
			106 to 170			
			171 to 300			
K16	270	195	64 to 105	69.1	69.1	41
			106 to 170			
			171 to 300			
A5R	148.5	210	64 to 105	-	-	41
			106 to 170			
			171 to 300			
A4	297	210	64 to 105	61.7	61.7	41
			106 to 170			
			171 to 300			
STMT-R	139.7	215.9	64 to 105	-	-	41
			106 to 170			
			171 to 300			
LTR	279.4	215.9	64 to 105	60	60	41
			106 to 170			
			171 to 300			

Paper				In Case of Duplexing (With Magnification Change in the Vertical Scanning)		
Size	Paper width (mm)	Paper length (mm)	Grammage (g/m ²)	Right/left deck of the main body / POD deck (ipm)	Side paper deck (ipm)	Manual Pickup Tray (ipm)
B5R	182	257	64 to 105	45	46	34.4
			106 to 170			
			171 to 300	34.7	34.7	
Executive-R	184.2	266.7	64 to 105	44	-	-
			106 to 170			
			171 to 300	33.4		
LTR-R	215.9	279.4	64 to 105	44	45	31.7
			106 to 170	42.4	42.4	
			171 to 300	31.9	31.9	
A4R	210	297	64 to 105	44	45	29.8
			106 to 170	39.9	39.9	
			171 to 300	30	30	
LGL	215.9	355.6	64 to 105	41.8	41.8	24.9
			106 to 170	33.3	33.3	
			171 to 300	25.1	25.1	
B4	257	364	64 to 105	40.9	40.9	24.3
			106 to 170	36.9	36.9	
			171 to 300	30.9	30.9	
K8	270	390	64 to 105	38.1	38.1	22.7
			106 to 170	34.4	34.4	
			171 to 300	28.8	28.8	
A3	297	420	64 to 105	30.8	30.8	21.1
			106 to 170			
			171 to 300			
LDR	279.4	431.8	64 to 105	30	30	20.5
			106 to 170			
			171 to 300			
SR-A3	320	450	64 to 105	28.8	28.8	19.7
			106 to 170			
			171 to 300			
12x18	304.8	457.2	64 to 105	28.3	28.3	19.4
			106 to 170			
			171 to 300			
13x18.5	330.2	469.9	64 to 105	27.6	27.6	18.8
			106 to 170			
			171 to 300			
13x19	330.2	482.6	64 to 105	26.8	26.8	18.3
			106 to 170			
			171 to 300			
13x19.2	330.2	487.7	64 to 105	26.6	26.6	18.2
			106 to 170			
			171 to 300			
A4-Tab	297	220	64 to 105	58.9	58.9	40.2
			106 to 170			
			171 to 300			
LTR-Tab	279.4	225.9	64 to 105	57.3	57.3	39.2
			106 to 170			
			171 to 300			

1.2.6.4 Paper Types

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000



The media of 64 to 79 g/m² of coated paper is out of specification in this equipment. When being passed through, it is stuck on the fixing assembly, causing jam; In the worst case, it may break the fixing assembly.

The paper types that can be used are shown below.
For the irregular paper, see the following table.

T-1-23

Size	Paper length (mm)	Paper width (mm)
Irregular 1-1	364 to 487.7	304.9 to 330.2
Irregular 1-2	297.1 to 363.9	304.9 to 330.2
Irregular 1-3	182.0 to 297.0	320.1 to 330.2
Irregular 1-4	182.0 to 228.6	304.9 to 320
Irregular 1-5	228.7 to 297.0	304.9 to 320
Irregular 2-1	457.3 to 487.7	215.9 to 256.9
Irregular 2-4	457.3 to 487.7	257 to 304.8
Irregular 2-2	297.1 to 457.2	215.9 to 256.9
Irregular 2-5	364 to 457.2	257 to 304.8
Irregular 2-6	297.1 to 363.9	257 to 304.8
Irregular 2-3	182.0 to 297.0	215.9 to 256.9
Irregular 2-7	228.7 to 297.0	257 to 304.8
Irregular 2-8	182.0 to 228.6	257 to 304.8
Irregular 3-1	457.3 to 487.7	182.0 to 215.8
Irregular 3-2	297.1 to 457.2	182.0 to 215.8
Irregular 3-3	182.0 to 297.0	182.0 to 215.8
Irregular 4-1	457.3 to 487.7	139.7 to 181.9
Irregular 4-2	182.0 to 457.2	139.7 to 181.9
Irregular 5 (extra long)	487.8 to 630.0	139.7 to 330.2

Pickup

T-1-24

Type (g/m ²)	Size	Right/left deck of the main body POD deck	POD deck light	Manual Feed Tray
Thin paper (64 to 79)	A3, B4, A4R, A4, B5, 11x17, LGL, LTR, LTRR, SRA3, 12x18, 13x19	yes	yes	yes
Recycled paper (64 to 79, 80 to 105, 210 to 256)	EXEC-R, OFFICIO, E-OFFICIO, B-OFFICIO, M-OFFICIO, A-OFFICIO, FOLIO, A-LTR, A-LTRR, GLTR-R, GLTR, GLGL, AFLS, FLS	yes	yes	no
Color paper (64 to 79)	B5R, EXEC, K8, K16, Irregular (1-1/2/3/4/5, 2-1/4/2/5/6/3/7/8, 3-1/2/3)	yes	no	yes
Plain paper (80 to 105)	A5R, STMTR, Irregular (4-1/2)	no	no	yes
Heavy paper (106 to 128, 129 to 150, 151 to 180, 181 to 209, 210 to 256)	Irregular (extra long)			
1-sided coated paper (80 to 105, 106 to 128, 129 to 150, 151 to 180, 181 to 209, 210 to 256)		no	no	no
2-sided coated paper (80 to 105, 106 to 128, 129 to 150, 151 to 180, 181 to 209, 210 to 256)				
Vellum paper (80 to 105, 106 to 128)				
Embossed paper (80 to 105, 106 to 128, 129 to 150, 151 to 180, 181 to 209, 210 to 256)				
Bond paper				
Punched paper (64 to 79, 80 to 105)				
Heavy paper (257 to 300)	A3, B4, A4R, A4, B5, 11x17, LGL, LTR, LTRR, SRA3, 12x18, 13x19	yes	yes	no
1-sided coated paper (257 to 300)	EXEC-R, OFFICIO, E-OFFICIO, B-OFFICIO, M-OFFICIO, A-OFFICIO, FOLIO, A-LTR, A-LTRR, GLTR-R, GLTR, GLGL, AFLS, FLS	yes	yes	no
2-sided coated paper (257 to 300)	B5R, EXEC, K8, K16, Irregular (1-1/2/3/4/5, 2-1/4/2/5/6/3/7/8, 3-1/2/3)	yes	no	no
Embossed paper (257 to 300)	A5R, STMTR, Irregular (4-1/2)	no	no	no
	Irregular (extra long)	no	no	no
Transparency	A4R, A4, LTRR, LTR	yes	yes	yes
Label	A4, B4, A3, LTR	yes	yes	yes
Index (151 to 180, 181 to 209)	A4, LTR	yes	no	yes
Postcard	Postcard	no	no	no
	Return postcard	no	no	yes
	4-pane card	yes	no	yes

Delivery

1. Reversal, Automatic duplexing, Common, Main body/delivery

T-1-25

Type (g/m2)	Size	Reversal	Automatic duplexing	Common		Main body/delivery	
				Rotation sort	Rotation group	Face-down	Face-up
Thin paper (64 to 79) Recycled paper (64 to 79, 80 to 105, 210 to 256) Color paper (64 to 79) Plain paper (80 to 105)	A4R, A4, B5R, B5, LTR, LTRR	yes	yes	yes		yes	
Heavy paper (106 to 128, 129 to 150, 151 to 180, 181 to 209, 210 to 256, 257 to 300) 1-sided coated paper (80 to 105, 106 to 128, 129 to 150, 151 to 180, 181 to 209, 210 to 256, 257 to 300) 2-sided coated paper (80 to 105, 106 to 128, 129 to 150, 151 to 180, 181 to 209, 210 to 256, 257 to 300) Vellum paper (80 to 105, 106 to 128) Embossed paper (80 to 105, 106 to 128, 129 to 150, 151 to 180, 181 to 209, 210 to 256, 257 to 300) Bond paper Punched paper (64 to 79, 80 to 105)	A3, B4, 11x17, LGL, SRA3, 12x18, EXEC, EXEC-R, OFFICIO, E-OFFICIO, B-OFFICIO, M-OFFICIO, A-OFFICIO, FOLIO, A-LTR, A-LTRR, GLTR-R, GLTR, GLGL, AFLS, FLS, 13x19, K8, K16, Irregular (1-1/2/3/4/5, 2-1/4/2/5/6/3/7/8, 3-1/2/3)	yes	yes	no		yes	
	A5R, STMTR, Irregular (4-1/2)	no	no	no		no	yes
	Irregular 5 (extra long)	no	no	no		no	
OHP	A4R, A4, LTRR, LTR	no	no	no		no	yes
Label	A4, B4, A3, LTR	no	no	no		no	yes
Index (151 to 180, 181 to 209)	A4, LTR	yes	no	no		yes	
Postcard	Postcard	no	no	no		no	
	Return postcard	no	no	no		no	yes
	4-pane card	yes	yes	no		yes	

2. High Capacity Stacker

T-1-26

Type (g/m2)	Size	High Capacity Stacker							
		Sample tray		Stack tray			Bypass		
		Reversing delivery (FD)	Straight delivery (FU)	Reversing delivery (FD)	Straight delivery (FU)	Shift	Reversing delivery (FD)	Straight delivery (FU)	
Thin paper (64 to 79) Recycled paper (64 to 79, 80 to 105, 210 to 256) Color paper (64 to 79) Plain paper (80 to 105) Heavy paper (106 to 128, 129 to 150, 151 to 180, 181 to 209, 210 to 256, 257 to 300) 1-sided coated paper (80 to 105, 106 to 128, 129 to 150, 151 to 180, 181 to 209, 210 to 256, 257 to 300) 2-sided coated paper (80 to 105, 106 to 128, 129 to 150, 151 to 180, 181 to 209, 210 to 256, 257 to 300) Vellum paper (80 to 105, 106 to 128) Embossed paper (80 to 105, 106 to 128, 129 to 150, 151 to 180, 181 to 209, 210 to 256, 257 to 300) Bond paper Punched paper (64 to 79, 80 to 105)	A3, B4, A4, B5, 11x17, LGL, LTR, LTRR, SRA3, 12x18, EXEC, OFFICIO, E-OFFICIO, B-OFFICIO, M-OFFICIO, A-OFFICIO, A-LTR, A-LTRR, GLTR, FLS, 13x19, K8, K16, Irregular (1-1/2/3/4/5, 2-1/4/2/5/6/3/7/8)	yes			yes			yes	
	A4R, B5R, A5R, STMTR, EXEC-R, FOLIO, GLTR-R, GLGL, AFLS, Irregular (3-1/2/3, 4-1/2)	yes			no			yes	
	Irregular 5 (extra long)	no			no			no	
OHP	A4R, A4, LTRR, LTR	no	yes		no			no	yes
Label	A4, B4, A3, LTR	no	yes		no			no	yes
Index (151 to 180, 181 to 209)	A4, LTR	yes	no	no	yes	yes		yes	yes
Postcard	Postcard	no			no			no	
	Return postcard	yes			no			yes	
	4-pane card	yes			no			yes	

3. Perfect Binder

*1: Heavy paper (181 to 209, 210 to 256, 257 to 300 g/m²), recycled paper (210 to 256 g/m²), 1-sided coated paper (181 to 209, 210 to 256, 257 to 300 g/m²), 2-sided coated paper (181 to 209, 210 to 256, 257 to 300 g/m²), embossed paper (181 to 209, 210 to 256, 257 to 300 g/m²) cannot be used.

*2: Thin paper (64 to 79 g/m²), recycled paper (64 to 79 g/m²), color paper (64 to 79 g/m²) cannot be used.

T-1-27

Type (g/m ²)	Size	Perfect Binder				
		Inserter		Inner sheets	Through pass	Cover sheet
		Upper	Lower			
Thin paper (64 to 79) Recycled paper (64 to 79, 80 to 105, 210 to 256) Color paper (64 to 79)	A4, B5, LTR, EXEC, A-LTR, GLTR, K16, Irregular (1-4, 2-8)	yes* 1	yes* 1	yes* 1	yes	no
Plain paper (80 to 105) Heavy paper (106 to 128, 129 to 150, 151 to 180, 181 to 209, 210 to 256, 257 to 300)	A3, B4, 11x17, SRA3, 12x18, 13x19, K8, Irregular (1-1, 2-4/5)	no	yes* 2	no	yes	yes* 2
1-sided coated paper (80 to 105, 106 to 128, 129 to 150, 151 to 180, 181 to 209, 210 to 256, 257 to 300) 2-sided coated paper (80 to 105, 106 to 128, 129 to 150, 151 to 180, 181 to 209, 210 to 256, 257 to 300) Vellum paper (80 to 105, 106 to 128) Embossed paper (80 to 105, 106 to 128, 129 to 150, 151 to 180, 181 to 209, 210 to 256, 257 to 300) Bond paper	A4R, B5R, A5R, LGL, LTRR, STMTR, EXEC-R, OFFICIO, E-OFFICIO, B- OFFICIO, M-OFFICIO, A-OFFICIO, FOLIO, A-LTRR, GLTR-R, GLGL, AFLS, FLS, Irregular (1-2/3/5, 2-1/2/6/3/ 7, 3-1/2/3, 4-1/2)	no	no	no	yes	no
	Irregular 5(extra long)	no	no	no	no	no
Punched paper (64 to 79, 80 to 105)	A4, LTR	no	no	no	yes	no
	others	no	no	no	no	no
OHP	A4R, A4, LTRR, LTR	no	no	no	yes	no
Label	A4, B4, A3, LTR	no	no	no	yes	no
Index (151 to 180, 181 to 209)	A4, LTR	no	no	no	yes	no
Postcard	Postcard	no	no	no	yes	no
	Return postcard	no	no	no	yes	no
	4-pane card	no	no	no	yes	no

4. Finisher

*1: Heavy paper (210 to 256, 257 to 300 g/m²), recycled paper (210 to 256 g/m²), 1-sided coated paper (210 to 256, 257 to 300 g/m²), 2-sided coated paper (210 to 256, 257 to 300 g/m²), embossed paper (210 to 256, 257 to 300 g/m²), punched paper (64 to 79, 80 to 105 g/m²), vellum paper (80 to 105, 106 to 128 g/m²) cannot be used.

*2: Vellum paper (80 to 105, 106 to 128 g/m²) cannot be used.

*3: The paper of 106 to 300 g/m² of grammage can be used only for the cover sheet.

T-1-28

Type (g/m ²)	Size	Finisher												
		Punch			Upper tray			Lower tray			Common to upper/lower tray	Saddle tray	Inserter	
		2-hole, 4-hole (SWE)	2/3-hole	4-hole (FRN)	Reversing delivery (FD)	Straight delivery (FU)	Sort (alignment) Shift sort	Reversing delivery (FD)	Straight delivery (FU)	Sort (alignment) Shift sort	Front/rear 1-point binding 2-point binding	Center binding, Non-binding	Upper	Lower
Thin paper (64 to 79) Recycled paper (64 to 79, 80 to 105, 210 to 256) Color paper (64 to 79) Plain paper (80 to 105) Heavy paper (106 to 128, 129 to 150, 151 to 180, 181 to 209, 210 to 256, 257 to 300) 1-sided coated paper (80 to 105, 106 to 128, 129 to 150, 151 to 180, 181 to 209, 210 to 256, 257 to 300) 2-sided coated paper (80 to 105, 106 to 128, 129 to 150, 151 to 180, 181 to 209, 210 to 256, 257 to 300) Vellum paper (80 to 105, 106 to 128) Embossed paper (80 to 105, 106 to 128, 129 to 150, 151 to 180, 181 to 209, 210 to 256, 257 to 300) Bond paper Punched paper (64 to 79, 80 to 105)	A3	yes*1	yes*1 (3-hole only)	yes*1	yes	yes*2	yes*2			yes*2	yes*2*3	no	yes	
	B4	yes*1	no	no	yes	yes*2	yes*2			yes*2	yes*2*3	no	yes	
	A4R	yes*1	no	no	yes	yes*2	yes*2			yes*2	yes*2*3	yes		
	A4	yes*1	yes*1 (3-hole only)	yes*1	yes	yes*2	yes*2			yes*2	no	yes		
	B5	yes*1	no	no	yes	yes*2	yes*2			yes*2	no	yes		
	11x17	yes*1	yes*1 (3-hole only)	no	yes	yes*2	yes*2			yes*2	yes*2*3	no	yes	
	LGL		yes*1 (2-hole only)											
	LTRR	yes*1	yes*1 (2-hole only)	no	yes	yes*2	yes*2			yes*2	yes*2*3	yes		
	LTR, EXEC	yes*1	yes*1 (3-hole only)	no	yes	yes*2	yes*2			yes*2	no	yes		
	B5R, EXEC-R	yes*1	no		yes	yes*2	yes*2			no	no	yes		
	OFFICIO, B-OFFICIO, M-OFFICIO, FLS	yes*1	yes*1 (2-hole only)	no	yes	yes*2	yes*2			yes*2	no	no		
	GLTR, K8, K16		yes*1 (3-hole only)											
	E-OFFICIO, A-OFFICIO, FOLIO, A-LTRR	yes*1	no		yes	yes*2	yes*2			yes*2	no	no		
	A-LTR	yes*1	yes*1 (3-hole only)	yes*1	yes	yes*2	yes*2			yes*2	no	no		
	GLTR-R, GLGL, AFLS	yes*1	no		yes	yes*2	yes*2			no	no	no		
	12x18	no			yes	yes*2	yes*2			no	yes*2*3	no	yes	
	SRA3	no			yes	no	no			no	yes*2*3	no	yes	
	13x19, Irregular (1-1/2, 2-1/4, 3-1)	no			yes	no	no			no	no	no	yes	
	Irregular (1-3/4, 5)	no			yes	no	no			no	no	yes		
	Irregular (2-2/5, 3-2)	no			yes	yes*2	yes*2			no	no	no	yes	
Irregular (2-3/7, 3-3)	no			yes	yes*2	yes*2			no	no	yes			
Irregular 4-1	no			yes	no	no			no	no	no			
A5R, STMTR, Irregular 4-2	no			yes	yes*2	no			no	no	no			
Irregular 5 (extra long)	no			no			no			no	no	no		
OHP	A4R, A4, LTRR, LTR	no		no	yes	no	no		no	no	no			

Type (g/m ²)	Size	Finisher												
		Punch			Upper tray			Lower tray			Common to upper/lower tray	Saddle tray	Inserter	
		2-hole, 4-hole (SWE)	2/3-hole	4-hole (FRN)	Reversing delivery (FD)	Straight delivery (FU)	Sort (alignment) Shift sort	Reversing delivery (FD)	Straight delivery (FU)	Sort (alignment) Shift sort	Front/rear 1-point binding 2-point binding	Center binding, Non-binding	Upper	Lower
Label	A4, B4, A3, LTR	no			no	yes	no	no	yes	no	no	no	no	no
Index(151 to 180, 181 to 209)	A4	yes	no	yes	yes	no	yes	yes	no	yes	yes	no	no	
	LTR	no	yes	no	yes	no	yes	yes	no	yes	yes	no	no	
Postcard	Postcard	no			no	no	no	no	no	no	no	no	no	
	Return postcard	no			yes		no	no	no	no	no	no	no	
	4-pane card	no			yes		no	yes		no	no	no	no	

Chapter 2 Installation

Contents

2.1 Making Pre-Checks	2-1
2.1.1 Selecting the Site of Installation.....	2-1
2.1.2 Installation Space	2-1
2.1.3 Checking the Contents	2-3
2.1.4 Installing Order of Accessories	2-5
2.2 Unpacking and Installation.....	2-7
2.2.1 Unpacking	2-7
2.2.2 Points to Note When Turning ON/OFF the Power of Host Machine	2-7
2.2.3 Preparing Starter.....	2-8
2.2.4 Positioning/Securing Main Station.....	2-8
2.2.5 Before Installing Deck	2-9
2.2.6 Before Installing Feed Assembly	2-9
2.2.7 Engagement of Primary Transfer Roller	2-10
2.2.8 Mounting Control Panel.....	2-12
2.2.9 Connecting Main Station and Sub Station	2-15
2.2.10 Connecting Waste Toner Connecting Pipe	2-18
2.2.11 Connecting Main Station and Sub Station with Cable.....	2-19
2.2.12 Connecting Power Unit Station.....	2-20
2.2.13 Attaching Waste Toner Container.....	2-23
2.2.14 Attaching Primary Fixing Assembly.....	2-23
2.2.15 Attaching Secondary Fixing Assembly.....	2-24
2.2.16 Installing Duplexing Feed Assembly	2-25
2.2.17 Installing Process Unit	2-26
2.2.18 Setting Toner Container	2-30
2.2.19 Replenishing Starter	2-31
2.2.20 Replenishing Starter	2-33
2.2.21 Setting Paper	2-35
2.2.22 Affixing Labels Main Station.....	2-36
2.2.23 Affixing Labels Sub Station	2-38
2.2.24 Auto Gradation Correction.....	2-39
2.2.25 Checking Image Margin.....	2-39
2.2.26 Image Position Adjustment.....	2-40
2.2.27 Other Installations	2-42
2.3 Checking the Connection to the Network.....	2-42
2.3.1 Overview	2-42
2.3.2 Checking the Network Connection	2-42
2.3.3 Using the PING Command	2-43
2.3.4 Making a Check Using the Remote Host Address.....	2-43
2.4 Troubleshooting the Network	2-43
2.4.1 Overview	2-43
2.4.2 Checking the Connection of the Network Cable.....	2-43
2.4.3 Making a Check Using a Loopback Address.....	2-43
2.4.4 Making a Check Using a Local Host Address	2-43
2.5 Relocating the Machine	2-43
2.5.1 Operation for Moving the Machine.....	2-43
2.6 Installing the Card Reader	2-45

2.6.1 Points to Note About Installation	2-45
2.6.2 Checking the Contents	2-45
2.6.3 Points to Note When Turning ON/OFF the Power of Host Machine	2-46
2.6.4 Installation Procedure.....	2-46
2.6.5 Installation Procedure in the imageWARE Accounting Manager (henceforth: iWAM) environment.....	2-51
2.7 Installing the Platen Cover	2-51
2.7.1 Checking the Contents	2-51
2.7.2 Points to Note When Turning ON/OFF the Power of Host Machine	2-52
2.7.3 Installation Procedure.....	2-52
2.8 Installing the Key Switch Unit.....	2-52
2.8.1 Points to Note About Installation.....	2-52
2.8.2 Checking the Contents	2-52
2.8.3 Points to Note When Turning ON/OFF the Power of Host Machine	2-53
2.8.4 Installation Procedure.....	2-53
2.8.5 Checking After the Installation	2-56
2.9 Installing the Tab Feeding Attachment.....	2-56
2.9.1 Checking the Contents	2-56
2.9.2 Procedure to Change Paper Size	2-56
2.9.3 Installation Procedure.....	2-57
2.10 Installing the Deck Heater.....	2-58
2.10.1 Checking the Parts to Install	2-58
2.10.2 Points to Note When Turning ON/OFF the Power of Host Machine	2-59
2.10.3 Installation Procedure (Connecting to Machine)	2-59
2.10.4 Installation Procedure (Connecting POD Deck/Secondary POD Deck).....	2-62
2.11 Installing the Voice Guidance Kit.....	2-66
2.11.1 Points to Note About Installation.....	2-66
2.11.2 Checking the Contents	2-66
2.11.3 Points to Note When Turning ON/OFF the Power of Host Machine	2-69
2.11.4 Installation Procedure.....	2-69

2.1 Making Pre-Checks

2.1.1 Selecting the Site of Installation

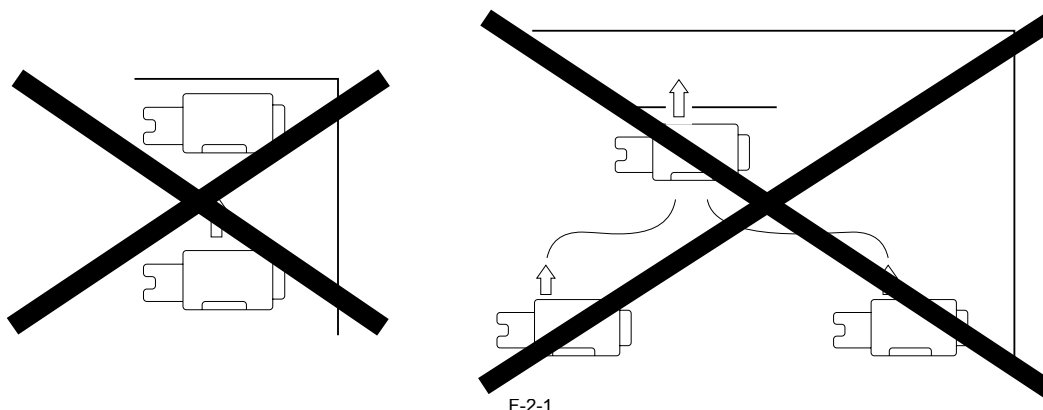
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

Select the site of installation against the following requirements; if possible, visit the user's before delivery of the machine:

- 1) Moving a machine from a cold to warm place can cause condensation, in which drops of water form on metal surfaces, leading to image faults if used as they are. If the machine has just been brought from a cold place, leave it alone for 2 hr or more without unpacking so that it becomes used to the room temperature.
- 2) Be sure to work in a group of 2 when installing the machine.
- 3) There must be a properly grounded source of power that can be used exclusively by the following machines:
 - 200V model: single phase/3-wire system 200V/60A (single phase/3-wire 200V/30A)
 - 208V model: 3-phase/5-wire system 208V/30A (single phase/4-wire 208V/30A)
 - 400V model: 3-phase/5-wire system 380-415V/32A (single phase/3-wire 220-240V/32A)
 The figures in () describe the specifications for imagePRESS C6000.
 - <English>
 - For equipment requiring a neutral connection to an IT power distribution system, Provision of a four-pole device as part of the building installation is necessary.
 - <German>

Wenn Sie eine neutrale Leitung an das IT Stromverteilungssystem anschließen, stellen Sie bitte einen vierpoligen Unterbrecher als Teil der Gebäudeanlagen bereit.

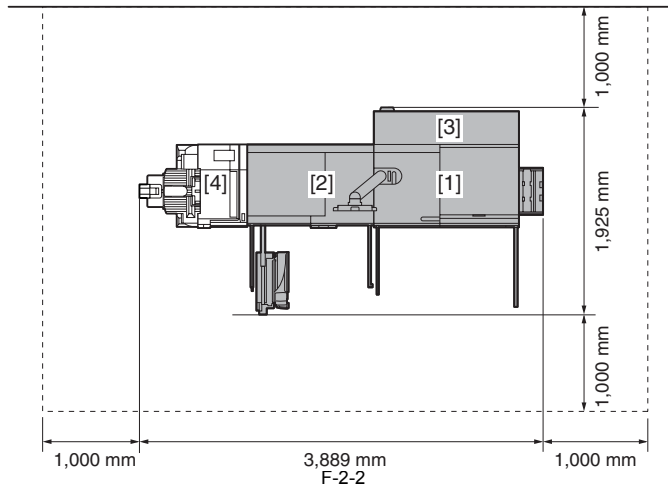
- 4) Be sure that the environment of the installation site is within the following range. Avoid areas near water faucets, water boilers, humidifiers, and refrigerators.
 - Guaranteed environment for the machine: temperature: 20 to 27 deg C, humidity [2]: 30 to 70%
 - Guaranteed environment for the media: temperature: 20 to 27 deg C, humidity [2]: 30 to 60%
- 4) Temperature and humidity must be 20 to 27 deg C and 30 to 70%. Especially avoid a location near water faucets, hot water heaters, humidifiers, or refrigerators.
- 5) Temperature gradient must be 10 deg C/H or less to especially avoid faulty state, such as deformation/expansion of media or faulty state of the components, caused by rapid changes in temperature when running air conditioning system in the winter.
- 6) The machine must not be installed near a source of fire or in an area subject to dust or ammonium gas. If the area is subject to direct rays of the sun, there must be shades or curtains to block the rays.
- 7) The level of ozone generated by the machine is not likely to affect the health of the individuals around it. Some, nevertheless, may find the odor rather unpleasant, and it is important that the room be well ventilated.
- 8) There must be enough space around the machine for printing work. (See the installation space.)
- 9) Be sure the area is well ventilated.
 - If multiple machines exist, it is important to make sure that the exhaust from another machine will not be drawn into the machine. Also, the machine must not be installed near the air vent of the room.



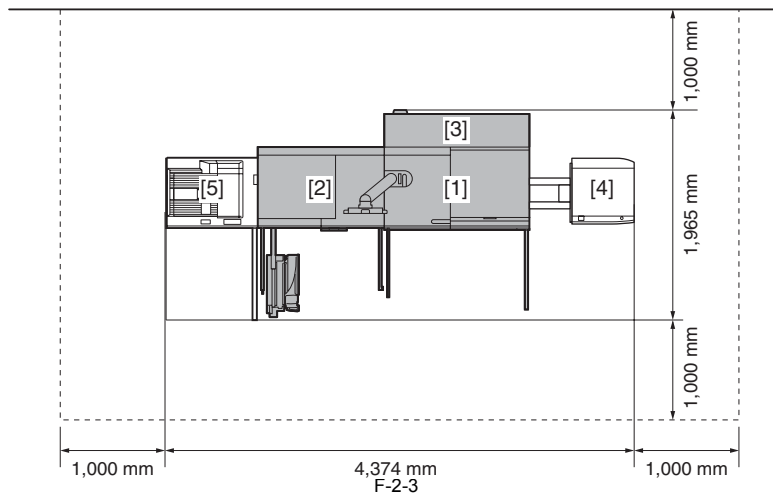
2.1.2 Installation Space

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

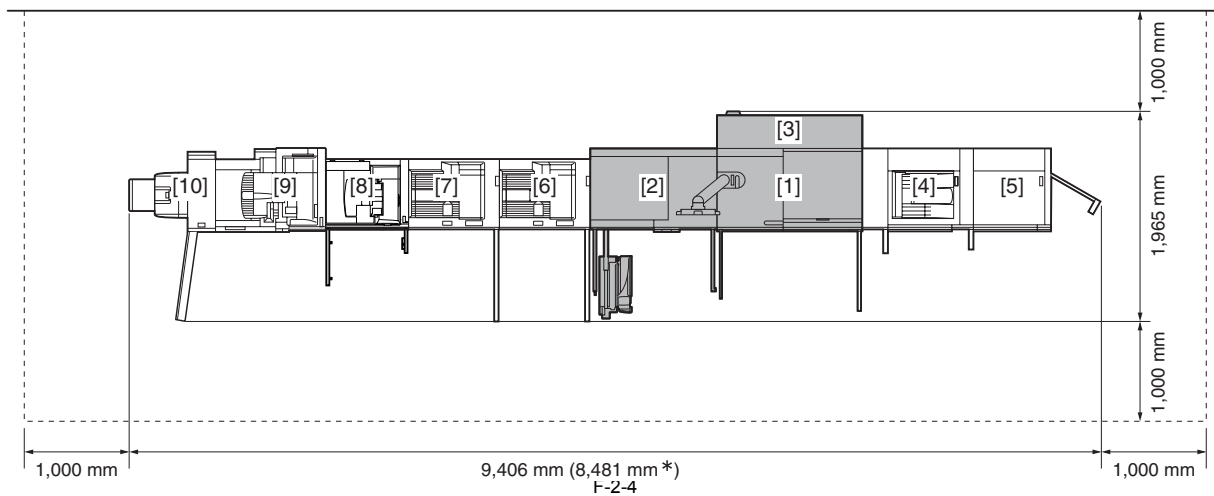
There must be enough space around the machine. The following diagram shows the minimum dimensions; whenever possible, be sure there will be more space than indicated:



- [1] Main Station
- [2] Sub Station
- [3] Power Unit Station
- [4] Finisher-AB1



- [1] Main Station
- [2] Sub Station
- [3] Power Unit Station
- [4] Paper Deck-AC1
- [5] High Capacity Stackers-C1



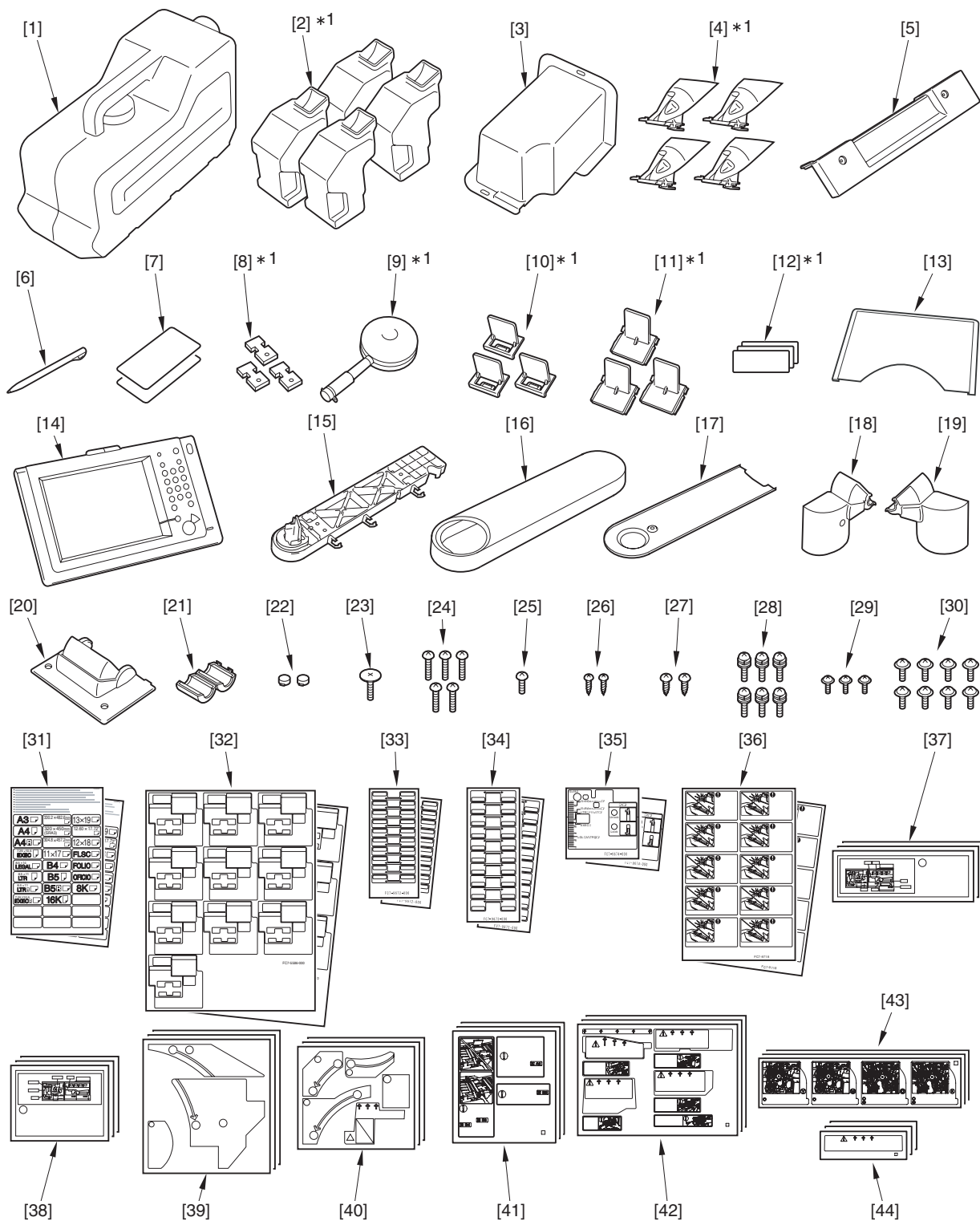
**The numerical figure described in () is the dimension excluding [8] Perfect Binder-B1.

- [1] Main Station
- [2] Sub Station
- [3] Power Unit Station
- [4] POD Deck-A1
- [5] Secondary POD Deck-A1
- [6] High Capacity Stackers-C1
- [7] High Capacity Stackers-C1 (secondary)

[8] Perfect Binder-B1 (for imagePRESS 7000VP only)
 [9] Finisher-AB1/Saddle Finisher-AB2
 [10] Booklet Trimmer-C1

2.1.3 Checking the Contents

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000



[1]	Waste toner bottle	1 pc.	[2]*1	Collecting container of developer	4 pc.
[3]	Cable cover	1 pc.	[4]*1	Carrier supplying funnel	4 pc.
[5]	Sub station duplexing feeder cover	1 pc.	[6]	Touch pen	1 pc.
[7]	Size indication plate	2 pc.	[8]*1	Door tool	3 pc.
[9]*1	Blower brush	1 pc.	[10]*1	Cleaning member (upper)	3 pc.

F-2-5

[11]*1	Cleaning member (lower)	3 pc.	[12]*1	Toner clog removal sheet	3 pc.
[13]	Service book case	1 pc.	[14]	Control panel	1 pc.
[15]	Arm unit	1 pc.	[16]	Arm cover upper	1 pc.
[17]	Arm cover lower	1 pc.	[18]	Lock hinge cover L	1 pc.
[19]	Lock hinge cover R	1 pc.	[20]	Hinge slide cover	1 pc.
[21]	Ferrite core	1 pc.	[22]	Cover rubber	2 pc.
[23]	Flat-head screw (M4X10)	1 pc.	[24]	Screw (Binding; M4X16)	5 pc.
[25]	Screw (Binding; M4X10)	1 pc.	[26]	Screw (P tightening; M3X10)	2 pc.
[27]	Screw (P tightening; M4X10)	2 pc.	[28]	Screw (W sems; M4X12)	6 pc.
[29]	Screw (TP; M3X6)	3 pc.	[30]	Screw (TP; M4X8)	8 pc.
[31]	Paper size label	2 pc.	[32]	Size change procedure label	2 pc.
[33]	Claw pressure switch label (front)	2 pc.	[34]	Claw pressure switch label (rear)	2 pc.
[35]	Horizontal size label	2 pc.	[36]	Paper supply notice label	2 pc.
[37]	Main station left front door language label	*2 3 pc. *3 5 pc.	[38]	Sub station left front door language label	*2 3 pc. *3 5 pc.
[39]	Main station language label	*2 3 pc. *3 5 pc.	[40]	Sub station language label	*2 3 pc. *3 5 pc.
[41]	Main station language label 2	*2 3 pc. *3 4 pc.	[42]	Sub station language label 2	*2 3 pc. *3 4 pc.
[43]	Developer connector label	*2 3 pc. *3 4 pc.	[44]	Hand stuck warning label	*2 3 pc. *3 4 pc.

*1: Be sure to keep it after the installation because it will be used at the time of maintenance.

*2: 208V

*3: 400V/230V

Check the contents (advice book, CD, and others) against the following:

T-2-1

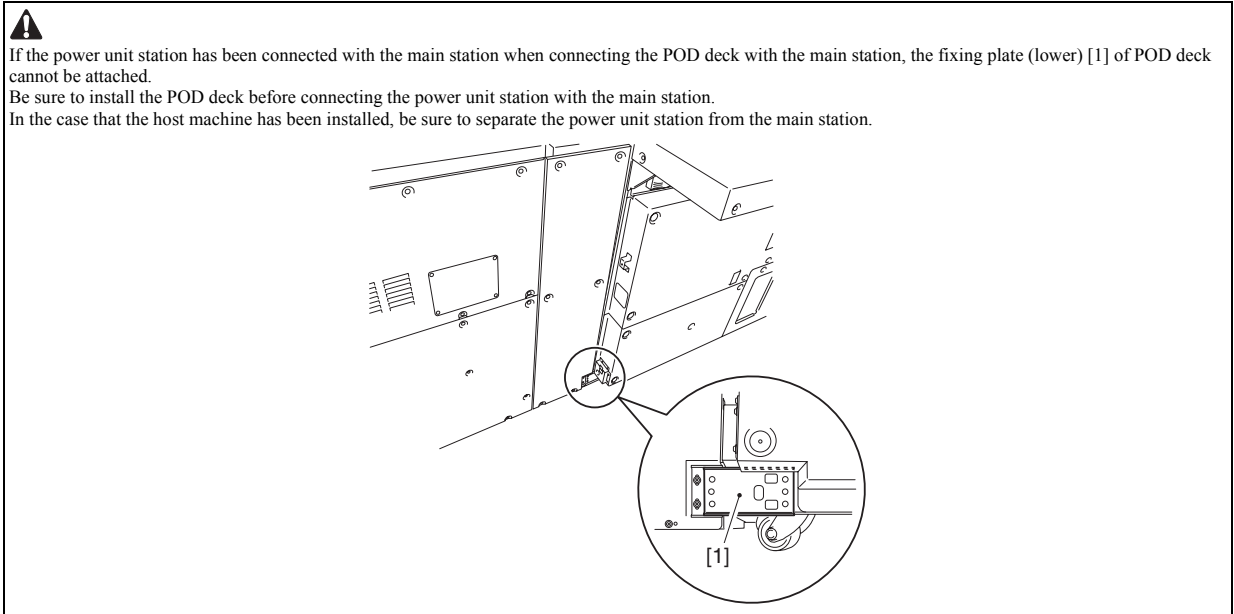
		208V	400V/230V
1	Easy Operation Guide	yes	no
2	Safety Instructions	yes	yes
3	Maintenance Guide	yes	yes (4 pc.)
4	License agreement for software	yes	yes
5	Drum Limited Warranty	yes	no
6	Registration Card	yes	no
7	imagePRESS C7000VP Limited Warranty	yes	no
8	Installation check list	yes	no
9	Manual CD	yes	yes
10	MEAP Administration Software CD	yes	yes
11	Network ScanGear CD	yes	no

2.1.4 Installing Order of Accessories

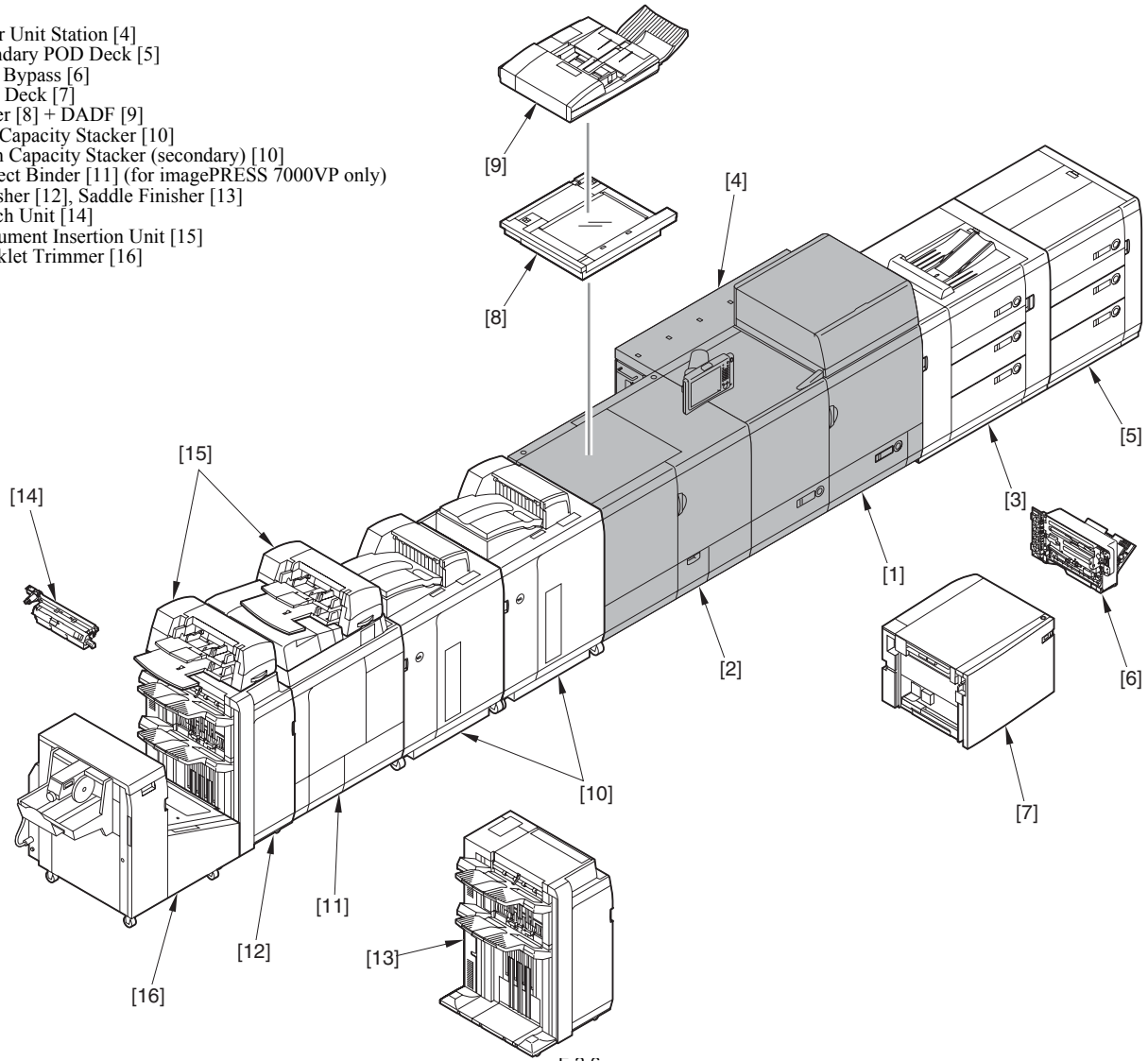
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

If you are planning to install other accessories also, go through the following in the order indicated:

1. Main Station [1]
2. Sub Station [2]
3. POD Deck [3]



- 4. Power Unit Station [4]
- 5. Secondary POD Deck [5]
- 6. Stack Bypass [6]
- 7. Paper Deck [7]
- 8. Reader [8] + DADF [9]
- 9. High Capacity Stacker [10]
- 10. High Capacity Stacker (secondary) [10]
- 11. Perfect Binder [11] (for imagePRESS 7000VP only)
- 12. Finisher [12], Saddle Finisher [13]
- 13. Punch Unit [14]
- 14. Document Insertion Unit [15]
- 15. Booklet Trimmer [16]



F-2-6

2.2 Unpacking and Installation

2.2.1 Unpacking

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000



Total weight of equipment is as follows:

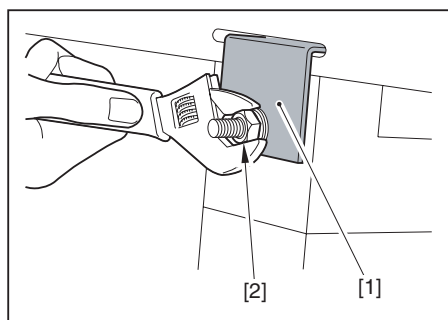
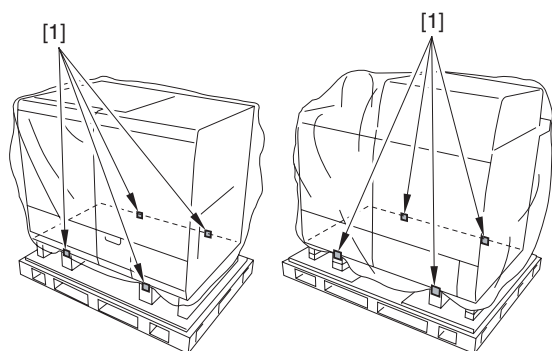
- Main Station: approx. 715 kg
- Sub Station: approx. 380 kg
- Power Unit Station: approx. 105 kg

Take extra care for safety when transporting/installing the machine.

- 1) Remove the package.
- 2) Remove the 4 fixing mounts [1] from the main/sub station.
- 4 nuts each [2]

MEMO:

Use a 17mm wrench.



F-2-7

- 3) Move down the plastic bagwrapping each station to the bottom.



Caution when Inserting the Claws of a Forklift Under the Host Machine

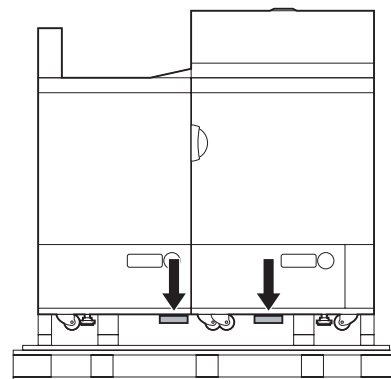
- Do not damage the adjuster with the claws of the forklift.
- Do not lift the plastic with the machine.

- 4) Lift the main/sub station from the front using a forklift, and put it down from the skid.



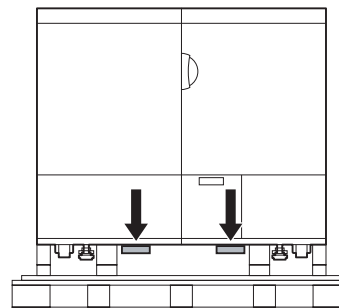
Since the center of gravity of the main station is located slightly on the right side, insert the claws of the forklift in the direction shown by arrows. The center of gravity of the sub station is located at center.

<Main Station>



F-2-8

<Sub Station>

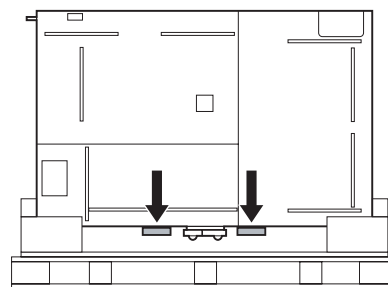


F-2-9

- 5) Lift the electric station using a forklift, and put it down from the skid.

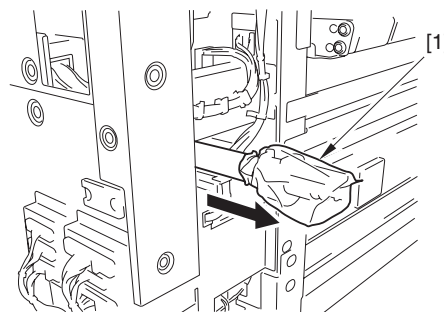


When lifting the power unit station, insert the claws of the forklift from the contact side with the main station.



F-2-10

- 6) Move each station to the site of installation.
- 7) Remove all tape attached to outside of the each station.
- 8) Pull out the waste toner connecting pipe [1] located on the left rear side of the main station, remove the plastic and label, and put the waste toner connecting pipe [1] back to the original position.



F-2-11

2.2.2 Points to Note When Turning ON/OFF the Power of Host Machine

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

⚠ Power-On Order for Turning On the Power When Pickup/Delivery Accessories are Connected

Be sure to turn on the power in the correct order otherwise it may cause an error because the host machine fails to recognize accessories.

<Power-On Order>

- 1) Pickup/Delivery accessories
- 2) Host machine

MEMO:

There is no power-on order among accessories.

⚠ Points to Note When Turning Off the Main Power of the Host Machine

Be sure to turn off the main power in the following order to protect hard disk of the host machine.

- 1) Press the power switch on control panel for 3 sec or more.
- 2) Follow the instruction on the shutdown sequence screen (the main power switch will go off automatically).
- 3) Turn off the breaker.
- 4) Disconnect the power plug.

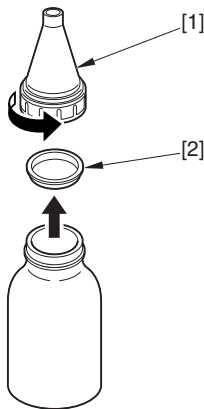
2.2.3 Preparing Starter

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

MEMO:

This work is performed to let the starter get used to the installation environment.

- 1) Open the starter of Y, M, C and Bk from the package and shake them well (approx. 20 times)
- 2) Open the cap [1] and take the inner cap [2] out.



F-2-12

- 3) Close the cap [1] taken out in Step 2, and temporarily store the starters in a dust-free place.

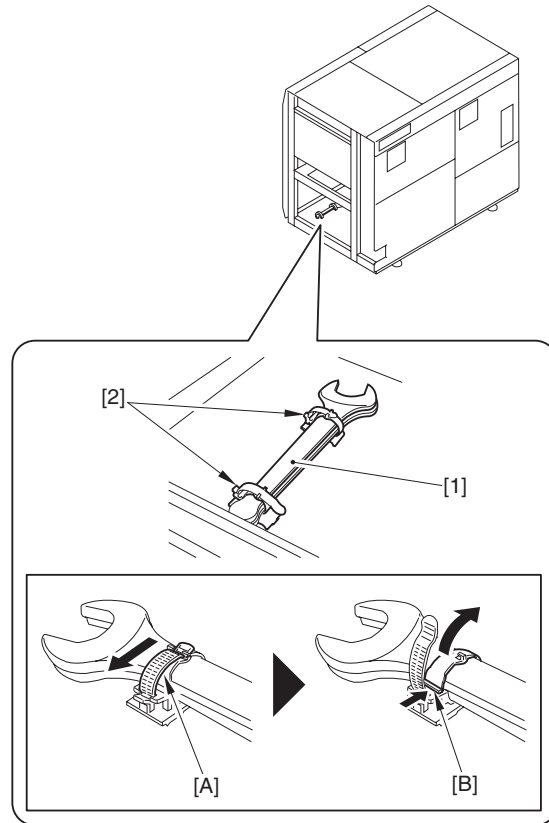
2.2.4 Positioning/Securing Main Station

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- 1) Take out the 2 wrenches [1] from the right side of the sub station.
- 2 wire saddles [2]

MEMO: Removing Wire Saddles

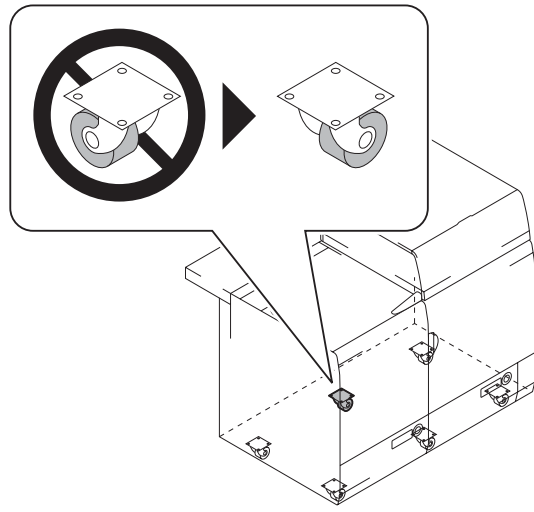
- 2-1) Remove [A] of the wire saddles in the direction of the arrow.
- 2-2) Disengage [B] of the wire saddles to open in the direction of the arrow.



F-2-13

⚠ Points to Note When Securing Main Station

Be sure to make the caster at the center of the rear side parallel to the rear side of the host machine. If vertically set, the auxiliary caster from the power unit station cannot be stored.



- 2) Decide the installation location of the main station, and turn the hex parts [2] with hand in the direction of the arrow until the 2 adjusters [1] touch the floor firmly.

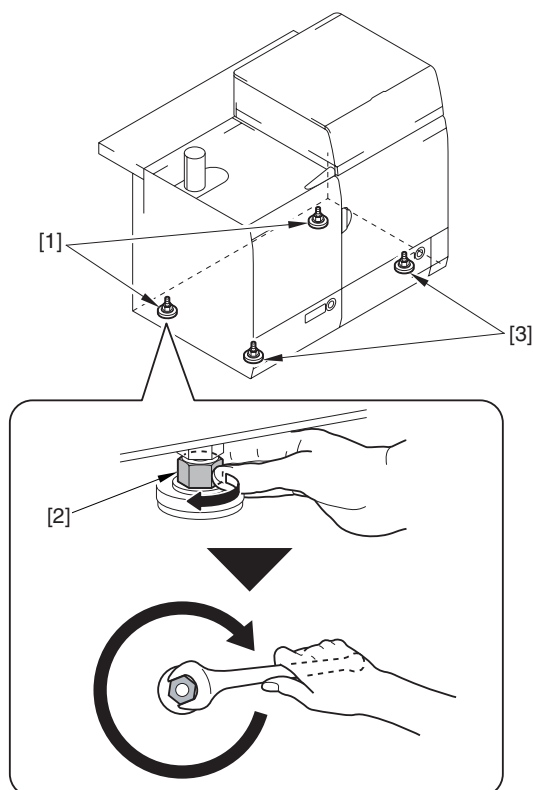
⚠

Be sure to turn the adjustors by a hand here. If it does not work with your hand, use a wrench until you can turn the adjuster with your hand.

- 3) Make 1-turn of the 2 adjustors [1] of the main station with a wrench.

MEMO:

The height increases 2.5 mm by one turn.



F-2-14

⚠ Points to Note When Using Adjusters of the Main Station

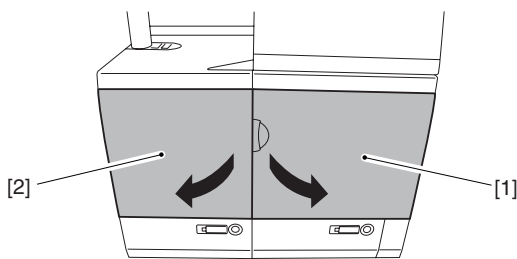
1. Do not make more than 1-turn of the adjusters [1] at the rear of the main station in step 3). Lowering this adjuster too much makes the caster off from the ground and spoils the vibration-proofing effect of the caster (includes vibration-proofing material). This may cause image fault due to vibration around the host machine. Use of this adjuster: Securing the main station on the ground

2. Do not lower the adjusters [3] at the front of the main station (do not use them for height adjustment) Lowering this adjuster makes the caster off from the ground and spoils the vibration-proofing effect of the caster (includes vibration-proofing material). This may cause image fault due to vibration around the host machine. Use of this adjuster: Used for securing the main station with rope at the time of transportation (e.g. by a truck).

2.2.5 Before Installing Deck

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

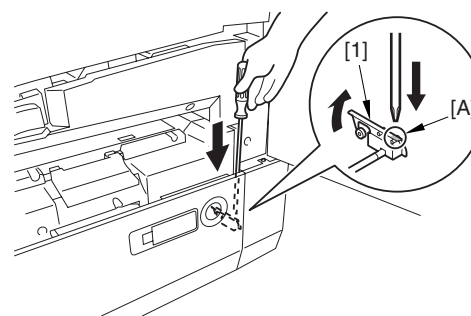
- 1) Open the main-station right front cover [1] and the main-station left front cover [2].



F-2-15

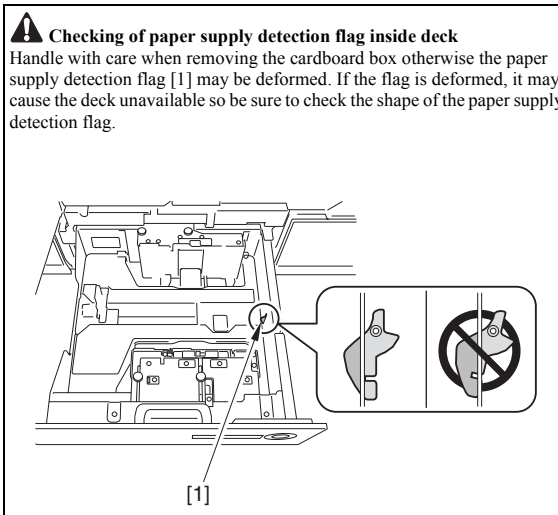
- 2) Remove all of the tape attached on the inside.

- 3) Insert a screwdriver to the gap of the right deck and press [A] area of the lever [1] to disengage the lock and open the right deck.



F-2-16

- 4) Remove the packaging material and tapes in the right deck.

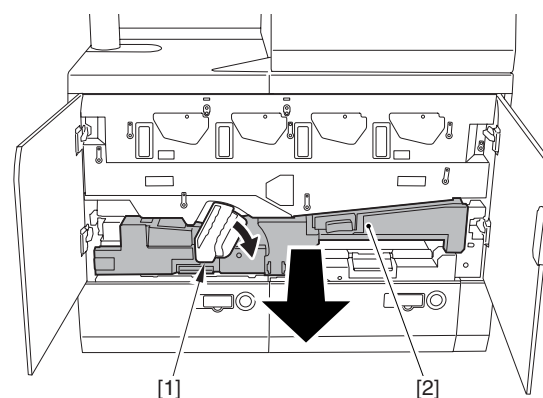


- 5) Close the right deck.
- 6) Taking the same steps 3) to 5), remove the packing material of the left deck.

2.2.6 Before Installing Feed Assembly

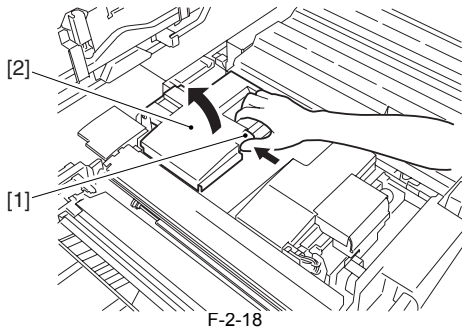
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- 1) Tilt the lever (B-E1) [1] in the direction of the arrow; then, hold the lever (B-E1) [1] and pull out the feeder assembly [2] until it stops.

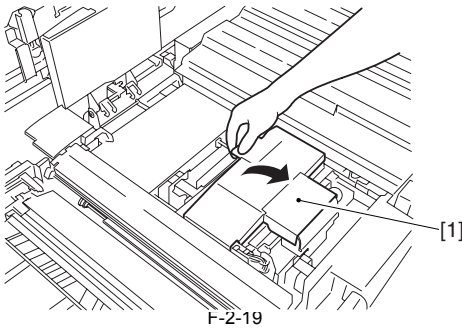


F-2-17

- 2) Remove the tapes.
- 3) Unlock the release lever [1] and open the guide (B-E4) [2].



4) Open the guide (B-E3) [1].

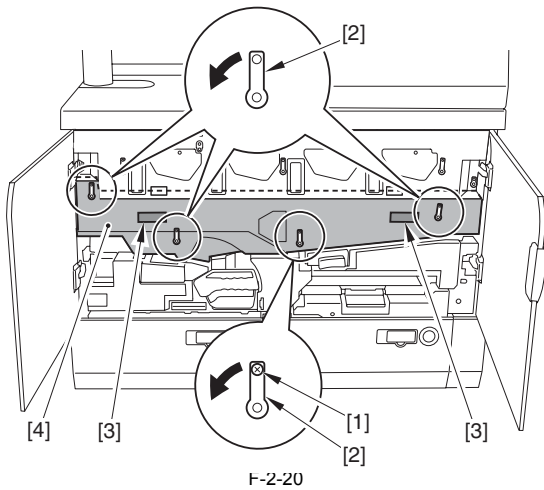


- 5) Remove the cushion sheet.
- 6) Close the guide (B-E4) and the guide (B-E3).
- 7) Push in the feeder assembly (Do not return the lever (B-E1) yet).

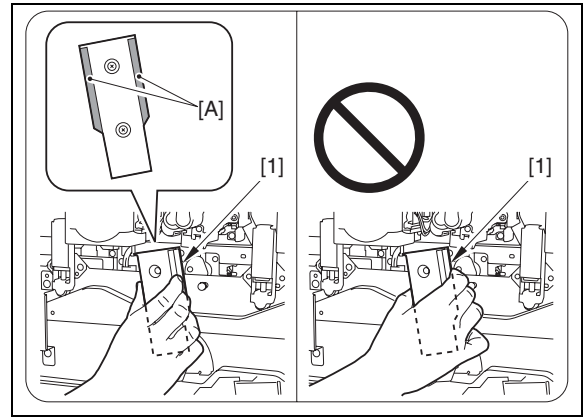
2.2.7 Engagement of Primary Transfer Roller

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

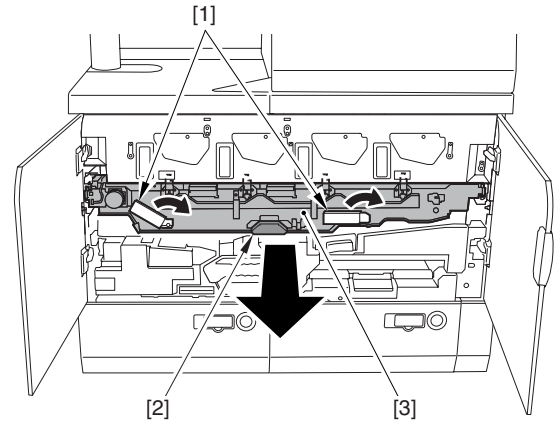
- 1) Remove the stepped screw [1] and then push the 4 release levers [2] to the direction of the arrow. Remove the intermediate transfer unit cover [4] by holding it by the grips [3].



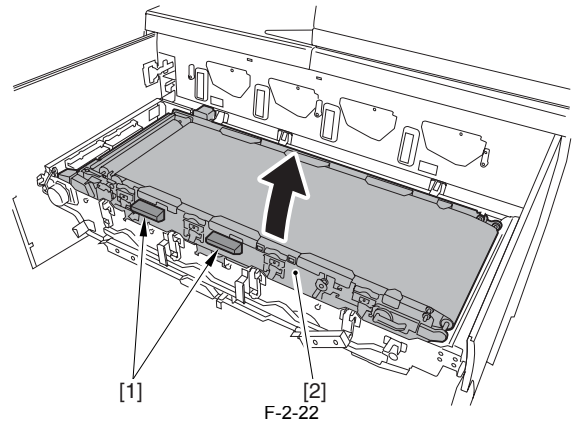
⚠ Points to Note When Holding Intermediate Transfer Unit Release Lever
 Holding the ITB release lever [1] fully may cause your hands get caught. Do not hold the ITB release lever beyond the [A] area.



- 2) Tilt the 2 release levers [1] of the intermediate transfer unit in the direction of the arrow simultaneously; then, hold the grip [2] and pull out the intermediate transfer unit [3] until it is locked.

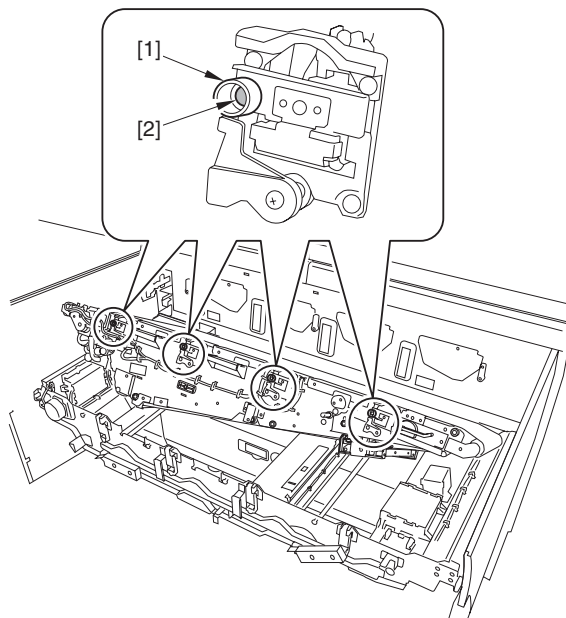


- 3) Remove the cushioning material and tapes attached inside.
- 4) Hold the 2 grips [1] with both hands; then, lift the intermediate transfer unit [2] by approx. 40 deg and lower it to the lock position (approx. 30 deg).



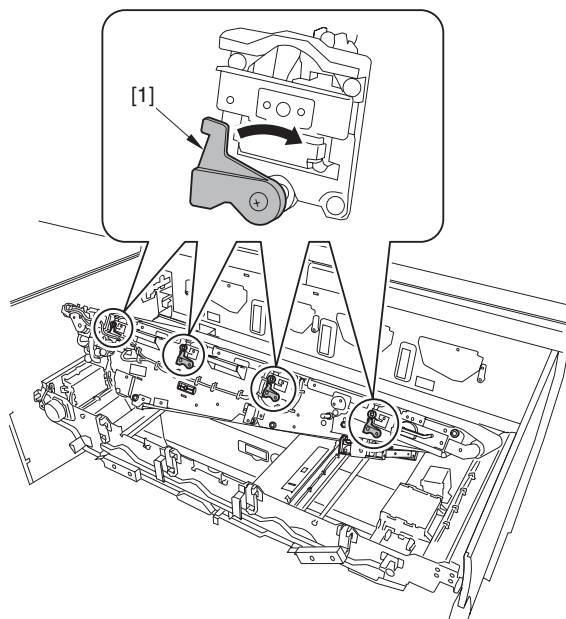
- 5) Remove the 4 fixing members [1] of the primary transfer roller. - 4 screws [2]

⚠ Take care to keep the 4 fixing members and 4 screws in preparation for shifting the host machine.



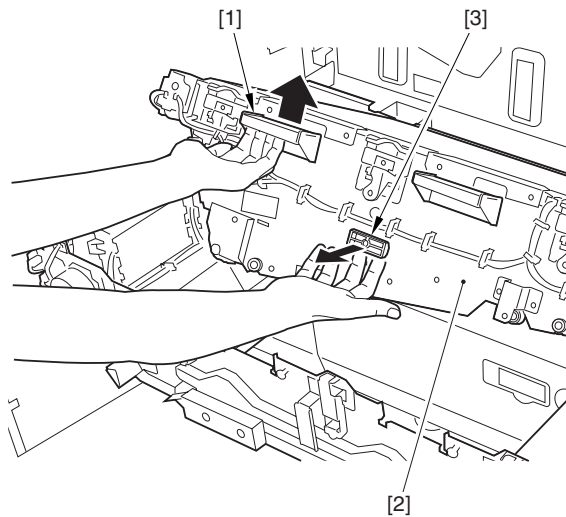
F-2-23

- 6) Turn the 4 primary transfer roller release levers [1] clockwise to apply pressure.

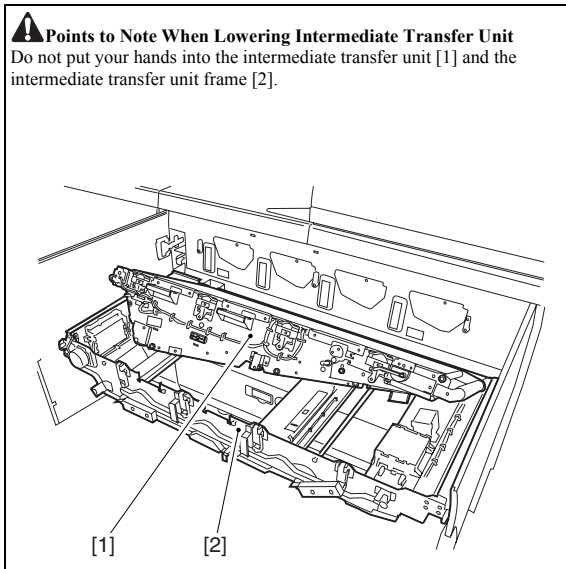


F-2-24

- 7) Hold the grip [1] as in the figure; then, while lifting the intermediate transfer unit [2], pull the release lever [3] until it stops.
- 8) While pulling the release lever [3], lower the intermediate transfer unit a little; then, release both hands when it passed through the lock release position (approx. 30 deg). (The intermediate transfer unit moves down slowly)



F-2-25



F-2-26

- 9) While pressing the 2 lock release springs [1], slide the intermediate transfer unit [2] to the rear side until the lock position is released.

⚠ Be careful not to get your fingers caught.

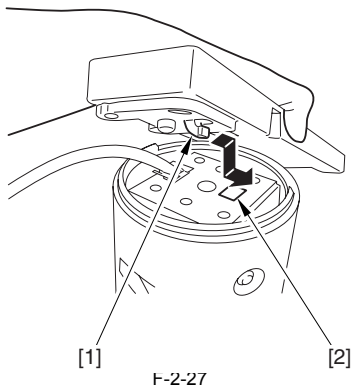
- 10) Push in the intermediate transfer unit, and lock the release lever. (The intermediate transfer unit cover is attached in the procedure of "Installing Process Unit".)
- 11) Lock the lever (B-E1) at the feeding assembly.

12) Close the main-station left front cover and the main-station right front cover.

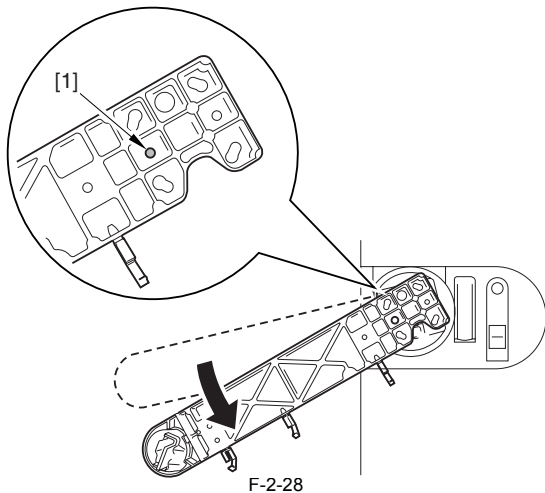
2.2.8 Mounting Control Panel

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

1) Hook the claw [1] of arm unit onto the hole [2] of control panel arm.

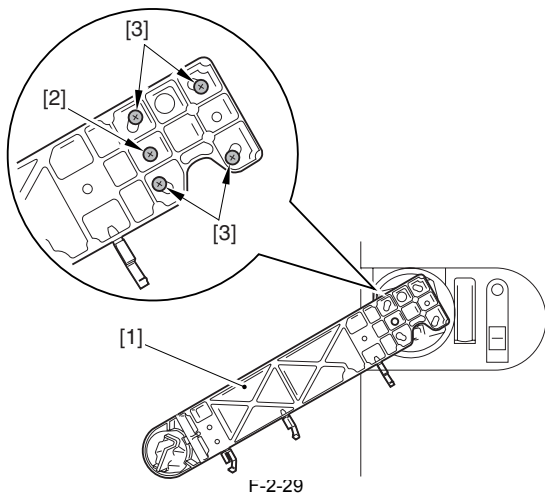


2) Turn the arm unit in the direction of the arrow to the position where the screw hole [1] of the unit aligns with the hole of the control panel arm.

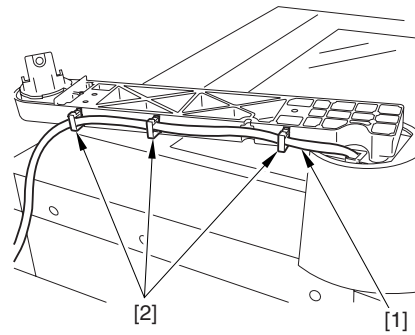


3) Secure the arm unit [1] with the screw (binding; M4X14) [2] and the 4 screws [3], in that order.

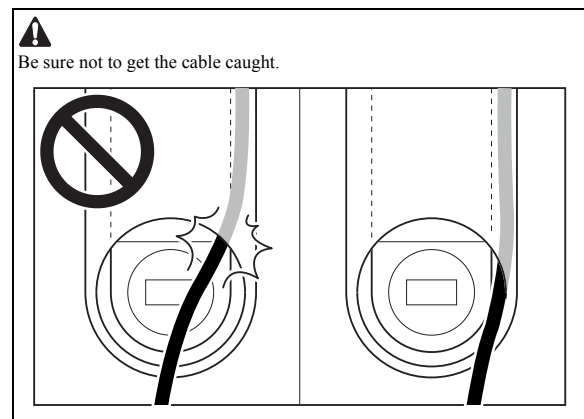
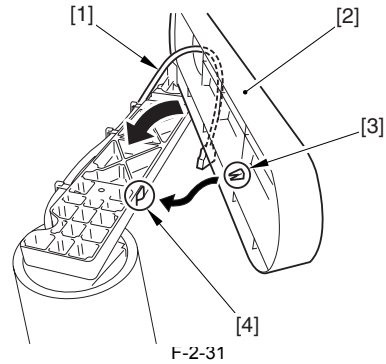
⚠ Be sure not to tighten the screws in wrong order.



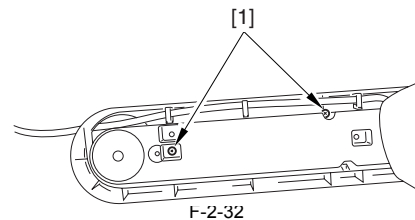
4) Secure the control panel interface cable [1] with the 3 wire saddles [2].



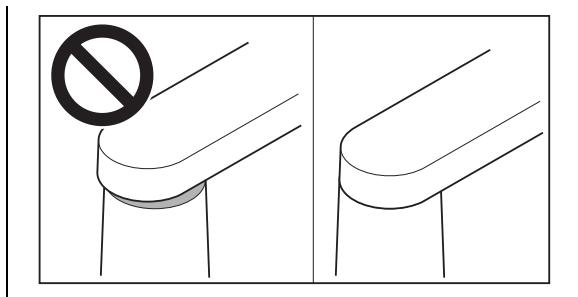
5) Put the control panel interface cable [1] through the arm cover upper [2].
6) Attach the arm cover arm cover upper [2] while hooking the claw [3] onto the cut-off area [4] of the arm unit.



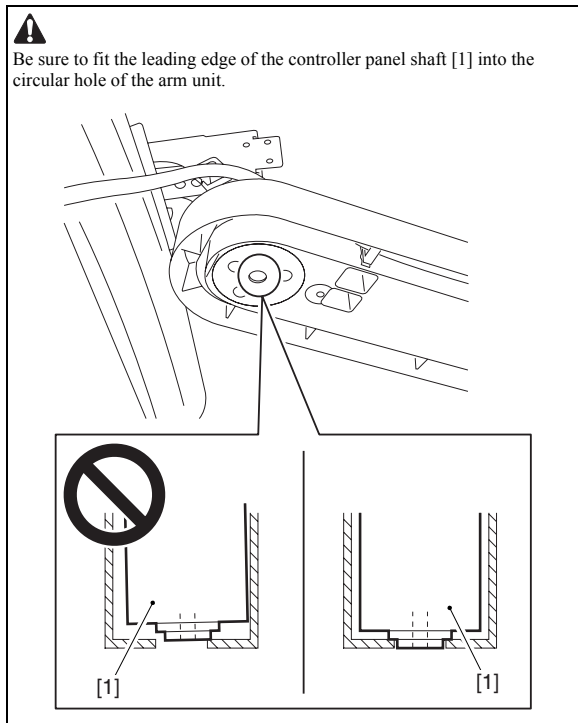
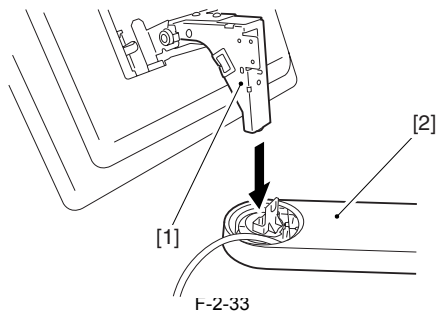
7) Secure the arm cover upper from the bottom of the arm unit.
- 2 screws (P tightening; M4X10) [1]



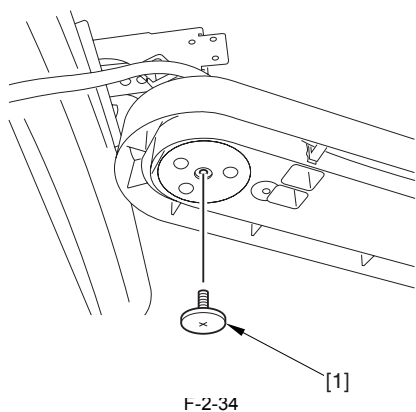
⚠ Be sure that the arm cover upper and the control panel arm are not displaced.



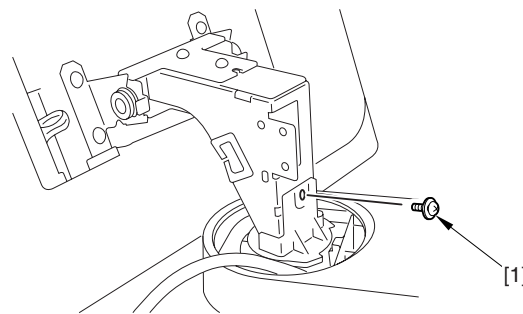
8) Insert the control panel shaft [1] into the arm unit [2].



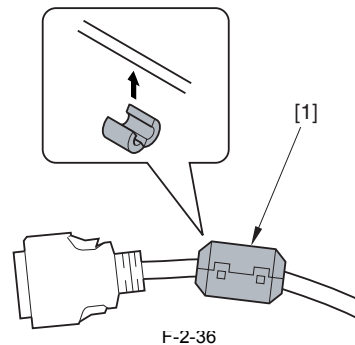
9) Tighten the screw (flat; M4X10) [1] in place from the bottom of the arm unit.



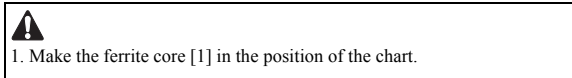
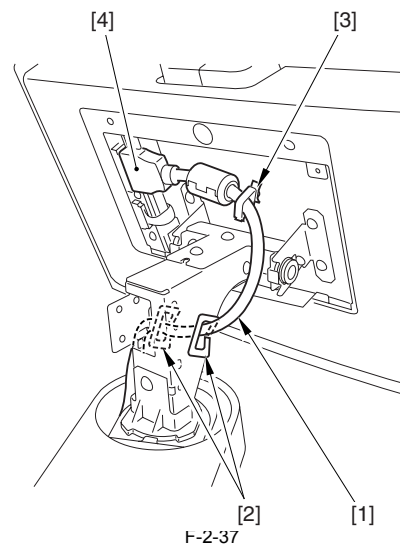
10) Tighten the screw (W sems; M4X12) [1] from the rear side of the control panel.

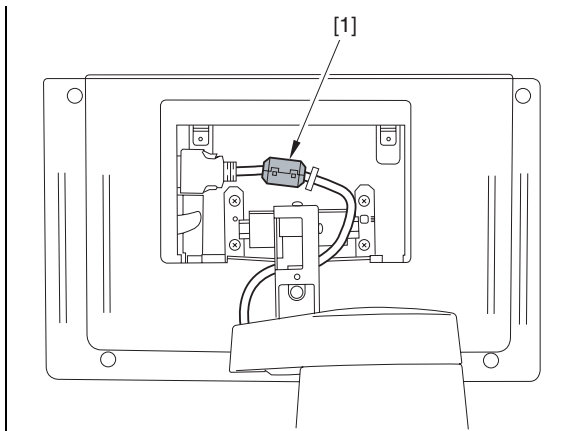


11) Mount the ferrite core [2] with the inter face cable [1] of the control panel.

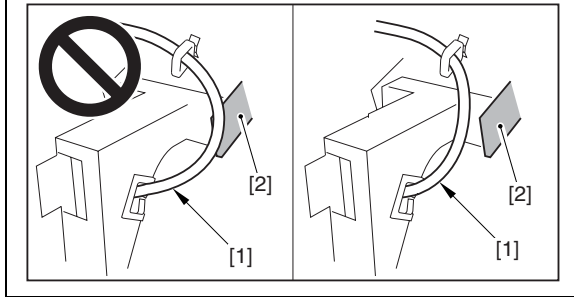


12) Secure the control panel interface cable [1] with the 2 edge saddles [2] and the wire saddle [3], and insert the connector [4] to the control panel.





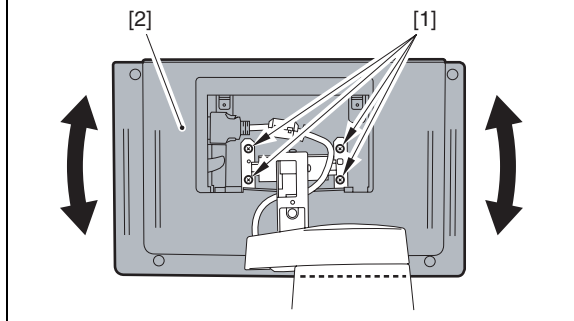
2. Be sure to adjust the cable length so that the cable [1] is located inside the plate [2].



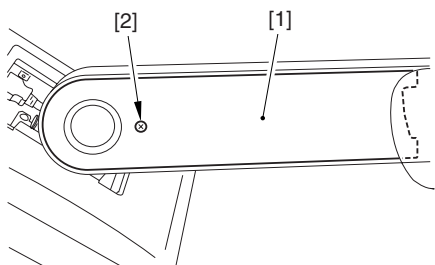
MEMO:

If the control panel tilts either to the left or right, perform the following adjustment.

- 1) Loosen the 4 screws [1] on the back of the control panel.
- 2) Set the control panel [2] in a desirable position and tighten the screw.



13) Attach the arm cover lower [1] from the bottom of the arm unit.
- 1 screw (Binding; M4X10) [2]

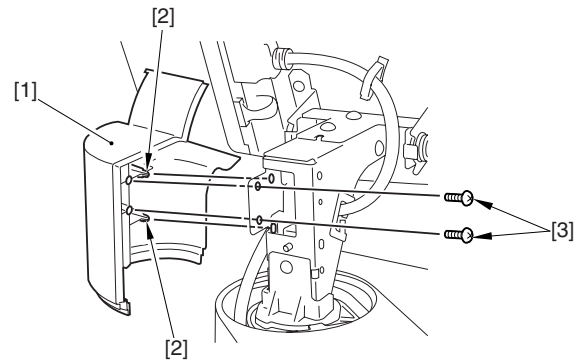
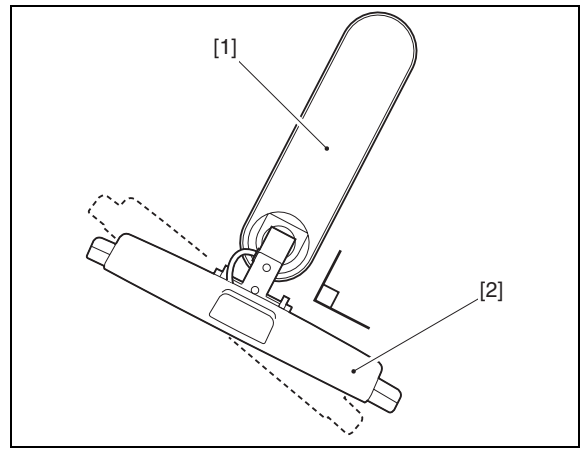


F-2-38

14) Attach the lock hinge cover R [1].
- 2 bosses [2]
- 2 screws (P tightening; M3X10) [3]

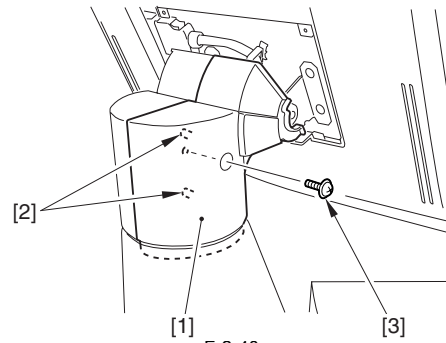
MEMO:

The lock hinge cover R is easy to attach if placing the arm unit [1] and the control panel [2] upright.



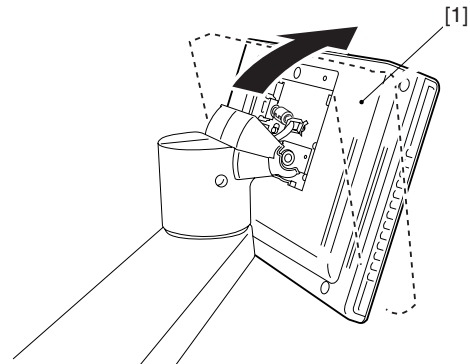
F-2-39

15) Attach the lock hinge cover L [1].
- 2 bosses [2]
- 1 screw (TP; M3X6) [3]



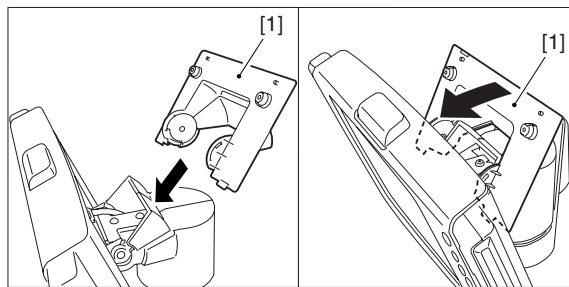
F-2-40

16) Tilt the control panel [1] in the direction of the arrow.

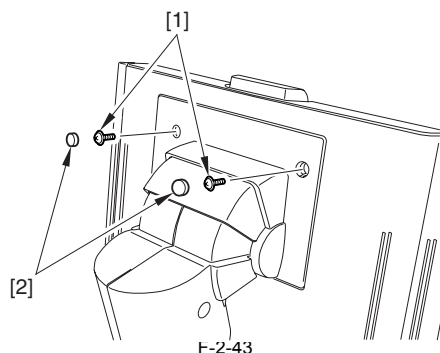


F-2-41

17) Insert the hinge slide cover [1] in the direction of the arrow.



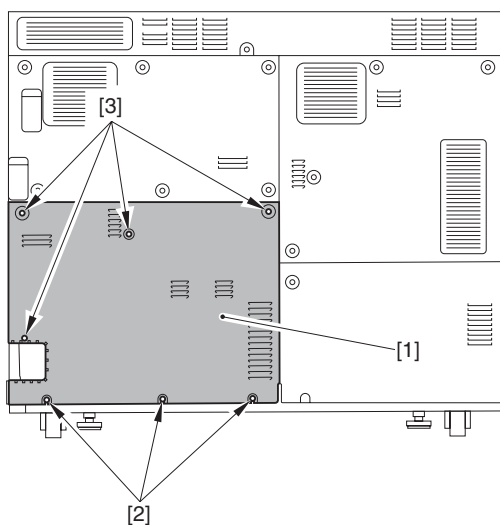
- 18) Secure the hinge slide cover.
 - 2 screws (TP; M3X6) [1]
 - 2 rubber covers [2]



2.2.9 Connecting Main Station and Sub Station

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

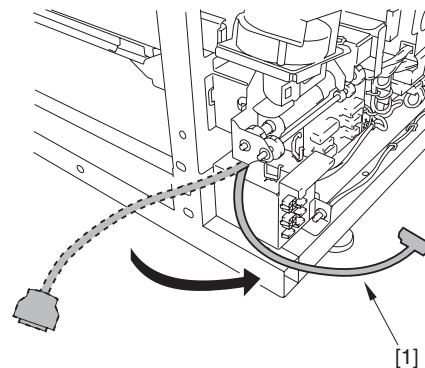
- 1) Remove the sub-station rear cover 4 [1].
 - 3 screws [2] (to loosen)
 - 4 screws [3] (to remove)



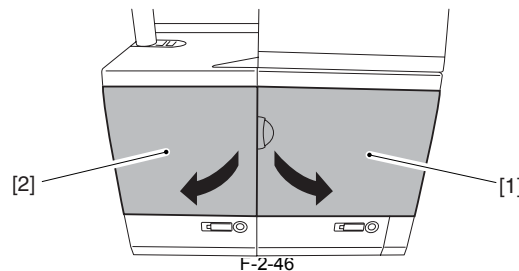
- 2) Take out the communication cable [1] at the rear right of the sub station to the backside of the sub station.



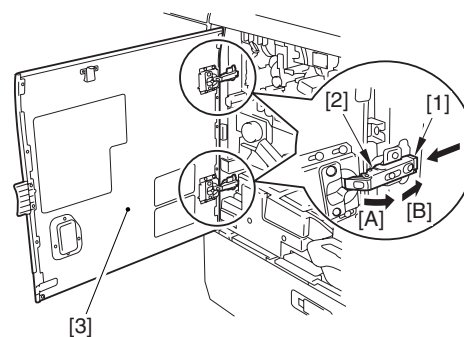
Be sure to take out the communication cable to the backside of the sub station otherwise it may be caught when connecting the main station with the sub station.



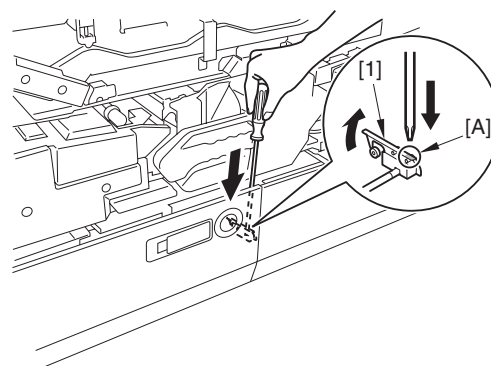
- 3) Open the main-station right front cover [1] and the main-station left front cover [2].



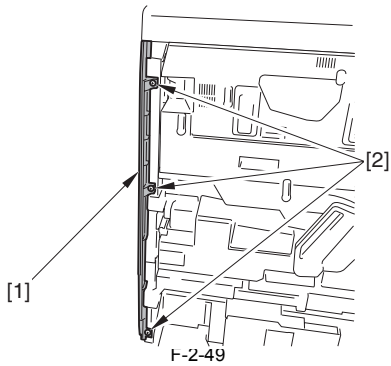
- 4) With holding the main-station left front cover, press the 2 release buttons (upper and lower) [1] of the hinge, and move the 2 hinges [2] in the direction of the arrow [A].
 5) Release the 2 hinges [2] by moving in the direction of the arrow [B], and detach the main-station left front cover [3].



- 6) Insert a screwdriver to the gap of the left deck to press [A] area of the lever [1] and release the lock to open the left deck.



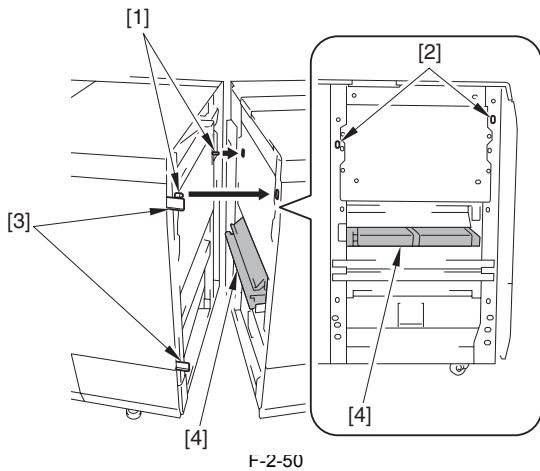
- 7) Detach the main station left insulating cover [1].
 - 3 screws [2]



8) Fit the pin [1] of the sub station into the hole [2] of the main station, and connect them.

⚠

- If connecting with the pin and the hole not fitted with each other, the connecting plate [3] may be damaged by contacting with the main station.
- Do not attach/detach the sub station at an angle. The pre-fixing feeder unit [4] may be damaged.



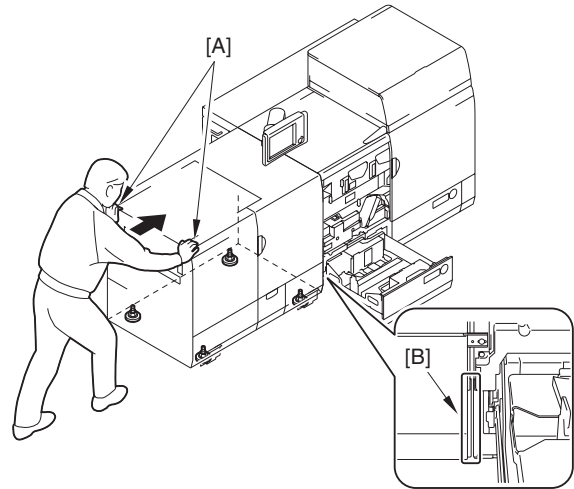
9) With pushing the [A] area of the sub station with both hands, get someone to check the following gaps.

<Points to check>

- Specification: The gap must be 1 mm or less.
- [B] Gap between the plates

⚠

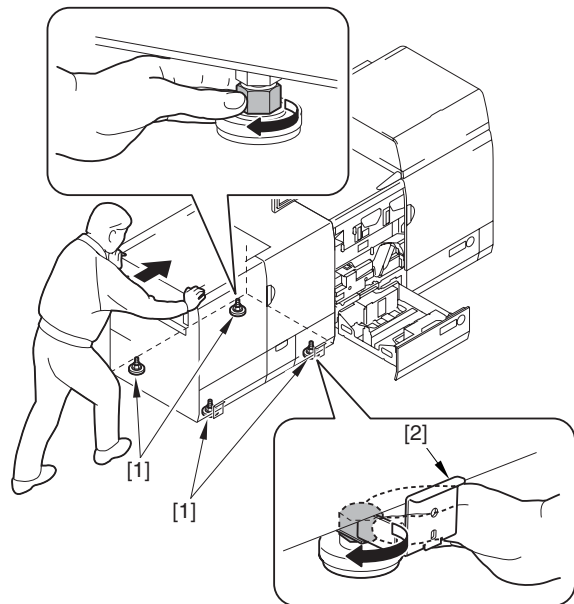
- Be sure to fit the sub station while pushing the [A] area to make their contact surfaces parallel.
- Make sure so push the sub station until step 10 is completed.



10) While pushing the substation, get someone to turn the hexagonal parts in the direction of the arrow using your hand until 4 adjusters [1] touch the floor.

⚠

- Be sure to turn the hexagonal parts by hand here. If it does not work with your hand, use a wrench until you can turn the hexagonal parts with your hand.
- The tip-resistant fixtures [2] are engaged with the adjusters. The structure does not open the sub station front doors by the tip-resistant bases until the adjusters touch the floor.

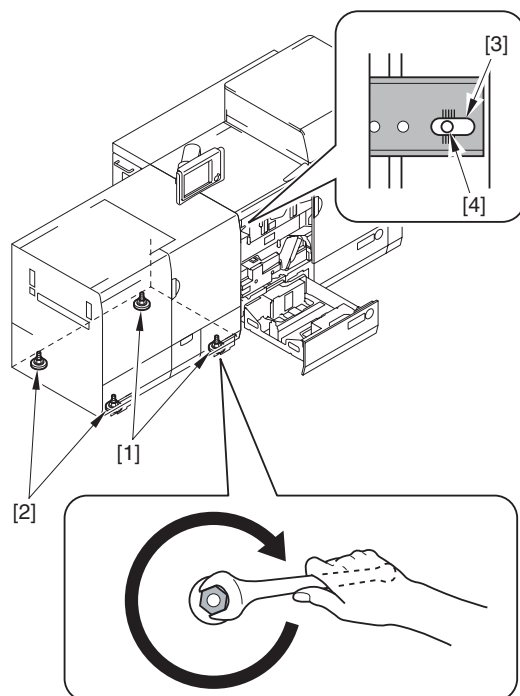


11) Give 1 turn each for the 2 inner adjusters [1] and the 2 outer adjusters [2] of the sub station respectively in this order with a wrench for the purpose of adjusting the upper surfaces of the main station and the sub station.

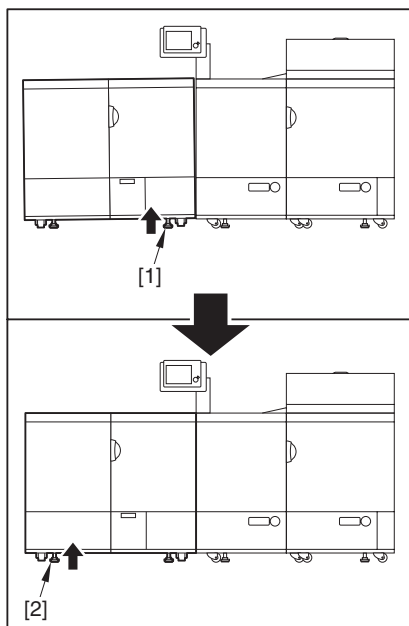
MEMO:
The height increases 2.5 mm by one turn.



To lift up the height, be sure to lower the adjusters [1] first. When there appears a gap in the upper area, then lower the adjusters [2] to adjust the height little at a time.
To lower the height, be sure to lift the adjusters [2] first. When there appears a gap in the upper area, then lift the adjusters [1] to adjust the height little at a time.



F-2-53



F-2-54

12) Check the gap between the main station and the sub station.



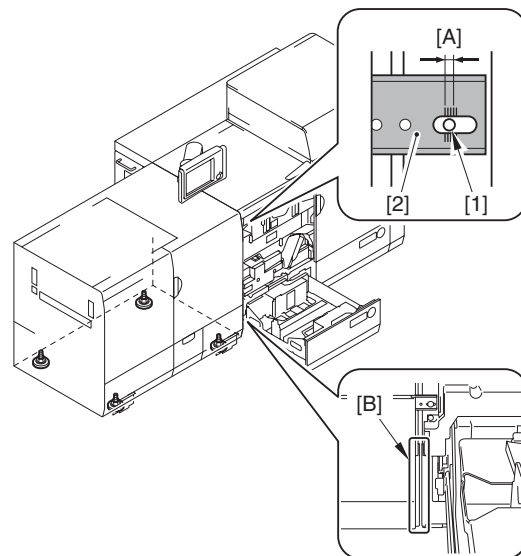
Do fine adjustment of the sub station adjusters if the following conditions apply:
-If the checking items fail to meet the conditions
-If the height of the joint plate hole is not equal to that of the main station hole.

<Front side/upper area>

The center of the screw hole [1] must be within the scale [A] of the joint plate [2] (the scale pitch is 1mm. The recommended position is the 2nd from left).

<Front side/lower area>

The gap [B] of the plate must be within 1mm.



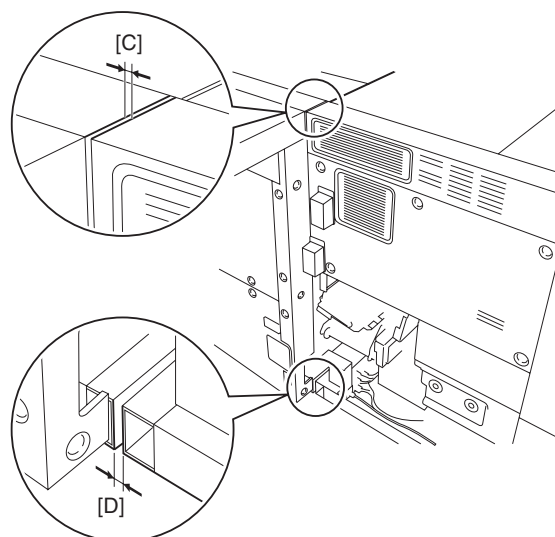
F-2-55

<Rear side/upper area>

The gap [C] between the externals must be within 6mm.

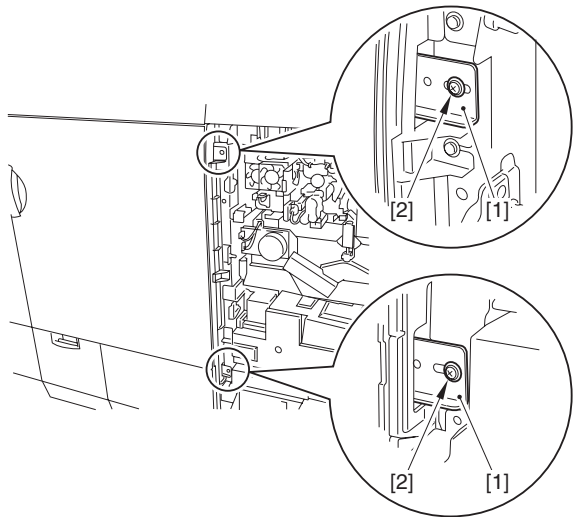
<Rear side/lower area>

The gap [D] of the plate must be within 5.6mm.



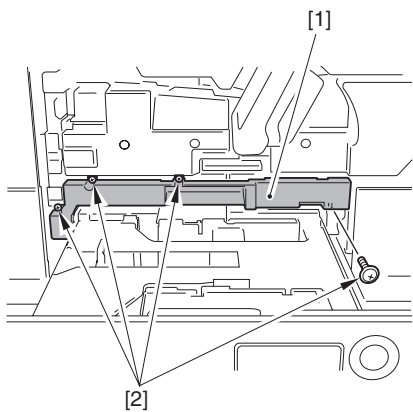
F-2-56

13) Fix the 2 connecting plates [1].
- 1 screw each (TP; M4X8) [2]



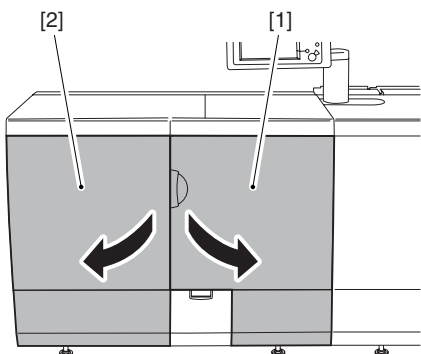
F-2-57

- 14) Attach the main-station left insulating cover.
<If it is Difficult to Attach the Main-Station Left Insulating Cover>
 14-1) Detach the main-station duplexing feeding cover [1].
 - 4 screws [2]



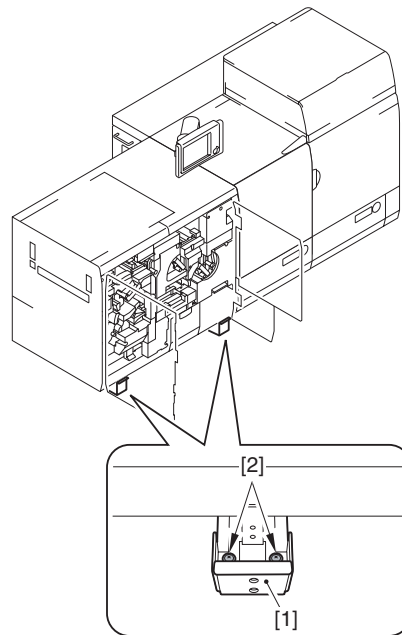
F-2-58

- 14-2) Attach the main-station left insulating cover.
 14-3) Attach the main-station duplexing feeding cover.
 15) Close the left deck.
 16) Attach the main-station left front cover.
 17) Close the main-station left front cover and the main-station right front cover.
 18) Open the sub-station right front cover [1] and the sub-station left front cover [2].



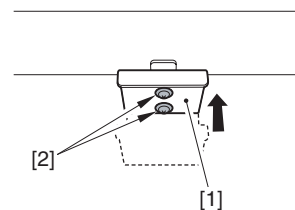
F-2-59

- 19) Remove the 2 screws [2] each from the 2 tip-resistant fixtures [1].



F-2-60

- 20) Push the tip-resistant fixture [1] in the direction of the arrow and secure it with the 2 screws [2] (removed in Step 19)).



F-2-61

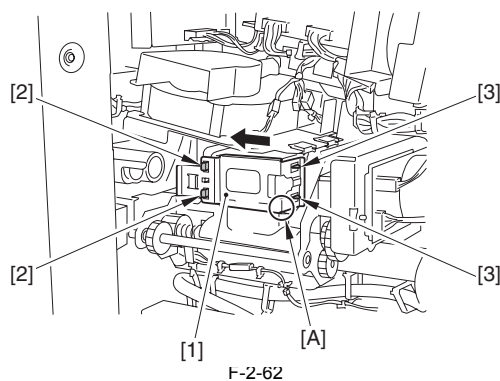
- 21) Close the sub-station left front cover and the sub-station right front cover.

MEMO:
 Be sure to put the wrenches back to the original location after adjusters of the main station and the sub station are secured.

2.2.10 Connecting Waste Toner Connecting Pipe

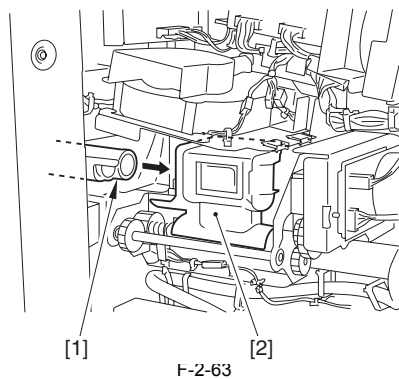
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- 1) Release the 2 claws [2] while pushing the [A] area of the waste toner feed connecting window [1] at the back of the sub station in the direction of the arrow, and then release the 2 claws [3] to remove the waste toner feed connecting window [1].

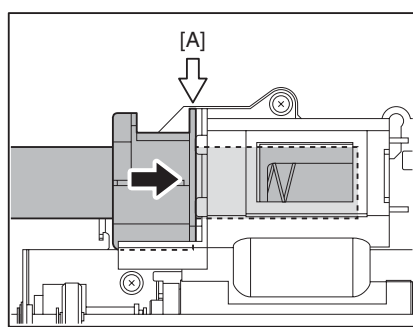


F-2-62

- 2) Pull out the waste toner connecting pipe [1] of the Main Station, and insert it into the waste toner connecting mouth [2].



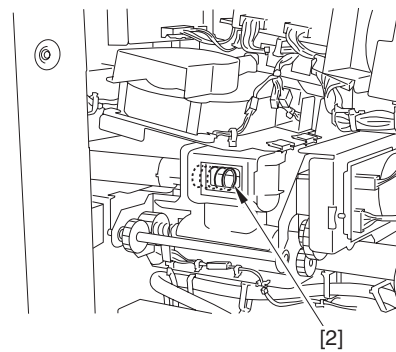
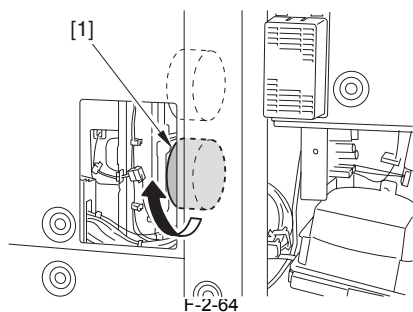
Make sure that there is no gap at the connecting area [A] between the waste toner connecting pipe and the waste toner connecting mouth. If there is a gap between them, perform Step 3) while pulling the waste toner connecting pipe to the waste toner connecting mouth.



- 3) Turn the waste toner buffer drive motor [1] in the direction of the arrow and check that the waste toner feed screw [2] rotates.



When turning the waste toner buffer drive motor, be sure to turn it from the bottom to the top. If the screw fails to rotate, turn the motor while pulling the waste toner connecting pipe toward the waste toner connecting mouth to check.

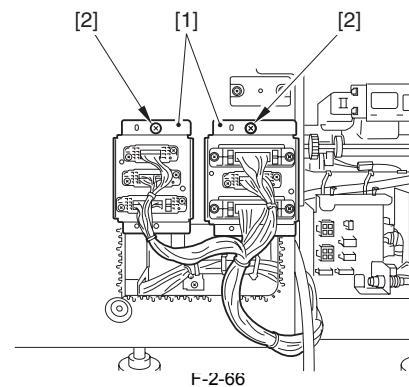


- 4) Attach the waste toner feeding connecting window.

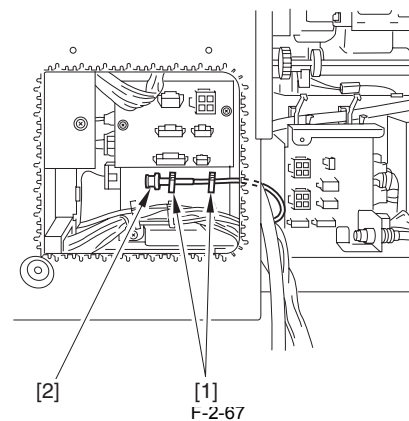
2.2.11 Connecting Main Station and Sub Station with Cable

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- 1) Remove the 2 relay drawer connector bases [1] attached at the back of the main station.
-1 screw [2] each (used in Step 6))



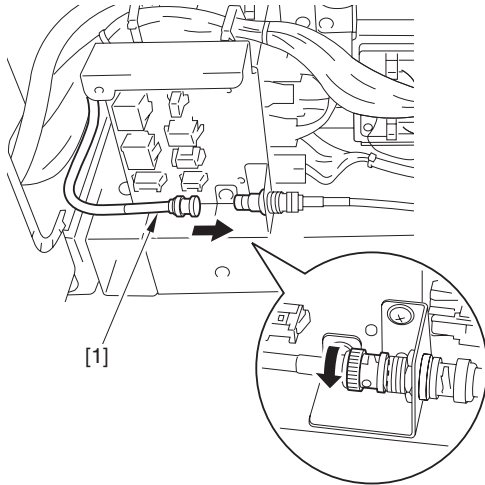
- 2) Free the ARCNET cable [2] from the 2 wire saddles [1].



- 3) Insert the ARCNET cable [1] and turn the terminal to secure.

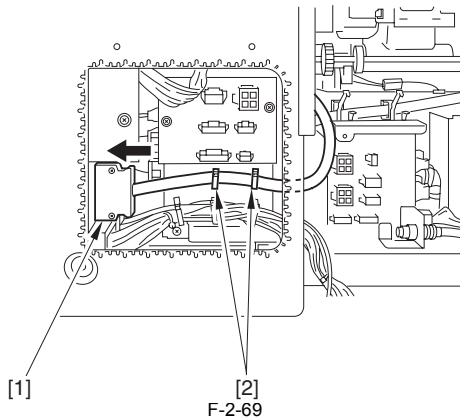


To avoid unstable electrical contact, be sure to rotate the ARCNET cable until it stops.



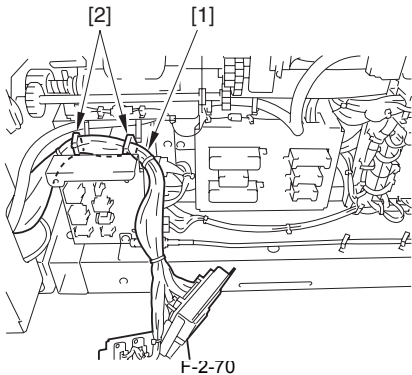
F-2-68

- 4) Insert the communication cable [1] and secure it with the 2 wire saddles [2].



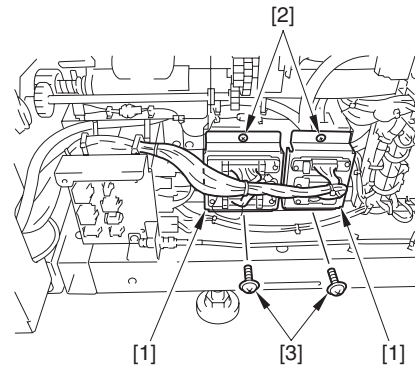
F-2-69

- 5) Fix the relay drawer cable [1].
- 2 wire saddles [1]



F-2-70

- 6) Insert the 2 relay drawer connector bases [1] to the sub station and secure them with the 2 screws [2] removed in Step 1) and the 2 screws (TP; M4X8) [3] included in the package.



F-2-71

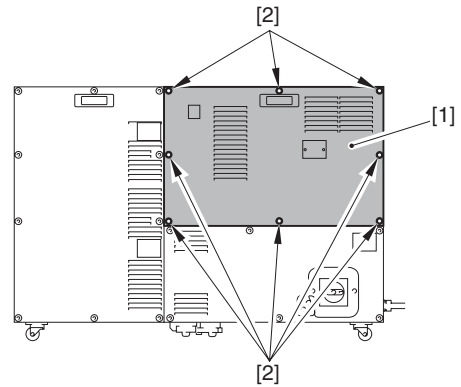
- 7) Attach the Sub-Station rear cover 4.

2.2.12 Connecting Power Unit Station

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

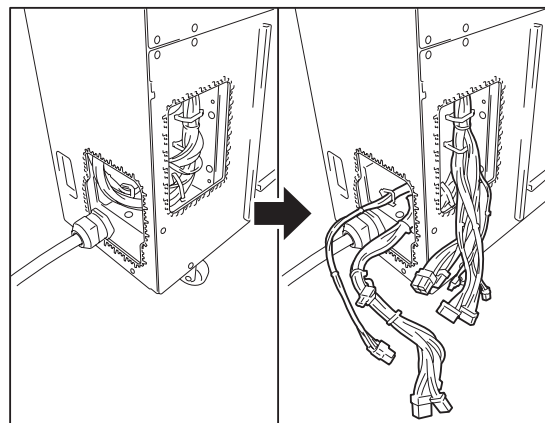
! If connecting the POD deck at the same time, be sure to install it before Step 9).

- 1) Detach the power unit station rear cover 1 [1].
- 8 screws [2]

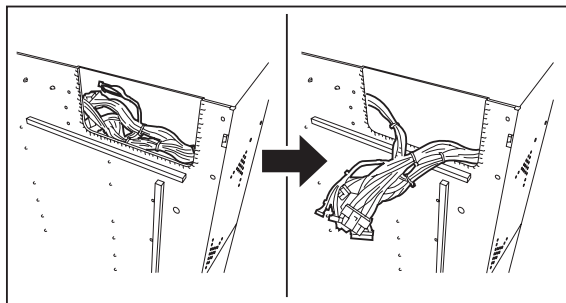


F-2-72

- 2) Pull out the harness from the power unit station as in the picture.

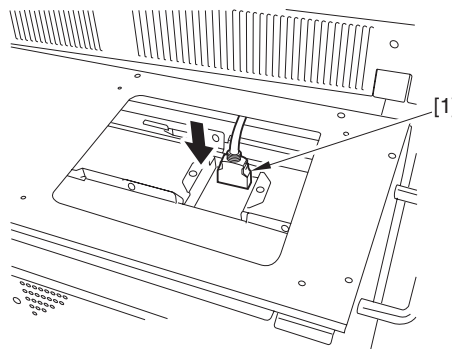


F-2-73



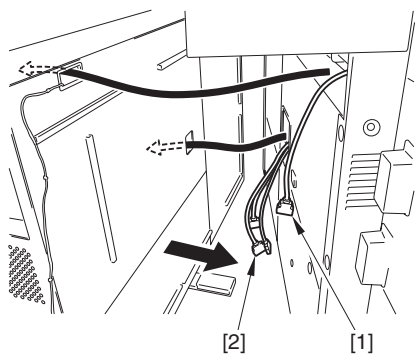
F-2-74

3) Put the control panel cable [1] and the 3 video cables [2] through the hole of the power unit station; then, move the power unit station close to the main station.(do not make them stick together here).



F-2-78

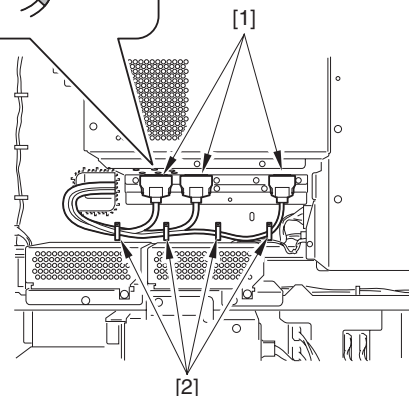
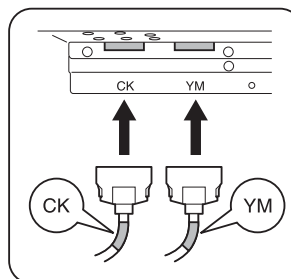
4-3) Attach the upper cover of the power unit station.
5) Connect the 3 video cables [1] to the power unit station, and secure them with the 4 wire saddles [2] as indicated below.



F-2-75

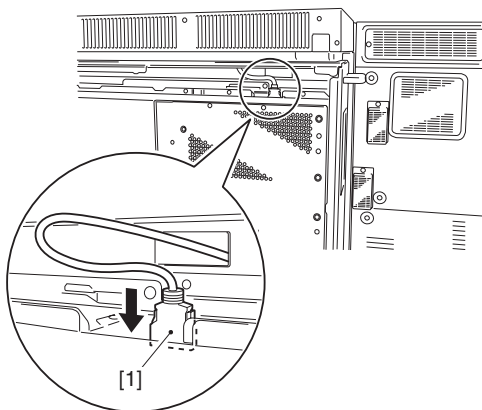
4) Connect the control panel cable [1] to the power unit station.

⚠ Be sure to match the labels on the cable with the markings on the power unit station when connecting.



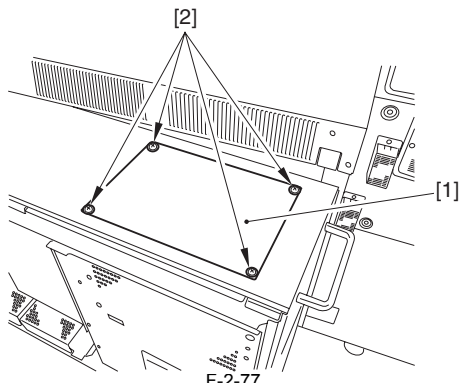
F-2-79

6) Connect the 6 connectors [1] with the main station.



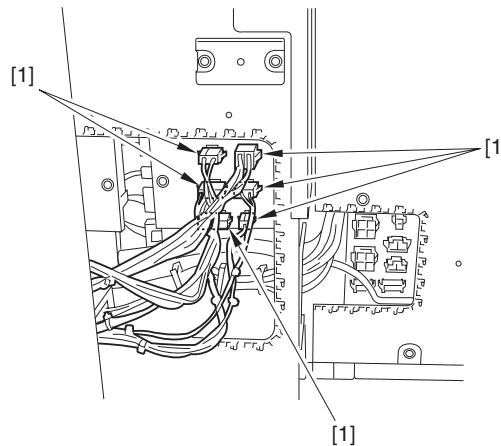
F-2-76

<In Case It's Difficult to Connect Control Panel Cable>
4-1) Detach the upper cover [1] of the power unit station.
- 4 screws [2]



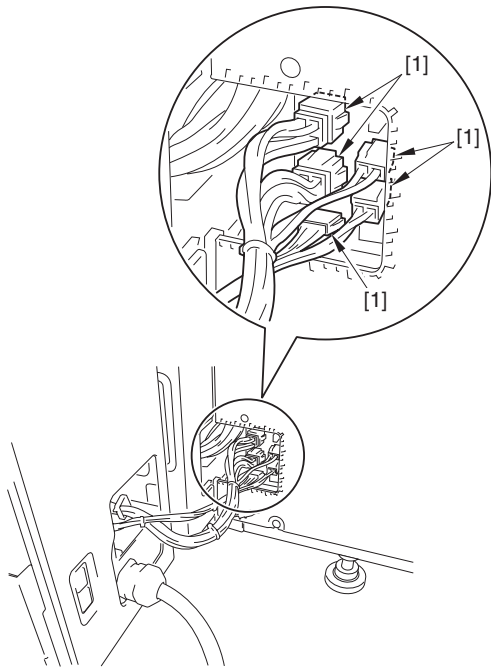
F-2-77

4-2) Insert the control panel cable [1].



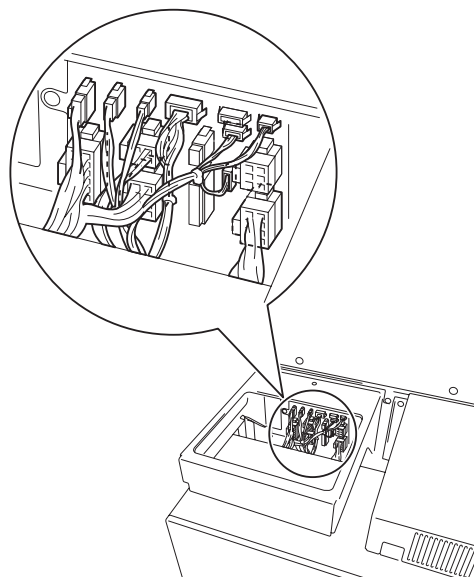
F-2-80

7) Connect the 5 cables [1] with the sub station.



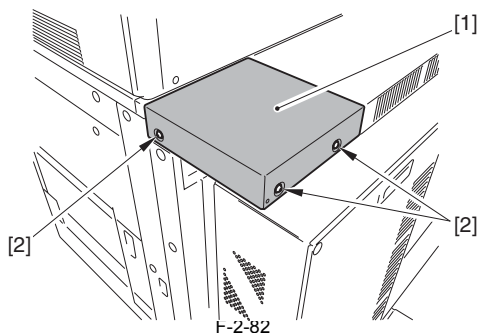
F-2-81

8) Detach the main-station rear upper cover 2 [1].
- 3 screws [2]



F-2-83

10) Attach the main-station rear upper cover 2.
11) Detach the 3 small covers [1] at the back of the power unit station.
- 2 screws [2] each

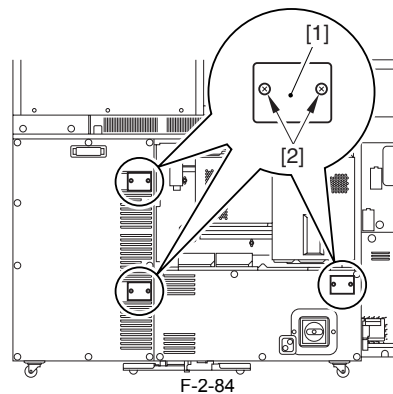


F-2-82

⚠
If connecting the POD deck at the same time, be sure to install it before Step 9).

9) Connect the 11 connectors of the cable with the main station.

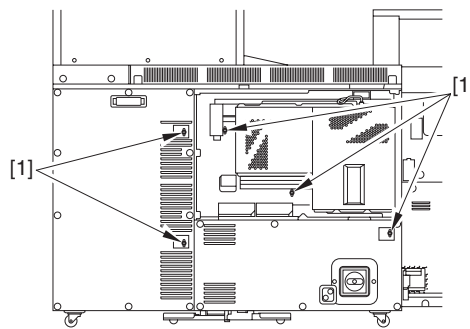
⚠
It is easy to connect the connectors in the order from the bottom.



F-2-84

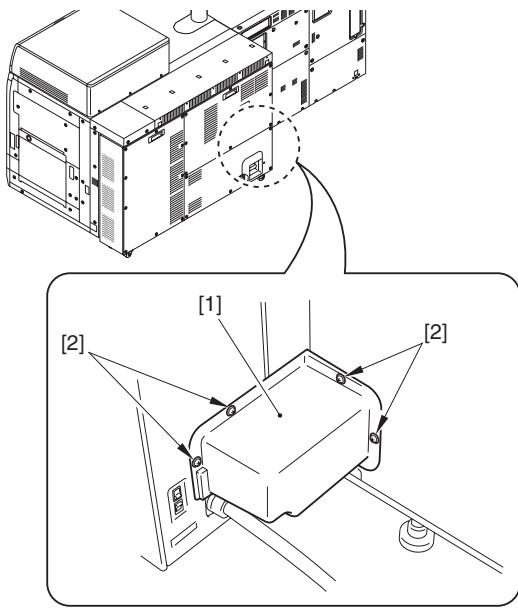
12) Make the power unit station be attached to the main station, and then secure them.
- 5 screws (W sems; M4X12)[1]

⚠
- Be careful not to drop the screw into the power station.
- When contacting the power unit station closely with the main station, be sure to pull the control panel cable and the video cable inside the power unit station.



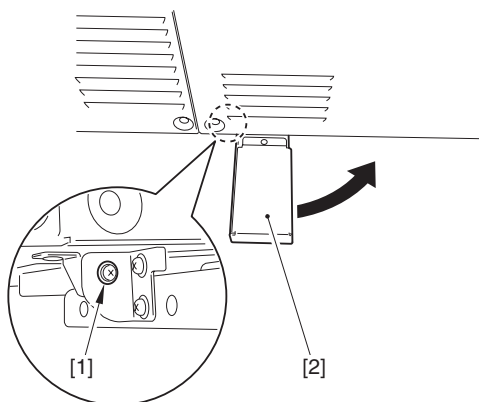
F-2-85

13) Attach the small covers at the back of the power unit station.
14) Attach the power unit station rear cover 1.
15) Attach the cable cover [1].
- 4 screws (TP; M4X8) [2]

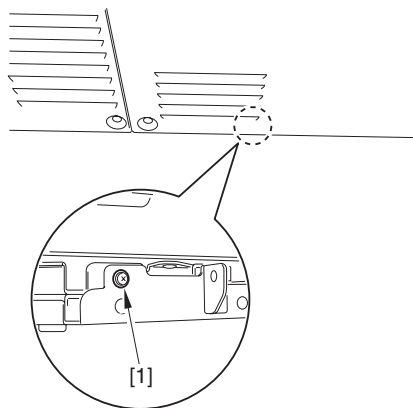


F-2-86

- 16) Remove the screw [1]. Fold the auxiliary caster [2] and fix it with the screw that has been removed.



F-2-87

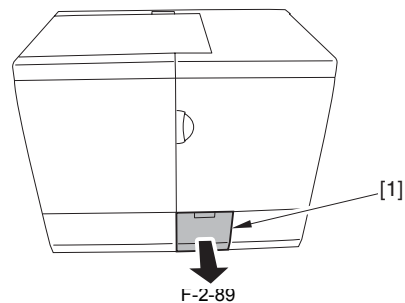


F-2-88

2.2.13 Attaching Waste Toner Container

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- 1) Pull out the waste toner receptacle [1] and remove the fixing tape.



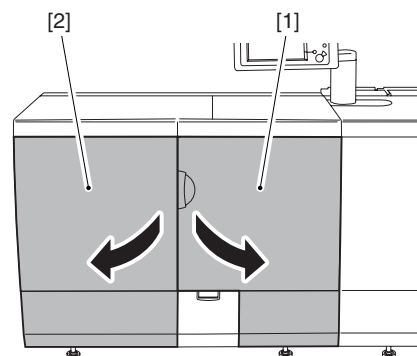
F-2-89

- 2) Close the waste toner receptacle.

2.2.14 Attaching Primary Fixing Assembly

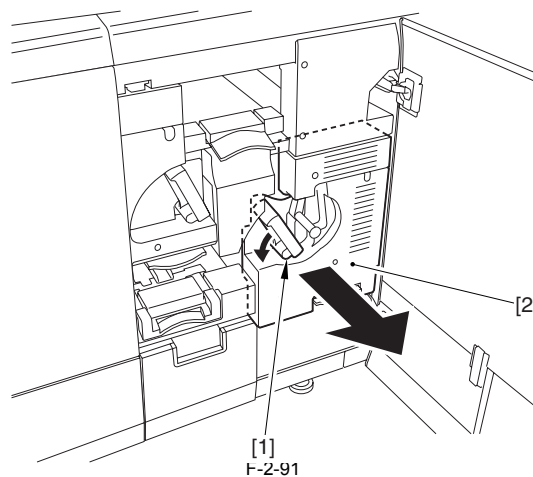
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- 1) Open the sub-station right front cover [1] and the sub-station left front cover [2].



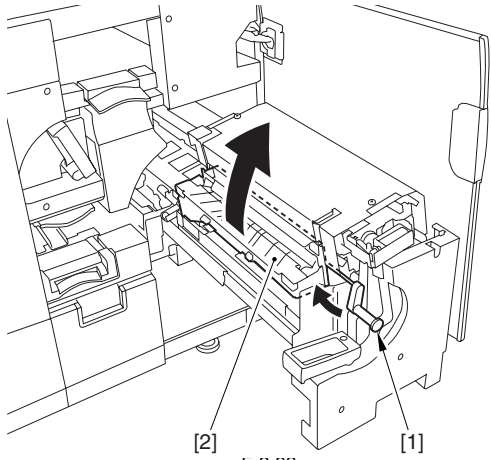
F-2-90

- 2) Remove all the tape attached inside the station.
3) Tilt the lever (C-A4) [1] in the direction of the arrow, and pull out the primary fixing assembly [2] until it stops.



F-2-91

- 4) Hold the lever (C-A5) [1] and lift up the fixing delivery assembly [2] over the fixing assembly to remove the fixing tape attached inside.



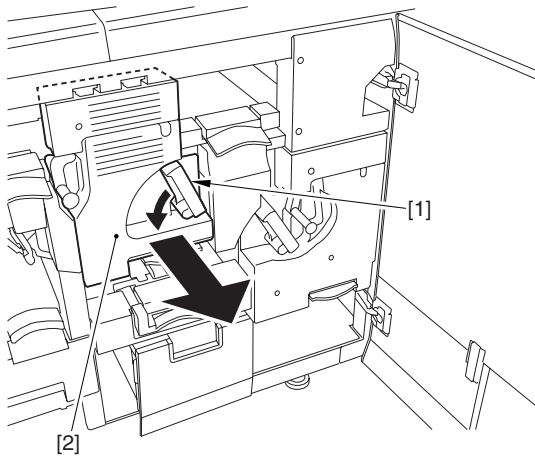
F-2-92

- 5) Put the fixing delivery assembly back.
- 6) Push in the primary fixing assembly and lock the lever (C-A4).

2.2.15 Attaching Secondary Fixing Assembly

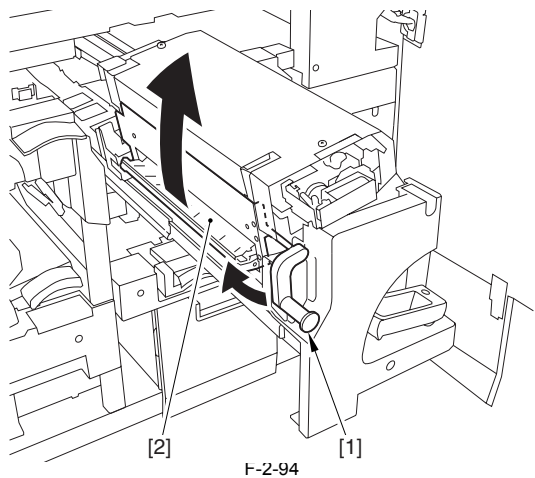
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- 1) Tilt the lever (C-B4) [1] in the direction of the arrow, and pull out the secondary fixing assembly [2] until it stops.



F-2-93

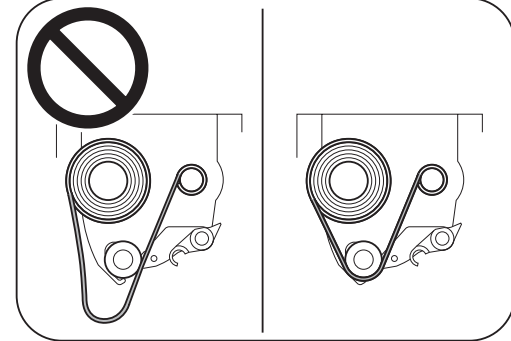
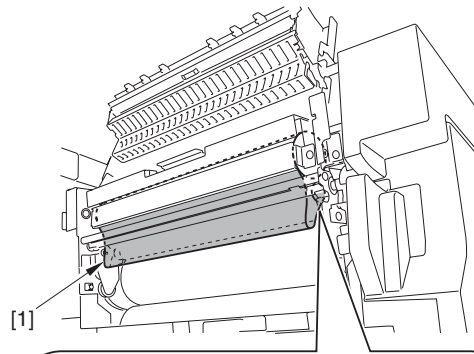
- 2) Remove the label affixed on the secondary fixing assembly.
- 3) Hold the lever (C-B5) [1] and lift up the fixing delivery assembly [2] over the fixing assembly to remove the cushioning material attached inside.



F-2-94

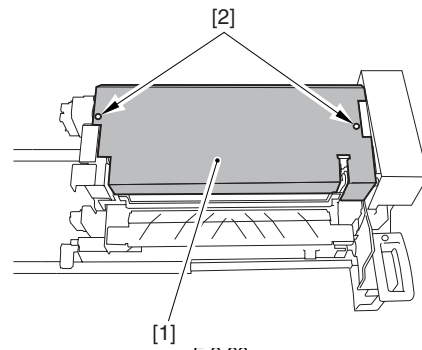
⚠
Be sure to remove cushioning dust when removing it.

- 4) Check the slack of the fixing web [1]. If it is slacked, execute step 5 to 7 indicated below.



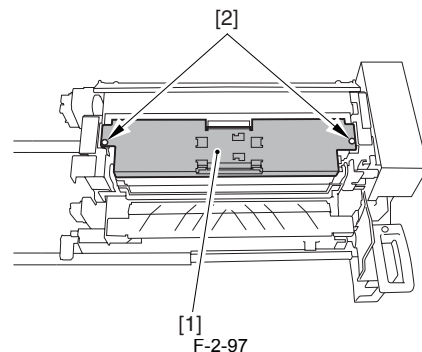
F-2-95

- 5) Detach the fixing upper cover [1].
- 2 screws [2] (loosen)



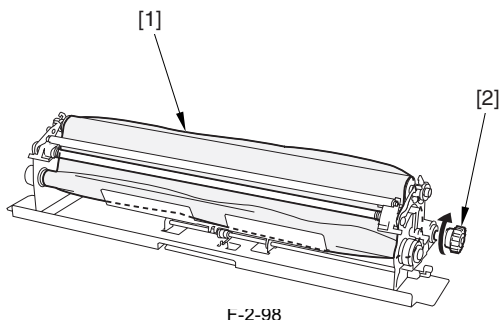
F-2-96

- 6) Remove the fixing web unit [1].
- 2 screws [2]



F-2-97

- 7) Remove slack of the web [2] by rotating the gear [1] in the direction of the arrow.



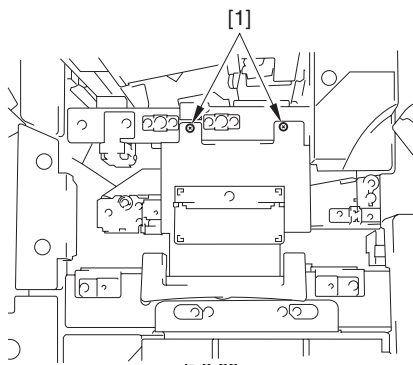
F-2-98

8) Put the fixing delivery assembly back. (do not put the secondary fixing assembly back here)

2.2.16 Installing Duplexing Feed Assembly

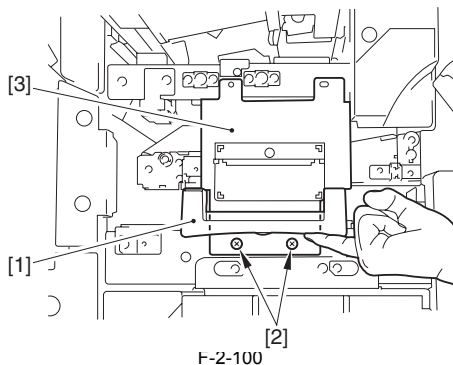
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

1) Remove the 2 screws [1]. (Used in the step 5))



F-2-99

2) While lifting up the lever (C-A3) [1], remove the reinforcement plate stay 2 [3] by removing the 2 screws [2]. (the removed screws are used in step 11))



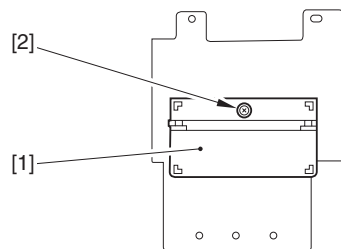
F-2-100

3) Push the secondary fixing assembly in and lock it with the lever (C-B4).

4) Remove the grip [1] attached to the fixing reinforcement plate stay 2. - 1 screw [2] (used in the step 7))

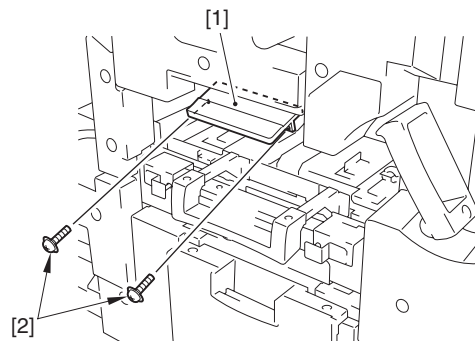


Take care to keep the fixing reinforcement plate stay 2 in preparation for shifting the host machine.



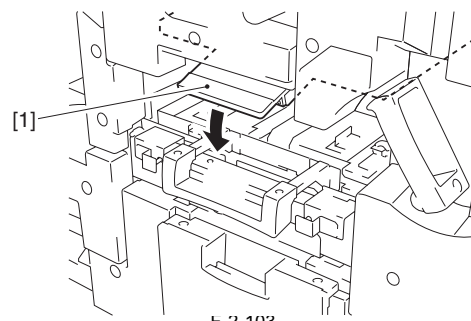
F-2-101

5) Attach the grip [1] (temporary tightening).
- 2 screws [2] (the screws removed in the step 1))



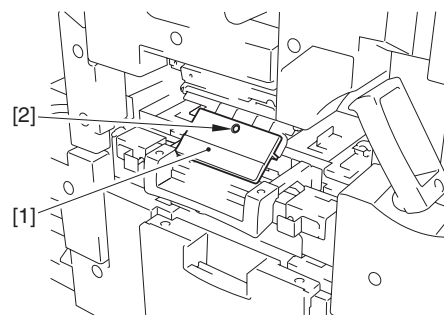
F-2-102

6) Release the bypass lower guide [1].



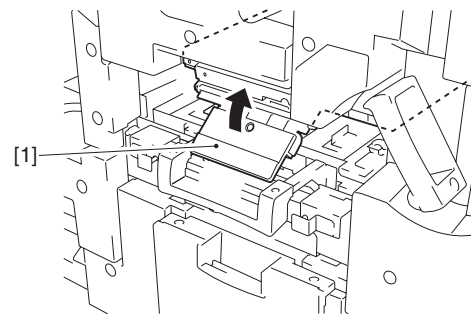
F-2-103

7) Fix the grip [1].
- 1 screw [2] (the screw removed in the step 4))



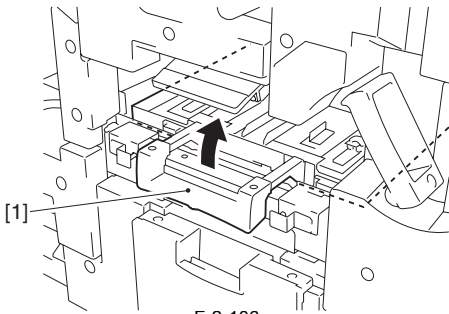
F-2-104

8) Lift up the bypass lower guide to lock.



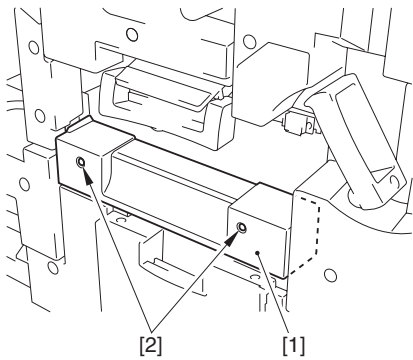
F-2-105

9) Tighten the 2 screws fully that are temporary tightened in the step 5).
10) Lift up the lever (C-A3) [1] to fix.



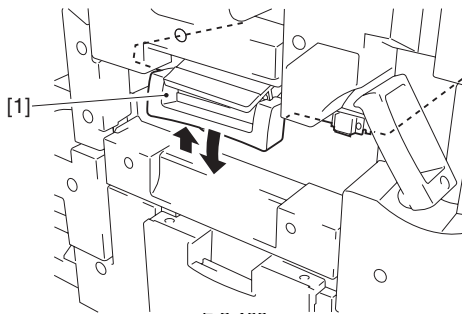
F-2-106

- 11) Attach the sub station duplexing feeder cover [1].
- 2 screws [2] (the screw removed in the step 2))



F-2-107

- 12) Lift up the lever (C-A3) [1]; then, lift it down.



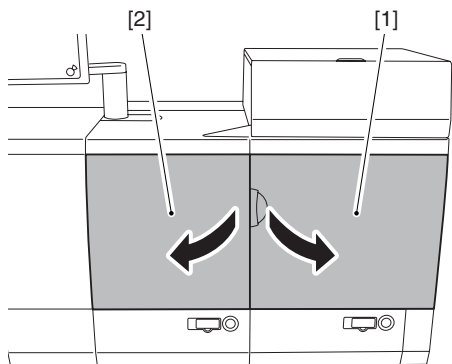
F-2-108

- 13) Close the sub-station left front cover and the sub-station right front cover.

2.2.17 Installing Process Unit

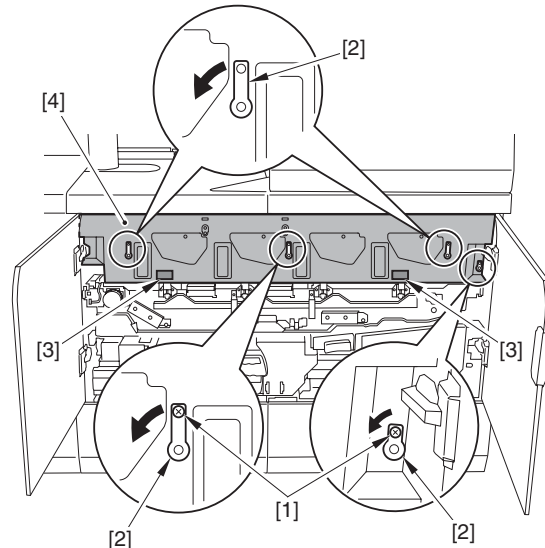
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- 1) Open the main-station right front cover [1] and the main-station left front cover [2].



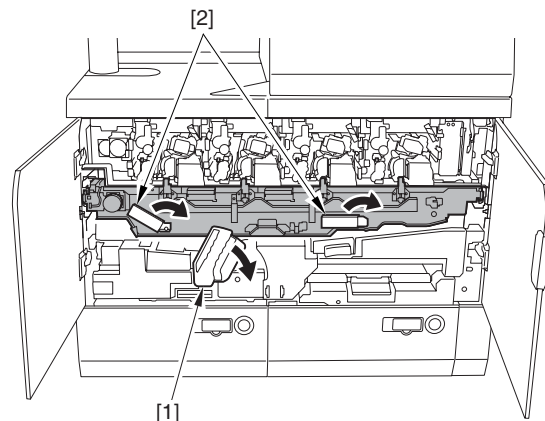
F-2-109

- 2) Remove the 2 stepped screws [1] and then push the 4 release levers [2] to the direction of the arrow. Remove the process unit cover [4] by holding it by the grips [3].



F-2-110

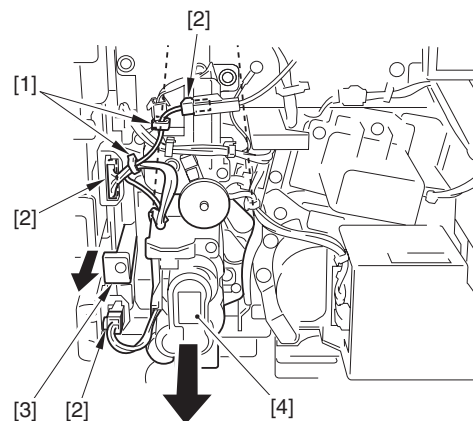
- 3) Tilt the lever (B-E1) [1].
- 4) Tilt the 2 release levers [1] of the intermediate transfer unit in the direction of the arrow simultaneously.



F-2-111

⚠
From step 5, perform the same work to each color.
The position of the developing assembly is yellow (Y), magenta (M), cyan (C), and black (Bk) from the left.

- 5) Remove the 2 wire saddles [1] and disconnect the 3 connectors [2].
- 6) Slide the developing assembly pressure release lever [3] toward the front until it stops (release the pressure to the drum), and remove the developing assembly [4].

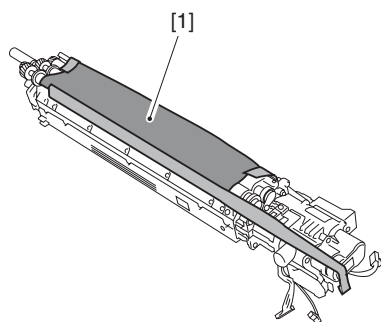


F-2-112

- 7) Remove the protective sheet [1] affixed on the developing cylinder.

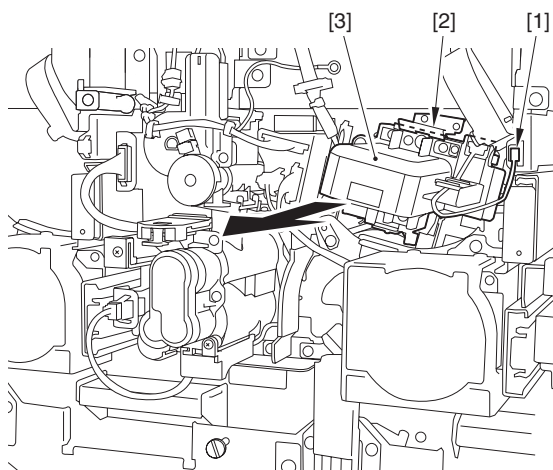


Take care to keep the protective sheet in preparation for shifting the host machine.



F-2-113

- 8) Disconnect the connector [1] and release the leaf spring [2] to pull out the primary charging assembly [3].

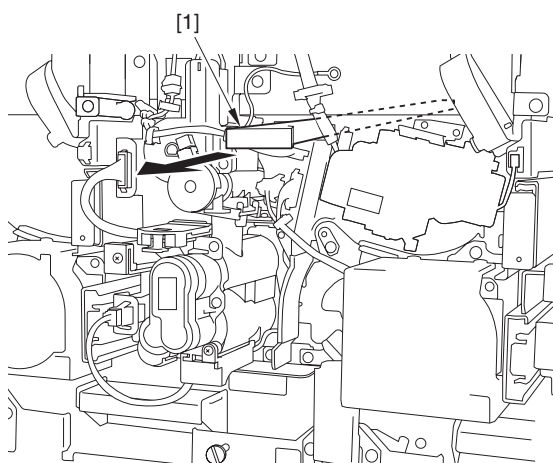


F-2-114

- 9) Pull out the dust-proof glass unit [1].

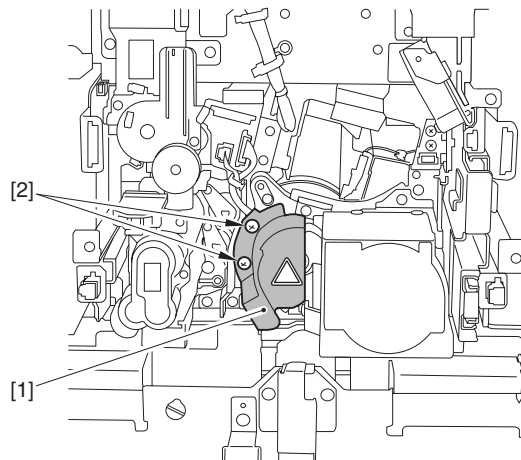


Pull it out slowly so that the surface of the dust-proof glass is not damaged.



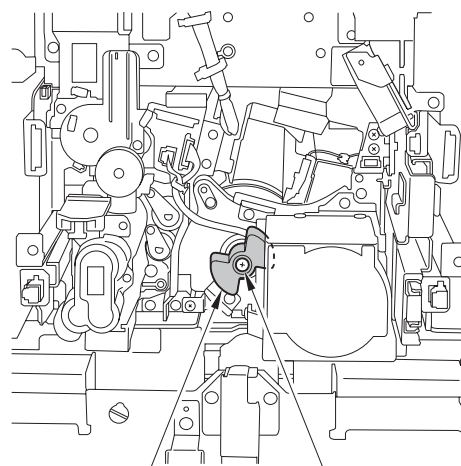
F-2-115

- 10) Detach the drum shaft knob cover [1].
- 2 screws [2]



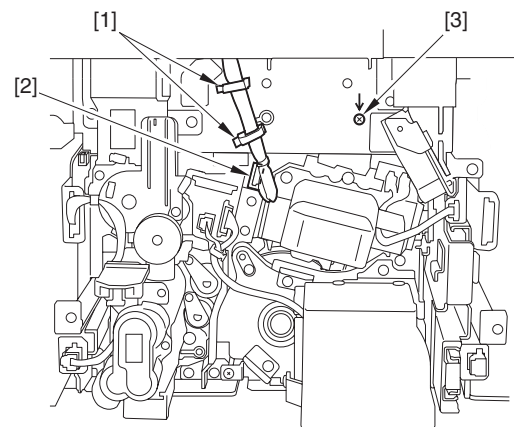
F-2-116

- 11) Remove the drum shaft knob [1].
- 1 screw [2]



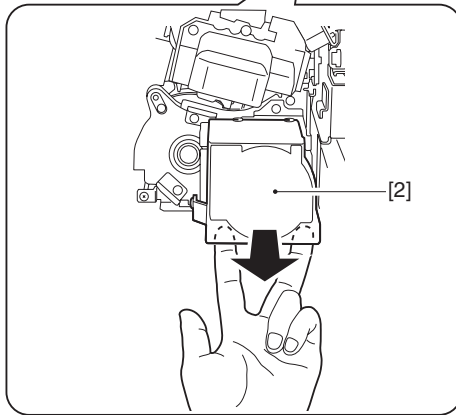
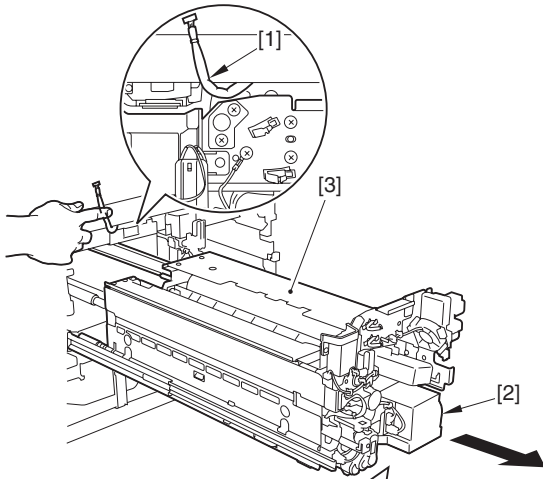
F-2-117

- 12) Free the 2 wire saddles [1], disconnect the connector [2] and remove the screw [3].



F-2-118

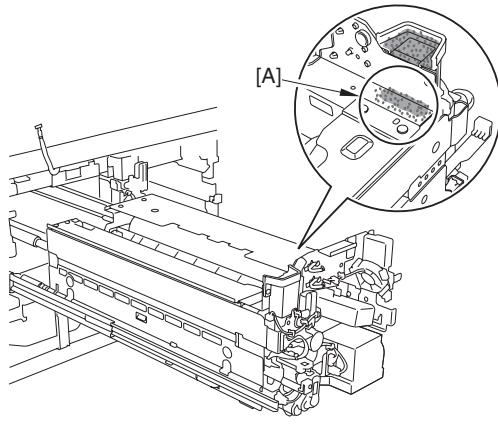
- 13) While holding the harness [1], slide the process unit [3] out by holding the grip [2] until it stops.



F-2-119



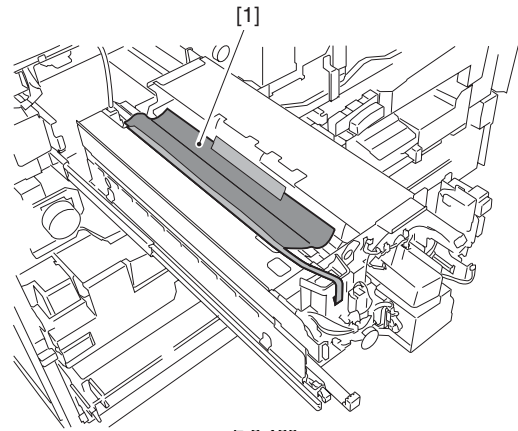
Remove the toner that has been splashed around the [A] area of the process unit, if any, with a lint-free paper.



14) Remove the protective sheet [1] affixed on the process unit.

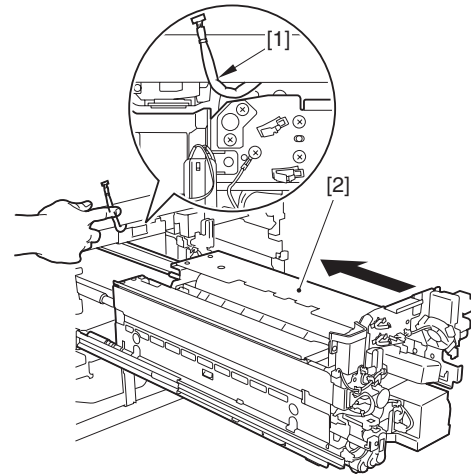


Take care to keep the protective sheet in preparation for shifting the host machine.



F-2-120

15) While holding the harness [1] upward, slide the process unit [2] inside.



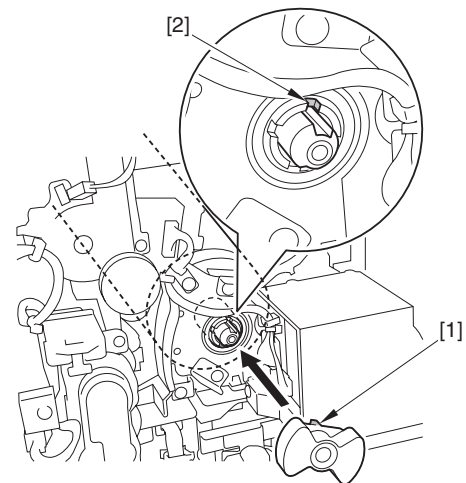
F-2-121

16) Attach the 2 wire saddles, connect the connector, and tighten the screw removed in step 12).

17) Align the protrusion [1] of the drum shaft knob with the slot [2] of the drum flange, and attach the drum shaft knob.



When tightening the screw, be sure to hold the drum shaft knob for not letting it move clockwise direction.

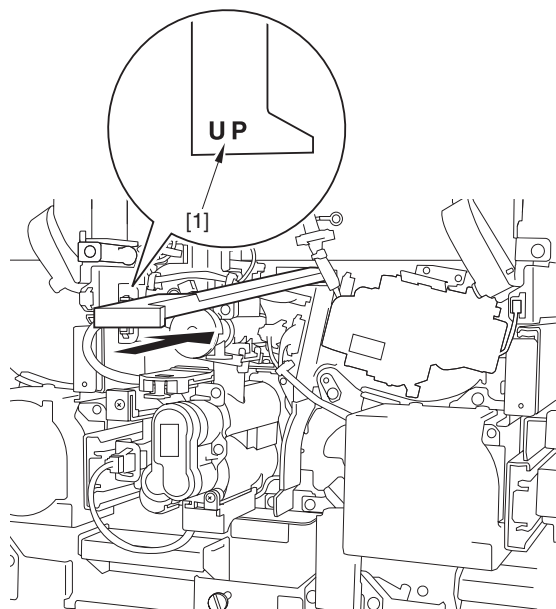


F-2-122

18) Attach the drum shaft knob cover.

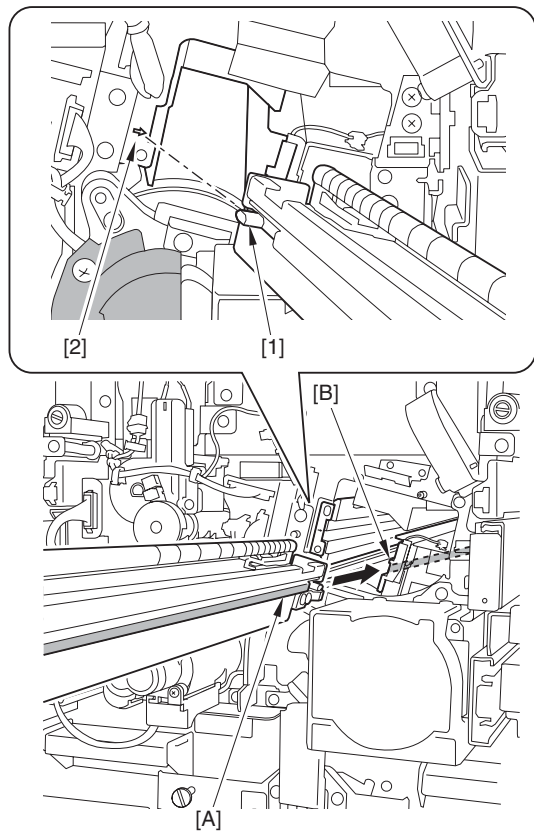
19) Set the marking [1] (UP) of the dustproof glass unit up, and attach the unit.

⚠ Be sure to slide the dustproof glass unit slowly inside for not scratching the surface of the dustproof glass.



F-2-123

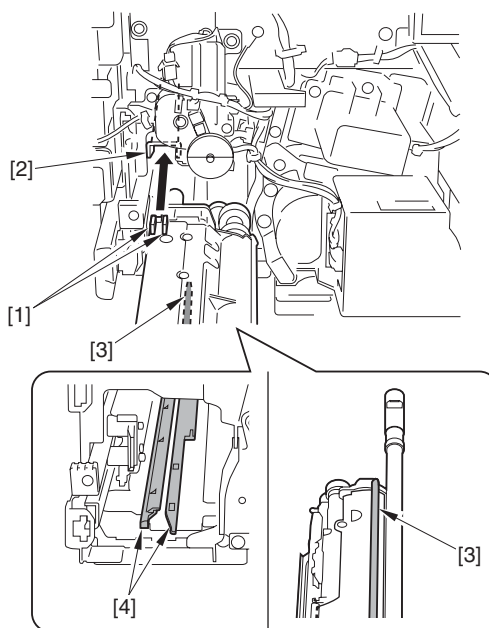
20) Align the protrusion [1] of the primary charging assembly with the marking [2] on the host machine. Set the [A] of the primary charging assembly onto the rail [B] of the host machine, and mount the primary charging assembly.



F-2-124

21) Attach the developing assembly.
 Be sure to fit the protrusions [1] on the upper side of the developing assembly into the rail [2] at the host machine side, and fit the protrusion [3] on the lower side of the assembly into the rail [4] at the host machine side.
 (By fitting the protrusions [1] into the rail [2] and sliding the assembly evenly inside, the protrusion [3] and the rail [4] fit each other

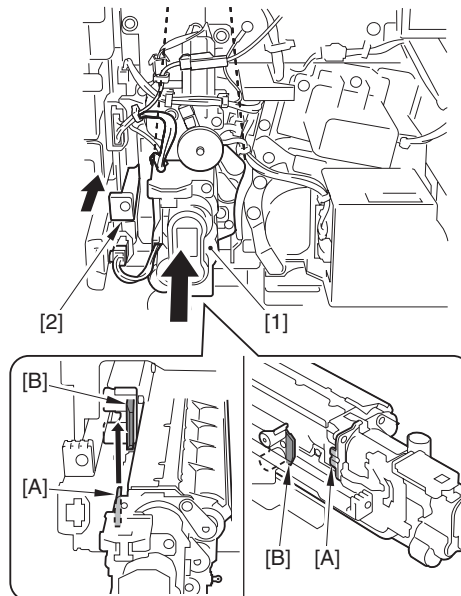
themselves.)



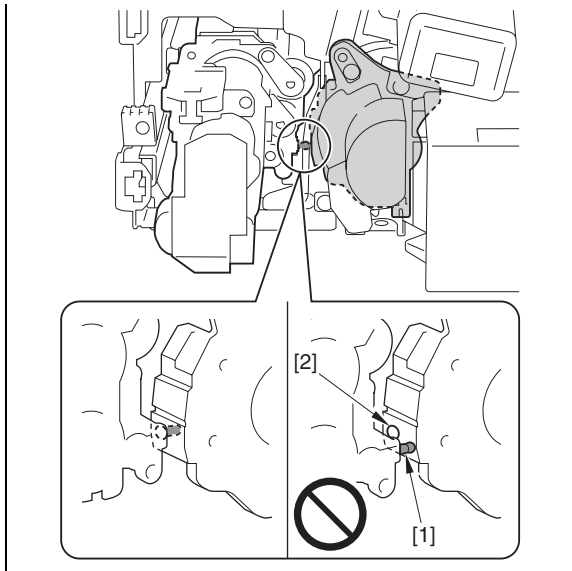
F-2-125

22) While placing the developing assembly touched to the rear side of the host machine, push the developing assembly release lever.

⚠ - When inserting the developing assembly [1], make sure to insert the protrusion [A] of the developing assembly front cover into the left side of the protrusion [B] of the developing pressure unit. (It is easier to insert with pushing it slightly to the left side.)
 If the position of the developing assembly and the developing pressure unit is not correct, it disturbs the application of pressure under overload. In that case, pull out the developing assembly and start over again from insertion. If applying pressure to the developing assembly at an incorrect position, the developing assembly or the developing pressure unit may be broken.



- Be sure to secure the grounding wire [1] with the wire saddles [2] when mounting the developing assembly. Otherwise, the grounding wire may get caught in the sub hopper toner stirring motor [3].

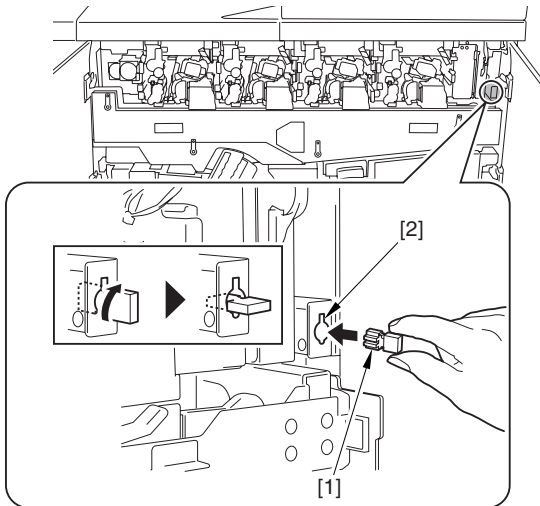


- 23) Attach the 2 wire saddles and connect the 3 connectors removed in step 5).
- 24) Return the intermediate transfer unit release lever to its original position, and attach the intermediate transfer unit cover using the steps to detach it but in reverse.
- 25) Lock the lever (B-E1) [1].

2.2.18 Setting Toner Container

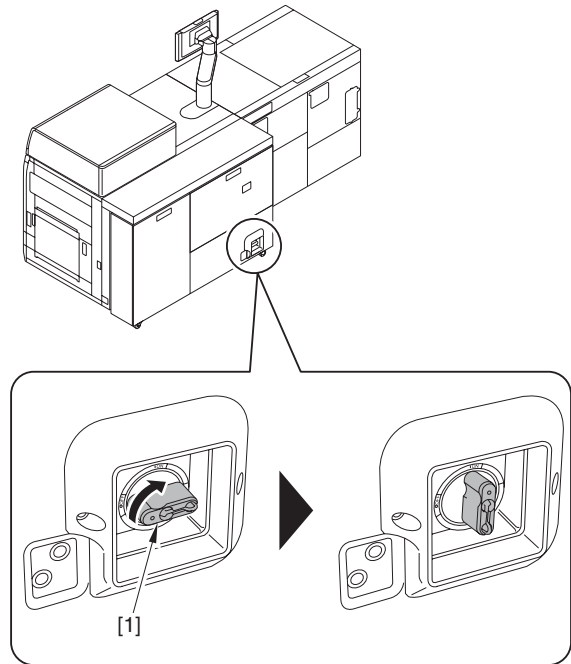
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- 1) Insert the door tool [1] into the drum heater switch area [2] to attach it as shown in the figure (to turn ON the drum heater switch).



F-2-126

- 2) Insert the power plug to the power outlet.
- 3) Turn on the leakage breaker [1].



F-2-127

⚠

1. Make sure the drum heater switch [1] is ON before turning ON the main power switch.

2. Make sure not to put a paper into the deck when turning ON the main power switch.
Only in the case that there is no paper in the deck at power on, implement automatic 'Flootation Fan Air Flow Adjustment'.

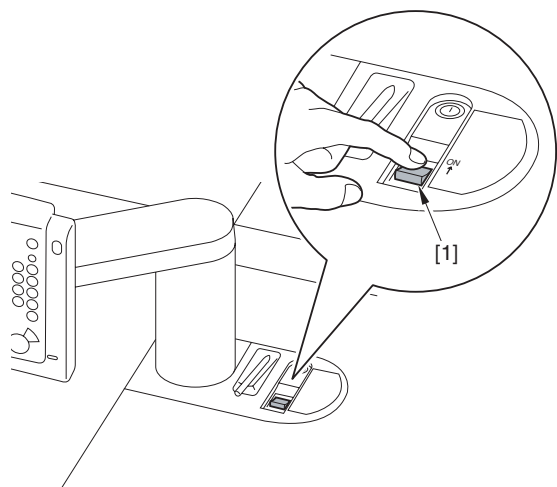
⚠

Be sure to check that the main station front doors are open when turning ON the main power.

- 4) Turn on the main power switch.

MEMO:

In the case that the reader as an accessory has been installed, the screen prompting shutdown is displayed at the initial power on. Reboot is required to change the setting from printer model into copy model. After rebooting, it operates as a copy model. (The reader becomes available.)



F-2-128

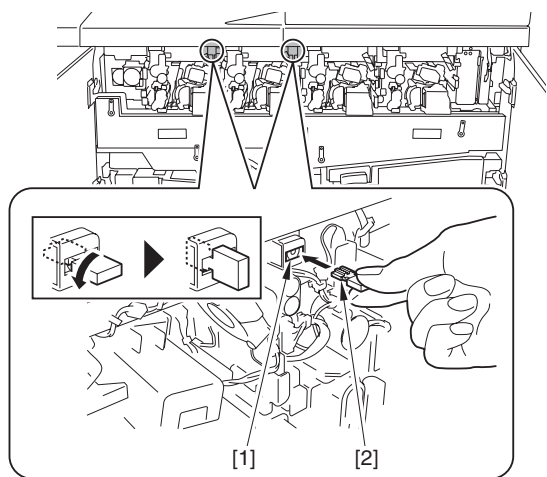
- 5) When the progress bar screen is complete, make the following settings in service mode.

! Be sure to check that the main station front doors are open when executing the following service mode.

Setting to invalid the warm-up rotation:
COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL > AINR-OFF: change 0 to 1

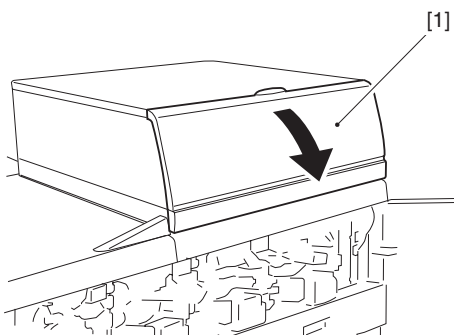
MEMO:
Setting value is automatically return to "0" when executing the following:
COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL > INISET-4

- 6) Insert the 2 door tools [1] into the door switch areas [2] to attach them as shown in the figure.



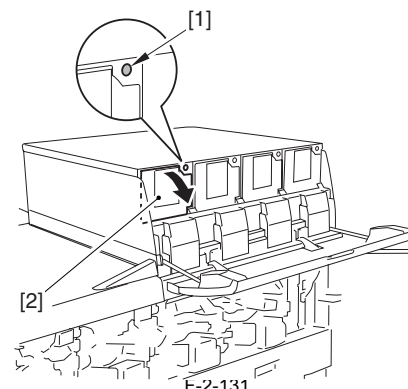
F-2-129

- 7) Open the toner replacement external cover [1].



F-2-130

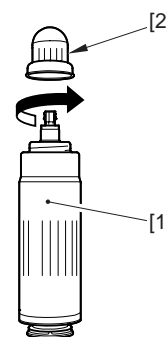
- 8) Push the open/close switch [1] to open the toner replacement inner cover [2].



F-2-131

- 9) Remove the cap [2] of the toner retainer (Y) [1] in the direction of the arrow.

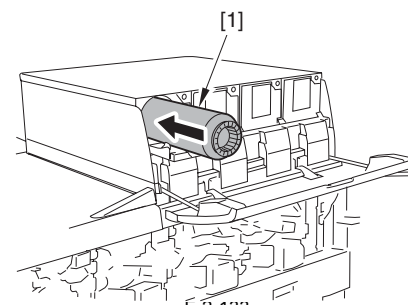
! Do not shake the toner retainer because toner may leak.



F-2-132

- 10) Insert the toner retainer (Y) [1] and close the toner replacement inner cover (Y).

MEMO:
The machine automatically starts stirring when the toner retainer is set and the toner replacement inner cover is closed.



F-2-133

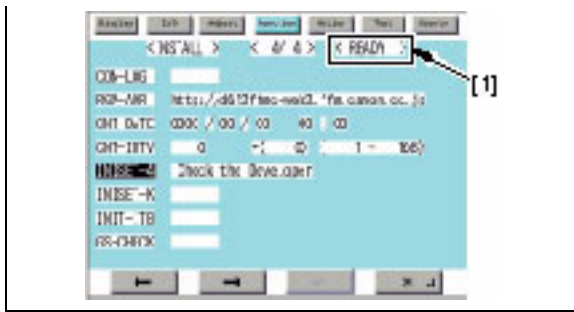
- 11) Perform the same steps for magenta (M), cyan (C) and black (Bk) as well.
12) Close the toner replacement external cover.

2.2.19 Replenishing Starter

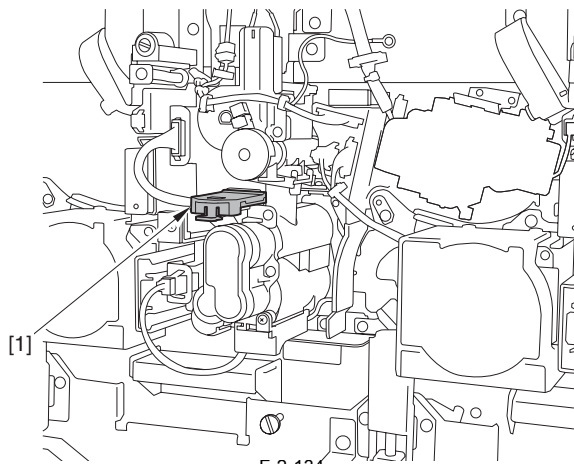
imagePRESS C7000VP

- 1) Set a paper to the right deck. If paper set procedure is unclear, refer to "Setting Paper".

! Without setting a paper to the deck, it is not possible to check that the host machine status [1] is "READY". The operations, "SPLY-H-Y/M/C/K", "STIR-4", and "INISET-4", that will be executed in the following steps will not be worked normally if the host machine status is not "READY".

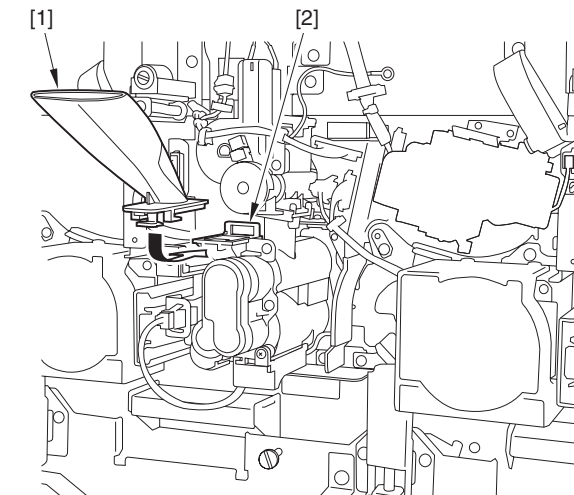


2) Pinch the trailing edge of the developer supply mouth cover [1] of the (Y) developing assembly, and with pushing it to lower lightly, pull the cover toward to remove it.



F-2-134

3) Fit the carrier supplying funnel [1] from the developing assembly supply mouth [2] of the developing assembly (Y).



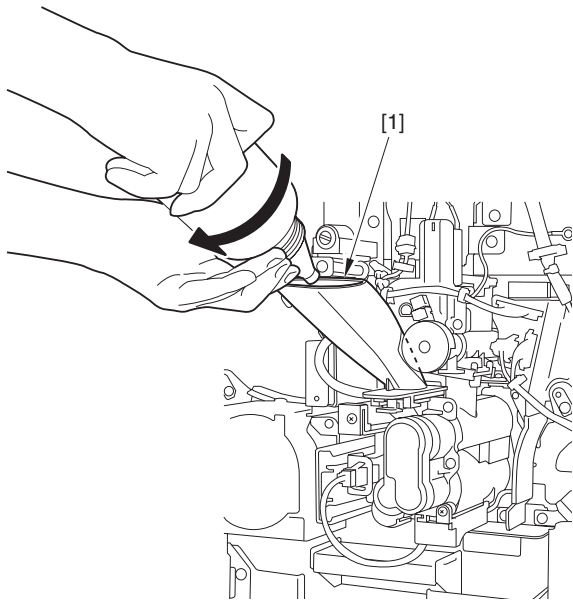
F-2-135

4) Check that "READY" is displayed on the screen in service mode and execute the following in service mode.
 COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL > SPLY-H-Y (developer starts to rotate. Duration: approx. 290 sec)
 5) With rotating the bottle, pour the starter (Y) little by little into the carrier supplying funnel [1].

⚠

- Be sure to pour the starter corresponding to the color of the developing assembly.
- Be sure to check from the developer's supplying mouth that the screw is rotating, and then pour the starter.
- Keep the carrier supplying funnel for the use in replenishing the developer.

MEMO:
 'OK' is displayed on the screen when the machine's operation is complete. 'ACTIVE' is displayed on the screen during operation.



F-2-136

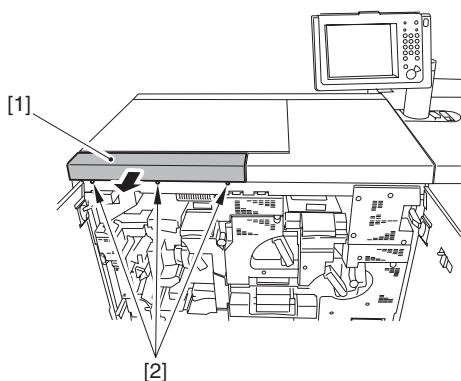
MEMO:
 The operation "SPLY-H-Y/M/C/K" can be stopped by pressing STOP key while the operation is in process.

- 6) Remove the carrier supplying funnel and attach the developer supply mouth cover.
- 7) Perform the same procedure from step 2) to step 6) for the developing assemblies of Magenta (M), Cyan (C) and Black (Bk) as well.
- 8) Check that "READY" is indicated on the service mode screen; then, execute the developer stirring in service mode.
 COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL > STIR-4 (duration: approx. 155 sec)
- 9) Remove the 2 door tools attached to the door switch area. (be sure to keep the removed door tools)
- 10) Close the main-station left front cover and the main-station right front cover.
- 11) Check that "READY" is displayed on the screen in service mode and execute the following in service mode.
 COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL > INISET-4 (duration: approx. 500 sec)

⚠
 Do not turn off the power switch while the machine is in operation.

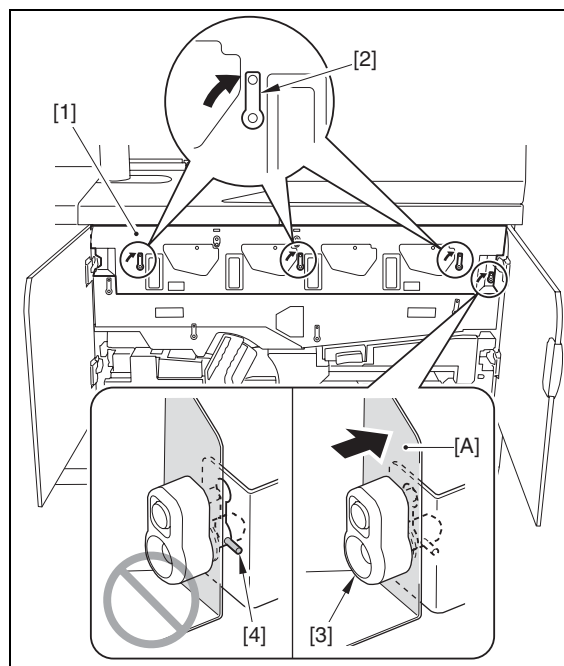
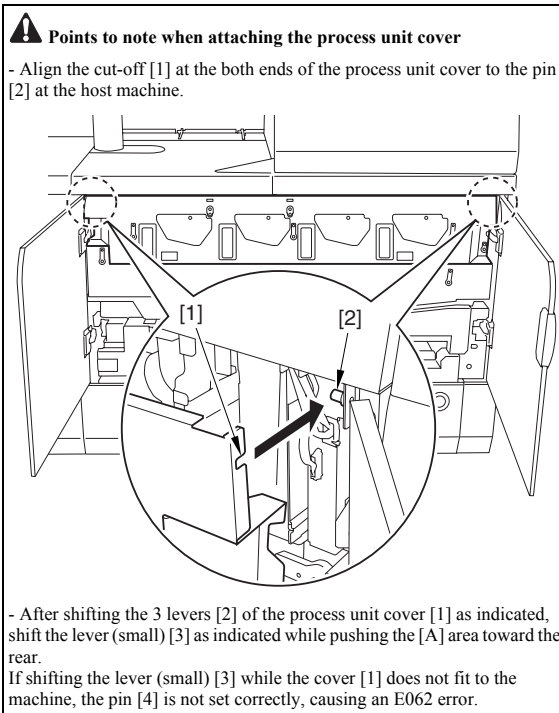
MEMO:
 While executing "INISET-4" in service mode, label affix inside the deck can be executed.
 Refer to "Affixing the Labels".

- 12) Open the waste toner container unit, and execute the offset adjustment of the waste toner full sensor.
 - 12-1) Replace the waste toner container that is set at the time of shipment with the container packed with the machine. (The removed waste toner container can be used after the adjustment.)
 - 12-2) Close the waste toner receptacle.
 - 12-3) Check that "READY" is displayed on the screen in service mode and execute the following in service mode.
 - COPIER > FUNCTION > MISC-P > WTN-OFST
 - 12-4) Write down the following service mode values.
 - COPIER > ADJUST > SENS-ADJ > W-TNR-1
 - COPIER > ADJUST > SENS-ADJ > W-TNR-2
- 13) Open the right deck, and remove the papers.
- 14) Close the right deck.
- 15) Perform the shutdown sequence displayed on the screen, and turn off the main power.
- 16) Open the sub-station right front cover and the sub-station left front cover.
- 17) Remove the sub-station front upper cover [1].
 - 3 screws [2]



F-2-137

- 18) Enter the service mode values (W-TNR-1 and W-TNR-2) written in step 12-4) to the service label affixed on the sub station top front cover.
- 19) Attach the sub-station front upper cover.
- 20) Close the sub-station left front cover and the sub-station right front cover.
- 21) Open the main-station right front cover and the main-station left front cover.
- 22) Remove the door tool attached to the drum heater switch area. (be sure to keep the removed door tool)
- 23) By reversing the steps to detach, attach the process cover unit cover.

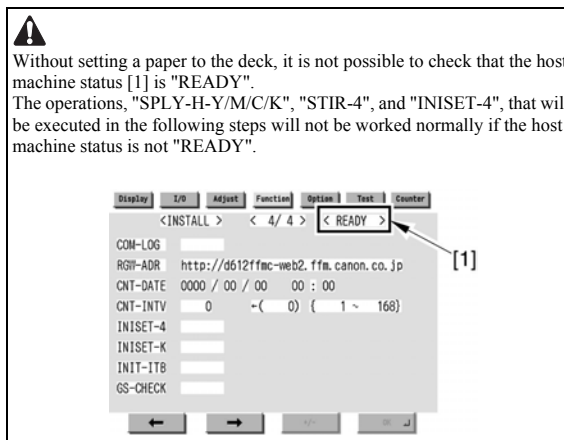


- 24) Close the main-station left front cover and the main-station right front cover.
- 25) Turn on the main power switch.
- 26) Open the toner replacement external cover.
- 27) Open the toner replacement inner cover and replace the each toner container with new one.
- 28) Close the toner replacement external cover.

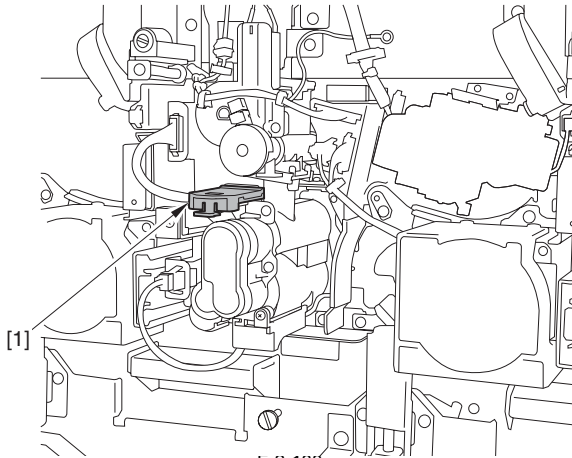
2.2.20 Replenishing Starter

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- 1) Set a paper to the right deck. If paper set procedure is unclear, refer to "Setting Paper".

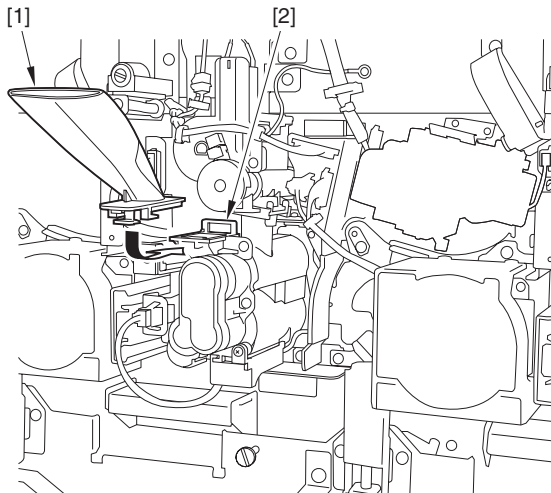


- 2) Pinch the trailing edge of the developer supply mouth cover [1] of the (Y) developing assembly, and with pushing it to lower lightly, pull the cover toward to remove it.



F-2-138

- 3) Fit the carrier supplying funnel [1] from the developing assembly supply mouth [2] of the developing assembly (Y).



F-2-139

- 4) Check that "READY" is displayed on the screen in service mode and execute the following in service mode.
COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL > SPLY-H-Y (developer starts to rotate. Duration: approx. 290 sec)



Do not stop the operation by pressing STOP key when executing SPLY-H-Y/M/C/K. Otherwise, it may cause image fault because the toner will not be stirred enough.

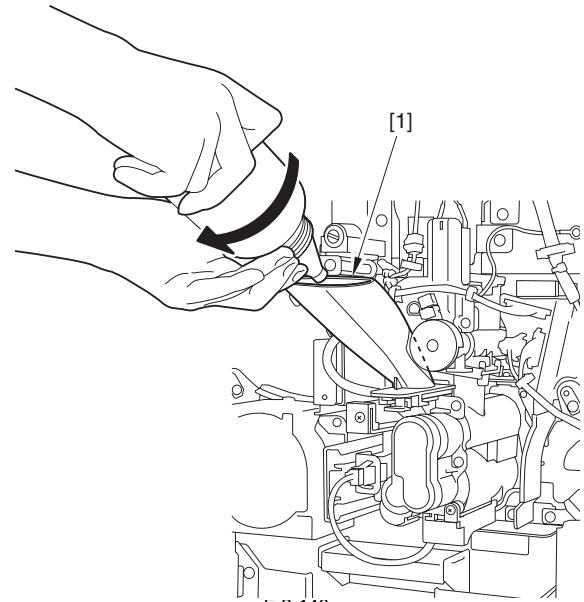
- 5) With rotating the bottle, pour the starter (Y) into the carrier supplying funnel [1].



- Be sure to pour the starter corresponding to the color of the developing assembly.
- Be sure to check from the developer's supplying mouth that the screw is rotating, and then pour the starter.
- Keep the carrier supplying funnel for the use in replenishing the developer.

MEMO:

'OK' is displayed on the screen when the machine's operation is complete.
'ACTIVE' is displayed on the screen during operation.



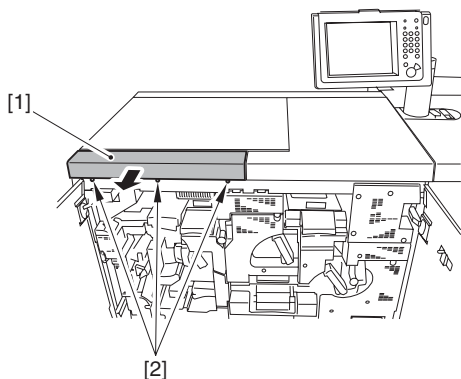
F-2-140

- 6) Remove the carrier supplying funnel and attach the developer supply mouth cover.
- 7) Perform the same procedure from step 2) to step 6) for the developing assemblies of Magenta (M), Cyan (C) and Black (Bk) as well.
- 8) Check that "READY" is indicated on the service mode screen; then, execute the developer stirring in service mode.
COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL > STIR-4 (duration: approx. 155 sec)
- 9) Remove the 2 door tools attached to the door switch area. (be sure to keep the removed door tools)
- 10) Close the main-station left front cover and the main-station right front cover.
- 11) Check that "READY" is displayed on the screen in service mode and execute the following in service mode.
COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL > INISET-4 (duration: approx. 500 sec)



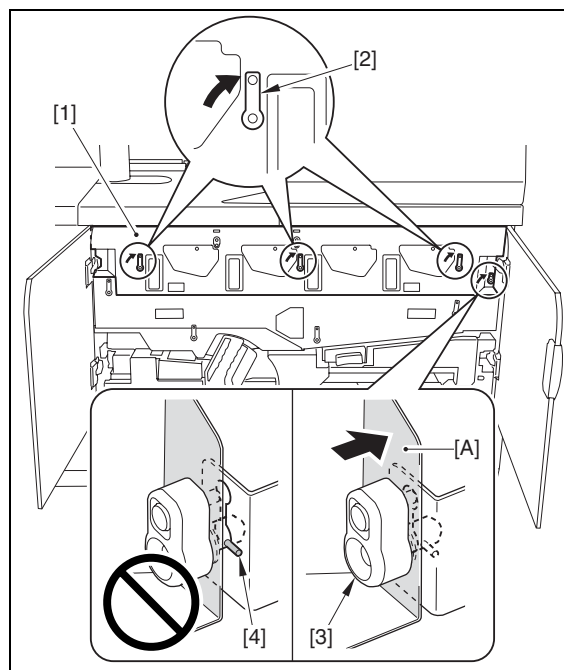
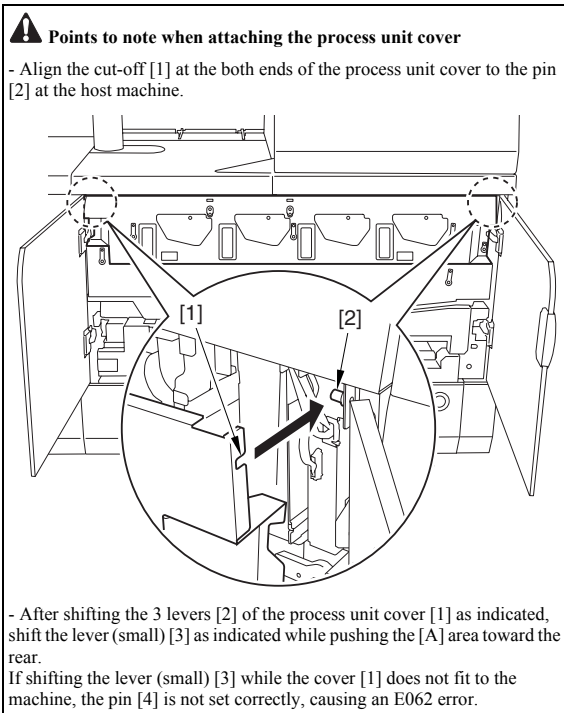
Do not turn off the power switch while the machine is in operation.

- 12) Open the waste toner container unit, and execute the offset adjustment of the waste toner full sensor.
- 12-1) Replace the waste toner container that is set at the time of shipment with the container packed with the machine. (The removed waste toner container can be used after the adjustment.)
- 12-2) Close the waste toner receptacle.
- 12-3) Check that "READY" is displayed on the screen in service mode and execute the following in service mode.
- COPIER > FUNCTION > MISC-P > WTN-OFST
 - 12-4) Write down the following service mode values.
 - COPIER > ADJUST > SENS-ADJ > W-TNR-1
 - COPIER > ADJUST > SENS-ADJ > W-TNR-2
- 13) Open the right deck, and remove the papers.
- 14) Close the right deck.
- 15) Perform the shutdown sequence displayed on the screen, and turn off the main power.
- 16) Open the sub-station right front cover and the sub-station left front cover.
- 17) Remove the sub-station front upper cover [1].
- 3 screws [2]



F-2-141

- 18) Enter the service mode values (W-TNR-1 and W-TNR-2) written in step 12-4) to the service label affixed on the sub station top front cover.
- 19) Attach the sub-station front upper cover.
- 20) Close the sub-station left front cover and the sub-station right front cover.
- 21) Open the main-station right front cover and the main-station left front cover.
- 22) Remove the door tool attached to the drum heater switch area. (be sure to keep the removed door tool)
- 23) By reversing the steps to detach, attach the process cover unit cover.



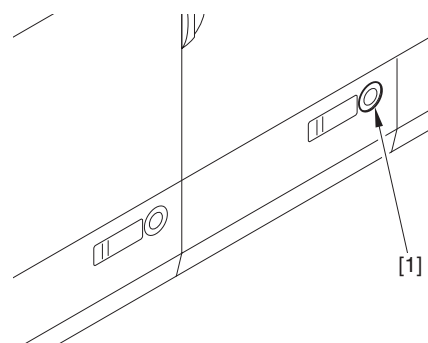
- 24) Close the main-station left front cover and the main-station right front cover.
- 25) Turn on the main power switch.
- 26) Open the toner replacement external cover.
- 27) Open the toner replacement inner cover and replace the each toner container with new one.
- 28) Close the toner replacement external cover.

2.2.21 Setting Paper

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

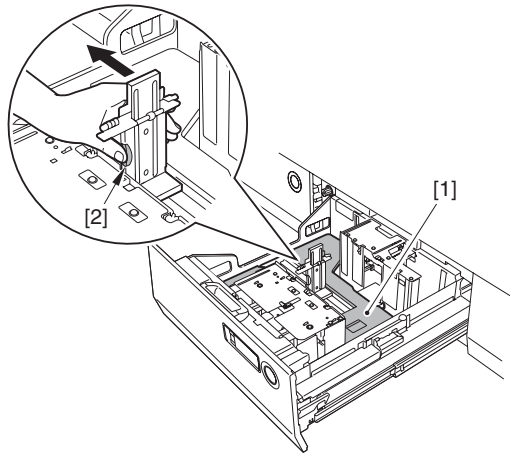
The followings apply to the operation for each deck.

- 1) Press [Additional Functions] > [Common Settings] > [Register Paper].
- 2) Select the paper source in which you want to register the paper type, press [Settings].
- 3) Select the desired paper size, press [Next].
- 4) Select the desired paper type loaded in the paper source, press [OK].
If the desired paper type is not displayed, press [Detailed Settings], select the paper type from the list and press [OK]. Make sure that the registered paper type setting is the same paper type that is loaded in the paper source.
- 5) Push the deck open/close button [1] to open the deck.



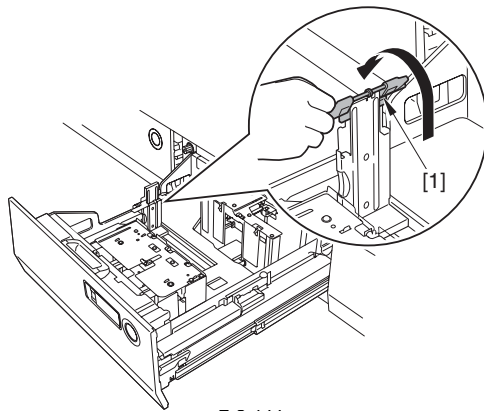
F-2-142

- 6) Check that the inner lifter [1] is lowered. While pushing the lever [2] of the rear edge guide plate, move it in the direction of the arrow.



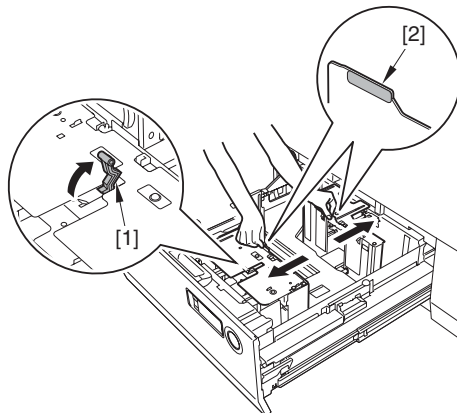
F-2-143

7) Move the paper retainer [1] of the rear edge guide plate in the direction of the arrow.



F-2-144

8) Shift the lever [1] of the side guide plate in the direction of the arrow and hold the 2 label areas [2] of the side guide plate to move them in the direction of the arrow.

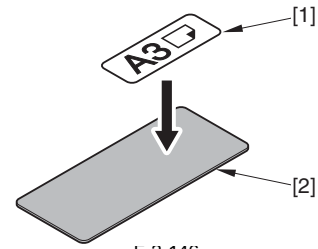


F-2-145

9) Set the specified paper.

MEMO:
Stack the paper for 10mm or more.

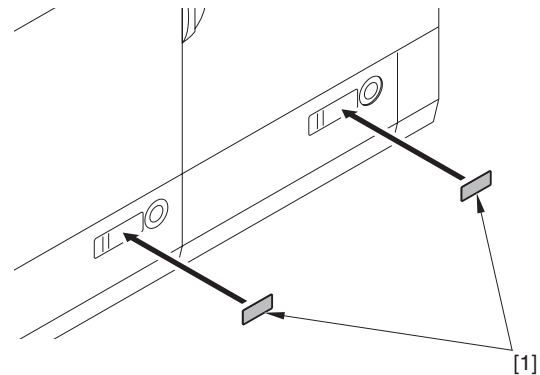
- 10) Set the side guide plate to fit with the paper, and then shift the lever back.
- 11) Put the paper retainer of the rear edge guide plate back.
- 12) Push the lever of the rear edge plate to fit with the paper size.
- 13) Close the deck.
- 14) Attach the paper size label [1] of the corresponding paper size on the size indication plate [2].



F-2-146

MEMO:
If the paper sizes or types may be changed after installation, use a marker for white board to write the paper size directly on the size indication plate [1]. (Do not use oil markers.)
The size written directly on the plate can be erased with soft cloth or the cleaner for white board.

15) Attach the Size indication plate [1] to each deck.

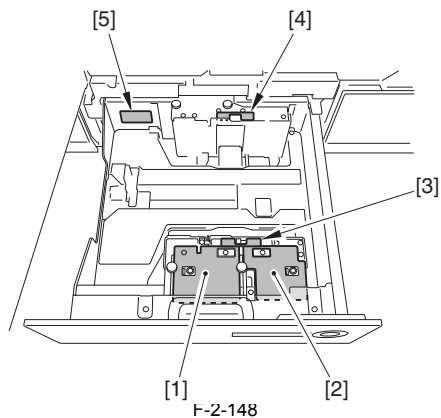


F-2-147

2.2.22 Affixing Labels Main Station

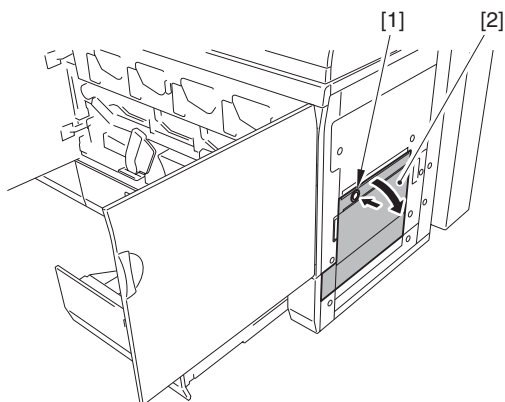
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- 1) Open the left deck.
- 2) Affix the label for the appropriate language over the positions shown in the figure below.
 - [1] Horizontal size label
 - [2] Size change procedure label
 - [3] Claw pressure switch label (front)
 - [4] Claw pressure switch label (rear)
 - [5] Paper supply notice label



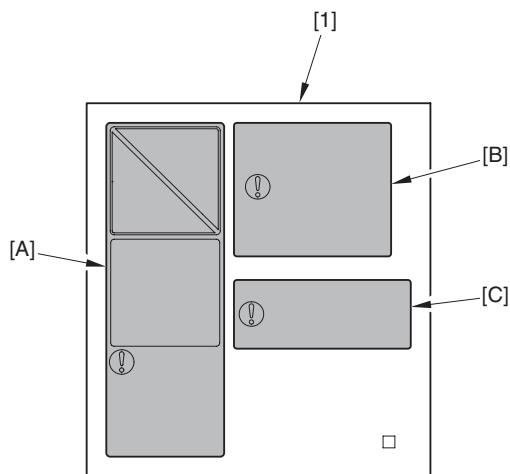
F-2-148

- 3) Taking the same steps 1) to 2), attach the label on the right deck.
- 4) Open the main-station right front cover and the main-station left front cover.
- 5) Press the button [1] to open the vertical path cover [2].



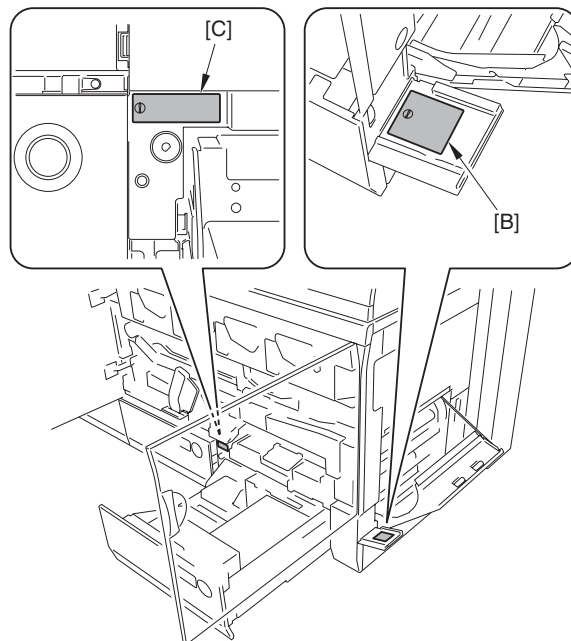
F-2-149

- 6) Attach the labels [B] and [C] of the main station language labels 2 [1] in the corresponding language to the positions shown in the figure below on the main station.



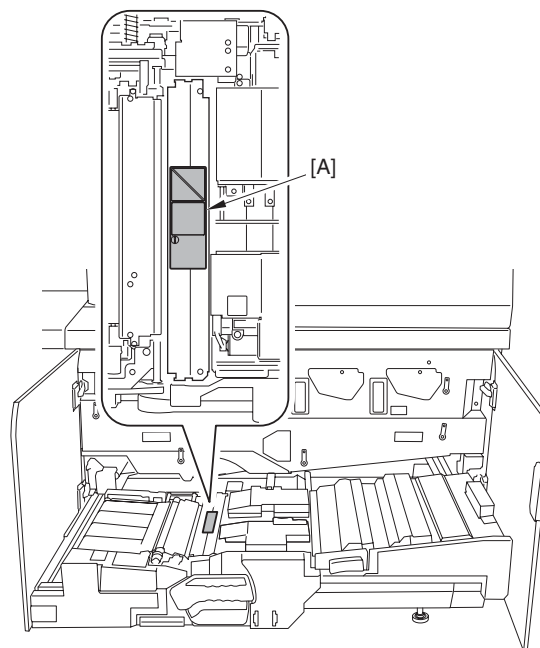
F-2-150

<Affixing Positions>



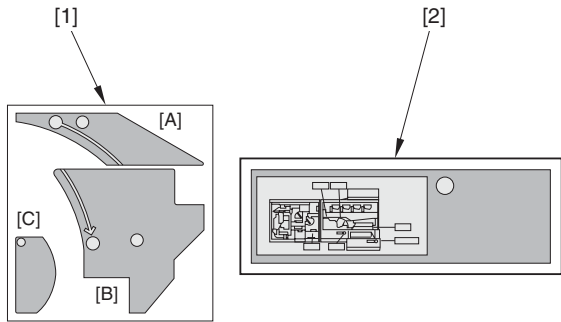
F-2-151

- 7) Close the left and right decks / the vertical path cover.
- 8) Slide out the feed assembly.
- 9) Attach the label [A] of the main station language labels 2 left in the Step 6) to the positions shown in the figure below on the main station.



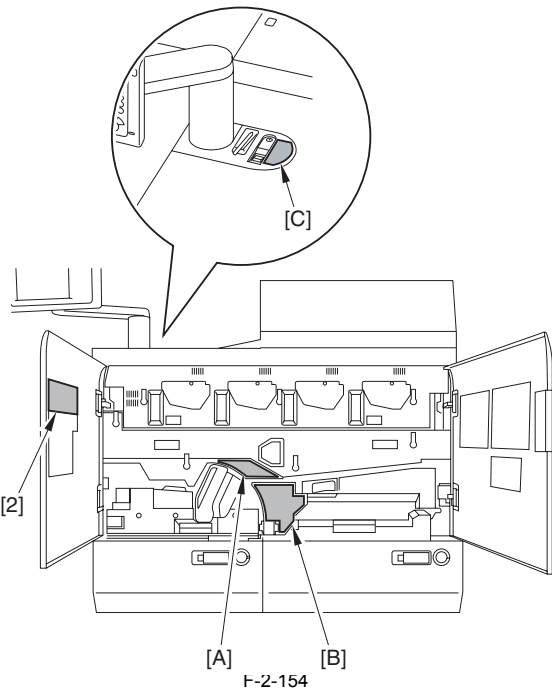
F-2-152

- 10) Slide back the feed assembly.
- 11) Affix the following labels in the appropriate language over the positions of the main station indicated below.
 - Main station language label [1]
 - Main station left front door language label [2]



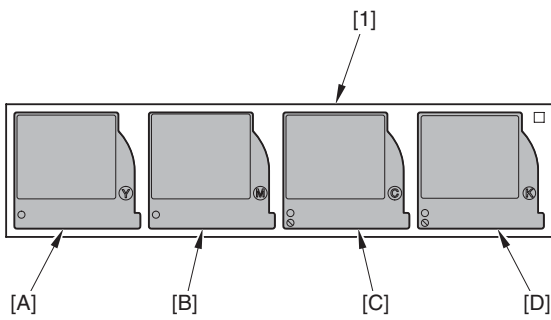
F-2-153

<Affixing Positions>



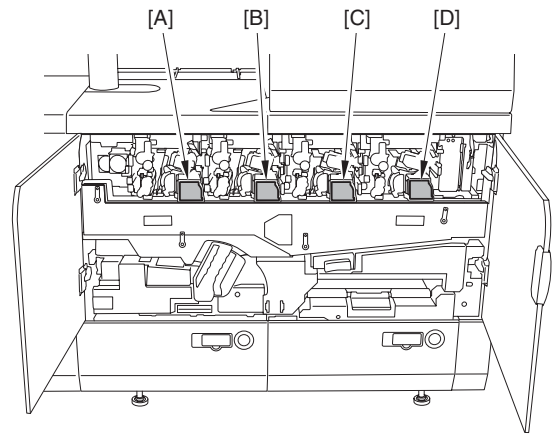
F-2-154

- 12) Detach the process unit cover.
- 13) Attach the developer connector labels [1] in the corresponding language to the positions shown in the figure below on the main station.



F-2-155

<Affixing Positions>



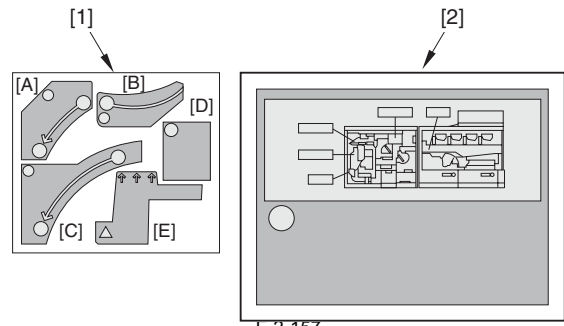
F-2-156

- 14) Attach the process unit cover.
- 15) Close the main-station left front cover and the main-station right front cover.

2.2.23 Affixing Labels Sub Station

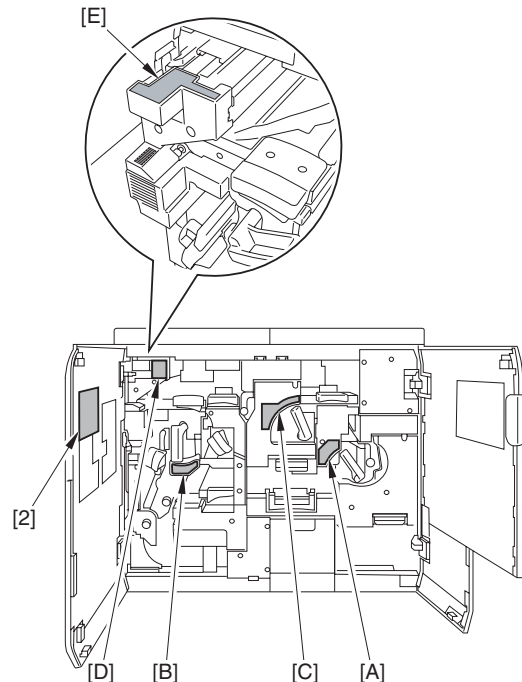
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- 1) Open the sub-station right front cover and the sub-station left front cover.
- 2) Affix the following labels in the appropriate language over the positions of the sub station indicated below.
 - Sub station language label [1]
 - Sub station left front door language label [2]



F-2-157

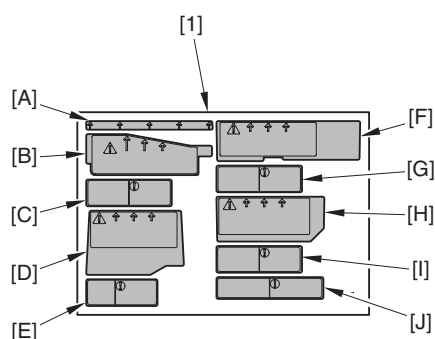
<Affixing Positions>



F-2-158

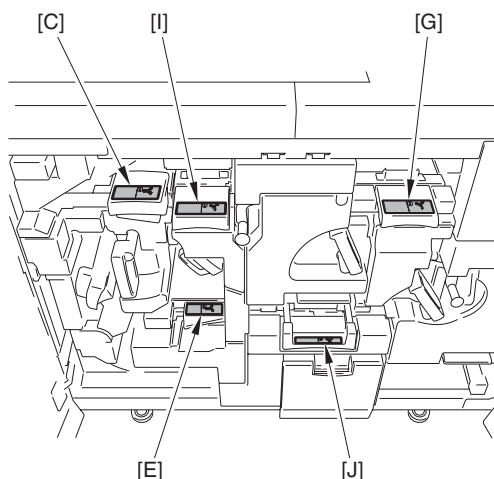
- 3) Attach the sub station language labels 2 [1] in the corresponding language to the positions shown in the figure below on the sub station. In this case

the labels [C], [E], [G], [I] and [J] are attached.



F-2-159

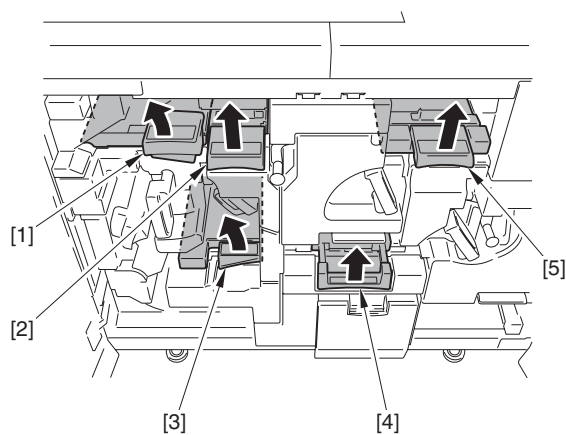
<Affixing Positions>



F-2-160

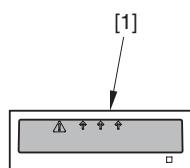
4) Lift the levers listed below to fix.

- lever (C-B2) [1]
- lever (C-B1) [2]
- lever (C-D1) [3]
- lever (C-A3) [4]
- lever (C-A1) [5]



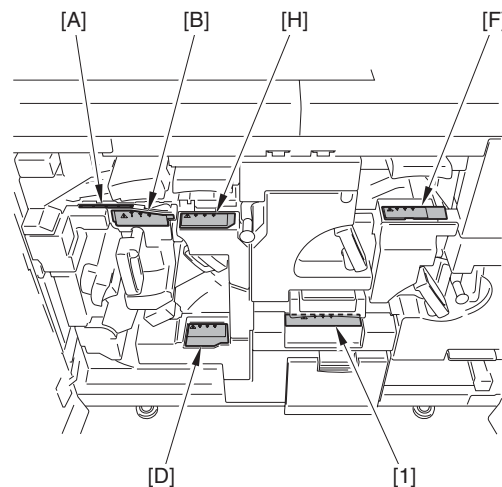
F-2-161

5) Attach the sub station language labels 2 left in the Step 3), the labels [A], [B], [D], [F] and [H] in this case, and the hand stuck warning label [1] to the positions shown in the figure below on the sub station.



F-2-162

<Affixing Positions>



F-2-163

- 6) Move down the levers, which were lifted in Step 4), back to the original positions.
- 7) Close the sub-station left front cover and the sub-station right front cover.

2.2.24 Auto Gradation Correction

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000



Be sure to use the following papers for the auto gradation correction.
 Size: A3 or 11 X 17 inch (279 mm X 432 mm)
 Paper type: CLC paper (81.4 g/m²)
 The auto gradation correction is available only with the specified papers.
 Thus, if non-specified paper is used, the correction may not be executed appropriately.

- 1) Go through the following to select [Full Adjust]: [Additional Functions] > [Adjustment/Cleaning] > [Auto Gradation Adjustment]
- 2) Select the source of paper for test print and press 'OK'.
- 3) Press [Start].
- 4) Press the reset key once to exit from the Additional Function screen.

MEMO:

When attaching the reader (accessory) at the same time, there are selections available to execute as an auto gradation correction method from [Full Adjust]: either [Printer] or [Scanner + printer].

2.2.25 Checking Image Margin

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- 1) By making the following selection in service mode, select the source of paper to which either A3 (297mm X 420mm) or 11X17 inch (279mm X 432mm) paper is set.



Checking Paper Size

The image position adjustment is executed based on the following premises: paper sizes of A3 and 11X17 inch are 297mm X 420mm and 279mm X 432mm, respectively. Therefore, if the trailing edge margin and right edge margin do not become the reference value 2.5mm after the adjustment, the paper size may not be the regular size so check the paper size being used.

COPIER > TEST > PG > PG-PICK
 Right deck = 1
 Left deck = 2

MEMO:

Following papers are recommended for the image margin adjustment:
 CLC Paper (81.4g/m²)
 Hammermill Laser Print (90g/m²)
 Canon High Grade (100g/m²)

Because the foregoing papers are recommended as the general papers, so it is acceptable to use papers which a user frequently uses for the image position adjustment. However, in such a case, pay attention to the followings.

-When using the paper duplicated in user mode, check that both values ("a" and "b") of the zoom adjustment are 0% (as for the test print, a= 360, and b= 270)(User Mode > System Management Setting > Paper Type Management Setting > Detail/Edit > Image Position Adjustment > Zoom Adjustment).

- Be sure not to use recycled paper, embossed paper, and vellum paper because, from the feedability point of view, variation tends to occur frequently.

- This image position adjustment (in service mode) is for all media registered with "Paper Type Management Settings"; thus, be sure to execute the adjustment using the same medium all the time.

(Although the image position adjustment can be executed with "Additional Functions > System Settings > Paper Type Management Settings" in user mode, it is the adjustment per paper type.)

- 2) After making the following settings in service mode, output the test print for the image position adjustment by pressing [Start].

```
COPIER > TEST > PG > TYPE = 5
COPIER > TEST > PG > COLOR-M = 1
COPIER > TEST > PG > COLOR-Y/C/Bk = 0
```

- 3) Check the output, and check that the reference values are as follow. If a value is out of the range, execute the image position adjustment.

- Reference value of skew

L1 - L2= less than 0.25mm

- Reference value of left edge margin

L1=2.5±0.3mm

- Reference value of leading edge margin

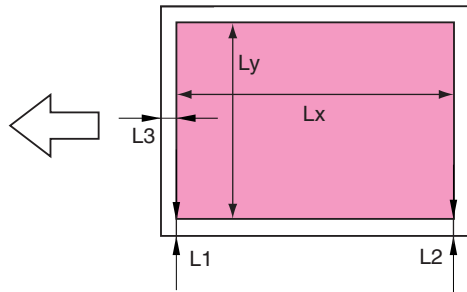
L3=2.5±0.3mm

- Magnification ratio in horizontal scanning direction

In case of A3 paper
 In case of 11X17 inch paper

- Magnification ratio in vertical scanning direction

In case of A3 paper
 In case of 11X17 inch paper



F-2-164

2.2.26 Image Position Adjustment

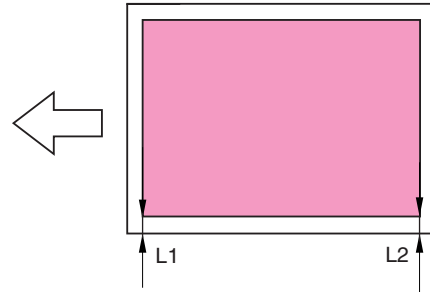
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

1. Output a test print for image position adjustment.

For output method of the test print for image position adjustment, see "Checking Image Margin".

2. Skew adjustment

- 1) Measure the left margins of the test print, L1 and L2, by 0.05 mm with a loupe (CK-0056).



F-2-165

- 2) Evaluate the skew adjustment value R [scale] from the formula below. Perform Step 3) if the skew adjustment value R is 1 or more (R >= 1, R <= -1).

$$\text{Skew adjustment value } R = (L1 - L2) / 0.25$$

(Round off the decimals)

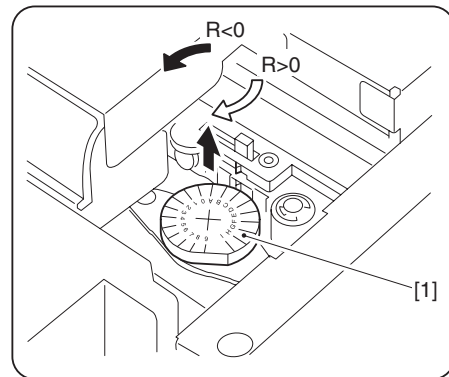
- 3) According to the skew adjustment value R, slightly lift the skew adjustment dial [1] up and turn it to adjust. Each 1 scale of the skew adjustment dial changes the skew amount by approx. 0.25mm.

- In case of: R > 0

Turn the skew adjustment dial [1] for R-scale clockwise.

- In case of: R < 0

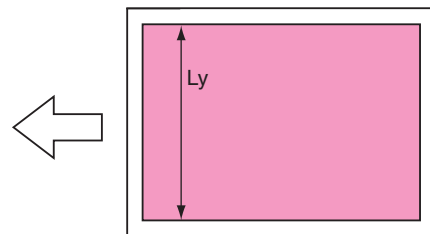
Turn the skew adjustment dial [1] for R-scale counterclockwise.



F-2-166

3. Magnification ratio adjustment in horizontal scanning direction

- 1) Measure the image length Ly [mm] in the horizontal scanning direction of the test print.



F-2-167

- 2) Evaluate the magnification ratio in horizontal scanning direction (ratio):

My, and the service mode input value: SMy.

$$My = (Ly'/Ly) \times 100$$

In case of A3 paper: Ly' = 292mm

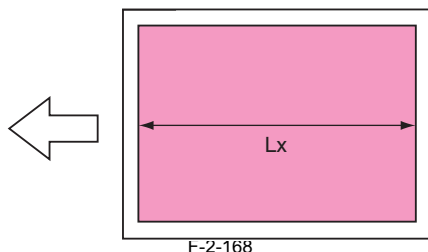
In case of 11 X 17 paper: Ly' = 274mm

$$SMy = (My - 100) \times 100$$

- 3) Add the value of SMy to the setting in the following service mode. (Do subtraction when SMy is negative value.)
In Service Mode: COPIER > ADJUST > IMG-REG > MAG-H-M
Adjustment range: -100 to 100 (default: 0)
Unit: 0.01%

4. Magnification ratio adjustment in vertical scanning direction

- 1) Measure the image length Lx [mm] in the vertical scanning direction of the test print.



- 2) Evaluate the magnification ratio in vertical scanning direction (ratio): Mx, and the input value: SMx.

$$Mx = (Lx'/Lx) \times 100$$

In case of A3 paper: Lx' = 415mm

In case of 11 X 17 paper: Lx' = 427mm

$$SMx = (Mx - 100) \times 100$$

- 3) Enter SMx value in the following:
If the magnification ratio adjustment in vertical scanning direction fails to be the reference value even if setting the maximum value (-/+ 1.00) for SMx, be sure to conduct magnification ratio adjustment by speed adjustment of the secondary transfer roller.

In Service Mode: COPIER > ADJUST > IMG-REG > MAG-V-M

Adjustment range: -100 to 100 (default: 0)

Unit: 0.01%

5. Magnification ratio adjustment by speed adjustment of the secondary transfer roller



This adjustment should be conducted when magnification ratio adjustment in vertical scanning direction failed to be the reference value even if setting the maximum value (-/+ 1.00) for the magnification ratio adjustment in vertical scanning direction.

This symptom occurs when the value exceeds the range of magnification ratio adjustment due to variation of the outer diameter of the secondary transfer roller.

- 1) Make 1-level (-/+ 1) change of the setting value according to the Mx value:
In Service Mode (level 2): COPIER > ADJUST > IMG-REG > 2TR-R-V
Setting value
-1: decrease the rotating speed (shrunk by 0.1mm)
0: normal rotating speed
+1: increase the rotating speed (stretched by 0.25mm)
+2: increase the rotating speed (stretched by 0.5mm)

- Mx < 100 [%]

Make the setting value smaller

- Mx > 100 [%]

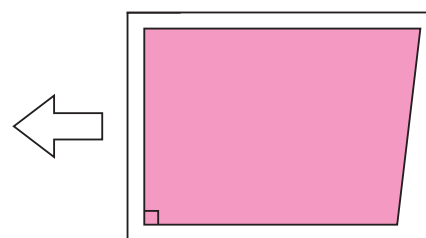
Make the setting value bigger

- 2) Output a test print for image adjustment, and conduct "4. Magnification ratio adjustment in vertical scanning direction" again.

- 3) If the magnification ratio adjustment in vertical scanning direction failed to be the reference value, conduct "5. Magnification ratio adjustment by speed adjustment of the secondary transfer roller".

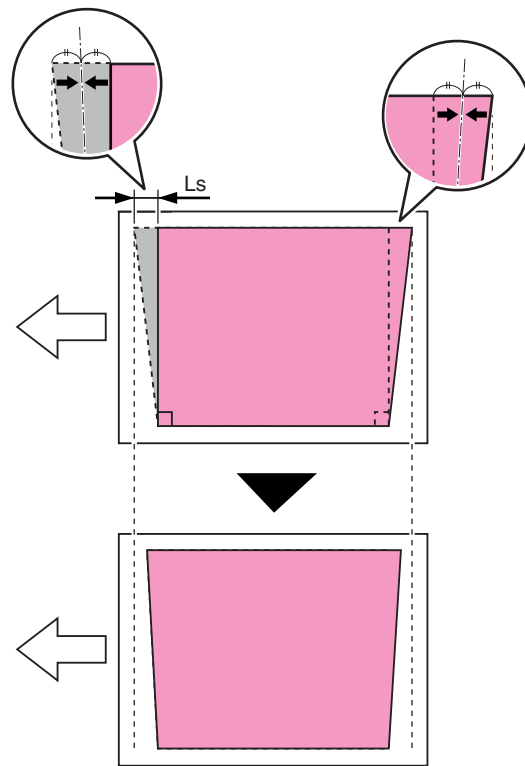
MEMO:

In case that the faulty image "Fan(-like shape)" symptom occurs as shown in the figure below, adjustment is available in the following Service Mode. The faulty image "Fan" occurs due to the variation in outer diameters between the rear end and the front end of the secondary transfer roller. This adjustment is to align the image positions of the front/back sides by sharing the skew at the trailing edge (skew in vertical scanning direction) between the leading edge and the trailing edge.



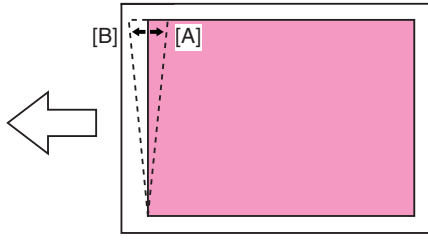
- 1) Output a 2-sided test print for image position adjustment:
COPIER > TEST > PG > 2-SIDE = 1

- 2) See through the output paper and measure the tilt (displacement) Ls of the leading edge of the first side and the trailing edge of the second side to the first decimal place.



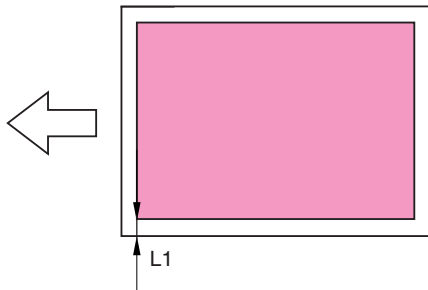
3) Enter the value SLs in the following:
 $SLs = (Ls/2)/0.0045mm$

In Service Mode (level 2): COPIER > ADJUST > IMG-REG > SLOP-H-M
 Setting value: -200 to 200 [unit: pulse]
 Changing 1 setting value shifts the skew amount Ls by 0.0045mm.
 Making the value bigger shifts the skew amount toward the trailing edge direction [A], and making the value smaller shifts the skew amount toward the leading edge direction [B].



6. Left edge adjustment

1) Measure the left end margin L1 [mm] of the test print to the first decimal place, and make adjustment so that the left end margin L1 becomes the standard 2.5 mm.



F-2-169

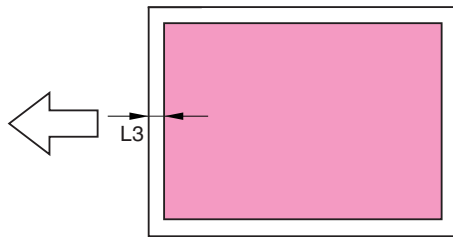
In Service Mode: COPIER > ADJUST > FEED-ADJ > REG-LEFT
 Adjustment range: -30 to 30 (default:0)
 Unit: 0.1mm

- In case of: L1 > 2.5mm
 Make the setting value smaller
- In case of: L1 < 2.5mm
 Make the setting value bigger

<Example>
 If L1 is 1.2 mm, add 13 to the setting in the abovementioned service mode.

7. Leading edge margin adjustment

1) Measure the leading edge margin L3 [mm] of the test print to the first decimal place, and make adjustment so that the leading edge margin L3 becomes the standard 2.5 mm.



F-2-170

In Service Mode: COPIER > ADJUST > FEED-ADJ > REG-TOP
 Adjustment range: 0 to 200 (default: 100)
 Unit: 0.06mm

- In case of: L3 > 2.5mm
 Make the setting value smaller
- In case of: L3 < 2.5mm
 Make the setting value bigger

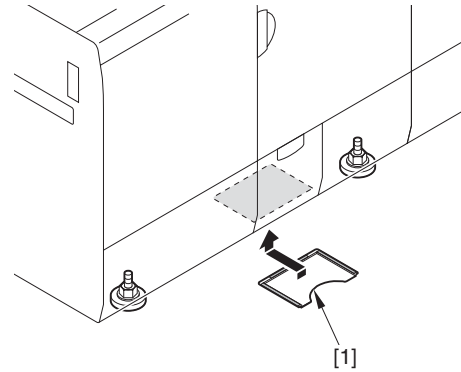
<Example>
 If L3 is 1.2 mm, add 13 to the setting in the abovementioned service mode.

2.2.27 Other Installations

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

<Service Book Case>

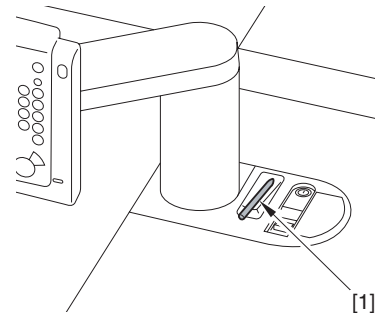
1) Remove the release paper of the rib area of the service book case [1], and attach the service book container on the bottom plate of the sub station.



F-2-171

<Touch Pen>

1) Place the touch pen [1] on the position shown in the figure.



F-2-172

2.3 Checking the Connection to the Network

2.3.1 Overview

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

When the network environment of the user is TCP/IP, use the Ping function to check to be sure that the network configuration is performed correctly. When the network environment of the user is IPX/SPX or Apple Talk, it is not necessary to check the above.

2.3.2 Checking the Network Connection

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

!
 Be sure to use the shield type network cable.
 If using a non-shield type cable, it may affect the peripheral electrical equipments via network cable.

- 1) Turn off the main power supply switch by following the shut-down sequence.
- 2) Connect the network cable to the machine and turn on the main power supply switch.
- 3) Report the completion of the installation to the user's system administrator and ask the machine's network configuration.

!
 The following item 'Additional Function' must be 'ON' to perform the network configuration.
 [Additional Functions] > [System Settings] > [Network Setting] > [Change Settings/Display Connection Confirm]

- 4) Turn off the main power supply switch by following the shut-down sequence.
- 5) Turn on the main power supply switch.

2.3.3 Using the PING Command

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- 1) Make the following selections: [Additional Functions] > [System Settings] > [Network Setting] > [TCP/IP Settings] > [PING Command].
- 2) Using the keypad on the control panel, type in the correct IP address, and press the Execute key.
The message is displayed to tell whether or not the host responds.

2.3.4 Making a Check Using the Remote Host Address

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

You can execute the PING command using the appropriate remote host address to see if a connection to the network can be made.

Remote host address: The IP address of a PC terminal connected to the TCP/IP network to which the machine is also connected.

- 1) Inform the system administrator that you are going to check the network connection using the PING command.
- 2) Check with the system administrator to find out the remote host address.
- 3) Add the appropriate remote host address to the PING command:
 - If the message tells that the host responds, the machine is normally connected to the network.
 - If the message tells that the host does not respond, the machine failed to be connected to the network. Follow the steps below for troubleshooting.

2.4 Troubleshooting the Network

2.4.1 Overview

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

If attempts to connect to the network fail, suspect the following:

- The machine's TCP/IP settings are wrong.
- The user's network is faulty.

To find out which, go through the following:

2.4.2 Checking the Connection of the Network Cable

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- 1) Check to be sure that the network cable is correctly connected to the Ethernet port.
 - If the connection is correct, make the next check.
 - If the connection is wrong, correct it and run the check once again using the remote host address.

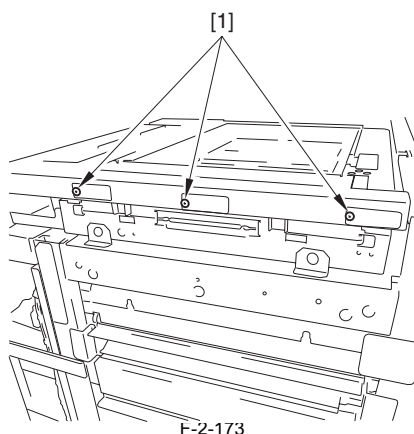
2.4.3 Making a Check Using a Loopback Address

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000



If the machine has a reader/ DADF/ copyboard cover mounted, carry out steps 6) and 7).

- 6) Place a sheet of A3 paper on the copyboard glass and secure the DADF or copyboard cover with adhesive tape.
- 7) Use the 3 scanning system fixing screws [1] stored at the time of installation to secure the scanning system.



F-2-173

- 8) Secure the size display plate with tape or similar, or remove it.
- 9) Open the sub-station front right cover and sub-station front left cover.
- 10) Remove 2 screws and then take off the sub-station duplex feed cover [1].

A loopback address comes back before reaching the network PCB. By executing the PING command using the address, you can find out whether the machine's TCP/IP settings are correct.

- 1) Add the appropriate loopback address (127.0.0.1) to the PING command.
 - If the message tells that the host does not respond, check the machine's TCP/IP settings and execute PING command again.
 - If the message tells that the host responds, check the followings.

2.4.4 Making a Check Using a Local Host Address

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

The "local host address" is the IP address of the machine, and the address comes back after reaching the network PCB. By executing the PING command using the address, you can find out whether the network PCB is free of a fault.

- 1) Add the IP address of the machine to the PING command.
 - If the message tells that the host does not respond, check the followings, take any necessary actions as shown below and execute PING command again.
 - The machine's IP address may be wrong. Check the machine's IP address settings, and check with the system administrator to see if the assigned IP address is a valid one.
 - The connection of the network PCB may be wrong. Check the connection of the network PCB once again.
 - The network PCB may be faulty. Try replacing it.
 - If the message tells that the host responds, the customer's network environment may hold problems. Report the details to the system administrator for remedial actions.

2.5 Relocating the Machine

2.5.1 Operation for Moving the Machine

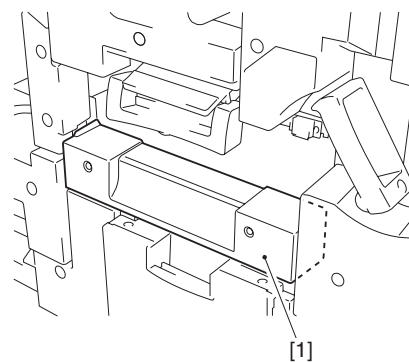
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

The following tasks are to be performed when moving the machine to another location after installation.

Environment for transportation and storage:

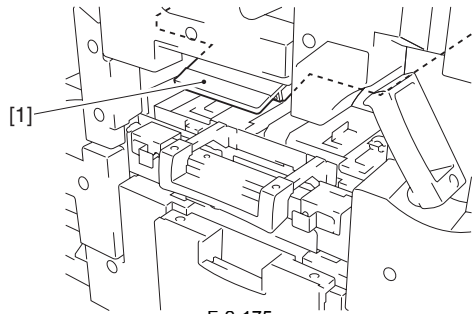
This product shall be kept between air temperatures of -30 deg C and +50 deg C.

- 1) Remove the toner containers.
- 2) Remove all paper.
- 3) Press the control panel power switch for 3 seconds or longer and then operate the touch panel as instructed by the shutdown sequence screen. (The main power switch is turned off automatically.)
- 4) Turn the leak breaker OFF.
- 5) Pull out the host machine power plug.



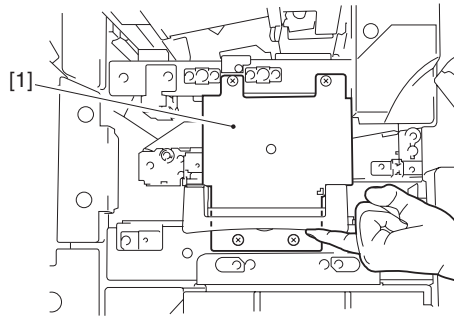
F-2-174

- 11) Remove 5 screws and take off the handle [1] attached to the bypass lower guide.



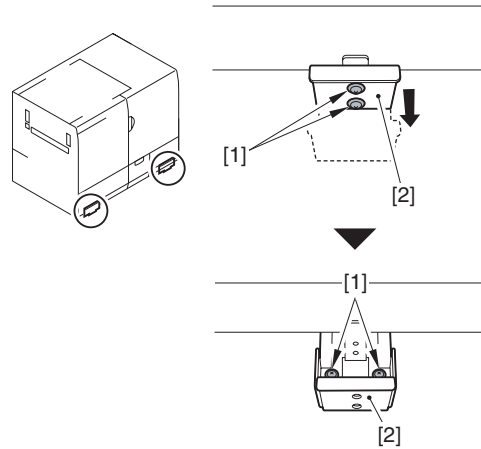
F-2-175

12) Use 4 screws to attach fixing assembly reinforcement plate stay 2, stored at the time of installation, to secure the duplex unit.



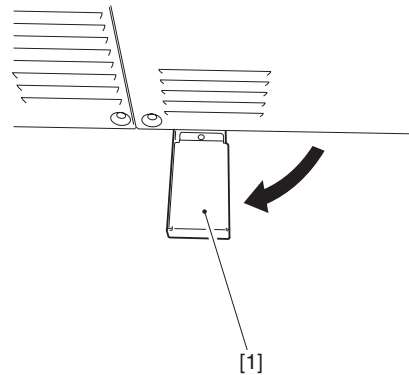
F-2-176

13) Remove 2 screws [1], pull out the tip-resistant fixture [2] in the direction of the arrow and then secure from the top, using the screws removed earlier.



F-2-177

14) Close the sub-station front left cover and sub-station front right cover.
15) Remove the screw and pull out the power station auxiliary castor.



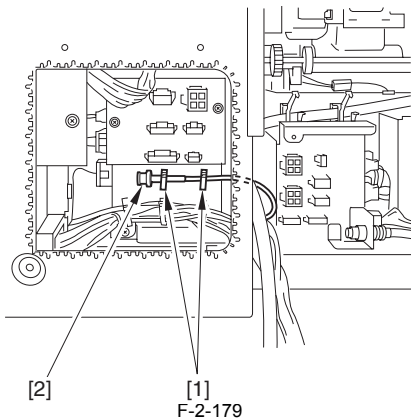
F-2-178

16) Fully raise the main station/ sub-station adjusters.



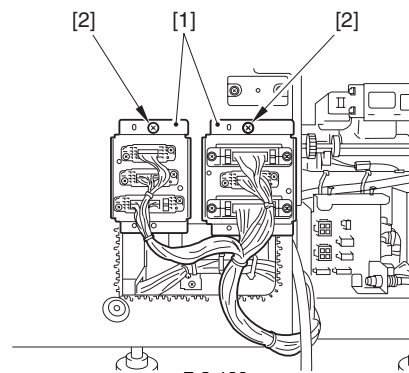
Make sure that the sub-station front cover is completely secured with the stabiliser.

17) Isolate the main station/ substation/ power station.
18) Secure the ARCNET cable [2] with the wire saddle [1], at 2 locations.



F-2-179

19) Secure the 2 relay drawer connector mounts [1] at the rear of the main station.
- 1 screw [2] each (Use the screw that was used to secure the drawer cable mount.)

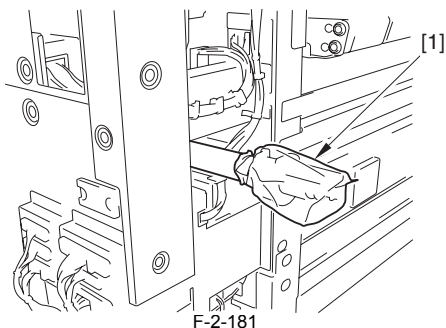


F-2-180

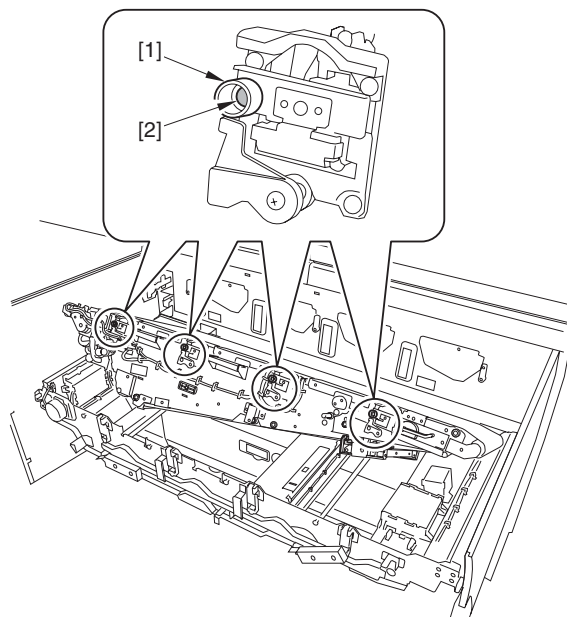
20) Tuck the communication cable into the right side of the substation, so that it does not get snagged.
21) Cover the waste toner connection pipe [1] with a plastic bag and put the pipe back.



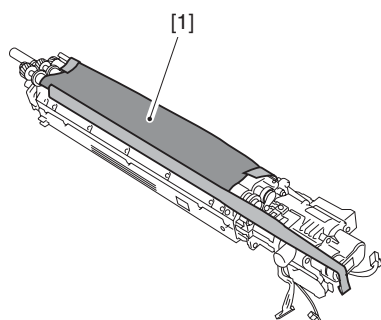
- Be sure to detach together with the relay drawer connector mount [1].
- Be sure not to disconnect the relay connector. The connectors have the same shape and there may occur its wrong connection.



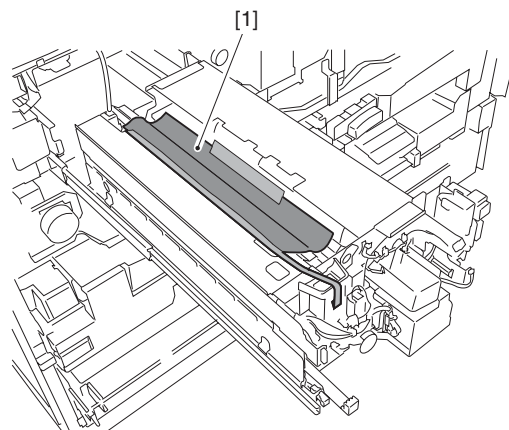
- 22) Tuck the power station cable inside the power station, so that it does not get snagged.
 23) Use the fixing materials [1] and screws [2] stored at the time of installation to secure that primary transfer roller (4 locations).



- 24) Remove the developing assembly, and attach the protective sheet [1] that is stored away at the installation to the developing cylinder. (Do the same to each color.)



- 25) Slide the process unit out, and attach the protective sheet [1] that is stored away at the installation to the top of the unit. (Do the same to each color.)



F-2-184

2.6 Installing the Card Reader

2.6.1 Points to Note About Installation

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

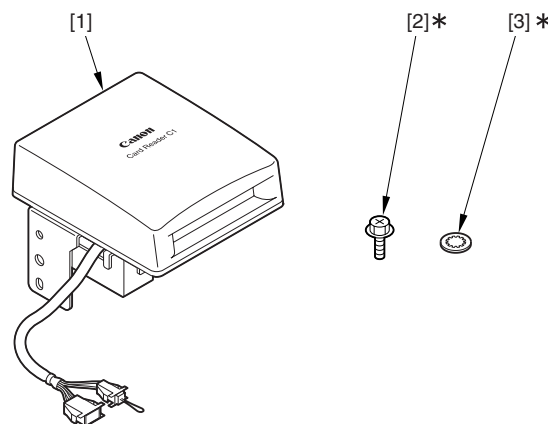


'System Accessory Attachment Kit-A1' is necessary to install this equipment.

2.6.2 Checking the Contents

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

<Card Reader-C1>



F-2-185

[1]	Card reader	1 pc.
[2]*	Screw (RS tightening; M4X10)	1 pc.
[3]*	Toothed washer	1 pc.

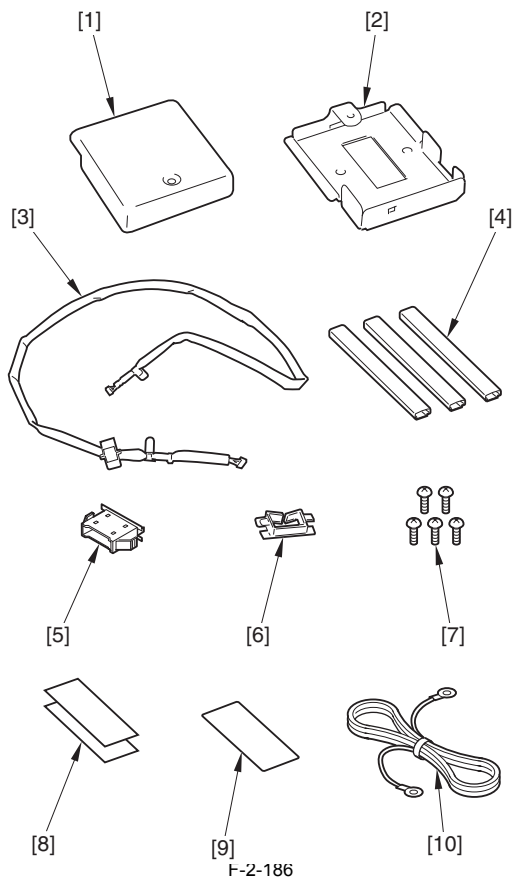
* Not used in this host machine.

<System Accessory Attachment Kit-A1>

MEMO:

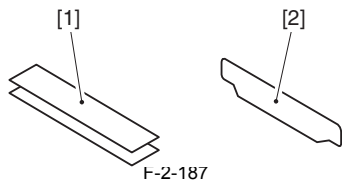
System Accessory Attachment Kit-A1' consists of Card Reader Attachment Kit, Voice Guidance Attachment Kit, and Key Switch Attachment Kit. This equipment uses Card Reader Attachment Kit.

- Card Reader Attachment Kit



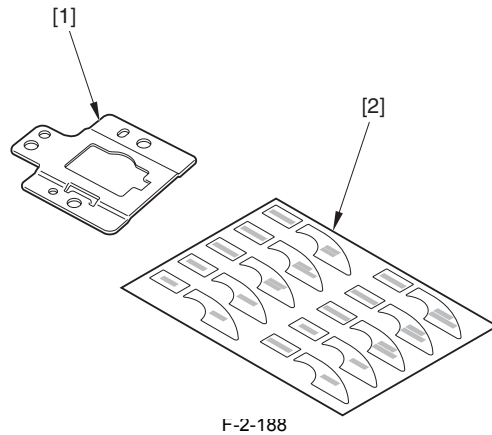
- [1] Card reader cover 1pc
- [2] Card reader attachment stay 1pc
- [3] Card reader harness 1pc
- [4] Cord guide 3pc
- [5] Relay connector 1pc
- [6] Edge saddle 1pc
- [7] Screw (binding; M4X6) 5pc
- [8] Fixing tape 2pc
- [9] Card reader seal 1pc
- [10] Extension grounding wire 1pc

- Voice Guidance Attachment Kit



- [1] Fixing tape 2pc
- [2] Speaker seal 1pc

- Key Switch Attachment Kit



- [1] Management SW support plate 1pc
- [2] Key label 1pc

2.6.3 Points to Note When Turning ON/OFF the Power of Host Machine

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

See the host machine installation [Points to Note When Turning ON/OFF the Power of Host Machine].

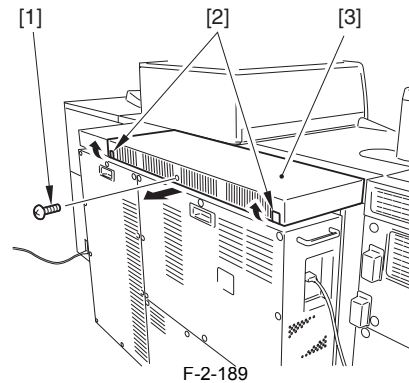
2.6.4 Installation Procedure

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

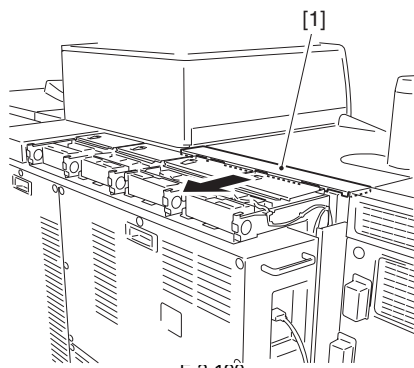
MEMO:
In case of installing this application with Key Switch at the same time, the procedure apply until Step 8).

⚠
After the card reader-C1 is attached, enter the card number to use in Service Mode by selecting the following: COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL > CARD.
Unless the card number is entered, the card is not recognized even if inserting the card.

1) Remove the screw [1], and shift the 2 levers [2] upward in the direction of the arrow, and then detach the main station upper rear cover 1 [3] in the direction of the arrow.

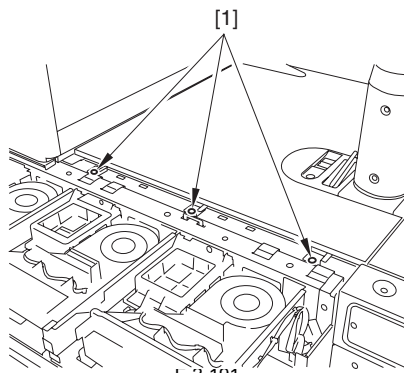


2) Detach the main station upper middle cover [1] in the direction of the arrow.



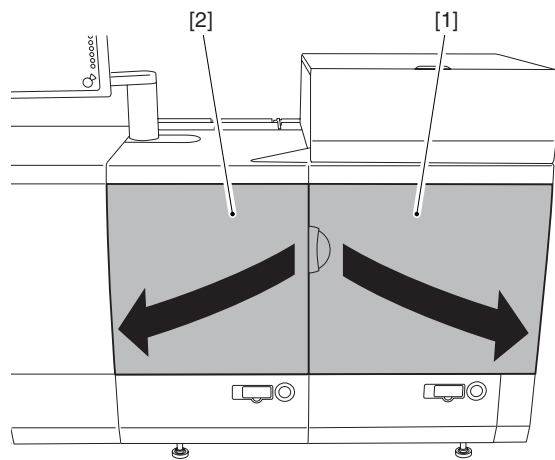
F-2-190

3) Remove the 3 screws [1].



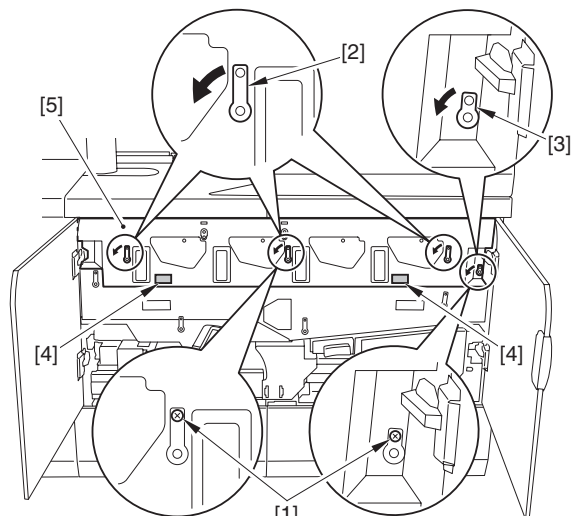
F-2-191

4) Open the main station front right cover [1] and the main station front left cover [2].



F-2-192

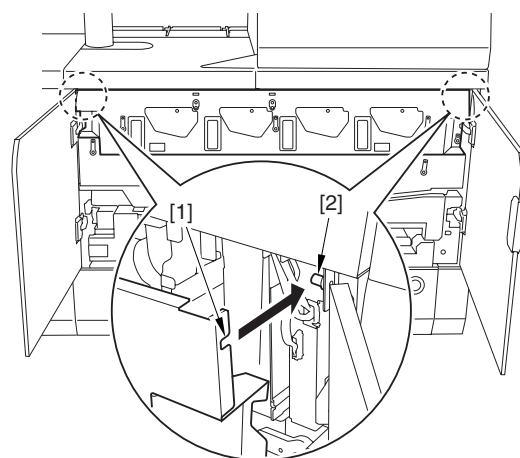
5) Remove the 2 stepped screws [1], shift the 3 levers [2] and the lever (small) [3] in the direction of the arrow in order. While holding the grip [4], detach the process unit cover [5].



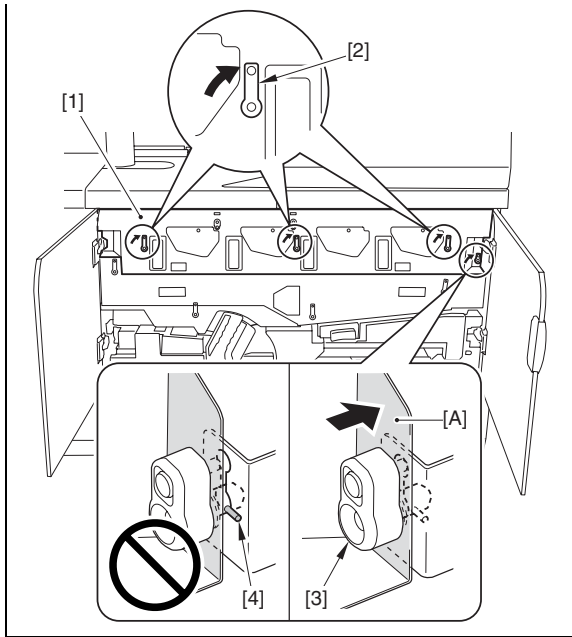
F-2-193

⚠ Points to Note When Attaching the Process Unit Cover

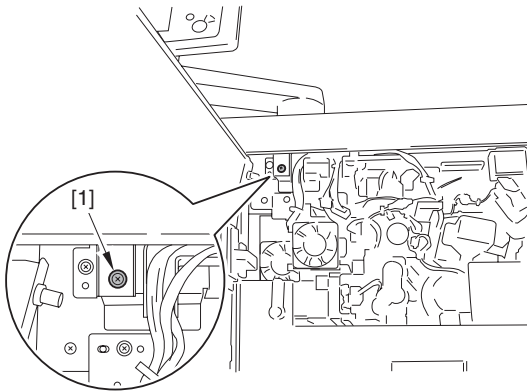
- Align the cut-off [1] at the both ends of the process unit cover to the pin [2] at the host machine.



- After shifting the 3 levers [2] of the process unit cover [1] as indicated, shift the lever (small) [3] as indicated while pushing the [A] area toward the rear. If shifting the lever (small) [3] while the cover [1] does not fit to the machine, the pin [4] is not set correctly, causing an error.

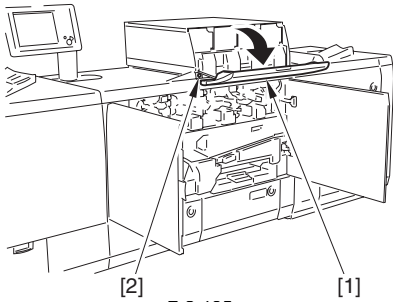


6) Remove the screw [1].



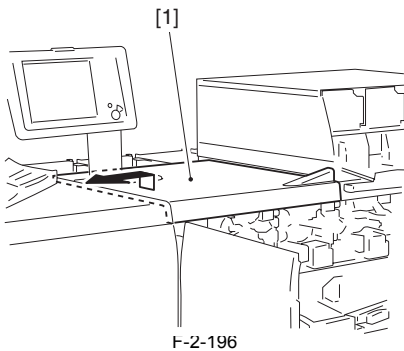
F-2-194

7) Open the toner replacement outer cover [1] and remove the screw [2].



F-2-195

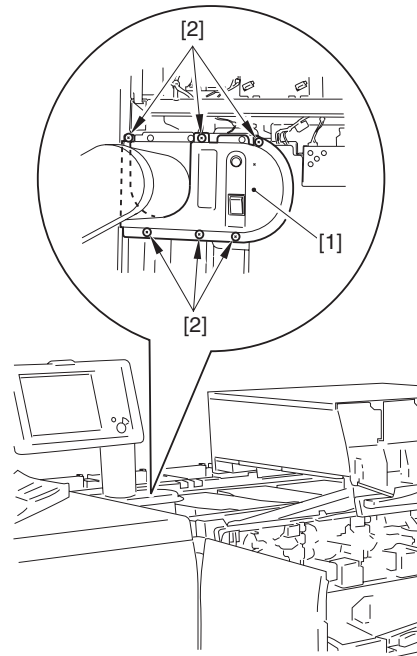
8) Detach the main station upper front cover [1] in the direction of the arrow.



F-2-196

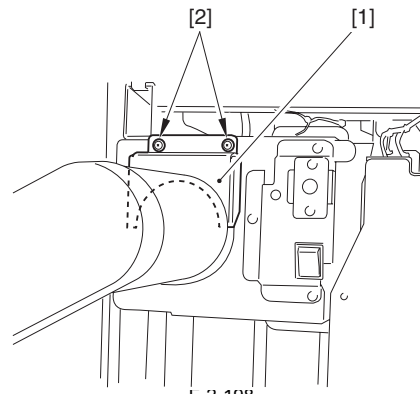
9) Detach the switch cover [1].

- 6 screws [2]



F-2-197

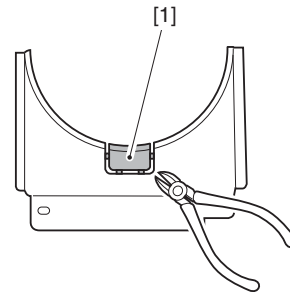
10) Detach the switch cover (small) [1].
- 2 screws [2]



F-2-198

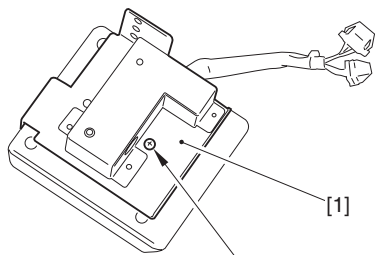
11) Remove the face cover area [1] of the switch cover (small) with nippers.

⚠
Be sure to remove adequately so that there is no burr.



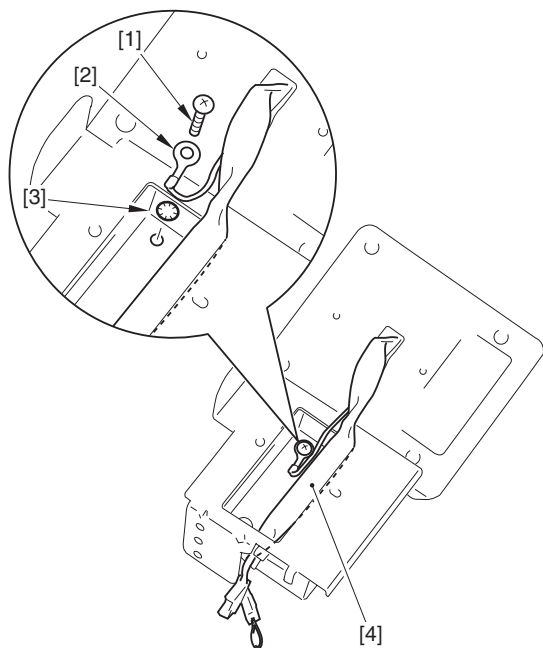
F-2-199

12) Detach the card reader attachment plate [1].
- 1 screw [2] (the removed screw is used in step 14))



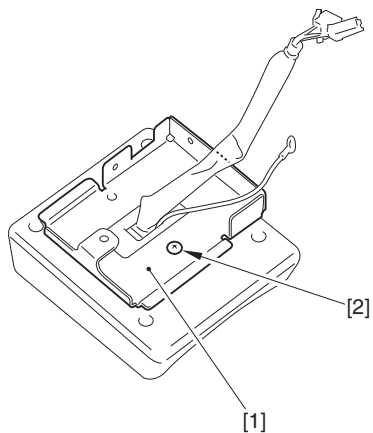
F-2-200

- 13) Remove the screw [1], disconnect the grounding wire [2], and remove the toothed washer [3]; then, disconnect the cable [4]. (The removed screw and toothed washer will not be used.)



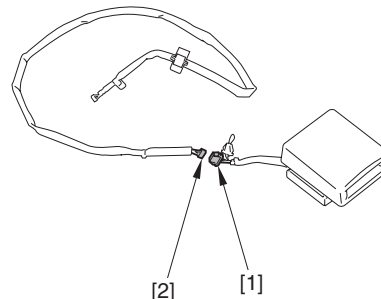
F-2-201

- 14) Attach the card reader attachment stay [1].
- 1 screw [2] (use the screws removed in Step 12))



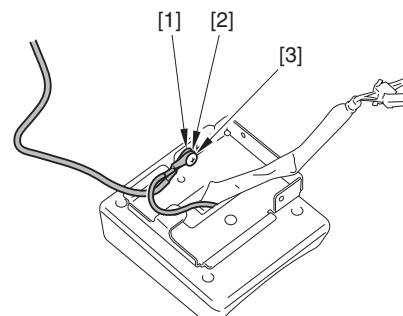
F-2-202

- 15) Connect the card reader connector [1] at the card reader harness connector [2].



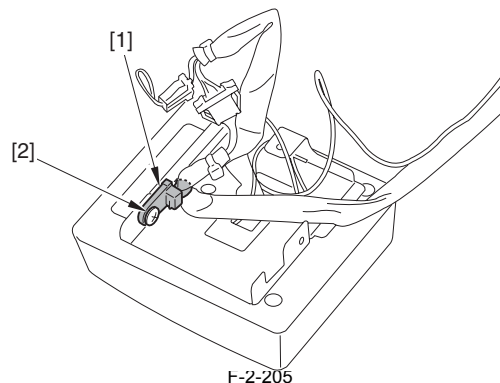
F-2-203

- 16) Secure the extension grounding wire [1] and the grounding wire [2] together with the card reader attachment stay.
- 1 screw (binding; M4X6) [2]



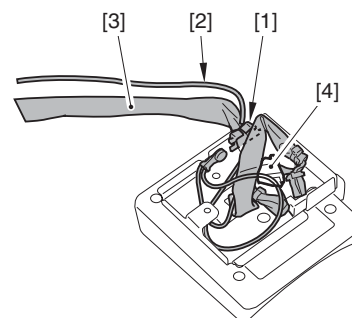
F-2-204

- 17) Attach the cable clip [1] of the card reader harness.
- 1 screw (binding; M4X6) [2]



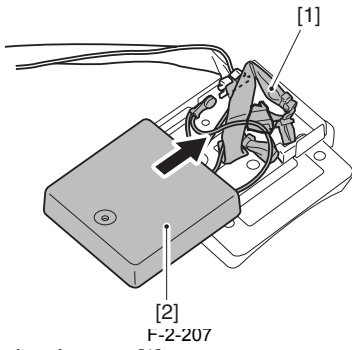
F-2-205

- 18) Attach the edge saddle [1] and put the extension grounding wire [2] and the card reader harness [3] through the edge saddle, and then put connector [4] into the card reader attachment stay.

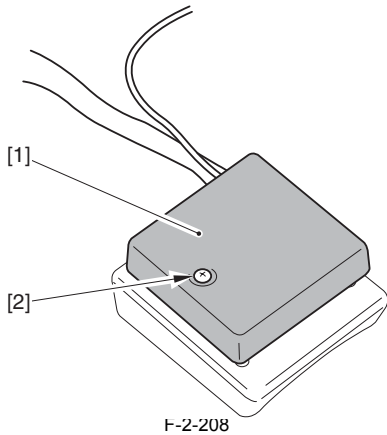


F-2-206

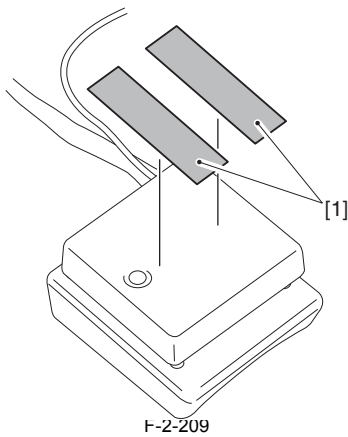
- 19) Take care not to get the cable [1] caught and keep moving the card reader cover [2] in the direction of the arrow.



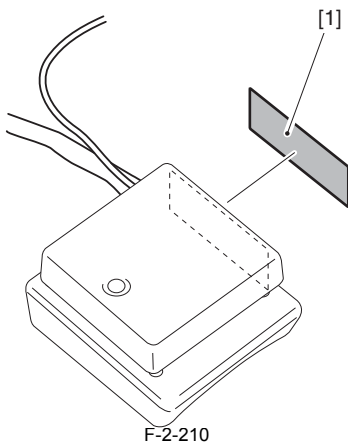
20) Attach the card reader cover [1].
- 1 screw (binding; M4X6) [2]



21) Remove the 2 release papers of the fixing tape [1] to attach it to the position indicated in the figure.

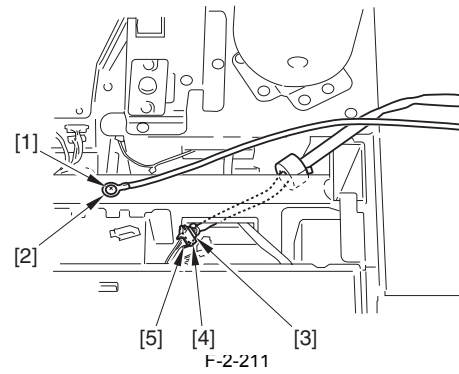


22) Remove the release paper of the card reader seal [1] to attach it to the position indicated in the figure.

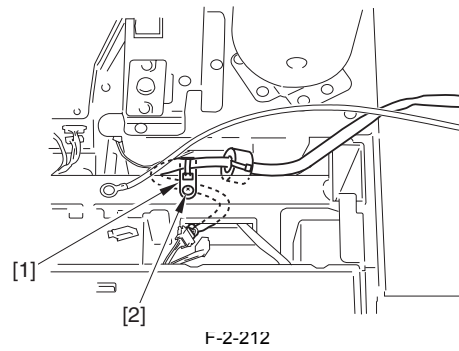


23) Secure the extension grounding wire [1] with the screw (binding; M4X6)

[2] and then connect the connector [3] from the card reader harness with the relay connector [4] and the connector [5] from the host machine.

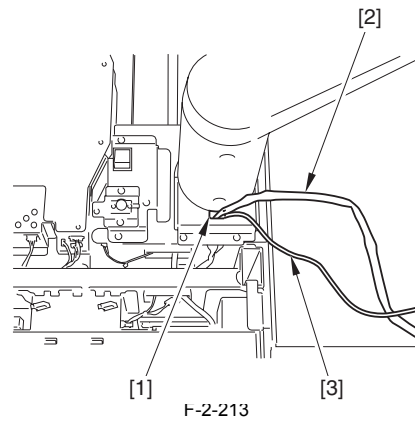


24) Attach the cable clip [1] of the card reader harness.
- 1 screw (binding; M4X6) [2]

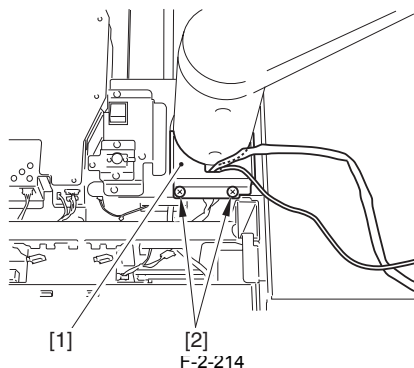


25) Take the card reader harness [2] and the extension grounding wire [3] from the switch cover (small) [1].

! In case of attaching the switch cover (small), be sure not to get the card reader harness and the extension grounding wire caught.



26) Attach the switch cover (small) [1].
- 2 screws [2]

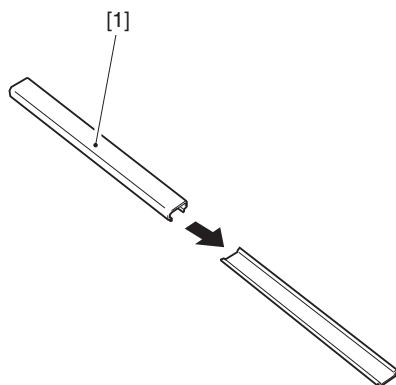


27) Put the removed parts back.

MEMO:

Hereinafter describes the procedure to attach the card reader near the control panel.
There is no specified attachment position, so it is available to change to a user-requested position.

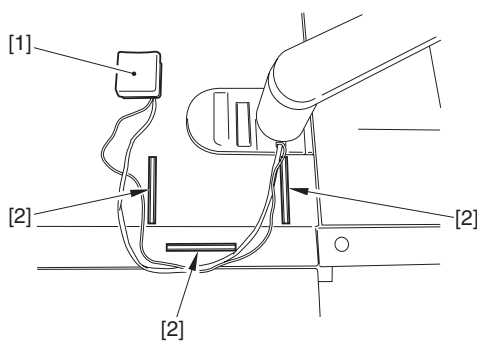
28) Detach the cord guide cover [1].



F-2-215

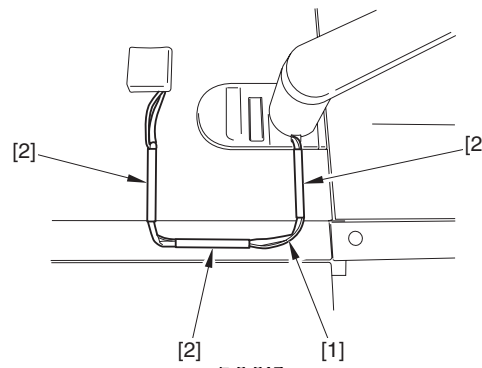
29) Remove the release paper of the fixing tape, and attach the card reader [1].

30) Remove the 3 release papers of the cord guide [2] and attach it to the position indicated in the figure.



F-2-216

31) Put the card reader harness and the extension grounding wire [1] through the cord guide, and then attach the cord guide cover [2].



F-2-217

32) Insert the power plug of the host machine to turn ON the breaker and the main power.

33) Enter the card number to use (1 through 2001) in Service Mode: COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL > CARD

- Enter the smallest card number among cards used by user.

- 1000 cards are available to use from the registered number.

34) Follow the instructions on the shutdown sequence to turn OFF and then ON the power.

35) Insert the registered card (card with usable number) and check that it is in standby state.

2.6.5 Installation Procedure in the imageWARE Accounting Manager (henceforth: iWAM) environment

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

1) Check to see that 'ID00000001 to ID00001000' have been created in '[Additional Functions] > [System Settings] > [Dep ID Mangement] > [Registrar Dept.ID/Password] / [Page Totals]' (In the case of entering '1' as the first number in 'Service Mode > COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL > CARD')

2) Press [Reset] to exit from [Additional Functions].

3) Select [Additional Functions] > [System Settings] > [Network Settings] > [TCP/IP Settings] > [IP Address Settings], and then make the setting of [IP Address], [Gateway Address], [Subnet Mask] according to the user environment.

4) Press [Reset] to exit from [Additional Functions].

5)



[Additional Functions] > [System Settings] > [System Manager Settings] is selected and [System Manager ID] and [System Password] are registered, 'Registration of card to the device' is impossible to execute in the setting of iWAM.

[Additional Functions] > [System Settings] > [System Manager Settings], and then input any number into [System Manager ID] and [System Password].

6) Press [Reset] to exit from [Additional Functions].

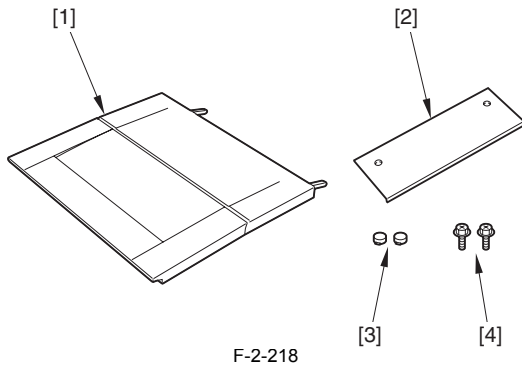
7) Go through the shut-down sequence to turn off the power.

2.7 Installing the Platen Cover

2.7.1 Checking the Contents

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

<Platen Cover Type K>



F-2-218

- | | | |
|-----|--------------------------------|-------|
| [1] | Platen cover | 1 pc. |
| [2] | Platen cover upper right cover | 1 pc. |
| [3] | Cover rubber piece | 2 pc. |
| [4] | Screw (RS tightening; M4X8) | 2 pc. |

2.7.2 Points to Note When Turning ON/OFF the Power of Host Machine

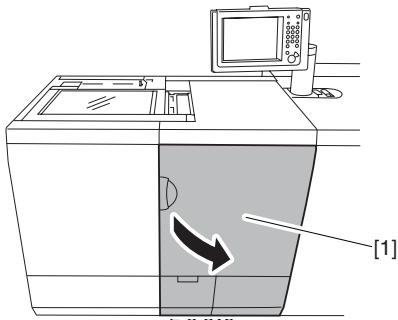
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

See the host machine installation [Points to Note When Turning ON/OFF the Power of Host Machine].

2.7.3 Installation Procedure

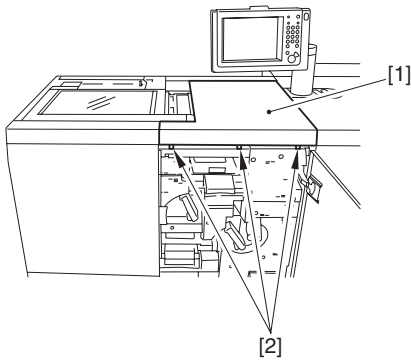
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

1) Open the substation front right cover [1].



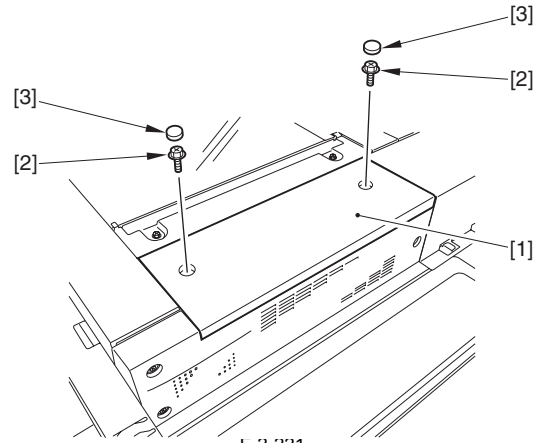
F-2-219

2) Detach the substation upper right cover [1].
- 3 screws [2]



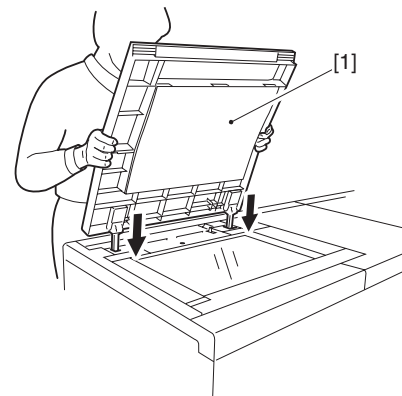
F-2-220

3) Mount the Platen cover upper right cover [1].
- 2 screw (RS tightening; M4X8)[2]
- 2 cover rubber pieces [3]



F-2-221

4) Attach the substation upper right cover.
5) Close the substation front right cover.
6) Attach the equipment [1].



F-2-222

2.8 Installing the Key Switch Unit

2.8.1 Points to Note About Installation

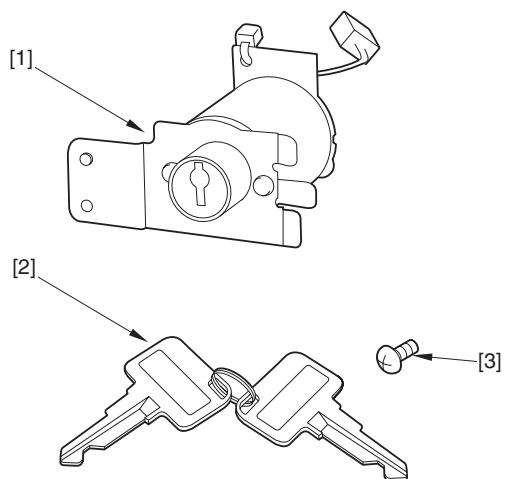
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

⚠ 'System Accessory Attachment Kit-A1' is necessary to install this equipment.

2.8.2 Checking the Contents

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

<Key Switch Unit-A2>



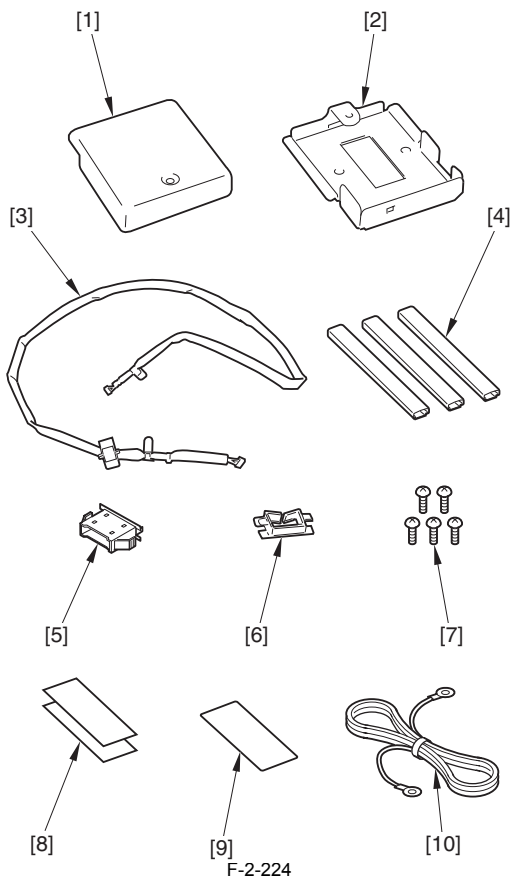
F-2-223

[1]	Key switch unit	1 pc.
[2]	Control key	1 pc.
[3]	Screw (Binding; M4X6)	1 pc.

<System Accessory Attachment Kit-A1>

MEMO:
 'System Accessory Attachment Kit-A1' consists of Card Reader Attachment Kit, Voice Guidance Attachment Kit, and Key Switch Attachment Kit.
 This equipment uses Key Switch Attachment Kit.

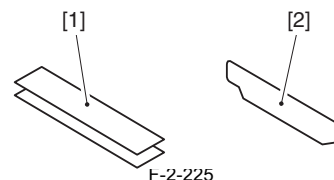
- Card Reader Attachment Kit



F-2-224

[1]	Card reader cover	1pc
[2]	Card reader attachment stay	1pc
[3]	Card reader harness	1pc
[4]	Cord guide	3pc
[5]	Relay connector	1pc
[6]	Edge saddle	1pc
[7]	Screw (binding; M4X6)	5pc
[8]	Fixing tape	2pc
[9]	Card reader seal	1pc
[10]	Extension grounding wire	1pc

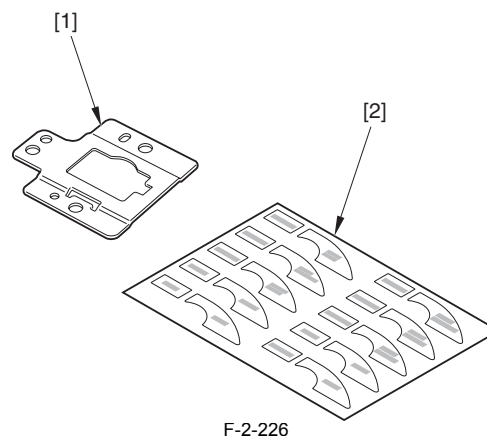
- Voice Guidance Attachment Kit



F-2-225

[1]	Fixing tape	2pc
[2]	Speaker seal	1pc

- Key Switch Attachment Kit



F-2-226

[1]	Management SW support plate	1pc
[2]	Key label	1pc

2.8.3 Points to Note When Turning ON/OFF the Power of Host Machine

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

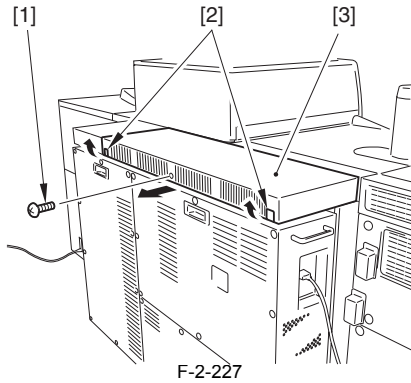
See the host machine installation [Points to Note When Turning ON/OFF the Power of Host Machine].

2.8.4 Installation Procedure

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

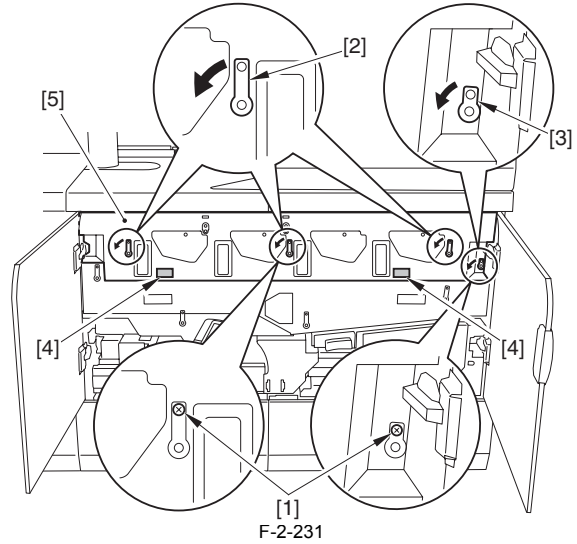
MEMO:
 In case of installing this application with card reader at the same time, the procedure apply until Step 9)

- 1) Remove the screw [1], and shift the 2 levers [2] upward in the direction of the arrow, and then detach the main station upper rear cover 1 [3] in the direction of the arrow.

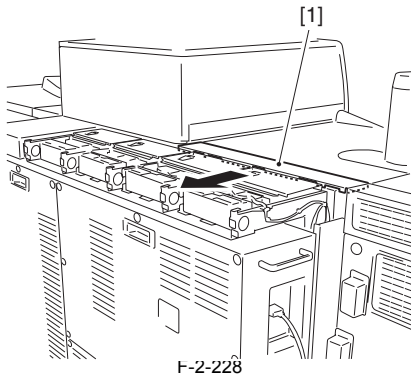


F-2-227

2) Detach the main station upper middle cover [1] in the direction of the arrow.

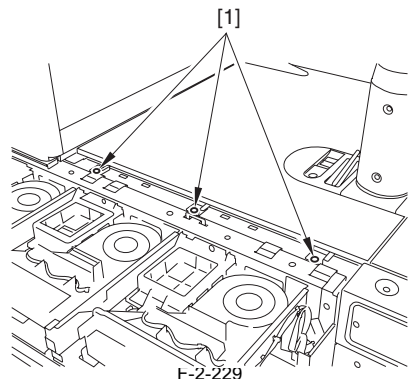


F-2-231



F-2-228

3) Remove the 3 screws [1].



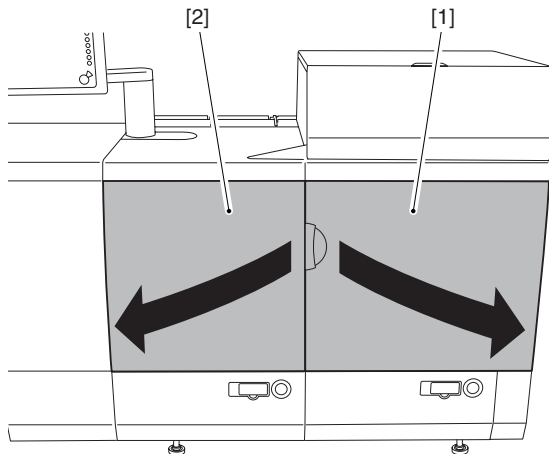
F-2-229

4) Open the main station front right cover [1] and the main station front left cover [2].

⚠ Points to Note When Attaching the Process Unit Cover

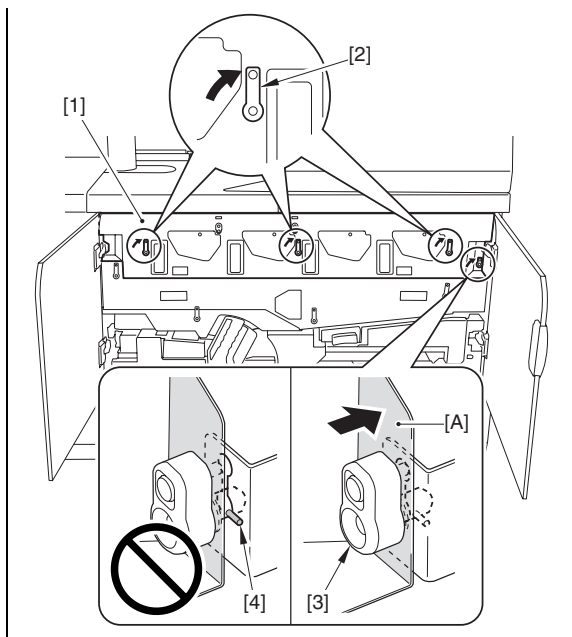
- Align the cut-off [1] at the both ends of the process unit cover to the pin [2] at the host machine.

- After shifting the 3 levers [2] of the process unit cover [1] as indicated, shift the lever (small) [3] as indicated while pushing the [A] area toward the rear. If shifting the lever (small) [3] while the cover [1] does not fit to the machine, the pin [4] is not set correctly, causing an error.

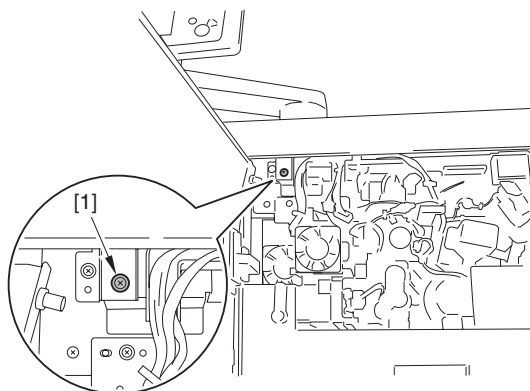


F-2-230

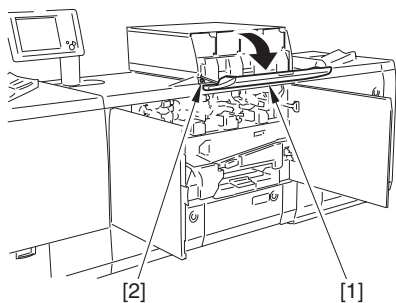
5) Remove the 2 stepped screws [1], shift the 3 levers [2] and the lever (small) [3] in the direction of the arrow in order. While holding the grip [4], detach the process unit cover [5].



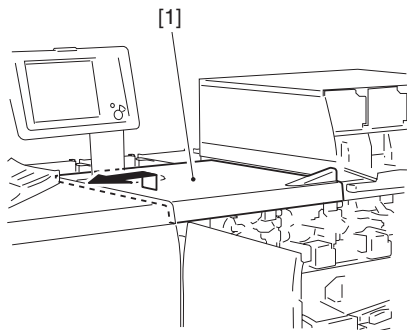
6) Remove the screw [1].



7) Open the toner replacement outer cover [1] and remove the screw [2].

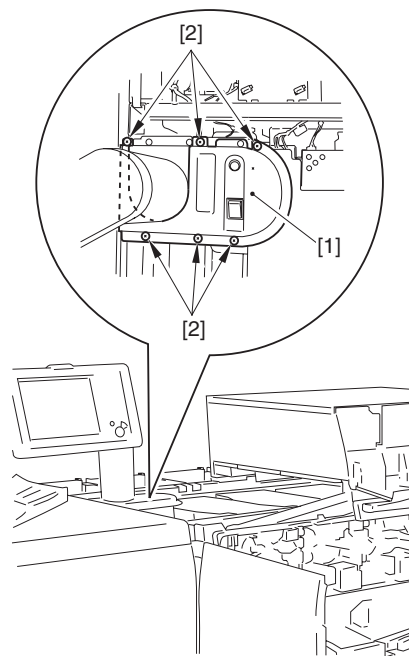


8) Detach the main station upper front cover [1] in the direction of the arrow.

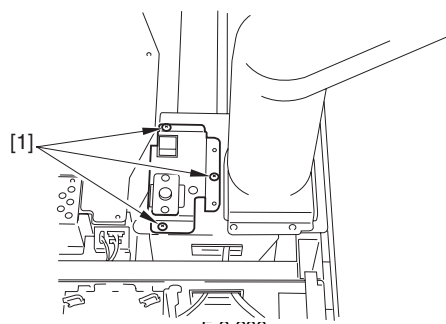


9) Detach the switch cover [1].

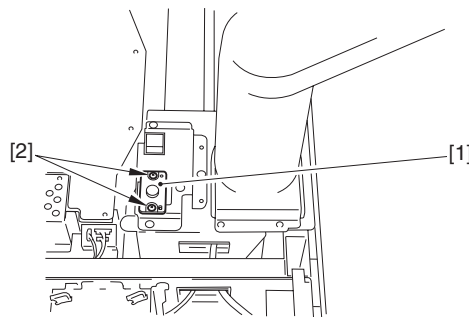
- 6 screws [2]



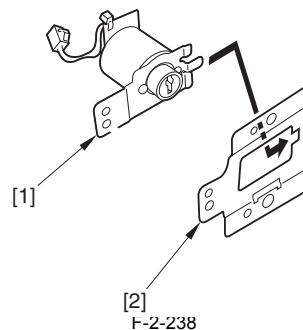
10) Remove the 3 screws [1] on the main switch base.



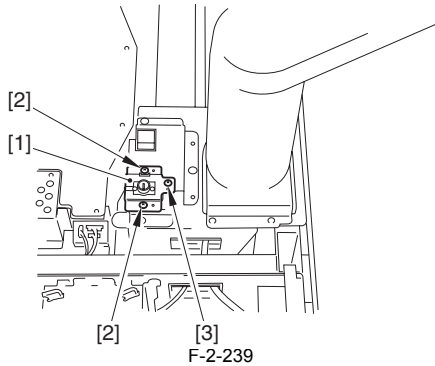
11) Detach the key cover [1] (the detached cover will not be used).
- 2 screws [2] (used in the step 13))



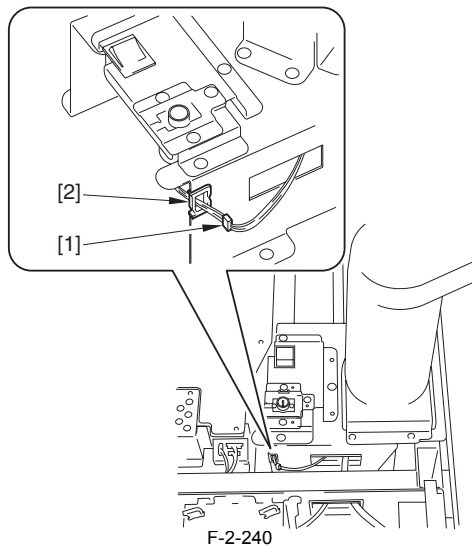
12) Attach the key switch unit [1] to the management SW support plate [2] in the direction of the arrow.



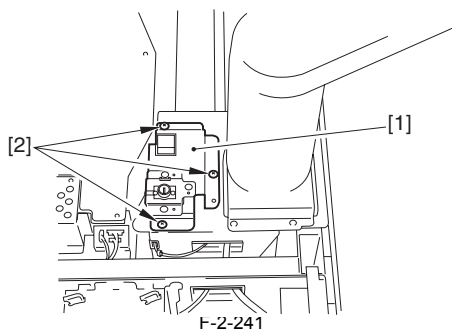
- 13) Attach the key switch unit [1] assembled in the previous step.
 - 2 screws [2] (use the screws removed in Step 11))
 - 1 screw (binding; M4X6) [3]



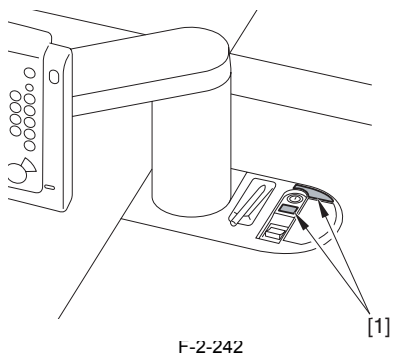
- 14) Connect the connector [1], and then secure it with the edge saddle [2].



- 15) Secure the main switch base [1].
 - 3 screws [2]



- 16) Put the removed parts back.
- 17) Put the appropriate language Key label [1] on the indicated position.



- 18) Insert the power plug of the host machine to turn ON the breaker and the main power.

2.8.5 Checking After the Installation

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

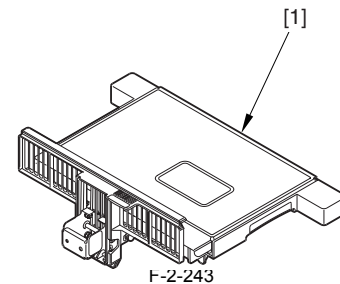
- 1) Enter the Service mode.
- 2) Select COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL > KEY, and enter '1'.
- 3) Perform the shutdown sequence indicated on the screen to turn OFF the power.
- 4) Turn ON the main power switch.
- 5) Check that the message 'Set the control key' is displayed on the control panel screen.
- 6) Insert the Control Key and check that making a copy is possible.

2.9 Installing the Tab Feeding Attachment

2.9.1 Checking the Contents

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

<Tab Feeding Attachment-C1>



[1] Tab Feeding Attachment

1pc

<CD/guides>

- Tab Feeding Attachment-C1 Manual

2.9.2 Procedure to Change Paper Size

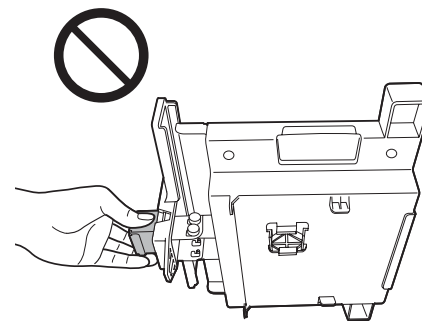
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

MEMO:

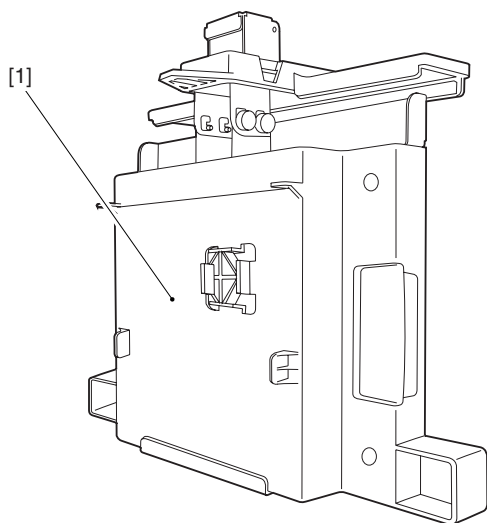
The paper size available to set in the tab feeding attachment is A4 or LTR. Here explains a procedure to change the size from LTR to A4.



- Be sure to work on a flat floor.
- Be sure to avoid scar or soil on the paper's feeding surface.
- Do not touch the area of the tab feeding attachment, which is indicated in the figure below, except when adjusting the index. Otherwise, the adjustment screw is loosened, causing paper jam.

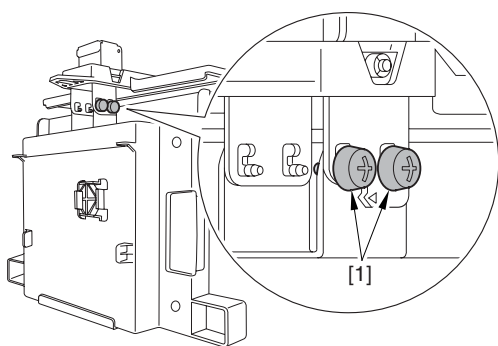


- 1) Stand the tab feeding attachment [1] as shown in the figure.



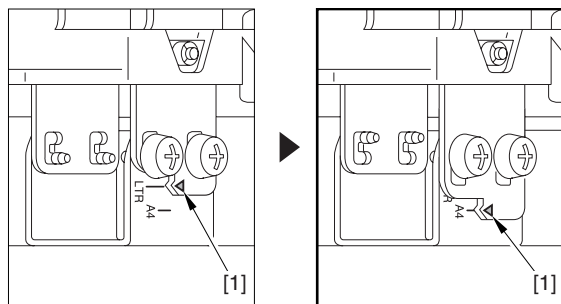
F-2-244

2) Loosen the 2 adjustment screws [1].



F-2-245

3) Set the index [1] A4.

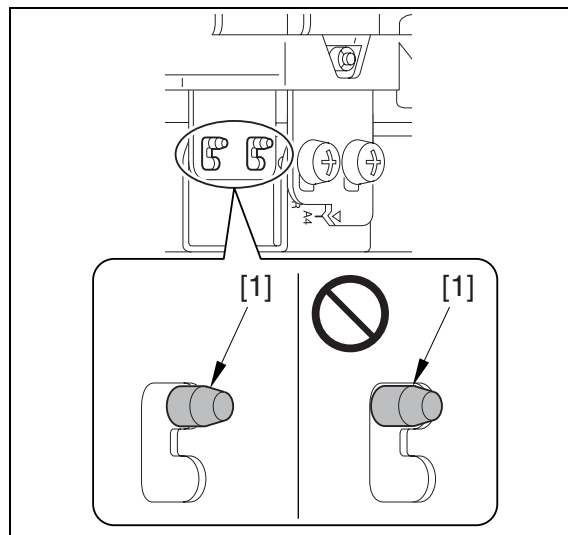


F-2-246

4) Tighten the 2 adjustment screws loosened in step 2).



Be sure to check that the protrusion [1] of the adjustment screw is fitted into the rear of the U-shape groove.



2.9.3 Installation Procedure

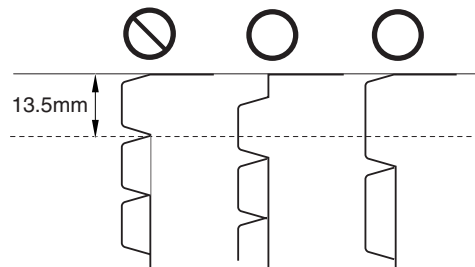
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

MEMO:

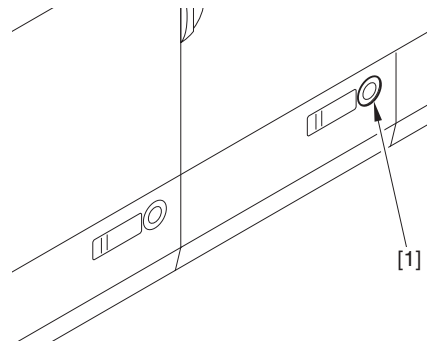
To set tab paper, the same procedure applies to both the host machine deck and the POD deck/Secondary POD deck. Taking the host machine deck as an example, the following explains the procedure.



- The tab paper available to set is A4 or LTR only. Be sure to set tab paper in portrait orientation. Landscape orientation is not available.
- In the case of using A4 tab paper, the tab paper with a tab width of 13.5mm or less from the paper edge cannot be used.



1) Push the open/close button [1] to open the deck in which the tab feeding attachment is installed.

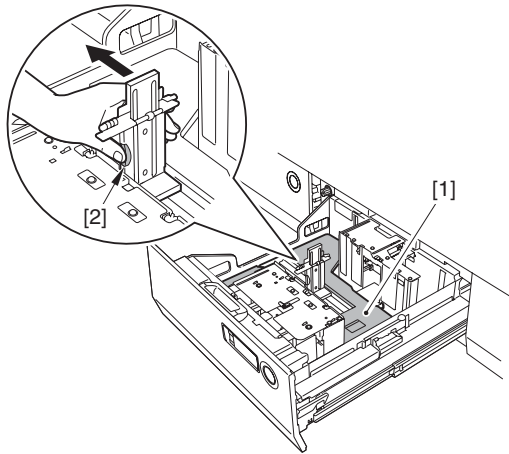


F-2-247

2) Check that the internal lifter [1] is lowered. Move the internal lifter while pushing the lever [2] of the trail edge guide plate in the direction of the arrow until it stops.

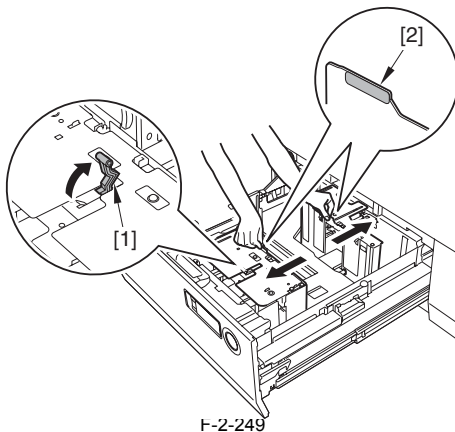


Be sure to keep the trail edge guide plate to the deck's left edge and do not pull it to the tab feeding attachment.



F-2-248

- 3) Remove all of the paper.
- 4) Lift up the lever [1] of the side guide plate in the direction of the arrow and hold the 2 label areas [2] of the side guide plate to move until it in the direction of the arrow until it stops.

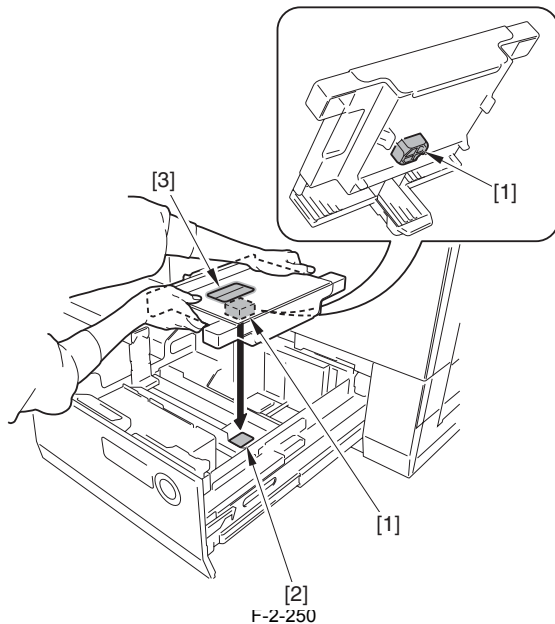


F-2-249

- 5) Fit the positioning guide [1] at the back of the tab feeding attachment into the lifter's hole [2].



Be sure that the positioning guide is properly installed by checking from the hole [3] on the upper surface of the tab feeding attachment. Otherwise, it causes paper jam or damage of the paper deck.

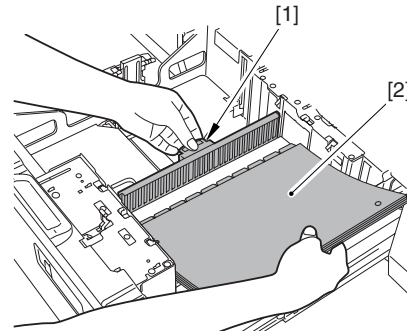
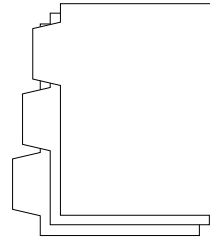


F-2-250

- 6) While holding the pinch [1] of the paper guide with your hand, place about 10 sheets of tab papers [2] in portrait orientation.

MEMO:

Be sure to lay the tab papers as shown in the figure and set the printing surface down.



F-2-251

- 7) After setting the side guide plate with the paper, put the lever back.
- 8) While holding the pinch of the paper guide with your hand, set the remaining tab paper.



In the case of setting tab paper in the lower deck of the POD deck or the Secondary POD deck, be sure to manually set the paper guide with your hand.

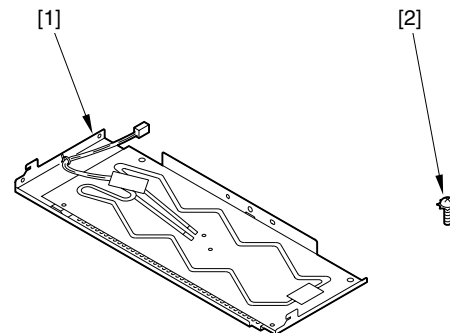
- 9) Close the deck.
- 10) In the case of setting tab paper, be sure to register the tab paper by going through the following: [Additional Functions] > [Common Settings] > [Register Paper].

2.10 Installing the Deck Heater

2.10.1 Checking the Parts to Install

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

Every components of the cassette heater unit are supplied as service parts, so have the following parts on hand.



F-2-252
T-2-2

No.	Part name	Part number	QTY
[1]	Heater unit	FG6-9651-000	1pc.
[2]	Screw (w/ washer Binding: M4X8)	XA9-0266-000	1pc.

2.10.2 Points to Note When Turning ON/OFF the Power of Host Machine

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

See the host machine installation [Points to Note When Turning ON/OFF the Power of Host Machine].

2.10.3 Installation Procedure (Connecting to Machine)

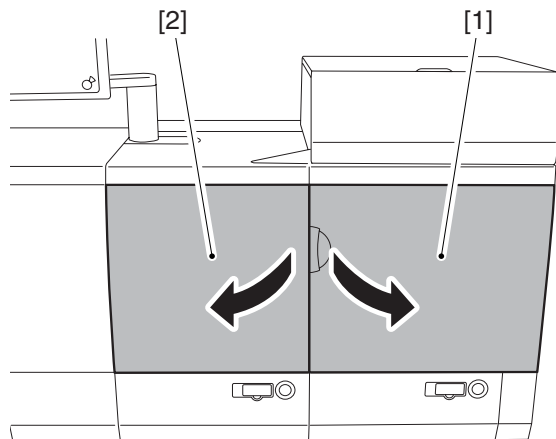
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

1. Removing Deck Pickup Unit



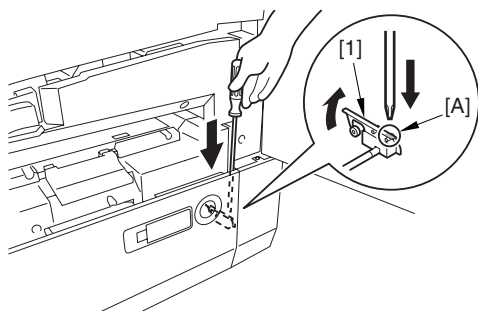
Depending on the location to install the cassette heater unit, remove the left/right deck pickup unit on the corresponding side.

- 1) Open fully in the order of the right front door [1] and the left front door [2].



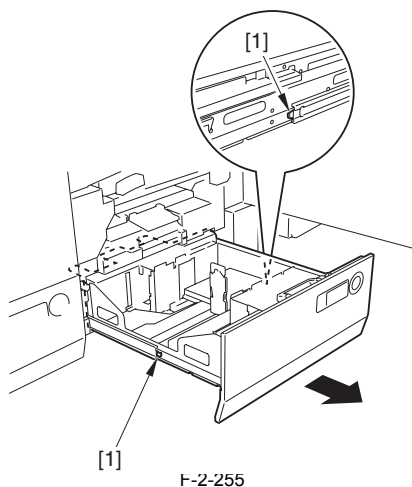
F-2-253

- 2) Push the position [A] of the latch [1] with a screw driver or the like to open the deck.



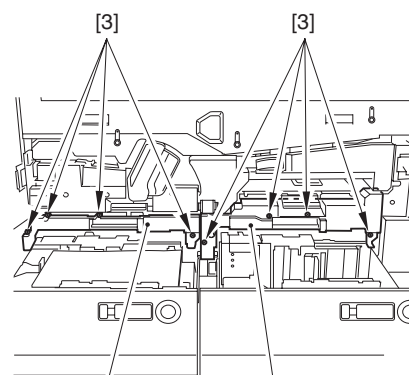
F-2-254

- 3) Slide out the deck fully.
4) Slide out the deck further.
- 2 leaf springs [1]



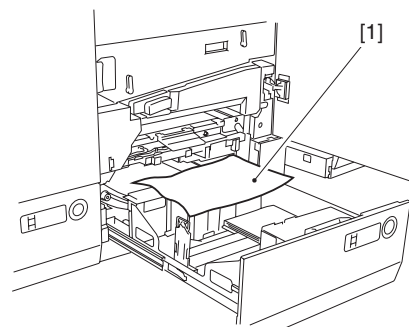
F-2-255

- 5) Detach the covers that are located above the deck.
- 8 screws [3]
Remove either of the following depending on the deck to work; the lower feed cover [1] for the right deck, or the main station duplexing feed cover [2] for the left deck.



F-2-256

- 6) Place an A3 sheet [1] on the side guide plate located on the rear side of the deck.

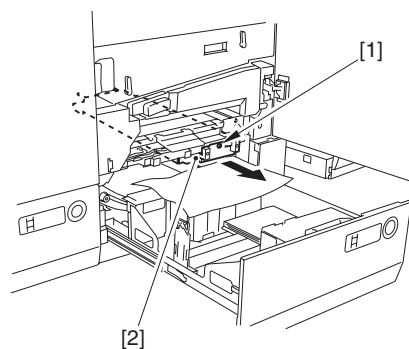


F-2-257



Be sure to place a sheet over the side guide plate, otherwise the pickup feed belt may be damaged when sliding out the pickup unit. Also be sure to remove the pickup unit carefully because the floatation nozzle of the pickup unit can be damaged by hitting to the deck.

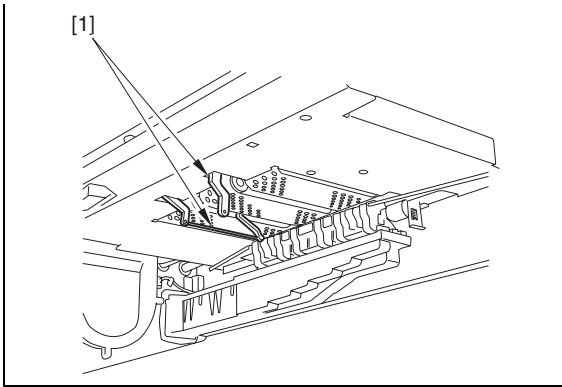
- 7) Remove the screw [1] and slide out the pickup unit [2] slowly.



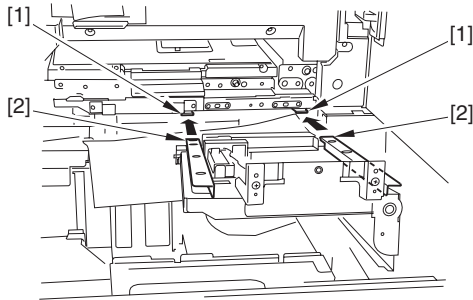
F-2-258



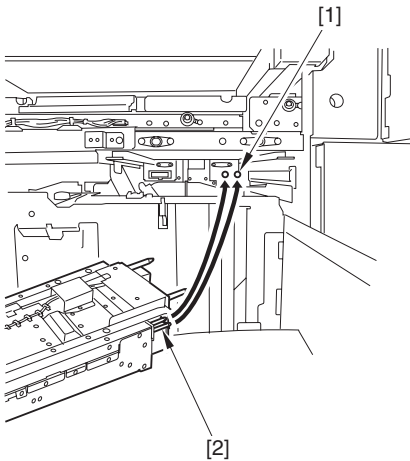
Be sure to slide out the pickup unit slowly. If done abruptly, the paper detection flag [1] may be broken.



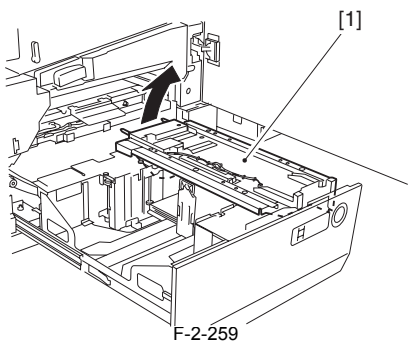
⚠ Points to note when attaching
 - Place an A3 sheet on the side guide plate located on the rear side of the deck.
 - Fit the rails [2] of the pickup unit to the rail guides [1] on the machine to slide in the unit.



- Slide in the pickup unit slowly. If done abruptly, the coupling [1] on the machine may be broken with the drive shaft [2] of the pickup unit.



8) While lifting up the rear side, remove the pickup unit [1].



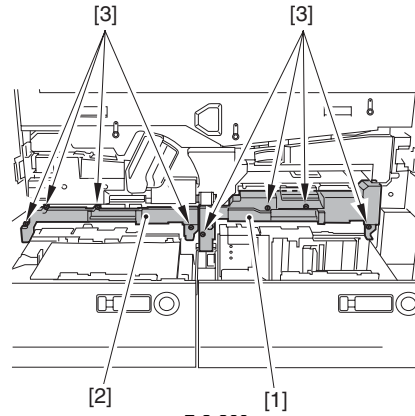
F-2-259

2. Removing Lower Feed Cover/Main Station Duplexing Feed Cover



Depending on the deck to work, remove either of the lower feed cover or the main station duplexing feed cover that located above the decks.

- 1) Remove the lower feed cover [1]/the main station duplexing feed cover [2].
 - 3 screws each [3]



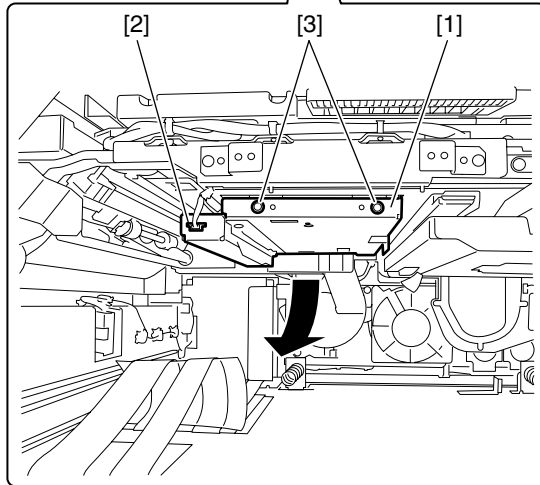
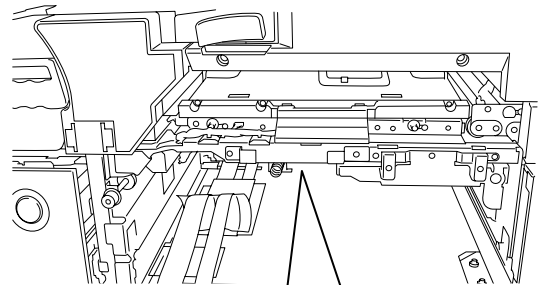
F-2-260

3. Attaching Cassette Heater Unit

MEMO:

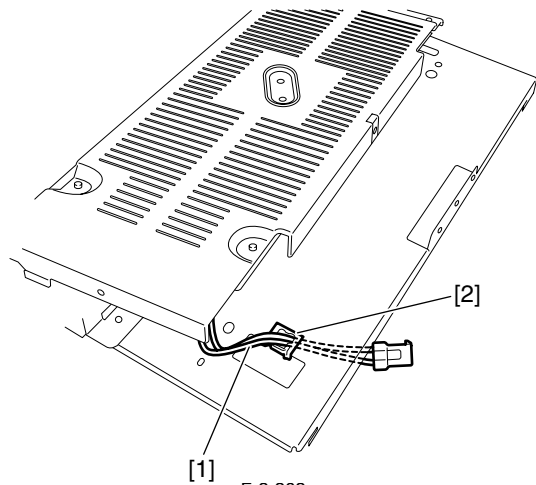
The steps below describe how to attach the cassette heater unit to the deck pickup unit (right). The same steps are applicable to the deck pickup unit (left) and thus skipped here.

- 1) Remove the heater mount [1] above the deck by sliding it to the front side.
 - 1 connector [2]
 - 2 screws [3]

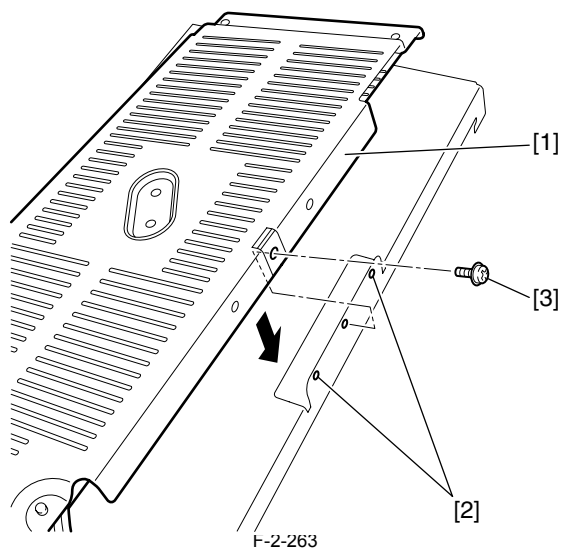


F-2-261

- 2) Pass the cable [1] of the heater unit through the cable guide [2] of the heater mount.



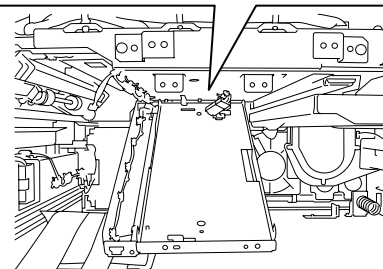
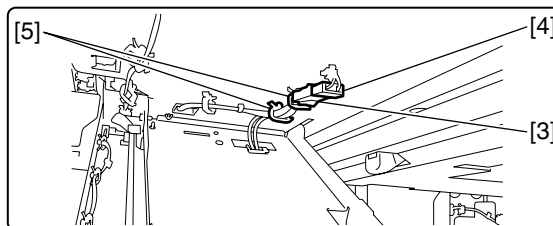
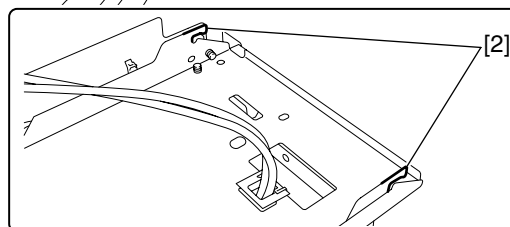
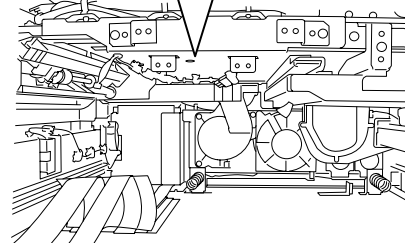
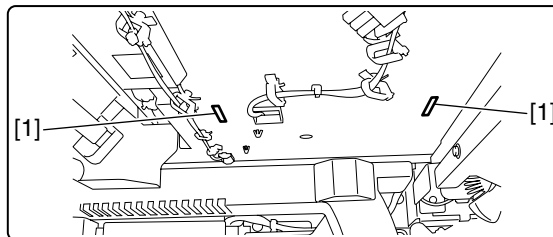
- 3) Fit the heater unit [1] to the 2 bosses [2] on the heater mount to attach.
 - 1 Screw (w/ washer Binding; M4X8) [3]



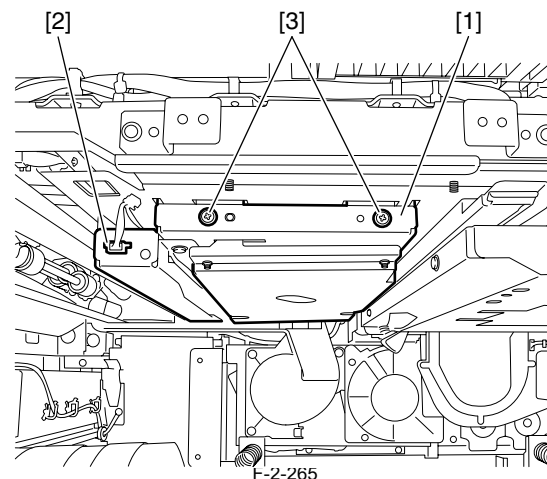
- 4) Fit the ribs [2] of the heater mount into the rear upper holes [1] inside the deck.

! Be sure to fit the ribs [2] of the heater mount into the rear upper holes [1] in the deck. Otherwise, the foreign matter sensor that is attached to the heater mount can produce improper signals.

- 5) Connect the cable [3] of the heater unit with the cable [4] on the machine. Then pass the cable of the heater unit through the cable guide [5].



- 6) Attach the heater mount [1].
 - 1 connector [2]
 - 2 screws [3]



- 7) Attach the lower feed cover/the main station duplexing feed cover, which were removed in the previous step.
- 8) Attach the deck pickup unit, which was also removed in the previous step.
- 9) Turn ON the heater switch.

2.10.4 Installation Procedure (Connecting POD Deck/ Secondary POD Deck)

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

1. Removing Deck Pickup Unit

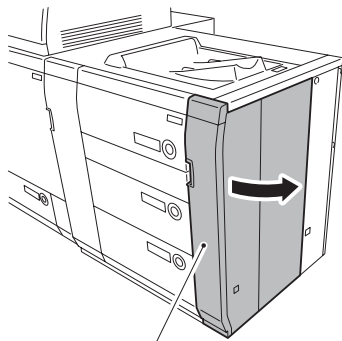


Depending on the location to install the cassette heater unit, remove the left/right deck pickup unit on the corresponding side.

MEMO:

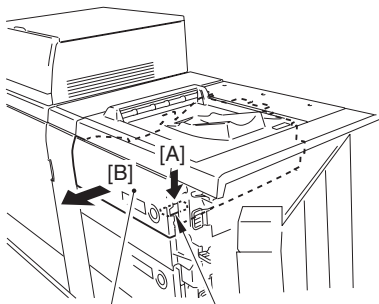
The steps below describe the installation of the cassette heater unit to the upper deck pickup unit of the POD deck. The same steps are applicable for middle/lower deck pickup units of POD deck as well as upper/middle/lower deck pickup units of the secondary POD deck, thus are skipped here.

- 1) Open the deck right front cover [1].
When connecting the secondary POD deck, open the multi path front cover.



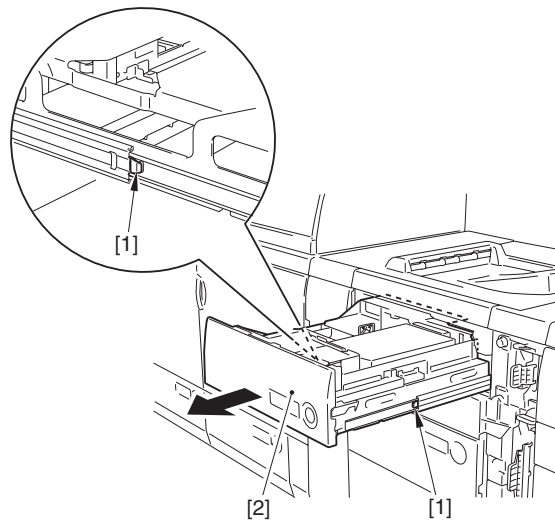
[1]
F-2-266

- 2) Push the latch [1] in the direction of [A] to open the upper deck [2].
- 3) Slide out the upper deck [2] fully to the direction of [B].



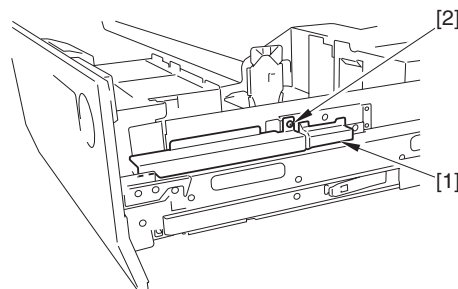
[2] [1]
F-2-267

- 4) Remove the 2 leaf springs [1] to slide out the upper deck [2] further.



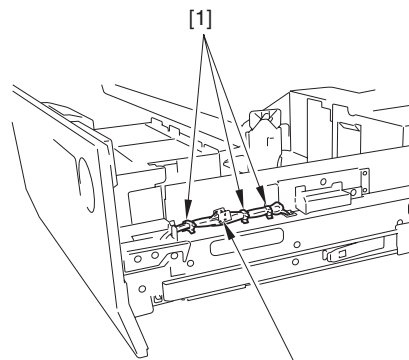
[2]
F-2-268

- 5) Remove the connector cover [1].
- 1 screw [2]



F-2-269

- 6) Remove the 3 wire saddles [1] and the connector [2].

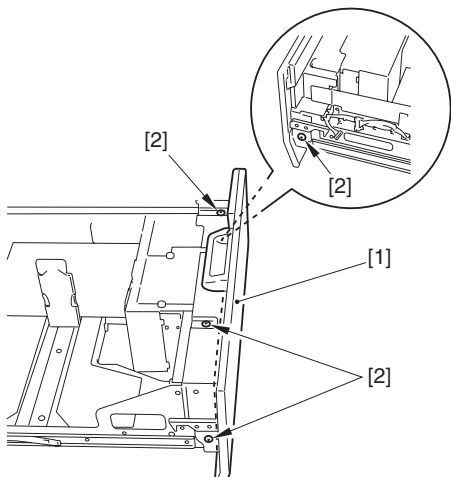


F-2-270

- 7) Detach the front cover.
- 4 screws [2]

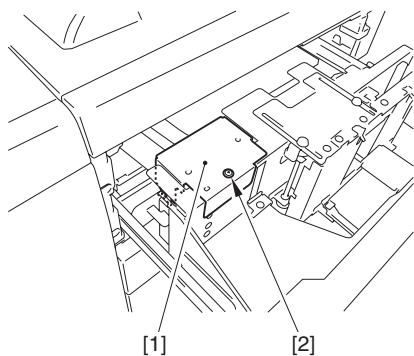


Mark lines on the positions of the 4 screws [2] before removing so that the front cover [1] can be attached in the correct position.



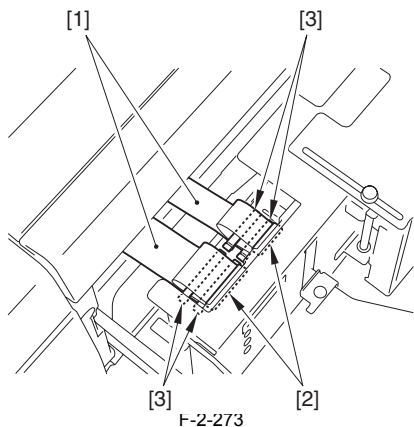
F-2-271

8) Remove the connector cover [1].
- 1 screw [2]



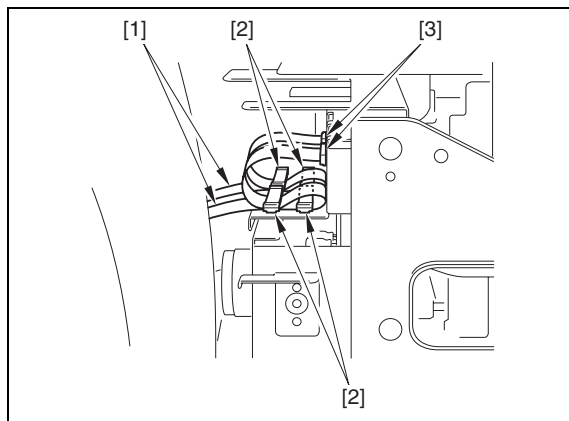
F-2-272

9) Disconnect the 2 flat cables from the connectors [2].
10) Remove the 4 cable clips [3].

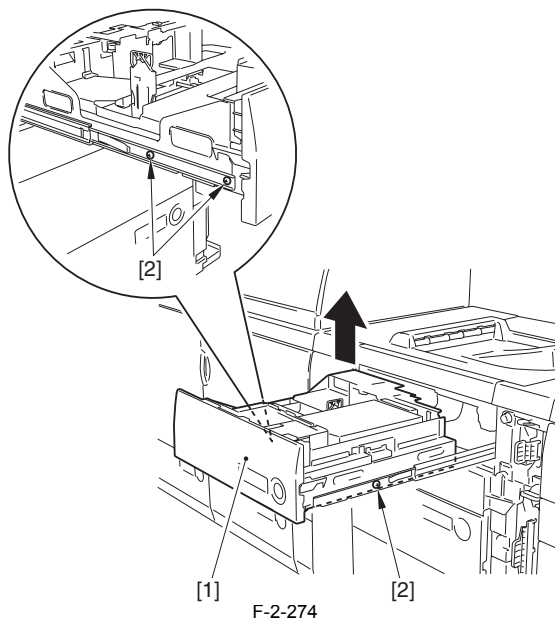


F-2-273

⚠ Points to note when attaching
Before plugging in the connector [3], hold the flat cables [1] with the cable clips [2].

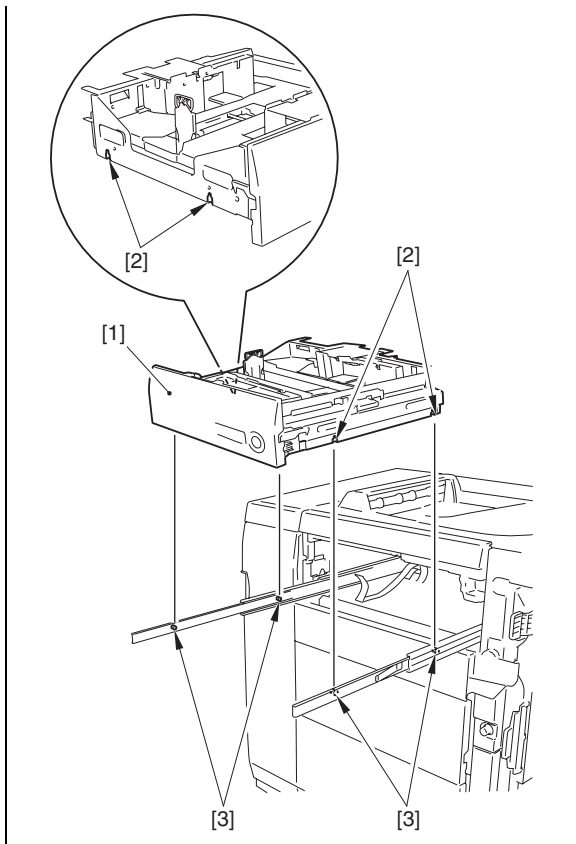


11) Remove the upper deck unit [1] to the direction of the arrow.
- 3 screws [2]



F-2-274

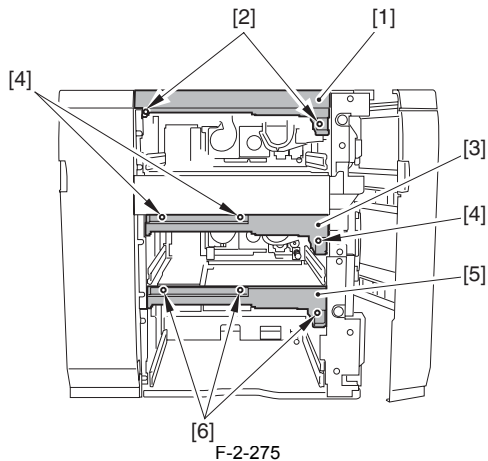
⚠ Points to note when attaching the unit
Fit the cut-offs [2] of the upper deck unit [1] to the hooks [3] on the guide rails.



2. Removing Deck Upper Front/Middle Inner/Lower Inner Covers

! Depending on the locations to install the cassette heater unit, remove either of deck upper front/middle inner/lower inner covers.

- 1) Detach the deck upper front cover [1].
- 2 screws [2]
- 2) Detach the deck middle inner cover [3].
- 3 screws [4]
- 3) Detach the deck lower inner cover [5].
- 3 screws [6]

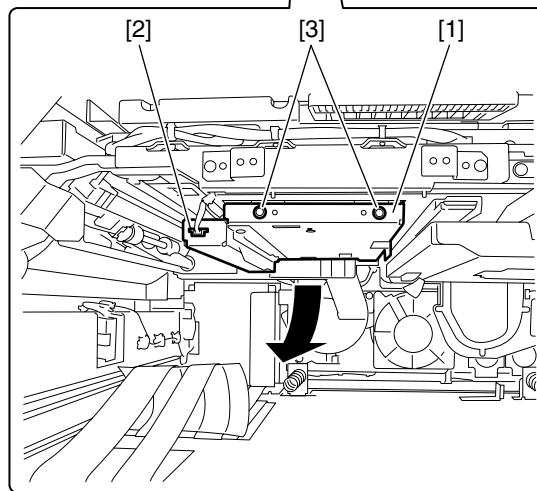
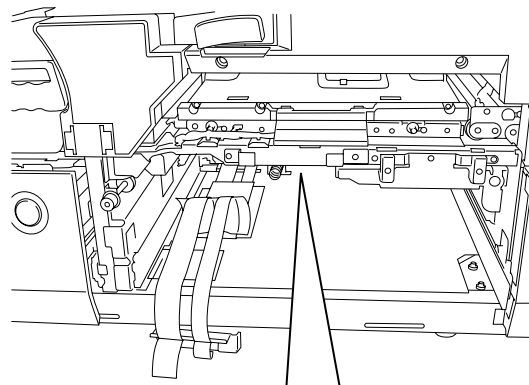


F-2-275

3. Attaching Cassette Heater Unit

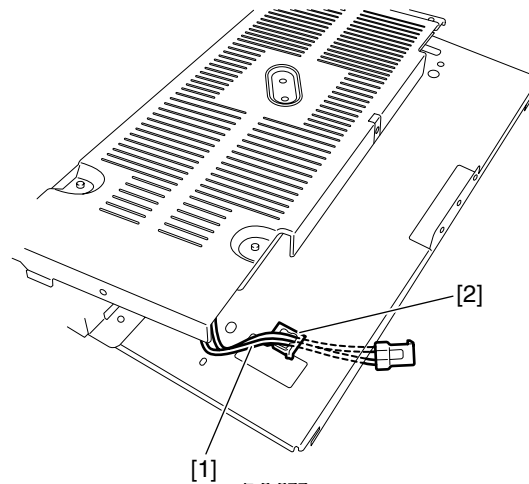
MEMO:
The steps below describe how to install the cassette heater unit to the machine. The same steps are applicable to cassette heater unit installation in POD deck/secondary POD deck and thus skipped here.

- 1) Remove the heater mount [1] inside of the upper deck to the forward.
- 1 connector [2]
- 2 screws [3]



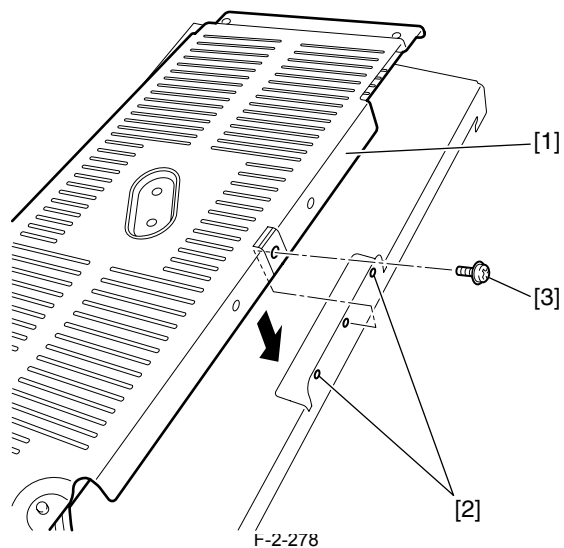
F-2-276

- 2) Pass the cable [1] of the heater unit through the cable guide [2] on the heater mount.



F-2-277

- 3) Fit the heater unit [1] to the 2 bosses [2] on the heater mount to attach.
- 1 Screw (w/ washer Binding; M4X8) [3]

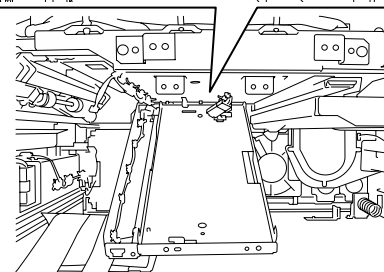
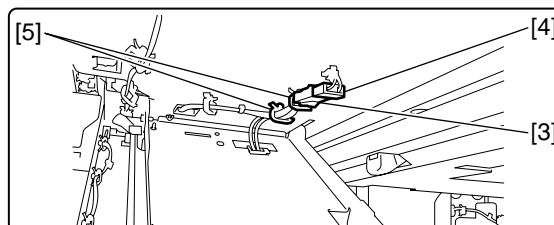
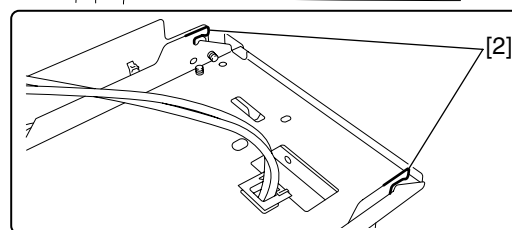
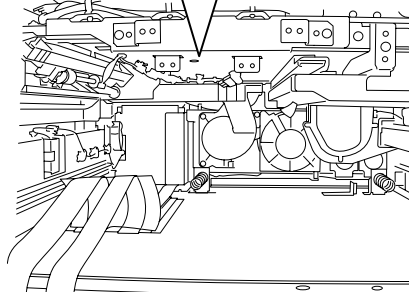
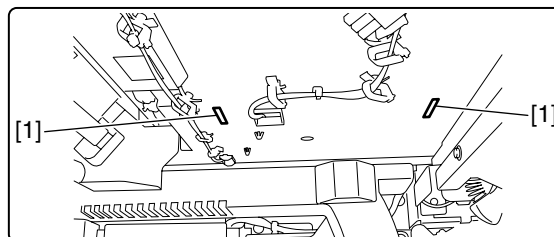


- 4) Fit the ribs [2] of the heater mount into the rear upper holes [1] inside the deck.



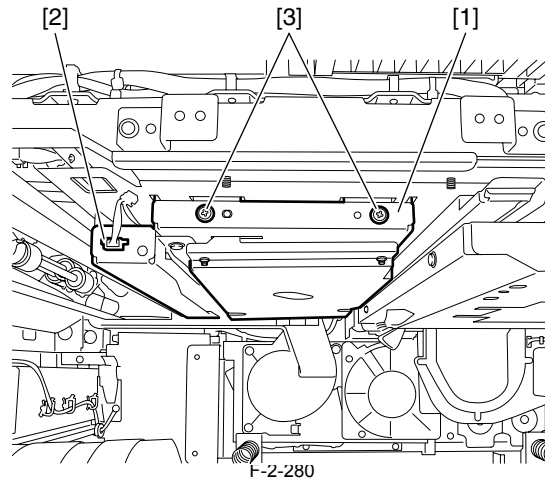
Be sure to fit the ribs [2] of the heater mount into the rear upper holes [1] in the deck. Otherwise, the foreign matter sensor that is attached to the heater mount can produce improper signals.

- 5) Connect the cable [3] of the heater unit with the cable [4] of the machine. Then pass the cable of the heater unit through the cable guide [5].



F-2-279

- 6) Attach the heater mount [1].
- 1 connector [2]
- 2 screws [3]



- 7) Attach the deck upper front/middle inner/lower inner covers, which were detached in the previous step.
- 8) Attach the deck pickup unit, which was also removed in the previous step.
- 9) Turn ON the heater switch.

2.11 Installing the Voice Guidance Kit

2.11.1 Points to Note About Installation

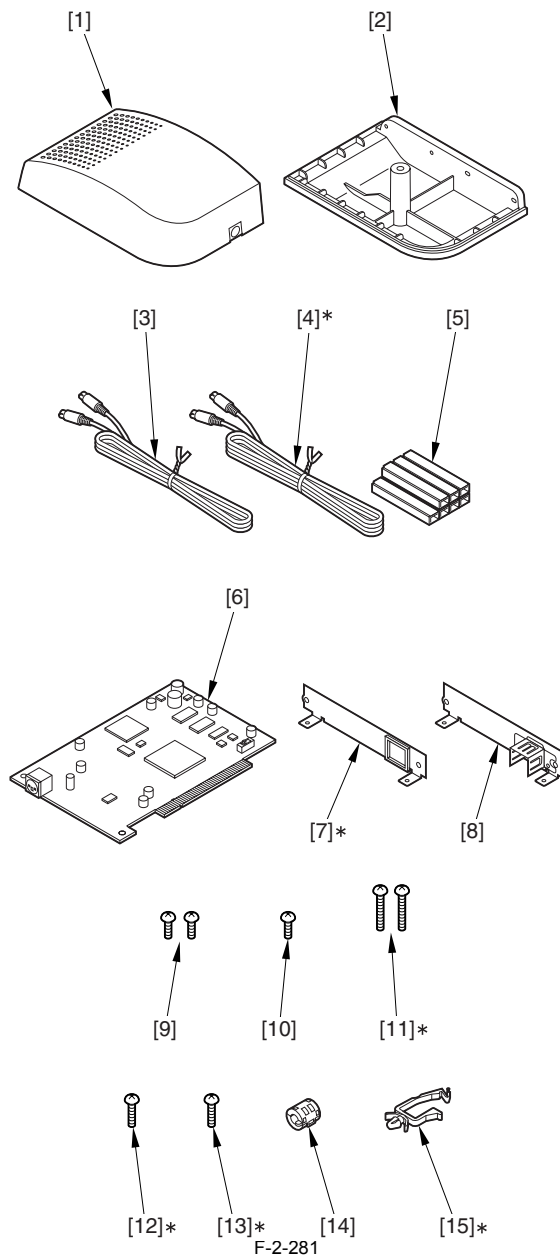
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000



2.11.2 Checking the Contents

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

<Voice Guidance Kit-A2>



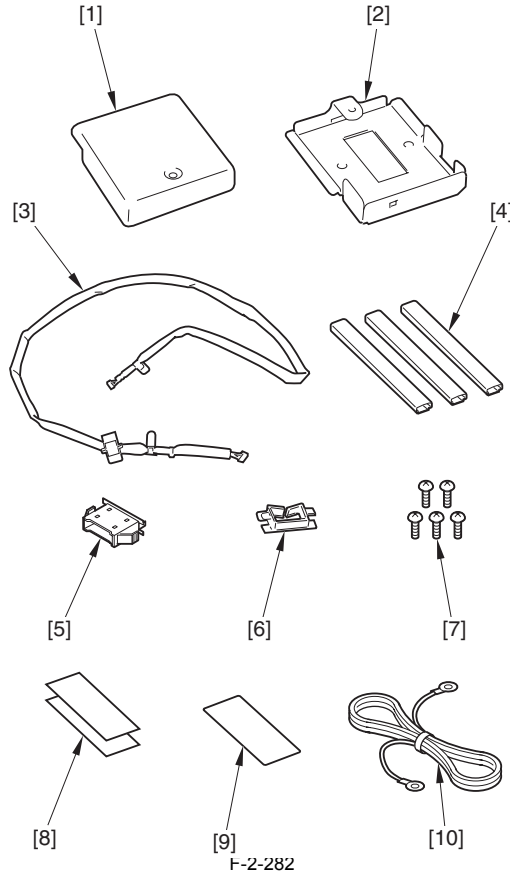
[1]	Speaker Unit (upper)	1pc.
[2]	Speaker Unit (lower)	1pc.
[3]	Cable (1300 mm)	1pc.
[4]*	Cable (1850 mm)	1pc.
[5]	Cable Guide (2pc used with this equipment)	7pc.
[6]	Voice Board	1pc.
[7]*	Voice Board instruction plate	1pc.
[8]	Voice Board instruction plate	1pc.
[9]	Screw (binding; M3X6)	2pc.
[10]	Screw (binding; M4X6)	1pc.
[11]*	Screw (binding; M4X40)	2pc.
[12]*	Screw (binding; M3X16)	1pc.
[13]*	Screw (binding; M4X16)	1pc.
[14]	Ferrite Core	1pc.
[15]*	Wire Saddle	1pc.

* Not used with this equipment

<System Accessory Attachment Kit-A1>

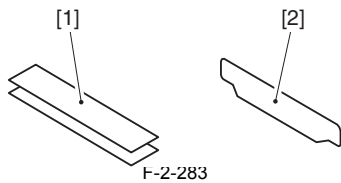
MEMO:
 'System Accessory Attachment Kit-A1' consists of Card Reader Attachment Kit, Voice Guidance Attachment Kit, and Key Switch Attachment Kit.
 This equipment uses Voice Guidance Attachment Kit.

- Card Reader Attachment Kit



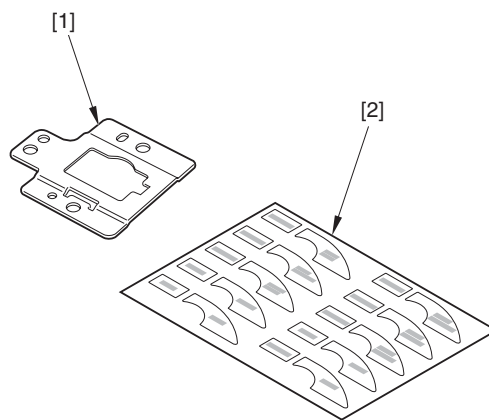
[1]	Card reader cover	1pc
[2]	Card reader attachment stay	1pc
[3]	Card reader harness	1pc
[4]	Cord guide	3pc
[5]	Relay connector	1pc
[6]	Edge saddle	1pc
[7]	Screw (binding: M4X6)	5pc
[8]	Fixing tape	2pc
[9]	Card reader seal	1pc
[10]	Extension grounding wire	1pc

- Voice Guidance Attachment Kit



[1]	Fixing tape	2pc
[2]	Speaker seal	1pc

- Key Switch Attachment Kit



F-2-284

[1]	Management SW support plate	1pc
[2]	Key label	1pc

2.11.3 Points to Note When Turning ON/OFF the Power of Host Machine

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

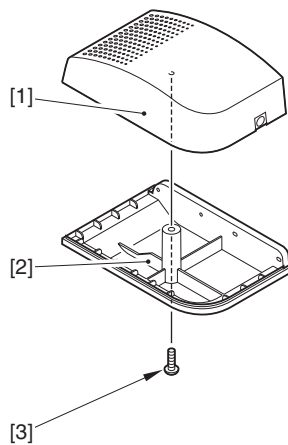
See the host machine installation [Points to Note When Turning ON/OFF the Power of Host Machine].

2.11.4 Installation Procedure

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

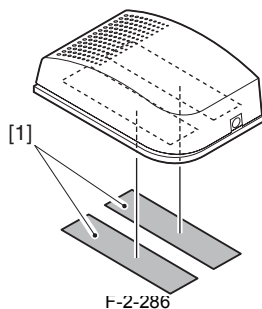
1. Installation Procedure

- 1) Attach the speaker unit (lower) [2] to the speaker unit (upper)[1].
- 1 screw (binding; M4X6) [3]



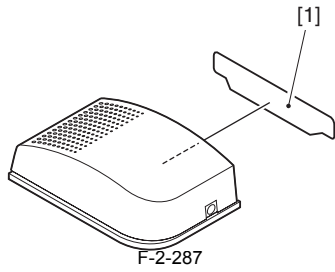
F-2-285

- 2) Remove the 2 release papers of the fixing tape [1] to attach to the position indicated in the figure.

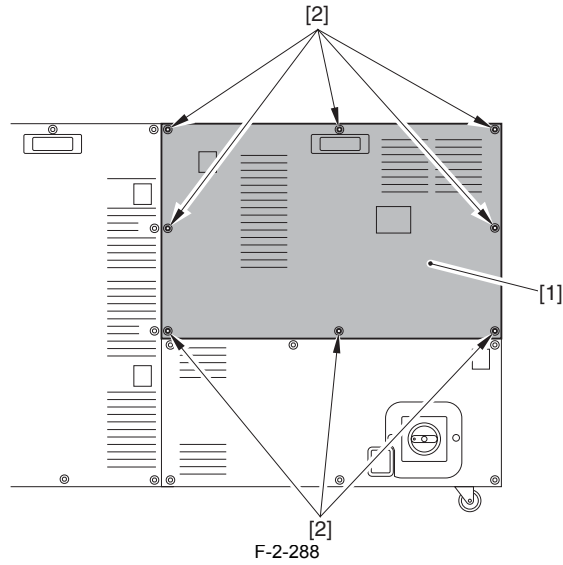


F-2-286

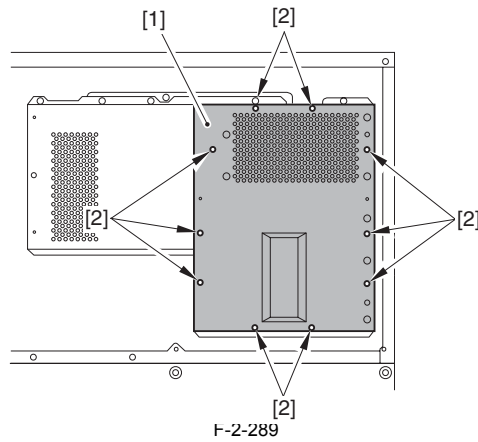
- 3) Remove the release paper of the speaker seal [1] to attach to the position indicated in the figure.



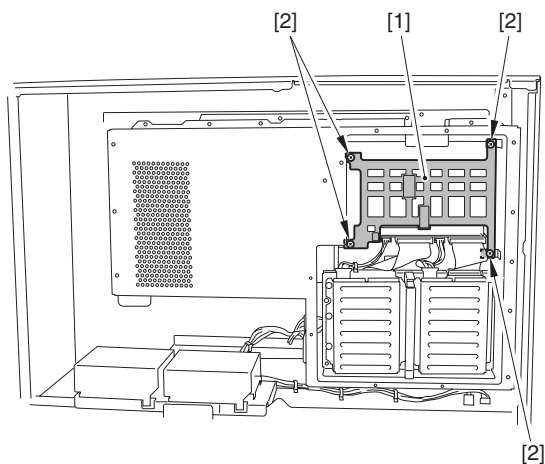
- 4) Detach the power unit station rear cover 1 [1].
- 8 screws [2]



- 5) Detach the main controller cover 2 [1].
- 10 screws [2]

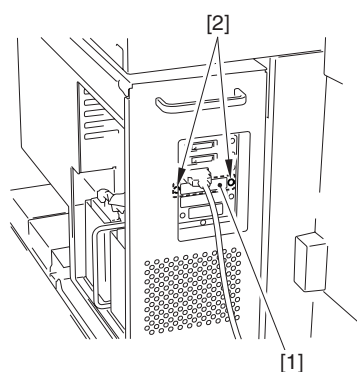


- 6) Detach the controller PCB guide [1].
- 4 screws [2]



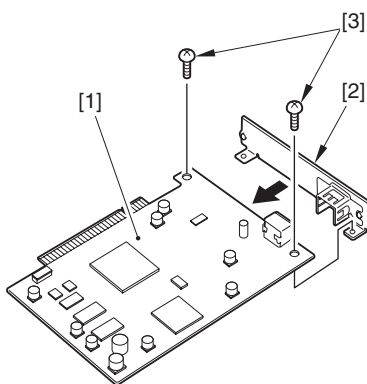
F-2-290

- 7) Remove the face plate [1] (the removed face plate will not be used).
- 2 screws [2] (used in the step 10))



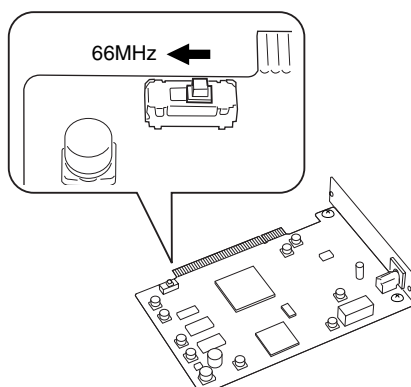
F-2-291

- 8) Attach the Voice Board instruction plate [2] to the voice board [1].
- 2 screws (binding; M3X6) [3]

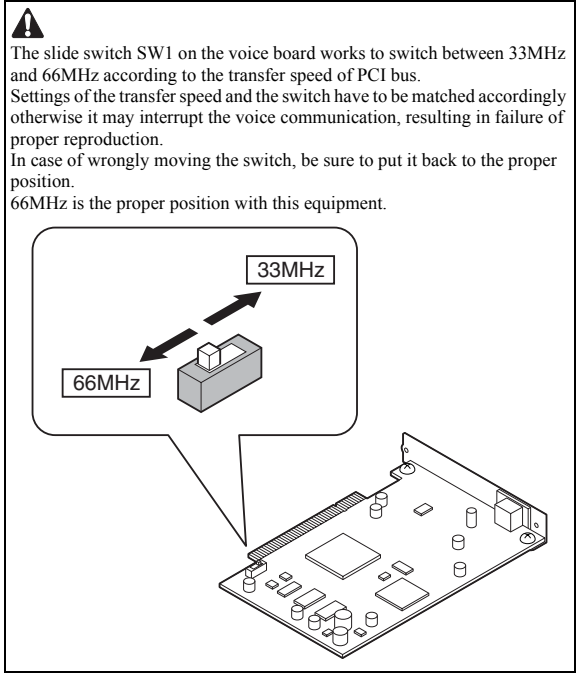


F-2-292

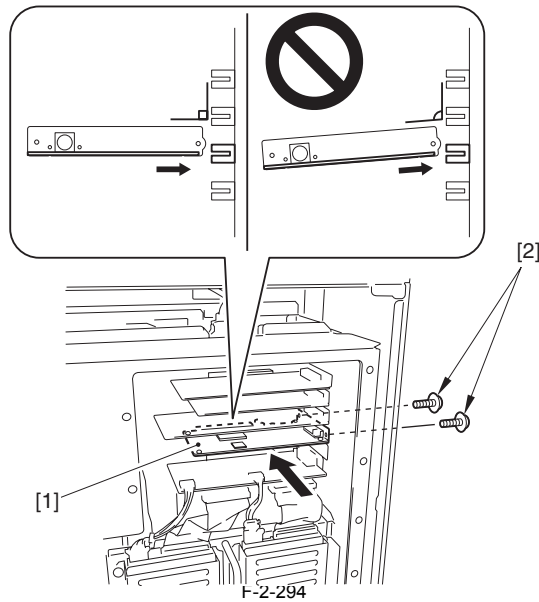
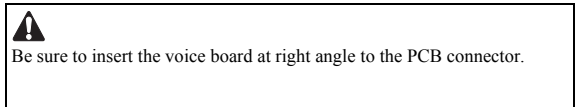
- 9) Switch the slide switch to 66MHz because SW1 on the voice board is set to 33MHz upon factory shipment.



F-2-293

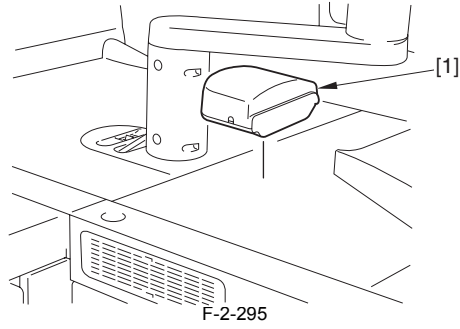


- 10) Insert the voice board [1] into the main controller PCB connector.
 - 2 screws [2] (use the screws removed in Step 7))

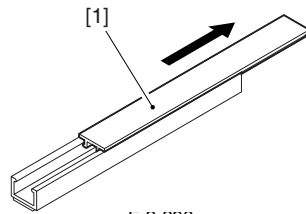


MEMO:
 Hereinafter describes the procedure to attach the speaker unit near the control panel.
 There is no specified attachment position, so it is available to change to a user-requested position.

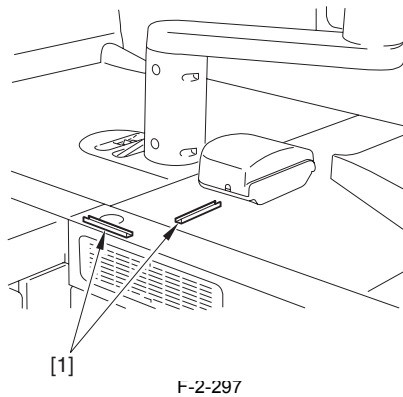
- 11) Remove the release paper of the fixing tape to attach the speaker unit [1].



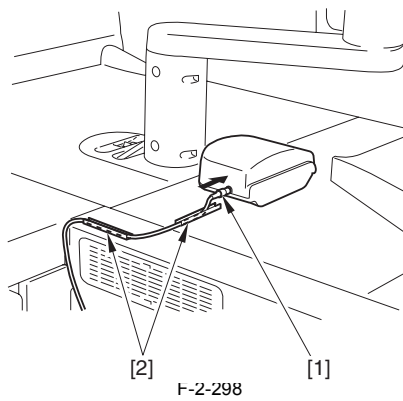
12) Detach the cord guide cover [1].



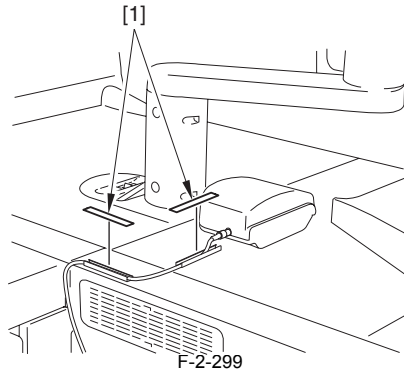
13) Remove the release paper of the 2 cord guides [1] to attach to the positions indicated in the figure.



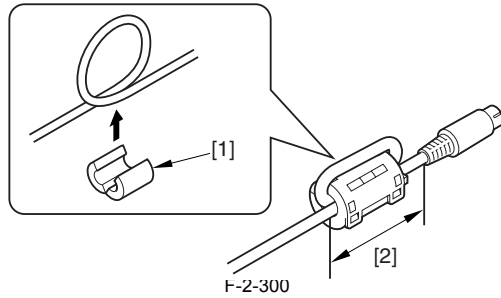
14) Insert the cable [1] to the speaker unit and put it through the cord guides [2].



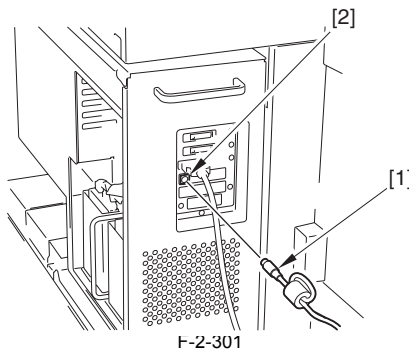
15) Attach the cord guide cover [1].



16) Attach the ferrite core [1] to the cable. Be sure to set the attachment position [2] to be within 50mm from the cable edge.

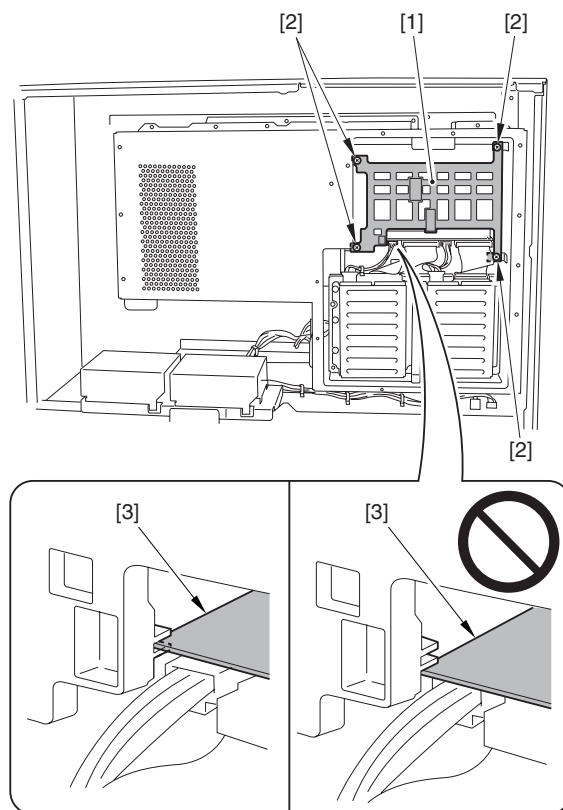


17) Insert the cable [1] into the voice board terminal [2].



18) Attach the controller PCB guide [1].
- 4 screws [2]

⚠ Be sure to check that the LAN-bar-B PCB [3] has surely been secured after securing the controller PCB guide [1] with the screw.



F-2-302

- 19) Attach the main controller cover 2.
- 20) Attach the power unit station rear cover 1.
- 21) Insert the power plug of the host machine to turn ON the breaker and the main power.
- 22) Check that the voice board is recognized.
 - In Service Mode:
 - COPIER > DISPLAY > ACC-STS > PCI
 - Voice board is properly recognized if 'Voice Board' is displayed.

2. Checking the Settings

After turning on the power of host machine, check the following settings to use the Voice Guidance Kit.

- 1) [Additional Functions] > [System Settings] > [Voice Navigation Management Settings] > [Use Voice Guide]
- 2) Check that it is set to ON.

3. Checking Operation

<To use>

- 1) Press the reset key for 3 sec or more.
- 2) Voice guidance becomes available to use if the copy count display on the control panel is framed in red

<To stop>

- 1) Press the reset key for 3 sec or more.

Chapter 3 Basic Operation

Contents

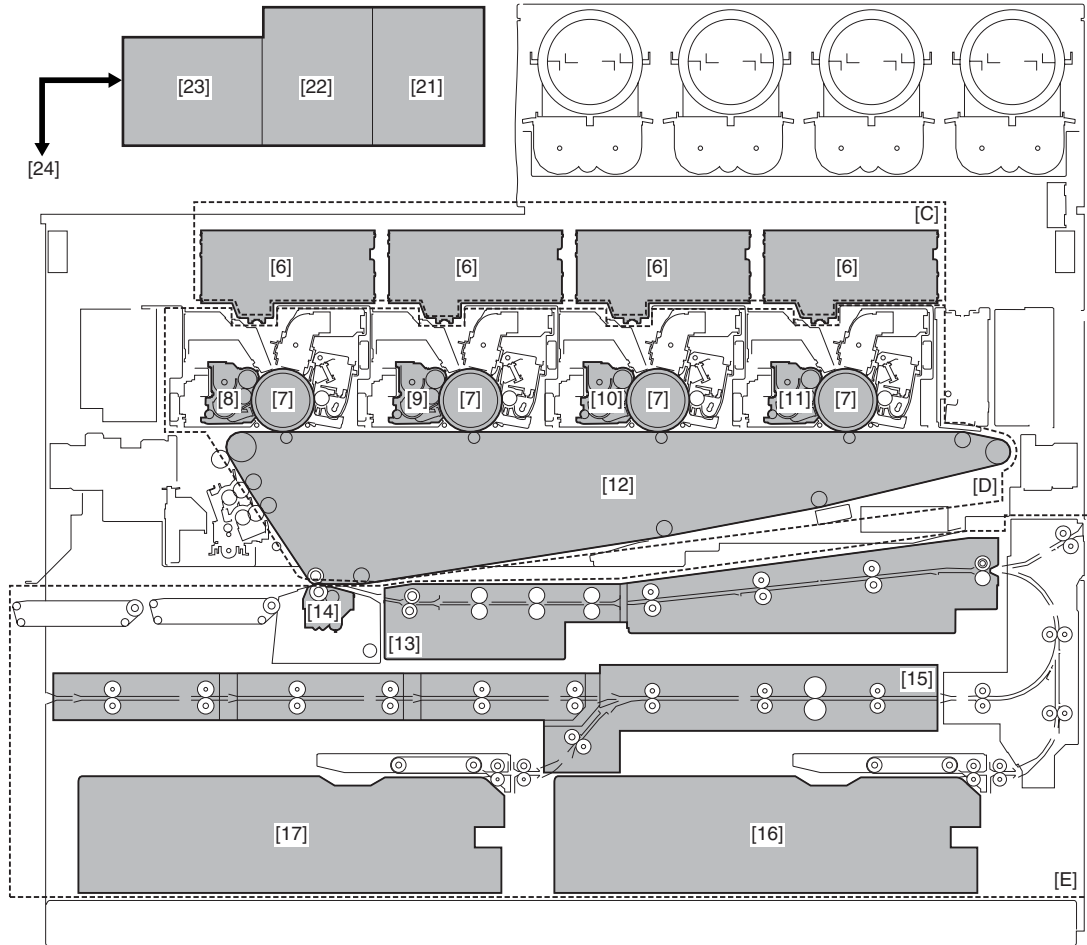
3.1 Construction.....	3-1
3.1.1 Functional Configuration	3-1
3.1.2 Major PCB Connection	3-4
3.1.3 DC Controller.....	3-7

3.1 Construction

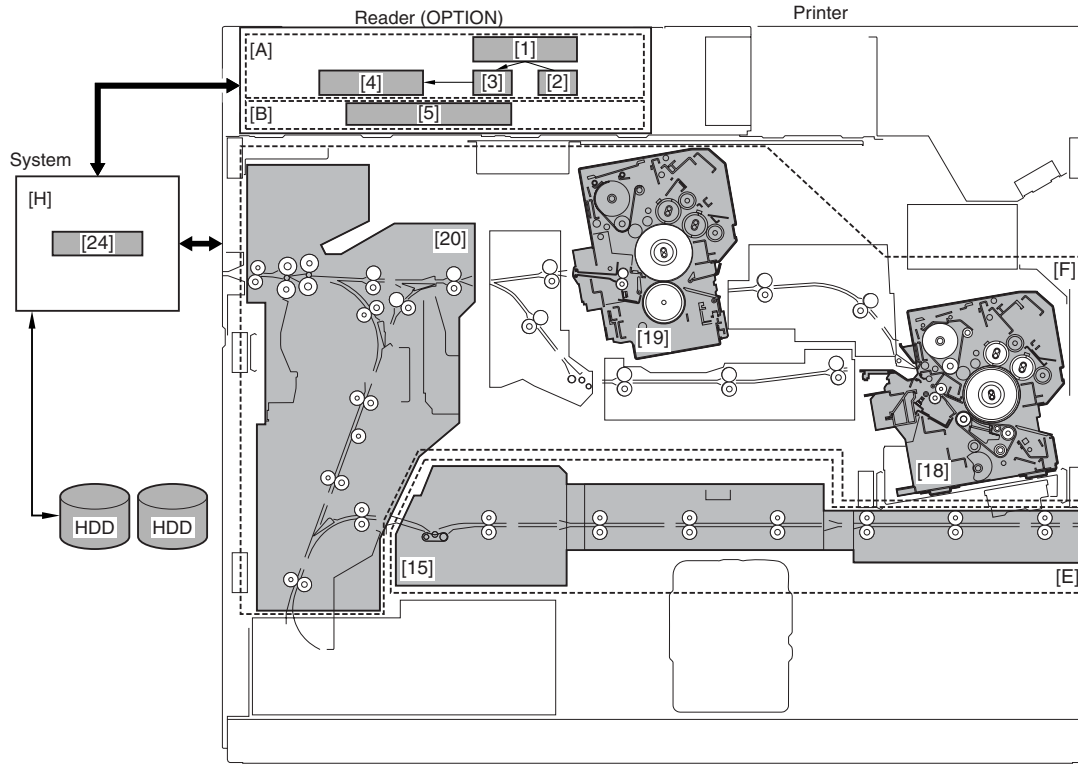
3.1.1 Functional Configuration

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

<Main-Station>



<Sub-Station>



F-3-1

1. Reader Assembly (Option)

- [A] Original Exposure System
 - [1] Original
 - [2] Scanning lamp
 - [3] Laser path
 - [4] CCD/analog processor PCB
- [B] Reader Control System
 - [5] Reader controller PCB

2. Printer Assembly

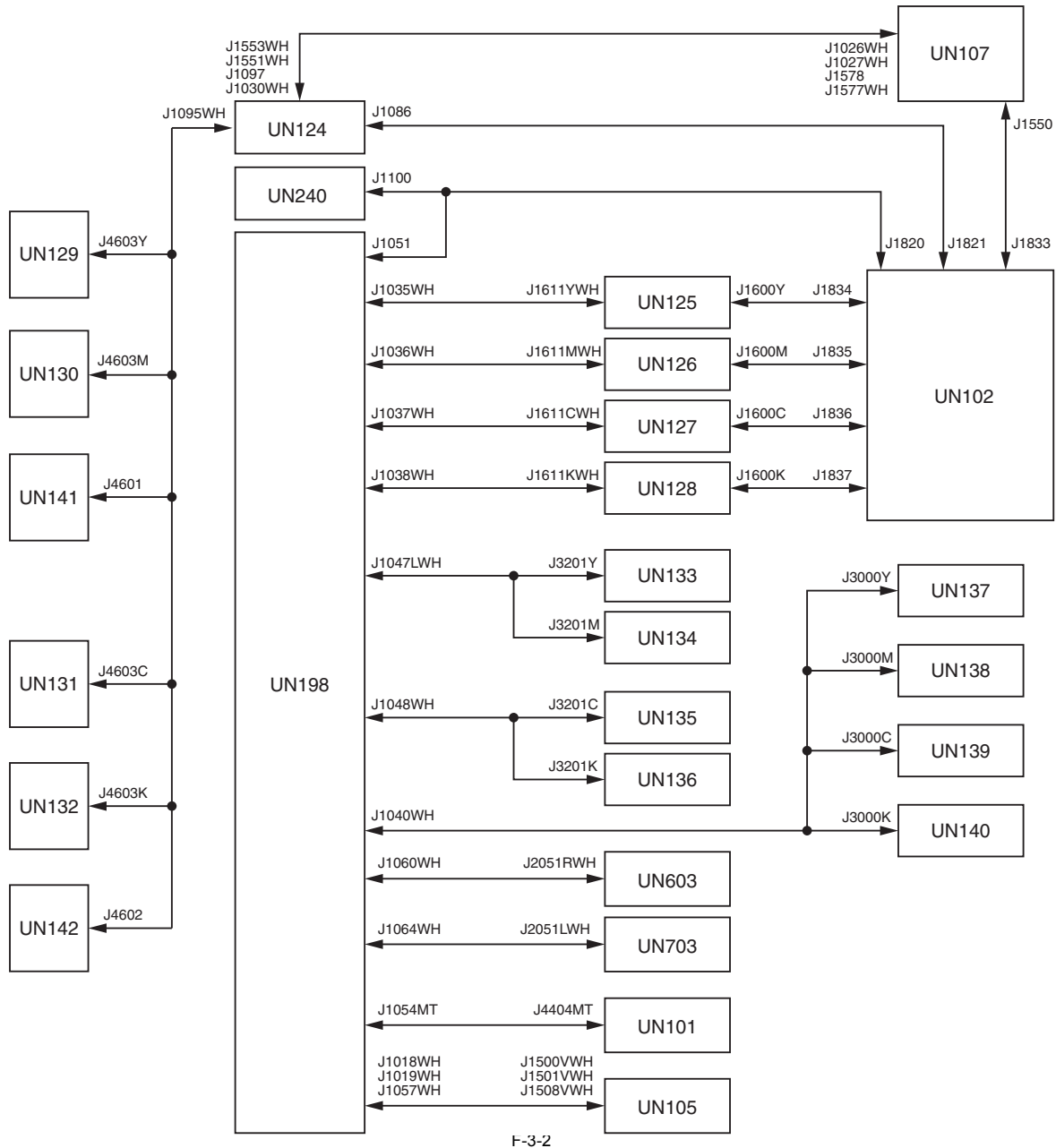
- [C] Laser Exposure System
 - [6] Laser scanner unit (Y)
 - [7] Laser scanner unit (M)
 - [8] Laser scanner unit (C)
 - [9] Laser scanner unit (Bk)
- [D] Image Formation System
 - [10] Photosensitive drum (Y)
 - [11] Photosensitive drum (M)
 - [12] Photosensitive drum (C)
 - [13] Photosensitive drum (Bk)
 - [14] Developing assembly (Y)
 - [15] Developing assembly (M)
 - [16] Developing assembly (C)
 - [17] Developing assembly (Bk)
 - [18] Intermediate transfer assembly
 - [19] Secondary transfer assembly
- [E] Pickup/Feeding System
 - [20] Pickup control assembly
 - [21] Lower feeding assembly
 - [22] Right deck
 - [23] Left deck
- [F] Fixing/Delivery Assembly
 - [24] Primary fixing assembly
 - [25] Secondary fixing assembly
 - [26] Delivery/reversing assembly
- [G] Printer Control System
 - [27] DC controller PCB 1-1
 - [28] DC controller PCB 1-2
 - [29] DC controller PCB 1-3

3. System Assembly

- [H] System Control
 - [30] Main controller PCB (MAIN-M)
 - [31] Main controller PCB (MAIN-P)

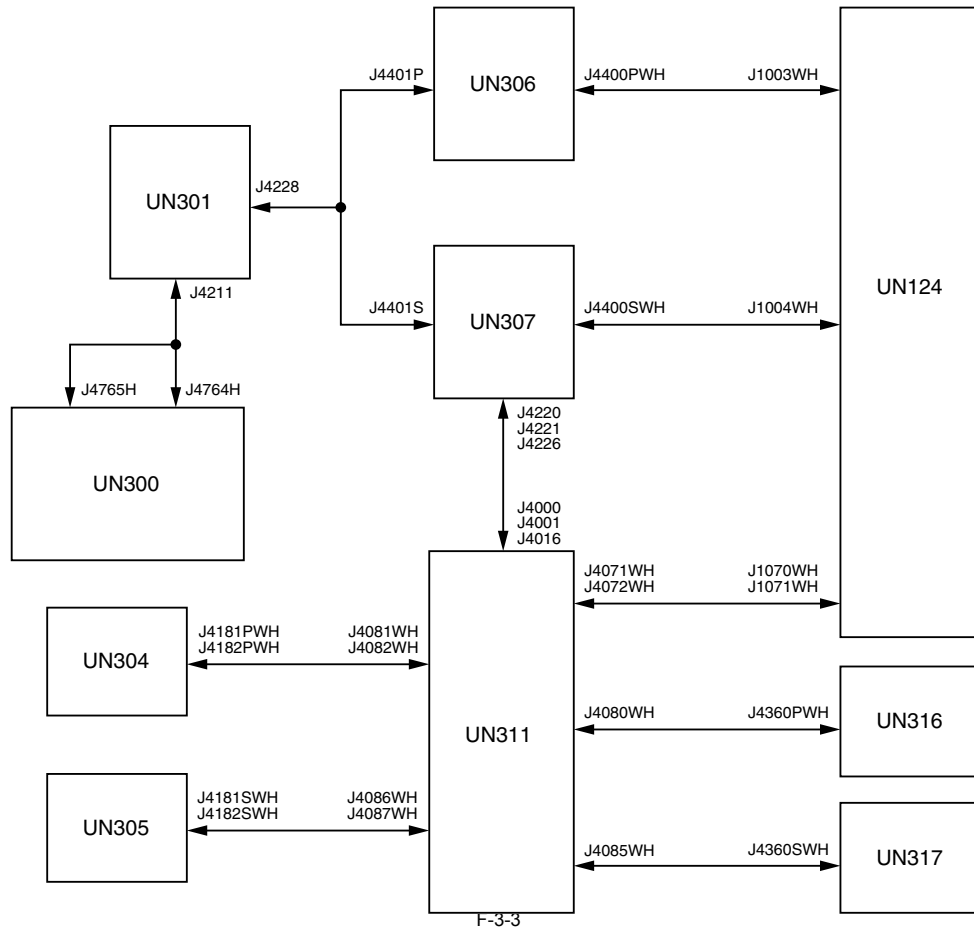
3.1.2 Major PCB Connection

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000



<Main-Station>

UN101	Environmental heater driver PCB	UN102	Main station power supply connect PCB
UN105	Vertical path/lower feeding driver PCB	UN107	Pre-fixing feeding driver PCB
UN124	DC controller PCB 1-2	UN125	Drum driver PCB (Y)
UN126	Drum driver PCB (M)	UN127	Drum driver PCB (C)
UN128	Drum driver PCB (Bk)	UN129	Potential measuring PCB (Y)
UN130	Potential measuring PCB (M)	UN131	Potential measuring PCB (C)
UN132	Potential measuring PCB (Bk)	UN133	Developing high-voltage PCB (Y)
UN134	Developing high-voltage PCB (M)	UN135	Developing high-voltage PCB (C)
UN136	Developing high-voltage PCB (Bk)	UN137	Primary charging high-voltage PCB (Y)
UN138	Primary charging high-voltage PCB (M)	UN139	Primary charging high-voltage PCB (C)
UN140	Primary charging high-voltage PCB (Bk)	UN141	Environmental sensor PCB 1
UN142	Environmental sensor PCB 2	UN198	DC controller PCB 1-1
UN240	DC controller PCB 1-3	UN603	Right deck pickup driver PCB
UN703	Left deck pickup driver PCB		

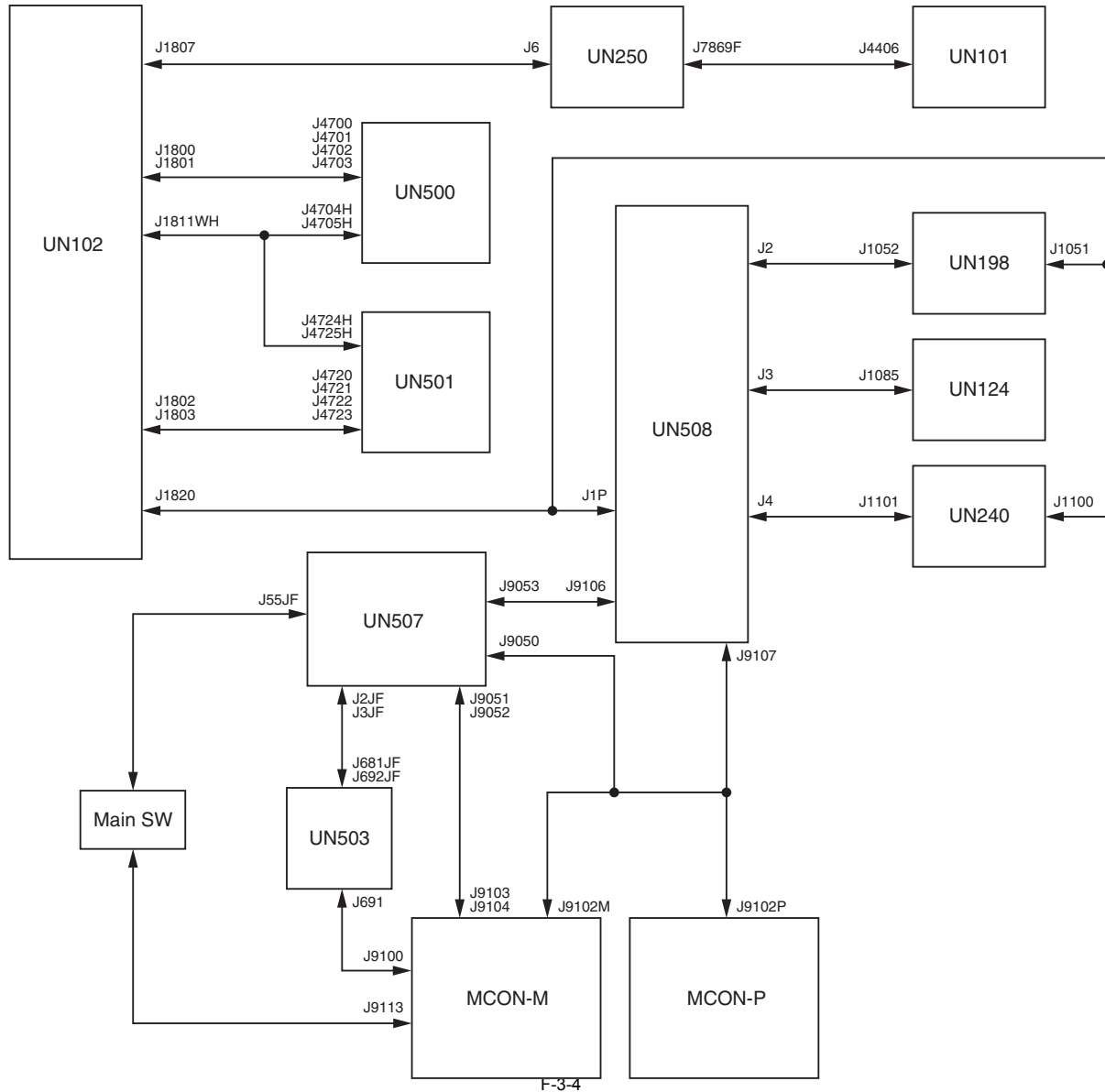


<Sub-Station>

UN300	24V power supply 4	UN301	Sub station power connecting PCB
UN304	Primary fixing external driver PCB	UN305	Secondary fixing external driver PCB
UN306	Fixing heater driver PCB 1	UN307	Fixing heater driver PCB 2
UN311	Fixing duplexing feeding driver PCB	UN316	Primary fixing internal driver PCB
UN317	Secondary fixing internal driver PCB		

<Main-Station>

UN124	DC controller PCB 1-2
-------	-----------------------




<Power Unit Station>

UN250	Power supply PCB for thermopile	UN500	24V power supply 1
UN501	24V power supply 2	UN503	3.3V all-night power supply PCB
UN507	13V non all-night power supply PCB	UN508	Main controller power supply PCB
MAIN-M	Main controller PCB (MAIN-M)	MAIN-P	Main controller PCB (MAIN-P)

<Main-Station>

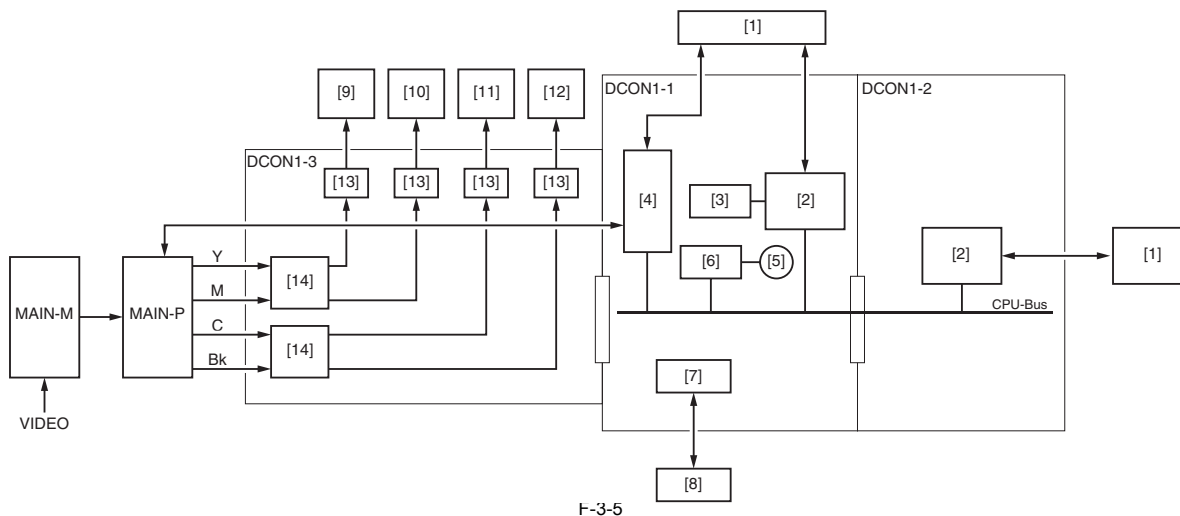
UN101	Environmental heater driver PCB	UN102	Main station power supply connect PCB
UN124	DC controller PCB 1-2	UN198	DC controller PCB 1-1
UN240	DC controller PCB 1-3		

 The arrows in the figures indicate the major connections among PCBs, not the direction of signals.

3.1.3 DC Controller

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

The functional configuration of the DC controller PCBs is as follow:



- [1] Drivers
- [2] ASIC for motor/solenoid control
- [3] Flash ROM
- [4] CPU
- [5] Lithium battery
- [6] SRAM
- [7] ARCNET controller
- [8] Pickup/delivery accessories
- [9] Laser driver (Y)
- [10] Laser driver (M)
- [11] Laser driver (C)
- [12] Laser driver (Bk)
- [13] ASIC for video/laser control
- [14] Channel links

DCON1-1: DC controller PCB 1-1
 DCON1-2: DC controller PCB 1-2
 DCON1-3: DC controller PCB 1-3
 MAIN-P: Main controller PCB (MAIN-P)
 MAIN-M: Main controller PCB (MAIN-M)

Chapter 4 Main Controller

Contents

4.1 Construction.....	4-1
4.1.1 Configuration / Function	4-1
4.1.2 Notes on the Hard Disk	4-2
4.2 Construction of the Electrical Circuitry.....	4-3
4.2.1 Main Controller PCB (MAIN-M)	4-3
4.2.2 Main Controller PCB (MAIN-P).....	4-5
4.3 Start-Up Sequence	4-6
4.3.1 Overview	4-6
4.3.2 Activation Sequence.....	4-7
4.4 Actions when HDD Error	4-9
4.4.1 Treatment for E602	4-9
4.5 Flow of Image Data	4-13
4.5.1 At making copy	4-13
4.5.2 At SEND execution.....	4-14
4.5.3 At making PDL prints	4-15
4.5.4 At making prints from the external controller (imagePRESS server).....	4-17
4.6 Parts Replacement Procedure	4-19
4.6.1 Hard Disk	4-19
4.6.1.1 Before Removing the Hard Disk.....	4-19
4.6.1.2 Removing the Hard Disk.....	4-19
4.6.2 Main Controller Box	4-19
4.6.2.1 Before Removing the Main Controller Box.....	4-19
4.6.2.2 Removing the Main Controller Box	4-19
4.6.3 Main Controller PCB	4-19
4.6.3.1 Before Removing the Main Controller PCB (MAIN-M).....	4-19
4.6.3.2 Removing the Main Controller PCB (MAIN-M)	4-20
4.6.3.3 Before Removing the Main Controller PCB (MAIN-P).....	4-20
4.6.3.4 Removing the Main Controller PCB (MAIN-P).....	4-20
4.6.4 SRAM PCB	4-21
4.6.4.1 Before detaching the SRAM PCB	4-21
4.6.4.2 Detaching the SRAM PCB	4-21
4.6.5 Boot ROM PCB	4-21
4.6.5.1 Before removing the BOOT ROM.....	4-21
4.6.5.2 Removing the BOOT ROM.....	4-21
4.6.6 Image Memory (SDRAM)	4-21
4.6.6.1 Before detaching the DDR-SDRAM PCB.....	4-21
4.6.6.2 Detaching the DDR-SDRAM PCB.....	4-21
4.6.7 RO-B PCB.....	4-21
4.6.7.1 Detaching the RO-B PCB	4-21
4.6.8 GU-Short PCB.....	4-22
4.6.8.1 Detaching the GU-Short PCB.....	4-22
4.6.9 S-B PCB	4-22
4.6.9.1 Detaching the S-B PCB	4-22
4.6.10 LAN-bar-B PCB.....	4-22
4.6.10.1 Detaching the LAN-bar-B PCB	4-22
4.6.11 O-B PCB	4-23
4.6.11.1 Removing O-B PCB	4-23
4.6.12 RB-A PCB.....	4-23

4.6.12.1 Before detaching the RB-A PCB.....	4-23
4.6.12.2 Detaching the RB-A PCB.....	4-23
4.6.13 DRM PCB.....	4-23
4.6.13.1 Detaching the DRM (256) PCB.....	4-23
4.6.13.2 Detaching the DRM (512) PCB.....	4-24
4.6.14 ZJ-A PCB.....	4-24
4.6.14.1 Removing ZJ-A PCB.....	4-24
4.6.15 Voice Guidance PCB.....	4-24
4.6.15.1 Removing Voice Guidance Board.....	4-24
4.6.16 Encryption PCB.....	4-25
4.6.16.1 Before Removing Encryption Board.....	4-25
4.6.16.2 Removing Encryption Board.....	4-25

4.1 Construction

4.1.1 Configuration / Function

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

T-4-1

Parts Name	Function
[1] Main controller PCB (MAIN-M)	Whole system control, memory control, printer output image processing control, various I / O, expansion bus control, color preview control, 1200dpi / 600dpi conversion
[2] RO-B PCB	External controller I / F, Color space conversion, electronic sorting rotation, binarization, resolution conversion. 1200dpi / 600dpi conversion, rotation function, margin function
[3] O-B PCB *	External controller I / F, 1200dpi / 600dpi conversion, rotation function, margin function
[4] S-B PCB	Reader I / F, reader image processing (resolution conversion, image rotation, compression and extension)
[5] ZJ-A PCB *	Character / shading determination, color determination
[6] Voice guidance PCB *	Voice data input / output
[7] LAN-bar-B PCB	LAN I / F, HDD controller
[8] BOOT ROM	Stores the BOOT programs
[9] SRAM PCB (SRAM-RTC-A)	Retains user mode / service mode settings, retains the image data management information saved on the HDD SRAM backup system: lithium battery
[10] DDR-SDRAM	Stores program-related data, image data SDRAM capacity: 1.5 GB Among the 2 slots, insert a 1 GB DDR-SDRAM into one slot and a 0.5 GB (512 MB) DDR-SDRAM to the other. (The 2 DDR-SDRAM's can be inserted into either of these slots.)
[11] RB-A PCB *	Color space conversion, electronic sorting rotation, binarization, resolution conversion
[12] Encryption board *	Encryption / decryption, encryption key management
[13] Hard disk	Stores the system software, image data, BOX image data Capacity: 80 GB x 2
[14] Main controller PCB (MAIN-P)	Printer output image processing (color space compression, background omission, LOG conversion, direct mapping, color balance, zoom fine adjustment, gradation conversion, screen processing, trimming, masking), drum-to-drum delay memory control (Y color data)
[15] DRM (256) PCB	drum-to-drum delay memory control (M color data)
[16] DRM (512) PCB	drum-to-drum delay memory control (Bk color data)
[17] DRM (512) PCB	drum-to-drum delay memory control (C color data)
[18] Gu-Short PCB	internal bus connection In case that the external controller (option) is attached, remove this PCB, and replace with O-B PCB (option).
[19] Network port	Ethernet I/F (100Base-TX/10Base-T)
[20] USB(D) port	USB2.0 device I/F
[21] USB(H) port	USB2.0 host I/F

T-4-2

Parts Name	Number in the Figure	Imaging Function			
		PDL Function	Copy Function	BOX Function	SEND Function
Main controller PCB (MAIN-M)	[1]	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
RO-B PCB	[2]	Yes	Yes	Yes **	Yes
O-B PCB *	[3]	Yes	No	Yes **	No
S-B PCB	[4]	No	Yes	Yes ***	Yes
ZJ-A PCB *	[5]	No	Yes	Yes ***	Yes
LAN-bar-B PCB	[7]	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
RB-A board *	[11]	Yes	No	Yes **	No
Main controller PCB (MAIN-P)	[14]	Yes	Yes	Yes	No
DRM (256) / DRM (512) PCB	[15],[16],[17]	Yes	Yes	Yes	No

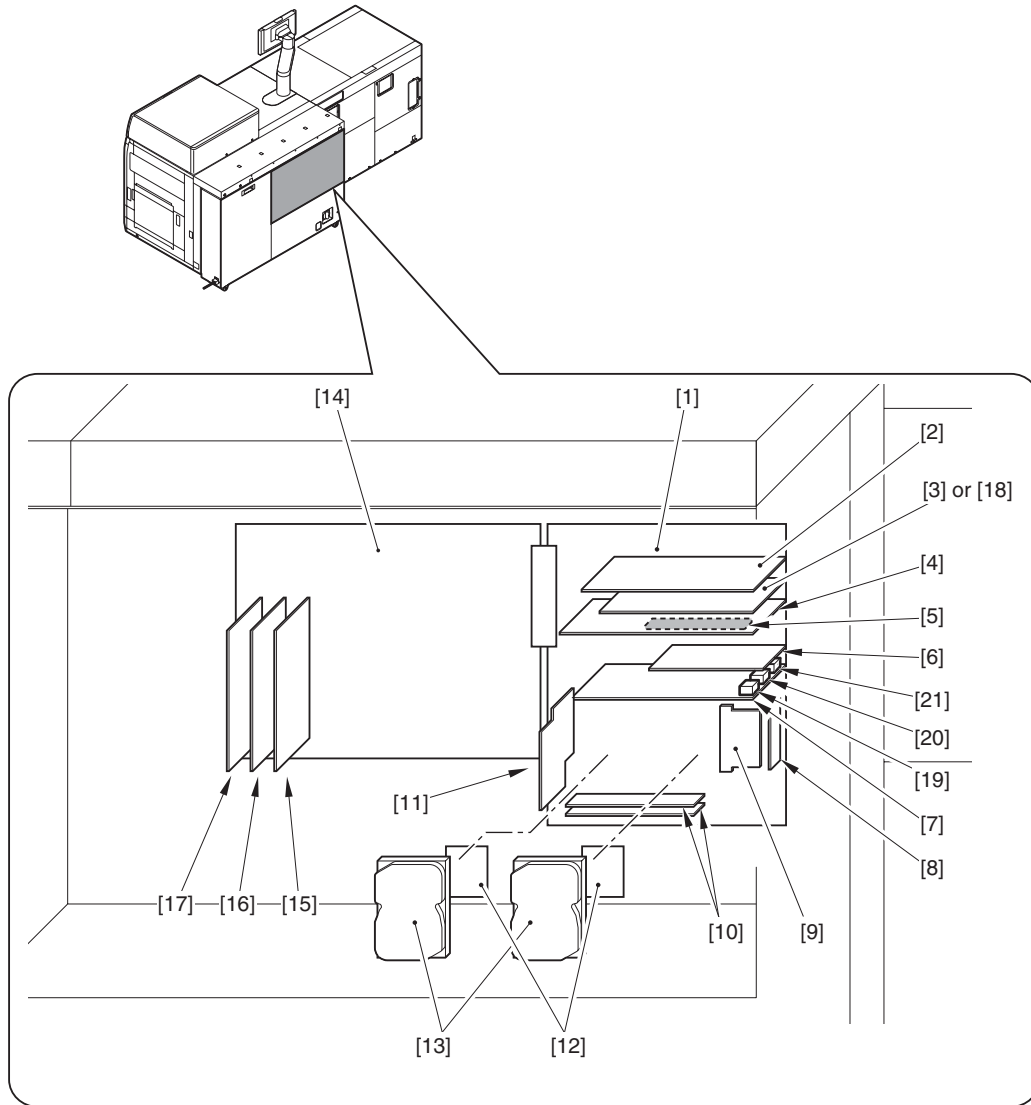
*: Optional

** : Only when PDL to Box

***: Only when Scan to Box

MEMO:

Drum-to-drum delay memory control for the color Y is performed in the main controller PCB assembly (MAIN-P).



F-4-1

4.1.2 Notes on the Hard Disk

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

This machine has 2 hard disks to realize high-speed data transfer by striping (*1). Although striping is defined as RAID-0 (*2), it does not allow data redundancy. Therefore, if either of the hard disks crashes, the data cannot be recovered.

*1: Striping means a set of data is divided and written onto 2 or more hard disks simultaneously.

*2: RAID-0 is a technology that allows the multiple numbers of hard disks to be managed as if they were a single hard disk.

RAID = Redundant Arrays of Inexpensive Disks

Based on its speed capacity and security level, it is classified into 7 levels, from RAID-0 to RAID-6.



Notes on Services for Hard Disks

Be sure to replace the two hard disks at the same time upon hard disk replacement. We do not guarantee the operation if only one hard disk is replaced. In case of attaching the encryption boards (option), be sure to replace the two hard disks along with the two encryption boards at the same time.

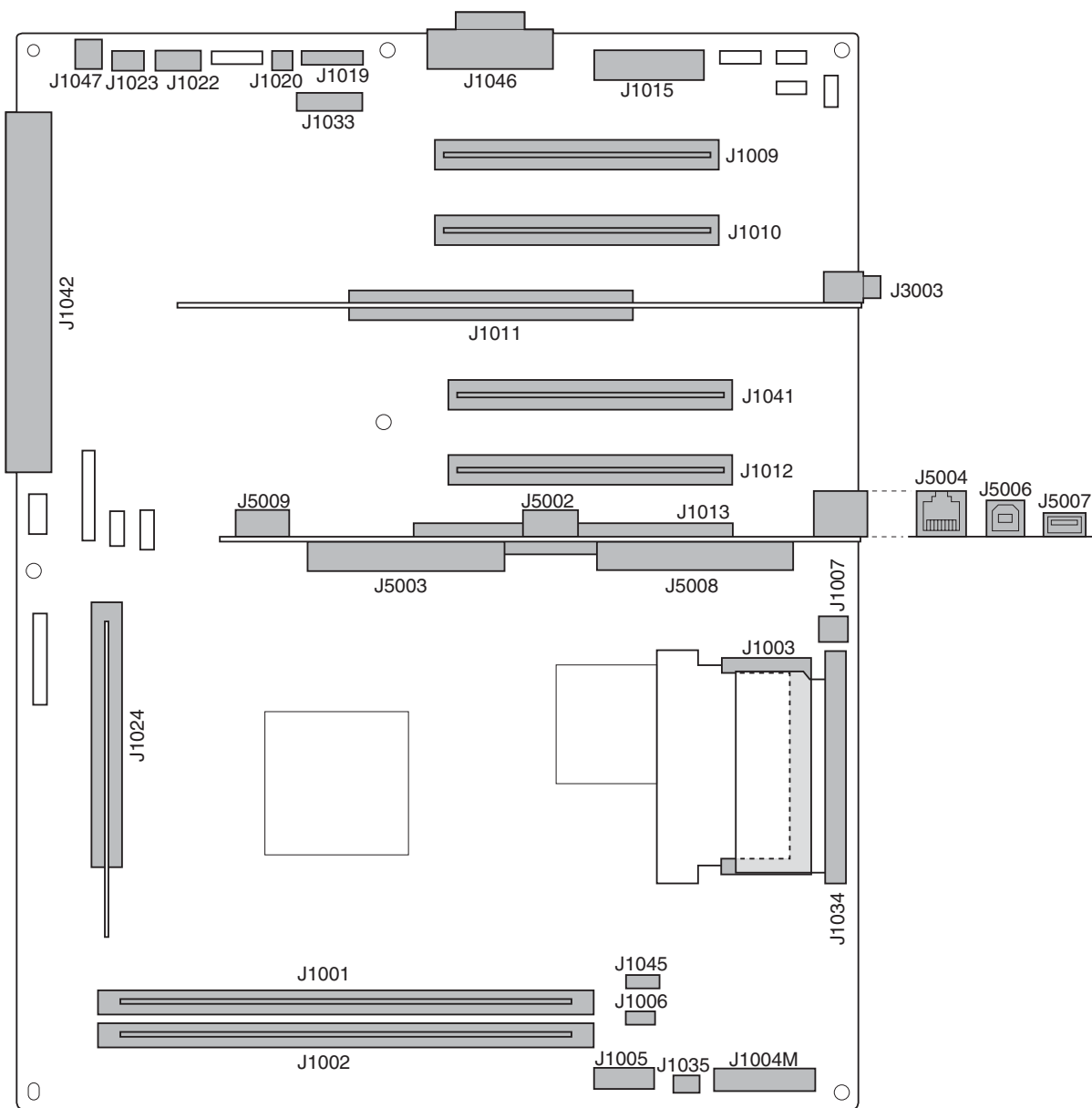
- Since the system software is divided and stored onto 2 hard disks via striping, this machine cannot be activated with only one of the 2 hard disks connected.

- Do not use the store-bought hard disks otherwise we do not guarantee the operation. Be sure to use the Service Parts upon replacement.

4.2 Construction of the Electrical Circuitry

4.2.1 Main Controller PCB (MAIN-M)

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000



Jack No.	Function	Jack No.	Function
J1001	DDR-SDRAM slot 0	J1024	RB-A PCB
J1002	DDR-SDRAM slot 1	J1033	Coin vendor (serial communication)
J1003	SRAM PCB assembly (SRAM-RTC-A) slot	J1034	Boot ROM slot
J1004M	Power supply connector (non-all-night 13V / 12V / 5V)	J1035	Power supply control connector
J1005	Power supply connector (non-all-night 3.3V)	J1041	PCI expansion board slot 0
J1006	Power supply connector	J1042	Main controller PCB (MAIN-P) connector
J1007	Controller cooling fan 1 control connector	J1045	Shutdown PCB connector
J1009	RO-B PCB slot	J1046	Control panel connector
J1010	O-B PCB slot	J1047	Not used
J1011	S-B PCB slot	J3003	Reader communication I / F connector
J1012	PCI expansion board slot 1	J5002	HDD-1 power supply connector (non-all-night 12V / 5V)
J1013	LAN-bar-B PCB assembly	J5003	HDD-2 connector
J1015	Not used	J5004	Ethernet network I / F connector
J1019	Coin vendor (IPC communication) connector	J5006	USB host 2.0 I / F connector
J1020	Administration key connector	J5007	USB device 2.0 I / F connector
J1022	ASSISST / CC-X connector	J5008	HDD-1 connector
J1023	Control card (CC-V) connector*1	J5009	HDD-2 power supply connector (non-all-night 12V / 5V)

*1:

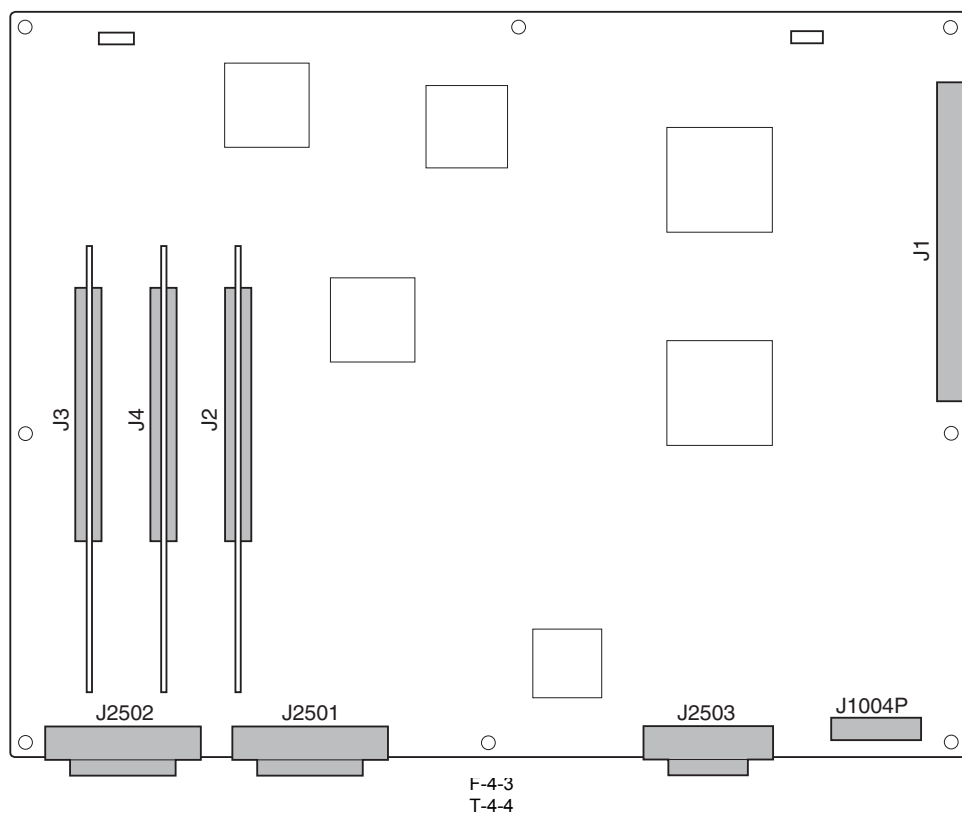
Technically this connection is possible although it is not supported and there is no guarantee of proper operation.

MEMO:

Connectors not listed in this table are for checking / debugging or not in use.

4.2.2 Main Controller PCB (MAIN-P)

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000



Jack No.	Function
J1	Main controller PCB (MAIN-M) connector
J2	DRM (256) assembly connector
J3	DRM (512) assembly connector
J4	DRM (512) assembly connector
J1004P	Power supply connector (non-all-night 13V)
J2501	Printer communication I / F connector (for Y / M color data transfer)
J2502	Printer communication I / F connector (for C / Bk color data transfer)
J2503	Printer communication I / F connector (for communication control)

MEMO:

Connectors not listed in this table are for checking / debugging or not in use.

4.3 Start-Up Sequence

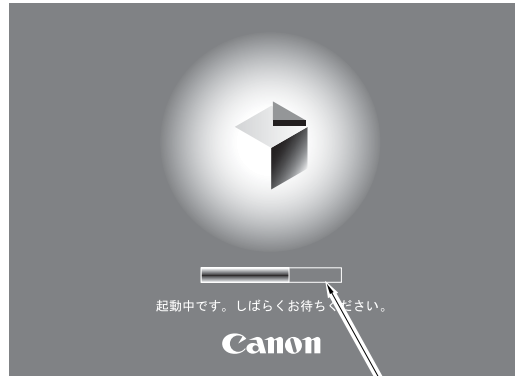
4.3.1 Overview

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

The system software that controls the operation of this machine is stored in 2 hard disks.

When the main power supply is turned on, the CPU on the main controller PCB assembly (MAIN-M), as programmed in the BOOT ROM boot program, loads the system software from the hard disks onto the work memory (DDR=SDRAM) on the main controller PCB assembly (MAIN-M).

When CPU memory and such are being formatted and when the system software is being loaded onto the CPU, the screen shown below will be displayed in the control panel. The status during the boot process can be confirmed by referring to the progress bar.



F-4-4

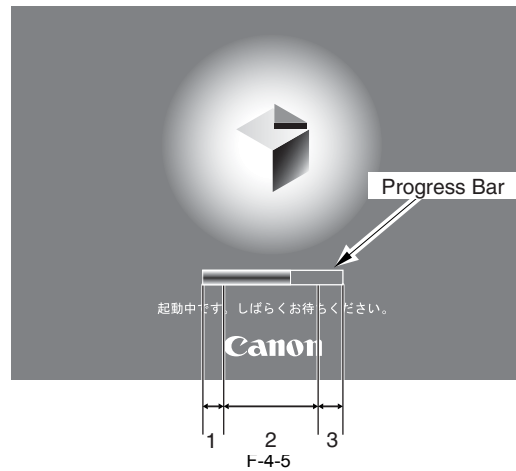
Progress Bar



Do not turn off the main power while the progress bar is displayed as during this time the hard disks are being accessed.

4.3.2 Activation Sequence

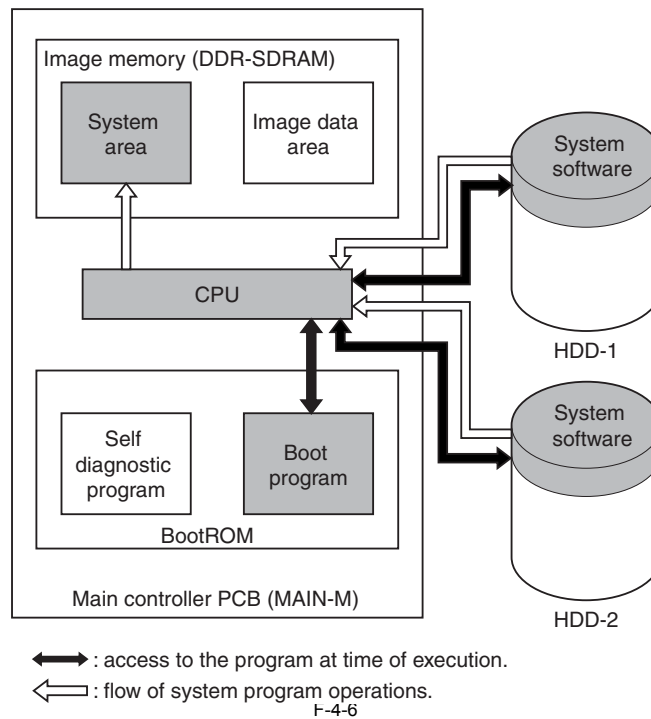
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000



- Zone 1 (Boot program area)

When the main power switch is turned ON, the CPU on the main controller PCB assembly (MAIN-M) will execute the Boot program. The image memory (DDR-SDRAM) and the hard disks will be checked for their status, and if any trouble is detected, a corresponding error code will be displayed. If everything is working properly, the system software will be loaded from the hard disks onto the DDR-SDRAM.

-When Executing the Boot Program



- Zone 2 (Control program area 1)

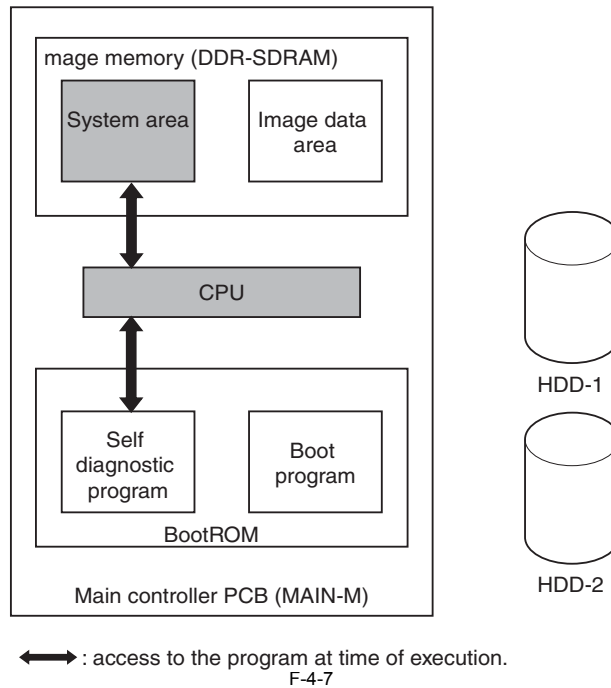
- 1) Each hardware device on the main controller PCB assembly will be checked upon and formatted.
- 2) When the shutdown process was not properly performed last time, system files will be restored as necessary. In this case, the time it takes to activate the machine will be longer than usual.

- 3) Each program module will be formatted.

- Zone 3 (Control program area 2)

- 1) Each software module will be formatted and the configuration of the printer / reader (optional) will be checked upon.
 - 2) When the printer / reader (optional) is detected without a problem, the activation sequence will be completed. When the activation sequence is finished without a problem, the machine will be idle ready to receive jobs.
(An operational screen will be displayed on the control panel, and the start key LED turns green from red.)
- When there is a problem finding the printer / reader (optional), E732 / E733 will be displayed.

-When Executing the Control Program



MEMO:

When the reader is detected at the time of power-on immediately after the reader is installed, a message prompting you to shut down the machine is displayed. Reactivation of the machine is required to execute the configuration change from the printer model to the copier model. After reactivation is performed, the machine operates as a copier model. (The reader becomes unusable.)
Such configuration change from the printer model to the copier model is internally treated as an error, and "E732-9999" is displayed in the error history in the service mode (COPIER > DISPLAY > ERR).

4.4 Actions when HDD Error

4.4.1 Treatment for E602

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000



Points to Note When Replacing the Hard Disk

Be sure to replace the both 2 hard disks at the same time upon hard disk replacement. We do not guarantee the operation if only 1 hard disk is replaced. In case of attaching the encryption boards (option), be sure to replace the 2 hard disks along with the 2 encryption boards at the same time.

<E602-XXYY>

XX="00"

T-4-5

XX	YY	Contents	Measures
00	01	(*1) HDD is not recognized. The activation partition (BOOTDEV) cannot be found at the activation.	1. Turn off the power and check the connection of the HDD cable. Then, turn on the power again. 2. After turning on the power, put your ear to the HDD or touch the HDD with your finger to check whether or not the internal disk is rotating. 3. Replace the HDD. (Reinstall the system after replacement.) 4. Replace the main controller PCB (MAIN-M).
	02	The system for the main CPU does not exist.	1. Activate the machine in the safe mode. Perform all formatting and system reinstallation work by SST and turn the power OFF/ON. 2. Replace the HDD. (Reinstall the system after replacement.)
	03	Writing interruption is detected in BootDevice.	Actions to be taken vary depending on the display of error codes. <When an error code is displayed in black and white> 1. After turning off the power, turn on the power while pressing the 1+9 keys. This operation automatically starts the writing interruption sector recovery process. (The screen is displayed in black at this time.) During the writing interruption sector recovery process, the progress status is displayed in the screen. When the screen is displayed all in white, the process is completed. After the process is completed, turn the power OFF/ON. 2. Activate the machine in the safe mode. Perform all formatting and system reinstallation work by SST and turn the power OFF/ON. 3. Replace the HDD. (Reinstall the system after replacement.) <When a normal error code (a wrench mark) is displayed> 1. Set CHK-TYPE=0. Perform all formatting and system reinstallation work by SST and turn the power OFF/ON. 2. Activate the machine in the safe mode. Perform all formatting and system reinstallation work by SST and turn the power OFF/ON. 3. Replace the HDD. (Reinstall the system after replacement.)
	06	The system for sub CPU does not exist.	1. Activate the machine in the safe mode. Perform all formatting and system reinstallation work by SST and turn the power OFF/ON. 2. Replace the HDD. (Reinstall the system after replacement.)
	07	The ICC profile (color resource file) does not exist.	1. Activate the machine in the safe mode. Perform all formatting and system reinstallation work by SST and turn the power OFF/ON. 2. Replace the HDD. (Reinstall the system after replacement.)
	12	The file on the HDD referred to by a Web browser is damaged or eliminated.	1. Reinstall the web browser contents. 2. Replace the HDD. (Reinstall the system after replacement.)
	13	The patch data for main scanning shading does not exist.	1. Reinstall the patch data for main scanning shading by SST. 2. Replace the HDD. (Reinstall the system after replacement.)
	14	(*2) HDD is not recognized. The activation partition (BOOTDEV) cannot be found at the activation.	1. Turn off the power and check the connection of the HDD cable. Then, turn on the power again. 2. After turning on the power, put your ear to the HDD or touch the HDD with your finger to check whether or not the internal disk is rotating. 3. Replace the HDD. (Reinstall the system after replacement.) 4. Replace the main controller PCB (MAIN-M).

*1: In case of detecting an error of HDD that is located at the left side.

*2: In case of detecting an error of HDD that is located at the right side.



In case of E602-0001 and E602-0014, be sure to replace the both 2 hard disks at the same time although it is possible to specify which hard disk makes an error. Replacing only 1 hard disk may cause fault such as decrease in performance.

<E602-XXYY>

XX= "01 to 13, FF"

T-4-6

XX				YY							
XX	CHK-TYPE	Partition	Contents	Error occurred at the time of activation			Error occurred during normal operation				
				3	5	00,01,02,04	11,21	13,25	10,12,14,22,23,24		
				Measures			Measures				
1	1	FSTDEV	Compressed image data (BOX, etc.)	*1	*5	*9	*10	*11	*12		
2		IMG_MNG	Document management table, profile								
3		FSTCDEV	Job archiving (chasing)								
4		THUMDEV	Thumbnail								
5	2	APL_GEN	Universal data								
6		TMP_GEN	Universal data (temporary file)								
7		TMP_FAX	Not used								
8		TMP_PSS	For PDL spool (temporary file)								
9	3	PDLDEV	PDL related file (font, registration form, color correction information file for PDL function)								
10	4	BOOTDEV	Firmware (System/MEAP/key/certificate/PDL dictionary/RUI contents/voice dictionary)							*3	*8
11	5	APL_MEAP	MEAP application							*1	*5
12	6	APL_SEND	Address book, filter							*2	*5
13	7	APL_KEEP	MEAP storage data							*3	*8
14	8	APL_LOG	System log							*1	*5
FF	0	Cannot be specified	HDD entire fault sector check and recovery	*4	*7						

T-4-7

YY	Contents	Measures
*1	3 Writing interrupted (at activation)	1. Set a relevant partition number to CHK-TYPE, execute HD-CHECK, and turn the power OFF/ON. 2. Set a relevant partition number to CHK-TYPE, execute HD-CLEAR, and turn the power OFF/ON.
*2		1. Request a user to download the address book data using the remote UI. 2. Set a relevant partition number to CHK-TYPE, execute HD-CLEAR, and turn the power OFF/ON. 3. Enter the download mode, perform all formatting and system reinstallation work by SST, and turn the power OFF/ON.
*3		Recovery in the Boot partition can be performed only by using SST in the safe mode. 1. Set CHK-TYPE=0, execute HD-CHECK, and turn the power OFF/ON. 2. Enter the download mode, perform all formatting and system reinstallation work by SST, and turn the power OFF/ON.
*4		1. Set CHK-TYPE=0, execute HD-CHECK, and turn the power OFF/ON. 2. Execute HD-CLEAR by setting CHK-TYPE=1, 2, 3, 5, and turn the power OFF/ON.
*5	5 File system error	1. Set a relevant partition number to CHK-TYPE, execute HD-CLEAR, and turn the power OFF/ON. 2. After replacing the HDD, reinstall the system.
*6		HD-CLEAR cannot be performed from the service mode. (To prevent information of this partition (address book, filter information, etc.) from being deleted by mistake.) 1. Request a user to download the address book data using the remote UI. 2. Enter the download mode from the service mode, perform all formatting and system reinstallation work by SST, and turn the power OFF/ON.
*7		1. Execute HD-CLEAR by setting CHK-TYPE=1, 2, 3, 5, and turn the power OFF/ON. 2. After replacing the HDD, reinstall the system.
*8		Recovery in the Boot partition can be performed only by using SST in the safe mode. 1. Activate the machine in the safe mode, perform all formatting and system reinstallation work by SST, and turn the power OFF/ON. 2. After replacing the HDD, reinstall the system.
*9	00 01 02 04 HDD contact failure, or system error	1. Check the connection of the communication cable of the HDD and the power cable. 2. Activate the machine in the safe mode, perform all formatting and system reinstallation work by SST, and turn the power OFF/ON. 3. After replacing the HDD, reinstall the system.
*10	11 21 HDD contact failure, etc.	1. Check the connection of the communication cable of the HDD and the power cable. 2. After replacing the HDD, reinstall the system.

	YY	Contents	Measures
*11	13 25	Writing interrupted	There is a high possibility that the document data such as BOX, etc. on the HDD may be damaged. 1. Set a relevant partition number to CHK-TYPE, execute HD-CHECK, and turn the power OFF/ON. 2. Set a relevant partition number to CHK-TYPE, execute HD-CLEAR, and turn the power OFF/ON. (In the case of BOOTDEV or APL_SEND, perform formatting and system reinstallation work by SST.) 3. After replacing the HDD, reinstall the system.
*12	10 12 14 22 23 24	System error, or packet data error	1. Activate the machine in the safe mode, perform all formatting and system reinstallation work by SST, and turn the power OFF/ON. 2. After replacing the HDD, reinstall the system.

<E602-XXYY>

XX="20"

T-4-8

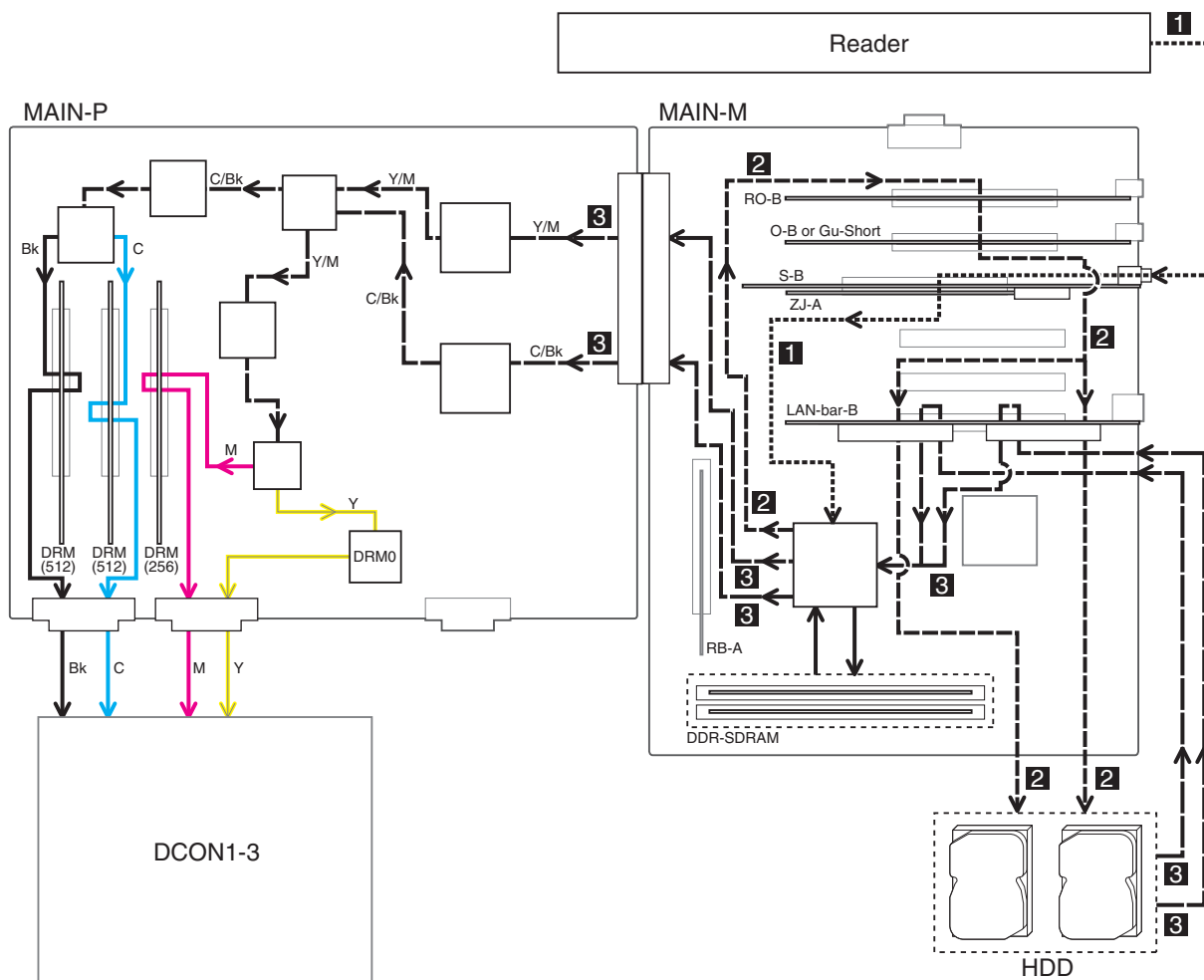
XX	YY	Contents	Measures
20	00	Authentication error between the main unit and encryption board	1. Remove and insert the encryption board, and turn the power OFF/ON. 2. After clearing the encryption key (*), perform HDD formatting and system reinstallation work by SST.
	01	The encryption board cannot be recognized.	1. After clearing the encryption key (*), perform HDD formatting and system reinstallation work by SST.
	02	Failure in the encryption board / HDD	1. Remove and insert the encryption board, and turn the power OFF/ON. 2. After clearing the encryption key (*), perform HDD formatting and system reinstallation work by SST. 3. After replacing the encryption board, perform HDD formatting and system reinstallation work by SST. 4. After replacing the HDD, perform HDD formatting and system reinstallation work by SST. 5. Replace the LAN-bar-B PCB. 6. Replace the main controller PCB (MAIN-M).

*: Clearing of the encryption key can be performed from the service mode "COPIER>FUNCTION>CLEAR>KEY-CLR (Level 2)". After this operation, the HDD becomes unformatted, and if the machine is activated in this condition, E602-0001 is displayed. Therefore, it is necessary to perform HDD formatting and system reinstallation work by SST.

4.5 Flow of Image Data

4.5.1 At making copy

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000



F-4-8

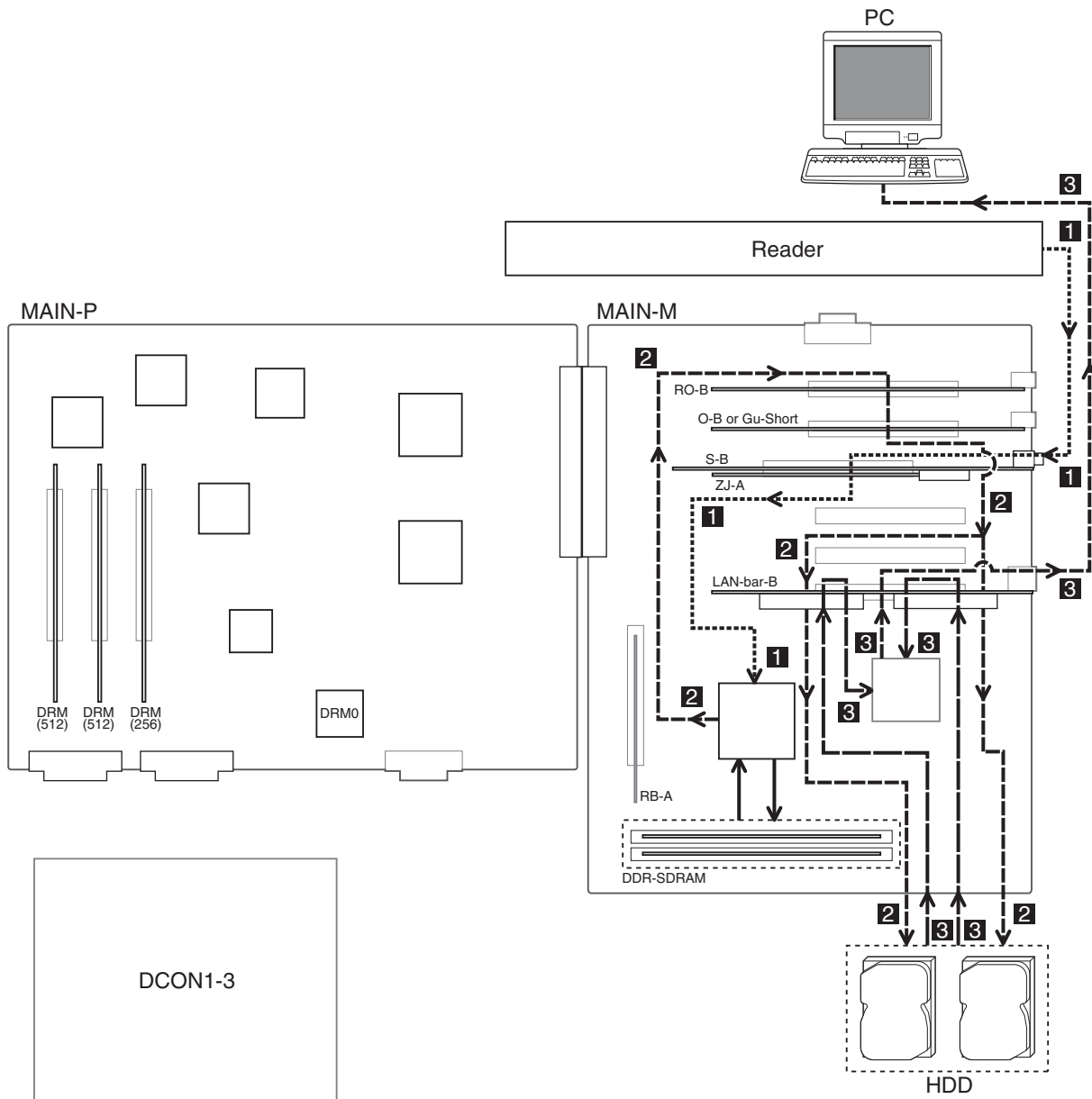
1. The image data scanned from the reader is processed at the S-B PCB and the ZJ-A PCB.
2. The image data is processed for merge/rotation processing and resolution conversion at the RO-B PCB and stored at the hard disk via LAN-bar-B PCB.
3. The image data read from the hard disk is processed for screen/smoothing process and output to the DC controller PCB 1-3 via the DRM0 chip and DRM (256) / DRM (512) PCBs.

MEMO:

- DDR-SDRAM is used as CPU work area inside the main controller PCB (MAIN-M), and is frequently written and read.

4.5.2 At SEND execution

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000



F-4-9

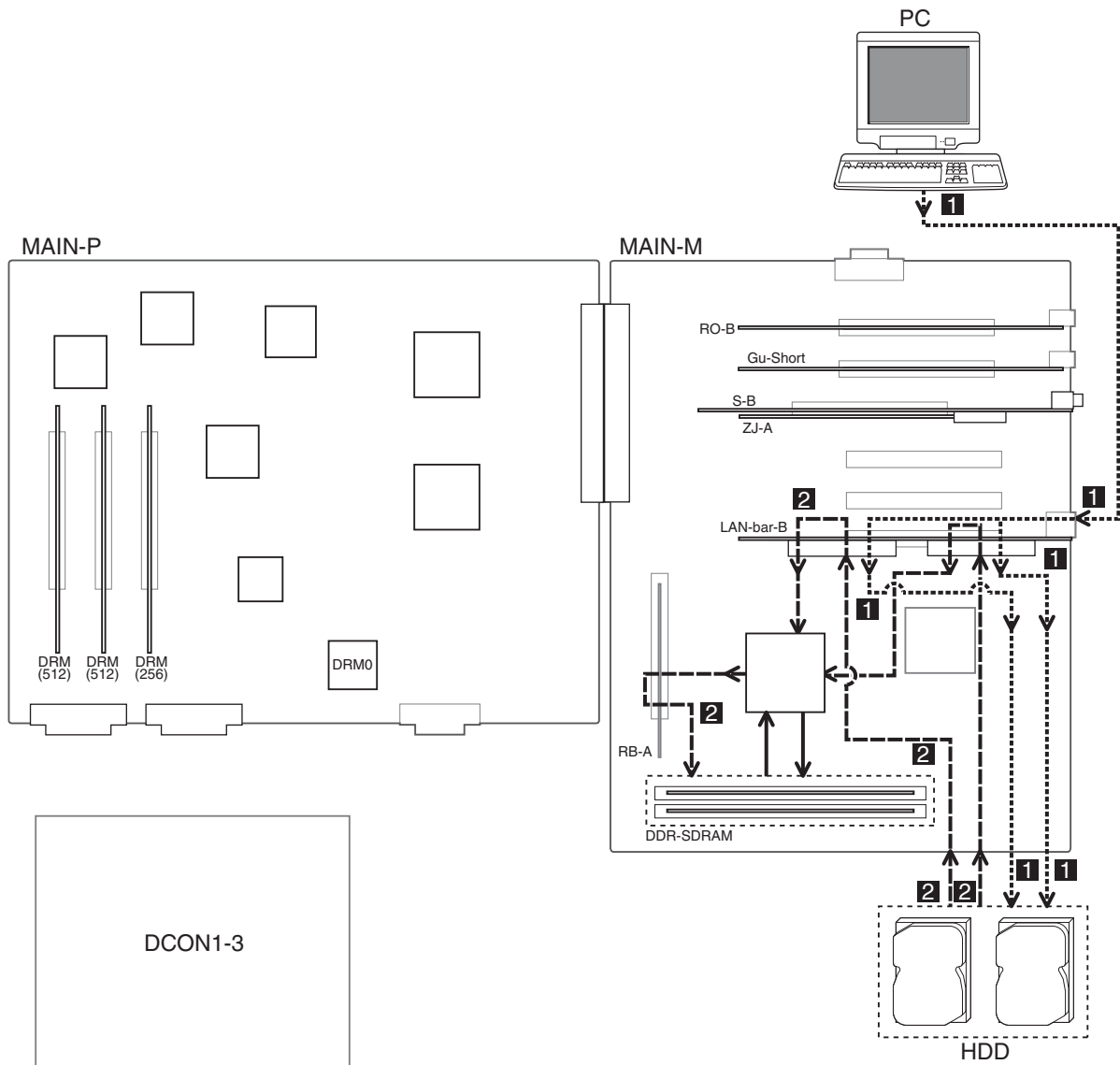
1. The image data scanned from the reader is processed at the S-B PCB and the ZJ-A PCB.
2. The image data is processed for merge/rotation processing and resolution conversion at the RO-B PCB and stored at the hard disk via LAN-bar-B PCB.
3. The image data read from the hard disk is sent to the host PC on Ethernet network via LAN port on LAN-bar-B PCB.

MEMO:

- DDR-SDRAM is used as CPU work area inside the main controller PCB (MAIN-M), and is frequently written and read.

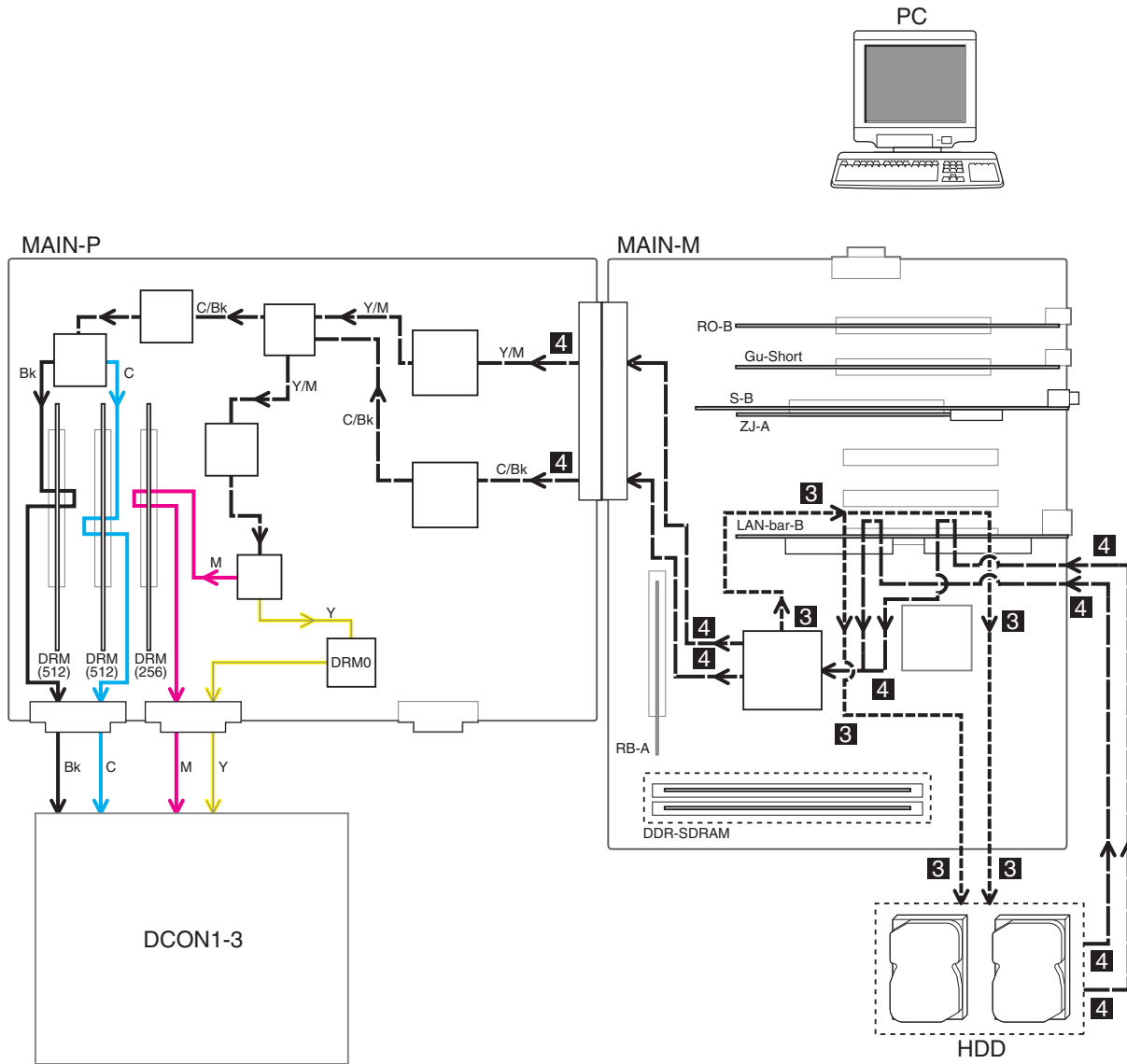
4.5.3 At making PDL prints

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000



F-4-10

1. The PDL data input from the host PC via LAN cable is input to the LAN control area on main controller PCB (MAIN-M) and stored at the hard disk.
2. The PDL data (1200 dpi) read from the hard disk is rasterized at the main controller PCB (MAIN-M), and then, its resolution is converted (from 1200 dpi to 600dpi).



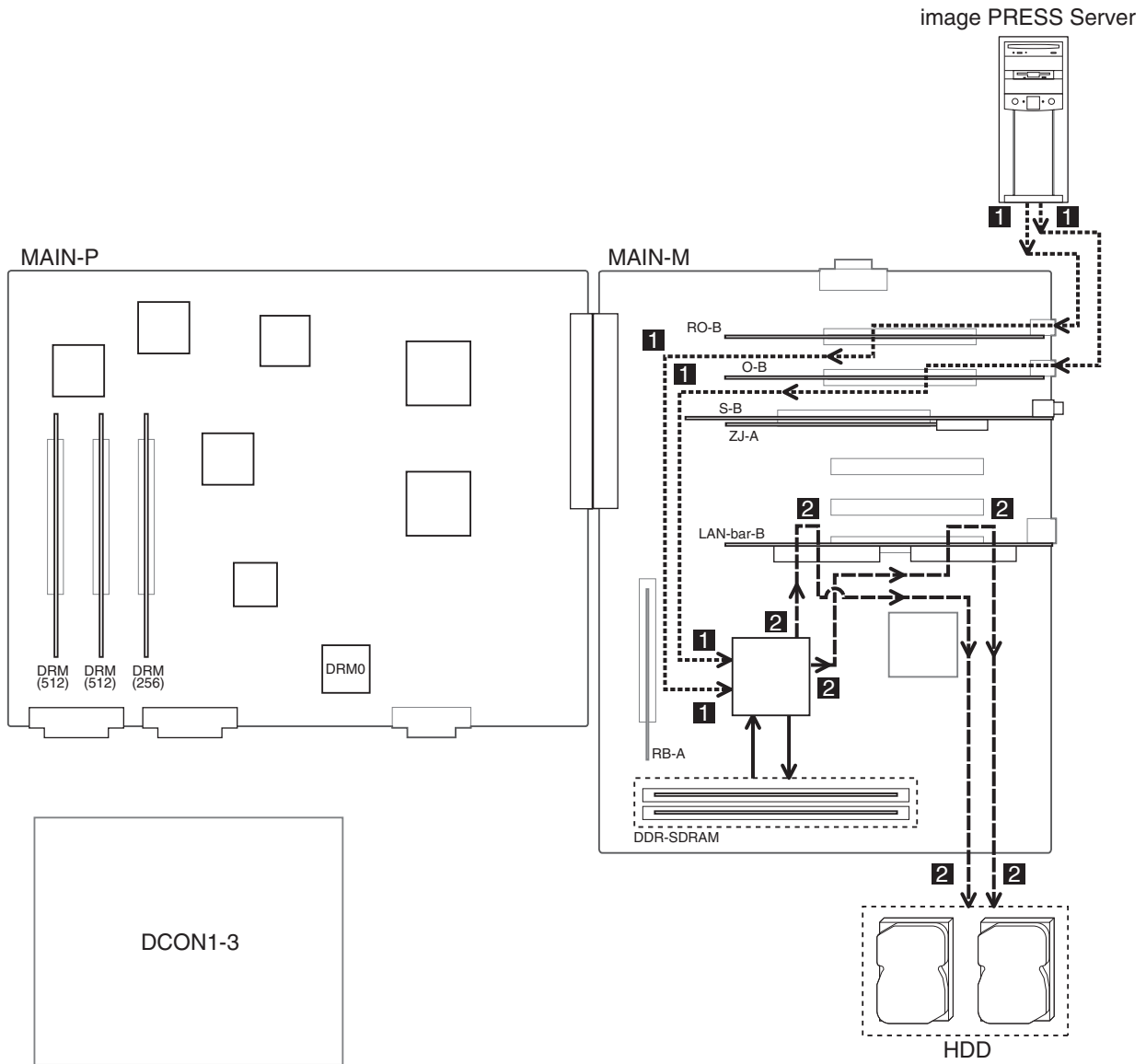
F-4-11

3. The rasterized image data (600dpi) is again stored at the hard disk.
4. The image data read from the hard disk is processed for screen/smoothing process and resolution conversion from 600dpi to 1200dpi, and then, is output to the DC controller PCB 1-3 via DRM0 chip and DRM (256) / DRM (512) PCBs.

MEMO:
 - DDR-SDRAM is used as CPU work area inside the main controller PCB (MAIN-M), and is frequently written and read.

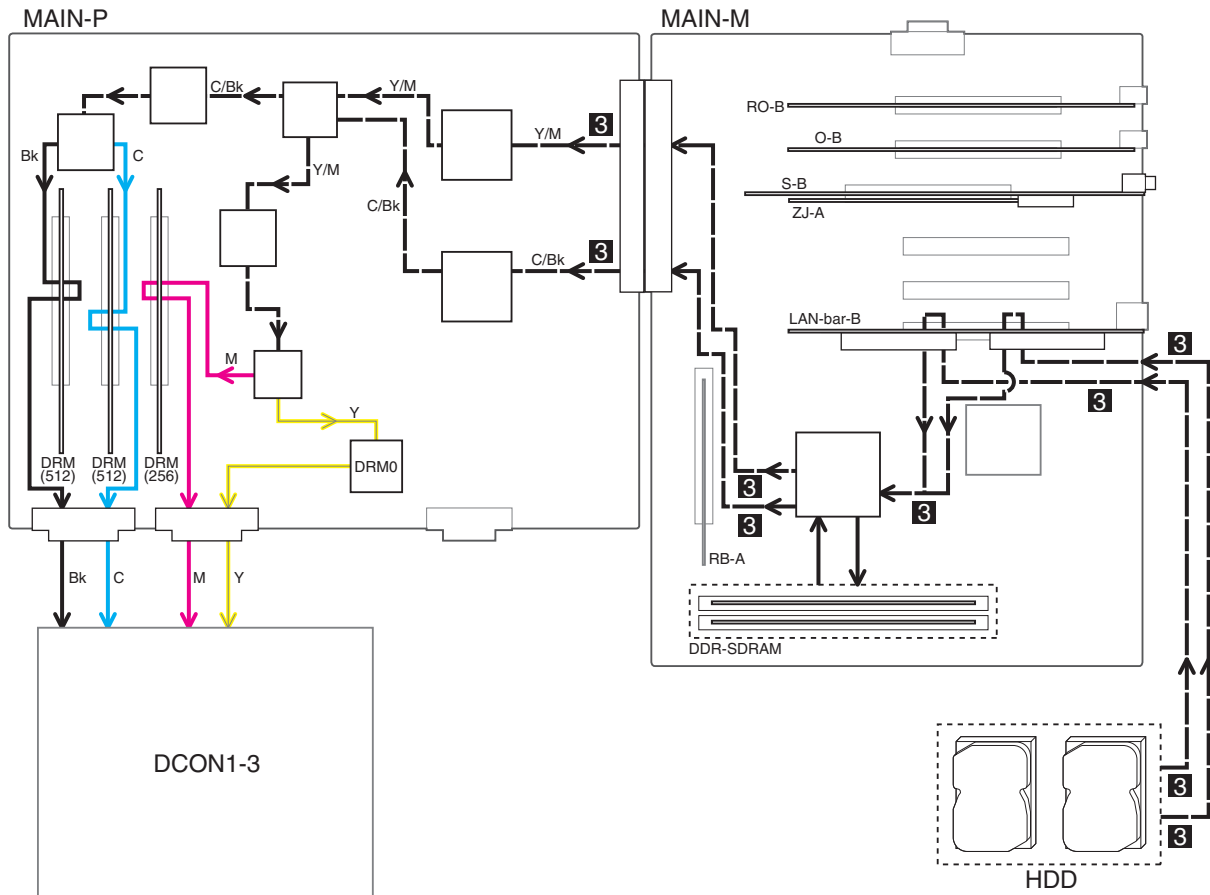
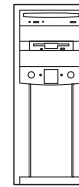
4.5.4 At making prints from the external controller (imagePRESS server)

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000



F-4-12

1. For the image data from imagePRESS server, one page is divided into two blocks (left and right), and it is input to the RO-B PCB and the O-B PCB via the channel link cable.
2. The image data is processed for merge/rotation processing and resolution conversion at the RO-B PCB, and stored at the hard disk via LAN-bar-B PCB.



F-4-13

3. The image data read from the hard disk is processed for screen/smoothing process, and is output to the DC controller PCB 1-3 via DRM0 chip and DRM (256) / DRM (512) PCBs.

MEMO:

- DDR-SDRAM is used as CPU work area inside the main controller PCB (MAIN-M), and is frequently written and read.
- When the imagePRESS server is connected, the RB-A PCB is not necessary.

4.6 Parts Replacement Procedure

4.6.1 Hard Disk

4.6.1.1 Before Removing the Hard Disk

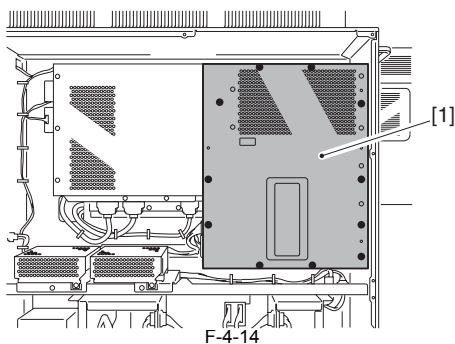
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- 1) Remove the power unit station rear cover 1

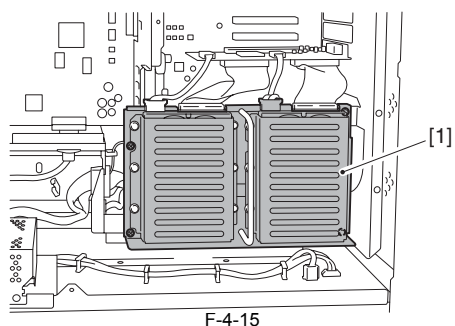
4.6.1.2 Removing the Hard Disk

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- 2) Remove the main controller cover 2 [1].



- 3) Remove the hard disk [1].



4.6.2 Main Controller Box

4.6.2.1 Before Removing the Main Controller Box

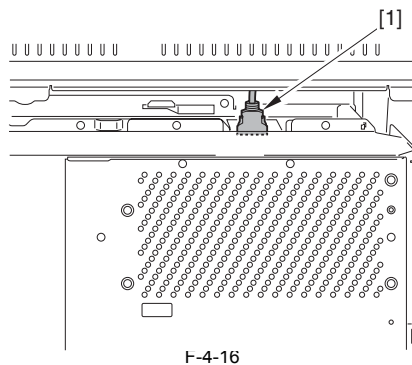
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- 1) Remove the power unit station rear cover 1.

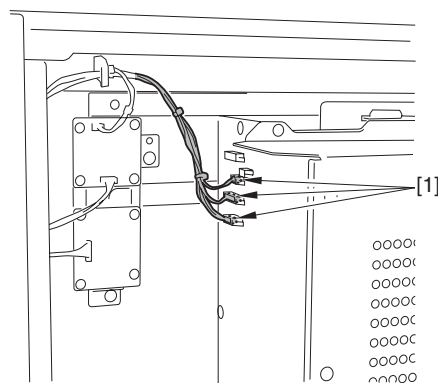
4.6.2.2 Removing the Main Controller Box

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

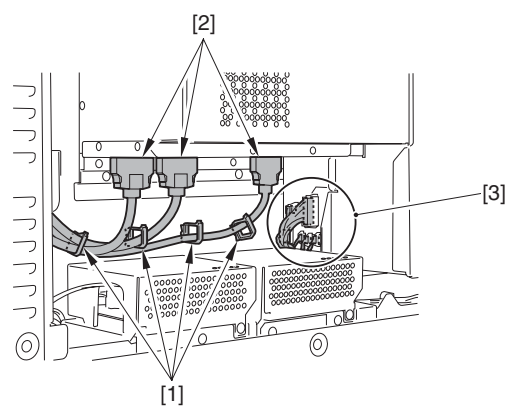
- 1) Disconnect the connector [1].



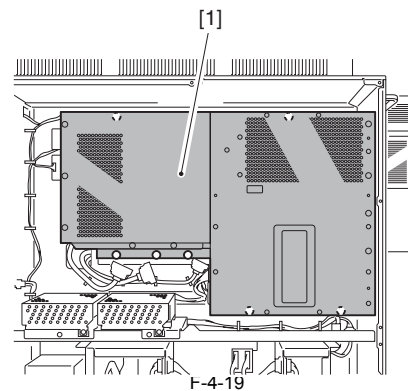
- 2) Disconnect the 3 connectors [1].



- 3) Remove the 4 wire saddles [1] and disconnect the 3 communication cables [2] and the 6 connectors [3].



- 4) Remove the main controller box [1].
- 7 screws

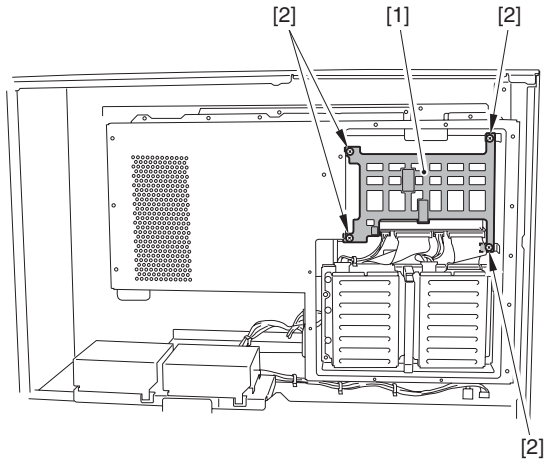


4.6.3 Main Controller PCB

4.6.3.1 Before Removing the Main Controller PCB (MAIN-M)

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- 1) Remove the power unit station rear cover 1.
- 2) Remove the main controller box.
- 3) Remove the main controller PCB (MAIN-P).
- 4) Detach the controller PCB guide [1].
- 4 screws [2]



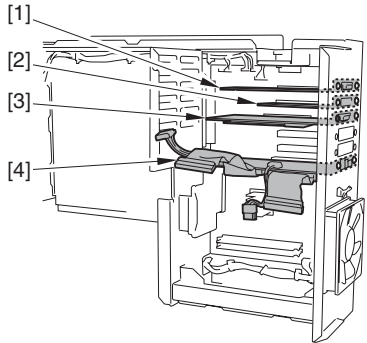
F-4-20

5) Remove the hard disk.

4.6.3.2 Removing the Main Controller PCB (MAIN-M)

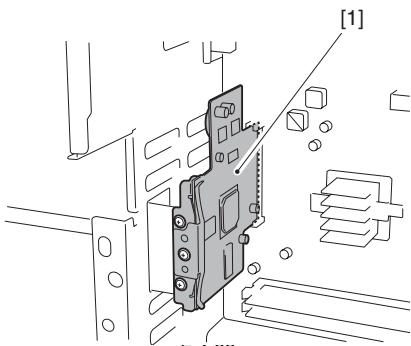
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

1) Remove the RO-B PCB [1], Gu-Short PCB [2], S-B PCB [3] and LAN-bar-B PCB [4].



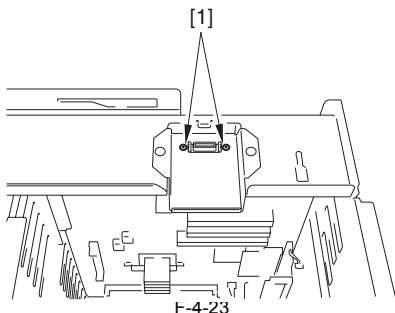
F-4-21

2) Remove the RB-A PCB [1].



F-4-22

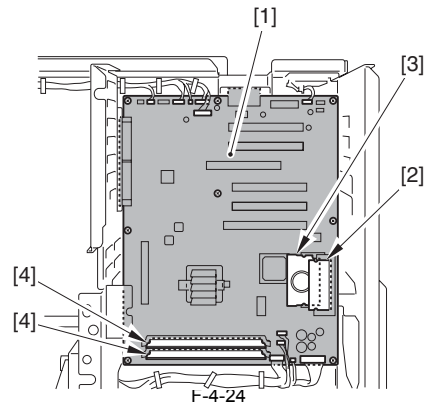
3) Remove the 2 screws [1].



F-4-23

4) Remove the main controller PCB (MAIN-M) [1].
 - 1 BOOT ROM [2]
 - 1 SRAM PCB [3]

- 2 DDR-SDRAMs [4]

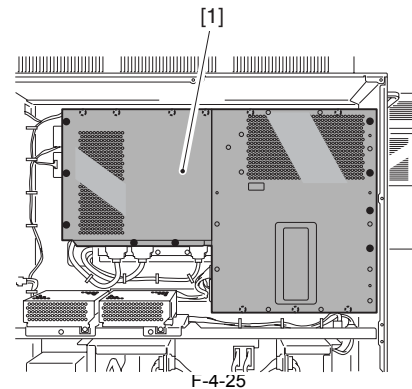


F-4-24

4.6.3.3 Before Removing the Main Controller PCB (MAIN-P).

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

1) Remove the power unit station rear cover 1.
 2) Remove main controller box
 3) Remove the main controller cover 1 [1].

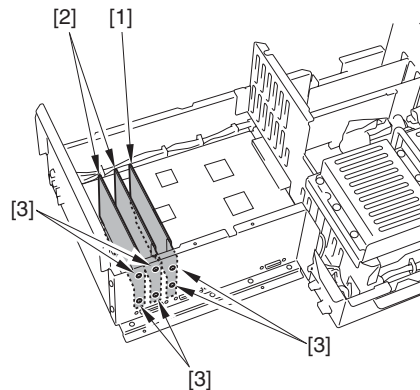


F-4-25

4.6.3.4 Removing the Main Controller PCB (MAIN-P).

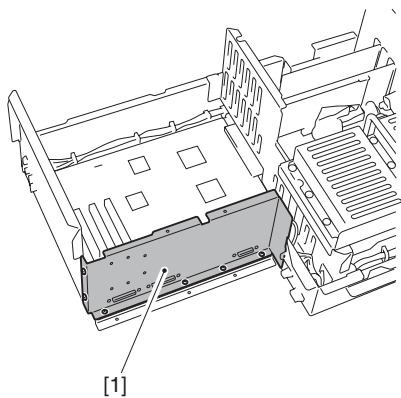
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

1) Remove the DRM (256) PCB and the 2 DRM (512) PCBs [2].
 - 6 screws [3]

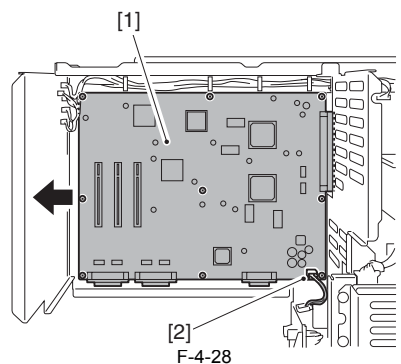


F-4-26

2) Detach the connector lower cover [1].
 - 7 screws



- 3) Move the main controller PCB (MAIN-P) [1] in the direction of the arrow.
 - 1 connector [2]
 - 9 screws



4.6.4 SRAM PCB

4.6.4.1 Before detaching the SRAM PCB

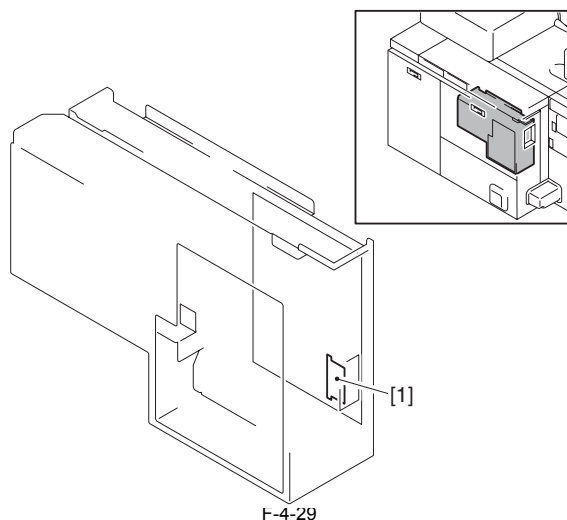
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- 1) Detach the power unit station rear cover 1.
- 2) Remove the hard disk.

4.6.4.2 Detaching the SRAM PCB

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- 1) Detach the SRAM PCB [1].



4.6.5 Boot ROM PCB

4.6.5.1 Before removing the BOOT ROM

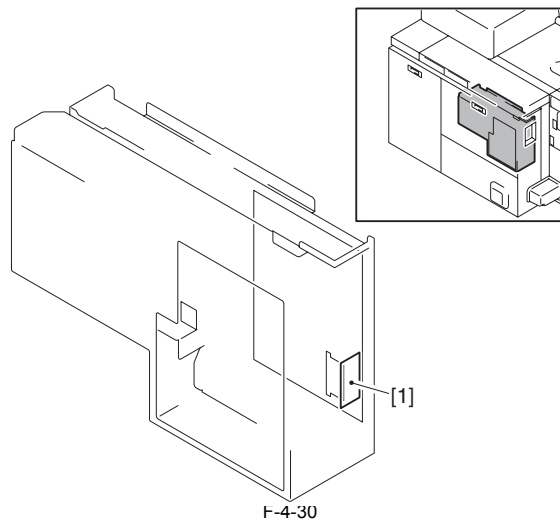
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- 1) Detach the power unit station rear cover 1.
- 2) Remove the hard disk.

4.6.5.2 Removing the BOOT ROM

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- 1) Remove the BOOT ROM [1].



4.6.6 Image Memory (SDRAM)

4.6.6.1 Before detaching the DDR-SDRAM PCB

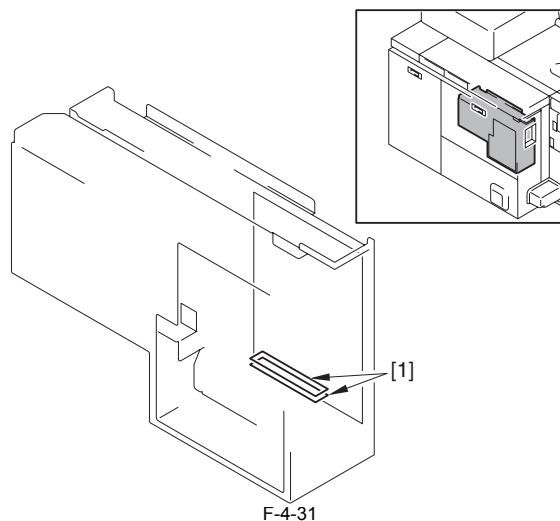
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- 1) Detach the power unit station rear cover 1.
- 2) Remove the hard disk.

4.6.6.2 Detaching the DDR-SDRAM PCB

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- 1) Detach the DDR-SDRAM PCB [1].

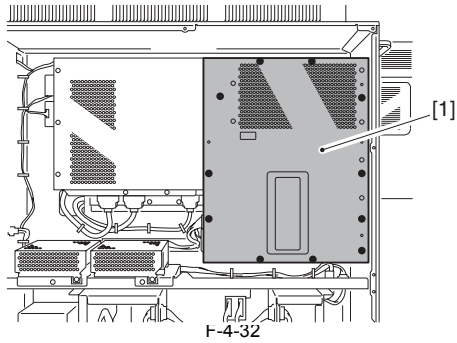


4.6.7 RO-B PCB

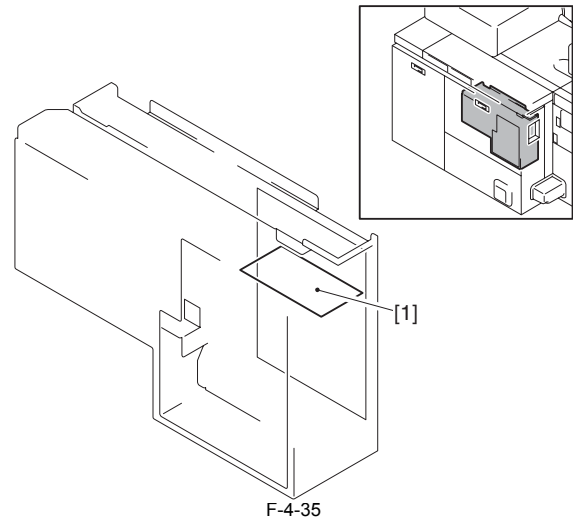
4.6.7.1 Detaching the RO-B PCB

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- 1) Detach the power unit station rear cover 1.
- 2) Detach the main controller cover 2 [1].



3) Detach the RO-B PCB [1].



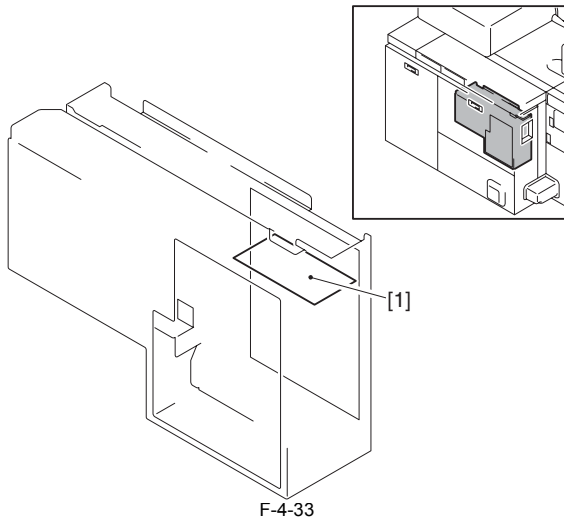
F-4-35

4.6.9 S-B PCB

4.6.9.1 Detaching the S-B PCB

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- 1) Detach the power unit station rear cover 1.
- 2) Detach the main controller cover 2 [1].



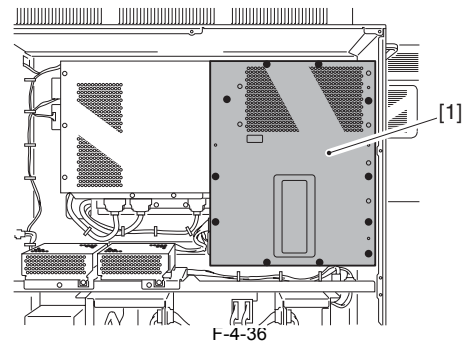
F-4-33

4.6.8 GU-Short PCB

4.6.8.1 Detaching the GU-Short PCB

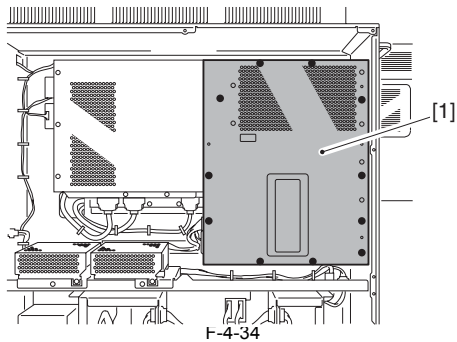
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- 1) Detach the power unit station rear cover 1.
- 2) Detach the main controller cover 2 [1].



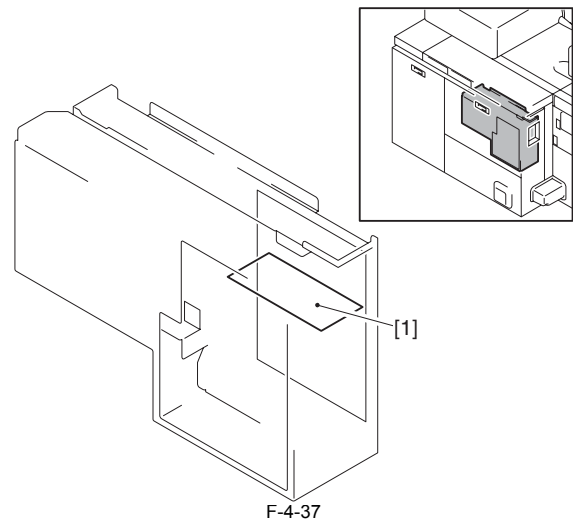
F-4-36

3) Detach the S-B PCB [1].



F-4-34

3) Detach the GU-Short PCB [1].



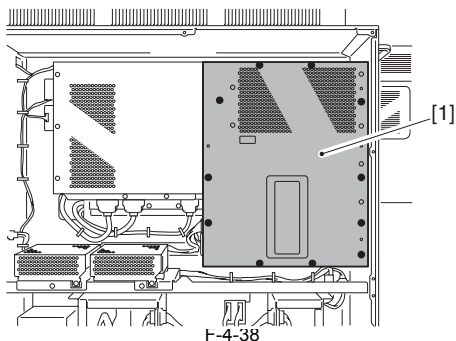
F-4-37

4.6.10 LAN-bar-B PCB

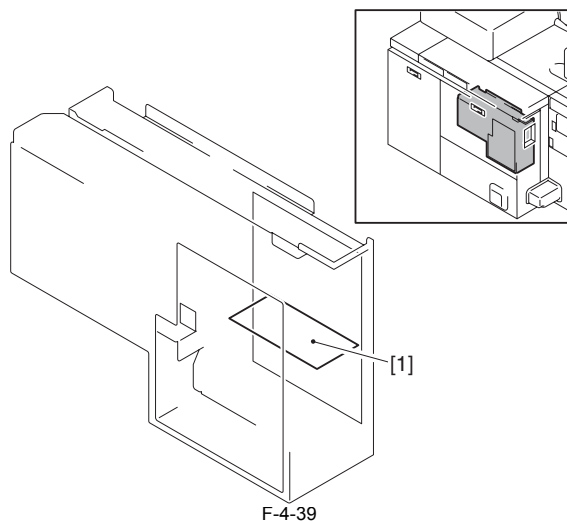
4.6.10.1 Detaching the LAN-bar-B PCB

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- 1) Detach the power unit station rear cover 1.
- 2) Detach the main controller cover 2 [1].



3) Detach the LAN-bar-B PCB [1].

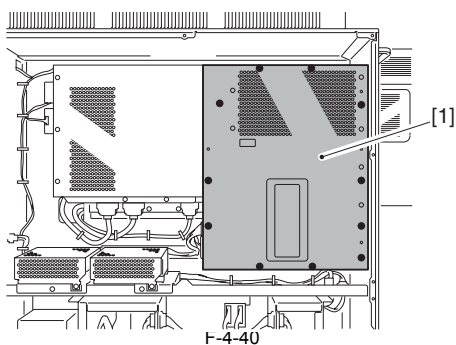


4.6.11 O-B PCB

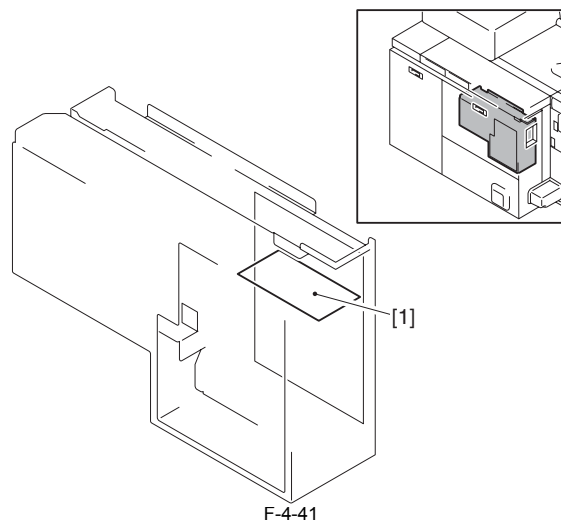
4.6.11.1 Removing O-B PCB

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- 1) Detach the power unit station rear cover 1.
- 2) Detach the main controller cover 2 [1].



3) Remove the O-B PCB [1].



4.6.12 RB-A PCB

4.6.12.1 Before detaching the RB-A PCB

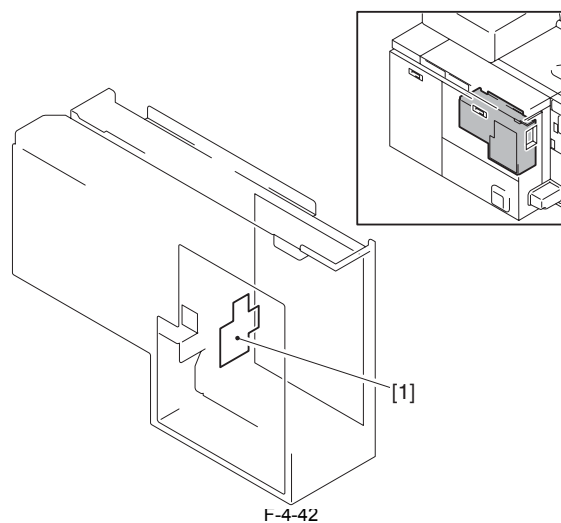
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- 1) Detach the power unit station rear cover 1.
- 2) Remove the hard disk.

4.6.12.2 Detaching the RB-A PCB

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- 1) Detach the RB-A PCB [1].

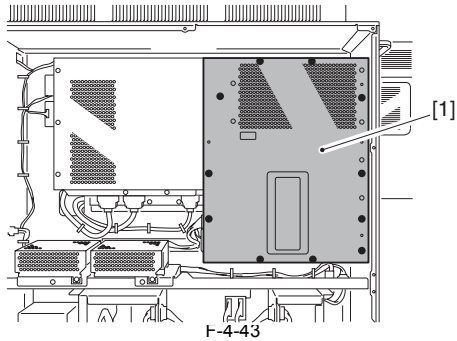


4.6.13 DRM PCB

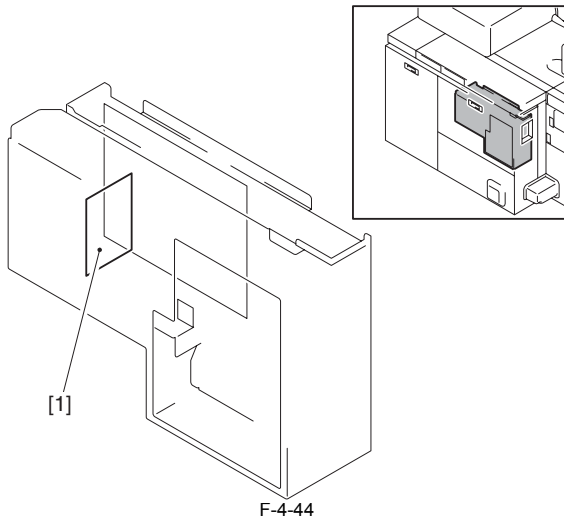
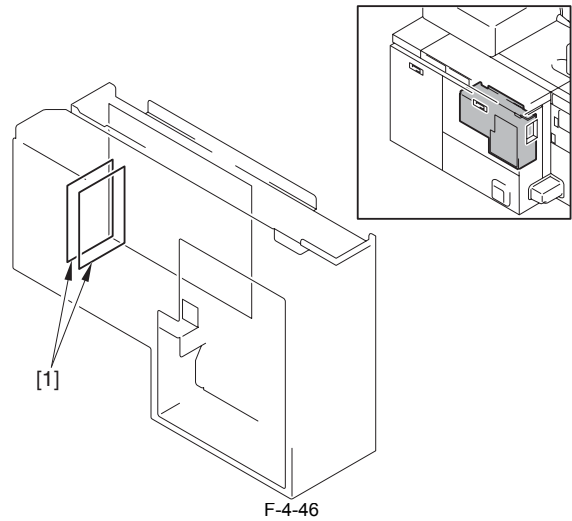
4.6.13.1 Detaching the DRM (256) PCB

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- 1) Detach the power unit station rear cover 1.
- 2) Detach the main controller cover 1 [1].



3) Detach the DRM (256) PCB [1].



4.6.14 ZJ-A PCB

4.6.14.1 Removing ZJ-A PCB

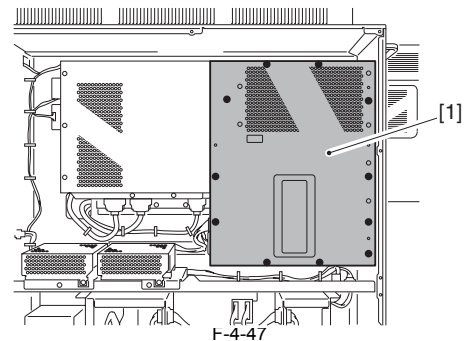
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- 1) Detach the power unit station rear cover 1.
- 2) Detach the main controller cover 2 [1].

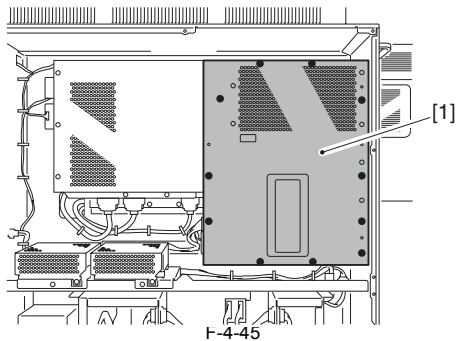
4.6.13.2 Detaching the DRM (512) PCB

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

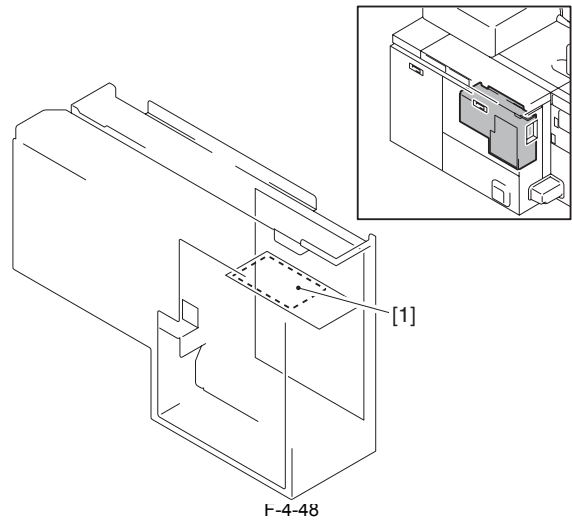
- 1) Detach the power unit station rear cover 1.
- 2) Detach the main controller cover 1 [1].



- 3) Remove the S-B PCB.
- 4) Remove the ZJ-A PCB [1].



3) Detach the DRM (512) PCB [1].

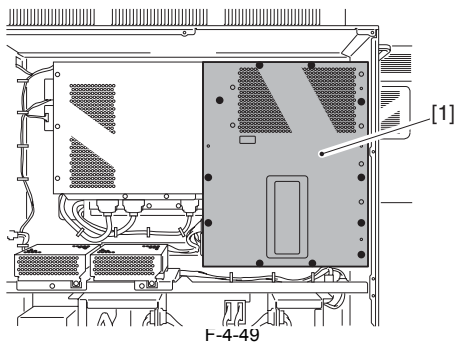


4.6.15 Voice Guidance PCB

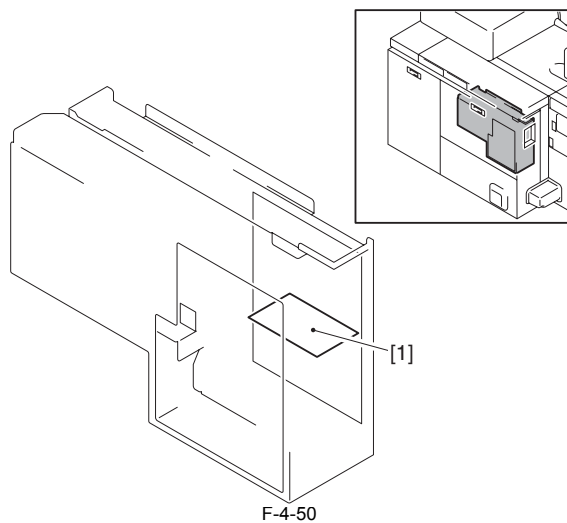
4.6.15.1 Removing Voice Guidance Board

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- 1) Detach the power unit station rear cover 1.
- 2) Detach the main controller cover 2 [1].



3) Remove the voice guidance board [1].



4.6.16 Encryption PCB

4.6.16.1 Before Removing Encryption Board

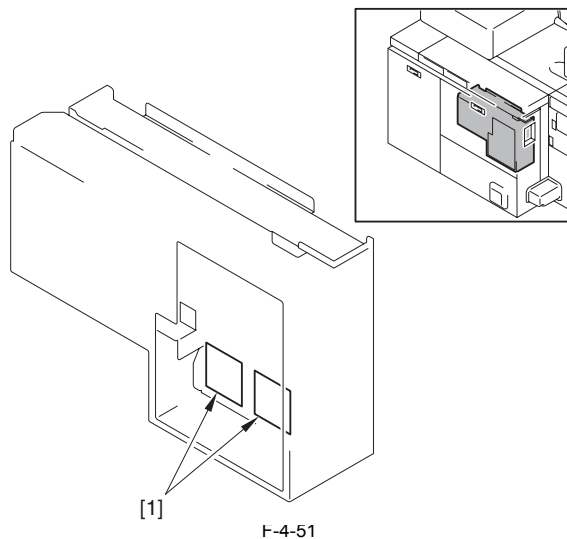
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- 1) Detach the power unit station rear cover I.
- 2) Remove the hard disk with the base.

4.6.16.2 Removing Encryption Board

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- 1) Remove the encryption board [1] from the hard disk base.



Chapter 5 Original Exposure System

Contents

5.1 Construction.....	5-1
5.1.1 Overview	5-1
5.2 Parts Replacement Procedure	5-2
5.2.1 DADF	5-2
5.2.1.1 Removing the DADF (imagePRESS C1 Series/imagePRESS C7000 Series)	5-2
5.2.2 Exposure Lamp	5-2
5.2.2.1 Removing the Scanner Lamp (imagePRESS C7000 Series)	5-2
5.2.3 Reader Controller PCB.....	5-5
5.2.3.1 Removing the Reader Controller PCB (imagePRESS C7000 Series)	5-5
5.2.4 Inverter PCB.....	5-7
5.2.4.1 Removing the Inverter PCB (imagePRESS C7000 Series)	5-7
5.2.5 CCD Unit.....	5-9
5.2.5.1 Removing the CCD Unit (imagePRESS C7000 Series)	5-9
5.2.6 Scanner Motor	5-10
5.2.6.1 Removing the Scanner Motor (imagePRESS C7000 Series).....	5-10
5.2.7 ADF Open/Close Sensor	5-12
5.2.7.1 Removing the ADF Open/Close Sensor(imagePRESS C7000 Series).....	5-12
5.2.8 Scanner Home Position Sensor	5-13
5.2.8.1 Removing the Scanner Home Position Sensor (imagePRESS C7000 Series).....	5-13
5.2.9 Original Sensor.....	5-14
5.2.9.1 Removing the Original Size Sensor (imagePRESS C7000 Series)	5-14
5.2.10 Scanner Drive Cable.....	5-15
5.2.10.1 Removing the Scanner Drive Wire (imagePRESS C7000 Series)	5-15

5.1 Construction

5.1.1 Overview

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

MEMO:

Regarding document exposure system:

- For configuration and control, refer to the Service Manual of the Color Image Reader-H1
- For disassembly/assembly procedure, see this document.

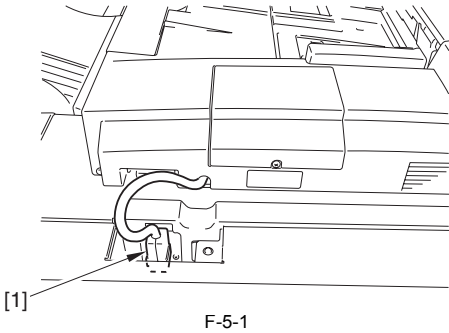
5.2 Parts Replacement Procedure

5.2.1 DADF

5.2.1.1 Removing the DADF (imagePRESS C1 Series/ imagePRESS C7000 Series)

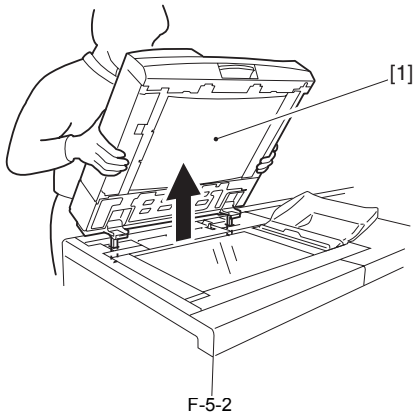
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- 1) Fit the cable [1] of the DADF to the host machine.



- 2) Lift the DADF [1] to fit it into the reader unit.

⚠
Be careful not to pinch your hands between the DADF and the copier.

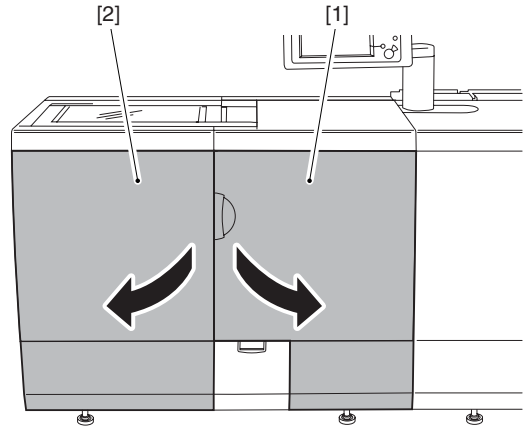


5.2.2 Exposure Lamp

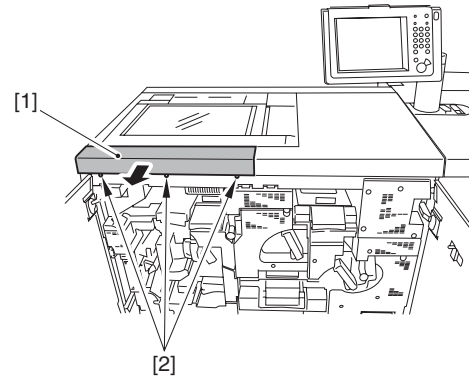
5.2.2.1 Removing the Scanner Lamp (imagePRESS C7000 Series)

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

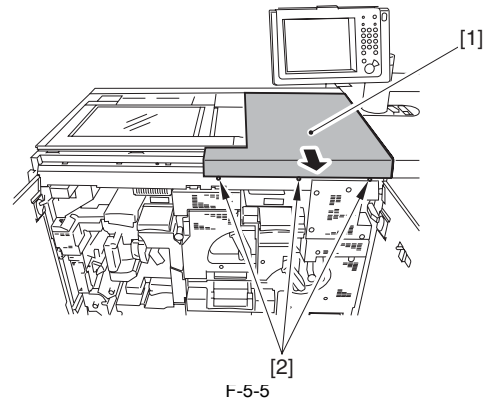
- 1) Open the sub station front right cover [1] and the sub station front left cover [2].



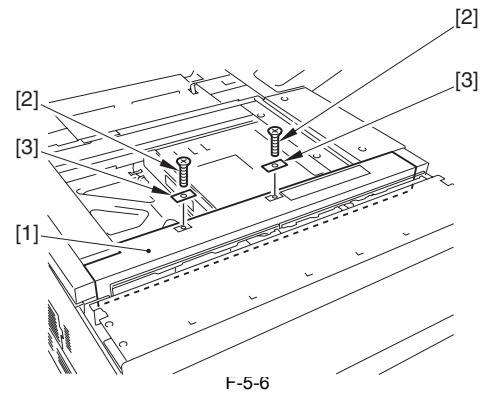
- 2) Detach the sub station upper front cover [1].
- 3 screws [2]



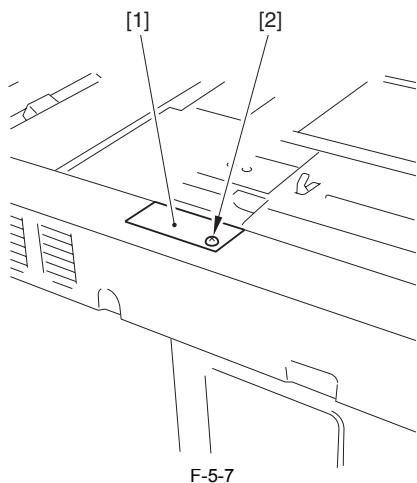
- 3) Detach the sub station upper right cover [1].
- 3 screws [2]



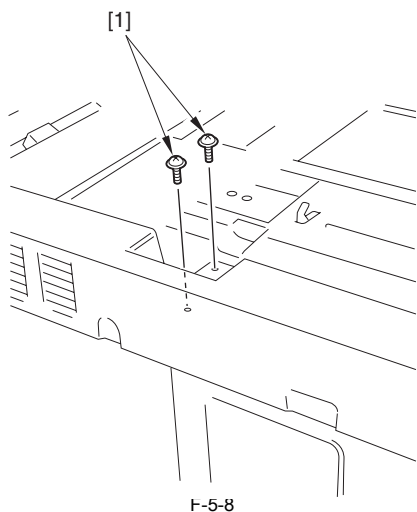
- 4) Detach the reader front cover [1].
- 2 screws [2]
- 2 magnet catches [3]



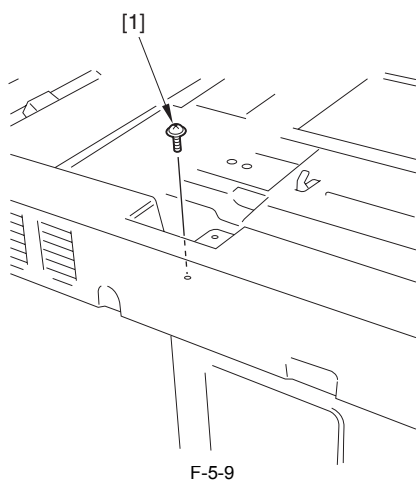
- 5) Detach the upper rear face plate 1 [1].
- 1 screw [2]



- 6) Detach the upper rear face cover 3 [1].
<In case of ADF>
- 2 screws [2]



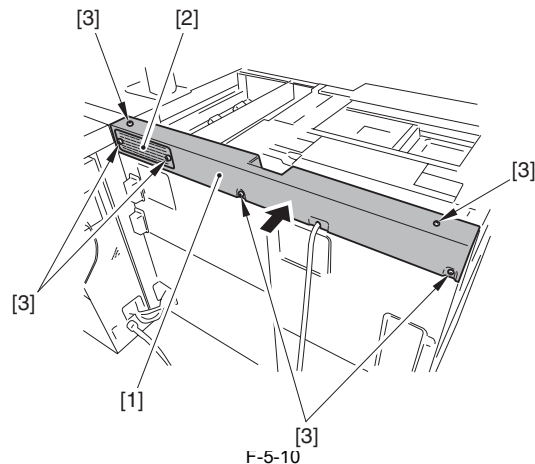
- <In case of Copyboard Cover>
- 1 screws [1]



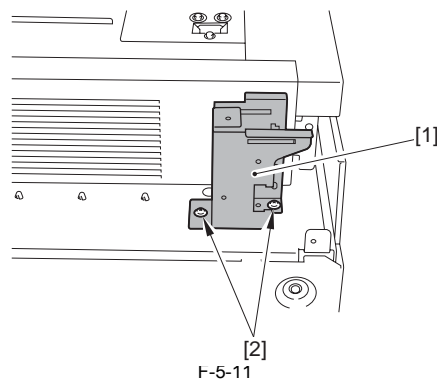
- 7) Remove the filter [2] of the sub station top rear cover [1].
- 6 screws [3]



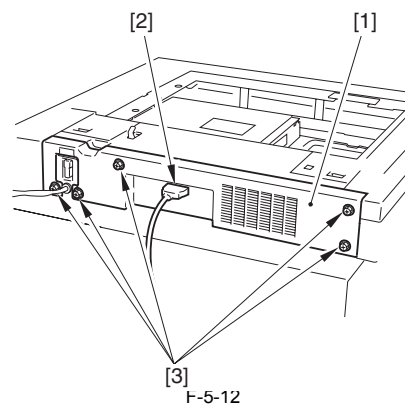
Be sure to tighten the 2 screws on the top while pressing the upper rear cover in the direction of the arrow.



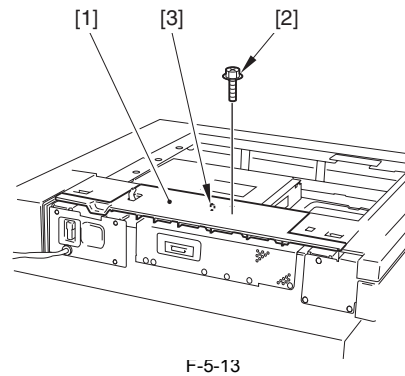
- 8) Remove the connector base [1].
- 2 screws [2]



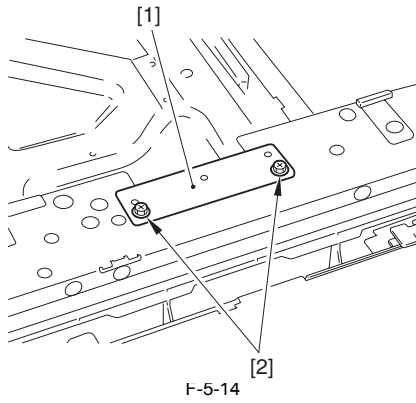
- 9) Detach the reader rear cover [1].
- 1 connector [2]
- 5 screws [3]



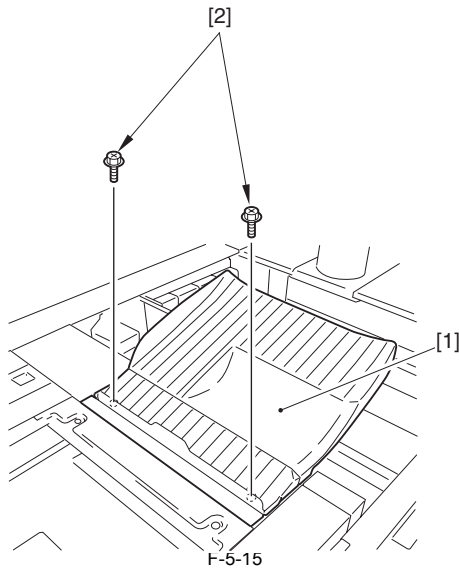
- 10) Detach the reader upper rear cover [1].
- 1 screw [2]
- 1 embossed section [3]



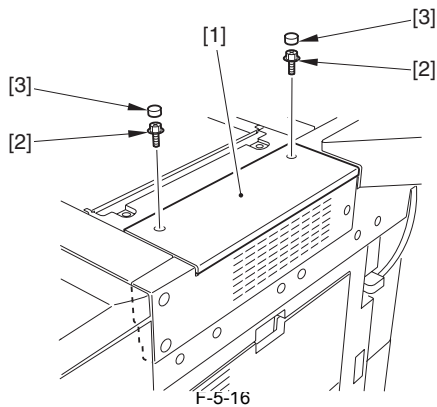
- 11) Remove the magnet support [1].
 - 2 screws [2]



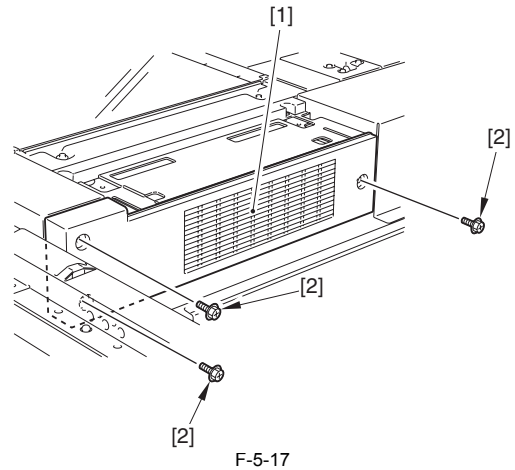
- <In case of ADF>
 12) Remove the document tray [1].
 - 2 screws [2]



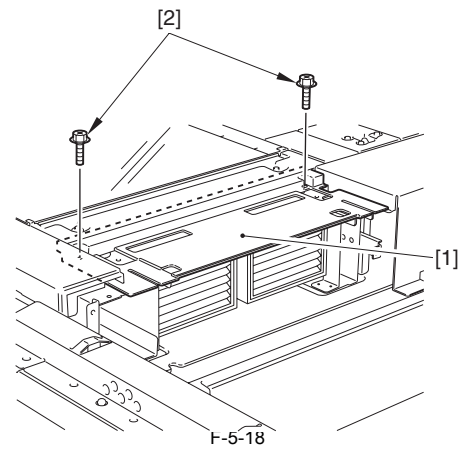
- <In case of Copyboard Cover>
 13) Detach the upper right cover [1] for the copyboard cover.
 - 2 screws [2]
 - 2 cover rubbers [3]



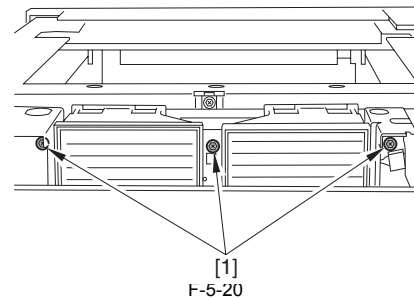
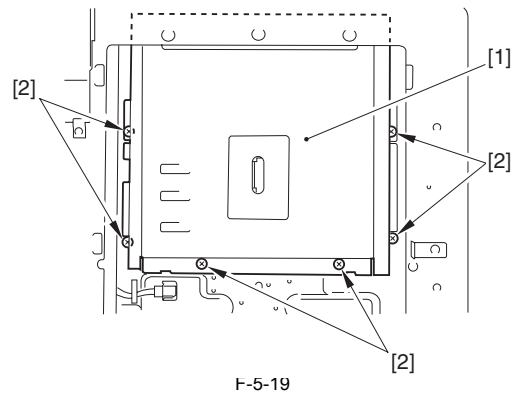
- 14) Detach the reader right cover [1].
 - 3 screws [2]

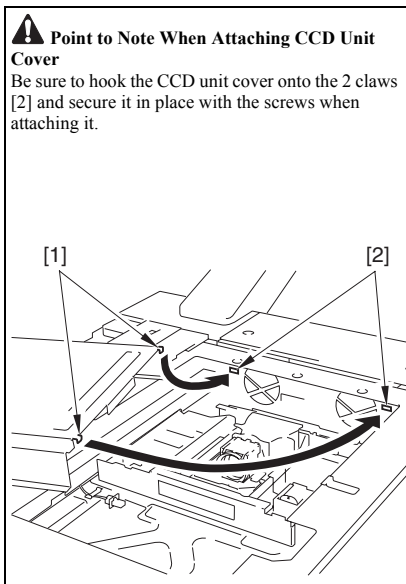


- (Only in case of ADF)
 15) Detach the reader upper right cover [1].
 - 2 screws [2]



- (Subsequent steps are applied only for the ADF)
 16) Detach the CCD unit cover [1].
 - 9 screws [2] (3 screws at the right side of the reader)





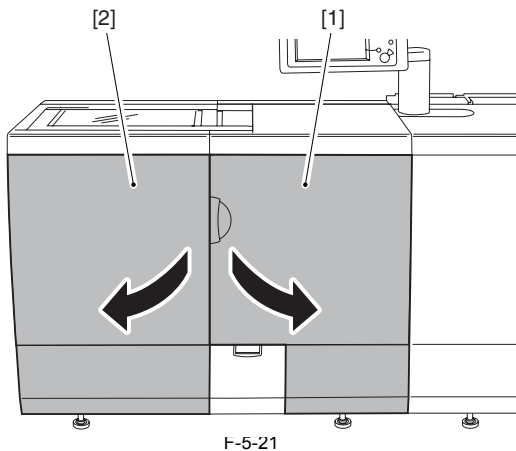
17) For the subsequent steps, see step 11 to 14 in 'Removing Scanning Lamp' (in the case of imagePRESS C1 Series).

5.2.3 Reader Controller PCB

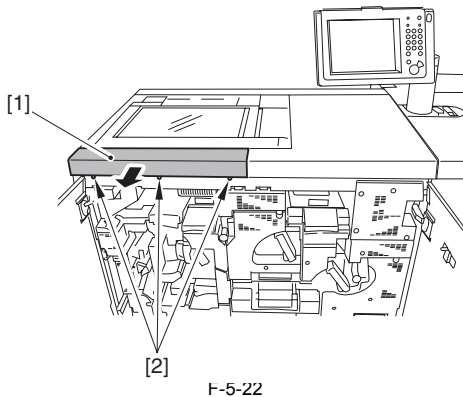
5.2.3.1 Removing the Reader Controller PCB (imagePRESS C7000 Series)

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

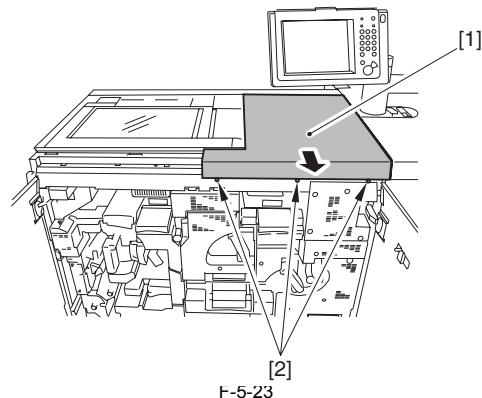
1) Open the sub station front right cover [1] and the sub station front left cover [2].



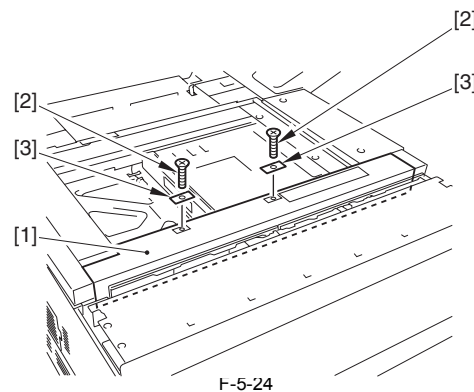
2) Detach the sub station upper front cover [1].
- 3 screws [2]



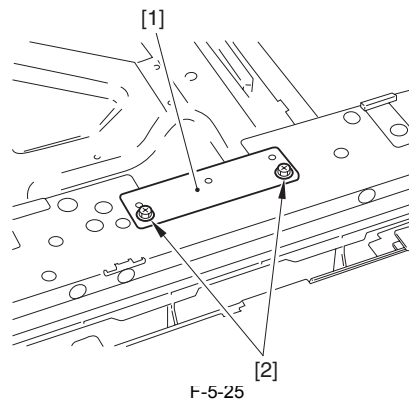
3) Detach the sub station upper right cover [1].
- 3 screws [2]



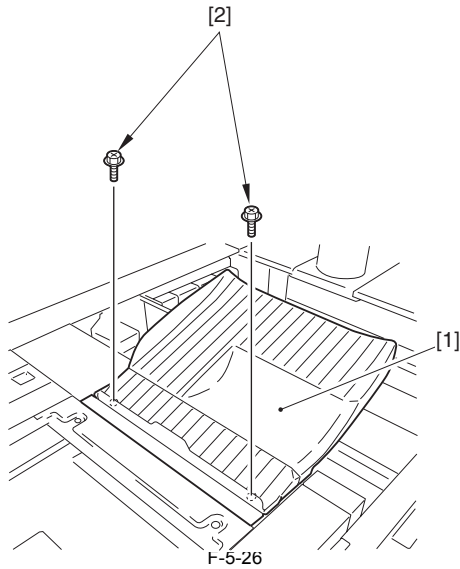
4) Detach the reader front cover [1].
- 2 screws [2]
- 2 magnet catches [3]



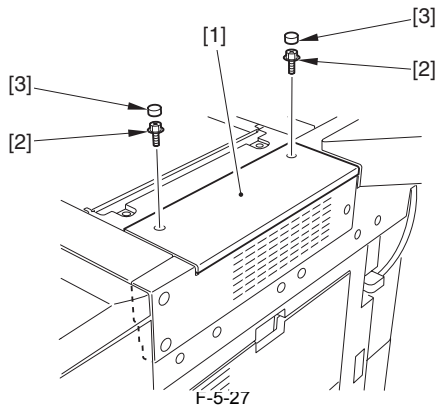
5) Remove the magnet support [1].
- 2 screws [2]



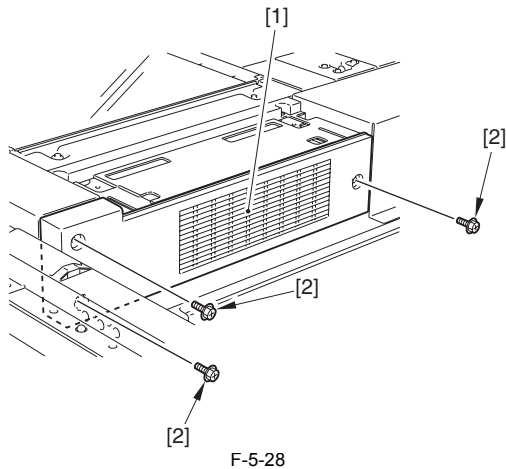
<In case of ADF>
6) Remove the document tray [1].
- 2 screws [2]



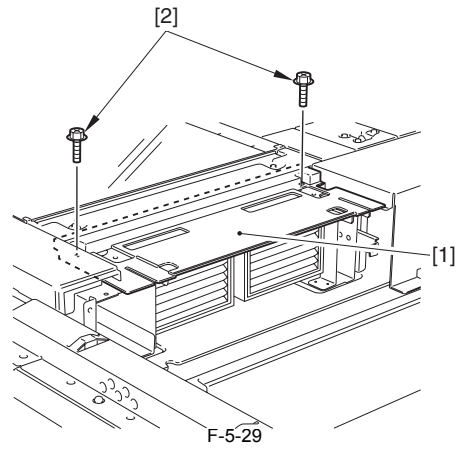
- <In case of Copyboard Cover>**
 7) Detach the upper right cover [1] for the copyboard cover.
 - 2 screws [2]
 - 2 cover rubbers [3]



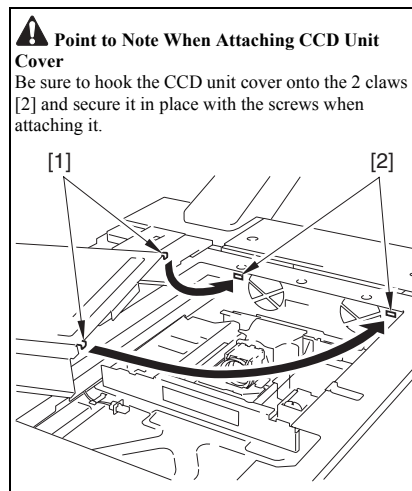
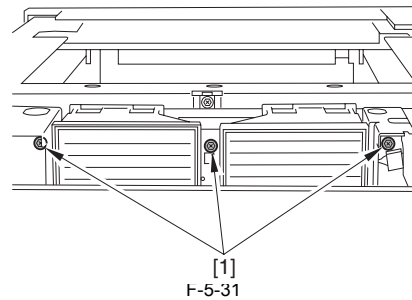
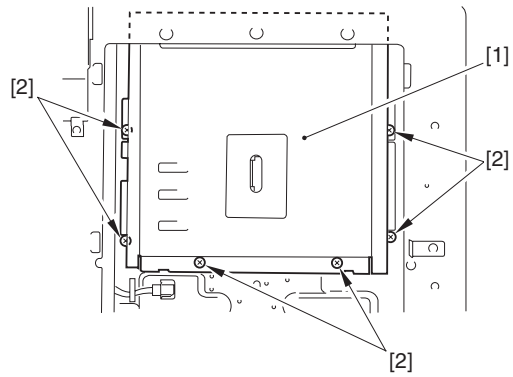
- 8) Detach the reader right cover [1].
 - 3 screws [2]



- (Only in case of ADF)
 9) Detach the reader upper right cover [1].
 - 2 screws [2]



- (Subsequent steps are applied only for the ADF)
 10) Detach the CCD unit cover [1].
 - 9 screws [2] (3 screws at the right side of the reader)



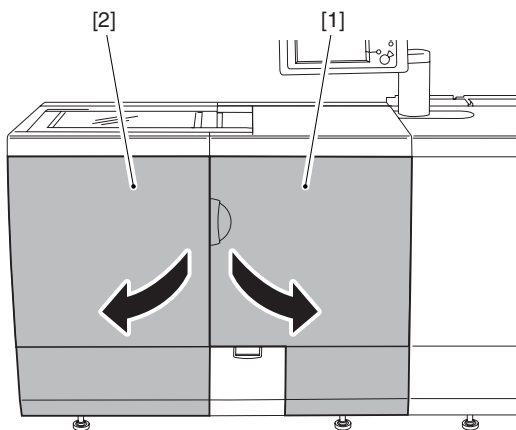
- 11) For the subsequent steps, see step 4 to 6 in 'Removing the Reader Controller PCB' (in the case of imagePRESS C1 Series).

5.2.4 Inverter PCB

5.2.4.1 Removing the Inverter PCB (imagePRESS C7000 Series)

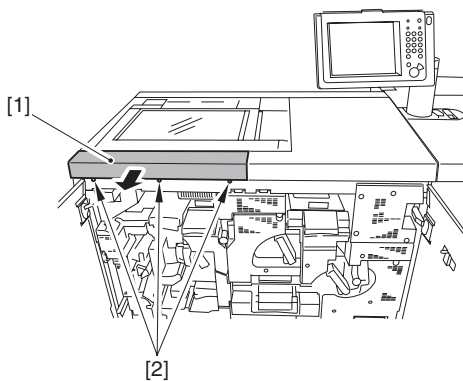
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- 1) Open the sub station front right cover [1] and the sub station front left cover [2].



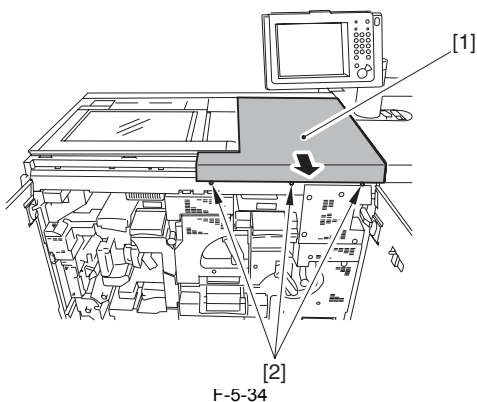
F-5-32

- 2) Detach the sub station upper front cover [1].
- 3 screws [2]



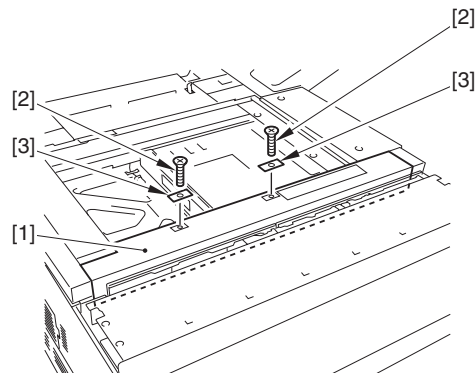
F-5-33

- 3) Detach the sub station upper right cover [1].
- 3 screws [2]



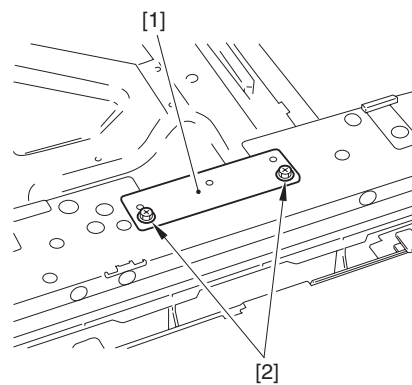
F-5-34

- 4) Detach the reader front cover [1].
- 2 screws [2]
- 2 magnet catches [3]



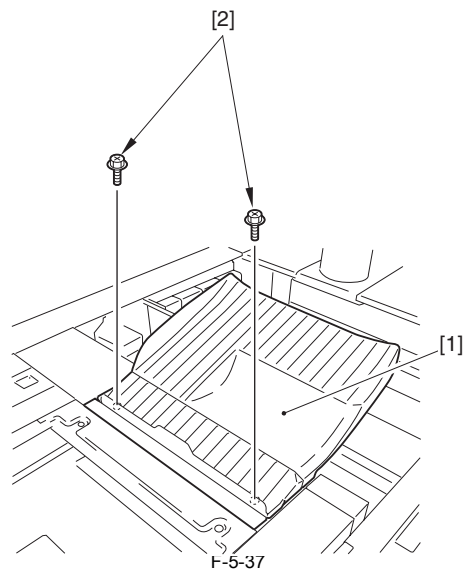
F-5-35

- 5) Remove the magnet support [1].
- 2 screws [2]



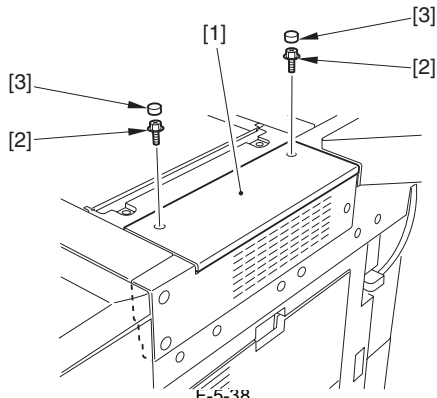
F-5-36

- <In case of ADF>
6) Detach the document tray [1].
- 2 screws [2]



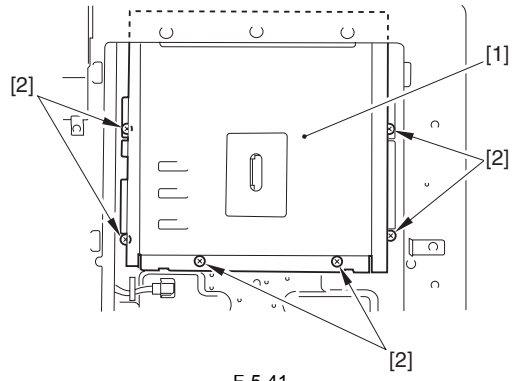
F-5-37

- <In case of copyboard cover>
7) Detach the upper right cover [1] for the copyboard cover.
- 2 screws [2]
- 2 cover rubbers [3]

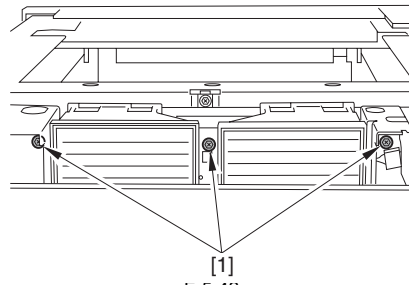


F-5-38

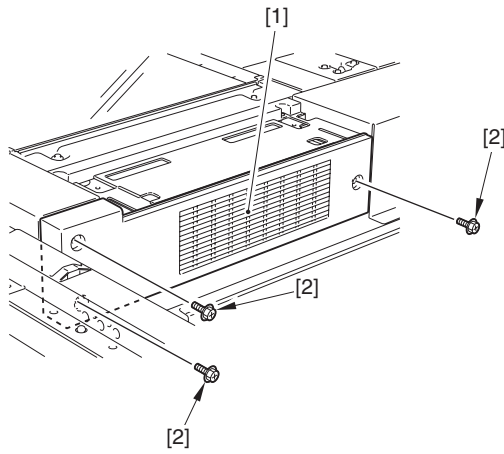
8) Detach the reader right cover [1].
- 3 screws [2]



F-5-41

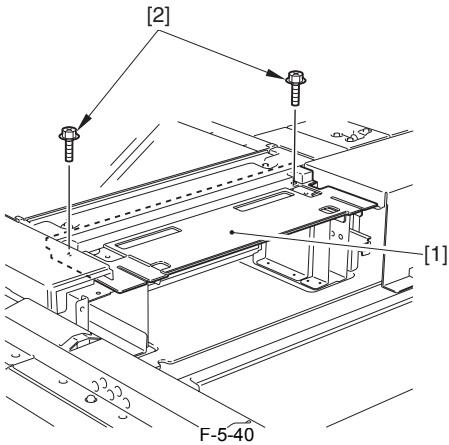
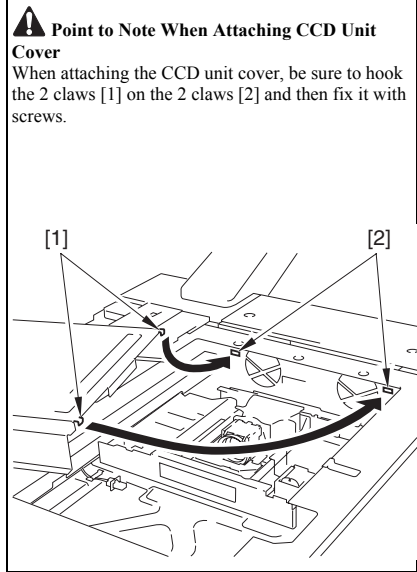


F-5-42



F-5-39

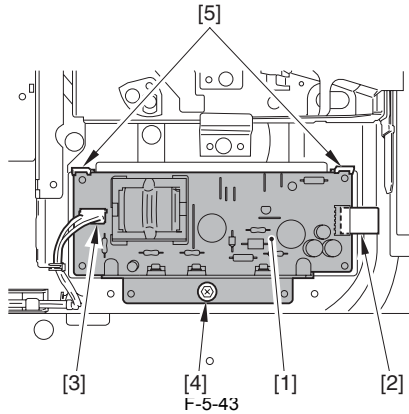
(Only in case of ADF)
9) Detach the reader upper right cover [1].
- 2 screws [2]



F-5-40

(The subsequent steps are applied only for ADF.)
10) Detach the CCD unit cover [1].
- 9 screws [2] (3 screws at the right side of the reader)

11) Remove the inverter PCB [1].
- 1 flat cable [2]
- 1 connector [3]
- 1 screw [4]
- 2 PCB supports [5]



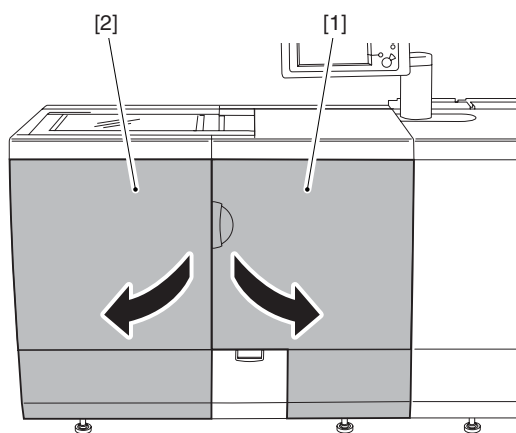
F-5-43

5.2.5 CCD Unit

5.2.5.1 Removing the CCD Unit (imagePRESS C7000 Series)

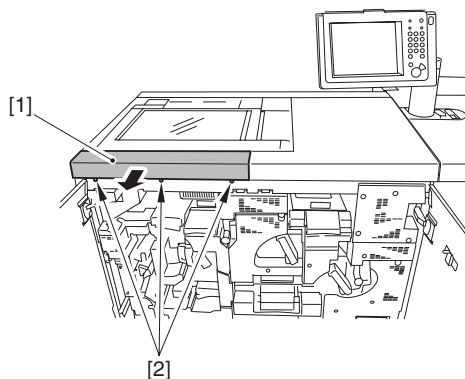
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- 1) Open the sub station front right cover [1] and the sub station front left cover [2].



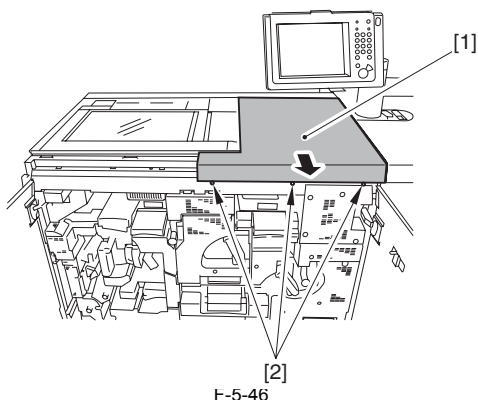
F-5-44

- 2) Detach the sub station upper front cover [1].
- 3 screws [2]



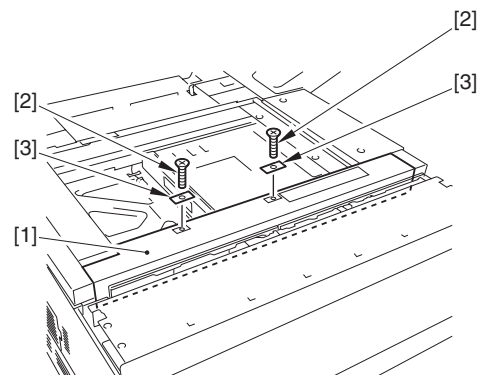
F-5-45

- 3) Detach the sub station upper right cover [1].
- 3 screws [2]



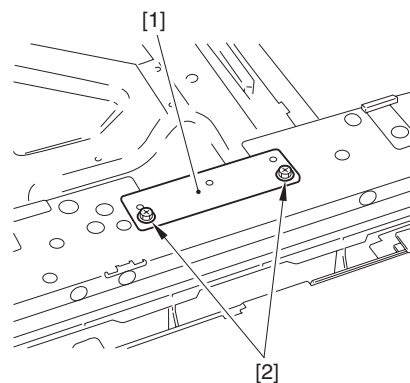
F-5-46

- 4) Detach the reader front cover [1].
- 2 screws [2]
- 2 magnet catches [3]



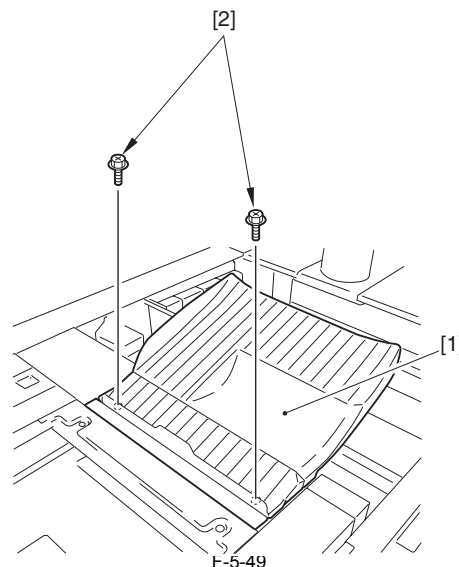
F-5-47

- 5) Remove the magnet support [1].
- 2 screws [2]



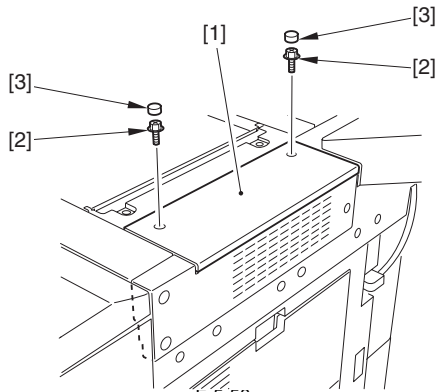
F-5-48

- <In case of ADF>
6) Remove the document tray [1].
- 2 screws [2]



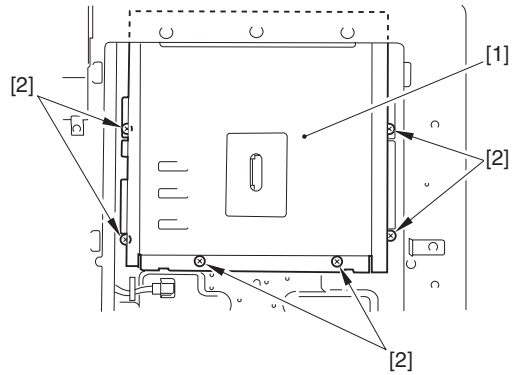
F-5-49

- <In case of Copyboard Cover>
7) Detach the upper right cover [1] for the copyboard cover.
- 2 screws [2]
- 2 cover rubbers [3]

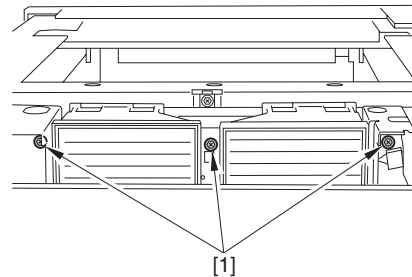


F-5-50

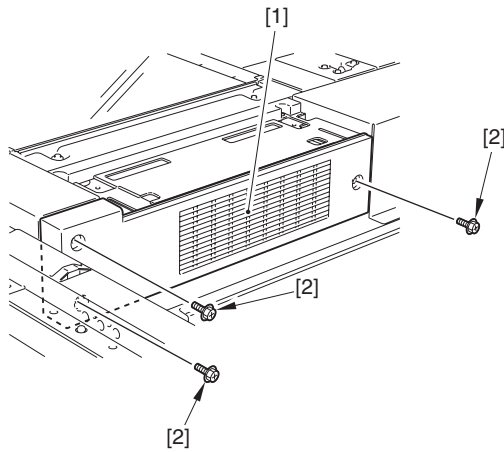
8) Detach the reader right cover [1].
- 3 screws [2]



F-5-53

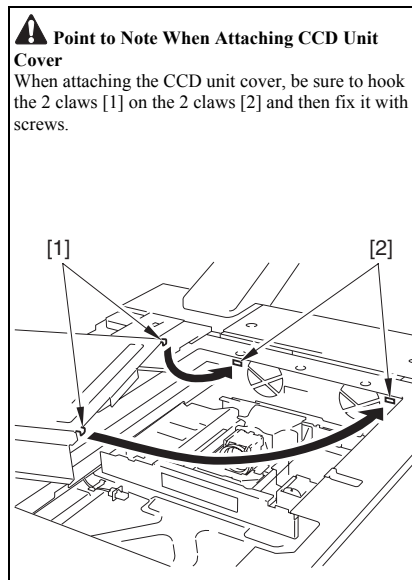


F-5-54

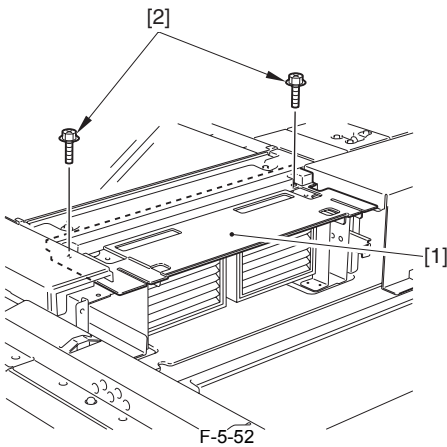


F-5-51

(Only in case of ADF)
9) Detach the reader upper right cover [1].
- 2 screws [2]



⚠ Point to Note When Attaching CCD Unit Cover
When attaching the CCD unit cover, be sure to hook the 2 claws [1] on the 2 claws [2] and then fix it with screws.



F-5-52

(The subsequent steps are applied only for ADF.)
10) Detach the CCD unit cover [1].
- 9 screws [2] (3 screws at the right side of the reader)

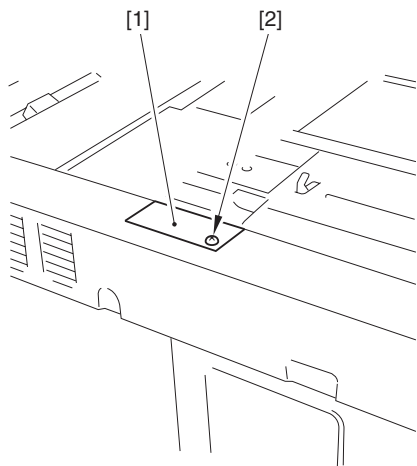
11) For the subsequent steps, see step 4 to 6 in 'Removing the CCD Unit' (in case of imagePRESS C1 Series).

5.2.6 Scanner Motor

5.2.6.1 Removing the Scanner Motor (imagePRESS C7000 Series)

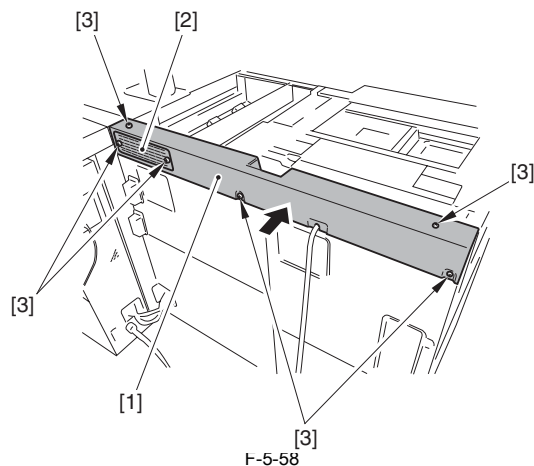
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

1) In case of the copyboard cover, detach the upper rear face plate 1 [1].
- 1 screw [2]



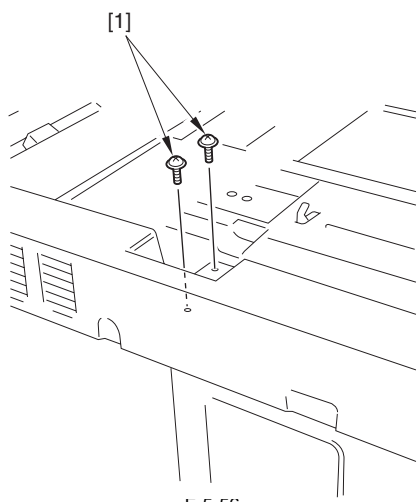
F-5-55

- 2) Detach the upper rear face cover 3 [1].
 <In case of ADF>
 - 2 screws [1]



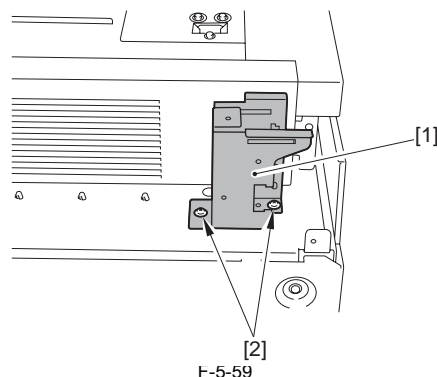
F-5-58

- 5) Remove the connector base [1].
 - 2 screws [2]



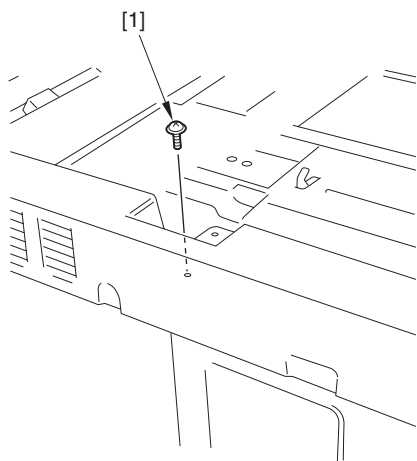
F-5-56

- <In case of copyboard cover>
 - 1 screw [1]



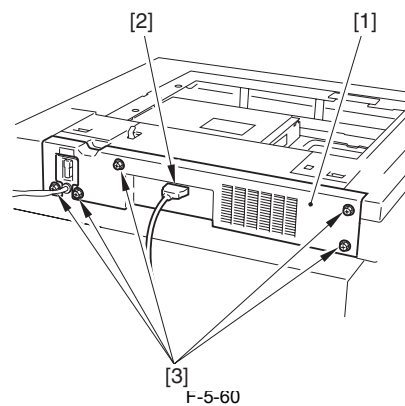
F-5-59

- 6) Detach the reader rear cover [1].
 - 1 connector [2]
 - 5 screws [3]



F-5-57

- 4) Remove the sub station upper rear cover [1] and the filter [2].
 - 6 screws [3]

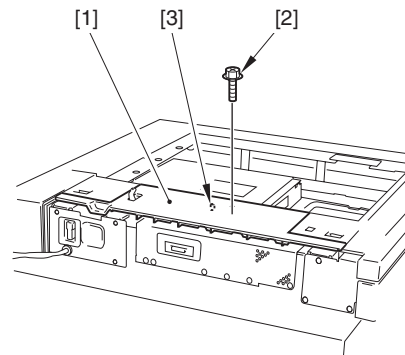


F-5-60

- 7) Detach the reader upper rear cover [1].
 - 1 screw [2]
 - 1 emboss [3]



Be sure to tighten the 2 screws on the top while pressing the upper rear cover in the direction of the arrow.



F-5-61

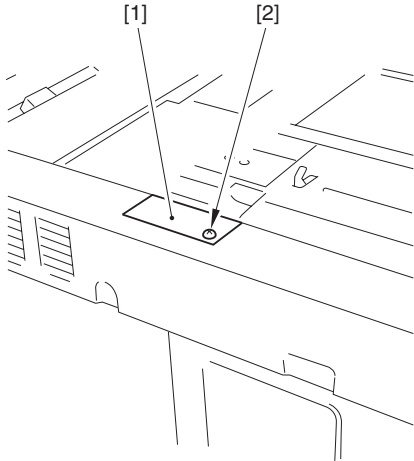
8) For the subsequent steps, see step 4 to 9 in 'Removing the Scanner Motor' (in the case of imagePRESS C1 Series).

5.2.7 ADF Open/Close Sensor

5.2.7.1 Removing the ADF Open/Close Sensor (imagePRESS C7000 Series)

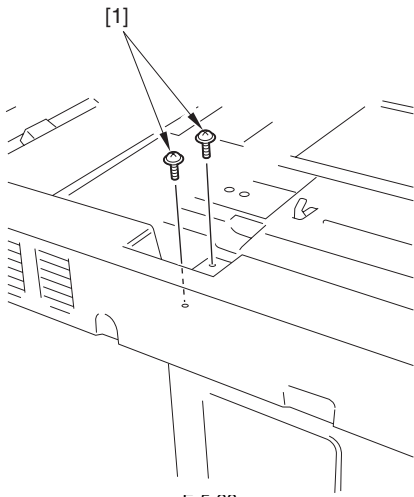
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

1) In the case of the copyboard cover, detach the upper rear face plate 1 [1].
- 1 screw [2]



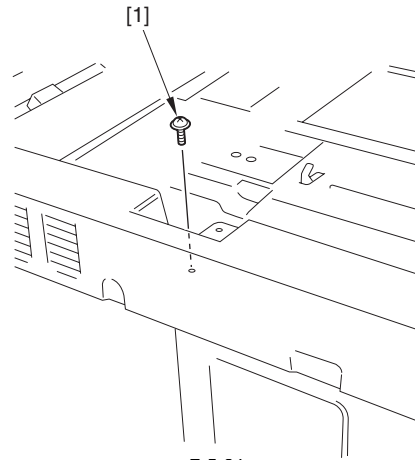
F-5-62

2) Detach the upper rear face cover 3 [1].
<In case of ADF>
- 2 screws [1]



F-5-63

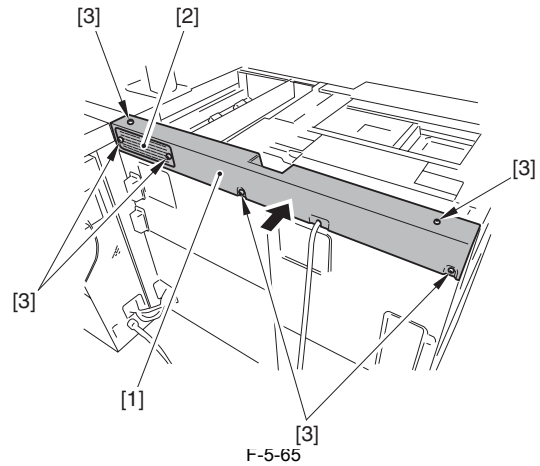
<In case of copyboard cover>
- 1 screw [1]



F-5-64

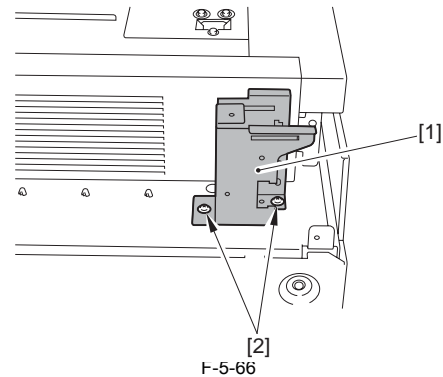
3) Detach the top rear cover [1] of the sub station and remove the filter [2].
- 6 screws [3]

⚠
When tightening the 2 screws at the top surface, be sure to tighten them while pressing the upper rear cover in the direction of the arrow.



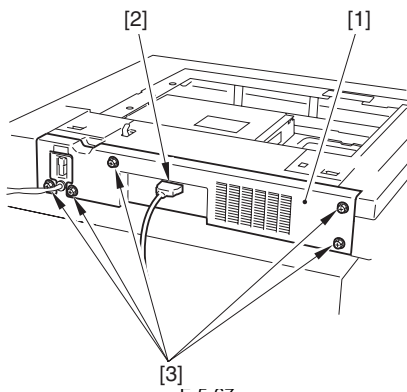
F-5-65

4) Detach the connector base [1].
- 2 screws [2]

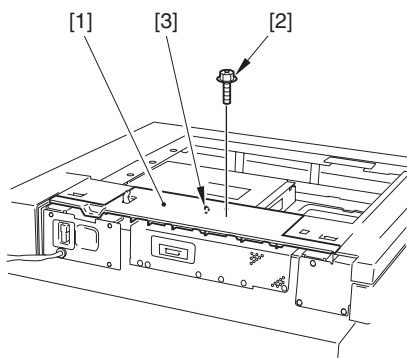


F-5-66

5) Detach the reader rear cover [1].
- 1 connector [2]
- 5 screws [3]



- 6) Detach the reader upper rear cover [1].
 - 1 screw [2]
 - 1 emboss [3]



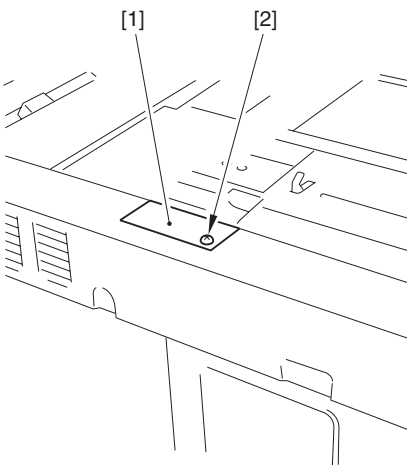
- 7) For the subsequent steps, see step 3, 4 in 'Removing the ADF Open/Close Sensor' (in the case of imagePRESS C1 Series).

5.2.8 Scanner Home Position Sensor

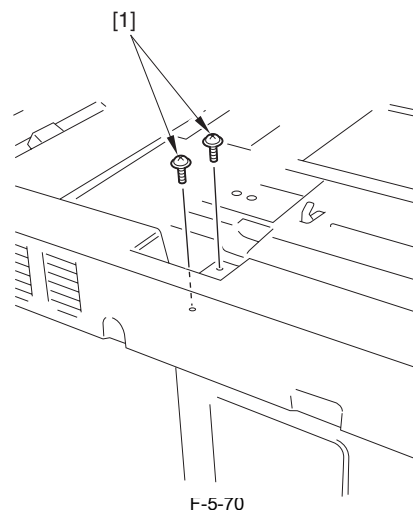
5.2.8.1 Removing the Scanner Home Position Sensor (imagePRESS C7000 Series)

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

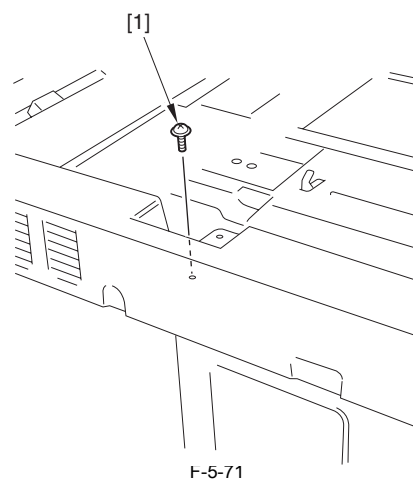
- 1) In the case of the copyboard cover, detach the upper rear face plate 1 [1].
 - 1 screw [2]



- 2) Detach the upper rear face cover 3 [1].
 <In case of ADF>
 - 2 screws [1]

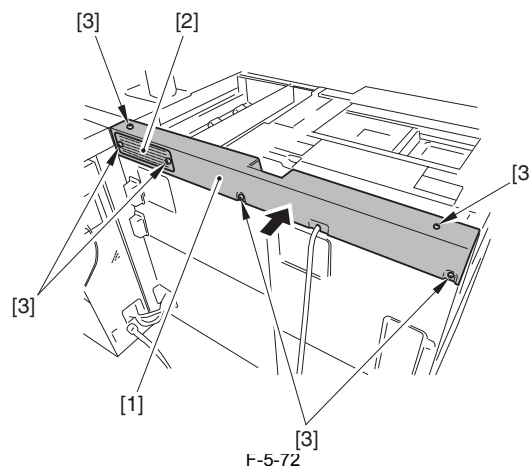


- <In case of copyboard cover>
 - 1 screw [1]

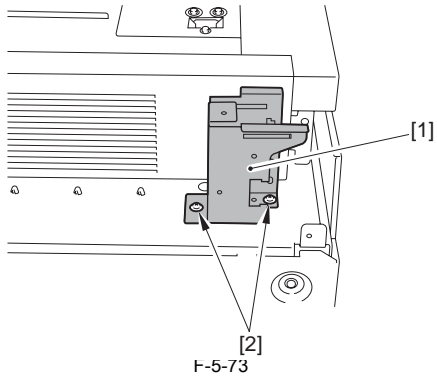


- 3) Detach the top rear cover [1] of the sub station and remove the filter [2].
 - 6 screws [3]

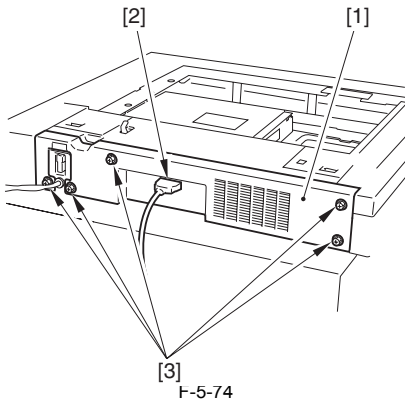
! When tightening the 2 screws at the top surface, be sure to tighten them while pressing the upper rear cover in the direction of the arrow.



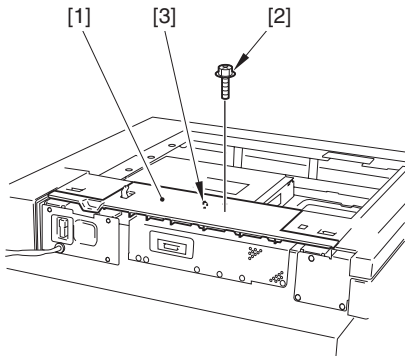
- 4) Detach the connector base [1].
 - 2 screws [2]



- 5) Detach the reader rear cover [1].
 - 1 connector [2]
 - 5 screws [3]



- 6) Detach the reader upper rear cover [1].
 - 1 screw [2]
 - 1 emboss [3]



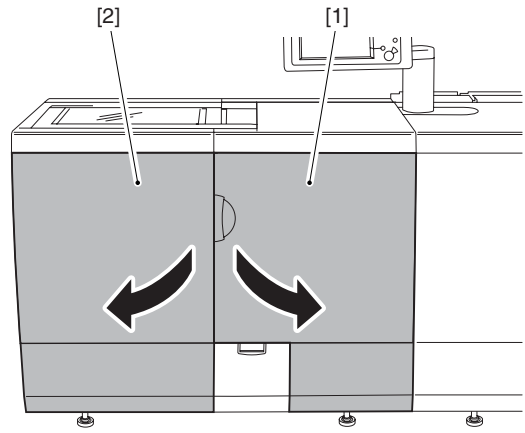
- 7) For the subsequent steps, see step 4 to 7 in 'Removing the Scanner Motor' (in the case of imagePRESS C1 Series).

5.2.9 Original Sensor

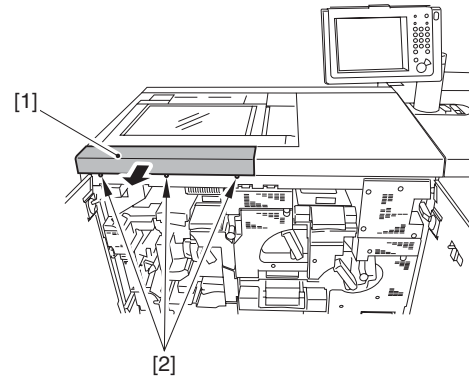
5.2.9.1 Removing the Original Size Sensor (imagePRESS C7000 Series)

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

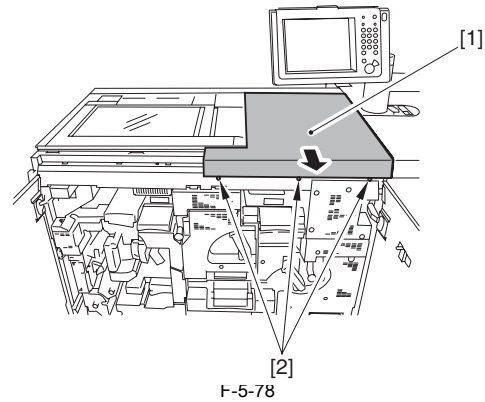
- 1) Open the sub station front right cover [1] and the sub station front left cover [2].



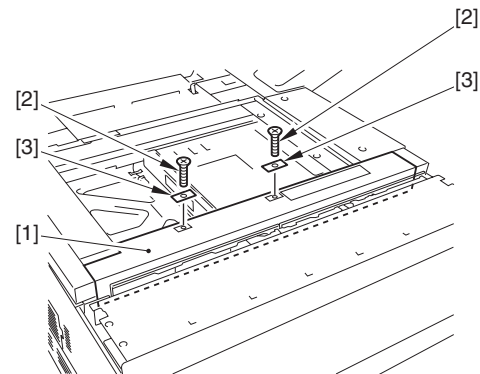
- 2) Detach the sub station upper front cover [1].
 - 3 screws [2]



- 3) Detach the sub station upper right cover [1].
 - 3 screws [2]



- 4) Detach the reader front cover [1].
 - 2 screws [2]
 - 2 magnet catches [3]



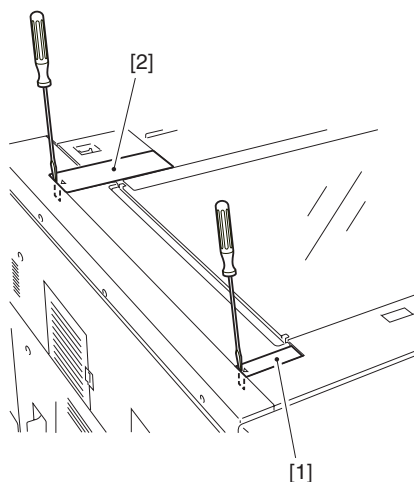
7) For the subsequent steps, see step 4 to 6 in 'Removing the Original Size Sensor' (in the case of imagePRESS C1 Series).

5.2.10 Scanner Drive Cable

5.2.10.1 Removing the Scanner Drive Wire (imagePRESS C7000 Series)

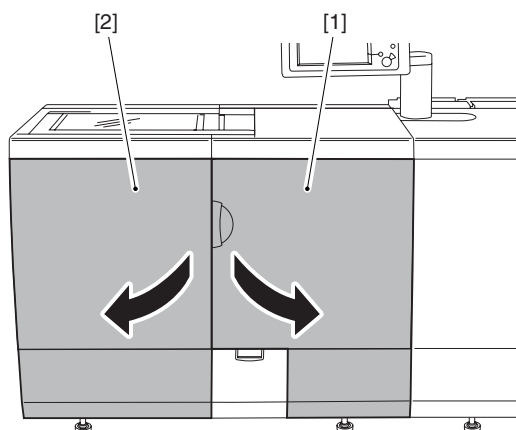
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

1) Detach the small cover (left front) [1] and the small cover (left rear) [2] with flat-blade screwdriver etc.



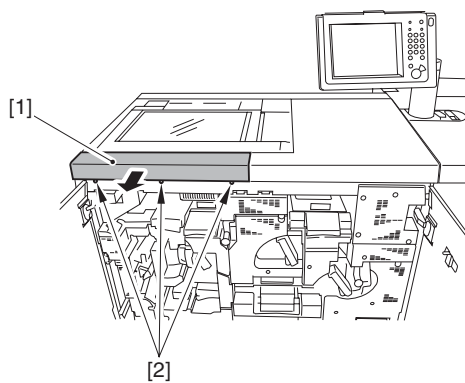
F-5-80

2) Open the sub station front right cover [1] and the sub station front left cover [2].



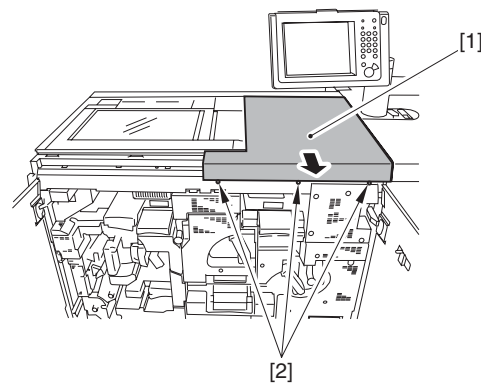
F-5-81

3) Detach the sub station upper front cover [1].
- 3 screws [2]



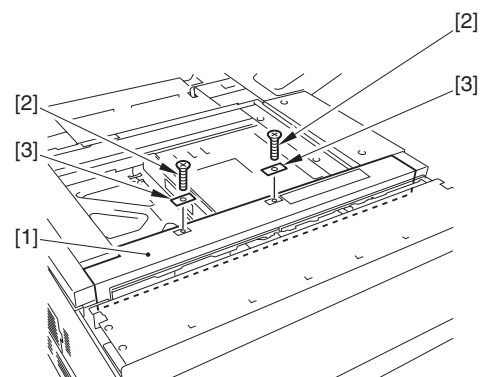
F-5-82

4) Detach the sub station upper right cover [1].
- 3 screws [2]



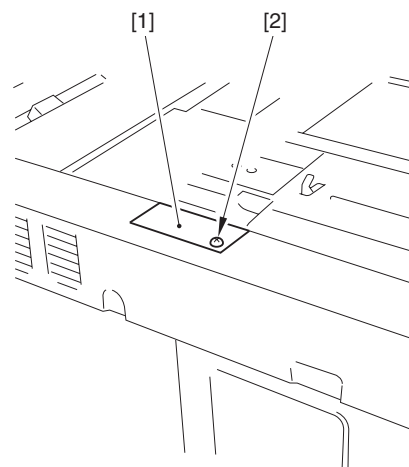
F-5-83

5) Detach the reader front cover [1].
- 2 screws [2]
- 2 magnet catches [3]



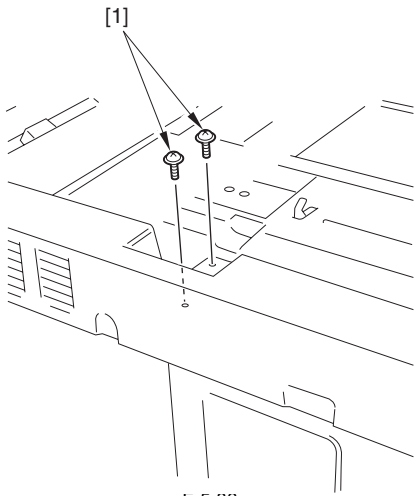
F-5-84

6) Detach the upper rear face cover 1 [1].
- 1 screw [2]



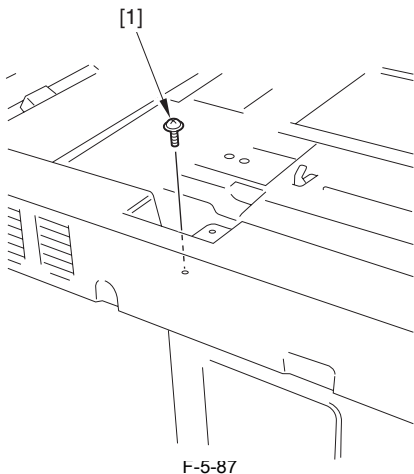
F-5-85

7) Detach the upper rear face cover 3 [1].
<In case of ADF>
- 2 screws [1]



F-5-86

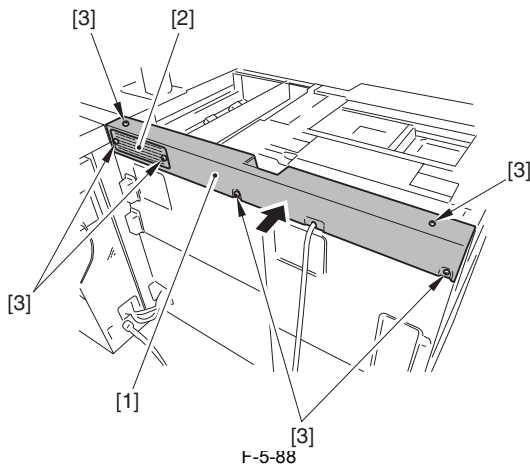
<In case of copyboard cover>
- 1 screw [1]



F-5-87

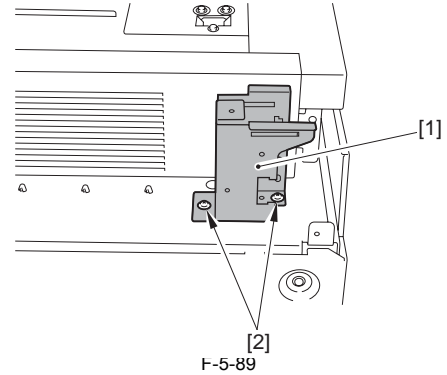
8) Detach the sub station upper rear cover [1] and the filter [2].
- 6 screws [3]

⚠
When tightening the 2 screws at the top surface, be sure to tighten them while pressing the upper rear cover in the direction of the arrow.



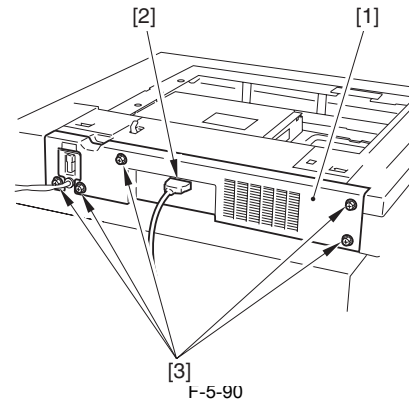
F-5-88

9) Remove the connector mount [1].
- 2 screws [2]



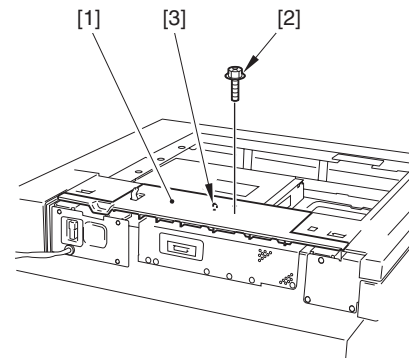
F-5-89

10) Detach the reader rear cover [1].
- 1 connector [2]
- 5 screws [3]



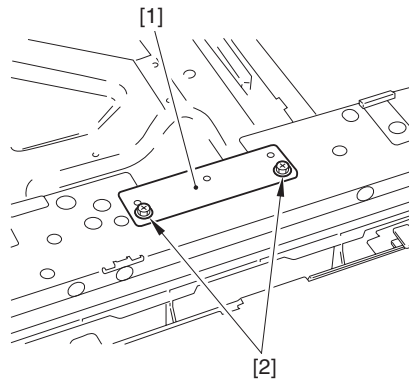
F-5-90

11) Detach the reader upper rear cover [1].
- 1 screw [2]
- 1 emboss [3]



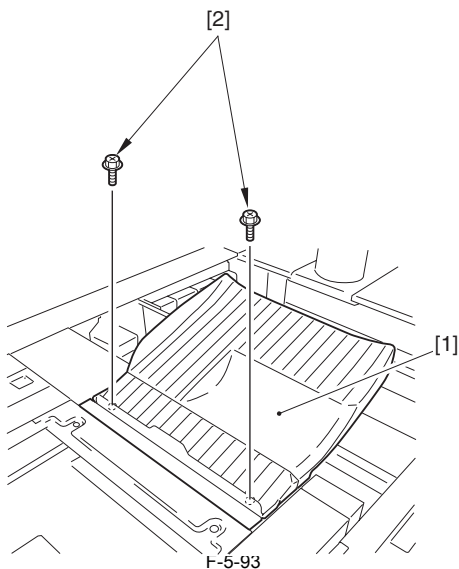
F-5-91

12) Detach the magnet support plate [1].
- 2 screws [2]

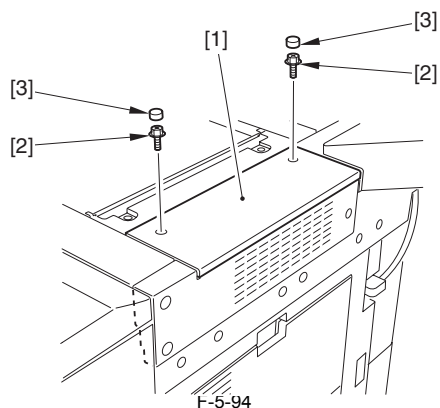


F-5-92

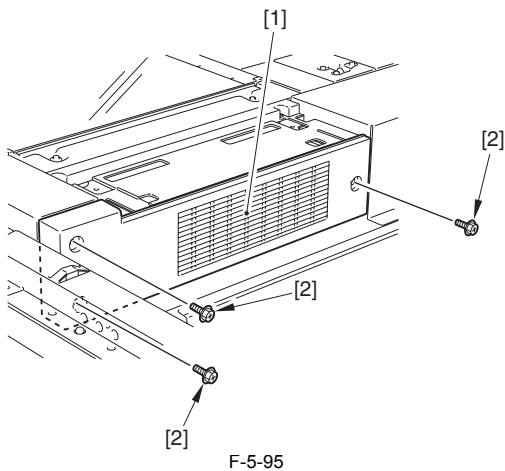
<In case of ADF>
13) Remove the document tray [1].
- 2 screws [2]



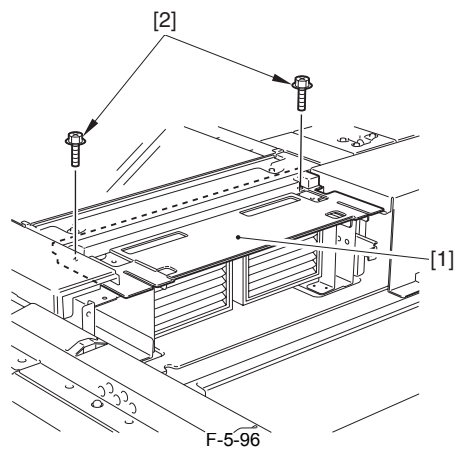
<In case of copyboard cover>
 14) Detach the upper right cover [1] for the copyboard cover.
 - 2 screws [2]
 - 2 cover rubbers [3]



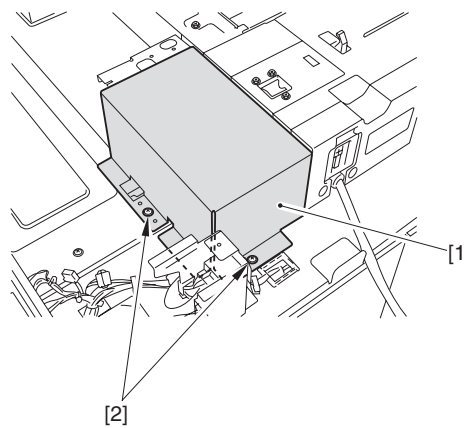
15) Detach the reader right cover [1].
 - 3 screws [2]



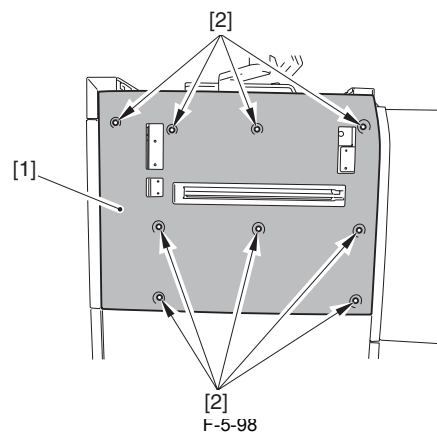
(Only in case of ADF)
 16) Detach the reader upper right cover [1].
 - 2 screws [2]



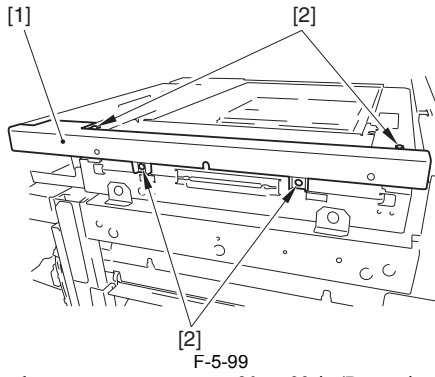
17) Attach the reader right rear cover [1].
 - 2 screws (TP; M4X6)[2]



18) Detach the sub station upper left cover [1].
 - 9 screws [2]



19) Detach the reader left cover [1].
 - 4 screws [2]



F-5-99

20) For the subsequent steps, see step 20 to 33 in 'Removing the Scanner Drive Wire' (in case of imagePRESS C1 Series).

Chapter 6 Laser Exposure

Contents

6.1 Construction.....	6-1
6.1.1 Specifications/Controls/Functions	6-1
6.1.2 Major Components	6-2
6.1.3 Control System Configuration	6-3
6.2 Basic Sequence	6-3
6.2.1 Basic Sequence.....	6-3
6.3 Various Control	6-4
6.3.1 Controlling the Laser Activation Timing	6-4
6.3.1.1 ON/OFF Control	6-4
6.3.1.2 Sync Control in Horizontal Scanning Direction	6-6
6.3.1.3 Sync Control in Vertical Scanning Direction	6-7
6.3.2 Controlling the Intensity of Laser Light.....	6-7
6.3.2.1 APC Control	6-7
6.3.2.2 PWM Control	6-8
6.3.3 Controlling the Laser Scanner Motor.....	6-9
6.3.3.1 Laser Scanner Motor Control	6-9
6.3.4 Controlling the Laser Shutter	6-10
6.3.4.1 Laser shutter control.....	6-10
6.3.5 Correcting Image Displacement.....	6-11
6.3.5.1 Overview of color displacement correction control.....	6-11
6.3.5.2 Color displacement detection/correction timing	6-12
6.3.5.3 Correction of write starting position in horizontal direction.....	6-13
6.3.5.4 Correction of the magnification ratio in horizontal direction	6-14
6.3.5.5 Correction of tilt in horizontal direction	6-15
6.3.5.6 Correction of write starting position in vertical direction.....	6-17
6.3.5.7 Half magnification ratio adjustment control in horizontal direction.....	6-18
6.4 Parts Replacement Procedure	6-20
6.4.1 Laser Scanner Unit	6-20
6.4.1.1 Before Removing Laser Scanner Unit (Without POD Deck).....	6-20
6.4.1.2 Before Removing Laser Scanner Unit (With POD Deck).....	6-22
6.4.1.3 Removing Laser Scanner Unit	6-26

6.1 Construction

6.1.1 Specifications/Controls/Functions

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

T-6-1

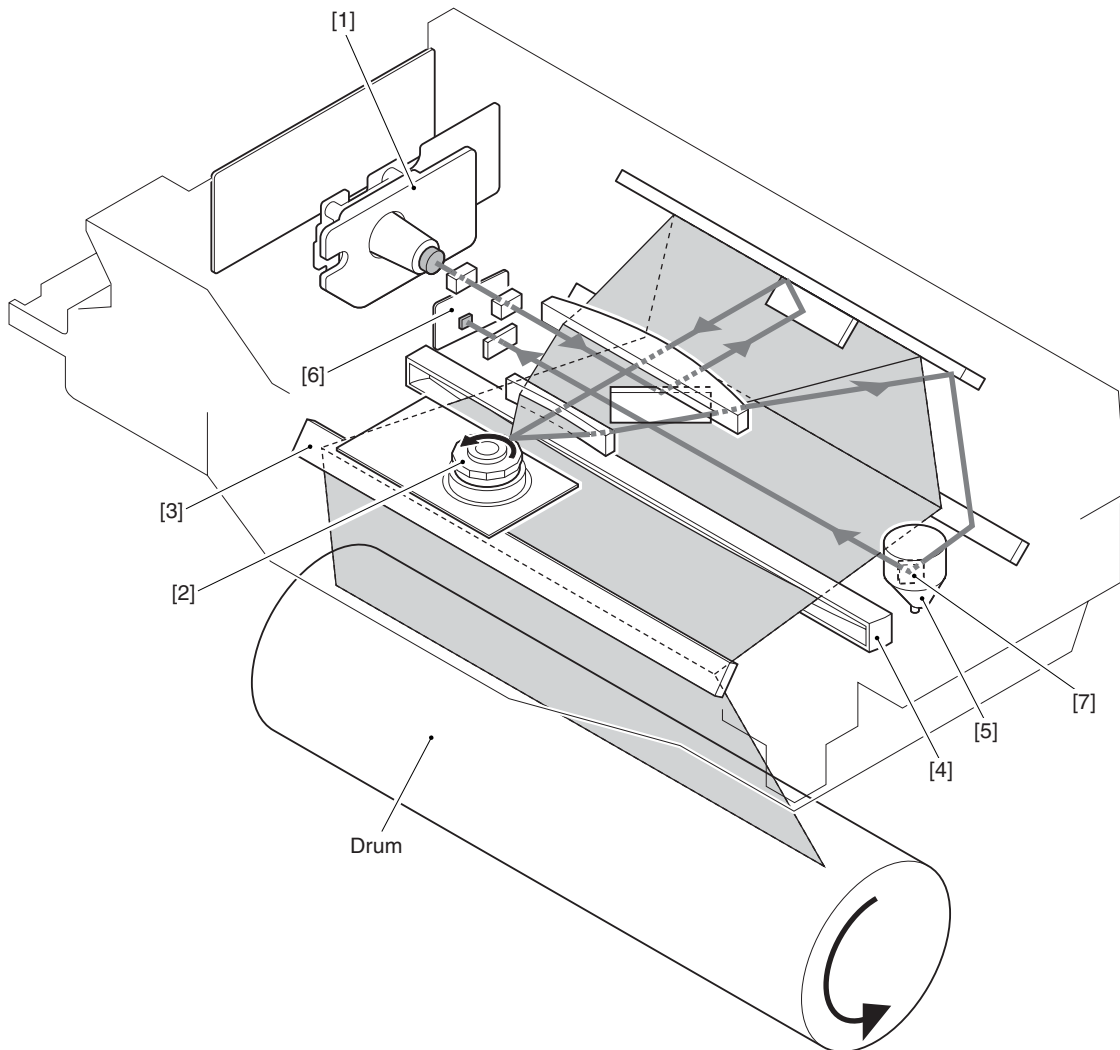
Laser Beam	
Wavelength	645 to 665 nm (Visible laser)
Output	20 mW
Number of laser beams	2-beam laser
Laser scanner motor	
Motor type	DC brushless motor
Rotation	Approx. 35433 rpm
Bearing type	Air bearing
Polygon mirror	
Number of facets	12 facets (29 dia)
List of controls	
Sync control	Horizontal scanning sync control
	Vertical scanning sync control
Color displacement correction	reproduction ratio in horizontal scanning direction
	displacement in horizontal scanning direction
	Control to correct write start position in horizontal scanning direction
	Control to correct write start position in vertical scanning direction
Light intensity control	Half magnification ratio adjustment control in horizontal direction
	APC control
Others	PWM control
	Laser ON/OFF control
	Laser scanner motor control
	Laser scanner motor speed change control
	Laser shutter control

6.1.2 Major Components

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

T-6-2

Name	Description
[1] Laser driver	generates laser light.
[2] Polygon mirror	scans the laser beam in horizontal scanning direction.
[3] Guide mirror	directs laser light in the direction of the drum.
[4] Corrective lens	corrects displacement of laser light coming in horizontal scanning direction.
[5] Displacement correction motor	moves the corrective lens to correct displacement in horizontal scanning direction.
[6] BD detection PCB	detects laser light as a BD signal.
[7] BD mirror	reflects the laser light in the direction of the BD detection PCB.

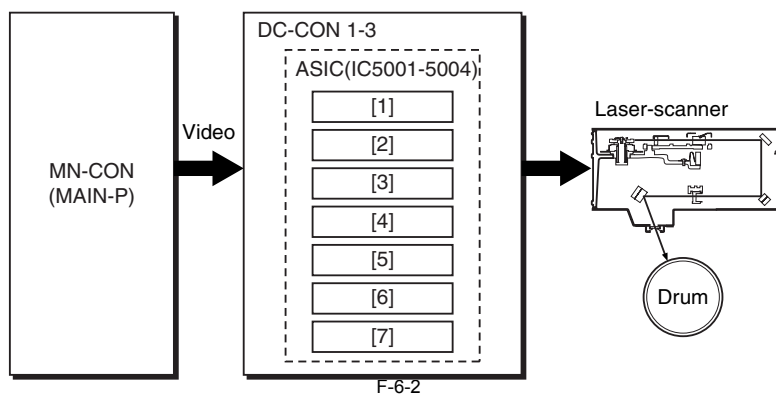


F-6-1

6.1.3 Control System Configuration

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

Control of the laser exposure system is mainly performed at ASIC (IC5001-5004) in DC controller PCB. ASIC performs the following 7 controls and produces the electrostatic latent image on the photosensitive drum based on the video signals sent from the main controller PCB.



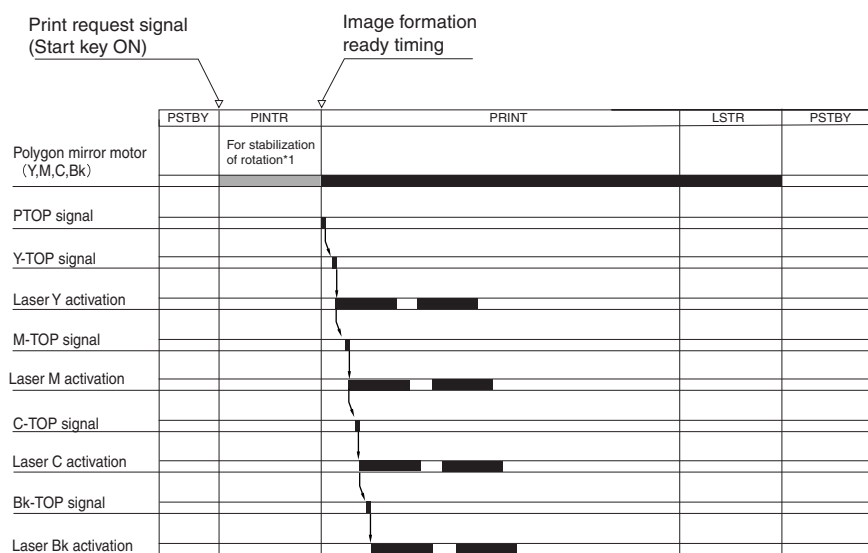
- [1] Laser ON/OFF control
 - [2] Horizontal Scanning Sync Control
 - [3] Vertical Scanning Sync Control
 - [4] APC Control
 - [5] PWM Control
 - [6] Laser Scanner Motor Control
 - [7] Correcting image displacement
- MN-CON: Main Controller PCB
DC-CON: DC Controller PCB

6.2 Basic Sequence

6.2.1 Basic Sequence

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

After turning on the Start Key (or print request signal input), the laser scanner motor starts rotation. When the rotation is stabilized, the printer unit is ready for image formation and the sync signal (PTOP signal) is generated at the printer side. Based on this signal, each color's sync signal in vertical scanning direction (Y-TOP, M-TOP, C-TOP, K-TOP) is generated to execute laser activation of each color in sync with these signals.



*1 Print:11.8 s
Copy:12.9 s

F-6-3

6.3 Various Control

6.3.1 Controlling the Laser Activation Timing

6.3.1.1 ON/OFF Control

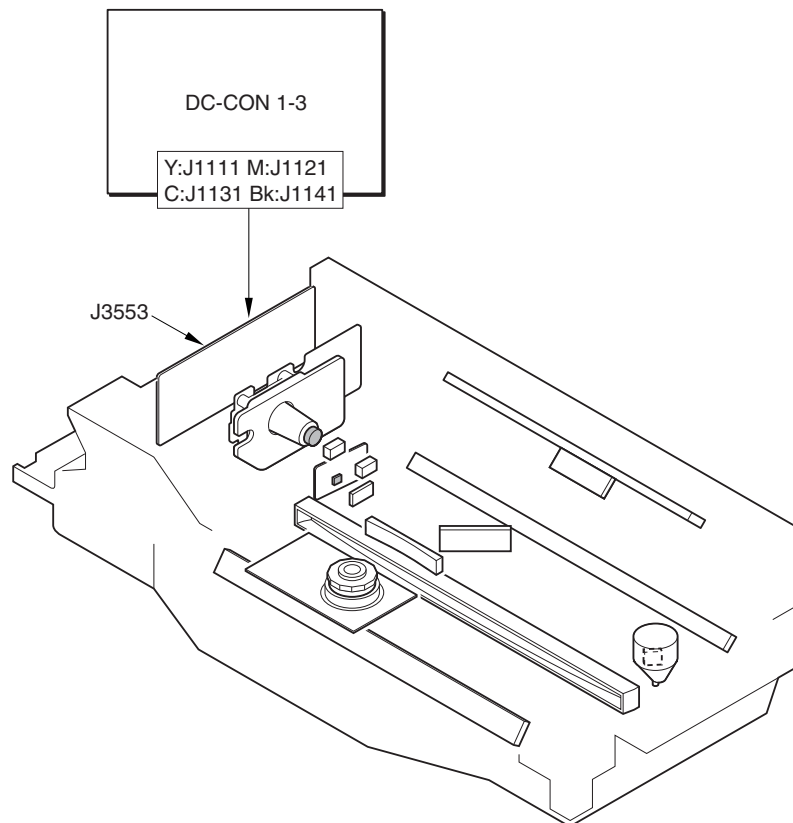
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

The laser beam ON/OFF is performed at the laser driver PCB.

This circuit controls the laser beam ON/OFF according to the combination of the laser control signals sent from DC controller PCB.

T-6-3

Laser control signal								Operation status	Laser status
CTL2A	CTL1A	CTL0A	CTL2B	CTL1B	CTL0B	ASW-A	ASW-B		
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	Standby	OFF
0	0	1	0	1	1	1	1	LD-A_APC-H	ON
0	1	0	0	1	1	1	1	LD-B_APC-H	ON
1	0	1	0	0	1	0	1	LD-A_APC-L	ON
1	1	0	0	1	0	1	0	LD-B_APC-L	ON
1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	Print	Video signal input allowed
0	1	1	0	1	1	1	1	Forced OFF	OFF

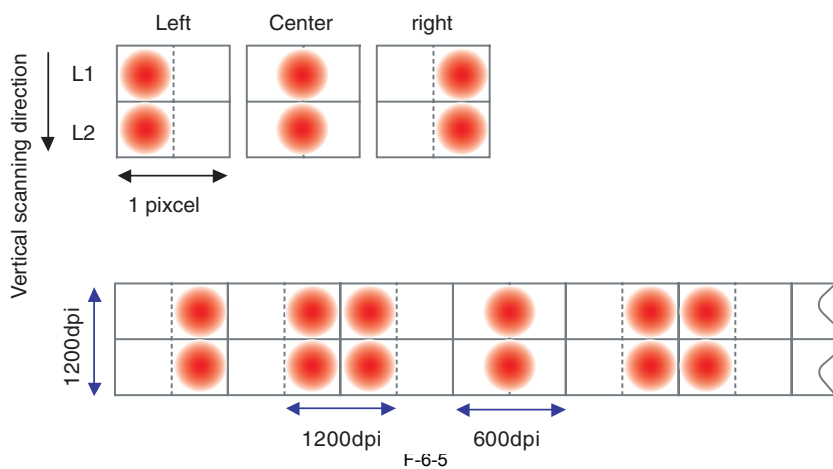


F-6-4

MEMO:
The light density set at APC is cleared at standby mode.

MEMO: Laser Activation Control at 1200dpi

This machine switches the resolution in horizontal scanning direction from 600dpi to 1200dpi to realize a high-resolution image. In this case, 1200dpi is enabled by executing latent image formation at the left/right and the center in the pixels according to the pixel information on the left/right in horizontal scanning direction.



6.3.1.2 Sync Control in Horizontal Scanning Direction

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

The sync control in horizontal scanning direction in the control to align the write start position in horizontal scanning direction of each color.

This control is performed by 1 line each at the BD sync control circuit in the PWM IC.

This circuit generates sync signals in horizontal scanning direction used at the DC controller PCB, based on the BD signals sent from the BD PCB of each color.

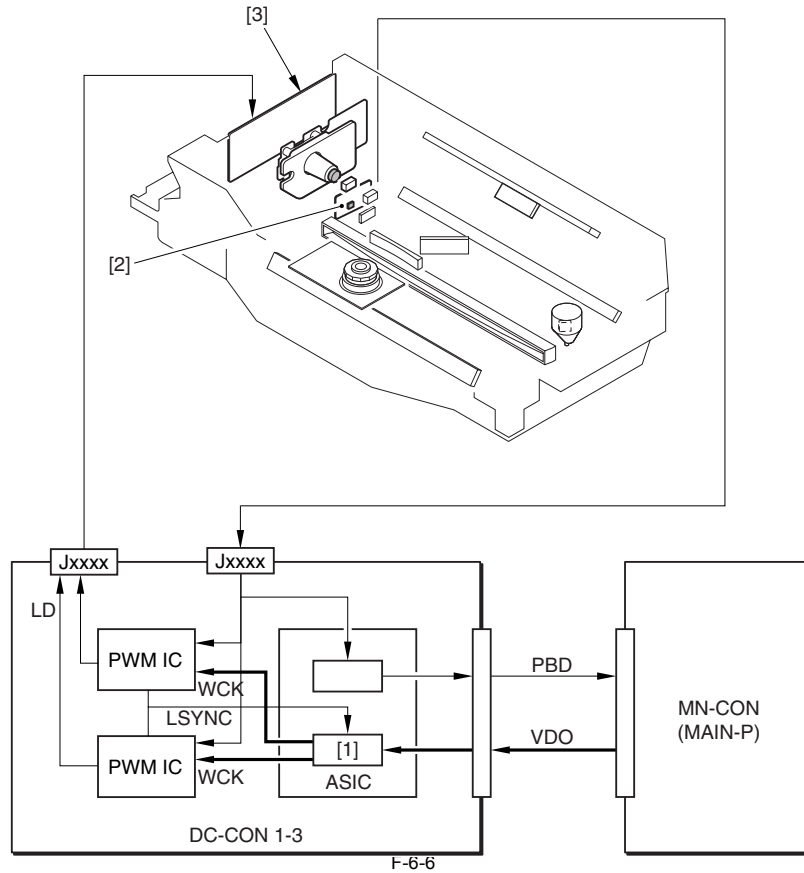
The following explains the operation of this circuit.

The VIDEO signals (VDO Y, VDO M, VDO C, VDO Bk) coming from the main controller PCB after the specified period of time are sent to FIFO in PWM IC via FIFO in ASIC.

At the same time, the BD sync control circuit generates the printer sync signals (LSYNC) in PWM IC based on the BD signals to output inside of PWM IC and FIFO.

After that, FIFO reads out the image signal to PWM IC synchronized with the printer sync signal.

PWM IC converts the image signal to the laser drive signal (LD) to send it to the laser unit of each color.



- [1]FIFO
- [2]BD PCB
- [3]Laser Unit
- MN-CON: Main controller PCB
- DC-CON: DC controller PCB

6.3.1.3 Sync Control in Vertical Scanning Direction

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

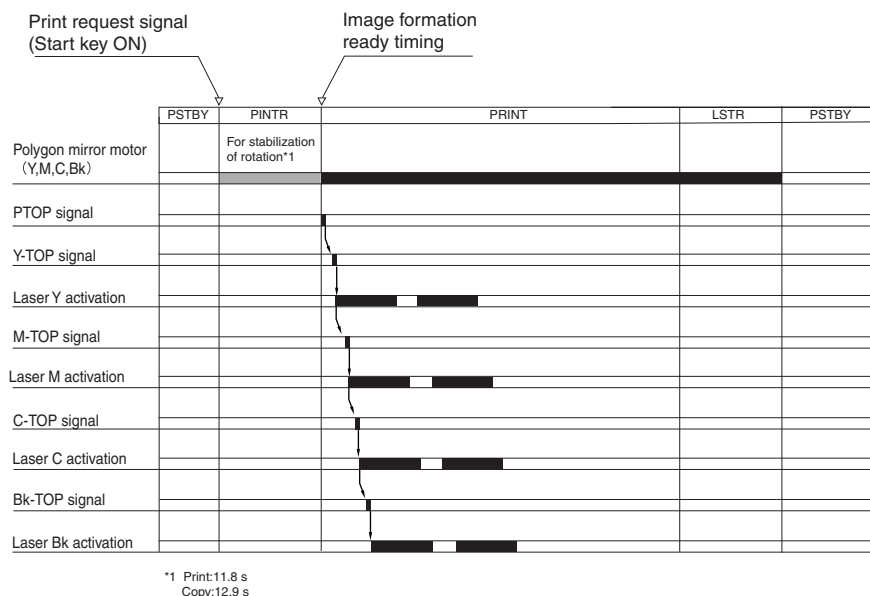
The sync control in vertical scanning direction in the control to align the write start position of the image in each color formed on the ITB at full-color print. This control is executed for every color, and control is performed at the vertical scanning sync control circuit in ASIC.

The following is the sequence of operation:

On receiving the print command, the DC controller generates the vertical scanning sync signal (PTOP) with reference to its internal timer.

The DC controller generates the vertical scanning sync signals (Y-TOP, M-TOP, C-TOP, Bk-TOP) of individual colors based on the PTOPI signal, and sends them to the main controller.

On receiving these signals, the main controller outputs the video signals (VDO Y, VDO M, VDO C, VDO Bk) after the specified period of time to the DC controller. As a result, the laser drivers of individual colors go on to emit laser beams that scan the surface of the photosensitive drum starting at a specific point.



F-6-7

6.3.2 Controlling the Intensity of Laser Light

6.3.2.1 APC Control

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

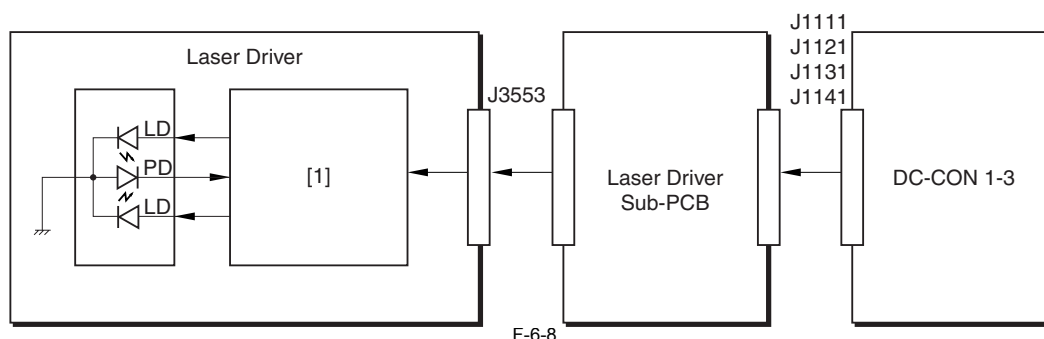
The APC control controls the laser light to keep the light intensity constant by adjusting the laser diode output on the laser driver.

The DC controller PCB executes this control.

The DC controller PCB outputs the laser control signal to the laser driver IC in the laser driver PCB.

Herewith, the APC mode is set in the laser driver IC to forcibly emit laser diode (LD).

At the same time, the laser driver IC monitors the laser diode (LD) with the photo diode (PD), and it adjusts the laser diode output until the light intensity becomes constant.



F-6-8

[1] Laser Driver IC
DC-CON: DC Controller PCB

MEMO: Shading in Horizontal Scanning Direction

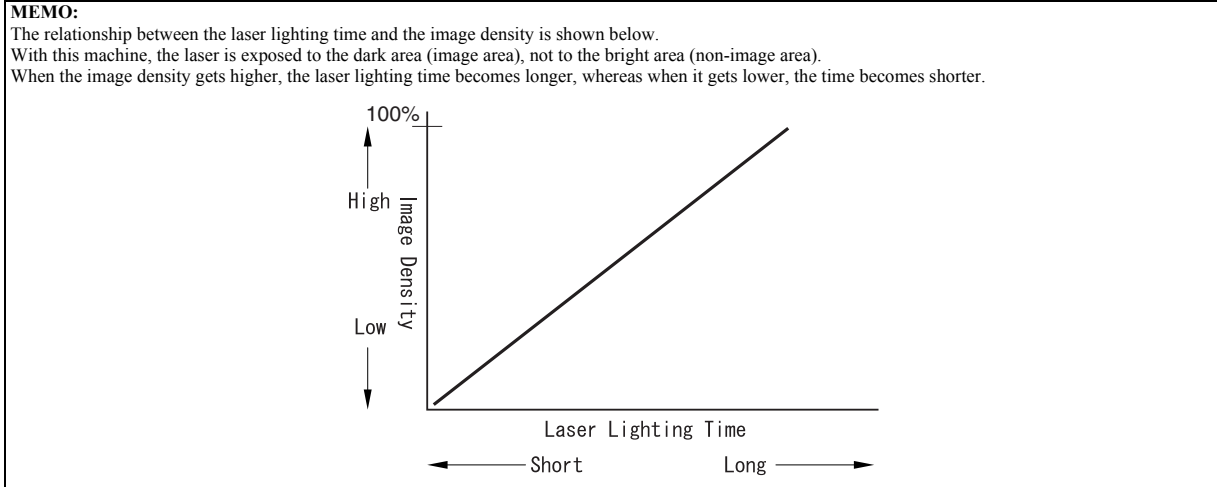
This machine performs correcting uneven density in horizontal scanning direction that is due the characteristics in light intensity distribution of the laser scanner unit and also the characteristics of the environment and the photosensitive drum.

The image area is electrically divided into 26 blocks. The setting value is placed for each block to perform correction in order to approach the target light intensity.

6.3.2.2 PWM Control

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

The PWM control determines the laser lighting time depending on the image data transmitted from the main controller PCB. The laser lighting time (see Note) is selected at the DC controller PCB, and it determines the one pattern from 30-level of lighting patterns for each pixel.



6.3.3 Controlling the Laser Scanner Motor

6.3.3.1 Laser Scanner Motor Control

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

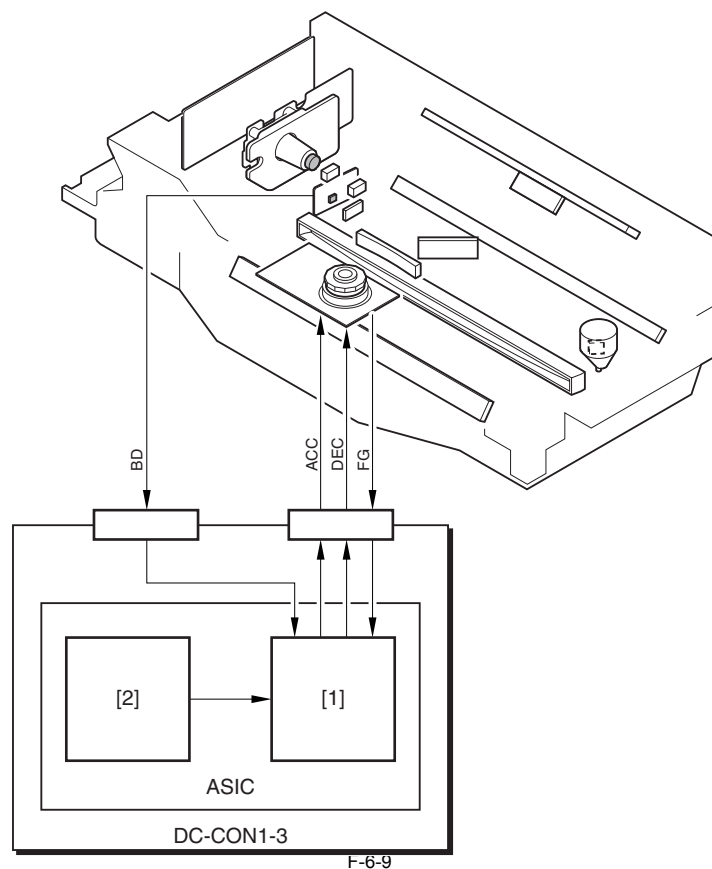
The laser scanner motor control is used for rotating the scanner motor with the specified speed.

This control is executed in the motor speed control block and the standard signal generation block in the DC controller PCB.

The motor speed control block detects the speed detection signal (FG, BD), and controls the acceleration signal (ACC) and deceleration signal (DEC) to be the specified speed by comparing the standard signal generated in the standard signal generation block.

The speed detection point is switched depending on the printer's status in order to shorten the time for scanner motor speed control with this machine. FC signal is the detection signal for roughly adjusting the motor speed, and it is used when turning on the power or at the last rotation.

BD signal is the detection signal for finely adjusting the motor speed, and it is used at printing.



[1] Motor Speed Control Block
 [2] Standard Signal Generation Block
 DC-CON1-3: DC controller PCB 1-3

Relevant Error Code:

E110 (Scanner Motor Error)

- 0001: indicates failure of detecting FD signal when passing the specified period of time after the activation of the scanner motor.
- 0002/0003: indicated the failure of detecting FD signal during the stabilized rotation of the scanner motor.

6.3.4 Controlling the Laser Shutter

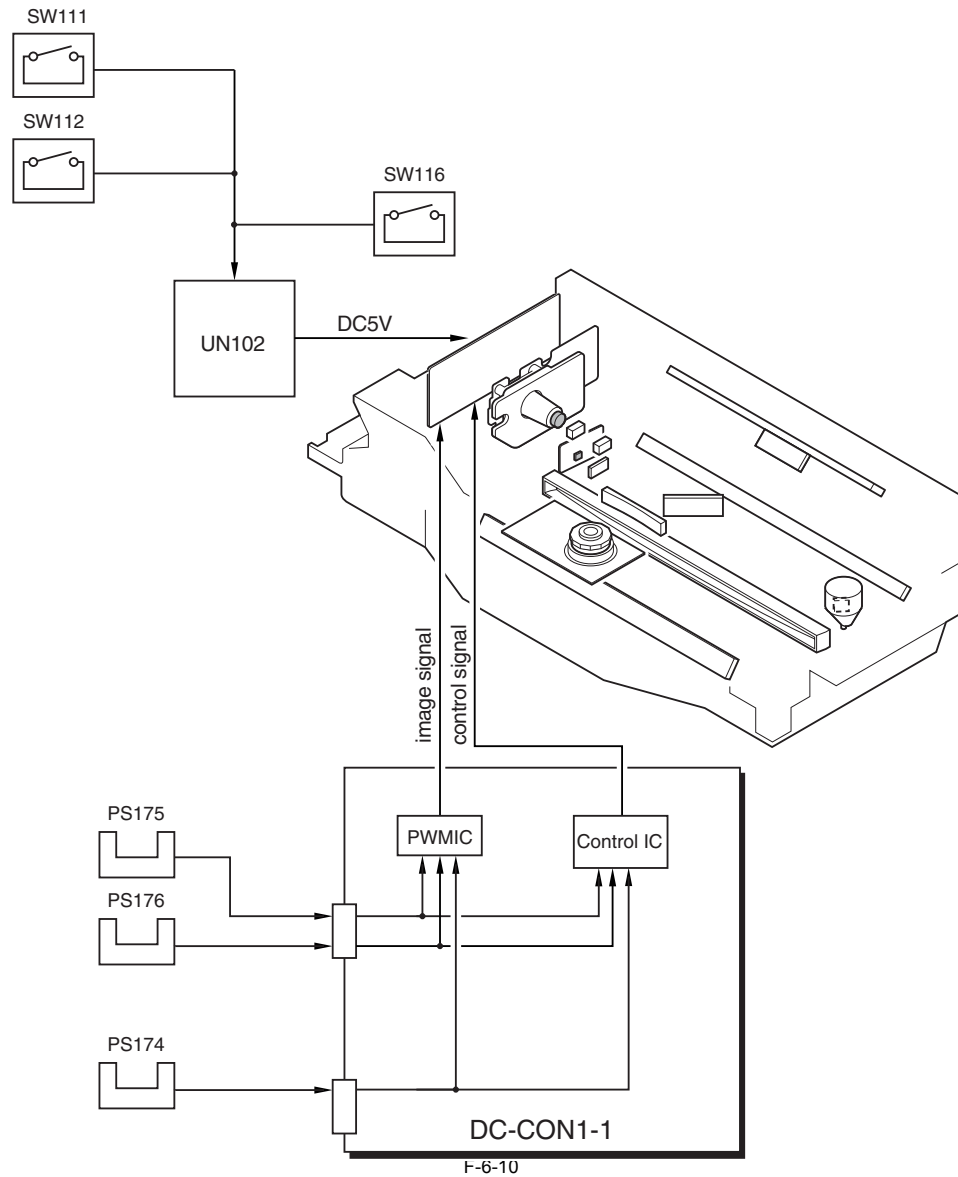
6.3.4.1 Laser shutter control

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

Turn off the laser when detecting any of the following covers opened.

- Main station front right cover
- Main station front left cover
- Vertical path cover

When detecting any of the covers opened, turn off the operating voltage (5V) applied to the laser driver and also the laser control signal/image signal.



PS174: Vertical path cover open/closed sensor
 PS175: Main station front right cover open/closed sensor
 PS176: Main station front left cover open/closed sensor
 SW111: Main station front right cover open/closed switch
 SW112: Main station front left cover open/closed switch
 SW116: Vertical path cover open/closed switch
 UN102: Main station power supply connect PCB
 DC-CON1-1: DC controller PCB 1-1

6.3.5 Correcting Image Displacement

6.3.5.1 Overview of color displacement correction control

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

In this machine, a patch image is formed between images of each color during primary transfer along with the transfer of image in each color on the ITB in the order of Y, M, C, and Bk.

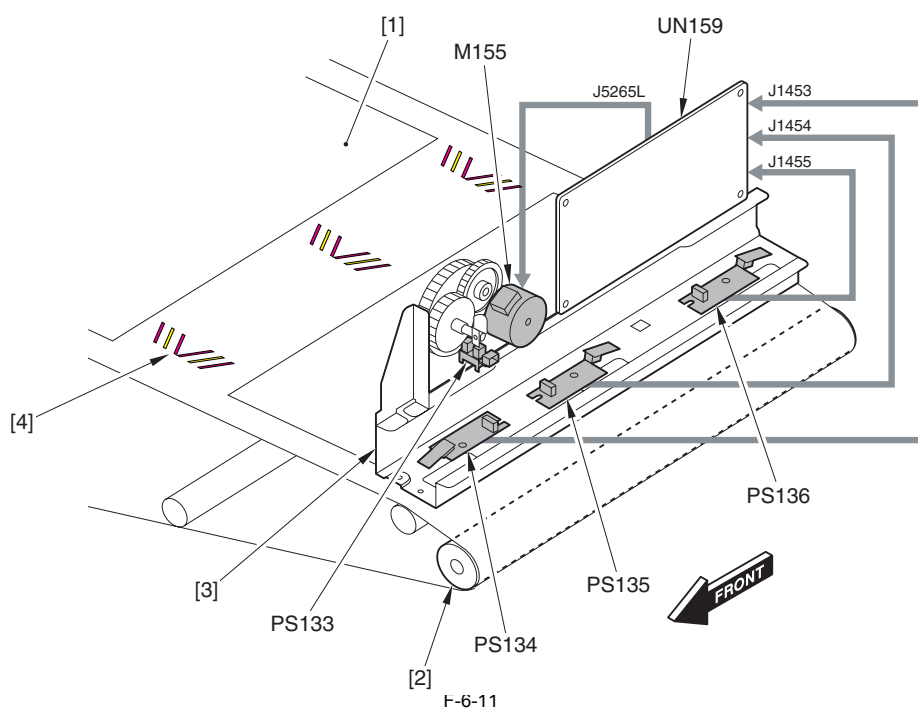
The machine recognizes the positions and the sizes of images in each color by detecting the interval and the tilt of the patch image by the registration patch sensor. The following correction controls are performed according to the detection result with the registration patch sensor.

Detection Result	Correction control	Timing
Positional displacement in horizontal direction	Correction of write starting position in horizontal direction	Sheet-to-sheet interval (PS134 sensor)
Enlargement/reduction in horizontal direction	Correction of magnification ratio in horizontal direction	Sheet-to-sheet interval (PS134/PS136 sensor)
Positional displacement in vertical direction	Correction of write starting position in vertical direction	Sheet-to-sheet interval (PS134/PS135/PS136 sensor)
Tilt in horizontal direction	Correction of laser optical path	Sheet-to-sheet interval (PS134/PS136 sensor)
Image stretched in the horizontal direction	Half magnification ratio adjustment control in horizontal direction	Performs at parts replacement (PS134/PS135/PS136 sensor)

There are the 3 types of registration patch sensors (front)/(center)/(rear) (PS134/135/136), and these sensors detect the patch images formed on the front, center and rear sides of the ITB, respectively.

The registration patch sensor is normally separated from the ITB with the shutter, which opens according to the needs of detection. The shutter opens/closes by the drive of the color registration patch sensor shutter motor (M155).

The home position of the shutter is detected with the registration patch sensor shutter HP sensor (PS133).



- | | |
|---------------------|---|
| [1] Image | M155: Color registration patch sensor shutter motor |
| [2] Steering roller | PS133: Registration patch sensor shutter HP sensor |
| [3] Shutter | PS134: Registration patch sensor (front) |
| [4] Patch image | PS135: Registration patch sensor (center) |
| | PS136: Registration patch sensor (rear) |
| | UN159: Registration patch sensor driver PCB |

6.3.5.2 Color displacement detection/correction timing

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

The following are the timings of detecting/correcting color displacement.

- At first power-on (fixing temperature 50 deg C or less) warm-up rotation.
- At warm-up rotation for the job start after the specified periods (after 5, 12, 30, 60, 120 min, and every 120 min after that) (Performed at sheet-to-sheet interval during 1 Job after the specified period)

Patch image at warm-up rotation/initial rotation (Performs 10 sets)

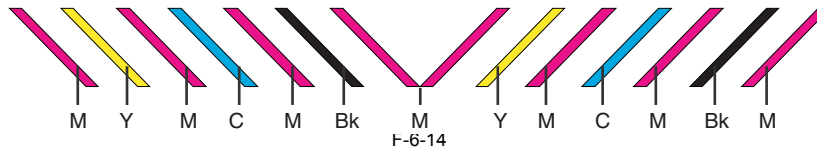


Patch image at sheet-to-sheet interval (Performs 10 sets for each color)



* Same for Y and C

The operator maintenance/service mode after pulling in and out the drum unit/replacing the laser scanner unit.
Performs 4 sets.



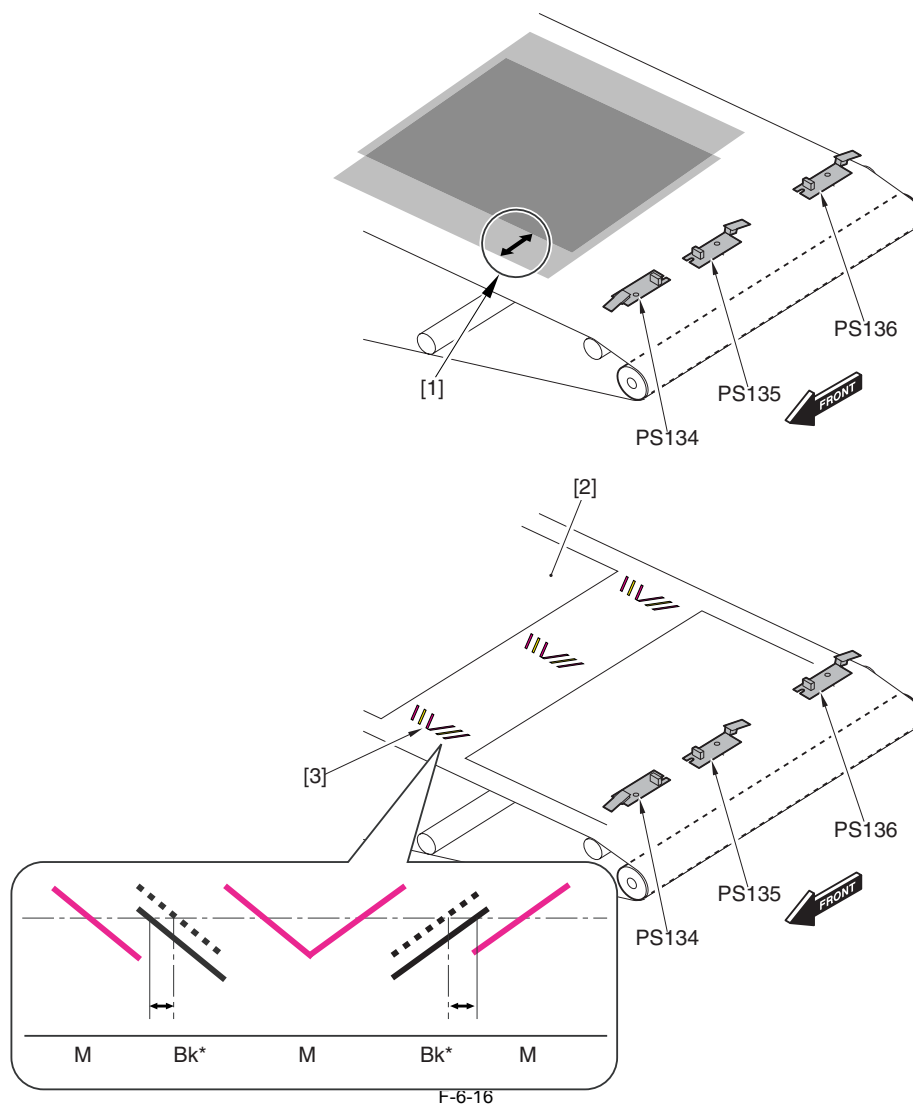
Performs 10 sets.



6.3.5.3 Correction of write starting position in horizontal direction

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

The M pattern should be the reference. The length of the center line of the M image position correction pattern (front) is compared to the length of the center line of the image position correction pattern (front) for each color. This value is detected as the color displacement in horizontal direction. When color displacement is detected, the laser write starting timing in horizontal direction is corrected.



- [1] Displacement in horizontal direction
- [2] Image
- [3] Patch image

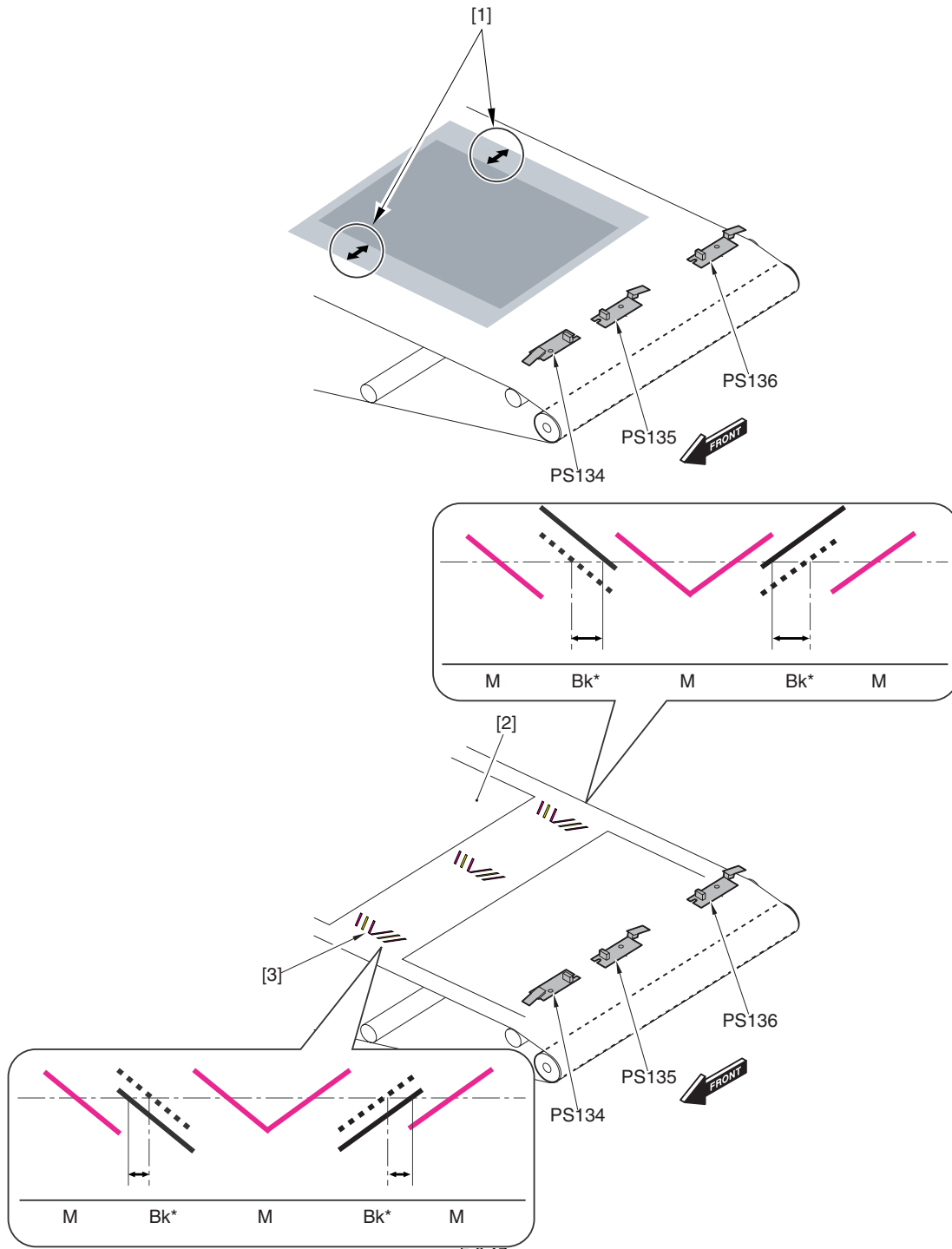
F-6-16

6.3.5.4 Correction of the magnification ratio in horizontal direction

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

The M pattern should be the reference. The length of the center line of the M image position correction pattern (front/rear) is compared to the length of the center line of the image position correction pattern (front/rear) for each color. The change of the magnification ratio in horizontal direction is detected according to this displacement.

When the machine detects any change, it corrects the timing at which the video signals are transferred to the laser unit.

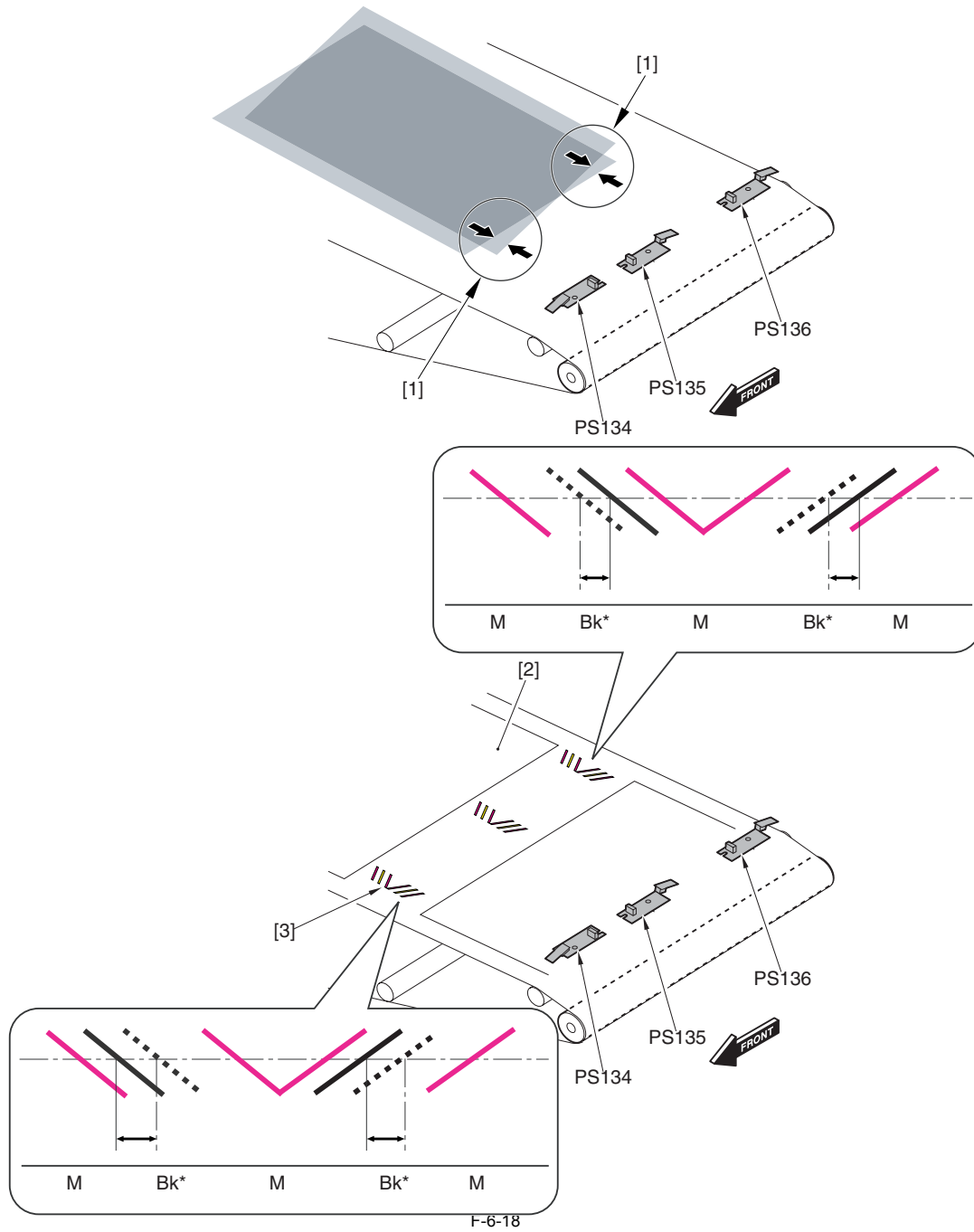


- [1] Change of the magnification ratio in horizontal direction
- [2] Image
- [3] Patch image

6.3.5.5 Correction of tilt in horizontal direction

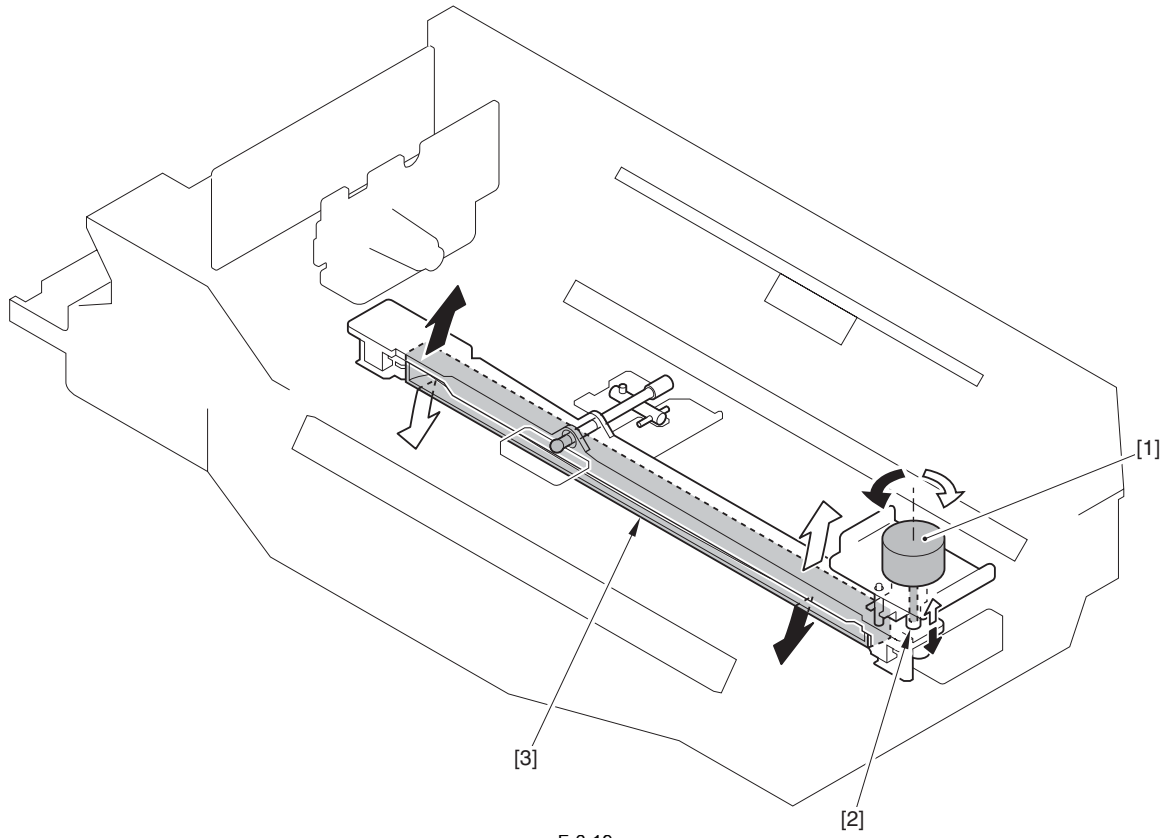
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

The M patten should be the reference. The tilt in horizontal direction is detected according to the displacement of the rear/front pattern for each color.



- [1] Tilt
- [2] Image
- [3] Patch image

When the tilt is detected, the tilt-correction motor in the laser unit rotates and the slider moves the correction lens up and down to correct the tilt.



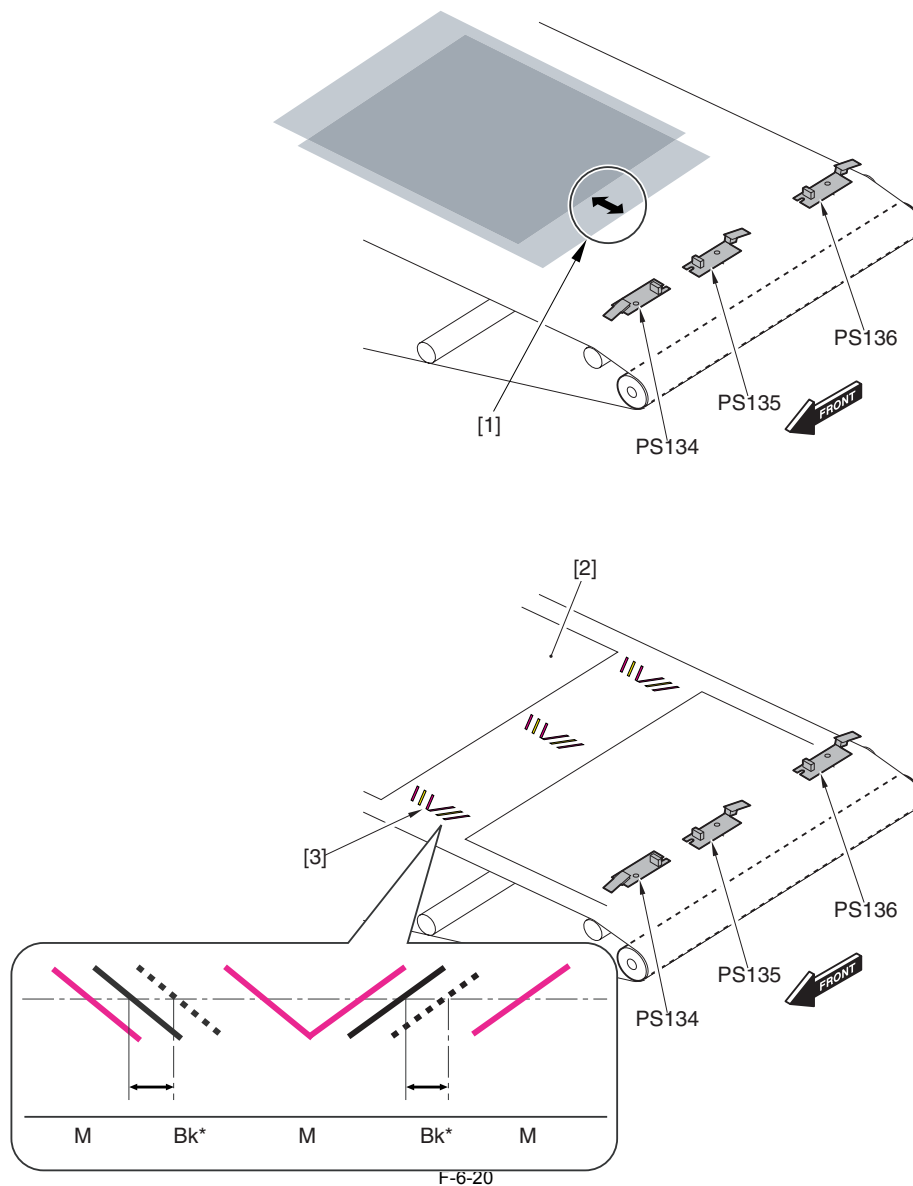
- [1] Tilt-correction motor
- [2] Slider
- [3] Lens for correction

F-6-19

6.3.5.6 Correction of write starting position in vertical direction

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

The M pattern should be the reference. The length of the center line of the M image position correction pattern (front/rear/center) is compared to the length of the center line of the image position correction pattern (front/rear/center) for each color. This displacement is detected as the color displacement in vertical direction. When color displacement is detected, the laser write starting timing in vertical direction is corrected.



- [1] Displacement in vertical direction
 [2] Image
 [3] Patch image

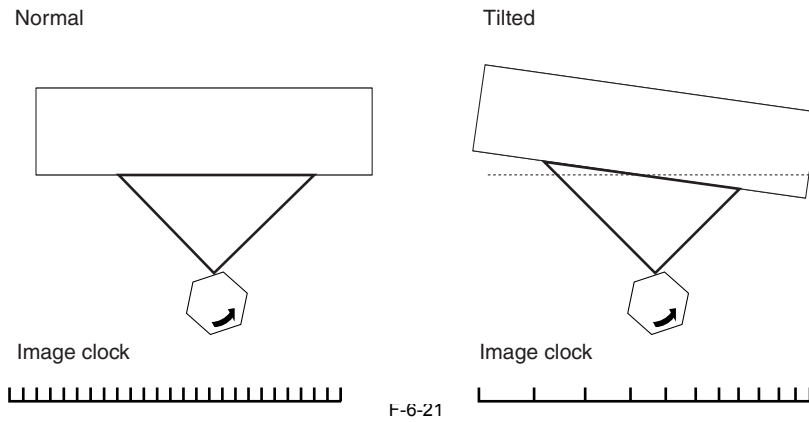
F-6-20

6.3.5.7 Half magnification ratio adjustment control in horizontal direction

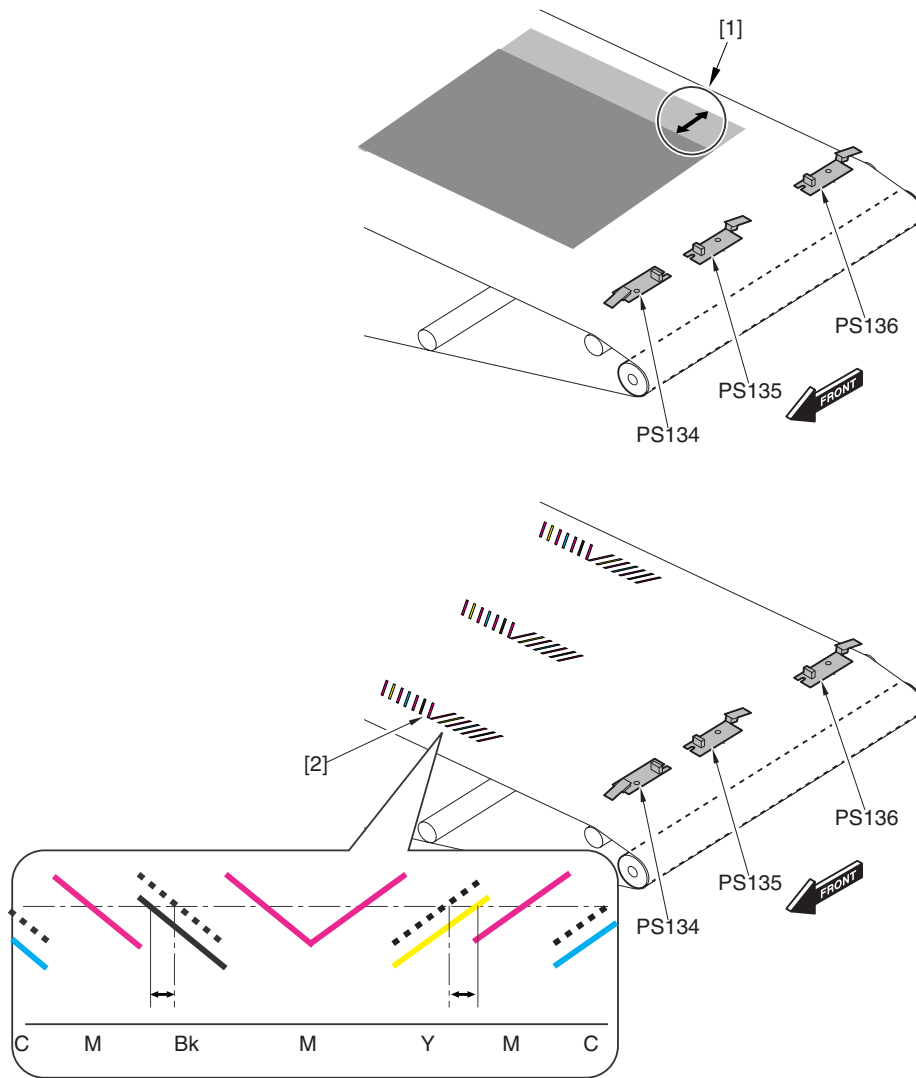
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

Tilt occurs due to mechanical factors at the time of replacing the laser scanner unit/pulling in and out the photosensitive drum, causing the distance between the drum and the laser to change.

Long distance from the laser and the drum makes the image clock interval larger, increasing the width of the image. It is necessary to perform half magnification ratio adjustment control by the operator maintenance/service mode.



The M pattern should be reference. The length of the center line of the M image position correction pattern (front/rear/center) is compared to the length of the center line of the image position correction pattern (front/rear/center) for each color. This value is detected as the color displacement in horizontal direction. When color displacement is detected, the laser emitting timing in horizontal direction is corrected.



[1] Length of the image increased in horizontal direction
[2] Patch image

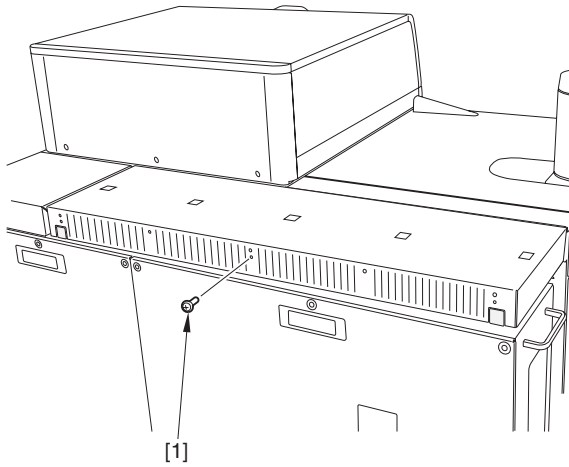
6.4 Parts Replacement Procedure

6.4.1 Laser Scanner Unit

6.4.1.1 Before Removing Laser Scanner Unit (Without POD Deck)

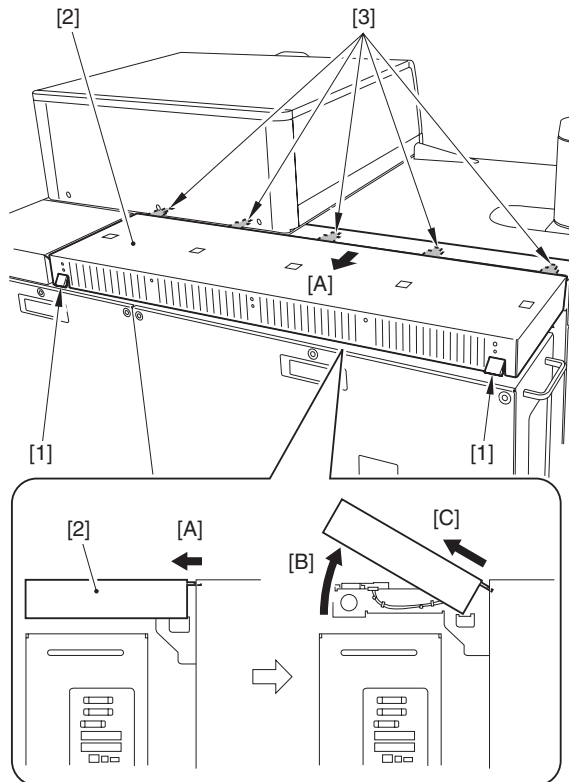
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

1) Remove the screw [1].



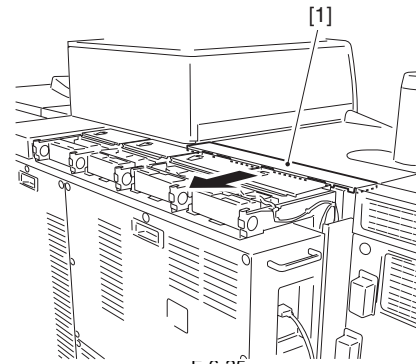
F-6-23

2) Release the release levers [1], shift the main station upper rear cover [2] in the direction of [A] to pull the protrusions [3] out. Move in the directions of [B] and to [C] in order to remove.



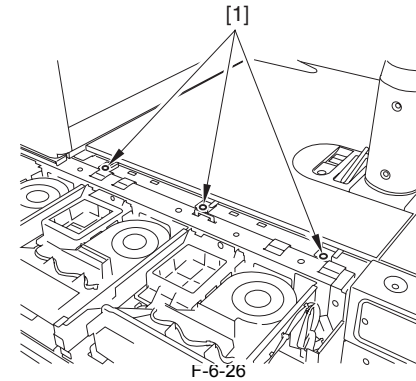
F-6-24

3) Detach the main station of upper middle cover [1].



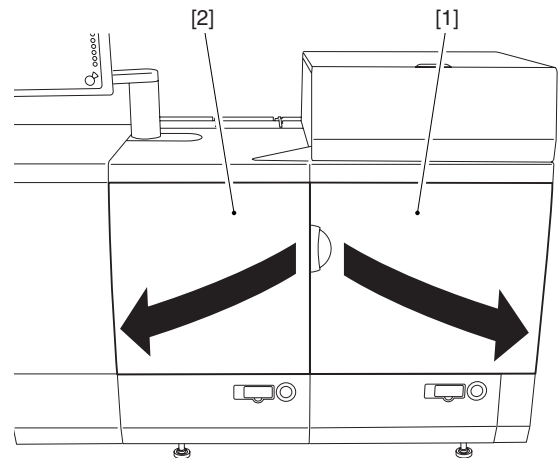
F-6-25

4) Remove the 3 screws [1].



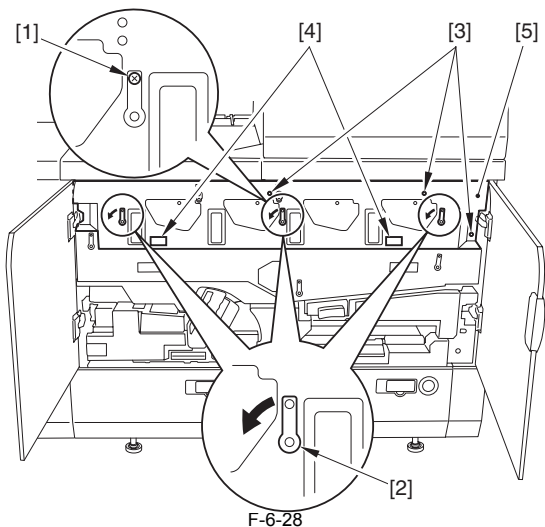
F-6-26

5) Open the main station front right [1]/left [2] covers fully in order.



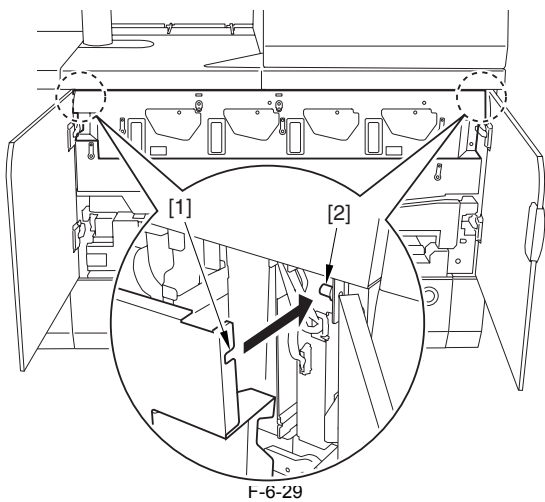
F-6-27

6) Remove the stepped screw [1] and push the 3 levers [2] to the direction of the arrow. Loosen the 3 screws [3] and hold the grips [4] to detach the process kit inner cover [5].



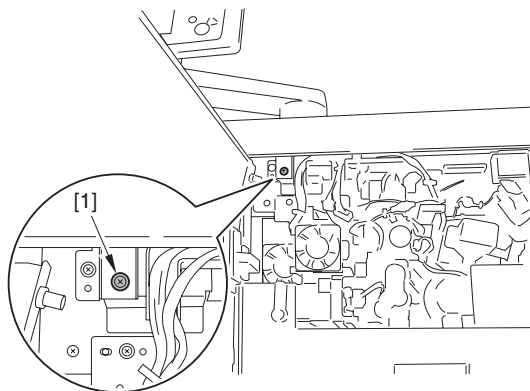
F-6-28

⚠ Points to note when attaching the process kit inner cover
Fit the cut-off [1] at each end to the pins [2] on the machine to attach.



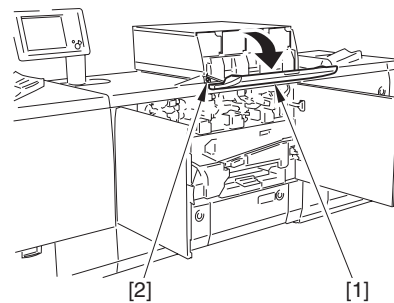
F-6-29

7) Remove the screw [1].



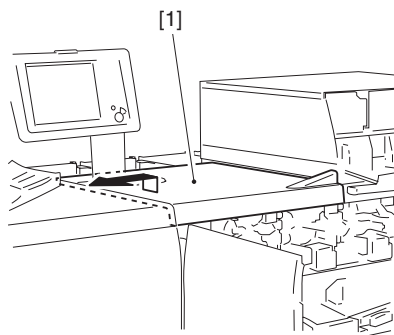
F-6-30

8) Open the outer toner replacement cover [1] and remove the screw [2].



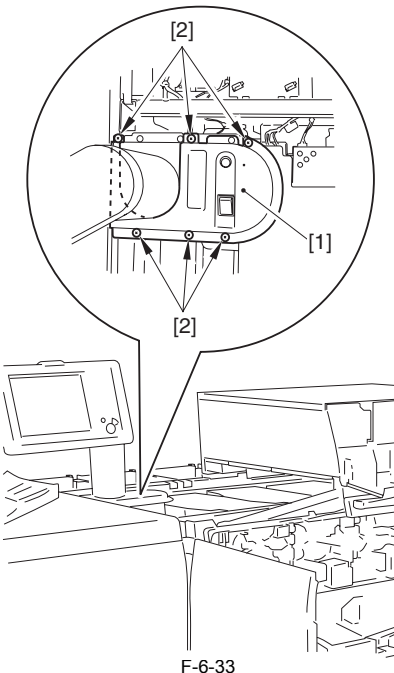
F-6-31

9) While lifting up the left side of the main station upper front cover [1], slide the cover to the direction of the arrow to detach.



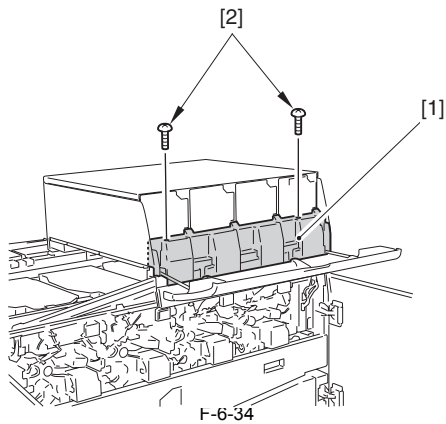
F-6-32

MEMO:
This step is necessary when removing the laser scanner unit for Y.
It is not required for other colors of M/C/Bk.
10) Remove the 6 screws [2] to remove the switch cover [1].

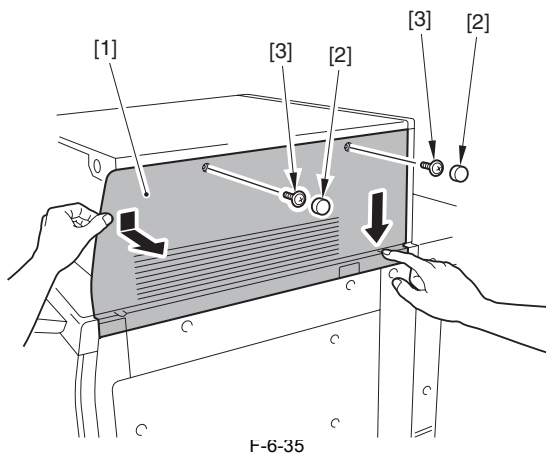


F-6-33

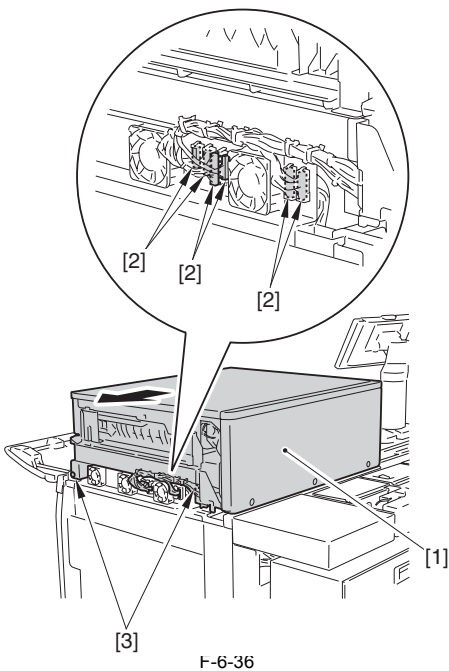
11) Remove the 2 screws to detach the toner unit front cover [1].



12) Remove the 2 rubber covers [2] and the 2 screws [3] to detach the toner unit right cover [1].



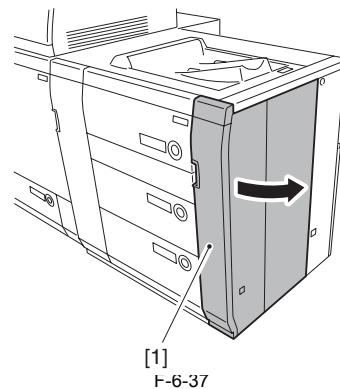
13) Disconnect the 6 connectors [2], remove the 2 screws [3], and then slide the toner unit [1] to the direction of the arrow.



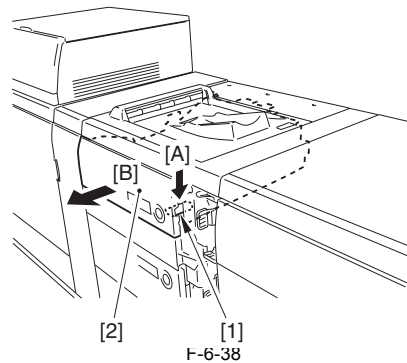
6.4.1.2 Before Removing Laser Scanner Unit (With POD Deck)

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

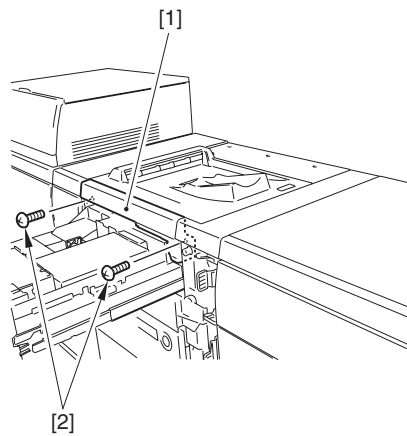
1) Open the POD deck right front cover [1].
When the secondary POD deck is also connected, open the multi-path front cover.



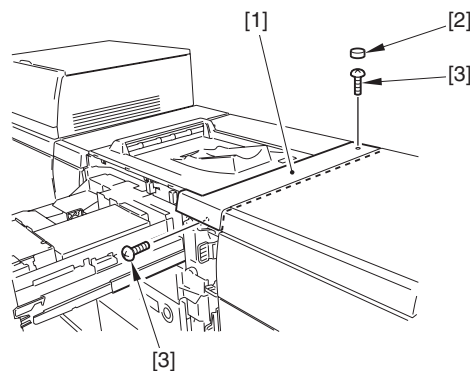
2) Push the latch [1] in the direction of [A] to open the upper deck [2].
3) Slide out the upper deck [2] fully in the direction of [B].



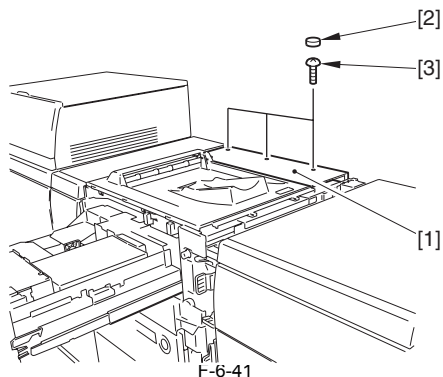
4) Remove the POD deck upper front cover [1].
- 2 screws [2]



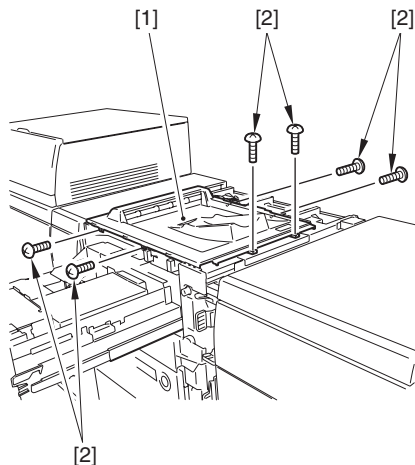
5) Detach the multi-path upper cover [1].
- 1 cover rubber [2]
- 2 screws [3]



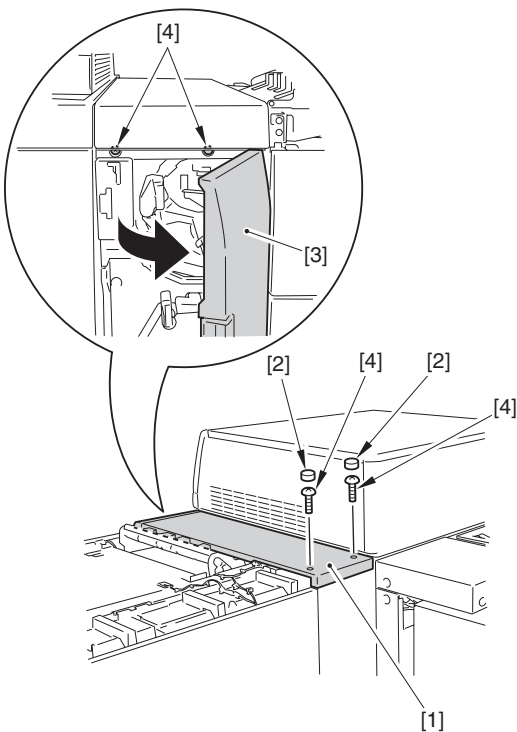
6) Detach the POD deck upper rear cover [1].
- 3 cover rubbers [2]
- 3 screws [3]



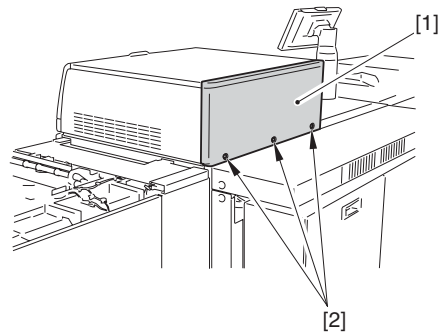
7) Detach the escape tray [1].
- 6 screws [2]



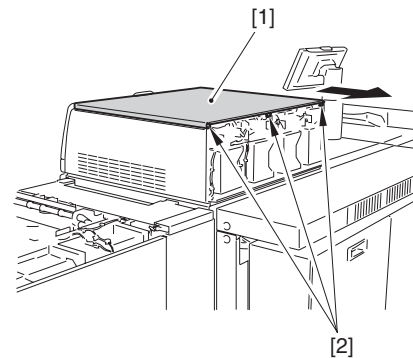
8) Open the buffer path front cover [3].
9) Detach the buffer path upper cover [1].
- 2 cover rubbers [2]
- 4 screws [4]



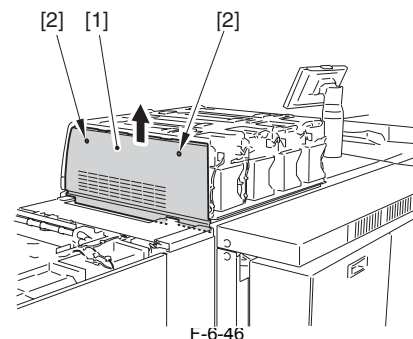
10) Detach the toner unit rear cover [1].
- 3 screws [2]



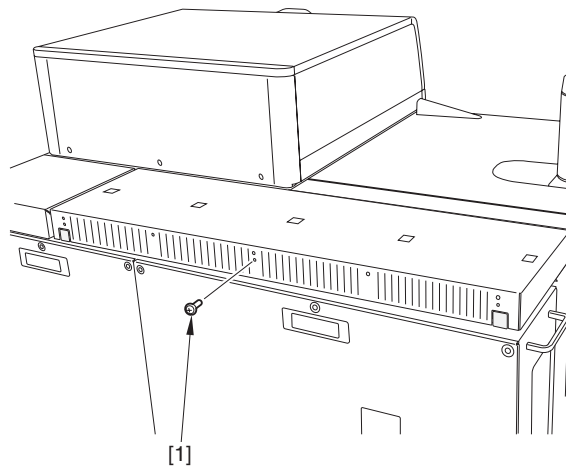
11) Slide the toner unit upper cover [1] to the direction of the arrow to detach.
- 3 screws [2]



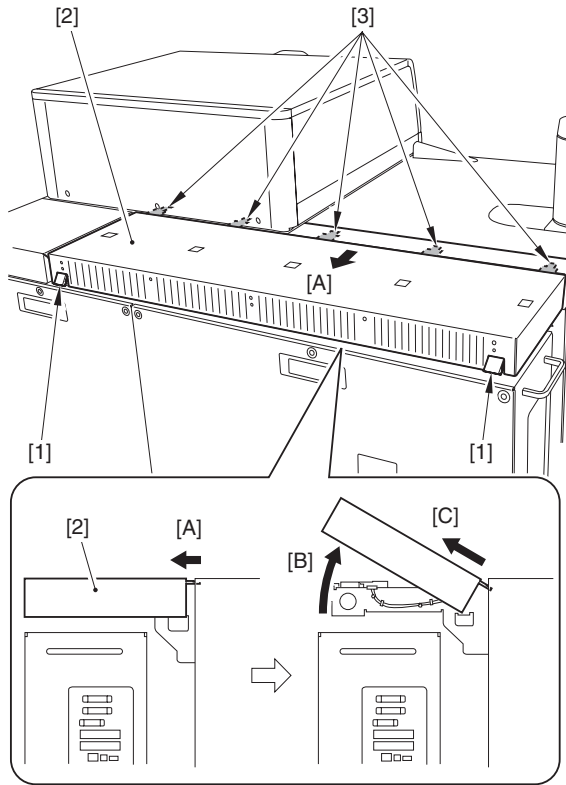
12) Detach the toner unit right cover [1].
- 2 screws [2]



13) Remove the screw [1].

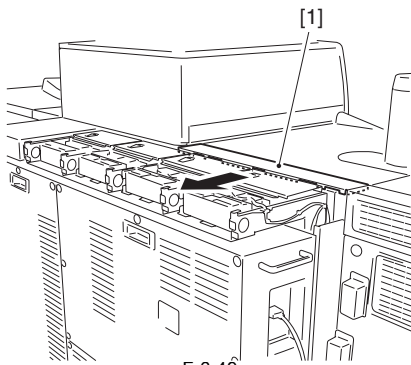


14) Release the release levers [1], shift the main station upper rear cover [2] in the direction of [A] to pull the protrusions [3] out. Move in the directions of [B] and to [C] in order to remove.



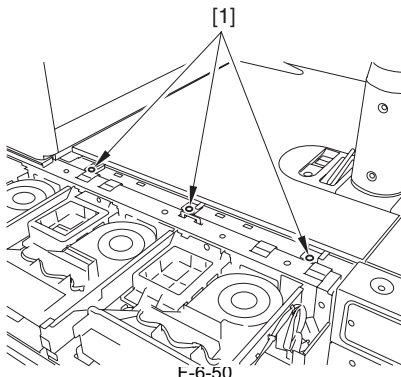
F-6-48

15) Detach the main station of upper middle cover [1].



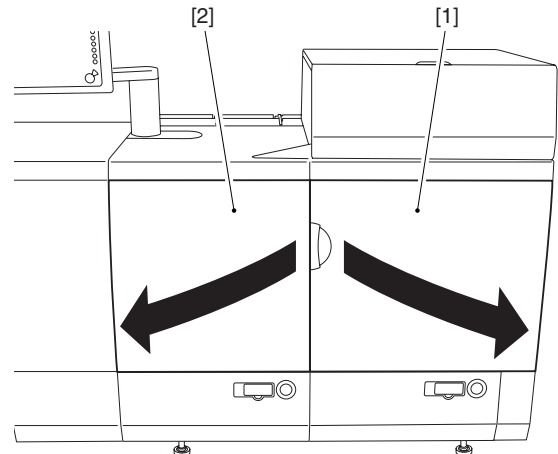
F-6-49

16) Remove the 3 screws [1].



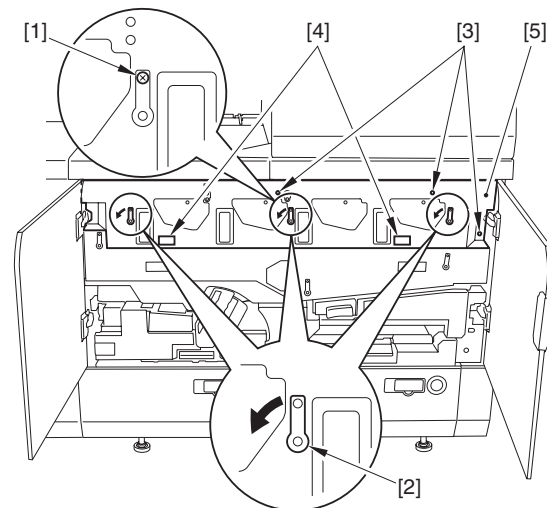
F-6-50

17) Open the main station front right [1]/left [2] covers fully in order.



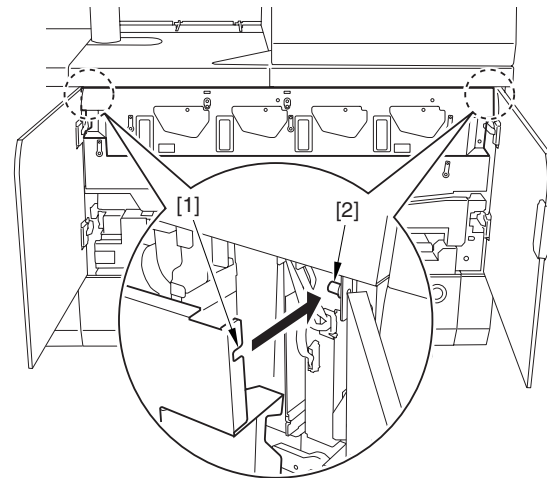
F-6-51

18) Remove the stepped screw [1] and push the 3 levers [2] to the direction of the arrow. Loosen the 3 screws [3] and hold the grips [4] to detach the process kit inner cover [5].



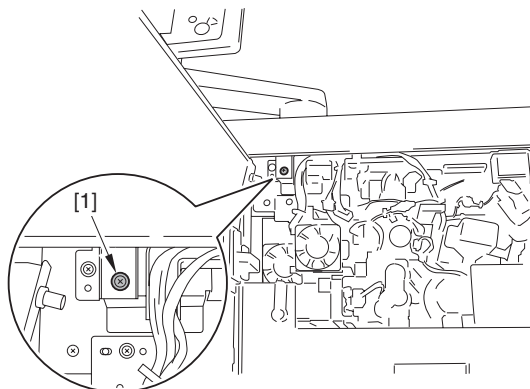
F-6-52

⚠ Points to note when attaching the process kit inner cover
Fit the cut-off [1] at each end to the pins [2] on the machine to attach.



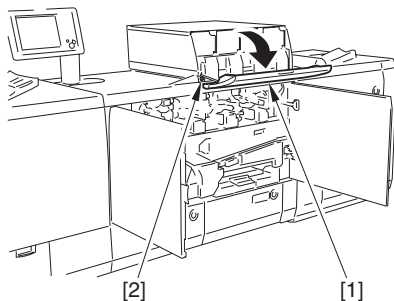
F-6-53

19) Remove the screw [1].



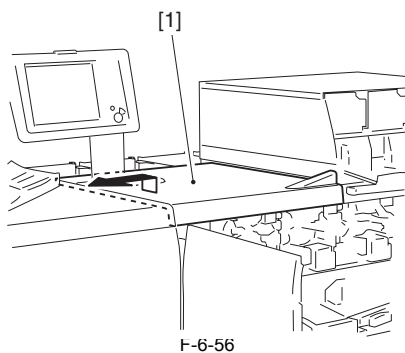
F-6-54

20) Open the outer toner replacement cover [1] and remove the screw [2].



F-6-55

21) While lifting up the left side of the main station upper front cover [1], slide the cover to the direction of the arrow to detach.

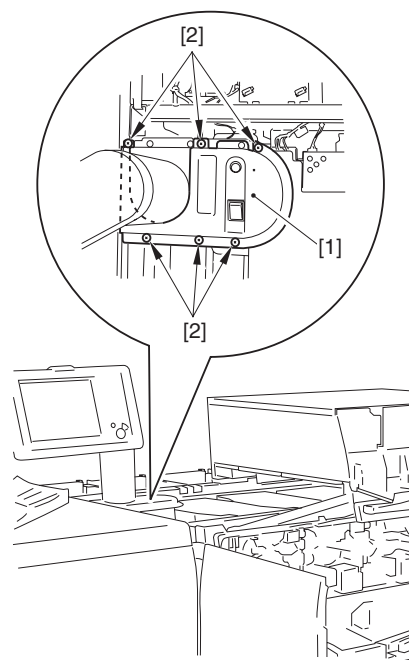


F-6-56

MEMO:

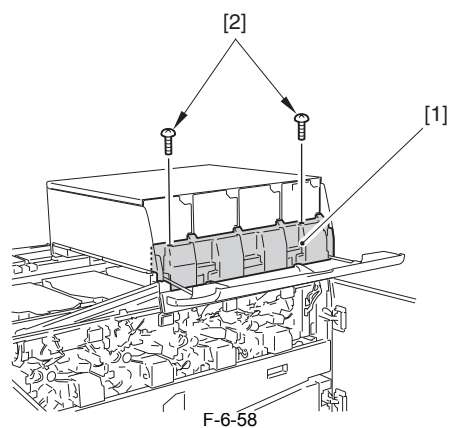
This step is necessary when removing the laser scanner unit for Y.
It is not required for other colors of M/C/Bk.

22) Remove the 6 screws [2] to remove the switch cover [1].



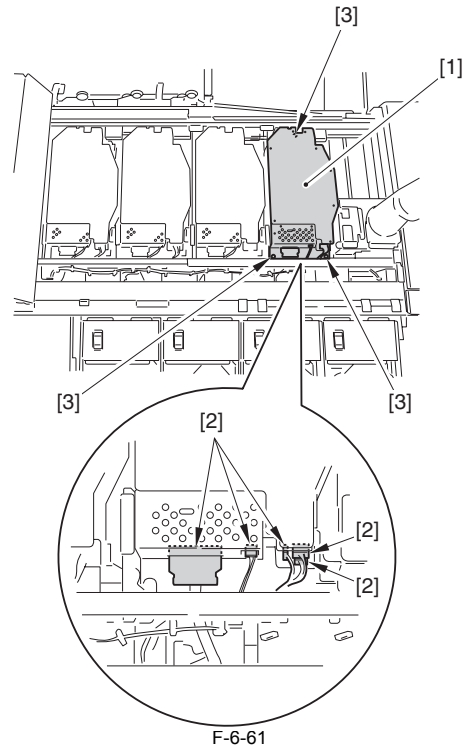
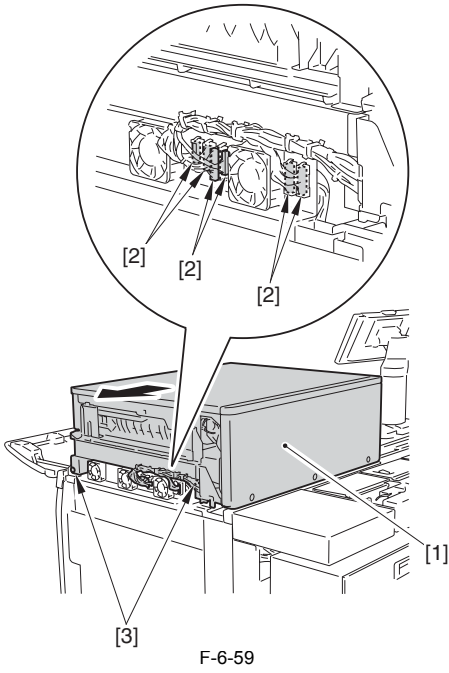
F-6-57

23) Remove the 2 screws to detach the toner unit front cover [1].



F-6-58

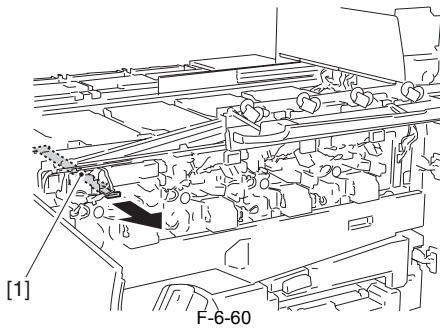
24) Disconnect the 6 connectors [2], remove the 2 screws [3], and then slide the toner unit [1] to the direction of the arrow.



6.4.1.3 Removing Laser Scanner Unit

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- 1) Pull out the dustproof glass [1].



⚠
 Before removing the laser scanner unit, the dustproof glass should be removed. If this left attached when removing the laser scanner unit, it may be accidentally dragged by the unit to be broken.

- 2) Disconnect the 5 connectors [2] and remove the 3 screws [3] to remove the laser scanner unit [1].

Chapter 7 Image Formation

Contents

7.1 Construction.....	7-1
7.1.1 Image Formation Specification / Control / Function List.....	7-1
7.1.2 Main Components	7-2
7.1.3 Charging Specification List.....	7-3
7.2 Image Formation Process	7-5
7.2.1 Image Formation Process (overall)	7-5
7.2.2 Image Formation Process (Image Formation).....	7-6
7.2.3 Image Formation Process (Transfer).....	7-7
7.3 Driving and Controlling the Image Formation System	7-8
7.3.1 Image Formation System Drive / High-Voltage Control.....	7-8
7.4 Image Stabilization Control.....	7-10
7.4.1 Image Stabilization Control Overview.....	7-10
7.4.2 Image Stabilization Control Timing.....	7-12
7.4.3 Potential Control	7-14
7.4.4 ATR Control.....	7-16
7.4.5 PASCAL Control	7-19
7.4.6 D-max Control.....	7-21
7.4.7 D-half Control	7-25
7.4.8 ARCDAT Control	7-28
7.4.9 ATVC Control.....	7-30
7.4.10 ACVC Control.....	7-32
7.5 Process Unit	7-34
7.5.1 Outline.....	7-34
7.5.1.1 Overview of the Process Unit	7-34
7.5.1.2 Process Unit Drive Control.....	7-34
7.5.2 Charging Mechanism	7-37
7.5.2.1 Overview of Charging Mechanism	7-37
7.5.2.2 Primary Charging Bias Control	7-378
7.5.2.3 Primary Charging Assembly Cleaning Control.....	7-38
7.5.2.4 Pre-Exposure LED Activation Control.....	7-39
7.5.2.5 Drum Cleaning Unit.....	7-39
7.5.3 Developing Assembly	7-41
7.5.3.1 Developing Assembly Configurations.....	7-41
7.5.3.2 Developing Bias Control.....	7-42
7.5.3.3 Spatter Prevention Bias Control.....	7-43
7.5.3.4 ACR Control	7-43
7.5.3.5 Toner Anticoagulation Control	7-45
7.6 Toner Container	7-46
7.6.1 Overview of Toner Supply Mechanism	7-46
7.6.2 Toner Container Present/Absent Detection.....	7-47
7.6.3 Toner Supply Mechanism Drive Control.....	7-48
7.6.4 Toner Level Detection.....	7-49
7.6.5 Toner Supply Control.....	7-50
7.7 Transfer Device	7-52
7.7.1 Overview of Transfer Assembly	7-52
7.7.2 Transfer Bias Control.....	7-53
7.7.3 Overview of Primary Transfer Assembly	7-55

7.7.4 ITB Speed Control	7-56
7.7.5 ITB Displacement Correction Control	7-58
7.7.6 Pre-Transfer Charging.....	7-59
7.7.7 Leading Edge Registration Control.....	7-60
7.7.8 ITB Cleaning Control.....	7-61
7.7.9 ITB Web Control.....	7-62
7.7.10 Overview of Secondary Transfer Assembly	7-64
7.7.11 Secondary Transfer Outside Roller Cleaning Control	7-65
7.7.12 Secondary Transfer Assembly Lock/Unlock Control	7-67
7.8 Waste Toner Collection Mechanism.....	7-69
7.8.1 Waste Toner Collection.....	7-69
7.8.2 Waste Toner Full Detection	7-72
7.9 Drum Heater.....	7-75
7.9.1 Drum Heater Control.....	7-75
7.10 Parts Replacement Procedure.....	7-77
7.10.1 Front Exposure Lamp.....	7-77
7.10.1.1 Removing Pre-exposure Lamp Unit	7-77
7.10.1.2 Removing Drum Cleaner Pre-exposure Unit.....	7-77
7.10.2 Primary Charging Assembly	7-77
7.10.2.1 Removing Primary Charging Assembly.....	7-77
7.10.3 Primary Charging Wire	7-78
7.10.3.1 Removing Primary Charging Assembly.....	7-78
7.10.4 Primary Corona Grid Panel	7-80
7.10.4.1 Removing Primary Corona Grid Panel.....	7-80
7.10.5 Primary Corona Pad Holder	7-82
7.10.5.1 Removing Primary Corona Wire Pad Holder.....	7-82
7.10.6 Primary Corona Slider.....	7-82
7.10.6.1 Removing Primary Corona Wire Slider	7-82
7.10.7 Pre-transfer Charging Assembly	7-82
7.10.7.1 Removing Pre-transfer Charging Assembly.....	7-82
7.10.8 Pre-Transfer Charging Wire.....	7-85
7.10.8.1 Removing Pre-transfer Charging Wire.....	7-85
7.10.9 Pre-Transfer Corona Pad Holder.....	7-87
7.10.9.1 Detaching Pre-Transfer Charging Wire Pad Holder.....	7-87
7.10.10 Pre-Transfer Corona Slider	7-88
7.10.10.1 Removing Pre-transfer Charging Wire Slider	7-88
7.10.11 Drum Unit	7-88
7.10.11.1 Removing the Drum Unit	7-88
7.10.12 Photosensitive Drum Cleaning Unit.....	7-96
7.10.12.1 Removing Drum Cleaning Unit.....	7-96
7.10.13 Photosensitive Drum	7-96
7.10.13.1 Points to Note When Handling the Photosensitive Drum	7-96
7.10.13.2 Removing Drum	7-96
7.10.13.3 Points to Note When Attach the Drum	7-102
7.10.13.4 Points to Note When Attach the Drum Unit.....	7-103
7.10.14 Scoop-Up Sheet.....	7-104
7.10.14.1 Removing Scoop-up Sheet/Side Seal	7-104
7.10.15 End Seal	7-104
7.10.15.1 Removing End Seal	7-104
7.10.16 Drum Cleaning Brush Roller	7-105
7.10.16.1 Removing Drum Cleaning Brush Roller	7-105
7.10.17 Photosensitive Drum Cleaning Blade	7-105
7.10.17.1 Removing Drum Cleaning Blade	7-105
7.10.18 Drum Patch Sensor Cleaning Motor	7-106
7.10.18.1 Removing Patch Sensor Shutter Cleaning Motor.....	7-106
7.10.19 Hopper Assembly.....	7-108
7.10.19.1 Removing Hopper Unit	7-108
7.10.20 Sub Hopper Motor.....	7-110

7.10.20.1 Removing Sub Hopper Stirring Motor	7-110
7.10.21 Developing Assembly	7-111
7.10.21.1 Point to Note When Removing Developing Assembly	7-111
7.10.21.2 Removing Y/M Developing Assembly.....	7-111
7.10.21.3 Removing C/Bk Developing Assembly (for replacement).....	7-114
7.10.21.4 Removing C/Bk Developing Assembly (other than developing assembly replacement).....	7-117
7.10.22 Drum Patch Sensor.....	7-120
7.10.22.1 Removing Drum Patch Sensor.....	7-120
7.10.23 Developing Knocking Motor	7-121
7.10.23.1 Removing Developing Knocking Motor.....	7-121
7.10.24 ITB Cleaning Unit.....	7-125
7.10.24.1 Removing ITB Cleaner Unit.....	7-125
7.10.25 ITB Cleaning Scraper.....	7-127
7.10.25.1 Removing ITB Inside Cleaning Scraper	7-127
7.10.26 ITB Cleaning Web	7-128
7.10.26.1 Removing ITB Cleaning Web.....	7-128
7.10.27 Intermediate Transfer Belt	7-132
7.10.27.1 Removing the Intermediate Transfer Belt (ITB).....	7-132
7.10.28 ITB Home Position Sensor.....	7-142
7.10.28.1 Removing ITB Home Position Sensor.....	7-142
7.10.29 Primary Transfer Roller	7-143
7.10.29.1 Removing Primary Transfer Roller (Y/M/C/Bk).....	7-143
7.10.30 Secondary Transfer External Roller.....	7-146
7.10.30.1 Removing Secondary Transfer External Roller.....	7-146
7.10.31 Secondary Transfer Internal Roller	7-147
7.10.31.1 Removing Secondary Transfer Inside Roller	7-147
7.10.32 Secondary Transfer Cleaning Assembly	7-151
7.10.32.1 Removing Secondary Transfer Cleaner Kit.....	7-151
7.10.33 ITB Cleaning Brush Roller	7-152
7.10.33.1 Removing ITB Cleaning Brush Roller	7-152
7.10.34 ITB Cleaning Blade.....	7-153
7.10.34.1 Removing ITB Bias Roller Cleaning Blade	7-153
7.10.35 ITB Edge Seal	7-154
7.10.35.1 Removing ITB edge label (F)	7-154
7.10.35.2 Removing ITB edge label (R).....	7-155
7.10.36 ITB End Scraper.....	7-155
7.10.36.1 Removing ITB Edge Scraper Unit.....	7-155
7.10.37 Secondary Transfer Inlet Guide	7-157
7.10.37.1 Removing Secondary Transfer Inlet Guide	7-157
7.10.38 Secondary Transfer Toner Blocking Sheet	7-157
7.10.38.1 Removing Secondary Transfer Toner Blocking Sheet	7-157
7.10.39 Drum Patch Sensor Shutter	7-159
7.10.39.1 Removing Drum Patch Sensor Shutter (Y/M).....	7-159
7.10.39.2 Removing Drum Patch Sensor Shutter (C/Bk).....	7-160
7.10.40 Color Registration Patch Cleaning Shutter	7-162
7.10.40.1 Removing Registration Patch Sensor Cleaning Shutter.....	7-162
7.10.41 Leading Edge Registration Patch Sensor Shutter.....	7-164
7.10.41.1 Removing Lead Edge Registration Patch Sensor Cleaning Shutter	7-164

7.1 Construction

7.1.1 Image Formation Specification / Control / Function List

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

T-7-1

Specification of drum unit

Photosensitive drum

Drum type	OPC drum
Diameter of drum (mm)	84 dia
Cleaning mechanism	Brush roller + blade
Process speed	300 mm/sec

T-7-2

Specification of developing assembly

Diameter of developing cylinder (mm)	Upper: 24.5 dia, lower: 20 dia
Development method	Dry 2-component
Toner	Non-magnetic negative toner
Detection of toner level in developing assembly	None

T-7-3

Specification of primary charging assembly

Charging method	Corona charging
Diameter of discharge wire (um)	60 dia
Cleaning mechanism	Cleaning pad contact Cycle 25 sec

T-7-4

Specification of toner container

Detection of toner level	Detection by video counter + piezo sensor (piezoelectric oscillator)
Amount of toner to be filled	1,700 g for Y, M, C, Bk

T-7-5

Specification of intermediate transfer unit

ITB (intermediate transfer belt)	Elasticity / seamless
Contour length	2,233 mm
Width	360 mm
Belt drive	Driven by ITB drive motor via gear
Cleaning mechanism	Bias roller + brush roller + blade + cleaning web

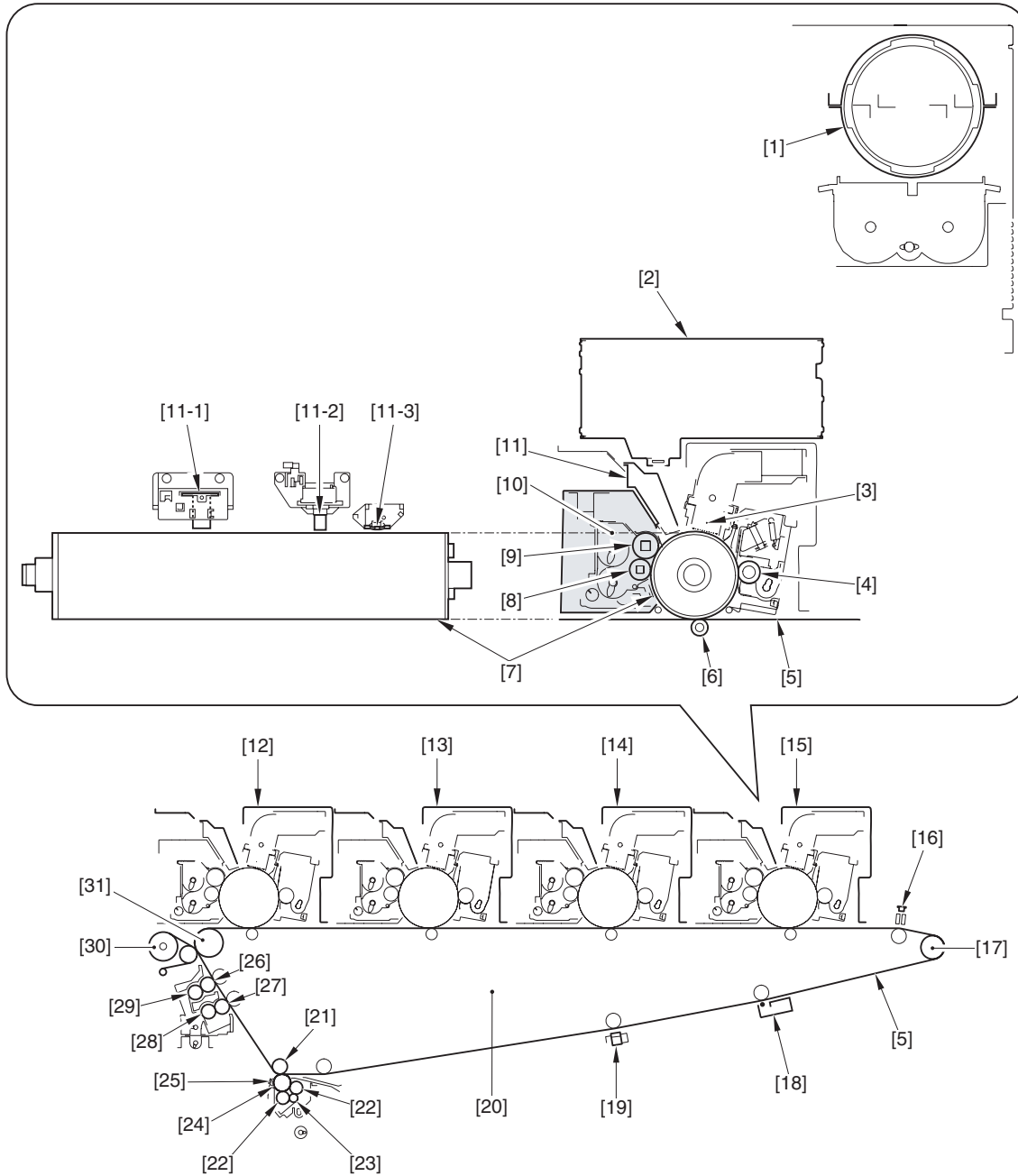
T-7-6

Image stabilization control

Potential control	Determine the laser power.
ATR control	Determine the amount of toner supply.
PASCAL control	Determine the image characteristics table.
D-max control	Determine the image density correction voltage.
D-half control	Determine the gradation characteristic table.
ARCDAT control	Correct the gradation characteristics table.
ATVC control	Determine the transfer bias.
ACVC control	Determine the cleaning bias.

7.1.2 Main Components

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000



F-7-1

- | | | |
|--------------------------------------|---|--|
| [1] toner container | [11] potential sensor, thermopile, thermistor | [20] intermediate transfer unit |
| [2] laser scanner unit | [11-1] potential sensor | [21] secondary transfer inner roller |
| [3] primary charging assembly | [11-2] thermopile | [22] secondary transfer cleaning brush roller |
| [4] drum cleaning brush roller | [11-3] thermistor | [23] secondary transfer cleaning bias roller |
| [5] ITB (intermediate transfer belt) | [12] process unit (Y) | [24] secondary transfer outer roller |
| [6] primary transfer roller | [13] process unit (M) | [25] post-secondary transfer static eliminator |
| [7] photosensitive drum | [14] process unit (C) | [26] ITB cleaning brush roller (downstream) |
| [8] developing lower cylinder | [15] process unit (Bk) | [27] ITB cleaning brush roller (upstream) |
| [9] developing upper cylinder | [16] registration patch sensor | [28] ITB cleaning bias roller (upstream) |
| [10] developing assembly | [17] steering roller | [29] ITB cleaning bias roller (downstream) |
| | [18] pre-transfer charging assembly | [30] ITB web |
| | [19] leading edge registration patch sensor | [31] ITB drive roller |

7.1.3 Charging Specification List

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

T-7-7

Specification of drum unit of high voltage

Photosensitive drum charging

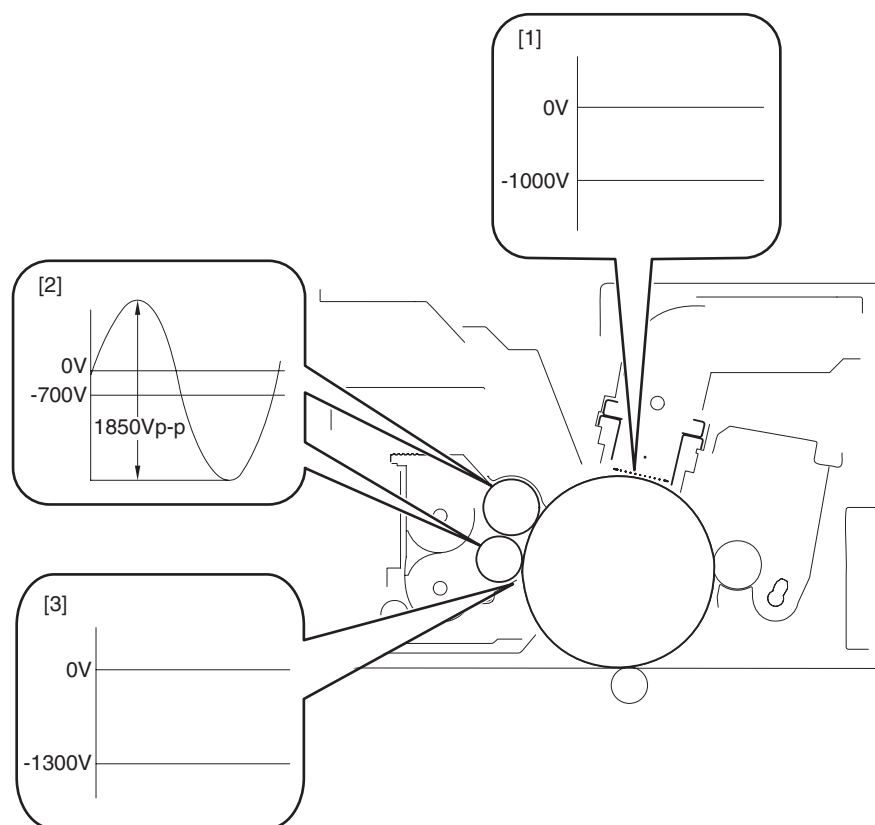
Primary charging method	Corona charging
DC component rated specification range	-1000 to 0 V (Standard value: -1000 to -700 V)
Voltage correction factors for DC component	Environmental sensor

Developing bias

AC component standard value	1850 Vp-p (fixed)
DC component rated specification range	-700 to 0 V (Standard value: -650 to -450 V)
Voltage correction factors	Environmental sensor

Splash prevention bias

DC component standard value	-1300 V
-----------------------------	---------



F-7-2

- [1] primary charging grid plate
- [2] developing cylinder
- [3] splash prevention

Specification of transfer unit of high voltage

Primary transfer

Transfer method	Roller transfer
Transfer target	Intermediate transfer belt (ITB)
DC component rated specification range	-2500 to +5000 V
Voltage correction factors	Environmental sensor

Pre-transfer charging bias

Charging method	Corona charging
AC component rated specification range	5000 Vp-p
DC component rated specification range	Standard value: -2000 V

Secondary transfer outer cleaning bias

DC component rated specification range	2000 V
--	--------

Secondary transfer

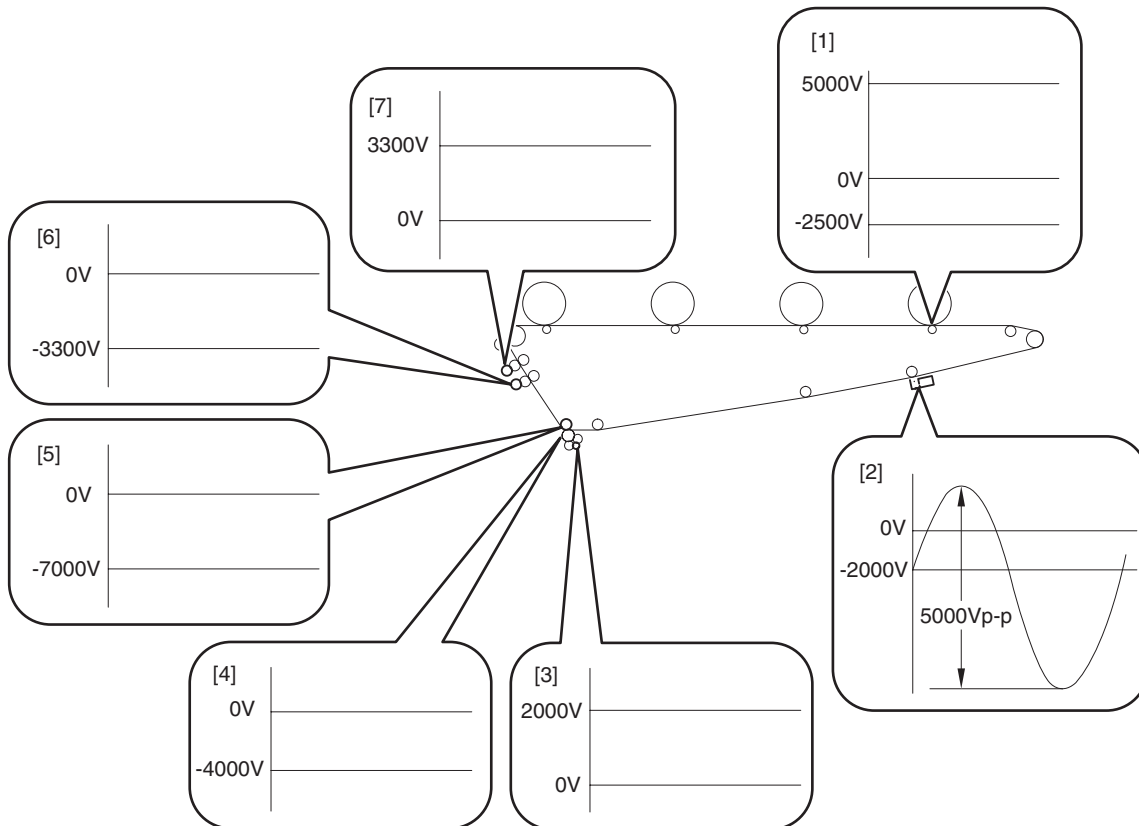
Transfer method	Roller transfer
Transfer target	Sheet (transfer material)
DC component rated specification range	-7000 to 0 V
Voltage correction factors	Paper type, environmental sensor

Post-secondary transfer static eliminator bias

DC component rated specification range	-4000 to 0 V
--	--------------

ITB cleaning bias

DC component rated specification range	Upstream: -3300 to 0 V, downstream: 0 to +3300 V
--	--



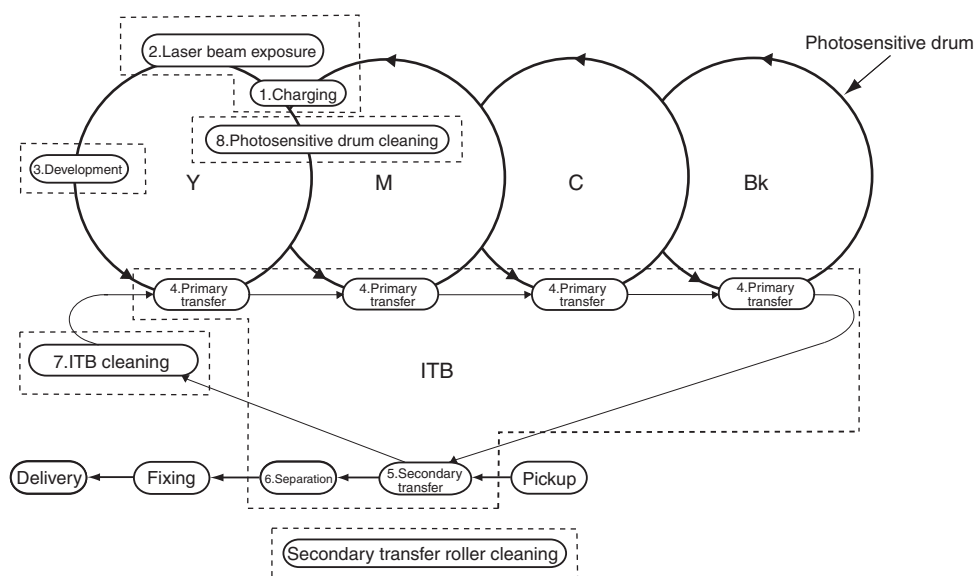
F-7-3

- [1] primary transfer roller
- [2] pre-transfer charging assembly
- [3] secondary transfer outer cleaning bias roller
- [4] post-secondary transfer static eliminator
- [5] secondary transfer inner roller
- [6] ITB cleaning bias roller (upstream)
- [7] ITB cleaning bias roller (downstream)

7.2 Image Formation Process

7.2.1 Image Formation Process (overall)

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

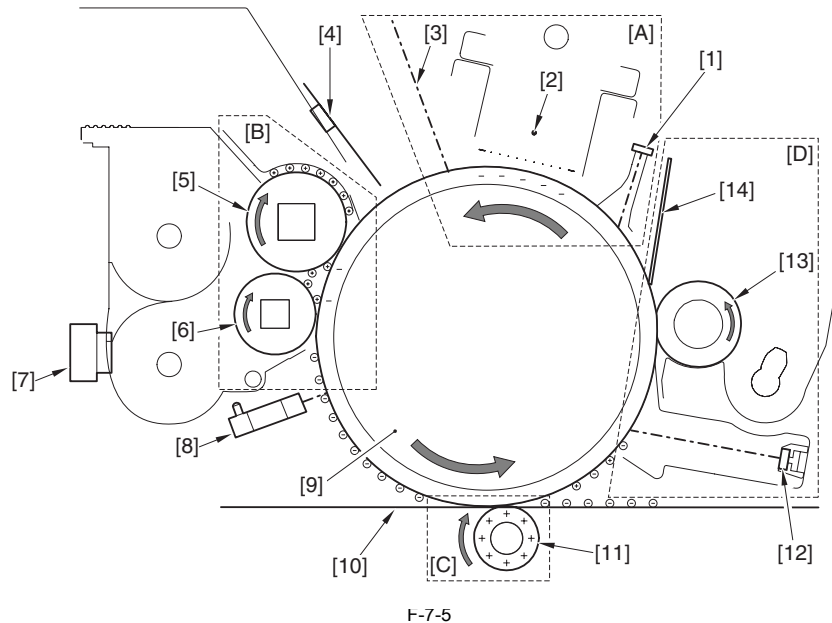


F-7-4
T-7-9

Function block	STEP	Description
Electrostatic latent image formation block	1, 2	To form an electrostatic latent image on the photosensitive drum
Development block	3	To put toner on the electrostatic latent image.
Transfer block	4, 5, 6	To transfer the toner image on the ITB or on a paper
Intermediate transfer belt (ITB) cleaning block	7	To collect the residual toner on the ITB
Photosensitive drum cleaning block	8	To collect the residual toner on the photosensitive drum
Secondary transfer roller cleaning block	-	To collect the residual toner on the secondary transfer outer roller

7.2.2 Image Formation Process (Image Formation)

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000



[1] pre-conditioning exposure LED	[5] developing upper cylinder	[10] ITB
[2] primary charging wire	[6] developing lower cylinder	[11] primary transfer roller
[3] laser exposure	[7] developing assembly toner density sensor	[12] drum cleaner pre-exposure LED
[4] potential sensor	[8] drum patch sensor	[13] drum cleaning brush roller
	[9] photosensitive drum	[14] drum cleaning blade

[A] Exposure block

This block has three steps to form an electrostatic latent image on the photosensitive drum.

1. Pre-conditioning exposure

To prepare primary charging, expose the light from the pre-conditioning exposure LED to eliminate the residual charge on the surface of the photosensitive drum and prevent uneven density.

2. Primary charging

To prepare laser exposure, apply even negative potential to the surface of the photosensitive drum. With this machine, the primary charging assembly that indirectly applies potential to the photosensitive drum from the charging wire is adopted.

3. Laser exposure

On the negatively charged surface of the photosensitive drum, the potential exposed to the laser beam is neutralized, and the electrostatic latent image is formed there.

[B] Development block

This machine employs the non-magnetic 2-component toner projection development. The negatively charged toner is fed from the upper and lower developing cylinders and attached to the electrostatic latent image formed on the surface of the photosensitive drum to visualize it. Since the toner electro potential is comparatively higher than that of the photosensitive drum, the charge is represented as relatively positive in the figure above.

[C] Primary transfer block

This block transfers the toner image on the surface of the photosensitive drum, through the ITB, to a paper.

Apply the positive potential from the back of the ITB to transfer the toner on the surface of the photosensitive drum to the ITB.

This process is performed at Y, M, C, Bk drum units in order.

[D] Photosensitive drum cleaning block

1. Drum cleaner pre-exposure

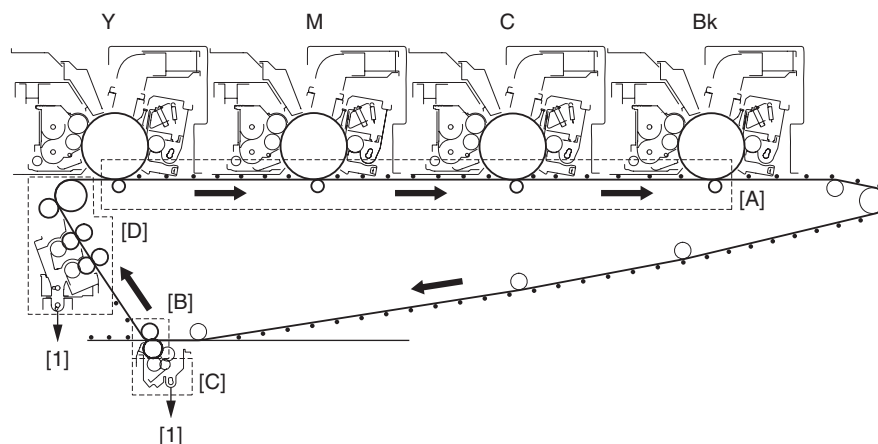
Because of the difference in the level of toner layers that are formed on the ITB, a minute potential difference occurs between the drum and the ITB. With the occurrence of the discharging phenomenon, it becomes the drum memory. The residual toner on the cleaning blade is attracted to this drum memory. The drum cleaner pre-exposure is performed to eliminate this drum memory.

2. Drum cleaning

Eliminate the residual toner on the photosensitive drum to clean the photosensitive drum.

7.2.3 Image Formation Process (Transfer)

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000



F-7-6

[1] to the waste toner buffer

[A] Primary transfer block

See the above 'Image Formation Process (Image Formation)'.

[B] Secondary transfer block

Transfer the toner on the ITB belt to a paper.

[C] Secondary transfer roller cleaning block

Remove the patch image on the ITB and the residual toner on the secondary transfer outer roller to clean them.

The brush roller contacting with the secondary transfer outer roller attracts the residual toner by applying voltage to the bias roller.

The toner collected by the brush roller is wiped off by the cleaning blade via the bias roller, and discharged by the toner discharge screw to the waste toner buffer.

[D] ITB cleaning block

To remove the residual toner on the ITB after secondary transfer, clean the ITB with brush roller.

The brush roller contacting with the ITB attracts the residual toner by applying voltage to the bias roller.

The toner collected by the brush roller is wiped off by the cleaning blade via the bias roller, and discharged by the toner discharge screw to the waste toner buffer.

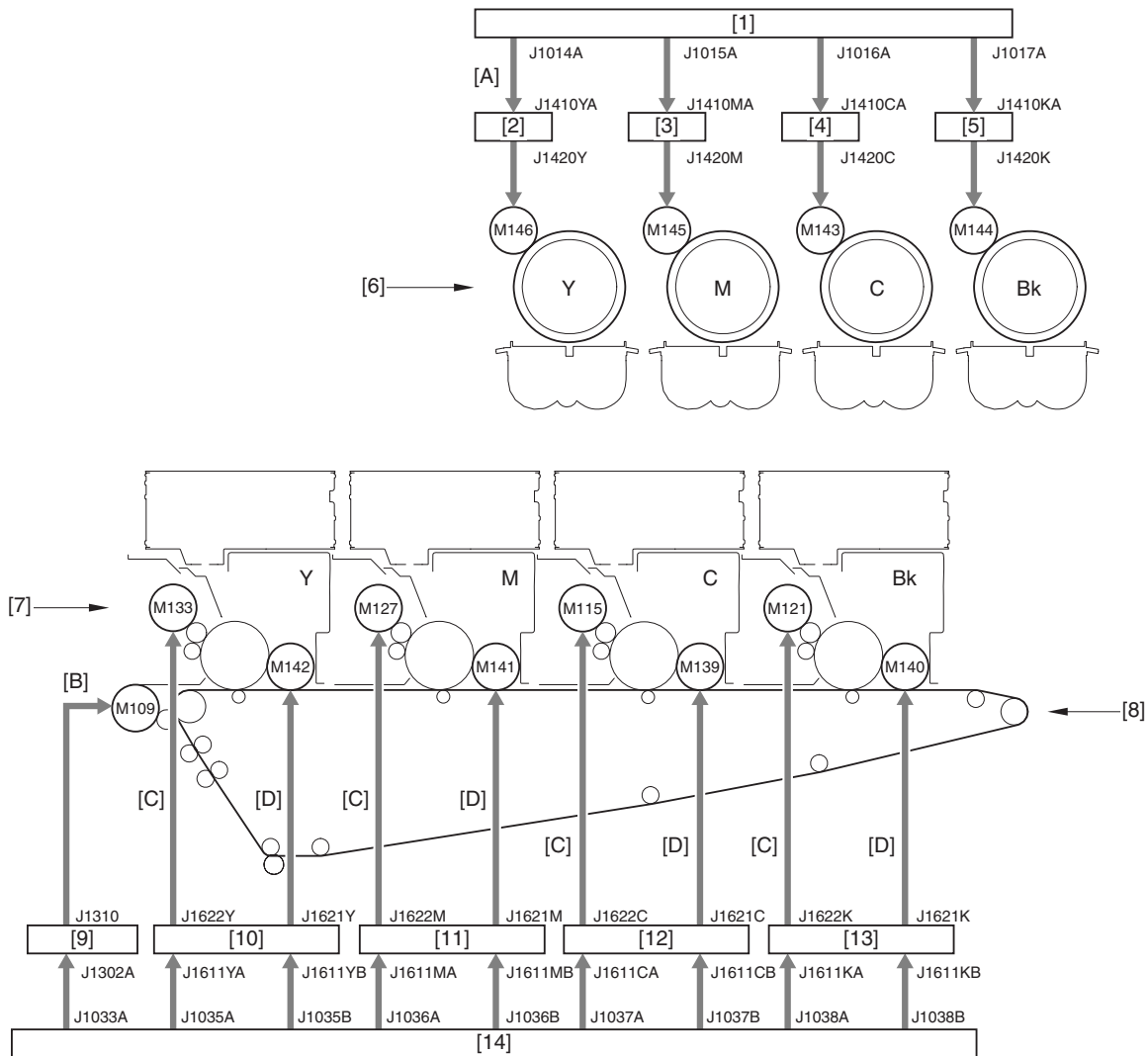
7.3 Driving and Controlling the Image Formation System

7.3.1 Image Formation System Drive / High-Voltage Control

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

Drive control

The image formation system is driven by the toner container motor, the developing motor, the drum drive motor and the ITB drive motor, via the gear. See each item for details.

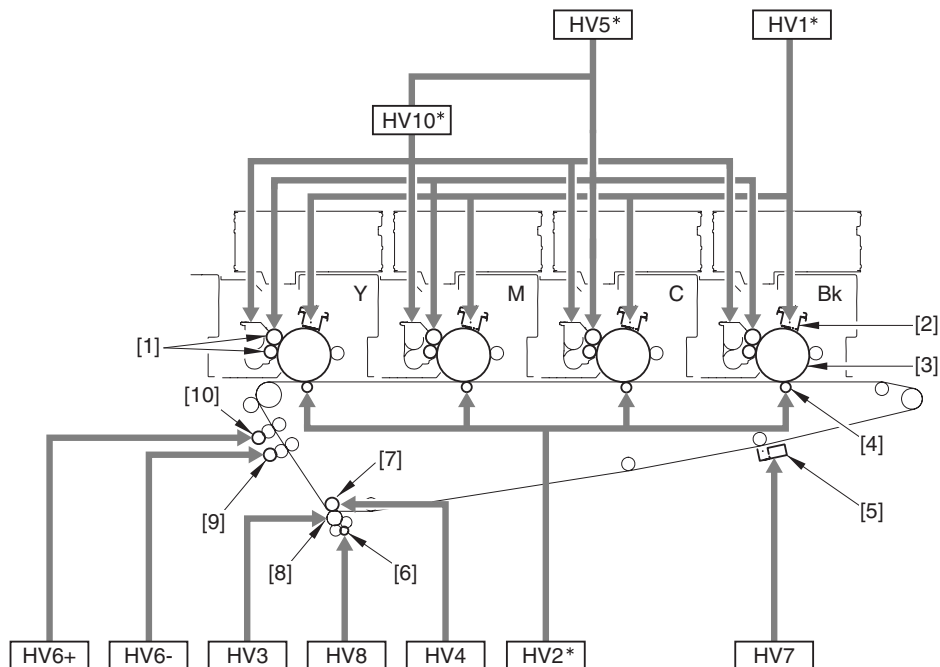


F-7-7

- | | | |
|----------------------------|-----------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| [1] DC controller PCB 1-2 | [9] ITB driver PCB (center) | M109: ITB drive motor |
| [2] hopper driver PCB (Y) | [10] drum drive driver PCB (Y) | M115: developing motor (C) |
| [3] hopper driver PCB (M) | [11] drum drive driver PCB (M) | M121: developing motor (Bk) |
| [4] hopper driver PCB (C) | [12] drum drive driver PCB (C) | M127: developing motor (M) |
| [5] hopper driver PCB (Bk) | [13] drum drive driver PCB (Bk) | M133: developing motor (Y) |
| [6] hopper assembly | [14] DC controller PCB 1-1 | M139: drum drive motor (C) |
| [7] development assembly | [A] cartridge motor drive signal | M140: drum drive motor (Bk) |
| [8] ITB | [B] ITB drive motor drive signal | M141: drum drive motor (M) |
| | [C] developing motor drive signal | M142: drum drive motor (Y) |
| | [D] drum drive motor drive signal | M143: toner container motor (C) |
| | | M144: toner container motor (Bk) |
| | | M145: toner container motor (M) |
| | | M146: toner container motor (Y) |

High-voltage control

High voltage is supplied from the high-voltage unit to each block of the image formation system. See each item for details.



F-7-8

* One each for Y, M, C and Bk.

- | | |
|---|---|
| [1] developing cylinder | HV1: primary corona high voltage PCB (Y/M/C/Bk) |
| [2] primary charging assembly | HV2: primary transfer high voltage PCB (Y/M/C/Bk) |
| [3] photosensitive drum | HV3: post-secondary transfer electricity removal high voltage PCB |
| [4] primary transfer roller | HV4: secondary transfer high voltage PCB |
| [5] pre-transfer charging assembly | HV5: development high voltage PCB (Y/M/C/Bk) |
| [6] secondary transfer cleaning bias roller | HV6-: ITB cleaner high voltage PCB (upstream) |
| [7] secondary transfer inner roller | HV6+: ITB cleaner high voltage PCB (downstream) |
| [8] post-secondary transfer static eliminator | HV7: ITB pre-transfer corona high voltage PCB |
| [9] ITB cleaning bias roller (upstream) | HV8: secondary transfer cleaner high voltage PCB |
| [10] ITB cleaning bias roller (downstream) | HV10: splash prevention high voltage PCB (Y/M/C/Bk) |

7.4 Image Stabilization Control

7.4.1 Image Stabilization Control Overview

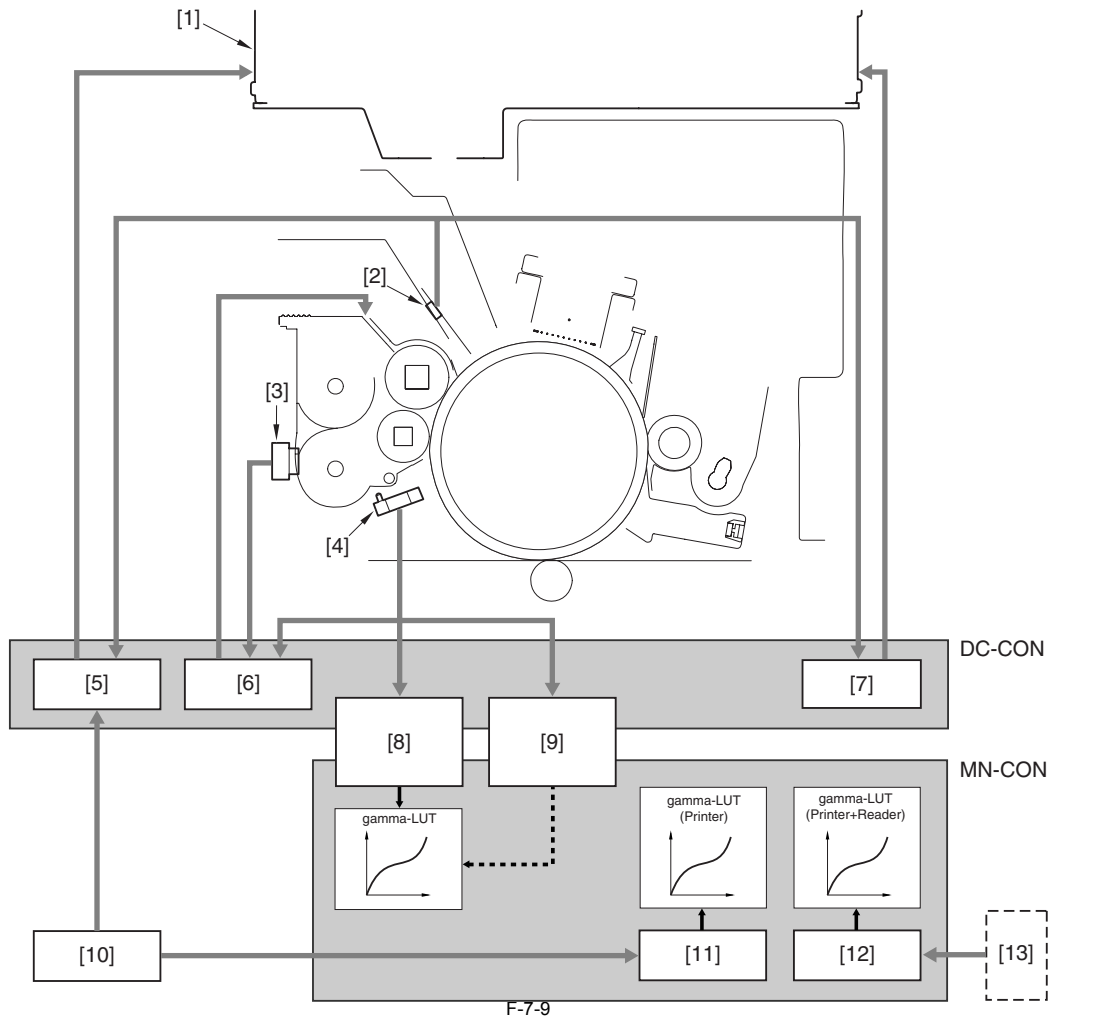
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

The quality of printed images is affected by changes in the environment in which the device is installed, and by the deterioration of image formation parts through extended usage.

This machine performs image stabilization control in order to ensure stable print quality over an extended period of time.

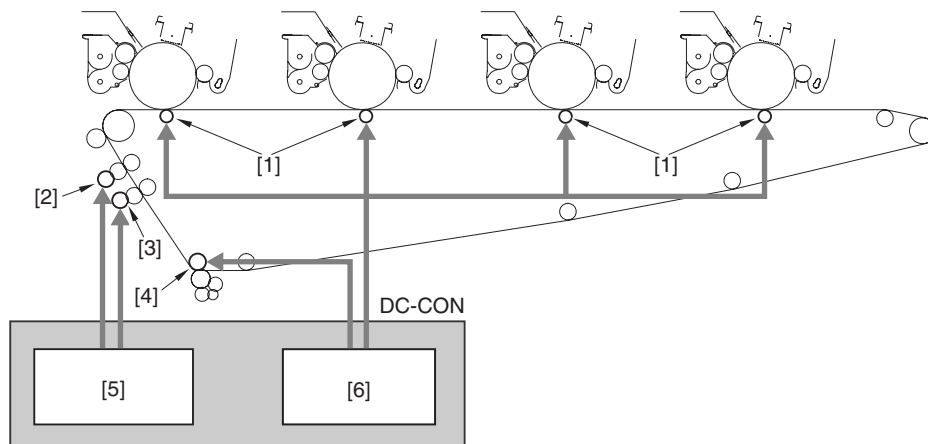
T-7-10

Control Item	Description
Potential Control	Determine the optimum laser power.
ATR Control	Determine the amount of toner supply.
Printer PASCAL Control	Determine the optimum image characteristics table (printer).
Reader PASCAL Control	Determine the optimum image characteristics table (printer + reader).
D-max Control	Determine the optimum image density correction voltage.
D-half Control	Determine the optimum gradation characteristic table.
ARCDAT Control	Correct the gradation characteristics table (every sheet-to-sheet interval).
ATVC Control	Determine the optimum transfer bias.
ACVC Control	Determine the optimum cleaning bias.



- | | | | |
|--|-----------------------|-----------------------------|--------------------------|
| [1] laser scanner unit | [5] D-max control * | [9] ARCDAT control | [13] reader |
| [2] potential sensor | [6] ATR control | [10] color sensor | DC-CON : DC controller |
| [3] developing assembly toner density sensor | [7] potential control | [11] printer PASCAL control | MN-CON : main controller |
| [4] drum patch sensor | [8] D-half control | [12] reader PASCAL control | |

* The D-max control is executed as a step of the PASCAL control.



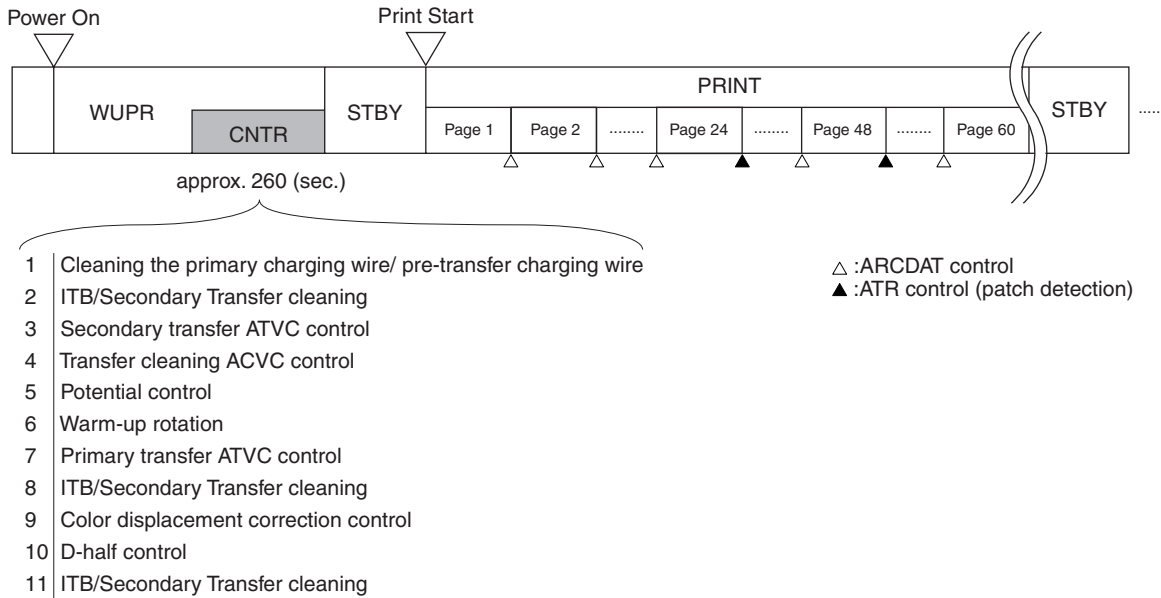
F-7-10

- | | | |
|---|-------------------------------------|------------------------|
| [1] primary transfer roller | [4] secondary transfer inner roller | DC-CON : DC controller |
| [2] ITB cleaning bias roller (downstream) | [5] ACVC control | |
| [3] ITB cleaning bias roller (upstream) | [6] ATVC control | |

7.4.2 Image Stabilization Control Timing

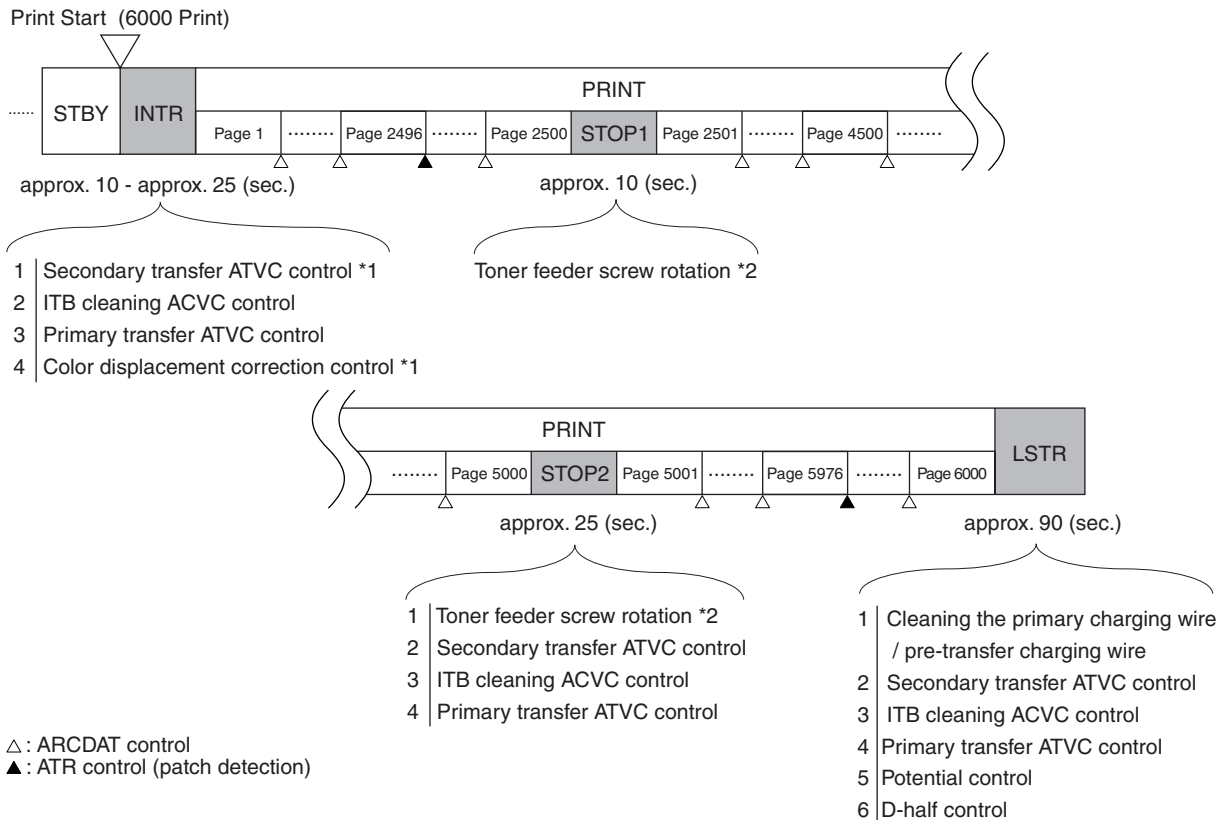
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

The image stabilization control items differ depending on the operating environment of the device and the condition of image formation parts. The control items executed with each sequence are as described below.



F-7-11

CNTR: Upon warm-up rotation, after power ON first thing in the morning



F-7-12

INTR: Upon initial rotation

STOP1: Upon job suspension at every 2,500 prints (those at every 5,000 prints excluded)

STOP2: Upon job suspension every 5,000 sheets

LSTR: Upon last rotation after 4,500 sheets

*1 Triggered by the elapsed time from the previous job to the current job.

*2 Inversely rotate the screw to enhance the waste toner ejection from the ITB cleaning unit.

7.4.3 Potential Control

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

Even where the applied voltage is the same, the electro potential of the surface of the photosensitive drum changes due to electrostatic latent image factors caused by deterioration in the photosensitive drum's sensitivity and changes in the operating environment, etc.

This machine performs image electro potential control in order to ensure stable print quality.

In potential control, after charging the surface of the photosensitive drum with a fixed voltage, the electro potential is measured while the laser power is changed and the relationships plotted on a graph.

This graph is used to determine the laser power from the voltage required to obtain the desired contrast.

Timing

- Upon warm-up rotation, after power ON first thing in the morning.
- Upon PASCAL control operation.
- Upon last rotation after 4,500 sheets.

MEMO:

Potential control can be executed in the service mode below in option.

COPIER > FUNCTION > DPC > DPC

Note that ATR control (patch base detection) and ATVC control are also executed in this timing.

Control details

1. Drum surface reference electro potential setting

First, the electro potential V_d of the dark area that will become the potential control reference is set.

The target electro potential of a dark area in a certain operating temperature and humidity is taken as V_{d_target} .

The measurement result of the electro potential sensor when $V_{grid} = V_{d_target} - 80$ (V, offset value) is applied to the primary charging grid plate is considered V_{d_rgh} .

The primary charging grid plate correction voltage is computed from the difference between the measurement result and the target value ($V_{d_rgh} - V_{d_target}$).

The computed correction voltage is applied to the primary charging grid plate and, by correcting V_{grid} , the target value V_{d_target} is achieved.

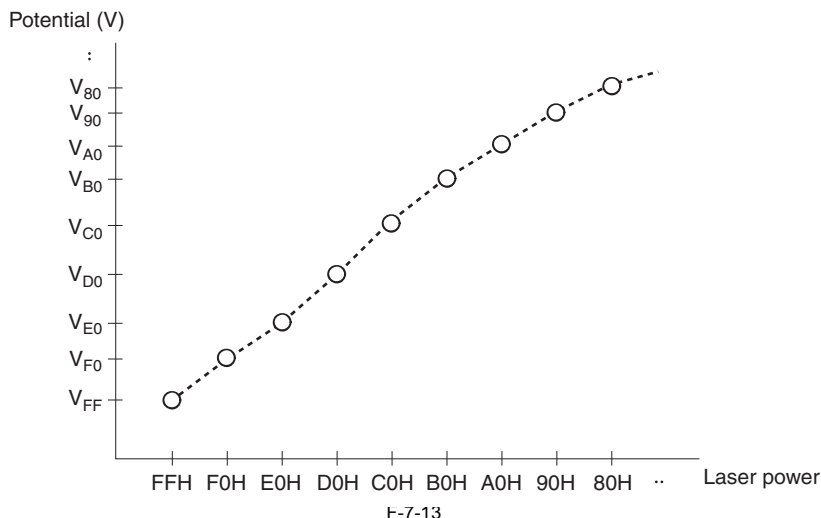
Further, the drum surface electro potential measurement result V_{d_rgh} will decrease as the sensitivity of the photosensitive drum deteriorates.

And, the computed primary charging grid plate correction voltage will differ, depending on the environmental temperature and humidity.

2. Drum surface electro potential measurement

Next, the electro potential V_L of the light area generated by irradiating the drum with the laser beam is measured.

The electro potential of the surface of the photosensitive drum is measured with an electro potential sensor, while the laser power is changed through 15 steps, and the results used to plot the graph shown in the diagram below.



F-7-13

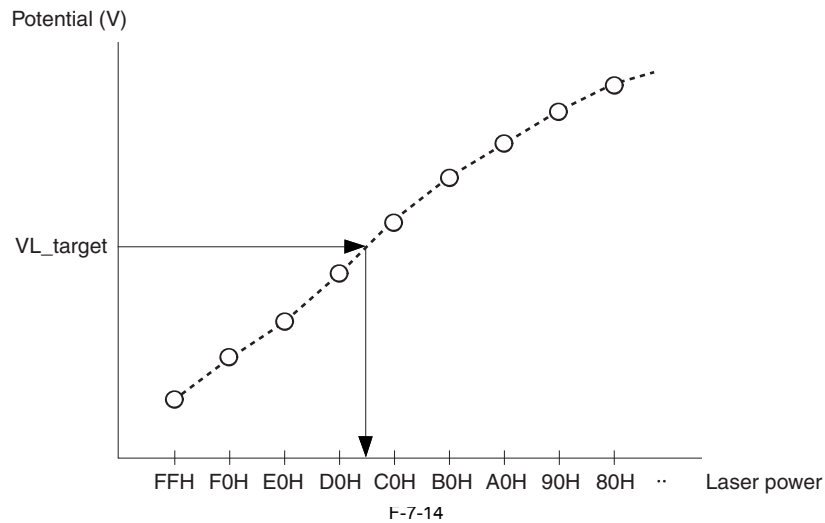
3. Determining laser power

Finally, the required laser power is worked out from the VL_target value of the electro potential of the light area under certain temperature and humidity conditions. VL_target is worked out with the following formula.

$$VL_target = Vd_target - (Vback + Vcont)$$

Here, (Vback + Vcont) is the voltage required to achieve the desired contrast, and will change according to the temperature and humidity conditions. Vback is the voltage used to get rid of fogging during copying, while Vcont is the voltage used for image density correction.

The computed VL_target is applied to the graph shown above and the laser power determined from the corresponding points.



Error Codes:

E061-xx11	Lower limit error in potential control grid bias Vgrid \leq 400 V
E061-xx81	Error in poor power of laser When the laser power at potential control is at its MAX, the difference between Vd and VL is 100 V or less
E061-xx82	Error in power adjustment of laser At potential control, the difference in VL of the laser power between at its MAX. and at its MIN. is 100 V or less
E061-xx91	Lower limit error of laser power for the patch image determined at patch potential control Laser power for patch image \leq 30 (H)
E061-xx92	Upper limit error of laser power for the patch image determined at patch potential control Laser power for patch image \geq FF (H)

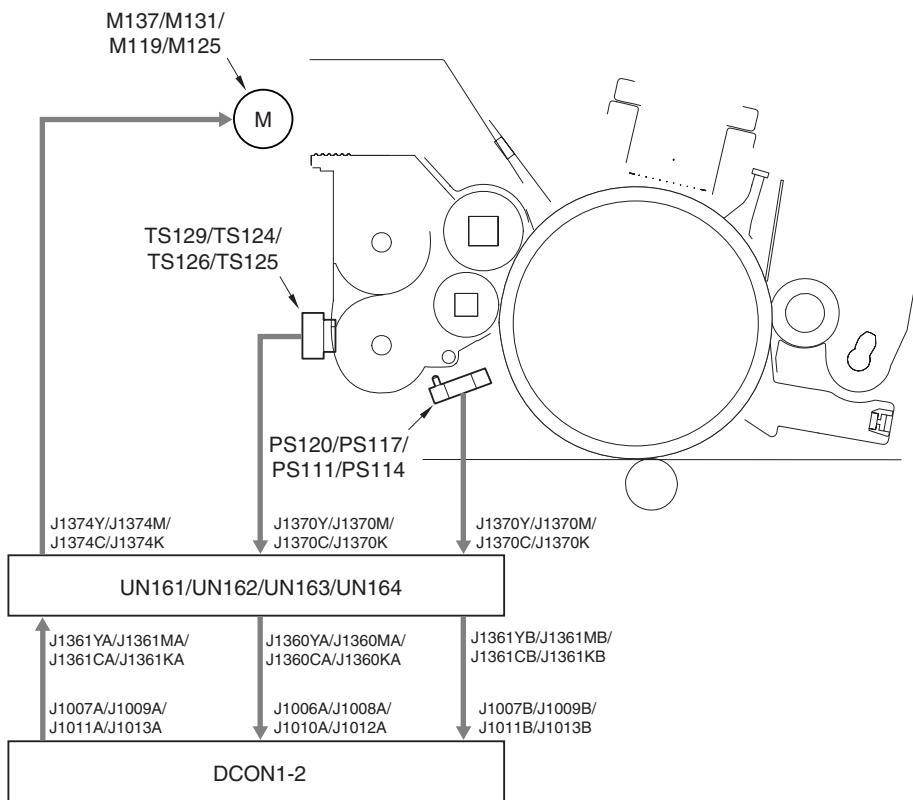
xx refers to the numbers assigned to each color developing assembly.
01: Y, 02: M, 03: C, 04: Bk

7.4.4 ATR Control

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

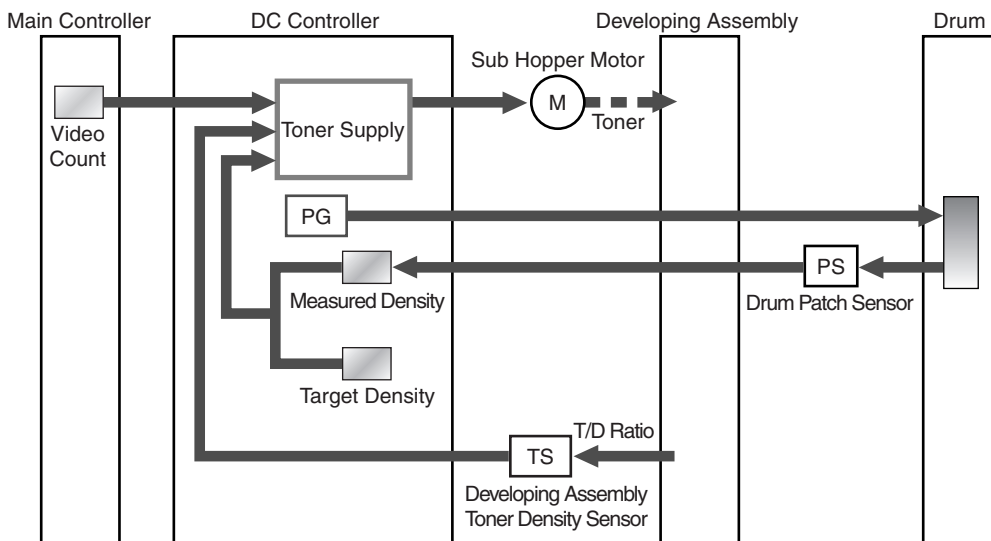
This machine performs ATR control in order to ensure that the optimum quantity of toner is supplied to the developing unit. ATR control comprises the following three types of processes.

- Calculation of toner supply quantity from video count.
- Correction of toner supply quantity by measuring patch density with the drum sensor.
- Correction of toner supply quantity by measuring toner density inside developing unit with the developing unit toner density detection sensor.



F-7-15

M137/M131/M119/M125: sub hopper motor (Y/M/C/Bk)
 TS129/TS124/TS126/TS125: developing assembly toner density sensor (Y/M/C/Bk)
 PS120/PS117/PS111/PS114: drum patch sensor (Y/M/C/Bk)
 DCON1-2: DC controller PCB 1-2
 UN161/UN162/UN163/UN164: process unit driver PCB (Y/M/C/Bk)



F-7-16

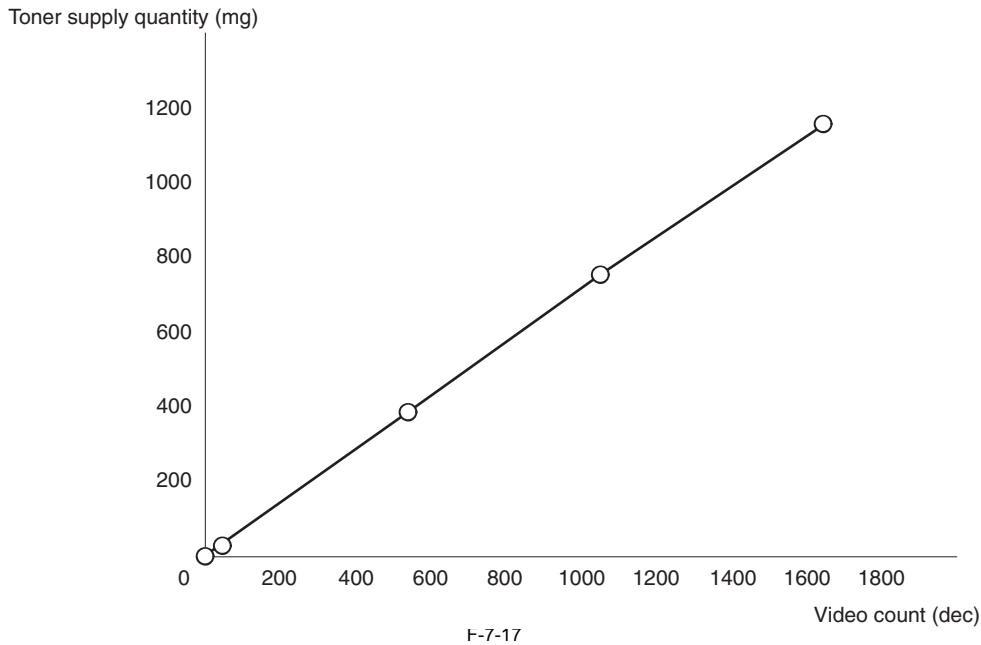
Timing

- Video count-based toner control: during printing, performed for every sheet.
- Drum patch sensor-based toner correction: during printing, performed once every 24 sheets of small size paper (every 12 sheets of large size paper).
- Toner density detection sensor-based toner correction: during printing, performed for every sheet.

Control details

1. Video count-based toner control

The amount of toner is worked out from a graph showing the relationship between the video count and toner supply quantity. The graph is obtained by performing linear interpolation on five boundary condition points. The sub-hopper motors (Y/M/C/Bk) (M137/M131/M119/M125) rotate according to the calculated toner supply quantity.



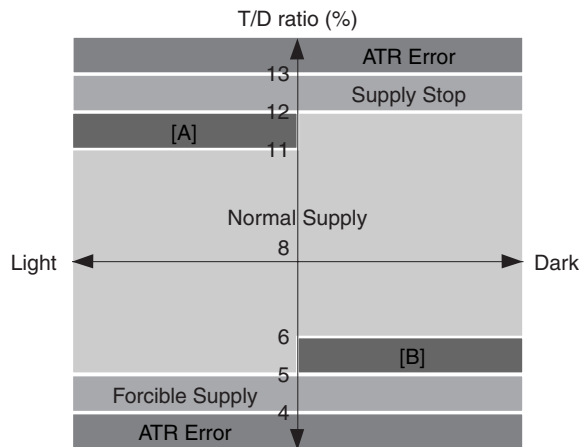
2. Drum patch sensor-based toner correction

The DC controller writes a patch image on the photosensitive drums of each color (Y, M, C, Bk). The patch is read by the drum patch sensors (Y/M/C/Bk) (PS120/PS117/PS111/PS114) and the measured density relayed to the DC controller. The DC controller then compares these measurements against the target density values and corrects the toner supply quantity accordingly.

3. Toner density detection sensor-based toner correction

The developer unit toner density detection sensors (Y/M/C/Bk) (TS126/TS124/TS129/TS125) detect the T/D ratio of the toner inside the developer unit. When there is an 8 % difference between the detected T/D ratio and the target density, the DC controller prevents over-correction by the drum patch sensors.

In section [A] of the diagram below, even though the T/D ratio is high, the patch density has been detected low, so too much toner is being supplied. In section [B], the T/D ratio is low, but the patch density has been detected high, so the toner supply has been stopped. In these cases, the correction process is interrupted and toner supply control is done based on the video count only.



F-7-18

Developer Count Control

More deteriorated the developer grows due to the long-term operation, lower is the toner density that attaches to the photosensitive drum. This machine quantifies the developer life with the internal counter and adjusts the toner density by changing the upper limit of toner T/D ratio depending on the counter reading.

Note that the internal counter can be reset in the following service mode at the time of developer supply.

FUNCTION > INSTALL > SPLY-Y/M/C/K/4 (Yellow/Magenta/Cyan/Black/4 colors)

Error Codes:

E020-xx81	Lower limit error in light intensity on drum base (reflecting light intensity from the drum surface) DISPLAY>DENS>P-B-P-Y/M/C/K(Measured value of drum base) < 350
E020-xx82	Lower limit error in current passed to the sensor while the patch sensor LED is off DISPLAY>DENS>P-D-P-Y/M/C/K(Dark state current value) <= 30
E020-xx84	Fault at sampling drum base DISPLAY>DENS>P-B-P-Y/M/C/K(Measured value of drum base) - DISPLAY>DENS>P-D-P-Y/M/C/K(dark state current value) <= 30
E020-xx85	Fault at sampling 1 in patch image DISPLAY>DENS>DENS-S-Y/M/C/K(Measured value of patch image) - DISPLAY>DENS>P-D-P-Y/M/C/K(dark state current value) <= 30
E020-xx86	Fault at sampling 2 in patch image DISPLAY>DENS>DENS-S-Y/M/C/K(Measured value of patch image) - DISPLAY>DENS>P-B-P-Y/M/C/K(measured value of drum base) <= 30
E020-xx87	Upper limit error 2 in current passed to the sensor while the patch sensor LED is off DISPLAY>DENS>P-D-P-Y/M/C/K(Dark state current value) >= 930
E020-xx90	Lower limit error in ATR patch image density DISPLAY>DENS>DENS-S-Y/M/C/K (patch reading value after calculation) <= 16 when making prints
E020-xx91	Lower limit error in ATR patch image density DISPLAY>DENS>DENS-S-Y/M/C/K (patch reading value after calculation) >= 880 when making prints
E020-xx92	Lower limit error in developer density DISPLAY>DENS>DENS-S-Y/M/C/K is -5 % or less for 3 times continuously
E020-xx93	Upper limit error in developer density DISPLAY>DENS>DENS-S-Y/M/C/K is +5 % or more for 3 times continuously
E020-xxB0	Lower limit error in signal value of toner density sensor When making prints, the DISPLAY>DENS>SGLL-Y/M/C/K value "Y:0040, M/C/K:0030H" or less for 5 prints continuously
E020-xxB1	Upper limit error in signal value of toner density sensor When making prints, the DISPLAY>DENS>SGLL-Y/M/C/K value "Y:192, M/C/K:126" or more for 5 prints continuously
E020-xxC2	Error in variation of sampling value in patch image

xx refers to the numbers assigned to each color developing assembly.

01: Y, 02: M, 03: C, 04: Bk

7.4.5 PASCAL Control

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

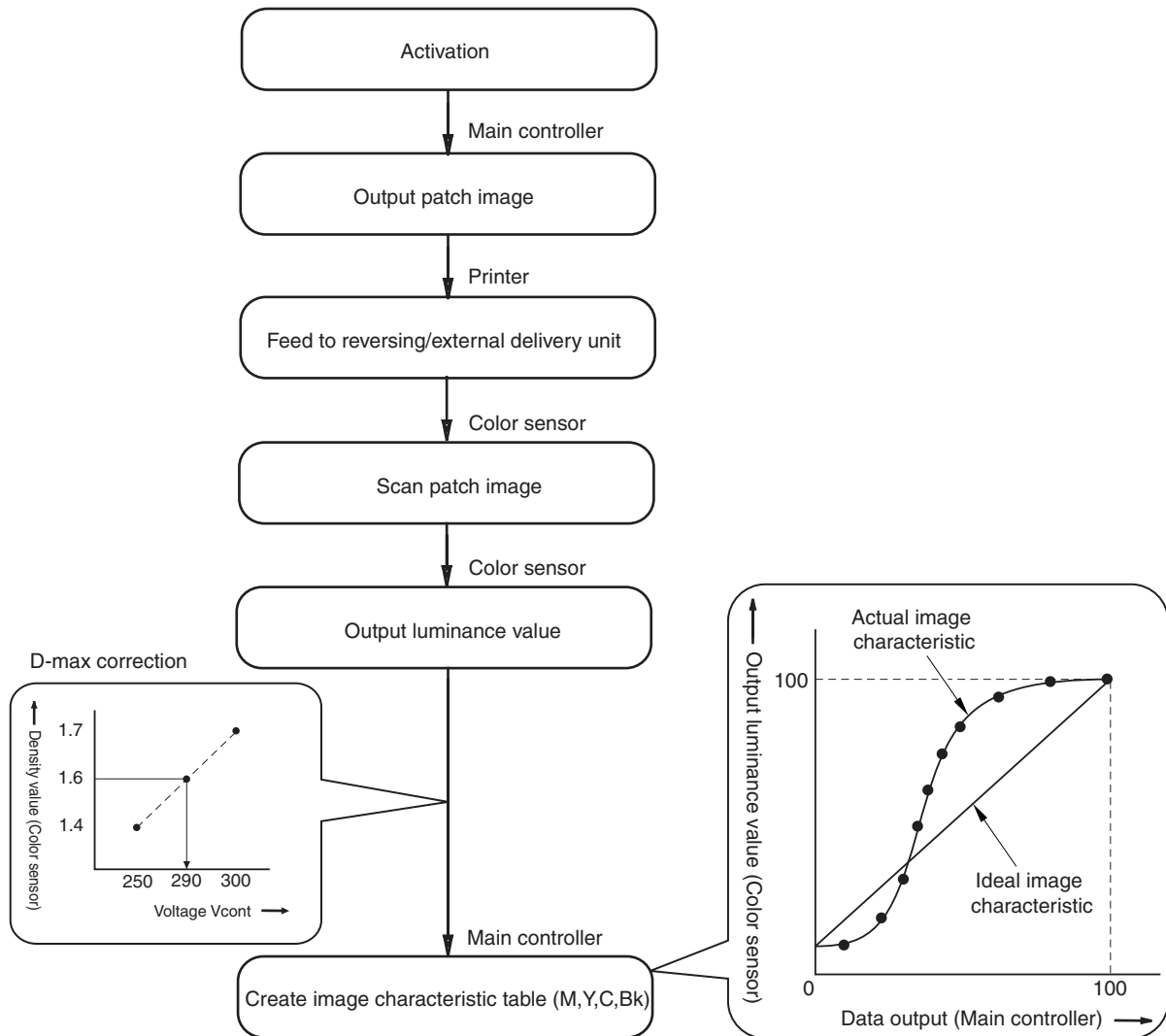
This machine performs PASCAL control (image characteristics correction control), in order to obtain the ideal image characteristics. There are two types of PASCAL control: Printer PASCAL and Reader PASCAL.

- Printer PASCAL
The patch image is scanned by four color sensors in the main unit, and the image characteristics corrected based on these results.
- Reader PASCAL
The output patch image is scanned by the reader and the image characteristics corrected based on these results.

MEMO:
 PASCAL control is performed by running [Auto Gradation Adjustment] in User Mode.
 The type of PASCAL control is selected as follows:
 System Settings > Device Management Settings > Auto Gradation Adjustment > Auto Gradation Adjust Method
 [Printer Only]: Printer PASCAL
 [Scanner + Printer]: Reader PASCAL

Printer PASCAL

In Printer PASCAL, because the four color sensors in the reverse/external paper delivery unit are used to correct the image characteristics, the control operation can be performed in the main unit only, without a reader.
 The main controller creates a patch image of 22 gradations in each color (C, Y, M, Bk), printing out a total of five sheets.
 The patch image is scanned by the color sensors 1 to 4 (UN312/UN313/UN314/UN315) when the paper reaches the reverse/ external paper delivery unit, and the luminance values are relayed to the main controller.
 The main controller uses the luminance values to create an image characteristic table, needed to obtain ideal image characteristics.



F-7-19

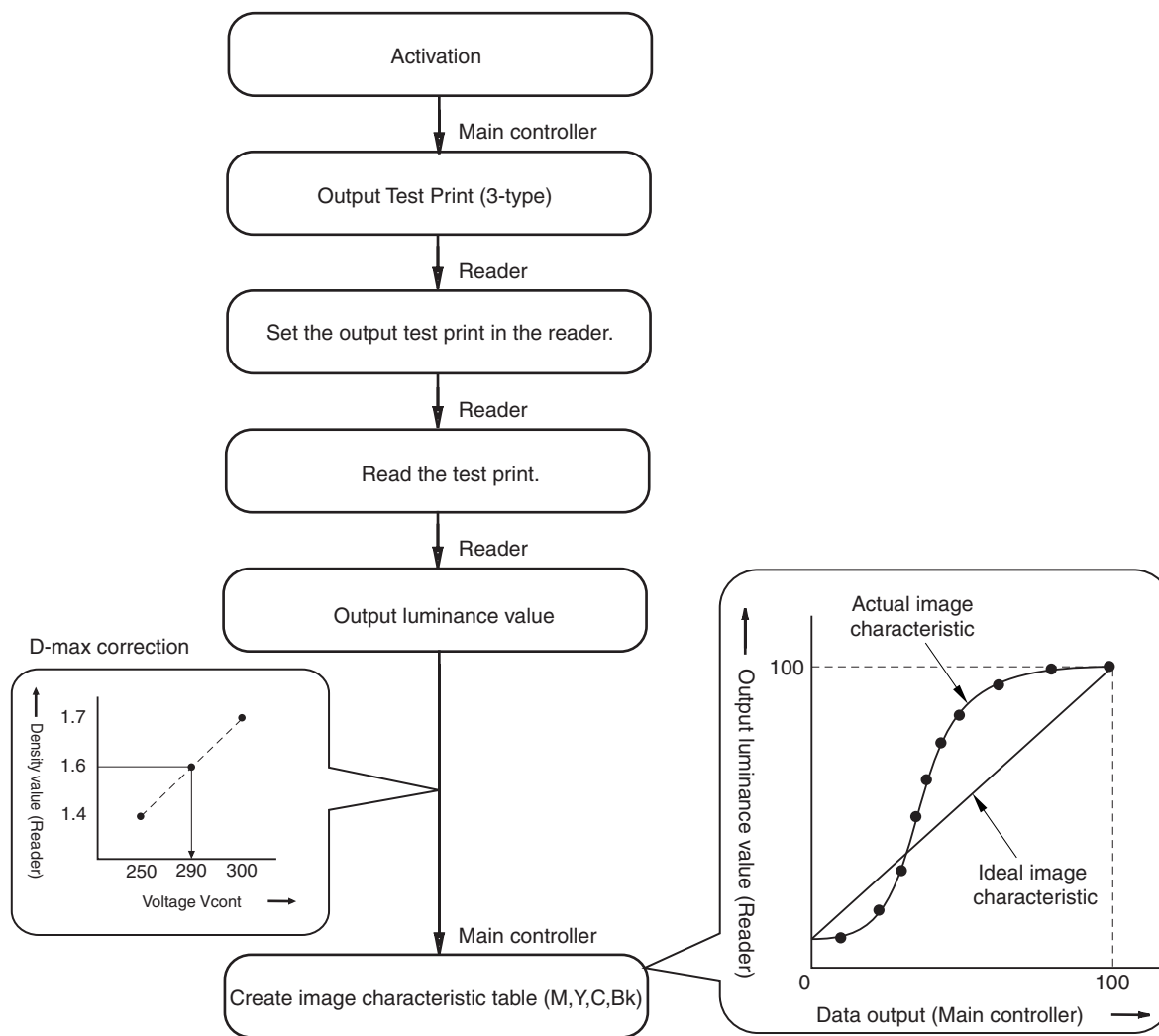
Reader PASCAL

In Reader PASCAL, the reader (scanner) is used to make image characteristics corrections, so the optional reader needs to be mounted.

The main controller creates a patch image and prints out three different test prints.

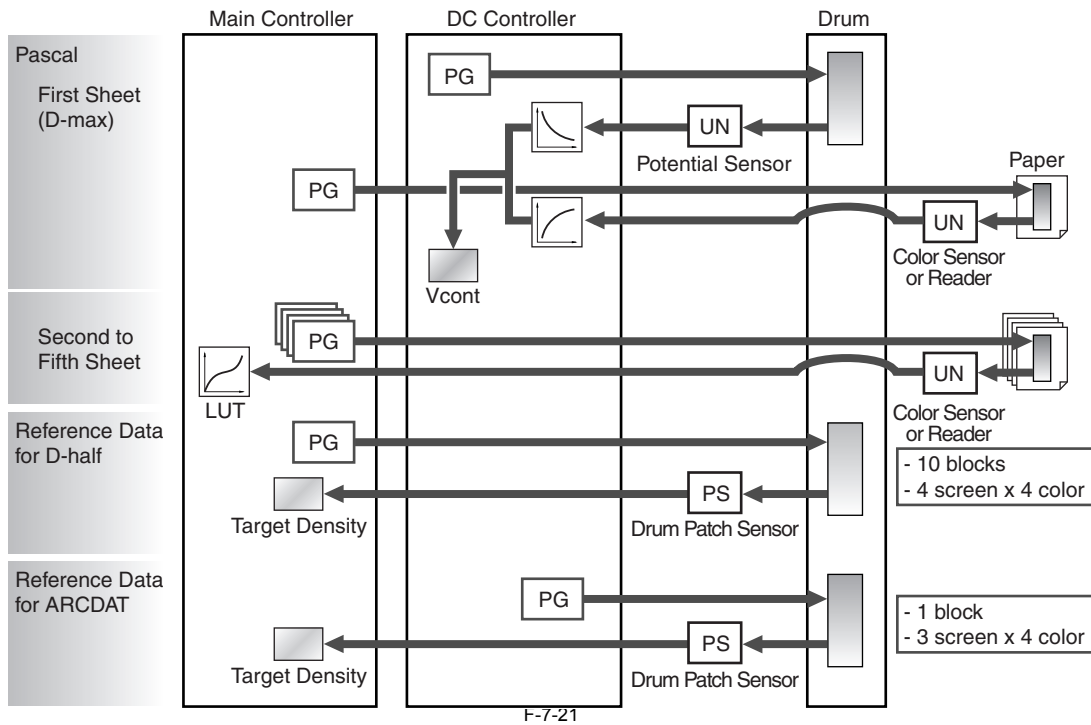
The user scans each test print with the reader, and the luminance values are relayed to the main controller.

The main controller uses the luminance values to create an image characteristics table, needed to obtain ideal image characteristics.



F-7-20

Automatic Gradation Correction



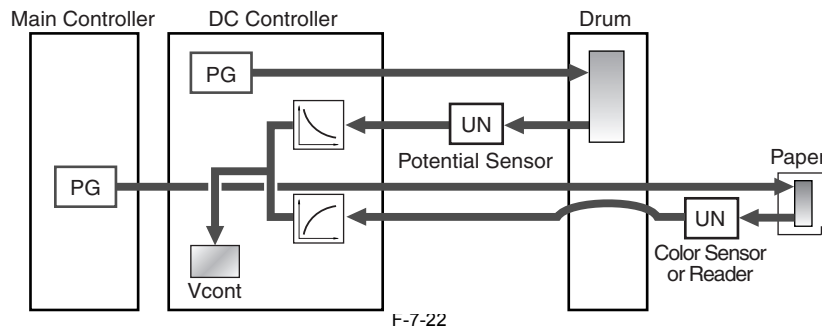
7.4.6 D-max Control

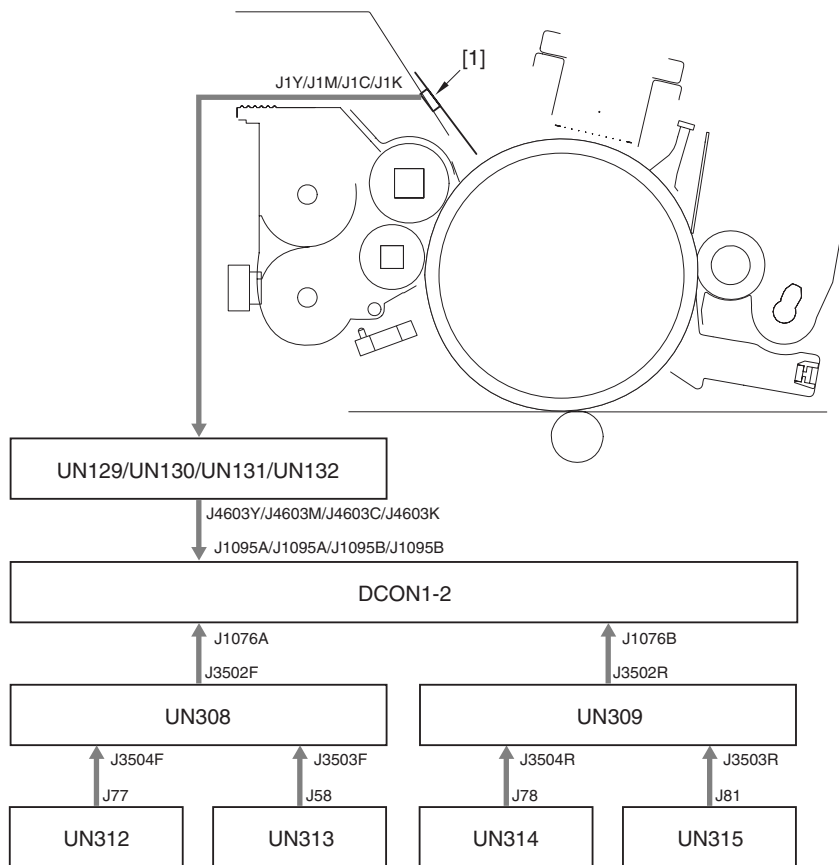
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

Image density changes according to factors such as environmental changes, deterioration in the sensitivity of the photosensitive drum or in the quality of the toner, etc.

This machine performs D-max control (image density correction control), in order to ensure stable print quality.

In D-max control, a halftone image is formed on the photosensitive drum by changing time length of laser irradiation; then electro potentials from each irradiating time length is measured. Then the test print of halftone image is scanned in with color sensors and obtained image density values are mapped to each measured electro potential in order to determine the image density correction voltage, Vcont.





F-7-23

[1] potential sensor (Y/M/C/Bk)
 DCON1-2: DC controller PCB 1-2
 UN129/UN130/UN131/UN132: potential measuring PCB (Y/M/C/Bk)
 UN308: color sensor control PCB 1
 UN309: color sensor control PCB 2
 UN312-315: color sensor 1-4

Timing

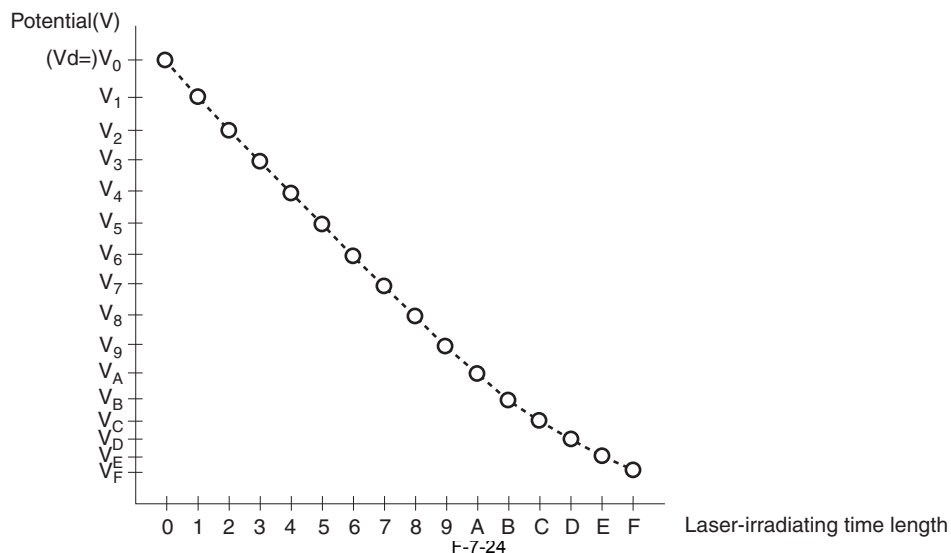
When Pascal control is performed.

Control details

1. Measuring bright area electro potentials

Form the halftone image generated by the DC controller on the photosensitive drum.

Change time length to irradiate laser on each pixel in 16 levels and measure bright area electro potentials using the electro potential sensor. Then the DC controller plots laser-irradiating time length and bright area electro potentials in a graph, showing the relation in-between.



F-7-24

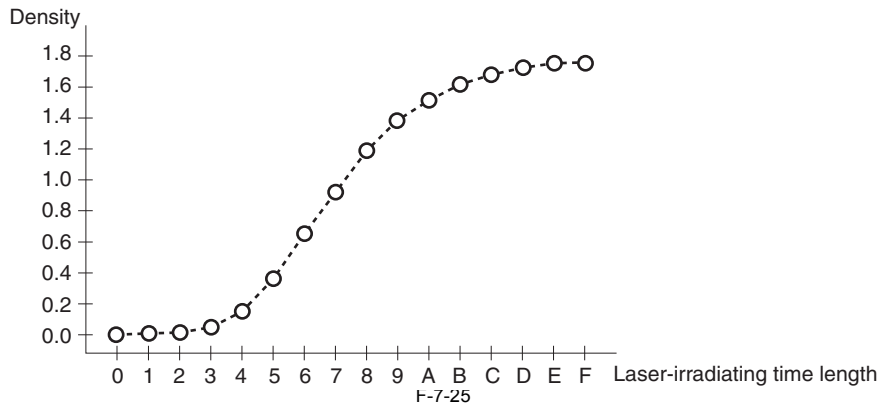
2. Measuring image density values

Output a test print of the halftone image generated by the main controller.

Note that all levels of laser-irradiating time length on each pixel should be included in the output.*

Scan in the halftone image output with color sensors** and feedback the density values to the DC controller.

The DC controller plots the laser-irradiating time-length and obtained image density values in a graph, showing the relation in-between.



* In printer PASCAL control, a patch is too large to include all the levels of laser- irradiating time length in a sheet; instead, major 11 levels are used in this case.

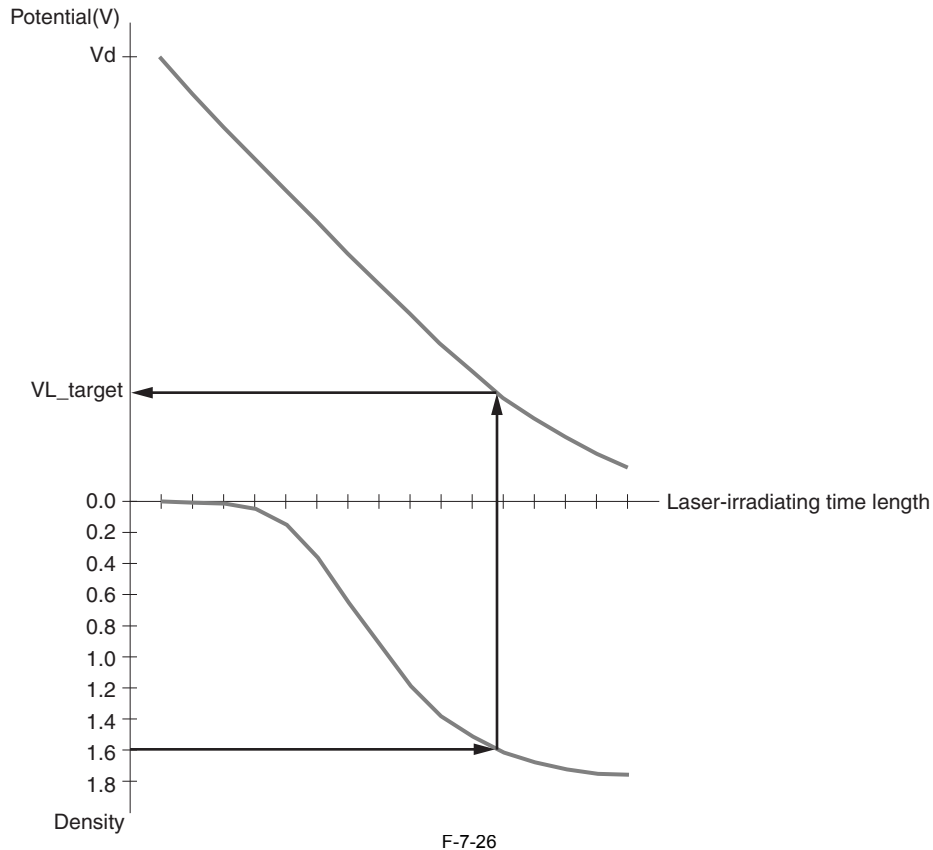
In reader PASCAL control, all 16 levels can be included in the output.

** In printer PASCAL control, scan in a halftone image using color sensor 1-4 (UN312-315) found in reversal/external delivery unit.

As for reader PASCAL control, a halftone image is scanned in with the reader by user's operation.

3. Determining image density correction voltage, Vcont

By combining the two graphs made in the previous step, derive the bright area electro potential, VL_target, which is required to achieve the pre-defined density (1.6).



Compute the image density correction voltage, Vcont, using the derived VL_target:

$$V_{cont} = V_d - V_{L_target} - V_{back}$$

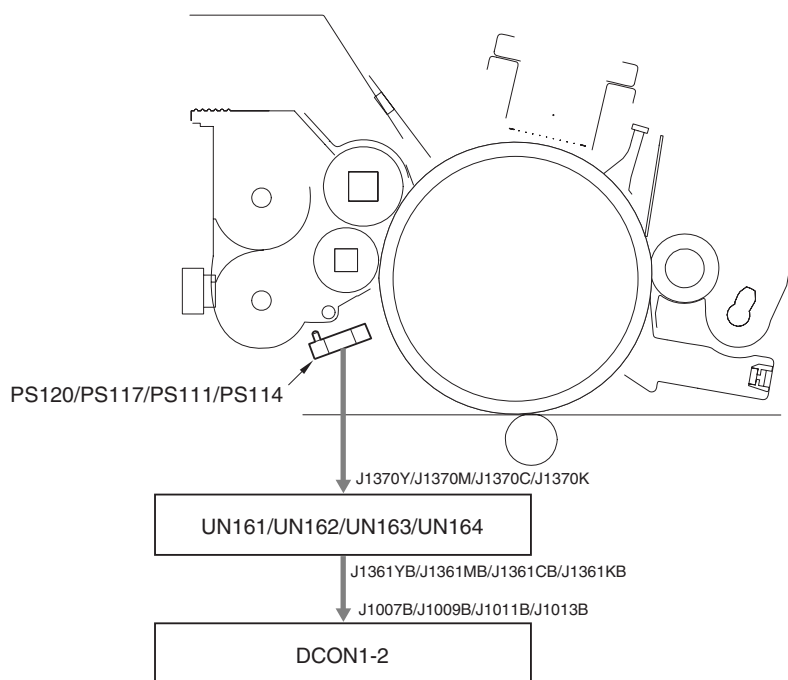
where Vd is the dark area electro potential and Vback is the voltage applied to correct the background in copying.

Note that Vcont derived in D-max control is used in determining the laser power (intensity) in electro potential control in order to achieve the pre-defined bright area electro potential.

7.4.7 D-half Control

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

This machine performs D-half control in order to obtain the ideal gradation characteristics. In D-half control, a patch image is formed on the surface of the photosensitive drum and scanned by the drum patch sensors. Gradation characteristics are corrected based on the results.

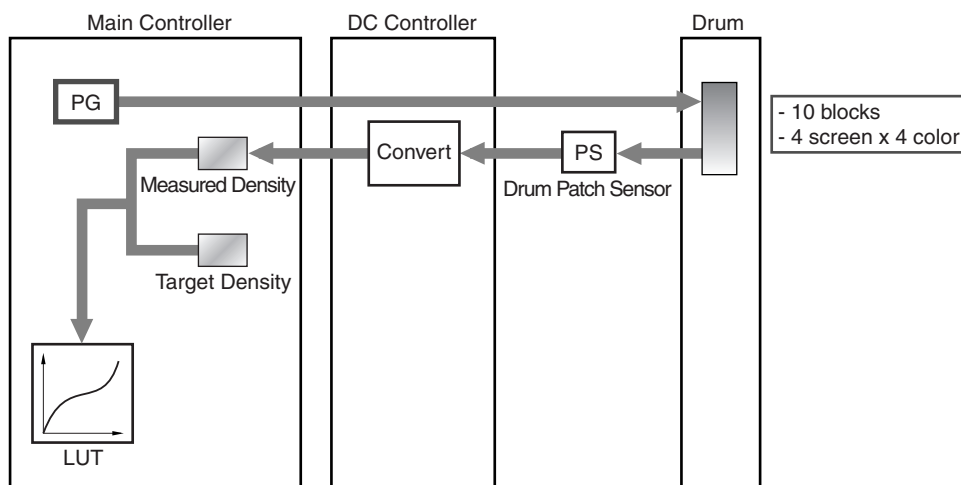


F-7-27

PS120/PS117/PS111/PS114: drum patch sensor (Y/M/C/Bk)

DCON1-2: DC controller PCB 1-2

UN161/UN162/UN163/UN164: process unit driver PCB (Y/M/C/Bk)



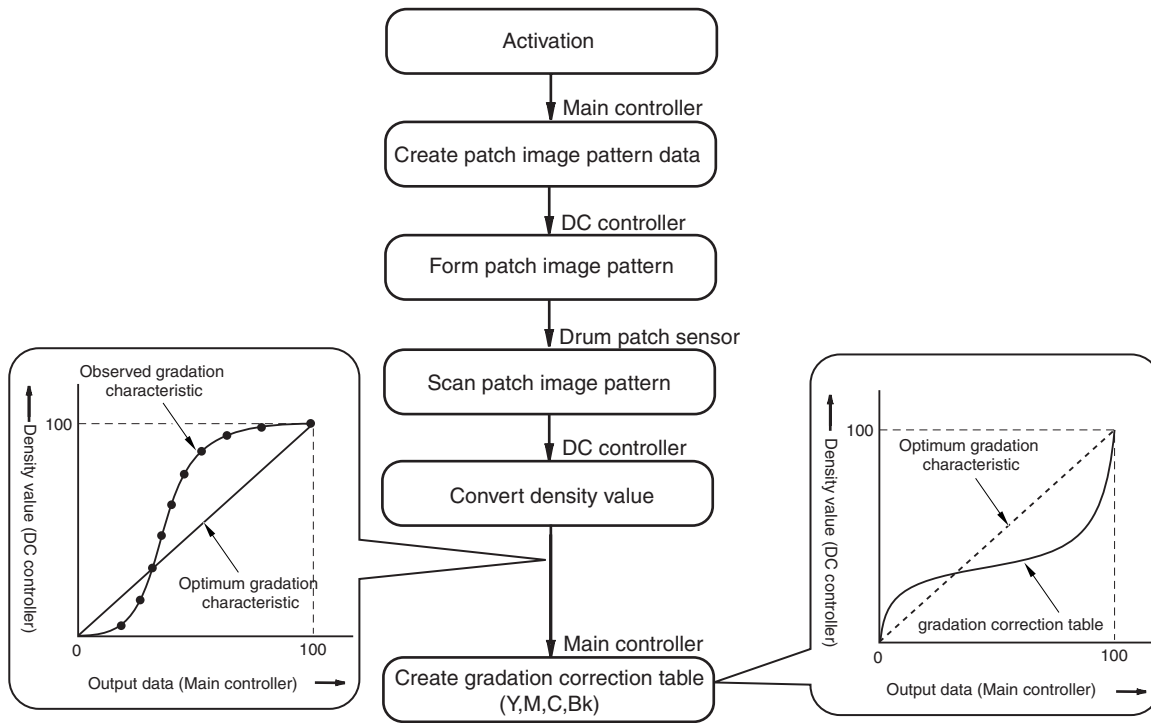
F-7-28

Timing

- Upon warm-up rotation, after power ON first thing in the morning.
- Upon PASCAL control operation.
- Upon last rotation after 4,500 sheets

Control details

A patch image pattern formed by the main controller is written on the photosensitive drum in each color (Y, M, C, Bk). The patch image pattern is read by the drum patch sensor (Y/M/C/Bk) (PS120/PS117/PS111/PS114) and the data relayed to the DC controller. The DC controller then converts these data to dark current and density corrected for base, and relays the information to the main controller. The main controller, in turn, uses the amount of change in the density values to create a gradation characteristics table, in order to obtain an ideal halftone image.

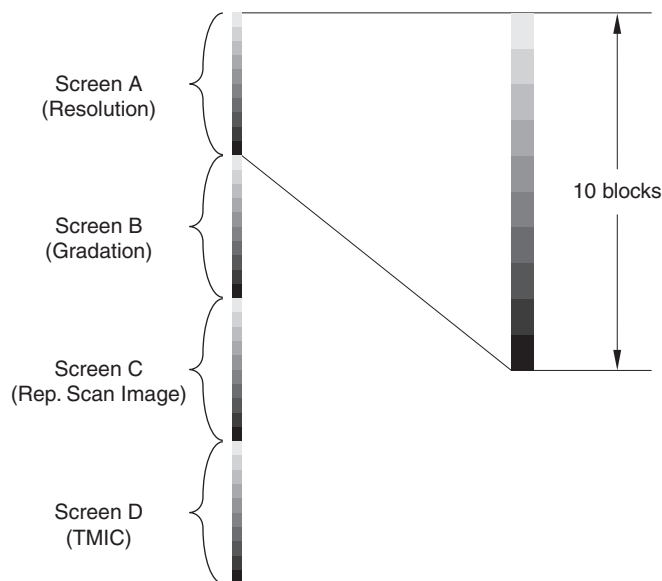


F-7-29

Patch Image Pattern for D-half Control

The patch image pattern used for the D-half control is comprised of 4 types of screen, and each screen is comprised of 10 blocks. The dither pattern specified with [Dither Pattern Settings] in [Device Management Settings] by user is applied to each screen.

Screen A (Resolution): use for text/line of printer image
 Screen B (Gradation): use for image/graphics of printer image
 Screen C (Rep. Scan Image): use for image of copy image
 Screen D (TMIC): use for text of copy image



F-7-30

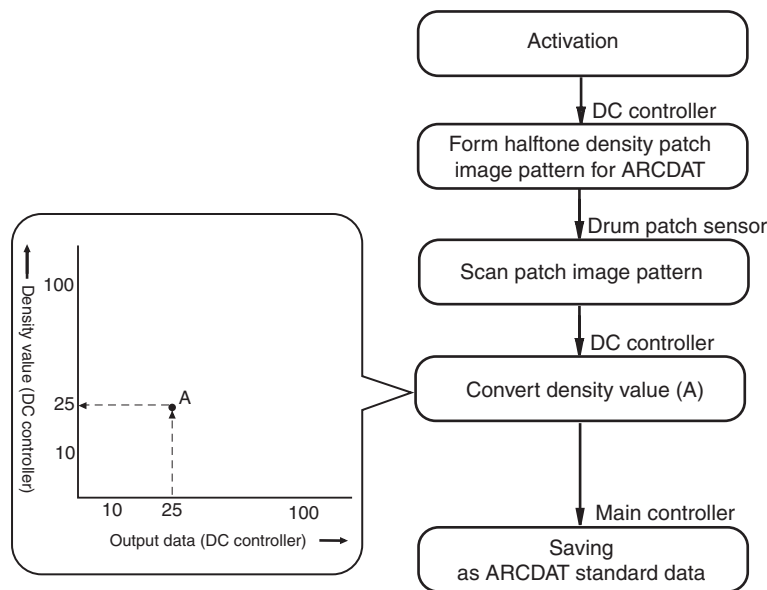
ARCDAT control patch image formation

In D-half control, after image gradation correction has been completed, a target value intermediate density patch image pattern is formed, for use in ARCDAT control.

The pattern is read by the drum patch sensor (Y/M/C/Bk) (PS120/PS117/PS111/PS114), and these data relayed to the DC controller.

The DC controller then converts these data into density values and relays the information to the main controller.

The main controller stores the density values as reference data for the ARCDAT patch images.

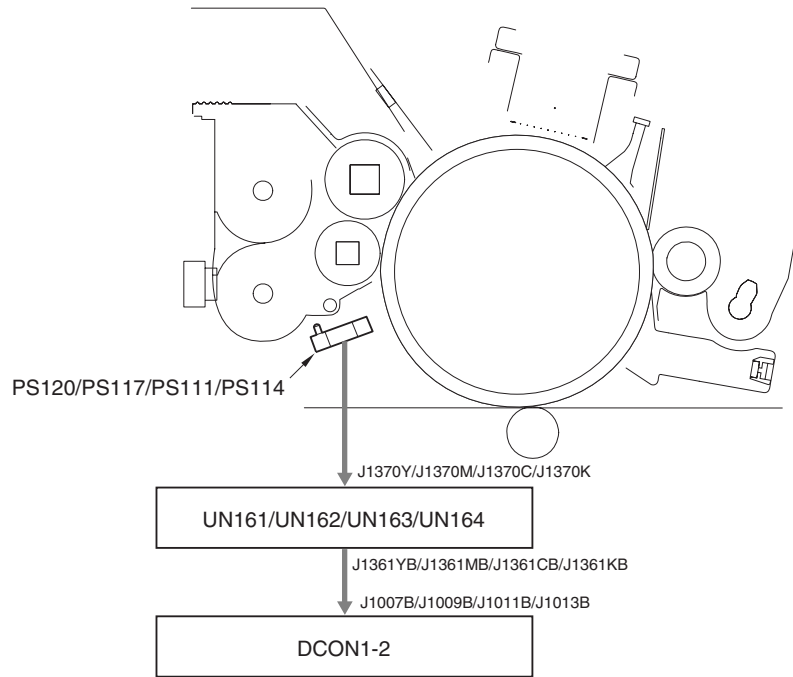


F-7-31

7.4.8 ARCDAT Control

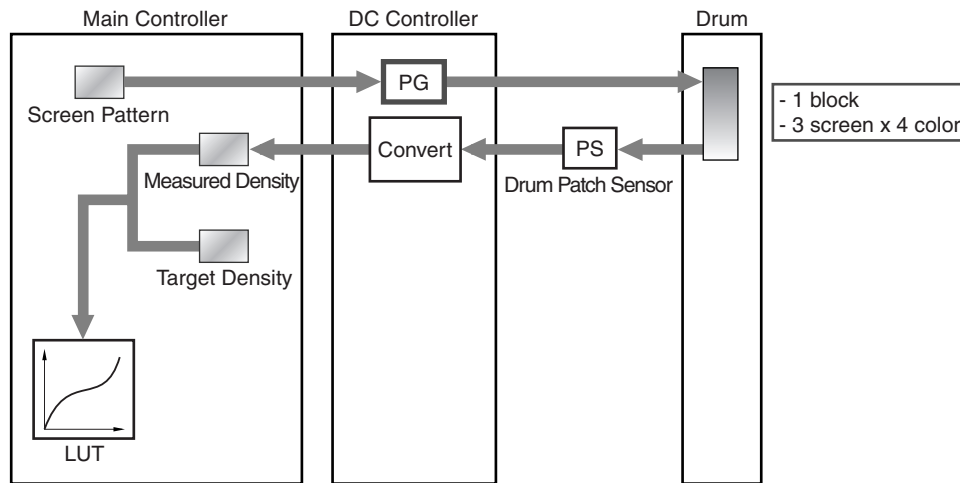
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

This machine performs ARCDAT control in order to obtain the ideal gradation characteristics. In ARCDAT control, a patch image is formed on the photosensitive drum and scanned by the drum patch sensors. Gradation characteristics are corrected based on the results, in order to maintain even density fluctuations.



F-7-32

PS120/PS117/PS111/PS114: drum patch sensor (Y/M/C/Bk)
 DCON1-2: DC controller PCB 1-2
 UN161/UN162/UN163/UN164: process unit driver PCB (Y/M/C/Bk)



F-7-33

Timing
 Between images.

Control details

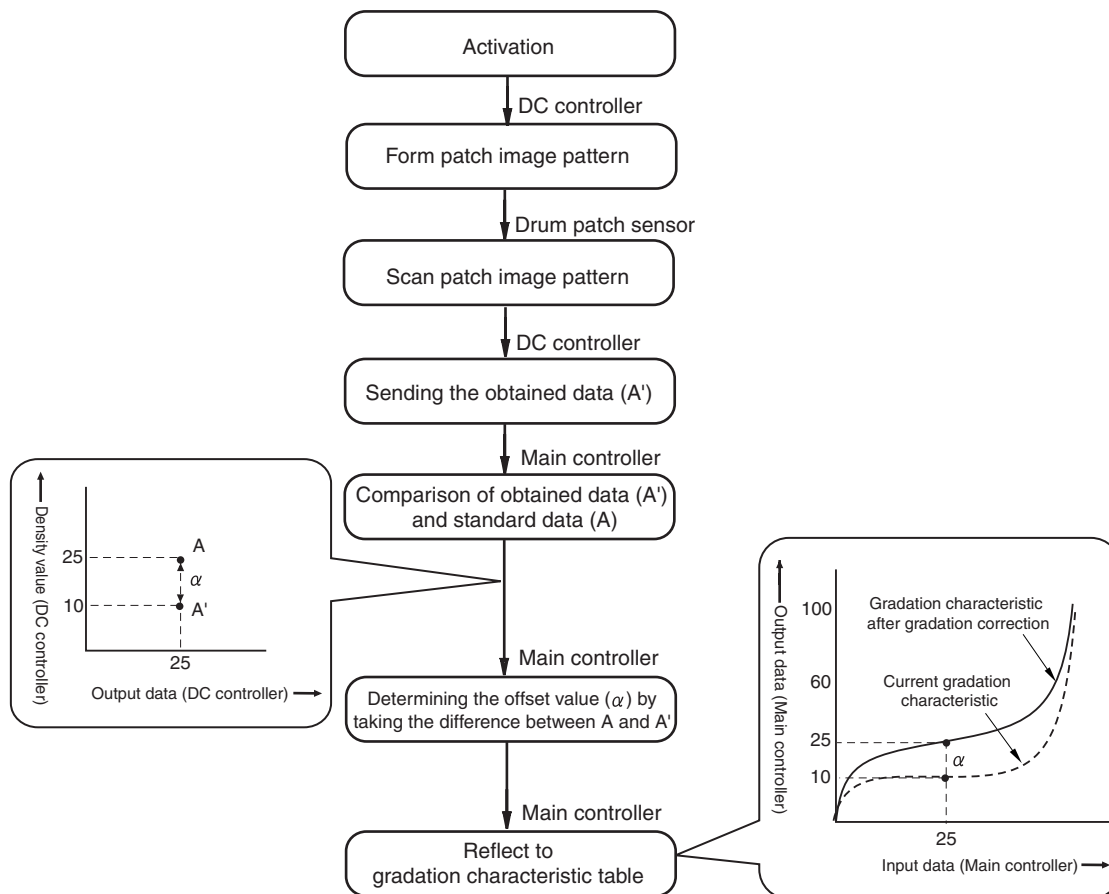
The main controller sends screen patterns to the DC controller.

The DC controller uses a combination of the screen patterns and dither images for each color (Y, M, C, Bk) to create patch image patterns that are then written onto the four photosensitive drums, between images.

The patch image patterns are read by the drum patch sensor (Y/M/C/Bk) (PS120/PS117/PS111/PS114) and the data relayed to the DC controller.

The DC controller converts these data into density values and then relays the information to the main controller.

The main controller, during printing, compares these values against the ARCDAT patch image reference data, and makes corrections to the gradation characteristics table.



I-7-34

7.4.9 ATVC Control

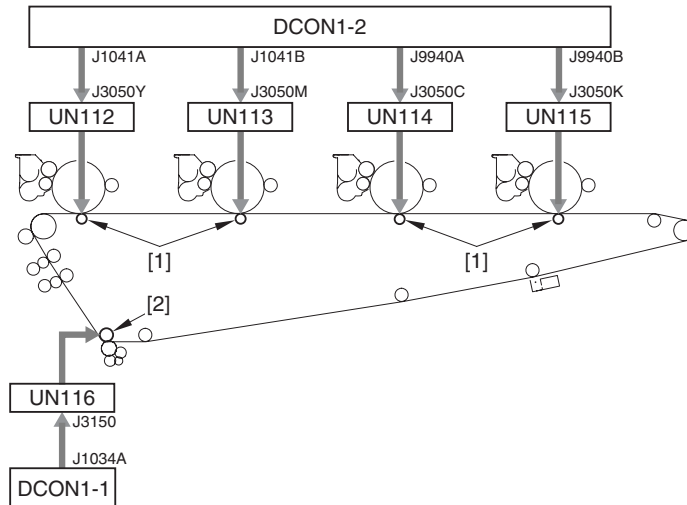
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

Voltage is applied to the primary transfer roller, in order to transfer the toner from the photosensitive drum onto the ITB. Voltage is also applied to the secondary transfer roller, in order to transfer the toner from the ITB onto the paper.

Even where the applied voltage is the same, the electropotential of the surface of the rollers changes due to factors such as the moisture level within the device and differences in individual rollers.

This machine performs ATVC control in order to determine the optimum transfer bias.

In ATVC control, the current on the roller when voltage is applied is measured and the relationship between the current and the applied voltage is plotted on a graph. The graph is used to determine the applied voltage that is required in order to obtain the target electropotential on the roller.



F-7-35

[1] Primary transfer roller	UN112: Primary transfer high-voltage PCB (Y)
[2] Secondary transfer inner roller	UN113: Primary transfer high-voltage PCB (M)
DCON1-1: DC controller PCB 1-1	UN114: Primary transfer high-voltage PCB (C)
DCON1-2: DC controller PCB 1-2	UN115: Primary transfer high-voltage PCB (Bk)
	UN116: Secondary transfer high-voltage PCB

Timing

- Upon warm-up rotation, after power ON first thing in the morning.
- Upon initial rotation (door open, jam recovery)
- Upon last rotation after 4,500 sheets
- Upon initial rotation every hour (primary transfer roller)
- Upon initial rotation at every 5, 10, 20, 40, 60 minutes and every hour (secondary transfer inner roller)
- Upon job suspension every 5,000 sheets

Control details

Linear interpolation is performed twice, based on the measurement results, the relationships between the applied voltage and the detection current plotted on a graph. Based on the graph, the target voltage (V_{target}) needed to obtain the target current (I_{target}) is determined.

1. Determining target current

The target current (I_{target}) is determined based on the temperature and humidity information obtained from the environment sensor.

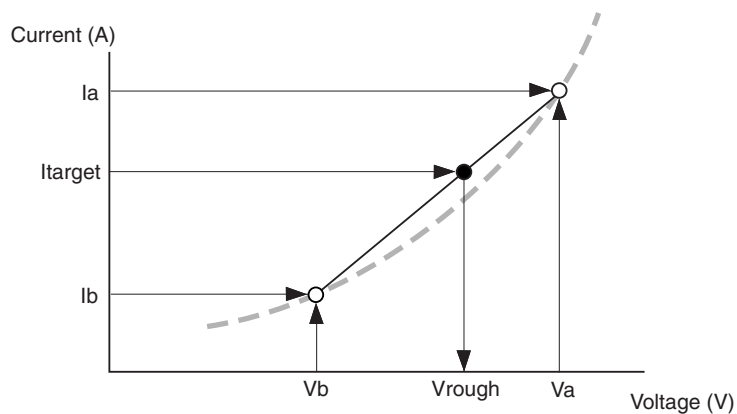
2. Calculation of approximate voltage

The current value I_a is measured when a voltage, V_a , estimated to be close to the target voltage V_{target} , is applied.

If I_a is greater than the target current value, I_{target} , $V_b = V_a - dV_r$ (offset value) is applied, if lesser, $V_b = V_a + dV_r$ is applied, and current I_b measured.

If points V_a and I_a , V_b and I_b are connected with straight lines, a primary approximate line graph can be obtained.

From this graph, the V_{rough} voltage corresponding to I_{target} is worked out.

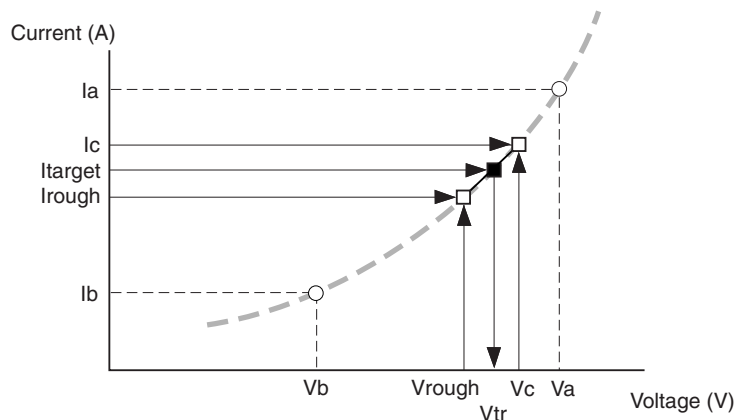
**3. Determining target voltage**

When V_{rough} is applied, the I_{rough} current is measured.

If I_{rough} is greater than I_{target} , $V_c = V_{rough} - dV_e$ (offset value) is applied, if lesser, $V_c = V_{rough} + dV_e$ is applied, and current I_c measured.

If points V_{rough} and I_{rough} , V_c and I_c are connected with straight lines, a primary approximate line graph can be obtained.

From this graph, the V_{tr} voltage corresponding to I_{target} is worked out.



In the case of secondary transfer bias, paper type is also a factor in the voltage correction. The voltage to be absorbed in paper (V_p) should be added when applying voltage to the secondary transfer roller.

7.4.10 ACVC Control

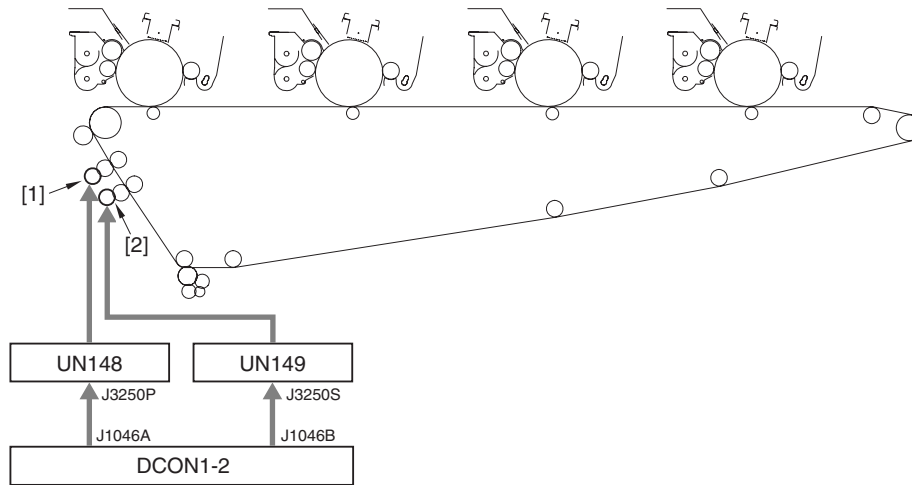
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

Voltage is applied to the ITB cleaning bias roller in order to remove residual toner from the ITB.

Even where the applied voltage is the same, the electropotential of the surface of the roller changes due to factors such as the moisture level within the device and differences in individual rollers.

This machine performs ACVC control in order to determine the optimum cleaning bias.

In ACVC control, the current on the roller when voltage is applied is measured, and the relationship between the current and the applied voltage is plotted on a graph. The graph is used to determine the applied voltage that is required in order to obtain the target electropotential on the roller.



F-7-38

[1] ITB cleaning bias roller (downstream)

[2] ITB cleaning bias roller (upstream)

UN148: ITB cleaner high voltage PCB (downstream)

UN149: ITB cleaner high voltage PCB (upstream)

DCON1-2: DC controller PCB 1-2

Timing

- Upon warm-up rotation, after power ON first thing in the morning
- Upon initial rotation (door open, jam recovery)
- Upon last rotation after 4,500 sheets
- Upon initial rotation every hour
- Upon job suspension every 5,000 sheets

Control details

Linear interpolation is performed twice, based on the measurement results, the relationships between the applied voltage and the detection current are plotted on a graph and the target voltage V_{target} is determined.

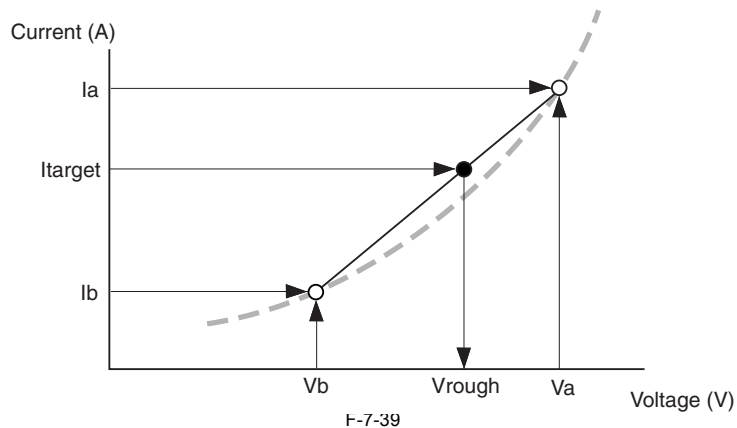
1. Calculation of approximate voltage

The current value I_a is measured when a voltage, V_a , estimated to be close to the target voltage V_{target} , is applied.

If I_a is greater than the target current value, I_t , $V_b = V_a - dV_r$ (offset value) is applied, if lesser, $V_b = V_a + dV_r$ is applied, and current I_b measured.

If points V_a and I_a , V_b and I_b are connected with straight lines, a primary approximate line graph can be obtained.

From this graph, the V_{rough} voltage corresponding to I_{target} is worked out.

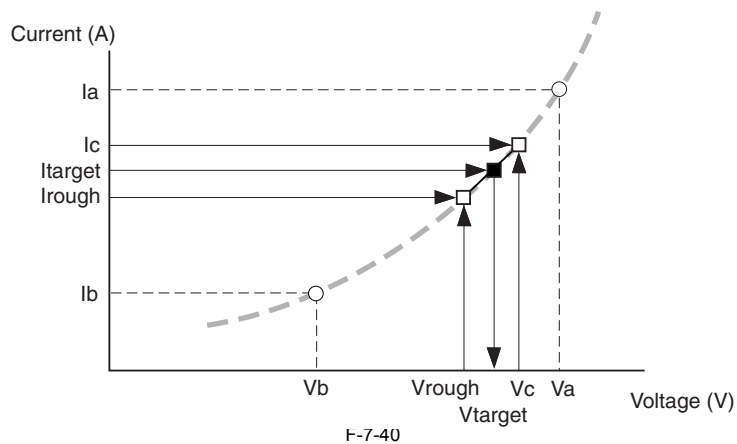
**2. Determining target voltage**

When V_{rough} is applied, the I_{rough} current is measured.

If I_{rough} is greater than I_{target} , $V_c = V_{rough} - dV_e$ (offset value) is applied, if lesser, $V_c = V_{rough} + dV_e$ is applied, and current I_c measured.

If points V_{rough} and I_{rough} , V_c and I_c are connected with straight lines, a primary approximate line graph can be obtained.

From this graph, the V_{target} voltage corresponding to I_{target} is worked out.



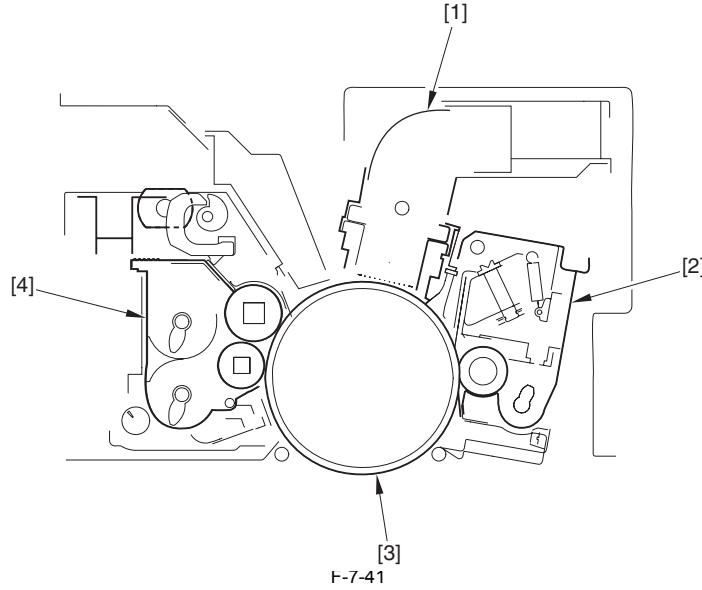
7.5 Process Unit

7.5.1 Outline

7.5.1.1 Overview of the Process Unit

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

The process unit is composed of the developing assembly, the photosensitive drum, the primary charging assembly, and the drum cleaning unit. There are process units for each color of Y, M, C, and Bk, of which configurations are the same in each color.



- [1] primary charging assembly
- [2] drum cleaning unit
- [3] photosensitive drum
- [4] developing assembly

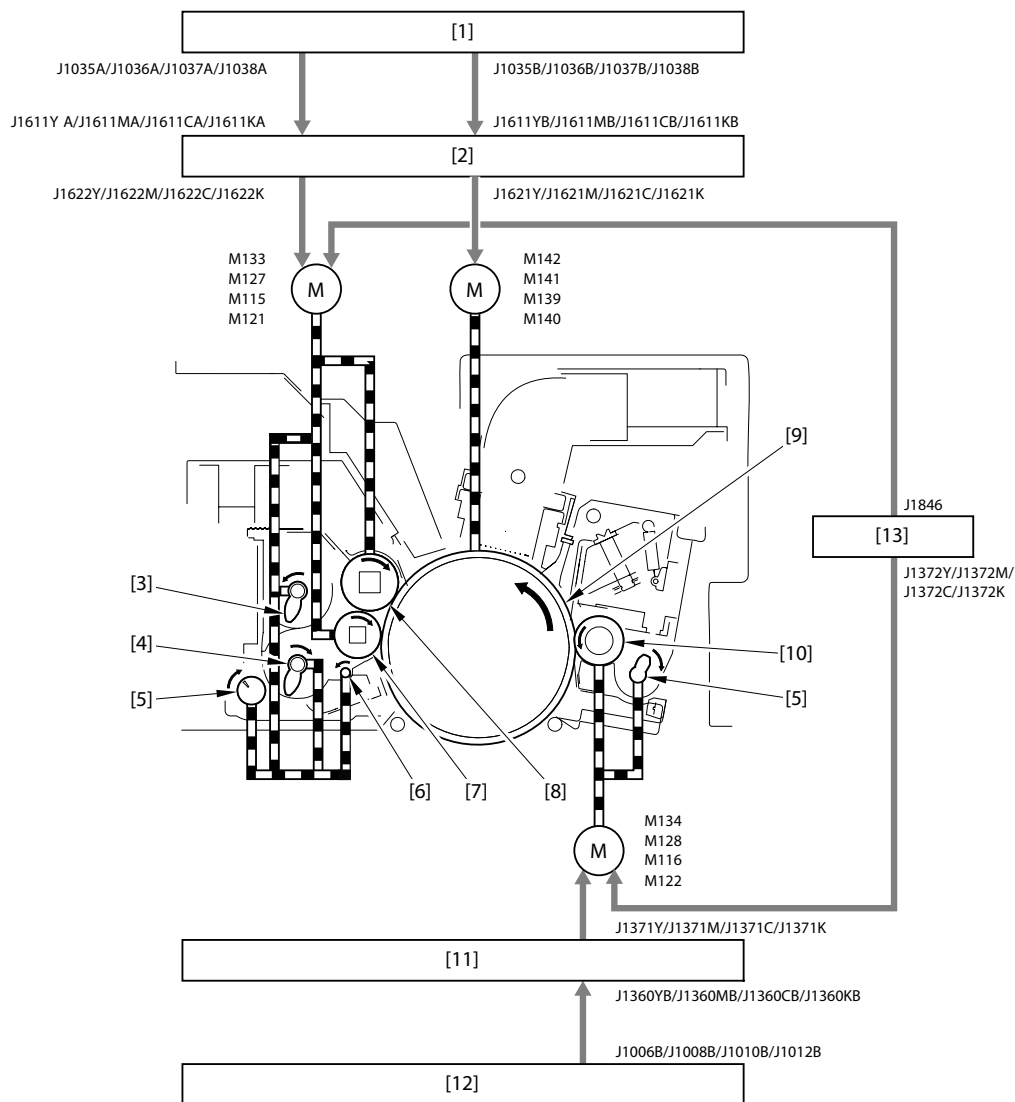
7.5.1.2 Process Unit Drive Control

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

The process unit is activated by the developing motor, the drum drive motor, the drum cleaner motor, the developing knocking motor and the gear. The process unit for each color has all of these motors.

T-7-11

Motor	Target
Developing motor	- Developing upper cylinder - Developing lower cylinder - A screw - B screw - C screw - Waste toner feed screw (on the developing assembly)
Drum drive motor	Photosensitive drum
Drum cleaner motor	- Drum cleaning brush roller - Waste toner feed screw (on the drum cleaning unit)
Developing knocking motor	Knocking plate



F-7-42

- [1] DC controller PCB 1-1
- [2] drum driver PCB (Y/M/C/Bk)
- [3] A screw
- [4] B screw
- [5] collection toner feeding screw
- [6] C screw
- [7] developing lower cylinder
- [8] developing upper cylinder
- [9] photosensitive drum
- [10] drum cleaning brush roller
- [11] process unit driver PCB (Y/M/C/Bk)
- [12] DC controller PCB 1- 2
- [13] Main station power supply PCB
- M133/M127/M115/M121 : developing motor (Y/M/C/Bk)
- M142/M141/M139/M140 : drum driving motor (Y/M/C/Bk)
- M134/M128/M116/M122 : drum cleaner motor (Y/M/C/Bk)

Related Error Code :
E012 : drum, ITB drive motor error

0x00 : drum drive motor error (x = 1 : Y, 2 : M, 3 : C, 4 : Bk)
FF** : drum drive motor drive convergence timeout

Related Error Code:

E012 : drum, ITB drive motor error

0x00 : drum drive motor error (x = 1 : Y, 2 : M, 3 : C, 4 : Bk)

FF** : drum drive motor drive convergence timeout

Related Error Code:

E016 : drum cleaner motor error; occurs in case the lock signal of the motor cannot be detected even after a certain period of time.

0x00 : drum cleaner motor error (x = 1 : Y, 2 : M, 3 : C, 4 : Bk)

Related Error Code:

E023 : developing motor error

0x00 : developing motor error (x = 1 : Y, 2 : M, 3 : C, 4 : Bk)

Related Error Code:

E820 : drum cooling fan error

010x : cooling fan error on the suction side (x = 1 : Y, 2 : M, 3 : C, 4 : Bk)

020x : cooling fan error on the exhaust side (x = 1 : Y, 2 : M, 3 : C, 4 : Bk)

0301 : process unit side front cooling fan (Y) error

0302 : process unit side rear cooling fan (Y) error

0303 : developing assembly cooling fan 1 (Y) error

Related Error Code:

E998 : PCB connect error; error in PCB connection detection port

1111 : drum driver PCB (Y)

1110 : drum driver PCB (M)

1101 : drum driver PCB (C)

1100 : drum driver PCB (Bk)

1011 : process unit driver PCB (Y)

1010 : process unit driver PCB (M)

1001 : process unit driver PCB (C)

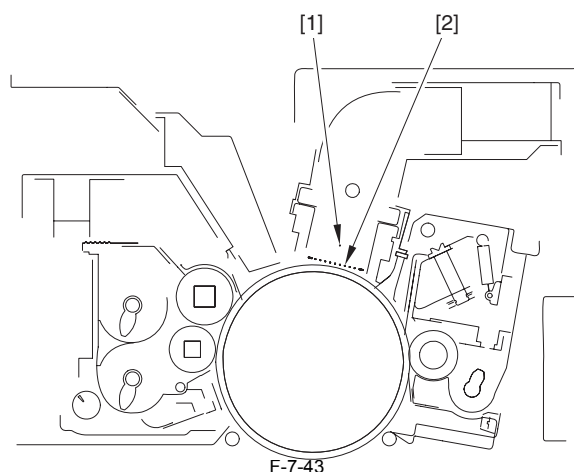
1000 : process unit driver PCB (Bk)

7.5.2 Charging Mechanism

7.5.2.1 Overview of Charging Mechanism

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- As a preparation for laser exposure, a negative charge is evenly applied onto the surface of the photosensitive drum.
- Collect and clean the residual toner on the photosensitive drum to prepare for the next print operation (primary charging, laser exposure, development, and primary transfer).



- [1] primary charging wire
- [2] primary charging grid plate

7.5.2.2 Primary Charging Bias Control

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

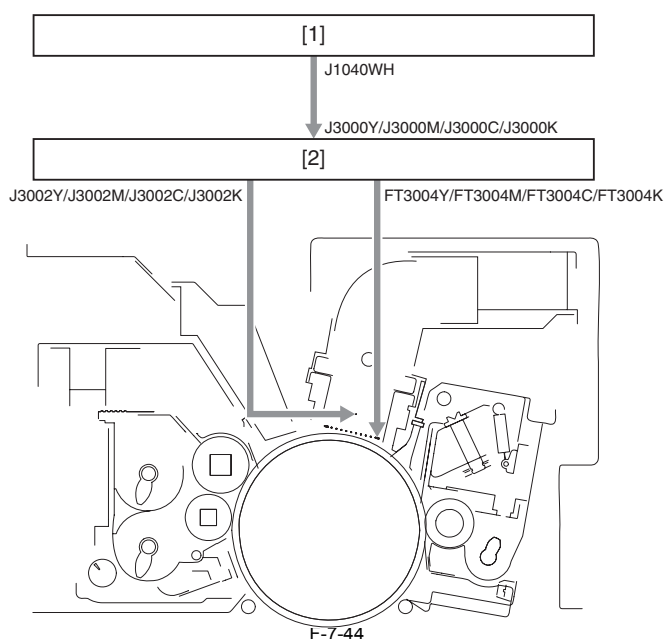
Primary charging bias is a bias generated for the purpose of evenly applying a negative charge onto the surface of the photosensitive drum as a preparation for formation of static latent image by laser exposure.

There are the following 2 types of primary charging:

- Primary charging DC bias (PRIMARY-Y, PRIMARY-M, PRIMARY-C, PRIMARY-K)
- Grid DC bias (GRID-Y, GRID-M, GRID-C, GRID-K)

These biases are generated in each HV1 PCB (primary charging high-voltage PCB) by the signal (HV-PRIM-Y-GRID-ON, HV-PRIM-M-GRID-ON, HV-PRIM-C-GRID-ON, HV-PRIM-K-GRID-ON) from the DC controller PCB 1-1, and applied to the primary charging wire and the primary charging grid plate at a certain timing.

The grid DC bias value is determined based on the result of potential control.



- [1] DC Controller PCB 1-1
- [2] Primary Charging High-Voltage PCB (Y/M/C/Bk)

7.5.2.3 Primary Charging Assembly Cleaning Control

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

The primary charging assembly equips the wire cleaner to prevent dirt on the primary charging wire.

The primary charging wire cleaning control is executed in the following timing.

- In case the fixing temperature is 50 deg C and below at the time the power is ON (warm-up rotation).
- Every time counting 2,000 images (A4) with continuous printing (interrupt a job while it is in process).
- At the last rotation of the job with 3600-image or more.
- In case of executing the wire cleaning in user mode.

As the cleaner screw rotates/reverses with the drive of the primary charging wire cleaning motor, the wire cleaner linked to the cleaner screw moves back and forth (for about 35 sec), and thereby cleaning the primary charging wire.

The DC controller PCB 1-2 executes the primary charging wire cleaning control by sending the drive signal to the primary charging wire cleaning motor via each process unit driver PCB.

The signals the DC controller PCB 1-2 sends to each process unit driver PCB are as follow: PRIM_WIRE_CLEANER_MTR_CW, and PRIM_WIRE_CLEANER_MTR_CCW. As each process unit driver PCB sends the drive signal to the respective primary charging wire cleaning motor (see the MEMO below), the primary charging wire cleaning is carried out.

The relationship between the signal that the DC controller PCB 1-2 sends and the primary charging wire cleaning operation is as follow:

- In case the PRIM_WIRE_CLEANER_MTR_CW is "1" : the wire cleaner shifts to the front side.
- In case the PRIM_WIRE_CLEANER_MTR_CCW is "1" : the wire cleaner shifts to the rear side.

MEMO:

Drive signal from the process unit driver PCB (Y) to the primary charging wire cleaning motor (Y) :

- PRIM-WIRE-CLEANER-MTR-Y-CW
- PRIM-WIRE-CLEANER-MTR-Y-CCW

Drive signal from the process unit driver PCB (M) to the primary charging wire cleaning motor (M) :

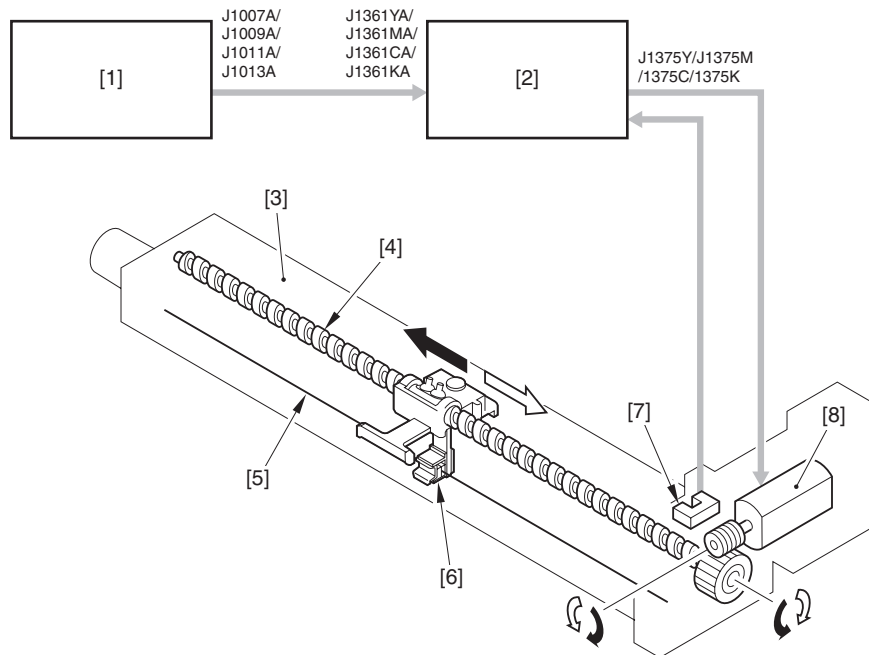
- PRIM-WIRE-CLEANER-MTR-M-CW
- PRIM-WIRE-CLEANER-MTR-M-CCW

Drive signal from the process unit driver PCB (C) to the primary charging wire cleaning motor (C) :

- PRIM-WIRE-CLEANER-MTR-C-CW
- PRIM-WIRE-CLEANER-MTR-C-CCW

Drive signal from the process unit driver PCB (Bk) to the primary charging wire cleaning motor (Bk) :

- PRIM-WIRE-CLEANER-MTR-K-CW
- PRIM-WIRE-CLEANER-MTR-K-CCW



F-7-45

- [1] DC controller PCB 1-2
- [2] Process unit driver PCB (Y/M/C/Bk)
- [3] Primary charging assembly
- [4] Cleaner screw
- [5] Primary charging wire
- [6] Wire cleaner
- [7] Primary charging wire cleaner HP sensor (Y/M/C/Bk)
- [8] Primary charging wire cleaning motor (Y/M/C/Bk)

7.5.2.4 Pre-Exposure LED Activation Control

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

With the pre-exposure LED activation control, the residual charge of the electrostatic latent image is eliminated before charging negative potential on to the surface of the photosensitive drum with the primary charging assembly.

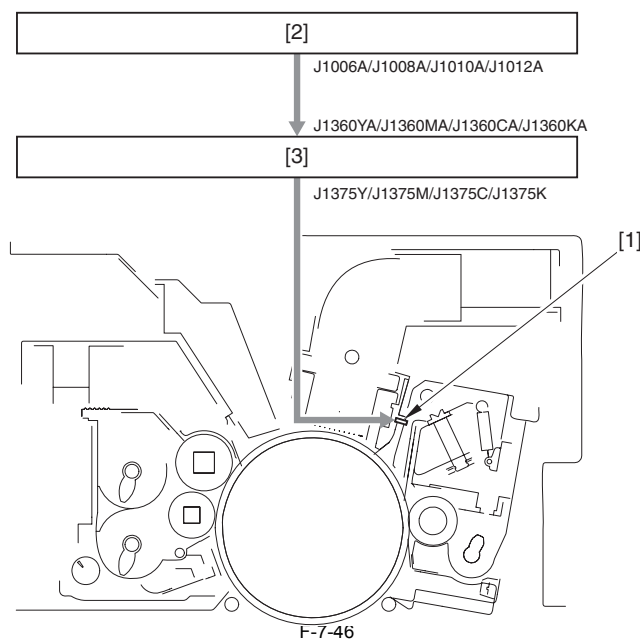
The elimination of the residual charge from the surface of the photosensitive drum prevents the occurrence of uneven density of the printing image; thus, enables the stable image formation.

The DC controller PCB 1-2 executes the pre-exposure LED activation control by sending the exposure signal to the pre-exposure LED unit via each process unit driver PCB.

The signal the DC controller PCB 1-2 sends to each process unit driver PCB is as follow: PRE_EXPOSURE_LED. As each process unit driver PCB sends the exposure signal (PRE_EXPOSURE_LED_Y, PRE_EXPOSURE_LED_M, PRE_EXPOSURE_LED_C, and PRE_EXPOSURE_LED_K) to the respective pre-exposure LED unit, the pre-exposure (elimination of the residual charge) is carried out.

The relationship between the exposure signal that the DC controller PCB 1-2 sends and the pre-exposure LED activation operation is as follow:

- In case the PRE_EXPOSURE_LED is "0" : the pre-exposure LED is deactivated.
- In case the PRE_EXPOSURE_LED is "1" : the pre-exposure LED is activated.



- [1] Pre-Exposure LED (Y/M/C/Bk)
- [2] DC Controller PCB 1-2
- [3] Process Unit Driver PCB (Y/M/C/Bk)

7.5.2.5 Drum Cleaning Unit

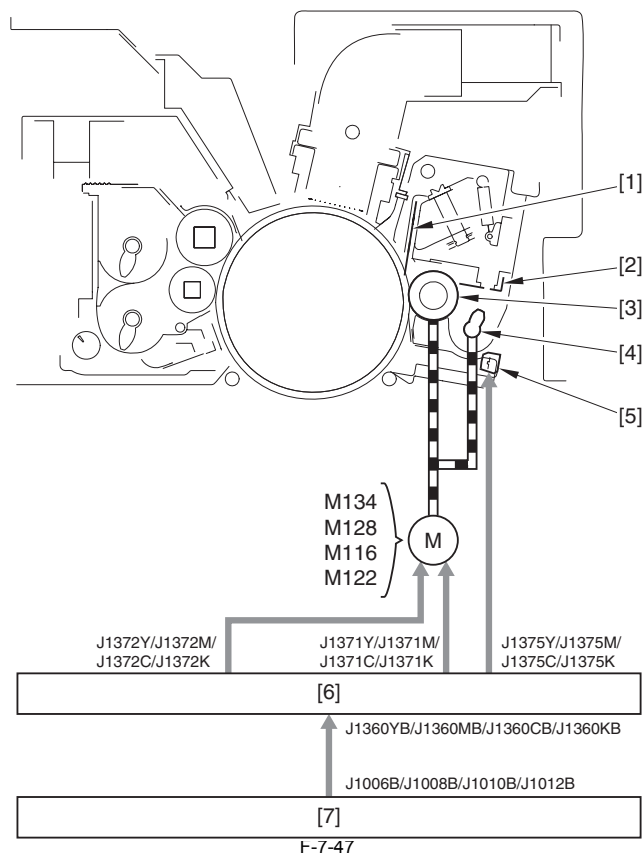
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

The drum cleaning unit is deployed beside the photosensitive drum in the process unit, and collects the residual toner on the surface of the photosensitive drum. By collecting the residual toner that is not transferred to the ITB and cleaning the surface of the photosensitive drum, prepare for next print.

The drum cleaning unit is comprised of the following parts:

- Drum Cleaning Blade
- Scraper
- Side Seal
- Drum Cleaning Brush Roller
- Waste Toner Feed Screw
- Drum Cleaner Pre-Exposure LED

The residual toner collected by the drum cleaning brush roller and the drum cleaning blade is scraped off with the scraper that contacts with the drum cleaning brush roller; then, it is fed to the waste toner feed/receptacle unit with the waste toner feed screw.



- [1] Drum Cleaning Blade
 - [2] Scraper
 - [3] Drum cleaning brush roller
 - [4] Waste toner feeder screw
 - [5] Pre-drum cleaning exposure LED (Y/M/C/Bk)
 - [6] Processing unit driver PCB (Y/M/C/Bk)
 - [7] DC controller PCB 1-2
- M134/M128/M116/M122 : Drum cleaner motor (Y/M/C/Bk)

A. Drum cleaning brush roller / waste toner feeder screw drive

DC controller PCB 1-2 sends out driving signal for the drum cleaner motor via each processing unit driver PCB to perform the cleaning of the photosensitive drum.

The signal that DC controller PCB 1-2 sends to each of the processing unit driver PCB's is "DRUM_CLEANER_MTR_ON." Photosensitive drum cleaning is performed when each processing unit driver PCB sends the driving signal (DRUM_CLEANER_MTR_ON_Y, DRUM_CLEANER_MTR_ON_M, DRUM_CLEANER_MTR_ON_C, DRUM_CLEANER_MTR_ON_K) to its corresponding drum cleaner motor.

- When the DRUM_CLEANER_MTR_ON setting is "0" : The drum cleaning brush roller / the waste toner feeder screw do not rotate in operation.
- When the DRUM_CLEANER_MTR_ON setting is "1" : The drum cleaning brush roller / the waste toner feeder screw rotate in operation.

B. Pre-drum cleaning exposure LED

There are cases where the gap discharge that occurred in the primary transfer causes changes in (makes uneven) the surface potential of the photosensitive drum. The gap discharge occurs when a solid image that has gone through the upstream (going into the primary transfer earlier than the other) processing unit passes through the downstream processing unit.

Changes in the surface potential of the photosensitive drum cause the formation of the latent image, and this becomes a cause of lines showing up on the image. It is the pre-drum cleaning exposure LED that keeps the potential even to prevent the formation of the latent image (uneven potential).

DC controller PCB 1-2 sends out the pre-drum cleaning exposure LED illumination signal via each processing unit driver PCB to perform the pre-drum cleaning exposure LED lightening control.

The signal that DC controller PCB 1-2 sends to each of the processing unit driver PCB's is "PRE_CLEANER_EXPOSURE_LED." Pre-drum cleaning exposure (elimination of the potential unevenness) is performed when each processing unit driver PCB sends the illumination signal (PRE_EXPOSURE_LED2_Y, PRE_EXPOSURE_LED2_M, PRE_EXPOSURE_LED2_C, PRE_EXPOSURE_LED2_K) to its corresponding pre-drum cleaning exposure LED.

The correspondence between the illumination signal that DC controller PCB 1-2 sends out and the illumination state of the pre-drum cleaning exposure LED is as follows.

- When the PRE_CLEANER_EXPOSURE_LED setting is "0" : The pre-drum cleaning exposure LED is turned off.
- When the PRE_CLEANER_EXPOSURE_LED setting is "1" : The pre-drum cleaning exposure LED is turned on.

7.5.3 Developing Assembly

7.5.3.1 Developing Assembly Configurations

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

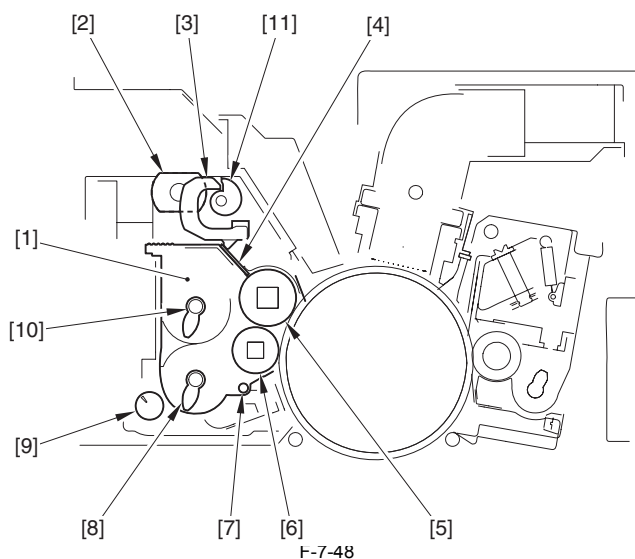
The developing assembly develops and visualizes the electrostatic latent image on the surface of the photosensitive drum by performing the developing bias control. Inside the developing assembly, several screws and cylinders agitate and circulate the developer. The spatter prevention bias control is performed in order to prevent the excess developer that was not used in development from spattering all over.

The ACR control is performed for the purpose of enabling longer service life of the developer.

The table below shows major parts that constitute the developing assembly and their functions.

T-7-12

Parts	Functions
A screw (supply chamber)	Supplies the developer to the upper developing cylinder.
B screw (agitation chamber)	Agitates the developer supplied from the sub-hopper and the developer coming back from the lower developing cylinder and sends the developer to the supply chamber.
Blade	Smooths out the developer in the upper developing cylinder and forms a uniform layer of the developer.
Upper developing cylinder	Holds the developer.
Lower developing cylinder	
C screw	Sends the excess developer in the lower developing cylinder that was not used in development to the agitation chamber.
Developing knocking motor	Vibrates the developing assembly to prevent the toner from coagulating.
Knocking plate	



F-7-48

- [1] Developing assembly
- [2] Developing knocking motor
- [3] Knocking plate
- [4] Blade
- [5] Upper developing cylinder
- [6] Lower developing cylinder
- [7] C screw
- [8] B screw
- [9] Waste toner feeder screw
- [10] A screw
- [11] Cam

Twin development

There are 2 developing cylinders - the upper developing cylinder and the lower developing cylinder.

The developer supplied from the supply chamber to the upper developing cylinder is smoothed out by the blade and forms a uniform layer.

The first development takes place from the upper developing cylinder to the photosensitive drum. The residual developer in the development upper cylinder that was not used in the first development process is carried to the lower developing cylinder.

The second development takes place from the lower developing cylinder to the photosensitive drum. The residual developer in the development lower cylinder that was not used in the second development process is carried to the agitation chamber by the C screw.

It is to enhance the developing performance that development is done twice with the 2 developing cylinders.

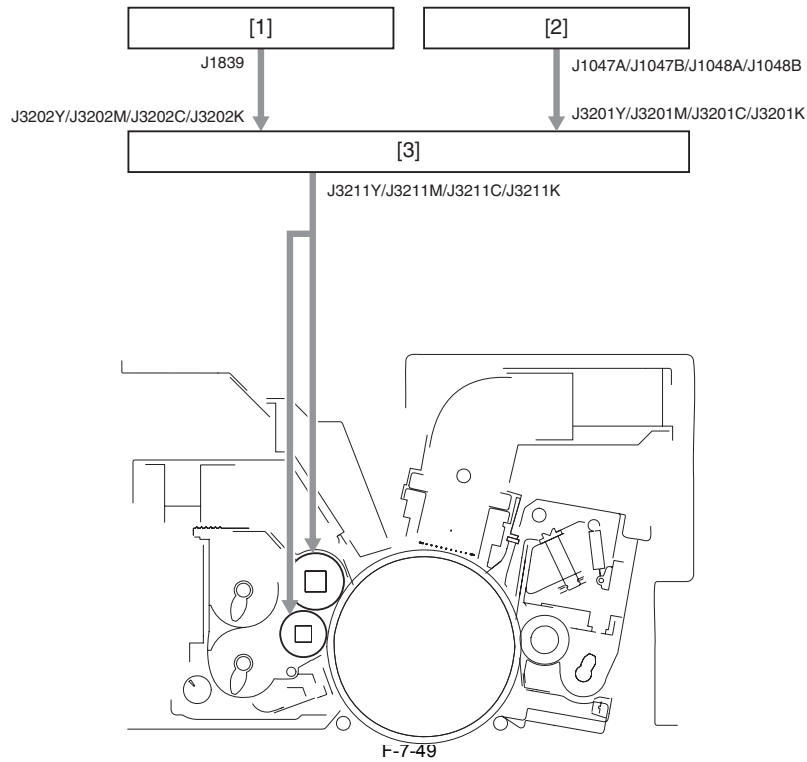
7.5.3.2 Developing Bias Control

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

There are 2 types of developing bias.

- Developing DC bias : creates potential differences between the developer and the photosensitive drum so as to fix the developer.
- Developing AC bias : works to enhance the image quality.

The bias is generated on each HV5 PCB in response to the command by the DC controller PCB 1-1, and applied to the upper and lower developing cylinders at certain timings.

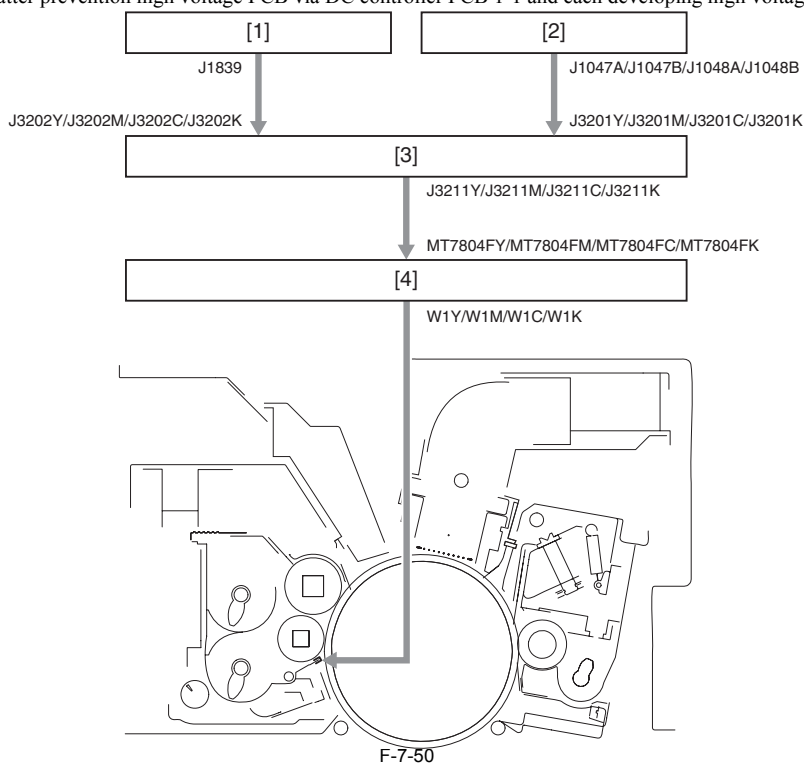


- [1] Main station power supply connect PCB
- [2] DC controller PCB 1-1
- [3] Development high-voltage PCB (Y/M/C/Bk)

7.5.3.3 Spatter Prevention Bias Control

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

An electrode plate for spatter prevention is located at the opening near the developing cylinder. In order to prevent the spatter the electrode becomes negatively charged so the developer is kept held within the developing cylinder. This bias is generated on each spatter prevention high voltage PCB via DC controller PCB 1-1 and each developing high voltage PCB.



- [1] Main station power supply connect PCB
- [2] DC controller PCB 1-1
- [3] Development high-voltage PCB (Y/M/C/Bk)
- [4] Splash-prevention high-voltage PCB (Y/M/C/Bk)

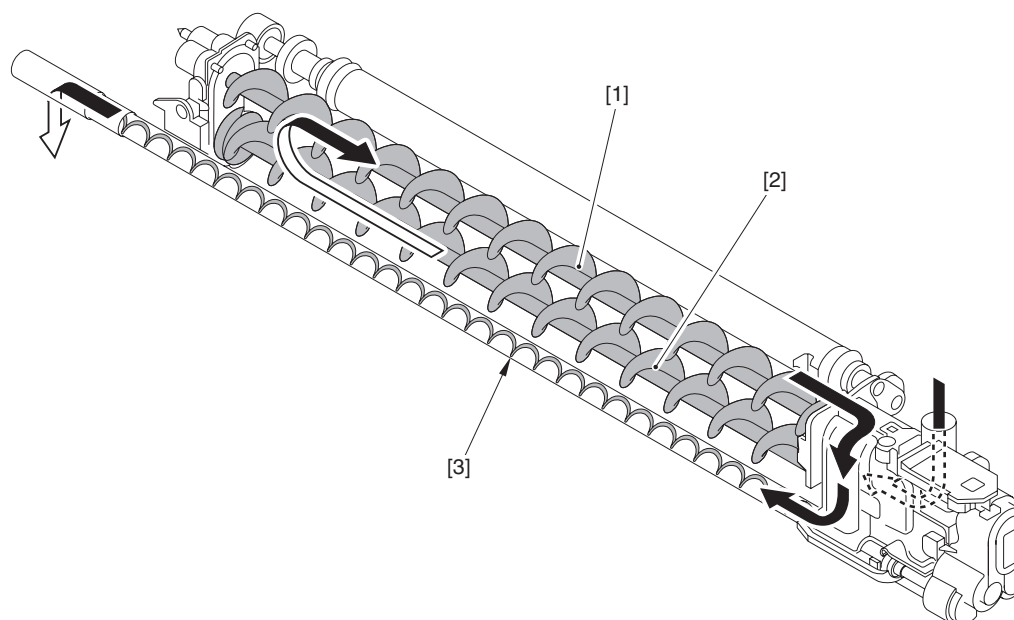
7.5.3.4 ACR Control

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

In the ACR (Auto Carrier Refresh) control, developer inside the developing assembly is replaced little at a time for the purpose of enabling longer service life for the developer.

Carrier supply takes place simultaneously with toner supply little at a time.

There is an exit on the downstream side of the supply chamber in the developing assembly, and as the developer fills up it is discharged from the exit.

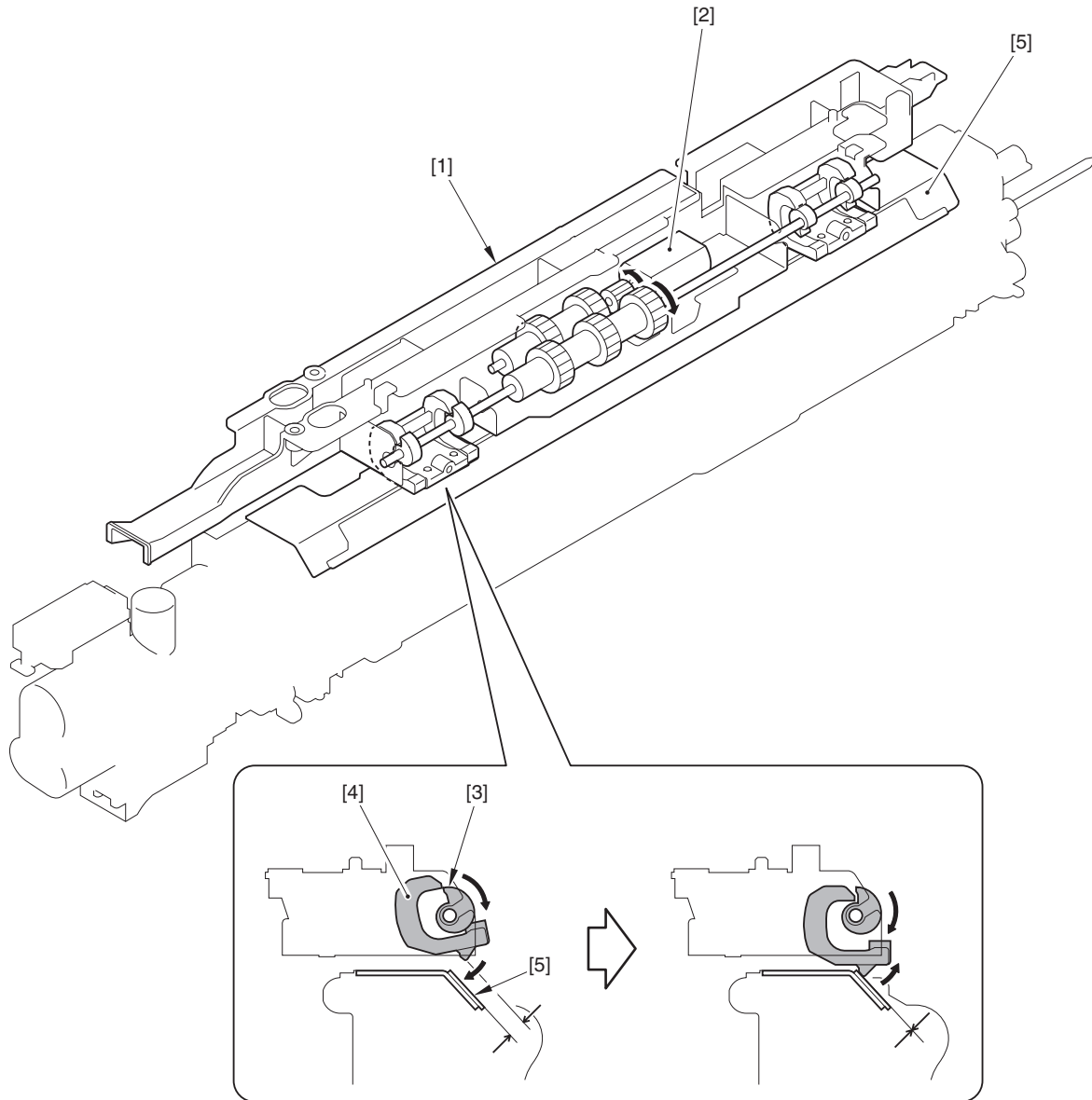


- [1] A screw
- [2] B screw
- [3] Waste toner feed screw

7.5.3.5 Toner Anticoagulation Control

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

The developing knocking unit that performs toner anticoagulation control is situated right above the developing assembly. In the developing knocking unit, the developing knocking motor rotates the cam, and the knocking plates move up and down according to its movement. A knocking plate is situated at the front and rear sides; they move up and down alternately each other. Slight, repeated knocking of the developing assembly with the 2 knocking plates at the front and rear sides prevents the toner in the developing assembly from coagulating.



F-7-52

- [1] developing knocking unit
- [2] developing knocking motor (M203/M204/M205/M206)
- [3] cam
- [4] knocking plate
- [5] developing assembly

7.6 Toner Container

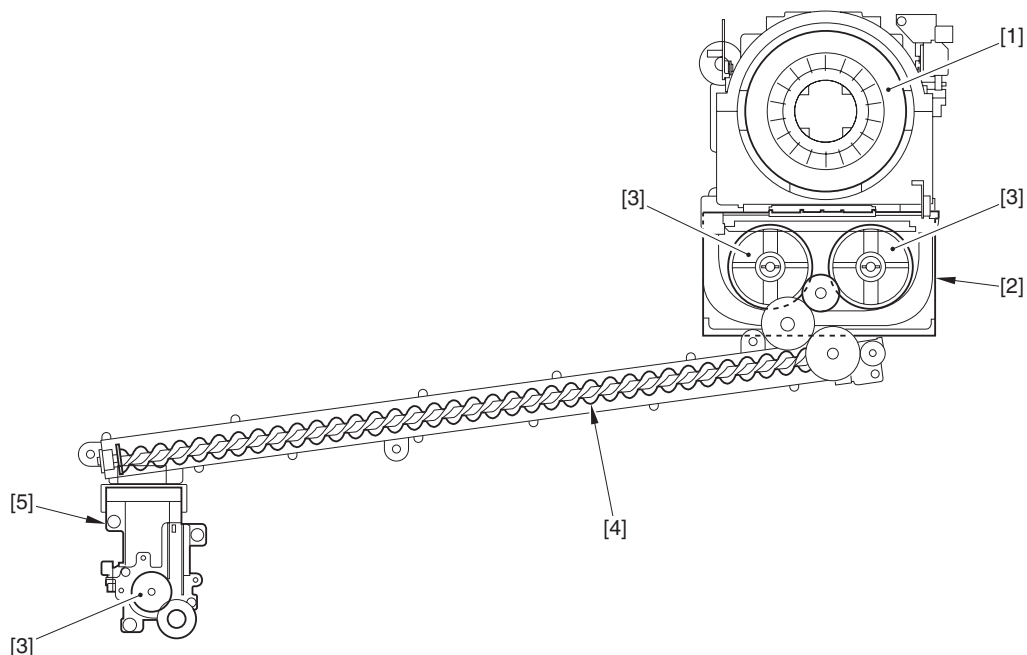
7.6.1 Overview of Toner Supply Mechanism

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

The toner supply mechanism consists of a toner container, a stirring screw, a feeding screw, a hopper, and a sub hopper.

Toner amount is 1,700g for a toner container, 2,000g for a hopper, 20g for a sub hopper.

As for toner container present/absent detection, hopper unit drive control, toner level detection, and toner-supplying control, the same method is applied for each color.



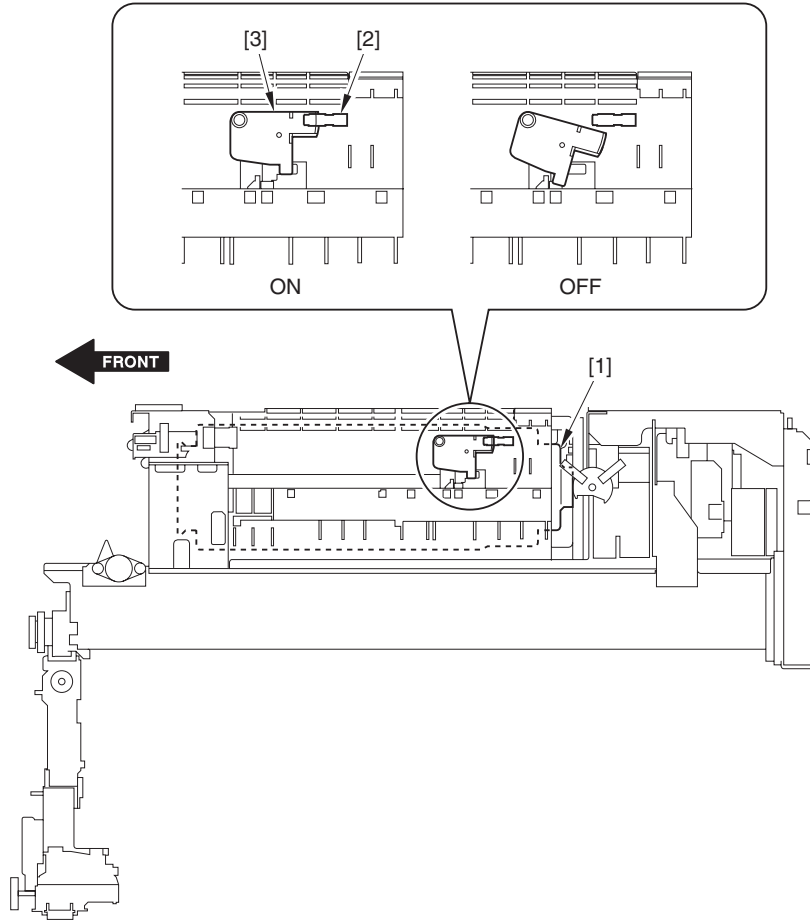
F-7-53

- [1] Toner container
- [2] Hopper
- [3] Toner stirring blade
- [4] Toner feed screw
- [5] Sub hopper

7.6.2 Toner Container Present/Absent Detection

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

The toner container present/absent sensor (Y: PS126, M: PS125, C: PS123, Bk: PS124) detects whether the toner container exists at the hopper unit. The detection result is transferred via each hopper driver PCB to the DC controller PCB 1-2.



F-7-54

- [1] Toner container
- [2] Toner container presence/absence sensor
- [3] Sensor flag

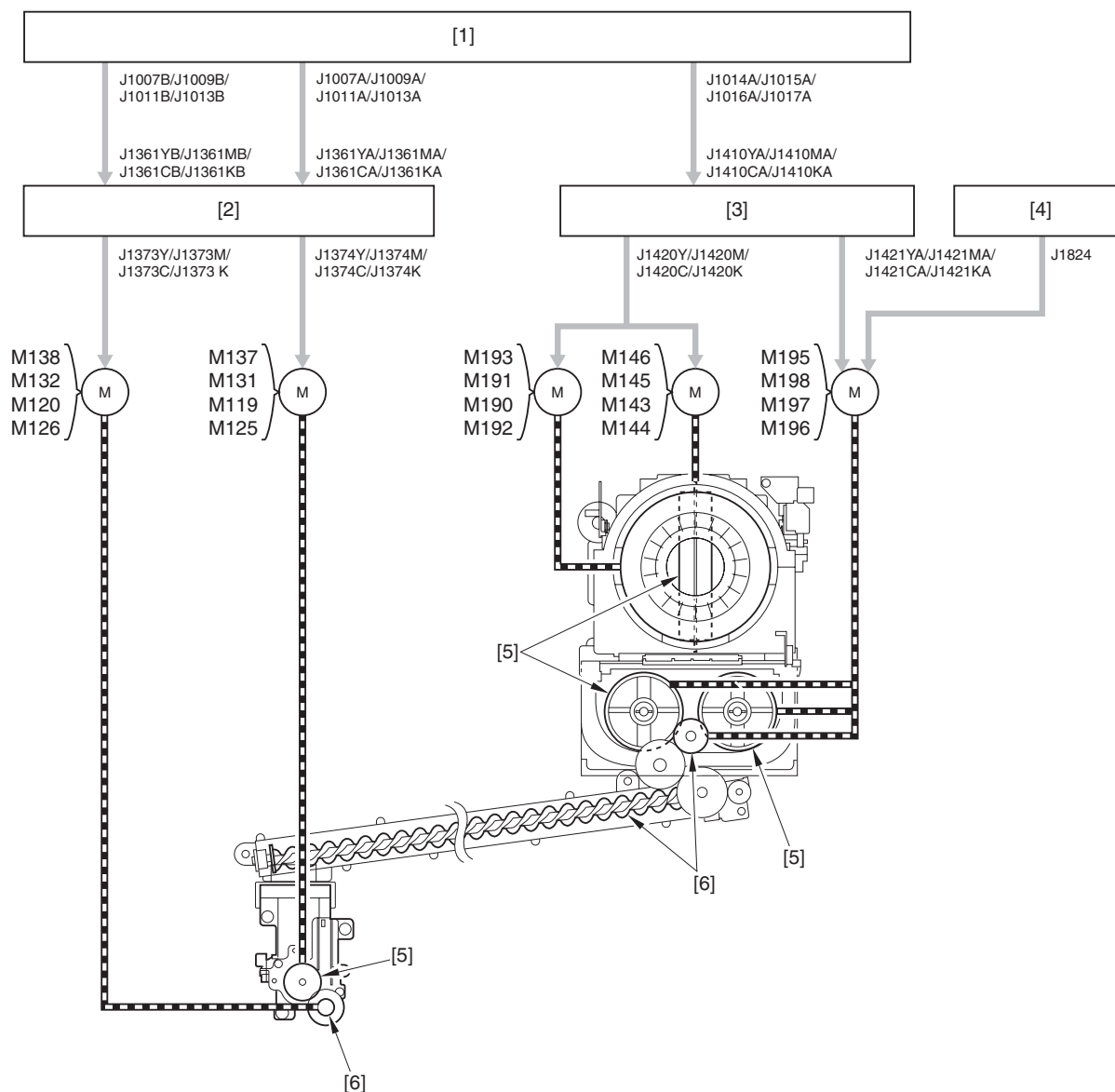
7.6.3 Toner Supply Mechanism Drive Control

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

The toner supply mechanism is activated by the toner container motor, the toner container slide motor, the hopper motor, the sub hopper motor, toner feed motor and the gear. The toner supply mechanism for each color has all of these motors.

T-7-13

Motor	Target
Toner container motor	Toner stirring blade (toner container)
Toner container slide motor	Toner container
Hopper motor	- Toner stirring blade (hopper) - Toner feed screw (hopper, between hopper and sub hopper)
Sub hopper motor	Toner stirring blade (sub hopper)
toner feed motor	Toner feed screw (sub hopper)



F-7-55

[1] DC controller PCB 1-2

[2] Process unit driver PCB (Y/M/C/Bk)

[3] Hopper driver PCB (Y/M/C/Bk)

[4] Main station power supply connect PCB

[5] Toner stirring blade

[6] Toner feed screw

M137/M131/M119/M125: Sub hopper motor (Y/M/C/Bk)

M146/M145/M143/M144: Toner container motor (Y/M/C/Bk)

M193/M191/M190/M192: Toner container slide motor (Y/M/C/Bk)

M195/M198/M197/M196: Hopper motor (Y/M/C/Bk)

M138/M132/M120/M126: Toner feed motor (Y/M/C/Bk)

7.6.4 Toner Level Detection

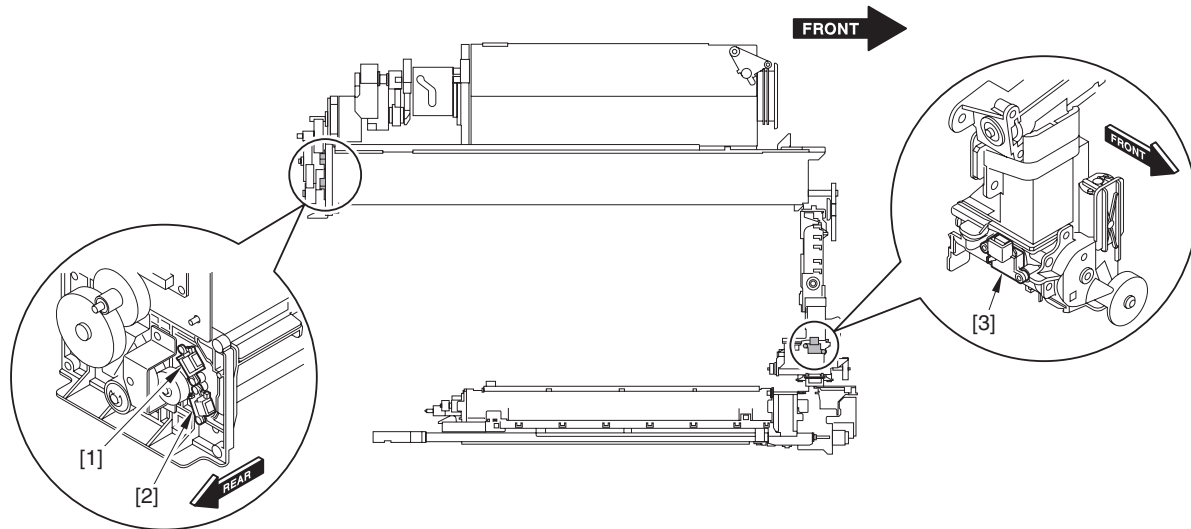
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

The sensor (piezo sensor) is located on the side of the hopper and sub hopper and detects the presence/absence of the toner. Toner in the hopper is detected by the hopper toner level sensors 1 and 2, and toner in the sub hopper is detected by the sub hopper toner level sensor 1. The toner level is judged by combining the results of detection of the presence/absence of toner (ON/OFF) by each sensor.

T-7-14

Sensor name	Y	M	C	Bk
Hopper toner level sensor 1	TS130	TS132	TS134	TS136
Hopper toner level sensor 2	TS131	TS133	TS135	TS137
Sub hopper toner level sensor 1	TS106	TS104	TS100	TS102

The result of toner present/absent detection at each sensor is transferred to the DC controller PCB 1-2 via either each hopper driver PCB or each process unit driver PCB.



F-7-56

- [1] Hopper toner level sensor 1 (Y/M/C/Bk)
- [2] Hopper toner level sensor 2 (Y/M/C/Bk)
- [3] Sub hopper toner level sensor 1 (Y/M/C/Bk)

The toner level is judged based on the combination of ON/OFF of each sensor and its information is displayed on the control panel. The following are the toner level and the display on the control panel corresponding to ON/OFF of each sensor.

T-7-15

Display on the control panel	Sensor ON/OFF	Toner level
-	Hopper toner level sensor 1: ON	Toner is in the toner container, Toner is in the hopper (full): 100 to 54 %
	Hopper toner level sensor 2: ON	
	Sub hopper toner level sensor 1: ON	
Can replace the toner container.	Hopper toner level sensor 1: OFF	Toner container is empty, Toner is in the hopper (full to the amount for 2 hours): 54 to 16 %
	Hopper toner level sensor 2: ON	
	Sub hopper toner level sensor 1: ON	
Replace the toner container.	Hopper toner level sensor 1: OFF	Toner container is empty, The amount for 2 hours or less of toner remains in the hopper: 16 to 0 %
	Hopper toner level sensor 2: OFF	
	Sub hopper toner level sensor 1: ON	
Replace the toner container.	Hopper toner level sensor 1: OFF	The toner container and the hopper are both empty: 0 %
	Hopper toner level sensor 2: OFF	
	Sub hopper toner level sensor 1: OFF	

7.6.5 Toner Supply Control

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

The route of toner supply varies according to the status of each sensor. There are 3 kinds of toner supply as follows.

- Supply from the toner container to the hopper
- Supply from the hopper to the sub hopper
- Supply from the sub hopper to the developing assembly

In the case that 3 hours have passed since the previous toner supply, such as in the case of low DUTY image print or long hours of non-operation, activate the hopper motor for 5 sec to stir the toner for the purpose of preventing it from being solidified.

A. Supplying toner from the toner container to the hopper

The hopper toner level sensor 1 performs toner detection for every 100 msec. When the hopper toner level sensor 1 is OFF for 20 consecutive times (= 2 sec), the DC controller PCB 1-2 sends a drive signal to the toner container motor and hopper motor via the hopper driver PCB. The toner container motor drives for five seconds and supplies toner from the toner container to the hopper. The hopper motor stirs the supplied toner. After toner is supplied, the machine returns to the status of toner detection by the hopper toner level sensor 1.

After the machine returns to the toner detection status and when the hopper toner level sensor 1 is OFF, the machine again enters the phase of toner supply operation. When this pattern reaches 100 consecutive times, the machine judges that the toner container is empty and displays a message to prompt a user to replace the toner container in the control panel.

When the hopper cover switch (Y: SW104, M: SW103, C: SW101, Bk: SW102) is pressed, toner supply operation instantly stops.

B. Supplying toner from hopper to the sub hopper

The sub hopper toner level sensor 1 performs toner detection for every 100 msec. When the sub hopper toner level sensor 1 is OFF for seven consecutive times (= 0.7 sec), the DC controller PCB 1-2 sends a drive signal to the hopper motor via the hopper driver PCB. The hopper motor drives for six seconds and supplies toner from the hopper to the sub hopper. After toner is supplied, the machine returns to the status of toner detection by the sub hopper toner level sensor 1.

After the machine returns to the toner detection status and when the sub hopper toner level sensor 1 is OFF, the machine again enters the phase of toner supply operation. When this pattern reaches for five consecutive times, the machine judges that toner is absent, stops the print job, and displays animation showing the absence of toner in the control panel.

Toner supply after animation showing the absence of toner is displayed

When the toner container is replaced after the sub hopper toner level sensor 1 becomes OFF and the print job stops, the following operation is performed. During this operation, "Toner being prepared" is displayed, and a new print job is not accepted.

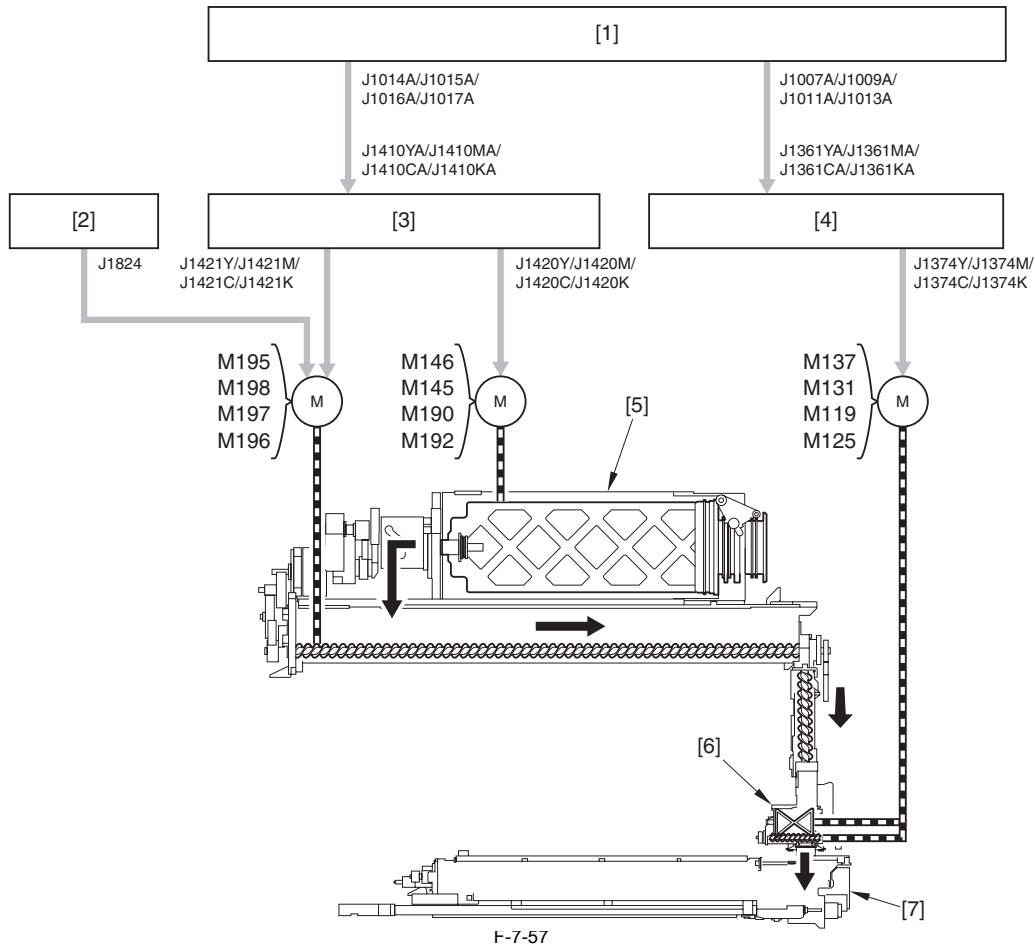
- 1) The toner container motor continues to drive until the hopper toner level sensor 2 becomes OFF.
 The hopper toner level sensor 2 performs toner detection for every 100 msec. When the hopper toner level sensor 2 is OFF for 10 consecutive times (= 1 sec), the toner container motor drives for ten seconds and supplies toner from the toner container motor to the hopper. After toner is supplied, the machine returns to the status of toner detection by the hopper toner level sensor 2.
 After the machine returns to the toner detection status and when the hopper toner level sensor 2 is OFF, the machine again enters the phase of toner supply operation. When this pattern reaches 50 consecutive times, the machine judges that the toner container is empty and displays a message to prompt a user to replace the toner container in the control panel. The print job remains stopped.
 When the hopper toner level sensor becomes ON, the machine performs the operation shown in 2).
- 2) The hopper motor continues to drive until the sub hopper toner level sensor 1 becomes ON.
 The sub hopper toner level sensor 1 performs toner detection for every 100 msec. When the sub hopper toner level sensor 1 is OFF for 7 consecutive times (= 0.7 sec), the hopper motor drives for 6 seconds and supplies toner from the hopper to the sub hopper. After toner is supplied, the machine returns to the status of toner detection by the sub hopper toner level sensor 1.
 After the machine returns to the toner detection status and when the sub hopper toner level sensor 1 is OFF, the machine again enters the phase of toner supply operation. When this pattern reaches 30 consecutive times, the machine judges that toner is absent and displays animation showing the absence of toner in the control panel.

When the sub hopper toner level sensor 1 becomes ON, "Toner being prepared" disappears, and the machine returns to normal print operation.

C. Supply from the sub hopper to the developing assembly

The toner is supplied from the sub hopper to the developing assembly.

The DC controller PCB 1-2 sends the drive signal to the sub hopper motor via the process unit driver PCB in order to supply toner to the developing assembly.



- [1] DC controller PCB 1-2
- [2] Main station power supply connect PCB
- [3] Hopper driver PCB (Y/M/C/Bk)
- [4] Process unit driver PCB (Y/M/C/Bk)
- [5] Toner container
- [6] Sub hopper unit (Y/M/C/Bk)
- [7] Developing assembly (Y/M/C/Bk)
- M137/M131/M119/M125: Sub hopper motor (Y/M/C/Bk)
- M146/M145/M143/M144: Toner container motor (Y/M/C/Bk)
- M195/M198/M197/M196: Hopper motor (Y/M/C/Bk)

Relevant error code:
 E025 : Error in hopper motor. The lock signal of the motor is not detected after the specified time.
 0x00 : Error in hopper motor (x = 1 : Y, 2 : M, 3 : C, 4 : Bk)

Relevant error code:
 E027 : Error in block supply toner motor
 0x01 : Toner motor lock (x = 1 : Y, 2 : M, 3 : C, 4 : Bk)
 0x02 : Error in toner motor sequence (x = 1 : Y, 2 : M, 3 : C, 4 : Bk)

Relevant error code:
 E028 : Error in toner container slide motor
 0x01 : Toner container slide motor lock (x = 1 : Y, 2 : M, 3 : C, 4 : Bk)

7.7 Transfer Device

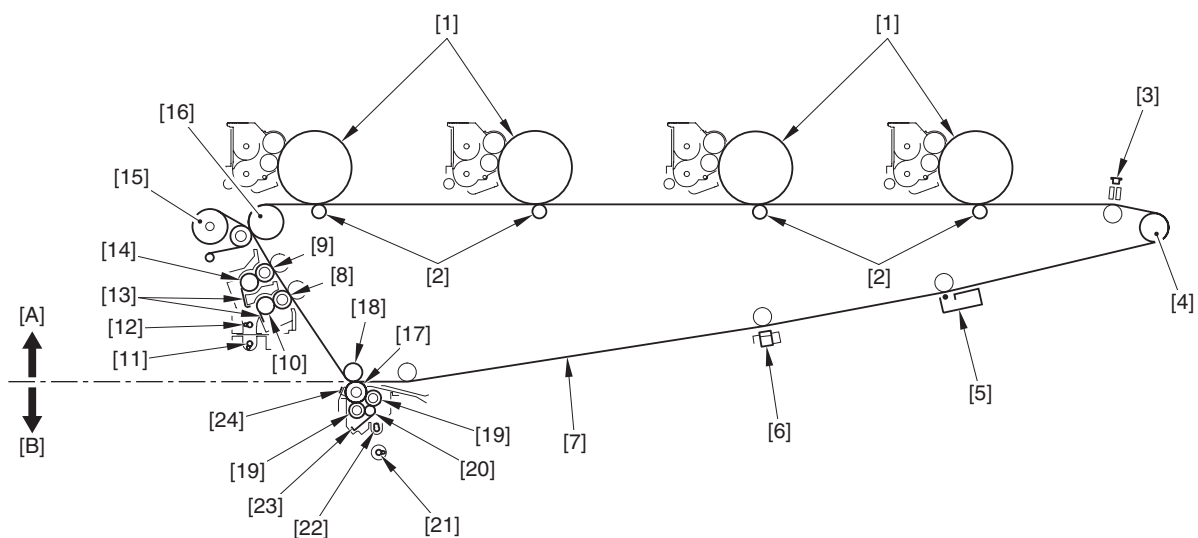
7.7.1 Overview of Transfer Assembly

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

The transfer mechanism is composed of the primary transfer assembly and the secondary transfer assembly.

Primary transfer assembly: Transfers toner on the photosensitive drum to the ITB.

Secondary transfer assembly: Transfers toner on the ITB to the paper.



F-7-58

[A] primary transfer assembly

- [1] photosensitive drum
- [2] primary transfer roller
- [3] registration patch sensor
- [4] steering roller
- [5] pre-transfer charging assembly

- [6] leading edge registration patch sensor
- [7] ITB (intermediate transfer belt)
- [8] ITB cleaning brush roller (upstream)
- [9] ITB cleaning brush roller (downstream)
- [10] ITB cleaning bias roller (upstream)

- [11] ITB cleaning unit toner discharging screw
- [12] ITB cleaning unit toner feeding screw
- [13] ITB cleaning blade
- [14] ITB cleaning bias roller (downstream)
- [15] ITB web
- [16] ITB drive roller

[B] secondary transfer assembly

- [17] secondary transfer outer roller
- [18] secondary transfer inner roller
- [19] secondary transfer cleaning brush roller

- [20] secondary transfer cleaning bias roller
- [21] secondary transfer cleaning unit toner discharging screw
- [22] secondary transfer cleaning unit toner feeding screw

- [23] secondary transfer cleaning blade
- [24] post-secondary transfer static eliminator

7.7.2 Transfer Bias Control

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

The following 4 kinds of transfer biases are used in the primary transfer assembly.

- Primary transfer bias

This is the DC bias to transfer the toner on the photosensitive drum to the ITB.

According to the instruction of the DC controller 1-2, it is generated in the each-color primary transfer high-voltage PCB (HV2-Y/M/C/K) and applied to the primary transfer roller.

Note that at jam recovery, reverse DC bias (the same polar character as toner) is used for the purpose of returning the toner on the ITB to the photosensitive drum.

- Pre-transfer charging bias

This is the bias to increase transfer performance of the black toner.

According to the instruction of the DC controller 1-1, it is generated in the ITB pre-transfer charging high-voltage PCB (HV7) and applied to the pre-transfer charging assembly.

- ITB cleaner bias (upstream)

This is the reverse DC bias to eliminate the residual toner positively charged on the ITB.

According to the instruction of the DC controller 1-2, it is generated in the ITB cleaner high-voltage PCB (upstream) (HV6-) and applied to the ITB cleaning bias roller (upstream).

The toner on the ITB is attached to the cleaning brush roller, and then attracted to the ITB cleaning bias roller (upstream) by the applied bias.

- ITB cleaner bias (downstream)

This is the DC bias to eliminate the residual negatively charged on the ITB.

According to the instruction of the DC controller 1-2, it is generated in the ITB cleaner high-voltage PCB (downstream) (HV6+) and applied to the ITB cleaning bias roller (downstream).

The toner on the ITB is attached to the cleaning brush roller, and then attracted to the ITB cleaning bias roller (downstream) by the applied bias.

The following 3 kinds of transfer biases are used in the secondary transfer assembly.

- Secondary transfer bias

This is the DC reverse bias to transfer the toner on the ITB to a paper.

According to the instruction of the DC controller 1-1, it is generated in the secondary transfer high-voltage PCB (HV4) and applied to the secondary transfer inner roller at the time of printing.

- Secondary transfer outer cleaning bias

This is the DC bias to eliminate the residual toner on the secondary transfer outer roller.

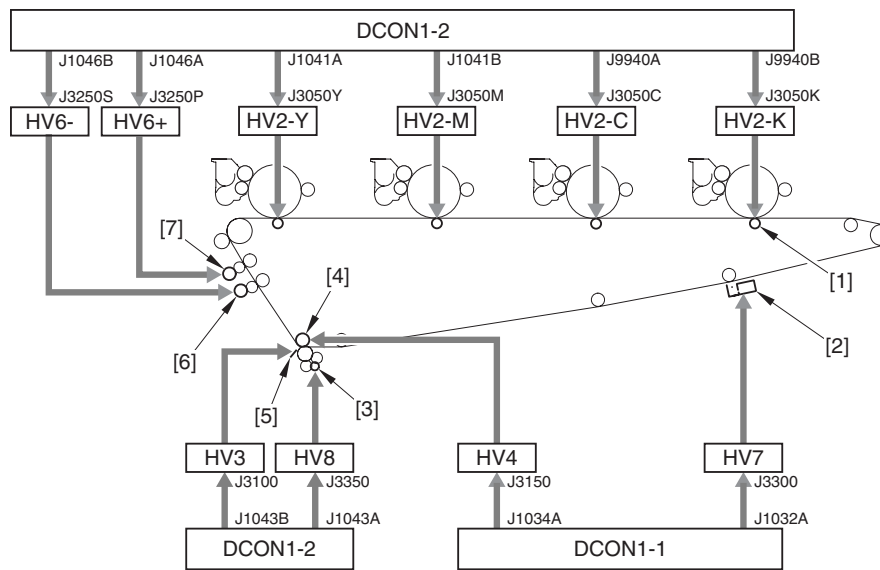
According to the instruction of the DC controller 1-2, it is generated in the secondary transfer high-voltage PCB (HV8) and applied to the secondary transfer cleaning bias roller.

The toner on the secondary transfer outer roller is attached to the cleaning brush roller, and then attracted to the secondary transfer cleaning bias roller by the applied bias.

- Post-secondary transfer static eliminator bias

This is the DC reverse bias to enable easy separation of the ITB from the paper. It reduces the charge on the back of the paper to weaken electrostatic absorption of the paper.

According to the instruction of the DC controller 1-2, it is generated in the post-secondary transfer static elimination high-voltage PCB (HV3), and then applied to the post-secondary transfer static eliminator.



F-7-59

[1] Primary transfer roller

[2] Pre-transfer charging assembly

[3] Secondary transfer cleaning bias roller

[4] Secondary transfer inner roller

[5] Post-secondary transfer rear static eliminator

[6] ITB cleaning bias roller (upstream)

[7] ITB cleaning bias roller (downstream)

DCON1-1: DC controller PCB 1-1

DCON1-2: DC controller PCB 1-2

HV2-Y: Primary transfer high-voltage PCB (Y)

HV2-M: Primary transfer high-voltage PCB (M)

HV2-C: Primary transfer high-voltage PCB (C)

HV2-K: Primary transfer high-voltage PCB (Bk)

HV3: Post-secondary transfer rear static elimination high-voltage PCB

HV4: Secondary transfer high-voltage PCB

HV6-: ITB cleaner high-voltage PCB (upstream)

HV6+: ITB cleaner high-voltage PCB (downstream)

HV7: ITB pre-transfer charging high-voltage PCB

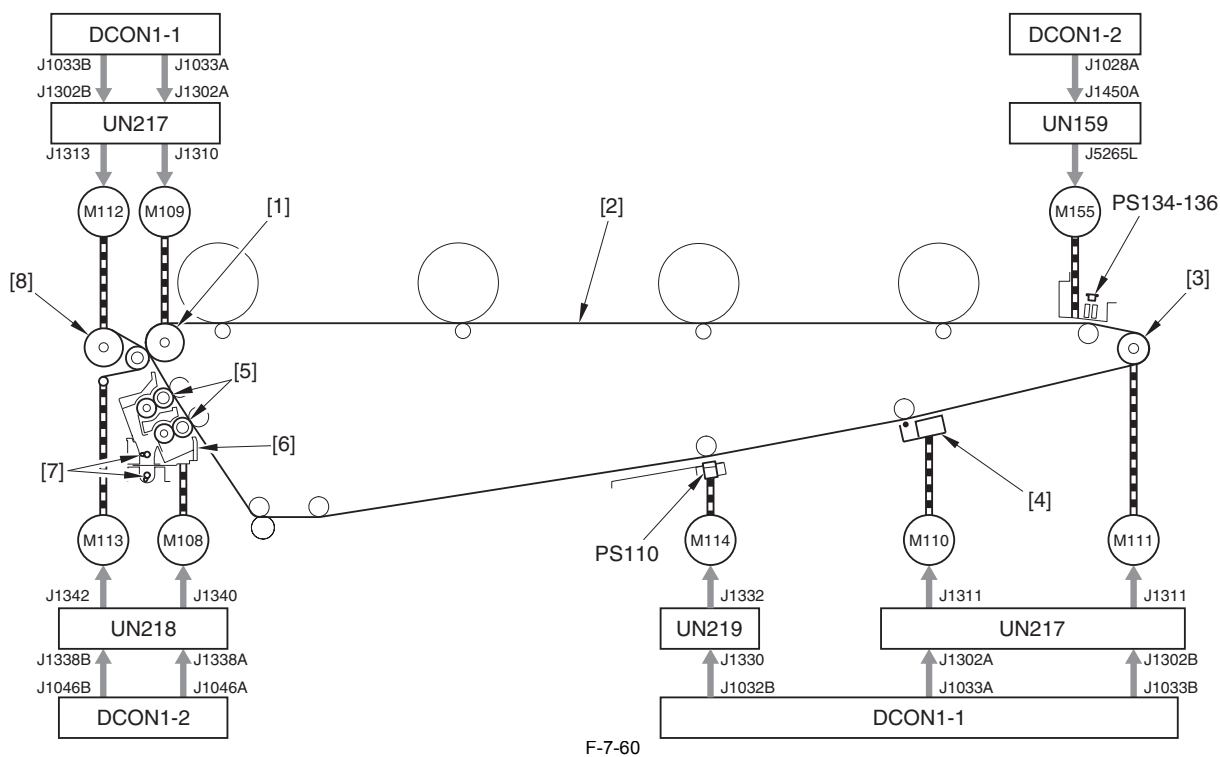
HV8: Secondary transfer cleaner high-voltage PCB

7.7.3 Overview of Primary Transfer Assembly

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

The primary transfer assembly is composed of the 8 motors, and it performs driving and locking/unlocking the roller, as well as opening/closing the shutter. The DC controller controls these operations via the ITB driver PCB and the registration patch sensor driver PCB.

- ITB Drive Motor (M109)
The motor drives the ITB by rotating the ITB drive roller.
- Color Registration Patch Sensor Shutter Motor (M155)
The motor opens/closes the shutter according to the timing that the registration patch sensors (PS134 to 136) detect the patch image for each color on the surface of the ITB.
For detail, see "Laser Exposure > Correcting Image Displacement >".
- ITB Steering Motor (M111)
The motor corrects the displacement of the ITB by tilting the steering roller shaft.
- ITB Pre-Transfer Charging Wire Cleaning Motor (M110)
The motor moves the member for cleaning the charging wire of the pre-transfer charging assembly.
- Leading Edge Registration Patch Sensor Shutter Motor (M114)
The motor opens/closes the shutter according to the timing that the leading edge registration patch sensor (PS110) detects the leading edge patch image on the surface of the ITB.
- ITB Cleaner Motor (M108)
The motor collects the residual toner on the surface of the ITB by rotating the ITB cleaning brush roller.
Moreover, it discharges the waste toner by rotating the screw in the ITB cleaning unit.
- ITB Web Motor (M112)
The motor cleans the ITB by moving the ITB web.
- ITB Web Release Motor (M113)
The motor unlocks the ITB web from the ITB when cleaning with the ITB web is not necessary.



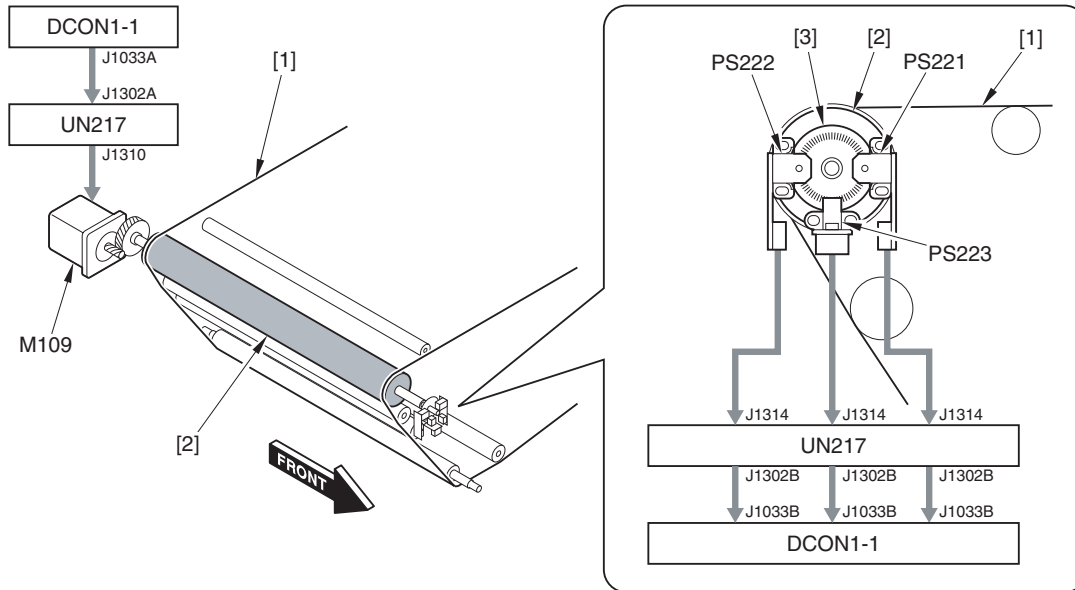
- | | | |
|------------------------------------|---|--|
| [1] ITB Drive Roller | DCON1-1: DC Controller PCB 1-1 | M108: ITB Cleaner Motor |
| [2] ITB | DCON1-2: DC Controller PCB 1-2 | M109: ITB Drive Motor |
| [3] Steering Roller | UN159: Registration Patch Sensor Driver PCB | M110: ITB Pre-Transfer Charging Wire Cleaning Motor |
| [4] Pre-Transfer Charging Assembly | UN217: ITB Driver PCB (center) | M111: ITB Steering Motor |
| [5] ITB Cleaning Brush Roller | UN218: ITB Driver PCB (left) | M112: ITB Web Motor |
| [6] ITB Cleaning Unit | UN219: ITB Driver PCB (right) | M113: ITB Web Release Motor |
| [7] Screw | | M114: Leading Edge Registration Patch Sensor Shutter Motor |
| [8] ITB Web | | M155: Color Registration Patch Sensor Shutter Motor |

7.7.4 ITB Speed Control

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

The ITB moves with constant speed when the ITB drive motor (M109) rotates the ITB drive roller. However, in reality, due to the uneven thickness of the ITB itself or the load when a paper goes into the secondary transfer roller, the ITB speed varies. As for this machine, in order to keep the ITB speed constant, the encoder linked to the ITB drive roller is monitored. As the ITB drive roller encoder sensor A/B (PS221/222) count the rotation of the encoder as pulse, the amount of rotation of the ITB drive roller is fed back to the DC controller 1-1. By doing so, the speed is controlled. At this time, the check and the correction of the starting position (HP) are specified with the ITB drive roller HP sensor (PS223).

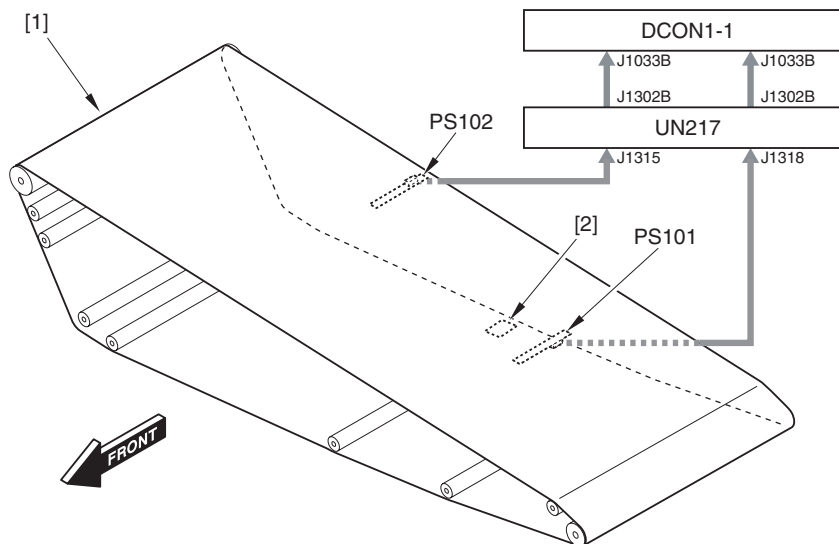
Uneven thickness of ITB varies among ITBs; thus, the speed variation profile is automatically created for each ITB. The profile is stored in the DSP RAM every time the ITB rotates. By checking the measured result with the encoder against the profile, the DC controller 1-1 corrects the ITB speed.



F-7-61

- | | | |
|----------------------|--|--|
| [1] ITB | DCON1-1: DC Controller PCB 1-1 | PS222: ITB Drive Roller Encoder Sensor B |
| [2] ITB Drive Roller | M109: ITB Drive Motor | PS223: ITB Drive Roller HP Sensor |
| [3] Encoder | PS221: ITB Drive Roller Encoder Sensor A | UN217: ITB Driver PCB (center) |

The ITB home position is determined by detecting the reflecting surface on the edge of the ITB with the ITB HP lower sensor (PS101) or the ITB upper sensor (PS102). Since home position is detected by either of the ITB HP lower sensor (PS101) or the ITB upper sensor (PS102), it takes less time to determine home position compared to when only one sensor is used.



F-7-62

- | | | |
|------------------------|---------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| [1] ITB | D-CON1-1: DC controller PCB 1-1 | PS102: ITB HP upper sensor |
| [2] reflecting surface | PS101: ITB HP lower sensor | UN217: ITB driver PCB (center) |

7.7.5 ITB Displacement Correction Control

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

The ITB may be displaced from the center of the roller during operation, resulting in image displacement. In this machine, for the purpose of preventing image displacement, directions and degrees of the ITB displacement are detected with the sensor every 100 msec to correct the ITB displacement.

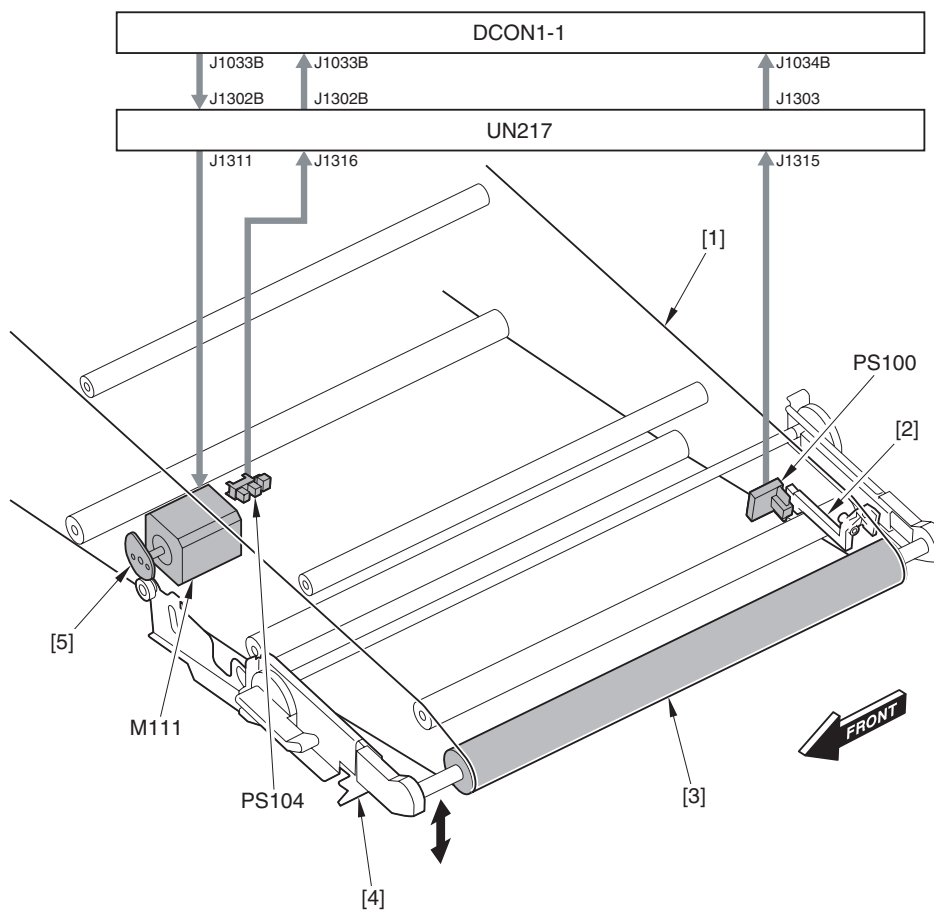
In case the ITB is displaced either forward or backward, the degree of displacement of the ITB displacement sensor flag is detected with the ITB displacement sensor (PS100) to feedback to DC controller 1-1.

DC controller 1-1, based upon the degree of displacement, rotates the cam by driving the ITB steering motor (M111).

When the support arm on the front side of the steering roller moves up and down by the rotation of the cam, the steering roller is tilted against the horizontal direction. By the tilt of the steering roller, there occurs a difference in the tension of the ITB on the front and rear side, which enables the control so that the ITB returns to the center of the roller.

The home position of the ITB steering motor is detected with the ITB steering motor HP sensor (PS104).

Note that profiles of the shapes of the edges are created in the service mode at the time of replacing the ITB as the edge shape varies according to the ITB. ITB displacement is corrected by collating the profile and the measurement results of the ITB displacement sensor.



F-7-63

- | | |
|----------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| [1] ITB | DCON1-1: DC controller PCB 1-1 |
| [2] ITB displacement sensor flag | M111: ITB steering motor |
| [3] steering roller | PS100: ITB displacement sensor |
| [4] support arm | PS104: ITB steering motor HP sensor |
| [5] cam | UN217: ITB driver PCB (center) |

ITB home position is detected with the ITB HP lower sensor (PS101) and the ITB HP upper sensor (PS102). For detail, see "ITB Speed Control".

MEMO:

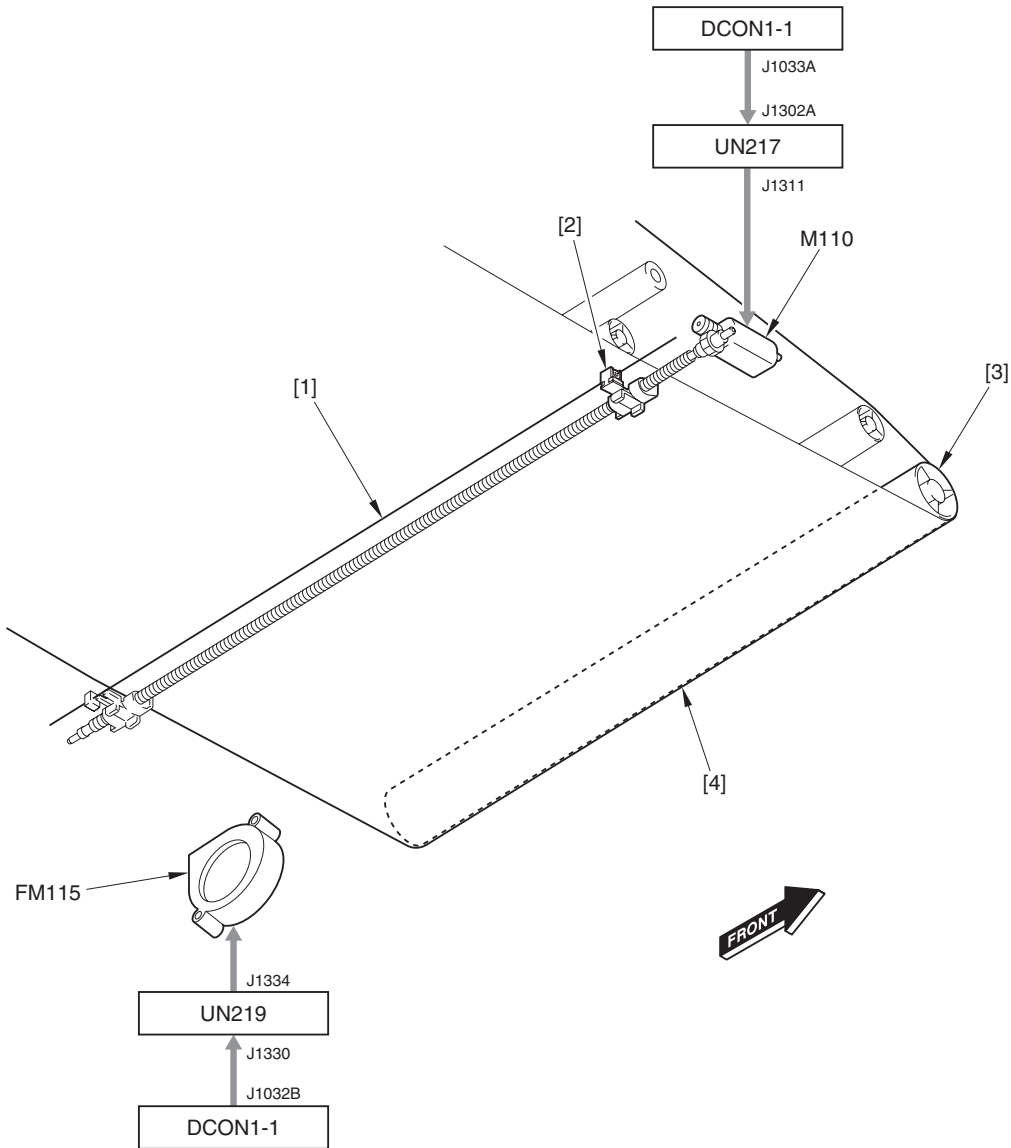
Create an edge-shape profile in the following service mode after replacing ITB.
COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL > INIT-ITB

7.7.6 Pre-Transfer Charging

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

In the pre-transfer charging assembly, a superimposed bias of AC and DC components is applied to the charging wire. By the corona discharge from the charging wire, the toner is charged uniformly and thus the transfer efficiency is increased.

The drive of the ITB pre-transfer charging wire cleaning motor (M110) moves the cleaning member forward/backward and thus cleans the charging wire. The ozone generated in charging is exhausted with the pre-transfer exhaust fan (FM115).



F-7-64

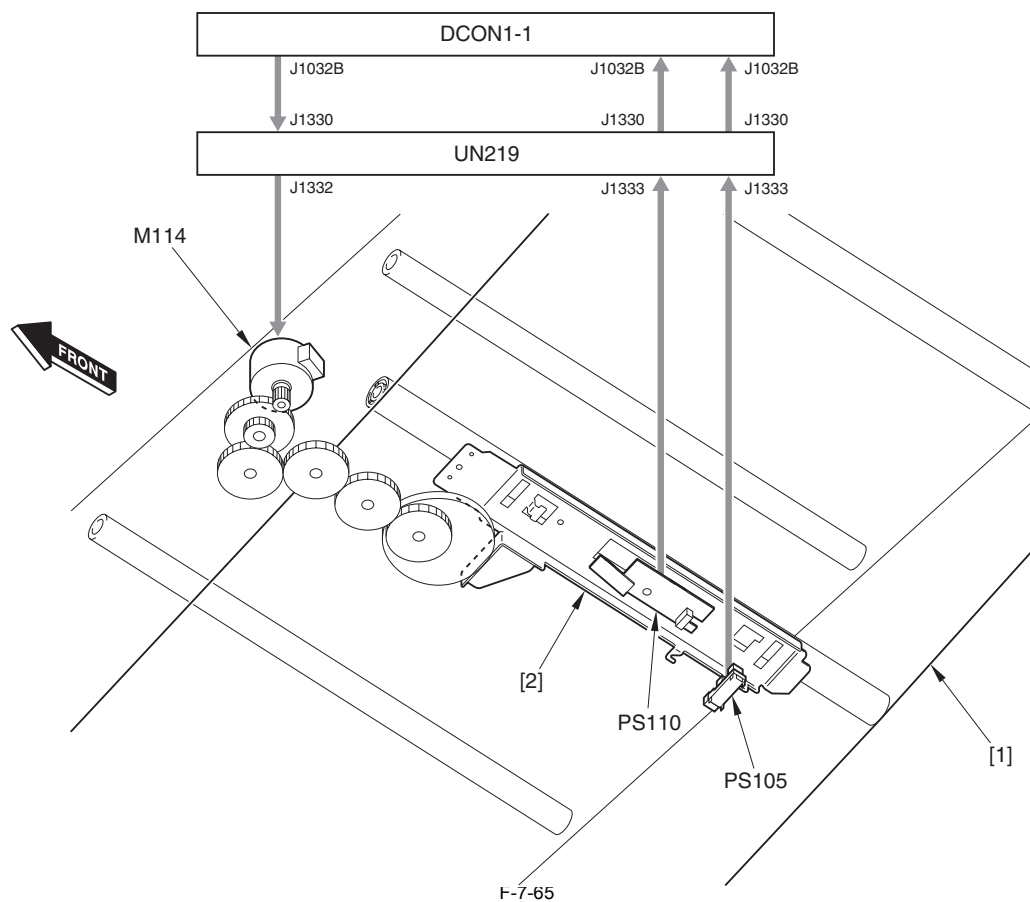
- | | |
|---------------------|---|
| [1] charging wire | DCON1-1: DC controller PCB 1-1 |
| [2] cleaning member | FM115: pre-transfer exhaust fan |
| [3] steering roller | M110: ITB pre-transfer charging wire cleaning motor |
| [4] ITB | UN217: ITB driver PCB (center) |
| | UN219: ITB driver PCB (right) |

7.7.7 Leading Edge Registration Control

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

This equipment forms the leading edge patch image right before the image to be printed so as to match the image on the ITB and the paper. When the leading edge registration patch sensor (PS110) detects the leading edge patch image, the paper starts to be fed. After having the tilt and speed of the paper adjusted, the image on the ITB is transferred onto the paper in the secondary transfer assembly.

The leading edge registration patch sensor is normally separated from the ITB by a shutter, and the shutter opens at the right timing for detection. The shutter is opened/closed by the drive of leading edge registration patch sensor shutter monitor (M114). Home position of the shutter is detected using the leading edge registration patch sensor shutter HP sensor (PS105).



- | | |
|-------------|---|
| [1] ITB | D-CON1-1: DC controller PCB assembly 1-1 |
| [2] shutter | M114: leading edge registration sensor shutter motor |
| | PS105: leading edge registration sensor shutter HP sensor |
| | PS110: leading edge registration patch sensor |
| | UN219: ITB driver PCB (right) |

7.7.8 ITB Cleaning Control

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

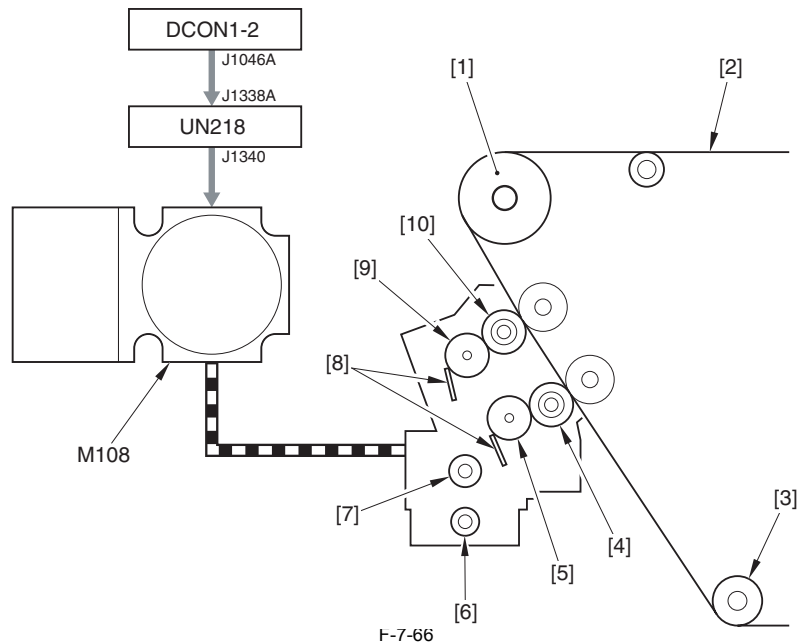
After the secondary transfer, there is residue of positively and negatively charged toner on the ITB. The ITB cleaning unit takes away such toner electro statically and separately.

Reverse DC bias is applied to the ITB cleaning bias roller (upstream) and the ITB cleaning brush roller (upstream), which is in contact with it, is negatively charged. Positively charged toner is first drawn to the ITB cleaning brush roller (upstream) and then to the ITB cleaning bias roller (upstream), and then scraped off by the ITB cleaning blade.

DC bias is applied to the ITB cleaning bias roller (downstream) and the IT cleaning brush roller (downstream), which is in contact with it, is positively charged. Negatively charged toner is first drawn to the ITB cleaning brush roller (downstream) and then to the ITB cleaning bias roller (downstream), and then scraped off by the ITB cleaning blade.

The scraped-off toner is transferred by the ITB cleaning unit toner feeder screw, and discharged to the waste toner buffer by the ITB cleaning unit toner discharge screw.

All the rollers and screws in the ITB cleaning unit are driven by the ITB cleaner motor (M108).



- | | |
|---|---|
| [1] ITB drive roller | [8] ITB cleaning blade |
| [2] ITB | [9] ITB cleaning bias roller (downstream) |
| [3] secondary transfer inner roller | [10] ITB cleaning brush roller (downstream) |
| [4] ITB cleaning brush roller (upstream) | DCON1-2 : DC controller PCB 1-2 |
| [5] ITB cleaning bias roller (upstream) | M108 : ITB cleaner motor |
| [6] ITB cleaning unit toner discharge screw | UN218 : driver PCB (left) |
| [7] ITB cleaning unit toner feeder screw | |

7.7.9 ITB Web Control

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

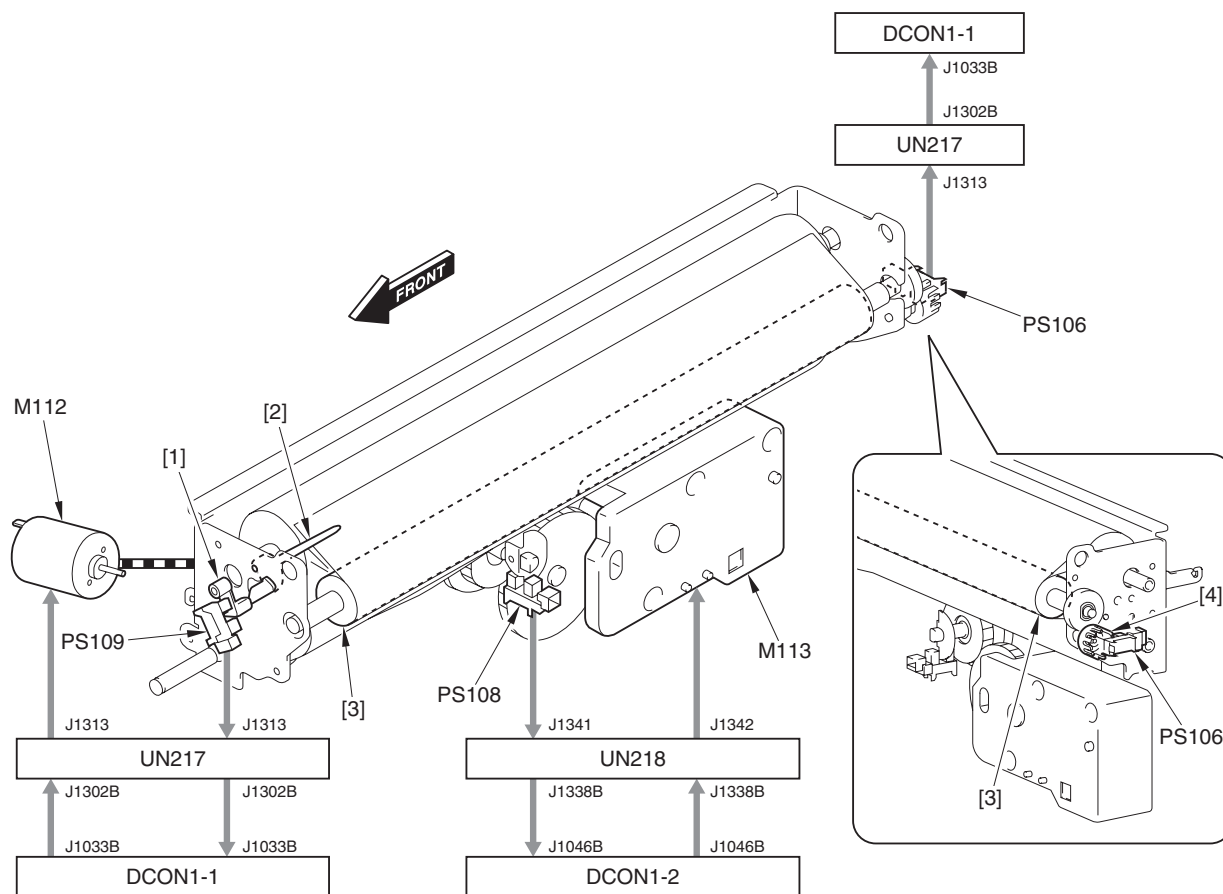
The ITB web, located in a position where it meets the ITB drive roller with the ITB in between, cleans up toner and such left on the ITB after ITB cleaning.

When the ITB is in operation, the ITB web is taken up driven by the ITB web motor (M112) while cleaning the ITB (2 mm per 25 sheets of A4 size paper). The number of rotation of the ITB web is acknowledged by detecting the number of rotation of the ITB web supply encoder working simultaneously with the ITB web cleaning roller with the ITB web supply sensor (PS106).

The residual ITB web length is detected by the ITB web length sensor (PS109).

The ITB web has a cut-off at 750 mm from its end. When the ITB web detection arm reaches the cut-off, it goes through the ITB web, and the ITB web detection flag working with it passes through the ITB web length sensor (PS109). When this happens, the DC controller 1-1 makes the control panel display a message saying there is not any web left.

After transfer of approx. 8,925 sheets of A4 size paper since the display of the message saying there is not any web left, the error message saying that the ITB web length has become '0' is displayed.



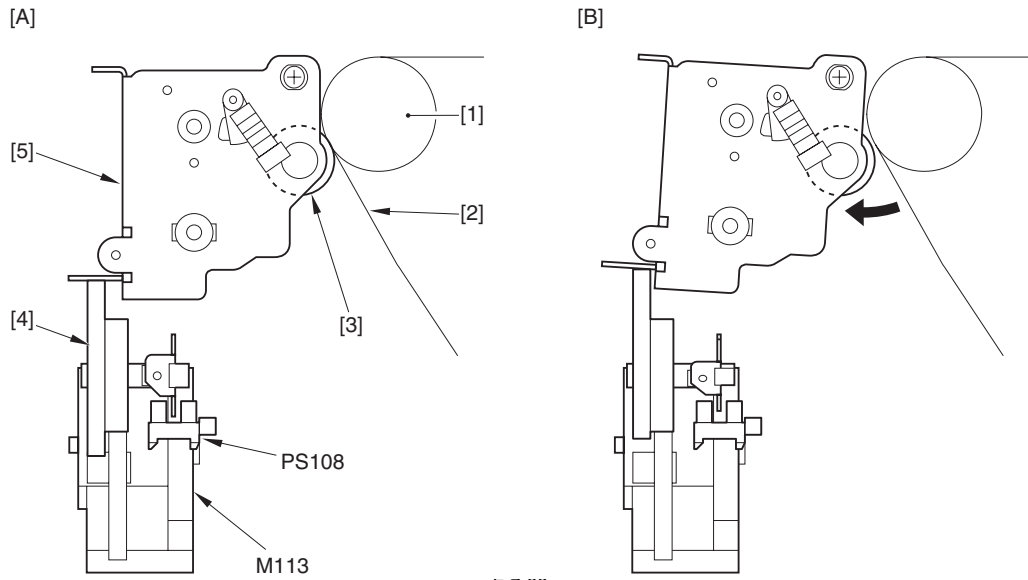
F-7-67

- | | | |
|-----------------------------|---------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| [1] ITB web detection flag | D-CON1-1: DC controller PCB 1-1 | PS106: ITB web supply sensor |
| [2] ITB web detection arm | D-CON1-2: DC controller PCB 1-2 | PS108: ITB web release sensor |
| [3] ITB web cleaning roller | M112: ITB web motor | PS109: ITB web length sensor |
| [4] ITB web supply encoder | M113: ITB web release motor | UN217: ITB driver (center) |
| | | UN218: ITB driver (left) |

Error codes:

E076-0002 (Error in absence of ITB web)
The ITB web length has become '0'.

If ITB cleaning was not thoroughly done due to jam or others, toner residue may be left on the ITB surface even after passing through the ITB cleaning unit. The ITB web should be detached from the ITB to prevent toner from attaching to the ITB web. The ITB web release motor (M113) drives the cam to rotate and push up the ITB web, and the ITB web cleaning roller is detached from the ITB. The rotation of the cam is detected by the ITB web release sensor (PS108).



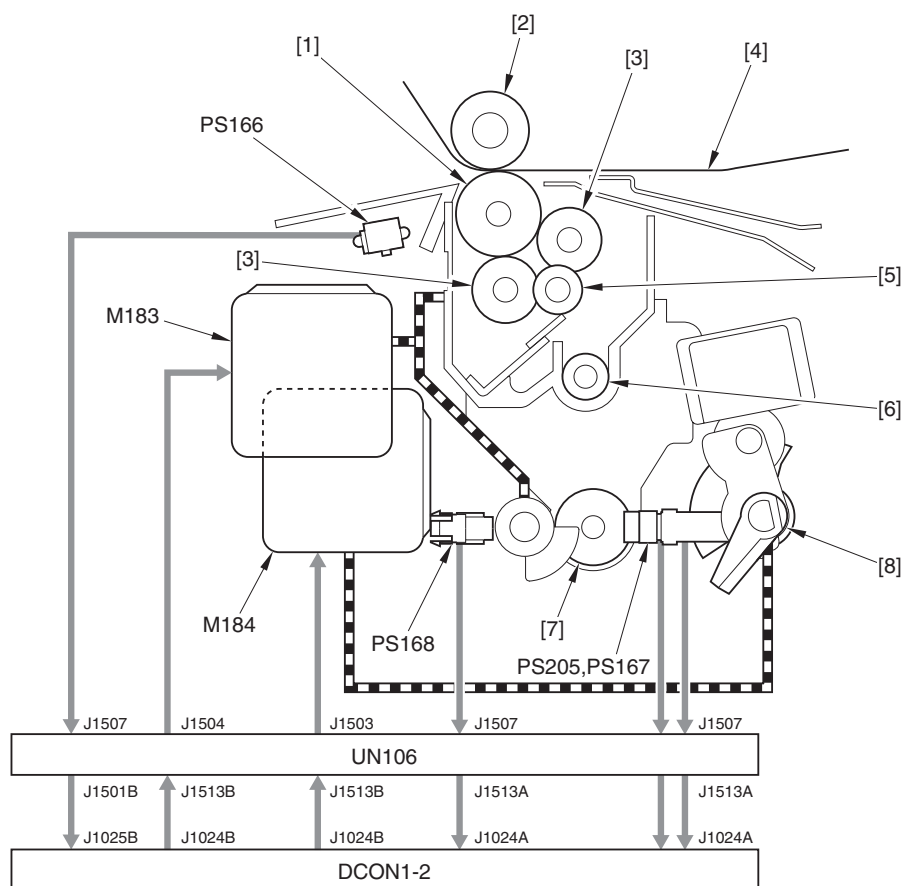
- | | |
|-----------------------------|-------------------------------|
| [1] ITB drive roller | [A] in contact with ITB |
| [2] ITB | [B] off contact with ITB |
| [3] ITB web cleaning roller | M113: ITB web release motor |
| [4] cam | PS108: ITB web release sensor |
| [5] ITB web | |

7.7.10 Overview of Secondary Transfer Assembly

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

There are 2 motors in the secondary transfer assembly working for drive of the roller and locking/unlocking of the secondary transfer assembly. The DC controller controls such operations via the secondary transfer/duplexing driver PCB.

- Secondary transfer drive motor (M183)
 - Rotates the following rollers and screws to execute the secondary transfer along with discharging of collecting toner.
 - Secondary transfer outside roller
 - Secondary transfer cleaning brush roller (2pc)
 - Secondary transfer cleaning bias roller
 - Secondary transfer cleaning unit toner feeding screw
 - Secondary transfer cleaning unit toner discharge screw
- Secondary transfer pressure release motor (M184)
 - Locks the secondary transfer assembly with the ITB when executing the secondary transfer, and unlocks it when the secondary transfer is not executed.



F-7-69

- | | |
|--|---|
| [1] Secondary transfer outside roller | DCON1-2: DC controller PCB 1-2 |
| [2] Secondary transfer inside roller | M183: Secondary transfer drive motor |
| [3] Secondary transfer cleaning brush roller | M184: Secondary transfer pressure release motor |
| [4] ITB | PS166: Secondary transfer exit sensor |
| [5] Secondary transfer cleaning bias roller | PS167: Secondary transfer pressure release HP sensor |
| [6] Secondary transfer cleaning unit toner feeding screw | PS168: Secondary transfer collecting toner error sensor |
| [7] Secondary transfer cleaning unit toner discharge screw | PS205: Secondary transfer pressure release motor positioning sensor |
| [8] Secondary transfer pressure release shaft | UN106: Secondary transfer/duplexing driver PCB |

7.7.11 Secondary Transfer Outside Roller Cleaning Control

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

At the secondary transfer assembly, it collects the residual toner on the secondary transfer outside roller to discharge to the collecting toner buffer. The secondary transfer cleaning is conducted when the secondary transfer assembly is unlocked from the ITB.

Because the DC bias is applied to the secondary transfer cleaning bias roller, the 2 pieces of secondary transfer cleaning brush rollers that connect to this cleaning bias roller take charge.

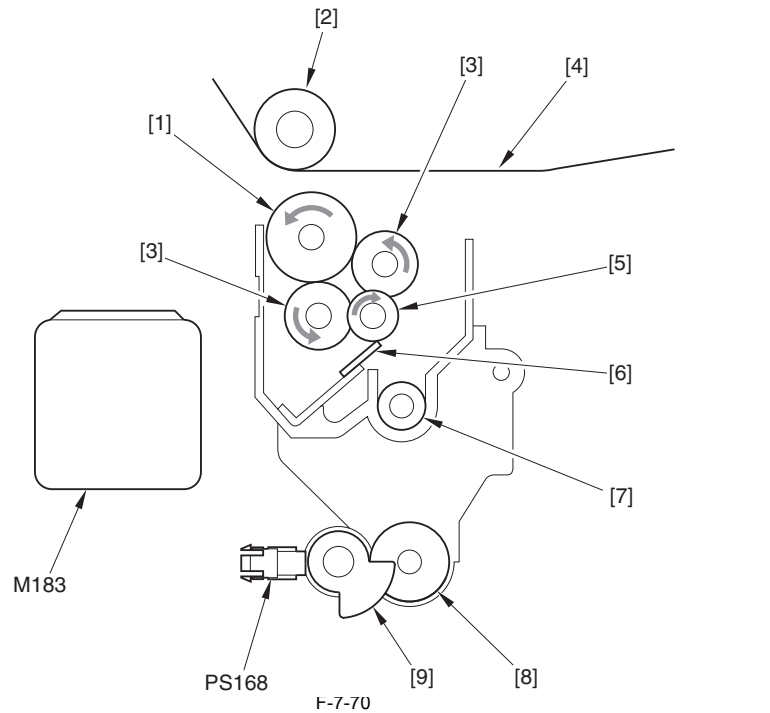
The toner remained at the secondary transfer outside roller is attached to the secondary transfer cleaning brush roller, and then is attracted to the secondary transfer cleaning bias roller to be scraped by the secondary transfer cleaning blade.

The scraped toner is transferred by the secondary transfer cleaning unit toner feeding screw to be discharged to the collecting toner buffer by the secondary transfer cleaning unit toner discharge screw.

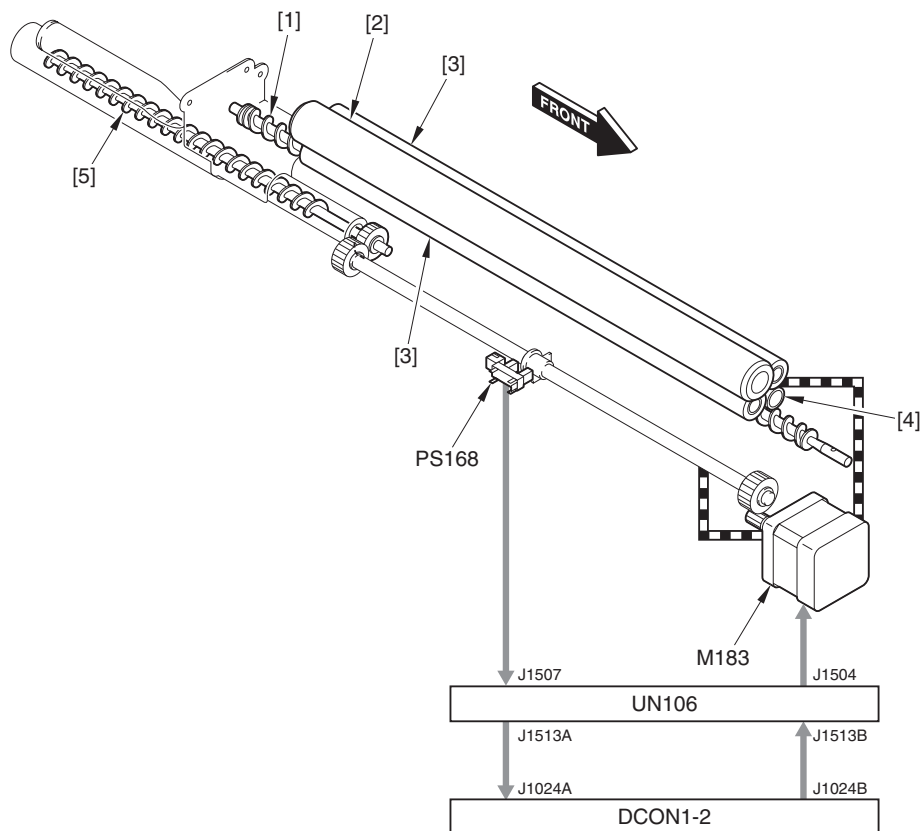
The rollers and screws in the secondary transfer cleaning unit are driven by the secondary transfer drive motor (M183).

If the waste toner is clogged, the rotation of the secondary transfer cleaning unit toner discharge screw becomes slow, resulting in longer cycle for ON/OFF of the secondary transfer collecting toner error sensor by the secondary transfer collecting toner error detection flag.

In case the interval exceed the specified level, the DC controller 1-2 displays an error on the control panel.



- | | |
|--|--|
| [1] Secondary transfer outside roller | [7] Secondary transfer cleaning unit toner feeding screw |
| [2] Secondary transfer inside roller | [8] Secondary transfer cleaning unit toner discharge screw |
| [3] Secondary transfer cleaning brush roller | [9] Secondary transfer collecting toner detection flag |
| [4] ITB | M183 : Secondary transfer drive motor |
| [5] Secondary transfer cleaning bias roller | PS168 : Secondary transfer collecting toner error sensor |
| [6] Secondary transfer cleaning blade | |



F-7-71

- [1] Secondary transfer cleaning unit toner feeding screw
- [2] Secondary transfer outside roller
- [3] Secondary transfer cleaning brush roller
- [4] Secondary transfer cleaning bias roller
- [5] Secondary transfer cleaning unit toner discharge screw

- DCON1-2: DC controller PCB 1-2
- M183: Secondary transfer drive motor
- PS168: Secondary transfer collecting toner error sensor
- UN106: Secondary transfer/duplexing driver PCB

7.7.12 Secondary Transfer Assembly Lock/Unlock Control

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

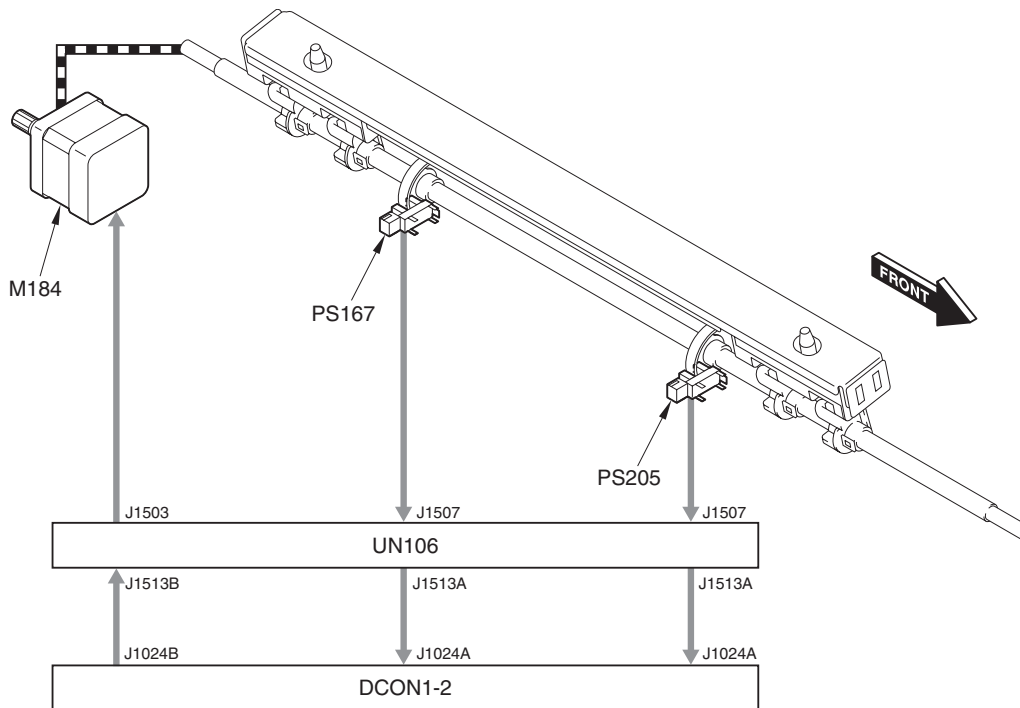
The secondary transfer assembly locks with the ITB when transferring images on the ITB, and unlocks if there is no need. The DC controllers 1-2 executes lock/unlock operation by driving the secondary transfer pressure release motor (M184) via the secondary transfer/duplexing driver PCB.

The secondary transfer pressure release motor positioning sensor (PS205) and the secondary transfer pressure release HP sensor (PS167) detect the operation.

When it is locked, the secondary transfer pressure release motor turns the secondary transfer pressure release shaft clockwise. The secondary transfer assembly is lifted up along with the pre-fixing feeding unit to the position where the secondary transfer pressure release motor positioning sensor is turned off.

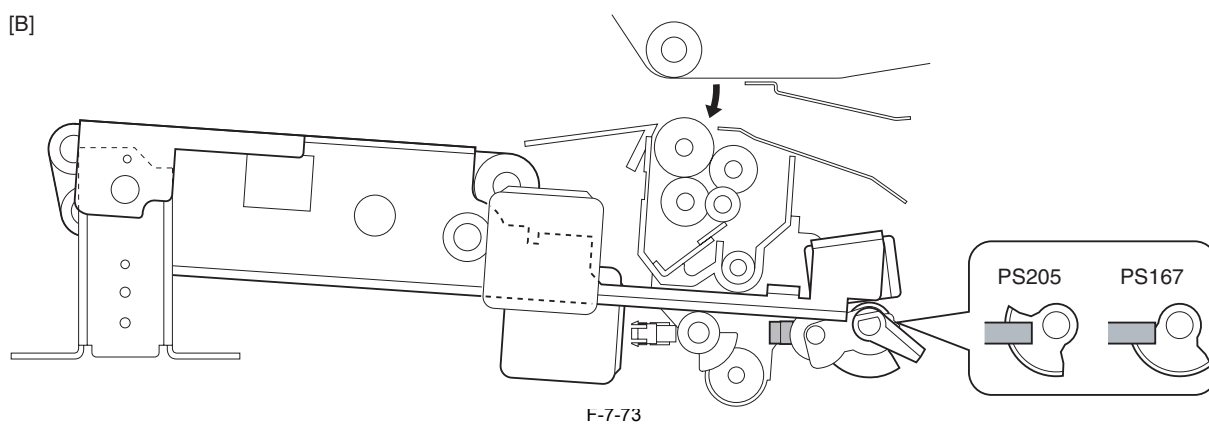
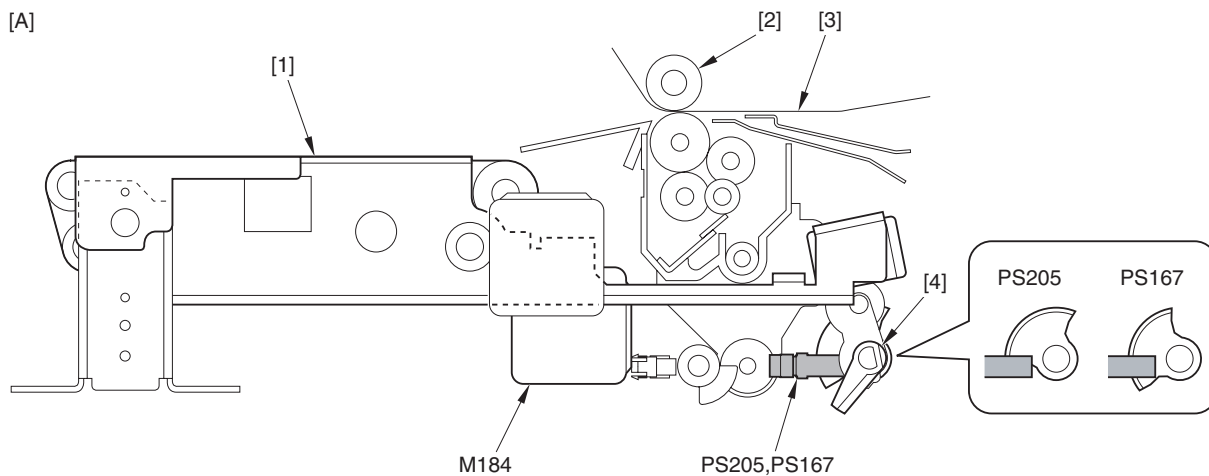
When it is unlocked, the secondary transfer pressure release motor turns the secondary transfer pressure release shaft counterclockwise. The secondary transfer assembly is moved down along with the pre-fixing feeding unit to the position where the secondary transfer pressure release motor positioning sensor is turned off.

MEMO:
Unlock operation is executed at warm-up rotation and the secondary transfer outside roller cleaning.



F-7-72

DCON1-2: DC controller PCB 1-2
M184: Secondary transfer pressure release motor
PS166: Secondary transfer exit sensor
PS167: Secondary transfer pressure release HP sensor
PS205: Secondary transfer pressure release motor positioning sensor
UN106: Secondary transfer/duplexing driver PCB



- [1] Pre-Fixing Feeding Unit
- [2] Secondary transfer inside roller
- [3] ITB
- [4] Secondary transfer pressure release shaft

- [A] When the secondary transfer assembly is locked
- [B] When the secondary transfer assembly is unlocked
- M184: Secondary transfer pressure release motor
- PS167: Secondary transfer pressure release HP sensor
- PS205: Secondary transfer pressure release motor positioning sensor

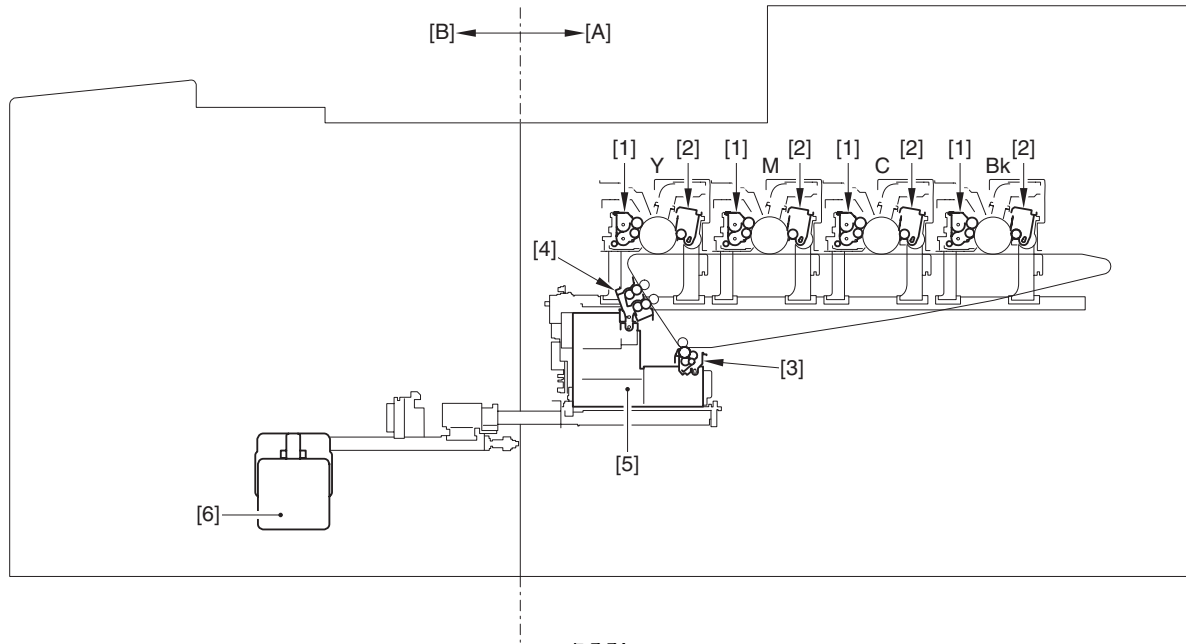
7.8 Waste Toner Collection Mechanism

7.8.1 Waste Toner Collection

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

This machine transports and collects used toner ejected from each outlet of four image formation units (developing assembly, drum cleaning unit, secondary transfer cleaning unit, and ITB cleaning unit).

The waste toner can be stored in the waste toner bottle and the waste toner buffer.



F-7-74

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|------------------|
| [1] developing assembly | [A] main station |
| [2] drum cleaning unit | [B] sub station |
| [3] secondary transfer cleaning unit | |
| [4] ITB cleaning unit | |
| [5] waste toner buffer | |
| [6] waste toner bottle | |

Developing assembly

The drive of the developing motor (Y/M/C/Bk) (M1383/M127/M115/M121) rotates the waste toner feed screw and feeds the toner.

Drum cleaning unit

The drive of the drum cleaner motor (Y/M/C/Bk) (M134/M128/M116/M122) rotates the waste toner feed screw and feeds the toner.

The drive of the drum waste toner feed motor (M180) rotates the screw in the waste toner pipe, and feeds the toner collected from the developing assembly and drum cleaning unit to the waste toner buffer.

The drum waste toner feed motor is also used to stir the toner collected in the waste toner buffer.

Secondary transfer cleaning unit

The drive of the secondary transfer drive motor (M183) rotates the waste toner feed screw, and feeds the toner to the waste toner buffer.

ITB cleaning unit

The drive of the ITB cleaner motor (M108) rotates the waste toner feed screw, and feeds the toner to the waste toner buffer.

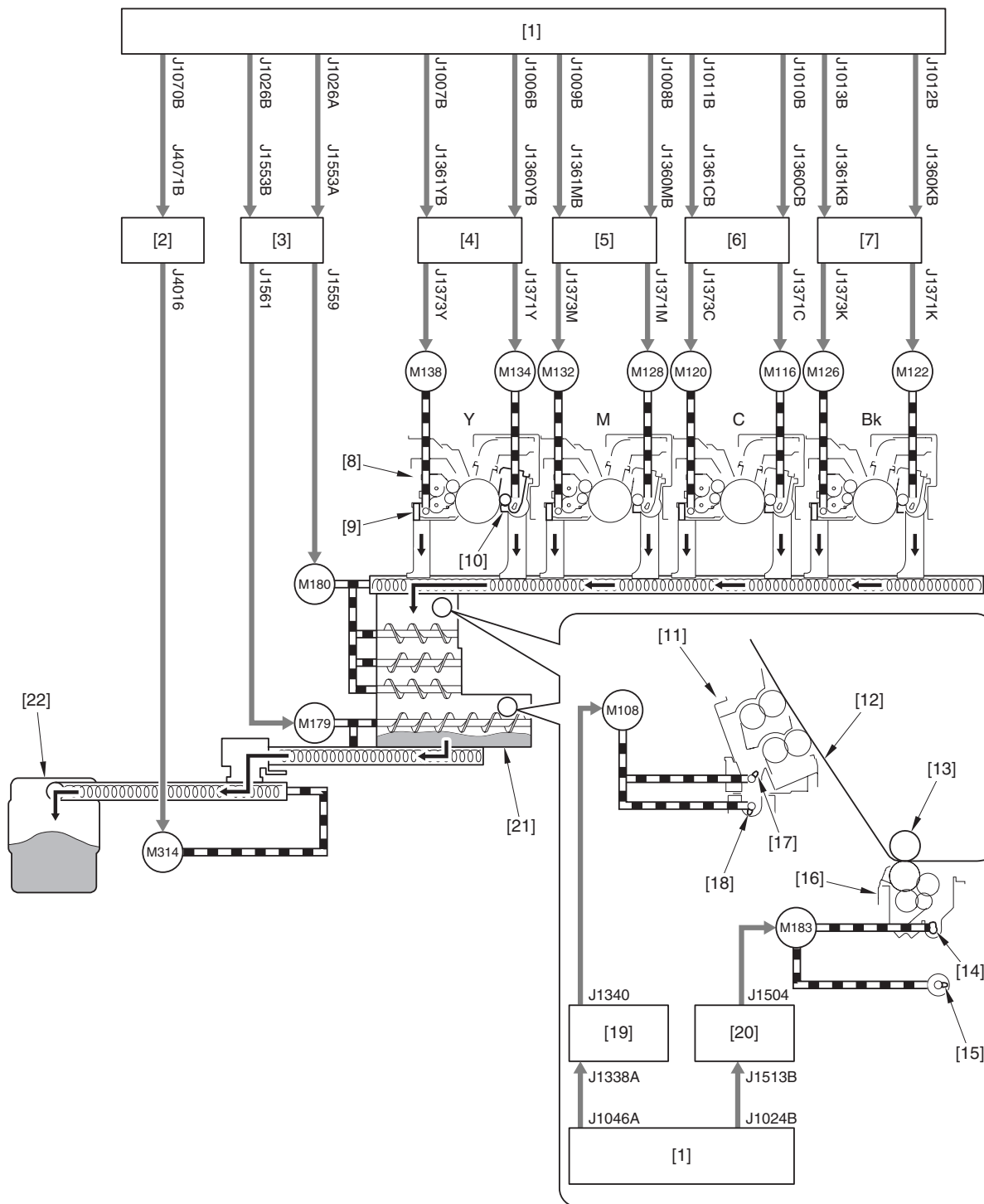
The drive of the buffer motor (M179) rotates the screw in the waste toner pipe, and feeds the toner in the waste toner buffer.

The buffer motor is also used to stir the toner collected in the waste toner buffer.

The drive of the waste toner feed motor (M314) rotates the screw in the waste toner pipe, and feeds the toner transported from the waste toner buffer to the waste toner bottle.

Before the waste toner bottle reaches full, the toner will be transported to the waste toner bottle, not to the waste toner buffer.

When the waste toner bottle is full, toner can be stored in the waste toner buffer temporarily. However, the waste toner bottle should be replaced promptly.



- [1] DC controller PCB 1-2
- [2] fixing duplexing feed driver PCB
- [3] front fixing feed driver PCB
- [4] process unit driver PCB (Y)
- [5] process unit driver PCB (M)
- [6] process unit driver PCB (C)
- [7] process unit driver PCB (Bk)
- [8] developing assembly
- [9] developing assembly toner outlet
- [10] drum cleaning unit toner outlet

- [11] ITB cleaning unit
- [12] ITB
- [13] secondary transfer internal roller
- [14] secondary transfer cleaning unit toner feed screw
- [15] secondary transfer cleaning unit toner ejection screw
- [16] secondary transfer cleaning unit
- [17] ITB cleaning unit toner feed screw
- [18] ITB cleaning unit toner ejection screw
- [19] ITB driver PCB (left)
- [20] secondary transfer/duplexing driver PCB
- [21] waste toner buffer
- [22] waste toner bottle

- M108: ITB cleaner motor
- M116: drum cleaner motor (C)
- M115: developing motor (C)
- M122: drum cleaner motor (Bk)
- M121: developing motor (Bk)
- M128: drum cleaner motor (M)
- M127: developing motor (M)
- M134: drum cleaner motor (Y)
- M133: developing motor (Y)
- M179: buffer motor
- M180: drum waste toner feed motor
- M183: secondary transfer drive motor
- M314: waste toner feed motor

7.8.2 Waste Toner Full Detection

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

This machine detects the waste toner amount with the magnetic sensor and the waste toner count.

DC controller 1-2 refers to the detection results from the magnetic sensor and the waste toner count at the timing of power activation, opening/closing the front cover and each output.

If either detection result from the magnetic sensor or the waste toner count exceeds the specified level, DC controller 1-2 will notify the main controller the waste toner message, either "Waste toner full alert" or "Waste toner full".

A. Detection by the magnetic sensor

1. Detection at the waste toner bottle

The waste toner bottle has two types of magnetic sensors on its left side. One is the waste toner level sensor 1 (TS301) and the other is the waste toner level sensor 2 (TS300).

When the waste toner full sensor 2 detects the toner level above the specified level, the message of waste toner bottle full alert is displayed. The print job can be continued.

When the waste toner full sensor 1 detects the toner level above the specified level, the message of waste toner bottle full is displayed. The print job can be continued, however, the buffer motor (M179) and the waste toner feed motor (M314) stop, and the waste toner is then collected into the waste toner buffer.

T-7-16

Detection Sensor	Waste Toner Level	Message Type	Message Contents
Waste toner full sensor 2 (TS300)	80%	Advance notice informing that the waste toner bottle is becoming full.	The waste toner is near full. Replacement not yet needed.
Waste toner full sensor 1 (TS301)	100%	Notice informing that the waste toner bottle is full.	Replace the waste toner container.



The timing of displaying the waste toner messages (advance notice informing that the waste toner bottle is becoming full, notice informing that the waste toner bottle is full) cannot be changed.

2. Detection by the waste toner buffer

Behind the waste toner buffer, the waste toner buffer full sensor (TS128) is located.

If the toner level exceeds the specified level, the waste toner buffer full message is displayed. At this time the drum waste toner feed motor (M180) stops and the machine operation is suspended.

T-7-17

Detection Sensor	Waste Toner Level	Message Type	Message Contents
Buffer waste toner full sensor (T128)	100%	Notice informing that the waste toner buffer is full.	Replace the waste toner container.

When the waste toner bottle is replaced, the status shifts to the recovery mode and the toner in the waste toner buffer is transported to the waste toner bottle. When the waste toner buffer full sensor is turned OFF, the machine operation is restarted automatically.



The timing of displaying the message informing that the waste toner buffer is full cannot be changed.

MEMO:

- The magnetic sensor reacts to magnetic substances and changes the sensor output depending on the carrier amount in the waste toner. DC controller 1-2 detects changes in the sensor output and determines the toner amount collected in the waste toner bottle or the waste toner buffer.

- The status shifts to the recovery mode when replacing the waste toner bottle after the waste toner buffer reached full. If the waste toner full sensor 1 and 2 detect OFF during replacement, the toner in the waste toner buffer will be transported into the waste toner bottle automatically.

B. Detection by the waste toner count

This machine equips the waste toner count to back up the waste toner level detection in case of failures occurred in the waste toner full sensor. The waste toner count counts the printed pages using soft counter values to calculate the toner amount in the waste toner bottle.

When the counter reading reaches 60000, the waste toner bottle full alert is displayed. The print job can be continued.

When the counter reading reaches 80000, the waste toner bottle full message is displayed. The print job can be continued, however, the buffer motor (M179) and the waste toner feed motor (M314) stop, and then the toner is collected into the waste toner buffer.

T-7-18

Counter Value	Message Type	Message Contents
60000	Advance notice informing that the waste toner bottle is becoming full.	The waste toner is near full. Replacement not yet needed.
80000	Notice informing that the waste toner bottle is full.	Replace the waste toner container.



The timing of displaying the waste toner messages (advance notice informing that the waste toner bottle is becoming full, notice informing that the waste toner bottle is full) cannot be changed.

The counter reading is reset whenever sliding out the waste toner receptacle.

Therefore, sliding in/out the waste toner receptacle other than the purpose with replacing the waste toner bottle causes the error in the waste toner count, inducing discrepancy between the counter reading and the actual waste toner amount.

Note that the waste toner count is just a backup measure for the magnetic sensor.

When the waste toner message is hidden after sliding in the waste toner receptacle, the waste toner count is working for detection of the waste toner full. In such a case, check the waste toner full sensor and replace it if failure is found.

Error Codes:**E013-0001 (Lock in the waste toner feed path)**

When "1" is output for 1 second or more from the drum waste toner lock sensor switch (SW109).

Even when the drum waste toner feed motor (M180) is driven, the waste toner screw cannot be rotated due to the clogged toner that were collected from the developer and cleaning units. Then the waste toner screw drive gear is pressed and the switch is turned ON.

To recover from this error, check or replace the drum waste toner feed motor and execute the following service mode.

COPIER>FUNCTION>MISC-P>WTNR-ALL

: to eject the toner throughout the waste toner pipe

COPIER>FUNCTION>MISC-P>WTNR-BUF

: to eject toner remained in the waste toner pipe between the developer/cleaning units and the waste toner buffer

E013-0002 (Lock in the waste toner feed path)

When "1" is output for 1 second or more from the waste toner ejection lock sensor switch (SW300).

Even when the waste toner feed motor (M314) is driven, the waste toner screw on the side of the sub station cannot be rotated due to the clogged toner. Then the waste toner screw drive gear is pressed and the switch is turned ON.

To recover from this error, check or replace the waste toner feed motor and execute the following service mode.

COPIER>FUNCTION>MISC-P>WTNR-ALL

: to eject toner throughout the waste toner pipe

COPIER>FUNCTION>MISC-P>WTNR-BOX

: to eject toner remained in the waste toner pipe between the waste toner buffer and the waste toner container.

E013-0003 (Lock in the waste toner feed path)

When "1" is output for 1 second or more from the transfer waste toner lock sensor switch (SW110).

Even when the buffer motor (M179) is driven, the waste toner screw on the side of the main station cannot be rotated due to the clogged toner transported from the waste toner buffer. Then the waste toner screw drive gear is pressed and the switch is turned ON.

To recover from this error, check or replace the buffer motor and execute the following service mode.

COPIER>FUNCTION>MISC-P>WTNR-ALL

: to eject the toner throughout the waste toner pipe

COPIER>FUNCTION>MISC-P>WTNR-BOX

: to eject the toner remained in the waste toner pipe between the waste toner buffer and the waste toner container.

7.9 Drum Heater

7.9.1 Drum Heater Control

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

Sensitivity of the photosensitive drum changes according to the installation environment (temperature, humidity).

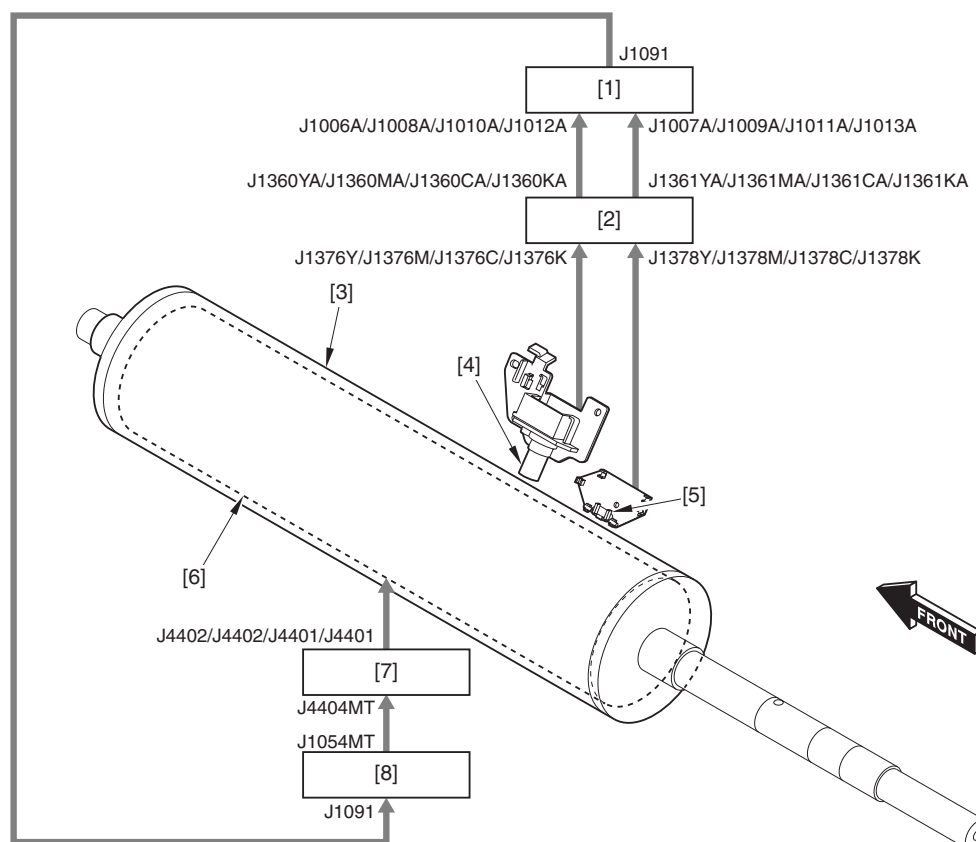
This machine is equipped with the sheet drum heater inside the photosensitive drum and the thermopile and the thermistor on the surface of the photosensitive drum to control the temperature of the photosensitive drum.

The thermopile and the thermistor constantly measure the surface temperature of the photosensitive drum to keep it constant by repeating ON/OFF operations of the drum heater.

Roles of the thermopile and thermistor

This machine uses a thermopile (noncontact infrared sensor), which has higher capability to follow the temperature of the photosensitive drum surface and higher detecting accuracy compared to the conventional thermal sensor.

The thermistor controls turning off the drum heater when detecting the upper limit temperature (45 deg C).



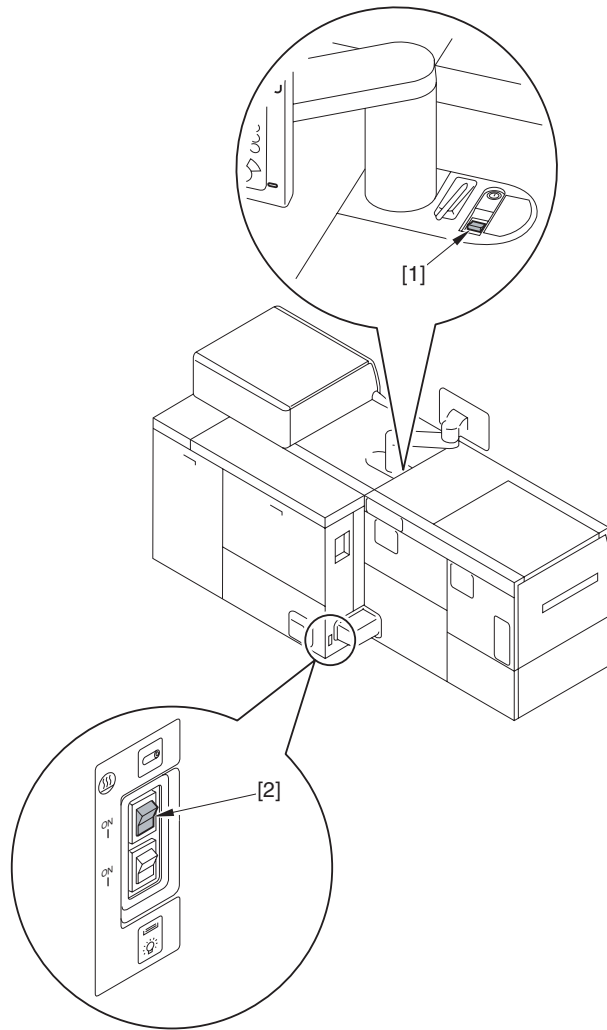
F-7-76

- [1] DC controller PCB 1-2
- [2] process unit driver PCB
- [3] photosensitive drum
- [4] thermopile
- [5] thermistor
- [6] drum heater
- [7] environment heater driver PCB
- [8] DC controller PCB 1-1

Drum heater control is performed when:

- The main power switch is turned on.
- The main power switch is turned off, and the environment switch is turned on.

The controlled temperature for the drum heater is fixed at 42.5 +/- 2.5 deg C on the drum surface.



F-7-77

- [1] main power switch
- [2] environment switch

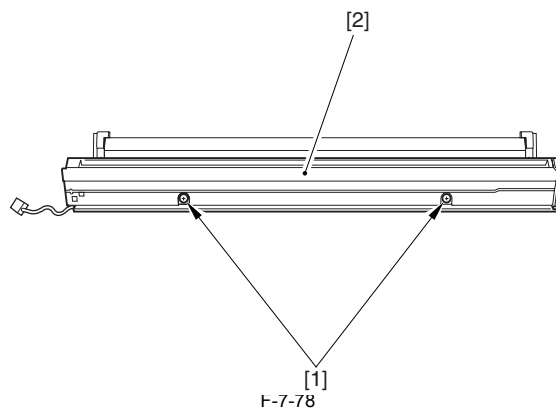
7.10 Parts Replacement Procedure

7.10.1 Front Exposure Lamp

7.10.1.1 Removing Pre-exposure Lamp Unit

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- 1) Remove the drum unit. (Refer to Removing drum unit procedure)
- 2) Remove the drum cleaning unit. (Refer to Removing drum cleaning unit procedure)
- 3) Remove the 2 screws [1] to remove the pre-exposure lamp unit [2].



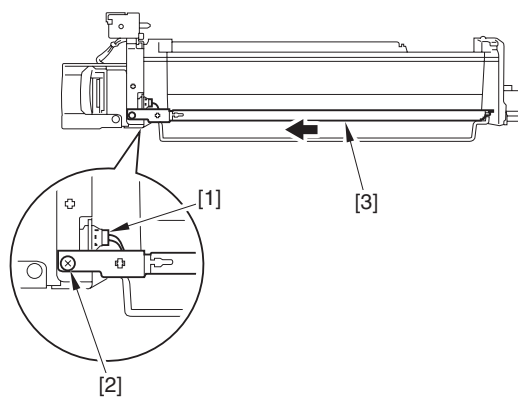
7.10.1.2 Removing Drum Cleaner Pre-exposure Unit

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

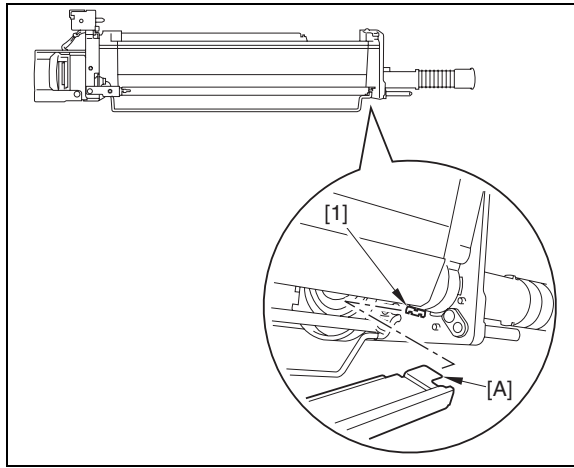
- 1) Remove the drum unit. (Refer to Removing drum unit procedure)
- 2) Remove the drum cleaning unit. (Refer to Removing drum cleaning unit procedure)
- 3) Remove the drum from the drum unit. (Refer to Removing drum unit procedure)
- 4) Remove the connector [1] and the screw [2], then slide the drum cleaner pre-exposure unit [3] in the direction of the arrow and remove.



Make sure to remove/attach the unit with the drum removed from the drum unit. If not, drum surface may get damaged.



⚠ Points to Note When Attaching the Drum Cleaner Pre-exposure Unit
Align the drum cleaner pre-exposure unit [A] part to the groove on the drum unit [1] and attach.

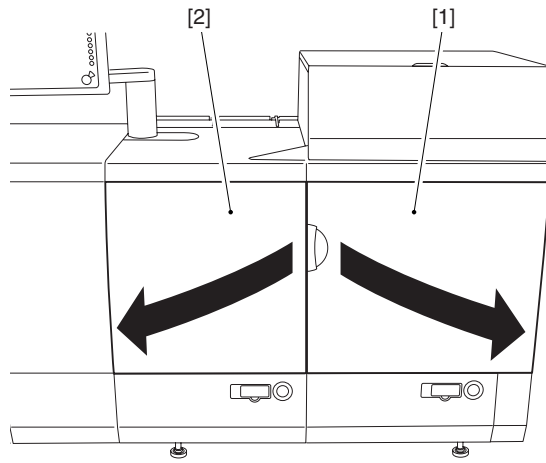


7.10.2 Primary Charging Assembly

7.10.2.1 Removing Primary Charging Assembly

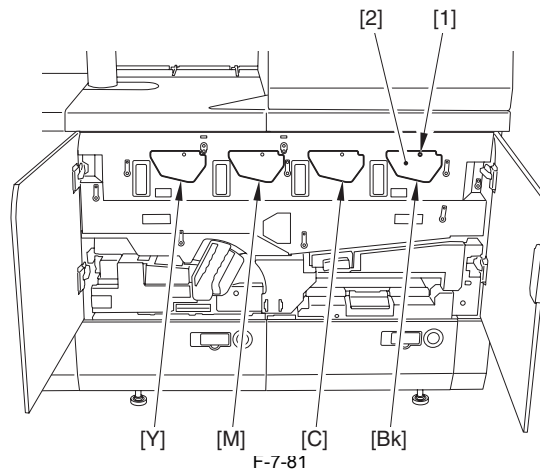
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

1) Open fully the front right cover [1], and then the front left cover [2] of main station.



F-7-80

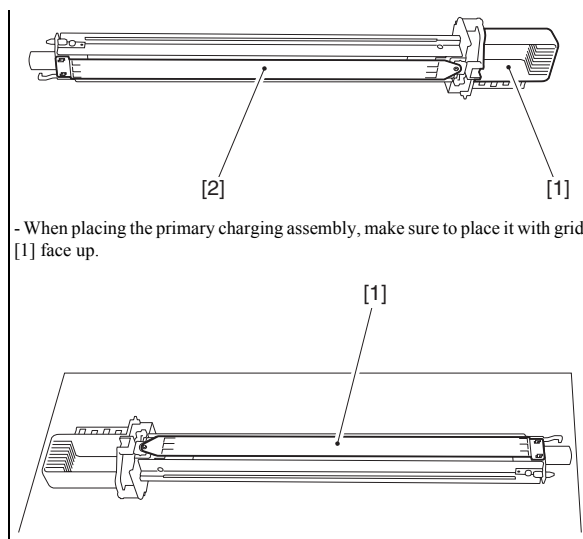
2) Loosen the screw [1] and detach the primary charging unit cover [2] of the color in interest (the black shown in the figure).



F-7-81

3) Make sure to check the following items before operation.

⚠ Points to Note When Removing Primary Charging Unit
 - When holding the primary charging assembly, make sure to hold the grip [1].
 Do not touch the grid [2].

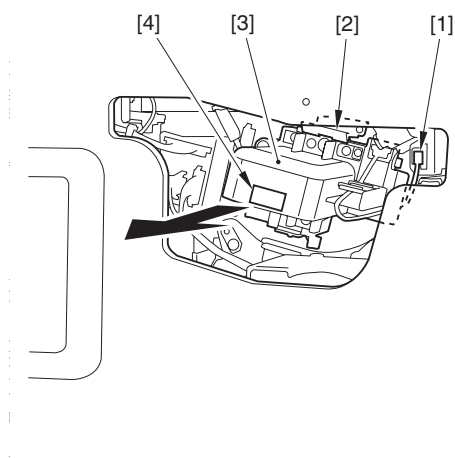


- When placing the primary charging assembly, make sure to place it with grid [1] face up.

Disconnect the connector [1] and free the sheet spring [2] to slide out the primary charging unit [3]. (The black unit is shown in the figure.)

MEMO:

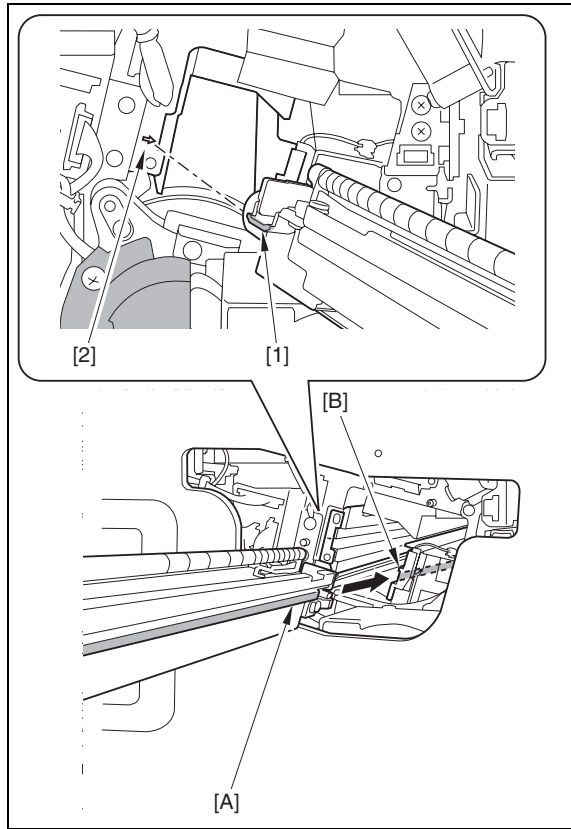
The color of the primary charging unit can be identified by label [4].



F-7-82



Points to Note When Attaching the Primary Charging Unit
When attaching the unit, fit the protrusion [1] of the primary charging unit to the engraved mark [2] on the machine. Also fit [A] of the primary charging unit to the rail [B] on the machine.

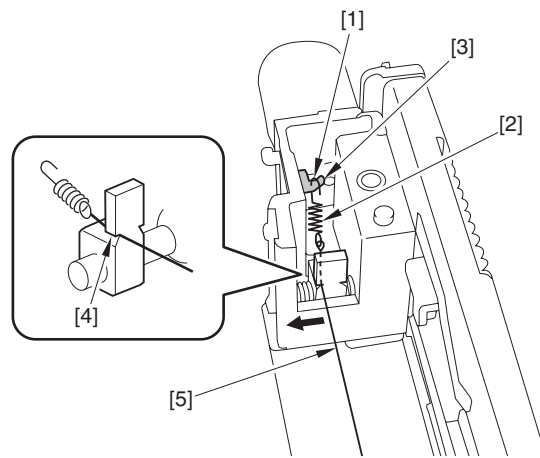


7.10.3 Primary Charging Wire

7.10.3.1 Removing Primary Charging Assembly

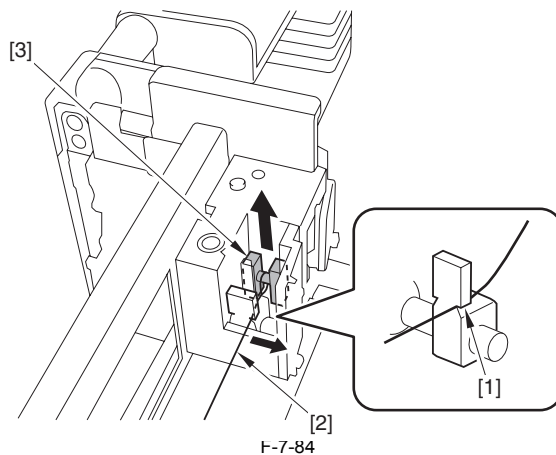
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- 1) Detach the primary charging assembly.
- 2) Detach the primary charging grid plate.
- 3) Detach the primary charging wire pad holder.
- 4) Detach the primary charging wire slider.
- 5) Pinch the leading edge of the spring [1] with the tweezers to remove the spring [2] from the hook [3]. Remove the primary charging wire [5] from the groove [4] in the direction of the arrow.



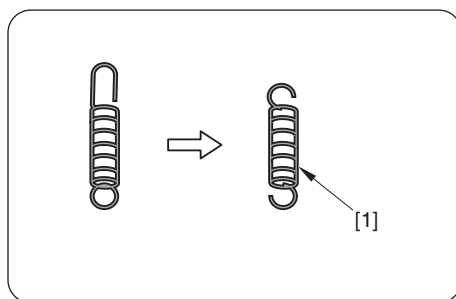
F-7-83

- 6) Remove the primary charging wire [2] from the groove [1] in the direction of the arrow. Remove the primary charging wire unit by lifting the block [3] with the tweezers.



F-7-84

7) When replacing only the primary charging wire, be sure to use the dedicated charging wire tension spring (FU5-2059).



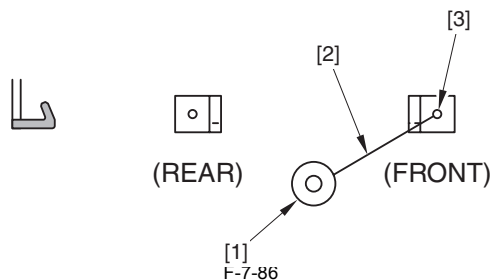
F-7-85

8) Loosen the charging wire [2] about 5 cm from the charging wire reel [1] of wire diameter 0.06 mm, and make a loop of diameter 2 mm on the edge.

MEMO:
When making a loop, roll the charging wire in the hex key once, and roll the hex key three to four times to twist the charging wire. By doing so, you can easily make a loop.

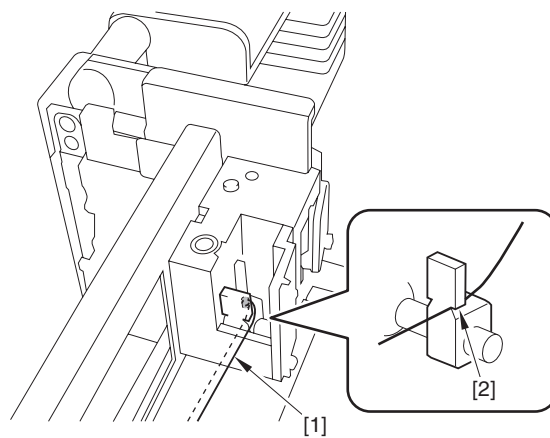
9) Cut the edge of the twisted charging wire (excess wire) using a wire cutter.

10) Hook the loop on the stud [3].



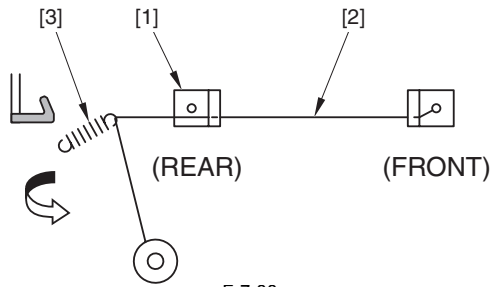
F-7-86

11) Run the primary charging wire [1] under the groove [2].



F-7-87

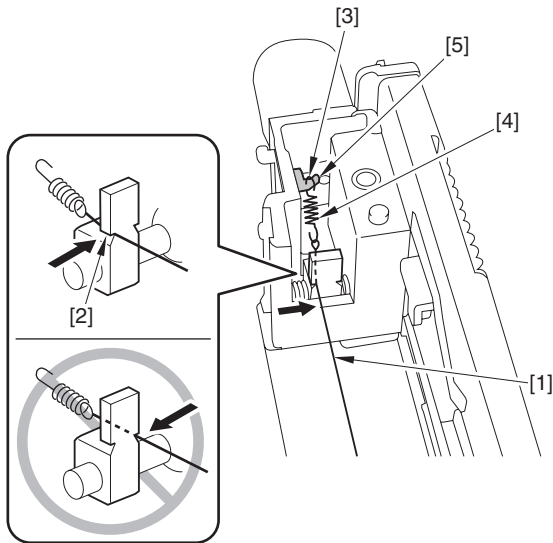
12) Hook the charging wire [2] on the charging wire positioning [1] at rear side, and then, hook the charging wire tension spring [3] to the charging wire at the position indicated below and twist it.



F-7-88

- 13) Cut the excess charging wire using a wire cutter.
- 14) Run the primary charging wire [1] under the groove [2]. Pinch the leading edge of the spring with the tweezers to fit the spring [4] to the hook [5].

⚠ The groove [2] to run the charging wire should be positioned as shown in the figure (on the side to attach the grid).



F-7-89

⚠ After hooking the spring, check the charging wire [1] is not bended or twisted.

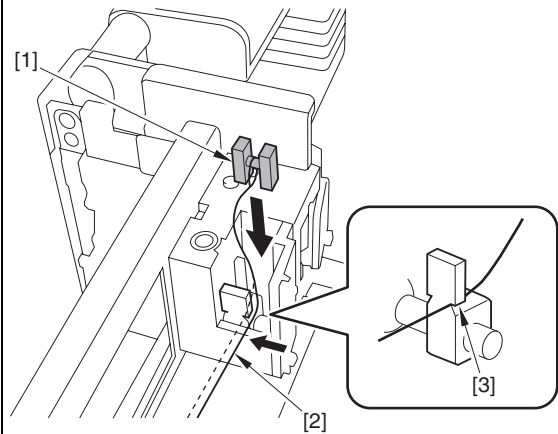
- 15) Clean the charging wire using lint-free paper moistened with alcohol solution.
- 16) Assemble the Primary Corona Wire Pad Holder and the Primary Corona Wire Slider in the reverse steps.

Attaching Primary Charging Wire

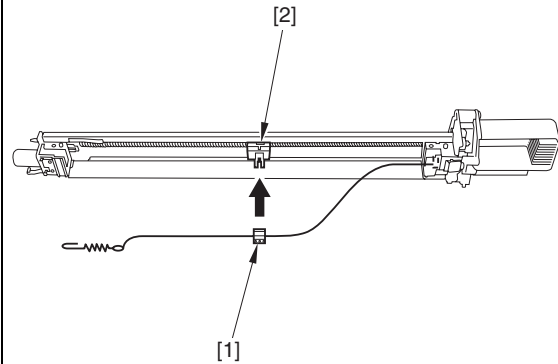
1) Make sure to check the following items before operation.

⚠ Points to Note When Handling Charging Wire Unit
Do not touch the charging wire [A] directly by hand.

Fit the block [1] in the groove with the tweezers and run the primary charging wire [2] under the groove [3].

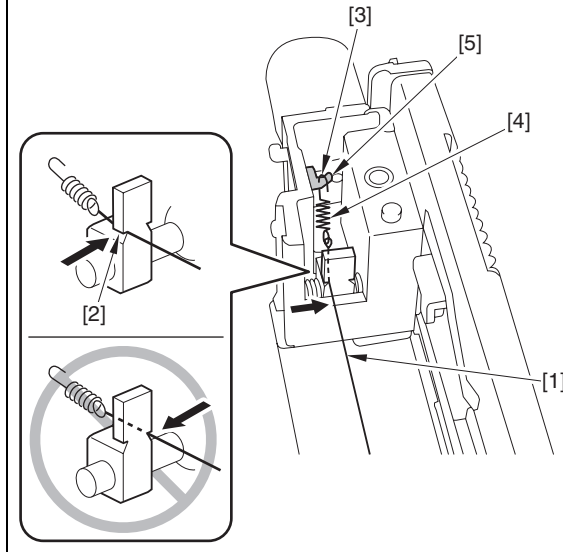


2) Attach the cleaning pad [1] on the base [2].



3) Run the primary charging wire [1] under the groove [2]. Pinch the leading edge of the spring with the tweezers to fit the spring [4] to the hook [5].

⚠ The groove [2] to run the charging wire should be positioned as shown in the figure (on the side to attach the grid).



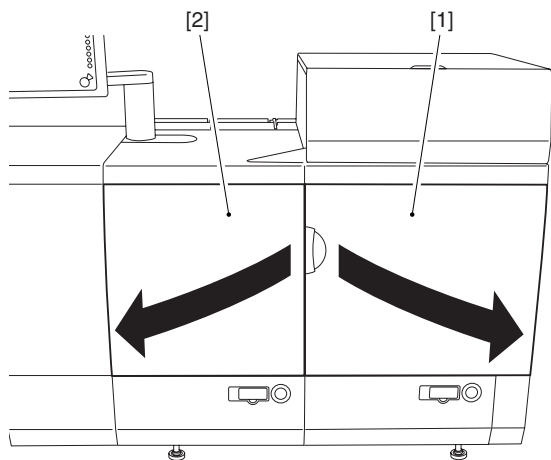
17) Assemble the primary charging assembly in the reverse steps.

7.10.4 Primary Corona Grid Panel

7.10.4.1 Removing Primary Corona Grid Panel

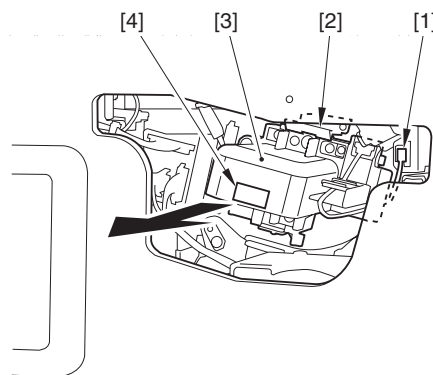
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- 1) Open fully the front right cover [1], and then the front left cover [2] of main station.



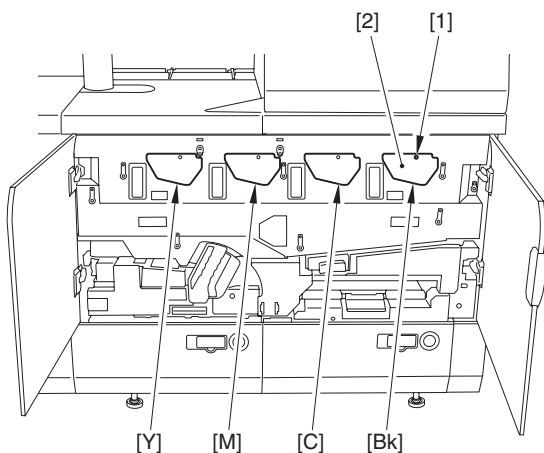
F-7-90

2) Loosen the screw [1] and detach the primary charging unit cover [2] of the color in interest (the black shown in the figure).



F-7-92

⚠ Points to Note When Attaching the Primary Charging Unit
When attaching the unit, fit the protrusion [1] of the primary charging unit to the engraved mark [2] on the machine. Also fit [A] of the primary charging unit to the rail [B] on the machine.



F-7-91

3) Make sure to check the following items before operation.

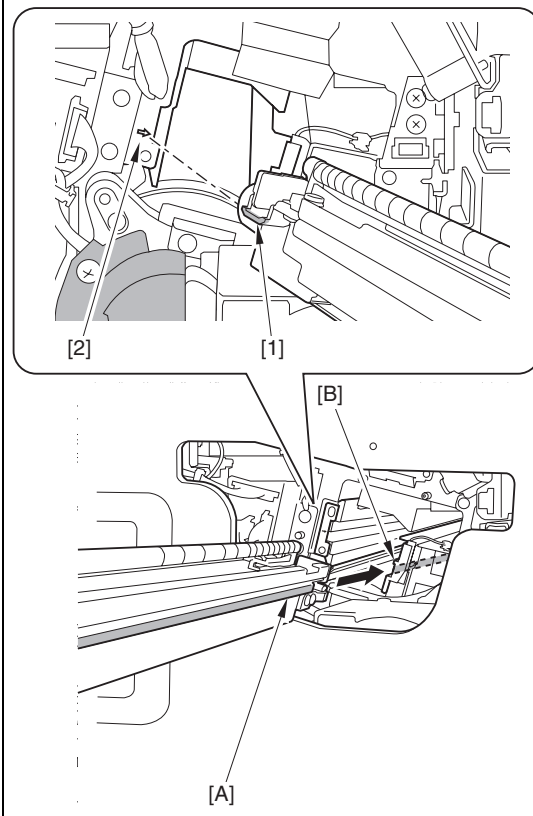
⚠ Points to Note When Removing Primary Charging Unit

- When holding the primary charging assembly, make sure to hold the grip [1]. Do not touch the grid [2].
- When placing the primary charging assembly, make sure to place it with grid [1] face up.

Disconnect the connector [1] and free the sheet spring [2] to slide out the primary charging unit [3]. (The black unit is shown in the figure.)

MEMO:

The color of the primary charging unit can be identified by label [4].




4) Shift the lever [1] to the direction of the arrow to remove the grid [2].

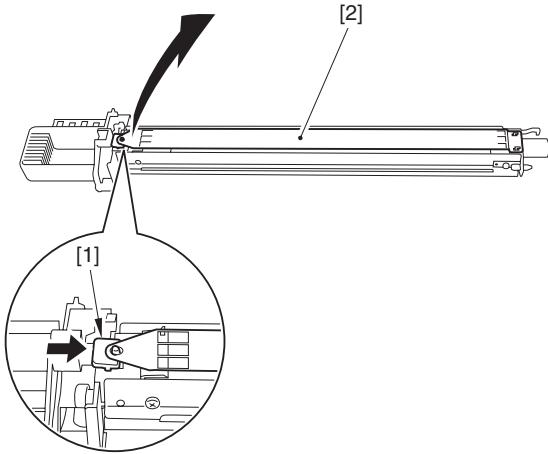
7.10.5 Primary Corona Pad Holder

7.10.5.1 Removing Primary Corona Wire Pad Holder

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- 1) Remove the primary charging assembly.
- 2) Remove the primary corona grid panel.
- 3) Loosen up the screw [1], and move the cleaner pad [2] to the center.

 Be sure to push the mounting base to move the cleaning pad.



F-7-93

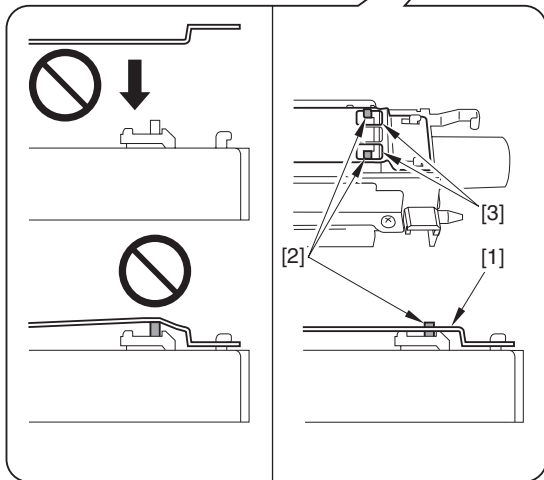
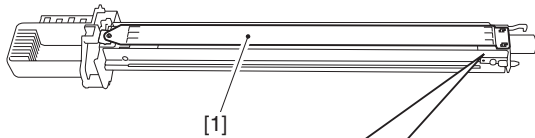
Attaching the Grid

Make sure to check the following items before operation.

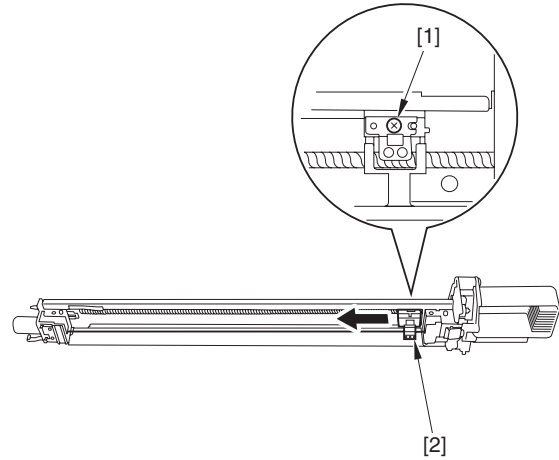
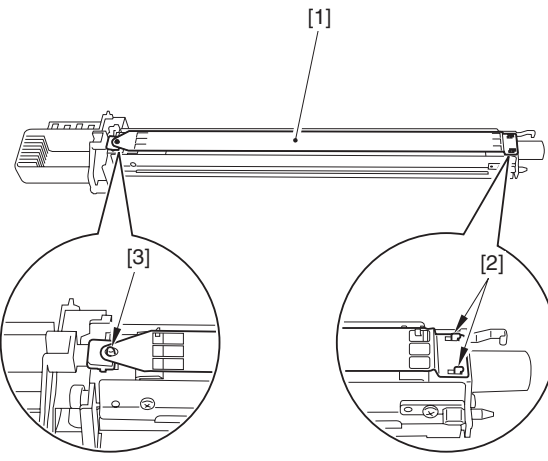


Point to Note When Attaching the Grid

Be sure to attach the grid [1] with correct orientation (front/back).
 Be sure that the grid [1] is not run on the protrusion [2] of the primary charging assembly when attaching it.
 Check that the protrusion [2] is fit into the hole [3] of the grid [1] after attaching the grid to the primary charging assembly.

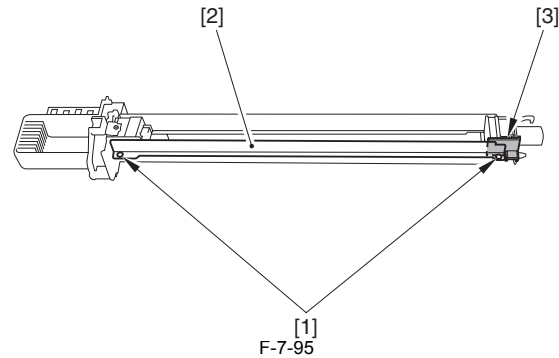


Hook the grid [1] to the claw [2] and attach to the boss [3] on the lever.



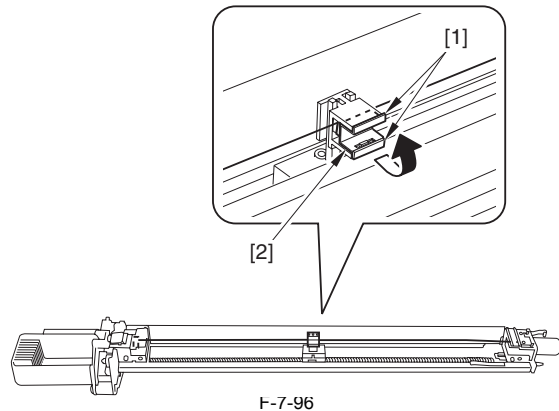
F-7-94

- 4) Remove the 2 screws [1], and then remove the left plate [2] and guide block (left) [3] of the primary charging assembly.




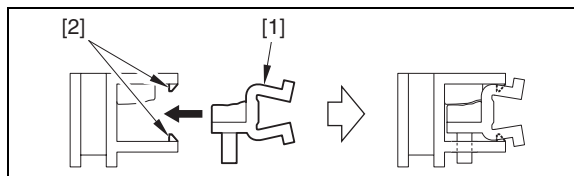
F-7-95

- 5) Turn the hook [1] in the direction of the arrow with pinching it and remove the primary charging wire pad holder [2].



F-7-96

 **Points to note when attaching**
 Be sure to push the primary charging wire pad holder [1] until it is secured with the claw [2].



7.10.6 Primary Corona Slider

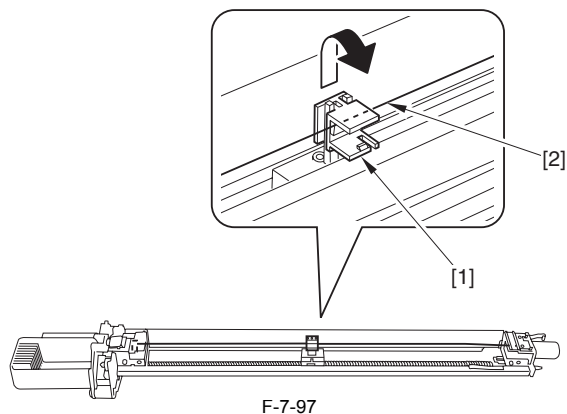
7.10.6.1 Removing Primary Corona Wire Slider

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- 1) Detach the primary charging assembly.
- 2) Detach the primary charging grid plate.
- 3) Detach the primary charging wire pad holder.
- 4) Detach the primary charging wire slider [1] in the direction of the arrow.

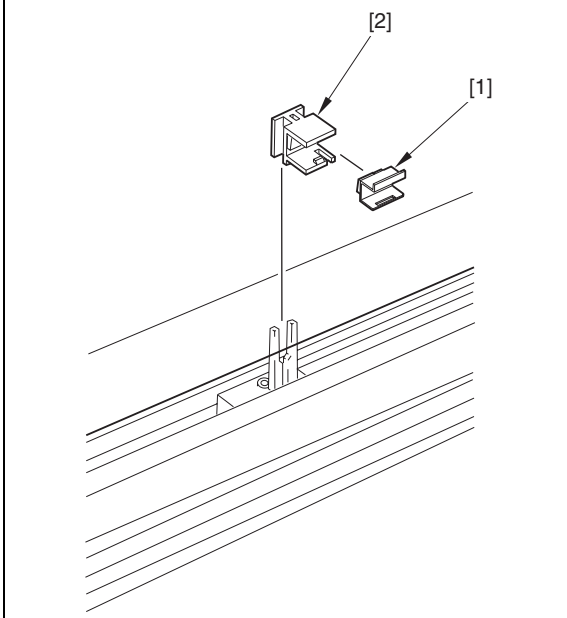


When detaching the primary charging wire slider, be sure not to cut the charging wire [2].



Points to Note At Installation

Be sure to fit the primary charging wire slider [1] and the primary charging wire pad holder [2] in the direction shown in the figure below, and attach them.



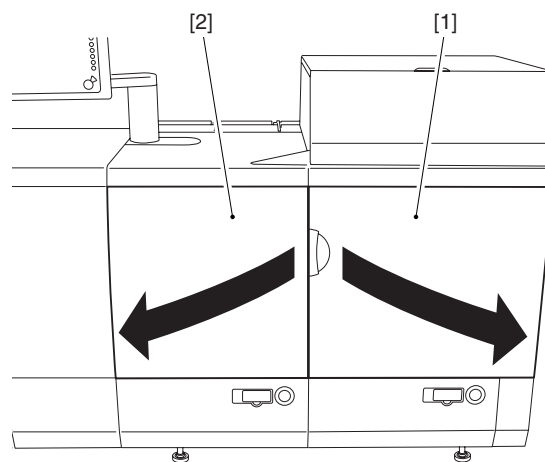
7.10.7 Pre-transfer Charging Assembly

7.10.7.1 Removing Pre-transfer Charging Assembly

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

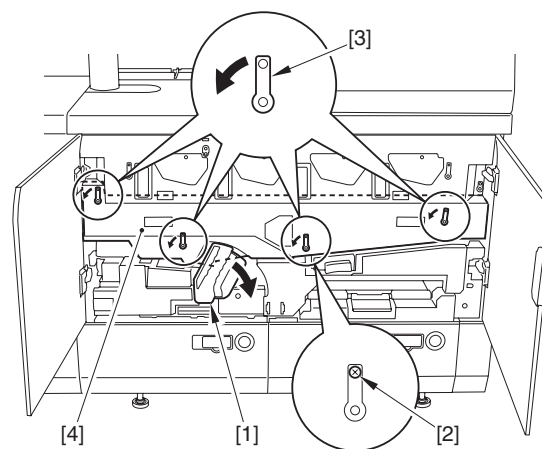
- 1) Open fully the front right cover [1], and then the front left cover [2] of

main station.



F-7-98

- 2) Shift down the lever (B-E1) [1] in the direction of the arrow. Remove the stepped screw [2] and shift the 4 levers [3] down in the direction of the arrow to detach the intermediate transfer unit cover [4].



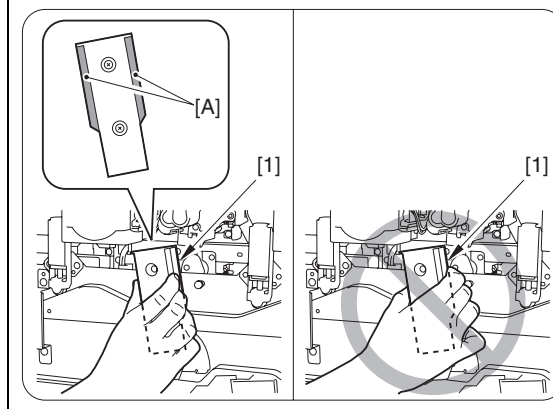
F-7-99

- 3) Make sure to check the following items before operation.

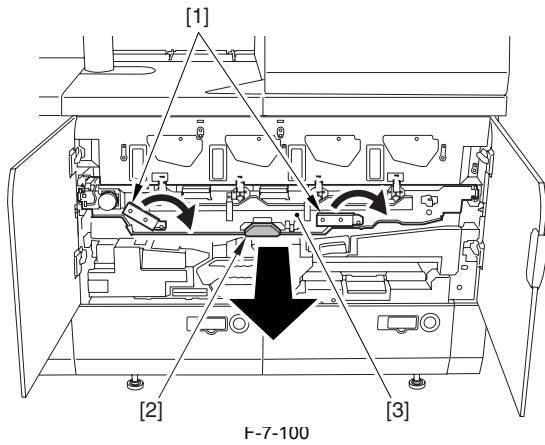


Points to Note When Holding the ITB Release Lever

Holding the release lever [1] fully may cause your hands get caught. Do not hold the release lever beyond the [A] area.



Shift the release lever [1] of intermediate transfer assembly in the direction of arrow. Hold the handle [2] to slide out the intermediate transfer assembly [3] until it is locked.



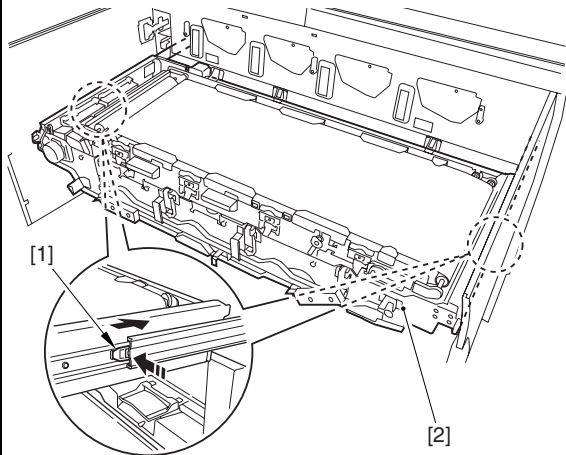
F-7-100

Storing Intermediate Transfer Assembly

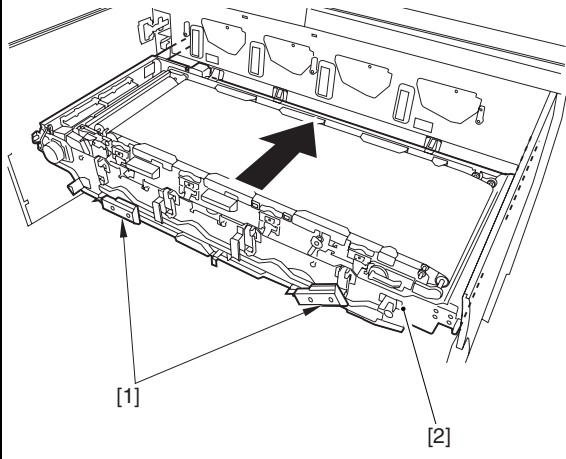
1) While pushing the 2 lock release springs [1], slide the intermediate transfer assembly [2] toward the rear side until the lock position is released.



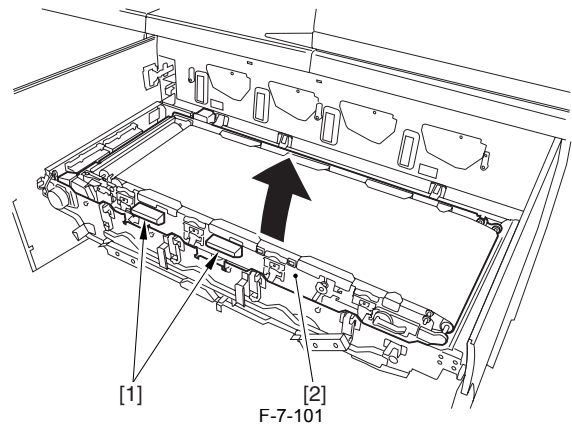
When sliding the intermediate transfer assembly [2] toward the rear side, be careful not to get your fingers caught.



2) Hold the release lever [1] to slide in the intermediate transfer assembly [2].



4) Hold the handle [1] with both hands and lift up the intermediate transfer belt unit [2] by approx. 40 deg, and then, lift it down to the lock position (at approx. 30 deg.).



F-7-101

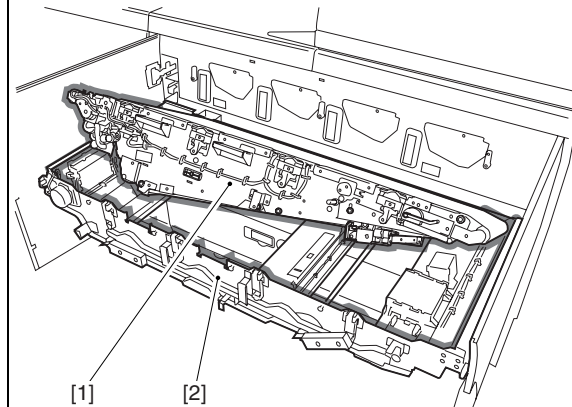
Lifting Down Intermediate Transfer Belt Unit

Make sure to check the following items before operation.



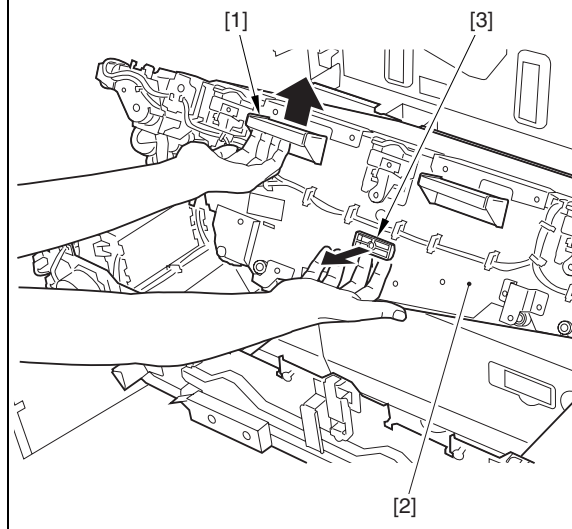
Point to Note When Lifting down Intermediate Transfer Belt Unit

When lifting down the intermediate transfer belt unit, be careful not to get your hands caught between the intermediate transfer belt unit [1] and the intermediate transfer frame [2].



Hold the handle [1] as shown in the figure to pull out the lever [3] fully while lifting up the intermediate transfer belt unit [2].

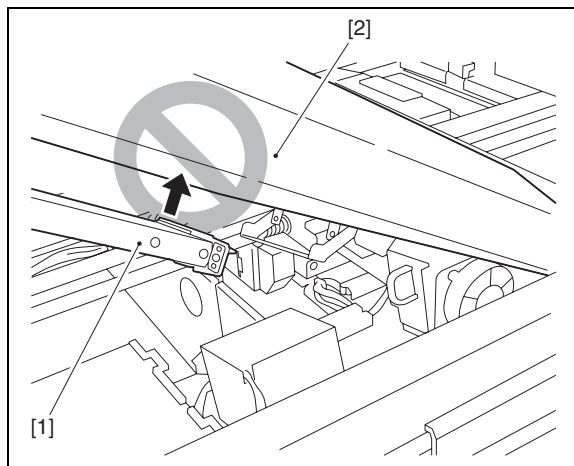
While pulling the lever [3], slightly lift down the intermediate transfer belt unit. When the belt passes through the lock release position (approx. 30 deg), release your hands (intermediate transfer belt unit slowly moves downward).



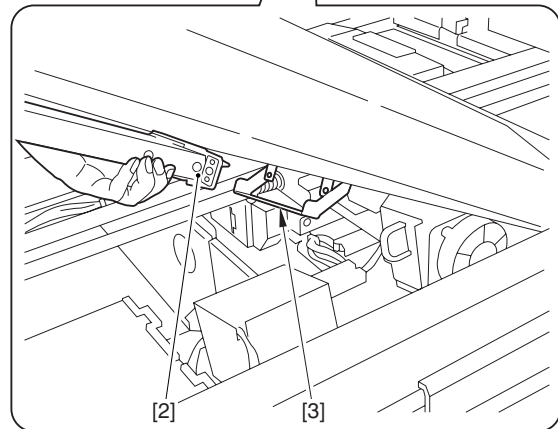
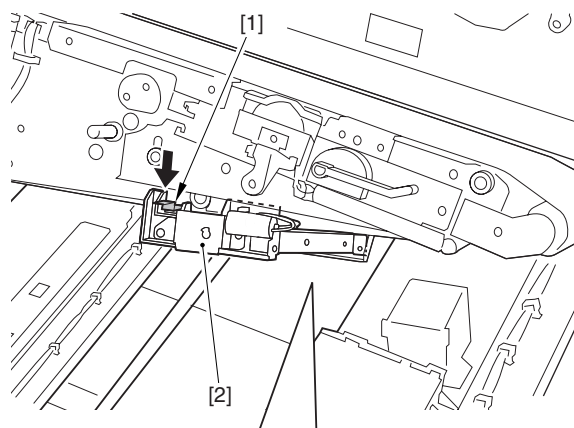
5) Make sure to check the following items before operation.



Be sure not to touch the pre-transfer charging assembly [1] with the intermediate transfer belt [2].



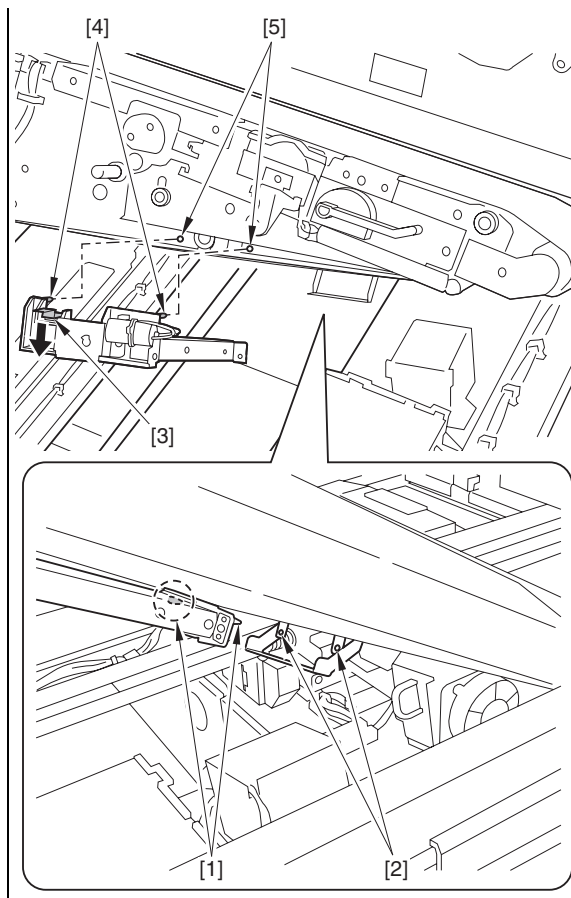
Push the leaf spring [1] in the direction of the arrow, and secure the pre-transfer charging assembly [2] to remove so that the rear side of the pre-transfer charging assembly [2] will not be dropped from the base [3].



F-7-102

⚠ Points to Note When Attaching the Pre-transfer Charging Assembly

Fit the rear protrusion [1] of the pre-transfer assembly into the hole [2] of the intermediate transfer belt unit. While pushing the leaf spring [3], also fit the front protrusion [4] into the hole [5] of the intermediate transfer belt unit to attach.

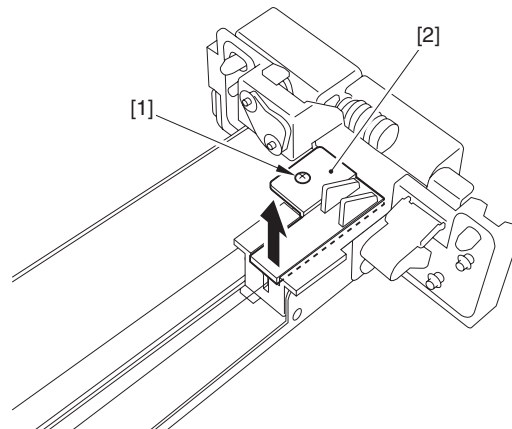


7.10.8 Pre-Transfer Charging Wire

7.10.8.1 Removing Pre-transfer Charging Wire

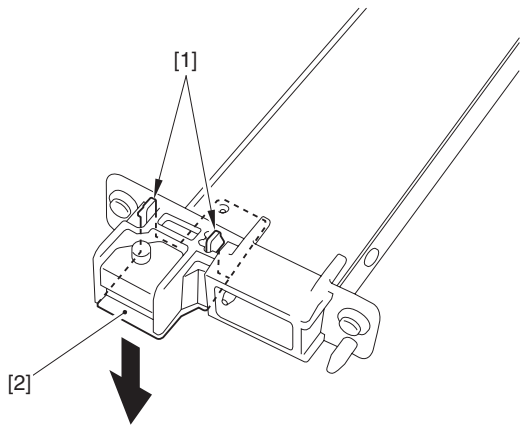
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- 1) Detach the pre-transfer charging assembly.
- 2) Detach the pre-transfer charging wire pad holder.
- 3) Detach the pre-transfer charging wire slider.
- 4) Detach the pre-transfer charging assembly cover (front) [2] by removing the screw [1].



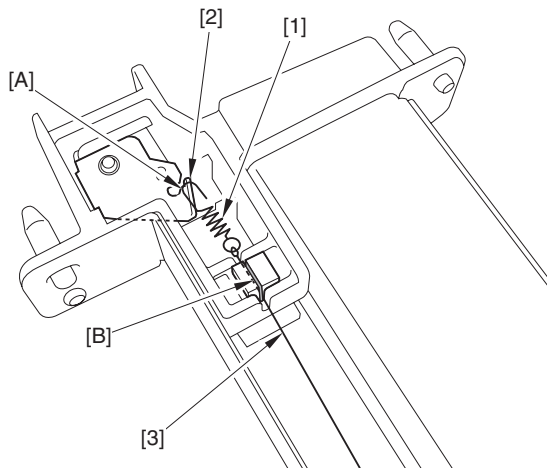
F-7-103

- 5) Detach the pre-transfer charging assembly cover (rear) [2] by disconnecting the 2 claws [1].



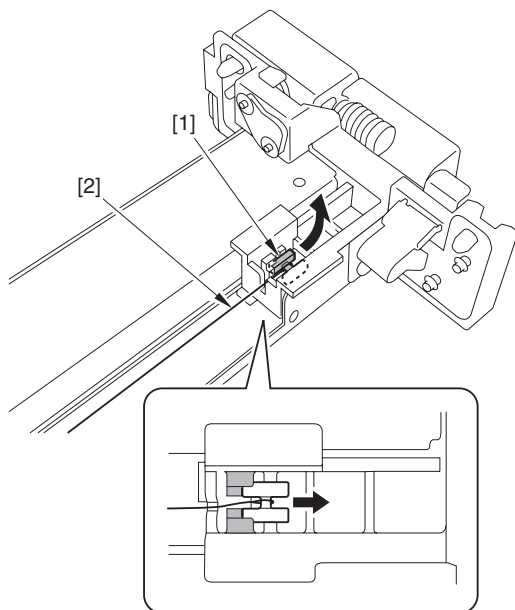
F-7-104

6) Anchor the leading edge [A] of the spring with tweezers, and remove the spring [1] from the hook [2]. Remove the charging wire [3] from the groove [B] of the sponge.



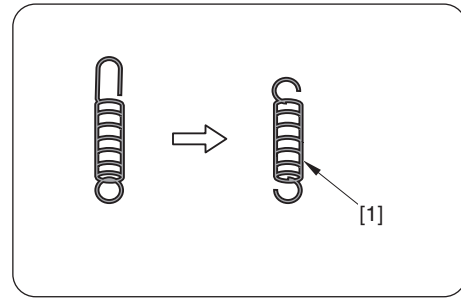
F-7-105

7) Slide and lift the block [1] of the charging wire unit upward with tweezers, and remove the charging wire unit [2].



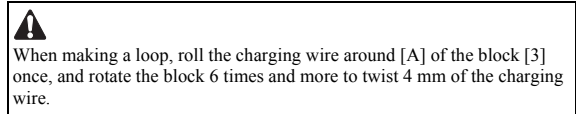
F-7-106

8) When replacing only pre-transfer charging wire, be sure to use the dedicated charging wire tension spring (97-5527).

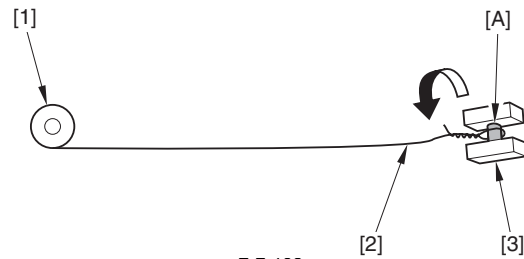


F-7-107

9) Free the charging wire [2] about 5 cm from the charging wire reel [1] (0.06 mm in diameter), and make a loop of diameter about 3 mm. Then, hook it to [A] of the block [3].

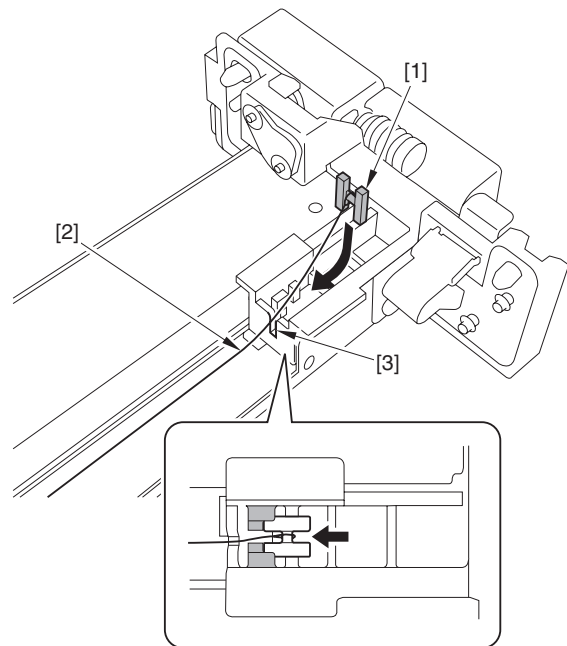


10) Cut the end (excess) of the charging wire using nippers but leave up to 1.5 mm length.



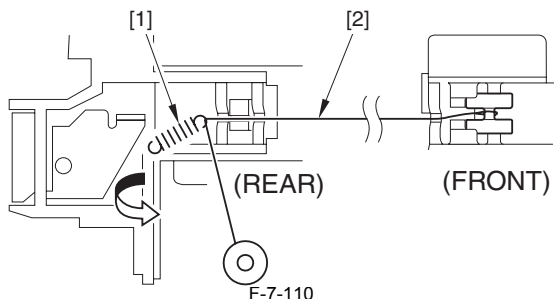
F-7-108

11) Fit the block [1] of the charging assembly to the slot and put the charging wire [2] through the slot [3].



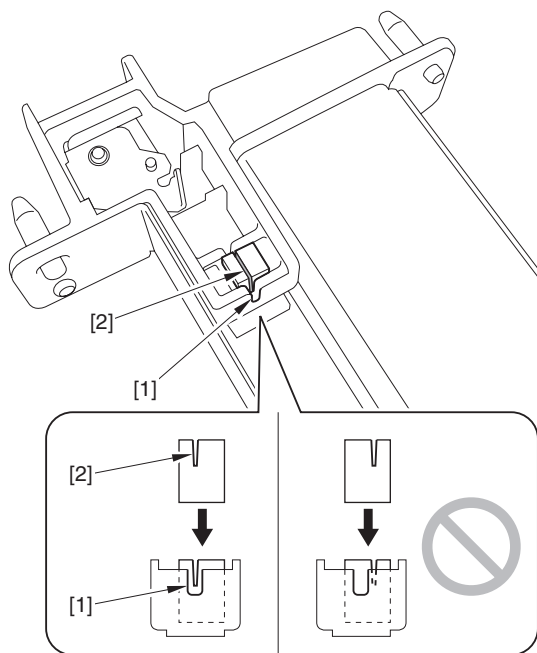
F-7-109

12) Connect the charging wire tension spring [1] to the charging wire [2] and twist it at the rear side position of the pre-transfer charging assembly indicated below.

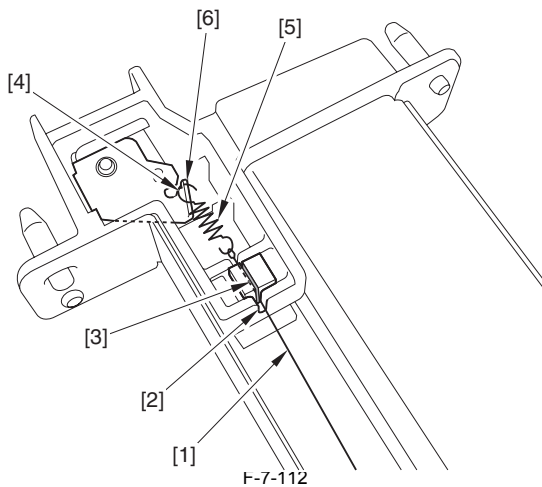


13) Cut the excess charging wire using a wire cutter.

⚠ Points to Note When Attaching Charging Wire
If the sponge comes off, fit the cut-off [1] to the sponge cut-off [2] to attach.



14) Put the charging wire [1] through the slot [2] and the sponge cut-off [3]. Pinch the leading edge [4] of the spring with tweezers to attach the spring [5] to the hook [6].



⚠ After hooking the spring, check the charging wire [1] is not bended or twisted.

15) Clean the charging wire using lint-free paper moistened with alcohol solution.

16) Assemble the pre-transfer Corona Wire Pad Holder and the pre-transfer Corona Wire Slider in the reverse steps.

Attaching Pre-Transfer Charging Wire
1) Make sure to check the following items before operation.

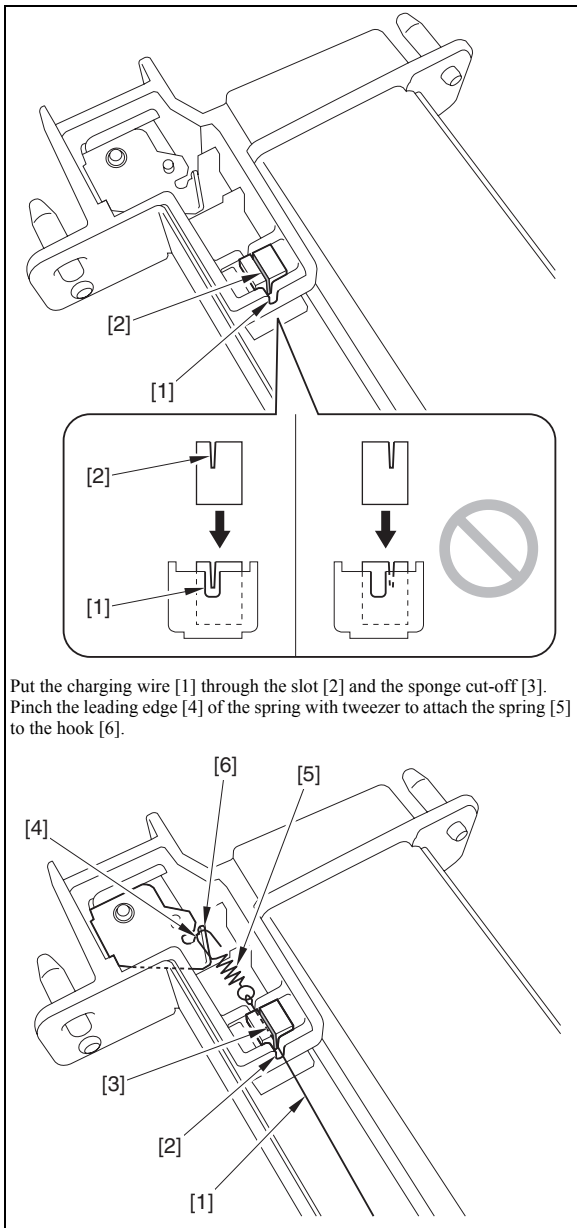
⚠ Points to Note When Handling Charging Wire Unit
Do not touch the charging wire [A] directly by hand.

Fit the block [1] of the charging assembly to the slot and put the charging wire [2] through the slot [3].

2) Attach the cleaning pad [1] to the attach plate [2] of the charging assembly.

3) Make sure to check the following items before operation.

⚠ Points to Note When Attaching Charging Wire
If the sponge comes off, fit the cut-off [1] to the sponge cut-off [2] to attach.



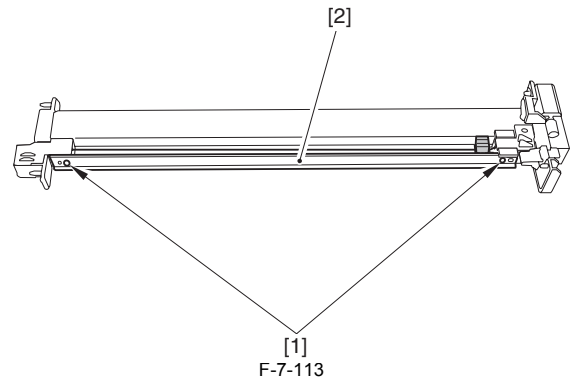
17) Assemble the pre-transfer charging assembly in the reverse steps.

7.10.9 Pre-Transfer Corona Pad Holder

7.10.9.1 Detaching Pre-Transfer Charging Wire Pad Holder

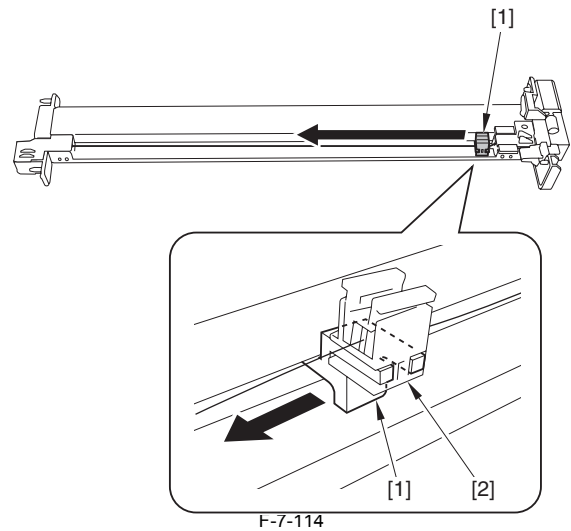
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- 1) Detach the pre-transfer charging assembly.
- 2) Remove the 2 screws [1] and detach the pre-transfer charging assembly left shield plate [2].

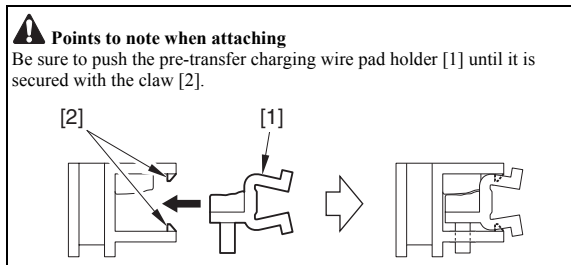
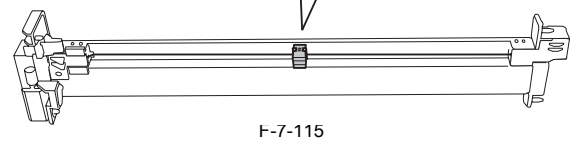
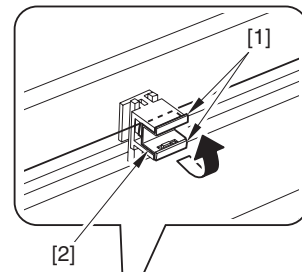


3) Move the mounting base [1] together with the cleaner pad.

⚠ Be sure not to push the cleaner pad [2]. When it needs to be moved, push the mounting base [1].



4) Turn the hook [1] in the direction of the arrow with pinching it and remove the pre-transfer charging wire pad holder [2].



7.10.10 Pre-Transfer Corona Slider

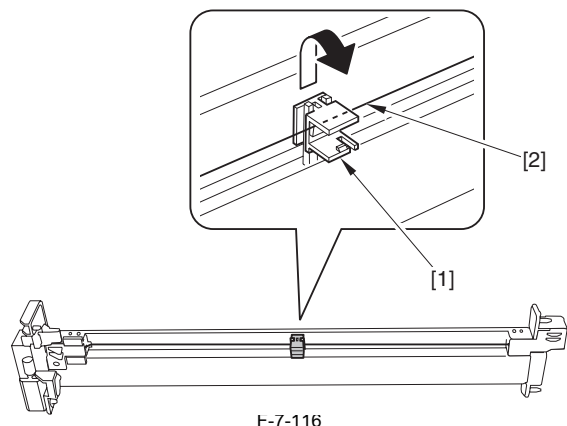
7.10.10.1 Removing Pre-transfer Charging Wire Slider

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- 1) Detach the pre-transfer charging assembly.
- 2) Detach the pre-transfer charging wire pad holder.
- 3) Detach the pre-transfer charging wire slider [1] in the direction of the arrow.



When detaching the pre-transfer charging wire slider, be sure not to cut the charging wire [2].

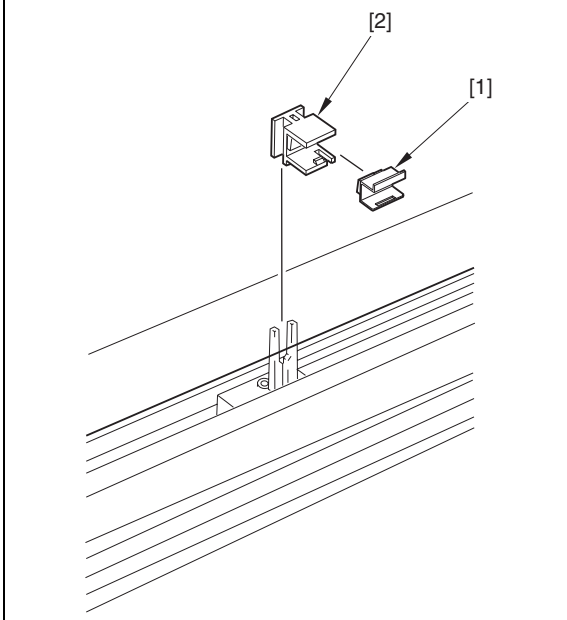


F-7-116



Points to Note At Installation

Be sure to fit the pre-transfer charging wire slider [1] and the pre-transfer charging wire pad holder [2] in the direction shown in the figure below, and attach them.

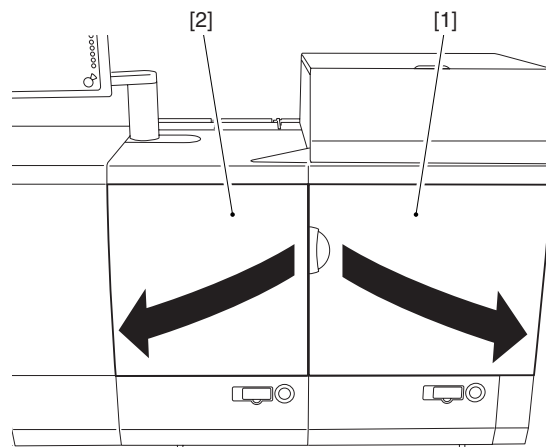


7.10.11 Drum Unit

7.10.11.1 Removing the Drum Unit

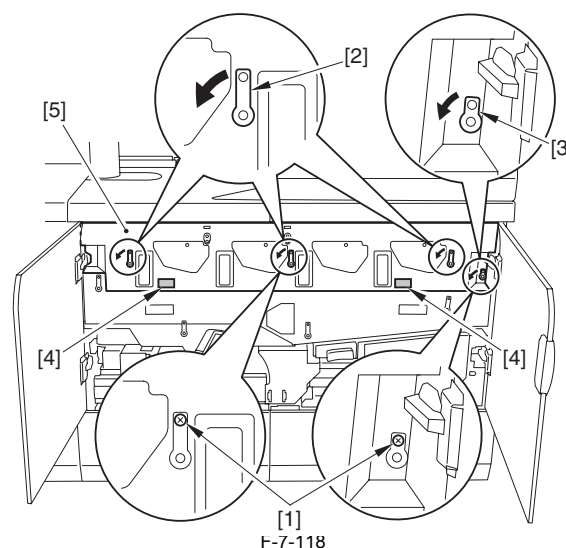
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- 1) Open fully the front right cover [1], and then the front left cover [2] of main station.



F-7-117

- 2) Remove the 2 stepped screws [1], shift the 3 levers [2] and the lever (small) [3] in the direction of the arrow in order. While holding the grip [4], detach the process unit cover [5].

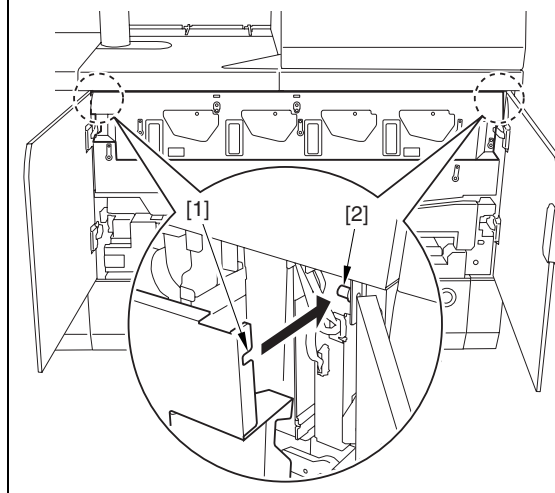


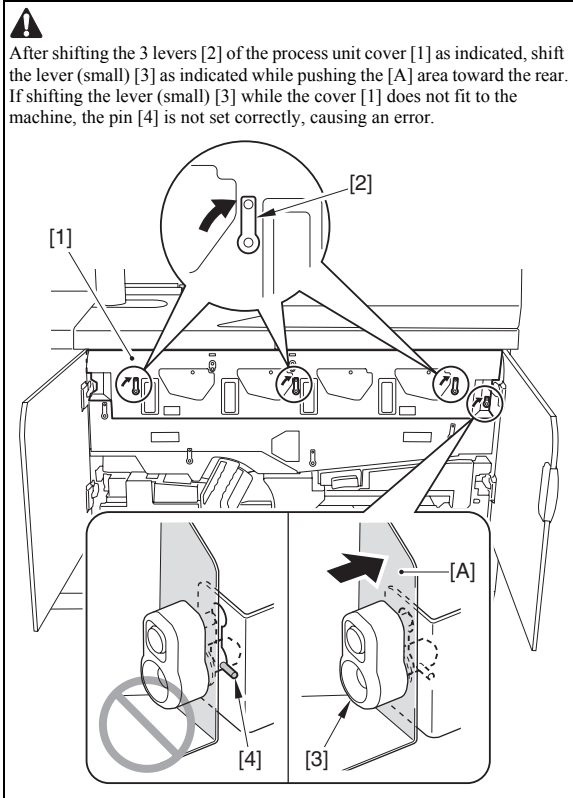
F-7-118



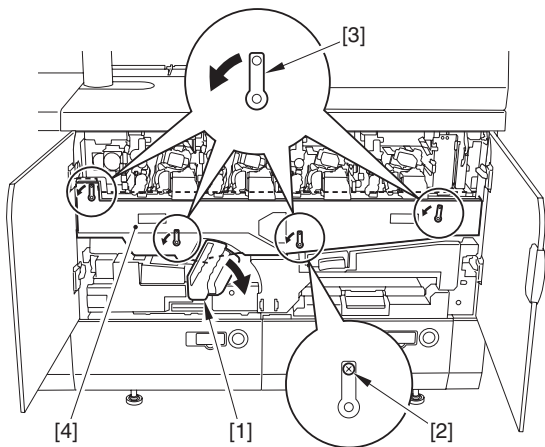
Points to Note When Attaching the Process Unit Cover

Align the cut-off [1] at the both ends of the process unit cover to the pin [2] at the host machine.



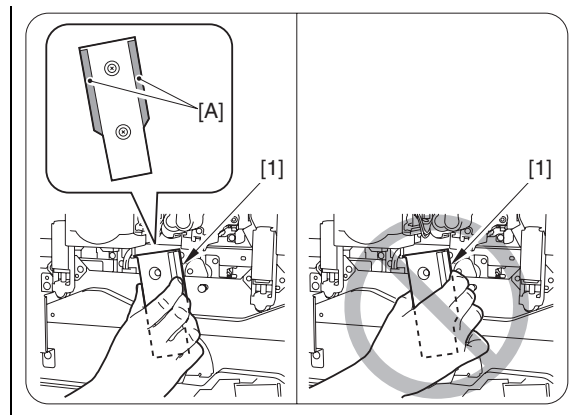


3) Tilt the lever (B-E1) [1] in the direction of the arrow. Remove the stepped screw [2], shift the 4 levers [3] in the direction of the arrow and then, detach the ITB unit cover [4].

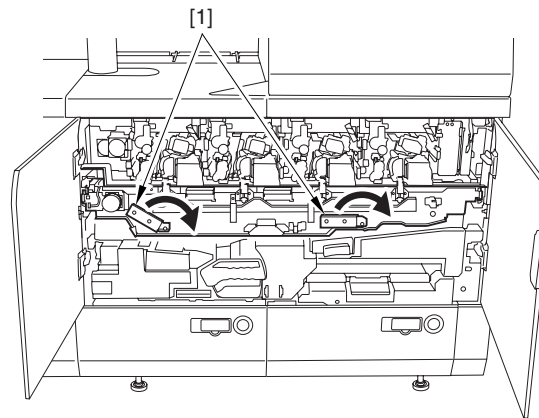


4) Make sure to check the following items before operation.

⚠ Points to Note When Holding the ITB Release Lever
 Holding the release lever [1] fully may cause your hands get caught. Do not hold the release lever beyond the [A] area.



Shift the intermediate transfer assembly release lever [1] in the direction of the arrow.

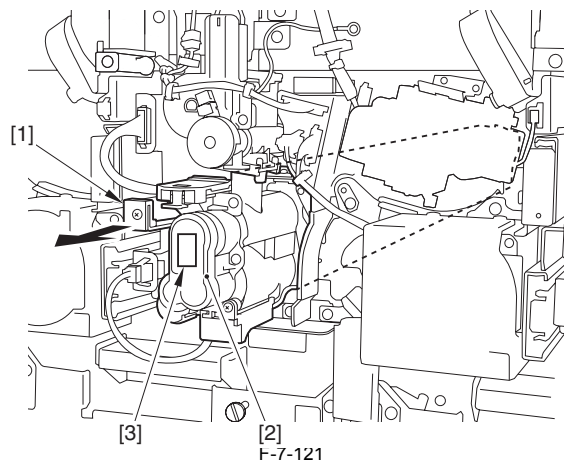


F-7-120

5) Pull out the developing assembly release lever [1] of the desired color until it locks and release the developing assembly [2]. (Figures below show black.)

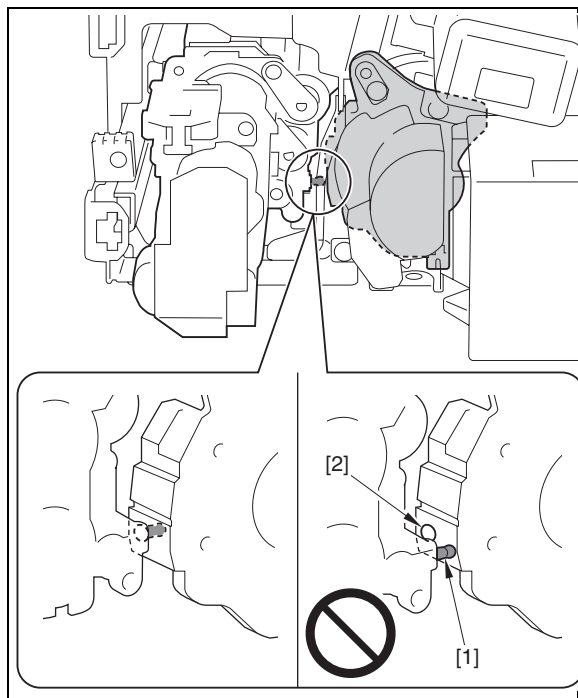
MEMO:
 Identify the developing assembly color by the label [3].

⚠ Points to note when applying the developing assembly pressure
 While placing the developing assembly [2] touched to the rear side of the host machine, push the developing assembly release lever [1].



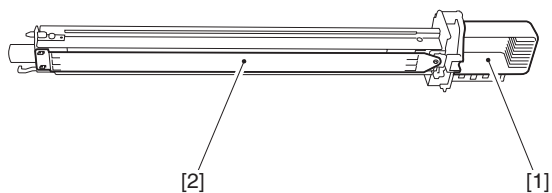
F-7-121

⚠
 When applying pressure to the developing assembly, make sure that the positioning pin [1] of the developing assembly is inserted all the way into the hole [2] at the drum flange.

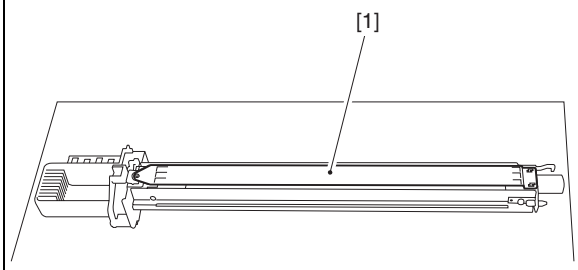


6) Make sure to check the following items before operation.

⚠ Points to Note When Removing Primary Charging Unit
 - When holding the primary charging assembly, make sure to hold the grip [1]. Do not touch the grid [2].



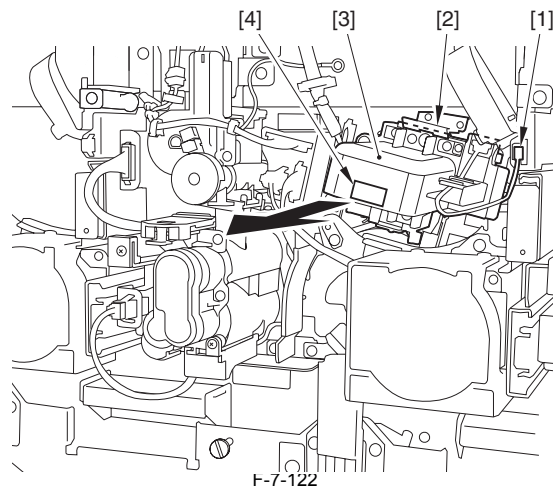
- When placing the primary charging assembly, make sure to place it with grid [1] face up.



Disconnect the connector [1] and free the sheet spring [2] to slide out the primary charging unit [3]. (The black unit is shown in the figure.)

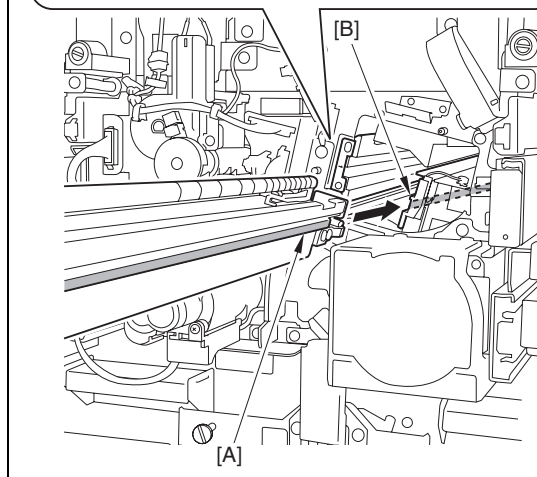
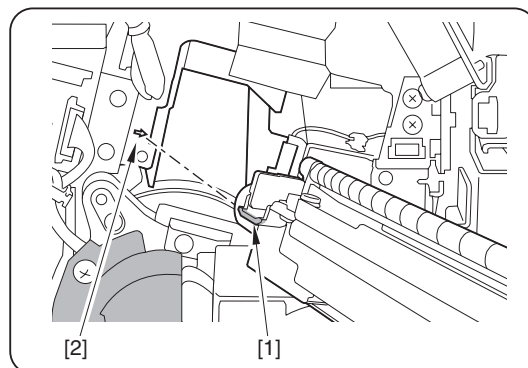
MEMO:

The color of the primary charging unit can be identified by label [4].

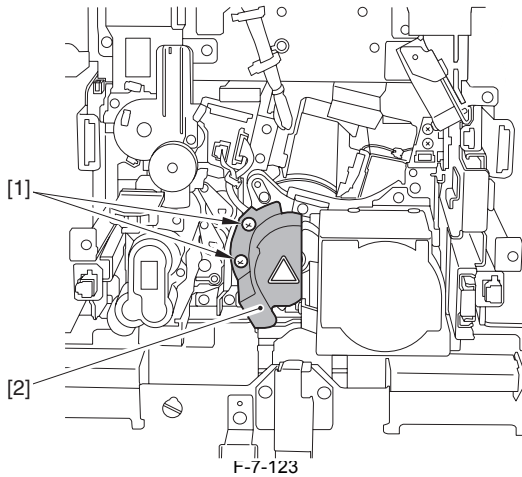


F-7-122

⚠ Points to Note When Attaching the Primary Charging Assembly
 Align the protrusion [1] of the primary charging assembly to the punched mark (arrow mark) [2] on the host machine and align the primary charging assembly [A] part to the rail [B] on the host machine to attach.

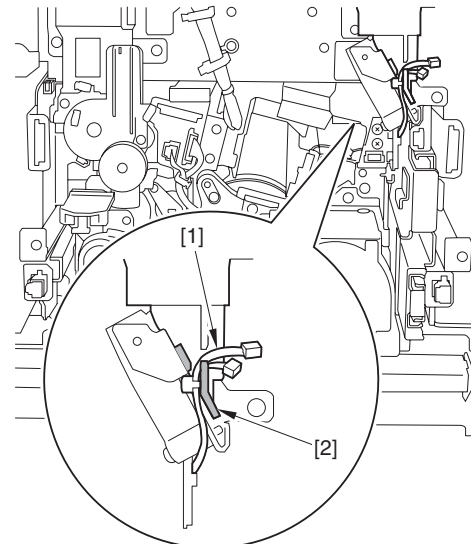


7) Remove the 2 screws [1] and detach the drum shaft knob cover [2].



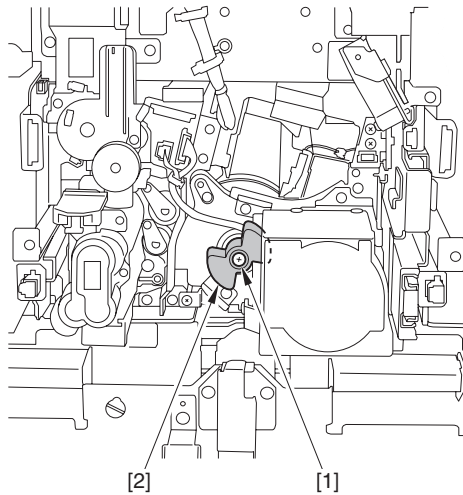
F-7-123

8) Remove the screw [1] and remove the drum shaft knob [2].



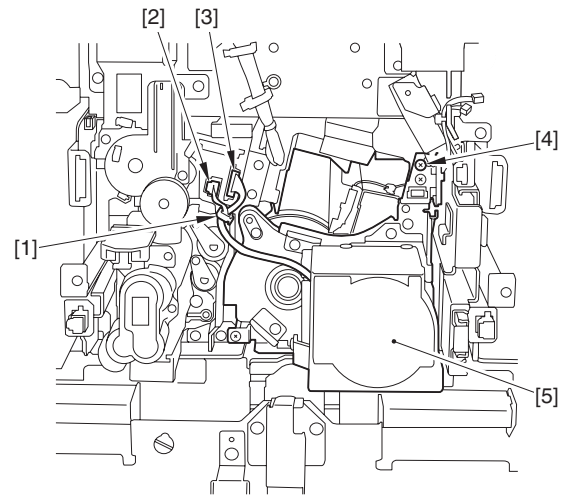
F-7-126

11) Remove the clamp [1], the connector [2] (with connector hook), the connector [3] and the screw [4] and then, remove the drum unit [5].



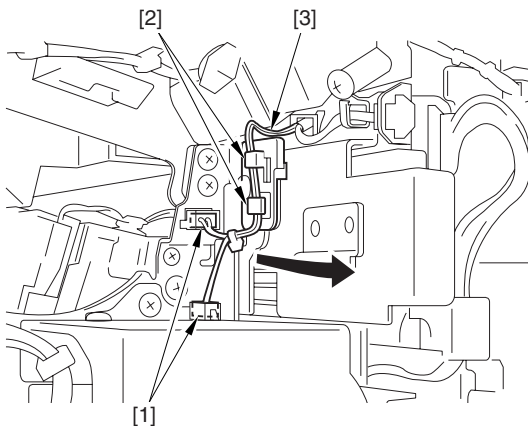
F-7-124

9) Disconnect the 2 connectors [1] and free the harness [3] from the harness guide [2].



F-7-127

12) Spread a paper before placing the drum unit.



F-7-125

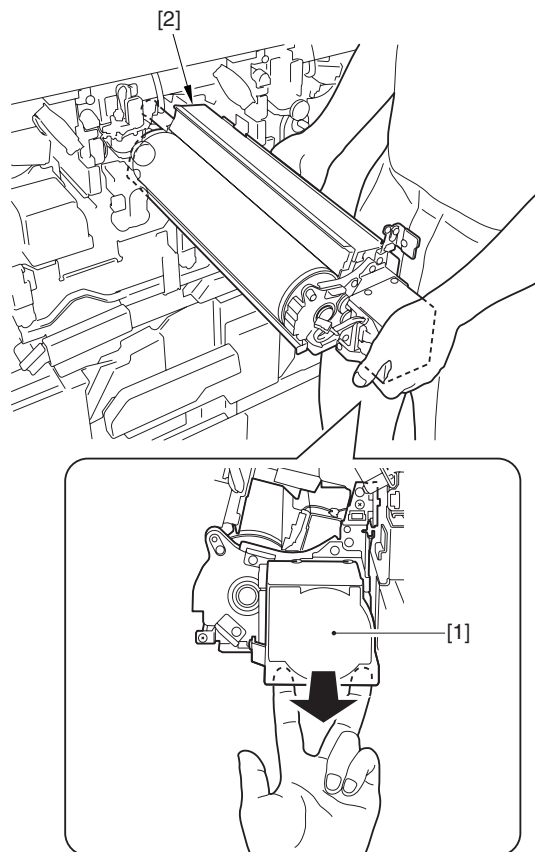
10) Hook the harness [1] freed from the harness guide on the guide [2].

! Make sure to hook the harness [1] on the guide [2] properly to prevent the harness get caught by the drum unit when pulling out the drum unit.

! Spread a paper under the unit/parts because the following procedure may stain a floor with toner.

13) While holding the drum unit grip [1] as shown in the figure, pull out the drum unit [2] slightly and with holding firmly with both hand, remove it.

! Make sure to pull out slowly to prevent the drum surface damage.

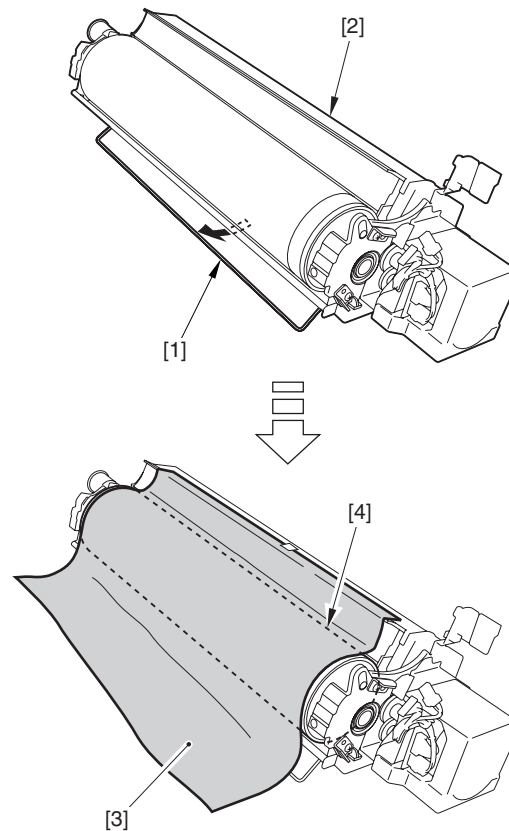


F-7-128

14) Make sure to check the following items before operation.

⚠ Points to Note When Handling the Photosensitive Drum
 Photosensitive drum is used for the drum at the host machine. To prevent the photosensitive drum deterioration, note the following caution.
 - When removing the drum unit from the host machine and removing the photosensitive drum from the drum unit, cover the photosensitive drum by the light-blocking sheet (or paper) to prevent the photosensitive drum from exposed.
 - Do not place the drum unit and the photosensitive drum in direct sunlight.

Lift the drum unit leg [1], place the drum unit [2] and immediately cover the photosensitive drum [4] with the light-blocking sheet [3] (or paper).



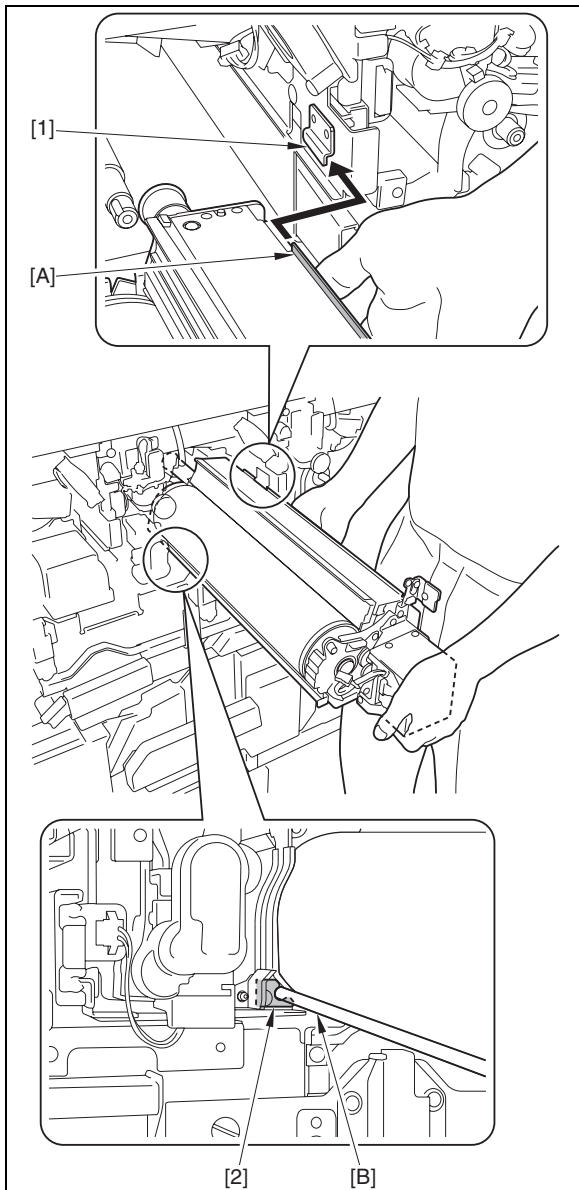
F-7-129

Attaching the Drum Unit

1) Align the drum unit [A], [B] part to groove [1], [2] respectively.



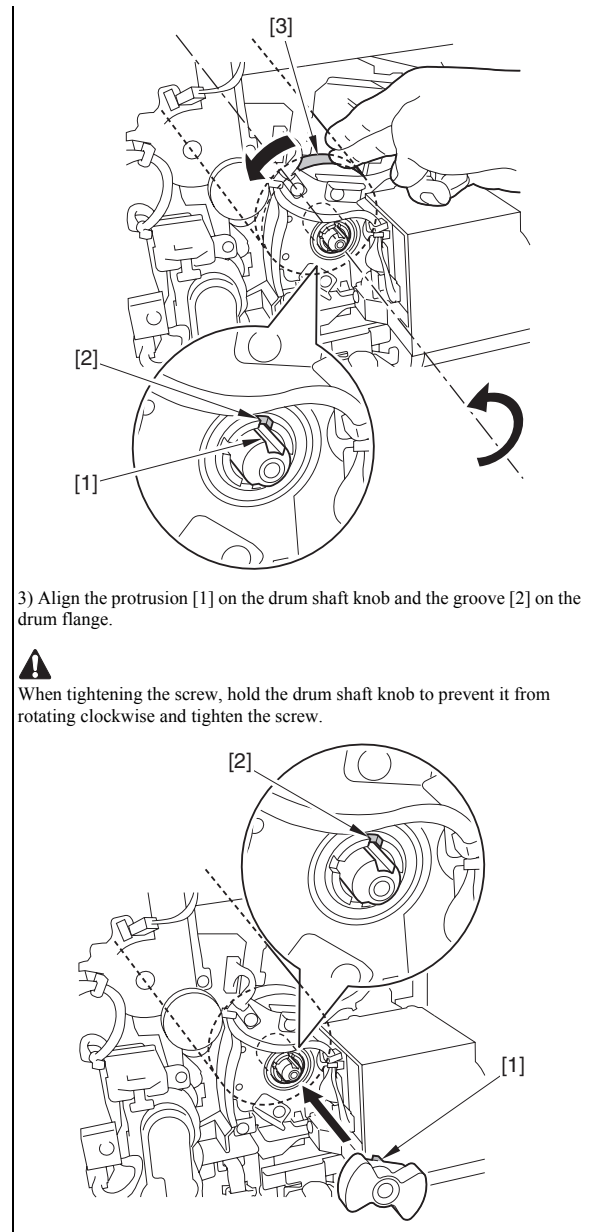
Make sure to attach with paying attention to the bottom part of the drum unit to prevent the drum surface damage.



2) Check to see the position of the groove [1] on the drum shaft and the groove [2] on the drum flange are aligned. If not, turn the side part of the drum flange [3] counter clockwise and align the position of the groove [1] on the drum shaft and the groove [2] on the drum flange.



To prevent the sweeper sheet from turned over, make sure to turn the drum in the direction shown in the figure (counter clockwise).

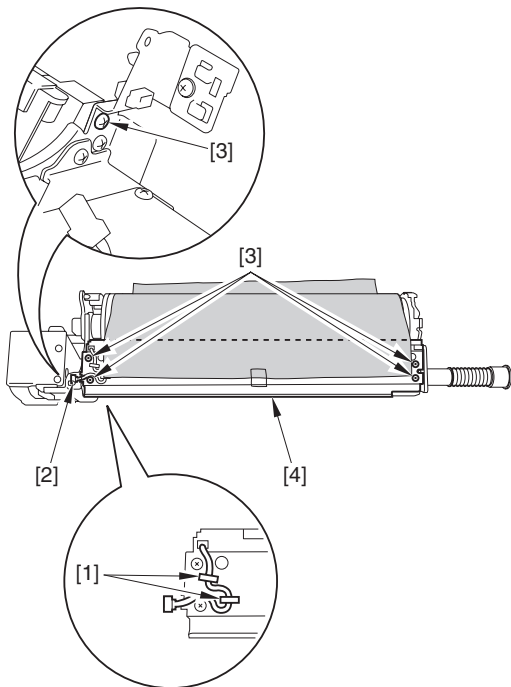


3) Align the protrusion [1] on the drum shaft knob and the groove [2] on the drum flange.



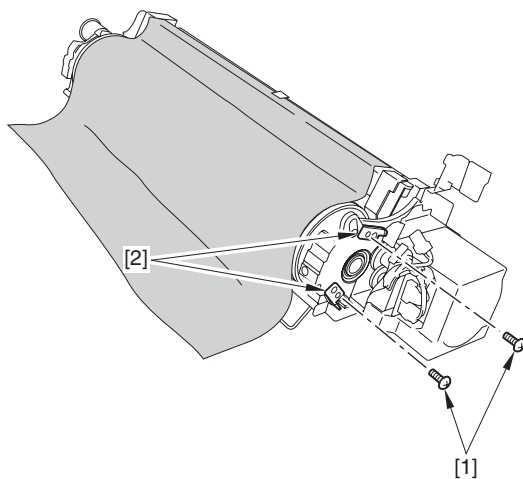
When tightening the screw, hold the drum shaft knob to prevent it from rotating clockwise and tighten the screw.

15) Free the harness from the 2 clamps [1], remove the connector [2] and the 5 screws [3], then remove the drum cleaner unit [4].



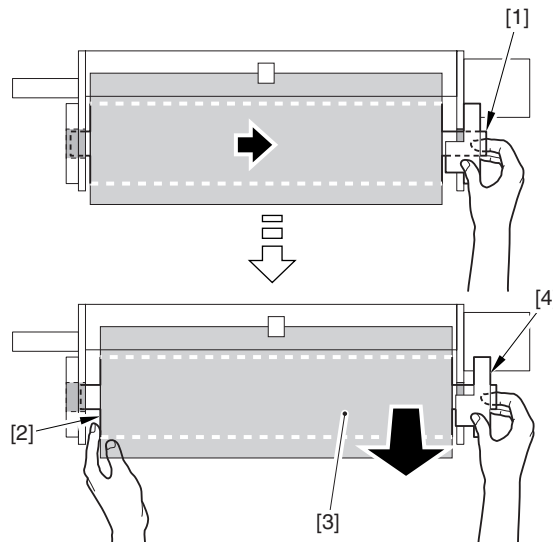
F-7-130

16) Remove the 2 screws [1] and remove the 2 fixing pins [2].



F-7-131

17) Put hands into the drum shaft hole [1] and pull out the drum. Hold the side of the drum [2] from the opening between the drum positioning plate (rear) and the drum, then remove the drum [3] and the drum positioning plate [4].



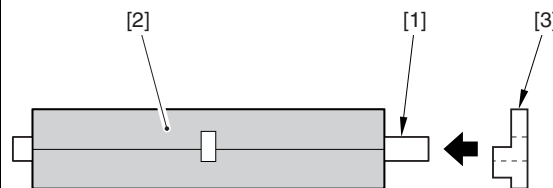
F-7-132

Attaching the Drum

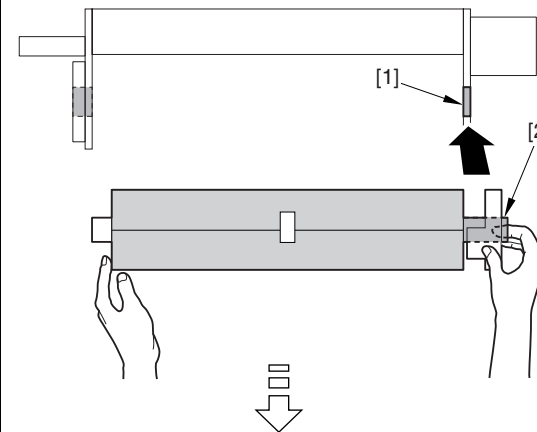
1) Attach the drum positioning plate [3] to the drum [1] covered with the light-blocking sheet [2] (or paper).



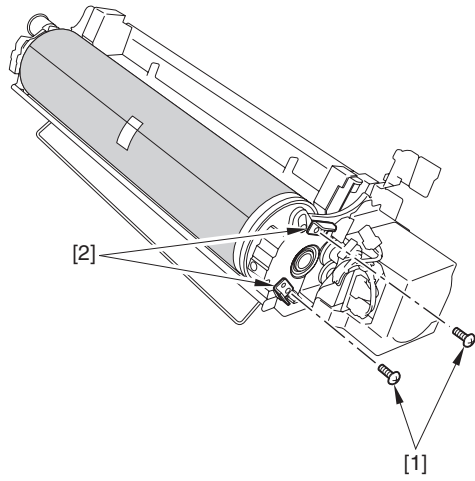
When attaching the drum to the drum unit, make sure not to expose the drum.



2) Align the drum positioning plate (front) shaft [2] to the protrusion [1] on the drum unit, slide all the way in to attach.

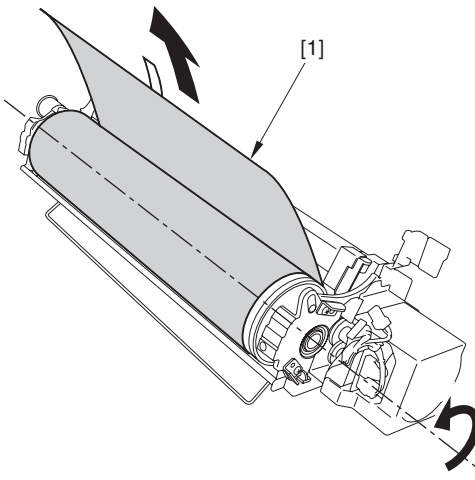


3) Fix the 2 fixing pins [2] with the 2 screws [1].

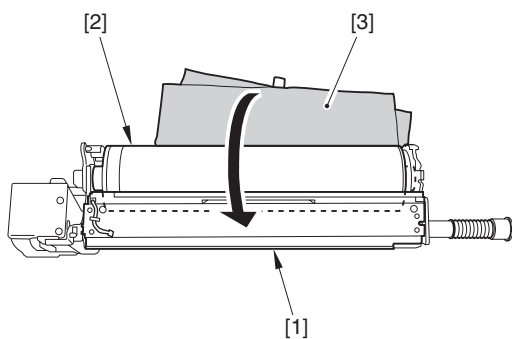


4) Pull the light-blocking sheet [1] in the direction shown in the figure and remove.

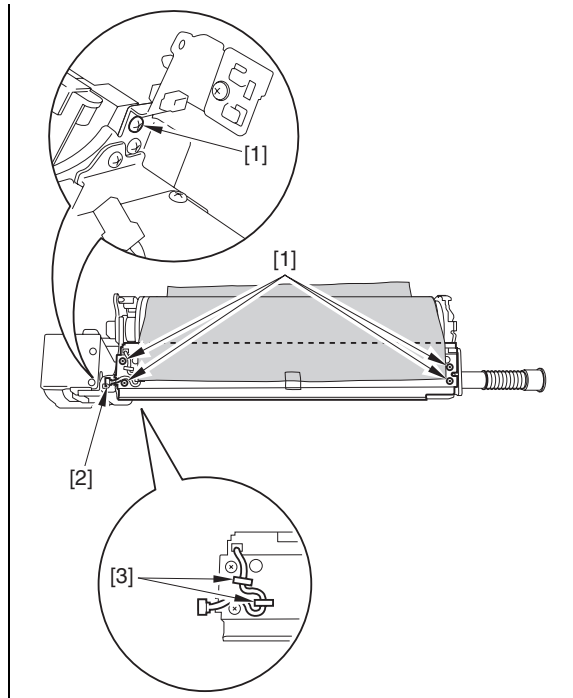
⚠ To prevent the sweeper sheet from turned over, pull the light-blocking sheet (paper) in the direction shown in the figure (counter clockwise).



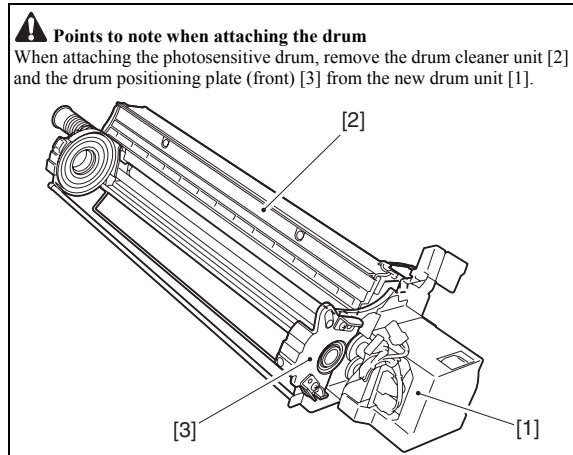
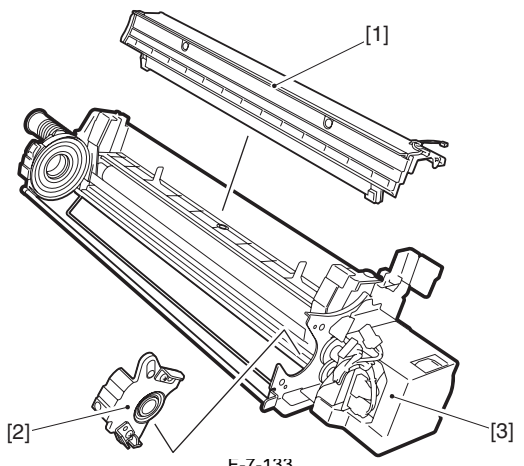
5) Attach the drum cleaner unit [1] and immediately cover the drum [2] with the light-blocking sheet [3] (or paper).



6) Tighten the 5 screws [1], and attach the connector [2] then, secure the harness with the 2 clamps [3].



18) Replace the drum unit (drum cleaner unit [1], drum positioning plate (front) [2], waste toner feed unit [3]).

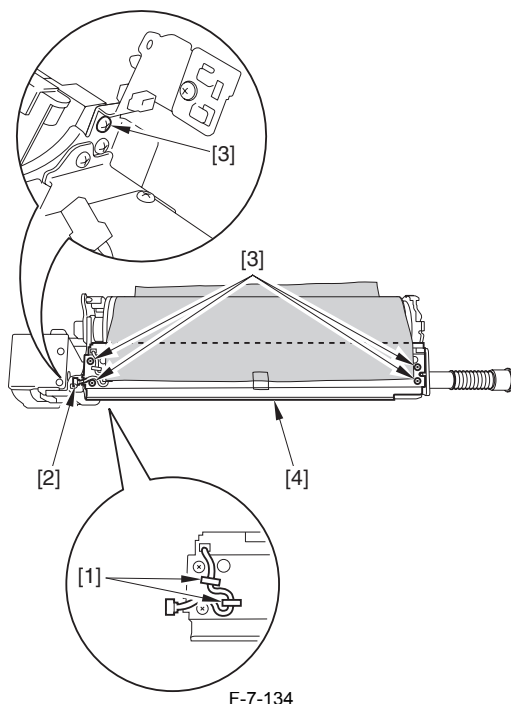


7.10.12 Photosensitive Drum Cleaning Unit

7.10.12.1 Removing Drum Cleaning Unit

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- 1) Remove the drum unit. (Refer to 'Removing Drum Unit')
- 2) Free the harness from the 2 clamps [1], remove the connector [2] and the 5 screws [3], then remove the drum cleaner unit [4].



7.10.13 Photosensitive Drum

7.10.13.1 Points to Note When Handling the Photosensitive Drum

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000



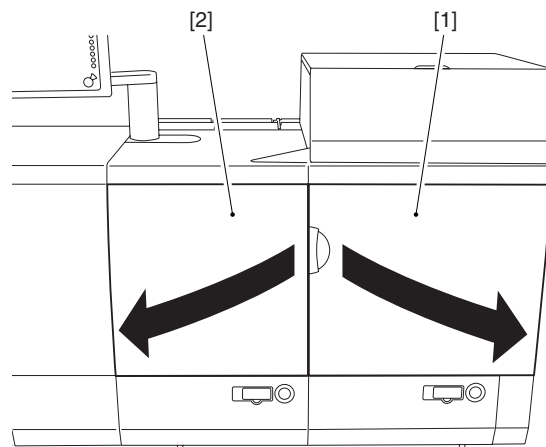
Photosensitive drum is used for the drum at the host machine. To prevent the photosensitive drum deterioration, note the following caution.

- When removing the drum unit from the host machine and removing the photosensitive drum from the drum unit, cover the photosensitive drum by the light-blocking sheet (or paper) to prevent the photosensitive drum from exposed.
- Do not place the drum unit and the photosensitive drum in direct sunlight.

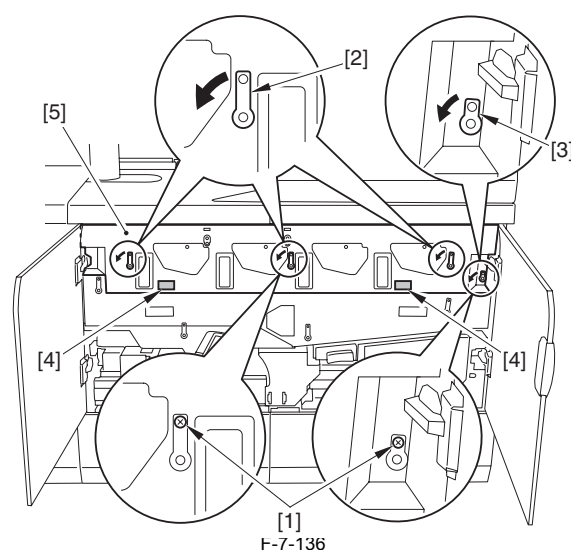
7.10.13.2 Removing Drum

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- 1) Open fully the front right cover [1], and then the front left cover [2] of main station.

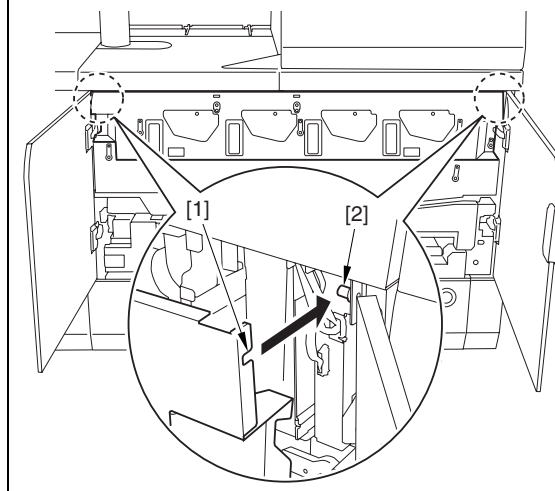


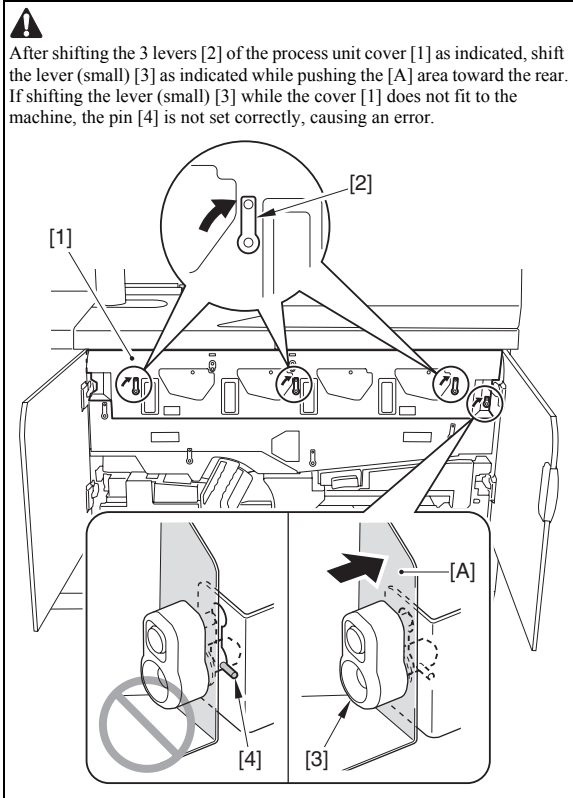
- 2) Remove the 2 stepped screws [1], shift the 3 levers [2] and the lever (small) [3] in the direction of the arrow in order. While holding the grip [4], detach the process unit cover [5].



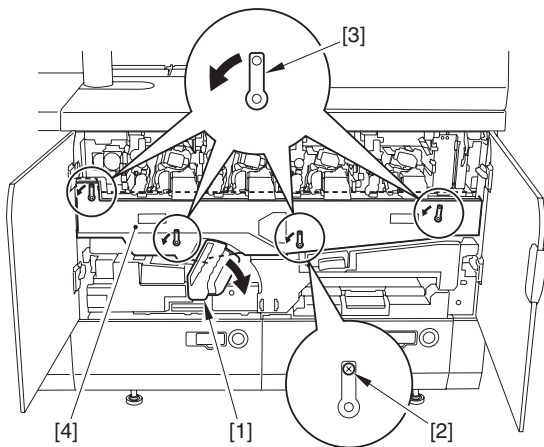
Points to Note When Attaching the Process Unit Cover

Align the cut-off [1] at the both ends of the process unit cover to the pin [2] at the host machine.



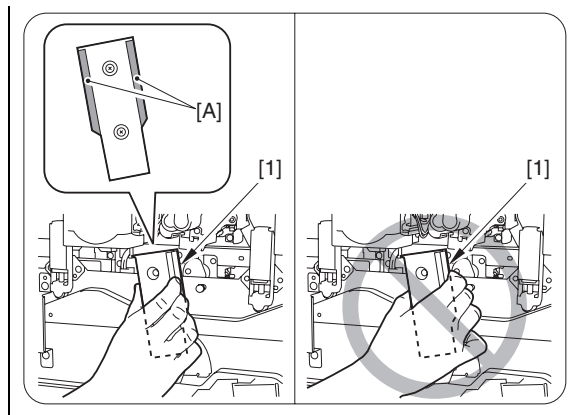


3) Tilt the lever (B-E1) [1] in the direction of the arrow. Remove the stepped screw [2], shift the 4 levers [3] in the direction of the arrow and then, detach the ITB unit cover [4].

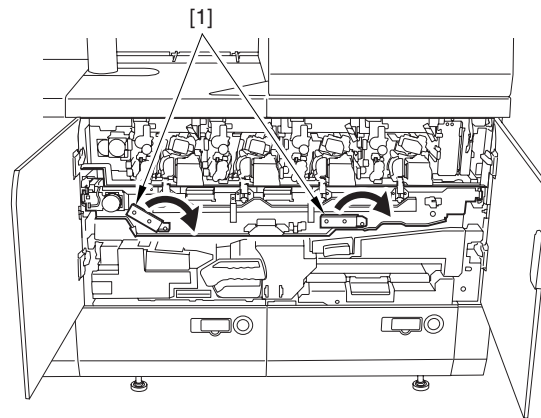


4) Make sure to check the following items before operation.

⚠ Points to Note When Holding the ITB Release Lever
 Holding the release lever [1] fully may cause your hands get caught. Do not hold the release lever beyond the [A] area.



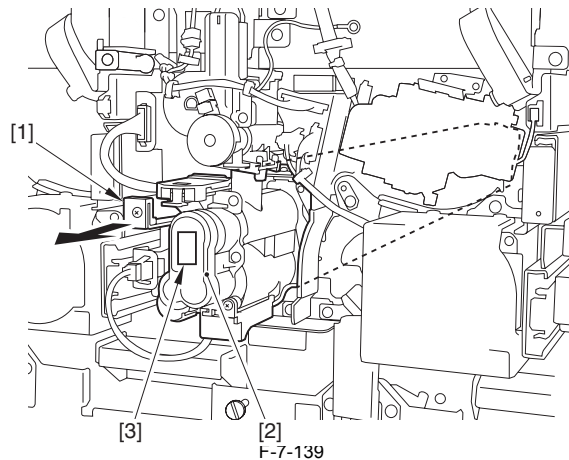
Shift the intermediate transfer assembly release lever [1] in the direction of the arrow.



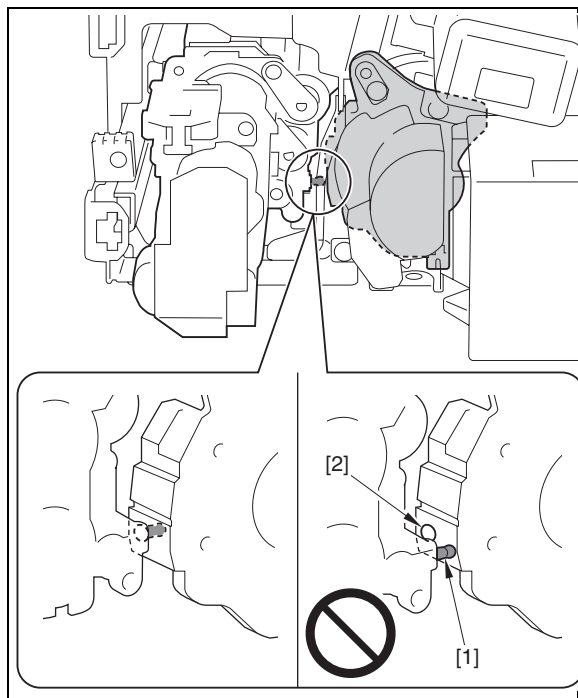
5) Pull out the developing assembly release lever [1] of the desired color until it locks and release the developing assembly [2]. (Figures below show black.)

MEMO:
 Identify the developing assembly color by the label [3].

⚠ Points to note when applying the developing assembly pressure
 While placing the developing assembly [2] touched to the rear side of the host machine, push the developing assembly release lever [1].

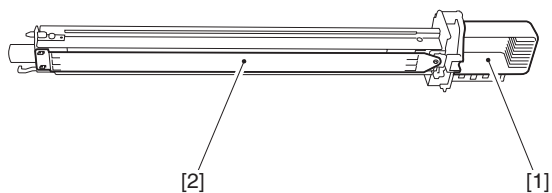


⚠
 When applying pressure to the developing assembly, make sure that the positioning pin [1] of the developing assembly is inserted all the way into the hole [2] at the drum flange.

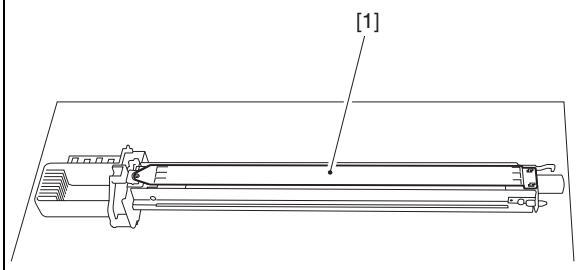


6) Make sure to check the following items before operation.

⚠ Points to Note When Removing Primary Charging Unit
 - When holding the primary charging assembly, make sure to hold the grip [1]. Do not touch the grid [2].



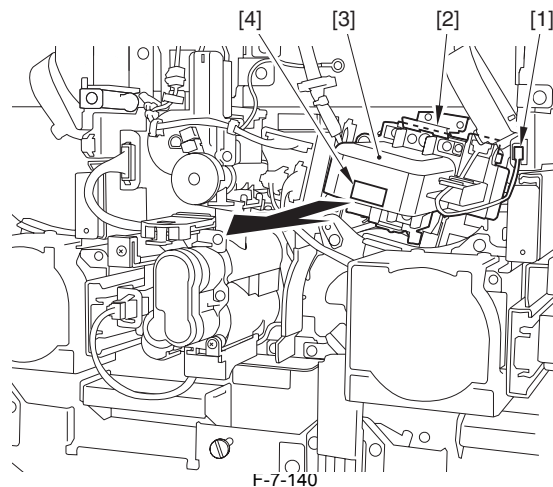
- When placing the primary charging assembly, make sure to place it with grid [1] face up.



Disconnect the connector [1] and free the sheet spring [2] to slide out the primary charging unit [3]. (The black unit is shown in the figure.)

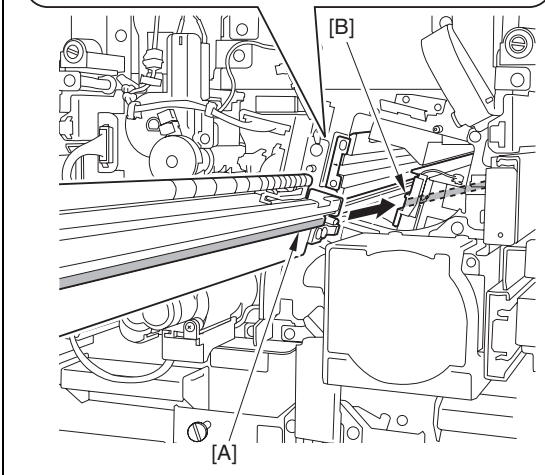
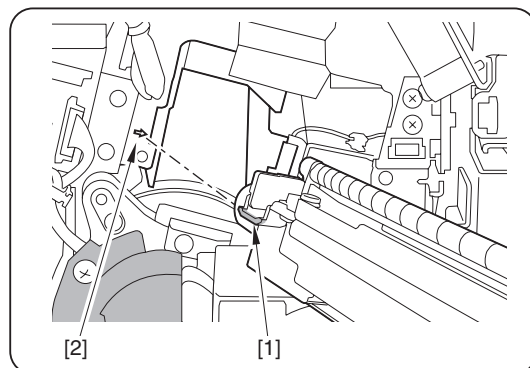
MEMO:

The color of the primary charging unit can be identified by label [4].

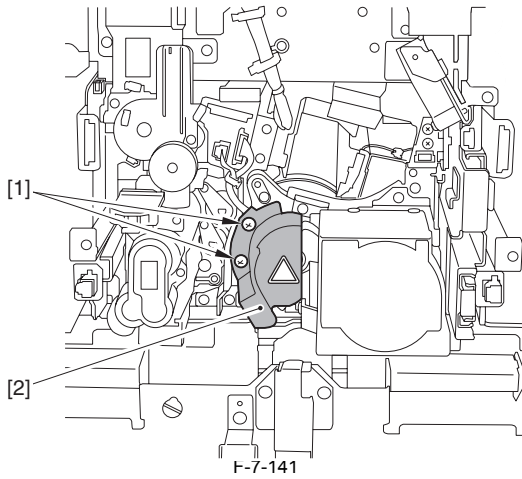


F-7-140

⚠ Points to Note When Attaching the Primary Charging Assembly
 Align the protrusion [1] of the primary charging assembly to the punched mark (arrow mark) [2] on the host machine and align the primary charging assembly [A] part to the rail [B] on the host machine to attach.

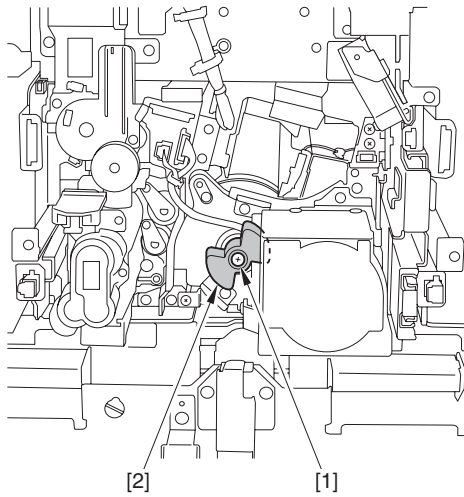


7) Remove the 2 screws [1] and detach the drum shaft knob cover [2].



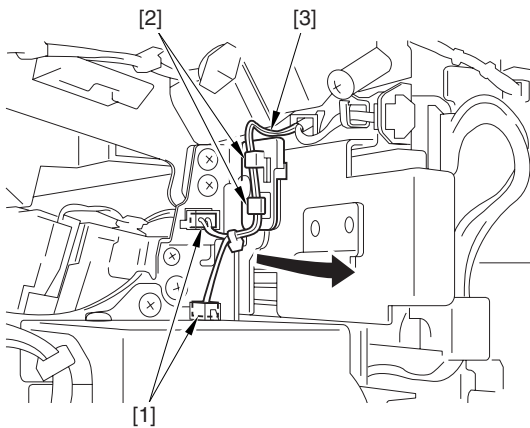
F-7-141

8) Remove the screw [1] and remove the drum shaft knob [2].



F-7-142

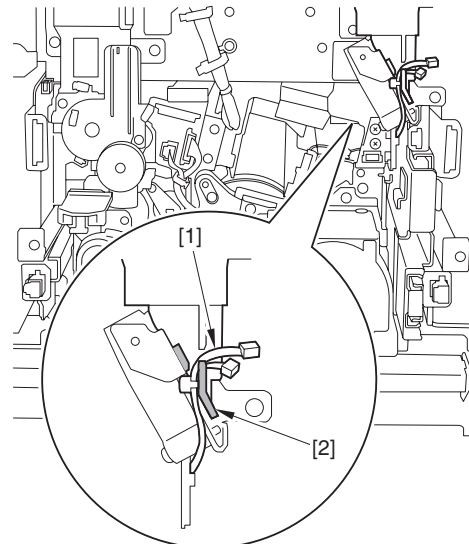
9) Disconnect the 2 connectors [1] and free the harness [3] from the harness guide [2].



F-7-143

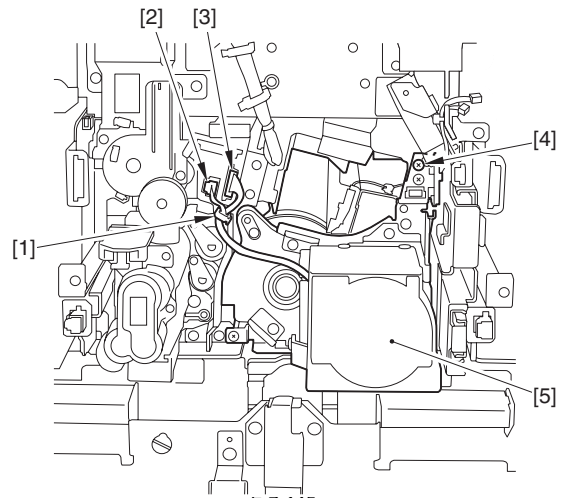
10) Hook the harness [1] freed from the harness guide on the guide [2].

! Make sure to hook the harness [1] on the guide [2] properly to prevent the harness get caught by the drum unit when pulling out the drum unit.



F-7-144

11) Remove the clamp [1], the connector [2] (with connector hook), the connector [3] and the screw [4] and then, remove the drum unit [5].



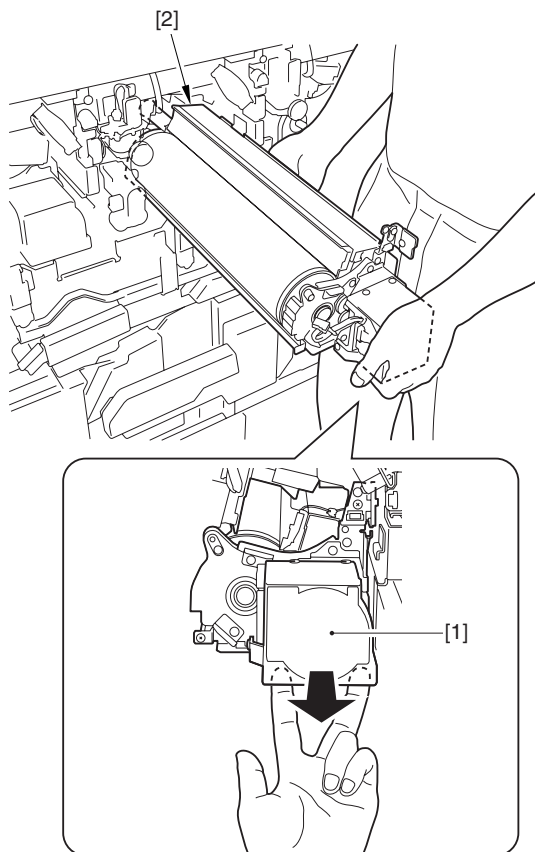
F-7-145

12) Spread a paper before placing the drum unit.

! Spread a paper under the unit/parts because the following procedure may stain a floor with toner.

13) While holding the drum unit grip [1] as shown in the figure, pull out the drum unit [2] slightly and with holding firmly with both hand, remove it.

! Make sure to pull out slowly to prevent the drum surface damage.

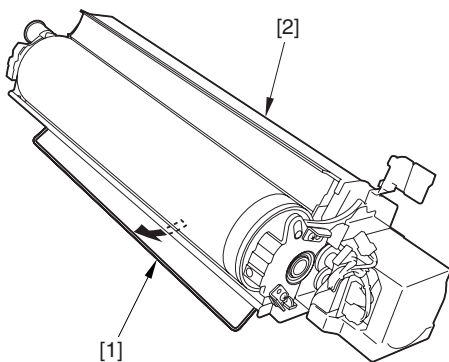


F-7-146

14) Make sure to check the following items before operation.

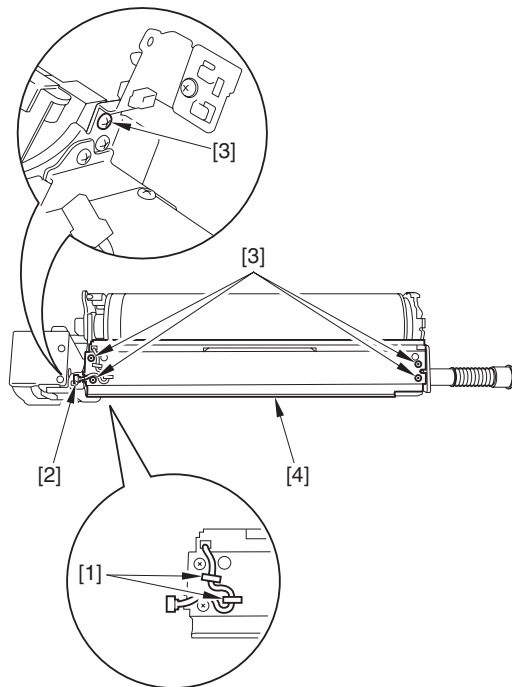
⚠ Points to Note When Handling the Photosensitive Drum
 - Photosensitive drum is used for the drum at the host machine. To prevent the photosensitive drum deterioration, note the following caution.
 - When removing the drum unit from the host machine and removing the photosensitive drum from the drum unit, cover the photosensitive drum by the light-blocking sheet (or paper) to prevent the photosensitive drum from exposed.
 - Do not place the drum unit and the photosensitive drum in direct sunlight.

Lift the drum kit leg [1] and place the drum kit [2].



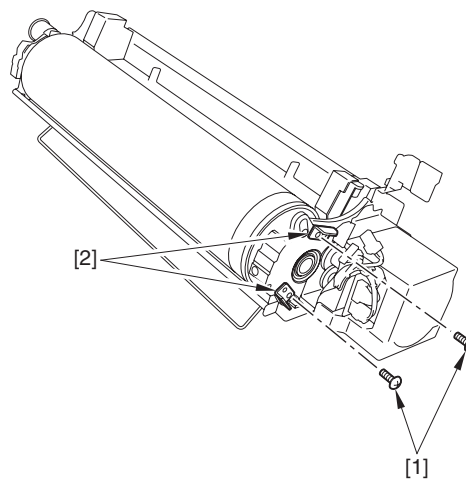
F-7-147

15) Free the harness from the 2 clamps [1]. Remove the connector [2] and 5 screws [3] then, remove the drum cleaner unit [4].



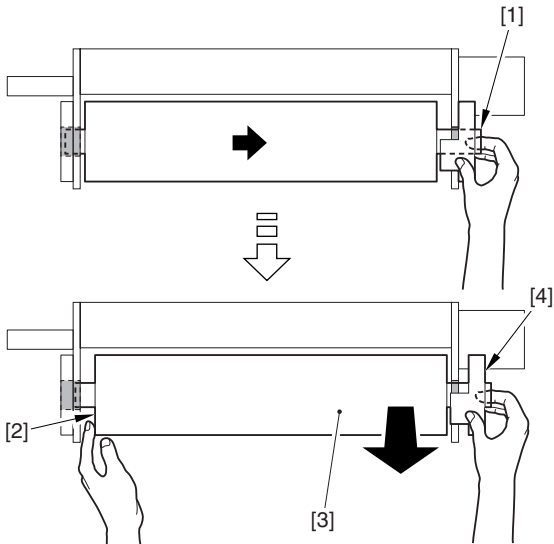
F-7-148

16) Remove the 2 screws [1] and remove the 2 fixing pins [2].



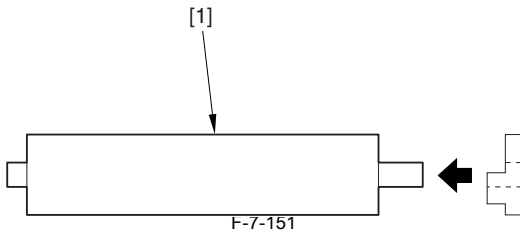
F-7-149

17) Put hands into the drum shaft hole [1] and pull out the drum. Hold the side of the drum [2] from the opening between the drum positioning plate (rear) and the drum, then remove the drum [3] and the drum positioning plate [4].



18) Remove the drum [1].

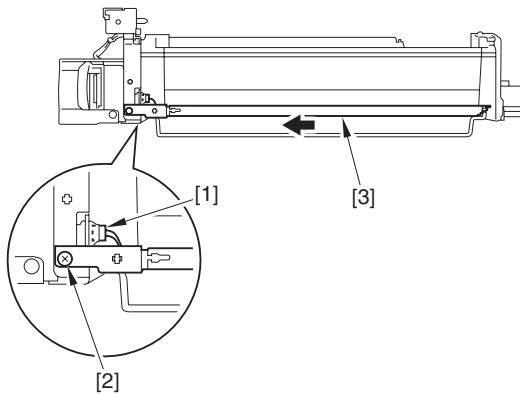
F-7-150



19) Remove the connector [1] and the screw [2], then slide the drum cleaner pre-exposure unit [3] in the direction of the arrow and remove.

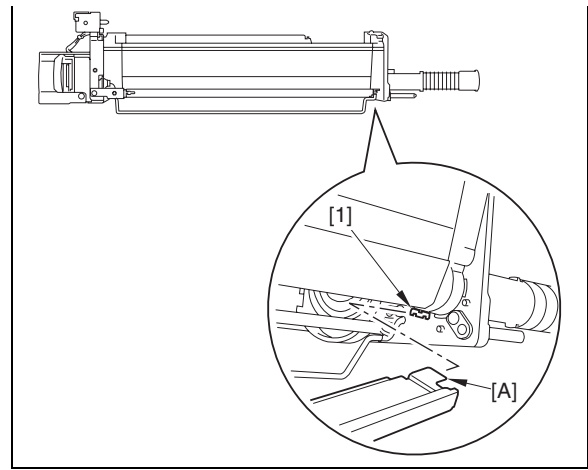
F-7-151

! Make sure to remove/attach the unit with the drum removed from the drum unit. If not, drum surface may get damaged.

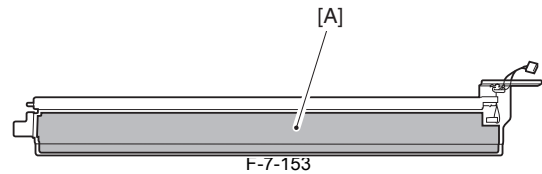


F-7-152

! **Points to Note When Attaching the Drum Cleaner Pre-exposure Unit**
Align the drum cleaner pre-exposure unit [A] part to the groove on the drum unit [1] and attach.



20) Clean the drum cleaner pre-exposure unit plate [A] part using lint-free paper moistened with alcohol.



F-7-153

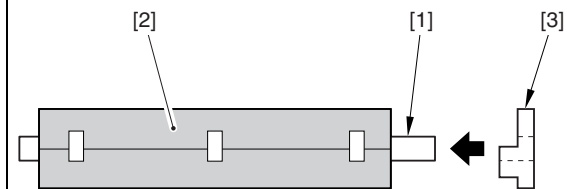
7.10.13.3 Points to Note When Attach the Drum

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

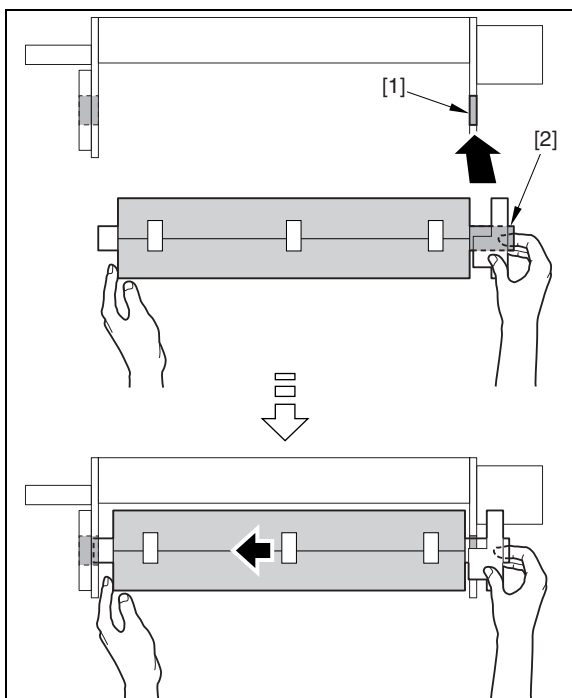
Attaching the Drum

1) Attach the drum positioning plate [3] to the drum [1] covered with the light-blocking sheet [2].

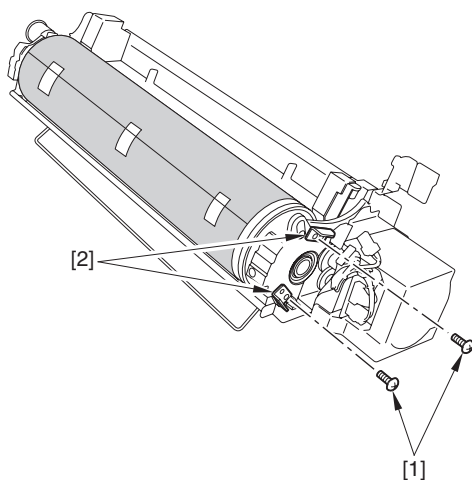
! When attaching the drum to the drum unit, make sure not to expose the drum.



2) Align the drum positioning plate (front) shaft [2] to the groove [1] on the drum unit, slide all the way in to attach.



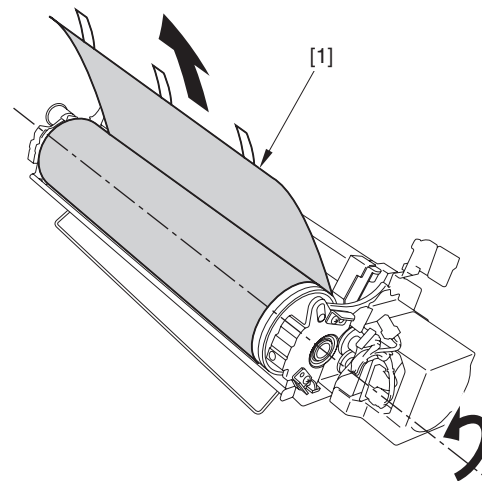
3) Fix the 2 fixing pins [2] with the 2 screws [1].



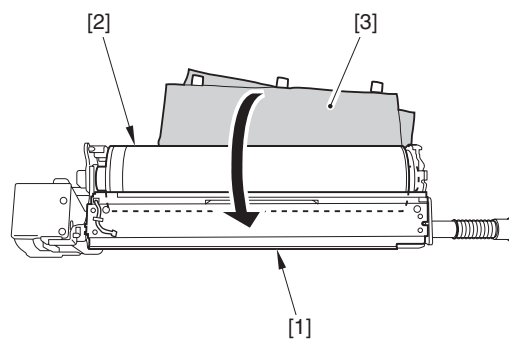
4) Pull the light-blocking sheet [1] in the direction shown in the figure and remove.



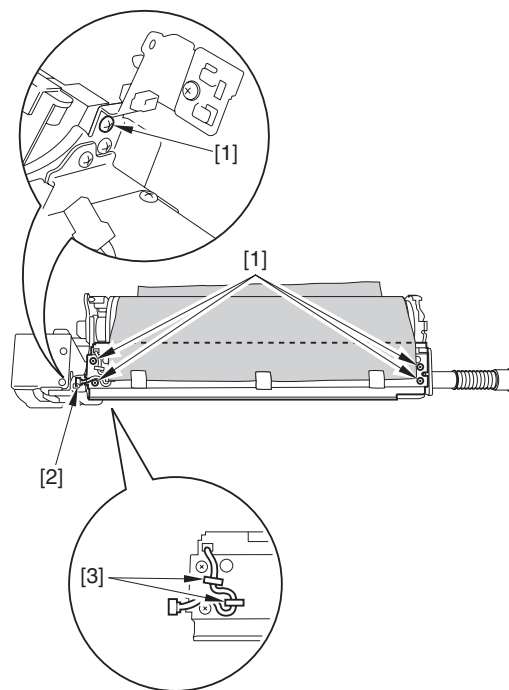
To prevent the sweeper sheet from turned over, pull the light-blocking sheet (paper) in the direction shown in the figure (counter clockwise).



5) Attach the drum cleaner unit [1] and immediately cover the drum [2] with the light-blocking sheet [3].



6) Tighten the 5 screws [1], and attach the connector [2] and then, secure the harness with the 2 clamps [3].



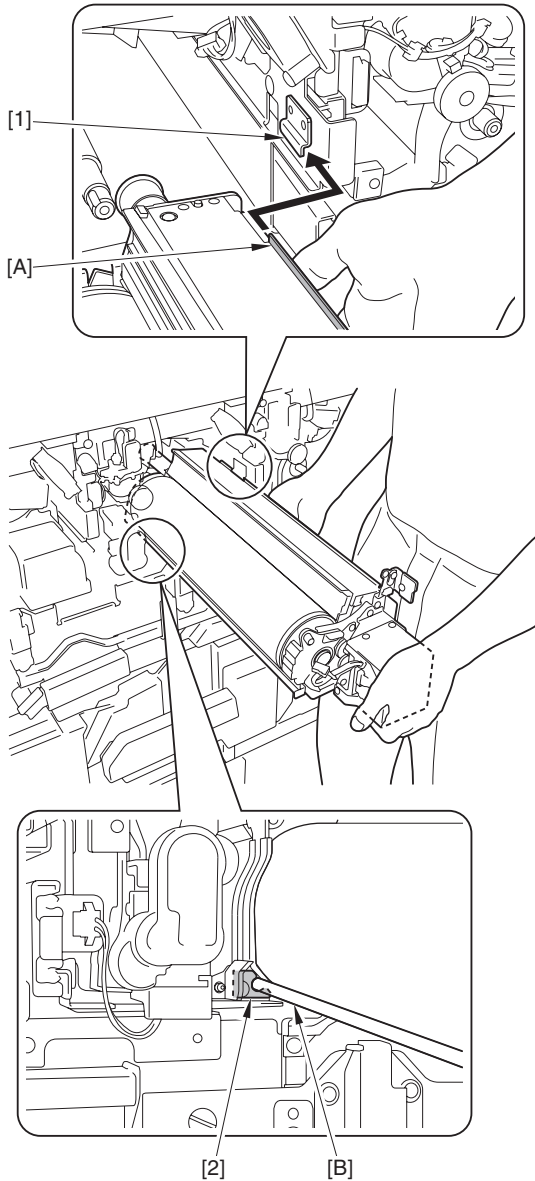
7.10.13.4 Points to Note When Attach the Drum Unit

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

Attaching the Drum Unit

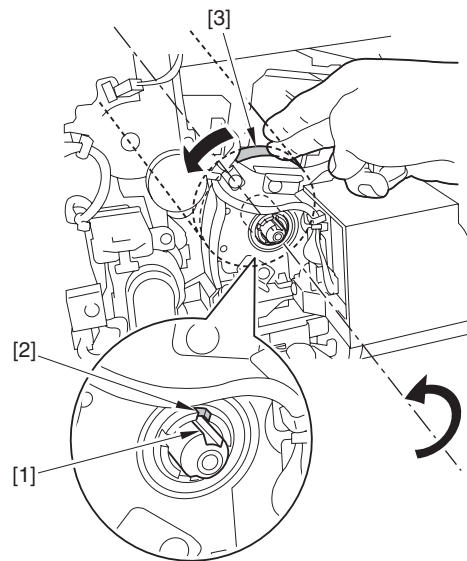
1) Align the drum unit [A], [B] part to groove [1], [2] respectively.

⚠ Make sure to attach with paying attention to the bottom part of the drum unit to prevent the drum surface damage.



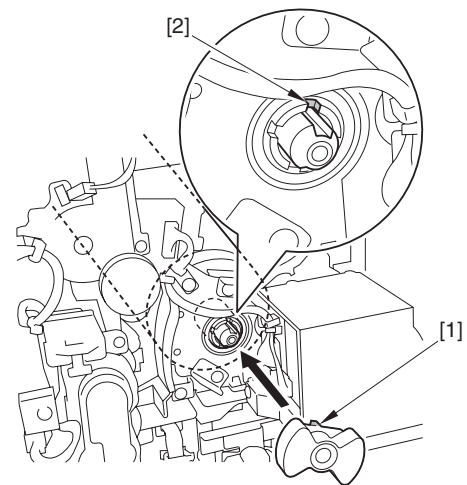
2) Check to see the position of the groove [1] on the drum shaft and the groove [2] on the drum flange are aligned. If not, turn the side part of the drum flange [3] counter clockwise and align the position of the groove [1] on the drum shaft and the groove [2] on the drum flange.

⚠ To prevent the sweeper sheet from turned over, make sure to turn the drum in the direction shown in the figure (counter clockwise).



3) Align the protrusion [1] on the drum shaft knob and the groove [2] on the drum flange.

⚠ When tightening the screw, hold the drum shaft knob to prevent it from rotating clockwise and tighten the screw.



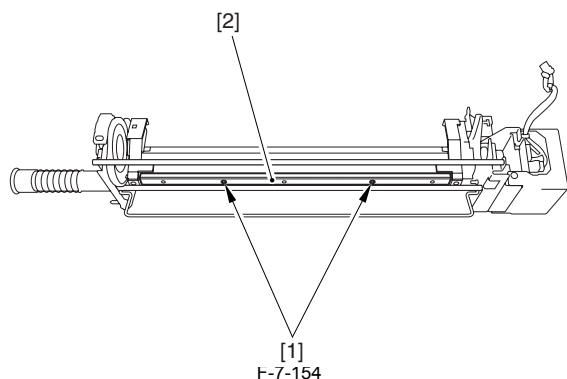
7.10.14 Scoop-Up Sheet

7.10.14.1 Removing Scoop-up Sheet/Side Seal

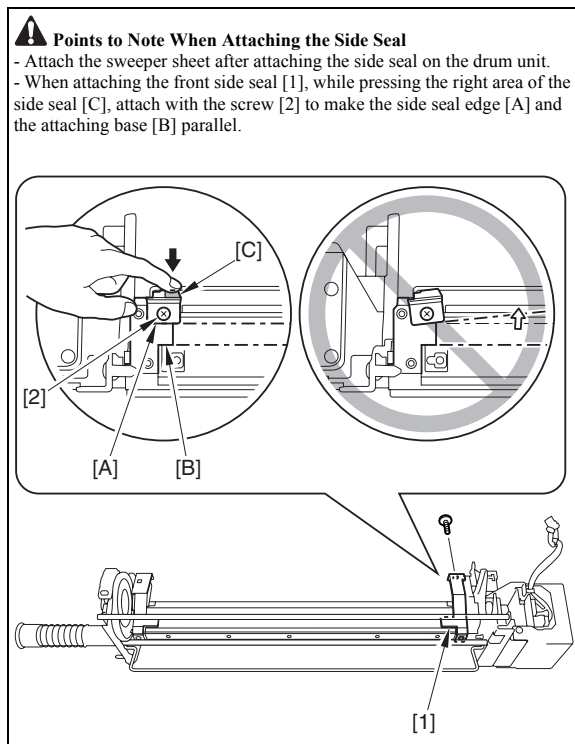
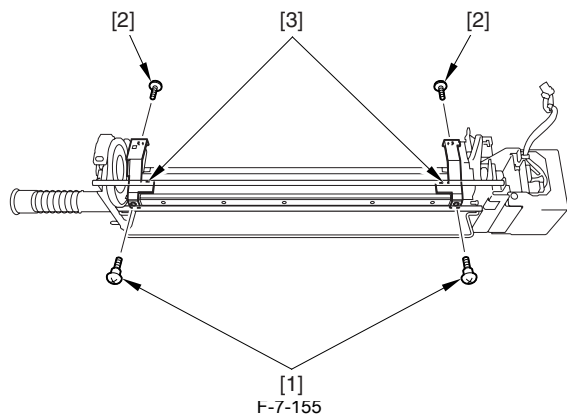
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- 1) Remove the drum unit. (Refer to Removing drum unit procedure)
- 2) Remove the drum cleaning unit. (Refer to Removing drum cleaning unit procedure)
- 3) Remove the drum from the drum unit. (Refer to Removing drum unit procedure)
- 4) Remove the drum cleaner pre-exposure unit. (Refer to Removing drum cleaner pre-exposure unit procedure)
- 5) Remove the 2 screws [1] and remove the sweeper sheet [2].

⚠ Points to note when attaching the sweeper sheet
Attach the sweeper sheet after attaching the side seal on the drum unit.



- 6) Remove the 2 stepped screws [1], the 2 screws [2] and remove the 2 side seals [3].



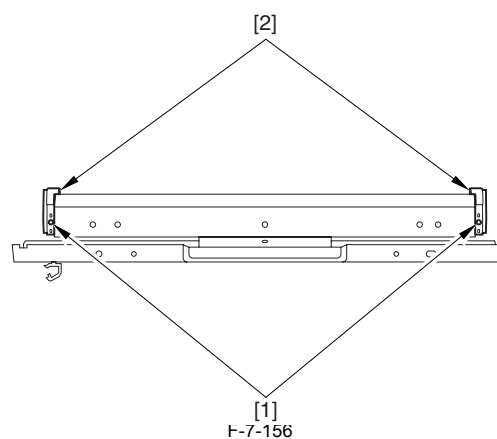
7.10.15 End Seal

7.10.15.1 Removing End Seal

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- 1) Remove the drum unit. (Refer to Removing drum unit procedure)
- 2) Remove the drum cleaning unit. (Refer to Removing drum cleaning unit procedure)
- 3) Remove the drum cleaner pre-exposure unit. (Refer to Removing drum cleaner pre-exposure unit procedure)

- 4) Remove the 2 screws [1] to remove the 2 end seals [2].

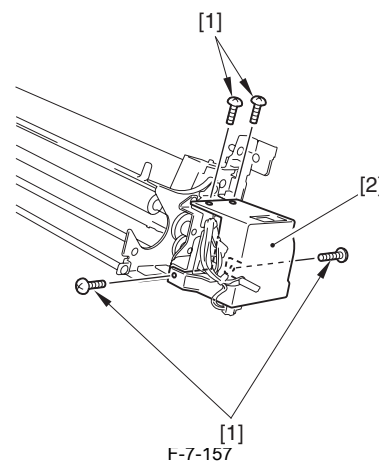


7.10.16 Drum Cleaning Brush Roller

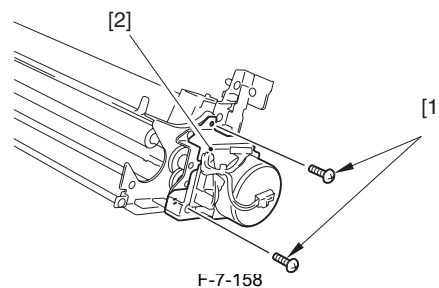
7.10.16.1 Removing Drum Cleaning Brush Roller

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

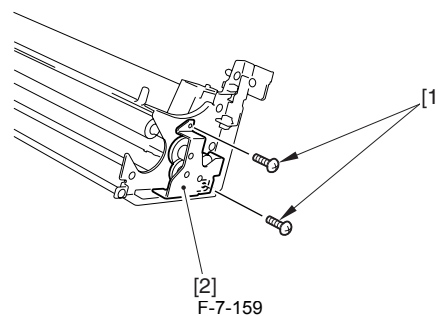
- 1) Remove the drum unit (Refer to Drum removing procedure)
- 2) Remove the sweeper sheet and side seal (Refer to sweeper sheet/side seal removing procedure)
- 3) Remove the 4 screws [1] and detach the motor cover [2].



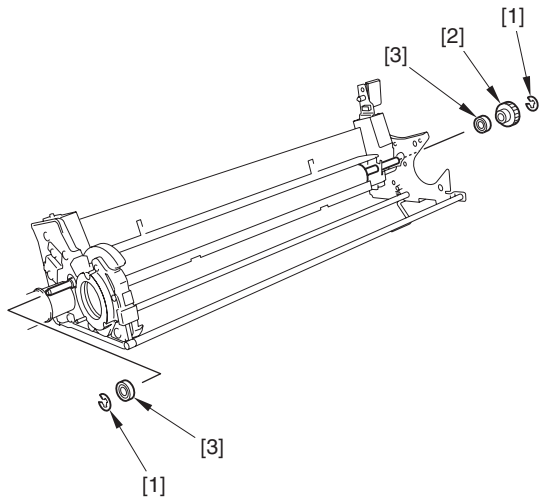
- 4) Remove the 2 screws [1] and remove the drum cleaner motor unit [2].



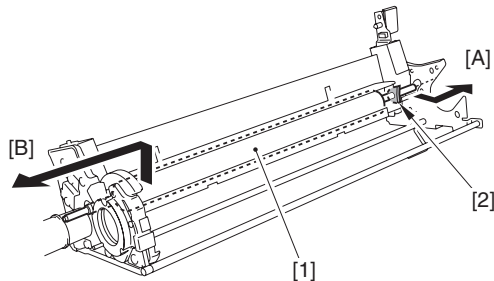
- 5) Remove the 2 screws [1] and remove the gear unit [2].



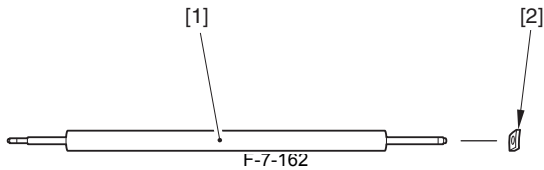
6) Remove the 2 E-rings [1], the gear [2] and 2 bushings [3].



7) Move the drum cleaner brush roller [1] together with the felt label [2] in the [A] direction and remove the roller in the [B] direction.



8) Remove the felt label [2] from the drum cleaner brush roller [1].

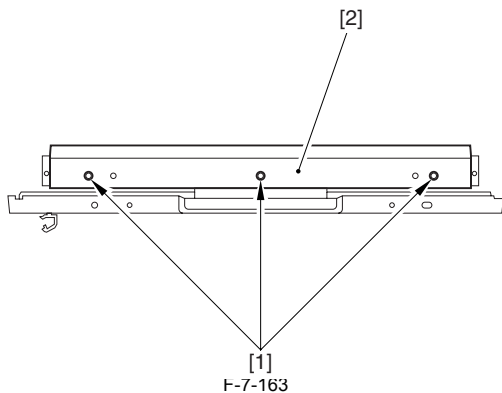


7.10.17 Photosensitive Drum Cleaning Blade

7.10.17.1 Removing Drum Cleaning Blade

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- 1) Remove the drum unit (Refer to drum unit removing procedure)
- 2) Remove the drum cleaning unit (Refer to drum cleaning unit removing procedure)
- 3) Remove the pre-exposure lamp unit.
- 4) Remove the end seal.
- 5) Remove the 3 screws [1] and remove the drum cleaning blade [2].

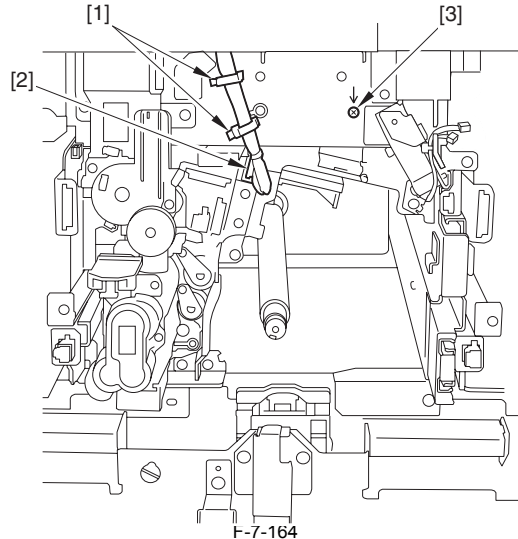


7.10.18 Drum Patch Sensor Cleaning Motor

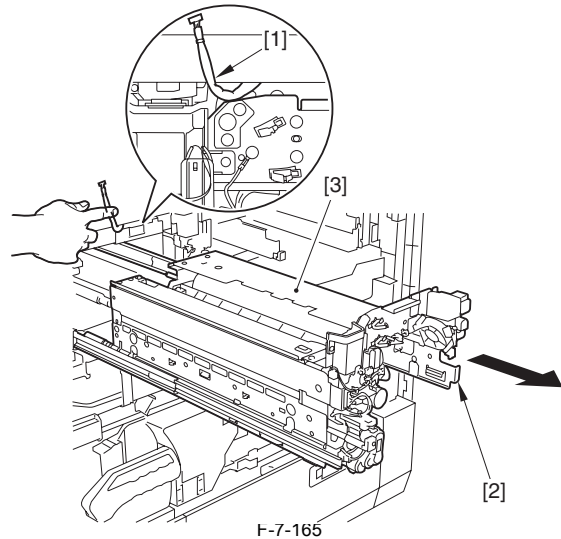
7.10.18.1 Removing Patch Sensor Shutter Cleaning Motor

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

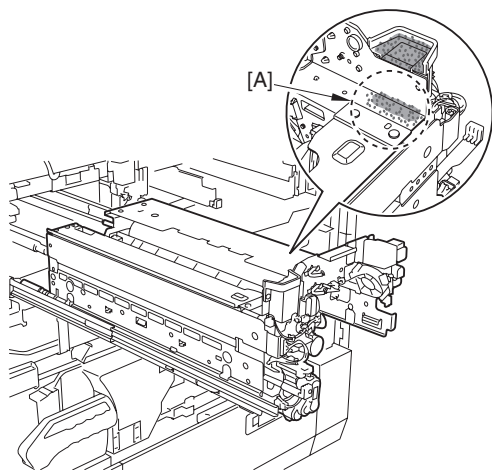
- 1) Remove the primary charging assembly. (Refer to 'Removing Primary Charging Assembly')
- 2) Remove the drum. (Refer to 'Removing Drum')
- 3) Free the 2 clamps [1], disconnect the 1 connector [2] and remove the 1 screw [3].



4) While keeping the harness [1] and holding the grip [2], pull out fully the process kit [3].



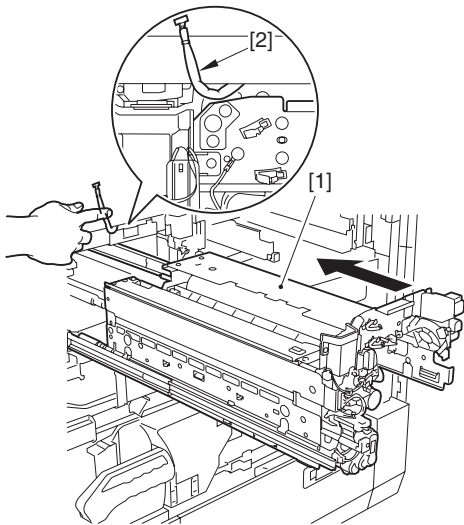
5) When pulling out the process kit, check to see that there is no toner spattering around the [A] area. If there is toner around the [A] area, remove it with a lint-free paper.



F-7-166

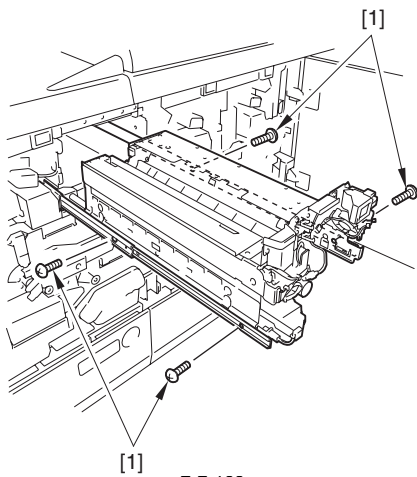
⚠ Points to Note When Fitting the Process Unit

When fitting the process unit [1], be sure to hold the harness [2] to keep it from being caught.



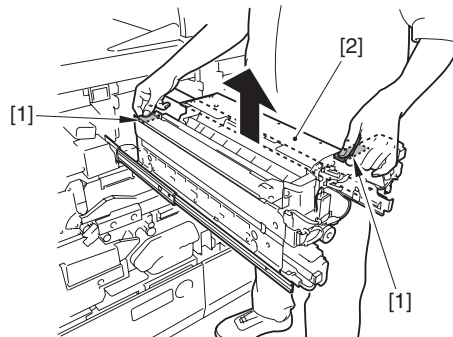
F-7-167

6) Remove the 4 screws [1].



F-7-168

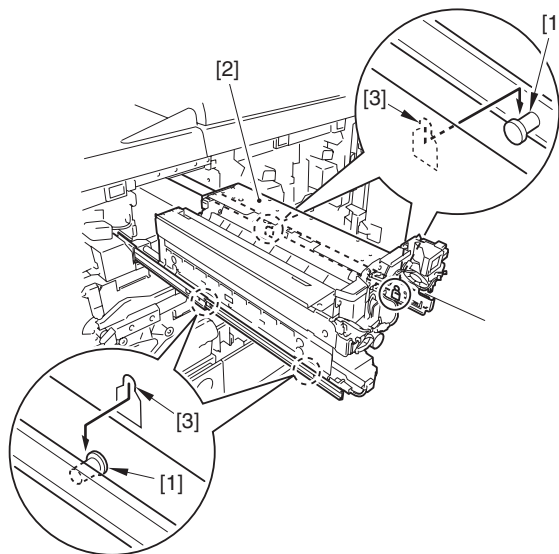
7) While holding the grip [1] with both hands, remove the process unit [2].



F-7-169

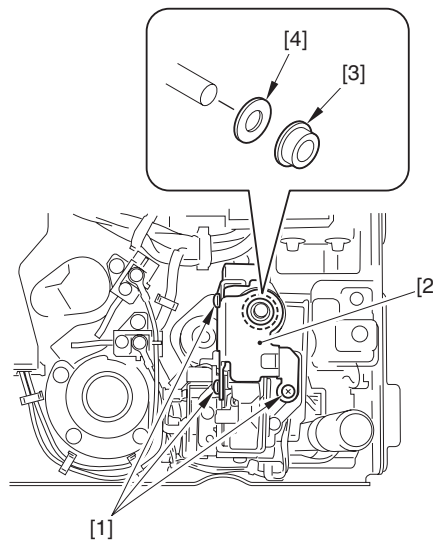
⚠ Points to note when mounting

Make sure that insert the 4 pins [1] on the rail properly into the each grooves [3] on the process unit [2].



F-7-170

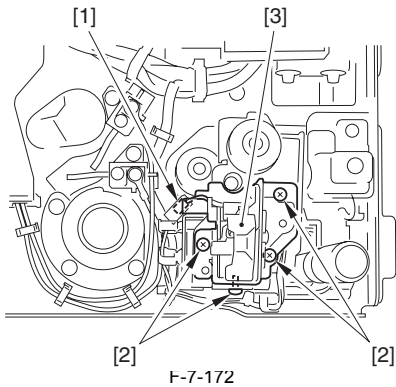
8) Remove the 3 screws [1] and then, remove the motor unit fixing member [2], the bushing [3] and the washer [4].



F-7-171

9) Remove the motor unit [3].

- 1 connector [1]
- 4 screws [2]

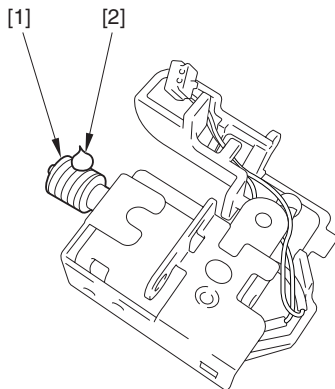


F-7-172

Go to the step 10) when only replacing the motor.

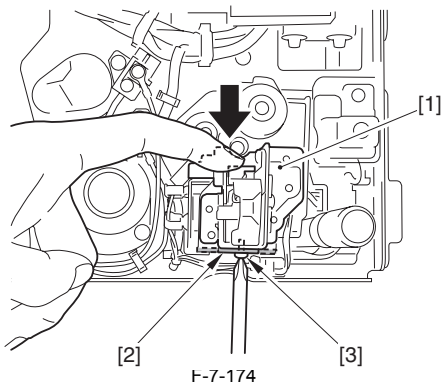
⚠ Points to note when mounting

- Apply the proper amount grease [2] to the new motor gear [1].



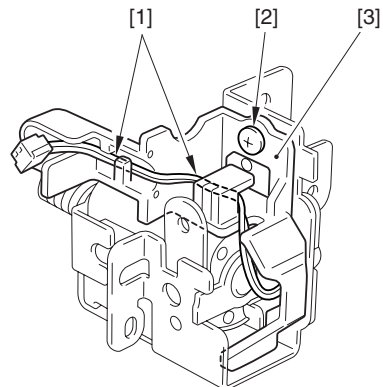
F-7-173

- Make sure to keep the motor unit [1] touched with the process unit plate [2] as a vertical position when mounting the motor unit with the screw [3].



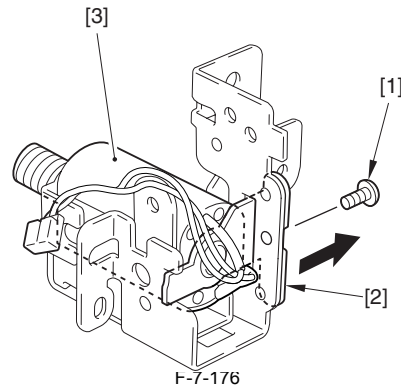
F-7-174

- 10) Remove the harness guide [3].
- 1 harness [1]
 - 1 screw [2]



F-7-175

- 11) Remove the screw [1] and then, remove the motor fixing member [2] and the motor [3].



F-7-176

7.10.19 Hopper Assembly

7.10.19.1 Removing Hopper Unit

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

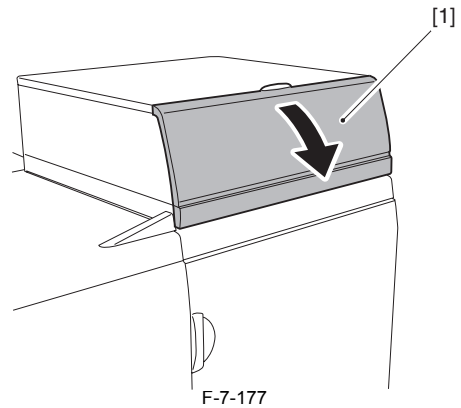


There is no interchangeability of hopper units between imagePRESS C6000 and the other models (you cannot install the hopper unit for imagePRESS C6000 to other models, and vice versa).

MEMO:

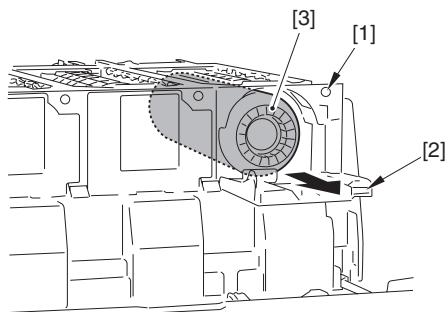
Here shows the procedure of Bk hopper unit as an example of removing a hopper unit.

- 1) Open the toner replacement outer cover [1] while the power is turned ON.



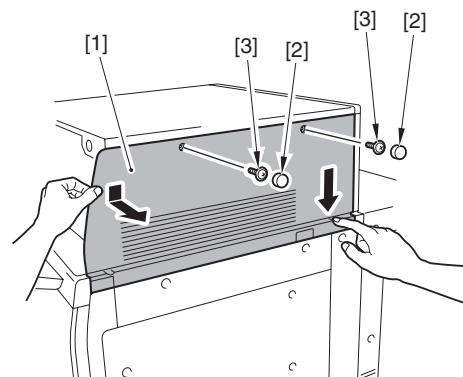
F-7-177

- 2) Push the toner replacement button [1].
Toner container cover [2] is open and the toner container [3] is coming out from the rear to the front.



F-7-178

- 3) Remove the toner container [3].
- 4) Turn OFF the power.
- 5) Detach the toner replacement inner cover [1].
 - 2 screws [2]



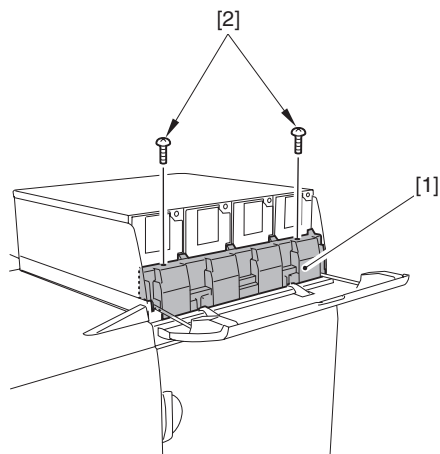
F-7-182

MEMO:

(a) In case of removing Y-hopper unit, additionally detach the following covers:

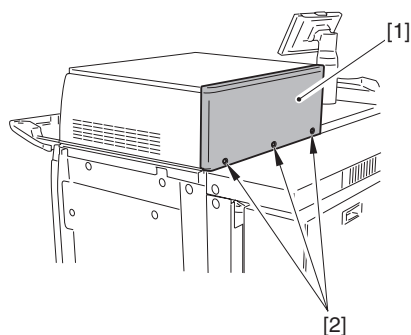
- Main station upper rear cover
- Main station upper middle cover
- Hopper left cover

(b) In case of removing M/C-hopper unit, go to the next step.



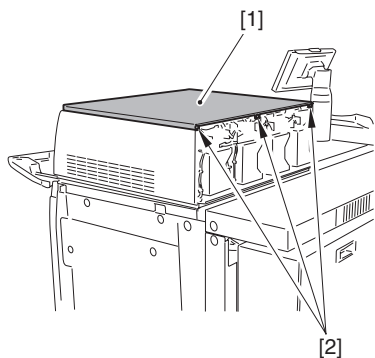
F-7-179

- 6) Detach the toner replacement rear cover [1].
 - 3 screws [2]



F-7-180

- 7) Detach the toner replacement upper cover [1].
 - 3 screws [2]

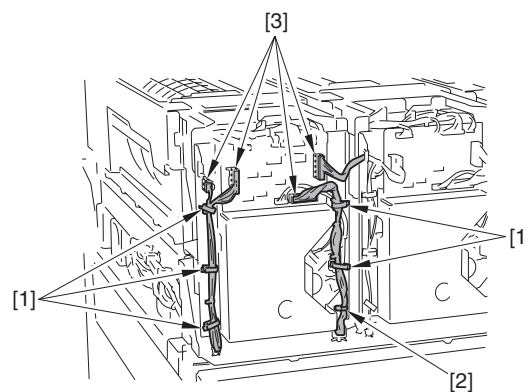


F-7-181

- 8) In case of removing Bk-hopper unit, detach the toner replacement right cover [1].
 - 2 blanking rubbers [2]
 - 2 screws [3]

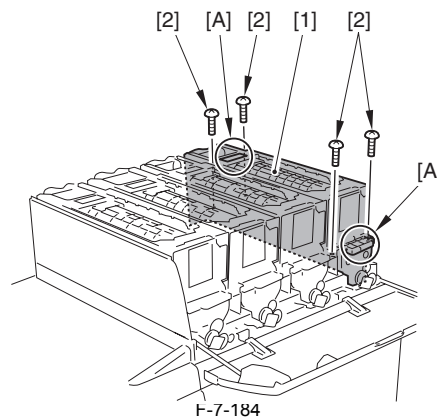
- 9) Remove/disconnect the following parts found at the back of the hopper unit.

- 5 clamps [1]
- 1 reuse band [2]
- 4 connectors [3]



F-7-183

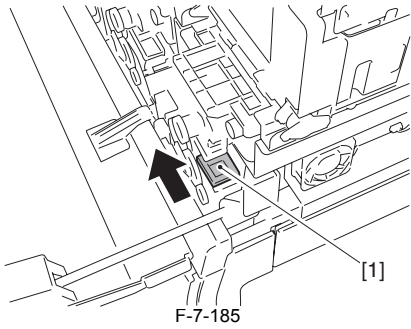
- 10) Hold [A] area to remove the hopper unit.
 - 4 screws [2]



F-7-184

▲ Points to Note When Attaching Hopper Unit

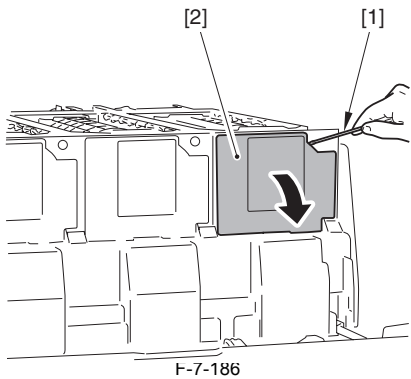
Be sure to attach the hopper unit with the shutter [1] shifted in the direction of the arrow with your finger (with the shutter is open). If the hopper is attached with the shutter closed, toner is clogged at the hopper unit.



Procedure to Manually Remove Toner Container :

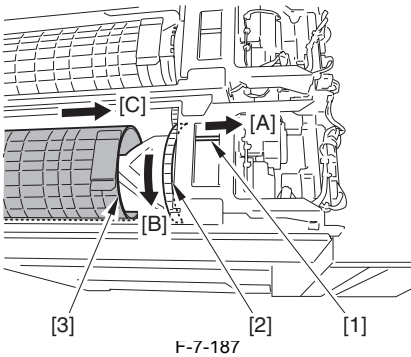
- 1) Insert a precision screwdriver [1] into the position shown in the figure below to open the toner container cover [2].

MEMO:
The cover is secured to the inner plate with magnet.

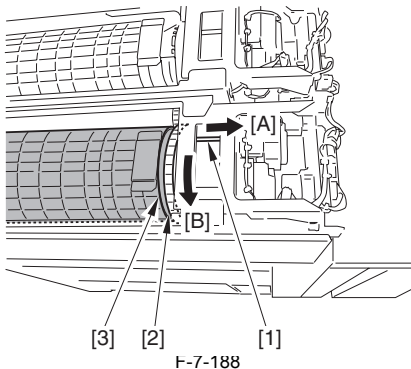


MEMO:
The following steps are explained with the top view of the hopper assembly.

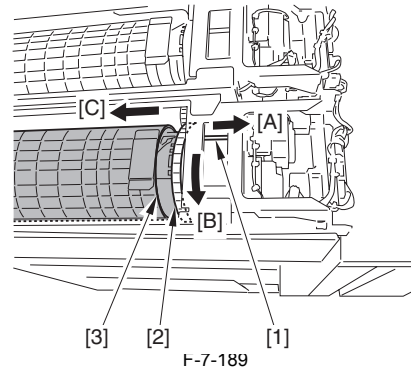
- 2) Turn the gear [2] in the direction of the arrow [B] while shifting the shaft [1] in the direction of the arrow [A] with your hand so that the edge [3] of the toner container rotates and moves in the direction of the arrow [C].



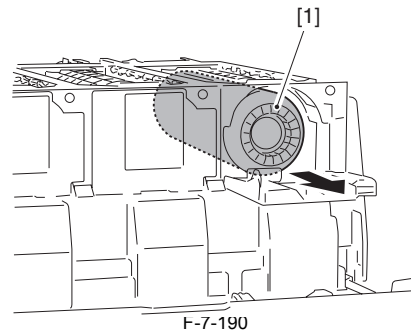
- 3) Keep turning the gear [2] in the direction of the arrow [B]. The edge [3] of the toner container comes closer to the gear [2].



- 4) Even if the edge comes to its maximum closest position, keep turning the gear [2] in the direction of the arrow [B]. so that the toner container moves in the opposite direction [C].

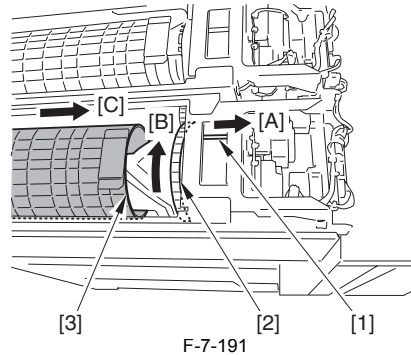


- 5) Keep turning the gear until the toner container stops moving.
- 6) Remove the toner container [1] in the direction of the arrow.

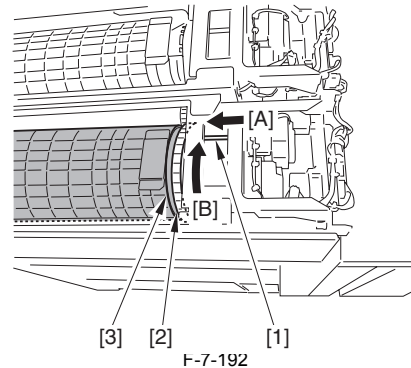


Procedure to Manually Attach Toner Container :

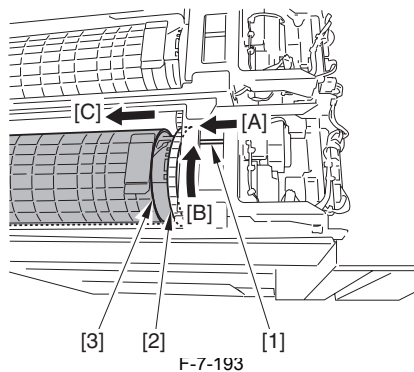
- 1) After the toner container is attached, turn the gear [2] while shifting the shaft [1] in the direction of the arrow [A] so that the edge [3] of the toner container rotates and moves in the direction of the arrow [C].



- 2) Keep turning the gear [2] in the direction of the arrow [B]. The edge [3] of the toner container comes closer to the gear [2].



- 3) Even if the edge comes to its maximum closest position, keep turning the gear [2] in the direction of the arrow [B] while attaching the shaft [1] in the direction of the arrow [A]. Keep turning the gear [2] until it stops its move.



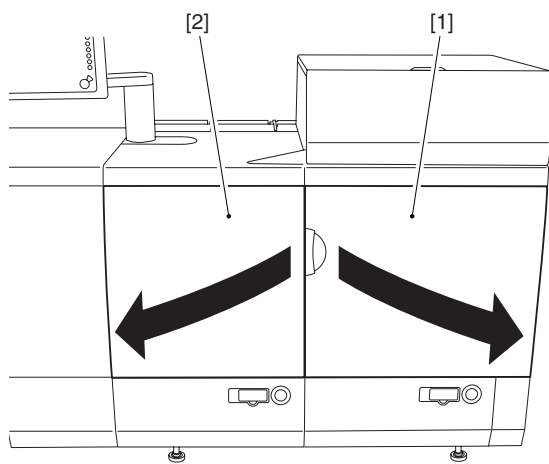
F-7-193

7.10.20 Sub Hopper Motor

7.10.20.1 Removing Sub Hopper Stirring Motor

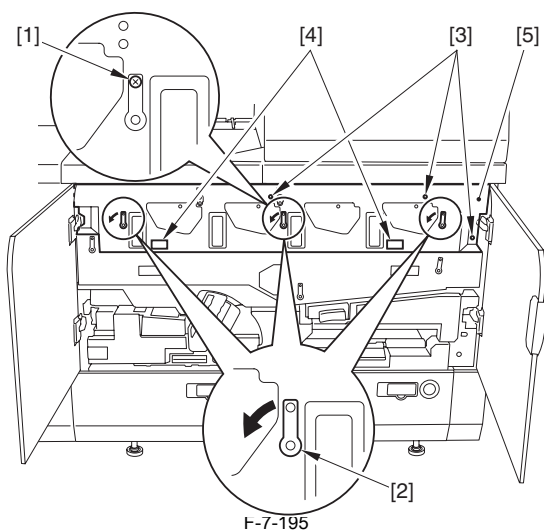
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- 1) Open the right front cover [1] and the left front cover [2] of the main station all the way until they stop.

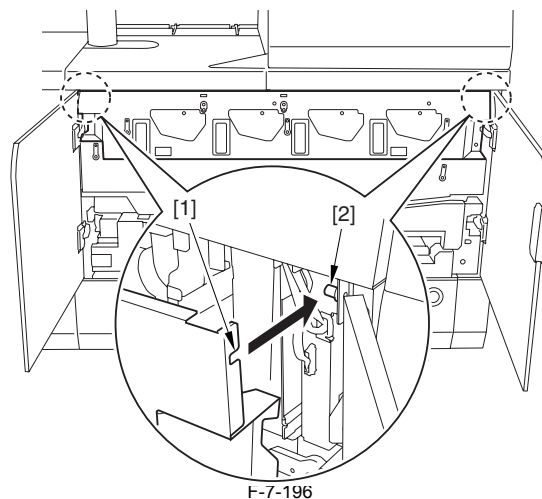


F-7-194

- 2) Remove the stepped screw [1] and then push the 3 levers [2] to the direction of the arrow. Remove the 3 screws [3] and remove the processing kit inner cover [5] by holding it by the grips [4].

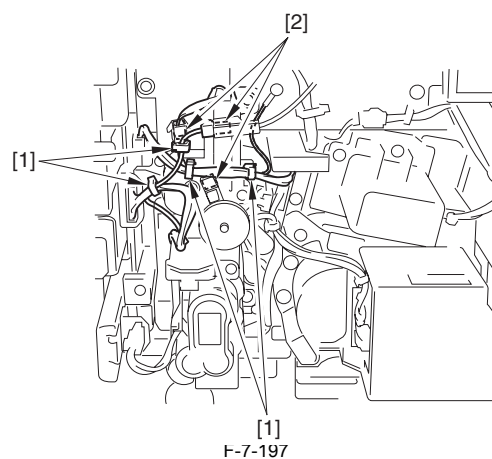


F-7-195



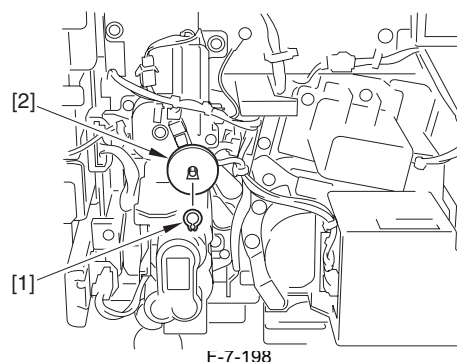
F-7-196

- 3) Remove the 4 clamps [1] and the 3 connectors [2].



F-7-197

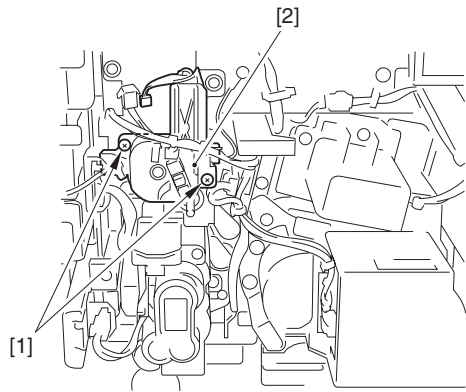
- 4) Remove the ring [1] with a grip ring and remove the toner supply sensor flag [2].



F-7-198

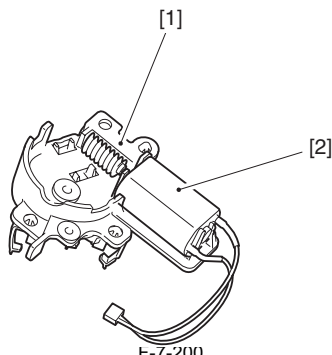
- 5) Remove the 2 screws [1] and remove the sub hopper stirring motor unit [2].

⚠ When Attaching the Processing Kit Inner Cover
Attach the processing kit inner cover by fitting the cut-offs [1] at its both ends to the pins [2] of the host machine.



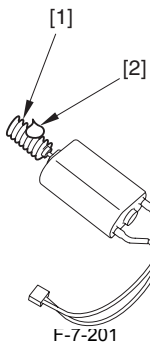
F-7-199

6) Remove the sub hopper stirring motor [2] from the motor cover [1].



F-7-200

⚠ Points to note when mounting
Make sure that apply the moderate amount grease [2] to the new motor gear [1].



F-7-201

7.10.21 Developing Assembly

7.10.21.1 Point to Note When Removing Developing Assembly

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

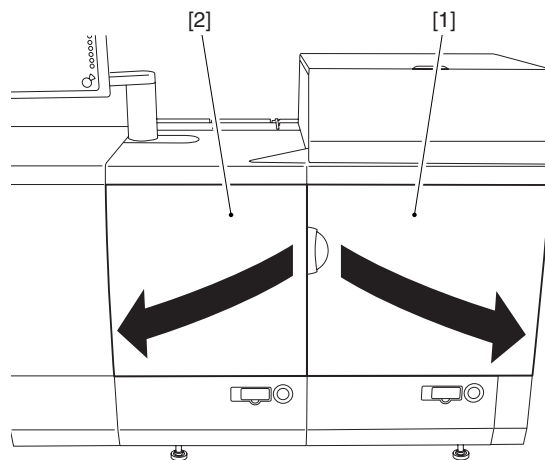
⚠ Point to Note When Removing Developing Assembly
Steps to remove the Y/M developing assembly are different from those for the C/Bk developing assembly.
Difference: with or without the relay harness (Y/M developing assembly: w/ o harness; C/Bk developing assembly: w/ harness)
Also note that steps to disconnect the relay harness for C/Bk developing assembly (w/ the relay harness) are different in replacement or cleaning.
Difference: Connector/relay harness to be disconnected
Reason: To fulfill the relay connector life

7.10.21.2 Removing Y/M Developing Assembly

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

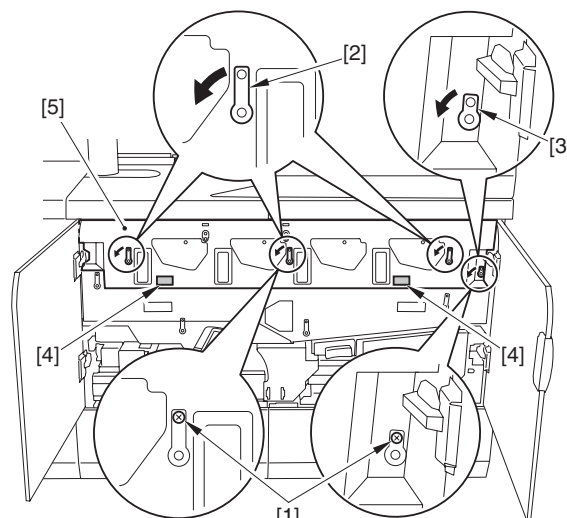
1) Open fully the front right cover [1], and then the front left cover [2] of

main station.



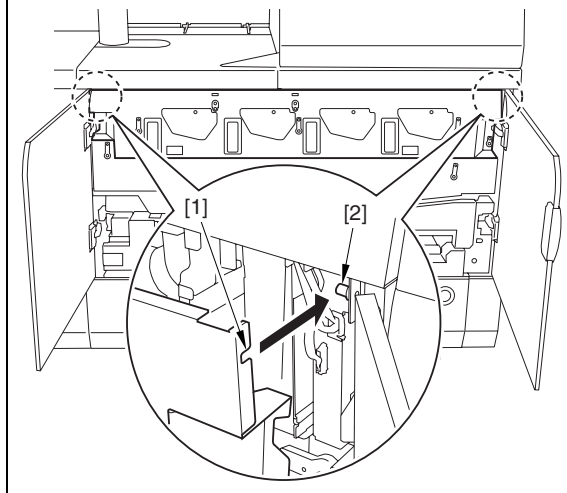
F-7-202

2) Remove the 2 stepped screws [1], shift the 3 levers [2] and the lever (small) [3] in the direction of the arrow in order. While holding the grip [4], detach the process unit cover [5].



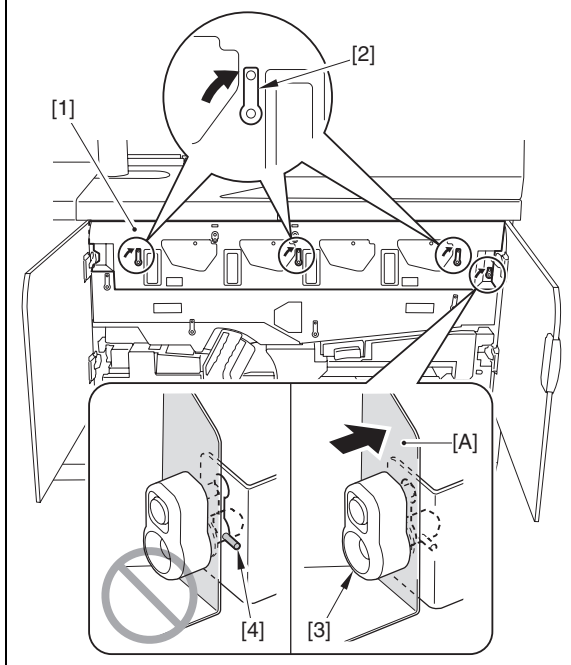
F-7-203

⚠ Points to Note When Attaching the Process Unit Cover
Align the cut-off [1] at the both ends of the process unit cover to the pin [2] at the host machine.

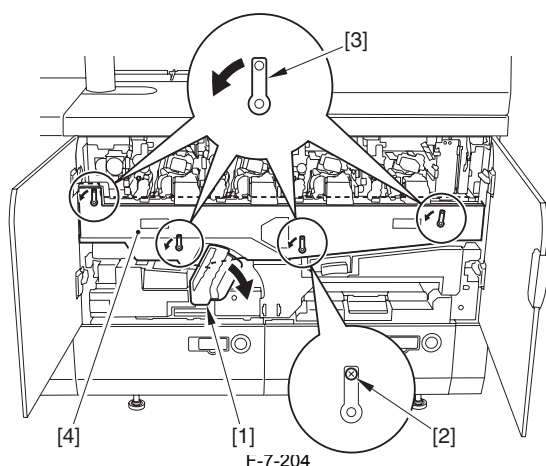




After shifting the 3 levers [2] of the process unit cover [1] as indicated, shift the lever (small) [3] as indicated while pushing the [A] area toward the rear. If shifting the lever (small) [3] while the cover [1] does not fit to the machine, the pin [4] is not set correctly, causing an error.



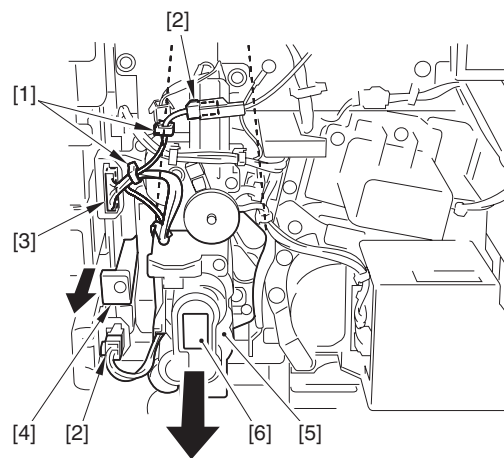
- 3) Tilt the lever (B-E1) [1] in the direction of the arrow. Remove the stepped screw [2], shift the 4 levers [3] in the direction of the arrow and then, detach the ITB unit cover [4].



- 4) Free the 2 clamps [1] and disconnect the 2 connectors (with connector hook) [2] and the connector [3] for the developing assembly of the appropriate color, pull the pressure release lever [4] until it locks and detach the developing assembly [5] forward. (The subsequent figure shows the case of Magenta)

MEMO:

The color of the developing assembly is identified by the color of the label [6].

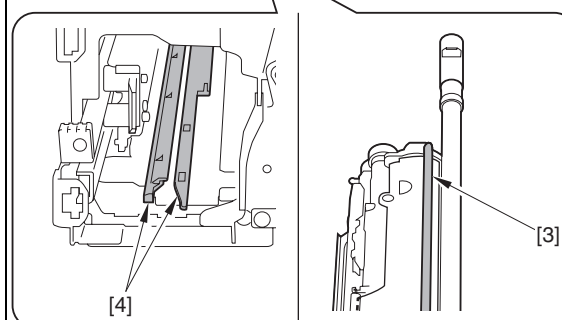
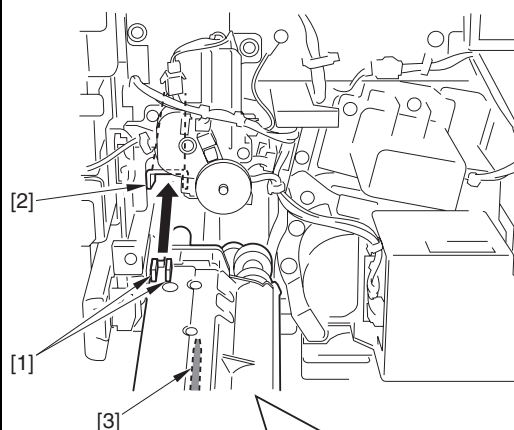


F-7-205

Attaching Developing Assembly

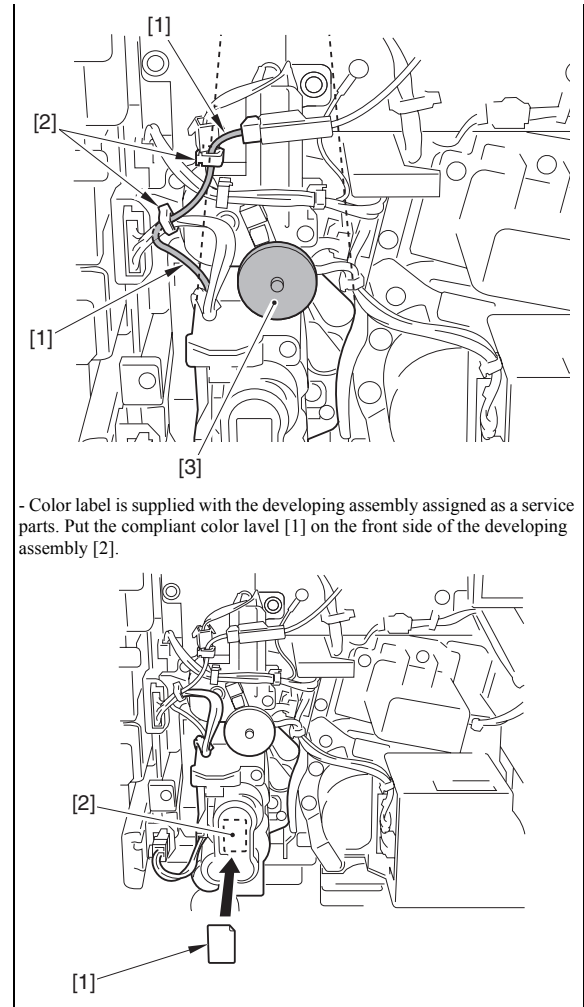
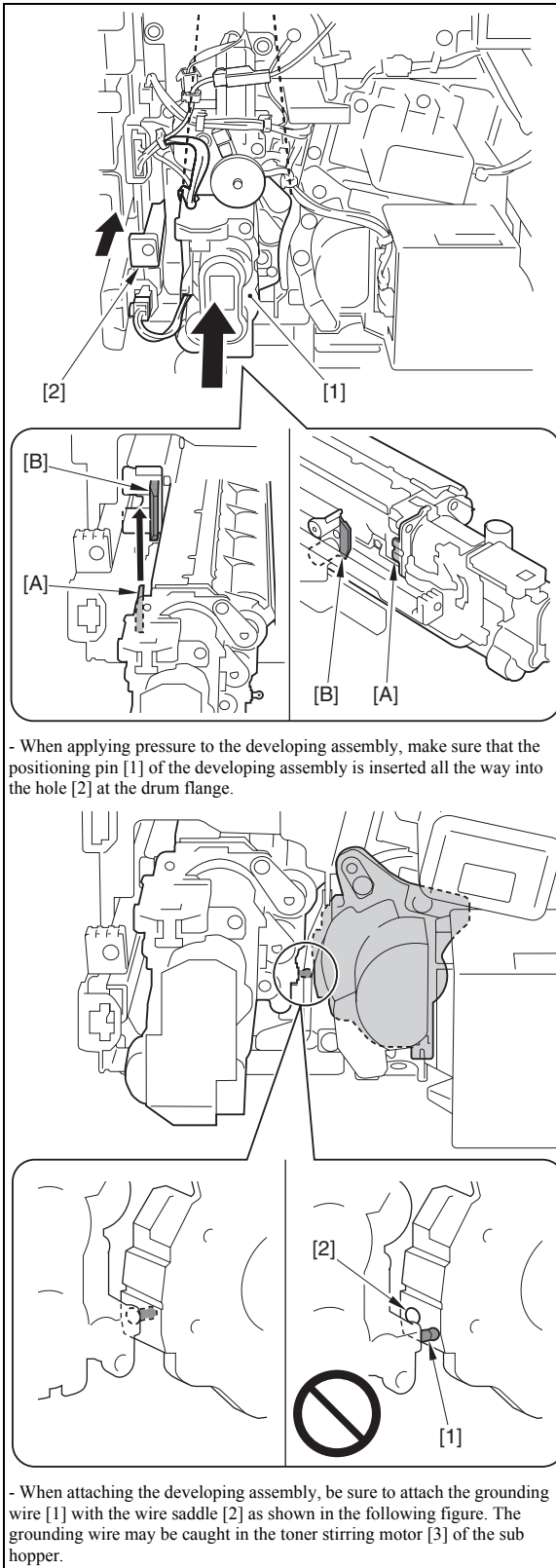
When sliding the developing assembly inside, be sure to fit the protrusions [1] on the upper side of the developing assembly into the rail [2] at the host machine side, and fit the protrusion [3] on the lower side of the assembly into the rail [4] at the host machine side.

(By fitting the protrusions [1] into the rail [2] and sliding the assembly evenly inside, the protrusion [3] and the rail [4] fit each other by themselves.)



- When inserting the developing assembly [1], make sure to insert the protrusion [A] of the developing assembly front cover into the left side of the protrusion [B] of the developing pressure unit. (It is easier to insert with pushing it slightly to the left side.)

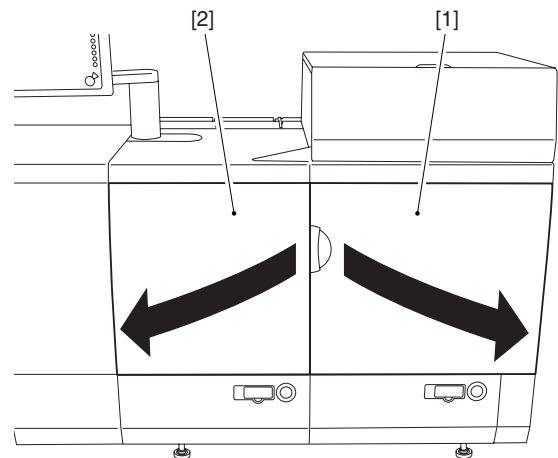
If the position of the developing assembly and the developing pressure unit is not correct, it disturbs the application of pressure under overload. In that case, pull out the developing assembly and start over again from insertion. Never attempt to apply the pressure to the developing assembly forcibly to prevent the developing assembly or the developing pressure unit from breaking.



7.10.21.3 Removing C/Bk Developing Assembly (for replacement)

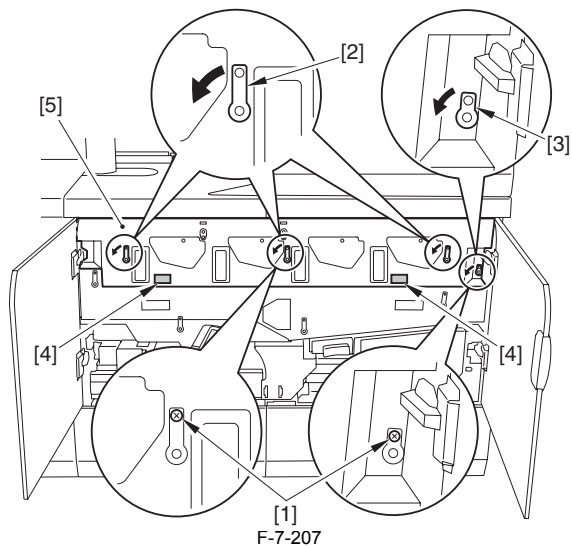
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- 1) Open fully the front right cover [1], and then the front left cover [2] of main station.



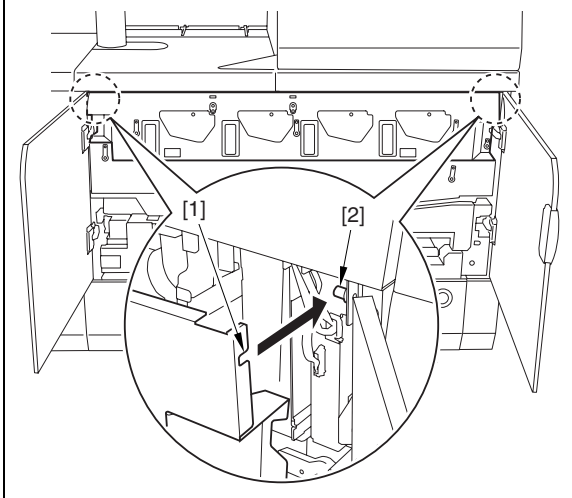
F-7-206

- 2) Remove the 2 stepped screws [1], shift the 3 levers [2] and the lever (small) [3] in the direction of the arrow in order. While holding the grip [4], detach the process unit cover [5].

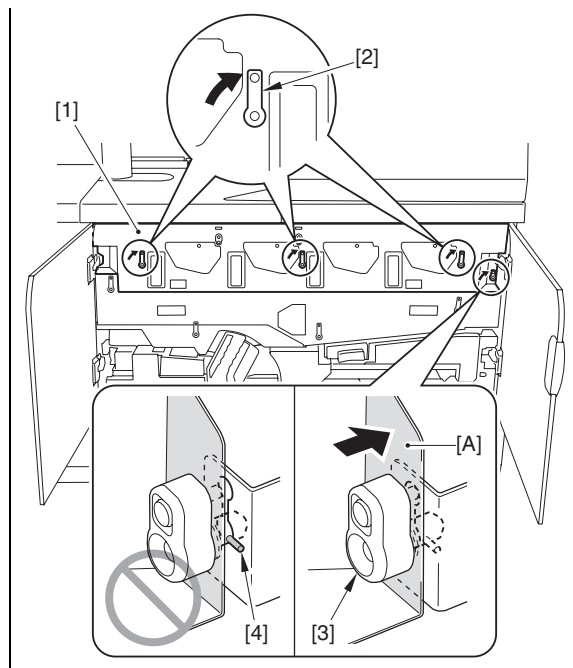


F-7-207

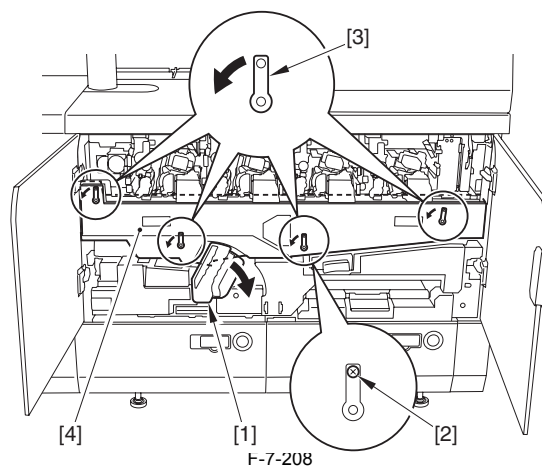
⚠ Points to Note When Attaching the Process Unit Cover
Align the cut-off [1] at the both ends of the process unit cover to the pin [2] at the host machine.



⚠
After shifting the 3 levers [2] of the process unit cover [1] as indicated, shift the lever (small) [3] as indicated while pushing the [A] area toward the rear. If shifting the lever (small) [3] while the cover [1] does not fit to the machine, the pin [4] is not set correctly, causing an error.

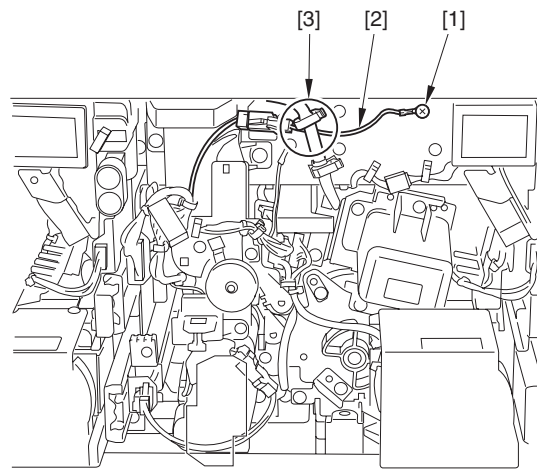


3) Tilt the lever (B-E1) [1] in the direction of the arrow. Remove the stepped screw [2], shift the 4 levers [3] in the direction of the arrow and then, detach the ITB unit cover [4].



F-7-208

4) Remove the screw [1] and draw out the grounding wire [2] from the space [3] around the harness.

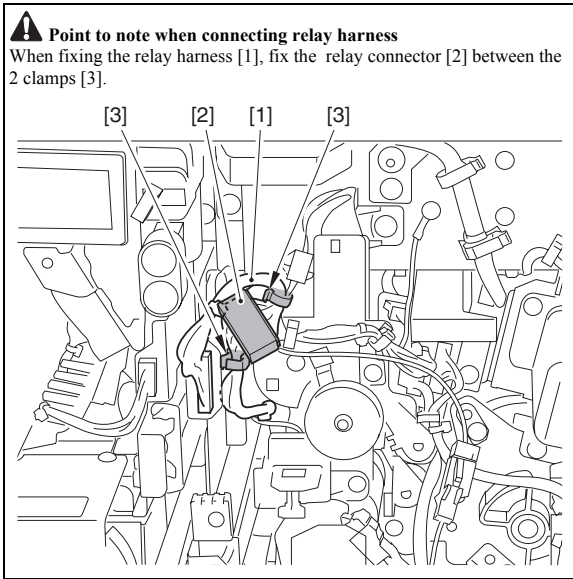
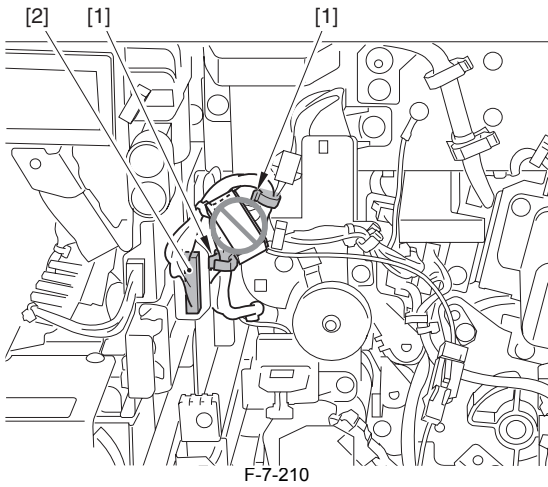


F-7-209

5) Open the 2 clamps [1] and disconnect the connector [2].

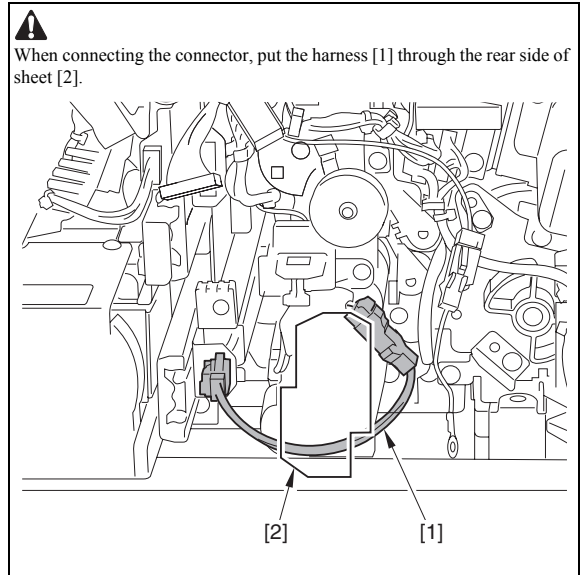
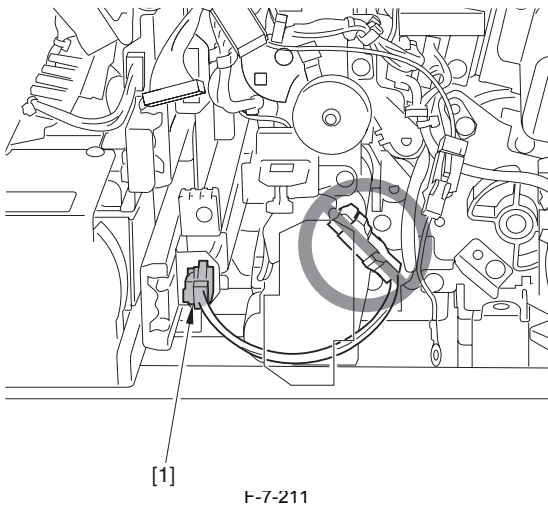
⚠
Do not disconnect the connector with the prohibition mark the time of devel-

oper replacement.

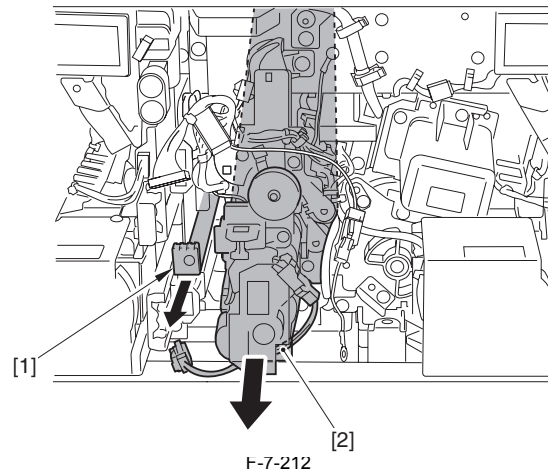


6) Disconnect the connector [1].

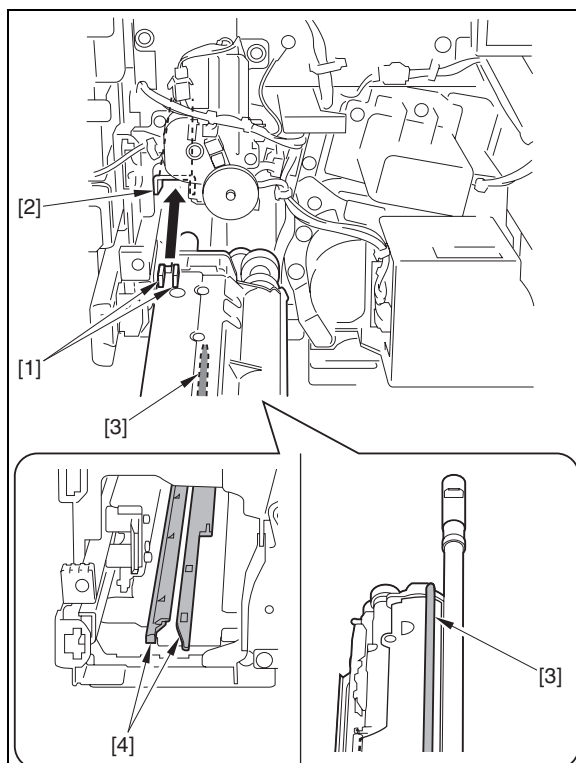
⚠ Do not disconnect the connector with the prohibition mark the time of developer replacement.



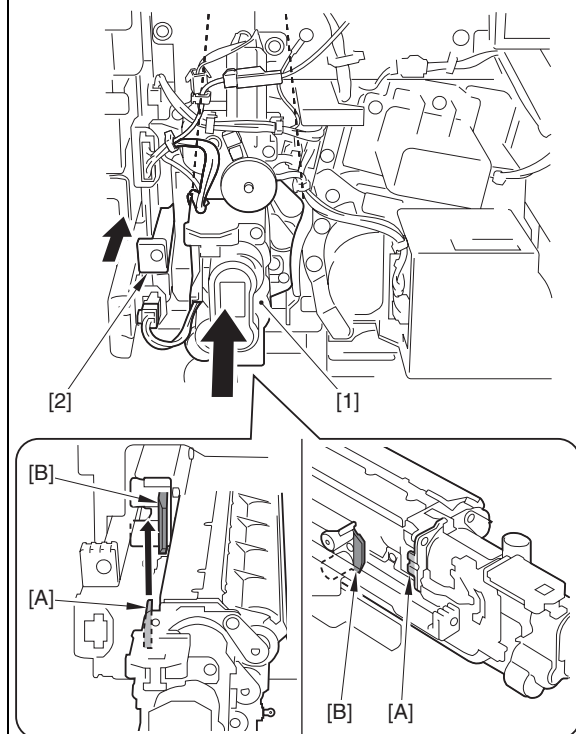
7) Pull the pressure release lever [1] until it locks and remove the developing assembly [2] forward.



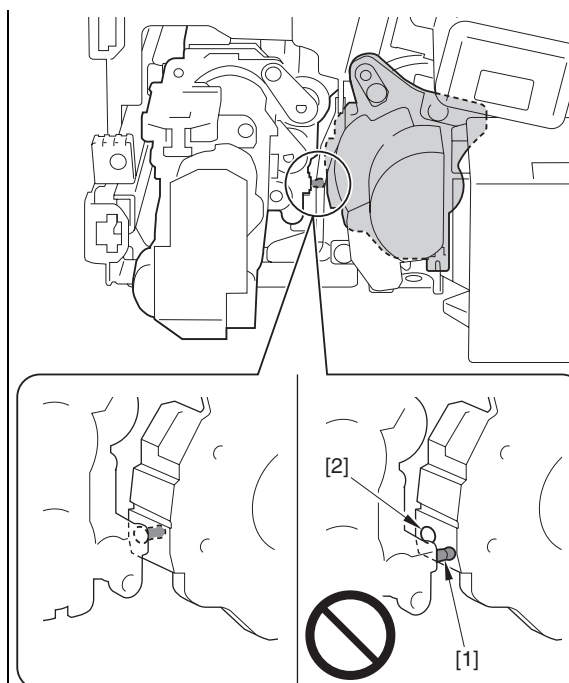
Attaching Developing Assembly
When sliding the developing assembly inside, be sure to fit the protrusions [1] on the upper side of the developing assembly into the rail [2] at the host machine side, and fit the protrusion [3] on the lower side of the assembly into the rail [4] at the host machine side.
(By fitting the protrusions [1] into the rail [2] and sliding the assembly evenly inside, the protrusion [3] and the rail [4] fit each other by themselves.)



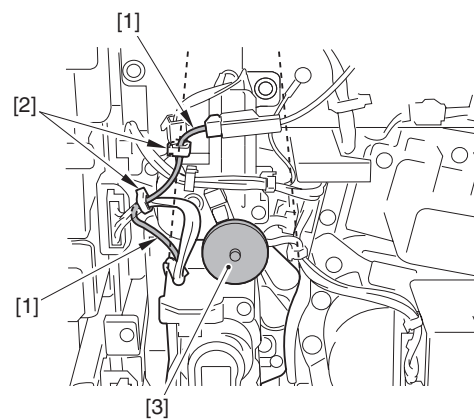
- When inserting the developing assembly [1], make sure to insert the protrusion [A] of the developing assembly front cover into the left side of the protrusion [B] of the developing pressure unit. (It is easier to insert with pushing it slightly to the left side.)
If the position of the developing assembly and the developing pressure unit is not correct, it disturbs the application of pressure under overload. In that case, pull out the developing assembly and start over again from insertion. Never attempt to apply the pressure to the developing assembly forcedly to prevent the developing assembly or the developing pressure unit from breaking.



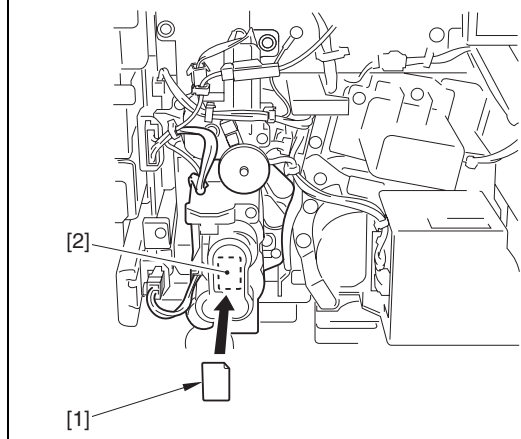
- When applying pressure to the developing assembly, make sure that the positioning pin [1] of the developing assembly is inserted all the way into the hole [2] at the drum flange.



- When attaching the developing assembly, be sure to attach the grounding wire [1] with the wire saddle [2] as shown in the following figure. The grounding wire may be caught in the toner stirring motor [3] of the sub hopper.



- Color label is supplied with the developing assembly assigned as a service parts. Put the compliant color label [1] on the front side of the developing assembly [2].

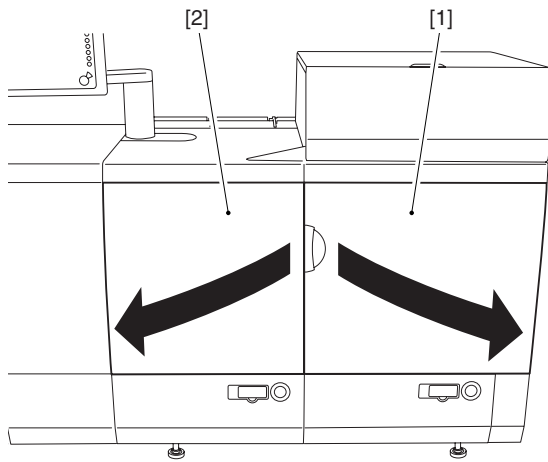


7.10.21.4 Removing C/Bk Developing Assembly (other than developing assembly replacement)

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

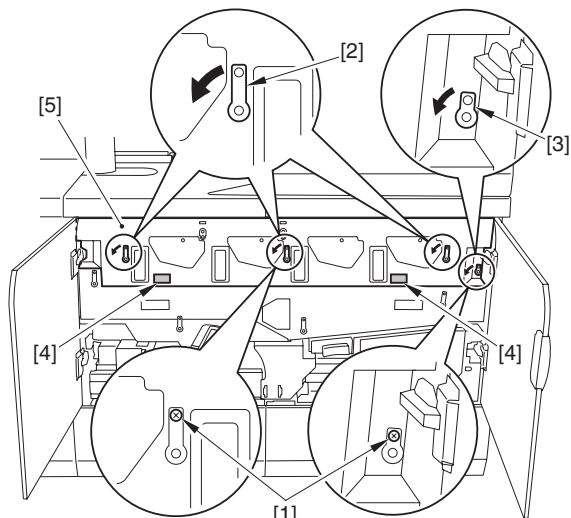
1) Open fully the front right cover [1], and then the front left cover [2] of

main station.



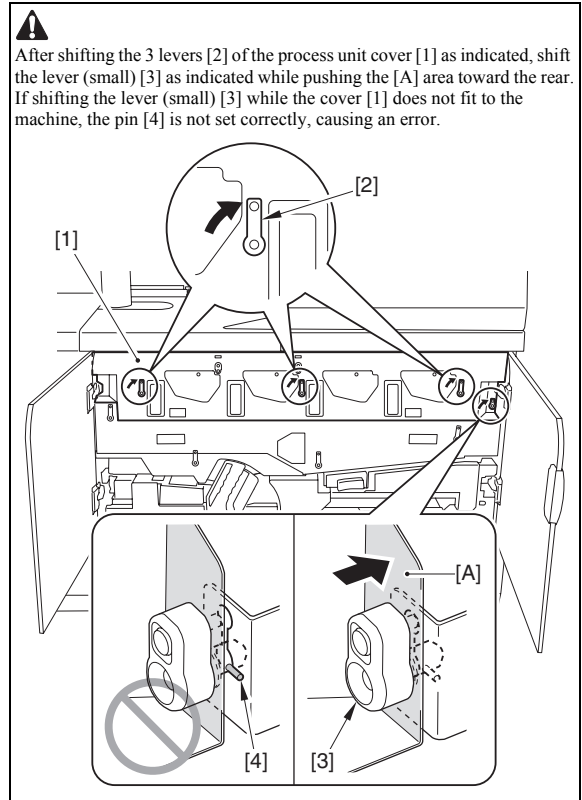
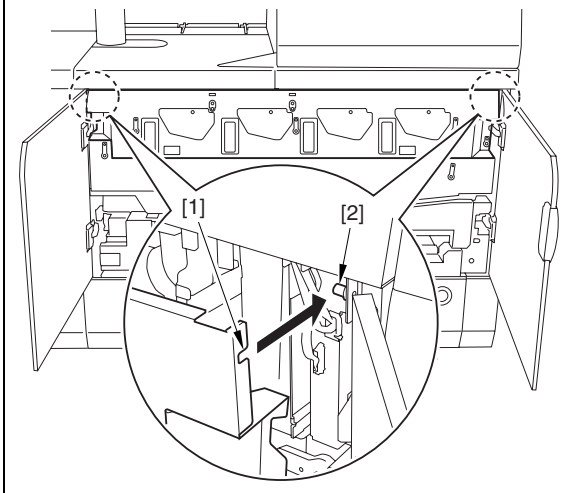
F-7-213

- 2) Remove the 2 stepped screws [1], shift the 3 levers [2] and the lever (small) [3] in the direction of the arrow in order. While holding the grip [4], detach the process unit cover [5].

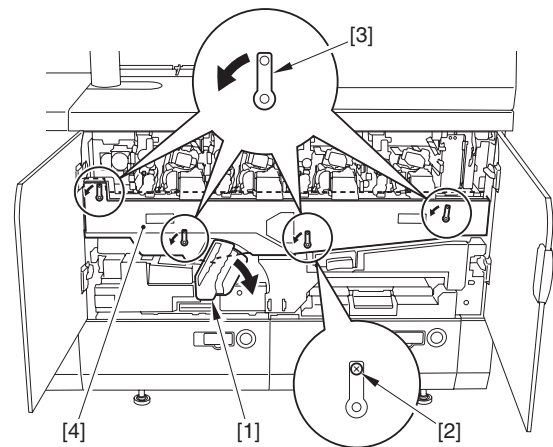


F-7-214

⚠ Points to Note When Attaching the Process Unit Cover
Align the cut-off [1] at the both ends of the process unit cover to the pin [2] at the host machine.



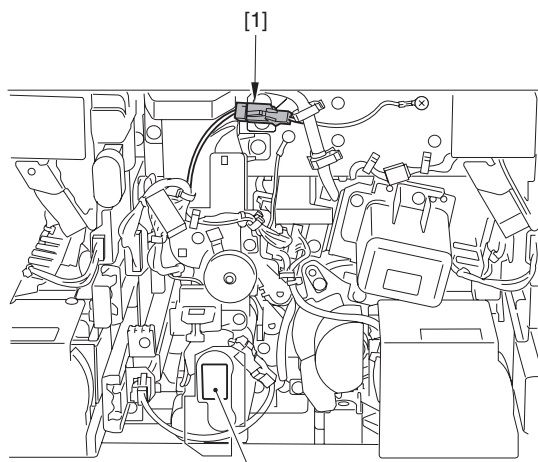
- 3) Tilt the lever (B-E1) [1] in the direction of the arrow. Remove the stepped screw [2], shift the 4 levers [3] in the direction of the arrow and then, detach the ITB unit cover [4].



F-7-215

- 4) Disconnect the connector with the connector hook [1]. (The subsequent figure shows the case of black)

MEMO:
The color of the developing assembly is identified by the color of the label [2].

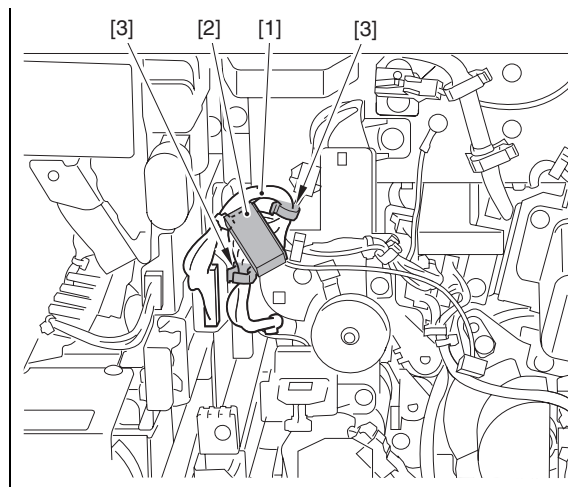


[2]
F-7-216

5) Open the 2 clamps [1] to disconnect the connector [2].



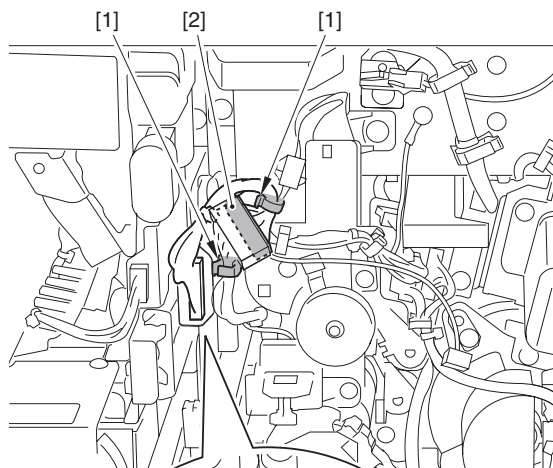
Do not disconnect the connector with the prohibition mark other than the time of developer replacement.



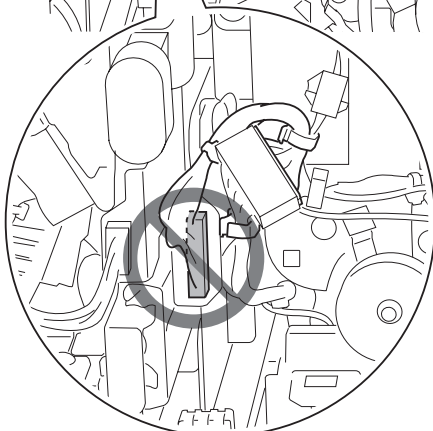
6) Disconnect the connector with the connector hook [1].



Do not disconnect the connector with the prohibition mark other than the time of developer replacement.



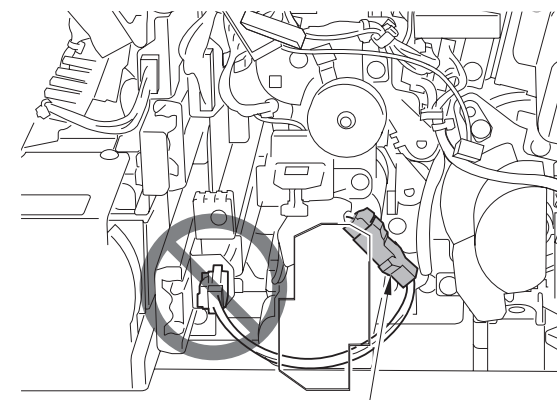
F-7-218



F-7-217



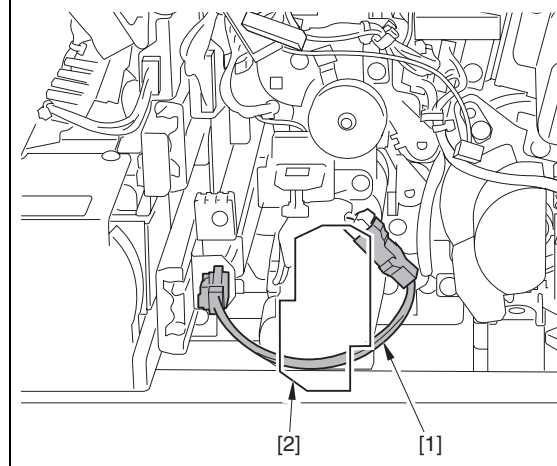
Point to note when connecting relay harness
When fixing the relay harness [1], fix the relay connector [2] between the 2 clamps [3].



[1]



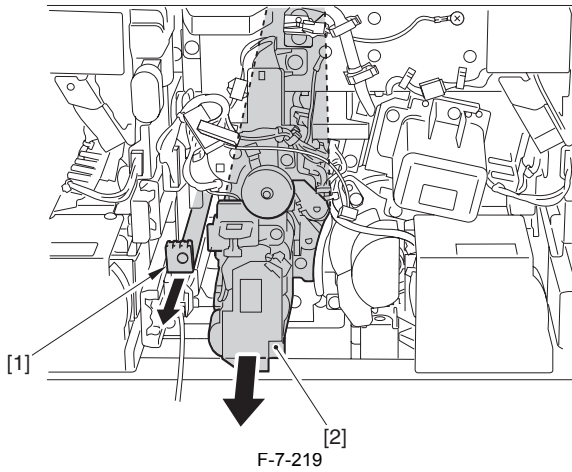
When connecting the connector, put the harness [1] through the rear side of sheet [2].



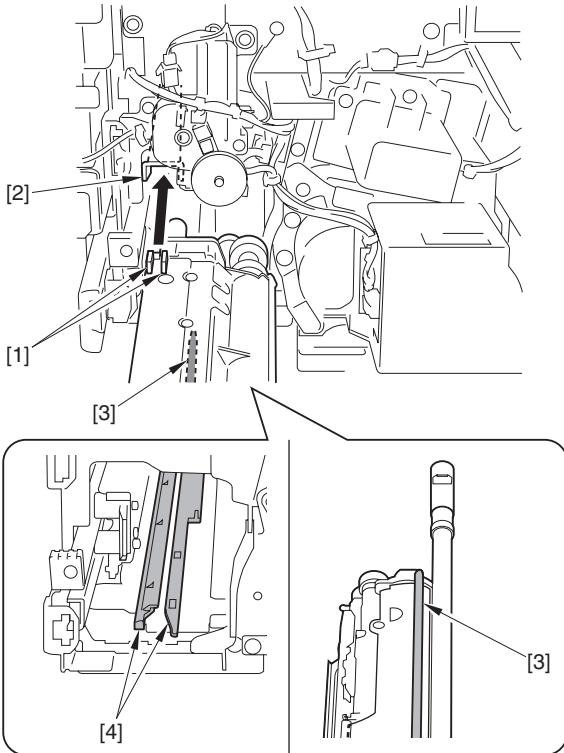
[2]

[1]

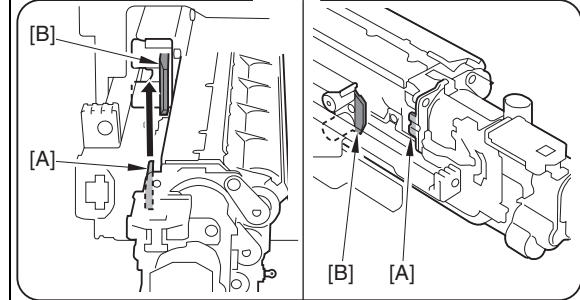
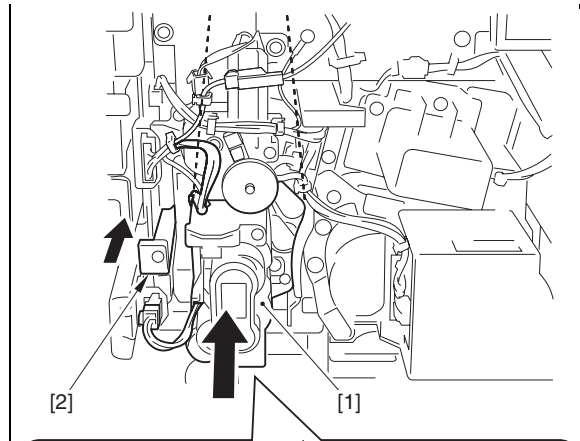
7) Pull the pressure release lever [1] until it locks and detach the developing assembly [2] forward.



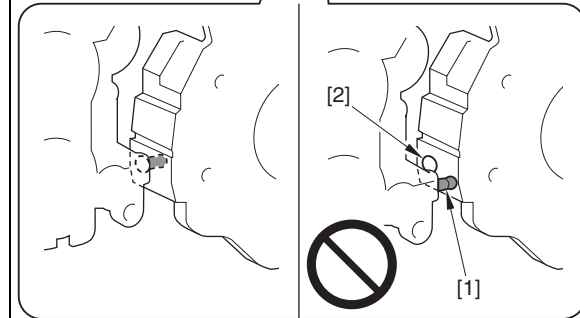
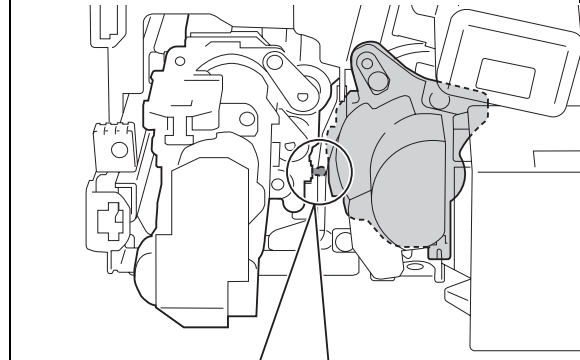
Attaching Developing Assembly
 When sliding the developing assembly inside, be sure to fit the protrusions [1] on the upper side of the developing assembly into the rail [2] at the host machine side, and fit the protrusion [3] on the lower side of the assembly into the rail [4] at the host machine side.
 (By fitting the protrusions [1] into the rail [2] and sliding the assembly evenly inside, the protrusion [3] and the rail [4] fit each other by themselves.)



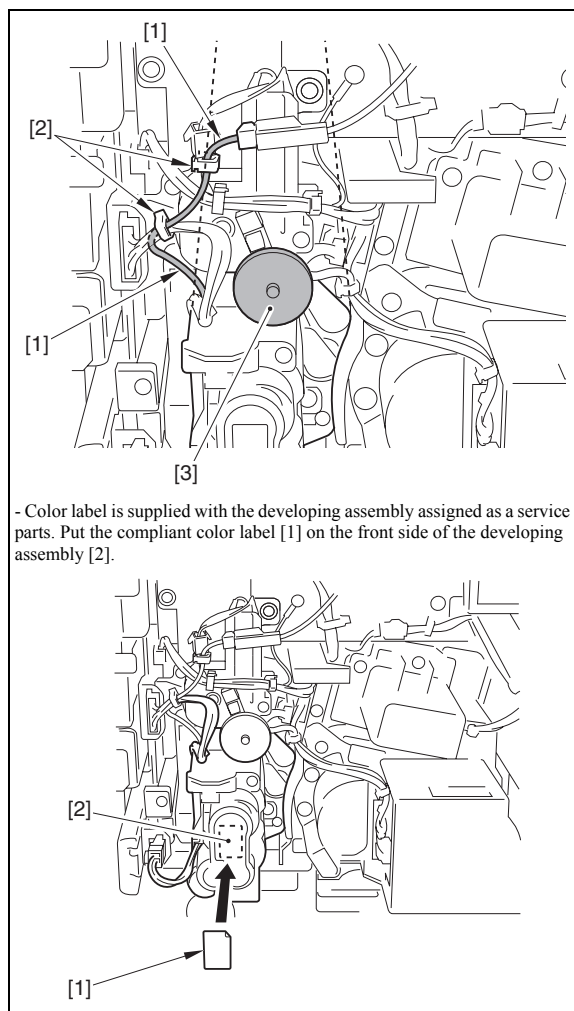
⚠
 - When inserting the developing assembly [1], make sure to insert the protrusion [A] of the developing assembly front cover into the left side of the protrusion [B] of the developing pressure unit.
 (It is easier to insert with pushing it slightly to the left side.)
 If the position of the developing assembly and the developing pressure unit is not correct, it disturbs the application of pressure under overload. In that case, pull out the developing assembly and start over again from insertion. Never attempt to apply the pressure to the developing assembly forcedly to prevent the developing assembly or the developing pressure unit from breaking.



- When applying pressure to the developing assembly, make sure that the positioning pin [1] of the developing assembly is inserted all the way into the hole [2] at the drum flange.



- When attaching the developing assembly, be sure to attach the grounding wire [1] with the wire saddle [2] as shown in the following figure. The grounding wire may be caught in the toner stirring motor [3] of the sub hopper.

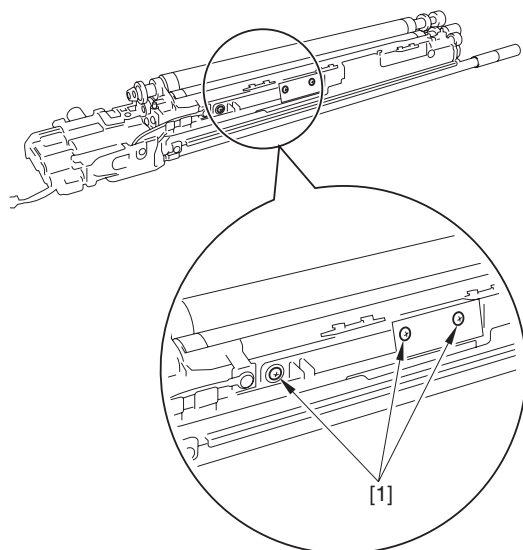


7.10.22 Drum Patch Sensor

7.10.22.1 Removing Drum Patch Sensor

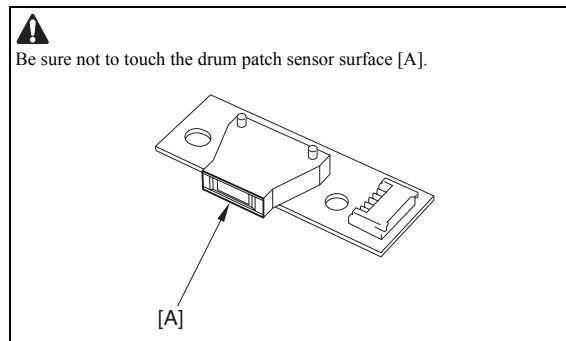
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- 1) Remove the developing assembly.
- 2) Remove the drum patch sensor shutter.
- 3) Remove the 3 screws [1].

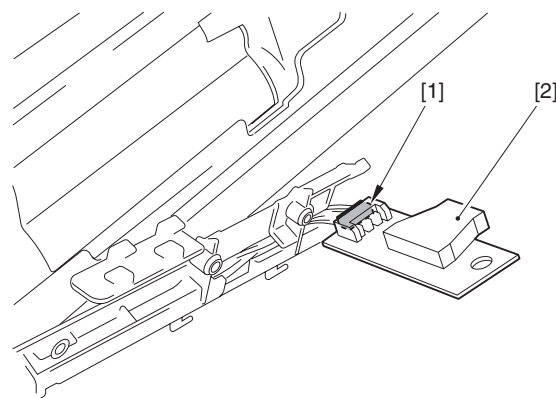


F-7-220

- 4) Make sure to check the following items before operation.



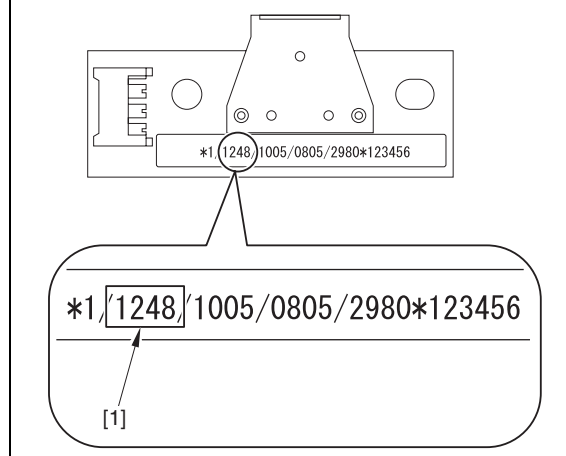
Disconnect the connector [1] and detach the drum patch sensor [2].



F-7-221

Attaching Drum Patch Sensor

In [Adjustment/cleaning] > [Alpha Value Correction], enter the four-digit figure [1] on the label.



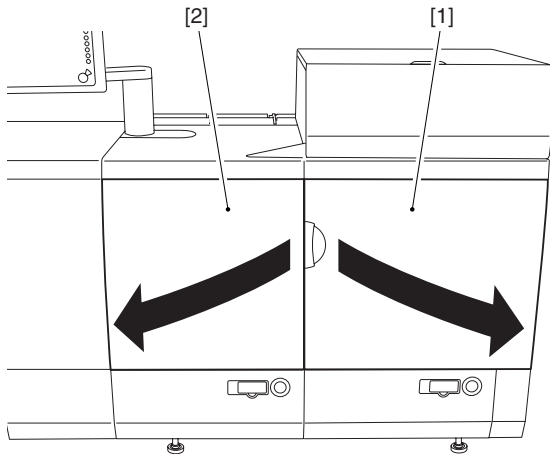
7.10.23 Developing Knocking Motor

7.10.23.1 Removing Developing Knocking Motor

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

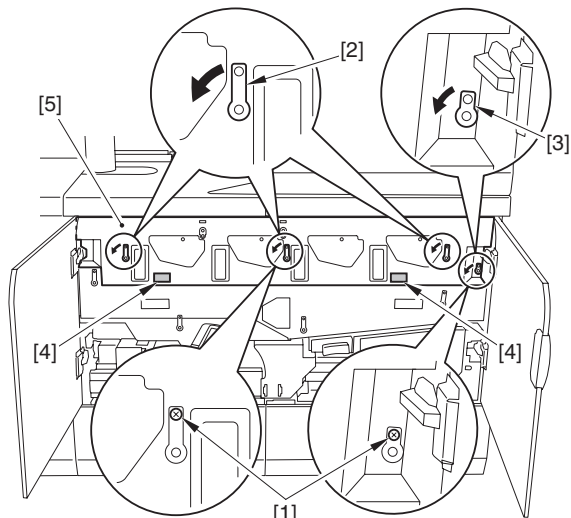
Removing procedure is the same for each color.

- 1) Open the right front cover [1] and the left front cover [2] of the main station fully in order.



F-7-222

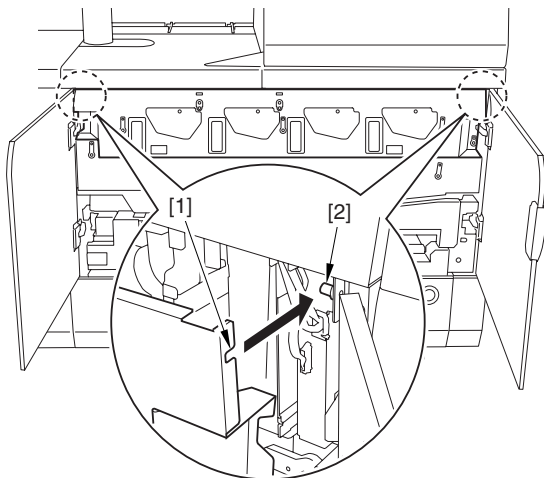
- 2) Remove the 2 stepped screws [1], shift the 3 levers [2] and the lever (small) [3] in the direction of the arrow in order. While holding the grip [4], detach the process unit cover [5].



F-7-223

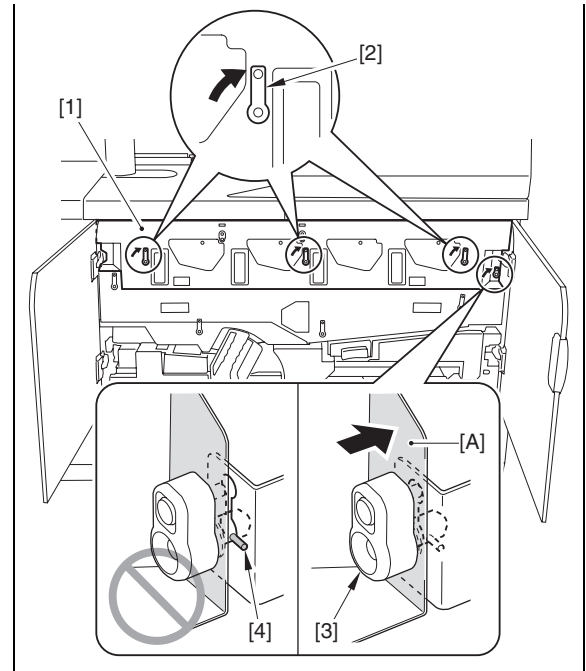
⚠ Points to Note When Attaching the Process Unit Cover

- Align the cut-off [1] at the both ends of the process unit cover to the pin [2] at the host machine.

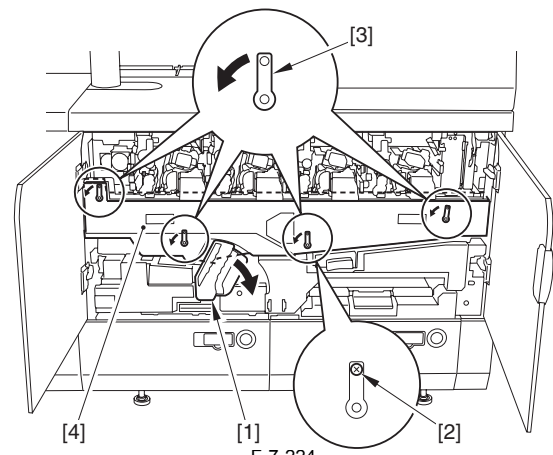


- After shifting the 3 levers [2] of the process unit cover [1] as indicated, shift the lever (small) [3] as indicated while pushing the [A] area toward the rear.

If shifting the lever (small) [3] while the cover [1] does not fit to the machine, the pin [4] is not set correctly, causing an error.



- 3) Tilt the lever (B-E1) [1] in the direction of the arrow. Remove the stepped screw [2], shift the 4 levers [3] in the direction of the arrow and then, detach the ITB unit cover [4].

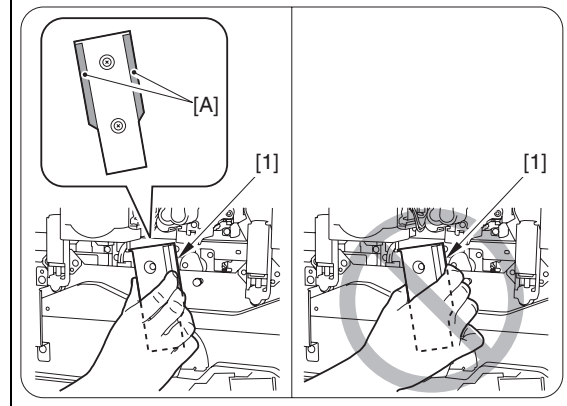


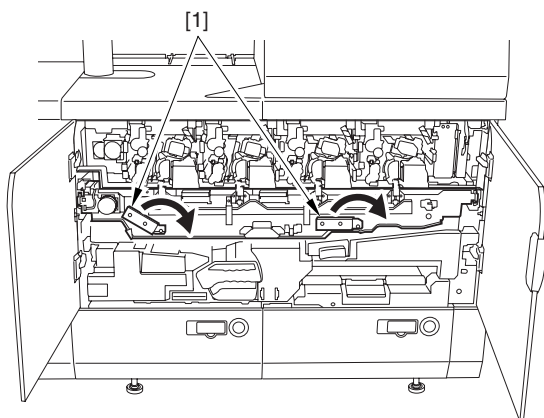
F-7-224

- 4) Shift the intermediate transfer assembly release lever [1] in the direction of the arrow.

⚠ Points to Note When Holding the ITB Release Lever

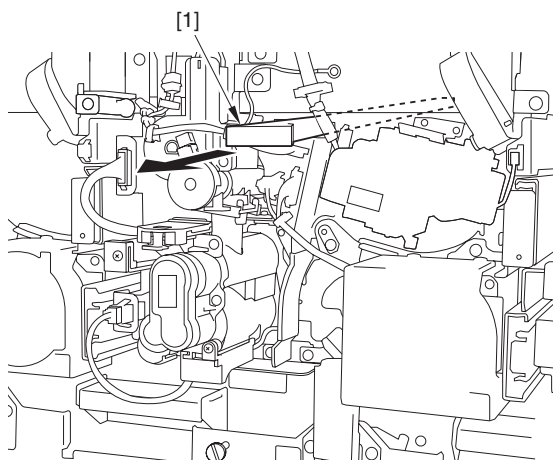
- Holding the release lever [1] fully may cause your hands get caught. Do not hold the release lever beyond the [A] area.





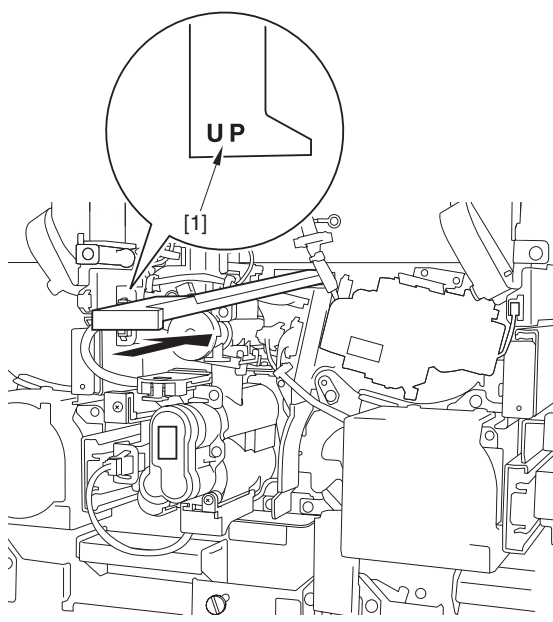
F-7-225

- 5) Detach the dust-proof glass unit [1]. Pull it out slowly so that the surface of the dust-proof glass is not damaged.



F-7-226

⚠ Points to Note When Attaching Dust-proof Glass Unit
Let the side of the mark [1] (UP) up, and push it in slowly so that the surface of the dust-proof glass is not damaged.

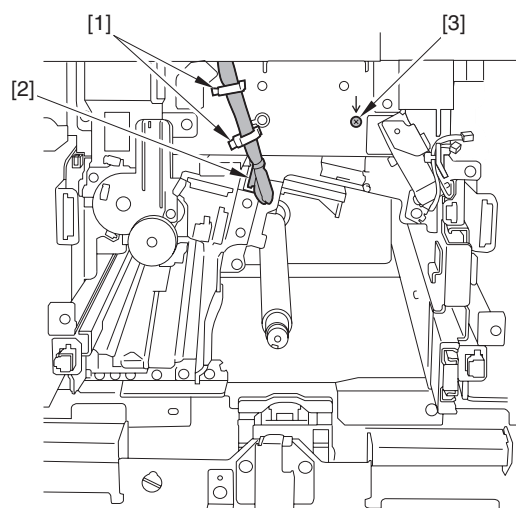


- 6) Remove the developing assembly (See "Developing Assembly" at Parts replacement procedure).



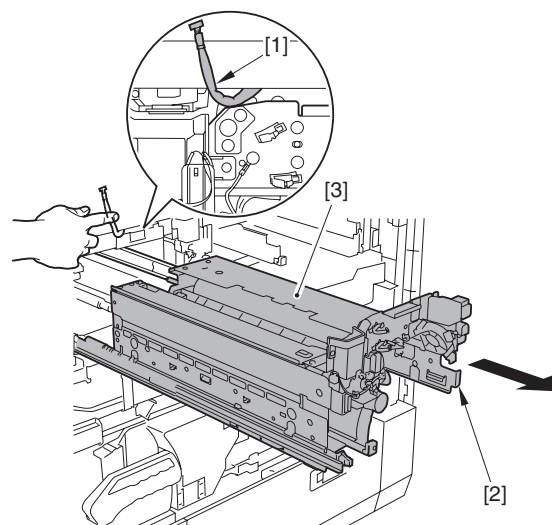
Steps to remove the Y/M developing assembly are different from those for the C/Bk developing assembly.

- 7) Remove the drum unit (See "Photosensitive drum" at Parts replacement procedure).
8) Pull out the process unit.
8-1) Free the 2 wire saddles [1], disconnect the 1 connector [2] and remove the 1 screw [3].



F-7-227

- 8-2) While keeping the cable [1] and holding the grip [2], pull out fully the process kit [3].

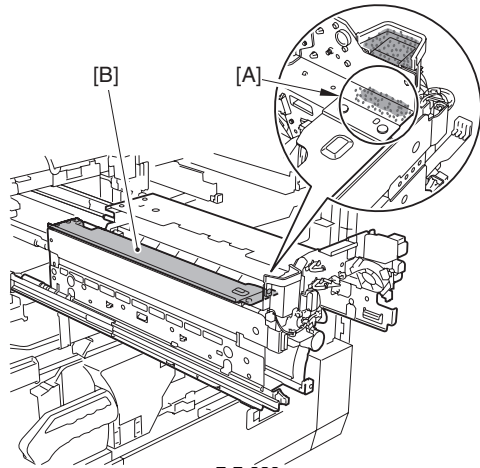


F-7-228



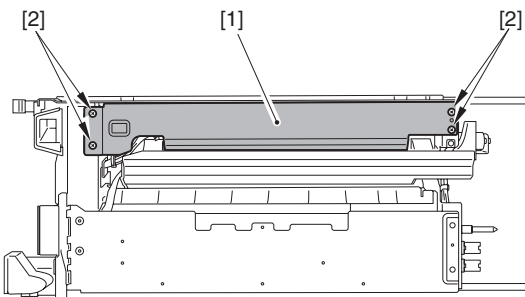
⚠ Points to Note When Fitting the Process Unit
When fitting the process unit [3], be sure to hold the cable [1] to keep it from being caught.

- 9) Check to see that there is no toner spattering around the [A] area and the [B] area.
If there is toner around the [A] area, remove it with a lint-free paper.



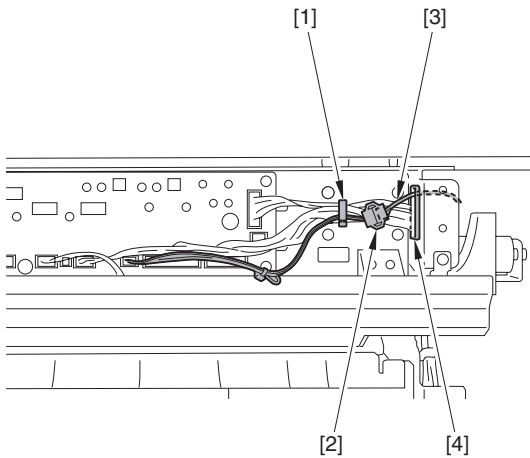
F-7-229

- 10) Detach the process unit driver PCB cover [1].
- 4 screws [2]



F-7-230

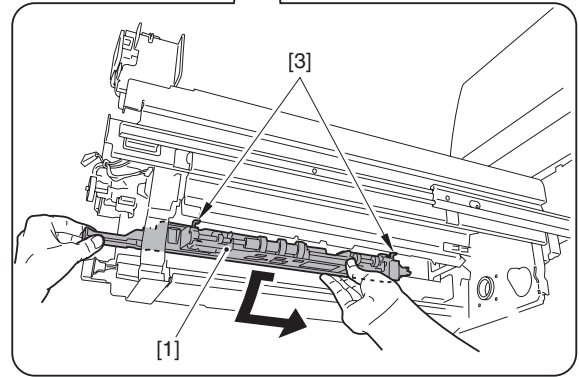
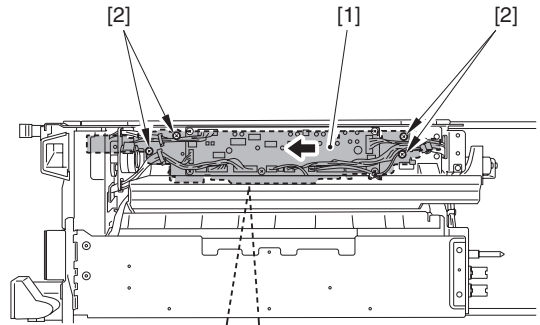
- 11) Remove the wire saddle [1] to disconnect the relay connector [2].
12) Put the cable [3] through the opening [3].



F-7-231

⚠ Points to Note When Attaching
Be sure to put the relay connector [2] to the rear side than the wire saddle [1].

- 13) Remove the developing knocking unit [1] in the direction of the arrow.
- 4 screws [2]
- 2 claws [3]

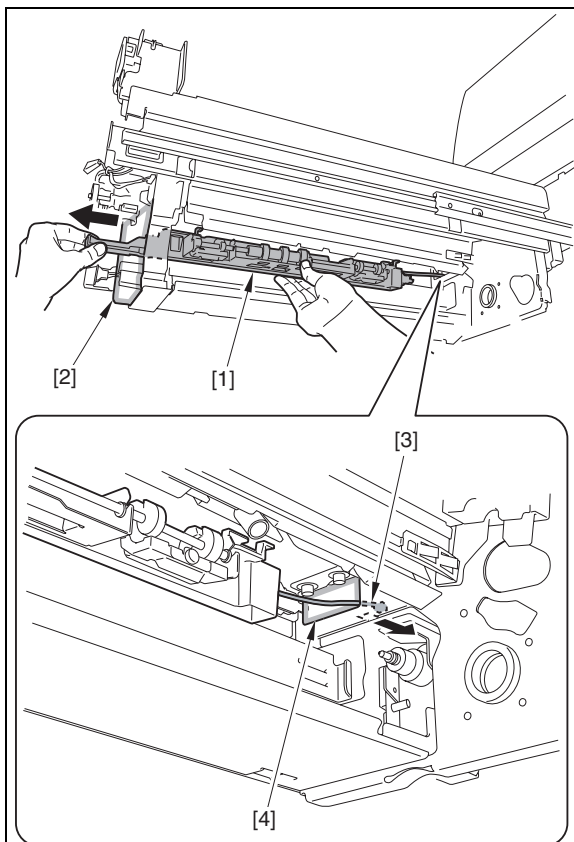


F-7-232

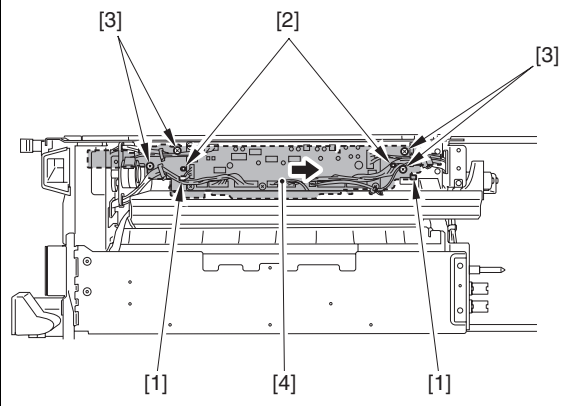
⚠ Points to Note When Attaching
There are barcodes [2] described as "YM" or "CK" [3] on respective developing knocking units [1]. Be sure to use the developing knocking unit with corresponding color.

The above [C] indicates a Canon model.

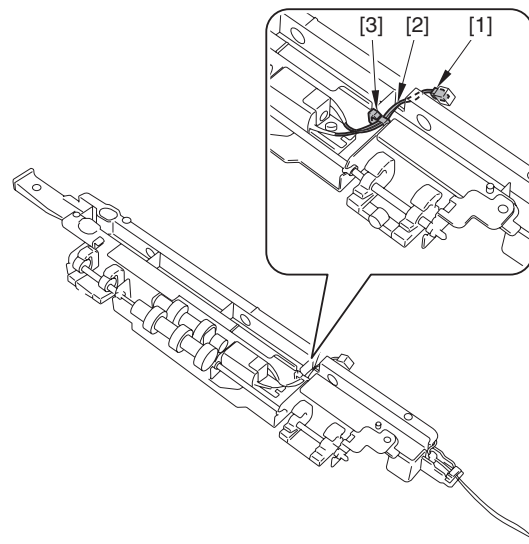
1) Put the front of the developing knocking unit [1] through the opening [2] first, then put the cable [3] through the opening [4] at the rear.



- 2) Fit the 2 claws [1] to position the developing knocking unit by fitting with the 2 bosses [2].
- 3) While supporting the developing knocking unit [4] from below, secure it with 4 screws (W SEMS) [3] that is included in the package.
Be sure to check that the bosses [2] are securely fitted.

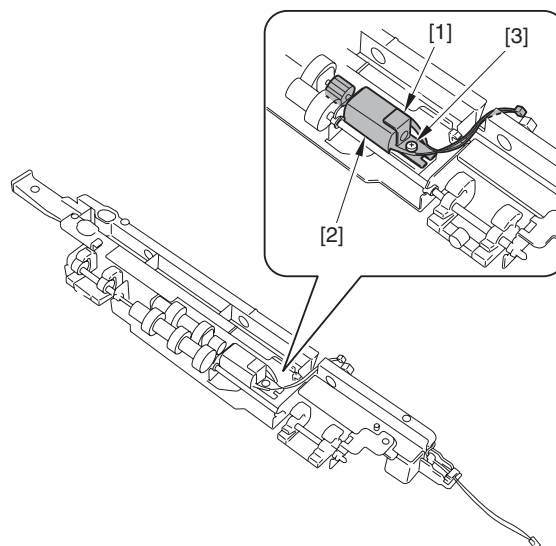


- 14) Disconnect the connector [1] and free the cable [2] from the edge saddle [3].



F-7-233

- 15) Remove the motor fixing plate [1] and the developing knocking motor [2].
- 1 screw (W SEMS) [3]



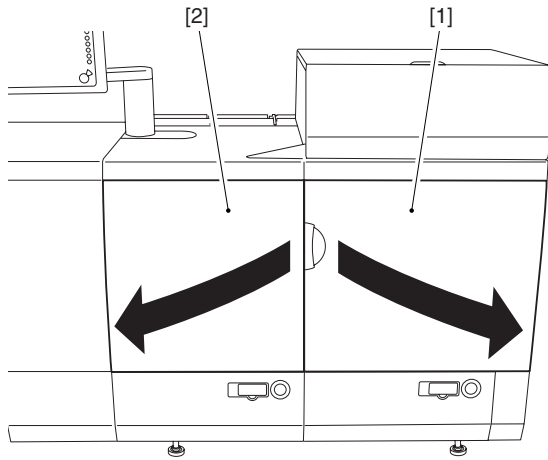
F-7-234

7.10.24 ITB Cleaning Unit

7.10.24.1 Removing ITB Cleaner Unit

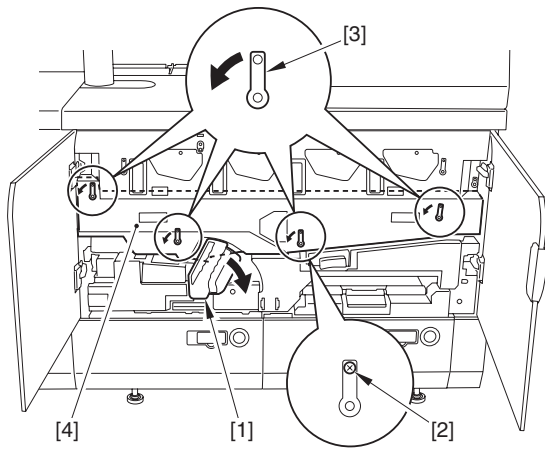
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- 1) Open fully the front right cover [1], and then the front left cover [2] of main station.



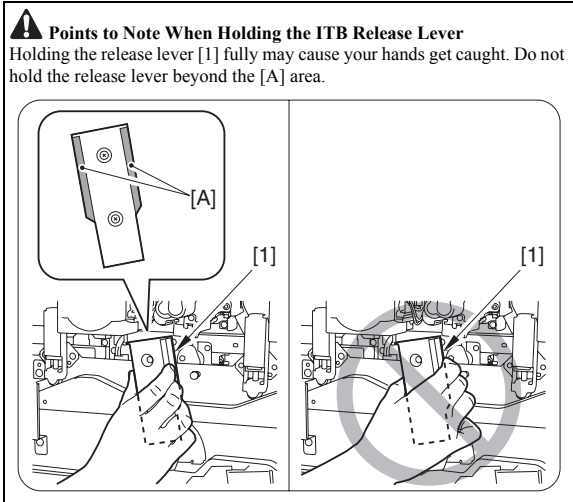
F-7-235

2) Shift down the lever (B-E1) [1] in the direction of the arrow. Remove the stepped screw [2] and shift the 4 levers [3] down in the direction of the arrow to detach the intermediate transfer unit cover [4].

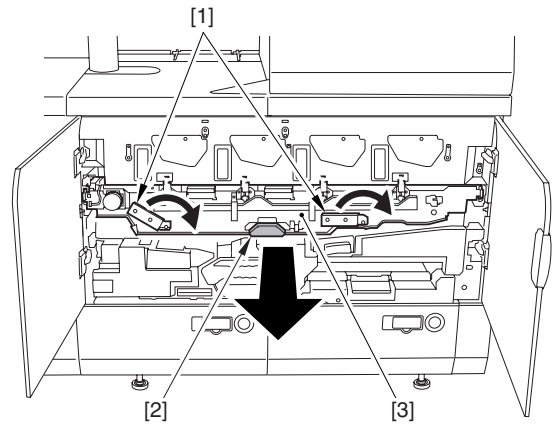


F-7-236

3) Make sure to check the following items before operation.



Shift the release lever [1] of intermediate transfer assembly in the direction of arrow. Hold the handle [2] to slide out the intermediate transfer assembly [3] until it is locked.



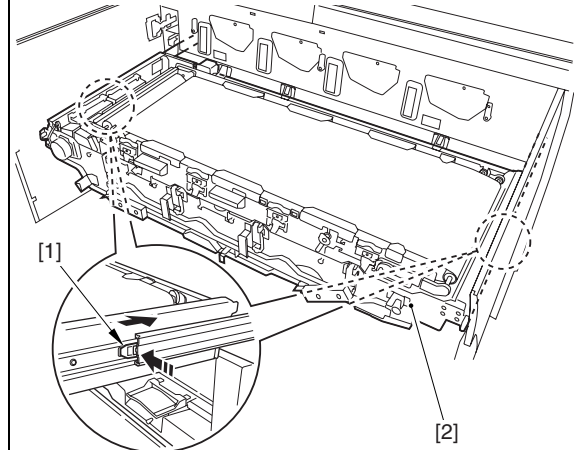
F-7-237

Storing Intermediate Transfer Assembly

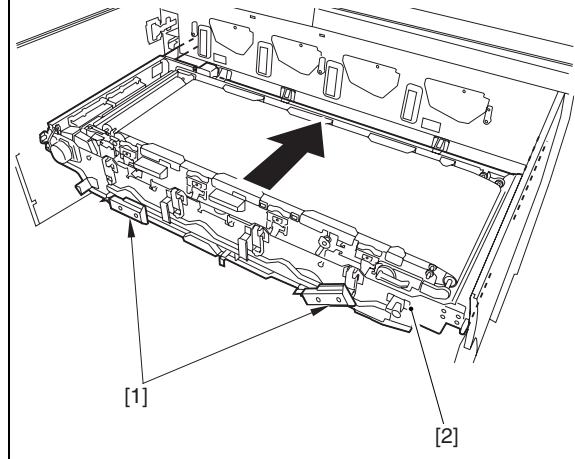
1) While pushing the 2 lock release springs [1], slide the intermediate transfer assembly [2] toward the rear side until the lock position is released.



When sliding the intermediate transfer assembly [2] toward the rear side, be careful not to get your fingers caught.

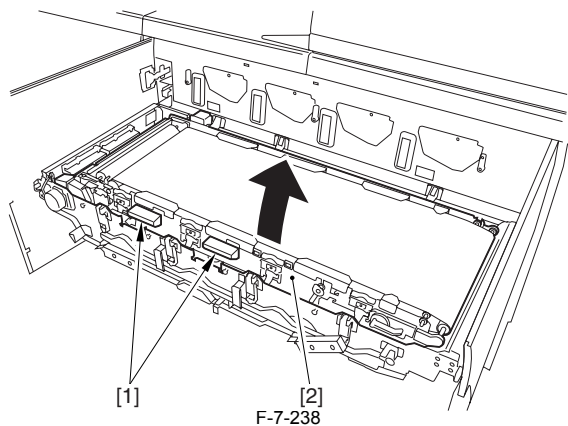


2) Hold the release lever [1] to slide in the intermediate transfer assembly [2].



4) Hold the handle [1] with both hands and lift up the intermediate transfer belt unit [2] by approx. 40 deg, and then, lift it down to the lock position (at approx. 30 deg.).

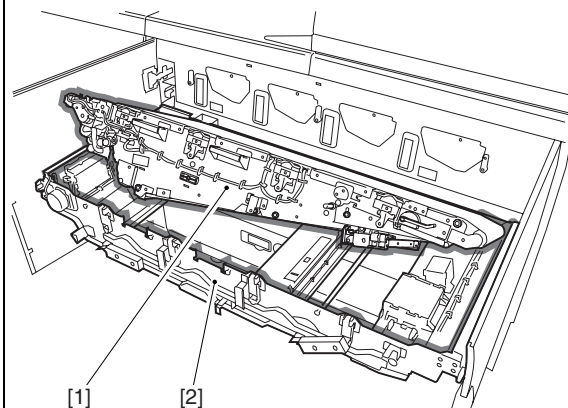
6) Make sure to check the following items before operation.



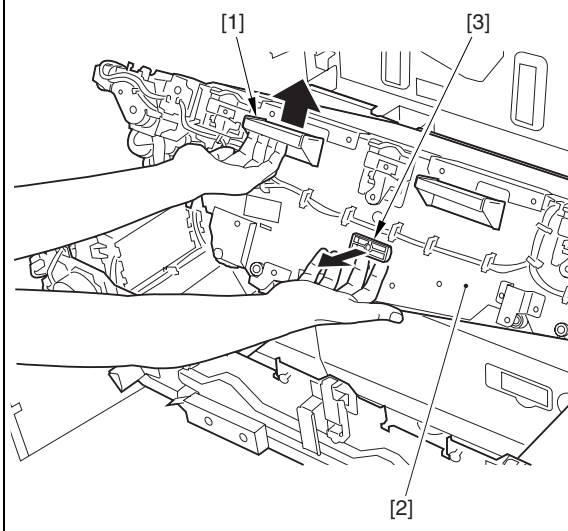
Lifting Down Intermediate Transfer Belt Unit

Make sure to check the following items before operation.

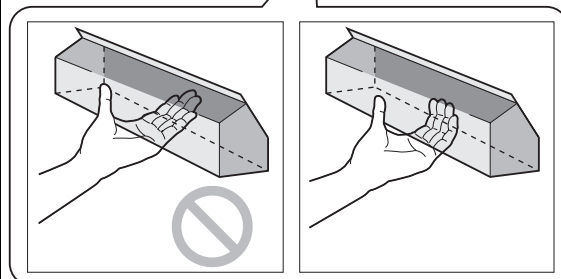
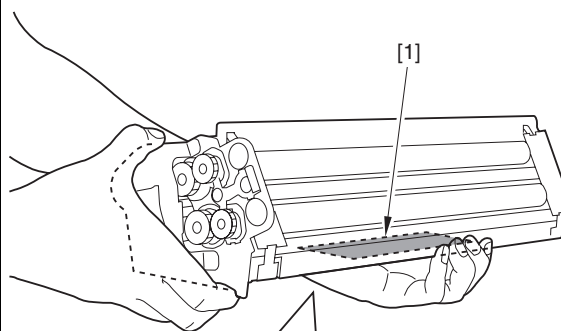
⚠ Point to Note When Lifting down Intermediate Transfer Belt Unit
When lifting down the intermediate transfer belt unit, be careful not to get your hands caught between the intermediate transfer belt unit [1] and the intermediate transfer frame [2].



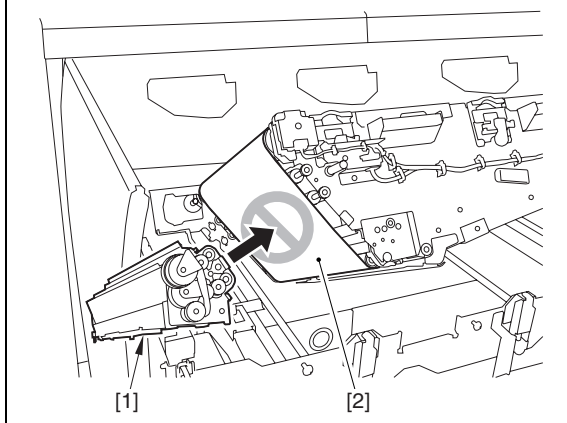
Hold the handle [1] as shown in the figure to pull out the lever [3] fully while lifting up the intermediate transfer belt unit [2]. While pulling the lever [3], slightly lift down the intermediate transfer belt unit. When the belt passes through the lock release position (approx. 30 deg), release your hands (intermediate transfer belt unit slowly moves downward).



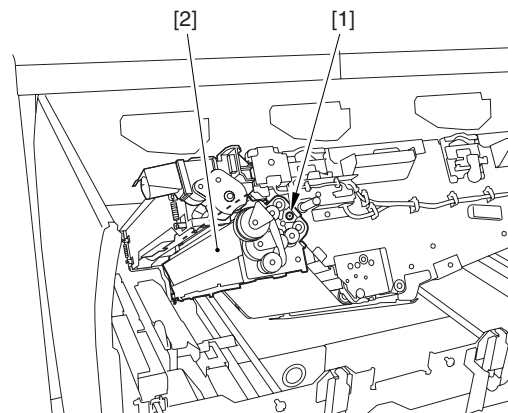
⚠ Points to Note When Holding ITB Cleaner Unit
- Be sure not to hold the lower area of the ITB cleaner unit with your palm attached otherwise it causes the shutter [1] at the lower side slide to open and the toner may be spilled.



- Be sure not to contact the ITB cleaner unit [1] with the intermediate transfer belt [2].



Remove the screw [1] and hold the ITB cleaner unit [2] with both hands to remove it toward the front.

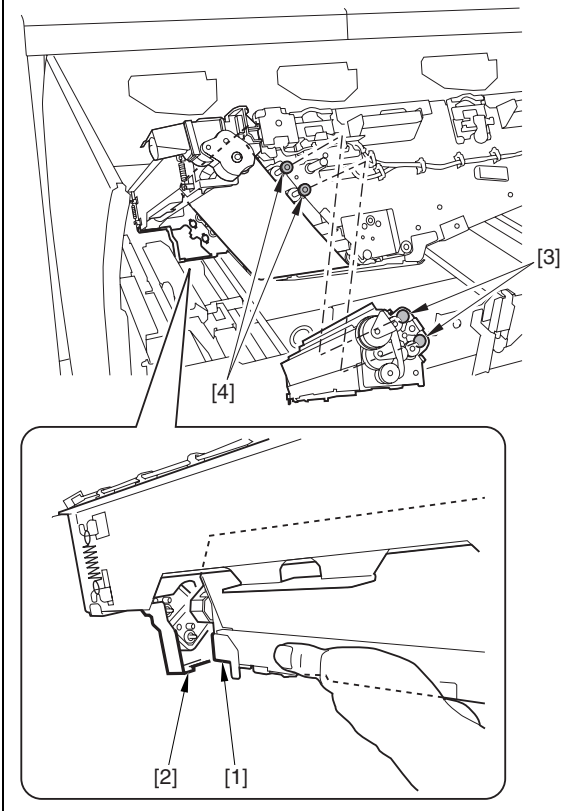


F-7-239

5) Spread paper where the ITB cleaner unit to be placed.

⚠ In the subsequent steps, always spread paper under the units/parts to avoid the environment contaminated with toner.

⚠ Points to Note When Attaching the ITB Cleaner Unit
 Put the edge [1] of the ITB cleaner unit on the frame [2] of the ITB unit, fit the hole [3] of the ITB cleaner unit to the bearing [4] of ITB unit and support the part to tighten the screw.

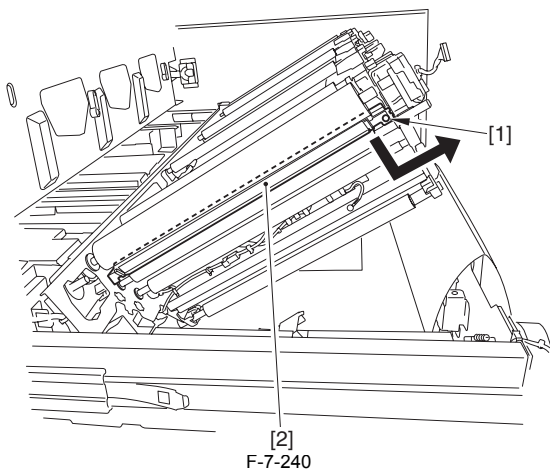


7.10.25 ITB Cleaning Scraper

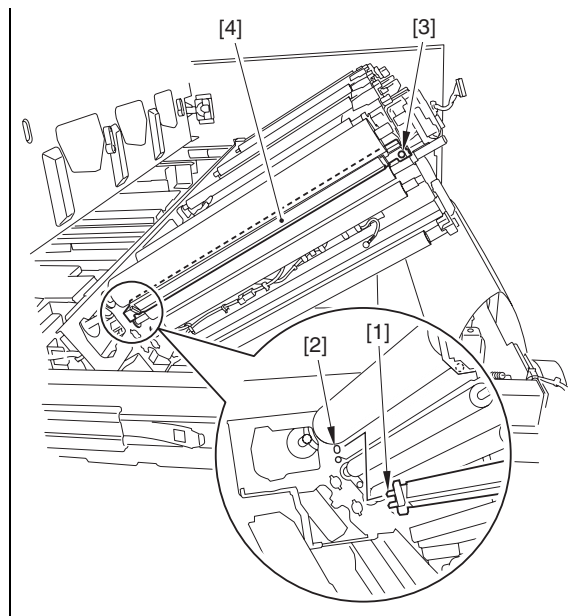
7.10.25.1 Removing ITB Inside Cleaning Scraper

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- 1) Remove the ITB.
- 2) Remove the screw [1] and detach the ITB inside cleaning scraper [2].



⚠ Points to Note When Attaching the ITB Inside Cleaning Scraper
 Fit the protrusion [1] into the hole [2] of the intermediate transfer belt unit and attach the ITB inside cleaning scraper [4] with the screw [3].

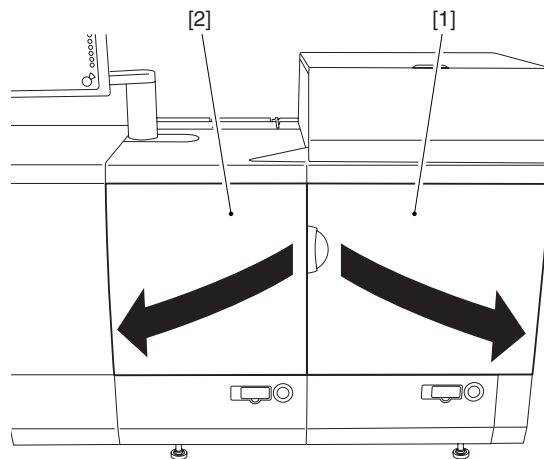


7.10.26 ITB Cleaning Web

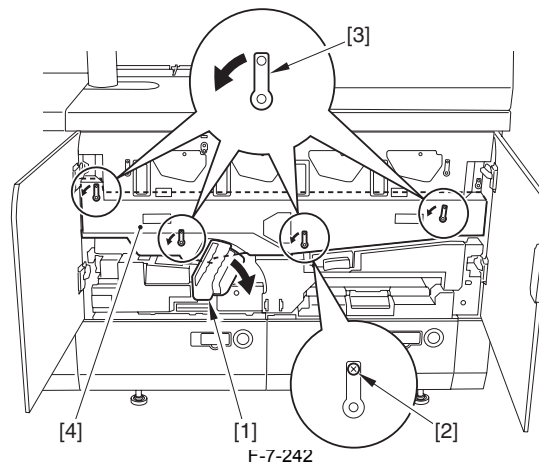
7.10.26.1 Removing ITB Cleaning Web

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

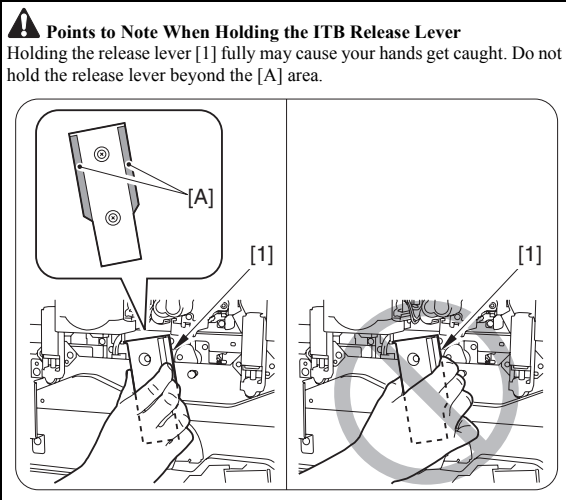
- 1) Open fully the front right cover [1], and then the front left cover [2] of main station.



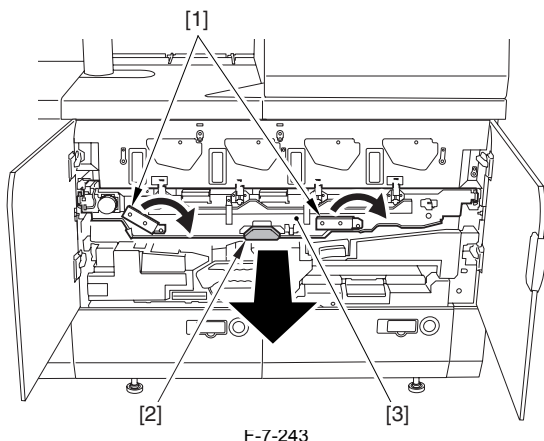
- 2) Shift down the lever (B-E1) [1] in the direction of the arrow. Remove the stepped screw [2] and shift the 4 levers [3] down in the direction of the arrow to detach the intermediate transfer unit cover [4].



- 3) Make sure to check the following items before operation.



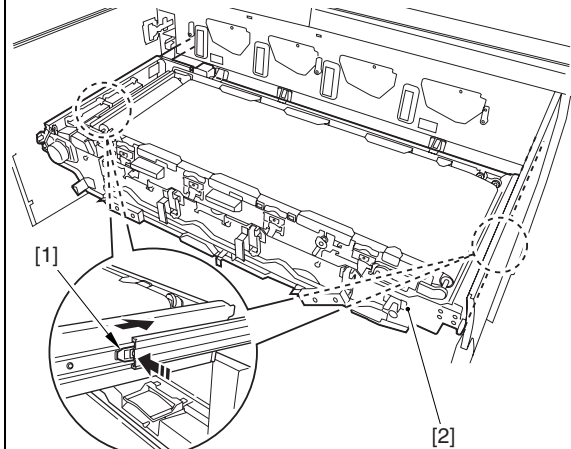
Shift the release lever [1] of intermediate transfer assembly in the direction of arrow. Hold the handle [2] to slide out the intermediate transfer assembly [3] until it is locked.



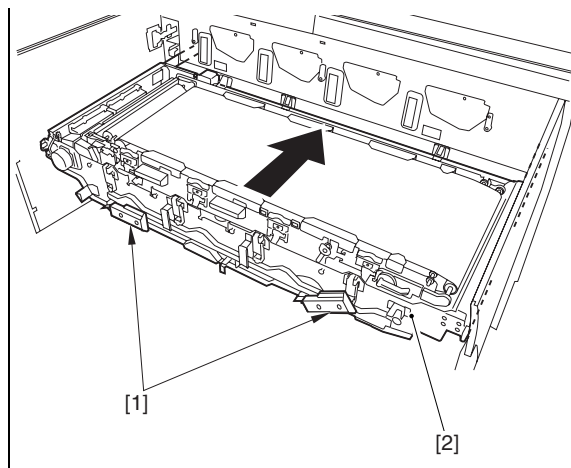
Storing Intermediate Transfer Assembly

1) While pushing the 2 lock release springs [1], slide the intermediate transfer assembly [2] toward the rear side until the lock position is released.

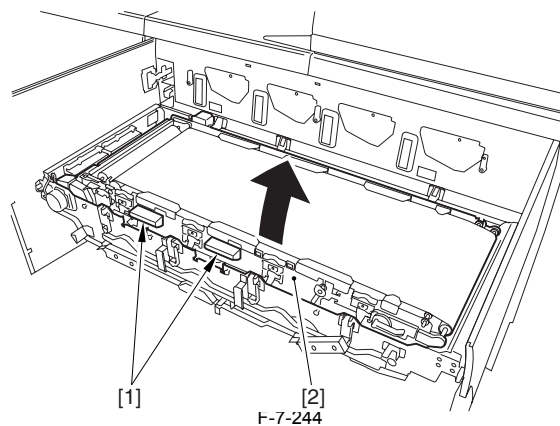
⚠ When sliding the intermediate transfer assembly [2] toward the rear side, be careful not to get your fingers caught.



2) Hold the release lever [1] to slide in the intermediate transfer assembly [2].



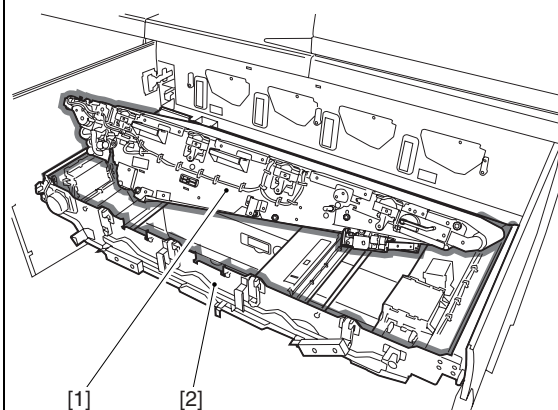
4) Hold the handle [1] with both hands and lift up the intermediate transfer belt unit [2] by approx. 40 deg, and then, lift it down to the lock position (at approx. 30 deg).



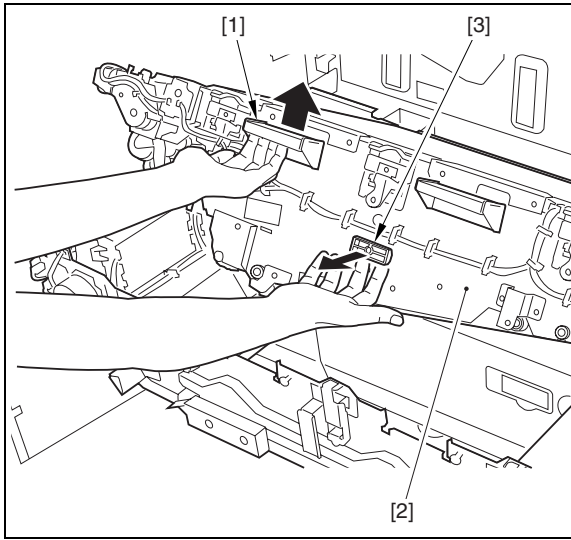
Lifting Down Intermediate Transfer Belt Unit

Make sure to check the following items before operation.

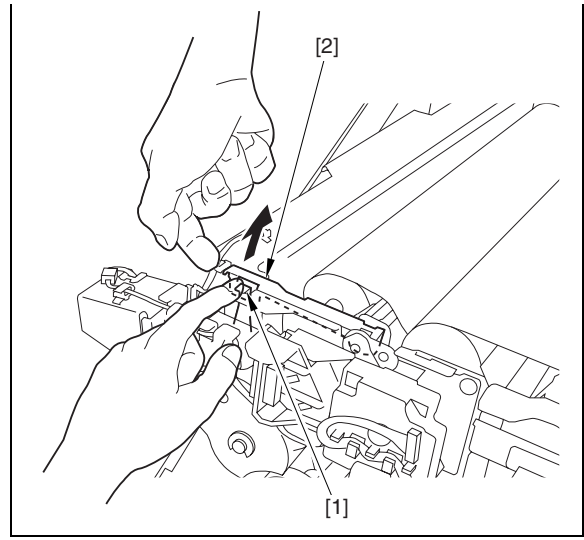
⚠ Point to Note When Lifting down Intermediate Transfer Belt Unit
 When lifting down the intermediate transfer belt unit, be careful not to get your hands caught between the intermediate transfer belt unit [1] and the intermediate transfer frame [2].



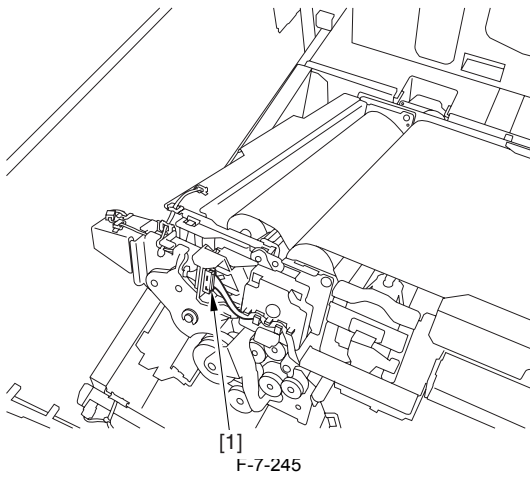
Hold the handle [1] as shown in the figure to pull out the lever [3] fully while lifting up the intermediate transfer belt unit [2]. While pulling the lever [3], slightly lift down the intermediate transfer belt unit. When the belt passes through the lock release position (approx. 30 deg), release your hands (intermediate transfer belt unit slowly moves downward).



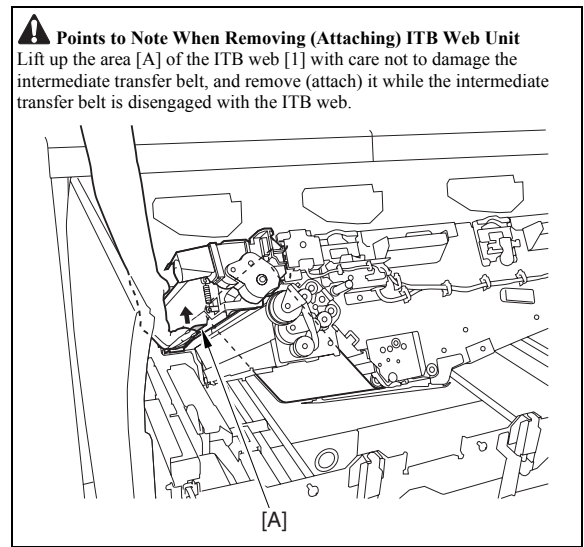
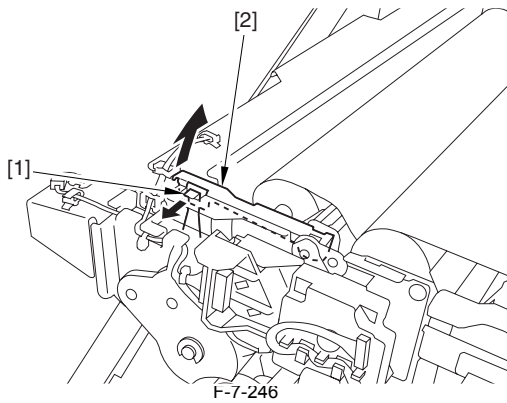
5) Disconnect the connector [1].



7) Make sure to check the following items before operation.



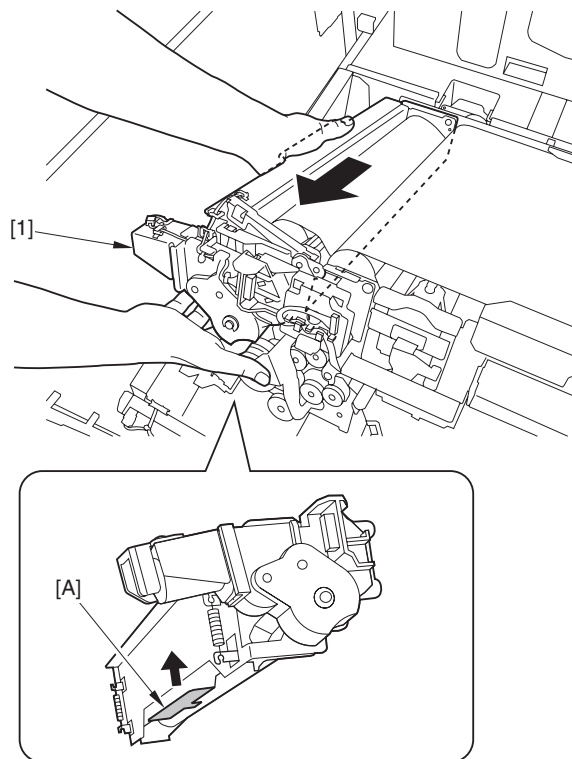
6) Pull the release switch [1] toward the front to release the lever [2].



⚠ Points to Note When Removing (Attaching) ITB Web Unit
Lift up the area [A] of the ITB web [1] with care not to damage the intermediate transfer belt, and remove (attach) it while the intermediate transfer belt is disengaged with the ITB web.

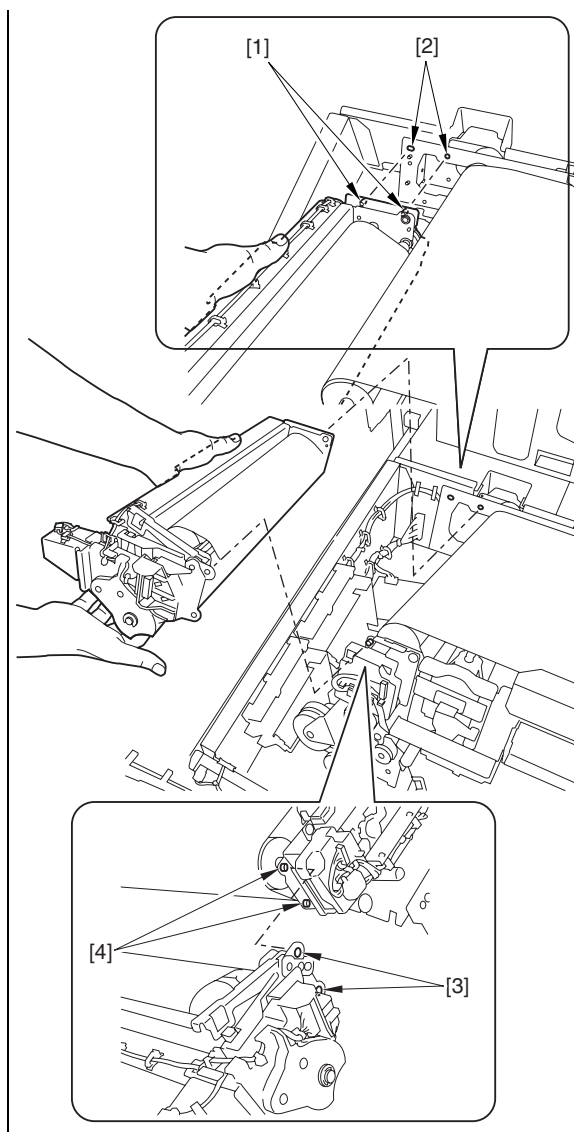
While lifting up the [A] area, slide the ITB web unit [1] toward the front to remove.

⚠ When the lever [2] fails to be lifted up even though pushing the release switch [1], lift up the lever [2] while pulling the release switch [1] toward the front as shown in the figure.

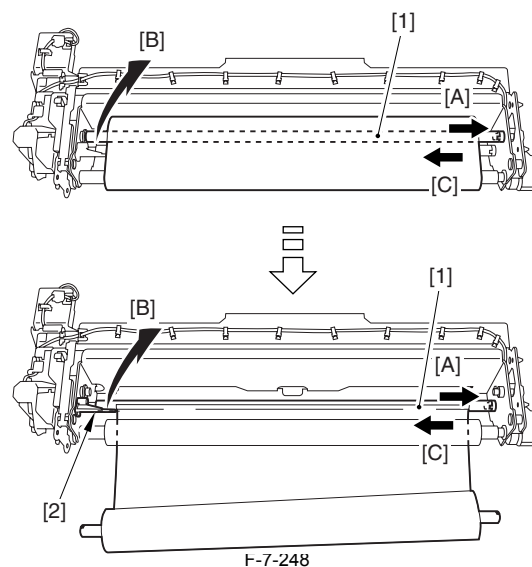


F-7-247

⚠ Points to Note When Attaching ITB Web Unit
 Fit the rear side boss [1] into the boss hole [2] of the intermediate transfer belt unit. Also fit the front side boss [3] with the boss [4] of the intermediate transfer belt unit to attach.



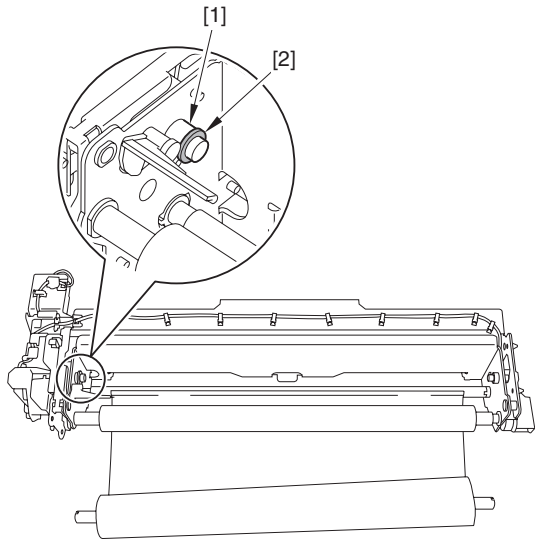
- 8) While pushing in the ITB web shaft [1] in the direction of [A], move it in the direction of [B], and then move it in the direction of [C] to remove. Pay attention to the ITB web detection flag [2] when performing this step.



F-7-248

Attaching ITB Web

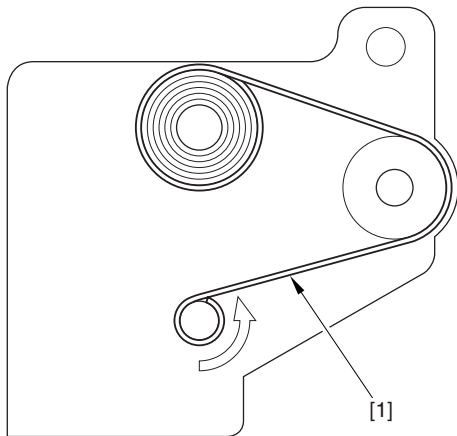
1) Check that the rubber ring [2] is attached to the shaft support [1] of ITB web unit as shown in the figure.



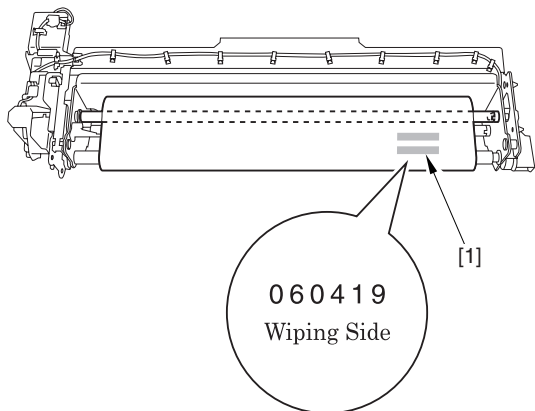
2) Make sure to check the following items before operation.



- Because there is a direction assigned to the take-up of the ITB web [1], be sure to attach it in the direction shown in the figure below. The machine may be damaged if attaching it in the wrong direction.

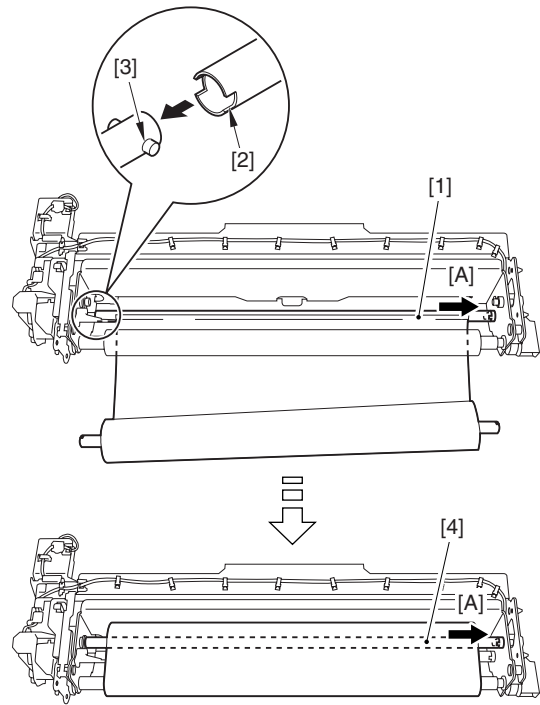


- Make sure to attach the ITB web with its engraved mark [1] facing to the rear side.

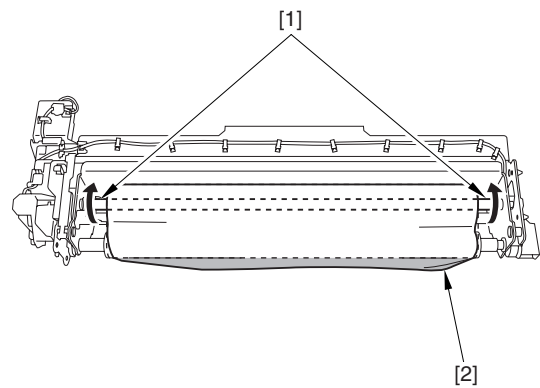


Fit the ITB web shaft [1] (at the take-up side) with the ITB web unit shaft support. While pushing it in the direction of [A], fit the cut-off [2] of the ITB web shaft at the opposite side with the shaft's front end pin [3] of the ITB web unit.

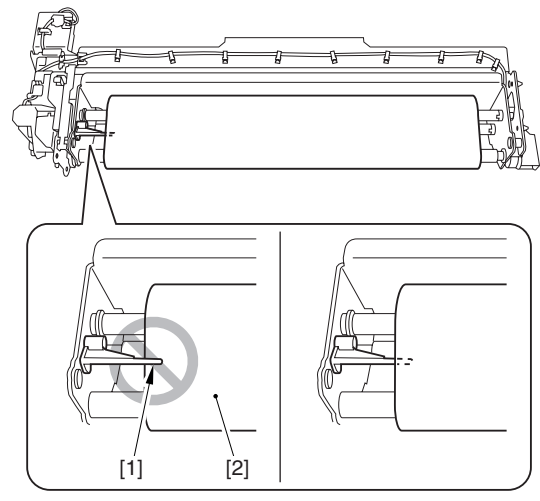
Fit the ITB web shaft [4] (at the feeding side) with the ITB web unit shaft support. While pushing it in the direction of [A], fit the ITB web unit shaft with the ITB web unit shaft support at the opposite side to attach.



3) Turn the ITB web shaft [1] in the direction of the arrow to take up the ITB web [2] so that there is no slack of web.



4) Put the ITB web length detection flag [1] under the ITB web [2].



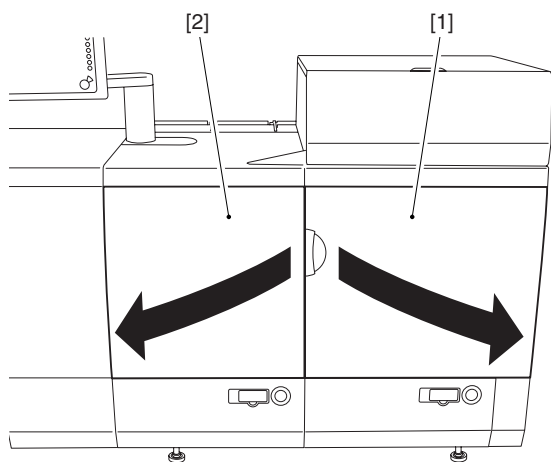
7.10.27 Intermediate Transfer Belt

7.10.27.1 Removing the Intermediate Transfer Belt (ITB)

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

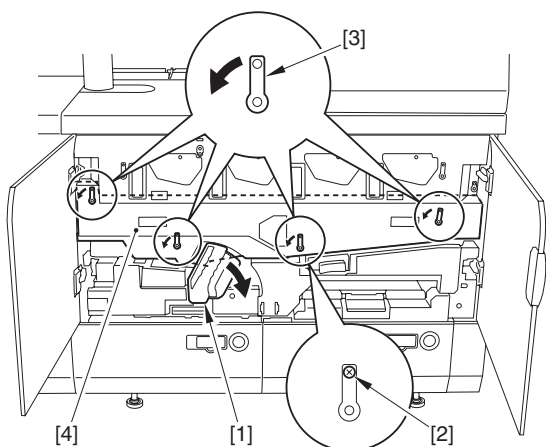
1) Open fully the front right cover [1], and then the front left cover [2] of

main station.



F-7-249

- 2) Shift down the lever (B-E1) [1] in the direction of the arrow. Remove the stepped screw [2] and shift the 4 levers [3] down in the direction of the arrow to detach the intermediate transfer unit cover [4].

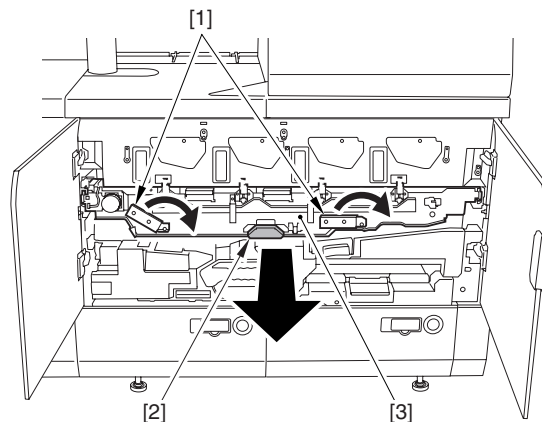


F-7-250

- 3) Make sure to check the following items before operation.

⚠ Points to Note When Holding the ITB Release Lever
 Holding the release lever [1] fully may cause your hands get caught. Do not hold the release lever beyond the [A] area.

Shift the release lever [1] of intermediate transfer assembly in the direction of arrow. Hold the handle [2] to slide out the intermediate transfer assembly [3] until it is locked.

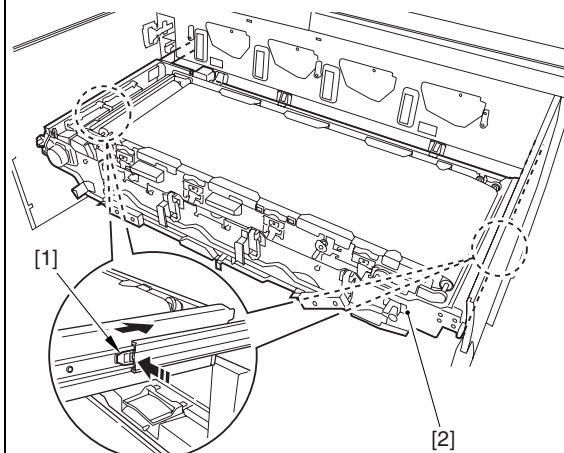


F-7-251

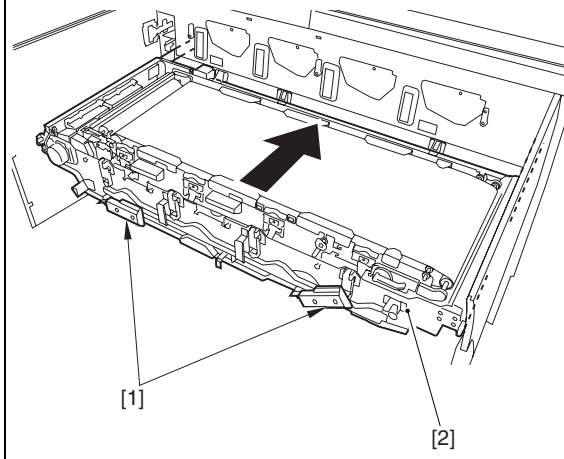
Storing Intermediate Transfer Assembly

- 1) While pushing the 2 lock release springs [1], slide the intermediate transfer assembly [2] toward the rear side until the lock position is released.

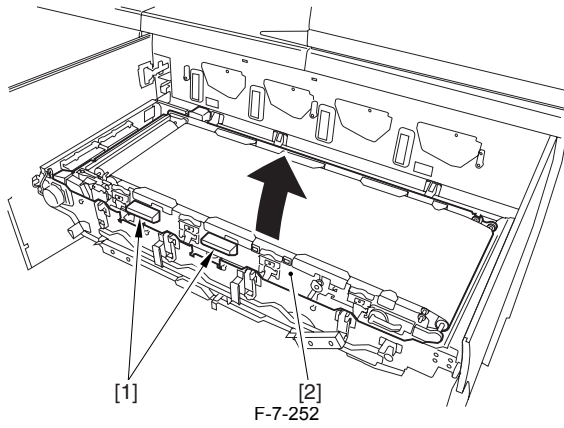
⚠
 When sliding the intermediate transfer assembly [2] toward the rear side, be careful not to get your fingers caught.



- 2) Hold the release lever [1] to slide in the intermediate transfer assembly [2].

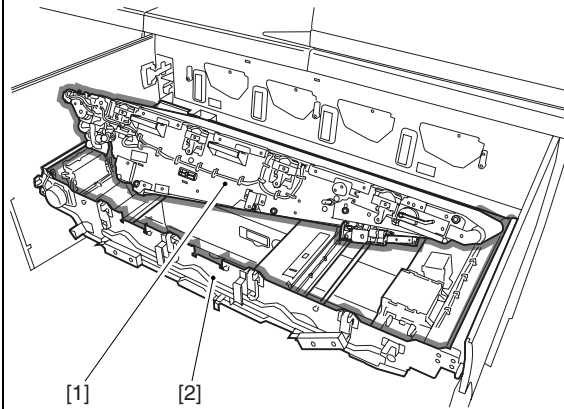


- 4) Hold the handle [1] with both hands and lift up the intermediate transfer belt unit [2] by approx. 40 deg, and then, lift it down to the lock position (at approx. 30 deg.).

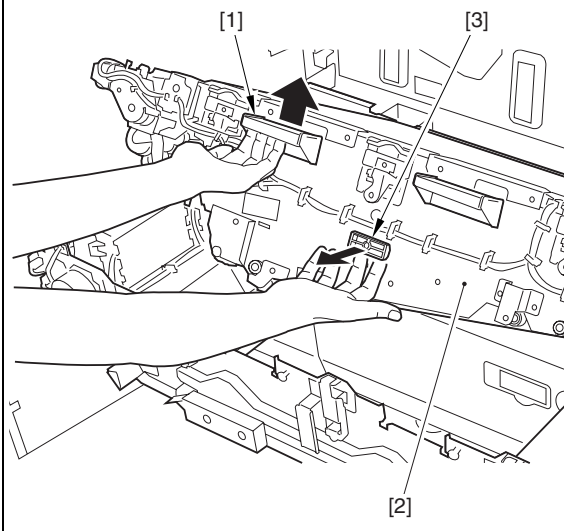


Lifting Down Intermediate Transfer Belt Unit
Make sure to check the following items before operation.

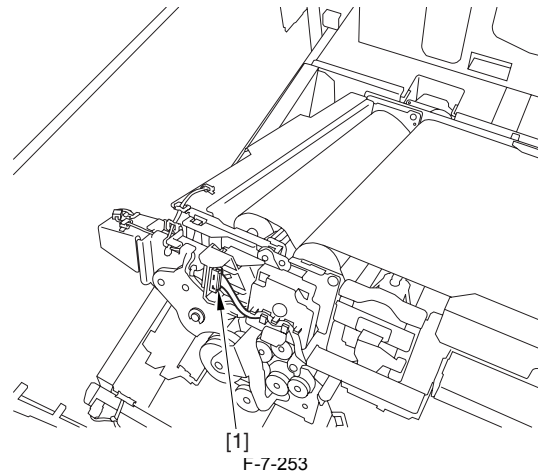
⚠ Point to Note When Lifting down Intermediate Transfer Belt Unit
When lifting down the intermediate transfer belt unit, be careful not to get your hands caught between the intermediate transfer belt unit [1] and the intermediate transfer frame [2].



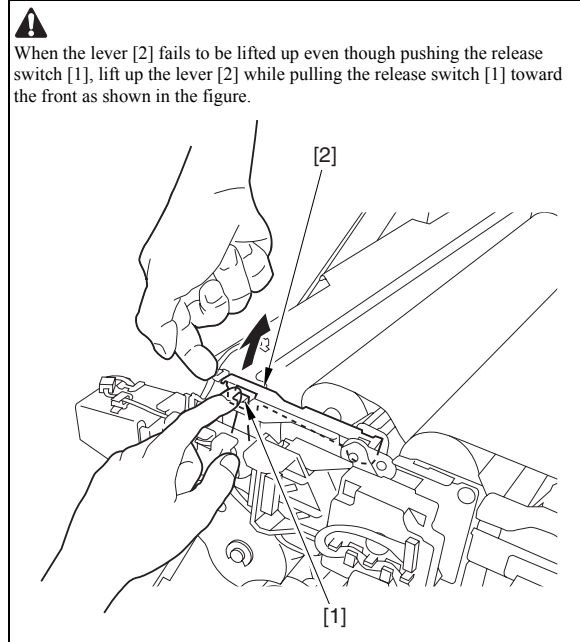
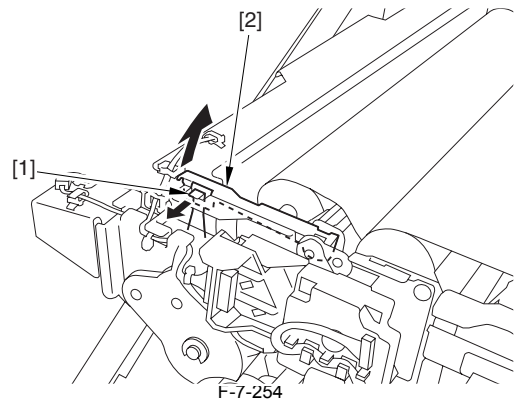
Hold the handle [1] as shown in the figure to pull out the lever [3] fully while lifting up the intermediate transfer belt unit [2].
While pulling the lever [3], slightly lift down the intermediate transfer belt unit. When the belt passes through the lock release position (approx. 30 deg), release your hands (intermediate transfer belt unit slowly moves downward).



5) Disconnect the connector [1].

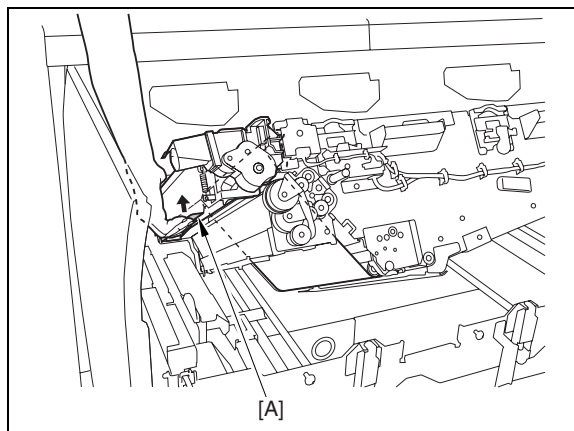


6) Pull the release switch [1] toward the front to release the lever [2].

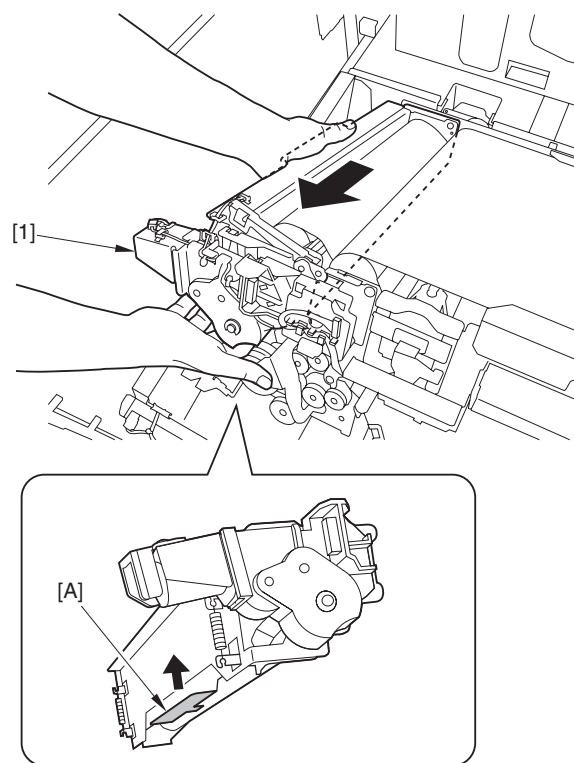


7) Make sure to check the following items before operation.

⚠ Points to Note When Removing (Attaching) ITB Web Unit
Lift up the area [A] of the ITB web [1] with care not to damage the intermediate transfer belt, and remove (attach) it while the intermediate transfer belt is disengaged with the ITB web.

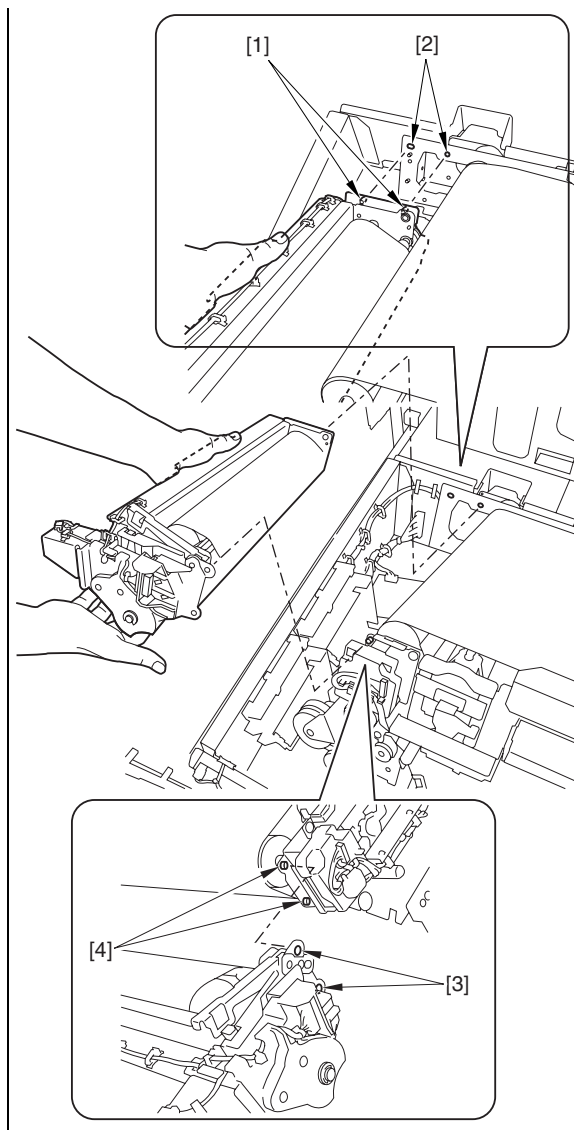


While lifting up the [A] area, slide the ITB web unit [1] toward the front to remove.



F-7-255

⚠ Points to Note When Attaching ITB Web Unit
Fit the rear side boss [1] into the boss hole [2] of the intermediate transfer belt unit. Also fit the front side boss hole [3] with the boss [4] of the intermediate transfer belt unit to attach.



8) Spread paper where the ITB cleaner unit to be placed.



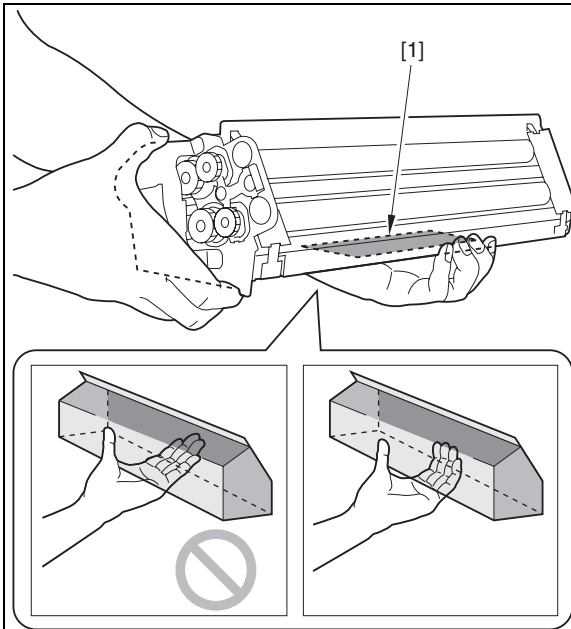
In the subsequent steps, always spread paper under the units/parts to avoid the environment contaminated with toner.

9) Make sure to check the following items before operation.

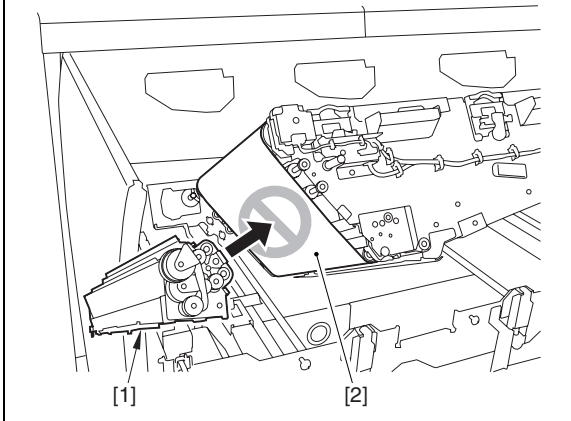


Points to Note When Holding ITB Cleaner Unit

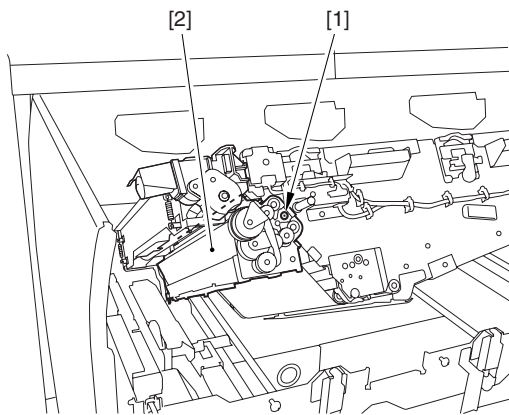
- Be sure not to hold the lower area of the ITB cleaner unit with your palm attached otherwise it causes the shutter [1] at the lower side slide to open and the toner may be spilled.



- Be sure not to contact the ITB cleaner unit [1] with the intermediate transfer belt [2].

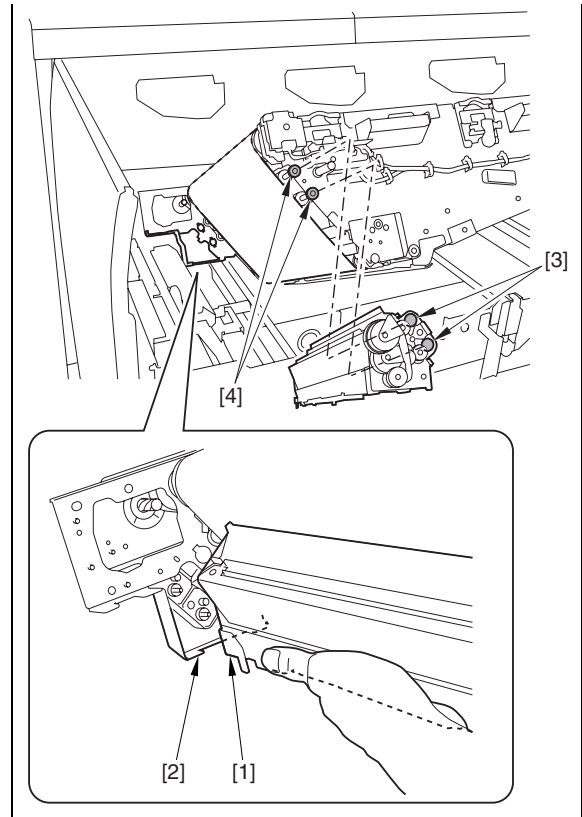


Remove the screw [1] and hold the ITB cleaner unit [2] with both hands to remove it toward the front.

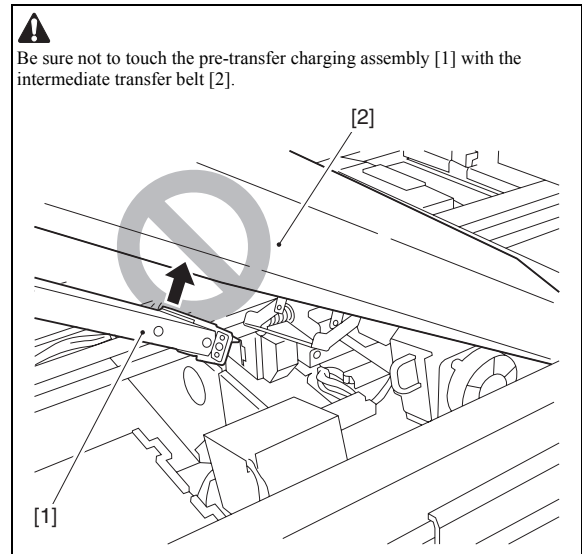


F-7-256

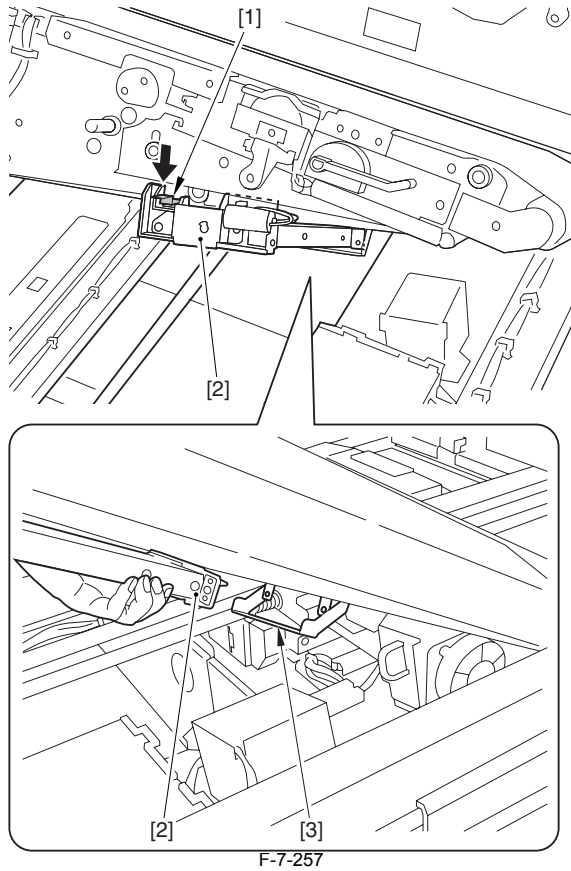
⚠ Point to Note When Attaching the ITB Cleaner Unit
 Put the edge [1] of the ITB cleaner unit on the frame [2] of the intermediate transfer belt unit. Then, fit the hole [3] of the ITB cleaner unit with the bearing [4] of the intermediate transfer belt unit, and tighten the screw while supporting it with hand.



10) Make sure to check the following items before operation.

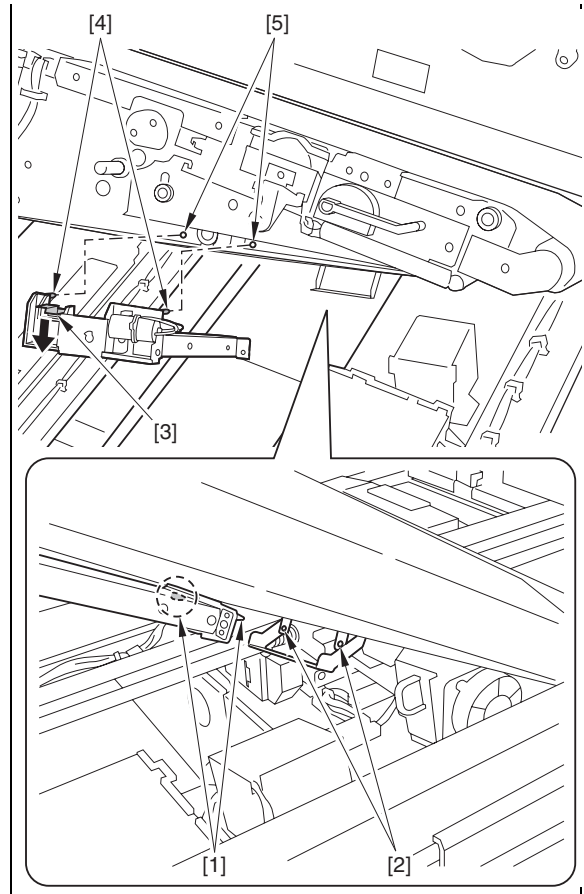


Push the leaf spring [1] in the direction of the arrow, and secure the pre-transfer charging assembly [2] to remove so that the rear side of the pre-transfer charging assembly [2] will not be dropped from the base [3].

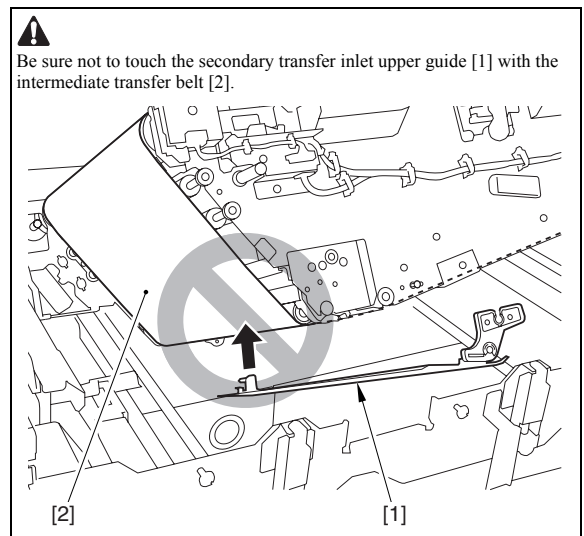


⚠ Points to Note When Attaching the Pre-transfer Charging Assembly

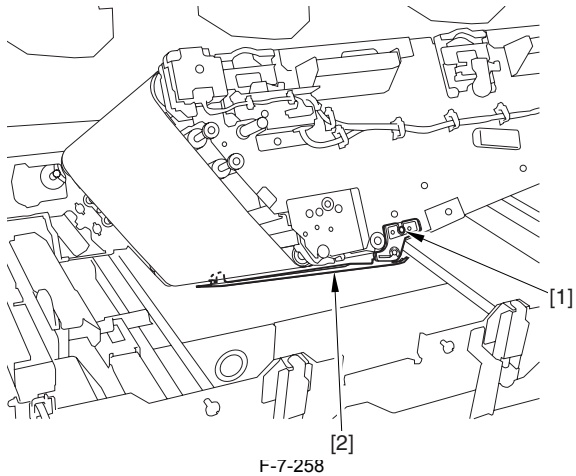
Fit the rear protrusion [1] of the pre-transfer assembly into the hole [2] of the intermediate transfer belt unit. While pushing the leaf spring [3], also fit the front protrusion [4] into the hole [5] of the intermediate transfer belt unit to attach.



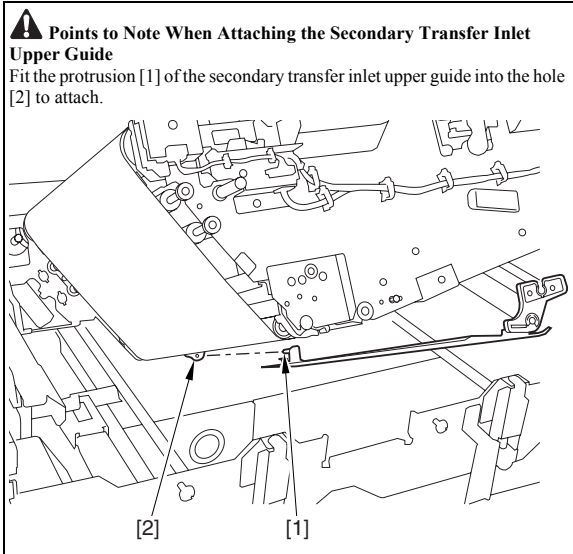
1) Make sure to check the following items before operation.



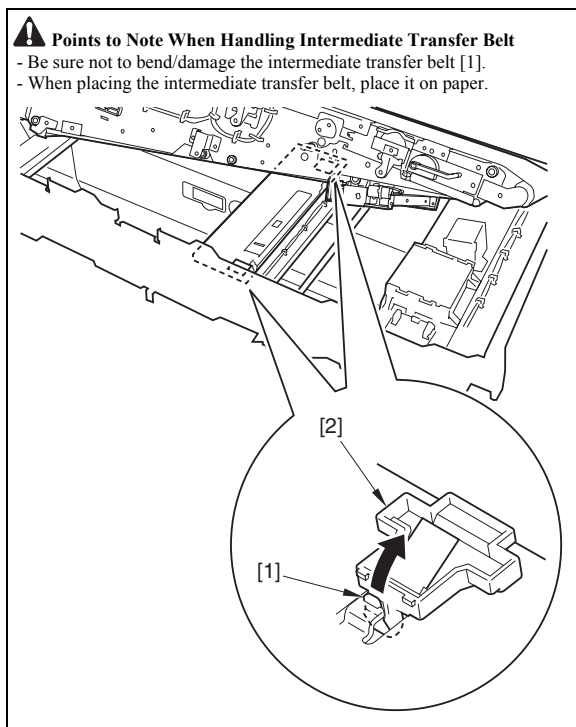
Loosen the screw [1] to remove the secondary transfer inlet upper guide [2].



F-7-258

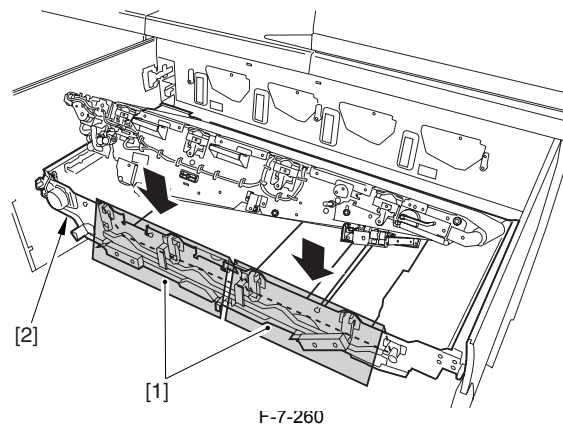


12) Make sure to check the following items before operation.



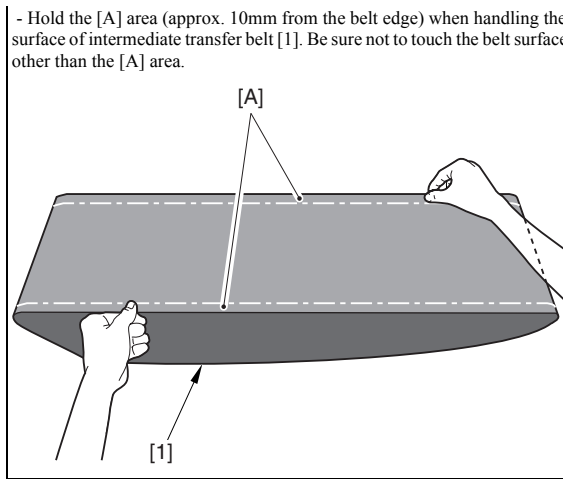
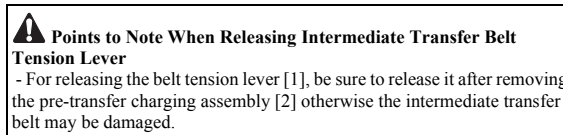
F-7-259

13) To prevent damage on the intermediate transfer belt, fold the 2 papers [1] in two to cover the intermediate transfer frame [2] as shown in the figure.

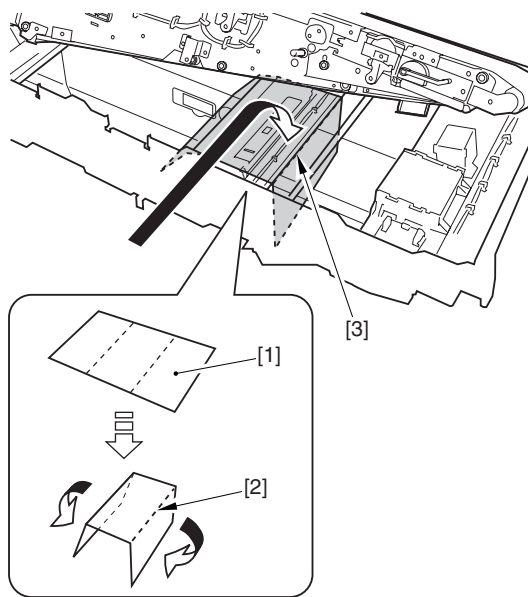


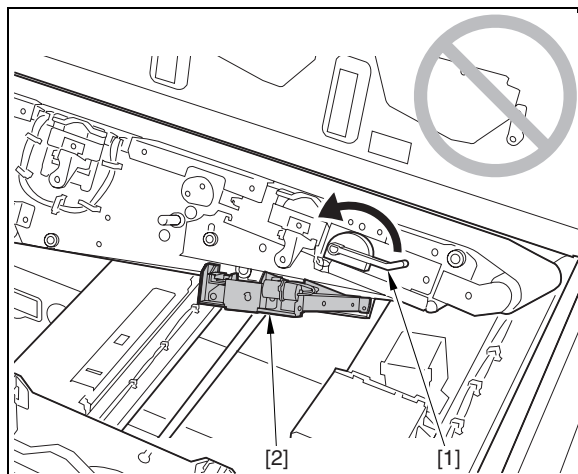
F-7-260

14) Make sure to check the following items before operation.

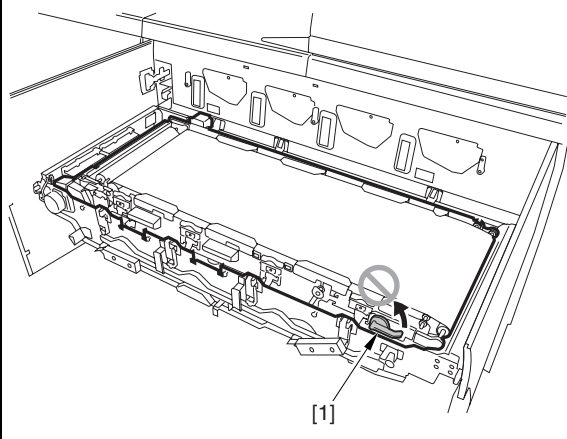


To prevent damage on intermediate transfer belt, fold the paper [1] in three, and align the fold line [2] with the edge [3] of intermediate transfer frame to cover.

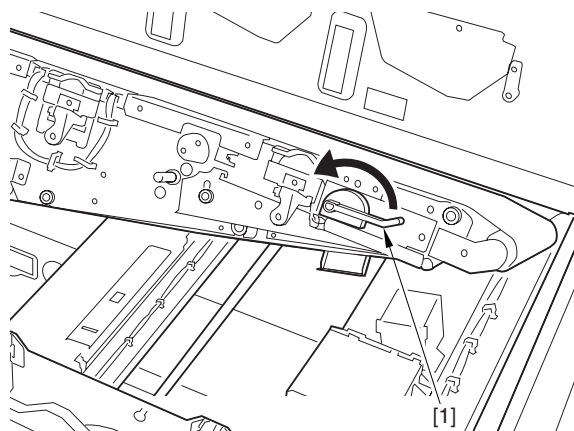




- Be sure to lift up the intermediate transfer belt unit when releasing the belt tension lever [1] otherwise the intermediate transfer belt may be damaged.



Release the tension lever [1] in the direction of the arrow.

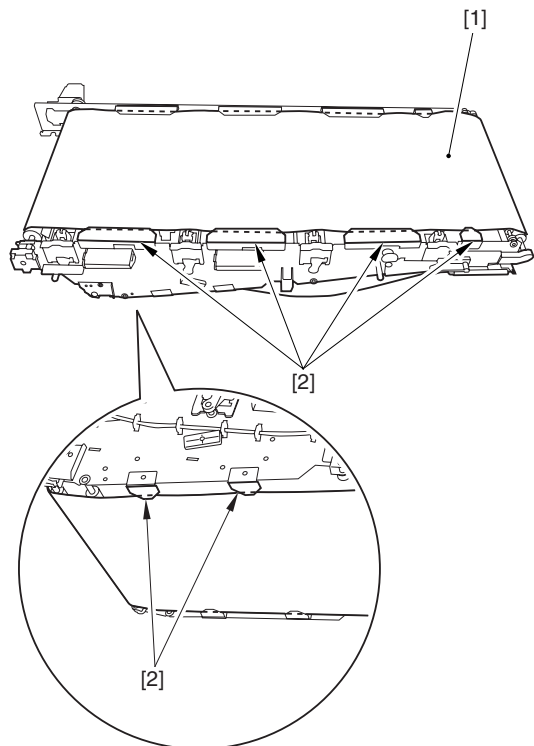


F-7-261

15) Put the intermediate transfer belt [1] out of the 6 belt retaining sheets [2].



Be sure not to bend the belt retaining sheets [2].

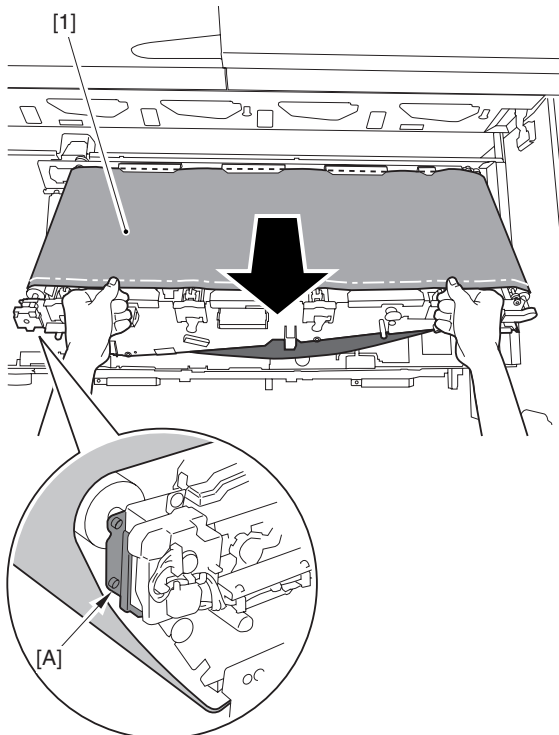


F-7-262

16) Remove the intermediate transfer belt [1].



When removing the intermediate transfer belt, be sure not to bend/damage the belt surface. Especially be careful of the [A] area of the intermediate transfer belt unit.



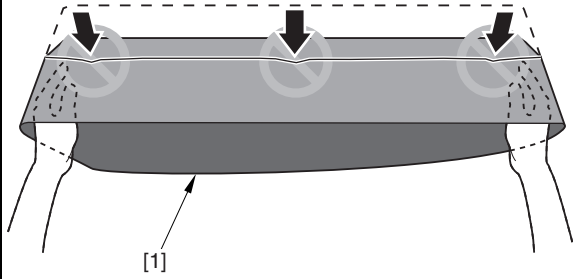
F-7-263

Attaching Intermediate Transfer Belt

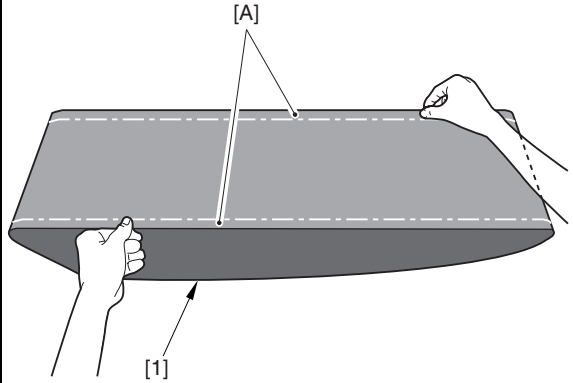
1) Make sure to check the following items before operation.

⚠ Points to Note When Handling Intermediate Transfer Belt

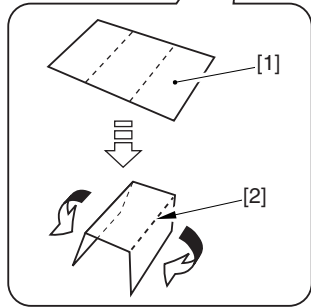
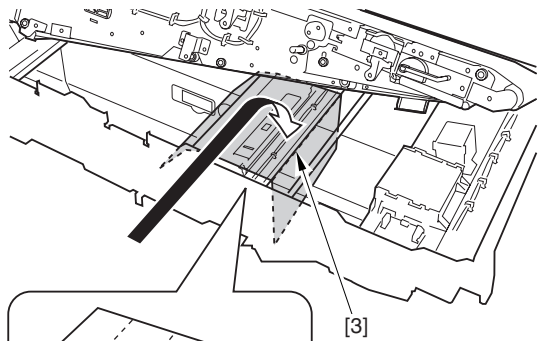
- Be sure not to bend/damage the intermediate transfer belt [1].
- When placing the intermediate transfer belt, place it on paper.



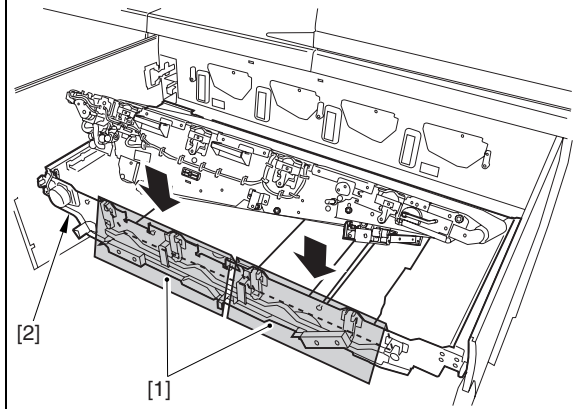
- Hold the [A] area (approx. 10mm from the belt edge) when handling the surface of intermediate transfer belt [1]. Be sure not to touch the belt surface other than the [A] area.



To prevent damage on intermediate transfer belt, fold the paper [1] in three, and align the fold line [2] with the edge [3] of intermediate transfer frame to cover.



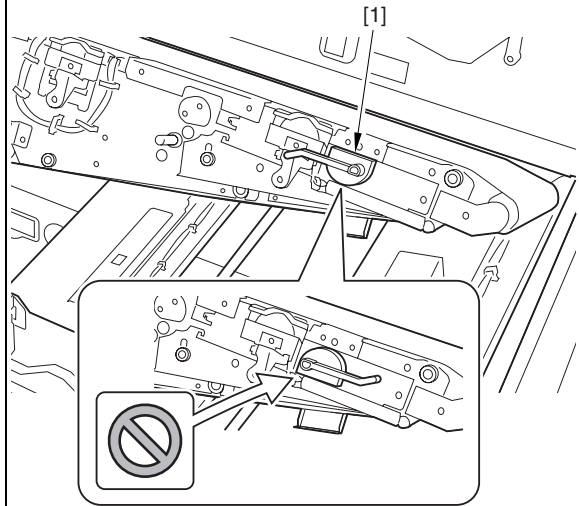
2) To prevent damage on the intermediate transfer belt, fold the 2 papers [1] in two to cover the intermediate transfer frame [2] as shown in the figure.



3) Check that the belt tension lever [1] is released.



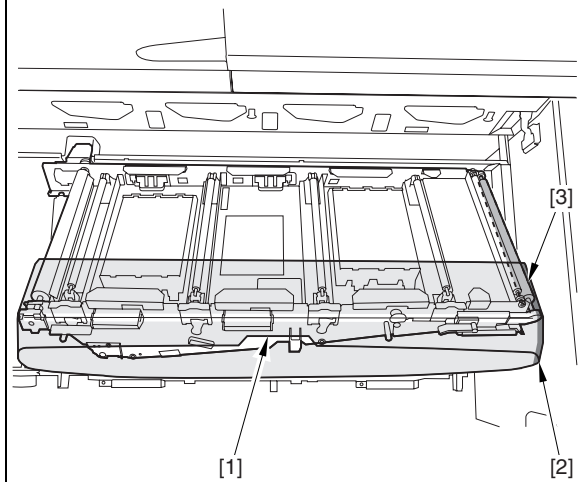
Be sure to release the belt tension lever [1] before attaching the intermediate transfer belt.



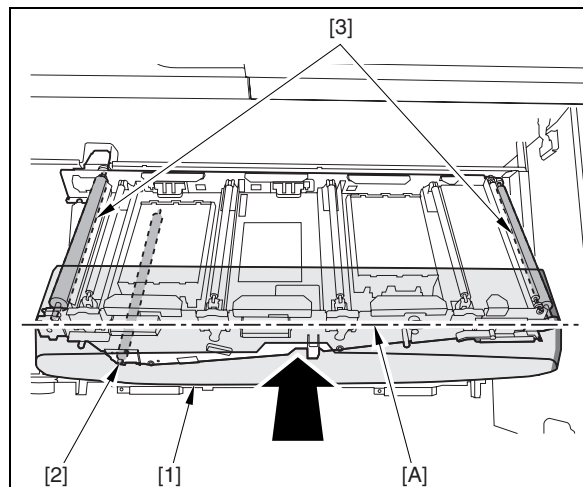
4) Make sure to check the following items before operation.



Place the cut-off [1] of the intermediate transfer belt installation sheet in the front. Fit the seam [2] with the right edge area (steering roller) [3] of the intermediate transfer unit to attach.



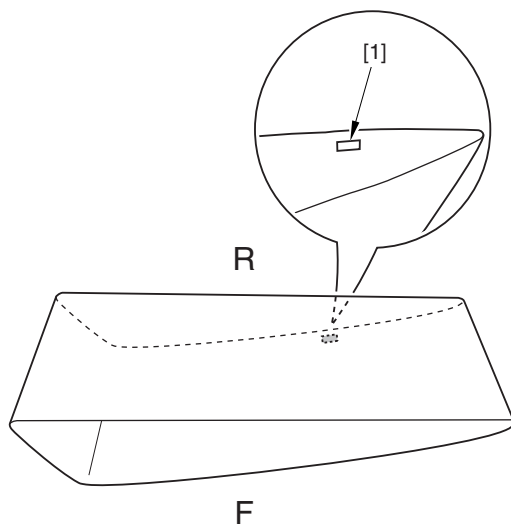
After putting the intermediate transfer belt installation sheet [1] over the secondary transfer inner roller [2] located at the lower side of the intermediate transfer belt unit, put it over rollers [3] at both edges to gradually slide it until the sheet covers the half [A] of the frame.



5) Make sure to check the following items before operation.

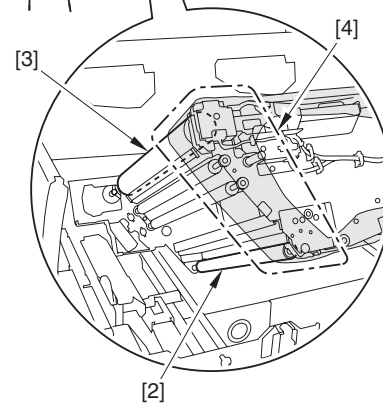
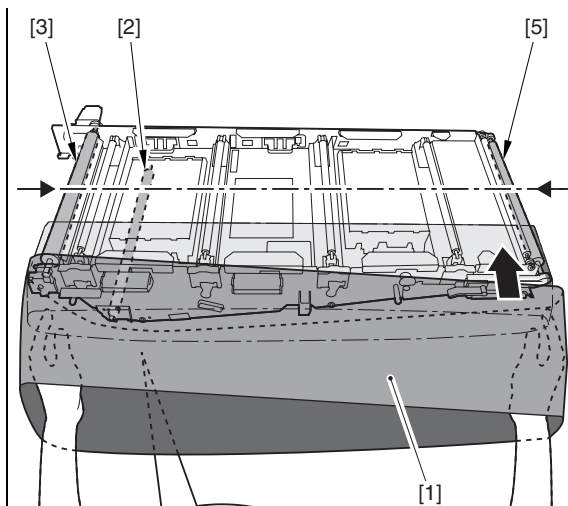


Because there is the orientation for the intermediate transfer belt to attach, be sure to attach it with the inner white seal [1] located at the rear.



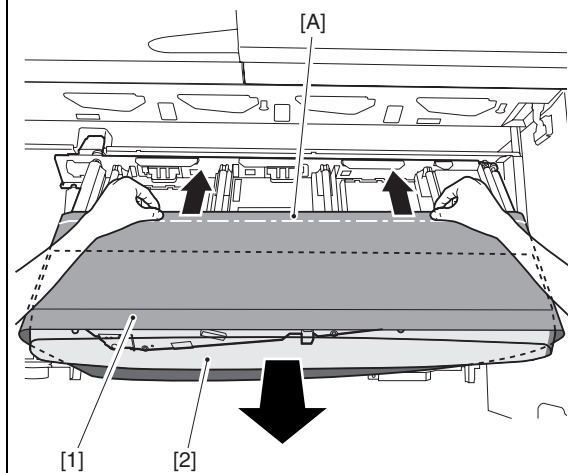
While stretching the intermediate transfer belt [1] with both hands, fit the inner surface of the belt over the secondary transfer inner roller [2] first, and then over the drive roller [3] to place the belt at the left [4] of the intermediate transfer belt unit.

Next, fit the inner surface of the belt over the steering roller [5] located at the right edge of intermediate transfer belt unit parallel until it covers the half of the frame.

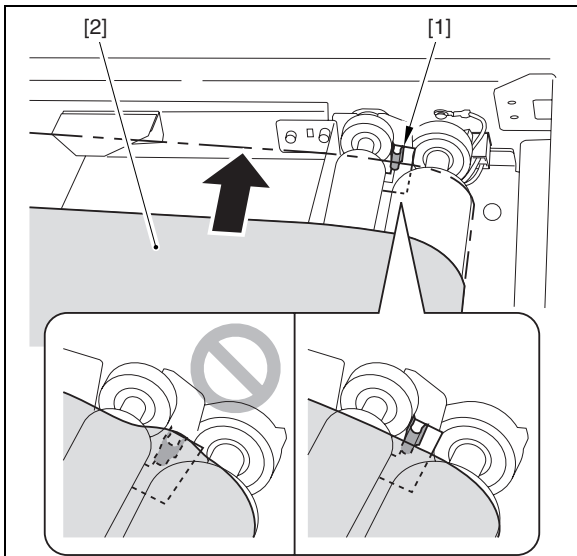


6) Pick the rear nonimage area [A] (approx. 10mm from the belt edge) of the intermediate transfer belt [1] to gradually slide it evenly toward the rear side of the intermediate transfer belt unit.

Once the intermediate transfer belt [1] is attached toward the rear, remove the intermediate transfer belt installation sheet [2].



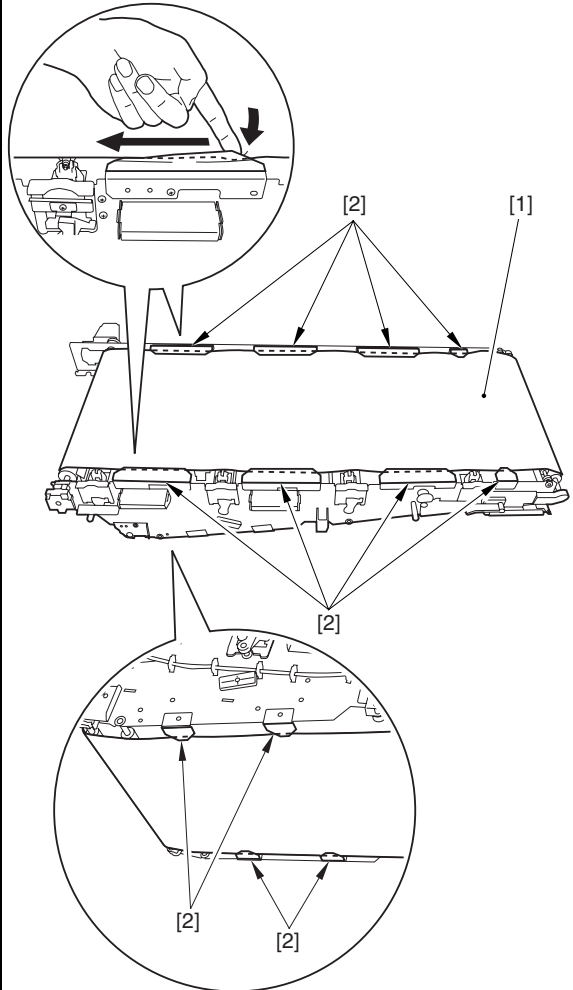
Put the intermediate transfer belt position flag [1] above the intermediate transfer belt [2].



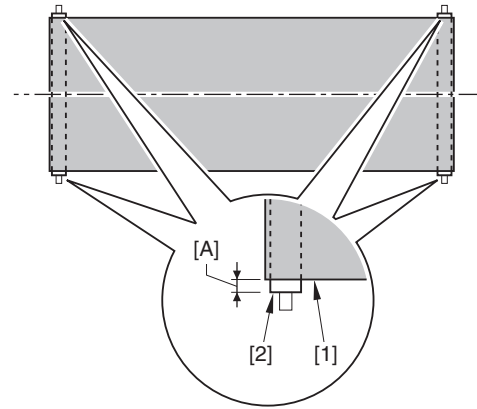
7) Make sure to check the following items before operation.



- Before returning the belt tension lever to be in the engaged state, Be sure to take the 12 belt retaining sheets [2] that are hidden beneath the intermediate transfer belt [1] out to be on the intermediate transfer belt. Be sure not to bend the belt retaining sheets [2].



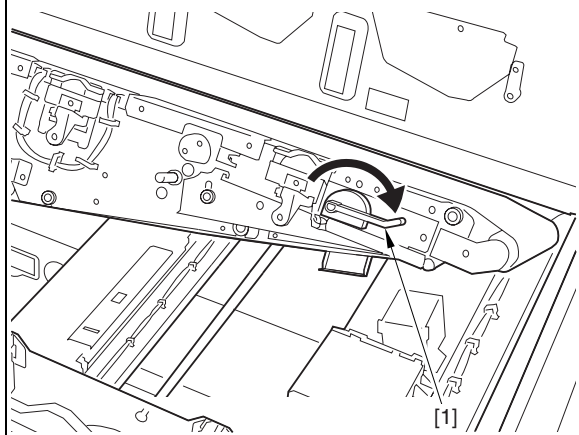
- Before returning the belt tension lever to be in the engaged state, Be sure to shift the intermediate transfer belt to make the distance [A] between the edge [1] of the intermediate transfer belt and the edge [2] of rollers at the intermediate transfer unit to be equal for both the rear side and the front side.



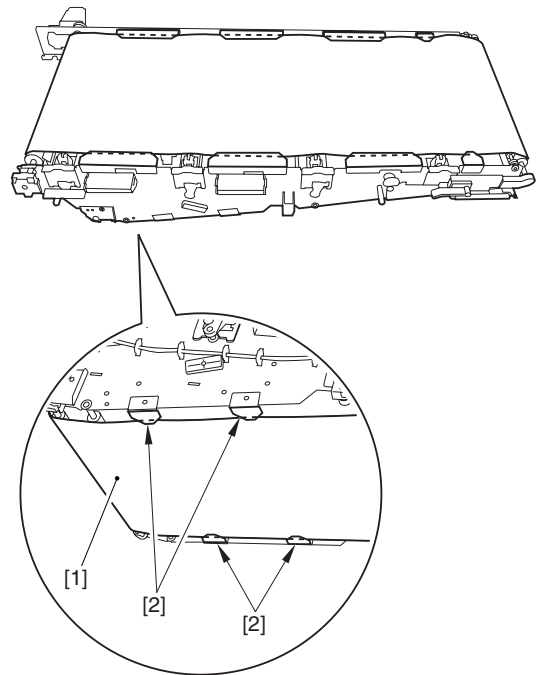
Shift the belt tension lever [1] to be engaged.



Check the click sound when shifting the tension lever.



Take the 4 belt retaining sheets [2] that are hidden beneath the intermediate transfer belt [1] out to be on the intermediate transfer belt. Be sure not to bend the belt retaining sheets [2].

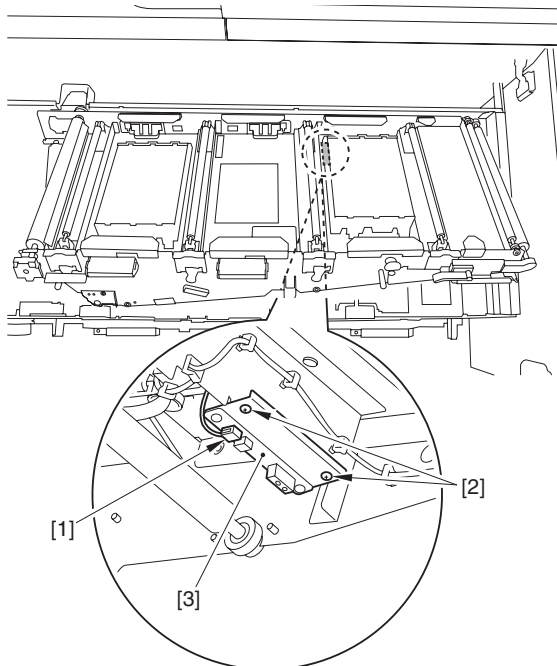


7.10.28 ITB Home Position Sensor

7.10.28.1 Removing ITB Home Position Sensor

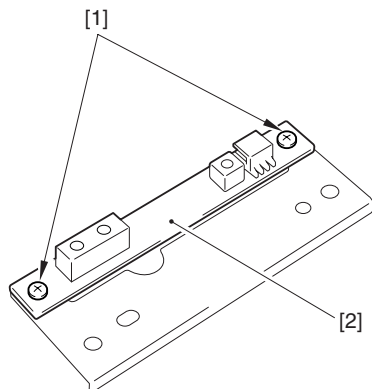
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- 1) Remove the intermediate transfer belt. (Refer to 'Removing the Intermediate Transfer Belt (ITB)')
- 2) Remove the ITB HP sensor (lower) unit [3].
 - 2 screws [1]
 - 1 connector [2]



F-7-264

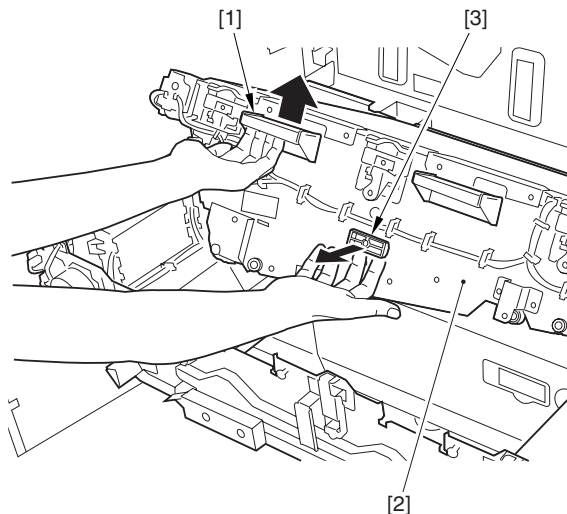
- 3) Remove the 2 screws [1] and remove the ITB HP sensor (lower) [2].



F-7-265

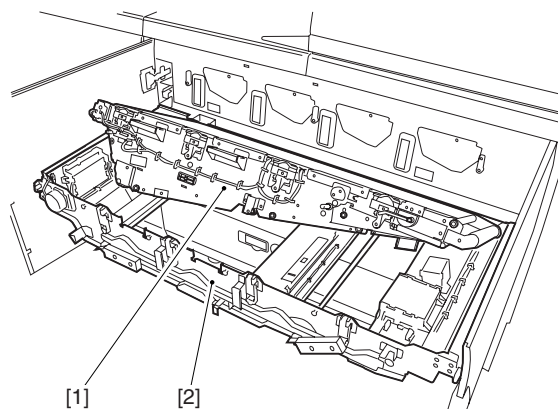
- 4) Lift down the ITB unit.

▲ Points to Note When Moving Down the Intermediate Transfer Unit
 - Hold the grip [1] as shown in the figure. While lifting the intermediate transfer unit [2], pull the lever [3] fully. With the lever [3] pulled, slightly move down the intermediate transfer unit. Release both hands when it passes over the lock release position (approx. 30 deg) (intermediate transfer unit slowly moves down).



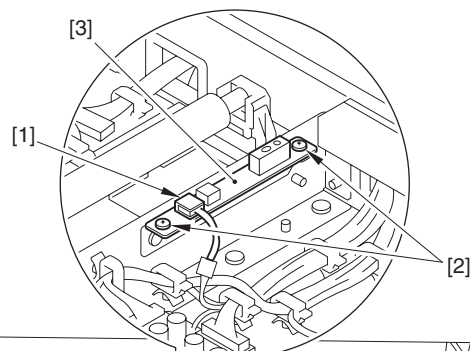
F-7-266

- When moving down the intermediate transfer unit, be sure not to let your hands caught between the intermediate transfer unit [1] and the intermediate transfer unit frame [2].



F-7-267

- 5) Remove the ITB HP sensor (upper) [3].
 - 1 connector [1]
 - 2 screws [2]



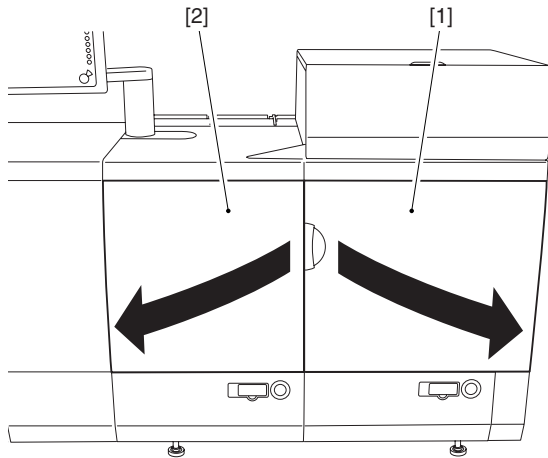
F-7-268

7.10.29 Primary Transfer Roller

7.10.29.1 Removing Primary Transfer Roller (Y/M/C/Bk)

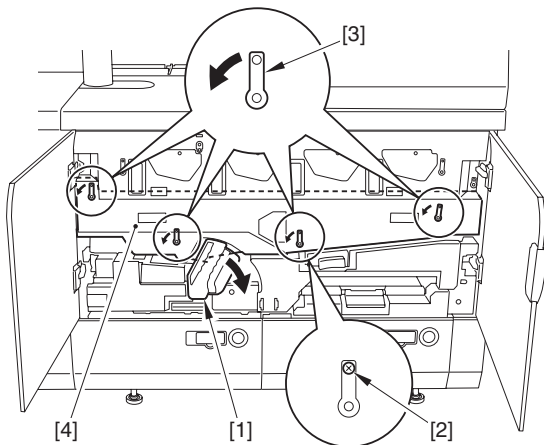
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- 1) Open fully the front right cover [1], and then the front left cover [2] of main station.



F-7-269

- 2) Shift down the lever (B-E1) [1] in the direction of the arrow. Remove the stepped screw [2] and shift the 4 levers [3] down in the direction of the arrow to detach the intermediate transfer unit cover [4].

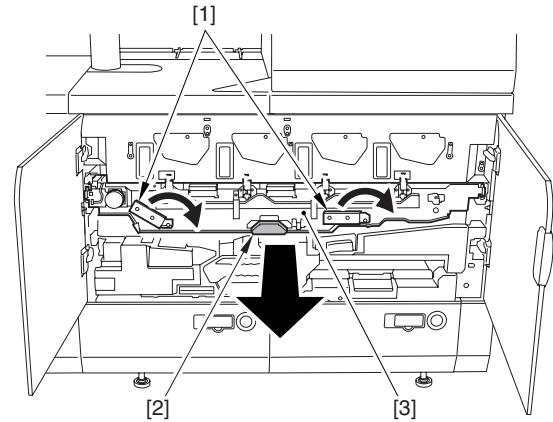


F-7-270

- 3) Make sure to check the following items before operation.

⚠ Points to Note When Holding the ITB Release Lever
 Holding the release lever [1] fully may cause your hands get caught. Do not hold the release lever beyond the [A] area.

Shift the release lever [1] of intermediate transfer assembly in the direction of arrow. Hold the handle [2] to slide out the intermediate transfer assembly [3] until it is locked.



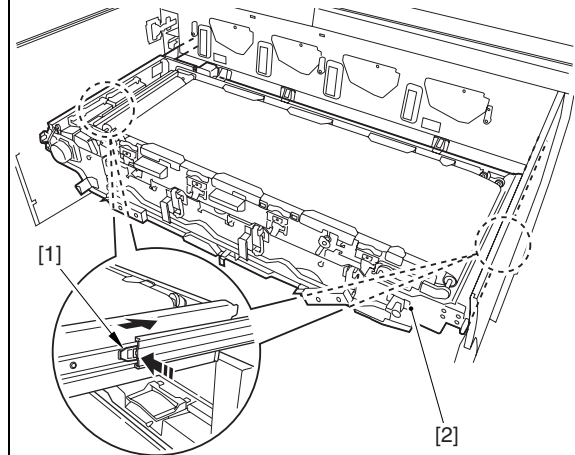
F-7-271

Storing Intermediate Transfer Assembly

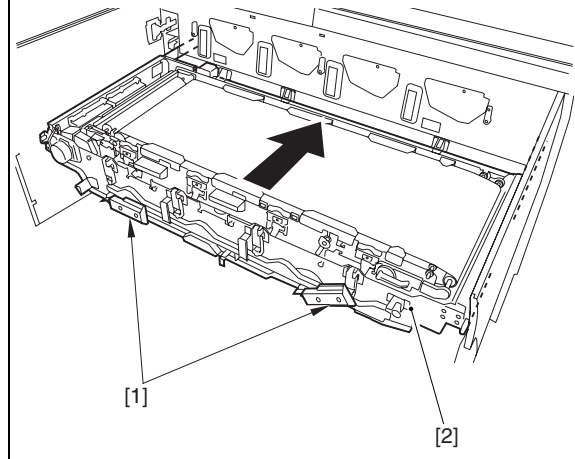
- 1) While pushing the 2 lock release springs [1], slide the intermediate transfer assembly [2] toward the rear side until the lock position is released.



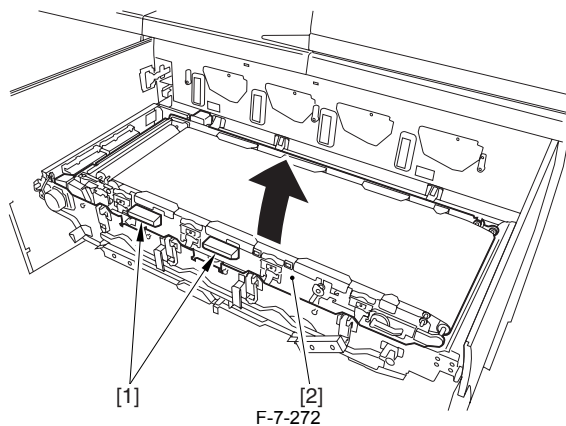
When sliding the intermediate transfer assembly [2] toward the rear side, be careful not to get your fingers caught.



- 2) Hold the release lever [1] to slide in the intermediate transfer assembly [2].



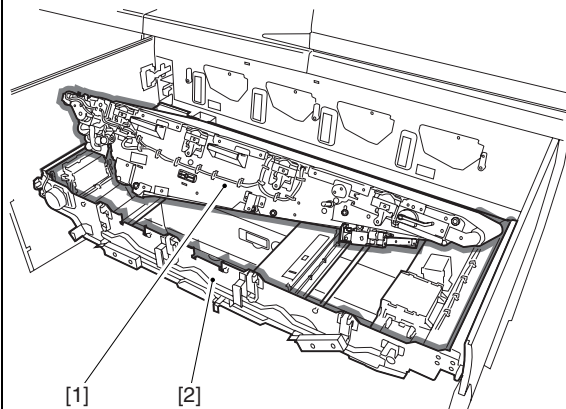
- 4) Hold the handle [1] with both hands and lift up the intermediate transfer belt unit [2] by approx. 40 deg, and then, lift it down to the lock position (at approx. 30 deg.).



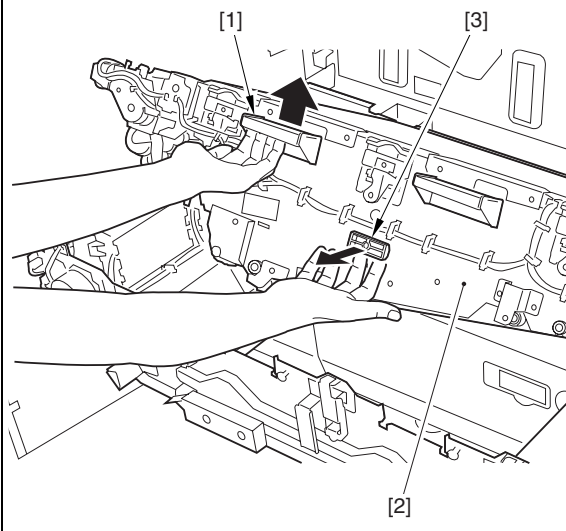
Lifting Down Intermediate Transfer Belt Unit

Make sure to check the following items before operation.

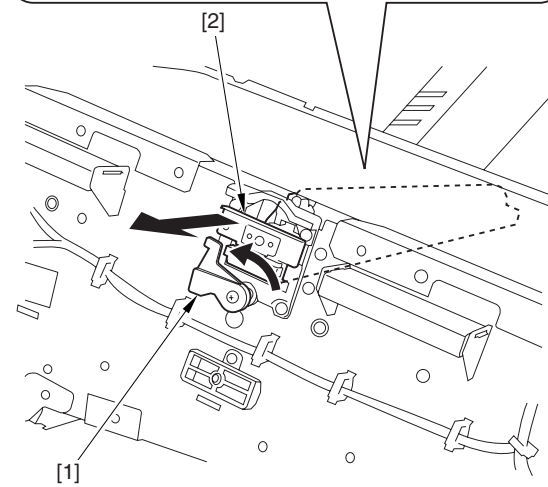
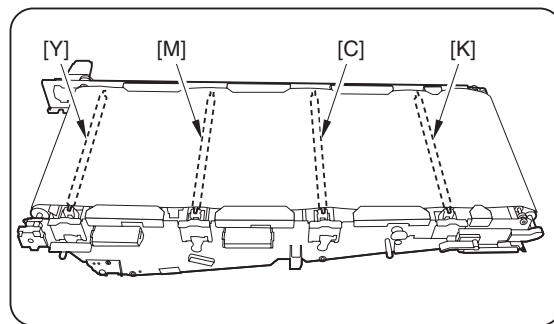
⚠ Point to Note When Lifting down Intermediate Transfer Belt Unit
When lifting down the intermediate transfer belt unit, be careful not to get your hands caught between the intermediate transfer belt unit [1] and the intermediate transfer frame [2].



Hold the handle [1] as shown in the figure to pull out the lever [3] fully while lifting up the intermediate transfer belt unit [2]. While pulling the lever [3], slightly lift down the intermediate transfer belt unit. When the belt passes through the lock release position (approx. 30 deg), release your hands (intermediate transfer belt unit slowly moves downward).

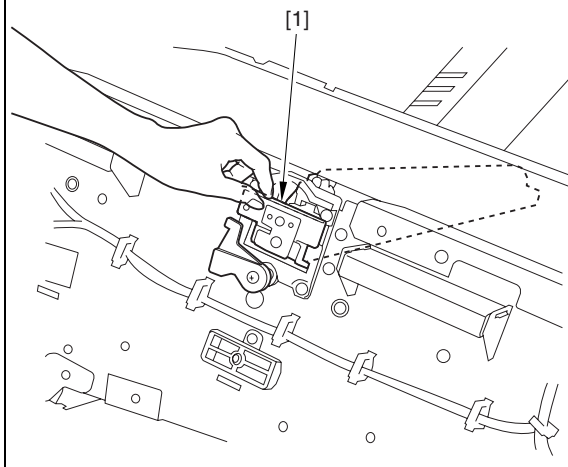


5) Remove the primary transfer roller unit [2] of the target color by shifting the release lever [1] of the unit.



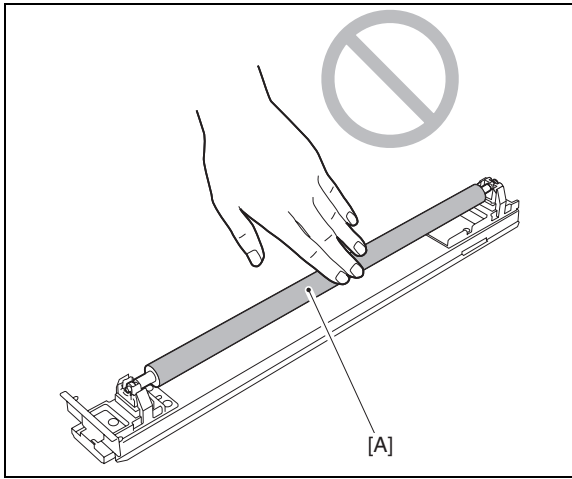
F-7-273

⚠ Point to Note When Removing the Primary Transfer Roller Unit
Be sure not to release your hands until the primary transfer roller unit [1] is fully inside. Otherwise, the unit may drop to the rear side of the intermediate transfer belt unit and get damages.

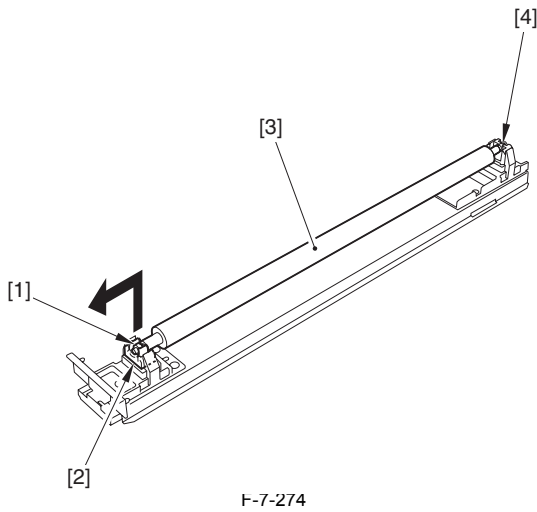


6) Make sure to check the following items before operation.

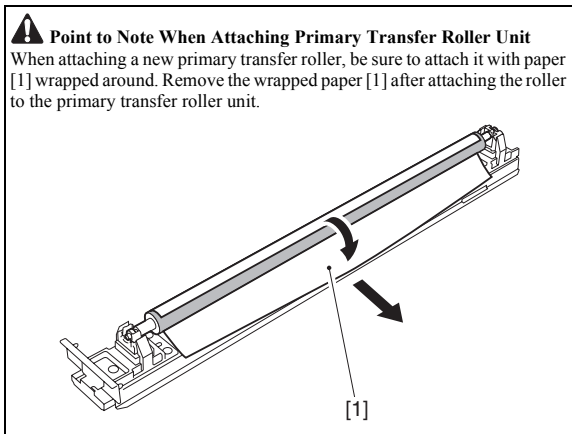
⚠ Point to Note When Handling Primary Transfer Roller Unit
Be sure not to touch the surface [A] of the primary transfer roller.



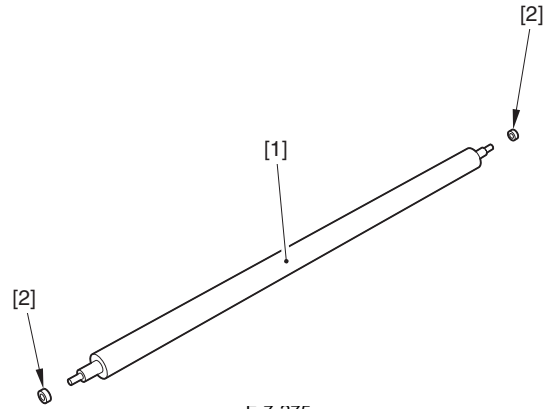
Remove the front side bearing [1] of the primary transfer roller shaft from the shaft support [2]. Then, remove the primary transfer roller with the rear side bearing [4] by sliding it toward the front.



F-7-274



7) Remove the bearing [2] from the primary transfer roller [1].



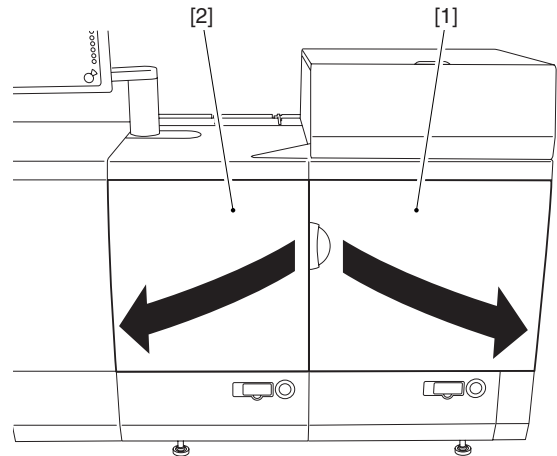
F-7-275

7.10.30 Secondary Transfer External Roller

7.10.30.1 Removing Secondary Transfer External Roller

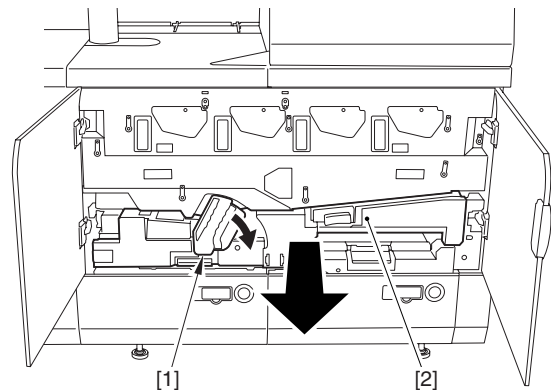
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- 1) Open fully the front right cover [1], and then the front left cover [2] of main station.



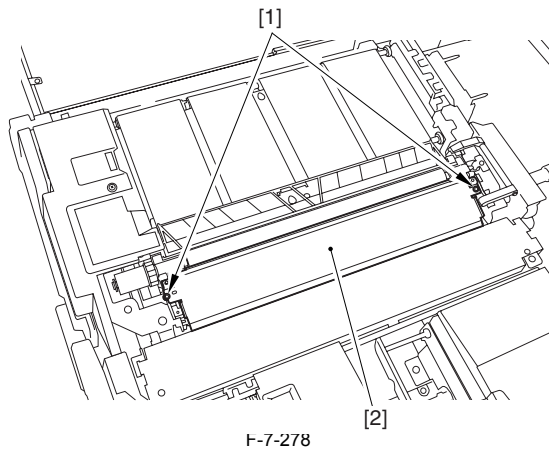
F-7-276

- 2) Shift the lever (B-E1) to the direction of the arrow. Hold the lever (B-E1) to slide the feeding unit [2] fully forward.

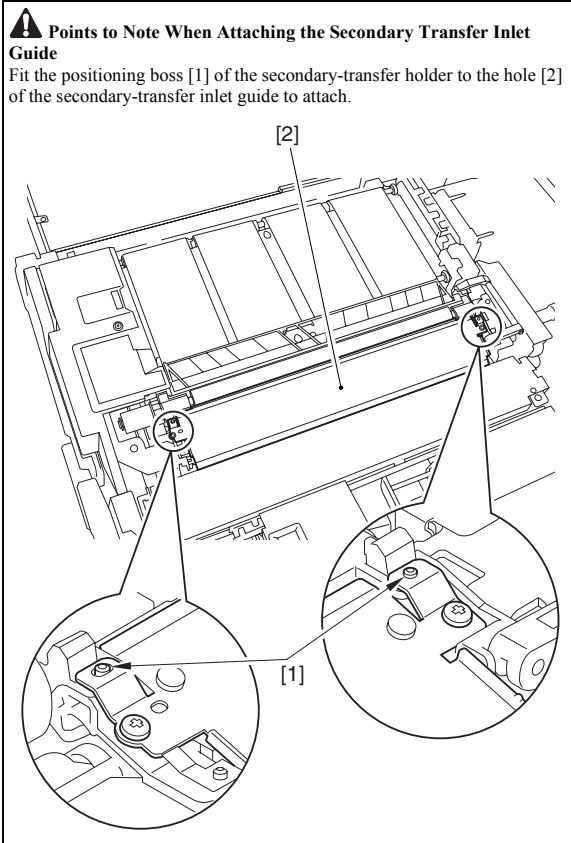


F-7-277

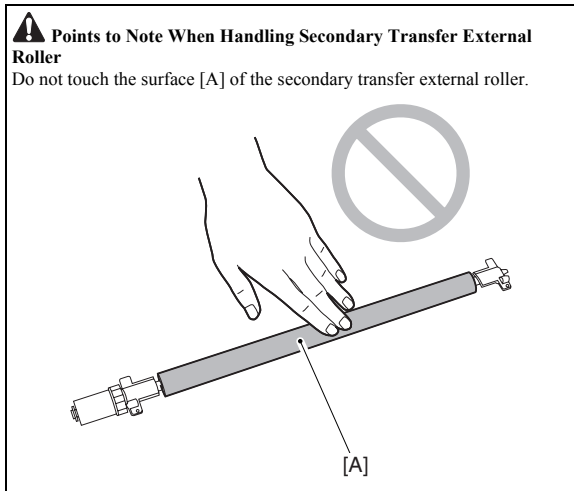
- 3) Remove the two screws [1] to remove the secondary transfer inlet guide [2].



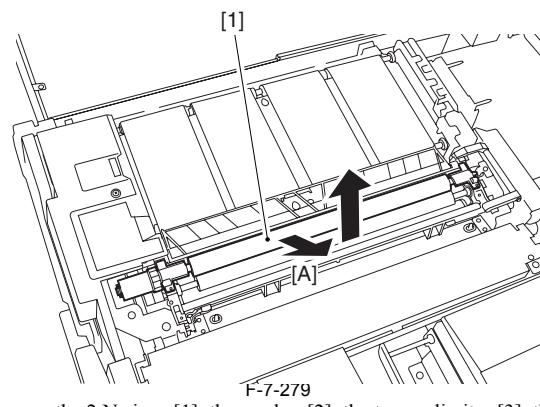
F-7-278



4) Make sure to check the following items before operation.

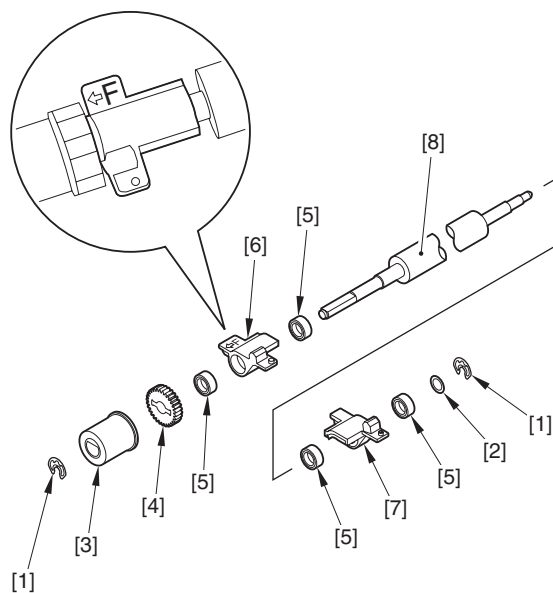


Slide the secondary transfer external roller unit [1] to the direction of [A] and remove the unit upward.

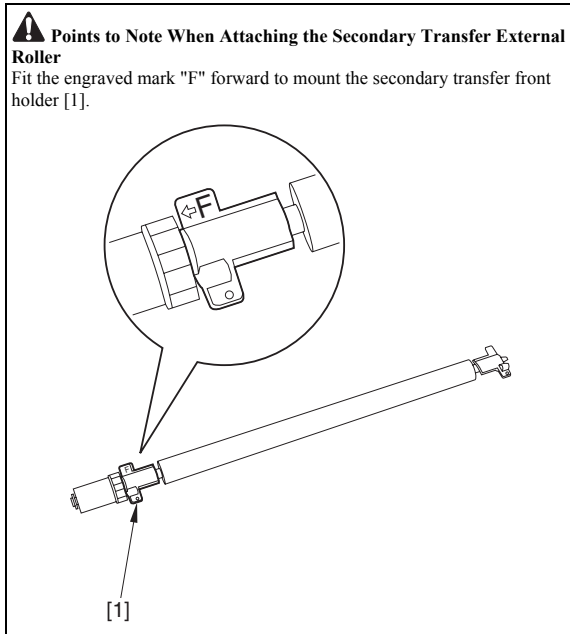


F-7-279

5) Remove the 2 N-rings [1], the washer [2], the torque limiter [3], the gear [4], the 4 bearings [5], the secondary transfer front holder [6] and the secondary transfer rear holder [7]. Remove the secondary transfer external roller [8].



F-7-280

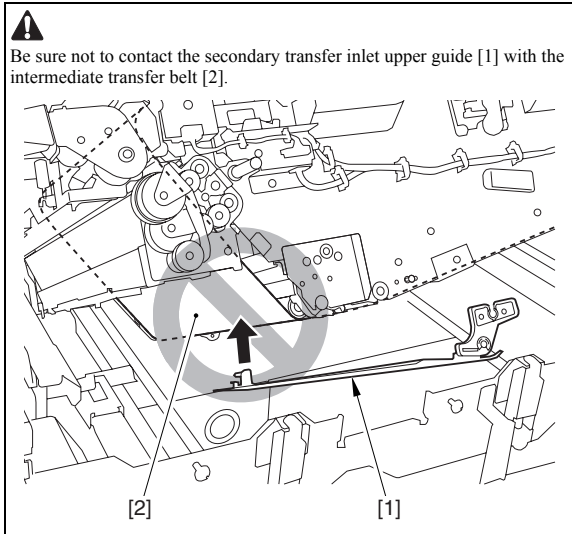


7.10.31 Secondary Transfer Internal Roller

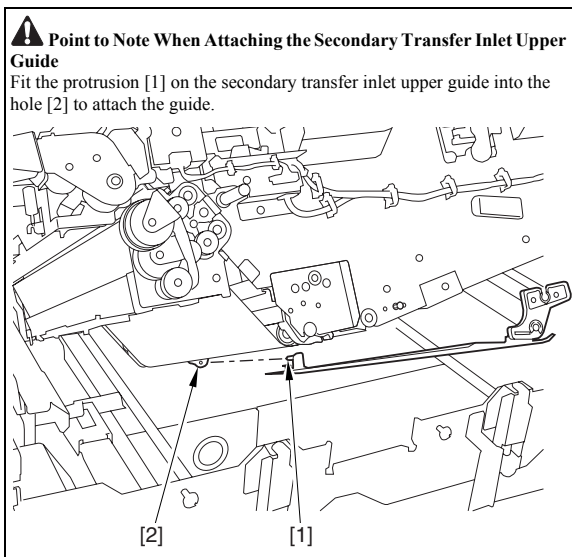
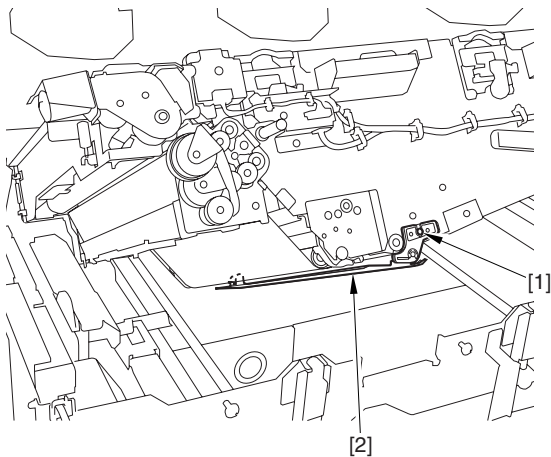
7.10.31.1 Removing Secondary Transfer Inside Roller

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

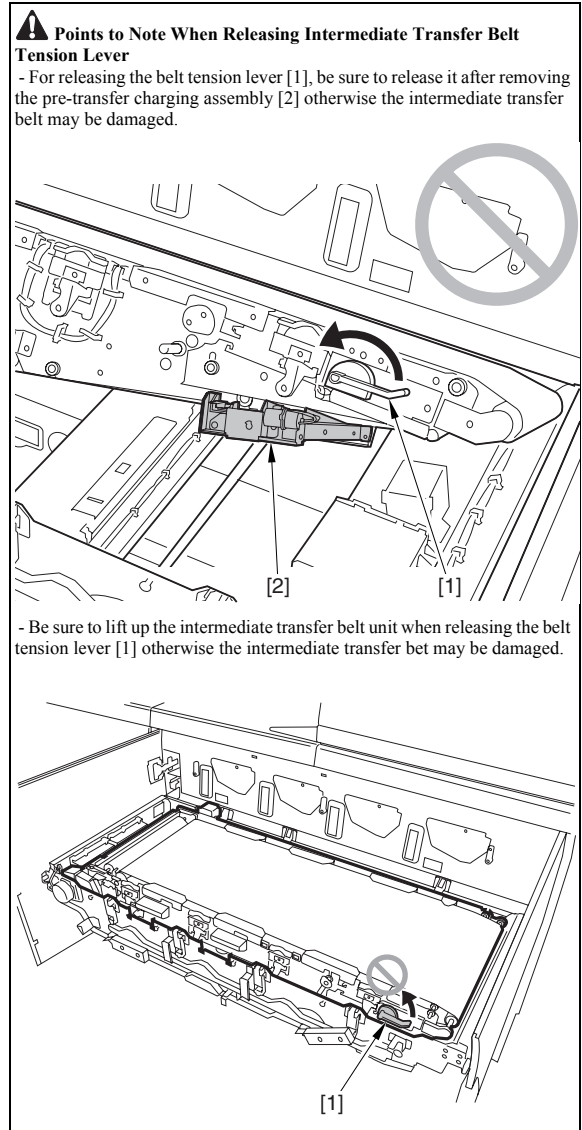
- 1) Remove the pre-transfer charging assembly.
- 2) Make sure to check the following items before operation.



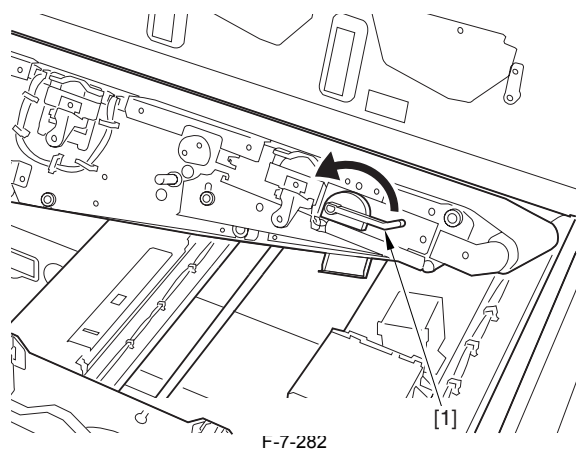
Loosen the screw [1], and remove the secondary transfer inlet upper guide [2].



- 3) Make sure to check the following items before operation.

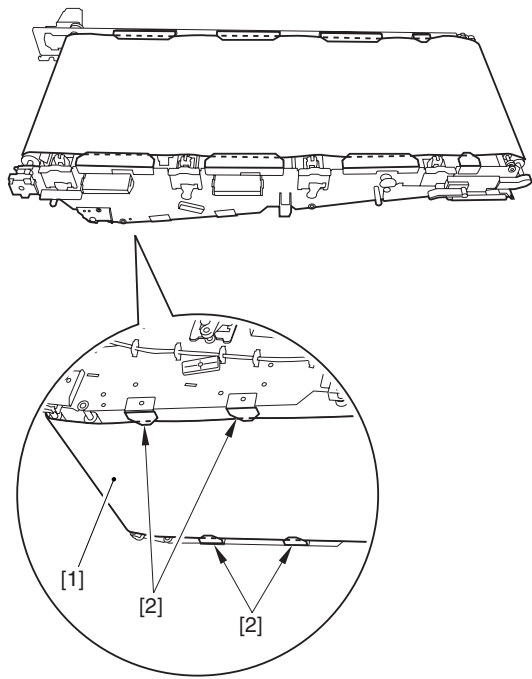


Release the tension lever [1] in the direction of the arrow.



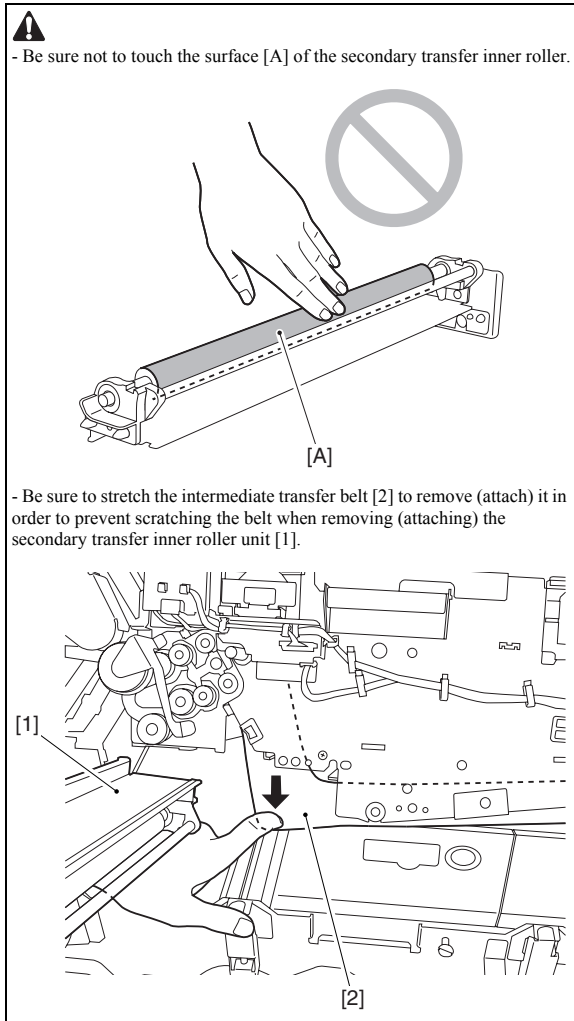
- 4) Free the lower side [1] of the intermediate transfer belt from the 4 belt retaining sheets [2].

⚠ Be sure not to bend the belt retaining sheet [2].

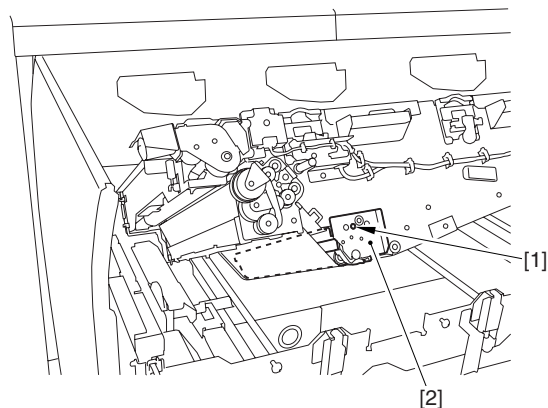


F-7-283

5) Make sure to check the following items before operation.



Remove the secondary transfer inner roller unit [2] by removing the screw [1].



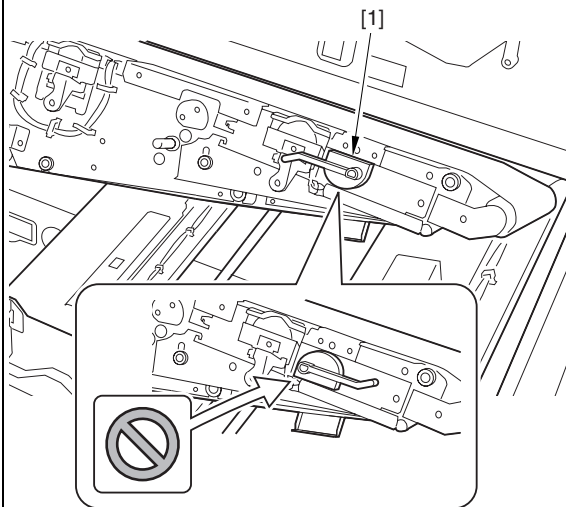
F-7-284

Attaching Secondary Transfer Inner Roller Unit

1) Make sure that the belt tension lever [1] is disengaged.



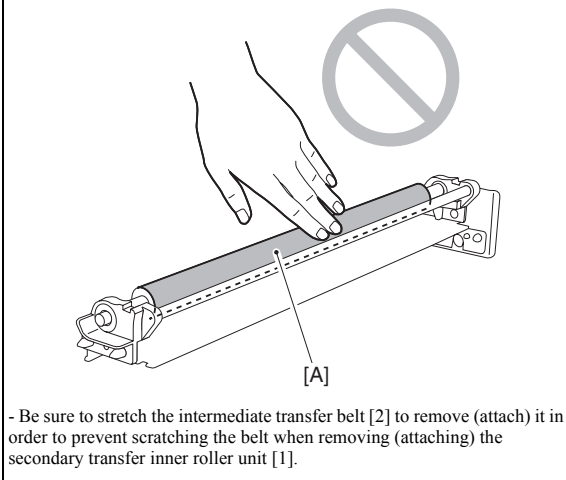
Be sure to release the belt tension lever [1] before attaching the secondary transfer inner roller unit.

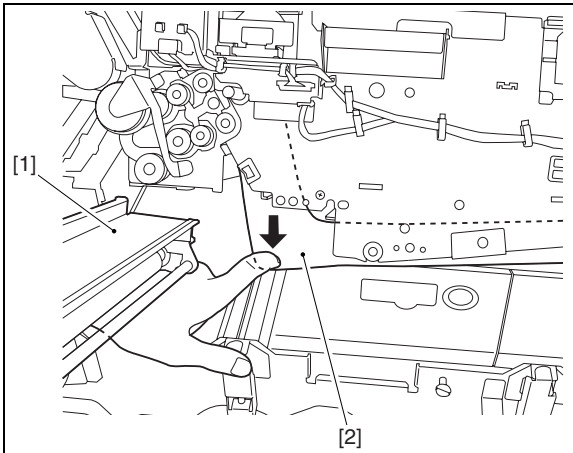


2) Make sure to check the following items before operation.



- Be sure not to touch the surface [A] of the secondary transfer inner roller.

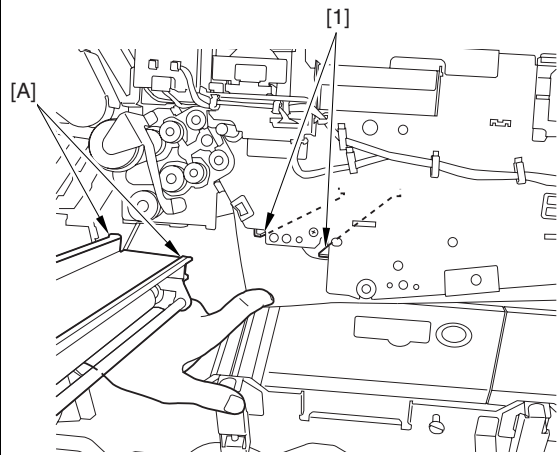




Align the [A] part of the secondary transfer inner roller unit with the rail [1] of the intermediate transfer unit to attach the unit.



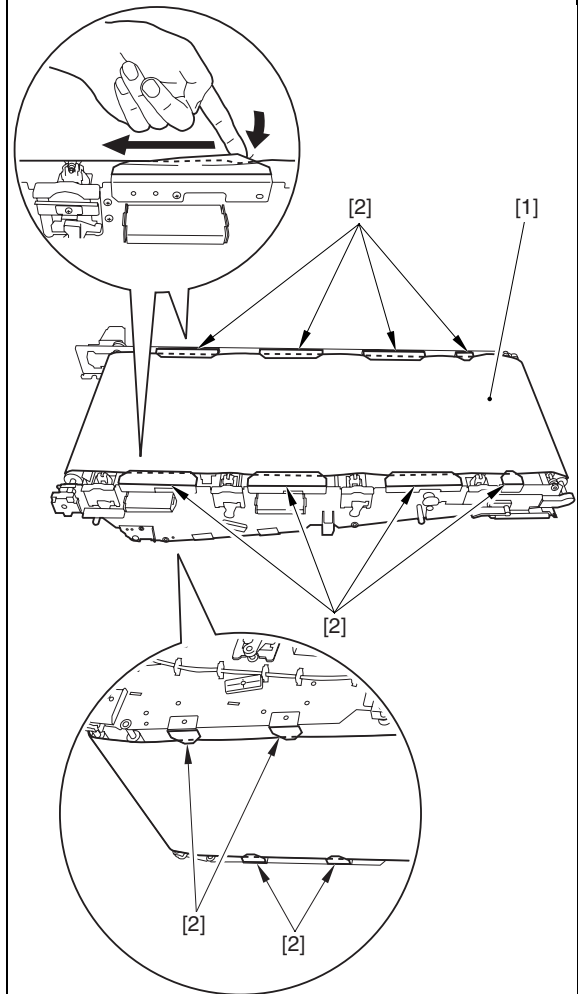
Because the intermediate transfer unit is tilted, be sure to support it with your hands until it reaches to the back.



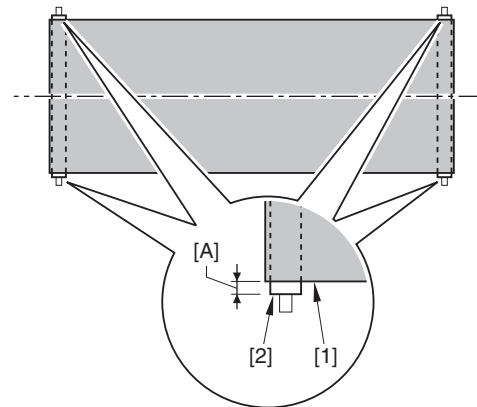
3) Make sure to check the following items before operation.



- Before returning the belt tension lever to be in the engaged state, Be sure to take the 12 belt retaining sheets [2] that are hidden beneath the intermediate transfer belt [1] out to be on the intermediate transfer belt. Be sure not to bend the belt retaining sheets [2].



- Before returning the belt tension lever to be in the engaged state, Be sure to shift the intermediate transfer belt to make the distance [A] between the edge [1] of the intermediate transfer belt and the edge [2] of rollers at the intermediate transfer unit to be equal for both the rear side and the front side.



Return the belt tension lever [1] to the state being engaged.



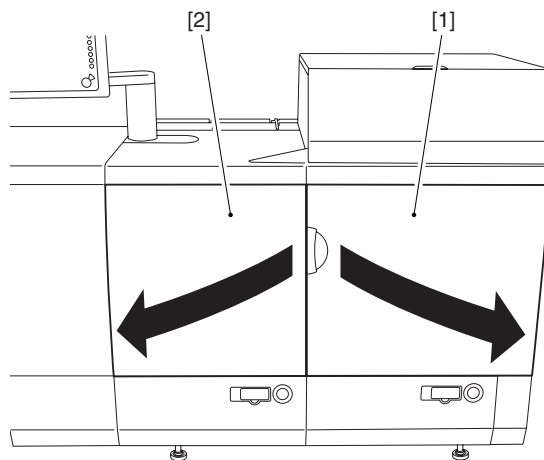
Check the click sound when shifting the lever.

7.10.32 Secondary Transfer Cleaning Assembly

7.10.32.1 Removing Secondary Transfer Cleaner Kit

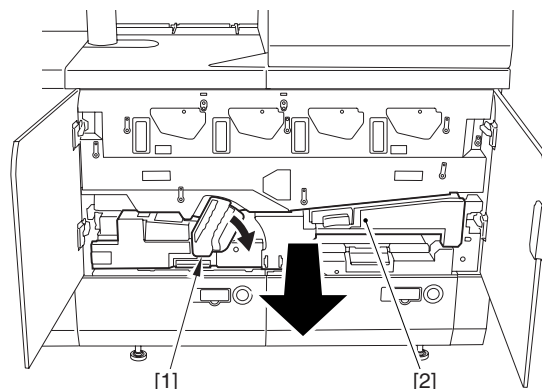
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- 1) Open fully the front right cover [1], and then the front left cover [2] of main station.



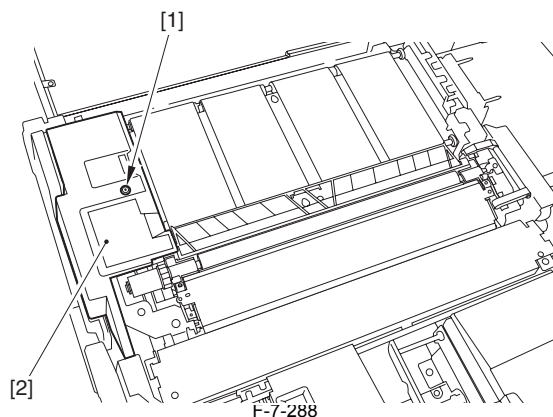
F-7-286

- 2) Shift the lever (B-E1) to the direction of the arrow. Hold the lever (B-E1) to slide the feeding unit [2] fully forward.



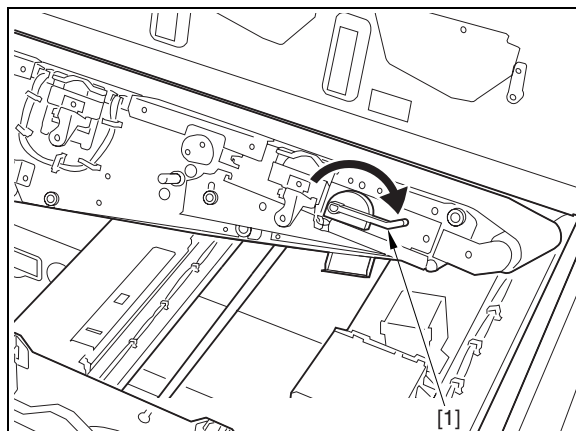
F-7-287

- 3) Remove the screw [1] to detach the pre-fixing feeder upper cover [2].

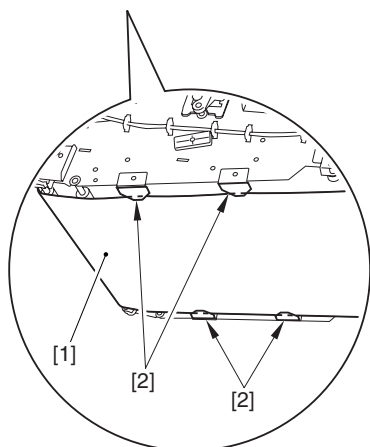
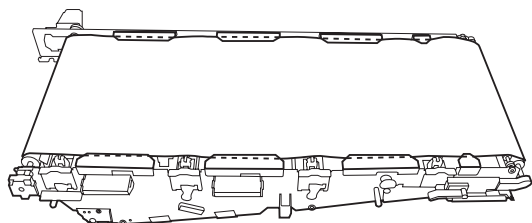


F-7-288

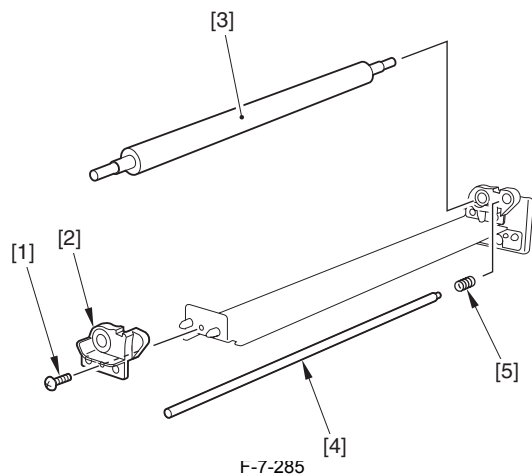
- 4) Remove the clamp [1], the connector [2] (with connector hook), the connector [3] and the two screws [4].



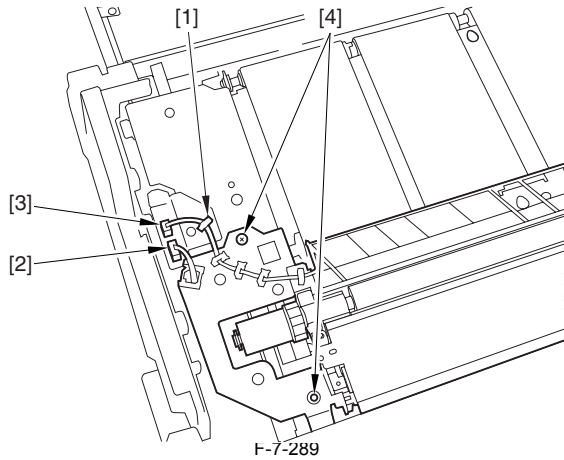
Take the 4 belt retaining sheets [2] that are hidden beneath the intermediate transfer belt [1] out to be on the intermediate transfer belt. Be sure not to bend the belt retaining sheets [2].



- 6) Remove the screw [1], and remove the fixture (with bearing) [2] by sliding it out. Then, remove the secondary transfer inner roller [3], the shaft [4], and the spring [5].



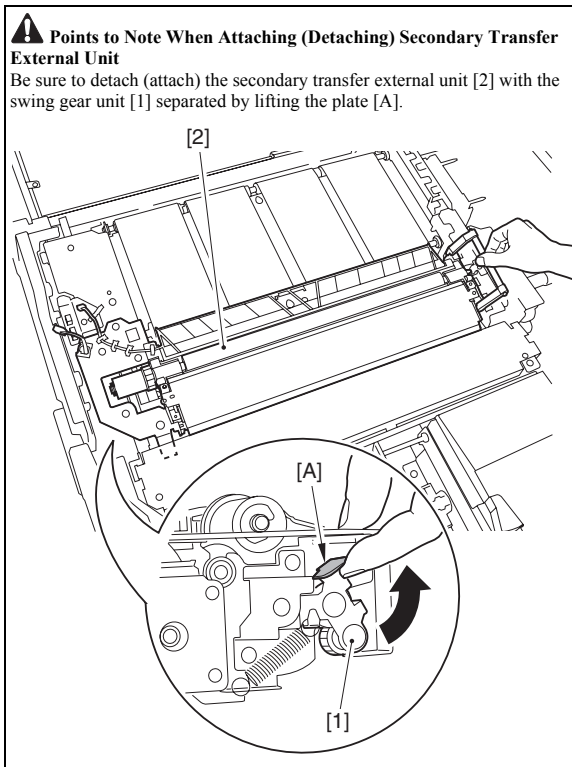
F-7-285



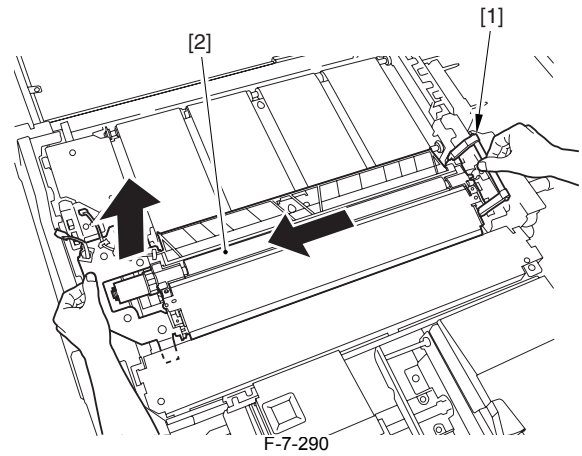
5) Lay paper on the position to place the secondary transfer external unit.

⚠ In the subsequent steps, always lay paper under units/parts to avoid toner adhesion.

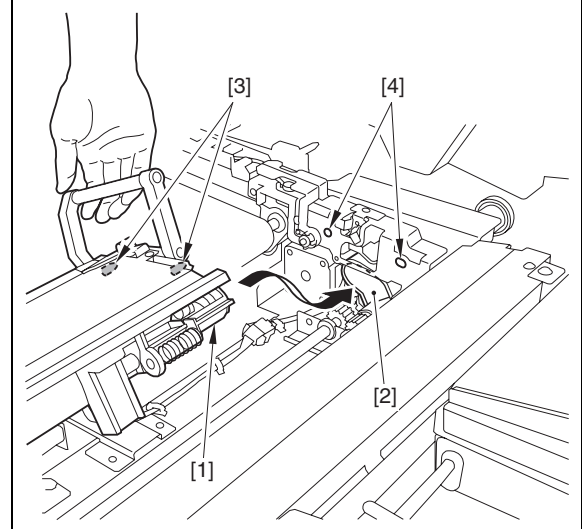
6) Make sure to check the following items before operation.



Hold the handle [1] to slide the secondary transfer external unit [2] forward and remove it.

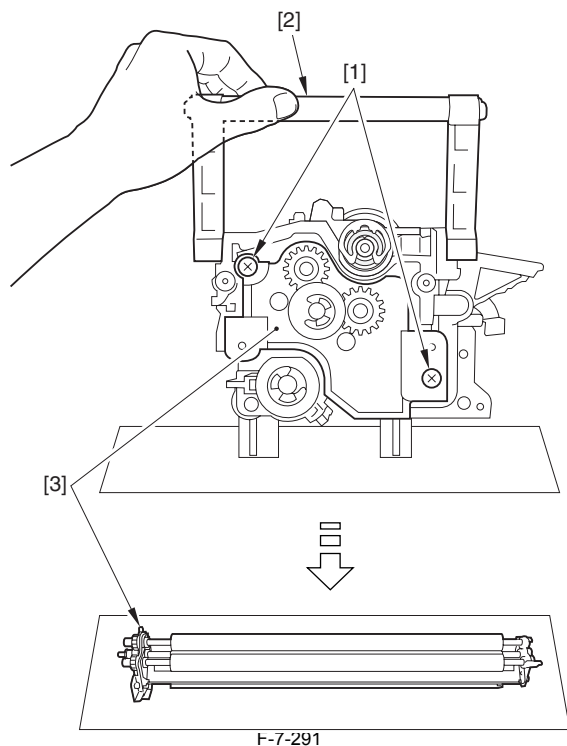


⚠ Points to Note When Mounting Secondary Transfer External Unit
 When mounting the secondary transfer external unit, fit the toner supply screw [1] to the hole [2] and fit the 2 pins [3] to the positioning holes [4].



7) Remove the 2 screws [1]. While lifting the handle [2], slide the secondary transfer cleaner kit [3] forward to remove.

⚠ When removing the secondary transfer cleaner kit, slide it slowly not to spill the toner.



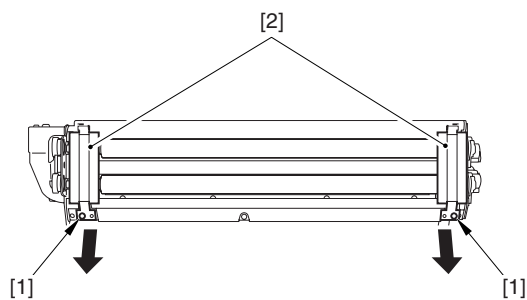
F-7-291

7.10.33 ITB Cleaning Brush Roller

7.10.33.1 Removing ITB Cleaning Brush Roller

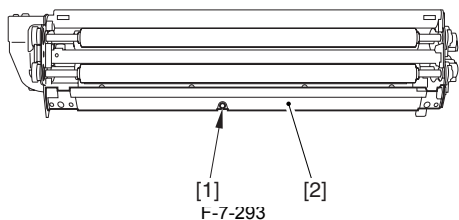
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- 1) Remove the ITB cleaner unit.
- 2) Remove the 2 screws [1] and slide the 2 side-seal plates [2] outward to remove.



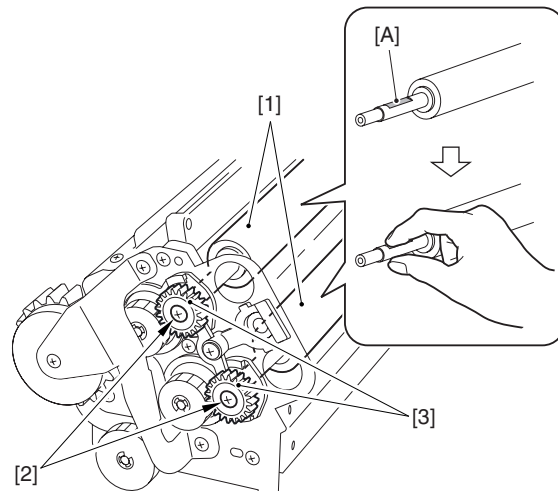
F-7-292

- 3) Remove the screw [1] to detach the ITB cleaner unit lower cover [2].



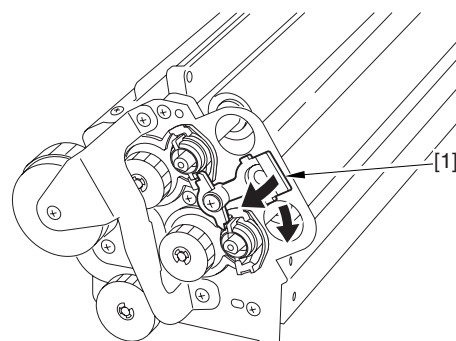
F-7-293

- 4) While pressing the D-cut [A] on the shaft of the ITB cleaning brush [1], remove the 2 screws [2] and the 2 gears [3].



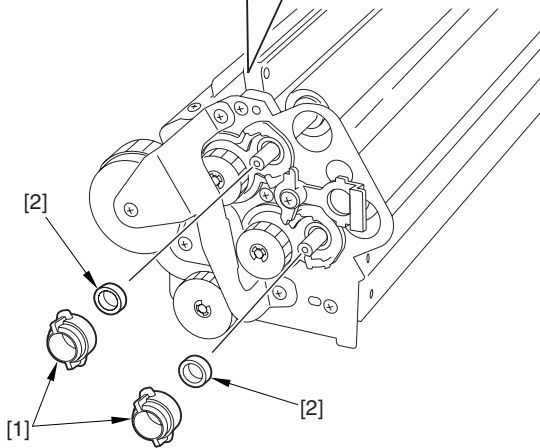
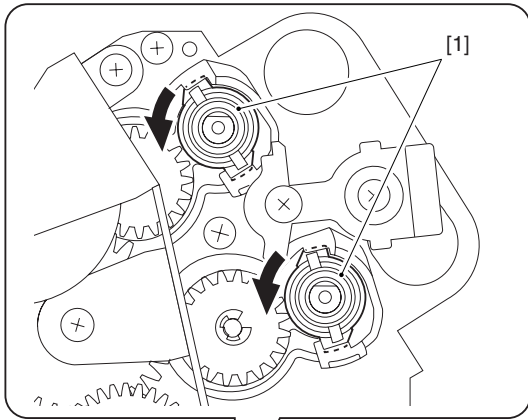
F-7-294

- 5) Shift the bearing holder retaining lever [1] forward and turn to the right to release.



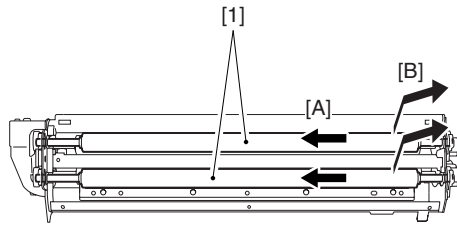
F-7-295

- 6) Turn the 2 bearing holders [1] to the left to remove the 2 bearing holders [1] and the 2 bearings [2].



F-7-296

7) Slide the 2 ITB cleaning brushes [1] to the direction of [A] and lift up slightly in the direction of [B] to remove.



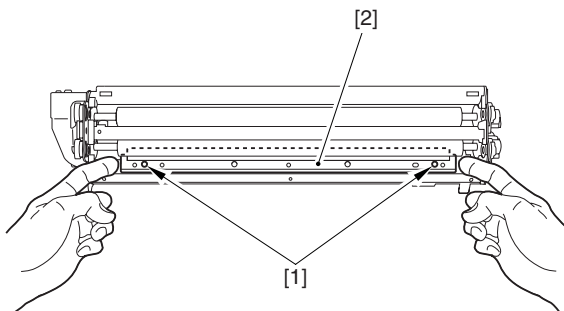
F-7-297

7.10.34 ITB Cleaning Blade

7.10.34.1 Removing ITB Bias Roller Cleaning Blade

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- 1) Remove the ITB cleaner unit.
- 2) Remove the 2 ITB cleaning brushes.
- 3) Remove the ITB bias roller cleaning blade [2] by removing the 2 screws [1].

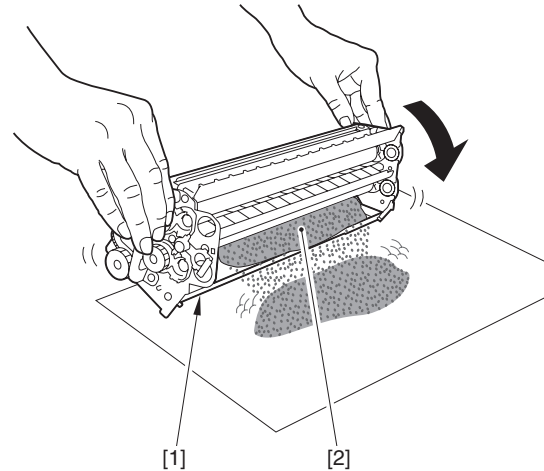


F-7-298

4) Tilt the ITB cleaner unit [1] to drop toner [2] on paper.

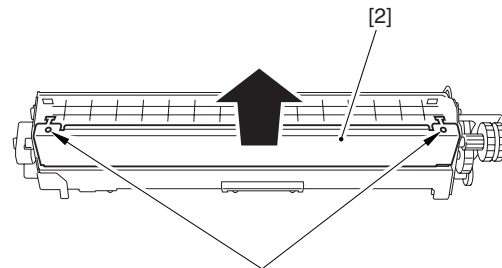


Be sure to dispose toner in the specified method.



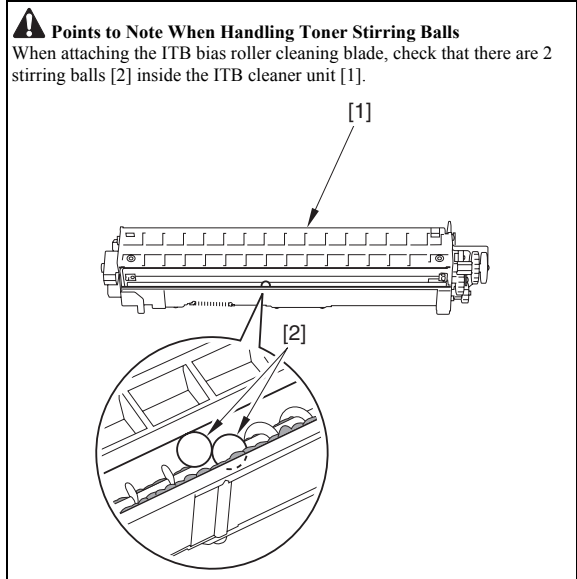
F-7-299

5) By removing the 2 screws [1], slide the ITB cleaner unit upper left plate [2] to detach.

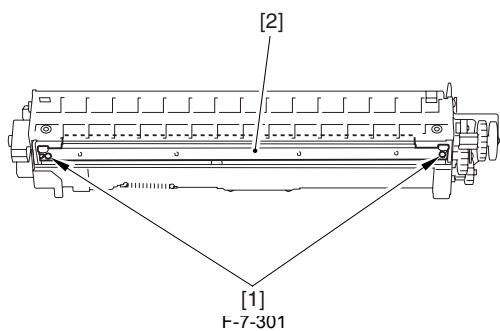


F-7-300

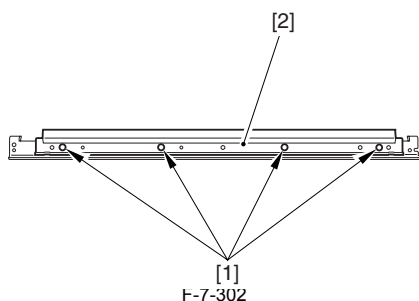
6) Make sure to check the following items before operation.



Remove the ITB cleaning blade unit [2] by removing the 2 screws [1].



- 7) Remove the ITB bias roller cleaning blade [2] by removing the 4 screws [1].

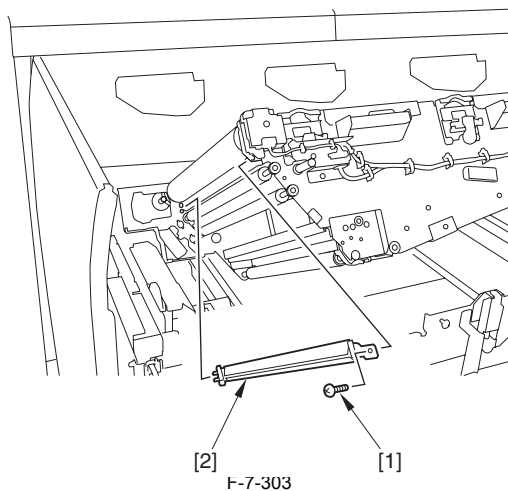


7.10.35 ITB Edge Seal

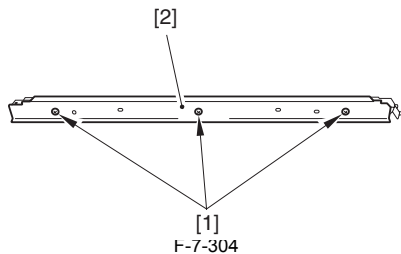
7.10.35.1 Removing ITB edge label (F)

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

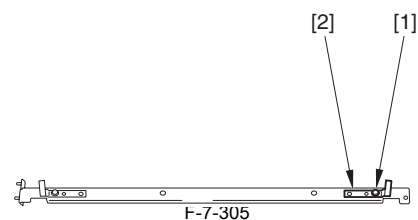
- 1) Remove the ITB.
- 2) Remove the 2 screws [1] and remove the ITB inside cleaning scraper unit [2].



- 3) Remove the 3 screws [1] and remove the ITB inside cleaning scraper [2].



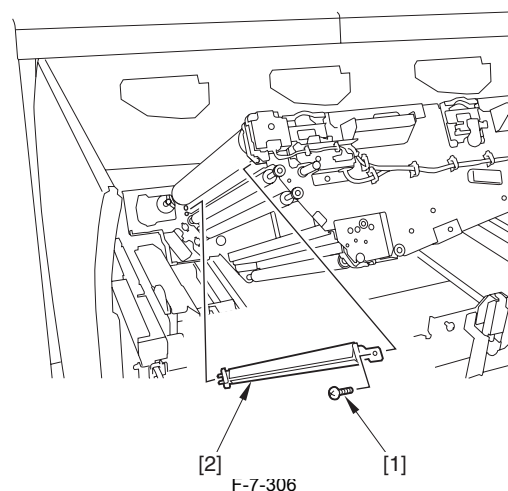
- 4) Remove the screw [1] and remove the ITB edge label (F) [2].



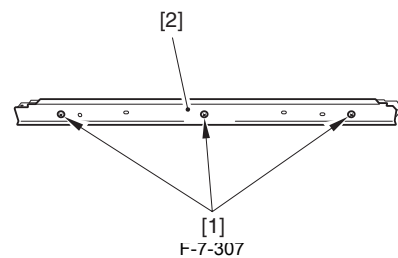
7.10.35.2 Removing ITB edge label (R)

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

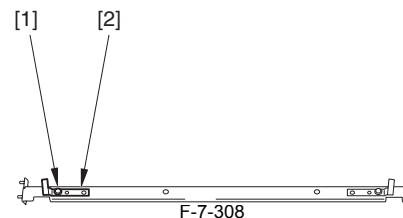
- 1) Remove the ITB.
- 2) Remove the 2 screws [1] and remove the ITB inside cleaning scraper unit [2].



- 3) Remove the 3 screws [1] and remove the ITB inside cleaning scraper [2].



- 4) Remove the screw [1] and remove the ITB edge label (R) [2].

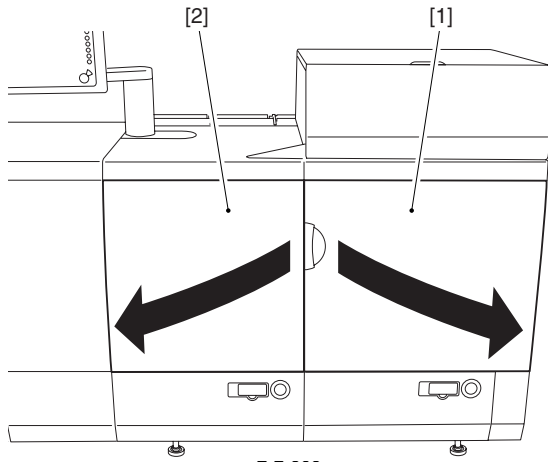


7.10.36 ITB End Scraper

7.10.36.1 Removing ITB Edge Scraper Unit

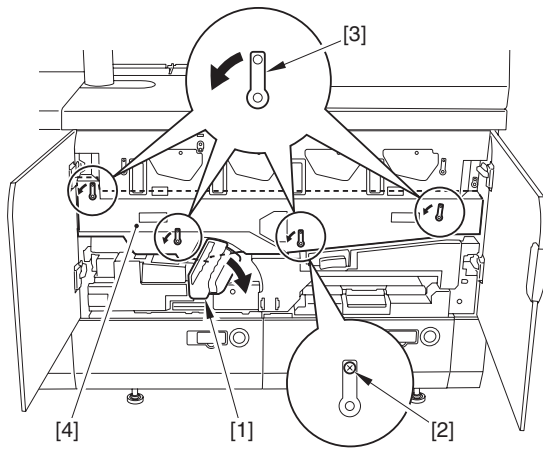
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- 1) Open fully the front right cover [1], and then the front left cover [2] of main station.



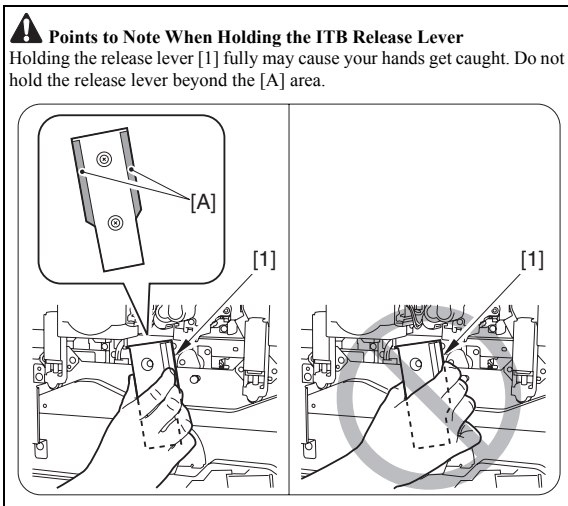
F-7-309

2) Shift down the lever (B-E1) [1] in the direction of the arrow. Remove the stepped screw [2] and shift the 4 levers [3] down in the direction of the arrow to detach the intermediate transfer unit cover [4].

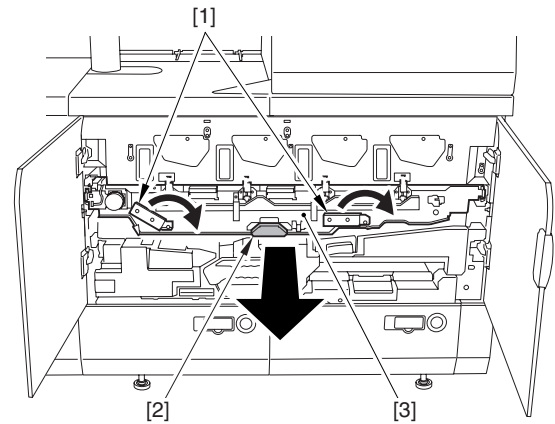


F-7-310

3) Make sure to check the following items before operation.



Shift the release lever [1] of intermediate transfer assembly in the direction of arrow. Hold the handle [2] to slide out the intermediate transfer assembly [3] until it is locked.



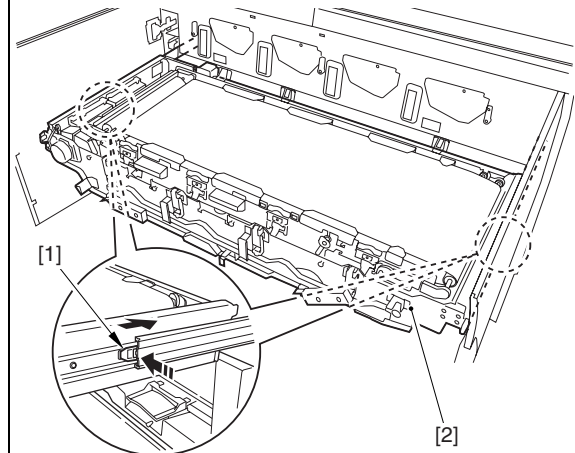
F-7-311

Storing Intermediate Transfer Assembly

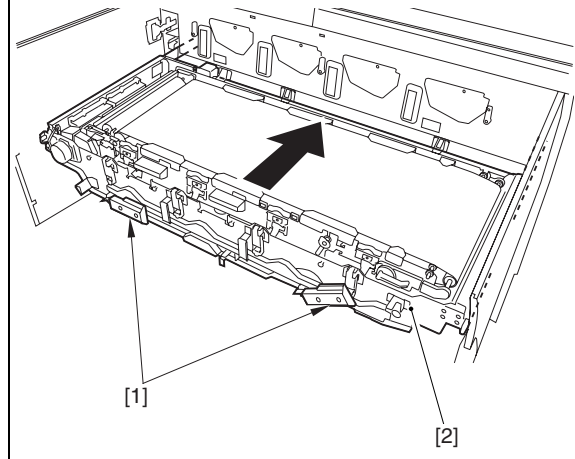
1) While pushing the 2 lock release springs [1], slide the intermediate transfer assembly [2] toward the rear side until the lock position is released.



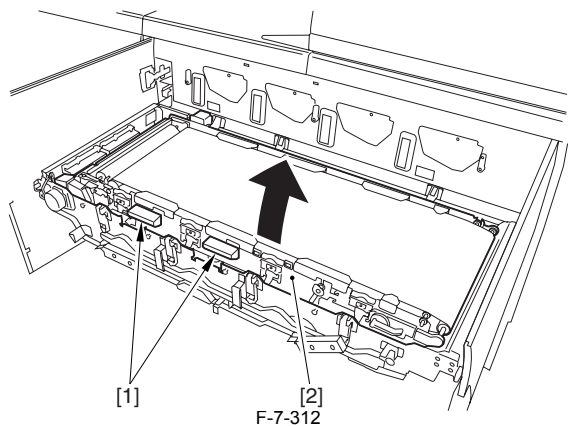
When sliding the intermediate transfer assembly [2] toward the rear side, be careful not to get your fingers caught.



2) Hold the release lever [1] to slide in the intermediate transfer assembly [2].

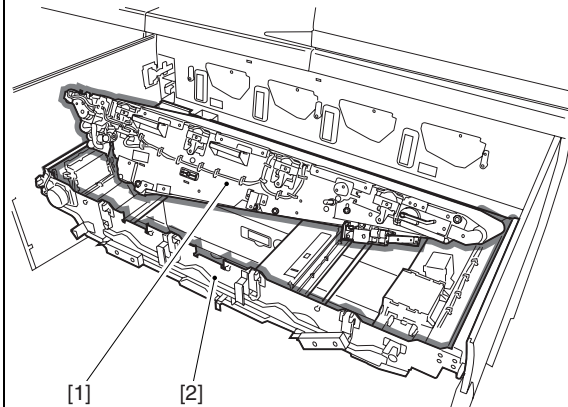


4) Hold the handle [1] with both hands and lift up the intermediate transfer belt unit [2] by approx. 40 deg, and then, lift it down to the lock position (at approx. 30 deg.).

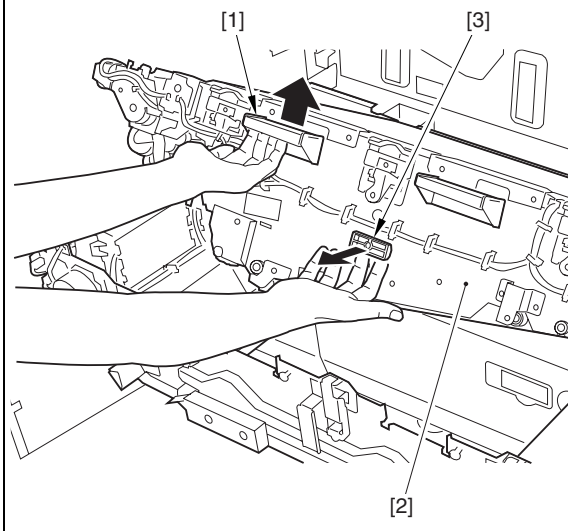


Lifting Down Intermediate Transfer Belt Unit
 Make sure to check the following items before operation.

⚠ Point to Note When Lifting down Intermediate Transfer Belt Unit
 When lifting down the intermediate transfer belt unit, be careful not to get your hands caught between the intermediate transfer belt unit [1] and the intermediate transfer frame [2].

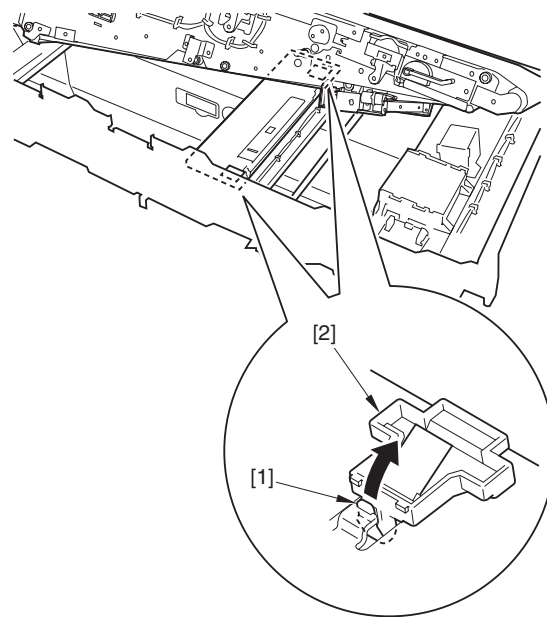


Hold the handle [1] as shown in the figure to pull out the lever [3] fully while lifting up the intermediate transfer belt unit [2].
 While pulling the lever [3], slightly lift down the intermediate transfer belt unit. When the belt passes through the lock release position (approx. 30 deg), release your hands (intermediate transfer belt unit slowly moves downward).



5) Disengage the claw [1], and remove the ITB edge scraper unit [2] in the direction of the arrow.

⚠ Be sure not to scratch the intermediate transfer belt when removing the ITB edge scraper unit [2].



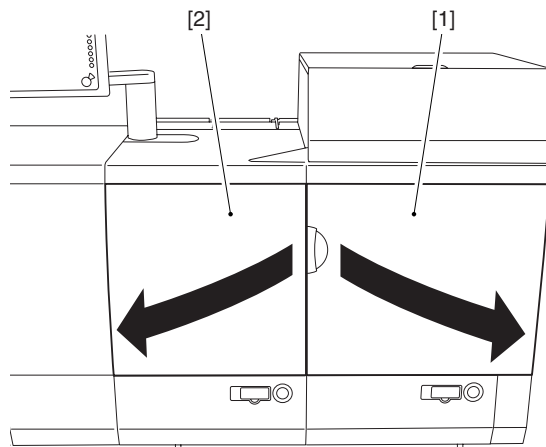
F-7-313

7.10.37 Secondary Transfer Inlet Guide

7.10.37.1 Removing Secondary Transfer Inlet Guide

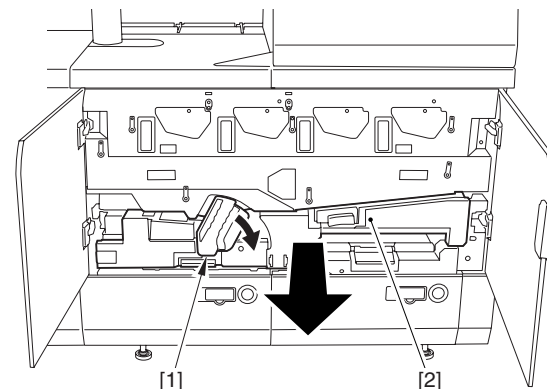
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

1) Fully open the front covers in the order of the right front cover [1] and the left front cover [2] of the main station.



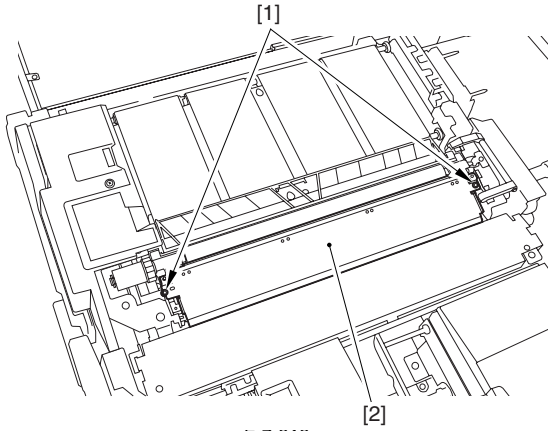
F-7-314

2) Move down the lever [1] in the direction of the arrow, and hold the lever [1] to pull the feeding unit [2] fully toward front.



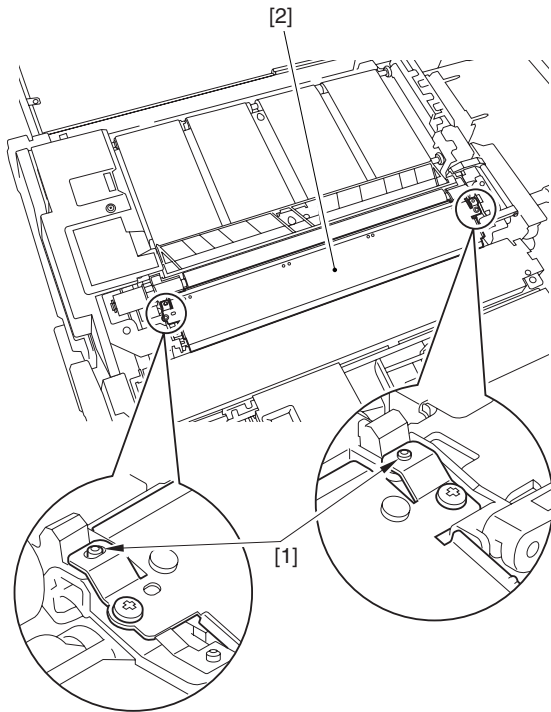
F-7-315

3) Detach the secondary transfer inlet guide [2] with the 2 screws [1].



F-7-316

⚠ Points to Note When Attaching the Secondary Transfer Inlet Guide
 Make sure to fit the positioning boss [1] of the secondary transfer holder with the hole of the secondary transfer inlet guide [2].



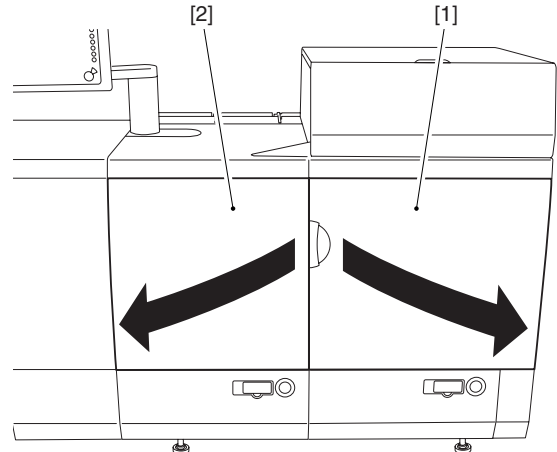
F-7-317

7.10.38 Secondary Transfer Toner Blocking Sheet

7.10.38.1 Removing Secondary Transfer Toner Blocking Sheet

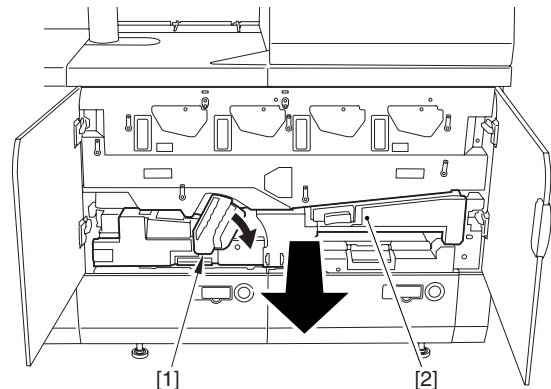
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

1) Open the right front cover [1] and the left front cover [2] of the main station fully in order.



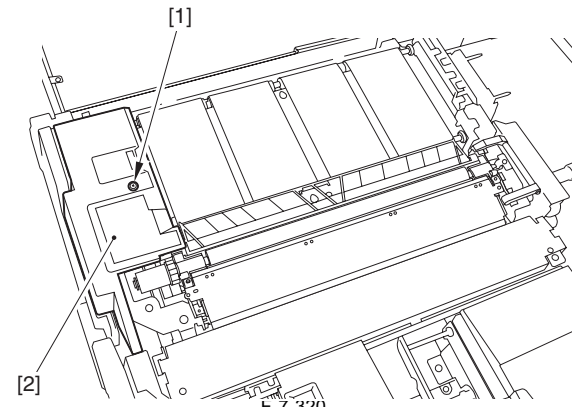
F-7-318

2) Move the lever [1] down in the direction shown by the arrow, and then grip the lever [1] to slide the feeding assembly [2] fully out.



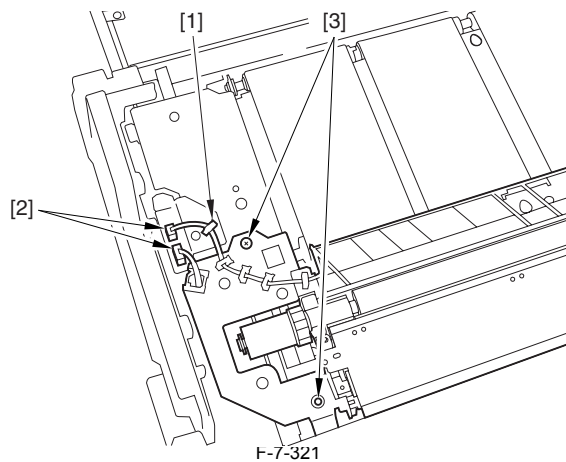
F-7-319

3) Detach the secondary transfer unit upper inside cover [2] by removing the screw [1].



F-7-320

4) Remove the clamp [1], the 2 connectors, and the 2 screws [3].

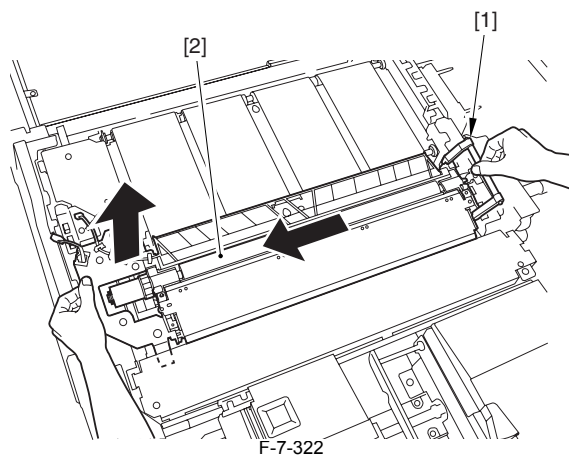


5) Spread some pieces of paper on the place where the secondary transfer unit is put.

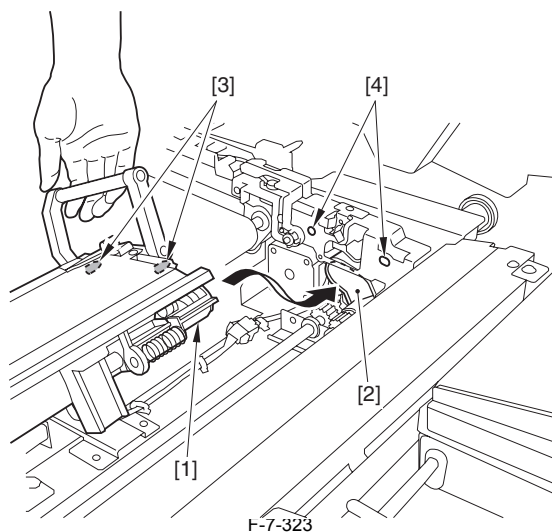
▲ Points to Note upon Operation

While going through the subsequent procedure, be sure to cover the unit/parts with a paper sheet so that they don't get soiled.

6) Hold the grips [1] with your both hands, slide the secondary transfer unit [2] toward the front to remove it.

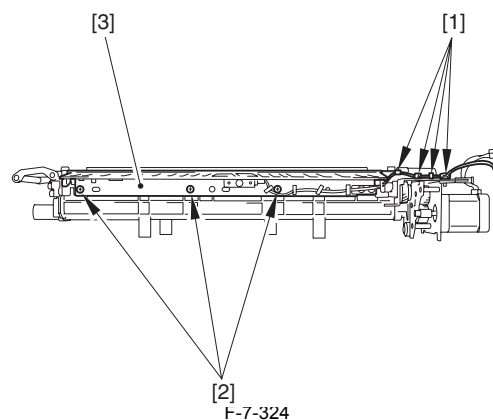


▲ Points to Note when Attaching the Secondary Transfer Unit
When attaching the secondary transfer unit, be sure to fit the toner supply screw [1] on the hole [2], and fit the 2 pins [3] on the positioning holes [4].

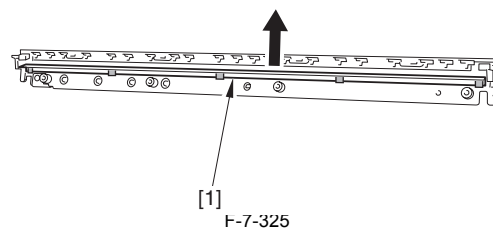


7) Remove the secondary transfer outlet guide unit [3].
- 4 clamps [1]

- 3 screws [2]



8) Remove the secondary transfer unit toner stray blocking sheet [1].

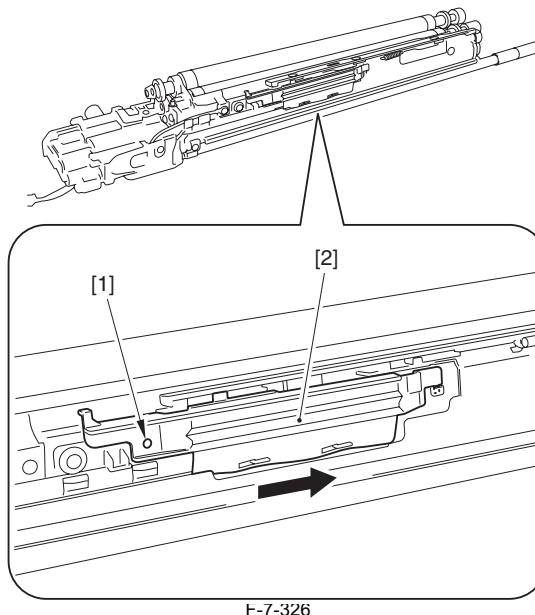


7.10.39 Drum Patch Sensor Shutter

7.10.39.1 Removing Drum Patch Sensor Shutter (Y/M)

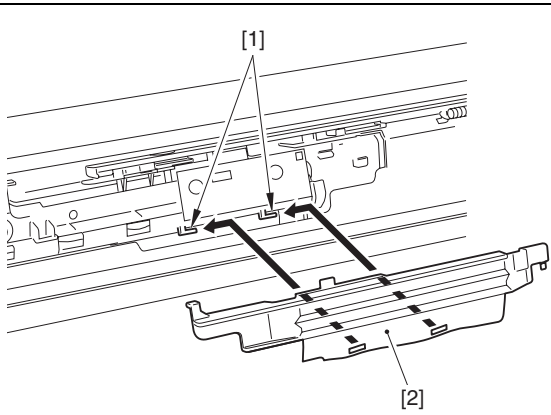
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- 1) Remove the Y/M developing assembly.
- 2) Remove the screw [1] and detach the sensor cover [2] in the direction of the arrow.

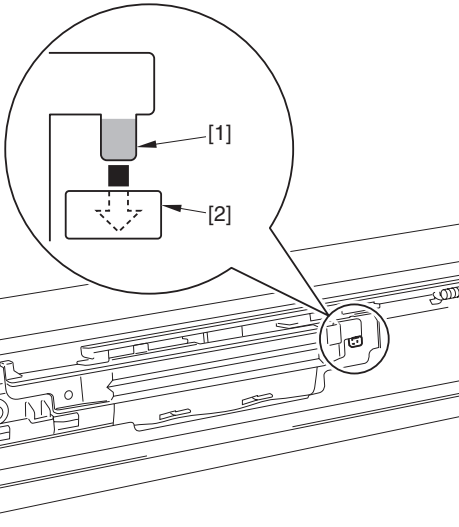


Attaching Drum Patch Sensor Cover

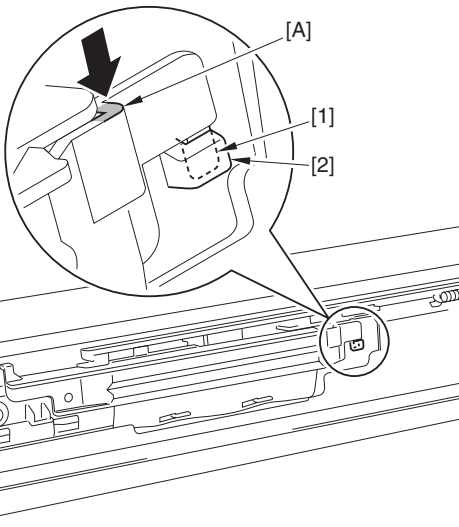
- 1) Fit the protrusion [1] of the developing assembly into the hole [2] of the sensor cover, and slide it to hook.



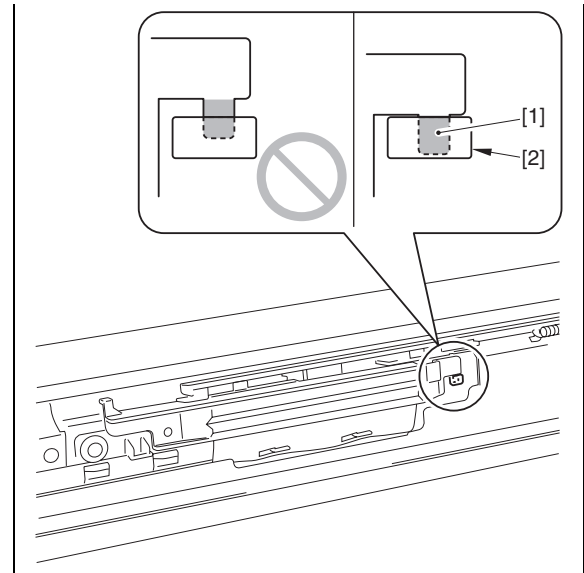
2) Set the protrusion [1] of the sensor cover to the groove [2] of the developing assembly.



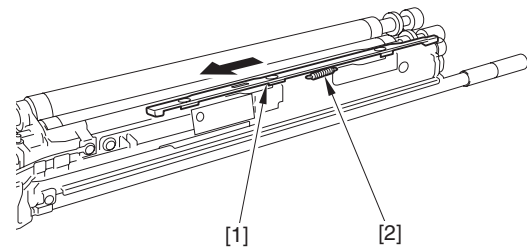
3) Push the [A] area of the sensor cover and put the protrusion [1] into the groove [2].



Check to see that the protrusion [1] of the sensor cover has been put into the groove [2].



3) Move the drum patch sensor shutter [1] in the direction of the arrow and free it from the spring [2].



F-7-327

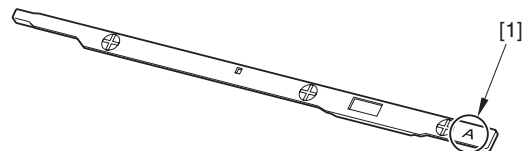
Attaching Drum Patch Sensor Shutter

1) Make sure to check the following items before operation.

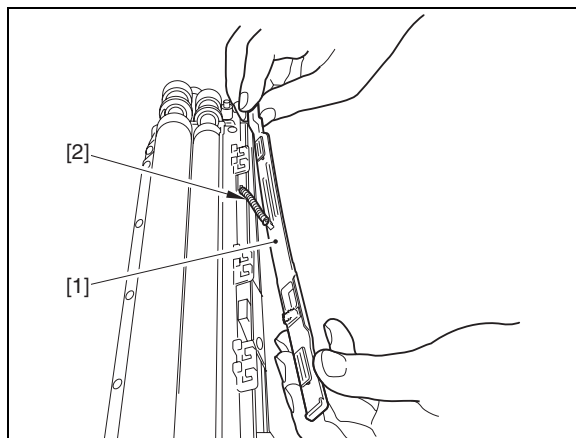


There are drum patch sensor shutters for Y/M and C/K. Check the mark [1] of the drum patch sensor shutter and the color of the developing assembly to attach. When attaching the drum patch sensor shutter again, be sure not to take the wrong color of one.

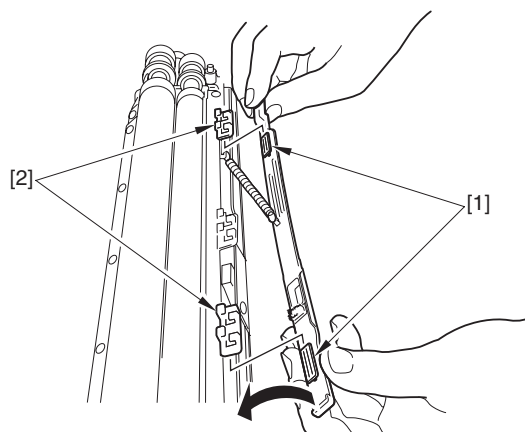
Y/M drum patch sensor shutter : Mark A
C/K drum patch sensor shutter : Mark B



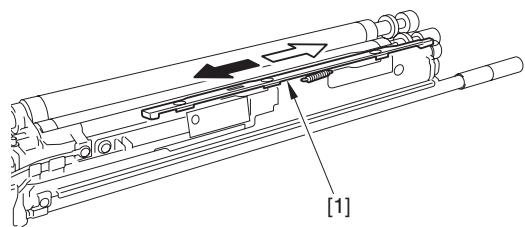
2) Hook the spring [2] on the drum patch sensor shutter [1].



3) Fit the slider [1] to the groove [2], move it in the direction of the arrow to attach.



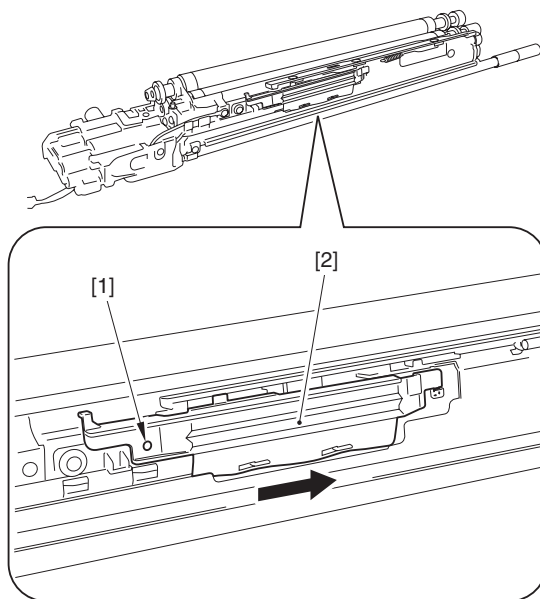
Check to see that the drum patch sensor shutter [1] moves smoothly from side to side.



7.10.39.2 Removing Drum Patch Sensor Shutter (C/Bk)

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

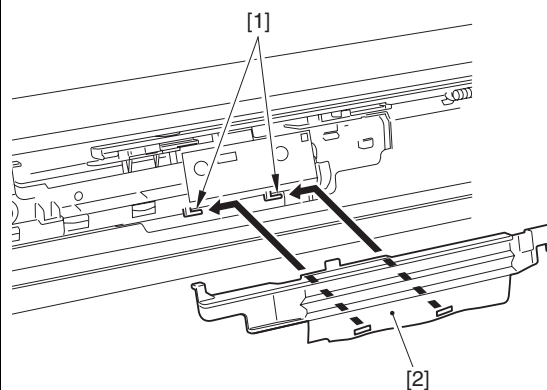
- 1) Remove the C/Bk developing assembly.
- 2) Remove the screw [1] and detach the sensor cover [2] in the direction of the arrow.



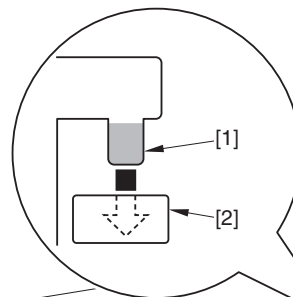
F-7-328

Attaching Drum Patch Sensor Cover

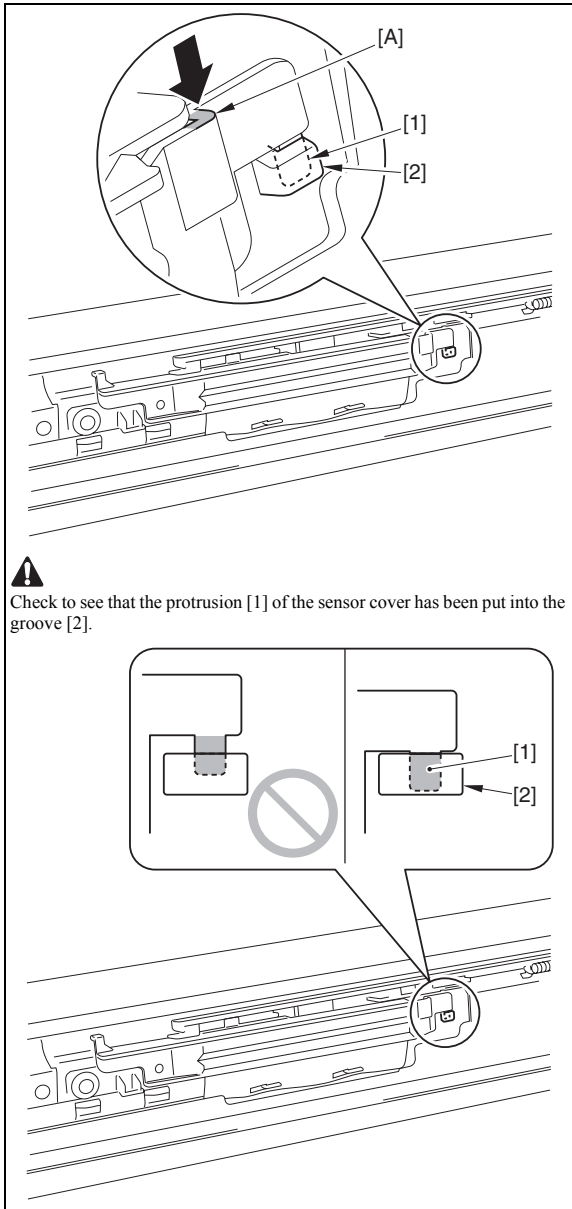
1) Fit the protrusion [1] of the developing assembly into the hole [2] of the sensor cover, and slide it to hook.



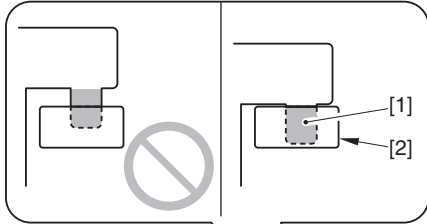
2) Set the protrusion [1] of the sensor cover to the groove [2] of the developing assembly.



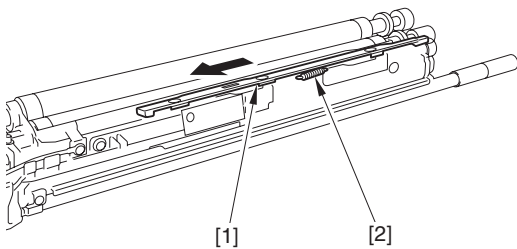
3) Push the [A] area of the sensor cover and put the protrusion [1] into the groove [2].



⚠ Check to see that the protrusion [1] of the sensor cover has been put into the groove [2].



3) Move the drum patch sensor shutter [1] in the direction of the arrow and free it from the spring [2].

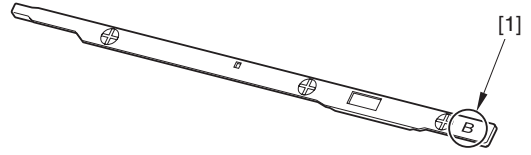


F-7-329

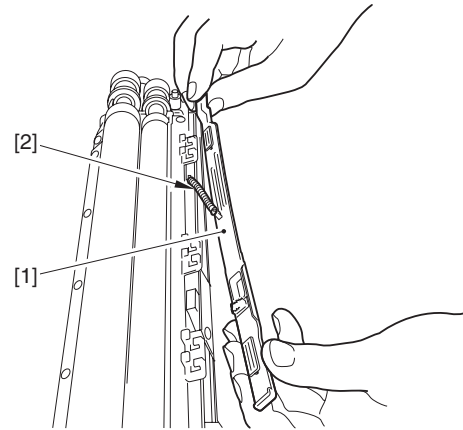


There are drum patch sensor shutters for Y/M and C/K. Check the mark [1] of the drum patch sensor shutter and the color of the developing assembly to attach. When attaching the drum patch sensor shutter again, be sure not to take the wrong color of one.

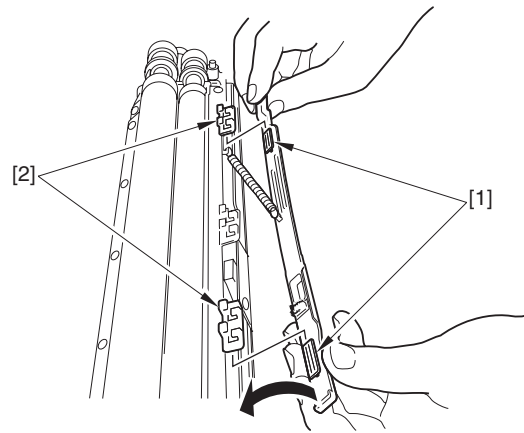
Y/M drum patch sensor shutter : Mark A
C/K drum patch sensor shutter : Mark B



2) Hook the spring [2] on the drum patch sensor shutter [1].



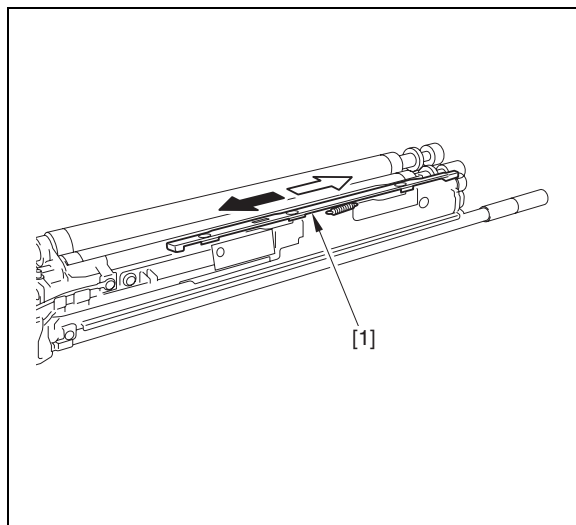
3) Fit the slider [1] to the groove [2], move it in the direction of the arrow to attach.



Check to see that the drum patch sensor shutter [1] moves smoothly from side to side.

Attaching Drum Patch Sensor Shutter

1) Make sure to check the following items before operation.

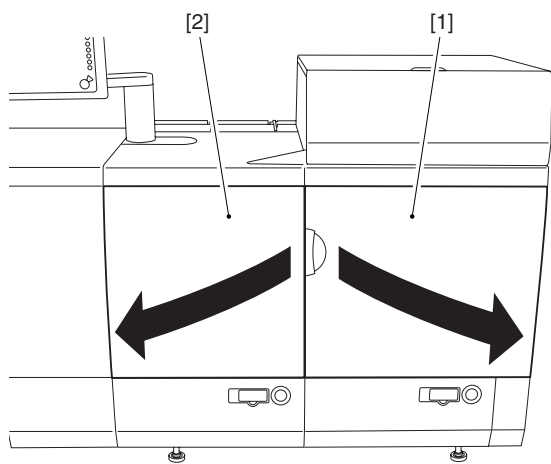


7.10.40 Color Registration Patch Cleaning Shutter

7.10.40.1 Removing Registration Patch Sensor Cleaning Shutter

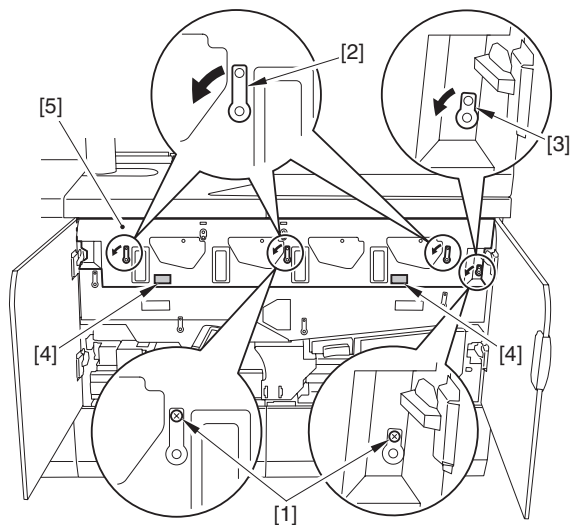
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- 1) Open fully the front right cover [1], and then the front left cover [2] of main station.

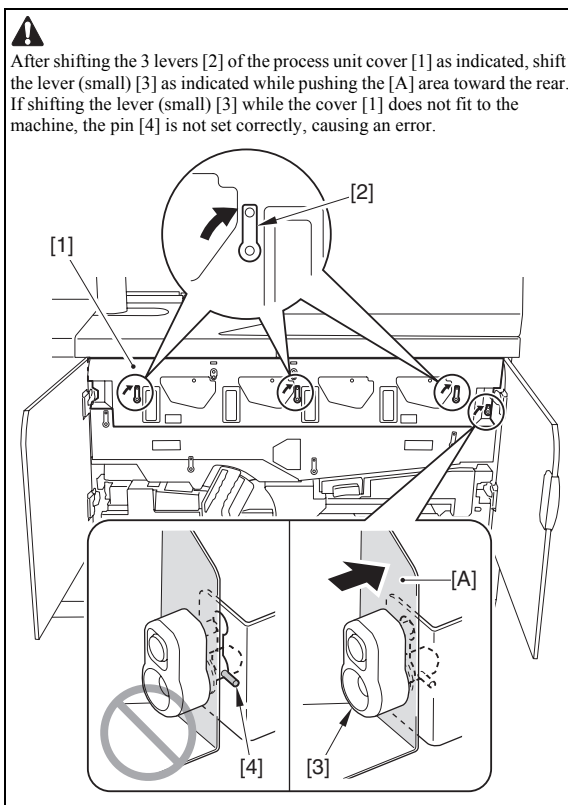
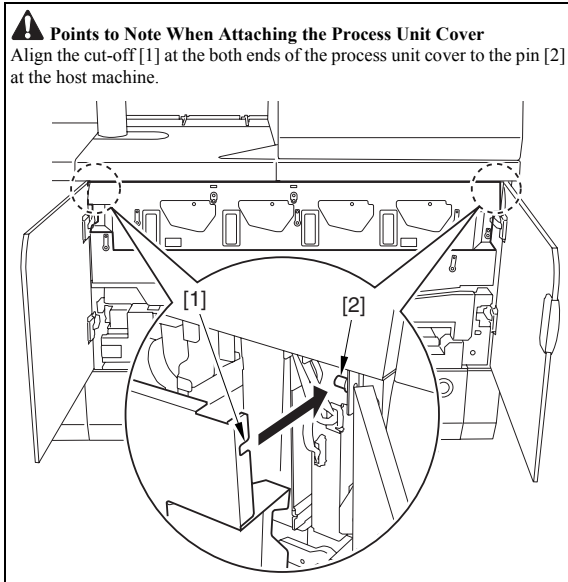


F-7-330

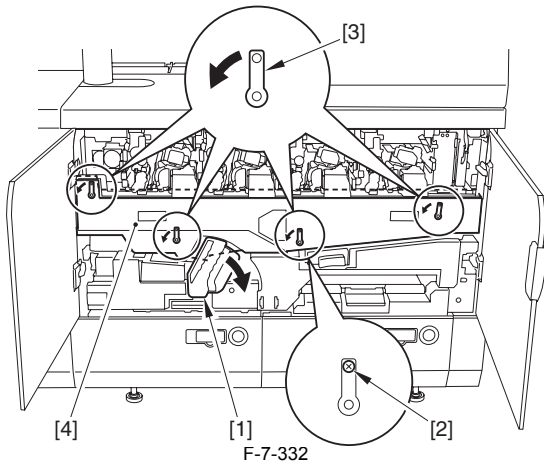
- 2) Remove the 2 stepped screws [1], shift the 3 levers [2] and the lever (small) [3] in the direction of the arrow in order. While holding the grip [4], detach the process unit cover [5].



F-7-331



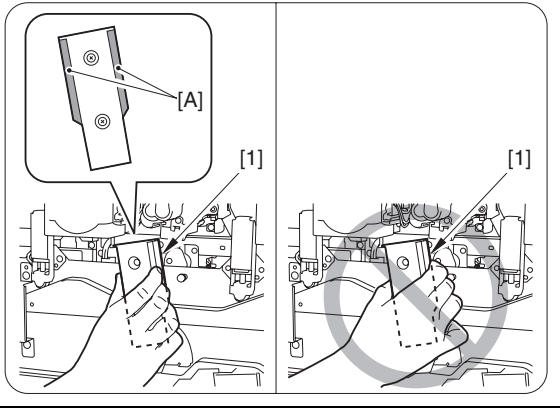
- 3) Tilt the lever (B-E1) [1] in the direction of the arrow. Remove the stepped screw [2], shift the 4 levers [3] in the direction of the arrow and then, detach the ITB unit cover [4].



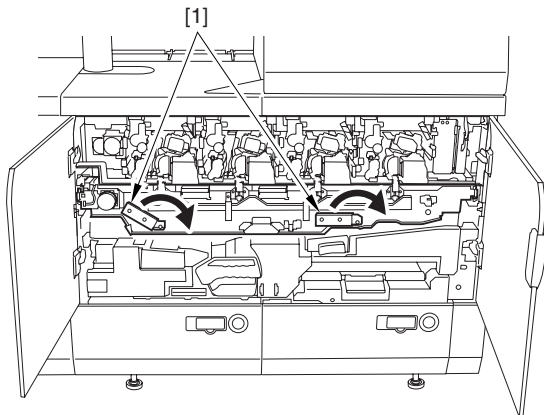
F-7-332

4) Make sure to check the following items before operation.

⚠ Point to Note When Holding the ITB Release Lever
 Holding the release lever [1] fully may cause your hands get caught. Do not hold the release lever beyond the [A] area.



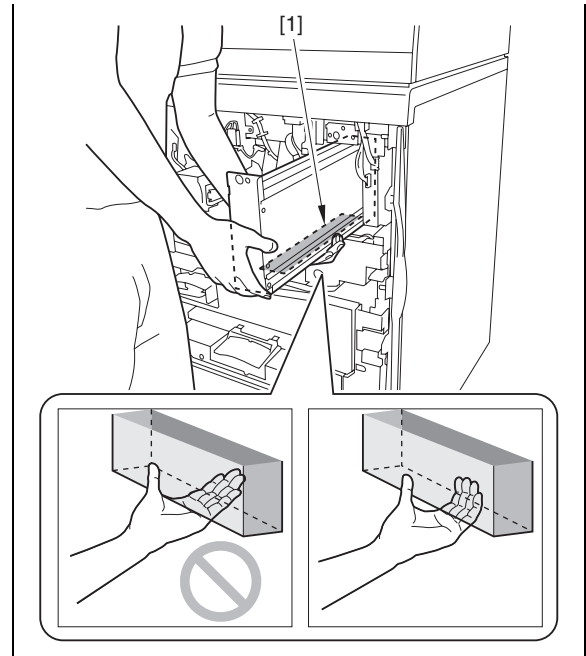
Shift the intermediate transfer assembly release lever [1] in the direction of the arrow.



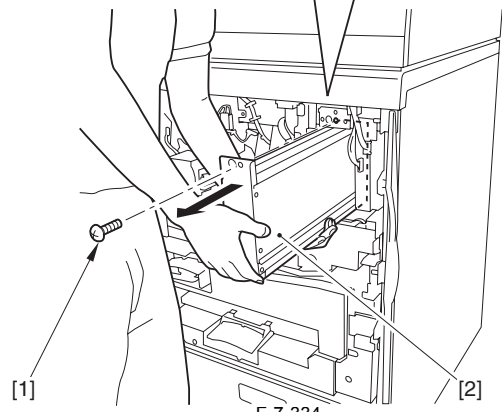
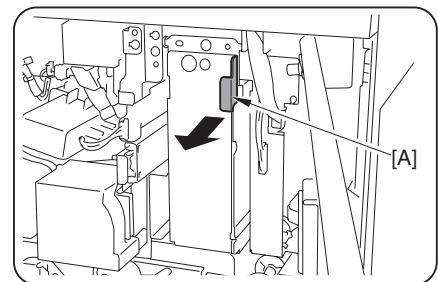
F-7-333

5) Make sure to check the following items before operation.

⚠ Point to Note When Holding Registration Patch Sensor Unit
 Be sure not to hold the registration patch sensor unit with your palm. Otherwise, the shutter [1] at the bottom of the unit may be deformed.

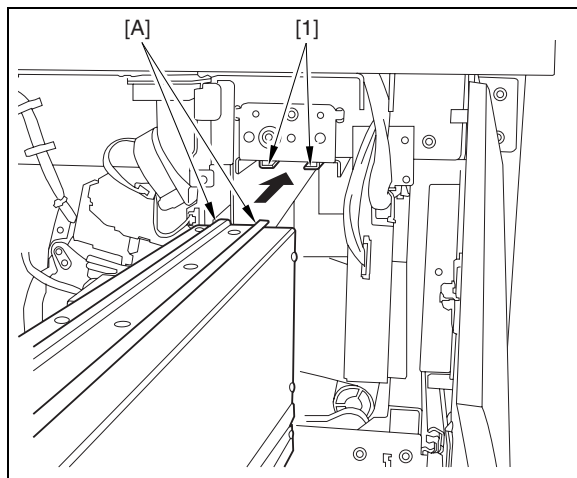


Remove the screw [1], and slide the registration patch sensor unit [2] halfway out by holding the [A] area. Then, hold the unit [2] with both hands as indicated, and remove it by sliding it horizontally toward the front.

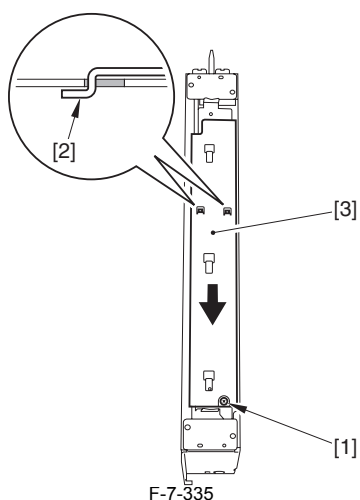


F-7-334

⚠ Point to Note When Attaching the Registration Patch Sensor Unit
 Fit the [A] area of the registration patch sensor unit on the rail [1] at the machine side to attach the unit.



6) Remove the screw [1], and disengage the claw [2] by sliding the registration patch sensor shutter [3] in the direction of the arrow to remove the shutter.



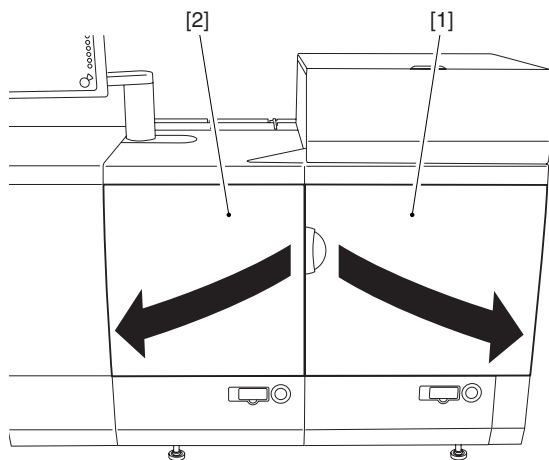
F-7-335

7.10.41 Leading Edge Registration Patch Sensor Shutter

7.10.41.1 Removing Lead Edge Registration Patch Sensor Cleaning Shutter

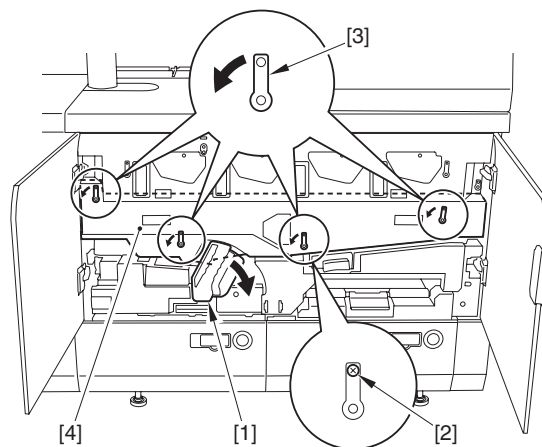
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

1) Open fully the front right cover [1], and then the front left cover [2] of main station.



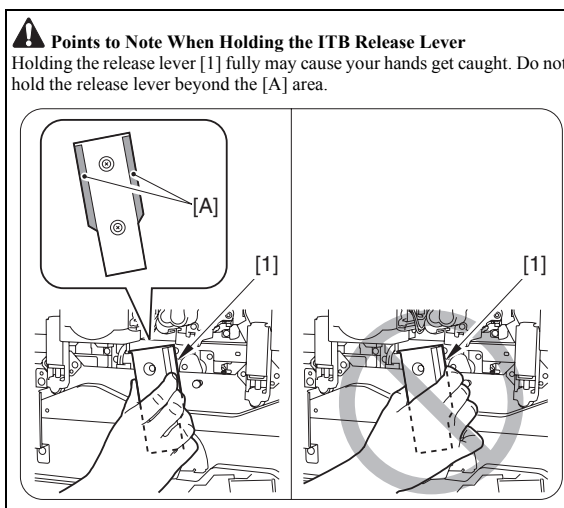
F-7-336

2) Shift down the lever (B-E1) [1] in the direction of the arrow. Remove the stepped screw [2] and shift the 4 levers [3] down in the direction of the arrow to detach the intermediate transfer unit cover [4].

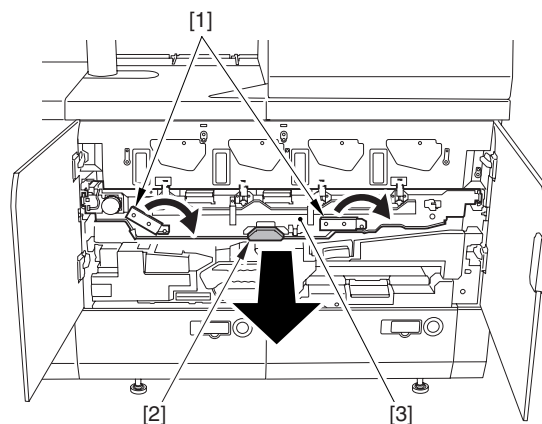


F-7-337

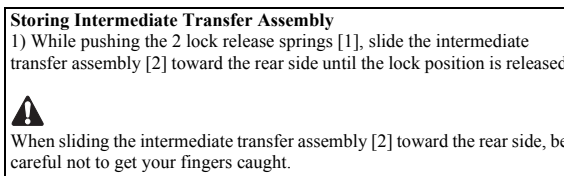
3) Make sure to check the following items before operation.

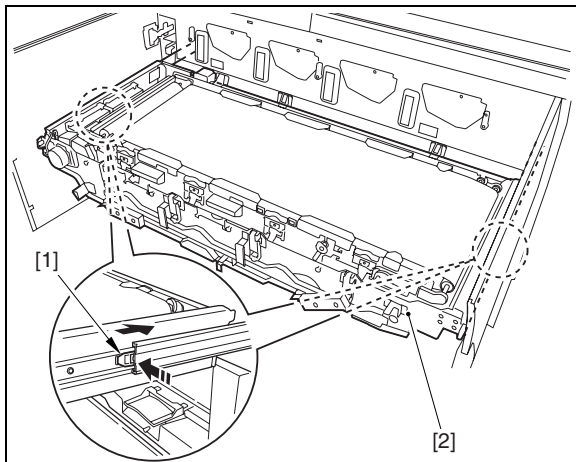


Shift the release lever [1] of intermediate transfer assembly in the direction of arrow. Hold the handle [2] to slide out the intermediate transfer assembly [3] until it is locked.

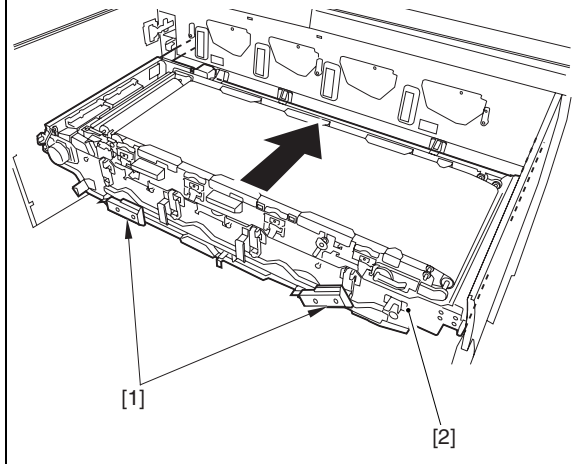


F-7-338

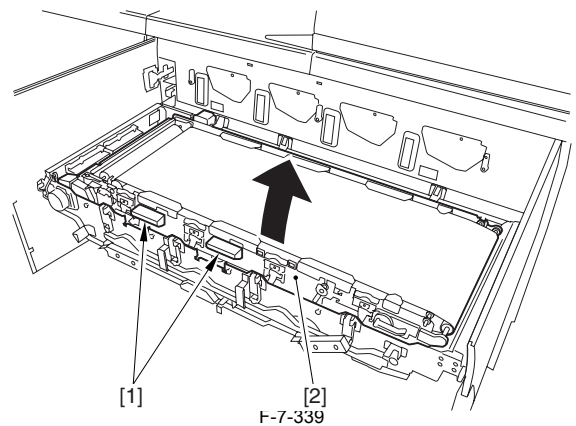




2) Hold the release lever [1] to slide in the intermediate transfer assembly [2].



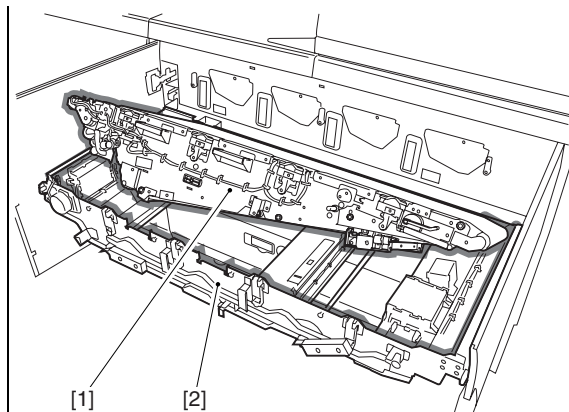
4) Hold the handle [1] with both hands and lift up the intermediate transfer belt unit [2] by approx. 40 deg, and then, lift it down to the lock position (at approx. 30 deg.).



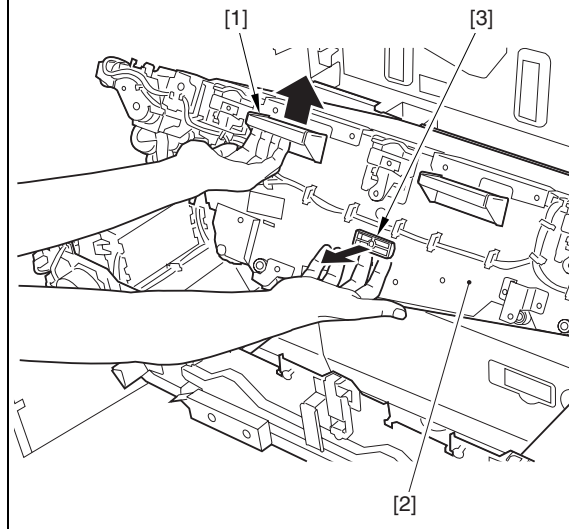
F-7-339

Lifting Down Intermediate Transfer Belt Unit
Make sure to check the following items before operation.

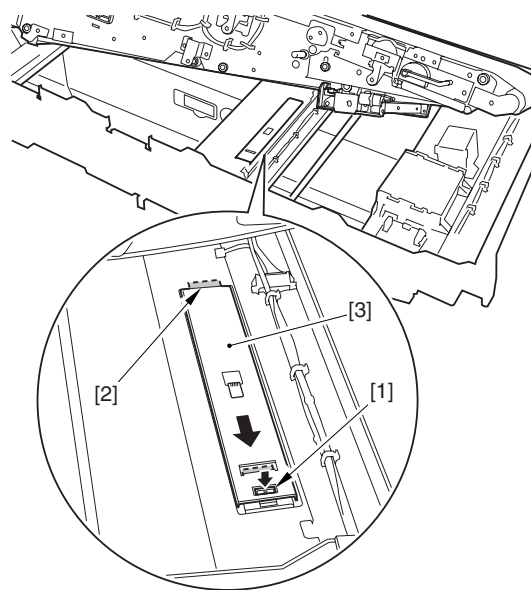
⚠ Point to Note When Lifting down Intermediate Transfer Belt Unit
When lifting down the intermediate transfer belt unit, be careful not to get your hands caught between the intermediate transfer belt unit [1] and the intermediate transfer frame [2].



Hold the handle [1] as shown in the figure to pull out the lever [3] fully while lifting up the intermediate transfer belt unit [2]. While pulling the lever [3], slightly lift down the intermediate transfer belt unit. When the belt passes through the lock release position (approx. 30 deg), release your hands (intermediate transfer belt unit slowly moves downward).



5) While holding down the shutter attach spring [1], disengage the claw [2] by sliding the leading edge registration patch sensor shutter [3] in the direction of the arrow to remove the shutter.



F-7-340

Chapter 8 Pickup/Feeding System

Contents

8.1 Construction.....	8-1
8.1.1 Specifications	8-1
8.1.2 Main Station Unit Layout Drawing.....	8-2
8.1.3 Sub Station Unit Layout Drawing.....	8-3
8.1.4 Main Station Roller Layout Drawing.....	8-4
8.1.5 Sub Station Roller Layout Drawing.....	8-6
8.1.6 Main Station Sensor Layout Drawing.....	8-7
8.1.7 Sub Station Sensor Layout Drawing.....	8-8
8.1.8 Main Station Drive Transmission Drawing	8-9
8.1.9 Sub Station Drive Transmission Drawing.....	8-10
8.1.10 Control Layout Drawing (Main station).....	8-11
8.1.11 Control Layout (Sub station).....	8-12
8.1.12 Interval Speed.....	8-13
8.2 Basic Sequence	8-19
8.2.1 Cassette Pick Up.....	8-19
8.3 Detecting Jams.....	8-20
8.3.1 Jam Detection Outline.....	8-20
8.3.1.1 Overview.....	8-20
8.3.1.2 Measures for Jam Occurrence	8-23
8.3.2 Delay Jams	8-23
8.3.2.1 Deck Pick-Up Assembly (Right Deck / Left Deck).....	8-23
8.3.2.2 Other Delay Jam.....	8-23
8.3.3 Stationary Jams	8-25
8.3.3.1 Normal Stationary Jam.....	8-25
8.3.3.2 Stationary Jam at Power ON.....	8-26
8.3.4 Other Jams.....	8-26
8.3.4.1 Paper Thickness Detection Jam	8-26
8.3.4.2 Double Feeding Jam.....	8-26
8.3.4.3 Transparency Jam	8-26
8.3.4.4 Paper Size Mismatch Jam	8-26
8.4 Manual Feed Pickup Unit	8-27
8.4.1 Configuration	8-27
8.4.2 Feeding Operation.....	8-27
8.4.3 Paper Size Detection	8-29
8.4.4 Last Paper Detection	8-30
8.5 Deck.....	8-31
8.5.1 Lifter Basic Control.....	8-31
8.5.2 Timing for Lifter Control.....	8-32
8.5.3 Lifter Error Detection.....	8-34
8.5.4 Switching the Media Size.....	8-34
8.5.5 Paper Presence/Absence Detection	8-35
8.5.6 Paper Surface Detection.....	8-37
8.5.7 Remaining Paper Level Detection.....	8-40
8.5.8 Opening/Closing.....	8-41
8.5.9 Auto Cassette Change Function	8-42
8.6 Deck Pick-up Unit	8-44
8.6.1 Configuration	8-44

8.6.2 Air Pickup	8-44
8.6.3 Air Heater control	8-51
8.6.4 Pickup Operation.....	8-52
8.7 Lower Feeder Unit	8-53
8.7.1 Overview	8-53
8.7.2 Paper Length Detection	8-54
8.8 Vertical Path Feeder Unit.....	8-55
8.8.1 Overview	8-55
8.9 Pre-registration Unit.....	8-56
8.9.1 Overview	8-56
8.9.2 Pre-Registration Control	8-57
8.9.3 Double Feeding Detection.....	8-60
8.9.4 Paper Thickness Detection	8-61
8.10 Registration Unit.....	8-62
8.10.1 Overview	8-62
8.10.2 Cross Feed Registration Control	8-63
8.10.3 Lead Edge Registration Control	8-69
8.11 Duplex Feeding Unit.....	8-72
8.11.1 Overview	8-72
8.11.2 Duplexing Standby Control.....	8-74
8.12 Delivery.....	8-75
8.12.1 Overview	8-75
8.12.2 Delivery Control	8-76
8.12.3 Reverse Control.....	8-77
8.12.4 Duplexing Reverse Control.....	8-78
8.13 De-curler Control	8-79
8.13.1 Overview	8-79
8.13.2 Bypass Decurler Control	8-80
8.13.3 Duplexing Decurler Control.....	8-80
8.13.4 Delivery Decurler Control.....	8-81
8.14 Parts Replacement Procedure.....	8-82
8.14.1 Vertical Path Unit.....	8-82
8.14.1.1 Removing vertical path unit	8-82
8.14.2 Deck Unit	8-84
8.14.2.1 Removing Deck Unit	8-84
8.14.3 Cassette Pickup Unit	8-86
8.14.3.1 Removing Right/Left Pickup Deck	8-86
8.14.4 Cross-Feed Roller.....	8-88
8.14.4.1 Removing Cross-Feed Roller	8-88
8.14.4.2 Removing Cross-Feed Roller Cleaning Member	8-89
8.14.5 Separation Pad.....	8-90
8.14.5.1 Removing Deck Separation Pad	8-90
8.14.5.2 Removing the POD Deck Separation Pad	8-91
8.14.6 Manual Feed Roller.....	8-91
8.14.6.1 Removing the Manual Feed Roller.....	8-91
8.14.7 Manual Feed Separation Roller.....	8-93
8.14.7.1 Preparation for Removing the Manual Separation Roller	8-93
8.14.7.2 Removing the Manual Separation Roller	8-93
8.14.8 Pre-Fixing Feeding Unit.....	8-93
8.14.8.1 Removing the Pre-Fixing Feed Unit 1	8-93
8.14.8.2 Removing the Pre-Fixing Feed Unit 2.....	8-95
8.14.9 Main Station Duplexing Feed Unit	8-96
8.14.9.1 Removing the Main Station Duplex Feed Unit 1	8-96
8.14.9.2 Removing the Main Station Duplex Feed Unit 2	8-98
8.14.9.3 Removing the Main Station Duplex Feed Unit 3	8-99
8.14.10 Sub Station Duplexing Feed Unit	8-100
8.14.10.1 Removing Sub Station Duplexing Feed Unit 1	8-100

8.14.10.2 Removing Sub Station Duplexing Feed Unit 2	8-102
8.14.11 Lower Feed Unit.....	8-105
8.14.11.1 Removing the Lower Feed Unit.....	8-105
8.14.12 Bypass Feed Assembly.....	8-108
8.14.12.1 Removing Bypass Feed Unit	8-108
8.14.13 Bypass Feed Roller.....	8-108
8.14.13.1 Detaching Bypass Driven Roller 1.....	8-108
8.14.13.2 Detaching Bypass Driven Roller 2.....	8-109
8.14.13.3 Detaching Bypass Driven Roller 3.....	8-109
8.14.13.4 Detaching Bypass Feed Roller 1, Bypass Feed Roller 2, Bypass Feed Roller 3	8-110
8.14.13.5 Detaching Bypass Driven Roller 4.....	8-112
8.14.13.6 Detaching Bypass Feed Roller 4.....	8-112
8.14.13.7 Detaching Bypass Decurler Driven Roller.....	8-114
8.14.14 Tandem Feed Assembly	8-115
8.14.14.1 Removing Tandem Feed Unit.....	8-115
8.14.15 Tandem Feed Roller	8-116
8.14.15.1 Detaching Tandem Feed Roller 1, Tandem Feed Roller 2	8-116
8.14.15.2 Detaching Tandem Driven Roller 1	8-118
8.14.15.3 Detaching Tandem Driven Roller 2	8-119
8.14.15.4 Detaching Tandem Driven Roller 3.....	8-119
8.14.15.5 Detaching Tandem Feed Roller 3	8-120
8.14.16 Feed Belt	8-121
8.14.16.1 Detaching Feed Belt (Merger Unit).....	8-121
8.14.16.2 Detaching Feed Belt (Duplexing Decurler)	8-122
8.14.17 Merger pass Assembly	8-124
8.14.17.1 Removing the Merger Path Unit	8-124
8.14.18 Feed Roller (Merger Assembly).....	8-125
8.14.18.1 Removing the Rollers in Merger Path Unit	8-125
8.14.19 Duplexing Reversing Roller.....	8-125
8.14.19.1 Removing Duplex Reverse Roller, Duplex Post-Reverse Roller	8-125
8.14.20 Duplex Decurler Feed Belt.....	8-126
8.14.20.1 Removing Duplex Decurler Feeding Belt.....	8-126
8.14.21 Delivery Roller	8-127
8.14.21.1 Removing Delivery Roller 1/Delivery Pre-Reverse Roller	8-127
8.14.21.2 Removing Delivery Roller 3	8-130
8.14.22 Delivery Flapper Spring.....	8-131
8.14.22.1 Removing Delivery Flapper Spring.....	8-131
8.14.23 Delivery Reversing Roller.....	8-133
8.14.23.1 Removing Delivery Reverse Roller 1, Color Sensor Backup Roller, Delivery Reverse Roller 2	8-133
8.14.24 Delivery Decurler Roller 1	8-135
8.14.24.1 Removing Delivery Decurler Roller 1, Delivery Roller 2, Delivery Post-Reverse Roller, Delivery Pre-Reverse Driven Roller	8-135
8.14.25 Delivery Decurler Roller 2	8-139
8.14.25.1 Removing Delivery Decurler Roller 2, Delivery Driven Roller 1, Delivery Driven Roller2.....	8-139
8.14.26 One-way Clutch.....	8-142
8.14.26.1 Removing One-Way Clutch.....	8-142

8.1 Construction

8.1.1 Specifications

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

The following table shows major functions and configurations of the pickup feed system.

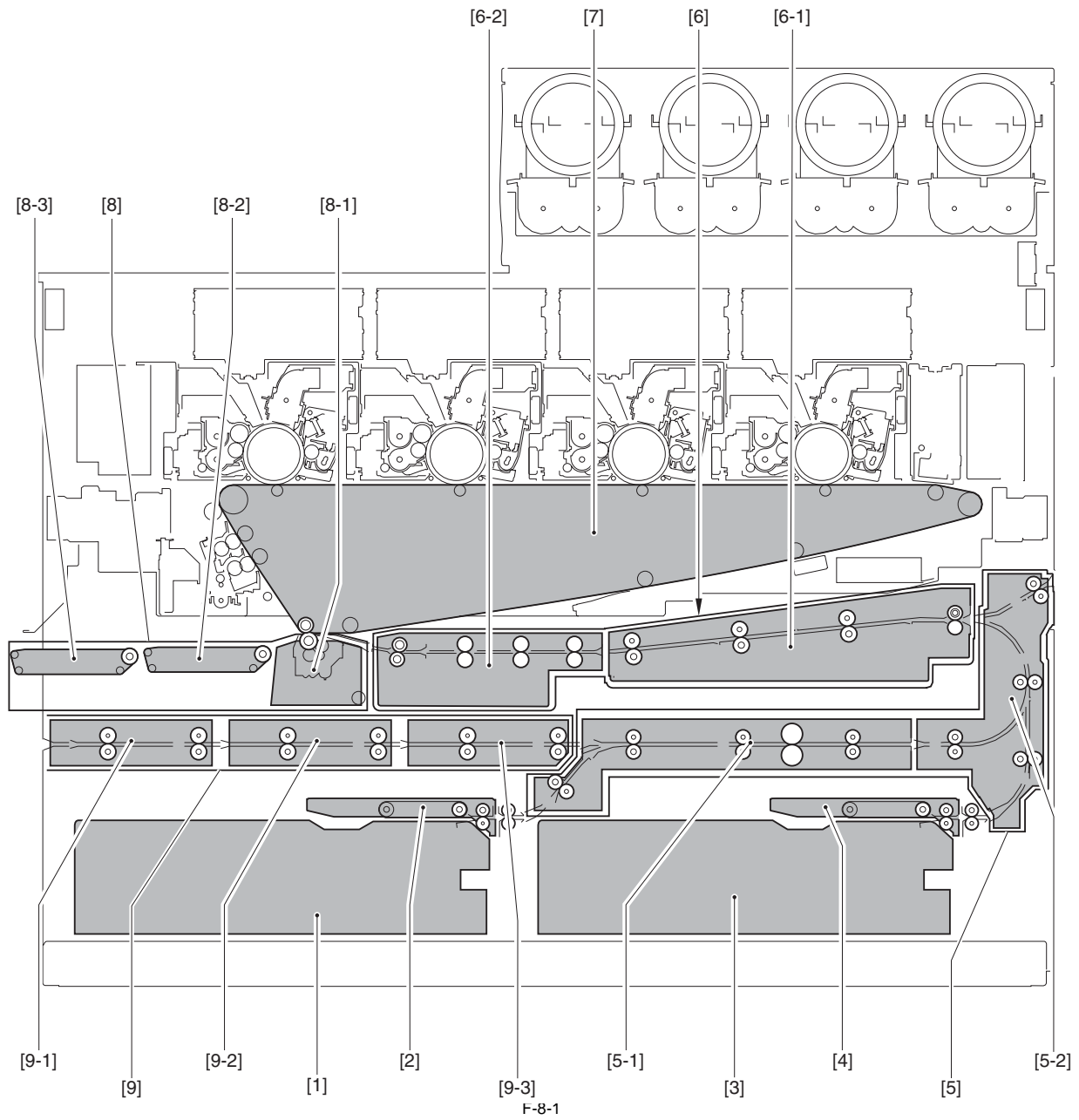
T-8-1

Item	Explanation	
Paper accommodation	Front loading	
Pickup unit	Two decks (right/left) Manual feed tray (OPTION)	
Paper size	decks (right/left) Manual feed tray (OPTION)	: B5/B5R to 13X19.2 (300X487 mm) 64g/m2 to 300g/m2 : A5R/STMTR to 13X19.2 (300X487 mm) 64g/m2 to 300g/m2
Paper load capacity	decks (right/left) Manual feed tray (OPTION)	: 2000 sheets (80g/m2) : 100 sheets (80g/m2)
Change of paper size	decks (right/left) Manual feed tray (OPTION)	: Varies depending on the user* : Varies depending on the user* * Input from operation panel
Pickup method	Air separation	
Paper feed standard	Center	
Indication of remaining paper level	Available (Control panel / Remaining level LED)	
OHP detection	Available (Transmission type sensor)	
Automatic detection of thick paper	Available (Displacement sensor)	
Double feeding detection	Available (Ultrasound sensor)	
Paper length detection	Available (Prism reflection sensor)	
Duplexing copy method	Through-path method	
Related user mode *1	2Indication of paper remaining level message Input of inch Setting ON/OFF of cassette auto selection Selection of paper type Giving indication priority to the paper selection screen Making a distinction of LTRR/STMT originals Registration of the standard mode for manual feed paper Registration of the user setting size Shift between jobs Partition paper between jobs Partition paper between copies	

*1: Refer to User's Manual for details.

8.1.2 Main Station Unit Layout Drawing

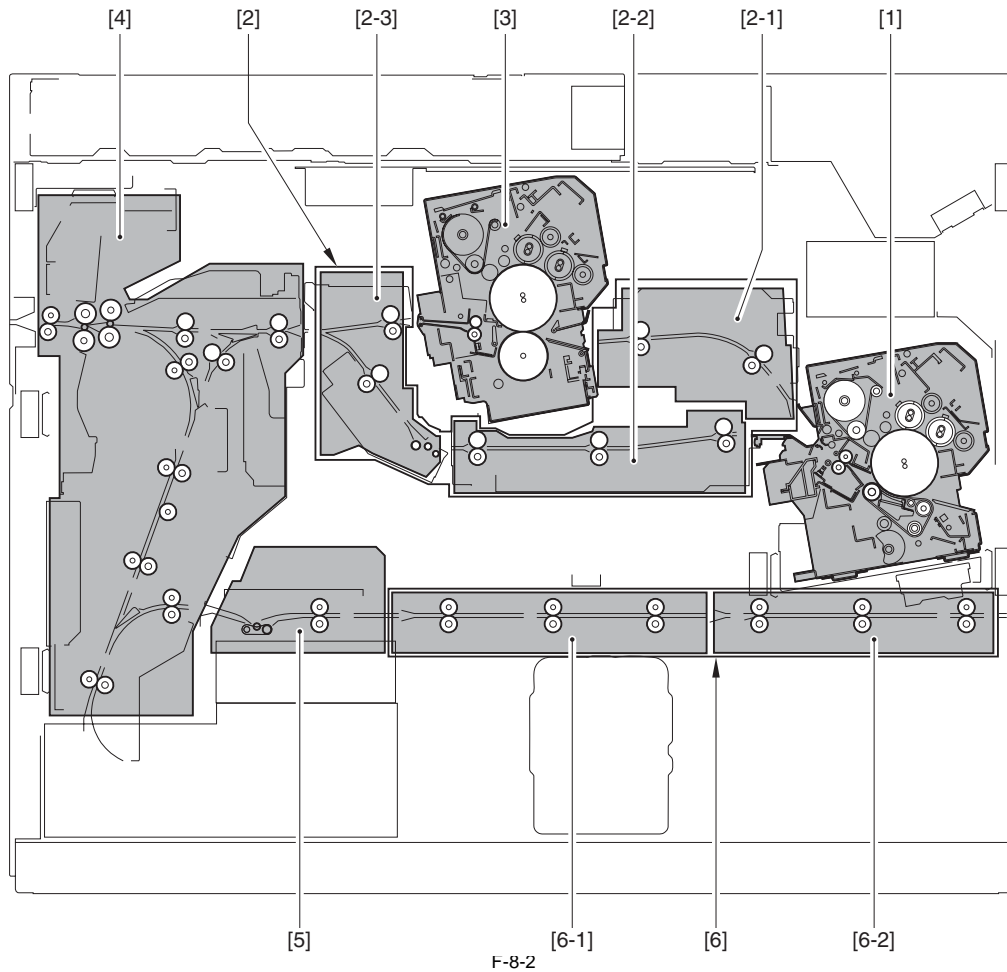
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000



- | | |
|-----------------------------------|---|
| [1] Left deck | [7] Intermediate transfer unit |
| [2] Left pickup unit | [8] Secondary transfer / fixing front feed unit |
| [3] Right deck | [8-1] Secondary transfer unit |
| [4] Right pickup unit | [8-2] Fixing front feed unit 1 |
| [5] Vertical path lower feed unit | [8-3] Fixing front feed unit 2 |
| [5-1] Lower feed unit | [9] Main station duplexing feed unit |
| [5-2] Vertical path unit | [9-1] Main station duplexing feed unit 1 |
| [6] Registration feed unit | [9-2] Main station duplexing feed unit 2 |
| [6-1] Feed unit | [9-3] Main station duplexing feed unit 3 |
| [6-2] Registration unit | |

8.1.3 Sub Station Unit Layout Drawing

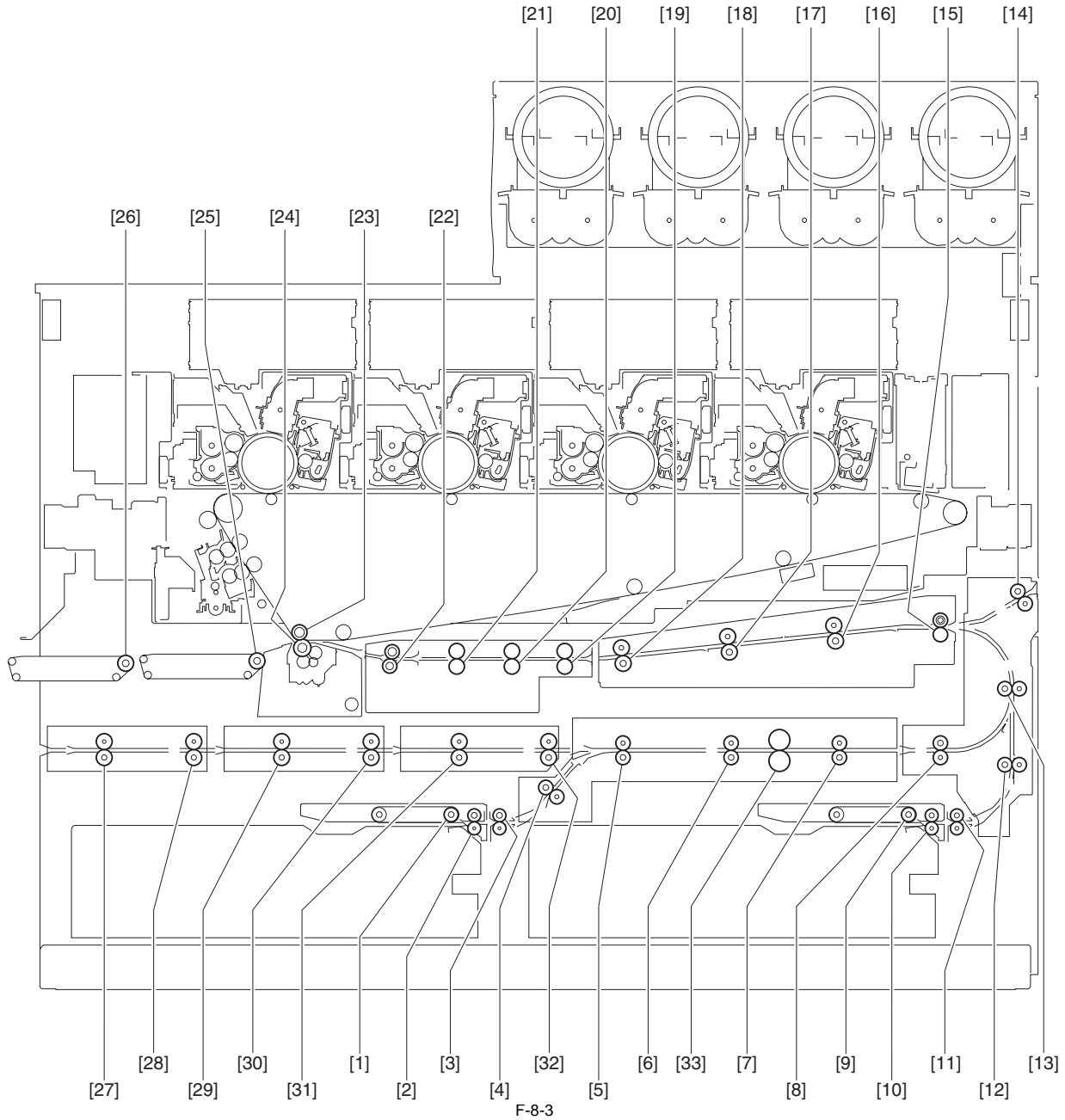
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000



- | | | | |
|-------|-----------------------------|-------|-----------------------------------|
| [1] | First fixing assembly | [4] | Reverse / outside delivery unit |
| [2] | Fixing feed unit | [5] | Duplexing Decurler unit |
| [2-1] | Tandem feed unit | [6] | Sub station duplexing feed unit |
| [2-2] | Bypass feed unit | [6-1] | Sub station duplexing feed unit 1 |
| [2-3] | Fixing confluence path unit | [6-2] | Sub station duplexing feed unit 2 |
| [3] | Second fixing assembly | | |

8.1.4 Main Station Roller Layout Drawing

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

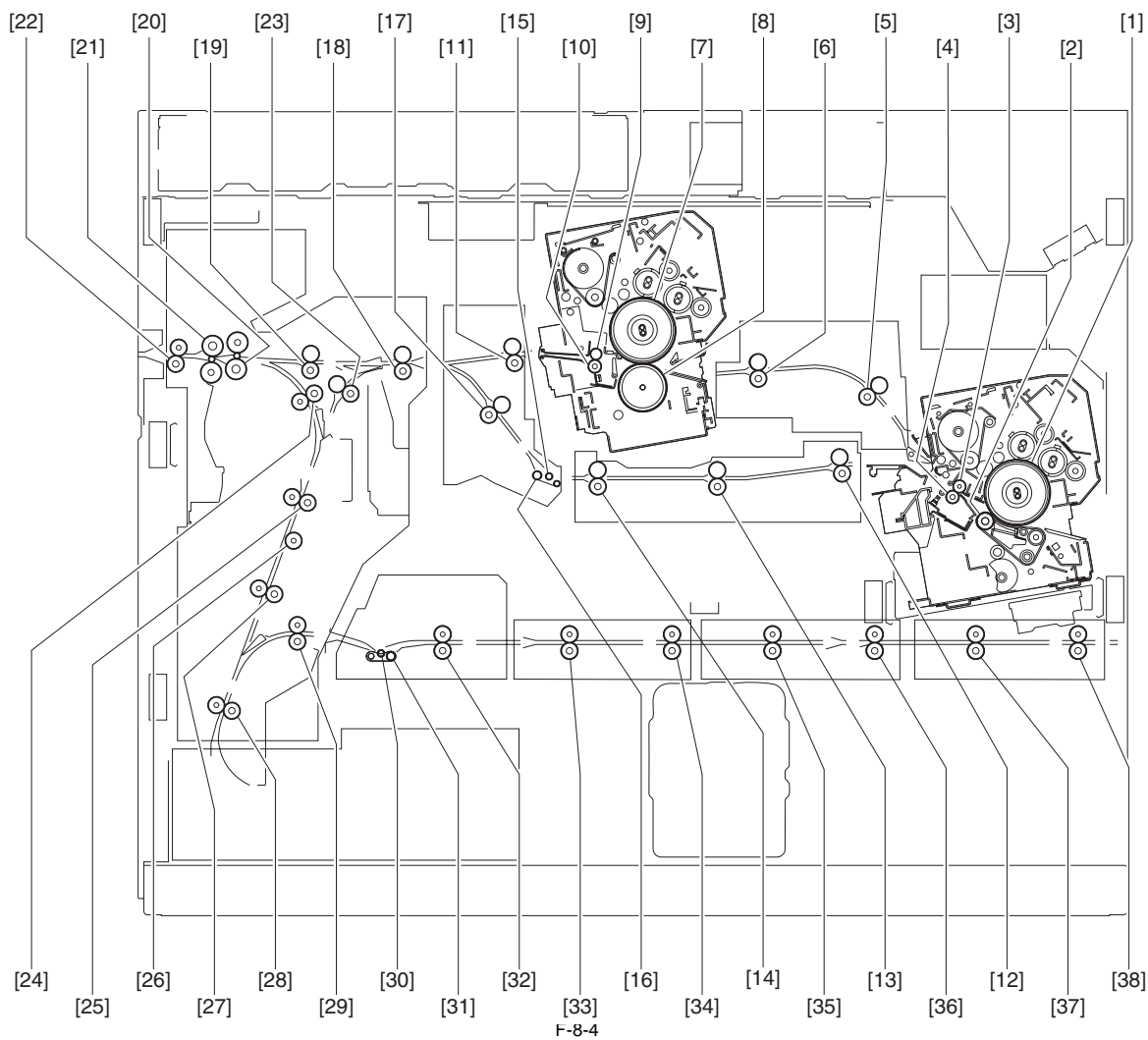


Main station

- | | | |
|---|--------------------------------|--|
| [1] Left deck belt drive roller | [12] Right deck merger roller | [23] Secondary transfer inner roller |
| [2] Left deck pull-out roller | [13] Vertical path feed roller | [24] Secondary transfer outside roller |
| [3] Left deck pull-out auxiliary roller | [14] POD deck path feed roller | [25] Pre-fixing feed drive roller 1 |
| [4] Left deck merger roller | [15] Feed roller 1 | [26] Pre-fixing feed drive roller 2 |
| [5] Lower feed roller 1 | [16] Feed roller 2 | [27] Duplexing feed roller 3-2 |
| [6] Lower feed roller 2 | [17] Feed roller 3 | [28] Duplexing feed roller 3-1 |
| [7] Lower feed roller 3 | [18] Feed roller 4 | [29] Duplexing feed roller 2-2 |
| [8] Lower feed roller 4 | [19] Cross feed roller 1 | [30] Duplexing feed roller 2-1 |
| [9] Right deck belt drive roller | [20] Cross feed roller 2 | [31] Duplexing feed roller 1-2 |
| [10] Right deck pull-out roller | [21] Cross feed roller 3 | [32] Duplexing feed roller 1-1 |
| [11] Right deck pull-out auxiliary roller | [22] Registration lower roller | [33] Paper holding sub roller |

8.1.5 Sub Station Roller Layout Drawing

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000



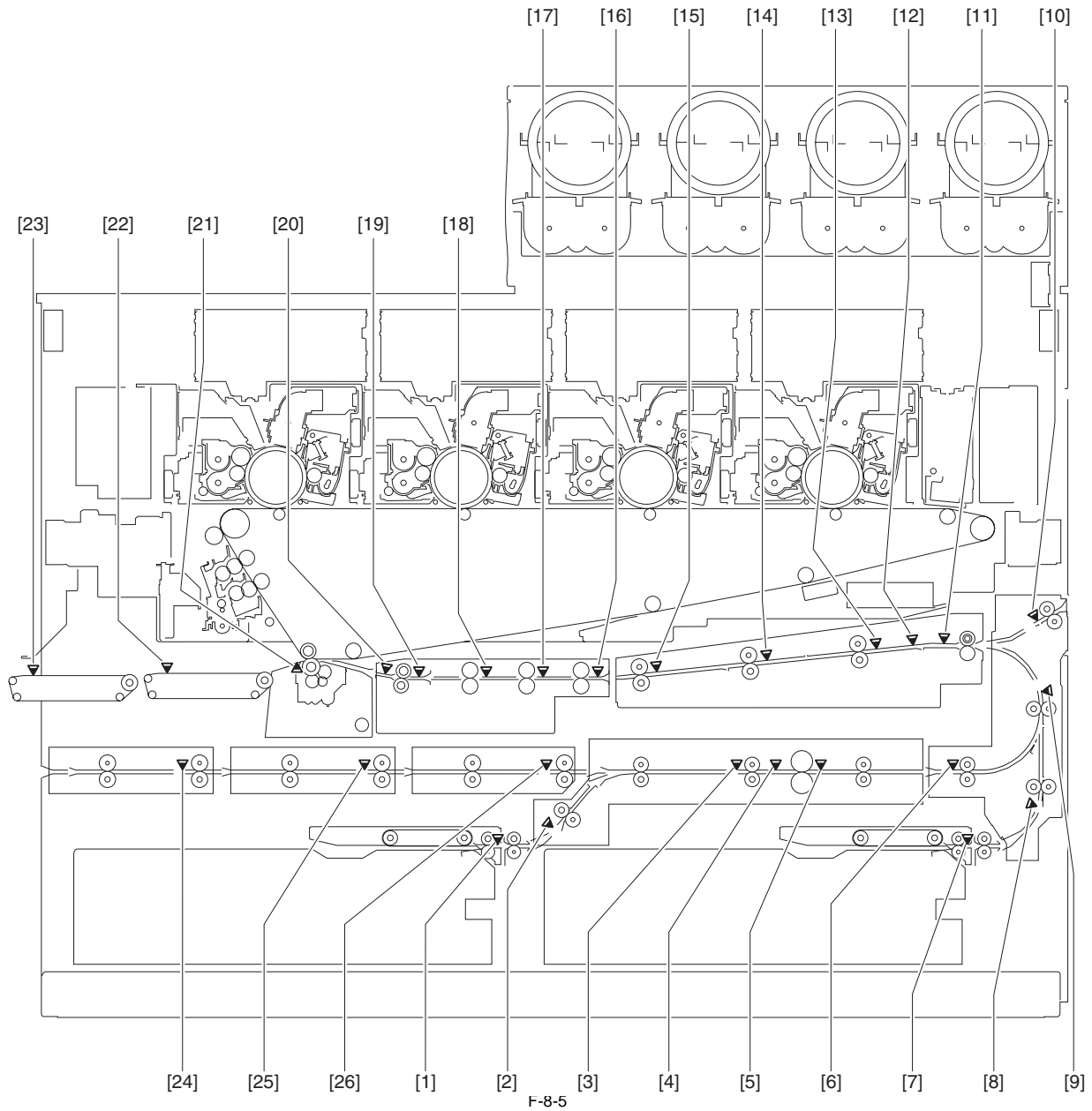
Sub station

[1] Primary fixing roller	[14] Bypass feed roller 3	[27] Delivery reverse roller 2
[2] Separation roller	[15] Bypass de-curler upper roller	[28] Duplexing reverse roller
[3] Primary fixing inner delivery upper roller	[16] Bypass de-curler drive roller	[29] Duplexing reverse rear roller
[4] Primary fixing inner delivery lower roller	[17] Bypass feed roller 4	[30] Duplexing de-curler upper roller
[5] Tandem feed roller 1	[18] Delivery roller 1	[31] Duplexing de-curler drive roller
[6] Tandem feed roller 2	[19] Delivery roller 2	[32] Duplexing feed roller 7
[7] Secondary fixing roller	[20] Delivery de-curler 1	[33] Duplexing feed roller 6-2
[8] Pressure roller	[21] Delivery de-curler 2	[34] Duplexing feed roller 6-1
[9] Secondary fixing inner delivery upper roller	[22] Delivery roller 3	[35] Duplexing feed roller 5-2
[10] Secondary fixing inner delivery lower roller	[23] Delivery reverse front roller	[36] Duplexing feed roller 5-1
[11] Tandem feed roller 3	[24] Delivery reverse rear roller	[37] Duplexing feed roller 4-2
[12] Bypass feed roller 1	[25] Delivery reverse roller 1	[38] Duplexing feed roller 4-1
[13] Bypass feed roller 2	[26] Color sensor backup roller	

8.1.6 Main Station Sensor Layout Drawing

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

The following shows major sensors of the pickup feed system (main station).



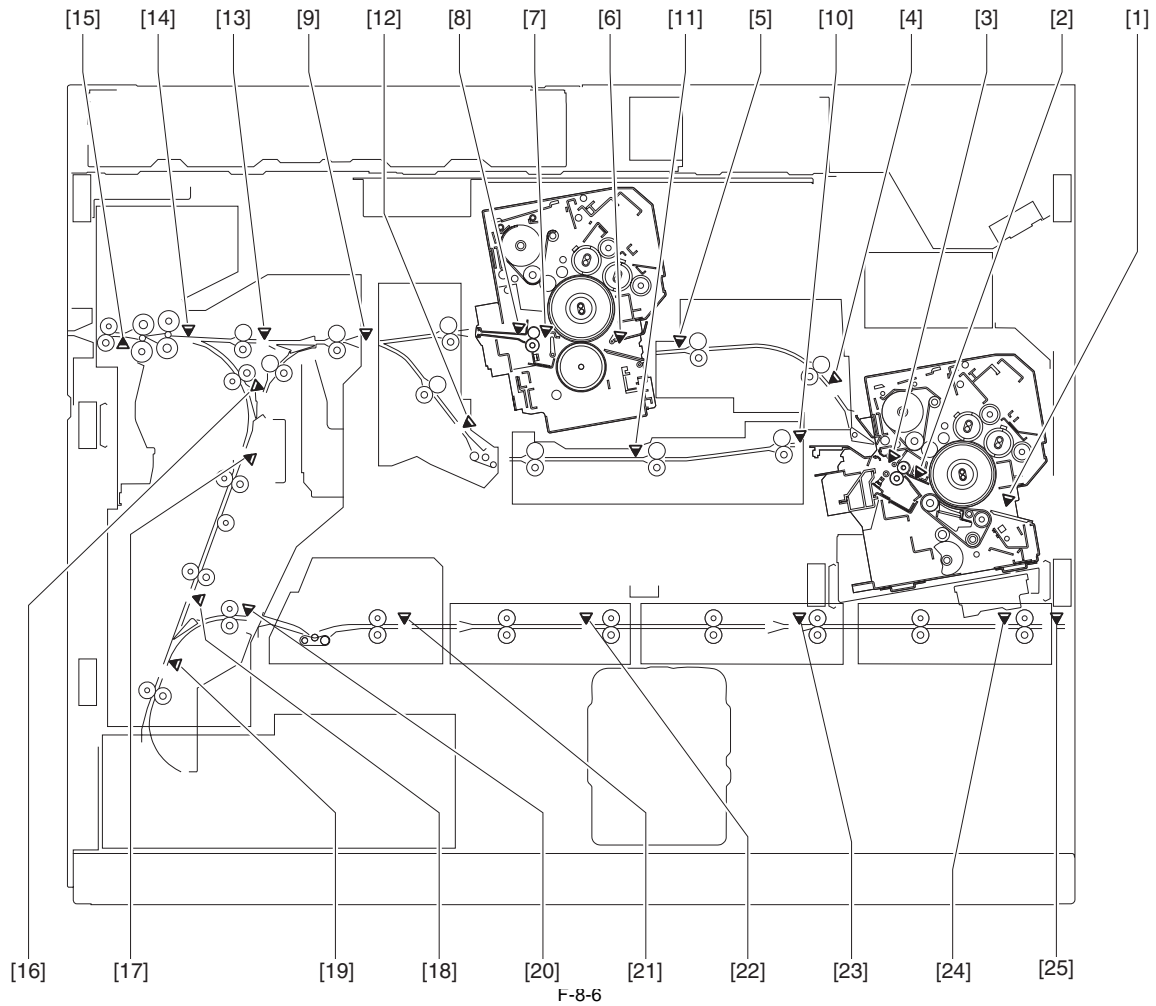
Main Station

- | | |
|--|---------------------------------------|
| [1] Left deck pull-out sensor | [14] Pre-feed front sensor 2 |
| [2] Left deck merger sensor | [15] Pre-feed front sensor 3 |
| [3] Lower feed sensor 1 | [16] Cross feed sensor 1 |
| [4] Lower feed path paper length sensor left (front/rear) | [17] Cross feed sensor 2 |
| [5] Lower feed path paper length sensor right (front/rear) | [18] Cross feed sensor 3 |
| [6] Lower feed sensor 2 | [19] Pre-Registration sensor |
| [7] Right deck pull-out sensor | [20] Registration sensor |
| [8] Right deck merger sensor | [21] Secondary transfer outlet sensor |
| [9] Vertical path sensor | [22] Pre-fixing feed sensor 1 |
| [10] POD deck path sensor | [23] Pre-fixing feed sensor 2 |
| [11] Transparency sensor (front/rear) | [24] Duplexing standby sensor 3 |
| [12] Double feed sensor | [25] Duplexing standby sensor 2 |
| [13] Pre-feed front sensor 1 | [26] Duplexing standby sensor 1 |

8.1.7 Sub Station Sensor Layout Drawing

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

The following shows major sensors of the pickup feed system (sub station).

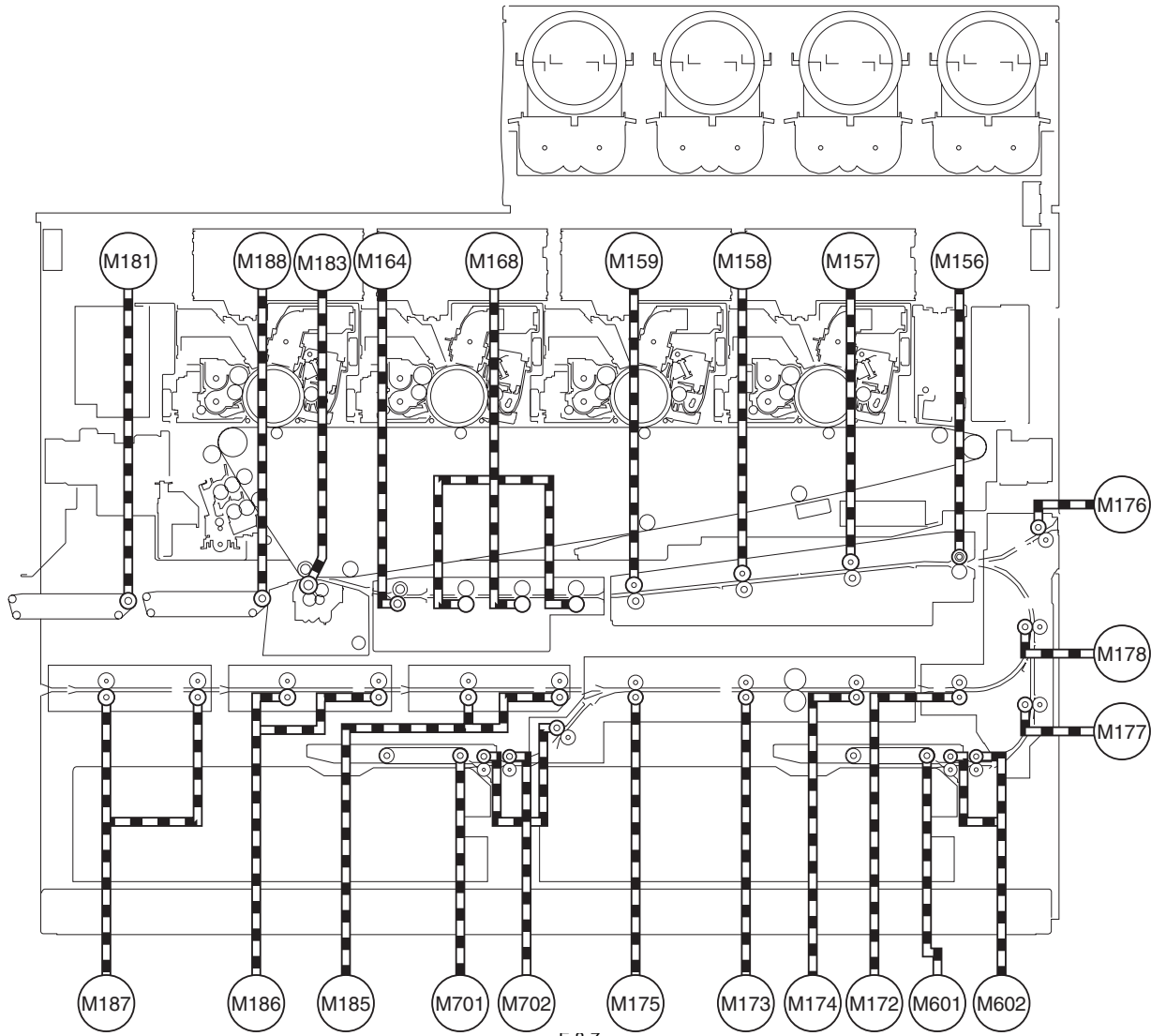


Sub station

[1]	Primary fixing inlet sensor	[14]	Delivery sensor 2
[2]	Primary fixing inner delivery sensor 1	[15]	Delivery sensor 3
[3]	Primary fixing inner delivery sensor 2	[16]	Delivery reverse front sensor
[4]	Tandem sensor 1	[17]	Delivery reverse sensor 1
[5]	Tandem sensor 2	[18]	Delivery reverse sensor 2
[6]	Secondary fixing inlet sensor	[19]	Duplexing reverse sensor
[7]	Secondary fixing inner delivery sensor 1	[20]	Duplexing reverse rear sensor
[8]	Secondary fixing inner delivery sensor 2	[21]	Duplexing path inlet sensor
[9]	Merger path upper sensor	[22]	Duplexing standby sensor 6
[10]	Bypass sensor 1	[23]	Duplexing standby sensor 5
[11]	Bypass sensor 2	[24]	Duplexing standby sensor 4
[12]	Merger path lower sensor	[25]	Duplexing path sub station outlet sensor
[13]	Delivery sensor 1		

8.1.8 Main Station Drive Transmission Drawing

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000



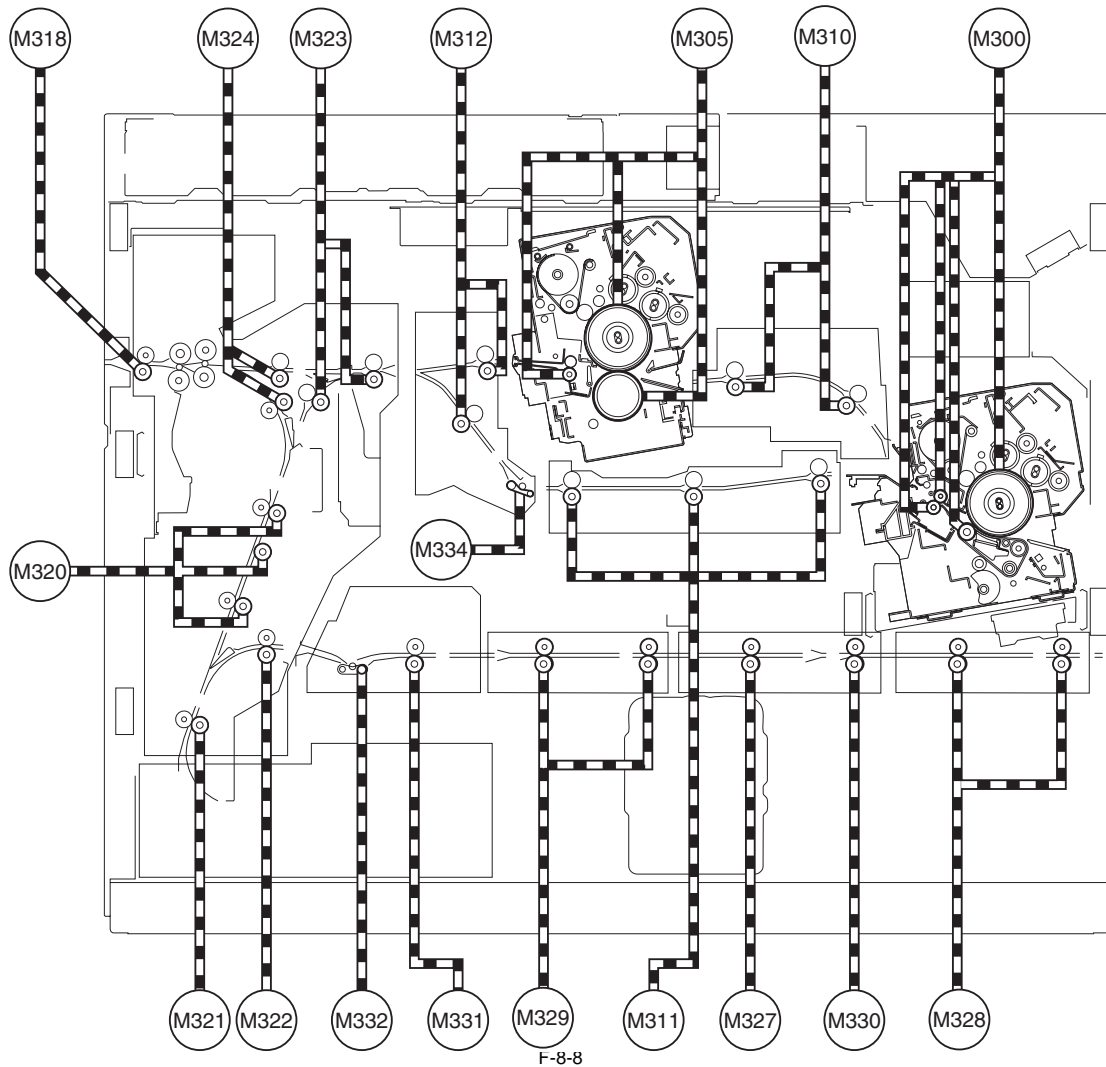
F-8-7

Main station

M156	Pre-registration motor 1	M178	Vertical path feed motor
M157	Pre-registration motor 2	M181	Pre-fixing feed drive left motor
M158	Pre-registration motor 3	M183	Secondary transfer drive motor
M159	Pre-registration motor 4	M185	Duplexing feed motor 1
M164	Registration motor	M186	Duplexing feed motor 2
M168	Cross feed motor	M187	Duplexing feed motor 3
M172	Lower feed motor 4	M188	Pre-fixing feed drive right motor
M173	Lower feed motor 2	M601	Right deck pickup belt motor
M174	Lower feed motor 3	M602	Right deck pull-out motor
M175	Lower feed motor 1	M701	Left deck pickup belt motor
M176	POD deck path feed motor	M702	Left deck pull-out motor
M177	Right deck feed motor		

8.1.9 Sub Station Drive Transmission Drawing

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

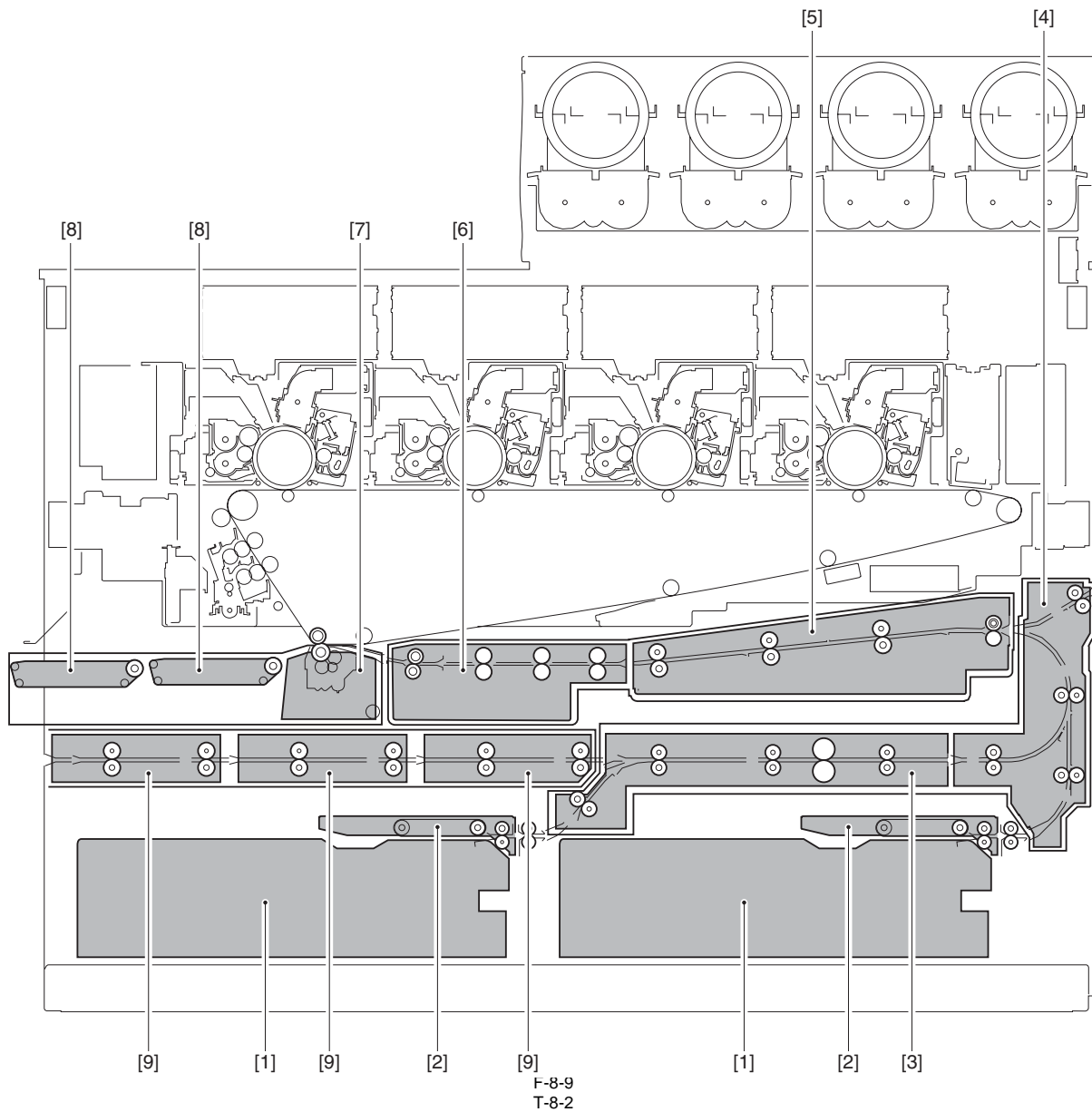


Sub station

M300	Primary fixing drive motor	M323	Pre-delivery feed motor 1
M305	Secondary fixing drive motor	M324	Pre-delivery feed motor 2
M310	Tandem feed motor	M327	Duplexing feed motor 6
M311	Bypass feed motor	M328	Duplexing feed motor 4
M312	Merger path feed motor	M329	Duplexing feed motor 7
M318	Delivery motor	M330	Duplexing feed motor 5
M320	Delivery reverse motor	M331	Duplexing feed motor 8
M321	Duplexing reverse motor	M332	Duplexing de-curler drive motor
M322	Duplexing reverse rear motor	M334	Bypass de-curler drive motor

8.1.10 Control Layout Drawing (Main station)

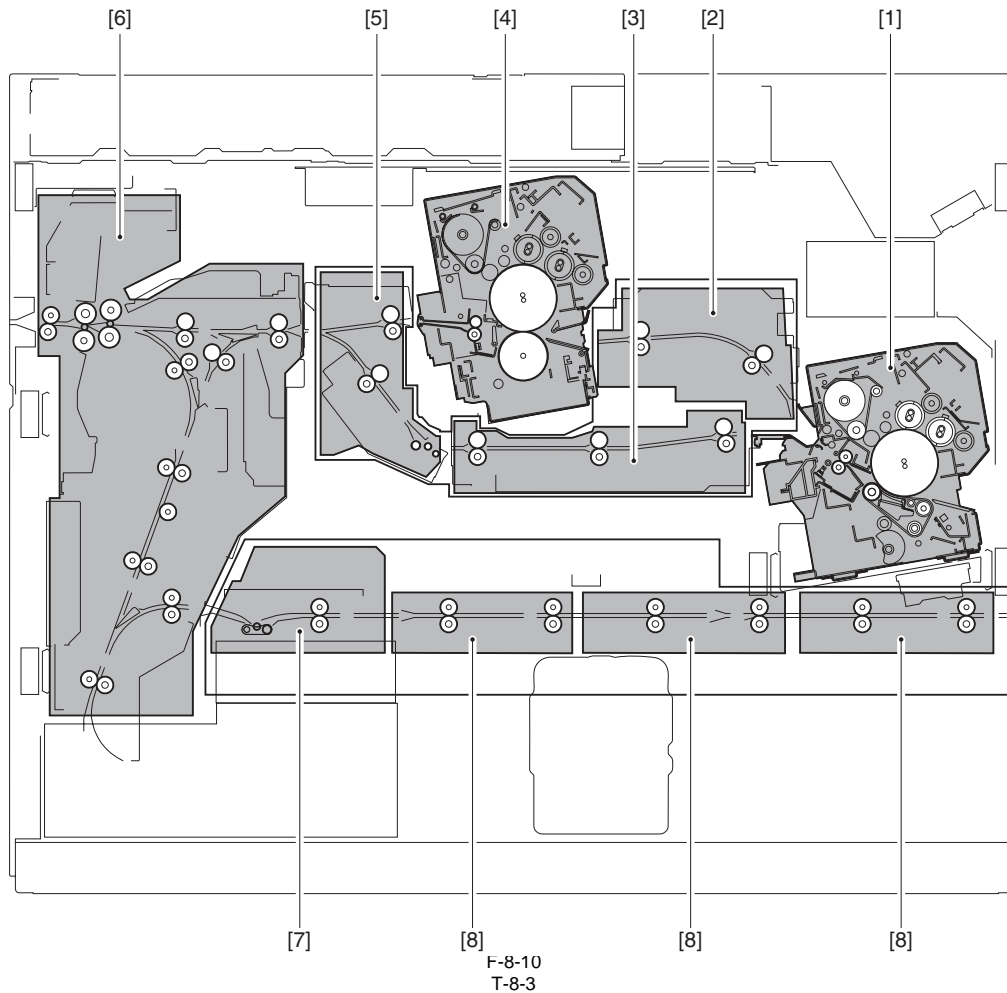
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000



No.	Unit Name	Control Name
[1]	Right/Left Deck	Lifter control Paper surface detection Paper level detection Fan control
[2]	Right/Left Pickup Unit	Air pickup control Pickup control
[3]	Lower Feeding Unit	Paper length detection
[4]	Vertical Path Unit	-
[5]	Pre-Registration Unit	Paper pressure detection Double feeding detection Pre-registration control Registration roller roll attachment/detachment control
[6]	Cross Feeding Registration Unit	Cross feeding registration control Cross feeding roller roll attachment/detachment control Leading edge registration control
[7]	Secondary Transfer Unit	Secondary transfer attachment/detachment control
[8]	Pre-Fixing Feeding Unit	-
[9]	Main Station Duplexing Feeding Unit	Duplexing control

8.1.11 Control Layout (Sub station)

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

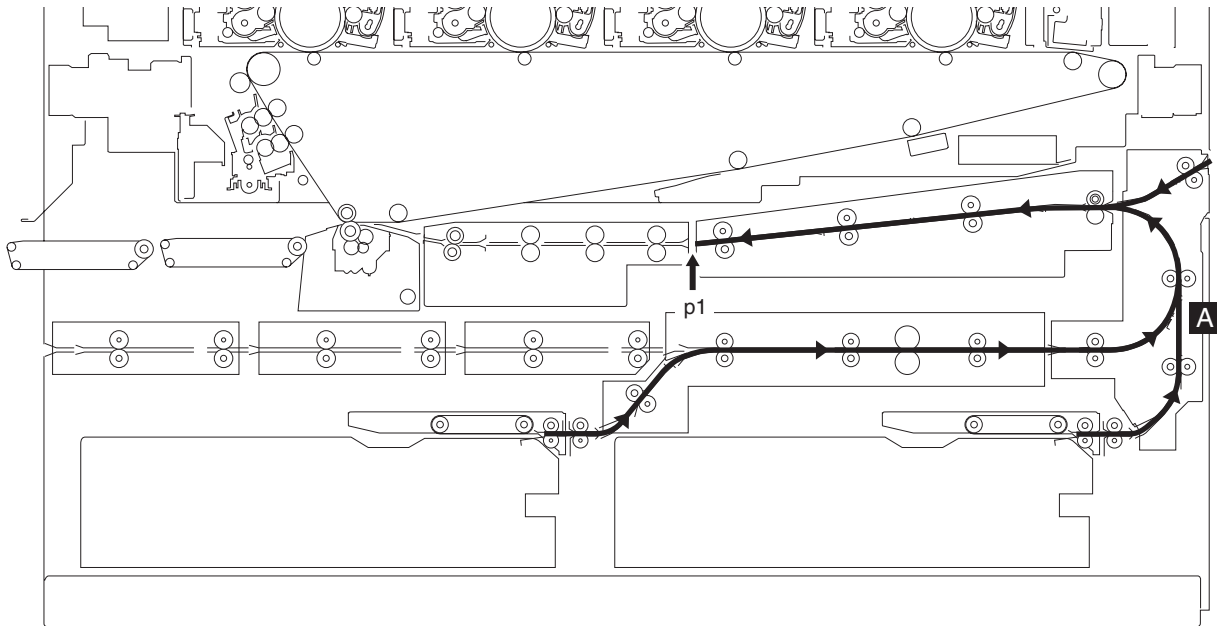


No.	Unit Name	Control Name
[1]	Primary Fixing Assembly	Tandem/single fixing switching control *1
[2]	Tandem Feeding Unit	-
[3]	Bypass Feeding Unit	-
[4]	Secondary Fixing Assembly	Fixing drive control*1
[5]	Fixing Confluence Path Unit	Fixing confluence pass decurler control
[6]	Reverse/Delivery Unit	Delivery/reverse decurler control Reverse control Duplexing reverse control Path switching control
[7]	Duplexing Decurler Unit	Duplexing decurler control
[8]	Sub Station Duplexing Feeding Unit	Duplexing control

8.1.12 Interval Speed

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

1. Pickup position - Pre-registration position

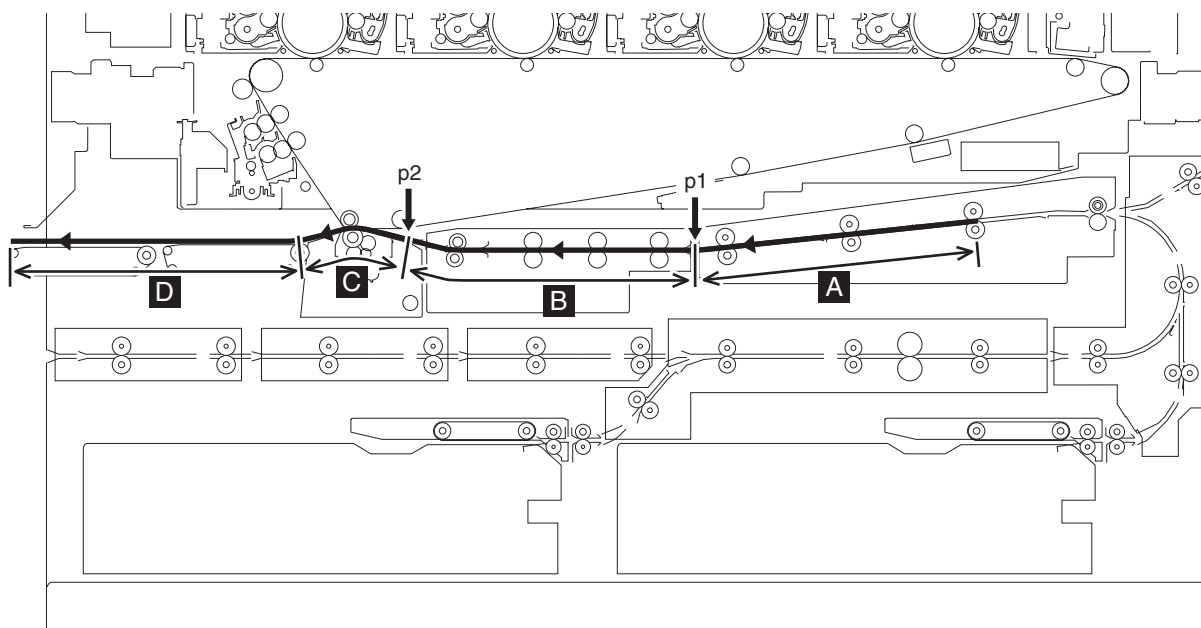


F-8-11

Interval	Paper feeding speed
[A]	750 mm/sec

p1: Pre-registration stop position

2. Pre-registration position - First fixing front



F-8-12

Interval	Paper feeding speed
[A]	567.4 mm/sec
[B]	600 mm/sec *1
[C]	300 mm/sec *2
[D]	303 mm/sec *2

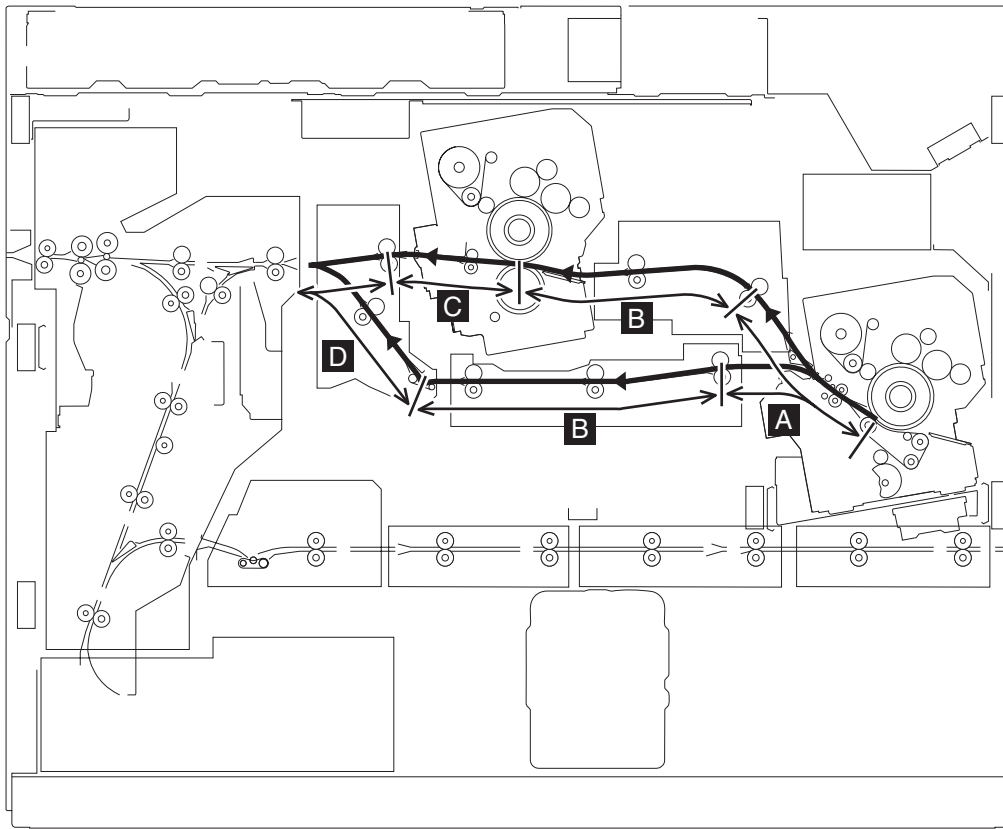
*1: The feeding speed cannot be identified because it is a skew interval. Approximately 600mm/sec

*2: The speed is reduced from 600mm/sec to 300mm/sec by leading edge registration control.

p1: Pre-registration stop position

p2: Speed reduction position (The speed reduction point is determined by registration control.)

3. First fixing front - Second fixing delivery position

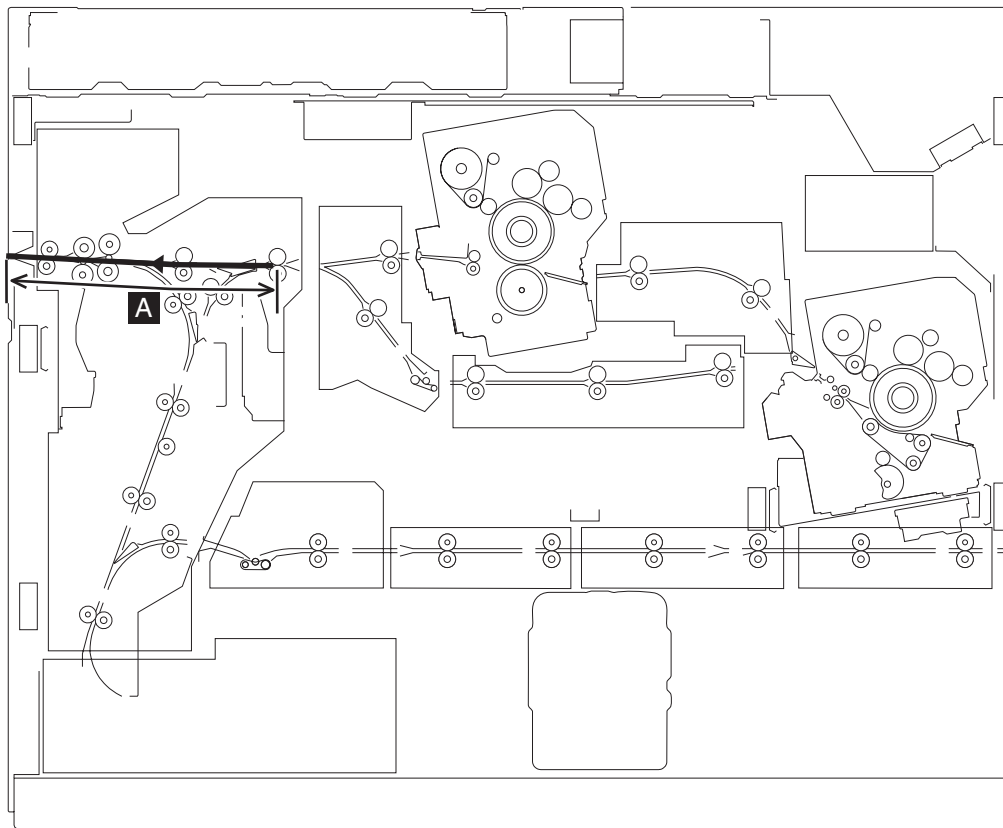


F-8-13

Interval	Paper feeding speed
[A]	306 mm/sec
[B]	314 mm/sec
[C]	317 mm/sec
[D]	325 mm/sec

4. Second fixing delivery position - Delivery position

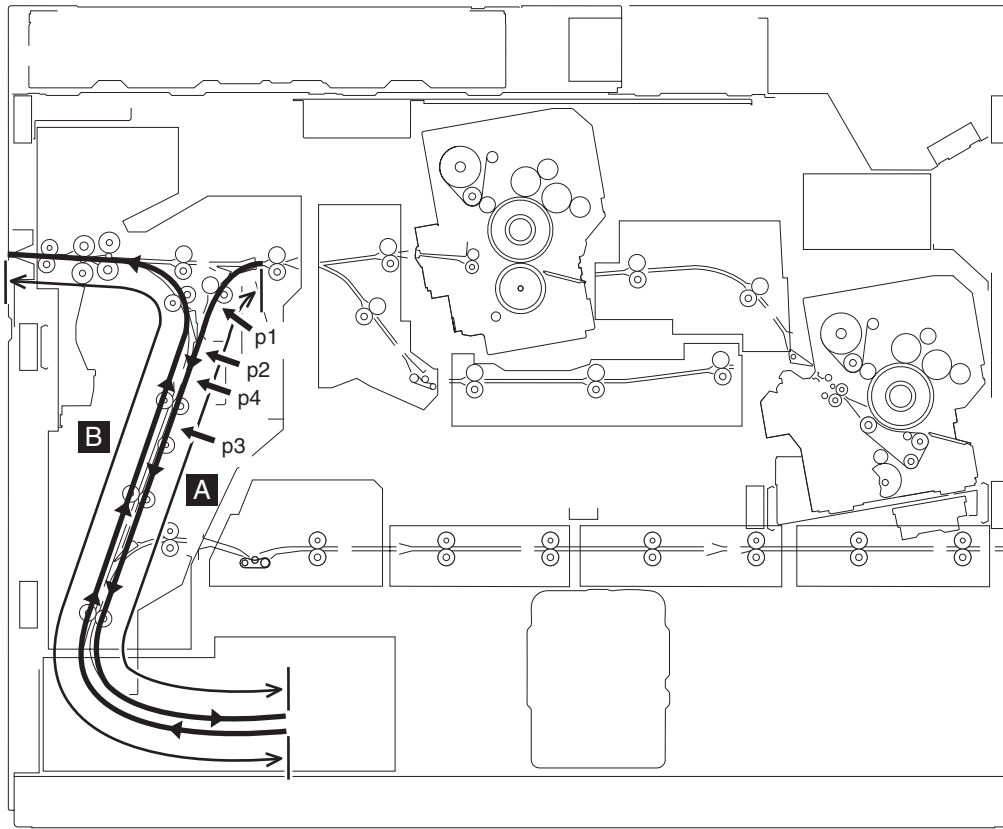
a. Face-up delivery



F-8-14

Interval	Paper feeding speed
[A]	325 mm/sec

b. Face-down delivery



F-8-15

Interval	Paper feeding speed
[A]	325 mm/sec to 750 mm/sec
[B]	750 mm/sec

The speed is increased at the point when the trail edge of paper passes through the secondary fixing or bypass de-curler. In terms of control, the speed is increased when the lead edge of paper reached the speed-up position.

The speed-up position varies depending on the paper size as follows.

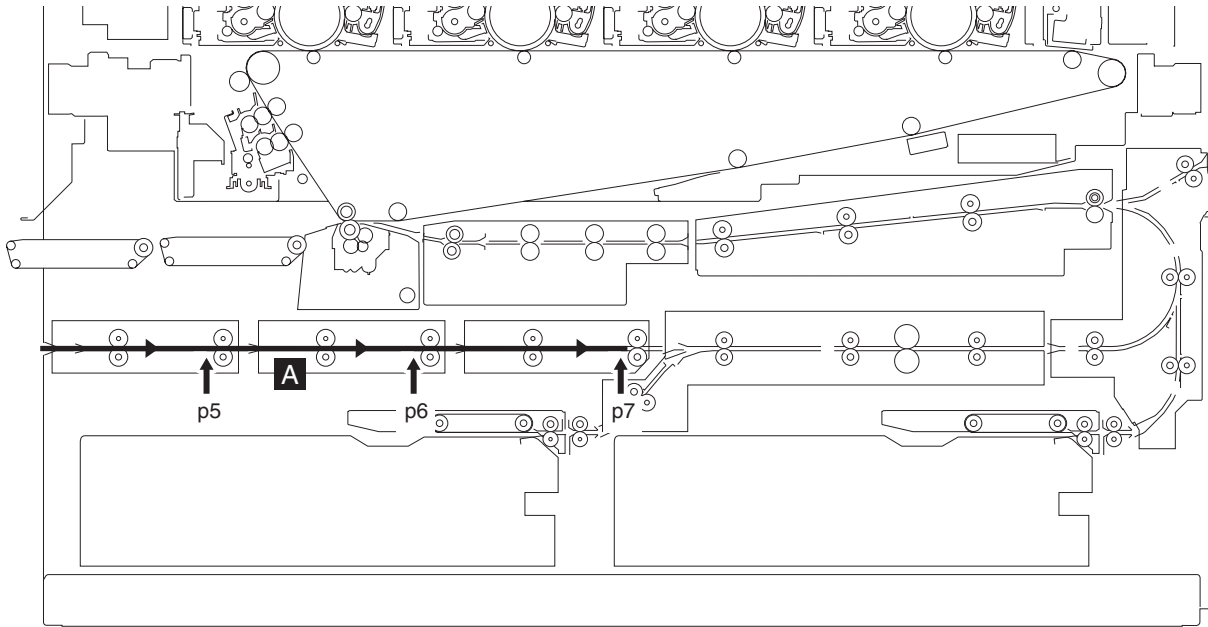
p1: Speed-up position 1 (Paper shorter than LTR size (215.9mm))

p2: Speed-up position 2 (Paper shorter than B4 size (364.0mm))

p3: Speed-up position 3 (Paper longer than B4 size (364.0mm))

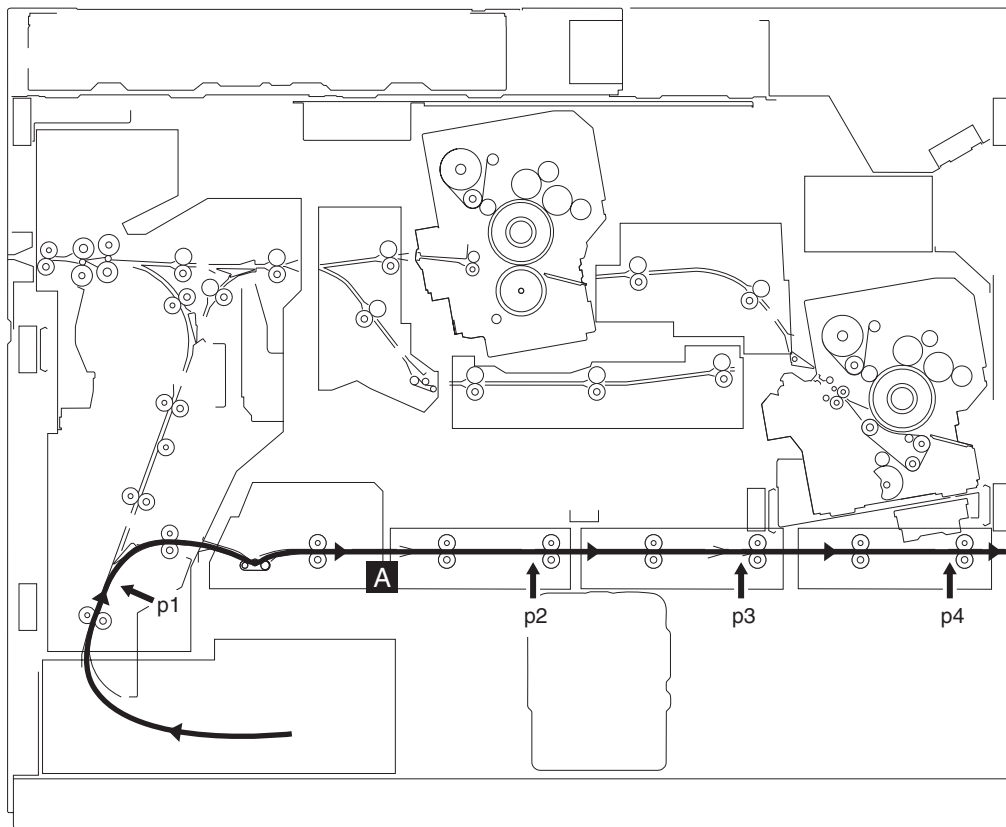
p4: Delivery reverse position

c. Duplexing path
c-1. Main station



F-8-16

c-2. Sub station



F-8-17

Interval	Paper feeding speed
[A]	750 mm/sec

- p1: Duplexing reverse position
- p2: Duplexing standby position 6
- p2: Duplexing standby position 5
- p2: Duplexing standby position 4
- p2: Duplexing standby position 3
- p2: Duplexing standby position 2
- p2: Duplexing standby position 1

8.2 Basic Sequence

8.2.1 Cassette Pick Up

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

Pickup Timing

With this machine, pickup from the right/left deck is performed after the image formation process.

The pickup starting time is calculated with the following formula based on the Y-TOP signal (vertical scanning synchronization signal (Y)).

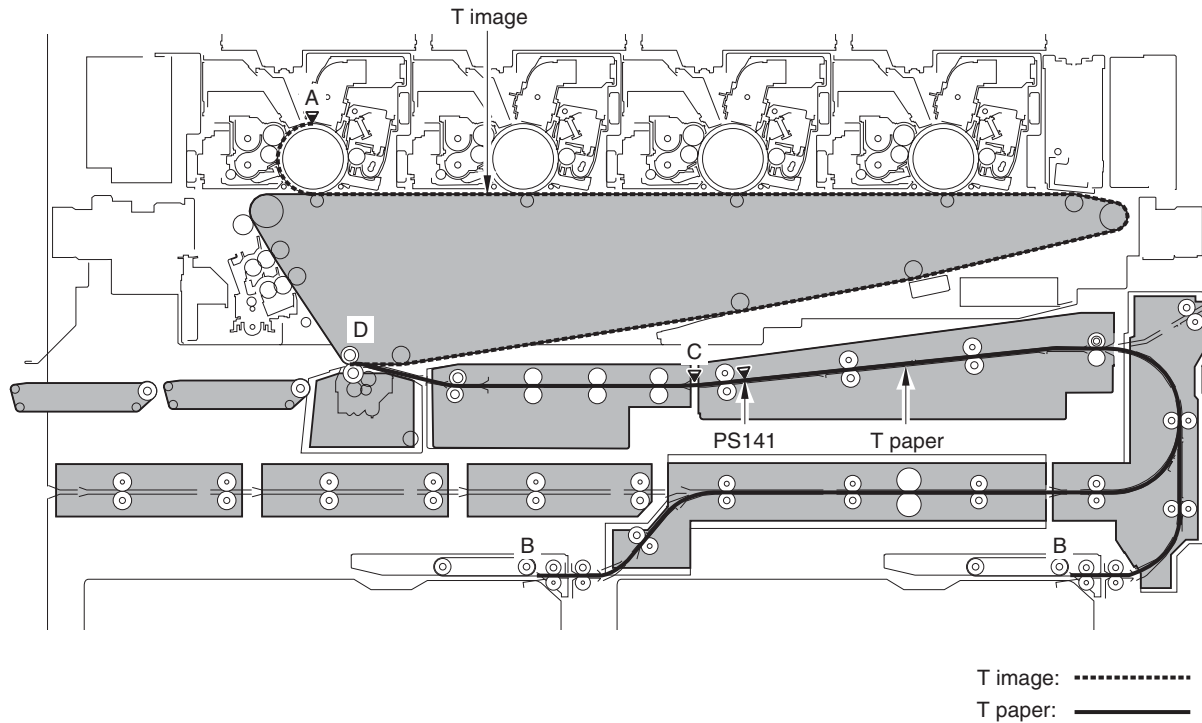
$$\text{Pickup Starting Time} = T_{\text{image}} - T_{\text{paper}} - T_{\text{stop}}$$

T_{image} : traveling time of an image from the exposure position of Y (A) to secondary transfer position (D).

T_{paper} : paper feeding time from the pickup starting position (B) to the secondary transfer position (D).

T_{stop} : pre-registration standby time (pre-registration stop position (C)).

*1: The pre-registration standby time is 200ms.



F-8-18

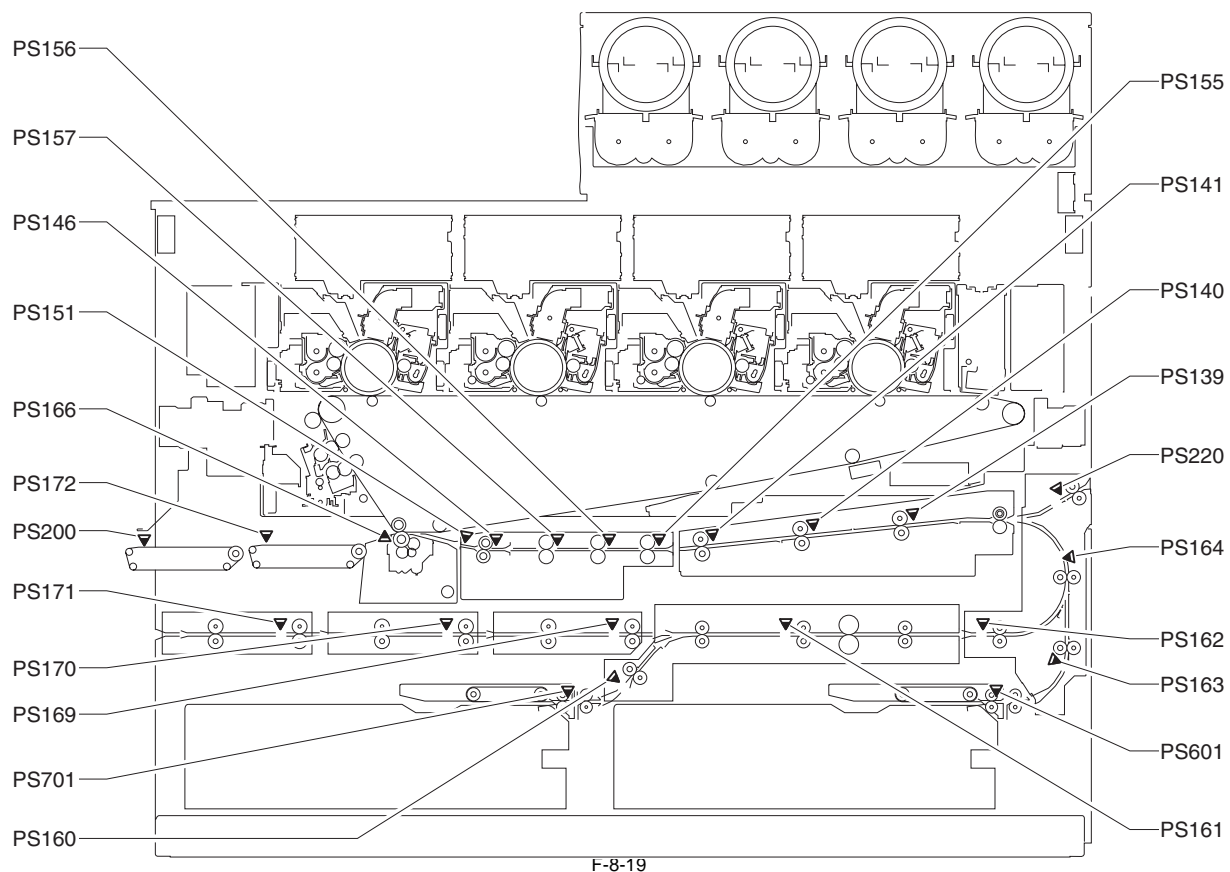
8.3 Detecting Jams

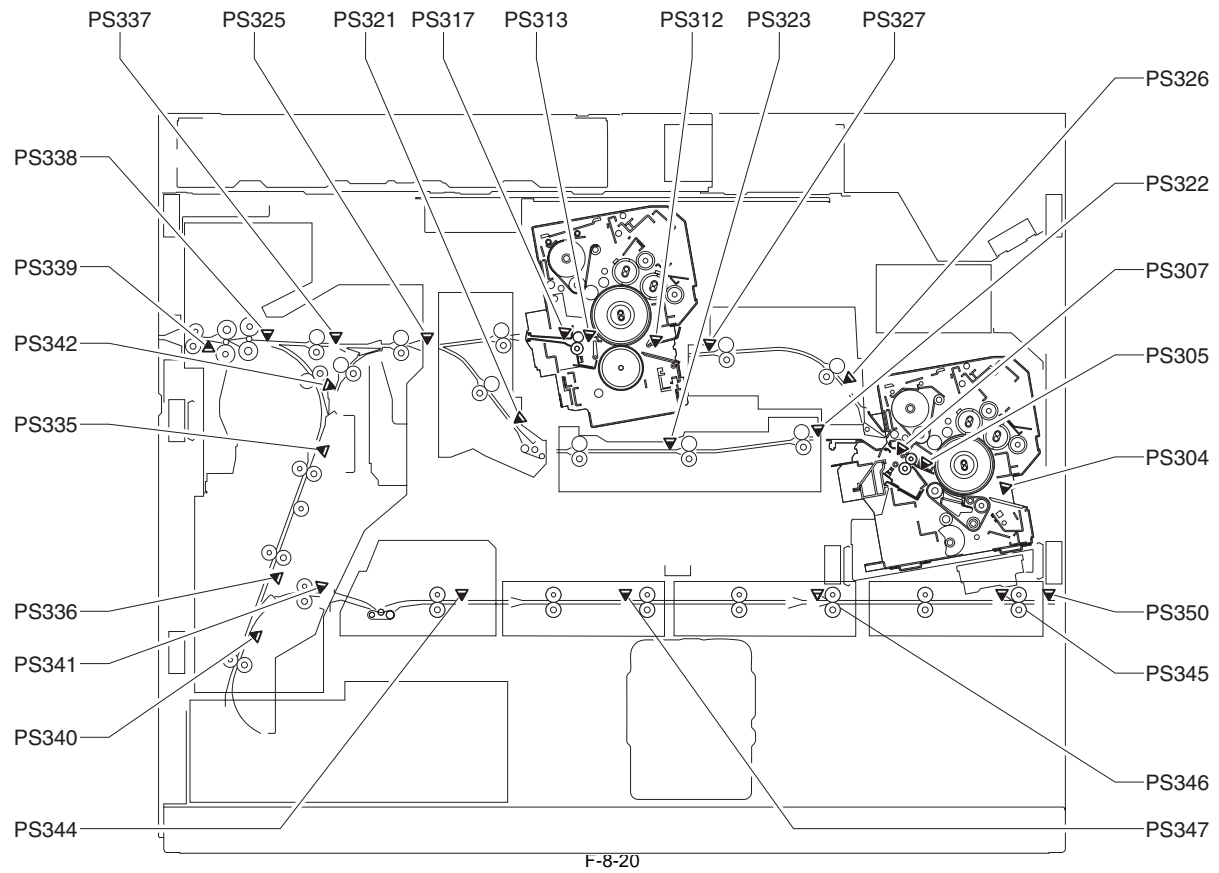
8.3.1 Jam Detection Outline

8.3.1.1 Overview

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

1. Jam Layout Drawing





2. Jam Classification

T-8-4

Jam code	Sensor		XX		
	Name	Code	01:Delay jam	02:ccumulation jam	0A:Retention jam
XX01	Right deck pull-out sensor	PS601	Detected	Detected	Detected
XX02	Right deck merger sensor	PS163	Detected	Detected	Detected
XX03	Left deck pull-out sensor	PS701	Detected	Detected	Detected
XX04	Left deck merger sensor	PS160	Detected	Detected	Detected
XX05	Lower feed sensor 1	PS161	Detected	Detected	Detected
XX06	Lower feed sensor 2	PS162	Detected	Detected	Detected
XX07	Vertical path sensor	PS164	Detected	Detected	Detected
XX08	Pre-feed sensor 1	PS139	Detected	Detected	Detected
XX09	Pre-feed sensor 2	PS140	Detected	Detected	Detected
XX0A	Pre-feed sensor 3	PS141	Detected	Detected	Detected
XX0B	Cross feed sensor 1	PS155	Detected	Detected	Detected
XX0C	Cross feed sensor 2	PS156	Not detected	Not detected	Detected
XX0D	Cross feed sensor 3	PS157	Not detected	Not detected	Detected
XX0E	Registration front sensor	PS146	Detected	Detected	Detected
XX0F	Registration sensor	PS151	Detected	Detected	Detected
XX10	Secondary transfer outlet sensor	PS166	Detected	Detected	Detected
XX11	Fixing pre-feed sensor 1	PS172	Detected	Detected	Detected
XX12	Fixing pre-feed sensor 2	PS200	Detected	Detected	Detected
XX13	Primary fixing inlet sensor	PS304	Not detected	Not detected	Detected
XX14	Primary fixing inner delivery sensor 1	PS305	Detected	Detected	Detected
XX15	Primary fixing inner delivery sensor 2	PS307	Detected	Detected	Detected
XX16	Tandem sensor 1	PS326	Detected	Detected	Detected
XX17	Tandem sensor 2	PS327	Detected	Detected	Detected
XX18	Secondary fixing inlet sensor	PS312	Not detected	Not detected	Detected
XX19	Secondary fixing inner delivery sensor 1	PS313	Detected	Detected	Detected
XX1A	Secondary fixing inner delivery sensor 2	PS317	Detected	Detected	Detected
XX1B	Merger path upper sensor	PS325	Detected	Detected	Detected
XX1C	Delivery reverse front sensor	PS342	Detected	Detected	Detected
XX1D	Delivery reverse sensor 1	PS335	Detected	Detected	Detected
XX1E	Delivery reverse sensor 2	PS336	Not detected	Not detected	Detected
XX1F	Duplexing reverse sensor	PS340	Detected	Not detected	Detected
XX20	Duplexing reverse rear sensor	PS341	Detected	Not detected	Detected
XX21	Duplexing path inlet sensor	PS344	Detected	Not detected	Detected
XX22	Duplexing standby sensor 6	PS347	Detected	Not detected	Detected
XX23	Duplexing standby sensor 5	PS346	Detected	Not detected	Detected
XX24	Duplexing standby sensor 4	PS345	Detected	Not detected	Detected
XX25	Duplexing standby sensor 3	PS171	Detected	Not detected	Detected
XX26	Duplexing standby sensor 2	PS170	Detected	Not detected	Detected
XX27	Duplexing standby sensor 1	PS169	Detected	Not detected	Detected
XX28	Bypass sensor 1	PS322	Detected	Not detected	Detected
XX29	Bypass sensor 2	PS323	Detected	Not detected	Detected
XX2A	Merger path lower sensor	PS321	Detected	Detected	Detected
XX2B	Delivery sensor 1	PS337	Detected	Detected	Detected
XX2C	Delivery sensor 2	PS338	Detected	Detected	Detected
XX2D	Delivery sensor 3	PS339	Detected	Detected	Detected
XX2E	POD deck path sensor	PS220	Detected	Detected	Detected
XX2F	Duplexing path sub station outlet sensor	PS350	Not detected	Not detected	Detected

8.3.1.2 Measures for Jam Occurrence

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

<Operation when delay/stationary jam is detected>

- It stops the drive on the upstream sensor (that detects the jam) but the drive on the downstream sensor. It will stop the drive on the downstream sensor after the paper is delivered. In case of door open jam, paper feeding is stopped at the same time as door open is detected.
- In case the paper has not reached the pre-registration standby position, feed the paper to the pre-registration standby position. (Forced feed control: to improve jam removal performance when a jam occurs at pre-registration standby area.)
- To improve jam removal performance, the paper is transported to the convenient position for easy jam removal if the paper stops at the position where the jam removal is difficult. (Forced feed control)

<Jam Removal Method>

Take out the paper according to the instruction on the control panel.

<Jam recovery>

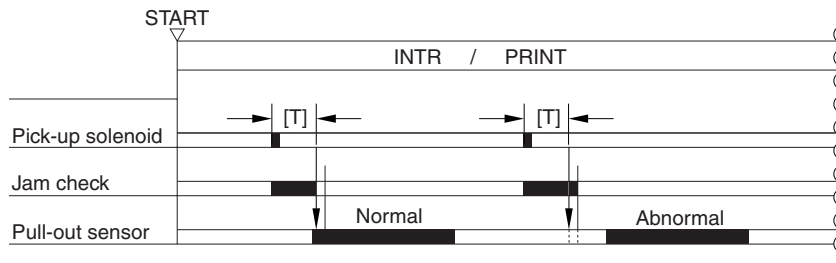
After the jam paper is removed, the rest of the unfinished paper *1 is printed out. Because the page ID of the jam paper is notified from the DC controller to the main controller, the main controller processes page arrangement of the job using the page ID information. The DC controller (engine) restarts printing according to each page information of rearranged job.

8.3.2 Delay Jams

8.3.2.1 Deck Pick-Up Assembly (Right Deck / Left Deck)

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

When the lead edge of paper does not reach the sensor position within the specified feed period after the deck pick-up solenoid is turned on



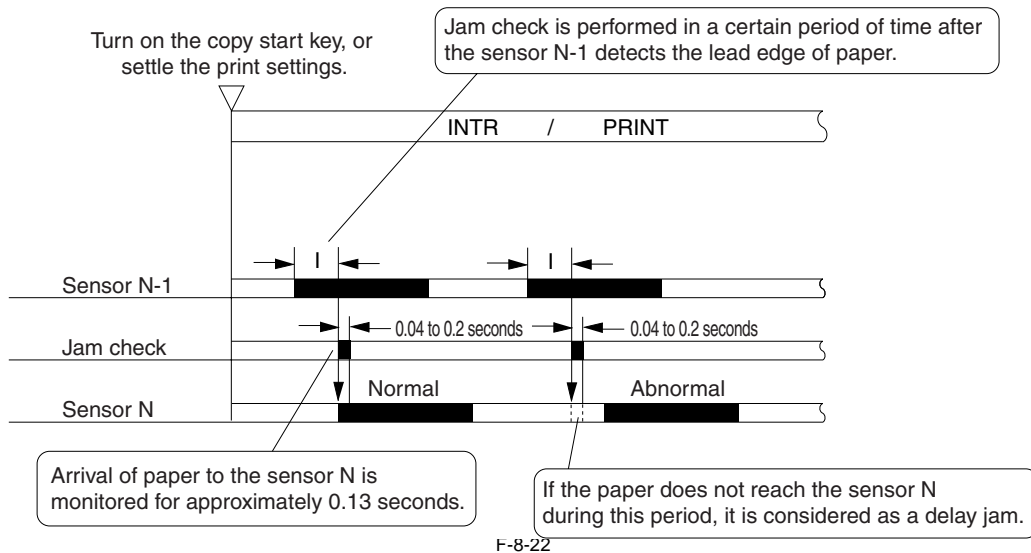
T: Specified feed period

Pick-up assembly	Motor	Target sensor for delay jam N
Right deck	Right deck pick-up solenoid(SL601)	Right deck pull-out sensor(PS601)
Left deck	Left deck pick-up solenoid(SL701)	Left deck pull-out sensor(PS701)

8.3.2.2 Other Delay Jam

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

The concept of the delay jam detection timing by other sensors except the pick-up sensor delay jam is basically the same.



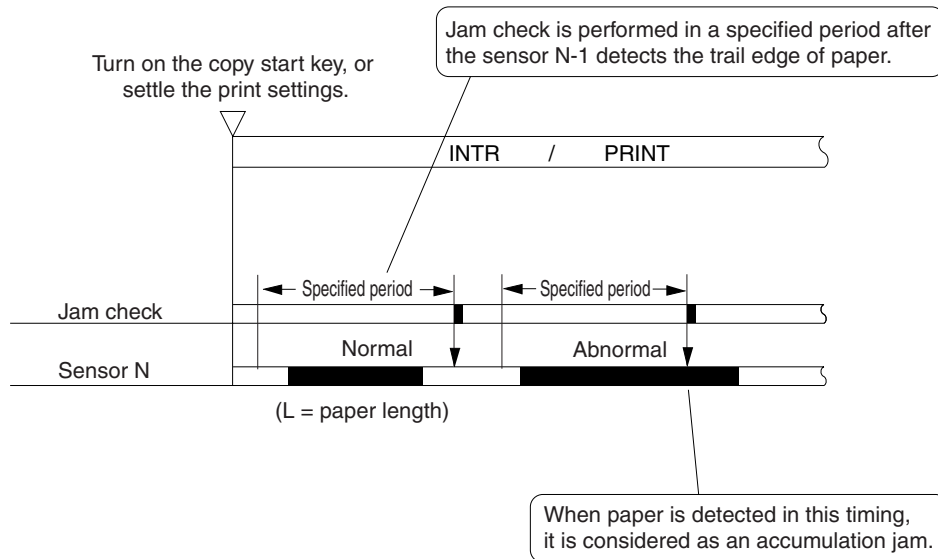
T-8-6

Sensor used for delayed jam removal	Sensor N-1
Right deck merger sensor (PS163)	Right deck pull-out sensor (PS601)
Left deck merger sensor (PS160)	Left deck pull-out sensor (PS701)
Lower feed sensor 1 (PS161)	Duplexing standby sensor 1 (PS169)
Lower feed sensor 2 (PS162)	Lower feed path length right sensor (front) (PS214)
	Lower feed path length right sensor (rear) (PS217)
Vertical path sensor (PS164)	Right deck merger sensor (PS163)
	Lower feed sensor 2 (PS162)
Pre-feed sensor 1 (PS139)	Vertical path sensor (PS164)
Pre-feed sensor 2 (PS140)	Pre-feed sensor 1 (PS139)
Pre-feed sensor 3 (PS141)	Pre-feed sensor 2 (PS140)
Registration front sensor (PS146)	Pre-feed sensor 3 (PS141)
Registration sensor (PS151)	Registration front sensor (PS146)
Secondary transfer outlet sensor (PS166)	Registration sensor (PS151)
Pre-ixing feed sensor 1 (PS172)	Secondary transfer outlet sensor (PS166)
Pre-ixing feed sensor 2 (PS200)	Pre-ixing feed sensor 1 (PS172)
Primary fixing inner delivery sensor 1 (PS305)	Primary fixing inlet sensor (PS304)
Primary fixing inner delivery sensor 2 (PS307)	Primary fixing inner delivery sensor 1 (PS305)
Tandem sensor 1 (PS326)	Primary fixing inner delivery sensor 2 (PS307)
Tandem sensor 2 (PS327)	Tandem sensor 1 (PS326)
Secondary fixing inner delivery sensor 1 (PS313)	Secondary fixing inlet sensor (PS312)
Secondary fixing inner delivery sensor 2 (PS317)	Secondary fixing inner delivery sensor 1 (PS313)
Merger path upper sensor (PS325)	Merger path lower sensor (PS321)
Delivery reverse front sensor (PS342)	Merger path upper sensor (PS325)
Delivery reverse sensor 1 (PS335)	Delivery reverse front sensor (PS342)
Duplexing reverse sensor (PS340)	Delivery reverse sensor 2 (PS336)
Duplexing reverse rear sensor (PS341)	Duplexing reverse sensor (PS340)
Duplexing path inlet sensor (PS344)	Duplexing reverse rear sensor (PS341)
Duplexing standby sensor 6 (PS347)	Duplexing path inlet sensor (PS344)
Duplexing standby sensor 5 (PS346)	Duplexing standby sensor 6 (PS347)
Duplexing standby sensor 4 (PS345)	Duplexing standby sensor 5 (PS346)
Duplexing standby sensor 3 (PS171)	Duplexing standby sensor 4 (PS345)
Duplexing standby sensor 2 (PS170)	Duplexing standby sensor 3 (PS171)
Duplexing standby sensor 1 (PS169)	Duplexing standby sensor 2 (PS170)
Bypass sensor 1 (PS322)	Secondary fixing inner delivery sensor 2 (PS317)
Bypass sensor 2 (PS323)	Bypass sensor 1 (PS322)
Merger path lower sensor (PS321)	Bypass sensor 2 (PS323)
Delivery sensor 1 (PS337)	Merger path upper sensor (PS325)
Delivery sensor 2 (PS338)	Delivery sensor 1 (PS337)
Delivery sensor 3 (PS339)	Delivery sensor 2 (PS338)

8.3.3 Stationary Jams

8.3.3.1 Normal Stationary Jam

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000



F-8-23
T-8-7

Sensor N	Sensor N
Right deck pull-out sensor (PS601)	Pre-fixing feed sensor 2 (PS200)
Right deck merger sensor (PS163)	Primary fixing inner delivery sensor 1 (PS305)
Left deck pull-out sensor (PS701)	Primary fixing inner delivery sensor 2 (PS307)
Left deck merger sensor (PS160)	Tandem sensor 1 (PS326)
Lower feed sensor 1 (PS161)	Tandem sensor 2 (PS327)
Lower feed sensor 2 (PS162)	Secondary fixing inner delivery sensor 1 (PS313)
Vertical path sensor(PS164)	Secondary fixing reverse sensor(PS317)
Pre-feed sensor 1 (PS139)	Merger path upper sensor (PS325)
Pre-feed sensor 2 (PS140)	Delivery reverse front sensor (PS342)
Pre-feed sensor 3 (PS1419)	Delivery reverse sensor 1 (PS335)
Cross feed sensor 1 (PS155)	Merger path lower sensor (PS321)
Registration front sensor (PS146)	Delivery sensor 1 (PS337)
Registration sensor (PS151)	Delivery sensor 2 (PS338)
Secondary transfer outlet sensor(PS166)	Delivery sensor 3 (PS339)
Pre-fixing Feed sensor 1 (PS172)	POD deck path sensor (PS220)

8.3.3.2 Stationary Jam at Power ON

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

The presence/absence of paper (on the target sensor) in the machine is checked at warm-up rotation (after turning on the power, after opening/closing the cover, after jam recovery).

T-8-8

Sensor N	Sensor N	Sensor N
Right deck pull-out sensor (PS601)	Pre-fixing feed sensor 1 (PS172)	Duplexing path inlet sensor (PS344)
Right deck merger sensor (PS163)	Pre-fixing feed sensor 2 (PS200)	Duplexing standby sensor 6 (PS347)
Left deck pull-out sensor (PS701)	Primary fixing inlet sensor (PS304)	Duplexing standby sensor 5 (PS346)
Left deck merger sensor (PS160)	Primary fixing inner delivery sensor 1 (PS305)	Duplexing standby sensor 4 (PS345)
Lower feed sensor 1 (PS161)	Primary fixing inner delivery sensor 2 (PS307)	Duplexing standby sensor 3 (PS171)
Lower feed sensor 2 (PS162)	Tandem sensor 1 (PS326)	Duplexing standby sensor 2 (PS170)
Vertical path sensor (PS164)	Tandem sensor 2 (PS327)	Duplexing standby sensor 1 (PS169)
Pre-feed sensor 1 (PS139)	Secondary fixing inlet sensor (PS312)	Bypass sensor 1 (PS322)
Pre-feed sensor 2 (PS140)	Secondary fixing inner delivery sensor 1 (PS313)	Bypass sensor 2(PS323)
Pre-feed sensor 3 (PS141)	Secondary fixing inner delivery sensor 2 (PS317)	Merger path lower sensor (PS321)
Cross feed sensor 1 (PS155)	Merger path upper sensor (PS325)	Delivery sensor 1 (PS337)
Cross feed sensor 2 (PS156)	Delivery reverse front sensor (PS342)	Delivery sensor 2 (PS338)
Cross feed sensor 3 (PS157)	Delivery reverse sensor 1 (PS335)	Delivery sensor 3 (PS339)
Registration front sensor (PS146))	Delivery reverse sensor 2 (PS336)	POD deck path sensor (PS220)
Registration sensor (PS151)	Duplexing reverse sensor (PS340)	Duplexing path sub station outlet sensor (PS350)
Secondary transfer outlet sensor (PS166)	Duplexing reverse rear sensor (PS341)	

8.3.4 Other Jams

8.3.4.1 Paper Thickness Detection Jam

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

Thick paper detection is performed to prevent cracking of the surface of the fixing roller and scratches on the secondary transfer roller caused by thick paper exceeding the specified thickness. When the paper exceeding the specified thickness is detected, it is considered as a paper thickness detection jam. (Refer to Paper Thickness Detection for details.)

Paper thickness detection jam
E20A

8.3.4.2 Double Feeding Jam

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

When double feeding of paper is detected, it is considered as a double feeding jam. (Refer to Double Feeding Detection for details.)

Double feeding jam
0300

8.3.4.3 Transparency Jam

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

Transparency jam is identified when meeting the following conditions.

The transparency sensor (front):PS138 and the transparency sensor (rear):PS137 detect the transparency jam.

Transparency jam

0D90: If feeding a transparency that is not supported.

0D92: If feeding a transparency when the non-transparency setting is selected.

0D93: If feeding a transparency when the non-transparency setting is selected.

8.3.4.4 Paper Size Mismatch Jam

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

The device recognizes the paper size in the deck based on the settings in the control panel.

Delivered paper size is detected by the vertical path sensor: PS164 (at pickup by host machine deck), POD deck path sensor: PS220 (at pickup by POD deck, paper deck and manual feeder tray).

When it is detected that the paper size recognized by the device (User mode > Common function settings > Paper type > Paper registration) does not match the size of the paper actually transported, it is considered as a paper size mismatch jam.

Paper size mismatch jam
0D91

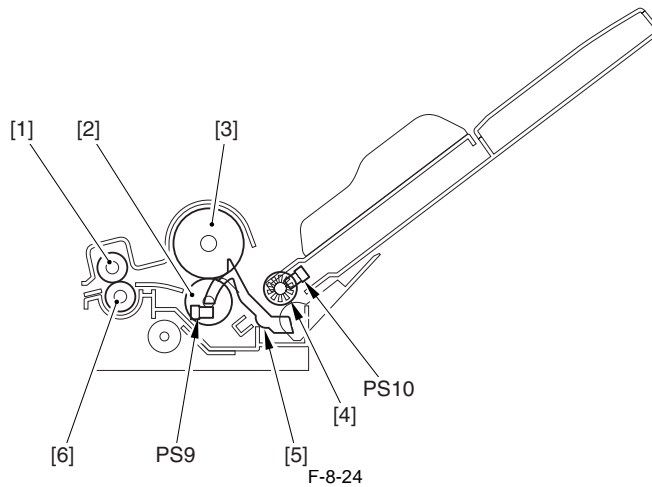
8.4 Manual Feed Pickup Unit

8.4.1 Configuration

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

MEMO:

Manual feed pickup unit is an option (manual feed pickup unit-A1).
When Manual Feed Pickup Unit-A1 is equipped, it enables pickup from the manual feeder.

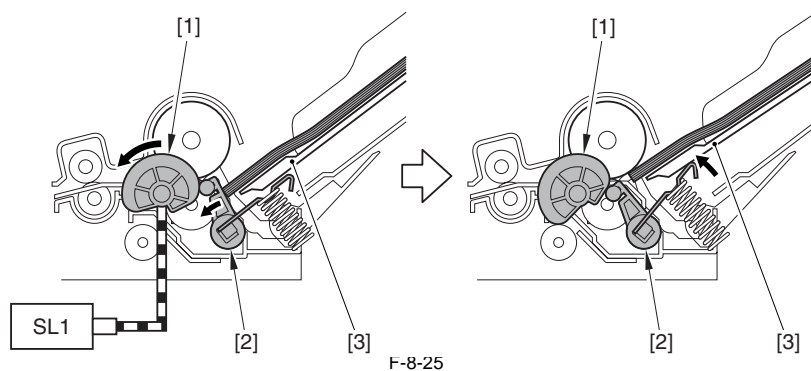


- | | | | |
|-----|-------------------------------------|--------|-------------------------------------|
| [1] | Manual feed extraction upper roller | [5] | Paper sensor flag |
| [2] | Manual feed separation roller | [6] | Manual feed extraction lower roller |
| [3] | Manual feed roller | PS800: | Manual feed tray paper sensor |
| [4] | Last paper sensor roller | PS801: | Manual feed tray last paper sensor |

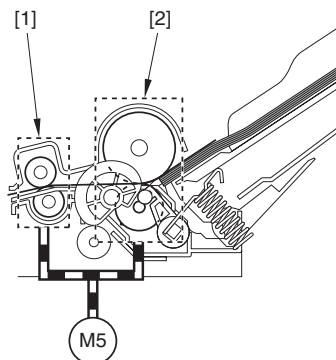
8.4.2 Feeding Operation

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

1) When turning on the Manual feed tray solenoid (SL800), drive is transmitted to the toothless gear [1], then the toothless gear rotates. Lifting plate fixing component [2] is released and then the lifting plate is lifted [3].



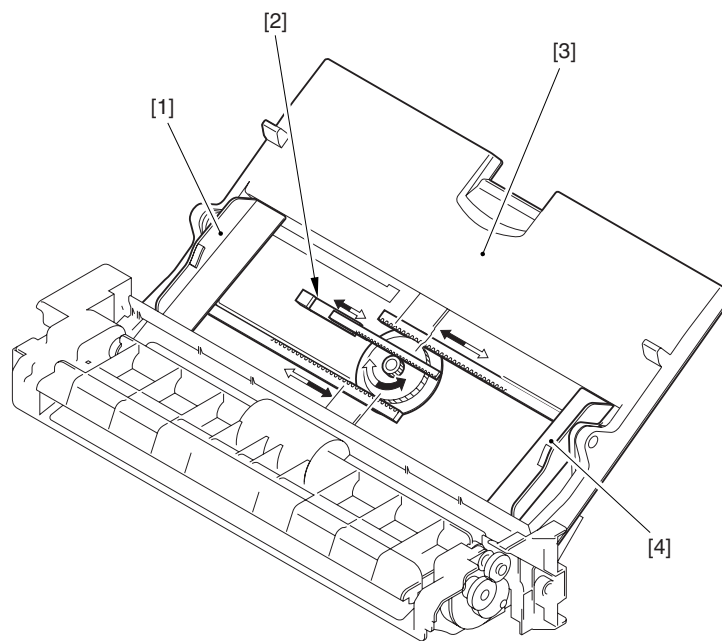
2) By the drive of Manual feed motor (M800), the manual feed extraction roller [1] and the manual feed roller/manual separation roller [2] rotate, and then pickup/feeding of only 1 sheet of paper is carried out.



8.4.3 Paper Size Detection

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

Paper width is detected by the output from the variable resistor coupled with the move of the slide guide.
The width of the slide guide on the manual feed tray is adjusted by users by sliding the slide guide when setting paper.



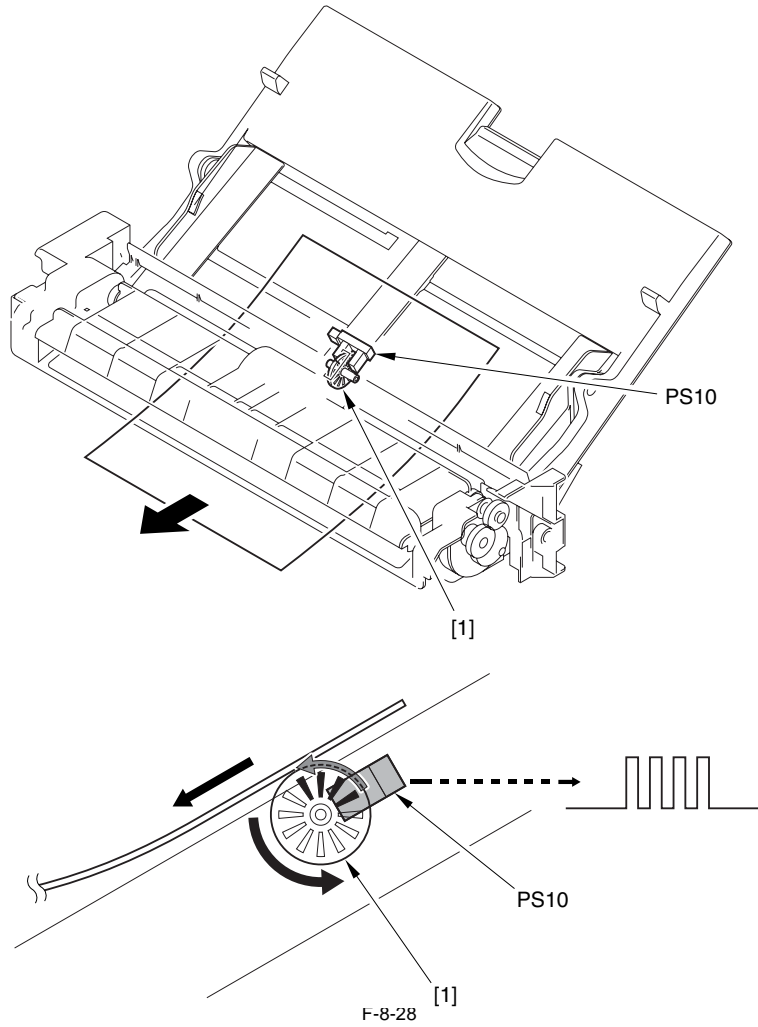
F-8-27

- [1] Slide guide (rear)
- [2] Variable resistor
- [3] Manual feed tray
- [4] Slide guide (front)

8.4.4 Last Paper Detection

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

Last paper detection is performed so as not to form images within the ITB when the paper is out. Only when feeding the last paper, the last paper roller [1] rotates. The rotation of the last paper roller [1] induces the output of the pulse signal from the manual feed tray last paper sensor (PS10) by the slits on the roller. When 4 output pulses or more were detected, the paper is determined as the last one.



8.5 Deck

8.5.1 Lifter Basic Control

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

Upward movement control

When the right/left deck interlock switch (MSW603/MSW703) and the right/left deck open/closed sensor (PS607/PS707) are on, it is judged that the deck has been set and the lifter goes up.

Following this, the right/left deck paper surface upper limit sensors (PS603/PS703), the right/left deck paper surface lower limit sensors (PS604/PS704) and the right/left deck paper surface middle limit sensors (PS605/PS705) will monitor the paper level, and the lifter stops moving when the paper level reaches the point where paper floatation operation can be started.

With such cases in mind as when the lifter continues to move upward even though the deck upper limit paper sensors are OFF, the right/left deck lifter upper limit sensors (PS614/PS714) are employed to avoid damage to the machine caused by such uncontrolled upward movement.

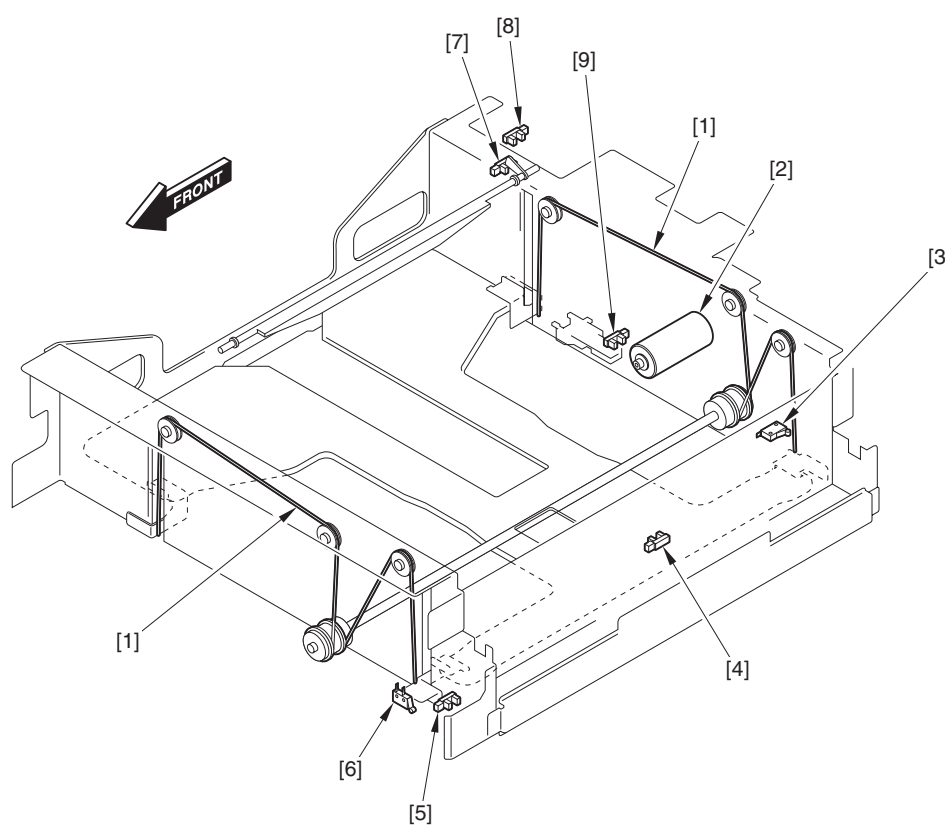
With such cases in mind as when some foreign body in the paper stock assembly hits the ceiling before the lifter reaches the position where the paper floatation is started, this machine also employs the right/left deck foreign body sensors (PS613/PS713) to prevent damage to the lifter wire, the resin gear, etc.

Downward movement control

The lifter starts moving downwards when the deck release button is pressed and continues to move down until it passes (sensor ON -> OFF) the sensor flag of the right/left deck supply position sensors (PS609/PS709).

When a new stack of paper is supplied at this point, since the sensor flag of the supply position sensor is pushed by the paper, the lifter goes further down to the point where the newly supplied stack of paper passes the sensor flag.

This lowering operation is executed every time paper is supplied in the deck and repeated until the lifter lower limit position (maximum paper supplying position) is detected by the right/left deck lifter lower position sensors (PS612/PS712).

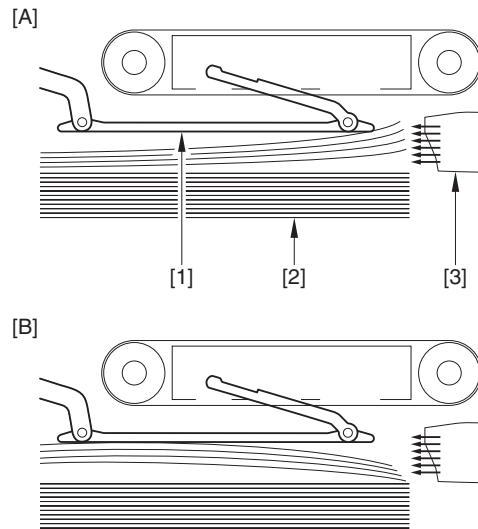


F-8-29

- [1] lifter wire
- [2] right/left deck lifter motors (M603/M703)
- [3] right/left deck interlock switches (MS603/MS703)
- [4] right/left deck supply position sensors (PS609/PS709)
- [5] right/left deck lifter lower limit sensors (PS612/PS712)
- [6] right/left deck lifter lower limit switch (MS602/MS702)
- [7] right/left deck foreign body sensors (PS613/PS713)
- [8] right/left deck open/closed sensors (PS607/PS707)
- [9] right/left deck lifter upper limit sensors (PS614/PS714)

First Sheet Lift Down Limit Control

When the paper has an extreme upper curl or lower curl, it may not be absorbed because the paper surface is away from the pickup feed belt. When the paper has an upper curl, the leading edge of the paper is lifted up by the air coming from the floatation nozzle. Since the paper surface height is determined at the leading edge side, the paper cannot be absorbed. When the paper has a lower curl, the air from the floatation nozzle blows in such a way as to hold down the leading edge of the paper. The paper cannot be separated as a result.



F-8-30

- [A] when the paper has an upper curl
 [B] when the paper has a lower curl
 [1] paper surface link
 [2] paper
 [3] floatation nozzle

In order to prevent the distance between the pickup feed belt and the paper from becoming too far, this control controls so that the lifter does not move downwards exceeding a specified distance following the below procedure.

- 1) Stores the encoder count value of the lifter.
- 2) For 10 sec after the fans are driven, performs the lifter control based on detection results from the upper/lower/middle paper surface sensors.
- 3) Based on the encoder count value after 10 sec, if the lifter is moved down more than a specified distance (15.0 mm) the lifter will be moved upwards so that the distance is within the specified distance (3 sec).

If the middle paper surface sensors are OFF, the lifter continues to move upward even when the distance is within the specified distance until the sensors turn ON.

8.5.2 Timing for Lifter Control

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

At power-on

After lifting the lifter and judging presence/absence of the paper in the deck, move the lifter down to the lower limit and reset the count of the remaining papers. Execute the adjustment for the fan if the paper is absent. If present, do not execute it. After that, lift it until the right/left deck paper surface lower limit sensors (PS604/PS704) become on.

When the deck is open

When detecting that the paper stock assembly open/close button is pressed, opens the paper stock assembly after moving the lifter down for 1.0 sec. The lifter is moved down to the supply position.

When the deck is closed

Moves up the lifter until the upper/middle/lower deck paper surface sensors turn ON.

During the pickup preparation operation

After driving the fan for 2.0 sec, performs paper surface control until the right/left deck paper surface middle limit sensors (PS605/PS705) turn ON (for 11.0 sec.). If the lifter is located above the upper limit position (right/left deck paper surface upper limit sensors (PS603/PS703): OFF, the right/left deck paper surface lower limit sensors: ON), moves down the lifter.

Once the paper surface control is completed, drives the right/left deck pickup solenoids (SL601/SL701) and attracts paper.

During pickup

After the trail edge of the preceding paper passes the right/left deck pull-out sensors (PS601/PS701) (ON -> OFF) and following the paper floatation waiting time, drives the right/left deck pickup solenoids and attracts paper.

After the absorption is started and the absorption waiting time is complete, the machine will be ready to pickup.

The lifter control is not performed during attraction of the paper.

T-8-9

Paper size	LTR (215.9 mm) or smaller	B5R (257.0 mm) or smaller	A4R (297.0 mm) or smaller	B4R (364.0 mm) or smaller	Beyond the B4R size
Wait time for floatation (msec)	60.0	120.0	140.0	160.0	200.0
Wait time for absorption (msec)	120.0	120.0	120.0	160.0	200.0

When the leading edge of paper approaches the right/left deck pull-out sensors (OFF -> ON), stops the absorption by turning on the upper/middle/lower deck pickup solenoid.

If the right/left deck paper surface middle limit sensors are OFF, moves the lift upwards until they turn ON.

Does not move the lifter down during pick-up.

At completion of the pickup operation

Stops all the fans and then performs lifter control until the right/left deck paper surface lower limit sensors are ON.

In the case that jam occurred and the deck needs to be opened, move the lifter down until the right/left deck lifter lower position sensors (PS612/PS712) become on.

8.5.3 Lifter Error Detection

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

Upper limit detection

The lifter sometimes cannot stop moving up due to damage of the paper surface sensor, etc., and it damages the compartment. The right/left deck lifter upper limit sensor (PS614/PS714) detects the upper limit of the lifter and prevents excessive moving up of the lifter.

Lower limit detection

The lifter sometimes cannot stop moving down due to damage of the paper surface sensor, etc., and it damages the compartment. The right/left deck lifter lower limit switch (MS602/MS702) detects the lower limit of the lifter and prevents excessive moving down of the lifter.

Detection of foreign matters

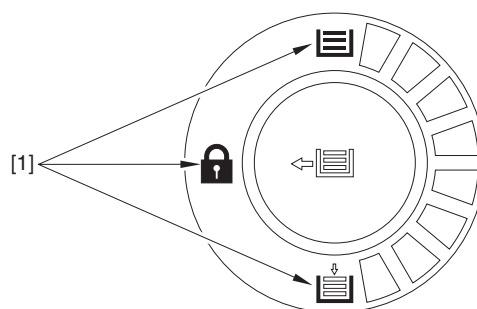
When small-size paper is loaded in the cassette and a foreign matter is put in the extra space, and then the lifter moves up, the foreign matter sometimes reaches the upper limit before the paper is detected by the paper surface sensor. In this condition, the lifter attempts to continue moving up and damages the compartment.

The right/left deck foreign matter sensor (PS613/PS713) detects a foreign matter and controls the lifter movement.

Once foreign matter is detected, the 3 locations of LED [1] will be activated on the deck open/close button.

MEMO:

On the control panel, the message for "detection of foreign matters" is not displayed.



F-8-31

8.5.4 Switching the Media Size

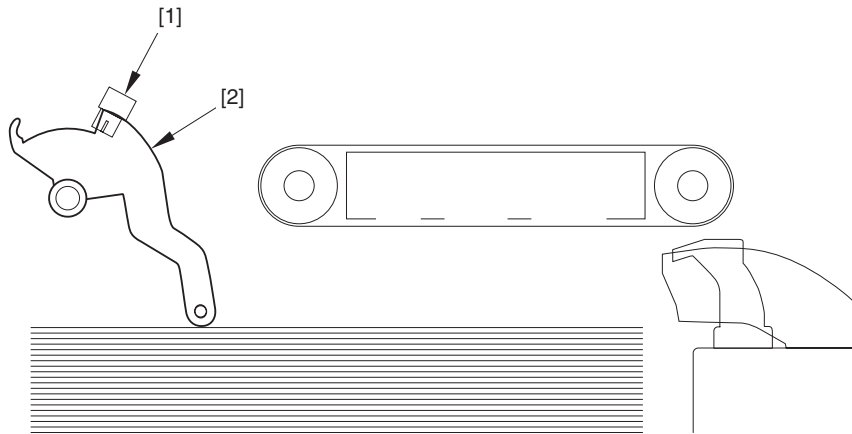
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

The media size is switched over by shifting the guide plate in the deck after accommodating for the media size, and then inputting the media size from user mode. "User mode > Common function settings > Paper type > Paper registration".

8.5.5 Paper Presence/Absence Detection

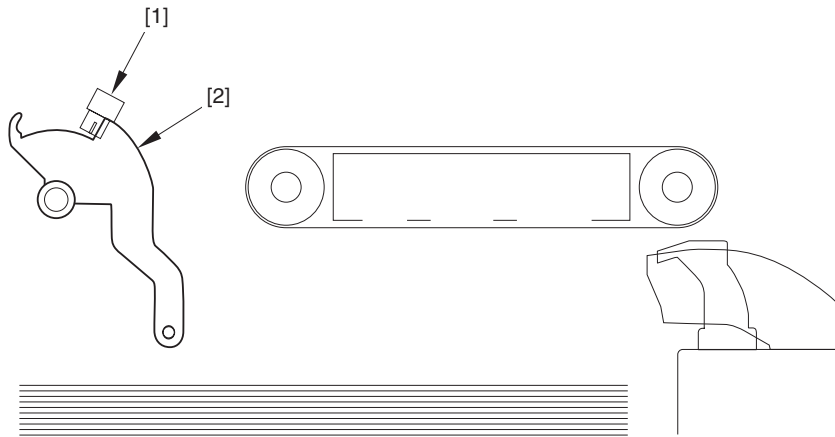
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

The presence/absence of paper in the deck is detected with the right/left deck paper presence/absence sensors (PS602/PS702).
When the paper is absent, the paper presence/absence sensor flag passes through the paper presence/absence sensor, turning the paper presence/absence sensor OFF.



F-8-32

- [1] paper presence/absence sensor: ON
- [2] paper presence/absence sensor flag

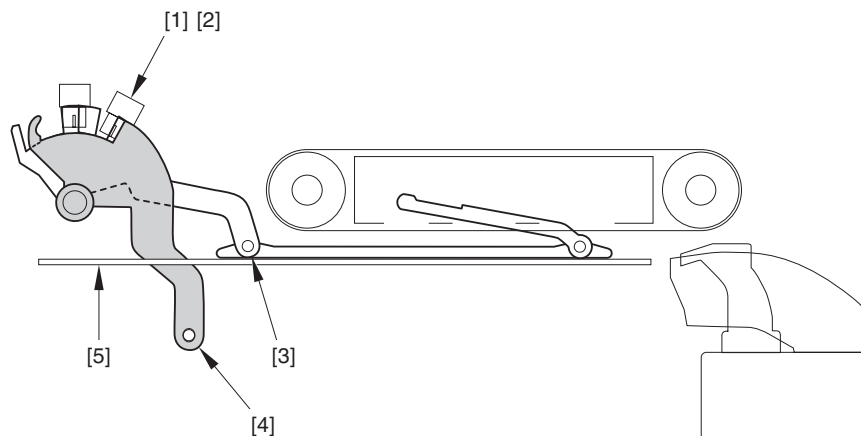


F-8-33

- [1] paper presence/absence sensor: OFF
- [2] paper presence/absence sensor flag

In the case that the right/left deck paper surface lower limit sensors (PS604/PS704) are on and that the paper presence/absence sensor is off, it is judged that the paper is absent.

At this time, the lifter moves down to the point where the right/left deck supply position sensors (PS609/PS709) are off, and the paper supply LED on the display of the deck front cover flashes in orange.



F-8-34

- [1] (front face) upper/middle/lower deck paper presence/absence sensors: OFF
- [2] (rear face) upper/middle/lower deck paper surface lower limit sensors: ON
- [3] paper surface sensor flag
- [4] paper presence/absence sensor flag
- [5] lifter

The presence/absence of paper is judged at the following timings:

- Immediately after shifting the lifter and then performing a positioning of paper surface when enabling the power supply or closing the deck.
- During pickup operation

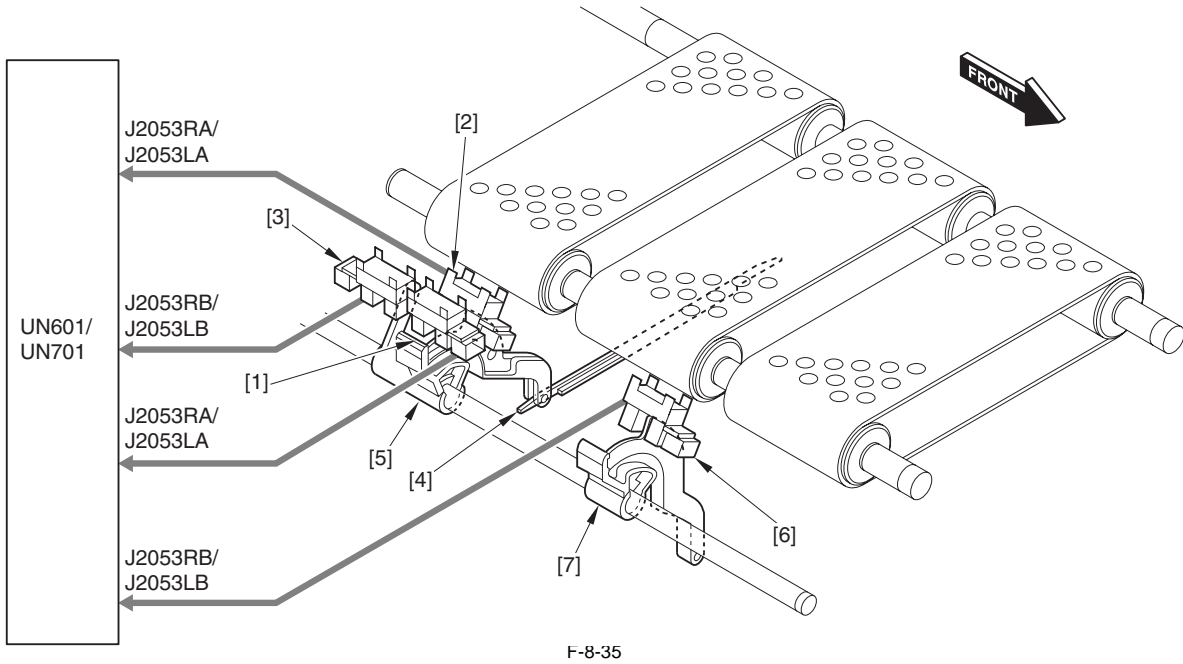
When the deck is open, the machine judges that the paper is "absent".

8.5.6 Paper Surface Detection

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

Paper surface in the deck is detected with the right/left deck paper surface upper limit sensors (PS603/PS703), the right/left deck paper surface lower limit sensors (PS604/PS704), and the right/left deck paper surface middle sensors (PS605/PS705).

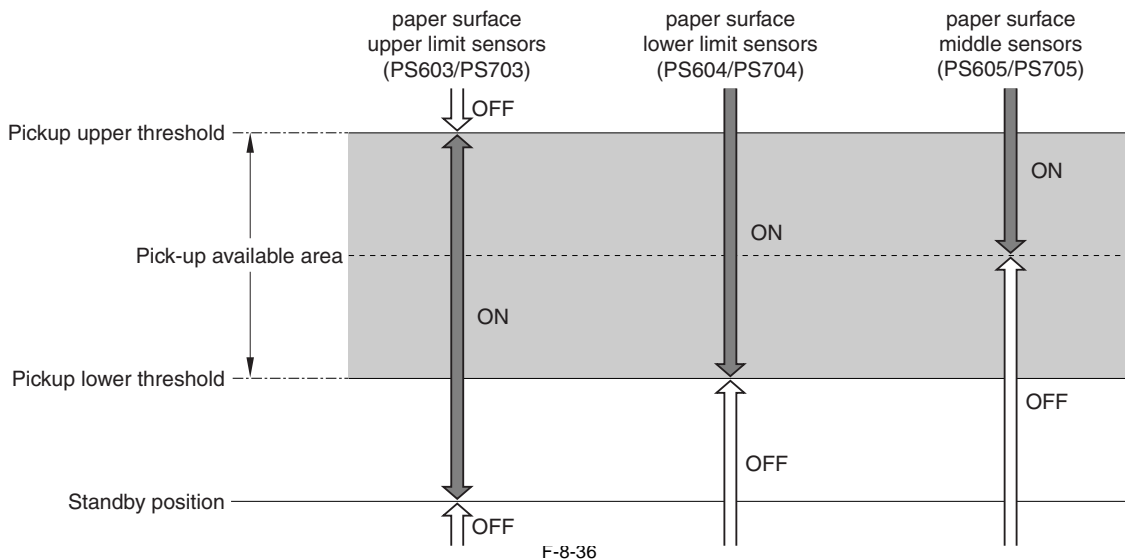
By the ascending/descending of the paper surface link that contacts the paper, the paper surface sensor flag, which works in conjunction with paper surface link, is rotated. Paper surface height is detected by paper surface sensor flag's enabling/disabling each sensor.



- [1] right/left deck paper surface upper limit sensors (PS603/PS703)
 - [2] right/left deck paper surface lower limit sensors (PS604/PS704)
 - [3] right/left deck paper surface middle sensors (PS605/PS705)
 - [4] paper surface link
 - [5] paper surface sensor flag
 - [6] right/left deck paper presence/absence sensors (PS602/PS702)
 - [7] paper presence/absence sensor flag
- PCB601/PCB701: upper/middle/lower deck pickup driver PCB

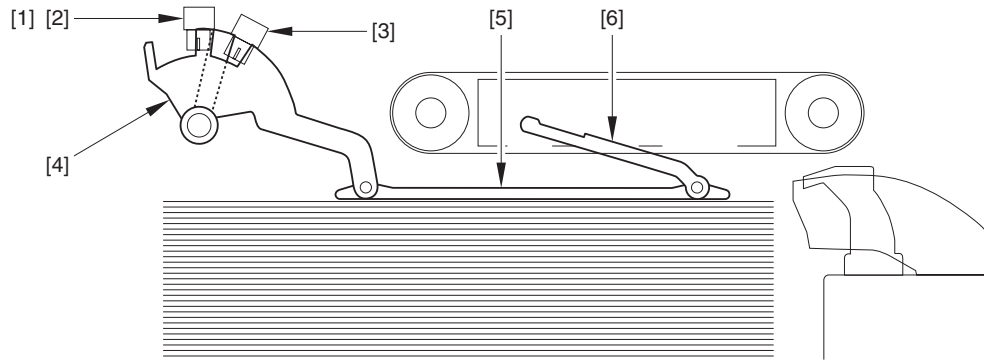
The ON/OFF status of each sensor and its meaning are shown in the table below:
T-8-10

Sensor Name	ON	OFF
paper surface upper limit sensor	lifter ascending	paper surface higher than upper limit
paper surface lower limit sensor	paper surface higher than lower limit	paper surface lower than lower limit
paper surface middle sensor	floatation starting position	lifter ascending condition



The status of each sensor for each lifter position and operation of the lifter in each condition are shown below:

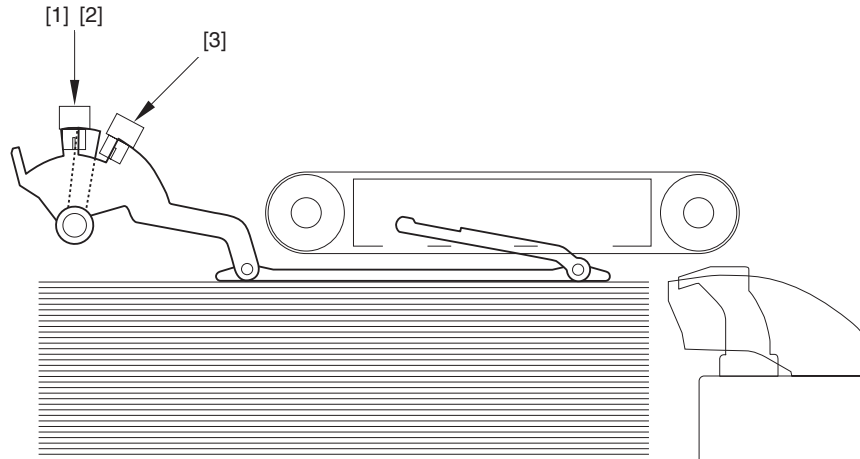
- When the paper surface is lower than lower limit, the lifter is ascended.



F-8-37

- [1] (front face) paper surface upper limit sensor: ON
- [2] (rear face) paper surface middle sensor: OFF
- [3] paper surface lower limit sensor: OFF
- [4] paper surface sensor flag
- [5] paper surface link
- [6] paper surface detection arm

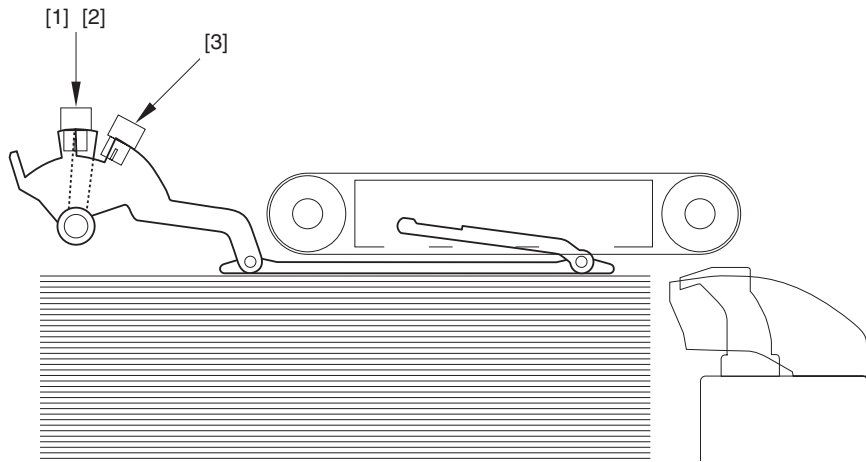
- In the case that the paper does not reach the center of the pick-up available area, the lifer goes up.



F-8-38

- [1] (front face) paper surface upper limit sensor: ON
- [2] (rear face) paper surface middle sensor: OFF
- [3] paper surface lower limit sensor: ON

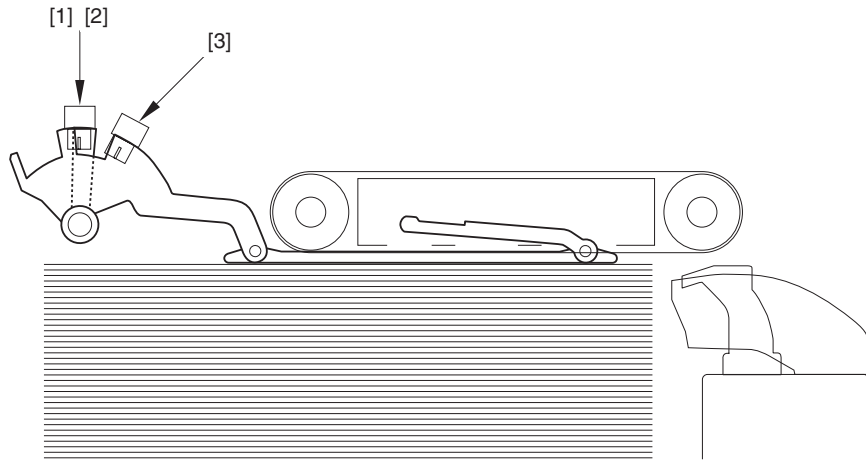
- In the case that the paper exceeded the center of the pick-up available area, the lifter stops.



F-8-39

- [1] (front face) paper surface upper limit sensor: ON
- [2] (rear face) paper surface middle sensor: ON
- [3] paper surface lower limit sensor: ON

- If the paper surface exceeds the upper limit during preparation of pick-up, the lifter moves down.



F-8-40

- [1] (front face) paper surface upper limit sensor: OFF
- [2] (rear face) paper surface middle sensor: ON
- [3] paper surface lower limit sensor: ON

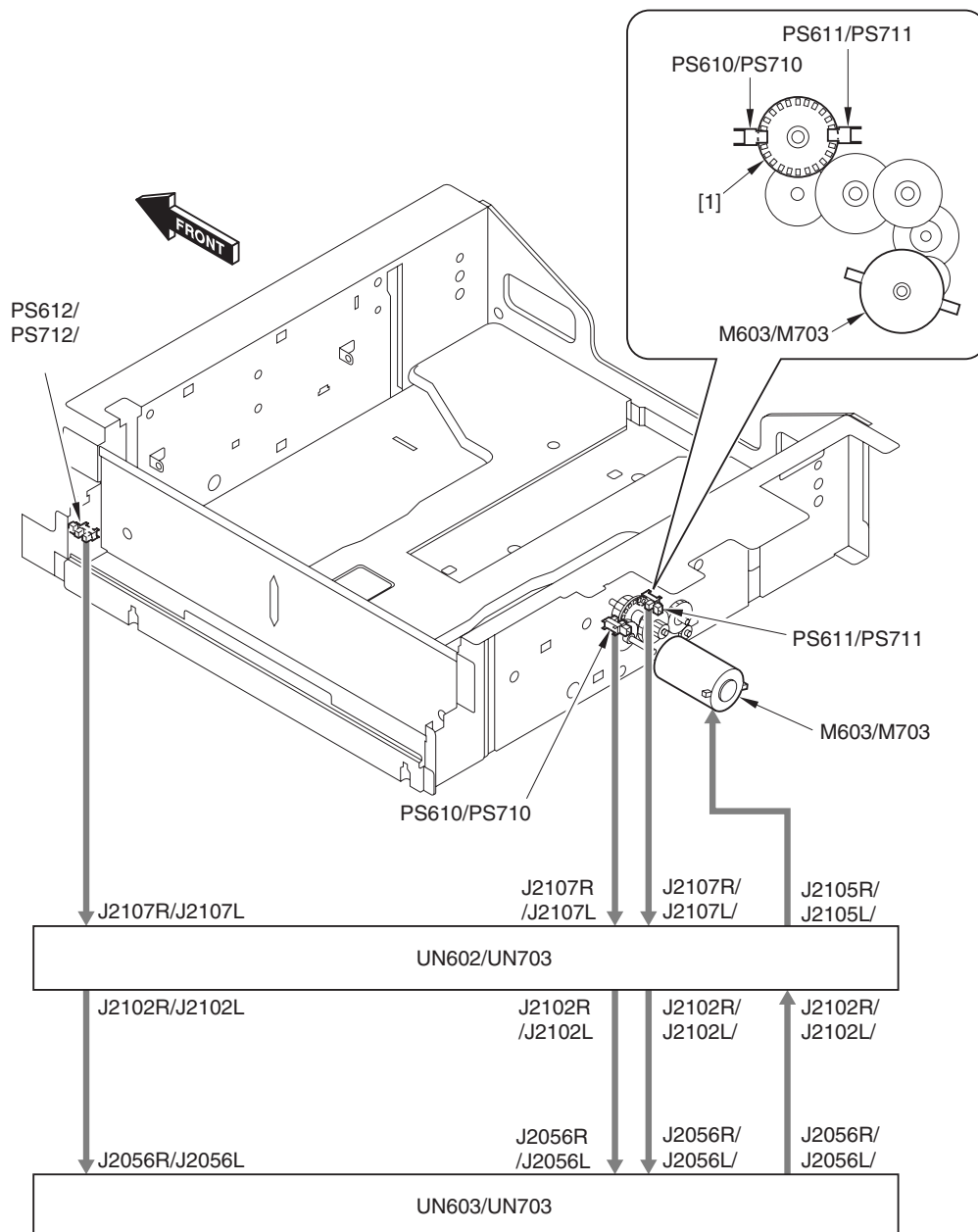
8.5.7 Remaining Paper Level Detection

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

The remaining paper level in the deck is detected with the right/left deck remaining level sensors (right) (PS610/PS710) and the right/left deck remaining level sensors (left) (PS611/PS711).

The encoder, which is driven by the lift motor, is monitored with each sensor. The pulse counting is performed as the lifter motor is rotated. The paper surface height is calculated based on the pulse count, and this is further translated into a number of sheet according to the set media type.

The count value is reset at power-ON, where the lifter is descended and then the right/left deck lifter lower limit sensors (PS612/PS712) are activated.



F-8-41

[1] encoder

M603/M703: right/left deck lifter motor

PCB601/PCB701: right/left deck pickup driver PCB

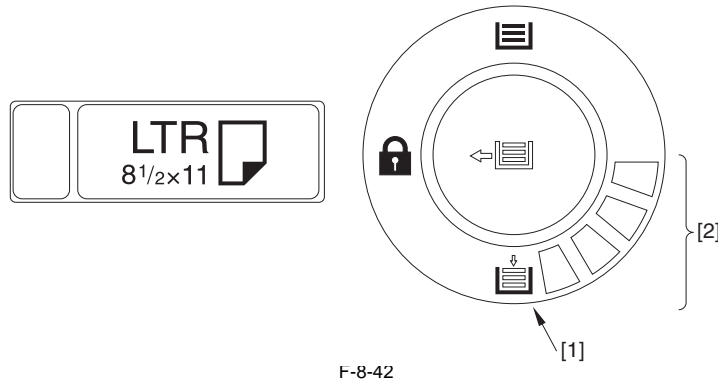
PCB603/PCB703: right/left deck driver PCB

PS610/PS710: right/left deck remaining level sensor (right)

PS611/PS711: right/left deck remaining level sensor (left)

PS612/PS712: right/left deck lifter lower limit sensor

The timing of turning on/off by the encoder differs between the upper/middle/lower deck remaining level sensor (right) and the upper/middle/lower deck remaining level sensor (left). This difference enables the judgment whether the lifter is moved up or down.



F-8-42

- [1] paper supply indicator LED
- [2] remaining level

8.5.8 Opening/Closing

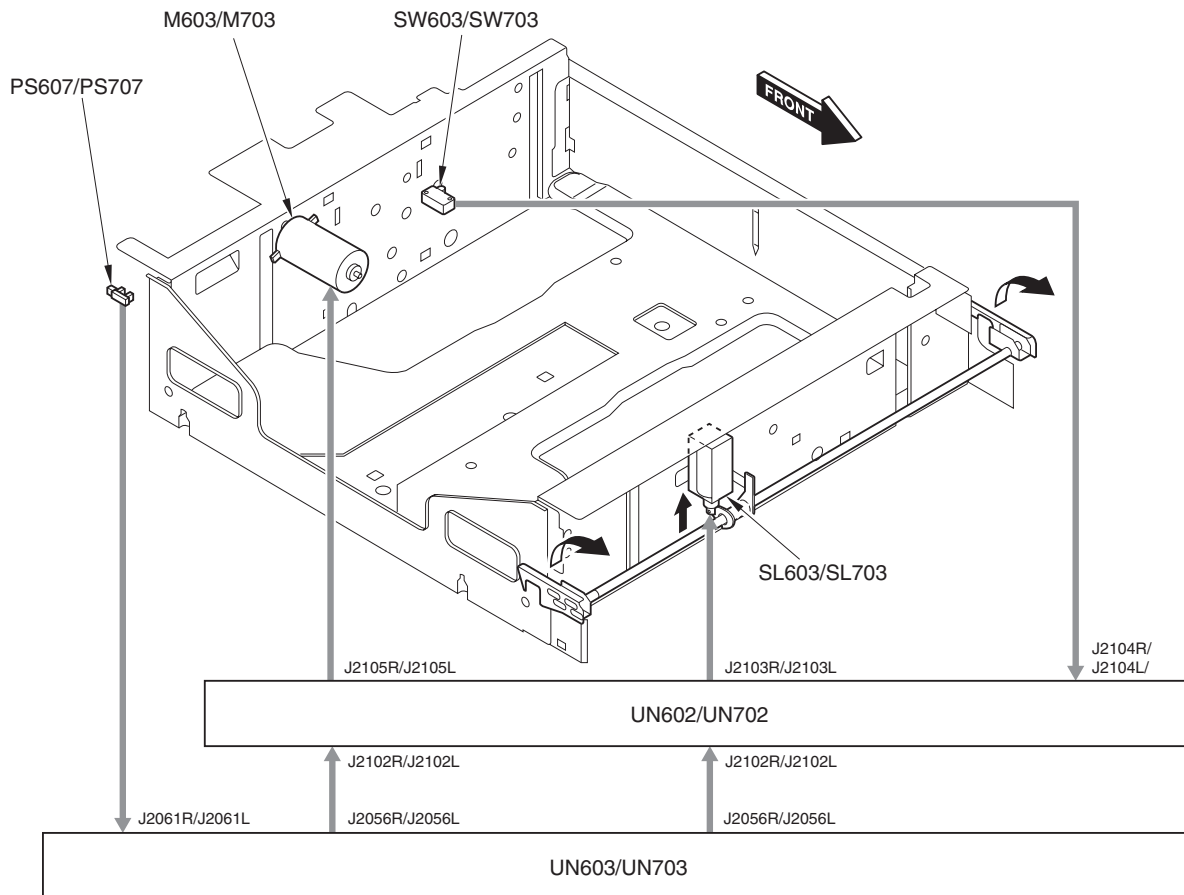
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

When pressing the release button of the deck, the right/left deck lifter motor (M603/M703) rotates and the lifter starts to descend. 1 sec after that, the right/left deck open/close solenoid (SL603/SL703) turns on and the lock of the deck is released. The unlocked deck is pushed forward several centimeters by the force of the spring. The lock of the deck is released a moment later to prevent the paper from becoming trapped by a guide or the like, possibly occurring if the deck was let to open before the paper has dropped.

When the deck opens, the green LED of the open button on the display of the deck front cover turns on. If the lifter is operating at this time, the LED flashes.

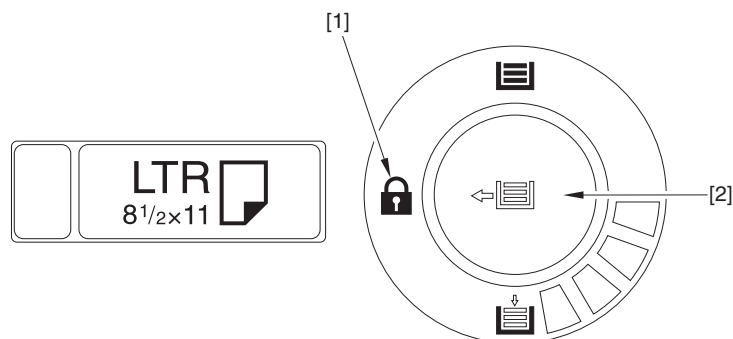
During pick-up, the orange-colored lock LED turns on and the deck does not open.

Push the deck with hands to set it in the equipment. When it was set, the right/left deck interlock switch (SW603/SW703) and the right/left deck open/closed sensor (PS607/PS707) turn on and the lifter ascends to the pick-up position.



F-8-43

- M603/M703: right/left deck lifter motors
- SW603/SW703: right/left deck interlock switches
- UN602/UN702: right/left deck pickup driver PCB
- UN603/UN703: right/left deck driver PCB
- PS607/PS707: right/left deck open/closed sensor
- SL603/SL703: right/left deck open/close solenoid



F-8-44

- [1] lock LED
[2] open button

8.5.9 Auto Cassette Change Function

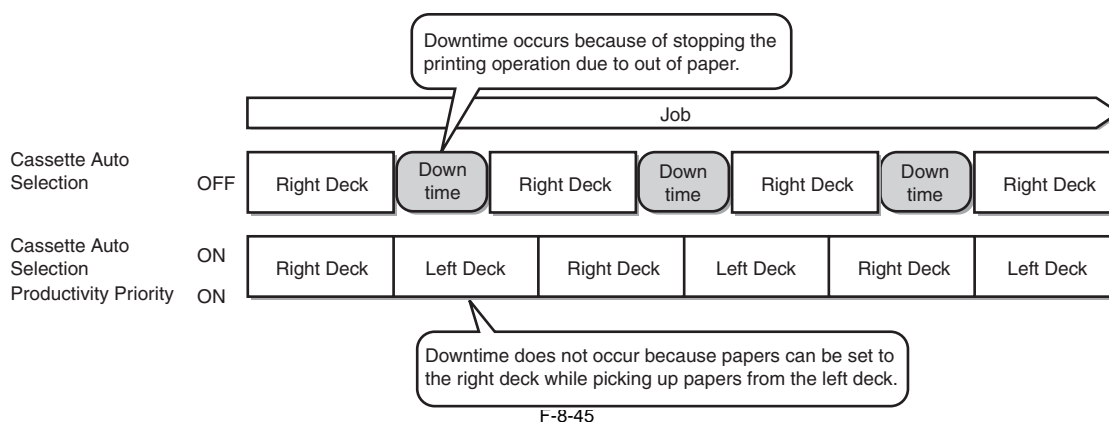
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

In order to reduce the downtime during continuous printing, the machine adopts "Auto Cassette Change Function". With this function, when the specified source of paper becomes empty, paper is automatically picked up from another source of paper to which the same size of papers is set.

Go through the following to select ON/OFF for the auto cassette change function: Initial Setup/Registration > Common Specification Settings > Cassette Auto Selection.

All source of paper, includes pickup options (right deck, left deck, manual feed tray, paper deck, POD deck, and secondary POD deck), are the subject of auto cassette change.

When selecting "Productivity Priority" on the Cassette Auto Selection screen, the source of paper is changed before completely using up all papers in a deck (approx. last 100 sheets: 80 g/m²) so that pickup operation is executed without a stop while changing the source of paper.



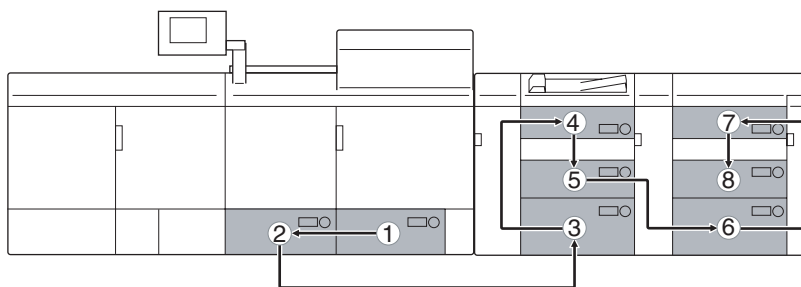
F-8-45

MEMO:

In case of not selecting "Productivity Priority", papers in a deck can be used up completely. However, in this case, when all papers are used up, the printing operation stops once and the already formed image is cleaned up so that downtime occurs.

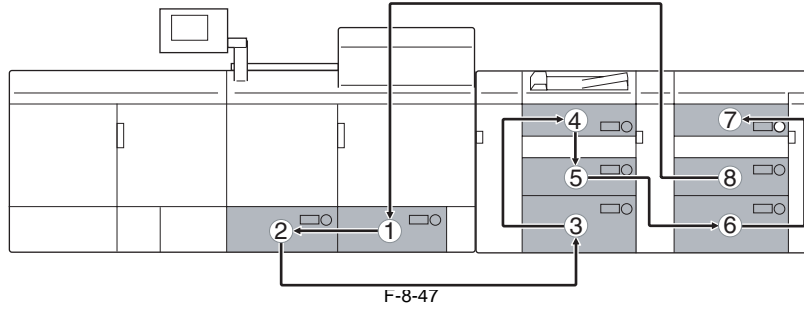
With auto cassette change function, the pickup source is switched according to the priority order specified to each deck.

If the same media is set in all of the decks, the order is switched from the right deck of the host machine (priority order: 1) to the middle deck (priority order: 8) of the Secondary POD deck.

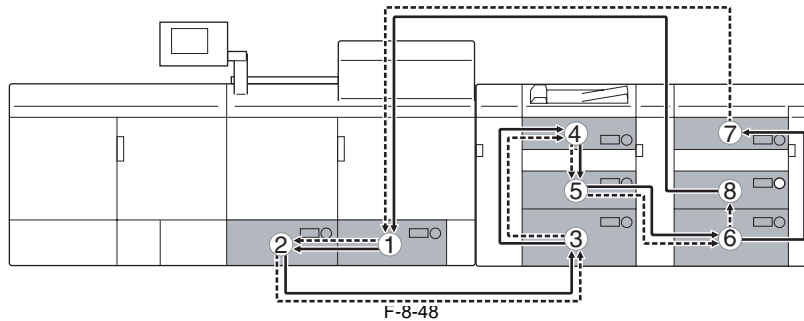


F-8-46

e.g.) when specifying the middle deck of the Secondary POD deck as the pickup source while "Productivity Priority" is not selected:
 Once the paper in the middle deck of the Secondary POD deck is out, the pickup source is switched to the right deck of the host machine. Subsequently, the paper source will be switched in sequence up to the upper deck (priority order: 7) of the Secondary POD deck.
 Finally, when there is no paper in the upper deck of the Secondary POD deck, the machine stops pickup operation as well as activates the deck's paper supply LED.



e.g.) when specifying the middle deck of the Secondary POD deck as the pickup source while "Productivity Priority" is selected:
 From the Secondary POD deck's middle deck to the lower deck (priority order: 6), the pickup source is switched when there are approximately 100 sheets in each deck.
 Although the pickup source is switched to the Secondary POD deck's upper deck (priority order: 7), papers in other decks are not sufficient. Thus, the machine does not switch the pickup source and continues pickup until the paper in the deck is out.
 Subsequently, the pickup source is switched until the paper is out in respective deck according to the priority order (1 > 2 > 3 > 4 > 5 > 6 > 8). (See the dotted line in the figure).
 Finally, when there is no paper in the middle deck of the Secondary POD deck, the machine stops pickup operation and activates the deck's paper supply LED.



Paper is picked up until they are used up when there are no decks available to switch even if "Productivity Priority" is selected. Thus, you don't need to switch the mode when printing less than 100 sheets.

8.6 Deck Pick-up Unit

8.6.1 Configuration

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

This machine uses the air separation method.

The air separation method separates/feeds paper by applying air to a sheet to separate it and attracting the sheet to the attraction belt by suction air.

The air separation method is superior to the conventional method (roller separation) in terms of

- durability
- high-speed operation
- supported media (pickup performance)
- decreased double feeding

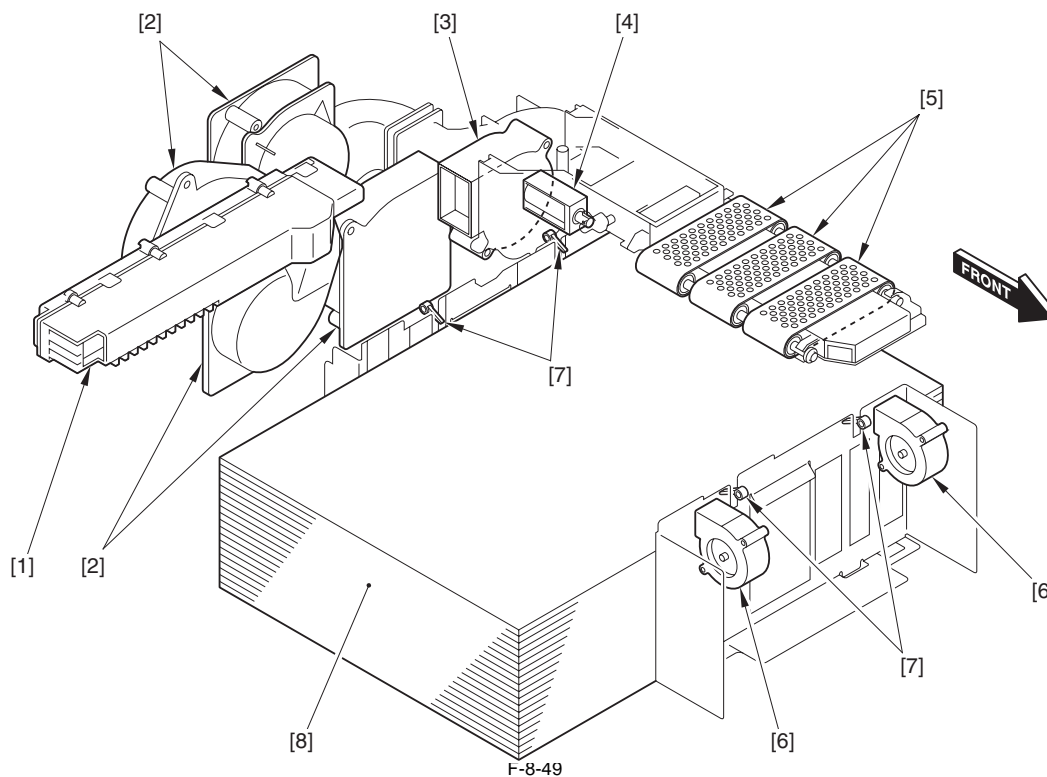
8.6.2 Air Pickup

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

This machine introduces air pickup mechanism for feeding in high speed and also for preventing double feeding. It improves separating performance of floating paper by the air, and also prevents double feeding by feeding paper to attract to the belt, thus, it realizes stabilized high-speed pickup.

4 floatation fans are combined to intensify air energy in order to make the thick paper or coated paper floated.

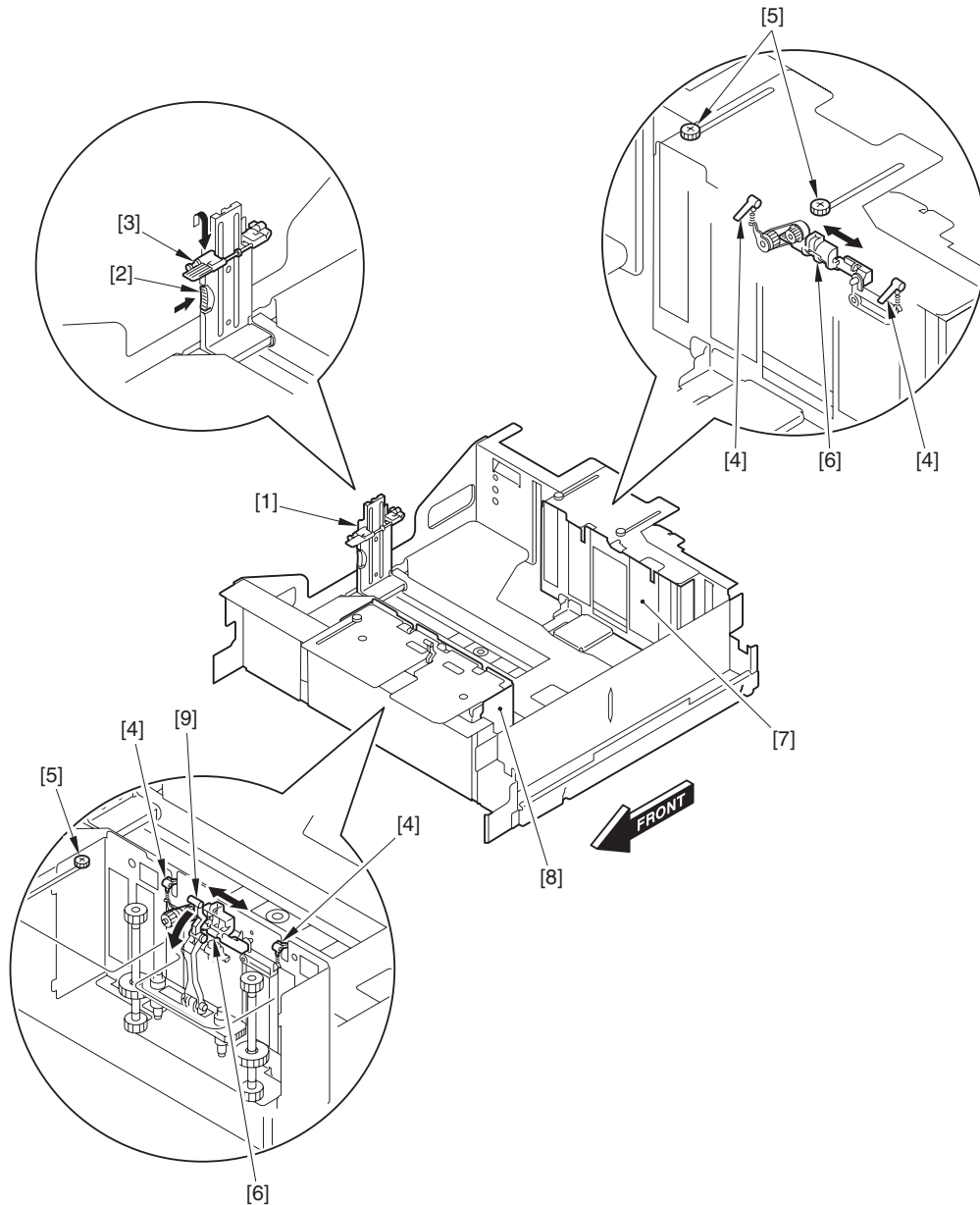
In case of the large sized paper, in which the back end part is likely to be descended, the machine improves the floating ability with the 2 side fans, while stabilizing the paper's both sides (from floating) with the 4 claws so that the air is sent to the end of the paper.



- [1] floatation air heater
- [2] floatation fan
- [3] suction fan
- [4] pickup solenoid
- [5] pickup feed belt
- [6] side fan
- [7] claw
- [8] paper

The following shows the 3 mechanisms to support this air pick-up. The user uses this mechanism at the time of setting a paper.

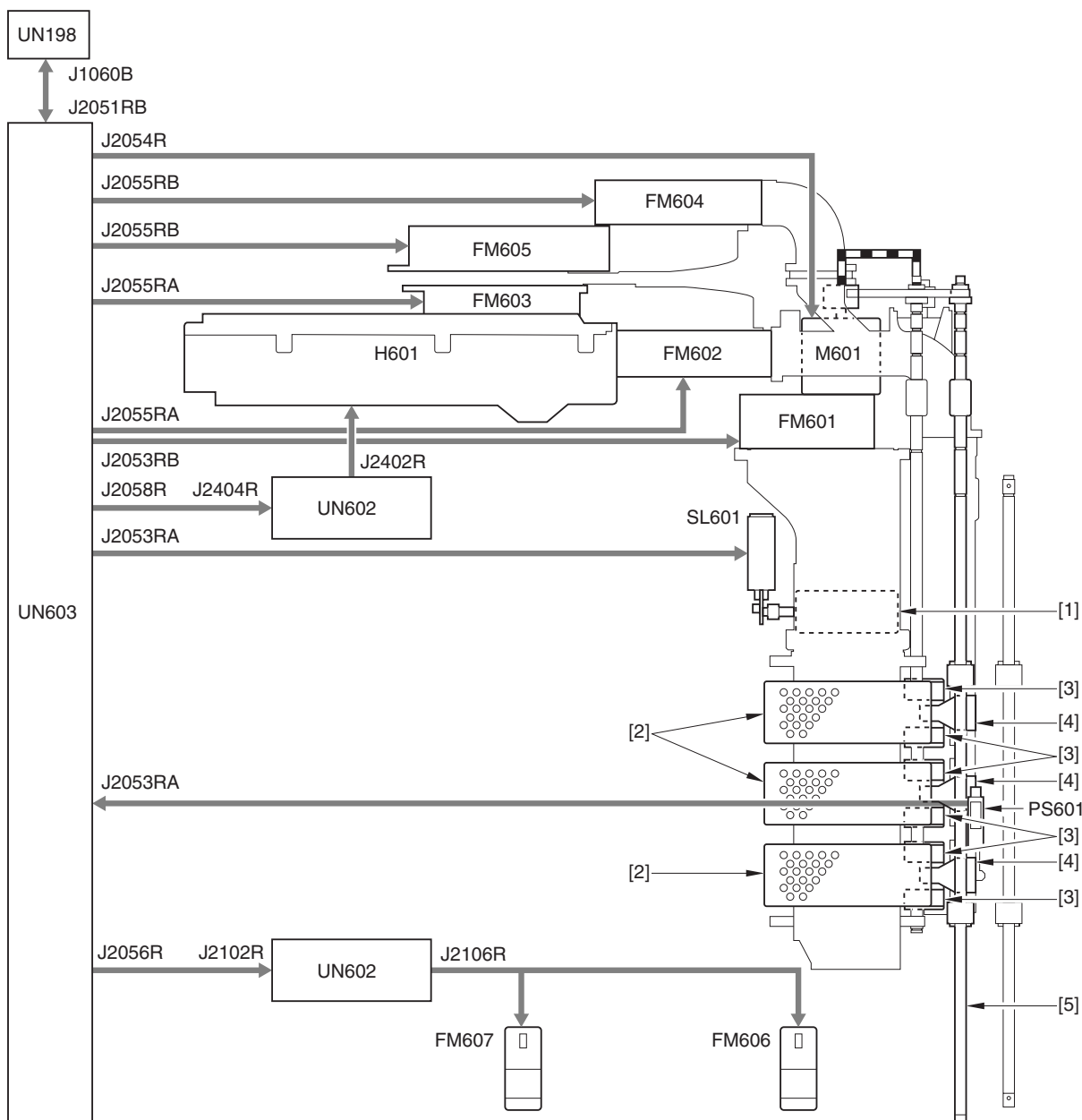
- Claw pressure variable mechanism
Moving the slide bars at the front and rear guides according to the kind of paper changes the pressure of the claw to control floating of the paper.
- Side guide lock mechanism
If turning the lock lever to the front, the movements of the front and rear guides are restrained only in the inward direction by one-way clutch. This mechanism prevents displacement of the paper caused by the reaction of the deck. The lock lever is automatically turned when pushing the deck, and there is no effect on opening/closing the deck.
- Trailing edge retaining mechanism
When pressing the retainer transfer button after aligning the left guide with the trailing edge of the paper and moving it, the retainer holds the trailing edge of the paper.



F-8-50

- | | |
|------------------------------|-----------------|
| [1] left guide | [6] slide bar |
| [2] retainer transfer button | [7] rear guide |
| [3] retainer | [8] front guide |
| [4] claw | [9] lock lever |
| [5] screw | |

The following shows operation example of the upper deck. Both the middle deck and the lower deck operate the same way.



	Right deck	Left deck
Suction fan	FM601	FM701
Floatation fan	FM602 to 605	FM702 to 705
Side fan	FM606, 607	FM706, 707
Floatation air heater	H601	H701
Pickup solenoid	SL601	SL701
Pickup motor	M601	M701
Pull-out sensor	PS601	PS701

F-8-51

- [1] suction shutter
- [2] pickup feed belt
- [3] separation nozzle
- [4] floatation nozzle
- [5] upper deck pull-out roller

- FM601: upper deck suction fan
- FM602: upper deck main right floatation fan
- FM603: upper deck main left floatation fan
- FM604: upper deck sub right floatation fan
- FM605: upper deck sub left floatation fan
- FM606: upper deck side right fan
- FM607: upper deck side left fan
- H601: upper deck floatation air heater

- M601: upper deck pickup motor
- UN198: POD deck controller PCB
- UN603: upper deck pickup driver PCB
- UN602: upper deck pickup AC driver PCB
- UN603: upper deck driver PCB
- PS601: upper deck pull-out sensor
- SL601: upper deck pickup solenoid

1) When receiving the pickup preparation signal from the host machine, the following fans are activated:

- right deck suction fan (FM601)
- right deck main right floatation fan (FM602)
- right deck main left floatation fan (FM603)
- right deck sub right floatation fan (FM604)
- right deck sub left floatation fan (FM605)
- right deck side right fan (FM606)
- right deck side left fan (FM607)

2 seconds after the fan is activated, the lifter starts moving up/down to shift to the position where floating operation is available. The number of fans and the voltages vary according to the following conditions to adjust the airflow.

- Suction fan: Adjust the air flow according to the weight and surface nature.

- Floatation fan: Adjust the number of fans and the airflow according to the paper length, weight, surface nature and humidity.
- In the case of uncoated paper

T-8-11

Paper length (mm)	Humidity (%)	Weight (g/m ²)		
		Less than 79	79 to (but not including) 105	105 or more
Less than 400.0	Less than 40	2 pc	2 pc	4 pc
Less than 330.0	40 or more	2 pc	4 pc	4 pc
330.0 to (but not including) 400.0		4 pc	4 pc	4 pc
400.0 or more	-	4 pc	4 pc	4 pc

- In the case of coated paper

T-8-12

Paper length (mm)	Humidity (%)	Weight (g/m ²)	
		Less than 105	105 or more
Less than 400.0	Less than 40	2 pc	4 pc
	40 or more	4 pc	4 pc
400.0 or more	-	4 pc	4 pc

4 pc: FM602, FM603, FM604, FM605, 4 pc.
2 pc: FM602 and FM603, 2pc.

- Side right fan: Adjust the voltage according to the paper length, paper width, weight, surface nature and humidity
- In the case of uncoated paper (unit: V)

T-8-13

Paper length (mm)	Paper width (mm)	Humidity (%)	Weight (g/m ²)		
			Less than 79	79 to (but not including) 105	105 or more
Less than 270.0	Less than 270.0	Less than 60	0	16	24
		60 or more	0	0	24
	270.0 or more	-	16	16	24
270.0 to (but not including) 330.0	-	-	16	16	24
330.0 to (but not including) 400.0	-	Less than 40	16	16	24
		40 or more	24	24	24
400.0 or more	-	-	24	24	24

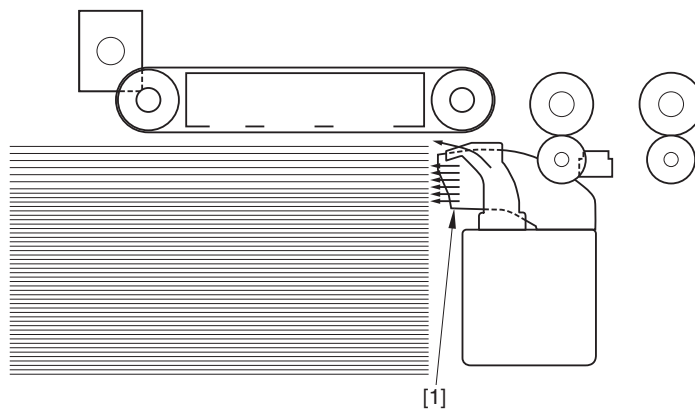
- In the case of coated paper (unit: V)

T-8-14

Paper length (mm)	Humidity (%)	Weight (g/m ²)	
		Less than 105	105 or more
Less than 400.0	Less than 40	16	24
	40 or more	24	24
400.0 or more	-	24	24

- Side left fan: Driven when paper length is 270mm or more. Voltage is fixed at 24V.

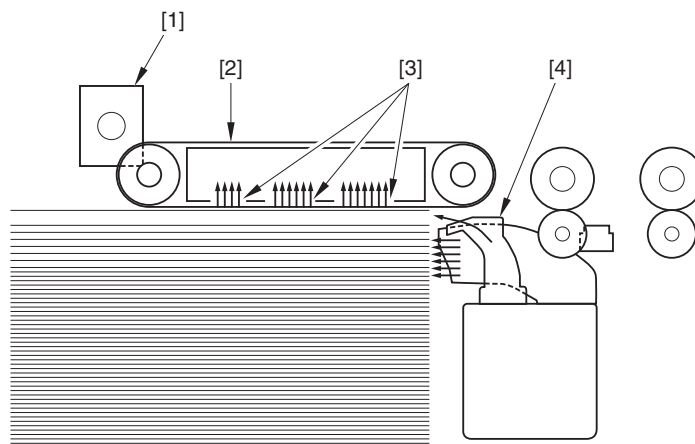
- 2) From the floatation fan, the air is sent through the 3 floatation nozzles to the paper, and it makes the surface layered-multiple papers floated. In the case that the absolute water volume calculated from the result made by the upper deck environmental sensor (HS601) exceeds 17.57 g/m^3 , the upper deck floatation air heater (H601) turns on. The warm temperature lowers humidity, and it improves separating performance. However, pickup operation is not executed until the temperature control completes.



F-8-52

[1] floatation nozzle

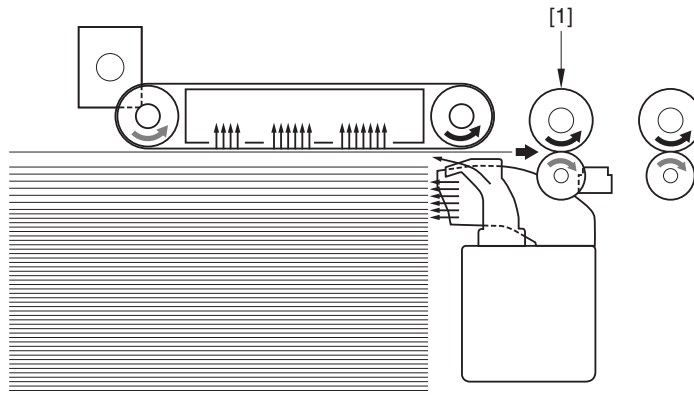
- 3) Once a pickup start signal is received, the upper deck pickup solenoid (SL601) is activated to open the suction shutter. By sucking the air around the suction duct to the upper deck suction fan, the paper at the top is absorbed to the pickup feed belt. At this time, the 6 separation nozzles blow air and only the top paper is attracted.



F-8-53

[1] upper deck pickup solenoid (SL601)
 [2] pickup feed belt
 [3] suction duct
 [4] separation nozzle

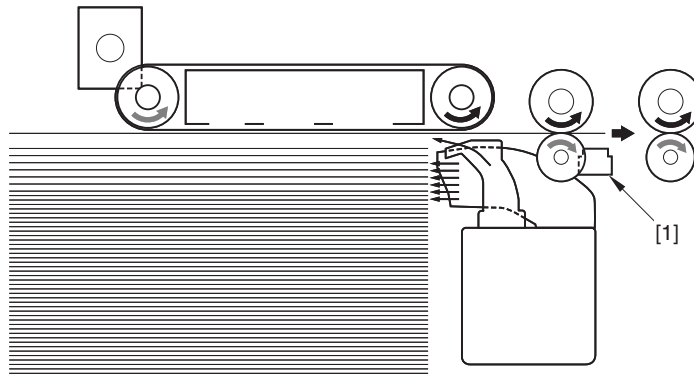
4) After the passage of specified time *1 since the upper deck pickup solenoid is activated, the upper deck pickup motor (M601) is driven. It rotates while the pickup feed belt absorbs the paper, and feeds only 1 sheet to the pull-out roller.



F-8-54

[1] upper deck pull-out roller

5) When the upper deck pull-out sensor (PS601) is activated, the upper deck pickup solenoid is deactivated to close the suction shutter, and the paper is separated from the pickup feed belt.



F-8-55

[1] upper deck pull-out sensor (PS601)

6) In the case that the paper is fed and the specified period *1 have passed since the upper deck pull-out sensor turned off, and that the second paper is in the position where attraction is possible, the upper deck pick-up solenoid turns on again and the suction shutter opens.

7) For the second sheet and later, after the passage of specified time *2 since the upper deck pickup solenoid is activated, the pickup operation starts based on paper interval with the precedent sheet.

*1 Wait time for floatation: duration from when the pull-out sensor is deactivated to when the pickup solenoid is activated

*2 Wait time for absorption: duration from when the pickup solenoid is activated to when the pickup motor is driven

T-8-15

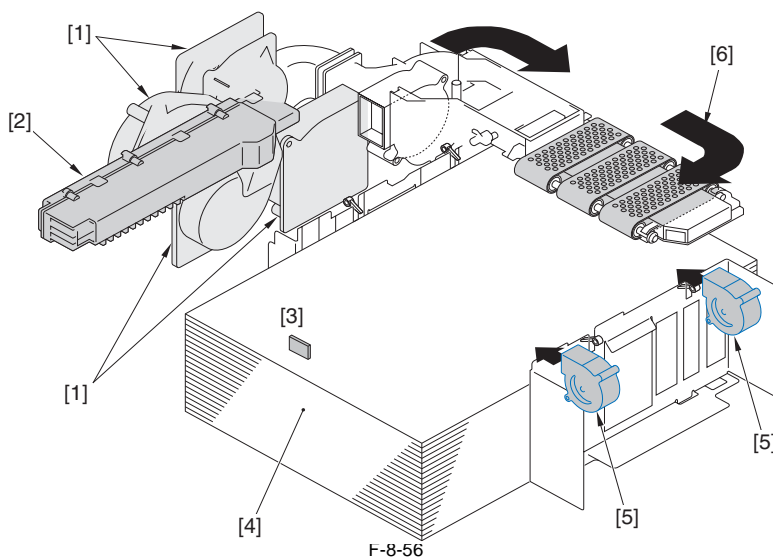
Paper size	LTR (215.9 mm) or smaller	B5R (257.0 mm) or smaller	A4R (297.0 mm) or smaller	B4R (364.0 mm) or smaller	Beyond the B4R size
Wait time for floatation (msec)	60.0	120.0	140.0	160.0	200.0
Wait time for absorption (msec)	120.0	120.0	120.0	160.0	200.0

8.6.3 Air Heater control

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

The coated papers may attract each other in a humid environment, leading to double feeding. In this machine, the heater heats the air, which separates papers to prevent them from attracting each other.

The kinds of paper and the absolute water volume in the deck determine the heater ON/OFF. The environmental sensor in the deck monitors the absolute water volume, and the heater is turned ON when the kind of paper is coated paper and the absolute water volume in the deck exceeds the specified value.



- [1] Floatation fan
- [2] Air heater
- [3] Environment sensor
- [4] Paper
- [5] Side fan
- [6] Warm air

MEMO:

The air heater control temperature is 60 deg C. The pickup operation stops until it reaches to the target temperature, therefore downtime occurs. If the downtime in this control needs to be eliminated, ON/OFF of the heater control can be set in service mode (Default is heater control ON).

Service Mode:

COPIER > OPTION > USER > DK1-ASST (Level 1)

Switching of air heater control for the right deck

COPIER > OPTION > USER > DK2-ASST (Level 1)

Switching of air heater control for the left deck

0: Air heater control according to the media and the environment conditions

1: Air heater control according to the environmental condition only (no dependency on media)

2: Always ON the air heater (no dependency on environment/media)

8.6.4 Pickup Operation

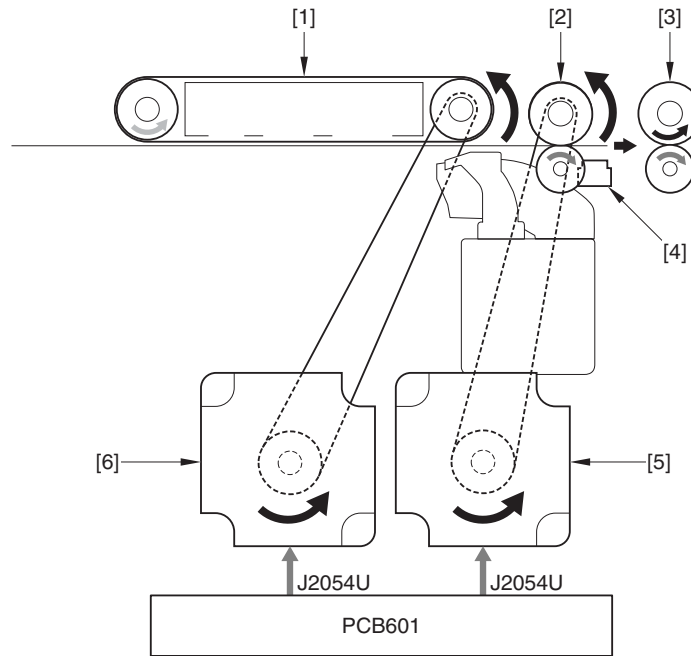
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

The paper, which is set in each desk, is lifted by the lifter to the specified pickup position.

When receiving a pickup start signal from the host machine, the drive of the right/left deck pickup motors (M601/M701) triggers the rotation of the pickup feed belt to pick up the paper. For the mechanism of paper absorbing to the absorption feeding belt, refer to "Air Pickup".

Then, the drive of right/left deck pull-out motors (M602/M702) triggers the rotation of the pull-out roller and the pull-out auxiliary roller, and the paper is sent to the feeding path.

The right/left deck pull-out sensors (PS601/PS701) detect the paper's pickup status.



F-8-57

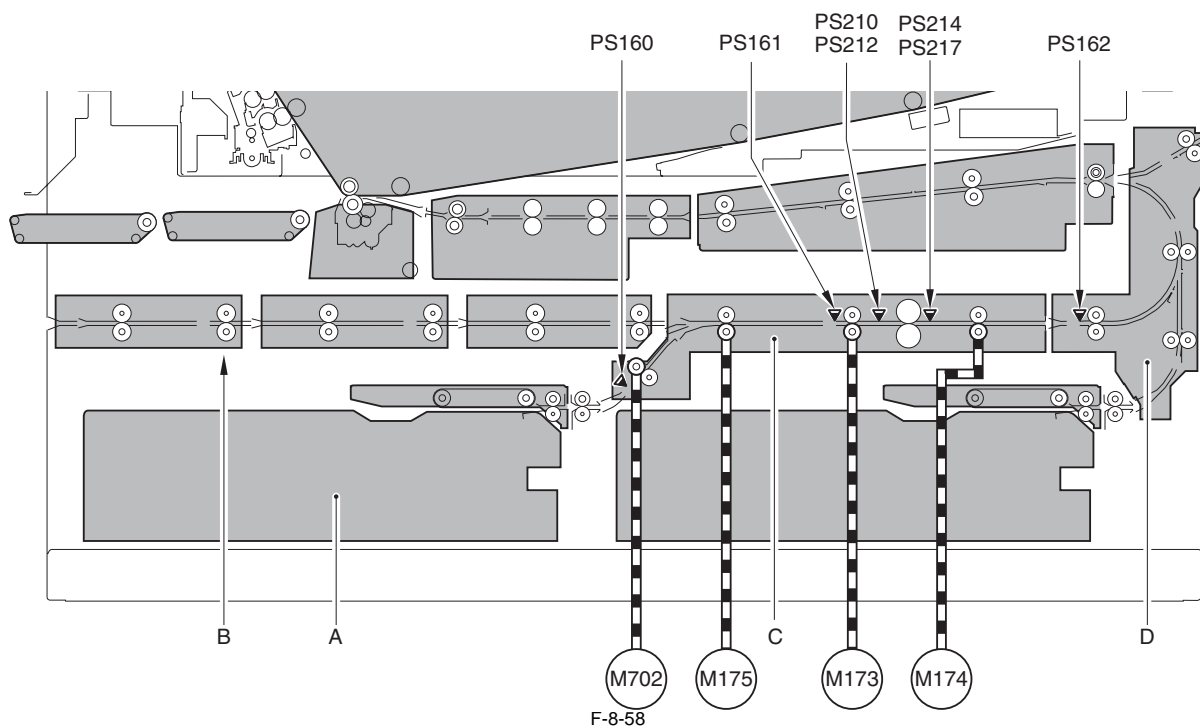
- | | |
|-------------------------------|---|
| [1] pickup feed belt | [4] upper/middle/lower deck pull-out sensor (PS601/PS701/PS801) |
| [2] pull-out roller | [5] upper/middle/lower deck pull-out motor (M602/M702/M802) |
| [3] pull-out auxiliary roller | [6] upper/middle/lower deck pickup motor (M601/M701/M801) |
- PCB601/PCB701/PCB801: upper/middle/lower deck pickup driver PCB

8.7 Lower Feeder Unit

8.7.1 Overview

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

The lower feeding unit feeds a paper fed from the left deck and the duplexing path to the vertical path unit.



- A: Left Deck
- B: Duplexing Assembly
- C: Lower Feeding Assembly
- D: Vertical Path Feeding Assembly
- M173: Lower Feed Motor 3
- M174: Lower Feed Motor 2
- M175: Lower Feed Motor 1
- PS160: Left Deck Merger Sensor
- PS161: Lower Feed Sensor 1
- PS162: Lower Feed Sensor 2
- PS210: Lower Feeding Path Paper Length Left Sensor (rear)
- PS212: Lower Feeding Path Paper Length Left Sensor (front)
- PS214: Lower Feeding Path Paper Length Right Sensor (rear)
- PS217: Lower Feeding Path Paper Length Right Sensor (front)

8.7.2 Paper Length Detection

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

The machine grasps the shrinkage volume of the second side of the paper in a sub scanning direction based on the period required when the paper passed through the lower feed sensor and corrects the shrinkage volume by the lead edge registration control so that the lead edge margin of the first side of two-sided copy matches that of the second side.

Correction of the shrinkage volume in a main scanning direction *1 is performed by variable speed control of the polygon motor.

*1: Including correction of paper skew (theta) or difference of roller speed

<Step of Paper Length Detection>

Step 1

When the lower feed sensor 1 (PS161) detects the lead edge of paper (ON), the machine starts times of the paper length sensor left (front/rear) and paper length sensor right (front/rear).

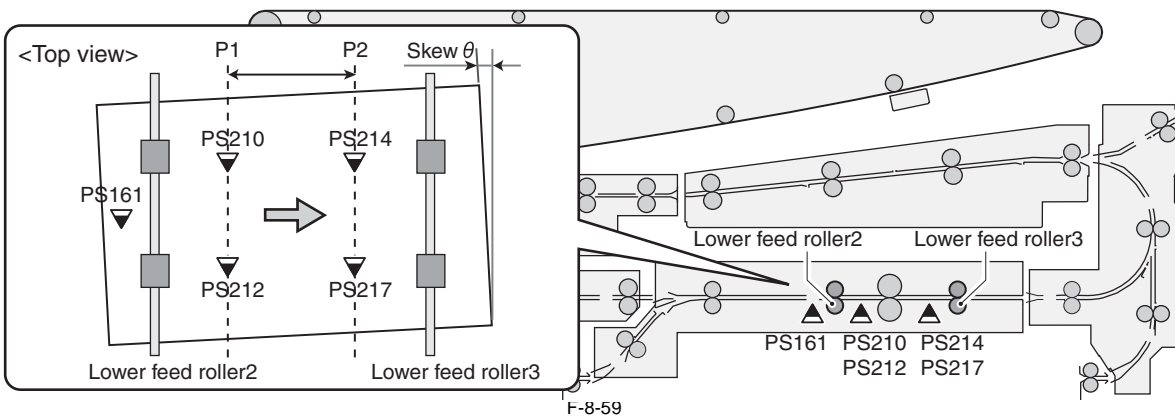
Step 2

The machine measures ON->OFF time of four paper length sensors and calculates the paper length using an arithmetic expression.

- Paper length = time that the paper passes through P1 (PS210, PS212)
- Paper skew = time difference that the paper leading edge passes through the PS210 and PS212
- Feeding speed = time that the paper leading edge reaches from P1 (PS210, PS212) to P2 (PS214, PS217)

Step 3

The degree of shrinkage is calculated according to the calculated paper length and skew amount that is to be reflected to the leading edge registration control (to adjust the timing for decreasing speed).



- P1: 1st detection point
- P2: 2nd detection point
- PS161: Lower feed sensor 1
- PS210: Lower feed path paper length left sensor (rear)
- PS212: Lower feed path paper length left sensor (front)
- PS214: Lower feed path paper length right sensor (rear)
- PS217: Lower feed path paper length right sensor (front)

MEMO:

This control only aligns the margin of image leading edge. In case of changing image size according to the shrinkage amount, you have to perform it manually in User Mode or Service Mode.

MEMO:

Fault (or failure) of paper length sensor causes the JAM code 0D94 at feeding.

Service Mode:

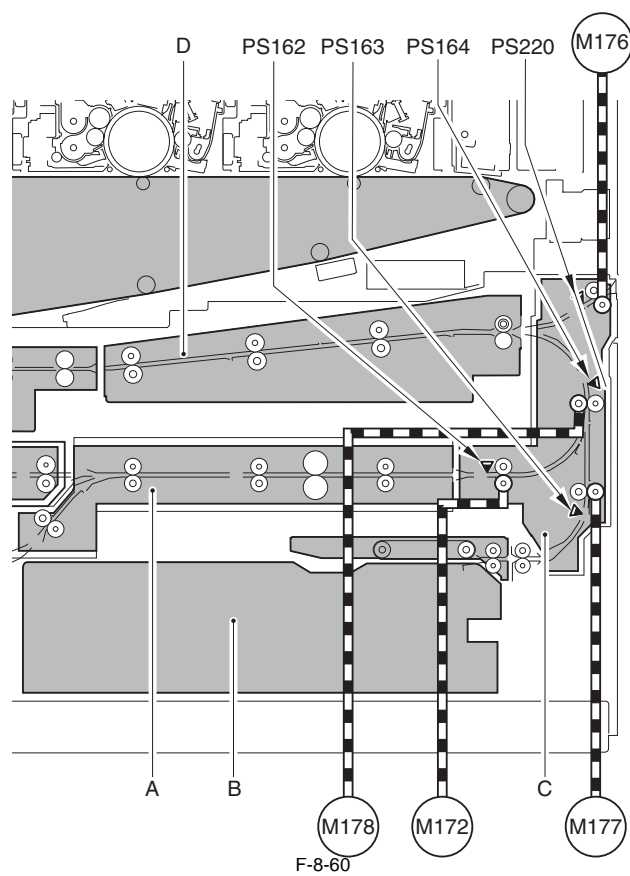
If replacing the paper length sensor, check that the sensor is installed appropriately in the following service mode. Refer to the replacement procedure for paper length sensor when checking it.

8.8 Vertical Path Feeder Unit

8.8.1 Overview

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

The vertical path feeding unit feeds a paper fed from the right deck and the lower feeding unit to the pre-registration unit.



A: Lower Feeding Unit
 B: Right Deck
 C: Vertical Path Unit
 D: Pre-Registration Unit

PS162: Lower Feed Sensor 1
 PS163: Right Deck Merger Sensor
 PS164: Vertical Path Sensor
 PS220: POD Deck Path Sensor
 M172: Lower Feed Motor 4
 M176: POD Deck Path Feeding Motor
 M177: Right Deck Feed Motor
 M178: Vertical Path Feed Motor

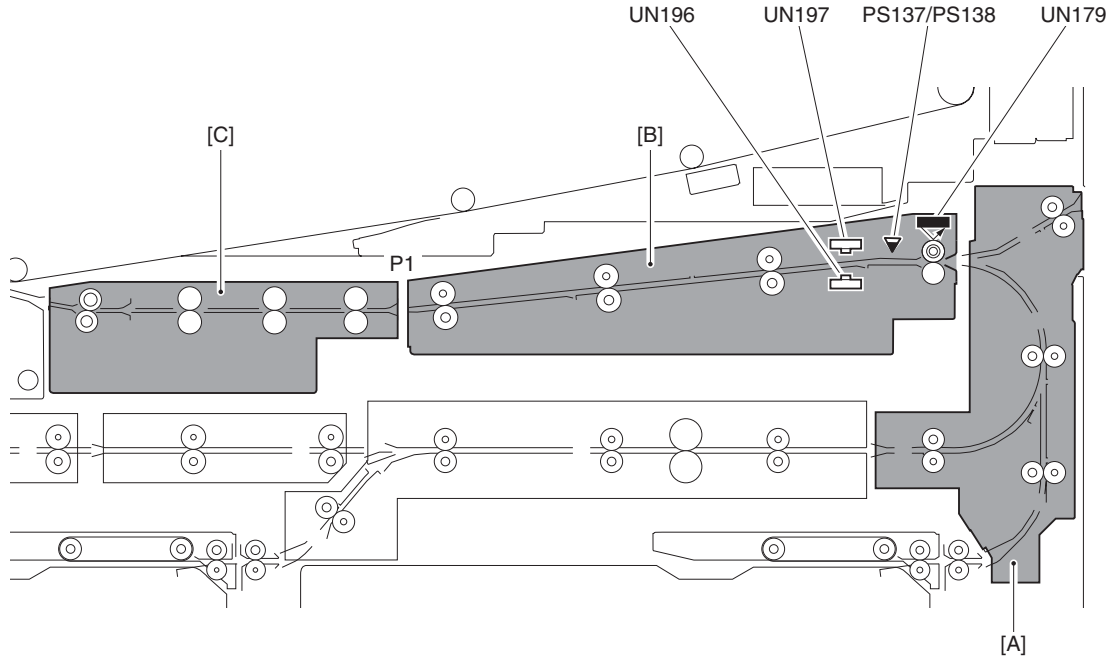
8.9 Pre-registration Unit

8.9.1 Overview

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

The pre-registration unit feeds a paper fed from the vertical path feeding unit to the pre-registration stop position and make it stop at there (pre-registration stop). The unit, then, feeds the paper stopped at the pre-registration stop position to the cross feeding registration unit.

At the pre-registration unit, the paper thickness detection, double feeding detection, transparency detection, and pre-registration stop control (pre-registration motor speed change control / pre-registration pressure release motor) are executed.



F-8-61

- A: Vertical Path Feeding Unit
- B: Pre-Registration Unit
- C: Cross Feeding Registration Unit
- PS137: Transparency Sensor (rear)
- PS138: Transparency Sensor (front)
- UN179: Paper Thickness Sensor
- UN196: Double Feed Sensor (transmission)
- UN197: Double Feed Sensor (reception)
- P1: Pre-Registration Stop Position

8.9.2 Pre-Registration Control

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

Pickup timing varies depending on the paper type, size, and environment. Thus, in order to prevent this variability, execute the pre-registration stop control.

A. Pre-Registration Stop Position

The pre-registration stop position is a point 57.5 mm downstream from the pre-feed sensor 3 (PS141).

MEMO:

Image positioning with this machine is executed by letting the paper stop at the pre-registration positions, so paper will not stop by the registration roller. Paper skew correction is executed by "Cross feed Registration Control".

B. Pre-Registration Control

1) Once a paper is fed and the pre-feed sensor 3 (PS141) is activated, the pre-registration motor 2/3/4 (M157/M158/M159) operate for 57.5 mm pulse and stop.

Feeding speed of a paper to the pre-registration stop position is 750 mm/sec.

* Because the machine employs the cross feeding mechanism, registration arch is not formed.

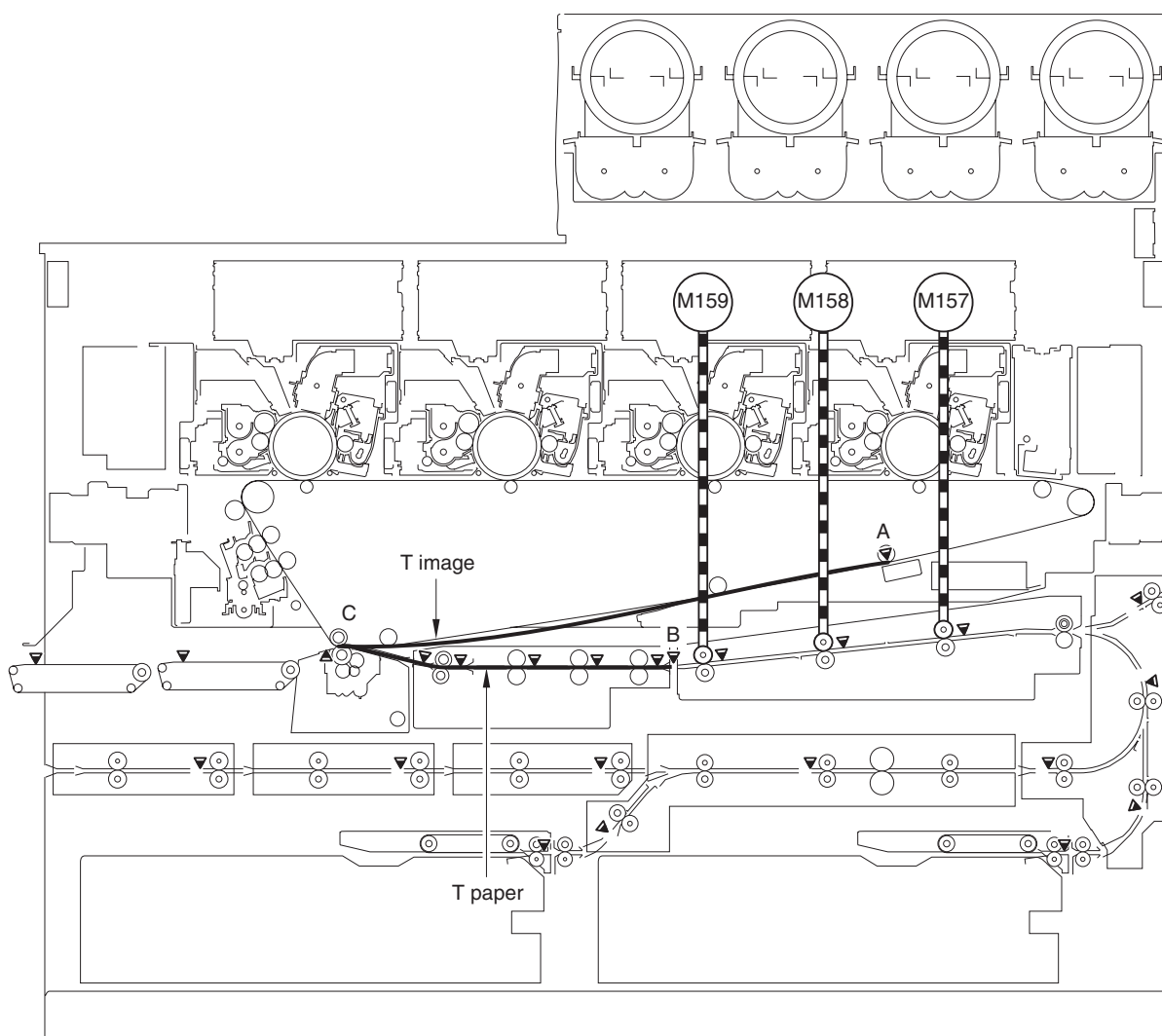
2) After passing the specific time (T_{prereg}) from the leading edge patch sensor signal, drive the pre-registration motor 2/3/4 (M157/M158/M159) and feed a paper to (the leading edge registration control) the cross feeding registration area.

Feeding speed after activating the pre-registration is 567.4 mm/sec.

$$T_{prereg} = T_{image} - T_{paper}$$

T_{image} = leading edge patch sensor position (A) - secondary transfer position (C)

T_{paper} = pre-registration stop position (B) - secondary transfer position (C)

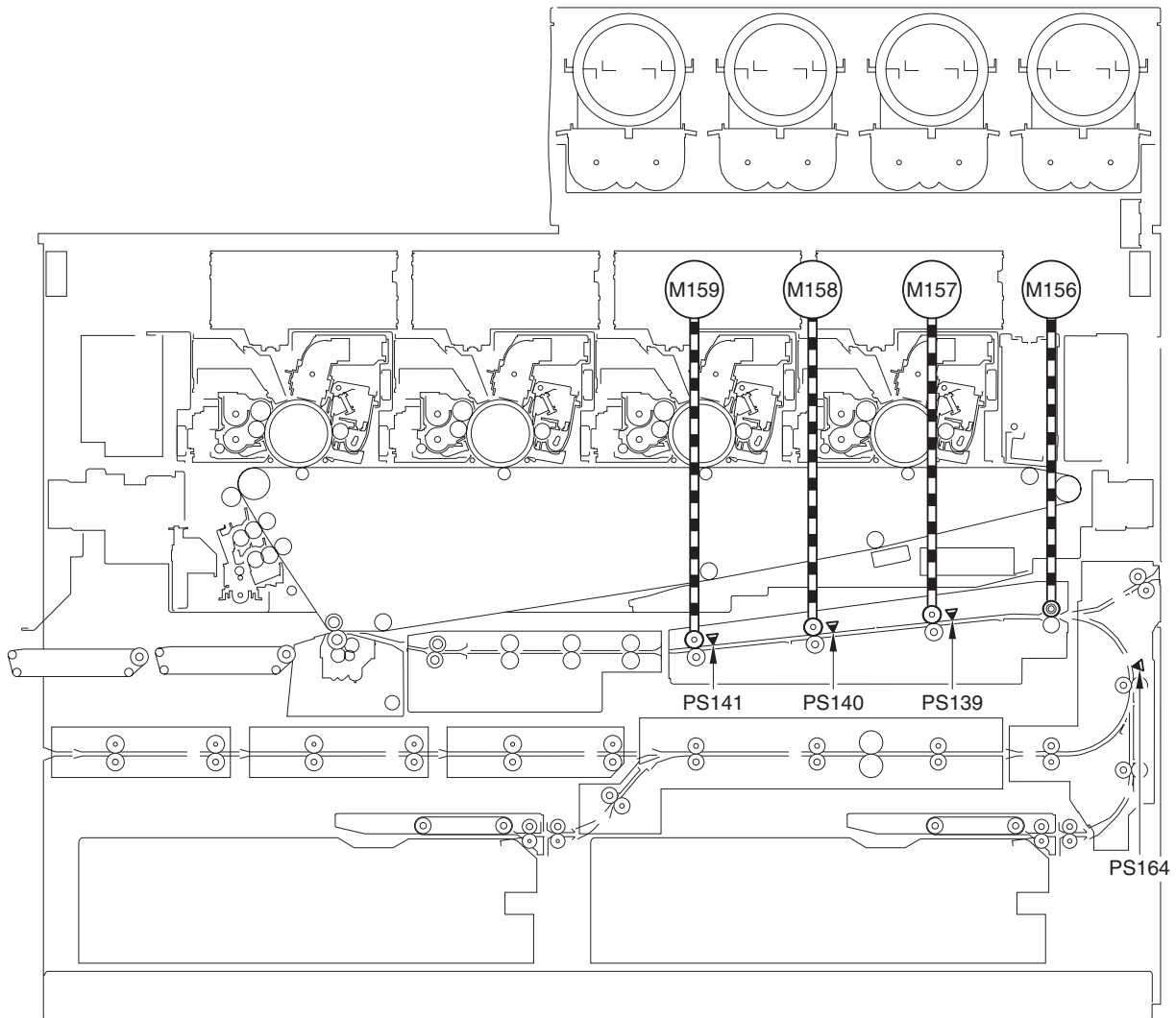


B-1.Pre-Registration Motor Speed Change Control

The pre-registration motor 1/2/3/4 execute the pre-registration speed change control in accordance with the pre-registration control. The operating points of the pre-registration speed change control are shown in the following table.

T-8-16

Motor	Operation	Operating Point
Pre-registration motor1(M156)	Start	Start the 1st exposure
	Acceleration	Vertical path sensor (PS164)
	Stop	Pre-feed sensor3(PS141)
	Pre-registration: ON	Leading edge registration patch sensor
Pre-registration motor2(M157)	Start	Start the 1st exposure
	Acceleration	Vertical path sensor (PS164)
	Stop	Pre-feed sensor3(PS141)
	Pre-registration: ON	Leading edge registration patch sensor
Pre-registration motor3(M158)	Start	Start the 1st exposure
	Acceleration	Pre-feed sensor1(PS139)
	Stop	Pre-feed sensor3(PS141)
	Pre-registration: ON	Leading edge registration patch sensor
Pre-registration motor4(M159)	Start	Start the 1st exposure
	Acceleration	Pre-feed sensor2(PS140)
	Stop	Pre-feed sensor3(PS141)
	Pre-registration: ON	Leading edge registration patch sensor



F-8-63

B-2.Pre-Registration Pressure Release Motor Control

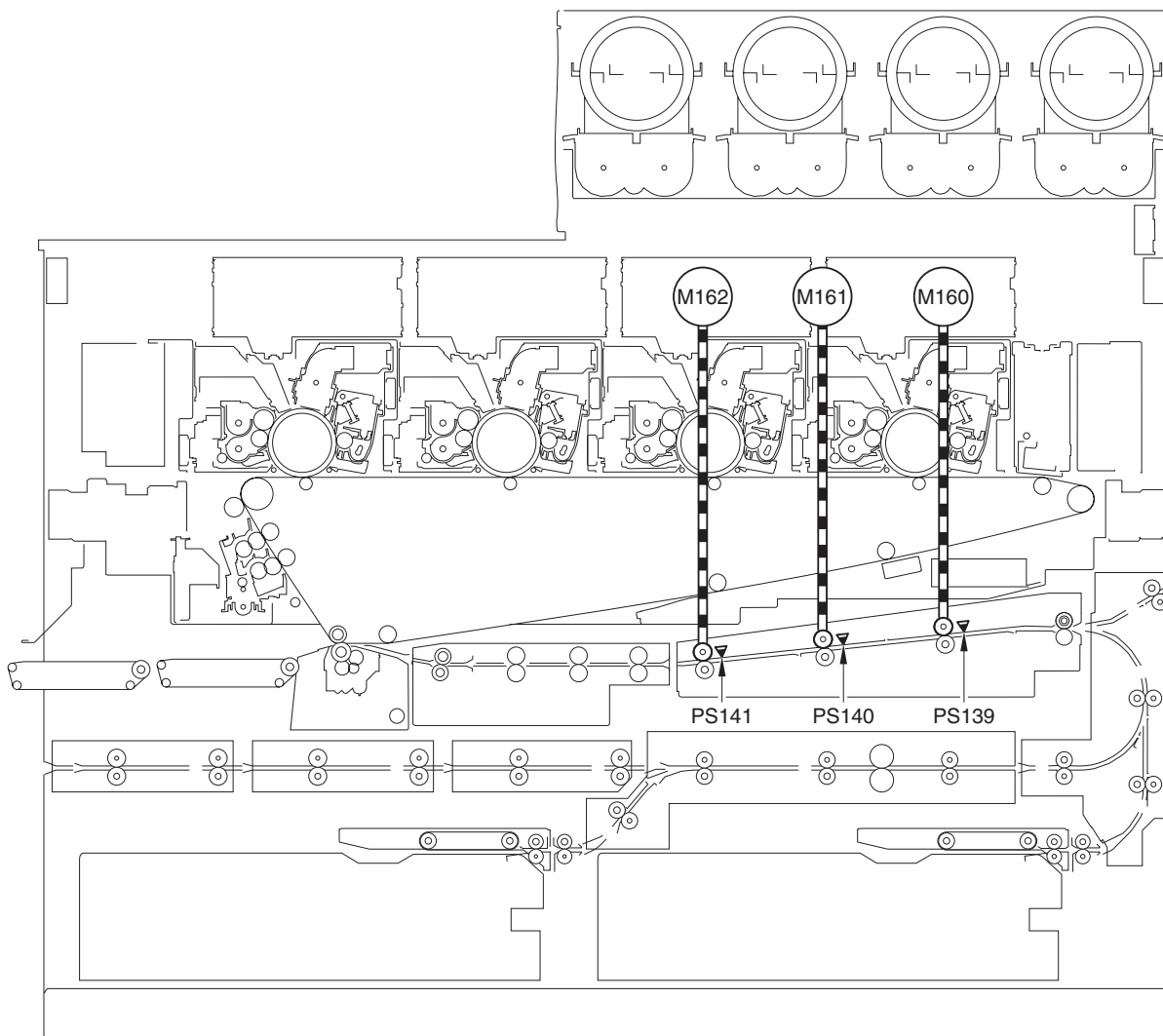
The pre-registration motor 1/2/3/4 execute its attachment/detachment control in accordance with the pre-registration control.

The pre-registration pressure release motor 1/2/3/4 apply pressure to the feeding roller 2/3/4 in accordance with the sensor at upstream, and release the pressure when the pre-registration motor turns on.

The operating points of the pre-registration pressure release motor control are shown in the following table.

T-8-17

Motor	Operation	Operating Point	Pressure Release Control
Pre-registration pressure release motor 1(M160)	Pressure	Pre-feed sensor 1 (PS139)	
	Release	At the time of pre-registration: ON	Execute with all paper size
Pre-registration pressure release motor 2(M161)	Pressure	Pre-feed sensor 2 (PS140)	
	Release	At the time of pre-registration: ON	Not execute with paper which size is less than 376 mm
Pre-registration pressure release motor 3(M162)	Pressure	Pre-feed sensor 3 (PS141)	
	Release	At the time of pre-registration: ON	Not execute with paper which size is less than 228 mm



F-8-64

8.9.3 Double Feeding Detection

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

Double feeding detection is performed by the ultrasonic sensors (for transmission/reception) located between the feed rollers 1 and 2 in the feed unit assembly. When it is judged that double feeding has occurred, it is considered as a jam and printing stops.

Ultrasonic sound has the following characteristics. Double feeding detection can be performed regardless of the paper type (plain paper, thick paper, colored paper, Transparency, etc.).

- Ultrasonic sound is attenuated significantly at the border of density (air, paper) when transported.

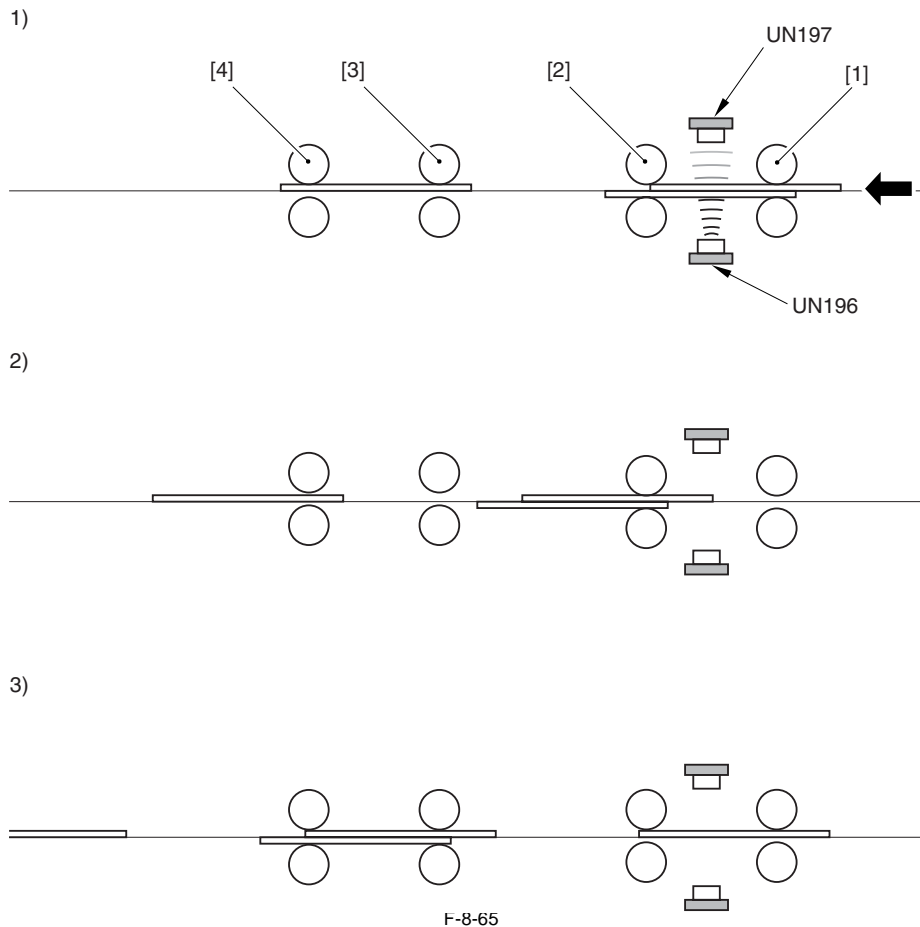
- Attenuation volume does not change according to the difference in color or thickness of the target measurement material.

<Detection timing>

Time from when the pre-registration sensor 1 is turned ON until after 190 msec.

<Operation sequence for double feeding detection>

- 1) Start the double feeding detection measurement.
- 2) Make a judgment as "double feeding".
- 3) Transport the double-fed paper to the pre-registration stop position and stop the operation as a jam. (Jam code: "0300")



[1] Feed roller 1

[2] Feed roller 2

[3] Feed roller 3

[4] Feed roller 4

UN196 : Double feed sensor (transmission)

UN197 : Double feed sensor (reception)

MEMO:

When misjudged as double feeding (Jam code: "0300"), cable cutoff, connector disconnection or failure of the double feeding sensor is suspected as a cause. Note that this machine is not equipped with disable double feeding detection mode (COPIER > OPTION > BODY > OVL P-MD) not as iR7105 series. In case the machine is operated with double feeding detection disabled, the double-fed paper is transported downstream from the pre-registration stop position. This may cause the fixing roller breakage due to wound paper.

MEMO:

POD deck (optional) carries the double feed detection function as well as the host machine. If double feed occurs in POD deck, only the double-fed paper is delivered to the escape tray on POD deck. JAM code indicating this symptom is "0C00".

8.9.4 Paper Thickness Detection

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

Paper thickness detection is performed to prevent damage to the surface of the fixing roller caused by the thick paper exceeding the specified level *1 or scratches on the secondary transfer roller.

The paper thickness sensor mount (UN179) detects the height of the feed roller 1 to calculate the paper thickness calculated based on the displacement at the time when the paper is present and at the time when the paper is absent.

When the paper exceeding the specified thickness is detected, the machine transports the paper to the pre-registration position, considering it as a jam, and stops the drive.

*1: Specified thickness: Paper of which thickness is more than 350um (basis weight: 300g)

Step of paper thickness detection

Step 1

The paper thickness sensor mount (UN179) measures the position (height) of the feed roller 1 in the condition where paper is absent at initial rotation and retains it.

Step 2

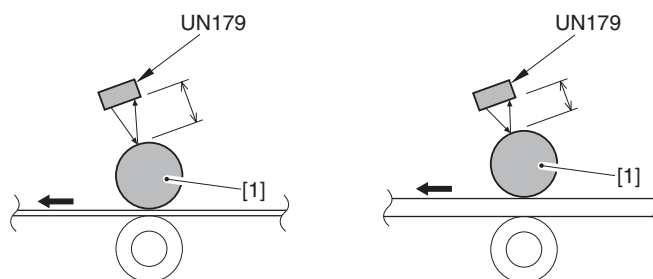
The paper thickness sensor mount (UN179) measures the position (height) of the feed roller 1 at the timing *1 when the paper is transported to the feed roller 1.

*1: The detection timing is based on the vertical path sensor, POD path feed sensor, and deck light pull-off sensor (OPTION).

Step 3

Based on the measurement value, the paper thickness is identified from the position (height) of the feed roller 1 when the paper is absent and the position when it is present.

- a. When the paper thickness is within the specified level (The thickness is less than 350um.)
The machine continues to transport the paper.
- b. When the paper thickness is more than the specified level (The thickness is more than 350um.)
The machine stops the paper at the pre-registration stop position.



F-8-66

Service mode:

COPIER > ADJUST > MISC > DF-S-RK

Enter the rank value (sensitivity) of the paper thickness sensor.

<Setting range>

1 to 5

After replacing the paper thickness sensor, enter "1" to "5" for the label indication ("A" to "E") of the new sensor.

A: 1 B: 2 C: 3 D: 4 E: 5

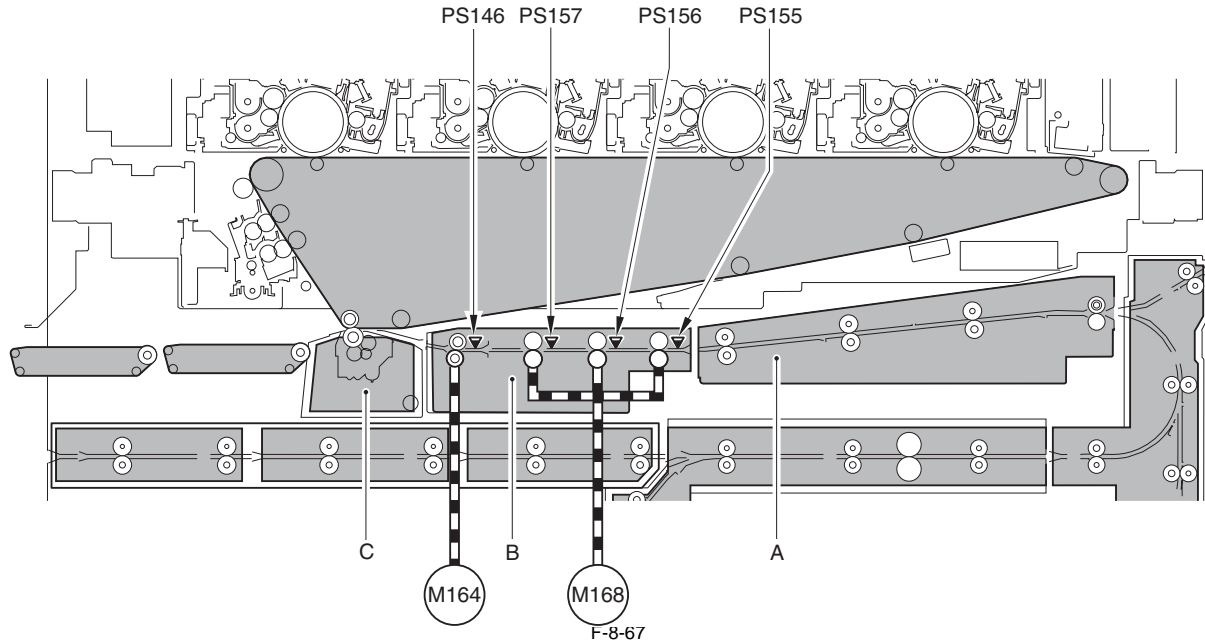
8.10 Registration Unit

8.10.1 Overview

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

The registration unit feeds a paper fed from the pre-registration unit to the secondary transfer unit.

At the cross feeding registration unit, the cross feeding registration control, leading edge registration control, and cross feeding roller attachment/detachment control are executed.



A: Pre-Registration Unit
 B: Registration Unit
 C: Secondary Transfer Unit

PS146: Pre-Registration Sensor
 PS155: Cross Feed Sensor 1
 PS156: Cross Feed Sensor 2
 PS157: Cross Feed Sensor 3
 M164: Registration Motor
 M168: Cross Feed Motor

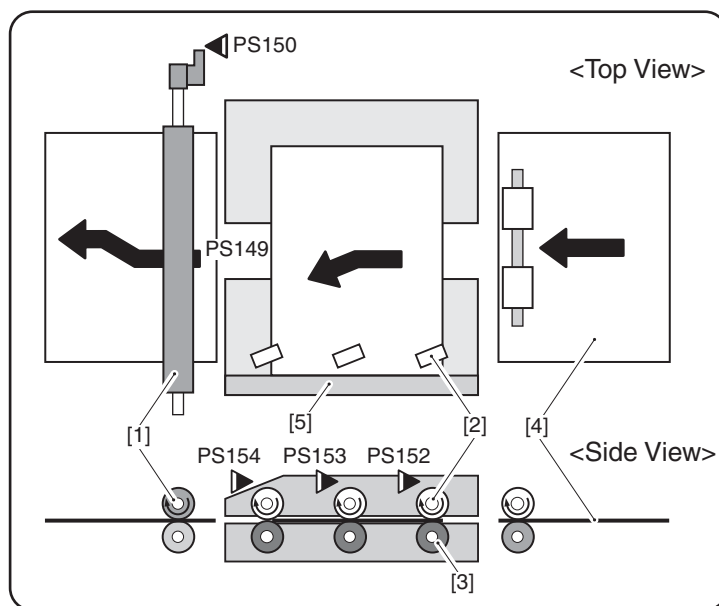
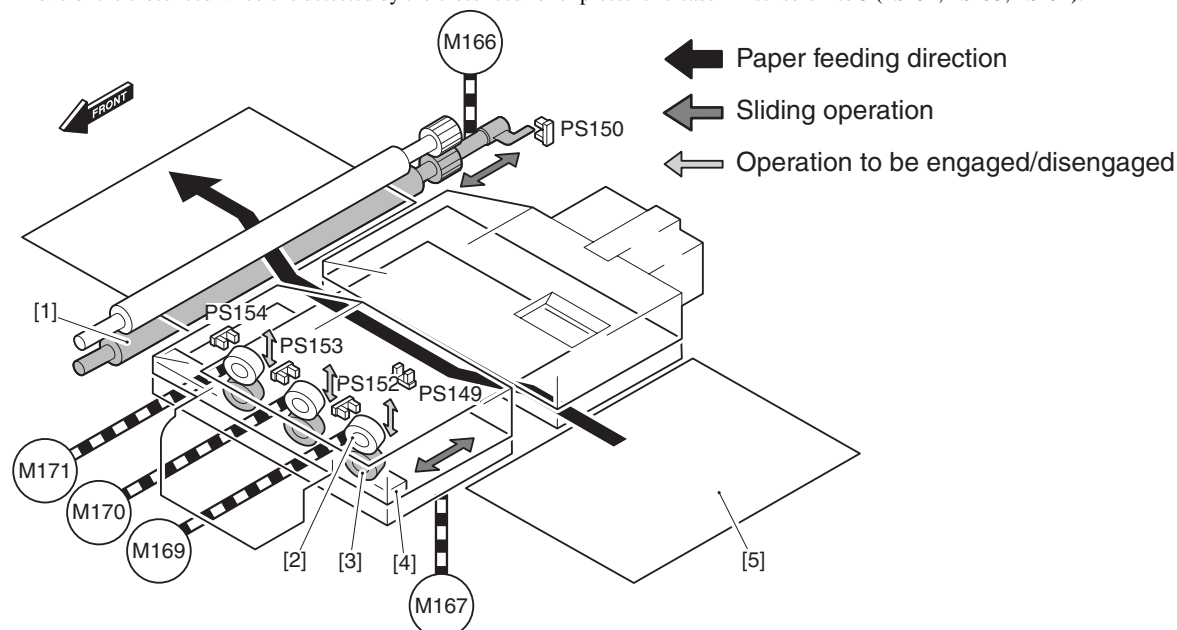
8.10.2 Cross Feed Registration Control

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

To realize high productivity, the machine performs cross feed registration control, in which nonstop skew correction and horizontal registration correction are performed.

<Control Overview>

Skew correction is executed as the cross feed rollers push the paper on the push-on plate. The cross feed push-on plate shifts its position by the cross feed push-on plate jogging motor (M167) depending on the paper size. The position of cross feed push-on plate is detected by the cross feed push-on plate HP sensor (PS149). Side registration correction is executed by shifting the skew-corrected paper to the center by the registration roller. The registration swing motor (M166) shifts the registration roller. The position of registration roller is detected by the registration roller slide HP sensor (PS150). Because the cross feed rollers need to be disengaged from the paper during side registration correction, the cross feed pressure release motors 1 to 3 (M169, M170, M171) move the cross feed wheels up/down. The up/down move of the cross feed wheels is detected by the cross feed roller pressure release HP sensors 1 to 3 (PS152, PS153, PS154).



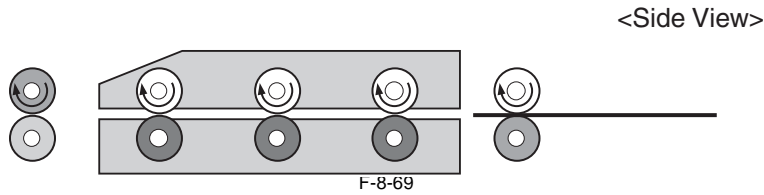
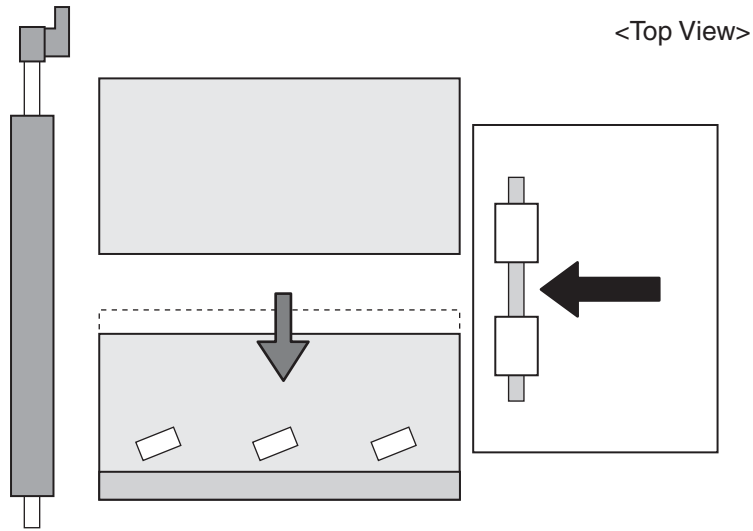
F-8-68

[1]	Registration roller	M166:	Registration swing motor
[2]	Cross feed sub roller	M167:	Cross feed push-on plate jogging motor
[3]	Cross feed roller	M169:	Cross feed pressure release motor 1
[4]	Cross feed push-on plate	M170:	Cross feed pressure release motor 2
[5]	Paper	M171:	Cross feed pressure release motor 3
		PS149:	Cross feed plate HP sensor
		PS150:	Registration roller slide HP sensor
		PS152:	Cross feed roller pressure release HP sensor 1
		PS153:	Cross feed roller pressure release HP sensor 2
		PS154:	Cross feed roller pressure release HP sensor 3

<Step of cross feed registration control>

Step 1

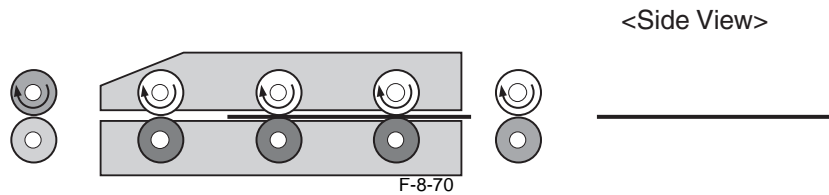
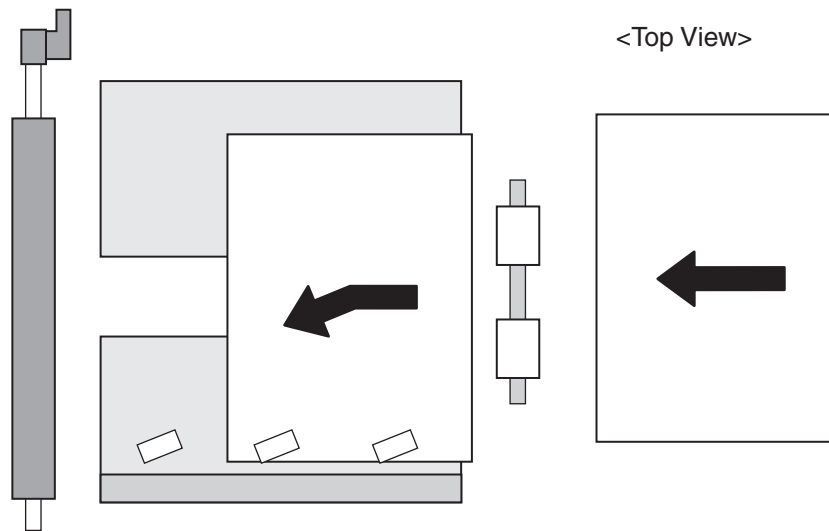
Once printing starts, the cross feed push-on plate is shifted to the position corresponding to the feeding paper size.



Step 2

Once the paper reaches the registration unit, it is fed at an angle (cross-feeding direction) (*1) by the cross feed rollers 1 to 3.

*1: This is because the skew rollers are placed askew in a front direction.

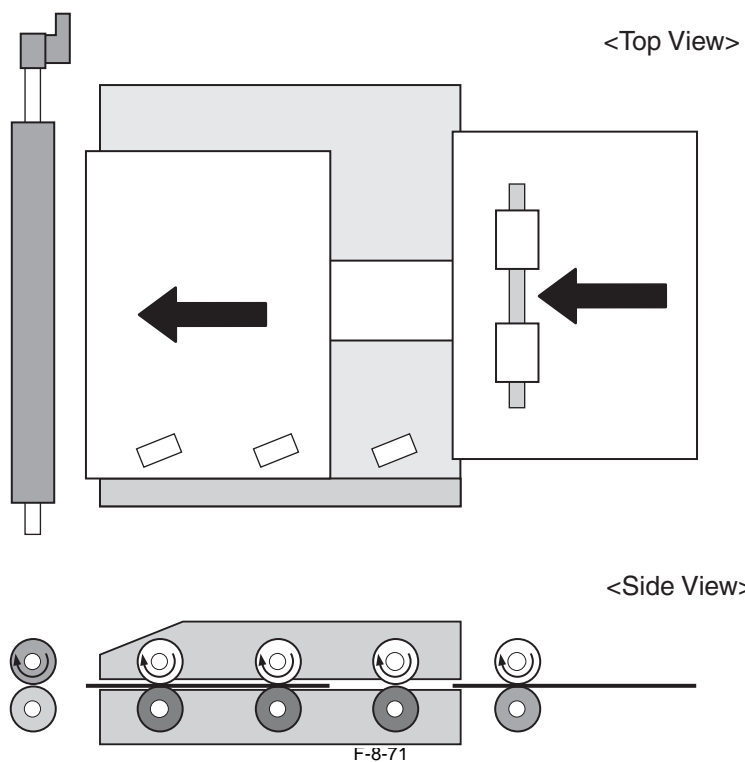


MEMO:
 Since the paper is transported askew, the nip pressure of the skew roller is set to be relatively small. This causes variation in the paper feeding speed depending on the condition such as materials, sizes, and one-sided or two-sided printing. Lead edge registration control is performed to correct such variation.

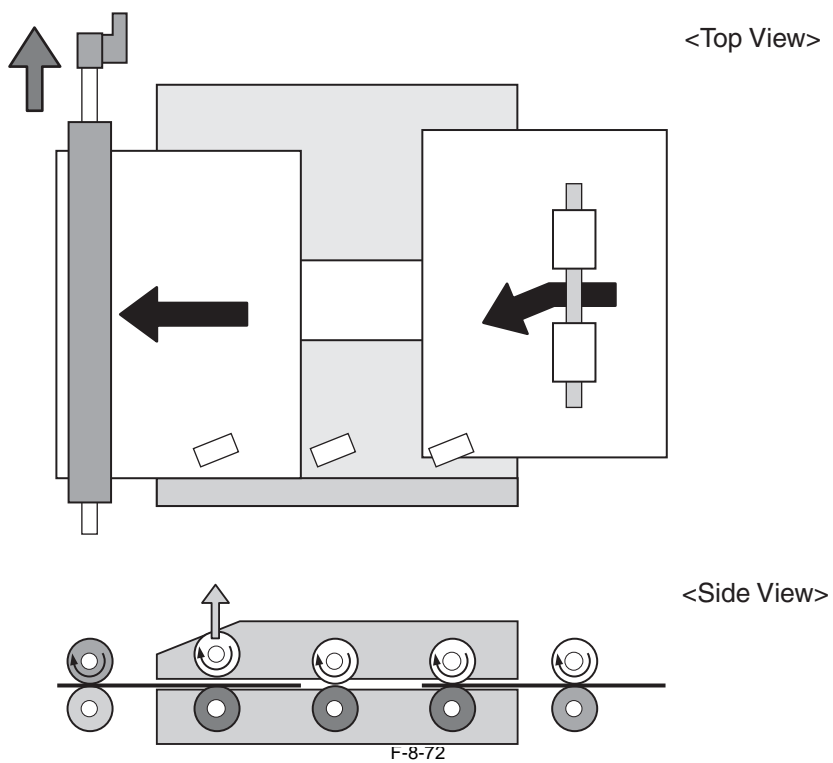
MEMO:
 To cross-feed the paper, release the feed rollers 2 through 4 in the pre-registration unit by controlling the pre-registration release motor at the timing when the paper is fed to the cross-feed roller.

Step 3

The paper transported askew stops at the stop plate, and skew is corrected.

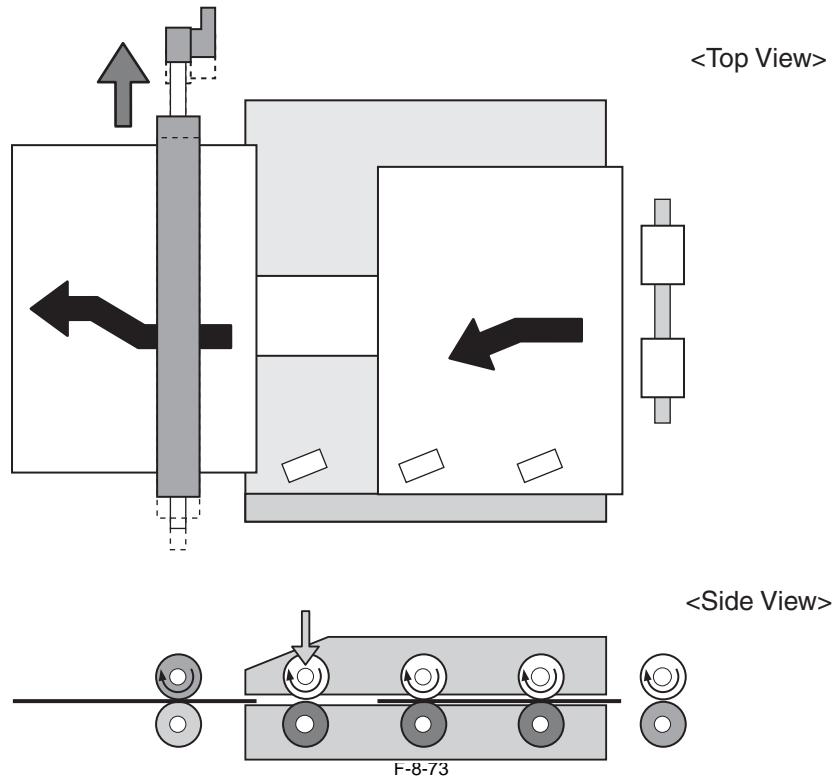
Step 4

Once the paper leading edge passes through the registration roller, the cross feed wheels are disengaged from the cross feed rollers. And then the registration roller is shifted to the rear to correct side registration (center reference).



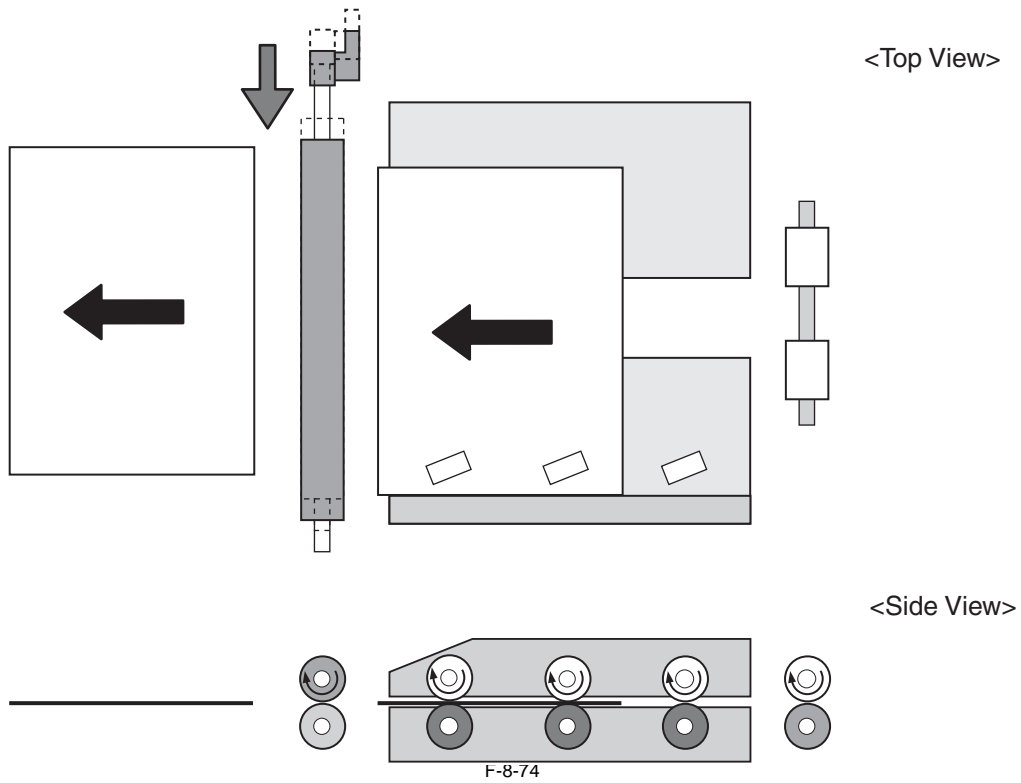
Step 5

The cross feed wheel is engaged with the cross feed rollers according to the paper feeding condition to execute skew correction of the next paper.



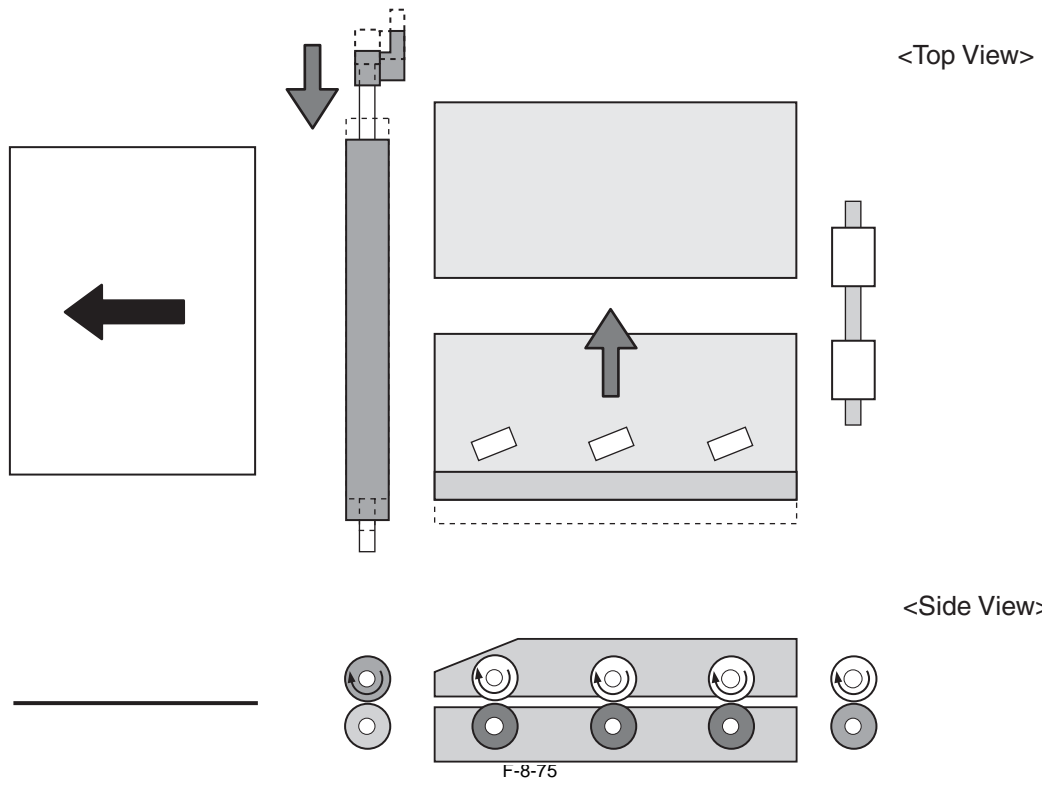
Step 6

Once the paper trailing edge passes through the registration roller, the registration roller is shifted to the front to execute side registration correction for the next paper.



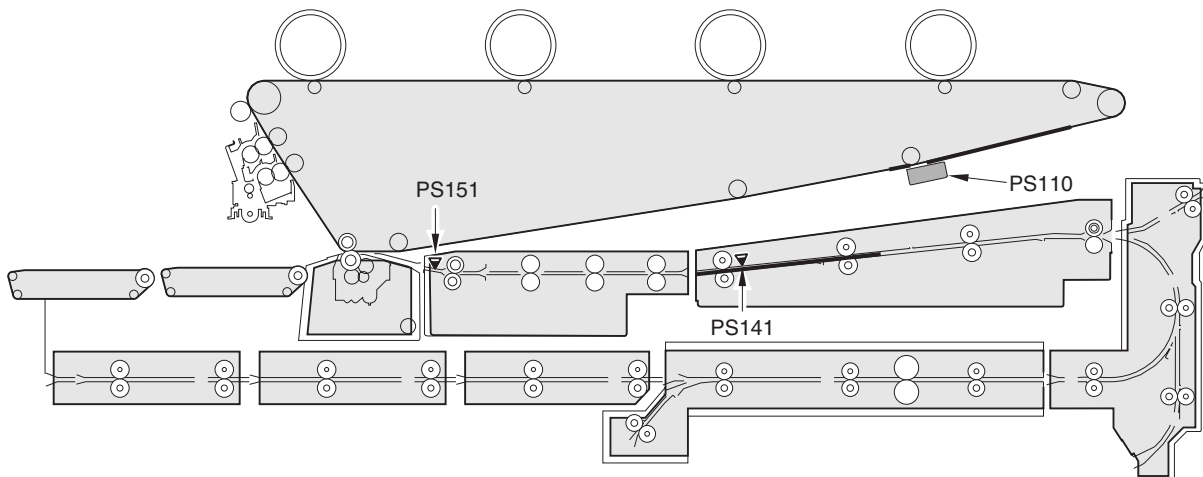
Step 7

Once printing is complete, the cross feed push-on plate and the registration roller are shifted to the home position.



Step 3

The leading edge patch on the ITB is detected by the leading edge registration patch sensor (PS110) so the pre-registration motor is driven after specified period of time to feed paper.



F-8-78

Step 4

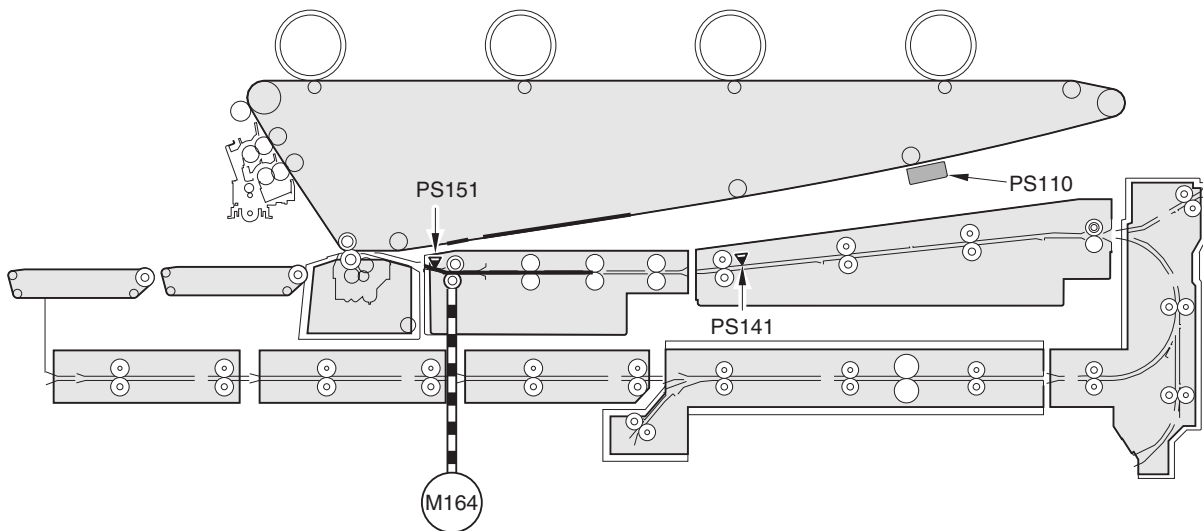
Detect the lead edge of paper using the registration rear sensor (PS209). Also calculate the speed reduction timing of the registration motor based on the positions of the lead edge of image and lead edge of paper.

MEMO:

For the second side of two-sided printing, the machine calculates the speed reduction timing of the registration motor, considering the shrinkage calculated by the paper length detection.

Step 5

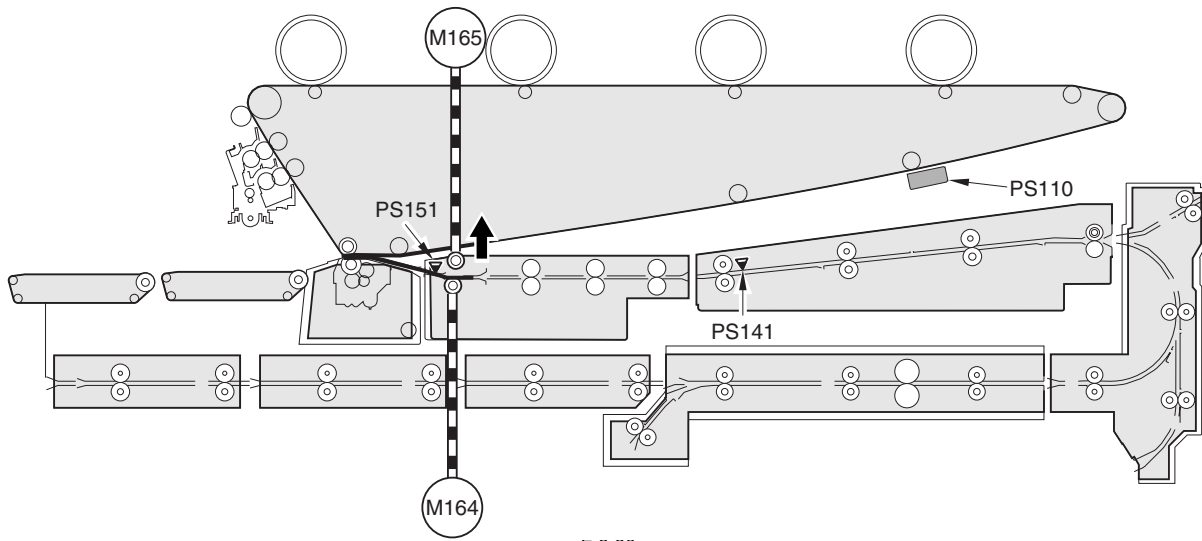
Reduce speed of the registration motor. (600mm/s --> 300mm/s)



F-8-79

Step 6

At the timing when the paper reaches the secondary transfer roller, the machine drives the registration release motor (M165) and releases the registration roller.



F-8-80

MEMO:
Since the registration rear sensor cannot detect the transparent sheet like OHP, the registration roller front sensor detects the lead edge of the paper to reduce speed of the registration roller.

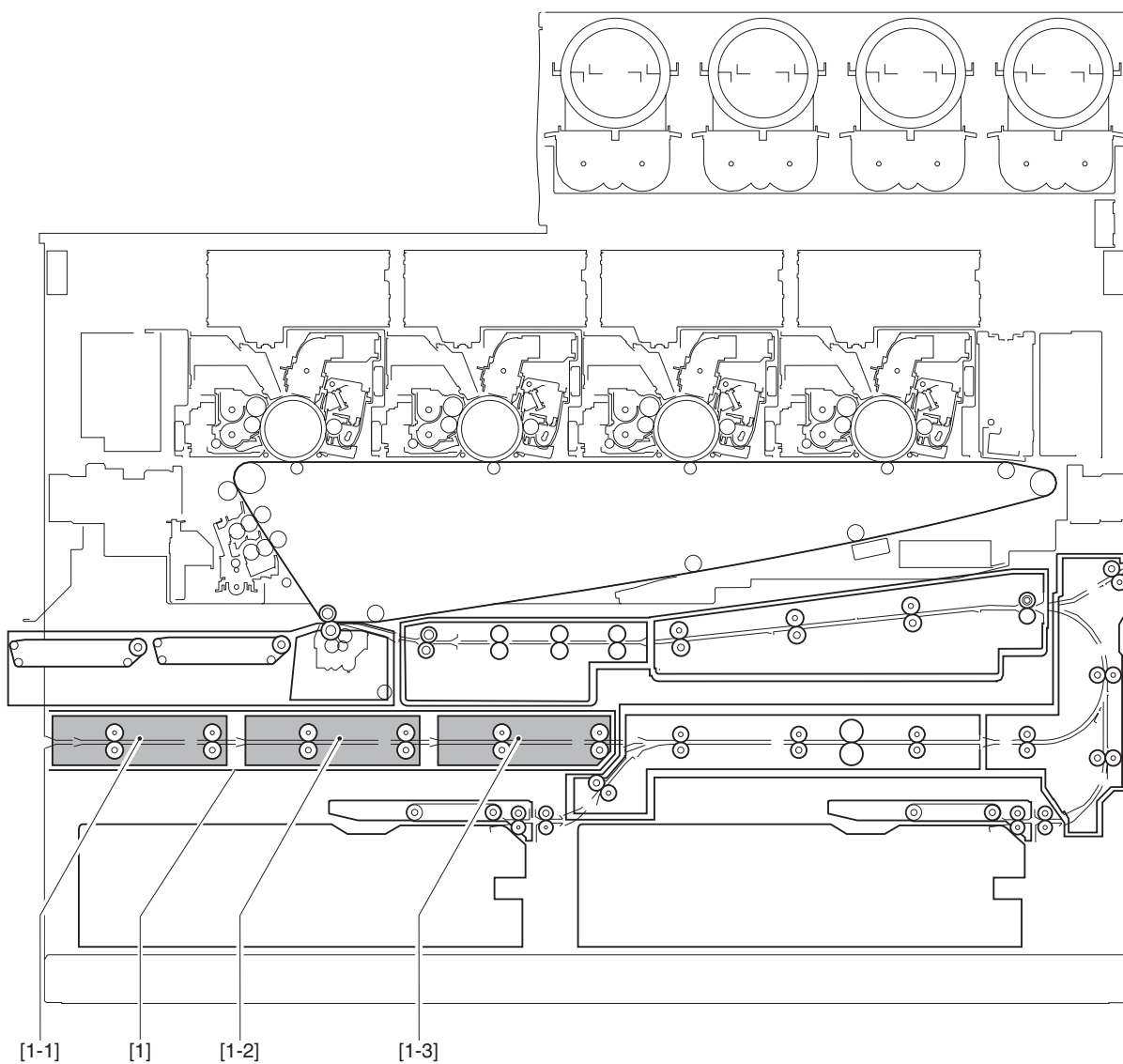
8.11 Duplex Feeding Unit

8.11.1 Overview

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

The paper transported from the delivery reverse unit is transported to the lower feed unit.
The duplexing unit performs de-curler control*1 and standby control.

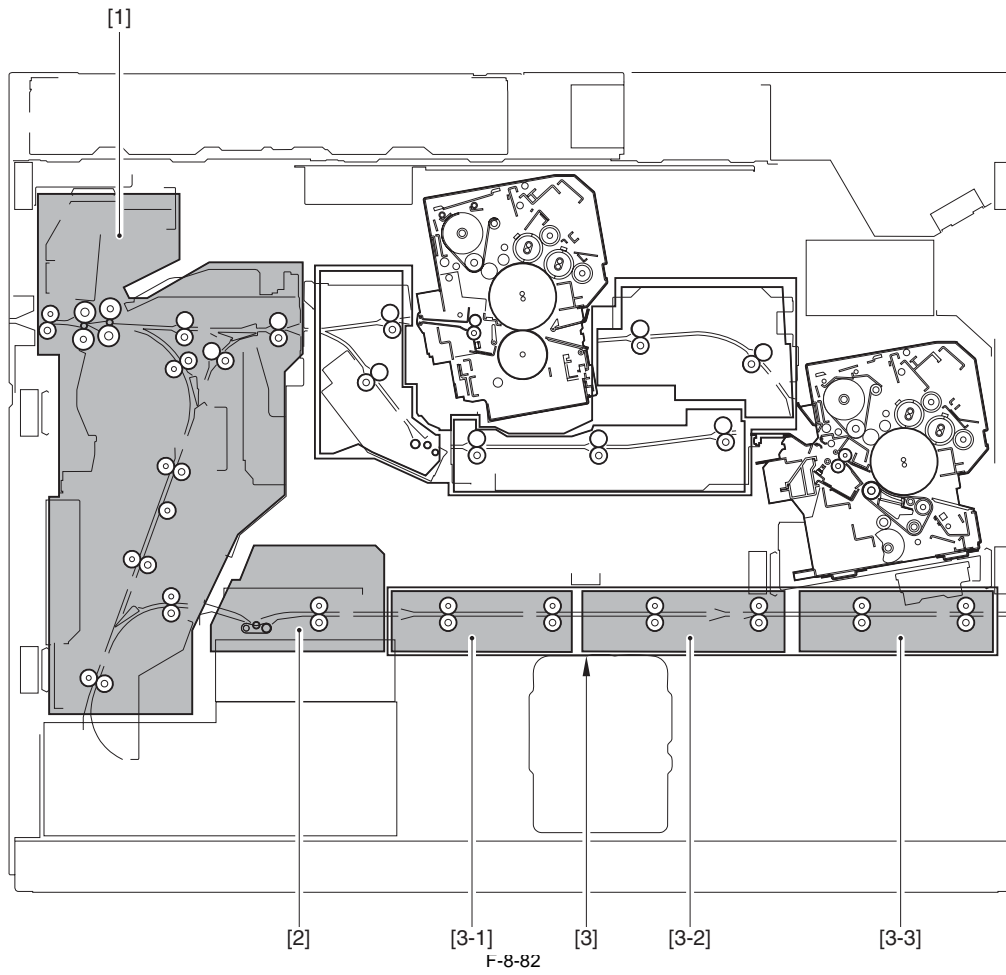
*1: See Decurler Control for details.



F-8-81

Main station

- [1] Main station duplexing feed unit
- [1-1] Main station duplexing feed unit 1
- [1-2] Main station duplexing feed unit 2
- [1-3] Main station duplexing feed unit 3



Sub station

- [1] Reverse / outside delivery unit
- [2] Duplexing Decurler unit
- [3] Sub station duplexing feed unit
 - [3-1] Sub station duplexing feed unit 1
 - [3-2] Sub station duplexing feed unit 2
 - [3-3] Sub station duplexing feed unit 3

8.11.2 Duplexing Standby Control

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

<Step of duplexing control>

Step 1

The paper is transported to the standby position 6 by duplexing reverse control.

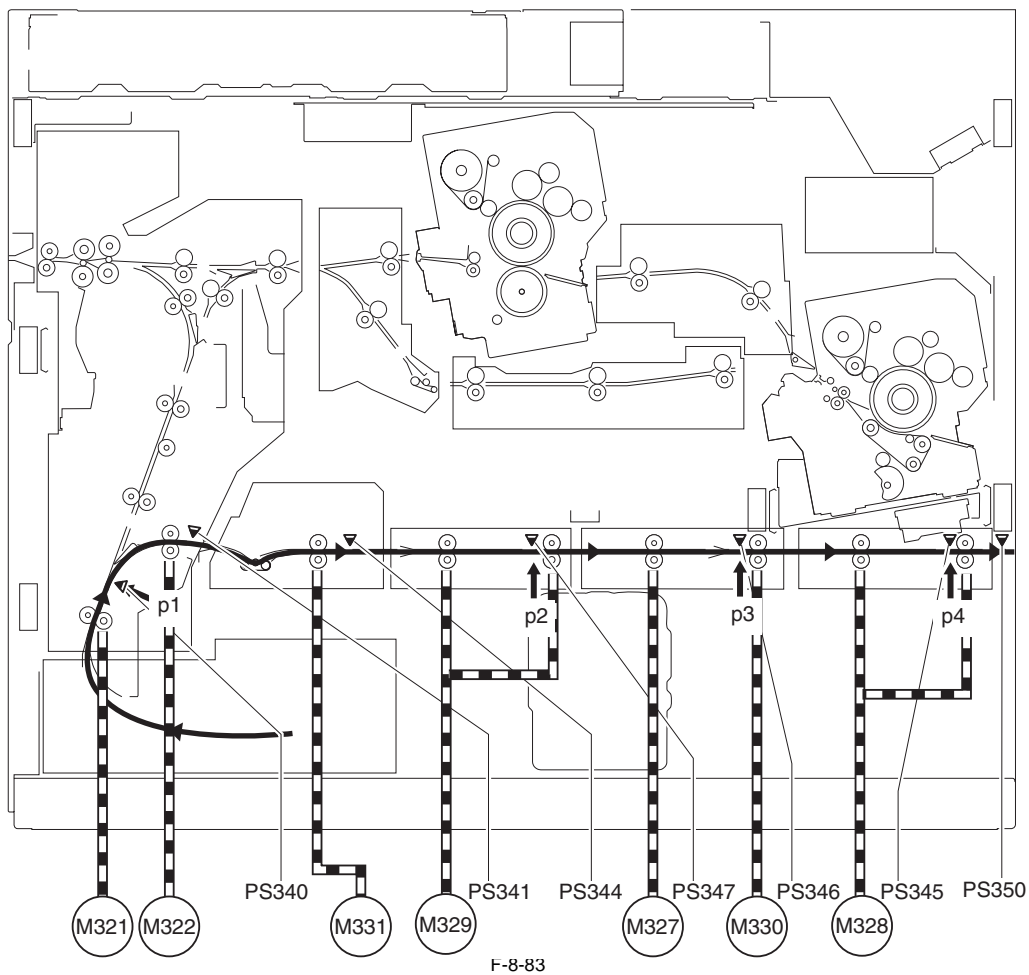
Step 2

When there is no paper at the standby position on the downstream side (the duplexing standby sensor on the downstream side is turned off), the paper is transported.

Step 3

When there is paper on the downstream side, the paper stops at the standby position.

When the trail edge of paper at the standby position on the downstream side leaves the standby position sensor, the machine drives the duplexing feed motor again and transports the paper.



p1	Duplexing reverse position	p2	Duplexing standby position 6
p3	Duplexing standby position 5	p4	Duplexing standby position 4
PS340	Duplexing reverse sensor	PS341	Duplexing reverse rear sensor
PS344	Duplexing path inlet sensor	PS347	Duplexing standby sensor 6
PS346	Duplexing standby sensor 5	PS345	Duplexing standby sensor 4
PS350	Duplexing path sub station outlet sensor	M321	Duplexing reverse motor
M322	Duplexing reverse rear motor	M331	Duplexing feed motor 8
M329	Duplexing feed motor 7	M327	Duplexing feed motor 6
M330	Duplexing feed motor 5	M328	Duplexing feed motor 4

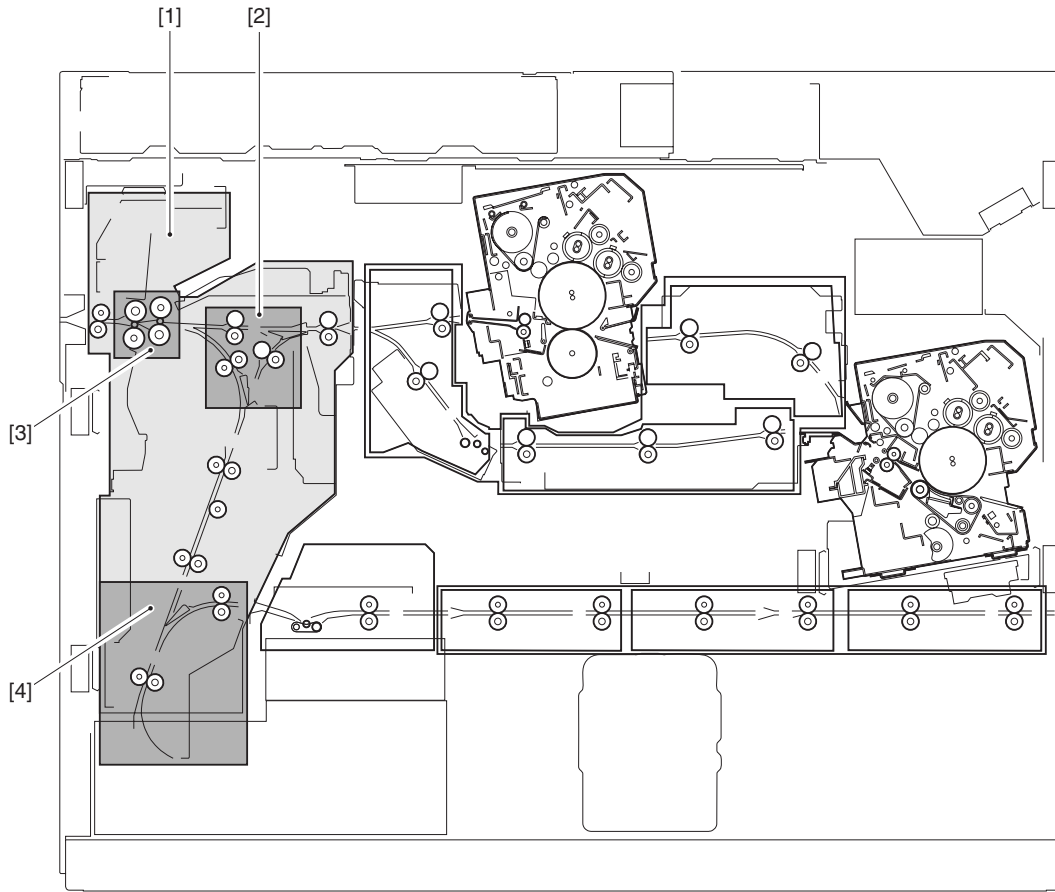
8.12 Delivery

8.12.1 Overview

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

A paper fed from the secondary fixing assembly and the bypass unit is either fed to the duplexing unit or delivered. The delivery reverse unit executes the delivery decurler control*1, reverse control, and duplexing reverse control.

*1: See Decurler Control for details.



- [1] Reverse/outside delivery unit
- [2] Reverse control
- [3] Delivery De-curler control
- [4] Duplexing reverse control

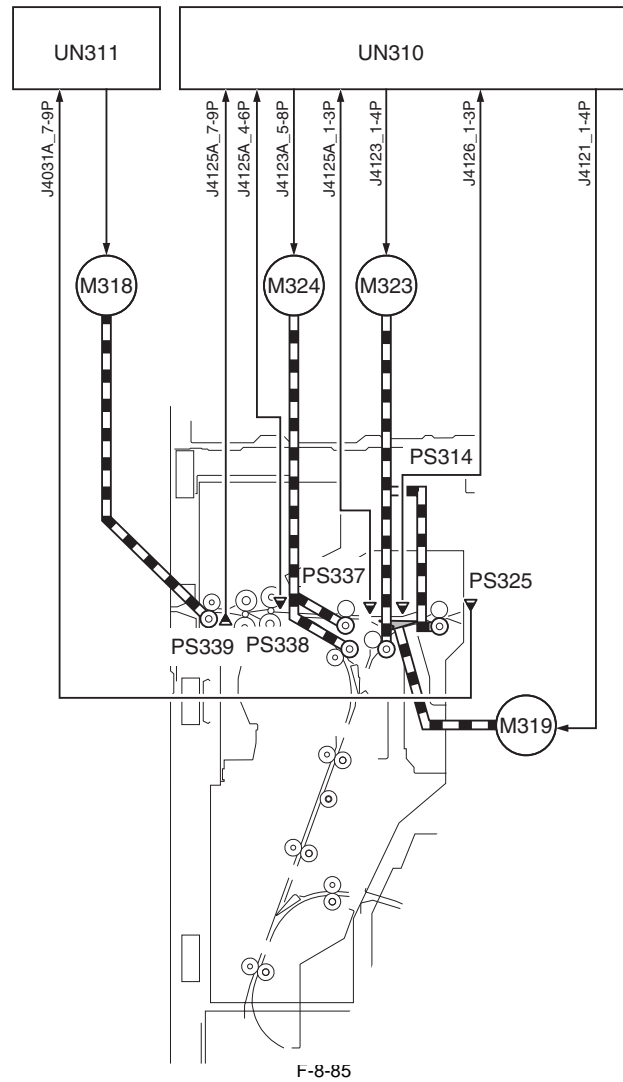
8.12.2 Delivery Control

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

Delivery Control

The machine employs the following 2 delivery methods: face-up delivery and face-down delivery.

The face-up delivery path and the face-down delivery path are switched by switching the delivery reverse flapper after a paper passes the merger path sensor (PS325).



8.12.3 Reverse Control

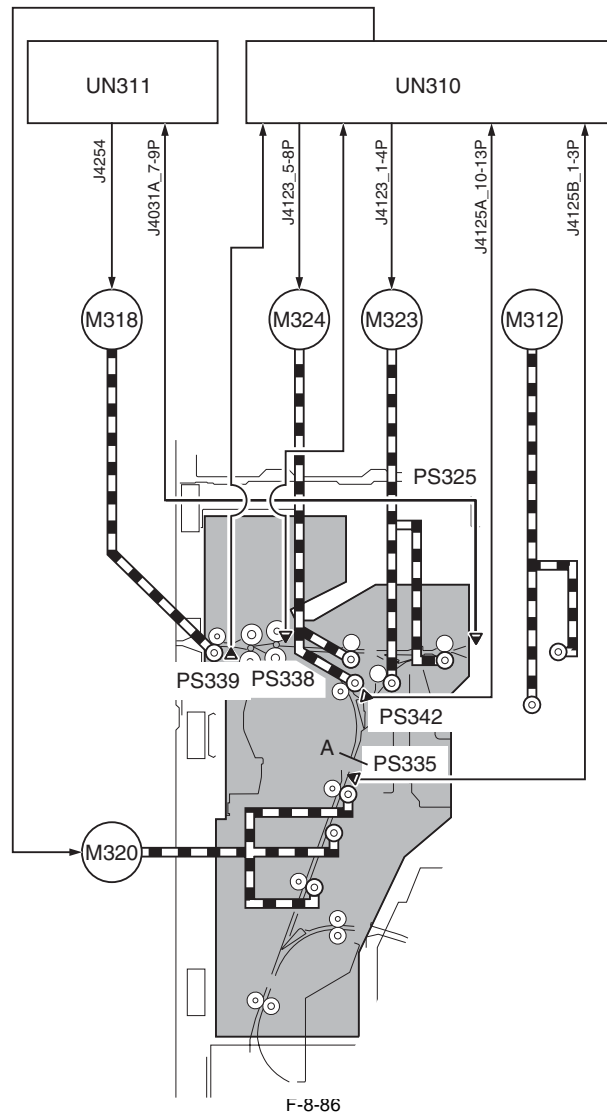
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

Reverse Control

In case of the face-down delivery, the reverse operation is executed at the reverse point [A] before delivering a paper.

When the leading edge of a paper reaches the delivery reverse sensor (PS335), the paper is fed for the specified distance and stopped. (The trailing edge is the reverse point.)

When it reaches the reverse point, rotate the delivery reverse motor (M320) in reverse and deliver the paper.



M312 Merger path feed motor
 M318 Delivery motor
 M320 Delivery reverse motor
 M323 Pre-delivery feed motor 1
 M324 Pre-delivery feed motor 2
 PS325 Merger path upper sensor
 PS335 Delivery reverse sensor
 PS338 Delivery sensor 2
 PS339 Delivery sensor 3
 PS342 Delivery reverse front sensor
 UN310 Reverse/external delivery driver PCB
 UN311 Duplexing feed driver PCB

8.12.4 Duplexing Reverse Control

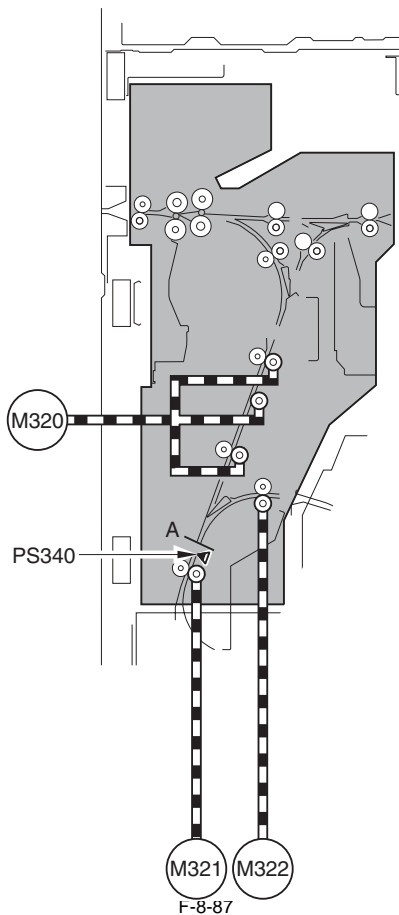
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

Duplexing Reverse Control

In case of feeding a paper to the duplexing assembly, reverse the paper at the duplexing reverse point [A].

When the leading edge of a paper reaches to the duplexing reverse sensor (PS340), the paper is fed for the specified distance and the delivery reverse motor (M320) is stopped. (The trailing edge is the reverse point).

If a paper is not present at the duplexing standby position 6 although it reaches to the reverse point (the duplexing standby position sensor 6 (PS347) is OFF), rotate the delivery reverse motor (M321) in reverse and deliver the paper.



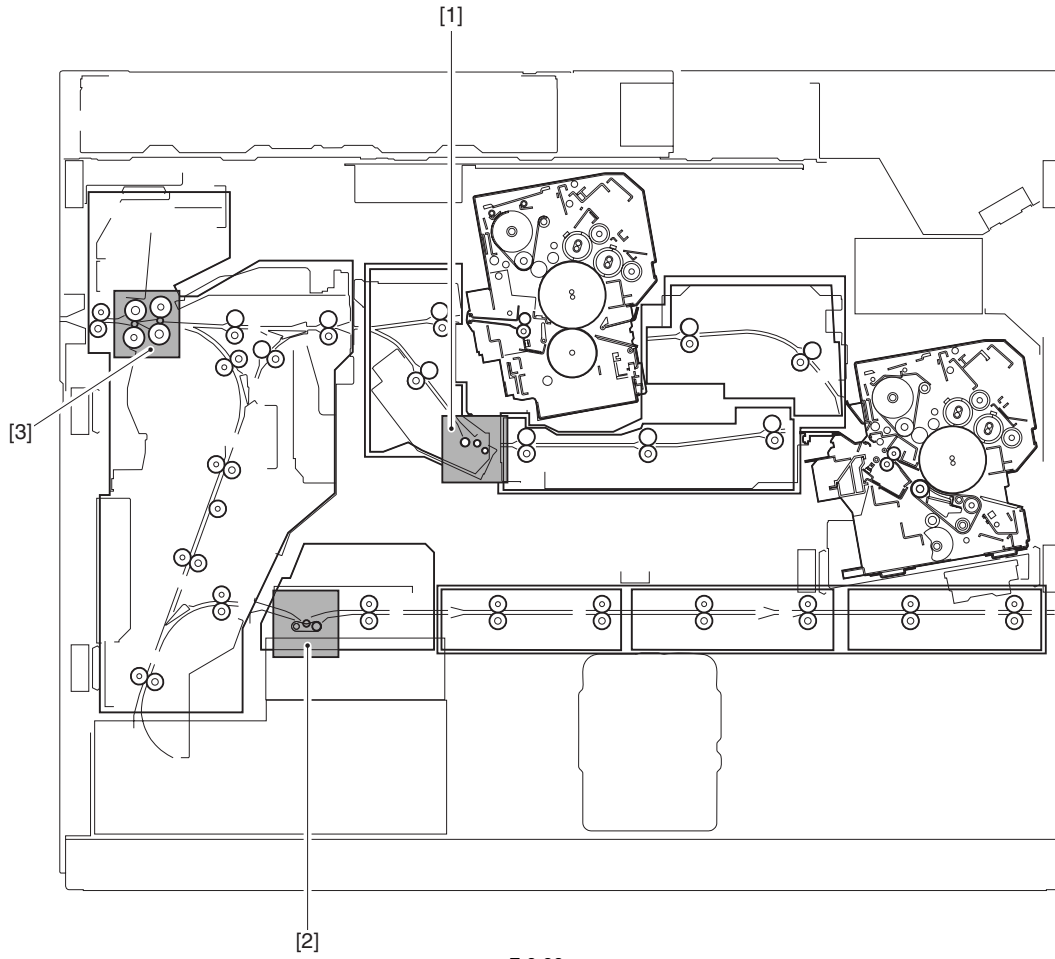
M320 Delivery reverse motor
 M321 Duplexing reverse motor
 M322 Duplexing reverse rear motor
 PS340 Duplexing reverse sensor

8.13 De-curler Control

8.13.1 Overview

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

There are 3 decurlers with this machine. Each decurler is controlled according to the media setting information (media type/size) and the video signal (image density) to remove curl of the paper.



- [1] Bypass decurler
- [2] Duplex decurler
- [3] Delivery decurler

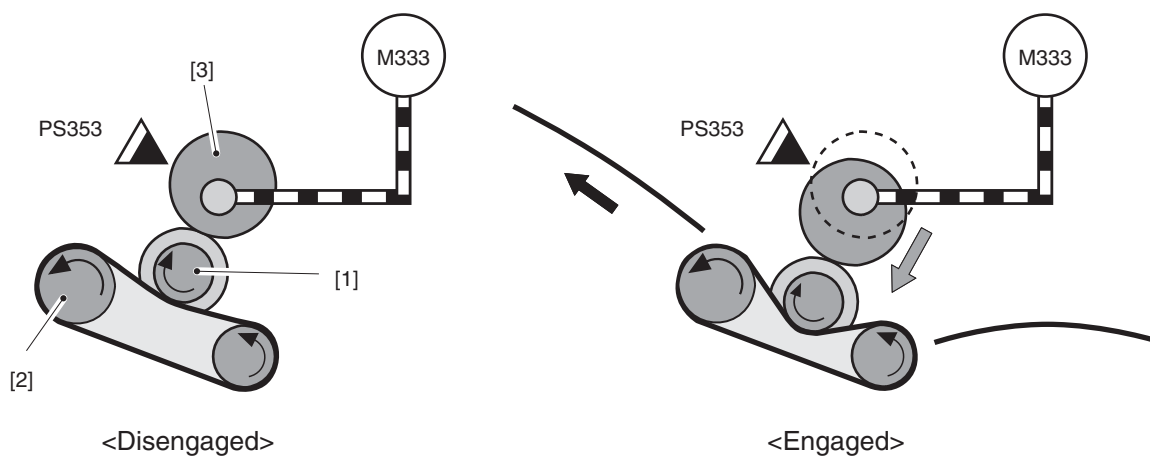
F-8-88

8.13.2 Bypass Decurler Control

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

The degree of curl at single fixing is made to be at the same level of the curl at tandem fixing.

There are 2 levels of the bypass decurler positions driven by the bypass decurler engage/disengage motor (M333): the position that the decurler is disengaged (HP) and the position that the decurler is engaged. The position is switched according to the media type, image density and media size. The switching operation of the decurler is executed at 20mm before the decurler.



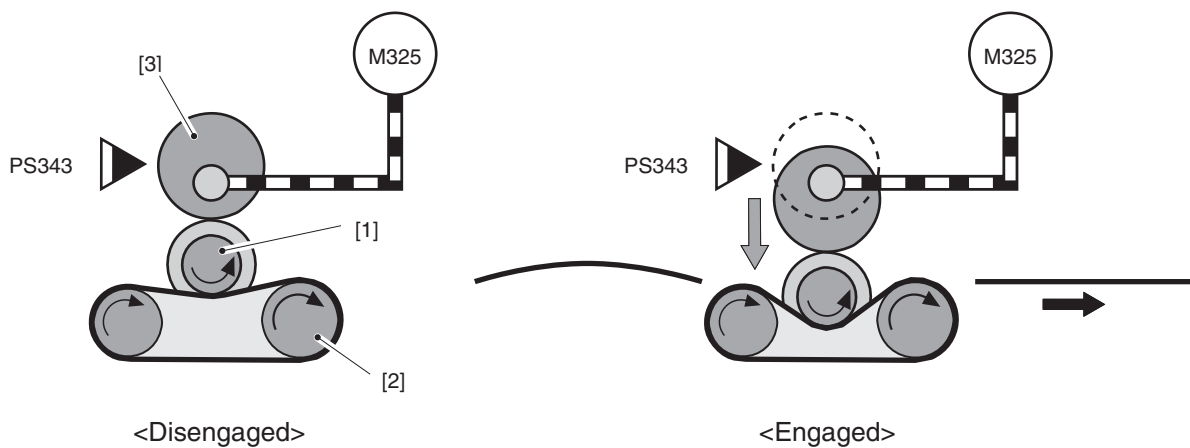
- [1] Bypass decurler upper roller
- [2] Bypass decurler drive roller
- [3] Cam

8.13.3 Duplexing Decurler Control

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

Paper curl is removed to make it constant for the advancement of the 2nd-side of the duplexing print into the primary fixing assembly.

There are 2 levels of the duplexing decurler positions driven by the duplexing decurler engage/disengage motor (M325): the position that the decurler is disengaged (HP) and the position that the decurler is engaged. The position is switched according to the media type, image density and media size. The switching operation of the decurler is executed at 20mm before the decurler.



- [1] Duplex decurler upper roller
- [2] Duplex decurler drive roller
- [3] Cam
- M325 Duplex decurler advancement adjusting motor
- PS343 Duplex decurler upper roller HP sensor

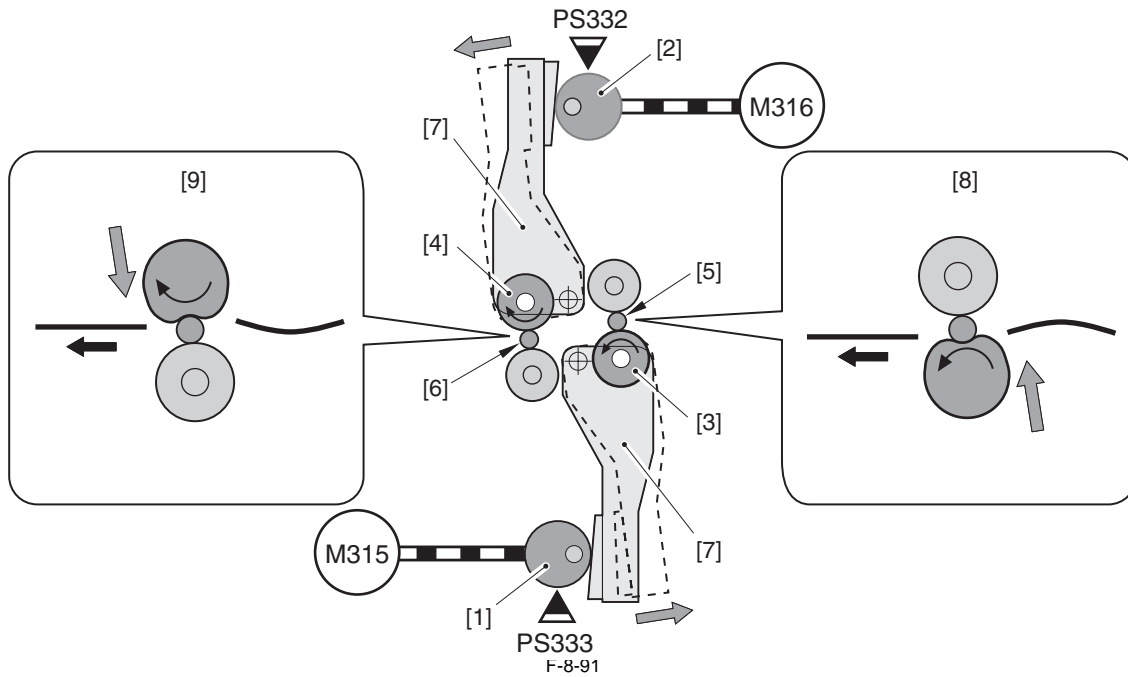
8.13.4 Delivery Decurler Control

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

This control is executed to reduce the stacking height of the delivered paper.

There are 2 types of decurlers: one for face-up delivery and the other for face-down delivery. The upper decurler is operating at face-up delivery and the lower decurler is operating at face-down delivery.

There are 5 levels of decurler pressure depending on image density and material.



- [1] Lower decurler adjustment cam 1
- [2] Upper decurler adjustment cam 2
- [3] Lower decurler adjustment roller 1
- [4] Upper decurler adjustment roller 2
- [5] Lower decurler drive roller
- [6] Upper decurler drive roller
- [7] Pressure plate
- [8] Lower decurler
- [9] Upper decurler

M315 Delivery decurler advancement adjusting motor 1

M316 Delivery decurler advancement adjusting motor 2

PS332 Delivery decurler HP sensor 1

PS333 Delivery decurler HP sensor 2

MEMO:

Decurler pressure can be switched in User Mode.

System Settings > Device Management Settings > Degree of Curl Adjustment

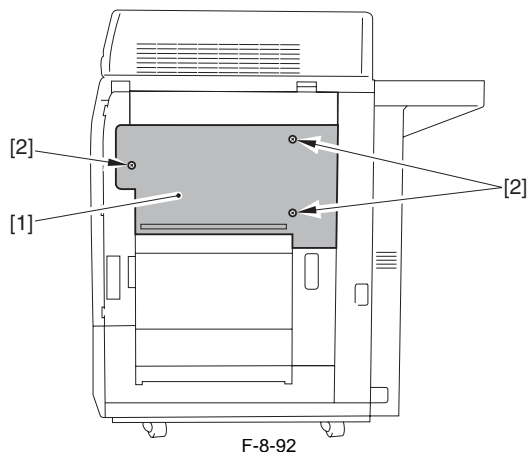
8.14 Parts Replacement Procedure

8.14.1 Vertical Path Unit

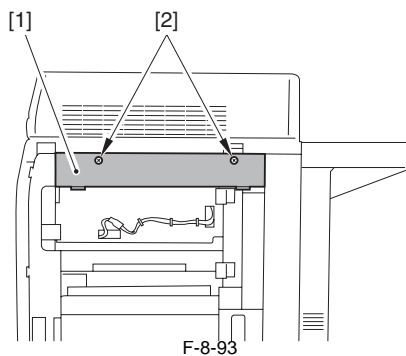
8.14.1.1 Removing vertical path unit

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

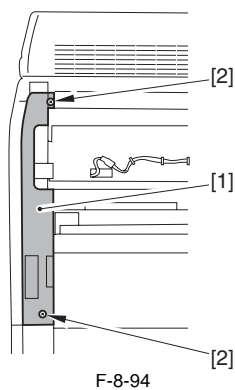
- 1) Detach the main station middle right cover [1].
- 3 screws [2]



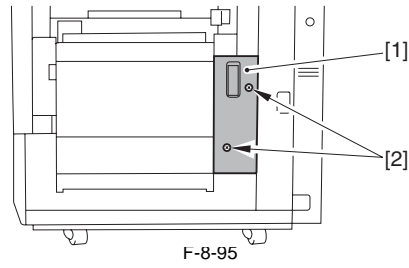
- 2) Detach the main station upper right cover [1].
- 2 screws [2]



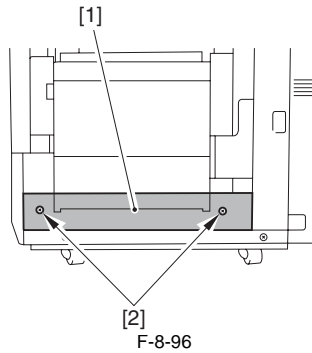
- 3) Detach the main station front right cover [1].
- 2 screws [2]



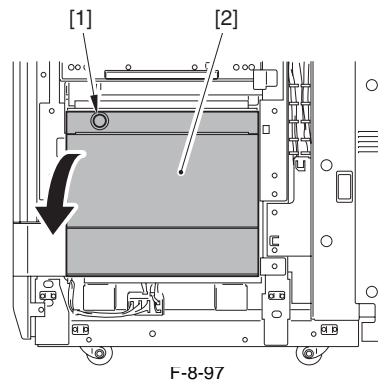
- 4) Detach the vertical path rear cover [1].
- 2 screws [2]



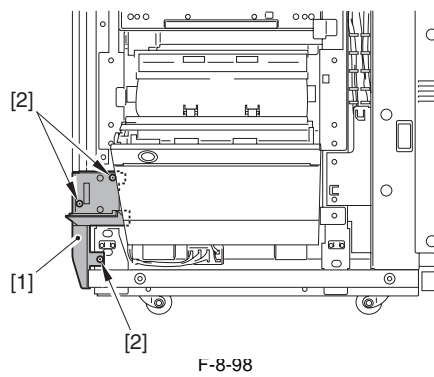
- 5) Detach the vertical path lower cover [1].
- 2 screws [2]



- 6) Press the button [1] to open the vertical path cover [2].

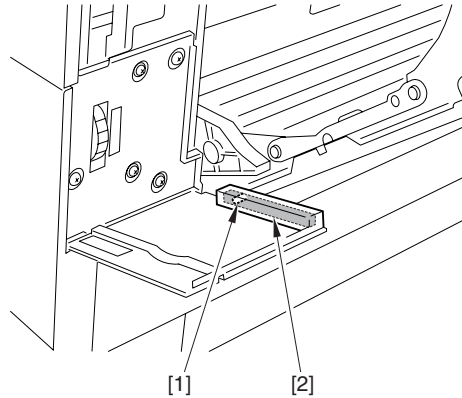


- 7) Open the vertical path front cover [1].
- 3 screws [2]

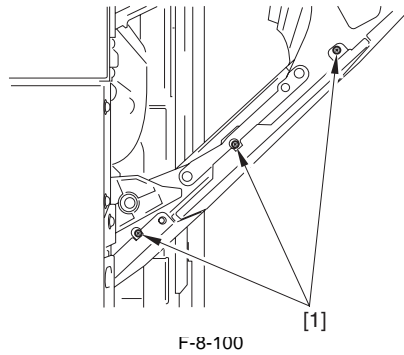


⚠ Points to Note Upon Attachment

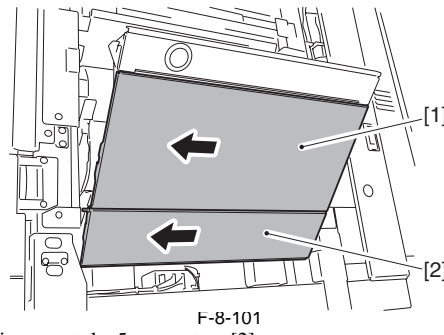
Be sure to put the vertical path cover pin [1] into the slot [2] of the vertical path front cover.



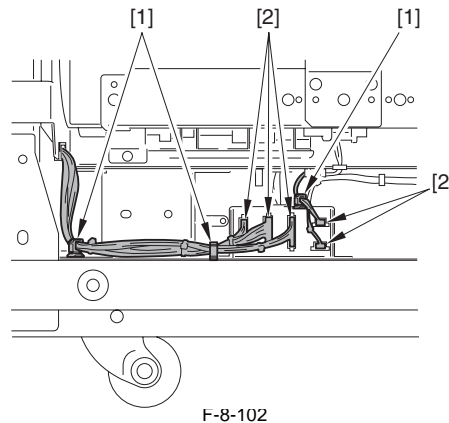
8) Remove the 3 screws [1] at the front side of the vertical path cover.



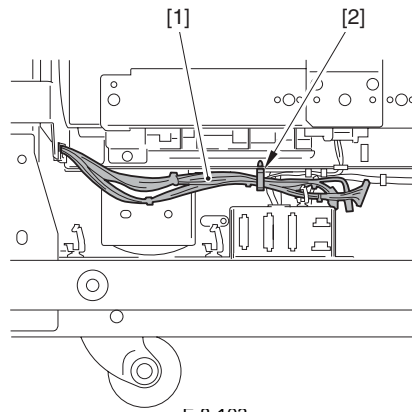
9) Move the vertical path cover (upper) [1] in the direction of the arrow, and then move the vertical path cover (lower) [2] in the same way.



10) Free the harness from the 3 wire saddles [1] and disconnect the 5 connectors [2].

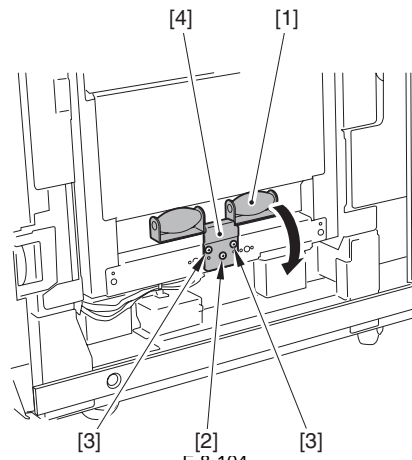


11) Secure the harness [1] (freed in the previous step) with the unused wire saddle [2] (temporarily tie the harness so that the harness will not be damaged when removing the vertical path unit).



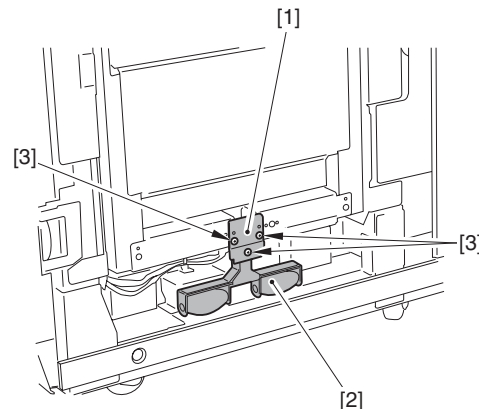
F-8-103

12) Bring down the wheel [1].
- 1 screw [2] (not fixing)
- 2 screws [3]
- 1 wheel stopper [4]



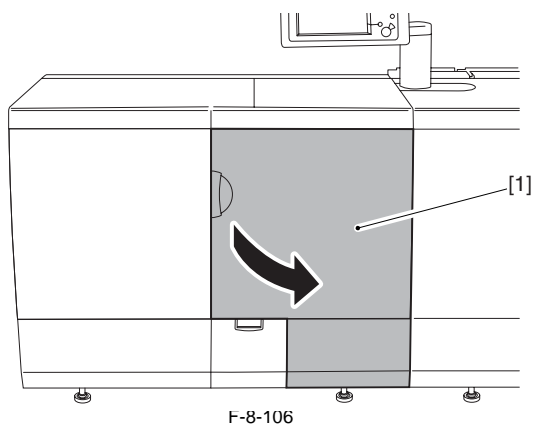
F-8-104

13) Attach the wheel stopper [1] reverse to secure the wheel [2].
- 3 screws [3] (use screws removed in the previous step)

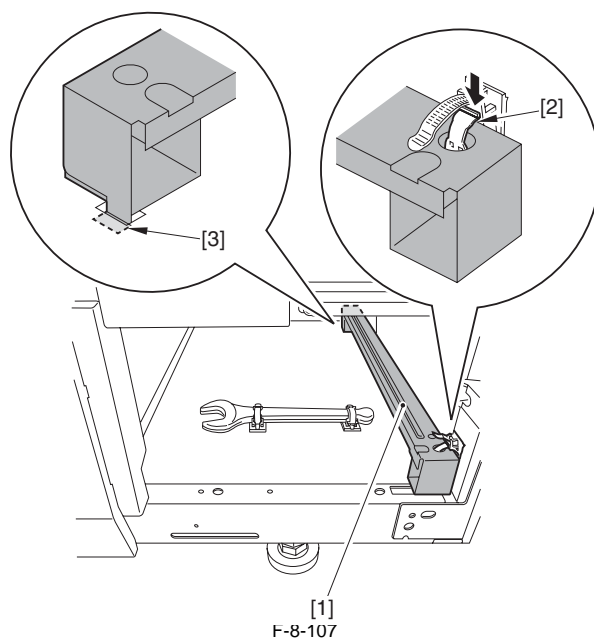


F-8-105

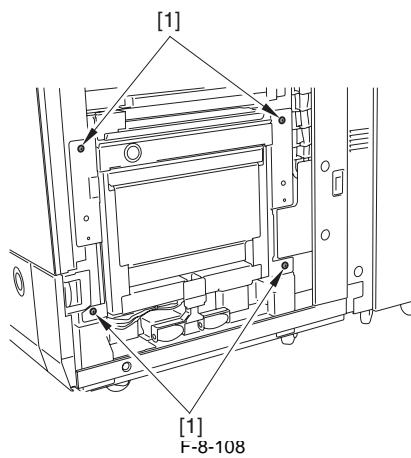
14) Open the sub station front right door.



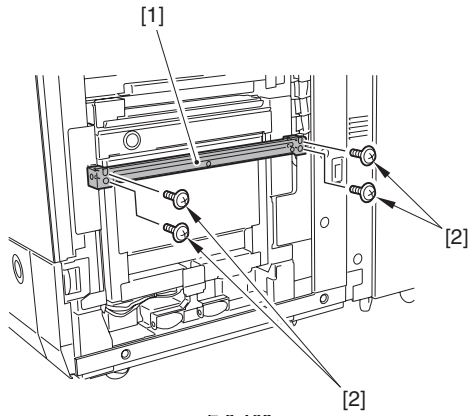
15) Remove the vertical path handle [1].
- 1 wire saddle [2]
- 1 claw [3]



16) Remove the 4 screws [1].

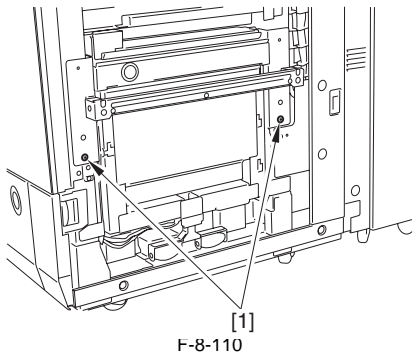


- 17) Attach the vertical path handle [1].
 - 4 screws [2] (use screws removed in the previous step)



F-8-109

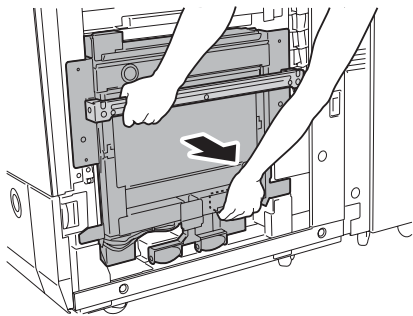
- 18) Remove the 2 screws [1].



F-8-110

- 19) Hold the vertical path handle [1] and the handgrip [2] to pull the vertical path unit [3] toward the front to remove.

⚠
 Be careful because it is heavy.



F-8-111

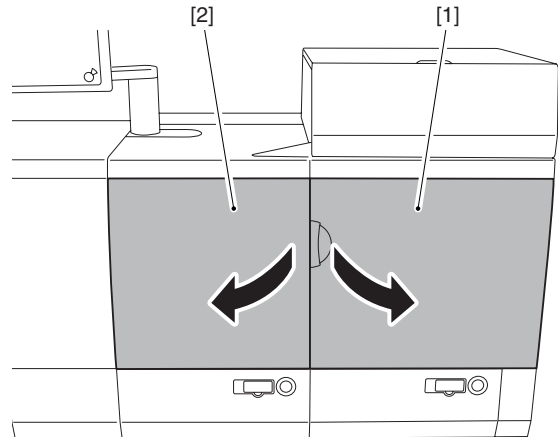
8.14.2 Deck Unit

8.14.2.1 Removing Deck Unit

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

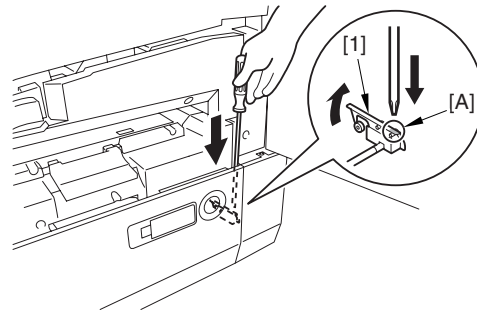
MEMO:
 The following steps are for removing the main station right deck unit.
 The same procedure applies for removing the main station left deck unit.

- 1) Open the main station right door [1] and the main station left door [2].



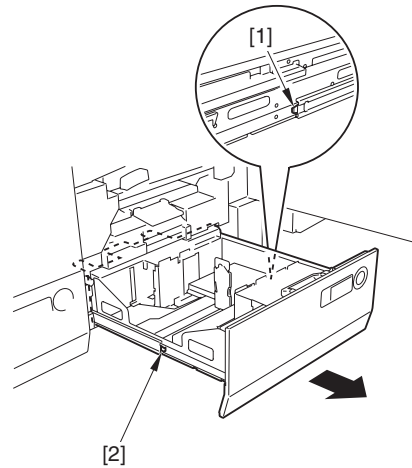
F-8-112

- 2) Press [A] area of the latch [1] using a screwdriver to open the deck.



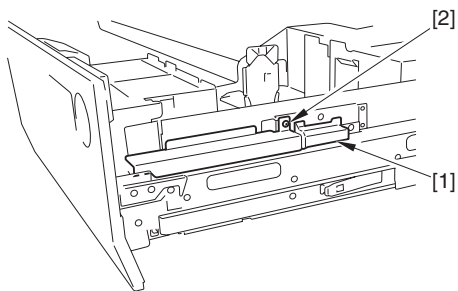
F-8-113

- 3) Push the leaf spring [1] to pull out the deck unit [2] toward the front.



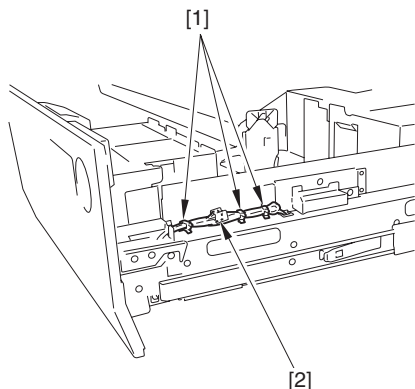
F-8-114

- 4) Detach the connector cover [1].
 - 1 screw [2]



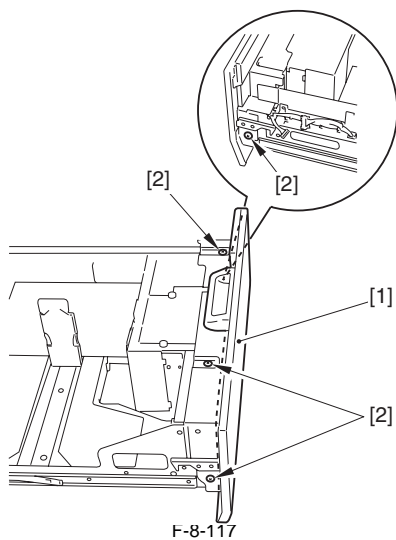
F-8-115

5) Remove the 3 wire saddles [1] and disconnect the connector [2].

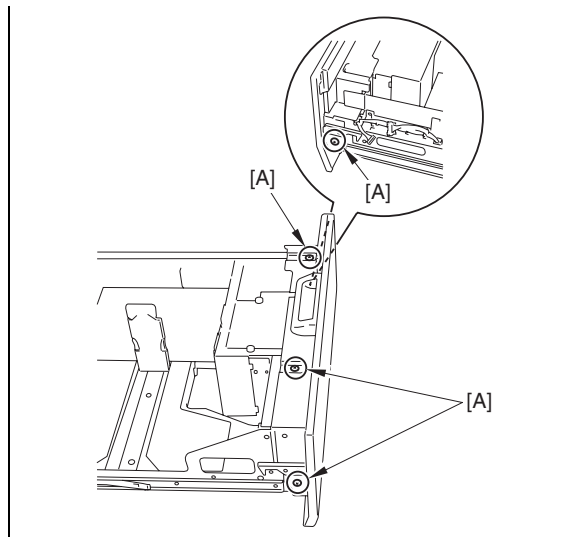


F-8-116

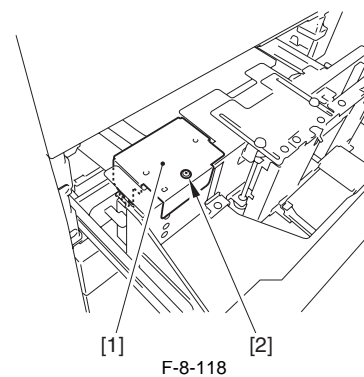
6) Detach the front cover [1].
- 4 screws [2]



F-8-117

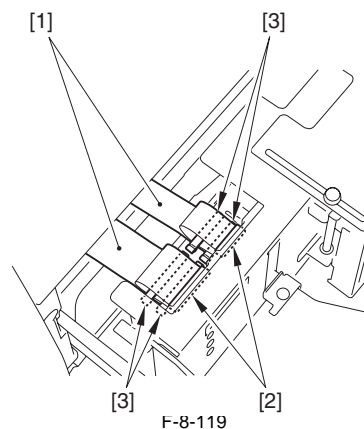


7) Detach the connector cover [1].
- 1 screw [2]



F-8-118

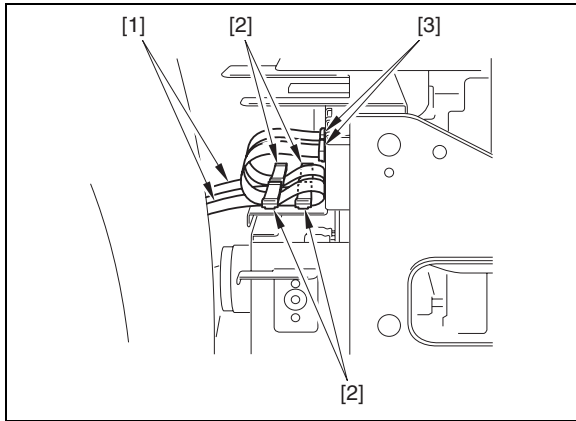
8) Disconnect the 2 flat cables [1] from the connectors [2].
9) Remove the 4 cable clips [3].



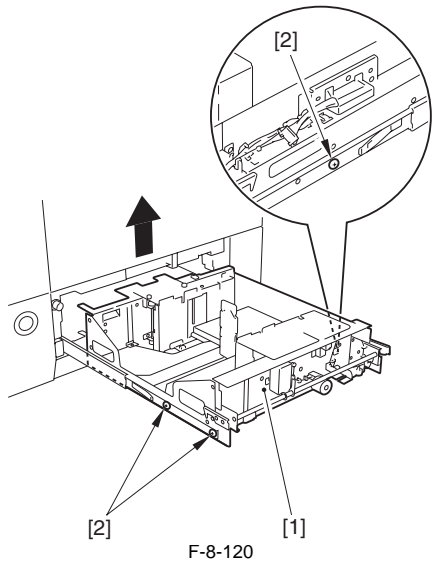
F-8-119

⚠ Points to Note Upon Attachment
When removing the front cover, be sure to draw a marking line on the 4 screws [A] to fit the attaching position with the front cover.

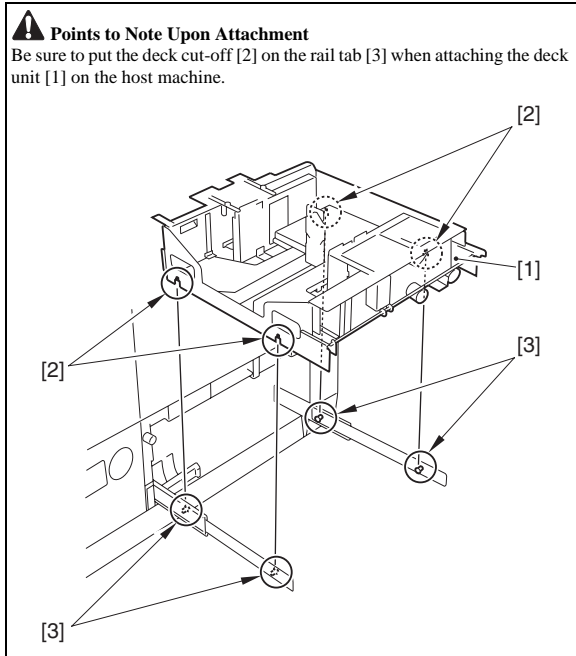
⚠ Points to Note Upon Attachment
Be sure to fasten the flat cables [1] with the cable clips [2] to connect to the connectors [3] as shown in the figure below.



10) Remove the 3 screws [2] to pull the deck unit [1] up in the direction of the arrow to remove.



F-8-120

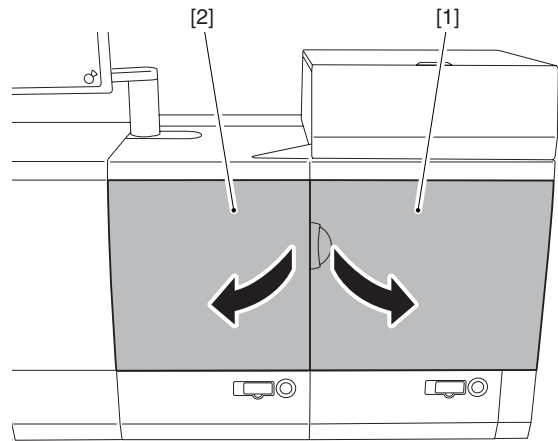


8.14.3 Cassette Pickup Unit

8.14.3.1 Removing Right/Left Pickup Deck

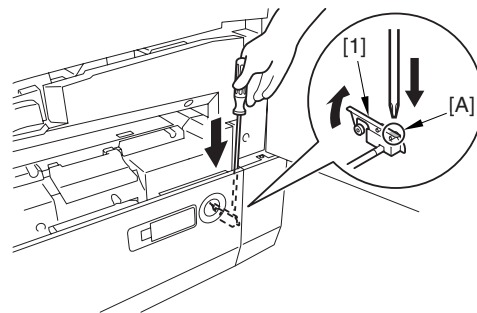
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

1) Open the main station front right door [1] fully, and then the main station front left door [2] as well.



F-8-121

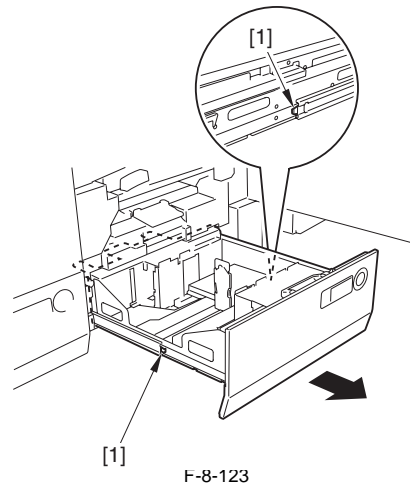
2) Press [A] area of the latch [1] using a screwdriver to open the deck.



F-8-122

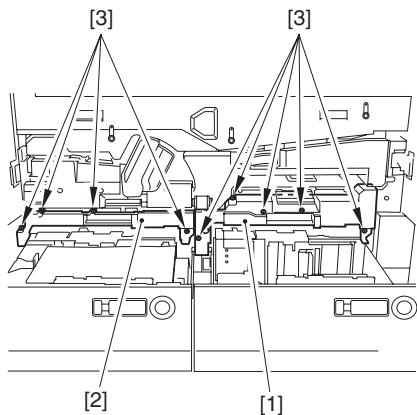
3) Pull out the deck until it stops.

4) Disengage the 2 leaf springs [2] to slide out the deck further.



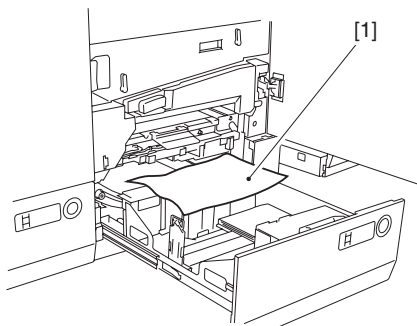
F-8-123

- 5) Remove the 9 screws [3] to detach the cover at the upper side of the deck.
 In case of the right deck, detach the lower feed cover [1].
 In case of the left deck, detach the main station duplexing feed cover [2].



F-8-124

- 6) Place A3 paper [1] on the side guide plate at the rear side of the deck.

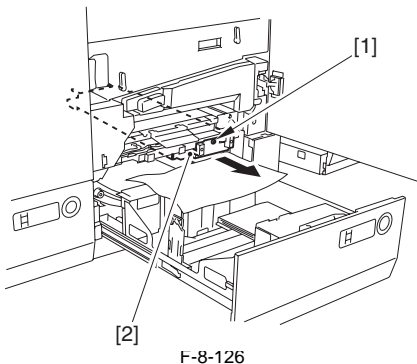


F-8-125



Be sure to place paper otherwise the pickup feed belt may be damaged when pulling out the pickup unit.

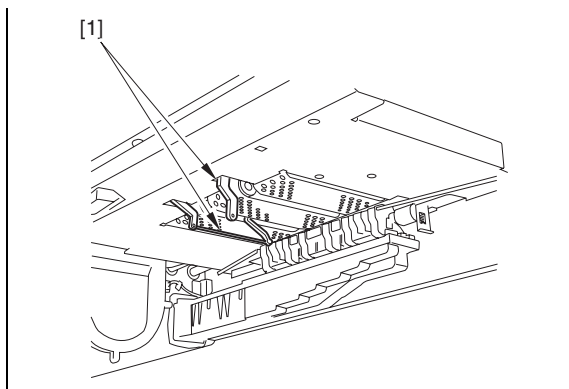
- 7) Remove the screw [1] and pull out the pickup unit [2] slowly.



F-8-126

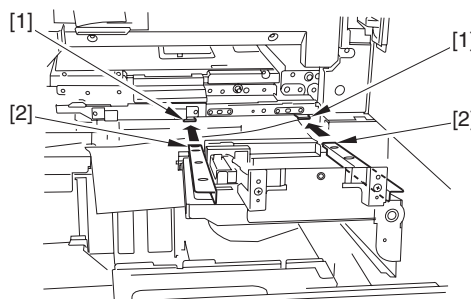


Be sure to pull out the pickup unit slowly. If pulling it out hastily, the paper surface flag [1] may be damaged.

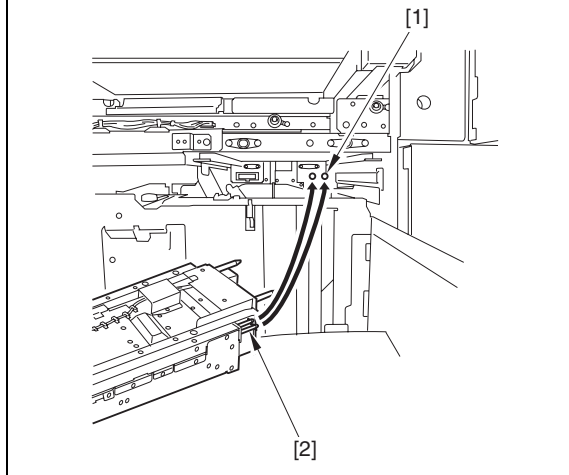


Points to Note Upon Attachment

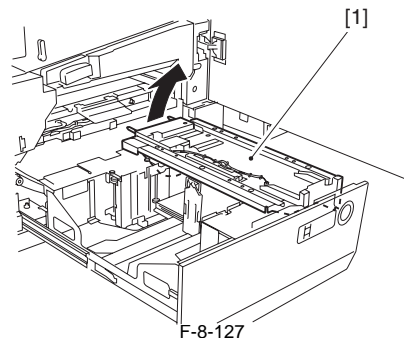
- Be sure to place A3 paper on the side guide plate at the rear of the deck.
- Be sure to fit the rail [2] of the pickup unit to the rail guide [1] of the host machine to push it in.



- Be sure to push in the pickup unit slowly. If pushing it hastily, the coupling [1] at the host machine may be damaged by the drive shaft [2] of the pickup unit.



- 8) Remove the pickup unit [1] as if lifting its rear side up.



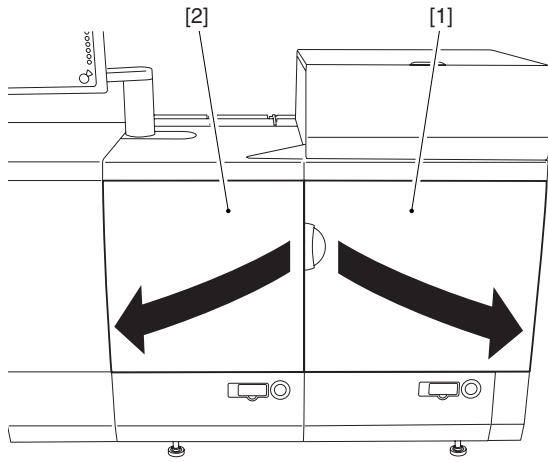
F-8-127

8.14.4 Cross-Feed Roller

8.14.4.1 Removing Cross-Feed Roller

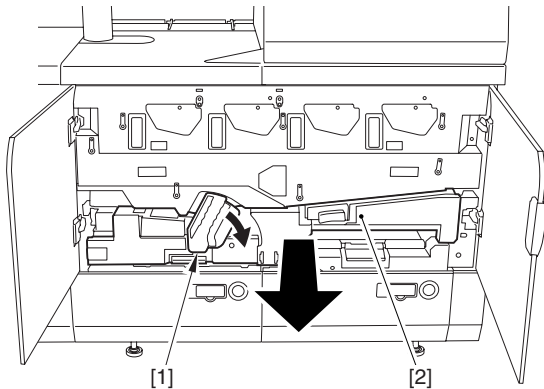
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- 1) Open the right front cover [1], and the left front cover [2] of the main station fully in order.



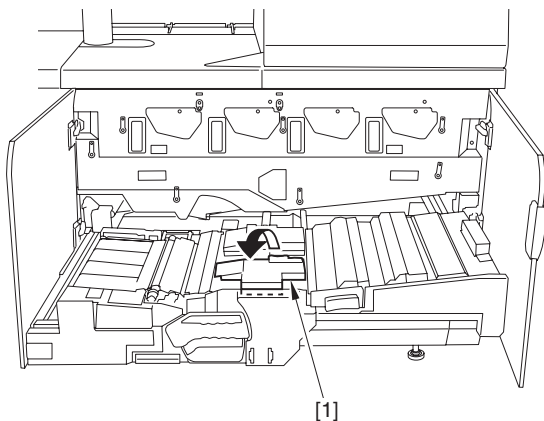
F-8-128

- 2) Move the lever [1] in the direction shown by the arrow, and then grip the lever [1] to slide the feeding unit [2] fully out.



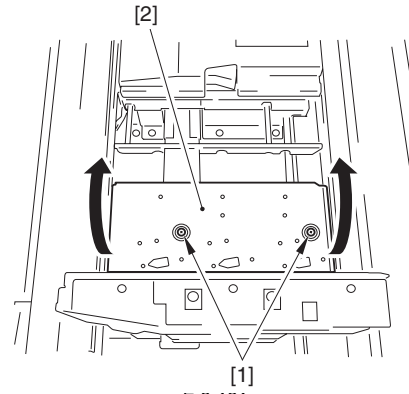
F-8-129

- 3) Open the cross-feed roller upper unit [1].



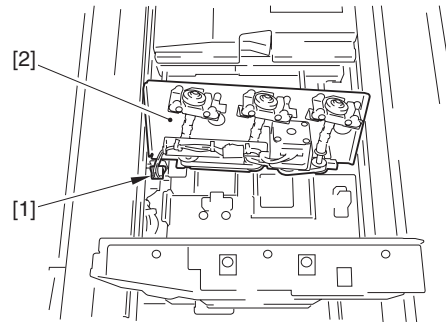
F-8-130

- 4) Remove the 2 screws [1] and get the cross feeding unit [2] upright.



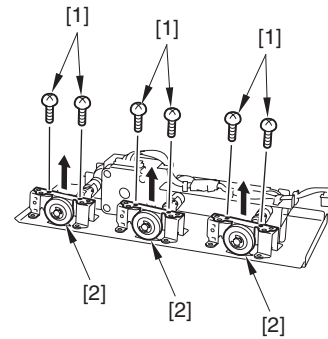
F-8-131

- 5) Remove the connector [1] and remove the cross feeding unit [2].



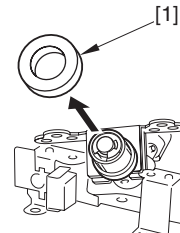
F-8-132

- 6) Remove the 6 screws [1] and space the 3 cross feeding roller shaft units [2] from the cross feeding unit.



F-8-133

- 7) Remove the cross feeding roller [1] from each cross feeding roller shaft unit.

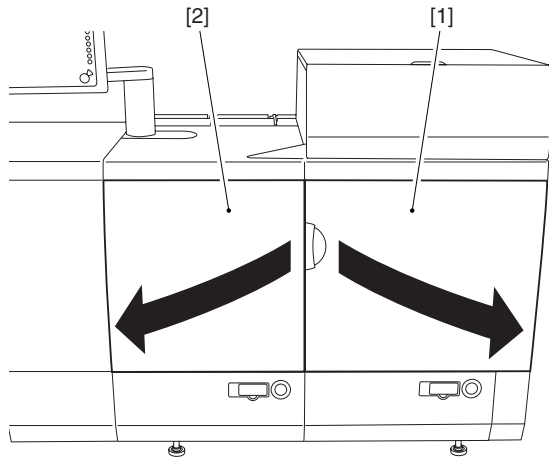


F-8-134

8.14.4.2 Removing Cross-Feed Roller Cleaning Member

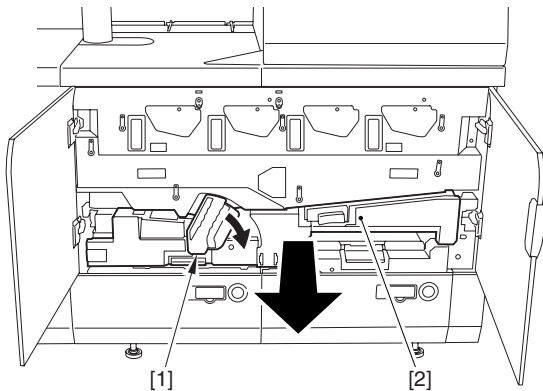
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- 1) Open the right front cover [1], and the left front cover [2] of the main station fully in order.



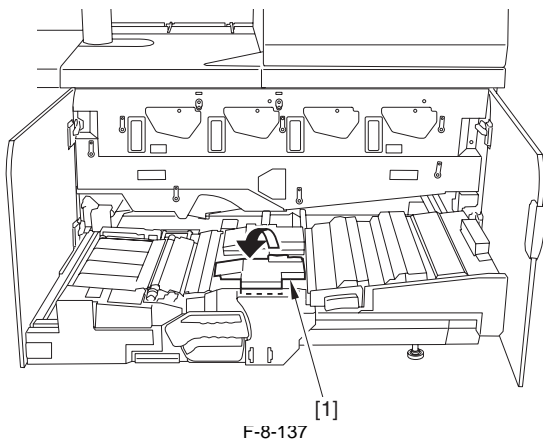
F-8-135

2) Move the lever [1] in the direction shown by the arrow, and then grip the lever [1] to slide the feeding unit [2] fully out.



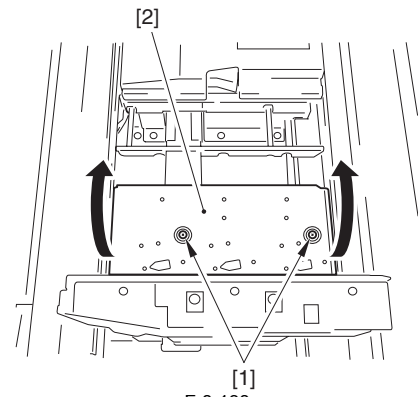
F-8-136

3) Open the cross-feed roller upper unit [1].



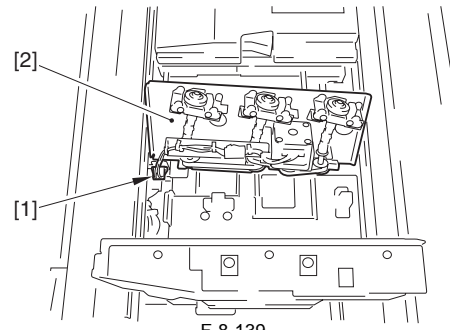
F-8-137

4) Remove the 2 screws [1] and get the cross feeding unit [2] upright.



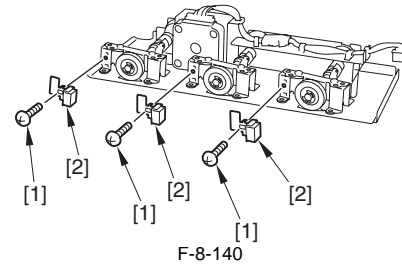
F-8-138

5) Remove the connector [1] and remove the cross feeding unit [2].



F-8-139

6) Remove the 3 screws [1] and remove the 3 cross-feed roller cleaning members [2].



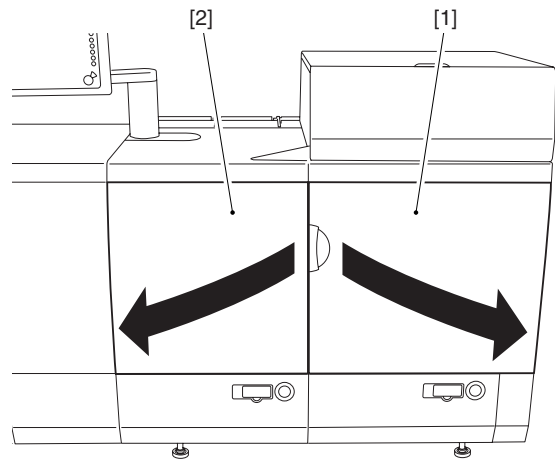
F-8-140

8.14.5 Separation Pad

8.14.5.1 Removing Deck Separation Pad

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

1) Open fully the front right cover [1], and then the front left cover [2] of main station.

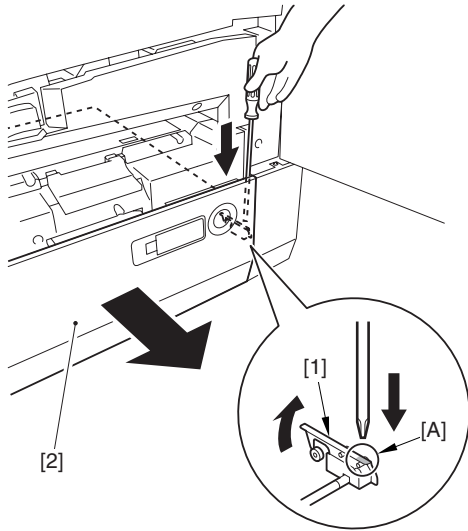


F-8-141

MEMO:

The following removing procedure is for the main station right paper deck. Perform the same step for the left paper deck.

- 2) Insert a screwdriver into the gap between the paper deck and the machine, push the [A] area of the latch [1] to release the paper deck [2] and pull it out fully forward.



F-8-142

- 3) Remove the paper in the paper deck.

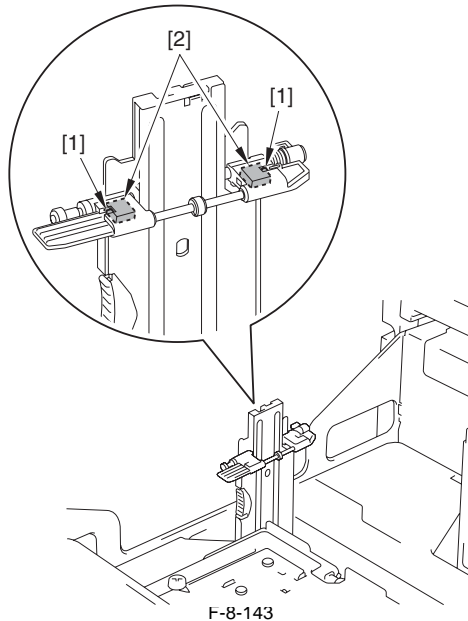
MEMO:

In the case of the left paper deck, perform the subsequent operations with the main station left cover closed.

- 4) Push the claw [1] with a screwdriver, and detach the 2 deck separation pads [2].



Be careful not to break the claw [1] of the deck separation pad.



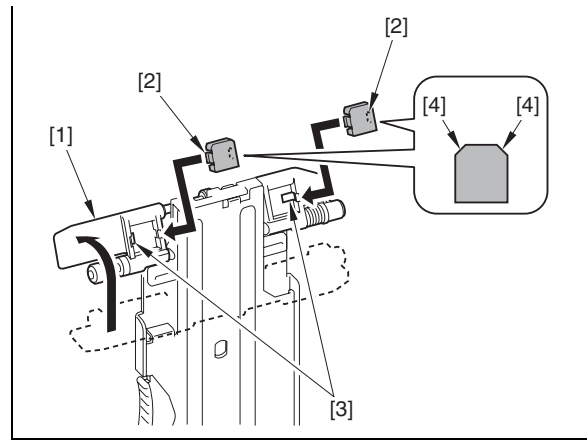
F-8-143

Attaching Deck Separation Pad

Move the paper retaining plate [1] of the trailing edge guide plate in the direction of the arrow, fit the claw [2] of the deck separation pad into the hole [3] of the mount and perform attachment.



- Be sure to let the cut-off [4] of the separation pad upward at attachment.
- Be careful not to break the claw of the separation pad.



8.14.5.2 Removing the POD Deck Separation Pad

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

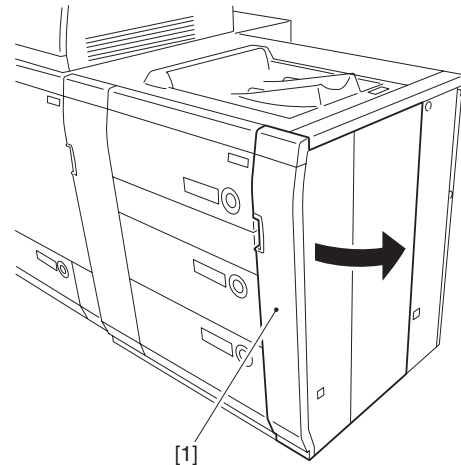
MEMO:

The following removing procedure is for the POD deck - middle deck paper deck. Perform the same step for the upper, lower paper decks and the upper, middle, lower paper decks of the secondary POD deck.

- 1) Open the front right cover [1].

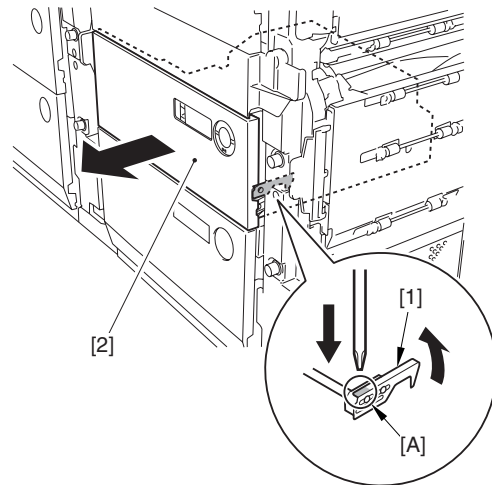
MEMO:

When the secondary POD deck is connected, open 'the secondary path cover' in the secondary POD deck.



F-8-144

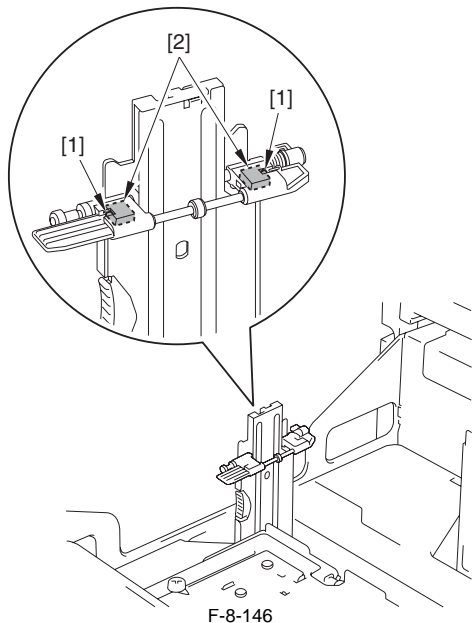
- 2) Push the [A] area of the latch [1] with a screwdriver to release the paper deck [2], and pull it out fully forward.



F-8-145

- 3) Remove the paper in the paper deck.
- 4) Push the claw [1] with a screwdriver, and detach the 2 deck separation pads [2].

⚠
Be careful not to break the claw [1] of the deck separation pad.

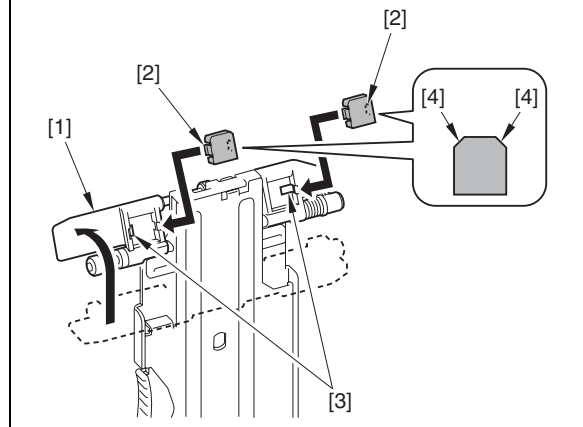


F-8-146

Attaching Deck Separation Pad

Move the paper retaining plate [1] of the trailing edge guide plate in the direction of the arrow, fit the claw [2] of the deck separation pad into the hole [3] of the mount and perform attachment.

- ⚠**
- Be sure to let the cut-off [4] of the separation pad upward at attachment.
 - Be careful not to break the claw of the separation pad.

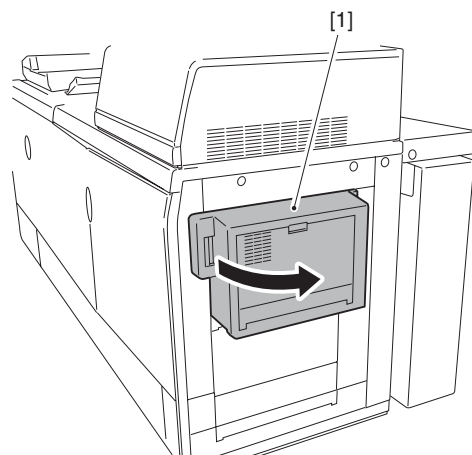


8.14.6 Manual Feed Roller

8.14.6.1 Removing the Manual Feed Roller

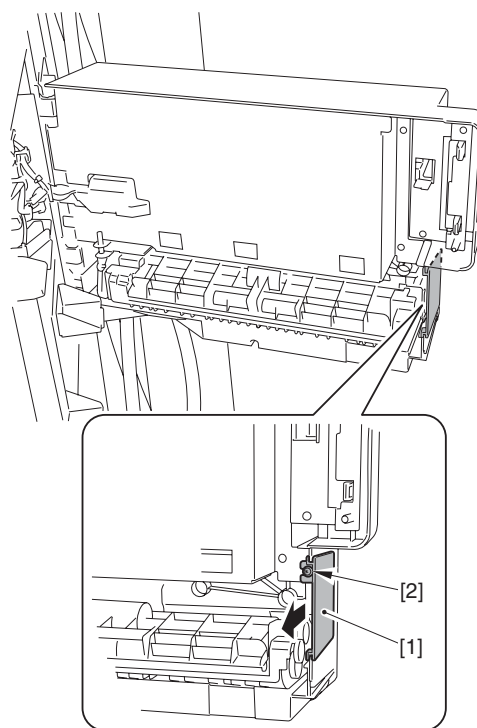
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- 1) Open the manual feed unit.



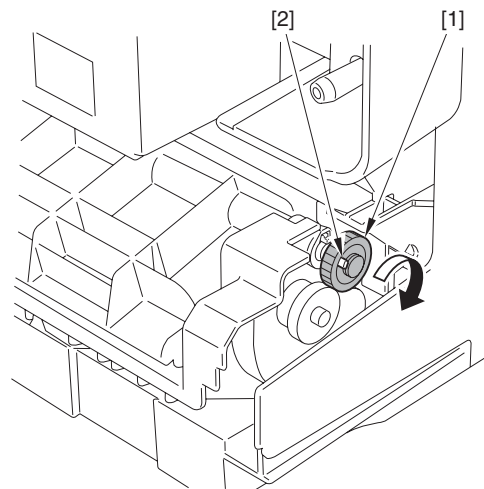
F-8-147

- 2) Detach the manual feed small cover [1].
- 1 screw [2]



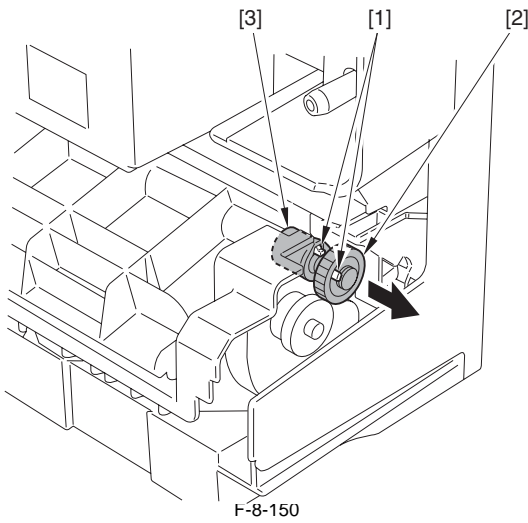
F-8-148

- 3) Rotate the gear [1] in the direction of the arrow and rotate the claw [2] to the position shown in the following figure.

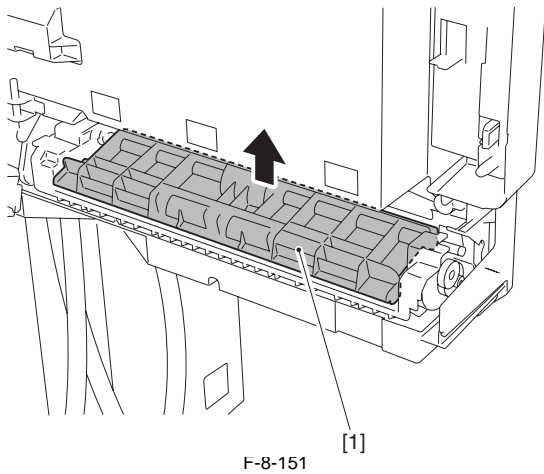


F-8-149

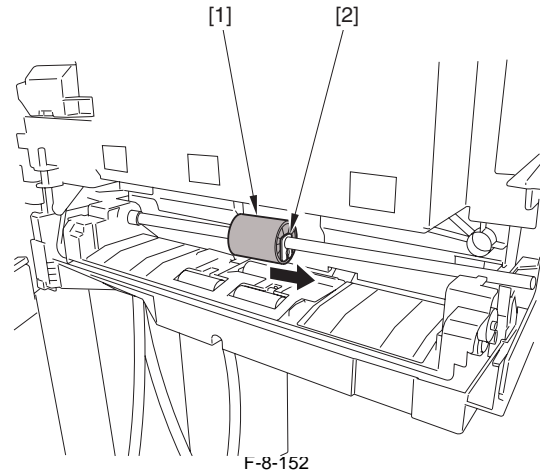
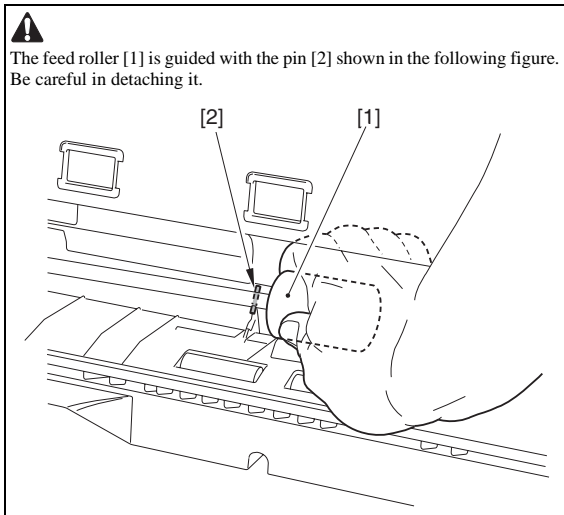
4) Free the 2 claws [1] and detach the gear [2] and the bearing [3].



5) Detach the feed upper cover [1].



6) Pull out the feed roller [1].
- 1 plastic ring [2]



8.14.7 Manual Feed Separation Roller

8.14.7.1 Preparation for Removing the Manual Separation Roller

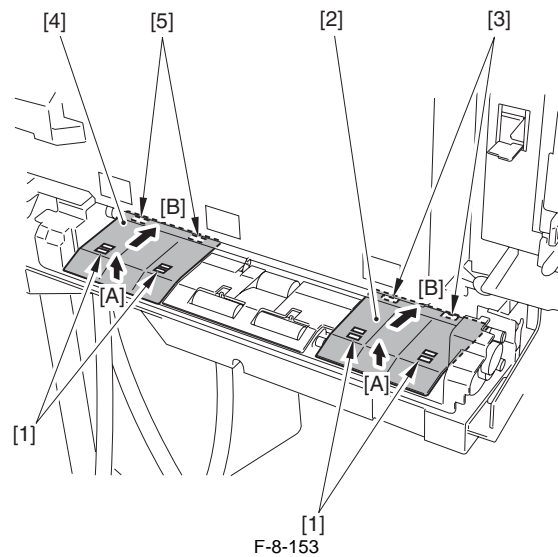
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

1) Detach the Removing the Manual Separation Roller. (page 8-91)Reference[Removing the Manual Feed Roller]

8.14.7.2 Removing the Manual Separation Roller

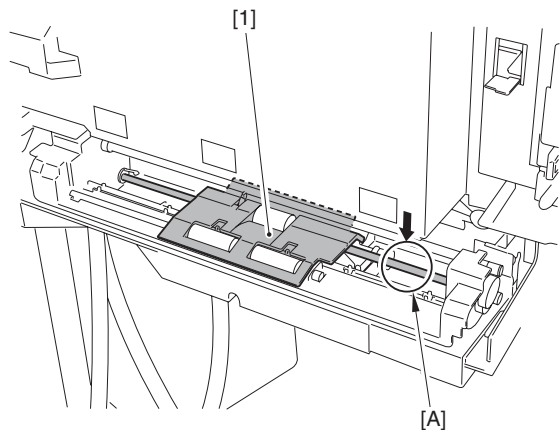
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- 1) Lift the paper guide and free the hook [1] in the direction of the arrow [A].
- 2) Move the paper guide (front) [2] in the direction of the arrow [B] to free the claw [3] and detach the guide.
- 3) Move the paper guide (rear) [4] in the direction of the arrow [B] to free the claw [5] and detach the guide.



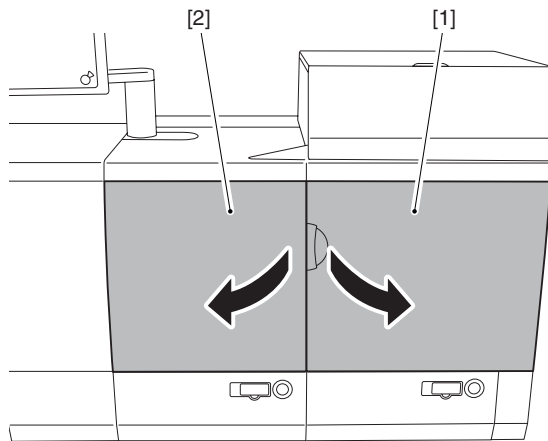
4) Detach the paper guide (center) [1] in the same way as step 2.

MEMO:
Pushing the separation roller shaft [A] makes detaching/attaching the paper guide (center) easier.



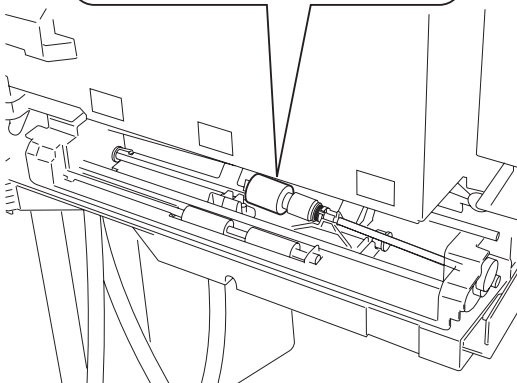
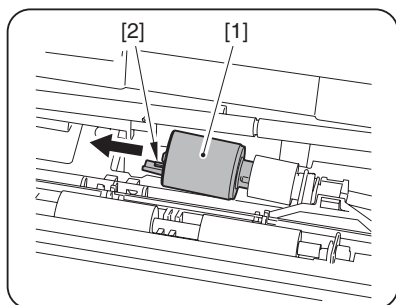
F-8-154

5) While freeing the claw [2] of the separation roller [1], detach the separation roller [1] in the direction of the arrow.

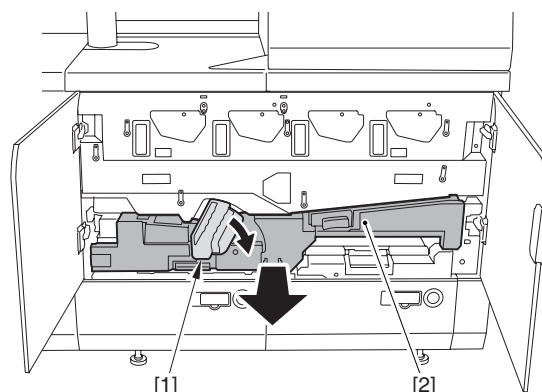


F-8-156

2) Shift the lever (B-E1) [1] in the direction of the arrow, and hold the lever (B-E1) [1] and pull the feed assembly [2] until it stops.

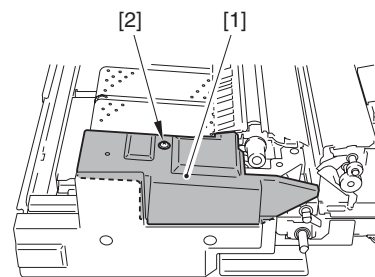


F-8-155



F-8-157

3) Detach the pre-fixing feed upper cover [1].
- 1 screw [2]



F-8-158

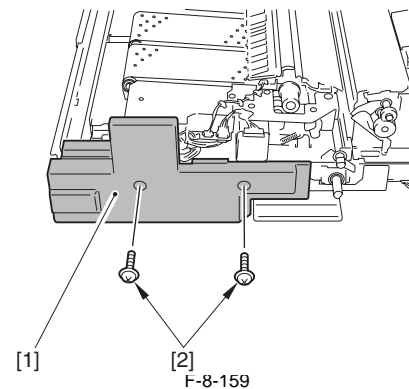
4) Detach the pre-fixing feed lower cover [1].
- 2 screws [2]

8.14.8 Pre-Fixing Feeding Unit

8.14.8.1 Removing the Pre-Fixing Feed Unit 1

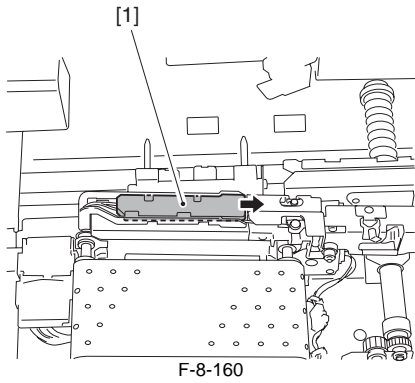
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

1) Open the main station front right cover [1], and the main station front left cover [2].



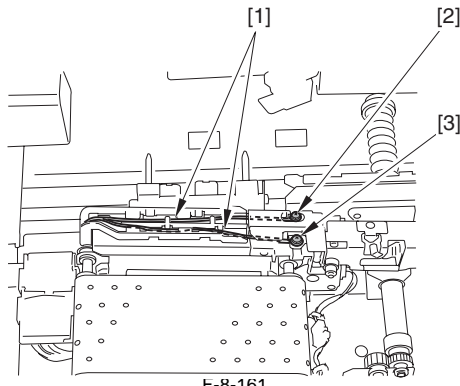
F-8-159

5) Detach the harness cover [1] in the direction of the arrow.



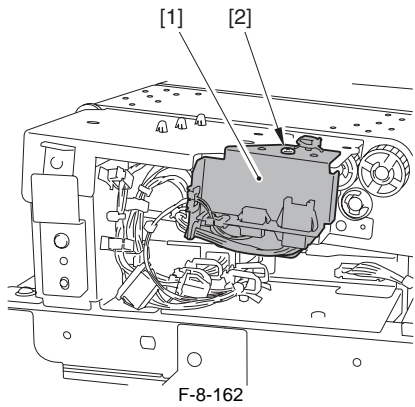
F-8-160

- 6) Free the harness [1] from the harness guide.
 - 1 screw (M3) [2]
 - 1 screw (M4) [3]



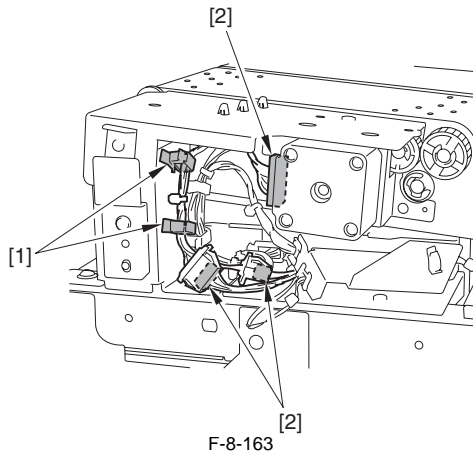
F-8-161

- 7) Detach the harness support plate [1] (with the harness connected).
 - 1 screw [2]



F-8-162

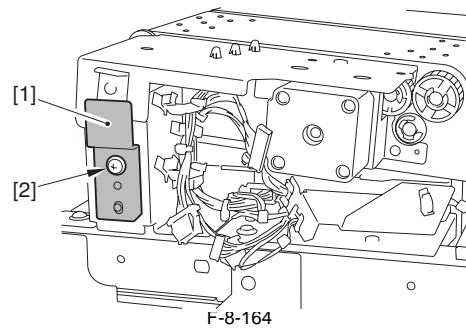
- 8) Free the harness from the 2 wire saddles [1] and disconnect the 3 connectors [2].



F-8-163

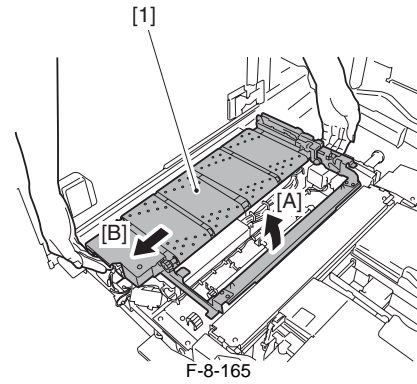
- 9) Remove the leaf spring [1].

- 1 screw [2]

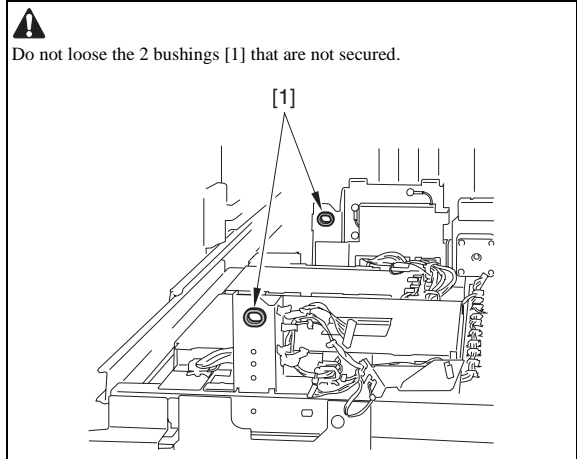


F-8-164

- 10) Remove the pre-fixing feed unit 1 [1] in the direction of [A] and then [B].



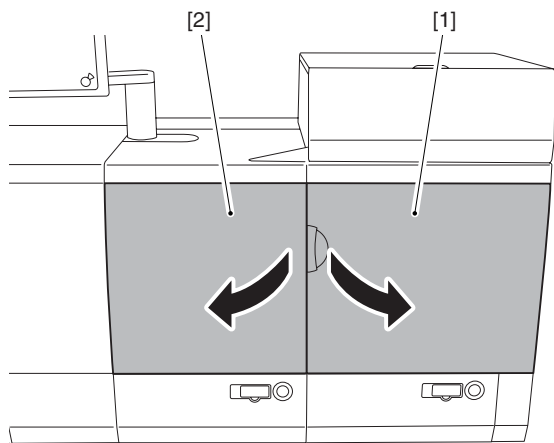
F-8-165



8.14.8.2 Removing the Pre-Fixing Feed Unit 2

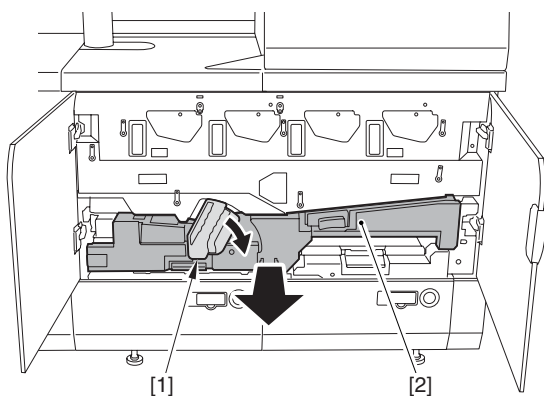
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- 1) Open the main station front right cover [1], and the main station front left cover [2].



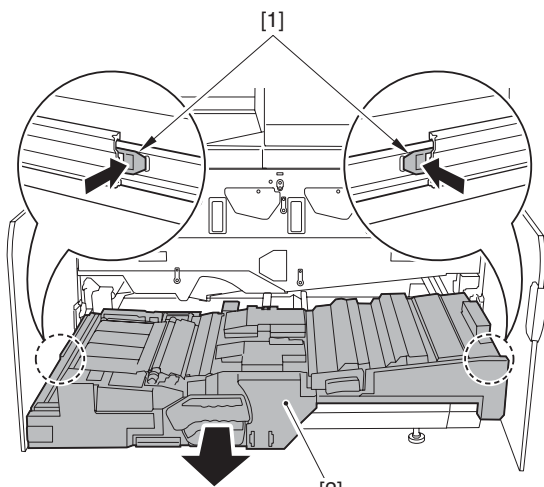
F-8-166

2) Shift the lever (B-E1) [1] in the direction of the arrow, and hold the lever (B-E1) [1] and pull the feed assembly [2] until it stops.



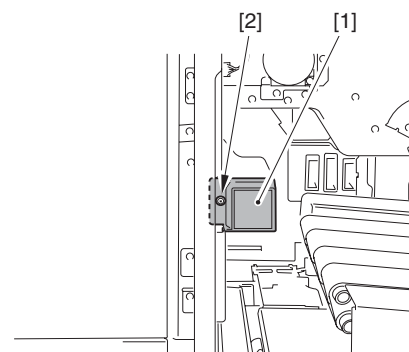
F-8-167

3) Release the 2 leaf springs [1] and pull the feed assembly [2] further more.



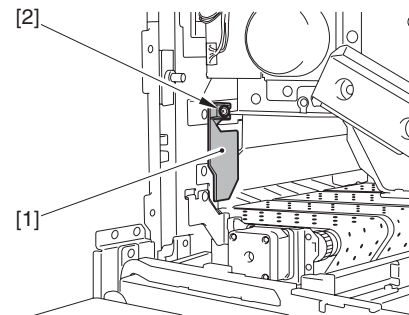
F-8-168

4) Detach the pre-fixing feed left cover [1].
- 1 screw [2]



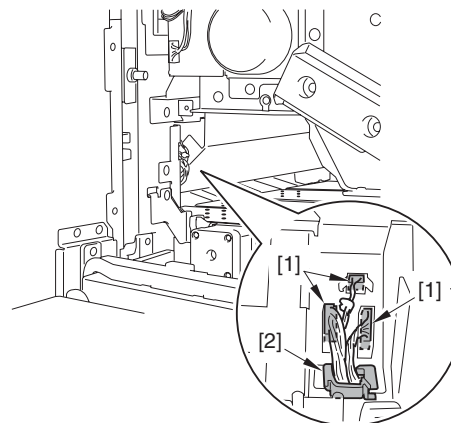
F-8-169

5) Detach the connector cover [1].
- 1 screw [2]



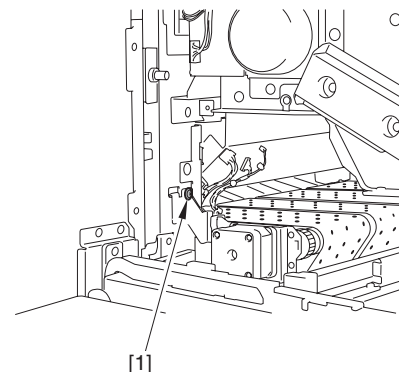
F-8-170

6) Disconnect the 3 connectors [1] and free the harness from the edge saddle [2].



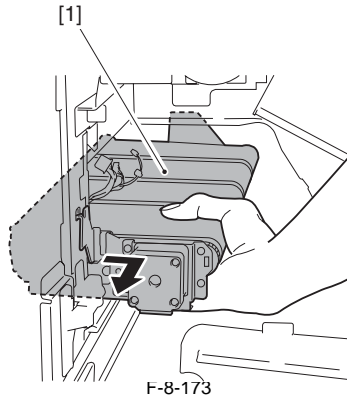
F-8-171

7) Remove the screw [1].

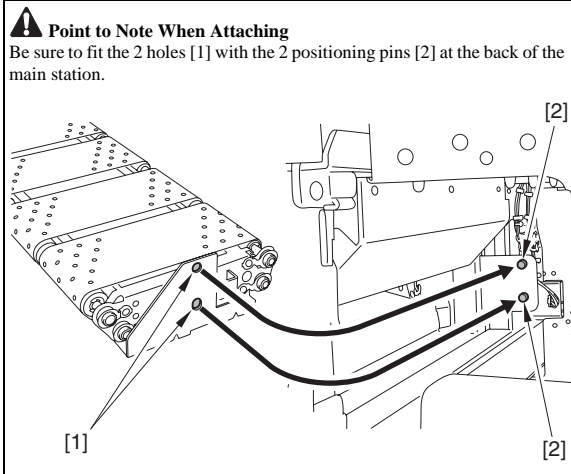


F-8-172

8) Remove the pre-fixing feed unit 2 [1] in the direction of the arrow.



F-8-173

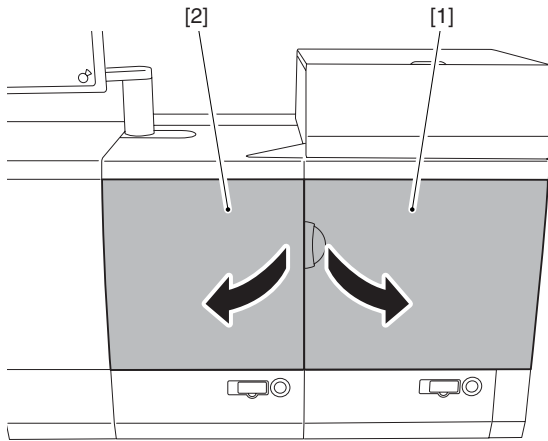


8.14.9 Main Station Duplexing Feed Unit

8.14.9.1 Removing the Main Station Duplex Feed Unit 1

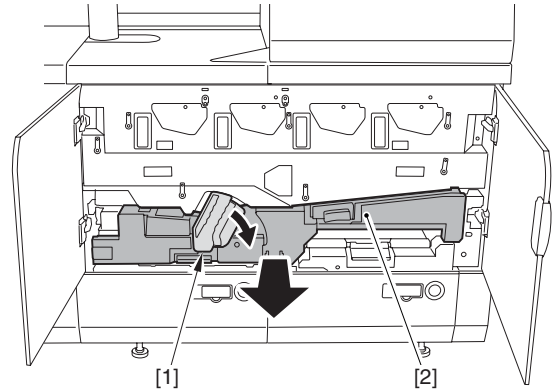
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- 1) Open the main station front right cover [1], and the main station front left cover [2].



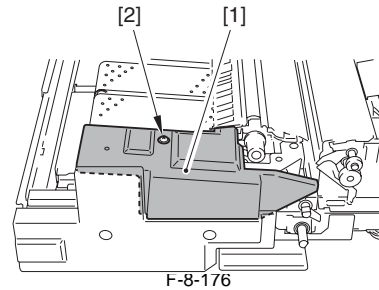
F-8-174

- 2) Shift the lever (B-E1) [1] in the direction of the arrow, and hold the lever (B-E1) [1] and pull the feed assembly [2] until it stops.



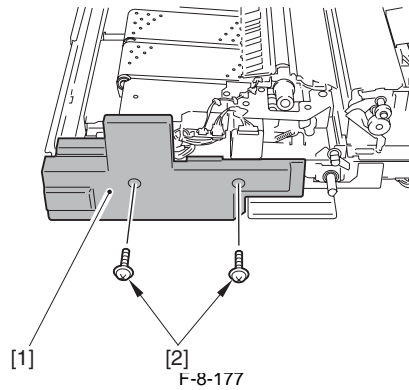
F-8-175

- 3) Detach the pre-fixing feed upper cover [1].
 - 1 screw [2]



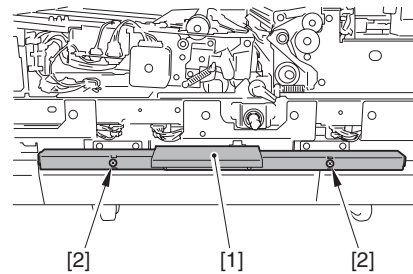
F-8-176

- 4) Detach the pre-fixing feed lower cover [1].
 - 2 screws [2]



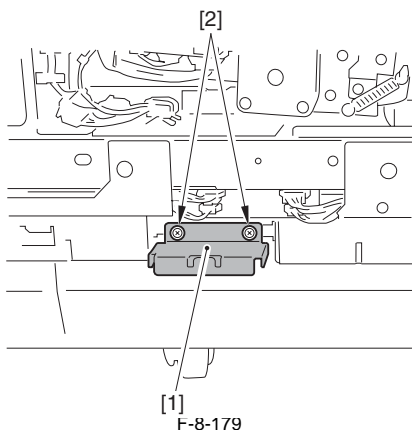
F-8-177

- 5) Remove the lever (B-E6) [1].
 - 2 screws [2]

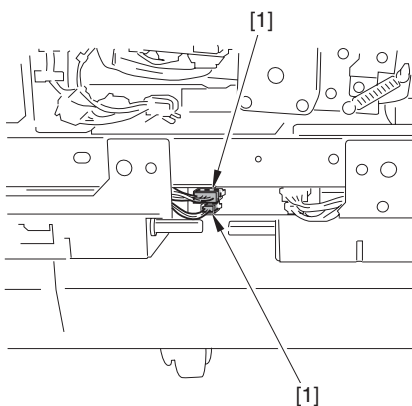


F-8-178

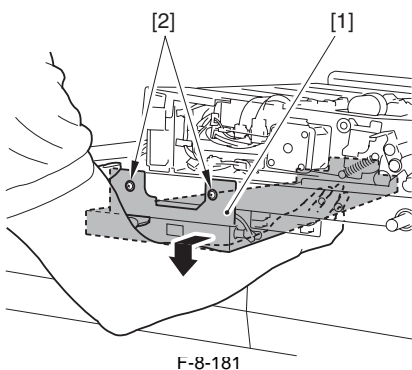
- 6) Detach the lever support plate [1].
 - 2 screws [2]



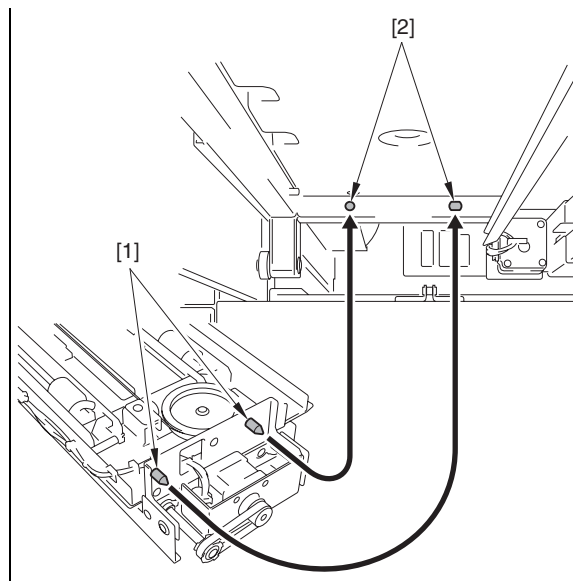
7) Disconnect the 2 connectors [1].



8) Remove the main station duplex feed unit 1 [1] in the direction of the arrow while supporting it from the bottom.
- 2 screws [2]



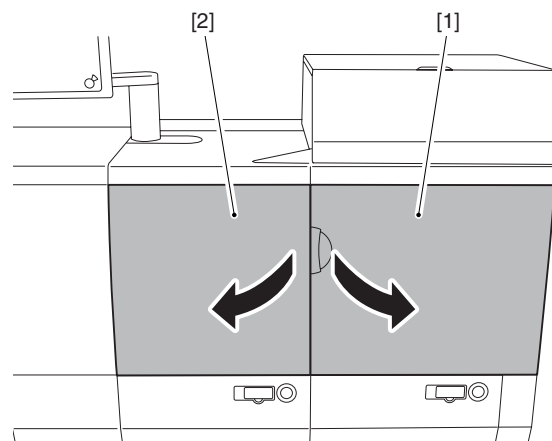
⚠ Point to Note When Attaching
Be sure to fit the 2 positioning pins [1] into the 2 holes [2] at the back of the bottom side of the feeding assembly.



8.14.9.2 Removing the Main Station Duplex Feed Unit 2

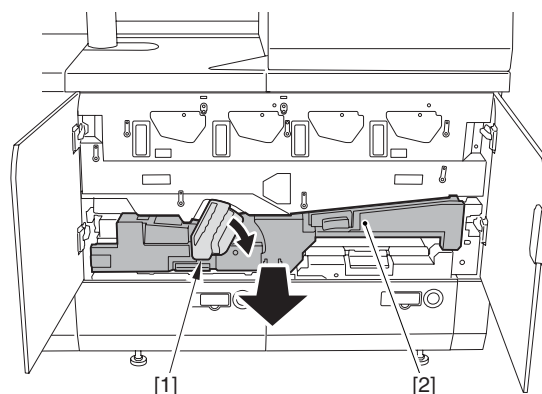
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

1) Open the main station front right cover [1], and the main station front left cover [2].



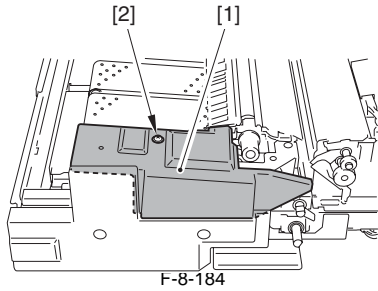
F-8-182

2) Shift the lever (B-E1) [1] in the direction of the arrow, and hold the lever (B-E1) [1] and pull the feed assembly [2] until it stops.

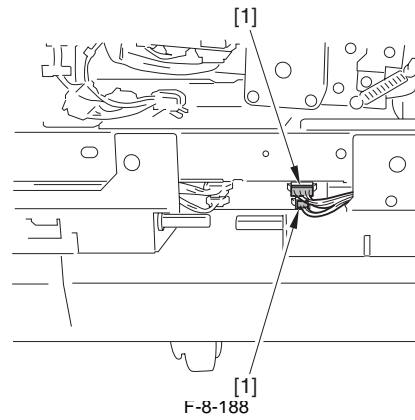


F-8-183

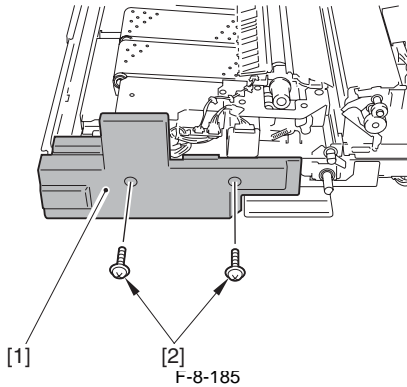
3) Detach the pre-fixing feed upper cover [1].
- 1 screw [2]



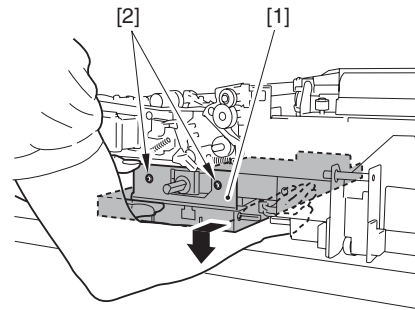
- 4) Detach the pre-fixing feed lower cover [1].
- 2 screws [2]



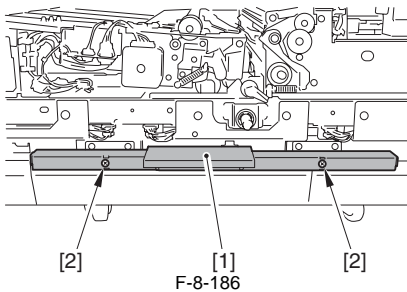
- 8) Remove the main station duplex feed unit 2 [1] in the direction of the arrow while supporting it from the bottom.
- 2 screws [2]



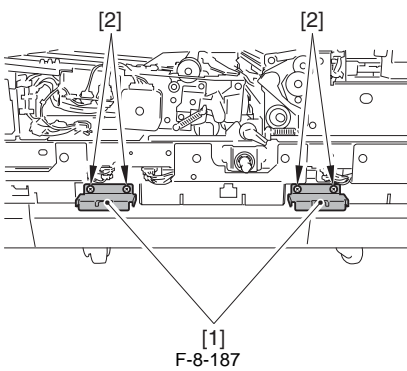
- 5) Remove the lever (B-E6) [1].
- 2 screws [2]



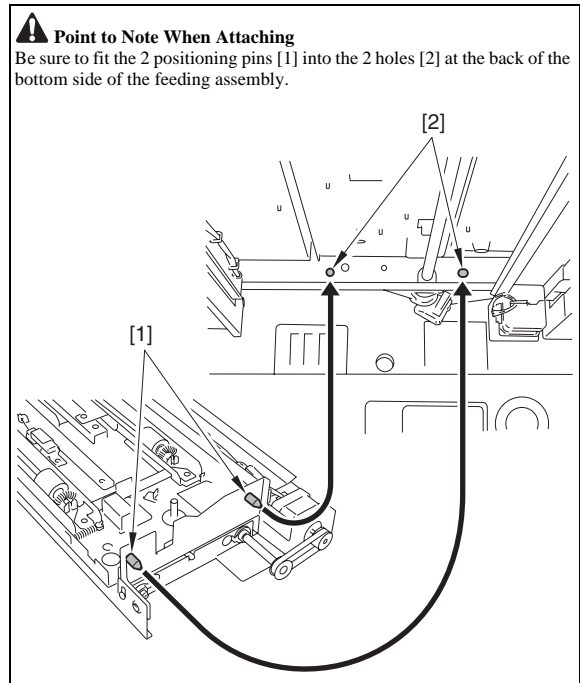
F-8-189



- 6) Detach the 2 lever support plates [1].
- 2 screws [2] each



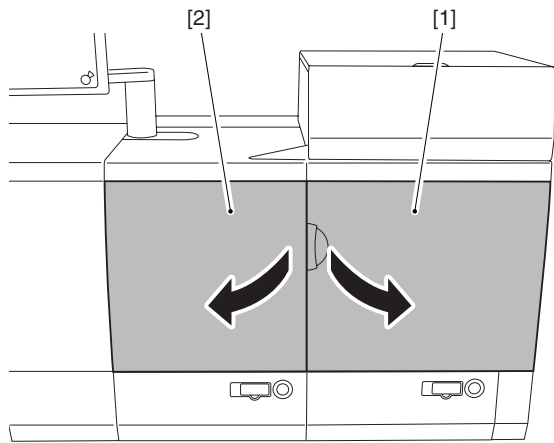
- 7) Disconnect the 2 connectors [1].



8.14.9.3 Removing the Main Station Duplex Feed Unit 3

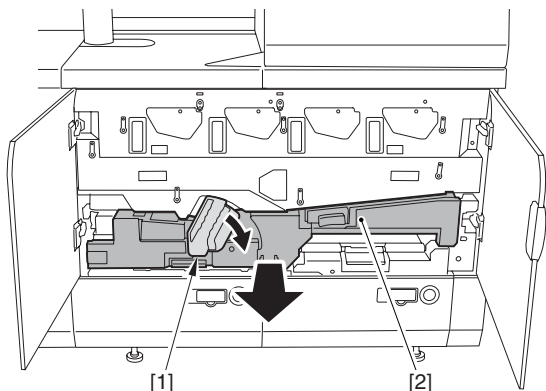
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- 1) Open the main station front right cover [1], and the main station front left cover [2].



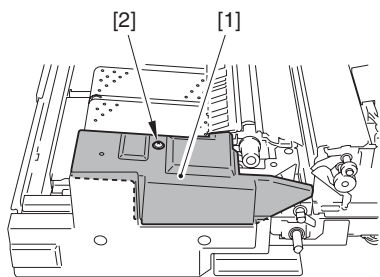
F-8-190

2) Shift the lever (B-E1) [1] in the direction of the arrow, and hold the lever (B-E1) [1] and pull the feed assembly [2] until it stops.



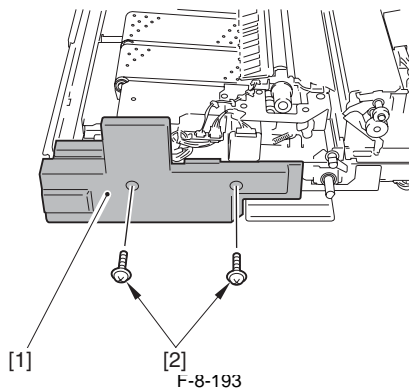
F-8-191

3) Detach the pre-fixing feed upper cover [1].
- 1 screw [2]



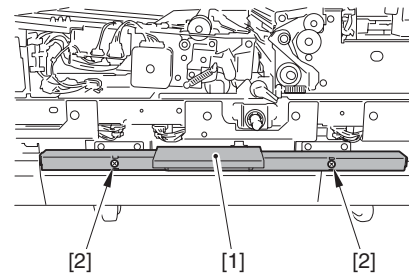
F-8-192

4) Detach the pre-fixing feed lower cover [1].
- 2 screws [2]



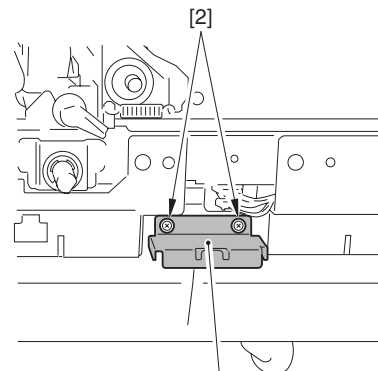
F-8-193

5) Remove the lever (B-E6) [1].
- 2 screws [2]



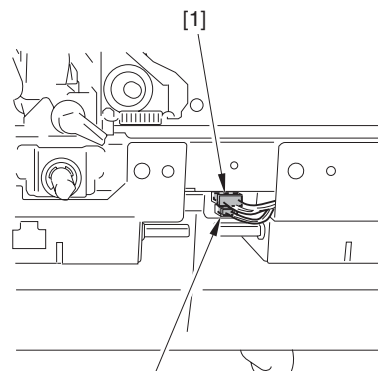
F-8-194

6) Detach the lever support plate [1].
- 2 screws [2]



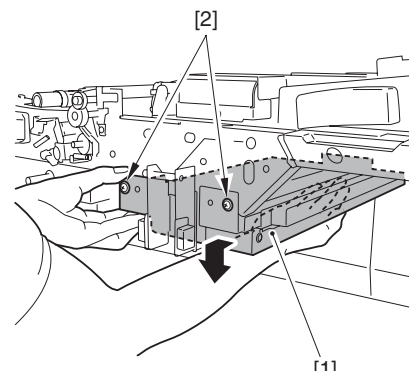
F-8-195

7) Disconnect the 2 connectors [1].



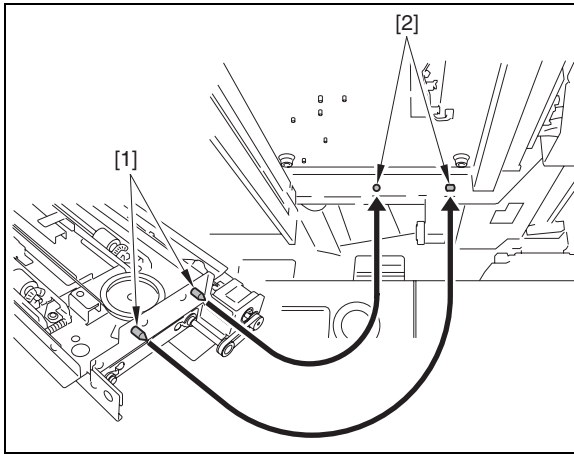
F-8-196

8) Remove the main station duplex feed unit 3 [1] in the direction of the arrow while supporting it from the bottom.
- 2 screws [2]



F-8-197

⚠ Point to Note When Attaching
Be sure to fit the 2 positioning pins [1] into the 2 holes [2] at the back of the bottom side of the feeding assembly.

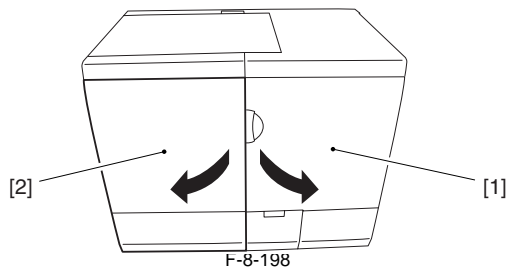


8.14.10 Sub Station Duplexing Feed Unit

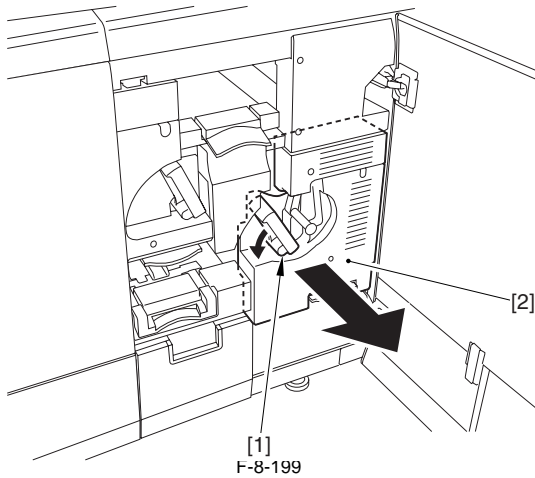
8.14.10.1 Removing Sub Station Duplexing Feed Unit 1

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

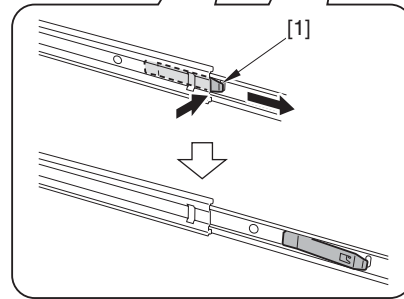
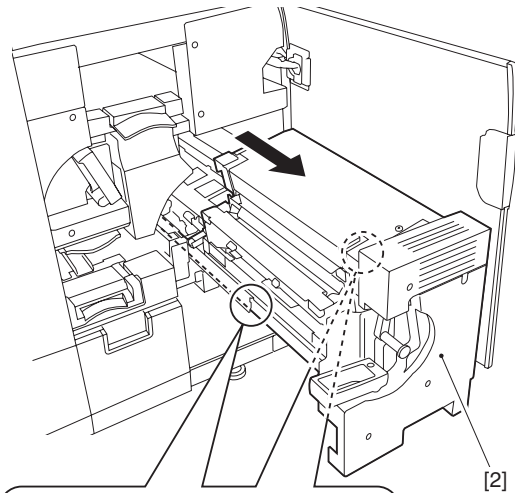
- 1) Open the sub station front right door [1] and the sub station front left door [2].



- 2) Bring down the lever (C-A4)[1] in the direction of the arrow to pull the primary fixing assembly [2] until it stops.

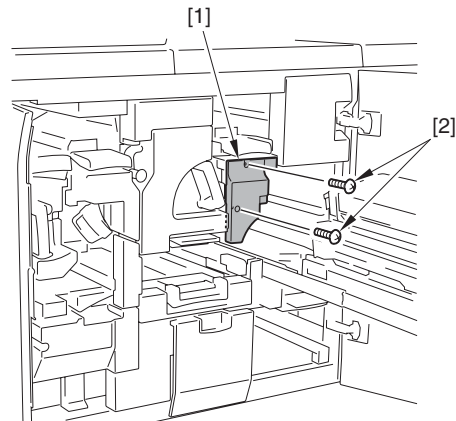


- 3) Disengage the 2 leaf springs [1] to slide out the primary fixing assembly further.



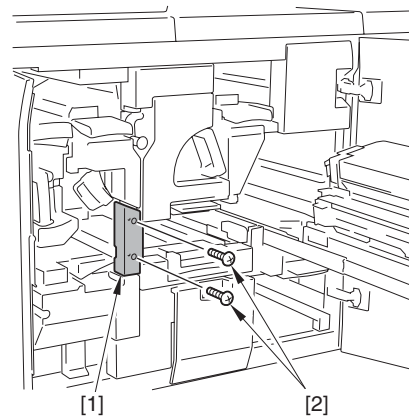
F-8-200

- 4) Detach the tandem feed cover [1].
- 2 screws [2]



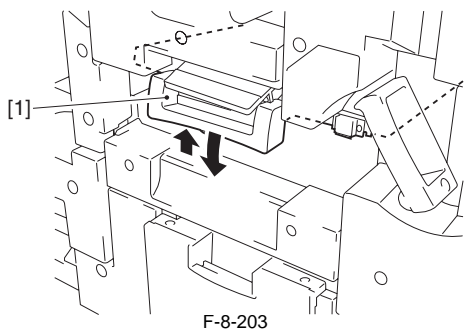
F-8-201

- 5) Detach the sub station inner cover [1].
- 2 screws [2]

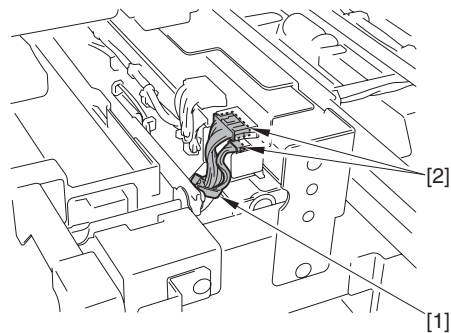


F-8-202

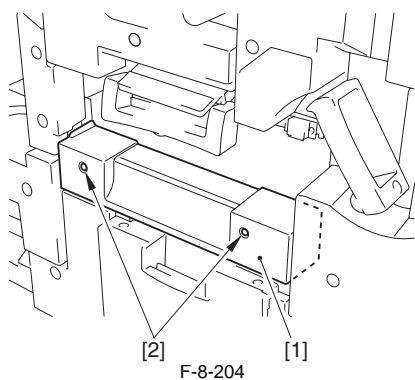
- 6) Bring the lever (C-A3) [1] up.



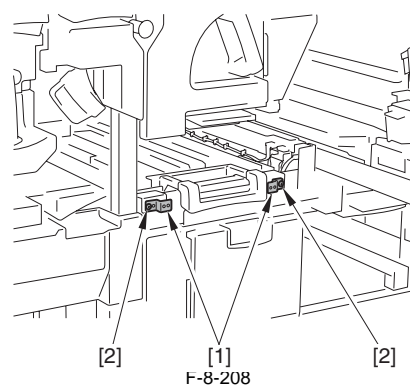
7) Detach the sub station duplexing feed cover [1].
- 2 screws [2]



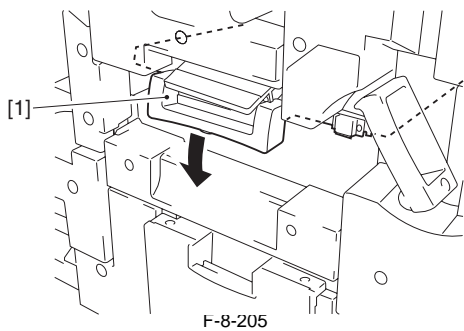
11) Detach the 2 fixing plates [2].
- 2 screws [2]



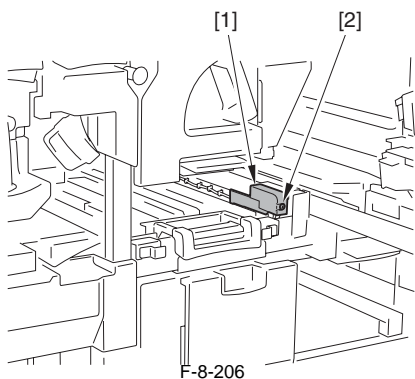
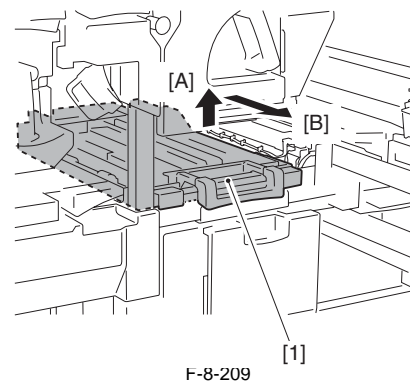
8) Bring the lever (C-A3) [1] down.



12) Lift up the sub station duplexing feed unit 1 [1] in the direction of [A],
and remove it in the direction of [B].



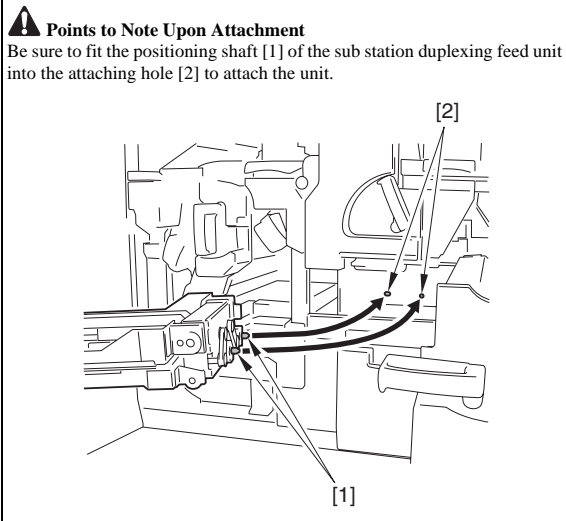
9) Detach the connector cover [1].
- 1 screw [2]



10) Remove the wire saddle [1] and disconnect the 2 connectors [2].

⚠

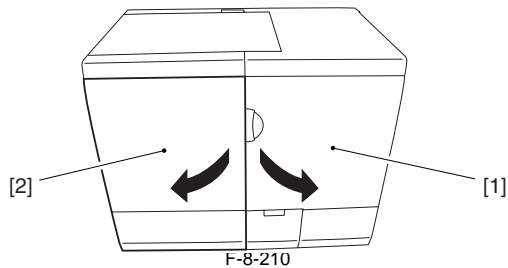
- Be sure to tilt the sub station duplexing feed unit 1 [1] to attach/remove.
- Be sure not to let the sub station duplexing feed unit guide [3] rub against the support [2] when attaching/removing the unit



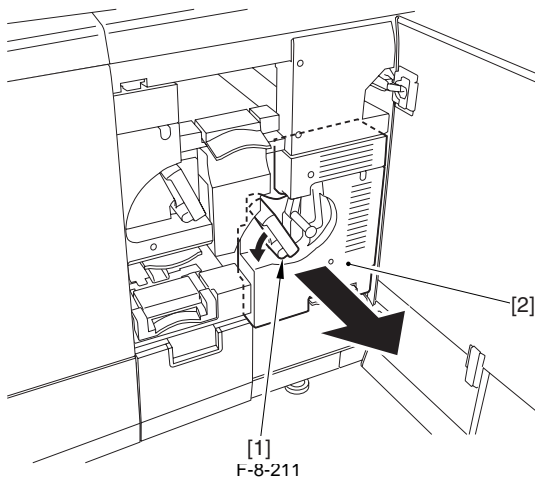
8.14.10.2 Removing Sub Station Duplexing Feed Unit 2

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

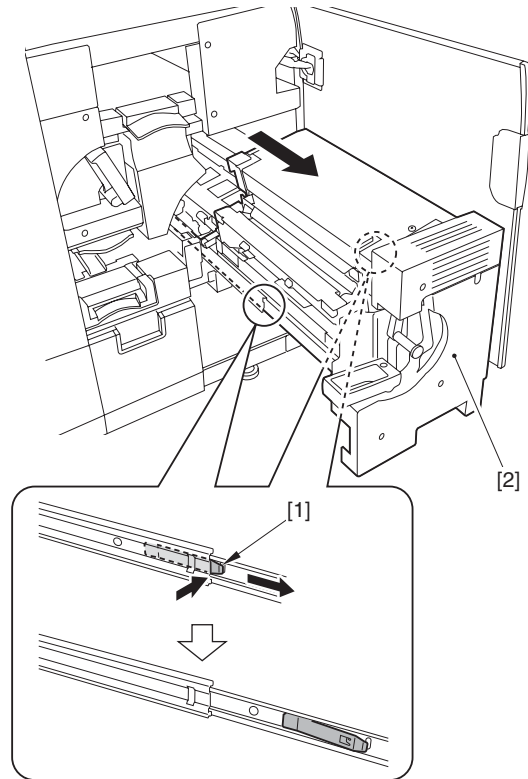
- 1) Open the sub station front right door [1] and the sub station front left door [2].



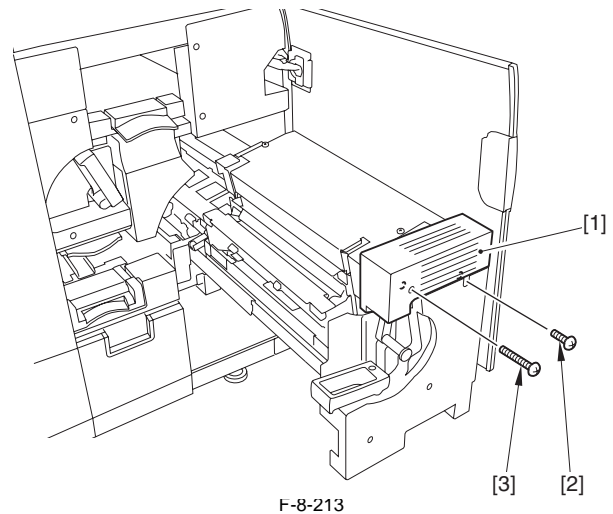
- 2) Bring the lever (C-A4) in the direction of the arrow to pull out the primary fixing assembly [1] until it stops.



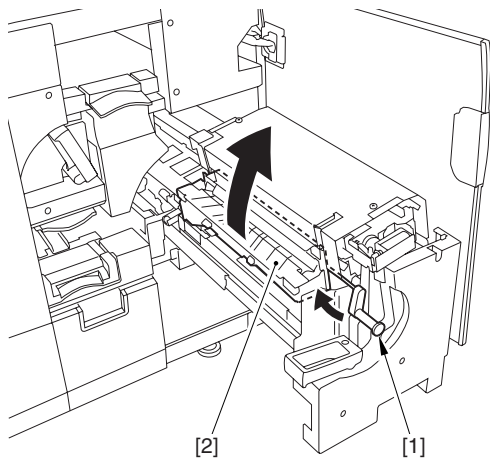
- 3) Disengage the 2 leaf springs [1] to slide out the primary fixing assembly [2] further.



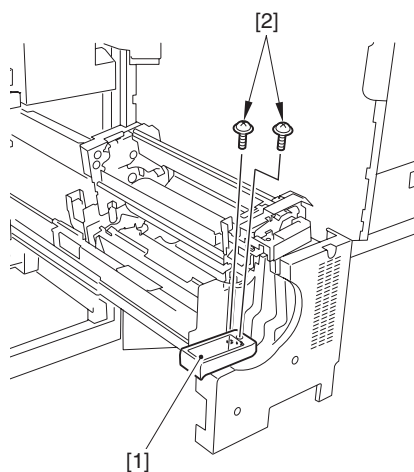
- 4) Detach the primary fixing upper front cover [1].
 - 1 screw [2]
 - 1 screw [3]



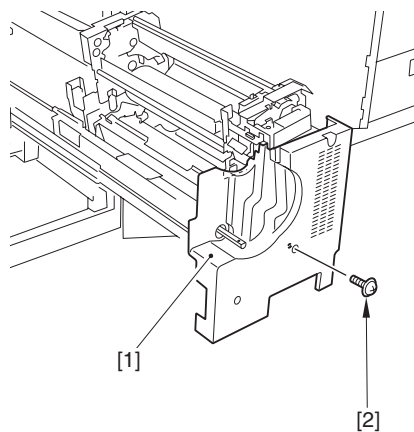
- 5) Hold the release lever [1] to bring up the fixing delivery assembly [2] over the fixing assembly.



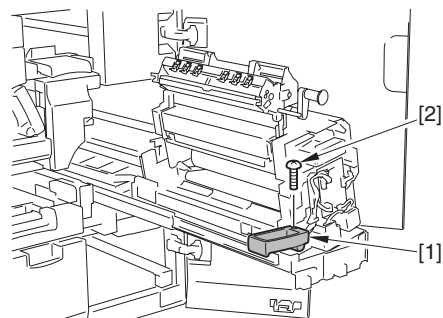
- 6) Remove the release lever [1].
- 2 screws [2]



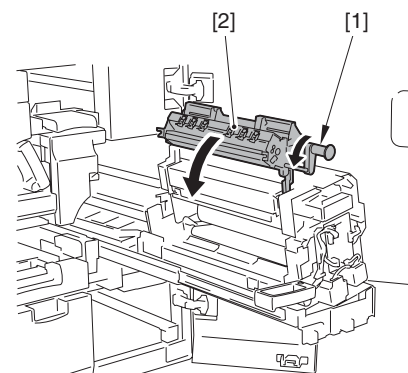
- 7) Detach the primary fixing lower front cover [1].
- 1 screw [2]



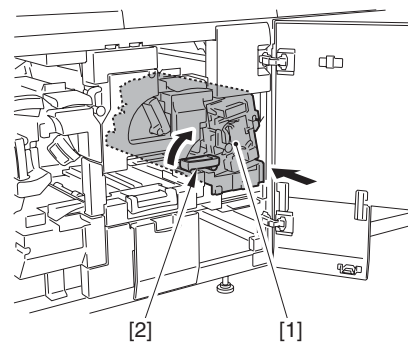
- 8) Attach the release lever [1].
- 2 screws [2]



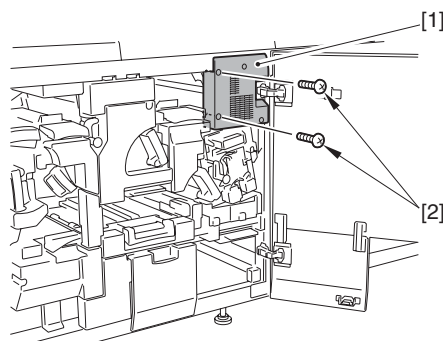
- 9) Hold the release lever [1] to bring down the primary fixing inner delivery assembly [2] until it comes beside the fixing assembly.



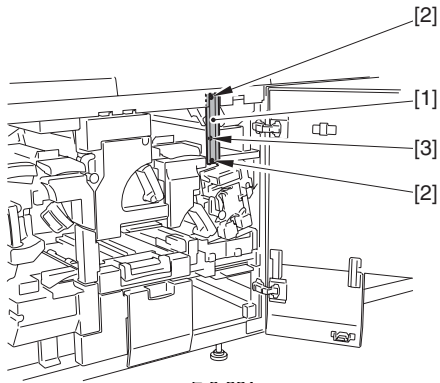
- 10) Slide in the primary fixing assembly [1] to the sub station and turn the release lever [2] in the direction of the arrow to secure.



- 11) Detach the sub station inner cover [1].
- 2 screws [2]

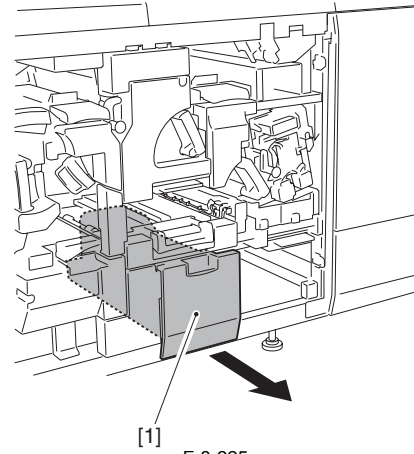


- 12) Remove the fixing sub reinforcement stay [1].
- 2 screws [2]
- 1 screw [3]



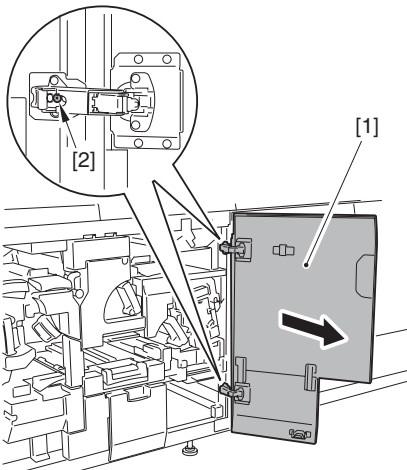
F-8-221

13) Detach the sub station front right cover [1].
- 2 screws [2]



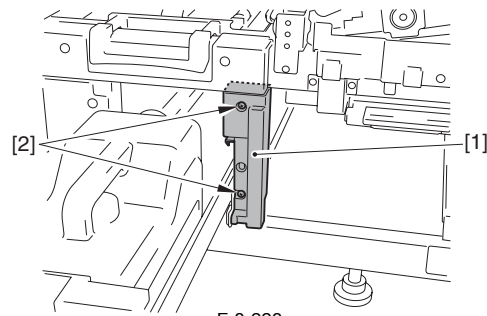
F-8-225

17) Detach the waste toner right cover [1].
- 2 screws [2]



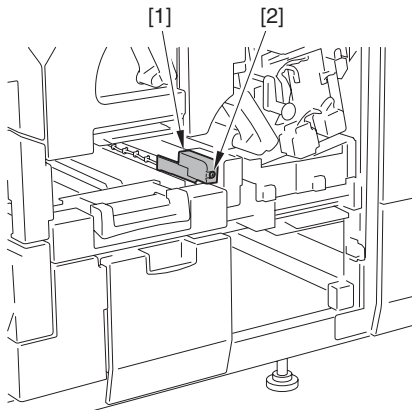
F-8-222

14) Detach the connector cover [1].
- 1 screw [2]



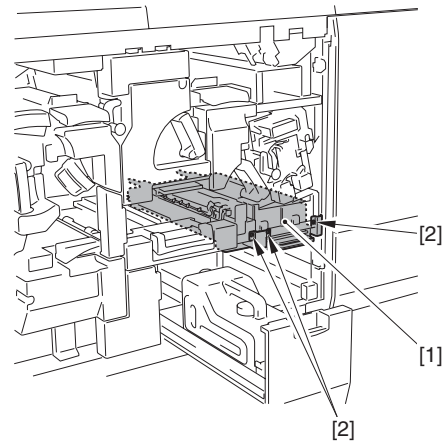
F-8-226

18) Remove the sub station duplexing feed unit 2 [1].
- 3 screws [2]



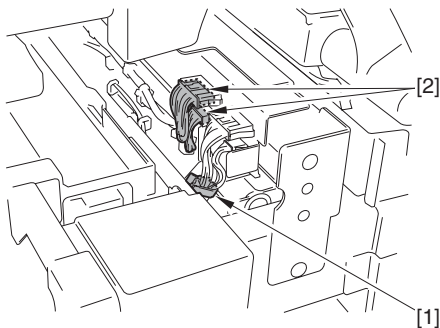
F-8-223

15) Remove the wire saddle [1] and disconnect the 2 connectors [2].



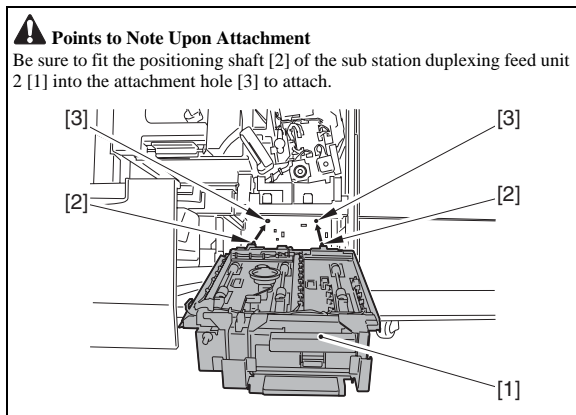
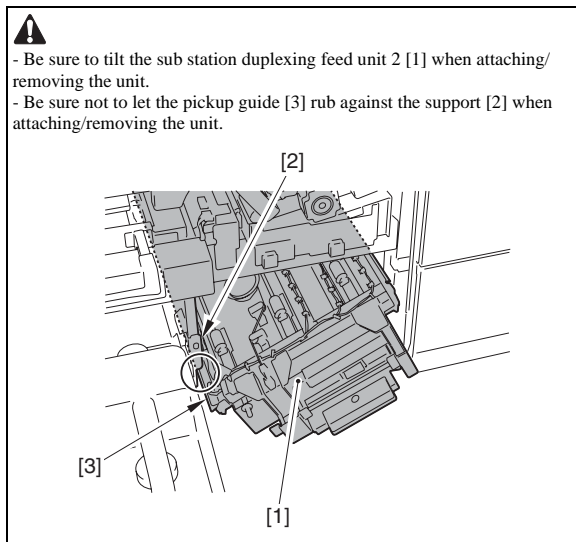
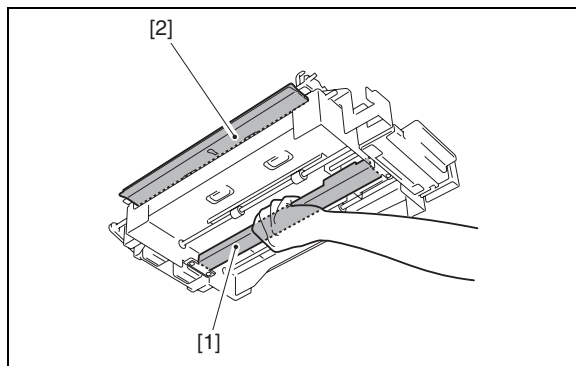
F-8-227

!
- Be sure to hold the duplexing feed frame [1] when removing/attaching the unit.
- Be sure not to damage pickup guide [2] of the sub station duplexing feed unit.



F-8-224

16) Slide out the waste toner compartment [1].

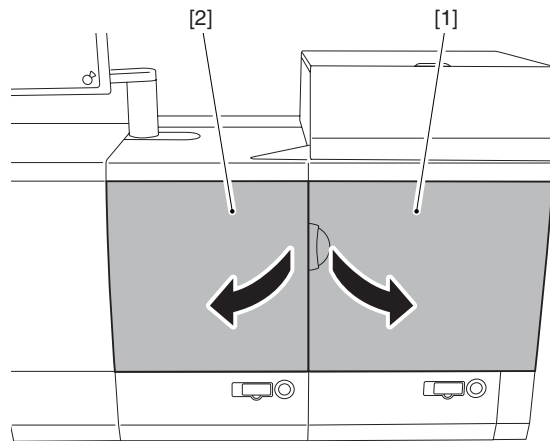


8.14.11 Lower Feed Unit

8.14.11.1 Removing the Lower Feed Unit

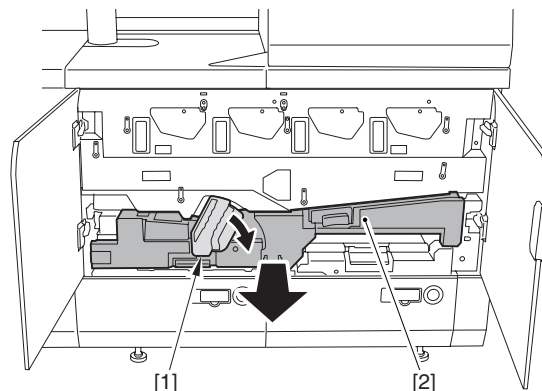
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- 1) Open the main station front right cover [1], and the main station front left cover [2].



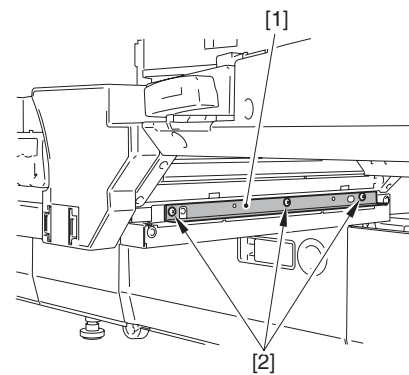
F-8-228

- 2) Shift the lever (B-E1) [1] in the direction of the arrow, and hold the lever (B-E1) [1] and pull the feed assembly [2] until it stops.



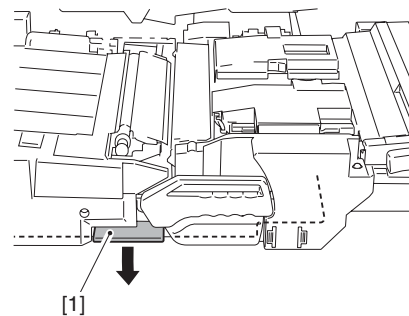
F-8-229

- 3) Remove the exit guide (upper) [1].
- 3 screws [2]



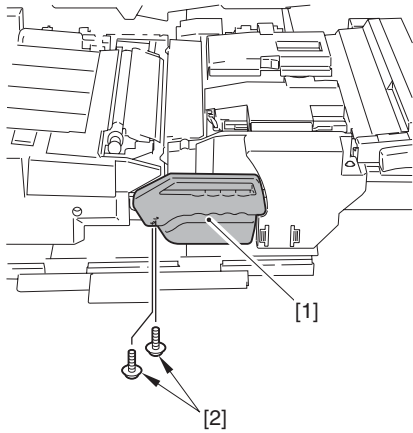
F-8-230

- 4) Release the lever (B-E6) [1] and open the duplex assembly.



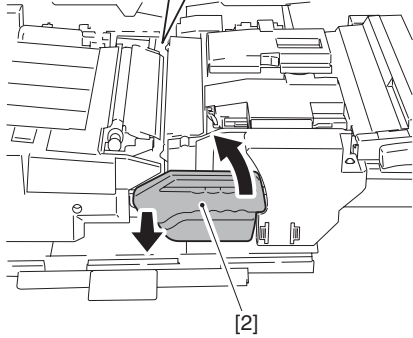
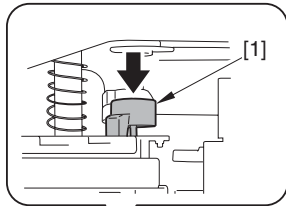
F-8-231

- 5) Remove the 2 screws [2] which secure the lever (B-E1)[1].



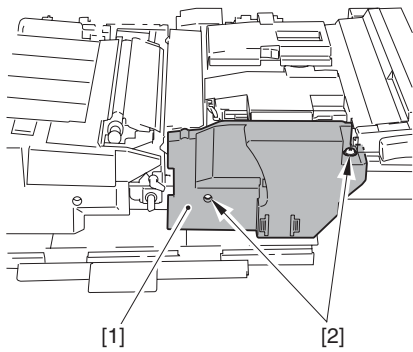
F-8-232

6) While pushing the release button [1], slightly turn the lever (B-E1) counterclockwise to pull it out toward the front.



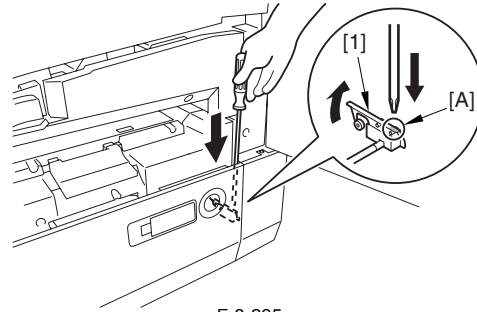
F-8-233

7) Detach the cross-feed registration front cover [1].
- 2 screws [2]



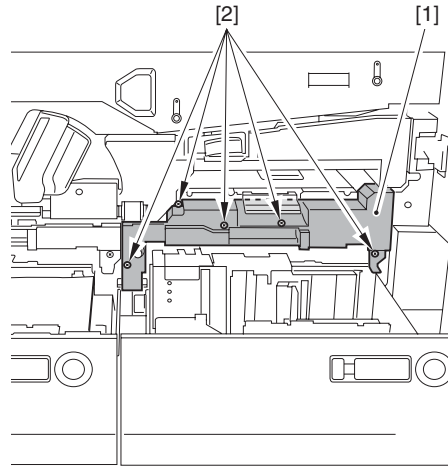
F-8-234

8) Push in the feed assembly to the original position.
9) Insert a screwdriver to the gap of the right deck and push the [A] area of the lever [1] to release the lock and open the right deck.



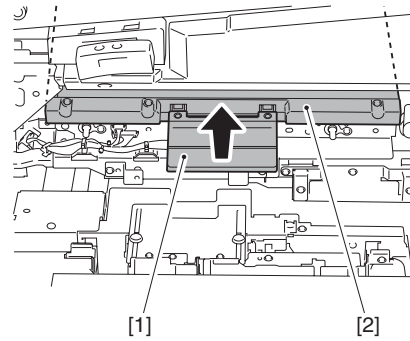
F-8-235

10) Detach the lower feed cover [1].
- 5 screws [2]



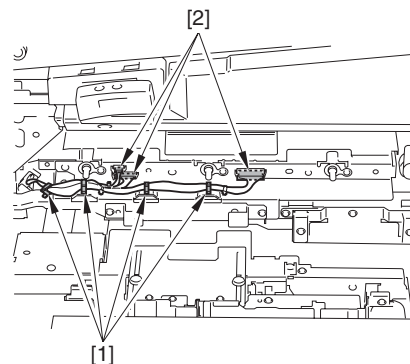
F-8-236

11) Hold the lever (B-A) [1] and open the lower feed unit.



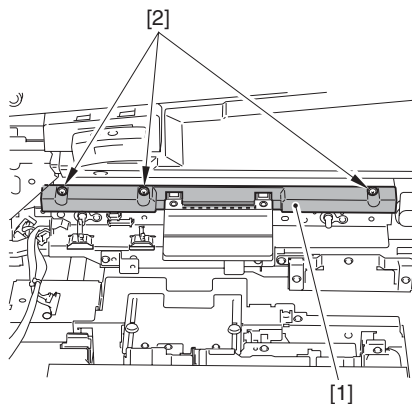
F-8-237

12) Remove the following parts:
- Harness (4 wire saddles [1])
- 3 connectors [2]



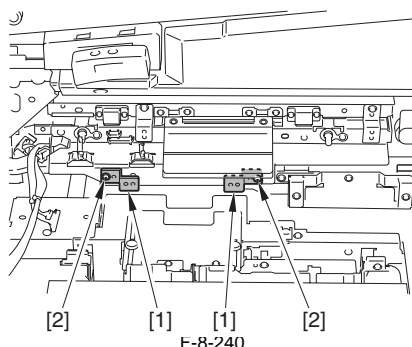
F-8-238

13) Detach the lower feed cover (inner) [1].
- 3 screws [2]



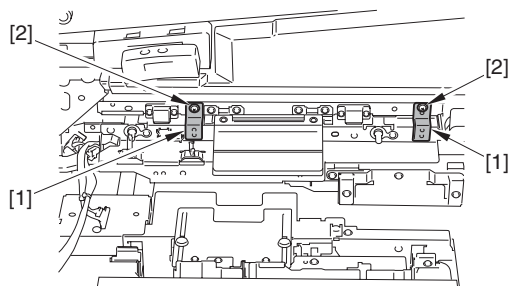
F-8-239

- 14) Remove the 2 positioning pins [1]
- 1 screw [2] each



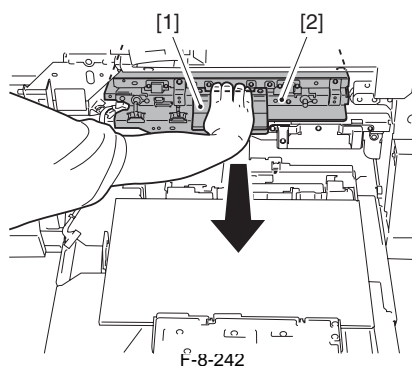
F-8-240

- 15) Attach the 2 positioning pins [1] that were removed in the previous step.
- 1 screw each [2] (use the screw removed in the previous step)



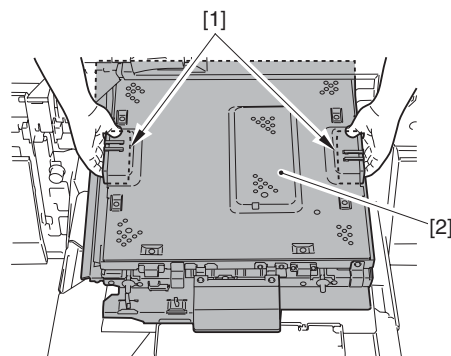
F-8-241

- 16) Hold the lever (B-A) and pull out the lower feed unit [2].



F-8-242

- 17) Hold the 2 grips [2] and remove the lower feed unit [2].



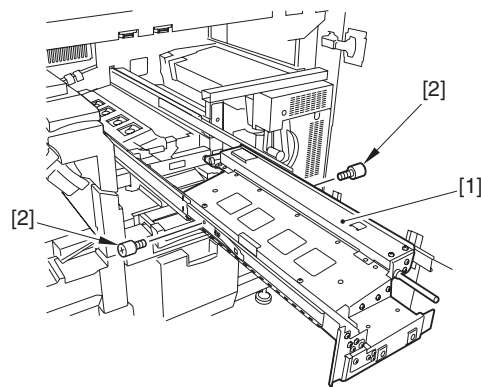
F-8-243

8.14.12 Bypass Feed Assembly

8.14.12.1 Removing Bypass Feed Unit

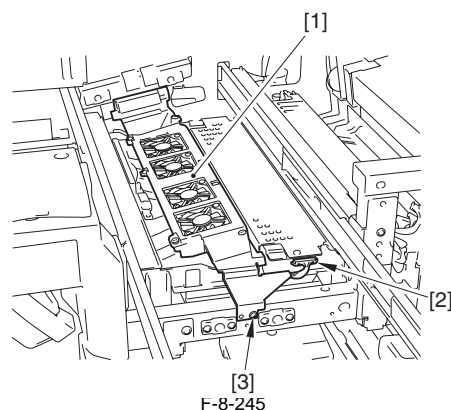
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- 1) Remove the primary fixing assembly.
- 2) Push in the primary fixing assembly mount.
- 3) Remove the secondary fixing assembly.
- 4) Remove the secondary fixing assembly mount [1].
- 2 screws [2]



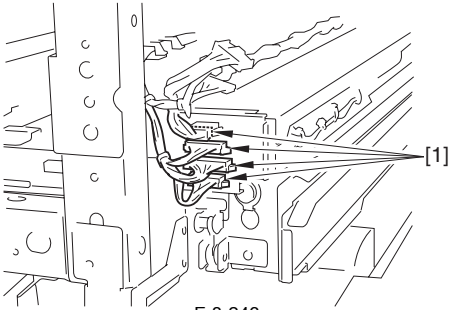
F-8-244

- 5) Push in the 2 rails of the secondary fixing assembly.
- 6) Remove the cooling fan unit [1].
- 1 connector [2]
- 1 screw [3]



F-8-245

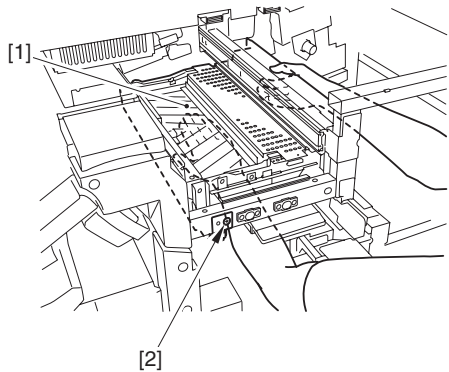
- 7) Disconnect the 4 connectors [1].



F-8-246

- 8) Hold the bypass feed unit [1] as shown in the figure, and remove it by pulling out slightly toward the front.
 - 1 screw [2]

⚠
 Be sure to hold the bypass feed unit with both hands. Otherwise, it may drop because the left side of it is heavy.



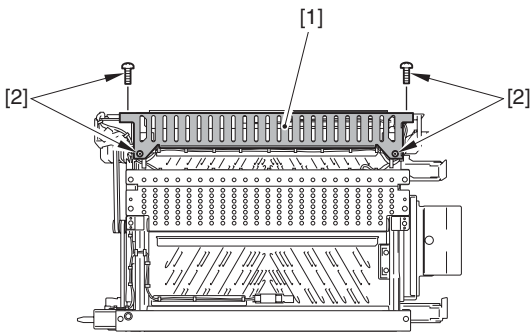
F-8-247

8.14.13 Bypass Feed Roller

8.14.13.1 Detaching Bypass Driven Roller 1

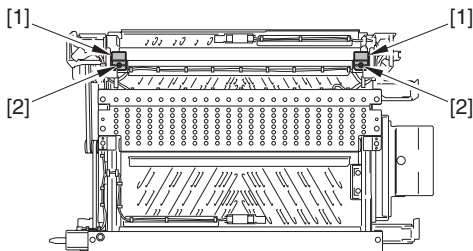
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- 1) Detach the bypass feed unit.
- 2) Detach the bypass upper cover 1 [1].
 - 4 screws [2]



F-8-248

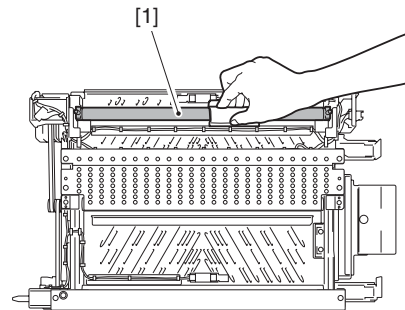
- 3) Remove the 2 spring retainers [1].
 - 1 each screw [2]



F-8-249

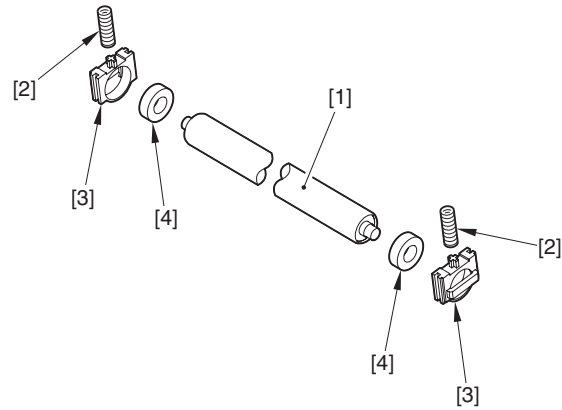
- 4) To avoid touching directly the roller, detach the bypass driven roller 1 [1]

together with the holder using a lint-free paper, etc.



F-8-250

- 5) Remove the following parts from the bypass driven roller 1 [1].
 - 2 springs [2]
 - 2 bearing holders [3]
 - 2 bearings [4]

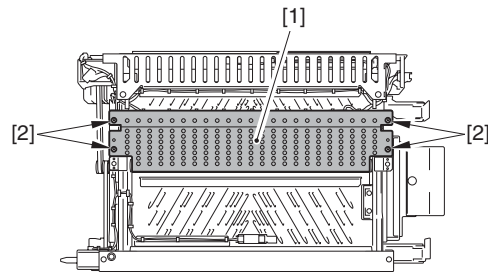


F-8-251

8.14.13.2 Detaching Bypass Driven Roller 2

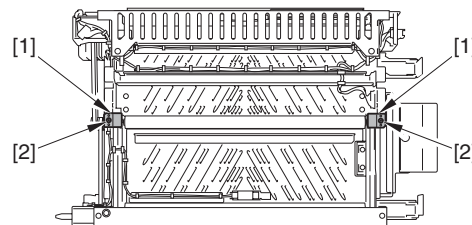
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- 1) Detach the bypass feed unit.
- 2) Detach the bypass upper cover 2 [1].
 - 4 screws [2]



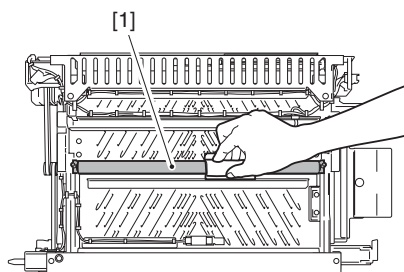
F-8-252

- 3) Remove the 2 spring retainers [1].
 - 1 each screw [2]



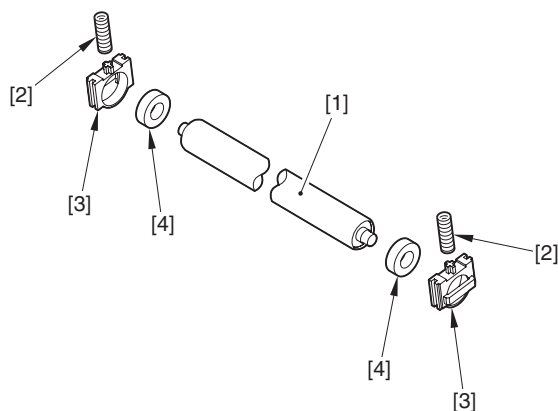
F-8-253

- 4) To avoid touching directly the roller, detach the bypass driven roller 2 [1] together with the holder using a lint-free paper, etc.



F-8-254

- 5) Remove the following parts from the bypass driven roller 2 [1].
- 2 springs [2]
 - 2 bearing holders [3]
 - 2 bearings [4]

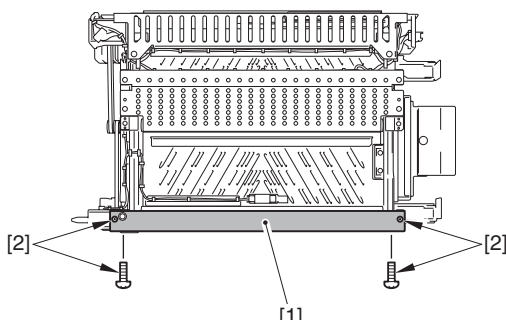


F-8-255

8.14.13.3 Detaching Bypass Driven Roller 3

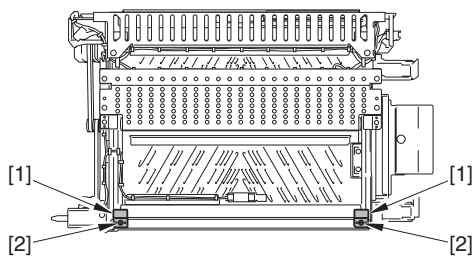
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- 1) Detach the bypass feed unit.
 - 2) Detach the bypass upper cover 3 [1].
- 4 screws [2]



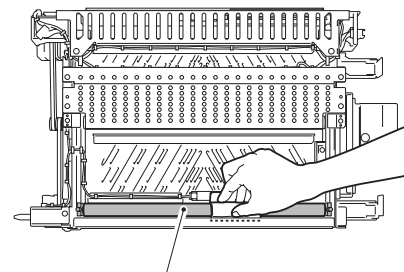
F-8-256

- 3) Remove the 2 spring retainers [1].
- 1 each screw [2]



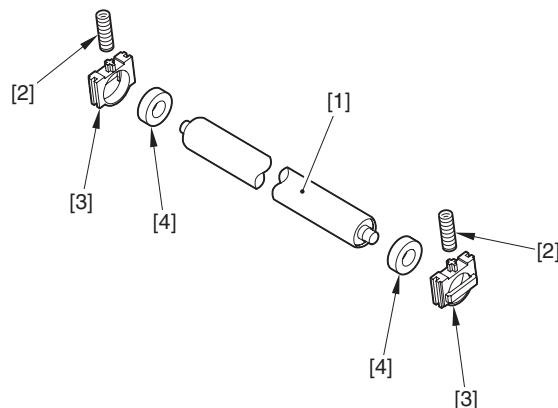
F-8-257

- 4) To avoid touching directly the roller, detach the bypass driven roller 3 [1] together with the holder using a lint-free paper, etc.



F-8-258

- 5) Remove the following parts from the bypass driven roller 3 [1].
- 2 springs [2]
 - 2 bearing holders [3]
 - 2 bearings [4]

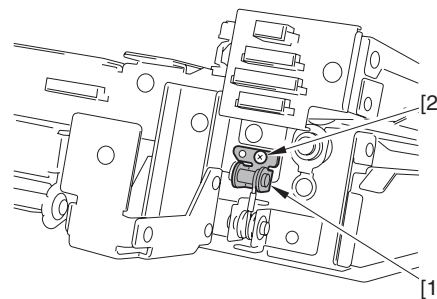


F-8-259

8.14.13.4 Detaching Bypass Feed Roller 1, Bypass Feed Roller 2, Bypass Feed Roller 3

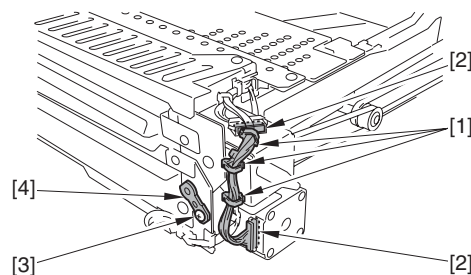
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- 1) Detach the bypass feed unit.
- 2) Remove the screw [2] that fixes the wire shaft support plate [1].



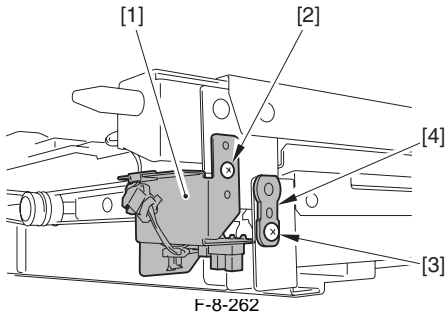
F-8-260

- 3) Remove the following parts.
- Harness (3 wire saddles [1])
 - 2 connectors [2]
 - 1 screw [3]
 - 1 positioning pin [4]

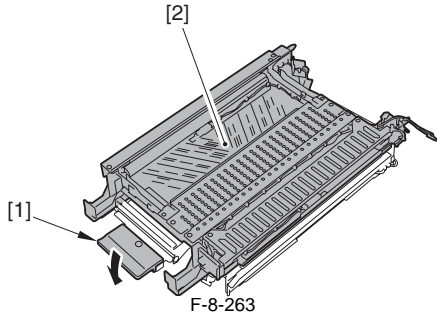


F-8-261

- 4) Remove the following parts.
- 1 screw [2] that fixes the sensor support plate [1].
 - 1 screw [3]
 - 1 positioning pin [4]

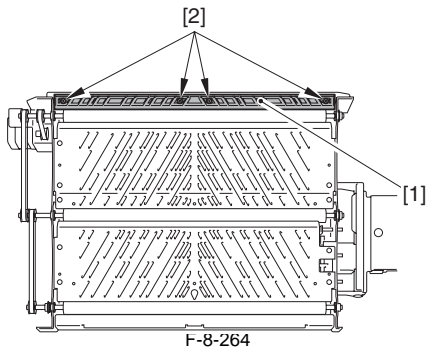


5) Lower the lever [1] to unlock, and detach the bypass upper unit [2].

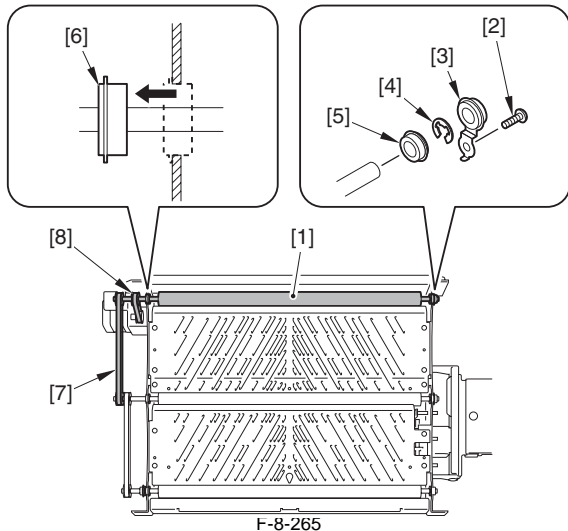


When detaching the bypass feed roller 1

6) Detach the guide plate 1 [1].
- 4 screws [2]

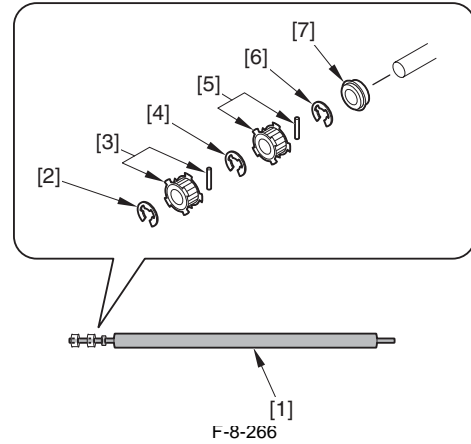


7) Detach the bypass feed roller 1 [1].
- 1 screw [2]
- 1 bushing (w/leaf spring) [3]
- 1 E ring [4]
- 1 bearing [5]
- 1 bearing [6] (removed from the groove)
- 1 belt [7]
- 1 belt [8]



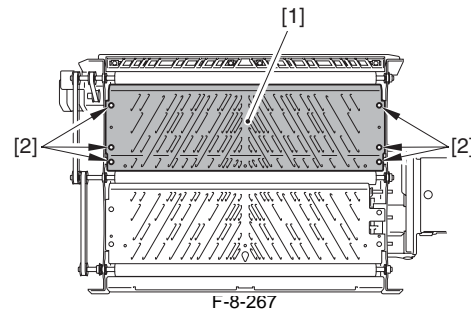
8) Remove the following parts from the bypass feed roller 1 [1].

- 1 E ring [2]
- 1 pulley (w/dowel pin) [3]
- 1 E ring [4]
- 1 pulley (w/dowel pin) [5]
- 1 E ring [6]
- 1 bearing [7]

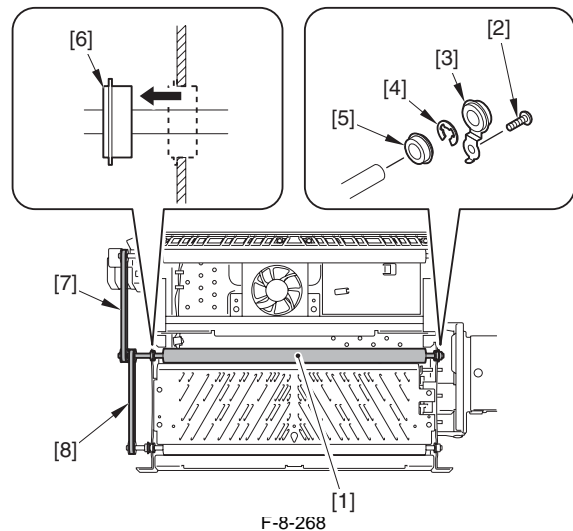


When detaching the bypass feed roller 2

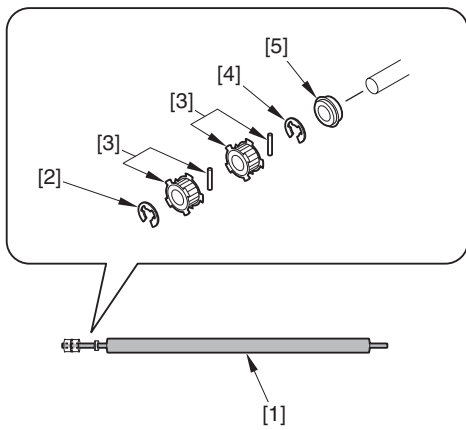
6) Detach the guide plate 2 [1].
- 6 screws [2]



7) Detach the bypass feed roller 2 [1].
- 1 screw [2]
- 1 bushing (w/leaf spring) [3]
- 1 E ring [4]
- 1 bearing [5]
- 1 bearing [6] (removed from the groove)
- 1 belt [7]
- 1 belt [8]



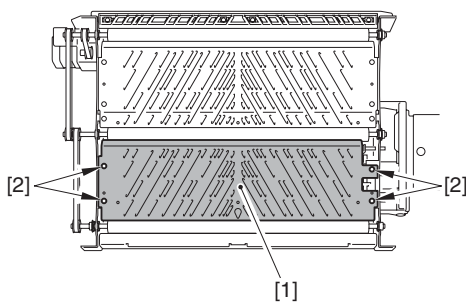
8) Remove the following parts from the bypass feed roller 2 [1].
- 1 E ring [2]
- 2 pulleys (w/dowel pin) [3]
- 1 E ring [4]
- 1 bearing [5]



F-8-269

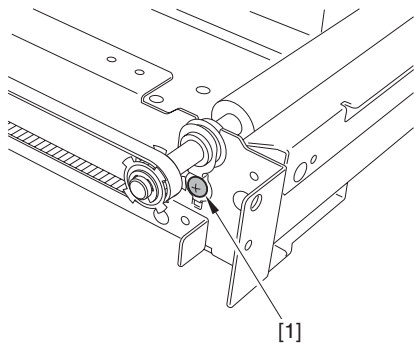
When detaching the bypass feed roller 3

- 6) Detach the guide plate 3 [1].
- 4 screws [2]



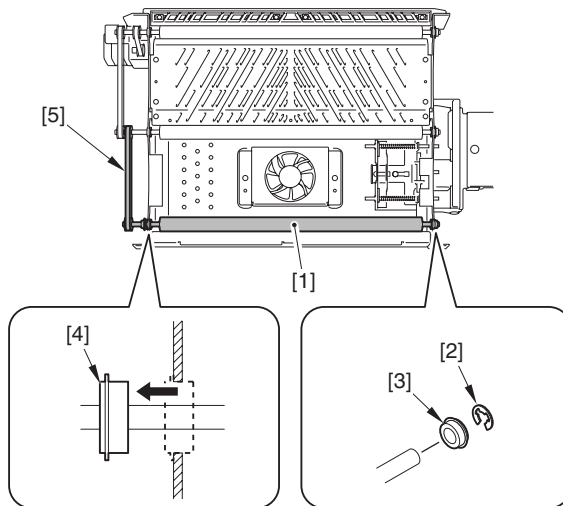
F-8-270

- 7) Remove the screw [1].



F-8-271

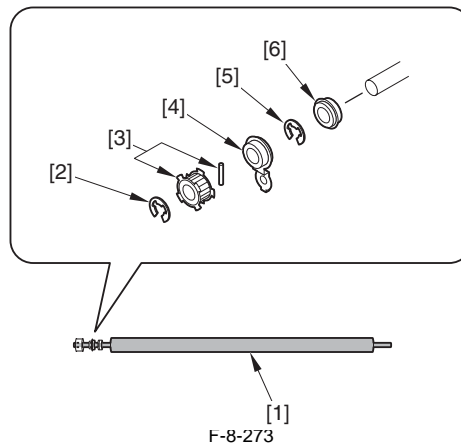
- 8) Detach the bypass feed roller 3 [1].
- 1 E ring [2]
- 1 bearing [3]
- 1 bearing [4] (removed from the groove)
- 1 belt [5]



F-8-272

- 9) Remove the following parts from the bypass feed roller 3 [1].

- 1 E ring [2]
- 2 pulleys (w/dowel pin) [3]
- 1 bushing (w/leaf spring) [4]
- 1 E ring [5]
- 1 bearing [6]

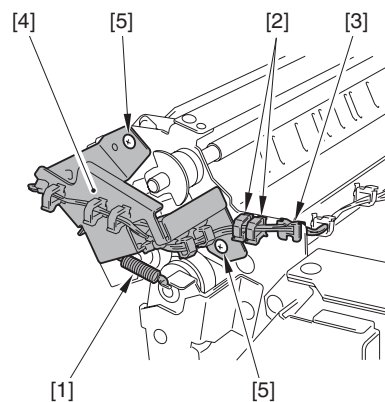


F-8-273

8.14.13.5 Detaching Bypass Driven Roller 4

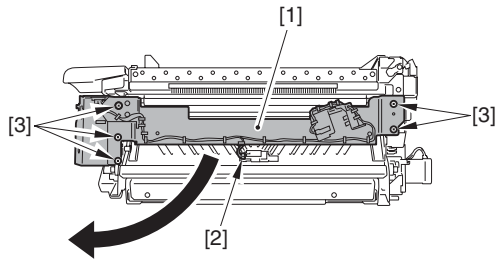
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- 1) Detach the fixing merger path unit.
- 2) Remove the following parts.
- 1 spring [1]
- Harness (2 wire saddles [2], 1 edge saddle [3])
- 2 screws [5] that fix the sensor support plate [4]



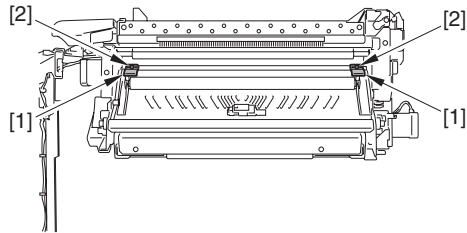
F-8-274

- 3) Move the unit fixing cover [1] in the direction of the arrow.
- 1 connector [2]
- 5 screws [3]



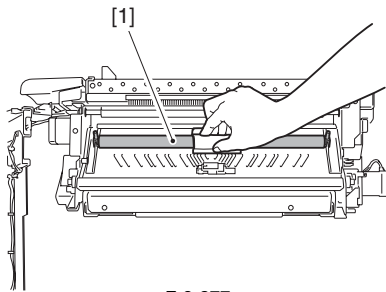
F-8-275

- 4) Remove the 2 spring retainers [1].
- 1 each screw [2]



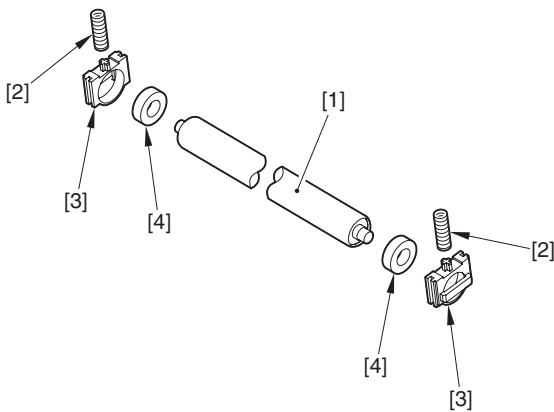
F-8-276

- 5) To avoid touching directly the roller, detach the tandem driven roller 3 [1] together with the holder using a lint-free paper, etc.



F-8-277

- 6) Remove the following parts from the tandem driven roller 3 [1].
- 2 springs [2]
- 2 bearing holders [3]
- 2 bearings [4]

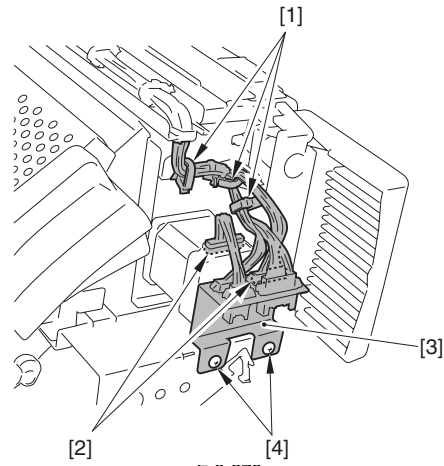


F-8-278

8.14.13.6 Detaching Bypass Feed Roller 4

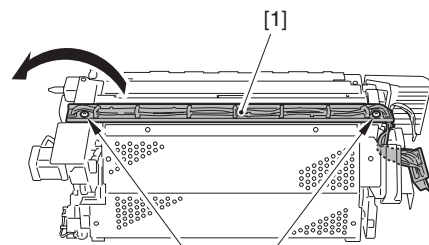
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- 1) Detach the fixing merger path unit.
- 2) Remove the following parts.
 - Harness (3 wire saddles [1])
 - 2 connectors [2]
 - 2 screws [4] that fix the connector support plate [3]



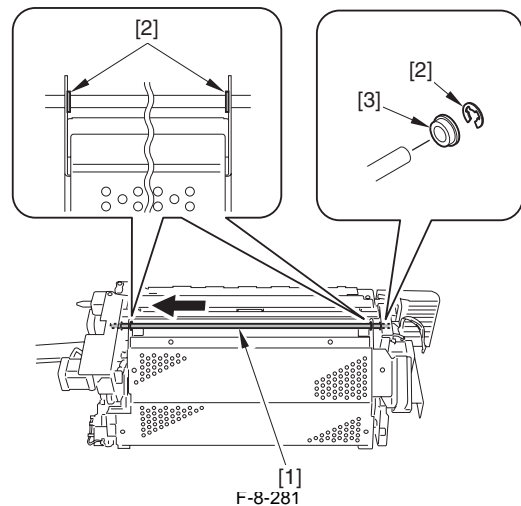
F-8-279

- 3) Move the reinforcement stay [1] in the direction of the arrow.
- 2 screws [2]



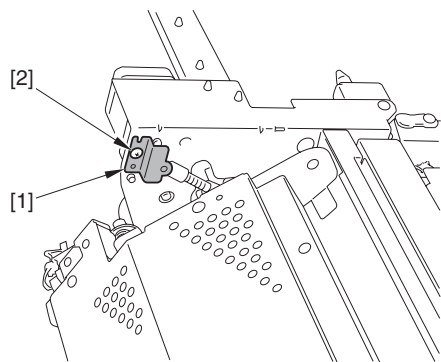
F-8-280

- 4) Remove the spindle [1] in the direction of the arrow.
- 3 E rings [2]
- 1 bushing [3]



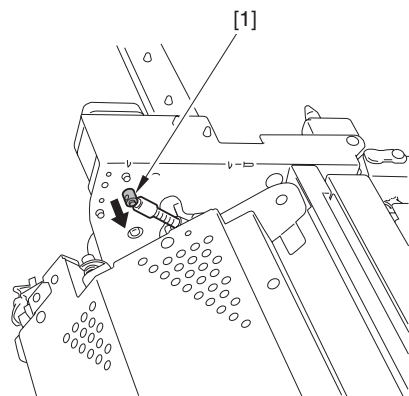
F-8-281

- 5) Detach the toggle retaining plate [1].
- 1 screw [2]



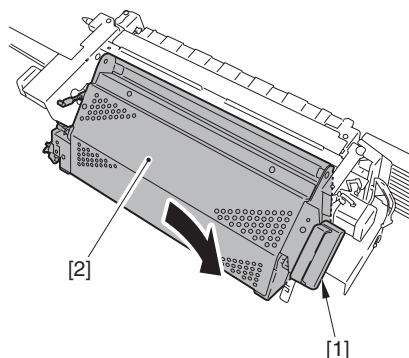
F-8-282

6) Detach the toggle shaft [1] from the hole.



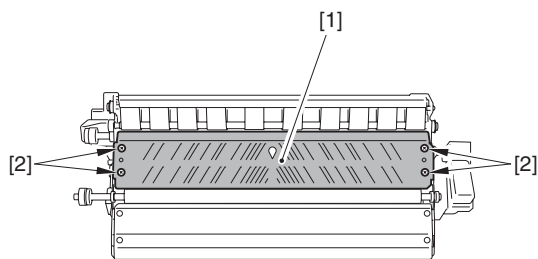
F-8-283

7) Release the lever [1] and detach the fixing merger unit (lower) [2].



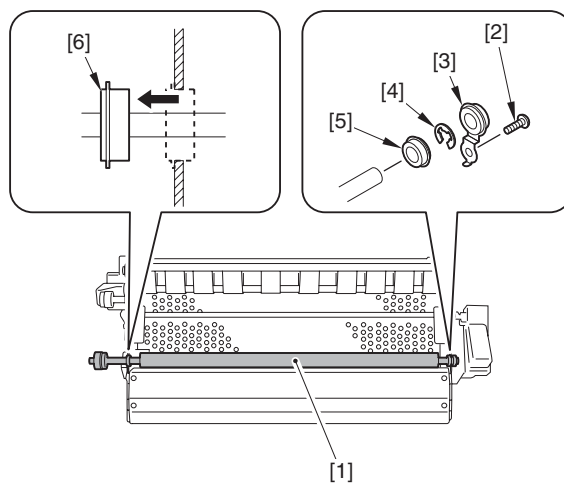
F-8-284

8) Detach the lower guide 1 [1].
- 4 screws [2]



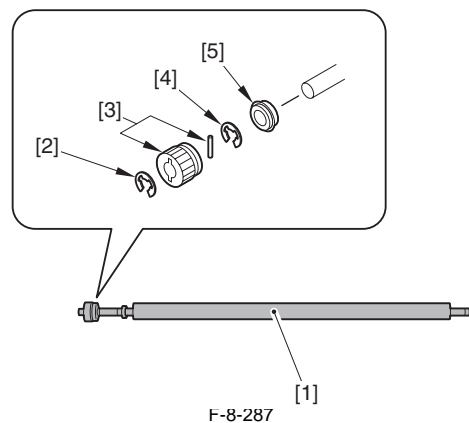
F-8-285

9) Detach the bypass feed roller 4 [1].
- 1 screw [2]
- 1 bushing (w/leaf spring) [3]
- 1 E ring [4]
- 1 bearing [5]
- 1 bearing [6] (removed from the groove)



F-8-286

10) Remove the following parts from the bypass feed roller 4 [1].
- 1 E ring [2]
- 1 gear (w/dowel pin) [3]
- 1 E ring [4]
- 1 bearing [5]

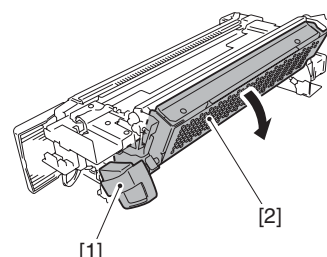


F-8-287

8.14.13.7 Detaching Bypass Decurler Driven Roller

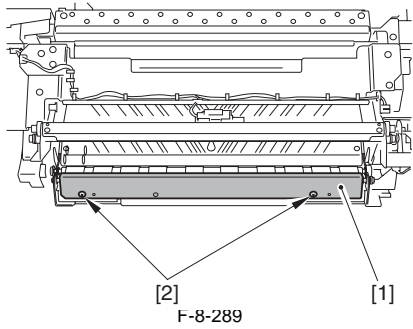
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

1) Detach the fixing merger path unit.
2) Release the lever [1] and open the fixing merger unit (lower) [2].

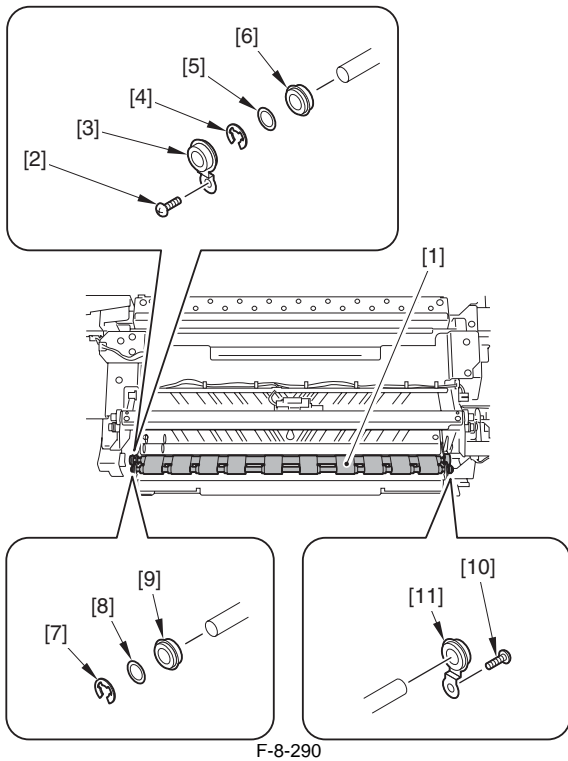


F-8-288

3) Detach the inlet guide [1].
- 2 screws [2]

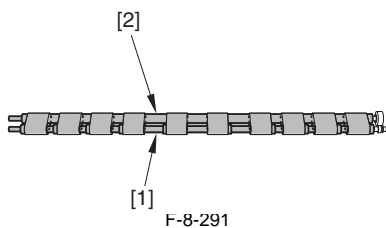


- 4) Detach the feed belt assembly [1].
- Front side (upper)
 - 1 screw [2]
 - 1 bushing (w/leaf spring) [3]
 - 1 E ring [4]
 - 1 washer [5]
 - 1 bearing [6]
 - Front side (lower)
 - 1 E ring [7]
 - 1 washer [8]
 - 1 bearing [9]
 - Rear side
 - 1 screw [10]
 - 1 bushing (w/leaf spring) [11]



- 5) Detach the bypass decurler driven roller [1].

⚠ Be sure to clean the bypass decurler driven roller [2] with lint-free paper.

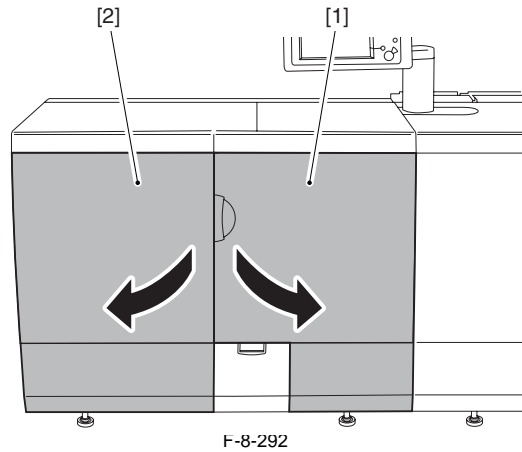


8.14.14 Tandem Feed Assembly

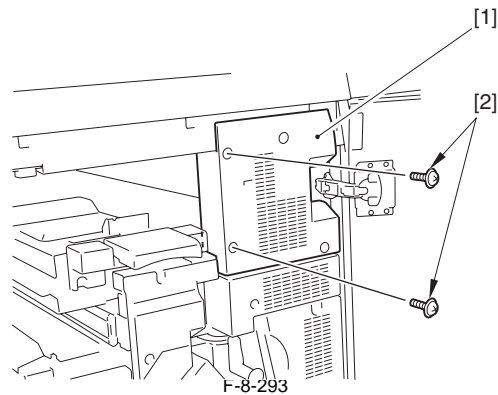
8.14.14.1 Removing Tandem Feed Unit

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

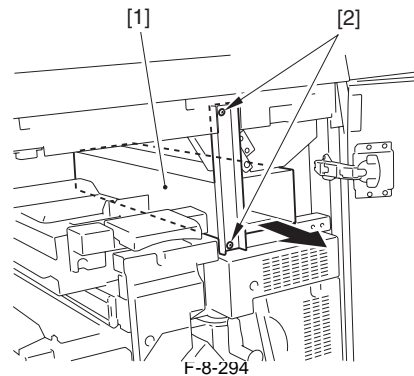
- 1) Open the sub station front right cover [1] and front left cover [2].



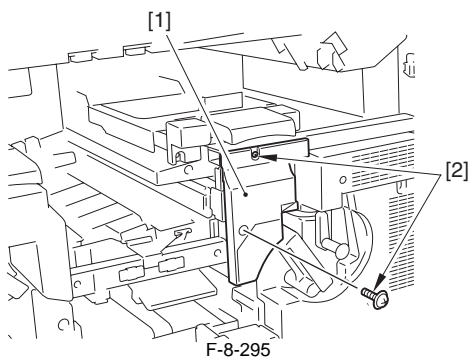
- 2) Detach the sub station inner cover [1].
- 2 screws [2]



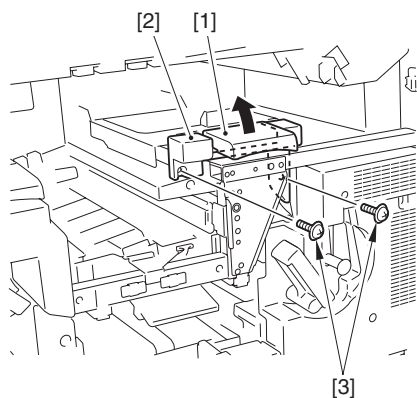
- 3) Remove the cooling duct [1].
- 2 screws [2]



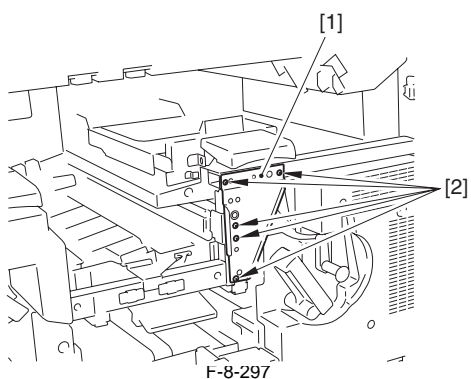
- 4) Detach the tandem feed cover [1].
- 2 screws [2]



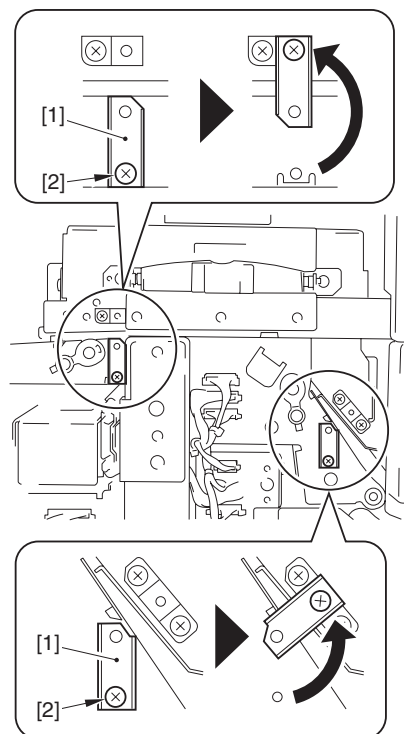
- 5) Lift up the lever (C-A1) [1], and detach the tandem inner cover [2].
- 2 screws [3]



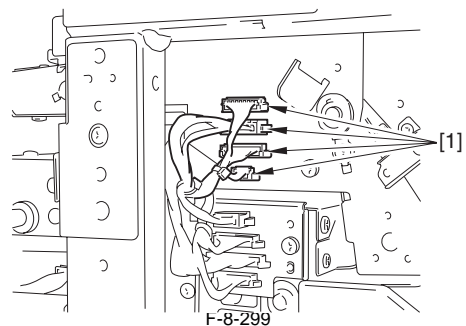
- 6) Remove the reinforcement plate [1].
- 4 screws [2]



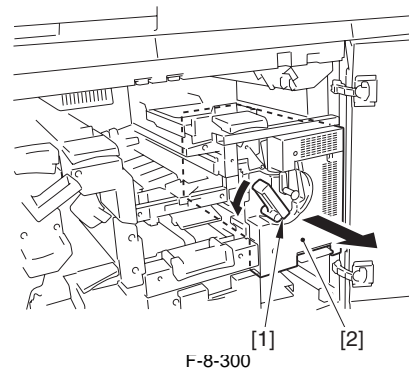
- 7) Shift the 2 guide stoppers [1].
- 1 screw [2] for each stopper



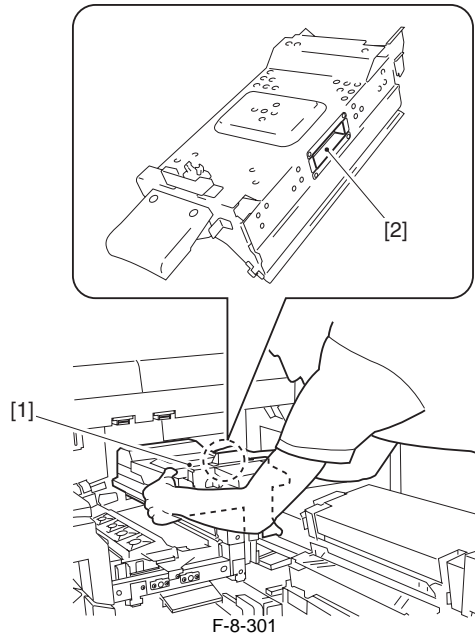
- 8) Disconnect the 4 connectors [1].



- 9) Shift the lever (C-A4) [1] toward the direction of the arrow, and pull out the primary fixing assembly [2].

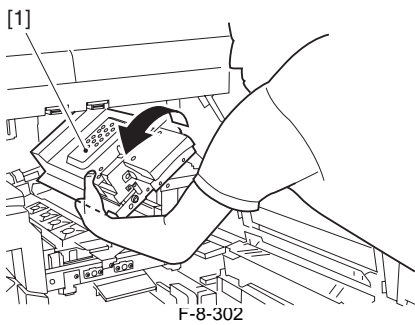


- 10) Insert hands from top of the machine's frame, and hold the tandem unit [1] firmly with both hands. (Hold the grip [2] with right hand.)



F-8-301

1) Pull out the tandem feed unit [1] toward the front, and disengage the positioning pin; then, remove the unit by rotating in a counterclockwise direction.



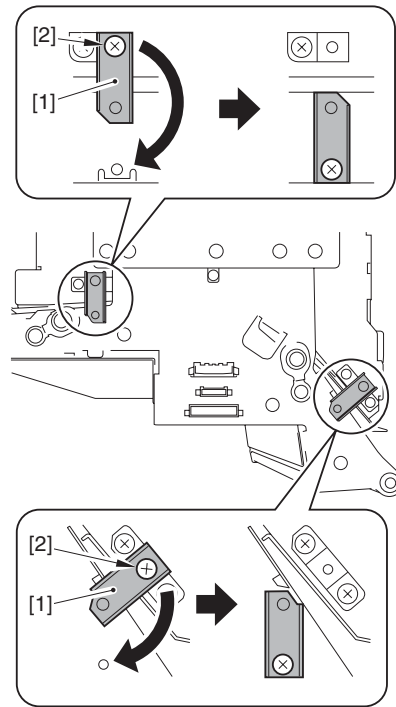
F-8-302

8.14.15 Tandem Feed Roller

8.14.15.1 Detaching Tandem Feed Roller 1, Tandem Feed Roller 2

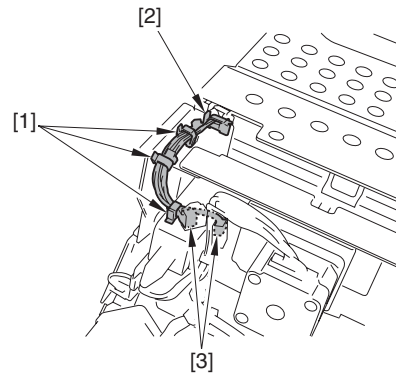
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- 1) Detach the tandem feed unit.
- 2) Return the 2 guide stoppers [1] to the original location.
 - 1 screw [2]



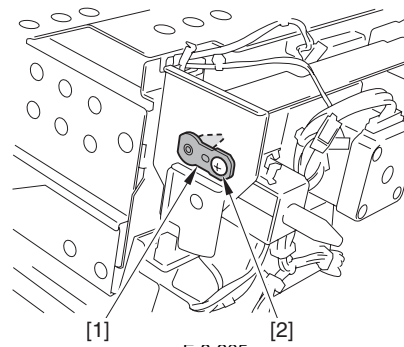
F-8-303

- 3) Remove the following parts.
 - Harness (3 wire saddles [1], 1 edge saddle [2])
 - 2 connectors [3]



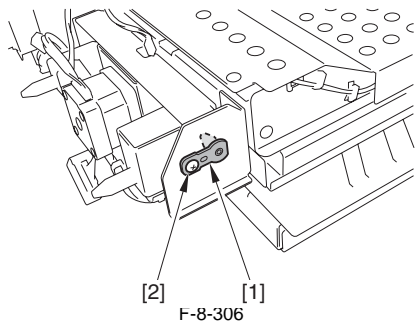
F-8-304

- 4) Remove the positioning pin (right) [1].
 - 1 screw [2]



F-8-305

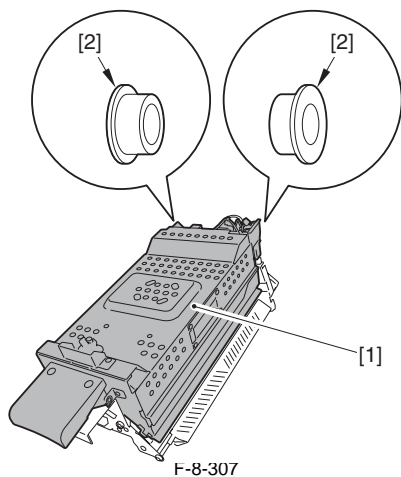
- 5) Remove the positioning pin (left) [1].
 - 1 screw [2]



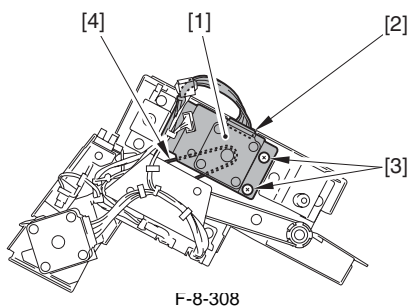
6) Detach the tandem feed unit (upper) [1].



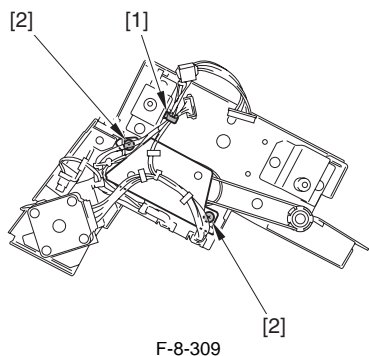
The bushing [2] is put in the hole (left and right) of the positioning pin. Be sure not to lose it.



7) Detach the motor assembly [1].
- 1 connector [2]
- 2 screws [3]
- 1 belt [4]

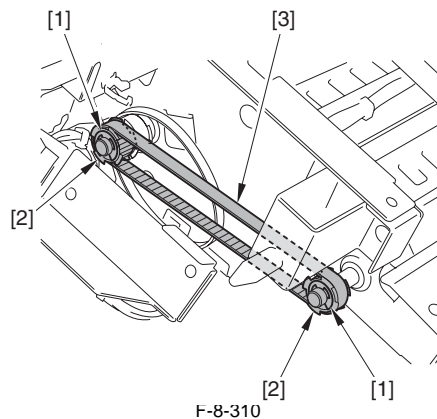


8) Remove the following parts.
- Harness (1 wire saddle [1])
- 2 screws [2]

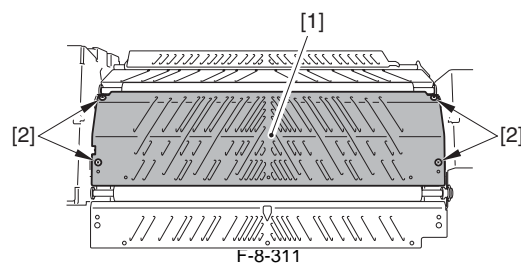


9) Remove the following parts.

- 2 E rings [1]
- 2 pulleys (w/dowel pin) [2]
- 1 belt [3]

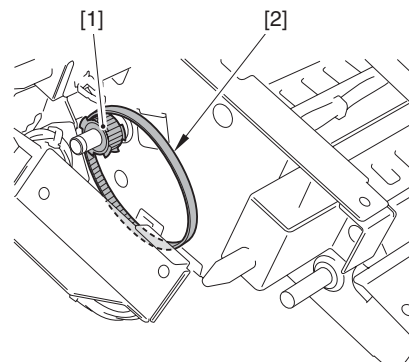


10) Detach the lower guide plate [1].
- 4 screws [2]

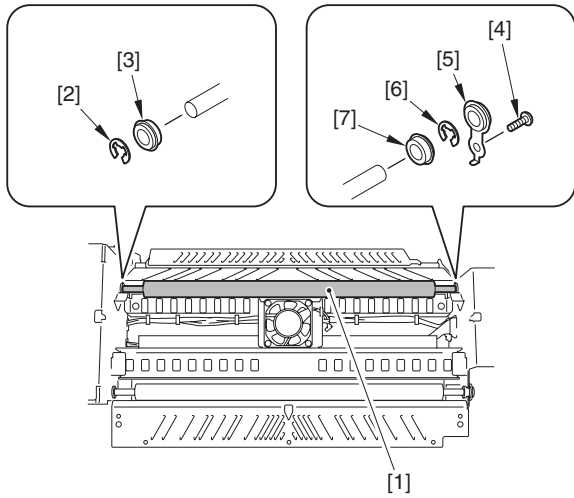


When detaching the tandem feed roller 1

- 11) Remove the following parts.
- 1 pulley (w/dowel pin) [1]
 - 1 belt [2]



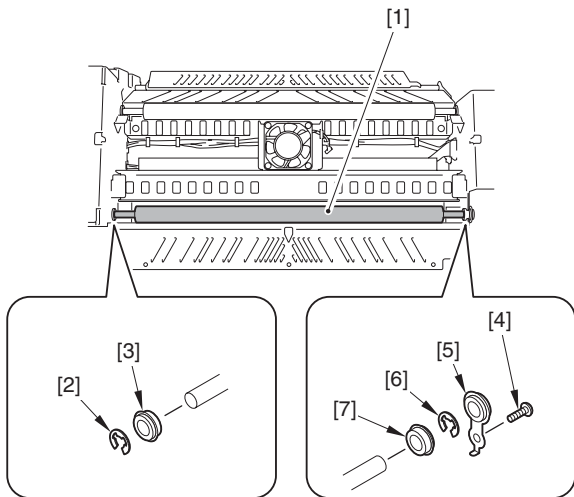
- 12) Detach the tandem feed roller 1 [1].
- Front side
 - 1 E ring [2]
 - 1 bearing [3]
 - Rear side
 - 1 screw [4]
 - 1 bushing (w/leaf spring) [5]
 - 1 E ring [6]
 - 1 bearing [7]



F-8-313

When detaching the tandem feed roller 2

- 1) Detach the tandem feed roller 2 [1].
- Front side
 - 1 E ring [2]
 - 1 bearing [3]
- Rear side
 - 1 screw [4]
 - 1 bushing (w/leaf spring) [5]
 - 1 E ring [6]
 - 1 bearing [7]

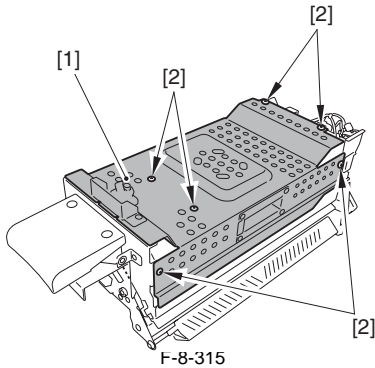


F-8-314

8.14.15.2 Detaching Tandem Driven Roller 1

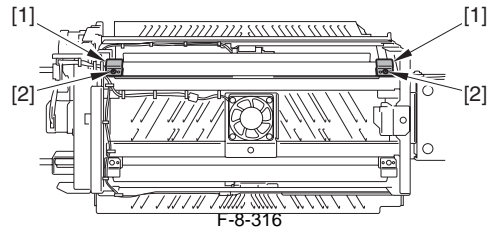
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- 1) Detach the tandem feed unit.
- 2) Detach the tandem feed unit upper cover [1].
- 6 screws [2]



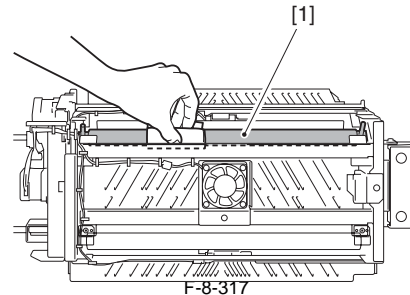
F-8-315

- 3) Remove the 2 spring retainers [1].
- 1 screw [2]



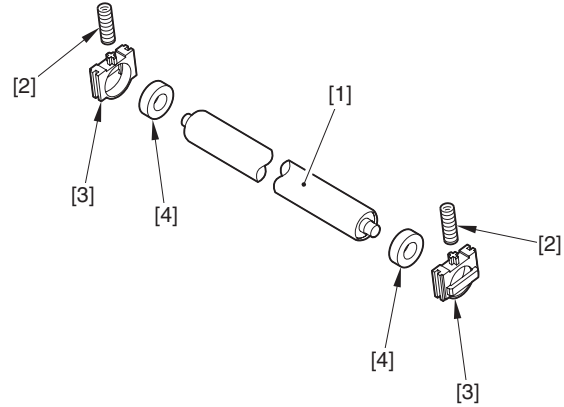
F-8-316

- 4) To avoid touching directly the roller, detach the tandem driven roller 1 [1] together with the holder using a lint-free paper, etc.



F-8-317

- 5) Remove the following parts from the tandem driven roller 1 [1].
- 2 springs [2]
- 2 bearing holders [3]
- 2 bearings [4]

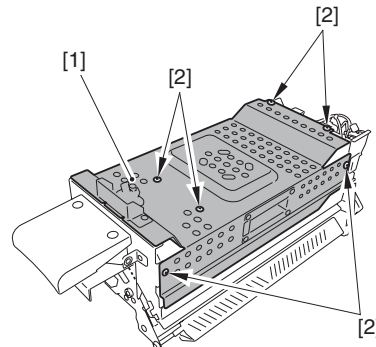


F-8-318

8.14.15.3 Detaching Tandem Driven Roller 2

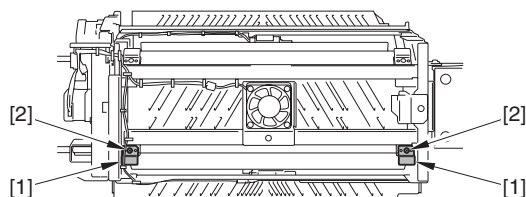
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- 1) Detach the tandem feed unit.
- 2) Detach the tandem feed unit upper cover [1].
- 6 screws [2]



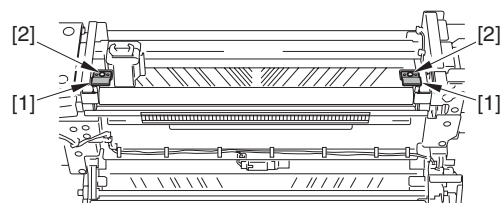
F-8-319

- 3) Remove the 2 spring retainers [1].
- 1 each screw [2]



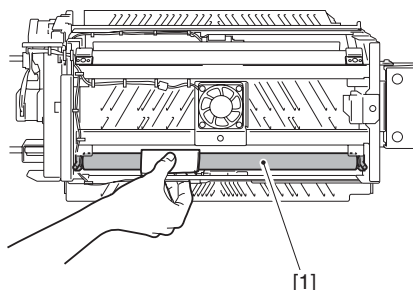
F-8-320

- 4) To avoid touching directly the roller, detach the tandem driven roller 2 [1] together with the holder using a lint-free paper, etc.



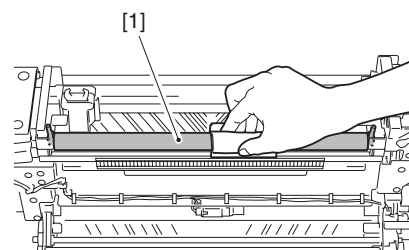
F-8-324

- 4) To avoid touching directly the roller, detach the tandem driven roller 3 [1] together with the holder using a lint-free paper, etc.



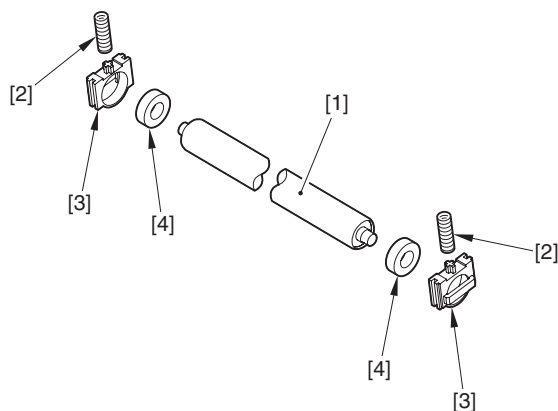
F-8-321

- 5) Remove the following parts from the tandem driven roller 2 [1].
- 2 springs [2]
 - 2 bearing holders [3]
 - 2 bearings [4]

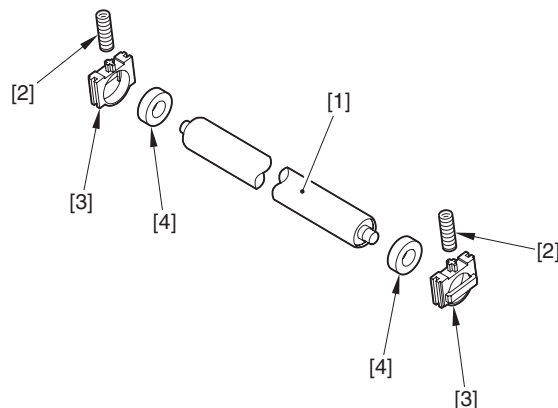


F-8-325

- 5) Remove the following parts from the tandem driven roller 3 [1].
- 2 springs [2]
 - 2 bearing holders [3]
 - 2 bearings [4]



F-8-322

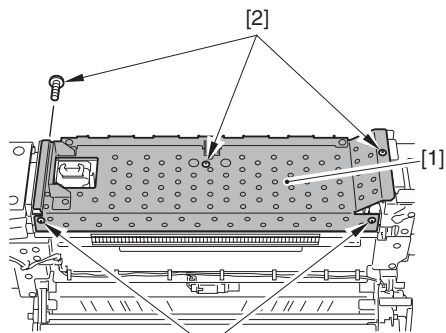


F-8-326

8.14.15.4 Detaching Tandem Driven Roller 3

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- 1) Detach the fixing merger path unit.
- 2) Detach the merger upper path cover [1].
- 5 screws [2]



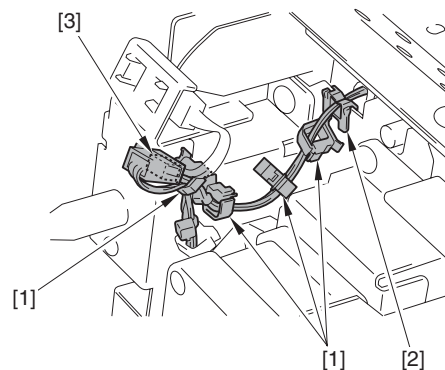
F-8-323

- 3) Remove the 2 spring retainers [1].
- 1 each screw [2]

8.14.15.5 Detaching Tandem Feed Roller 3

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- 1) Detach the fixing merger path unit.
- 2) Remove the following parts.
- Harness (4 wire saddles [1], 1 edge saddle [2])
- 1 connector [3]

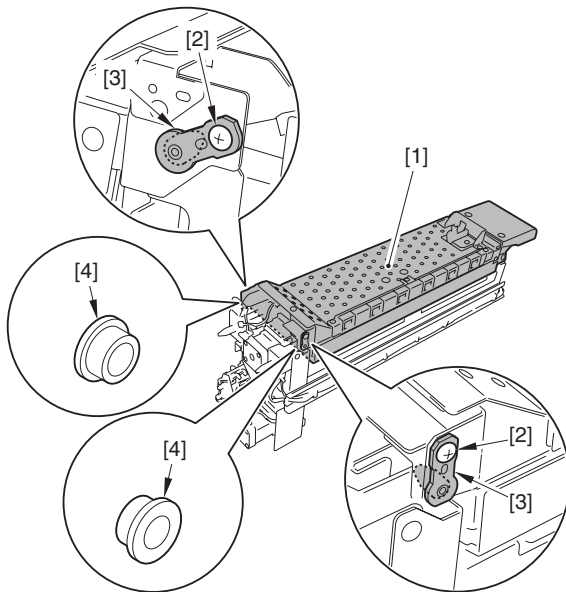


F-8-327

- 3) Detach the fixing merger unit (upper).
- 2 screws [2]
- 2 positioning pins [3]

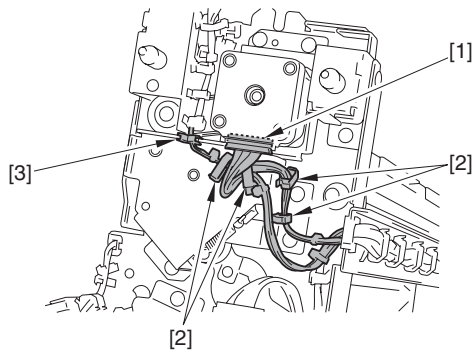


The bushing [4] is put on the hole (left and right) of the positioning pin. Be sure not to lose it.



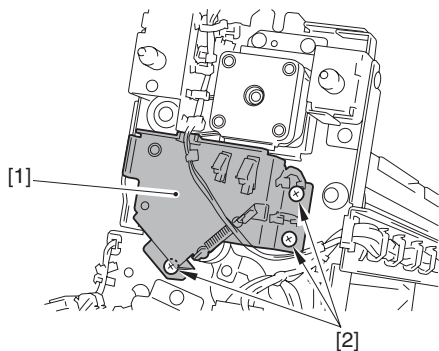
F-8-328

- 4) Remove the following parts.
 - 1 connector [1]
 - Harness (4 wire saddles [2], 1 edge saddle [3])



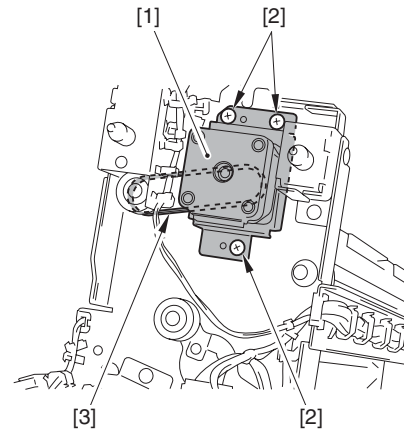
F-8-329

- 5) Detach the gear support plate [1].
 - 3 screws [2]



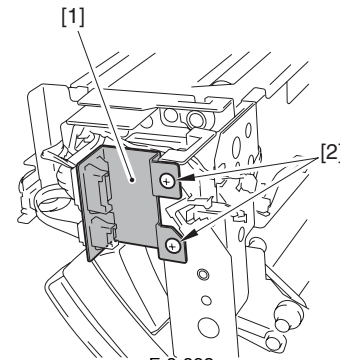
F-8-330

- 6) Detach the motor assembly [1].
 - 3 screws [2]
 - 1 belt [3]



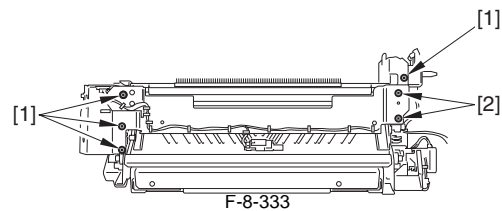
F-8-331

- 7) Remove the 2 screws [2] that fix the connector support plate [1].



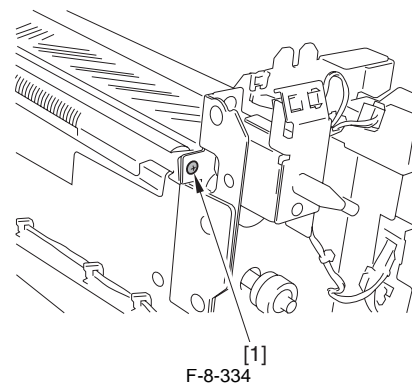
F-8-332

- 8) Remove the 4 screws [1] and loosen the 2 screws [2].



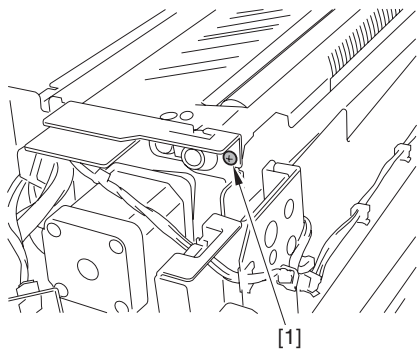
F-8-333

- 9) Remove the screw [1].



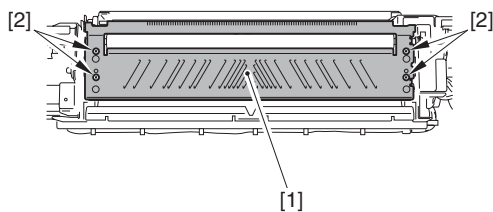
F-8-334

- 10) Remove the screw [1].



F-8-335

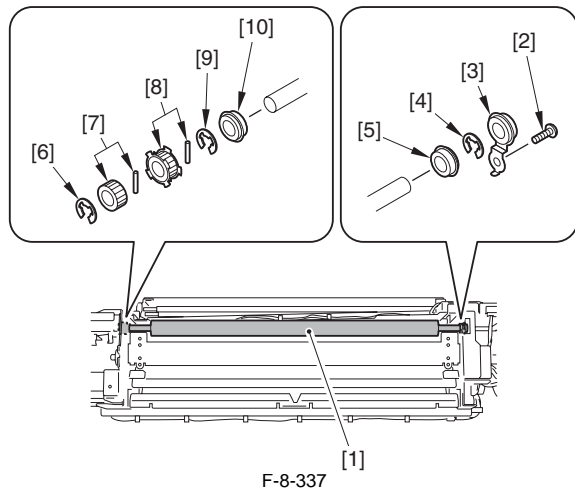
- 11) Detach the guide plate [1].
- 4 screws [2]



F-8-336

- 12) Detach the tandem feed roller 3 [1].

- Front side
 - 1 screw [2]
 - 1 bushing (w/leaf spring) [3]
 - 1 E ring [4]
 - 1 bearing [5]
- Rear side
 - 1 E ring [6]
 - 1 gear (w/dowel pin) [7]
 - 1 pulley (w/dowel pin) [8]
 - 1 E ring [9]
 - 1 bearing [10]



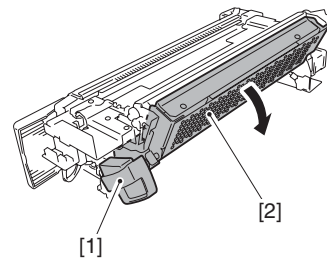
F-8-337

8.14.16 Feed Belt

8.14.16.1 Detaching Feed Belt (Merger Unit)

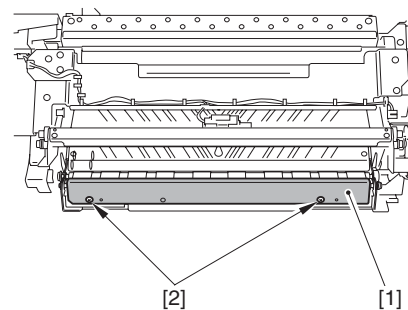
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- 1) Detach the fixing merger path unit.
- 2) Release the lever [1] and open the fixing merger unit (lower) [2].



F-8-338

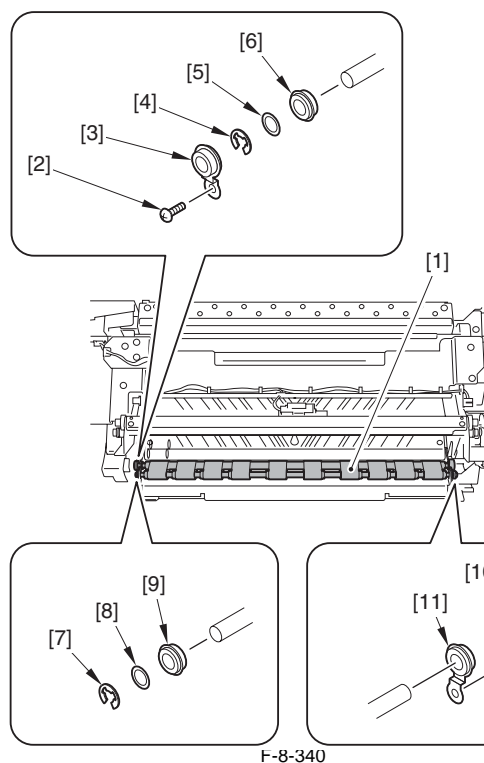
- 3) Detach the inlet guide [1].
- 2 screws [2]



F-8-339

- 4) Detach the feed belt assembly [1].

- Front side (upper)
 - 1 screw [2]
 - 1 bushing (w/leaf spring) [3]
 - 1 E ring [4]
 - 1 washer [5]
 - 1 bearing [6]
- Front side (lower)
 - 1 E ring [7]
 - 1 washer [8]
 - 1 bearing [9]
- Rear side
 - 1 screw [10]
 - 1 bushing (w/leaf spring) [11]

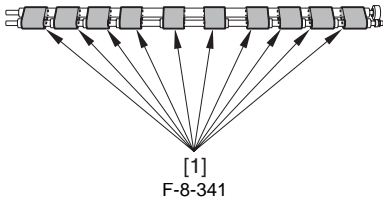


F-8-340

- 5) Detach the 10 feed belts [1].



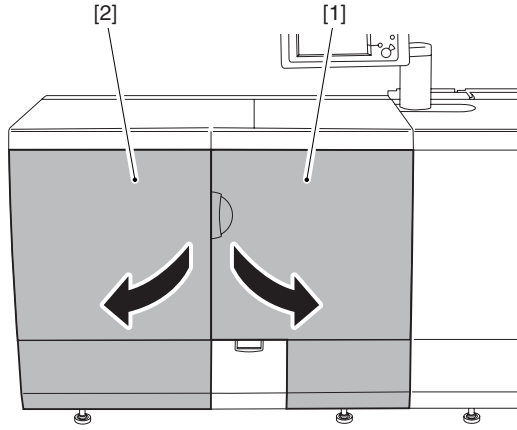
If the bypass decurler driven roller [2] is soiled, clean it with lint-free paper.



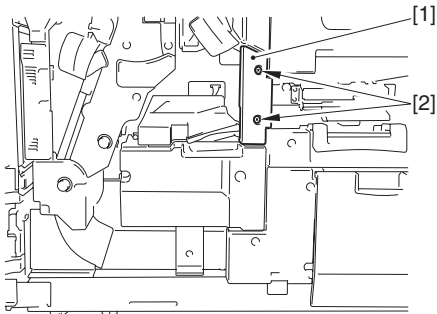
8.14.16.2 Detaching Feed Belt (Duplexing Decurler)

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

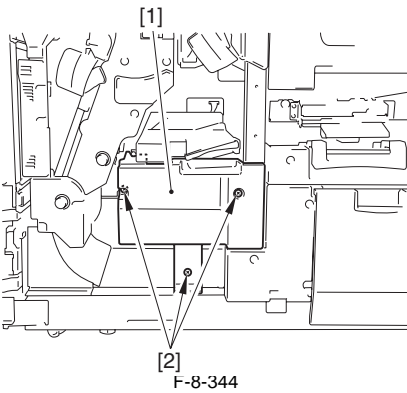
1) Open the sub station front right cover [1] and the front left cover [2].



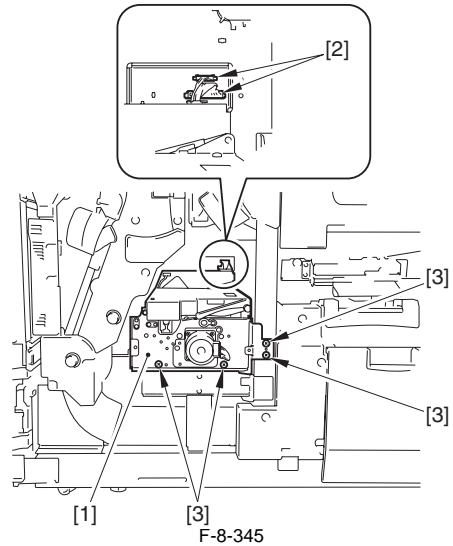
2) Remove the sub station internal cover 3 [1].
- 2 screws [2]



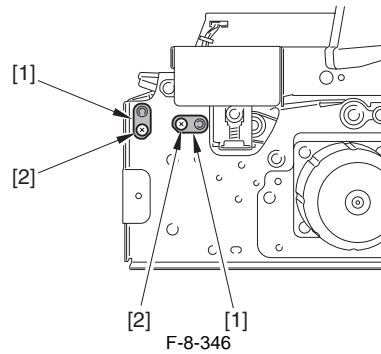
3) Remove the sub station duplexing inlet cover [1].
- 3 screws [2]



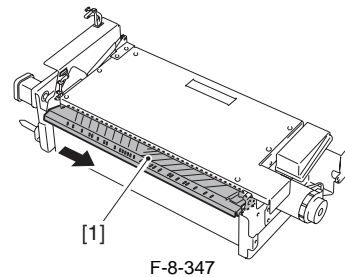
4) Remove the duplex decurler unit [1].
- 2 connectors [2]
- 4 screws [3]



5) Remove the 2 positioning pins [1].
- 1 each screw [2]

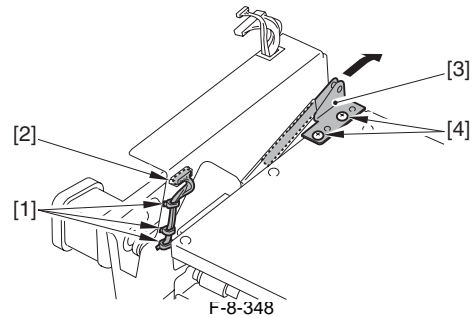


6) Move the inlet guide plate [1] in the direction of the arrow and detach it.

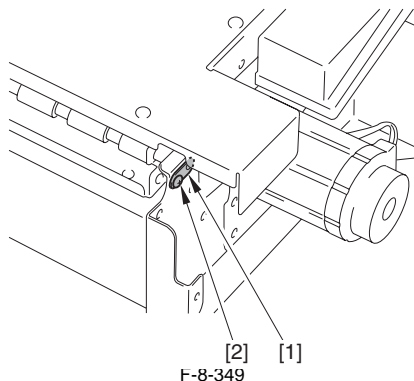


7) Remove the following parts.
- Harness (3 wire saddles [1])
- 1 connector [2]

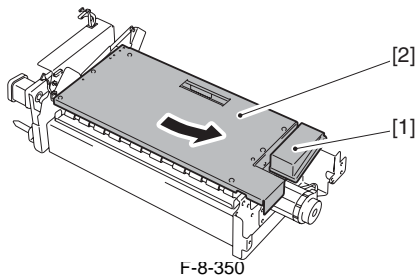
8) Extend the fixture [3] in the direction of the arrow.
- 2 screws [4]



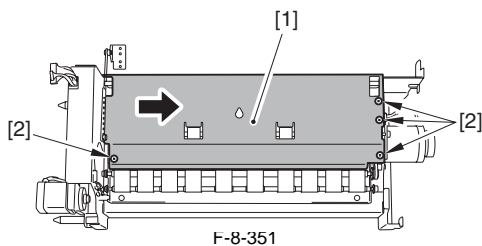
9) Remove the hinge pin [1].
- 1 screw [2]



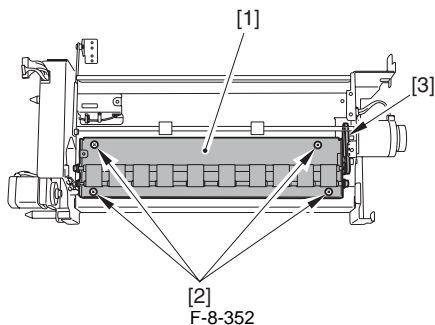
- 10) Release the lever [1] and detach the duplexing decurler unit (upper) [2] in the direction of the arrow.



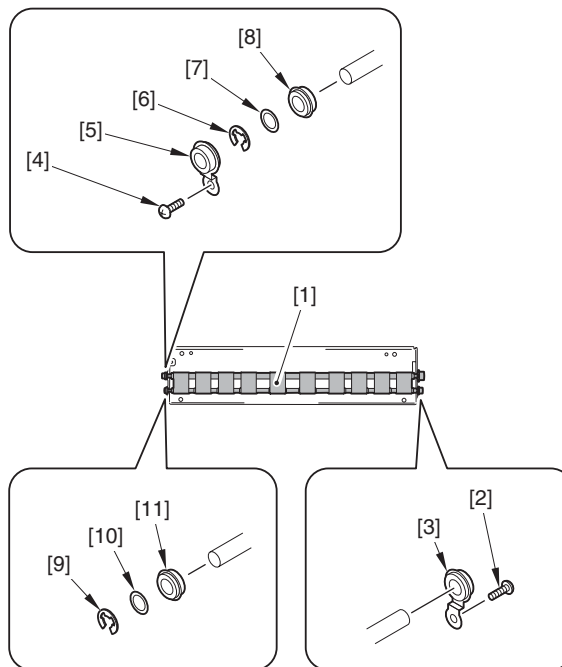
- 11) Detach the lower guide plate [1].
- 4 screws [2]



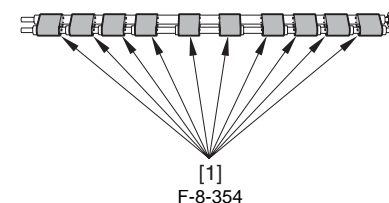
- 12) Remove the decurler frame [1].
- 4 screws [2]
- 1 belt [3]



- 13) Remove the feed belt assembly [1].
- Front side
 - 1 screw [2]
 - 1 bushing (w/leaf spring) [3]
 - Rear side (right)
 - 1 screw [4]
 - 1 bushing (w/leaf spring) [5]
 - 1 E ring [6]
 - 1 washer [7]
 - 1 bearing [8]
 - Rear side (left)
 - 1 E ring [9]
 - 1 washer [10]
 - 1 bearing [11]



- 14) Detach the 10 feed belts [1].

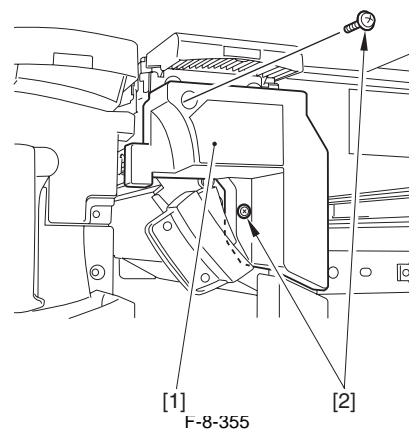


8.14.17 Merger pass Assembly

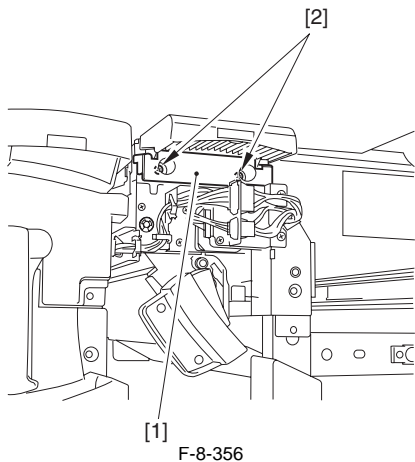
8.14.17.1 Removing the Merger Path Unit

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- 1) Remove the secondary fixing assembly.
- 2) Detach the fixing merger cover [1].
- 2 screws [2]

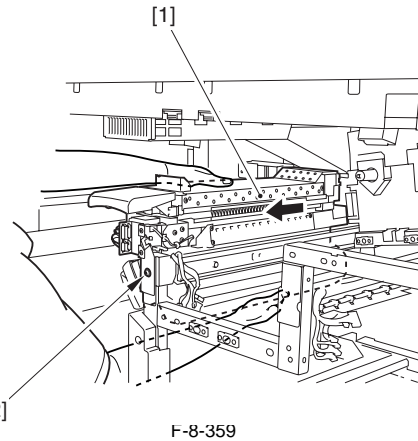


- 3) Detach the fixing merger cover (upper) [1].
- 2 screws [2]

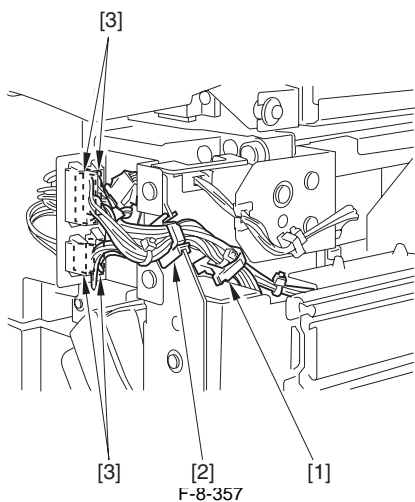


- 6) Hold the fixing merger unit [1] as shown in the figure, and remove it by pulling out toward the front.
- 1 screw [2]

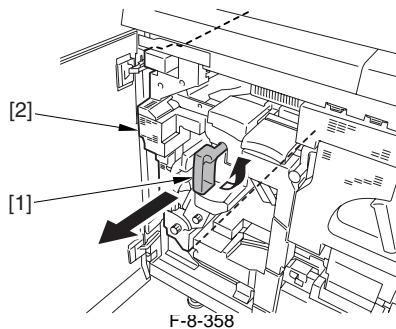
⚠
Be careful not to drop the fixing merger unit because it is heavy.



- 4) Remove the following parts.
- 1 harness (free the harness from the wire saddle [1])
- 1 harness (free the harness from the edge saddle [2])
- 4 connectors [3]



- 5) Shift the lever (C-D3) [1], and pull out the reverse/external deliver unit [2].



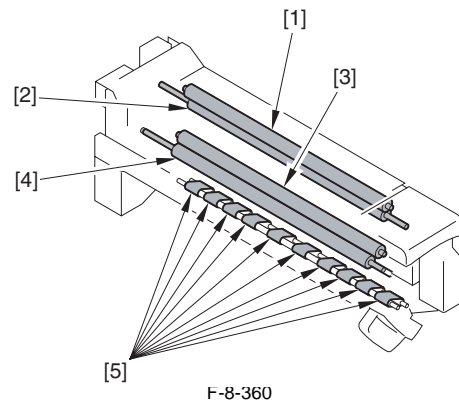
8.14.18 Feed Roller (Merger Assembly)

8.14.18.1 Removing the Rollers in Merger Path Unit

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- Tandem feed roller 3
- Tandem feed roller 4
- Tandem driven roller 3
- Tandem driven roller 4
- Bypass decurler feed belt

- 1) Detach the merger pass unit.
- 2) Detach the tandem feed roller 3 [1], tandem driven rollers 3 [2], tandem feed roller 4 [3], tandem driven rollers 4 [4] and 10 bypass decurler feed belts [5].

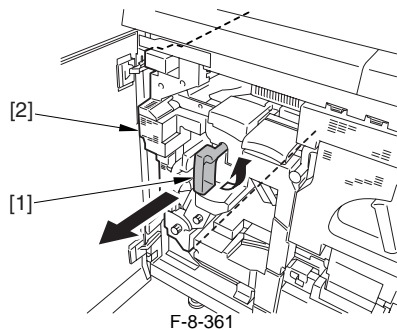


8.14.19 Duplexing Reversing Roller

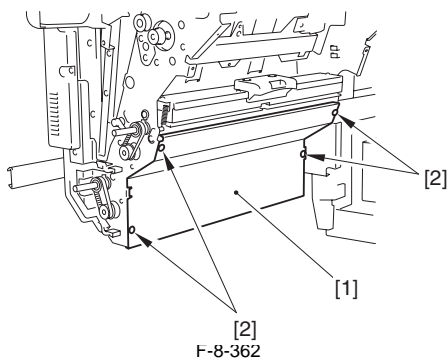
8.14.19.1 Removing Duplex Reverse Roller, Duplex Post-Reverse Roller

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- 1) Open the sub station front right cover and the front left cover.
- 2) Release the lever (C-D3) [1] and pull out the reverse/outer delivery unit [2].

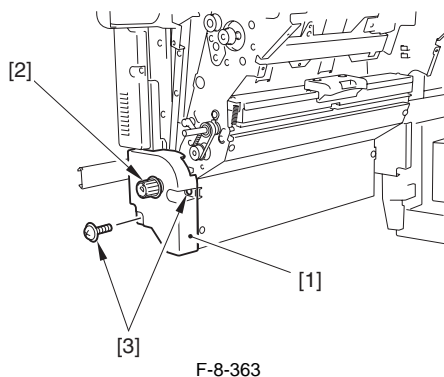


- 3) Detach the reverse lower cover [1].
- 4 screws [2]

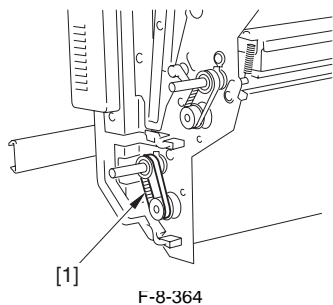


Removing Duplex Reverse Roller

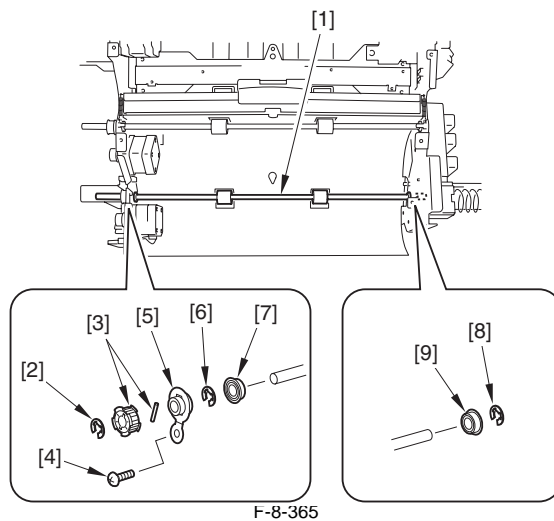
- 4) Detach the delivery reverse cover 5 [1].
- 1 knob (C-C3) [2]
- 2 screws [3]



- 5) Detach the belt [3].

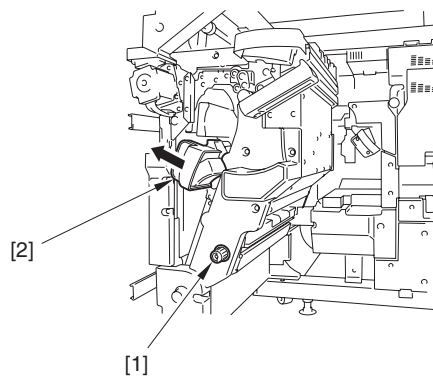


- 6) Remove the 2 duplex reverse rollers [1].
- Front side
- 1 E-ring [2]
- 1 pulley (with dowel pin) [3]
- 1 screw [4]
- 1 bushing (with leaf spring) [5]
- 1 E-ring [6]
- 1 bearing [7]
- Back side
- 1 E-ring [8]
- 1 bearing [9]

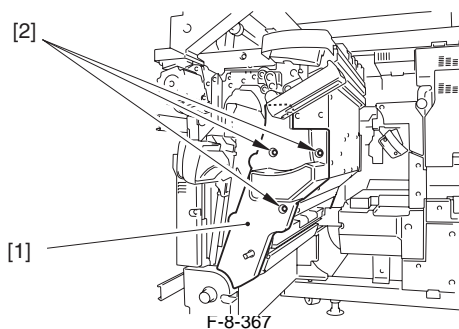


Removing the duplex post-reverse roller

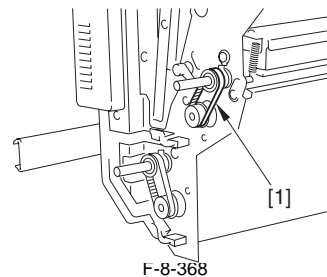
- 4) Remove the knob (C-D2) [1] and open the lever (C-C1) [2].



- 5) Detach the delivery reverse cover 3 [1].
- 3 screws [2]

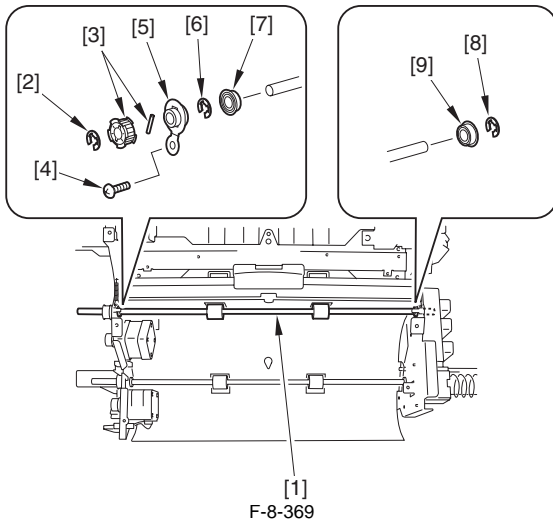


- 6) Detach the belt [3].



- 7) Remove the 2 duplex post-reverse rollers [1].
- Front side
- 1 E-ring [2]
- 1 pulley (with dowel pin) [3]
- 1 screw [4]
- 1 bushing (with leaf spring) [5]

- 1 E-ring [6]
- 1 bearing [7]
- Back side
- 1 E-ring [8]
- 1 bearing [9]

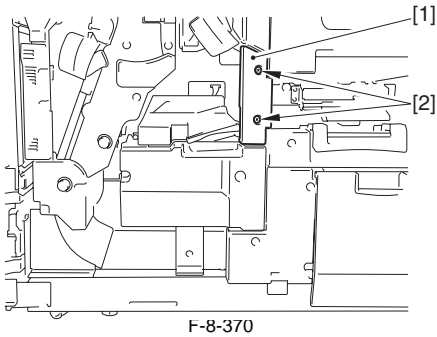


8.14.20 Duplex Decurler Feed Belt

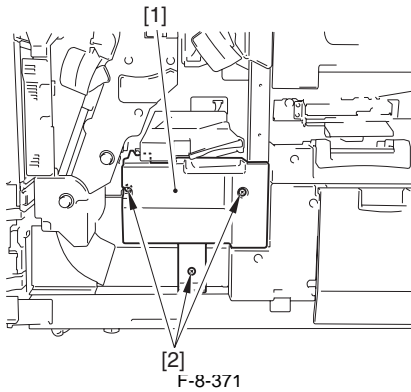
8.14.20.1 Removing Duplex Decurler Feeding Belt

imagePRESS C7000VP

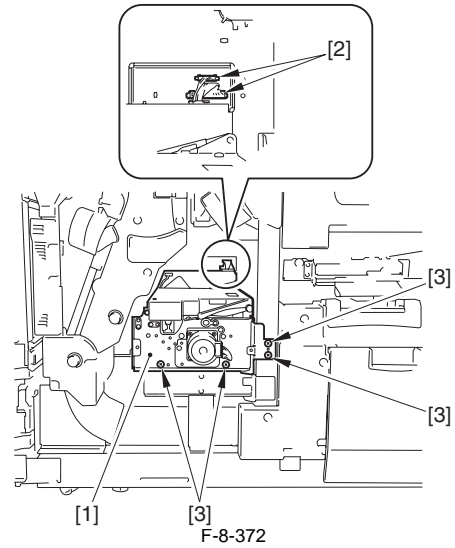
- 1) Open the sub station front right cover and sub station front left cover.
- 2) Detach the sub station inside cover 3 [1].
- 2 screws [2]



- 3) Detach the sub station duplex inlet cover [1].
- 3 screws [2]



- 4) Remove the duplex decurler unit [1].
- 2 connectors [2]
- 4 screws [3]

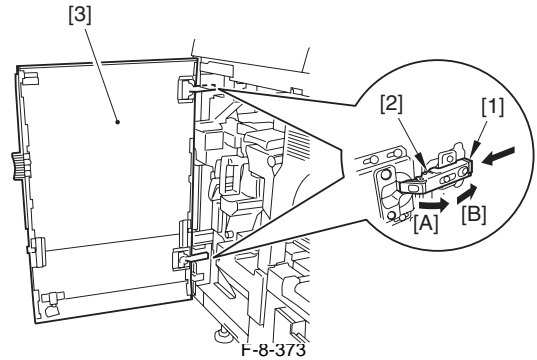


8.14.21 Delivery Roller

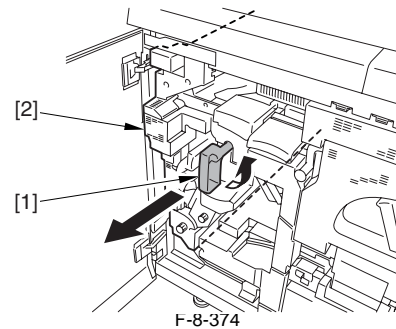
8.14.21.1 Removing Delivery Roller 1/Delivery Pre-Reverse Roller

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

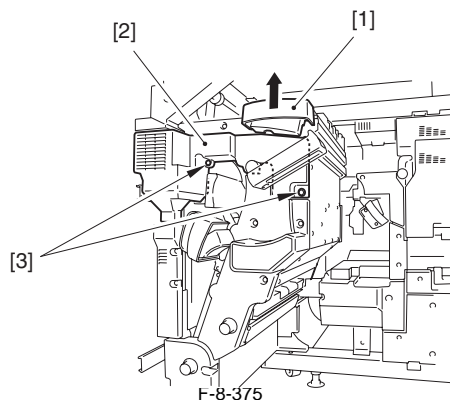
- 1) Open the sub station front right cover and the front left cover.
- 2) Push the 2 hinge release buttons (upper and lower) [1] and move the 2 hinges [2] in the direction of [A].
- 3) Move the 2 hinges [2] in the direction of [B] to remove them, and detach the main station front left cover [3].



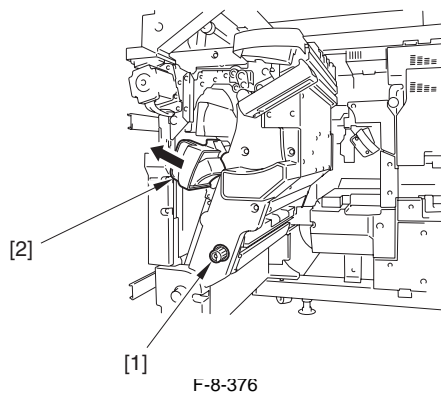
- 4) Release the lever (C-D3) [1] and pull out the reverse/outer delivery unit [2].



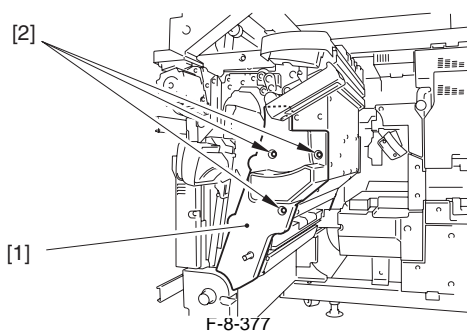
- 5) Detach the delivery reverse cover 2 [2] while lifting the lever (C-B2) [1].
- 2 screws [3]



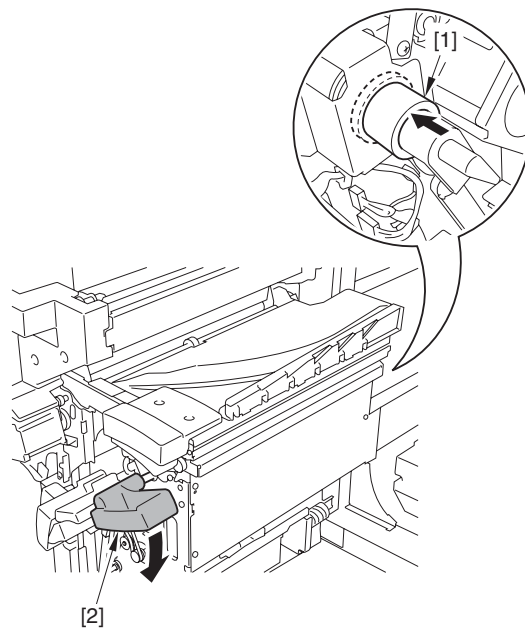
6) Remove the knob (C-D2) [1] and open the lever (C-C1) [2].



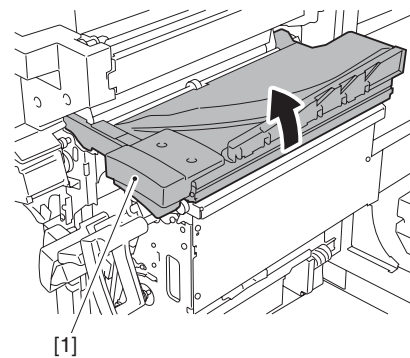
7) Detach the delivery reverse cover 3 [1].
- 3 screws [2]



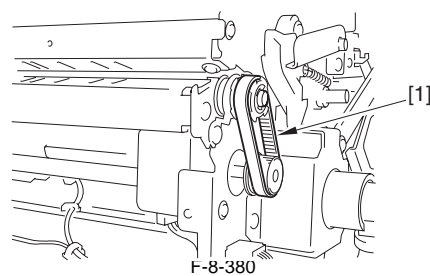
8) Push in the lever release material [1] at the rear side and lower the lever (C-D3) [2].



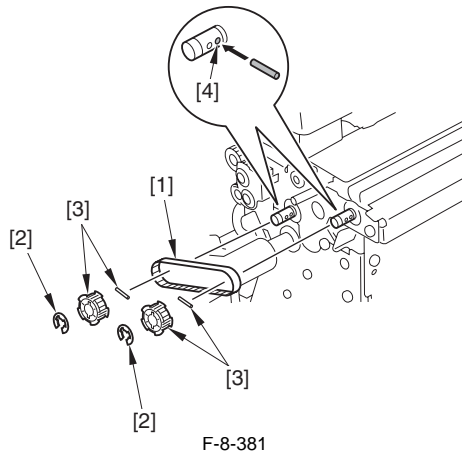
9) Lift the delivery upper guide unit [1] until it locks.



10) Remove the drive belt (rear side) [1].

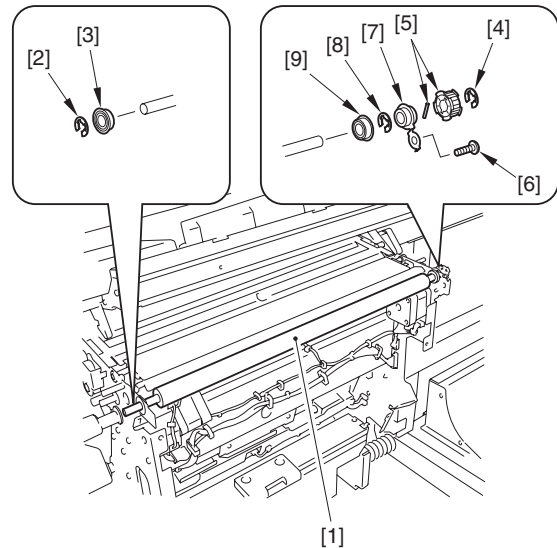


11) Remove the drive belt (front side) [1].
- 2 E rings [2]
- 2 pulleys (with dowel pin) [3]



F-8-381

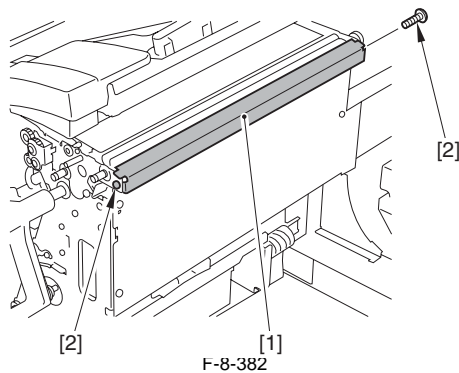
⚠ Points to Note When Fitting the Dowel Pin
 Be sure to fit the dowel pin into the hole [4] at the rear side.



F-8-383

Detaching Delivery Roller 1

- 12) Detach the delivery lower guide 1 [1].
 - 2 screws [2]



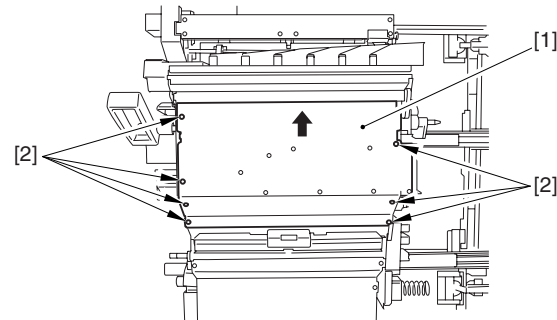
F-8-382

- 13) Detach the delivery roller 1 [1].

- Front side
 - 1 E ring [2]
 - 1 bearing [3]
- Rear side
 - 1 E ring [4]
 - 1 pulley (with dowel pin) [5]
 - 1 screw [6]
 - 1 bushing (with leaf spring) [7]
 - 1 E ring [8]
 - 1 bearing [9]

Removing Delivery Pre-reverse Roller

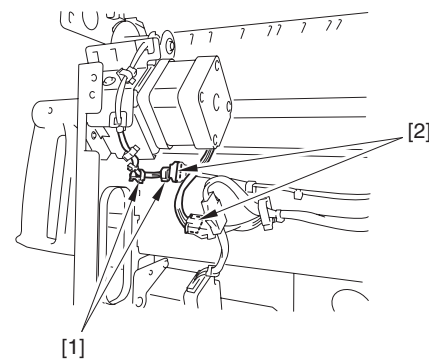
- 12) Lift the delivery reverse unit right cover [1] and remove it towards the front.
 - 7 screws [2]



F-8-384

- 13) Remove the following parts.

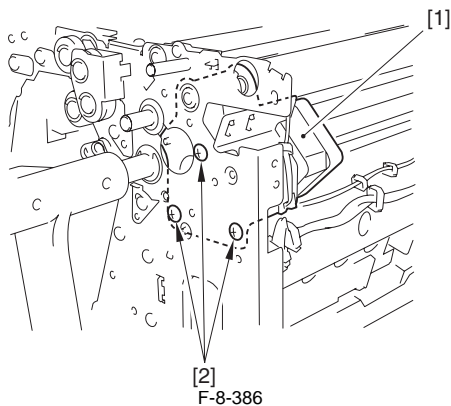
- 2 harnesses (Free the 2 harnesses from the 2 wire saddles [1])
- 2 connectors [2]



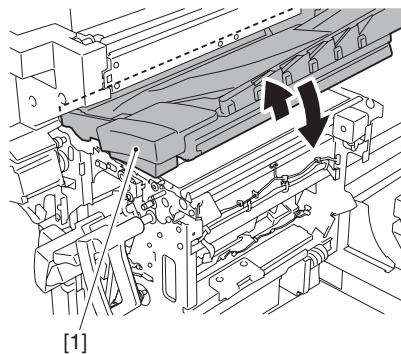
F-8-385

- 14) Remove the motor unit [1].

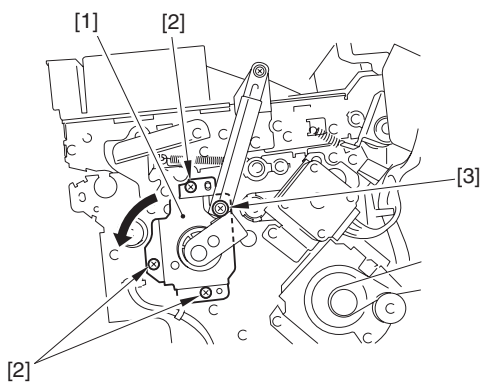
- 3 screws [2]



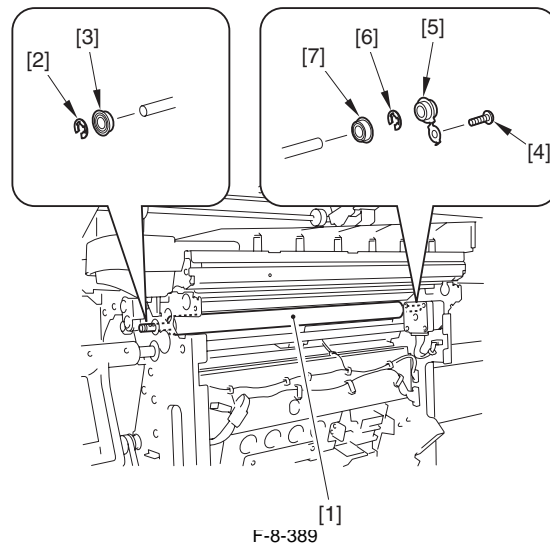
15) Lift delivery upper guide unit [1] a little (unlock), and let it down.



16) Move the lever lock support plate 1 [1] in the direction of the arrow.
 - 3 screws (binding) [2]
 - 1 screw (TP) [3]



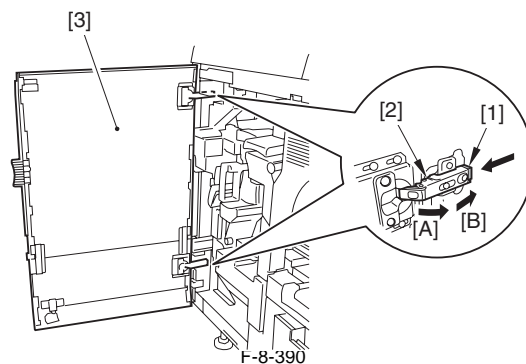
17) Detach the delivery pre-reverse roller [1].
 - Front side
 - 1 E ring [2]
 - 1 bearing [3]
 - Rear side
 - 1 screw [4]
 - 1 bushing (with leaf spring) [5]
 - 1 E ring [6]
 - 1 bearing [7]



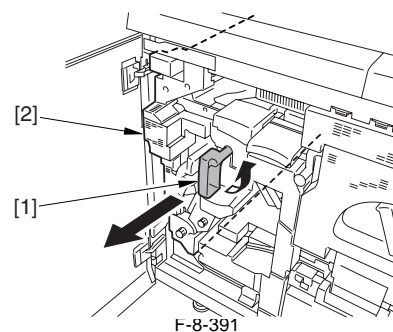
8.14.21.2 Removing Delivery Roller 3

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

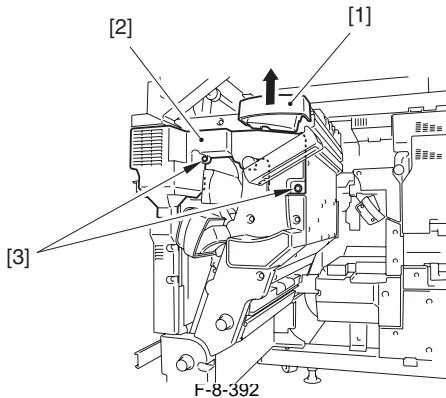
- 1) Open the sub station front right cover and the front left cover.
- 2) Push the 2 hinge release buttons (upper and lower) [1] and move the 2 hinges [2] in the direction of [A].
- 3) Move the 2 hinges [2] in the direction of [B] to remove them, and detach the main station front left cover [3].



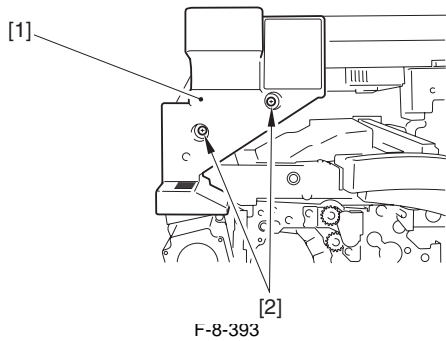
4) Release the lever (C-D3) [1] and pull out the reverse/outer delivery unit [2].



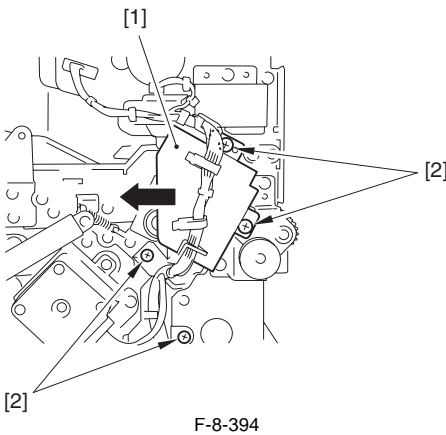
5) Detach the delivery reverse cover 2 [2] while lifting the lever (C-B2) [1].
 - 2 screws [3]



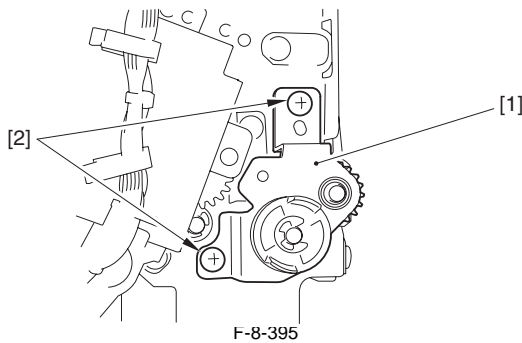
6) Detach the delivery reverse cover 1 [1].
- 2 screws [2]



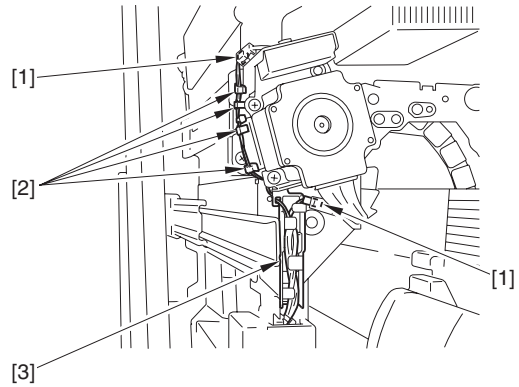
7) Move the plate [1] at the rear of the reverse/outer delivery unit in the direction of the arrow.
- 4 screws [2]



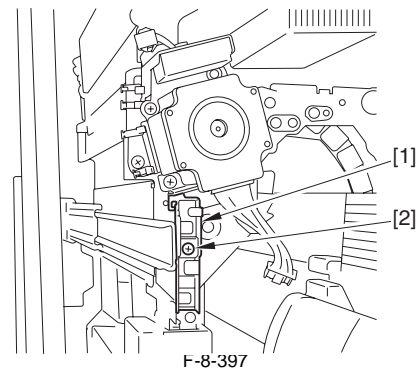
8) Remove the one-way clutch unit [1].
- 2 screws [2]



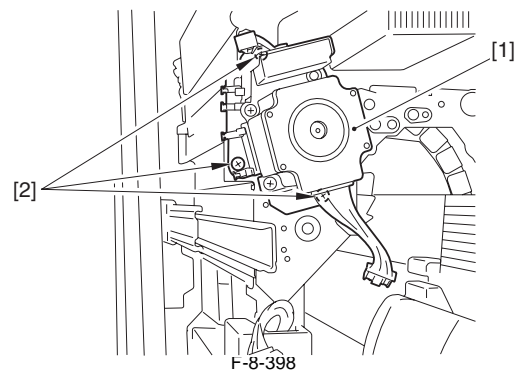
9) Remove the following parts.
- 2 connectors [1]
- Harness (Free the 4 harnesses from the 4 wire saddles [2])
- Harness (Free the harness from the harness guide [3])



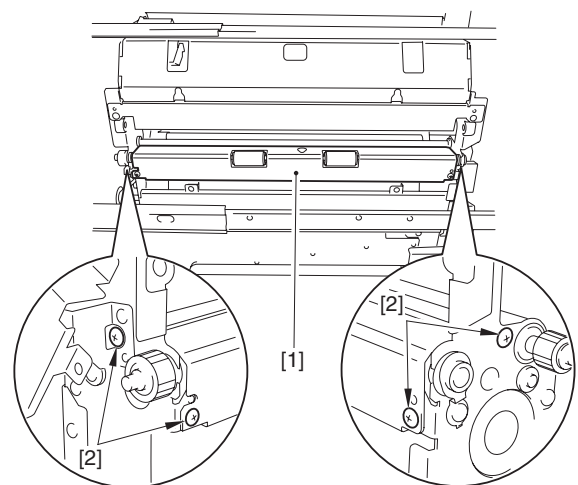
10) Remove the harness guide [1].
- 1 screw [2]



11) Remove the motor unit [1].
- 3 screws [2]

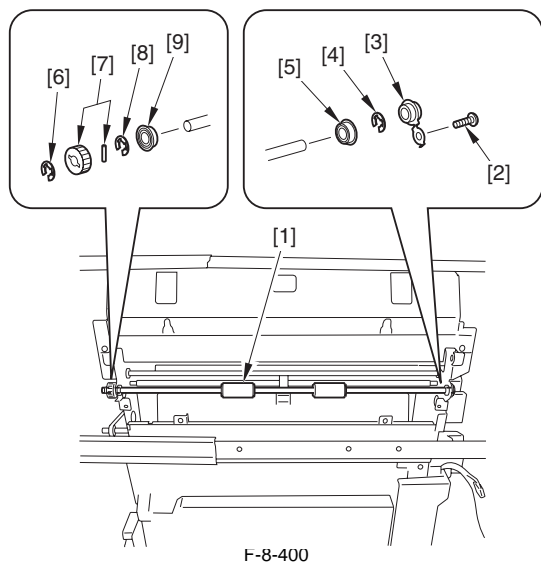


12) Detach the delivery lower guide 1 [1].
- 4 screws [2]



13) Detach the delivery roller 3 [1].

- Front side
 - 1 screw [2]
 - 1 bushing (with leaf spring) [3]
 - 1 E ring [4]
 - 1 bearing [5]
- Rear side
 - 1 E ring [6]
 - 1 gear (with dowel pin) [7]
 - 1 E ring [8]
 - 1 bearing [9]



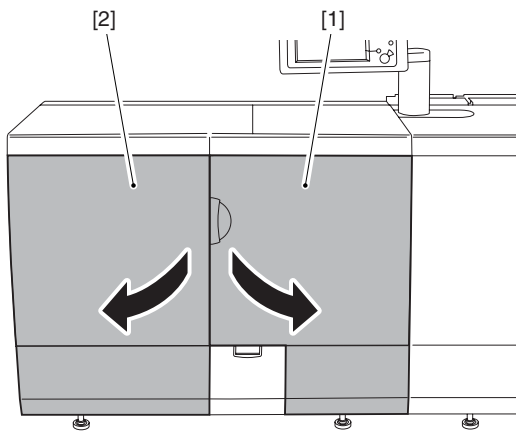
F-8-400

8.14.22 Delivery Flapper Spring

8.14.22.1 Removing Delivery Flapper Spring

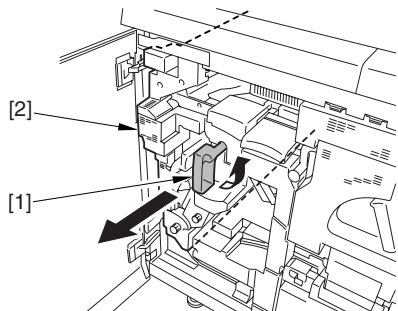
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- 1) Open the sub station front right cover [1] and the front left cover [2].



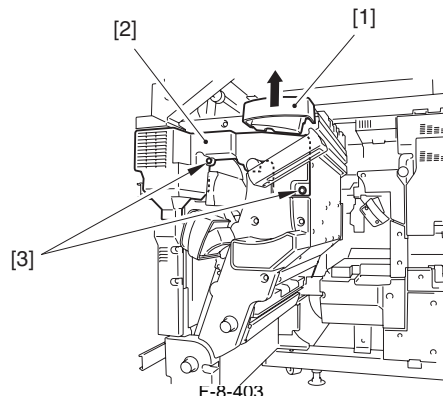
F-8-401

- 2) Release the lever (C-D3) [1] and pull out the reverse/outer delivery unit [2].



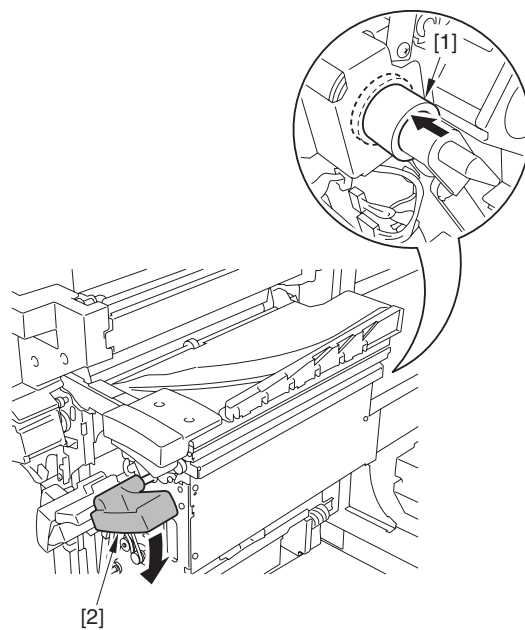
F-8-402

- 3) Detach the delivery reverse cover 2 [2] while lifting the lever (C-B2) [1].
 - 2 screws [3]



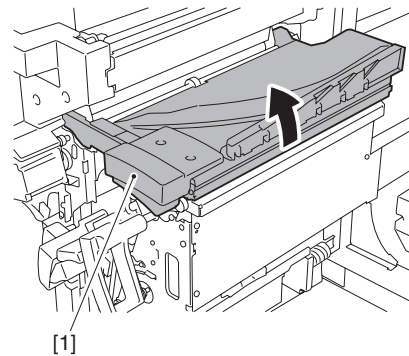
F-8-403

- 4) Push in the lever release material [1] at the rear side and lower the lever (C-D3) [2].



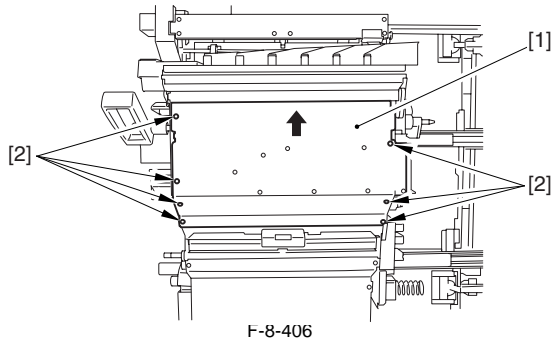
F-8-404

- 5) Lift the delivery upper guide unit [1] until it locks.



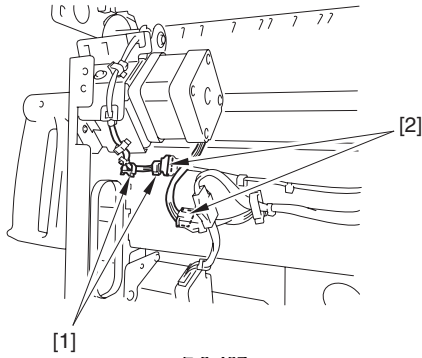
F-8-405

- 6) Lift the delivery reverse unit right cover [1] and remove it towards the front.
 - 7 screws [2]



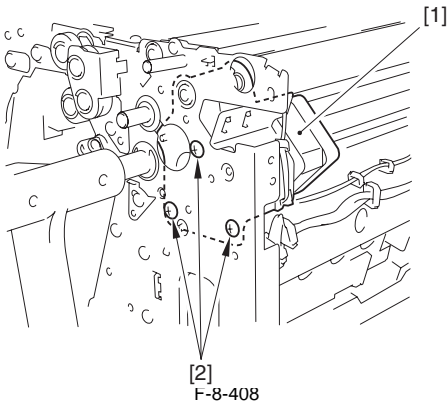
F-8-406

- 7) Remove the following parts.
- 2 harnesses (Free the 2 harnesses from the 2 wire saddles [1])
 - 2 connectors [2]



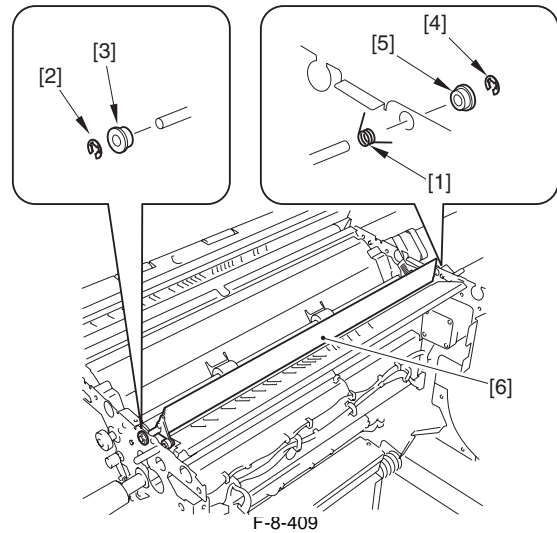
F-8-407

- 8) Remove the motor unit [1].
- 3 screws [2]



F-8-408

- 9) Detach the delivery flapper spring [1].
- Front side
 - 1 E ring [2]
 - 1 bushing [3]
 - Rear side
 - 1 E ring [4]
 - 1 bushing [5]
 - 1 flapper [6]



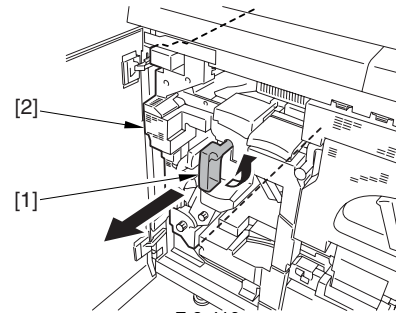
F-8-409

8.14.23 Delivery Reversing Roller

8.14.23.1 Removing Delivery Reverse Roller 1, Color Sensor Backup Roller, Delivery Reverse Roller 2

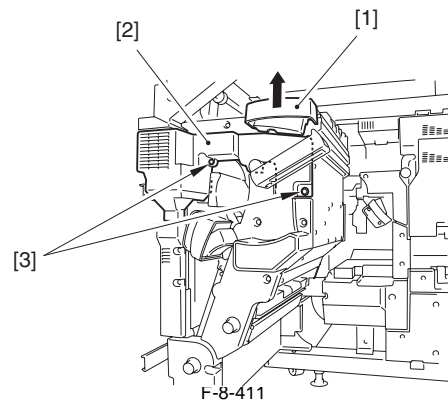
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- 1) Open the sub station front right cover and the front left cover.
- 2) Release the lever (C-D3) [1] and pull out the reverse/outer delivery unit [2].



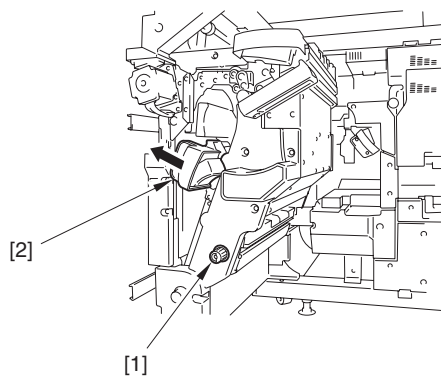
F-8-410

- 3) Detach the delivery reverse cover 2 [2] while lifting the lever (C-B2) [1].
- 2 screws [3]



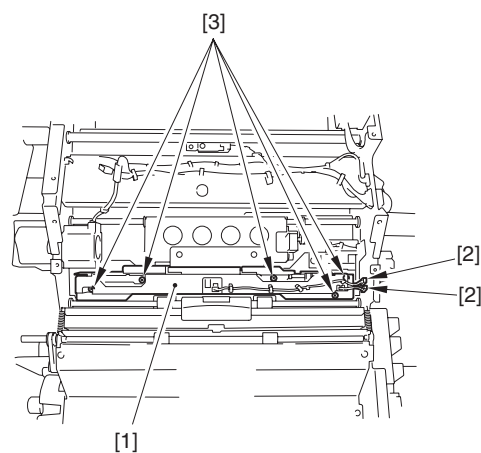
F-8-411

- 4) Remove the knob (C-D2) [1] and open the lever (C-C1) [2].



F-8-412

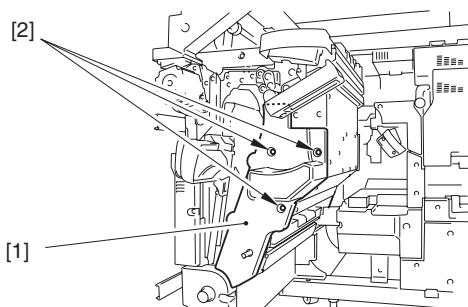
- 5) Detach the delivery reverse cover 3 [1].
- 3 screws [2]



F-8-416

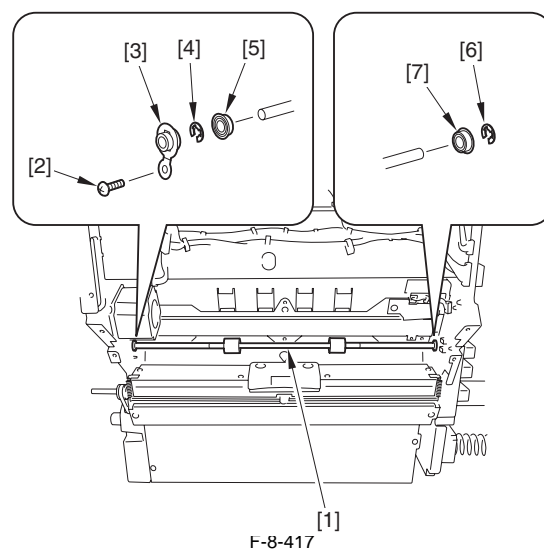
Removing Delivery Reverse Roller 2

- 9) Detach the delivery reverse roller 2 [1].
- Front side
 - 1 screw [2]
 - 1 bushing (with leaf spring) [3]
 - 1 E ring [4]
 - 1 bearing [5]
 - Rear side
 - 1 E ring [6]
 - 1 bearing [7]

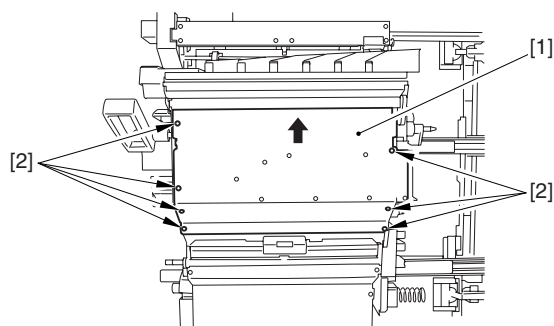


F-8-413

- 6) Lift the delivery reverse unit right cover [1] and remove it to the front.
- 7 screws [2]

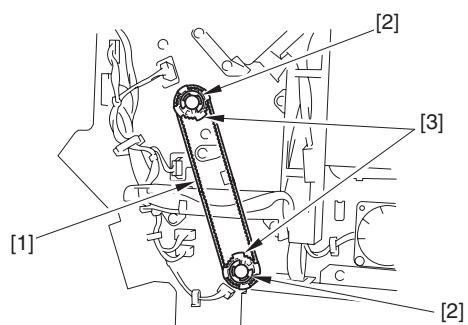


F-8-417



F-8-414

- 7) Remove the belt (rear) [1].
- 2 E rings [2]
- 2 pulleys (with dowel pin) [3]

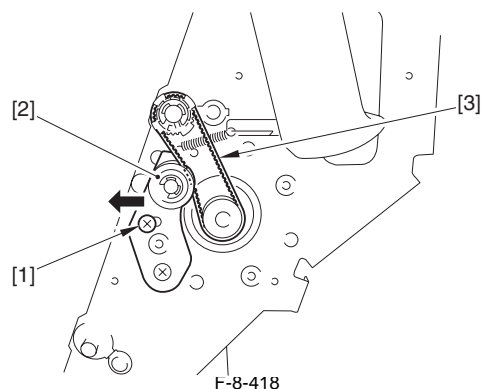


F-8-415

- 8) Detach the slide guide unit [1].
- 2 connectors [2]
- 5 screws [3]

Removing Delivery Reverse Roller 1, Color Sensor Backup Roller

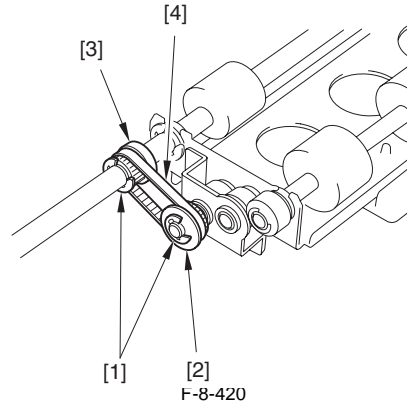
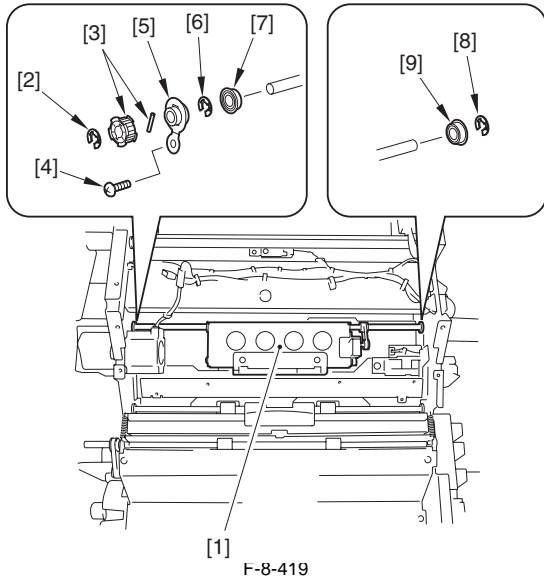
- 9) Loosen the screw [1] and release the tension [2]; then, remove the belt (front) [3].



F-8-418

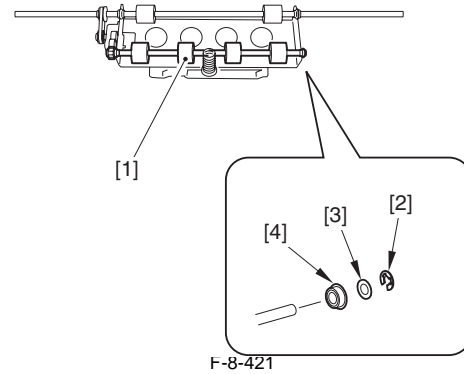
- 10) Detach the color sensor roller unit [1].
- Front side
- 1 E ring [2]

- 1 pulley (with dowel pin) [3]
- 1 screw [4]
- 1 bushing (with leaf spring) [5]
- 1 E ring [6]
- 1 bearing [7]
- Rear side
- 1 E ring [8]
- 1 bearing [9]

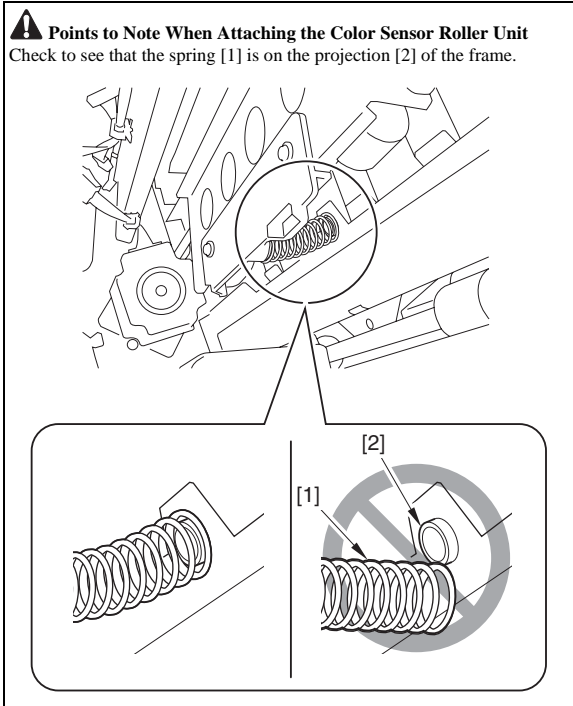
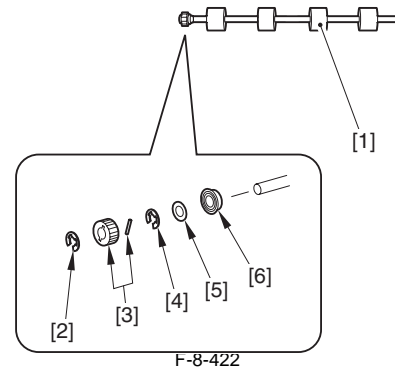


Removing Color Sensor Backup Roller

- 12) Detach the color sensor backup roller [1].
 - 1 E ring [2]
 - 1 washer [3]
 - 1 bearing [4]



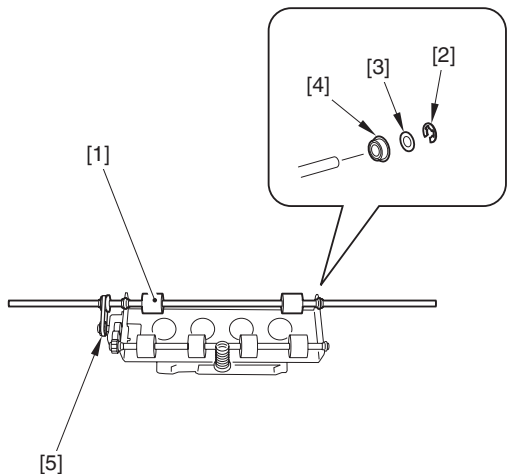
- 13) Remove the following parts from the color sensor backup roller [1].
 - 1 E ring [1]
 - 1 gear (with dowel pin) [2]
 - 1 E ring [3]
 - 1 washer [4]
 - 1 bearing [5]



- 11) Remove the following parts.
 - 2 E rings [1]
 - 1 pulley (with dowel pin) [2]
 - 1 pulley (with dowel pin) [3]
 - 1 belt [4]

Removing Delivery Reverse Roller 1

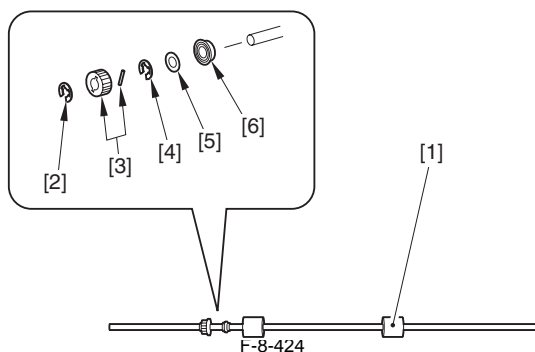
- 12) Detach the delivery reverse roller 1 [1].
 - 1 E ring [2]
 - 1 washer [3]
 - 1 bearing [4]
 - 1 belt [5]



F-8-423

13) Remove the following parts from the delivery reverse roller 1 [1].

- 1 E ring [2]
- 1 pulley (with dowel pin) [3]
- 1 E ring [4]
- 1 washer [5]
- 1 bearing [6]



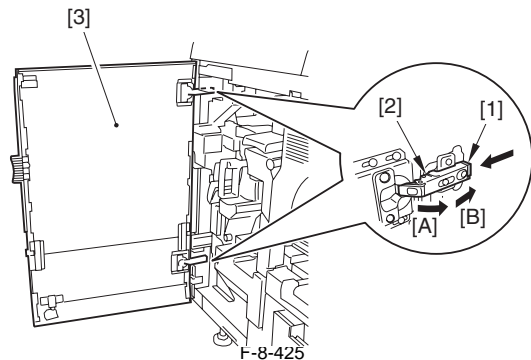
F-8-424

8.14.24 Delivery Decurler Roller 1

8.14.24.1 Removing Delivery Decurler Roller 1, Delivery Roller 2, Delivery Post-Reverse Roller, Delivery Pre-Reverse Driven Roller

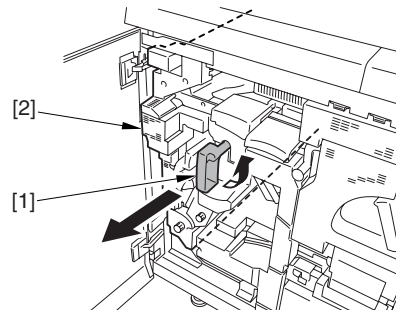
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- 1) Open the sub station front right cover and the front left cover.
- 2) Push the 2 hinge release buttons (upper and lower) [1] and move the 2 hinges [2] in the direction of [A].
- 3) Move the 2 hinges [2] in the direction of [B] to remove them, and detach the main station front left cover [3].



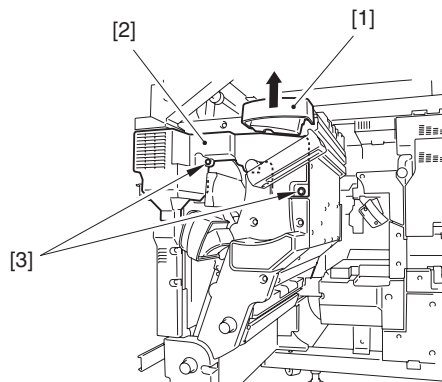
F-8-425

4) Release the lever (C-D3) [1] and pull out the reverse/outer delivery unit [2].



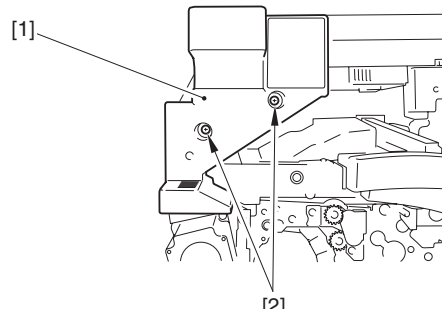
F-8-426

5) Detach the delivery reverse cover 2 [2] while lifting the lever (C-B2) [1].
- 2 screws [3]



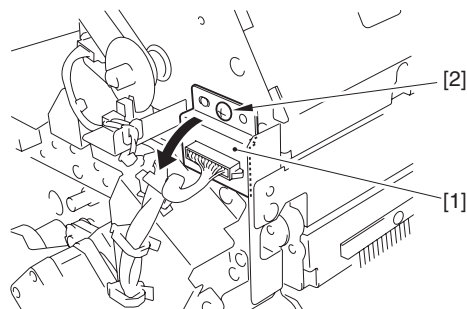
F-8-427

6) Detach the deliver reverse cover 1 [1].
- 2 screws [2]



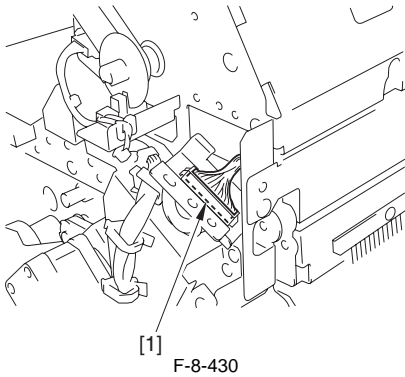
F-8-428

7) Tilt the connector support plate [1] to the front.
- 1 screw [2]

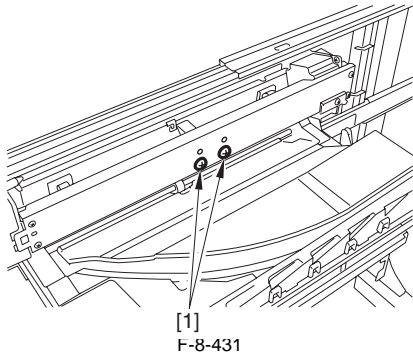


F-8-429

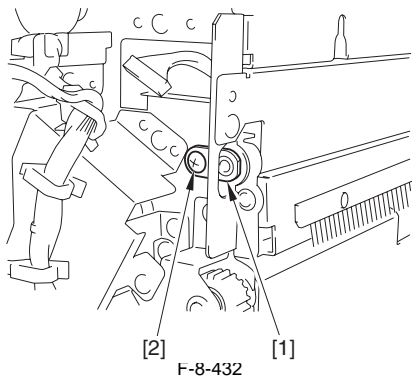
8) Disconnect the connector [1].



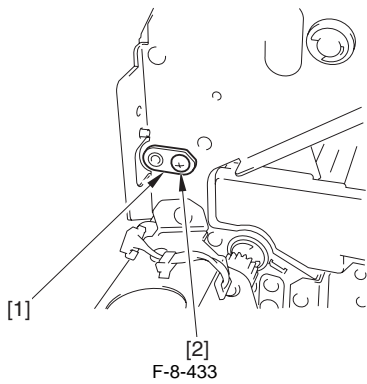
9) Remove the 2 screws [1].



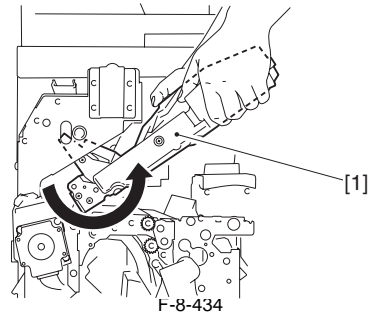
10) Remove the positioning pin (rear) [1].
- 1 screw [2]



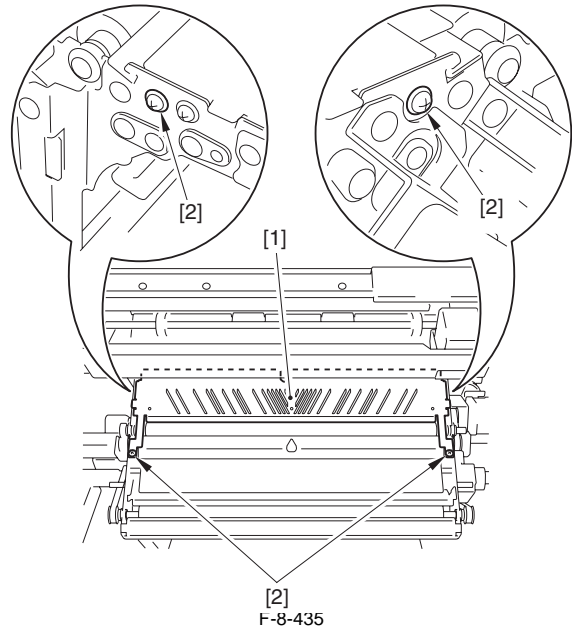
11) Remove the positioning pin (front) [1].
- 1 screw [2]



12) Remove the delivery upper guide unit [1] in the direction of the arrow.

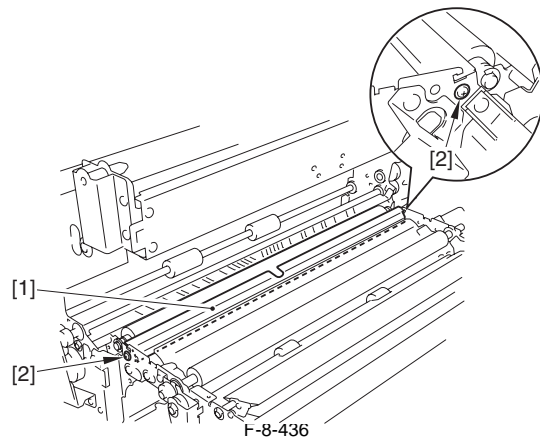


13) Detach the delivery guide lower 3 [1].
- 4 screws [2]

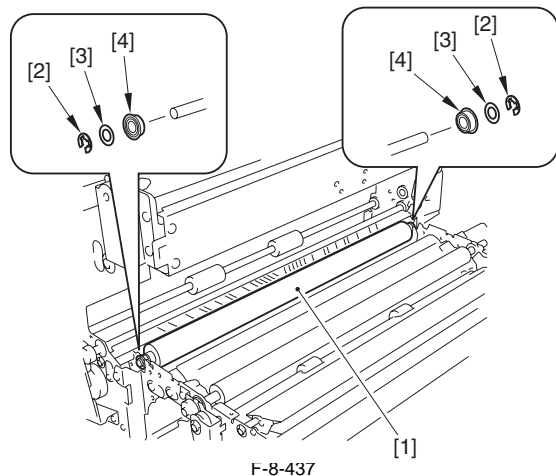


Removing Delivery Decurler Roller 1

14) Detach the decurler front guide lower [1].
- 2 screws [2]



15) Detach the decurler roller 1 [1].
- 1 each (front and rear) E ring [2]
- 1 each (front and rear) washer [3]
- 1 each (front and rear) bearing [4]

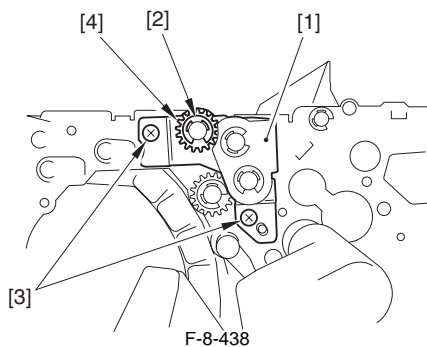


F-8-437

Removing Delivery Roller 2/Delivery Post-Reverse Roller, Delivery Pre-Reverse Driven Roller

14) Remove the gear unit [1].

- 1 E ring [2]
- 2 screws [3]
- 1 gear [4] (Remove with the gear unit [1])

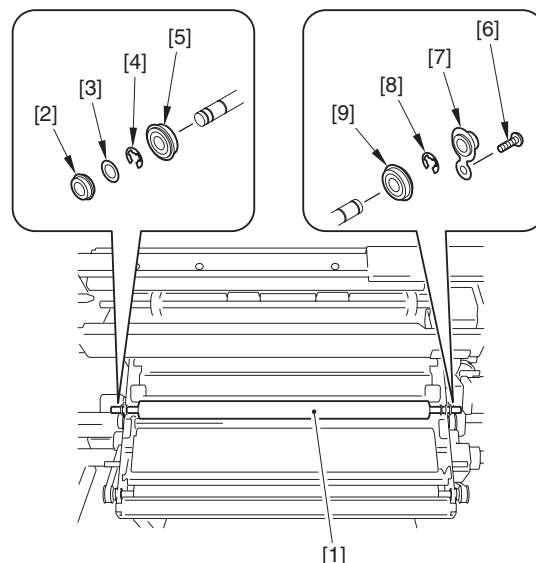


F-8-438

Removing Delivery Roller 2

15) Detach the delivery roller 2 [1].

- Front side
 - 1 bearing [2]
 - 1 washer [3]
 - 1 E ring [4]
 - 1 bearing [5]
- Rear side
 - 1 screw [6]
 - 1 bushing (with leaf spring) [7]
 - 1 E ring [8]
 - 1 bearing [9]

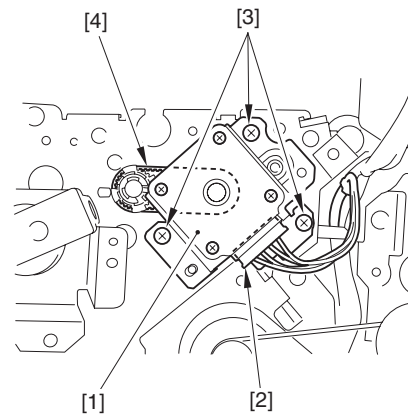


F-8-439

Removing Delivery Post-Reverse Roller

15) Remove the motor unit [1].

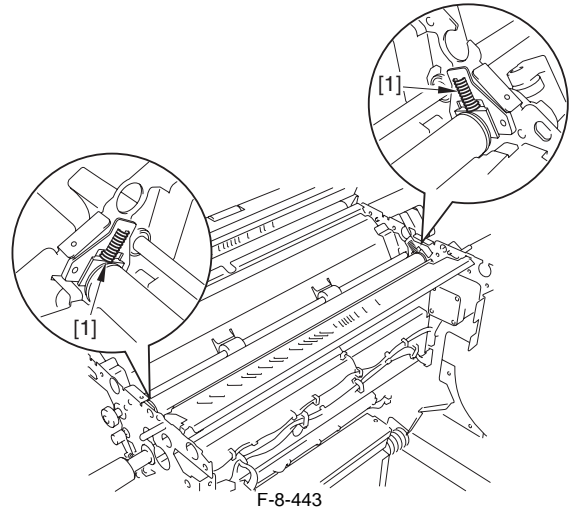
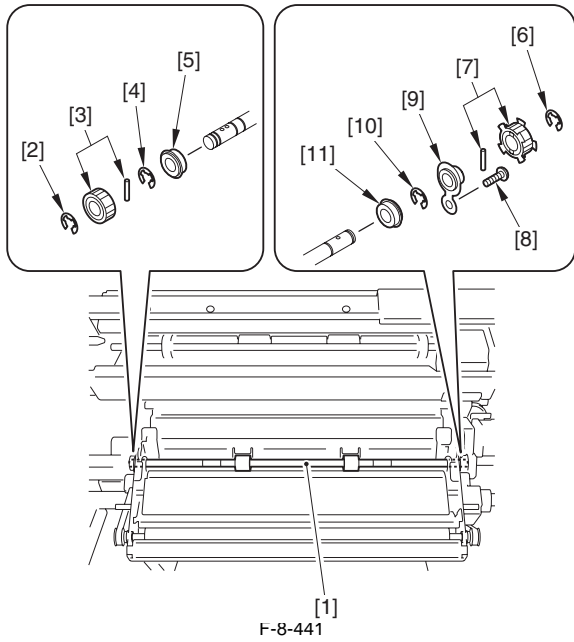
- 1 connector [2]
- 3 screws [3]
- 1 belt [4]



F-8-440

16) Detach the delivery post-reverse roller [1].

- Front side
 - 1 E ring [2]
 - 1 gear (with dowel pin) [3]
 - 1 E ring [4]
 - 1 bearing [5]
- Rear side
 - 1 E ring [6]
 - 1 pulley (with dowel pin) [7]
 - 1 screw [8]
 - 1 bushing (with leaf spring) [9]
 - 1 E ring [10]
 - 1 bearing [11]



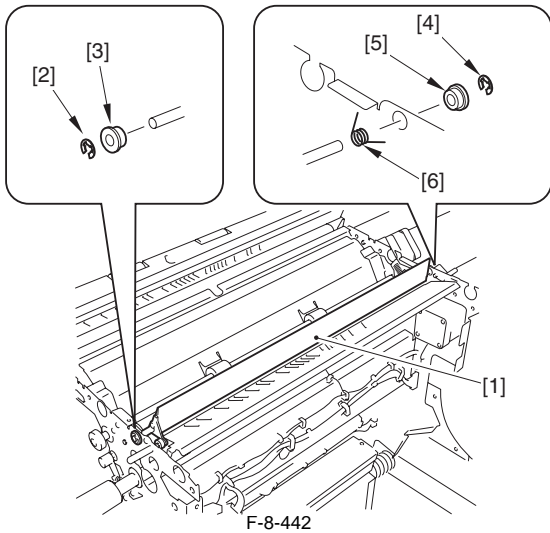
F-8-443

- 17) Detach the reverse guide lower 4 [2] while holding the delivery pre-reverse driven roller [1] with hand.
 - 2 screws [3]
- 18) Detach the delivery pre-reverse driven roller [1].
 - 2 bearing holders [4]
 - 2 bearings [5]

Removing Delivery Pre-Reverse Driven Roller

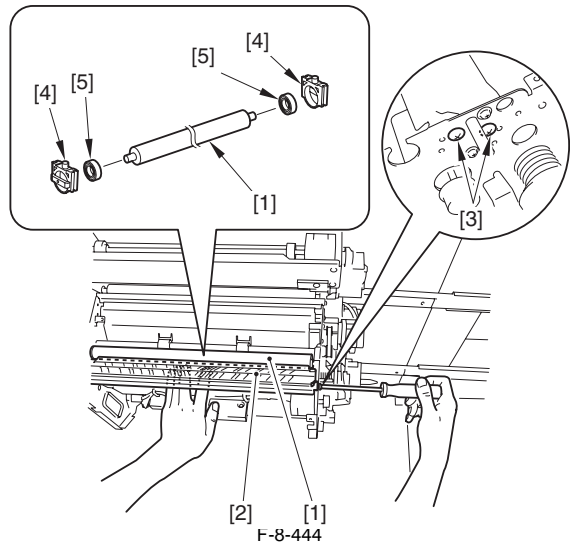
15) Remove the flapper [1].

- Front side
 - 1 E ring [2]
 - 1 bushing [3]
- Rear side
 - 1 E ring [4]
 - 1 bushing [5]
 - 1 spring [6]



F-8-442

16) Remove the 2 compression springs [1].



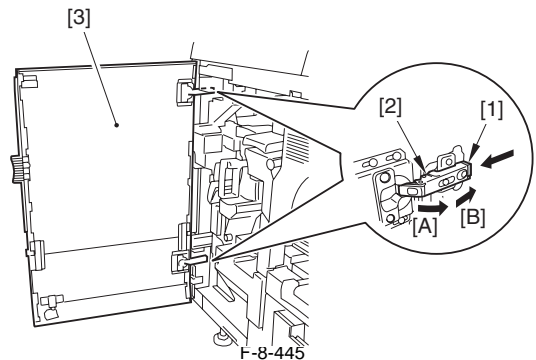
F-8-444

8.14.25 Delivery Decurler Roller 2

8.14.25.1 Removing Delivery Decurler Roller 2, Delivery Driven Roller 1, Delivery Driven Roller 2

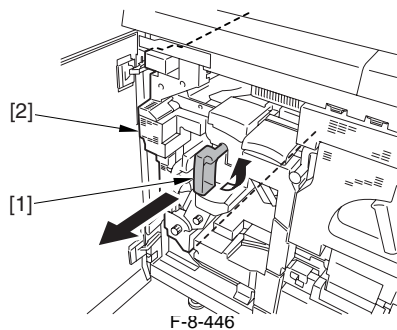
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- 1) Open the sub station front right cover and substation front left cover.
- 2) Push the 2 hinge release buttons (upper and lower) [1] and move the 2 hinges [2] in the direction of [A].
- 3) Move the 2 hinges [2] in the direction of [B] to remove them, and detach the main station front left cover [3].

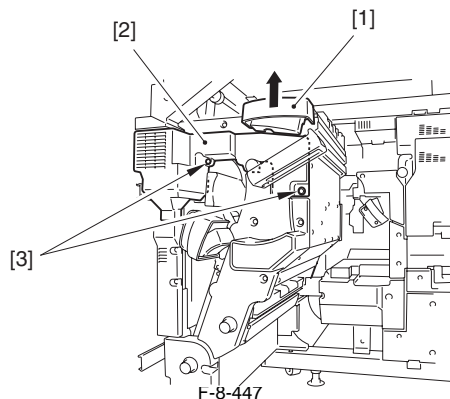


F-8-445

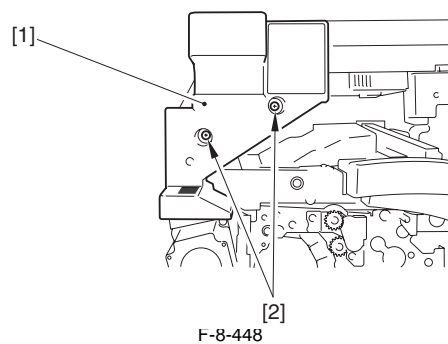
4) Release the lever (C-D3) [1] and slide out the reverse/outside delivery unit [2].



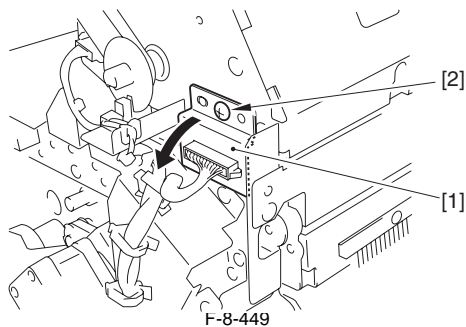
5) With lifting the lever (C-B2) [1], detach the delivery reverse cover 2 [2].
- 2 screws [3]



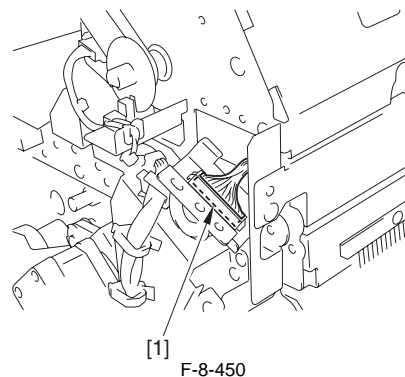
6) Detach the delivery reverse cover 1 [1].
- 2 screws [2]



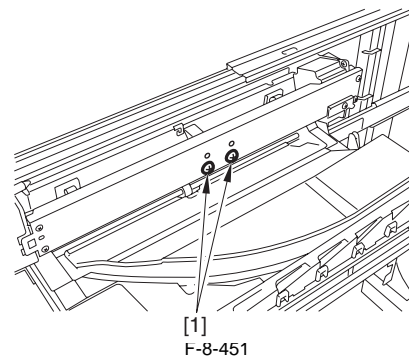
7) Tilt the connector support plate [1] to the front side.
- 1 screw [2]



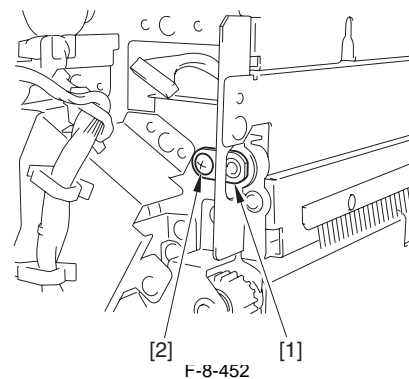
8) Disconnect the connector [1].



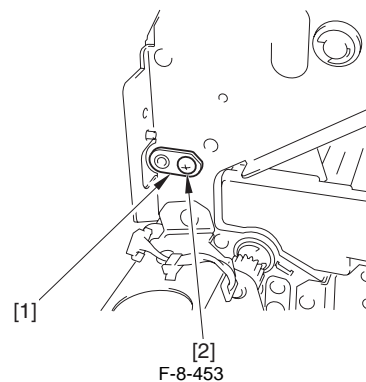
9) Remove the 2 screws [1].



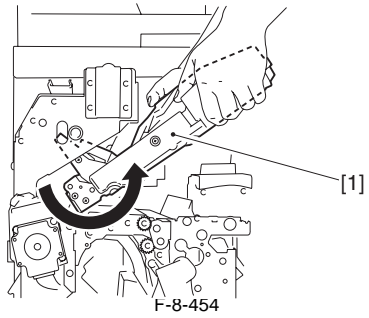
10) Remove the positioning pin (rear) [1].
- 1 screw [2]



11) Remove the positioning pin (front) [1].
- 1 screw [2]

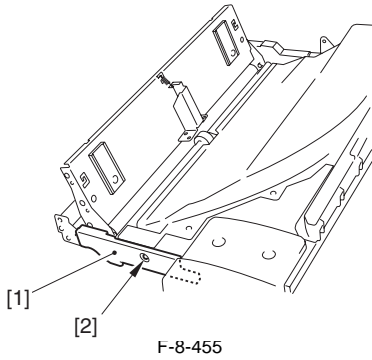


12) Remove the delivery upper guide unit [1] in the direction of the arrow.



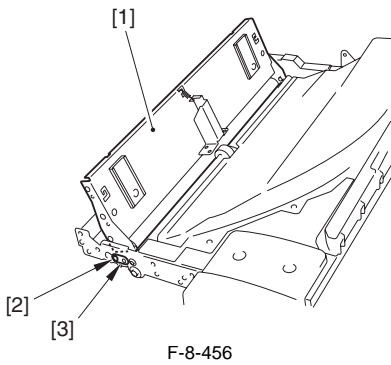
Removing the delivery decurler roller 2

- 13) Detach the delivery upper guide cover [1].
- 1 screw [2]



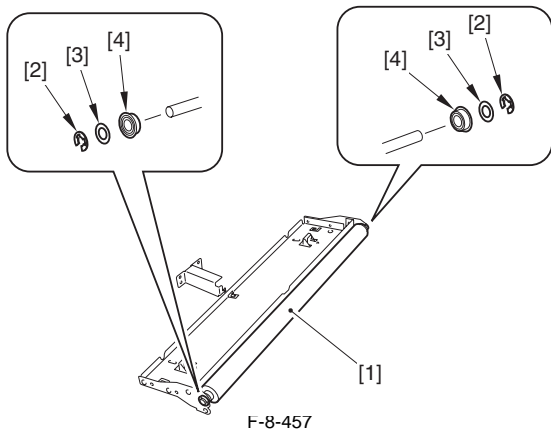
- 14) Remove the decurler unit [1].

- 1 screw [2]
- 1 positioning pin [3]



- 15) Remove the delivery decurler roller 2 [1].

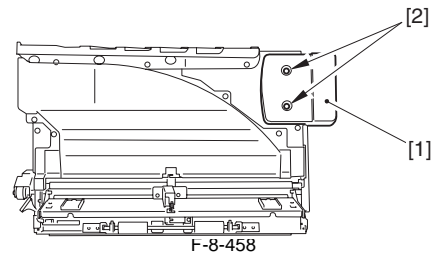
- 2 E-rings [2] (front and rear)
- 2 washers [3] (front and rear)
- 2 bearing [4] (front and rear)



Removing the delivery driven roller1, delivery driven roller2

- 13) Remove the grip cover 1 [1].

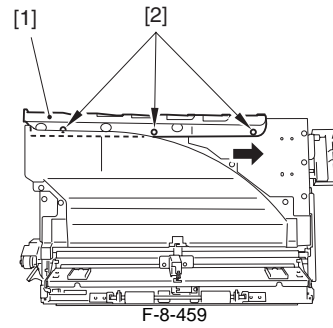
- 2 screws [2]



Points to note when attaching

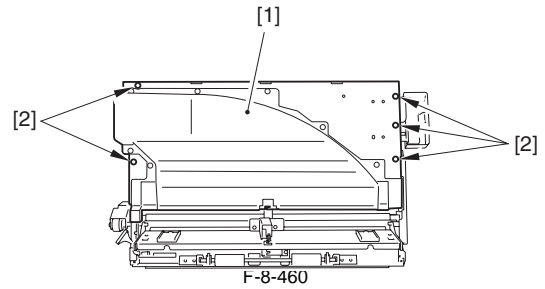
Be sure to fix the spring found at the back side of the grip cover 1 to the plate.

- 14) Move the duct [3] in the direction of the arrow and remove.
- 3 screws [4]



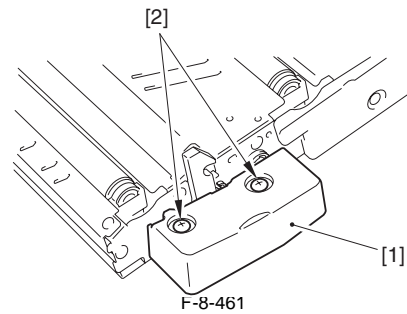
- 15) Remove the delivery duct [1].

- 5 screws [2]



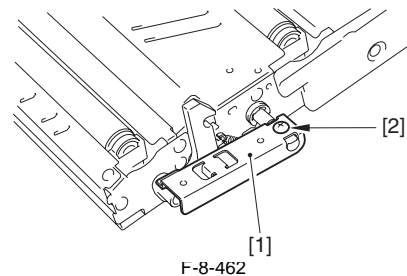
- 16) Reverse the delivery upper guide unit and detach the grip cover2 [1]

- 2 screws [2]

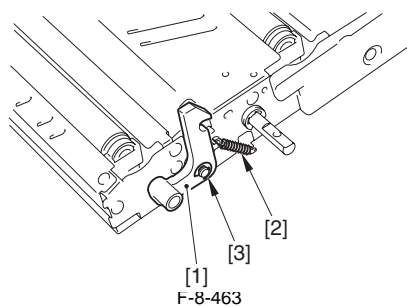


- 17) Detach the release lever plate (front) [1].

- 1 screw [2]

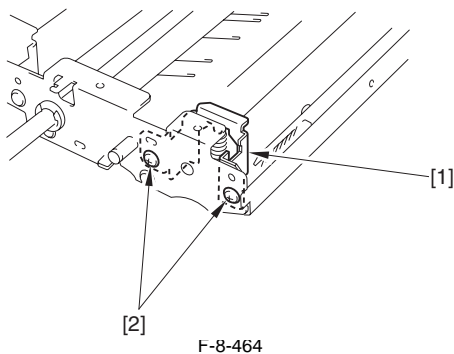


- 18) Remove the latch (front) [1].
 - 1 spring [2]
 - 1 E-ring [3]

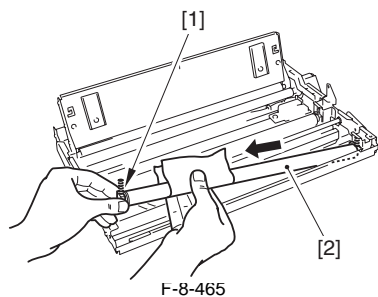


Removing the delivery driven roller1

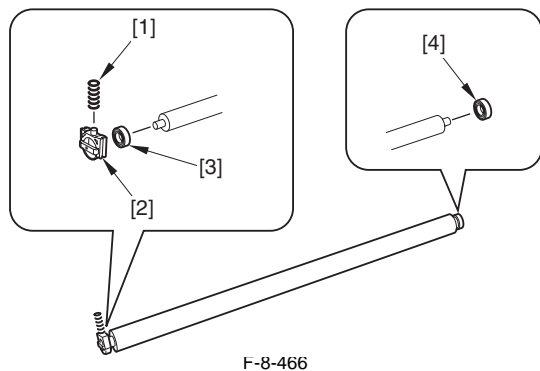
- 19) Reverse the delivery upper guide unit and remove the holder support plate [1].
 - 2 screws [2]



- 20) With supporting the driven roller [2] by the holder [1], hold the roller with lint-free paper etc. and remove it in the direction of the arrow.



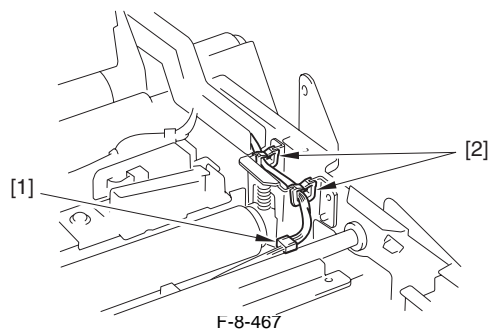
- 21) Remove the following parts from the driven roller.
 - Front side
 - 1 spring [1]
 - 1 bearing holder [2]
 - 1 bearing [3]
 - Rear side
 - 1 bearing [4]



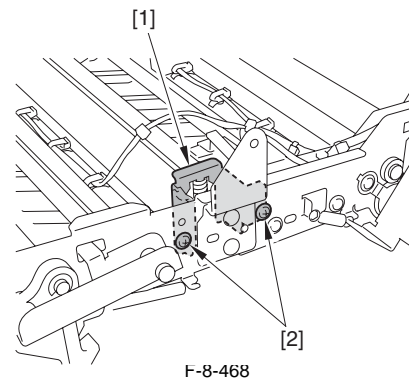
Removing the delivery driven roller 2

- 19) Remove the following parts.
 - Harness (Free the harness from the wire saddle [1])

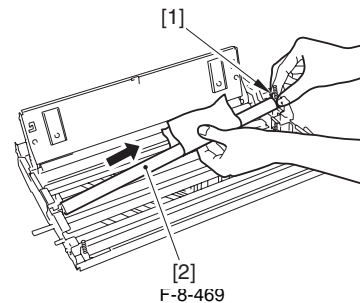
- Harness (Free the harness from the 2 edge saddle [2])



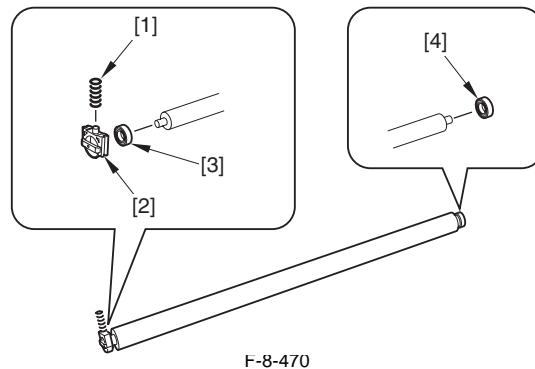
- 20) Detach the holder support plate [1].
 - 2 screws [2]



- 21) With supporting the driven roller [2] by the holder [1], hold the roller with lint-free paper etc. and remove it in the direction of the arrow.



- 22) Remove the following parts from the driven roller.
 - Front side
 - 1 spring [1]
 - 1 bearing holder [2]
 - 1 bearing [3]
 - Rear side
 - 1 Bearing [4]



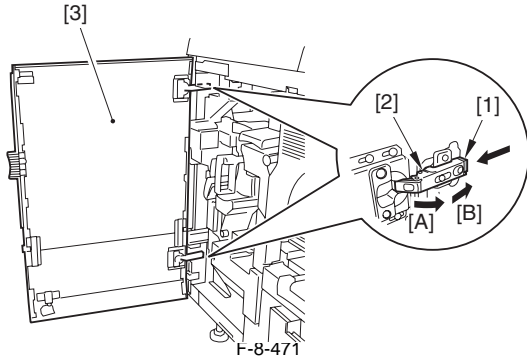
8.14.26 One-way Clutch

8.14.26.1 Removing One-Way Clutch

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

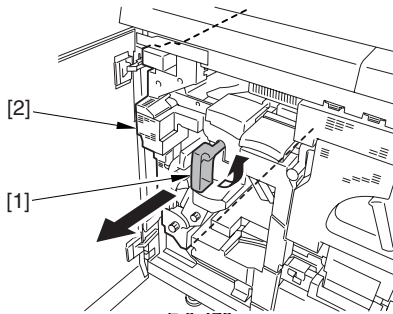
- 1) Open the sub station front right cover and the front left cover.

- 2) Push the 2 hinge release buttons (upper and lower) [1] and move the 2 hinges [2] in the direction of [A].
- 3) Move the 2 hinges [2] in the direction of [B] to remove them, and detach the main station front left cover [3].



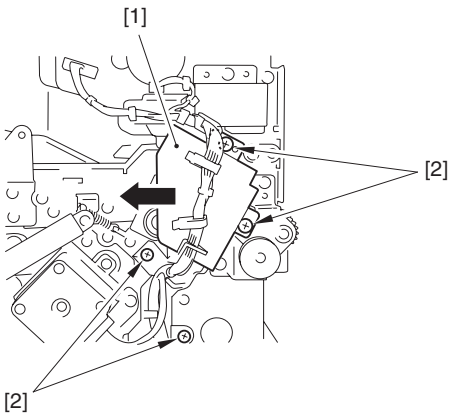
F-8-471

- 4) Release the lever (C-D3) [1] and pull out the reverse/outer delivery unit [2].



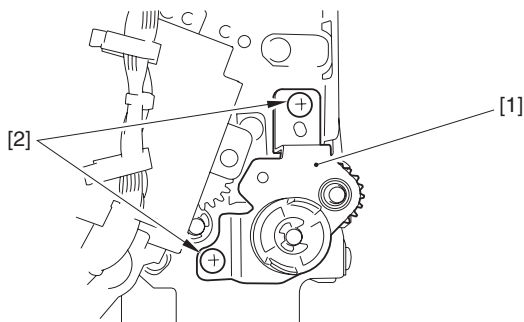
F-8-472

- 5) Move the plate [1] at the rear of the reverse/outer delivery unit in the direction of the arrow.
- 4 screws [2]



F-8-473

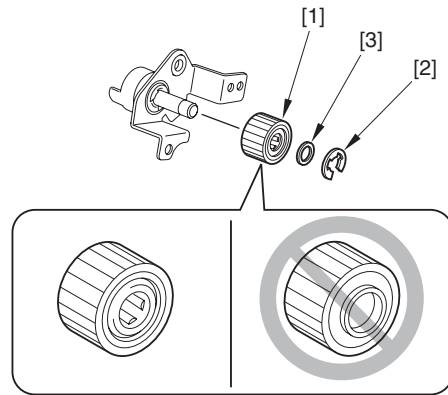
- 6) Detach the one-way clutch unit [1].
- 2 screws [2]



F-8-474

- 7) Remove the one-way clutch [1].
- 1 E ring [2]
- 1 washer [3]

⚠ Points to Note When Attaching the One-Way Clutch
Do not attach the one-way clutch adversely.



F-8-475

Chapter 9 Fixing System

Contents

9.1 Construction.....	9-1
9.1.1 Features	9-1
9.1.2 Specifications / Control / List of Functions	9-1
9.1.3 Major Parts (Cross-Section)	9-4
9.1.4 Major Parts (Thermistor / Thermo Switch).....	9-9
9.1.5 Major Parts (Sensor / Solenoid)	9-11
9.1.6 Control System Configuration	9-13
9.1.7 Tandem / Single Fixing Switch Control.....	9-21
9.1.8 Fixing Drive Control	9-23
9.2 Basic Sequence	9-24
9.2.1 At Power-On	9-24
9.2.2 At Time of Printing	9-25
9.2.3 At Mode Change (when the controlled temperature is lowered)	9-27
9.2.4 At Mode Change (when the controlled temperature is increased)	9-28
9.3 Various Control Mechanisms	9-29
9.3.1 Controlling the Fixing Roller Temperature.....	9-29
9.3.1.1 Overview	9-29
9.3.1.2 Temperature Control in Productivity Priority Mode.....	9-30
9.3.1.3 Temperature Control in Image Priority Mode	9-35
9.3.1.4 Power-Saving Mode.....	9-38
9.3.2 Down Sequence Control.....	9-38
9.3.2.1 Overview	9-38
9.3.3 Detecting the Passage of Paper	9-39
9.3.3.1 Detection of Paper Wrap-Around	9-39
9.3.4 External Heat Roller Drive Control	9-41
9.3.4.1 External Heating Roller Detach/Attach Mechanism.....	9-41
9.3.5 Belting inclined Control	9-43
9.3.5.1 Pressure Belt One-Sided Displacement Correction Control	9-43
9.4 Belt Pressurizing Mechanism	9-48
9.4.1 Pressure Belt / Roller Pressure Mechanism	9-48
9.5 Fixing Cleaning Web Mechanisms	9-50
9.5.1 Fixing Cleaning Web Drive Control	9-50
9.5.2 Fixing Cleaning Web Remaining Level Detection Control	9-52
9.5.3 Cleaning Web Detach/Attach Mechanism	9-54
9.5.4 Fixing Roller Refresh Control.....	9-56
9.6 Protective Functions	9-61
9.6.1 Protection Circuit	9-61
9.7 Parts Replacement Procedure	9-63
9.7.1 Notice When Handling the Fixing Assembly	9-63
9.7.1.1 Notes for Thermistor/Thermo Switch.....	9-63
9.7.2 Fixing Assembly	9-63
9.7.2.1 Removing Primary Fixing Assembly.....	9-63
9.7.2.2 Removing Secondary Fixing Assembly.....	9-67
9.7.2.3 Points to Note When Replacing Primary/Secondary Fixing Intermediate Unit	9-68
9.7.3 Fixing Belt Unit.....	9-69
9.7.3.1 Removing Primary Fixing Belt Unit.....	9-69
9.7.4 Fixing Roller	9-73

9.7.4.1 Removing Primary Fixing Roller	9-73
9.7.4.2 Removing Secondary Fixing Roller	9-79
9.7.5 Pressure Roller	9-84
9.7.5.1 Removing Secondary Fixing Pressure Roller	9-84
9.7.6 Fixing Belt	9-89
9.7.6.1 Removing Fixing Belt	9-89
9.7.7 External Heat Roller	9-91
9.7.7.1 Removing Primary Fixing External Heat Roller (Upper), Primary Fixing External Heat Insulating Bush (Upper) and Primary Fixing External Heat Bearing (Upper)	9-91
9.7.7.2 Removing Primary Fixing External Heat Roller (Lower), Primary Fixing External Heat Insulating Bush (Lower) and Primary Fixing External Heat Bearing (Lower)	9-96
9.7.7.3 Removing Secondary Fixing External Heat Roller (Upper), Secondary Fixing External Heat Insulating Bush (Upper) and Secondary Fixing External Heat Bearing (Upper)	9-100
9.7.7.4 Removing Secondary Fixing External Heat Roller (Lower), Secondary Fixing External Heat Insulating Bush (Lower) and Secondary Fixing External Heat Bearing (Lower)	9-105
9.7.8 Oil Applying Roller	9-109
9.7.8.1 Removing Oil-Coated Roller	9-109
9.7.9 External Heat Cleaning Roller	9-110
9.7.9.1 Removing Primary Fixing External Heat Cleaning Roller	9-110
9.7.9.2 Removing Secondary Fixing External Heat Cleaning Roller	9-113
9.7.10 Fixing Web Roller	9-116
9.7.10.1 Removing Primary Web Unit	9-116
9.7.10.2 Removing Secondary Web Unit	9-116
9.7.10.3 Removing Fixing Web Roller	9-117
9.7.11 Refresh Roller	9-118
9.7.11.1 Removing Primary Fixing Refresh Roller Unit	9-118
9.7.11.2 Removing Secondary Fixing Refresh Roller Unit	9-123
9.7.11.3 Removing Primary Fixing Refresh Roller	9-127
9.7.11.4 Removing Secondary Fixing Refresh Roller	9-128
9.7.11.5 Removing Primary Fixing Refresh Cleaning Roller	9-128
9.7.11.6 Removing Secondary Fixing Refresh Cleaning Roller	9-130
9.7.12 Steering Roller	9-131
9.7.12.1 Removing Steering Roller	9-131
9.7.13 Pressure Pad	9-132
9.7.13.1 Removing Pressure Pad	9-132
9.7.14 Pressure Pad Cover	9-132
9.7.14.1 Removing Pressure Pad Cover	9-132
9.7.15 Fixing Roller Thermistor	9-132
9.7.15.1 Removing Primary Fixing Roller Main/Sub Thermistor (THM301/THM304), Primary Fixing Roller Thermo Switch (TP300)	9-132
9.7.15.2 Removing Secondary Fixing Roller Main/Sub Thermistor (THM306/THM309), Secondary Fixing Roller Thermo Switch (TP304)	9-134
9.7.16 External Heat Thermistor	9-135
9.7.16.1 Removing Primary Fixing External Heating Thermistor	9-135
9.7.16.2 Removing Secondary Fixing External Heating Thermistor	9-139
9.7.17 Inlet Thermistor	9-143
9.7.17.1 Removing Inlet Thermistor	9-143
9.7.18 Fixing Locking Thermal Switch	9-143
9.7.18.1 Removing Fixing Pressure Thermal Switch, Fixing Pressure Thermistor	9-143
9.7.19 Thermal Switch	9-145
9.7.19.1 Removing Primary Fixing External Heating Roller Upper/Lower Thermoswitch (TP302/303)	9-145
9.7.19.2 Removing Secondary Fixing External Heating Roller Upper/Lower Thermoswitch (TP306/307)	9-148
9.7.20 Fixing Belt Thermal Switch	9-151
9.7.20.1 Removing Belt Fixing Thermo Switch	9-151
9.7.21 Fixing Web	9-153
9.7.21.1 Removing Primary Fixing Web	9-153
9.7.21.2 Removing Secondary Fixing Web	9-156
9.7.22 Fixing Web Solenoid	9-159
9.7.22.1 Removing Primary Fixing Web Solenoid	9-159
9.7.22.2 Removing Secondary Fixing Web Solenoid	9-160
9.7.23 Insulating Bush	9-162
9.7.23.1 Removing the Primary Fixing Roller Insulating Bush	9-162

9.7.23.2 Removing the Secondary Fixing Roller Insulating Bush	9-162
9.7.23.3 Removing the Primary Fixing Pressure Roller Insulating Bush	9-162
9.7.23.4 Removing the Secondary Fixing Pressure Roller Insulating Bush	9-162
9.7.24 Bearing	9-163
9.7.24.1 Removing Bearing 1 and Bearing 3	9-163
9.7.24.2 Removing Bearing 2 and Bearing 5	9-163
9.7.24.3 Removing the Primary Fixing Roller Bearing	9-163
9.7.24.4 Removing the Secondary Fixing Roller Bearing	9-163
9.7.24.5 Removing the Primary Fixing Pressure Roller Bearing	9-164
9.7.24.6 Removing the Secondary Fixing Pressure Roller Bearing	9-164
9.7.25 Separation Claw	9-164
9.7.25.1 Removing Primary Fixing Separation Claw	9-164
9.7.25.2 Removing Secondary Fixing Separation Claw	9-165
9.7.26 Delivery Upper Separation Plate	9-166
9.7.26.1 Removing Primary Fixing Separation Plate	9-166
9.7.26.2 Removing Secondary Fixing Separation Plate	9-167
9.7.27 Fixing Inner Delivery Roller	9-168
9.7.27.1 Removing Primary Fixing Inside Delivery Lower Roller	9-168
9.7.27.2 Removing Secondary Fixing Inside Delivery Lower Roller	9-170

9.1 Construction

9.1.1 Features

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- Constant print speed regardless of the type or thickness of paper (excluding imagePRESS C6000)
Conventional models provided slower print speed for thick paper or coated paper in the same size compared to plain paper. This machine has tandem fixing (primary/secondary fixing assembly) and twin external heating rollers, which enables printing at a constant speed (*1), covering poor fixing of thick paper or lack of gloss on coated paper.
- Optimized/even level of gloss suited to the type of paper
This machine uses the belt fixing method in the primary fixing assembly. The belt fixing method enables wider nip width and applies larger quantity of heat to toner on paper. This enables setting of lower nip pressure compared to the roller fixing method, and provides optimized/even level of gloss.

*1: 70 ppm when using A4/LTR size in 1-side print mode with imagePRESS C7000VP. The speed is 70ppm for one-sided printing of A4/LTR-size paper. The print speed varies depending on the paper size of print mode (one-sided/two-sided). The print speed becomes slower even for the same size of paper when the paper width is smaller than A4 size (279.4mm) and the paper weight is over the specified level (106g), because it is necessary to widen the paper interval to prevent poor fixing caused by temperature increase on the paper edge. For the details, refer to "Introduction > Functional Specifications > Printing Speed" ().

MEMO: About illustrations/text in this chapter

- Some illustrations in this chapter only show the primary fixing assembly as a representative. (The illustration of "pressure belt" shall be replaced with that of "pressure roller" for the secondary fixing assembly.)
- When electric parts codes/names (motor, sensor, etc.) and signal names for first and secondary fixing assemblies are shown in illustrations or text, those for the secondary fixing assembly are indicated in parentheses.

Example) "M300 (M305): Primary fixing drive motor (Secondary fixing drive motor)"

9.1.2 Specifications / Control / List of Functions

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

T-9-1

Item	Function / Method	
Fixing method	Tandem fixing (belt fixing + roller fixing) Primary fixing assembly: Belt fixing Secondary fixing assembly: Roller fixing	
Heater	Primary fixing assembly	
	In the fixing roller	2 heaters (main heater and sub heater provided as a unit)
	In the inlet roller	1 heater
	In the external heating upper/ lower roller	2 heaters / 2 heaters (both: main heater and sub heater provided as a unit)
	Secondary fixing assembly	
	In the fixing roller	2 heaters (main heater and sub heater provided as a unit)
	In the pressure roller	1 heater
In the external heating upper/ lower roller	2 heaters / 2 heaters (both: main heater and sub heater provided as a unit)	
Controlled temperature	Refer to temperature control for each mode.	

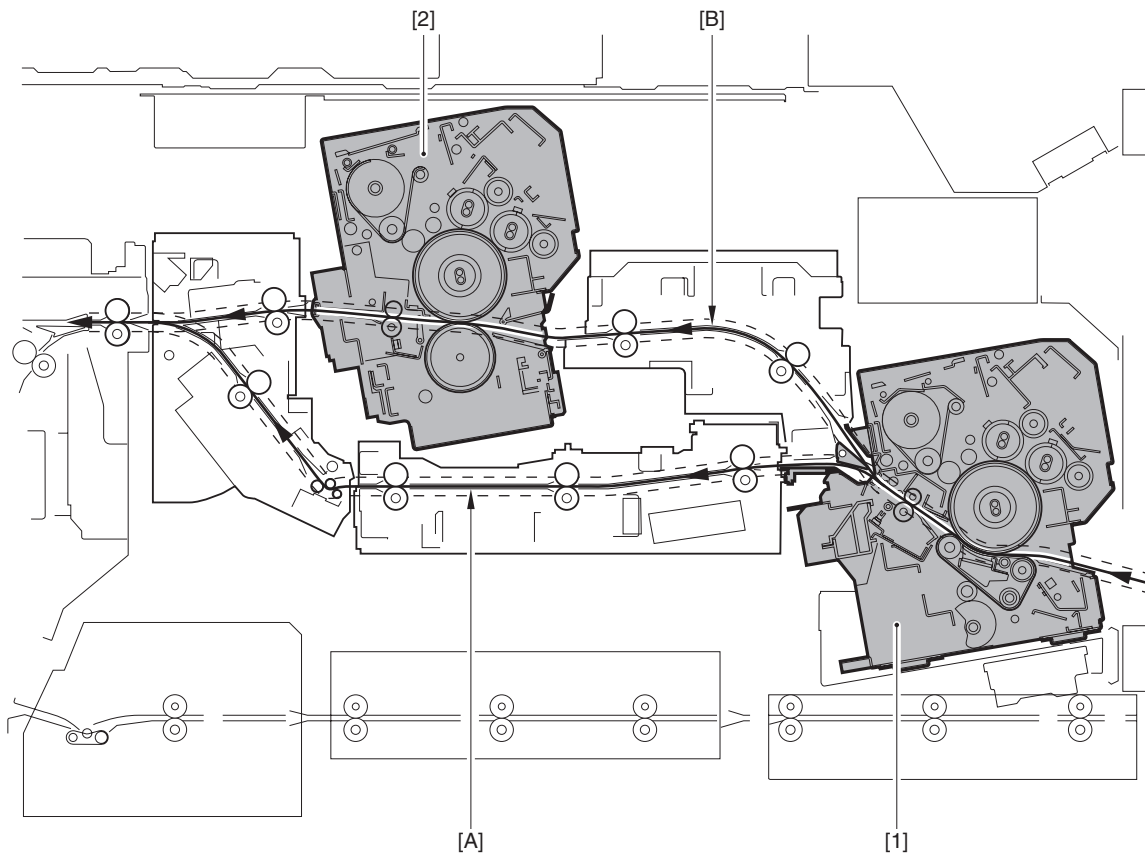
Item	Function / Method	
Detection of fixing temperature	Primary fixing assembly	
	Fixing roller	Main thermistor (center of the roller, noncontact) Sub thermistor (rear edge of the roller, contact)
	Inlet roller	Main thermistor (center of the roller, contact) Sub thermistor (rear edge of the roller, contact)
	External heating upper roller	Main thermistor (center of the roller, contact) Sub thermistor (rear edge of the roller, contact)
	External heating lower roller	Main thermistor (center of the roller, contact) Sub thermistor (rear edge of the roller, contact)
	Secondary fixing assembly	
	Fixing roller	Main thermistor (center of the roller, noncontact) Sub thermistor (rear edge of the roller, contact)
	Pressure roller	Main thermistor (center of the roller, contact) Sub thermistor (rear edge of the roller, contact)
	External heating upper roller	Main thermistor (center of the roller, contact) Sub thermistor (rear edge of the roller, contact)
	External heating lower roller	Main thermistor (center of the roller, contact) Sub thermistor (rear edge of the roller, contact)
Fixing temperature control	At warm-up / standby / printing / last rotation / power saving mode	
Down sequence	None	
Protective function	This function detects the following errors and stops power distribution to the heater when the errors occur. - Temperature detected by the main/sub thermistor - Power distribution stopped by the thermo switch (TP)	
	Primary fixing assembly	
	Fixing roller	(Front edge of the roller, contact) Operation temperature: 220 ± 8 deg C
	Fixing belt	(Center of the belt, noncontact) Operation temperature: 130 ± 5 deg C
	External heating upper roller	(Front edge of the roller, contact) Operation temperature: 250 ± 10 deg C
	External heating lower roller	(Front edge of the roller, contact) Operation temperature: 250 ± 10 deg C
	Secondary fixing assembly	
	Fixing roller	(Front edge of the roller, contact) Operation temperature: 220 ± 8 deg C
	Pressure roller	(Front edge of the roller, contact) Operation temperature: 200 ± 8 deg C
	External heating upper roller	(Front edge of the roller, contact) Operation temperature: 250 ± 10 deg C
	External heating lower roller	(Front edge of the roller, contact) Operation temperature: 250 ± 10 deg C
	Detection of a tear of the thermistor (soft detection) / wrapped paper	

Item	Function / Method	
Separation mechanism	Primary fixing assembly	
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Separation roller, upper separation guide The separation roller with small diameter (20 mm dia) comes into contact with the fixing roller and generates local curvature changes to separate paper. It prevents paper from being wrapped around the roller. - Lower separation claw It prevents paper from being wrapped around the fixing belt caused by downward curl. 	
	Secondary fixing assembly	
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Upper separation guide It prevents paper from being wrapped around the fixing roller caused by upward curl. - Lower separation claw It prevents paper from being wrapped around the fixing roller caused by downward curl. 	
Cleaning mechanism	Fixing roller (primary/secondary fixing assemblies)	By the collection roller, cleaning web, and refresh roller
	Fixing belt (primary fixing assembly)	None
	Pressure roller (secondary fixing assembly)	None
	External heating upper/lower roller (primary/secondary fixing assemblies)	By the cleaning roller
	Refresh roller (primary/secondary fixing assemblies)	By the refresh roller
Various types of control	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Fixing path switch control - Fixing roller drive control (primary/secondary fixing assemblies) - Cleaning web drive control (primary/secondary fixing assemblies) - Cleaning web level detection control (primary/secondary fixing assemblies) - Fixing belt detach/attach control (primary fixing assembly) - Pressure roller detach/attach control (secondary fixing assembly) - Cleaning web detach/attach control (primary/secondary fixing assemblies) - Refresh roller detach/attach control (primary/secondary fixing assemblies) - External heating roller detach/attach control (primary/secondary fixing assemblies) - Fixing belt one-sided displacement correction control (primary fixing assembly) - Paper wrapping detection control (primary/secondary fixing assemblies) 	

9.1.3 Major Parts (Cross-Section)

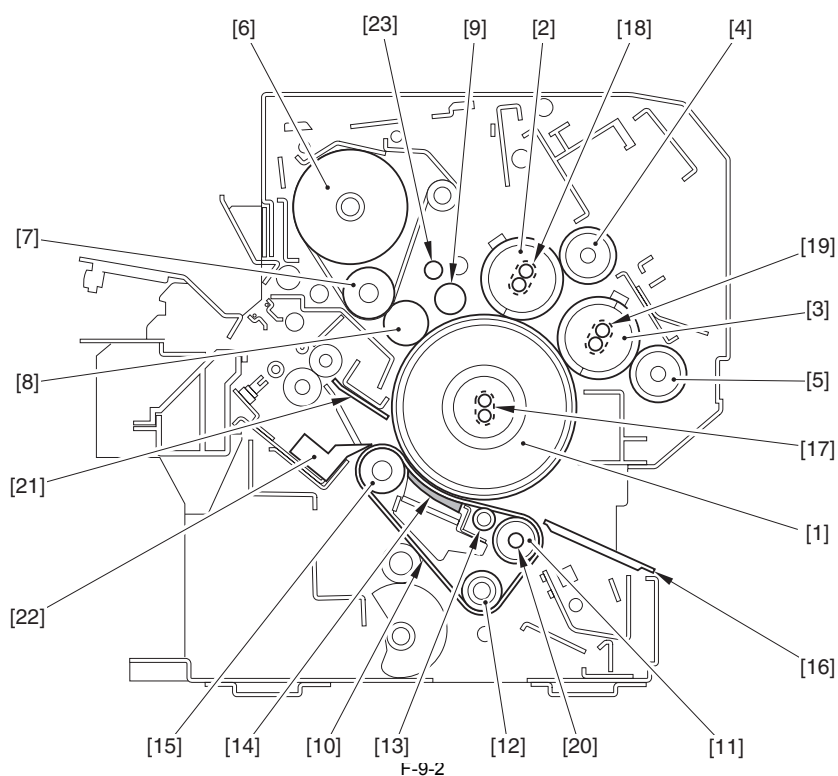
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

Fixing feed unit



[1] Primary fixing assembly (belt fixing) [A] Single feed path
[2] Secondary fixing assembly (roller fixing) [B] Tandem feed path

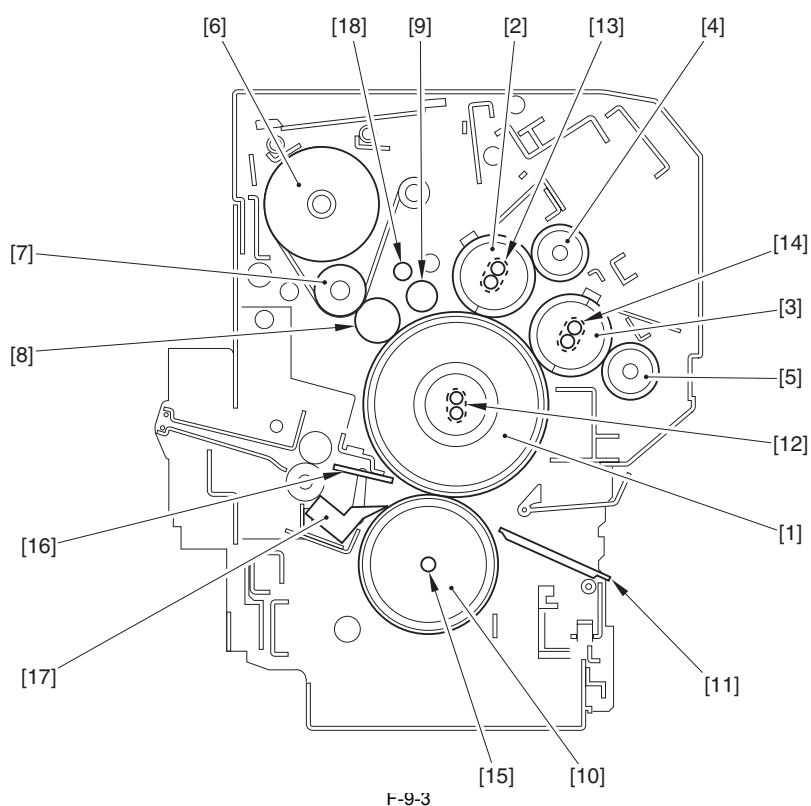
Primary fixing assembly



Parts		Feature / Function / Method	Remarks
[1]	Fixing roller	Fix toner to paper.	
[2]	External heating upper roller	Controlled temperature decrease at continuous printing.	
[3]	External heating lower roller	Controlled temperature decrease at continuous printing.	
[4]	External heating upper cleaning roller	Clean the external heating upper roller.	
[5]	External heating lower cleaning roller	Clean the external heating lower roller.	
[6]	Cleaning web	Clean the fixing roller via the collection roller.	
[7]	Web roller	Make the cleaning web come into contact with the collection roller to apply pressure.	
[8]	Collection roller	Temporarily collect toner on the fixing roller.	
[9]	Fixing refresh roller	Remove scratches on the surface of the fixing roller.	
[10]	Fixing belt	Improve gloss evenness.	Width : 348 mm ± 2 mm
[11]	Inlet roller	Controlled temperature of the fixing belt.	20 mm dia
[12]	Steering roller	Correct the belt displacement.	
[13]	Oil application roller	Decrease friction in the belt inner-side way.	Silicon oil contained ; 10 mm dia
[14]	Pressure pad	Form a correct fixing nip.	
[15]	Separation roller	Separate paper from the fixing roller.	21 mm dia
[16]	Fixing inlet guide	Determine the angle of paper transported into the fixing nip. (Prevent curl on the trailing edge, wrinkle, or fading image.)	
[17]	Primary fixing roller main heater	Halogen heater: 700 W	Main and sub heaters provided as a unit
	Primary fixing roller sub heater	Halogen heater: 600 W	

Parts		Feature / Function / Method	Remarks
[18]	Primary external heater upper roller main heater	Halogen heater: 300 W	- Main and sub heaters provided as a unit - Same main and sub heaters for upper and lower heaters
	Primary external heater upper roller sub heater	Halogen heater: 330 W	
[19]	Primary external heater lower roller main heater	Halogen heater: 300 W	
	Primary external heater lower roller sub heater	Halogen heater: 330 W	
[20]	Primary fixing pressure belt heater	Halogen heater: 400 W	
[21]	Upper separation guide	Guide paper to the inner delivery unit.	
[22]	Lower separation claw	Separate paper from the fixing belt.	
[23]	Refresh cleaning roller	Clean the refresh roller.	

Secondary fixing assembly



F-9-3

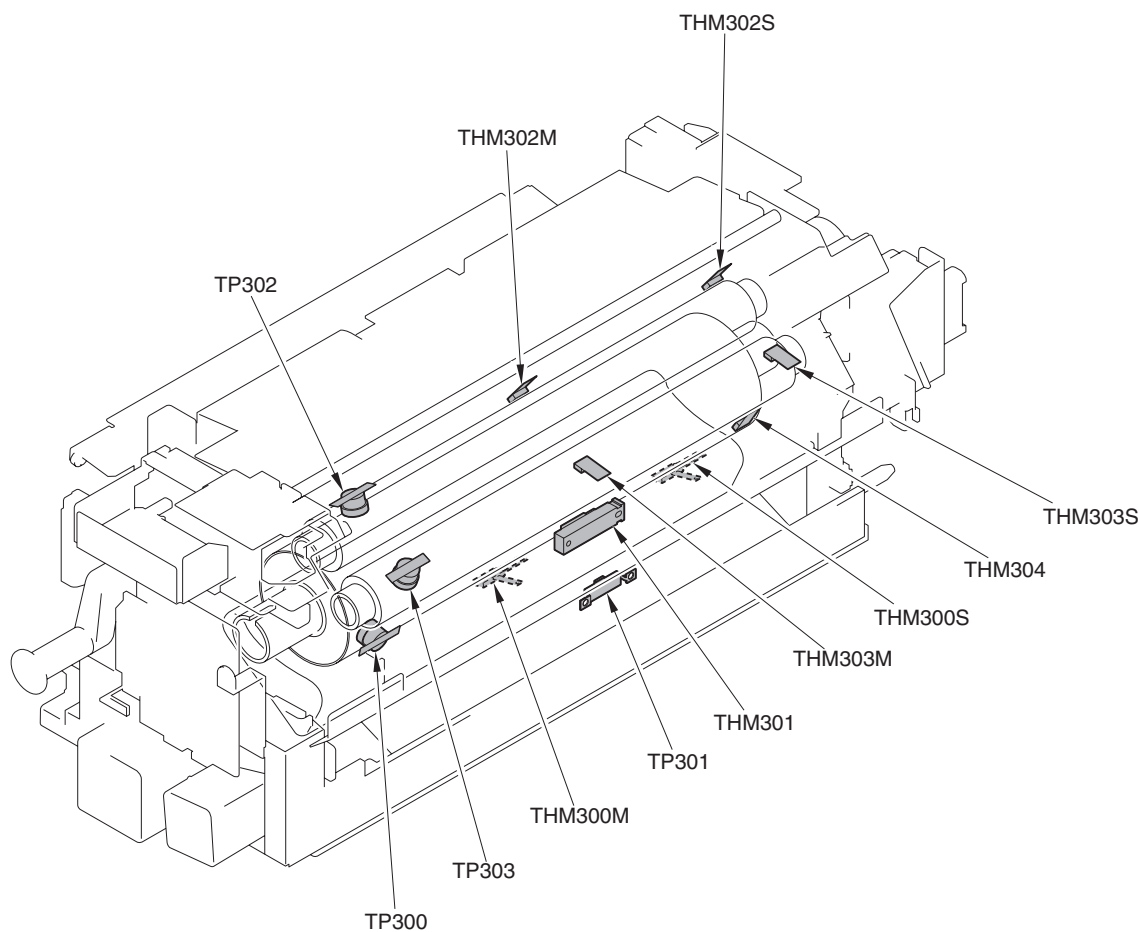
Parts	Feature / Function / Method	Remarks
[1] Fixing roller	Fix toner to paper.	
[2] External heating upper roller	Controlled temperature decrease at continuous printing.	
[3] External heating lower roller	Controlled temperature decrease at continuous printing.	
[4] External heating upper cleaning roller	Clean the external heating upper roller.	
[5] External heating lower cleaning roller	Clean the external heating lower roller.	
[6] Cleaning web	Clean the fixing roller via the collection roller.	
[7] Web roller	Make the cleaning web come into contact with the collection roller to apply pressure.	
[8] Collection roller	Temporarily collect toner on the fixing roller.	
[9] Fixing refresh roller	Remove scratches on the surface of the fixing roller.	
[10] Pressure roller	Fix toner on paper.	60 mm dia
[11] Fixing inlet guide	Determine the angle of paper transported into the fixing nip. (Prevent curl on the trailing edge, wrinkle, or fading image.)	
[12] Secondary fixing roller main heater	Halogen heater: 700 W	Main and sub heaters provided as a unit
Secondary fixing roller sub heater	Halogen heater: 600 W	
[13] Secondary external heating upper roller main heater	Halogen heater: 300 W	- Main and sub heaters provided as a unit - Same main and sub heaters for upper and lower heaters
Secondary external heating upper roller sub heater	Halogen heater: 330 W	
[14] Secondary external heating lower roller main heater	Halogen heater: 300 W	
Secondary external heating lower roller sub heater	Halogen heater: 330 W	
[15] Secondary fixing pressure roller heater	Halogen heater: 400 W	

Parts		Feature / Function / Method	Remarks
[16]	Upper separation guide	Guide paper to the inner delivery unit.	
[17]	Lower separation claw	Separate paper from the fixing belt.	
[18]	Refresh cleaning roller	Clean the refresh roller.	

9.1.4 Major Parts (Thermistor / Thermo Switch)

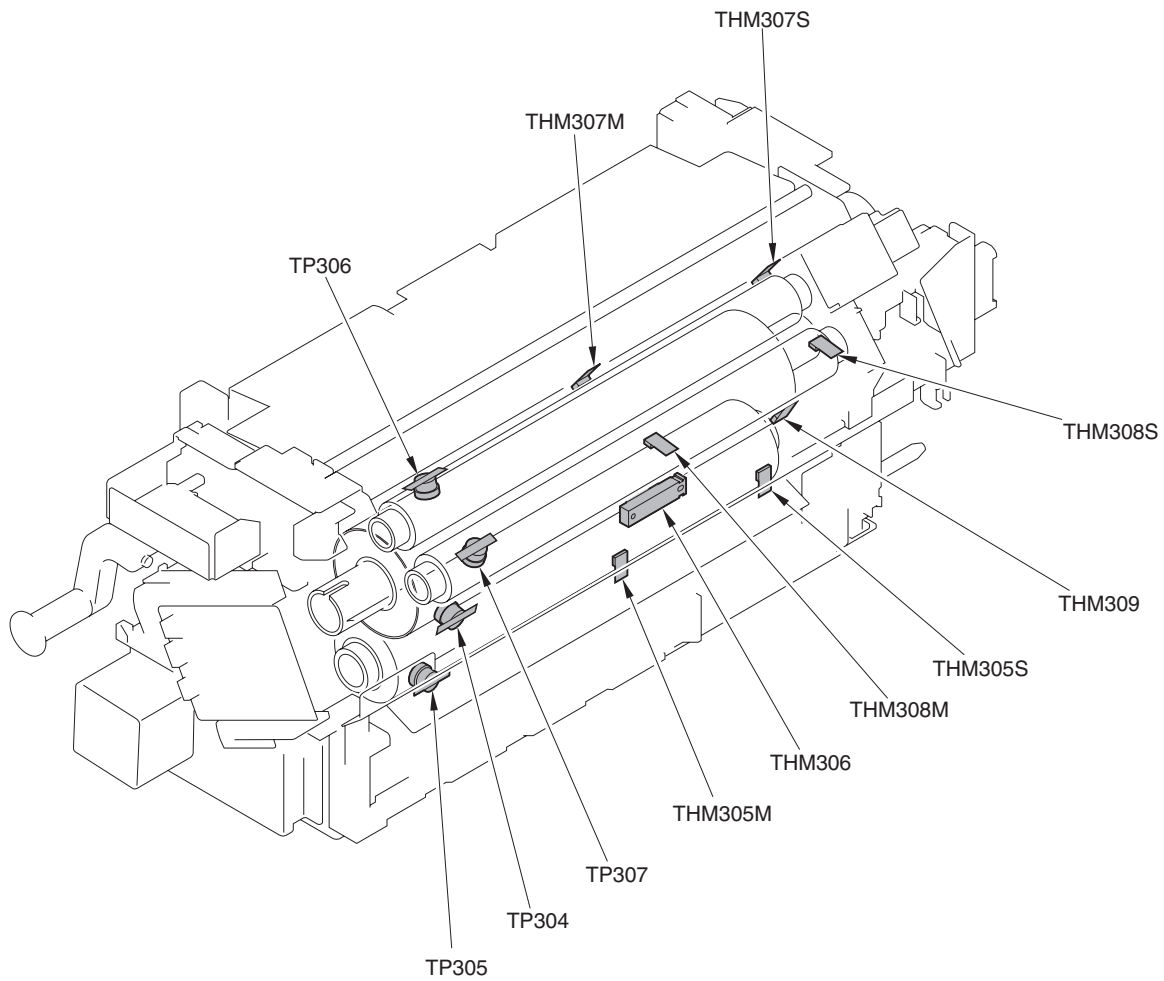
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

Primary fixing assembly



F-9-4

Parts		Code	Function / Method
Main thermistor	Fixing roller	THM301	Noncontact type (temperature control, detection of abnormal temperature increase)
	Pressure belt	THM300M	Contact type (temperature control, detection of abnormal temperature increase)
	External heating upper roller	THM302M	Contact type (temperature control, detection of abnormal temperature increase)
	External heating lower roller	THM303M	Contact type (temperature control, detection of abnormal temperature increase)
Sub thermistor	Fixing roller	THM304	Contact type (detection of abnormal temperature increase)
	Pressure belt	THM300S	Contact type (detection of abnormal temperature increase)
	External heating upper roller	THM302S	Contact type (detection of abnormal temperature increase)
	External heating lower roller	THM303S	Contact type (detection of abnormal temperature increase)
Thermo switch	Fixing roller	TP300	Contact type (220 ± 8 deg C)
	Pressure belt	TP301	Noncontact type (130 ± 5 deg C)
	External heating upper roller	TP302	Contact type (220 ± 8 deg C)
	External heating lower roller	TP303	Contact type (220 ± 8 deg C)



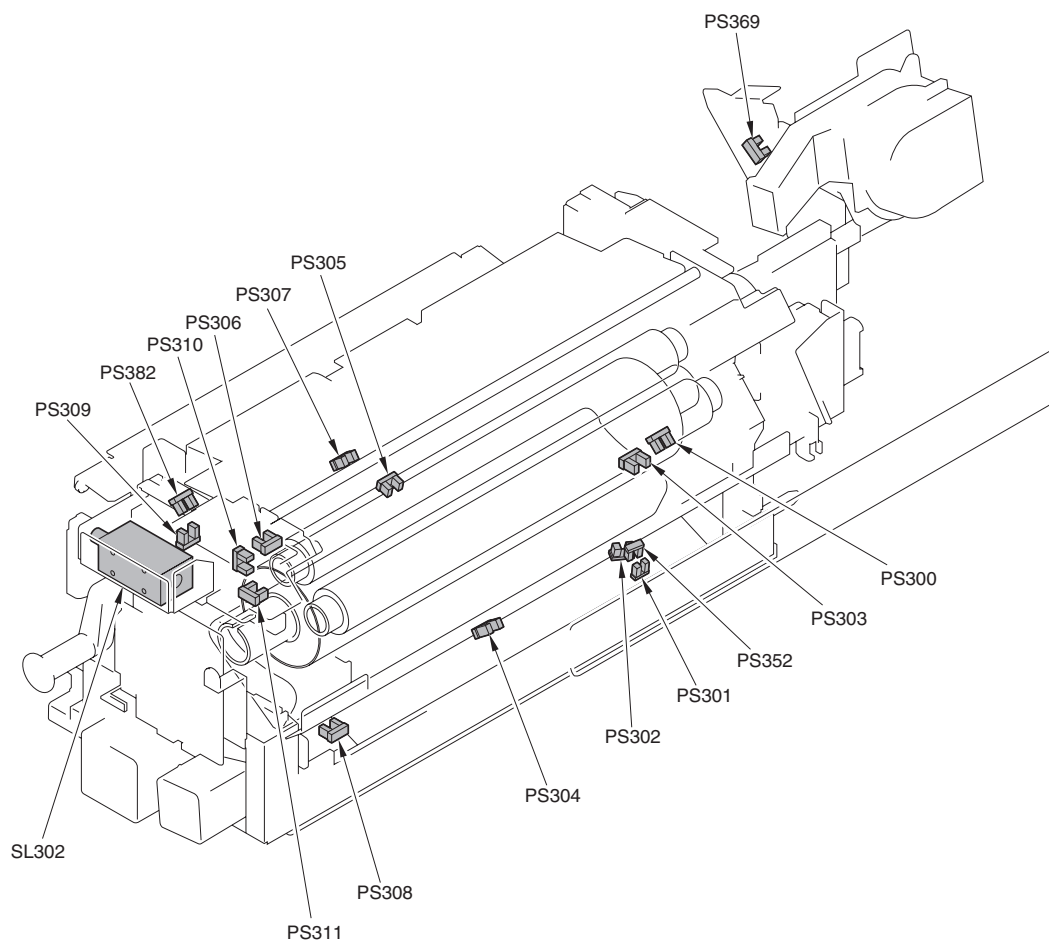
F-9-5

Parts		Code	Function / Method
Main thermistor	Fixing roller	THM306	Noncontact type (temperature control, detection of abnormal temperature increase)
	Pressure roller	THM305M	Contact type (temperature control, detection of abnormal temperature increase)
	External heating upper roller	THM307M	Contact type (temperature control, detection of abnormal temperature increase)
	External heating lower roller	THM308M	Contact type (temperature control, detection of abnormal temperature increase)
Sub thermistor	Fixing roller	THM309	Contact type (detection of abnormal temperature increase)
	Pressure roller	THM305S	Contact type (detection of abnormal temperature increase)
	External heating upper roller	THM307S	Contact type (detection of abnormal temperature increase)
	External heating lower roller	THM308S	Contact type (detection of abnormal temperature increase)
Thermo switch	Fixing roller	TP304	Contact type (220 ± 8 deg C)
	Pressure roller	TP305	Contact type (130 ± 5 deg C)
	External heating upper roller	TP306	Contact type (220 ± 8 deg C)
	External heating lower roller	TP307	Contact type (220 ± 8 deg C)

9.1.5 Major Parts (Sensor / Solenoid)

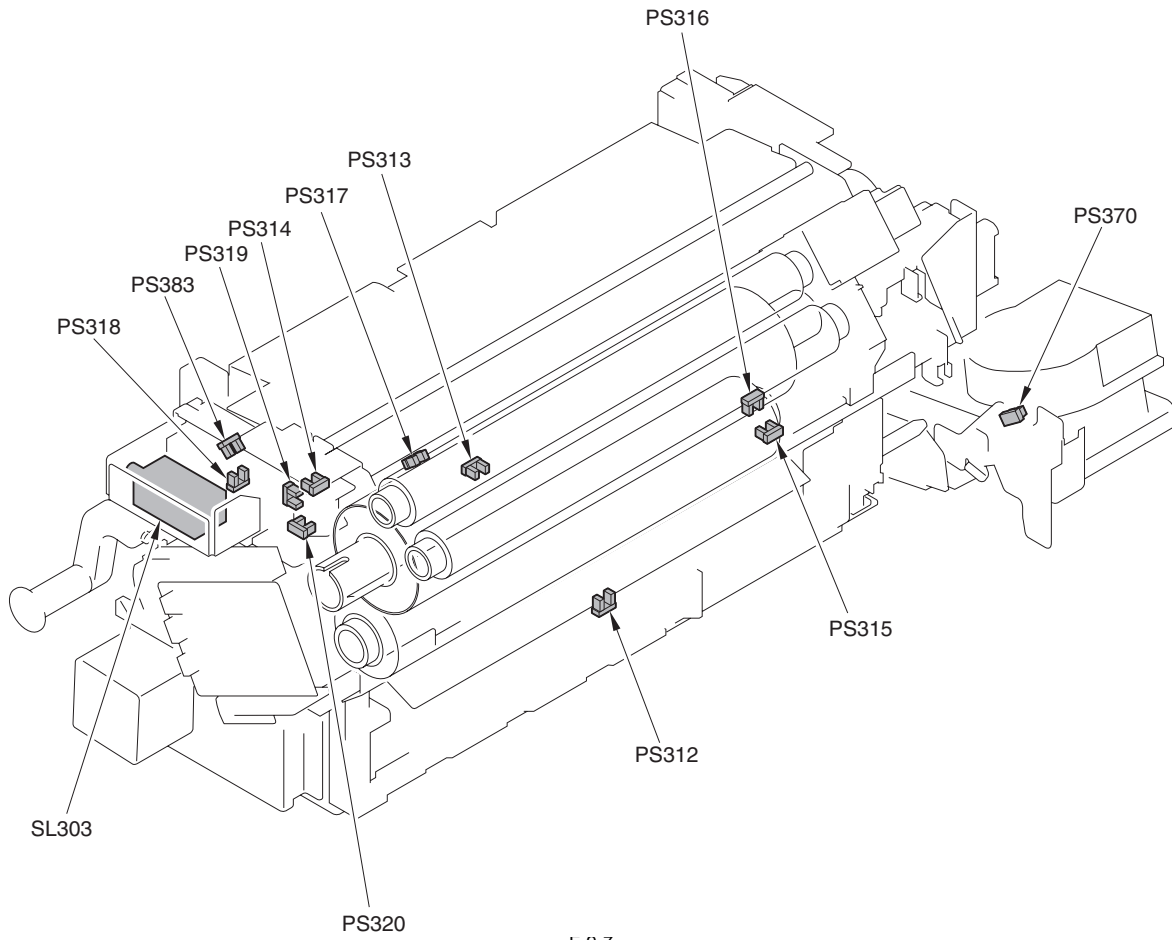
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

Primary fixing assembly



F-9-6

Code	Parts
PS300	Primary fixing pressure belt HP sensor
PS301	Primary fixing pressure belt position sensor (front)
PS302	Primary fixing pressure belt position sensor (rear)
PS303	Primary fixing pressure belt pressure sensor
PS304	Primary fixing inlet sensor
PS305	Primary fixing inner delivery sensor1
PS306	Primary fixing external heating roller HP sensor
PS307	Primary fixing inner delivery sensor2
PS308	Primary fixing pressure belt displacement HP sensor
PS309	Primary fixing web HP sensor
PS310	Primary fixing external heating roller overrun sensor
PS311	Primary fixing web absence warning sensor
PS352	Primary fixing pressure belt retry sensor
PS369	Primary fixing lever sensor
PS382	Primary fixing refresh roller HP sensor
SL302	Primary fixing web solenoid



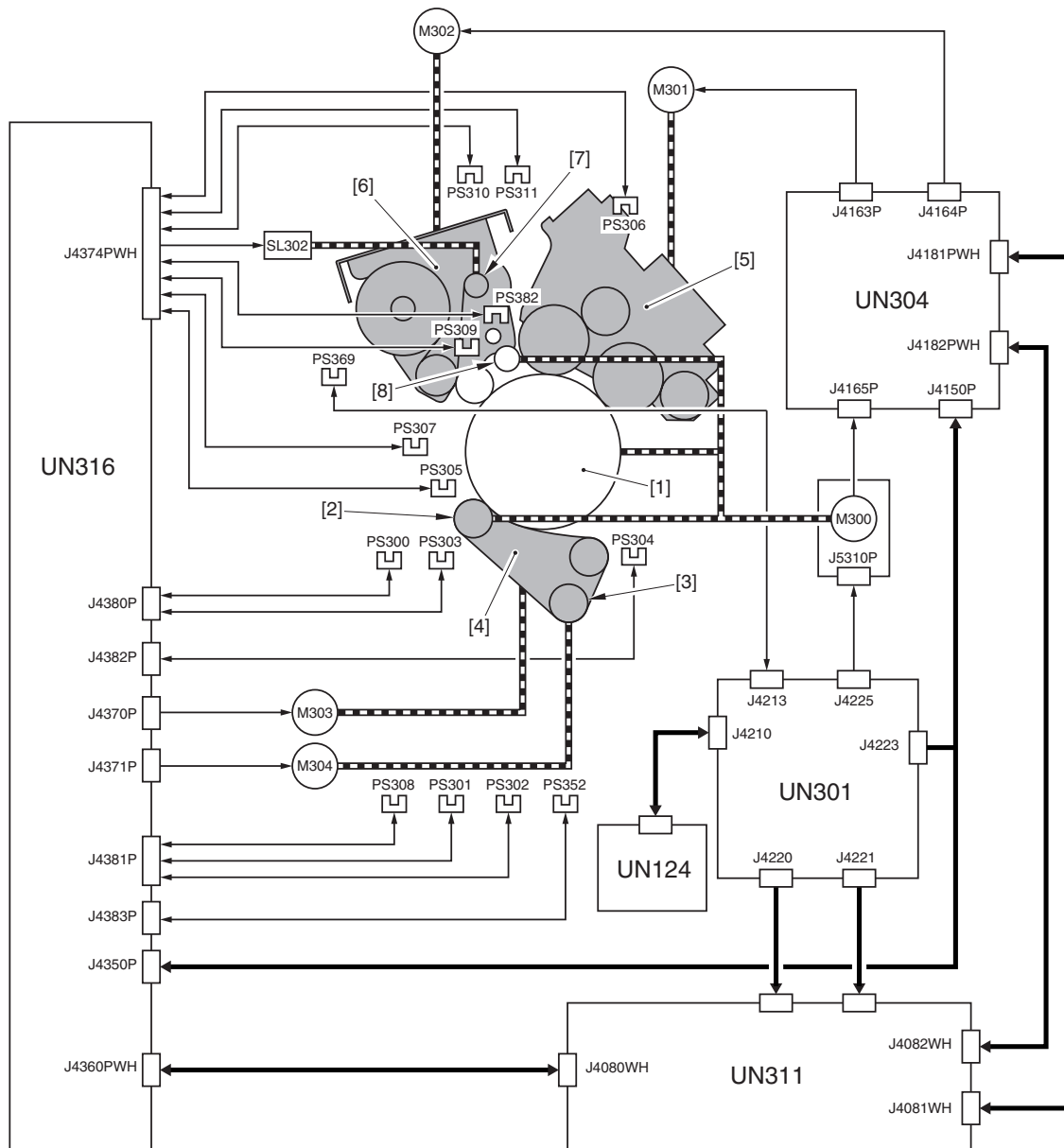
Code	Parts
PS312	Secondary fixing inlet sensor
PS313	Secondary fixing inner delivery sensor1
PS314	Secondary fixing external heating roller HP sensor
PS315	Secondary fixing pressure roller HP sensor
PS316	Secondary fixing pressure roller pressure sensor
PS317	Secondary fixing inner delivery sensor2
PS318	Secondary fixing web HP sensor
PS319	Secondary fixing external heating roller overrun sensor
PS320	Secondary fixing web absence warning sensor
PS370	Secondary fixing lever sensor
PS383	Secondary fixing refresh roller HP sensor
SL303	Secondary fixing web solenoid

9.1.6 Control System Configuration

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

<Drive System>

Primary fixing assembly



F-9-8

[1] Fixing roller	SL302 : Primary fixing web solenoid	PS300 : Primary fixing pressure belt HP sensor
[2] Separation roller		PS301 : Primary fixing pressure belt position sensor (front)
[3] Steering roller	M300 : Primary fixing drive motor	PS302 : Primary fixing pressure belt position sensor (rear)
[4] Belt unit	M301 : Primary fixing outside heating roller pressure motor	PS303 : Primary fixing pressure belt pressure sensor
[5] External heating roller unit	M302 : Primary fixing web pressure motor	PS304 : Primary fixing inlet sensor
[6] Web unit	M303 : Primary fixing pressure belt pressure motor	PS305 : Primary fixing inner delivery sensor1
[7] Web take-up roller	M304 : Belt one-sided displacement control motor	PS306 : Primary fixing external heating roller HP sensor
[8] Refresh roller		PS307 : Primary fixing inner delivery sensor2
	UN124 : DC controller PCB 1-2	PS308 : Primary fixing pressure belt displacement HP sensor
	UN301 : Sub station power connecting PCB	PS309 : Primary fixing web HP sensor

UN304 : Primary fixing external driver PCB

UN311 : Duplexing feed driver PCB

UN316 : Primary fixing inner driver PCB

PS310 : Primary fixing external heating roller sensor

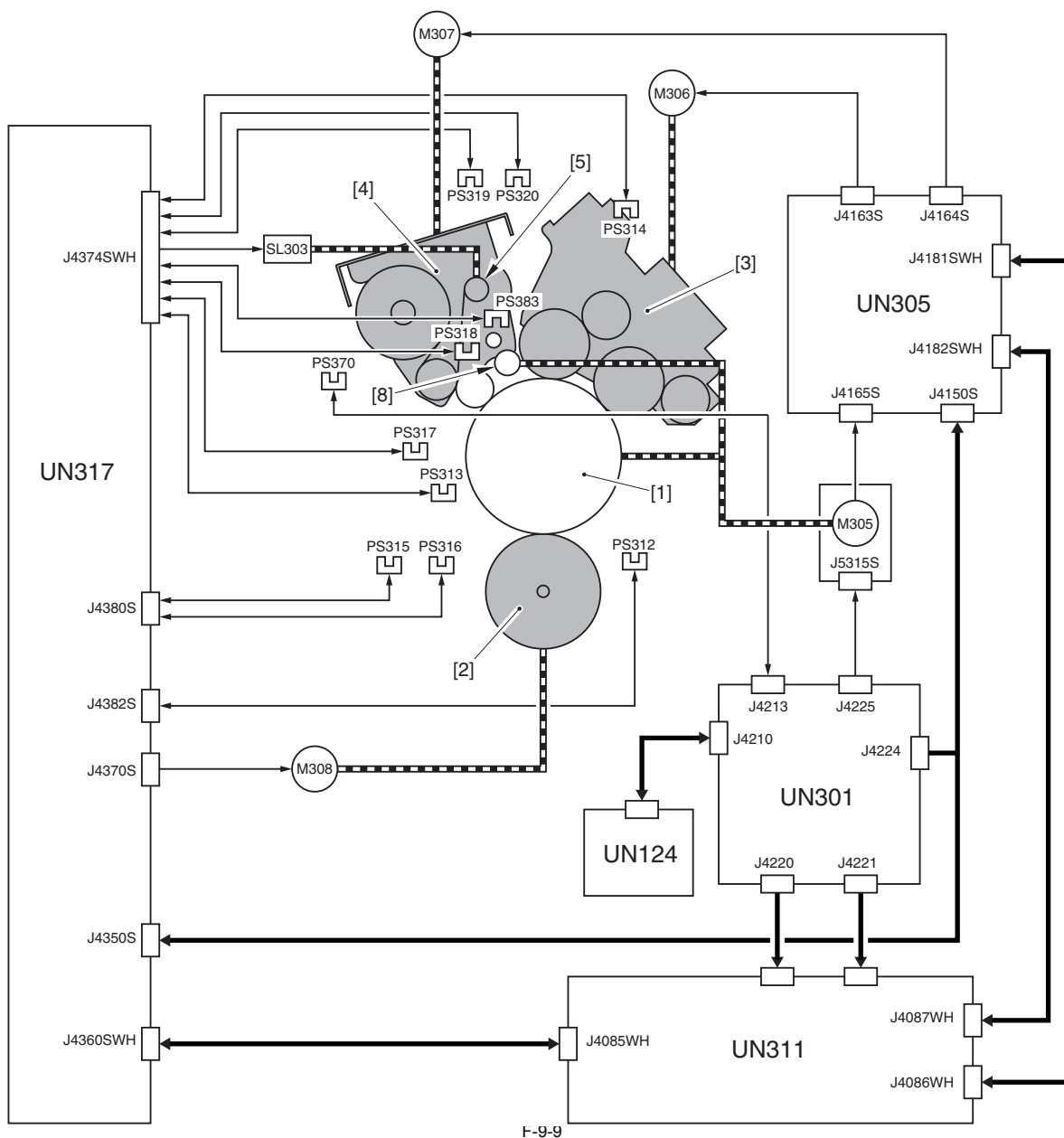
PS311 : Primary fixing web absence warning sensor

PS352 : Primary fixing pressure belt retry sensor

PS369 : Primary fixing lever sensor

PS382 : Primary fixing refresh roller HP sensor

Secondary fixing assembly



[1] Fixing roller

[2] Pressure roller

[3] External heating roller unit

[4] Web unit

[5] Web take-up roller

[6] Refresh roller

M305 : Secondary fixing drive motor

M306 : Secondary fixing external heating pressure motor

M307 : Secondary fixing web pressure motor

M308 : Pressure roller pressure motor

SL303 : Secondary fixing web solenoid

PS312 : Secondary fixing inlet sensor

PS313 : Secondary fixing inner delivery sensor1

PS314 : Secondary fixing external heating roller HP sensor

PS315 : Secondary fixing pressure roller HP sensor

PS316 : Secondary fixing pressure roller pressure sensor

PS317 : Secondary fixing inner delivery sensor2

PS318 : Secondary fixing web HP sensor

PS319 : Secondary fixing external heating roller sensor

PS320 : Secondary fixing web absence warning sensor

PS370 : Secondary fixing lever sensor

UN124 : DC controller PCB 1-2

PS383 : Secondary fixing refresh roller HP sensor

UN301 : Sub station power connecting PCB

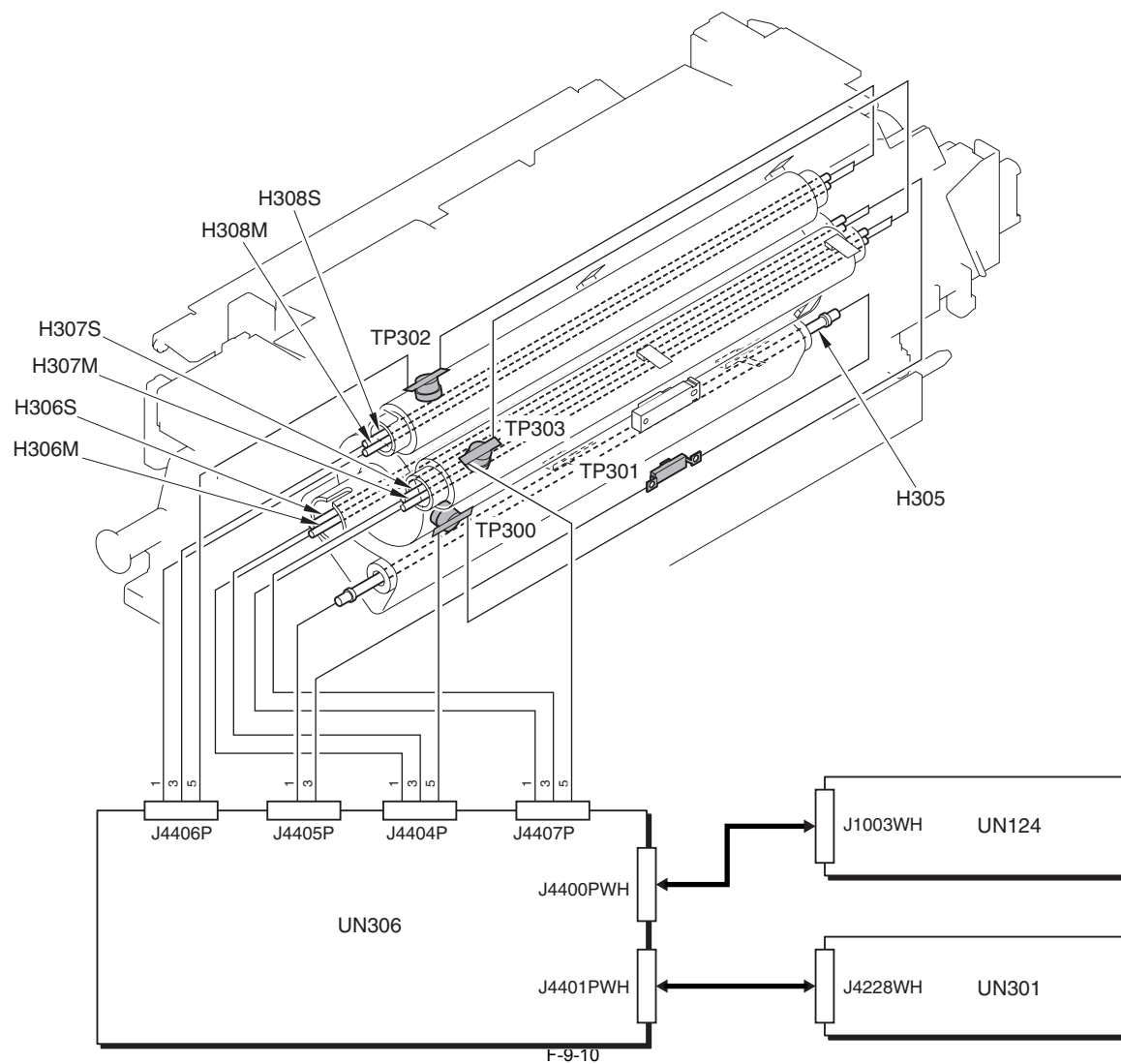
UN305 : Secondary fixing external driver PCB

UN311 : Fixing two-sided feed driver PCB

UN317 : Secondary fixing inner driver PCB

<Heater / Thermo Switch>

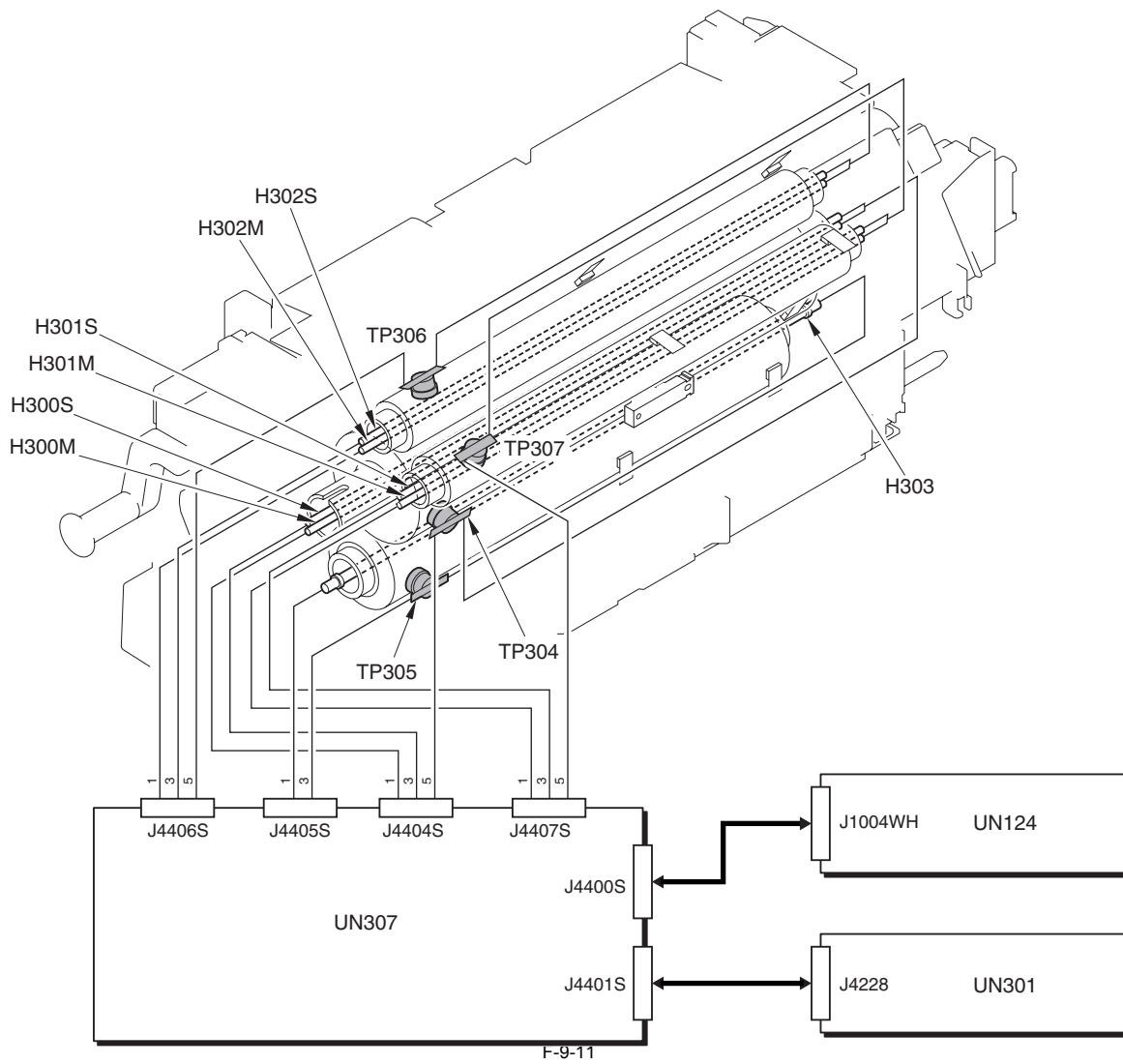
Primary fixing assembly



H305 : Primary fixing pressure belt heater
 H306M : Primary fixing roller main heater
 H306S : Primary fixing roller sub heater
 H307M : Primary fixing external heating lower roller main heater
 H307S : Primary fixing external heating lower roller sub heater
 H308M : Primary fixing external heating upper roller main heater
 H308S : Primary fixing external heating upper roller sub heater

TP300 : Primary fixing roller thermo switch
 TP301 : Primary fixing pressure belt thermoswitch
 TP302 : Primary fixing external heating upper roller thermo switch
 TP303 : Primary fixing external heating lower roller thermo switch

UN124 : DC controller PCB 1-2
 UN301 : Sub station power connecting PCB
 UN306 : Primary fixing heater driver PCB



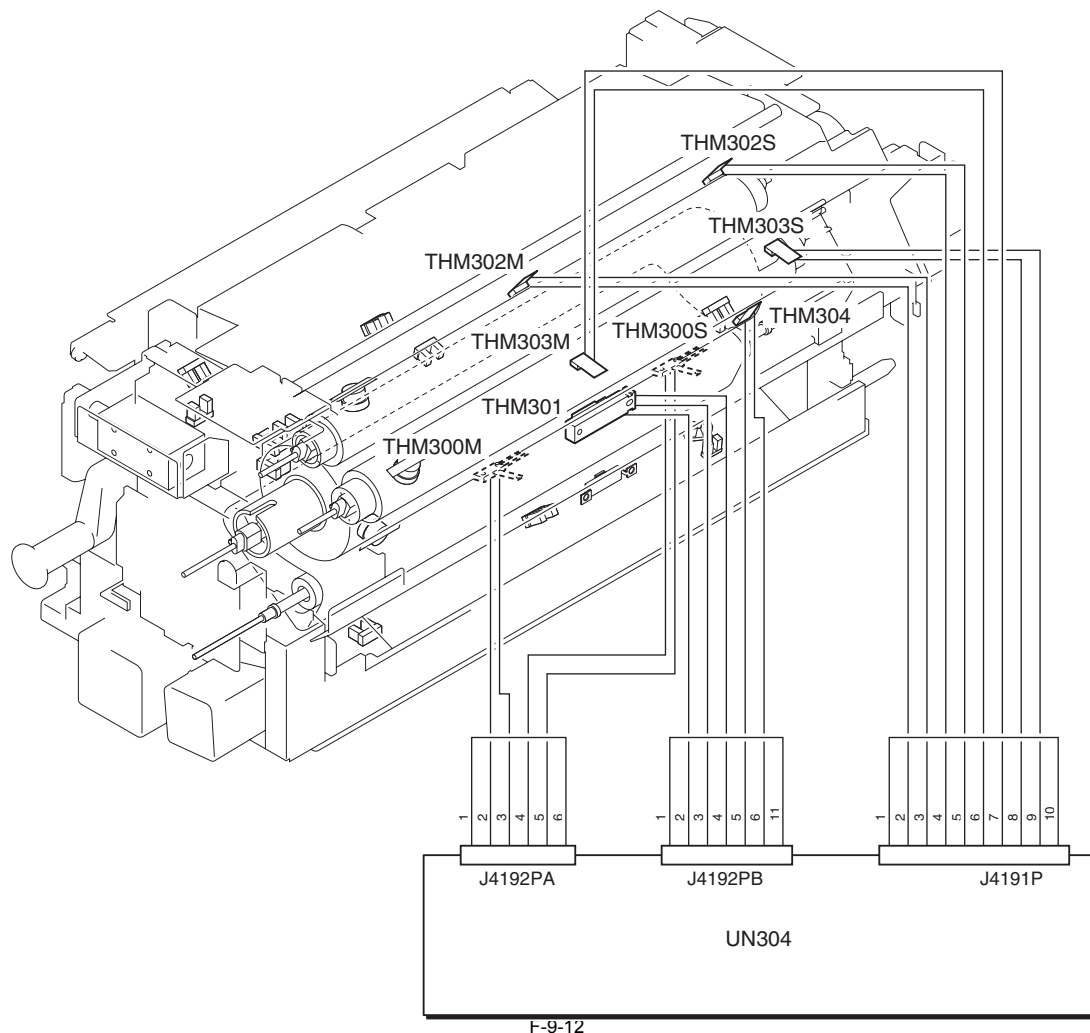
H303 : Secondary fixing pressure roller heater
 H300M : Secondary fixing roller main heater
 H300S : Secondary fixing roller sub heater
 H301M : Secondary fixing external heating lower roller main heater
 H301S : Secondary fixing external heating lower roller sub heater
 H302M : Secondary fixing external heating upper roller main heater
 H302S : Secondary fixing external heating upper roller sub heater

TP304 : Secondary fixing roller thermo switch
 TP305 : Secondary fixing pressure roller thermoswitch
 TP306 : Secondary fixing external heating upper roller thermo switch
 TP307 : Secondary fixing external heating lower roller thermo switch

UN124 : DC controller PCB 1-2
 UN301 : Sub station power connecting PCB
 UN307 : Secondary fixing heater driver PCB

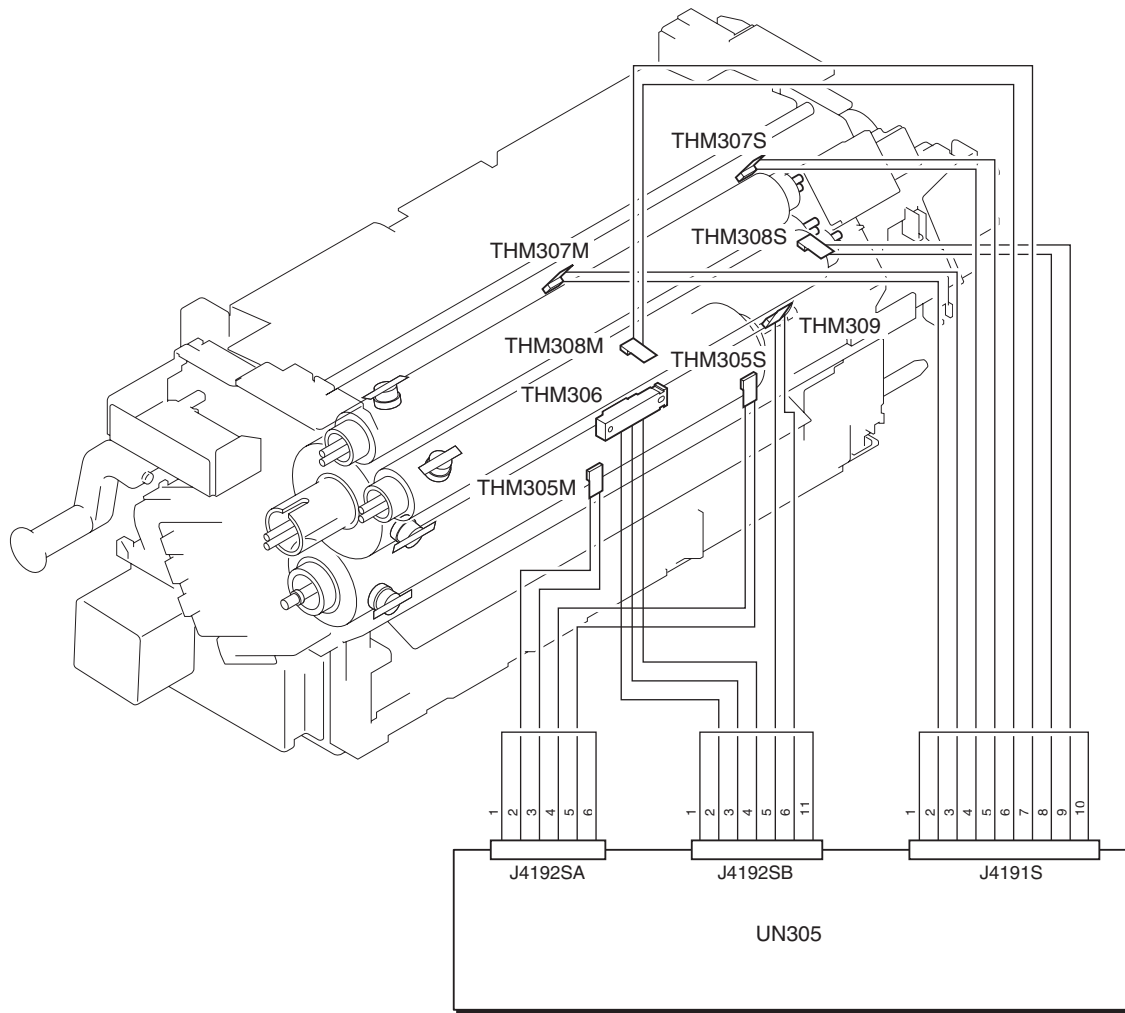
<Thermistor>

Primary fixing assembly



THM300M : Primary fixing pressure belt main thermistor
 THM300S : Primary fixing pressure belt sub thermistor
 THM301 : Primary fixing roller main thermistor
 THM302M : Primary fixing external heating upper roller main thermistor
 THM302S : Primary fixing external heating upper roller sub thermistor
 THM303M : Primary fixing external heating lower roller main thermistor
 THM303S : Primary fixing external heating lower roller sub thermistor
 THM304 : Primary fixing roller sub thermistor

UN304 : Primary fixing external driver PCB



F-9-13

- THM305M : Secondary fixing pressure roller main thermistor
- THM305S : Secondary fixing pressure roller sub thermistor
- THM306 : Secondary fixing roller main thermistor
- THM309 : Secondary fixing roller sub thermistor
- THM307M : Secondary fixing external heating upper roller main thermistor
- THM307S : Secondary fixing external heating upper roller sub thermistor
- THM308M : Secondary fixing external heating lower roller main thermistor
- THM308S : Secondary fixing external heating lower roller sub thermistor
- UN305 : Secondary fixing external driver PCB

9.1.7 Tandem / Single Fixing Switch Control

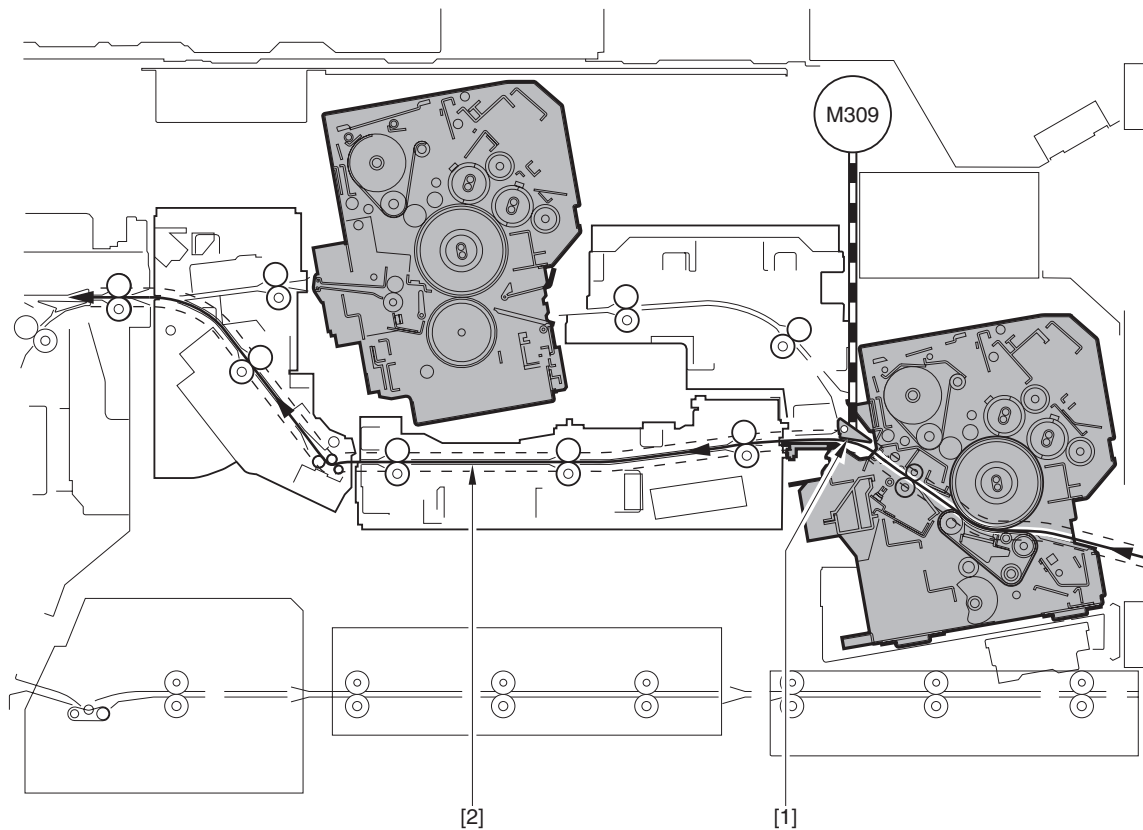
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

The fixing path is switched as the flapper moves up/down by turning on/off the Fixing flapper motor (M309).

At standby, the flapper is placed at the home position (where the flapper rotates approx. 110 degrees clockwise from the position when the sensor was turned off). When printing starts, the flapper switches to either position of the tandem fixing path (primary fixing + secondary fixing) or the single fixing path (primary fixing only) according to the following conditions.

1. Conditions for "single fixing path"

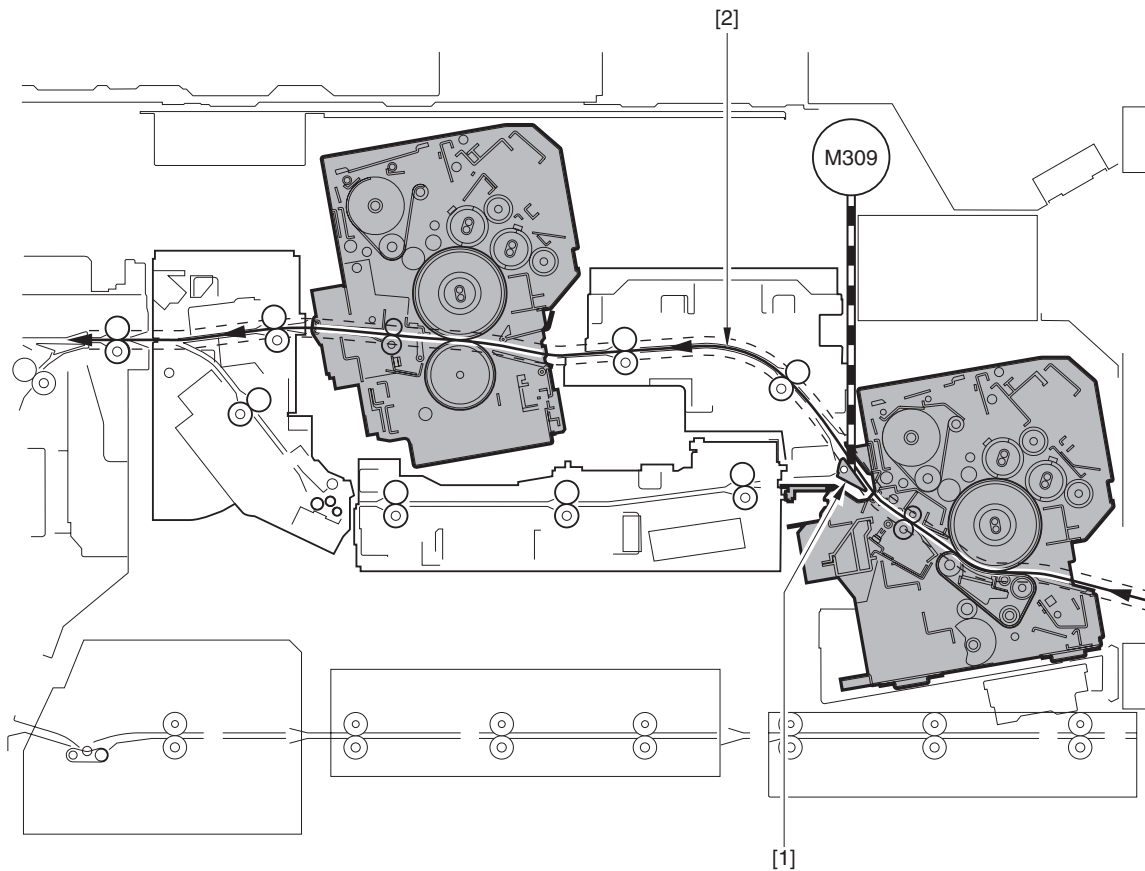
For plain paper, recycle paper, colored paper, tab paper, or vellum paper that weighs less than 150 gsm



[1] Flapper
 [2] Single fixing path
 M309 : Flapper motor

2. Conditions for "tandem fixing path"

For papers other than the above (thick paper weighing 150gsm or more, transparency or coated paper regardless of grammage)



F-9-15

- [1] Flapper
- [2] Tandem path
- M309 : Fixing flapper motor

9.2 Basic Sequence

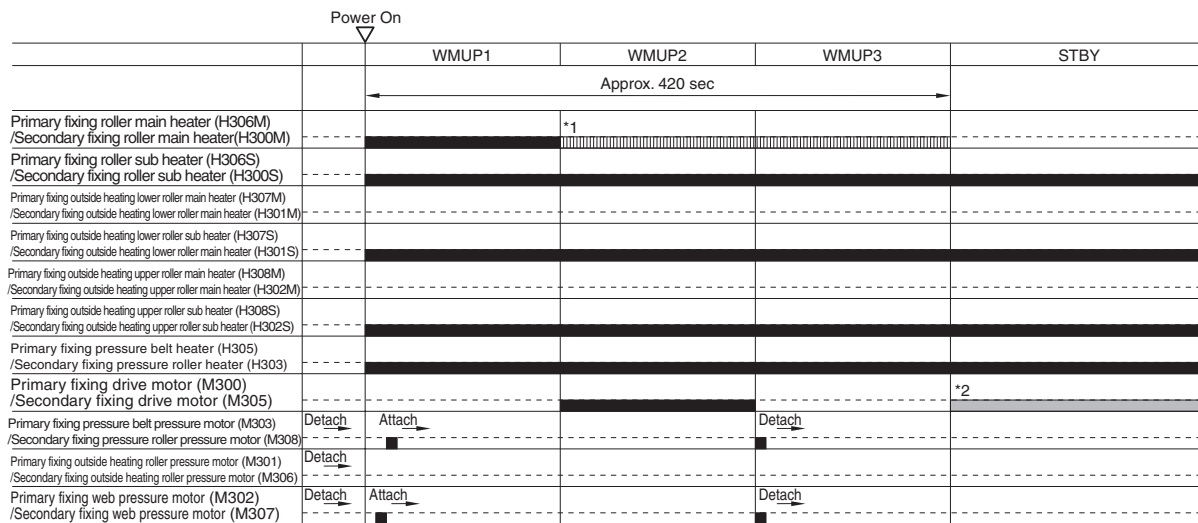
9.2.1 At Power-On

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

<Condition when the machine is turned on for the first time for the day>

When the temperature of the primary fixing roller surface is less than 50 deg C

Name of the interval	Definition of the interval
WMUP1 (Warm Up 1)	An interval from the time when the power is turned on to the time when the temperature of the fixing roller surface reaches 160 deg C After the temperature reaches 160 deg C, the machine enters WMUP2. Purpose: To clean the fixing roller by the web. To heat the pressure pad to prevent faulty images. (primary fixing assembly)
WMUP2 (Warm Up 2)	An interval until the temperature of the pressure belt surface reaches 100 deg C (primary fixing assembly) After the temperature reaches such levels, the machine enters WMUP3. Purpose: To heat the pressure belt (pressure roller).
WMUP3 (Warm Up 3)	An interval until the temperature of the fixing roller surface reaches 180 deg C (primary fixing assembly) After the temperature reaches such levels, the machine enters STBY. Purpose: To detach the web, pressure belt (primary fixing assembly), and pressure roller (secondary fixing assembly).
STBY (Standby)	A print request signal can be received.



F-9-17

*1: Turned on in the time sharing mode

*2: Rotated at 1/3 speed

MEMO:
Each heater of the fixing assembly is alternately turned ON and OFF because of the lower electric energy capacity of imagePRESS C6000 compared to other models.

9.2.2 At Time of Printing

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

Name of the interval	Definition of the interval
STBY (Standby)	A print request signal can be received.
INTR (Initial rotation)	An interval from the time when a print request signal is received to the time when an image signal is sent
PRINT (Print)	An interval from the time when image formation starts to the time when paper is delivered
LSTR (Last rotation 1)	An interval until the fixing roller sub thermistor detection temperature becomes lower than +10 deg C of the print controlled temperature
LSTR2 (Last rotation 2)	An interval until the fixing belt main thermistor detection temperature and the fixing belt sub thermistor detection temperature become lower than +10 deg C of the print controlled temperature
LSTR3 (Last rotation 3)	An interval until the fixing roller surface temperature, external heating roller surface temperature, and fixing belt surface temperature become higher than the standby controlled temperature

	STBY	INTR	PRINT	LSTR1	LSTR2	LSTR3	STBY
			▼ The paper reaches 30mm in front of the fixing inlet sensor. ▼ The leading edge of paper enters the nip.		▼ The trail edge of paper passes through the nip.		
Primary fixing roller main heater (H306M)			*2		*4		
Primary fixing roller sub heater (H306S)			*2 *6				
Primary fixing outside heating lower main heater (H307M)			*2				
Primary fixing outside heating lower sub heater (H307S)			*2				
Primary fixing outside heating upper roller main heater (H308M)			*2				
Primary fixing outside heating upper roller sub heater (H308S)			*2				
Primary fixing pressure belt heater (H305)			*3				
Primary fixing driving motor (M300)	*1				*1		
Primary fixing pressure belt pressure motor (M303)	Detach		Attach		Detach		
Primary fixing outside heating roller pressure motor (M301)	Detach		Attach		Detach		
Primary fixing web pressure motor (M302)	Detach		Attach			Detach	
Primary fixing belt cooling fan 1 (FM302)							*5
Primary fixing belt cooling fan 2 (FM303)							*5
Primary fixing belt cooling fan 3 (FM304)							*5
Primary fixing belt cooling fan 4 (FM305)							*5
Primary fixing belt cooling fan 5 (FM338)							*5
Primary fixing separation cooling fan 1 (FM331)							*5
Primary fixing separation cooling fan 2 (FM332)							*5
Primary fixing separation cooling fan 3 (FM333)							*5
Primary fixing separation cooling fan 4 (FM334)							*5
Primary fixing inner delivery cooling fan (FM313)	*7						*5
Secondary fixing inner delivery cooling fan (FM315)							*5
Secondary fixing pressure roller cooling fan 1 (FM306)							*5
Secondary fixing pressure roller cooling fan 2 (FM307)							*5
Secondary fixing pressure roller cooling fan 3 (FM308)							*5
Secondary fixing pressure roller cooling fan 4 (FM309)							*5
Secondary fixing pressure roller cooling fan 5 (FM337)							*5

- *1: Rotated at 1/3 speed
- *2: Higher temperature at the beginning of the job
- *3: Temperature control is turned off at the beginning of the job.
- *4: Turned off when the standby controlled temperature is reached
- *5: Turned off when the belt main thermistor detection temperature is lowered to the standby controlled temperature
- *6: Segmented activation. Varies depending on paper width.
 - Larger than LTR: 100% (always ON)
 - LTR-R to LTR: 50% (Turned ON and OFF in every 2 sec)
 - Smaller than LTR: 0% (always OFF)
- *7: Rotated at 1/2 speed

MEMO:

Each heater of the fixing assembly is alternately turned ON and OFF because of the lower electric energy capacity of imagePRESS C6000 compared to other models.

9.2.3 At Mode Change (when the controlled temperature is lowered)

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- When it is not necessary to lower the fixing roller controlled temperature

Name of the interval	Definition of the interval
STBY (Standby)	A print request signal can be received.
MDCHG1 (Mode change 1)	While the temperature of the fixing roller reaches to 5 deg C or less from the target temperature, or while the temperature of the pressure belt/pressure roller reaches to 150 deg C or less.
MDCHG2 (Mode change 2)	An interval until the pressure belt / pressure roller temperature becomes within +10 deg C of the controlled temperature of the target mode, and the external heating roller temperature becomes higher than the controlled temperature of the target mode
MDCHG3 (Mode change 3)	An interval until the pressure belt / pressure roller temperature and the external heating roller temperature become lower than the controlled temperature of the target mode

	STBY	MDCHG1	MDCHG2	MDCHG3	STBY
Primary fixing roller main heater (H306M) /Secondary fixing roller main heater(H300M)					
Primary fixing roller sub heater (H306S) /Secondary fixing roller sub heater (H300S)					
Primary fixing outside heating lower roller main heater (H307M) /Secondary fixing outside heating lower roller main heater (H301M)					
Primary fixing outside heating lower roller sub heater (H307S) /Secondary fixing outside heating lower roller main heater (H301S)					
Primary fixing outside heating upper roller main heater (H308M) /Secondary fixing outside heating upper roller main heater (H302M)					
Primary fixing outside heating upper roller sub heater (H308S) /Secondary fixing outside heating upper roller sub heater (H302S)					
Primary fixing pressure belt heater (H305) /Secondary fixing pressure roller heater (H303)					
Primary fixing drive motor (M300) /Secondary fixing drive motor (M305)	*1		*1		
Primary fixing pressure belt pressure motor (M303) /Secondary fixing pressure roller pressure motor (M308)	Detach	Attach	Detach		
Primary fixing outside heating roller pressure motor (M301) /Secondary fixing outside heating roller pressure motor (M306)	Detach				
Primary fixing web pressure motor (M302) /Secondary fixing web pressure motor (M307)	Detach				
Primary fixing belt cooling fan 1 (FM302)					
Primary fixing belt cooling fan 2 (FM303)					
Primary fixing belt cooling fan 3 (FM304)					
Primary fixing belt cooling fan 4 (FM305)					
Primary fixing belt cooling fan 5 (FM338)					
Primary fixing separation cooling fan 1 (FM331)					
Primary fixing separation cooling fan 2 (FM332)					
Primary fixing separation cooling fan 3 (FM333)					
Primary fixing separation cooling fan 4 (FM334)					
Primary fixing inner delivery cooling fan (FM313)					
Secondary fixing pressure roller cooling fan 1 (FM306)					
Secondary fixing pressure roller cooling fan 2 (FM307)					
Secondary fixing pressure roller cooling fan 3 (FM308)					
Secondary fixing pressure roller cooling fan 4 (FM309)					
Secondary fixing pressure roller cooling fan 5 (FM337)					

I-9-19

*1: Rotated at 1/3 speed

- At mode change when it is necessary to lower the fixing roller controlled temperature

<Differences>

- In the MDCHG1/MDCHG2 interval, pressure application by the pressure belt / pressure roller is not performed or heaters are not turned on.

- Only the driving of the belt cooling fan and separation cooling fan is performed.

- No difference for other interval

MEMO:

Each heater of the fixing assembly is alternately turned ON and OFF because of the lower electric energy capacity of imagePRESS C6000 compared to other models.

9.2.4 At Mode Change (when the controlled temperature is increased)

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

Name of the interval	Definition of the interval
STBY (Standby)	A print request signal can be received.
MDCHG (Mode change)	An interval until the pressure belt / pressure roller temperature and the external heating roller temperature become higher than the controlled temperature of the target mode

	STBY	MDCHG	STBY
Primary fixing roller main heater (H306M) /Secondary fixing roller main heater(H300M)			
Primary fixing roller sub heater (H306S) /Secondary fixing roller sub heater (H300S)			
Primary fixing outside heating lower roller main heater (H307M) /Secondary fixing outside heating lower roller main heater (H301M)			
Primary fixing outside heating lower roller sub heater (H307S) /Secondary fixing outside heating lower roller main heater (H301S)			
Primary fixing outside heating upper roller main heater (H308M) /Secondary fixing outside heating upper roller main heater (H302M)			
Primary fixing outside heating upper roller sub heater (H308S) /Secondary fixing outside heating upper roller sub heater (H302S)			
Primary fixing pressure belt heater (H305) /Secondary fixing pressure roller heater (H303)			
Primary fixing drive motor (M300) /Secondary fixing drive motor (M305)	*1		
Primary fixing pressure belt pressure motor (M303) /Secondary fixing pressure roller pressure motor (M308)	Detach		
Primary fixing outside heating roller pressure motor (M301) /Secondary fixing outside heating roller pressure motor (M306)	Detach		
Primary fixing web pressure motor (M302) /Secondary fixing web pressure motor (M307)	Detach		
Primary fixing belt cooling fan 1 (FM302)			
Primary fixing belt cooling fan 2 (FM303)			
Primary fixing belt cooling fan 3 (FM304)			
Primary fixing belt cooling fan 4 (FM305)			
Primary fixing belt cooling fan 5 (FM338)			
Primary fixing separation cooling fan 1 (FM331)			
Primary fixing separation cooling fan 2 (FM332)			
Primary fixing separation cooling fan 3 (FM333)			
Primary fixing separation cooling fan 4 (FM334)			
Primary fixing inner delivery cooling fan (FM313)			
Secondary fixing pressure roller cooling fan 1 (FM306)			
Secondary fixing pressure roller cooling fan 2 (FM307)			
Secondary fixing pressure roller cooling fan 3 (FM308)			
Secondary fixing pressure roller cooling fan 4 (FM309)			
Secondary fixing pressure roller cooling fan 5 (FM337)			

F-9-20

*1: Rotated at 1/3 speed

MEMO:
Each heater of the fixing assembly is alternately turned ON and OFF because of the lower electric energy capacity of imagePRESS C6000 compared to other models.

9.3 Various Control Mechanisms

9.3.1 Controlling the Fixing Roller Temperature

9.3.1.1 Overview

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

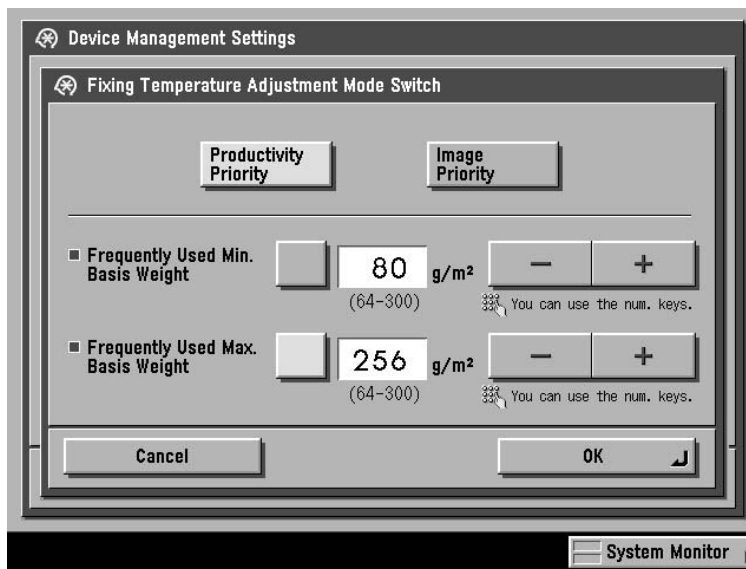
This machine has 20 fixing temperature control tables and selects them according to the fixing temperature control mode and paper type.

Fixing temperature control mode has the following 2 modes.

1. Productivity-priority mode
2. Image-priority mode

These fixing temperature control modes can be switched in additional function mode.

- System Settings > Device Management Settings > Fixing Temperature Mode Switch (*)



F-9-21

Setting values:
Productivity Priority (default), Image Priority

Also glossiness can be adjusted according to paper types (however, there are some paper types that do not allow glossiness adjustment.).

- System Settings > Paper Type Management Settings > Gloss Adjustment (*)

Setting values:
-2 to +2 (default: 0)
Increasing the value improves the glossiness (gloss).
Decreasing the value lowers the glossiness (gloss).

* It is not displayed in additional function mode in factory settings.

To enable and display this function, specify "1" for the value in COPIER > OPTION > BODY > IMAG-ADJ.

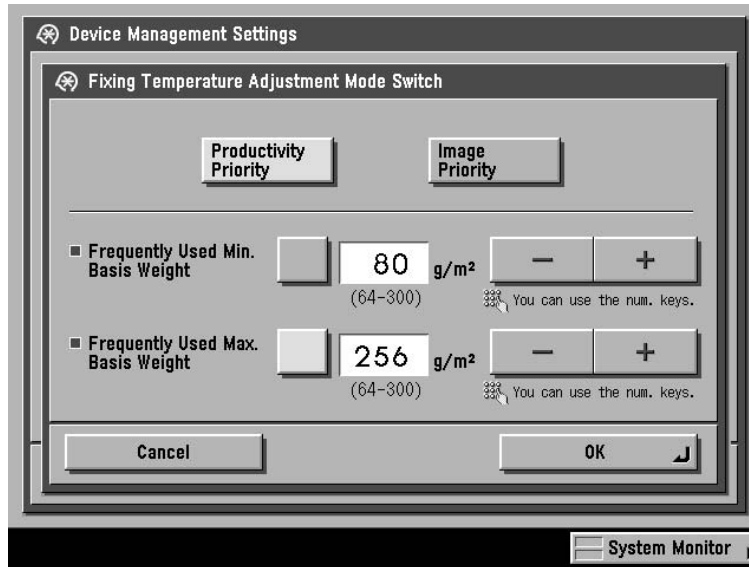
9.3.1.2 Temperature Control in Productivity Priority Mode

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000



It is not always the case that the productivity in "productivity priority" mode is higher than that in "image priority" mode. Productivity may be consistent depending on paper types.

When the "productivity priority" mode is set, fixing operation is controlled by the temperature control table that is selected according to the setting values for "Frequently Used Max. Basis Weight" (default: 256g/m²).



F-9-22

Mode 1: This applies when the setting value is from 257 g/m² to 300 g/m².

Mode 2: This applies when the setting value is from 181 g/m² to 209 g/m².

Mode 3: This applies when the setting value is 180 g/m² or less.

Mode 4: This applies when the setting value is from 210 g/m² to 256 g/m² (default).

However, the machine switches the temperature control table in use to an appropriate one (raise/lower the temperature) depending on paper types. Switching operation is performed before print start or during printing. If it is performed during printing, wait time is generated because the machine stops printing once to switch it. Purpose: To retain the fixing capability and feedability

MEMO:

In the following "image priority" mode, the machine switches the temperature control table in use to an appropriate one depending on paper types more frequently than in "productivity priority" mode.

T-9-2

Mode No.	Primary fixing (deg C)	Secondary fixing (deg C)	High-quality paper (Normal paper)								1-side coated paper							
			Basis weight (g/m2)								Basis weight (g/m2)							
			64 to 79	80 to 105	106 to 128	129 to 150	151 to 180	181 to 209	210 to 256	257 to 300	64 to 79	80 to 105	106 to 128	129 to 150	151 to 180	181 to 209	210 to 256	257 to 300
			Fixing path S: Single T: Tandem								Fixing path S: Single T: Tandem							
S	S	S	S	T	T	T	T	-	T	T	T	T	T	T	T	T		
1	170	200	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	-	155 150	165 180	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	
4		180	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	-	145 150	155 180	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	
-		150	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	
-		130	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	
-		any	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	
2	165	180	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	170 200	-	155 150	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	
-	155	200	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-		
-		180	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-		
3		150	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	165 180	165 180	170 200	-	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	165 180	165 180	170 200
-		130	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	
-		any	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	
-	145	200	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-		
-		180	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-		
-		150	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-		
-		130	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-		
-		any	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-		
-	135	200	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-		
-		180	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-		
-		150	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-		
-		130	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-		
-		any	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-		

T-9-3

Mode No.	Primary fixing (deg C)	Secondary fixing (deg C)	2-side coated paper								Recycled paper							
			Basis weight (g/m2)								Basis weight (g/m2)							
			64 to 79	80 to 105	106 to 128	129 to 150	151 to 180	181 to 209	210 to 256	257 to 300	64 to 79	80 to 105	106 to 128	129 to 150	151 to 180	181 to 209	210 to 256	257 to 300
			Fixing path S: Single T: Tandem								Fixing path S: Single T: Tandem							
-	T	T	T	T	T	T	T	S	S	S	S	T	T	T	T			
1	170	200	-	155 150	165 180	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes		
4		180	-	145 150	155 180	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	145 any	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes		
-		150	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-		
-		130	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-		
-		any	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-		
2	165	180	-	155 150	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	170 200	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes		
-	155	200	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-			
-		180	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-			
3		150	-	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	165 180	165 180	170 200	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	165 180	165 180	170 200
-		130	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-		
-		any	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-		
-	145	200	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-			
-		180	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-			
-		150	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-			
-		130	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-			
-		any	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-			
-	135	200	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-			
-		180	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-			
-		150	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-			
-		130	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-			
-		any	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-			

How to see the table

Yes:

Using the temperature control table in the mode (1 to 4) that is selected according to the setting values of "Frequently Used Max. Basis Weight" (default:256 g/m²)

Column having numeric number:

- Switching the table without using the temperature control table in the

mode (1 to 4) that is selected according to the setting values of "Frequently Used Max. Basis Weight" (default:256 g/m²)

- Numeric number indicates the temperature and upper line applies to the one in the fixing assembly and lower line applies to the one in the secondary fixing assembly.

- : Not used

any: Temperature in the secondary fixing assembly that was previously used.

T-9-4

Mode No.	Primary fixing (deg C)	Secondary fixing (deg C)	Embossed paper									Film/Labels/Postcard								
			Basis weight (g/m2)									Basis weight (g/m2)								
			64 to 79	80 to 105	106 to 128	129 to 150	151 to 180	181 to 209	210 to 256	257 to 300	64 to 79	80 to 105	106 to 128	129 to 150	151 to 180	181 to 209	210 to 256	257 to 300		
			Fixing path S: Single T: Tandem									Fixing path S: Single T: Tandem								
T	T	T	T	T	T	T	T	T	T	T	T	T	T	T	T	T	T			
1	170	200	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes		
4		180	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes		
-		150	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-		
-		130	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-		
-		any	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-		
2	165	180	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	170 200	170 200	170 200	170 200	170 200	170 200	170 200	170 200	170 200	170 200		
-	155	200	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-		
-		180	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-		
3		150	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	165 180	165 180	170 200	170 200	170 200	170 200	170 200	170 200	170 200	170 200	170 200	170 200		
-		130	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-		
-		any	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-		
-	145	200	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-		
-		180	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-		
-		150	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-		
-		130	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-		
-		any	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-		
-	135	200	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-		
-		180	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-		
-		150	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-		
-		130	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-		
-		any	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-		

T-9-5

Mode No.	Primary fixing (deg C)	Secondary fixing (deg C)	Vellum paper									Cotton								
			Basis weight (g/m2)									Basis weight (g/m2)								
			64 to 79	80 to 105	106 to 128	129 to 150	151 to 180	181 to 209	210 to 256	257 to 300	64 to 79	80 to 105	106 to 128	129 to 150	151 to 180	181 to 209	210 to 256	257 to 300		
			Fixing path S: Single T: Tandem									Fixing path S: Single T: Tandem								
S	S	S	S	T	T	T	T	T	T	T	T	T	T	T	T	T	T			
1	170	200	155 150	155 150	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes		
4		180	155 any	155 any	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes		
-		150	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-		
-		130	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-		
-		any	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-		
2	165	180	155 150	155 150	Yes	Yes	Yes	170 200	170 200	170 200	170 200	170 200	170 200	170 200	170 200	170 200	170 200	170 200		
-	155	200	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-		
-		180	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-		
3		150	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	170 200	170 200	170 200	170 200	170 200	170 200	170 200	170 200	170 200	170 200	170 200		
-		130	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-		
-		any	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-		
-	145	200	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-		
-		180	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-		
-		150	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-		
-		130	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-		
-		any	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-		
-	135	200	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-		
-		180	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-		
-		150	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-		
-		130	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-		
-		any	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-		

How to see the table

Yes:

Using the temperature control table in the mode (1 to 4) that is selected according to the setting values of "Frequently Used Max. Basis Weight" (default:256 g/m²)

Column having numeric number:

- Switching the table without using the temperature control table in the

mode (1 to 4) that is selected according to the setting values of "Frequently Used Max. Basis Weight" (default:256 g/m²)

- Numeric number indicates the temperature and upper line applies to the one in the fixing assembly and lower line applies to the one in the secondary fixing assembly.

- : Not used

any: Temperature in the secondary fixing assembly that was previously used.

9.3.1.3 Temperature Control in Image Priority Mode

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

To maintain the appropriate fixing image quality (fixing capability, glossiness), machine switches the temperature control table to an appropriate one (raise/lower the temperature) according to the paper type, in "image priority" mode. Switching operation is performed before print start or during printing.

T-9-6

Primary fixing (deg C)	Secondary fixing (deg C)	Fixing path S: Single T: Tandem	High-quality paper (Normal paper)										1-side coated paper							
			Basis weight (g/m ²)										Basis weight (g/m ²)							
			64 to 79	80 to 105	106 to 128	129 to 150	151 to 180	181 to 209	210 to 256	257 to 300	64 to 79	80 to 105	106 to 128	129 to 150	151 to 180	181 to 209	210 to 256	257 to 300		
170	200	T	-	-	-	-	+1	+1	+1	Yes	-	-	-	+2	+1	+1	+1	Yes		
	180	T	-	-	-	-	Yes	Yes	Yes	-1	-	-	-	+1	Yes	Yes	Yes	-1		
	150	T	-	-	-	-	-	-1	-1	-	-	-	-	-	-	-1	-1	-		
	130	T	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-		
	any	S	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-		
155	200	T	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	+1	-	-	-	-	-		
	180	T	+1	+1	+1	+1	-1	-	-	-	-	+2	Yes	Yes	-1	-	-	-		
	150	T	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	+1	-1	-1	-2	-	-	-		
	130	T	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-		
	any	S	-1	-1	-1	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-		
145	200	T	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-		
	180	T	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-		
	150	T	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	Yes	-2	-2	-	-	-	-		
	130	T	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-1	-	-	-	-	-	-		
	any	S	-2	-2	-2	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-		
135	200	T	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-		
	180	T	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-		
	150	T	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-		
	130	T	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-		
	any	S	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-		

How to see the table

Yes: Default temperature control

-2 to +2: Temperature control table in the case that the value of "gloss adjustment" is changed.

-: Not used

any: Temperature in the secondary fixing assembly that was previously used.

MEMO:

The default temperature after switching the mode from "productivity priority" mode to "image priority" mode is:

Primary fixing: 170 deg C

Secondary fixing: 180 deg C

Primary fixing (deg C)	Secondary fixing (deg C)	Fixing path S: Single T: Tandem	2-side coated paper								Recycled paper							
			Basis weight (g/m2)								Basis weight (g/m2)							
			64 to 79	80 to 105	106 to 128	129 to 150	151 to 180	181 to 209	210 to 256	257 to 300	64 to 79	80 to 105	106 to 128	129 to 150	151 to 180	181 to 209	210 to 256	257 to 300
170	200	T	-	-	-	+2	+1	+1	+1	Yes	-	-	-	-	+1	+1	+1	Yes
	180	T	-	-	-	+1	Yes	Yes	Yes	-1	-	-	-	-	Yes	Yes	Yes	-1
	150	T	-	-	-	-	-	-1	-1	-	-	-	-	-	-	-1	-1	-
	130	T	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	any	S	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	+2	Yes	Yes	Yes	-	-	-	-
155	200	T	-	-	+1	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	180	T	-	+2	Yes	Yes	-1	-	-	-	-	+1	+1	+1	-1	-	-	-
	150	T	-	+1	-1	-1	-2	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	130	T	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	any	S	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	+1	-1	-1	-	-	-	-	-
145	200	T	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	180	T	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	150	T	-	Yes	-2	-2	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	130	T	-	-1	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	any	S	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	Yes	-2	-2	-	-	-	-	-
135	200	T	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	180	T	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	150	T	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	130	T	-	Yes *	-	-	-	-	-	-	-1	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	any	S	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-

How to see the table

Yes: Default temperature control

* : Default temperature control table in the case that the paper width is equivalent to LTR or smaller.

-2 to +2: Temperature control table in the case that the value of "gloss adjustment" is changed.

- : Not used

any: Temperature in the secondary fixing assembly that was previously used.

T-9-8

			Embossed paper								Film/Labels/Postcard
Primary fixing (deg C)	Secondary fixing (deg C)	Fixing path S: Single T: Tandem	Basis weight (g/m2)								Basis weight (g/m2)
			64 to 79	80 to 105	106 to 128	129 to 150	151 to 180	181 to 209	210 to 256	257 to 300	64 to 300
170	200	T	-	-	-	-	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
	180	T	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	-1	-1	-1	-1	-
	150	T	-	-	-	-1	-	-	-	-	-
	130	T	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	any	S	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
155	200	T	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	180	T	-1	-1	-1	-2	-	-	-	-	-
	150	T	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	130	T	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	any	S	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
145	200	T	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	180	T	-2	-2	-2	-	-	-	-	-	-
	150	T	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	130	T	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	any	S	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
135	200	T	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	180	T	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	150	T	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	130	T	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	any	S	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-

How to see the table

Yes: Default temperature control

-2 to +2: Temperature control table in the case that the value of "gloss adjustment" is changed.

- : Not used

any: Temperature in the secondary fixing assembly that was previously used.

T-9-9

			Vellum paper								Cotton
Primary fixing (deg C)	Secondary fixing (deg C)	Fixing path S: Single T: Tandem	Basis weight (g/m2)								Basis weight (g/m2)
			64 to 79	80 to 105	106 to 128	129 to 150	151 to 180	181 to 209	210 to 256	257 to 300	64 to 300
170	200	T	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	Yes	-
	180	T	-	-	-	-	Yes	Yes	Yes	-	Yes
	150	T	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	130	T	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	any	S	-	-	Yes	Yes	-	-	-	-	-
155	200	T	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	180	T	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	150	T	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	130	T	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	any	S	Yes	Yes	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
145	200	T	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	180	T	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	150	T	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	130	T	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	any	S	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
135	200	T	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	180	T	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	150	T	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	130	T	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	any	S	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-

How to see the table

Yes: Default temperature control

- : Not used

any: Temperature in the secondary fixing assembly that was previously used.

9.3.1.4 Power-Saving Mode

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

When the machine enters the power-saving mode (power-saving mode / low-power mode / sleep mode) from the standby mode, the target controlled temperature is set to be lower than the temperature in the standby mode so that the amount of power distributed to the heater is reduced. In the power-saving mode, the fixing drive system stops.

T-9-10

Mode type			Target controller temperature (deg C)					
			Primary fixing assembly			Secondary fixing assembly		
			Fixing roller	External heating (upper/lower) roller	Pressure belt	Fixing roller	External heating (upper/lower) roller	Pressure roller
Standby mode (in "Standard" mode)			175	230	100	205	210	90
Power-saving mode settings	Power-saving mode	-10 % settings	173	0	0	205	210	90
		-25 % settings	173	0	0	179	173	90
		-50 % settings	144	0	0	72	27	70
	Low-power mode		173	0	0	97	60	77
	Sleep mode		0	0	0	0	0	0

9.3.2 Down Sequence Control

9.3.2.1 Overview

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

When the fixing temperature decreases during continuous printing, conventional models using the roller fixing method decrease print speed until the temperature recovers to the target temperature, or discontinue printing operation. (Down sequence)

This machine uses two external heating rollers in both of the first and secondary fixing assemblies, which prevent temperature decrease during continuous printing, and printing speed does not therefore slow down caused by down sequence that occurs in conventional models.

However, printing operation is discontinued in the following conditions.

1. When small-width paper is changed to large-width paper

Reason

To prevent excessive gloss increase on the edge of the image caused by temperature increase of the edge of the fixing roller.

2. When paper is changed to the one with different controlled temperature

3. When the temperature is increased by +25 deg C to the controlled temperature in the pressure belt main thermistor

Reason

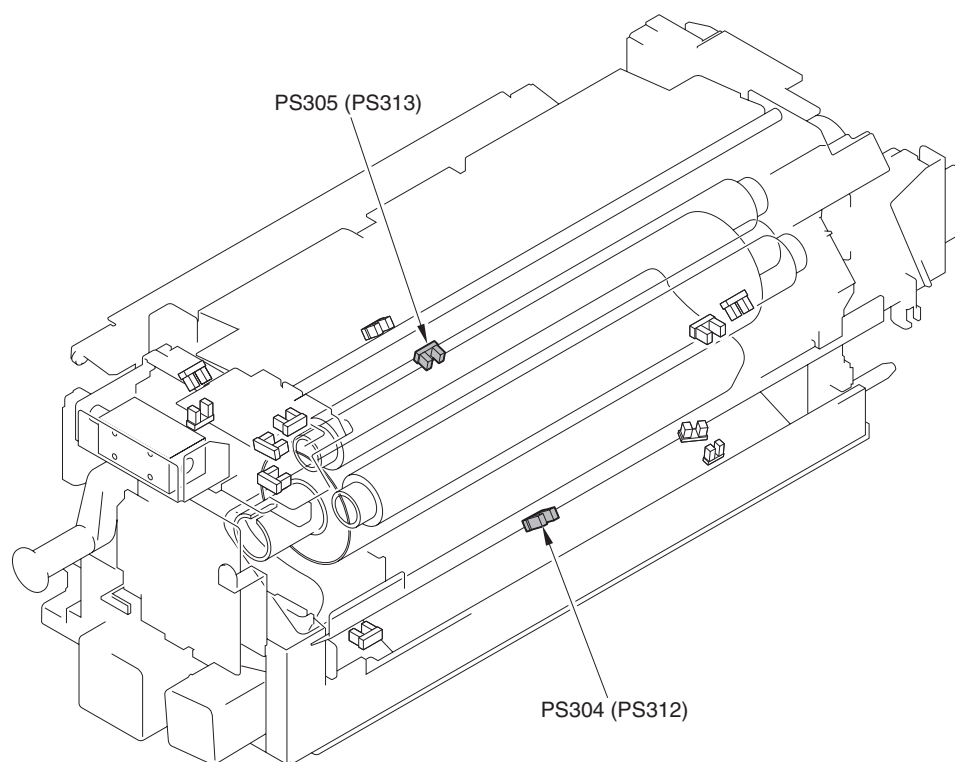
To prevent faulty images and uneven gloss.

9.3.3 Detecting the Passage of Paper

9.3.3.1 Detection of Paper Wrap-Around

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

Paper wrapping around the fixing roller and pressure belt (pressure roller in the case of the secondary fixing assembly) is detected by the inner delivery sensor. When the delay of the paper leading edge is detected by the inner delivery sensor, it is considered as a fixing wrap-around jam. After the fixing motor is stopped by a brake, the pressure belt is separated from the fixing roller to eliminate the jam. When the jam is eliminated, detection of remaining paper is performed by the fixing inlet sensor.



F-9-23

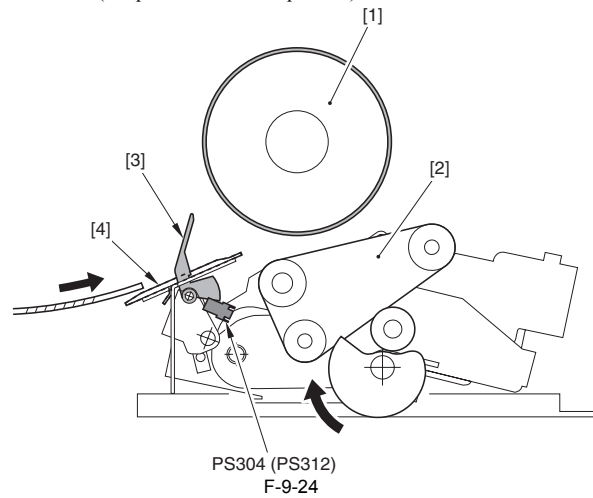
PS304(PS312) : Primary fixing inlet sensor (Secondary fixing inlet sensor)

PS305(PS313) : Primary fixing inner delivery sensor1 (Secondary fixing inner delivery sensor1)

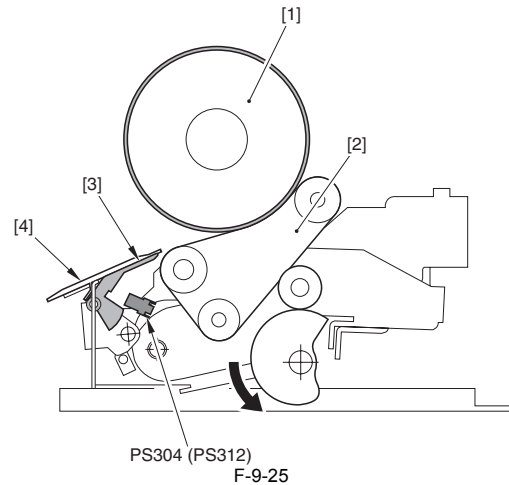
The sensor flag movement in the fixing inlet sensor is linked with the pressure application and separation of the pressure belt unit, and moves up and down. When the machine is turned on or when a jam is removed (when the pressure belt unit is separated), the flag moves up over the paper path surface and performs detection of remaining paper. During printing operation (when pressure is applied to the pressure belt unit), the flag is placed under the paper path surface so that it does not interfere with paper feeding performance.

The secondary fixing assembly has the same mechanism as the primary fixing assembly except that the pressure belt unit is replaced with the pressure roller unit.

- When the machine is turned on, When a jam is removed (the pressure belt is separated)



- At the time of printing (pressure is applied to the pressure belt)



- [1] Fixing roller
- [2] Pressure belt unit
- [3] Fixing inlet sensor flag
- [4] Fixing inlet sensor
- [5] Inlet guide

<Details of Control>

- When the delay of the paper leading edge reaching the inner delivery sensor is detected, the fixing motor is stopped by a brake.

<Jam Codes>

When this occurs in the primary fixing assembly: 0114

When this occurs in the secondary fixing assembly: 0119

- When a jam is removed or when the machine is turned OFF/ON after that, detection of remaining paper is performed by the fixing inlet sensor.

<Jam Codes>

When this occurs in the primary fixing assembly: 0A13

When this occurs in the secondary fixing assembly: 0A18

9.3.4 External Heat Roller Drive Control

9.3.4.1 External Heating Roller Detach/Attach Mechanism

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

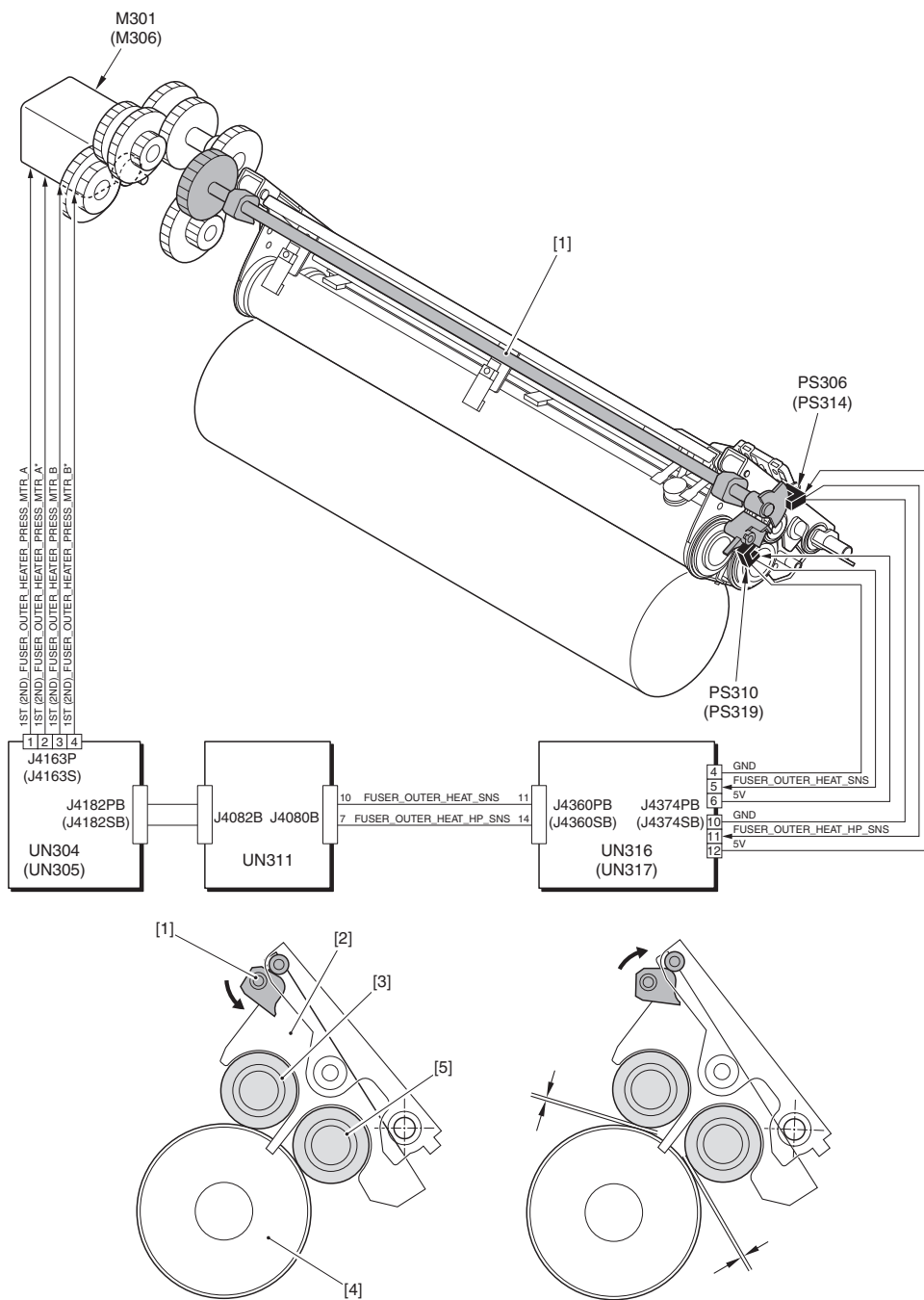
The external heating roller has a heater to heat the fixing roller by making it come into contact with the fixing roller at the time of print, and helps fixing temperature control.

In the standby status, the external heating roller is separated from the fixing roller to prevent deformation of the fixing roller caused by pressure application.

The external heating roller comes into contact with and is separated from the fixing roller when the drive of the external heating detach/attach motor is conveyed to the cam shaft.

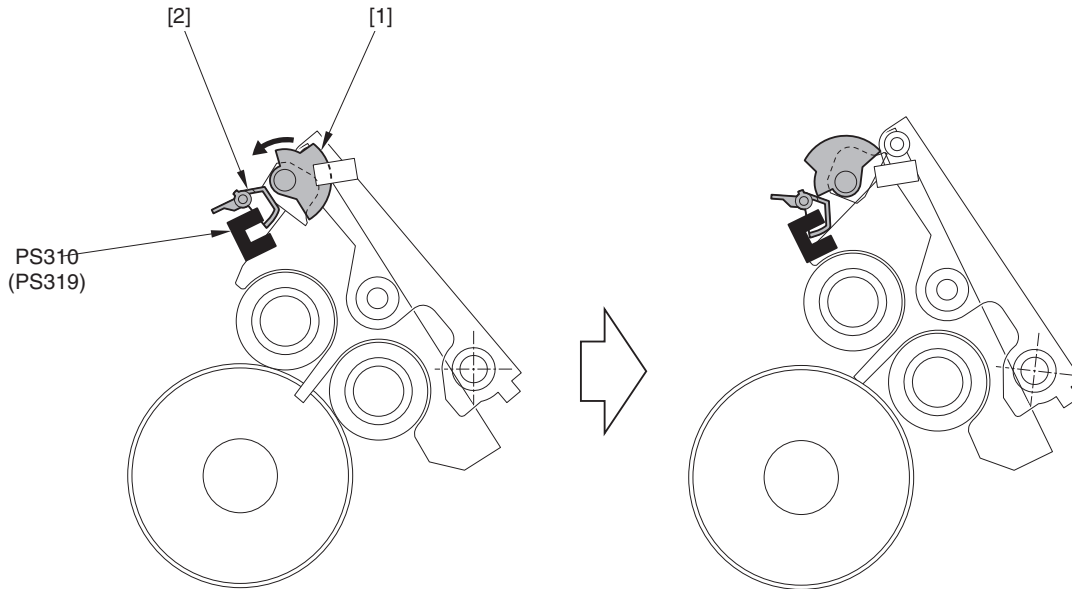
To control contact/separation of the external heating roller, the external heating detach/attach HP sensor detects the home position.

The external heating roller detach/attach sensor also detects the position of the external heating roller (disengaged/engaged position).



- [1] Cam shaft
- [2] Roller supporting plate
- [3] External heating upper roller
- [4] Fixing roller
- [5] External heating lower roller
- M301 (M306): Primary fixing external heating roller pressure motor (Secondary fixing external heating roller pressure motor)
- PS306 (PS314): Primary fixing external heat roller HP sensor (Secondary fixing external heat roller HP sensor)
- PS310 (PS319): Primary fixing external heat roller overrun sensor (Secondary fixing external heat roller overrun sensor)
- UN304 (UN305): Primary fixing outside driver PCB (Secondary fixing outside driver PCB)
- UN311: Duplexing feed driver PCB
- UN316 (UN317): Primary fixing inner driver PCB (Secondary fixing inner driver PCB)
- FUSER_OUTER_HEAT_HP_SNS: External heating HP signal
- FUSER_OUTER_HEAT_SNS: External heating overrun signal

If the cam overruns because of any reason (fault in the external heat roller HP sensor or the connector coming off) at the time of disengaging the external heat roller (external heat unit), the part in the external heat unit may be broken.
 To prevent this symptom, the external heat roller overrun sensor is installed. When the external heat roller overrun sensor detects overrun of the cam, cam drive stops.



F-9-27

- [1] Cam
- [2] Sensor arm
- PS310 (PS319): Primary fixing external heat roller overrun sensor (Secondary fixing external heat roller overrun sensor)

Error Code:

E842 (Error related to fixing disengagement/engagement mechanism)
 The following shows the detailed error codes of external heating roller disengagement/engagement errors.

- 0x01 : Error: external heat roller HP (hardware detection)
- 0x21 : Error: external heat roller disengagement/engagement
- 0x22 : Error: external heat roller disengagement
- 0x23 : Error: external heat roller engagement

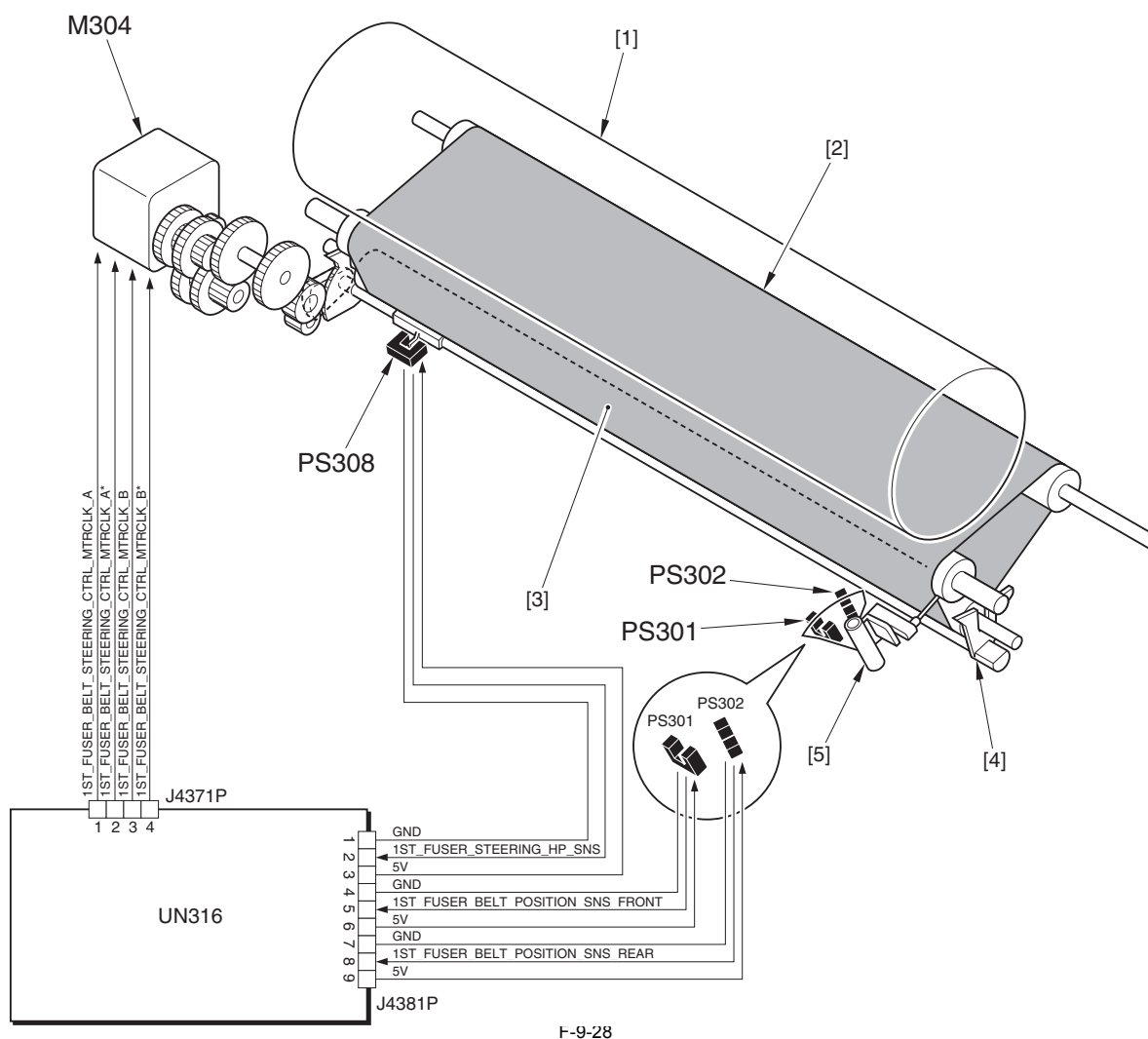
x=1:Primary fixing assembly x=2:Secondary fixing assembly

9.3.5 Belting inclined Control

9.3.5.1 Pressure Belt One-Sided Displacement Correction Control

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

The pressure belt tends to be displaced toward the shaft while driving. Since one-sided displacement of the pressure belt may cause damage to the fixing roller, the pressure belt position is constantly detected during driving of the pressure belt so that it is kept at the center.



F-9-28

- | | |
|---------------------|--|
| [1] Fixing roller | M304: Primary fixing pressure belt full displacement control motor |
| [2] Pressure belt | UN316: Primary fixing inner driver PCB |
| [3] Steering roller | Primary fixing pressure belt position sensor (front) |
| [4] Swinging arm | PS302: Primary fixing pressure belt position sensor (rear) |
| [5] Sensor arm | PS308: Primary fixing pressure belt displacement HP sensor |

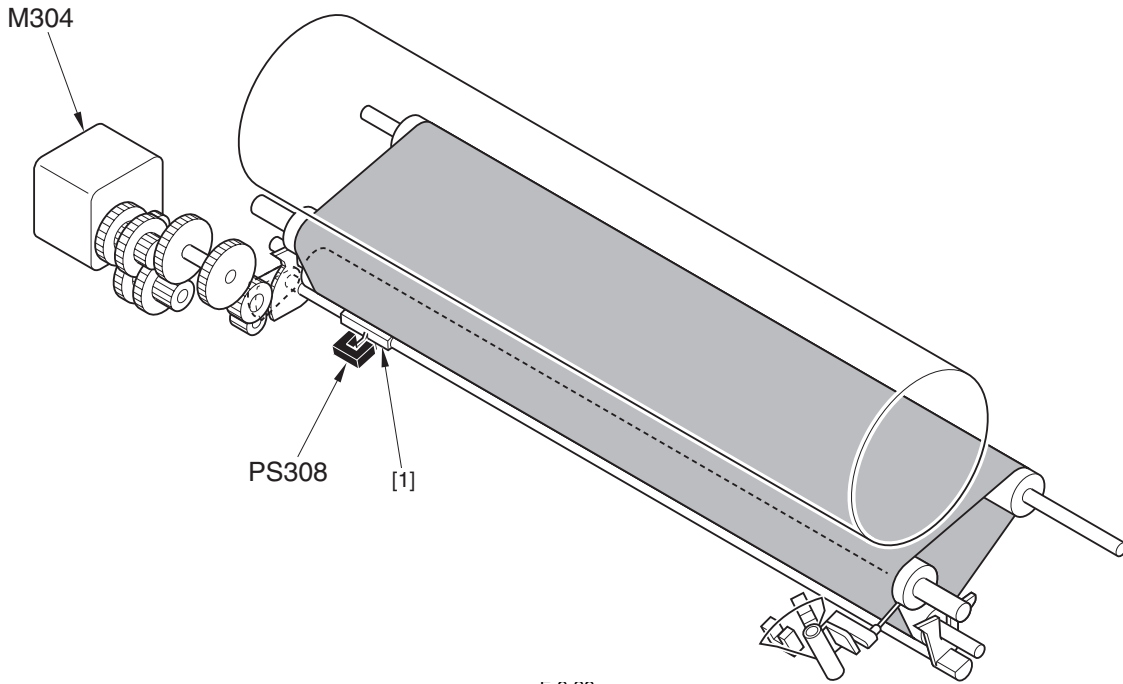
1ST_FUSER_STEERING_HP_SNS: Pressure belt HP detection signal

1ST_FUSER_BELT_POSITION_SNS_FRONT: Pressure belt one-sided displacement (front) detection signal

1ST_FUSER_BELT_POSITION_SNS_REAR: Pressure belt one-sided displacement (rear) detection signal

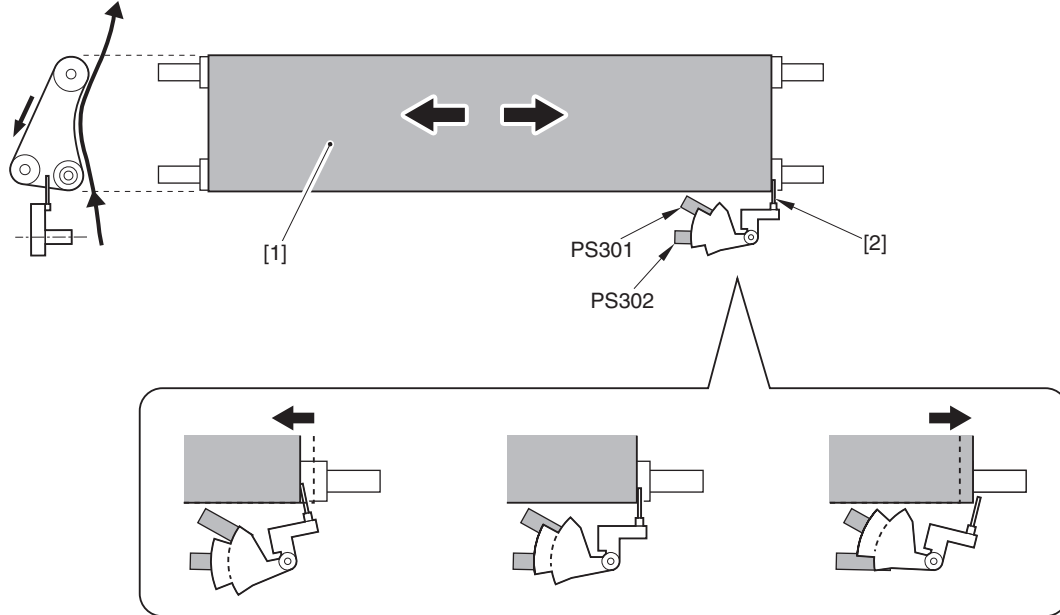
<Details of Control>

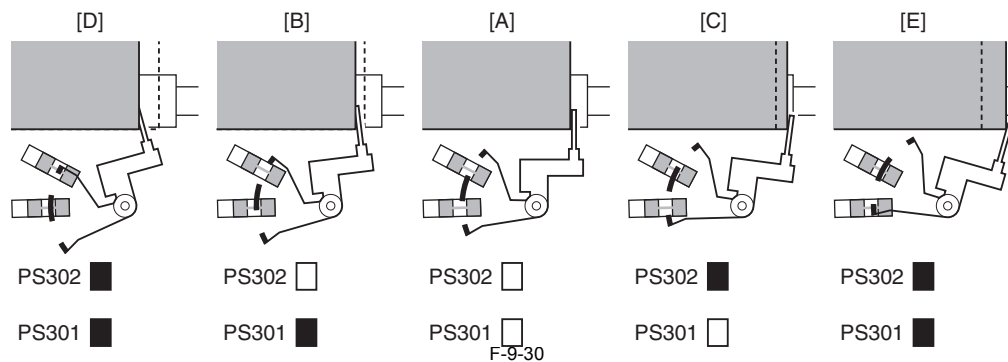
- 1) Before the pressure belt starts driving, the home position of the steering roller shaft (tilt) is detected. The home position is a place where the sensor flag [1] on the swinging arm shaft blocks the light path of the Primary fixing pressure belt displacement HP sensor (PS308).



F-9-29

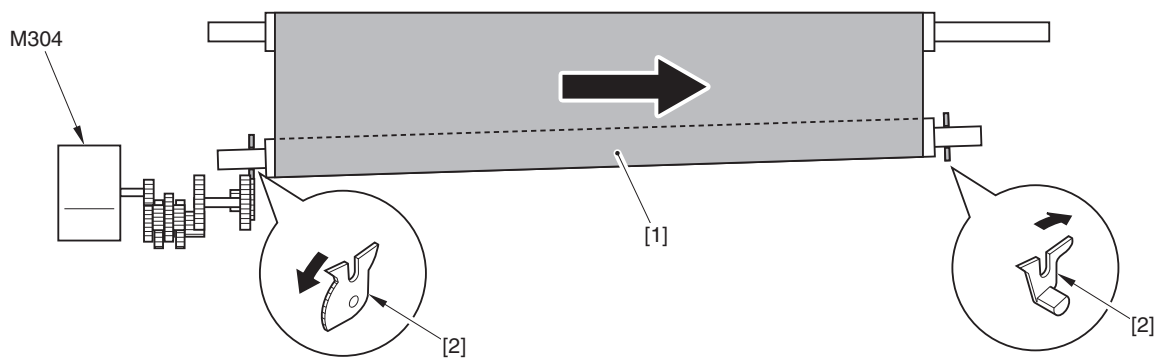
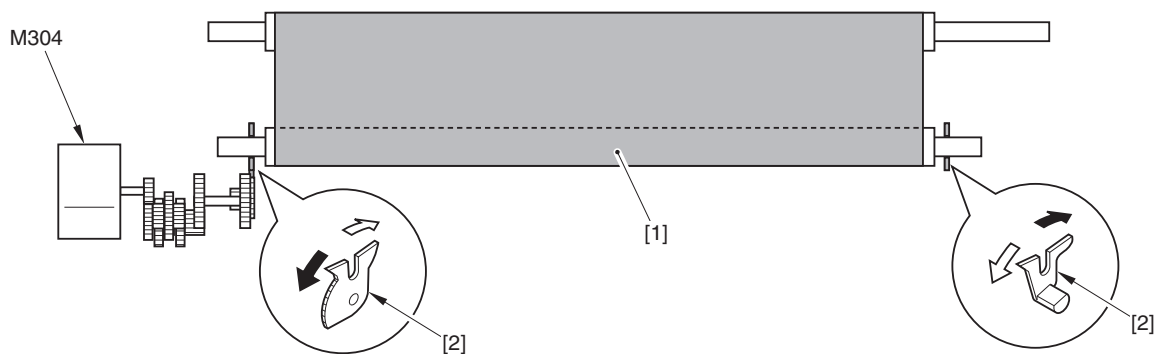
- 2) The pressure belt position is detected by the sensor arm [2], which comes into contact with the edge surface of the pressure belt [1], and Primary fixing pressure belt position sensor (front/rear) (PS301/PS302).





[A] Placed at the center [B] Displaced to the rear side
 [C] Displaced to the front side
 [D] Displaced to the rear side further than the position [B]
 [E] Displaced to the front side further than the position [C]

3) When the position [B] or [C] shown above is detected, the pressure belt moves to the center. The driving power of the Primary fixing pressure belt full displacement control motor (M304) rotates the steering roller support [2] in an opposite direction at the front and back side. This operation tilts the steering roller shaft, and the pressure belt moves to the front or back side in the direction of the shaft.



4) When the position [D] or [E] is detected, it is considered as an error and driving stops because belt displacement correction cannot be made.

Error Code:

E007 (Error related to pressure belt)

0001 : Error: primary fixing pressure belt full displacement

0010 : Error: primary fixing pressure belt displacement control motor drive

The signal logic of the HP sensor does not change even when driving the steering motor from the backside to the front side for a specified period (specified pulse).

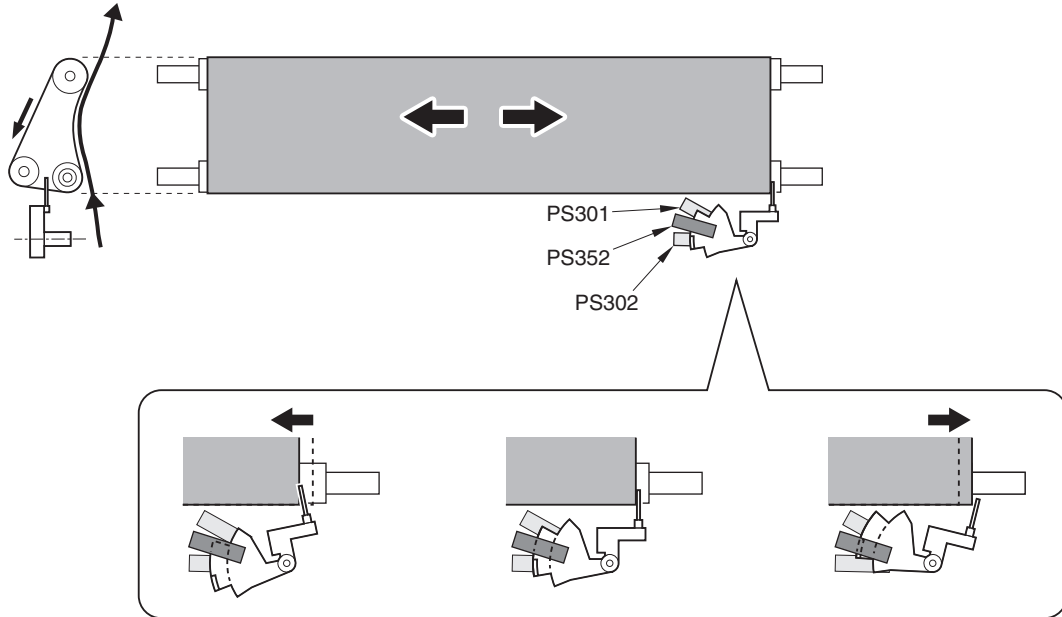
0011 : Error: primary fixing pressure belt displacement control motor drive

The signal logic of the HP sensor does not change even when driving the steering motor from the front side to the backside for a specified period (specified pulse).

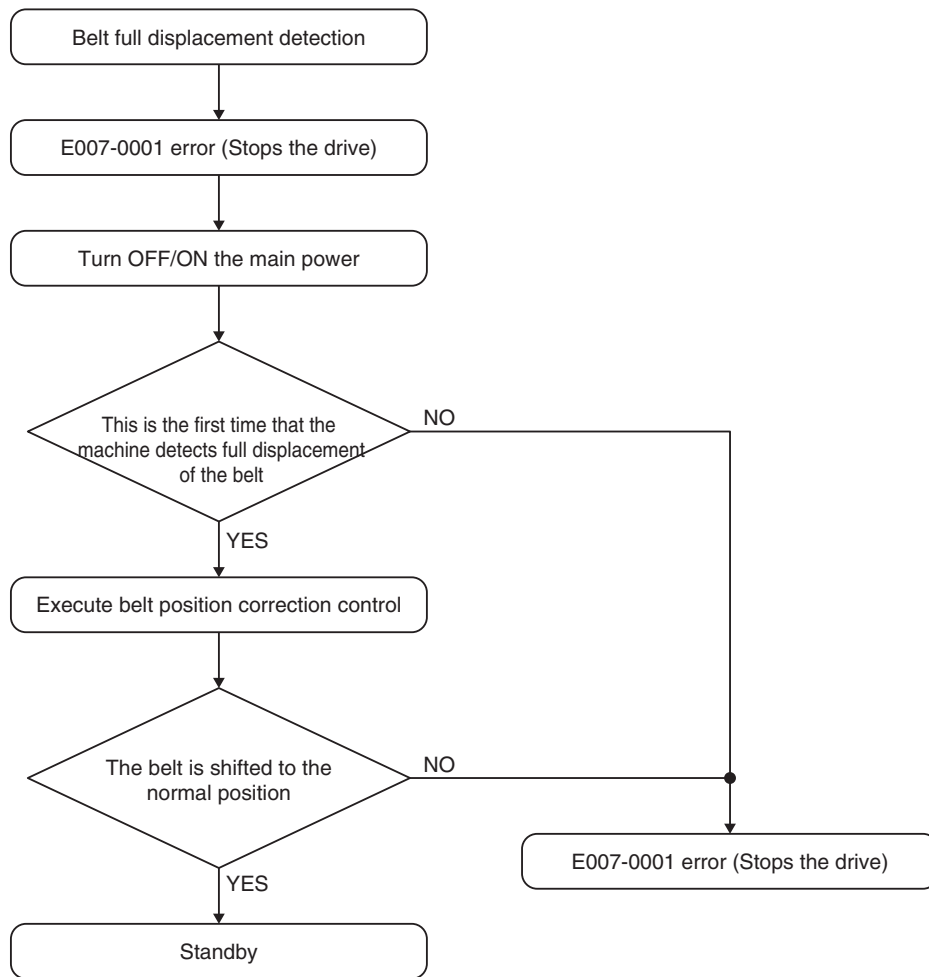
Recovery control after the displacement error in fixing pressure belt (E007-0001)

-In the case of the first error detection, turn OFF and then ON the main power, and then, execute the belt position correction control.

At this time, the primary fixing pressure belt retry sensor (PS 352) determines the full displacement direction (front/rear) of the belt.



F-9-33



I-9-34

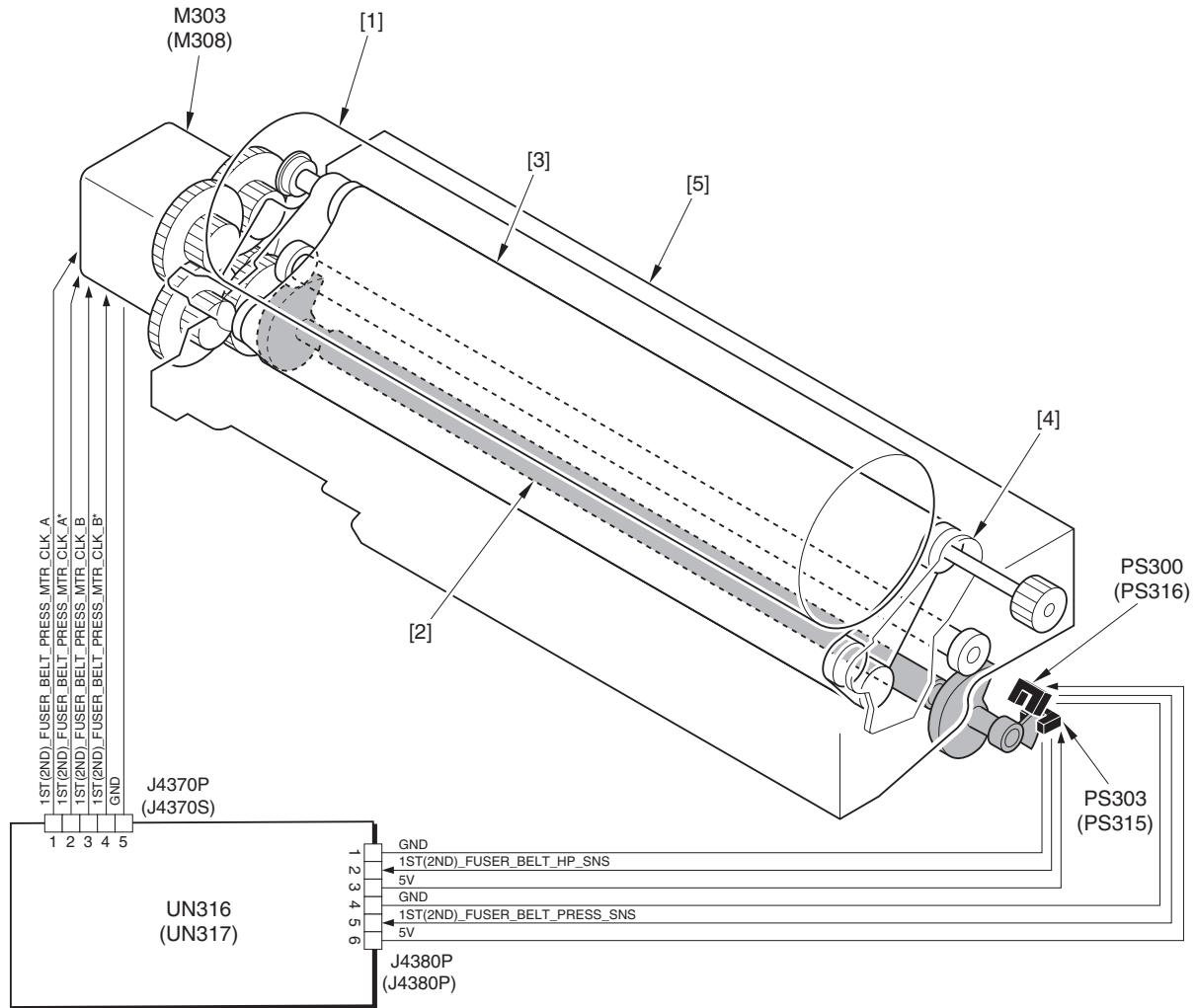
9.4 Belt Pressurizing Mechanism

9.4.1 Pressure Belt / Roller Pressure Mechanism

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

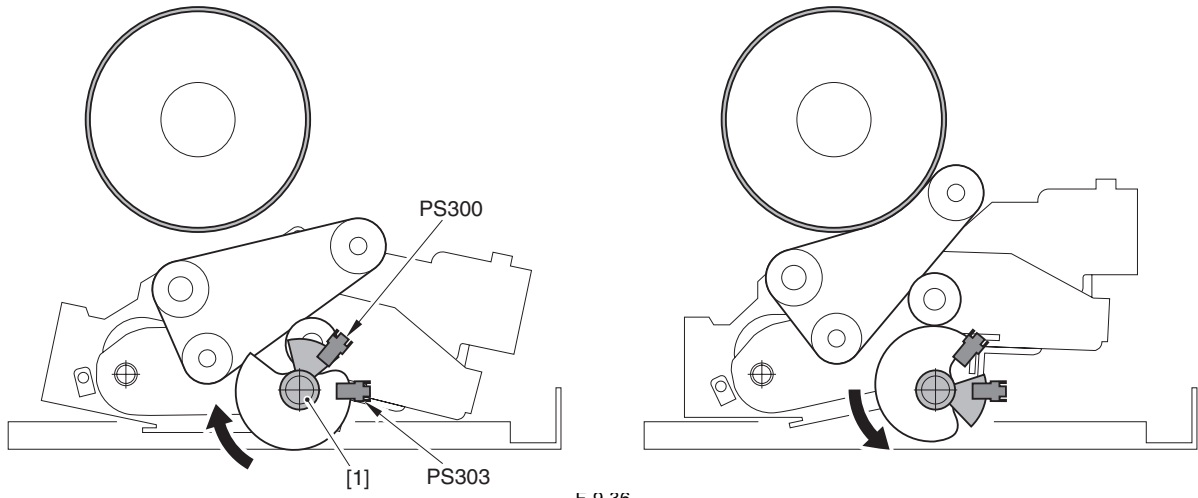
The pressure belt comes into contact with or separates from the fixing roller according to the status such as "during printing" or "in the standby status". The driving power of the pressure belt pressure motor is conveyed to the swinging shaft. This lifts up the pressure belt unit and makes it come into contact with or separate from the fixing roller.

The pressure belt unit position is controlled based on the fixing pressure belt HP sensor. The pressure belt pressure sensor detects the contact/separation status. The secondary fixing assembly has the same mechanism as the primary fixing assembly except that the pressure belt unit is replaced with the pressure roller unit.



F-9-35

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| [1] Fixing roller | M303(M308): Primary fixing pressure belt pressure motor (Secondary fixing pressure belt pressure motor) |
| [2] Swinging shaft | PS300(PS315): Primary fixing pressure belt HP sensor (Secondary fixing pressure roller HP sensor) |
| [3] Pressure belt | PS303(PS316): Primary fixing pressure belt pressure sensor (Secondary fixing pressure roller pressure sensor) |
| [4] Pressure belt unit | UN316(UN317): Primary fixing inner driver PCB (Secondary fixing inner driver PCB) |
| [5] Pressure belt unit support mount | |
- 1ST_FUSER_BELT_HP_SNS(2ND_FUSER_BELT_HP_SNS): Primary fixing pressure belt HP signal (Secondary fixing pressure roller HP signal)
- 1ST_FUSER_BELT_PRESS_SNS(2ND_FUSER_BELT_PRESS_SNS): Primary fixing pressure belt pressure detection signal (Secondary fixing pressure roller pressure detection signal)

**Error Code:****E842 (Error related to fixing disengagement/engagement mechanism)**

The following shows the detailed error codes for the pressure belt (pressure roller) disengagement/engagement errors.

0x11 : Error: pressure belt (pressure roller) disengagement/engagement

0x12 : Error: pressure belt (pressure roller) disengagement

0x13 : Error: pressure belt (pressure roller) engagement

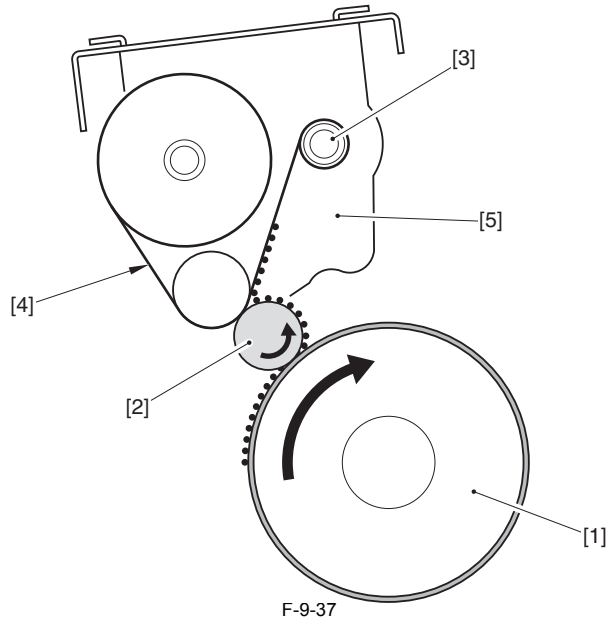
x=1:Primary fixing assembly x=2:Secondary fixing assembly

9.5 Fixing Cleaning Web Mechanisms

9.5.1 Fixing Cleaning Web Drive Control

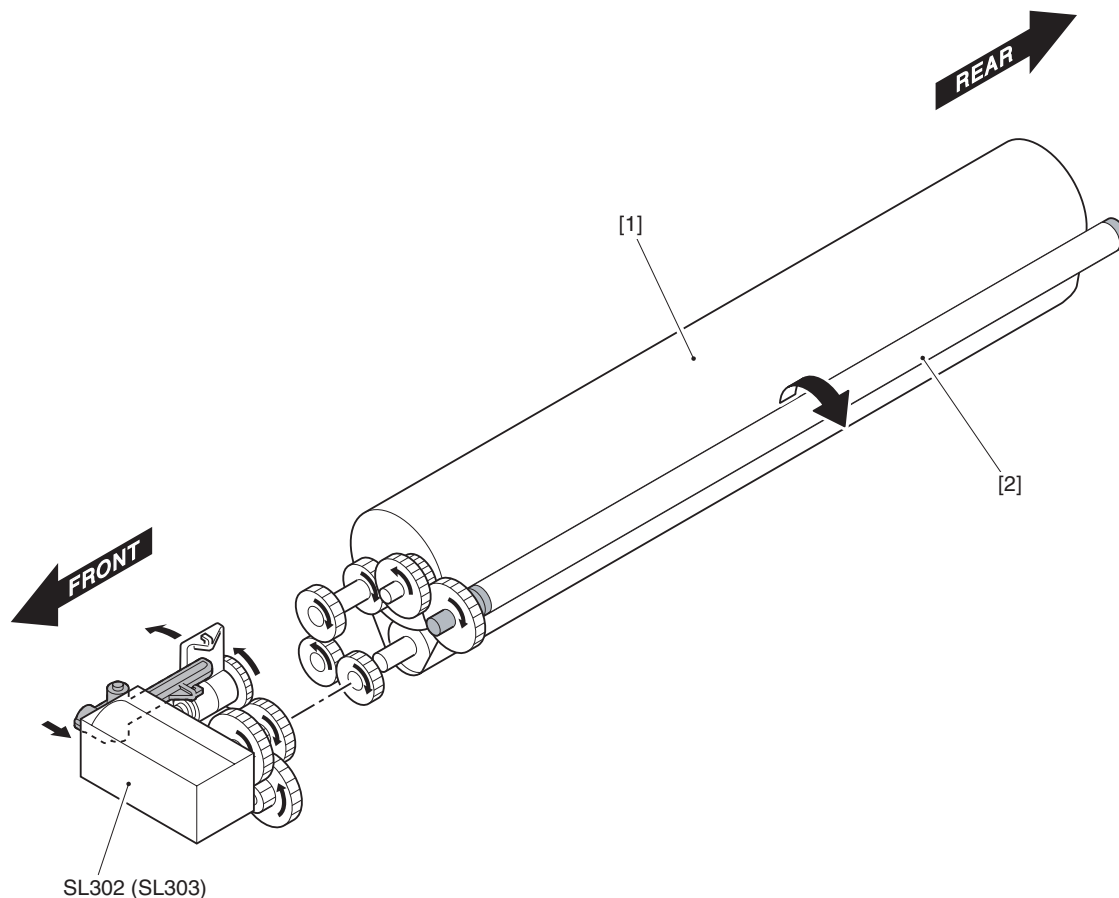
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

To prevent fixing offset, toner remained on the fixing roller is collected on the collection roller, and then removed by the cleaning web (containing silicon oil).



- [1] Fixing roller
- [2] Collection roller
- [3] Web take-up roller
- [4] Cleaning web
- [5] Web unit

The driving power of the fixing web solenoid is conveyed to the web take-up roller drive gear via the one-way clutch, and the cleaning web is taken up by the web take-up roller.



F-9-38

- [1] Cleaning web
 [2] Web take-up roller
 SL302(SL303): Primary fixing web solenoid (Secondary fixing web solenoid)

Web Take-up Volume

T-9-11

Status	Paper size	Number of times that Web SL is turned on
When the power is turned on *1 When a jam is removed When the refresh operation	-	Turned on twice in 1 sec
At the time of printing	Small *2	2 sheets / 1 time
	Large *2	1 sheet / 1 time

*1: Only when the jam history was recorded (When the power is turned OFF/ON without removing a jam)

*2: Small-size paper: Paper with the length shorter than LTR
 Large-size paper: Paper with the length longer than LTR

Error Code:

E005 (Fixing web error)

0x01 : Error: no fixing web

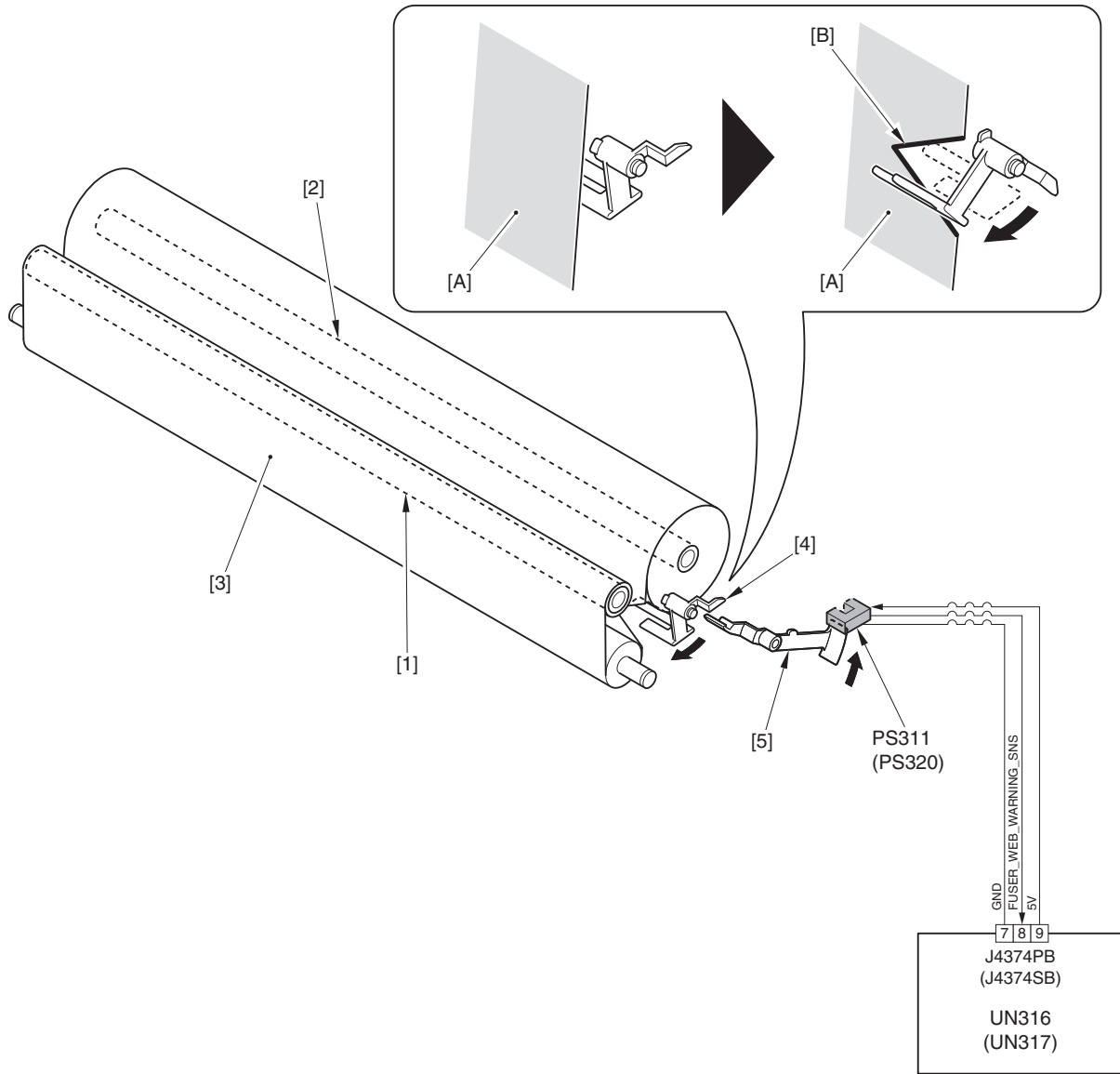
x=1:Primary fixing assembly x=2:Secondary fixing assembly

9.5.2 Fixing Cleaning Web Remaining Level Detection Control

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

The following explains the cleaning web remaining level detection method and details of the control.

- 1) In the initial phases of the first use of the machine, the more sheets are copied / printed, the more the cleaning web [3] wrapped around the web feed roller [1] is taken up by the web take-up roller [2].
- 2) When the cleaning web [3] is taken up by the web take-up roller [2] and the remaining level becomes less than the specified level, the remaining level warning cut-off [B], which is located on the edge of the cleaning web [A], moves the web remaining level detection arm 1 [4] in a direction shown by an arrow. Then, the web remaining level detection arm 2 [5], which is linked with the web remaining level detection arm 1 [4], blocks the light path of the fixing web absence warning sensor. After detection is performed by this sensor, a fixing web remaining level warning message is displayed in the control panel.



F-9-39

- [1] Web feed roller
- [2] Web take-up roller
- [3] Cleaning web
- [4] Web remaining level detection arm 1
- [5] Web remaining level detection arm 2
- [A] Edge of the cleaning web
- [B] Cleaning web cut-off
- PS311 (PS320): Primary fixing web absent alert sensor (Secondary fixing web absent alert sensor)
- UN316 (UN317): Primary fixing inner driver PCB (Secondary fixing inner driver PCB)
- FUSER_WEB_WARNING_SNS: Fixing web absence warning signal

- 3) Then, if continuing prints without replacing the fixing web with a new one, the operation stops when the machine prints approximately 10,000 sheets (on A4/ LTR-basis) and an error code "E005" is displayed.

Service Mode:**COPIER > COUNTER > DRBL-1 > FX-WEB(Level1)**

Primary fixing web counter

COPIER > COUNTER > DRBL-1 > FX2-WEB(Level1)

Secondary fixing web counter

It is desirable to clear this counter after replacing the fixing web. It will make it easier to judge the next replacement timing.

Error Code:**E005** (Fixing web error)

0x01 : Error: no fixing web

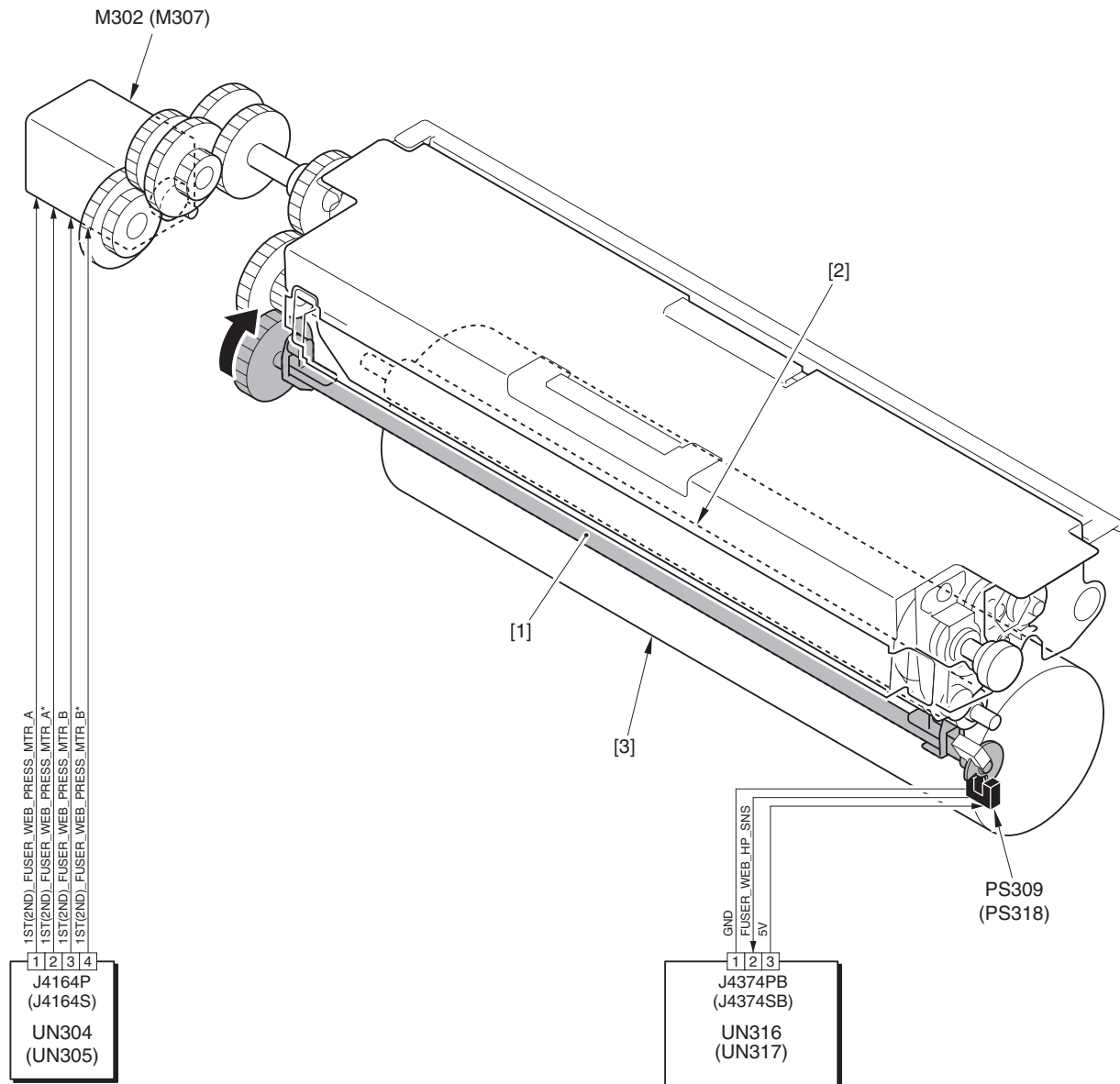
x=1:Primary fixing assembly x=2:Secondary fixing assembly

9.5.3 Cleaning Web Detach/Attach Mechanism

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

At the time of cleaning the fixing roller, the web roller applies pressure to the cleaning web. During the time when the fixing roller is stopped, the web roller is separated from the collection roller to prevent deformation of the fixing roller caused by pressure application. (Separated for each web unit)

The driving power of the web pressure motor is conveyed to the swing shaft, and the web roller comes into contact with and is separated from the collection roller. To control contact/separation of the web roller, the web HP sensor detects the home position.



F-9-40

- [1] Swing shaft
- [2] Web roller
- [3] Fixing roller

M302 (M307): Primary fixing web pressure motor (Secondary fixing web pressure motor)

PS309 (PS318): Primary fixing web HP sensor (Secondary fixing web HP sensor)

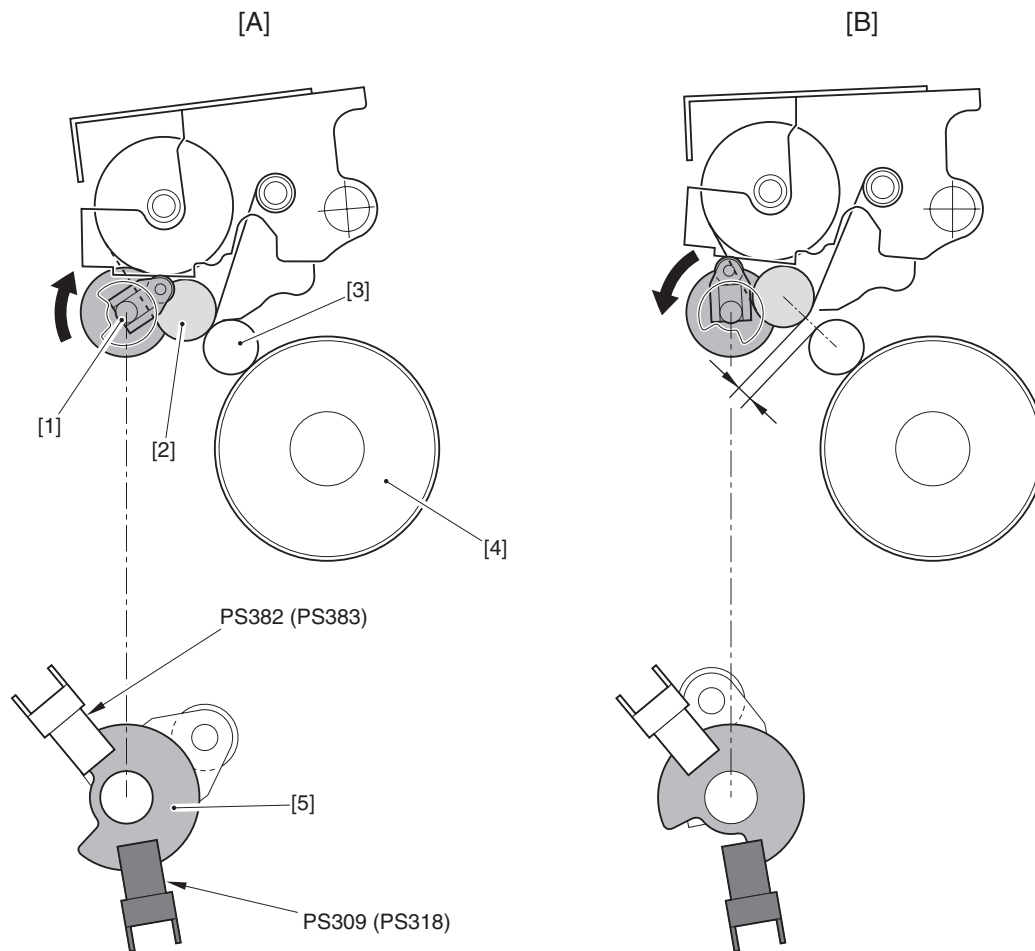
UN316 (UN317): Primary fixing inner driver PCB (Secondary fixing inner driver PCB)

UN304 (UN305): Primary fixing outside driver PCB (Secondary fixing outside driver PCB)

FUSER_WEB_HP_SNS: Web HP signal

Conditions for Pressure Application / Separation

[A] During the time when the fixing roller is driving, the web roller comes into contact with the collection roller (to remove toner remained on the collection roller).
 [B] During the time when the fixing roller is stopped, the web roller is separated from the collection roller (to prevent deformation of the fixing roller).



F-9-41

- [1] Swing shaft
 - [2] Web roller
 - [3] Collection roller
 - [4] Fixing roller
 - [5] Sensor flag
- PS309 (PS318): Primary fixing web HP sensor (Secondary fixing web HP sensor)

Error Code:

E842 (Error related to fixing disengagement/engagement mechanism)

The following shows the detailed codes of the fixing web disengagement/engagement errors.

0x31 : Error: fixing web disengagement/engagement

0x32 : Error: fixing web disengagement

0x33 : Error: fixing web engagement

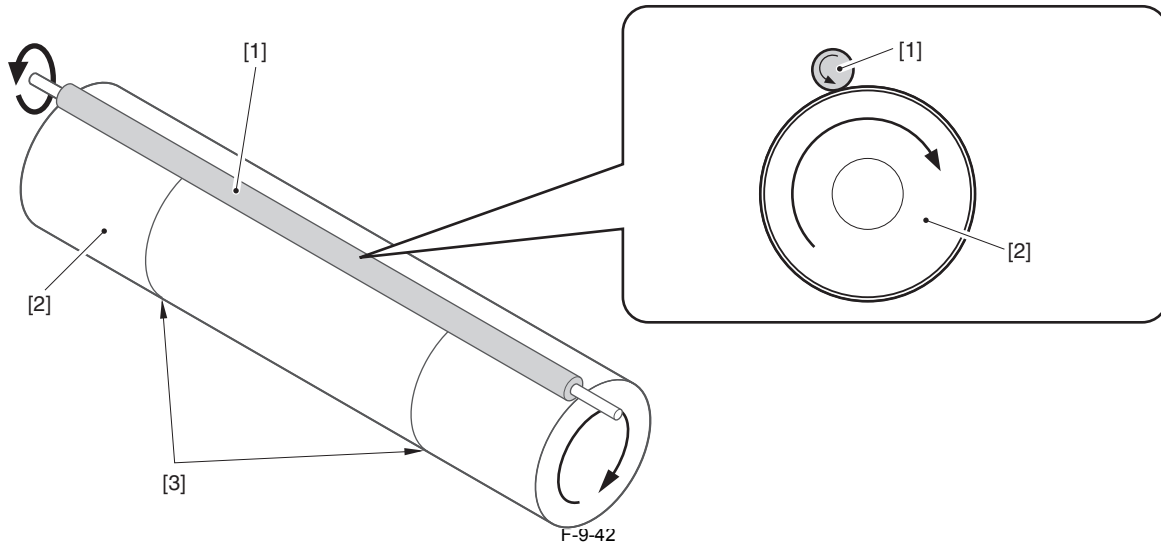
x=1:Primary fixing assembly x=2:Secondary fixing assembly

9.5.4 Fixing Roller Refresh Control

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

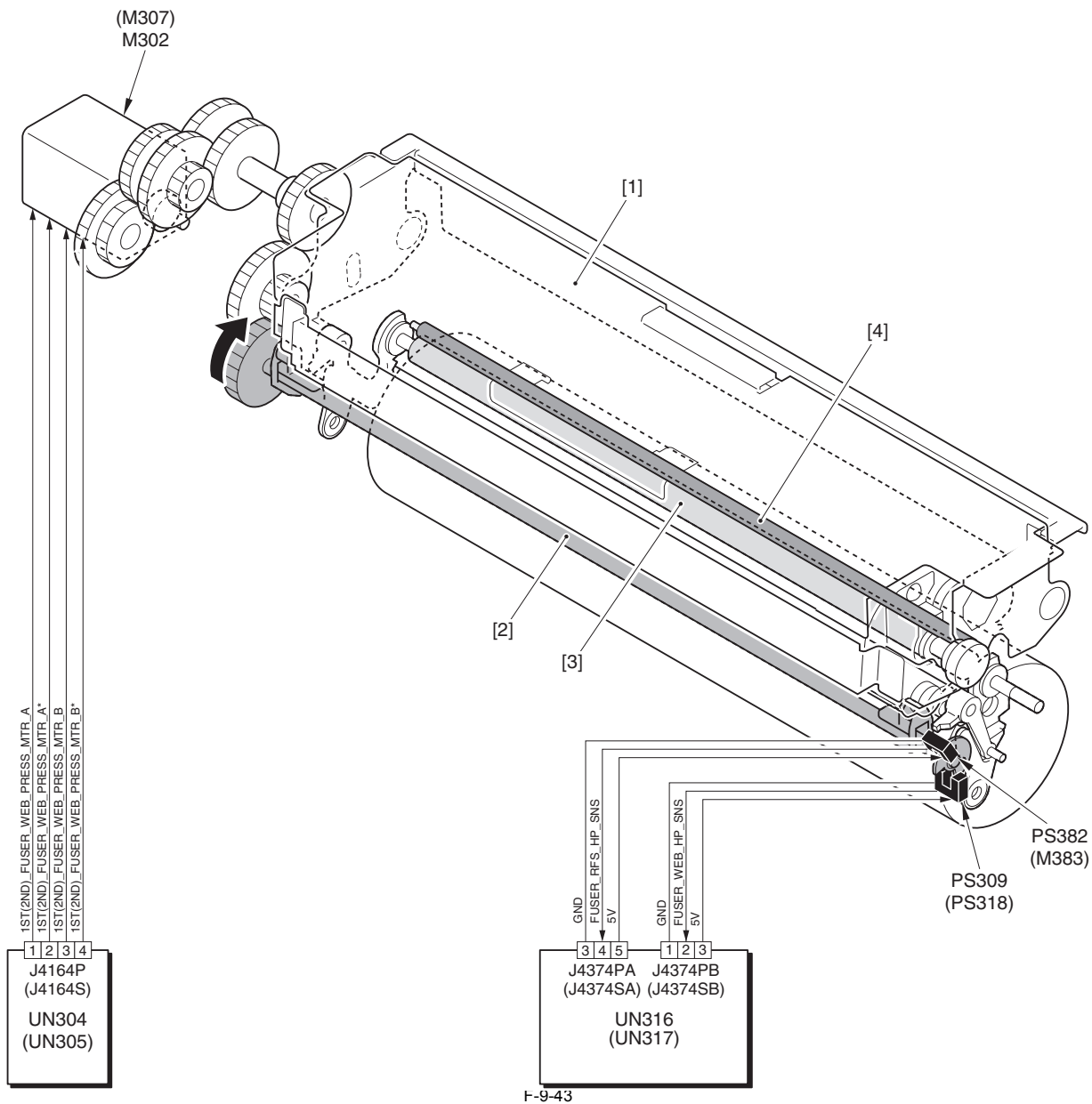
The surface of the fixing roller can be scarred when continuously feeding large number of sheets. To remove this scar, the machine performs refresh operation of the fixing roller in the specified timing.

By making the fixing roller rotate for the specified period while the refresh roller (rough surface) is engaged with the fixing roller, the surface layer of the fixing roller is scraped to remove scar. The refresh roller is driven with the fixing roller to rotate.



- [1] Refresh roller
- [2] Fixing roller
- [3] scar

Pressure application and separation of the refresh roller is driven by the web pressure motor in the same manner as the web pressure application and separation. The refresh roller position is controlled based on the web HP sensor. Detection of the refresh roller home position is performed by the refresh HP sensor. To maintain the refreshing performance of the refresh roller, the refresh cleaning roller performs cleaning of the refresh roller.



- [1] Web unit
- [2] Swing shaft
- [3] Refresh roller
- [4] Refresh cleaning roller

M302 (M307): Primary fixing web pressure motor (Secondary fixing web pressure motor)

PS309 (PS318): Primary fixing web HP sensor (Secondary fixing web HP sensor)

PS382 (PS383): Primary fixing refresh roller HP sensor (Secondary fixing refresh roller HP sensor)

UN304 (UN305): Primary fixing outside driver PCB (Secondary fixing outside driver PCB)

UN316 (UN317): Primary fixing inner driver PCB (Secondary fixing inner driver PCB)

FUSER_WEB_HP_SNS: Web HP signal

FUSER_RFS_HP_SNS: Refresh roller HP signal

Transition of Pressure Application and Separation Status

[A] Standby / During printing

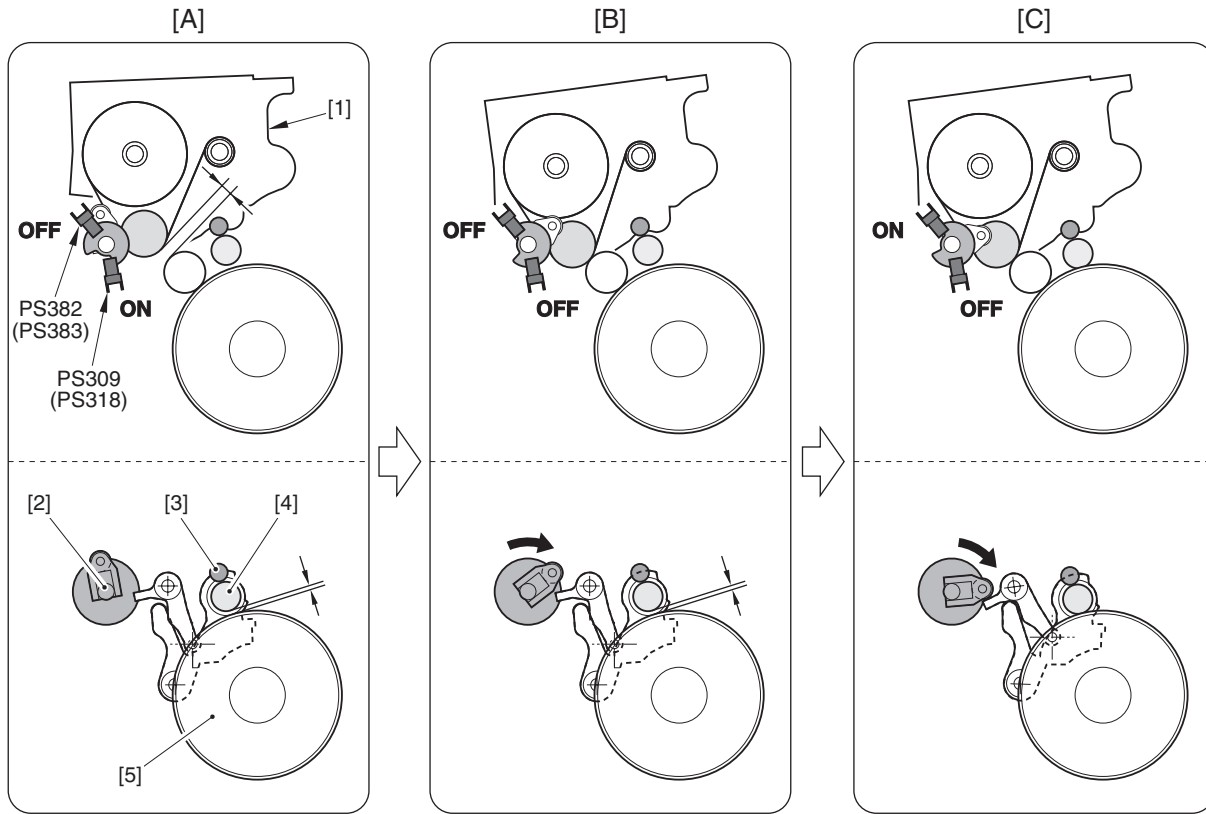
Both of the web roller (web unit) and refresh roller are separated from the fixing roller.

[B] During cleaning of the fixing roller

The web roller (web unit) comes into contact with the fixing roller. The refresh roller does not come into contact with the fixing roller.

[C] During refresh operation

Both of the web roller (web unit) and refresh roller come into contact with the fixing roller.



F-9-44

- [1] Web unit
- [2] Swing shaft
- [3] Refresh cleaning roller
- [4] Refresh roller
- [5] Fixing roller

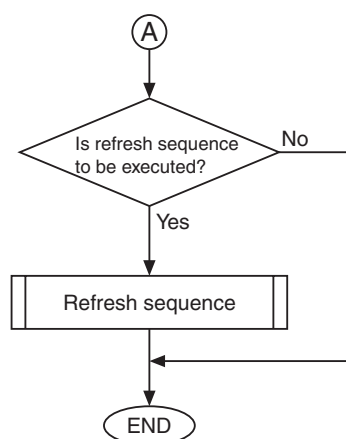
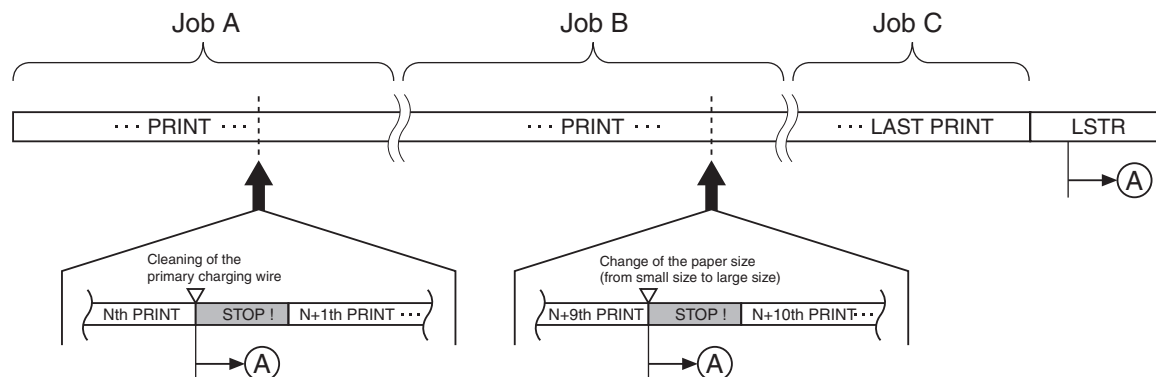
Execution Timing

Judgment of whether or not to perform refresh is made in the following timing. When it is determined to perform refresh, refresh is performed continuously. Performing duration varies according to the setting value of the refresh level described in later page.

- When interrupt operation (*1) is activated during printing
- When paper size is changed during printing (changed from small size to large size) (*2)
- When last rotation is performed after printing

*1: When the number of continuous printing reaches 2,000 sheets, printing operation stops, and cleaning of the primary charging wire is performed forcibly. Refresh operation is also performed in this timing.

*2: Judgment is made based on the internal reference table for refresh control.



F-9-45

Execution Conditions

- When the accumulated value of the refresh control counter. (the specified value varies according to the setting value of the refresh level described in later page).

*1: The number of counts for this counter varies depending on the type or size of paper. Maximum two counts are made for one print.

Example)

A5R : 1 count

A4R : 2 counts

A4 : 1 count

A3 : 2 counts

STMTR : 1 count

LTRR : 2 counts

LTR : 1 count

LGR : 2 counts

LGR : 2 counts

Paper of which the length in the main scanning direction (width) is more than 320mm (SRA3, 13x19) : 0 (no count-up is performed)



The start timing or the duration of the refreshing performance can be changed in Service Mode and User Mode (activated in Service Mode). However, the surface of the fixing roller can be scraped that causes early-stage wearing if setting the start timing earlier or the performing duration longer.

Service Mode / User Mode:

-Executing refresh of the fixing roller

Service mode:

-COPIER > FUNCTION > CLEANING > FX1-CL-E (Level1)

Cleaning of streaks on fixing roller of first fixing assembly

-COPIER > FUNCTION > CLEANING > FX2-CL-E (Level1)

Cleaning of streaks on fixing roller of second fixing assembly

-COPIER > FUNCTION > CLEANING > FXD-CL-E (Level1)

Cleaning of streaks on fixing roller of first and second fixing assembly

User mode:

System management settings > Device management settings > Fixing roller refresh (*)

*: Set "COPIER > OPTION > BODY > IMGC-ADJ" to "1" to display items in the "Device management settings" screen.

-Setting the refresh level of the fixing roller

Service mode:

-COPIER > OPTION > USER > FX-CLNLV (Level2)

User mode:

System management settings > Device management settings > Automatic fixing roller refresh level (*)

Setting range: -5 to +5 [Default: 0]

T-9-12

Setting value	-5		-4		-3		-2		-1		0	
Refresh counter	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.
	-	-	500	5500	250	5500	250	5500	250	5500	500	5500
Refresh time (sec)	0(none)		24	64	22	64	32	63	41	62	24	64
Setting value	+1		+2		+3		+4		+5			
Refresh counter	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.		
	250	5500	500	5500	250	5500	500	5500	250	5500		
Refresh time (sec)	24	64	33	63	32	63	42	62	41	62		

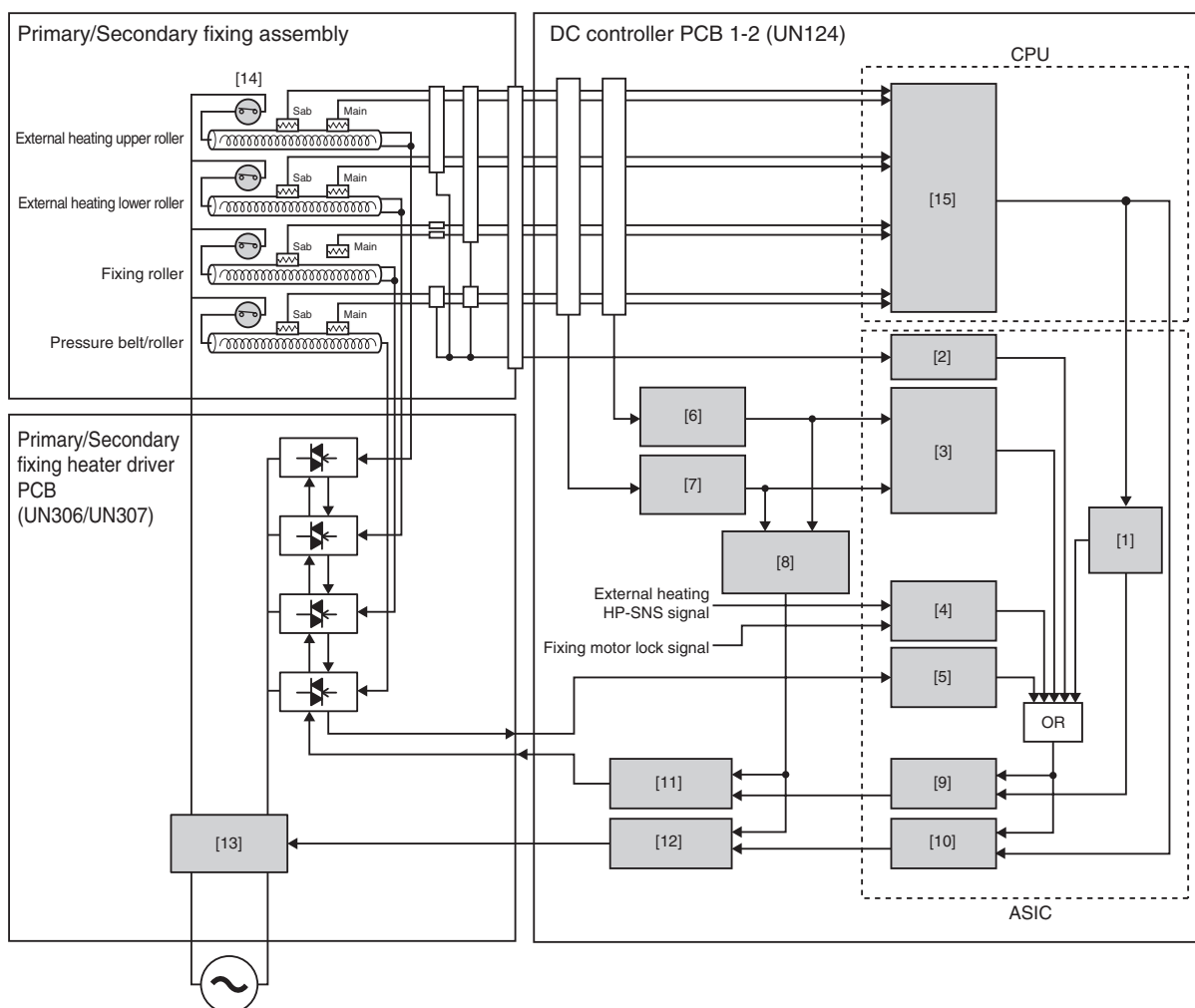
The start timing (the threshold value of refresh counter) and the duration of the refresh performance vary according to the setting value.

*: Set "COPIER > OPTION > BODY > IMGC-ADJ" to "1" to display items in the "Device management settings" screen.

9.6 Protective Functions

9.6.1 Protection Circuit

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000



F-9-46
T-9-13

Protection function	Function
[1] CPU monitoring circuit	Monitor runaway of CPU.
[2] Connection detection	Detect missing of the thermistor connector
[3] Heater error detection	Detect excessive temperature increase of the heater.
[4] External heating roller HP detection	Detect attachment of the external heating roller when the fixing motor stops. Prevent the external heating roller from continuing to come into contact with the fixing roller.
[5] Triac short detection	Detect damage / short of the triac.
[6] Excessive temperature increase detection (hardware detection)	Detect excessive temperature increase of a heater.
[7] Thermistor tear detection	Detect a tear / attachment status of the thermistor.
[8] Heater error detection (hardware detection)	Detect abnormal temperature of the heater.
[9] Heater control circuit	Turn off the heater.
[10] Relay control circuit	Turn off the AC relay.
[11] Heater OFF circuit	Turn off the heater.
[12] Relay OFF circuit	Turn off the AC relay.

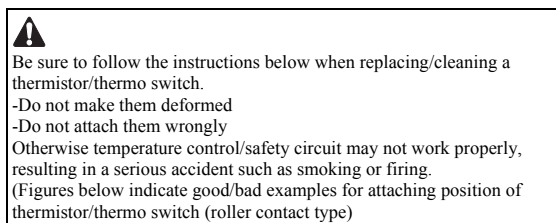
Protection function		Function
[13]	AC relay	Block the AC line.
[14]	Thermo switch	Block the AC line.
[15]	Detection of excessive temperature increase (software detection)	Detect excessive increase of the thermistor software. Turn off the heater / AC relay.

9.7 Parts Replacement Procedure

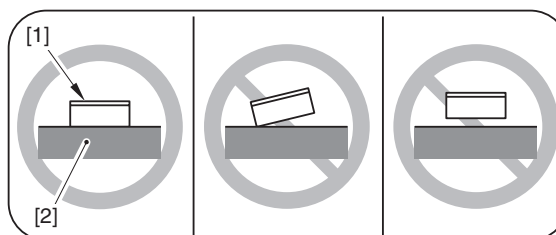
9.7.1 Notice When Handling the Fixing Assembly

9.7.1.1 Notes for Thermistor/Thermo Switch

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000



Top View



F-9-47

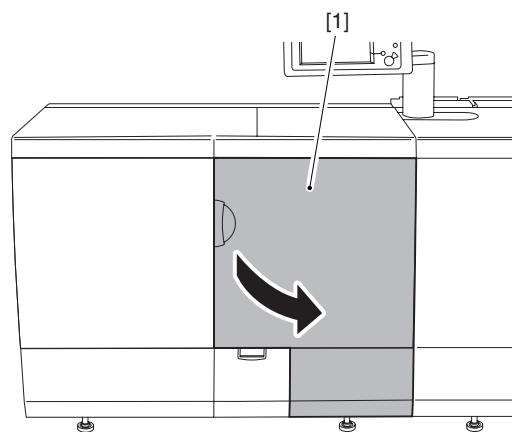
- [1] Thermistor/Thermo switch
- [2] Roller (fixing assembly)

9.7.2 Fixing Assembly

9.7.2.1 Removing Primary Fixing Assembly

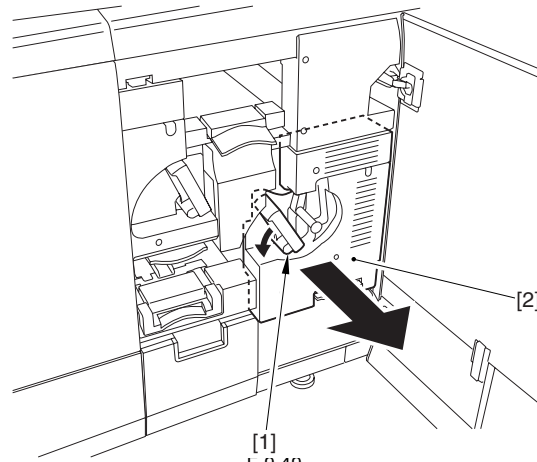
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- 1) Open the sub station front right cover.

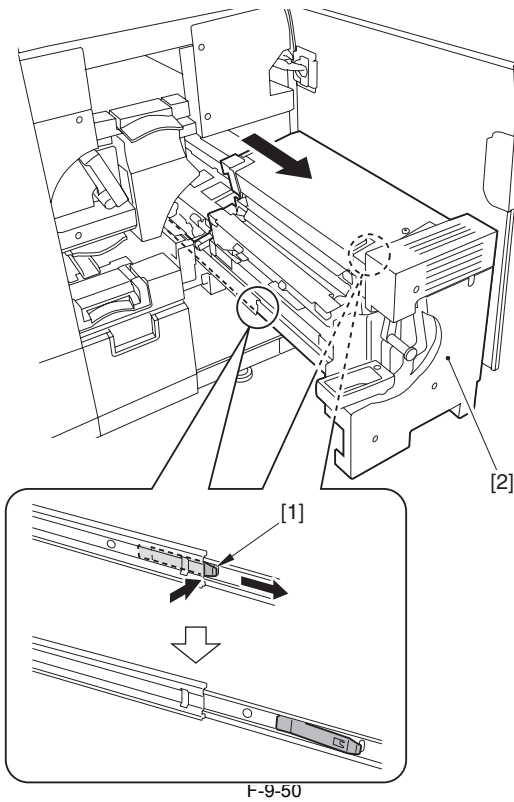


F-9-48

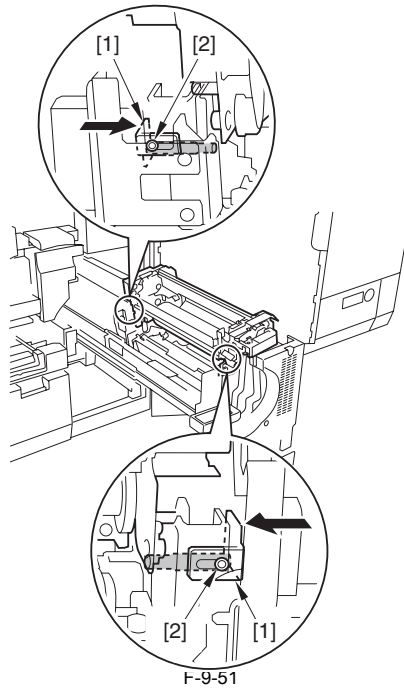
- 2) Release the release lever [1] in the direction of the arrow and pull out the primary fixing assembly [2].



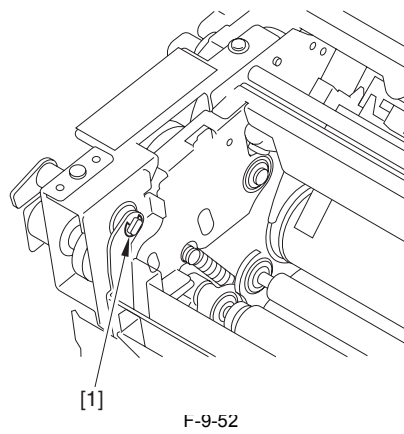
3) Remove the 2 leaf springs [1] and pull out the primary fixing assembly [2] more.



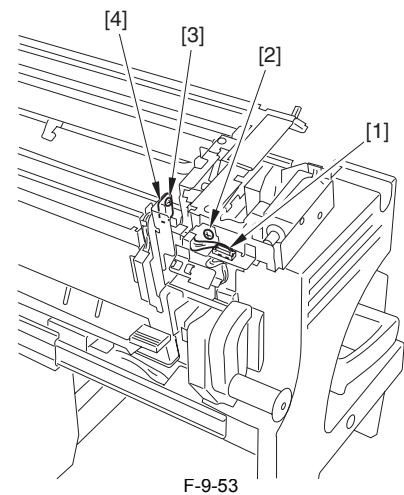
4) Detach the following units.
- Primary fixing web unit
- Primary fixing external heat roller unit
- Primary fixing belt unit
5) Close the primary fixing upper unit, return the positioning pin [1] and tighten the screw [2].



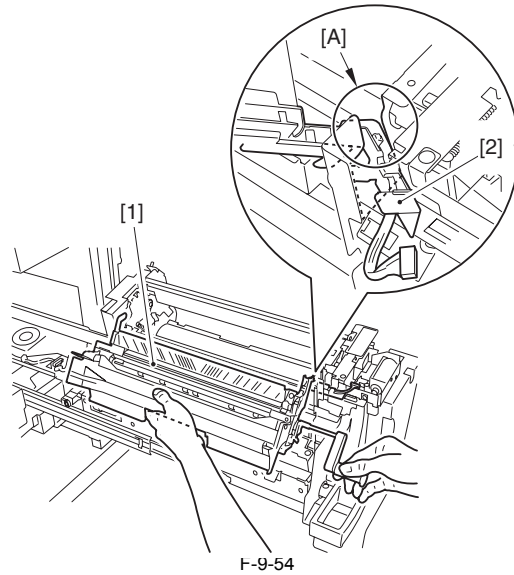
6) Remove the E ring [1].



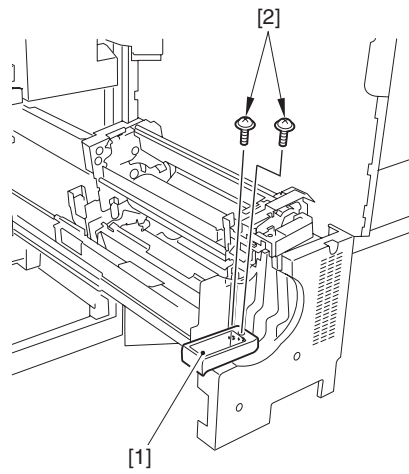
7) Remove the following parts.
 - 1 connector [1]
 - 1 screw [2]
 - 1 screw [3]
 - 1 positioning pin [4]



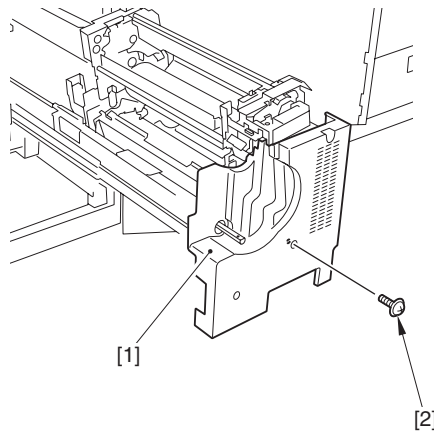
8) Open the internal delivery unit [1] and detach it, and then detach the harness guide [2] from the gap [A] of the end plate.



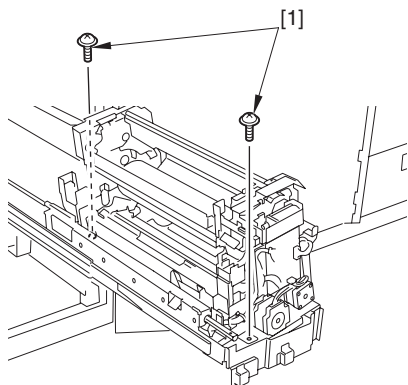
9) Detach the lever (C-A4) [1].
- 2 screws [2]



10) Detach the primary fixing lower front cover [1].
- 1 screw [2]

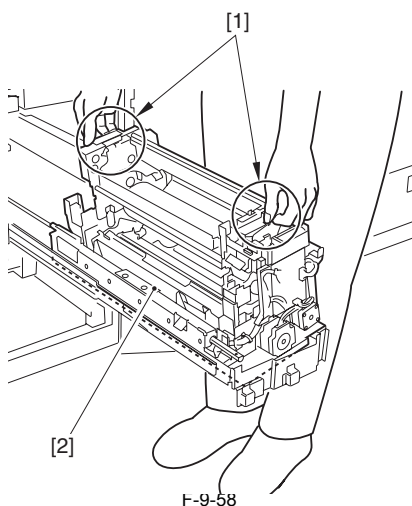


11) Remove the 2 screws [1].



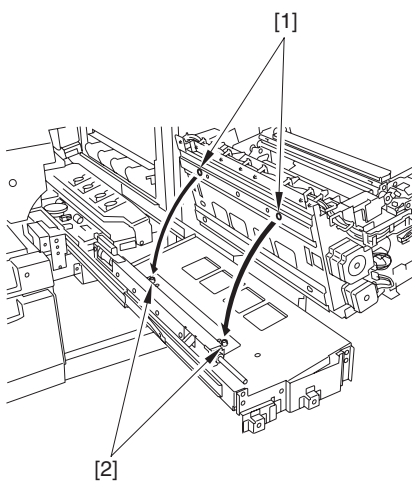
F-9-57

12) Hold the 2 grips [1] and remove the primary fixing assembly [2].



F-9-58

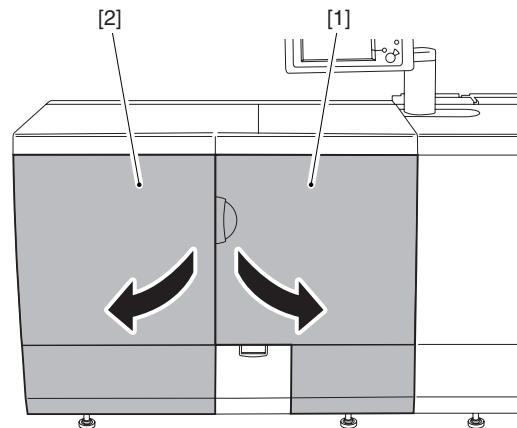
⚠ Points to Note At Attachment
Fit the 2 pins [1] at the rear side of the primary fixing assembly to the 2 holes [2] of the fixing assembly mount, and perform attachment.



9.7.2.2 Removing Secondary Fixing Assembly

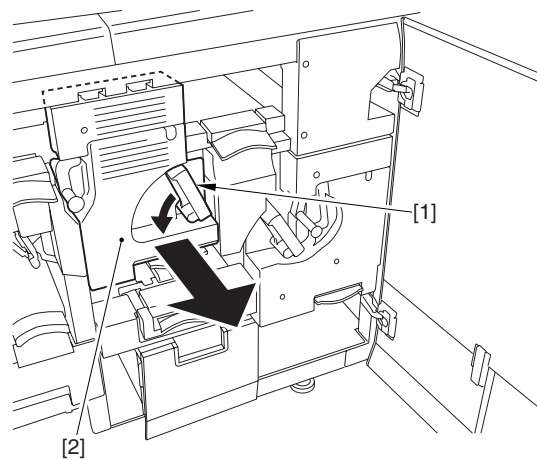
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

1) Open the sub station front right cover [1] and front left cover [2].



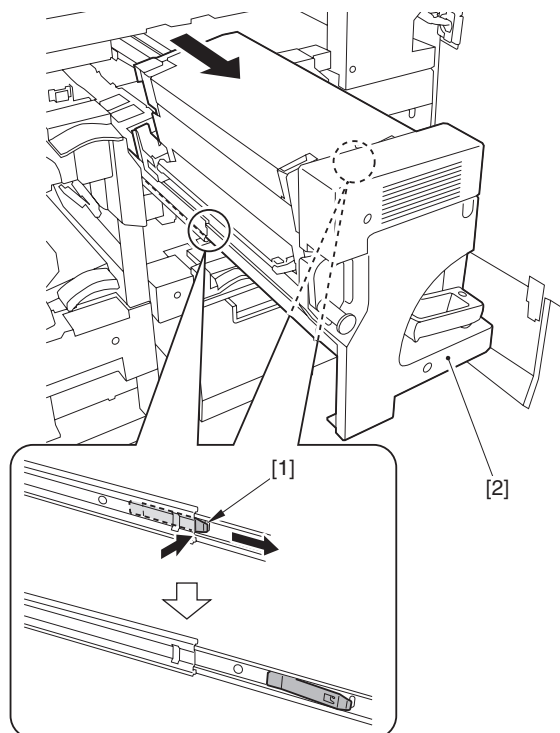
F-9-59

2) Release the release lever [1] in the direction of the arrow and pull out the secondary fixing assembly [2].



F-9-60

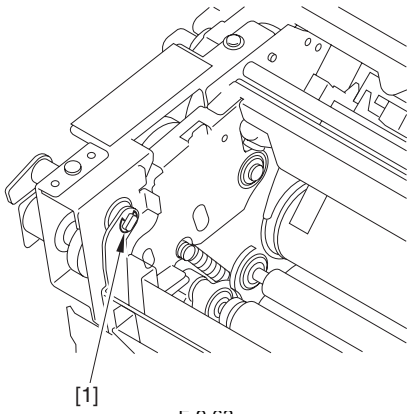
3) Remove the 2 leaf springs [1] and pull out the secondary fixing assembly [2] more.



F-9-61

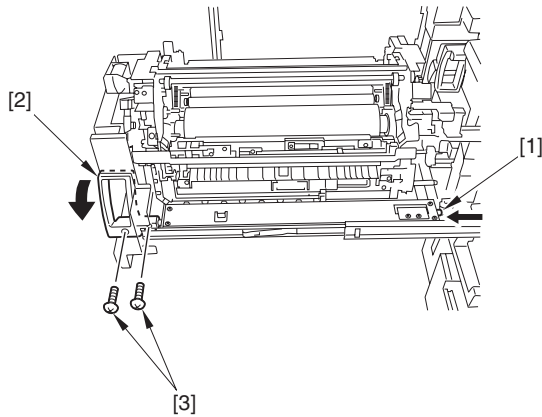
4) Detach the following units.
- Secondary fixing web unit
- Secondary fixing external heat roller unit

5) Remove the E ring [1].



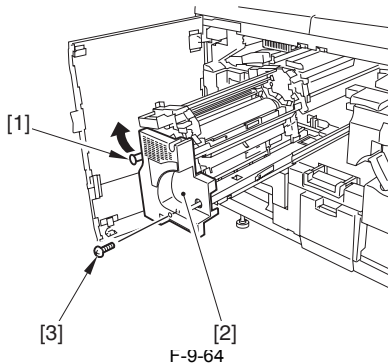
F-9-62

6) While pushing the button [1], tilt the lever (C-B4) [2].
7) Remove the 2 screws [3] and detach the lever (C-B4) [2].



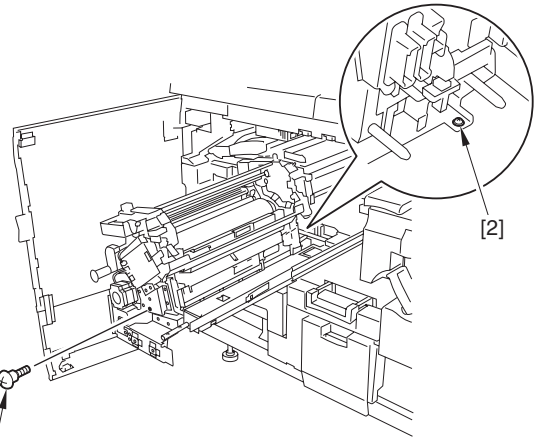
F-9-63

8) While opening the lever (C-B5) [1] a little, detach the primary fixing lower front cover [2].
- 1 screw [3]



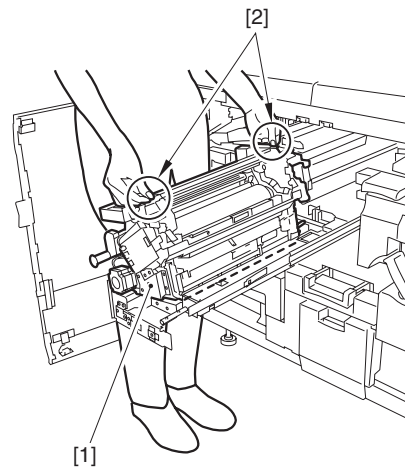
F-9-64

9) Remove the stepped screw [1] and the screw [2].



F-9-65

10) Hold the 2 grips [1] and remove the secondary fixing assembly [2].



F-9-66

⚠ Points to Note At Attachment
Fit the 2 pins [1] at the rear side of the secondary fixing assembly to the 2 holes [2] of the fixing assembly mount, and perform attachment.

9.7.2.3 Points to Note When Replacing Primary/ Secondary Fixing Intermediate Unit

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

Fixing intermediate unit (Service Part) mainly consists of the following

parts:

- Fixing assembly frame
- Fixing internal driver PCB
- Fixing drive assembly
- Fixing roller
- Fixing heater
- Refresh roller
- Fixing belt separation roller fixing spring

MEMO:

The refresh roller and the fixing belt separation roller fixing spring are included in the package of the fixing intermediate unit. They are not attached to the fixing intermediate unit. Note that the fixing belt separation roller fixing spring is included only in a package of the primary fixing intermediate unit.



Be sure to attach the following parts, which are included in the package of a new fixing intermediate unit, to the new fixing intermediate unit.

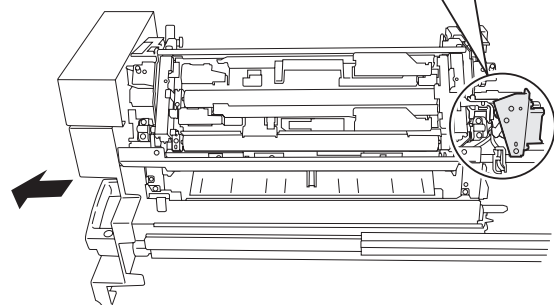
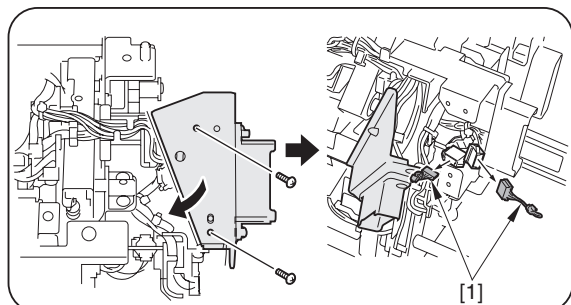
- Refresh roller
- Fixing belt separation roller fixing spring (for the primary fixing assembly only)



Be sure to remove the following parts from the old fixing assembly and reattach them to the new fixing intermediate unit.

- Fixing upper cover
- Fixing web unit
- External heat roller unit
- Fixing belt unit (primary fixing assembly), or Pressure roller unit (secondary fixing assembly)
- Internal delivery unit
- Short connectors (for detecting location)

Attach the 2 short connectors [1] (for detecting location) to the drawer unit in the new fixing intermediate unit. The short connectors (for detecting location) need to be removed/reattached in case of replacing a drawer unit.



F-9-67

9.7.3 Fixing Belt Unit

9.7.3.1 Removing Primary Fixing Belt Unit

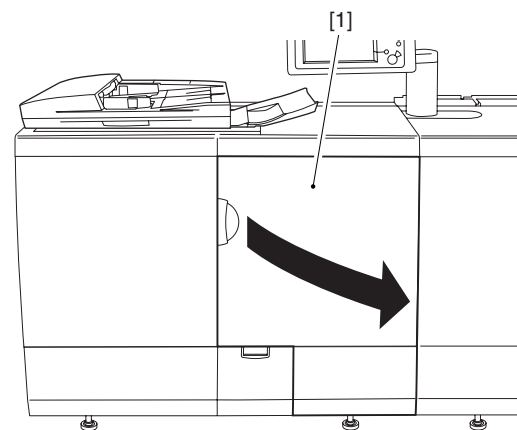
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000



Point to Note When Working with the Fixing Assembly

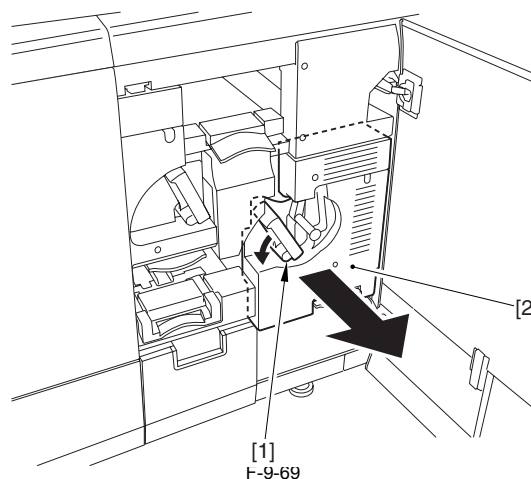
Be sure to cool down the fixing assembly before starting the work.

- 1) Open the sub station right front cover [1] fully.



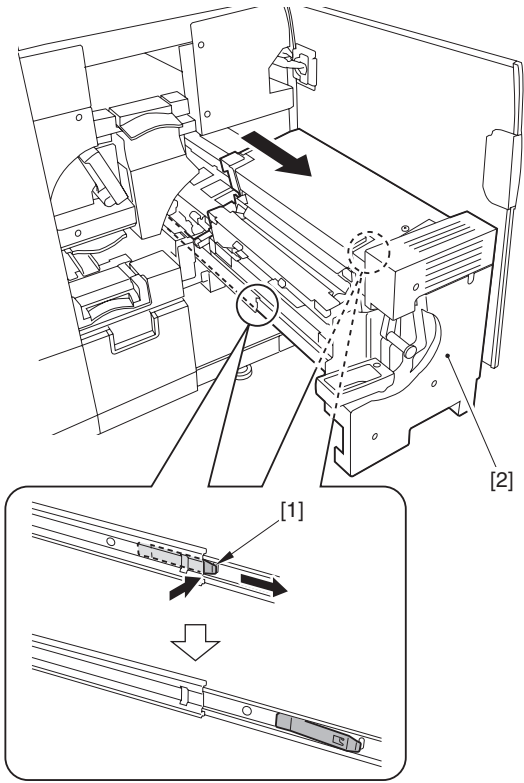
F-9-68

- 2) Shift the lever (C-A4) [1] in the direction of the arrow, and slide out the fixing assembly [2].

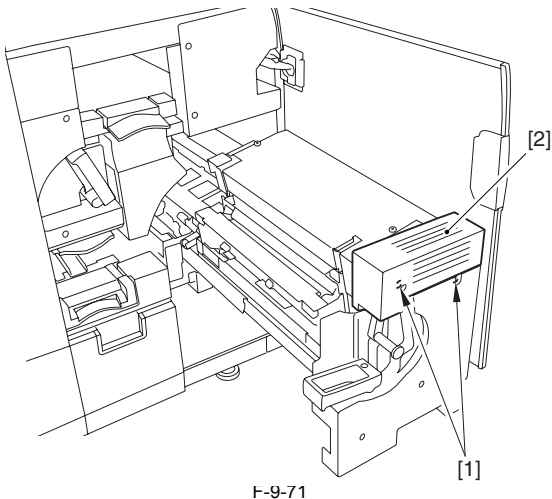


F-9-69

- 3) Release the 2 leaf springs [1], and slide out the fixing assembly [2] further.

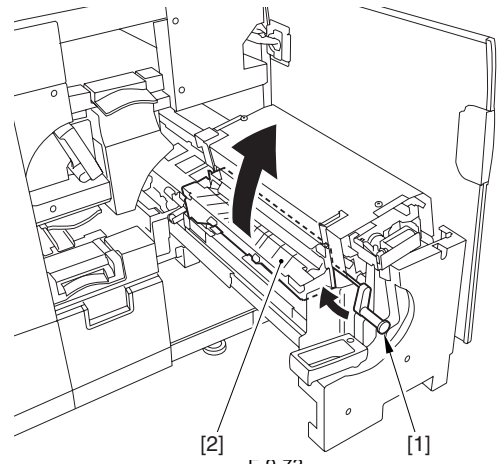


4) Remove the 2 screws [1], and detach the primary fixing upper front cover [2].

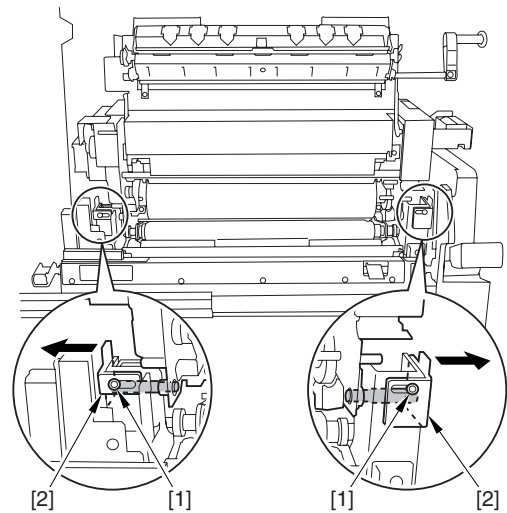


5) Lifting up the lever (C-A5) [1] and open the cover (C-A5) [2] slowly and fully.

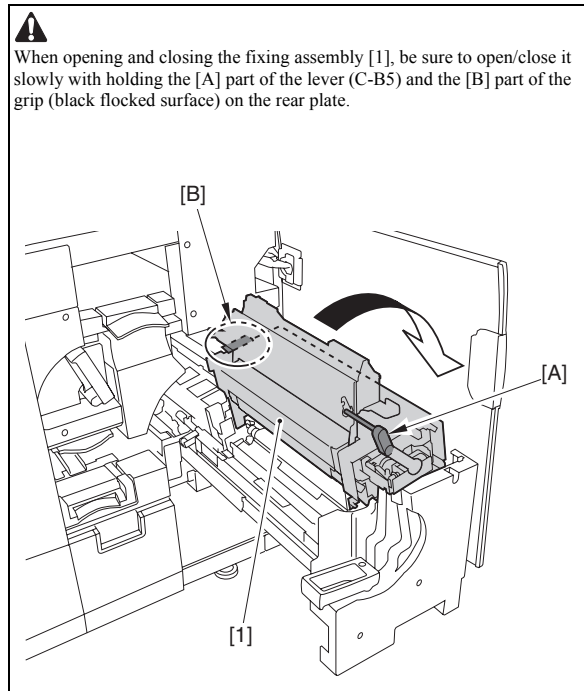
⚠ Be sure not to let the cover (C-A5) [2] fall down in the subsequent work.



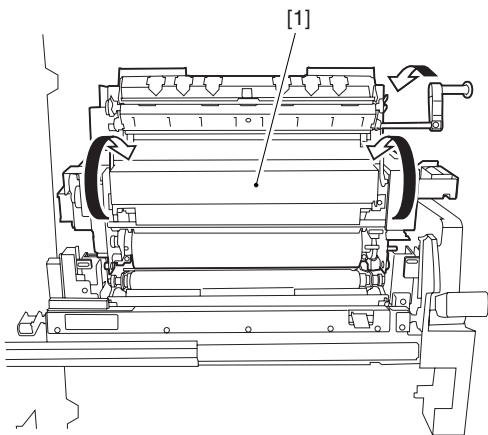
6) Loosen the 2 screws [1], and slide the fixing pin [2].



7) Make sure to check the following items before operation.



Open the fixing assembly [1] slowly and fully.

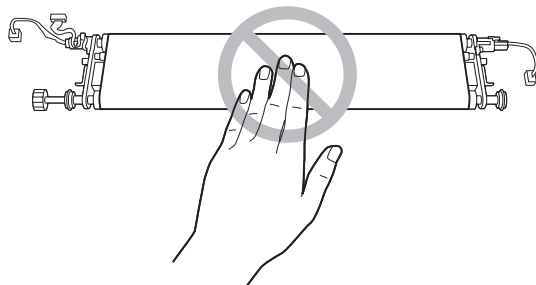


F-9-74

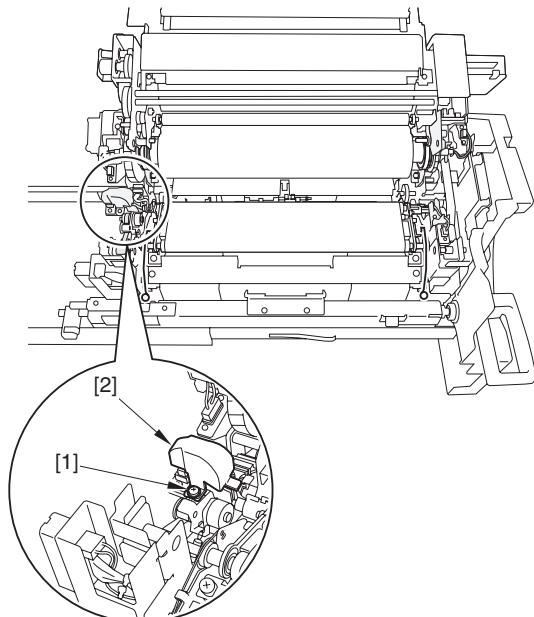
8) Make sure to check the following items before operation.



Points to Note When Handling the Fixing Belt Unit
Do not touch the fixing belt surface.

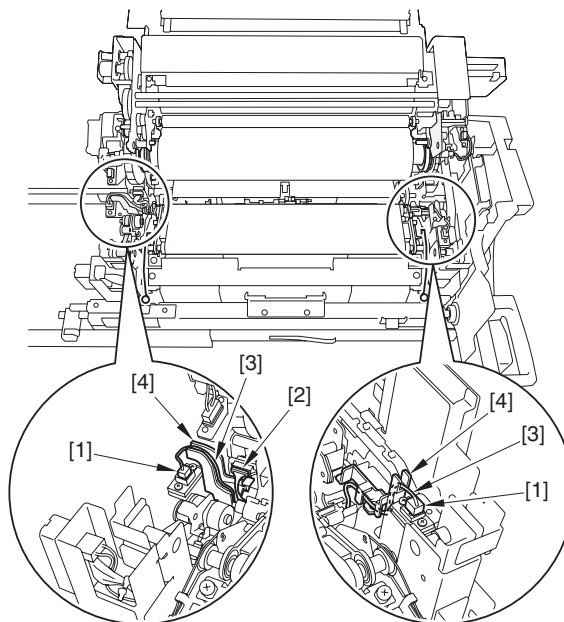


Loosen the screw [1] and detach the connector cover [2].



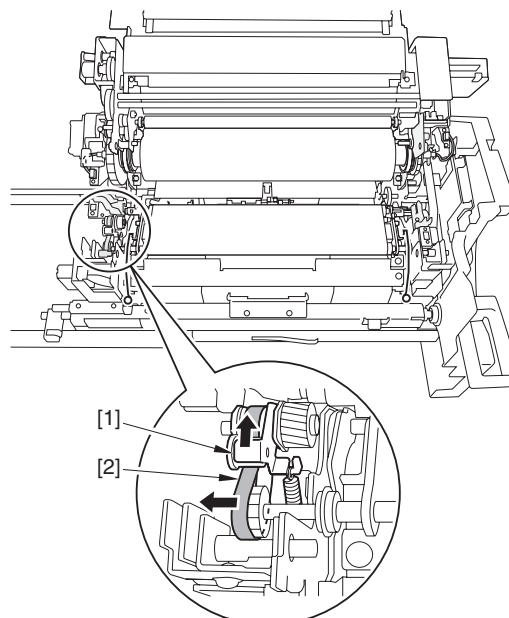
F-9-75

9) Remove the 2 connectors (with connector hook) [1] and the connector [2], then free the harness [3] from the harness guide [4].



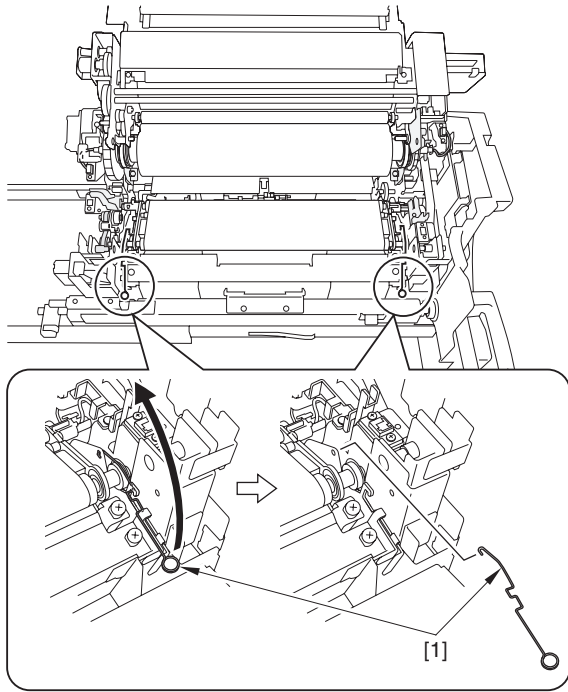
F-9-76

10) While releasing the tension [1], remove the timing belt [2].



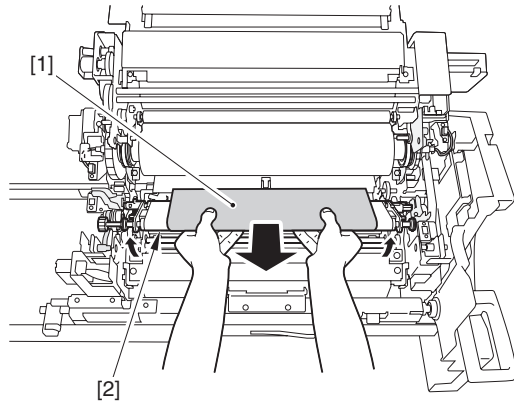
F-9-77

11) Remove the 2 wires [1] by releasing it to the direction of the arrow.



F-9-78

- 12) Cover the fixing belt with paper [1] to prevent the belt surface from touched and remove it by lifting the front side of the fixing belt unit [2] a little.



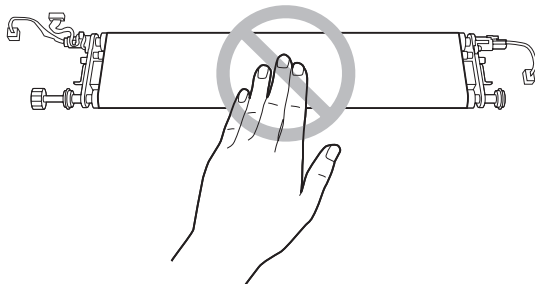
F-9-79

Attaching the Fixing Belt Unit

- 1) Make sure to check the following items before operation.

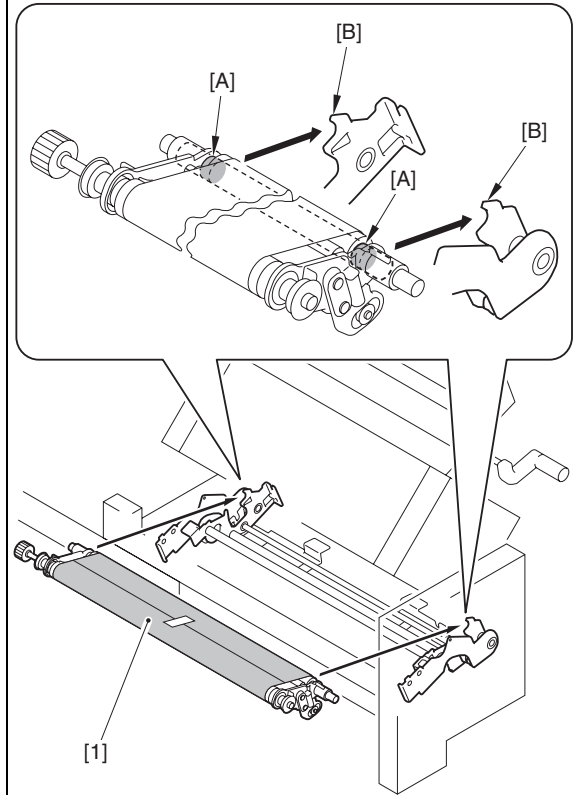


Points to Note When Handling the Fixing Belt Unit
Do not touch the fixing belt surface.

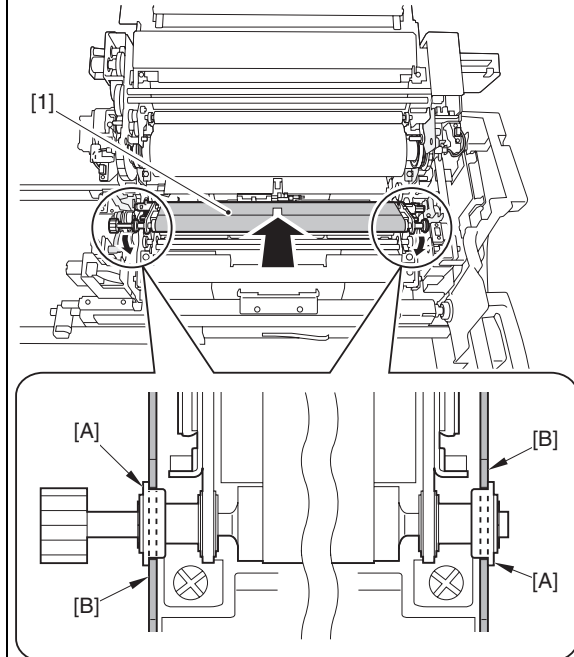


When attaching the new fixing belt unit [1], remain the protective sheet covering the new fixing belt. Remove the protective sheet covering the unit after attaching the fixing belt unit [1] onto the fixing assembly.

Align the [A] part of the shaft on the fixing belt unit [1] to the [B] part of the fixing assembly to attach.

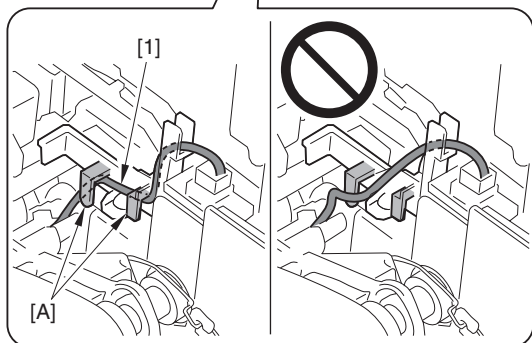
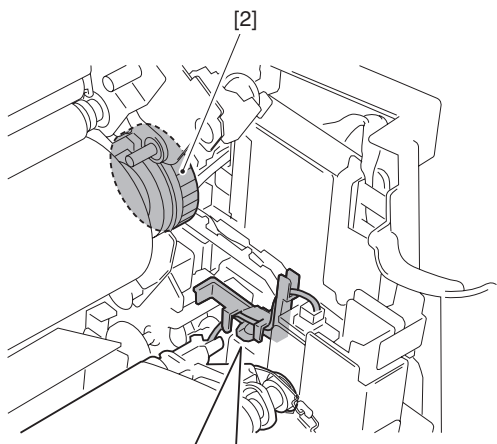


Make sure to place the bearing flange [A] of the fixing belt unit [1] outside of the side plate [B] of the fixing assembly when attaching.



⚠️ **trapped fixing belt heater cable**

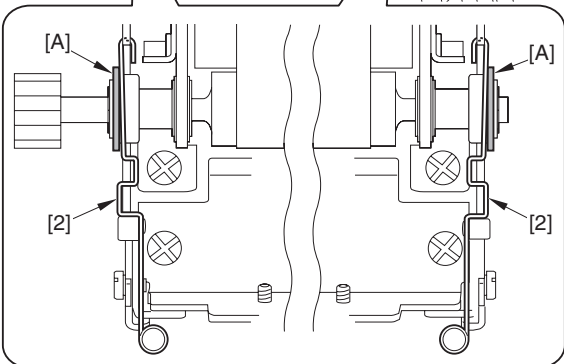
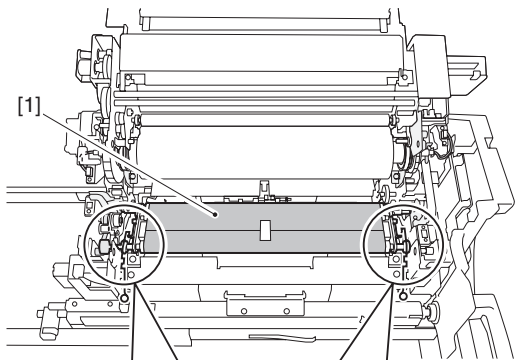
For the fixing heater cable [1], be sure to put it through [A] points (2 points) of the cable guide. Otherwise, the heater cable is caught between the fixing drive gear [2] and the fixing unit frame, resulting in short-circuit due to the peeled covering of the cable.



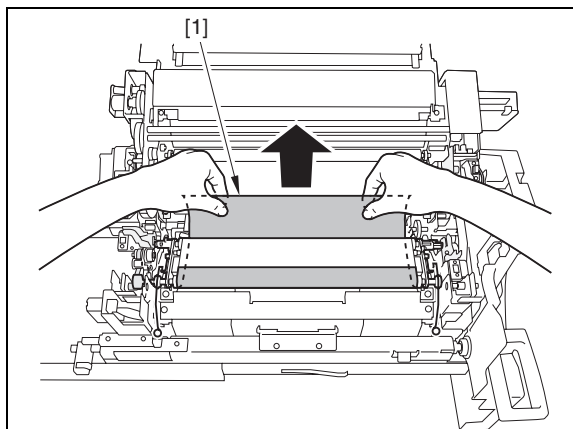
2) Fix the fixing belt unit [1] with wire [2].



Hook the wire [2] inside of the bearing flange [A] of the fixing belt unit [1].



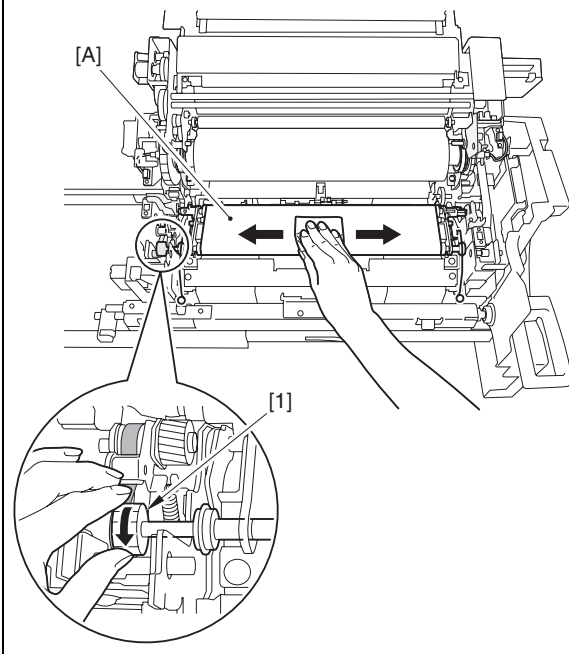
3) Remove the protective sheet [1] covering the new fixing belt unit by pulling out it slowly to the direction shown in the figure.



4) Moisten the cleaning paper packed with the new fixing belt unit with alcohol solutions, and clean the whole circumference of the fixing belt surface [A] while rotating the gear [1] of the fixing belt unit with hand.



Be sure to use the cleaning paper packed with the unit for cleaning.



9.7.4 Fixing Roller

9.7.4.1 Removing Primary Fixing Roller

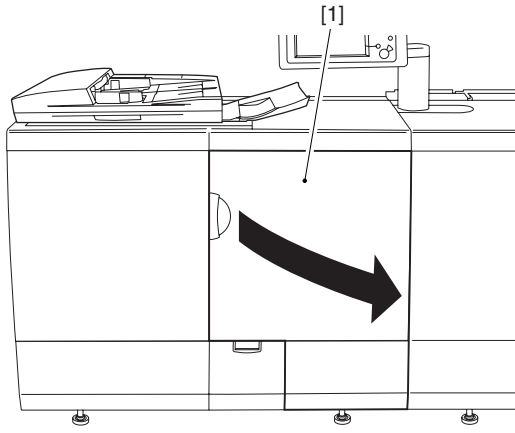
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000



Point to Note When Working with the Fixing Assembly

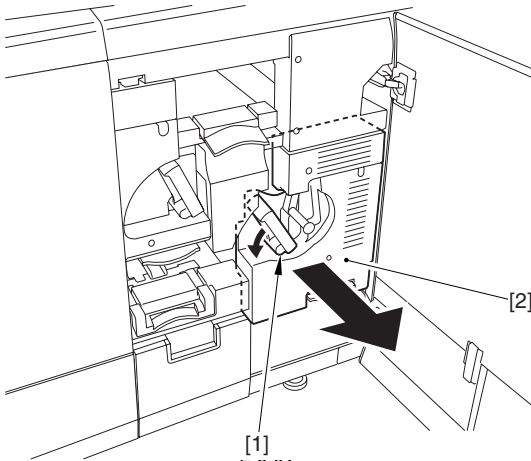
Be sure to cool down the fixing assembly before starting the work.

1) Open the sub station right front cover [1] fully.



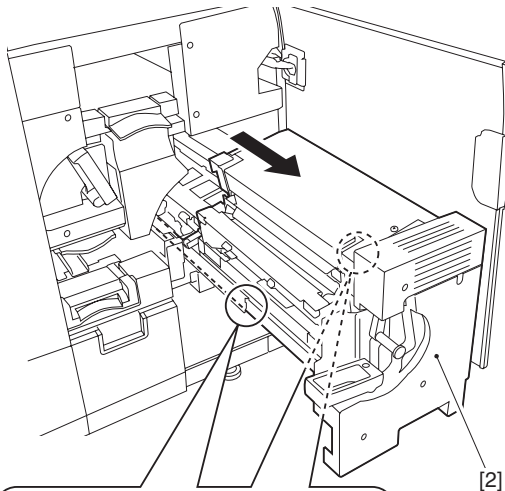
F-9-80

2) Shift the lever (C-A4) [1] in the direction of the arrow, and slide out the fixing assembly [2].



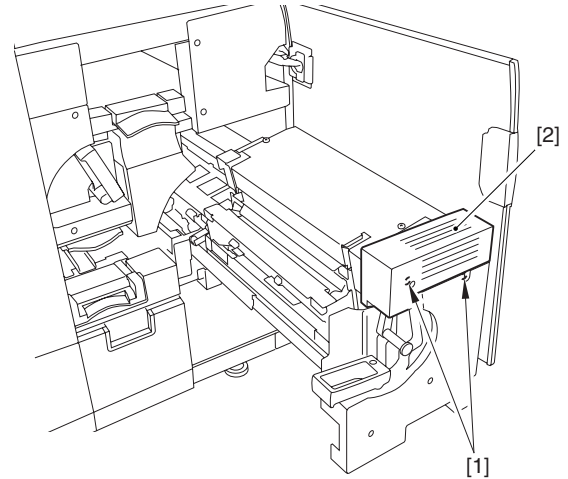
F-9-81

3) Release the 2 leaf springs [1], and slide out the fixing assembly [2] further.



F-9-82

4) Remove the 2 screws [1], and detach the primary fixing upper front cover [2].

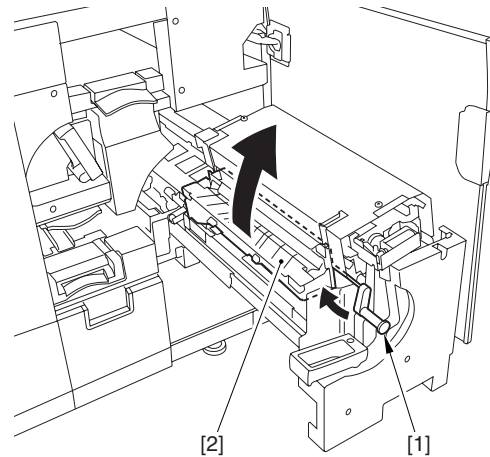


F-9-83

5) Lifting up the lever (C-A5) [1] and open the cover (C-A5) [2] slowly and fully.

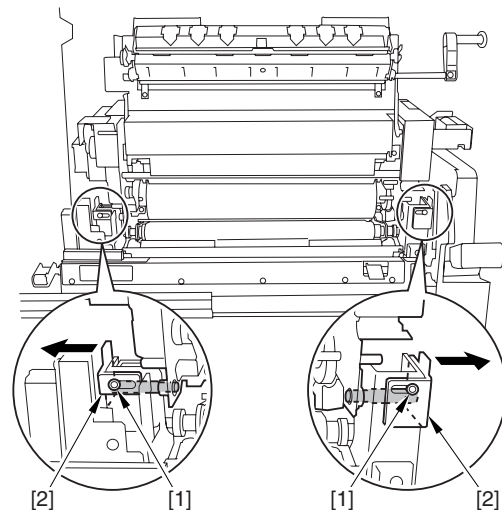


Be sure not to let the cover (C-A5) [2] fall down in the subsequent work.



F-9-84

6) Loosen the 2 screws [1], and slide the fixing pin [2].

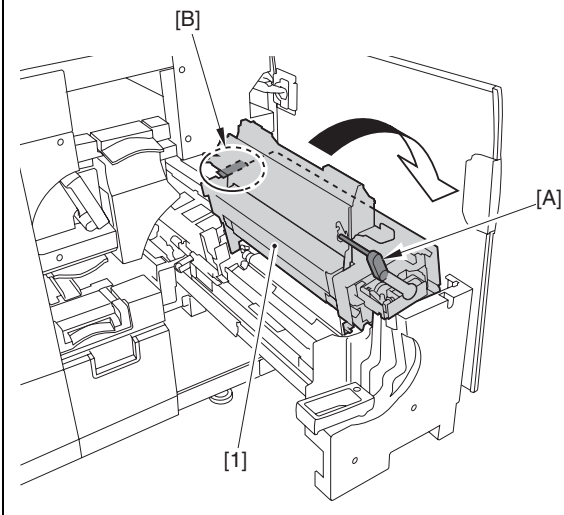


F-9-85

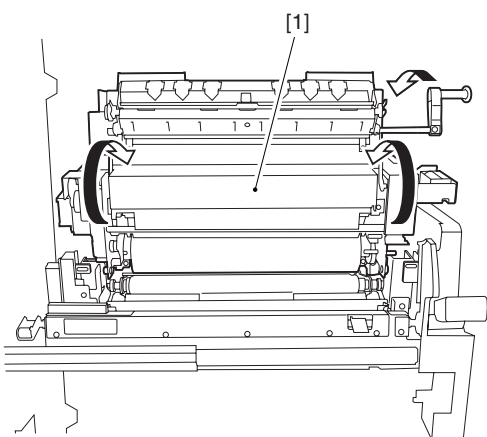
7) Make sure to check the following items before operation.



When opening and closing the fixing assembly [1], be sure to open/close it slowly with holding the [A] part of the lever (C-B5) and the [B] part of the grip (black flocked surface) on the rear plate.



Open the fixing assembly [1] slowly and fully.

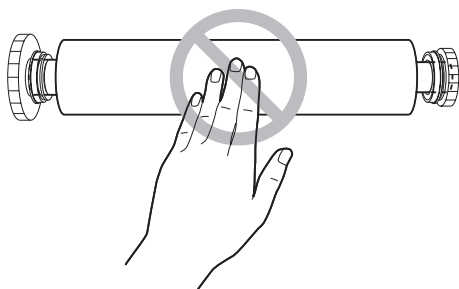


F-9-86

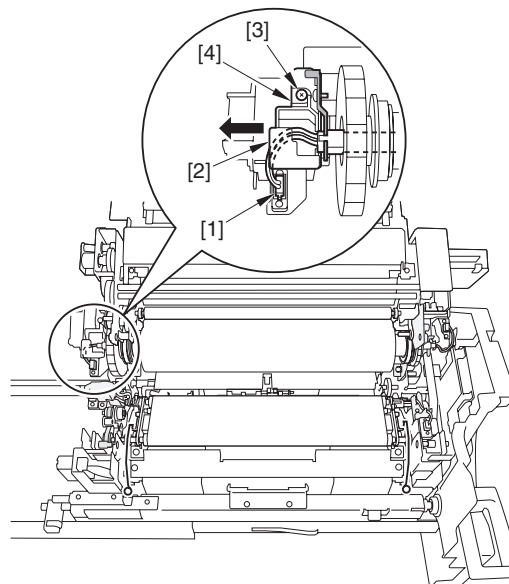
8) Make sure to check the following items before operation.



Point to Note When Handling Fixing Roller Unit
Be sure not to touch the surface of the fixing roller.

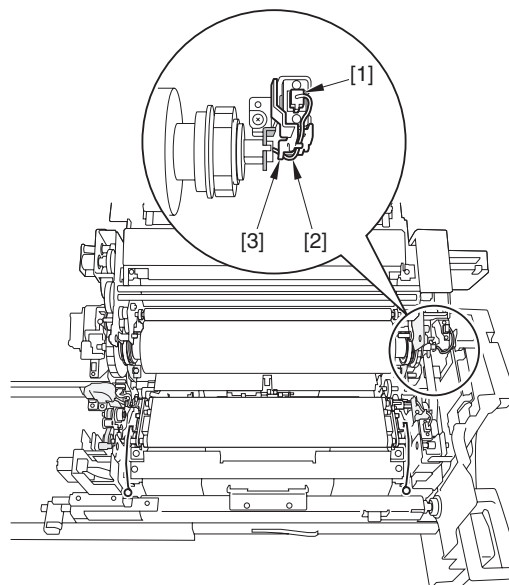


Disconnect the connector (with connector hook) [1] and free the harness from the harness guide [2]. Then, loosen the screw [3], and detach the heater retaining plate [4].



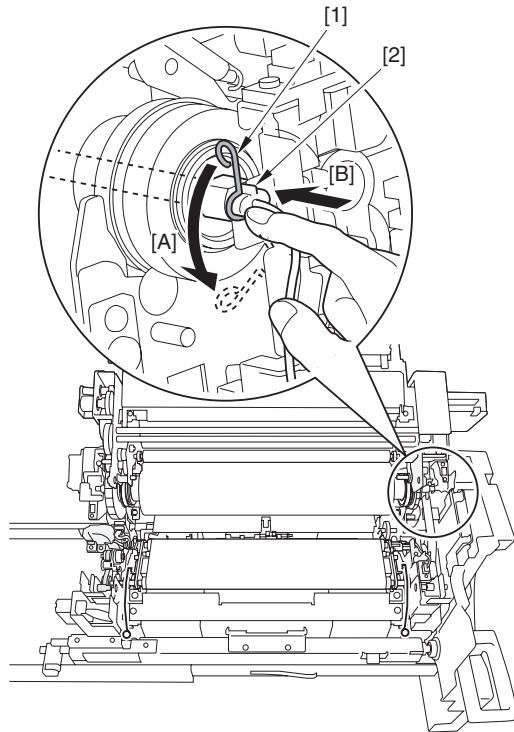
F-9-87

9) Disconnect the connector (with connector hook) [1], and free the harness [2] from the harness guide [3].



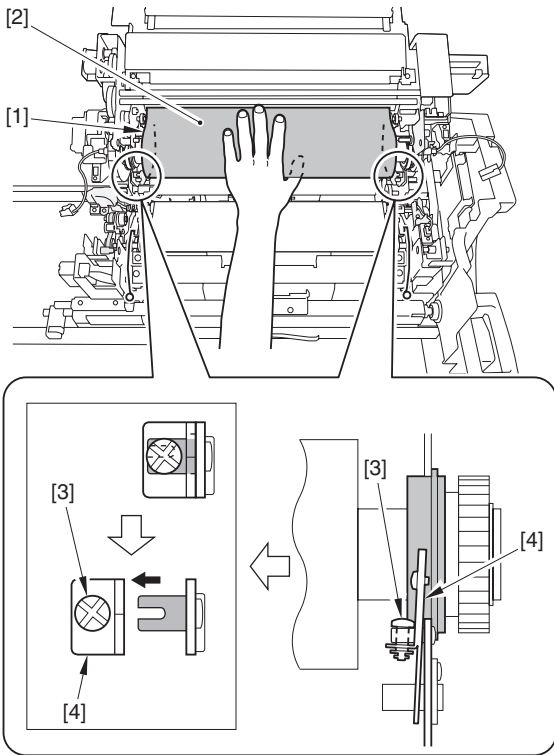
F-9-88

10) Release the fixing heater retaining spring [1] in the [A] direction. Then remove the fixing heater [2] by sliding it in the [B] direction and place it inside of the fixing roller.



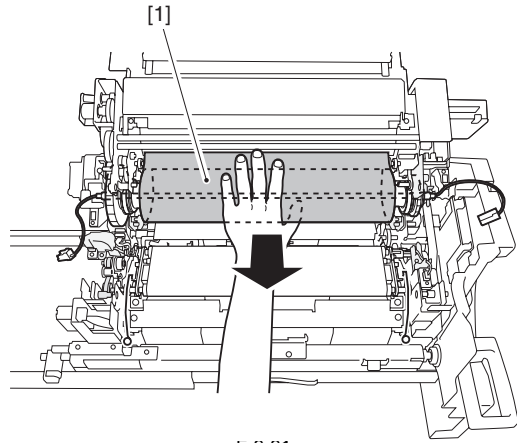
F-9-89

11) While holding the fixing roller [1] with paper [2], loosen the 2 screws [3] and slide the bearing fixing plate [4].



F-9-90

12) Remove the fixing roller unit [1] with the fixing heater attached.



F-9-91

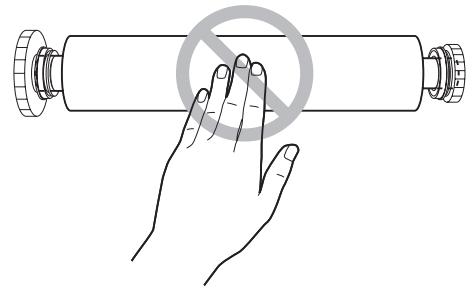
Attaching Fixing Roller Unit

1) Make sure to check the following items before operation.

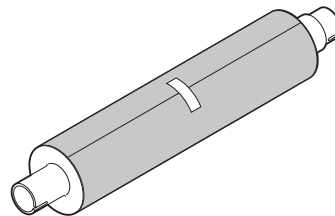
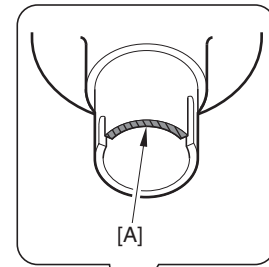


Point to Note When Handling Fixing Roller Unit

- Be sure not to touch the surface of the fixing roller.



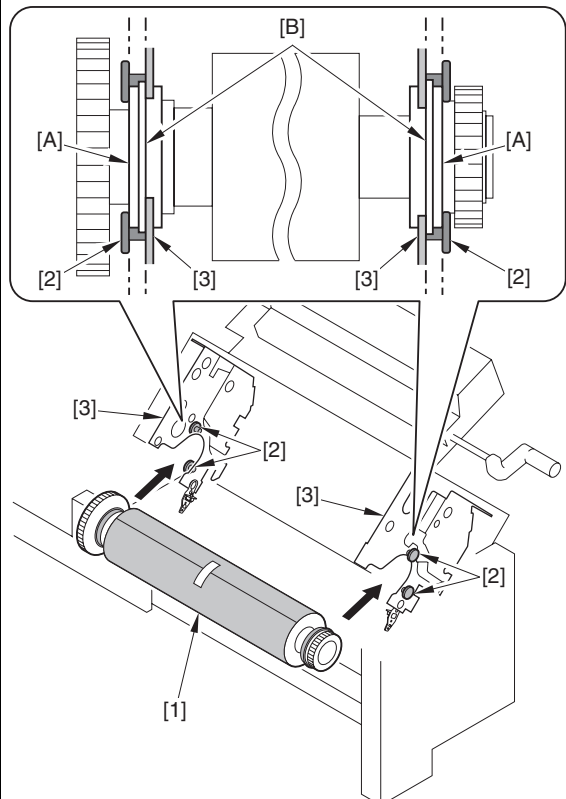
- Identify the primary fixing roller and the secondary fixing roller with the color of the shaft end [A] area. Only with the secondary transfer roller, the [A] area is colored in red.



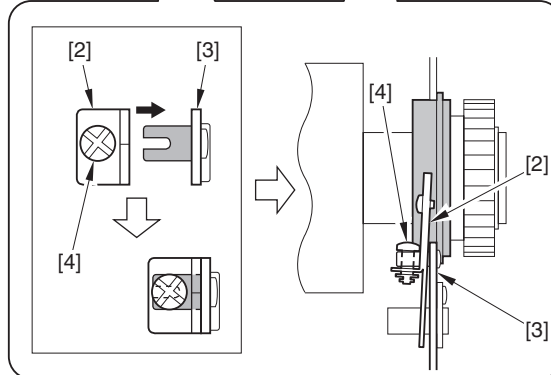
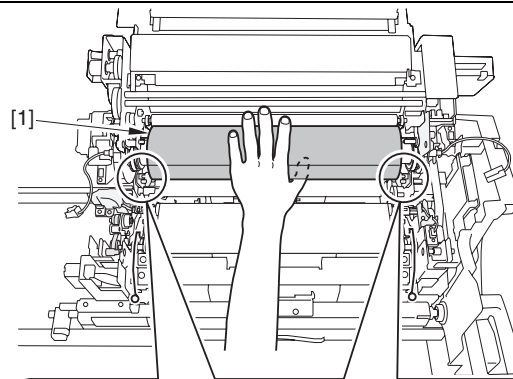


When attaching a new fixing roller, be sure to attach it with the paper wrapped around. Remove the wrapped paper after attaching the fixing roller unit [1] to the fixing assembly.

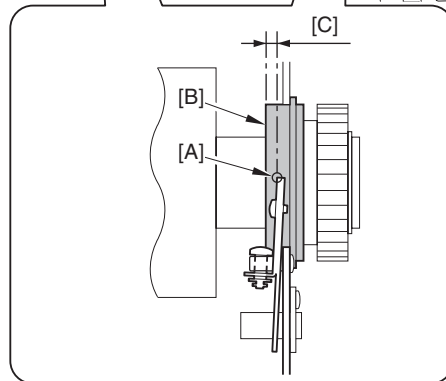
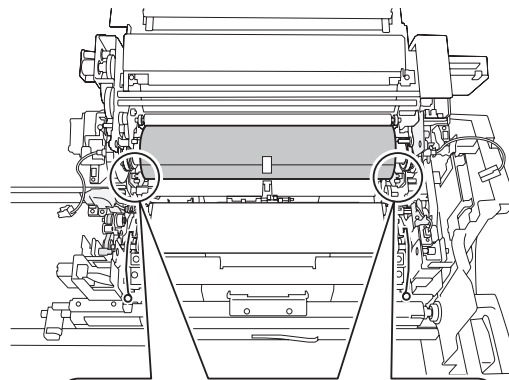
When attaching the fixing roller unit, fit the bearing end [A] of the fixing roller unit [1] with the bearing retainers [2] of the fixing assembly, and the bearing rib [B] of the fixing roller unit [1] with the side plates [3] of the fixing assembly as indicated while placing the fixing heater inside of the fixing roller.



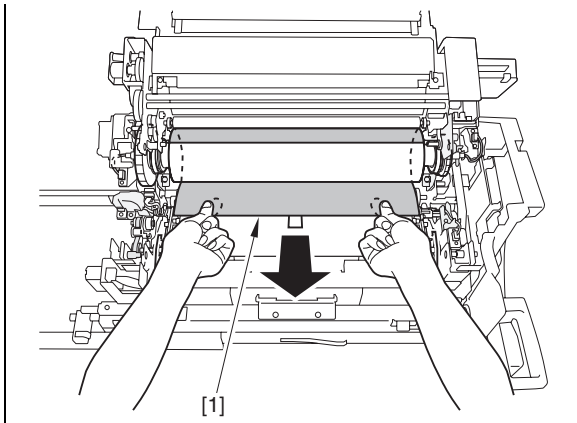
2) Push on the bearing fixing plate [2] to the side plate [3] of the fixing assembly while supporting the fixing roller [1]. Then, tighten the fixing screw [4].



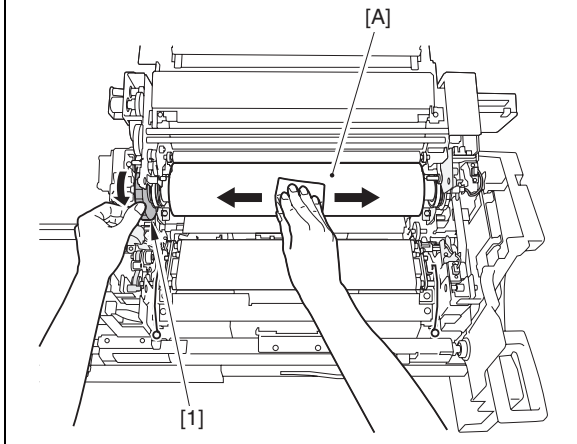
Check that the leading edge [A] of the bearing retaining plate is fixed at 2mm and more inside [C] from the bearing end [B].



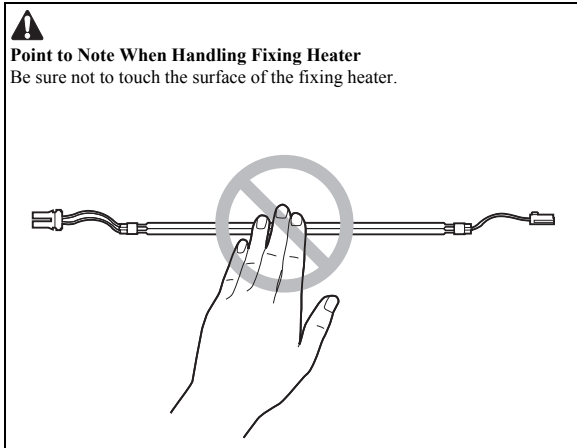
3) Remove the paper [1] wrapped around the new fixing roller by slowly pulling it in the indicated direction.



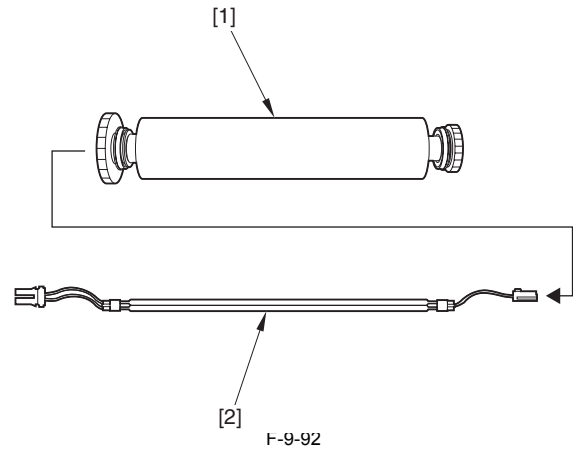
4) Moisten the lint-free paper packed with the new fixing roller with alcohol solutions, and clean the whole circumference of the roller surface [A] while rotating the gear [1] of the fixing roller unit with your hand.



13) Make sure to check the following items before operation.

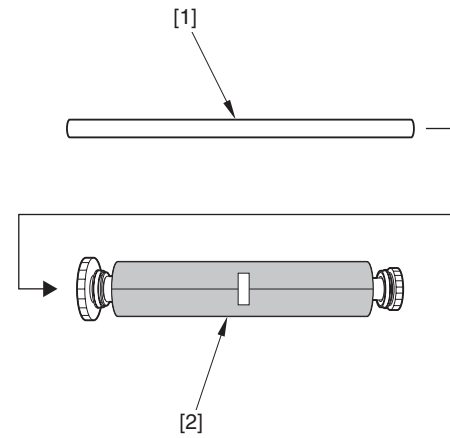


Remove the fixing heater [2] from the fixing roller unit [1].

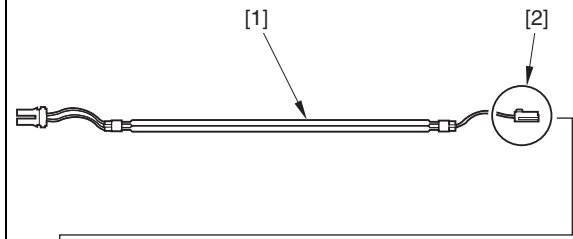


F-9-92

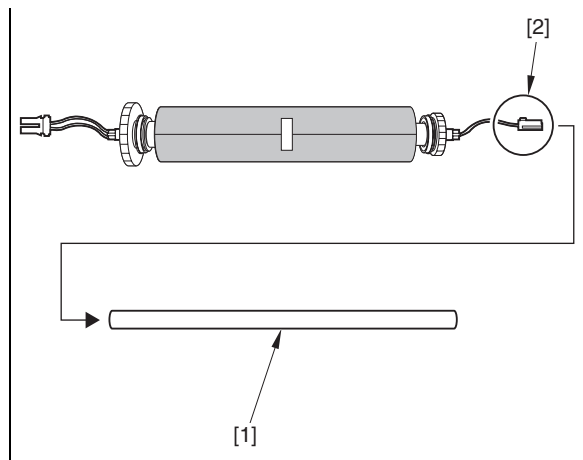
Attaching Fixing Heater
 1) Attach the heater attach guide [1] packed with the new fixing roller to the fixing roller unit [2].



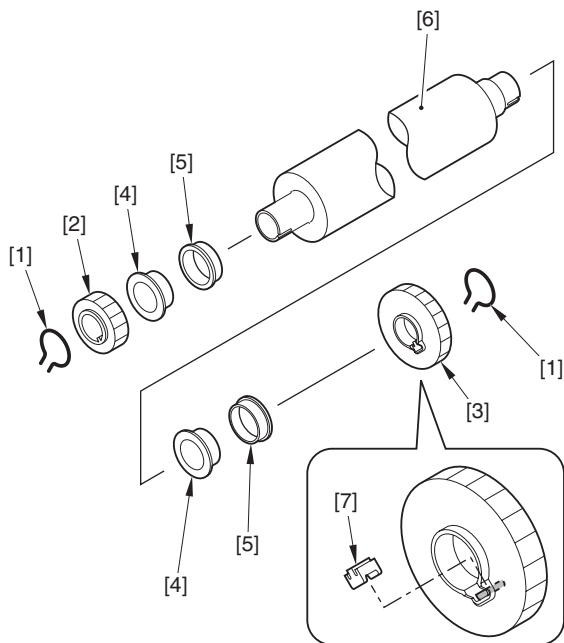
2) Attach the fixing heater [1] to the heater attach guide [3] from the 1-pin connector side [2] (not from the 2-pin connector side).



3) Remove the heater attach guide [1] from the 1-pin connector side [2] (not from the 2-pin connector side) of the fixing heater.



14) Remove the 2 rings [1], the gear [2], the gear [3] (with the protrusion [7]), the 2 insulating bushes [4], and the 2 bearings [5]; then, remove the fixing roller [6].



F-9-93

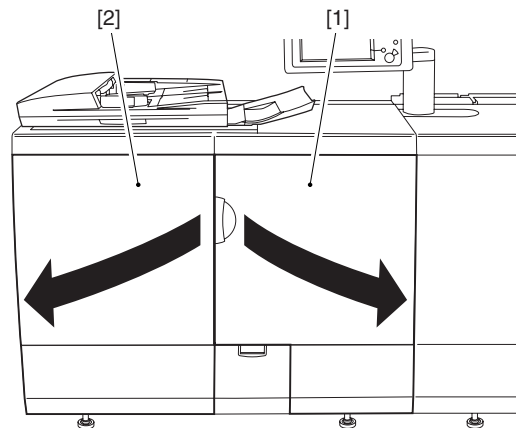
9.7.4.2 Removing Secondary Fixing Roller

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000



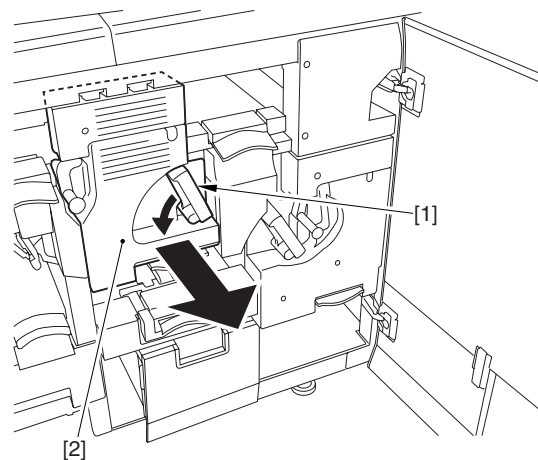
Point to Note When Working with the Fixing Assembly
Be sure to cool down the fixing assembly before starting the work.

1) Fully open the sub station front right cover [1] and the sub station front left cover [2] in order.



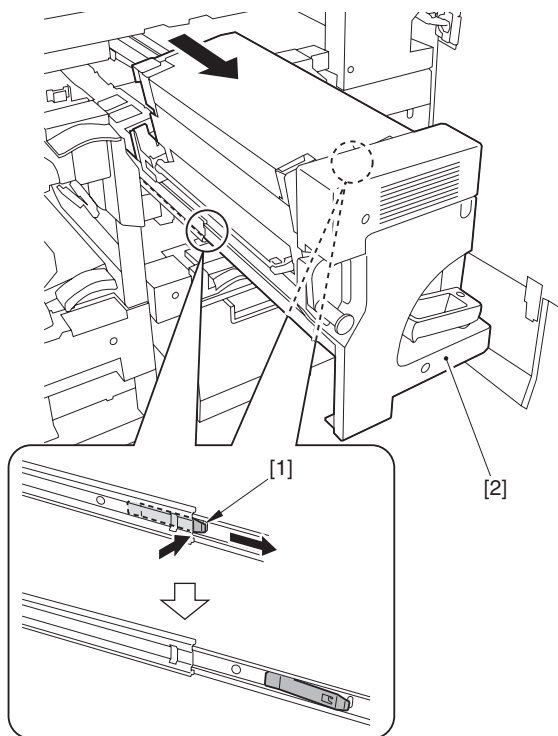
F-9-94

2) Shift the lever (C-B4) [1] in the direction of the arrow, and slide out the fixing assembly [2].



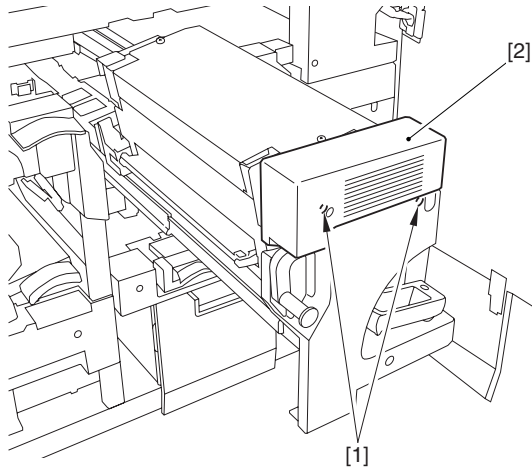
F-9-95

3) Release the 2 leaf springs [1], and slide out the fixing assembly [2] further.



F-9-96

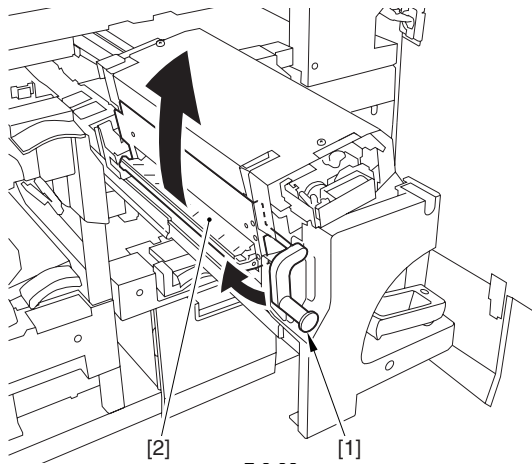
4) Remove the 2 screws [1] and detach the secondary fixing front upper cover [2].



F-9-97

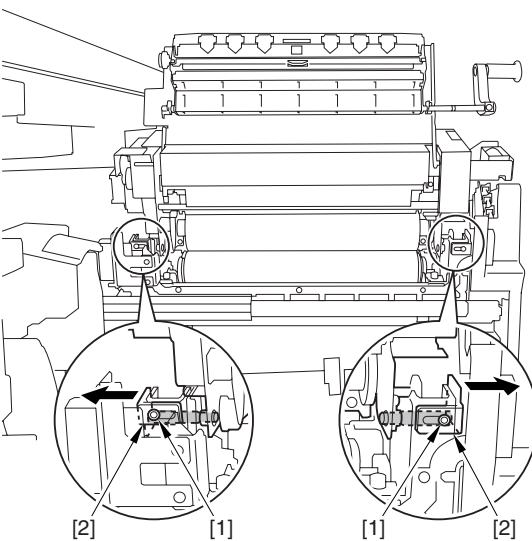
5) Lifting up the lever (C-B5) [1] and open the cover (C-B5) [2] slowly and fully.

! Be sure not to let the cover (C-B5) [2] fall down in the subsequent work.



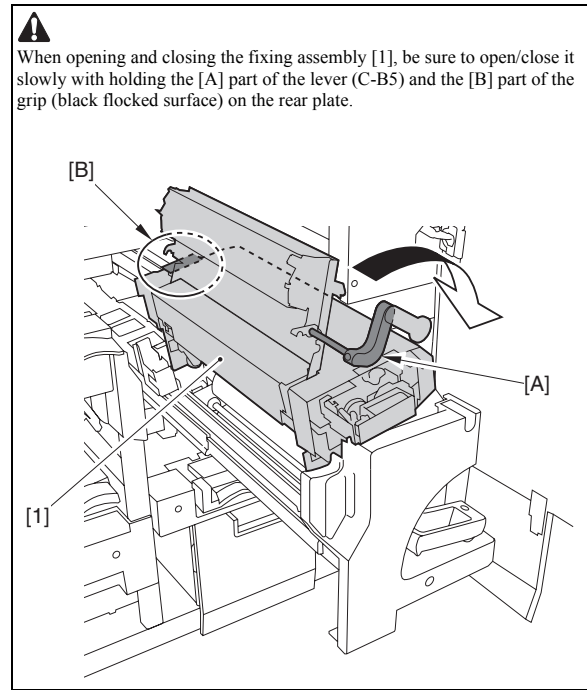
F-9-98

6) Loosen the 2 screws [1] and slide the fixing pin [2].

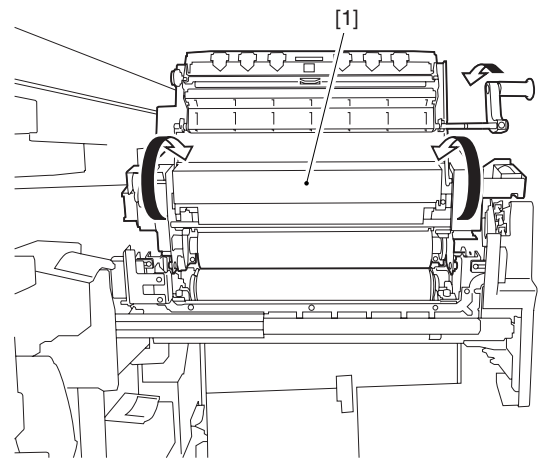


F-9-99

7) Make sure to check the following items before operation.

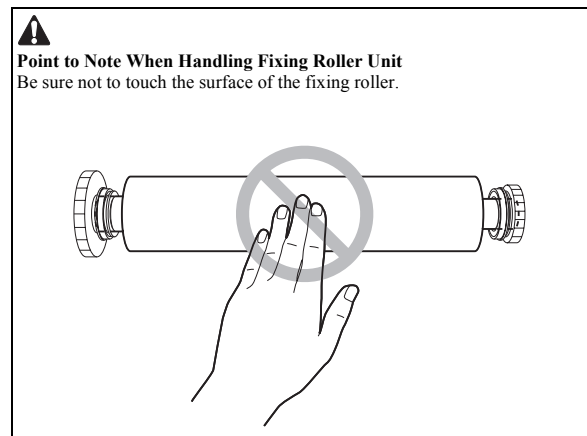


Open the fixing assembly [1] slowly and fully.



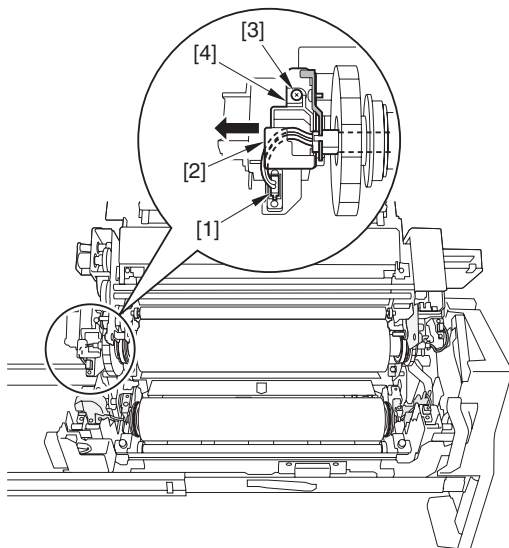
F-9-100

8) Make sure to check the following items before operation.



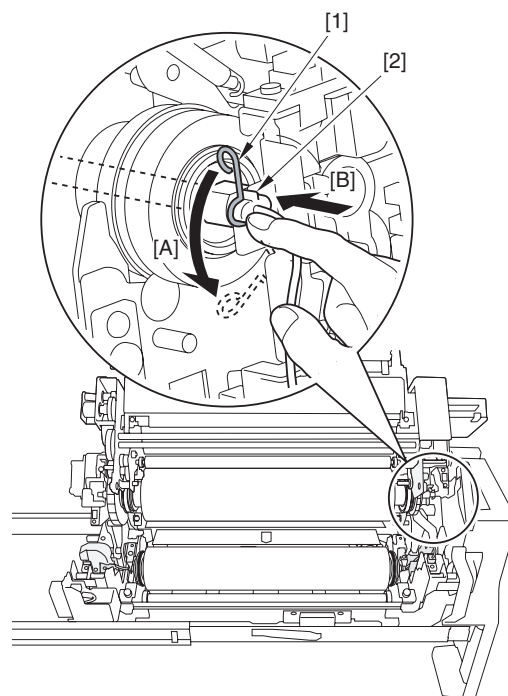
! **Point to Note When Handling Fixing Roller Unit**
Be sure not to touch the surface of the fixing roller.

Disconnect the connector [1] (with connector hook) and free the harness from the harness guide [2]. Then, loosen the screw [3] and detach the heater retaining plate [4].



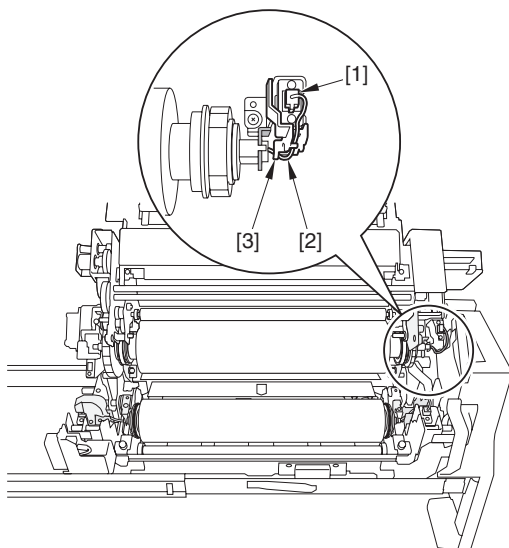
F-9-101

- 9) Disconnect the connector [1] (with connector hook) and free the harness [2] from the harness guide [3].



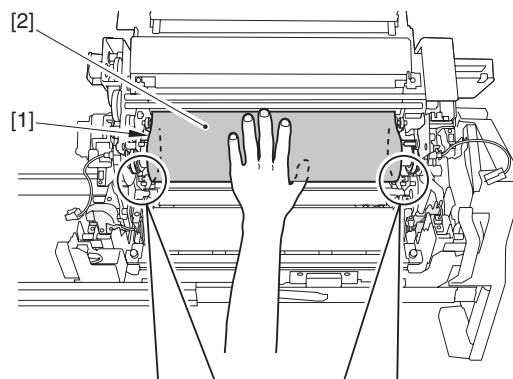
F-9-103

- 11) While holding the fixing roller [1] with paper [2], loosen the 2 screws [3] and slide the bearing fixing plate [4].



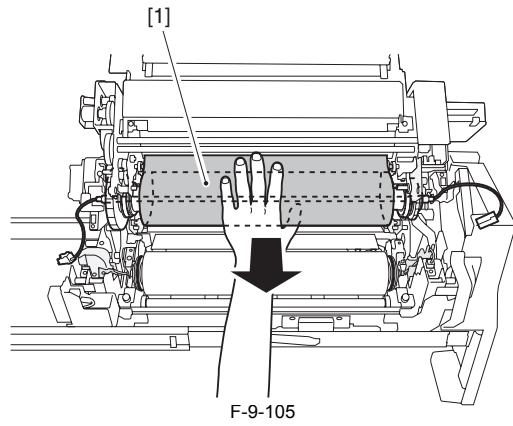
F-9-102

- 10) Release the fixing heater retaining spring [1] in the [A] direction. Then remove the fixing heater [2] by sliding it in the [B] direction and place it inside of the fixing roller.



F-9-104

- 12) Remove the fixing roller unit [1] with the fixing heater attached.



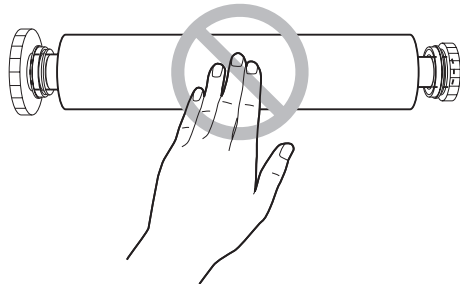
F-9-105

Attaching Fixing Roller Unit

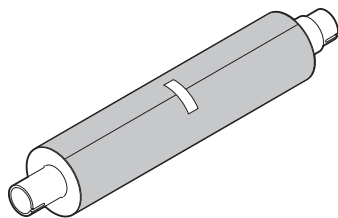
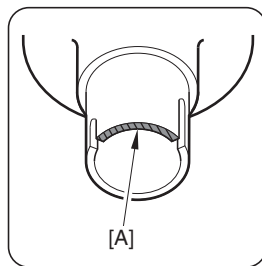
1) Make sure to check the following items before operation.



Point to Note When Handling Fixing Roller Unit
- Be sure not to touch the surface of the fixing roller.

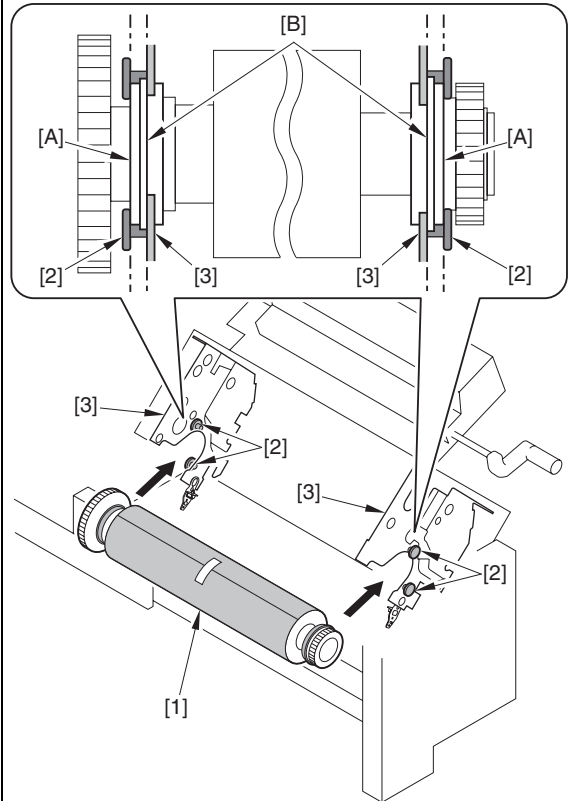


- Identify the primary fixing roller and the secondary fixing roller with the color of the shaft end [A] area. Only with the secondary transfer roller, the [A] area is colored in red.

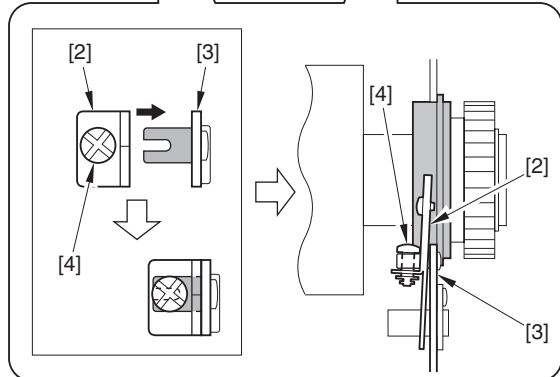
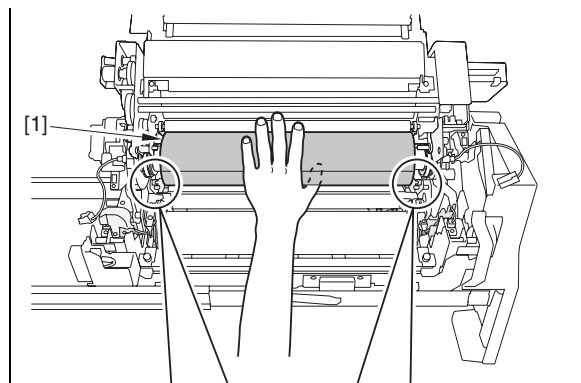


When attaching a new fixing roller, be sure to attach it with the paper wrapped around. Remove the wrapped paper after attaching the fixing roller unit [1] to the fixing assembly.

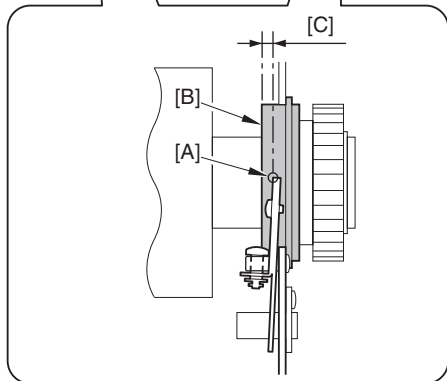
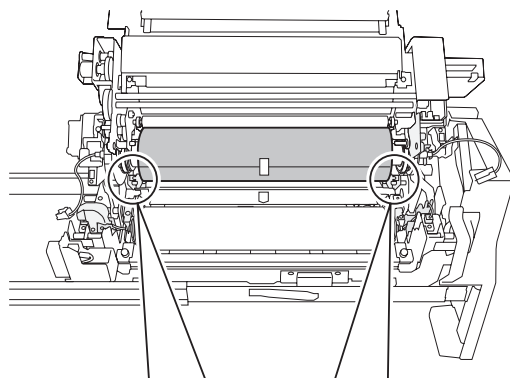
When attaching the fixing roller unit, fit the bearing end [A] of the fixing roller unit [1] with the bearing retainers [2] of the fixing assembly, and the bearing rib [B] of the fixing roller unit [1] with the side plates [3] of the fixing assembly as indicated while placing the fixing heater inside of the fixing roller.



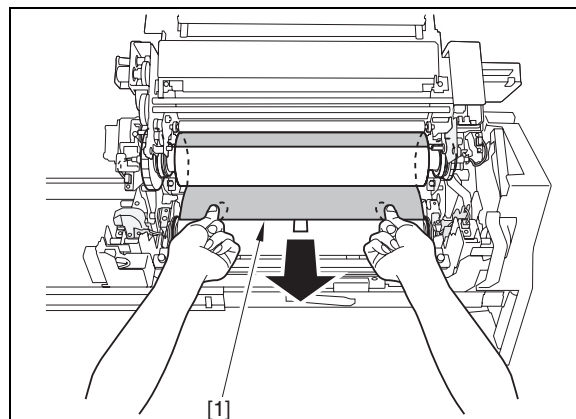
2) Push on the bearing fixing plate [2] to the side plate [3] of the fixing assembly while supporting the fixing roller [1]. Then, tighten the fixing screw [4].



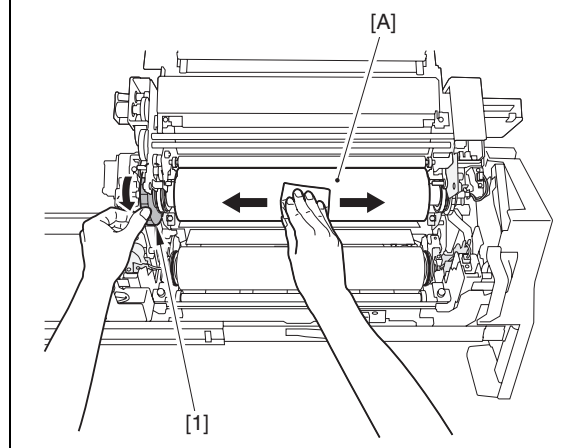
⚠ Check that the leading edge [A] of the bearing retaining plate is fixed at 2mm or more inside [C] from the bearing end [B].



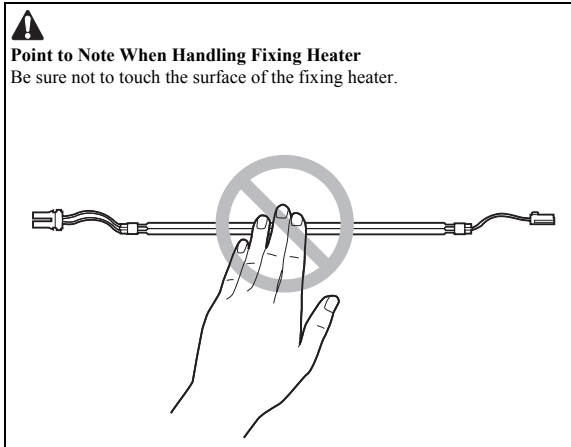
3) Remove the paper [1] wrapped around the new fixing roller by slowly pulling it in the indicated direction.



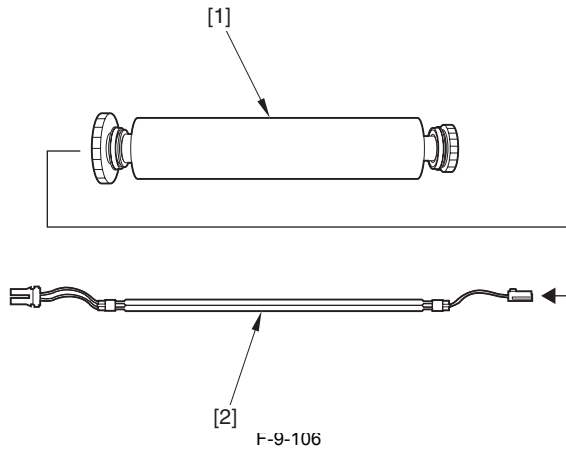
4) Moisten the lint-free paper packed with the new fixing roller with alcohol solutions, and clean the whole circumference of the roller surface [A] while rotating the gear [1] of the fixing roller unit with your hand.



13) Make sure to check the following items before operation.



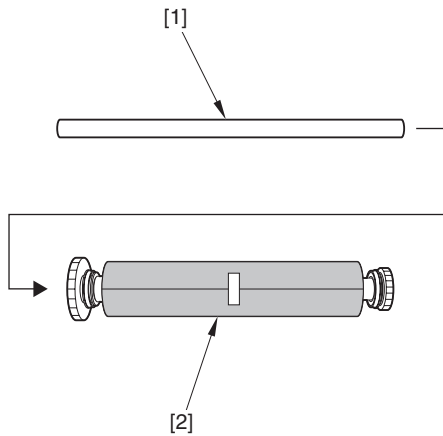
Remove the fixing heater [2] from the fixing roller unit [1].



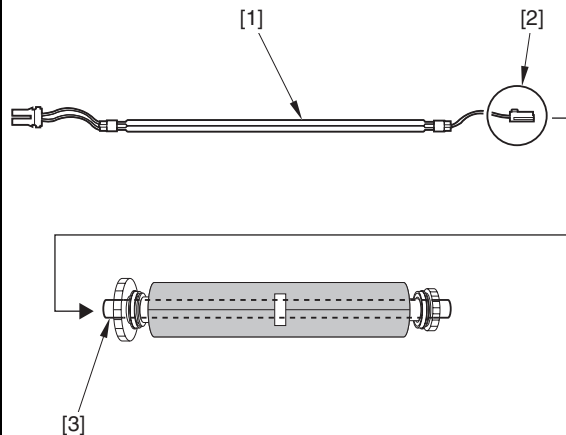
F-9-106

Attaching Fixing Heater

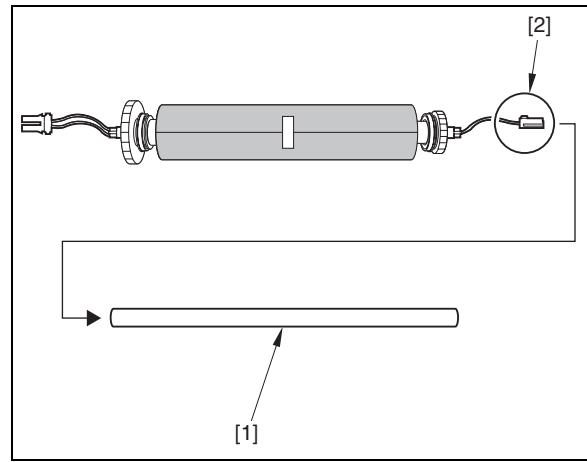
1) Attach the heater attach guide [1] packed with the new fixing roller to the fixing roller unit [2].



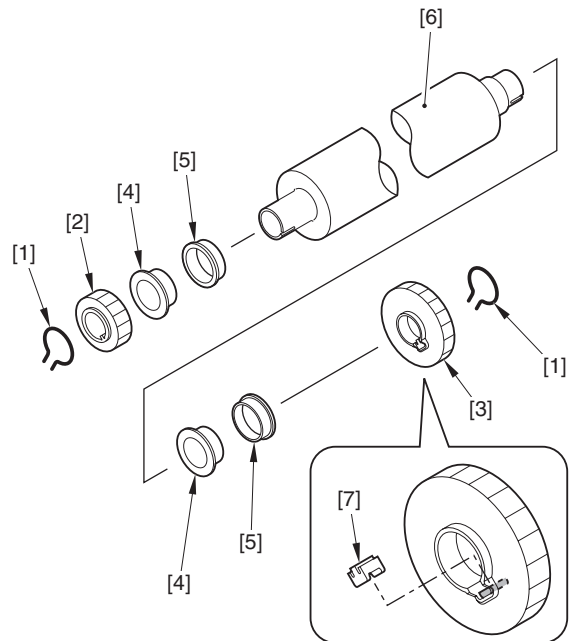
2) Attach the fixing heater [1] to the heater attach guide [3] from the 1-pin connector side [2] (not from the 2-pin connector side).



3) Remove the heater attach guide [1] from the 1-pin connector side [2] (not from the 2-pin connector side) of the fixing heater.



14) Remove the 2 rings [1], the gear [2], the gear [3] (with the protrusion [7]), the 2 insulating bushes [4], and the 2 bearings [5]; then, remove the fixing roller [6].



F-9-107

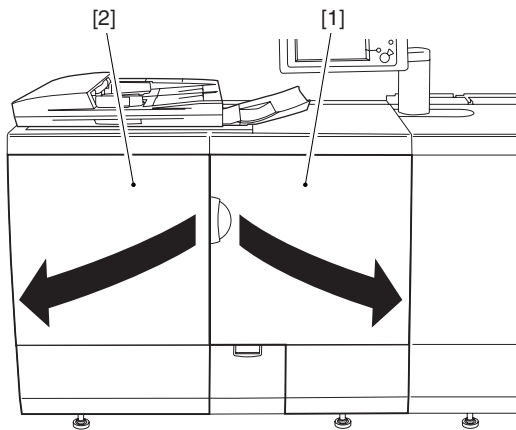
9.7.5 Pressure Roller

9.7.5.1 Removing Secondary Fixing Pressure Roller

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

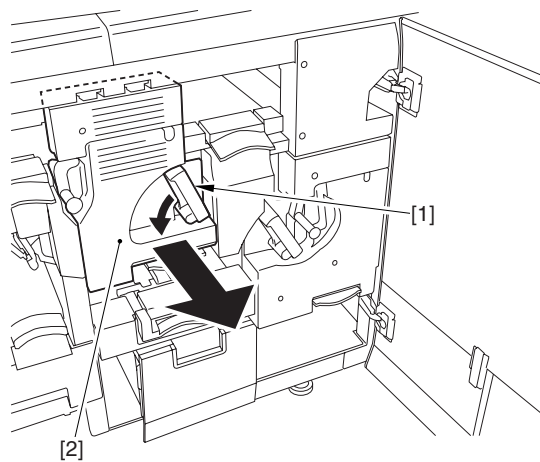
⚠ Point to Note When Working with the Fixing Assembly
Be sure to cool down the fixing assembly before starting the work.

1) Fully open the sub station front right cover [1] and the sub station front left cover [2] in order.



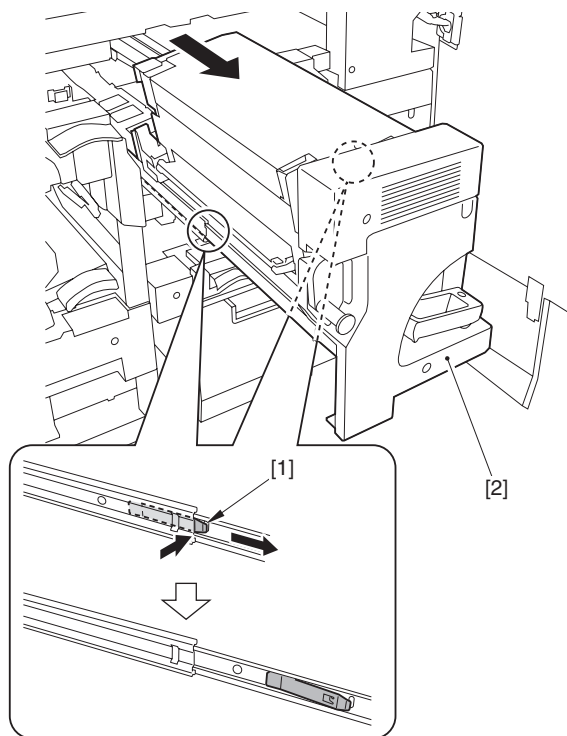
F-9-108

2) Shift the lever (C-B4) [1] in the direction of the arrow, and slide out the fixing assembly [2].



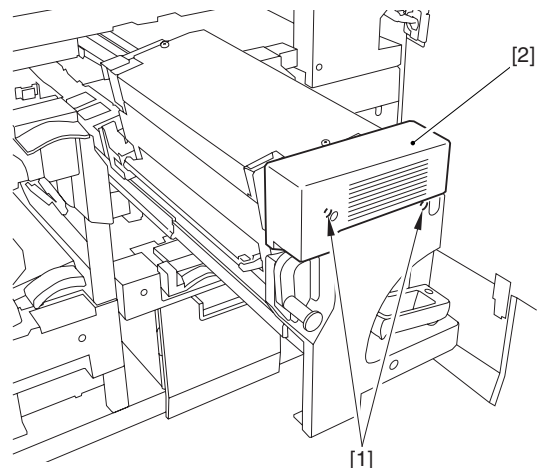
F-9-109

3) Release the 2 leaf springs [1], and slide out the fixing assembly [2] further.



F-9-110

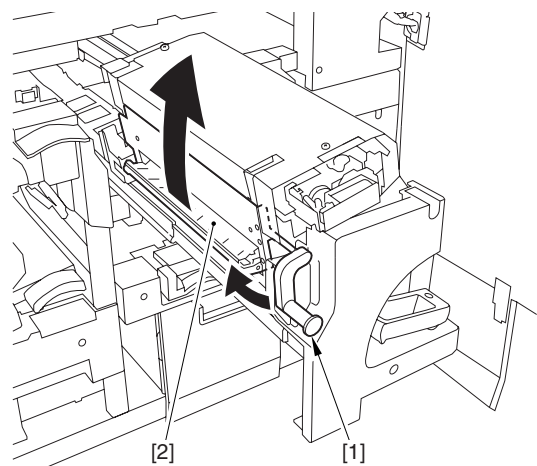
4) Remove the 2 screws [1] and detach the secondary fixing front upper cover [2].



F-9-111

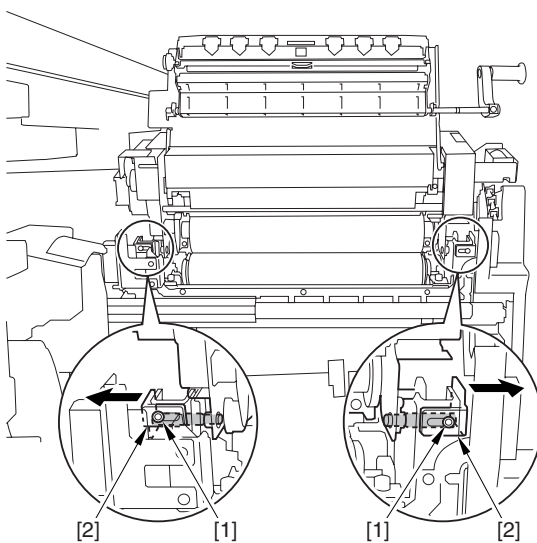
5) Lifting up the lever (C-B5) [1] and open the cover (C-B5) [2] slowly and fully.

! Be sure not to let the cover (C-B5) [2] fall down in the subsequent work.



F-9-112

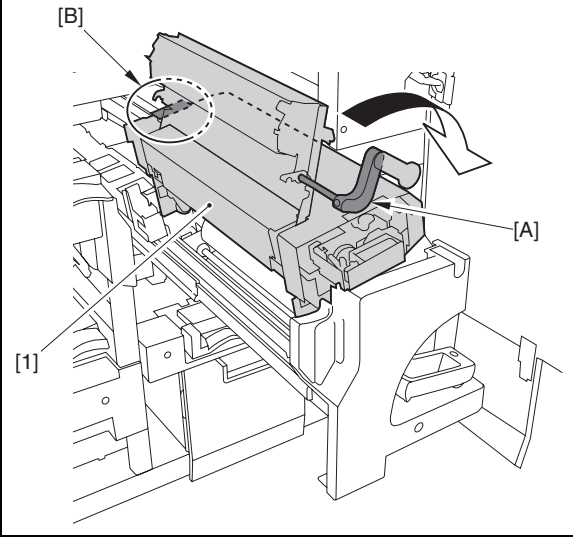
6) Loosen the 2 screws [1] and slide the fixing pin [2].



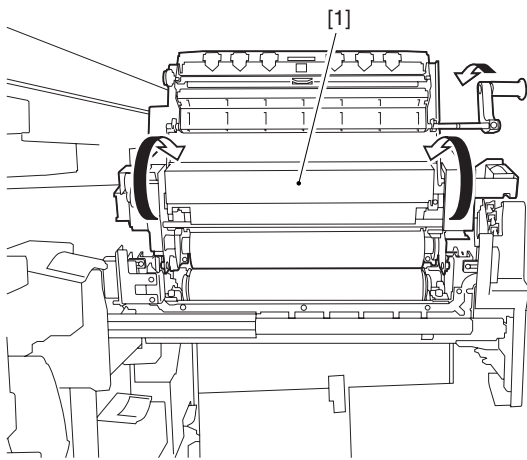
F-9-113

7) Make sure to check the following items before operation.

⚠
 When opening and closing the fixing assembly [1], be sure to open/close it slowly with holding the [A] part of the lever (C-B5) and the [B] part of the grip (black flocked surface) on the rear plate.

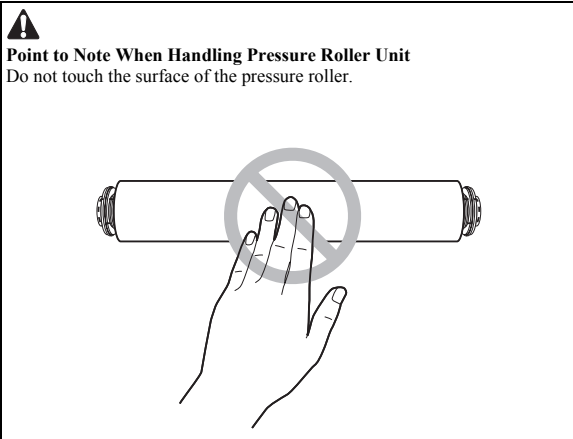


Open the fixing assembly [1] slowly and fully.

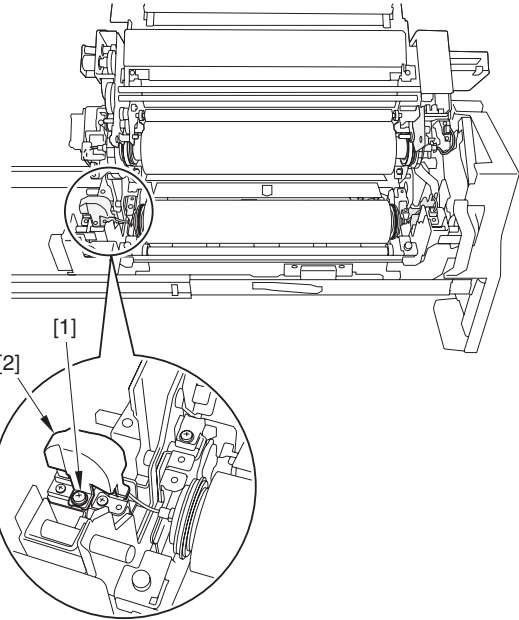


F-9-114

8) Make sure to check the following items before operation.

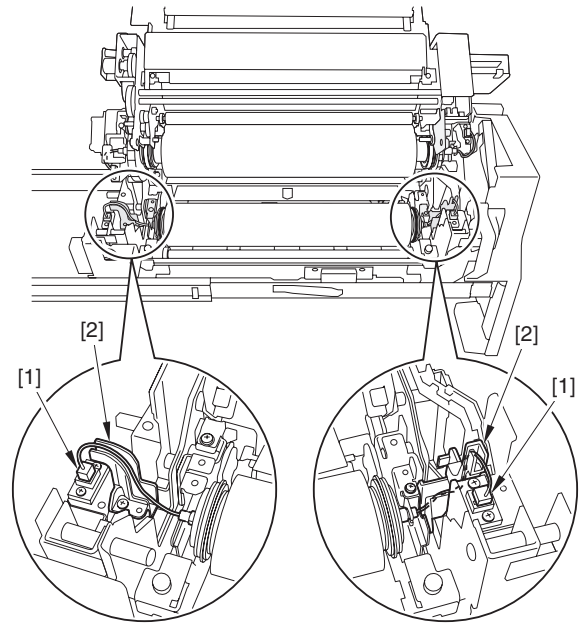


Loosen the screw [1] and detach the connector cover [2].



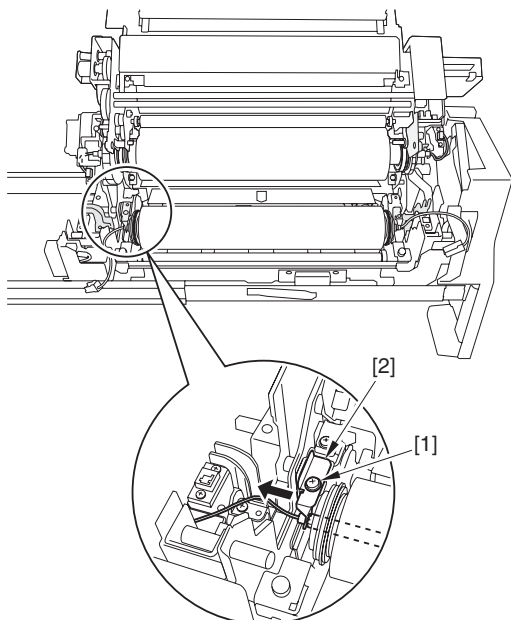
F-9-115

9) Disconnect the 2 connectors [1] (with the connector hook) and free the harness from the harness guide [2].



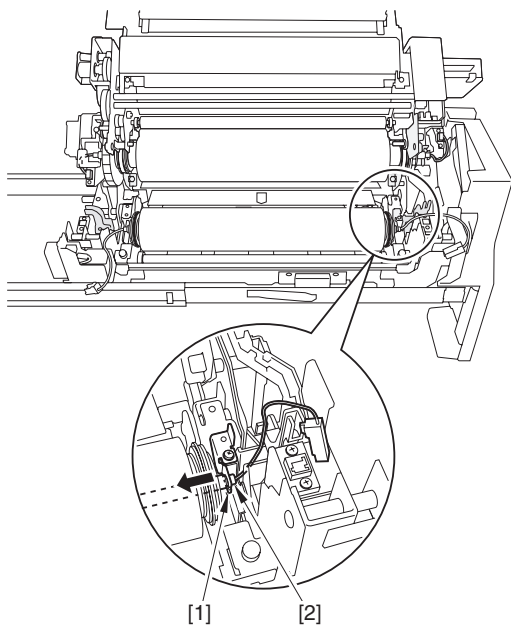
F-9-116

10) Remove the screw [1] and detach the leaf spring [2].



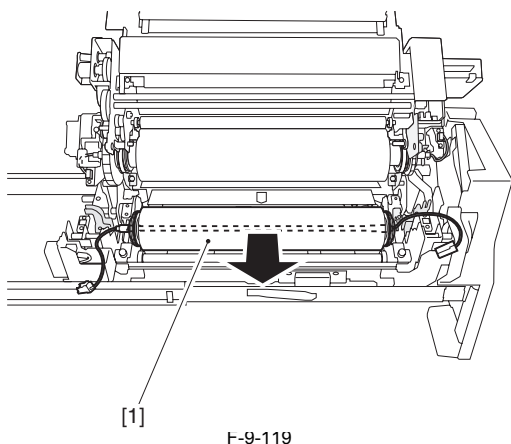
F-9-117

11) Slide the heater [2] out from the plate [1] into the pressure roller.



F-9-118

12) With the pressure heater placed in, detach the pressure roller unit [1].



F-9-119

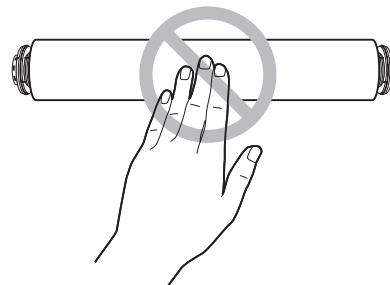
Attaching Pressure Roller Unit

1) Make sure to check the following items before operation.



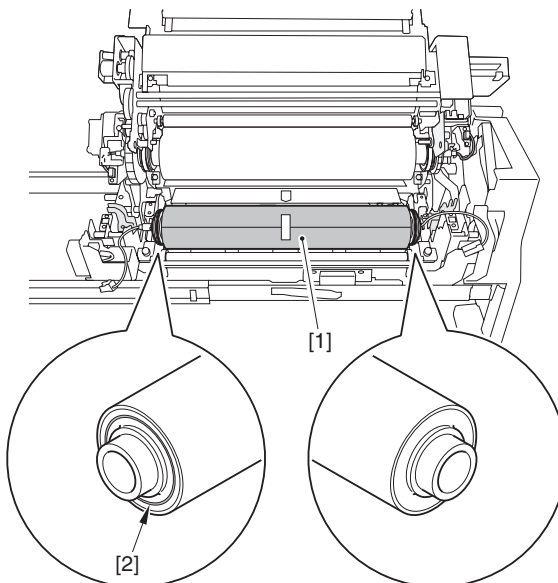
Point to Note When Handling Pressure Roller Unit

- Do not touch the surface of the pressure roller.



- Be sure to attach the pressure roller with correct orientation.

Attaching orientation: Place the end of the pressure roller [1] at which the slot [2] (about 1mm width) is at the rear side.

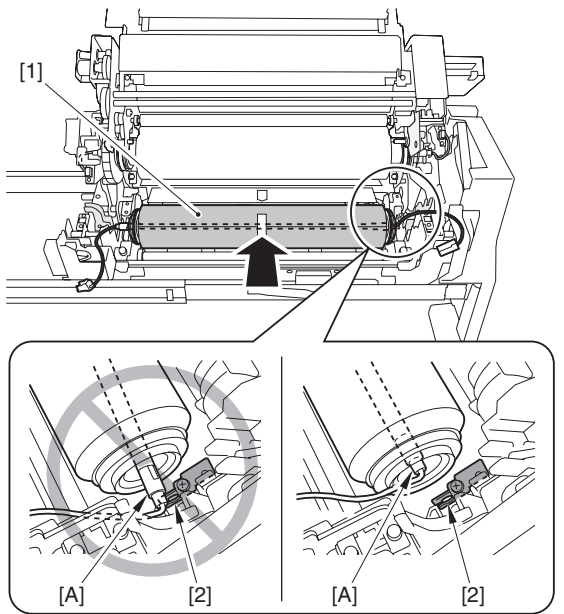


With the pressure heater placed in, attach the pressure roller unit [1] to the fixing assembly

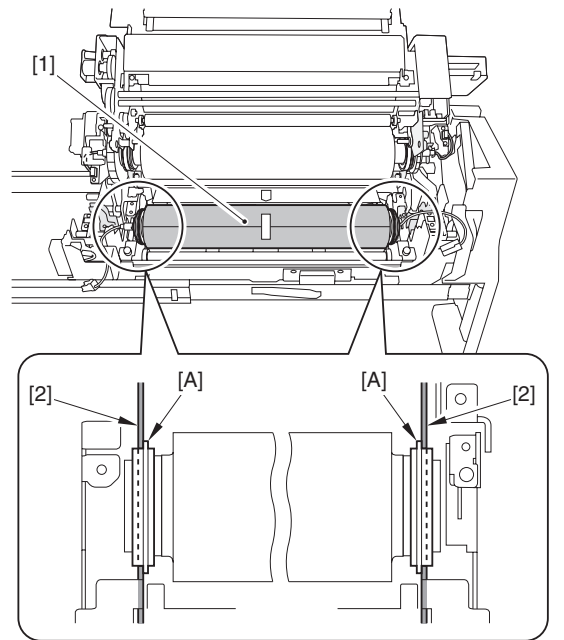


- When attaching the new pressure roller, attach it together with the paper covering it. Remove the paper covering the roller after attaching the pressure roller unit [1] to the fixing assembly.

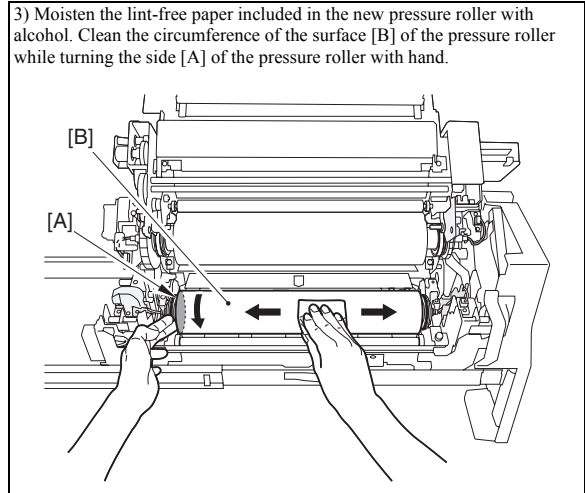
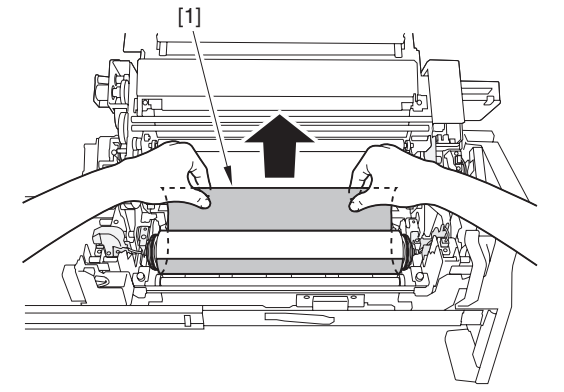
- When attaching the pressure roller unit [1], make sure not to hit the [A] area of the pressure heater to the heater fixing plate [2].



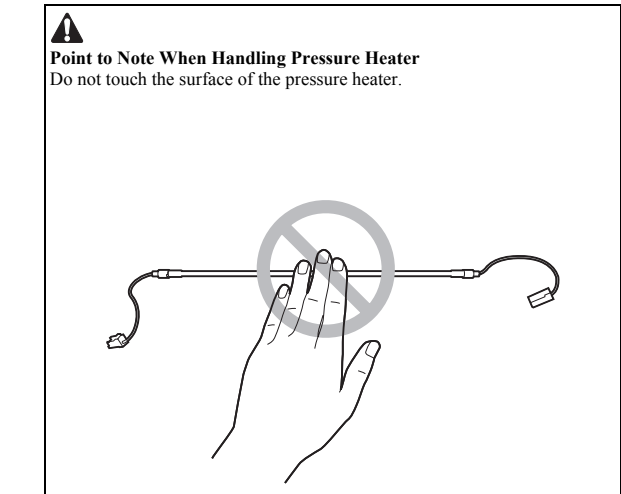
! Place the bearing flange [A] of the pressure roller unit [1] inside of the plate [2] of the fixing assembly when attaching.



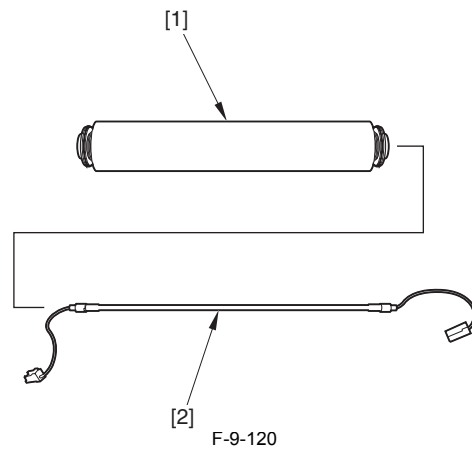
2) Pull the paper [1] covering the new pressure roller slowly in the direction shown in the figure to remove.



3) Moisten the lint-free paper included in the new pressure roller with alcohol. Clean the circumference of the surface [B] of the pressure roller while turning the side [A] of the pressure roller with hand.



Detach the pressure heater [2] from the pressure roller unit [1].



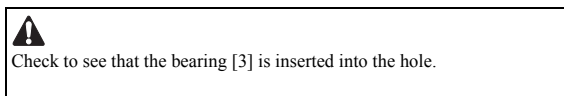
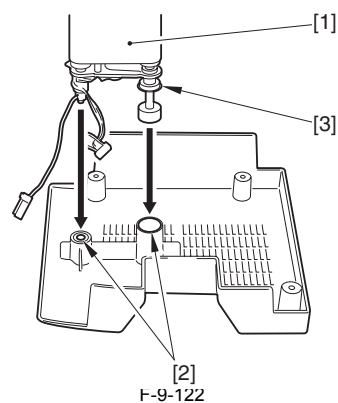
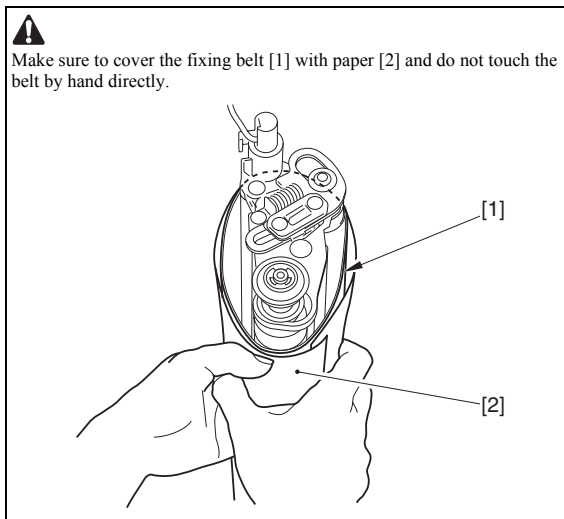
Attaching Pressure Heater
1) Place the heater guide [1] included in the new pressure roller into the pressure roller unit [2].

9.7.6 Fixing Belt

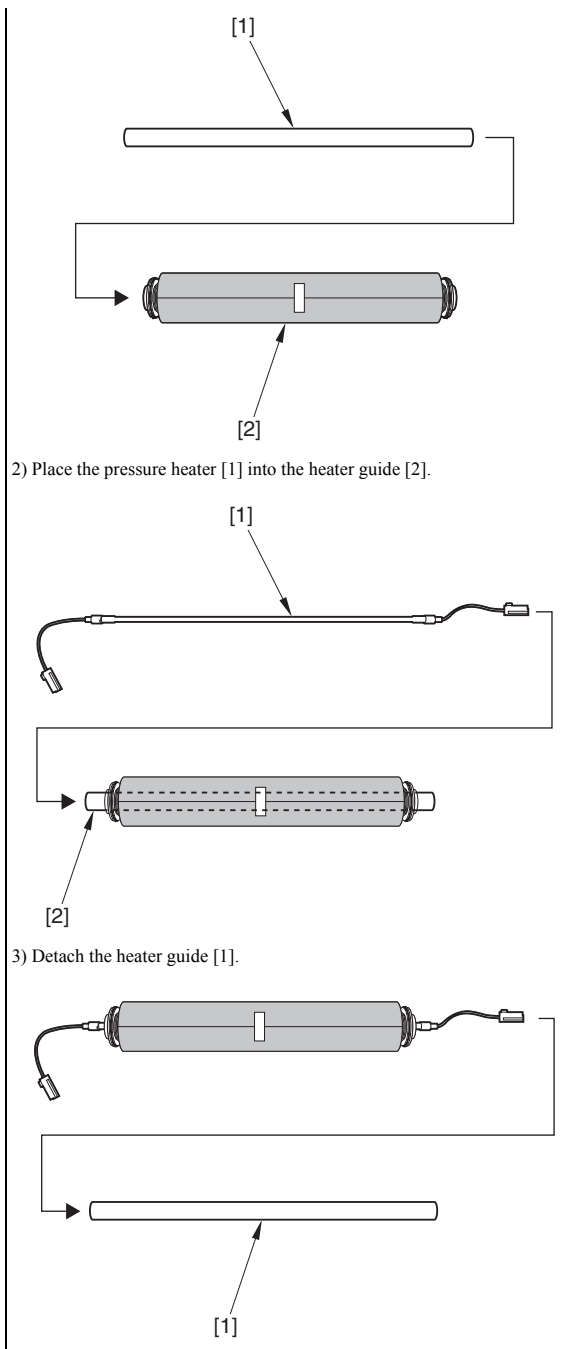
9.7.6.1 Removing Fixing Belt

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

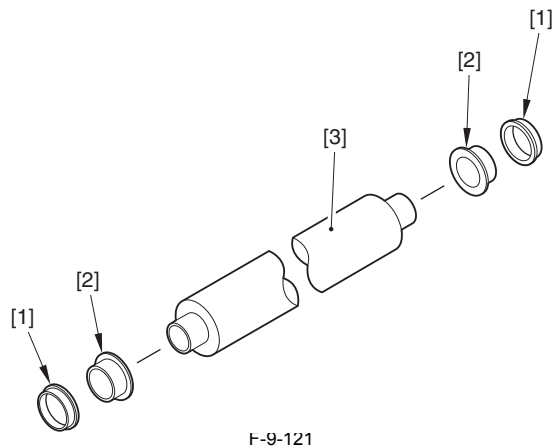
- 1) Remove the fixing belt unit.
- 2) Insert the fixing belt unit [1] into the 2 holes [2] found at the sub station inside cover 1.

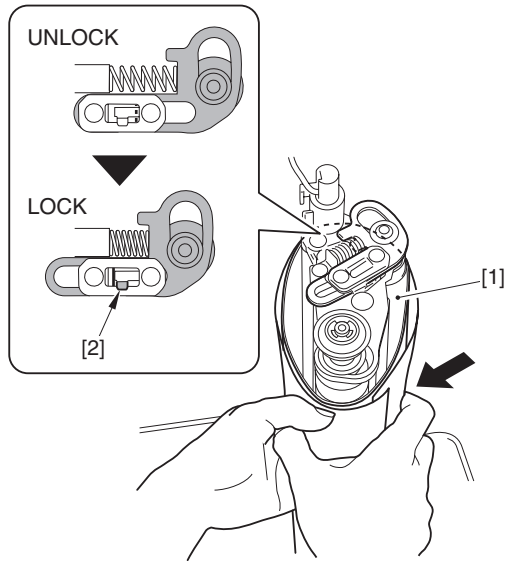


- 3) Hold the fixing belt unit so that the steering roller [1] moves toward the direction of the arrow and push the lock plate [2] to lock.



- 14) Remove the 2 bearings [1] and the 2 insulating bushes [2] and detach the pressure roller [3].

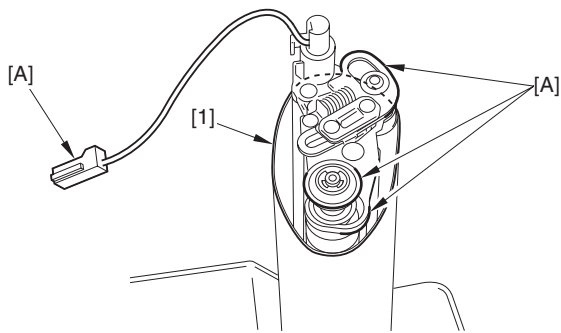




F-9-123

4) With the belt tension released, check to see it is locked and pull the fixing belt [1] to upper.

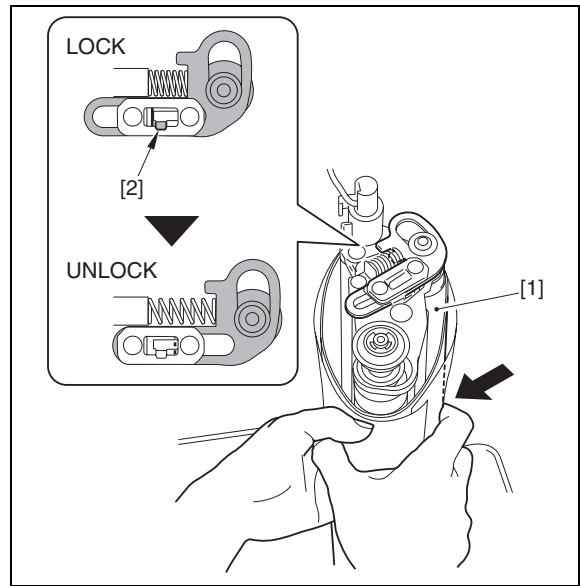
⚠ Be careful not to make any damage to the fixing belt by [A] part.



F-9-124

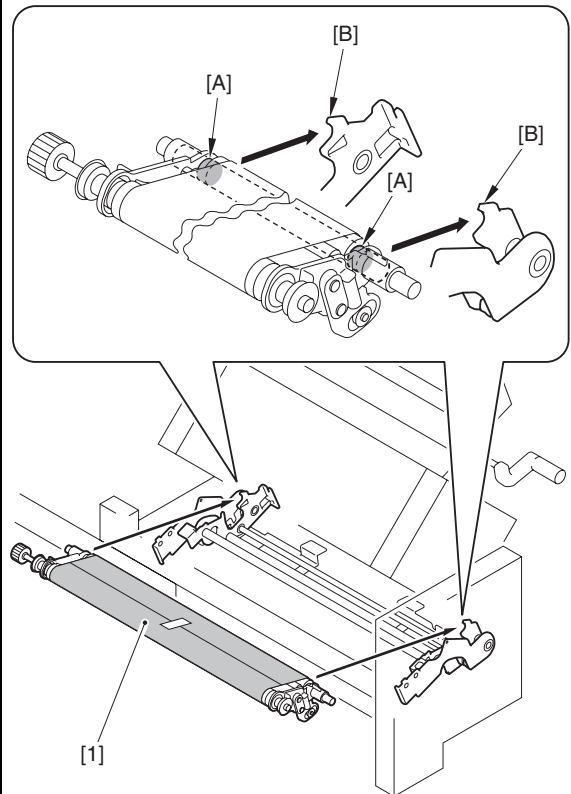
⚠ Points to note when attaching the fixing belt

- Make sure to attach the new fixing belt together with the protective cover.
- Remove the protective sheet of the fixing belt after attaching the fixing belt unit to the fixing assembly.
- Position the fixing belt around the center of the roller. The fixing belt position is adjusted after the power ON.
- Hold the fixing belt unit so that the steering roller [1] moves toward the direction of the arrow and pull the lock plate [2] to unlock.

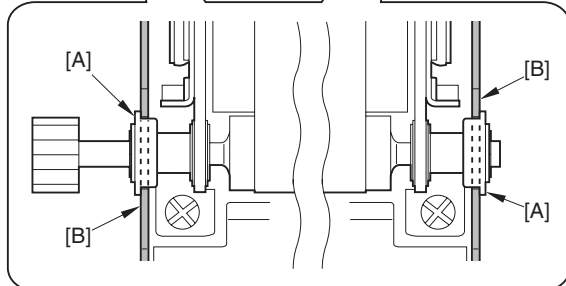
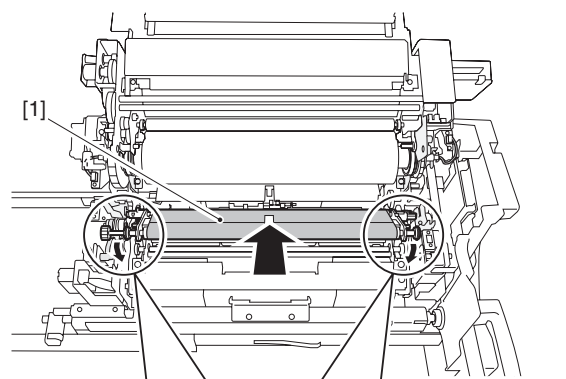


⚠ Points to note when attaching the fixing belt unit

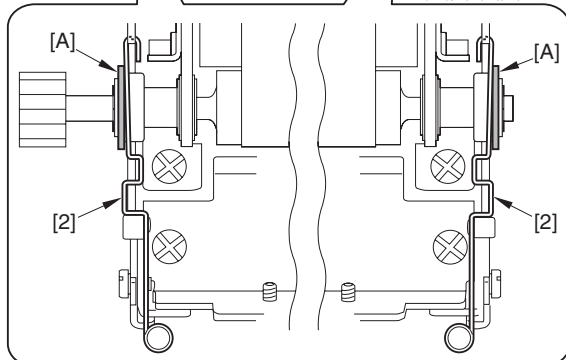
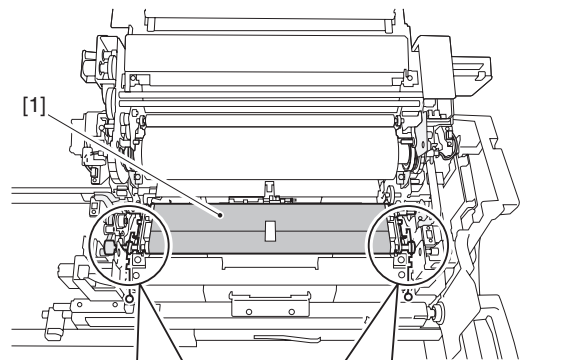
- Attach the fixing belt unit [1] with shaft [A] part matched with the fixing mount groove [B].



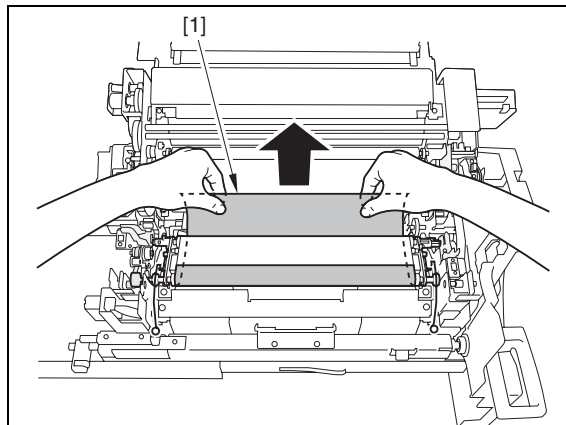
- When attaching the fixing belt unit [1] to the fixing assembly, check to see the edge [A] of the bearing is placed outside of the bearing fixing mount plate [B].



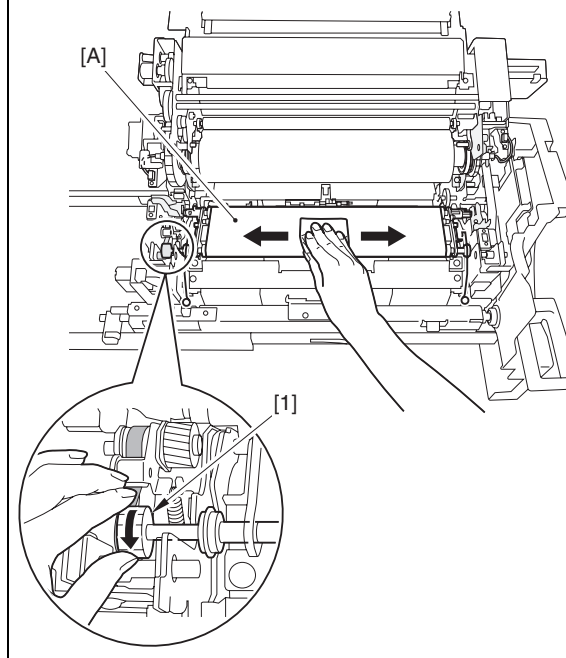
- When attaching the fixing belt unit [1] to the fixing assembly, check to see the wire [2] is engaged inside of the edge [A] of the bearing.



- Slowly remove the protective sheet [1] covering the new fixing belt unit in the direction of the arrow.



- Clean all around the surface [A] of the fixing roller. Moisten the lint-free paper included in the new fixing roller with alcohol; then, clean the roller while turning the gear [1] of the fixing roller unit with hands.

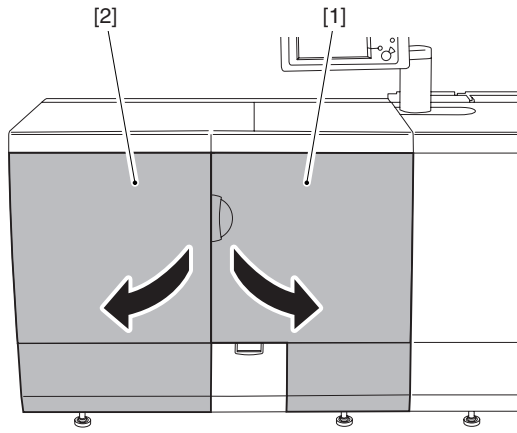


9.7.7 External Heat Roller

9.7.7.1 Removing Primary Fixing External Heat Roller (Upper), Primary Fixing External Heat Insulating Bush (Upper) and Primary Fixing External Heat Bearing (Upper)

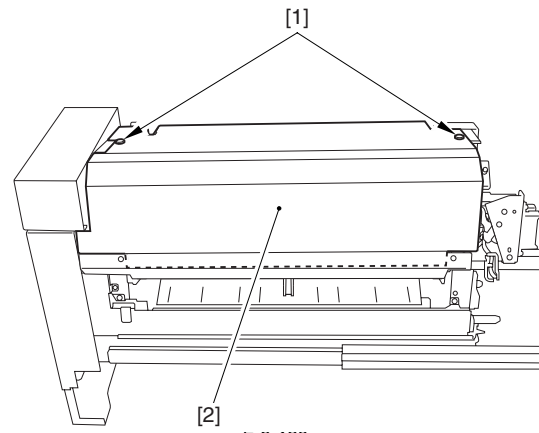
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

1) Open fully the right front cover [1] and the left front cover [2] of the sub station in this order.



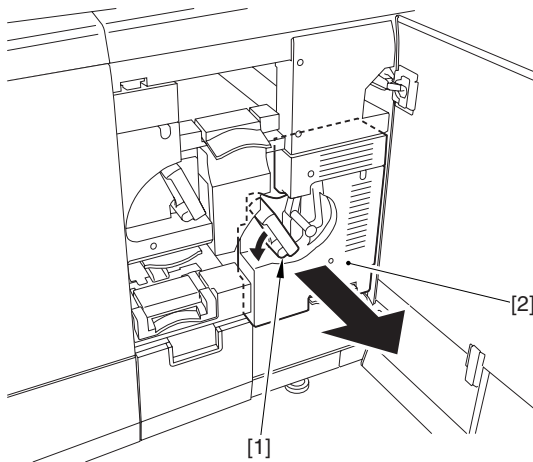
F-9-125

2) Release the release lever [1] in the direction of the arrow, and slide out the fixing assembly [2].



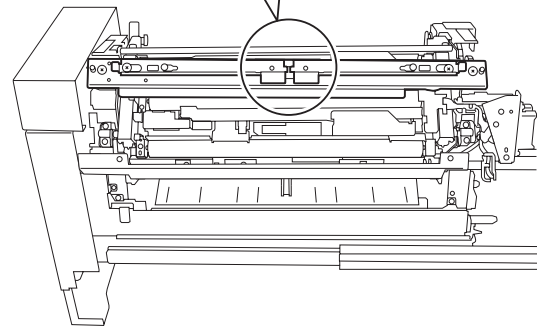
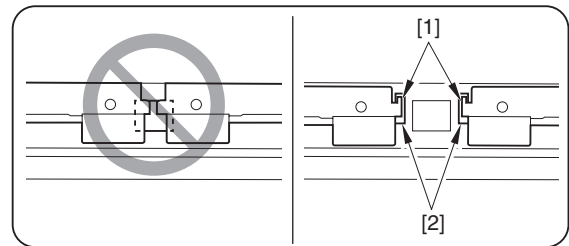
F-9-128

⚠ Points to note when attaching the fixing upper cover
 In case of failure to attach the fixing upper cover to the fixing assembly, check the release lever claw [1] on the pressure plate is inserted into the pressure plate hole [2] appropriately.



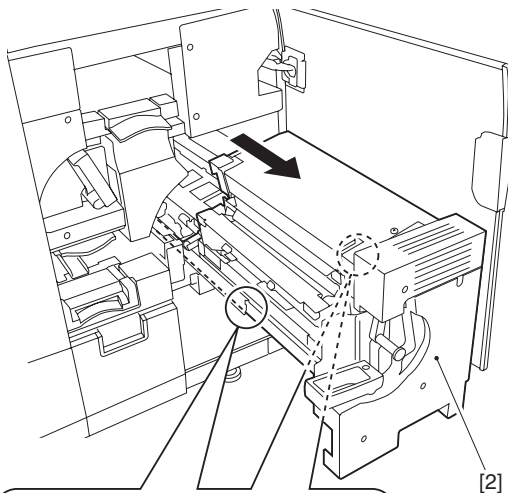
F-9-126

3) Release the 2 leaf springs [1] and slide out further the fixing assembly [2].



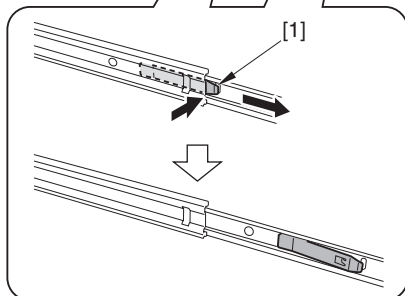
F-9-129

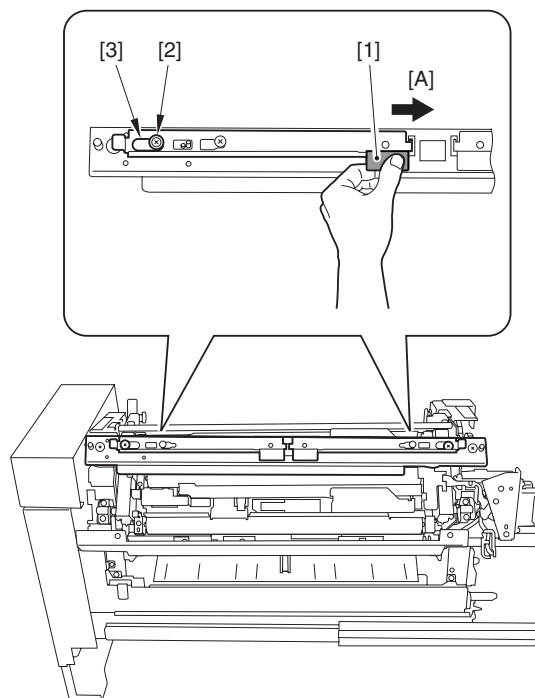
5) While pulling up the release lever tub [1], move the release lever in the [A] direction until the screw shaft [2] touches the long hole [3].



F-9-127

4) Loosen the 2 screws [1] to detach the fixing upper cover [2].



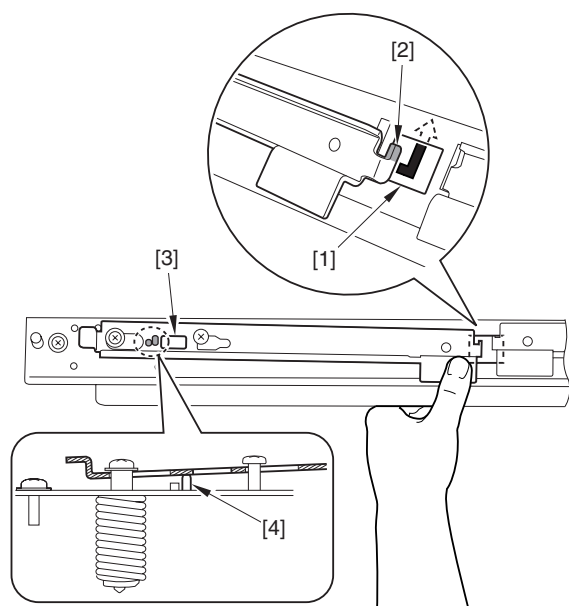


F-9-130

6) Hook the release lever claw [2] onto the pressure plate hole [1] to lock.



When locking the release lever, see the long hole [3] from above to check the pressure release support shaft [4] cannot be seen.

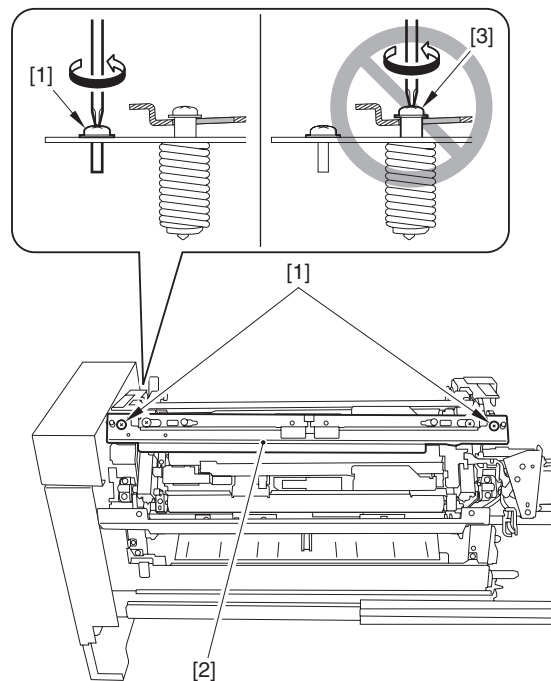


F-9-131

7) Remove the 2 screws [1] and detach the outside heat pressure plate [2].

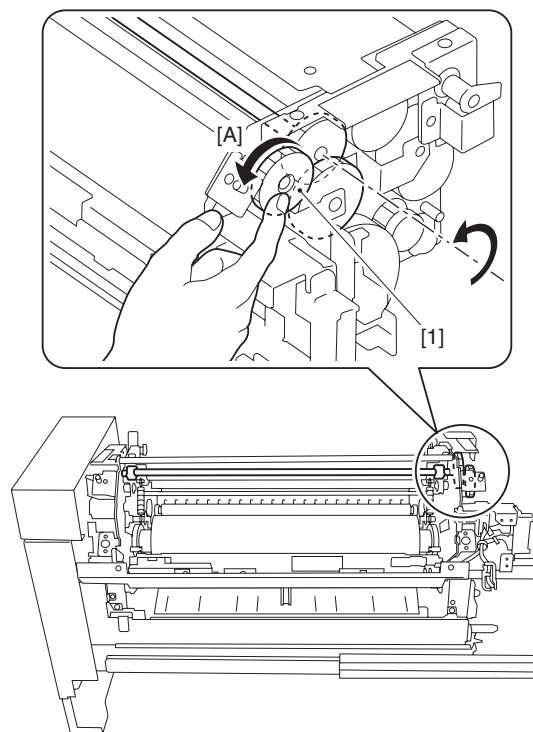


The screw [3] on the outside heat pressure shaft **MUST NOT** be rotated.



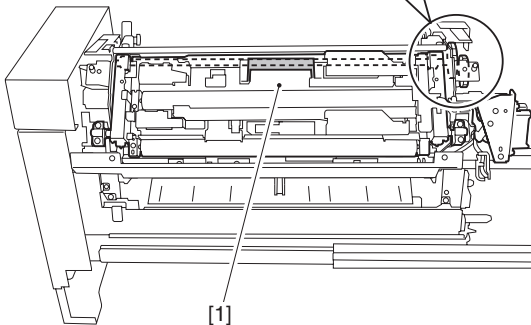
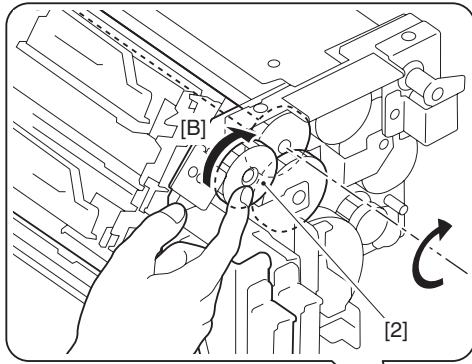
F-9-132

⚠ Points to note when attaching the outside heat pressure plate
- Before mounting the outside heat roller unit to the fixing assembly, rotate the side of the gear [1] with hand in the [A] direction (counter clockwise) until it stops (approximately 1 full turn).



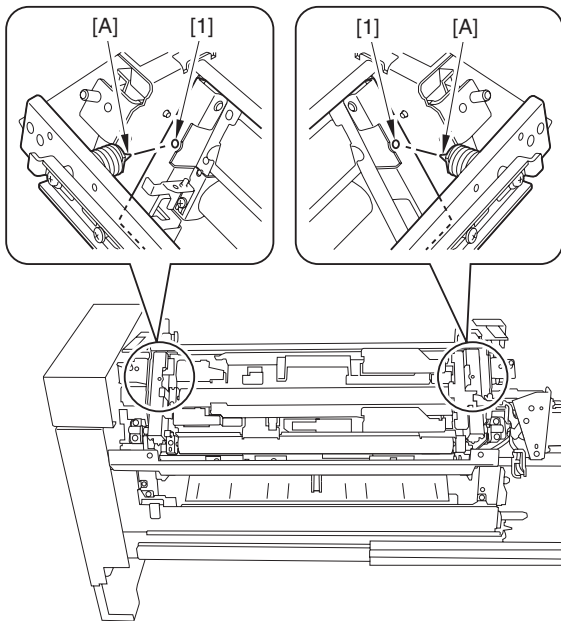
F-9-133

- After mounting the outside heat unit [1] to the fixing assembly, rotate the side of the gear [2] with hand in the [B] direction (clockwise) until the gear [2] stops (approximately 3/4-turn) and thus, outside heat roller unit is separated from the fixing roller.



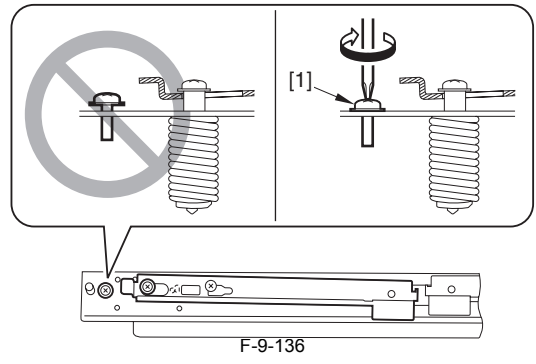
F-9-134

- Mount the leading edge [A] of the outside heat pressure shaft into the outside heat unit hole [1].



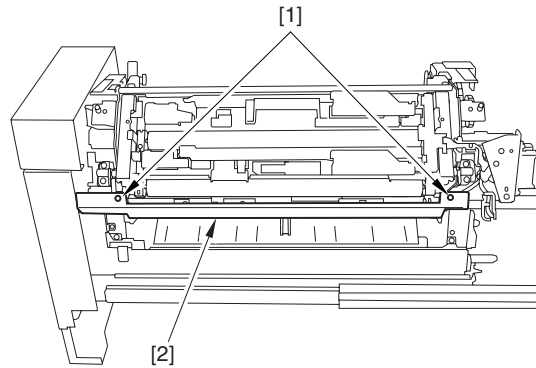
F-9-135

- When attaching the pressure plate, tighten the screw [1] firmly until it stops.



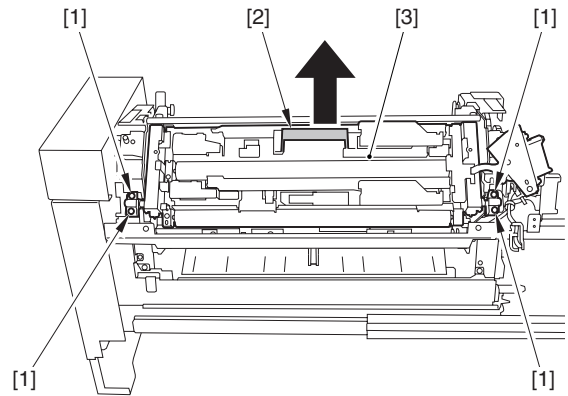
F-9-136

8) Remove the 2 screws [1] and free the harness [2] from the harness guide [3].



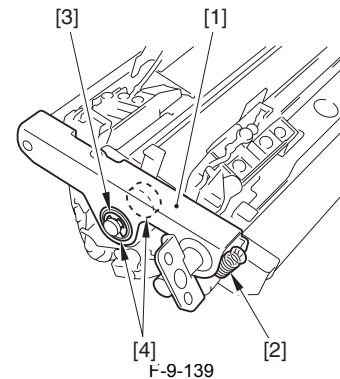
F-9-137

9) Remove the 4 screws [1] and then, lift to remove the outside heat roller unit [3] with holding the grip [2].



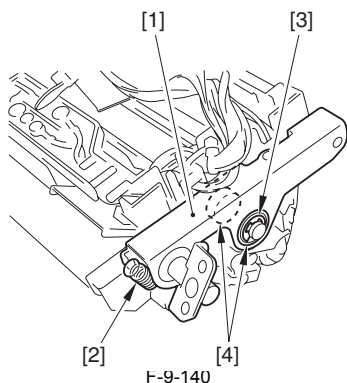
F-9-138

10) Remove the pressure arm (front) [1].
 - 1 spring [2] (upper only)
 - 1 E-ring [3]
 - 2 bearings [4]

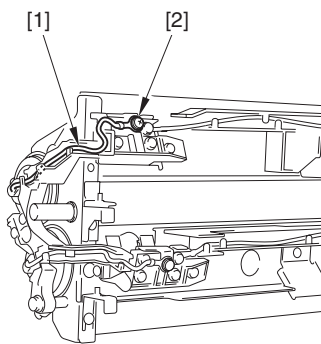


F-9-139

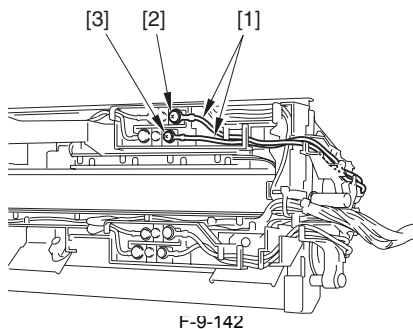
- 11) Remove the pressure arm (rear) [1].
 - 1 spring [2] (upper only)
 - 1 E-ring [3]
 - 2 bearings [4]



- 12) Free the cable [1] from the cable guide.
 - 1 screw (M3) [2]



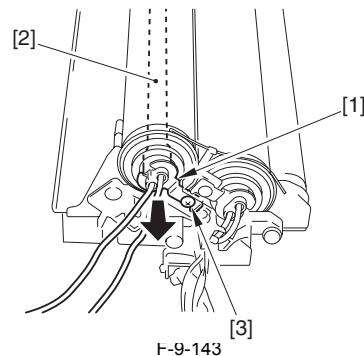
- 13) Free the 2 cables [1] from the cable guide.
 - 1 screw (M4) [2]
 - 1 screw (M3) [3]



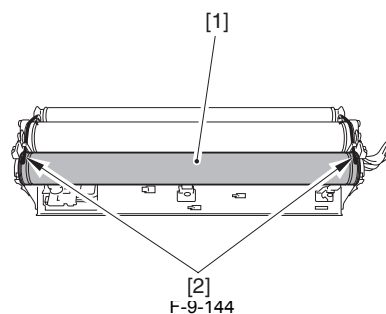
- 14) Turn over the primary fixing external heat roller unit.
 15) Detach the heater retaining plate [1] and remove the heater [2] to the direction of the arrow.
 - 1 screw [3]



Be careful not to damage the heater [2] when removing.

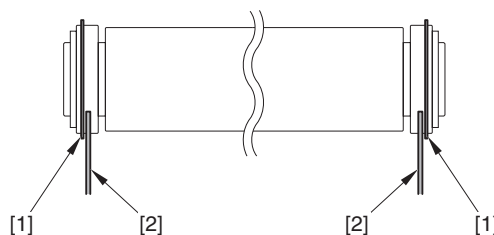


- 16) Remove the primary fixing external heat roller (upper) [1].
 - 2 roller retainers [2]



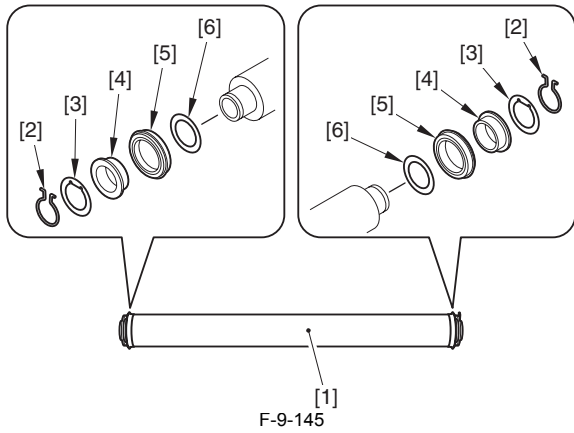
Points to note when attaching

Attach it with placing the bearing flange [1] outer side of the plate [2].



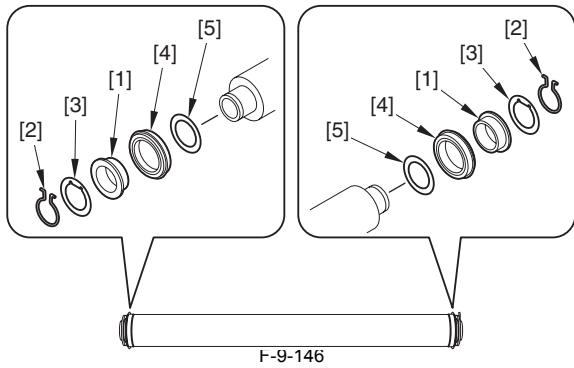
Removing Primary Fixing External Heat Roller (Upper)

- 17) Remove the following parts from the primary fixing external heat roller (upper) [1].
 - 2 stop rings [2]
 - 2 spacers [3]
 - 2 bushings [4]
 - 2 bearings [5]
 - 2 washers [6]



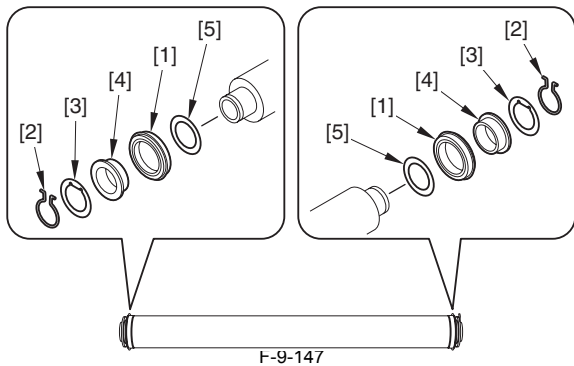
Removing Primary Fixing External Heat Insulating Bush (Upper)

- 17) Remove the primary fixing external heat insulating bush (upper) [1].
- 2 stop rings [2]
 - 2 spacers [3]
 - 2 bearings [4]
 - 2 washers [5]



Removing Primary Fixing External Heat Bearing (Upper)

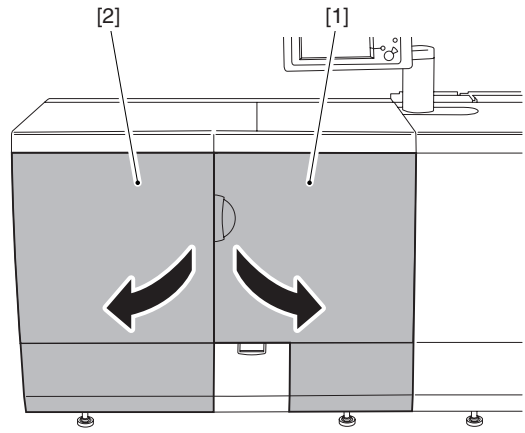
- 17) Remove the primary fixing external heat bearing (upper) [1].
- 2 stop rings [2]
 - 2 spacers [3]
 - 2 bushings [4]
 - 2 washers [5]



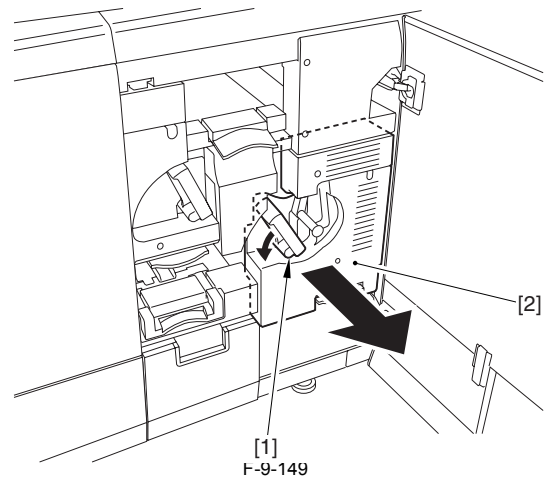
9.7.7.2 Removing Primary Fixing External Heat Roller (Lower), Primary Fixing External Heat Insulating Bush (Lower) and Primary Fixing External Heat Bearing (Lower)

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

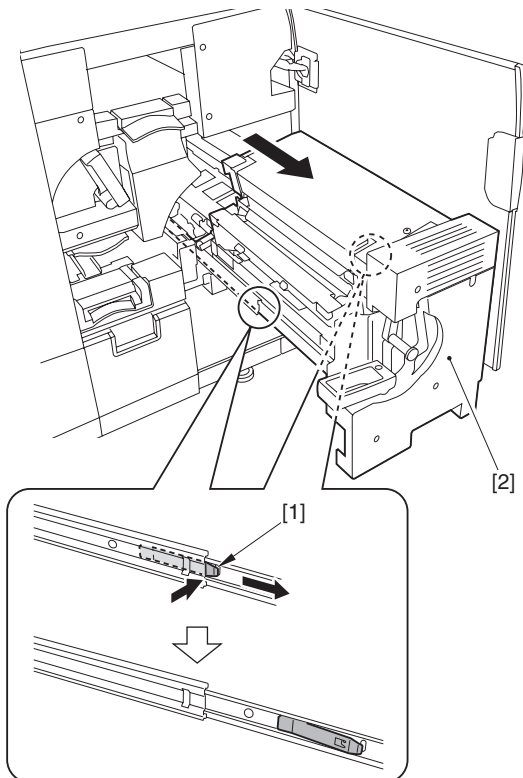
- 1) Open fully the right front cover [1] and the left front cover [2] of the sub station in this order.



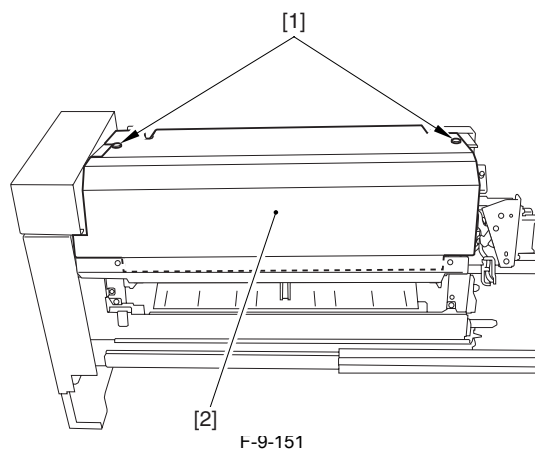
- 2) Release the release lever [1] in the direction of the arrow, and slide out the fixing assembly [2].



- 3) Release the 2 leaf springs [1] and slide out further the fixing assembly [2].



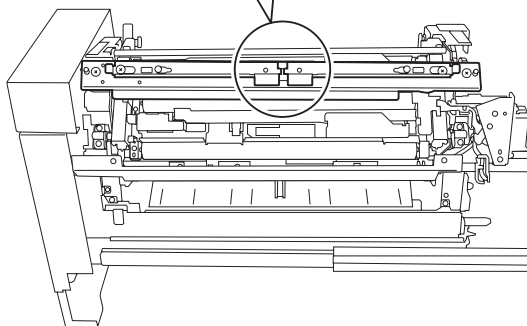
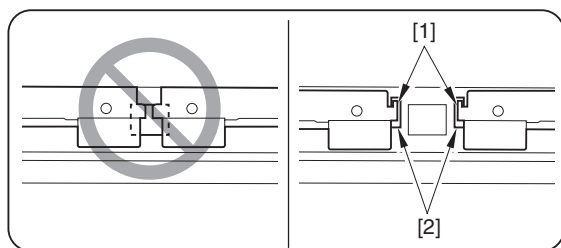
- 4) Loosen the 2 screws [1] to detach the fixing upper cover [2].



F-9-151

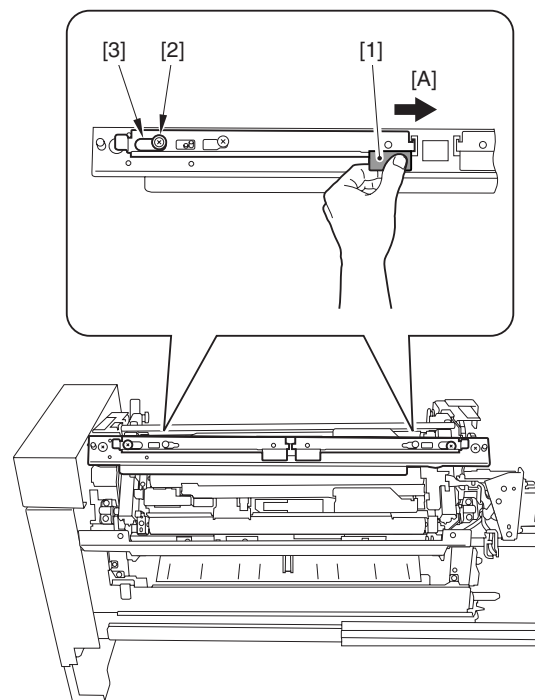
⚠ Points to note when attaching the fixing upper cover

In case of failure to attach the fixing upper cover to the fixing assembly, check the release lever claw [1] on the pressure plate is inserted into the pressure plate hole [2] appropriately.



F-9-152

5) While pulling up the release lever tub [1], move the release lever in the [A] direction until the screw shaft [2] touches the long hole [3].

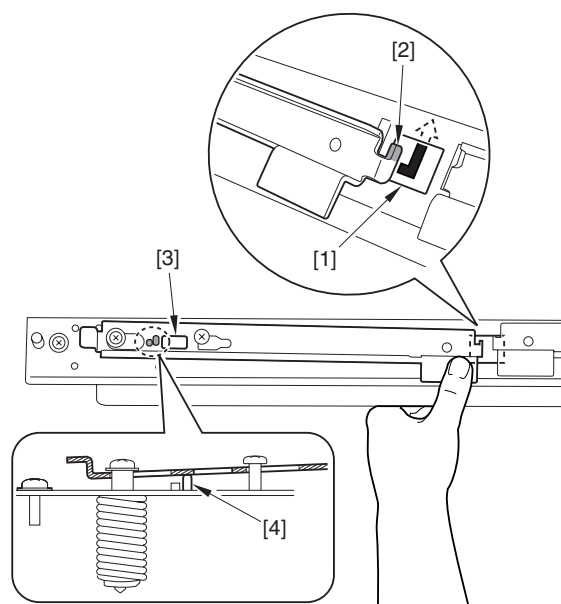


F-9-153

6) Hook the release lever claw [2] onto the pressure plate hole [1] to lock.



When locking the release lever, see the long hole [3] from above to check the pressure release support shaft [4] cannot be seen.

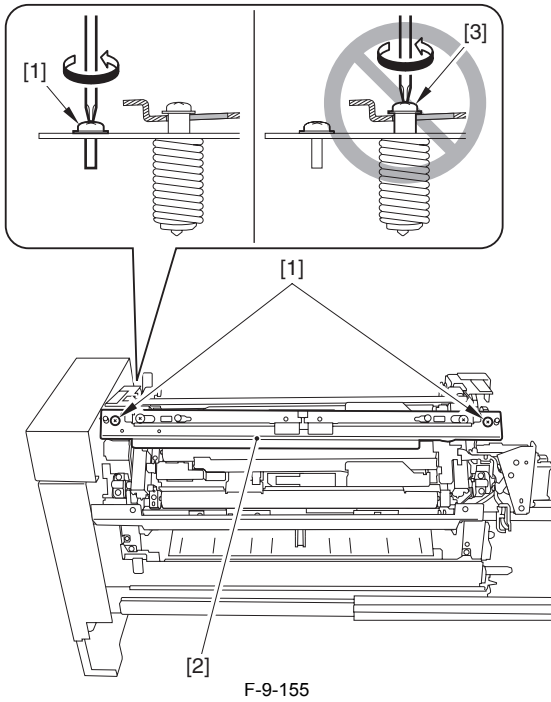


F-9-154

7) Remove the 2 screws [1] and detach the outside heat pressure plate [2].

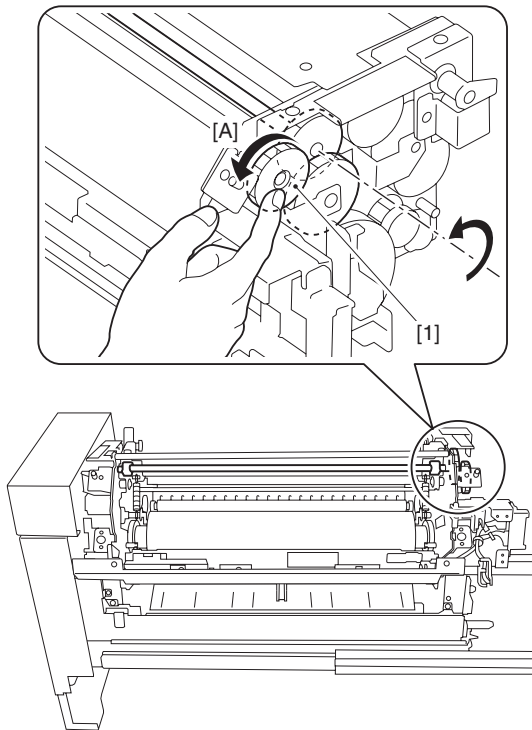


The screw [3] on the outside heat pressure shaft MUST NOT be rotated.



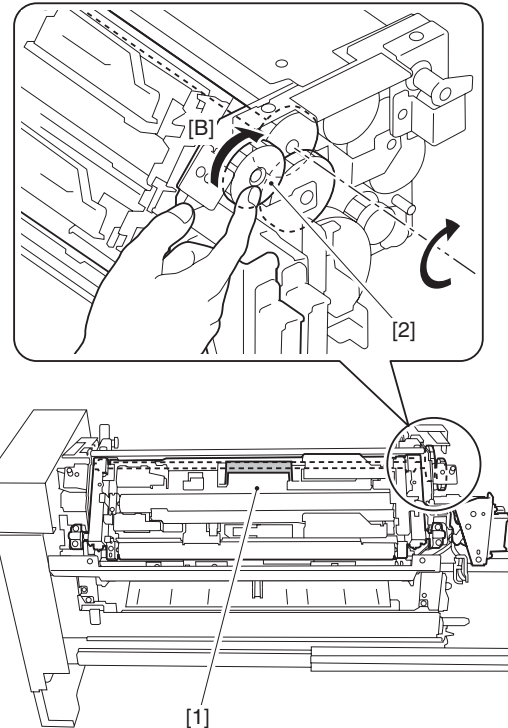
F-9-155

⚠ Points to note when attaching the outside heat pressure plate
 - Before mounting the outside heat roller unit to the fixing assembly, rotate the side of the gear [1] with hand in the [A] direction (counter clockwise) until it stops (approximately 1 full turn).



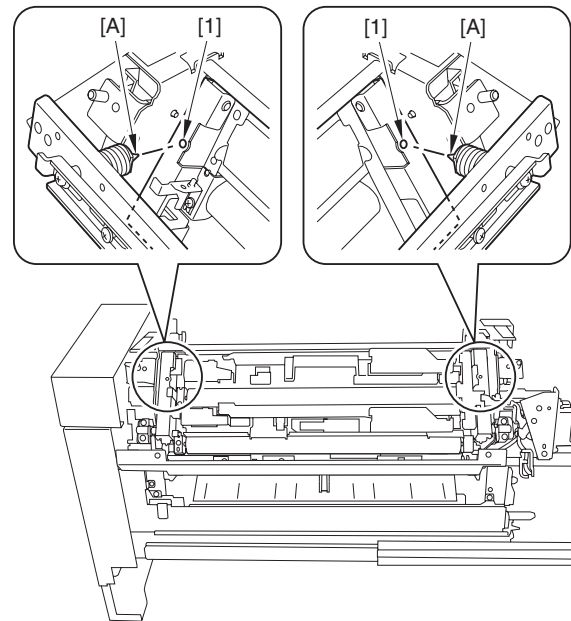
F-9-156

- After mounting the outside heat unit [1] to the fixing assembly, rotate the side of the gear [2] with hand in the [B] direction (clockwise) until the gear [2] stops (approximately 3/4-turn) and thus, outside heat roller unit is separated from the fixing roller.



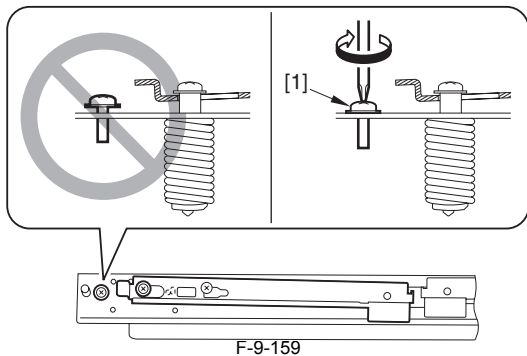
F-9-157

- Mount the leading edge [A] of the outside heat pressure shaft into the outside heat unit hole [1].



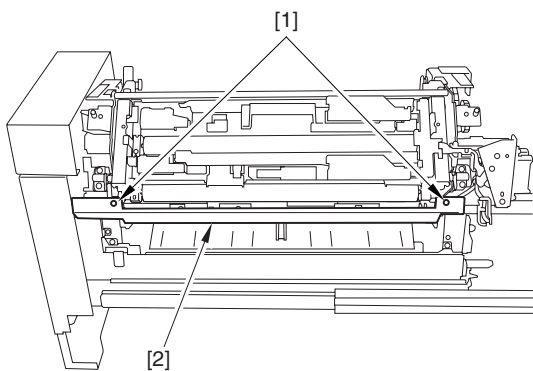
F-9-158

- When attaching the pressure plate, tighten the screw [1] firmly until it stops.



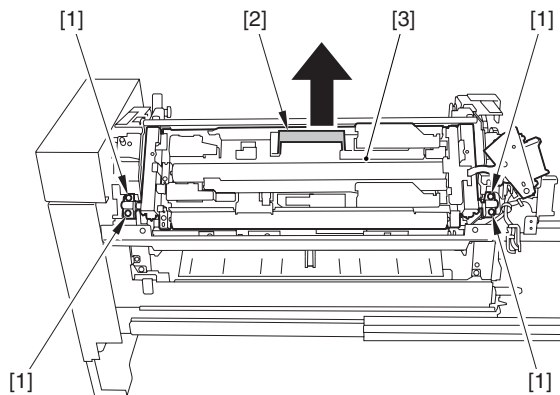
F-9-159

8) Remove the 2 screws [1] and free the harness [2] from the harness guide [3].



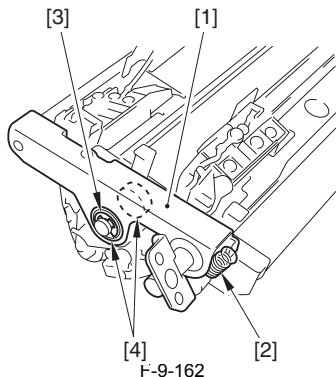
F-9-160

9) Remove the 4 screws [1] and then, lift to remove the outside heat roller unit [3] with holding the grip [2].



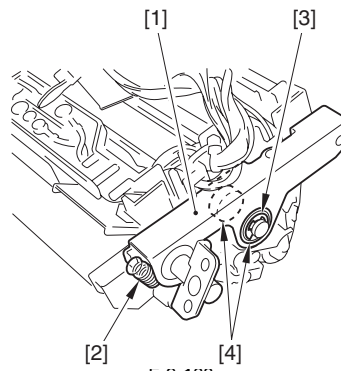
F-9-161

10) Remove the pressure arm (front) [1].
 - 1 spring [2] (upper only)
 - 1 E-ring [3]
 - 2 bearings [4]



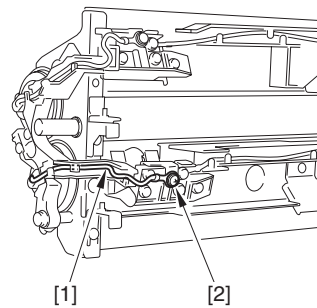
F-9-162

11) Remove the pressure arm (rear) [1].
 - 1 spring [2] (upper only)
 - 1 E-ring [3]
 - 2 bearings [4]



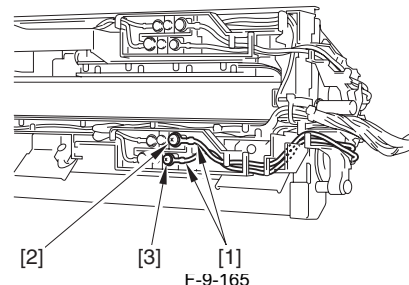
F-9-163

12) Free the cable [1] from the cable guide.
 - 1 screw (M3) [2]




F-9-164

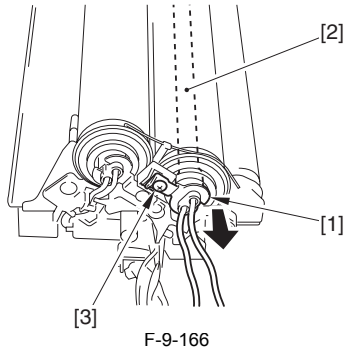
13) Free the 2 cables [1] from the cable guide.
 - 1 screw (M4) [2]
 - 1 screw (M3) [3]



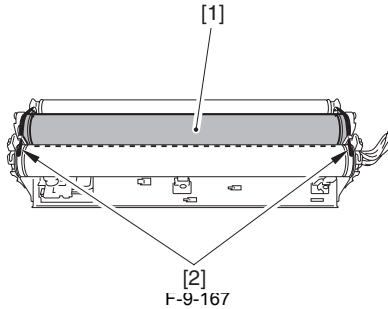
F-9-165

14) Turn over the primary fixing external heat roller unit.
 15) Detach the heater retaining plate [1] and remove the heater [2] to the direction of the arrow.
 - 1 screw [3]

 Be careful not to damage the heater [2] when removing.

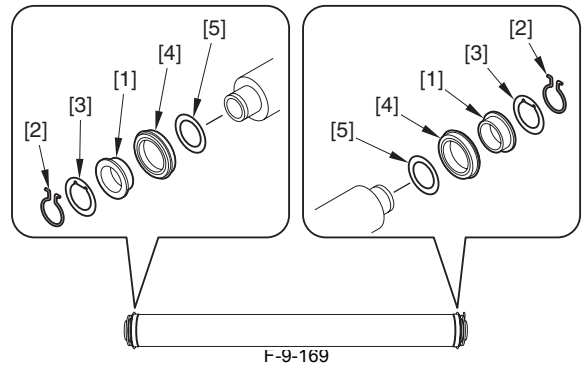


16) Remove the primary fixing external heat roller (lower) [1].
- 2 roller retainers [2]



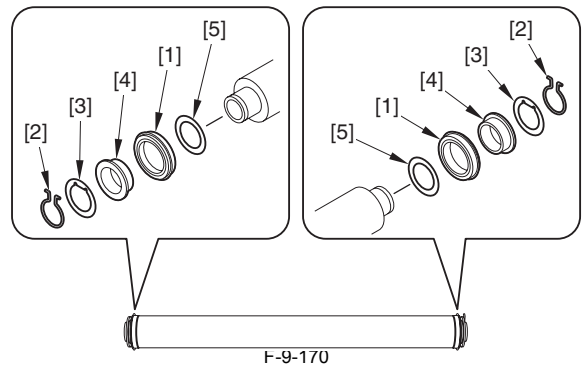
Removing Primary Fixing External Heat Insulating Bush (Lower)

17) Remove the primary fixing external heat insulating bush (Lower) [1].
- 2 stop rings [2]
- 2 spacers [3]
- 2 bearings [4]
- 2 washers [5]



Removing Primary Fixing External Heat Bearing (Lower)

17) Remove the primary fixing external heat bearing (Lower) [1].
- 2 stop rings [2]
- 2 spacers [3]
- 2 bushings [4]
- 2 washers [5]



Removing Primary Fixing External Heat Roller (Lower)

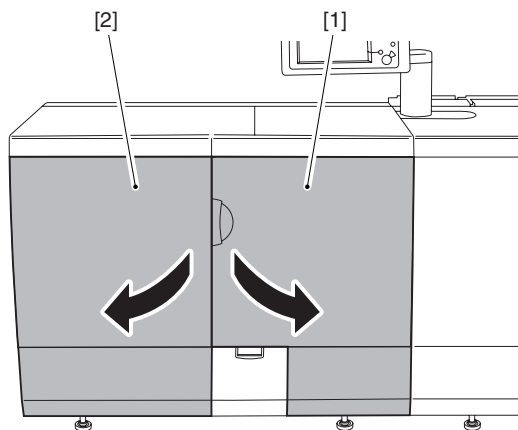
17) Remove the following parts from the primary fixing external heat roller (Lower) [1].
- 2 stop rings [2]
- 2 spacers [3]
- 2 bushings [4]
- 2 bearings [5]
- 2 washers [6]

⚠ Points to note when attaching
Attach it with placing the bearing flange [1] outer side of the plate [2].

9.7.7.3 Removing Secondary Fixing External Heat Roller (Upper), Secondary Fixing External Heat Insulating Bush (Upper) and Secondary Fixing External Heat Bearing (Upper)

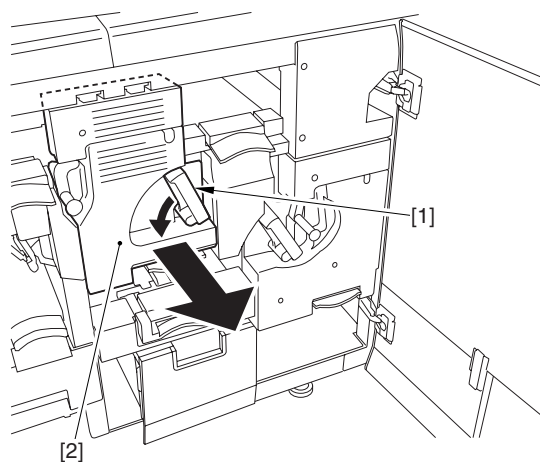
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

1) Open fully the right front cover [1] and the left front cover [2] of the sub station in this order.



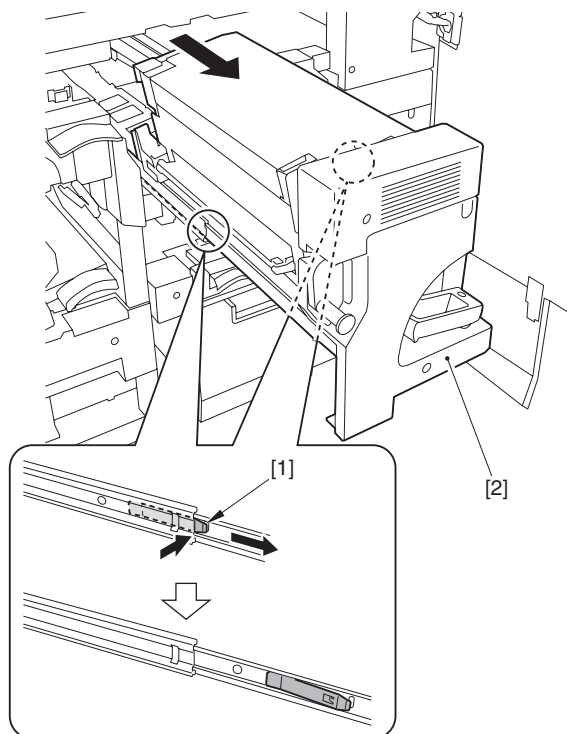
F-9-171

- 2) Release the release lever [1] in the direction of the arrow, and slide out the fixing assembly [2].



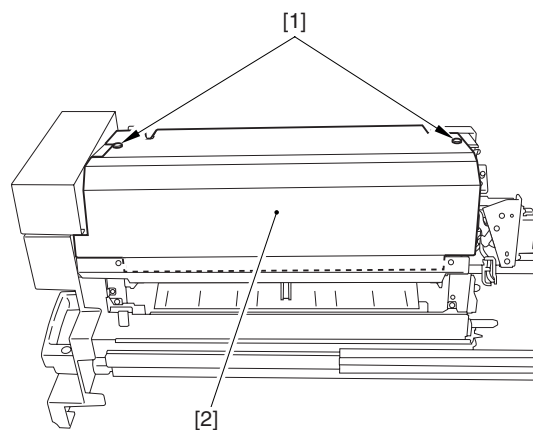
F-9-172

- 3) Release the 2 leaf springs [1] and slide out further the fixing assembly [2].



F-9-173

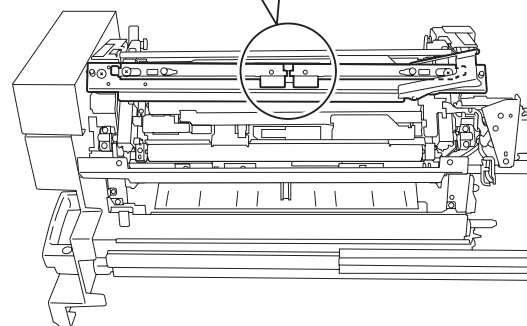
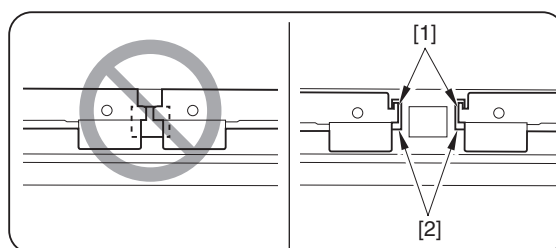
- 4) Loosen the 2 screws [1] to detach the fixing upper cover [2].



F-9-174

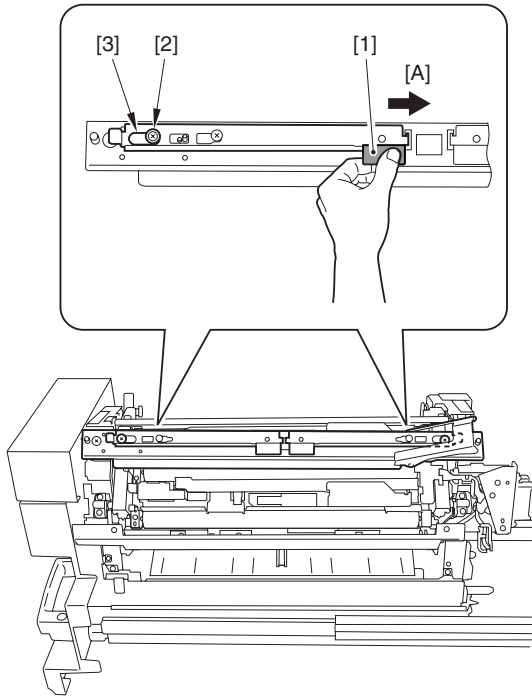
⚠ Points to note when attaching the fixing upper cover

In case of failure to attach the fixing upper cover to the fixing assembly, check the release lever claw [1] on the pressure plate is inserted into the pressure plate hole [2] appropriately.



F-9-175

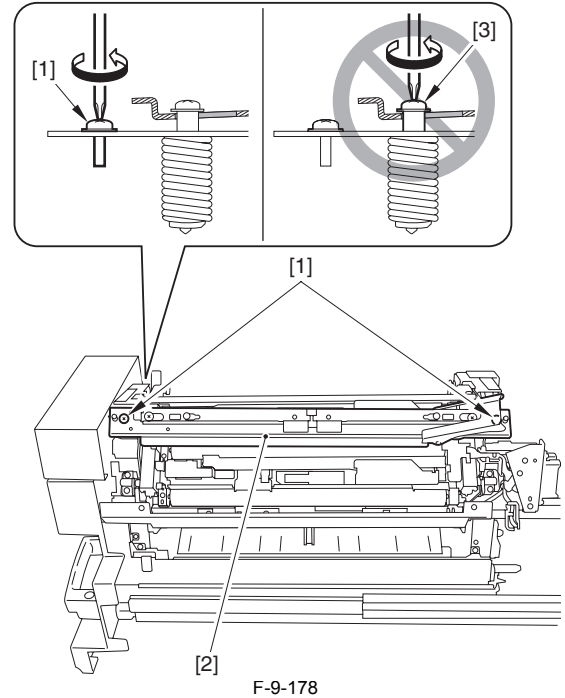
- 5) While pulling up the release lever tub [1], move the release lever in the [A] direction until the screw shaft [2] touches the long hole [3].



F-9-176

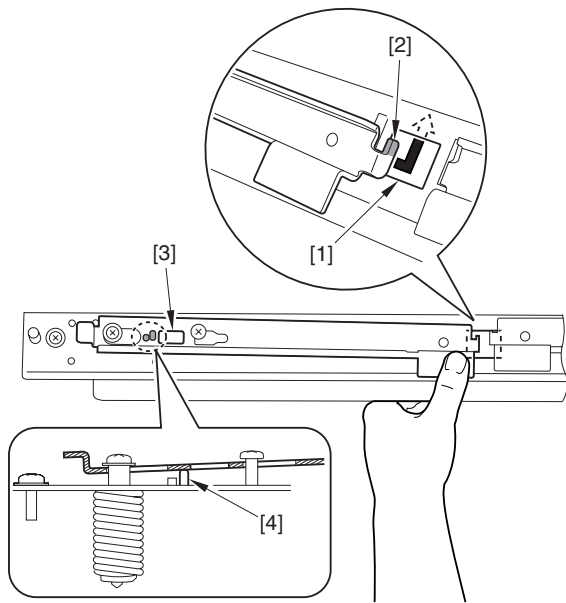
6) Hook the release lever claw [2] onto the pressure plate hole [1] to lock.

! When locking the release lever, see the long hole [3] from above to check the pressure release support shaft [4] cannot be seen.



F-9-178

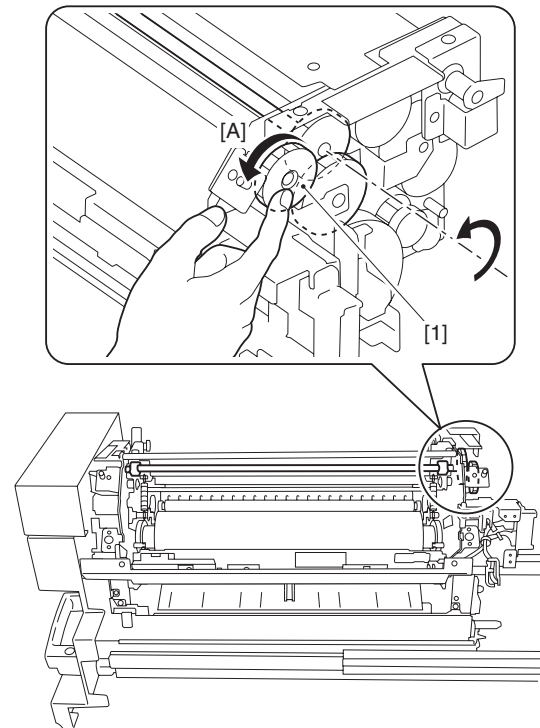
! Points to note when attaching the outside heat pressure plate
 - Before mounting the outside heat roller unit to the fixing assembly, rotate the side of the gear [1] with hand in the [A] direction (counter clockwise) until it stops (approximately 1 full turn).



F-9-177

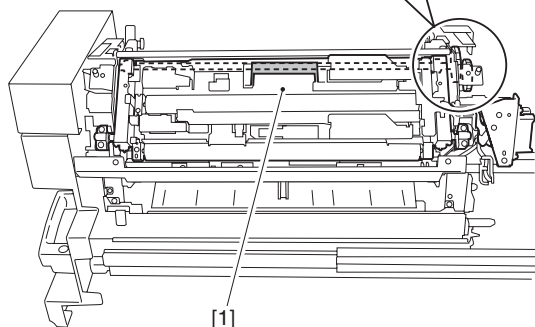
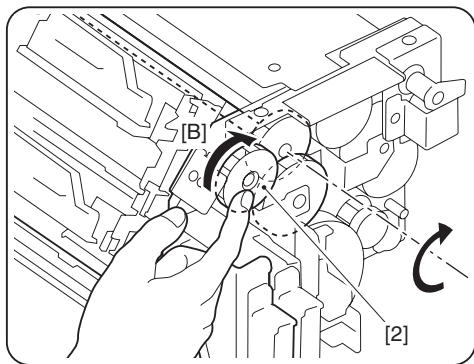
7) Remove the 2 screws [1] and detach the outside heat pressure plate [2].

! The screw [3] on the outside heat pressure shaft MUST NOT be rotated.



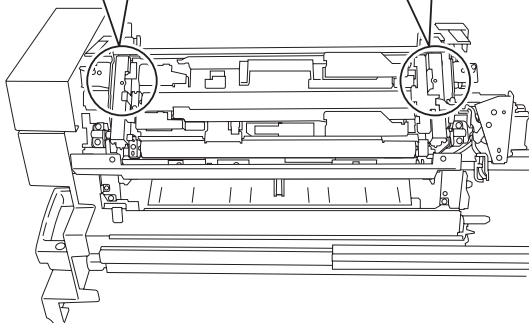
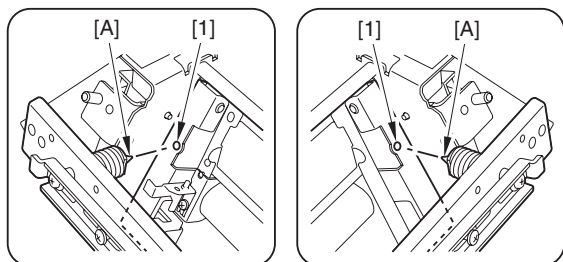
F-9-179

- After mounting the outside heat unit [1] to the fixing assembly, rotate the side of the gear [2] with hand in the [B] direction (clockwise) until the gear [2] stops (approximately 3/4-turn) and thus, outside heat roller unit is separated from the fixing roller.



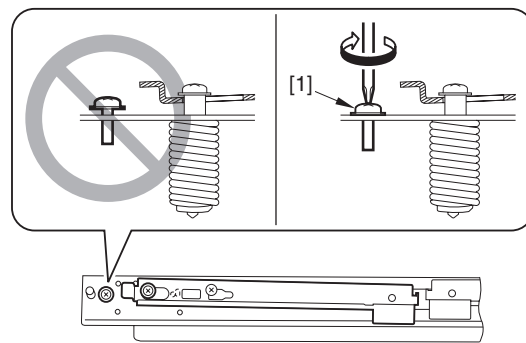
F-9-180

- Mount the leading edge [A] of the outside heat pressure shaft into the outside heat unit hole [1].



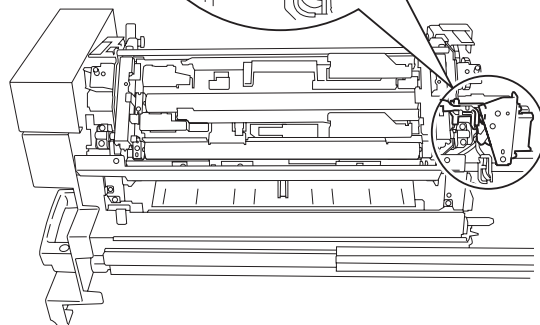
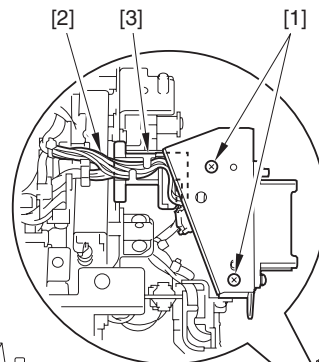
F-9-181

- When attaching the pressure plate, tighten the screw [1] firmly until it stops.



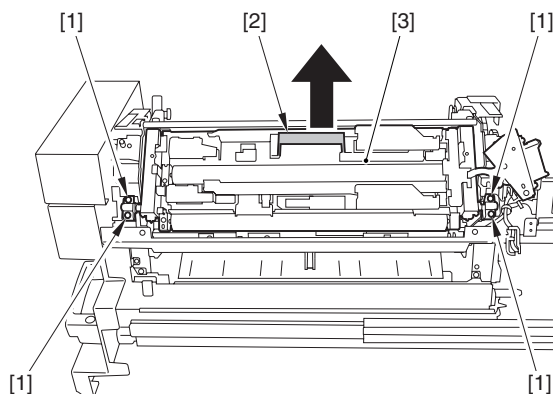
F-9-182

8) Remove the 2 screws [1] and free the harness [2] from the harness guide [3].



F-9-183

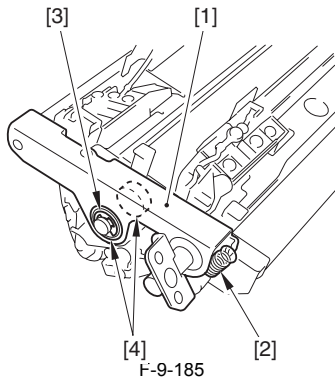
9) Remove the 4 screws [1] and then, lift to remove the outside heat roller unit [3] with holding the grip [2].



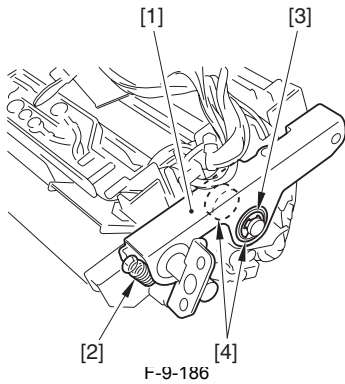
F-9-184

10) Remove the pressure arm (front) [1].

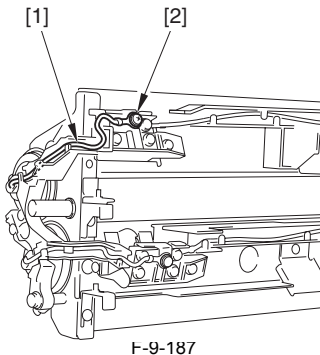
- 1 spring [2] (upper only)
- 1 E-ring [3]
- 2 bearings [4]



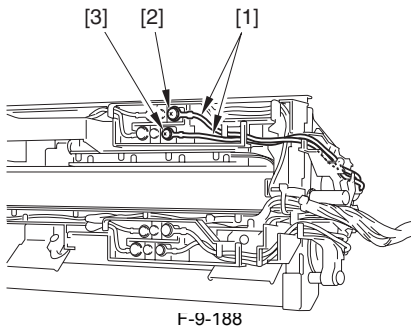
- 11) Remove the pressure arm (rear) [1].
 - 1 spring [2] (upper only)
 - 1 E-ring [3]
 - 2 bearings [4]



- 12) Free the cable [1] from the cable guide.
 - 1 screw (M3) [2]

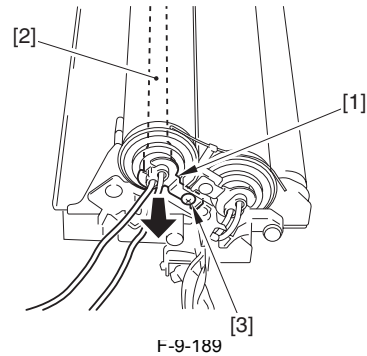


- 13) Free the 2 cables [1] from the cable guide.
 - 1 screw (M4) [2]
 - 1 screw (M3) [3]

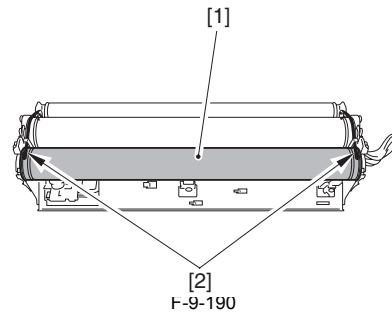


- 14) Turn over the secondary fixing external heat roller unit.
 15) Detach the heater retaining plate [1] and remove the heater [2] to the direction of the arrow.
 - 1 screw [3]

⚠ Be careful not to damage the heater [2] when removing.



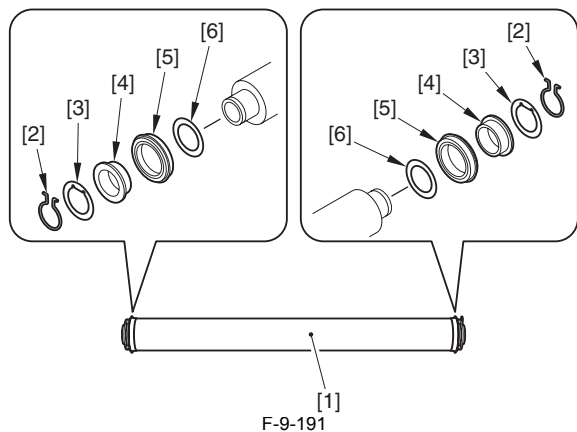
- 16) Remove the secondary fixing external heat roller (upper) [1].
 - 2 roller retainers [2]



⚠ Points to note when attaching
 Attach it with placing the bearing flange [1] outer side of the plate [2].

Removing Secondary Fixing External Heat Roller (Upper)

- 17) Remove the following parts from the secondary fixing external heat roller (upper) [1].
 - 2 stop rings [2]
 - 2 spacers [3]
 - 2 bushings [4]
 - 2 bearings [5]
 - 2 washers [6]

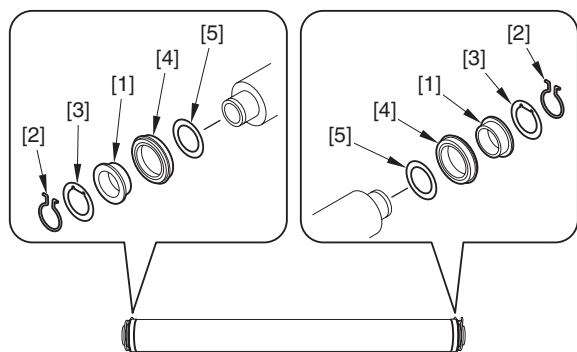


F-9-191

Removing Secondary Fixing External Heat Insulating Bush (Upper)

17) Remove the secondary fixing external heat insulating bush (upper) [1].

- 2 stop rings [2]
- 2 spacers [3]
- 2 bearings [4]
- 2 washers [5]

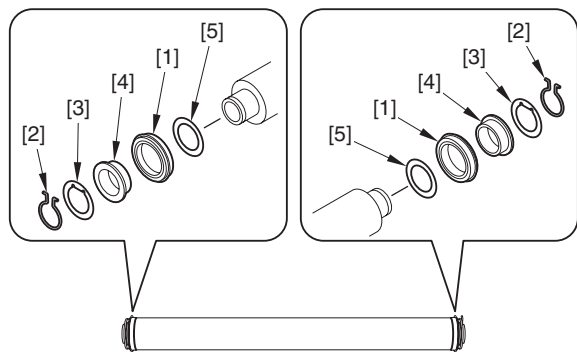


F-9-192

Removing Secondary Fixing External Heat Bearing (Upper)

17) Remove the secondary fixing external heat bearing (upper) [1].

- 2 stop rings [2]
- 2 spacers [3]
- 2 bushings [4]
- 2 washers [5]

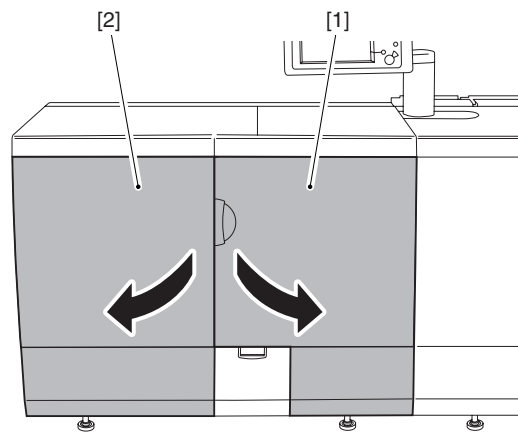


F-9-193

9.7.7.4 Removing Secondary Fixing External Heat Roller (Lower), Secondary Fixing External Heat Insulating Bush (Lower) and Secondary Fixing External Heat Bearing (Lower)

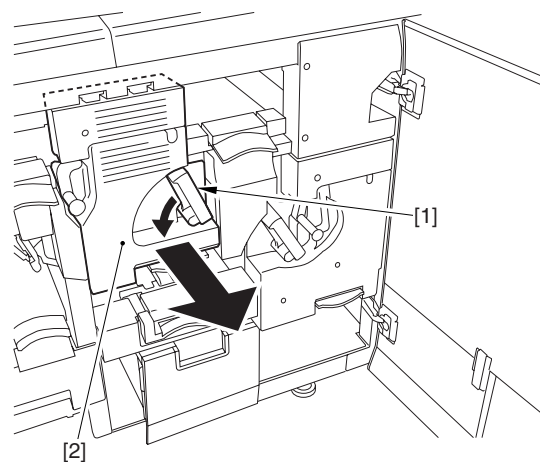
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

1) Open fully the right front cover [1] and the left front cover [2] of the sub station in this order.



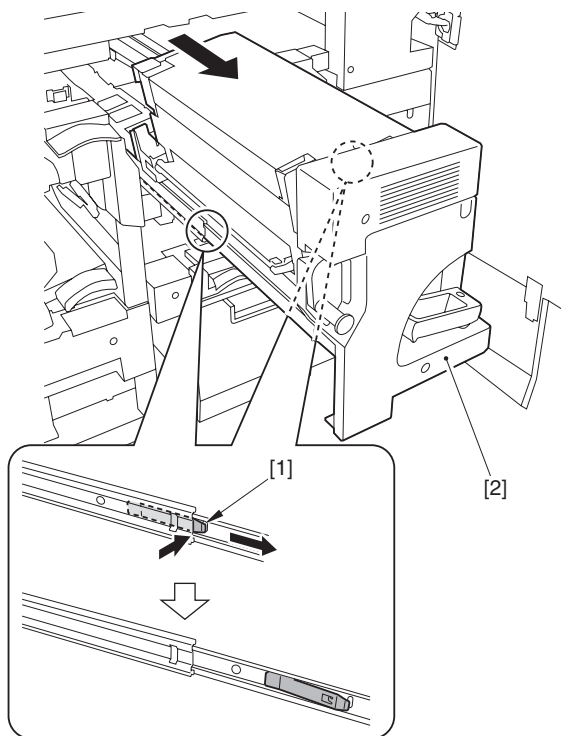
F-9-194

2) Release the release lever [1] in the direction of the arrow, and slide out the fixing assembly [2].



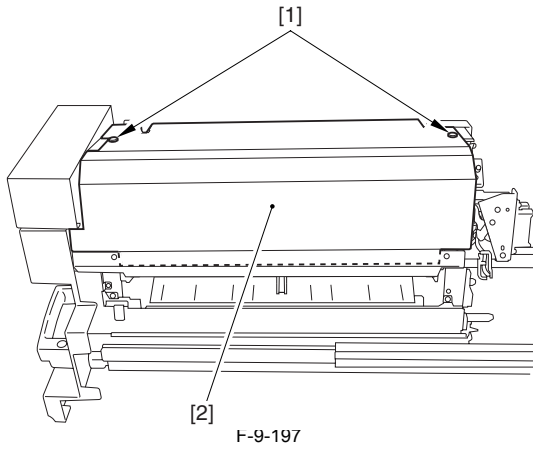
F-9-195

3) Release the 2 leaf springs [1] and slide out further the fixing assembly [2].



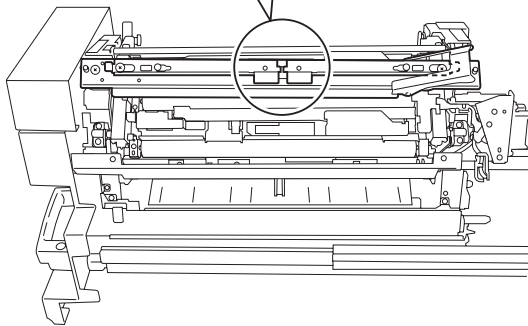
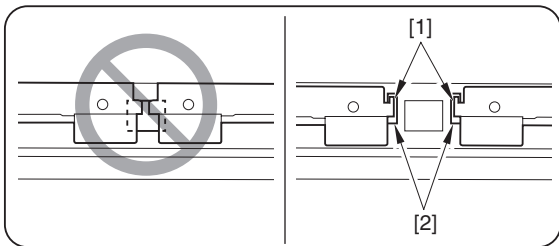
F-9-196

4) Loosen the 2 screws [1] to detach the fixing upper cover [2].



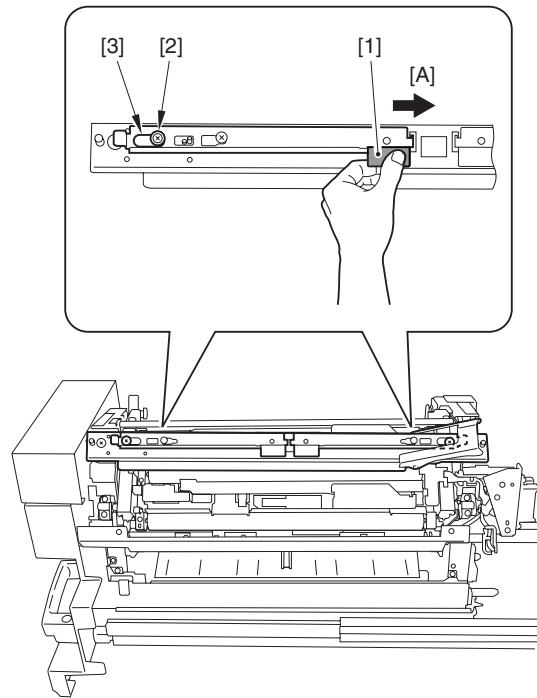
F-9-197

⚠ Points to note when attaching the fixing upper cover
 In case of failure to attach the fixing upper cover to the fixing assembly, check the release lever claw [1] on the pressure plate is inserted into the pressure plate hole [2] appropriately.



F-9-198

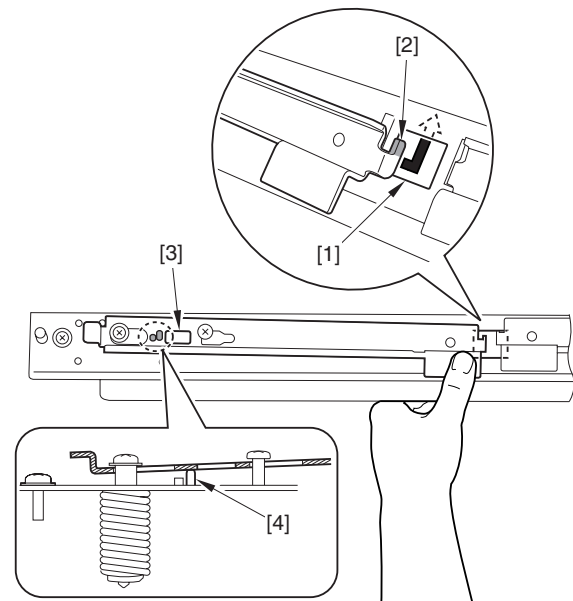
5) While pulling up the release lever tub [1], move the release lever in the [A] direction until the screw shaft [2] touches the long hole [3].



F-9-199

6) Hook the release lever claw [2] onto the pressure plate hole [1] to lock.

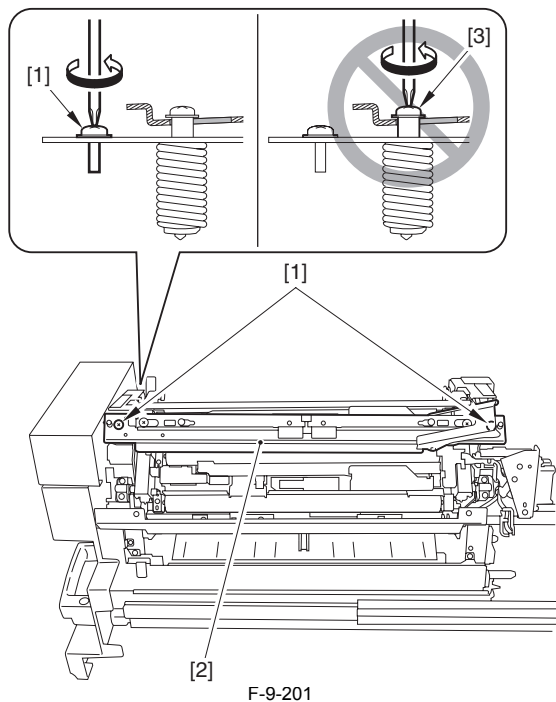
⚠ When locking the release lever, see the long hole [3] from above to check the pressure release support shaft [4] cannot be seen.



F-9-200

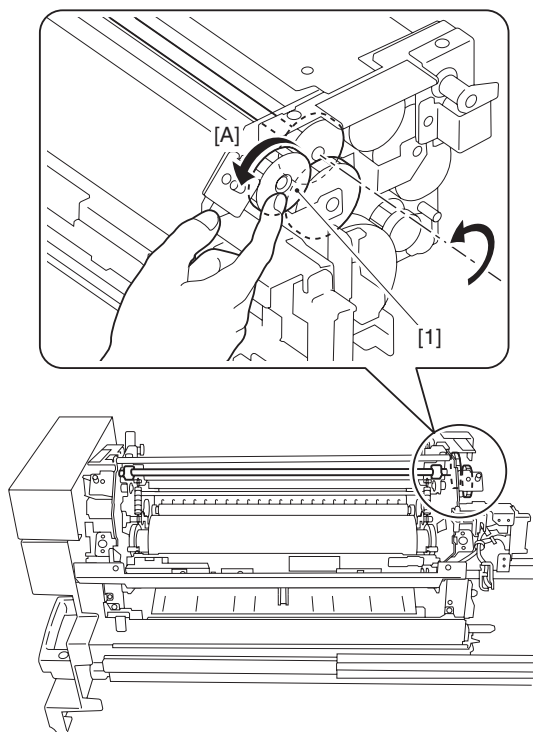
7) Remove the 2 screws [1] and detach the outside heat pressure plate [2].

⚠ The screw [3] on the outside heat pressure shaft **MUST NOT** be rotated.



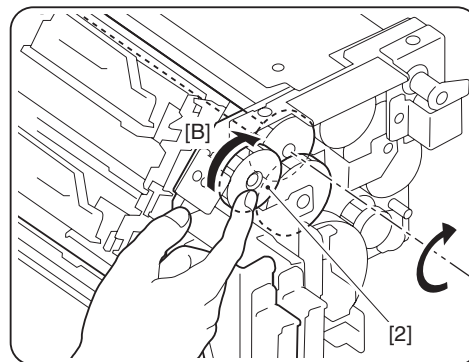
F-9-201

⚠ Points to note when attaching the outside heat pressure plate
 - Before mounting the outside heat roller unit to the fixing assembly, rotate the side of the gear [1] with hand in the [A] direction (counter clockwise) until it stops (approximately 1 full turn).



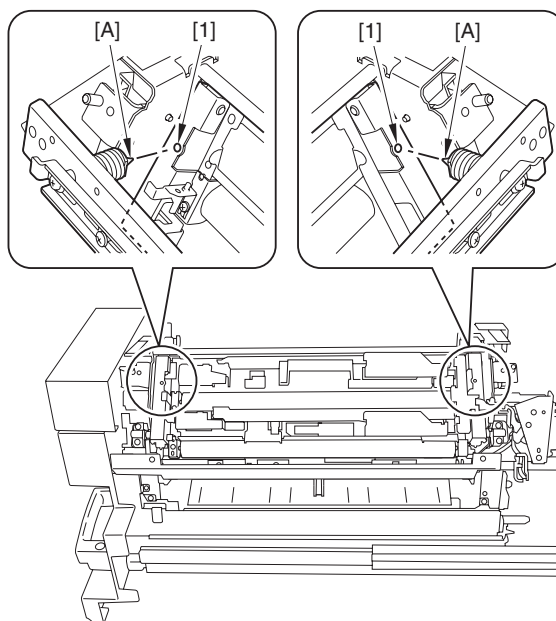
F-9-202

- After mounting the outside heat unit [1] to the fixing assembly, rotate the side of the gear [2] with hand in the [B] direction (clockwise) until the gear [2] stops (approximately 3/4-turn) and thus, outside heat roller unit is separated from the fixing roller.



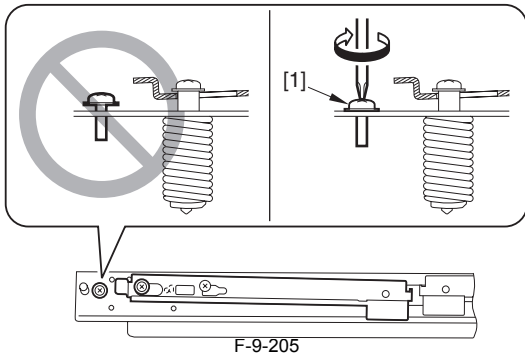
F-9-203

- Mount the leading edge [A] of the outside heat pressure shaft into the outside heat unit hole [1].

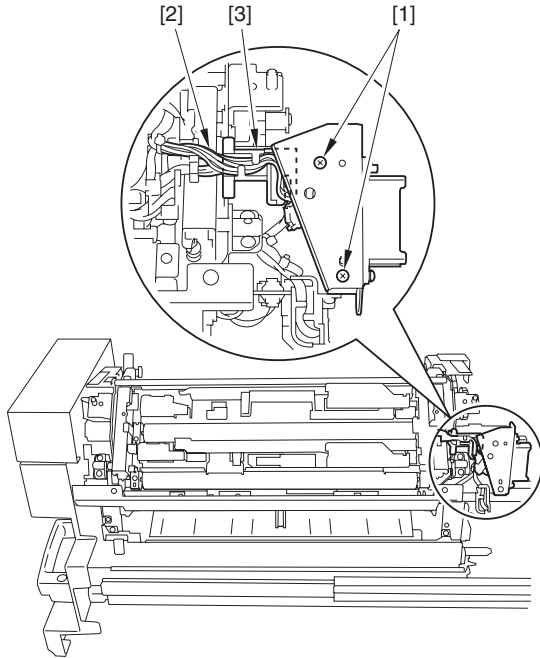


F-9-204

- When attaching the pressure plate, tighten the screw [1] firmly until it stops.

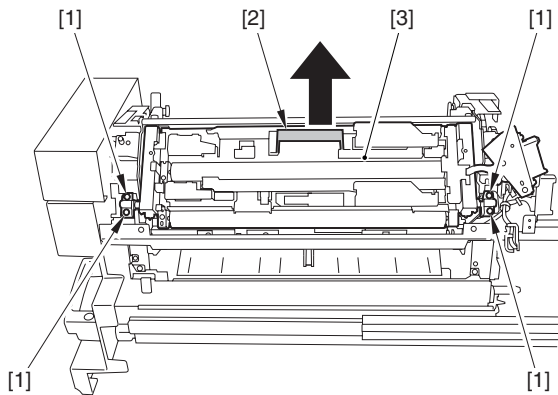


8) Remove the 2 screws [1] and free the harness [2] from the harness guide [3].



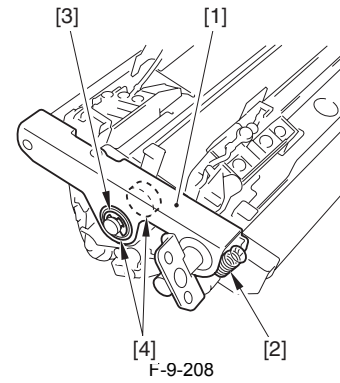
F-9-206

9) Remove the 4 screws [1] and then, lift to remove the outside heat roller unit [3] with holding the grip [2].



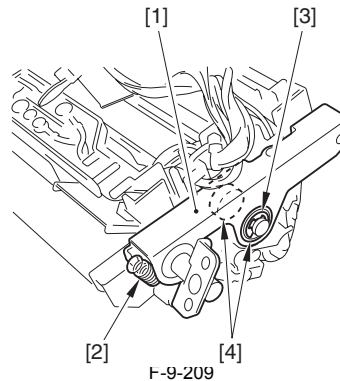
F-9-207

10) Remove the pressure arm (front) [1].
 - 1 spring [2] (upper only)
 - 1 E-ring [3]
 - 2 bearings [4]



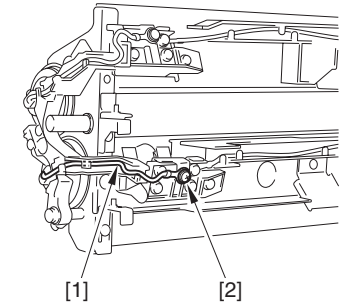
F-9-208

11) Remove the pressure arm (rear) [1].
 - 1 spring [2] (upper only)
 - 1 E-ring [3]
 - 2 bearings [4]



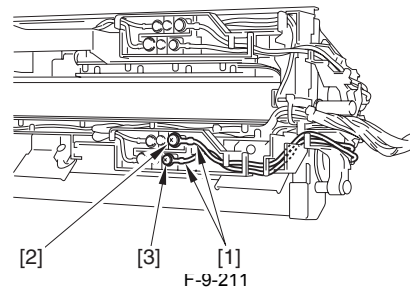
F-9-209

12) Free the cable [1] from the cable guide.
 - 1 screw (M3) [2]



F-9-210

13) Free the 2 cables [1] from the cable guide.
 - 1 screw (M4) [2]
 - 1 screw (M3) [3]

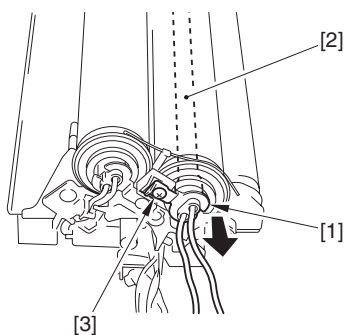


F-9-211

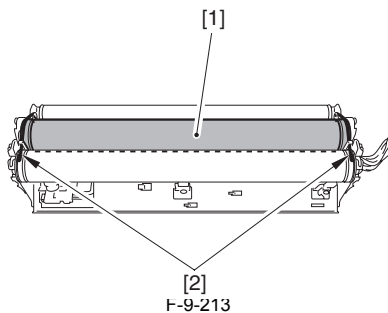
14) Turn over the secondary fixing external heat roller unit.
 15) Detach the heater retaining plate [1] and remove the heater [2] to the direction of the arrow.
 - 1 screw [3]



Be careful not to damage the heater [2] when removing.

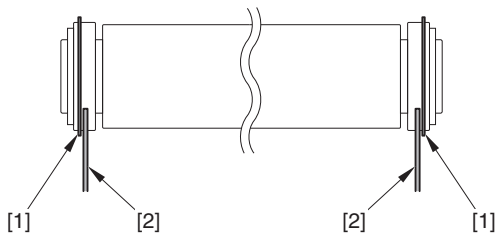


- 16) Remove the secondary fixing external heat roller (lower) [1].
- 2 roller retainers [2]



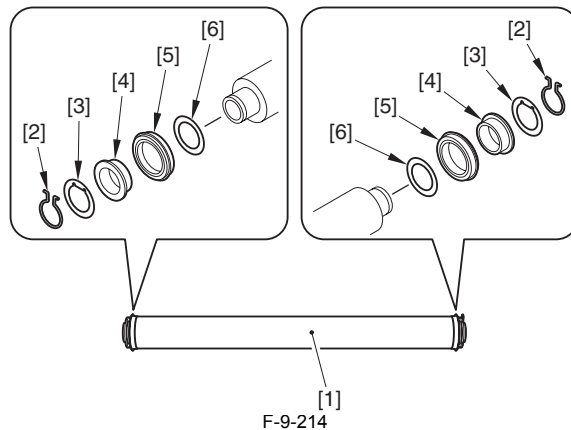
Points to note when attaching

Attach it with placing the bearing flange [1] outer side of the plate [2].



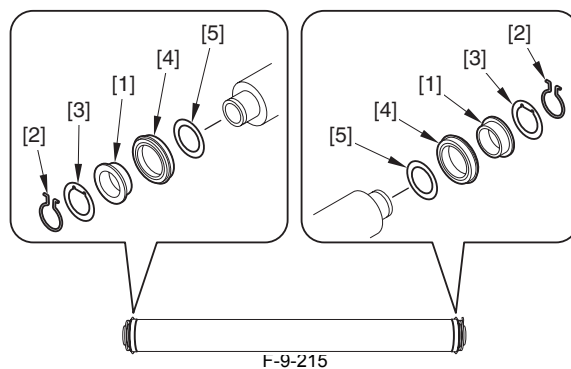
Removing Secondary Fixing External Heat Roller (Lower)

- 17) Remove the following parts from the secondary fixing external heat roller (Lower) [1].
- 2 stop rings [2]
- 2 spacers [3]
- 2 bushings [4]
- 2 bearings [5]
- 2 washers [6]



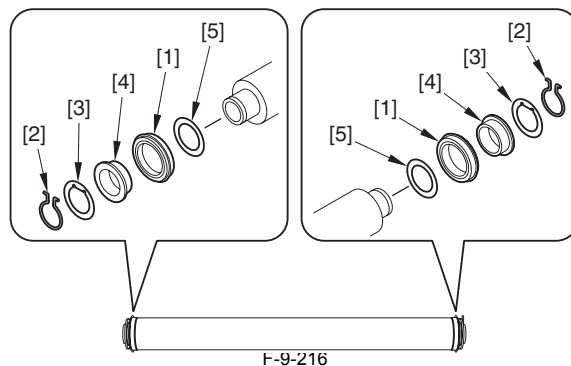
Removing Secondary Fixing External Heat Insulating Bush (Lower)

- 17) Remove the secondary fixing external heat insulating bush (Lower) [1].
- 2 stop rings [2]
- 2 spacers [3]
- 2 bearings [4]
- 2 washers [5]



Removing Secondary Fixing External Heat Bearing (Lower)

- 17) Remove the secondary fixing external heat bearing (Lower) [1].
- 2 stop rings [2]
- 2 spacers [3]
- 2 bushings [4]
- 2 washers [5]



9.7.8 Oil Applying Roller

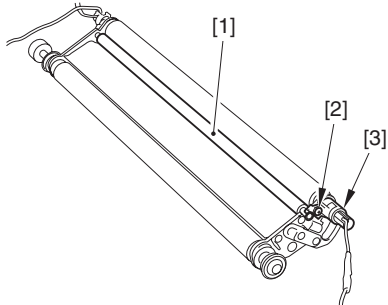
9.7.8.1 Removing Oil-Coated Roller

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- 1) Remove the fixing belt.
- 2) Remove the fixing belt unit from the sub station inner cover 1, and place it on a paper.

⚠ Be sure to cover the fixing belt unit with a paper, and not to touch the roller with bare hands.

- 3) Remove the oil-coated roller [1].
 - 1 screw [2]
 - 1 contact cover [3]



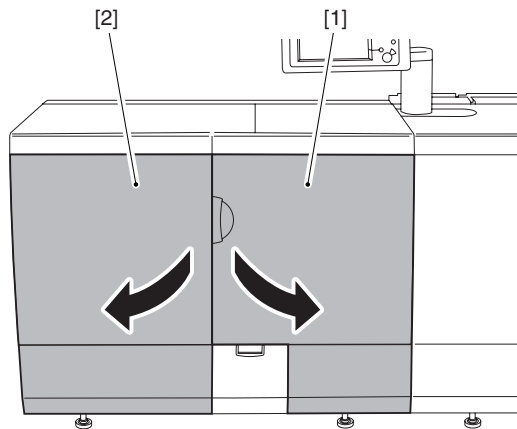
F-9-217

9.7.9 External Heat Cleaning Roller

9.7.9.1 Removing Primary Fixing External Heat Cleaning Roller

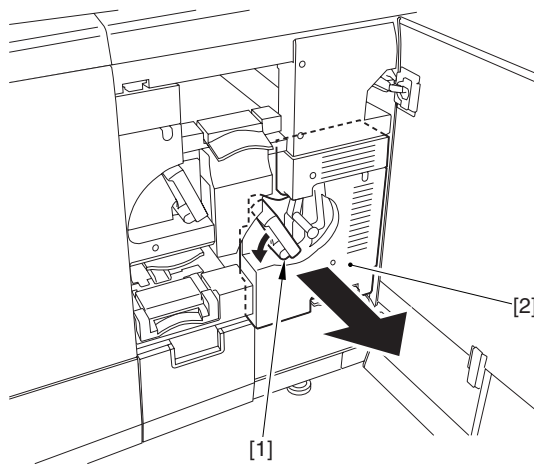
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- 1) Open fully the right front cover [1] and the left front cover [2] of the sub station in this order.



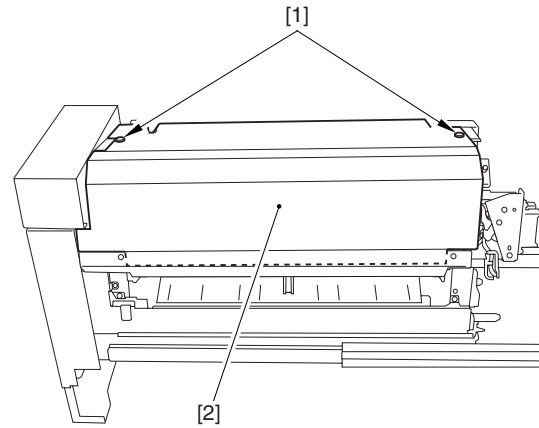
F-9-218

- 2) Release the release lever [1] in the direction of the arrow, and slide out the fixing assembly [2].



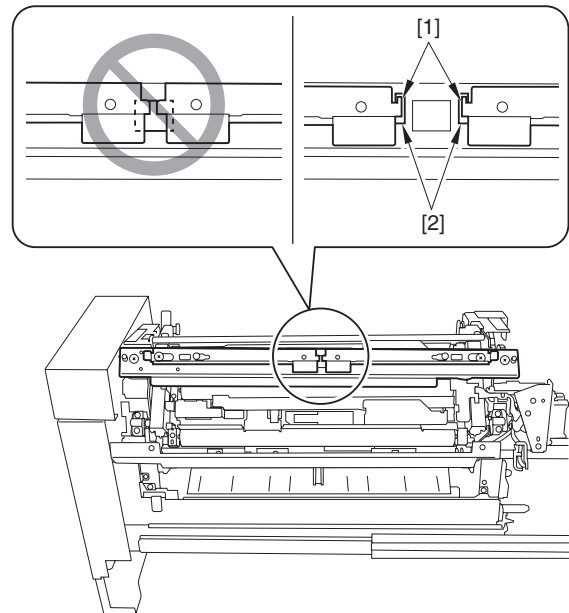
F-9-219

- 3) Loosen the 2 screws [1] to detach the fixing upper cover [2].



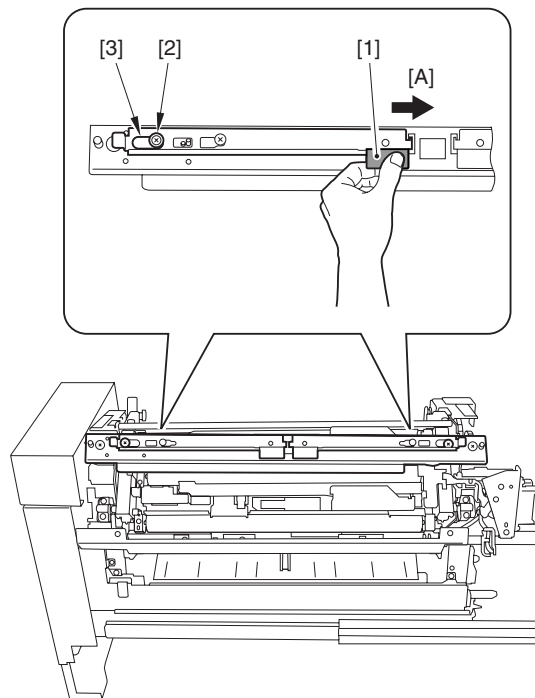
F-9-220

⚠ Points to note when attaching the fixing upper cover
 In case of failure to attach the fixing upper cover to the fixing assembly, check the release lever claw [1] on the pressure plate is inserted into the pressure plate hole [2] appropriately.



F-9-221

- 4) While pulling up the release lever tub [1], move the release lever in the [A] direction until the screw shaft [2] touches the long hole [3].

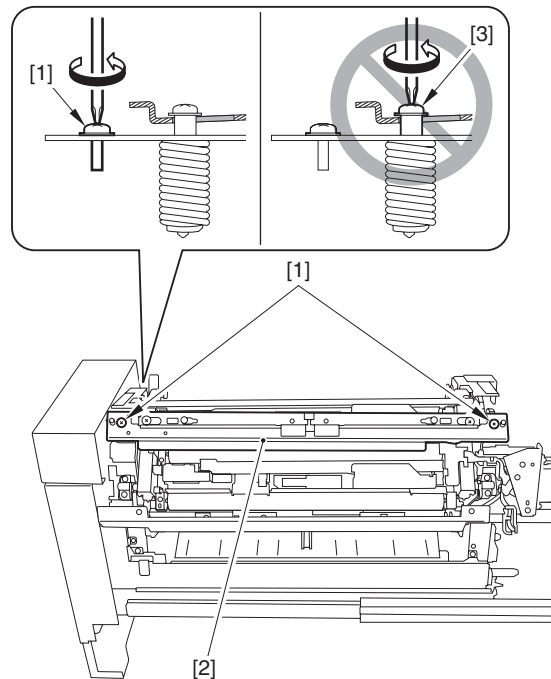


F-9-222

5) Hook the release lever claw [2] onto the pressure plate hole [1] to lock.

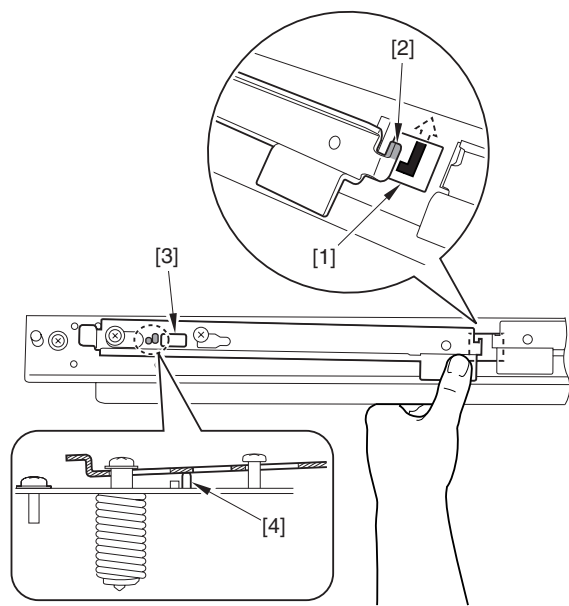


When locking the release lever, see the long hole [3] from above to check the pressure release support shaft [4] cannot be seen.



F-9-224

⚠ Points to note when attaching the outside heat pressure plate
 - Before mounting the outside heat roller unit to the fixing assembly, rotate the side of the gear [1] with hand in the [A] direction (counter clockwise) until it stops (approximately 1 full turn).

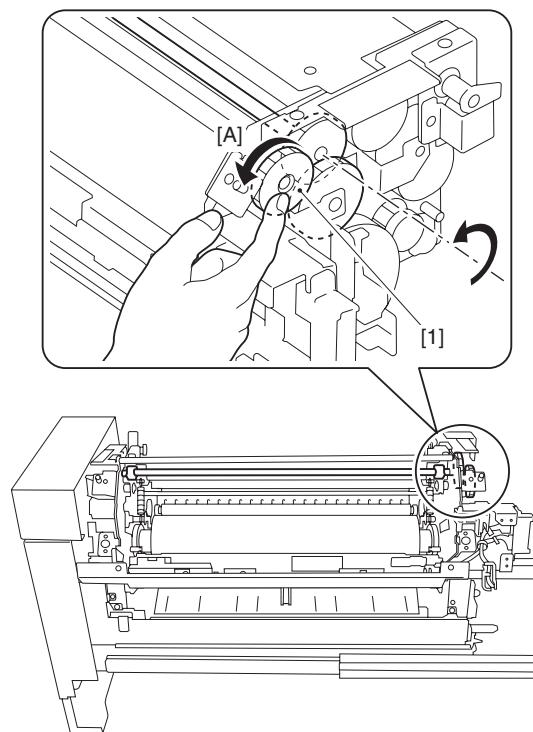


F-9-223

6) Remove the 2 screws [1] and detach the outside heat pressure plate [2].

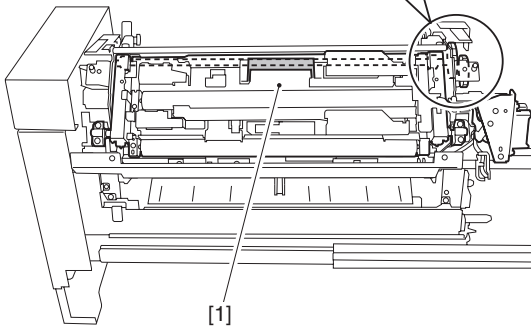
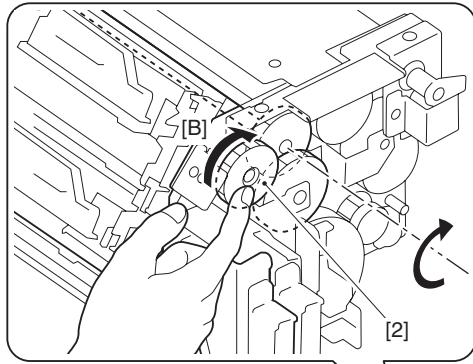


The screw [3] on the outside heat pressure shaft **MUST NOT** be rotated.



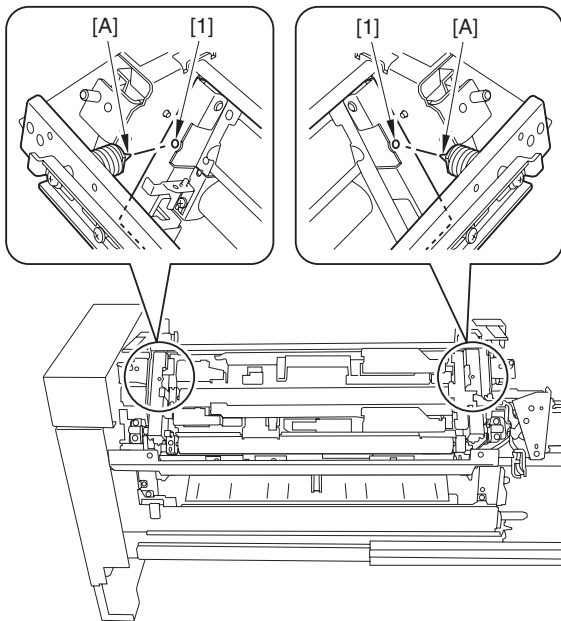
F-9-225

- After mounting the outside heat unit [1] to the fixing assembly, rotate the side of the gear [2] with hand in the [B] direction (clockwise) until the gear [2] stops (approximately 3/4-turn) and thus, outside heat roller unit is separated from the fixing roller.



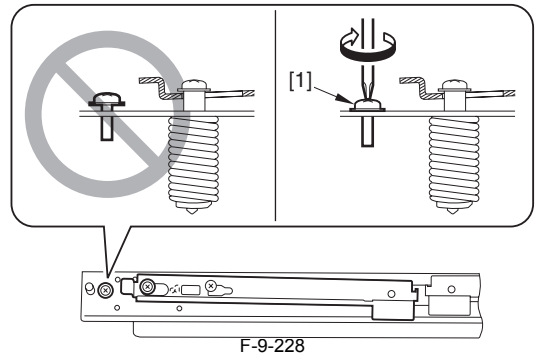
F-9-226

- Mount the leading edge [A] of the outside heat pressure shaft into the outside heat unit hole [1].



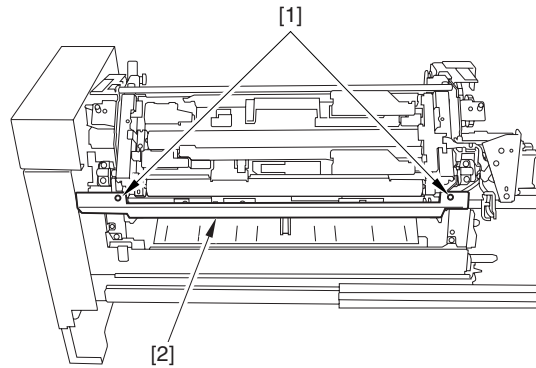
F-9-227

- When attaching the pressure plate, tighten the screw [1] firmly until it stops.



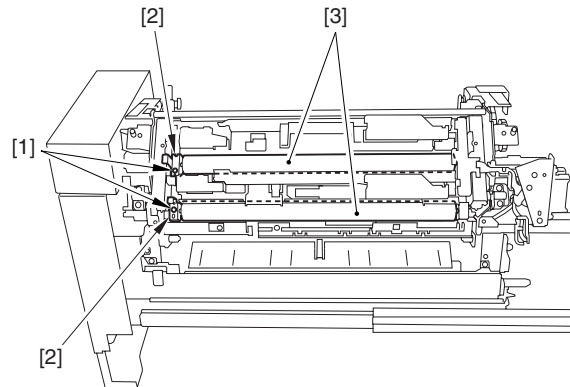
F-9-228

7) Remove the 2 screws [1] to detach the fixing right cover [2].



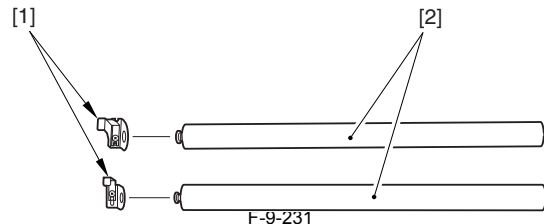
F-9-229

8) Loosen the 2 screws [1] to remove the bushing [2] and the 2 outside heat cleaning rollers [3].



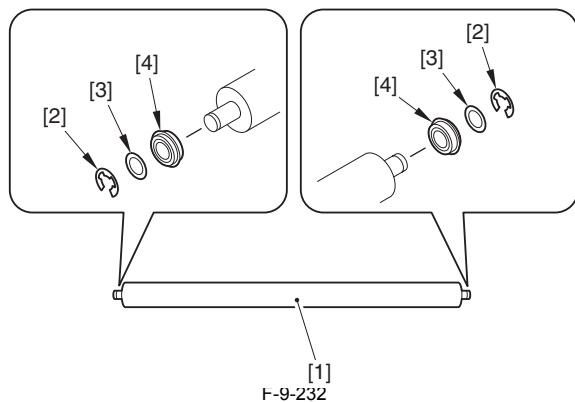
F-9-230

9) Remove the bushing [1] from the outside heat cleaning roller [2].



F-9-231

10) Remove the following parts from the primary fixing external heat cleaning roller [1].
 - 2 E-rings [2]
 - 2 washers [3]
 - 2 bearings [4]

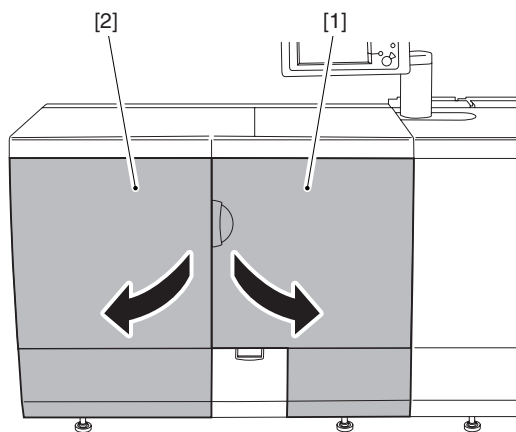


F-9-232

9.7.9.2 Removing Secondary Fixing External Heat Cleaning Roller

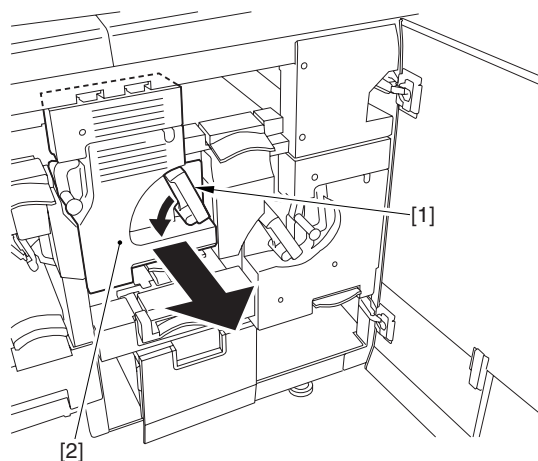
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- 1) Open fully the right front cover [1] and the left front cover [2] of the sub station in this order.



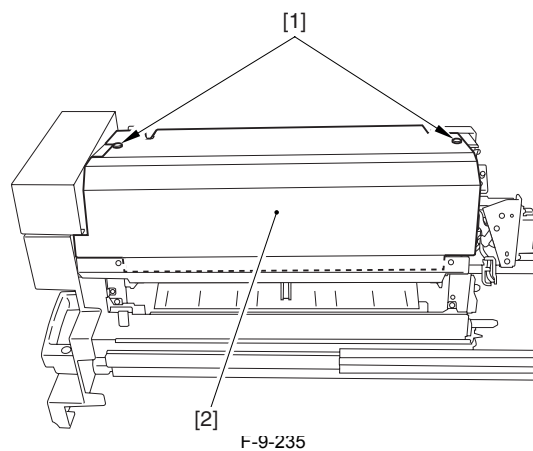
F-9-233

- 2) Release the release lever [1] in the direction of the arrow, and slide out the fixing assembly [2].



F-9-234

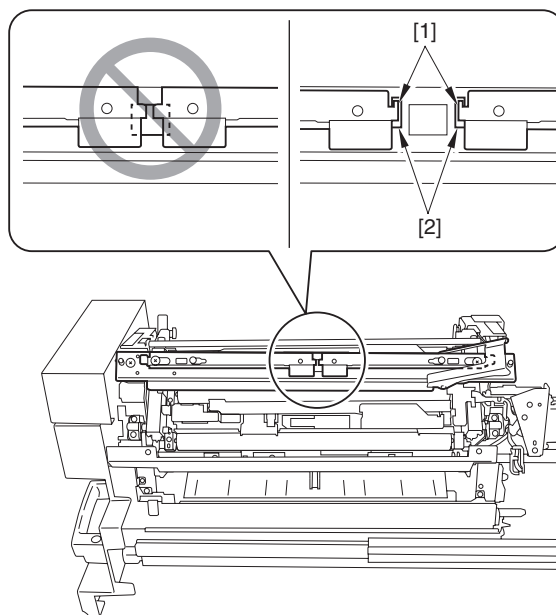
- 3) Loosen the 2 screws [1] to detach the fixing upper cover [2].



F-9-235

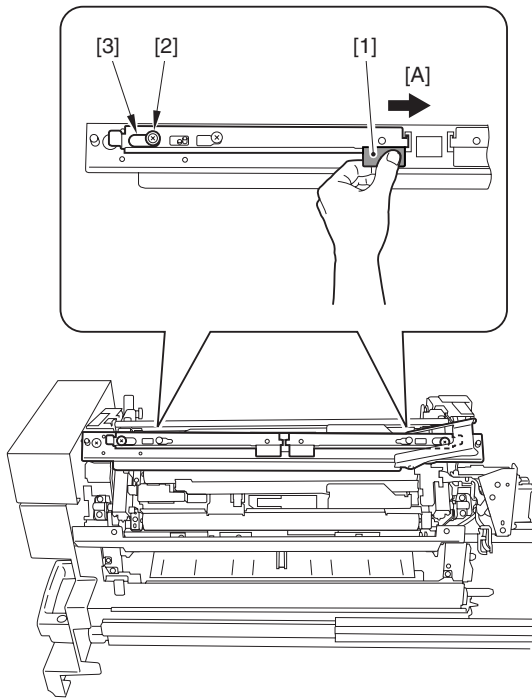
⚠ Points to note when attaching the fixing upper cover

In case of failure to attach the fixing upper cover to the fixing assembly, check the release lever claw [1] on the pressure plate is inserted into the pressure plate hole [2] appropriately.



F-9-236

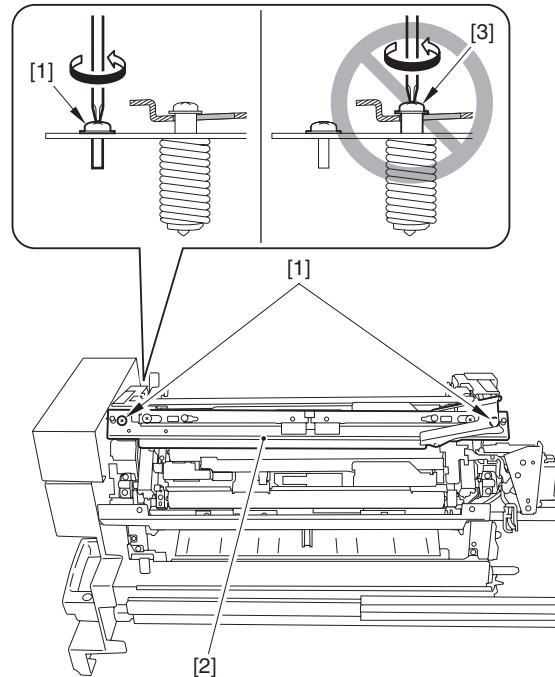
- 4) While pulling up the release lever tub [1], move the release lever in the [A] direction until the screw shaft [2] touches the long hole [3].



F-9-237

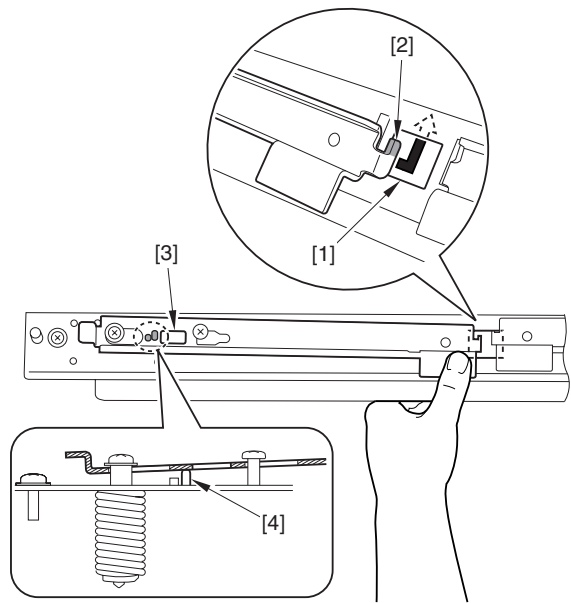
5) Hook the release lever claw [2] onto the pressure plate hole [1] to lock.

! When locking the release lever, see the long hole [3] from above to check the pressure release support shaft [4] cannot be seen.



F-9-239

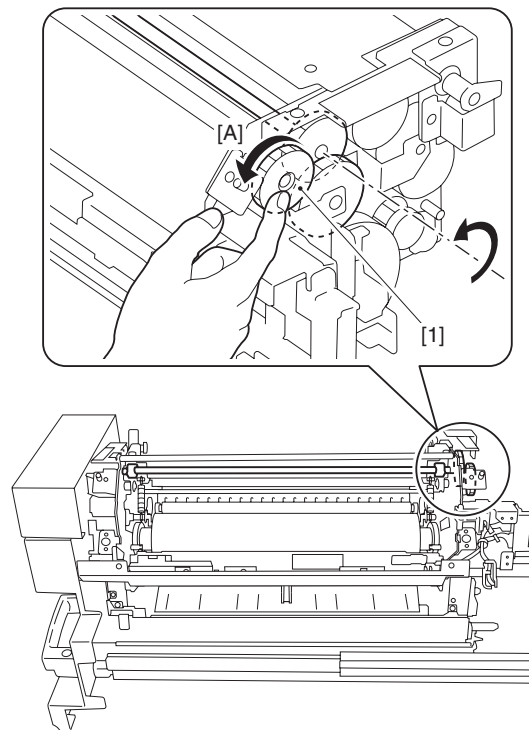
! Points to note when attaching the outside heat pressure plate
 - Before mounting the outside heat roller unit to the fixing assembly, rotate the side of the gear [1] with hand in the [A] direction (counter clockwise) until it stops (approximately 1 full turn).



F-9-238

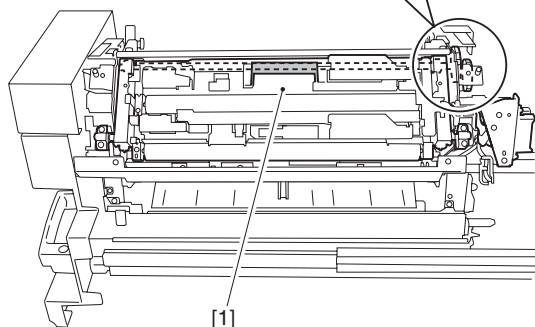
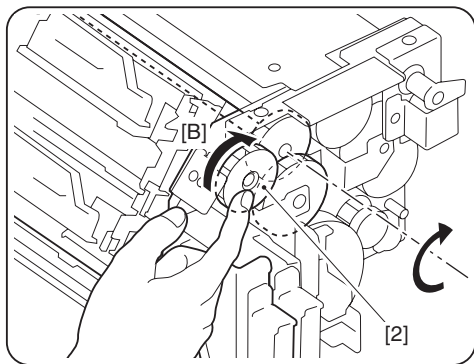
6) Remove the 2 screws [1] and detach the outside heat pressure plate [2].

! The screw [3] on the outside heat pressure shaft MUST NOT be rotated.



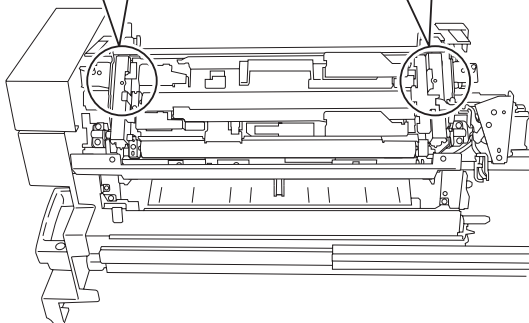
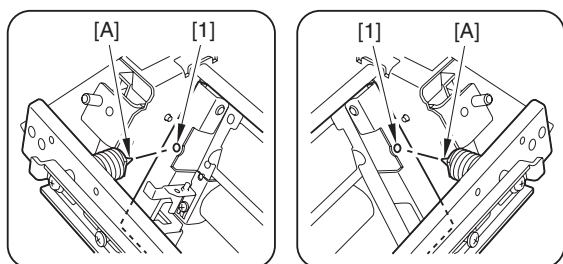
F-9-240

- After mounting the outside heat unit [1] to the fixing assembly, rotate the side of the gear [2] with hand in the [B] direction (clockwise) until the gear [2] stops (approximately 3/4-turn) and thus, outside heat roller unit is separated from the fixing roller.



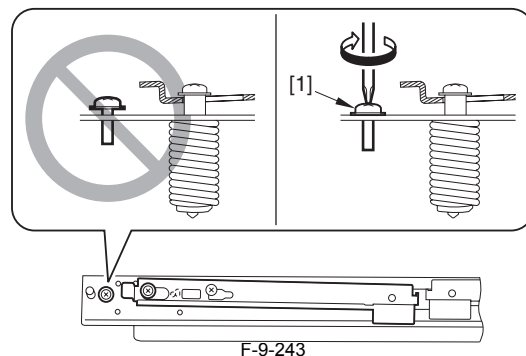
F-9-241

- Mount the leading edge [A] of the outside heat pressure shaft into the outside heat unit hole [1].



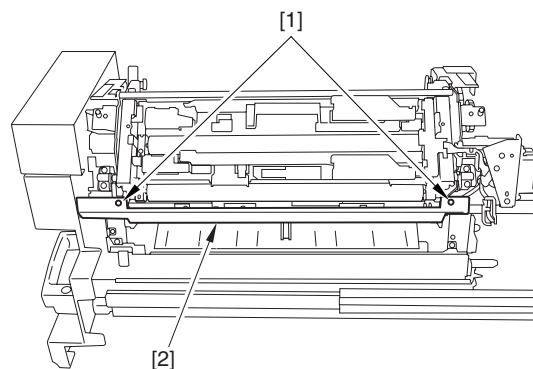
F-9-242

- When attaching the pressure plate, tighten the screw [1] firmly until it stops.



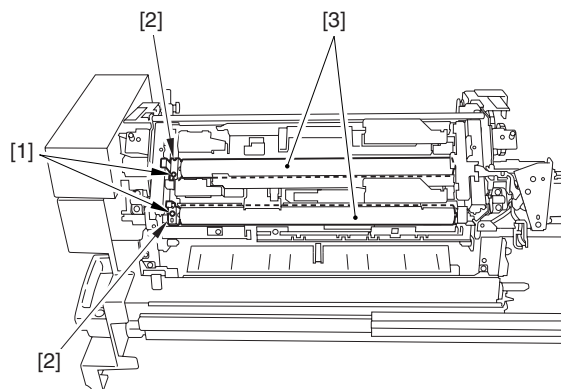
F-9-243

7) Remove the 2 screws [1] to detach the fixing right cover [2].



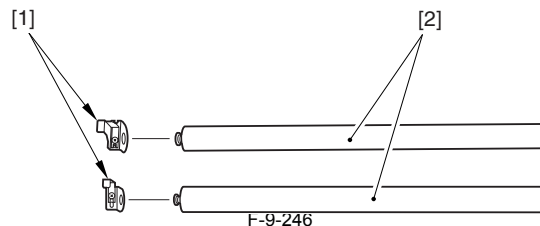
F-9-244

8) Loosen the 2 screws [1] to remove the bushing [2] and the 2 outside heat cleaning rollers [3].



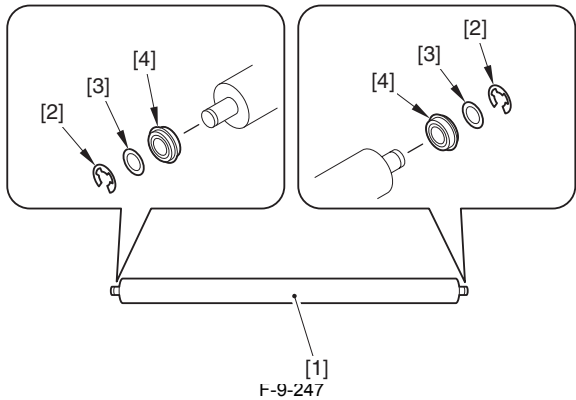
F-9-245

9) Remove the bushing [1] from the outside heat cleaning roller [2].



F-9-246

10) Remove the following parts from the secondary fixing external heat cleaning roller [1].
 - 2 E-rings [2]
 - 2 washers [3]
 - 2 bearings [4]



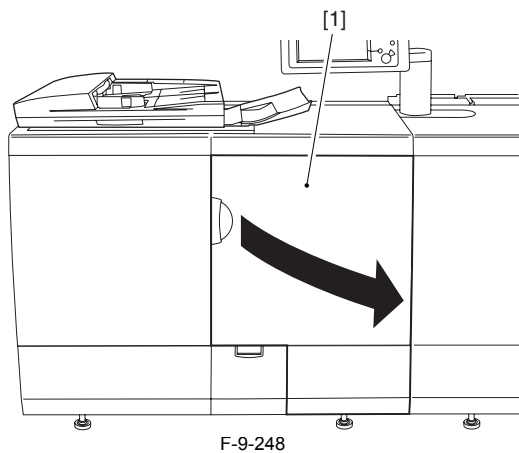
9.7.10 Fixing Web Roller

9.7.10.1 Removing Primary Web Unit

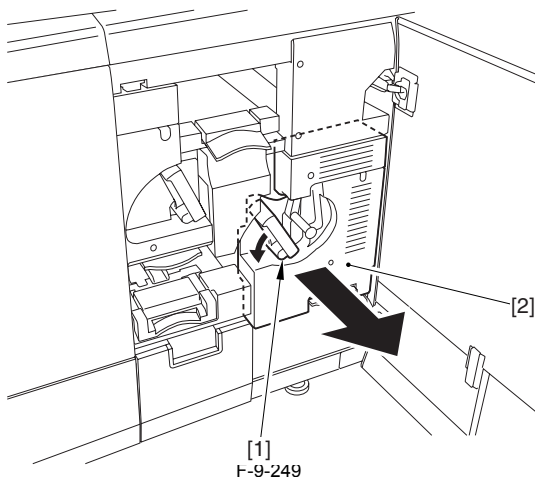
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

⚠ Point to Note When Working with the Fixing Assembly
Be sure to cool down the fixing assembly before starting the work.

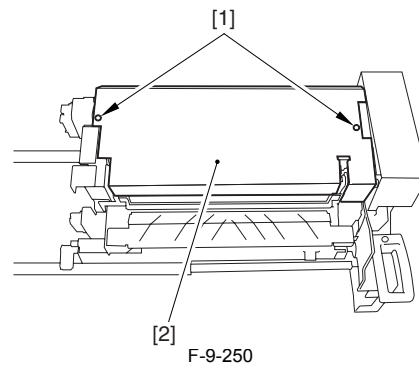
- 1) Open the sub station right front cover [1] fully.



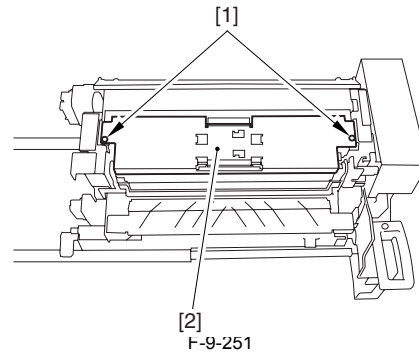
- 2) Shift the lever (C-A4) [1] in the direction of the arrow, and slide out the fixing assembly [2].



- 3) Loosen the 2 screws [1] and detach the fixing upper cover [2].



- 4) Remove the 2 screws [1] and remove the fixing web unit [2].

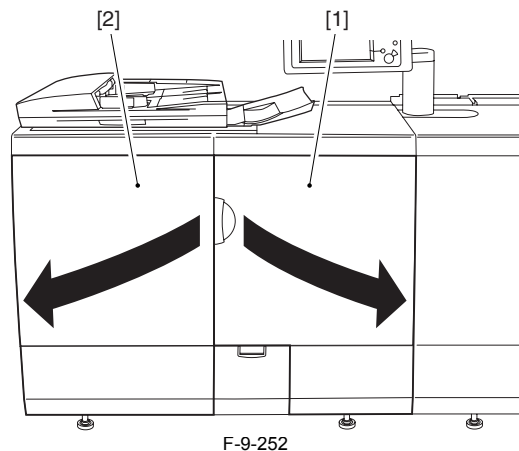


9.7.10.2 Removing Secondary Web Unit

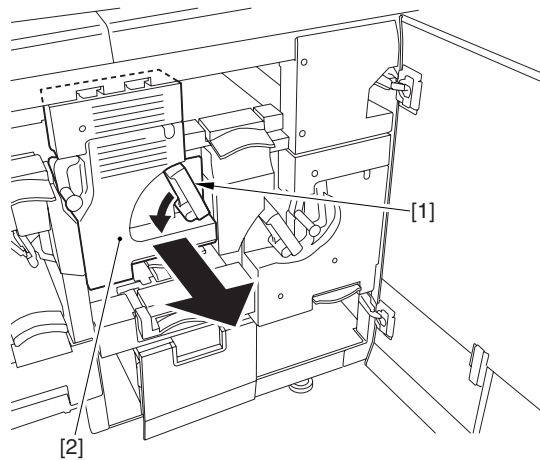
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

⚠ Point to Note When Working with the Fixing Assembly
Be sure to cool down the fixing assembly before starting the work.

- 1) Fully open the sub station front right cover [1] and the sub station front left cover [2] in order.

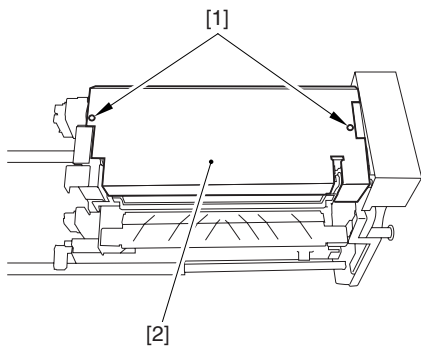


- 2) Shift the lever (C-B4) [1] in the direction of the arrow, and slide out the fixing assembly [2].



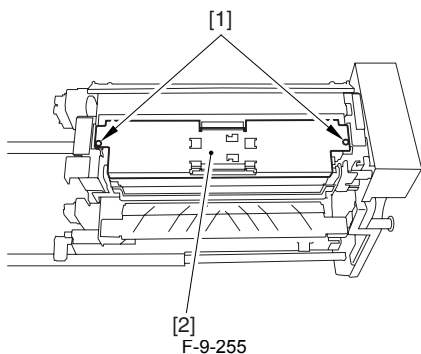
F-9-253

3) Loosen the 2 screws [1] and detach the fixing upper cover [2].



F-9-254

4) Remove the 2 screws [1] and remove the fixing web unit [2].

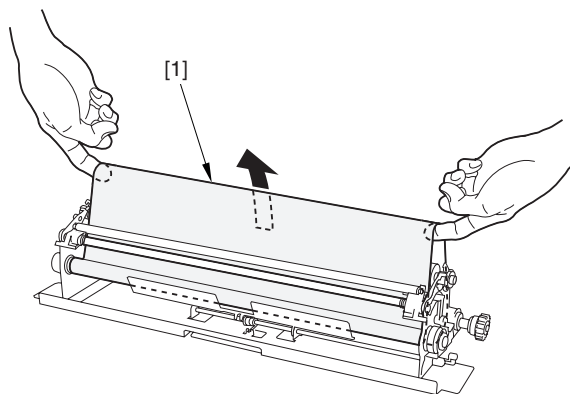


F-9-255

9.7.10.3 Removing Fixing Web Roller

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- 1) Remove the primary/secondary fixing web unit.
- 2) Pull the fixing web [1] as shown below to unroll the web.



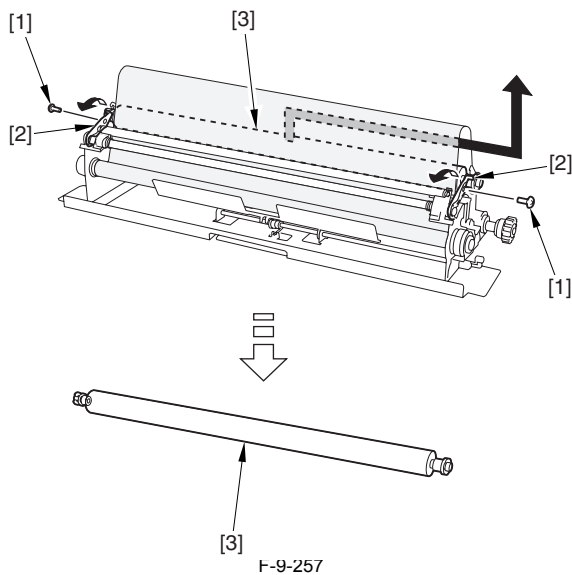
F-9-256

⚠ Points to Note When Attaching the Fixing Web

- To take out the slack of the fixing web [1], rotate the gear [2] to the direction of the arrow.

- Place the fixing web length flag [1] over the fixing web [2].

3) Remove the 2 screws [1] then, lift the 2 roller retaining levers [2] in the direction of the arrow and remove the fixing web roller [3] from the opening between the fixing web unit and the fixing web.

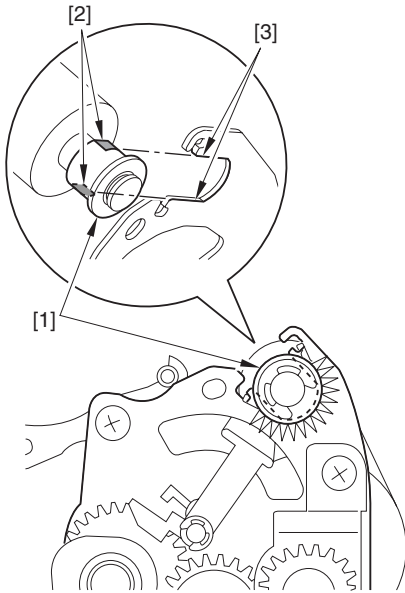


F-9-257

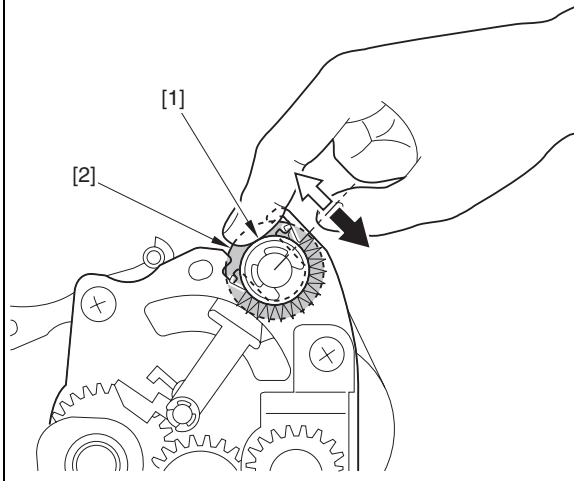


Points to Note When Attaching the Fixing Web Roller

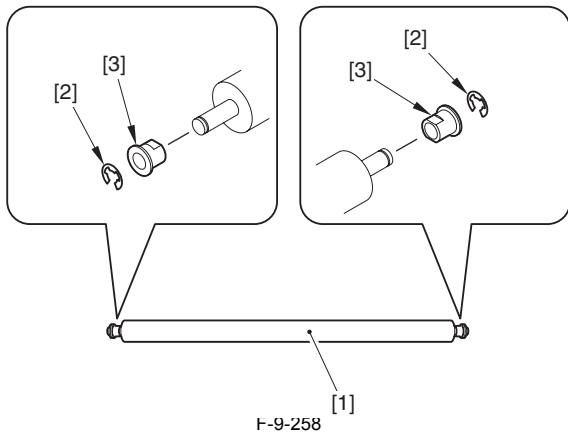
- Align the D cut side [2] on the shaft support [1] of the fixing web roller with the cut-off [3] on the side plate to attach.



- Check the fixing web roller [2] is pushed back smoothly when pushing the shaft support [1] to the direction of the arrow.



- 4) Remove the following parts from the web roller [1].
- 2 E-rings [2]
 - 2 bushings [3]



F-9-258

9.7.11 Refresh Roller

9.7.11.1 Removing Primary Fixing Refresh Roller Unit

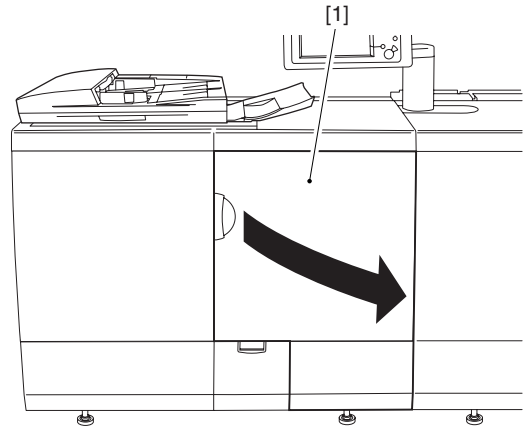
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000



Point to Note When Working with the Fixing Assembly

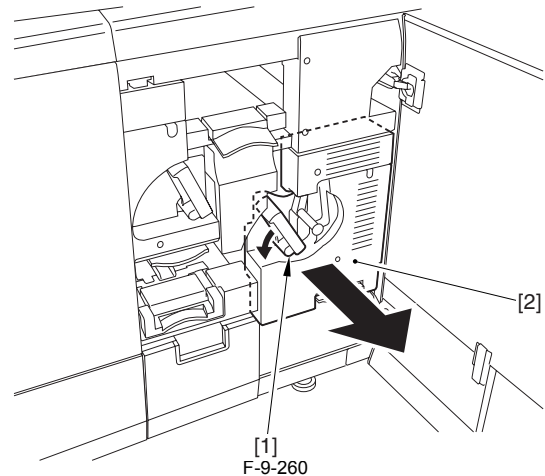
Be sure to cool down the fixing assembly before starting the work.

- 1) Open the sub station right front cover [1] fully.



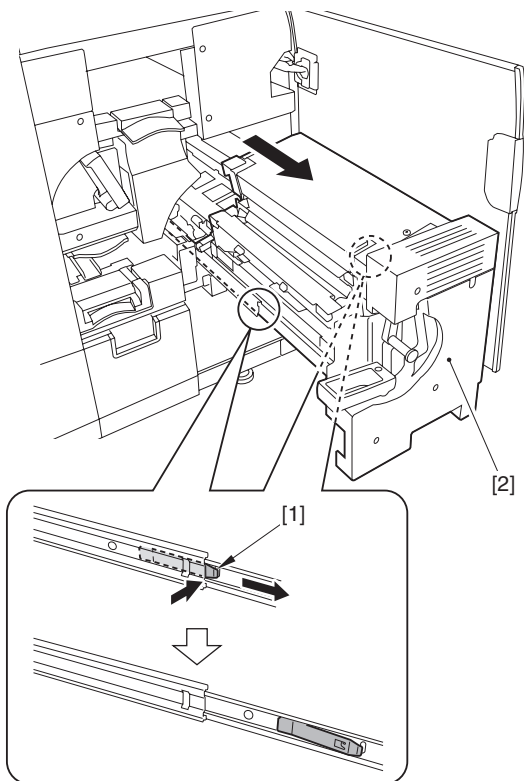
F-9-259

- 2) Shift the lever (C-A4) [1] in the direction of the arrow, and slide out the fixing assembly [2].



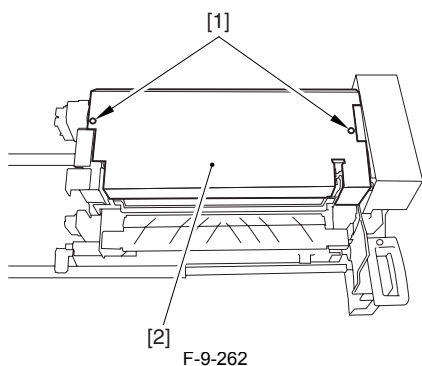
F-9-260

- 3) Release the 2 leaf springs [1], and slide out the fixing assembly [2] further.



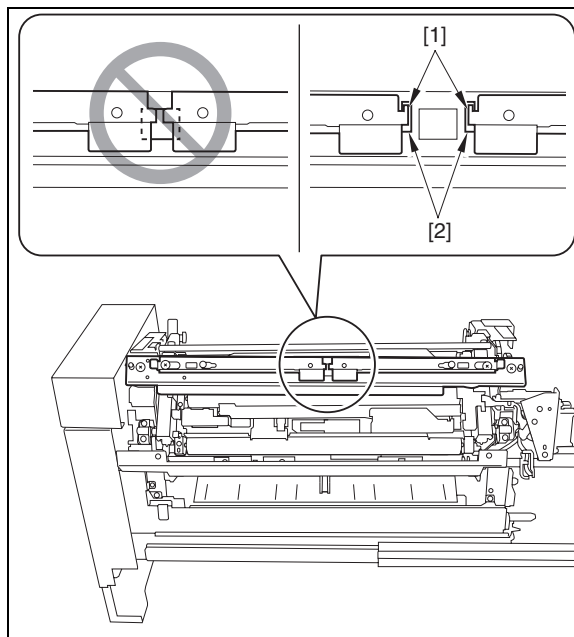
F-9-261

4) Loosen the 2 screws [1] and detach the fixing upper cover [2].

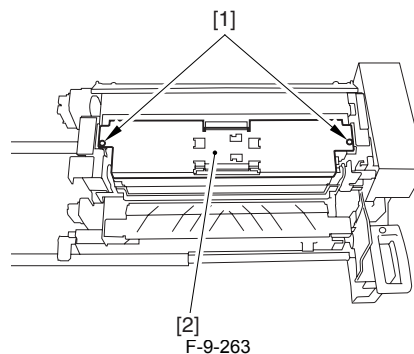


F-9-262

⚠ Point to Note When Attaching the Fixing Upper Cover
 Insert the claw [1] of the release lever of the pressure plate into the hole [2] of the pressure plate, and attach the fixing upper cover.

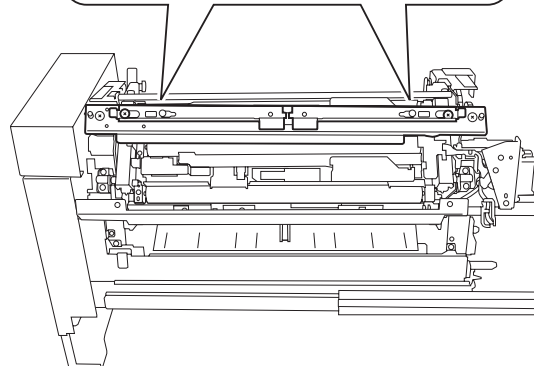
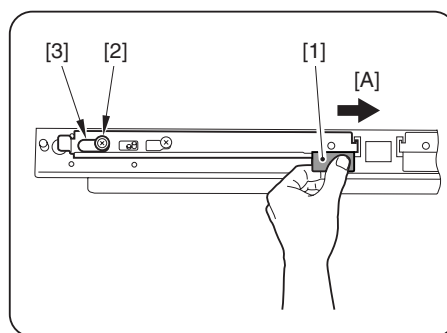


5) Remove the 2 screws [1] and remove the fixing web unit [2].



F-9-263

6) Pull the grip [1] vertically and slide the release lever in the direction [A] until the long hole [3] stops the shaft [2] of the screw.

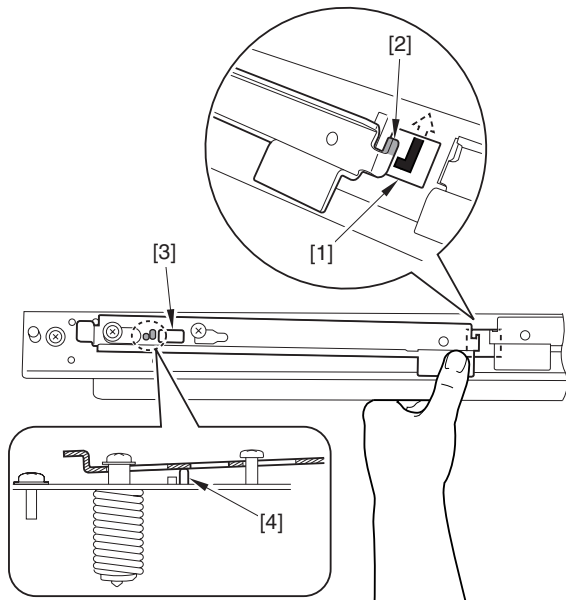


F-9-264

7) Make the release lever claw [2] engaged with the pressure plate hole [1] to lock.



Make sure to lock the release lever at the position that the shaft [4] is not seen from the long hole [3].

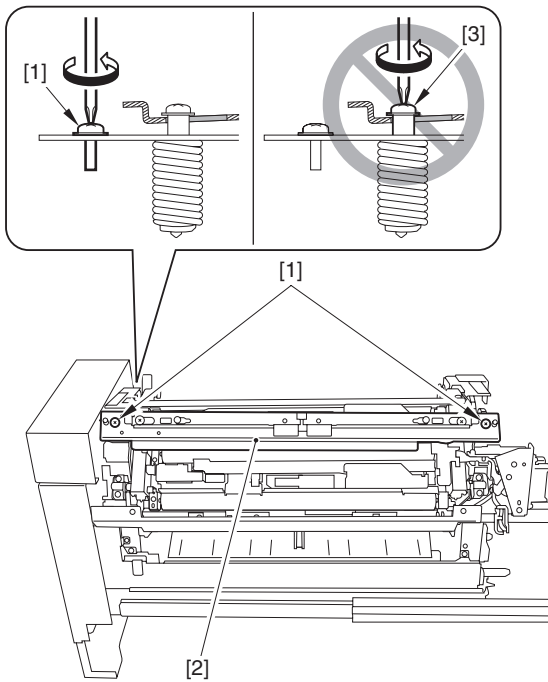


F-9-265

8) Remove the 2 screws [1] and detach the external heating pressure plate [2].



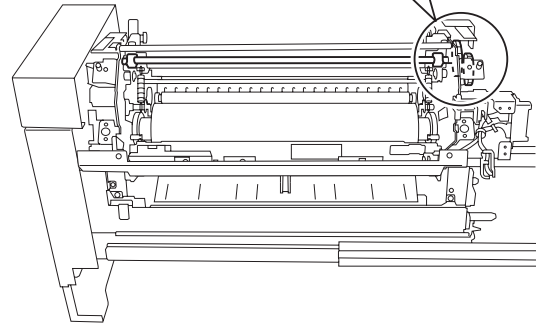
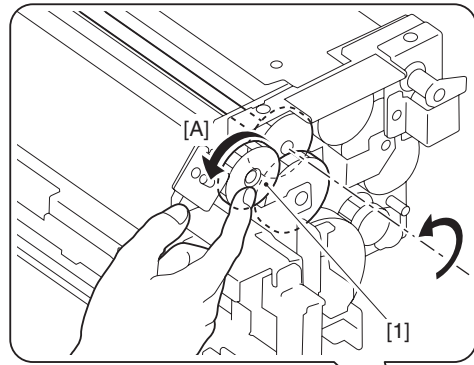
Never turn the screw [3] (for fixing the external heating pressure shaft).



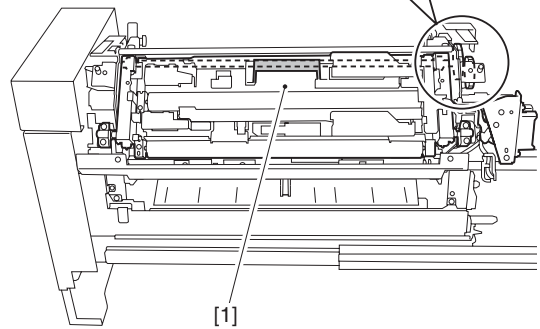
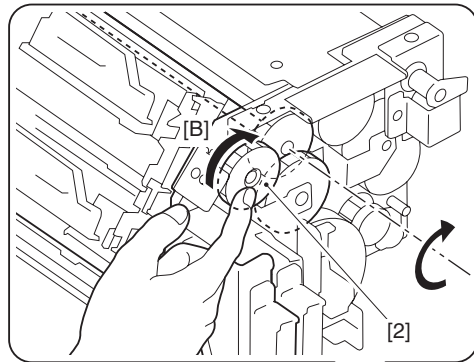
F-9-266

Attaching External Heating Roller Unit Pressure Plate

1) Before attaching the external heating roller unit to the fixing assembly, make almost full turn of the gear [1] counterclockwise [A] until it stops.



2) After attaching the external heating roller unit [1] to the fixing assembly, make almost full turn of the gear [2] clockwise [B] until it stops. (The external heating roller unit is separated from the fixing roller.)



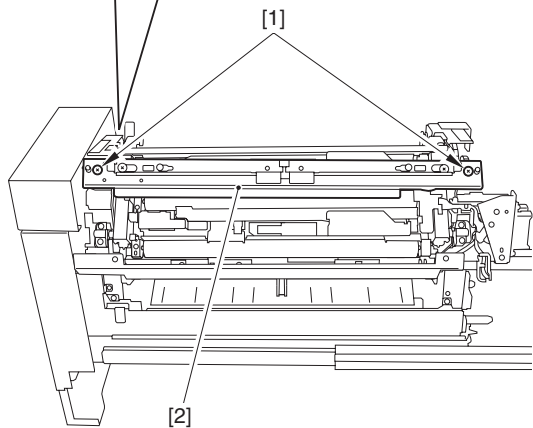
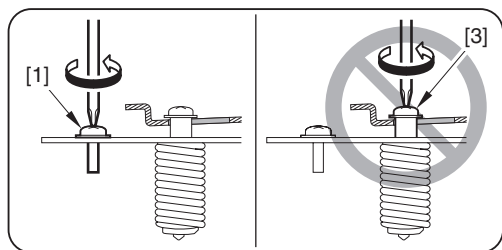
3) Fit the pressure shaft [1] of the pressure plate in the hole [2] of the external heating unit and fix them.



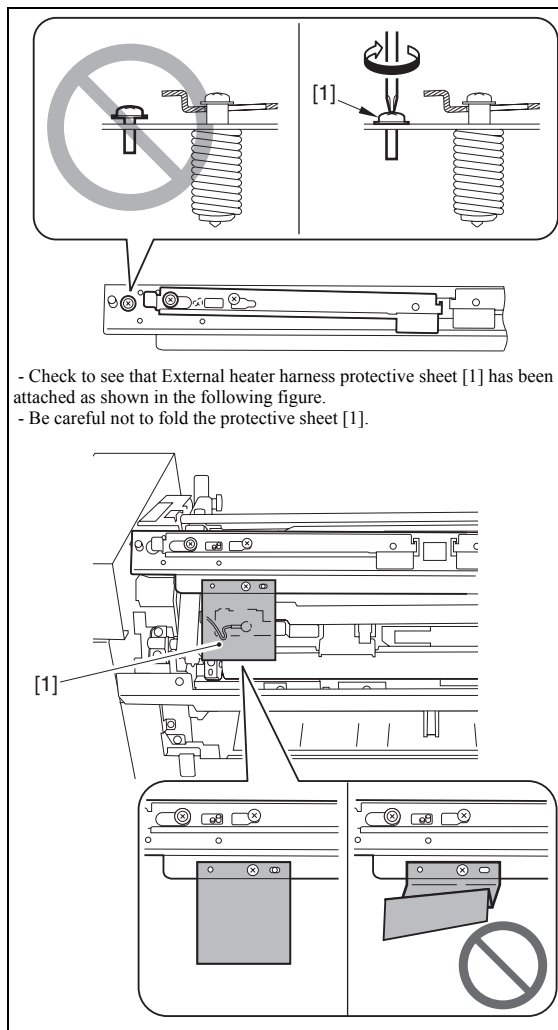
4) Attach the external heating pressure plate [2] with the 2 screws [1].



Never turn the screw [3] (for fixing the external heating pressure shaft).

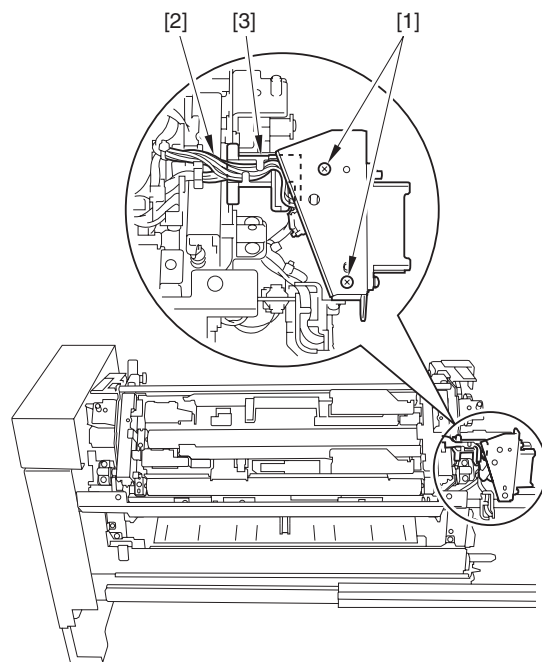


- Make sure to tighten the screw [1] until it stops.



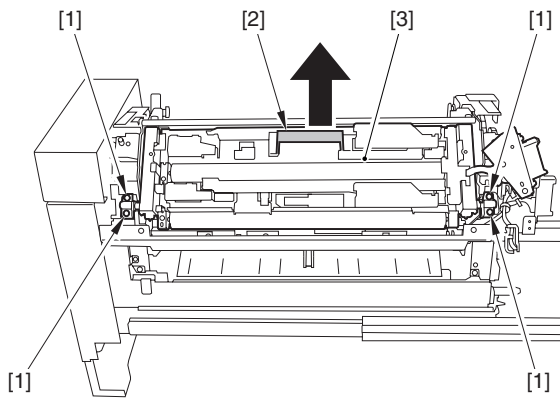
- Check to see that External heater harness protective sheet [1] has been attached as shown in the following figure.
- Be careful not to fold the protective sheet [1].

9) Remove the 2 screws [1] and free the harness [2] from the harness guide [3].



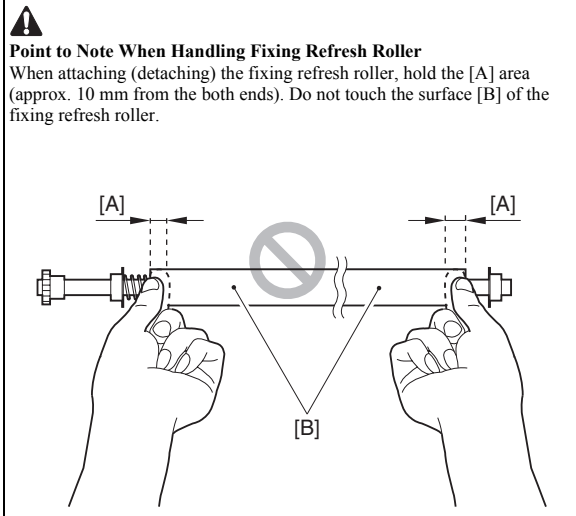
F-9-267

10) Remove the 4 screws [1]. Hold the grip [2] and detach the external heating roller unit [3].



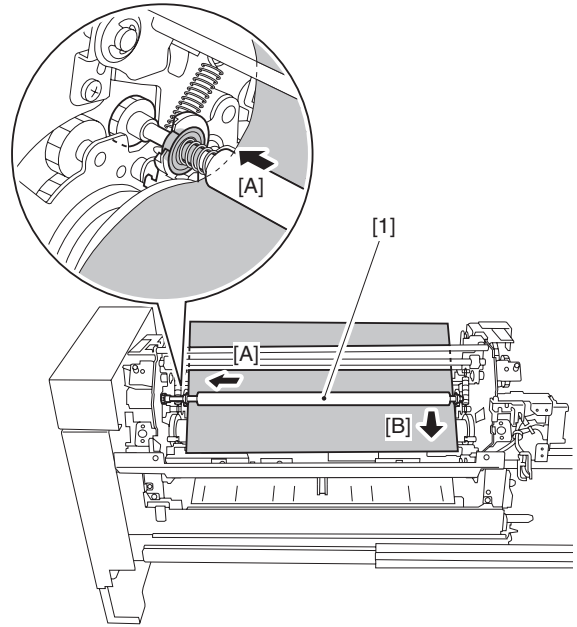
F-9-268

11) Make sure to check the following items before operation.



Point to Note When Handling Fixing Refresh Roller

When attaching (detaching) the fixing refresh roller, hold the [A] area (approx. 10 mm from the both ends). Do not touch the surface [B] of the fixing refresh roller.

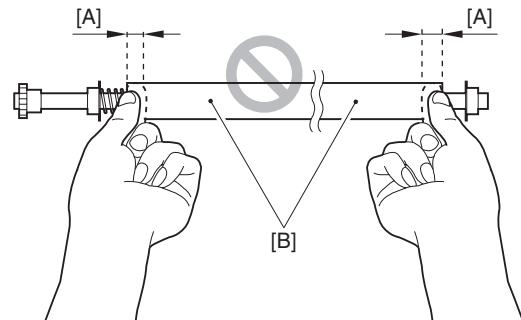


F-9-270

Attaching Fixing Refresh Roller

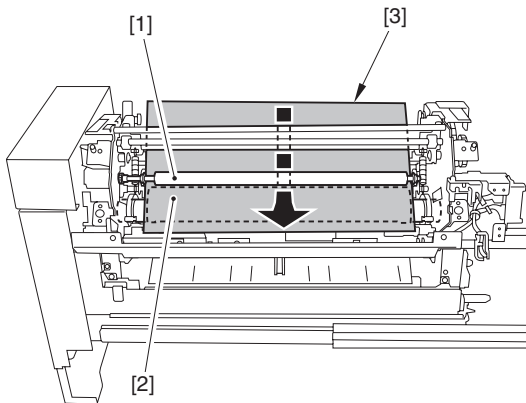
1) Make sure to check the following items before operation.

Point to Note When Handling Fixing Refresh Roller
When attaching (detaching) the fixing refresh roller, hold the [A] area (approx. 10 mm from the both ends). Do not touch the surface [B] of the fixing refresh roller.



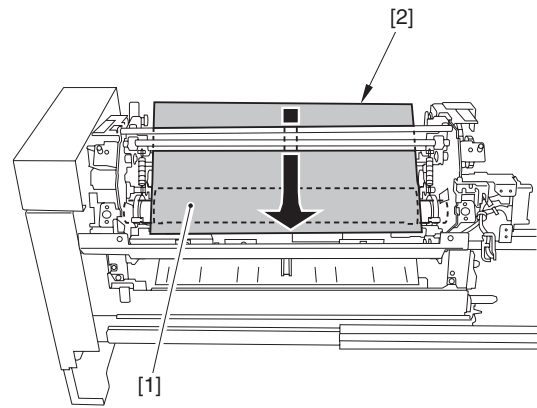
Place the paper [2] on the fixing roller [1].

Place the sheet [3] between the fixing refresh roller [1] and the fixing roller [2].

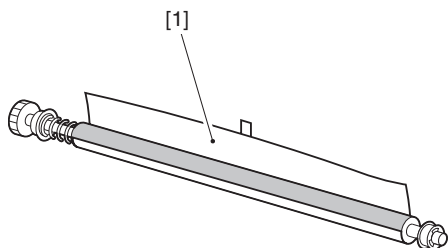


F-9-269

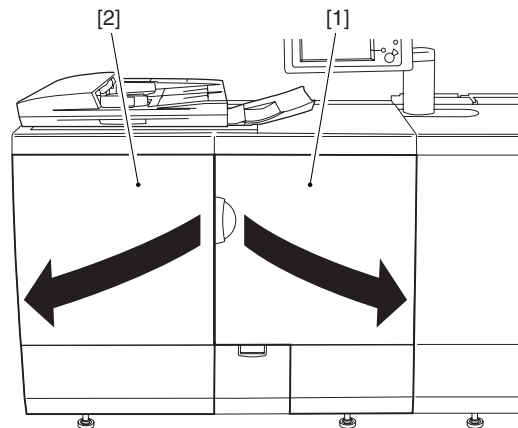
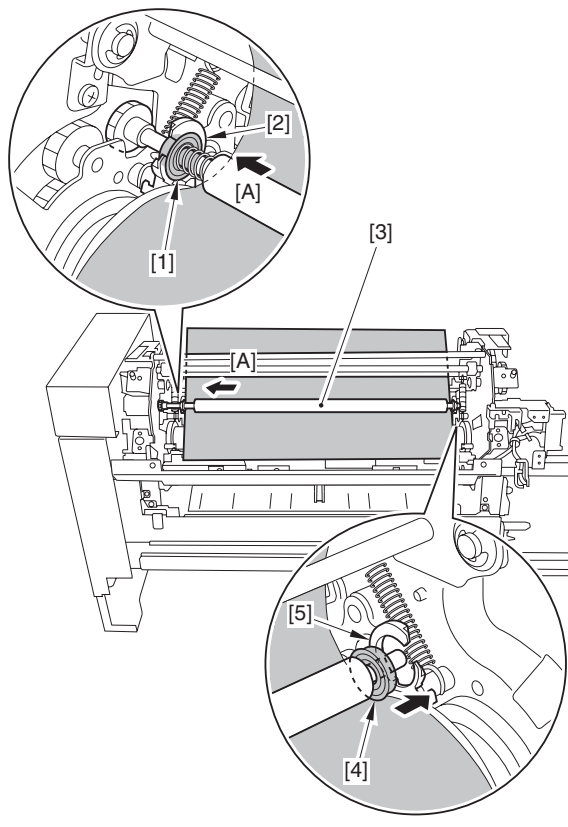
12) While pushing the fixing refresh roller [1] in the direction [A], detach it in the direction [B].



2) Remove the protective sheet [1] covering the new fixing refresh roller.

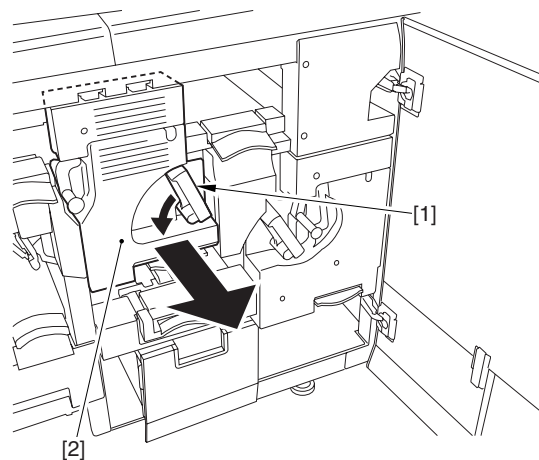


3) Fit the bearing [1] to the shaft support [2] and push the fixing refresh roller [3] in the direction [A]. Fit the bearing [4] and the shaft support [5] at the opposite side and attach it.



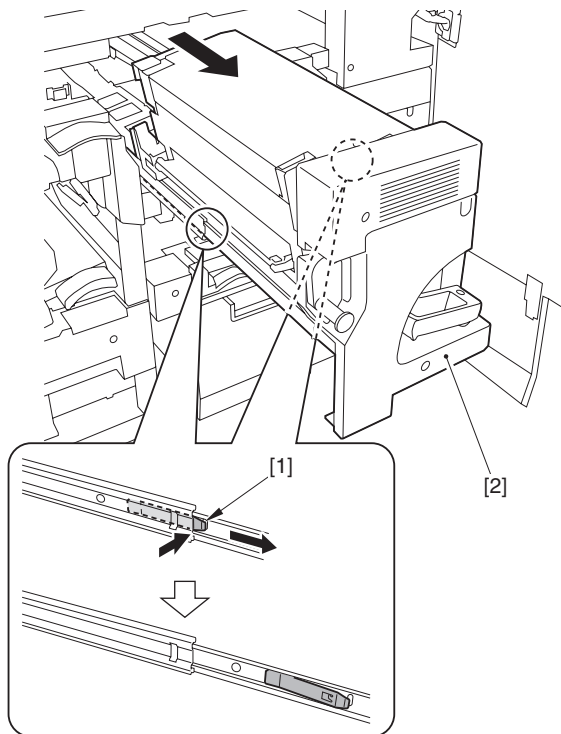
F-9-271

2) Shift the lever (C-B4) [1] in the direction of the arrow, and slide out the fixing assembly [2].



F-9-272

3) Release the 2 leaf springs [1], and slide out the fixing assembly [2] further.



F-9-273

4) Loosen the 2 screws [1] and detach the fixing upper cover [2].

9.7.11.2 Removing Secondary Fixing Refresh Roller Unit

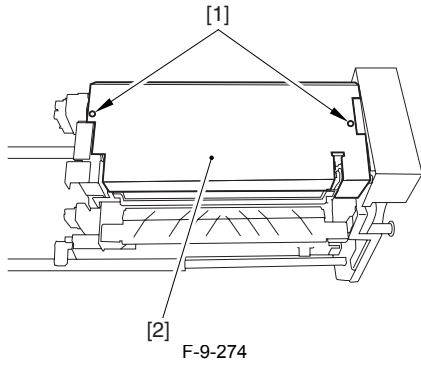
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000



Point to Note When Working with the Fixing Assembly

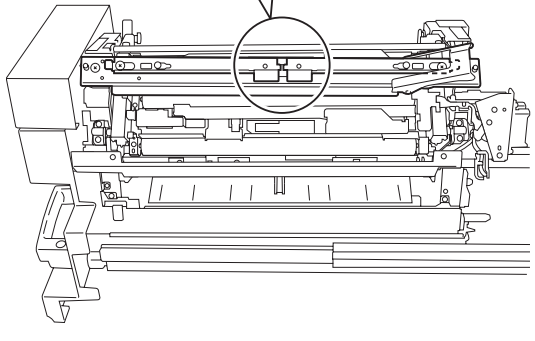
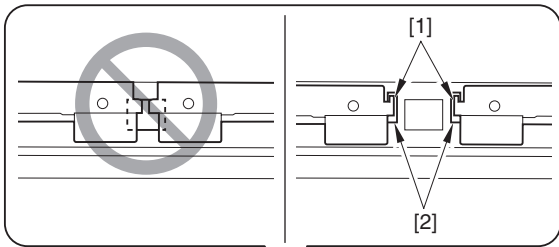
Be sure to cool down the fixing assembly before starting the work.

1) Fully open the sub station front right cover [1] and the sub station front left cover [2] in order.

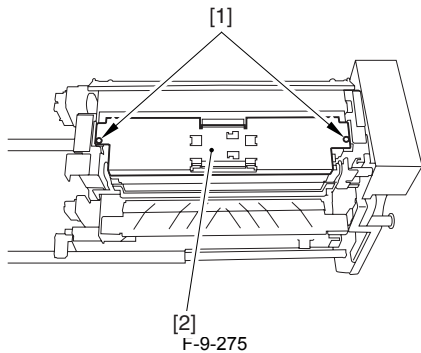


F-9-274

⚠ Point to Note When Attaching the Fixing Upper Cover
 Insert the claw [1] of the release lever of the pressure plate into the hole [2] of the pressure plate, and attach the fixing upper cover.

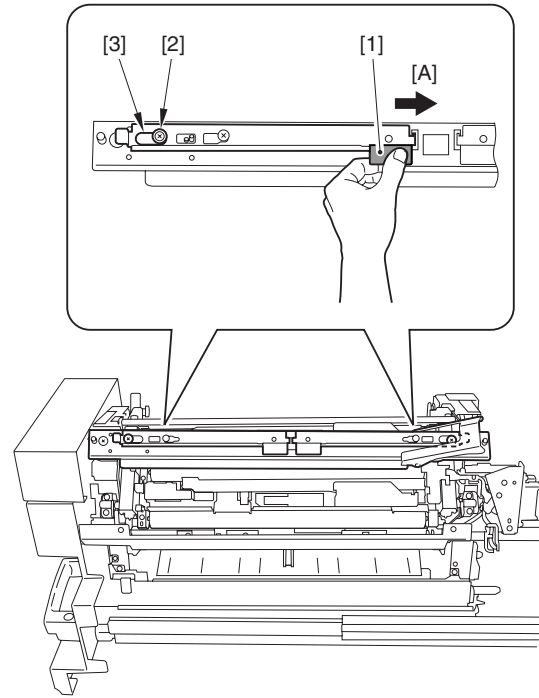


5) Remove the 2 screws [1] and remove the fixing web unit [2].



F-9-275

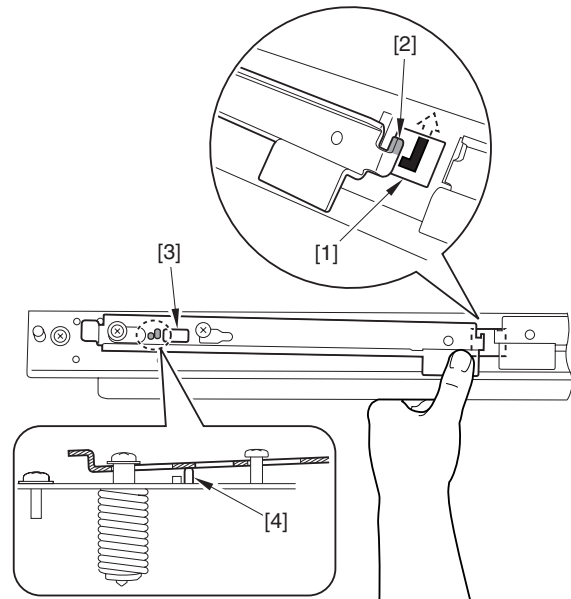
6) Pull the grip [1] vertically and slide the release lever in the direction [A] until the long hole [3] stops the shaft [2] of the screw.



F-9-276

7) Make the release lever claw [2] engaged with the pressure plate hole [1] to lock.

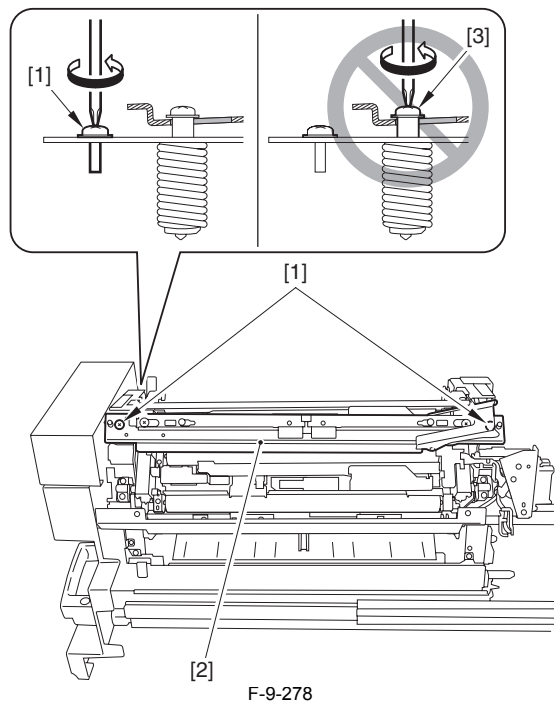
⚠ Make sure to lock the release lever at the position that the shaft [4] is not seen from the long hole [3].



F-9-277

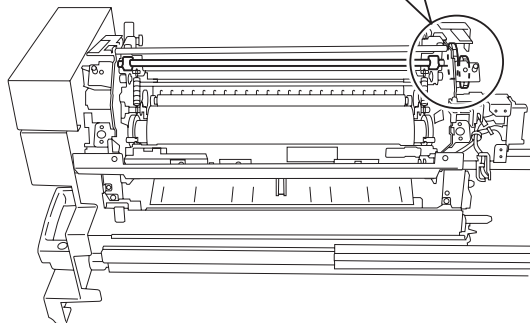
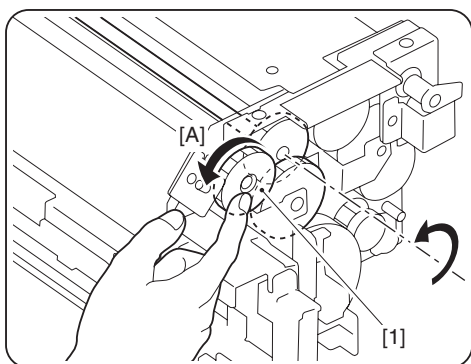
8) Remove the 2 screws [1] and detach the external heating pressure plate [2].

⚠ Never turn the screw [3] (for fixing the external heating pressure shaft).

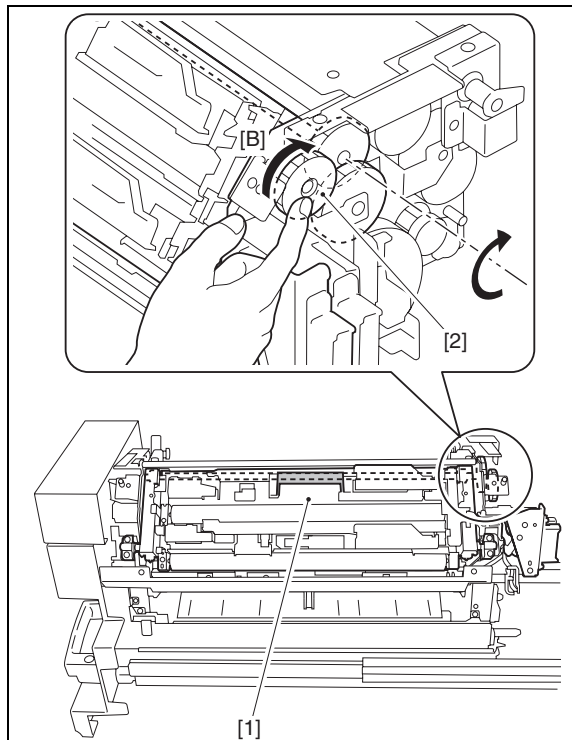


Attaching External Heating Roller Unit Pressure Plate

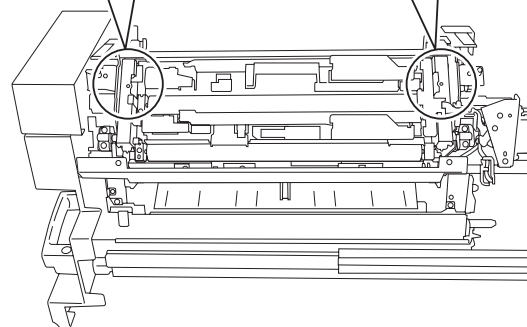
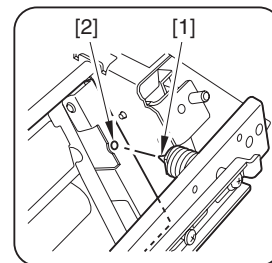
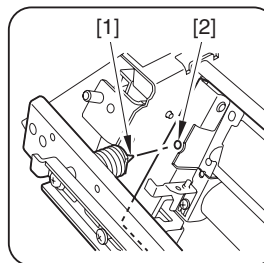
1) Before attaching the external heating roller unit to the fixing assembly, make almost full turn of the gear [1] counterclockwise [A] until it stops.



2) After attaching the external heating roller unit [1] to the fixing assembly, make almost full turn of the gear [2] clockwise [B] until it stops. (The external heating roller unit is separated from the fixing roller.)



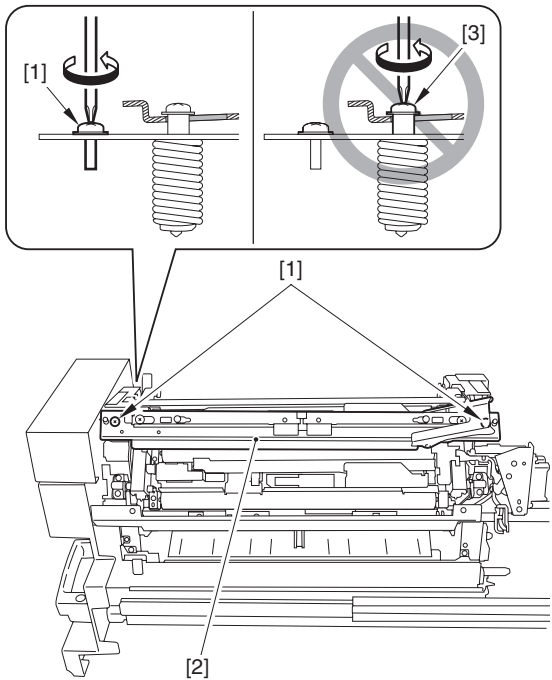
3) Fit the pressure shaft [1] of the pressure plate in the hole [2] of the external heating unit and fix them.



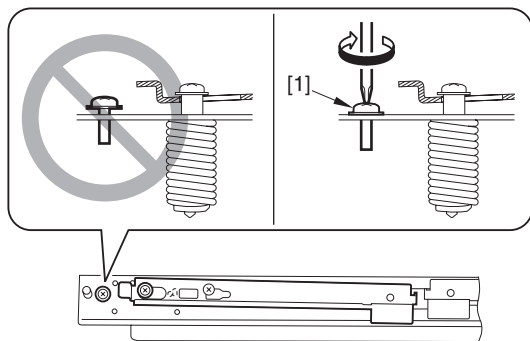
4) Attach the external heating pressure plate [2] with the 2 screws [1].



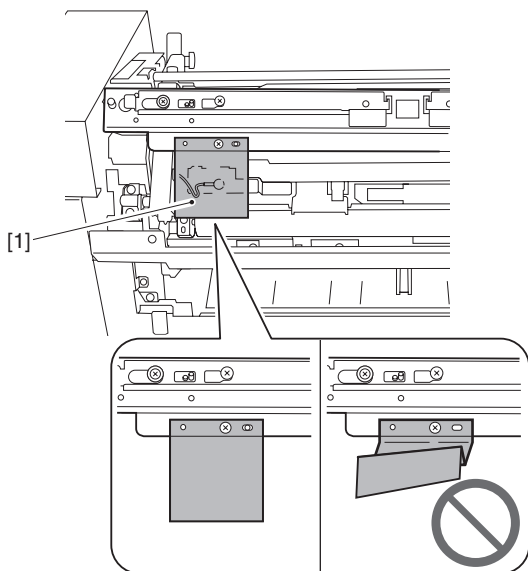
Never turn the screw [3] (for fixing the external heating pressure shaft).



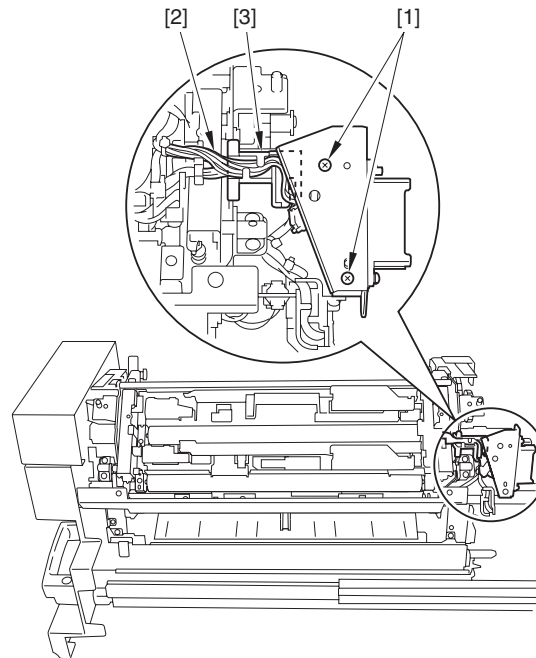
!
- Make sure to tighten the screw [1] until it stops.



- Check to see that External heater harness protective sheet [1] has been attached as shown in the following figure.
- Be careful not to fold the protective sheet [1].

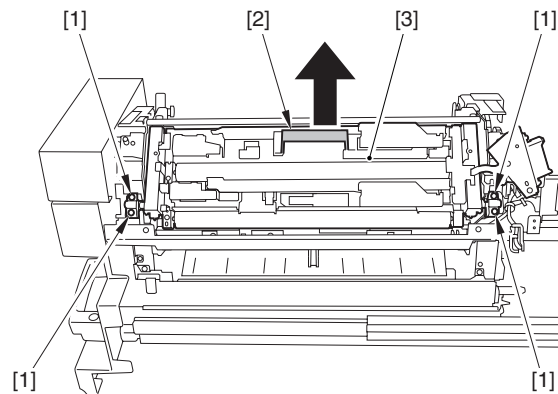


9) Remove the 2 screws [1] and free the harness [2] from the harness guide [3].



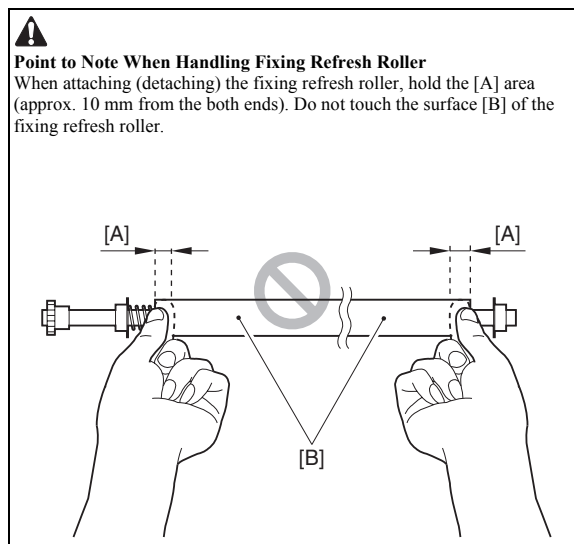
F-9-279

10) Remove the 4 screws [1]. Hold the grip [2] and detach the external heating roller unit [3].

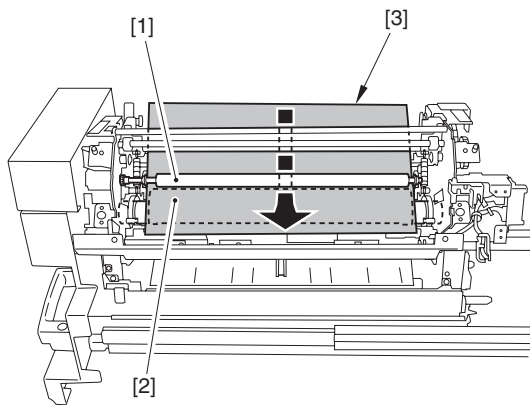


F-9-280

11) Make sure to check the following items before operation.

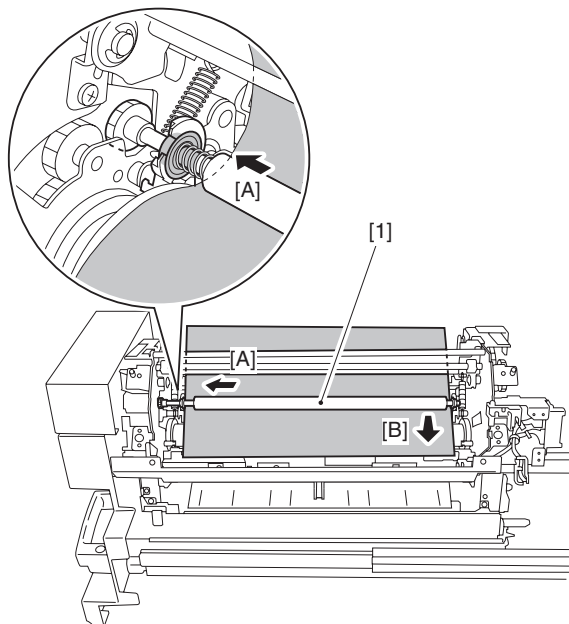


Place the paper [3] between the fixing refresh roller [1] and the fixing roller [2].



F-9-281

- 12) While pushing the fixing refresh roller [1] in the direction [A], detach it in the direction [B].



F-9-282

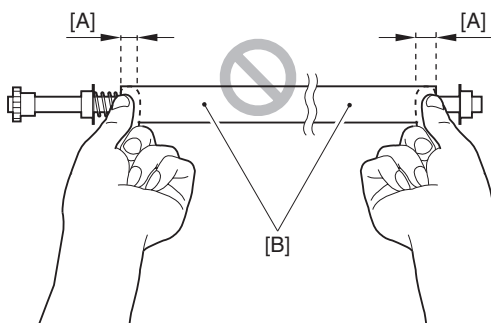
Attaching Fixing Refresh Roller

- 1) Make sure to check the following items before operation.

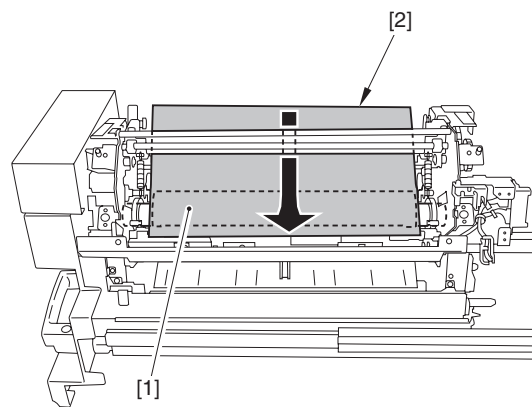


Point to Note When Handling Fixing Refresh Roller

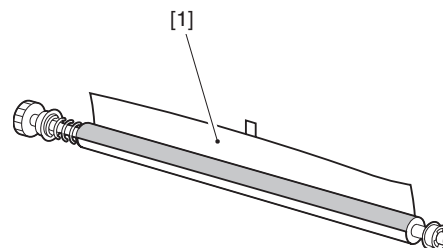
When attaching (detaching) the fixing refresh roller, hold the [A] area (approx. 10 mm from the both ends). Do not touch the surface [B] of the fixing refresh roller.



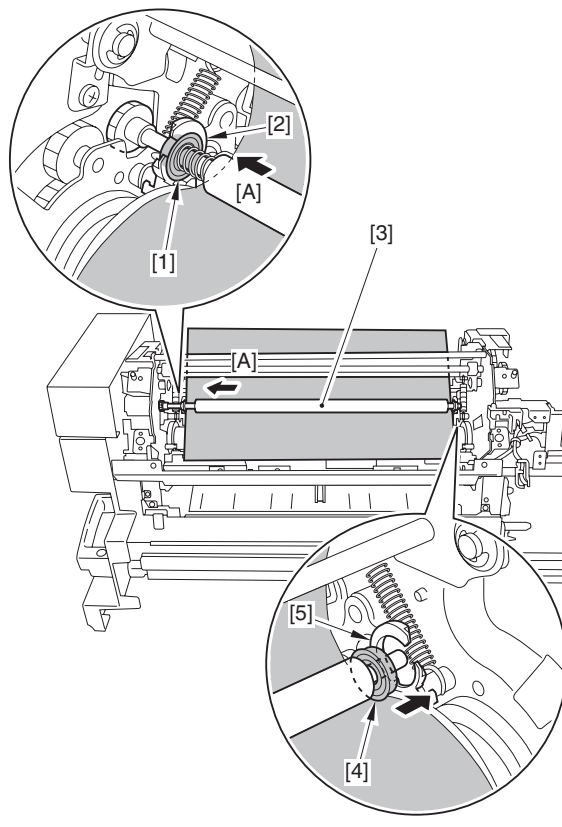
Place the paper [2] on the fixing roller [1].



- 2) Remove the protective sheet [1] covering the new fixing refresh roller.



- 3) Fit the bearing [1] to the shaft support [2] and push the fixing refresh roller [3] in the direction [A]. Fit the bearing [4] and the shaft support [5] at the opposite side and attach it.



9.7.11.3 Removing Primary Fixing Refresh Roller

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

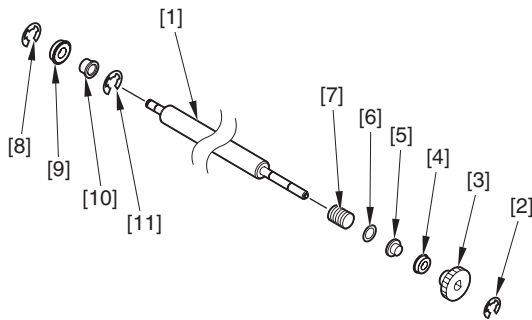
- 1) Remove the primary fixing refresh roller.
- 2) The following parts are detached from the the primary fixing refresh roller [1].

Front side:
- 1 E-ring [2]

- 1 gear [3]
- 1 bearing [4]
- 1 bushing [5]
- 1 washer [6]
- 1 spring [7]

Rear side:

- 1 E-ring [8]
- 1 bearing [9]
- 1 bushing [10]
- 1 E-ring [11]



F-9-283

9.7.11.4 Removing Secondary Fixing Refresh Roller

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

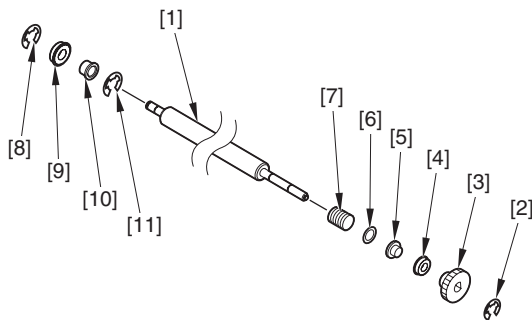
- 1) Remove the primary fixing refresh roller.
- 2) The following parts are detached from the secondary fixing refresh roller [1].

Front side:

- 1 E-ring [2]
- 1 gear [3]
- 1 bearing [4]
- 1 bushing [5]
- 1 washer [6]
- 1 spring [7]

Rear side:

- 1 E-ring [8]
- 1 bearing [9]
- 1 bushing [10]
- 1 E-ring [11]



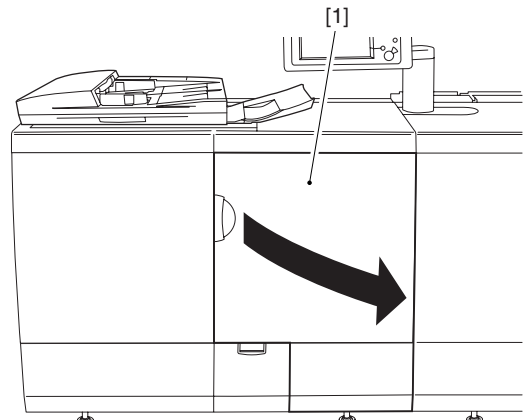
F-9-284

9.7.11.5 Removing Primary Fixing Refresh Cleaning Roller

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

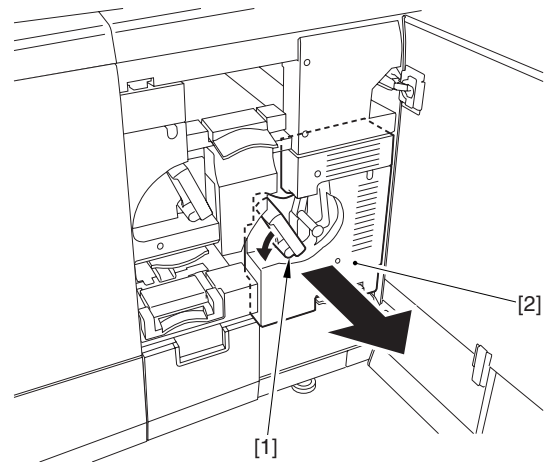
⚠ Point to Note When Working with the Fixing Assembly
Be sure to cool down the fixing assembly before starting the work.

- 1) Open the sub station right front cover [1] fully.



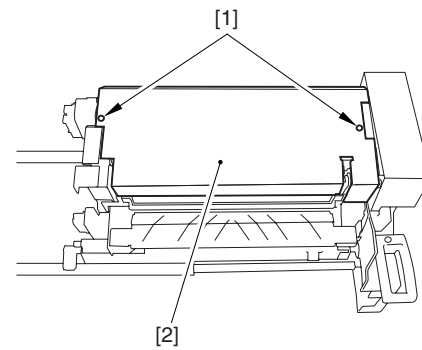
F-9-285

- 2) Shift the lever (C-A4) [1] in the direction of the arrow, and slide out the fixing assembly [2].



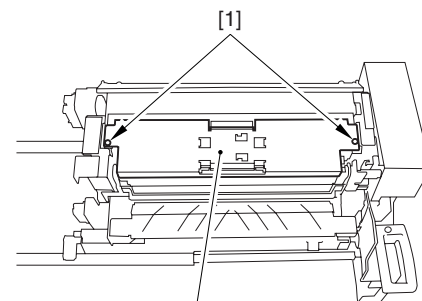
F-9-286

- 3) Loosen the 2 screws [1] and detach the fixing upper cover [2].



F-9-287

- 4) Remove the 2 screws [1] and remove the fixing web unit [2].



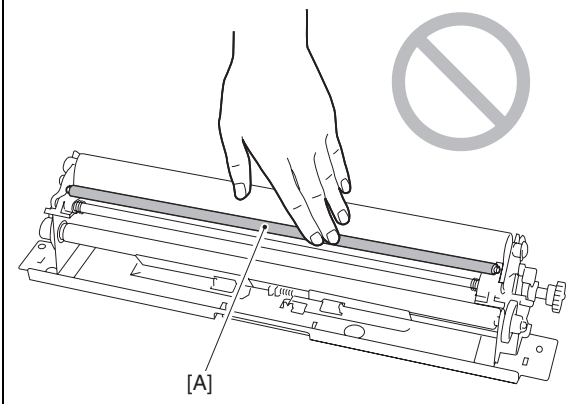
F-9-288

- 5) Make sure to check the following items before operation.

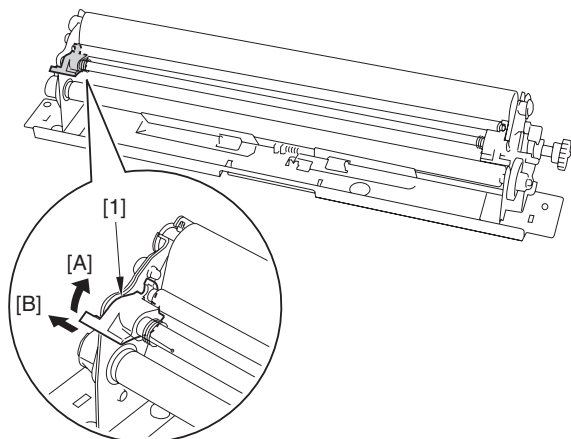


Points to Note When Handling the Fixing Refresh Cleaning Roller

Do not touch the surface [A] of the fixing refresh cleaning roller.

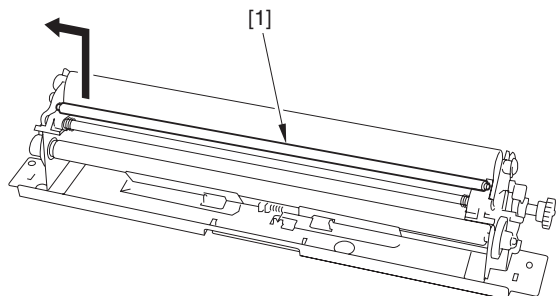


Rotate the shaft support [1] to [A] direction and slide it to [B] direction.



F-9-289

6) Remove the fixing refresh cleaning roller [1].



F-9-290

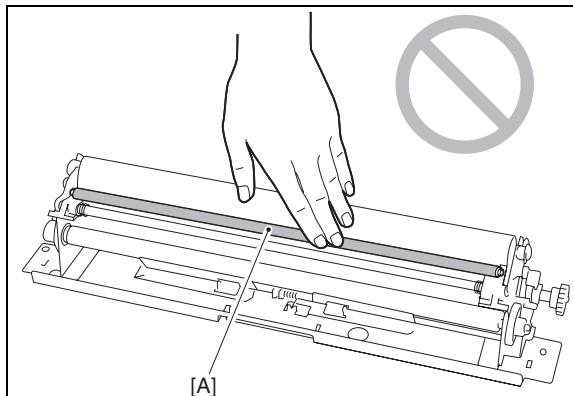
Attaching the Fixing Refresh Cleaning Roller

1) Make sure to check the following items before operation.



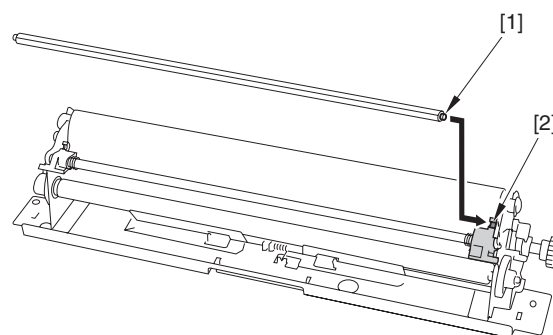
Points to Note When Handling the Fixing Refresh Cleaning Roller

Do not touch the surface [A] of the fixing refresh cleaning roller.

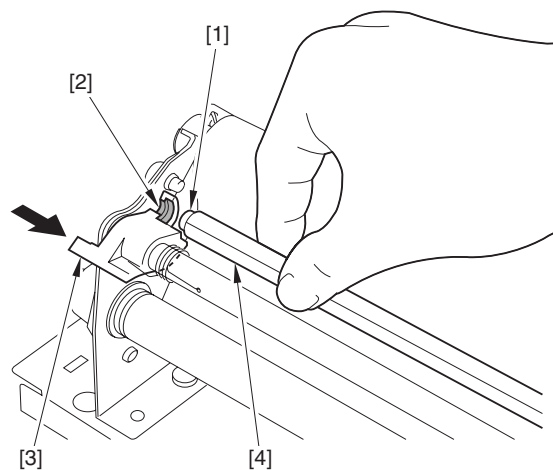


When attaching a new fixing refresh cleaning roller, attach it together with the paper covering the new fixing refresh cleaning roller. Remove the paper after attaching the fixing web unit.

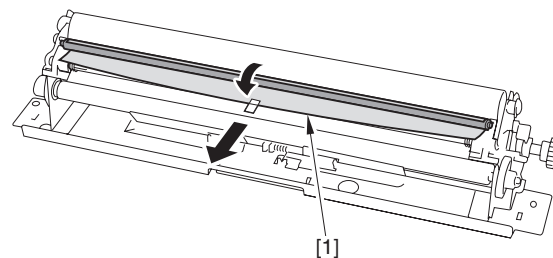
Push the bearing [1] on the fixing refresh cleaning roller into the cut-off [2] on the front shaft support sideways.



2) Engage the bearing [1] on the fixing refresh roller to the cut-off [2] on the rear shaft support and slide the rear shaft support [3] to the direction of the arrow to attach the fixing refresh roller [4].



3) Remove the paper [1] covering the new fixing refresh cleaning roller.

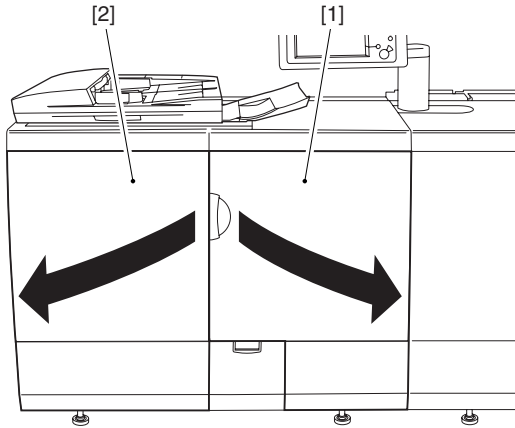


9.7.11.6 Removing Secondary Fixing Refresh Cleaning Roller

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

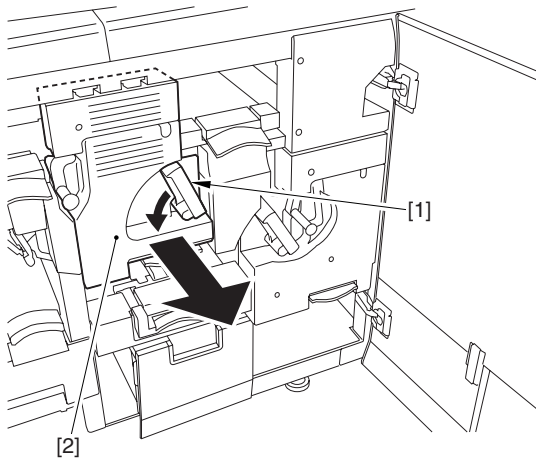
⚠ Point to Note When Working with the Fixing Assembly
Be sure to cool down the fixing assembly before starting the work.

- 1) Fully open the sub station front right cover [1] and the sub station front left cover [2] in order.



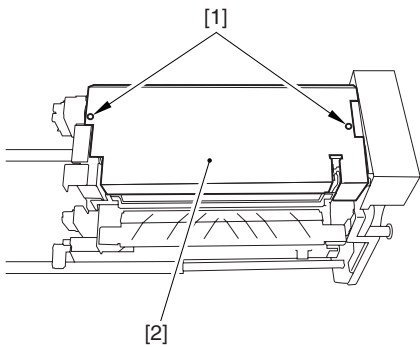
F-9-291

- 2) Shift the lever (C-B4) [1] in the direction of the arrow, and slide out the fixing assembly [2].



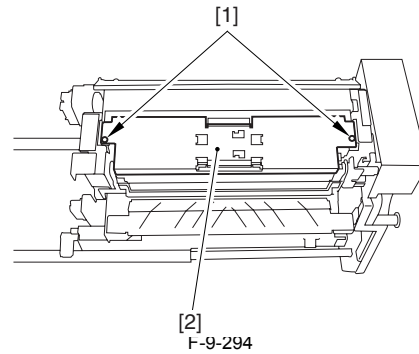
F-9-292

- 3) Loosen the 2 screws [1] and detach the fixing upper cover [2].



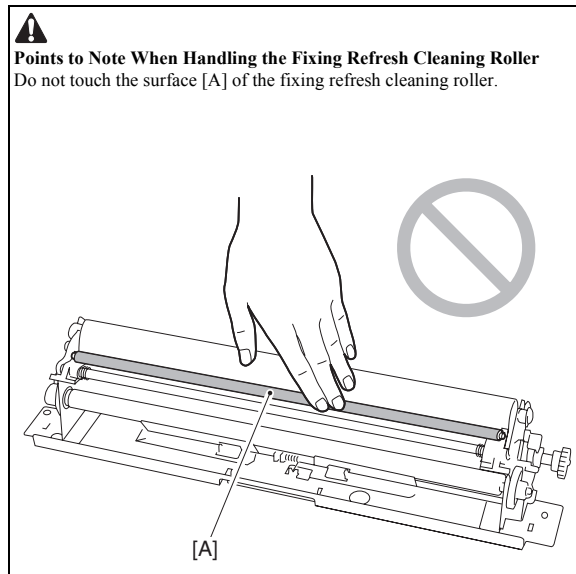
F-9-293

- 4) Remove the 2 screws [1] and remove the fixing web unit [2].

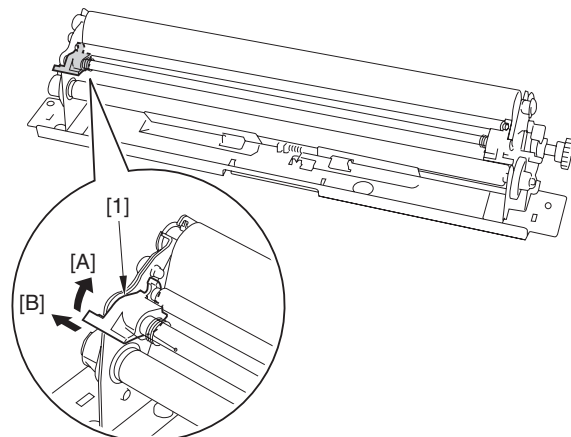


F-9-294

- 5) Make sure to check the following items before operation.

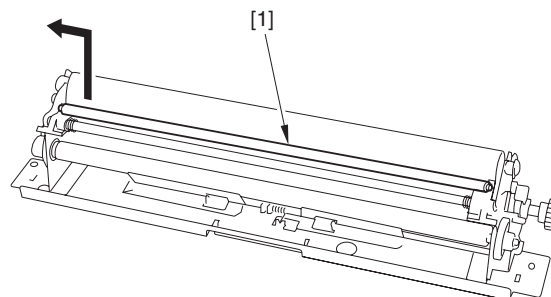


Rotate the shaft support [1] to [A] direction and slide it to [B] direction.



F-9-295

- 6) Remove the fixing refresh cleaning roller [1].



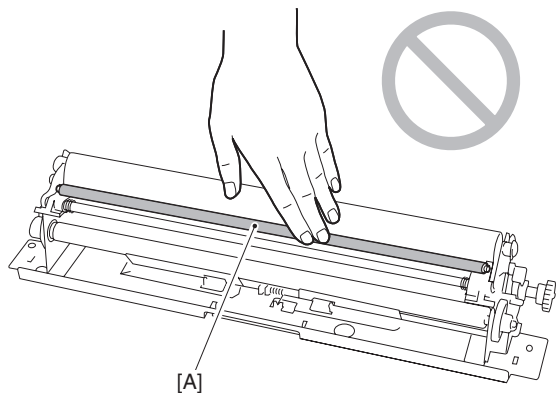
F-9-296

Attaching the Fixing Refresh Cleaning Roller

1) Make sure to check the following items before operation.

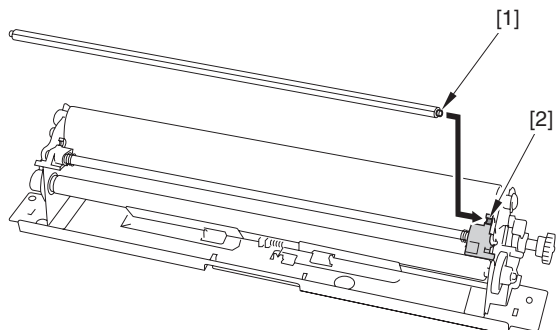
**Points to Note When Handling the Fixing Refresh Cleaning Roller**

Do not touch the surface [A] of the fixing refresh cleaning roller.

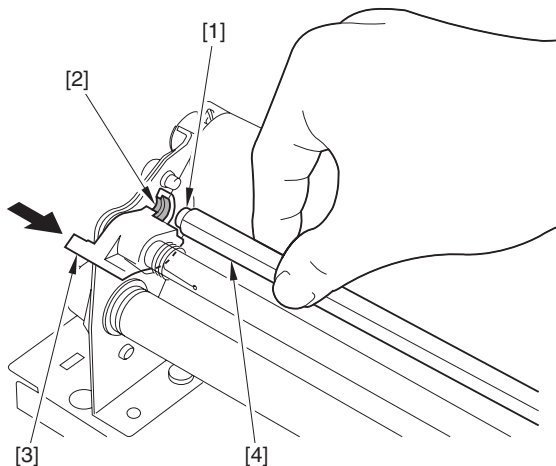


When attaching a new fixing refresh cleaning roller, attach it together with the paper covering the new fixing refresh cleaning roller. Remove the paper after attaching the fixing web unit.

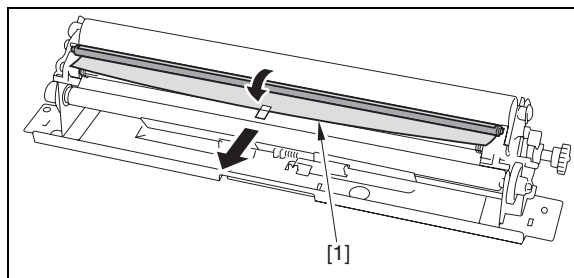
Push the bearing [1] on the fixing refresh cleaning roller into the cut-off [2] on the front shaft support sideways.



2) Engage the bearing [1] on the fixing refresh roller to the cut-off [2] on the rear shaft support and slide the rear shaft support [3] to the direction of the arrow to attach the fixing refresh roller [4].



3) Remove the paper [1] covering the new fixing refresh cleaning roller.

**9.7.12 Steering Roller****9.7.12.1 Removing Steering Roller**

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

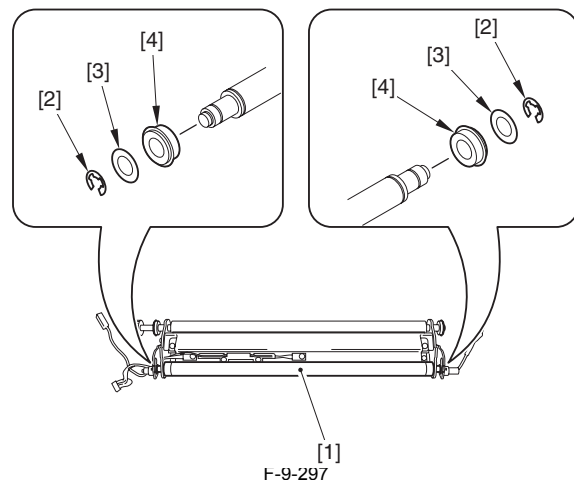
- 1) Remove the fixing belt.
- 2) Remove the fixing belt unit from the sub station inner cover 1, and place it on a paper.



Be sure to cover the fixing belt unit with a paper, and not to touch the roller with bare hands.

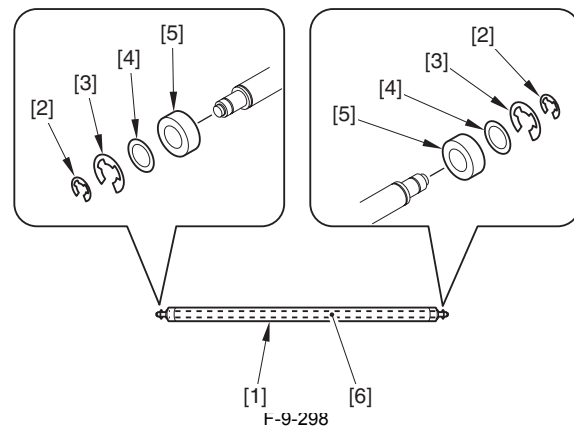
- 3) Remove the steering roller (with shaft) [1].

- 2 E-rings [2]
- 2 washers [3]
- 2 bearings [4]



- 4) Remove the steering roller [1].

- 2 E-rings [2]
- 2 E-rings [3]
- 2 washers [4]
- 2 bearings [5]

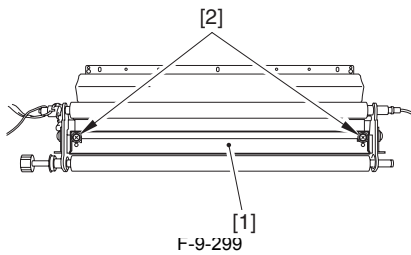


9.7.13 Pressure Pad

9.7.13.1 Removing Pressure Pad

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- 1) Detach the pressure pad cover.
- 2) Remove the pressure pad [1].
- 2 screws [2]



9.7.14 Pressure Pad Cover

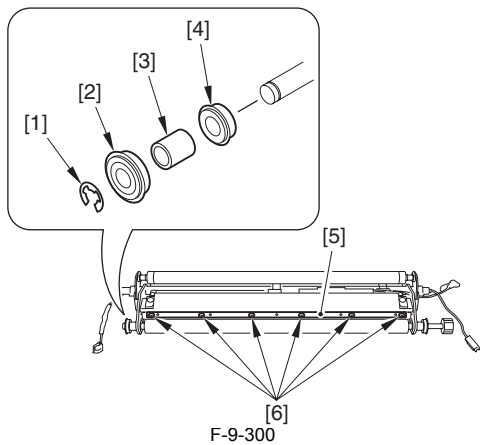
9.7.14.1 Removing Pressure Pad Cover

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

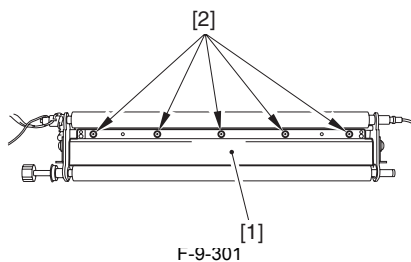
- 1) Remove the oil-coated roller.
- 2) Remove the fixing belt unit from the sub station inner cover 1, and place it on a paper.

⚠ Be sure to cover the fixing belt unit with a paper, and not to touch the roller with bare hands.

- 3) Remove the following parts.
 - 1 E-ring [1]
 - 1 bearing [2]
 - 1 spacer [3]
 - 1 bearing [4]
- 4) Remove the pressure pad cover plate [5].
- 6 screws [6]



- 5) Turn over the belt unit.
- 6) Detach the pressure pad cover [1].
- 5 screws [2]

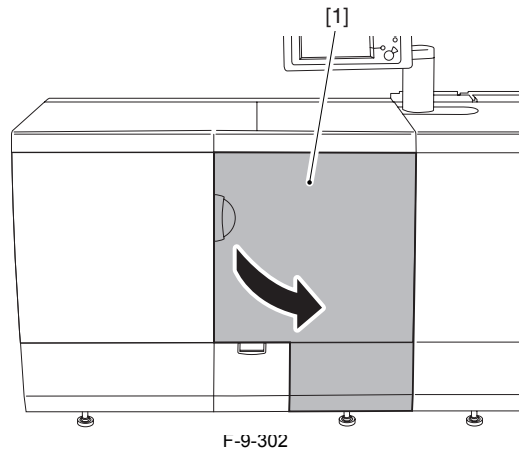


9.7.15 Fixing Roller Thermistor

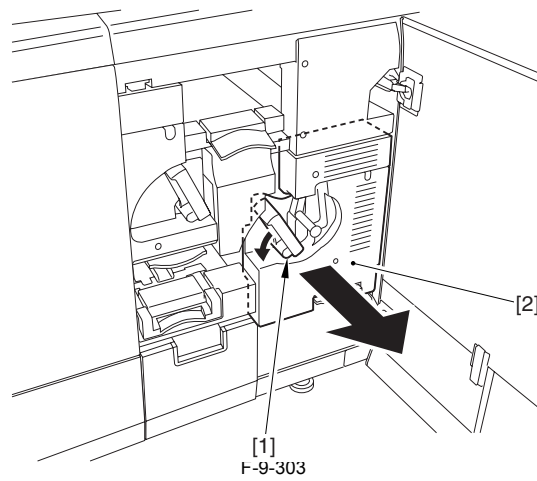
9.7.15.1 Removing Primary Fixing Roller Main/Sub Thermistor (THM301/THM304), Primary Fixing Roller Thermo Switch (TP300)

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

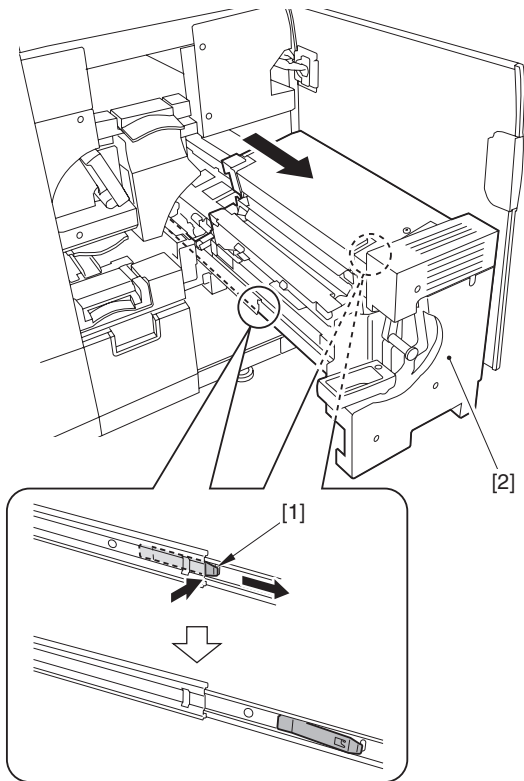
- 1) Open the sub station front right cover [1].



- 2) Tilt the release lever [1] in the direction of the arrow and slide out the primary fixing assembly [2].

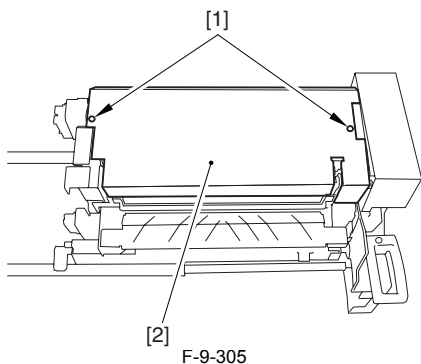


- 3) Disengage the 2 leaf springs [1] and slide out the primary fixing assembly [2] more.



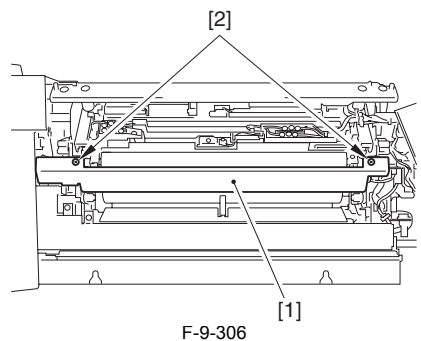
F-9-304

4) Loosen the 2 screws [1] and detach the fixing upper cover [2].



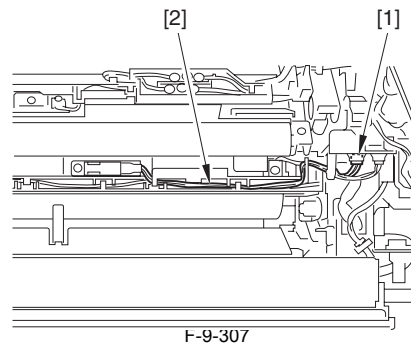
F-9-305

5) Detach the right cover [1].
- 2 screws [2]



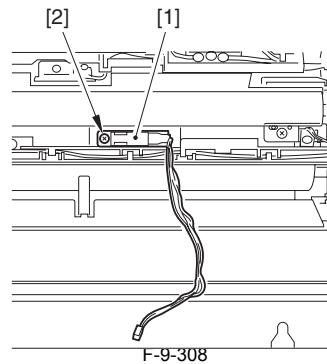
F-9-306

Removing the primary fixing roller main thermistor (THM301)
6) Disconnect the 1 connectors [1], free the 1 harnesses [2] from the harness guide.



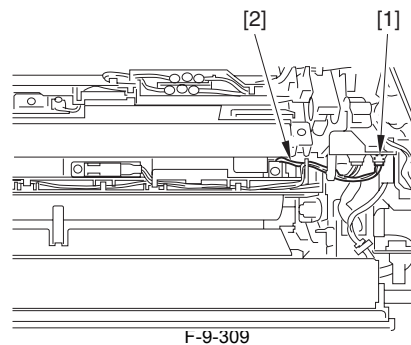
F-9-307

7) Remove the primary fixing main thermistor [1].
- 1 screw [2]



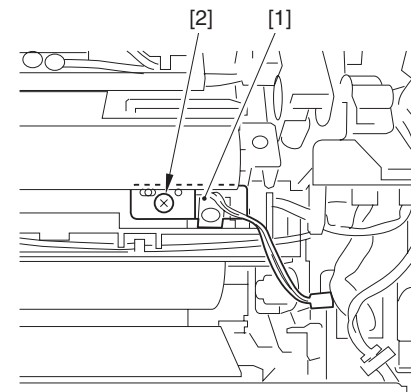
F-9-308

Removing the primary fixing roller sub thermistor (THM304)
6) Disconnect the 1 connector [1], free the 1 harness [2] from the harness guide.



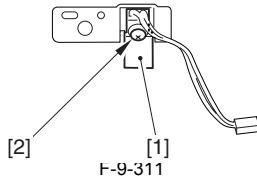
F-9-309

7) Remove the primary fixing sub thermistor [1] together with the support plate.
- 1 screw [2]



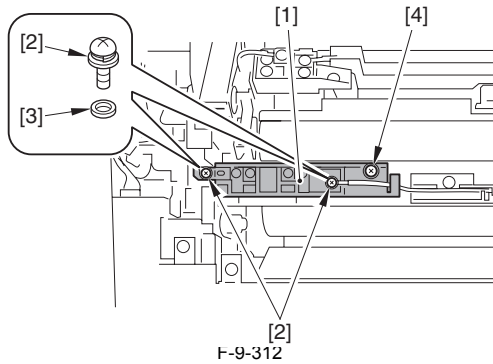
F-9-310

8) Remove the fixing sub thermistor [1].
- 1 screw [2]



Removing the primary fixing roller thermo switch (TP300)

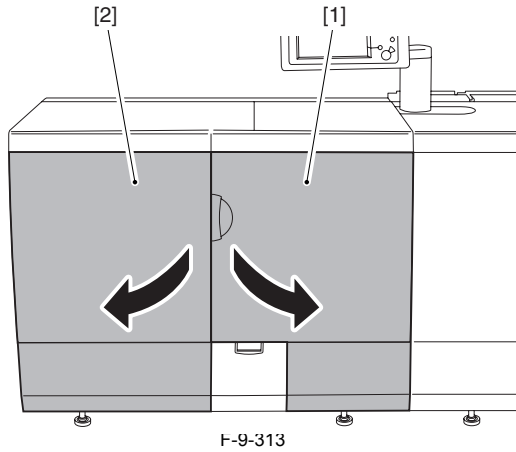
- 6) Remove the thermo switch [1].
 - 2 screws [2]
 - 2 washer [3]
 - 1 screw [4]



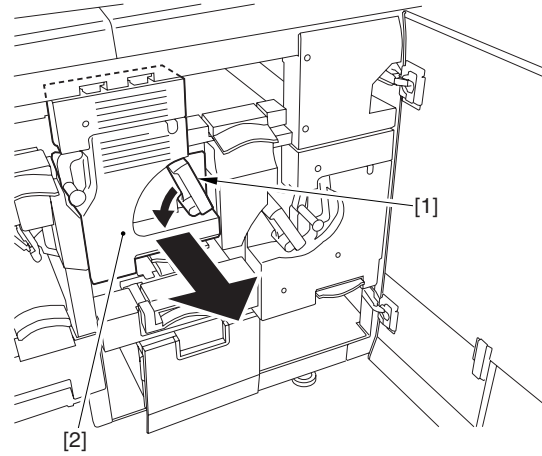
9.7.15.2 Removing Secondary Fixing Roller Main/Sub Thermistor (THM306/THM309), Secondary Fixing Roller Thermo Switch (TP304)

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

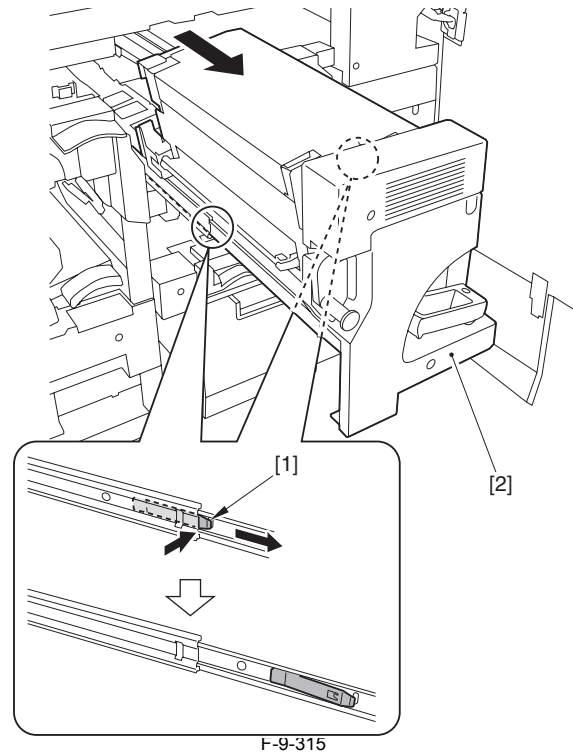
- 1) Open the sub station front right cover [1] and sub station front left cover [2].



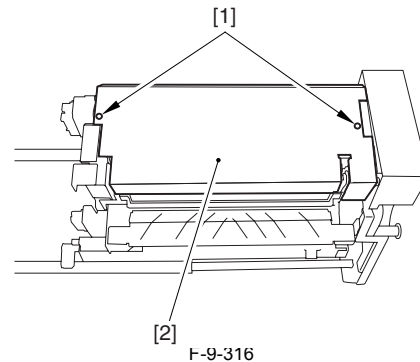
- 2) Tilt the release lever [1] in the direction of the arrow and slide out the secondary fixing assembly [2].



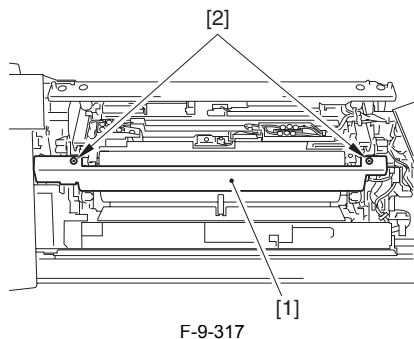
- 3) Disengage the 2 leaf springs [1] and slide out the secondary fixing assembly [2].



- 4) Loosen the 2 screws [1] and detach the fixing upper cover [2].



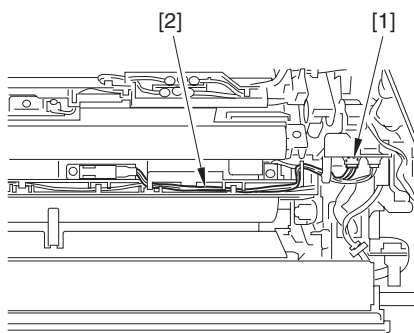
- 5) Detach the right cover [1].
 - 2 screws [2]



F-9-317

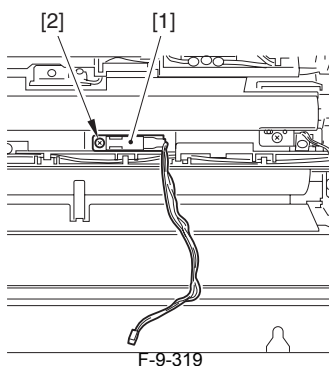
Removing the secondary fixing roller main thermistor (THM306)

- 6) Disconnect the 2 connectors [1] and free the 2 harnesses [2] from the harness guide.



F-9-318

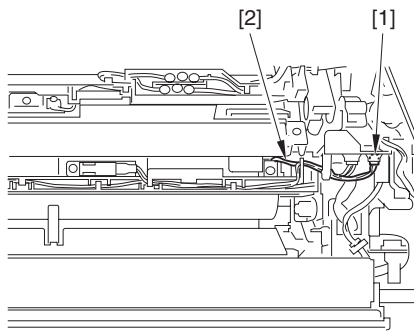
- 7) Remove the secondary main thermistor [1].
- 1 screw [2]



F-9-319

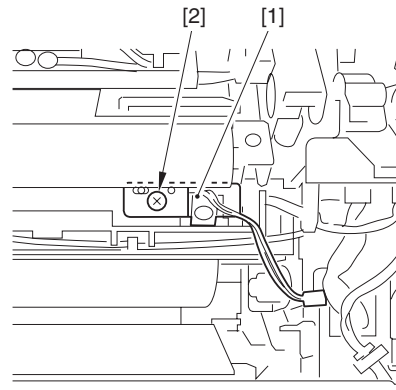
Removing the secondary fixing roller sub thermistor (THM309)

- 8) Disconnect the 2 connectors [1] and free the 2 harnesses [2] from the harness guide.



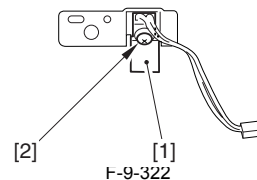
F-9-320

- 9) Remove the secondary fixing sub thermistor [1] together with the support plate.
- 1 screw [2]



F-9-321

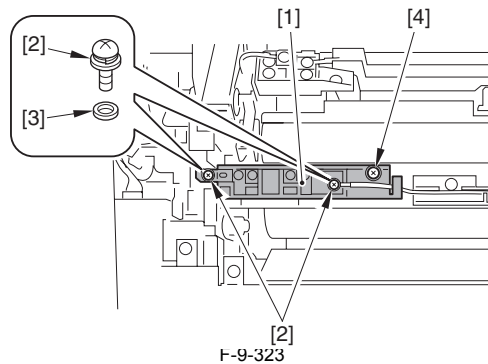
- 10) Remove the fixing sub thermistor [1].
- 1 screw [2]



F-9-322

Removing the secondary fixing roller thermo switch (TP304)

- 6) Remove the thermo switch [1].
- 2 screws [2]
- 2 washer [3]
- 1 screw [4]



F-9-323

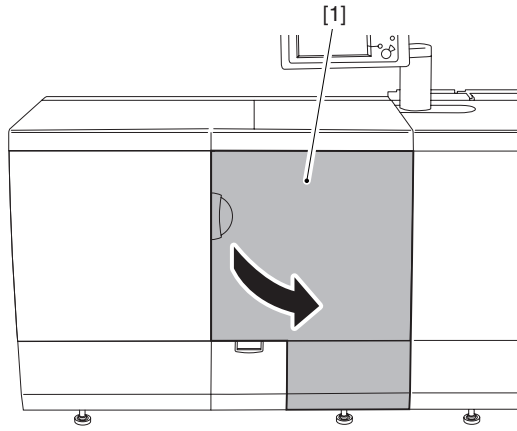
9.7.16 External Heat Thermistor

9.7.16.1 Removing Primary Fixing External Heating Thermistor

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

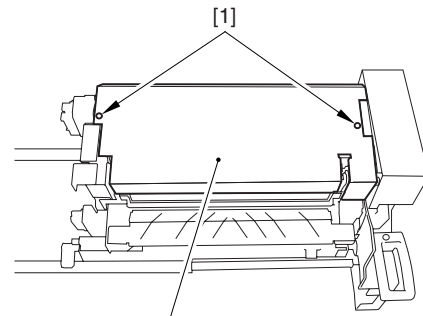
Upper roller: Main/sub thermistor (THM302M/302S)
Lower roller: Main/sub thermistor (THM303M/303S)

- 1) Open the sub station right front cover [1].



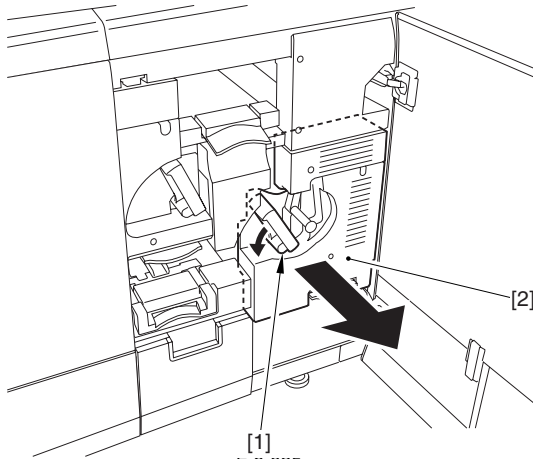
F-9-324

2) Shift the release lever [1] toward the direction of the arrow, and pull out the primary fixing assembly [2].



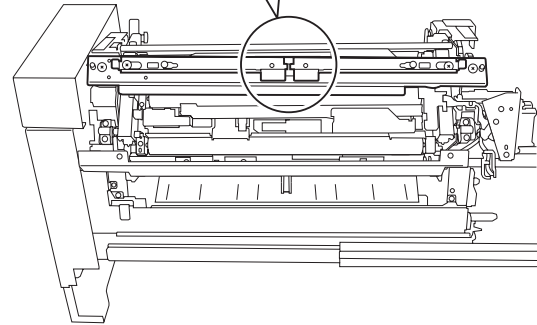
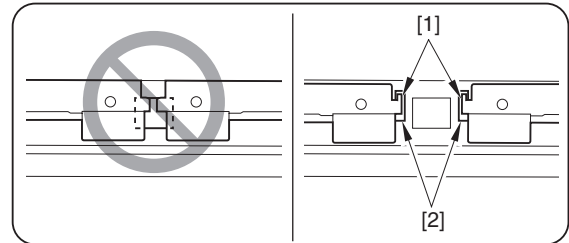
F-9-327

⚠ Points to note when attaching the fixing upper cover
 In case of failure to attach the fixing upper cover to the fixing assembly, check the release lever claw [1] on the pressure plate is inserted into the pressure plate hole [2] appropriately.



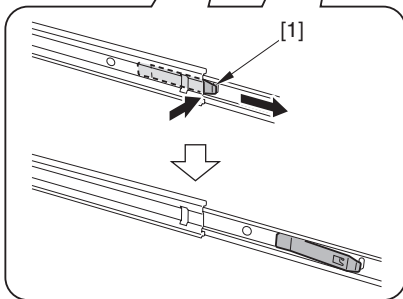
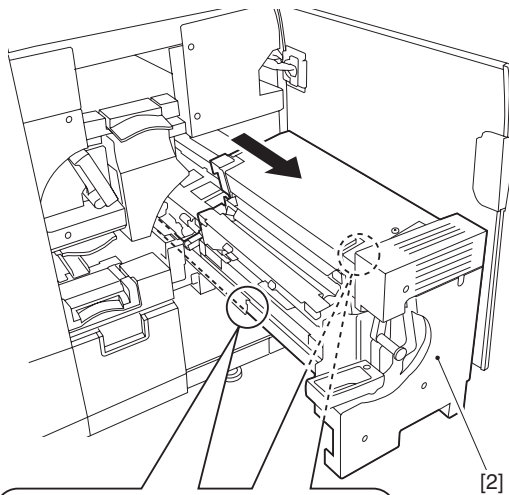
F-9-325

3) Release the 2 leaf springs [1], and pull out the primary fixing assembly [2] further.



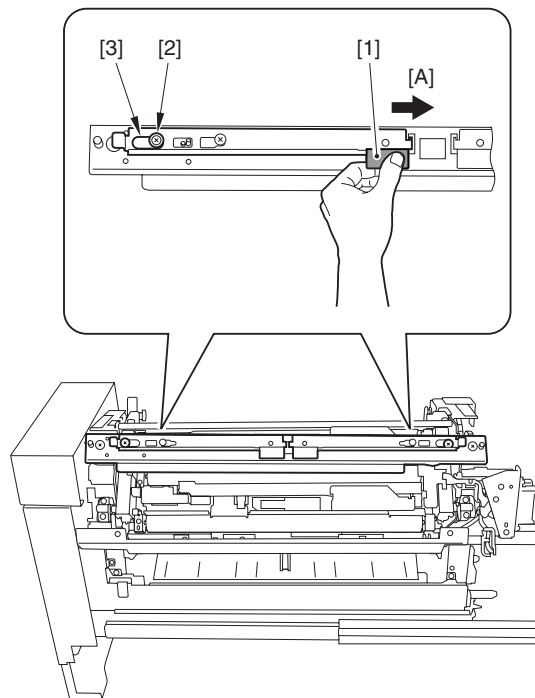
F-9-328

5) While pulling up the release lever tub [1], move the release lever in the [A] direction until the screw shaft [2] touches the long hole [3].



F-9-326

4) Loosen the 2 screws [1], and detach the fixing upper cover [2].

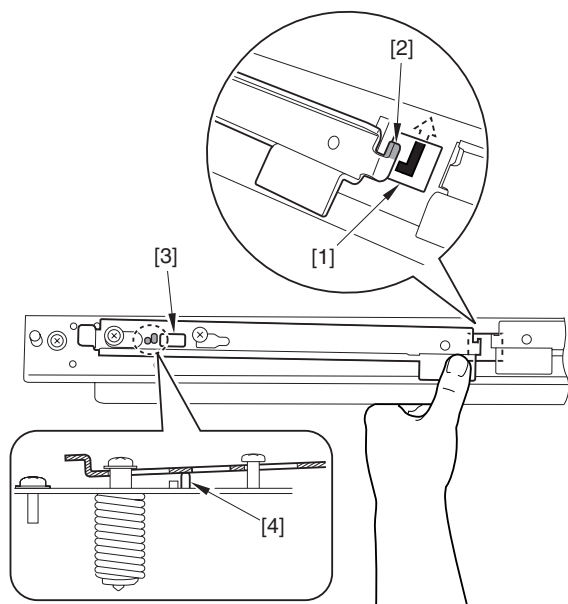


F-9-329

6) Hook the release lever claw [2] onto the pressure plate hole [1] to lock.



When locking the release lever, see the long hole [3] from above to check the pressure release support shaft [4] cannot be seen.

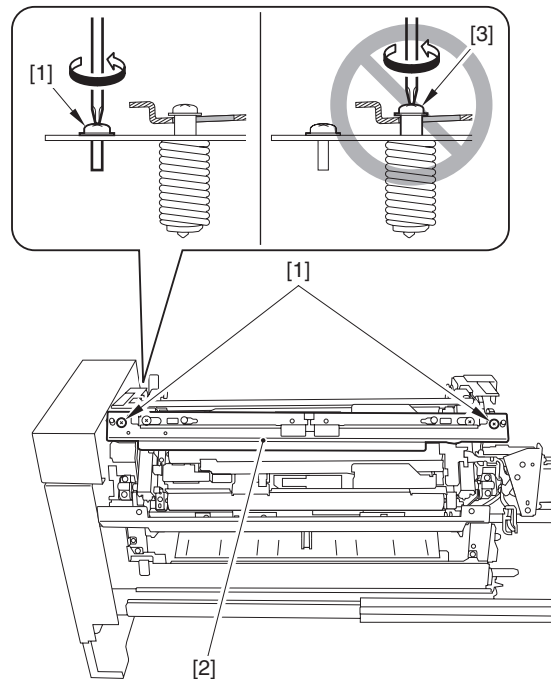


F-9-330

7) Remove the 2 screws [1] and detach the outside heat pressure plate [2].



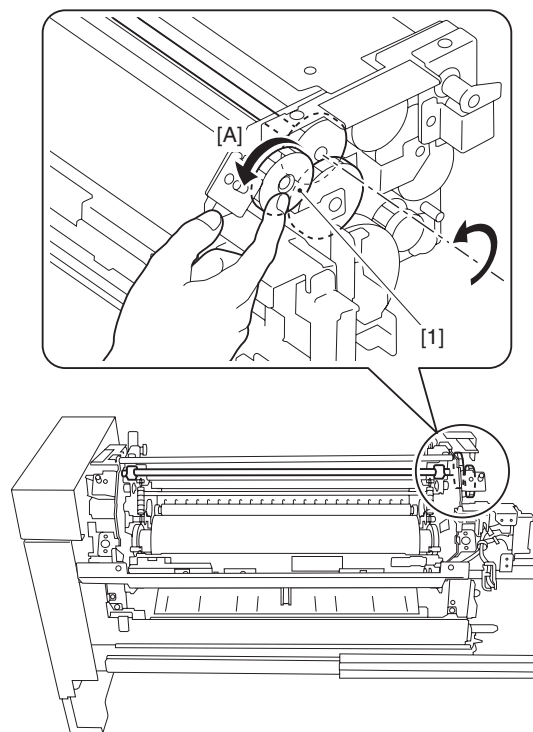
The screw [3] on the outside heat pressure shaft **MUST NOT** be rotated.



F-9-331

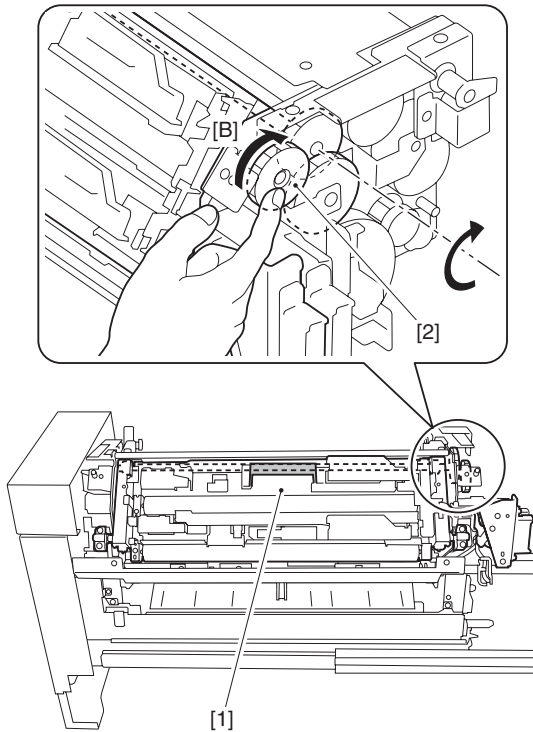
⚠ Points to note when attaching the outside heat pressure plate

- Before mounting the outside heat roller unit to the fixing assembly, rotate the side of the gear [1] with hand in the [A] direction (counter clockwise) until it stops (approximately 1 full turn).



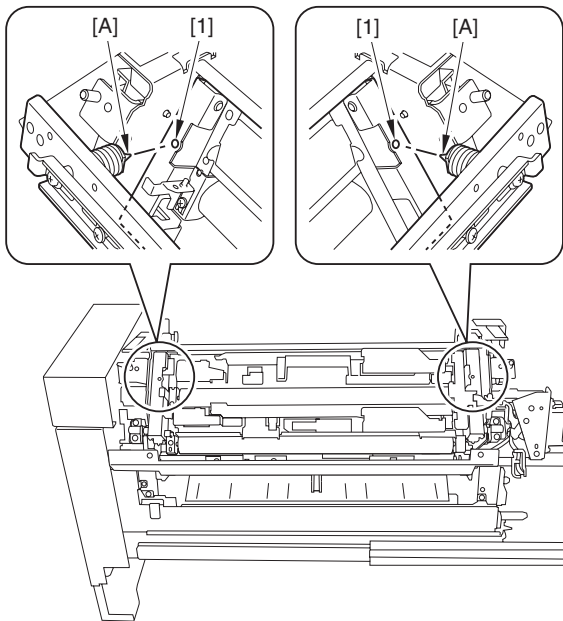
F-9-332

- After mounting the outside heat unit [1] to the fixing assembly, rotate the side of the gear [2] with hand in the [B] direction (clockwise) until the gear [2] stops (approximately 3/4-turn) and thus, outside heat roller unit is separated from the fixing roller.



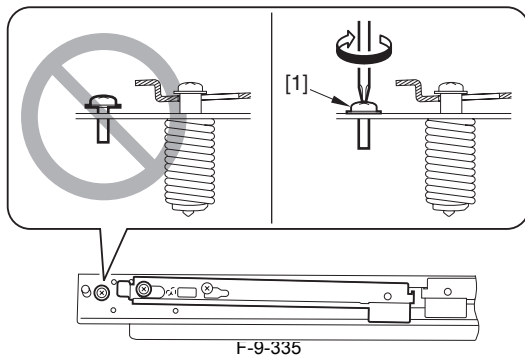
F-9-333

- Mount the leading edge [A] of the outside heat pressure shaft into the outside heat unit hole [1].



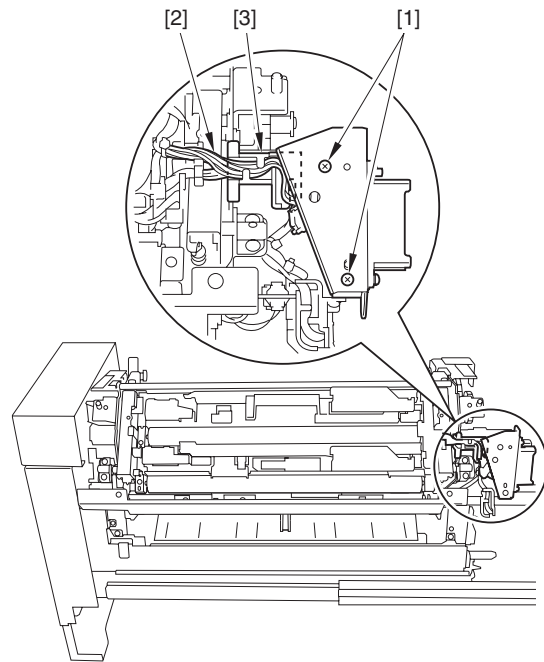
F-9-334

- When attaching the pressure plate, tighten the screw [1] firmly until it stops.



F-9-335

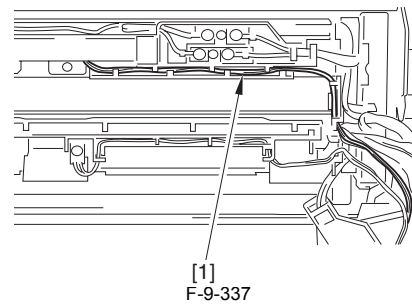
8) Remove the 2 screws [1] and free the harness [2] from the harness guide [3].



F-9-336

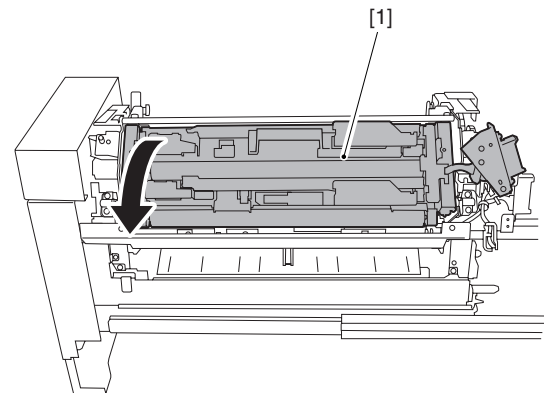
Removing Primary Fixing External Heating Upper Roller Main/Sub Thermistor (THM302M/302S)

9) Free the harness [1] from the harness guide.



F-9-337

10) Open the primary fixing external heating unit [1].



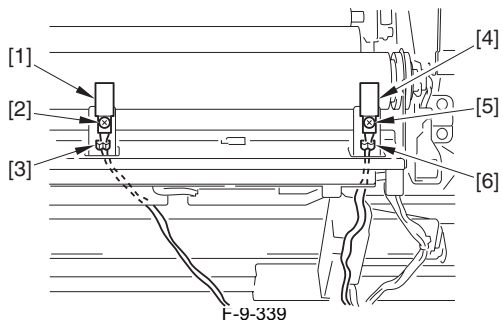
F-9-338

11) Remove the primary fixing external heating upper main thermistor [1].

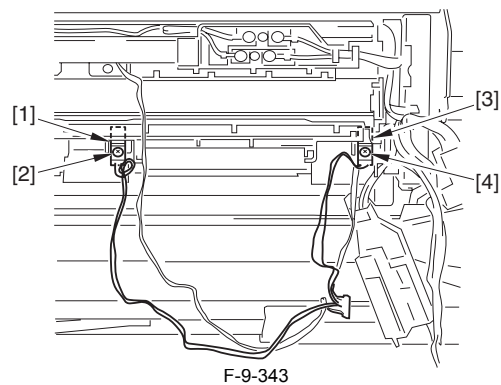
- 1 screw [2]
- 1 harness (free the harness from the wire saddle [3])

12) Remove the primary fixing external heating upper sub thermistor [4].

- 1 screw [5]
- 1 harness (free the harness from the wire saddle [6])

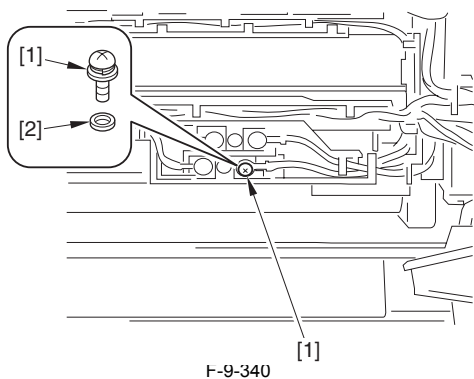


- 1 screw [2]
- 13) Remove the primary fixing external heating lower sub thermistor [3].
- 1 screw [4]



Removing Primary Fixing External Heating Lower Roller Main/Sub Thermistor (THM303M/303S)

9) Remove the screw [1] and washer [2].



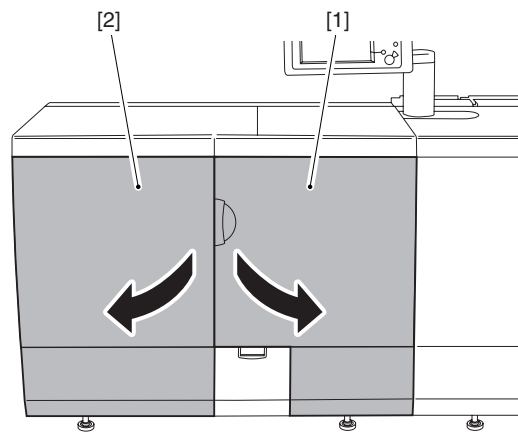
9.7.16.2 Removing Secondary Fixing External Heating Thermistor

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

Upper roller: Main/sub thermistor (THM307M/307S)
Lower roller: Main/sub thermistor (THM308M/308S)

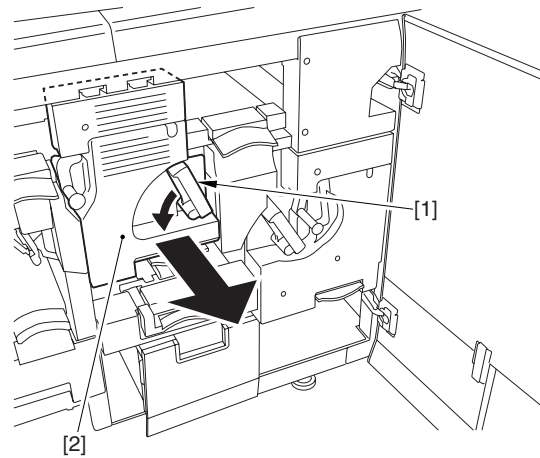
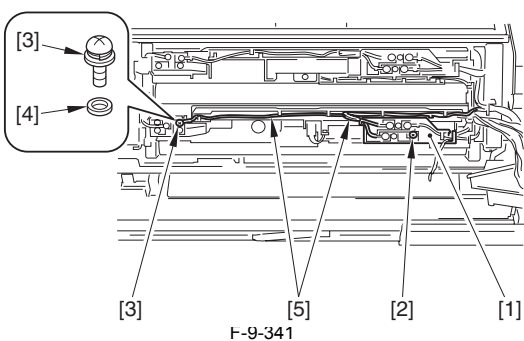
1) Open the sub station right front cover [1] and the sub station left front cover [2].

- 10) Remove the terminal mount [1].
- 1 screw [2]
 - 1 screw [3]
 - 1 washer [4]
 - 2 harnesses [5] (free the 2 harnesses from the harness guide)

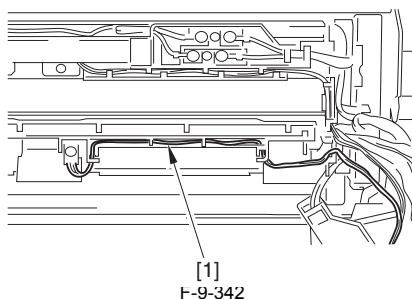


⚠
Be sure not to pull the harness by force. Otherwise, it may get damage.

2) Shift the release lever [1] toward the direction of the arrow, and pull out the secondary fixing assembly [2].

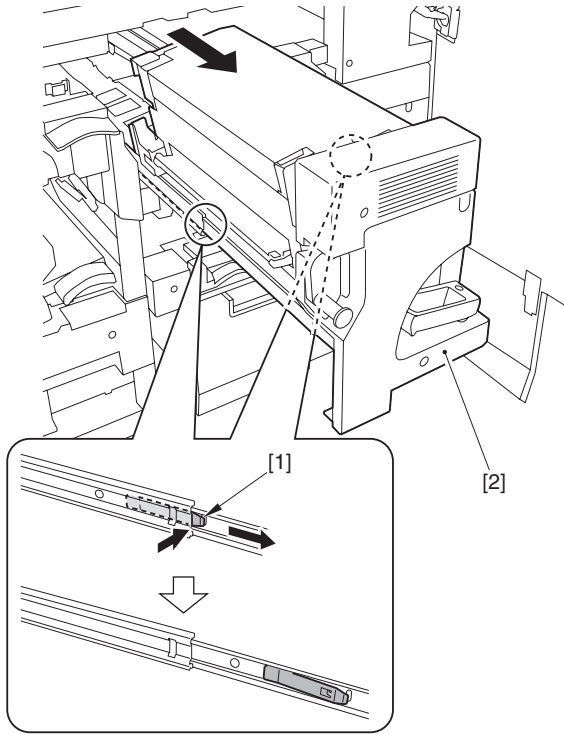


11) Free the harness [1] from the harness guide.



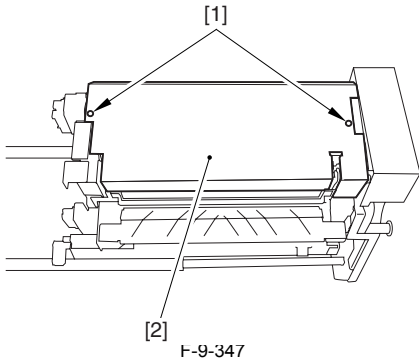
3) Release the 2 leaf springs [1], and pull out the secondary fixing assembly [2] further.

12) Remove the primary fixing external heating lower main thermistor [1].



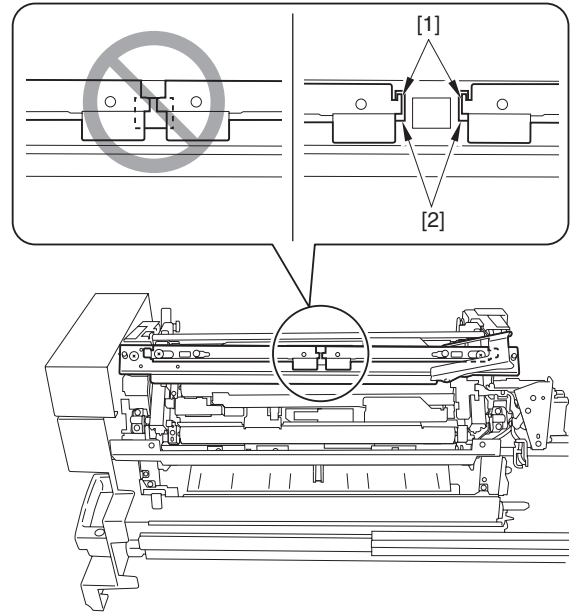
F-9-346

4) Loosen the 2 screws [1], and detach the fixing upper cover [2].



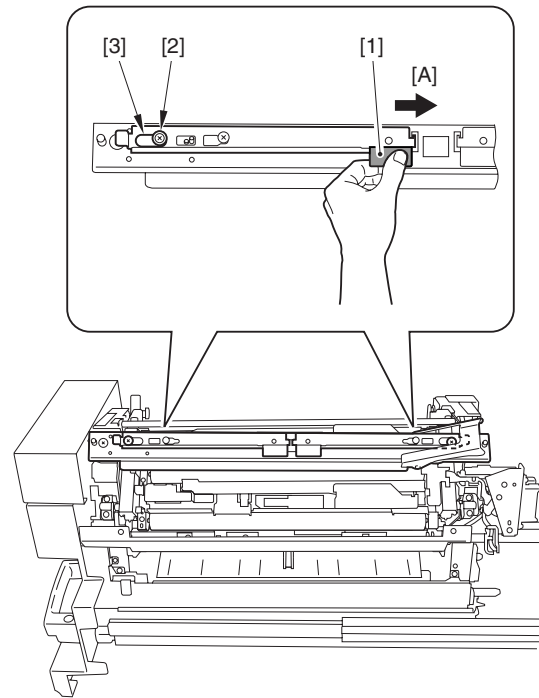
F-9-347

⚠ Points to note when attaching the fixing upper cover
 In case of failure to attach the fixing upper cover to the fixing assembly, check the release lever claw [1] on the pressure plate is inserted into the pressure plate hole [2] appropriately.



F-9-348

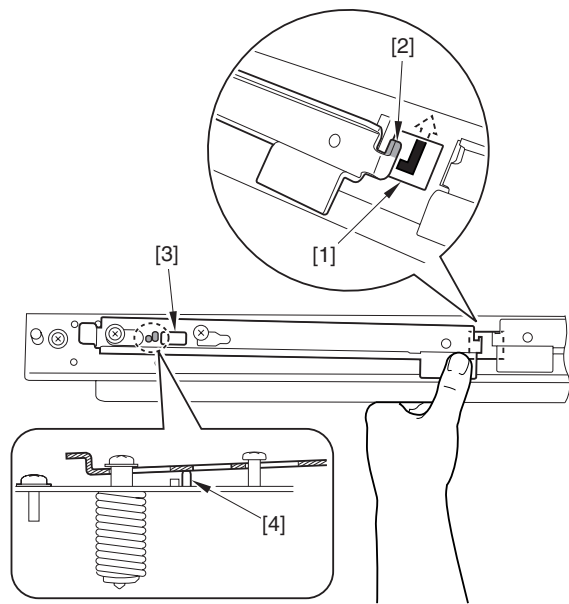
5) While pulling up the release lever tub [1], move the release lever in the [A] direction until the screw shaft [2] touches the long hole [3].



F-9-349

6) Hook the release lever claw [2] onto the pressure plate hole [1] to lock.

⚠ When locking the release lever, see the long hole [3] from above to check the pressure release support shaft [4] cannot be seen.

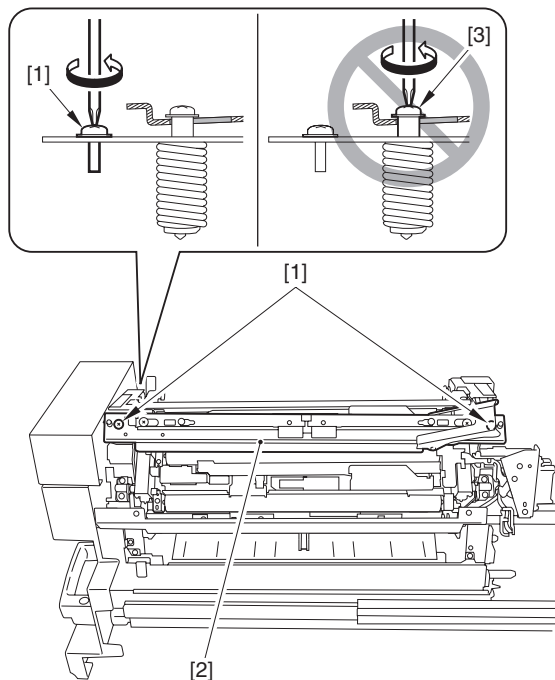


F-9-350

7) Remove the 2 screws [1] and detach the outside heat pressure plate [2].



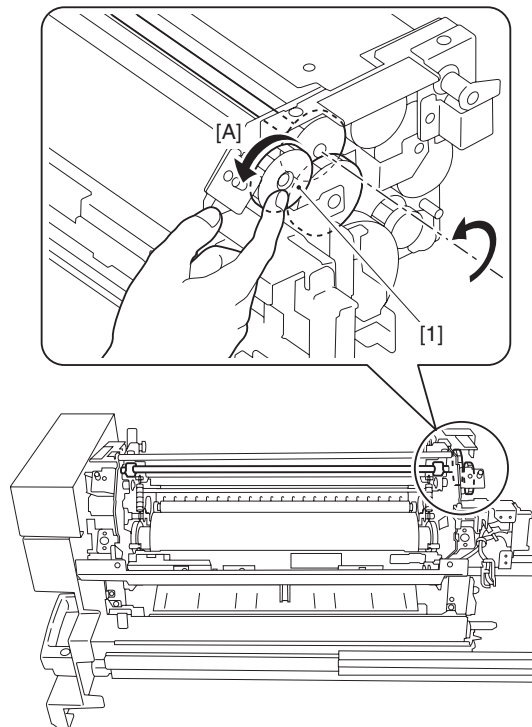
The screw [3] on the outside heat pressure shaft **MUST NOT** be rotated.



F-9-351

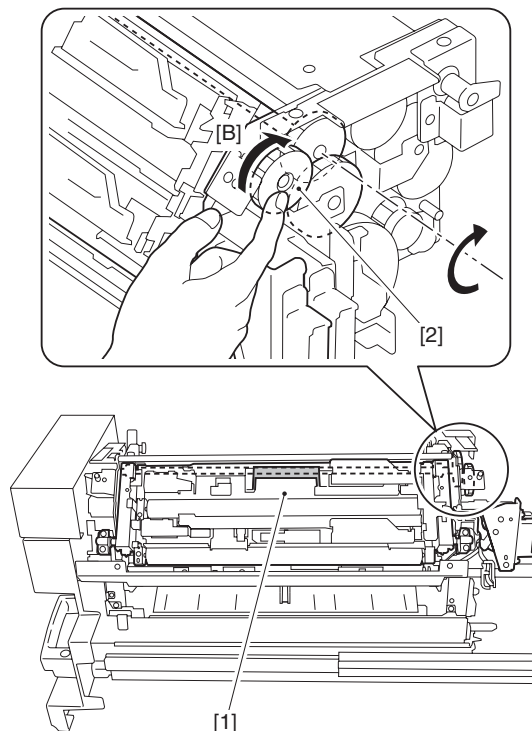


Points to note when attaching the outside heat pressure plate
- Before mounting the outside heat roller unit to the fixing assembly, rotate the side of the gear [1] with hand in the [A] direction (counter clockwise) until it stops (approximately 1 full turn).



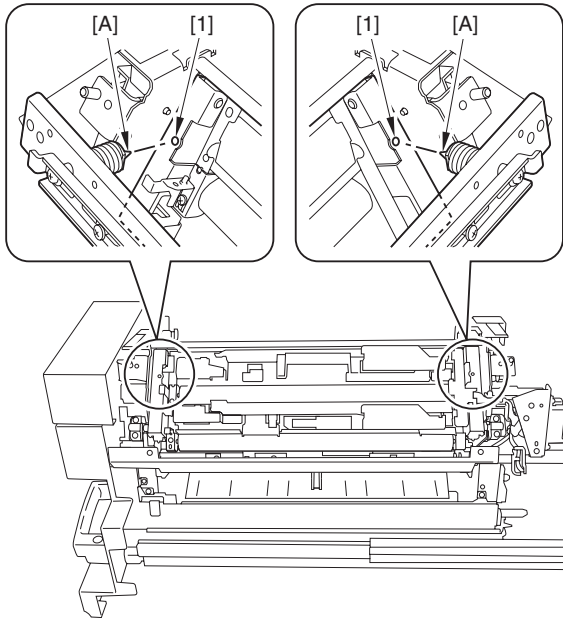
F-9-352

- After mounting the outside heat unit [1] to the fixing assembly, rotate the side of the gear [2] with hand in the [B] direction (clockwise) until the gear [2] stops (approximately 3/4-turn) and thus, outside heat roller unit is separated from the roller.



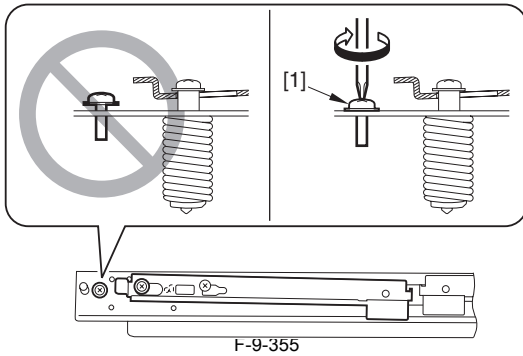
F-9-353

- Mount the leading edge [A] of the outside heat pressure shaft into the outside heat unit hole [1].



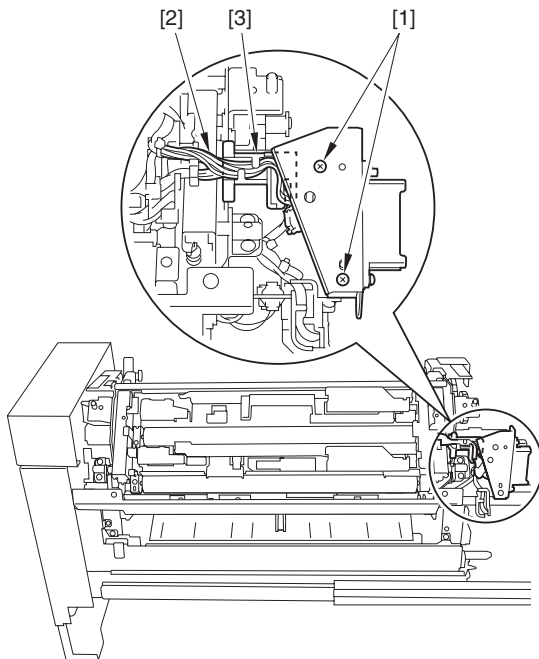
F-9-354

- When attaching the pressure plate, tighten the screw [1] firmly until it stops.



F-9-355

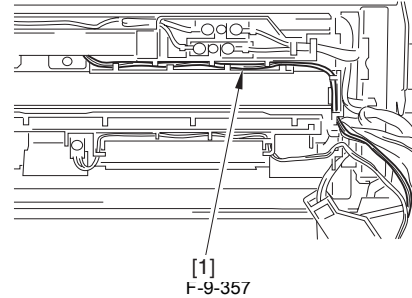
8) Remove the 2 screws [1] and free the harness [2] from the harness guide [3].



F-9-356

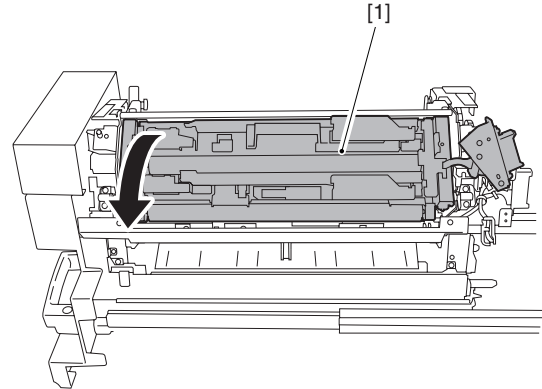
Removing Secondary Fixing External Heating Upper Roller Main/Sub Thermistor (THM307M/307S)

9) Free the harness [1] from the harness guide.



[1]
F-9-357

10) Open the secondary fixing external heating unit [1].



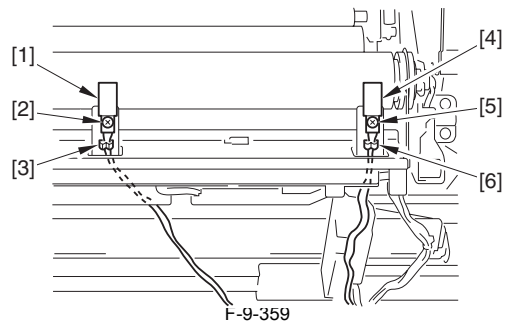
F-9-358

11) Remove the secondary fixing external heating upper main thermistor [1].

- 1 screw [2]
- 1 harness (free the harness from the wire saddle [3])

12) Remove the secondary fixing external heating upper sub thermistor [4].

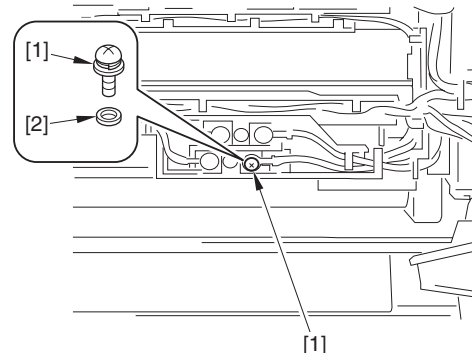
- 1 screw [5]
- 1 harness (free the harness from the wire saddle [6])



F-9-359

Removing Secondary Fixing External Heating Lower Roller Main/Sub Thermistor (THM308M/308S)

9) Remove the screw [1] and washer [2].



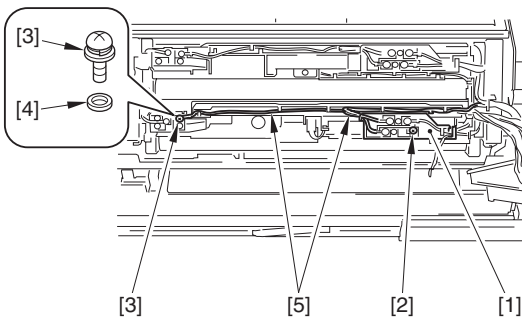
F-9-360

10) Remove the terminal mount [1].

- 1 screw [2]
- 1 screw [3]
- 1 washer [4]
- 2 harnesses [5] (free the 2 harnesses from the harness guide)

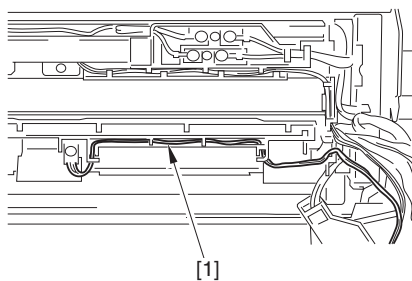


Be sure not to pull the harness by force. Otherwise, it may get damage.



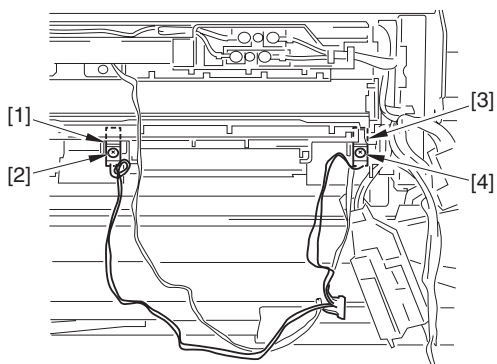
F-9-361

11) Free the harness [1] from the harness guide.



F-9-362

- 12) Remove the secondary fixing external heating lower main thermistor [1].
- 1 screw [2]
- 13) Remove the secondary fixing external heating lower sub thermistor [3].
- 1 screw [4]



F-9-363

9.7.17 Inlet Thermistor

9.7.17.1 Removing Inlet Thermistor

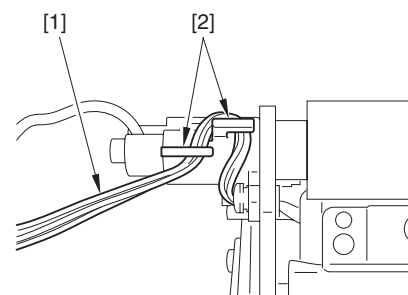
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- 1) Remove the fixing belt.
- 2) Remove the fixing belt unit from the sub station inner cover 1, and place it on a paper.



Be sure to cover the fixing belt unit with a paper, and not to touch the roller with bare hands.

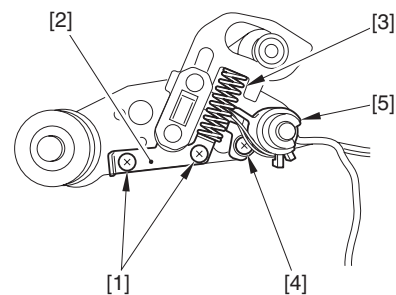
3) Free the harness [1] from the 2 guides [2].



F-9-364

4) Remove the following parts.

- 2 screws [1]
- 1 spring retainer [2]
- 1 spring [3]
- 1 screw [4]
- 1 contact cover [5]

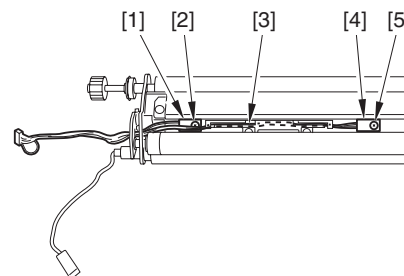


F-9-365

5) Remove the inlet sub thermistor [1].

- 1 screw [2]

6) Free the harness [3] from the harness guide, and remove the inlet main thermistor [4].
- 1 screw [5]



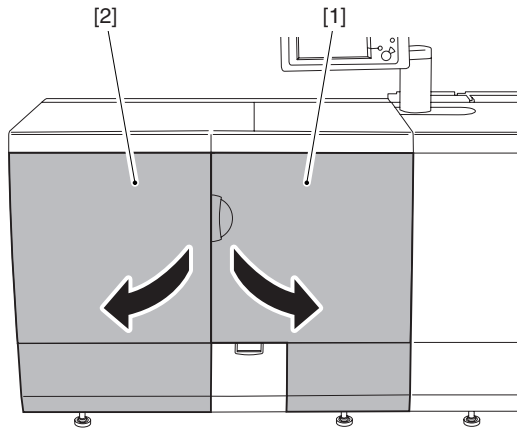
F-9-366

9.7.18 Fixing Locking Thermal Switch

9.7.18.1 Removing Fixing Pressure Thermal Switch, Fixing Pressure Thermistor

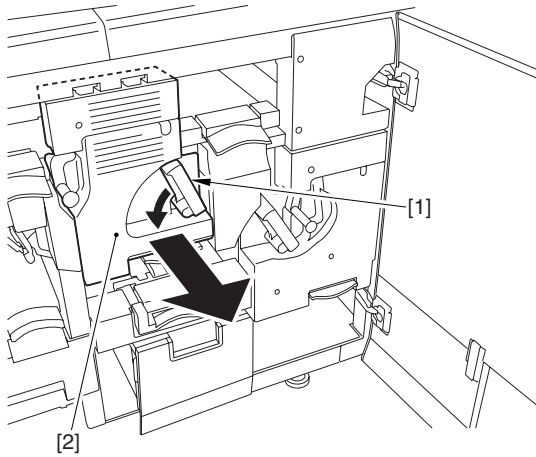
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- 1) Open the sub station front right door [1] and the sub station front left door [2].



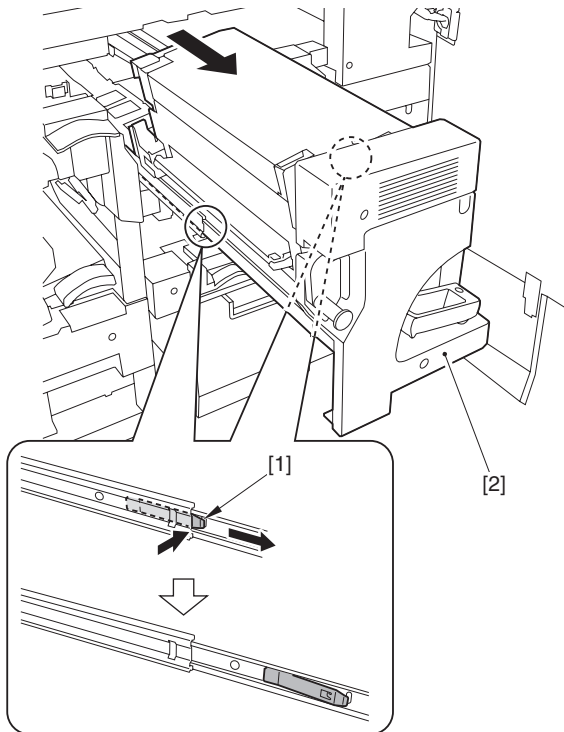
F-9-367

2) Disengage the release lever [1] in the direction of the arrow to pull out the secondary fixing assembly [2].



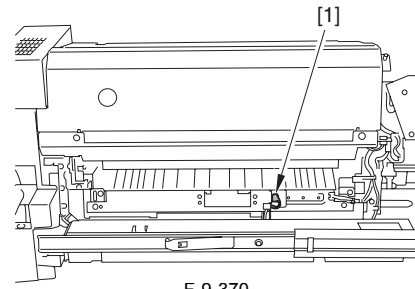
F-9-368

3) Disengage the 2 leaf springs [1] to slide out the secondary fixing assembly [2] further.



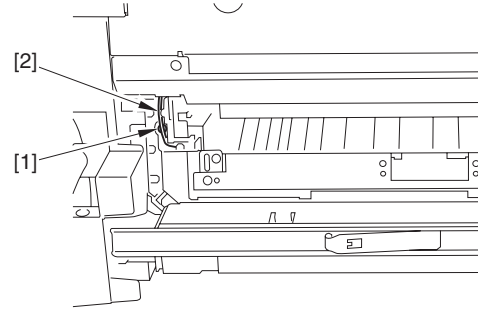
F-9-369

4) Disconnect the connector [1].



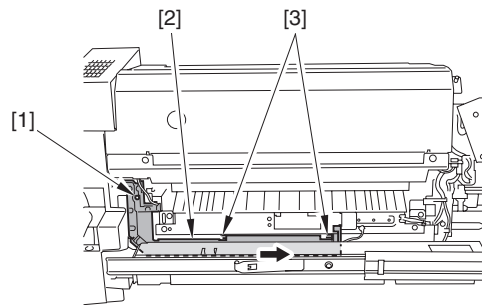
F-9-370

5) Free the cable [2] over the screw [1] from the harness guide.



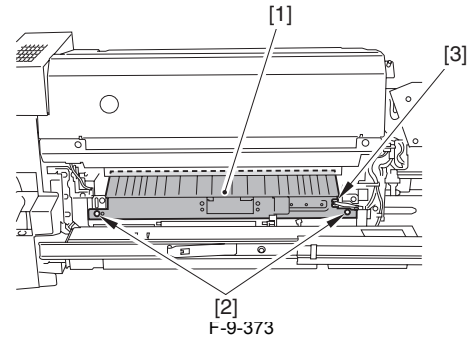
F-9-371

6) Remove the screw [1] and move the harness guide [2] to the right to remove the 2 claws [3].



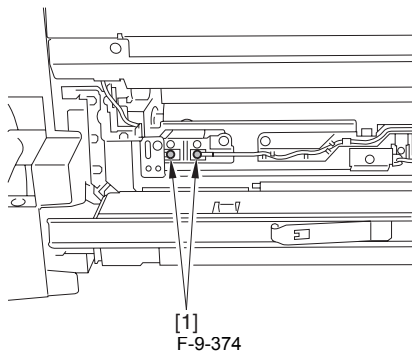
F-9-372

7) Remove the inlet guide [1].
 -2 screws [2]
 -1 edge saddle [3] (remove the edge saddle from the plate)

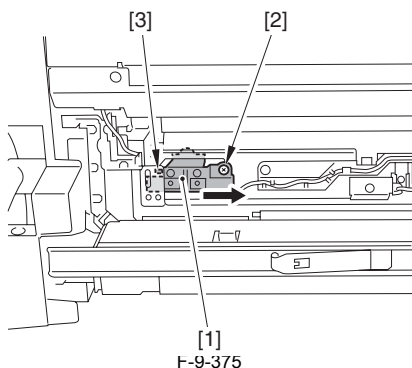


F-9-373

In case of removing the fixing pressure Thermal switch:
 8) Remove the 2 screws [1].

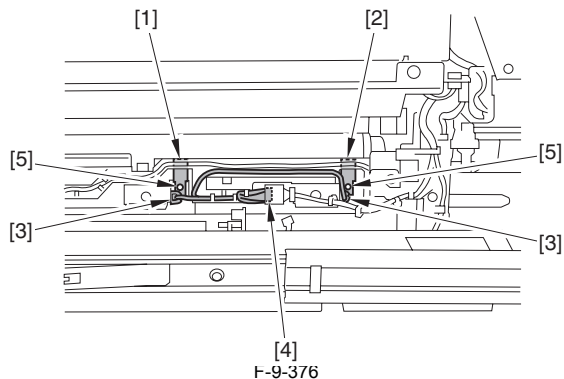


- 9) Shift the fixing pressure Thermal switch [1] in the direction of the arrow to remove.
 -1 screw [2]
 -pin [3]: 1 location



In case of removing the fixing pressure thermistor:

- 8) Remove the fixing pressure main thermistor [1] and fixing pressure sub thermistor [2].
 -Harness (1 wire saddle [3] for each location)
 -1 connector [4]
 -1 screw [5] each

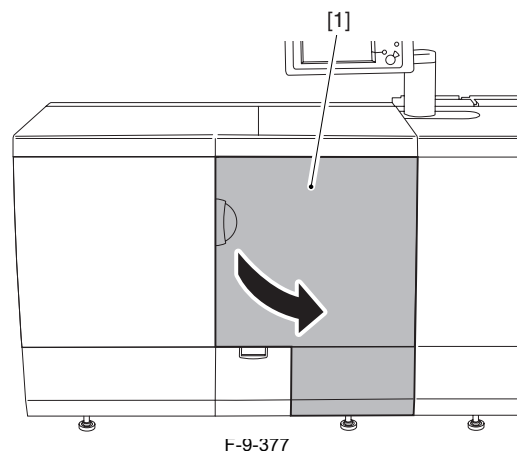


9.7.19 Thermal Switch

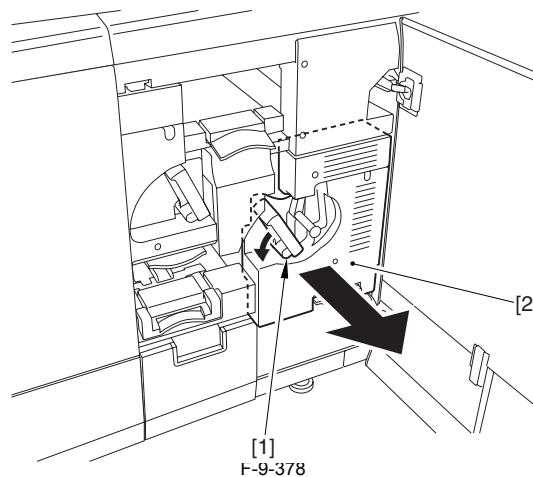
9.7.19.1 Removing Primary Fixing External Heating Roller Upper/Lower Thermoswitch (TP302/303)

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

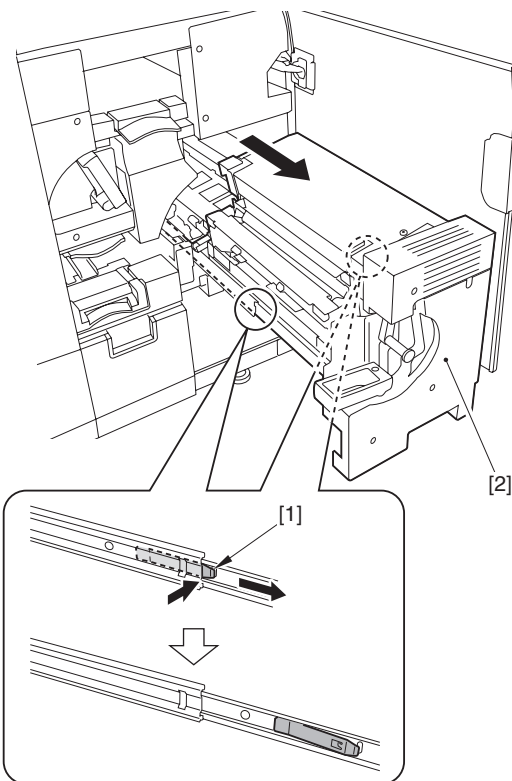
- 1) Open the sub station right front cover [1].



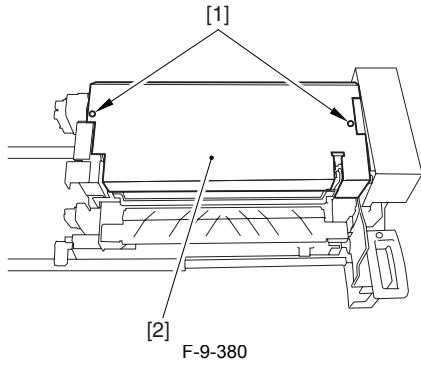
- 2) Shift the release lever [1] toward the direction of the arrow, and pull out the primary fixing assembly [2].



- 3) Release the 2 leaf springs [1], and pull out the primary fixing assembly [2] further.

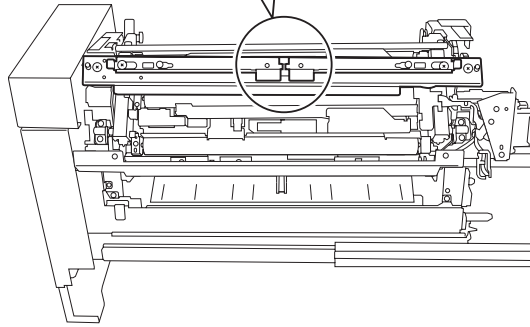
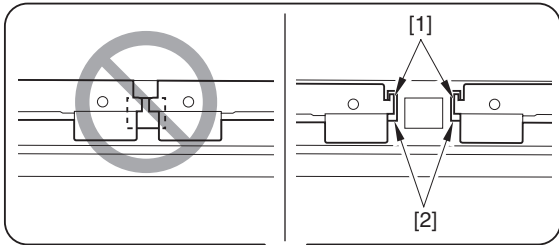


- 4) Loosen the 2 screws [1], and detach the fixing upper cover [2].



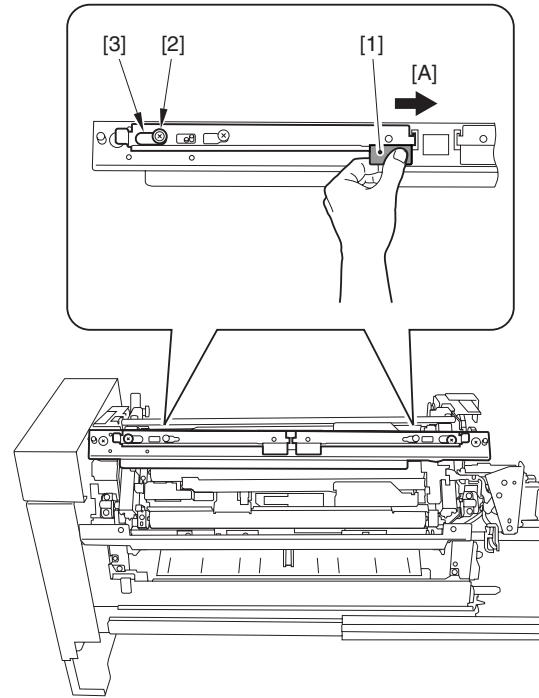
F-9-380

⚠ Points to note when attaching the fixing upper cover
 In case of failure to attach the fixing upper cover to the fixing assembly, check the release lever claw [1] on the pressure plate is inserted into the pressure plate hole [2] appropriately.



F-9-381

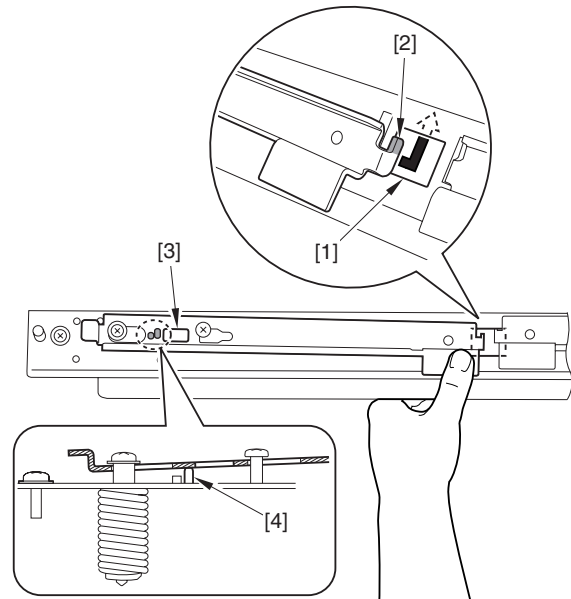
5) While pulling up the release lever tub [1], move the release lever in the [A] direction until the screw shaft [2] touches the long hole [3].



F-9-382

6) Hook the release lever claw [2] onto the pressure plate hole [1] to lock.

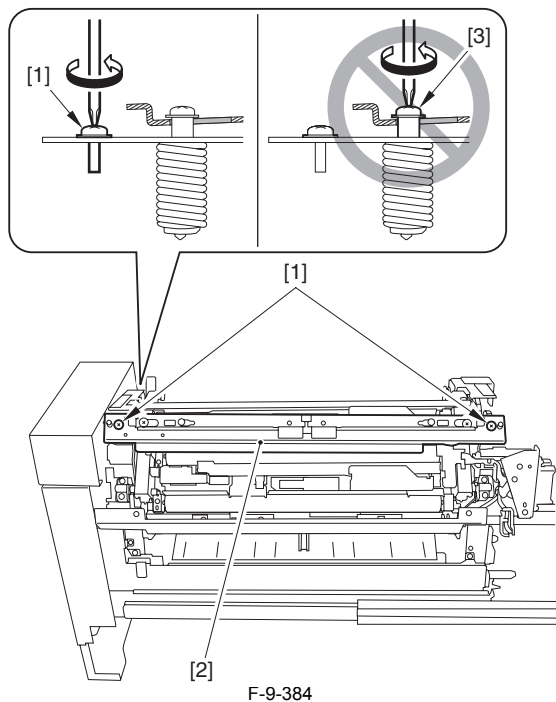
⚠ When locking the release lever, see the long hole [3] from above to check the pressure release support shaft [4] cannot be seen.



F-9-383

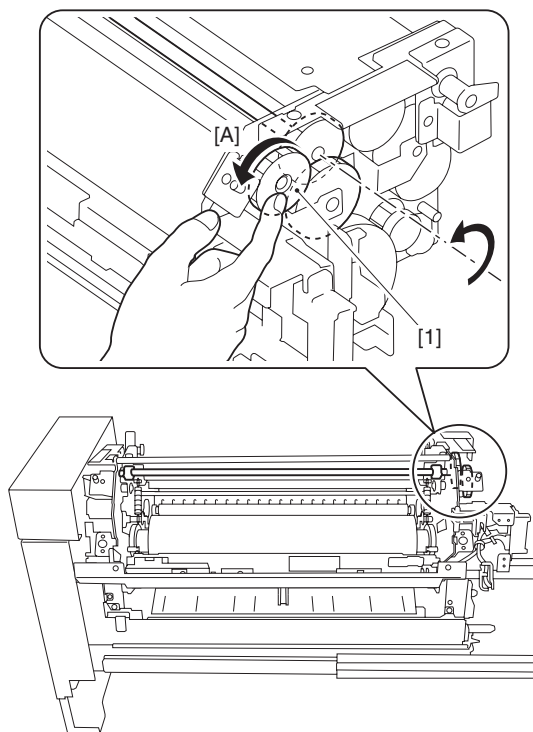
7) Remove the 2 screws [1] and detach the outside heat pressure plate [2].

⚠ The screw [3] on the outside heat pressure shaft **MUST NOT** be rotated.



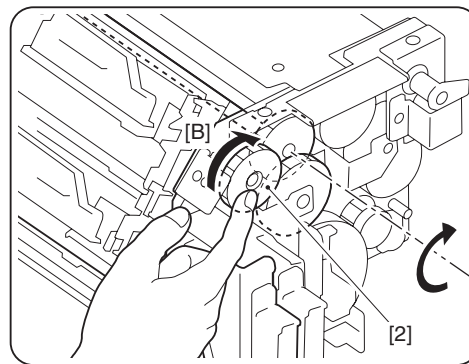
F-9-384

⚠ Points to note when attaching the outside heat pressure plate
 - Before mounting the outside heat roller unit to the fixing assembly, rotate the side of the gear [1] with hand in the [A] direction (counter clockwise) until it stops (approximately 1 full turn).



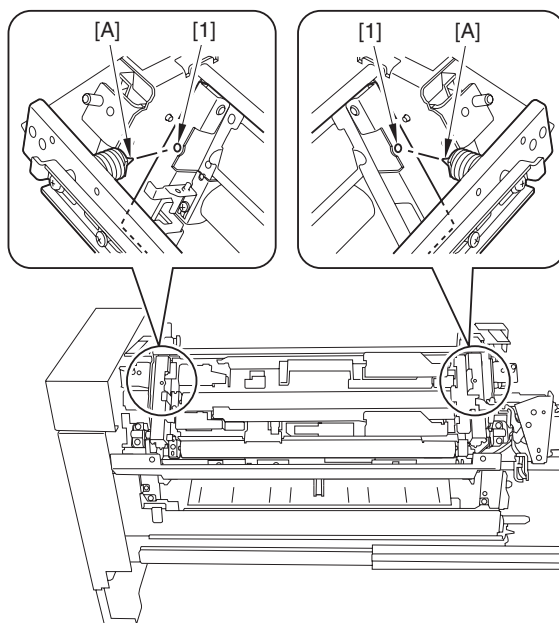
F-9-385

- After mounting the outside heat unit [1] to the fixing assembly, rotate the side of the gear [2] with hand in the [B] direction (clockwise) until the gear [2] stops (approximately 3/4-turn) and thus, outside heat roller unit is separated from the fixing roller.



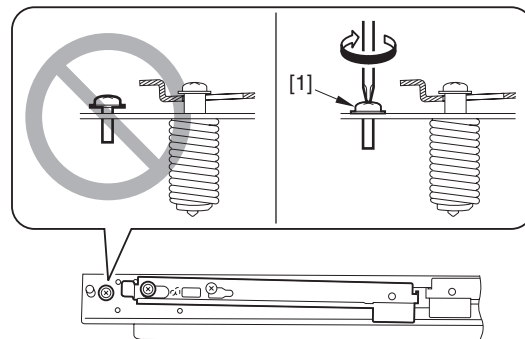
F-9-386

- Mount the leading edge [A] of the outside heat pressure shaft into the outside heat unit hole [1].



F-9-387

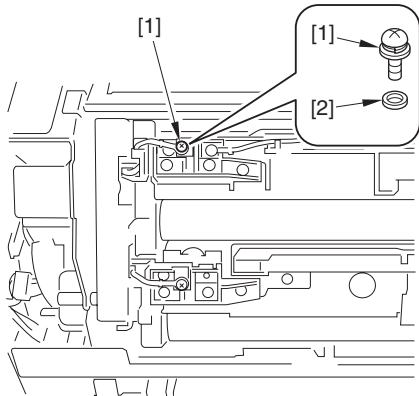
- When attaching the pressure plate, tighten the screw [1] firmly until it stops.



F-9-388

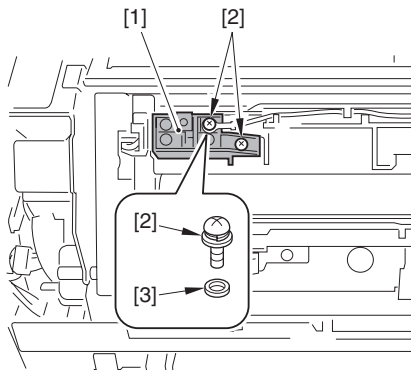
Removing Primary Fixing External Heating Upper Roller Thermoswitch (TP302)

9) Remove the 1 screw [1] and 1 washer [2].



F-9-389

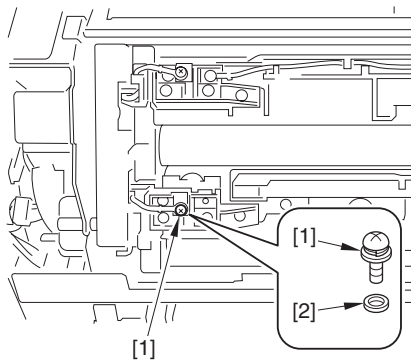
10) Remove the primary fixing external heating upper thermoswitch [1].
 - 2 screws [2]
 - 1 washer [3]



F-9-390

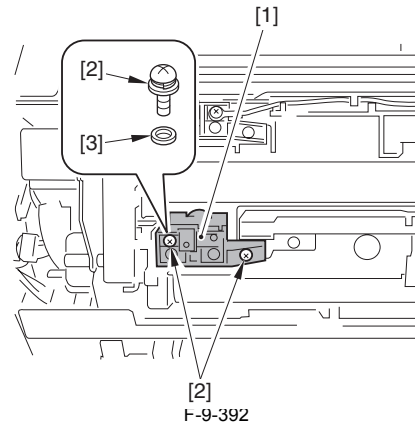
Removing Primary Fixing External Heating Lower Roller Thermoswitch (TP303)

9) Remove the 1 screw [1] and 1 washer [2].



F-9-391

10) Remove the primary fixing external heating lower thermoswitch [1].
 - 2 screws [2]
 - 1 washer [3]

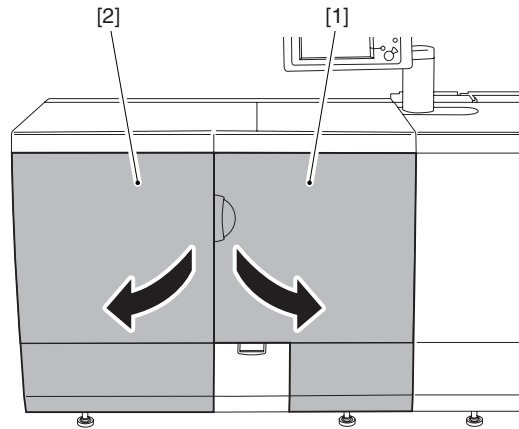


F-9-392

9.7.19.2 Removing Secondary Fixing External Heating Roller Upper/Lower Thermoswitch (TP306/307)

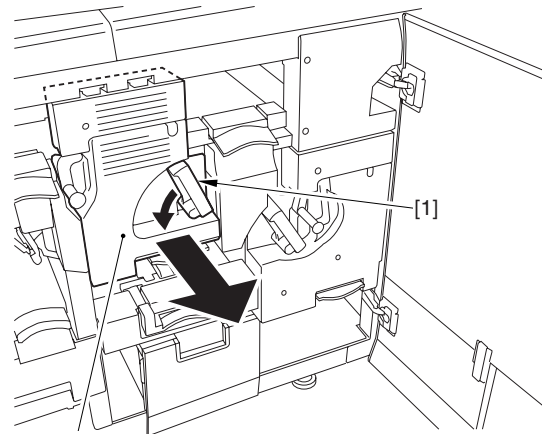
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

1) Open the sub station right front cover [1] and the sub station left front cover [2].



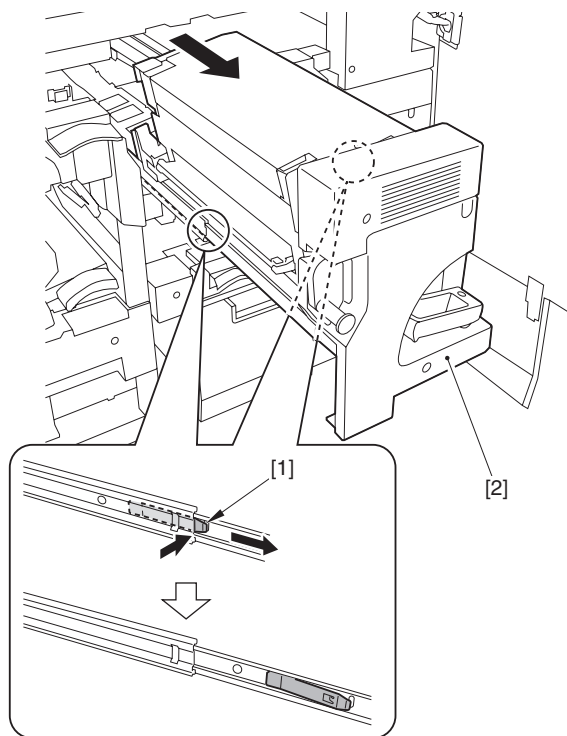
F-9-393

2) Shift the release lever [1] toward the direction of the arrow, and pull out the secondary fixing assembly [2].



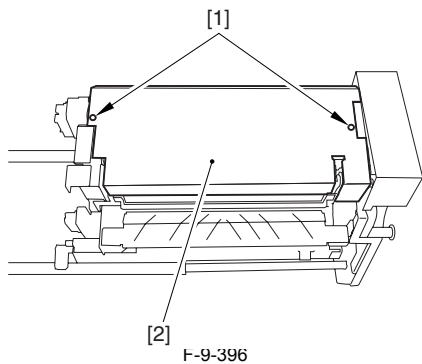
F-9-394

3) Release the 2 leaf springs [1], and pull out the secondary fixing assembly [2] further.



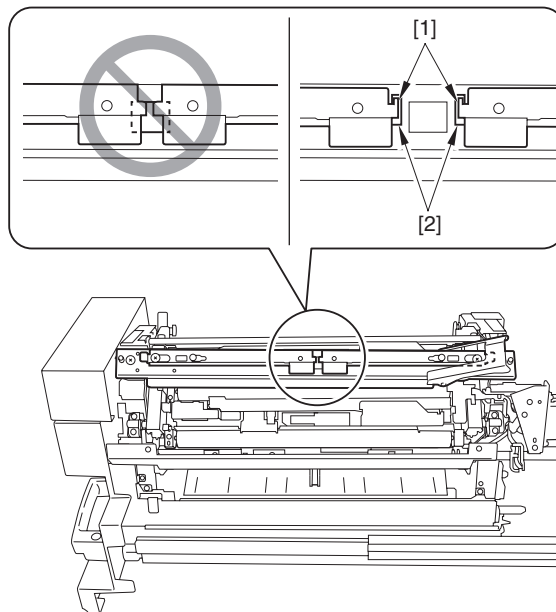
F-9-395

4) Loosen the 2 screws [1], and detach the fixing upper cover [2].



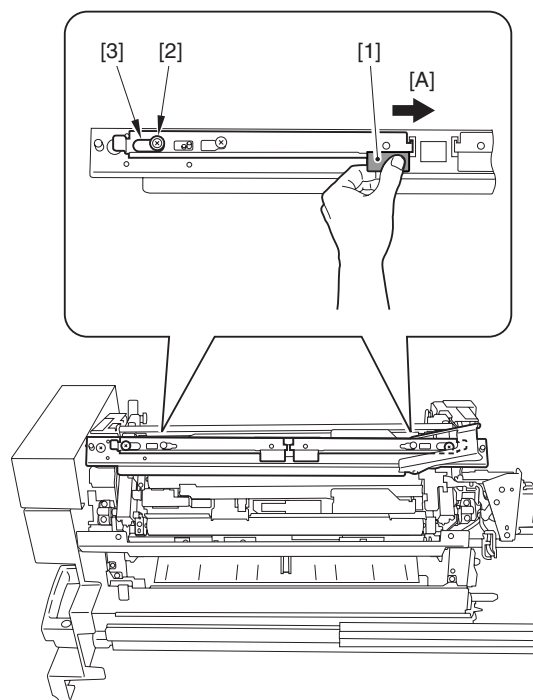
F-9-396

⚠ Points to note when attaching the fixing upper cover
In case of failure to attach the fixing upper cover to the fixing assembly, check the release lever claw [1] on the pressure plate is inserted into the pressure plate hole [2] appropriately.



F-9-397

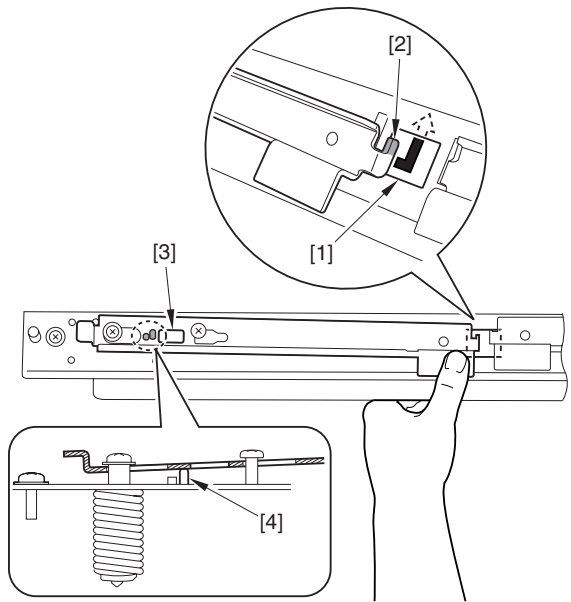
5) While pulling up the release lever tub [1], move the release lever in the [A] direction until the screw shaft [2] touches the long hole [3].



F-9-398

6) Hook the release lever claw [2] onto the pressure plate hole [1] to lock.

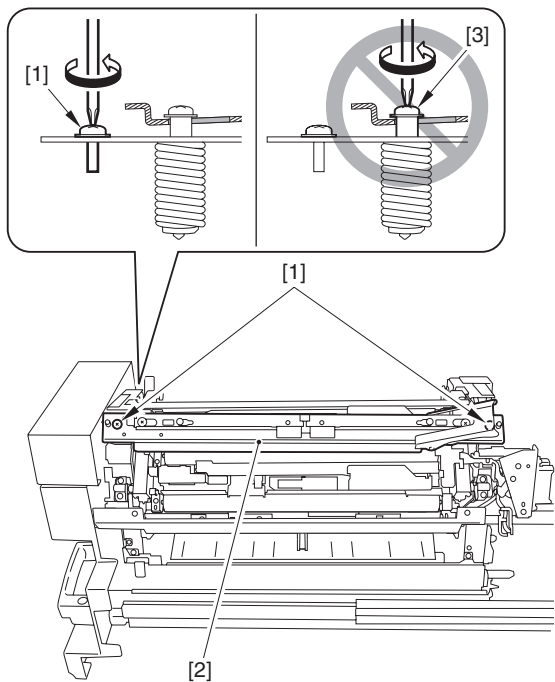
⚠ When locking the release lever, see the long hole [3] from above to check the pressure release support shaft [4] cannot be seen.



F-9-399

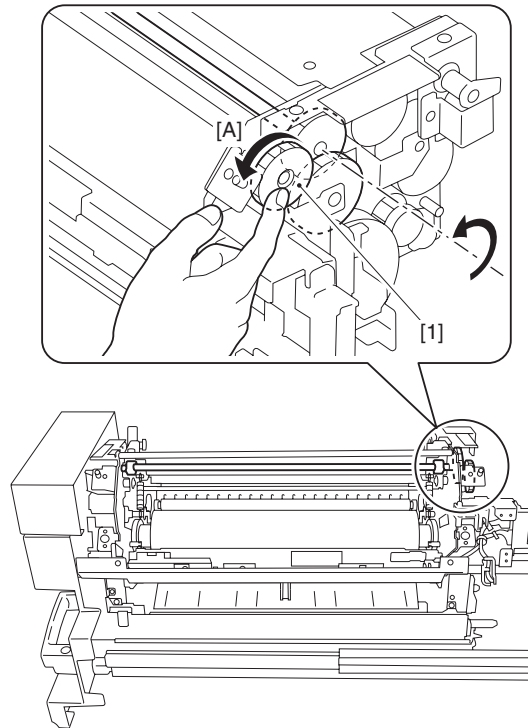
7) Remove the 2 screws [1] and detach the outside heat pressure plate [2].

⚠ The screw [3] on the outside heat pressure shaft **MUST NOT** be rotated.



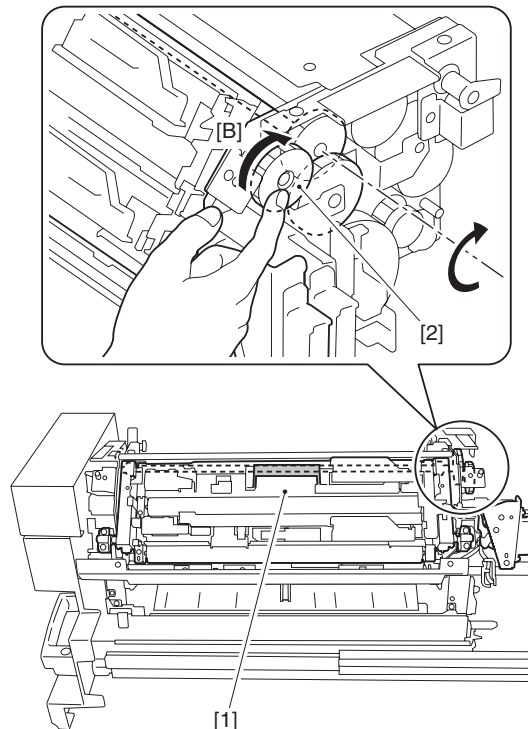
F-9-400

⚠ Points to note when attaching the outside heat pressure plate
 - Before mounting the outside heat roller unit to the fixing assembly, rotate the side of the gear [1] with hand in the [A] direction (counter clockwise) until it stops (approximately 1 full turn).



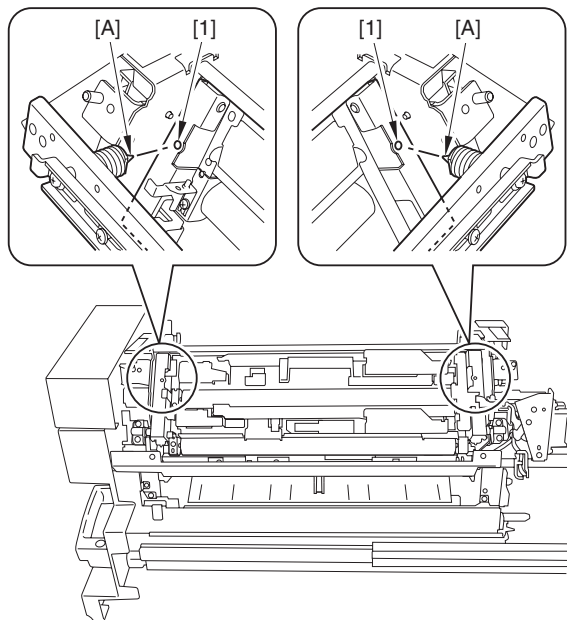
F-9-401

- After mounting the outside heat unit [1] to the fixing assembly, rotate the side of the gear [2] with hand in the [B] direction (clockwise) until the gear [2] stops (approximately 3/4-turn) and thus, outside heat roller unit is separated from the fixing roller.



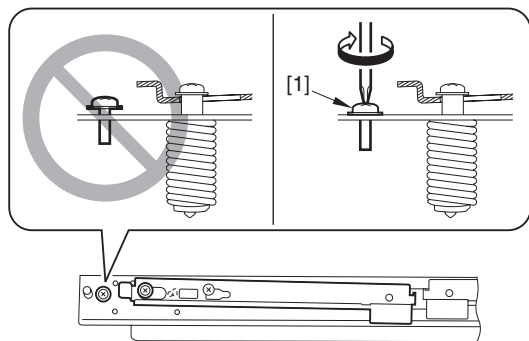
F-9-402

- Mount the leading edge [A] of the outside heat pressure shaft into the outside heat unit hole [1].



F-9-403

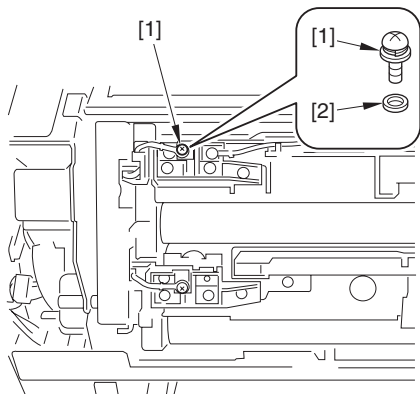
- When attaching the pressure plate, tighten the screw [1] firmly until it stops.



F-9-404

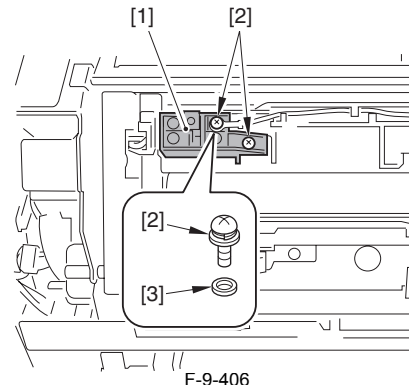
Removing Secondary Fixing External Heating Upper Roller Thermoswitch (TP306)

9) Remove the 1 screw [1] and 1 washer [2].



F-9-405

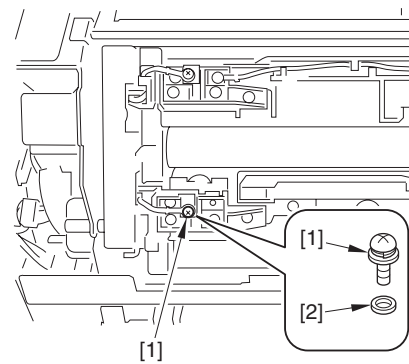
10) Remove the secondary fixing external heating upper thermoswitch [1].
 - 2 screws [2]
 - 1 washer [3]



F-9-406

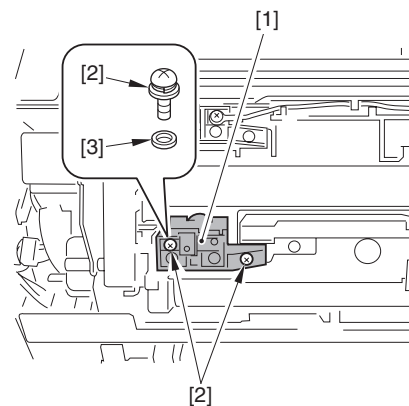
Removing Secondary Fixing External Heating Lower Roller Thermoswitch (TP307)

9) Remove the 1 screw [1] and 1 washer [2].



F-9-407

10) Remove the secondary fixing external heating lower thermoswitch [1].
 - 2 screws [2]
 - 1 washer [3]



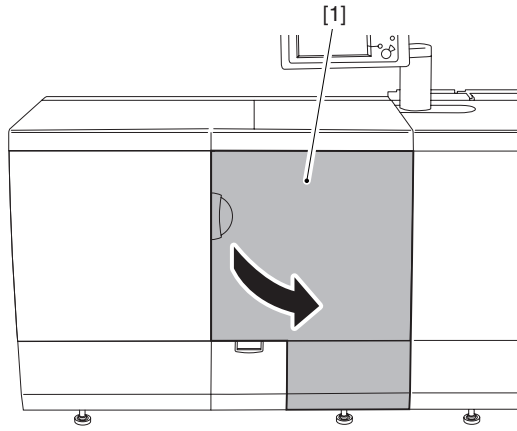
F-9-408

9.7.20 Fixing Belt Thermal Switch

9.7.20.1 Removing Belt Fixing Thermo Switch

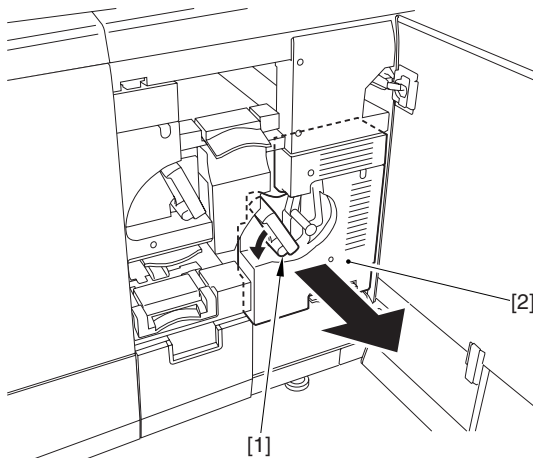
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

1) Open the sub station front right cover [1].



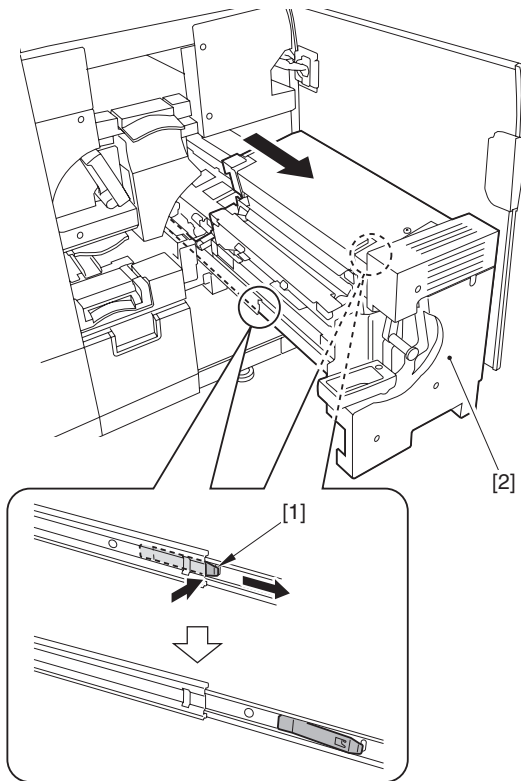
F-9-409

2) Tilt the release lever [1] in the direction of the arrow and slide out the primary fixing assembly [2].



F-9-410

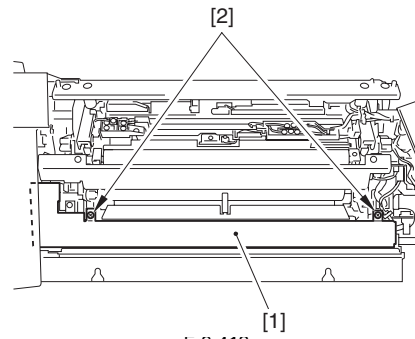
3) Disengage the 2 leaf springs [1] and slide out the primary fixing assembly [2] more.



F-9-411

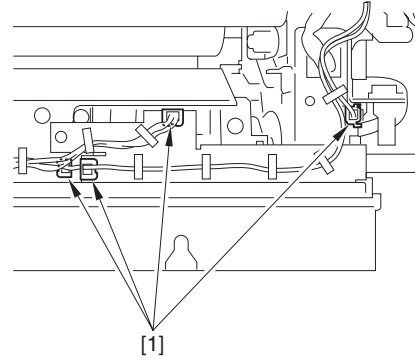
4) Detach the harness guide cover [1].

- 2 screws [2]



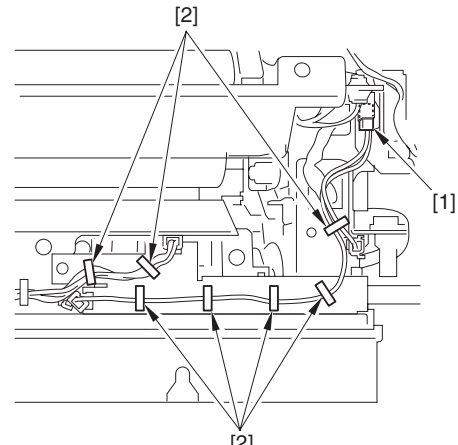
F-9-412

5) Remove the 4 edge saddles [1] from the plate.



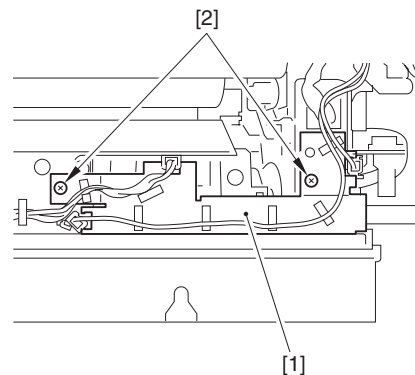
F-9-413

6) Remove the following parts.
 - 1 connector [1]
 - Harness (Free the harness from the 7 wire saddles [2])



F-9-414

7) Detach the harness guide plate [1].
 - 2 screws [2]

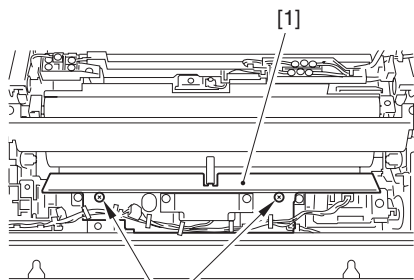


F-9-415

8) Remove the fixing inlet guide [1].
 - 2 screws [2]

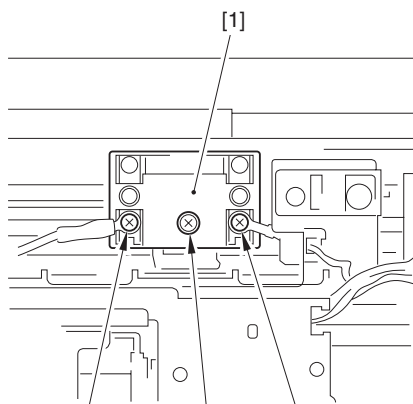


Be sure not to pull the harness by force. Otherwise, it may get damage.



F-9-416

- 9) Remove the belt fixing thermostich [1].
 - 2 screws [2]
 - 1 screw [3]



F-9-417

9.7.21 Fixing Web

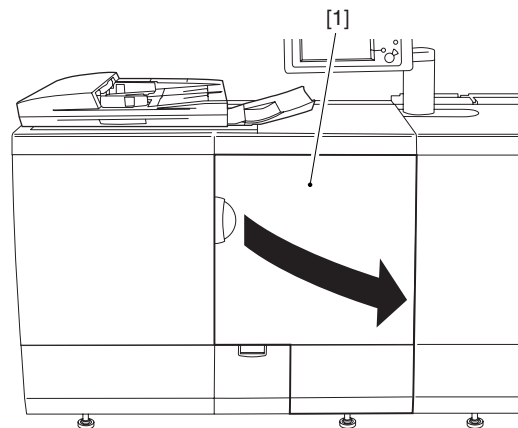
9.7.21.1 Removing Primary Fixing Web

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000



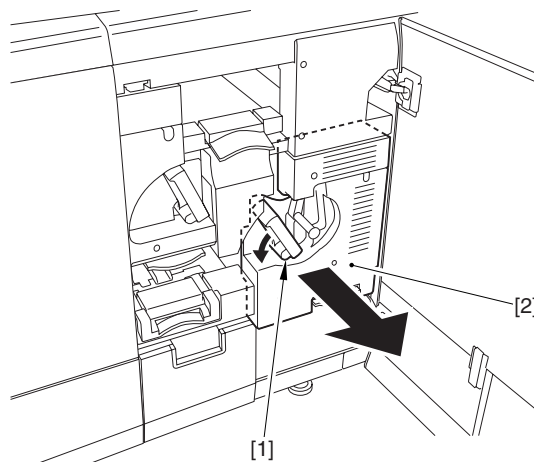
Point to Note When Working with the Fixing Assembly
 Be sure to cool down the fixing assembly before starting the work.

- 1) Open the sub station right front cover [1] fully.



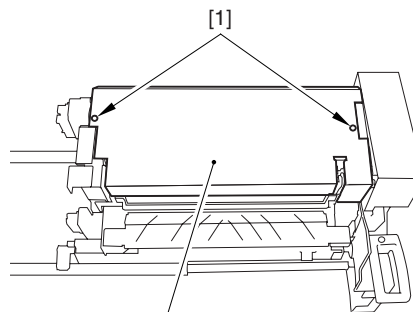
F-9-418

- 2) Shift the lever (C-A4) [1] in the direction of the arrow, and slide out the fixing assembly [2].



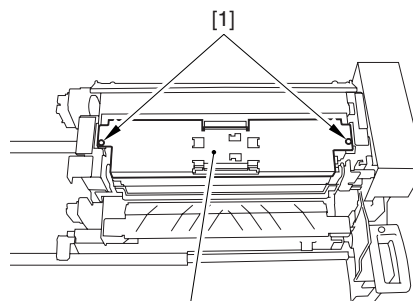
F-9-419

- 3) Loosen the 2 screws [1] and detach the fixing upper cover [2].



F-9-420

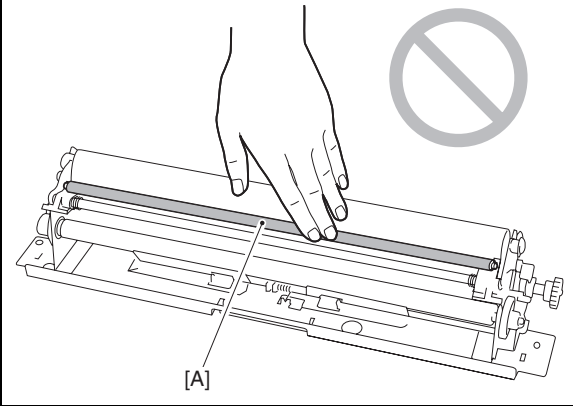
- 4) Remove the 2 screws [1] and remove the fixing web unit [2].



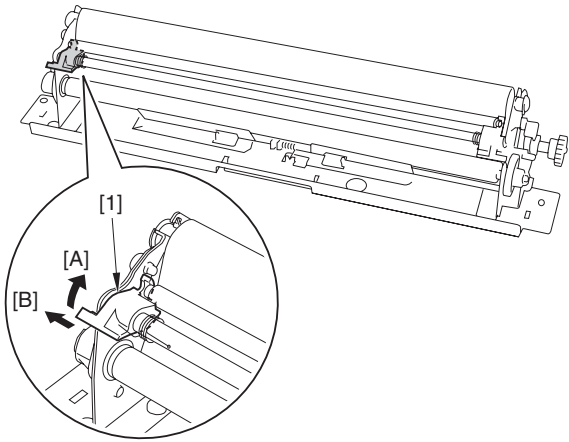
F-9-421

- 5) Make sure to check the following items before operation.

⚠ Points to Note When Handling the Fixing Refresh Cleaning Roller
Do not touch the surface [A] of the fixing refresh cleaning roller.

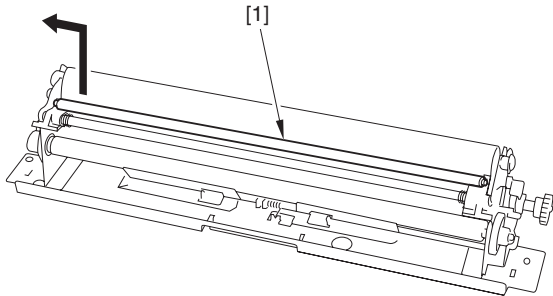


Rotate the shaft support [1] to [A] direction and slide it to [B] direction.



F-9-422

6) Remove the fixing refresh cleaning roller [1].

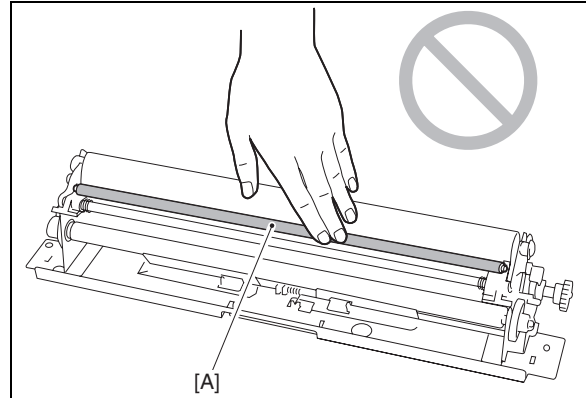


F-9-423

Attaching the Fixing Refresh Cleaning Roller

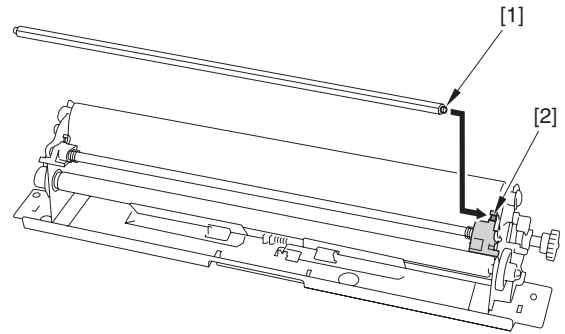
1) Make sure to check the following items before operation.

⚠ Points to Note When Handling the Fixing Refresh Cleaning Roller
Do not touch the surface [A] of the fixing refresh cleaning roller.

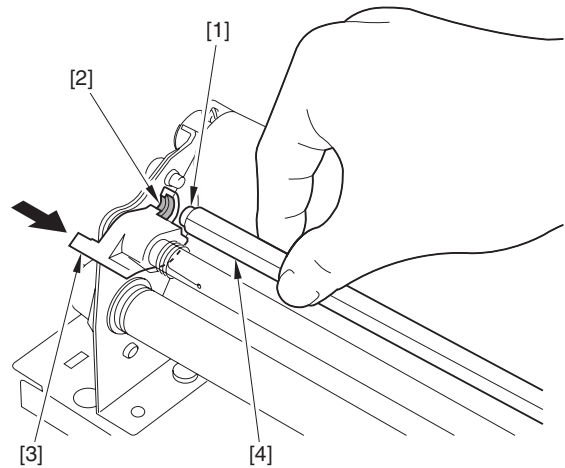


⚠ When attaching a new fixing refresh cleaning roller, attach it together with the paper covering the new fixing refresh cleaning roller. Remove the paper after attaching the fixing web unit.

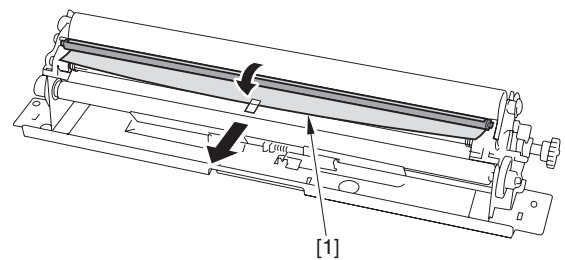
Push the bearing [1] on the fixing refresh cleaning roller into the cut-off [2] on the front shaft support sideways.



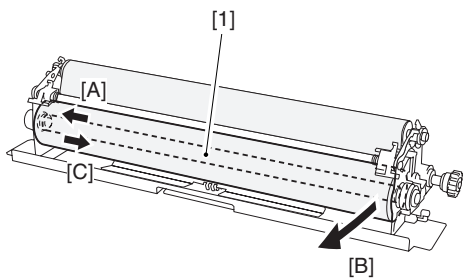
2) Engage the bearing [1] on the fixing refresh roller to the cut-off [2] on the rear shaft support and slide the rear shaft support [3] to the direction of the arrow to attach the fixing refresh roller [4].



3) Remove the paper [1] covering the new fixing refresh cleaning roller.

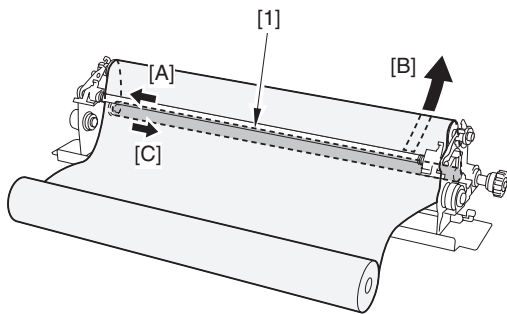


7) While pushing the fixing web shaft (rewinding side) [1] into [A] direction, then move [B] to [C] direction in order to remove.



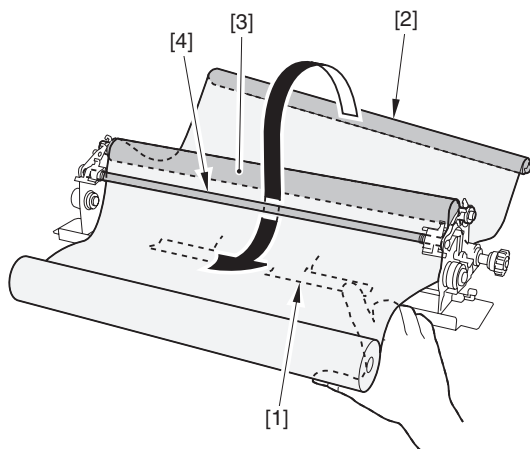
F-9-424

8) Push the fixing web shaft (for feeding) [1] into [A] direction, then move it and remove the shaft [B] to [C] in order.



F-9-425

9) While holding the plate [1], pass the fixing web shaft (feeding side) [2] between the fixing web roller [3] and the shaft [4] and remove it.



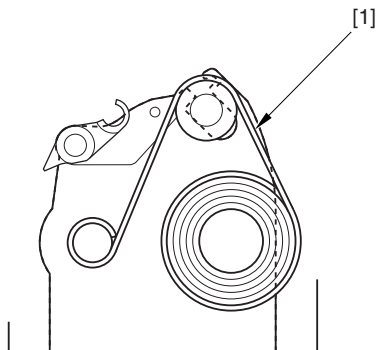
F-9-426

Attaching the Fixing Web

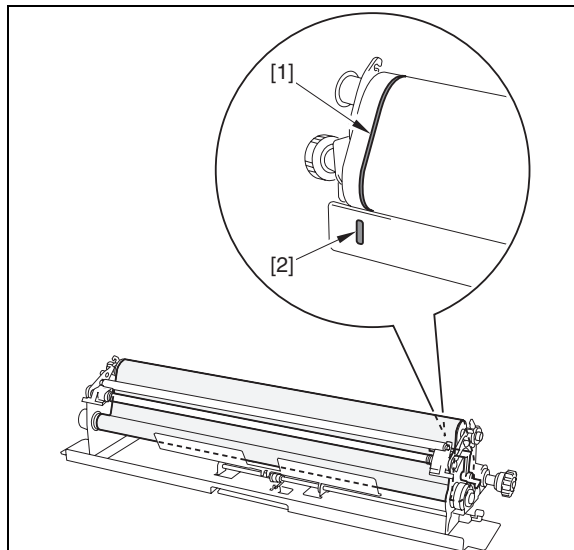
1) Make sure to check the following items before operation.



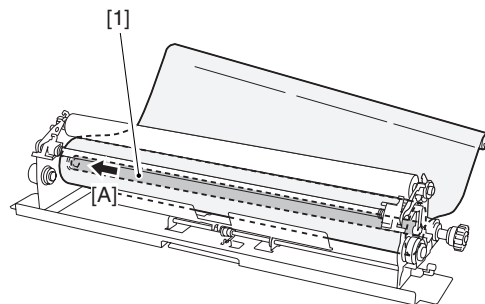
- Fixing web [1] has the rewinding direction; thus, be sure to attach it in the direction shown below.
If attaching it with the wrong direction, may damage the device.



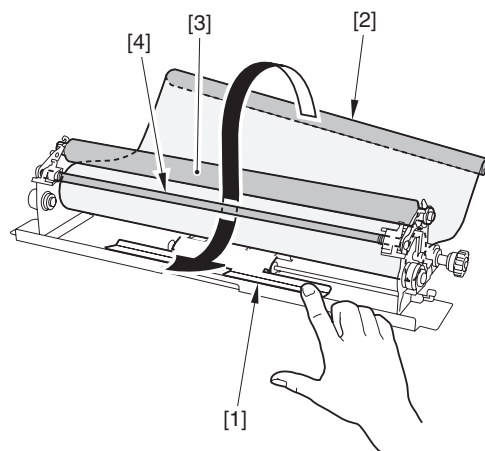
- Align the green line [1] on the fixing web with the green label [2] on the fixing web unit to attach.



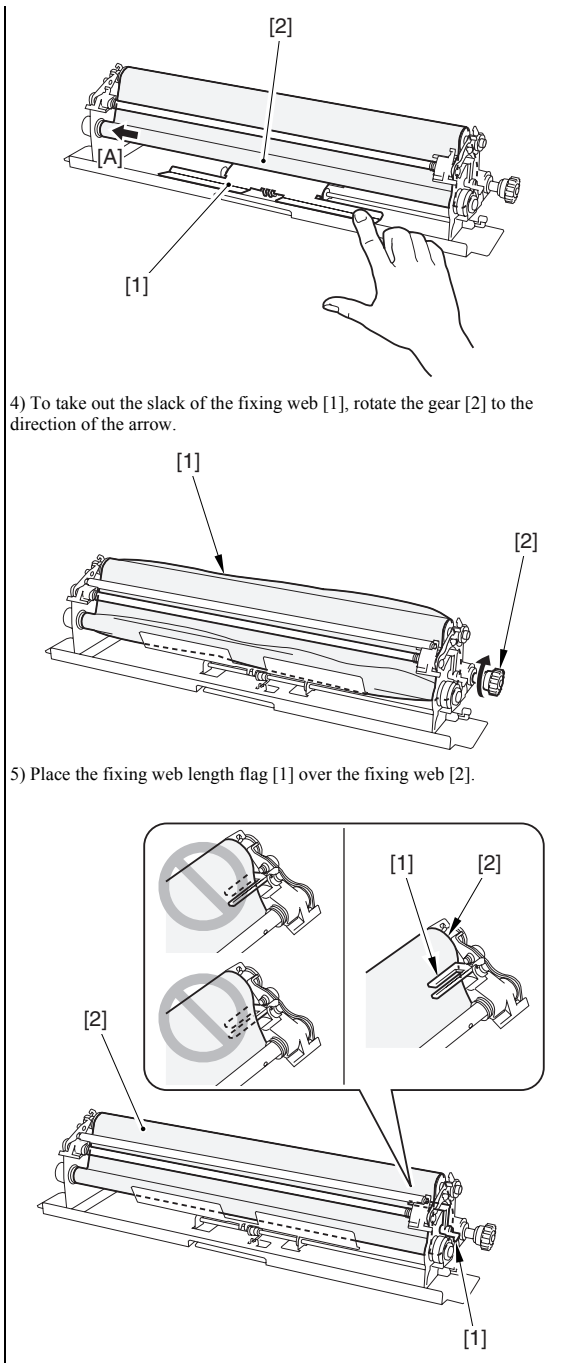
Engage the fixing web shaft (feeding side) [1] with the shaft support on the fixing web unit and while pushing the shaft to [A] direction, attach it into the shaft support in the other side on the fixing web unit.



2) While holding the plate [1], pass the fixing web shaft (rewinding side) [2] between the fixing web roller [3] and the shaft [4].



3) While holding the plate [1], engage the fixing web shaft [2] with the shaft support on the fixing web unit and while pushing the shaft to [A] direction, attach it into the shaft support in the other side on the fixing web unit.



4) To take out the slack of the fixing web [1], rotate the gear [2] to the direction of the arrow.

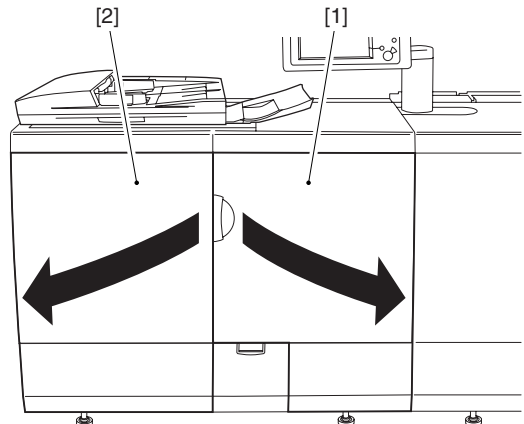
5) Place the fixing web length flag [1] over the fixing web [2].

9.7.21.2 Removing Secondary Fixing Web

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

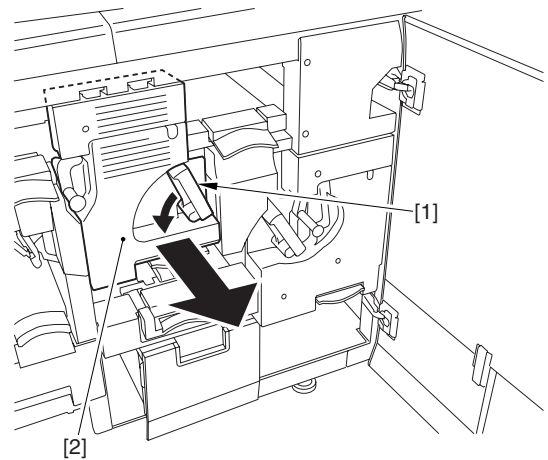
⚠ Point to Note When Working with the Fixing Assembly
Be sure to cool down the fixing assembly before starting the work.

1) Fully open the sub station front right cover [1] and the sub station front left cover [2] in order.



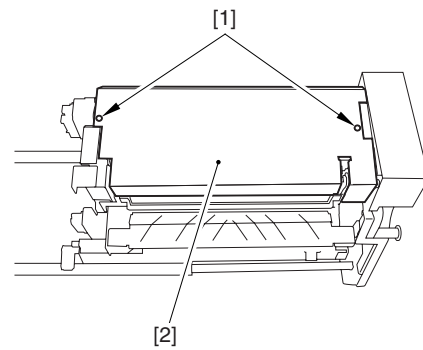
F-9-427

2) Shift the lever (C-B4) [1] in the direction of the arrow, and slide out the fixing assembly [2].



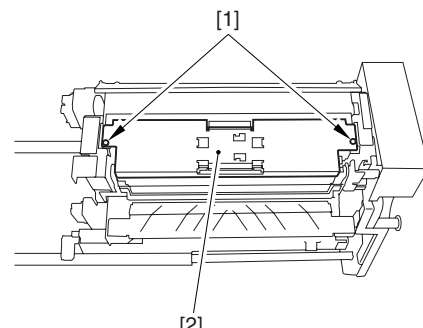
F-9-428

3) Loosen the 2 screws [1] and detach the fixing upper cover [2].



F-9-429

4) Remove the 2 screws [1] and remove the fixing web unit [2].



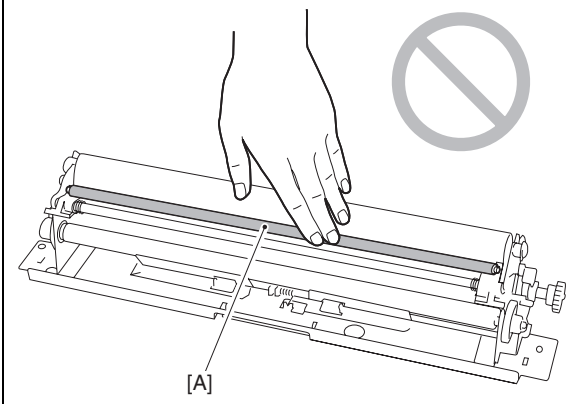
F-9-430

5) Make sure to check the following items before operation.

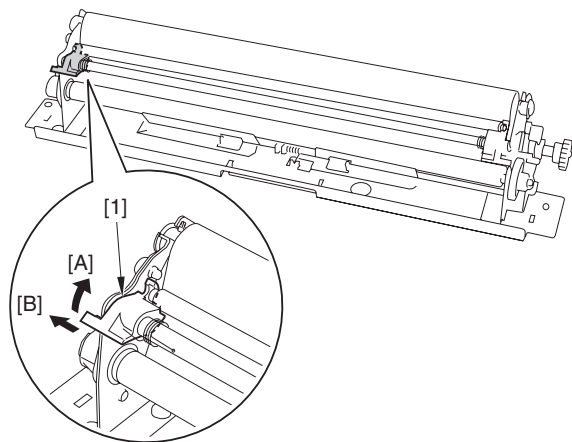


Points to Note When Handling the Fixing Refresh Cleaning Roller

Do not touch the surface [A] of the fixing refresh cleaning roller.

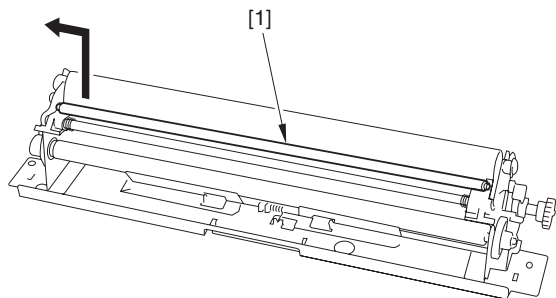


Rotate the shaft support [1] to [A] direction and slide it to [B] direction.



F-9-431

6) Remove the fixing refresh cleaning roller [1].



F-9-432

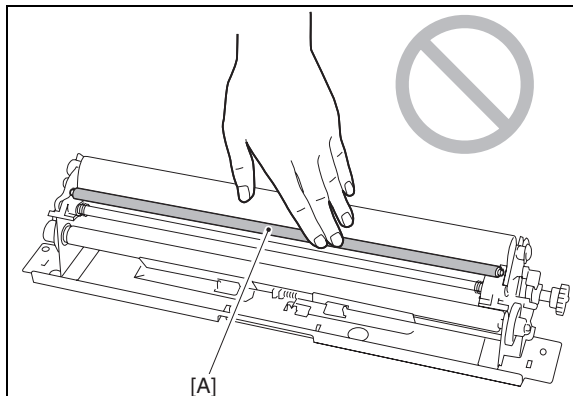
Attaching the Fixing Refresh Cleaning Roller

1) Make sure to check the following items before operation.



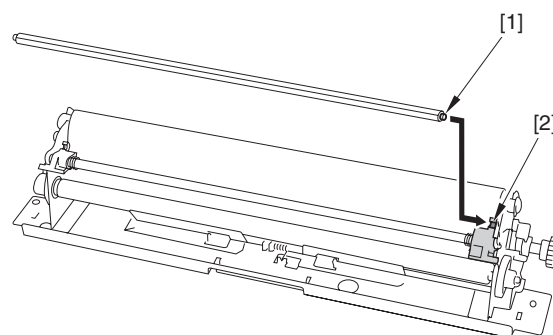
Points to Note When Handling the Fixing Refresh Cleaning Roller

Do not touch the surface [A] of the fixing refresh cleaning roller.

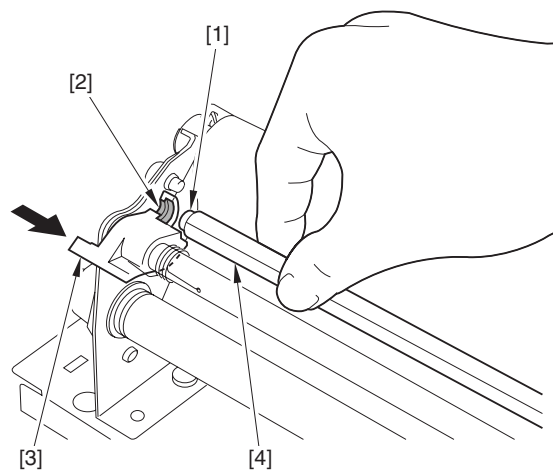


When attaching a new fixing refresh cleaning roller, attach it together with the paper covering the new fixing refresh cleaning roller. Remove the paper after attaching the fixing web unit.

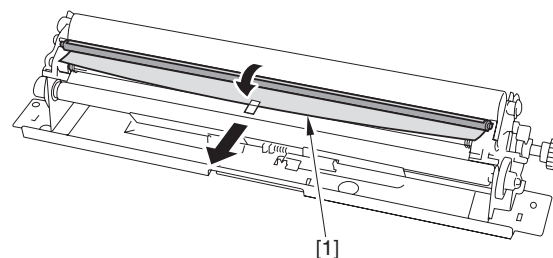
Push the bearing [1] on the fixing refresh cleaning roller into the cut-off [2] on the front shaft support sideways.



2) Engage the bearing [1] on the fixing refresh roller to the cut-off [2] on the rear shaft support and slide the rear shaft support [3] to the direction of the arrow to attach the fixing refresh roller [4].

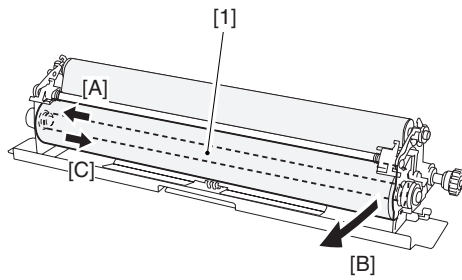


3) Remove the paper [1] covering the new fixing refresh cleaning roller.



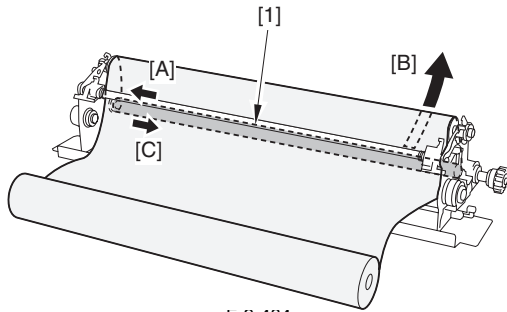
7) While pushing the fixing web shaft (rewinding side) [1] into [A] direction,

then move [B] to [C] direction in order to remove.



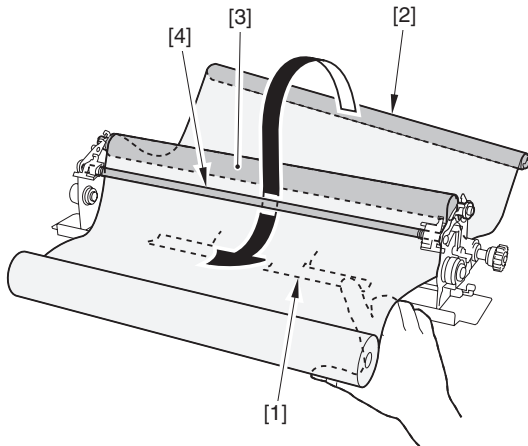
F-9-433

8) Push the fixing web shaft (for feeding) [1] into [A] direction, then move it and remove the shaft [B] to [C] in order.



F-9-434

9) While holding the plate [1], pass the fixing web shaft (feeding side) [2] between the fixing web roller [3] and the shaft [4] and remove it.



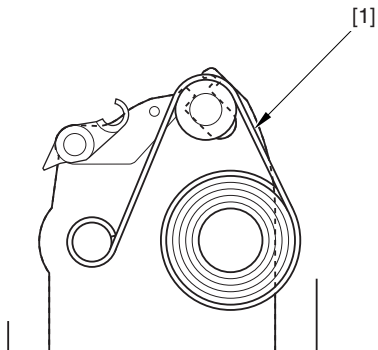
F-9-435

Attaching the Fixing Web

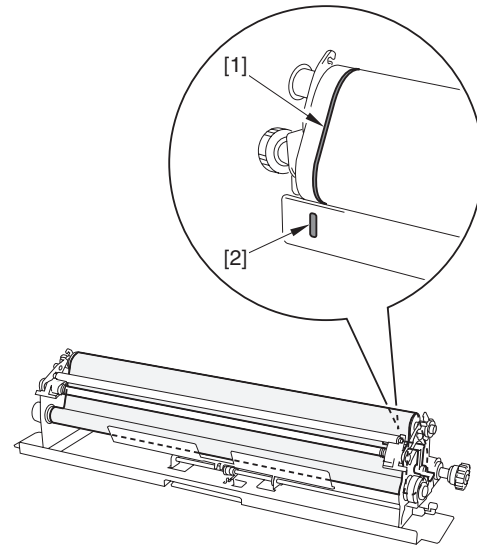
1) Make sure to check the following items before operation.



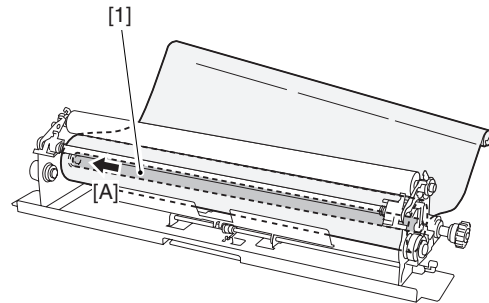
- Fixing web [1] has the rewinding direction; thus, be sure to attach it in the direction shown below.
If attaching it with the wrong direction, may damage the device.



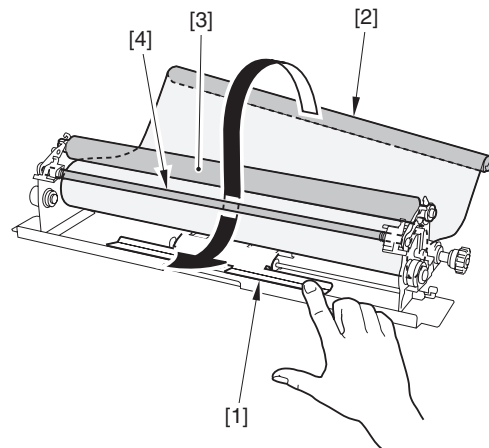
- Align the green line [1] on the fixing web with the green label [2] on the fixing web unit to attach.



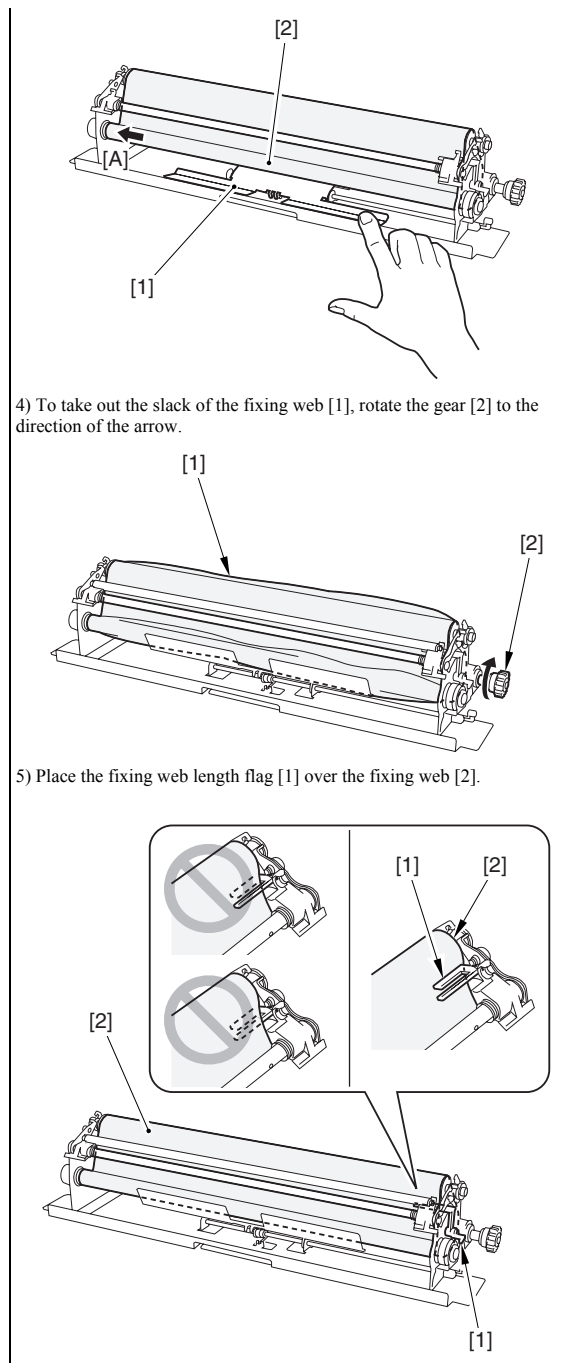
Engage the fixing web shaft (feeding side) [1] with the shaft support on the fixing web unit and while pushing the shaft to [A] direction, attach it into the shaft support in the other side on the fixing web unit.



2) While holding the plate [1], pass the fixing web shaft (rewinding side) [2] between the fixing web roller [3] and the shaft [4].



3) While holding the plate [1], engage the fixing web shaft [2] with the shaft support on the fixing web unit and while pushing the shaft to [A] direction, attach it into the shaft support in the other side on the fixing web unit.



4) To take out the slack of the fixing web [1], rotate the gear [2] to the direction of the arrow.

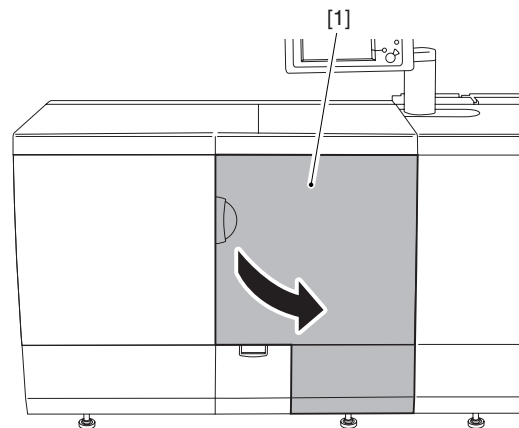
5) Place the fixing web length flag [1] over the fixing web [2].

9.7.22 Fixing Web Solenoid

9.7.22.1 Removing Primary Fixing Web Solenoid

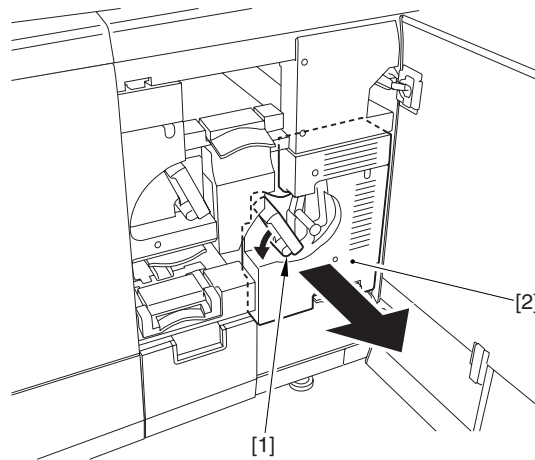
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

1) Open the sub station front right cover [1].



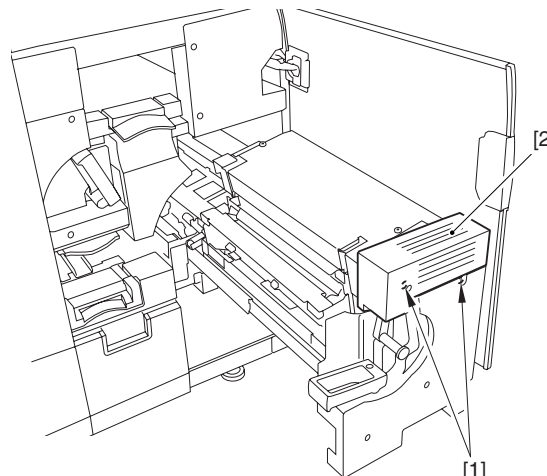
F-9-436

2) Shift the release lever [1] to the direction of the arrow and slide out the primary fixing assembly [2].



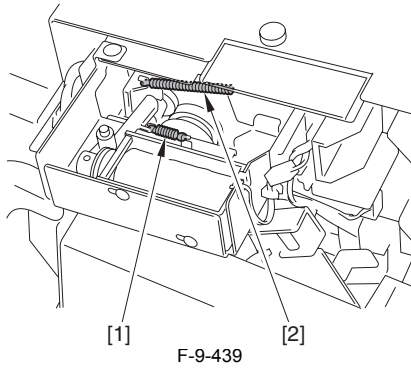
F-9-437

3) Detach the primary fixing front upper cover [1].
- 2 screws [2]



F-9-438

4) Remove the spring [1] and the spring [2].

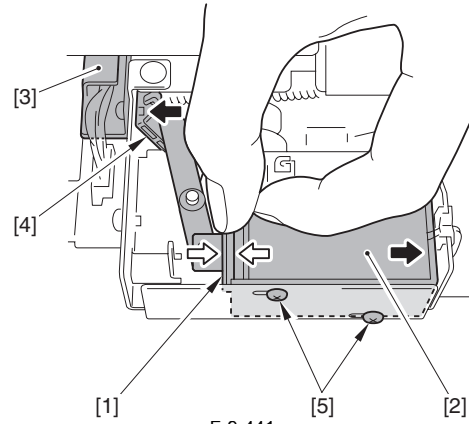


F-9-439

⚠ Points to note when attaching
 Make sure not to mix up the spring [1] with the spring [2].

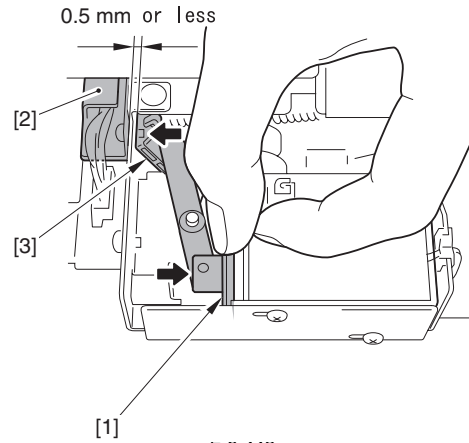
Spring [1]: Positions of the ring at both ends are in a vertical direction. There is a marker line.

Spring [2]: Positions of the ring at both ends are in a parallel direction.



F-9-441

- 2) Push the solenoid shaft [1] again and check the opening between the harness guide [2] and the one-way arm [3] is 0.5mm or less.

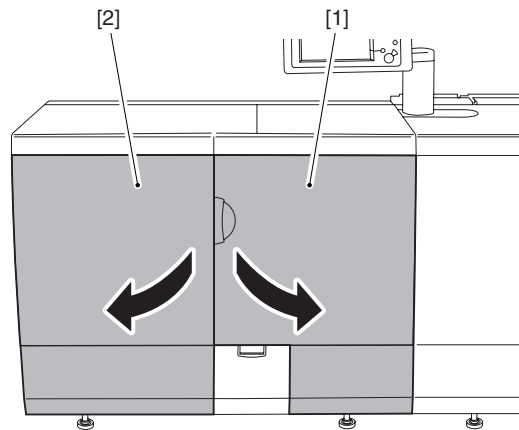


F-9-442

9.7.22.2 Removing Secondary Fixing Web Solenoid

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

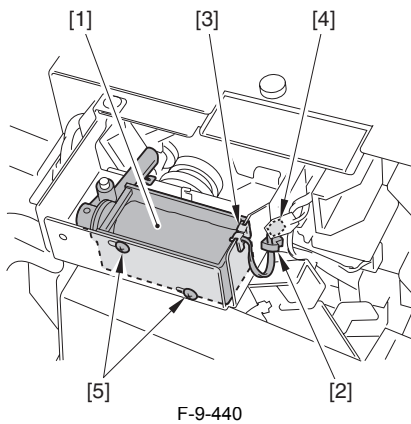
- 1) Open the sub station front right cover and sub station front left cover.



F-9-443

- 2) Shift the release lever [1] to the direction of the arrow and slide out the secondary fixing assembly [2].

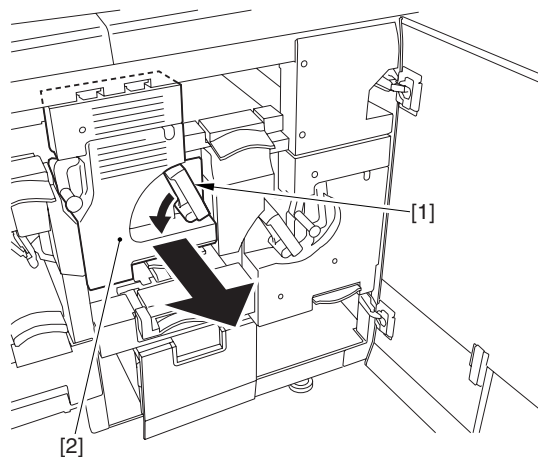
- 5) Remove the solenoid [1].
 - Harness (free the harness from the wire saddle [2])
 - Harness (free the harness from the edge saddle [3])
 - 1 connector [4]
 - 2 screws [5]



F-9-440

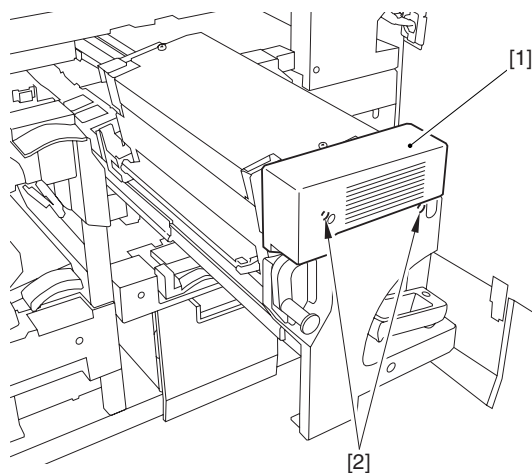
Adjusting Fixing Web Solenoid

- 1) With pushing the shaft flange [1] to the solenoid [2], slide the solenoid to the right and with placing the one-way arm [4] touched with the harness guide [3], tighten the 2 screws [5].



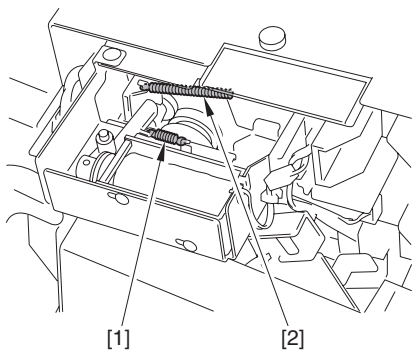
F-9-444

- 3) Detach the secondary fixing upper front cover [1].
- 2 screws [2]



F-9-445

- 4) Remove the spring [1] and the spring [2].



F-9-446

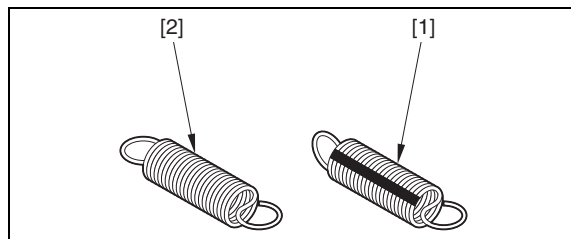


Points to note when attaching

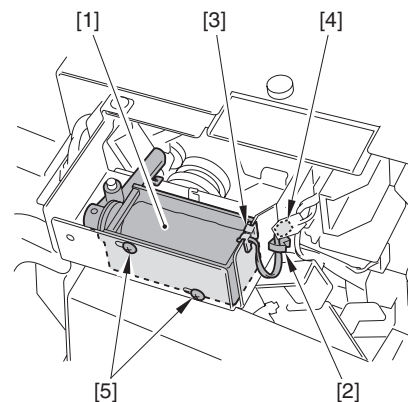
Make sure not to mix up the spring [1] with the spring [2].

Spring [1]: Positions of the ring at both ends are in a vertical direction. There is a marker line.

Spring [2]: Positions of the ring at both ends are in a parallel direction.



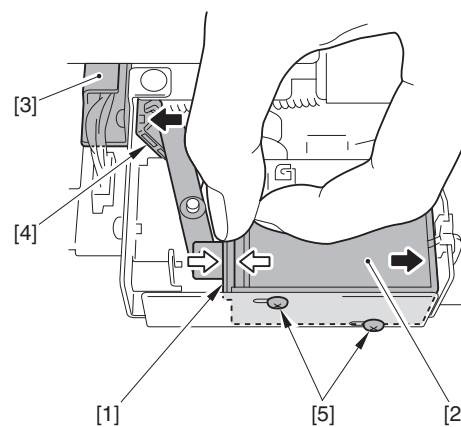
- 5) Remove the solenoid [1].
- Harness (Free the harness from the wire saddle [2])
- Harness (Free the harness from the edge saddle [3])
- 1 connector [4]
- 2 screws [5]



F-9-447

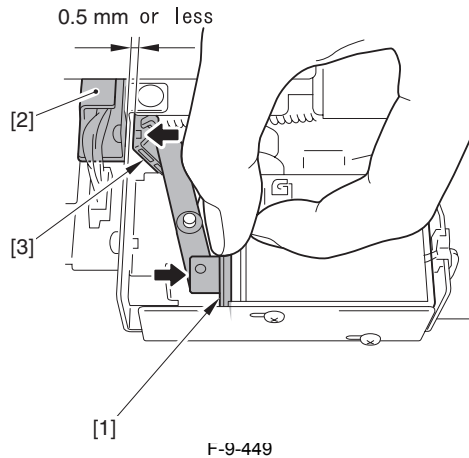
Adjusting Fixing Web Solenoid

- 1) With pushing the shaft flange [1] to the solenoid [2], slide the solenoid to the right and with placing the one-way arm [4] touched with the harness guide [3], tighten the 2 screws [5].



F-9-448

- 2) Push the solenoid shaft [1] again and check the opening between the harness guide [2] and the one-way arm [3] is 0.5mm or less.

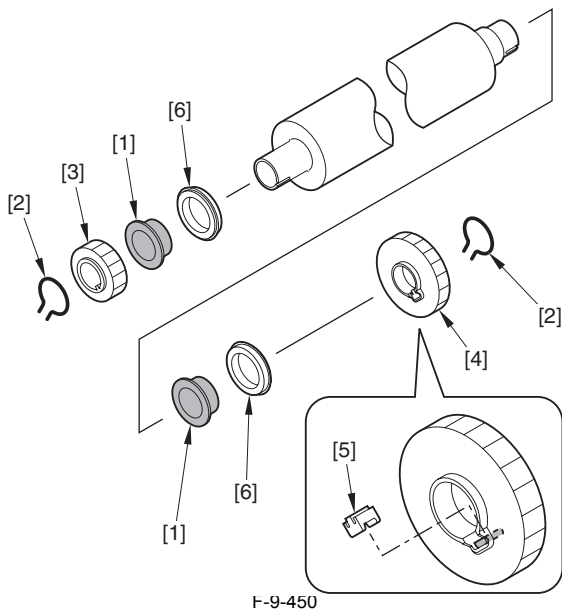


9.7.23 Insulating Bush

9.7.23.1 Removing the Primary Fixing Roller Insulating Bush

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

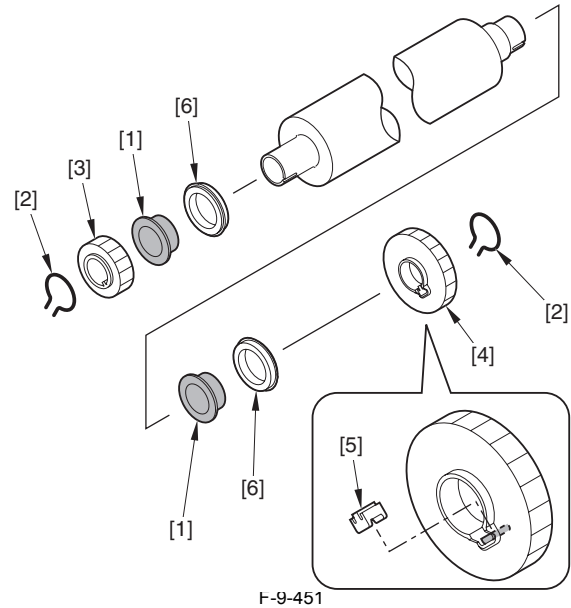
- 1) Remove the primary fixing Roller unit.
- 2) Remove the 2 insulating bushings [1].
 - 2 rings [2]
 - 1 gear [3]
 - 1 gear [4] (with key [5])
 - 2 bearings [6]



9.7.23.2 Removing the Secondary Fixing Roller Insulating Bush

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

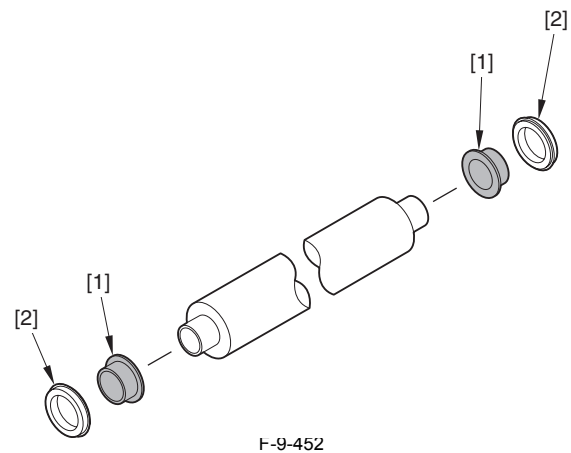
- 1) Remove the secondary fixing Roller.
- 2) Remove the 2 insulating bushings [1].
 - 2 rings [2]
 - 1 gear [3]
 - 1 gear [4] (with key [5])
 - 2 bearings [6]



9.7.23.3 Removing the Primary Fixing Pressure Roller Insulating Bush

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

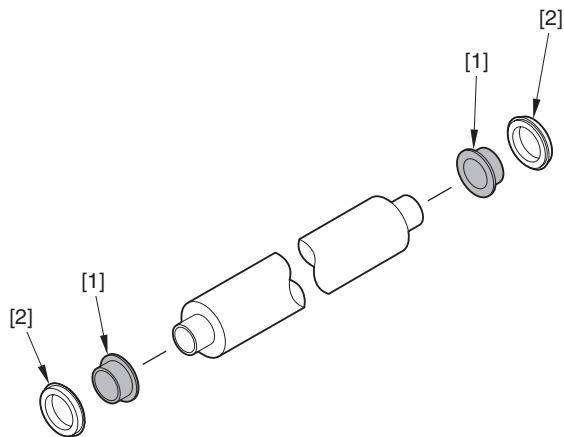
- 1) Remove the primary fixing pressure roller unit.
- 2) Remove the 2 insulating bushings [1].
 - 2 bearings [2]



9.7.23.4 Removing the Secondary Fixing Pressure Roller Insulating Bush

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- 1) Remove the secondary fixing pressure roller unit.
- 2) Remove the 2 insulating bushings [1].
 - 2 bearings [2]



F-9-453

9.7.24 Bearing

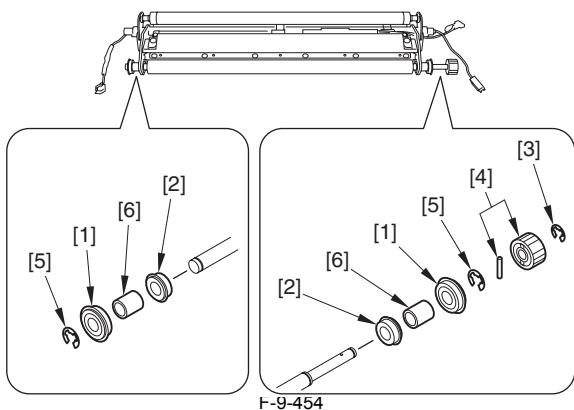
9.7.24.1 Removing Bearing 1 and Bearing 3

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- 1) Remove the fixing belt.
- 2) Remove the fixing belt unit from the sub station inner cover 1, and place it on a paper.

! Be sure to cover the fixing belt unit with a paper, and not to touch the roller with bare hands.

- 3) Remove the bearing 1 [1] and the bearing 3 [2].
 - 1 E-ring [3]
 - 1 gear (with dowel pin) [4]
 - 1 E-ring [5]
 - 1 spacer [6]



F-9-454

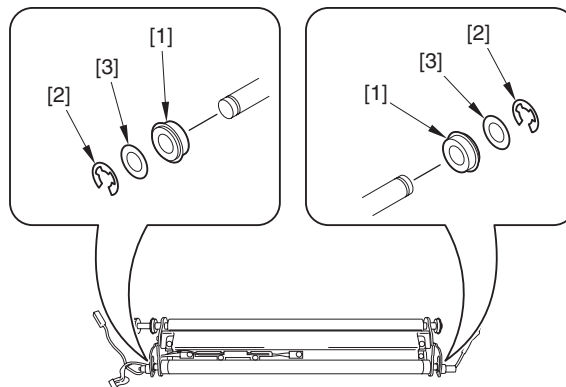
9.7.24.2 Removing Bearing 2 and Bearing 5

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- 1) Remove the fixing belt.
- 2) Remove the fixing belt unit from the sub station inner cover 1, and place it on a paper.

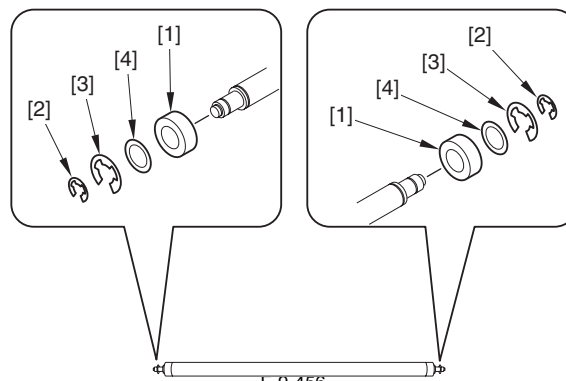
! Be sure to cover the fixing belt unit with a paper, and not to touch the roller with bare hands.

- 3) Remove the 2 bearing 2 [1].
 - 2 E-rings [2]
 - 2 washers [3]



F-9-455

- 4) Remove the 2 bearing 5 [1].
 - 2 E-rings [2]
 - 2 E-rings [3]
 - 2 washers [4]

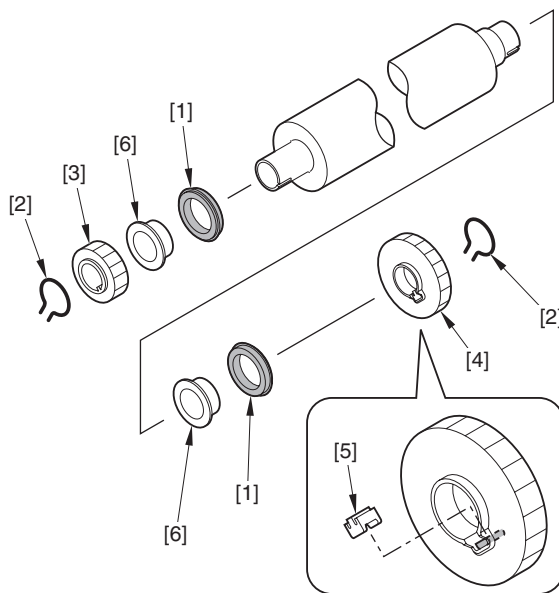


F-9-456

9.7.24.3 Removing the Primary Fixing Roller Bearing

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- 1) Remove the primary fixing Roller unit.
- 2) Remove the 2 bearings [1].



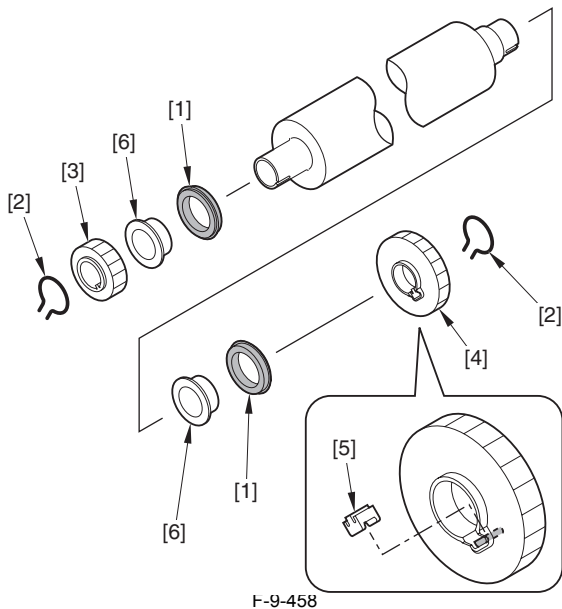
F-9-457

- 2 rings [2]
- 1 gear [3]
- 1 gear [4] (with key [5])
- 2 insulation bushings [6]

9.7.24.4 Removing the Secondary Fixing Roller Bearing

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- 1) Remove the secondary fixing Roller unit.
- 2) Remove the 2 bearings [1].
 - 2 rings [2]
 - 1 gear [3]
 - 1 gear [4] (with key [5])
 - 2 insulation bushings [6]

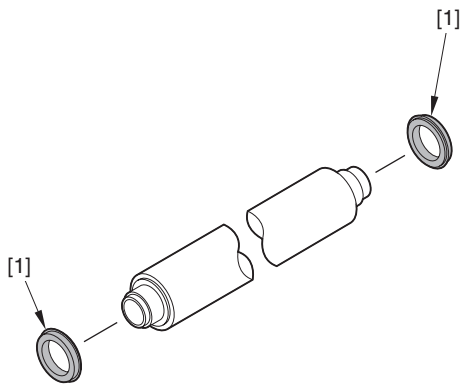


F-9-458

9.7.24.5 Removing the Primary Fixing Pressure Roller Bearing

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- 1) Remove the primary fixing pressure roller unit.
- 2) Remove the 2 bearings [1].

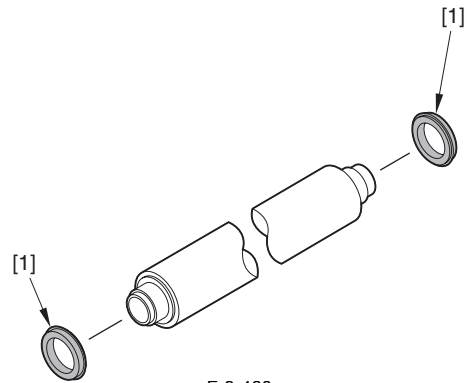


F-9-459

9.7.24.6 Removing the Secondary Fixing Pressure Roller Bearing

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- 1) Remove the secondary fixing pressure roller unit.
- 2) Remove the 2 bearings [1].



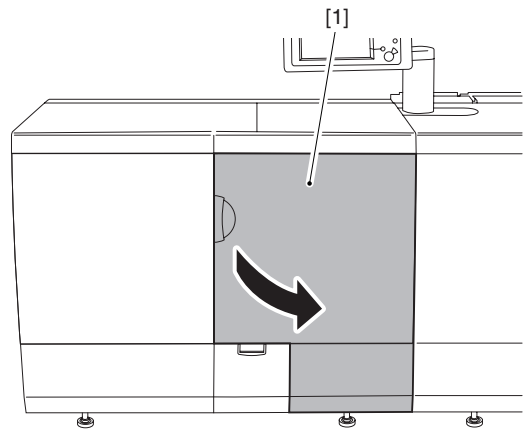
F-9-460

9.7.25 Separation Claw

9.7.25.1 Removing Primary Fixing Separation Claw

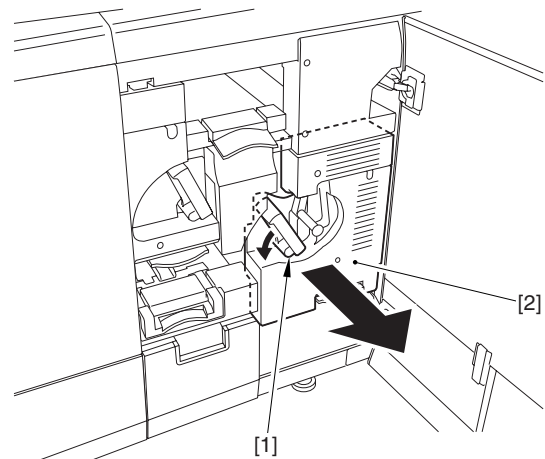
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- 1) Open the sub station right front cover [1].



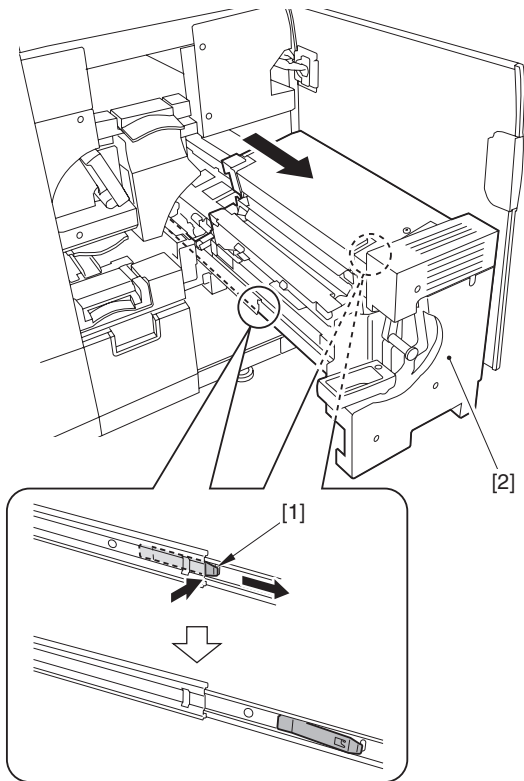
F-9-461

- 2) Shift the release lever [1] toward the direction of the arrow, and pull out the primary fixing assembly [2].



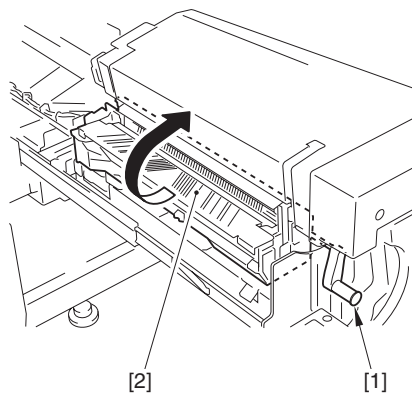
F-9-462

- 3) Release the 2 leaf springs [1], and pull out the primary fixing assembly [2] further.



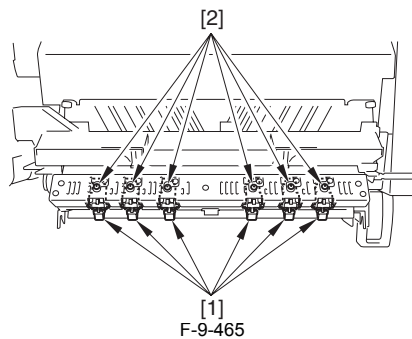
F-9-463

4) Hold the lever [1] and open the primary fixing inner delivery unit [2].



F-9-464

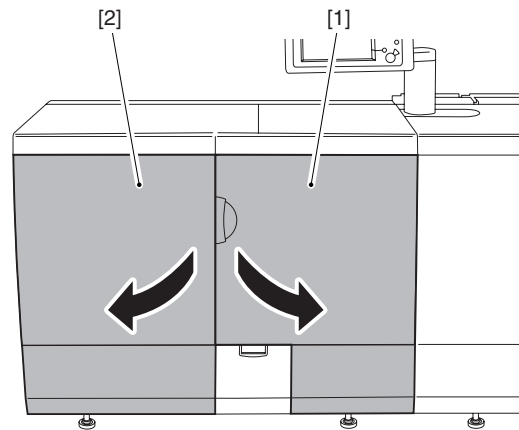
5) Remove the 6 primary fixing separation claws [1].
- 1 screw [2] for each claw



F-9-465

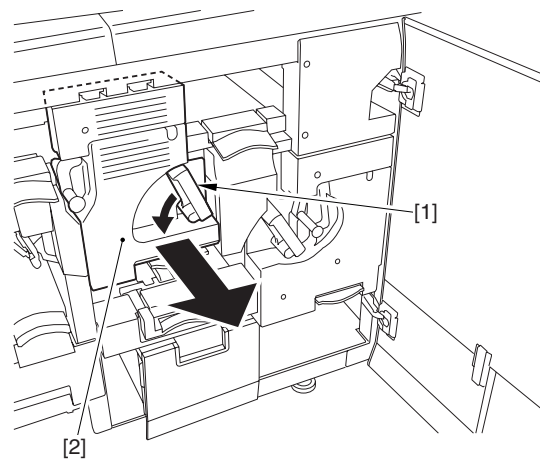
9.7.25.2 Removing Secondary Fixing Separation Claw
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

1) Open the sub station right front cover [1] and the sub station left cover [2].



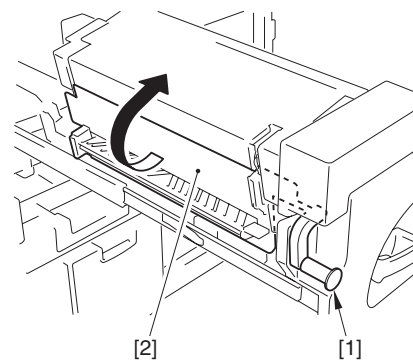
F-9-466

2) Shift the release lever [1] toward the direction of the arrow, and pull out the secondary fixing assembly [2].



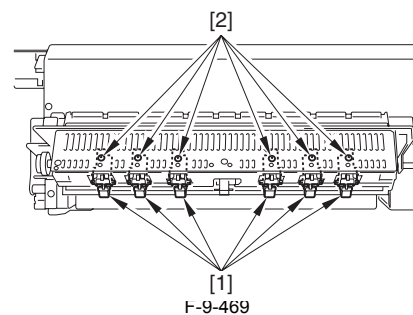
F-9-467

3) Hold the lever [1], and open the fixing inner delivery unit [2].



F-9-468

4) Remove the 6 secondary fixing separation claws [1].
- 1 screw [2] for each claw



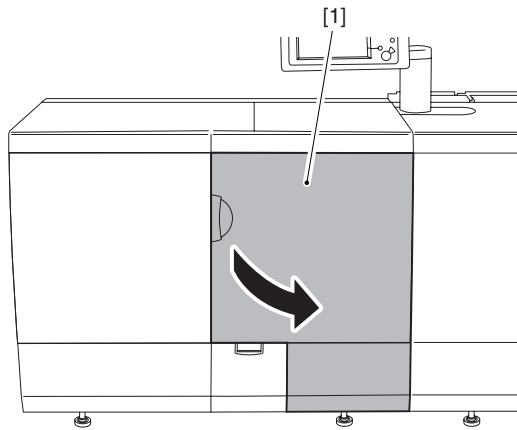
F-9-469

9.7.26 Delivery Upper Separation Plate

9.7.26.1 Removing Primary Fixing Separation Plate

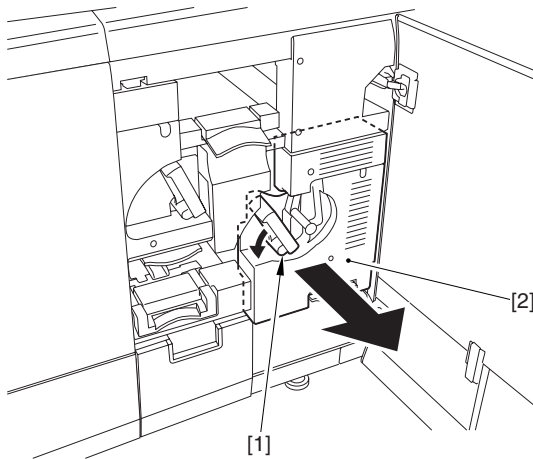
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

1) Open the sub station right front cover [1].



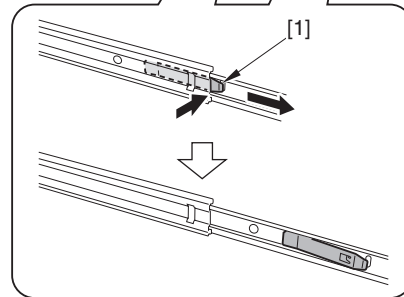
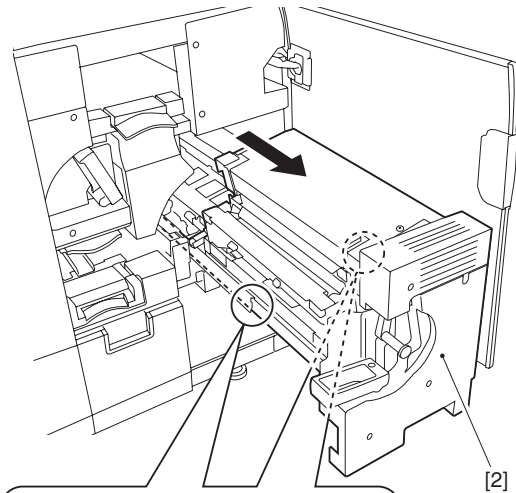
F-9-470

2) Shift the release lever [1] toward the direction of the arrow, and pull out the primary fixing assembly [2].



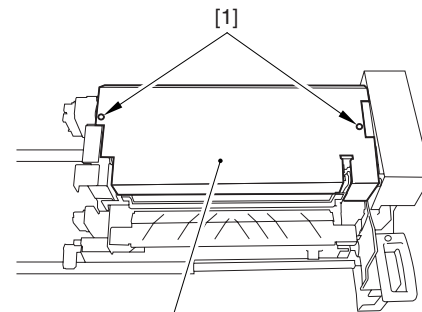
F-9-471

3) Release the 2 leaf springs [1], and pull out the primary fixing assembly [2] further.



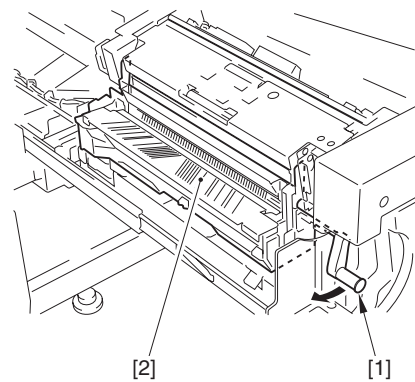
F-9-472

4) Loosen the 2 screws [1], and detach the fixing upper cover [2].



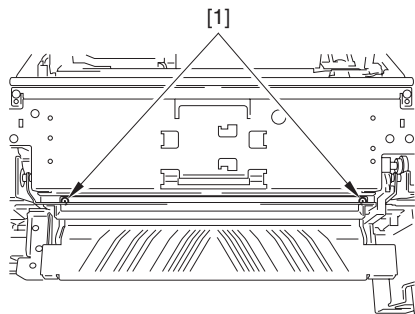
F-9-473

5) Hold the release lever [1], and unlock the lock of the fixing delivery unit [2].
At this point, the unit is not opened yet.



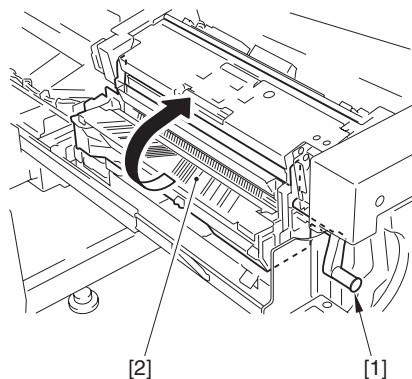
F-9-474

6) Remove the 2 screws [1] attached on the yellow cover that can be seen from above.



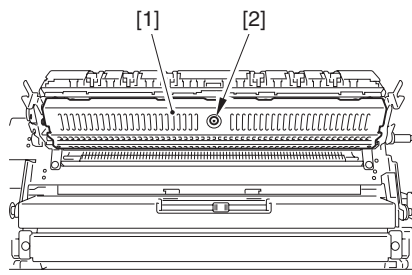
F-9-475

7) Hold the release lever [1], and open the fixing inner delivery unit [2].



F-9-476

8) Detach the inner delivery upper cover [1].
- 1 screw [2]

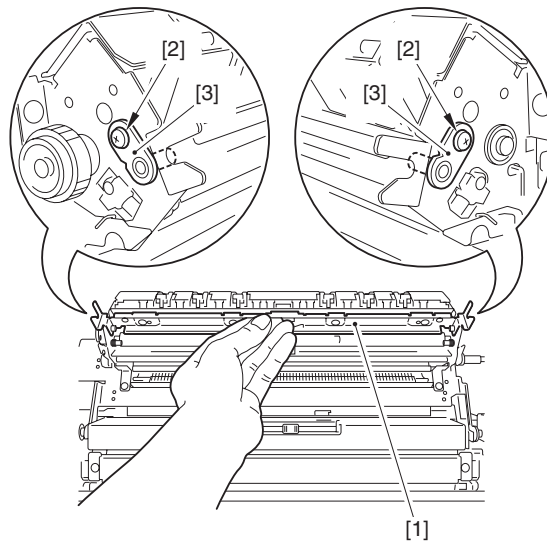


F-9-477

9) Detach the primary fixing separation plate [1] with a hand.
- 2 screws [2]
- 2 positioning pins [3]



The separation plate may drop due to the force of the spring.

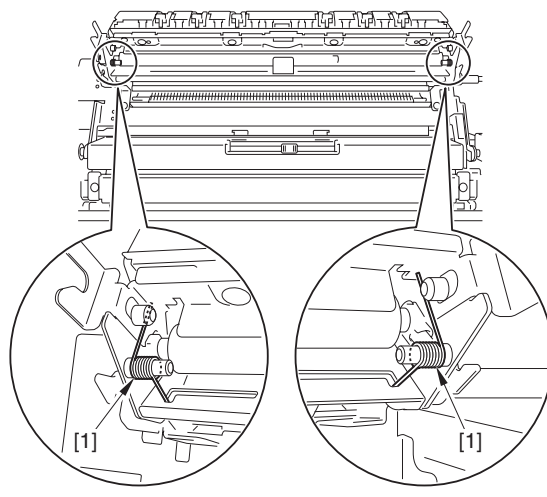


F-9-478



Points to Note When Attaching

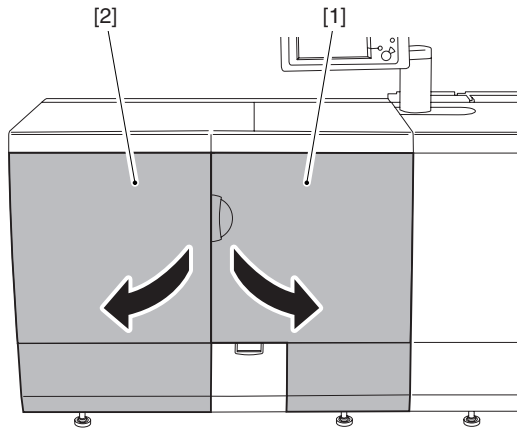
- Be sure not to forget to hook the 2 springs [1].
- Be sure to the position of the springs.



9.7.26.2 Removing Secondary Fixing Separation Plate

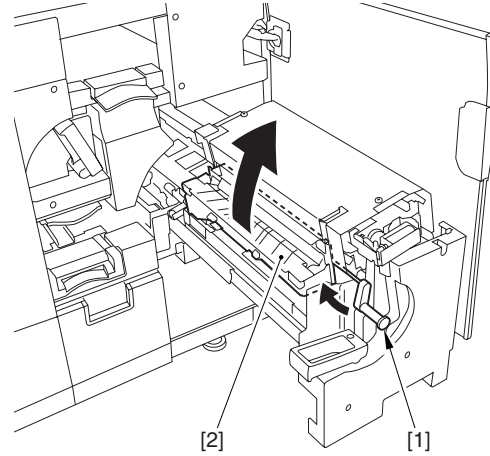
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

1) Open the sub station right front cover [1] and the sub station left front cover [2].



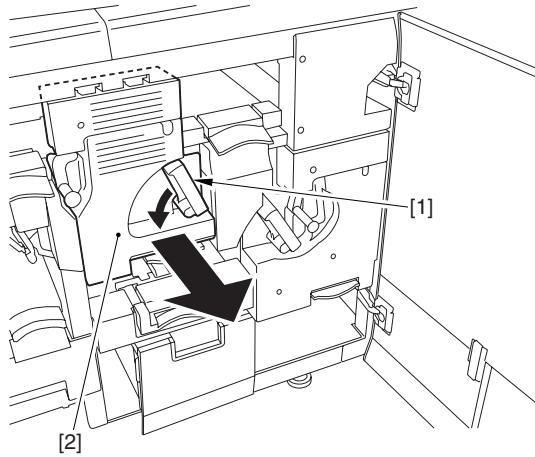
F-9-479

2) Shift the release lever [1] toward the direction of the arrow, and pull out the secondary fixing assembly [2].



F-9-482

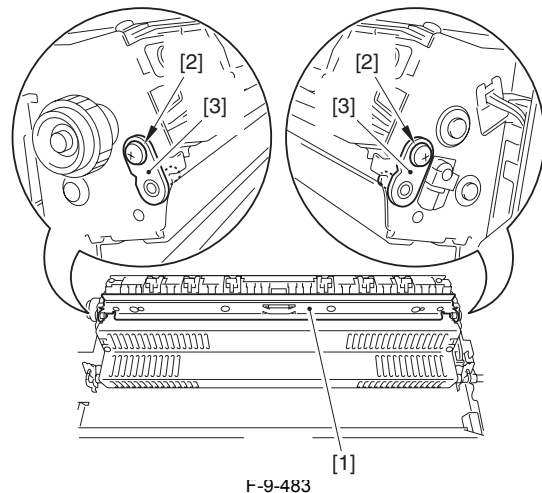
5) Detach the separation plate (secondary) [2].
 - 2 screws [2]
 - 2 positioning pins [3]



F-9-480

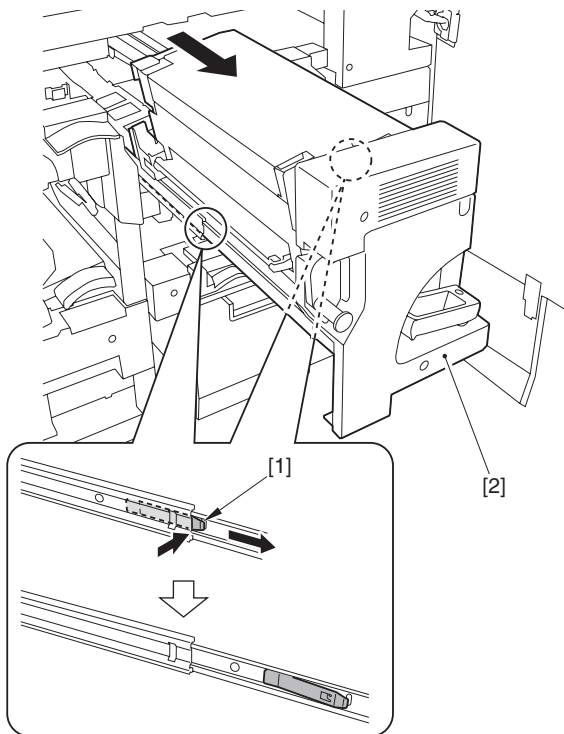
3) Release the 2 leaf springs [1], and pull out the secondary fixing assembly [2] further.

⚠ The separation plate may drop due to the force of the spring.



F-9-483

⚠ Points to Note When Attaching
 Be sure that the lever [1] is fit into the cut-off [2].



F-9-481

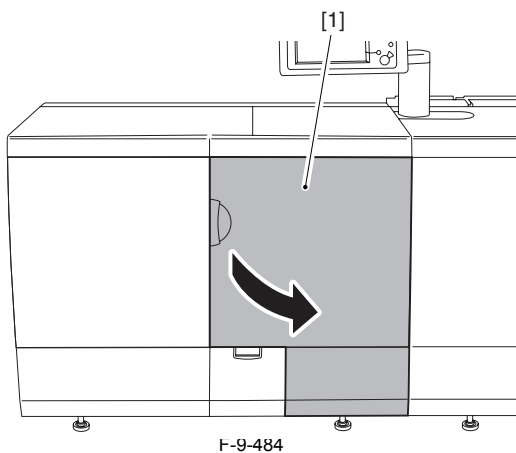
4) Hold the release lever [1], and open the fixing inner delivery unit [2].

9.7.27 Fixing Inner Delivery Roller

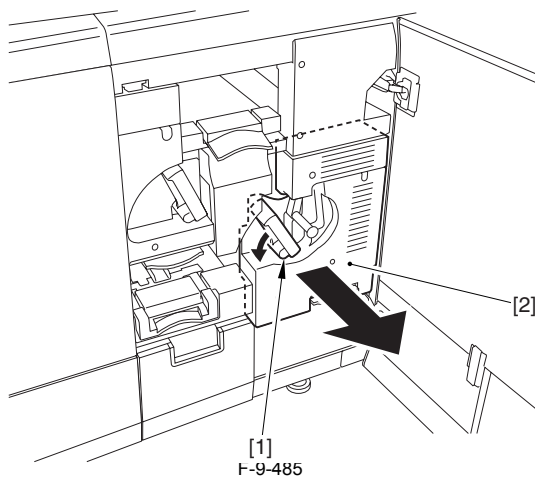
9.7.27.1 Removing Primary Fixing Inside Delivery Lower Roller

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

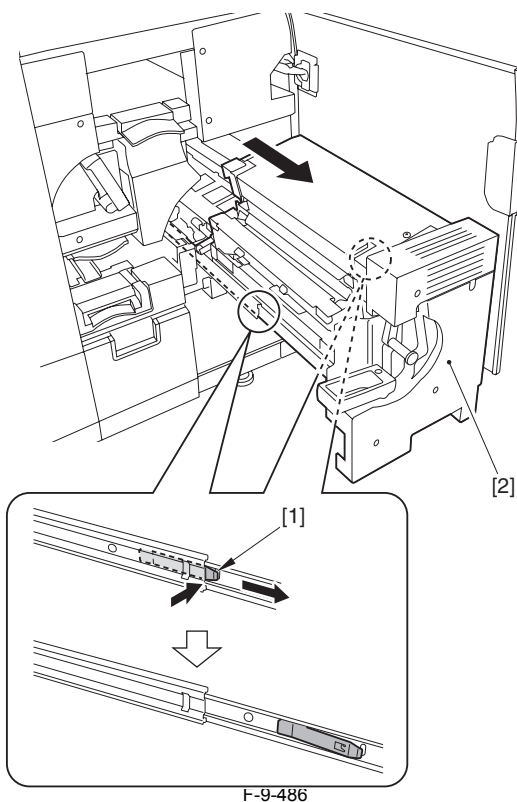
1) Open the sub station front right cover [1].



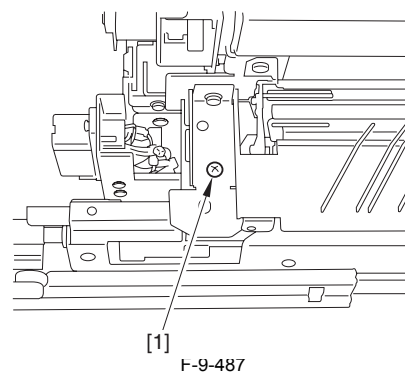
2) Tilt the release lever [1] in the direction of the arrow and slide out the primary fixing assembly [2].



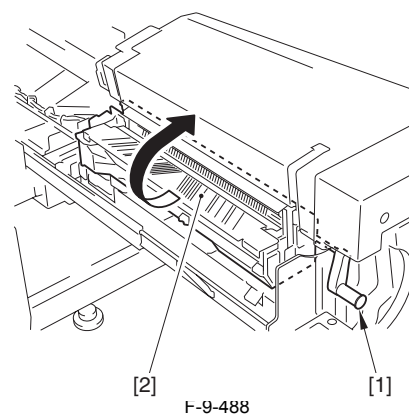
3) Disengage the 2 leaf springs [1] and slide out the primary fixing assembly [2] more.



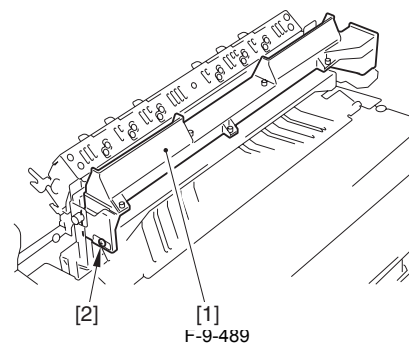
4) Remove the screw [1] found at the rear side of the primary fixing inside delivery unit.



5) While holding the lever [1], open the primary fixing inside delivery unit [2].

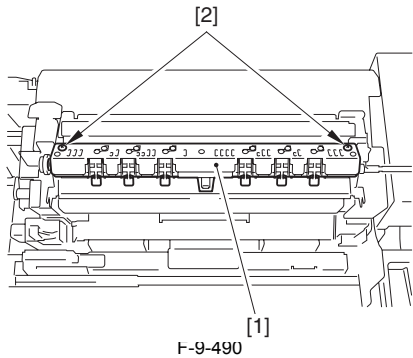


6) Remove the duct [1].
- 1 screw [2]

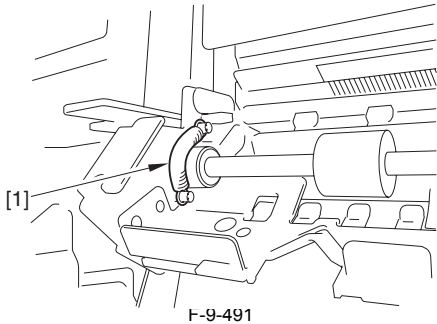


7) Remove the separation claw unit [1].
- 2 screws [2]

⚠ Be sure not to pull the harness by force. Otherwise, it may get damage.

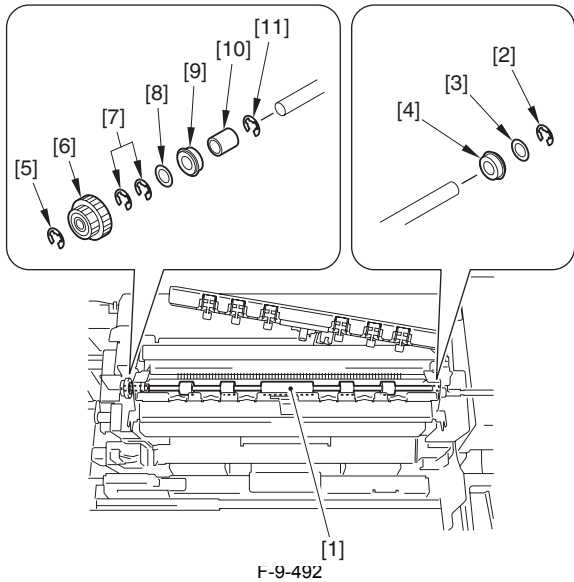


8) Remove the spring [1] found at the rear side of the primary fixing inside delivery lower roller.



9) Remove the primary fixing inside delivery lower roller [1].

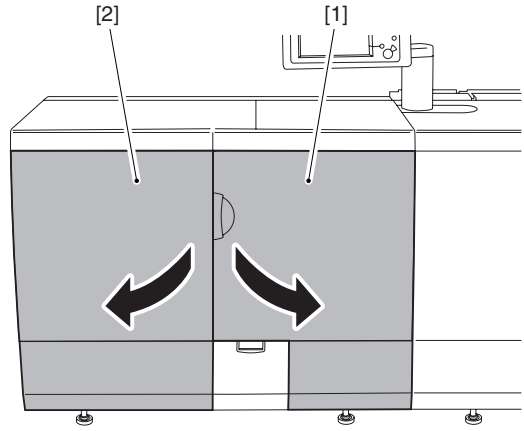
- Front side
 - 1 E-ring [2]
 - 1 washer [3]
 - 1 bearing [4]
- Back side
 - 1 E-ring [5]
 - 1 one-way gear [6]
 - 2 E-rings [7]
 - 1 washer [8]
 - 1 bearing [9]
 - 1 spacer [10]
 - 1 E-ring [11]



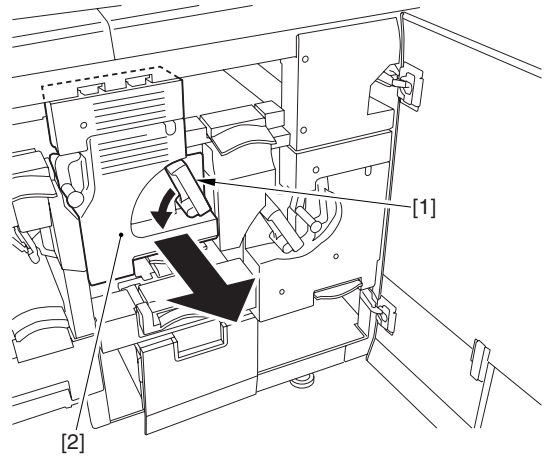
9.7.27.2 Removing Secondary Fixing Inside Delivery Lower Roller

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

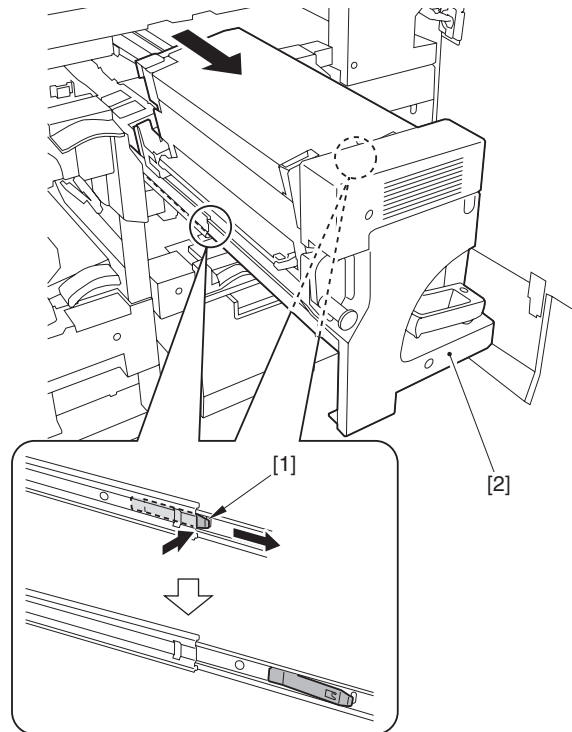
1) Open the sub station front right cover [1] and sub station front left cover [2].



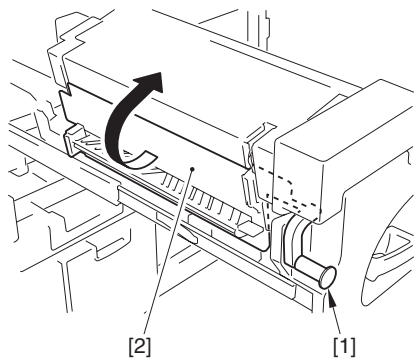
2) Tilt the release lever [1] in the direction of the arrow and slide out the secondary fixing assembly [2].



3) Disengage the 2 leaf springs [1] and slide out the secondary fixing assembly [2] more.



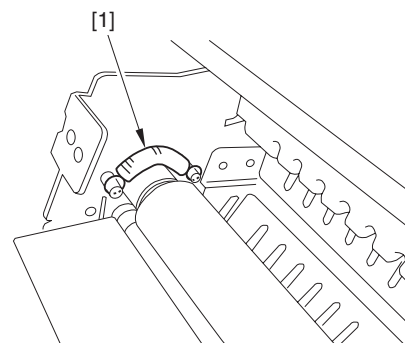
4) While holding the lever [1], open the secondary fixing inside delivery unit [2].



F-9-496

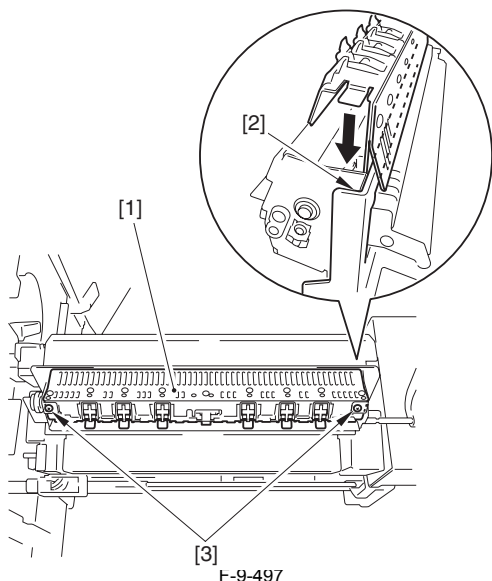
- 5) Remove the separate claw unit [1] and place it onto the plate [2] to make the plate be held.
 - 2 screws [3]

⚠ Be sure not to pull the harness by force. Otherwise, it may get damage.

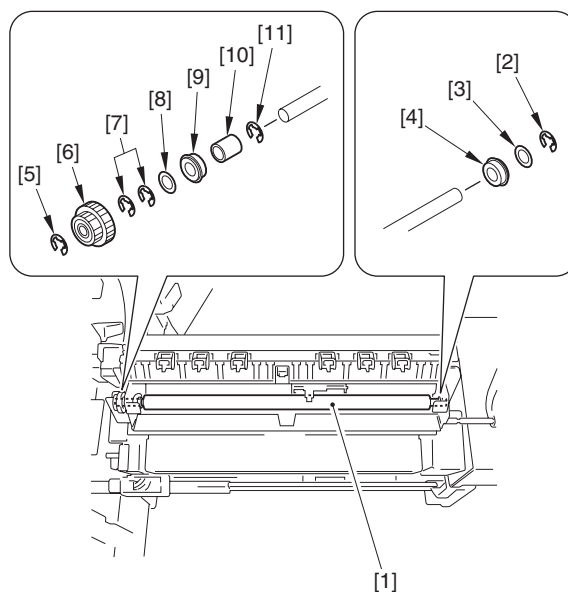


F-9-498

- 7) Remove the secondary fixing inside delivery lower roller [1].
- Front side
 - 1 E-ring [2]
 - 1 washer [3]
 - 1 bearing [4]
 - Back side
 - 1 E-ring [5]
 - 1 one-way gear [6]
 - 2 E-rings [7]
 - 1 washer [8]
 - 1 bearing [9]
 - 1 spacer [10]
 - 1 E-ring [11]



F-9-497



F-9-499

⚠ **Points to note when attaching**
 Insert the sensor flag [1] inside of the cut-off [2] on the separation plate.

- 6) Remove the spring [1] found at the rear side of the secondary fixing inside delivery lower roller.

Chapter 10 Externals and Controls

Contents

10.1 Control Panel	10-1
10.1.1 Overview	10-1
10.1.2 LCD Function	10-1
10.1.3 Function of Control Panel CPU	10-1
10.2 Counters	10-1
10.2.1 Overview	10-1
10.2.2 Count-up Timing	10-3
10.3 Fans	10-7
10.3.1 Function of Fan	10-7
10.3.2 Sequence of Fan Operation	10-11
10.4 Power Supply	10-15
10.4.1 Power Supply	10-15
10.4.1.1 AC Power Supply Configuration	10-15
10.4.1.2 DC Power Supply Configuration	10-17
10.4.2 Protection Function	10-19
10.4.2.1 Protective Functions	10-19
10.4.3 Backup Battery	10-19
10.4.3.1 Overview	10-19
10.4.4 Energy-Saving Function	10-19
10.4.4.1 Overview	10-19
10.4.4.2 SNMP setup	10-21
10.5 Parts Replacement Procedure	10-23
10.5.1 AC Power Supply Unit	10-23
10.5.1.1 Before Removing AC Power Supply Unit	10-23
10.5.1.2 Removing AC Power Supply Unit	10-23
10.5.2 Power Supply Unit	10-23
10.5.2.1 Removing 24V Supply 1	10-23
10.5.2.2 Removing 24V Supply 2	10-23
10.5.3 Main controller power supply PCB	10-23
10.5.3.1 Detaching the main controller power supply PCB	10-23
10.5.4 DC Controller PCB	10-24
10.5.4.1 Removing DC controller PCB	10-24
10.5.5 Non-All-Night Power Supply PCB	10-25
10.5.5.1 Removing 13V Non-All-Night Power Supply PCB	10-25
10.5.6 All-Night Power Supply PCB	10-26
10.5.6.1 Detaching the 3.3V all-night power supply PCB	10-26
10.5.7 Thermopile power supply PCB	10-26
10.5.7.1 Removing Drum Surface Temperature Sensor Power Supply PCB	10-26
10.5.8 Leakage Breaker	10-26
10.5.8.1 Removing Leakage Protection Relay	10-26
10.5.9 Environment Heater Driver PCB	10-26
10.5.9.1 Removing Environment heater driver PCB	10-26
10.5.10 Ozone Filter	10-27
10.5.10.1 Removing Ozone Filter within the Intermediate Transfer Unit	10-27
10.5.10.2 Removing Main Station Rear Ozone Filter	10-30
10.5.10.3 Removing Sub-Station Left Rear Ozone Filter	10-31
10.5.10.4 Removing Sub-Station Upper Rear Ozone Filter	10-31
10.5.10.5 Removing Sub-Station Middle Rear Ozone Filter	10-31

10.5.11 Toner Filter.....	10-32
10.5.11.1 Removing Main Station Rear Toner Filter.....	10-32
10.5.11.2 Removing Primary Suction Filter.....	10-33
10.5.12 Noise Filter.....	10-33
10.5.12.1 Before removing AC Filter Unit.....	10-33
10.5.12.2 Removing AC Filter Unit.....	10-33
10.5.13 Air Filter.....	10-34
10.5.13.1 Removing Air Filter in the Intermediate Transfer Unit.....	10-34
10.5.14 Power Unit Station.....	10-34
10.5.14.1 Removing Power Unit Station.....	10-34

10.1 Control Panel

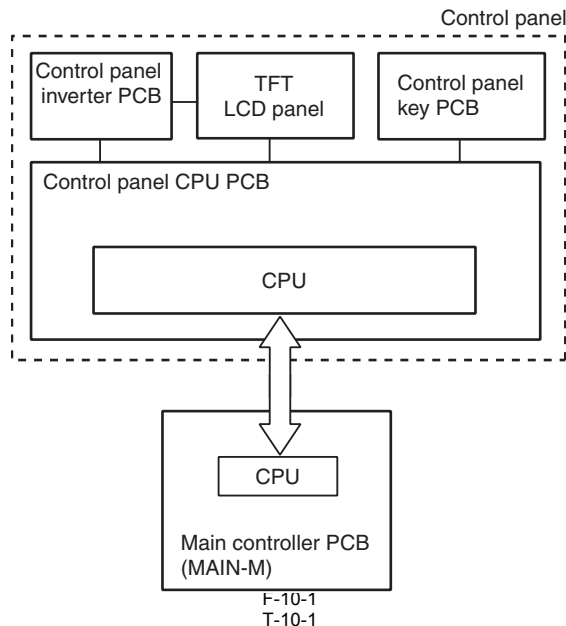
10.1.1 Overview

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

The control panel of this machine consists of the PCBs, the LCD, and the touch panel described in the figure below.

Major functions

- LCD function
- Touch switch input function
- Hard key input function



MEMO:

The contrast adjustment function of LCD is not provided.

10.1.2 LCD Function

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

The CPU on the main controller PCB (MAIN-M) gives data (display information) to the CPU PCB of the control panel according to the program. The given data is sent to the color LCD via CPU PCB of the control panel.

10.1.3 Function of Control Panel CPU

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- Hard key input monitoring
 - Transmits the numeric key/function key inputs to the CPU on main controller PCB (MAIN-M).
- Touch panel input monitoring
 - Transmits the key input on touch panel to the CPU on main controller PCB (MAIN-M).
- Buzzer sound control
- Control panel LED activation control

MEMO:

The main controller PCB (MAIN-M) executes the LCD drive, and the control panel CPU relays the drive signal.

10.2 Counters

10.2.1 Overview

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

The machine is equipped with counters that indicate the counts of output according to types of job. These counters are indicated in response to a press on the Counter

Check key on the control panel.

T-10-2

Model	Counter 1	Counter 2	Counter 3	Counter 4	Counter 5	Counter 6	Counter 7	Counter 8	COPIER>OPTION>BODY>CONFIG
100V *2	Total 1	Total (B&W 1)	Copy (full color + mono color/1)	Print (full color + mono color/1)	*1	*1	*1	*1	JP
	101	108	232	324	000	000	000	000	
100V *3	Total 2	Copy (full color + mono color/2)	Total A (full color + mono color/2)	Copy (B&W 2)	Total A (B&W 2)	*1	*1	*1	JP
	102	231	148	222	133	000	000	000	
100V *4	Total 1	Total (B&W 1)	Copy (full color + mono color/1)	Print (full color + mono color/1)	Total (B&W 1)	*1	*1	*1	JP
	101	108	232	324	118	000	000	000	
100V *5	Total 1	Total (full color + mono color/ small)	Total (full color + mono color/ large)	Total (B&W/ small)	Total (B&W/ large)	scan (total 1)	*1	*1	JP
	101	123	122	113	112	501	000	000	
100V *6	Total 1	Total (full color + mono color/ small)	Total (full color + mono color/ large)	Total (B&W/ small)	Total (B&W/ large)	Total (mono color/ small)	Total (mono color/ large)	scan (total 1)	JP
	101	123	122	113	112	111	110	501	
120V TW	Total 1	Total (B&W 1)	Copy + print (full color/ large)	Copy + print (full color/ small)	Total (B&W 1)	*1	*1	*1	TW
	101	108	401	402	118	000	000	000	
120V UL	Total 1	Total (B&W 1)	Copy (full color + mono color/ large)	Copy (full color +mono color/ small)	Print (full color + mono color/ large)	Print (full color +mono color/ small)	*1	*1	US
	101	108	407	408	403	404	000	000	
120V UL *3	Total 2	Total (B&W 2)	Copy (full color + mono color/ large)	Copy (full color +mono color/ small)	Print (full color + mono color/ large)	Print (full color +mono color/ small)	*1	*1	US
	102	109	407	408	403	404	000	000	
230V ASIA	Total 1	Total (B&W 1)	Copy + print (full color/ large)	Copy + print (full color/ small)	Total (B&W 1)	total1(duplex)	*1	*1	SG/KO/CN
	101	108	401	402	118	114	000	000	
230V UK	Total (B&W/ large)	Total (B&W/ small)	Total (full color + mono color/ large)	Total (full color + mono color/ small)	scan (total 1)	Print (total 1)	*1	*1	GB
	112	113	122	123	501	301	000	000	
230V AUS	Total 1	Total (B&W 1)	Copy (full color + mono color/ large)	Copy (full color +mono color/ small)	Print (full color + mono color/ large)	Print (full color +mono color/ small)	*1	*1	AU
	101	108	229	230	321	322	000	000	
230V FRN	Total (B&W/ large)	Total (B&W/ small)	Total (full color + mono color/ large)	Total (full color + mono color/ small)	scan (total 1)	Print (total 1)	*1	*1	FR
	112	113	122	123	501	301	000	000	
230V GER	Total (B&W/ large)	Total (B&W/ small)	Total (full color + mono color/ large)	Total (full color + mono color/ small)	scan (total 1)	Print (total 1)	*1	*1	DE
	112	113	122	123	501	301	000	000	
230V AMS	Total (B&W/ large)	Total (B&W/ small)	Total (full color + mono color/ large)	Total (full color + mono color/ small)	scan (total 1)	Print (total 1)	*1	*1	ES/SE/PT/NO/ DK/FI/PL/HU/ CZ/SI/GR/EE/ RU/NL/SK/ RO/HR/BG/ TR
	112	113	122	123	501	301	000	000	
230V ITA	Total (B&W/ large)	Total (B&W/ small)	Total (full color + mono color/ large)	Total (full color + mono color/ small)	scan (total 1)	Print (total 1)	*1	*1	IT
	112	113	122	123	501	301	000	000	

<Guide to Notations>

large: large-size paper (longer than 364 mm in feed direction; count increased by 1).

small: small-size paper (364 mm in feed length or shorter).

total: all (C+P; count increased by 1).

duplex: duplexing (in auto duplexing; count increased by 1).

- The 3-digit number in the counter column indicates the setting of the following service mode item: COPIER > OPTION > USER > COUNTER1 to 6
- counters 2 through 6 may be changed using the following service mode item: COPIER > OPTION > USER.

*1: by default, not indicated; may be changed in service mode.

*2: if '0' is set for the following: COPIER > OPTION > USER > CNT-SW.

*3: if '1' is set for the following: COPIER > OPTION > USER > CNT-SW.

*4: if '2' is set for the following: COPIER > OPTION > USER > CNT-SW.

*5: if '3' is set for the following: COPIER > OPTION > USER > CNT-SW.

*6: if '4' is set for the following: COPIER > OPTION > USER > CNT-SW.

10.2.2 Count-up Timing

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

The count-up timing varies according to the following conditions:

- Print mode (1-sided/2nd side of 2-sided print/1st side of 2-sided print)
- Delivery location (finisher, stacker, perfect binder)

T-10-3

Delivery location		Print mode	
		1-sided/2nd side of 2-sided print	1st side of 2-sided print
		Count-up timing	
1	In the case of the host machine only	When the paper's trail edge passes over the delivery roller 3. Reference sensor: Delivery sensor 3 (PS339)	When the paper's trail edge passes over the duplexing feed roller 1-1. Reference sensor: Duplexing standby sensor 1-1 (PS339)
2	Finisher Saddle finisher	Tray A (Upper tray)	When the paper's trail edge passes over the delivery roller. Reference sensor: Upper delivery sensor (PS5)
		Tray B (Lower tray)	When the paper's trail edge passes over the sort delivery roller. Reference sensor: Lower delivery sensor (PS6)
	Saddle section	When the paper's trail edge passes over the saddle inlet transport roller of the saddle finisher. Reference sensor: saddle inlet sensor (PS101)	
3	Trimmer	When the paper's trail edge passes over the saddle inlet transport roller of the saddle finisher. Reference sensor: saddle inlet sensor (PS101)	
4	Stacker	Delivery tray	When the paper's trail edge passes over the output tray exit roller. Reference sensor: Output tray exit sheet sensor (PI03)
		Stack section	When the paper's trail edge passes over the stacker exit roller. Reference sensor: Stacker exit sheet sensor (PI07)
5	Perfect binder	When the paper's trail edge passes over the signature delivery roller. Reference sensor: Timing sensor (S5)	

Service Mode:

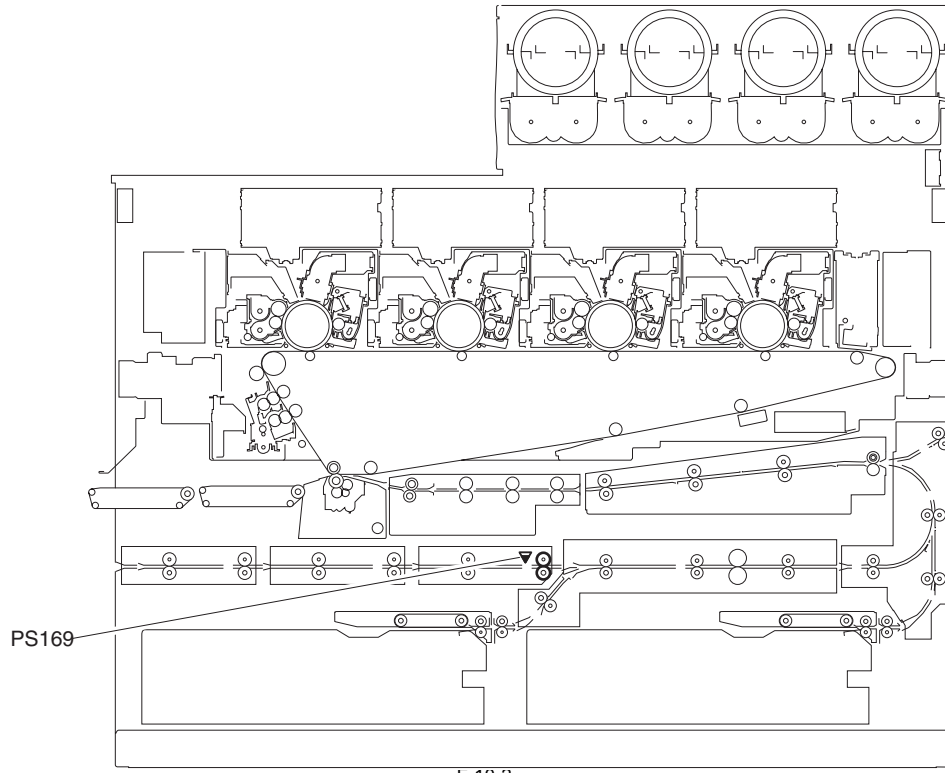
COPIER > OPTION > BODY > CNT-TMG

0: count-up from when the paper is delivered from the delivery options [default]

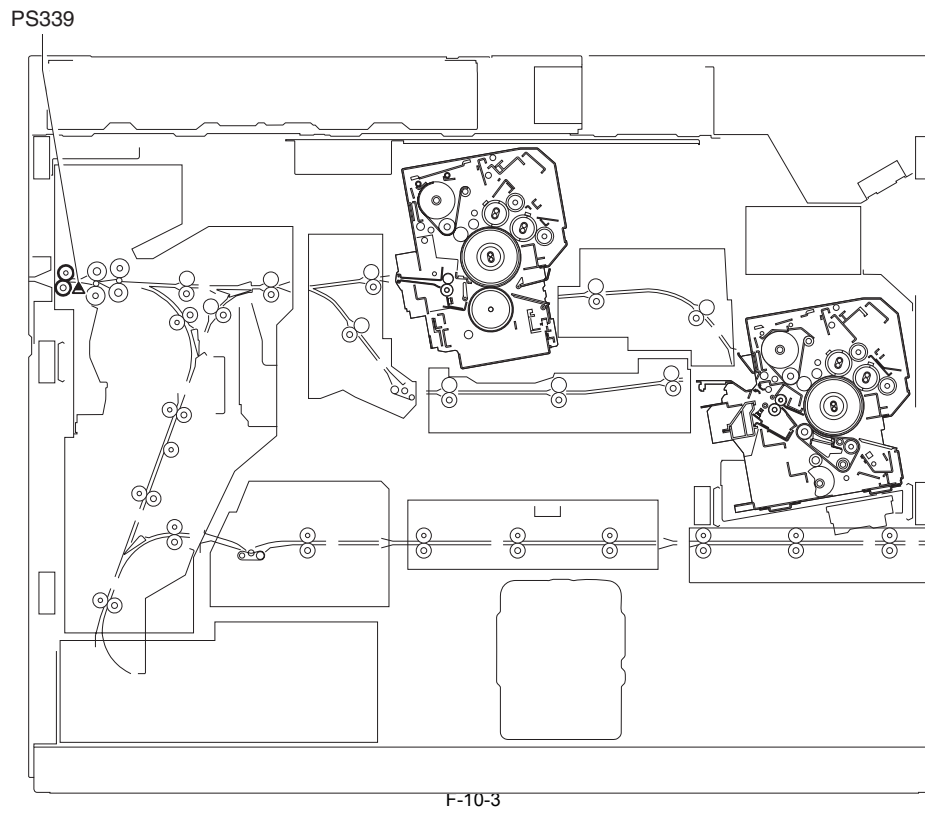
1: count-up from when the paper is delivered from the host machine

The count-up timing in the case of selecting "1" applies to "1" on the table above.

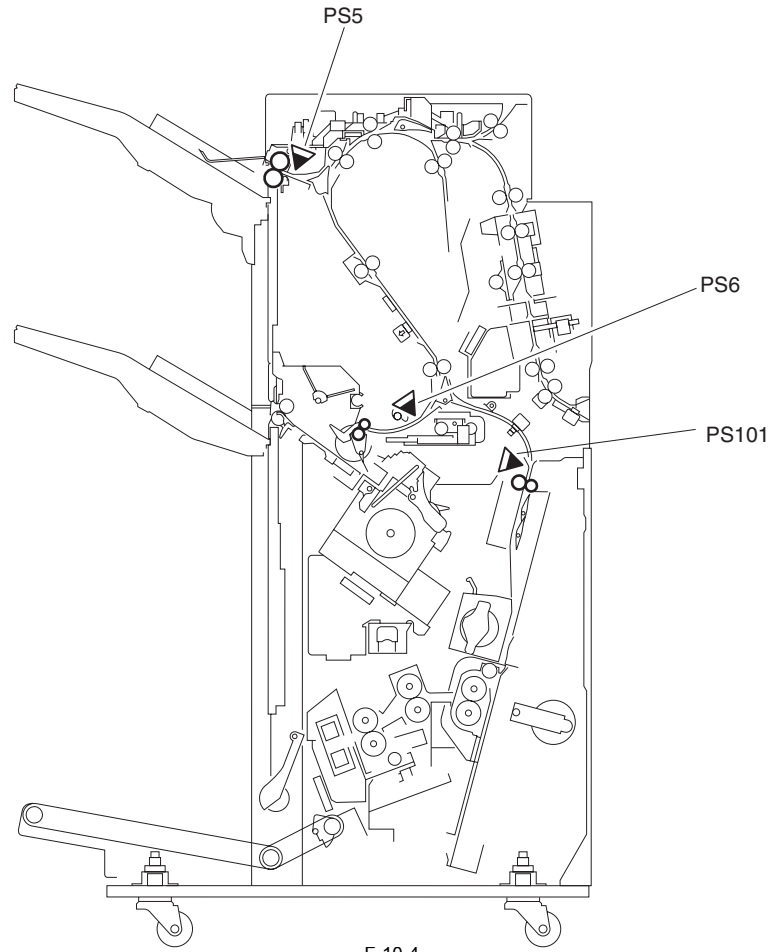
- Main station



- Sub station

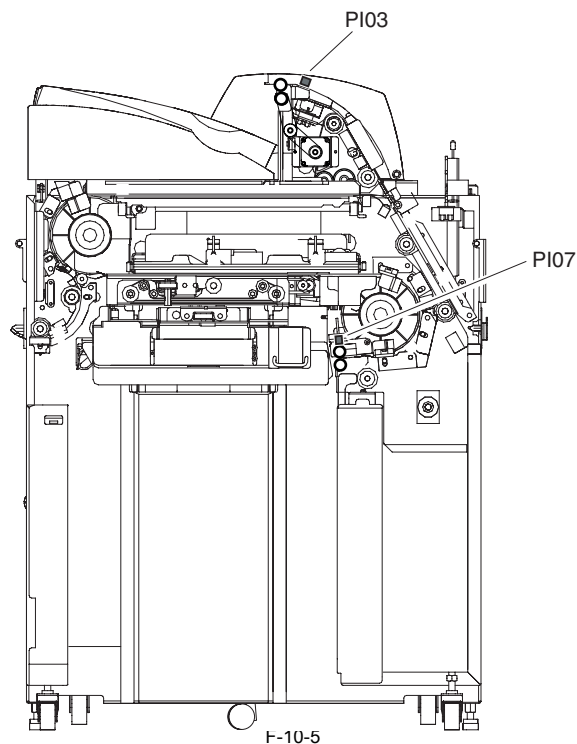


- Finisher / saddle finisher

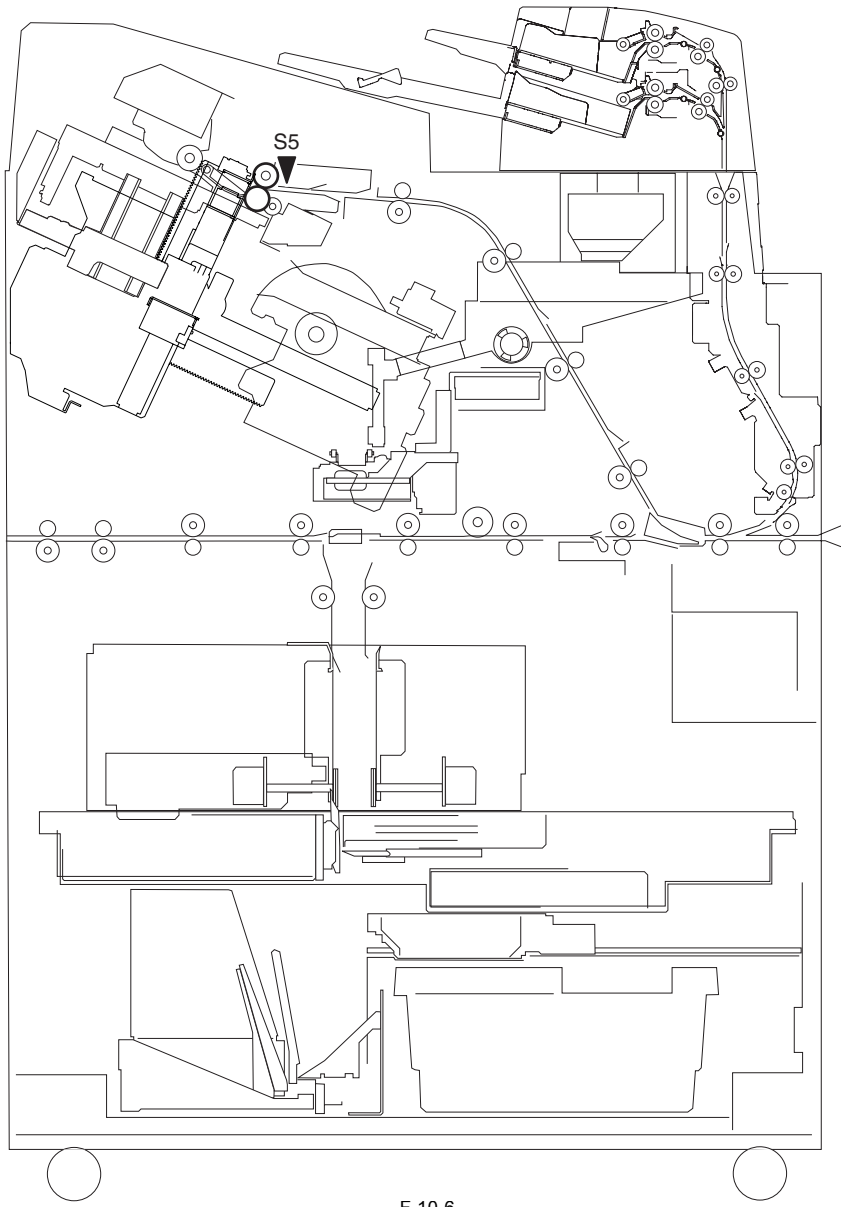


F-10-4

- Stacker



F-10-5



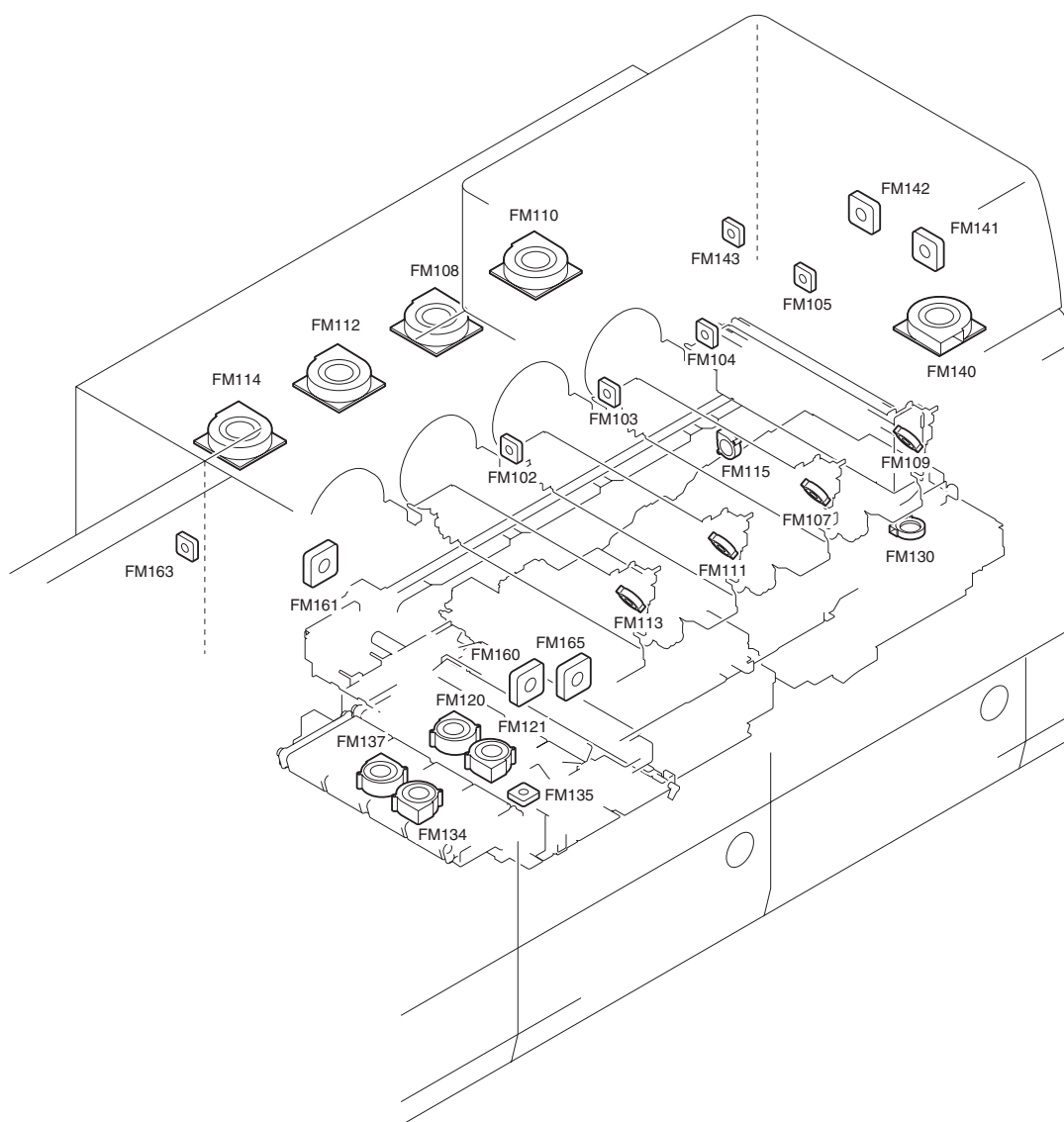
F-10-6

10.3 Fans

10.3.1 Function of Fan

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- Main station

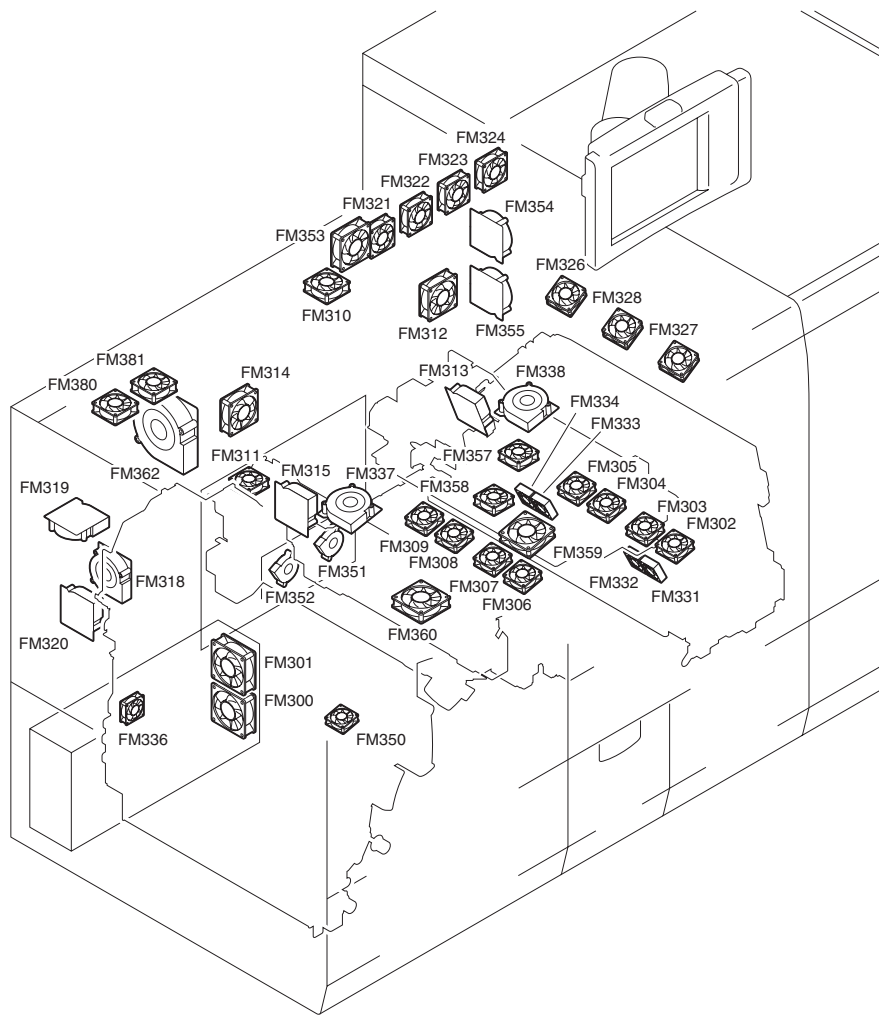


F-10-7
T-10-4

Symbol	Parts Name	Function	E Code/Alarm Code
FM102	Laser cooling fan (C)	To cool the laser scanner unit	E121-0300
FM103	Laser cooling fan (Bk)	To cool the laser scanner unit	E121-0400
FM104	Laser cooling fan (M)	To cool the laser scanner unit	E121-0200
FM105	Laser cooling fan (Y)	To cool the laser scanner unit	E121-0100
FM107	Process unit cooling fan (C)	To cool the process unit	E820-0103
FM108	Process unit exhausting fan (C)	To exhaust air from the process unit	E820-0203
FM109	Process unit cooling fan (Bk)	To cool the process unit	E820-0104
FM110	Process unit exhausting fan (Bk)	To exhaust air from the process unit	E820-0204
FM111	Process unit cooling fan (M)	To cool the process unit	E820-0102
FM112	Process unit exhausting fan (M)	To exhaust air from the process unit	E820-0202
FM113	Process unit cooling fan (Y)	To cool the process unit	E820-0101
FM114	Process unit exhausting fan (Y)	To exhaust air from the process unit	E820-0201
FM115	Pre-transfer exhausting fan	To exhaust air from the pre-transfer charge assembly	E823-0001
FM120	Pre-fixing feed rear right fan	To attract paper to the pre-fixing feed belt	E805-0402

Symbol	Parts Name	Function	E Code/Alarm Code
FM121	Pre-fixing feed front right fan	To attract paper to the pre-fixing feed belt	E805-0401
FM130	Registration feed driver PCB right cooling fan	To cool the registration feed driver PCB	E822-0501
FM134	Pre-fixing feed front left fan	To attract paper to the pre-fixing feed belt	E805-0403
FM135	Secondary transfer/duplexing driver PCB cooling fan	To cool the secondary transfer/duplexing driver PCB	
FM137	Pre-fixing feed rear left fan	To attract paper to the pre-fixing feed belt	E805-0404
FM140	Main station right cooling fan 1	To cool the main station	E822-0301
FM141	Main station right cooling fan 2	To cool the main station	E822-0302
FM142	Main station right cooling fan 3	To cool the main station	E822-0303
FM143	Main station rear right cooling fan	To cool the main station	E822-0304
FM160	Process unit front side cooling fan (Y)	To cool the developing assembly	E820-0301
FM161	Process unit rear side cooling fan (Y)	To cool the developing assembly	E820-0302
FM163	Main station rear left cooling fan	To cool the main station	E822-0305

- Sub station

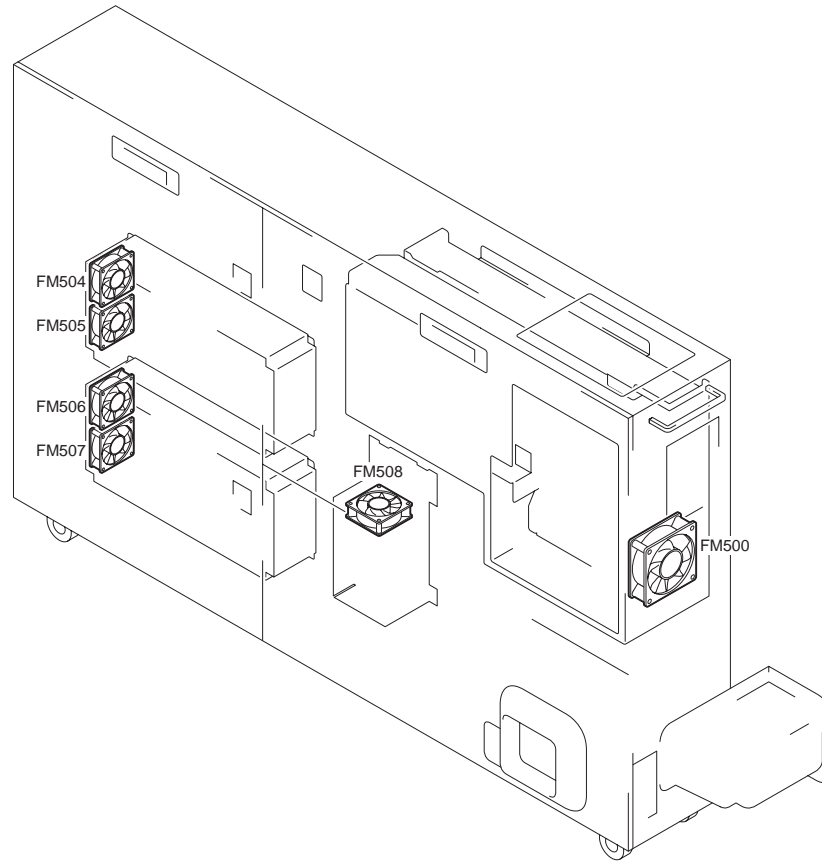


F-10-8
T-10-5

Symbol	Parts Name	Function	E Code/Alarm Code
FM300	Power supply cooling fan 7	To cool the power supply unit	E804-0104
FM301	Power supply cooling fan 8	To cool the power supply unit	E804-0104
FM302	Primary fixing belt cooling fan 1	To cool the fixing belt	E805-0101
FM303	Primary fixing belt cooling fan 2	To cool the fixing belt	E805-0102
FM304	Primary fixing belt cooling fan 3	To cool the fixing belt	E805-0103
FM305	Primary fixing belt cooling fan 4	To cool the fixing belt	E805-0104
FM306	Secondary fixing pressure roller cooling fan 1	To cool the pressure roller	E805-0301
FM307	Secondary fixing pressure roller cooling fan 2	To cool the pressure roller	E805-0302
FM308	Secondary fixing pressure roller cooling fan 3	To cool the pressure roller	E805-0303

Symbol	Parts Name	Function	E Code/Alarm Code
FM309	Secondary fixing pressure roller cooling fan 4	To cool the pressure roller	E805-0304
FM310	Primary sub station power unit cooling fan	To cool the power unit located at the back of the sub-station	E805-0601
FM311	Secondary sub station power unit cooling fan	To cool the power unit located at the back of the sub-station	E805-0602
FM312	Primary fixing heat exhaust fan	To exhaust heat from the fixing assembly	E805-0201
FM313	Primary fixing inside delivery cooling fan	To cool the inner delivery unit and the paper at the fixing assembly	E822-0201
FM314	Secondary fixing heat exhaust fan	To exhaust heat from the fixing assembly	E805-0202
FM315	Secondary fixing inside delivery cooling fan	To cool the inner delivery unit and the paper at the fixing assembly	E822-0202
FM318	Delivery lower cooling fan	To cool the delivered paper through the delivery assembly	E822-0101
FM319	Delivery upper cooling fan	To cool the delivered paper through the delivery assembly	E822-0102
FM320	Duplexing decurler fan	To cool the delivered paper through the duplexing decurler	E822-0401
FM321	Station to station interval cooling fan 1	To cool the main station - sub station interval	E822-0601
FM322	Station to station interval cooling fan 2	To cool the main station - sub station interval	E822-0602
FM323	Station to station interval cooling fan 3	To cool the main station - sub station interval	E822-0603
FM324	Station to station interval cooling fan 4	To cool the main station - sub station interval	E822-0604
FM326	Station to station interval cooling fan 6	To cool the main station - sub station interval	E822-0606
FM327	Station to station interval cooling fan 7	To cool the main station - sub station interval	E822-0607
FM328	Station to station interval cooling fan 8	To cool the main station - sub station interval	E822-0608
FM331	Primary fixing separating cooling fan 1	To cool the fixing belt (at the separating unit)	E805-0701
FM332	Primary fixing separating cooling fan 2	To cool the fixing belt (at the separating unit)	E805-0702
FM333	Primary fixing separating cooling fan 3	To cool the fixing belt (at the separating unit)	E805-0703
FM334	Primary fixing separating cooling fan 4	To cool the fixing belt (at the separating unit)	E805-0704
FM337	Secondary fixing pressure roller cooling fan 5	To cool the pressure roller	E805-0305
FM338	Primary fixing belt cooling fan 5	To cool the fixing belt	E805-0105
FM350	Delivery decurler cooling fan	To cool the delivered paper through the delivery assembly	E822-0402
FM351	Fixing duplexing driver PCB left cooling fan	To cool the fixing duplexing driver PCB	E805-0801
FM352	Fixing duplexing driver PCB right cooling fan	To cool the fixing duplexing driver PCB	E805-0802
FM353	Reader cooling fan	To cool the reader (option)	E828-0001
FM354	Main station upper delivery fan	To exhaust air from the main station	E822-0801
FM355	Main station lower delivery fan	To exhaust air from the main station	E822-0802
FM356	Sub station frame cooling fan	To cool the waste toner pipe	
FM357	Tandem guide upper cooling fan	To cool the tandem guide and the delivered paper	E822-0902
FM358	Tandem guide lower cooling fan	To cool the tandem guide and the delivered paper	E822-0903
FM359	Bypass guide front cooling fan	To cool the bypass guide and the delivered paper	E822-0904
FM360	Bypass guide rear cooling fan	To cool the bypass guide and the delivered paper	E822-0905
FM361	Merger guide front fan	To cool the merger guide and the delivered paper	E822-0901

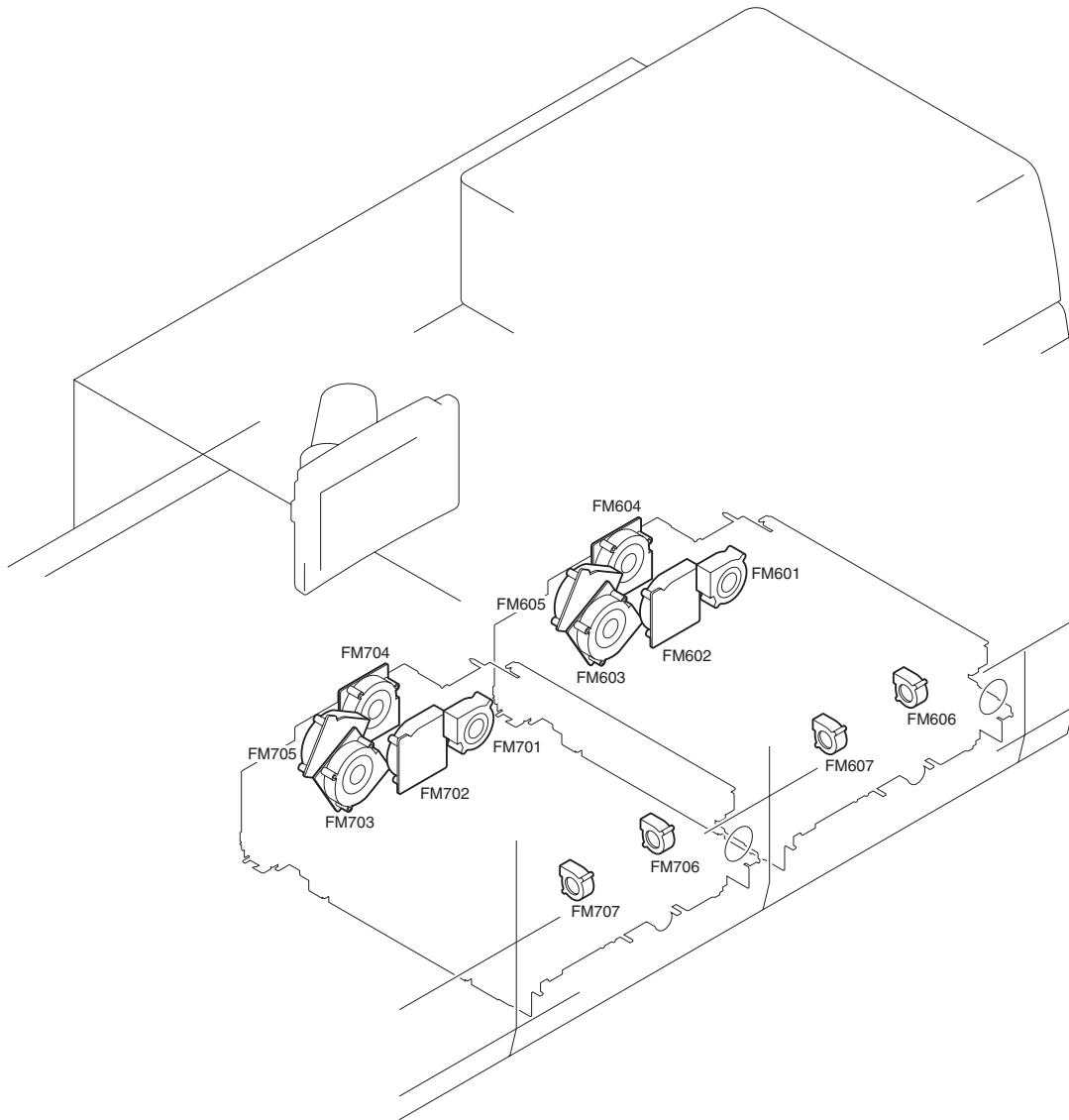
- Electrical station



F-10-9
T-10-6

Symbol	Parts Name	Function	E Code/Alarm Code
FM500	Main controller cooling fan 1	To cool the inside of the main controller box	E804-0004
FM501	Main controller cooling fan 2	To cool the inside of the main controller box	E804-0004
FM502	Power supply cooling fan 1	To cool the power supply unit	E804-0101
FM503	Power supply cooling fan 2	To cool the power supply unit	E804-0101
FM504	Power supply cooling fan 3	To cool the power supply unit	E804-0102
FM505	Power supply cooling fan 4	To cool the power supply unit	E804-0102
FM506	Power supply cooling fan 5	To cool the power supply unit	E804-0103
FM507	Power supply cooling fan 6	To cool the power supply unit	E804-0103
FM508	Power supply cooling fan 9	To cool the power supply unit	

- Deck assembly



F-10-10
T-10-7

Symbol	Parts Name	Function	E Code/Alarm Code
FM601	Right deck suction fan	To pickup the paper	
FM602	Right deck main right floatation fan	To separate the paper	04-1049, 1050
FM603	Right deck main left floatation fan	To separate the paper	04-1051, 1052
FM604	Right deck sub right floatation fan	To separate the paper	04-1053, 1054
FM605	Right deck sub left floatation fan	To separate the paper	04-1055, 1056
FM606	Right deck side right fan	To separate the paper (in larger sizes)	04-1057
FM607	Right deck side left fan	To separate the paper (in larger sizes)	04-1058
FM701	Left deck suction fan	To pickup the paper	
FM702	Left deck main right floatation fan	To separate the paper	04-1149, 1150
FM703	Left deck main left floatation fan	To separate the paper	04-1151, 1152
FM704	Left deck sub right floatation fan	To separate the paper	04-1153, 1154
FM705	Left deck sub left floatation fan	To separate the paper	04-1155, 1156
FM706	Left deck side right fan	To separate the paper (in larger sizes)	04-1157
FM707	Left deck side left fan	To separate the paper (in larger sizes)	04-1158

10.3.2 Sequence of Fan Operation

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- Main station (exclude the deck assembly)

		Main power switch ON		Control panel power switch OFF				Main power switch OFF						
		Warm-up	Warm-up rotation	Standby	In low-voltage mode	In power-saving/low-voltage mode	In sleep mode	During printing	At printing Finished	When jammed	When paper absence	At error occurrence	When cover open	When fixing assembly release lever open
FM102	Laser cooling fan (C)	■												
FM103	Laser cooling fan (Bk)	■												
FM104	Laser cooling fan (M)	■												
FM105	Laser cooling fan (Y)	■												
FM107	Process unit cooling fan (C)	■												
FM108	Process unit exhausting fan (C)	■												
FM109	Process unit cooling fan (Bk)	■												
FM110	Process unit exhausting fan (Bk)	■												
FM111	Process unit cooling fan (M)	■												
FM112	Process unit exhausting fan (M)	■												
FM113	Process unit cooling fan (Y)	■												
FM114	Process unit exhausting fan (Y)	■												
FM115	Pre-transfer exhausting fan	■												
FM120	Pre-fixing feed rear right fan							■						
FM121	Pre-fixing feed front right fan							■						
FM130	Registration feed driver PCB right cooling fan							■						
FM134	Pre-fixing feed front left fan							■						
FM135	Secondary transfer/duplexing driver PCB cooling fan							■						
FM137	Pre-fixing feed rear left fan							■						
FM140	Main station right cooling fan 1	■												
FM141	Main station right cooling fan 2	■												
FM142	Main station right cooling fan 3	■												
FM143	Main station rear right cooling fan	■												
FM160	Process unit front side cooling fan (Y)	■												
FM161	Process unit rear side cooling fan (Y)	■												
FM163	Main station rear left cooling fan	■												

F-10-11

- Main station (the deck assembly)

		Main power switch ON		Control panel power switch OFF				Main power switch OFF						
		Warm-up	Warm-up rotation	Standby	In low-voltage mode	In power-saving/low-voltage mode	In sleep mode	During printing	At printing Finished	When jammed	When paper absence	At error occurrence	When cover open	When fixing assembly release lever open
FM601	Right deck suction fan													
FM602	Right deck main right floatation fan	■												
FM603	Right deck main left floatation fan	■												
FM604	Right deck sub right floatation fan	■												
FM605	Right deck sub left floatation fan	■												
FM606	Right deck side right fan	■												
FM607	Right deck side left fan	■												
FM701	Left deck suction fan													
FM702	Left deck main right floatation fan	■												
FM703	Left deck main left floatation fan	■												
FM704	Left deck sub right floatation fan	■												
FM705	Left deck sub left floatation fan	■												
FM706	Left deck side right fan	■												
FM707	Left deck side left fan	■												

F-10-12

- Sub station

		Main power switch ON			Control panel power switch OFF			Main power switch OFF						
		Warm-up	Warm-up rotation	Standby	In low-voltage mode	In power-saving/low-voltage mode	In sleep mode	During printing	At printing Finished	When jammed	When paper absence	At error occurrence	When cover open	When fixing assembly release lever open
FM300	Power supply cooling fan 7													
FM301	Power supply cooling fan 8													
FM302	Primary fixing belt cooling fan 1													
FM303	Primary fixing belt cooling fan 2													
FM304	Primary fixing belt cooling fan 3													
FM305	Primary fixing belt cooling fan 4													
FM306	Secondary fixing pressure roller cooling fan 1													
FM307	Secondary fixing pressure roller cooling fan 2													
FM308	Secondary fixing pressure roller cooling fan 3													
FM309	Secondary fixing pressure roller cooling fan 4													
FM310	Primary sub station power unit cooling fan													
FM311	Secondary sub station power unit cooling fan													
FM312	Primary fixing heat exhaust fan													
FM313	Primary fixing inside delivery cooling fan													
FM314	Secondary fixing heat exhaust fan													
FM315	Secondary fixing inside delivery cooling fan													
FM318	Delivery lower cooling fan													
FM319	Delivery upper cooling fan													
FM320	Duplexing decurler fan													

F-10-13

		Main power swich ON		Control panel power swich OFF			Main power swich OFF			<div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-between;"> ■ : Full speed rotation ▨ : Half speed rotation </div>				
		Warm-up	Warm-up rotation	Standby	In low-voltage mode	In power-saving/low-voltage mode	In sleep mode	During printing	At printing Finished	When jammed	When paper absence	At error occurrence	When cover open	When fixing assembly release lever open
FM321	Station to station interval cooling fan 1													
FM322	Station to station interval cooling fan 2													
FM323	Station to station interval cooling fan 3													
FM324	Station to station interval cooling fan 4													
FM326	Station to station interval cooling fan 6													
FM327	Station to station interval cooling fan 7													
FM328	Station to station interval cooling fan 8													
FM331	Primary fixing separating cooling fan 1													
FM332	Primary fixing separating cooling fan 2													
FM333	Primary fixing separating cooling fan 3													
FM334	Primary fixing separating cooling fan 4													
FM337	Secondary fixing pressure roller cooling fan 5													
FM338	Primary fixing belt cooling fan 5													
FM350	Delivery decurler cooling fan													
FM351	Fixing duplexing driver PCB left cooling fan													
FM352	Fixing duplexing driver PCB right cooling fan													
FM353	Reader cooling fan													
FM354	Main station upper delivery fan													
FM355	Main station lower delivery fan													
FM356	Sub station frame cooling fan													
FM357	Tandem guide upper cooling fan													
FM358	Tandem guide lower cooling fan													
FM359	Bypass guide front cooling fan													
FM360	Bypass guide rear cooling fan													
FM361	Merger guide front fan													

- Electrical station

		Main power switch ON			Control panel power switch OFF			Main power switch OFF						
		Warm-up	Warm-up rotation	Standby	In low-voltage mode	In power-saving/low-voltage mode	In sleep mode	During printing	At printing Finished	When jammed	When paper absence	At error occurrence	When cover open	When fixing assembly release lever open
FM500	Main controller cooling fan 1	■	■	■	■	■	■	■	■	■	■	■	■	■
FM501	Main controller cooling fan 2	■	■	■	■	■	■	■	■	■	■	■	■	■
FM502	Power supply cooling fan 1	■	■	■	■	■	■	■	■	■	■	■	■	■
FM503	Power supply cooling fan 2	■	■	■	■	■	■	■	■	■	■	■	■	■
FM504	Power supply cooling fan 3	■	■	■	■	■	■	■	■	■	■	■	■	■
FM505	Power supply cooling fan 4	■	■	■	■	■	■	■	■	■	■	■	■	■
FM506	Power supply cooling fan 5	■	■	■	■	■	■	■	■	■	■	■	■	■
FM507	Power supply cooling fan 6	■	■	■	■	■	■	■	■	■	■	■	■	■
FM508	Power supply cooling fan 9	■	■	■	■	■	■	■	■	■	■	■	■	■

F-10-15

10.4 Power Supply

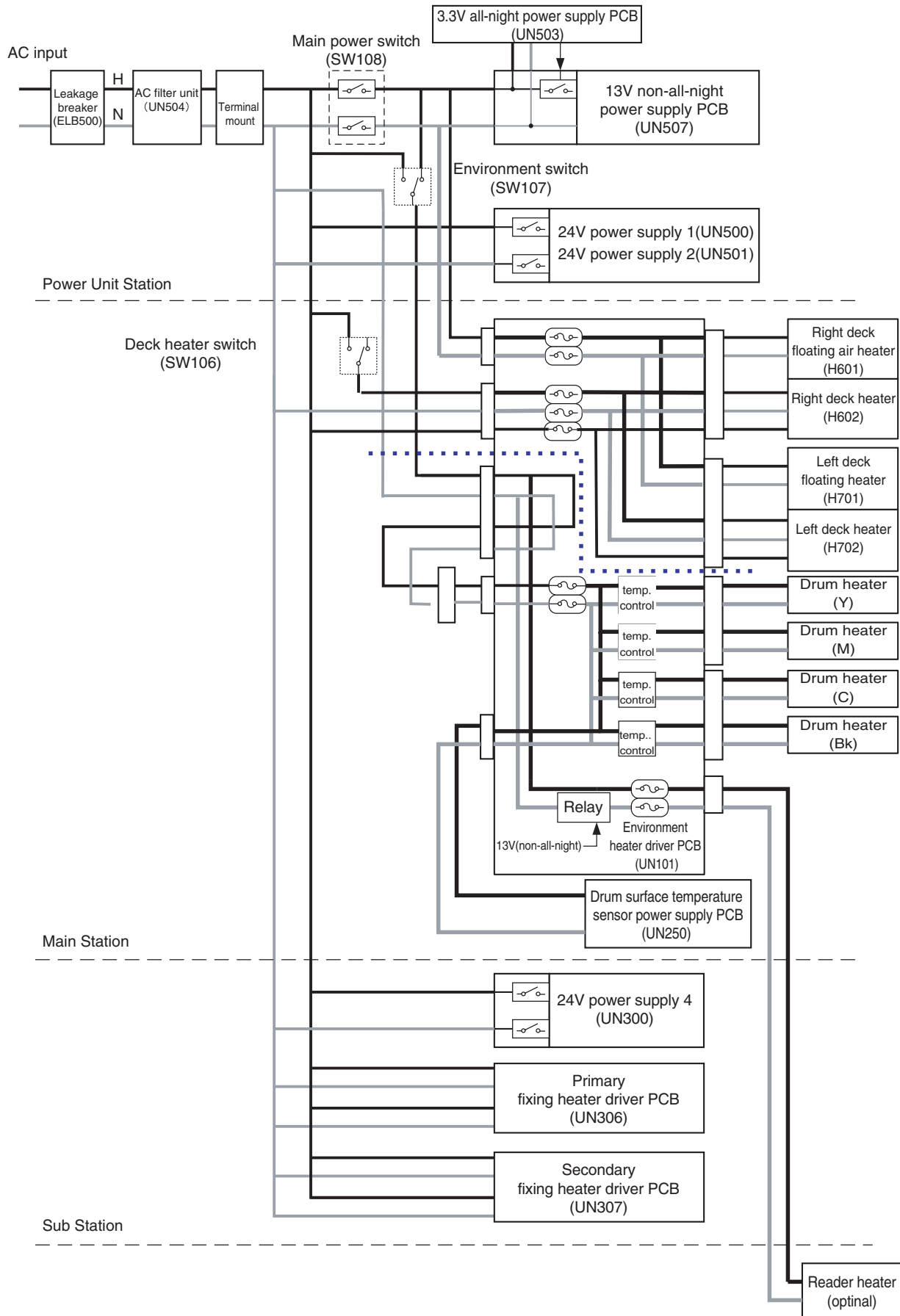
10.4.1 Power Supply

10.4.1.1 AC Power Supply Configuration

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

T-10-8

Code	Parts Name	Function
Power Unit Station		
ELB500	Leakage breaker	Shut down the voltage when abnormality detected
SW108	Main power switch	Input AC
SW107	Environment switch	Turn on/off drum heater and reader heater (optional)
SW106	Deck heater switch	Turn on/off right/left deck heaters
UN500	24V power supply 1	Supply 24V (non all-night) to electrical parts (various driver PCB's, process unit driver PCB, laser scanner unit, etc.) of main station
UN501	24V power supply 2	Supply 24V (non all-night) to electrical parts (various driver PCB's, process unit driver PCB, laser scanner unit, etc.) of main station
UN503	3.3V all-night power supply PCB	Supply 3.3 V (all-night) to main controller
UN504	AC filter unit	Eliminate switching noises
UN507	13V non-all-night power supply PCB	Supply 13V (non all-night) to electrical parts (various driver PCB's, process unit driver PCB, laser scanner unit, etc.) of main station
Main Station		
H100	Drum heater (C)	Control temperatures of drum C
H101	Drum heater (Bk)	Control temperatures of drum (Bk)
H102	Drum heater (M)	Control temperatures of drum (M)
H103	Drum heater (Y)	Control temperatures of drum (Y)
H601	Right deck floating air heater	Improve flotation performance under highly humid environment or when using coated media (right deck)
H602	Right deck heater	Prevent moisture absorption of paper media (right deck)
H701	Left deck floating heater	Improve flotation performance under highly humid environment or when using coated media (left deck)
H702	Left deck heater	Prevent moisture absorption of paper media (left deck)
UN101	Environment heater driver PCB	Drive drum heater, reader heater (optional), right deck heater and left deck heater
UN250	Drum surface temperature sensor power supply PCB	Supply 12V (all-night) to environment heater driver PCB; to supply 5V (all-night) to drum surface temperature sensor
Sub Station		
UN300	24V power supply 4	Supply 24V (non all-night) to electrical parts (various driver PCB's, etc.) and reader (optional)
UN306	Primary fixing heater driver PCB	Drive heater in primary fixing assembly
UN307	Secondary fixing heater driver PCB	Drive heater in secondary fixing assembly



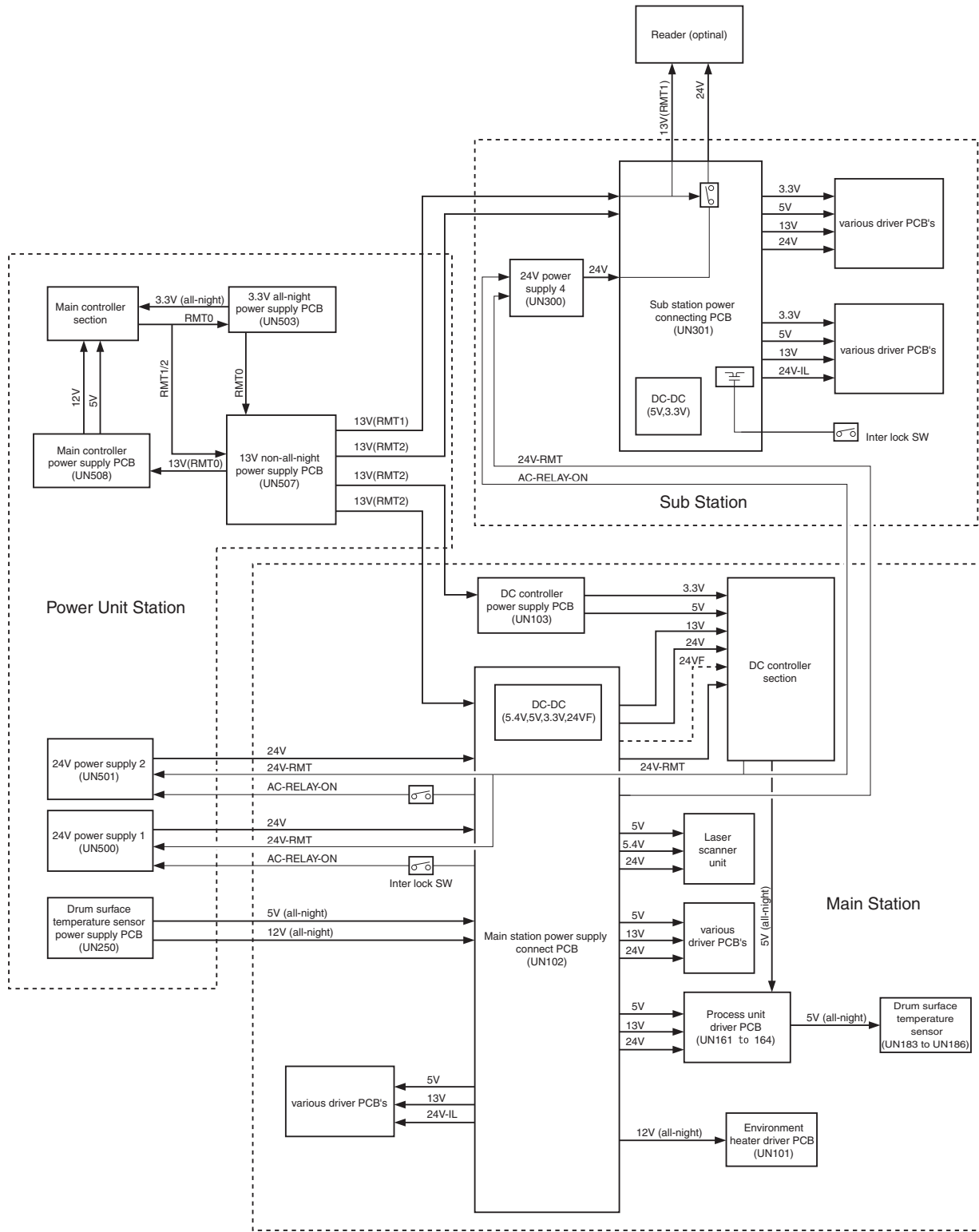
F-10-16

10.4.1.2 DC Power Supply Configuration

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

T-10-9

Code	Parts Name	Function
Power Unit Station		
UN250	Drum surface temperature sensor power supply PCB	Supply 12V (all-night) to environment heater driver PCB; to supply 5V (all-night) to drum surface temperature sensor
UN500	24V power supply 1	Supply 24V (non all-night) to electrical parts (various driver PCB's, process unit driver PCB, laser scanner unit, etc.) of main station
UN501	24V power supply 2	Supply 24V (non all-night) to electrical parts (various driver PCB's, process unit driver PCB, laser scanner unit, etc.) of main station
UN503	3.3V all-night power supply PCB	Supply 3.3 V (all-night) to main controller
UN507	13V non-all-night power supply PCB	Supply 13V (non all-night) to electrical parts (various driver PCB's, process unit driver PCB, laser scanner unit, etc.) of main station
UN508	Main controller power supply PCB	Supply 12V/5V to main controller
Main Station		
UN101	Environment heater driver PCB	Drive drum heater, reader heater (optional), right deck heater and left deck heater
UN102	Main station power supply connect PCB	DC-DC converter Supply 5V/12V/13V/24V to electrical parts of main station
UN103	DC controller power supply PCB	DC-DC converter Supply 3.3V/5V to DC controller
UN161 to 164	Process unit driver PCB	Drive various electrical parts of process unit (Y/M/C/Bk)
UN183 to 186	Drum surface temperature sensor	Measure drum (Y/M/C/Bk) surface temperature
None	Laser scanner unit (Y/M/C/Bk)	Irradiate laser beams
Sub Station		
UN300	24V power supply 4	Supply 24V (non all-night) to electrical parts (various driver PCB's, etc.) and reader (optional)
UN301	Sub station power connecting PCB	DC-DC converter Supply 3.3V/5V/13V/24V to electrical parts of sub station



F-10-17

10.4.2 Protection Function

10.4.2.1 Protective Functions

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

Each DC power supply for this equipment has the protective functions against overcurrent and overvoltage. In the case that an issue such as short stop of loads (motor, fan, etc.) causes overcurrent or abnormal voltage, the output voltage is automatically cut.

How to Recover

- 1) After turning off the main power switch and the leakage breaker in this order, disconnect the power plug from the outlet.
- 2) Leave it for approx. 3 min or more after removing the cause that have activated the protective circuit.
- 3) After connecting the power plug to the outlet, turn on the leakage breaker and the main power switch in this order.

10.4.3 Backup Battery

10.4.3.1 Overview

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

The equipment main controller PCB and DC controller PCB have their own lithium battery installed for backup of each data in case blackout or disconnected power plug.

T-10-10

	Main controller PCB (MAIN-M)	DC controller PCB 1-1
Type	Lithium battery (3V, 1000mAh)	Lithium battery (3V, 600mAh)
Number of use	1 pc	1 pc
Life	Approx. 10 years	Approx. 10 years
Replaceable or not	Directly installed, and not replaceable in normal servicing.	Directly installed, and not replaceable in normal servicing.



Replacement with a wrong type may cause explosion. Be sure to dispose a used battery according to the instruction manual of the battery.

10.4.4 Energy-Saving Function

10.4.4.1 Overview

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

1. Standby Mode

The machine is in operation or is ready to start operation, with all its loads supplied with power.

2. Power Save Mode

The machine decreases the control temperature while the fixing assembly is in a standby state according to the selected power save rating (variable through 'change power save mode' in user mode; default: -10%), thus decreasing the power consumption.

Conditions Initiating a Shift from Standby Mode (standby -> power save)

- press on the Power Save key

Conditions Initiating a Shift Back to Standby Mode (power save -> standby)

- press on the Power Save key
- press on the control panel power switch

3. Low Power Mode

The machine keeps the temperature of the fixing assembly low (140 deg C), with the reader unit and the printer unit supplied with a reduced level of power.

Conditions Initiating a Shift from Standby/Power Save Mode (standby -> low power)

- after a specific period of time in standby/power save mode (variable through 'low power mode shift interval'; default: 15 min)

Conditions Initiating a Shift Back to Standby Mode (low power -> standby)

- press on Power Save key
- press on control panel power switch

T-10-11



If the same setting is used for both 'low power mode shift interval' and 'auto sleep time', a shift is made to sleep mode if a specific period of time passes from a standby state (i.e., no shift takes place to low power mode).

4. Sleep Mode

The machine's sleep mode consists of 'sleep mode 1' (high rate of power saving in sleep) and 'sleep mode 3' (low rate of power saving in sleep), and the selection of one over the other depends on how the machine is set and the presence/absence of paper.

Conditions Initiating a Shift (standby/power save/low power -> sleep)

- The machine remains in a standby state for a specific period of time (variable through 'auto sleep time' in user mode; default: 60 min).
- The control panel power switch is turned off while the machine is in a standby state.

When a condition has occurred activating a shift to a sleep state, the machine drives the heat discharge fan for a specific period of time (6 min) to cool the inside of the machine and then enters sleep mode.

Conditions Initiating Standby Mode (sleep -> standby)

- press on the control panel power switch

5. Power-Off Mode

The machine enters and remains in power-off mode when its main power switch is turned off.

To return from power-off mode, the machine's main power switch must be turned on, in response to which it will automatically return to standby mode.

10.4.4.2 SNMP setup

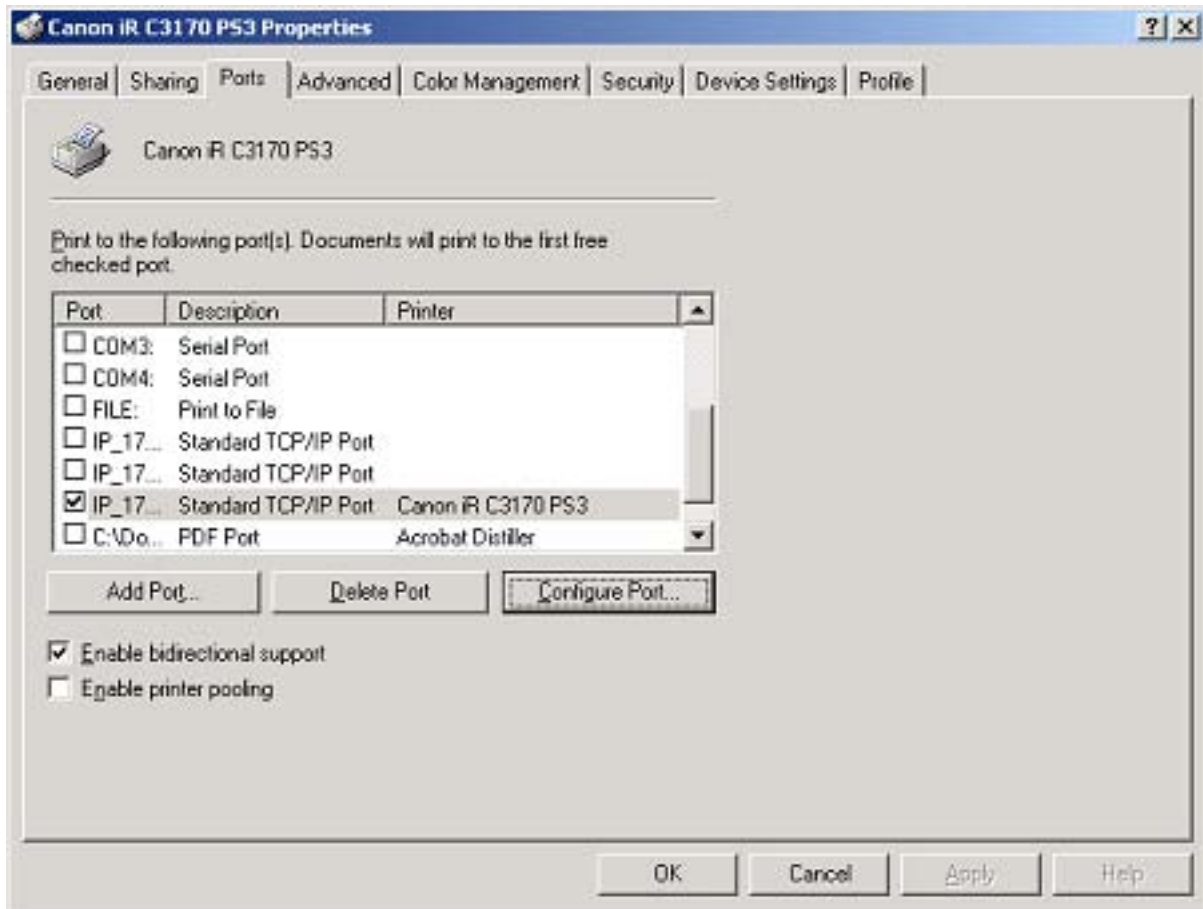
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

When the machine is used as a Windows printer, enabling 'Use SNMP' causes the operating system to collect machine status information at specific intervals, preventing the machine from starting a sleep state.

To avoid the situation, disable the setting (Windows' printer properties).

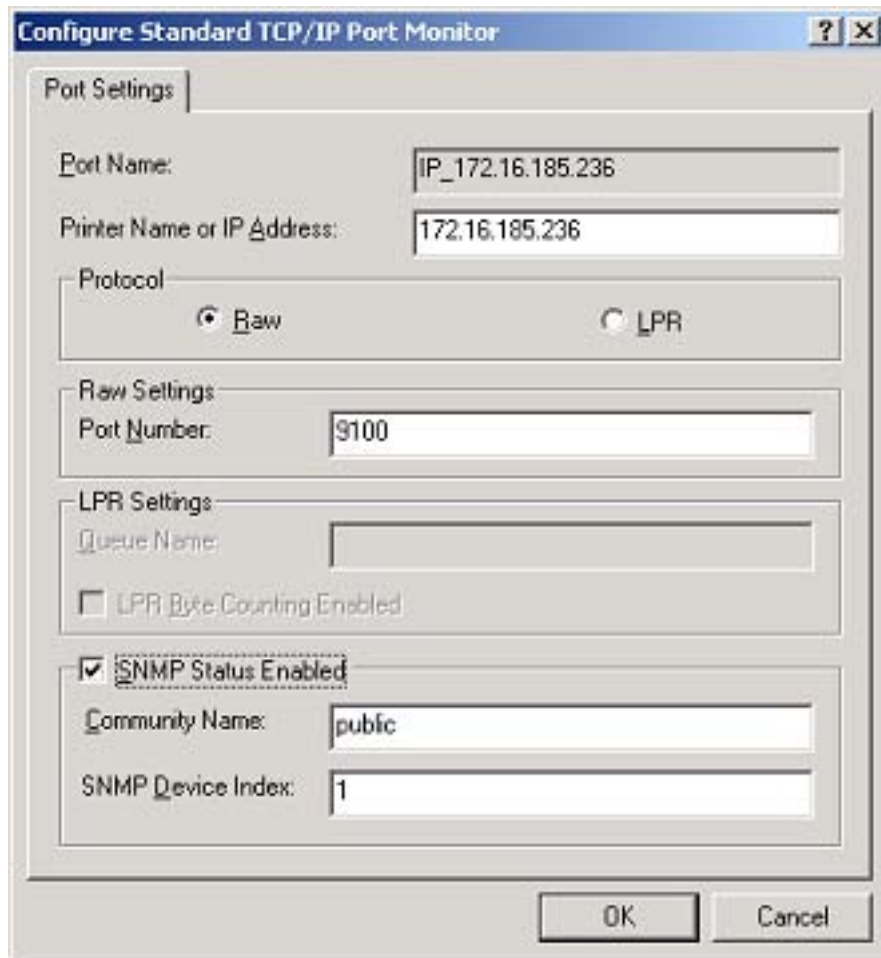
-Disabling 'Use SNMP'

1) Select 'Configure Port' on the Ports screen (printer properties).



F-10-18

2) Remove the check mark from 'SNMP Status Enabled'.



F-10-19

10.5 Parts Replacement Procedure

10.5.1 AC Power Supply Unit

10.5.1.1 Before Removing AC Power Supply Unit

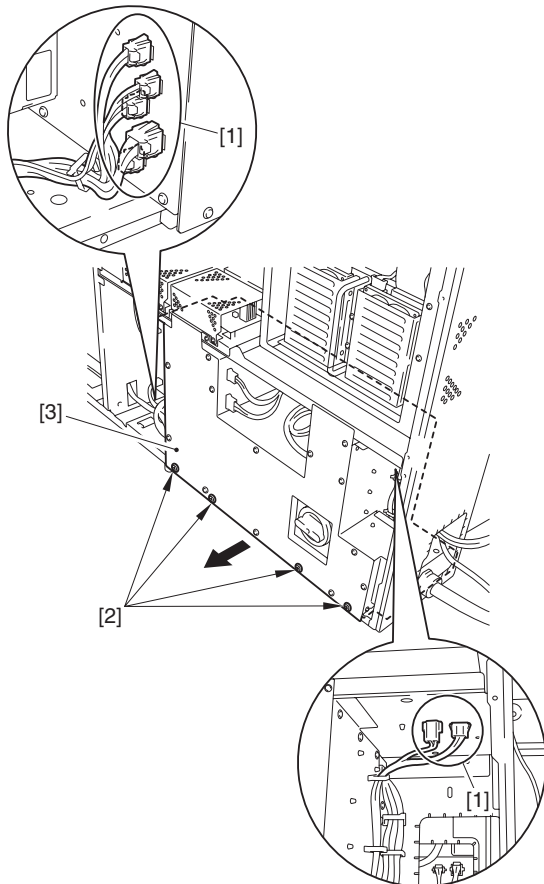
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- 1) Detach the power unit station rear cover 1.
- 2) Detach the power unit station rear cover 2.

10.5.1.2 Removing AC Power Supply Unit

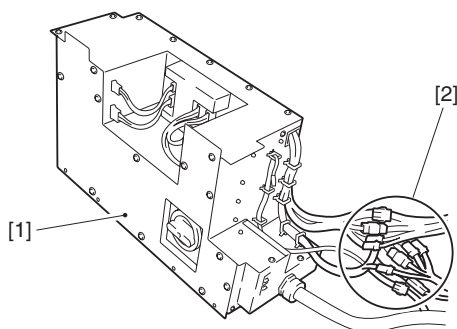
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- 1) Disconnect the connector [1] and remove the 4 screws [2]; then, pull out the AC power supply unit [3].



F-10-20

- 2) Disconnect the connector [2] and remove the AC power supply unit [1].



F-10-21

10.5.2 Power Supply Unit

10.5.2.1 Removing 24V Supply 1

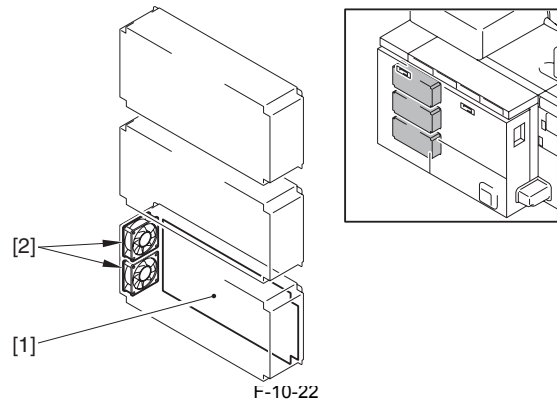
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- 1) Detach the power unit station rear cover 3.

- 2) Remove the 24V supply 1 [1].

MEMO:

The 2 fans (FM506 and FM507) [2] can be removed if needed.



F-10-22

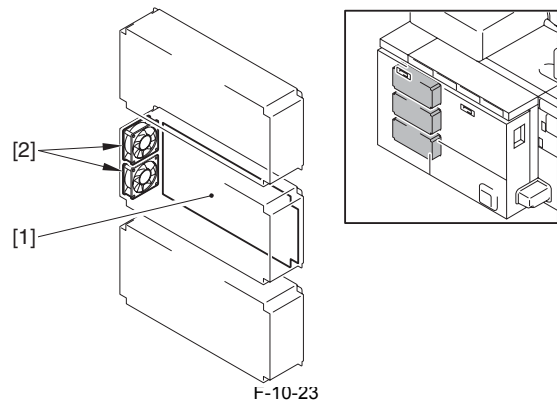
10.5.2.2 Removing 24V Supply 2

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- 1) Detach the power unit station rear cover 3.
- 2) Remove the 24 V supply 2 [1].

MEMO:

The 2 fans (FM504 and FM505) [2] can be removed if needed.



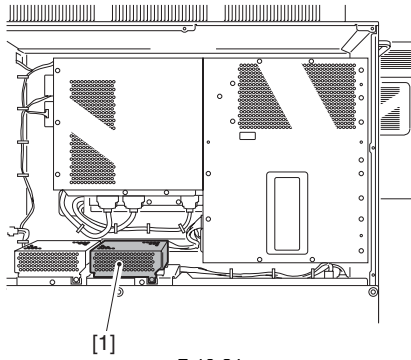
F-10-23

10.5.3 Main controller power supply PCB

10.5.3.1 Detaching the main controller power supply PCB

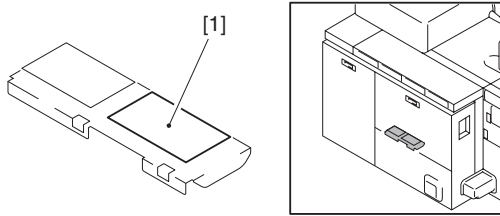
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- 1) Detach the power unit station rear cover 1.
- 2) Detach the main controller power supply cover [1].



F-10-24

3) Detach the main controller power supply PCB [1].



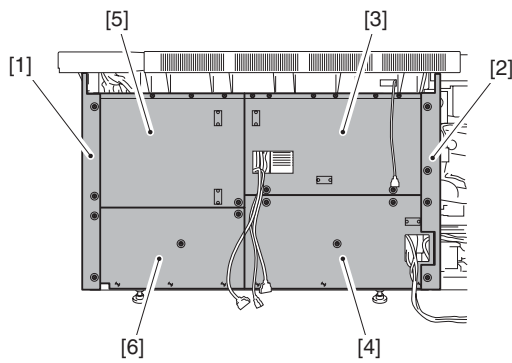
F-10-25

10.5.4 DC Controller PCB

10.5.4.1 Removing DC controller PCB

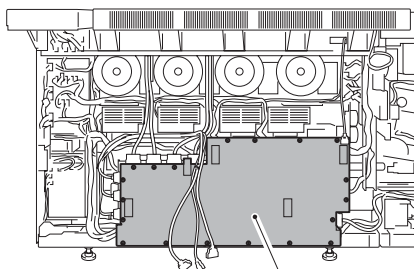
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- 1) Separate the power unit station from the main station.
- 2) Detach the main station rear left cover [1].
- 7 screws
- 3) Detach the main station rear right cover [2].
- 7 screws
- 4) Detach the main station rear cover 1 [3].
- 8 screws
- 5) Detach the main station rear cover 2 [4].
- 6 screws
- 6) Detach the main station rear cover 3 [5].
- 4 screws
- 7) Detach the main station rear cover 4 [6].
- 5 screws



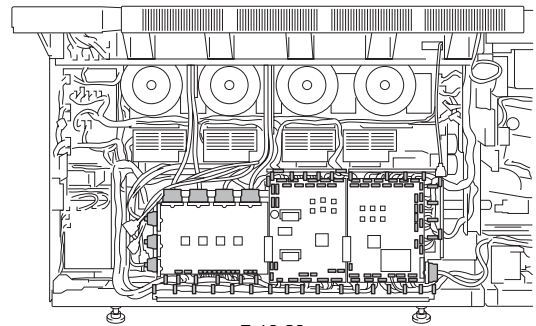
F-10-26

8) Detach the DC controller cover [1].
- 20 screws



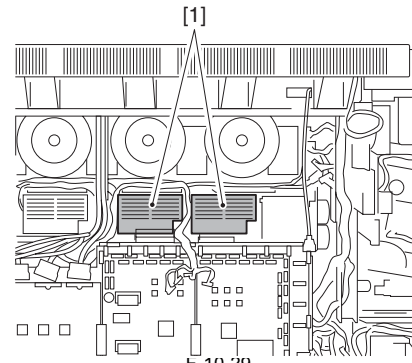
F-10-27

9) Remove the 7 edge saddles and the 36 clamps, and disconnect the 8 connectors, 8 communication cables and the 72 connectors.



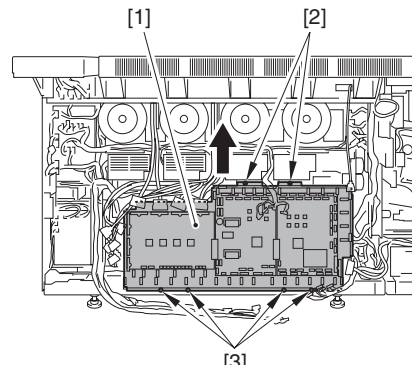
F-10-28

10) Detach the 2 duct covers [1].



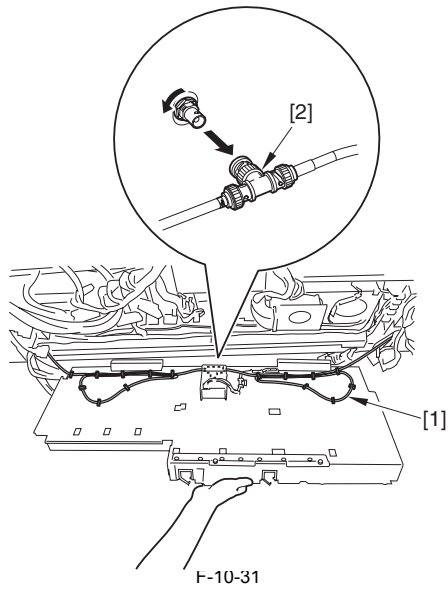
F-10-29

11) Remove the DC controller box [1] by lifting it up.
- 2 screws [2]
- 4 straight-slot screws [3]

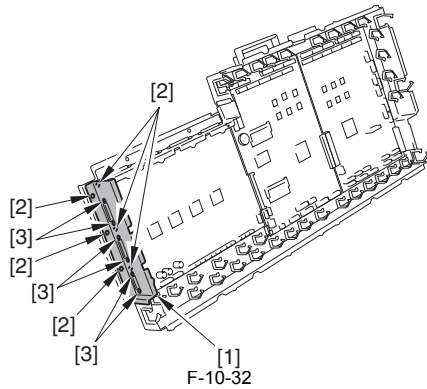


F-10-30

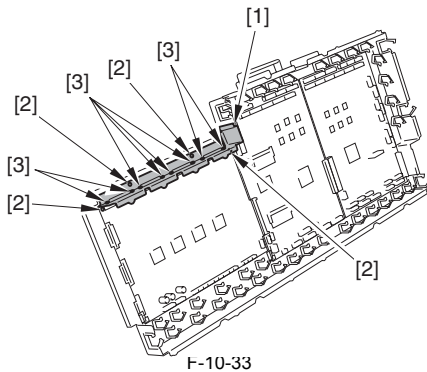
12) Remove the harness from the DC controller box.
- 15 wire saddles
- Coaxial connector [2] (turn it counterclockwise to remove)



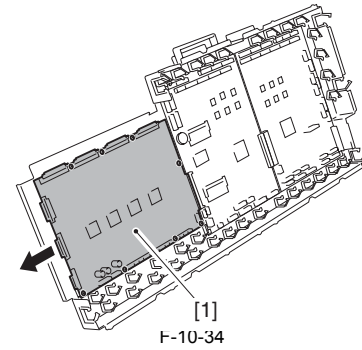
- 13) Detach the side plate [1].
 - 6 screws [2]
 - 6 screws [3]



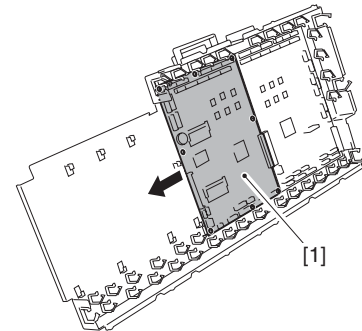
- 14) Detach the side plate [1].
 - 4 screws [2]
 - 8 screws [3]



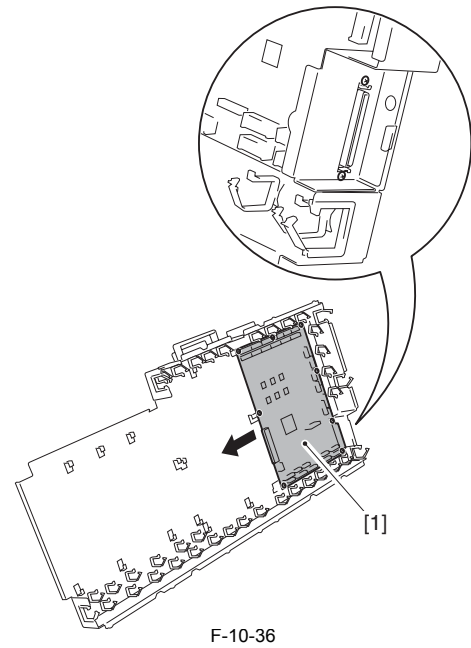
- 15) Remove the DC controller PCB 1-3 [1].
 - 8 screws



- 16) Remove the DC controller PCB 1-1 [1].
 - 8 screws



- 17) Remove the DC controller PCB 1-2 [1].
 - 11 screws



10.5.5 Non-All-Night Power Supply PCB

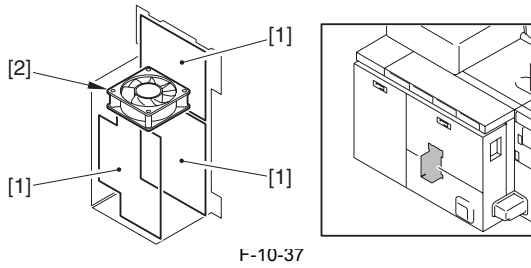
10.5.5.1 Removing 13V Non-All-Night Power Supply PCB

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- 1) Detach the power unit station rear cover 2.
- 2) Remove the 13V non-all-night power supply PCB [1].

MEMO:

The fan (FM508) [2] can be removed if needed.



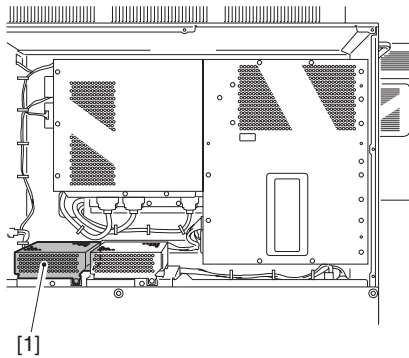
F-10-37

10.5.6 All-Night Power Supply PCB

10.5.6.1 Detaching the 3.3V all-night power supply PCB

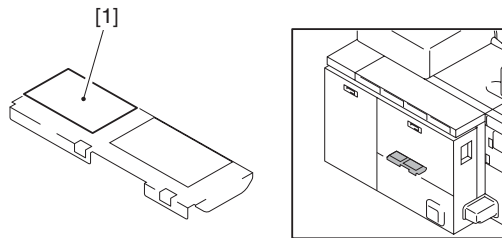
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- 1) Detach the power unit station rear cover 1.
- 2) Detach the 3.3V all-night power supply cover [1].



F-10-38

- 3) Detach the 3.3V all-night power supply PCB [1].



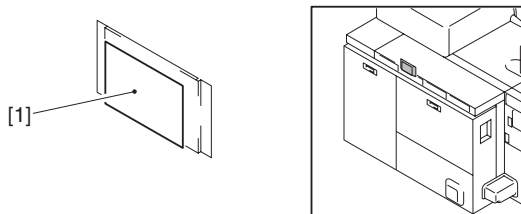
F-10-39

10.5.7 Thermopile power supply PCB

10.5.7.1 Removing Drum Surface Temperature Sensor Power Supply PCB

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- 1) Detach the power unit station rear cover 3.
- 2) Remove the drum surface temperature sensor power supply PCB [1].



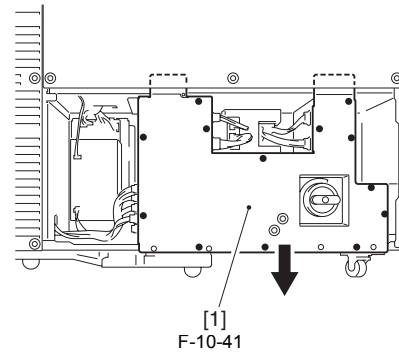
F-10-40

10.5.8 Leakage Breaker

10.5.8.1 Removing Leakage Protection Relay

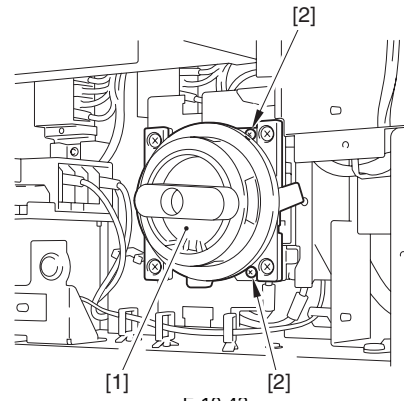
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- 1) Detach the power unit station rear cover 2.
- 2) Detach the AC power supply cover [1].



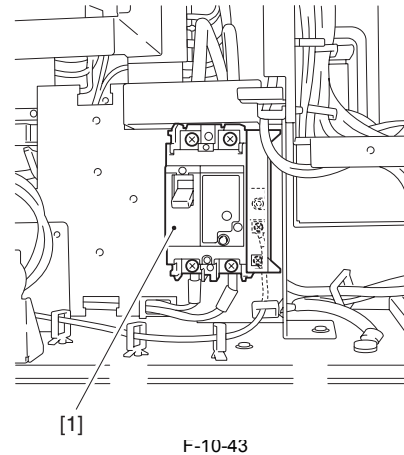
F-10-41

- 3) Remove the 2 screws [2], and remove the external control handle [1].



F-10-42

- 4) Remove the leakage protection relay [1].



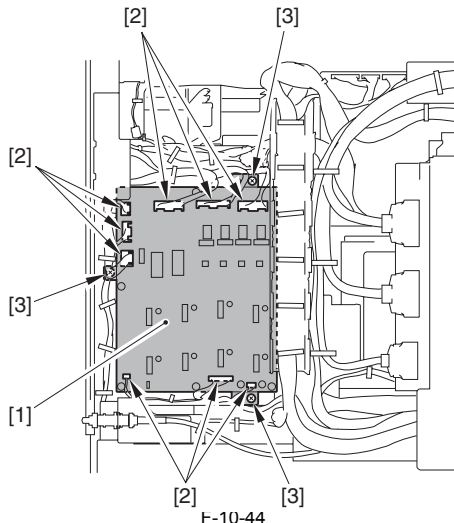
F-10-43

10.5.9 Environment Heater Driver PCB

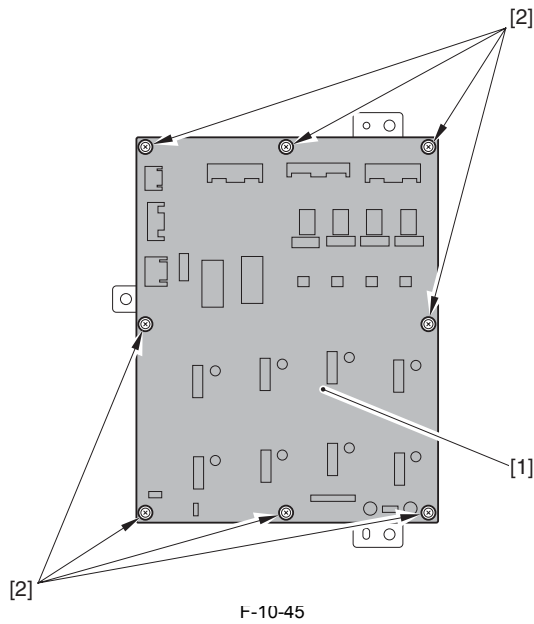
10.5.9.1 Removing Environment heater driver PCB

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- 1) Remove the environment heater driver PCB unit [1].
 - 9 connectors [2]
 - 3 screws [3]

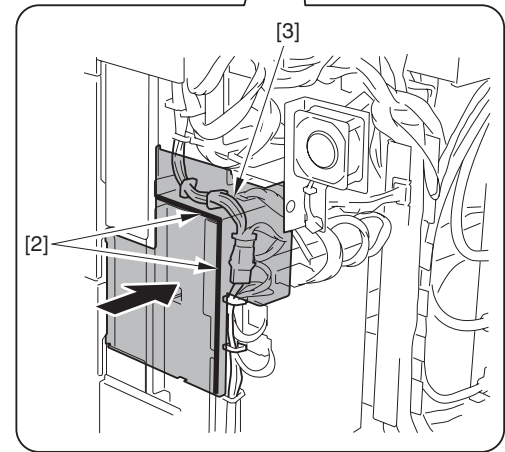
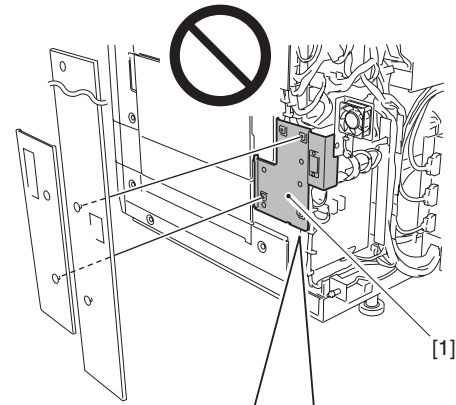


- 2) Remove the environment heater driver PCB [1].
- 8 screws [2]



⚠ Points to Note At Operation

- When removing the environment heater driver PCB, do not detach the outer cover mounting plate [1].
- In the case that the outer cover mounting plate [1] has been detached, be careful not to get the AC harness [2] caught between the edge [3] of the environment heater driver PCB mount and the outer cover mounting plate [1] at the time of attaching it.



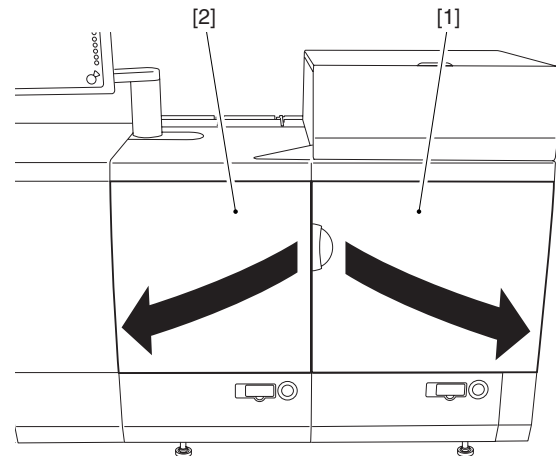
F-10-46

10.5.10 Ozone Filter

10.5.10.1 Removing Ozone Filter within the Intermediate Transfer Unit

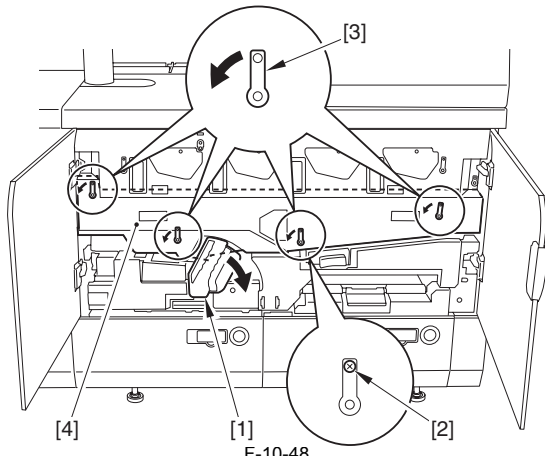
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- 1) Open fully the front right cover [1], and then the front left cover [2] of main station.

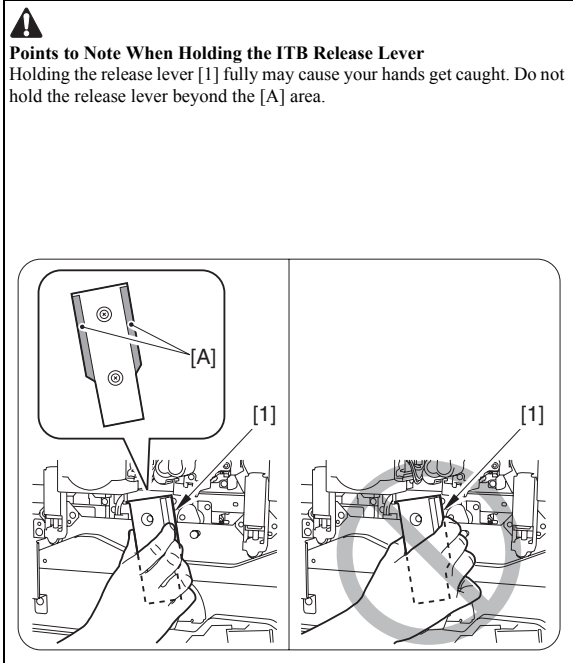


F-10-47

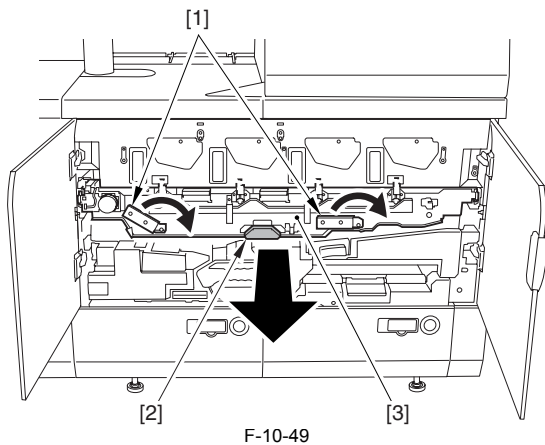
- 2) Shift down the lever (B-E1) [1] in the direction of the arrow. Remove the stepped screw [2] and shift the 4 levers [3] down in the direction of the arrow to detach the intermediate transfer unit cover [4].



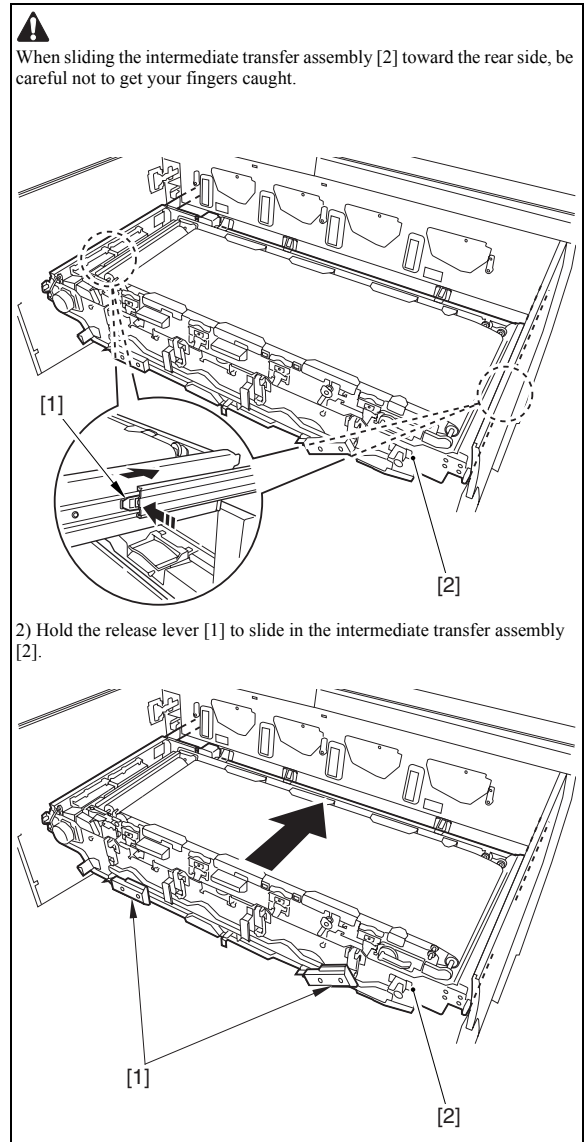
3) Make sure to check the following items before operation.



Shift the release lever [1] of intermediate transfer assembly in the direction of arrow. Hold the handle [2] to slide out the intermediate transfer assembly [3] until it is locked.



Storing Intermediate Transfer Assembly
 1) While pushing the 2 lock release springs [1], slide the intermediate transfer assembly [2] toward the rear side until the lock position is released.



Warning: When sliding the intermediate transfer assembly [2] toward the rear side, be careful not to get your fingers caught.

2) Hold the release lever [1] to slide in the intermediate transfer assembly [2].

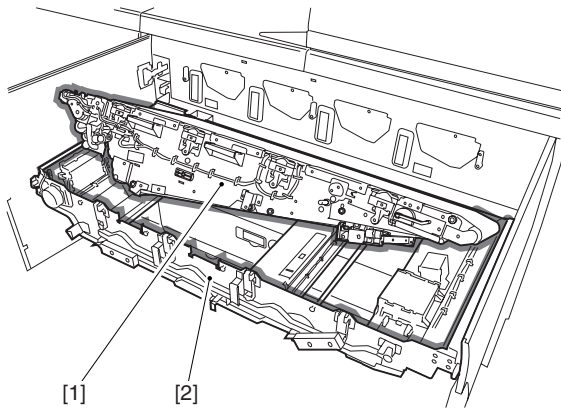
4) Hold the handle [1] with both hands and lift up the intermediate transfer belt unit [2] by approx. 40 deg, and then, lift it down to the lock position (at approx. 30 deg.).

Lifting Down Intermediate Transfer Belt Unit
 Make sure to check the following items before operation.

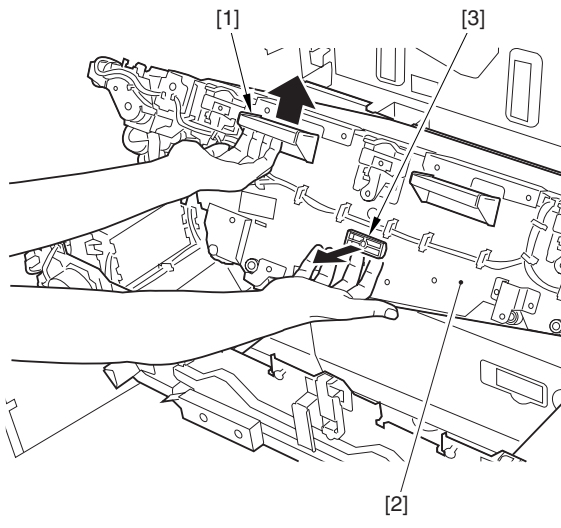


Point to Note When Lifting down Intermediate Transfer Belt Unit

When lifting down the intermediate transfer belt unit, be careful not to get your hands caught between the intermediate transfer belt unit [1] and the intermediate transfer frame [2].



Hold the handle [1] as shown in the figure to pull out the lever [3] fully while lifting up the intermediate transfer belt unit [2]. While pulling the lever [3], slightly lift down the intermediate transfer belt unit. When the belt passes through the lock release position (approx. 30 deg), release your hands (intermediate transfer belt unit slowly moves downward).

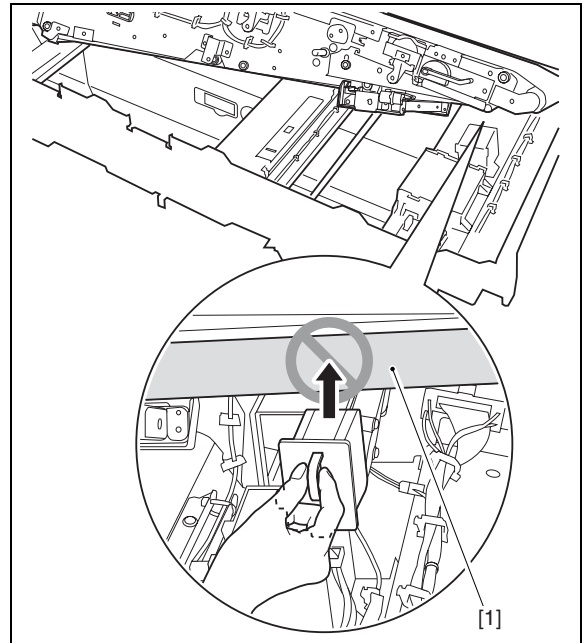


5) Make sure to check the following items before operation.

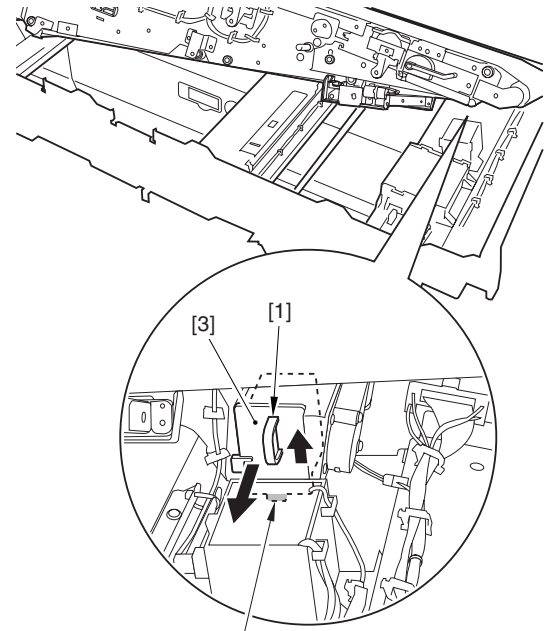


Point to Note When Attaching/Removing Filter Unit

Be sure not to contact the filter unit with the intermediate transfer belt [1].



Hold the grip [1] of the filter case, and disengage the claw [2] upward. Then, remove the filter unit [3] toward the front.

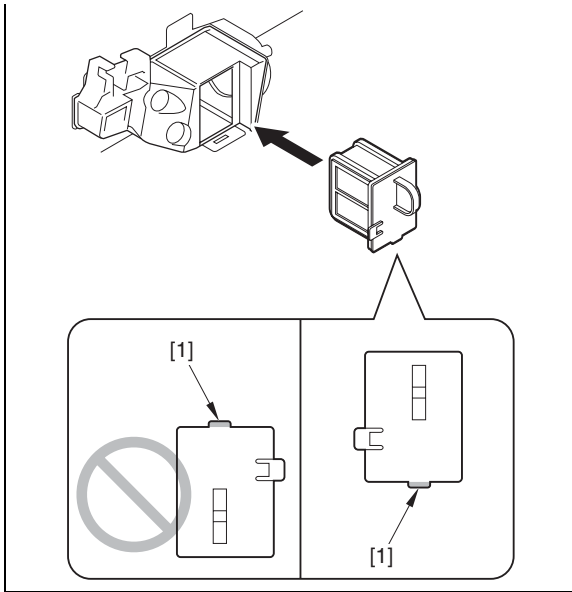


[2]
F-10-51



Point to Note When Attaching the Filter Unit

When attaching the filter unit, be sure to set the claw [1] downward.

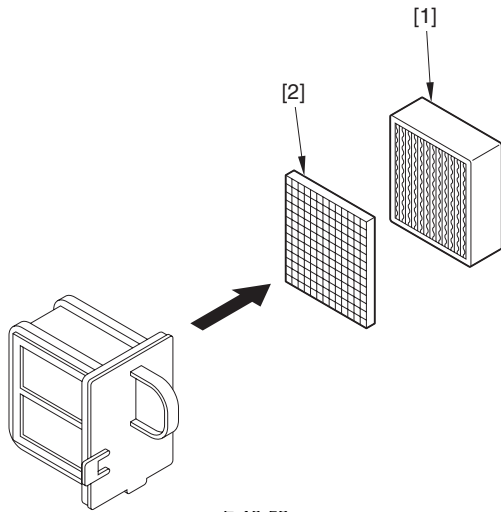


6) Remove the ITB unit inside ozone filter [1] from the filter case.



Point to Note When Attaching

Be sure to attach the ozone filter [1] after setting the air filter [2] to the filter case.

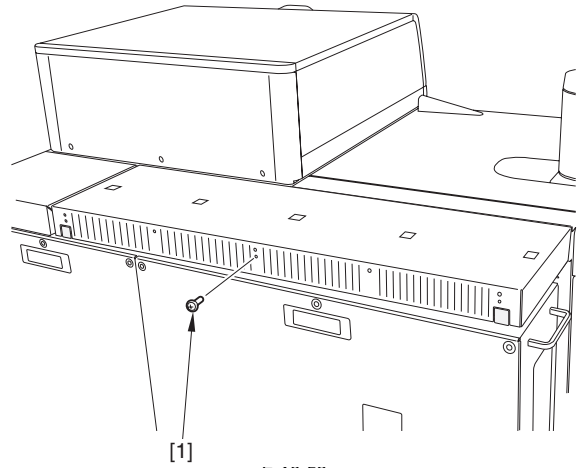


F-10-52

10.5.10.2 Removing Main Station Rear Ozone Filter

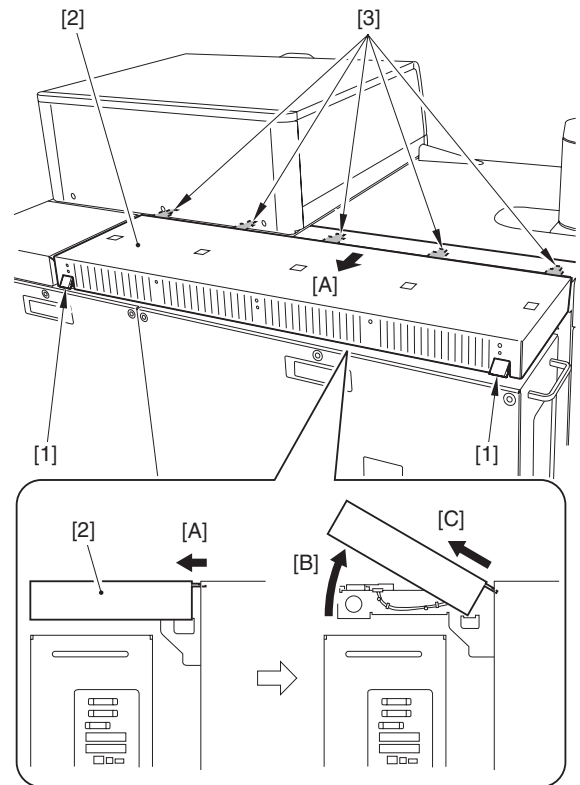
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

1) Remove the screw [1].



F-10-53

2) Disengage the release lever [1]. Slide the main station upper rear cover [2] in the direction of [A] until the protrusion [3] is visible, and move it in the order of [B] and [C] to detach.



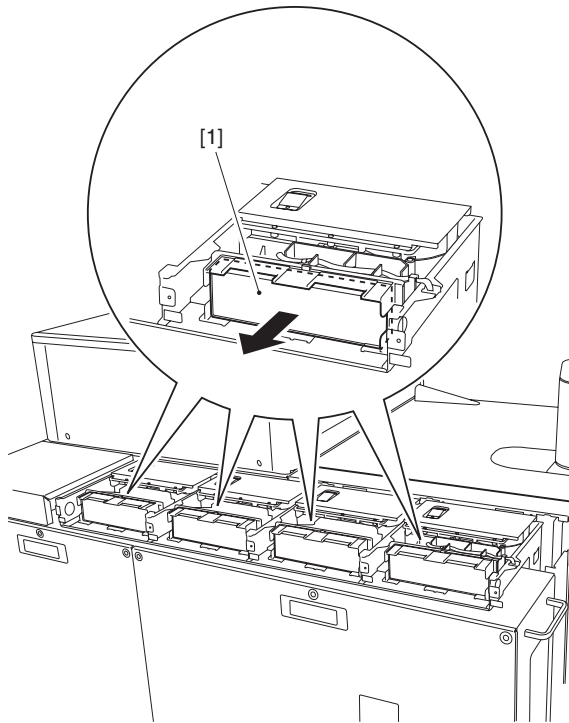
F-10-54

3) Remove the 4 main station rear ozone filters [1].

10.5.10.4 Removing Sub-Station Upper Rear Ozone Filter

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- 1) Remove the 2 screws [1] to remove the sub station rear upper ozone filter unit [2].

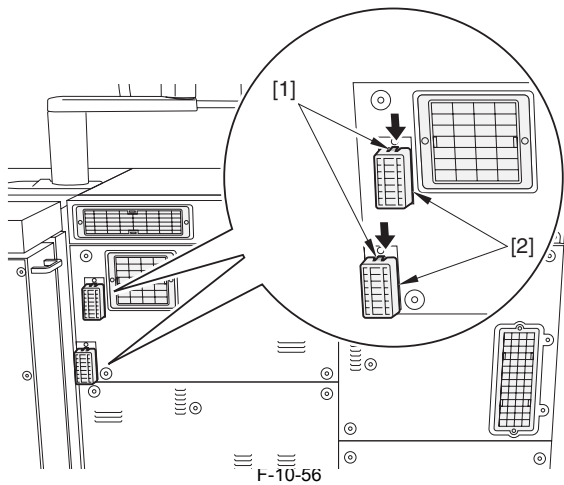


F-10-55

10.5.10.3 Removing Sub-Station Left Rear Ozone Filter

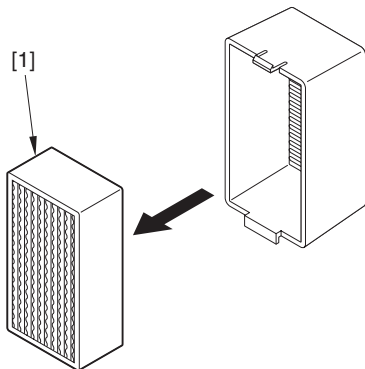
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- 1) Disengage the claw [1] and remove the 2 sub station rear left ozone filter units [2].

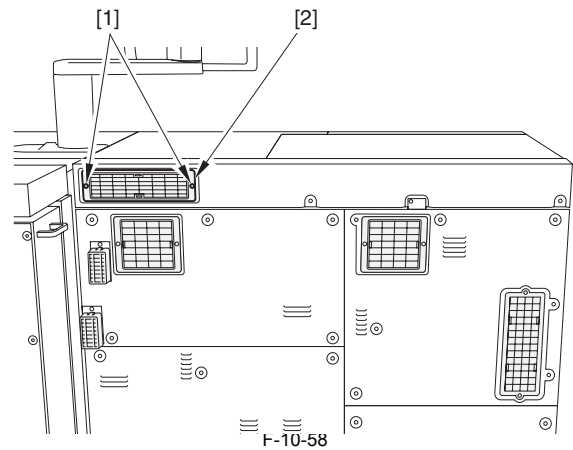


F-10-56

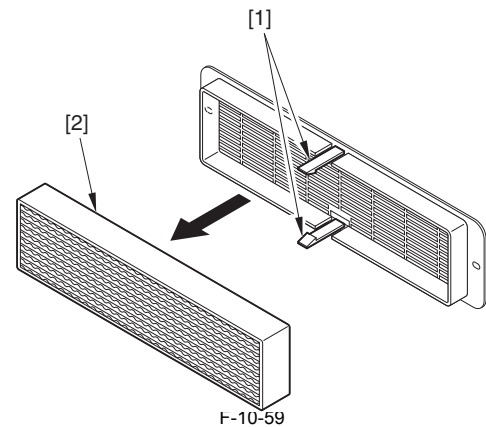
- 2) Remove the 2 sub station rear left ozone filters [1] from the 2 filter cases.



F-10-57



- 2) Disengage the claw [1] to remove the sub station rear upper ozone filter [2] from the filter case.



F-10-59

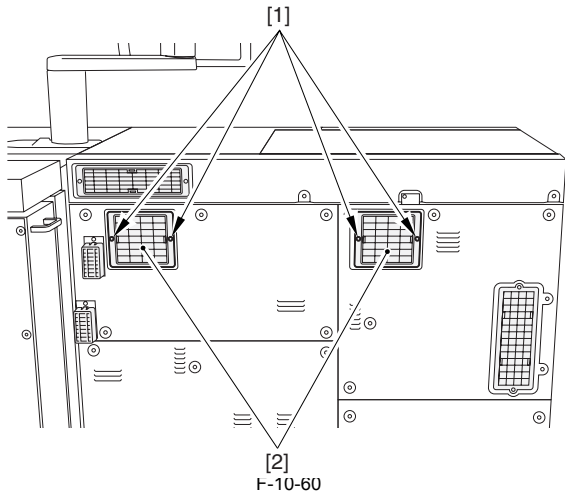
10.5.10.5 Removing Sub-Station Middle Rear Ozone Filter

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

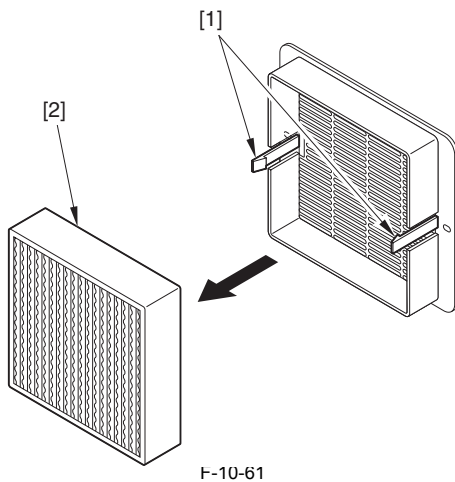
- 1) Remove the 4 screws [1] to remove the 2 sub station rear middle ozone filter units [2].

**Point to Note When Attaching**

Fit the position of the sub station rear cover into the screw hole of filter unit.



2) Disengage the claw [1], and remove the both sub station rear middle ozone filters [2] from the filter case.

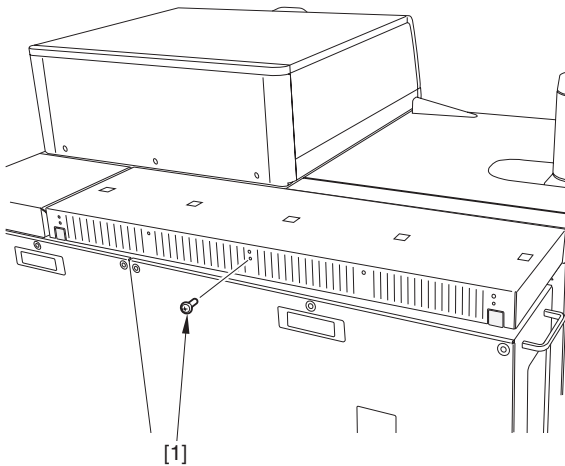


10.5.11 Toner Filter

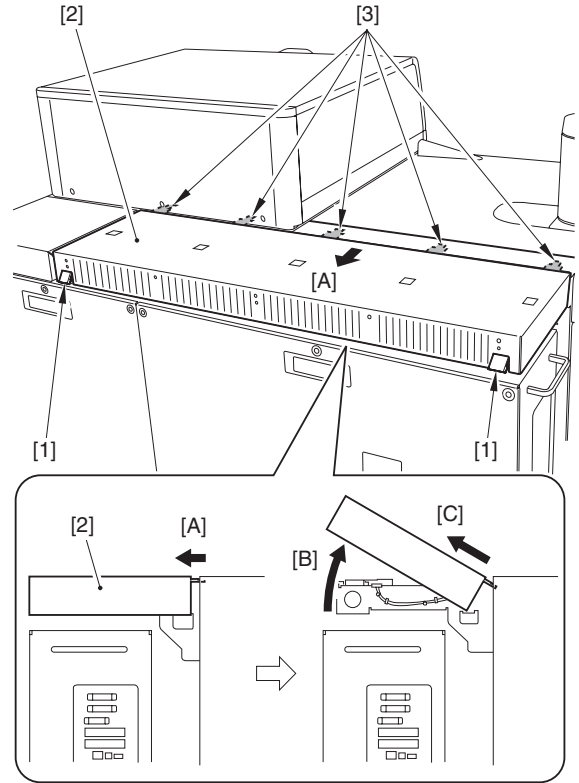
10.5.11.1 Removing Main Station Rear Toner Filter

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

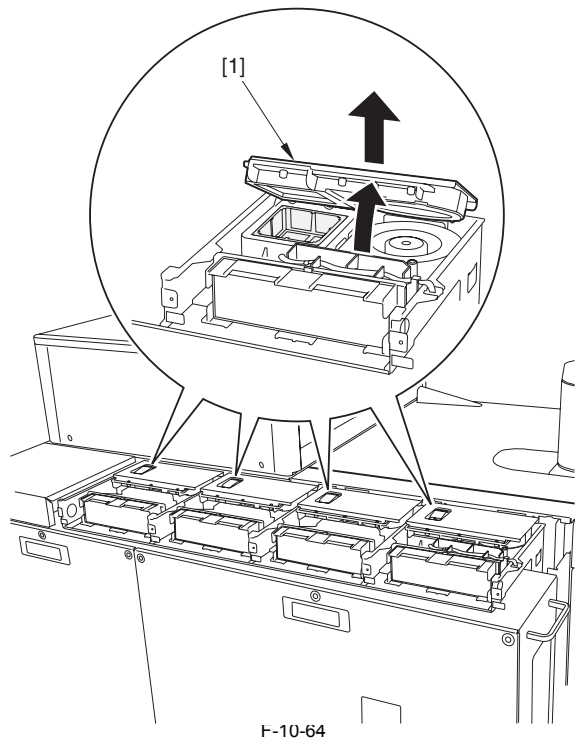
1) Remove the screw [1].



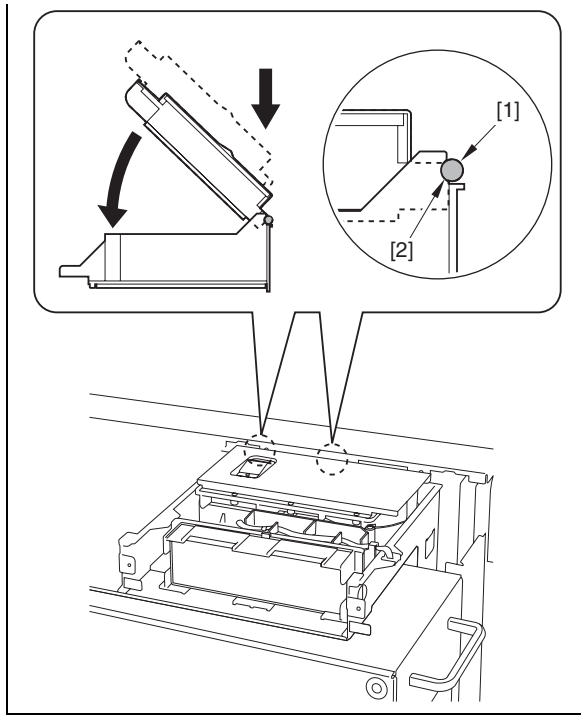
2) Disengage the release lever [1]. Slide the main station upper rear cover 1 [2] in the direction of [A] until the protrusion [3] is visible, and move it in the order of [B] and [C] to detach.



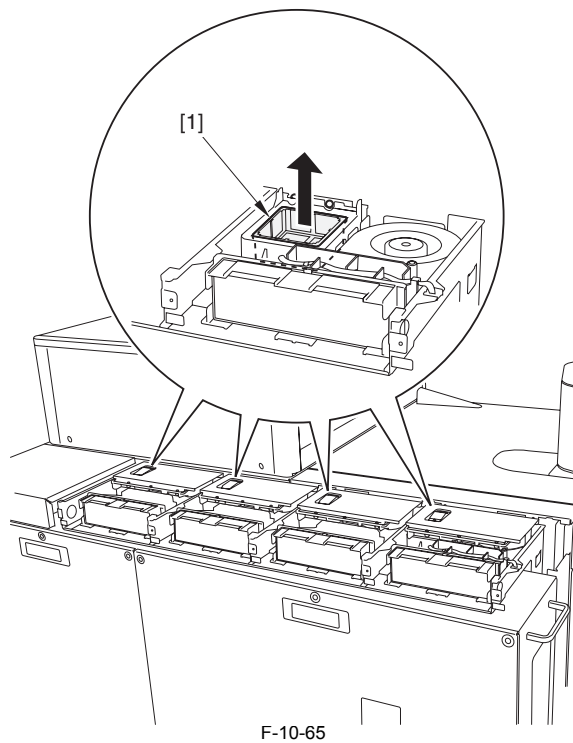
3) Open the duct joint cover [1] slightly to remove it upward.



CAUTION
Points to Note When Attaching the Duct Joint Cover
 Check that the cover shaft [1] is fitted into the slot [2] as shown in the figure.



4) Remove the 4 main station rear toner filters [1].

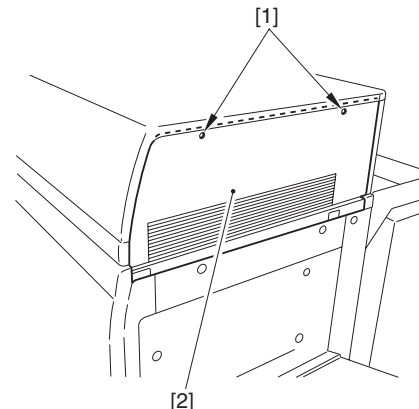


F-10-65

10.5.11.2 Removing Primary Suction Filter

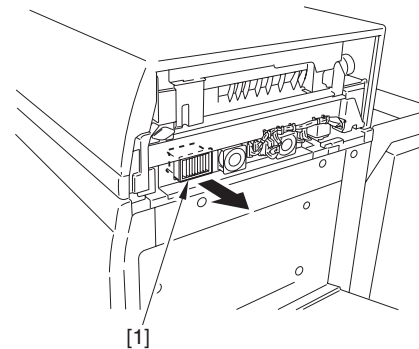
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

1) Remove the 2 screws [1] and detach the toner supply right cover [2].



F-10-66

2) Remove the primary suction filter [1].



F-10-67

10.5.12 Noise Filter

10.5.12.1 Before removing AC Filter Unit

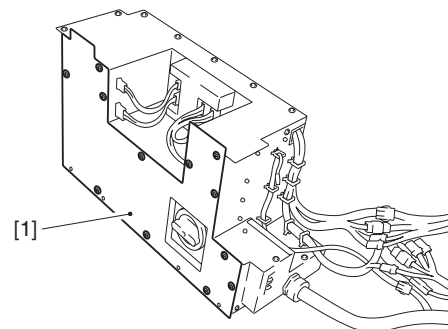
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- 1) Detach the power unit station rear cover 1.
- 2) Detach the power unit station rear cover 2.
- 3) Remove the AC power supply unit.

10.5.12.2 Removing AC Filter Unit

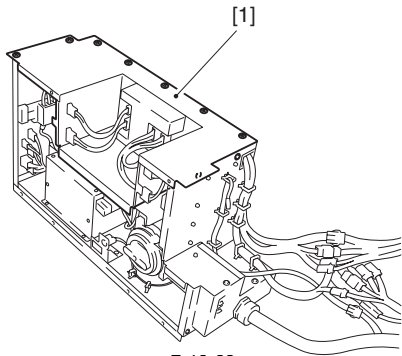
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

1) Detach the AC power supply cover [1].



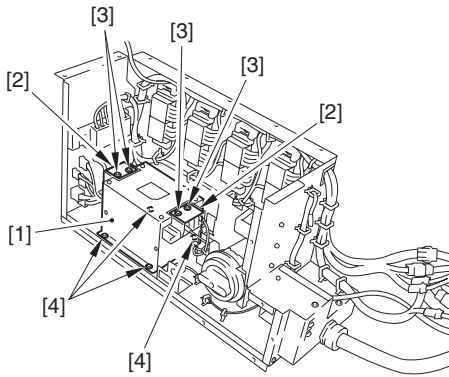
F-10-68

2) Detach the AC power supply upper cover [1].



F-10-69

- 3) Remove the AC filter unit [1].
- 2 terminal covers [2]
 - 4 screws [3]
 - 4 screws [4]



F-10-70

10.5.13 Air Filter

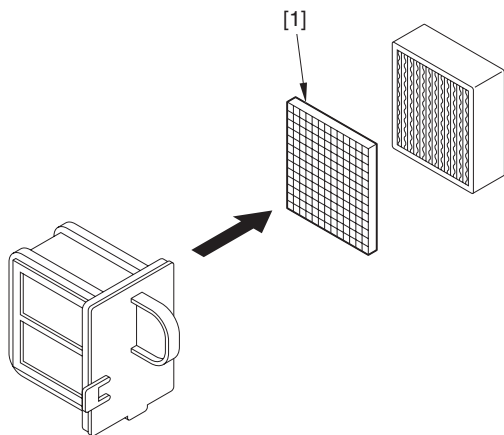
10.5.13.1 Removing Air Filter in the Intermediate Transfer Unit

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- 1) Removing ozone filter within the intermediate transfer unit.
- 2) Remove the ITB unit inside air filter [1] from the filter case.

Point to Note When Attaching

Be sure to attach the ozone filter after setting the air filter [1] to the filter case.



F-10-71

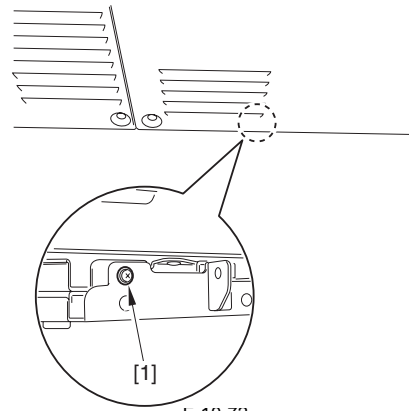
10.5.14 Power Unit Station

10.5.14.1 Removing Power Unit Station

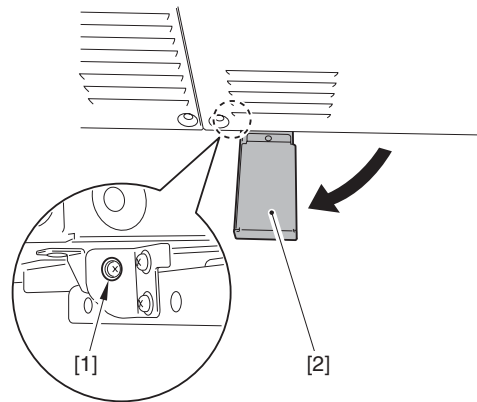
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- 1) After removing the screw [1] and sliding out the auxiliary caster [2], fix it

with removed screw [1].

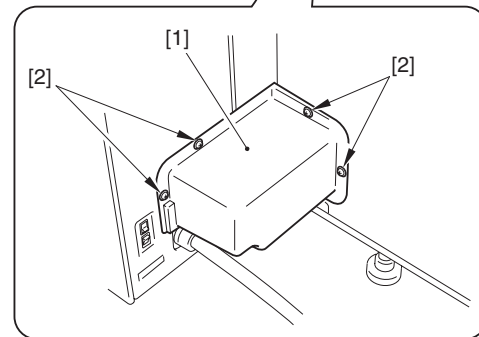
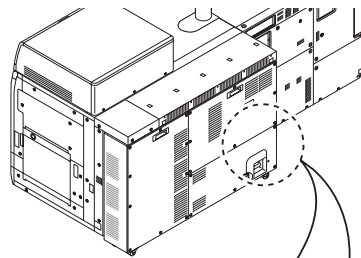


F-10-72



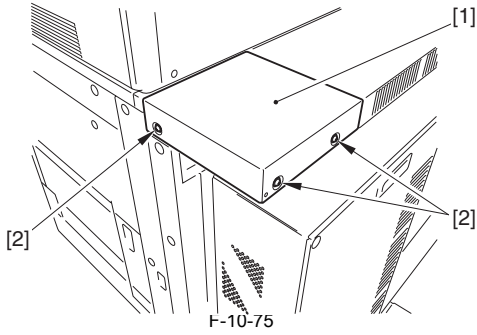
F-10-73

- 2) Attach the cable cover [1].
- 4 screws (TP; M4X8) [2]

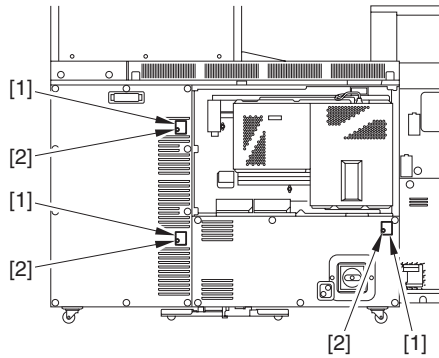


F-10-74

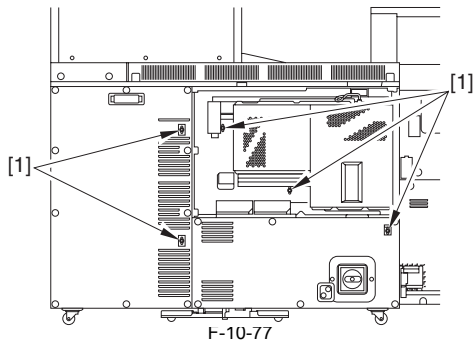
- 3) Detach the main station upper rear cover 2 [1].
- 3 screws [2]



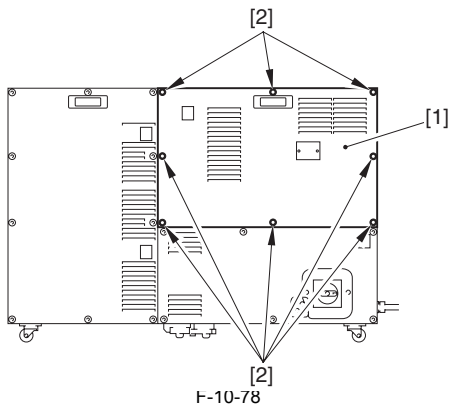
4) Detach the 3 small covers [1] on the back side of the power unit station.
- 1 screw [2] each



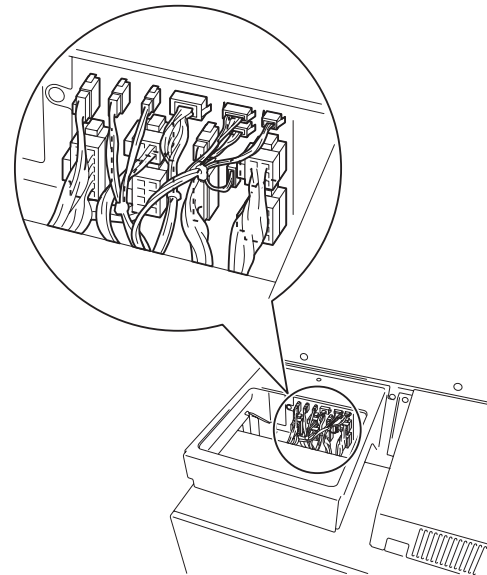
5) Release the power unit station from the main station.
- 5 screws (W sems; M4X12) [1]
- 7 screws [2]



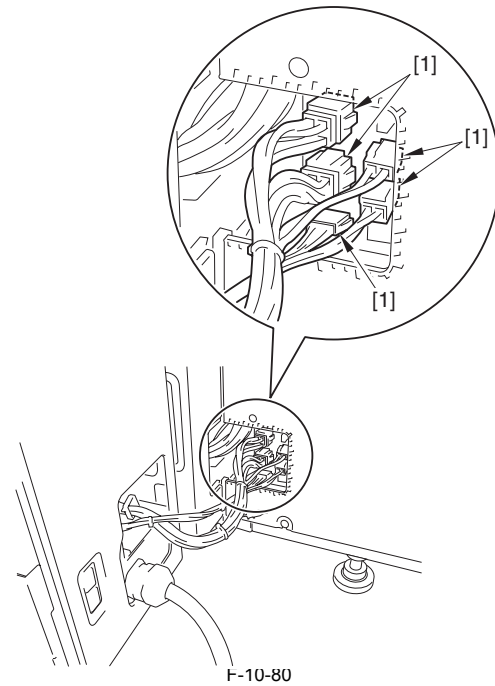
6) Detach the main station upper rear cover 2 [1].
- 7 screws [2]



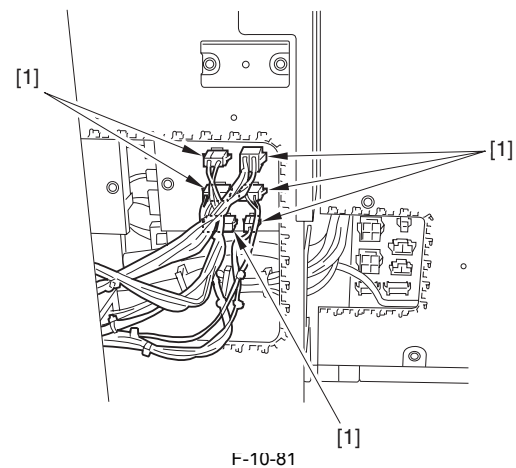
7) Remove the 14 connectors [1] from the main station.



8) Remove the 5 connectors [1] from the sub station.

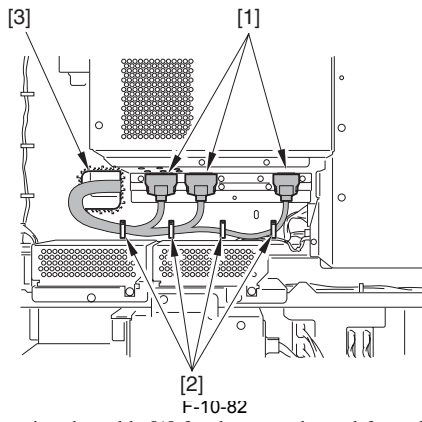


9) Remove the 6 connectors [1] from the main station.



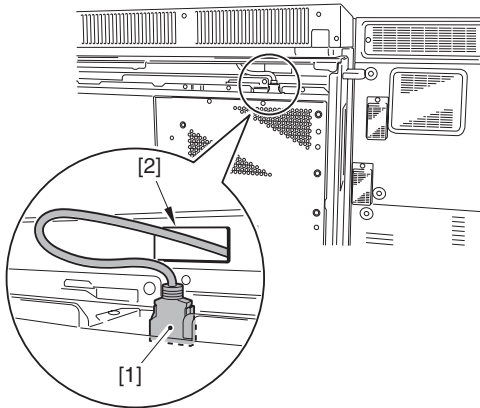
10) Free the 3 video cables [1].
- 4 wire saddles [2]

11) Remove the 3 video cables [1] through the side plate hole [3].



F-10-82

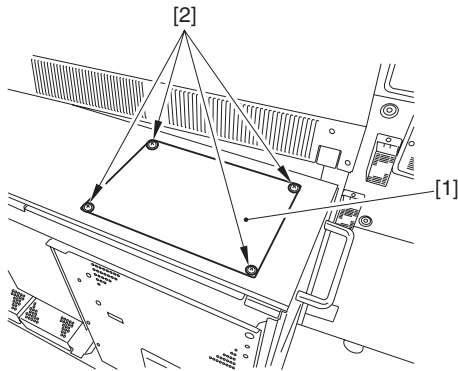
12) After removing the cable [1] for the control panel from the power unit station, remove it through the hole [2] at the power unit station.



F-10-83

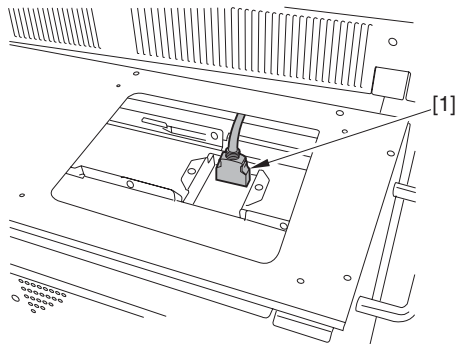
If hard to remove the cable for the control panel, make the following settings.

13) Detach the power unit station upper cover [1].
- 4 screws [2]



F-10-84

14) Remove the cable [1] for a control panel.



F-10-85

Chapter 11 MEAP

Contents

11.1 MEAP.....	11-1
11.1.1 Checking the Operating Environment.....	11-1
11.1.2 Setting Up the Network.....	11-4
11.1.3 Setting the method to login to SMS.....	11-6
11.1.4 Login to SMS.....	11-9
11.1.5 Checking Application List.....	11-11
11.1.6 Starting and Stopping a MEAP Application.....	11-12
11.1.7 Checking the Platform Information.....	11-13
11.1.8 MEAP Specifications.....	11-14
11.1.9 Checking the System Information of a MEAP Application with SMS.....	11-15
11.1.10 Printing the System Information of a MEAP Application.....	11-16
11.1.11 Reference (Application System Information).....	11-17
11.1.12 Installing an Application.....	11-18
11.1.13 MEAP Enterprise Service Manager.....	11-21
11.1.14 Adding a License File.....	11-21
11.1.15 Disabling a License File (suspending a license).....	11-23
11.1.16 Downloading/Removing an Invalidated License File.....	11-25
11.1.17 Reusable license.....	11-27
11.1.18 License for forwarding.....	11-28
11.1.19 Uninstalling an Application.....	11-31
11.1.20 Changing Login Services.....	11-32
11.1.21 Initializing the Password.....	11-36
11.1.22 Creating a Backup for MEAP Application Area, Formatting the Hard Disk, Restoring the MEAP Application Area with the Backup, Using the SST (Service Support Tool).....	11-36
11.1.23 Replacing the Hard Disk Drive.....	11-38
11.1.24 MEAP Safe Mode.....	11-39
11.1.25 Setting HTTP port for MEAP application (level 2).....	11-40
11.1.26 Reference material.....	11-43
11.1.27 Option for exclusive individual measure.....	11-44

11.1 MEAP

11.1.1 Checking the Operating Environment.

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

This section lists the requirements on the operating environment for the maintenance.

MEMO:

Java Script must be enabled in every environment.

Important:

For the following operations in the combined environment of Windows XP and Internet Explorer6, Java2 Runtime Environment Standard Edition 1.3.1 or later is required.

- User registration / edit in SDL
 - User registration / edit in SSO local device
 - Use of SSO remote login in SSO
-

Remote Login of Default Authentication or Simple Device Login (SDL), Remote UI, and Portal Services

Remote Login of Default Authentication or Simple Device Login (SDL), Remote UI, and Portal Services guarantee operation under the following system environment.

T-11-1

Operating System	Supported browser
Microsoft Windows 98 SE Microsoft Windows NT Workstation 4.0 SP6a	Microsoft Internet Explorer 5.01 SP2 Microsoft Internet Explorer 5.5 SP2 Microsoft Internet Explorer 6 SP1
Microsoft Windows ME	Microsoft Internet Explorer 5.5 SP2 Microsoft Internet Explorer 6 SP1
Microsoft Windows 2000 Professional SP3	Microsoft Internet Explorer 5.01 SP2 Microsoft Internet Explorer 5.5 SP2 Microsoft Internet Explorer 6 SP1
Microsoft Windows XP Professional / Home	Microsoft Internet Explorer 6 Gold Microsoft Internet Explorer 6 SP1
Mac OS 8.6 - 9.x	Microsoft Internet Explorer 5.0 - 5.1.6
Mac OS X 10 - 10.2.4	Microsoft Internet Explorer 5.2.2

Remote UI (RUI)

RUI guarantees operation under the following system environment.

T-11-2

Operating System	Supported browser
Microsoft Windows 98 SE Microsoft Windows ME Microsoft Windows NT Workstation 4.0 Microsoft Windows 2000 Professional Microsoft Windows XP	Microsoft Internet Explorer 5.01 SP2 or later Netscape Communicator 4.6 or later
MacOS 8.6 or later	Microsoft Internet Explorer 5.0 or later

SMS

SMS guarantees operation under the following system environment.

T-11-3

Operating System	Supported browser
Microsoft Windows 98 SE	Microsoft Internet Explorer 5.5 SP2 Microsoft Internet Explorer 6 SP1
Microsoft Windows 2000 Professional	Microsoft Internet Explorer 5.5 SP2 Microsoft Internet Explorer 6 SP1
Microsoft Windows XP	Microsoft Internet Explorer 6 Microsoft Internet Explorer 6 SP1

SDL and SSO with Local Devoce Authentication (user registration/edit functions)

For user registration / edit in SDL and SSO(with Local Authentication), following system requirements must be satisfied.
System environment for administrator

T-11-4

Operating System	Supported browser
Microsoft Windows 98 SE	Microsoft Internet Explorer 5.5 SP2 Microsoft Internet Explorer 6 SP1
Microsoft Windows 2000 Professional SP3	Microsoft Internet Explorer 5.5 SP2 Microsoft Internet Explorer 6 SP1
Microsoft Windows XP	Microsoft Internet Explorer 6 Microsoft Internet Explorer 6 SP1

System environment for end user

T-11-5

Operating System	Supported browser
Microsoft Windows 98 SE Microsoft Windows NT Workstation4.0	Microsoft Internet Explorer 5.0.1 SP2 Microsoft Internet Explorer 5.5 SP2 Microsoft Internet Explorer 6 SP1
Microsoft Windows ME	Microsoft Internet Explorer 5.5 SP2 Microsoft Internet Explorer 6 SP1
Microsoft Windows 2000 Professional	Microsoft Internet Explorer 5.0.1 SP2 Microsoft Internet Explorer 5.5 SP2 Microsoft Internet Explorer 6 SP1
Microsoft Windows XP Professional	Microsoft Internet Explorer 6 SP1

SSO domain authentication environment**Windows server for Security Agent to be installed**

Security Agent (hereinafter SA) guarantees operation in the following system environment.

T-11-6

Hardware	Memory	256MB or more
	Hard disk	Empty capacity of 15MB or more
	CPU	Processor more than Intel Celeron 800 MHz corresponding
Software	OS	Microsoft Windows 2000 Professional SP4
		Microsoft Windows 2000 Server SP4
		Microsoft Windows XP Professional SP2
		Microsoft Windows Server 2003 SP1
		Microsoft Windows Server 2003 R2
Corresponding Active Directory		Microsoft Windows 2000 Server SP4
		Microsoft Windows Server 2003 SP1 *
		Microsoft Windows Server 2003 R2 *

* Construction of SSO domain environment by using Active Directory of Microsoft Windows Server 2003 needs SA of version 2.0.1 or newer, SSO Login application of version 3.0.0 or newer.

Combination list of the versions of SSO Login application of MEAP device and SA

T-11-7

Product Name of MEAP Device			Version of SSO Login Application	Version of SA						
US	EU	AO		V1.1.0	V1.2.0	V1.3.0	V1.3.1	V2.0.0	V2.0.1	V3.0.1
iR5020/ iR5020i/ iR6020/ iR6020i	iR5020N/ iR5020i/ iR6020N/ iR6020i	iR5020i/ iR6020i	V1.1.0	A	A	A	A	A	A	A
iR2220i/ iR2220N/ iR3320i/ iR3320N	iR2220i/ iR2220N/ iR3320i/ iR3320N	iR2220i/ iR3320i	V1.1.0	A	A	A	A	A	A	A
iR C3220/ iR C2620	iR C3220/ iR C2620	iR C3220/ iR C2620	V1.1.1	A	A	A	A	A	A	A
iR 2270/ iR 2870/ iR 3035/ iR 3045	iR 2270/ iR 2870/ iR 3035/ iR 3045	iR 2270 /2870/3035/3045	V1.1.2	A	A	A	A	A	A	A
			V2.2.7	A	A	A	A	B	B	B
iR85+/ iR8070/ iR105+/ iR9070	iR85+/ iR8070/ iR105+/ iR9070	iR85+/ iR8070/ iR105+/ iR9070	V1.1.3	A	A	A	A	A	A	A
			V2.2.7	A	A	A	A	B	B	B
iR 5570/ iR 6570	iR 5570 / 6570	iR 5570 / 6570	V2.0.0,	A	A	A	A	B	B	B
			V2.2.9							
iR C3170U/ iR C3170i	iR 3170C/ iR 3170Ci/ iR C2570/ iR C2570i	iR C3170/ iR C3170i/ iR C2570/ iR C2570i	V2.2.6	A	A	A	A	B	B	B

Product Name of MEAP Device			Version of SSO Login Application	Version of SA						
US	EU	AO		V1.1.0	V1.2.0	V1.3.0	V1.3.1	V2.0.0	V2.0.1	V3.0.1
iR C5870U/ iR C6870U	iR 5870C/ iR 5870Ci/ iR 6870C/ iR 6870Ci	iR C5870/ iR C5870i/ iR C6870/ iR C6870i	V2.4.0	A	A	A	A	B	B	B
iR7086/ iR7095/ iR7095 Printer/ iR7105	iR7086/ iR7095/ iR7095 P/ iR7105	iR7086/ iR7095/ iR7095 P/ iR7105	V2.5.0	A	A	A	A	B	B	B
iR C5180i/ iR C4580i/ iR C4080i	iR C4080/ iR C4080N/ iR C4580/ iR C4580N/ iR C5180/ iR C5180N	iR C4080/ iR C4080N/ iR C4580/ iR C4580N/ iR C5180/ iR C5180N	V3.0.0	A	A	A	A	B	C	C
imagePRESS C1	imagePRESS C1	imagePRESS C1	V3.1.0	A	A	A	A	B	C	C
iR C2880/ iR C3380	iR C2880 / C3380	iR C2880 / C3380	V3.2.0	A	A	A	A	B	C	C
iR3025/ iR3030/ iR3035/ iR3045	iR3025/ iR3030/ iR3035/ iR3045	iR3025/ iR3030/ iR3035/ iR3045	V3.4.1	A	A	A	A	B	C	C
iR 5055/ iR 5065/ iR 5075	iR 5055/ iR 5065/ iR 5075	iR 5055/ iR 5065/ iR 5075	V3.5.0	A	A	A	A	B	C	C
iR C5185	iR C5185	iR C5185	V3.6.0	A	A	A	A	B	C	C
imagePRESS C7000VP	imagePRESS C7000VP	imagePRESS C7000VP	V3.8.0	A	A	A	A	B	C	C
			V3.10.0	A	A	A	A	B	C	C
imagePRESS C6000VP/ C6000	imagePRESS C6000	imagePRESS C6000	V3.10.0	A	A	A	A	B	C	C

A = SSO basic function support

B = SSO basic function + Multi domain function + LLS cache function support

C = SSO basic function + Multi domain function + LLS cache function support + Server 2003 Active Directory support

MEMO:

-It must improve in the version of SSO Login application and version of SA when you want to use the function B or C.

-The right of access to the domain controller and the right of access to the Windows 2003 DNS are necessary, when the domain authentication is used with SSO.

Important:

-The device using SSO authentication and the Windows server on which Security Agent is installed must exist in the same domain.

-In the case that Security Agent has been installed in Windows XP Professional SP2, Windows Server 2003 SP1/Server 2003 R2 and Windows Firewall is set enabled, Security Agent (SA.exe) needs to be added as an exceptional program of Windows Firewall. If not being designated a directory of installation, SA.exe is stored in the following directory. C:\Program Files\Canon\SSOPackage\SecurityAgent

-In the case that Active Directory has been constructed in Windows Server 2003 SP1/Server 2003 R2 and Windows Firewall is set enabled, TCP port '5678' used by Security Agent needs to be added in Windows Firewall.

Browser

The following combinations of operations are guaranteed for the access from Web browser to MEAP device.

T-11-8

OS	Supported Browser
Microsoft Windows 98SE Microsoft Windows NT Workstation 4.0 SP6a	Microsoft Internet Explorer 5.01 SP2, Microsoft Internet Explorer 5.5 SP2, Microsoft Internet Explorer 6 SP1
Microsoft Windows ME	Microsoft Internet Explorer 5.5 SP2, Microsoft Internet Explorer 6 SP1
Microsoft Windows 2000 Professional SP3	Microsoft Internet Explorer 5.01 SP3, Microsoft Internet Explorer 5.5 SP2, Microsoft Internet Explorer 6 SP1,
Microsoft Windows XP Professional	Microsoft Internet Explorer 6 SP1,

11.1.2 Setting Up the Network

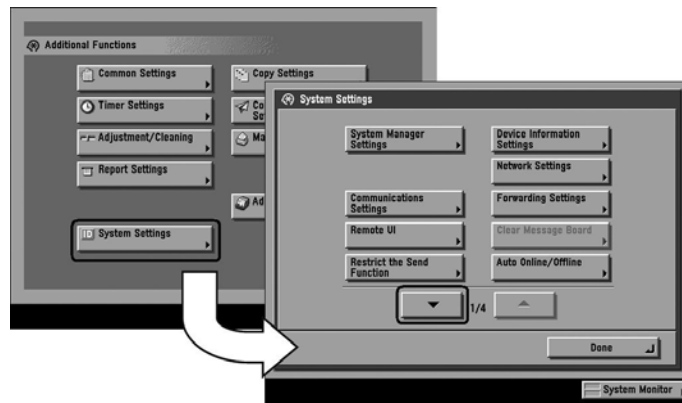
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

To allow a MEAP device to accept accesses through the network, for example you operate a device with SMS, the On option must be selected on Use HTTP screen. The option is selected by default. The setting can be changed on the control panel of the MEAP device.

1) Make the following selections: **Ad Func** button > **System Settings** button > **Down-arrow** button.

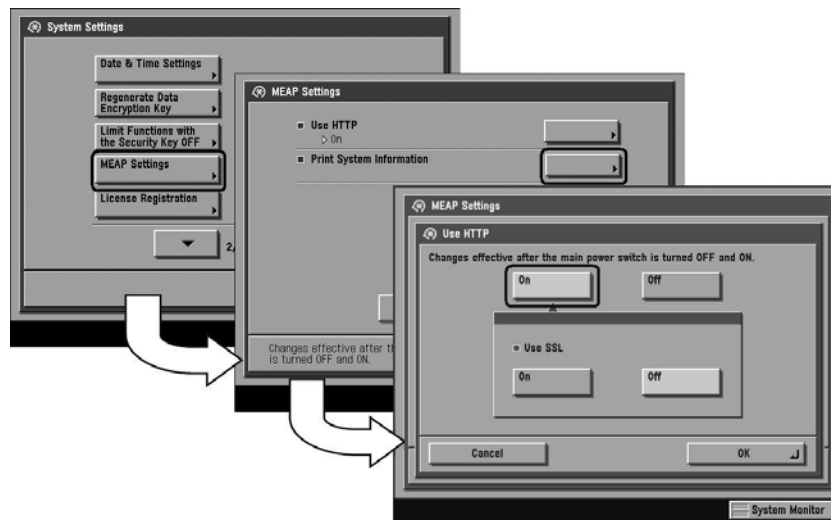
MEMO:

If the System manager ID and system password have already been assigned, ID Entry dialog appears after System Settings button is pressed. Enter the system manager ID and the password, and click ID key to go into System Management Mode.



F-11-1

2) Make the following selections: **MEAP Settings** button > **Use HTTP** button > **On** button > **OK** button .



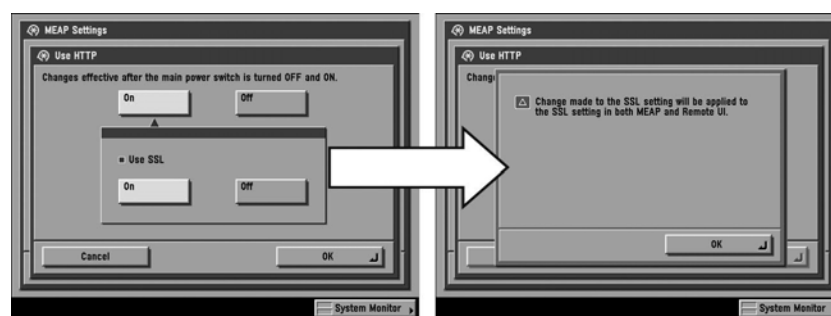
F-11-2

MEMO:

When using SSL, set [Use SSL] ON.

(This setting is also applied to the SSL setting of RUI. Same is true in the case of setting SSL ON on the side of RUI.)

Setting [Use SSL] ON displays the message dialogue 'Changes effective after the main power switch is turned OFF and ON'. Press [OK].



F-11-3

3) Press Done button as many times as necessary until the Basic screen appears.

4) Turn off the device's main power; wait for 10 sec, and then turn the power back on.



- The setting [Use HTTP] is not actually enabled/disabled until you have turned off and then on the device's main power switch.

- You cannot make a connection through a proxy server. If a proxy server is in use, enter the IP address of the MEAP device in the Exceptions field for the browser. Open Internet Options dialog of Internet Explorer and select Connections tab, LAN Settings button, Use a proxy server option, and Advanced button of Proxy server group. Proxy Settings dialog will opens. The Exceptions field is in the dialog. As network settings vary among environments, consult the network administrator.

- If Cookie and JavaScript are not enabled in the Web browser, you will not be able to use SMS.
- To type text using the Web browser, use the characters compatible with the MEAP device's touch panel display. The MEAP device may not properly recognize some characters.
- When [se SSL] is made available, it is necessary to set the key and the certificate necessary for the SSL communication. Set the key and the certificate by SSL with [Certificate Settings] that exists in [System Settings] > [Network Settings] > [TCP/IP Settings] on the iR device.

11.1.3 Setting the method to login to SMS

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

SMS Installer Service, which is used to login SMS includes Password Authentication and Remote Login Service Authentication (henceforce: RLS Authentication). Password Authentication is an authentication method only by password. RLS Authentication is an authentication method using SDL / SSO by ID and password. Either or both of the authentication methods can be enabled by changing the setting.

MEMO:

If Default Authentication is selected as the device authentication method, 'RLS Authentication' is not selectable as SMS Login method. Also, if 'RLS Authentication' is selected, the device authentication method (Default Authentication, SDL, SSO) cannot be changed.

Setting of login method to SMS (Start/Stop) must be made after logging-in by the other login method. In other words, setting for Start/Stop of Password Authentication is made after logging-in with RLS Authentication, and setting for Start/Stop of RLS Authentication is made after logging-in with Password Authentication. The table below shows the setting methods for each combination of login method and Start/Stop.

T-11-9

	Start RLS Authentication	Stop RLS Authentication
Start Password Authentication	Login available with either method	Login available only with Password Authentication
Stop Password Authentication	Login available only with RLS Authentication	Setting unavailable



When only RLS Authentication is enabled, there may be a case you cannot login to device for the following reasons.

- Authentication server down
- Disconnection with authentication server due to network failure

In these cases, boot the device as MEAP SAFE mode from device service mode.

By booting the device as MEAP SAFE mode, login to SMS becomes available as Default Authentication is enabled. After login to SMS, set RLS Authentication as Started, return the device to normal mode, and then login by RLS Authentication.

Setting for login by Password Authentication

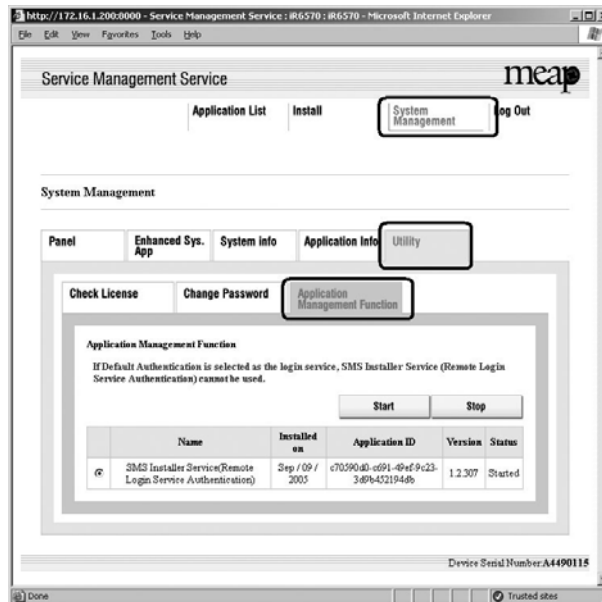
1) In order to make a setting for login by Password Authentication, you need to login by RLS Authentication. Therefore, login by RLS Authentication.

Login screen (In case authentication method is SSO)



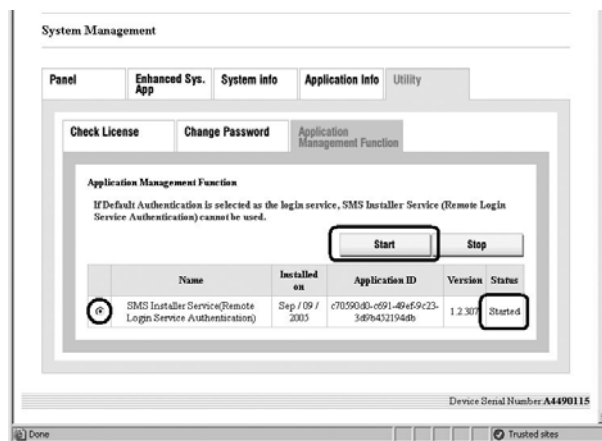
F-11-4

2) Select 'System Management' tab > 'Utility' tab > 'Application Management Function' tab.



F-11-5

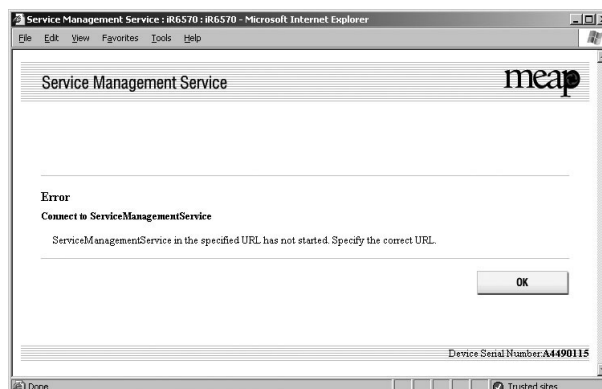
3) In order to enable login by Password Authentication, tick SMS Installer Service (Password Authentication) radio button and then click [Start]. On the other hand, in order to disable login by Password Authentication, clear the tick of SMS Installer Service (Password Authentication) radio button and click [Stop].



F-11-6

4) Logout once and login again to check to see that the setting is applied properly. In case the setting is changed from 'Stop' to 'Start', login screen that was not seen before is displayed. In case the setting is changed from 'Start' to 'Stop', access to login screen leads to the screen below and login becomes unavailable.

Login error screen



F-11-7

Setting for login by RLS Authentication

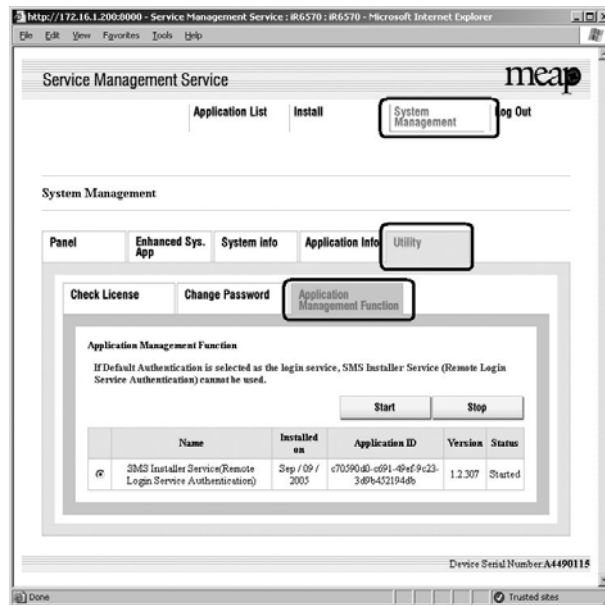
1) In order to make a setting for Login by RLS Authentication, you need to Login by Password Authentication.

Login screen by Password Authentication



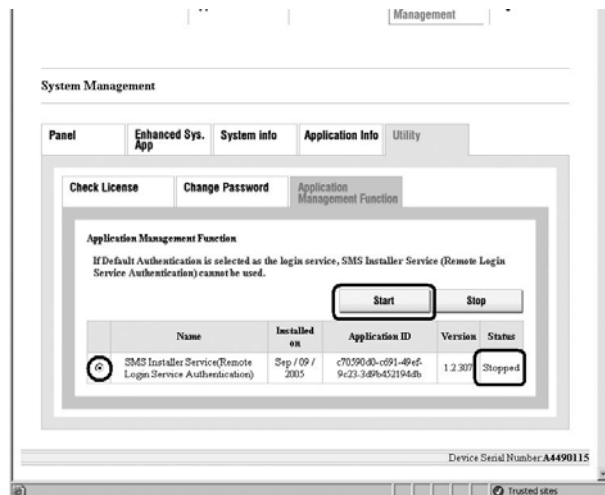
F-11-8

2) Select 'System Management' tab > 'Utility' tab > 'Application Management Function' tab.



F-11-9

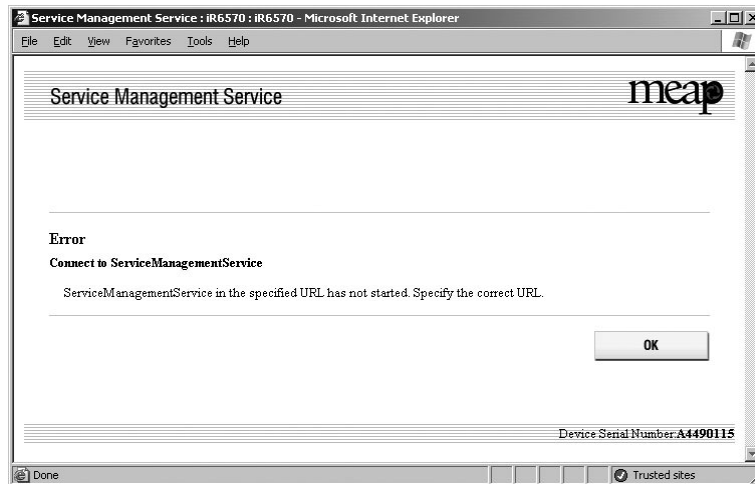
3) In order to enable Login by RLS Authentication, tick SMS Installer Service (Remote Login Service Authentication) radio button and then click [Start]. On the other hand, in order to disable login by RLS Authentication, clear the tick of SMS Installer Service (Remote Login Service Authentication) radio button and click [Stop].



F-11-10

- 4) Logout once and login again to check to see that the setting is applied properly. In case the setting is changed from 'Stop' to 'Start', login screen that was not seen before is displayed. In case the setting is changed from 'Start' to 'Stop', access to login screen leads to the screen below and Login becomes unavailable.

Login error screen



F-11-11

11.1.4 Login to SMS

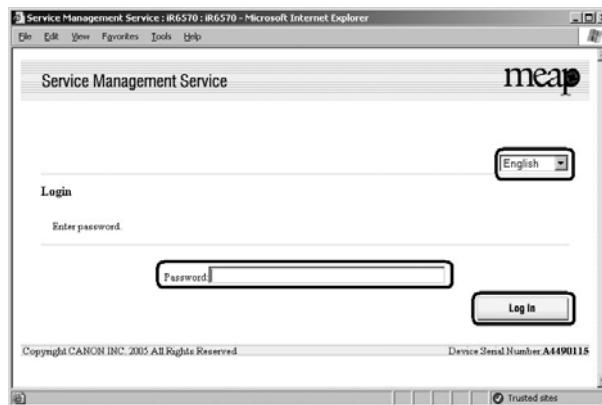
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

Login by Password Authentication

- 1) Access SMS from the browser of the PC connected to the network on which the MEAP device operates.
URL: <http://<MEAP Device IP address>:8000/sms/>
Ex.) <http://172.16.188.240:8000/sms/>

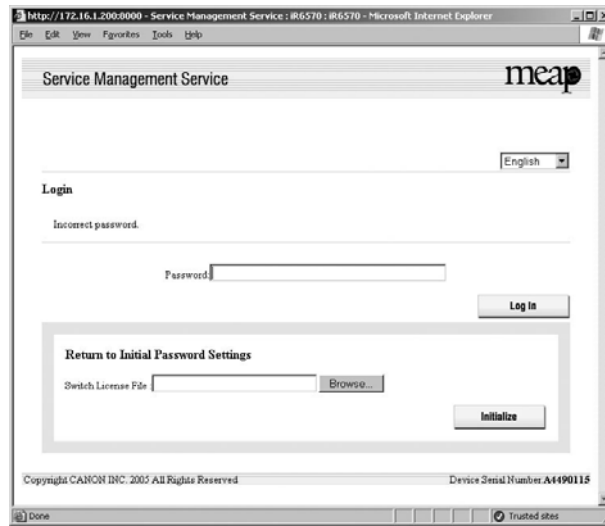
MEMO:

- The default password is "MeapSmsLogin." (The password is case-sensitive.)
- When you want to change the display original language, change in the box in the right of the screen. This setting is not affect by the setting of the language of the device.



F-11-12

- 2) The following screen appears if the password has been changed by the user's system administrator. If so, check with the system administrator for the new password. Keep in mind that there is no special password offered for service work.



F-11-13

Login by RLS Authentication

1) Access SMS by RLS Authentication from the PC browser on the same network as the MEAP device.

URL: <http://<IP address of MEAP device>:8000/sms/rls/>

Ex.) <http://172.16.188.240:8000/sms/rls/>

MEMO:

- In case the device authentication method is SSO and login to domain, enter User Name, Password, and Login Destination registered in Active Directory, and click 'Log in'.
- In case the device authentication method is SDL or SSO and login to 'this device', enter User Name and Password registered in the device and click 'Log in'.

In the case the device authentication method is SSO



F-11-14

In the case the device authentication method is SDL



F-11-15

11.1.5 Checking Application List

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

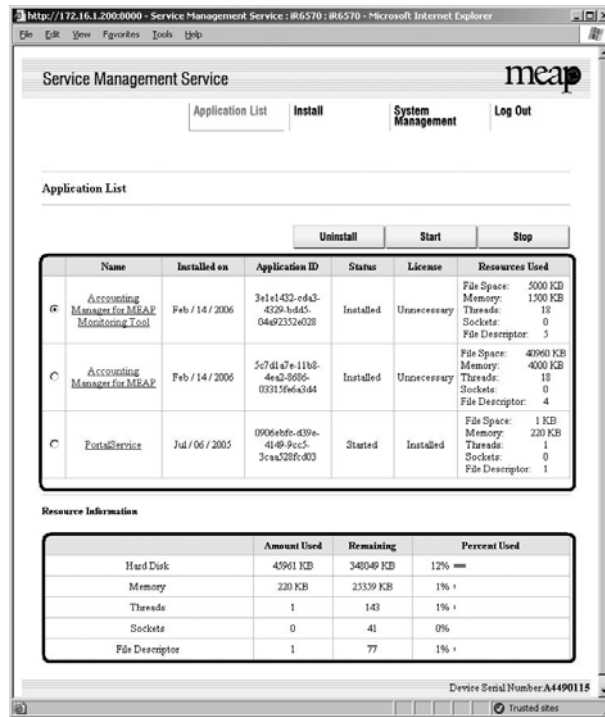
The page of **Application List** is designed to show resources arranged according to applications. The page gives you a good idea of how much of the device's memory is being used by the applications (both in absolute and relative terms) as well as how much memory still remains. Check this page before adding an application.

The information is collected from the manifest (headers) - in other words, the size of a resource represents the size as it is declared by the application in question, not necessarily the size of resources actually used by the application. The items of information include the following:

- hard disk
- memory
- thread
- socket
- file descriptor

You will not be able to install an application if the size of the remaining memory falls short of the size declared by the application. Moreover, the specifications have been designed so that an application will not be able to start up if there is a shortage of memory for any of the foregoing items (i.e., memory, thread, socket, file descriptor). To find out if there is enough memory, go through the following steps:

- 1) Log in to SMS.
- 2) Click Application List tab.
- 3) Check the displayed information:
 - a. Information on Applications
 - Name (of the application)
 - Installation (date)
 - Application ID
 - Status
 - License
 - Resources Used
 - b. Resource Information
 - Amount Used
 - Remaining
 - Percent Used

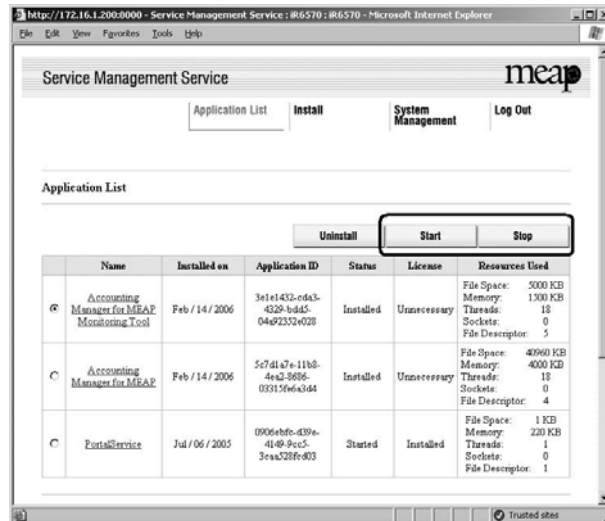


F-11-16

11.1.6 Starting and Stopping a MEAP Application

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- 1) Log in to the SMS.
- 2) Click 'Application List'.
- 3) Click the radio button of the MEAP application in question, and click 'Start' or 'Stop'.



F-11-17

- 4) Check to see that the status of the MEAP application in question is either "Started" or "Stopped."

Name	Installed on	Application ID	Status	License	Resources Used
Accounting Manager for MEAP Monitoring Tool	Feb / 14 / 2006	3e1e1432-cda3-4329-bd45-04a692332a028	Stopped	Unnecessary	File Space: 5000 KB Memory: 1500 KB Threads: 18
Accounting Manager for MEAP	Feb / 14 / 2006	5c7d1a7e-11b8-4ea2-8686-03312f6a2d94	Installed	Unnecessary	File Space: 40960 KB Memory: 4000 KB Threads: 18 Sockets: 0 File Descriptor: 4
PortalService	Jul / 06 / 2005	0906b6f6-439e-4149-9cc5-3caa528fc803	Started	Installed	File Space: 1 KB Memory: 220 KB Threads: 1 Sockets: 0 File Descriptor: 1

F-11-18

11.1.7 Checking the Platform Information

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

You can check the versions of MEAP Contents, MEAP Specifications, and Java Virtual Machine of the device.



Some applications may not be installed to some MEAP devices of specific specifications. (See 'MEAP Specifications').

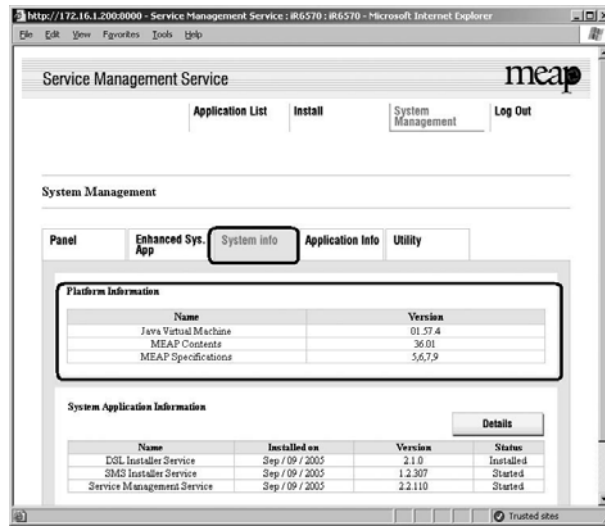
- 1) Log in to SMS.
- 2) Click **System Management** tab.

Name	Version
Java Virtual Machine	01.57.4
MEAP Contents	36.01
MEAP Specifications	5.6.7.9

Name	Installed on	Version	Status
DGL Installer Service	Sep / 09 / 2005	2.1.0	Installed
SMS Installer Service	Sep / 09 / 2005	1.2.307	Started
Service Management Service	Sep / 09 / 2005	2.2.110	Started

F-11-19

- 3) Click **System Info** tab.



F-11-20

11.1.8 MEAP Specifications

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

What is MEAP Specifications (MEAP Spec Version)?

MEAP Specifications is one of the information required to judge whether MEAP applications can be operated or not. With MEAP Specifications, you can prevent an application that uses a specific function of device from being installed onto the device that does not have the function.

About Name

MEAP Specification is shown as 'MEAP Specifications' in the screen to check the version on the side of device that supports MEAP (counter confirmation button) and MEAP platform (SMS). On the other hand, in the manifest file of MEAP application, it is shown as 'MeapSpecVersion' (described in the same way in the SDK document)

(Note) 'MEAP Specifications' hereafter in this document.

Mechanism

MEAP platform judges whether MEAP applications can be operated on it using on the 2 information below:

- Device Specification ID
- MEAP Specifications

Device Specification ID shows information such as the original functions of MFP (including print, scan, and copy), and one that differs by model such as maximum copy number, thus each model has a different ID. (It is easy to determine the IDs for this reason.) MEAP application declares 1 or more Device Specification ID required for its execution. Declaration of multiple Device Specification IDs means that the application is operable in all the models declared. Upon installation of MEAP application in (using) SMS or MEAP Enterprise Service Manager, matching of Device Specification ID is executed on the side of MEAP platform machine. The machine which doesn't support the ID declared by the application rejects installation of such an application.

Meanwhile, MEAP Specifications shows other information than defined by Device Specification ID above, including network and security. Thus each model does not always have the same version.

MEAP application declares 1 or more MEAP Specifications required for its execution. Declaration of multiple Device Specification IDs means that the application is operable in all the environments declared. Upon installation of MEAP application in SMS or MEAP Enterprise Service Manager, matching of MEAP Specifications is executed on the side of MEAP platform machine. The machine which doesn't support the version declared by the application rejects installation of such an application.

MEAP Spec Version for each model

T-11-10

Product Name	USA	EUR	OCE	SPL	KOR	Initial MEAPSpecVer	Change information
iR 6020	Y	Y	Y	Y	-		
iR 5020	Y	Y	Y	Y	-		
iR 3320	Y	Y	Y	Y	-		
iR 2220	Y	Y	Y	Y	-		
iR C3220	Y	Y	Y	Y	-	1, 2, 3	
iR C2620	Y	Y	Y	Y	-	1, 2, 3	
iR 4570	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	5	5, 6, 7 (System v30.xx later)
iR 2870	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	5	5, 6, 7 (System v30.xx later)
iR 2270	Y	Y	Y	Y	-	5	5, 6, 7 (System v30.xx later)
iR 3570	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	5	5, 6, 7 (System v30.xx later)
iR85+	Y	Y	Y	-	-		
iR 8070	Y	Y	Y	Y	-	5	5, 6, 7 (System v10.xx later)

Product Name	USA	EUR	OCE	SPL	KOR	Initial MEAPSpecVer	Change information
iR 105+	Y	Y	Y	Y	-	5	5, 6, 7 (System v10.xx later)
iR 9070	Y	Y	Y	Y	-	5	5, 6, 7 (System v10.xx later)
iR 6570	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	5, 6	5, 6, 7, 9 (System v20.xx later)
iR 5570	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	5, 6	5, 6, 7, 9 (System v20.xx later)
iR C3170	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	5, 6, 7	
iR C2570	-	Y	Y	Y	Y	5, 6, 7	
iR 7105	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	5, 6, 7	
iR 7095	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	5, 6, 7	
iR 7086	Y	Y	Y	Y	-	5, 6, 7	
iR 7095P	Y	Y	Y	Y	-	5, 6, 7	
iR C6870	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	5, 6, 7	
iR C5870	Y	Y	Y	Y	-	5, 6, 7	
iR C5180	Y	-	Y	Y	Y	5, 6, 7, 9, 10, 11	5, 6, 7, 9, 10, 11, 13, 14, 15 (System v50.xx later)
CLC5151	-	Y	-	-	-		5, 6, 7, 9, 10, 11, 13, 14, 15 (System v50.xx later)
iR C4580	Y	-	Y	Y	Y	5, 6, 7, 9, 10, 11	5, 6, 7, 9, 10, 11, 13, 14, 15 (System v50.xx later)
CLC4040	-	Y	-	-	-		5, 6, 7, 9, 10, 11, 13, 14, 15 (System v50.xx later)
iR C4080	Y	Y	Y	-	-		5, 6, 7, 9, 10, 11, 13, 14, 15 (System v50.xx later)
iR C5185						5, 6, 7, 9, 10, 11, 13, 14, 15	
imagePRESS C1	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	5, 6, 7, 9, 10, 11	
iR C3380	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	5, 6, 7, 9, 10, 11, 13	
iR C2880	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	5, 6, 7, 9, 10, 11, 13	
iR 3025	Y	Y	Y	Y	-	5, 6, 7, 9, 10, 11, 13	
iR 3045	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	5, 6, 7, 9, 10, 11, 13	
iR 3035	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	5, 6, 7, 9, 10, 11, 13	
iR 3030	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	5, 6, 7, 9, 10, 11, 13	
iR 5055	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	5, 6, 7, 9, 10, 11, 13	
iR 5065	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	5, 6, 7, 9, 10, 11, 13	
iR 5075	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	5, 6, 7, 9, 10, 11, 13	
imagePRESS C7000VP	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	5, 6, 7, 9, 10, 11, 13	
imagePRESS C6000VP	Y	N	N	N	N	5, 6, 7, 9, 10, 11, 13	
imagePRESS C6000	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	5, 6, 7, 9, 10, 11, 13	

* Due to the change in I/F specifications, these models support '5' only.

T-11-11

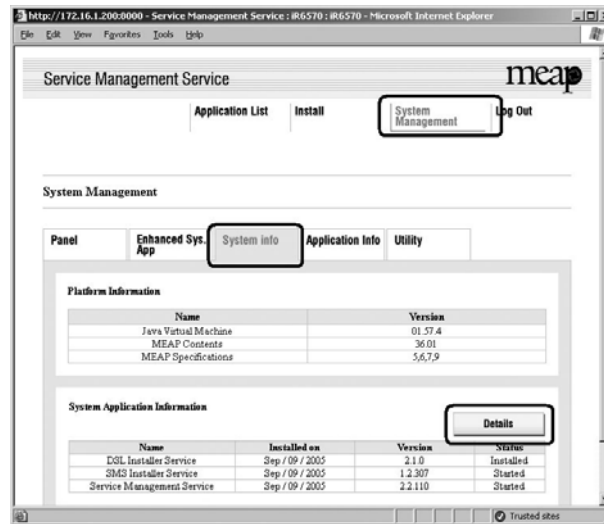
MEAP Spec Version

MEAP Spec Version	Description
1	MEAP basic function
2	MEAP Spec Version 1 function and SSL/TSL + Proxy
3	[Reserved]
5	MEAP Spec Version 1 function and CPCA V2 + ERS (Error Recovery Service) + New SSL/TSL
6	[Reserved]
7	MEAP Spec Version 5 function and Compact PDF + OCR PDF(Text Searchable) + USB-Host(Buffering of Interrupt Transfer)
9	[Reserved]
10	MEAP Spec Version 5 function and USB-Host(Exception + ClearFeature + SetFeature + HotPlug) + WINS address acquisition using MIBAgent + TimerService + SSL client authentication
11	MEAP Spec Version 5 function and AMS
13	MEAP Spec Version 5 function and J2ME1.1 Support + Encrypted PDF + Trace and smooth PDF + CTK2.0
14	Device signature PDF
15	IMI + ERS (API addition for IMI)

11.1.9 Checking the System Information of a MEAP Application with SMS

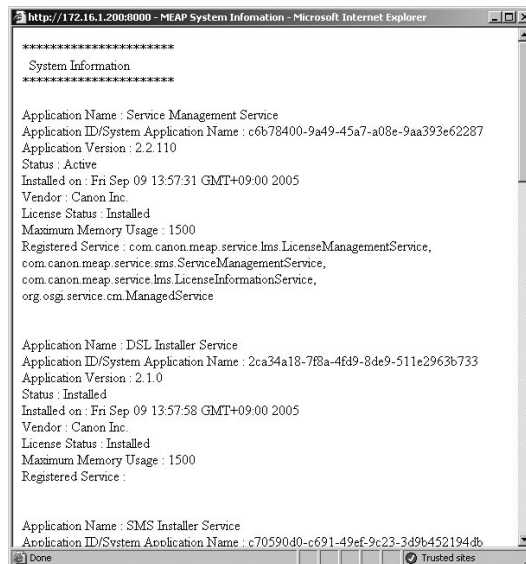
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- 1) Log in to SMS.
- 2) Click **System Management** tab.
- 3) On System Management screen, click **System Info** tab.
- 4) Click **Details** button.



F-11-21

- 5) When the following status information of MEAP applications (including the system application) appears in a different window, copy and paste all information to create an attachment (text information) for preparing a problem report. You can also use this function whenever you want to check the status of any particular application.



F-11-22

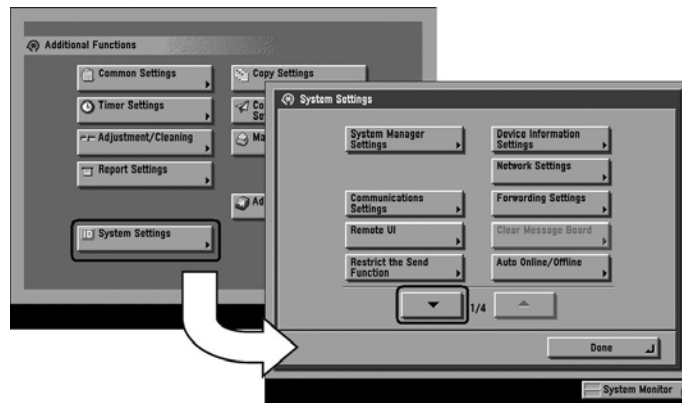
11.1.10 Printing the System Information of a MEAP Application

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- 1) Make the following selections: **Additional Functions** button > **System Settings** button > the **down-arrow** button.

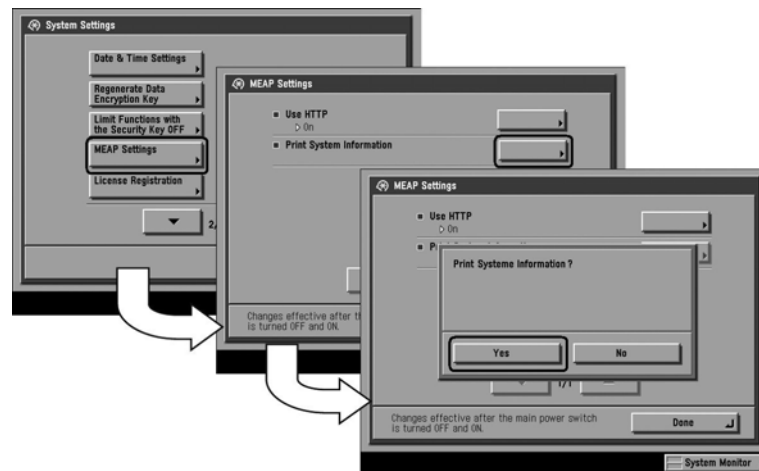
MEMO:

If the System manager ID and system password have already been assigned, ID Entry dialog appears after System Settings button is pressed. Enter the system manager ID and the password, and click ID key.



F-11-23

2) Make the following selections: **MEAP Settings** button > **Print System Information** button > **Yes** button.



F-11-24

3) Press **Done** button as many times as necessary until the Basic screen appears.

4) Turn off the MEAP device's main power; wait for 10 sec, and then turn the power back on.

Important:

The previous version of printing function for MEAP application status information (system information) was depended on PDL. However, current version of function is not dependent on PDL. So even device for which PDL is not available can print it. (Since iRC3220)

11.1.11 Reference (Application System Information)

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

You can check all applications installed to the device at a glance with the MEAP application status information and, thus, it is important for you to provide it when you are reporting a problem.

The following items of information will be indicated or printed for individual applications:

MEMO:

The system information shown on the screen and the system information printed in the MEAP device's user mode are exactly the same.

T-11-12

Application System Information

```

Application Name: C-Cabinet Gateway for MEAP
Application ID/System Application Name: 03a46668-63e4-4636-9cbb-492b6cef05d5
Application Version: 1.0.0
Status: Resolved
Installed on: Tue Oct 21 14:00:11 GMT+09:00 2003
Vendor : Canon Inc.
License Status : Installed
Maximum Memory Usage : 1024
Registered Service :

```

Application Name

It is the name (bundle-name) declared in a statement within the application program. It may not necessarily be identical to the name of the program.

Application ID/System Application Name

In the case of a system application, it will be the file name. If a general application, it is the application ID (application-ID) declared in a statement within the application program. Within the device, the applications are set apart by means of their application IDs.

Application Version

It is the version of the application (bundle-version) declared in a statement within the application program.

Status

It indicates the status of the application in question; specifically,

Installed: the application has been installed.

Active: the application is being in use.

Resolved: the application is at rest.

Installed On

It indicates the date on which the application was installed.

Vendor

It is the name of the vendor that developed the application, and is the name (bundle-vendor) declared in a statement within the application program.

License Status

It indicates the status of the license; specifically,

None: no license is needed.

Not Installed: no license has been installed.

Installed: the appropriate license has been installed.

Invalid: the license has been invalidated.

Overlimit: the license has been used beyond its permitted limit.

License Expires After

It indicates the date after which the license expires. If the status of the license is 'none', this item will not be printed.

License Upper Limit

It indicates the limit imposed on individual counter readings. If the status of the license is 'none', this item will not be printed.

Counter Value

It is the current counter reading of a specific counter. If the status of the license is 'none', this item will not be printed.

Maximum Memory Usage

It indicates the maximum amount of memory that the application uses. It is the amount (maximum memory usage) declared in a statement within the application program, and is expressed in kilobytes.

Registered Service

It is a list of services that have been registered by the application with the MEAP framework. Some services may not have printable data.

11.1.12 Installing an Application

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

Important:

- To install an application, the user needs to use the following URL when accessing the license control system to obtain a license file. In doing so, he/she needs to register the license access number of the application and the serial number of the device.

<http://www.canon.com/meap/>

-Maximum 20 applications can be installed (In iR5160/iR6060/iR2250/iR2850/iR3350, one is the portal service already installed at the time of shipment from the factory)

-The following are the resource amounts assured for each device in the operation of one MEAP application. These values are for reference purpose only, therefore the unused resource of SMS needs to be checked at the time of installation of MEAP application.

The displayed values of SMS resource may be larger than the followings since the actual values vary according to the log-in service (authentication function) selected by users and the configuration (future models).

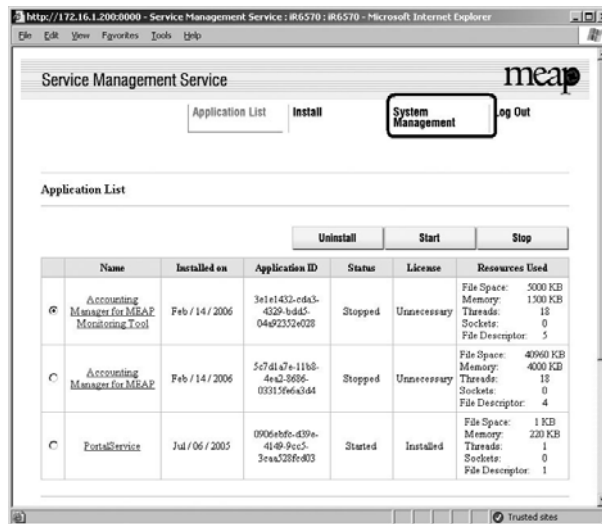
T-11-13

Product Name		HDD	Memory	Thread	Socket	File Description
iR5020/iR6020/iR2220/iR3320		300MB	20MB	128	48	42
iRC2620/iRC3220		400MB	20MB	128	48	42
iR2270/iR2870/iR3570/iR4570/iR85/iR8070/iR6570/iR5570		400MB	20MB	128	48	42
iRC3170/iRC2570		400MB	20MB	128	48	42
iR7086/iR7095/iR7105		400MB	20MB	128	48	42
iRC4080/iRC4580/iRC5180	Initial MEAP Spec Ver	1024MB	20MB	128	48	42
	Change Information	1024MB	30MB	128	128	128
imagePRESS C1		1024MB	20MB	128	48	42
iRC2880/iRC3380		1024MB	20MB	128	48	42
iR3025/iR3030/iR3035/iR3045		400MB	20/30MB*	128	48	42
iR5055/iR5065/iR5075		1024MB	20MB	128	48	42
iRC5185		1024MB	30MB	128	128	42
imagePRESS C7000VP/C6000VP/C6000		1024MB	20MB	128	48	42

*20MB for 512MB model, 30MB for 768MB model.

- As for memory, check the available resource when starting up the application. For other resources other than memory, check them when installing.
- Some applications call for a specific set of conditions for installation. For details, see the User's Guide that comes with the individual applications.

- 1) Long on to SMS.
- 2) Click **Install** tab.

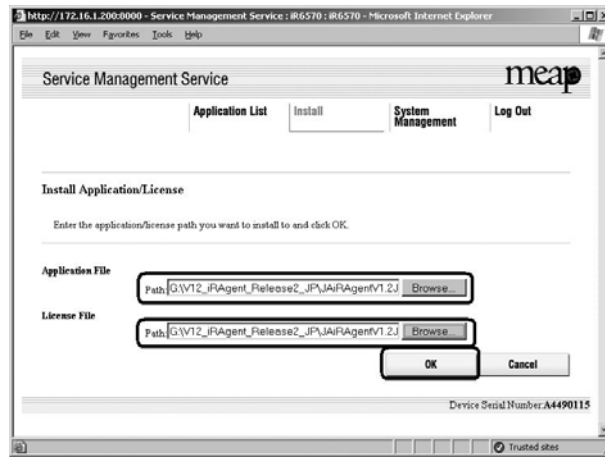


F-11-25

- 3) Check that **Install Application/License** page appears.
- 4) Click **Browse** button, and select the application file and the license file of the application; then, click **OK** button.

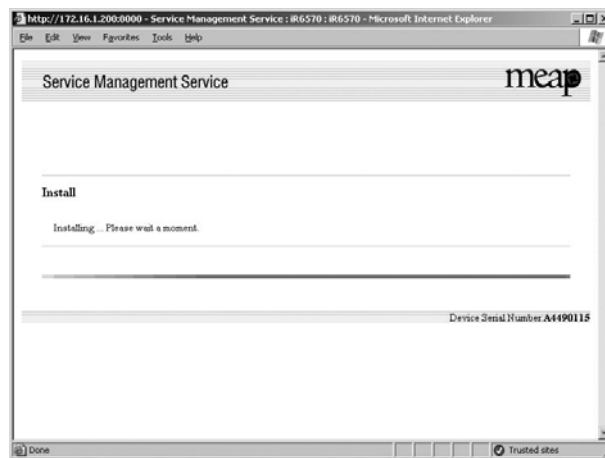
MEMO:

Application File: identified by the extension ".jar".
License File: identified by the extension ".lic".



F-11-26

5) See the message "Installing...Please wait a moment."

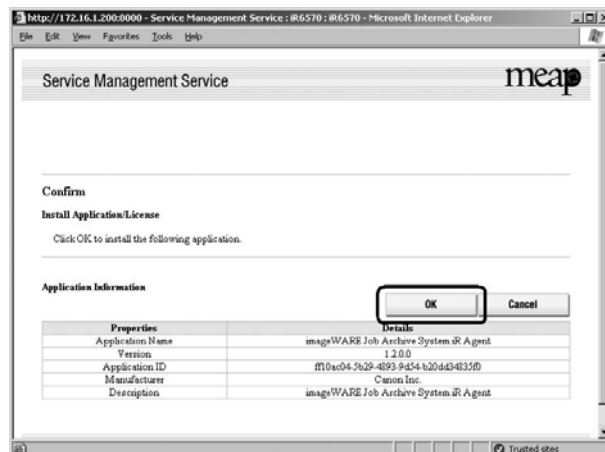


F-11-27

Important:

- You cannot install only the license.
- You will not be able to install the application without using the appropriate license. Be sure to select its license file.
- If you are adding a license to an existing application, see 1.3.10 Adding a License File.
- If you are updating an existing application, stop the application; then, install the new application or its license file. You will not be able to update an application while it is running.

6) Check the contents of the **Confirm** page; then, click **OK** button.



F-11-28

- 7) Some applications show a screen to indicate the terms of agreement. Read the terms, and click **OK**.
- 8) Check the message "Installing...Please wait a moment." appears, beginning the installation.
- 9) Check **Application List** page appears when the installation is completed.

Important:

To use the application that you have just installed, you must make sure that the application status is Started.

11.1.13 MEAP Enterprise Service Manager

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

Outline

MEAP Enterprise Service Manager is the PC application utility to perform batch installation, unistallation and management of MEAP application and license files required for installation of applications, on several MEAP-available devices on network.

The main targets are system administrators in big companies and CANON service engineers (end users of devices do not use).

It is used when customized applications delivered to a certain company needs to be managed collectively.

Previous SMS can manage only one device at a time. This utility reduces the management cost of devices and TCO.

Major functions

Discovery of devices available for MEAP

Discovery of devices available for MEAP on network

Storage of the serial number list of discovered device

Installation of application and license file

Management of application (starting / stopping)

Uninstallation of application

Others

System configuration

MEAP Enterprise Service Manager (MEAP ESM) functions in combination with DIS (DSL Installer Service) installed on the MEAP platform side of the device. This system can be used only for MEAP-available device with appropriate DIS installed.

(*) When using this system on the firmware for version upgrading on October 2003 or older, version upgrading of the system software on the field device is necessary.

The versions available for ESM are as follows:

iR5160 / iR6020: System v54.02 or newer, MEAP Contents v53.07 or newer

iR2220 / iR3320: System v33.01 or newer, MEAP Contents v33.02 or newer

Other products: Available from the initial version



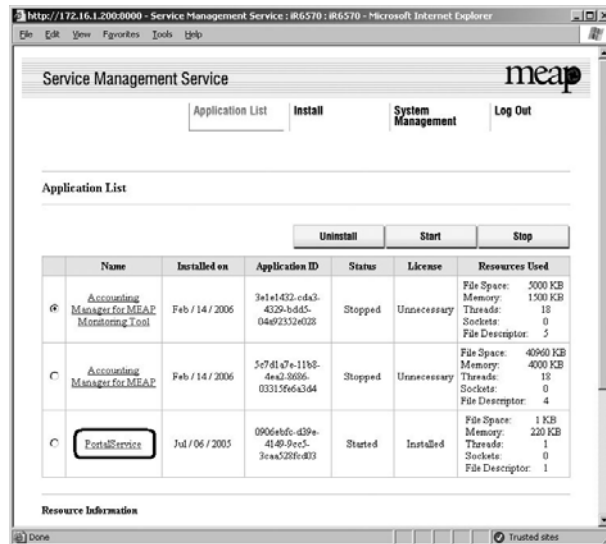
When installing MEAP Enterprise Service Manager (MEAP ESM) of master CD on PC, Microsoft '.NET Framework' v1.0 or v1.1 is necessary. The user should download it from the Web site of Microsoft.

11.1.14 Adding a License File

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

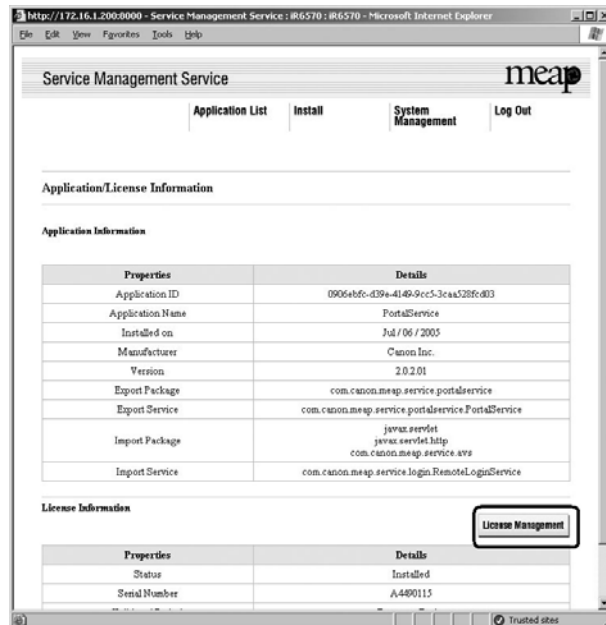
1) Log on to SMS.

2) On **Application List**, click the name of the application to which you want to add a license file.



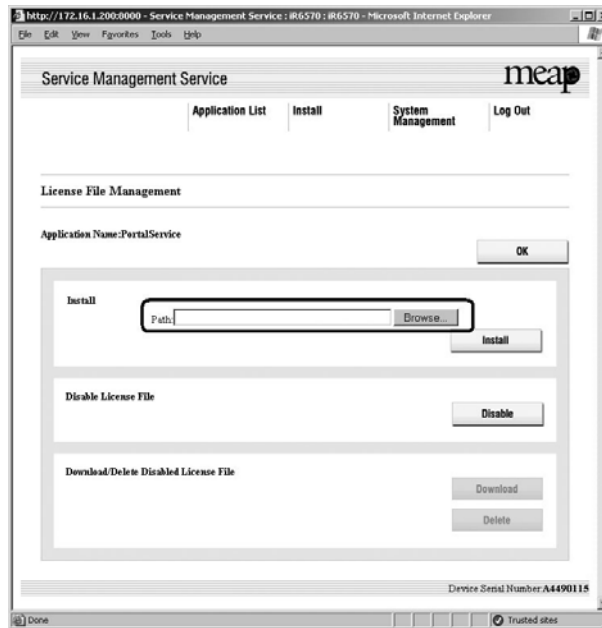
F-11-29

- 3) Check appears.
- 4) On Application/License Information page, click **License Management** button.



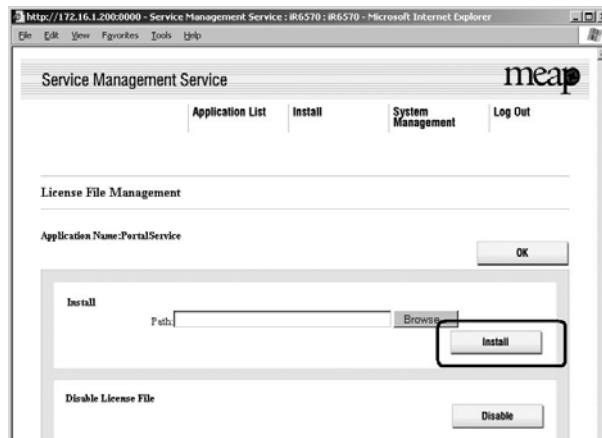
F-11-30

- 5) Click **Browse** button, and select the license file you want to install.



F-11-31

6) Click **Install** button.



F-11-32

7) Check the content of the confirmation page, and click **OK** button.

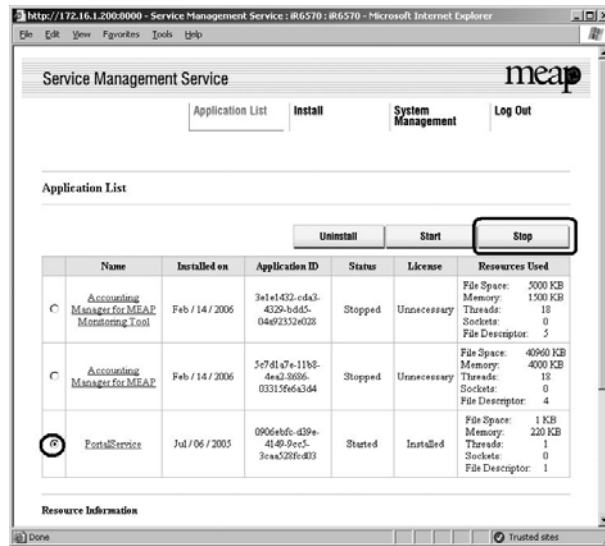
11.1.15 Disabling a License File (suspending a license)

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

Important:

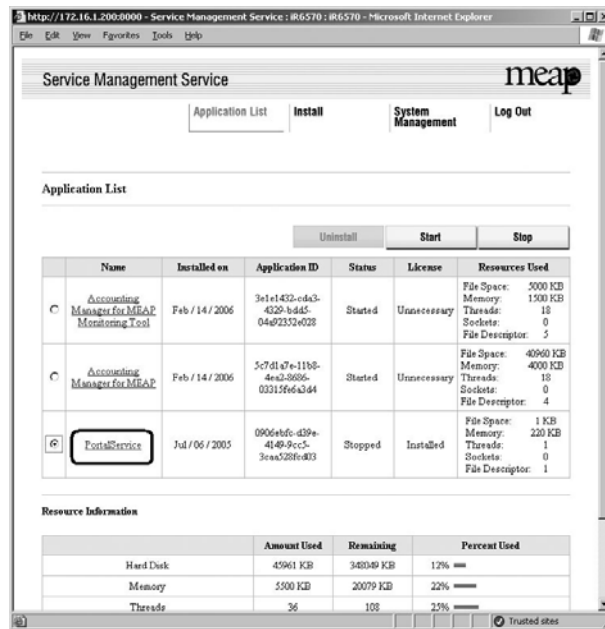
- To invalidate (or suspend) a license, you must first stop the application in question.
- Once suspended, the status of the license will be 'Not Installed', and its application will no longer be available for use.
- You can later restore a suspended license file as long as you are doing so on the same iR, the device with the same device serial number.
- When replacing the device due to lease up or trouble, use the license for forwarding (See 'License for forwarding').

1) Stop the application you want to uninstall on **Application List** page.



F-11-33

2) Click the name of the application that you want to disable.



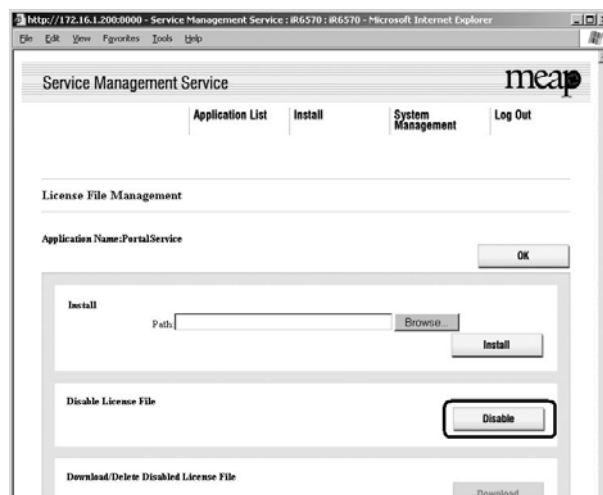
F-11-34

3) License File Management page appears. On Application/License Information page, click **License Management** button.



F-11-35

4) Click **Disable** button.



F-11-36

5) Click **OK**.

11.1.16 Downloading/Removing an Invalidated License File

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

You must remove the invalidated license file before uninstalling an application. If re-installation is a possibility, you may download the license file to a PC for storage. To download or delete a license file, first disable it.

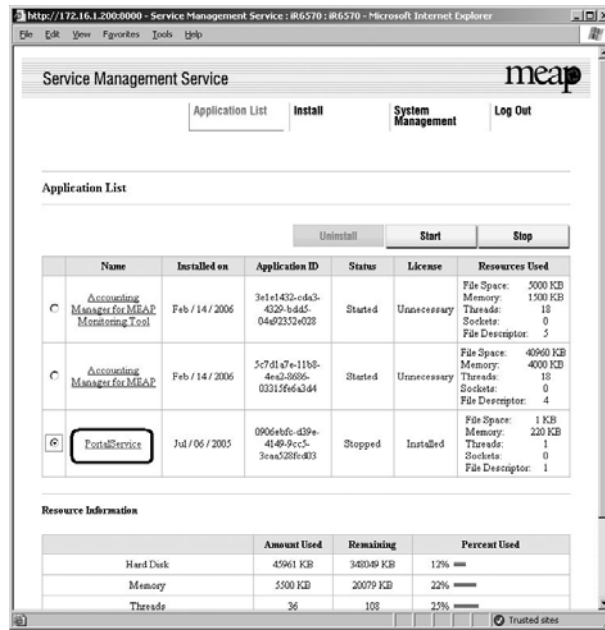
Important:

- Once you have removed an invalidated license file, you will no longer be able to download it from the MEAP device.

1) Login to SMS.

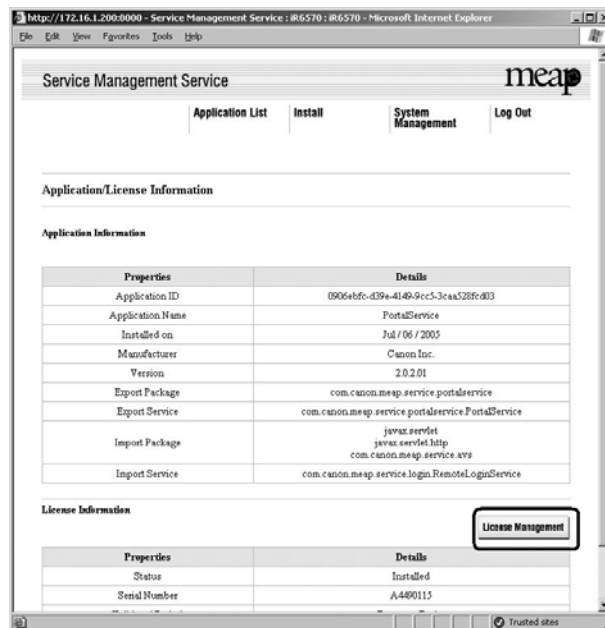
2) **Application List** page appears.

3) On **Application List** page, click the name of the application you want.



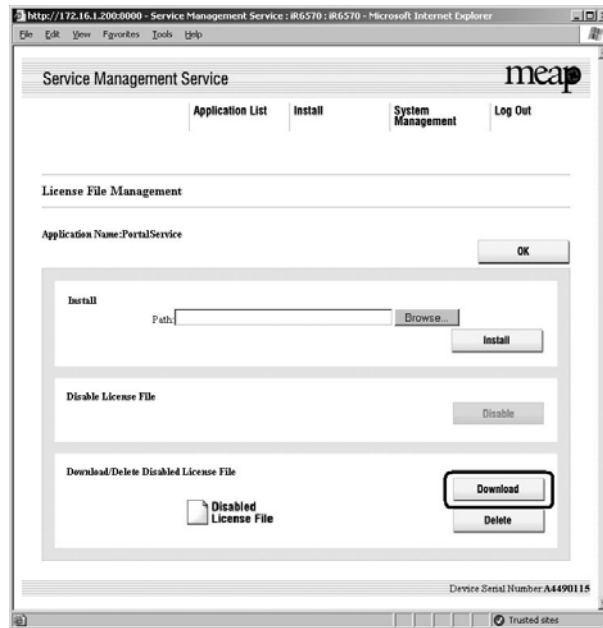
F-11-37

- 4) Check Application/License Information page appears.
- 5) On Application/License Information page, click **License Management** button.



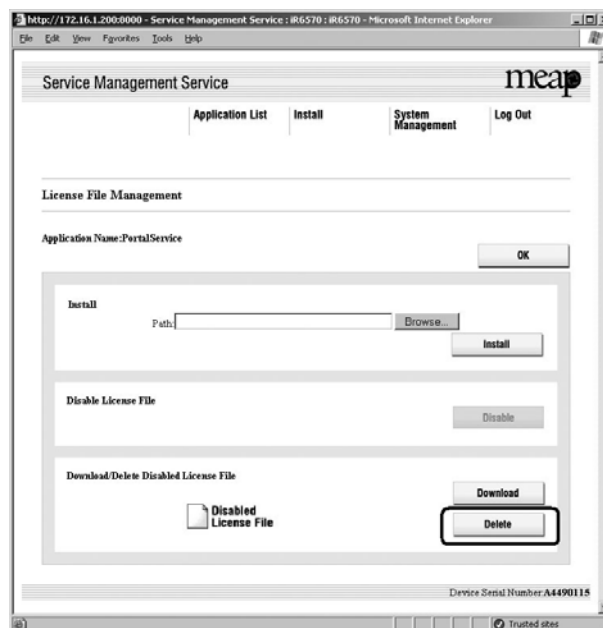
F-11-38

- 6) License File Management page appears. To download, click **Download** button.



F-11-39

- 7) When you have selected **Download** button, specify where you want to store the file by following the instructions on the screen.
- 8) To delete, click **Delete** button.



F-11-40

- 9) Check the confirmation page appears.
- 10) Click **OK** button.

Important:

- Without the license file, an application cannot be reinstalled even to the MEAP device that the application had been installed last time. Download and save the license file before deleting the application.

11.1.17 Reusable license

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

Reinstallation was not able to perform for all license files. When reinstalling, Disable License file should be downloaded (see 'Disabling a License File' and 'Downloading / Removing an Invalidated License File' in this manual) or a license for reinstallation should be obtained from LMS, before reinstallation.

This specification aims to prevent misuse of applications.

To increase convenience of users, only application with unlimited validity date and application counter (e.g. Portal Service, SDL, SSO) has been made to be able

to install as many times as needed by the same license file. This kind of license is called 'Reusable license'.

MEMO:

For devices for System version of 33.01, 54.02 (iR 2220 series / iR5020 series) or older, version upgrading is required. It is already installed in the model with iR C3220 or newer.

11.1.18 License for forwarding

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

When the device is replaced due to lease up or trouble, it is possible to continue using the current license information of MEAP application by forwarding it to a new device. The license is forwarded by CE because the hidden page of SMS is used.

1) Log in to SMS, stop the application to be forwarded (see 'Starting and Stopping a MEAP Application' in this manual).

Name	Installed on	Application ID	Status	License	Resources Used
ScanToOffice Pro-Service	Apr / 28 / 2005	7e73888-127c-44e2-a3d4-9f6d2a01d1d	Installed	Installed	File Space: 150000 KB Memory: 10000 KB Threads: 7 Sockets: 2 File Descriptor: 11
MFC_Servlet	Dec / 09 / 2004	4d2a9c51-a439-2cc2-129d-1c3d9631d9ab	Installed	Unnecessary	File Space: 60 KB Memory: 1024 KB Threads: 2 Sockets: 0 File Descriptor: 1
Syslog_Esplet	Oct / 22 / 2004	c464c4ce-fb5c-49e6-8e2c-ad8750aca630	Installed	Unnecessary	File Space: 15 KB Memory: 22 KB Threads: 2 Sockets: 0 File Descriptor: 0
PortalService	Oct / 06 / 2004	0906ebfc-d39e-4149-9cd5-3ca526fd03	Started	Installed	File Space: 1 KB Memory: 220 KB Threads: 1 Sockets: 0 File Descriptor: 1

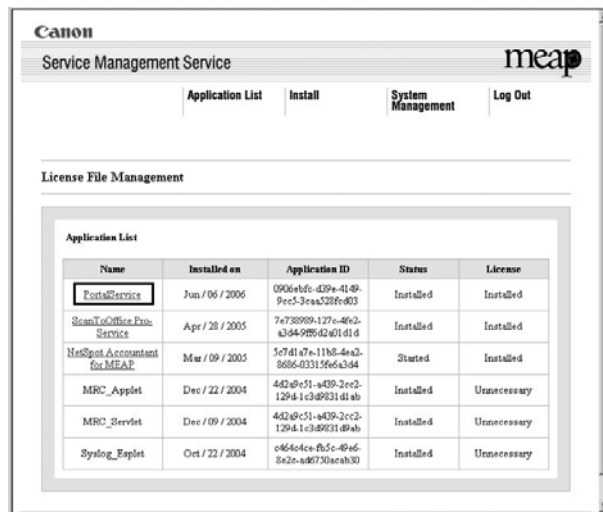
F-11-41

2) Move to the download page of license forwarded for the device as sender ([http:// IP address of device: 8000/sms/ForwardLicense](http://IP address of device: 8000/sms/ForwardLicense)).



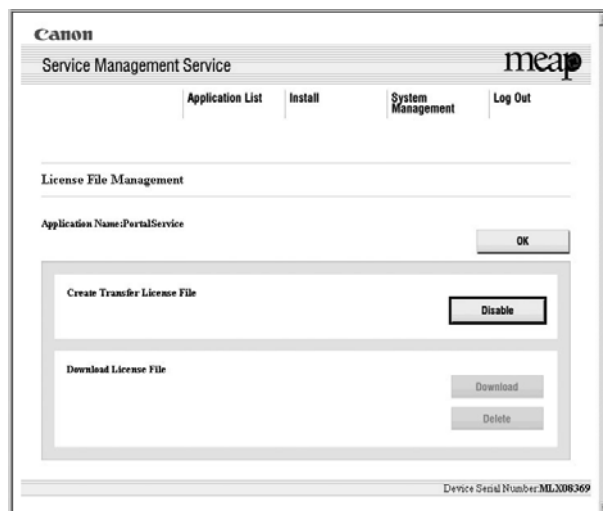
F-11-42

3) Specify the application to be forwarded.



F-11-43

4) Click 'Disable' at Create Transfer License File.



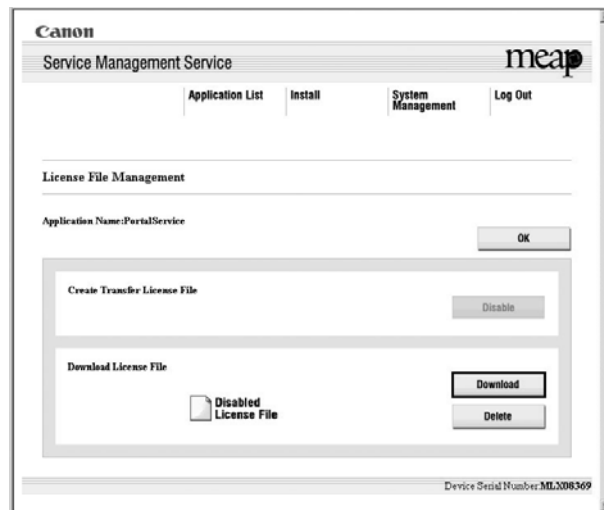
F-11-44

5) The screen to check invalidation of the license is displayed. Click 'OK',



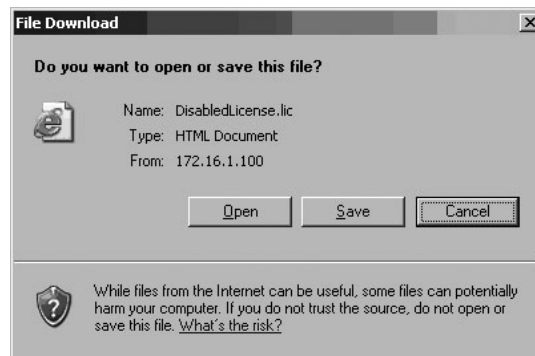
F-11-45

6) Icon of license file for forwarding is displayed in the box of license file downloading. Click 'Download'.



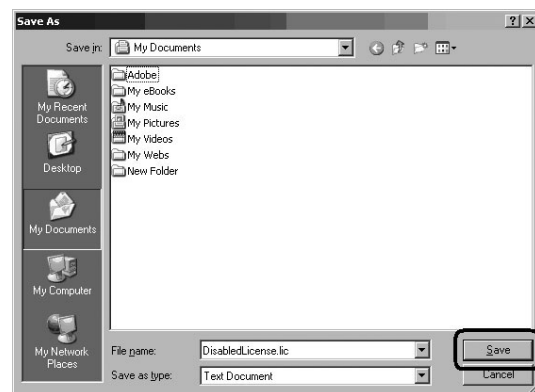
F-11-46

7) The dialogue 'File Download' is displayed. Click 'Save'.



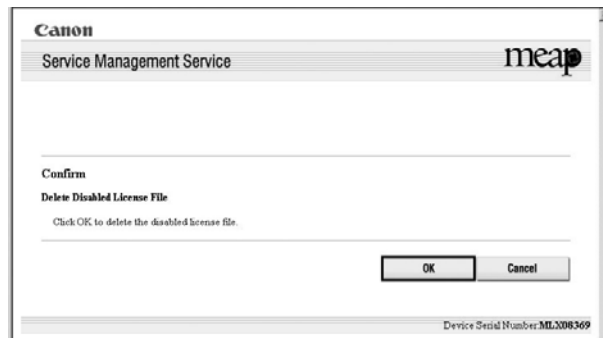
F-11-47

8) Specify the download destination, click 'Save'.



F-11-48

9) After downloading the license file for forwarding, click 'Delete' to display the confirmation screen and click 'OK' to delete the file (in consideration of breakage of license for forwarding, deleting disabled license can be executed after all steps have been completed).



F-11-49

- 10) Log out of SMS.
- 11) Ask the sales company to issue a license for forwarding.

MEMO:

When requesting issuance of license for forwarding, inform the sales company of the name of product name and serial No. of the device as sender, and of the name of product name and serial No. of the forwarding destination.

- 12) Install application using the license for forwarding issued by the sales company.

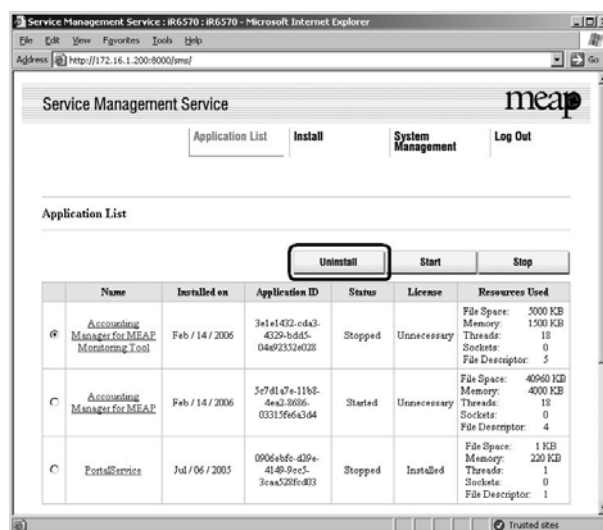
11.1.19 Uninstalling an Application

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- 1) Log on to SMS, and click 'Application List' tab.
- 2) Check 'Application List' page appears.
- 3) On the application list, select the radio button of the application you want to uninstall, and click 'Uninstall' button.

MEMO:

Dimmed Uninstall button shows that the selected application cannot be removed.



F-11-50

- 4) Check the screen to make sure that what is shown is the application you want to uninstall; then, click **OK** button. In response, the system runs an uninstall sessions.

Important:

- The status of the license must be 'Not Installed' or 'Unnecessary' for its application to be uninstalled. As necessary, go to License File Management page, and

disable the license file before starting to remove it.

- A license file may be invalidated only when its application is not active.
- If the application you are uninstalling is associated with another application, a message will appear to indicate that the package exported by the application will no longer be available. Uninstalling such an application may also disable its associated applications.

11.1.20 Changing Login Services

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

Login Service Overview

The login service is used to authenticate users who log in to a MEAP device. You can change login services or uninstall them using System Management site.

At time of shipment, the login service offers the following 3 modes of authentication:

- Default authentication
- SDL (Simple Device Login)
- SSO (Single Sign-On)

Important:

- To set SDL, the registered information in SDL and the registered user data (Department ID and Password) in Department ID Management of the machine have to match.
- To set up SDL or SSO, Department ID Management must be set to Off in advance. To use SDL and Department ID Management simultaneously, set Department ID Management to On after switching the login service to SDL.
- If SSO is set as the login service, NetSpot Accountant is necessary for using Department ID Management.
- If SSO is set, you cannot use an optional card reader.
- To set to SSO, first adjust the current time for the PC where Active Directory is running, the iR, and the PC where users log on. If there is more than a 30-minute difference among them, an error occurs at logon.
- If SSO or SDL is set as login service, it takes time until the iR is ready to start up.
- When the SEND function is used in the environment of SDL and SSO, it is necessary to set each user's mail address to transmit E-mail. When the mail address is not set, E-mail cannot be transmitted. However, when i-Fax is transmitted, the mail address set to the device is used.

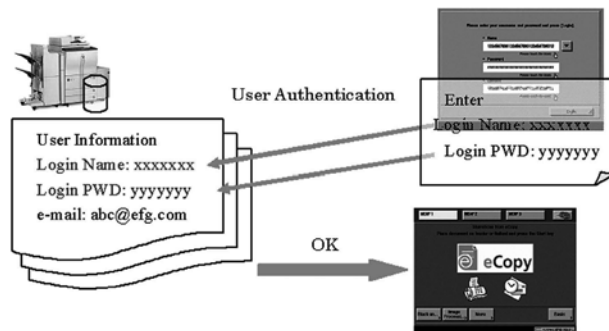
Outline of Default Authentication

In this mode of authentication, you will be using Department ID Management or you will not be using any authentication mechanism. If you enable the Department ID Management in the MEAP device's Additional Functions mode, the user can use the device only when he/she enters an ID number (a 7-character ID and password) that has been registered from the device's touch panel display or through Remote UI.

Outline of SDL (Simple Device Login)

In this mode of authentication, you will be operating on a MEAP device on its own. You will store user information to the MEAP device's memory by accessing the device through a Web browser. SDL offers the following functions:

- a. it brings up the Login screen on the MEAP device's touch panel display for user authentication.
- b. it brings up the Login page when you access the MEAP device from Web browser to manage the numbers of printed and scanned sheets for each department ID working with the department ID management function. it operates in conjunction with the group ID control mechanisms to keep track of the number of print pages or scan pages according to group IDs.
- c. it enables register/editing of user authentication information through a Web browser.



F-11-51

Outline of SSO (Single Sign-On)

This is the log-in service that can be operated on the domain of Active Directory environment network or at iR device. The following are the user authentication systems.

- Domain Authentication
- Local Device Authentication
- Domain Authentication + Local Device Authentication



- The three user authentication systems can be changed at Web browser (See 'Setting the User Authentication System' on MEAP Administrator Guide).
- The default setting is 'Domain Authentication + Local Device Authentication'. To increase security, set 'Domain Authentication' as user authentication system or change the user name and password of the administrator of Local Device Authentication from the default ones, just after starting to use SSO.

Domain Authentication

This is the authentication of the domains on network simultaneously with log-in to iR device, in combination with the domain controller on Active Directory environment network. It authenticates up to four domain users (multi domain) with trusts as well as the domain with iR device installed. Users select the domain name of log-in destination when they log in.

Optional NetSpot Accountant or imageWARE Accounting Manager enables analysis / management of the usage of iR device.

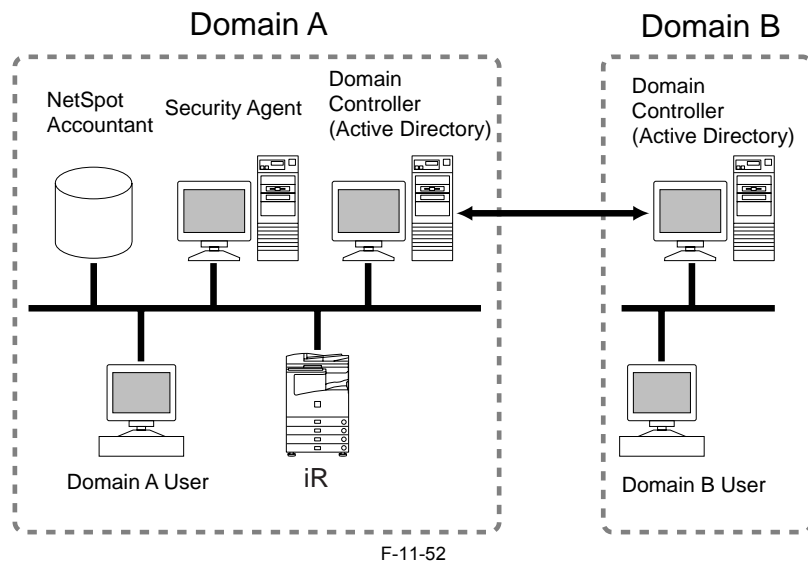
Local Device Authentication

This is the user authentication used for only iR device itself. The users to be authenticated is registered / managed by the database of iR device. The method of registration / management is the same as the one for SDL. The log-in destination is [this device].

Domain Authentication + Local Device Authentication

This is the user authentication system with the functions of both 'Domain Authentication' and 'Local Device Authentication'. Domain Authentication is useful to authenticate the users registered / managed by Active Directory, and Local Device Authentication is for authentication of the temporary users being not able to be added to Active Directory. In the case that any trouble of domain controller or Security Agent occurs, using Local Device Authentication enables emergency action until recovery.

In the following example, Domain A user with iR installed and Domain B having trusts with Domain A, and also the users registered in iR device itself can be authenticated. Users select the login destination (domain name or [This Device]) when they log in.



- Optional NetSpot Accountant or imageWARE Accounting Manager is necessary to use Domain Authentication and department ID management simultaneously. When Domain Authentication is set without combination with NetSpot Accountant or imageWARE Accounting Manager, log-in is impossible. Therefore, department ID management should not be 'ON'. If department ID management is set to 'ON' while using Domain Authentication and log-in becomes impossible, change the log-in service to Default Authentication and turn department ID management to [OFF].
- For combination with NSA / iWAM, it is necessary to set the user with administrative privilege of the domain on the SA service account.
- When the print count and scan count for each department ID needs to be managed in conjunction with Local Device Authentication and department ID management, turn department ID management to [ON]. To use simultaneously Local Device Authentication and department ID management, the information registered with Local Device Authentication should be matched with the user information of department ID management (department ID and password).
- The user information registered by SDL and the one by Local Device Authentication are managed separately in the iR device. The user information registered in one system is not reflected to the other.
- The card reader for optional control card cannot be used for Local Device Authentication. When using the card reader for control card, set SDL.
- Security Agent is necessary only for Domain Authentication.
- Security Agent should be installed on the computer in the domain with iR device installed.
- Installation of Security Agent is included in MEAP Administrator CD-ROM.

Operating Environment

The operation is guaranteed for SDL or SSO if the system environment is in keeping with the following requirements:

SDL (registering/editing user information)

a. Operating System and Supported Browsers

T-11-14

Operating System	Supported browser
Windows 98 SE	Microsoft Internet Explorer 5.5 SP2 Microsoft Internet Explorer 6 SP1

Operating System	Supported browser
Windows 2000 Professional SP3	Microsoft Internet Explorer 5.5 SP2 Microsoft Internet Explorer 6 SP1
Windows XP	Microsoft Internet Explorer 6 Microsoft Internet Explorer 6 SP1

Important:

- If you use Internet Explorer 6 on Windows XP, you will need Java 2 Runtime Environment Standard Edition 1.3.1.

SSO

To use SSO, you must have a Widows server to which Active Directory has been installed as well as Security Agent.

- 1) PC for hosting Security Agent
 - a. Supported OS

T-11-15

Operating System
Microsoft Windows 2000 Professional
Microsoft Windows 2000 Server
Microsoft Windows XP Professional
Microsoft Windows Server 2003



When using SA on WindowXP SP2, it is necessary to exclude Security Agent from the targets of firewall at the setting of the firewall.

- b. Others
 - Access right to Windows 2000 domain Name System (DNS)Access right to domain controller



For combination with NetSpot Accountant / iW Accounting Manager, and department ID management is turned on to use it, it is necessary to set the user with administrative privilege of the domain on the SA service account.

- 2) Client PC (if access from Web browser to MEAP device is desired)

- a. Operating System and Supported Browsers

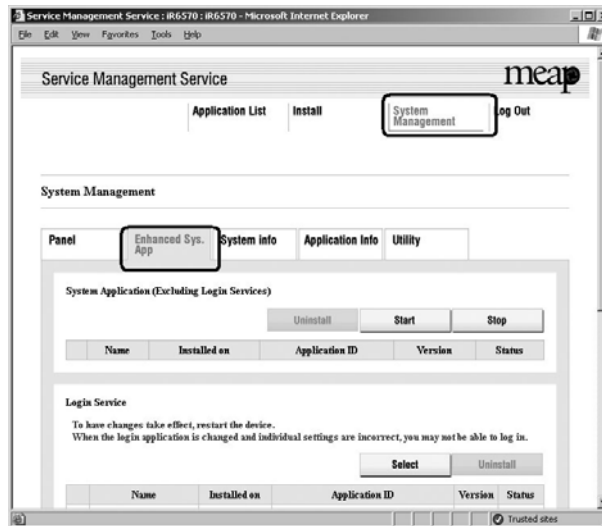
T-11-16

Operating System	Supported Browsers
Windows 98 SE Windows NT Workstation 4.0 SP6a	Microsoft Internet Explorer 5.01 SP2 Microsoft Internet Explorer 5.5 SP2 Microsoft Internet Explorer 6 SP1
Windows ME	Microsoft Internet Explorer 5.5 SP2 Microsoft Internet Explorer 6 SP1
Windows 2000 Professional SP3	Microsoft Internet Explorer 5.01 SP3 Microsoft Internet Explorer 5.5 SP2 Microsoft Internet Explorer 6 SP1
Windows XP Professional	Microsoft Internet Explorer 6 SP1

- b. Others
 - Access right to Windows 2000 Domain Name System (DNS)
 - Access right to Domain Controller Client

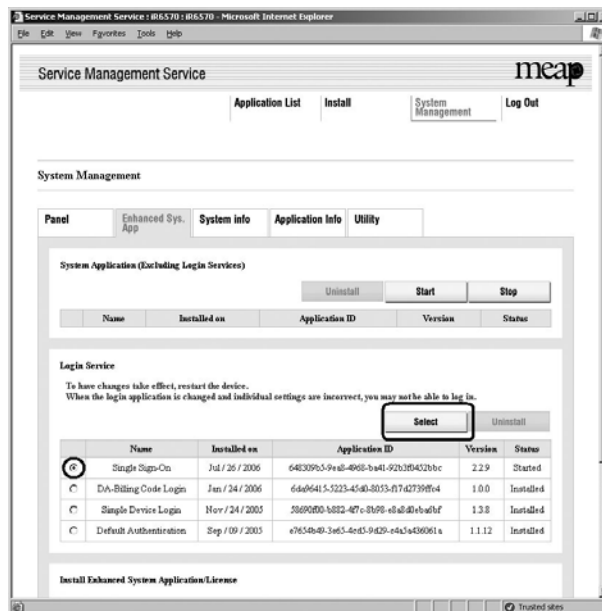
Steps to Change Login Services

- 1) Make the following selections: **System Management > Enhanced Sys. App.**



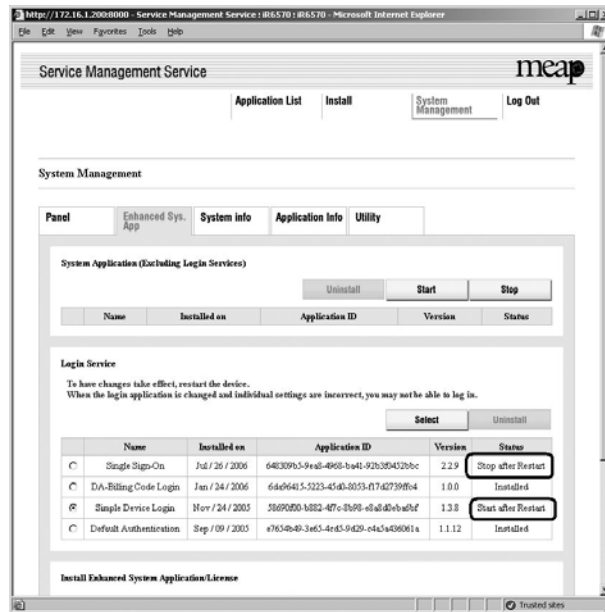
F-11-53

- 2) A page will appear showing the various selections you can make for the login service. Select the radio button of the login service mode you want to use; then, click **Select** button.



F-11-54

- 3) When login service application you have selected turns to **Start after Restart**, turn off the device's main power, and turn it back on after 10 seconds.

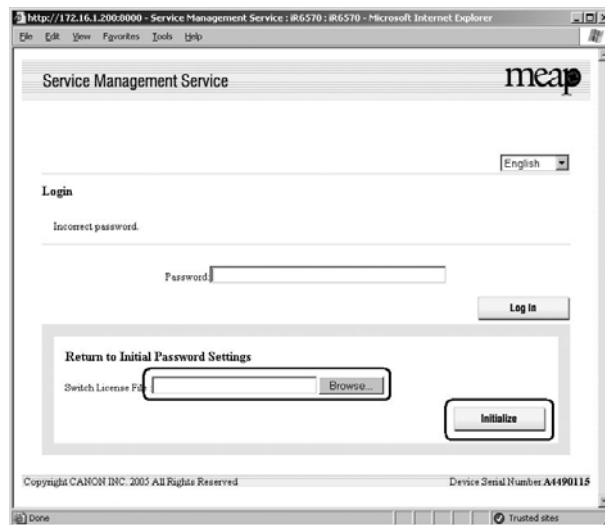


F-11-55

11.1.21 Initializing the Password

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- 1) Get the switch license for initializing the password.
Request the support of the regional headquarters of the Canon for switch license for initializing the password presenting the device serial number.
- 2) Click **Login** button leaving **Password** field blank or entering incorrect password. The Return to install Password Settings area appears. Click **Browse** button and select the switch license file prepared in advance.



F-11-56

- 3) When you click **Initialize** button, the confirmation message appears. Click **OK** button. Then Login page opens. Enter the default password 'MeapSmsLogin' to log in. The password is case-sensitive.
If you click **Cancel** button, the Login page opens without initializing the password.

11.1.22 Creating a Backup for MEAP Application Area, Formatting the Hard Disk, Restoring the MEAP Application Area with the Backup, Using the SST (Service Support Tool)

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

You can back up the area of the HDD where MEAP applications reside to a PC, as when you want to format the HDD. MEAP devices use a license-based mechanism to control applications so that formatting the HDD will necessarily delete the jar files and application data, requiring you to not only reinstall them but also make necessary settings. (Doing so consists in obtaining special license files for reinstallation and downloading user data/settings, increasing your work load.)

If you use the SST's backup function, you will be able to temporarily put aside the area of MEAP applications, thus being free of the foregoing extra work. This function, however, is limited to a specific MEAP device (serial number), and cannot be used for illegal copying of applications.



You must not perform any other work (including checking operation) until the HDD has been backed up. This arrangement is to prevent a mismatch of MEAP counter readings and the HDD contents, and any fault in operation arising as the result of failure to observe this will not be covered by the guarantee of operation.

MEMO:

The application that is installed with a reusable license can be reinstalled by using the same license.

The following list shows the details of area that SST backs up;

Jar files of MEAP applications

Settings set with MEAP applications.

Note that SST does not back up images in Mailboxes that MEAP applications use.

User information data registered with SDL

Requirements for Backup Using the SST

The following conditions must be met for use of the function:

1) Device Firmware Version

T-11-17

	Boot ROM	System	SST
iR2220 Series iR2250 Series	24.42 later	33.01 later	Since Ver 1.81
iR5020 Series iR5160 Series	24.42 later	54.02 later	Since Ver 1.81
Devices other than those listed the above.	Already supported since the 1st version.	Already supported since the 1st version.	The version supporting the corresponding devices.

2) SST Version

Version 1.81 or later. An earlier version will not permit the use of the function. If needed, upgrade the SST.

3) Space for backup

To back up the HDD of the iR, the PC must have approx 300 MB of free space at maximum.

Making a Backup and Formatting Hard Disk Drive with Service Support Tool

- 1) If SDL or SSO is used for the login service, switch to default authentication before backing up the user information. Although SST will back up SDL user information, it is recommended to export the user information just in case. For SDL user information backup, go to User Management page of Simple Device Login site and export the data. (The SDL login page opens with the URL "<http://<device IP address>:8000/sdl/>").



If a hard disk of a system that uses SDL or SSO is formatted without changing the login service to the default authentication, the error message "The login service must be set again with SMS" appears and the system cannot start up when you attempt to restart the system after formatting. If this problem occurs, change the login service to SDL or SSO with SMS. If you cannot access to SMS since you do not have the IP address of the device, start the system with FIXIP mode - hold down the numeric keys 1 and 7 and turn the power switch on. The IP address "172.16.1.100" will be automatically assigned for the device. Then log in to SMS specifying the address.

- 2) While holding down the 2 and 8 buttons, start up the device in download mode.

As in the case of Sramimg.bin, the function is available only when the device is in Download Mode.

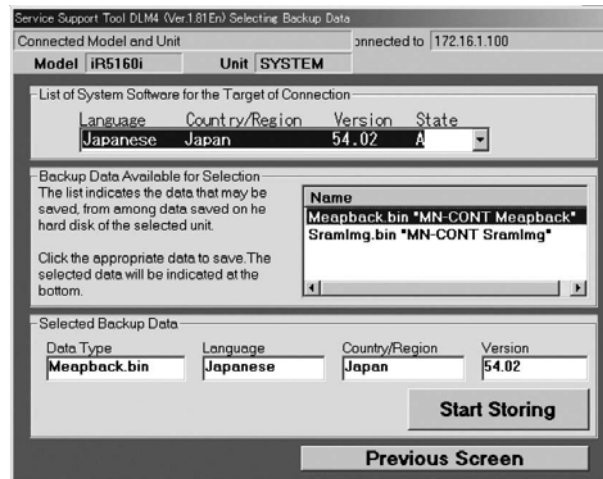
- 3) Connect the PC to the device and start the Service Support Tool.

- 4) In Download/Upload session of SST, select the appropriate device model, System in the tree view, and take necessary steps to connect to the device.

- 5) Click Upload the Backup Data button.

- 6) Click the option "Meapback.bin" from Name list of **Backup Data Available for Selection**, and click **Start Storing** button.

Selecting Meapback.bin



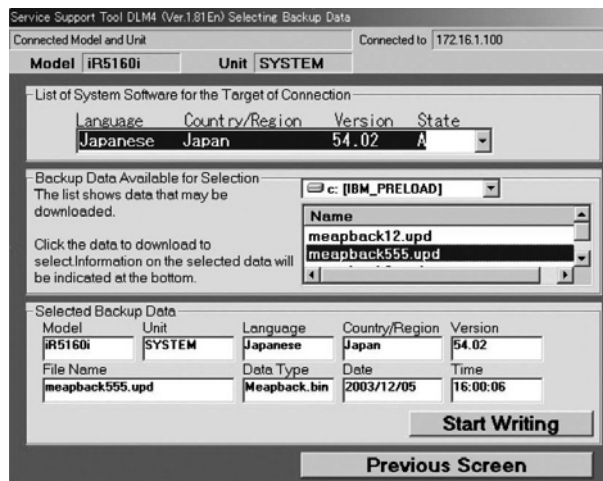
F-11-57

- 7) When the data has been generated, enter an appropriate name in **File name** field and click **Save** button; then, click **OK** button to end the backup session.
- 8) In **Selecting Model/Unit** screen, select **HDF format** and start formatting. All the partitions in the hard disk drive will be formatted.

Restoring the Backup Data

- 1) After formatting the hard disk drive with SST, install the System, MEAP Contents, Language, and Remote UI files.
- 2) To restore the backup "Meapback.bin," click **Download the Backup Data** button.
- 3) Select the backup data file and click **Start Writing** button to download the backup data. Note that SST cannot restore backup data created with a different version.

Selecting Backup Data



F-11-58

- 4) When the screen with OK button appears, the restoration of backup data finishes. Click **OK** button.
- 5) Reboot the main power and access the device with SMS and check that the MEAP applications are restored.
- 6) Restore non-MEAP backup data and settings that are saved before formatting the hard disk drive. The SDL user information is included in the backup data. You do not have to restore it.

11.1.23 Replacing the Hard Disk Drive

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

If you must replace the hard disk drive because of a fault, all MEAP application files stored on it will also be lost, requiring you to re-install the applications and their license files in addition to performing the normal work associated with the replacement of the hard disk.

Like other counter information, MEAP counter information will remain after replacement. Reinstallation of MEAP applications calls for special license files designed to continue with the current counter readings, thus enabling the use of the applications until the date of their expiration. These special licenses are service tools, and are not offered to general users.

If you cannot make a backup of the license files as hard disk suffers a fault, contact the support staff of the regional headquarters of Canon telling the device serial number and the names of MEAP applications installed to the device to obtain the necessary special license files.

In the support departments of regional headquarters of Canon, all license files of the applications that have been issued are filed according to device serial numbers, enabling you to obtain a series of license files through a single screen as long as you can identify the serial number of the device in question.

The following shows the steps to follow after you have obtained a special license from the support staff of the regional headquarters of Canon.

- 1) Copy the set of special license files on the PC you are using for service work.
Register the following with the Service Support Tool (SST): system file, language file, remote UI file, hard disk drive format file, MEAP contents file. (Be sure to pay attention to the version compatibility of individual files.)
- 2) Have the new hard disk drive at hand and replace it on site.
While holding down the 2 and 8 keys at the same time, turn on the main power so that the machine will start up in download mode. The IP address 172.16.1.100 will automatically be used, which enables you to download files in high speed through a network.)
- 3) Using the SST, format the new HDD, and install the System, MEAP Contents, Language, and Remote UI files.
- 4) When the device has started normally, obtain the jar files of the MEAP applications from the user, and install them using the license files of the applications in the same way as you would when installing them for the first time.
- 5) As necessary, make login service selections and import user information.

MEMO:

If you format the hard disk without uninstalling MEAP applications, always reinstall the applications previously installed. Unless reinstalling them, lots for the MEAP counters the applications use will not be released. The message "The number of applications that can be installed has exceeded the limit. Try to install this application after uninstalling other applications." may appear and the device does not accept to install new application. To install new applications, once reinstall the applications installed before formatting and uninstall unnecessary applications.

11.1.24 MEAP Safe Mode

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

Use safe mode if you need to start up the system without worrying about extra applications. It will start up only those system software files (including SMS) that normally start up as default files while preventing MEAP applications and the like from starting up.

When you have made changes and turned off and then on the device, the control panel will indicate 'MPSF' in its lower right corner. The MEAP applications that may have been active before you shut down the equipment will not start up on their own. Make use of safe mode when restoring the system software as when MEAP applications or services cause a fault as the result of a conflict or wrong sequence of registration/use. You can access to SMS in this condition so that you can take necessary measures, for example, you can stop application that may cause the trouble.

If default authentication has been selected, the mode of authentication remains valid; otherwise, the message "The login service must be set again with SMS" appears. Change the login service as necessary.

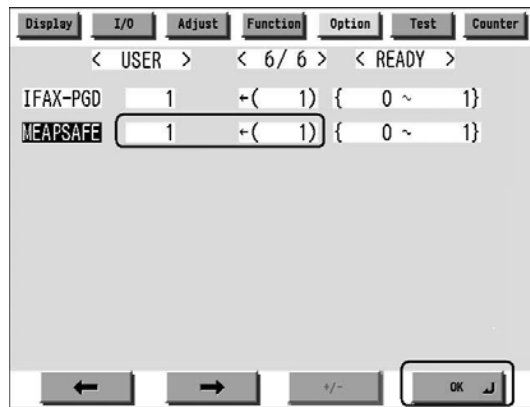
Starting in Safe Mode

- 1) Start the device in service mode: click **Ad Func** key, press 2 and 8 buttons at the same time, and then click **Ad Func** key once again so that the service mode screen appears.
- 2) Press **COPIER** button.
- 3) Press **OPTION** button.
- 4) Press **USER**.
- 5) Press the right-arrow button.
- 6) Press **MEAPSAFE**.



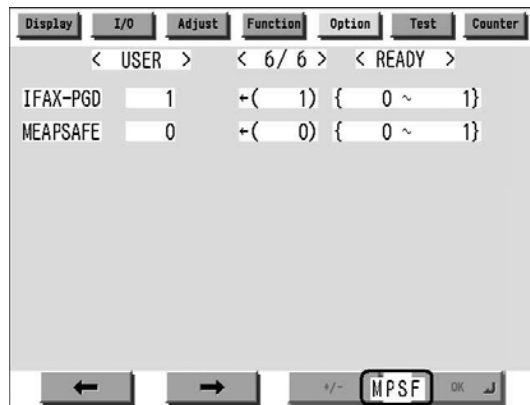
F-11-59

- 7) Press the 1 key on the control panel keypad to change the setting to '1'; then, click **OK** button.



F-11-60

8) Check that the notation 'MPSF' has appeared in the lower right corner of the screen; then, turn off and then on the main power.



F-11-61

If you want to end safe mode, repeat the steps but change '1' to '0' in step -7 and turn off and then on the main power.

11.1.25 Setting HTTP port for MEAP application (level 2)

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

For the ports in which the MEAP application uses, the default is 8000 for the port on HTTP server, and 8443 for the port on HTTPS server. In the case that these ports have already used by the customer who is to introduce this application, the MEAP application cannot use the HTTP (or HTTPS) server(s). By changing the following ports to use, however, the MEAP application can be used as well as the existing system.

HTTP server

Setting value is 0 through 65535 [the value at factory shipment/after clearing RAM: 8000]

HTTPS server

Setting value is 0 through 65535 [the value at factory shipment/after clearing RAM: 8443]

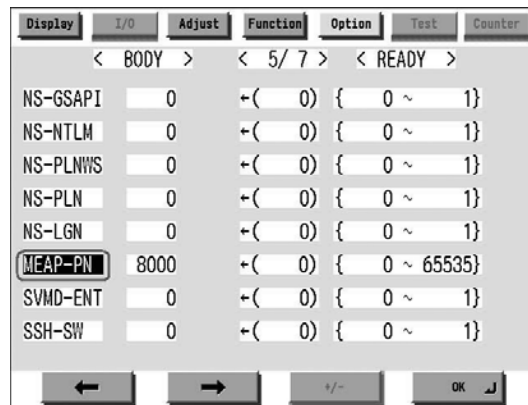
MEMO:

-As for port on HTTPS server, it only applies to the device that supports SSL function.

-Make sure not to use 1 through 1023 other than 80 (HTTP) as a port for MEAP. Because the ports in this range are used by general servers, there is a possibility that the ports in this range will be duplicated in the future.

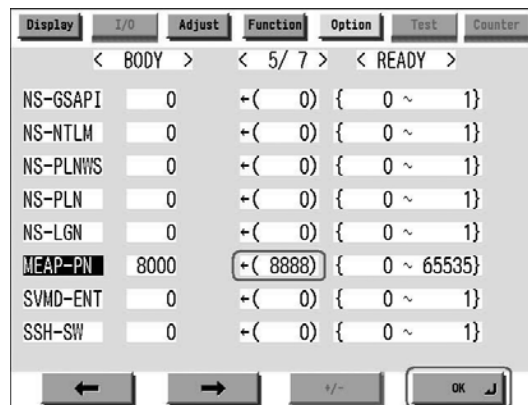
<Setting Procedure of Port on HTTP server>

- 1) Startup [SERVICE MODE] (After pressing [USER MODE] button of MEAP device, press [2] button and [8] button at the same time on control panel. Then by pressing [USER MODE] button again, [SERVICE MODE] screen is displayed).
- 2) Startup level 2 of [SERVICE MODE] (After starting up [SERVICE MODE] in step 1, press [USER MODE] button again. Then, by pressing [2] button on control panel, the screen is displayed.
- 3) Press [COPIER] button.
- 4) Press [Option] button.
- 5) Press [BODY] button.
- 6) Press [-] button.
- 7) Press [MEAP-PN] button.



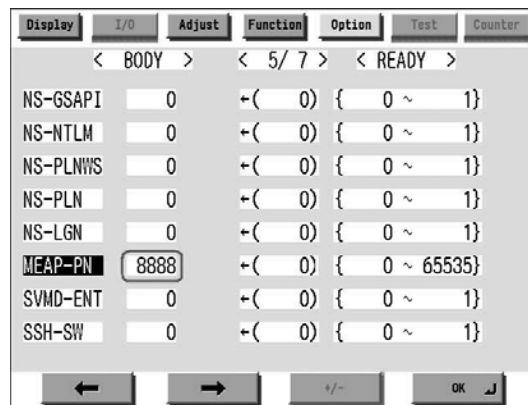
F-11-62

8) Press the port number to specify on the control panel (the numerical value input in the field is displayed), and press [OK] button.



F-11-63

9) Check to see that it is reflected in setting field, and turn off the main power, and then, turn on the main power.



F-11-64

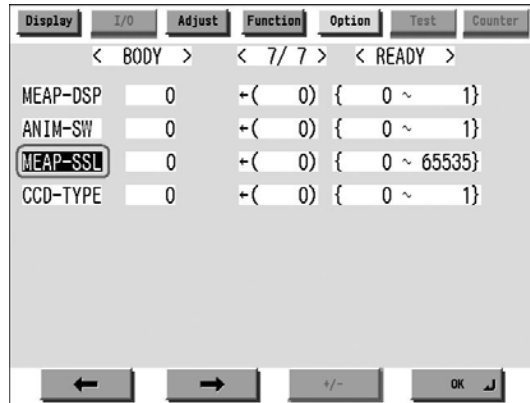
<Setting Procedure of port on HTTPS server>

- 1) Startup [SERVICE MODE] (After pressing [USER MODE] button of MEAP device, press [2] button and [8] button at the same time on control panel. Then by pressing [USER MODE] button again, [SERVICE MODE] screen is displayed).
- 2) Startup level 2 of [SERVICE MODE] (After starting up [SERVICE MODE] in step 1, press [USER MODE] button again. Then, by pressing [2] button on control panel, the screen is displayed).
- 3) Press [COPIER] button.
- 4) Press [Option] button.
- 5) Press [BODY] button.
- 6) Press [←] button.
- 7) Press [MEAP-SSL] button.

<Setting Procedure of port on HTTPS server>

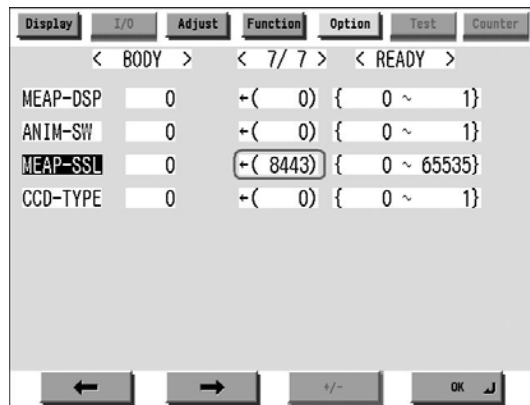
- 1) Startup [SERVICE MODE] (After pressing [USER MODE] button of MEAP device, press [2] button and [8] button at the same time on control panel. Then by pressing [USER MODE] button again, [SERVICE MODE] screen is displayed).
- 2) Startup level 2 of [SERVICE MODE] (After starting up [SERVICE MODE] in step 1, press [USER MODE] button again. Then, by pressing [2] button on control panel, the screen is displayed).

- 3) Press [COPIER] button.
- 4) Press [Option] button.
- 5) Press [BODY] button.
- 6) Press [-] button.
- 7) Press [MEAP-SSL] button.



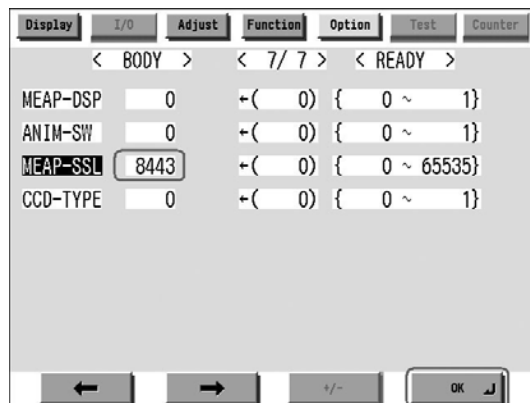
F-11-65

- 8) Press the port number to specify on the control panel (the numerical value input in the field is displayed), and press [OK] button.



F-11-66

- 9) Check to see that it is reflected in setting field, and turn off the main power, and then, turn on the main power.



F-11-67

11.1.26 Reference material

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

Glossary

T-11-18

Terms & Acronyms	Definitions and Explanations
Applet	Applet Type Application. A Type of MEAP application that is designed to display user interface on device control panel.
Application	A software unit that provides a solution to users.
Application ID	A unique identifier assigned to each application. Used for indicating memory usage of the application in the MEAP system.
ASP	Application Service Provider. A business to provide the application service on Internet.
AVS	Applet Viewer Service. One of the MEAP system services that shows the user interface of the current applet type service on the console.
Code Sign	To attach Digital Signature to software code. MEAP has the mechanism to reject MEAP application without Code Sign for security reason.
CPCA	Common Peripheral Controlling Architecture. CPCA defines an object model of peripheral devices. A client can control a device by creating or modifying objects in the device.
CPCA Java CL	CPCA Java Class Library. A Java class library, which is used to control a device.
Default Authentication - Department ID Management	The login service used when the department ID control is used but other authentication controls are not used. When the Department ID control is turned on, the login dialog prompts the users to enter the department ID and password. The dialog appears the initial screen of both the control panel on the MEAP device and Remote UI
Device Specification ID	ID assigned for each device model. It shows the usage of functions that are equipped by MFP, as well as CPCA API specification and version numbers that is necessary for acquiring the values such as maximum number of copies, etc.
DIS	Dynamic Service Loading Installer Service. Receives data from the DSL on the MEAP platform. Enables an application to install to two or more devices.
DSL	Dynamic Service Loading. While the SMS installs a license file and application to one device, the DSL can install them to two or more devices. It consists of MEAP ESM and the DIS.
Esplet	Esplet Type Application. A type of MEAP application that does not have a user interface on the device console or on the web browser. The term of "Esplet" is a coinage by Canon inspired from Applet, Servlet, and "Espresso".
File descriptor	With a file descriptor, an OS identifies the files that a program accesses. The file descriptor includes information such as file name and size as well as the identifier. An OS determines files to operate with the identifier.
iR Native Application	The functionalities that existing imageRUNNER has such as Copy, Universal Send and Mailbox.
ISV	Independent Software Vender. Software manufacturer who develops and/or sells applications and tools but does not entire computer systems. Refers application developer in this document.
J2ME	Java 2 Platform Micro Edition. One of Java Platforms licensed by Sun Microsystems, Inc. It is applied for MEAP. Other devices such as cellular phones and PDA.
Java	A programming language developed by Sun Microsystems, in the U. S. A. Low dependent on models and OSES and runs on various platforms. Taking advantage of this feature, many applications that runs on web servers uses Java. The MEAP platform uses J2ME - a type of Java.
Java Script	A script language developed by Netscape Communications, in the U.S. A., runs on web browsers such as Netscape Navigator and Internet Explorer. Allows web designers to create interactive pages with HTML files such as animated buttons and display of timetables.
Java VM	JAVA Virtual Machine. The Java byte code interpreter. The Virtual Machine acts as an interpreter for processing the byte code using the native instruction set.
License Access Number	A number issued for accessing license file. The Licensing server requires entries of application ID, expiration date/times information, and the number of access numbers, to issue license access numbers.
License File	A software manufacture of a MEAP application provides the users with the license files. Specifies the terms of agreement that a user concludes with the manufacturer. Required for installing a MEAP application.
Login Service	Manages user information of MEAP device. Authenticates users with user names and passwords. Three login services are available for MEAP device - Default Authentication, which provides department ID control, SDL (Simple Device Login) and SSO (Single Sign-On).
MEAP	Multifunctional Embedded Application Platform. Provides an environment for executing application programs on a peripheral device. Uses the Java platform (J2ME - Java 2 platform Micro Edition) to run Java application for MEAP.
MEAP AMS	MEAP Application Management System. The license issuing server that issues "License File" necessary for MEAP applications to be installed onto MEAP device. Also used for issuing the "License Access Number".
MEAP Application	Runs on MEAP platform. Consists of application files (*.jar) and the license file (*.lic).
MEAP Contents	Required to install an MEAP application to a MEAP device.
MEAP ESM	MEAP Enterprise Service Manager. One of software programs composing the DSL, to be installed on a PC in a Windows environment. Works as the interface with the DSL.
MEAP Specifications	MEAP Spec Version, the term used for the SDK. The version number that shows the APIs of the MEAP platform other than CPCA, such as network and security. The version number is not assigned for each device model.
MEAP device	imageRUNNER (iR) device that has MEAP Platform incorporated.

Terms & Acronyms	Definitions and Explanations
MFP	Multi Function Peripheral. Peripheral device that supports more than one function, such as digital copier, printer, scanner, and fax.
OSGi	Open Service Gateway Initiative. See " http://www.osgi.org/ ".
Portal Service	The service displayed on a Web browser by inputting the address " <a href="http://<device IP address>:8000/">http://<device IP address>:8000/ " or " <a href="http://<device IP address>/">http://<device IP address>/ " A portal to access a MEAP device from a Web browser.
Proxy Server	Provides functions to store data fetched from remote servers. When a user request to display a web page that has been displayed and stored in the proxy, the proxy server read the stored data but does not access the remote server where the original page is present, for efficient access services. When a proxy server receives a URL from a PC, it searches the file in the cache and sends it to the PC if the requested file is found. If the requested file is not stored in the cache, it accesses the remote server of the URL to acquire the file and, at the same time, stores the acquired file in the cache so that the proxy server can quickly send the file at the next request.

Detail of License File

LicenseFile-Version: 1	
LicenseFile-Id: f6489a8c-8c7e-4d74-bd12-b031ea6a62a5	License File ID
Application-Id: e92b0b91-7c42-45b1-96b3-295d5d1b5877	Application ID
Serial-No: XYZ00123	Serial No
Validated-Period: 100	Validated Period
MaximumBWScan1: 1000, stop	Counter information
MaximumBWScan2: 900, stop	
MaximumBWScan3: 800, stop	
MaximumBWScan4: 700, stop	
MaximumPrintedImpressions: 1000, stop	
MaximumPrintedImpressions-BW: 800, stop	
MaximumPrintedImpressions-BW-Large: 200, stop	
MaximumPrintedImpressions-BW-Small: 600, stop	
MaximumScannedImpressions: 2000, stop	
MaximumScannedImpressions-BW: 1200, stop	
IxQvZ/A8O0aDsUBdMeu5XrxqIsqLzq7JAjHAD/ZMnNxVMsR7RGcuI2c6RRdU7mlW ht2VF8LA3SH6n4kxvZYmEQZ8pBhu67wliysAJ0gHS016WsMqX6WI5ZAQeD8TZnnf 344VXYG4	

F-11-68

11.1.27 Option for exclusive individual measure

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

-Display Setting of Copy Tab

Make a setting as to whether to display/hide the copy screen (copy tab) on the control panel. This is the specification for users who want to customize hiding it on control panel.

Default value

1: display

Setting range, item

0: hide 1: display

Setting Procedure

1) Startup [SERVICE MODE] (After pressing [USER MODE] button of MEAP device, press [2] button and [8] button at the same time on control panel. Then by pressing [USER MODE] button again, [SERVICE MODE] screen is displayed).

2) Press [COPIER] button.

3) Press [Option] button.

4) Press [BODY] button.

- 5) Press [←]or[→] (arrow) button.
- 6) Press [UI-COPY] button.
- 7) Press either 0 (hide) or 1 (display) on control panel (the numerical value input in the field is displayed), and press [OK] button.
- 8) Check to see that it is reflected in setting field, and turn off the main power, and then, turn on the main power.

-Error at starting up the MEAP application/Setting to hide JAM screen (level 2)

In the case that operation is restricted by MEAP application, hide the warning screen of error/JAM (such as JAM screen, door opening, no-toner). In the case that these errors occur, there will be a display indicating 'call the service personnel' etc.

MEMO:

Part of the warning screens is displayed if shifting to the device screen.

- As for the screens for jam and no-toner, the warning screen (animation) can be displayed by pressing the followings: [Device Screen] > [Recovery Procedure]
 - As for the screen for door opening, the warning screen cannot be displayed because there is no display for [[Device Screen] > [Recovery Procedure]
-

Default value

1: No activation of warning display

Setting range, item

0: display warning screen 1: hide warning screen

Setting Procedure

- 1) Startup [SERVICE MODE] (After pressing [USER MODE] button of MEAP device, press [2] button and [8] button at the same time on control panel. Then by pressing [USER MODE] button again, [SERVICE MODE] screen is displayed).
- 2) Startup level 2 of [SERVICE MODE] (After starting up [SERVICE MODE] in step 1, press [USER MODE] button again. Then, by pressing [2] button on control panel, the screen is displayed.
- 3) Press [COPIER] button.
- 4) Press [Option] button.
- 5) Press [BODY] button.
- 6) Press [←]or[→] button.
- 7) Press [ANIM-SW] button.
- 8) Press either 0 (display warning screen) or 1 (hide warning screen) on control panel (the numerical value input in the field is displayed), and press [OK] button.
- 9) Check to see that it is reflected in setting field, and turn off the main power, and then, turn on the main power.

-Setting of Screen Transition from MEAP Screen to the Standard Screen

In the case that the operation is restricted by MEAP application, make a setting to hide Native applications such as Copy/Send/Box. With this setting, disable screen transition with => key.

Default value

0: OFF (transit to Native screen)

Setting range, item

0: OFF (transit to Native screen) 1: ON (No-transition to Native screen)

Setting Procedure

- 1) Startup [SERVICE MODE] (After pressing [USER MODE] button of MEAP device, press [2] button and [8] button at the same time on control panel. Then, by pressing [USER MODE] button again, [SERVICE MODE] screen is displayed).
- 2) Startup level 2 of [SERVICE MODE] (After starting up [SERVICE MODE] in step 1, press [USER MODE] button again. Then, by pressing [2] button on control panel, the screen is displayed.
- 3) Press [COPIER] button.
- 4) Press [Option] button.
- 5) Press [BODY] button.
- 6) Press [←] (arrow) button.

- 7) Press [ANIM-DSP] button.
- 8) Press either 0 (transit to Native screen) or 1 (no-transition to Native screen) on control panel (the numerical value input in the field is displayed), and press [OK] button.
- 9) Check to see that it is reflected in setting field, and turn off the main power, and then, turn on the main power.

Chapter 12 RDS

Contents

12.1 RDS.....	12-1
12.1.1 Application operation mode.....	12-1
12.1.2 Service Center URL and Port Specification.....	12-1
12.1.3 Communication test.....	12-1
12.1.4 Communication log.....	12-1
12.1.5 Detailed Communication log.....	12-1
12.1.6 SOAP communication function.....	12-1
12.1.7 Resend at SOAP transmission error.....	12-2
12.1.8 e-RDS setting screen.....	12-2
12.1.9 Sleep operation.....	12-5
12.1.10 Network Setting (Maintenance).....	12-5
12.1.11 e-RDS Setting (Maintenance).....	12-5
12.1.12 Trouble shoot.....	12-6
12.1.13 Error message.....	12-6

12.1 RDS

12.1.1 Application operation mode

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

Serviceman selects the operation mode of OFF/ON by the setting in e-RDS setting screen of the service mode. (Menu Screen: E-RDS)

- OFF (default): e-RDS doesn't operate.
- ON: e-RDS operates every function.

12.1.2 Service Center URL and Port Specification

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

The URL and the port number of the equipment information destination can be specified as follows.

- Default (specified beforehand)
- Specified by the service mode. (Menu Screen: RGW-ADR, RGW-PORT)

12.1.3 Communication test

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

Serviceman can distinguish the communication status with the UGW by executing the communication test in the service mode (Menu Screen: COM-TEST), and referring to the communication log

Error information is displayed in the latest communication log at communication error.

12.1.4 Communication log

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

The list of the log of the communication error (proxy server error etc.)(For 30) can be displayed in display panel in the service mode. (Menu Screen: COM-LOG)

12.1.5 Detailed Communication log

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

Detailed information of the error in the communication log can be displayed in display panel. (Log List Screen: Each error)

12.1.6 SOAP communication function

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

The following processing is achieved by the SOAP communication (SSL client communication).

e-RDS does the host authentication by using the CA*1 certificate of the VeriSign Co..

When the host certificate or the CA certificate is expired, e-RDS doesn't connect to UGW.

*1: CA: Certificate Authority: Organization that issues electronic certificate used by electronic commerce etc

- (1) Communication test:
 - Do the communication test
- (2) Regularly collect the following data, and transmit it.
 - Copy Counter
 - Service mode counter
 - Parts counter
 - Mode Counter
 - ROM version
 - Scheduling information
 - Application log
- (3) When jam or alarm/service call error is detected from the device, e-RDS transmits to UGW.
 - Transmission of alert code(Counter information is transmitted at the same time.)
 - When the state of the device changes, e-RDS sends the alert code list.
 - The main alert codes used are Toner LOW/OUT, Jam, and Door open.
 - When recovering from an error, e-RDS transmits data that shows the recovering from an error again.
 - Transmission of Jam log (Counter information is transmitted at the same time.)
 - Transmission of Alarm log (Counter information is transmitted at the same time.)
 - Transmission of Service Call (Error code) log (Counter information is transmitted at the same time.)
- (4) Change of the device scheduling information
 - Scheduling information can be changed by the instruction from UGW.

List of Transmissions:

Content of transmission	Transmission timing
Communication test	When Service mode of device is executed
Copy counter collection/transmission	Every 6 hours
Service mode counter collection/transmission	Every 6 hours
Mode counter collection/transmission	Every 6 hours
Parts counter collection/transmission	Every 6 hours
ROM version transmission	Every 6 hours
Application log	When the log file size exceeds 10kbytes
Transmission of alert code	When the state of the device is changed.
Jam	When Jam occurs
Alarm	When Alarm occurs
Error	When Error occurs
Confirmation whether there is processing that e-RDS executes	Every 6 hours

12.1.7 Resend at SOAP transmission error

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

When SOAP send error is generated by the trouble on UGW side etc. at the transmission of an alert code, the latest three batches of data that failed in the transmission are stored in HDD, and e-RDS resends it at prescribed intervals.

12.1.8 e-RDS setting screen

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

The e-RDS setting screen is in the service mode screen.

When the tab above is selected on any e-RDS setting screen, it changes to the mid item screen. Moreover, it returns to previous screen when reset key is pressed.

Menu Screen

Display	I/O	Adjust	Function	Option	Test	Counter
<INSTALL >		< 1/ 1 >		< READY >		
TONER-S	<input type="text"/>					
STRD-POS	<input type="text"/>					
CARD	0	←(0)	{ 1 ~ 2001}			
E-RDS	0	←(0)	{ 0 ~ 1}			
RGW-PORT	443	←(443)	{ 1 ~ 65535}			
COM-TEST	<input type="text"/>					
COM-LOG	<input type="text"/>					
RGW-ADR	https://a01.ugwdevice.net/ugw/agenti					
←		→		+/-		OK ↵

F-12-1

Setting screen of e-RDS. The form and the initial value of each setting item are as follows.

Item(meaning)	Explanation
E-RDS (Embedded-RDS)	Turning OFF/ON e-RDS. 0:OFF / 1:ON Counter information and error information are transmitted to the host at ON. Initial value: 0: OFF
RGW-ADR (RDS-Gateway ADDRESS)	URL of the host (When the input area is selected (touched), shift to the keyboard screen) Initial value: URL of an actual host. Length: 129 characters (NULL is contained)
RGW-PORT (RDS-Gateway PORT)	Port Number of the host Initial value: 443 Range of available number: 1-65535
COM-TEST (Communication Test)	Execution of Communication test Communication test starts when you select (touch) this and press the [OK] key. e-RDS tries the connection with the host, and displays the result by "OK!" or "NG!". (NG: No Good, the communication test is failed)
COM-LOG (Communication Log)	The result of communication test When this is selected (touched), and the blank rectangle on right side is selected, it switches to "Log list screen".

Log list screen

Display						I/O		Adjust		Function		Option		Test		Counter	
<COM-TEST>						< 1 / 4 >		< READY >									
No.	DATE	TIME	CODE	Information													
01	2005 0129	1837	0500 0003	SUSPEND: Communicati													
02	2005 0129	1836	0500 0003	SUSPEND: Communicati													
03	2005 0129	1806	0500 0003	SUSPEND: Communicati													
04	2005 0129	1805	0500 0003	SUSPEND: Communicati													
05	2005 0129	1758	8000 2046	*Server certificate													
06	2005 0129	1750	0500 0003	SUSPEND: Communicati													
07	2005 0129	1743	0500 0003	SUSPEND: Communicati													
08	2005 0129	1722	0500 0003	SUSPEND: Communicati													
←		→		+/-		OK ↵											

F-12-2

History list of communication test error (error generation date, error code and error information) is displayed.

When the each line is selected (touched), it shifts to "Log detailed screen".

It shifts to "Menu screen" by the [Function] > [INSTALL].

The list screen changes by a right arrow or a left arrow.

Maximum log number: 30

Notes: Only the first part of error information is displayed.

Log detailed screen



F-12-3

Detailed information of individual communication test error is displayed.
 Refer to the displayed message to "Error message list".
 It shifts to "Log list screen" by the [OK] button pressing.
 Maximum length of error information: 128 characters (not include NULL)

12.1.9 Sleep operation

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

When there is a method that should be transmitted while e-RDS is operating (ON), e-RDS wakes from the state of sleep and begins transmitting.

12.1.10 Network Setting (Maintenance)

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

You should do the network setting of Device appropriately before the e-RDS setting.

- A. Display the Additional Functions screen.
 - Press [Additional Functions (*)] key.
 - Input ID code.
- B. Display the TCP/IP Settings screen.
 - Select (touch) [System Settings] > [Network Settings] > [TCP/IP Settings] on the Touch Panel Display.
- C. Setting of items related to IP address
 - Select (touch) [IP Address Settings] => IP Address Settings screen is displayed.
 - Set each items such as IP Address, Subnet Mask, Gateway Addresses, and DHCP, etc.
 - Return to the TCP/IP Settings screen by pushing the [OK] button after the setting ends.
- D. DNS Settings
 - Select (touch) [DNS Settings] => DNS Settings screen is displayed.
 - Set necessary items.
 - Return to the TCP/IP Settings screen by pushing the [OK] button after the setting ends.
- E. Proxy Settings
 - Select (touch) [Proxy Settings] (Press Down arrow button until [Proxy Settings] is displayed on the TCP/IP Settings screen.) => Proxy Settings screen is displayed.
 - Set necessary items.
 - Return to the TCP/IP Settings screen by pushing the [OK] button after the setting ends.
- F. Display the normal screen.
 - Press [Additional Functions (*)] key pressing or press [Done] button to a necessary frequency.

12.1.11 e-RDS Setting (Maintenance)

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

A. Display the Menu screen of e-RDS from the service mode.

A-1. Shift to the service mode

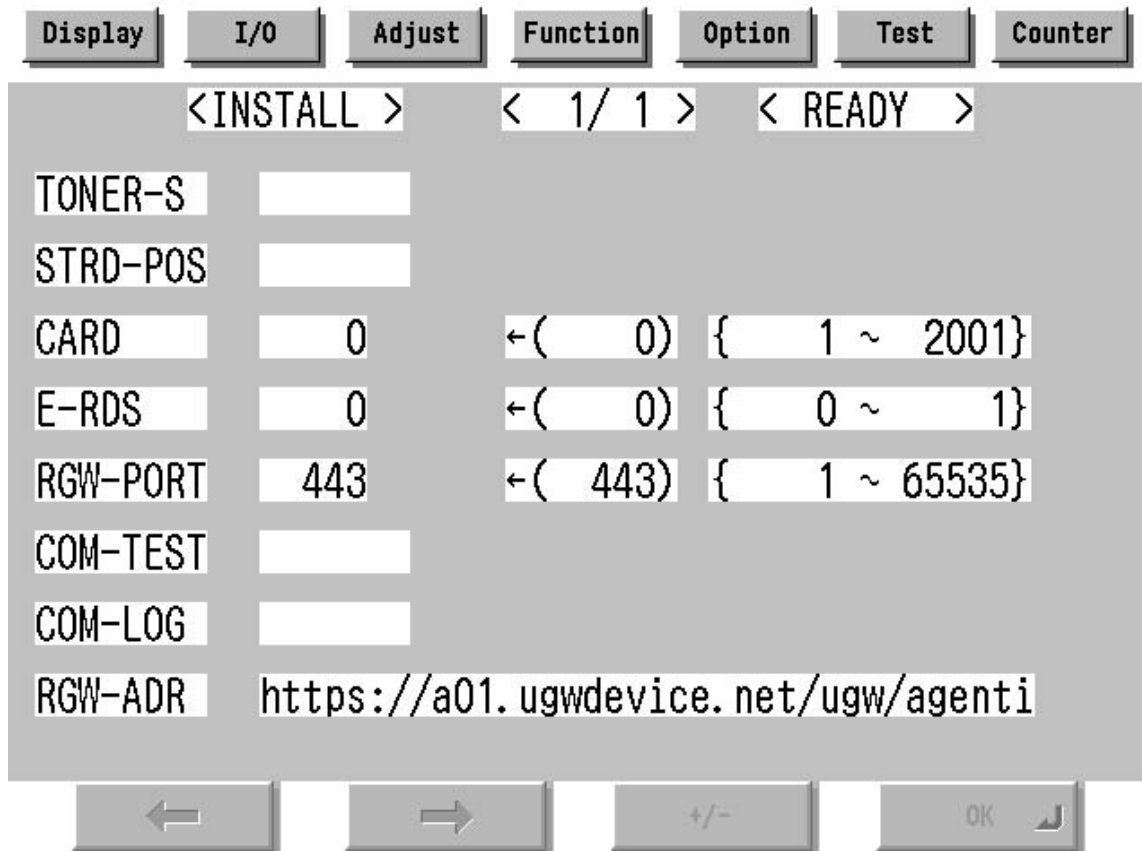
- Press [Additional Functions (*)] key.
- Press 2 and 8 of the numeric keys at the same time.
- Press [Additional Functions (*)] key. => SERVICE MODE LEVEL1

A-2. Initialize e-RDS

- Select (touch) [COPIER] > [Function] > [CLEAR] > [ERDS-DAT] on the Touch Panel Display.

A-3. Display Menu screen of e-RDS

- Select (touch) [COPIER] > [Function] > [INSTALL] => Menu screen



F-12-4

B. Set 1 in [E-RDS].

C. Input the URL of UGW in [RGW-ADR]. (Select the input area to shift to the keyboard screen, and Input URL.)

D. Input the port number of UGW in [RGW-PORT].

E. Select [COM-TEST] and push [OK] button to start the communication test with UGW.

F. While the result is "NG!", repeat to correct the setting and try [COM-TEST] until the result becomes "OK!". You need checking the setting of the network of the device and the connection of the network if necessary.

Notes: In the environment with the proxy server, you should set the proxy server. Refer to the proxy setting in the network guide of the device for details.

12.1.12 Trouble shoot

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

1-1

Q. There is no setting item.

A. Confirm the network setting.
Confirm the model

1-2

Q. The communication test fails.

A. Confirm the firmware version.
Confirm the network setting.
Confirm the communication test result.

12.1.13 Error message

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

Error information displayed in "Log list screen" or "Log detailed screen" is as follows.

Notes: Only the first part of error information is displayed in "Log list screen". Maximum length of error information in "Log detailed screen": 128 characters (not include NULL)

When the communication test is not completed end e-RDS is 1 (ON), following string is displayed:
 "SUSPEND: Communication test is not performed."

Moreover, when it fails in the event waiting in the device and either of a Jam notification, an Alarm notification, and a Service call notification or an Alert notification is specified, following string is displayed.

"Event Registration is Failed."

In other cases error information is displayed in the form of the following.

"[*] [Error string]: [Method name] [Server side detailed error]"

The enclosed character string by [] is replaced as follows.

[*]:

*(asterisk) is added to the head of the string only at the communication test.

[Error string]:

As for number 1 and 2 of the following Error string lists, only the Error string is displayed. Besides, it is displayed as "[*] [Error string]: [Method name] [Server side detailed error]". ([Server side detailed error] might not go out.)

	Error string	Cause	Counter Measure
1	SUSPEND: Communication test is not performed	The e-RDS is started (the device is rebooted) when e-RDS is ON and communication test isn't done.	Complete the communication test.
2	Event Registration is Failed.	The device failed event processing.	Turn OFF/ON of the device main switch. Or, replace the system software of the device (upgrade).
3	URL Scheme error (not https)	The header of registered URL of UGW is not https.	Change the header on URL of UGW to https
4	Server connection error	Communication failure of TCP/IP occurred. Or IP address of the device isn't set.	Check the network connection.
5	URL server specified is illegal	Illegal URL (other than UGW) is specified.	Correct URL.
6	Proxy connection error	The e-RDS cannot connect it with the proxy server.	Check and correct the proxy server address etc.
7	Proxy authentication error	The e-RDS fails the authentication to proxy.	Check and correct username and password to log in proxy.
8	Server certificate error	- The certificate is not installed in The device. - The certificate that The user is using is not registered in The device or The server.	Register the root certificate in the device or register the VeriSign certificate in the server.
9	Server certificate expired	- Expired certificate is registered in the device or the server. - The date of the device is outside the time limit of the certificate.	- Register the root certificate in expiration date in the device or register the VeriSign certificate in the server. - Set an accurate date to the device.
10	Unknown error	Other communication error occurs.	After waiting for a while, try again.
11	Server response error (NULL)	UGW returns the error but communication to UGW is succeeded. If (NULL) is displayed after the message, the error occurs in the HTTPS communication.	After waiting for a while, try again.
12	Server response error (Hexadecimal)	UGW returns the error but communication to UGW is succeeded. (Hexadecimal) displayed after the message is error code that UGW returns. [server side detailed error] is added at the end of error information only at this error.	After waiting for a while, try again.
13	Device internal error	Device internal error such as the memory cannot be taken occurs.	Turn OFF/ON of the device main switch. Or, replace the system software of the device (upgrade).

	Error string	Cause	Counter Measure
14	Server schedule is invalid	The schedule setting value given by UGW is found faulty at the time of communication test.	Report the detailed information of error occurrence to the support department. After the remedy by UGW, retry the communication test.
15	Server response time out	There was no reply from UGW in predetermined time. (The congestion of the network etc.) It is the timeout at HTTPS level.	After waiting for a while, try again.
16	Service not found	The URL of UGW is illegal, and UGW is inaccessible.	Check and correct the URL of UGW.
17	E-RDS switch is set OFF	You execute the communication test while the E-RDS switch is OFF.	Turn ON E-RDS switch, and execute the communication test.
18	Server schedule is not exist	The e-RDS receives empty schedule data from UGW.	Check setting file. (Call the help desk of UGW.)
19	Network is not ready, try later	You execute the communication when the connection to the network has not been established. (The network connection might not be established from the start-up of the device for 60 seconds.)	Confirm that the network connection has been established. Moreover, execute again after enough waiting.
20	URL error	Illegal URL (Syntax error etc.)	Correct URL.

T-12-1

[Method name]:

	Method name	Meaning
1	postServiceModeCount	Account counter acquisition phase
2	postModeCount	Mode counter acquisition phase
3	postPartsCount	Parts counter acquisition phase
4	postFirmwareInfo	ROM version acquisition phase
5	getOperationList	Check/acquisition phase whether the information file for me is in UGW.
6	postOperationOutcome	
7	postConfiguration	Phase in which E-RDS configuration is transmitted to UGW
8	postGlobalClickCount	Counter acquisition phase
9	postJamLog	Jam notification acquisition phase
10	postServiceCallLog	Error notification acquisition phase
11	postAlert	Alert notification acquisition phase
12	postDebugLog	Log acquisition phase
13	getConfiguration	Information acquisition phase (Schedule transmission etc.)
14	communicationTest	Communication test phase

[Server side detailed error]:

Detailed error information returned from UGW is displayed for "Server response error".
However, only the first 128 characters are displayed by the entire error information.
Nothing is displayed here at other errors.

Chapter 13 Operator Maintenance

Contents

13.1 Outline	13-1
13.1.1 Operator Maintenance	13-1
13.2 Operator Maintenance Mode	13-1
13.2.1 Overview	13-1
13.2.2 Type of Mode	13-1
13.2.3 Function	13-3
13.3 Installation	13-3
13.3.1 Installation Procedure (Operator maintenance mode for Main machine UI)	13-3
13.3.2 Installation Procedure (Operator maintenance mode for imagePRESS Server)	13-5
13.4 Maintenance	13-10
13.4.1 Overview	13-10
13.4.2 Items for Replacement/Cleaning_Drum	13-10
13.4.3 Items for Replacement/Cleaning_Transfer	13-13
13.4.4 Item for Replacement/Cleaning_Fixing	13-15
13.4.5 Items for Replacement/Cleaning_Filter	13-17
13.4.6 Item for Replacement/Cleaning_Others (Separation pad, etc.)	13-18
13.4.7 Item for Replacement/Cleaning_Test Print ID Table	13-19
13.4.8 Operation Flow for Operator (Normal Operation)	13-20
13.4.9 Operation Flow for Operator (Troubleshooting)	13-21

13.1 Outline

13.1.1 Operator Maintenance

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

The operator maintenance means some parts of replacement of the periodically replaced parts/durables and consumables, maintenance such as cleaning, and image adjustment performed by the user that have been conventionally performed by the service technician at the user's site. The operator maintenance allows the user to perform maintenance and image adjustment without the need for the visit of the service technician to the user's site, resulting in the reduced downtime of the machine. It also enables periodic maintenance that achieves improved image quality of the outputs and ensures safety.

<Operator Maintenance Work>

Operator maintenance work includes the following works in addition to the general user's work.

- Replacement of periodical replaced/consumable (ORP*) parts
- Cleaning work
- Troubleshooting work

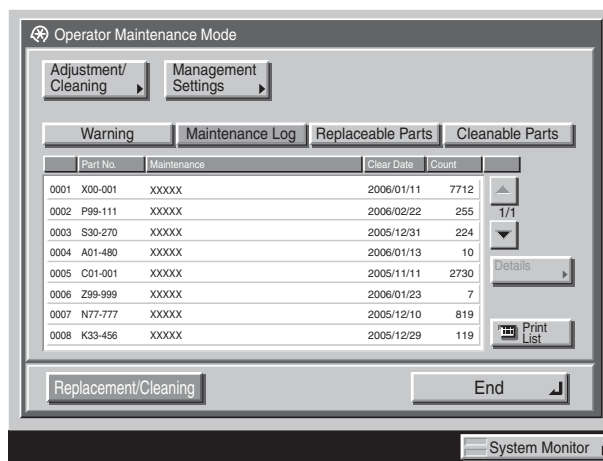
* Operator Replaceable Parts

13.2 Operator Maintenance Mode

13.2.1 Overview

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

This mode assists the operator for correct operator maintenance.

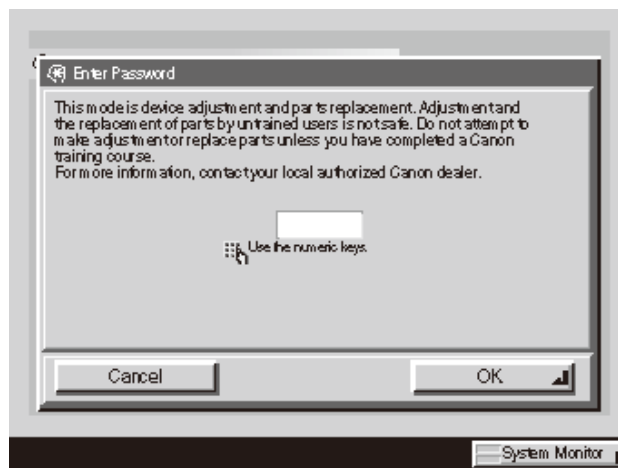


F-13-1
T-13-1

MEMO:

A password is necessary for login to the operator maintenance mode.

The initial password will be given only to an operator who participated in the training of the operator maintenance and whose technique has been certified. The password can be changed in the operator maintenance mode.



13.2.2 Type of Mode

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

There are two types of operator maintenance mode; the one for LUI displayed on the control panel of the machine, and the one for the imagePRESS Server XXXX*1 (hereinafter referred as image PRESS Server) displayed at the time of installing the imagePRESS Server.


(The exclusive control is applied to the operator maintenance modes for LUI and imagePRESS Server, both of which cannot be displayed at the same time.)
 In order to display the operator maintenance, set '1' in the following service mode setting to enable the operator maintenance mode.

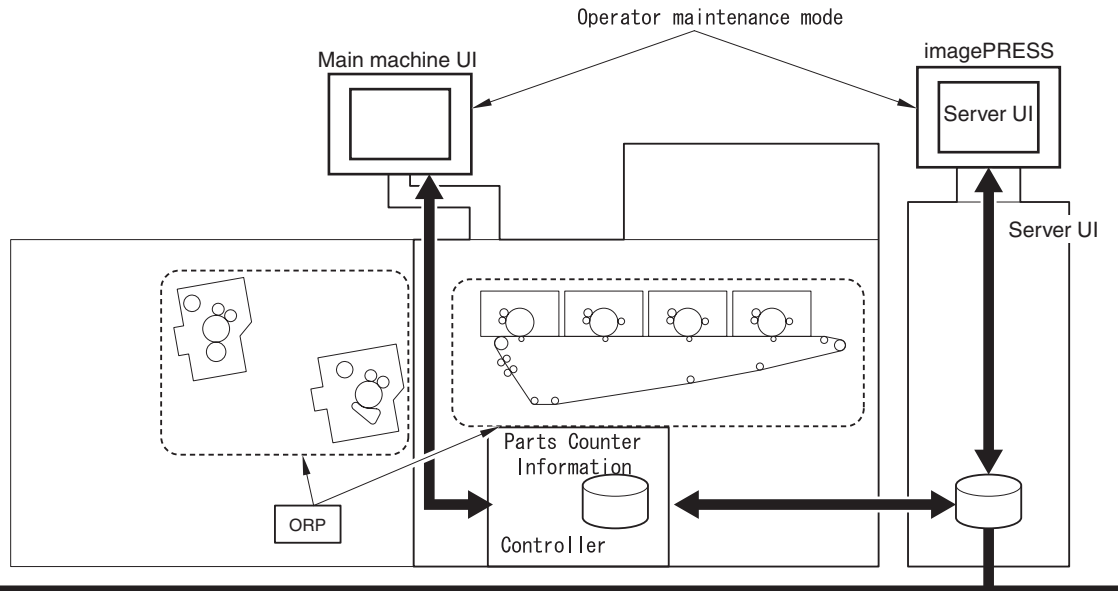
COPIER > OPTION > BODY > OPEMANT (level 2)

* For other setting information, see 'Installation Procedure'.

*1 The name varies between models

T-13-2

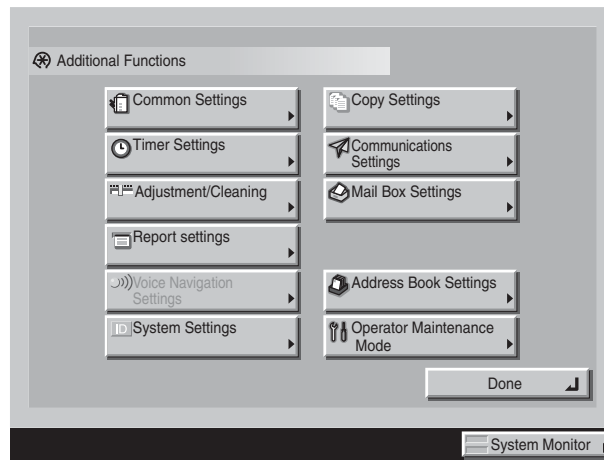
 The counter value displayed on the operator maintenance mode and the data of mechanical system such as parts display setting are all displayed the value saved on the controller of the machine. The same data of the mechanical system is used irrespective of either for LUI or for the external controller.



F-13-2

Operator maintenance mode (for Main Machine UI)

Enter the operator maintenance mode for Main Machine UI in Additional Function > Operator maintenance mode.




F-13-3

Operator maintenance mode (for imagePRESS Server)

To start the operator maintenance mode for the imagePRESS Server, select [Program] > [Canon OM App] > [Start OM App] in the Windows [Start] menu to start the boot screen, and hold down [Display].

T-13-3

 The application for the operator maintenance has not been installed in the imagePRESS Server. To display the screen of the operator maintenance for the imagePRESS Server, the service technician should install the application for the operator maintenance to the imagePRESS Server at the time of the installation. (For the details of operations, see 'Installation'.)



F-13-4

13.2.3 Function

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

The operator maintenance mode contains the following functions, some of which are only for the operator maintenance for the external controller. (See the following table. The details are described in the operator maintenance manual.)

T-13-4

Function	Details	LUI	External controller
Password	Enter the password to login to the operator maintenance mode.	Y	Y
Changing password	Change the password to login to the operator maintenance mode.	Y	Y
Operator maintenance timeout	Set the timeout for the operator maintenance.	Y	Y
Logs (error, jam, alarm)	Display service mode > COPIER > DISPLAY > ERR/JAM/ALARM-2. Switch display/hide in service mode > COPIER > OPTOIN > BODY > OPLOG-SW.	Y	Y
List of alarm *1	Display alarm for a part that comes close to the timing for replacement or cleaning. Change the timing (%) of alarming in COPIER > OPTION > BODY > OP-ALMT.	Y	Y
List of history of the operation	Display the list of the parts that have been replaced and cleaned. Display the parts for which the counter has been cleared.	Y	Y
List of the parts to be replaced *1	Display all the information of the parts to be replaced by the operator.	Y	Y
List of the parts to be cleaned *1	Display all the information of the parts to be cleaned by the operator	Y	Y
Adjustment cleaning (auto gradation adjustment, test print, etc.)	Display the items necessary for the adjustment performed by the operator	Y	Y
Procedure of replacing/cleaning the parts	Display the procedure of replacing/cleaning the parts with illustration	N	Y
Display the procedure of replacing/cleaning the parts with illustration	Display the information of troubleshooting (PDF)	N	Y

Y:Compatible
N:Non-compliant

13.3 Installation

13.3.1 Installation Procedure (Operator maintenance mode for Main machine UI)

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

A.Prearrange

- 1) Turn on the power of the machine.
- 2) Make the following settings.
 - Enabling the operator maintenance mode.
 - Set '1' in the following service mode setting to enable the operator maintenance mode.

COPIER > OPTION > BODY > OPEMANT (level 2)
0: Disabled (default)

1: Enabled

-Operator Maintenance Mode > Log display setting

Service mode > COPIER > OPTION > BODY > OPLOG-SW (level 2)

0: Hidden (default)

1: Displayed

-Switching the display of Operator Maintenance Mode > Parts to be replaced, cleaned (See the list of replacement/cleaning items.)

:Parts to be replaced/cleaned for which the operator performs maintenance can be customized depending on the level of operator's technique. Only the items for which [display] has been set in the following service mode are displayed in the alarm list, the parts list, and the cleaning list. The factory setting includes the setting of display/hidden for each area. Be sure not to make unnecessary settings.

Service mode > COPIER > COUNTER > PD1-SW/DB1-SW > xxxx

0: Hidden (default)

1: Displayed

-Changing the estimated life for replacement/cleaning (See the list of replacement/cleaning items.)

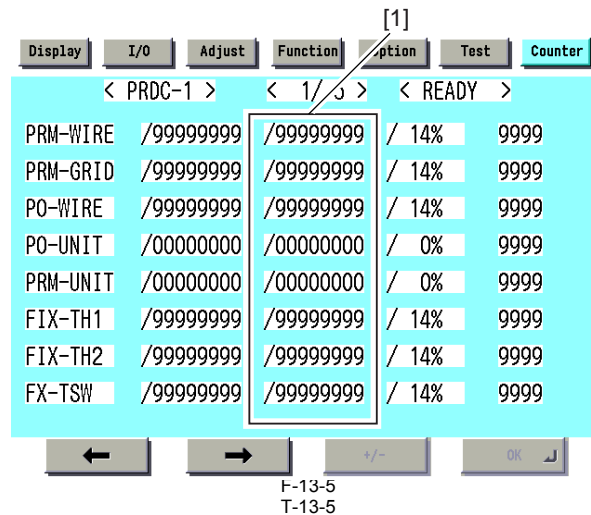
:The installation environment and usage of the machine vary the estimated life for replacing/cleaning the parts.

The service technician changes the denominator [1] in the following service mode according to the installation environment and usage of the machine in order to adjust the estimated life for replacement.

Service mode > COPIER > COUNTER > PDRC-1/DBRB-1 > xxxx

0: Hidden (default)

1: Displayed



MEMO:

When changing the estimated life for replacement/cleaning, the value of service mode described below can be referred. The value in this service mode is calculated as follows; add the counter value every time a part is replaced/cleaned and the counter is cleared, and then divide this value by the number of clearing the counter. This would be the average of the counter value at replacing/cleaning a part.

COPIER > COUNTER > AVE-DRB1/DRB2/PRD1 > XXXX

-Switching the timing of displaying the alarm on the alarm list

:When the counter reaches the specified value (default; 100%) for the estimated life for replacing a part, the part is displayed on the alarm list. The specified value can be changed in the following service mode;

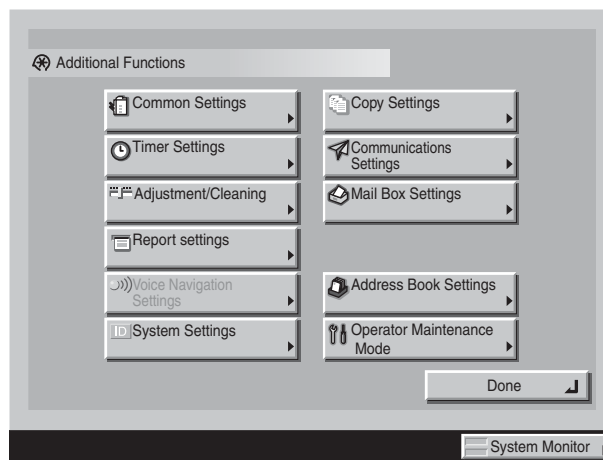
Service mode > COPIER > OPTION > BODY > OP-ALMT

0: Displayed when the value reaches 100%

1: Displayed when the value reaches 90% and 100%

B.Starting the operator maintenance mode

1) Hold down [Operator maintenance mode] in the [Additional Function]screen.



F-13-6

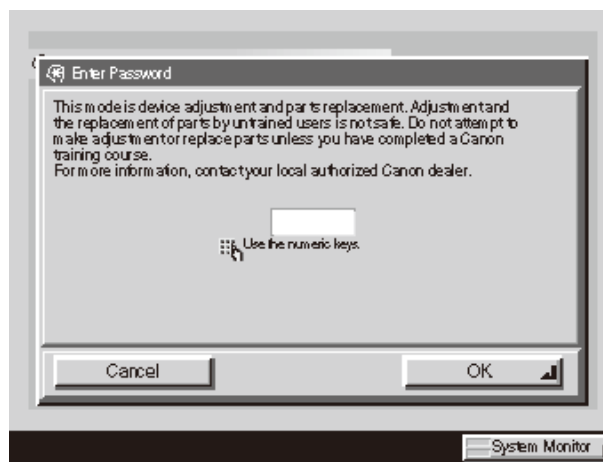
2) Enter a password and hold down [OK].

T-13-6

MEMO:

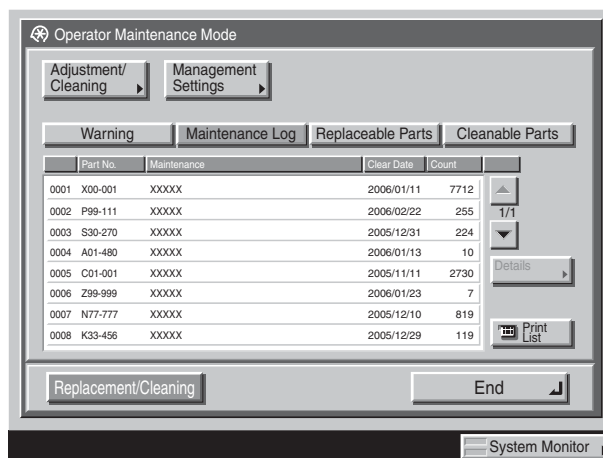
A password is necessary to log in to the operator maintenance mode.

The initial password will be given only to an operator who participated in the training of the operator maintenance and whose technique has been certified. The password can be changed in the operator maintenance mode.



F-13-7

3) Check to see that the setting in prearrange has been reflected to the screen.



F-13-8

13.3.2 Installation Procedure (Operator maintenance mode for imagePRESS Server)

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

Installation by the service technician is required to start the operator maintenance mode of the imagePRESS Server. The following are the operations performed by the service technician for installation.

T-13-7

**Installing the Flash Player**

To display the installation procedure, Flash Player needs to be installed in an external controller (imagePRESS Server). Depending on the version of external controller, it may not be installed at shipment so that engineers are expected to install the Flash Player in an external controller at installing the operator maintenance as below.

ImagePRESS Server A3000/A2000: Without flash player installed

ImagePRESS Server A3100/A2100/A1100: With Flash Player installed (it is included in a system software).

A.Prearrange**1.imagePRESS Server**

Install the operator maintenance application (OMApp) for imagePRESS Server into imagePRESS Server.
Refer to the Readme file in operator maintenance application (OMApp) for the installation procedure.

T-13-8

MEMO:

Operator maintenance application is not preinstalled in imagePRESS Server. To display the operator maintenance mode, service engineers need to install it in imagePRESS Server.

Operator maintenance application will be provided to a field in the same way with a driver's update.

T-13-9

MEMO:

Description of Readme file

Installation/uninstallation procedure of operator maintenance application (OMApp)

- Points to note

The following 2 installers are included.

Follow the instruction to select the installer to use.

- In case that the old version OMApp has been installed:

Perform partial installation with using the installer in [DifferenceInstaller] folder.

- In case that newly installing OMApp.

Perform complete installation with using the installer in [Installer] folder.

If upgrading OMApp, use the installer in [DifferenceInstaller] folder to keep the customized setting.

- Folder configuration

+ [OMApp]

+ [OMAppInstaller]

+ [DifferenceInstaller]

- InstallOMApp.bat (OMApp installer)

- INSTALL_xx.txt (installation procedure)

+ [Installer]

- InstallOMApp.bat (OMApp installer)

- INSTALL_xx.txt (installation procedure)

+ [OMAppUninstaller]

- UnInstallOMApp.bat (OMApp uninstaller)

- UNINSTALL_xx.txt (uninstallation procedure)

- Readme.txt (this document)

- Installation procedure

Refer to the installation procedure document (INSTALL_xx.txt) in [DifferenceInstaller] folder or [Installer] folder.

Uninstallation procedure

Refer to the uninstallation procedure document (UNINSTALL_xx.txt) in [OMAppUninstaller] folder.

2.Machine

1) Turn on the power of the machine.

2) Make the following settings.

-Enabling the operator maintenance mode

Set '1' in the following service mode setting to enable the operator maintenance mode.

COPIER > OPTION > BODY > OPEMANT (level 2)

0: Disabled (default)

1: Enabled

-Turning on/off the port for imagePRESS Server asynchronous communication

:When connecting the external controller and this equipment with the cross cable, set '1' in the following service mode;

Service mode > COPIER > OPTION > BODY > STS-PORT (level 2)

0: OFF (default)

1: ON

-Turning on/off the port for imagePRESS Server synchronous communication

:When connecting the external controller and this equipment with the cross cable, set '1' in the following service mode;

Service mode > COPIER > OPTION > BODY > CMD-PORT (level 2)

0: OFF (default)

1: ON

-Operator Maintenance Mode > Log display setting

Service mode > COPIER > OPTION > BODY > OPLOG-SW (level 2)

0: Hidden (default)

1: Displayed

-Switching the display of Operator Maintenance Mode > Parts to be replaced, cleaned (See the list of replacement/cleaning items.)

:Parts to be replaced/cleaned for which the operator performs maintenance can be customized depending on the level of operator's technique. Only the items for which [display] has been set in the following service mode are displayed in the alarm list, the parts list, and the cleaning list.

The factory setting includes the setting of display/hidden for each area. Be sure not to make unnecessary settings.

Service mode > COPIER > COUNTER > PD1-SW/DB1-SW > xxxx

0: Hidden (default)

1: Displayed

-Changing the estimated life for replacement/cleaning (See the list of replacement/cleaning items.)

-The installation environment and usage of the machine vary the estimated life for replacing/cleaning the parts.

The service technician changes the denominator [1] in the following service mode according to the installation environment and usage of the machine in order to adjust the estimated life for replacement.

Service mode > COPIER > COUNTER > PDRC-1/DBRB-1 > xxxx

0: Hidden (default)

1: Displayed

Display	I/O	Adjust	Function	Denominator	Test	Counter
< PRDC-1 >	< 1 / % >	< READY >				
PRM-WIRE	/99999999	/99999999	/ 14%	9999		
PRM-GRID	/99999999	/99999999	/ 14%	9999		
PO-WIRE	/99999999	/99999999	/ 14%	9999		
PO-UNIT	/00000000	/00000000	/ 0%	9999		
PRM-UNIT	/00000000	/00000000	/ 0%	9999		
FIX-TH1	/99999999	/99999999	/ 14%	9999		
FIX-TH2	/99999999	/99999999	/ 14%	9999		
FX-TSW	/99999999	/99999999	/ 14%	9999		

F-13-9
T-13-10

MEMO:

When changing the estimated life for replacement/cleaning, the value of service mode described below can be referred. The value in this service mode is calculated as follows; add the counter value every time a part is replaced/cleaned and the counter is cleared, and then divide this value by the number of clearing the counter.

This would be the average of the counter value at replacing/cleaning a part.

COPIER > COUNTER > AVE-DRB1/DRB2/PRD1 > XXXX

-Switching the timing of displaying the alarm on the alarm list

:When the counter reaches the specified value (default; 100%) for the estimated life for replacing a part, the part is displayed on the alarm list. The specified value can be changed in the following service mode;

Service mode > COPIER > OPTION > BODY > OP-ALMT

0: Displayed when the value reaches 100%

1: Displayed when the value reaches 90% and 100%

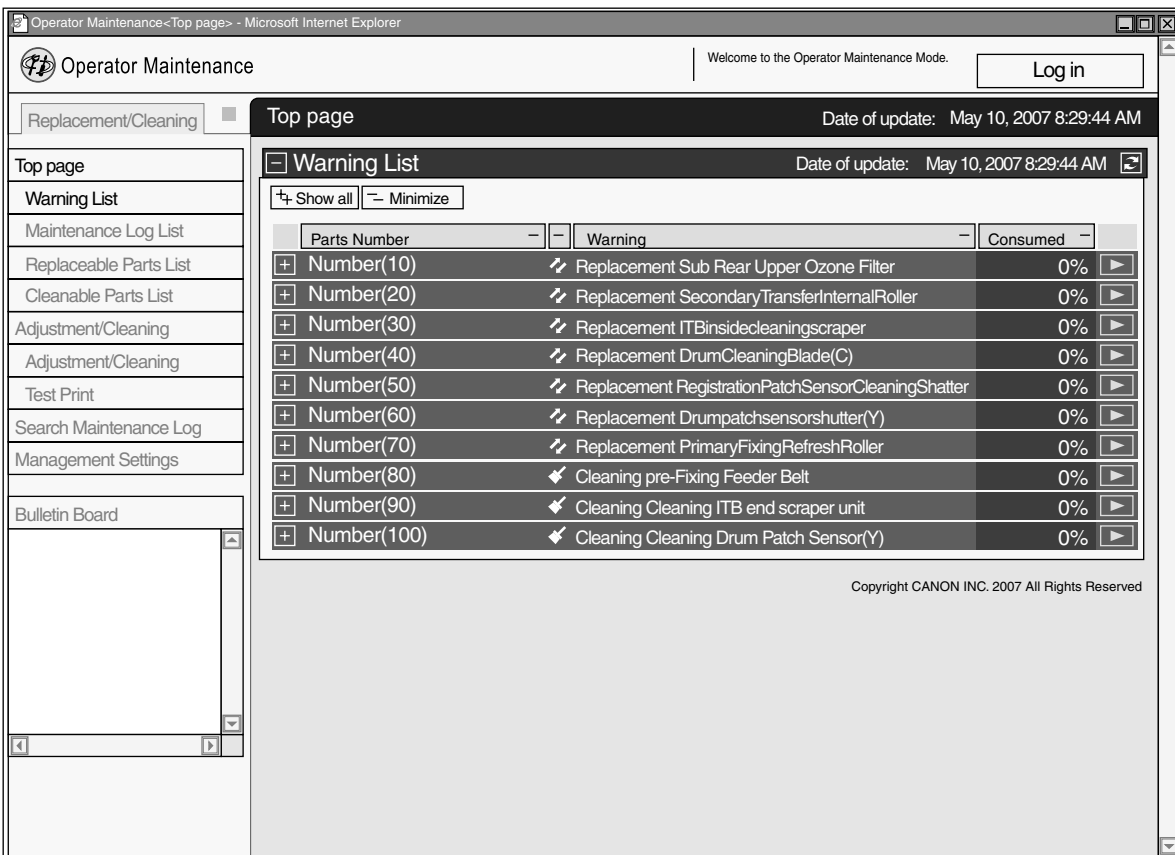
B.Starting the operator maintenance mode

- 1) Connect the imagePRESS Server to the machine. (For details, see the installation procedure of the imagePRESS Server.)
- 2) Turn on the power of the machine.
- 3) Turn on the power of the imagePRESS Server.
- 4) Select [Program] > [Canon OM App] > [Start OM App] in the Windows [Start] menu to start the boot screen.
- 5) Select a language on the list box at the lower left of the boot screen and hold down [Display].



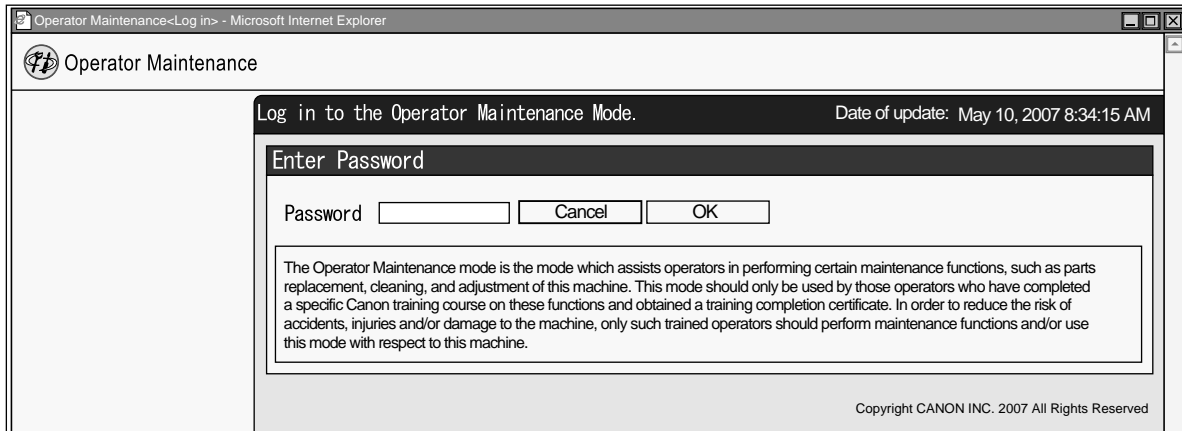
F-13-10

6) Hold down [Login] at the upper right of the login screen.



F-13-11

7) Enter a password and hold down [OK].

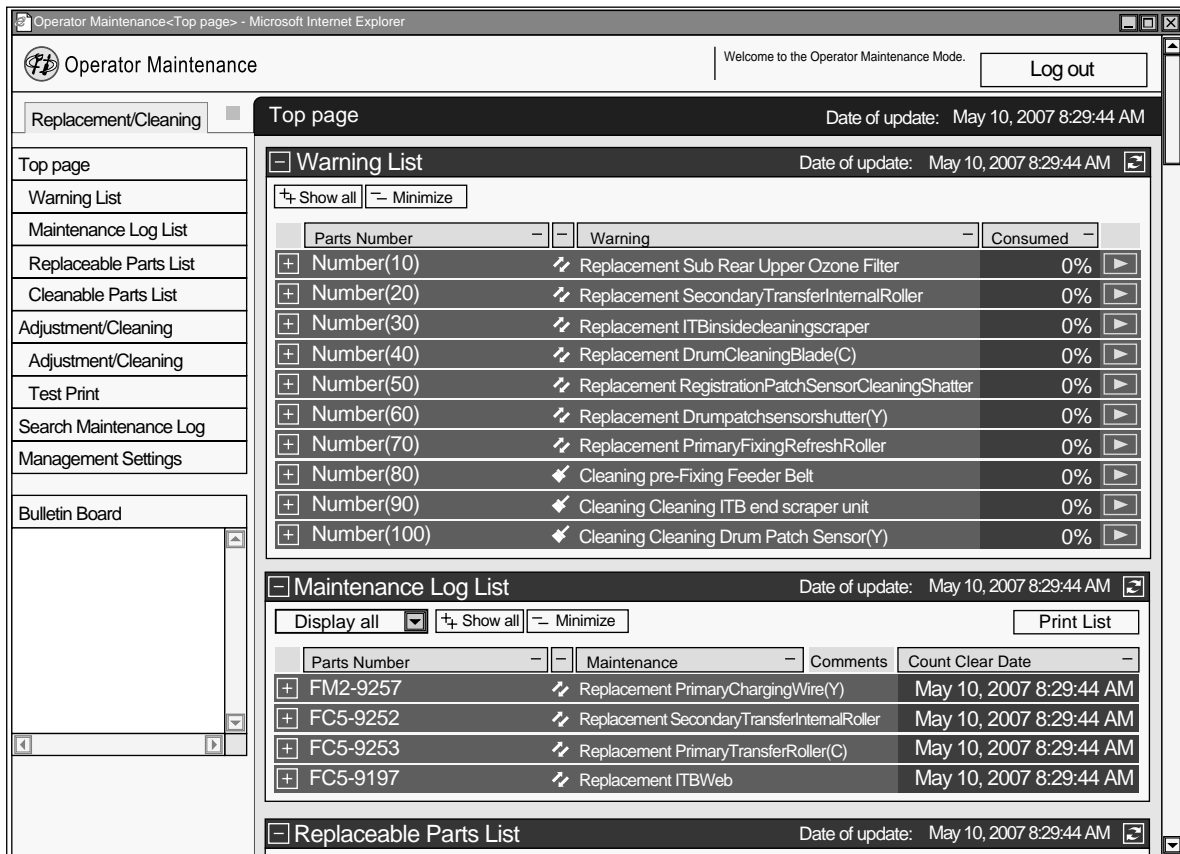


F-13-12
T-13-11

MEMO:

A password is necessary for login to the operator maintenance mode.
The initial password will be given only to an operator who participated in the training of the operator maintenance and whose technique has been certified. The password can be changed in the operator maintenance mode.

8) Check to see that the setting in prearrange has been reflected to the screen.



F-13-13

13.4 Maintenance

13.4.1 Overview

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

Maintenances performed by the operator are mainly the replacement *1 and cleaning of the parts.

The parts to be replaced and cleaned and its relevant information are listed below.

The service technician should perform adjustment (service mode, adjustment after replacement) according to the following list when needed.

Refer to the Maintenance and inspection > Periodically Replaced Parts ,Durables Periodical Servicing for replacement/cleaning timing of each part.

*1 The parts to be replaced by the operator are called ORP (Operator Replaceable Parts).

13.4.2 Items for Replacement/Cleaning_Drum

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

T-13-12

Parts to be replaced/cleaned	Qty	Parts number 200V (240V)	Display switching SW (COUNTER)						
			Intermediate item	Sub-item	Default (ON, display; OFF, hide)				
					JP EUR	USA	AUS	ASIA (CCN)	ASIA (CSPL)
Drum(Y)	1	0444B	DB1-SW	PT-DRM-A	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF
Drum(M)	1	0444B	DB1-SW	PT-DRM-A	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF
Drum(C)	1	0444B	DB1-SW	PT-DRM-A	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF
Drum(K)	1	0444B	DB1-SW	PT-DRM-A	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF
Drum Cleaning Blade(Y)	1	FC5-8829	DB1-SW	CL-BLD-A	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF
Drum Cleaning Blade(M)	1	FC5-8829	DB1-SW	CL-BLD-A	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF
Drum Cleaning Blade(C)	1	FC5-8829	DB1-SW	CL-BLD-A	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF
Drum Cleaning Blade(K)	1	FC5-8829	DB1-SW	CL-BLD-A	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF
Drum Cleaning Kit(Y)	1	FM2-9258	DB1-SW	BS-SL-A	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF
Drum Cleaning Kit(M)	1	FM2-9258	DB1-SW	BS-SL-A	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF
Drum Cleaning Kit(C)	1	FM2-9258	DB1-SW	BS-SL-A	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF
Drum Cleaning Kit(K)	1	FM2-9258	DB1-SW	BS-SL-A	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF
Drum unit (Y)*5	1	FM3-2107	DB1-SW	DRM-U	OFF	ON	OFF	OFF	OFF
Drum unit (M)*5	1	FM3-2107	DB1-SW	DRM-U	OFF	ON	OFF	OFF	OFF
Drum unit (C)*5	1	FM3-2107	DB1-SW	DRM-U	OFF	ON	OFF	OFF	OFF
Drum unit (K)*5	1	FM3-2107	DB1-SW	DRM-U	OFF	ON	OFF	OFF	OFF
Primary Charging Wire(Y)	1	FM2-9257	PD1-SW	PRM-W-A	OFF	OFF	ON	ON	ON
Primary Charging Wire(M)	1	FM2-9257	PD1-SW	PRM-W-A	OFF	OFF	ON	ON	ON
Primary Charging Wire(C)	1	FM2-9257	PD1-SW	PRM-W-A	OFF	OFF	ON	ON	ON
Primary Charging Wire(K)	1	FM2-9257	PD1-SW	PRM-W-A	OFF	OFF	ON	ON	ON
Grid(Y)	1	FC6-1056	PD1-SW	PRM-G-A	OFF	OFF	ON	ON	ON
Grid(M)	1	FC6-1056	PD1-SW	PRM-G-A	OFF	OFF	ON	ON	ON
Grid(C)	1	FC6-1056	PD1-SW	PRM-G-A	OFF	OFF	ON	ON	ON
Grid(K)	1	FC6-1056	PD1-SW	PRM-G-A	OFF	OFF	ON	ON	ON
Primary charging assembly (Y)*5	1	FM3-4189	PD1-SW	PRM-U-A	OFF	ON	ON	ON	ON
Primary charging assembly (M)*5	1	FM3-4189	PD1-SW	PRM-U-A	OFF	ON	ON	ON	ON
Primary charging assembly (C)*5	1	FM3-4189	PD1-SW	PRM-U-A	OFF	ON	ON	ON	ON
Primary charging assembly (K)*5	1	FM3-4189	PD1-SW	PRM-U-A	OFF	ON	ON	ON	ON
Drum patch sensor shutter (Y)	1	FL2-1968	DB1-SW	DEV-P-A	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF
Drum patch sensor shutter (M)	1	FL2-1968	DB1-SW	DEV-P-A	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF
Drum patch sensor shutter (C)	1	FL2-1979	DB1-SW	DEV-P-A	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF
Drum patch sensor shutter (K)	1	FL2-1979	DB1-SW	DEV-P-A	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF

Drum patch sensor (Y)	1	FK2-3168	DB1-SW	DV-P-S-A	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF
Drum patch sensor (M)	1	FK2-3168	DB1-SW	DV-P-S-A	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF
Drum patch sensor (C)	1	FK2-3168	DB1-SW	DV-P-S-A	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF
Drum patch sensor (K)	1	FK2-3168	DB1-SW	DV-P-S-A	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF
Cleaning Drum patch sensor (Y)	1	-	CLN-SW	DV-P-S-A	OFF	ON	ON	ON	ON
Cleaning Drum patch sensor (M)	1	-	CLN-SW	DV-P-S-A	OFF	ON	ON	ON	ON
Cleaning Drum patch sensor (C)	1	-	CLN-SW	DV-P-S-A	OFF	ON	ON	ON	ON
Cleaning Drum patch sensor (K)	1	-	CLN-SW	DV-P-S-A	OFF	ON	ON	ON	ON
Cleaning Develop-Ass'y lower metal(Y)	1	-	CLN-SW	PKIT-LF	OFF	ON	OFF	ON	ON
Cleaning Develop-Ass'y lower metal(M)	1	-	CLN-SW	PKIT-LF	OFF	ON	OFF	ON	ON
Cleaning Develop-Ass'y lower metal(C)	1	-	CLN-SW	PKIT-LF	OFF	ON	OFF	ON	ON
Cleaning Develop-Ass'y lower metal(K)	1	-	CLN-SW	PKIT-LF	OFF	ON	OFF	ON	ON
Cleaning Drum pre-conditioning exposure (Y)	1	-	CLN-SW	PRE-EX-A	OFF	ON	OFF	ON	ON
Cleaning Drum pre-conditioning exposure (M)	1	-	CLN-SW	PRE-EX-A	OFF	ON	OFF	ON	ON
Cleaning Drum pre-conditioning exposure (C)	1	-	CLN-SW	PRE-EX-A	OFF	ON	OFF	ON	ON
Cleaning Drum pre-conditioning exposure (K)	1	-	CLN-SW	PRE-EX-A	OFF	ON	OFF	ON	ON
Cleaning Dust-proof glass (Y)	1	-	CLN-SW	DP-GRS-A	OFF	ON	ON	ON	ON
Cleaning Dust-proof glass (M)	1	-	CLN-SW	DP-GRS-A	OFF	ON	ON	ON	ON
Cleaning Dust-proof glass (C)	1	-	CLN-SW	DP-GRS-A	OFF	ON	ON	ON	ON
Cleaning Dust-proof glass (K)	1	-	CLN-SW	DP-GRS-A	OFF	ON	ON	ON	ON

Parts to be replaced/cleaned	COUNTER (COUNTER)		Average counter*1 (COUNTER)		Adjustment*2	Test ID*3	Remarks
	Intermediate item	Sub-item	Intermediate item	Sub-item			
Drum(Y)	DRBL-1	PT-DR-Y	AVE-DRB1	PT-DR-Y	A	1	
Drum(M)	DRBL-1	PT-DR-M	AVE-DRB1	PT-DR-M	A	2	
Drum(C)	DRBL-1	PT-DR-C	AVE-DRB1	PT-DR-C	A	3	
Drum(K)	DRBL-1	PT-DRM	AVE-DRB1	PT-DRM	A	4	
Drum Cleaning Blade(Y)	DRBL-1	CL-BLD-Y	AVE-DRB1	CL-BLD-Y	A	1	Replace with the drum.
Drum Cleaning Blade(M)	DRBL-1	CL-BLD-M	AVE-DRB1	CL-BLD-M	A	2	Replace with the drum.
Drum Cleaning Blade(C)	DRBL-1	CL-BLD-C	AVE-DRB1	CL-BLD-C	A	3	Replace with the drum.
Drum Cleaning Blade(K)	DRBL-1	CLN-BLD	AVE-DRB1	CLN-BLD	A	4	Replace with the drum.
Drum Cleaning Kit(Y)	DRBL-1	BS-SL-Y	AVE-DRB1	BS-SL-Y	A	1	Replace with the drum.
Drum Cleaning Kit(M)	DRBL-1	BS-SL-M	AVE-DRB1	BS-SL-M	A	2	Replace with the drum.
Drum Cleaning Kit(C)	DRBL-1	BS-SL-C	AVE-DRB1	BS-SL-C	A	3	Replace with the drum.
Drum Cleaning Kit(K)	DRBL-1	BS-SL-K	AVE-DRB1	BS-SL-K	A	4	Replace with the drum.
Drum unit (Y)*5	DRBL-1	D-UNIT-Y	AVE-DRB1	D-UNIT-Y	A	1	Including with the drum, cleaning blade ,the drum cleaner kit.
Drum unit (M)*5	DRBL-1	D-UNIT-M	AVE-DRB1	D-UNIT-M	A	2	
Drum unit (C)*5	DRBL-1	D-UNIT-C	AVE-DRB1	D-UNIT-C	A	3	
Drum unit (K)*5	DRBL-1	D-UNIT-K	AVE-DRB1	D-UNIT-K	A	4	
Primary Charging Wire(Y)	PRDC-1	PRM-W-Y	AVE-PRD1	PRM-W-Y	-	1	
Primary Charging Wire(M)	PRDC-1	PRM-W-M	AVE-PRD1	PRM-W-M	-	2	
Primary Charging Wire(C)	PRDC-1	PRM-W-C	AVE-PRD1	PRM-W-C	-	3	
Primary Charging Wire(K)	PRDC-1	PRM-WIRE	AVE-PRD1	PRM-WIRE	-	4	
Grid(Y)	PRDC-1	PRM-G-Y	AVE-PRD1	PRM-G-Y	-	1	
Grid(M)	PRDC-1	PRM-G-M	AVE-PRD1	PRM-G-M	-	2	
Grid(C)	PRDC-1	PRM-G-C	AVE-PRD1	PRM-G-C	-	3	
Grid(K)	PRDC-1	PRM-GRID	AVE-PRD1	PRM-GRID	-	4	
Primary charging assembly (Y)*5	PRDC-1	PRM-U-Y	AVE-PRD1	PRM-U-Y	*4	1	Including with the primary charging wire and the grid.
Primary charging assembly (M)*5	PRDC-1	PRM-U-M	AVE-PRD1	PRM-U-M	*4	2	
Primary charging assembly (C)*5	PRDC-1	PRM-U-C	AVE-PRD1	PRM-U-C	*4	3	
Primary charging assembly (K)*5	PRDC-1	PRM-UNIT	AVE-PRD1	PRM-U-K	*4	4	
Drum patch sensor shutter (Y)	DRBL-1	DEV-P-Y	AVE-DRB1	DEV-P-Y	-	1	
Drum patch sensor shutter (M)	DRBL-1	DEV-P-M	AVE-DRB1	DEV-P-M	-	2	
Drum patch sensor shutter (C)	DRBL-1	DEV-P-C	AVE-DRB1	DEV-P-C	-	3	
Drum patch sensor shutter (K)	DRBL-1	DEV-P-K	AVE-DRB1	DEV-P-K	-	4	
Drum patch sensor (Y)	DRBL-1	DV-P-S-Y	AVE-DRB1	DV-P-S-Y	B	1	
Drum patch sensor (M)	DRBL-1	DV-P-S-M	AVE-DRB1	DV-P-S-M	B	2	
Drum patch sensor (C)	DRBL-1	DV-P-S-C	AVE-DRB1	DV-P-S-C	B	3	
Drum patch sensor (K)	DRBL-1	DV-P-S-K	AVE-DRB1	DV-P-S-K	B	4	
Cleaning Drum patch sensor (Y)	CLEANING	DV-P-S-Y	AVE-CLN	DV-P-S-Y	-	1	
Cleaning Drum patch sensor (M)	CLEANING	DV-P-S-M	AVE-CLN	DV-P-S-M	-	2	
Cleaning Drum patch sensor (C)	CLEANING	DV-P-S-C	AVE-CLN	DV-P-S-C	-	3	
Cleaning Drum patch sensor (K)	CLEANING	DV-P-S-K	AVE-CLN	DV-P-S-K	-	4	
Cleaning Develop-Ass'y lower metal(Y)	CLEANING	PKIT-LFY	AVE-CLN	PKIT-LFY	A	10	Replace with the drum.
Cleaning Develop-Ass'y lower metal(M)	CLEANING	PKIT-LFM	AVE-CLN	PKIT-LFM	A	10	Replace with the drum.
Cleaning Develop-Ass'y lower metal(C)	CLEANING	PKIT-LFC	AVE-CLN	PKIT-LFC	A	10	Replace with the drum.
Cleaning Develop-Ass'y lower metal(K)	CLEANING	PKIT-LF	AVE-CLN	PKIT-LF	A	10	Replace with the drum.
Cleaning Drum pre-conditioning exposure (Y)	CLEANING	PRE-EXPY	AVE-CLN	PRE-EXPY	A	9	Replace with the drum.
Cleaning Drum pre-conditioning exposure (M)	CLEANING	PRE-EXPM	AVE-CLN	PRE-EXPM	A	9	Replace with the drum.
Cleaning Drum pre-conditioning exposure (C)	CLEANING	PRE-EXPC	AVE-CLN	PRE-EXPC	A	9	Replace with the drum.
Cleaning Drum pre-conditioning exposure (K)	CLEANING	PRE-EXPO	AVE-CLN	PRE-EXPO	A	9	Replace with the drum.
Cleaning Dust-proof glass (Y)	CLEANING	DP-GRS-Y	AVE-CLN	DP-GRS-Y	-	-	
Cleaning Dust-proof glass (M)	CLEANING	DP-GRS-M	AVE-CLN	DP-GRS-M	-	-	
Cleaning Dust-proof glass (C)	CLEANING	DP-GRS-C	AVE-CLN	DP-GRS-C	-	-	
Cleaning Dust-proof glass (K)	CLEANING	DP-GRS	AVE-CLN	DP-GRS	-	-	

*1 Display the value calculated as follows; divide the counter value summed at the time of clearing the counter by the number of times of clearing the counter.

*2 Adjustment after replacement/cleaning.

*3 Test print pattern to output after replacement/cleaning. For the details of the pattern, see the test print ID table. Perform image check with this test print.

*4 Perform the adjustment of the height of the primary charging assembly. The service technician performs this operation

*5 This part is assigned to allow operators to replace it on a unit basis depending on operator's technique level.

13.4.3 Items for Replacement/Cleaning_Transfer

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

T-13-14

Parts to be replaced/cleaned	Qty	Parts number200V (240V)	Display switching SW (COUNTER)						
			Intermediate item	Sub-item	Default (ON, display; OFF, hide)				
					JP EUR	USA	AUS	ASIA (CCN)	ASIA (CSPL)
Intermediate Transfer Belt	1	FM3-1644	DB1-SW	ITB-BLT	OFF	ON	ON	OFF	ON
ITB Cleaning Brush(x2)	2	FC5-9156	DB1-SW	ITB-FURA	OFF	OFF	ON	ON	ON
ITB Bias Roller Cleaning Blade(X2)	2	FC6-4910	DB1-SW	ITB-BLDA	OFF	OFF	ON	ON	ON
ITB cleaner unit*4	1	FM2-2150	DB1-SW	ITB-CL-U	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF
ITB Web	1	FC5-9197	DB1-SW	ITB-WEBA	OFF	OFF	ON	ON	ON
Primary Transfer Roller(Y)	1	FC6-1545	DB1-SW	TR-RL-A	OFF	OFF	ON	ON	ON
Primary Transfer Roller(M)	1	FC6-1545	DB1-SW	TR-RL-A	OFF	OFF	ON	ON	ON
Primary Transfer Roller(C)	1	FC6-1545	DB1-SW	TR-RL-A	OFF	OFF	ON	ON	ON
Primary Transfer Roller(K)	1	FC6-1545	DB1-SW	TR-RL-A	OFF	OFF	ON	ON	ON
Secondary Transfer Internal Roller	1	FC5-9252	DB1-SW	2TR-IN-A	OFF	OFF	ON	ON	ON
Secondary Transfer External Roller	1	FC5-9331	DB1-SW	2TR-ROLA	OFF	OFF	ON	ON	ON
Secondary Transfer Cleaner Kit	1	FM2-2171	DB1-SW	2TR-CLNA	OFF	OFF	ON	ON	ON
Regi-Patch Sensor Shatter	1	FL2-2023	DB1-SW	PCH-S-A	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF
Leading Edge Patch Sensor Shatter	1	FL2-2024	DB1-SW	PCH-S-TA	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF
ITB inside cleaning scraper	1	FM2-2145	DB1-SW	ITB-BLT	OFF	ON	ON	OFF	ON
ITB edge scraper unit(x2)	2	FL2-2025	DB1-SW	ITB-E-SC	OFF	ON	ON	OFF	ON
Pre-transfer Charging Wire	1	FM2-9257	PD1-SW	PO-WIREA	OFF	OFF	ON	ON	ON
Pre-transfer charging assembly*4	1	FM2-2157	PD1-SW	PRE-W-U	OFF	OFF	ON	ON	ON
ITB Unit Inside Ozone Filter	1	FC6-2153	PD1-SW	FILTER	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF
ITB Unit Inside Air Filter	1	FC6-2152	PD1-SW	FILTER	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF
Cleaning Pre-transfer Charging Assembly	1	-	CLN-SW	PO-SLD-A	OFF	ON	ON	ON	ON
Cleaning ITB End Scraper Unit	2	-	CLN-SW	ITBOUT-A	OFF	ON	ON	ON	ON
Cleaning Registration Patch Sensor	1	-	CLN-SW	ITBOUT-A	OFF	ON	ON	ON	ON
Cleaning Leading edge regi-patch sensor	1	-	CLN-SW	ITBOUT-A	OFF	ON	ON	ON	ON
Cleaning ITB Idler Roller		-	CLN-SW	ITBIN-A	OFF	ON	ON	ON	ON
Cleaning ITB HP Sensor	2	-	CLN-SW	ITBIN-A	OFF	ON	ON	ON	ON
Cleaning ITB Edge Sensor	1	-	CLN-SW	ITBIN-A	OFF	ON	ON	ON	ON

Parts to be replaced/cleaned	COUNTER (COUNTER)		Average counter*1 (COUNTER)		Adjustment *2	Test ID *3	Remarks
	Intermediate item	Sub-item	Intermediate item	Sub-item			
Intermediate Transfer Belt	DRBL-1	TR-BLT	AVE-DRB1	TR-BLT	A,C	5	
ITB Cleaning Brush(x2)	DRBL-1	ITB-CLN1	AVE-DRB1	ITB-CLN1	A	6	
ITB Bias Roller Cleaning Blade(X2)	DRBL-1	ITB-BLD1	AVE-DRB1	ITB-BLD1	A	6	
ITB cleaner unit*4	DRBL-1	ITBCLN-U	AVE-DRB1	ITBCLN-U	A	6	Including the ITB cleaning brush and the ITB bias roller cleaning blade (x2)
ITB Web	DRBL-1	ITB-WEB	AVE-DRB1	ITB-WEB	A	6	
Primary Transfer Roller(Y)	DRBL-1	1TR-RL-Y	AVE-DRB1	1TR-RL-Y	A	1	
Primary Transfer Roller(M)	DRBL-1	1TR-RL-M	AVE-DRB1	1TR-RL-M	A	2	
Primary Transfer Roller(C)	DRBL-1	1TR-RL-C	AVE-DRB1	1TR-RL-C	A	3	
Primary Transfer Roller(K)	DRBL-1	1TR-RL-K	AVE-DRB1	1TR-RL-K	A	4	
Secondary Transfer Internal Roller	DRBL-1	2TR-INRL	AVE-DRB1	2TR-INRL	A	5	
Secondary Transfer External Roller	DRBL-1	2TR-ROLL	AVE-DRB1	2TR-ROLL	-	5	
Secondary Transfer Cleaner Kit	DRBL-1	2TR-CLN	AVE-DRB1	2TR-CLN	-	5	
Regi-Patch Sensor Shatter	DRBL-1	PCH-S-R	AVE-DRB1	PCH-S-R	A	7	
Leading Edge Patch Sensor Shatter	DRBL-1	PCH-S-T	AVE-DRB1	PCH-S-T	A	7	
ITB inside cleaning scraper	DRBL-1	ITB-SCRP	AVE-DRB1	ITB-SCRP	A	5	
ITB edge scraper unit(x2)	DRBL-1	ITB-E-SC	AVE-DRB1	ITB-E-SC	A	5	
Pre-transfer Charging wire	PRDC-1	PO-WIRE	AVE-PRD1	PO-WIRE	A	5	
Pre-transfer charging assembly*4	PRDC-1	PO-UNIT	AVE-PRD1	PO-UNIT	A	5	Including the pre-transfer charging wire.
ITB Unit Inside Ozone Filter	PRDC-1	OZ-FIL1	AVE-PRD1	OZ-FIL1	A	10	
ITB Unit Inside Air Filter	PRDC-1	AR-FIL2	AVE-PRD1	OZ-FIL2	A	10	
Cleaning Pre-transfer Charging Assembly	CLEANING	PO-SLD	AVE-CLN	PO-SLD	A	5	
Cleaning ITB End Scraper Unit	CLEANING	ITB-EDGE	AVE-CLN	ITB-EDGE	A	10	Replace with the ITB.
Cleaning Registration Patch Sensor	CLEANING	REGP-SNS	AVE-CLN	REGP-SNS	A	7	
Cleaning Leading edge regi-patch sensor	CLEANING	TREG-SNS	AVE-CLN	TREG-SNS	A	7	
Cleaning ITB Idler Roller	CLEANING	ITB-IROL	AVE-CLN	ITB-IROL	A	5	Replace with the ITB.
Cleaning ITB HP Sensor	CLEANING	ITBHPSNS	AVE-CLN	ITBHPSNS	A	5	Replace with the ITB.
Cleaning ITB Edge Sensor	CLEANING	ITB-ESNS	AVE-CLN	ITB-ESNS	A	5	Replace with the ITB.

*1 Display the value calculated as follows; divide the counter value summed at the time of clearing the counter by the number of times of clearing the counter.

*2 Adjustment after replacement/cleaning.

*3 Test print pattern to output after replacement/cleaning. For the details of the pattern, see the test print ID table. Perform image check with this test print.

*4 This part is assigned to allow operators to replace it on a unit basis depending on operator's technique level.

13.4.4 Item for Replacement/Cleaning_Fixing

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

T-13-16

Parts to be replaced/cleaned	Qty	Parts number200V (240V)	Display switching SW (COUNTER)						
			Intermediate item	Sub-item	Default (ON, display; OFF, hide)				
					JP EUR	USA	AUS	ASIA (CCN)	ASIA (CSPL)
Primary Fixing Roller	1	FL2-6945	DB1-SW	FX12UP-A	OFF	OFF	ON	ON	OFF
Secondary Fixing Roller	1	FL2-7881	DB1-SW	FX12UP-A	OFF	OFF	ON	ON	OFF
Primary Fixing Web	1	FC5-9778	DB1-SW	FX-WEB-A	OFF	OFF	ON	ON	ON
Primary web unit*4	1	FM3-2092	DB1-SW	FX-WEB-U	OFF	OFF	ON	ON	ON
Secondary Fixing Web	1	FC5-9778	DB1-SW	FX-WEB-A	OFF	OFF	ON	ON	ON
Secondary web unit*4	1	FM3-2092	DB1-SW	FX-WEB-U	OFF	OFF	ON	ON	ON
Primary Fixing Web Roller	1	FM3-1649	DB1-SW	FX-WBRLA	OFF	OFF	ON	ON	ON
Secondary Fixing Web Roller	1	FM3-1649	DB1-SW	FX-WBRLA	OFF	OFF	ON	ON	ON
Fixing Belt Unit	1	FM2-2215 (FM2-9267)	DB1-SW	FX-BLTUA	OFF	OFF	ON	ON	OFF
Pressure Roller	1	FC7-3436	DB1-SW	FX2LWRL A	OFF	OFF	ON	ON	OFF
Primary Ex-Heating Roller Unit	1	FM2-2197 (FM2-9265)	DB1-SW	FX-EXRLA	OFF	OFF	ON	ON	OFF
Secondary Ex-Heating Roller Unit	1	FM2-2197 (FM2-9265)	DB1-SW	FX-EXRLA	OFF	OFF	ON	ON	OFF
Primary Fixing Refresh Roller	1	FM3-1648	DB1-SW	FX-RF-RL	OFF	OFF	ON	ON	OFF
Secondary Fixing Refresh Roller	1	FM3-1648	DB1-SW	FX2-RFRL	OFF	OFF	ON	ON	OFF
Primary Refresh Cleaning Roller	1	FL2-6260	DB1-SW	FX-RF-RL	OFF	OFF	ON	ON	OFF
Secondary Refresh Cleaning Roller	1	FL2-6260	DB1-SW	FX2-RFRL	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF
Cleaning Primary fixing thermistor / thermal switch	2	-	CLN-SW	FX-THTSA	OFF	ON	ON	ON	ON
Cleaning Secondary fixing thermistor / thermal switch	2	-	CLN-SW	FX-THTSA	OFF	ON	ON	ON	ON
Cleaning Primary Fixing Refresh Roller	1	-	CLN-SW	FX12-RFA	OFF	ON	ON	ON	ON
Cleaning Secondary Fixing Refresh Roller	1	-	CLN-SW	FX12-RFA	OFF	ON	ON	ON	ON
Cleaning Primary Refresh Cleaning Roller	1	-	CLN-SW	FX12-RFA	OFF	ON	ON	ON	ON
Cleaning Secondary Refresh Cleaning Roller	1	-	CLN-SW	FX12-RFA	OFF	ON	ON	ON	ON

T-13-17

Parts to be replaced/cleaned	COUNTER (COUNTER)		Average counter*1 (COUNTER)		Adjustment *2	Test ID *3	Remarks
	Intermediate item	Sub-item	Intermediate item	Sub-item			
Primary Fixing Roller	DRBL-1	FX-UP-RL	AVE-DRB1	FX-UP-RL	-	8	
Secondary Fixing Roller	DRBL-1	FX2-UPRL	AVE-DRB1	FX2-UPRL	-	8	
Primary Fixing Web	DRBL-1	FX-WEB	AVE-DRB1	FX-WEB	-	8	
Primary web unit*4	DRBL-1	FX1WEB-U	AVE-DRB1	FX1WEB-U	-	8	
Secondary Fixing Web	DRBL-1	FX2-WEB	AVE-DRB1	FX2-WEB	-	8	
Secondary web unit*4	DRBL-1	FX2WEB-U	AVE-DRB1	FX2WEB-U	-	8	
Primary Fixing Web Roller	DRBL-1	FX-WB-RL	AVE-DRB1	FX-WB-RL	-	8	
Secondary Fixing Web Roller	DRBL-1	FX2-WBRL	AVE-DRB1	FX2-WBRL	-	8	
Fixing Belt Unit	DRBL-1	FX-BLT-U	AVE-DRB1	FX-BLT-U	-	8	
Pressure Roller	DRBL-1	FX2-LWRL	AVE-DRB1	FX2-LWRL	-	8	
Primary Ex-Heating Roller Unit	DRBL-1	FX-EX-RL	AVE-DRB1	FX-EX-RL	-	8	
Secondary Ex-Heating Roller Unit	DRBL-1	FX2EXRL	AVE-DRB1	FX2EXRL	-	8	
Primary Fixing Refresh Roller	DRBL-1	FX-RF-RL	AVE-DRB1	FX-RF-RL	-	8	
Secondary Fixing Refresh Roller	DRBL-1	FXRF-RL2	AVE-DRB1	FX2-RFRL	-	8	
Primary Refresh Cleaning Roller	DRBL-1	FX-RFCL	AVE-DRB1	FX-RF-CL	-	8	
Secondary Refresh Cleaning Roller	DRBL-1	FX-RFCL2	AVE-DRB1	FX2-RFCL	-	8	

Cleaning Primary fixing thermistor / thermal switch	CLEANING	FX1-THTS	AVE-CLN	FX1-THTS	-	8	Replace with the Fixing Roller
Cleaning Secondary fixing thermistor / thermal switch	CLEANING	FX2-THTS	AVE-CLN	FX2-THTS	-	8	Replace with the Fixing Roller
Cleaning Primary Fixing Refresh Roller	CLEANING	FX1-RFRL	AVE-CLN	FX1-RFRL	-	8	
Cleaning Secondary Fixing Refresh Roller	CLEANING	FX2-RFRL	AVE-CLN	FX2-RFRL	-	8	
Cleaning Primary Refresh Cleaning Roller	CLEANING	FX1-RFCL	AVE-CLN	FX1-RFCL	-	8	
Cleaning Secondary Refresh Cleaning Roller	CLEANING	FX2-RFCL	AVE-CLN	FX2-RFCL	-	8	

*1 Display the value calculated as follows; divide the counter value summed at the time of clearing the counter by the number of times of clearing the counter.

*2 Adjustment after replacement/cleaning.

*3 Test print pattern to output after replacement/cleaning. For the details of the pattern, see the test print ID table. Perform image check with this test print.

13.4.5 Items for Replacement/Cleaning_Filter

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

T-13-18

Parts to be replaced/cleaned	Qty	Parts number200V (240V)	Display switching SW (COUNTER)						
			Intermediate item	Sub-item	Default (ON, display; OFF, hide)				
					JP EUR	USA	AUS	ASIA (CCN)	ASIA (CSPL)
Sub Rear Left Ozone Filter(x2)	2	FC6-8133	PD1-SW	FILTER	OFF	ON	ON	ON	ON
Sub Rear Upper Ozone Filter	1	FC6-8411	PD1-SW	FILTER	OFF	ON	ON	ON	ON
Sub Rear Middle Ozone Filter(x2)	2	FC6-2035	PD1-SW	FILTER	OFF	ON	ON	ON	ON
Main Rear Ozone Filter(x4)	4	FC7-4563	PD1-SW	FILTER	OFF	ON	ON	ON	ON
Main Rear Toner Filter(x4)	4	FB2-4383	PD1-SW	FILTER	OFF	ON	ON	ON	ON
Cleaning Sub Rear Middle Ozone Filter(x2)	2	-	CLN-SW	OZ-FILTR	OFF	ON	ON	ON	ON
Cleaning Sub Rear Left Ozone Filter(x2)	2	-	CLN-SW	OZ-FILTR	OFF	ON	ON	ON	ON
Cleaning Sub Rear Upper Ozone Filter	1	-	CLN-SW	OZ-FILTR	OFF	ON	ON	ON	ON

T-13-19

Parts to be replaced/cleaned	COUNTER (COUNTER)		Average counter*1 (COUNTER)		Adjustment *2	Test ID *3	Remarks
	Intermediate item	Sub-item	Intermediate item	Sub-item			
Sub Rear Left Ozone Filter(x2)	PRDC-1	OZ-FIL5	AVE-PRD1	OZ-FIL5	-	-	
Sub Rear Upper Ozone Filter	PRDC-1	OZ-FIL3	AVE-PRD1	OZ-FIL3	-	-	
Sub Rear Middle Ozone Filter(x2)	PRDC-1	OZ-FIL4	AVE-PRD1	OZ-FIL4	-	-	
Main Rear Ozone Filter(x4)	PRDC-1	OZ-FIL2	AVE-PRD1	OZ-FIL2	-	-	
Main Rear Toner Filter(x4)	PRDC-1	TN-FIL1	AVE-PRD1	TN-FIL1	-	-	
Cleaning Sub Rear Middle Ozone Filter(x2)	CLEANING	OZ-FIL-M	AVE-CLN	OZ-FIL-M	-	-	
Cleaning Sub Rear Left Ozone Filter(x2)	CLEANING	OZ-FIL-L	AVE-CLN	OZ-FIL-L	-	-	
Cleaning Sub Rear Upper Ozone Filter	CLEANING	OZ-FIL-U	AVE-CLN	OZ-FIL-U	-	-	

*1 Display the value calculated as follows; divide the counter value summed at the time of clearing the counter by the number of times of clearing the counter.

*2 Adjustment after replacement/cleaning.

*3 Test print pattern to output after replacement/cleaning. For the details of the pattern, see the test print ID table. Perform image check with this test print.

13.4.6 Item for Replacement/Cleaning_Others (Separation pad, etc.)

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

T-13-20

Parts to be replaced/cleaned	Qty	Parts number 200V (240V)	Display switching SW (COUNTER)						
			Intermediate item	Sub-item	Default (ON, display; OFF, hide)				
					JP EUR	USA	AUS	ASIA (CCN)	ASIA (CSPL)
Left deck separation pad (x2)	2	FL2-7257	DB1-SW	DECK-PD	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF
Right deck separation pad (x2)	2	FL2-7257	DB1-SW	DECK-PD	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF
POD deck upper pad (x2)	2	FL2-7257	DB1-SW	DECK-PD	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF
POD deck middle pad (x2)	2	FL2-7257	DB1-SW	DECK-PD	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF
POD deck lower (x2)	2	FL2-7257	DB1-SW	DECK-PD	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF
Secondary POD deck upper pad (x2)	2	FL2-7257	DB1-SW	DECK-PD	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF
Secondary POD deck middle pad (x2)	2	FL2-7257	DB1-SW	DECK-PD	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF
Secondary POD deck lower pad (x2)	2	FL2-7257	DB1-SW	DECK-PD	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF
Pre-fixing feeder belt	1	-	CLN-SW	2TRFDPSA	OFF	ON	ON	ON	ON
Secondary-transfer outlet sensor	1	-	CLN-SW	2TRExS-A	OFF	ON	ON	ON	ON
Cross feed roller	1	-	CLN-SW	SS-RGRLA	OFF	ON	ON	ON	ON

T-13-21

Parts to be replaced/cleaned	COUNTER (COUNTER)		Average counter*1 (COUNTER)		Adjustment *2	Test ID *3	Remarks
	Intermediate item	Sub-item	Intermediate item	Sub-item			
Left deck separation pad (x2)	DRBL-1	LD-PAD	AVE-DRB1	LD-PAD	-	-	
Right deck separation pad (x2)	DRBL-1	RD-PAD	AVE-DRB1	RD-PAD	-	-	
POD deck upper pad (x2)	DRBL-2	D1-U-PD	AVE-DRB2	D1-U-PD	-	-	
POD deck middle pad (x2)	DRBL-2	D1-M-PD	AVE-DRB2	D1-M-PD	-	-	
POD deck lower (x2)	DRBL-2	D1-L-PD	AVE-DRB2	D1-L-PD	-	-	
Secondary POD deck upper pad (x2)	DRBL-2	D2-U-PD	AVE-DRB2	D2-U-PD	-	-	
Secondary POD deck middle pad (x2)	DRBL-2	D2-M-PD	AVE-DRB2	D2-M-PD	-	-	
Secondary POD deck lower pad (x2)	DRBL-2	D2-L-PD	AVE-DRB2	D2-L-PD	-	-	
Pre-fixing feeder belt	CLEANING	2TR-FDPS	AVE-CLN	2TR-FDPS	-	-	
Secondary-transfer outlet sensor	CLEANING	2TR-Ex-S	AVE-CLN	2TR-Ex-S	-	-	
Cross feed roller	CLEANING	SS-RG-RL	AVE-CLN	SS-RG-RL	-	-	

*1 Display the value calculated as follows; divide the counter value summed at the time of clearing the counter by the number of times of clearing the counter.

*2 Adjustment after replacement/cleaning.

*3 Test print pattern to output after replacement/cleaning. For the details of the pattern, see the test print ID table. Perform image check with this test print.

13.4.7 Item for Replacement/Cleaning_Test Print ID Table

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

The following table shows the combination of the test print ID in the list of replacement/cleaning items and the test print in the operator maintenance mode. Follow this table to output a test print and check the image at the time of replacing or cleaning the parts.

T-13-22

Test print ID	Halftone 1				Halftone 2				Solid			Others	
	Y	M	C	K	Y	M	C	K	R(Y+M) j	G(Y+C) Aj	B(M+C) Aj	White solid	Grid
1	Y				Y							Y	Y
2		Y				Y						Y	Y
3			Y				Y					Y	Y
4				Y				Y				Y	Y
5	Y	Y	Y	Y				Y	Y	Y	Y		Y
6	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y					Y
7	Y	Y	Y	Y									
8				Y							Y		
9	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y				Y	Y
10													Y

<Operator maintenance mode > adjustment/cleaning > test print screen>

T-13-23

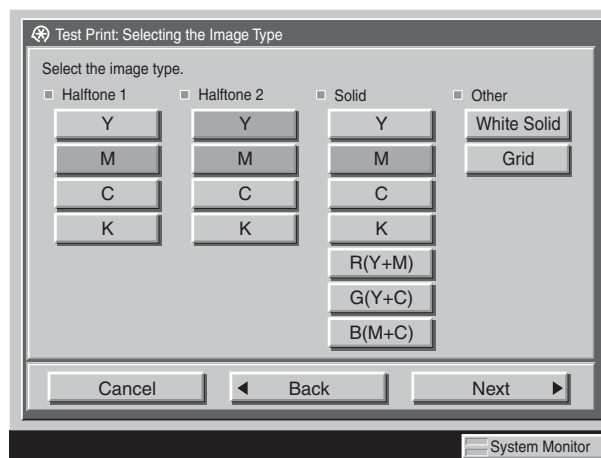


Regarding test print 2

Do not allow an operator to use halftone 2 by their judgment (It is not needed for operator maintenance work (replacement/cleaning).

Halftone 2 serves to output a test print without image process and this test print is used to analyze when image failure (uneven density etc) appears on a normal printing.

If using this function, contact a service division in sales company and follow an instruction.

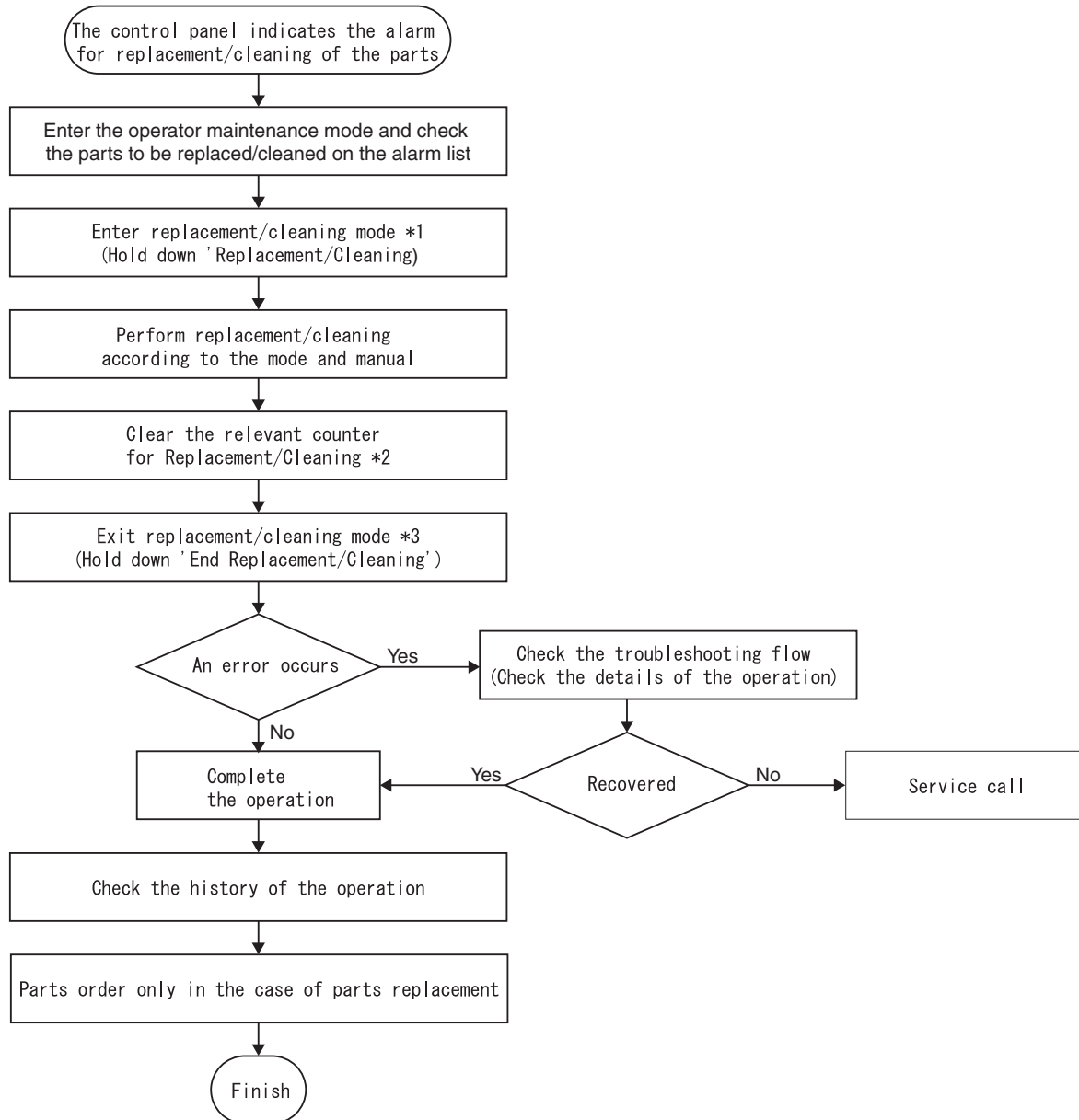


F-13-14

13.4.8 Operation Flow for Operator (Normal Operation)

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

The following is the flow of maintenance for the operator.



*1: Turn off the power for the DC controller PCB.

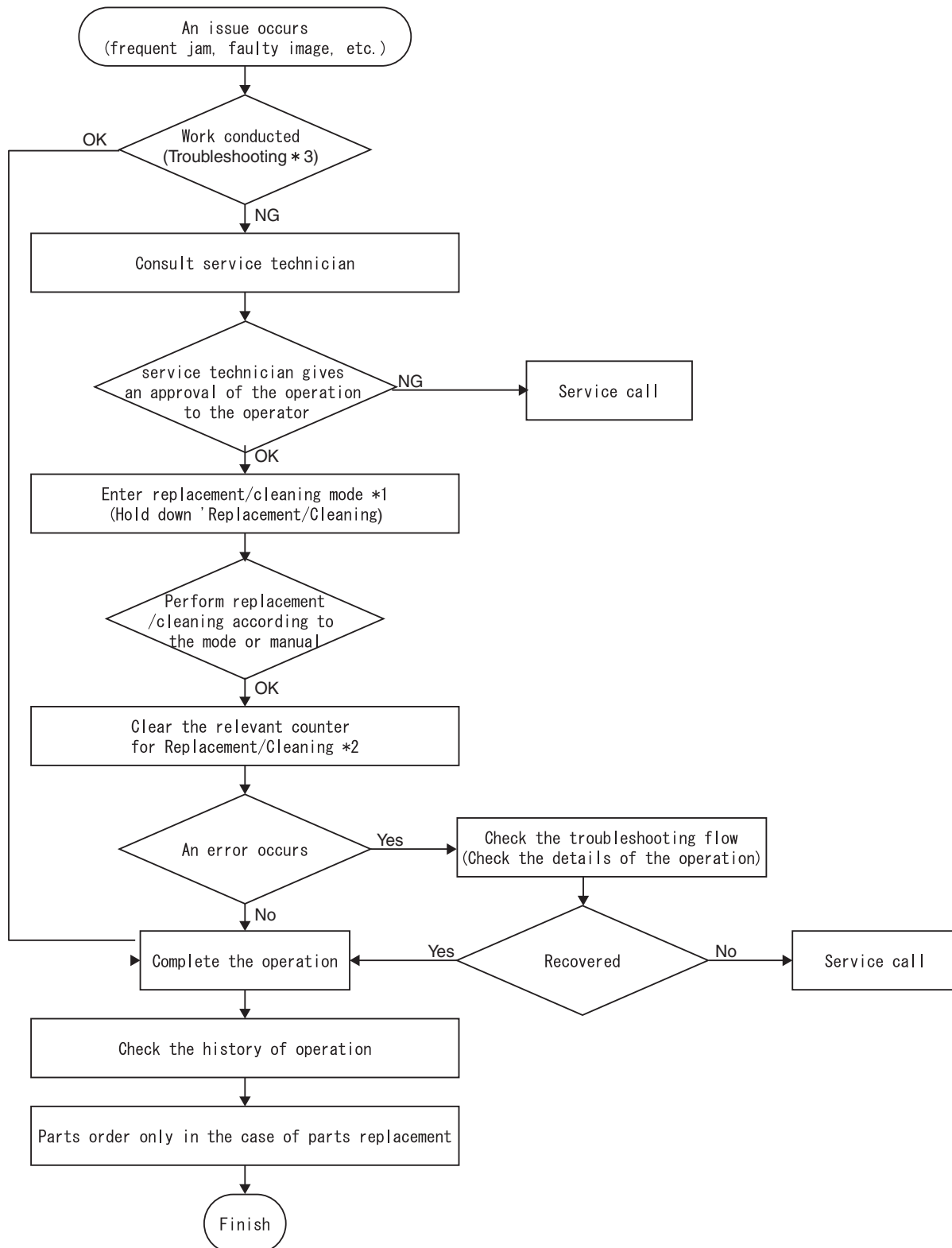
*2: Turn off the power for the DC controller PCB and execute auto adjustment for the part to be replaced/cleaned.

*3: Inform the case as needed in the service manual or service information.

13.4.9 Operation Flow for Operator (Troubleshooting)

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

The following is the flow of maintenance for the operator in the case of troubleshooting.



*1: Turn off the power for the DC controller PCB.

*2: Turn off the power for the DC controller PCB and execute auto adjustment for the part to be replaced/cleaned.

*3: Inform the case as needed in the service manual or service information

Chapter 14 Maintenance and Inspection

Contents

14.1 Periodically Replaced Parts	14-1
14.1.1 Overview	14-1
14.1.2 Main unit	14-1
14.1.3 Reader (optional).....	14-5
14.2 Durables and Consumables.....	14-5
14.2.1 Overview	14-5
14.2.2 Main unit	14-5
14.2.3 Reader (optional).....	14-10
14.3 Scheduled Servicing Basic Procedure	14-10
14.3.1 Periodic service basic procedures	14-10
14.3.2 Periodic service list (main unit)	14-11
14.3.3 Periodic service list (reader; optional)	14-14
14.4 Cleaning Procedure.....	14-15
14.4.1 Photosensitive Drum Unit (Y/M/C/Bk)	14-15
14.4.1.1 Cleaning developing assembly lower sheet metal	14-15
14.4.1.2 Cleaning the Drum Cleaner Pre-Conditioning Exposure Unit.....	14-24
14.4.1.3 Cleaning of the Dust-Proof Glass	14-24
14.4.1.4 Cleaning Drum Patch Sensor	14-26
14.4.2 Primary Transfer Unit	14-27
14.4.2.1 Cleaning the Pre-Transfer Charging Assembly	14-27
14.4.2.2 Cleaning of the ITB Idler Roller	14-28
14.4.2.3 Cleaning the HP Sensor of ITB.....	14-28
14.4.2.4 Cleaning of the ITB Edge Sensor	14-30
14.4.2.5 Cleaning of the ITB Side Scraper Unit.....	14-32
14.4.2.6 Cleaning the Lead Edge Registration Patch Sensor.....	14-32
14.4.2.7 Cleaning the Registration Patch Sensor.....	14-33
14.4.3 Secondary Transfer Unit	14-33
14.4.3.1 Cleaning of the Secondary Transfer Outlet Sensor.....	14-33
14.4.3.2 Cleaning of the Pre-Fixing Feeder Unit.....	14-34
14.4.4 Fixing Unit	14-35
14.4.4.1 Cleaning of the Primary Fixing Thermistor/Thermoswitch.....	14-35
14.4.4.2 Cleaning of the Secondary Fixing Thermistor/Thermoswitch.....	14-43
14.4.4.3 Cleaning of the Primary Fixing Refresh Roller	14-57
14.4.4.4 Cleaning of the Secondary Fixing Refresh Roller	14-60
14.4.4.5 Cleaning of the Primary Fixing Refresh Cleaning Roller.....	14-63
14.4.4.6 Cleaning of the Secondary Fixing Refresh Cleaning Roller.....	14-64
14.4.5 Pickup / Feeding Unit.....	14-64
14.4.5.1 Cleaning Pickup Feed Belt.....	14-64
14.4.5.2 Cleaning Tandem Feed Roller	14-65
14.4.5.3 Cleaning of the Askew Feed Roller	14-66
14.4.6 Fiiter	14-67
14.4.6.1 Cleaning Sub-Station Left Rear Ozone Filter	14-67
14.4.6.2 Cleaning Sub-Station Upper Rear Ozone Filter.....	14-68
14.4.6.3 Cleaning Sub-Station Middle Rear Ozone Filter	14-69

14.1 Periodically Replaced Parts

14.1.1 Overview

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

Parts which must be replaced at periodic intervals (where loss of functionality of the part may have a serious impact, even though there may be no external signs of wear or damage), in order to maintain the functionality of the product at a certain level, are as shown below. Parts replacement should be carried out during periodic service, conducted as close as possible to the specified sheet count.



The replacement interval sheet count will change depending on installation environment and conditions of usage.

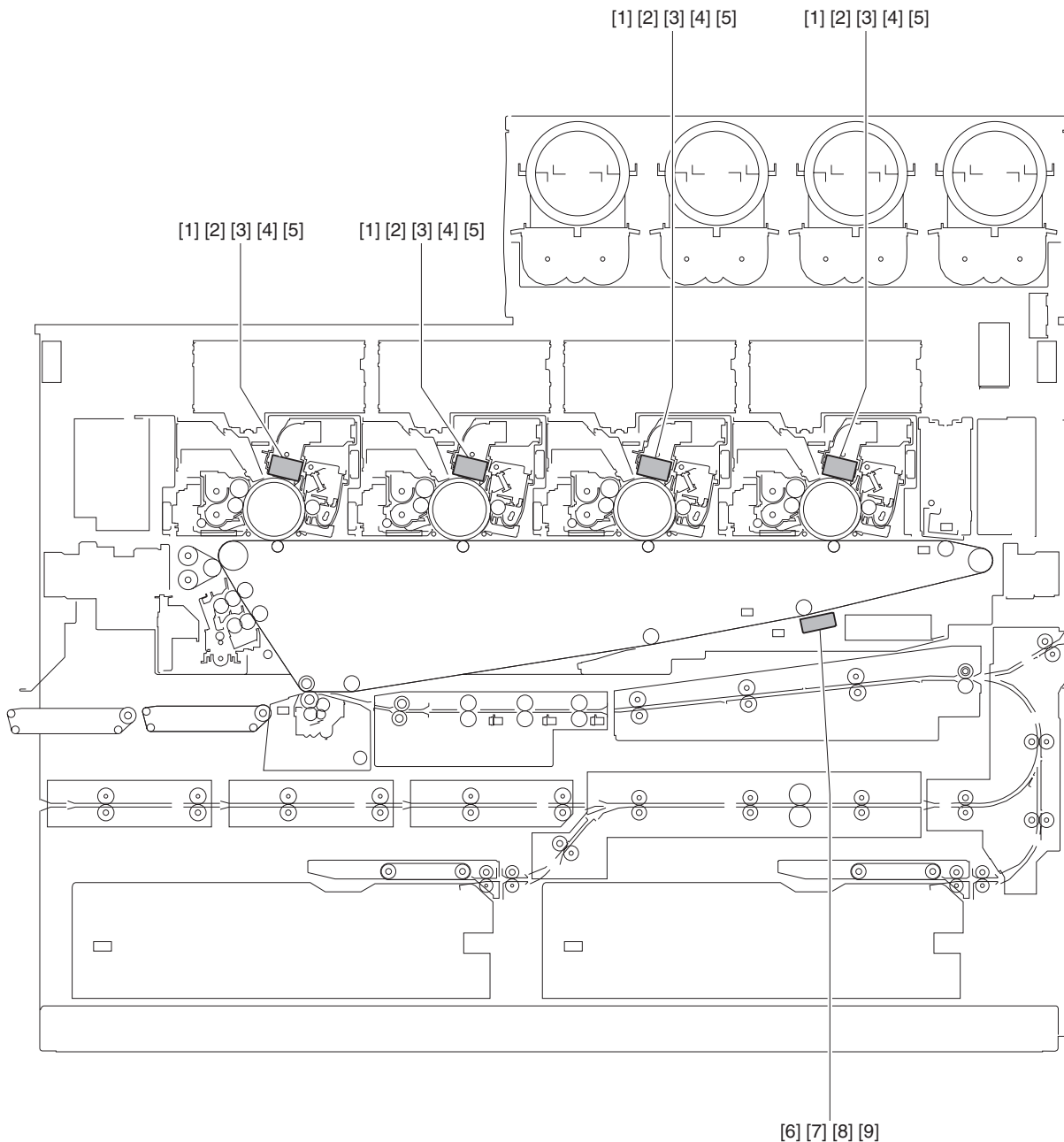
1. Confirm replacement interval of periodic replacement parts.

The replacement interval can be checked with the following service mode.

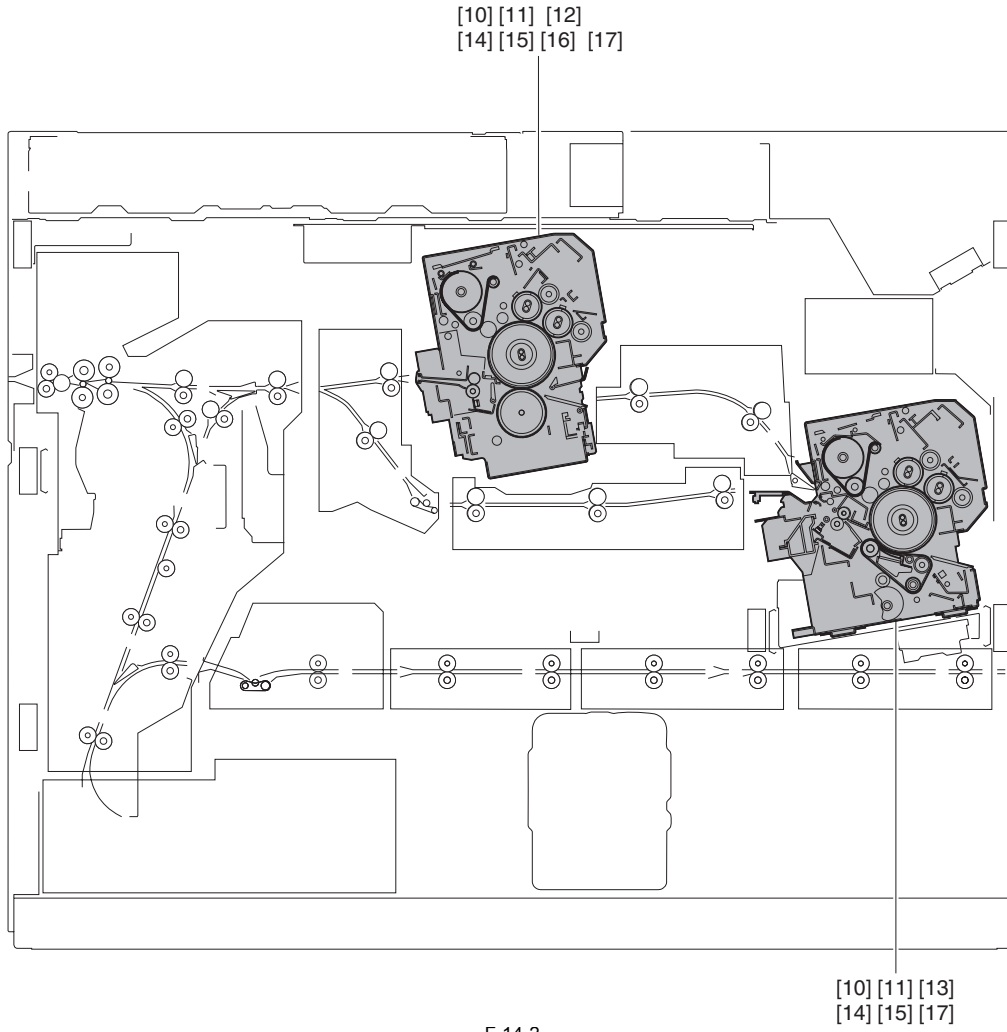
COPIER > COUNTER > PRDC-1

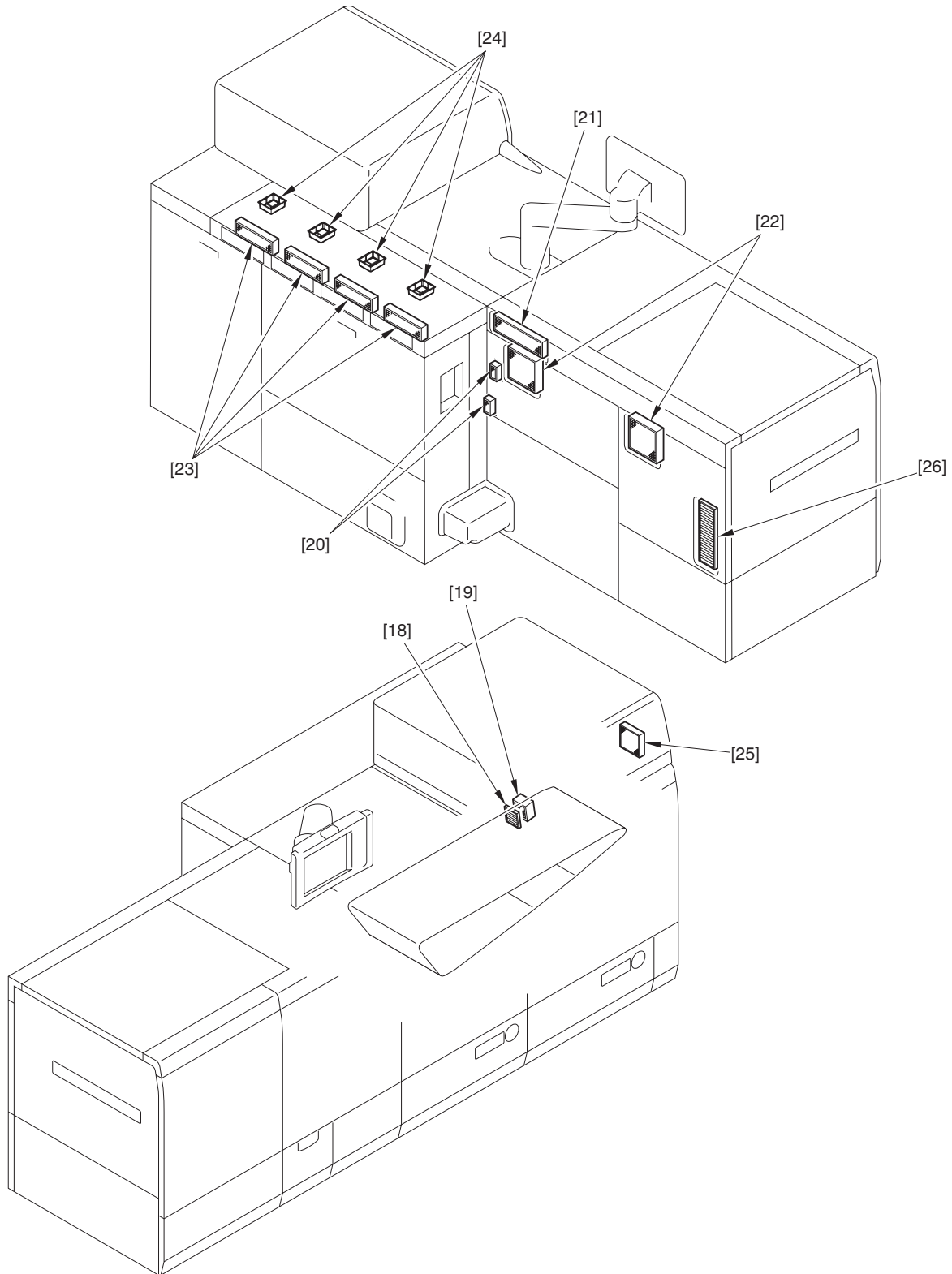
14.1.2 Main unit

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000



F-14-1





F-14-3

* Operator maintenance parts (ORP)

** Parts assigned for replacing on a unit basis depending on the operator's technical level.

T-14-1

As of December, 2007						
No.	Part name	Part No.	Q'ty	Replacement interval (Unit: 10,000 sheets)		Remarks
				imagePRESS C7000VP	imagePRESS C6000/ C6000VP	
[1]	Primary charging wire	FB4-3687	AR	21	18	ORP replaced as a unit (Primary charging wire: FM2-9257)

No.	Part name	Part No.	Q'ty	Replacement interval (Unit: 10,000 sheets)		Remarks
				imagePRESS C7000VP	imagePRESS C6000/C6000VP	
-	Primary charging wire*	FM2-9257	4	21	18	This part exclusively for ORP that includes [1], [4] and [5].
[2]	Primary grid plate*	FC6-1056	4	21	18	
[3]	Primary charger**	FM3-4189	4	160	140	
[4]	Pad holder (primary)	FL2-0464	4	21	18	ORP replaced as a unit (Primary charging wire: FM2-9257)
[5]	Slider (primary)	FL2-0462	4	21	18	ORP replaced as a unit (Primary charging wire: FM2-9257)
[6]	Pre-transfer charging wire	FB4-3687	AR	31	28	ORP replaced as a unit (Pre-transfer charging wire: FM2-9257)
-	Pre-transfer charging wire*	FM2-9257	1	31	28	This part exclusively for ORP that includes [6], [8] and [9].
[7]	Pre-transfer charger**	FM2-2157	1	160	140	
[8]	Pad holder (pre-transfer)	FL2-0464	1	31	28	ORP replaced as a unit (Pre-transfer charging wire: FM2-9257)
[9]	Slider (pre-transfer)	FL2-0462	1	31	28	ORP replaced as a unit (Pre-transfer charging wire: FM2-9257)
[10]	Fixing assembly main thermistor	FK2-3160	2	100	100	One each for primary and secondary fixing assemblies. Non-contact type
[11]	Fixing assembly sub-thermistor	FK2-3095	2	100	100	One each for primary and secondary fixing assemblies.
[12]	Pressure thermistor	FK2-3096	1	100	100	Second fixing assembly only.
[13]	Inlet thermistor	FK2-3094	1	100	100	Primary fixing belt only.
[14]	External heater thermistor	FK2-3097	2	100	100	One each for primary and secondary fixing assemblies.
[15]	Fixing assembly thermo switch	FM3-0656	2	100	100	One each for primary and secondary fixing assemblies.
[16]	Pressure thermo switch	FM3-0655	1	100	100	Second fixing assembly only.
[17]	External heater thermo switch	FM3-0657	4	100	100	Two each for primary and secondary fixing assemblies.
[18]	Ozone filter within the intermediate transfer unit	FC6-2153	1	150	150	
[19]	Air filter in the intermediate transfer unit	FC6-2152	1	150	150	
[20]	Sub-station left rear ozone filter	FC6-8133	2	100	100	
[21]	Sub-station upper rear ozone filter	FC6-8411	1	100	100	
[22]	Sub-station middle rear ozone filter	FC6-2035	2	100	100	
[23]	Main station rear ozone filter	FC7-4563	4	150	150	
[24]	Main station rear toner filter	FB2-4383	4	10	10	
[25]	Primary suction filter	FC7-7547	1	100	100	
[26]	Paper delivery electrostatic filter (Sub-station)	FC5-9988	1	100	100	
[27]	Bypass decurler driven roller	FC7-1598	1	100	100	Clean the bypass decurler drive roller when this part is replaced.

14.1.3 Reader (optional)

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

There are no periodic replacement parts in the reader unit.

14.2 Durables and Consumables

14.2.1 Overview

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

The expected lives (sheet counts) of parts that may be expected to wear out or break down at least once during the product's warranty, but which do not need to be replaced until they actually fail, are as shown below.

1. Confirm replacement interval of consumable parts.

The replacement interval can be checked with the following service mode.

- Host machine

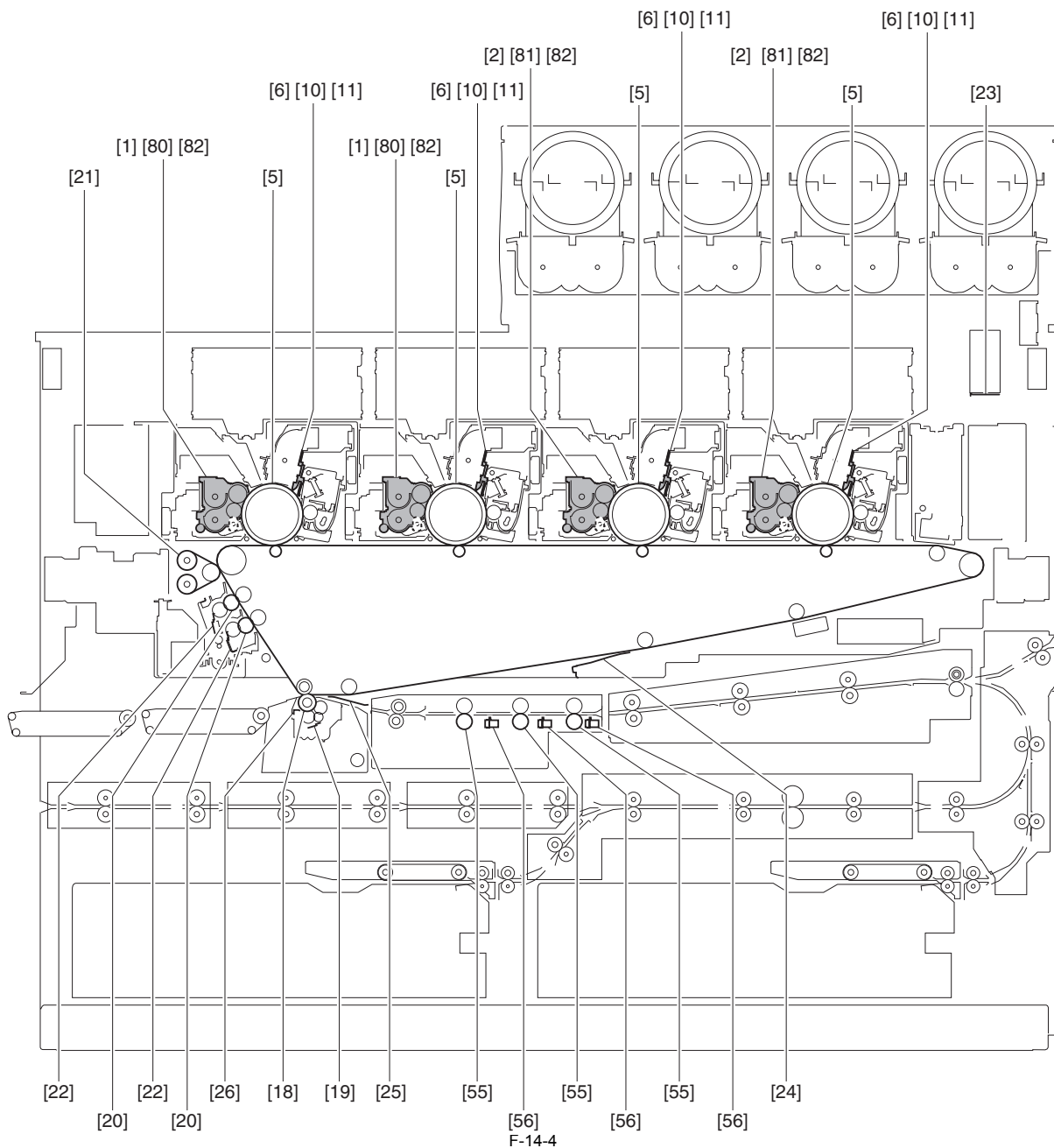
COPIER > COUNTER > DRBL-1

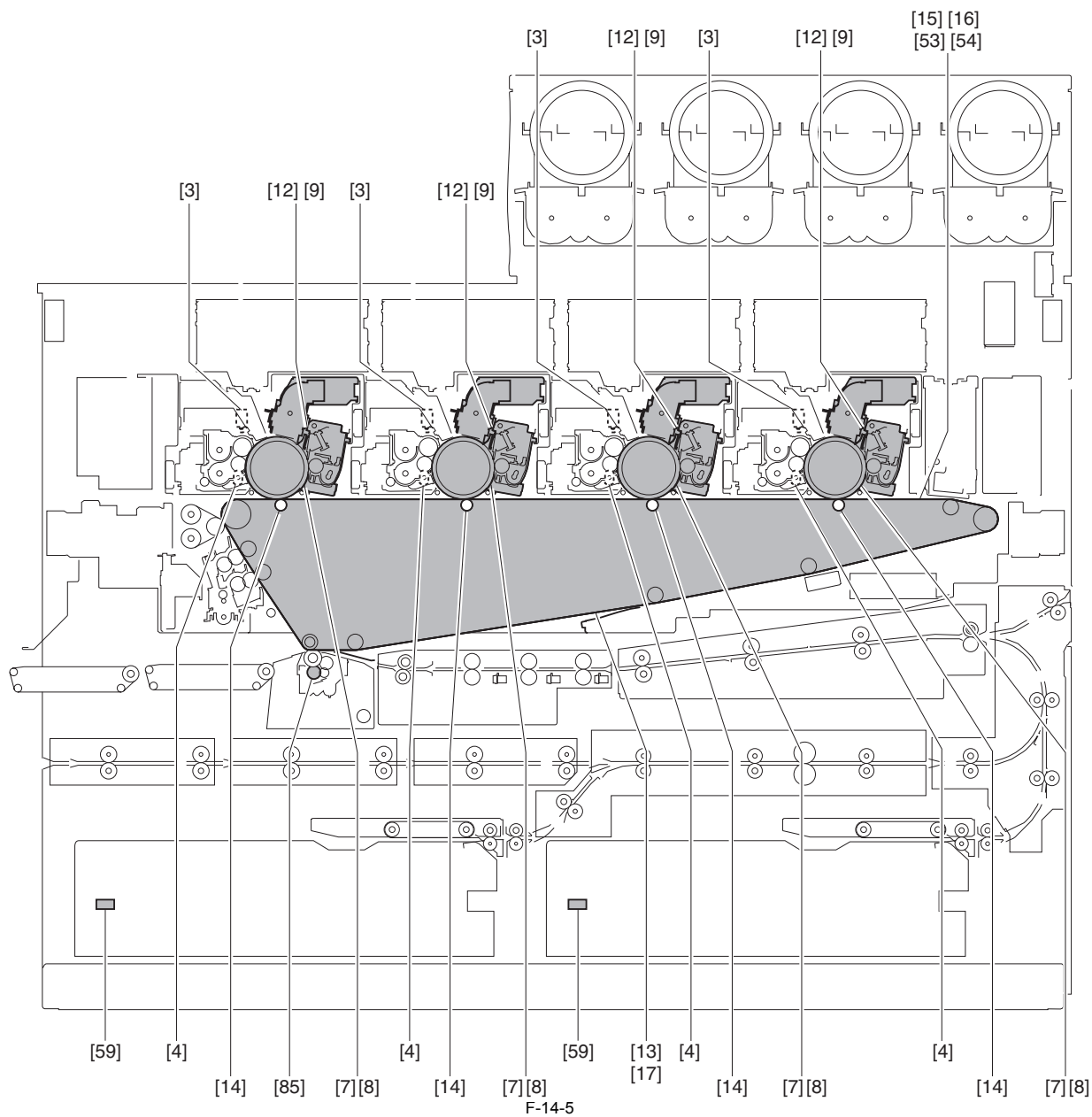
- Option

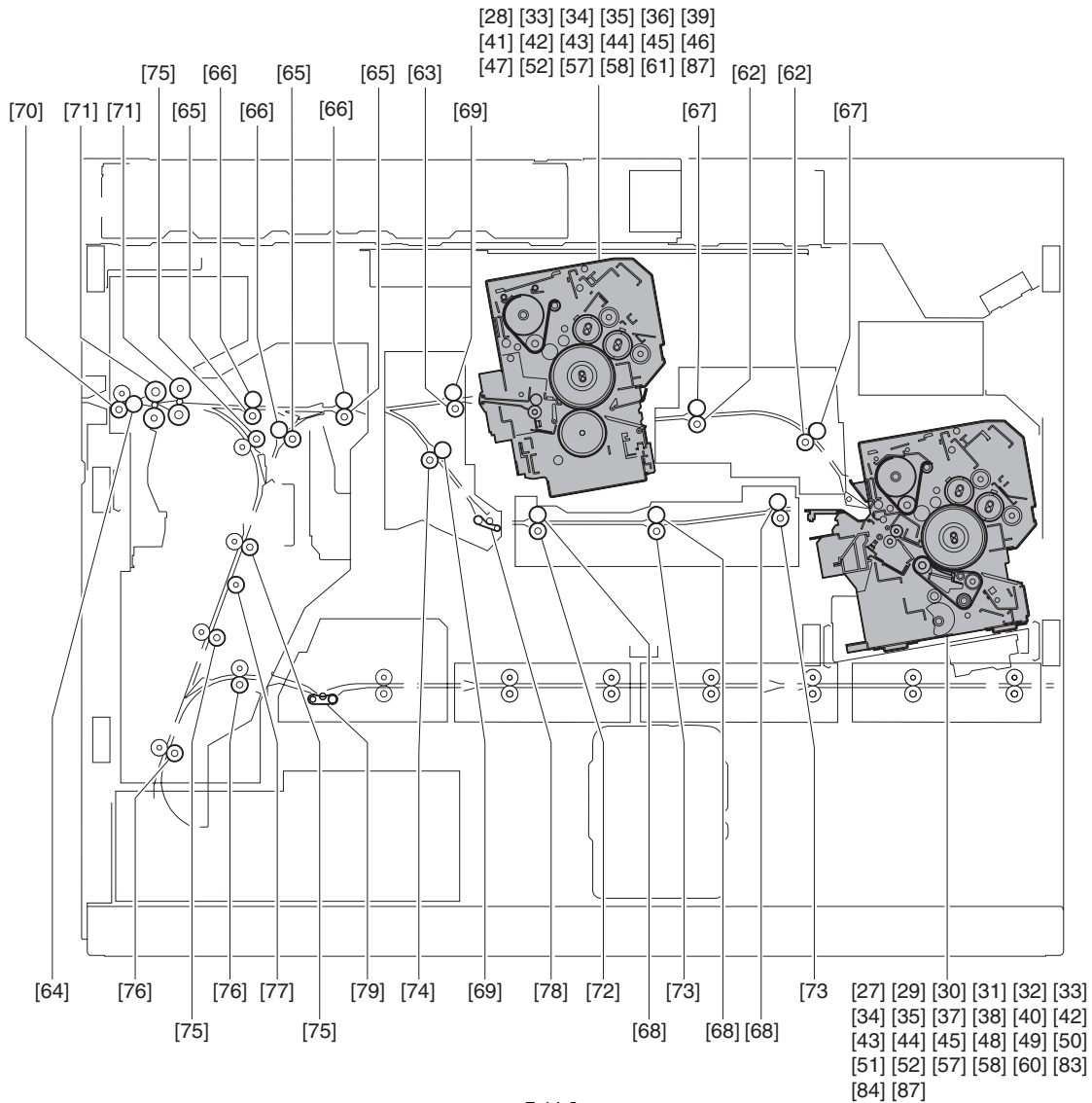
COPIER > COUNTER > DRBL-2

14.2.2 Main unit

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000







F-14-6

* Operator maintenance parts (ORP)

** Parts assigned for replacing on a unit basis depending on the operator's technical level.

T-14-2

As of December, 2007							
No.	Part name	Part No.	Q'ty	Replacement interval (Unit: 10,000 sheets)			Remarks
				imagePRESS C7000VP	imagePRESS C6000	imagePRESS C6000VP	
[1]	Developing assembly (Y/M)	FM3-4190	2	100	85	85	
[2]	Developing assembly (C/Bk)	FM3-4191	2	100	85	85	
[3]	Sub-hopper stirring motor	FL2-6139	4	450	450	450	
[4]	Patch detection cleaning motor	FL2-6138	4	160	160	160	
[5]	Photosensitive drum*	0444B00XAA	4	85	66	74	X: The number varies depending on the destination.
[6]	Drum cleaning blade*	FCS-8829	4	170	132	148	
[7]	Side seal (F)	FL2-2707	4	85	66	74	ORP replaced as a unit (Drum cleaning kit) (Replaced along with photosensitive drum)
[8]	Side seal (R)	FL2-2708	4	85	66	74	ORP replaced as a unit (Drum cleaning kit) (Replaced along with photosensitive drum)
[9]	Scoop-up sheet	FL2-2709	4	85	66	74	ORP replaced as a unit (Drum cleaning kit) (Replaced along with photosensitive drum)

No.	Part name	Part No.	Q'ty	Replacement interval (Unit: 10,000 sheets)			Remarks
				imagePRESS C7000VP	imagePRESS C6000	imagePRESS C6000VP	
[10]	End seal (F)	FL2-2713	4	170	132	148	ORP replaced as a unit (Drum cleaning kit) (Replaced along with photosensitive drum)
[11]	End seal (R)	FL2-2714	4	170	132	148	ORP replaced as a unit (Drum cleaning kit) (Replaced along with photosensitive drum)
-	Drum cleaning kit*	FM2-9258	4	85	66	74	This part exclusively for ORP that includes [7], [8], [9], [10] and [11].
[12]	Drum cleaner brush roller	FC5-8837	4	170	132	148	
[13]	Intermediate transfer belt (ITB)*	FM3-1644	1	100	100	100	
[14]	Primary transfer roller*	FC6-1545	4	90	90	90	
[15]	Secondary transfer roller*	FC5-9252	1	60	60	60	
[16]	ITB inner cleaning scraper*	FM2-2145	1	100	100	100	Replaced along with ITB.
[17]	ITB end scraper	FL2-2025	2	200	200	200	
[18]	Secondary transfer external roller*	FC5-9331	1	30	30	30	
[19]	Secondary transfer cleaner kit*	FM2-2171	1	124	112	112	
[20]	ITB cleaning brush roller*	FC5-9156	2	60	60	60	
[21]	ITB cleaning web*	FC5-9197	1	10	9	9	
[22]	ITB cleaning blade*	FC6-4910	2	100	100	100	
[23]	Registration patch cleaning shutter*	FL2-2023	1	60	60	60	
[24]	Edge registration patch cleaning shutter*	FL2-2024	1	60	60	60	
[25]	Secondary transfer inlet guide	FL2-4114	1	180	180	180	
[26]	Secondary transfer unit toner blocking sheet	FL2-4118	1	180	180	180	
[27]	Fixing roller (primary)*	FL2-6945	1	50	50	50	
[28]	Fixing roller (secondary)*	FL2-7881	1	30	30	30	
[29]	Fixing belt	FL2-6530	1	30	30	30	ORP replaced as a unit (Fixing belt unit)
[30]	Pressure pad	FL2-5457	1	30	30	30	ORP replaced as a unit (Fixing belt unit)
[31]	Pad cover	FL2-6259	1	30	30	30	ORP replaced as a unit (Fixing belt unit)
[32]	Oil coating roller	FL2-5453	1	30	30	30	ORP replaced as a unit (Fixing belt unit)
-	Fixing belt unit	FM2-2215 (200V) FM2-9267 (240V)	1	30	30	30	This part exclusively for ORP that includes [29], [30], [31], [32], [37], [48], [49], [50] and [51].
[33]	Fixing web*	FC5-9778	2	30	30	30	One each for primary and secondary fixing assemblies.
[34]	Fixing web roller*	FC5-9761	2	100	100	100	One each for primary and secondary fixing assemblies.
[35]	External heating roller	FC7-0932	4	75	75	75	ORP replaced as a unit (fixing external heating roller unit)
-	fixing external heating roller unit (primary)	FM2-2197 (200V) FM2-9265 (240V)	1	75	75	75	This part exclusively for ORP that includes [35], [44], [45] and [52].
-	fixing external heating roller unit (secondary)	FM2-2197 (200V) FM2-9265 (240V)	1	75	75	75	This part exclusively for ORP that includes [35], [44], [45] and [52].
[36]	Fixing pressure roller*	FC7-3436	1	30	30	30	Secondary fixing assembly only.
[37]	Steering roller	FC5-9766	1	60	60	60	ORP replaced as a unit (Fixing belt unit)
[38]	Delivery lower separation claw (primary)	FM3-2100	6	100	100	100	
[39]	Delivery lower separation claw (secondary)	FM2-2309	6	100	100	100	
[40]	Separation plate (primary)	FM2-2218	1	100	100	100	
[41]	Separation plate (secondary)	FM2-2310	1	100	100	100	
[42]	Insulating bush (fixing roller)	FB4-3689	4	100	100	100	Two each for primary and secondary fixing assemblies.
[43]	Bearing (fixing roller)	XG9-0419	4	300	300	300	Two each for primary and secondary fixing assemblies.
[44]	Insulating bush (external heating roller)	FC5-2582	8	75	75	75	ORP replaced as a unit (fixing external heating roller unit) Four each for primary and secondary fixing assemblies.

							As of December, 2007
No.	Part name	Part No.	Q'ty	Replacement interval (Unit: 10,000 sheets)			Remarks
				imagePRESS C7000VP	imagePRESS C6000	imagePRESS C6000VP	
[45]	Bearing (external heating roller)	XG9-0584	8	100	100	100	ORP replaced as a unit (fixing external heating roller unit) Four each for primary and secondary fixing assemblies.
[46]	Insulating bush (pressure roller)	FB6-6519	2	90	90	90	
[47]	Bearing (pressure roller)	XG9-0378	2	300	300	300	
[48]	Bearing 1 (fixing belt)	XG9-0585	2	100	100	100	ORP replaced as a unit (Fixing belt unit)
[49]	Bearing 3 (fixing belt)	XG9-0407	2	100	100	100	ORP replaced as a unit (Fixing belt unit)
[50]	Bearing 4 (fixing belt)	XG9-0177	2	100	100	100	ORP replaced as a unit (Fixing belt unit)
[51]	Bearing 5 (fixing belt)	XG9-0593	2	100	100	100	ORP replaced as a unit (Fixing belt unit)
[52]	External heater cleaning roller	FC7-7041	4	75	75	75	ORP replaced as a unit (fixing external heating roller unit) Two each for primary and secondary fixing assemblies.
[53]	ITB end seal (F)	FL2-2407	1	100	100	100	Replaced along with ITB.
[54]	ITB end seal (R)	FL2-2406	1	100	100	100	Replaced along with ITB.
[55]	Cross-feed roller	FC5-9721	3	50	50	50	
[56]	Cross-feed roller cleaning assembly	FL2-4074	3	50	50	50	Replaced along with the cross-feed roller (FC5-9721).
[57]	Refresh roller*	FM3-1648	2	25	25	25	Replaced along with the refresh cleaning roller.
[58]	Refresh cleaning roller*	FL2-6260	2	25	25	25	Replaced along with the cleaning roller.
[59]	Separation pad	FL2-7257	4	10	10	10	actual number of prints
[60]	Primary fixing internal delivery lower roller	FC7-4644	1	450	450	450	
[61]	Secondary fixing internal delivery lower roller	FC5-9776	1	450	450	450	
[62]	Tandem feed roller	FC6-2251	2	450	450	450	Grease is applied.
[63]	Feed roller (merger unit)	FC6-2251	1	450	450	450	Grease is applied.
[64]	One-way clutch (delivery)	FU6-0378	1	300	300	300	
[65]	Delivery feed roller	FC6-2253	3	450	450	450	Grease is applied.
[66]	Driven roller (delivery feed)	FL2-2016	3	450	450	450	
[67]	Driven roller (tandem)	FL2-2016	2	450	450	450	
[68]	Driven roller (bypass)	FL2-2016	3	450	450	450	
[69]	Driven roller (merger)	FL2-2016	2	450	450	450	
[70]	Delivery roller	FC5-9885	1	450	450	450	Grease is applied.
[71]	Decurler roller	FC5-9904	2	100	100	100	
[72]	Bypass feed roller C	FC5-9835	1	450	450	450	
[73]	Bypass feed roller A	FC5-9833	2	450	450	450	Grease is applied.
[74]	Merger unit feed roller A	FC5-9833	1	450	450	450	Grease is applied.
[75]	Delivery reverse roller	FC6-2280	3	450	450	450	Grease is applied.
[76]	Duplex reverse roller	FC6-2455	2	450	450	450	Grease is applied.
[77]	Color sensor sponge roller	FC6-3342	1	450	450	450	
[78]	Wide belt (merger unit)	FC7-4600	10	100	100	100	
[79]	Wide belt (duplex decurler)	FC7-4600	10	150	150	150	
[80]	Drum patch sensor shutter (Y/M)*	FL2-1968	2	25	25	25	
[81]	Drum patch sensor shutter (C/K)*	FL2-1979	2	25	25	25	
[82]	Drum patch sensor*	FK2-3168	4	50	50	50	
[83]	Primary fixing drive gear	FU6-0336	1	100	100	100	
[84]	Primary fixing two drive gear	FU6-0449	1	100	100	100	
[85]	Secondary transfer cleaning brush roller	FC5-9335	2	31	28	28	
[87]	Fixing web solenoid	FM3-2134	2	450	450	450	
-	Developer (Y)	0443B00XAA	1	75	75	75	X: The number varies depending on the destination.
-	Developer (M)	0442B00XAA	1	25	25	25	X: The number varies depending on the destination.
-	Developer (C)	0441B00XAA	1	75	75	75	X: The number varies depending on the destination.
-	Developer (K)	0440B00XAA	1	75	75	75	X: The number varies depending on the destination.

As of December, 2007

No.	Part name	Part No.	Q'ty	Replacement interval (Unit: 10,000 sheets)			Remarks
				imagePRESS C7000VP	imagePRESS C6000	imagePRESS C6000VP	
-	Drum unit (Y)**	FM3-2107	1	900	900	900	This part exclusively for ORP that includes [6], [7], [8], [9], [10], [11] and [12].
-	Drum unit (M)**	FM3-2107	1	900	900	900	This part exclusively for ORP that includes [6], [7], [8], [9], [10], [11] and [12].
-	Drum unit (C)**	FM3-2107	1	900	900	900	This part exclusively for ORP that includes [6], [7], [8], [9], [10], [11] and [12].
-	Drum unit (K)**	FM3-2107	1	900	900	900	This part exclusively for ORP that includes [6], [7], [8], [9], [10], [11] and [12].
-	ITB cleaner unit**	FM2-2150	1	900	900	900	This part exclusively for ORP that includes [20] and [22].
-	Fixing web unit (primary)**	FM3-2092	1	900	900	900	This part exclusively for ORP that includes [33] and [34].
-	Fixing web unit (secondary)**	FM3-2092	1	900	900	900	This part exclusively for ORP that includes [33] and [34].

MEMO

Replacement intervals shown are medium values taken from evaluation results data. Also, please note that parts numbers may change due to later design changes, etc.

14.2.3 Reader (optional)

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

There are no periodic replacement parts in the reader unit.

14.3 Scheduled Servicing Basic Procedure**14.3.1 Periodic service basic procedures**

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000



- Periodic service is done, in principle, every 100,000 sheets.
- Before making a periodic service call, check the service book to see if any parts are due for replacement, and be sure to take those parts with you.
- If a power plug is left plugged in for an extended period of time in a location where there is a lot of dust, humidity and soot, there is a danger of fire. (Because there the danger that accumulated dust will absorb moisture and cause insulation failure,) the power plug should be removed regularly and the plug and socket cleaned with a dry cloth to remove any accumulated dust and dirt.

1. Operating procedures

- 1) Greet the person responsible and ascertain the current situation.
- 2) Check counter records and misprints.
- 3) Check the following items and carry out cleaning/ adjustment as required.

Check item

Test print	Image density spec. Soiling of white areas Character clarity Margins Fixing, Blur, soiled back Margin spec.
Paper feed	Registration upper and lower rollers Paper dust in front of registration assembly

- 4) Inspect waste toner container.

If the waste toner container is more than half full of waste toner, empty the toner into a plastic bag, or replace the waste toner container.



- Be sure to observe local ordinances when disposing of waste toner.
- Do not throw waste toner into fire. (Danger of explosion!)

- 5) Clean the copyboard glass and scanner glass.
- 6) Make a test print.
- 7) Make a sample print.
- 8) Check that the leak breaker is operating properly.
 - 8-1) Perform the shutdown sequence, and then turn OFF the main power.
 - 8-2) Press the test switch for the leakage breaker. The leakage breaker is working properly if the breaker is shifted at the OFF side. Replace the leakage breaker

if the breaker switch is not shifted at OFF side even if pressing the test switch several times.

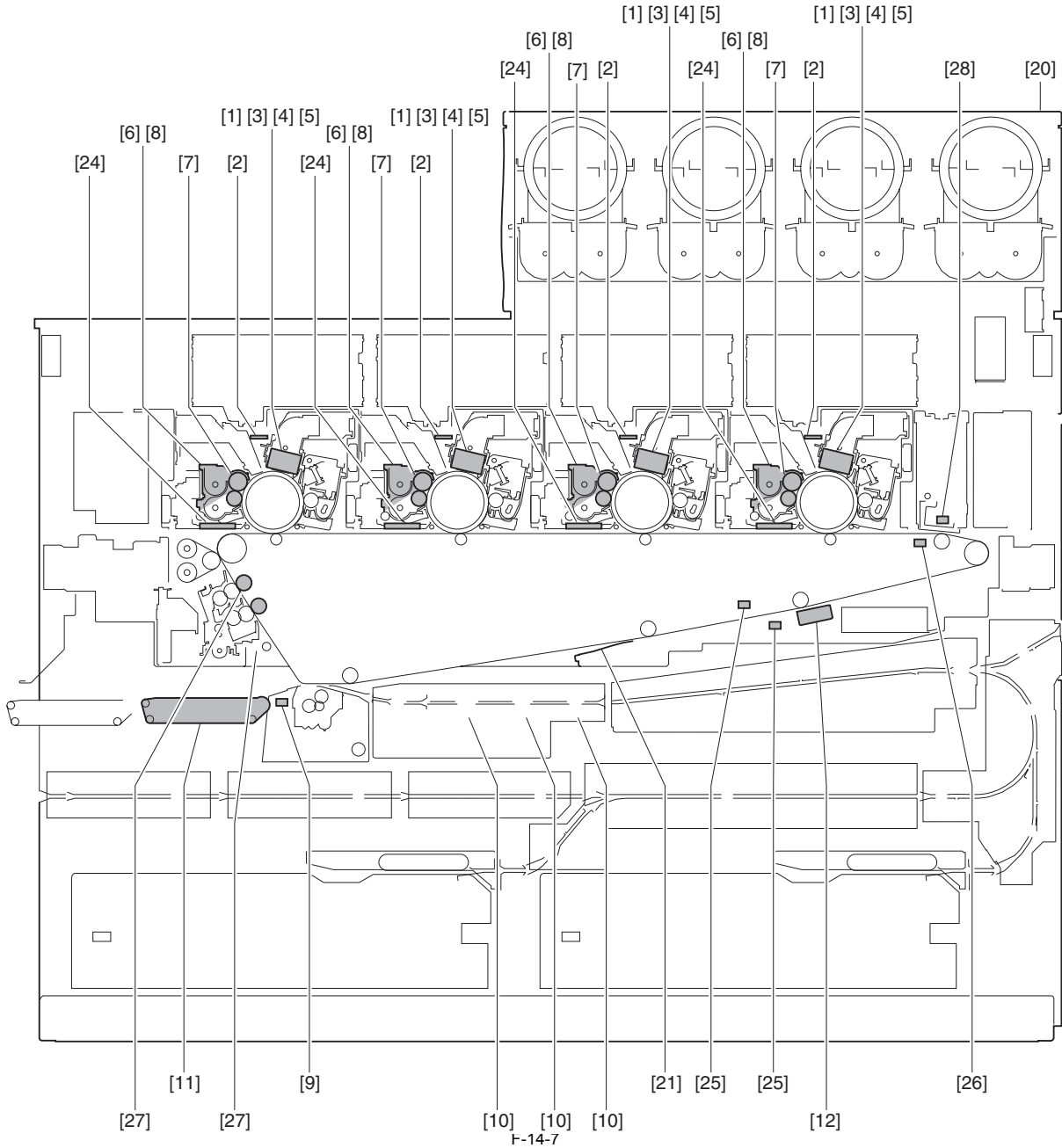
2. Recovery procedures

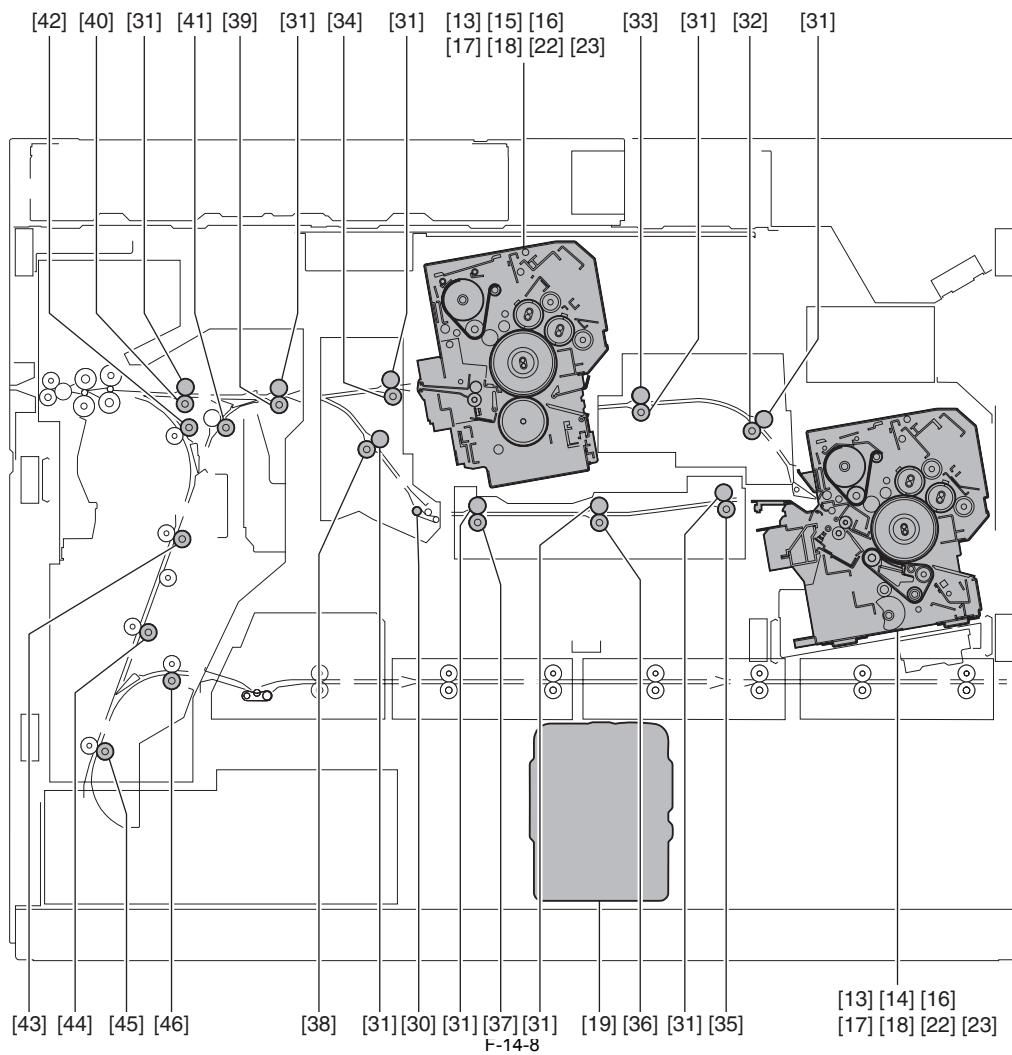
After carrying out the operational checks, turn the main power switch ON.

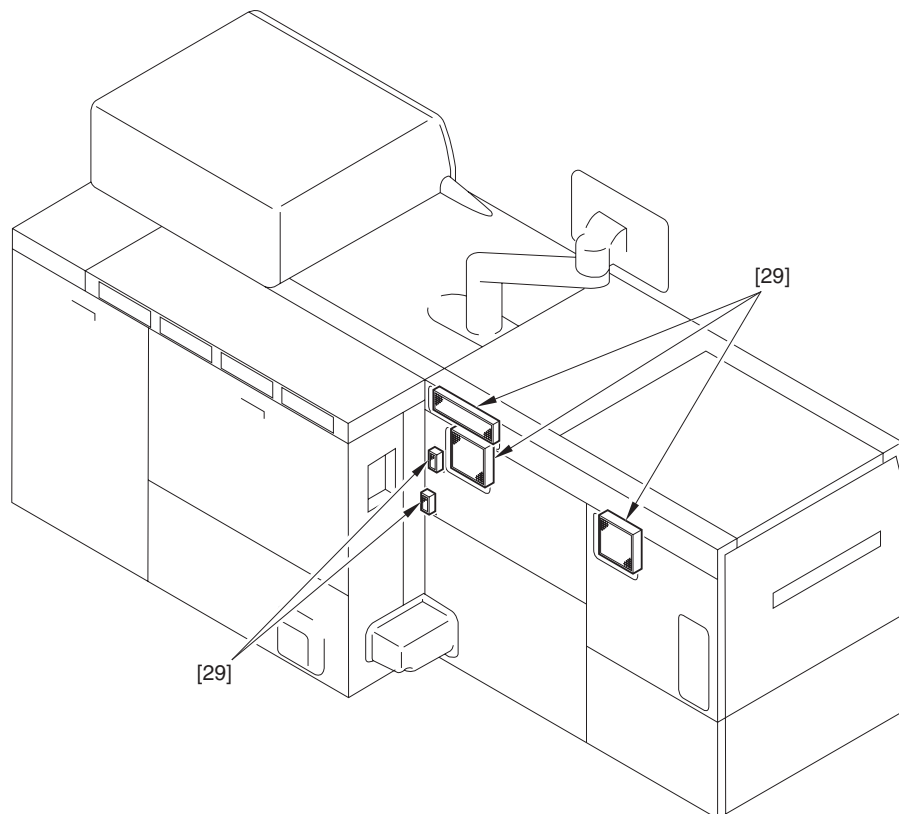
- 1) Gather up the sample prints and tidy and clean up around the machine.
- 2) Record the final counter.
- 3) Fill in the service book and report to the person responsible. Record the leak breaker operation check

14.3.2 Periodic service list (main unit)

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000







F-14-9



Be sure to use only specified solvents and oils.

*: Operator maintenance

*1: Wipe the toner adhered on the surface of the filter with a lint-free paper moistened with water. Be sure that the filter is not clogged so that heat within the machine is discharged through the filter.

T-14-3

A: Cleaning B: Replacement C: Lubrication D: Adjustment E: Maintenance					
No.	Location	Task	Interval (Unit: 10,000 sheets)	Remarks	Installation/cleaning occasion
[1]	Dust proof filter	A	As required	Only with DADF mounted	
[2]	Dust proof glass	A	10		
[3]	Charging wire (primary, pre-transfer)	A	At installation		
[4]	Shield plate (primary transfer assembly)	A	At installation		
[5]	Developing unit lower metal plate	A	imagePRESS C7000VP: 85 imagePRESS C6000: 66 imagePRESS C6000VP: 74	Clean at the time of replacing the photosensitive drum	
[6]	Developing patch sensor	A	25		
[7]	Developing cylinder	E	At installation		
[8]	Developer	B	25(M), 75(Y/C/Bk)		
[9]	Secondary transfer outlet sensor	A	15	blower brush	
[10]	Cross-feed registration Cross-feed roller	A	10	cleaning solvent, lint-free cloth	
[11]	Fixing primary delivery belt	A	15	cleaning solvent, lint-free cloth	
[12]	Shield plate (pre-transfer charger)	A	30	cleaning solvent, lint-free cloth	
[13]	Fixing web	E	At installation		
[14]	Primary fixing thermistor / thermo-switch	A	50	cleaning solvent, lint-free cloth	
[15]	Secondary fixing thermistor / thermo-switch	A	30	cleaning solvent, lint-free cloth	
[16]	Fixing inlet guide	A	10	cleaning solvent, lint-free cloth	
[17]	Delivery upper separation plate	A	10	cleaning solvent, lint-free cloth	
[18]	Delivery lower separation claw	A	10	cleaning solvent, lint-free cloth	
[19]	Waste toner bottle	A	5	User replacement	
[20]	Auto-gradation correction	D	As required	Recommend first thing in the morning	

A: Cleaning B: Replacement C: Lubrication D: Adjustment E: Maintenance					
No.	Location	Task	Interval (Unit: 10,000 sheets)	Remarks	Installation/cleaning location
[21]	ITB edge scraper	A	100		
[22]	Refresh roller	A:10 B:25		cleaning solvent, lint-free cloth	
[23]	Refresh roller cleaning roller	A:At replacing the fixing web B:25		cleaning solvent, lint-free cloth	
[24]	Drum cleaner pre-exposure unit	A	imagePRESS C7000VP: 85 imagePRESS C6000: 66 imagePRESS C6000VP: 74	Clean at the time of replacing the photosensitive drum cleaning solvent, lint-free cloth	
[25]	ITB HP sensor	A	100	blower brush	
[26]	ITB edge sensor	A	100	blower brush	
[27]	ITB idle roller	A	100	cleaning solvent, lint-free cloth	
[28]	Registration patch sensor/Leading edge registration patch sensor	A	60	cleaning solvent, lint-free cloth	
[29]	Ozone filter	A	25	cleaning water, lint-free cloth*1	
[30]	Bypass decurler drive roller	A	100	cleaning solvent, lint-free cloth Wipe off the soil or wax.	
[31]	Driven roller (Tandem feed unit, Bypass feed unit, Fixing confluence path unit, Reverse / outside delivery unit)	A	100	cleaning solvent, lint-free cloth Wipe off the soil or wax.	
[32]	Tandem feed roller 1	A	100	cleaning solvent, lint-free cloth Wipe off the soil or wax.	
[33]	Tandem feed roller 2	A	100	cleaning solvent, lint-free cloth Wipe off the soil or wax.	
[34]	Tandem feed roller 3	A	100	cleaning solvent, lint-free cloth Wipe off the soil or wax.	
[35]	Bypass feed roller 1	A	100	cleaning solvent, lint-free cloth Wipe off the soil or wax.	
[36]	Bypass feed roller 2	A	100	cleaning solvent, lint-free cloth Wipe off the soil or wax.	
[37]	Bypass feed roller 3	A	100	cleaning solvent, lint-free cloth Wipe off the soil or wax.	
[38]	Bypass feed roller 4	A	100	cleaning solvent, lint-free cloth Wipe off the soil or wax.	
[39]	Delivery roller 1	A	100	cleaning solvent, lint-free cloth Wipe off the soil or wax.	
[40]	Delivery roller 2	A	100	cleaning solvent, lint-free cloth Wipe off the soil or wax.	
[41]	Delivery reverse front roller	A	100	cleaning solvent, lint-free cloth Wipe off the soil or wax.	
[42]	Delivery reverse rear roller	A	100	cleaning solvent, lint-free cloth Wipe off the soil or wax.	
[43]	Delivery reverse roller 1	A	100	cleaning solvent, lint-free cloth Wipe off the soil or wax.	
[44]	Delivery reverse roller 2	A	100	cleaning solvent, lint-free cloth Wipe off the soil or wax.	
[45]	Duplexing reverse roller	A	100	cleaning solvent, lint-free cloth Wipe off the soil or wax.	
[46]	Duplexing reverse rear roller	A	100	cleaning solvent, lint-free cloth Wipe off the soil or wax.	



Cleaning should usually be done by wiping with a lint-free cloth.

14.3.3 Periodic service list (reader; optional)

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000



Be sure to use only specified solvents and oils.

T-14-4

A: Cleaning B: Replacement C: Lubrication D: Adjustment E: Maintenance				
Unit	Location	Task	Interval	Remarks
Document exposure system	Copyboard glass rear surface	A	As required	
Document exposure system	White standard plate	A	As required	
Document exposure system	Scanning rail	A/C	As required	
Document exposure system	Scanning mirror (First, second, third mirrors)	A	As required	
Document exposure system	Reflector	A	As required	
Document exposure system	Dust filter	A	As required	

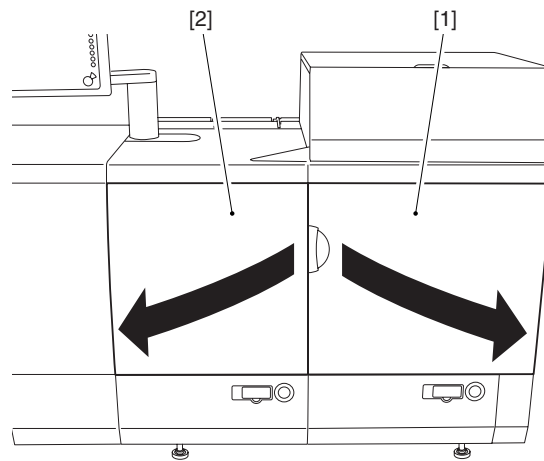
14.4 Cleaning Procedure

14.4.1 Photosensitive Drum Unit (Y/M/C/Bk)

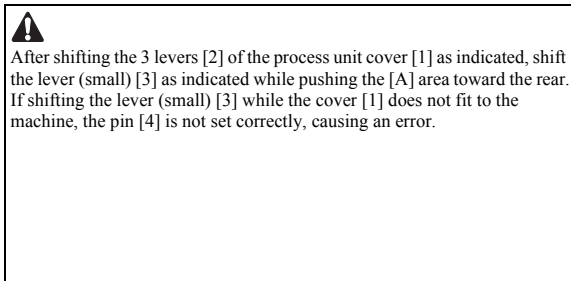
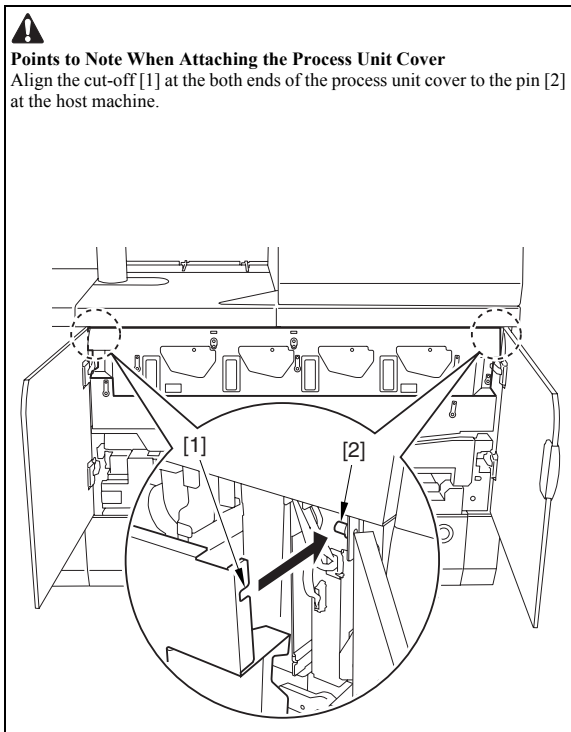
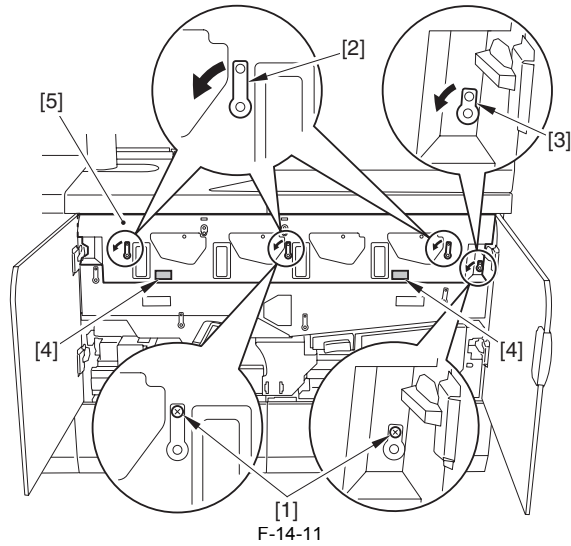
14.4.1.1 Cleaning developing assembly lower sheet metal

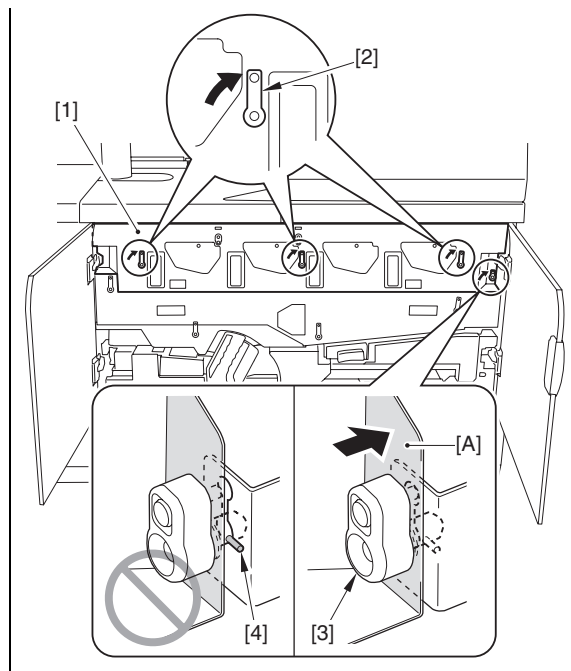
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

1) Open fully the front right cover [1], and then the front left cover [2] of main station.

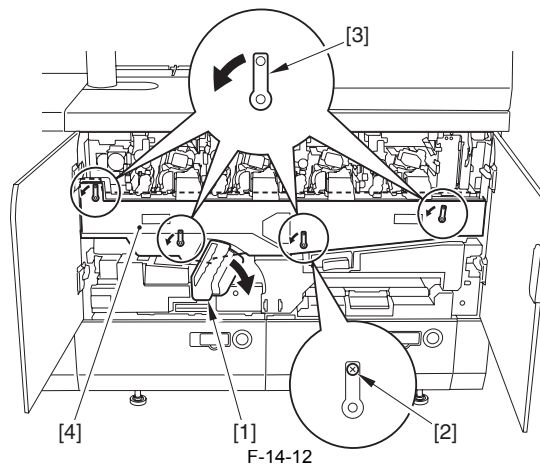


2) Remove the 2 stepped screws [1], shift the 3 levers [2] and the lever (small) [3] in the direction of the arrow in order. While holding the grip [4], detach the process unit cover [5].

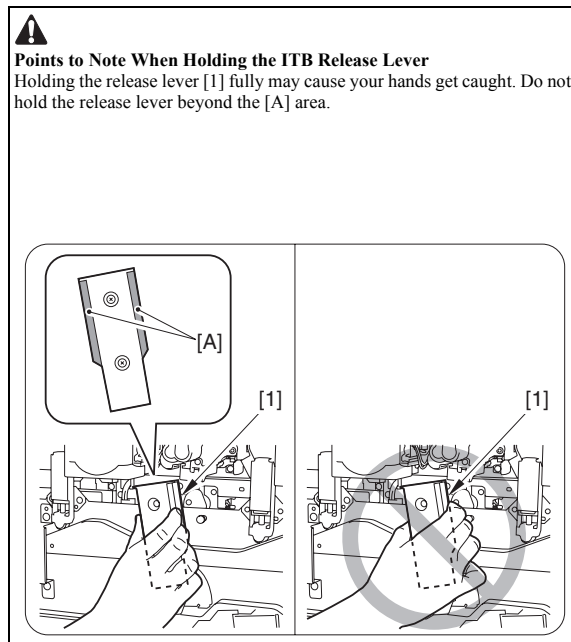




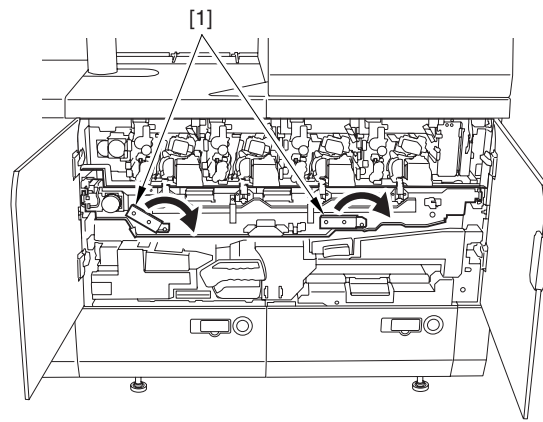
- 3) Tilt the lever (B-E1) [1] in the direction of the arrow. Remove the stepped screw [2], shift the 4 levers [3] in the direction of the arrow and then, detach the ITB unit cover [4].



- 4) Make sure to check the following items before operation.



Shift the intermediate transfer assembly release lever [1] in the direction of the arrow.



F-14-13

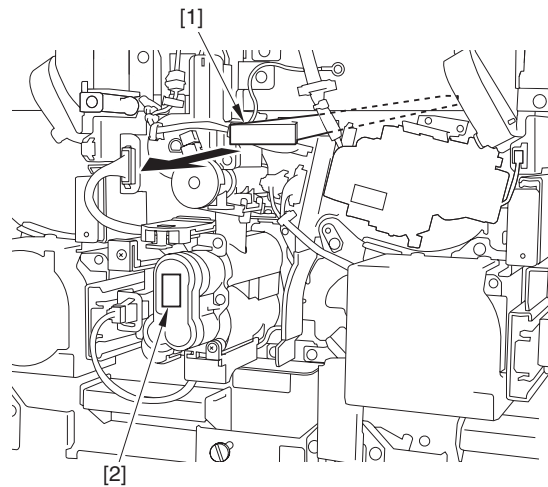
5) Pull out the dust-proof glass unit [1] in the process unit of the color to be detached. (The figure shows the case of black)

MEMO:

Pull it out slowly so that the surface of the dust-proof glass is not damaged.



Pull it out slowly so that the surface of the dust-proof glass is not damaged.

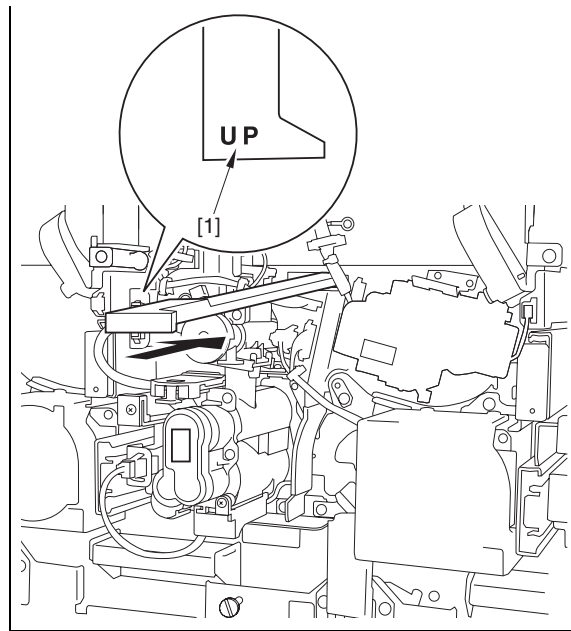


F-14-14

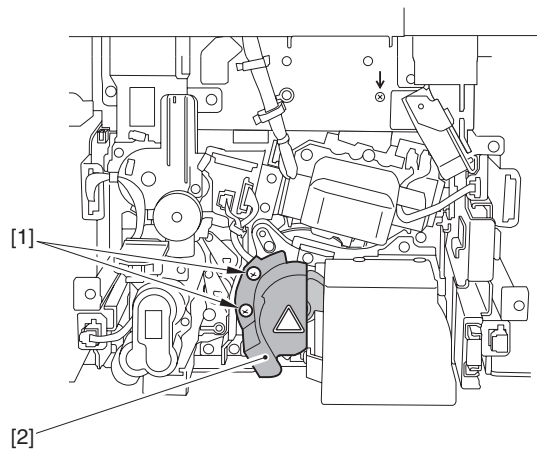


Points to Note When Attaching the Dust-proof Glass Unit

Let the side of the mark [1] (UP) up, and push it in slowly so that the surface of the dust-proof glass is not damaged.

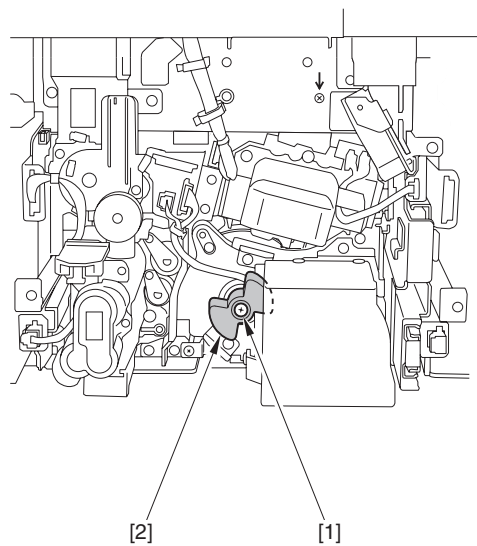


6) Remove the 2 screws [1] and detach the drum shaft knob cover [2].



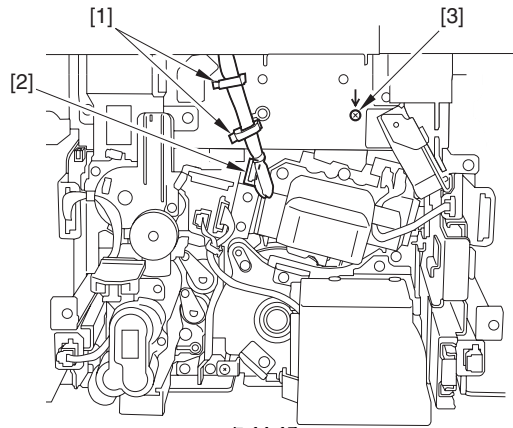
F-14-15

7) Remove the screw [1] and detach the drum shaft knob [2].



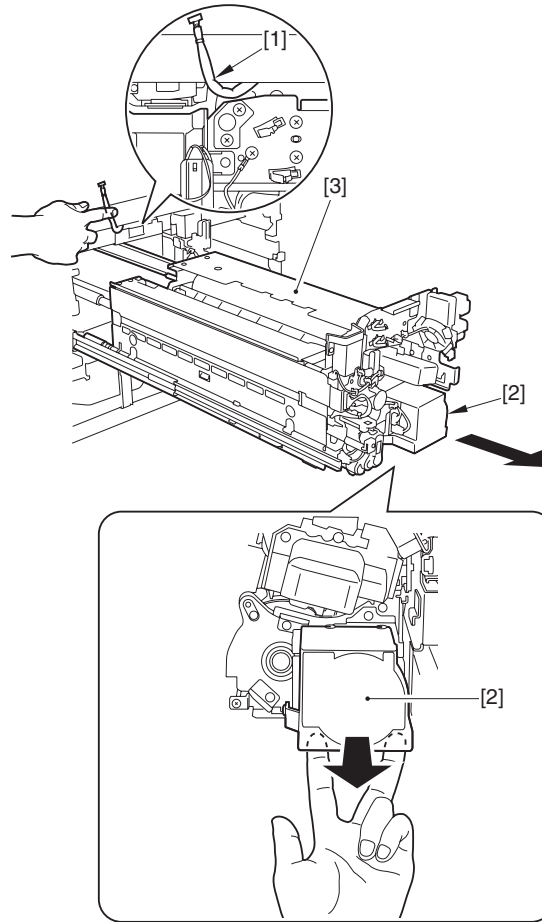
F-14-16

8) Free the 2 clamps [1], disconnect the connector [2] and remove the screw [3].




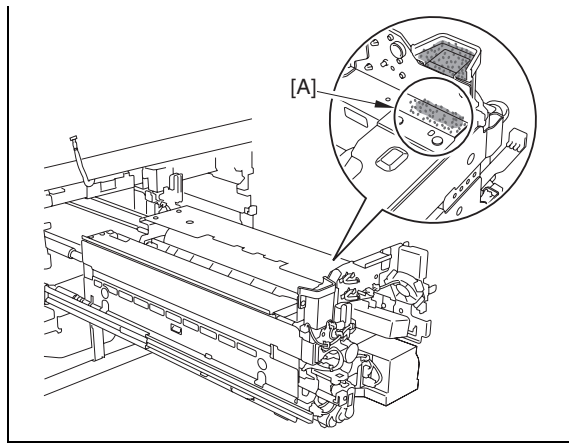
F-14-17

9) While holding the harness [1], hold the grip [2] and pull out the process unit [3] fully.



F-14-18

 Remove the toner that has been splashed around the [A] area of the process unit, if any, with a lint-free paper.



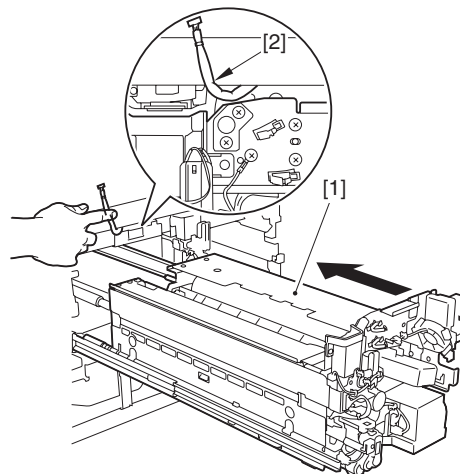
Attaching Process Unit

Make sure to check the following items before operation.



Points to Note When Setting in Process Unit

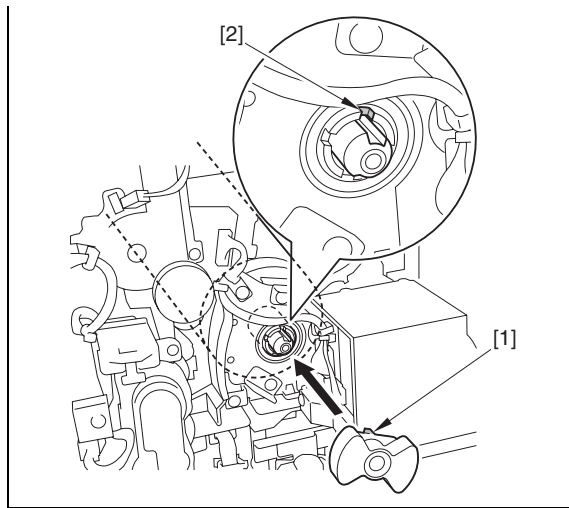
When setting the process unit [1], let the edge of the harness [2] upward and push it to avoid being caught in the process unit.



Set the projection [1] of the drum shaft knob to the groove [2] of the drum flange, and fix them.



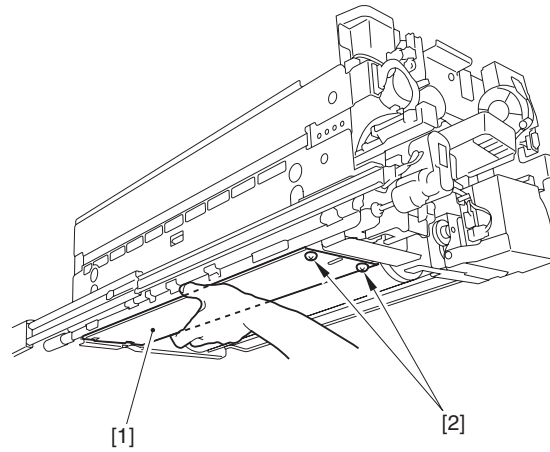
When tightening the screw, press to hold the drum shaft knob to prevent it from rotating clockwise.



10) While holding the plate [1] beneath the developing assembly surely, remove the 2 screws [2].



Be careful of the toner that has been accumulated on the plate beneath the developing assembly when detaching it.

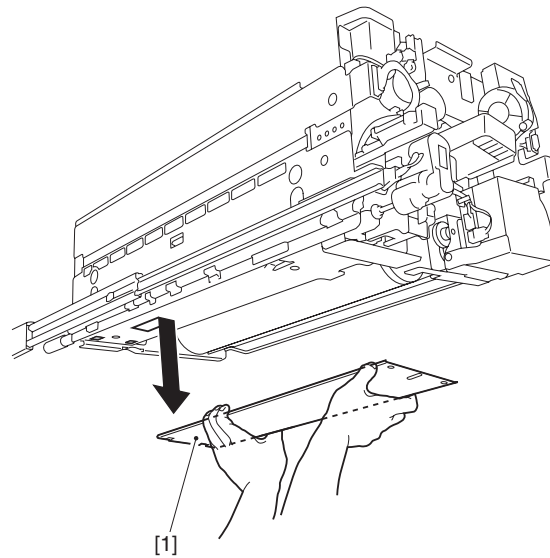


F-14-19

11) Hold the plate [1] beneath the developing assembly with both hands, slide it forward to detach.



Be careful of the toner that has been accumulated on the plate beneath the developing assembly when detaching it.



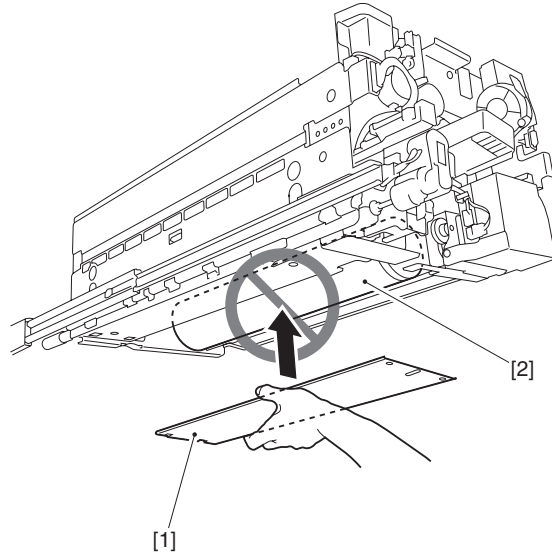
F-14-20

Attaching Plate Beneath Developing Assembly

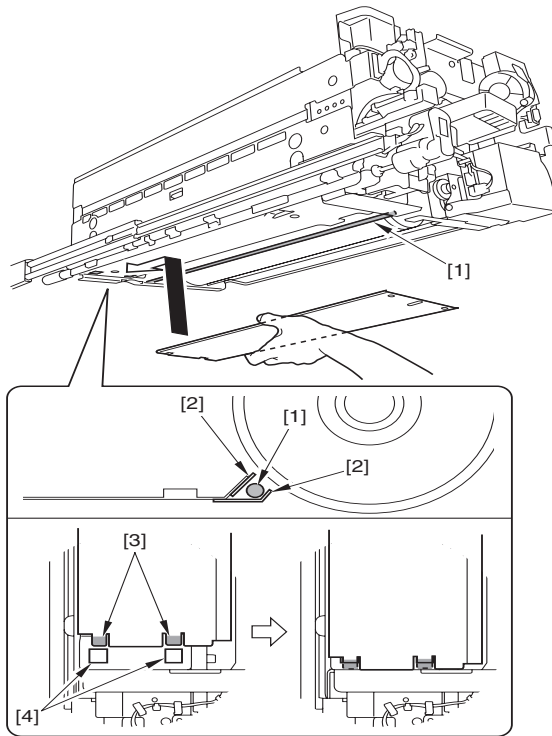
Make sure to check the following items before operation.

**Points to Note When Attaching Plate Beneath Developing Assembly**

Do not let the plate [1] beneath the developing assembly be in contact with the drum [2].



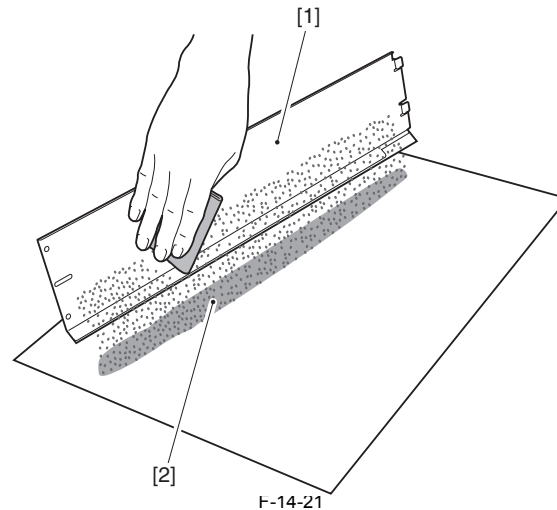
Put the process unit shaft [1] between the 2 plastic films [2] of plate beneath developing assembly, then fit the claws [3] into the holes [4] for sliding toward the rear to attach.



12) Let the toner [2] that has been accumulated on the plate [1] beneath the developing assembly onto a paper.



Dispose the collected toner in the specified manner.



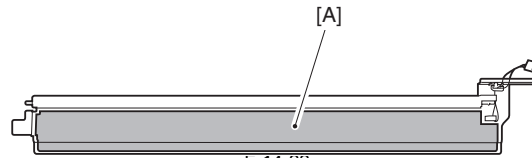
F-14-21

- 13) Execute forcible warm-up rotation mode. (COPIER > FUNCTION > MISC-P > INTR-EX; Level2)
- 14) Execute auto color displacement correction control. (COPIER > FUNCTION > MISC-P > AT-IMG-X)

14.4.1.2 Cleaning the Drum Cleaner Pre-Conditioning Exposure Unit

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- 1) Remove the drum unit. (Refer to 'Remove drum unit')
- 2) Remove the drum cleaning unit. (Refer to 'Remove Drum Cleaning unit')
- 3) Remove the drum. (Refer to 'Remove drum unit')
- 4) Remove the drum cleaner pre-exposure unit. (Refer to 'Remove drum cleaner pre-exposure unit')
- 5) Clean the drum cleaner pre-exposure unit plate [A] part using lint-free paper moistened with alcohol.



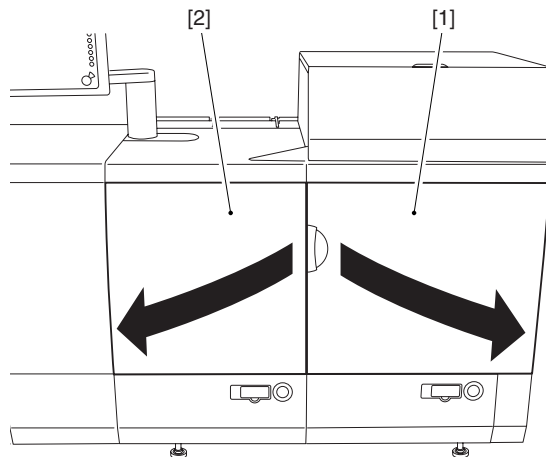
F-14-22

- 5) Execute forcible warm-up rotation mode. (COPIER > FUNCTION > MISC-P > INTR-EX; Level2)
- 6) Execute auto color displacement correction control. (COPIER > FUNCTION > MISC-P > AT-IMG-X)

14.4.1.3 Cleaning of the Dust-Proof Glass

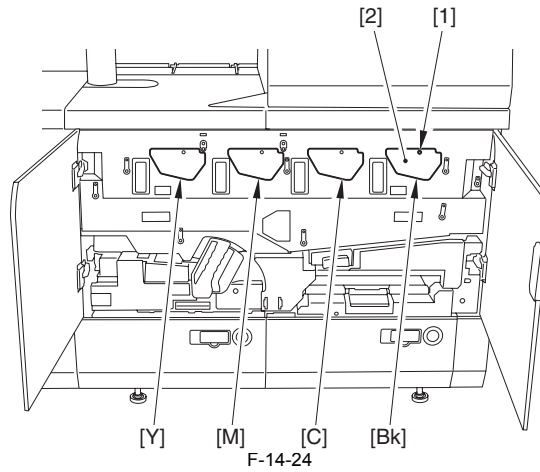
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- 1) Open fully the front right cover [1], and then the front left cover [2] of main station.



F-14-23

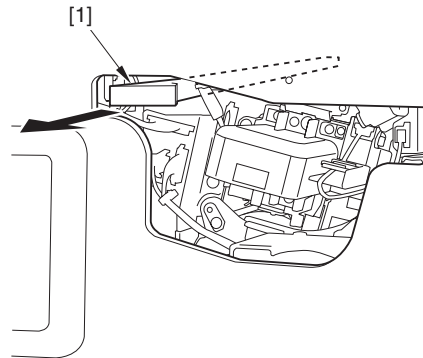
- 2) Loosen the screw [1] and detach the primary charging unit cover [2] of the color in interest (the black shown in the figure).



3) Remove the dust-proof glass unit [1] by sliding forward.

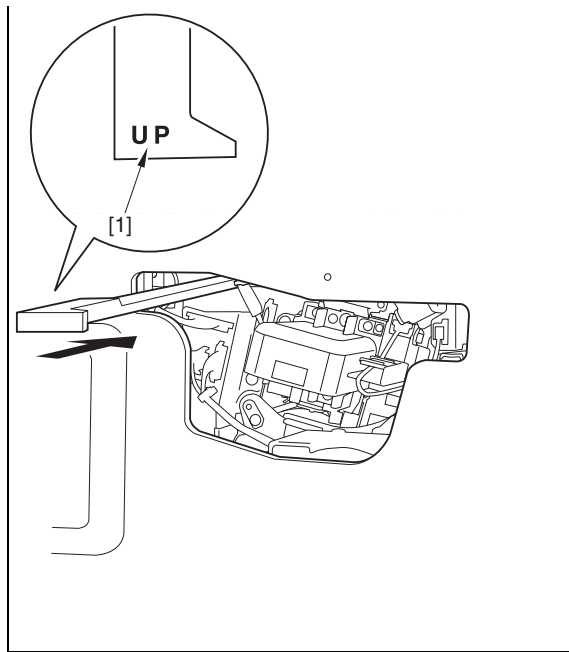


Slide the unit slowly not to damage the dust-proof glass surface.

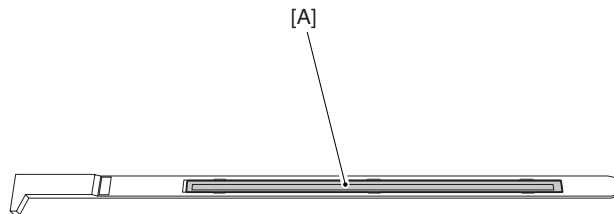


Points to Note When Attaching Dust-proof Glass Unit

Face the engraved mark (UP) [1] to the upward and push in the unit slowly not to damage the dust-proof glass surface.



4) Clean the surface [A] of the dust-proof glass with dry lint-free paper.



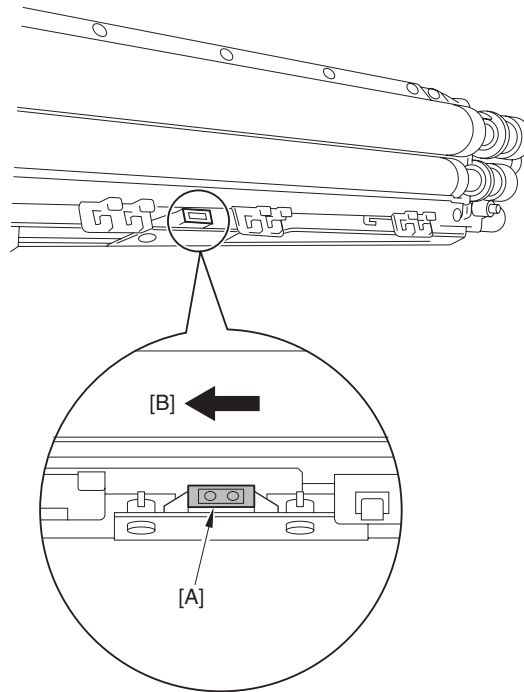
14.4.1.4 Cleaning Drum Patch Sensor

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- 1) Remove the developing assembly.
- 2) Remove the drum patch sensor shutter.
- 3) Wipe the surface [A] of the sensor with a lint-free paper moistened with alcohol in one direction [B] three times.



- Be sure not to clean it with a dry material.
- Be sure not to move the lint-free paper back and forth.

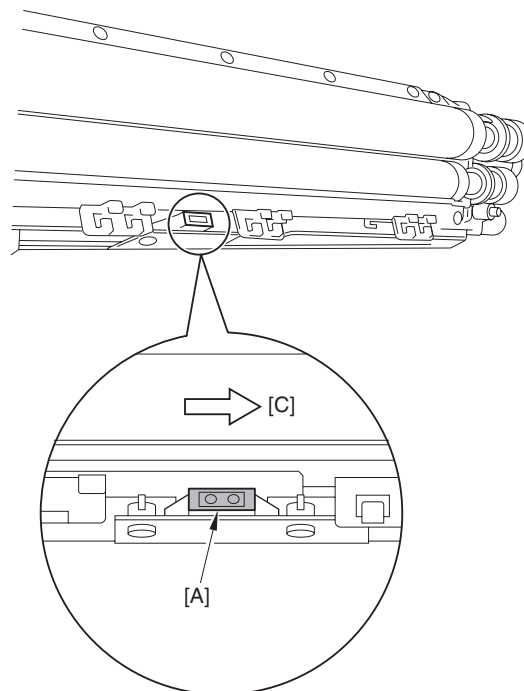


F-14-27

4) Moisten an unused side of the lint-free paper with alcohol, and move it on the surface [A] of the sensor in one direction [C] three times.



- Be sure not to clean it with a dry material.
- Be sure not to move the lint-free paper back and forth.
- After cleaning, be sure to check that there are no white dirt (caused by the external additive) on the surface [A] of the sensor. If any, repeat step 1 and 2 of cleaning the drum patch sensor.



F-14-28

If there is still some remain left on the sensor surface, stop cleaning and check the cleaning condition.

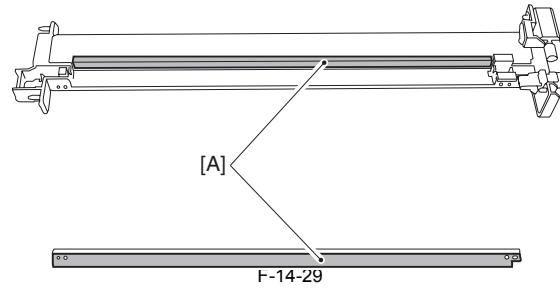
- If the remain after wipe is the same direction (white turbidity), turn ON the switch after attaching the sensor to the host machine. If the machine starts normally, use it without change. If an error occurs, replace the sensor.
- If the remain after wipe is the different direction, replace the sensor.

14.4.2 Primary Transfer Unit

14.4.2.1 Cleaning the Pre-Transfer Charging Assembly

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

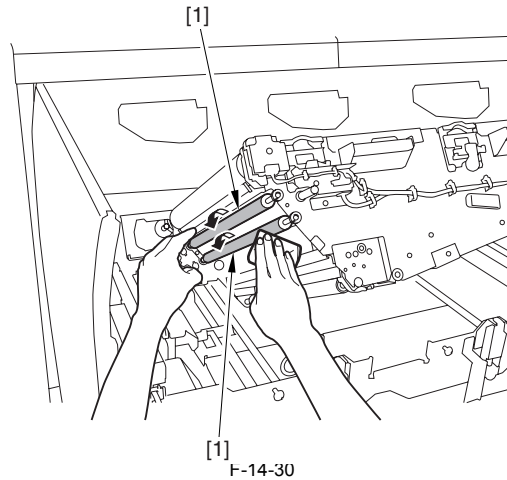
- 1) Remove the pre-transfer charging wire.
- 2) Clean the pre-transfer charging assembly left plate and the [A] area of pre-transfer charging assembly with alcohol-moistened lint-free paper.



14.4.2.2 Cleaning of the ITB Idler Roller

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- 1) Removing the intermediate transfer Belt.
- 2) Clean the whole circumference of the ITB idler roller [1] with the alcohol-moistened lint-free paper while rotating it with your hand.



- 3) Execute forcible warm-up rotation mode. (COPIER > FUNCTION > MISC-P > INTR-EX; Level2)
- 4) Execute auto color displacement correction control. (COPIER > FUNCTION > MISC-P > AT-IMG-X)

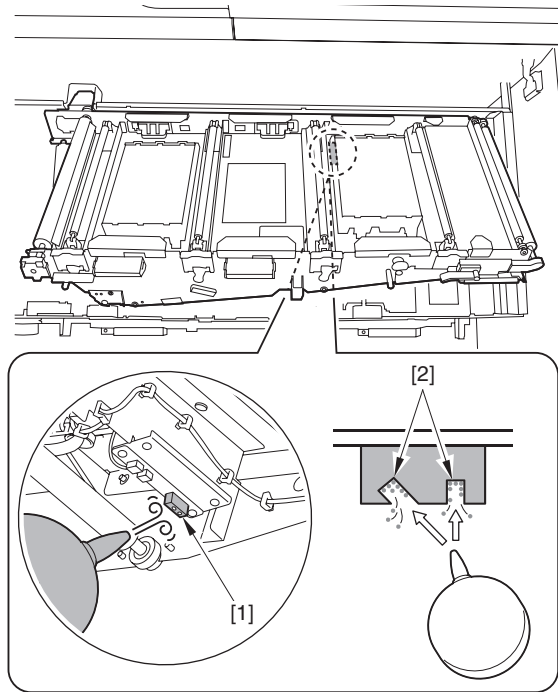
14.4.2.3 Cleaning the HP Sensor of ITB

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- 1) Removing the intermediate transfer Belt.
- 2) Clean the toner in the slot [2] of the ITB HP sensor (lower) [1] with a blower.

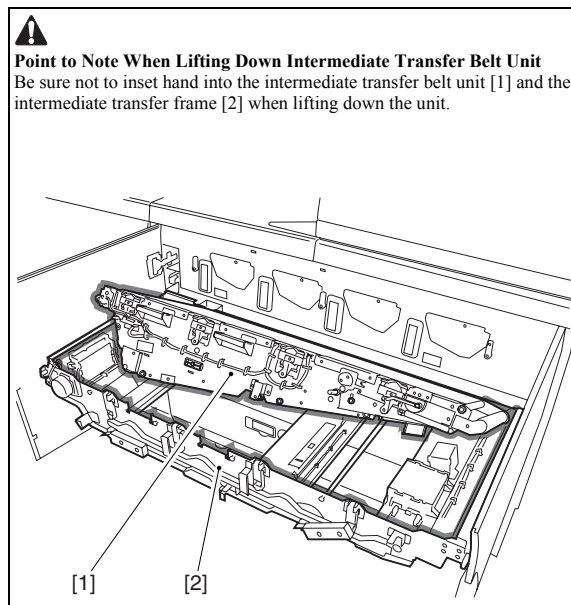


Be sure not to wipe the sensor directly with the lint-free paper when cleaning.

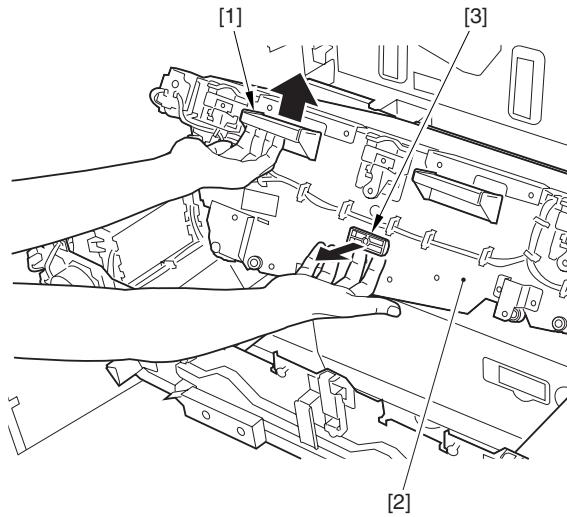


F-14-31

3) Make sure to check the following items before operation.



Hold the grip [1] as indicated, and pull the lever [3] fully while lifting up the intermediate transfer belt unit [2].
 Lift down the intermediate transfer belt unit a little while pulling the lever [3].
 Once the unit passes the lock release position (approx. 30-degree), release both hands. (So that the belt unit goes down slowly.)

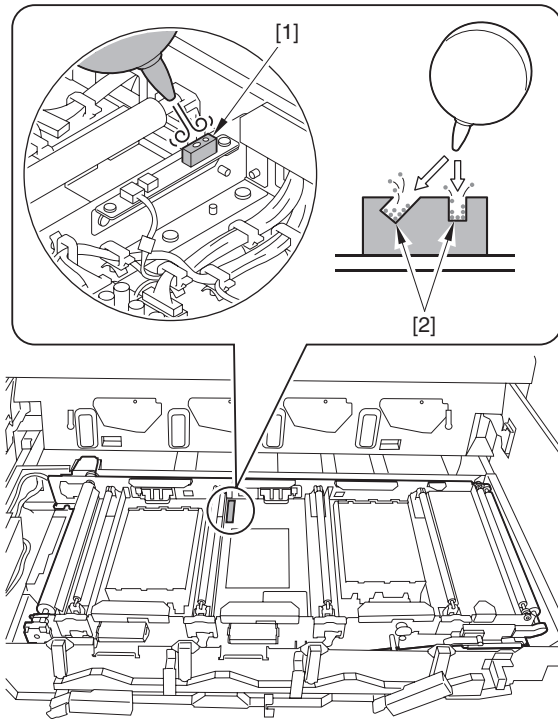


F-14-32

4) Clean the toner in the slot [2] of the ITB HP sensor (upper) [1] with a blower.



Be sure not to wipe the sensor directly with the lint-free paper when cleaning.



F-14-33

- 5) Execute forcible warm-up rotation mode. (COPIER > FUNCTION > MISC-P > INTR-EX; Level2)
- 6) Execute auto color displacement correction control. (COPIER > FUNCTION > MISC-P > AT-IMG-X)

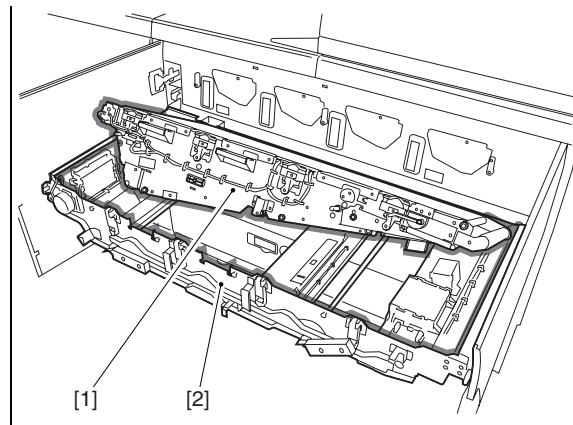
14.4.2.4 Cleaning of the ITB Edge Sensor

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

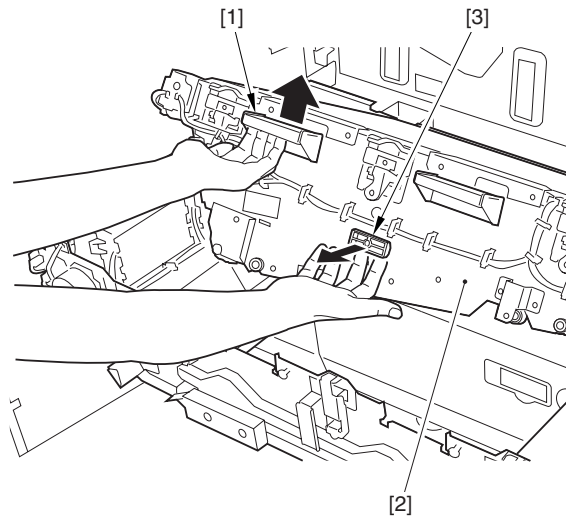
- 1) Removing the intermediate transfer Belt.
- 2) Make sure to check the following items before operation.



Point to Note When Lifting Down Intermediate Transfer Belt Unit
Be sure not to inset hand into the intermediate transfer belt unit [1] and the intermediate transfer frame [2] when lifting down the unit.



Hold the grip [1] as indicated, and pull the lever [3] fully while lifting up the intermediate transfer belt unit [2].
Lift down the intermediate transfer belt unit a little while pulling the lever [3].
Once the unit passes the lock release position (approx. 30-degree), release both hands. (So that the belt unit goes down slowly.)

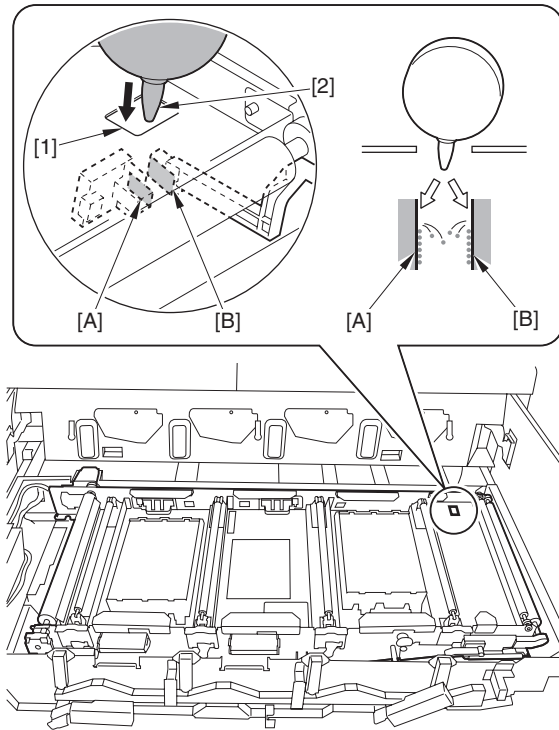


F-14-34

3) Insert the tip [2] of the blower into the hole [1] of the intermediate transfer belt unit as indicated, and clean the toner adhered on the [A] of the ITB edge sensor and the [B] of the sensor flag with a blower.



Be sure not to wipe the sensor directly with the lint-free paper when cleaning.



F-14-35

- 4) Execute forcible warm-up rotation mode. (COPIER > FUNCTION > MISC-P > INTR-EX; Level2)
- 5) Execute auto color displacement correction control. (COPIER > FUNCTION > MISC-P > AT-IMG-X)

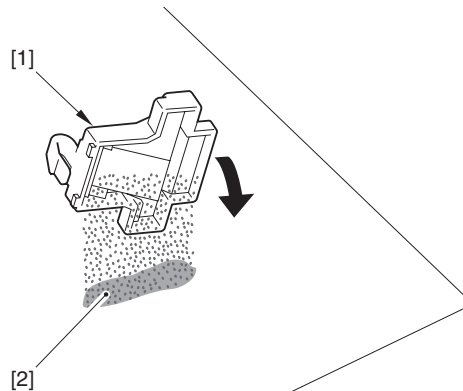
14.4.2.5 Cleaning of the ITB Side Scraper Unit

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- 1) Remove the ITB edge scraper unit.
- 2) Tilt the ITB edge scraper unit [1], and dispose the toner [2] onto a paper.



Discard the toner according to the regulations.



F-14-36

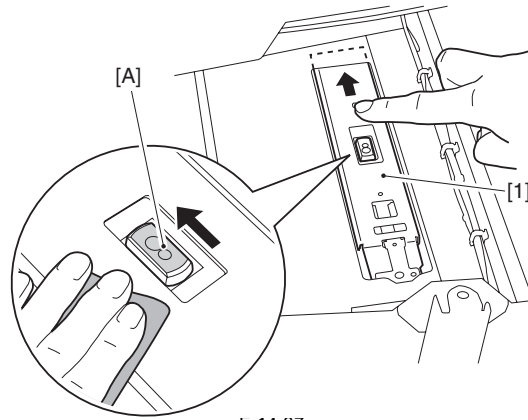
14.4.2.6 Cleaning the Lead Edge Registration Patch Sensor

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- 1) Remove the lead edge registration patch sensor.
- 2) Slide the shutter [1], and clean the surface [A] of the registration patch sensor by wiping it with the alcohol-moistened lint-free paper in one direction.



- Do not dry wipe.
- Check that the cloudy dirt (due to the external additive for toner) is not left on the surface [A] of the sensor after cleaning.



F-14-37

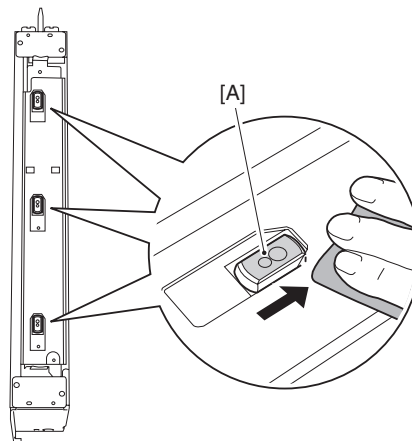
14.4.2.7 Cleaning the Registration Patch Sensor

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- 1) Remove the registration patch sensor shutter.
- 2) Clean the surface [A] of the registration patch sensor by wiping it with the alcohol-moistened lint-free paper in one direction.



- Do not dry wipe.
- Check that the cloudy dirt (due to the external additive for toner) is not left on the surface [A] of the sensor after cleaning.



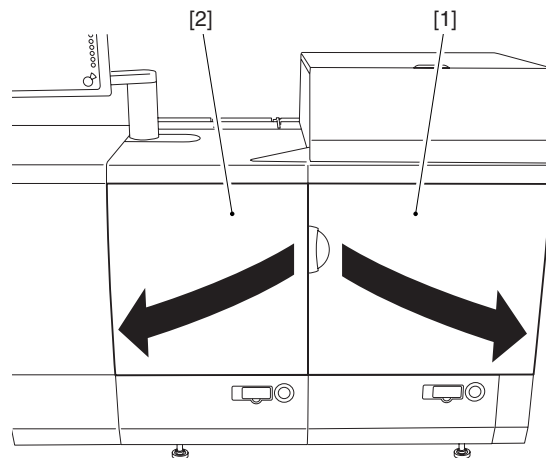
F-14-38

14.4.3 Secondary Transfer Unit

14.4.3.1 Cleaning of the Secondary Transfer Outlet Sensor

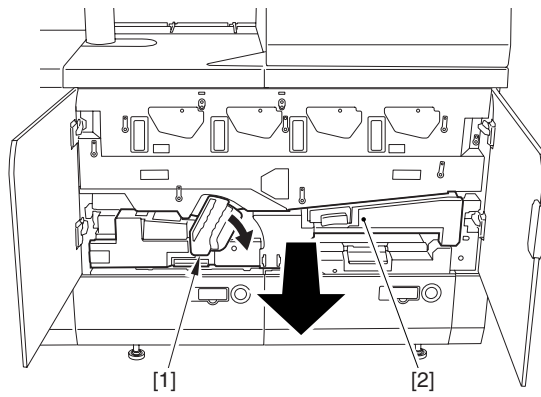
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- 1) Open fully the front right cover [1], and then the front left cover [2] of main station.



F-14-39

2) Shift the lever (B-E1) to the direction of the arrow. Hold the lever (B-E1) to slide the feeding unit [2] fully forward.

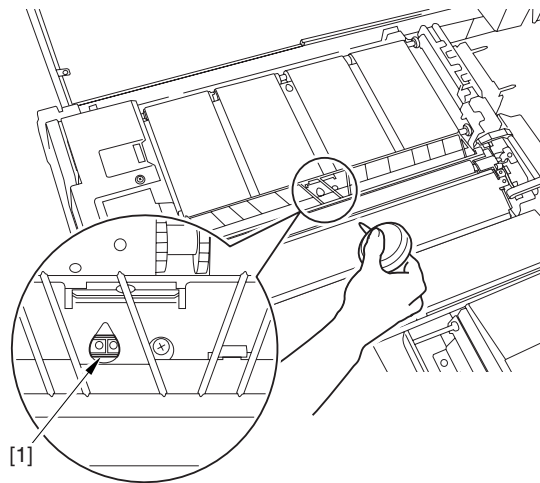


F-14-40

3) Clean the secondary-transfer outlet sensor [1] using blower.



After cleaning, do not touch the sensor surface directly with lint-free paper and others.

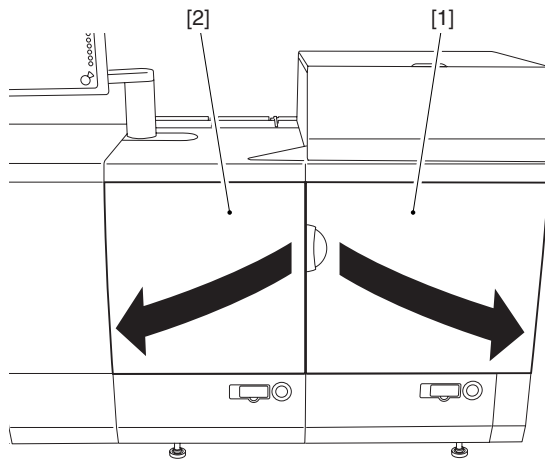


F-14-41

14.4.3.2 Cleaning of the Pre-Fixing Feeder Unit

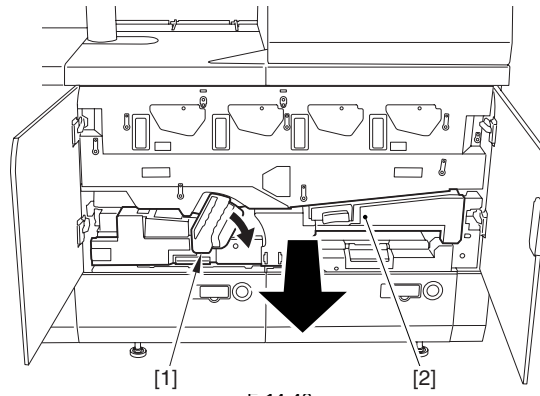
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

1) Open fully the front right cover [1], and then the front left cover [2] of main station.



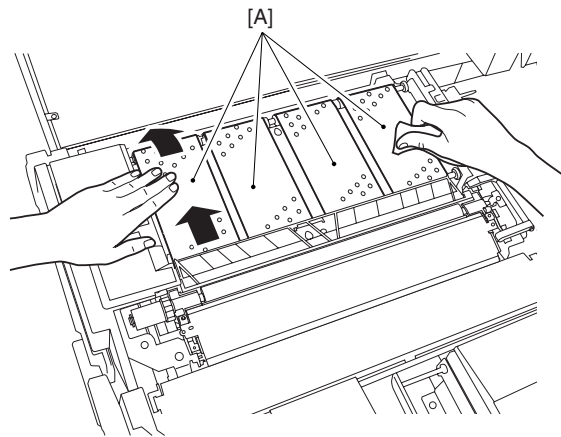
F-14-42

2) Shift the lever (B-E1) to the direction of the arrow. Hold the lever (B-E1) to slide the feeding unit [2] fully forward.



F-14-43

3) Clean the whole circumference [A] of the pre-fixing feeder belt using lint-free paper impregnated with alcohol by rotating the belt by hand.

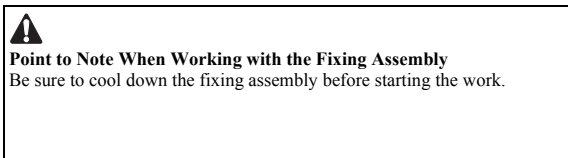


F-14-44

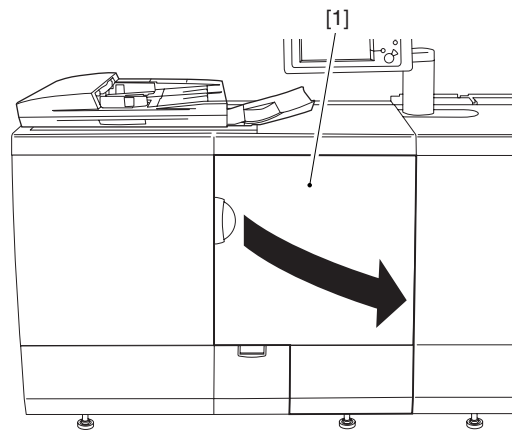
14.4.4 Fixing Unit

14.4.4.1 Cleaning of the Primary Fixing Thermistor/Thermoswitch

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

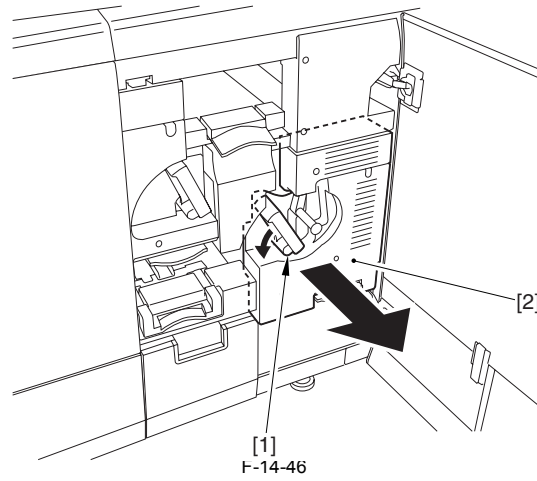


1) Open the sub station right front cover [1] fully.

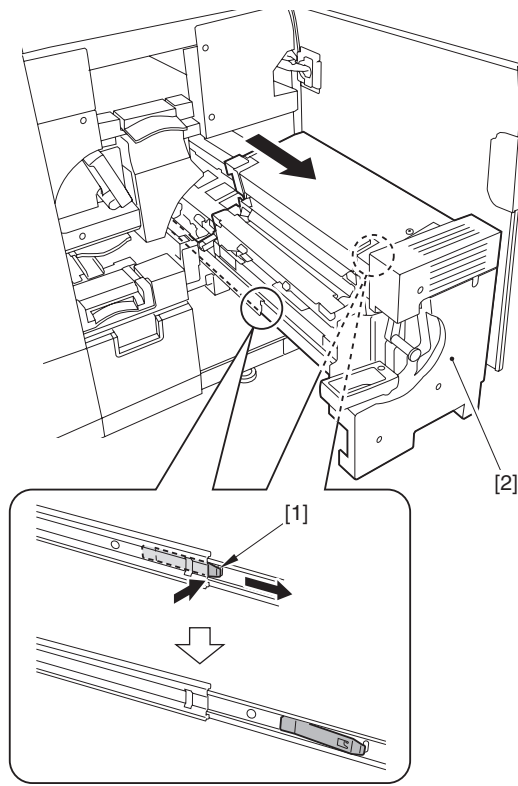


F-14-45

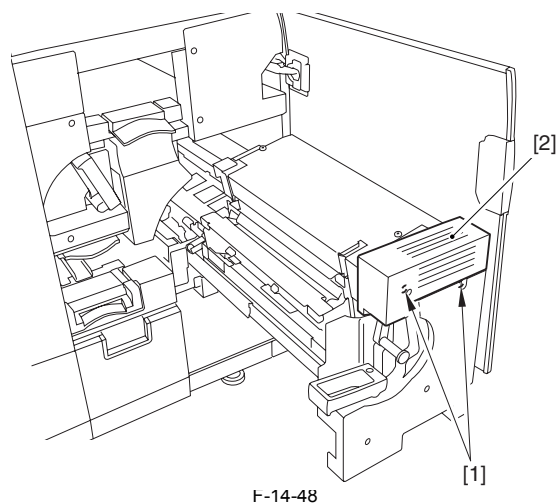
2) Shift the lever (C-A4) [1] in the direction of the arrow, and slide out the fixing assembly [2].



3) Release the 2 leaf springs [1], and slide out the fixing assembly [2] further.



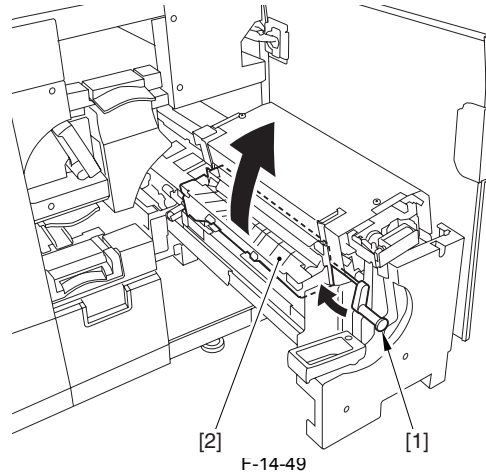
4) Remove the 2 screws [1], and detach the primary fixing upper front cover [2].



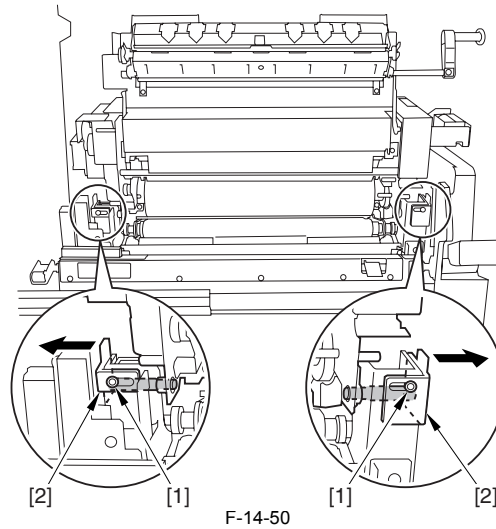
5) Lifting up the lever (C-A5) [1] and open the cover (C-A5) [2] slowly and fully.



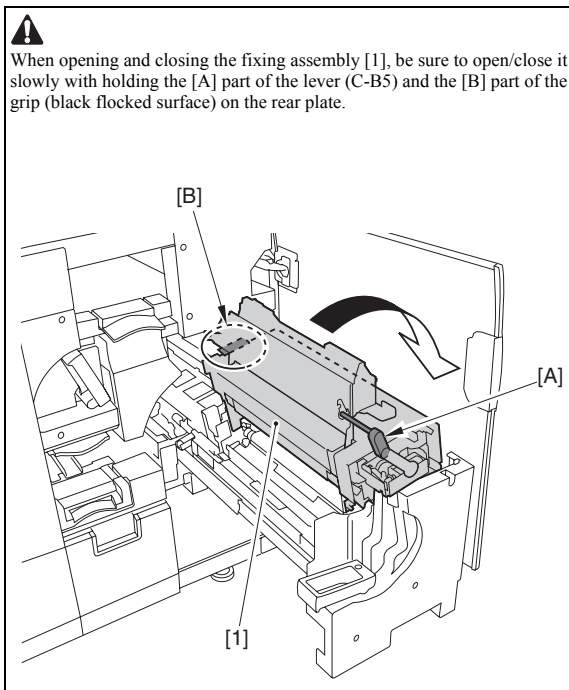
Be sure not to let the cover (C-A5) [2] fall down in the subsequent work.



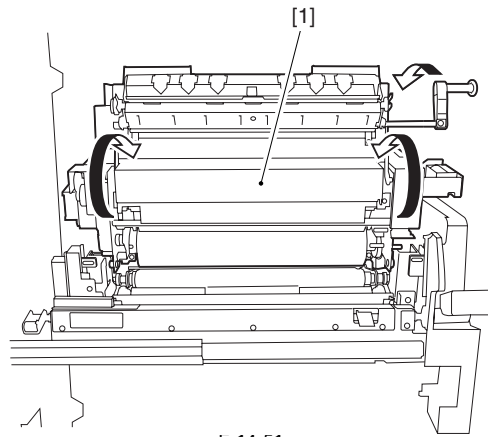
6) Loosen the 2 screws [1], and slide the fixing pin [2].



7) Make sure to check the following items before operation.

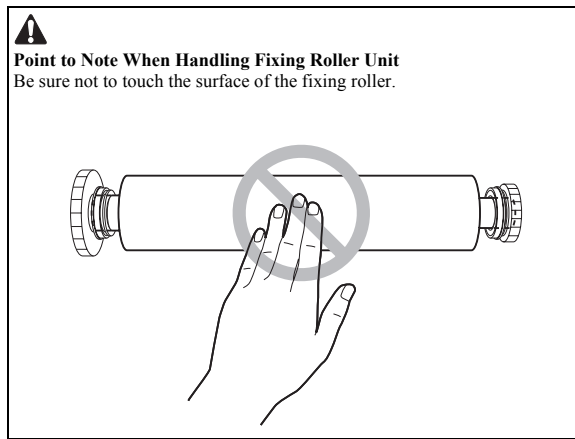


Open the fixing assembly [1] slowly and fully.

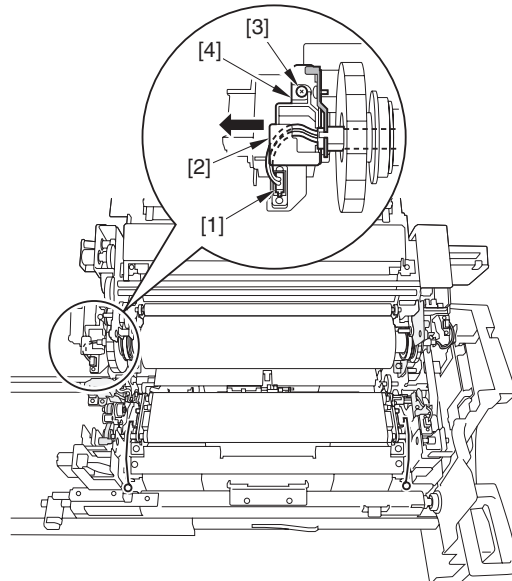


F-14-51

8) Make sure to check the following items before operation.

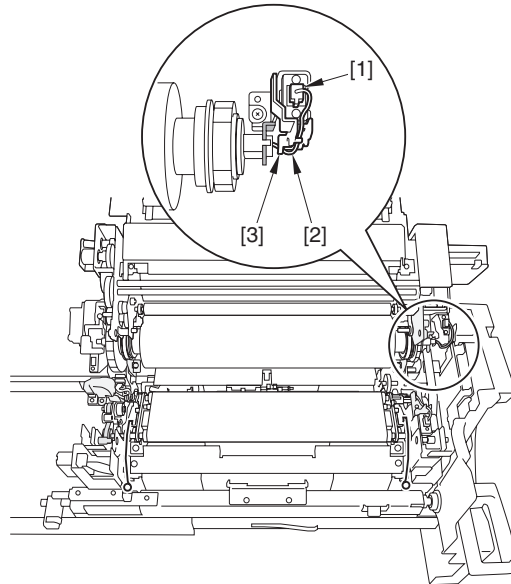


Disconnect the connector (with connector hook) [1] and free the harness from the harness guide [2]. Then, loosen the screw [3], and detach the heater retaining plate [4].



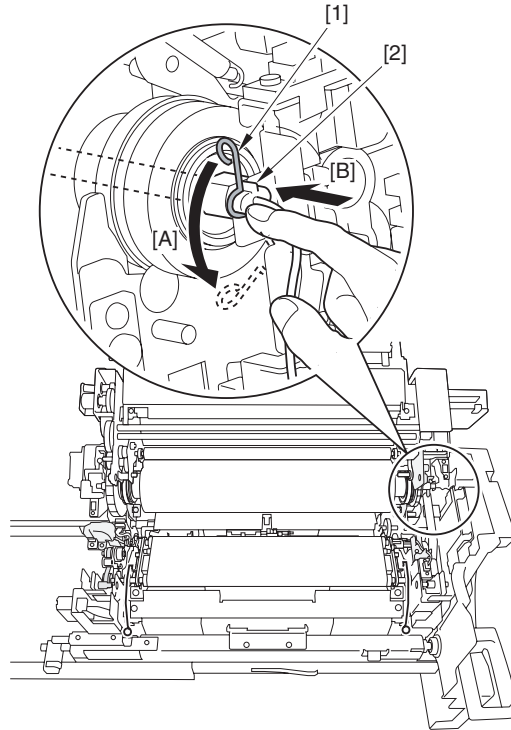
F-14-52

9) Disconnect the connector (with connector hook) [1], and free the harness [2] from the harness guide [3].



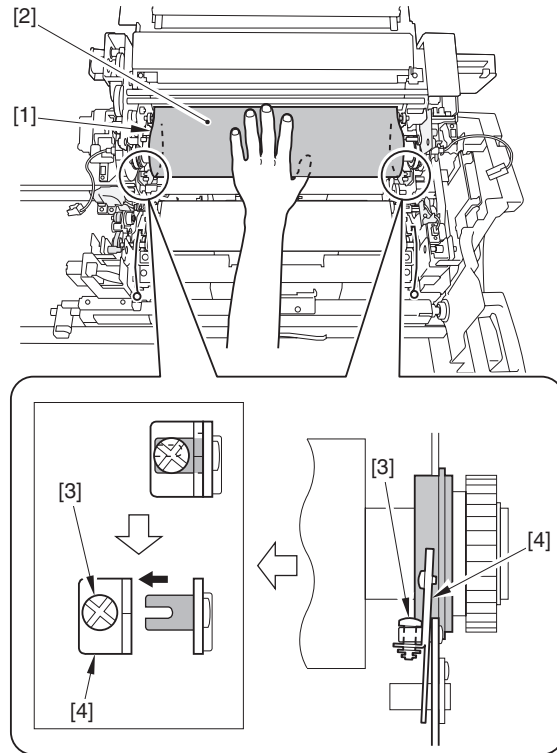
F-14-53

- 10) Release the fixing heater retaining spring [1] in the [A] direction. Then remove the fixing heater [2] by sliding it in the [B] direction and place it inside of the fixing roller.



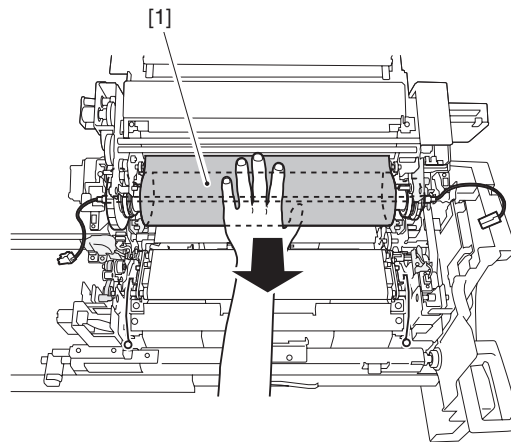
F-14-54

- 11) While holding the fixing roller [1] with paper [2], loosen the 2 screws [3] and slide the bearing fixing plate [4].



F-14-55

12) Remove the fixing roller unit [1] with the fixing heater attached.

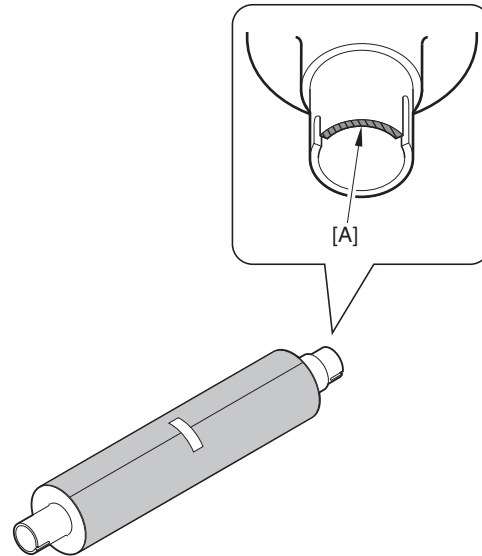


F-14-56

Attaching Fixing Roller Unit
1) Make sure to check the following items before operation.

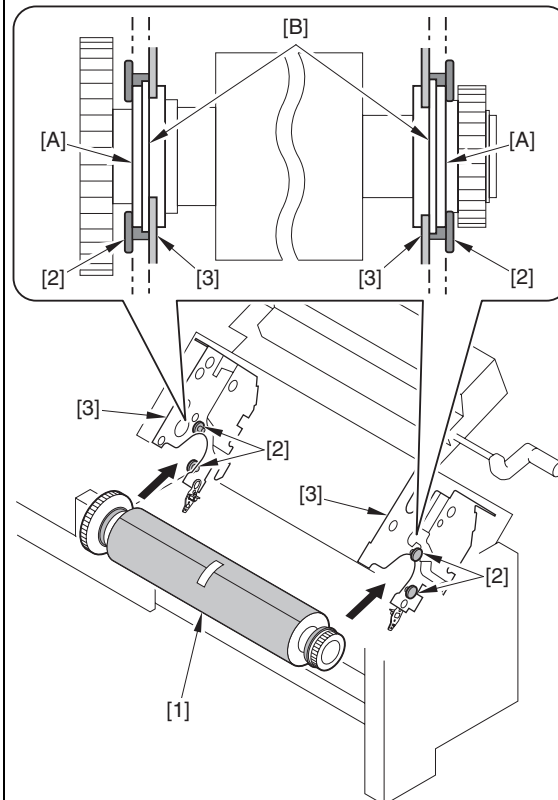
⚠
Point to Note When Handling Fixing Roller Unit
- Be sure not to touch the surface of the fixing roller.

- Identify the primary fixing roller and the secondary fixing roller with the color of the shaft end [A] area. Only with the secondary transfer roller, the [A] area is colored in red.

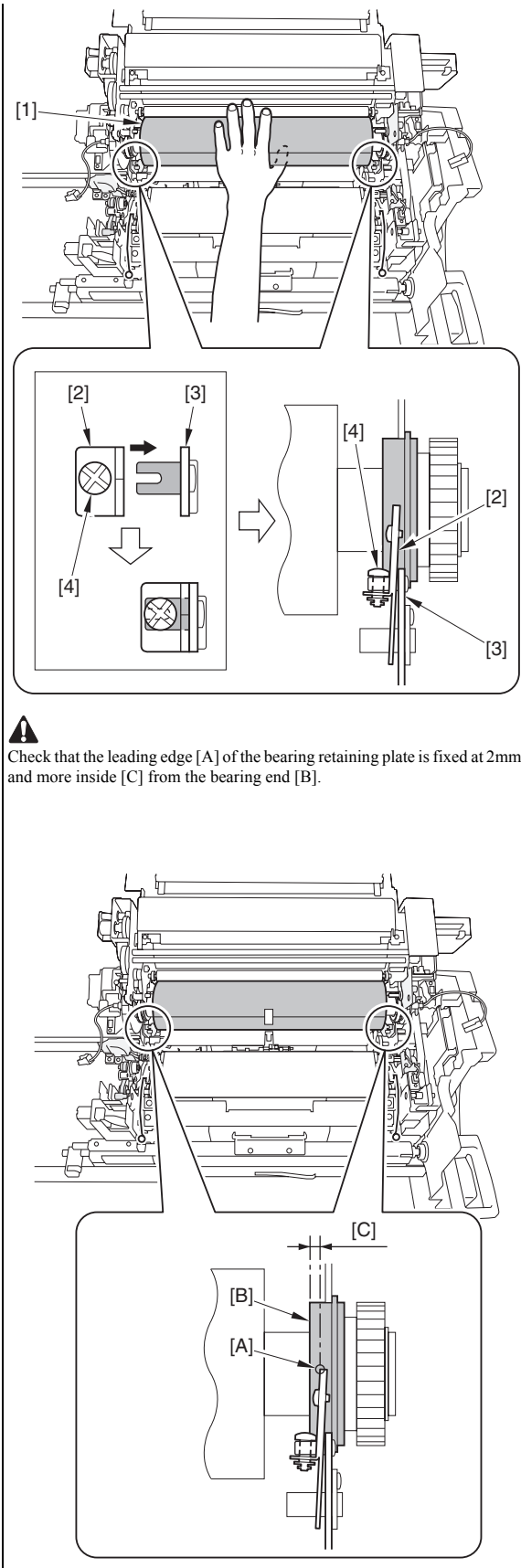


When attaching a new fixing roller, be sure to attach it with the paper wrapped around. Remove the wrapped paper after attaching the fixing roller unit [1] to the fixing assembly.

When attaching the fixing roller unit, fit the bearing end [A] of the fixing roller unit [1] with the bearing retainers [2] of the fixing assembly, and the bearing rib [B] of the fixing roller unit [1] with the side plates [3] of the fixing assembly as indicated while placing the fixing heater inside of the fixing roller.

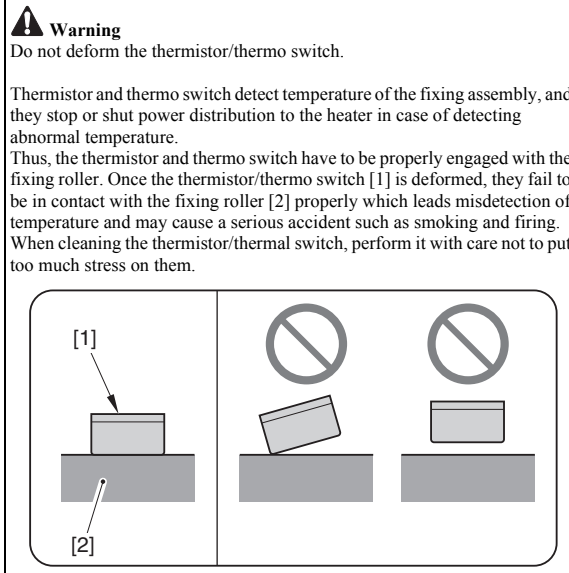


2) Push on the bearing fixing plate [2] to the side plate [3] of the fixing assembly while supporting the fixing roller [1]. Then, tighten the fixing screw [4].

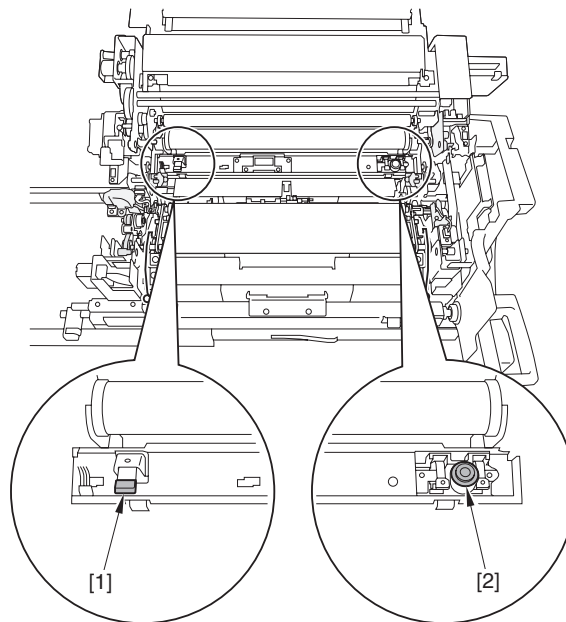


⚠ Check that the leading edge [A] of the bearing retaining plate is fixed at 2mm and more inside [C] from the bearing end [B].

13) Make sure to check the following items before operation.



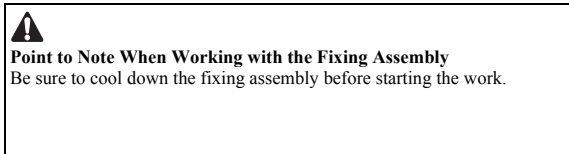
Clean the thermistor [1] and the thermo switch [2] with lint-free paper moistened with alcohol solution.



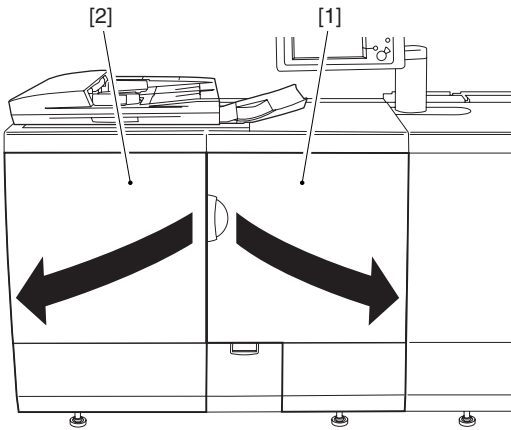
F-14-57

14.4.4.2 Cleaning of the Secondary Fixing Thermistor/Thermoswitch

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

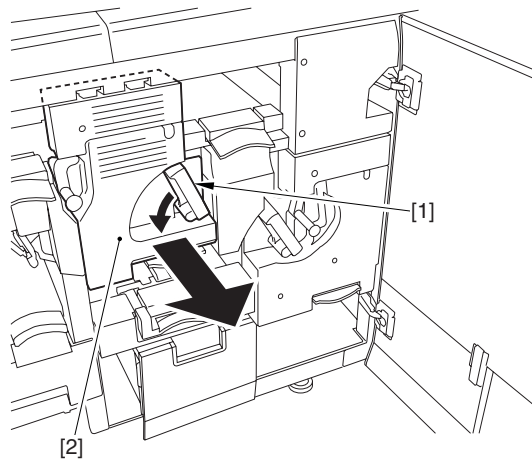


1) Fully open the sub station front right cover [1] and the sub station front left cover [2] in order.



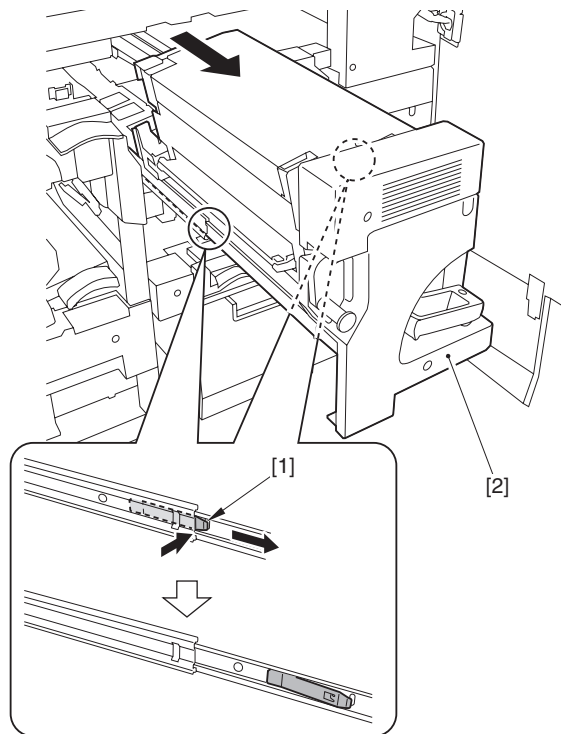
F-14-58

2) Shift the lever (C-B4) [1] in the direction of the arrow, and slide out the fixing assembly [2].



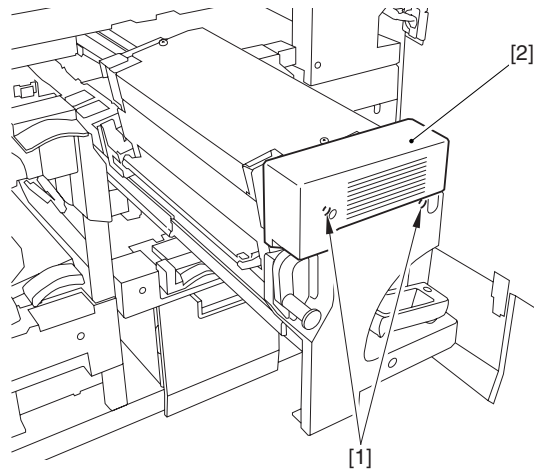
F-14-59

3) Release the 2 leaf springs [1], and slide out the fixing assembly [2] further.



F-14-60

4) Remove the 2 screws [1] and detach the secondary fixing front upper cover [2].

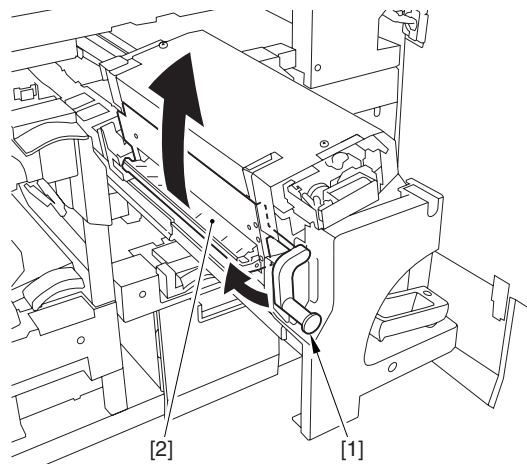


F-14-61

5) Lifting up the lever (C-B5) [1] and open the cover (C-B5) [2] slowly and fully.

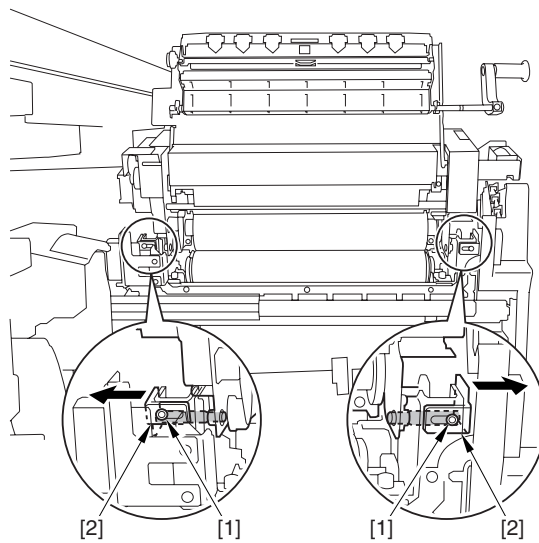


Be sure not to let the cover (C-B5) [2] fall down in the subsequent work.



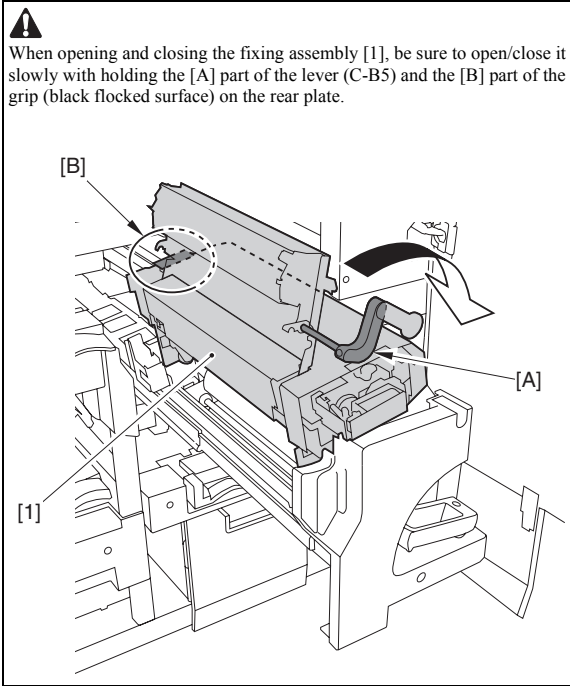
F-14-62

6) Loosen the 2 screws [1] and slide the fixing pin [2].

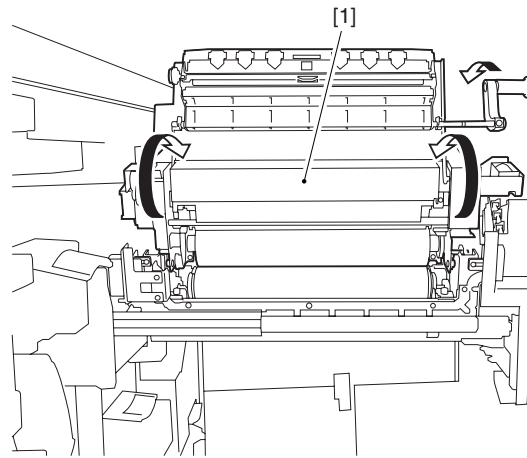


F-14-63

7) Make sure to check the following items before operation.

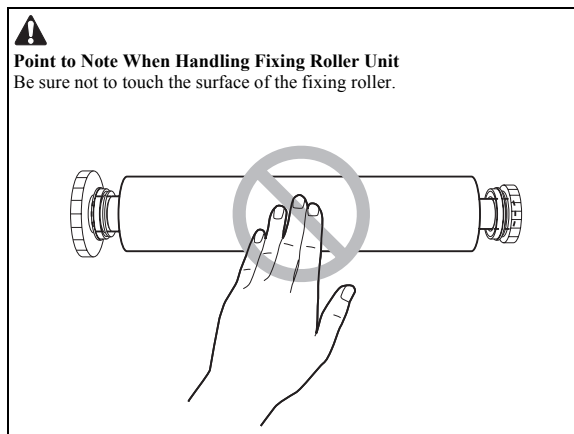


Open the fixing assembly [1] slowly and fully.

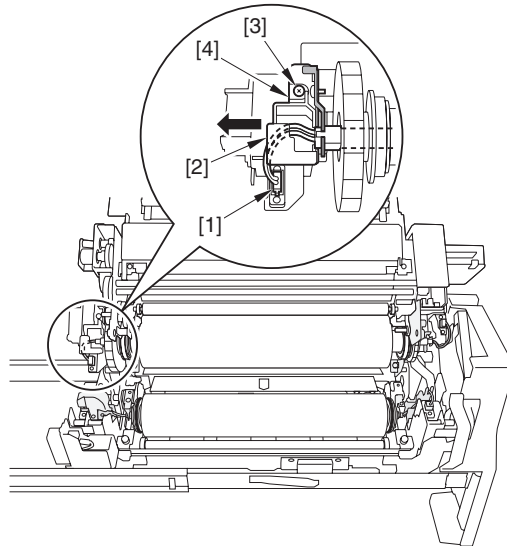


F-14-64

8) Make sure to check the following items before operation.

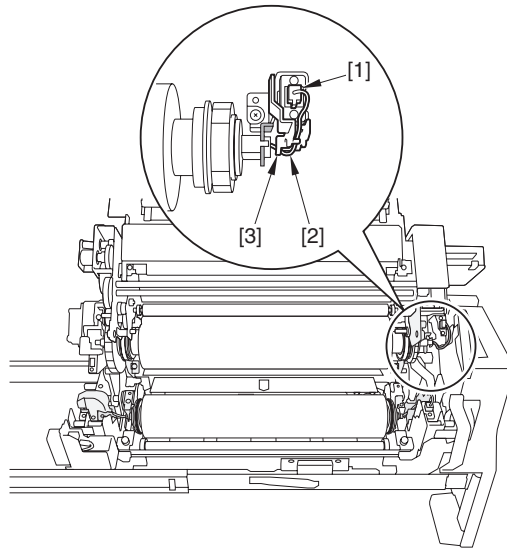


Disconnect the connector [1] (with connector hook) and free the harness from the harness guide [2]. Then, loosen the screw [3] and detach the heater retaining plate [4].



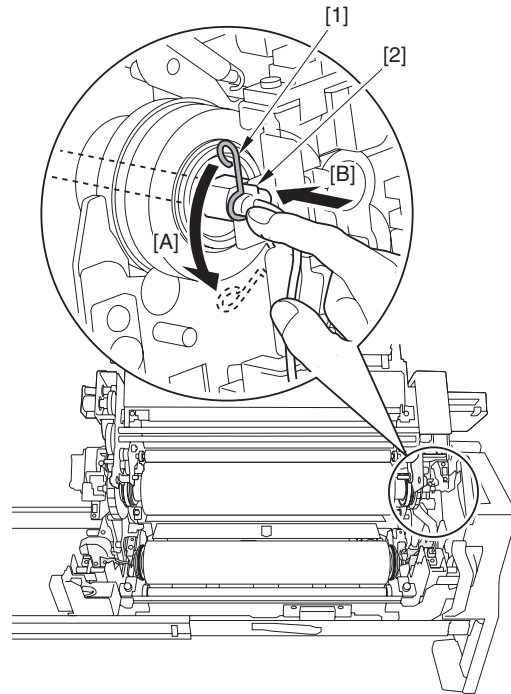
F-14-65

- 9) Disconnect the connector [1] (with connector hook) and free the harness [2] from the harness guide [3].



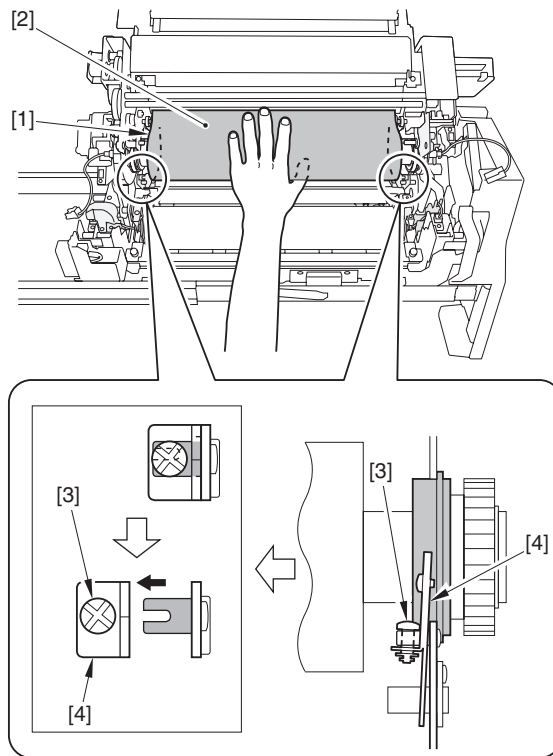
F-14-66

- 10) Release the fixing heater retaining spring [1] in the [A] direction. Then remove the fixing heater [2] by sliding it in the [B] direction and place it inside of the fixing roller.



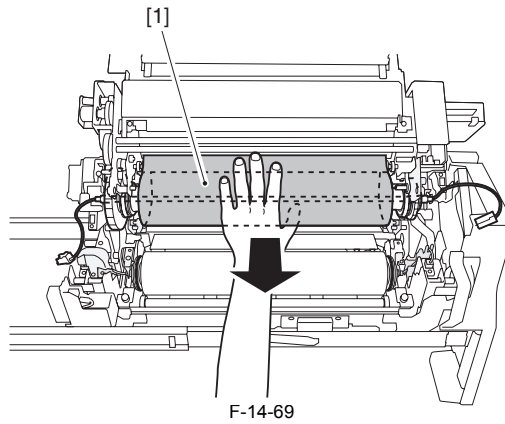
F-14-67

11) While holding the fixing roller [1] with paper [2], loosen the 2 screws [3] and slide the bearing fixing plate [4].



F-14-68

12) Remove the fixing roller unit [1] with the fixing heater attached.



F-14-69

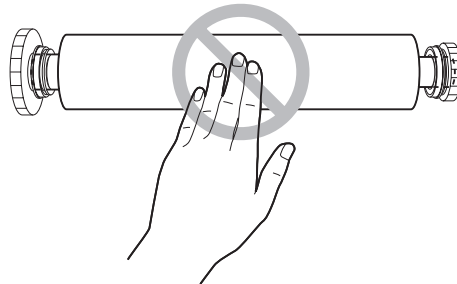
Attaching Fixing Roller Unit

1) Make sure to check the following items before operation.

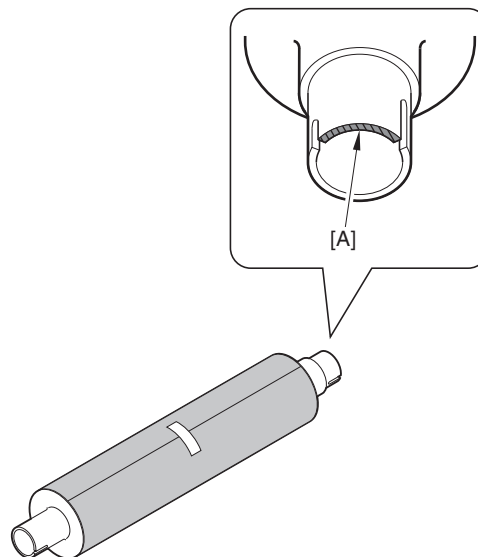


Point to Note When Handling Fixing Roller Unit

- Be sure not to touch the surface of the fixing roller.



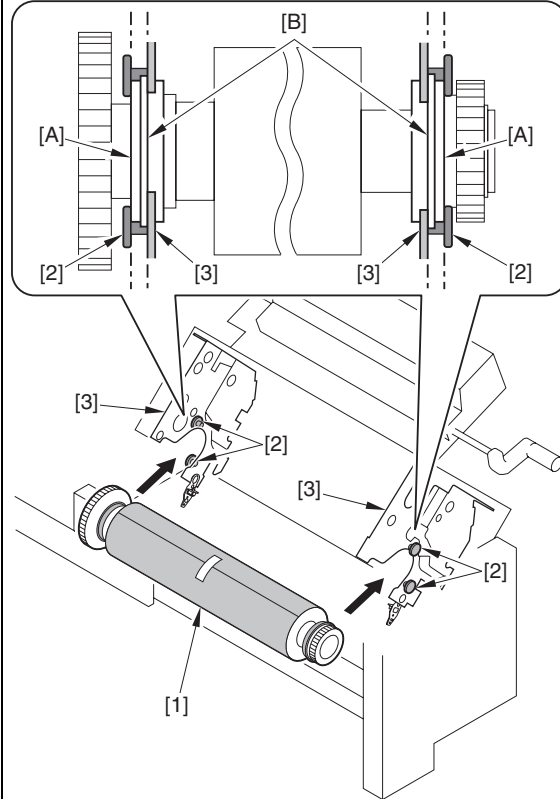
- Identify the primary fixing roller and the secondary fixing roller with the color of the shaft end [A] area. Only with the secondary transfer roller, the [A] area is colored in red.



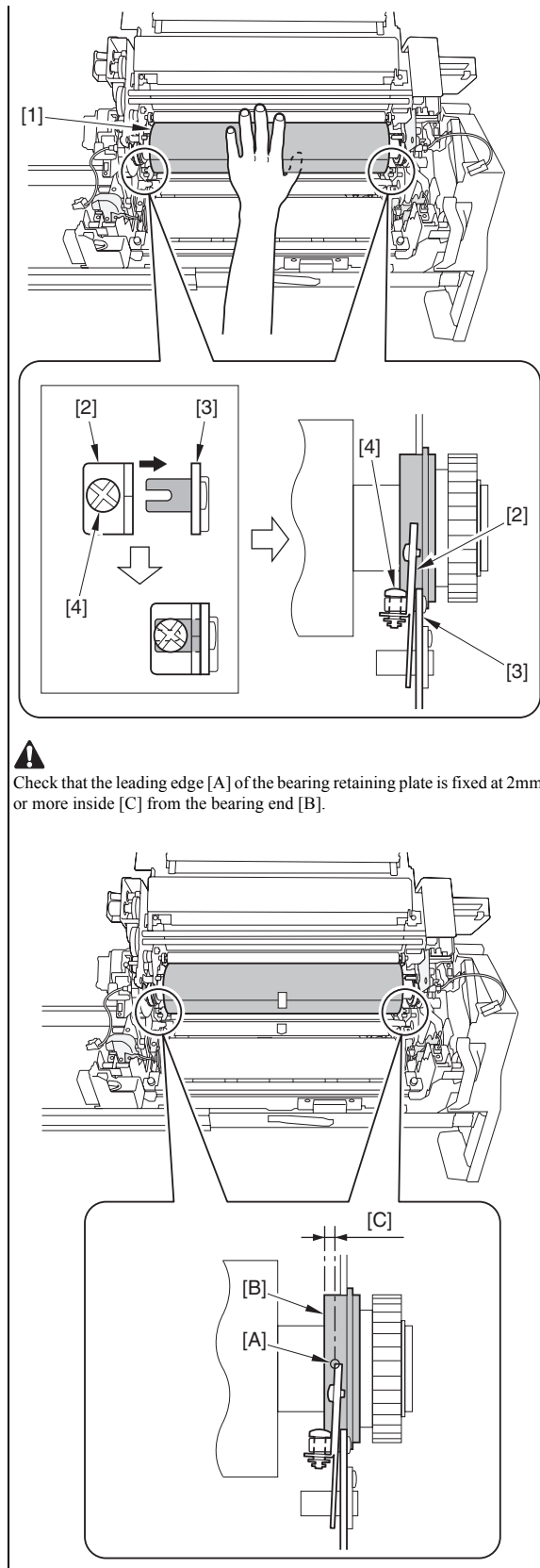


When attaching a new fixing roller, be sure to attach it with the paper wrapped around. Remove the wrapped paper after attaching the fixing roller unit [1] to the fixing assembly.

When attaching the fixing roller unit, fit the bearing end [A] of the fixing roller unit [1] with the bearing retainers [2] of the fixing assembly, and the bearing rib [B] of the fixing roller unit [1] with the side plates [3] of the fixing assembly as indicated while placing the fixing heater inside of the fixing roller.



2) Push on the bearing fixing plate [2] to the side plate [3] of the fixing assembly while supporting the fixing roller [1]. Then, tighten the fixing screw [4].

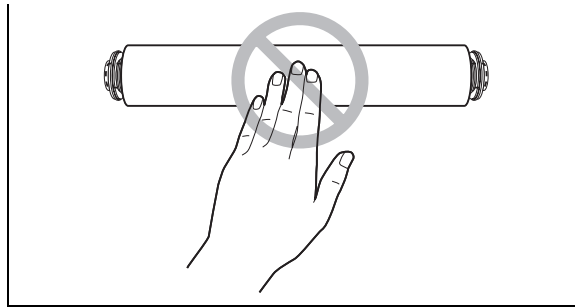


Check that the leading edge [A] of the bearing retaining plate is fixed at 2mm or more inside [C] from the bearing end [B].

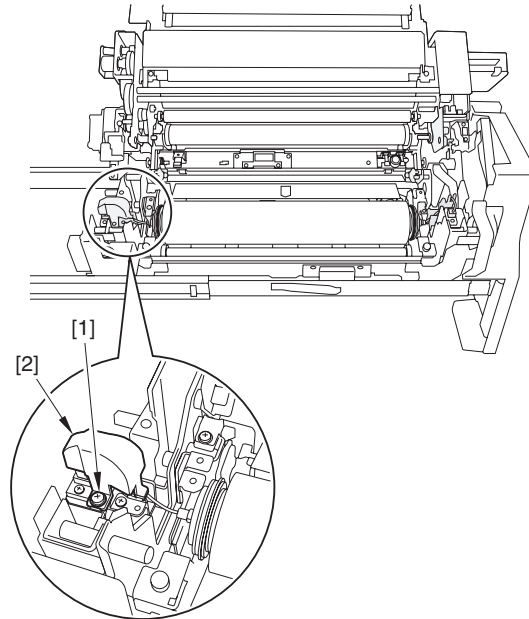
13) Make sure to check the following items before operation.



Point to Note When Handling Pressure Roller Unit
Do not touch the surface of the pressure roller.

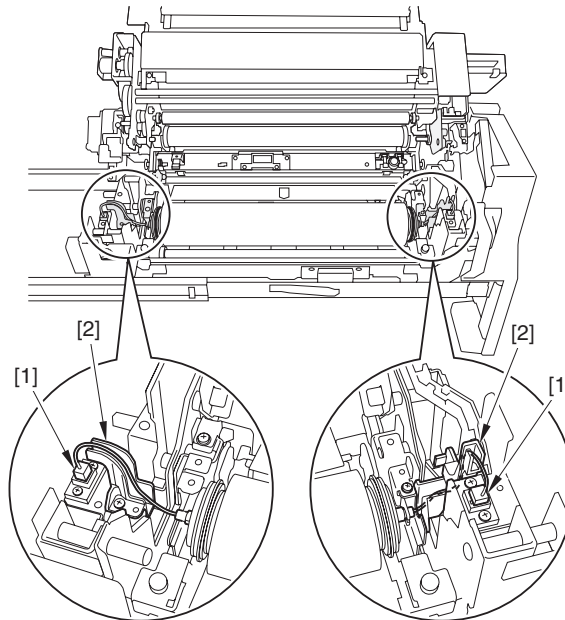


Loosen the screw [1] and detach the connector cover [2].



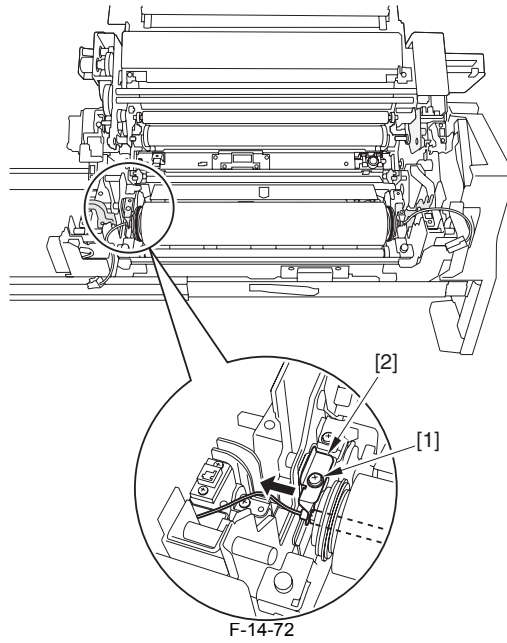
F-14-70

14) Disconnect the 2 connectors [1] (with the connector hook) and free the harness from the harness guide [2].



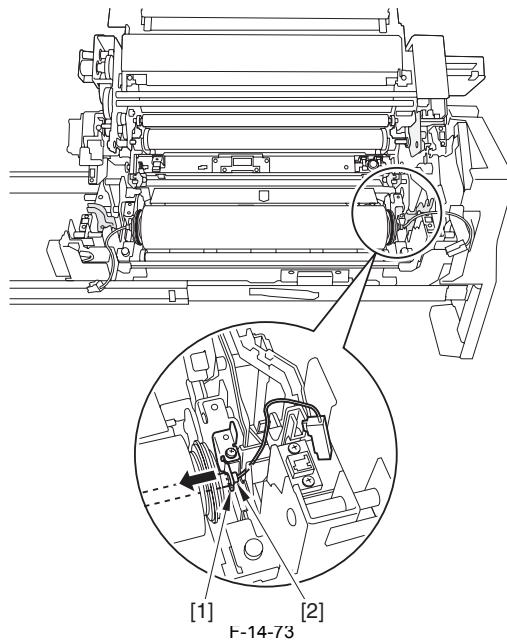
F-14-71

15) Remove the screw [1] and detach the leaf spring [2].



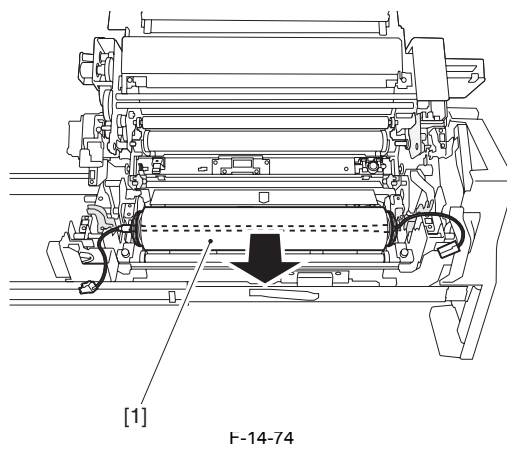
F-14-72

16) Slide the heater [2] out from the plate [1] into the pressure roller.



F-14-73

17) With the pressure heater placed in, detach the pressure roller unit [1].



F-14-74

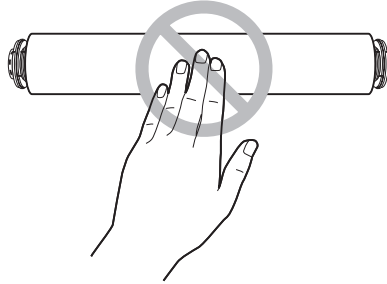
Attaching Pressure Roller Unit

1) Make sure to check the following items before operation.

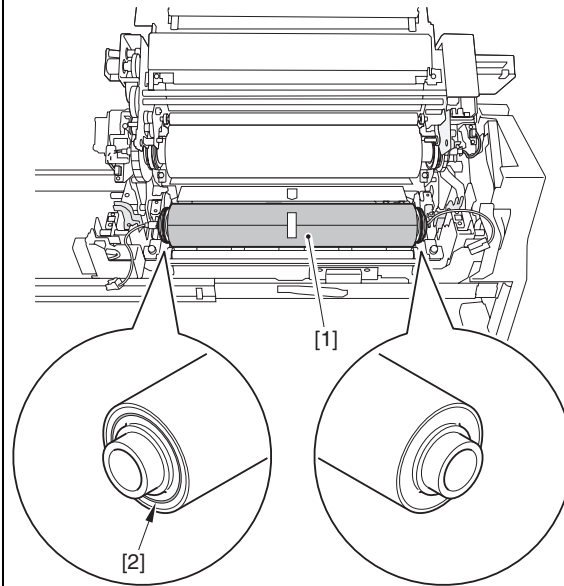


Point to Note When Handling Pressure Roller Unit

- Do not touch the surface of the pressure roller.



- Be sure to attach the pressure roller with correct orientation.
Attaching orientation: Place the end of the pressure roller [1] at which the slot [2] (about 1 mm width) is at the rear side.

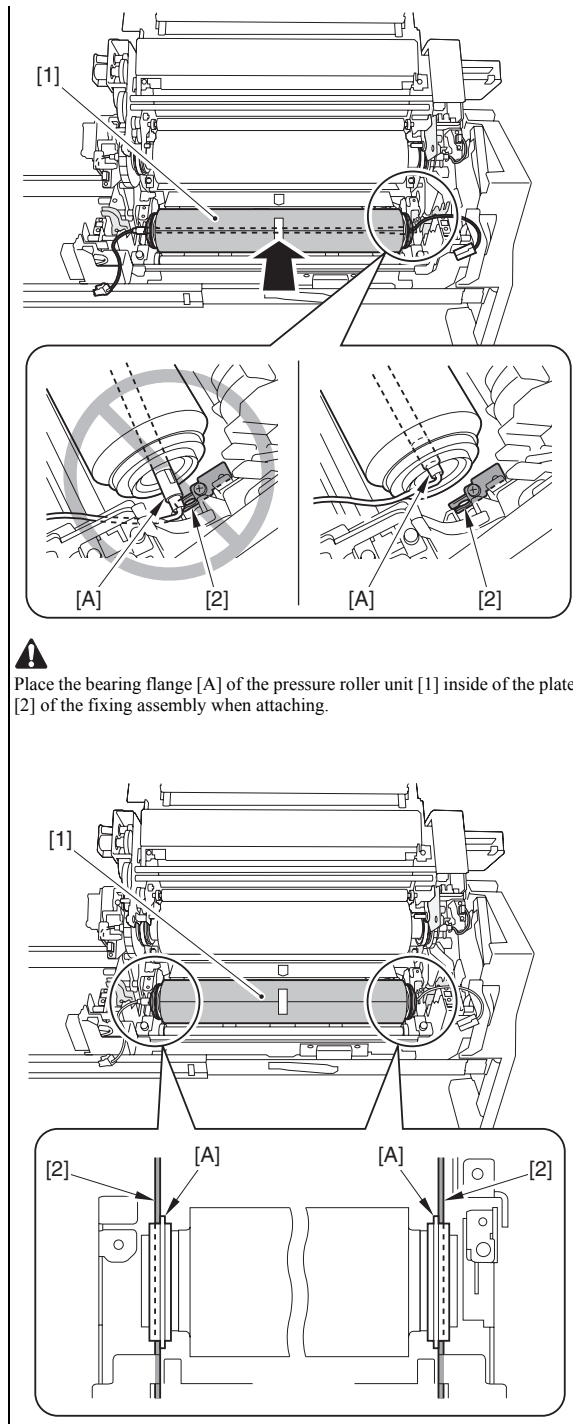


With the pressure heater placed in, attach the pressure roller unit [1] to the fixing assembly.



- When attaching the new pressure roller, attach it together with the paper covering it. Remove the paper covering the roller after attaching the pressure roller unit [1] to the fixing assembly.

- When attaching the pressure roller unit [1], make sure not to hit the [A] area of the pressure heater to the heater fixing plate [2].



Place the bearing flange [A] of the pressure roller unit [1] inside of the plate [2] of the fixing assembly when attaching.

18) Make sure to check the following items before operation.

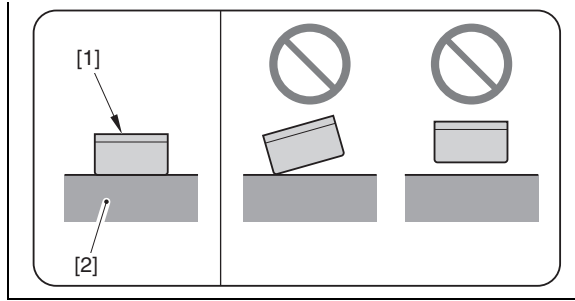


Warning

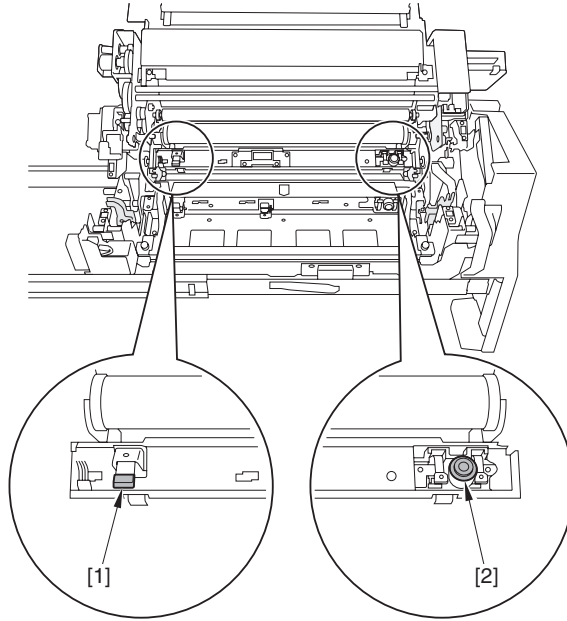
Do not deform the thermistor/thermo switch.

Thermistor and thermo switch detect temperature of the fixing assembly, and they stop or shut power distribution to the heater in case of detecting abnormal temperature. Thus, the thermistor and thermo switch have to be properly engaged with the fixing roller. Once the thermistor/thermo switch [1] is deformed, they fail to be in contact with the fixing roller [2] properly which leads misdetection of temperature and may cause a serious accident such as smoking and firing.

When cleaning the thermistor/thermal switch, perform it with care not to put too much stress on them.



Clean the thermistor [1] and the thermo switch [2] with lint-free paper moistened with alcohol solution.

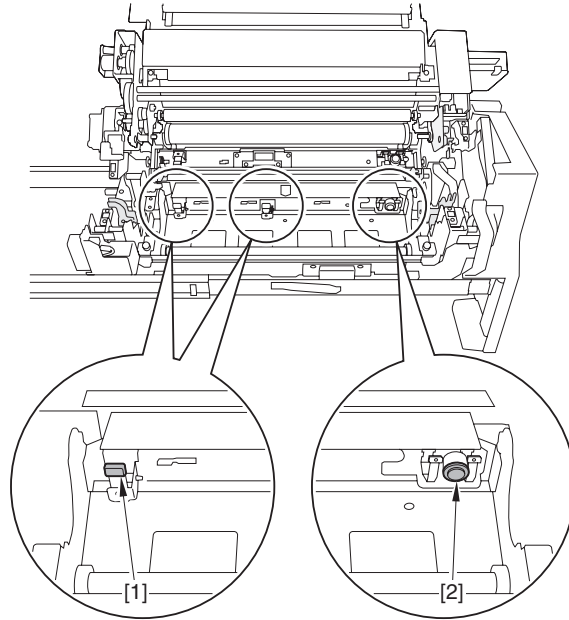


F-14-75

19) Make sure to check the following items before operation.

Warning
 Do not deform the thermistor/thermo switch.
 Thermistor and thermo switch detect temperature of the fixing assembly, and they stop or shut power distribution to the heater in case of detecting abnormal temperature. Thus, the thermistor and thermo switch have to be properly engaged with the pressure roller. Once the thermistor/thermo switch [1] is deformed, they fail to be in contact with the pressure roller [2] properly which leads misdetection of temperature and may cause a serious accident such as smoking and firing.
 When cleaning the thermistor/thermal switch, perform it with care not to put too much stress on them.

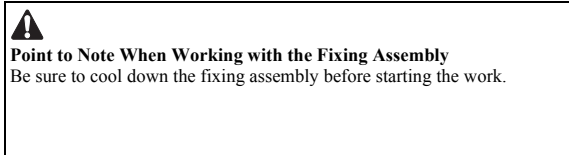
Clean the 2 thermistors [1] and the thermo switch [2] with lint-free paper moistened with alcohol solution.



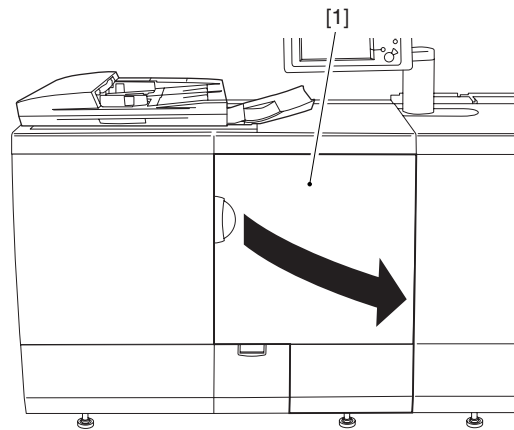
F-14-76

14.4.4.3 Cleaning of the Primary Fixing Refresh Roller

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

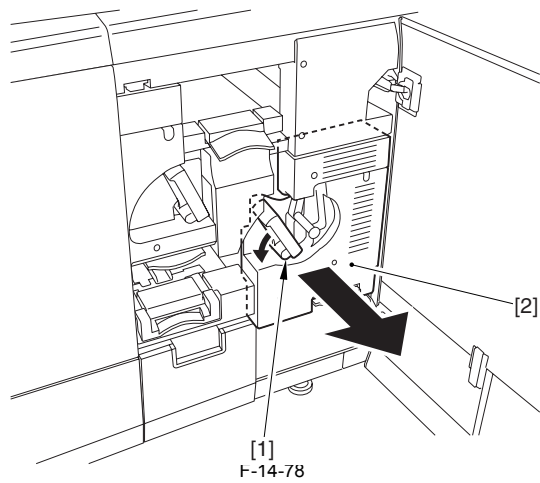


1) Open the sub station right front cover [1] fully.

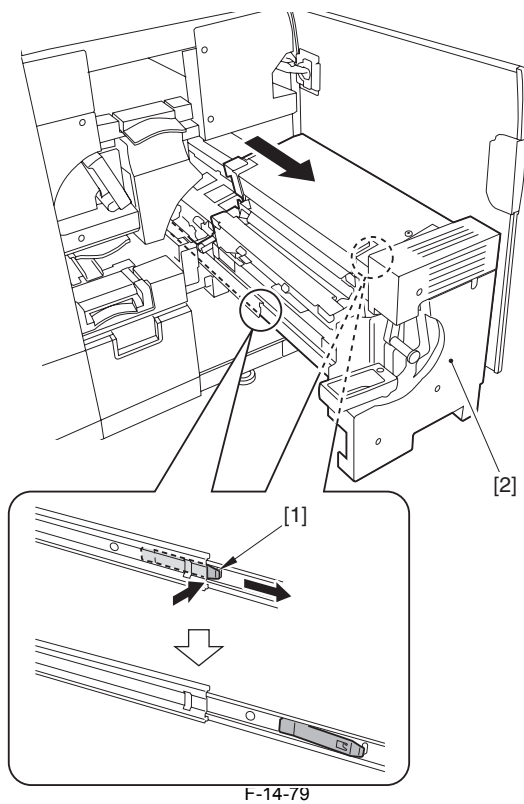


F-14-77

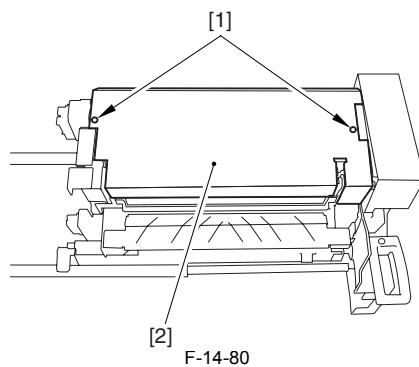
2) Shift the lever (C-A4) [1] in the direction of the arrow, and slide out the fixing assembly [2].

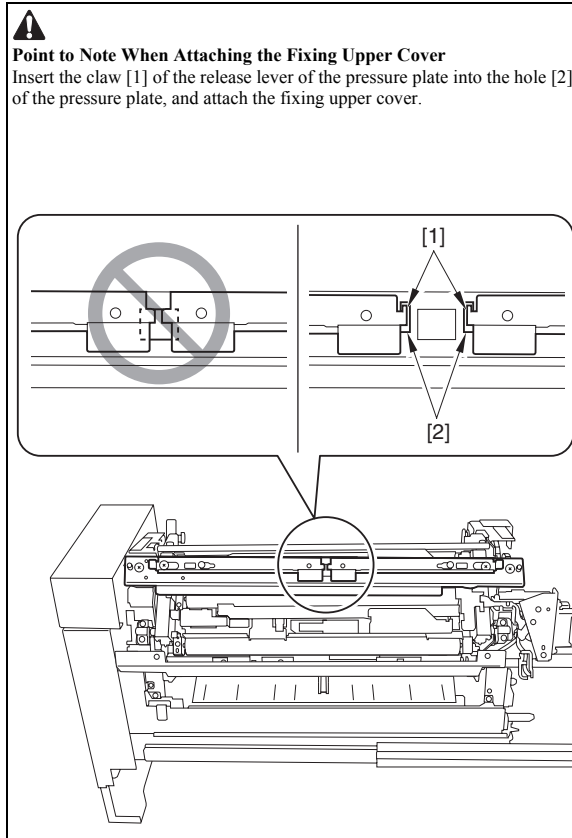


3) Release the 2 leaf springs [1], and slide out the fixing assembly [2] further.

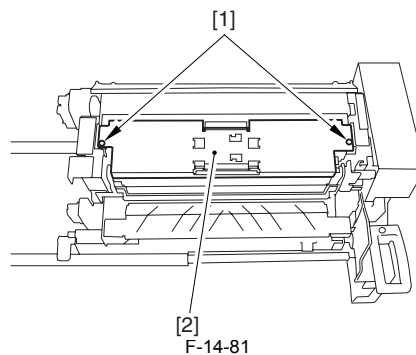


4) Loosen the 2 screws [1] and detach the fixing upper cover [2].

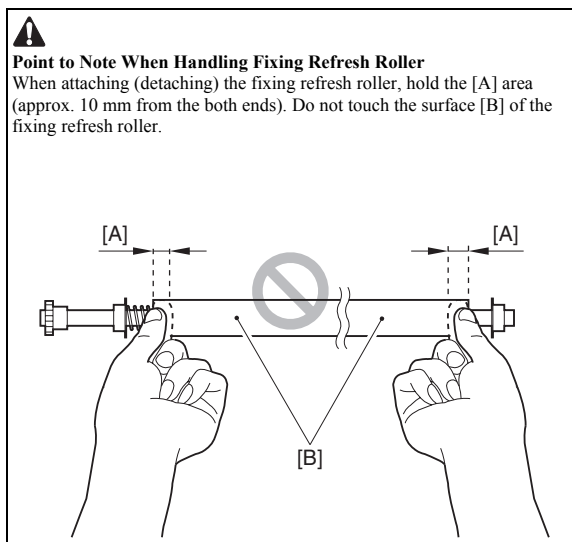




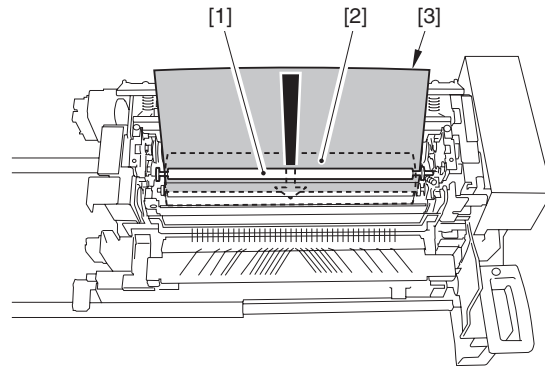
5) Remove the 2 screws [1] and remove the fixing web unit [2].



6) Make sure to check the following items before operation.



Spread paper [3] between the fixing refresh roller [1] and the fixing roller [2].

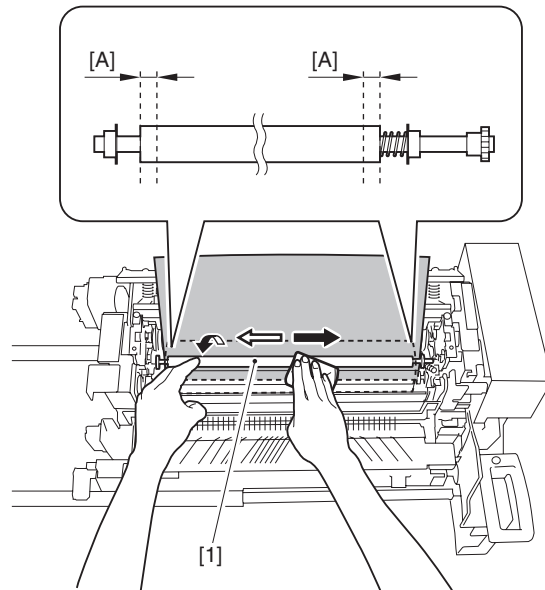


F-14-82

7) Turn the fixing refresh roller [1] to clean the surface with lint-free paper impregnated with alcohol.



Touch [A] (about 10mm from each end of the roller) when turning the fixing refresh roller [1].



F-14-83

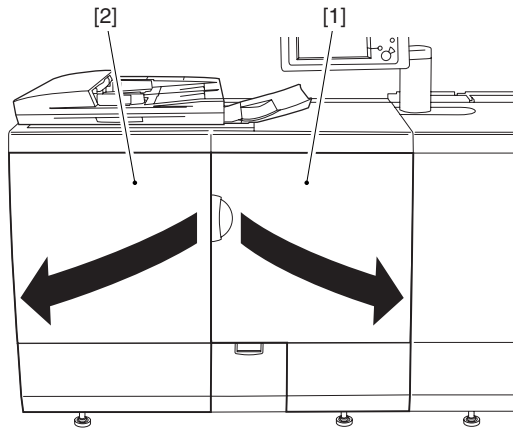
14.4.4.4 Cleaning of the Secondary Fixing Refresh Roller

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000



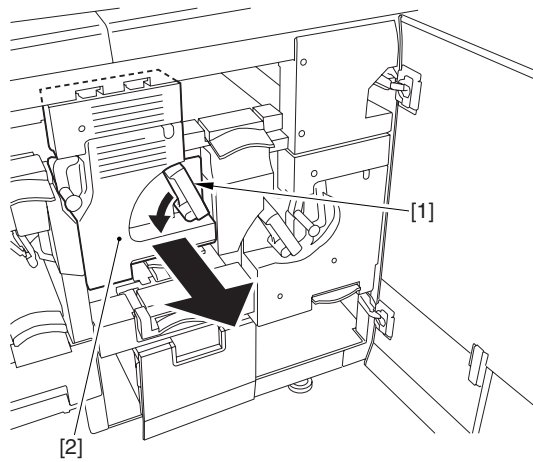
Point to Note When Working with the Fixing Assembly
Be sure to cool down the fixing assembly before starting the work.

1) Fully open the sub station front right cover [1] and the sub station front left cover [2] in order.



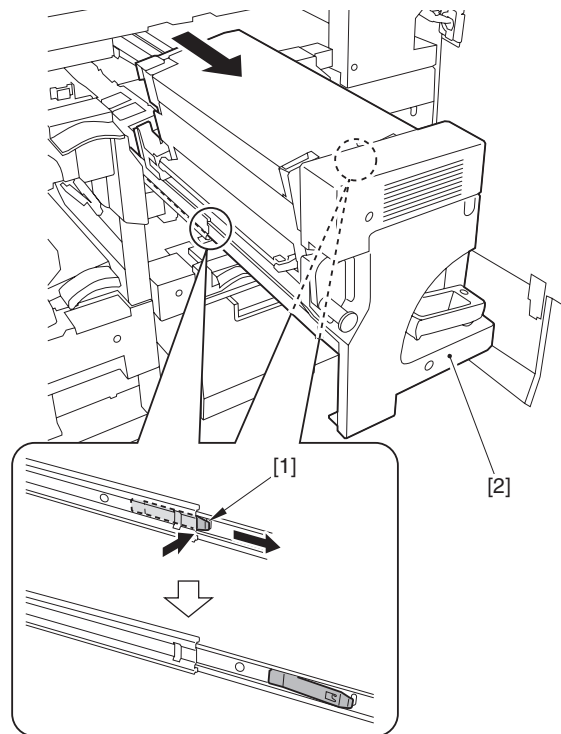
F-14-84

2) Shift the lever (C-B4) [1] in the direction of the arrow, and slide out the fixing assembly [2].



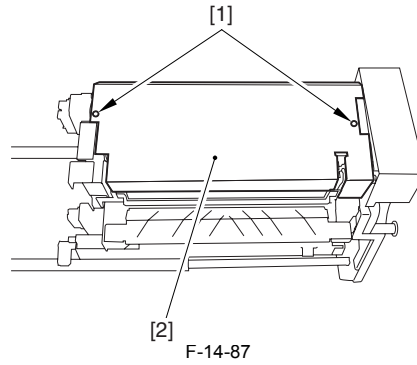
F-14-85

3) Release the 2 leaf springs [1], and slide out the fixing assembly [2] further.



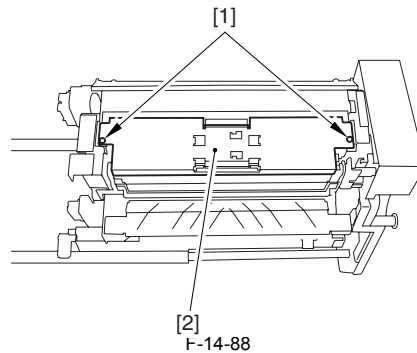
F-14-86

4) Loosen the 2 screws [1] and detach the fixing upper cover [2].



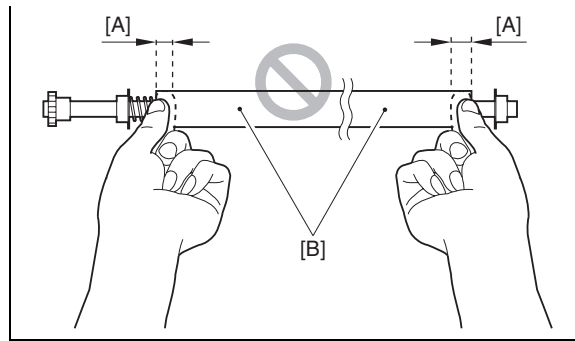
⚠ Point to Note When Attaching the Fixing Upper Cover
 Insert the claw [1] of the release lever of the pressure plate into the hole [2] of the pressure plate, and attach the fixing upper cover.

5) Remove the 2 screws [1] and remove the fixing web unit [2].

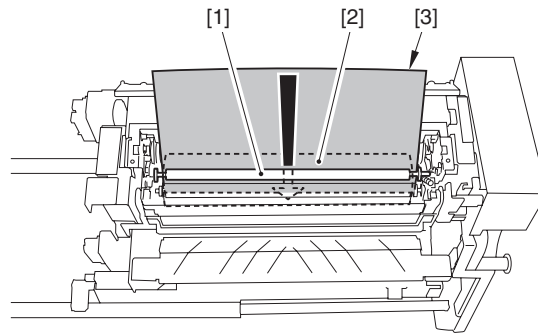


6) Make sure to check the following items before operation.

⚠ Point to Note When Handling Fixing Refresh Roller
 When attaching (detaching) the fixing refresh roller, hold the [A] area (approx. 10 mm from the both ends). Do not touch the surface [B] of the fixing refresh roller.



Spread paper [3] between the fixing refresh roller [1] and the fixing roller [2].

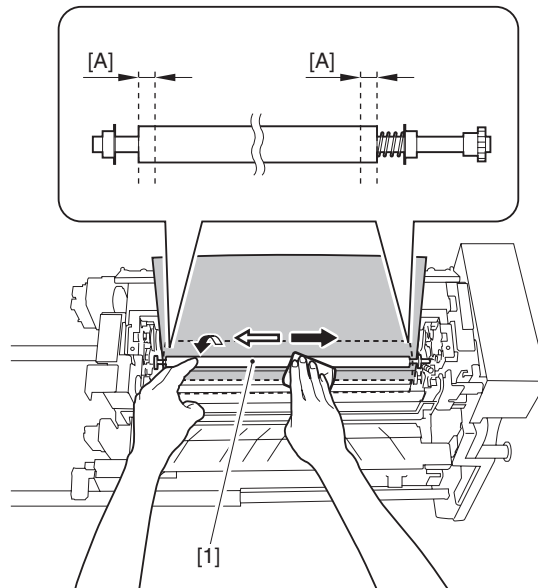


F-14-89

7) Turn the fixing refresh roller [1] to clean the surface with lint-free paper impregnated with alcohol.



Touch [A] (about 10mm from each end of the roller) when turning the fixing refresh roller [1].



F-14-90

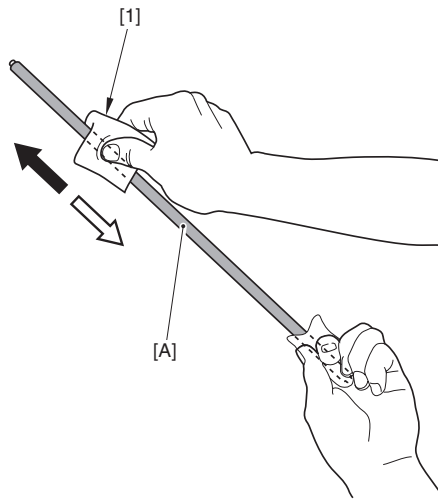
14.4.4.5 Cleaning of the Primary Fixing Refresh Cleaning Roller

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- 1) Remove the primary fixing refresh cleaning roller.
- 2) Clean the surface [A] on the fixing refresh cleaning roller with the lint-free paper [1] moistened with alcohol solvent.



Do not touch the surface of the roller.



F-14-91

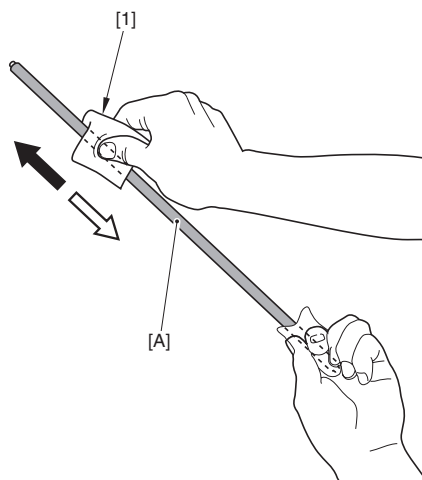
14.4.4.6 Cleaning of the Secondary Fixing Refresh Cleaning Roller

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- 1) Remove the secondary fixing refresh cleaning roller.
- 2) Clean the surface [A] on the fixing refresh cleaning roller with the lint-free paper [1] moistened with alcohol solvent.



Do not touch the surface of the roller.



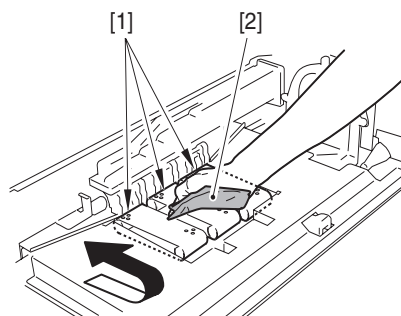
F-14-92

14.4.5 Pickup / Feeding Unit

14.4.5.1 Cleaning Pickup Feed Belt

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- 1) Remove the right/left deck pickup unit.
- 2) While turning the 3 pickup feed belts [1] in the direction of the arrow, wipe dirt with cloth [2] moistened with alcohol.



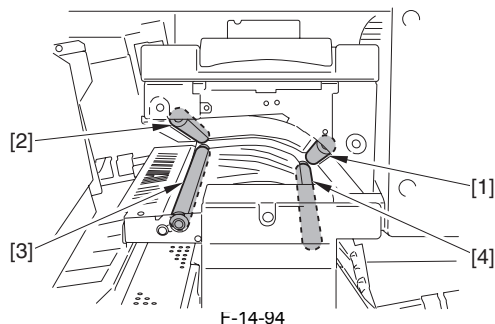
F-14-93

14.4.5.2 Cleaning Tandem Feed Roller

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

1. List of rollers to clean

- 1 tandem feed roller 1 [1]
- 1 tandem feed roller 2 [2]
- 1 tandem feed roller 3 [3]
- 1 tandem feed roller 4 [4]



2. Before cleaning rollers

Do the following work before cleaning the rollers.

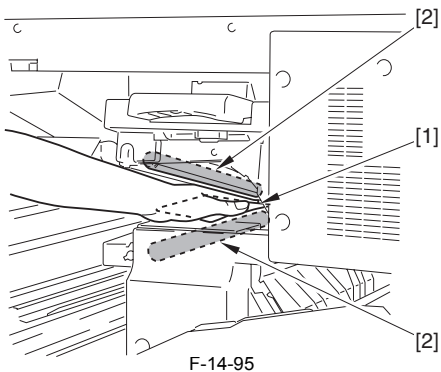
- 1) Open the sub station front right door.
- 2) Open the sub station front left door.
- 3) Pull out the primary fixing unit toward the front (in case of cleaning the tandem feed roller 2 and 3).
- 4) Pull out the secondary fixing unit toward the front (in case of cleaning the tandem feed roller 1 and 4).

3. Cleaning procedure of rollers

a. Cleaning of tandem feed roller 2 and 3

Perform cleaning from the gap as shown in the figure below.

- 1) Attach the alcohol-moistened lint-free paper [1] on the tandem feed roller [2], and turn the roller in the feeding direction to clean the entire surface of the roller.



- 2) Turn the roller, and check that there is no visible paper lint on the surface.

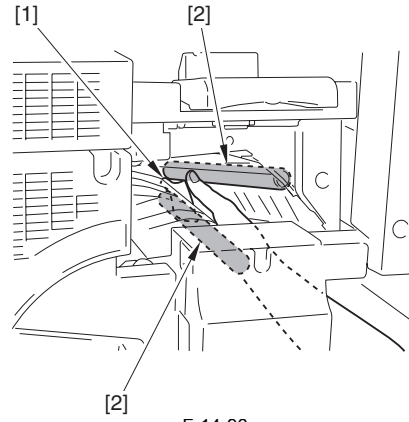
MEMO:

If it is difficult to wipe out the rear side of the roller, wrap the alcohol-moistened lint-free paper around the long and thin tools, such as wrench, to perform cleaning.

b. Cleaning of tandem feed roller 1 and 4

Perform cleaning from the gap as shown in the figure below.

- 1) Attach the alcohol-moistened lint-free paper [1] on the tandem feed roller [2], and turn the roller in the feeding direction to clean the entire surface of the roller.



F-14-96

2) Turn the roller, and check that there is no visible paper lint on the surface.

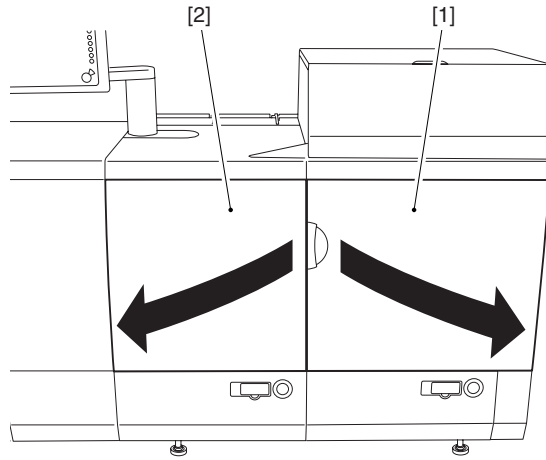
MEMO:

If it is difficult to wipe out the rear side of the roller, wrap the alcohol-moistened lint-free paper around the long and thin tools, such as wrench, to perform cleaning.

14.4.5.3 Cleaning of the Askew Feed Roller

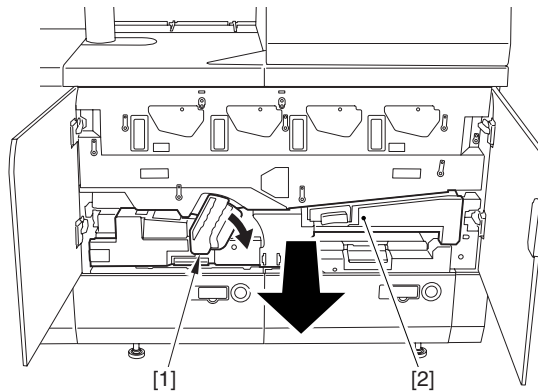
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

1) Open fully the front right cover [1], and then the front left cover [2] of main station.



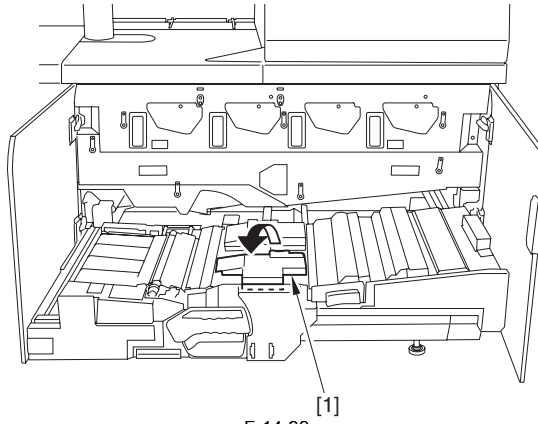
F-14-97

2) Shift the lever (B-E1) to the direction of the arrow. Hold the lever (B-E1) to slide the feeding unit [2] fully forward.



F-14-98

3) Open the guide (B-E3)[1].

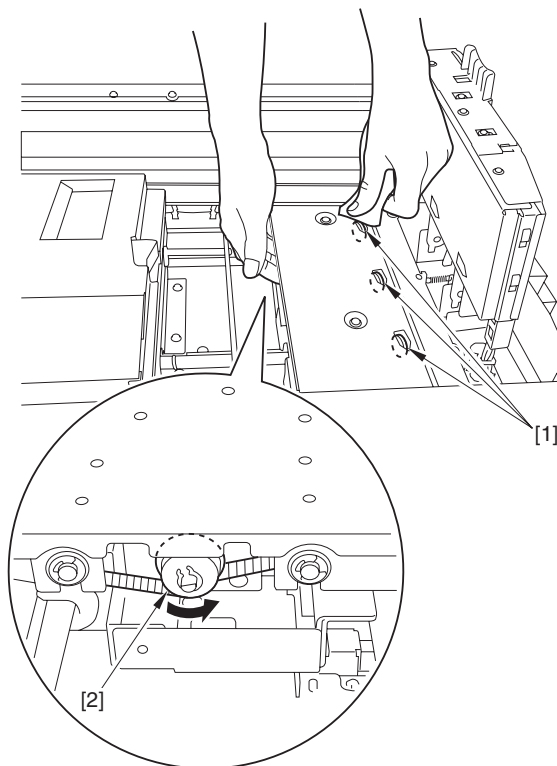


F-14-99

4) Clean the cross feed roller [1] with the lint-free paper impregnated with alcohol by moving the drive pully [2] with fingers (to rotate the cross feed roller).

MEMO:

Rotate the cross feed roller for more than 3 times when cleaning.



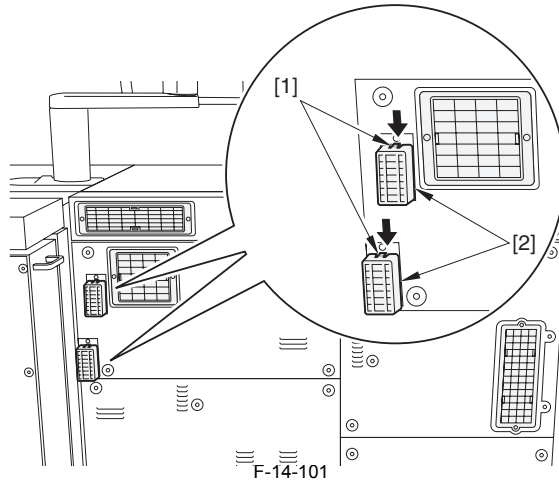
F-14-100

14.4.6 Filter

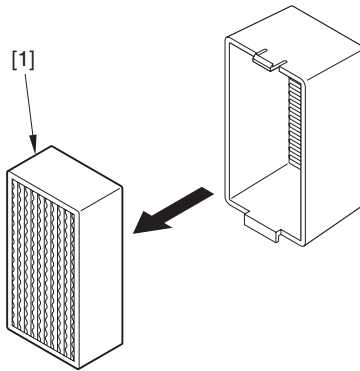
14.4.6.1 Cleaning Sub-Station Left Rear Ozone Filter

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

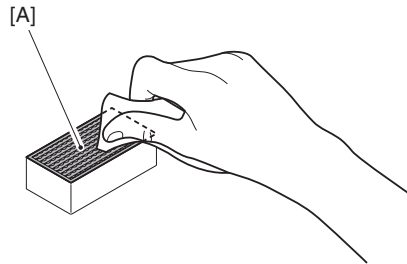
1) Disengage the claw [1] and remove the 2 sub station rear left ozone filter units [2].



2) Remove the 2 sub station rear left ozone filters [1] from the 2 filter cases.



3) Clean the filter's surface [A] with lint-free paper moistened with water.

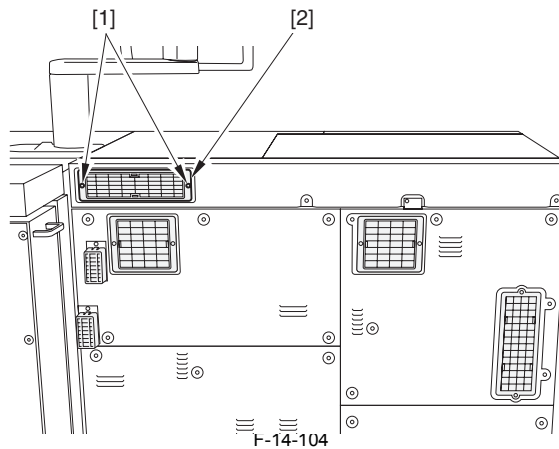


F-14-103

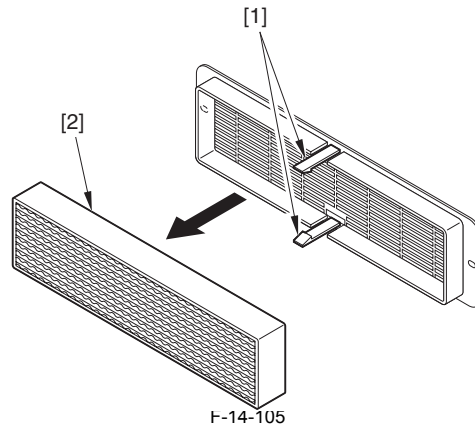
14.4.6.2 Cleaning Sub-Station Upper Rear Ozone Filter

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

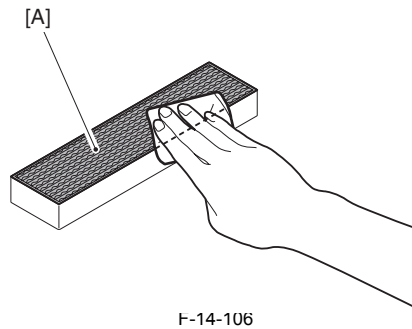
1) Remove the 2 screws [1] to remove the sub station rear upper ozone filter unit [2].



2) Disengage the claw [1] to remove the sub station rear upper ozone filter [2] from the filter case.



3) Clean the filter's surface [A] with lint-free paper moistened with water.



14.4.6.3 Cleaning Sub-Station Middle Rear Ozone Filter

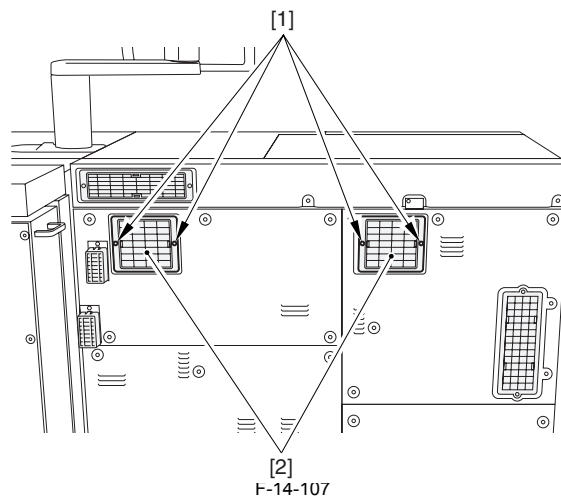
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

1) Remove the 4 screws [1] to remove the 2 sub station rear middle ozone filter units [2].

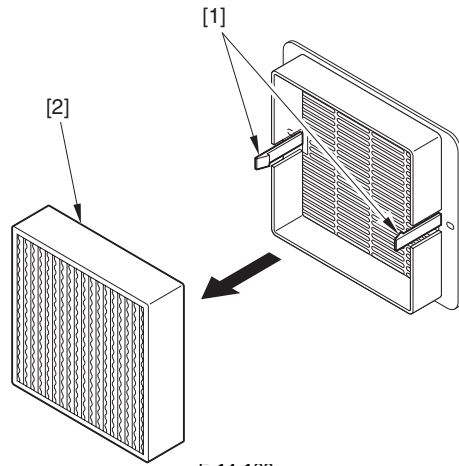


Point to Note When Attaching

Fit the position of the sub station rear cover into the screw hole of filter unit.

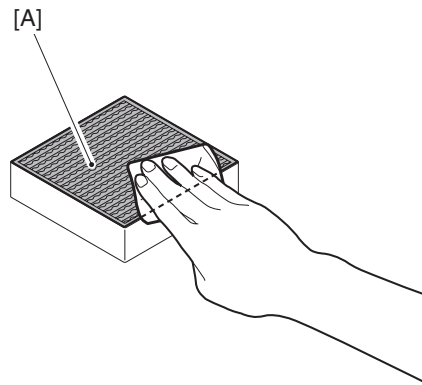


2) Disengage the claw [1], and remove the both sub station rear middle ozone filters [2] from the filter case.



F-14-108

3) Clean the filter's surface [A] with lint-free paper moistened with water.



F-14-109

Chapter 15 Standards and Adjustments

Contents

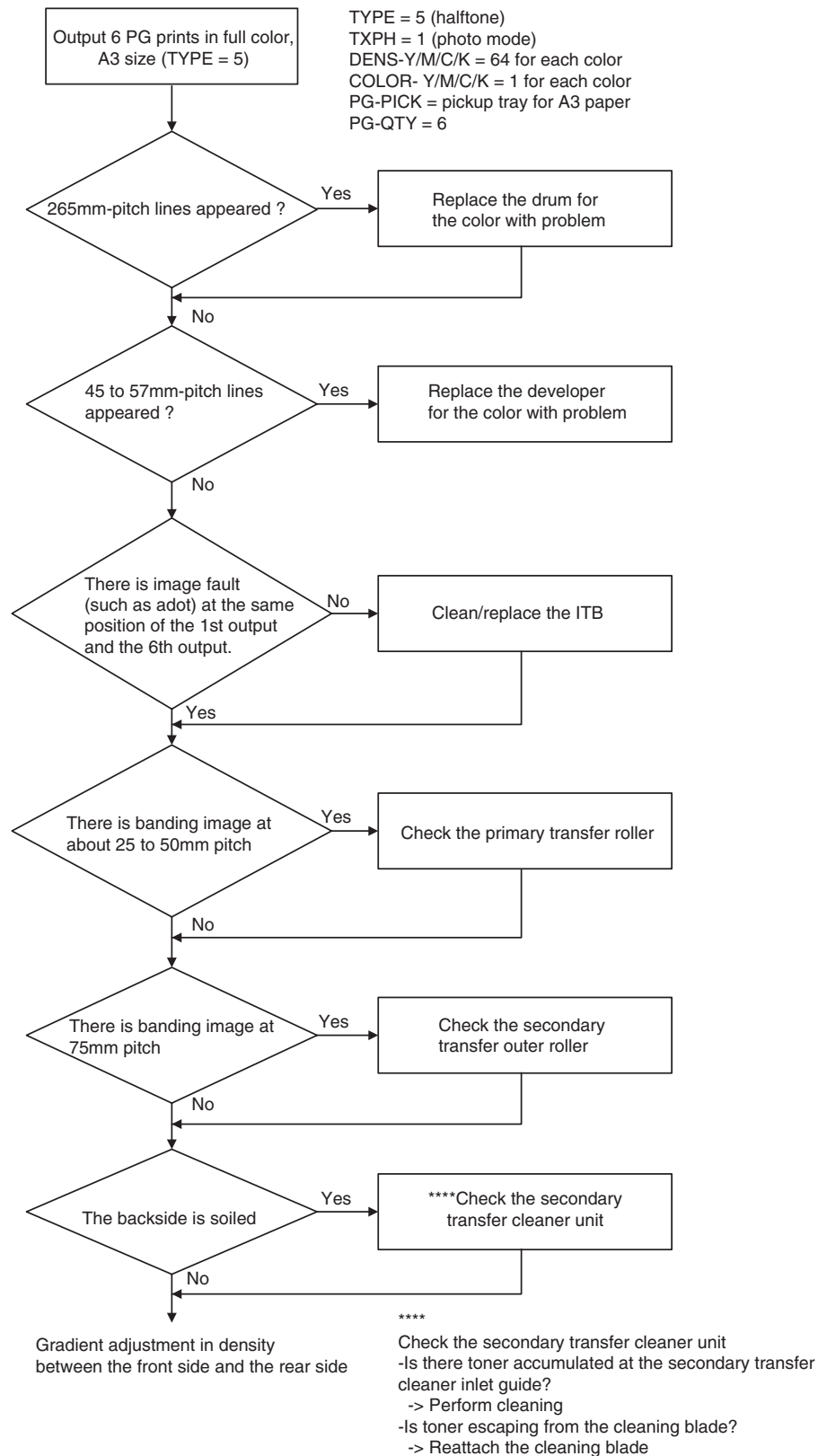
15.1 Image Adjustment Basic Procedure.....	15-1
15.1.1 Making Pre-Checks	15-1
15.1.2 Gradient adjustment in density between the front side and the rear side.....	15-2
15.1.3 Adjustment of density difference (1/3)	15-3
15.1.4 Adjustment of density difference (2/3)	15-4
15.1.5 Adjustment of density difference (3/3)	15-5
15.2 Image Adjustments	15-6
15.2.1 Horizontal Registration Adjustment.....	15-6
15.2.2 Checking Image Margin.....	15-7
15.2.3 Image Position Adjustment	15-7
15.3 Laser Exposure System.....	15-10
15.3.1 When replacing laser scanner unit	15-10
15.4 Image Formation System.....	15-11
15.4.1 When Releasing the Intermediate Transfer Unit Pressure	15-11
15.4.2 When replacing primary charging wire.....	15-11
15.4.3 When replacing primary grid plate.....	15-11
15.4.4 When replacing the primary charging assembly	15-11
15.4.5 When replacing pre-transfer charging wire/pre-transfer charging assembly	15-12
15.4.6 When replacing developing assembly.....	15-12
15.4.7 When detaching developing assembly	15-14
15.4.8 When replacing developer	15-14
15.4.9 When replacing photosensitive drum	15-17
15.4.10 When replacing ITB	15-17
15.4.11 When replacing primary transfer roller/secondary transfer inner roller	15-17
15.4.12 When replacing ITB cleaning brush roller/cleaning blade.....	15-17
15.4.13 When replacing ITB cleaning web.....	15-17
15.4.14 When replacing secondary transfer outer roller	15-17
15.4.15 When replacing waste toner container	15-17
15.4.16 When replacing drum patch sensor	15-17
15.4.17 When replacing potential sensors and potential control PCB.....	15-18
15.4.18 When replacing leading edge registration patch sensor	15-19
15.4.19 When replacing color registration patch sensor	15-19
15.4.20 When replacing Waste Toner Full Sensor.....	15-19
15.4.21 When replacing Buffer Waste Toner Full Sensor	15-19
15.4.22 When Replacing Color Sensor	15-19
15.5 Fixing System	15-20
15.5.1 Checking fixing nip width.....	15-20
15.5.2 When replacing primary fixing roller.....	15-21
15.5.3 When replacing secondary fixing roller	15-21
15.5.4 When replacing pressure belt	15-21
15.5.5 When Replacing Pressure Belt Unit-Related Durable Parts	15-21
15.5.6 When replacing fixing web	15-22
15.6 Electrical Components.....	15-22
15.6.1 Points to note before replacing SRAM PCB	15-22
15.6.2 Procedure to replace SRAM PCB	15-22
15.6.3 Points to note when replacing hard disks	15-22

15.6.4 After replacing hard disks	15-23
15.6.5 Points to note when replacing main controller PCB (MAIN-M).....	15-23
15.6.6 Points to note when replacing main controller PCB (MAIN-P)	15-23
15.6.7 Points to note when replacing encryption boards (optional).....	15-24
15.6.8 When replacing DC controller PCB 1-1 //Clearing RAM	15-24
15.6.9 When replacing DC controller PCB 1-2	15-24
15.6.10 When replacing DC controller PCB 1-3	15-24
15.6.11 When replacing HV1 PCB	15-24
15.6.12 When replacing HV2, HV4, HV6 PCB	15-24
15.6.13 When replacing HV3, HV5, HV7, HV8 PCB.....	15-24
15.7 Pickup/Feeding System.....	15-25
15.7.1 When replacing pickup/feed rollers	15-25
15.7.2 When replacing paper length sensor	15-25
15.7.3 When Replacing Registration Sensor.....	15-25
15.7.4 When replacing paper thickness sensor	15-25
15.7.5 When replacing floatation fan/fan duct.....	15-25
15.7.6 When Replacing Deck and Deck Solenoid (Deck Solenoid Adjustment)	15-25
15.7.7 When Replacing Paper Surface Sensor.....	15-26
15.7.8 When replacing pickup/feed rollers manual feed tray	15-26

15.1 Image Adjustment Basic Procedure

15.1.1 Making Pre-Checks

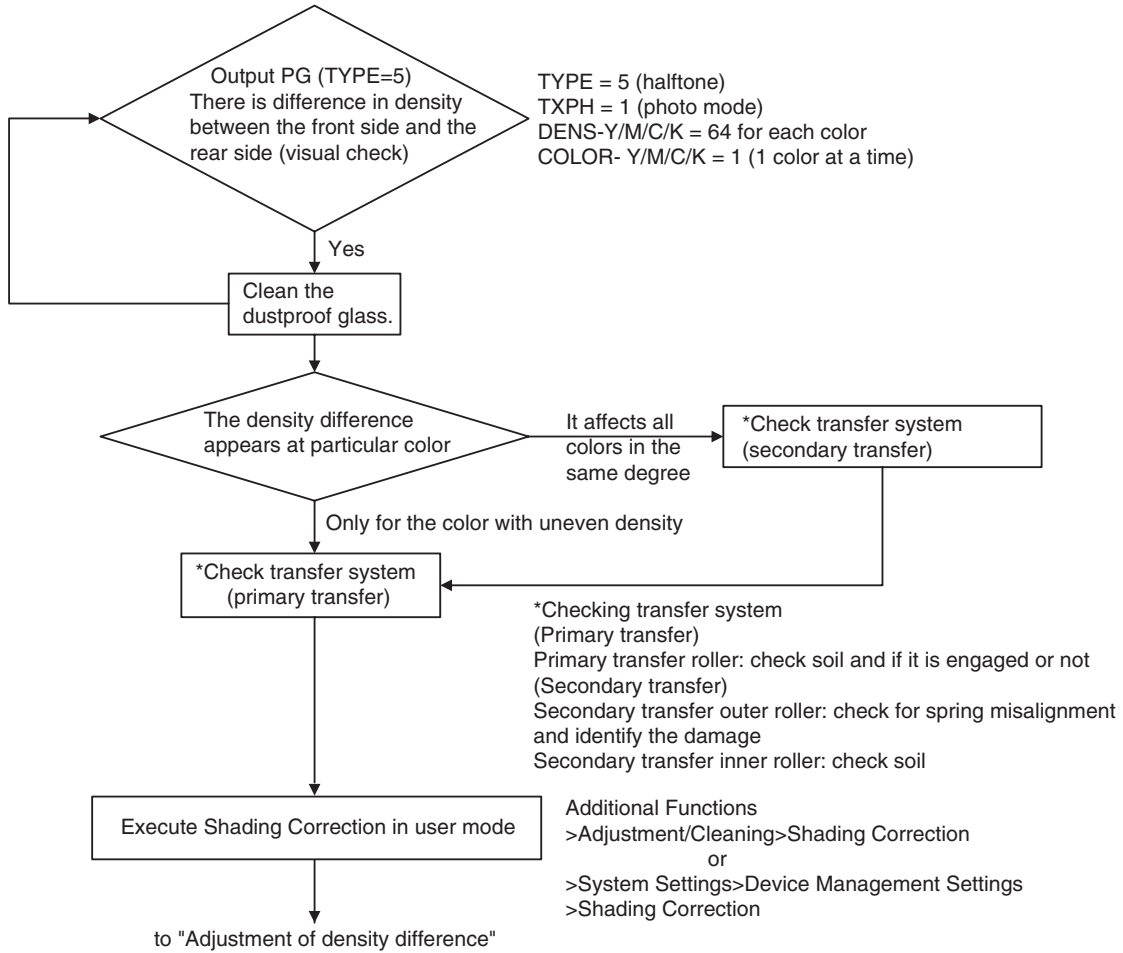
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000



F-15-1

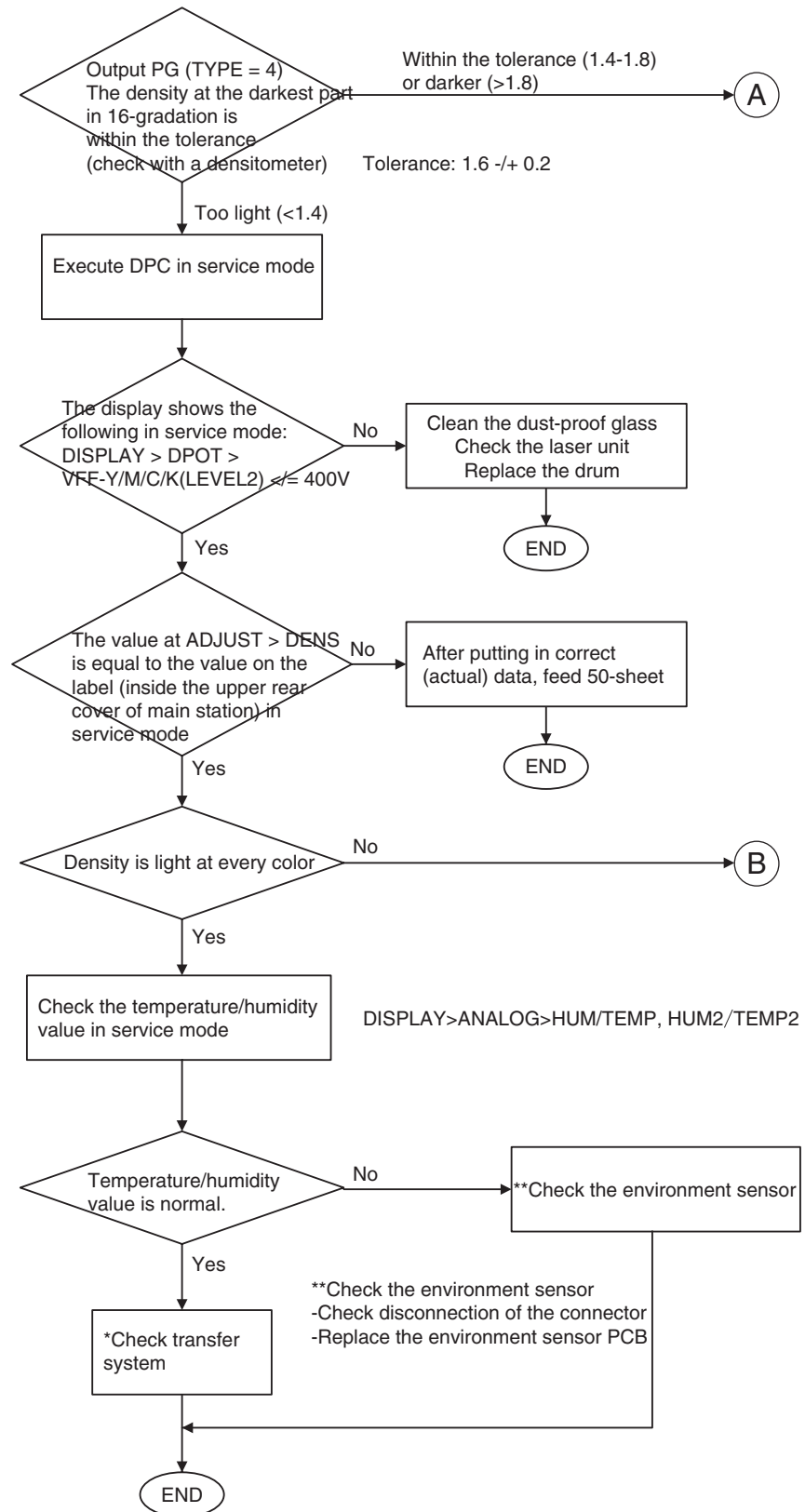
15.1.2 Gradient adjustment in density between the front side and the rear side

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000



15.1.3 Adjustment of density difference (1/3)

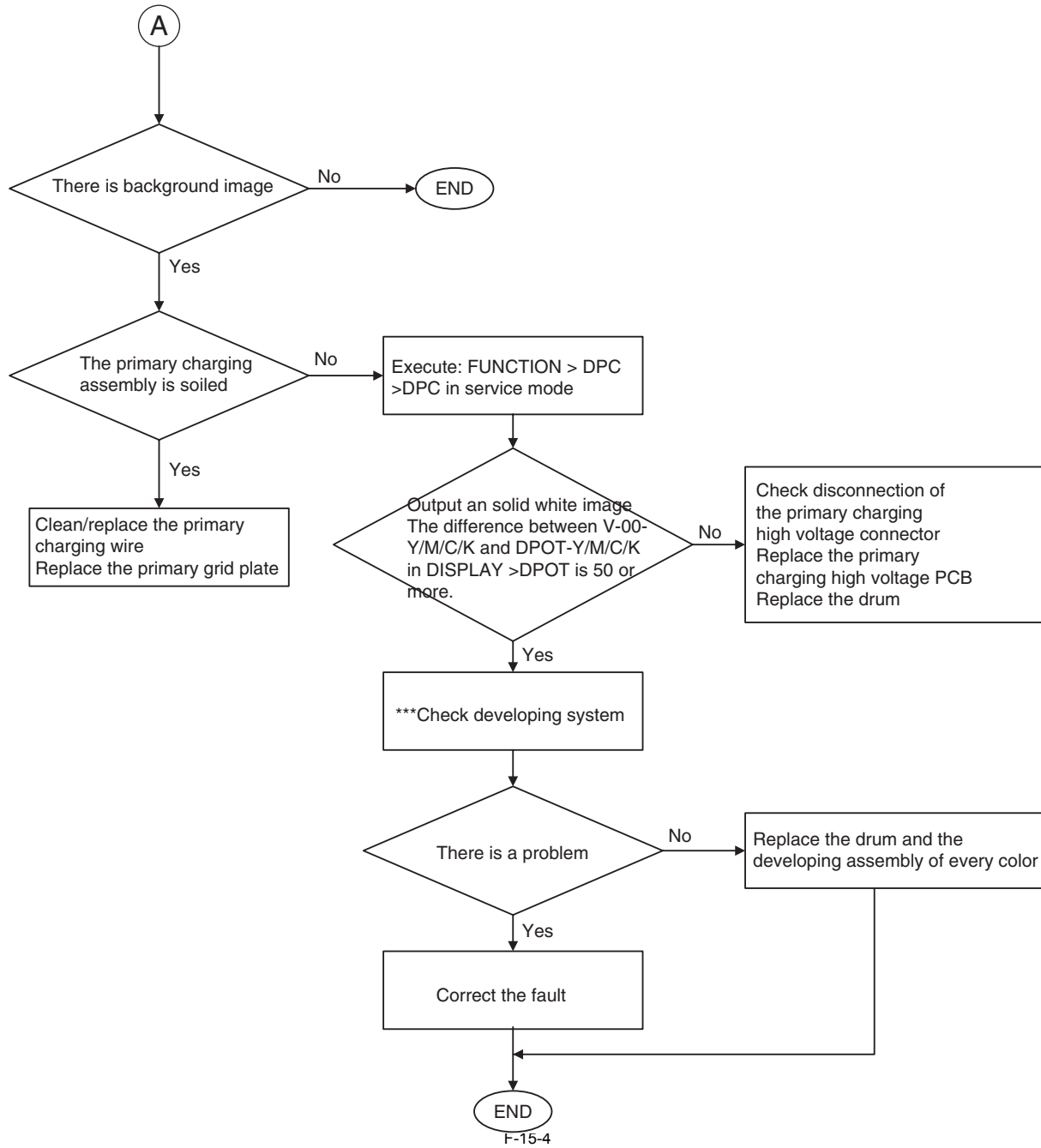
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000



F-15-3

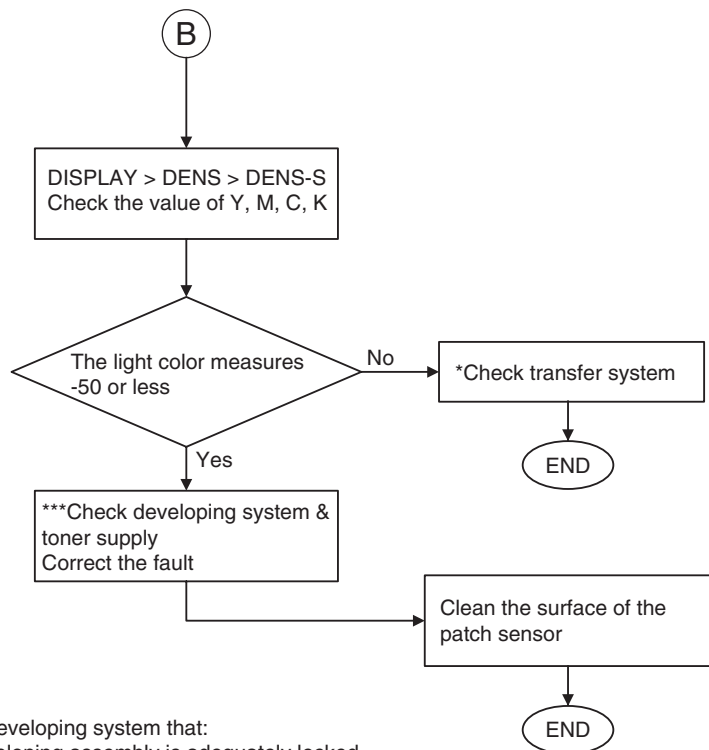
15.1.4 Adjustment of density difference (2/3)

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000



15.1.5 Adjustment of density difference (3/3)

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000



Check developing system that:

- the developing assembly is adequately locked.
- >Detach/attach the developing assembly to pressure adequately
- the output of the developing bias is adequate.

DISPLAY>DENS>DEV-DC-Y/M/C/K

- the toner is evenly coated on the developing cylinder
- > If there is foreign particle on the blade, remove it-the magnetic pole of the developing cylinder is properly positioned.
- >Attach the positioning plate properly

Check toner supply if:

- the toner is supplied to the sub hopper.
- > Check disconnection of sub hopper toner sensor. Clean the brush

F-15-5

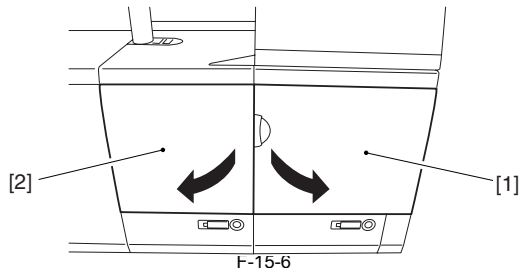
15.2 Image Adjustments

15.2.1 Horizontal Registration Adjustment

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

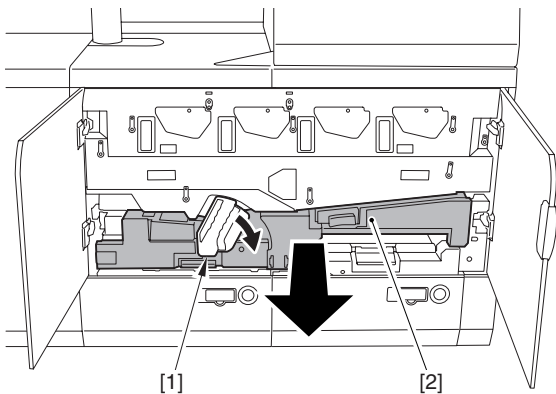
Perform horizontal registration adjustment for right/left decks according to the following step.

- 1) Enter service mode.
- COPIER > FUNCTION > ATTRACT > P-POSI
- 2) Select the entry field 1 (left side) and enter the following figures.
- When executing pickup from the right deck: enter "1"
- When executing pickup from the left deck: enter "2"
- 3) Select the entry field 2 (right side), enter "0" and press OK.
- 4) The display changes into "JAM".
- 5) Open the front right cover [1] and the front left cover [2] of the main station.



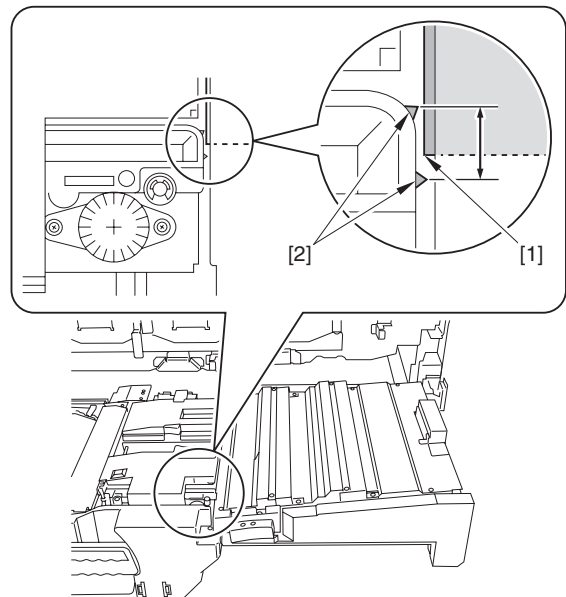
F-15-6

- 6) Tilt the lever B-E1 [1] in the direction of the arrow. Hold the lever B-E1 [1] and pull the feeder assembly [2] until it stops.



F-15-7

- 7) Check to see that the lower left corner [1] of the paper that is stopped at the pre-registration assembly exists between the 2 projections [2] of the side reference plate.

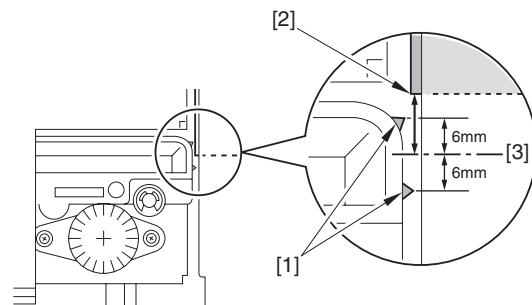


F-15-8

- 8) If it is not between the 2 projections [1] of the side reference plate, measure the distance between the lower left corner [2] of the paper to the center [3] (6 mm from the projection) with a scale.

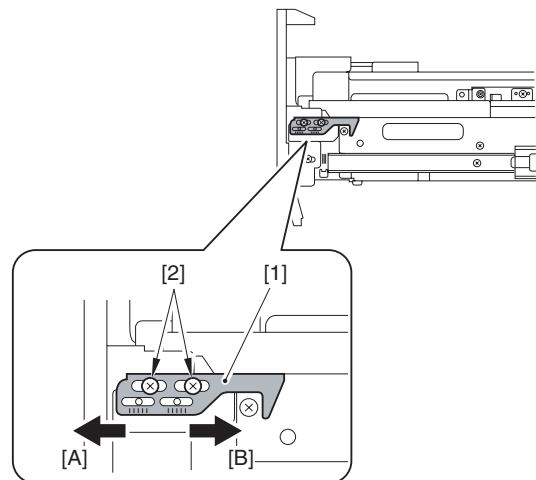
MEMO:

Its existence between the 2 projections [1] means conforming to the specified value, however, the center is recommended.



F-15-9

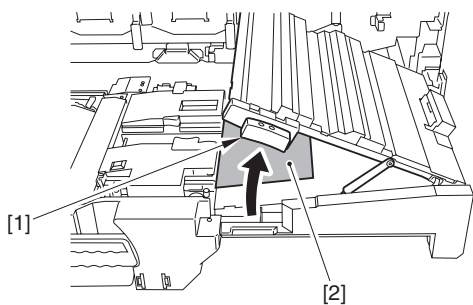
- 9) Open the deck selected in the service mode.
- 10) Loosen the 2 screws [2] of the latch claw [1] at the right side of the deck.
- 11) For the value measured in step 8), move the latch claw adjusting plate [1] back and forth to adjust. (1 scale = 1 mm)
- In the case that the paper needs to be moved to the rear side, move the latch claw adjusting plate forward [A].
- In the case that the paper needs to be moved to the front side, move the latch claw adjusting plate backward [B].



F-15-10

- 12) Loosen the 2 screws of the latch claw.

- 13) Adjust the latch claw adjusting plate at the left side in the same manner.
- 14) Hold the lever B-E2 [1], open the pre-registration assembly and remove the paper.



F-15-11

- 15) Cancel the job on the screen 'System Monitor'.
- 16) Repeat step 1) to 7) to check that the lower left corner of the paper exists between the 2 projections of the side reference plate.
- 17) Be sure to perform the deck open/close solenoid adjustment after performing the adjustment. As for the adjustment procedure, see "When Replacing Deck and Deck Solenoid (Deck Solenoid Adjustment)".

15.2.2 Checking Image Margin

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- 1) By making the following selection in service mode, select the source of paper to which either A3 (297mm X 420mm) or 11X17 inch (279mm X 432mm) paper is set.



Checking Paper Size

The image position adjustment is executed based on the following premises: paper sizes of A3 and 11X17 inch are 297mm X 420mm and 279mm X 432mm, respectively. Therefore, if the trailing edge margin and right edge margin do not become the reference value 2.5mm after the adjustment, the paper size may not be the regular size so check the paper size being used.

COPIER > TEST > PG > PG-PICK
Right deck = 1
Left deck = 2

MEMO:

Following papers are recommended for the image margin adjustment:
CLC Paper (81.4g/m²)
Hammermill Laser Print (90g/m²)
Canon High Grade (100g/m²)

Because the foregoing papers are recommended as the general papers, so it is acceptable to use papers which a user frequently uses for the image position adjustment.

However, in such a case, pay attention to the followings.

-When using the paper duplicated in user mode, check that both values ("a" and "b") of the zoom adjustment are 0% (as for the test print, a= 360, and b= 270) (User Mode > System Management Setting > Paper Type Management Setting > Detail/Edit > Image Position Adjustment > Zoom Adjustment).

- Be sure not to use recycled paper, embossed paper, and vellum paper because, from the feedability point of view, variation tends to occur frequently.

- This image position adjustment (in service mode) is for all media registered with "Paper Type Management Settings"; thus, be sure to execute the adjustment using the same medium all the time.

(Although the image position adjustment can be executed with "Additional Functions > System Settings > Paper Type Management Settings" in user mode, it is the adjustment per paper type.)

- 2) After making the following settings in service mode, output the test print for the image position adjustment by pressing [Start].

COPIER > TEST > PG > TYPE = 5
COPIER > TEST > PG > COLOR-M = 1
COPIER > TEST > PG > COLOR-Y/C/Bk = 0

- 3) Check the output, and check that the reference values are as follow. If a

value is out of the range, execute the image position adjustment.

- Reference value of skew

$$L1 - L2 = \text{less than } 0.25\text{mm}$$

- Reference value of left edge margin

$$L1 = 2.5 \pm 0.3\text{mm}$$

- Reference value of leading edge margin

$$L3 = 2.5 \pm 0.3\text{mm}$$

- Magnification ratio in horizontal scanning direction

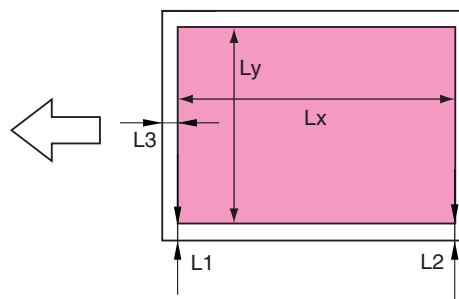
In case of A3 paper

In case of 11X17 inch paper

- Magnification ratio in vertical scanning direction

In case of A3 paper

In case of 11X17 inch paper



F-15-12

15.2.3 Image Position Adjustment

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

Be sure to adjust the variation of the side registration for each source of paper by executing the side registration adjustment before executing the image position adjustment.

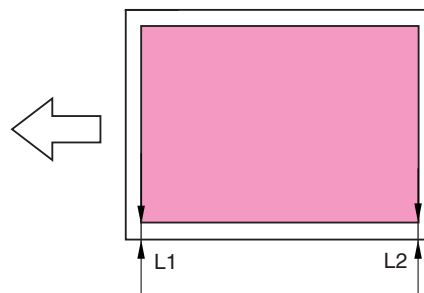
As for the side registration adjustment procedure, see "Side Registration Adjustment".

1. Output a test print for image position adjustment.

For output method of the test print for image position adjustment, see "Checking Image Margin".

2. Skew adjustment

- 1) Measure the left margins of the test print, L1 and L2, by 0.05 mm with a loupe (CK-0056).



F-15-13

- 2) Evaluate the skew adjustment value R [scale] from the formula below. Perform Step 3) if the skew adjustment value R is 1 or more ($R \geq 1$, $R < -1$).

$$\text{Skew adjustment value } R = (L1 - L2) / 0.25$$

(Round off the decimals)

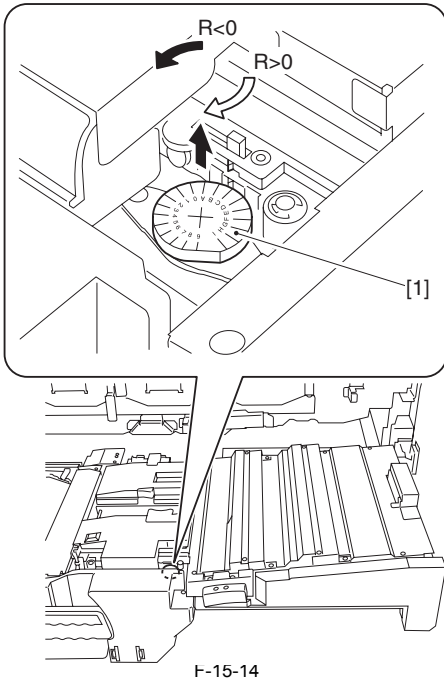
- 3) According to the skew adjustment value R, slightly lift the skew adjustment dial [1] up and turn it to adjust. Each 1 scale of the skew adjustment dial changes the skew amount by approx. 0.25mm.

- In case of: $R > 0$

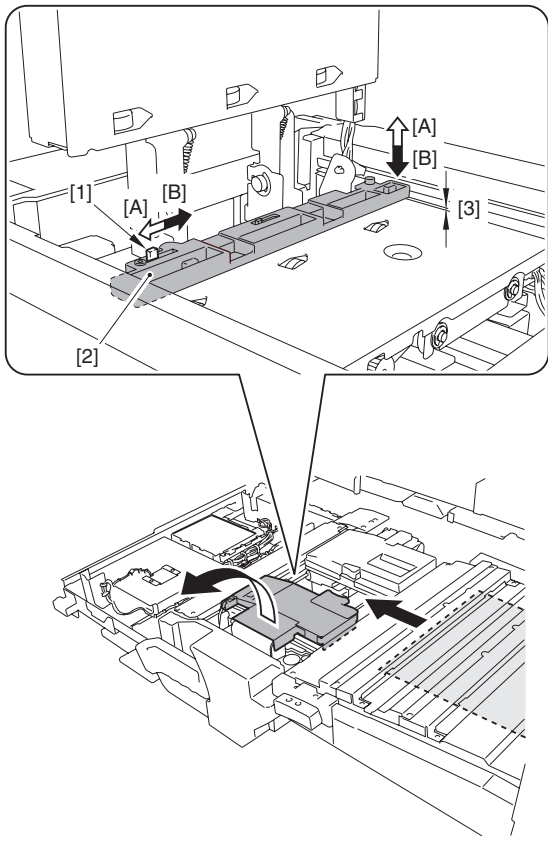
Turn the skew adjustment dial [1] for R-scale clockwise.

- In case of: $R < 0$

Turn the skew adjustment dial [1] for R-scale counterclockwise.



The lever [1] located at the cross feed registration area is set at [A] position at the time of shipment. Be sure not to shift the lever in an ordinary circumstance. Otherwise, feeding faults, such as jam, may occur. Depending on the lever position, the distance [3] between the side guide plate [2] and the paper feed plane varies. The distance [3] is approximately 1.5mm at [A] and 1mm at [B] respectively.

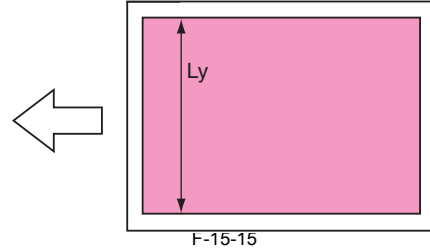


Usage Notes

- Be sure not to set the lever at [B] position at normal paper pass.
- If the distance varies at every paper pass or a jam occurs even executing the cross feed adjustment when using thin papers, the condition may improve by shifting the lever to [B] position. When passing a thick paper; however, a jam may occur. If such is the case, return the lever to [A] position.

3. Magnification ration adjustment in horizontal scanning direction

- 1) Measure the image length L_y [mm] in the horizontal scanning direction of the test print.



- 2) Evaluate the magnification ratio in horizontal scanning direction (ratio): M_y , and the service mode input value: SM_y .

$$M_y = (L_y'/L_y) \times 100$$

In case of A3 paper: $L_y' = 292\text{mm}$
 In case of 11 X 17 paper: $L_y' = 274\text{mm}$

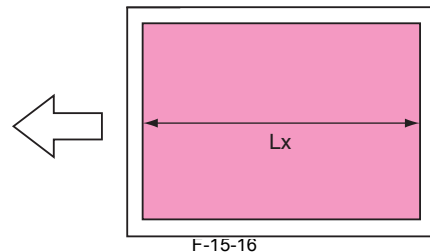
$$SM_y = (M_y - 100) \times 100$$

- 3) Add the value of SM_y to the setting in the following service mode. (Do subtraction when SM_y is negative value.)

In Service Mode: COPIER > ADJUST > IMG-REG > MAG-H-M
 Adjustment range: -100 to 100 (default: 0)
 Unit: 0.01%

4. Magnification ratio adjustment in vertical scanning direction

- 1) Measure the image length L_x [mm] in the vertical scanning direction of the test print.



- 2) Evaluate the magnification ratio in vertical scanning direction (ratio): M_x , and the input value: SM_x .

$$M_x = (L_x'/L_x) \times 100$$

In case of A3 paper: $L_x' = 415\text{mm}$
 In case of 11 X 17 paper: $L_x' = 427\text{mm}$

$$SM_x = (M_x - 100) \times 100$$

- 3) Enter SM_x value in the following:
 If the magnification ratio adjustment in vertical scanning direction fails to be the reference value even if setting the maximum value (-/+ 1.00) for SM_x , be sure to conduct magnification ratio adjustment by speed adjustment of the secondary transfer roller.

In Service Mode: COPIER > ADJUST > IMG-REG > MAG-V-M
 Adjustment range: -100 to 100 (default: 0)
 Unit: 0.01%

5. Magnification ratio adjustment by speed adjustment of the secondary transfer roller

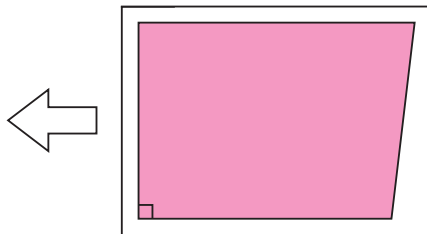
This adjustment should be conducted when magnification ratio adjustment in vertical scanning direction failed to be the reference value even if setting the maximum value (-/+ 1.00) for the magnification ratio adjustment in vertical scanning direction.
This symptom occurs when the value exceeds the range of magnification ratio adjustment due to variation of the outer diameter of the secondary transfer roller.

- 1) Make 1-level (-/+ 1) change of the setting value according to the Mx value:
In Service Mode (level 2): COPIER > ADJUST > IMG-REG > 2TR-R-V
Setting value
-1: decrease the rotating speed (shrunk by 0.1mm)
0: normal rotating speed
+1: increase the rotating speed (stretched by 0.25mm)
+2: increase the rotating speed (stretched by 0.5mm)

- Mx < 100 [%]
Make the setting value smaller
- Mx > 100 [%]
Make the setting value bigger
- 2) Output a test print for image adjustment, and conduct "4. Magnification ratio adjustment in vertical scanning direction" again.
- 3) If the magnification ratio adjustment in vertical scanning direction failed to be the reference value, conduct "5. Magnification ratio adjustment by speed adjustment of the secondary transfer roller".

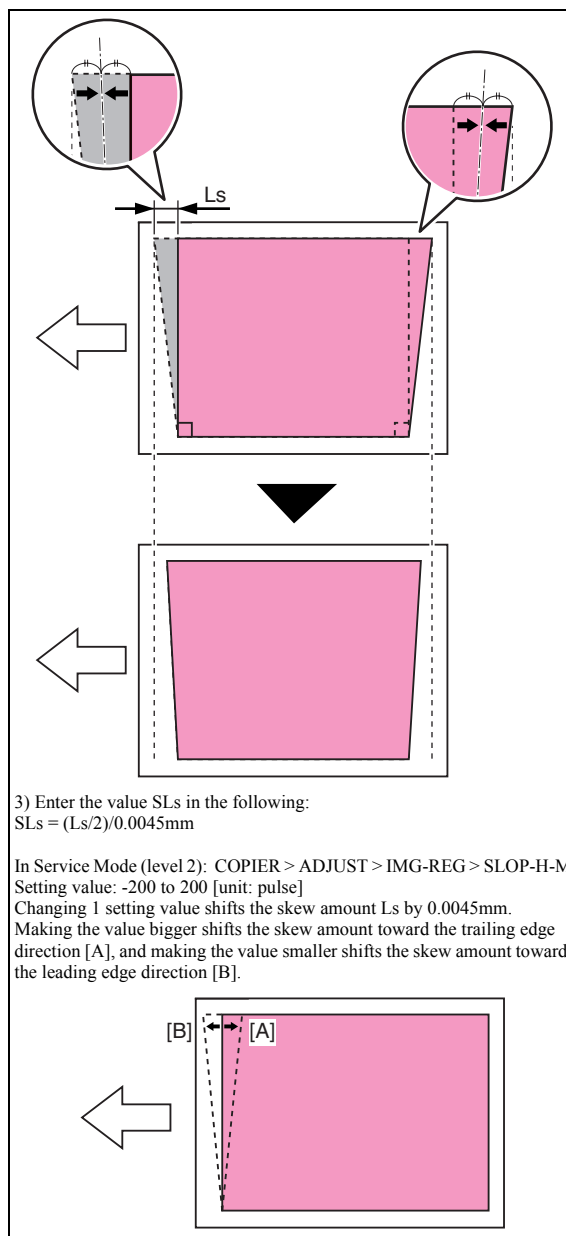
MEMO:

In case that the faulty image "Fan(-like shape)" symptom occurs as shown in the figure below, adjustment is available in the following Service Mode. The faulty image "Fan" occurs due to the variation in outer diameters between the rear end and the front end of the secondary transfer roller. This adjustment is to align the image positions of the front/back sides by sharing the skew at the trailing edge (skew in vertical scanning direction) between the leading edge and the trailing edge.



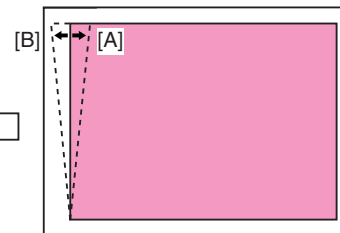
- 1) Output a 2-sided test print for image position adjustment:
COPIER > TEST > PG > 2-SIDE = 1

- 2) See through the output paper and measure the tilt (displacement) Ls of the leading edge of the first side and the trailing edge of the second side to the first decimal place.

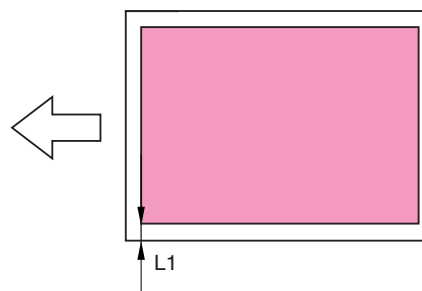


- 3) Enter the value SLs in the following:
 $SLs = (Ls/2)/0.0045mm$

In Service Mode (level 2): COPIER > ADJUST > IMG-REG > SLOP-H-M
Setting value: -200 to 200 [unit: pulse]
Changing 1 setting value shifts the skew amount Ls by 0.0045mm.
Making the value bigger shifts the skew amount toward the trailing edge direction [A], and making the value smaller shifts the skew amount toward the leading edge direction [B].

**6. Left edge adjustment**

- 1) Measure the left end margin L1 [mm] of the test print to the first decimal place, and make adjustment so that the left end margin L1 becomes the standard 2.5 mm.



F-15-17

In Service Mode: COPIER > ADJUST > FEED-ADJ > REG-LEFT
Adjustment range: -30 to 30 (default:0)
Unit: 0.1mm

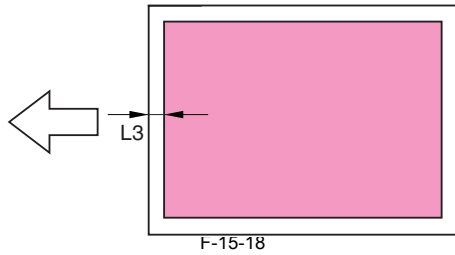
- In case of: L1 > 2.5mm
Make the setting value smaller
- In case of: L1 < 2.5mm
Make the setting value bigger

<Example>

If L1 is 1.2 mm, add 13 to the setting in the abovementioned service mode.

7. Leading edge margin adjustment

- 1) Measure the leading edge margin L3 [mm] of the test print to the first decimal place, and make adjustment so that the leading edge margin L3 becomes the standard 2.5 mm.



In Service Mode: COPIER > ADJUST > FEED-ADJ > REG-TOP
 Adjustment range: 0 to 200 (default: 100)
 Unit: 0.06mm

-In case of: L3 > 2.5mm
 Make the setting value smaller
 -In case of: L3 < 2.5mm
 Make the setting value bigger

<Example>
 If L3 is 1.2 mm, add 13 to the setting in the abovementioned service mode.

15.3 Laser Exposure System

15.3.1 When replacing laser scanner unit

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

! When replacing the laser scanner unit, it has to be performed carefully because a measure to be taken will vary depending on the following replacement conditions: whether installing the removed unit to other machine/different station (color) or not, whether color of the unit to be removed is M-color station or Y/C/Bk-color station.

<When Removing the Laser Scanner Unit>
 Execute the measure in accordance with the table indicated below before removing the laser scanner unit. After replacing the unit, execute "After Replacing the Laser Scanner Unit".
 When replacing the new laser scanner unit, execute either Measure A or Measure B.

T-15-1

Color of the laser scanner unit to be removed	Reinstallation *1	
	No (replace the new unit)	Yes
M-color	Measure A	Measure C
Y/C/Bk-color	Measure B	Measure D

*1: Reinstall the removed unit to other machine/different station (color).

<Measure A>
 1) Initialization of the fan-like shape adjustment value
 Make the following selection: COPIER > ADJUST > IMG-REG > SLOP-H-M, and set the value as "0".

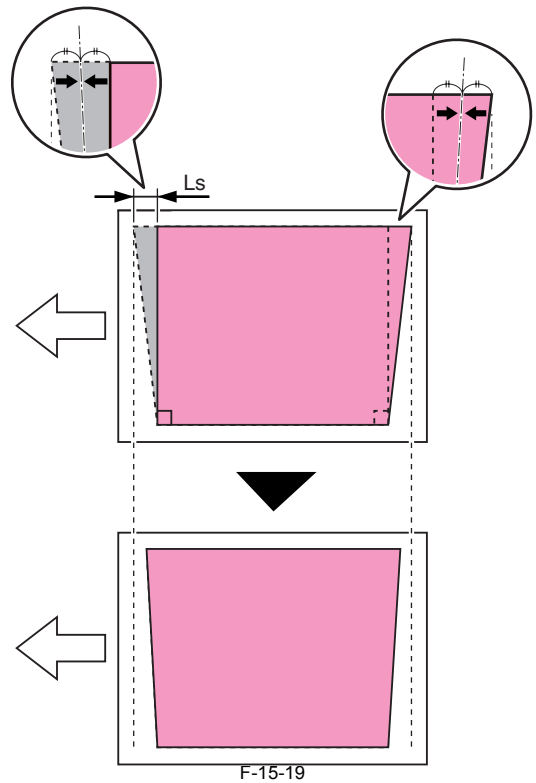
<Measure B>
 No need of adjustment (Go to "After Replacing the Laser Scanner Unit").

<Measure C>
 1) Initialization of the fan-like shape adjustment value

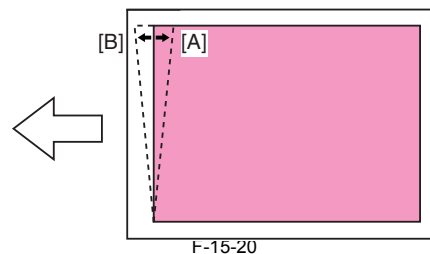
- Make the following selection: COPIER > ADJUST > IMG-REG > SLOP-H-M, and set the value as "0".
- 2) Initialization of the skew correction motor
 Make the following selection: COPIER > FUNCTION > LASER > LD-ADJ-Y/M/C/K.

<Measure D>
 1) Initialization of the skew correction motor
 Make the following selection: COPIER > FUNCTION > LASER > LD-ADJ-Y/M/C/K.

- <After Replacing the Laser Scanner Unit>
 1. squareness (angle of fan-like shape) adjustment
 * For squareness (angle of fan-like shape) adjustment, be sure to perform this adjustment only when replacing the M-color laser scanner unit
 1) Output the test print for the image position adjustment as 2-sided print (COPIER > TEST > PG > 2-SIDE = 1).
 2) See through the output image, and calculate the displacement degree (Ls [mm]) of the lead edge of the 1st side and the trail edge of the 2nd side to the first place of decimal.



- 3) Make the following selection in service mode and enter the input value (SLs).
 COPIER > ADJUST > IMG-REG > SLOP-H-M
 Setting value: -200 to +200 [Unit: pulse].
 Each 1 setting value change results in the movement of Ls = 0.0045mm.
 By setting the value larger, the image position shifts toward the trail edge [A].
 On the other, it shifts toward the lead edge [B] by setting the value smaller.



2. Execute the Auto Color Displacement Correction Control
 COPIER > FUNCTION > MISC-P > AT-IMG-X
3. Execute the Potential Control

COPIER > FUNCTION > DPC > DPC

4. Enter the Values to the Service Label (all laser scanner units other than the replaced one)

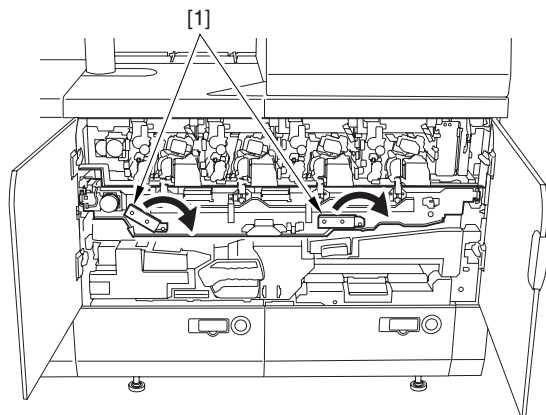
COPIER > ADJUST > LASER > LNSMTR-Y/M/C/K

15.4 Image Formation System

15.4.1 When Releasing the Intermediate Transfer Unit Pressure

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

If releasing the pressure for intermediate transfer unit, execute the automatic color displacement correction (COPIER > FUNCTION > MISC-P > AT-IMG-X) after re-application of pressure.



F-15-21

[1] Intermediate transfer assembly release lever

15.4.2 When replacing primary charging wire

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- 1) Execute charging wire cleaning (COPIER > FUNCTION > CLEANING > WIRE-EX)
[Duration]
Approx. 45 sec
- 2) Execute potential control (COPIER > FUNCTION > DPC > DPC)
[Duration]
Approx. 80 sec

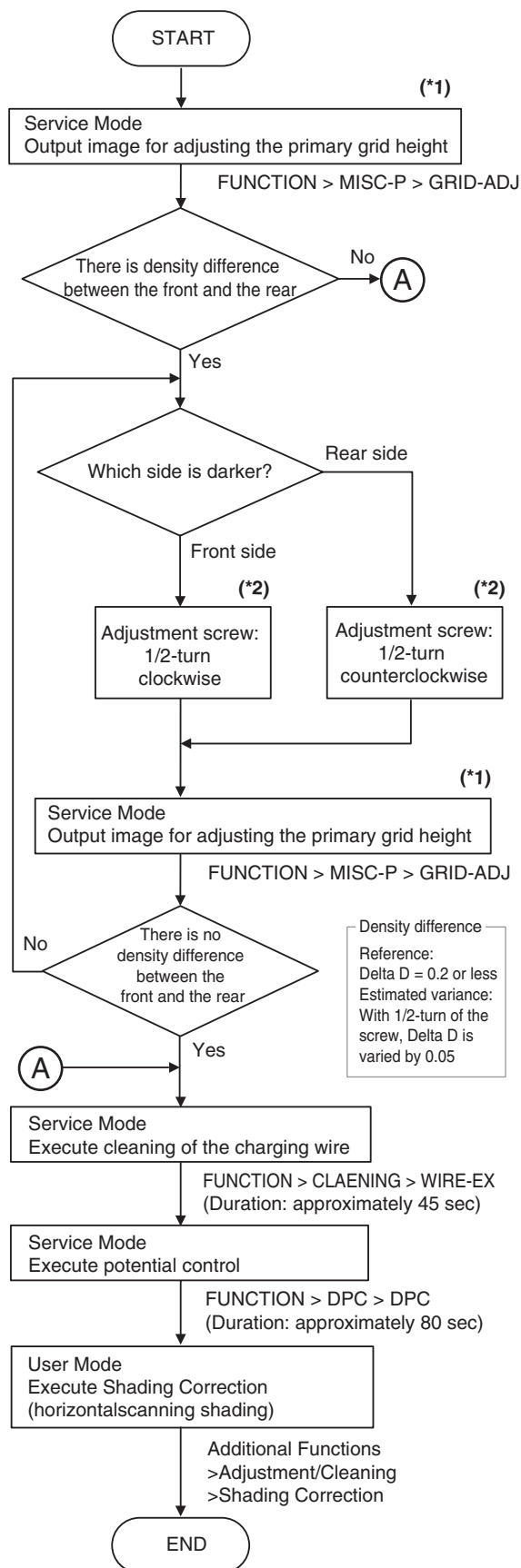
15.4.3 When replacing primary grid plate

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- Execute potential control (COPIER > FUNCTION > DPC > DPC)
[Duration]
Approx. 80 sec

15.4.4 When replacing the primary charging assembly

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000



F-15-22

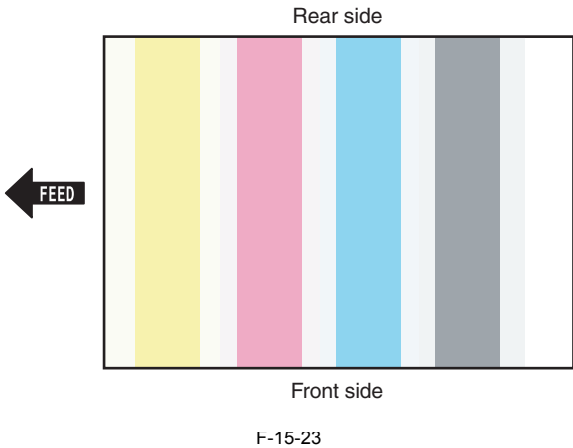
***1**
Image for height adjustment

The image for height adjustment is output by executing the following in Service Mode:
- COPIER > FUNCTION > MISC-P > GRID-ADJ

⚠
Be sure to meet the following conditions for the paper and the paper source to use:

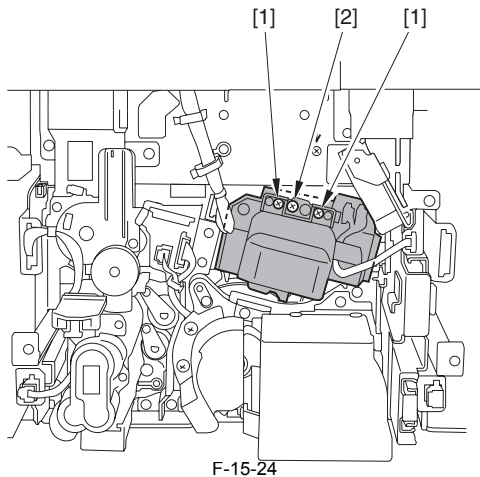
- Paper source: right deck
- Paper size: A3 or 11X17
- Paper type setting: plain paper or thin paper

All of the conditions above have to be met; otherwise the image for height adjustment cannot be output as shown below.



***2**
Procedure to adjust the height of the primary charging assembly

- 1) Loosen the 2 fixing screws for the primary charging assembly [1].
- 2) Turn the screw for height adjustment [2].
- 3) Fixing the 2 screws for the primary charging assembly [1].



⚠
For the image for height adjustment, be sure to perform step 3) (tightening the 2 screws [1]) first, and then output the image.

MEMO:
To lower the front side:
-> Turn the adjustment screw 'clockwise'
To lift up the front side:
-> Turn the adjustment screw 'counterclockwise'
Making 1-turn of the adjustment screw lifts/lowers the front side by 0.35mm.

15.4.5 When replacing pre-transfer charging wire/pre-transfer charging assembly

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- Execute charging wire cleaning (COPIER > FUNCTION > CLEANING > WIRE-EX)
[Duration]
Approx. 45 sec

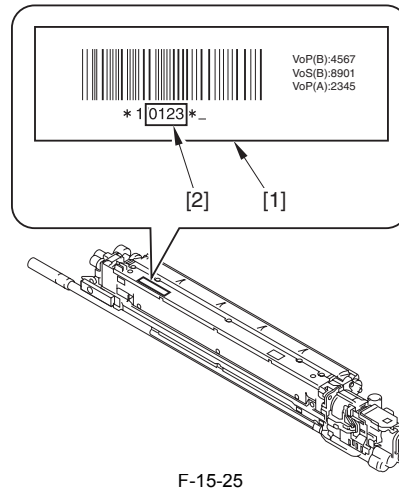
15.4.6 When replacing developing assembly

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

⚠
Be sure to prepare a developer because there is no developer supplied in a new developing assembly.

Before replacement:

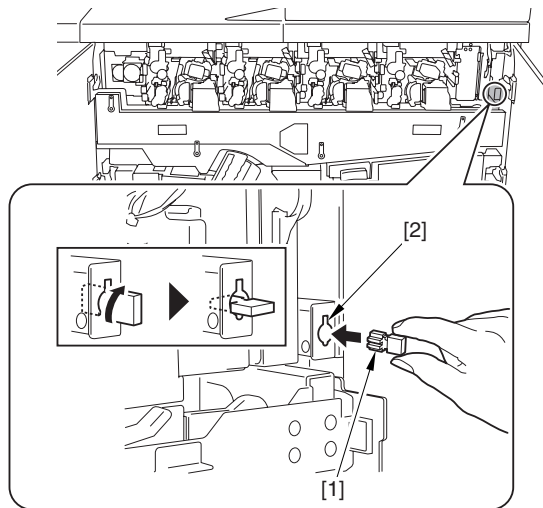
- Let the developer get used to the installation environment.
 - 1) Shake the developer well (approx. 20 times)
 - 2) Open the cap and take the inner cap out.
 - 3) Put the cap back, and temporarily store the developer in a dust-free place.
- Be sure to write down the numerical value [2] (initial correction value of drum patch sensor) under the barcode on the label [1] attached to the developing assembly.



MEMO:
Only the numerical value [2] under the barcode on the label [1] attached to the developing assembly is used for service task. Value other than indicated on [2] is not used for servicing.

After replacement:

- 1) Open the main station front doors.
- 2) Detach the process unit cover.
- 3) Attach the switch ON tool [1] to the drum heater switch area [2].



F-15-26



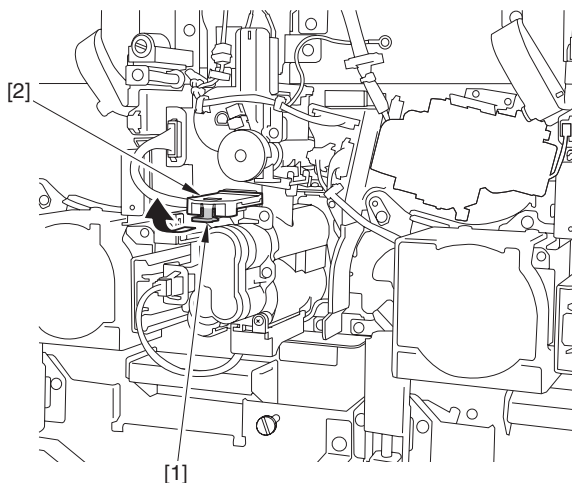
Be sure to follow the instructions otherwise "E062" error occurs if skipping Step 3) with the process unit cover detached to turn ON the power. This machine monitors the conductive state to the heater when the machine is turned ON or the power is distributed.

- 4) With the main station's front doors open, turn on the main power.
- 5) Make a setting to disable warm-up rotation (COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL > AINR-OFF-> "1")

MEMO:

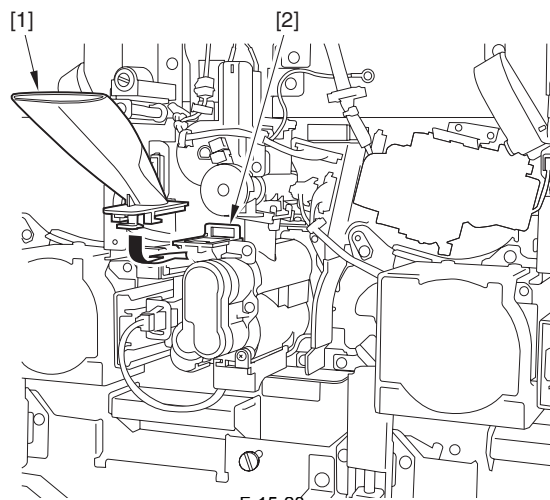
The setting value for AINR-OFF will be automatically back to "0" by executing the following: COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL > INISET-Y/M/C/K/4

- 6) Enter the value on the label attached to the developing assembly (COPIER > ADJUST > DENS > ALF-Y/M/C/K, and also write down the value on the service label.
- 7) Attach the 2 switch ON tools to the front cover switch area.
- 8) Disengage the claw [1] to detach the developer supplying mouth cover [2] of developing assembly.



F-15-27

- 9) Attach the supplying funnel [1] to the developer supplying mouth [2] of developing assembly.



F-15-28



In the following Step 10), execute the following in Service Mode for supplying developer:

COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL > SPLY-H-Y/M/C/K

- Be sure to check that "READY" is displayed at the upper right of the service mode screen when it is executed, and then press [OK].

- Be sure to execute one at a time even if replacing the 4 colors (Y/M/C/K) of developers at the same time.

- 10) Execute developer supplying mode (COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL > SPLY-H-Y/M/C/K)

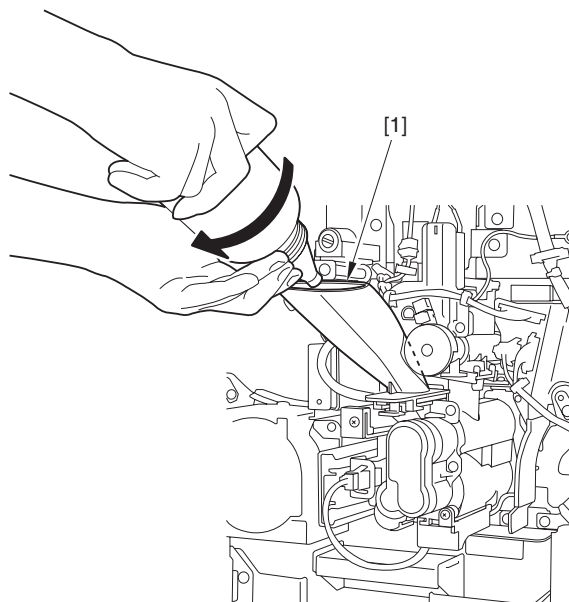
[Duration]

Approx. 290 sec

MEMO:

The supplying screw starts to rotate approximately 20 to 25 sec after SPLY-H-Y/M/C/K is executed.

- 11) Check that the supplying screw is rotating (visual check from the developer's supplying mouth), and then, with rotating the bottle, supply the developer to the supplying funnel [1] little at a time.



F-15-29



Be sure to supply the developer in the same color of the developing assembly.

MEMO:

In case that the supplying of developer does not complete within SPLY operation time, execute SPLY again to supply the rest of the developer.

- 12) Remove the supplying funnel to attach the developer supplying mouth cover.
- 13) Remove the 2 switch ON tools from the front cover switch area (do not remove the switch ON tool at the drum heater switch area).
- 14) Close the main station front doors.



In the following Step 15), execute the following in Service Mode for stirring developer:
 COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL > STIR-Y/M/C/K/4
 - Be sure to check that "READY" is displayed at the upper right of the service mode screen when it is executed, and then press [OK].
 - Be sure to execute either of the INISET-Y/M/C/K of the corresponding color when replacing a single color of developer. Also be sure to execute INISET-4 when replacing 4 colors of developers at the same time.

- 15) Execute developer stirring mode (COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL > STIR-Y/M/C/K/4)
 [Duration]
 Approx. 155 sec



In the following Step 16), execute the following in Service Mode for initial installation of developer:
 COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL > INISET-Y/M/C/K/4
 - Be sure to execute either of the INISET-Y/M/C/K of the corresponding color when replacing a single color of developer. Also be sure to execute INISET-4 when replacing 4 colors of developers at the same time.

- 16) Execute initial installation mode of developing assembly (COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL > INISET-Y/M/C/K/4)
 [Duration]
 Approx. 500 sec



Be sure not to turn off the power while INISET is executed.

- 17) Turn OFF the main power switch.
- 18) Remove the switch ON tool at the drum heater switch area, and put the process unit cover back.

Warning icon: exclamation mark inside a triangle.

Points to note when attaching the process unit cover

After shifting the 3 levers [2] of the process unit cover [1] as indicated, shift the lever (small) [3] as indicated while pushing the [A] area toward the rear. If shifting the lever (small) [3] while the cover [1] does not fit to the machine, the pin [4] is not set correctly, causing an E062 error.

- 19) Close the main station front doors, and then turn ON the main power.
- 20) Execute forcible warm-up rotation mode (COPIER > FUNCTION > MISC-P > INTR-EX)
 [Duration]
 Approx. 150 sec
- 21) Execute auto gradation correction control (in Additional Functions Mode: Adjustment/Cleaning > Auto Gradation Correction > Full Correction)
- 22) Output the solid image and check to see that the while lines etc. does not occur. If there is a foreign particle coming between the sleeve and the blade, remove it by using the transparency etc.



Points to note when removing foreign particles:

- Be sure not to use a paper. It may produce paper dusts.
- The factory setting of the S-B gap is approx. 500 um. When using the transparency, be sure to use the one of 300 um or less of thickness and perform the operations carefully enough not to damage the cylinder. Do not remove the brade.

15.4.7 When detaching developing assembly

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- Output the solid image and check to see that the while lines etc. does not occur. If there is a foreign particle coming between the sleeve and the blade, remove it by using the transparency etc.



Points to note when removing foreign particles:

- Be sure not to use a paper. It may produce paper dusts.
- The factory setting of the S-B gap is approx. 500 um. When using the transparency, be sure to use the one of 300 um or less of thickness and perform the operations carefully enough not to damage the cylinder. Do not remove the brade.

15.4.8 When replacing developer

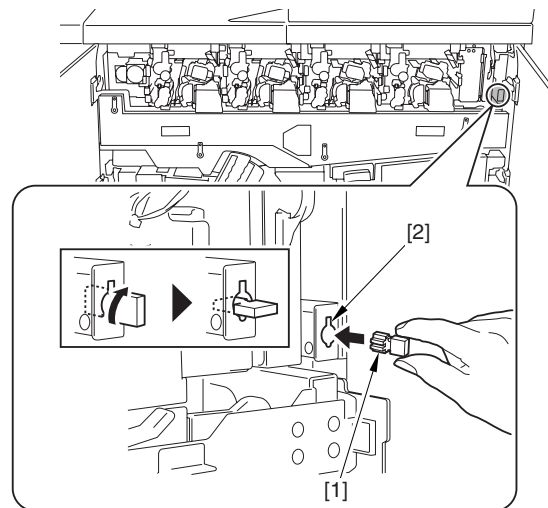
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

Before replacement:

- Let the developer get used to the installation environment.
 - 1) Shake the developer well (approx. 20 times)
 - 2) Open the cap and take the inner cap out.
 - 3) Put the cap back, and temporarily store the developer in a dust-free place.

After replacement:

- 1) Open the main station front doors.
- 2) Detach the process unit cover.
- 3) Attach the switch ON tool [1] to the drum heater switch area [2].



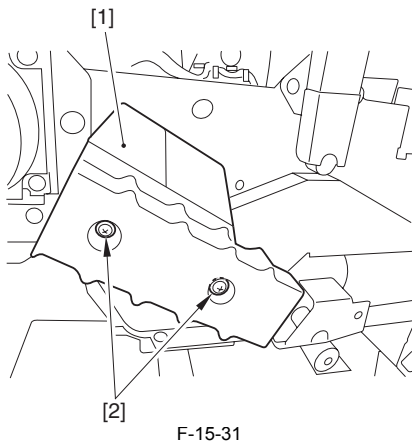
F-15-30



Be sure to follow the instructions otherwise "E062" error occurs if skipping Step 3) with the process unit cover detached to turn ON the power. This machine monitors the conductive state to the heater when the machine is turned ON or the power is distributed.

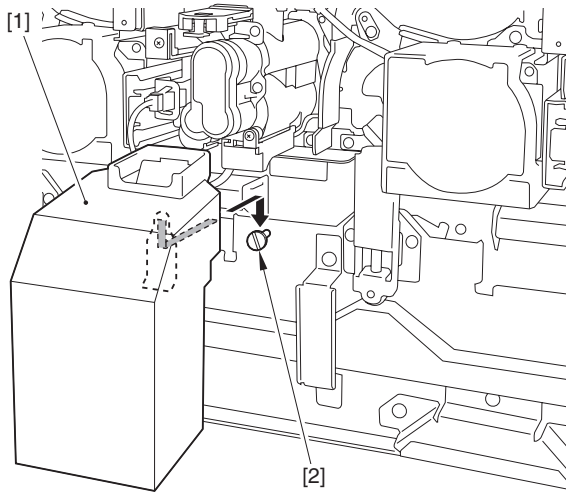
- 4) With the main station's front doors open, turn on the main power.
- 5) Attach the 2 switch ON tools to the front cover switch area.
- 6) In the case of the developing assembly for yellow only, remove the handle

[1].
- 2 screws [2]



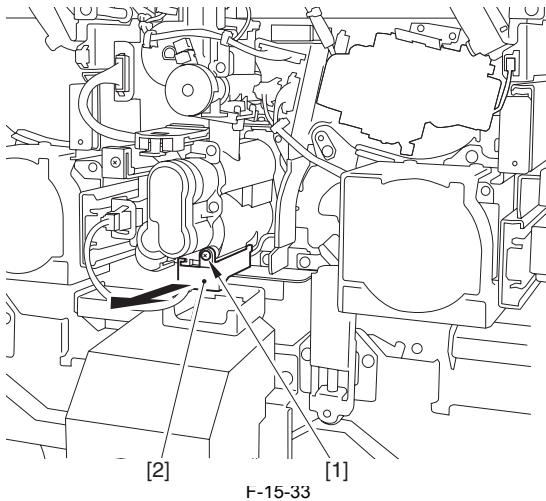
F-15-31

7) Hook the waste developer container [1] onto the screw [2] and attach.



F-15-32

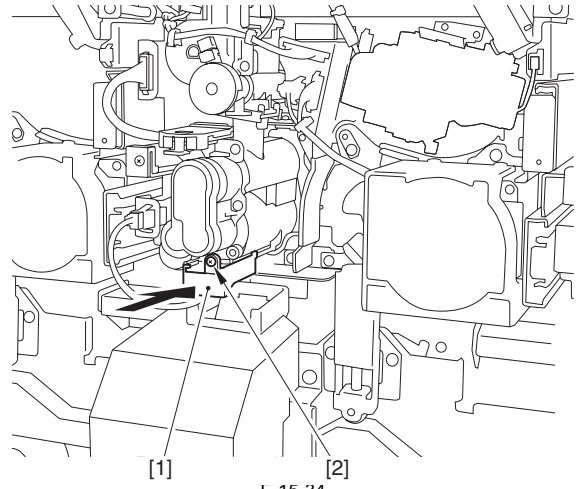
8) Loosen the screw [1] and slide out the shutter [2].



F-15-33

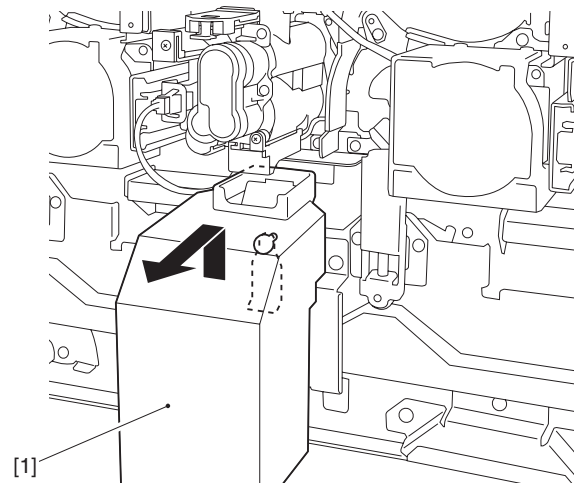
⚠
In step 9, execute a developer ejection mode (COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL > RECV-Y/M/C/K) in service mode.
When executing, be sure that "READY" is displayed on the upper right side on the service mode screen before pressing [OK] button.

9) Execute a developer ejection mode. Select: COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL > RECV-Y/M/C/K
[Duration] approx. 260 sec
10) Push the shutter [1] and tighten the screw [2].



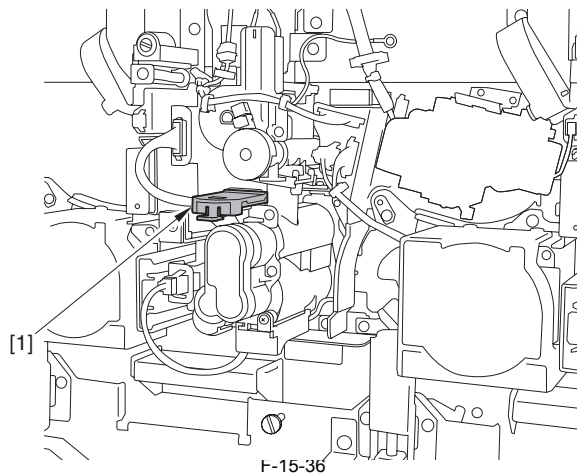
F-15-34

11) Remove the waste developer container [1].



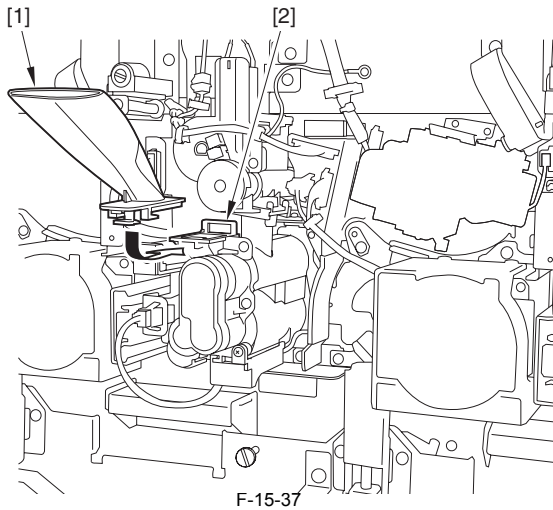
F-15-35

12) Pinch the trailing edge of the developer supply mouth cover [1] of the (Y) developing assembly, and with pushing it to lower lightly, pull the cover toward to remove it.



F-15-36

13) Attach the supplying funnel [1] to the developer supplying mouth [2] of developing assembly.



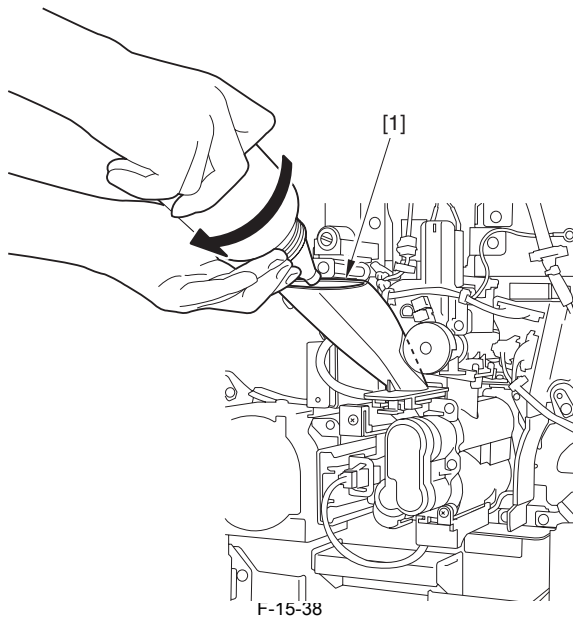
F-15-37

!
In the following Step 14), execute the following in Service Mode for supplying developer:
COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL > SPLY-H-Y/M/C/K
- Be sure to check that "READY" is displayed at the upper right of the service mode screen when it is executed, and then press [OK].
- Be sure to execute one at a time even if replacing the 4 colors (Y/M/C/K) of developers at the same time.

- 14) Execute developer supplying mode (COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL > SPLY-H-Y/M/C/K)
[Duration]
Approx. 290 sec

MEMO:
The supplying screw starts to rotate approximately 20 to 25 sec after SPLY-H-Y/M/C/K is executed.

- 15) Check that the supplying screw is rotating (visual check from the developer's supplying mouth), and then, with rotating the bottle, supply the developer to the supplying funnel [1] little at a time.



F-15-38

!
Be sure to supply the developer in the same color of the developing assembly.
MEMO:
In case that the supplying of developer does not complete within SPLY operation time, execute SPLY again to supply the rest of the developer.

- 16) Remove the supplying funnel to attach the developer supplying mouth

- cover.
17) Remove the 2 switch ON tools from the front cover switch area (do not remove the switch ON tool at the drum heater switch area).
18) Close the main station front doors.

!
In the following Step 19), execute the following in Service Mode for stirring developer:
COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL > STIR-Y/M/C/K/4
- Be sure to check that "READY" is displayed at the upper right of the service mode screen when it is executed, and then press [OK].
- Be sure to execute either of the INISET-Y/M/C/K of the corresponding color when replacing a single color of developer. Also be sure to execute INISET-4 when replacing 4 colors of starters at the same time.

- 19) Execute developer stirring mode (COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL > STIR-Y/M/C/K/4)
[Duration]
Approx. 155 sec

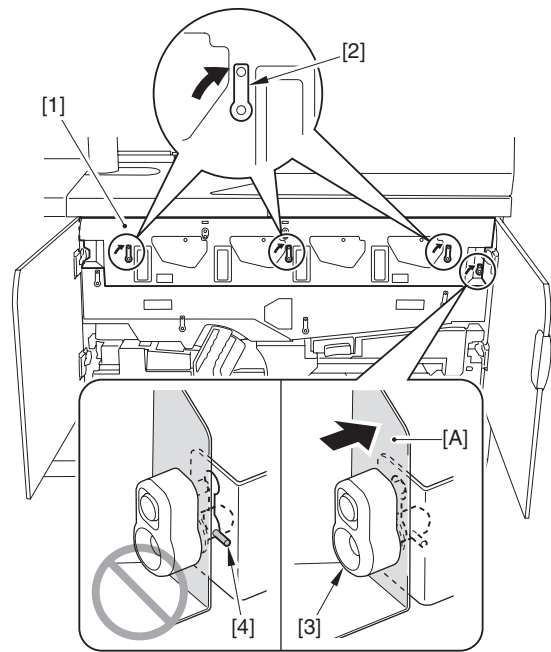
!
In the following Step 20), execute the following in Service Mode for initial installation of developer:
COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL > INISET-Y/M/C/K/4
- Be sure to execute either of the INISET-Y/M/C/K of the corresponding color when replacing a single color of developer. Also be sure to execute INISET-4 when replacing 4 colors of starters at the same time.

- 20) Execute initial installation mode of developing assembly (COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL > INISET-Y/M/C/K/4)
[Duration]
Approx. 500 sec

!
Be sure not to turn off the power while INISET is executed.

- 21) Turn OFF the main power switch.
22) Remove the switch ON tool at the drum heater switch area, and put the process unit cover back.

! **Points to note when attaching the process unit cover**
After shifting the 3 levers [2] of the process unit cover [1] as indicated, shift the lever (small) [3] as indicated while pushing the [A] area toward the rear. If shifting the lever (small) [3] while the cover [1] does not fit to the machine, the pin [4] is not set correctly, causing an E062 error.



F-15-39

- 23) Close the main station front doors, and then turn ON the main power.
24) Execute forcible warm-up rotation mode (COPIER > FUNCTION > MISC-P > INTR-EX ; level2)
[Duration]
Approx. 150 sec

- 25) Execute auto gradation correction control (in Additional Functions Mode: Adjustment/Cleaning > Auto Gradation Correction > Full Correction)

15.4.9 When replacing photosensitive drum

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- 1) Execute Vcont/Vback clear for replaced drum. (COPIER > ADJUST > VCONT > VCONT-Y/M/C/K, VBACK-Y/M/C/K ; Level2)
Select the item to highlight it, input the "0", and press the OK key.
- 2) Execute potential control (COPIER > FUNCTION > DPC > DPC)
[Duration]
Approx. 80 sec
- 3) Execute auto color displacement correction control (COPIER > FUNCTION > MISC-P > AT-IMG-X)
[Duration]
Approx. 95 sec
- 4) Execute auto gradation correction control (in User Mode: Adjustment/Cleaning > Auto Gradation Correction > Full Correction)

15.4.10 When replacing ITB

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- 1) Execute forcible warm-up rotation mode (COPIER > FUNCTION > MISC-P > INTR-EX)
[Duration]
Approx. 150 sec
- 2) Execute ITB edge profile measurement mode (COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL > INIT-ITB)
[Duration]
Approx. 160 sec
- 3) Execute auto color displacement correction control (COPIER > FUNCTION > MISC-P > AT-IMG-X)
[Duration]
Approx. 95 sec

15.4.11 When replacing primary transfer roller/secondary transfer inner roller

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- Execute auto color displacement correction control (COPIER > FUNCTION > MISC-P > AT-IMG-X)
[Duration]
Approx. 95 sec

15.4.12 When replacing ITB cleaning brush roller/cleaning blade

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- Execute auto color displacement correction control (COPIER > FUNCTION > MISC-P > AT-IMG-X)
[Duration]
Approx. 95 sec

15.4.13 When replacing ITB cleaning web

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- Execute auto color displacement correction control (COPIER > FUNCTION > MISC-P > AT-IMG-X)
[Duration]
Approx. 95 sec

15.4.14 When replacing secondary transfer outer roller

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- There is no particular work to do.

15.4.15 When replacing waste toner container

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

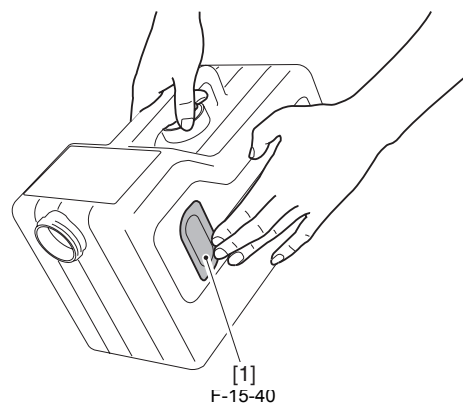
In case of replacing with a new one

No particular service work is required.
Error/alarm status is automatically cleared if the waste toner full sensor detects no toner in the waste toner container after its replacement.

In case of repeatedly using the waste toner container (in case of disposing waste toner only)

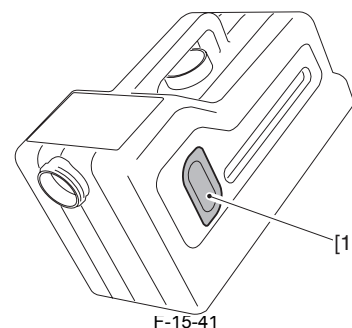
- 1) Pat near the waste toner full detection window [1] of the waste toner container with your hand to let the toner attached to the inside of the waste

toner full detection window off.



F-15-40

- 2) Attach the emptied waste toner container. If the waste toner full sensor detects no toner, the error/alarm status is automatically cleared.
- 3) If the error/alarm status is not be cleared even after taking Step 2), remove the seal [1] attached to the waste toner full level window and attach a new seal (FC6-8560) instead.



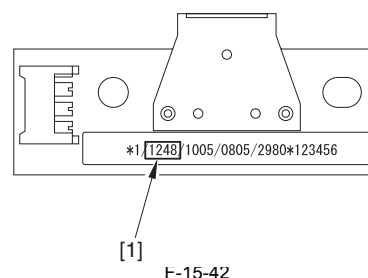
F-15-41

15.4.16 When replacing drum patch sensor

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

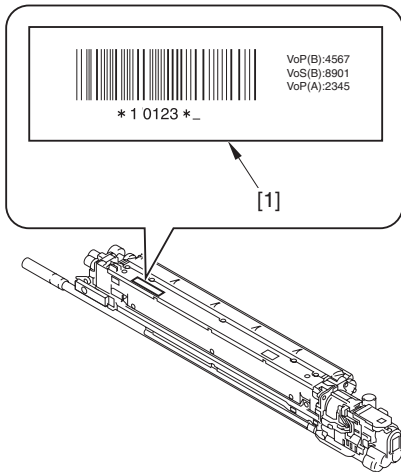
When replacement:

- 1) Be sure to write down the numerical value [1] (initial correction value of drum patch sensor) on the label [1] attached to the drum patch sensor.



F-15-42

- 2) Attach the label [1] included in the package of drum patch sensor over the label attached to the developing assembly.



F-15-43

After replacement:

- 1) Enter the value on the label attached to the drum patch sensor (COPIER > ADJUST > DENS > ALF-Y/M/C/K, and also write down the value on the service label.
- 2) Execute forcible warm-up rotation mode (COPIER > FUNCTION > MISC-P > INTR-EX)
[Duration]
Approx. 150 sec

15.4.17 When replacing potential sensors and potential control PCB

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

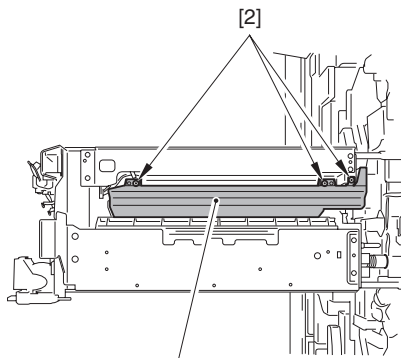
! Potential sensors and potential control PCB are adjusted in pairs and should be replaced at the same time.

The potential sensor adjustment tool (tool number: FY9-3057) is to be used to make adjustments after replacing the potential sensor.

- 1) After removing the primary charging assembly, the dustproof glass and the photosensitive drum.
- 2) Slide out the process unit.

! The distance between the drum surface and the potential sensor is very short so that, if the replacement is carried out with the drum in place, there is a danger of scratching the drum surface. For this reason, the drum is to be removed before replacing the sensor.

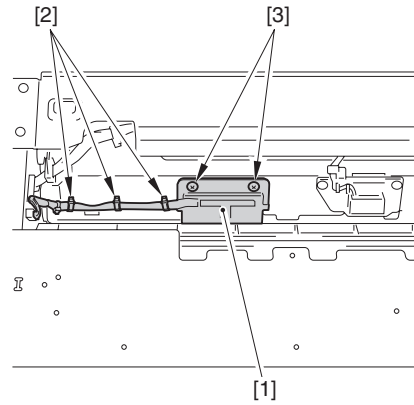
- 3) Remove the light blocking plate [1].
- 3 screws [2]



[1]
F-15-44

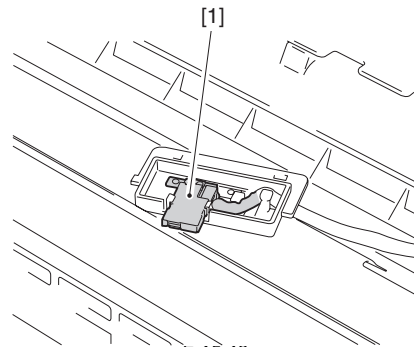
! When mounting the light blocking plate, be sure to insert the tabs (two locations) correctly. Failure to do so may result in the laser light path being blocked and the drum not being irradiated by the laser.

- 4) Remove the potential sensor assembly [1].
- 3 wire saddles [2]
- 2 screws [2]



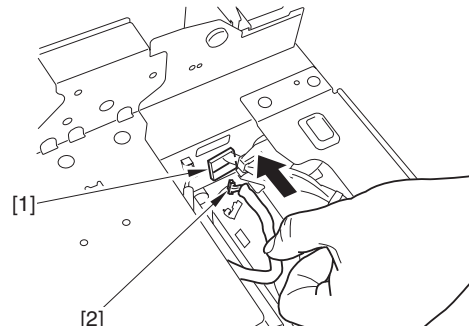
F-15-45

- 5) Remove the potential sensor [1] from the potential sensor holder.



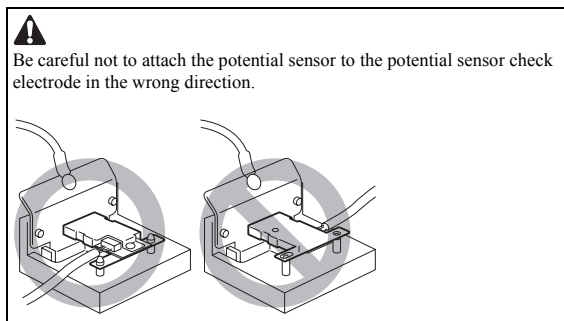
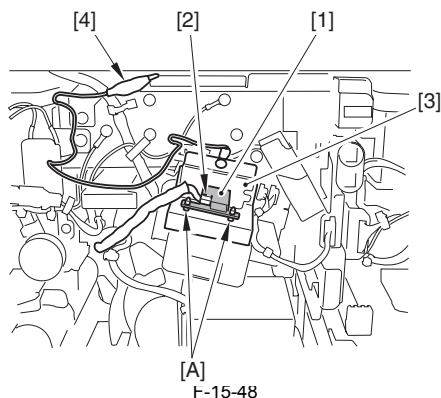
F-15-46

- 6) Pull the potential sensor cable out from the unit. Pass the cable connector [2] through the square hole [1] in the process unit, and pull it out.



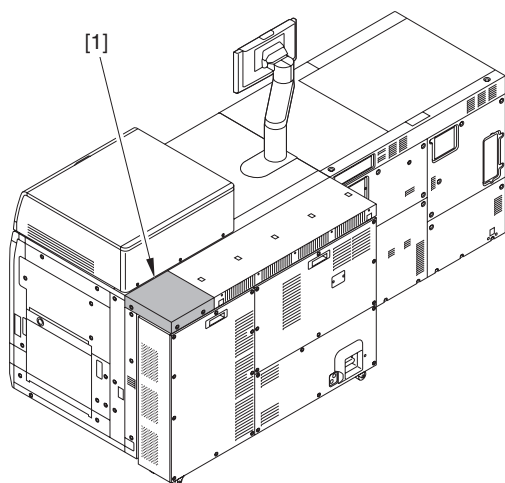
F-15-47

- 7) Return the photosensitive drum, the process unit, and the primary charging assembly to their original position.
At this time, it is no need to return the dustproof glass.
- 8) Connect the potential sensor cable to the potential sensor's [1] connector [2].
- 9) Mount the potential sensor [1] by lining it up with the two projections [A] on the potential sensor adjustment tool [3].
- 10) Attach the clip [4] of the potential sensor check electrode to the machine frame (GND).



- 11) After inserting the switch ON tool to the drum heater switch assembly, turn the main power switch ON.
- 12) Set the kill initial rotation setting (COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL > AINR-OFF > "1").
- 13) Insert the switch ON tools into the front cover switch assemblies (2 locations).
- 14) Perform potential sensor offset adjustment (COPIER > FUNCTION > DPC > OFST).

After the execution of the offset adjustment, the obtained offset values are set (COPIER > ADJUST > VCONT > EPOT-O-Y/M/C/K (level 2)). Write down the values to the corresponding field on the service label (affixed on the inside of the main station upper rear cover 2 [1]). Purpose: Re-enter of the offset values is needed after clearing RAM of the DC controller.



- 15) Turn main power switch OFF.
- 16) Remove the potential adjustment tool and return the potential sensor to its original location.
- 17) After returning all removed parts to their original locations, turn the main power switch ON.
- 18) Cancel the kill initial rotation setting (COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL > AINR-OFF > "0").
- 19) Perform potential control (COPIER > FUNCTION > DPC > DPC).
- 20) Perform auto-gradation correction control (User mode: adjustments/cleaning > auto-gradation control > full correction).

15.4.18 When replacing leading edge registration patch sensor

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- Execute forcible warm-up rotation mode (COPIER > FUNCTION > MISC-P > INTR-EX)

15.4.19 When replacing color registration patch sensor

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

-Execute forcible warm-up rotation mode (COPIER > FUNCTION > MISC-P > INTR-EX)

15.4.20 When replacing Waste Toner Full Sensor

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- 1) Check the collected toner amount in the waste toner container. If the waste toner is accumulated to the position of full detection window, execute either of the followings:
 - Replace with a new waste toner container
 - Dispose waste toner inside the waste toner container, and then reattach the emptied waste toner container
- 2) Execute offset adjustment of the waste toner full sensor. (COPIER > FUNCTION > MISC-P > WTN-OFST)

15.4.21 When replacing Buffer Waste Toner Full Sensor

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- 1) Attach the sensor harness to the buffer waste toner full sensor. Do not attach the sensor to the waste toner buffer at this moment.



Be sure to execute the offset adjustment by taking the following steps while there is no waste toner in the buffer. Be sure to make adjustment with no sensor attached to the buffer because visual check inside the buffer is not available.

- 2) Turn ON the main power switch.
- 3) Execute offset adjustment of the buffer waste toner full sensor. (COPIER > FUNCTION > MISC-P > WTNBUFOF)

15.4.22 When Replacing Color Sensor

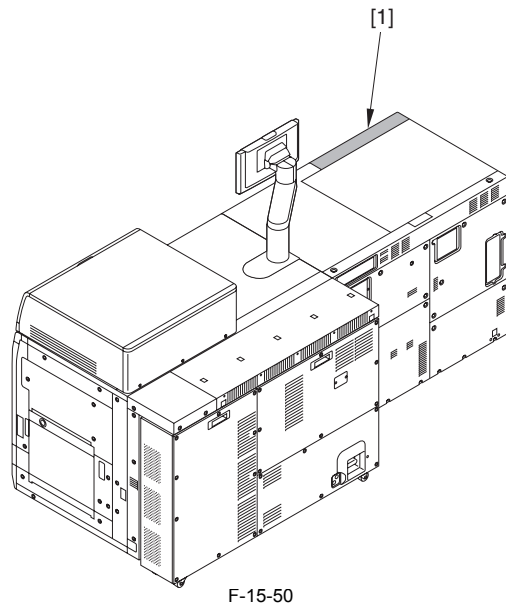
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- 1) Execute auto gradation correction control (Printer PASCAL).
In User Mode: Adjustment/Cleaning > Auto Gradation Correction Control > Full Correction



There are 2 methods of auto gradation correction: Reader PASCAL (subject to when the reader is attached) and Printer PASCAL. Be sure to execute Printer PASCAL when replacing the color sensor. Printer PASCAL automatically starts up if "Full Correction" is executed with printer model. Checking/setting of the following user mode items is required if the reader (accessory) is attached.
In User Mode: System Settings > Device Management Settings > Auto Gradation Adjustment > Auto Gradation Correction Method
->If the setting shows "Scanner + Printer", change the setting to "Printer Only"

- 2) After the execution of the Printer PASCAL, the offset values are set to all items in P-PASCAL (COPIER > ADJUST > P-PASCAL). Write down the values to the corresponding fields on the service label (affixed on the inside of the sub station upper front cover [1]). Purpose: Re-enter of the offset values is needed after clearing RAM of the DC controller.



15.5 Fixing System

15.5.1 Checking fixing nip width

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

Check if the fixing nip width is normal when replacing fixing-related parts (fixing roller/pressure belt unit/pressure roller) or when fixing failure occurs.

Steps to check

1. Output of nip check paper

1) Set paper in the right deck

Paper type: 2-sided coated paper (use media with 120gsm to 130gsm)
Paper size: A4 or LTR

2) Select 'Plain Paper (80gsm to 105gsm)' for the paper set on the deck (right deck)


-Additional Functions > Common Settings > Register Paper

3) Output a test print in Service Mode.

[Operating method]
COPIER > TEST > PG
TYPE=5
COLOR-Y = 0
COLOR-M = 255
COLOR-C = 255
COLOR-K = 0
Enter the value as shown in the above, and then press Start button.

2. Measurement of nip

1) Set the test print paper (the output in step 1.) in the right deck with the solid blue image face up.

 Set paper in the right deck. In nip measurement mode, paper can be fed only from the right deck.

2) Execute nip measurement mode in Service Mode.

-COPIER > FUNCTION > FIXING > FX1-NIP1 (in case of the primary fixing assembly)
-COPIER > FUNCTION > FIXING > FX2-NIP1 (in case of the secondary fixing assembly)

[Operating method]

Select the above items to enter "0", and then press [OK].

3) Measure the nip width with the solid blue image of the output paper to check if it is within the specified value.

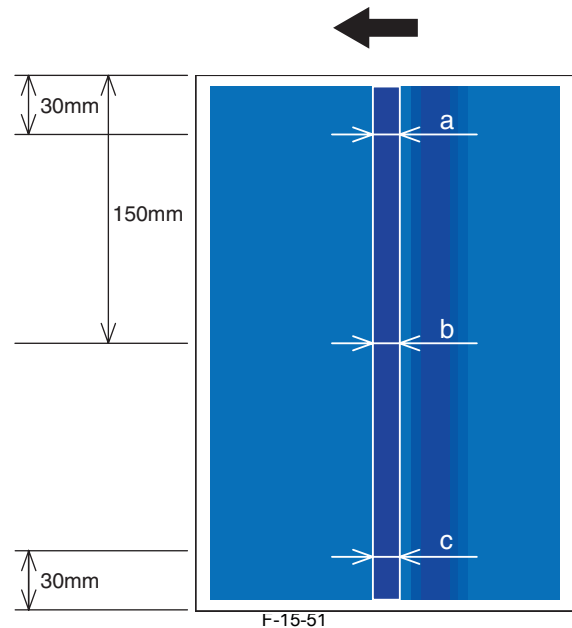
-In case of the primary fixing assembly

[Measuring position]

- 30mm from the paper edge
- 150mm from the paper edge

[Specified value]

a/b/c width = 4.0mm to 4.8mm



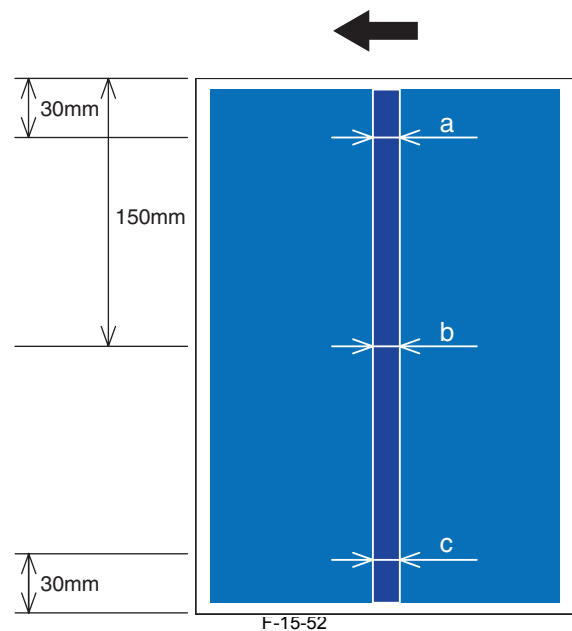
-In case of the secondary fixing assembly

[Measuring position]

- 30mm from the paper edge
- 150mm from the paper edge

[Specified value]

b = 8.0mm to 8.5mm
|a-c| = 0.3mm or less



When the nip width is out of the specified value

Nip width cannot be adjusted in the field. Be sure to perform the following.

1) Nip width cannot be adjusted in the field. Be sure to perform the following.

- 2) Remove the fixing roller and the pressure belt unit (primary fixing assembly)/pressure roller (secondary transfer assembly), and then put them back.
- 3) Replace the pressure belt unit/pressure roller.
- 4) Replace the fixing roller.
- 5) Replace the fixing assembly.

15.5.2 When replacing primary fixing roller

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- 1) Clean the fixing roller and the pressure belt (use alcohol solution + lint-free paper)



Do not put excessive pressure to the roller/belt when they are cleaned, otherwise the surface of them are damaged and may cause image fault.

MEMO:

Lint-free paper is included in the package of a new fixing roller/pressure belt.

- 2) Check the nip width (COPIER > FUNCTION > FIXING > FX1-NIP1)

15.5.3 When replacing secondary fixing roller

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- 1) Clean the fixing roller and the pressure belt (use alcohol solution + lint-free paper)



Do not put excessive pressure to the roller when they are cleaned, otherwise the surface of them are damaged and may cause image fault.

MEMO:

Lint-free paper is included in the package of a new fixing roller/pressure roller.

- 2) Check the nip width (COPIER > FUNCTION > FIXING > FX2-NIP1)

15.5.4 When replacing pressure belt

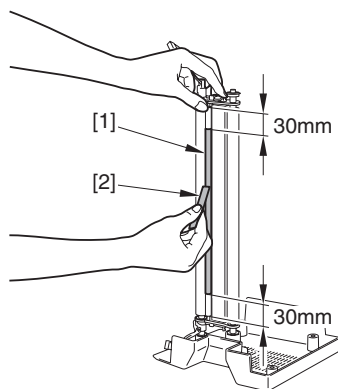
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- 1) Apply silicone oil to the following areas:
 - Surface of oil coating roller: 0.1ml
 - Surface of inlet roller: 0.1ml

[Tools to be used]

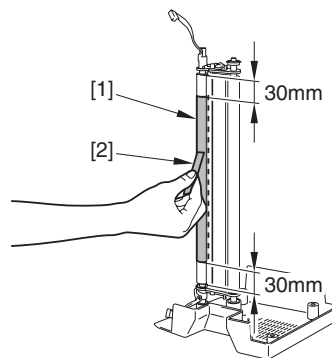
- Silicone oil 400 (Parts Number: FG5-3918)
- Dropper

- 1-1) Make a paper slip to be used for applying the oil. Cut A4 paper into 1/8 (approx.), and then fold the piece into three.
- 1-2) While turning the oil coating roller, apply 0.1ml of silicone oil at the center [1] (30mm inside from the both ends) on the surface of the roller and spread it out evenly using the paper slip [2].



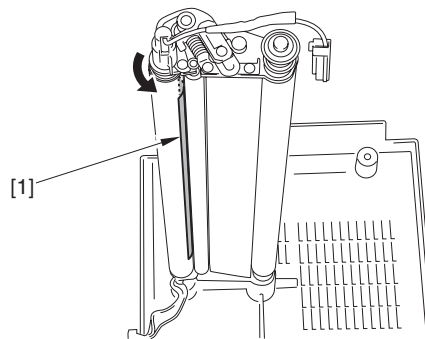
F-15-53

- 1-3) Apply 0.1ml of silicone oil at the center (30mm inside from the both ends) on the surface of the inlet roller and spread it out evenly using a paper slip. Be sure to apply the oil to cover approx. 1/4-turn of the roller.



F-15-54

- 1-4) Turn the inlet roller so that the oil-coated surface is hiding inside the unit. This is to prevent the coated oil to be scraped by the belt when attaching the pressure belt.



F-15-55

- 2) Clean the fixing roller and the pressure belt (use alcohol solution + lint-free paper)
- 3) Check the nip width (COPIER > FUNCTION > FIXING > FX1-NIP1)

15.5.5 When Replacing Pressure Belt Unit-Related Durable Parts

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

Here shows the service task when replacing the following parts at the same time.

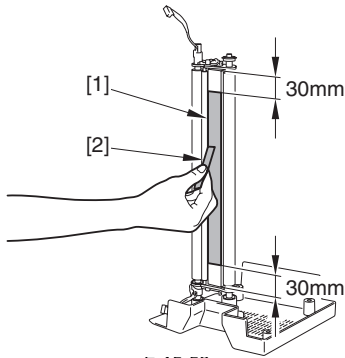
- Pressure belt
- Pressure pad
- Pad cover
- Oil coating roller

- 1) Apply silicone oil at the areas described below:
 - Center on the surface of pressure pad: 0.4ml
 - Surface of oil coating roller: 0.2ml
 - Surface of inlet roller: 0.1ml
 - Pad cover surface between separation roller and pad cover: 0.1ml

[Tools to be used]

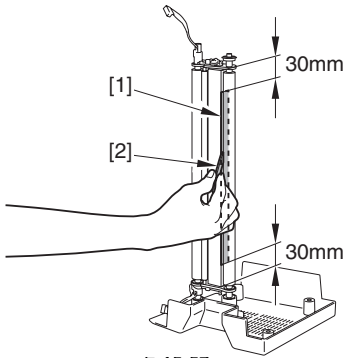
- Silicone oil 400 (Parts Number: FG5-3918)
- Dropper

- 1-1) Make a paper slip to be used for applying the oil. Cut A4 paper into 1/8 (approx.) and fold the piece into three.
- 1-2) Apply 0.4ml of silicone oil at the center [1] (30mm inside from the both ends) on the surface of pad cover and spread it out evenly using the paper slip [2].



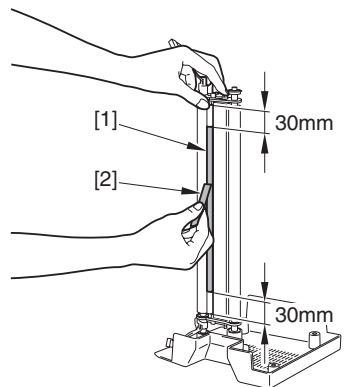
F-15-56

- 1-3) Apply 0.1ml of silicone oil at the center (30mm inside from the both ends) on the surface of pad cover (that is facing the separation roller) and spread it out evenly using the paper slip [2].



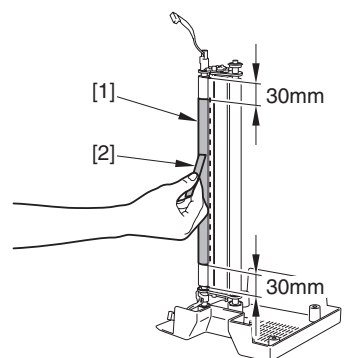
F-15-57

- 1-4) While turning the oil coating roller, apply 0.2ml of silicone oil at the center [1] (30mm inside from the both ends) on the surface of the roller and spread it out evenly using the paper slip [2].



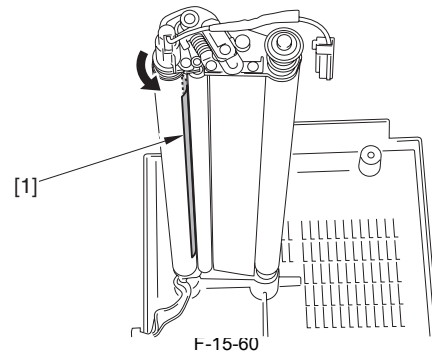
F-15-58

- 1-5) Apply 0.1ml of silicone oil at the center (30mm inside from the both ends) on the surface of the inlet roller and spread it out evenly using the paper slip. Be sure so apply the oil to cover approx. 1/4-turn of the roller.



F-15-59

- 1-6) Turn the inlet roller so that the oil-coated surface is hiding inside the unit. This is to prevent the coated oil to be scraped by the belt when the pressure belt is attached.



F-15-60

- 2) Clean the fixing roller and the pressure belt (use alcohol solution + lint-free paper)
3) Check the nip width (COPIER > FUNCTION > FIXING > FX1-NIP1)

15.5.6 When replacing fixing web

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

-Clean the refresh roller/refresh cleaning roller (use alcohol solution + lint-free paper)

MEMO:
This cleaning applies to periodical service item that is performed at the same time of the fixing web replacement.

MEMO:
Clearing of the fixing web counter (COPIER > COUNTER > MISC > FIX-WEB), that is performed with the existing machines to clear the error caused by no fixing web, is not required. This machine automatically clears the error when detecting the presence of web after replacing the new fixing web.

15.6 Electrical Components

15.6.1 Points to note before replacing SRAM PCB

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

!
- Before replacing SRAM PCB, gain consents of the user that all the image data in BOX will be lost.
- Be sure to mount a new SRAM PCB. Note that reuse of SRAM PCB (the one used in the other machine) will cause malfunction.

15.6.2 Procedure to replace SRAM PCB

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- 1) Turn on the power to start SRAM PCB automatic initialization.
- 2) When automatic initialization of SRAM PCB completed, the message will be shown on the control panel to prompt you to turn off/on the power. Follow the message to turn off/on the power.
- 3) When booted, execute RAM clear in the following service mode.
COPIER>FUNCTION>CLEAR>MN-CON

15.6.3 Points to note when replacing hard disks

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000



- Always replace both of two hard disks at a time. This is to secure the normal functioning of the machine after replacement.

- For machines mounted the hard disks with the encryption boards (optional), always replace two hard disks plus two encryption boards at a time.

- Always replace both of two encryption boards together with two hard disks.

- Do not use mass-produced hard disks. The use of these will be excluded from guarantee. Be sure to use hard disks supplied as genuine service parts.

- When using a hard disk with system software installed for the other machine (the machine with the different serial No.), format the hard disk after mounting to reinstall the system software. The case without formatting will be excluded from guarantee.

15.6.4 After replacing hard disks

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000



The operations described below may cause the key/certificate or CA certificate cleared; the former is required for encrypted communication and the latter to validate external server certificates.

- HDD replacement/ formatting
- SRAM PCB replacement/ RAM clear

If the key/certificate for encrypted communication is cleared, the message "The key is broken" is shown on the control panel. However, the key/certificate/CA certificate, which are installed by default, can be restored by the service mode COPIER>FUNCTION>CLEAR>CA-KEY. If the key/certificate/CA certificate is not restored by CA-KEY, install the key/certificate/CA certificate with SST and execute CA-KEY again. In case that the user generated or added the custom key/certificate/CA certificate, ask the user for reinstallation.



Points to Note About a HDD to Which System Software Has Been Installed

If you must use a HDD to which the system software for a different machine (thus a different serial number) has been installed, be sure to format it after mounting it. Otherwise, the machine operation cannot be guaranteed.

- 1) Format HDD
Start the machine in safe mode (turn on the main power switch while pressing 2+8 key). Use the HDD formatting function of SST to format all partitions (refer to the version upgrade section for details).
- 2) Download system software
Use SST to download System/LANG/RUI/OCR dictionary/SSL encryption key/SSL CA certificate/MEAP contents.
- 3) Execute the following service mode.
COPIER>FUNCTION>CLEAR>CA-KEY (level 2)
- 4) Turn off/on the power.
- 5) Execute automatic gradation correction in user mode.
Adjustment/Cleaning>Auto Gradation Correction>Full Correction



For machines using the card reader + NSA (Net Spot Accountant)

If the card ID for NSA is downloaded in HDD, the count management of NSA is disabled just after HDD replacement. Be sure to reinstall the card ID for NSA after HDD replacement. When completing aforementioned steps 1) through 5) after replacing HDD, follow the steps below to download the card ID in HDD.

- 1) In the service mode COPIER>FUNCTION>INSTALL>CARD, input the number of the first card to be managed in the department and press "OK". (Ex: for the department to manage card No.1 through No. 1000, input "1" for the number of the first card.)
 - 2) Turn off/on the power to execute the followings in user mode.
 - In User Mode>System Administration Setting>Network Setting>TCP/IP Setting>Count Management, check if "ID00000001 through ID00001000" are already set.
 - In User Mode>System Administration Setting>Network Setting>TCP/IP Setting>IP Address, set "IP address", "gateway address" and "subnet mask".
 - In User Mode>System Administrator Information, register arbitrary numbers in "system administration ID" and "system administration PIN number".
- If no number is registered in "system administration ID" and "system administration PIN number", "card registration to device" cannot be executed in the subsequent Net Spot Accountant setting.
- 3) Start the machine and download the card ID to be used from NSA to the machine.
 - 4) When the download is completed, check in the user mode if the card ID data is surely downloaded. In User Mode>System Administration Setting>ID Management by Department>Count Management, check if the downloaded card ID data is shown on the screen.
 - 5) Print out with the registered user card in NSA to see if the card used in the NSA device is surely counted.

15.6.5 Points to note when replacing main controller PCB (MAIN-M)

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000



Mount the PCB's/Boot ROM/DDR-SDRAM from the old main controller PCB (MAIN-M) to the new main controller PCB (MAIN-M).
2 DDR-SDRAM (1GB and 512 MB in capacity, respectively) can be mounted on either of 2 slots.

15.6.6 Points to note when replacing main controller PCB (MAIN-P)

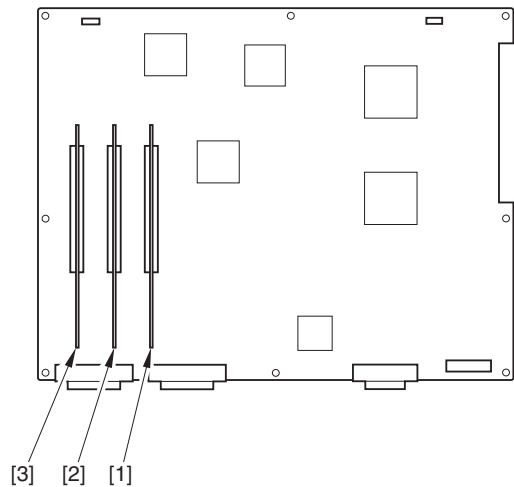
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000



Mount DRM (256) /DRM (512) PCB from the old main controller PCB (MAIN-P) to the respective correct positions on the new main controller PCB (MAIN-P).

- [1] DRM (256) PCB (SDRAM capacity: 256 Mbit X 4 = 128 MB)
- [2] DRM (512) PCB (SDRAM capacity: 512 Mbit X 4 = 256 MB)
- [3] DRM (512) PCB (SDRAM capacity: 512 Mbit X 4 = 256 MB)

[1] and [2] (or [1] and [3]) are not replaceable; abnormal images may be output if mounted on a wrong position.
[2] and [3] are replaceable.



F-15-61

15.6.7 Points to note when replacing encryption boards (optional)

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

⚠ Points to note when replacing encryption boards
Points to note when replacing encryption boards 2 of encryption boards and hard disks should be replaced at a time.

15.6.8 When replacing DC controller PCB 1-1 / Clearing RAM

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

Operation Before Replacement/Clearing RAM:

- Use Service Support Tool (SST) to upload the backup setting value ("Sram-DCON.bin") of DC controller (except when uploading is not available due to a fault of DC controller, etc)

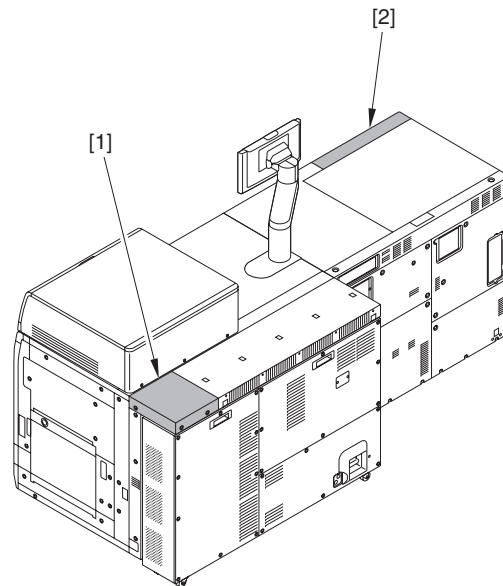
Action to Take After Replacement/Clearing RAM:

⚠ Points to Note Turning OFF and then ON the power (when pickup/delivery accessories are connected)

- Be sure to turn OFF and then ON the power for both the host machine and the pickup/delivery accessories when turning OFF and then ON the power after replacing the DC controller.
- Be sure to turn ON the power in the following order, otherwise the host machine fails to recognize the pickup/delivery accessories:
 - 1) Pickup/delivery accessories
 - 2) Host machine
 There is no particular order to turn ON the power among multiple pickup/delivery accessories.
- The following are pickup/delivery accessories in which no particular order is assigned to turn ON the power:
 - POD/Secondary deck, Stacker (Primary/Secondary), Finisher

- 1) Turn ON the power.
- 2) Execute clear for the setting value/counter of DC controller:
 - COPIER > FUNCTION > CLEAR > DC-CON (for clearing RAM of DC controller PCB)
 - COPIER > FUNCTION > CLEAR > CNT-DCON (for clearing the service counter of DC controller PCB)
- 3) Turn OFF and then ON the power (RAM clear is executed by turning OFF and then ON the power)
- 4) Using SST, download the backup setting value that has been uploaded before replacing the DC controller.
- 5) Set the connecting order of pickup/delivery accessories:
 - COPIER > OPTION > ACCPST-P > ACC1 to ACC4 (setting the connect-

- ing order of pickup accessories)
- COPIER > OPTION > ACCPST-D > ACC1 to ACC8 (setting the connecting order of delivery accessories)
- 6) Turn OFF and then ON the power (connecting order setting for pickup/delivery accessories is active by turning OFF and then ON the power)
- 7) Enter the value written on the service label (affixed on the inside of the main station upper rear cover [1] and the sub station upper front cover [2]) to the corresponding field in service mode.



F-15-62

- 8) Turn OFF and then ON the power (the entered value at each Service Mode item is active by turning OFF and then ON the power).
- 9) Execute the high voltage offset adjustment (COPIER > FUNCTION > MISC-P > HV-ADOFS).
- 10) Execute the forcible warm-up rotation mode (COPIER > FUNCTION > MISC-P > INTR-EX; LEVEL2).
- 11) Execute ITB edge profile measuring mode (COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL > INII-ITB)
- 12) Execute auto color displacement correction control (COPIER > FUNCTION > MISC-P > AT-IMG-X).
- 13) Execute auto gradation correction control (in Additional Functions Mode: Adjustment/Cleaning > Auto Gradation Correction > Full Correction).
- 14) Enter the current values to each item on the service label.

15.6.9 When replacing DC controller PCB 1-2

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- 1) Execute potential sensor offset adjustment (See [Procedure for replacing the potential sensor/ potential control PCB]).
- 2) Execute high voltage offset adjustment (COPIER > FUNCTION > MISC-P > HV-ADOFS).
- 3) Execute the forcible warm-up rotation mode (COPIER > FUNCTION > MISC-P > INTR-EX; LEVEL2).

15.6.10 When replacing DC controller PCB 1-3

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- There is no particular work to do.

15.6.11 When replacing HV1 PCB

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- Execute potential control (COPIER > FUNCTION > DPC > DPC) [duration] 80 sec (approx.)

15.6.12 When replacing HV2, HV4, HV6 PCB

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- Execute high voltage offset adjustment (COPIER > FUNCTION > MISC-P > HV-ADOFS) [duration] 10sec (approx.)

15.6.13 When replacing HV3, HV5, HV7, HV8 PCB

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- There is no particular work to do.

15.7 Pickup/Feeding System

15.7.1 When replacing pickup/feed rollers

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

When replacing the following durable parts (rollers), be sure to apply grease to the both edges of the shaft.

- Tandem feed roller 1
- Tandem feed roller 2
- Tandem feed roller 3
- Bypass feed roller 1
- Bypass feed roller 2
- Bypass feed roller 3
- Delivery roller 1
- Delivery roller 2
- Delivery roller 3
- Delivery pre-reverse roller
- Delivery post-reverse roller
- Delivery reverse roller 1
- Duplex reverse roller
- Duplex post-reverse roller

Greaser to use: Super lube oil

Tool number: FY9-6006

15.7.2 When replacing paper length sensor

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

When replacing the paper length sensor

Select: COPIER > FUNCTION > SEND-ADJ. Perform the following items and check the displayed value.

- 1) Measure the intended paper length against the feeding direction for use and input the value in INPUT-L.
- 2) Perform PL-D-EXE.
- 3) Check that the displayed value on PL-SNS-V is within the appropriate range (750 +/- 15).

15.7.3 When Replacing Registration Sensor

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- Execute registration sensor light intensity adjustment. (COPIER > FUNCTION > SENS-ADJ > REG-SNS)

15.7.4 When replacing paper thickness sensor

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- Enter the rank value of paper thickness sensor (COPIER > ADJUST > MISC > DF-S-RK)
Enter the numerical value that corresponds the text on the label attached to the paper thickness sensor.

T-15-2

Text on the label	DF-S-NK input value
A	1
B	2
C	3
D	4
E	5

15.7.5 When replacing floatation fan/fan duct

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- 1) Take all of the paper out from the corresponding deck (right deck or left deck).
- 2) Turn off and then on the main power switch. After activation of the machine, the airflow adjustment for floatation fan is automatically executed.

MEMO:

- During air volume control, even if pressing the deck open button, deck will not open.

After starting air volume control, the following 2 cases indicate a normal completion of control.

- 1: Paper absence LED lights.
- 2: Deck opens when pressing the deck open button.

15.7.6 When Replacing Deck and Deck Solenoid (Deck Solenoid Adjustment)

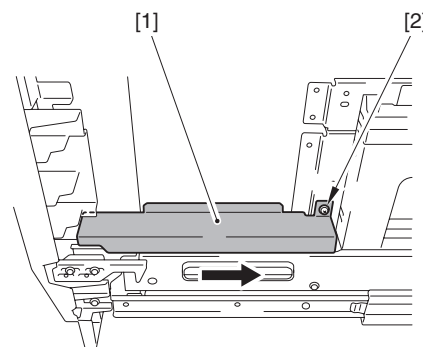
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000



Be sure to adjust the solenoid position of the deck either when moving the latch claw with the side registration adjustment or when replacing the deck and the deck open/close solenoid.

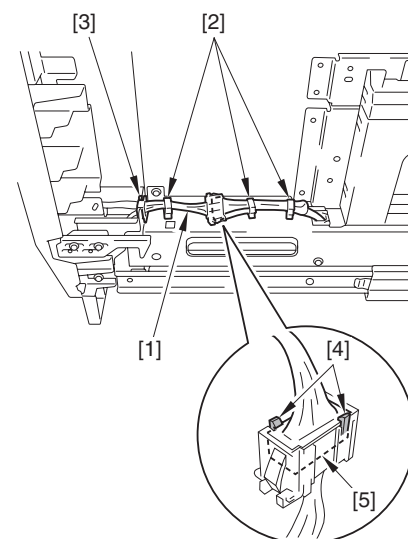
Otherwise, the deck may not be opened even pressing the deck open/close button.

- 1) Press the deck open/close button, and open the deck.
- 2) Detach the connector cover [1] by sliding it in the direction of the arrow.
- 1 screw [2]



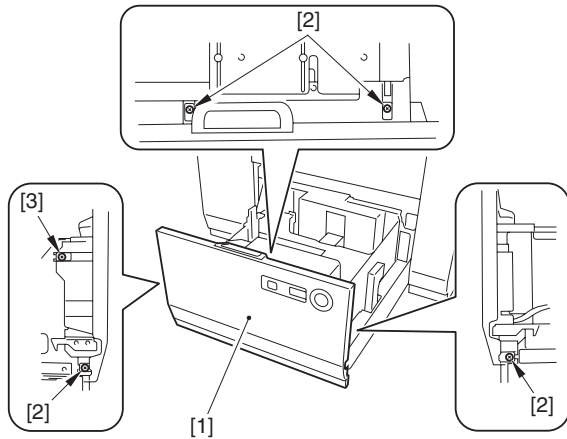
F-15-63

- 3) Free the harness [1].
- 3 wire saddles [2]
- 1 edge saddle [3]
- 4) In case of the upper/middle deck, disengage the 2 claws [4]; then, disconnect the connector [5].



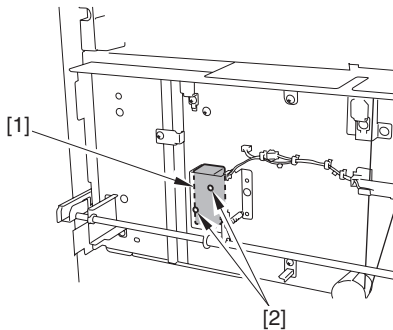
F-15-64

- 5) Check the scale marked around the screw, and take a note as a reference when attaching the deck front cover [1].
- Upper/middle deck: 4 scales [2]
- Lower deck: 5 scales [2] and [3]



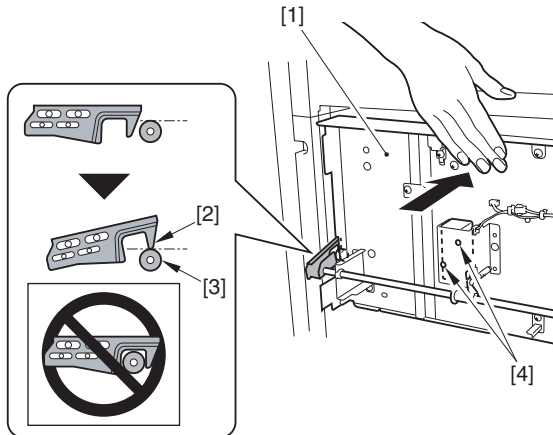
F-15-65

6) Loosen the 2 screws (red) [2] securing the deck solenoid [1].



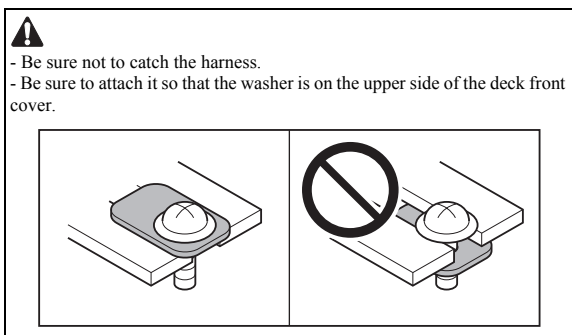
F-15-66

7) Slide the deck [1] inside until the tip [2] of the latch claw contacts with the apex of the wheel [3]; and then, tighten the 2 screws (red) [4] securing the deck solenoid that are loosened in step 6).



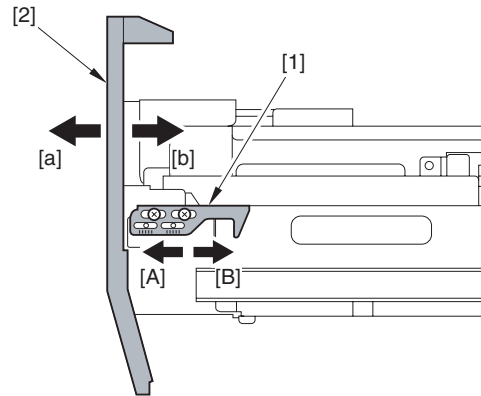
F-15-67

8) Attach the deck front cover.



9) By referring to the scale position checked in step 5), move the deck front cover in the direction to which the latch claw [1] is moved with the 'Horizontal Registration Adjustment'. Then, tighten the screws.
 - In case that the latch claw is moved toward the front side [A]: move the

deck front cover in the [a] direction.
 - In case that the latch claw is moved toward the rear side [B]: move the deck front cover in the [b] direction.



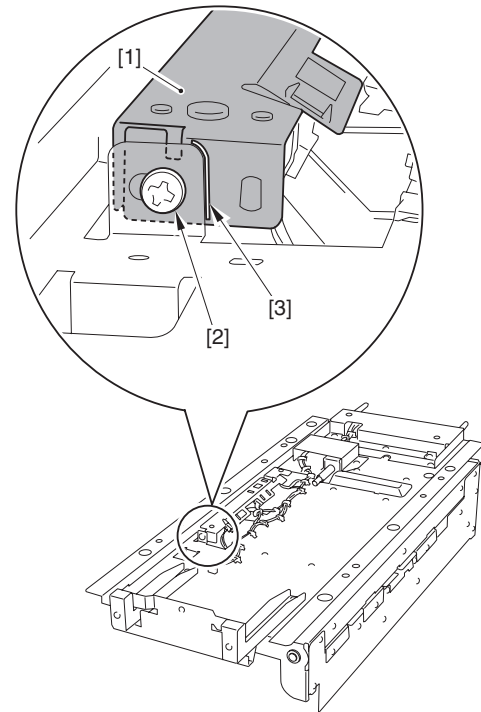
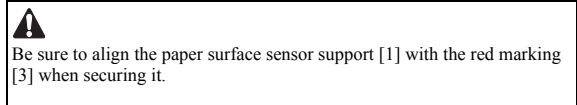
F-15-68

10) Put the harness back to its original position, and attach the connector cover.
 11) Close the deck.

15.7.7 When Replacing Paper Surface Sensor

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

1) After replacing the paper surface sensor, return the paper surface sensor support [1] that has been detached to its original position.
 - 1 adjustment screw [2]



F-15-69

15.7.8 When replacing pickup/feed rollers manual feed tray

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

1. Register basic paper width values of manual feed tray

1) Open the manual feed tray.
 2) In service mode, register the manual feed tray paper width values
 2-1) Set A4 paper in the landscape direction in the manual feed tray and then slide the manual feed tray paper side guide so that it matches the paper in the tray.

2-2) Select the following item in service mode and, once the item has been highlighted, press OK.

- COPIER > FUNCTION > CST > MF-A4R

2-3) Register the paper width values for A6R and A4 in the same way.

- COPIER > FUNCTION > CST > MF-A6R

- COPIER > FUNCTION > CST > MF-A4

After registration, press the Reset key until you quit service mode.

2. Operational check

- 1) Set the desired size of paper in the manual feed tray and set the paper size and type in accordance with the instructions on the control panel display.
- 2) Output a print or copy and check whether the paper is correctly picked up from the manual feed tray.

Chapter 16 Correcting Faulty Images

Contents

16.1 Making Initial Checks.....	16-1
16.1.1 Installation Environment.....	16-1
16.1.2 Checking of Paper.....	16-1
16.1.3 Checking of Paper Setting.....	16-1
16.1.4 Checking of the Durable Parts.....	16-1
16.1.5 Checking of the Periodically Replaced Parts.....	16-1
16.1.6 Checking of Each Unit/Checking Item of Each Function System.....	16-1
16.2 Test Print.....	16-2
16.2.1 Overview.....	16-2
16.2.2 Test Print TYPE.....	16-2
16.2.3 Selecting the Test Print TYPE.....	16-2
16.2.4 16-Gradation (TYPE=4).....	16-2
16.2.5 Full Area Half Tone (TYPE=5).....	16-3
16.2.6 Grid (TYPE=6).....	16-3
16.2.7 MCYBk Horizontal Line (TYPE=10).....	16-4
16.2.8 64-Gradation (TYPE=12).....	16-5
16.2.9 Full Color 16-gradation (TYPE=14).....	16-5
16.3 Troubleshooting.....	16-5
16.3.1 Image Faults.....	16-5
16.3.1.1 Light Image / Weak Density.....	16-5
16.3.1.1.1 Uneven density occurs in sub scanning direction at high-density areas of output images: Many originals with low image ratio are printed continuously.....	16-5
16.3.1.2 Uneven Density.....	16-6
16.3.1.2.1 Faulty image (uneven fogged image/strip at rear side) occurs upon installation.....	16-6
16.3.1.2.2 Magenta Spots.....	16-7
16.3.1.2.3 3.7mm Pitch Spots.....	16-8
16.3.1.2.4 2mm Pitch Spots.....	16-10
16.3.1.2.5 Uneven fogged image/strip at the rear.....	16-12
16.3.1.3 Partially Blank/Streaked.....	16-14
16.3.1.3.1 White spots appear at 68mm intervals: Secondary transfer internal roller is soiled.....	16-14
16.3.1.3.2 Light/uneven image due to faulty toner coat.....	16-15
16.3.1.4 Smudged/Streaked.....	16-19
16.3.1.4.1 2mm-wide banding appears at 125 mm intervals at 1st job in morning after leaving this machine for longtime.....	16-19
16.3.1.4.2 When using coated paper, shiny lines (1mm to 1.5mm-wide) appear in main scanning direction at fixing roller intervals.....	16-19
16.3.1.4.3 Glossy Lines.....	16-20
16.3.1.4.4 Trace of bypass decurler belt.....	16-20
16.3.1.4.5 Dirt of pin hole (ring mark).....	16-21
16.3.1.4.6 Trace of delivery reversing roller.....	16-22
16.3.1.4.7 Image front edge foggy image (When using the 13X19 inch paper).....	16-23
16.3.1.4.8 Soiled image due to toner drop from developing assembly.....	16-23
16.3.1.4.9 Wax mark in tandem feeding.....	16-30
16.3.2 Malfunction.....	16-33
16.3.2.1 Malfunction/Faulty Detection.....	16-33
16.3.2.1.1 Error indication "NG!" appears when executing developer supply mode (SPLY/STIR) during installation.....	16-33
16.3.2.1.2 E018-0X11 error displayed due to faulty operation of the drum patch sensor shutter.....	16-34
16.3.3 Jam (Main Unit).....	16-36
16.3.3.1 0115 Jam Code: Primary fixing inner delivery sensor lever causes malfunction when A4/LTR-size paper is used.....	16-36
16.3.3.2 011C Jam Code occurs because delivery reverse flapper does not open at duplex job or facedown delivery: Torsion spring is mounted in wrong position.....	16-37

16.3.4 Error Code.....	16-38
16.3.4.1 E077-0001 is displayed during initial rotation: Lever (B-E1) on Regist. Paper Feeder Assembly is not set properly.....	16-38
16.3.4.2 E078-0001: ITB cleaner motor (M108) is faulty.....	16-38
16.3.4.3 E578/error of paper folding position for saddle stitching: This machine stapled more than specified number of sheets at one time.....	16-38
16.3.4.4 E732-8888/E490-0001 occurs upon installation (Color Image Reader-H1).....	16-39
16.3.4.5 E750-0002 occurs when relocating this machine: Connector of drawer connector mount on backside of main station.....	16-39
16.3.5 Specifications-Related FAQ.....	16-40
16.3.5.1 FAQ on Main Unit Specifications.....	16-40
16.3.5.1.1 When uploading DC Controller data with SST, "SramDCON" does not appear on SST screen.....	16-40
16.3.5.1.2 Specifications for staple capacity of Finisher-AB1/AB2.....	16-40
16.3.5.1.3 Description on fixing roller refresh operation and its execution timing.....	16-40
16.4 Outline of Electrical Components.....	16-40
16.4.1 Clutch/Solenoid.....	16-40
16.4.1.1 Main Station.....	16-40
16.4.1.2 Sub Station.....	16-42
16.4.2 Motor.....	16-43
16.4.2.1 Main Station(1/6).....	16-43
16.4.2.2 Main Station(2/6).....	16-47
16.4.2.3 Main Station(3/6).....	16-49
16.4.2.4 Main Station(4/6).....	16-51
16.4.2.5 Main Station(5/6).....	16-53
16.4.2.6 Main Station(6/6).....	16-54
16.4.2.7 Sub Station(1/5).....	16-56
16.4.2.8 Sub Station(2/5).....	16-57
16.4.2.9 Sub Station(3/5).....	16-58
16.4.2.10 Sub Station(4/5).....	16-59
16.4.2.11 Sub Station(5/5).....	16-60
16.4.3 Fan.....	16-61
16.4.3.1 Main Station(1/3).....	16-61
16.4.3.2 Main Station(2/3).....	16-63
16.4.3.3 Main Station(3/3).....	16-65
16.4.3.4 Sub Station (1/2).....	16-67
16.4.3.5 Sub Station(2/2).....	16-70
16.4.3.6 Power Unit Station.....	16-72
16.4.4 Sensor.....	16-73
16.4.4.1 Main Station(1/5).....	16-73
16.4.4.2 Main Station(2/5).....	16-77
16.4.4.3 Main Station(3/5).....	16-79
16.4.4.4 Main Station(4/5).....	16-81
16.4.4.5 Main Station(5/5).....	16-83
16.4.4.6 Sub Station(1/4).....	16-85
16.4.4.7 Sub Station(2/4).....	16-86
16.4.4.8 Sub Station(3/4).....	16-88
16.4.4.9 Sub Station(4/4).....	16-89
16.4.5 Switch.....	16-91
16.4.5.1 Main Station(1/2).....	16-91
16.4.5.2 Main Station(2/2).....	16-93
16.4.5.3 Sub Station.....	16-94
16.4.5.4 Power Unit Station.....	16-95
16.4.6 Lamps, Heaters, and Others.....	16-96
16.4.6.1 Main Station(1/2).....	16-96
16.4.6.2 Main Station(2/2).....	16-97
16.4.6.3 Sub Station.....	16-98
16.4.6.4 Power Unit Station.....	16-100
16.4.7 PCBs.....	16-101
16.4.7.1 Main Station(1/4).....	16-101
16.4.7.2 Main Station(2/4).....	16-102
16.4.7.3 Main Station(3/4).....	16-103
16.4.7.4 Main Station(4/4).....	16-105
16.4.7.5 Sub Station(1/2).....	16-106
16.4.7.6 Sub Station(2/2).....	16-107

16.4.7.7 Power Unit Station(1/2)	16-108
16.4.7.8 Power Unit Station(2/2)	16-109
16.4.8 Connectors	16-110
16.4.8.1 Laser Unit	16-110
16.4.8.2 Hopper Unit	16-113
16.4.8.3 Process Unit (1/3)	16-115
16.4.8.4 Process Unit (2/3)	16-117
16.4.8.5 Process Unit (3/3)	16-119
16.4.8.6 Intermediate Transfer Unit	16-122
16.4.8.7 Secondary Transfer Unit	16-126
16.4.8.8 Registration Unit	16-130
16.4.8.9 Vertical Path Unit	16-132
16.4.8.10 Right Deck Unit	16-135
16.4.8.11 Left Deck Unit	16-138
16.4.8.12 Environment Heater Unit	16-141
16.4.8.13 Main Station and Others	16-143
16.4.8.14 Primary Fixing Unit	16-146
16.4.8.15 Secondary Fixing Unit	16-148
16.4.8.16 Primary Fixing Heater Unit	16-150
16.4.8.17 Secondary Fixing Heater Unit	16-152
16.4.8.18 Fixing/Duplexing Feed Unit	16-154
16.4.8.19 Reverse/External Delivery Unit	16-160
16.4.8.20 Sub Station and Others	16-164
16.4.8.21 Power Unit Station	16-166

16.1 Making Initial Checks

16.1.1 Installation Environment

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- Be sure to check that the value of power supply voltage is maintained $\pm 10\%$ of the specified voltage (do not disconnect the plug even during the nighttime).
- Be sure to avoid areas that are: high temperature/humidity (around water tap, water heater, and humidifying device), cool temperature, near the fire, or dusty.
 - Temperature gradient must be 10 deg C/H or less to especially avoid faulty state.
 - Guaranteed environment for the machine: temperature: 20 to 27 deg C, humidity: 30 to 70%
 - Guaranteed environment for the media: temperature: 20 to 27 deg C, humidity: 30 to 60%
- Be sure to avoid areas subject to evaporation of ammonia gas.
- Be sure to avoid areas subject to exposure to direct sunlight. Instruct to attach curtains if there is no choice.
- Be sure to check the machine is installed in a place subject to sufficient ventilation, and also the machine can maintain its level.
- Be sure to check that the machine's power plug is connected to the outlet.

16.1.2 Checking of Paper

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- Check if Canon-recommended paper is used.
- Check if the paper is moistened. Try to make prints by setting paper taken out from a new package.

16.1.3 Checking of Paper Setting

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- Check if the specified volume of paper is set properly in the deck.

16.1.4 Checking of the Durable Parts

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

Check the list of expected life of durable parts, and replace parts that reach the stated life.

16.1.5 Checking of the Periodically Replaced Parts

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

According to the list for periodically service/the table of periodically replaced parts, replace parts that reach the stated life counts.

16.1.6 Checking of Each Unit/Checking Item of Each Function System

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

1. Reader (option)

- Check if there is no scar, soil or foreign particle in the scanning system (mirror/ white plate/ copyboard glass/ reflector).
- Check if the mirror mount moves smoothly/there is no soil on the rail.
- Check if there is no flickering of scanning lamp.
- Check if the scanning system wire is set properly.
- Check if there is no condensation in the scanning system.

2. Process

- Check if there is toner in the toner container.
- Check if the process unit is reliably attached.
- Check if there is no scar or soil on the photosensitive drum.
- Check if drum patch sensor is not soiled.

3. Transfer

- Check if there is no foreign particle on the secondary transfer unit.
- Check if there is no wear, scar, soil and deformation on the ITB/secondary transfer roller.
- Check if there is no break, flip, and deformation of the blade or spray of toner of the ITB cleaning unit.

4. Fixing

- Check if there is no wear, scar, soil and deformation of the fixing belt/pressure roller.
- Check if the fixing heater activates after turning on the power.
- Check if the fixing thermistor is not open circuit.
- Check if the thermal switch is conductive.

5. Paper Pickup/Feeding

- Check if no foreign particle (such as scrap of paper) is remained.
- Check if there is no paper lint accumulating on the pickup belt and feed roller. Also if there is no wear, scar, soil or deformation of the pickup/feed/separation roller.
- Check if there is no wear, scar, soil and deformation of pre-registration roller/registration/cross feed roller.
- Check if there is no wear, scar, soil or deformation of the feeder guide.
- Check if there is any fault of fold-down of leading edge/curl/ruffling/moisture absorption of paper.
- Check if the performance improves when using Canon-recommended paper/transparency.

6. Machine

- Check if the load of the drive system is not heavy.
- Check if there is no wear or chip of the gear.

7. Deck (Cassette)

- Check if: the deck is attached properly; the paper size and type is set correctly; the same symptom does not occur when replacing the deck that performs normal

- operation.
- Check if: the move of the lifter is smooth; there is no deformation.
- Check if the side guide plate/rear guide plate of the deck is attached properly.
- Check if the switch of the heater is ON (in case the heater is attached).

8. General

- Are both of the 2 power plugs plugged in completely?
- Is the specified AC voltage supplied to the power outlet?
- Are the sensors / clutches / motors / solenoids working properly? Is there any contact failure of connectors?
(Confirm power supplies and signal routes on the synthetic circuit diagram)
- Is the electric leakage breaker / circuit breaker working?
- Are there any pinched wires / loose screws?
- Are all external covers attached?
- Are the main power switch / control panel power switch ON?
- Are the power cable / signal cable wirings to each accessory correct?
- Is the cover switch operation normal?
- Is there any fuse blowout on the PCB assemblies?
- Are there any incorrect or misunderstood operations on the user side?

16.2 Test Print

16.2.1 Overview

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

This machine has 6 test print types as indicated below, and each test print can detect image fault. The data for these test prints is prepared by the main controller. In the case that there is no fault appeared on the test print by normal output, it may be caused by PDL input side, or/and the reader side.

16.2.2 Test Print TYPE

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

T-16-1

TYPE NO.	description
0	normal print
1-3	-(for R&D)
4	16-gradation
5	full area half tone
6	grid
7-9	-(for R&D)
10	MCYBk horizontal stripes (sub scanning direction)
11	-(for R&D)
12	64-gradation
13	-(for R&D)
14	full color 16-gradation
15-100	-(for R&D)

16.2.3 Selecting the Test Print TYPE

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- 1) Set number of prints and paper size.
- 2) Select the followings in service mode:
COPIER > TEST > PG
- 3) Make the following selections:
COPIER > TEST > PG > TYPE
- 4) Enter TYPE number by the numeric keypad, and then press OK key.
- 5) Select the color in question (output by '1') in COLOR-Y/M/C/K.
- 6) Set density in DENS-Y/M/C/K (effective only for TYPE=5).
- 7) Press start key.

16.2.4 16-Gradation (TYPE=4)

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

This test print can mainly check gradation performance, image fogging, and white line.

a. Gradation

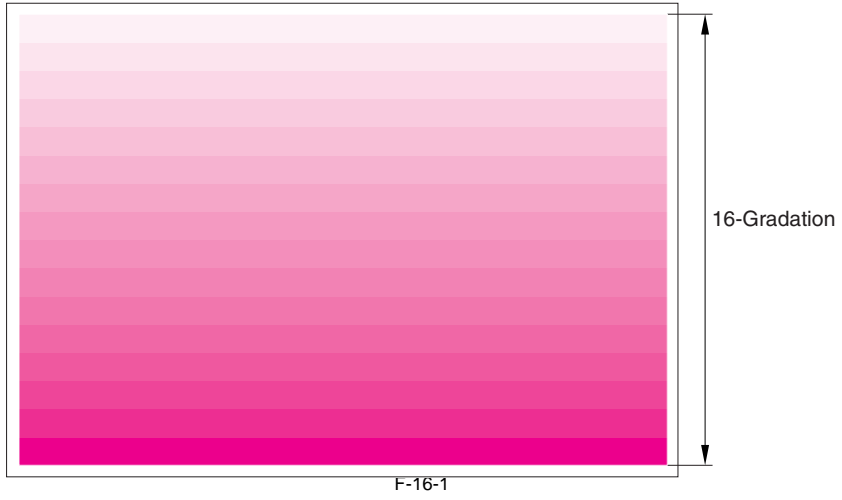
If there is no 16-step density gradation, it may be caused by fault of drum or laser scanning system.

b. Foggy image

If there is foggy image only at the white area as shown in the figure below, it may be caused by fault of drum or laser scanning system.

c. Vertical white line

If there is white line in the image, it may be caused by fault of developing system.



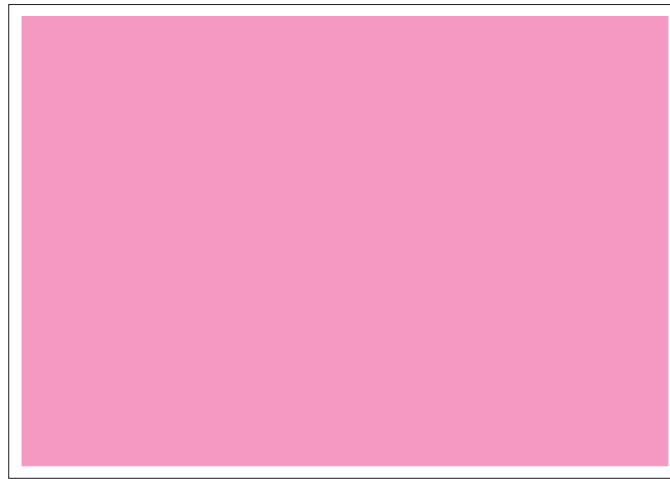
16.2.5 Full Area Half Tone (TYPE=5)

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

This test print can mainly check black line, white line, and Density unevenness at the rear/front.

MEMO:
(1) Output by every developing color is available by specifying the developing color COLOR-Y/M/C/K in the following service mode: COPIER>TEST>PG
(2) In the case of changing density of the test print, execute followings in service mode for density setting: TEST>PG>DENS-Y/M/C/K

- a. Black Line
If a black line occurs, suspect a scratch (approx. 264mm pitch) in the photosensitive drum or dirt on the primary charging assembly.
- b. White Line
If a white line occurs, suspect a fault in the Primary transfer roller (approx. 25 to 50mm pitch) , secondary transfer outside roller (approx. 75mm pitch), laser exposure system, or suspect dirt on the dust-blocking glass.
- c. Density unevenness at the rear/front
If there is density unevenness at the rear/front, suspect dirt on the dust-blocking glass, deterioration of the ITB, or suspect a fault in the developing cylinder (approx. 50mm pitch) .



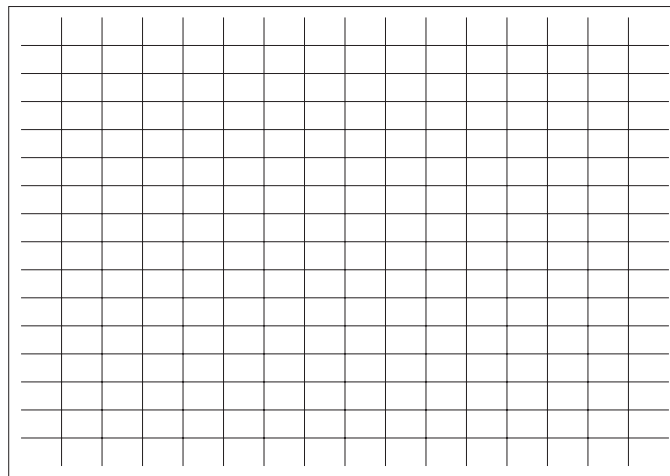
COLOR-M=1, COLOR-Y/C/K=0
F-16-2

16.2.6 Grid (TYPE=6)

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

This test print can mainly check color displacement, right angle accuracy and linearity.

- a. Color displacement
If there is color displacement, it may be caused by fault of each laser scanning system, transfer unit (intermediate transfer/secondary transfer) or photosensitive drum drive motor.
- b. Right angle accuracy and linearity
If there is fault of right angle accuracy or linearity, it may be caused by fault of laser scanning system, or defective shape of registration roller or the secondary transfer outer roller.



F-16-3

16.2.7 MCYBk Horizontal Line (TYPE=10)

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

This test print can mainly check the dark area density of each color, balance among each color and white/black line.

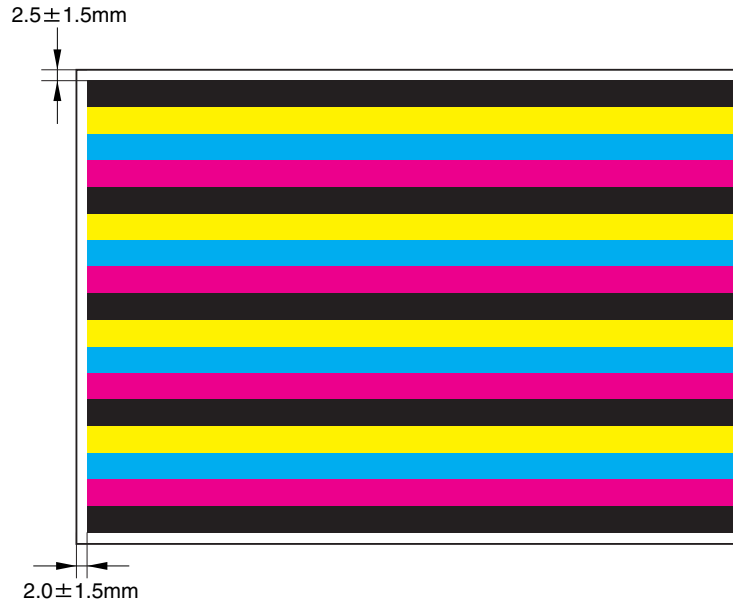
a. Solid density of each color and balance among each color.

- Density is not extremely light.

- In the case of light density with a certain color, it may be caused by the developer of the color in question, or fault of primary transfer roller, laser scanning system or high voltage system.

b. White/black line

If there is white/black line with a certain color, it may be caused by fault of the drum of the color in question, or soiled laser light path.



F-16-4

16.2.8 64-Gradation (TYPE=12)

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

YMCBk 64 gradation test print can mainly check gradation performance of each color (YMCBk) at one time.



F-16-5

16.2.9 Full Color 16-gradation (TYPE=14)

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

Full color 16-gradation test print can mainly check gray balance, gradation performance of each color (YMCBk) and foggy image.

a. Gray balance

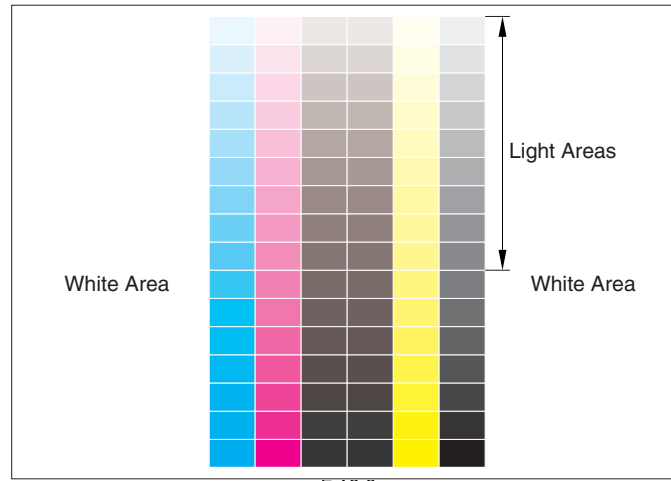
Check to see if the output comes with even density of each color at gray scale area.

b. Gradation performance

Check gradation performance and density difference of each color (YMCBk)

c. Foggy image

If there is foggy image at the white area, it may be caused by fault of developing system or photosensitive drum, or correction fault of laser scanning system.



16.3 Troubleshooting

16.3.1 Image Faults

16.3.1.1 Light Image / Weak Density

16.3.1.1.1 Uneven density occurs in sub scanning direction at high-density areas of output images: Many originals with low image ratio are printed continuously

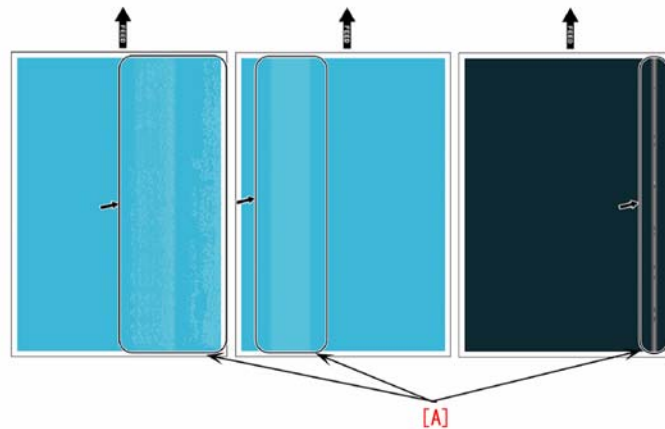
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

0018-1056

[Inspected by Canon Inc.]

Description

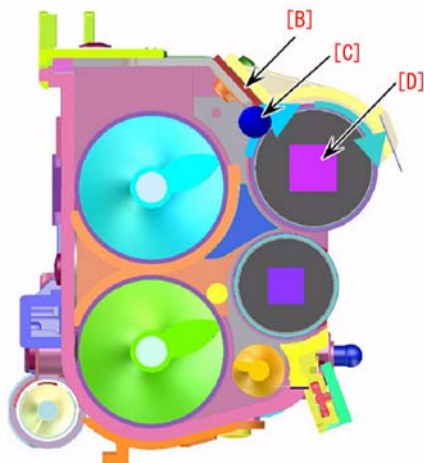
When a lot of originals with a low image ratio were printed continuously, uneven density occurred in the sub scanning direction at high-density areas of output images. In this inspection case, A4R-size originals were used.



F-16-7

Cause

Printing a lot of originals with a low image ratio caused a downturn in consumption of toner inside the developing assembly, causing toner clump [C] between the developing sleeve [D] and the blade [B]. This caused uneven toner coating on the sleeve.



F-16-8

Field Remedy

When the same symptom occurs, follow the procedure below.

1. In accordance with the description in "Measure for Uneven Density", improve uneven density occurring at the high-density areas.
2. In order to improve the amount of toner forcedly consumed and prevent toner clump from being created, perform the following:
 - Change the setting for the developing cylinder micro-rotation control
Service mode > COPIER > Option > BODY > SL-DRIVE > change the setting from '0' to '-1'.
 - Change the image ratio setting for the forced toner consumption sequence from 2% to 3%.
Service mode (Level2) > COPIER > Option > BODY > DEVL-VTH > change the setting from '2' to '3'.

16.3.1.2 Uneven Density**16.3.1.2.1 Faulty image (uneven fogged image/strip at rear side) occurs upon installation**

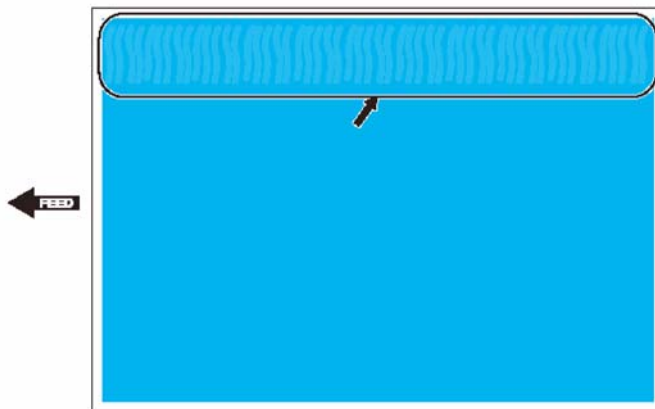
0018-1060

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

[Inspected by Canon Inc.]

Description

Since uneven fogged image occurred upon installation, the position of magnetic pole of developing cylinders was adjusted for solution.



F-16-9

Cause

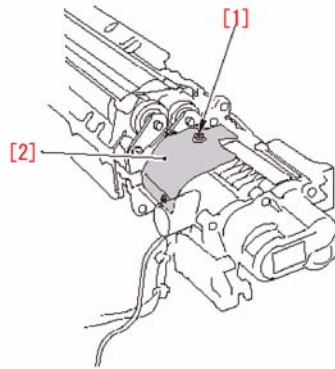
Inside a developing assembly, the magnetic pole of each developing cylinder (upper/lower) lost the positional balance. In addition, developer inside the assembly was collected in the rear side and stayed there.

Reference: The symptom is also likely to occur when starter is not stirred long enough upon installation (or at replacement of starter). When executing the following service mode (mode to rotate the developing assembly) for the purpose of fully stirring the supplied developer after supply of developer, be sure not to press the STOP key during operation. If the STOP key is not pressed, the mode will finish about 290 sec (5min) later.

- Service mode > COPIER > Function > INSTALL > SUPPLY-H-Y/M/C/K

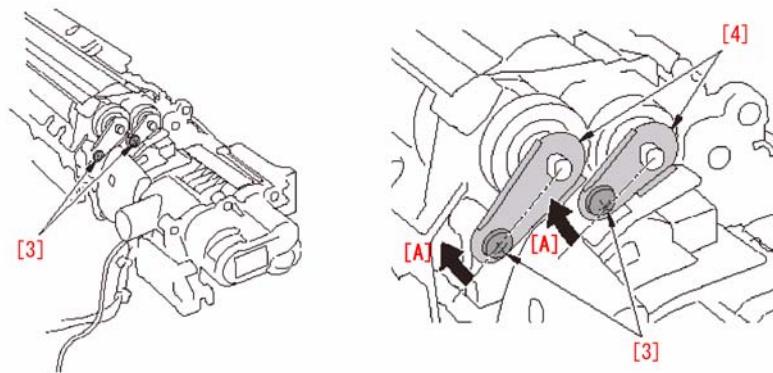
Field Remedy

1. Detach the developing assembly that caused the symptom.
2. Remove the 1 screw [1], and then remove the protection sheet [2].



F-16-10

3. Loosen the 2 screws [3]; then pressing each electrode positioning plate [4], turn them in the clockwise (the direction of the arrow [A]) by the distance equivalent to play, and tighten the 2 loosened screws [3] to fix the plates.



F-16-11

Note: Perform this step only on the developing assembly of the color causing the symptom. If this step is performed on the developing assembly of the color that is not causing the symptom, another fault may occur.

4. Affix the protection sheet that was removed in Step 2, and then return the developing assembly inside the machine; then make copies to check the quality of output images.

Note: Right after adjustment of the electrode positioning plate position, the developer inside the developing assembly may not shake down completely. Therefore, the symptom may occur. However, this will gradually be improved by generating outputs.

16.3.1.2.2 Magenta Spots

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

0016-6848

Cause

When developing the second and later color in single Magenta halftone during full-color printing, the carrier is sometimes stuck to the drum. This causes discharge during primary transfer for the second and later color, and the polarity of the Magenta toner on ITB becomes reversed. As a result, part of the Magenta toner on ITB is returned to the drum, sometimes causing spots on an image.

Measures in the field

Execute the following user mode and make an adjustment of gloss of paper.

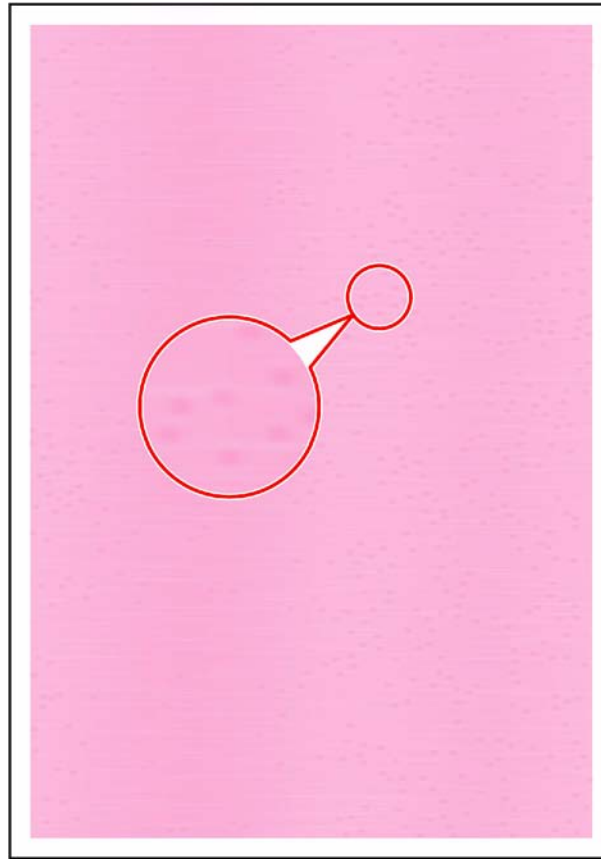
Select "Adjustment of gloss" from "User mode: Initial settings/registration > System management settings > Management of paper type".

When the value is set to + 1, gloss is increased.

When gloss is insufficient, increase the value to +2.

After changing the setting value, make sure that the problem on the image is eliminated using the CA-1 test chart or an image prepared by a user.

Image sample



F-16-12

16.3.1.2.3 3.7mm Pitch Spots

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

0016-7185

Symptom

Due to abrasion of the photosensitive drum cleaner drive gears or the like, 3.7mm banding image may occur.

Cause

Due to abrasion of the photosensitive drum drive gears, the gears do not engage well to cause vibration.

This results in uneven drum rotation and causes 3.7mm banding image.

This symptom also occurs due to soiled gears or contaminants.

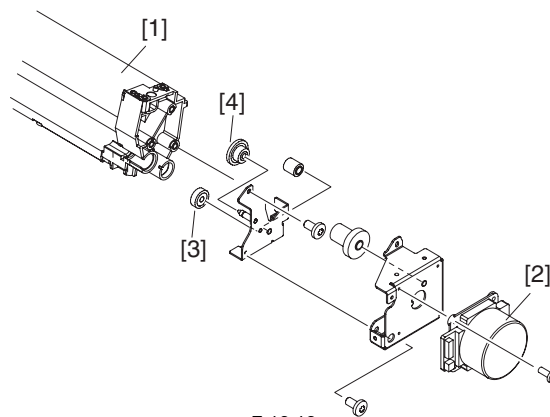
Measures in the field

Implement measures, following the procedure shown below.

1) Check the sliding condition of gears.

In a heavy sliding condition, there may be foreign objects on the shaft and inner circumference of two types of gears [3] and [4].

In this case, clean the shaft and inner circumference of two types of gears with lint-free paper containing alcohol.

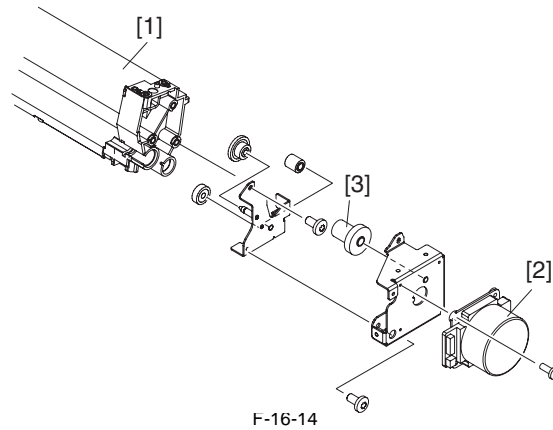


F-16-13

[1] Developing assembly

[2] Drum cleaner motor unit

2) If the problem is not eliminated after performing the foregoing procedure, replace the photosensitive drum cleaner drive gear [3].



F-16-14

- [1] Developing assembly
 - [2] Drum cleaner motor unit
- Image sample**



F-16-15

16.3.1.2.4 2mm Pitch Spots

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

0016-7184

Symptom

When starting a print job just after power-ON or long-term storage, 2mm banding image may occur.

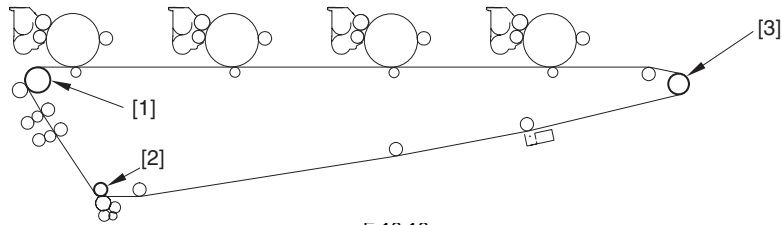
This symptom disappears after approximately 30 copies are made. However, if no measures are taken, this symptom again occurs at the timing mentioned above (when the power is turned on or printing is performed after recovery from the condition in which the machine was stored for a long time).

Cause

If the ITB drive roller is chipped off, chips are attached to the scraper on the side of ITB drive roller. This causes uneven ITB rotation, resulting in 2mm banding image. This symptom is prone to occur in the latter service life.

Measures in the field

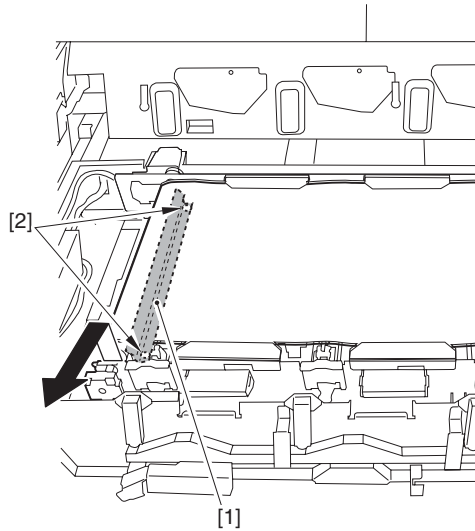
After removing the ITB drive roller cleaning scraper [2] on the side of the ITB drive roller [1], clean the ITB drive roller [1]. The removed ITB drive roller cleaning scraper should not be reattached.



F-16-16

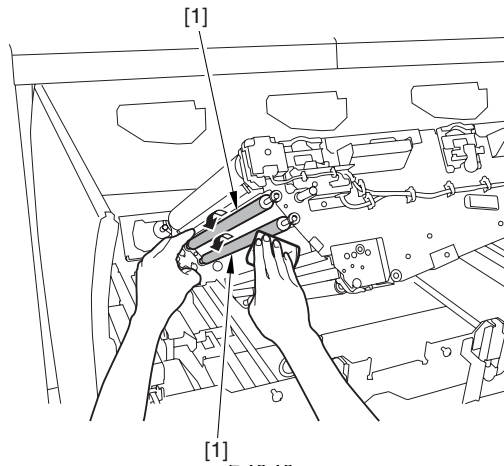
- [1] ITB drive roller
- [2] Secondary transfer inner roller
- [3] Tension roller

- 1) Remove the ITB (see the steps in "Removing Intermediate Transfer Belt").
- 2) Lift up the ITB from the back to remove the ITB drive roller cleaning scraper [1].
 - 1 screw [2]



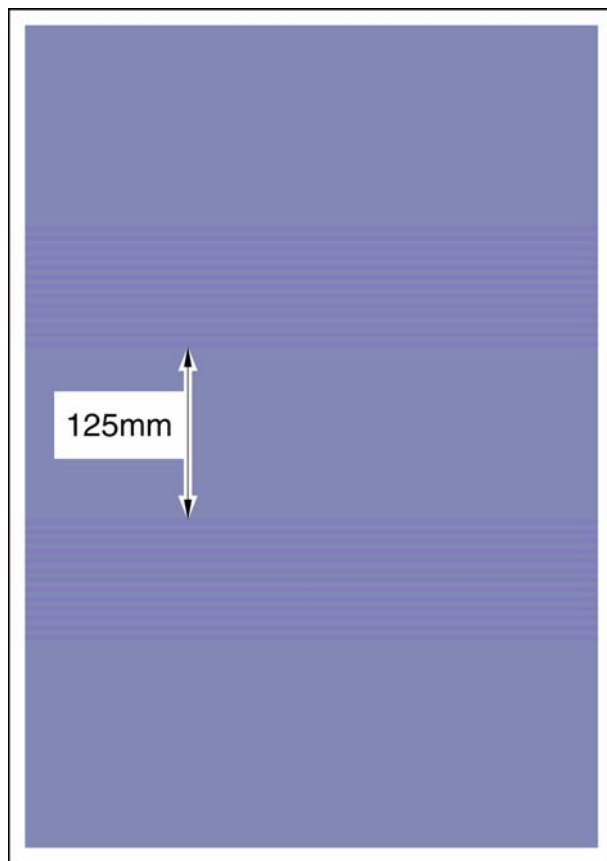
F-16-17

- 3) Rotate the ITB drive roller [1] by hand to clean the roller circumference with lint-free paper impregnated with alcohol.



F-16-18

- 4) Reattach the removed parts except the ITB drive roller cleaning scraper.
 - 5) Turn on the power.
 - 6) Execute the mandatory warm-up rotation mode (COPIER>FUNCTION>MISC-P>INTR-EX; Level 2).
 - 7) Execute the automatic color displacement correction control (COPIER>FUNCTION>MISC-P>AT-IMG-X).
- Image sample**



F-16-19

16.3.1.2.5 Uneven fogged image/strip at the rear

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

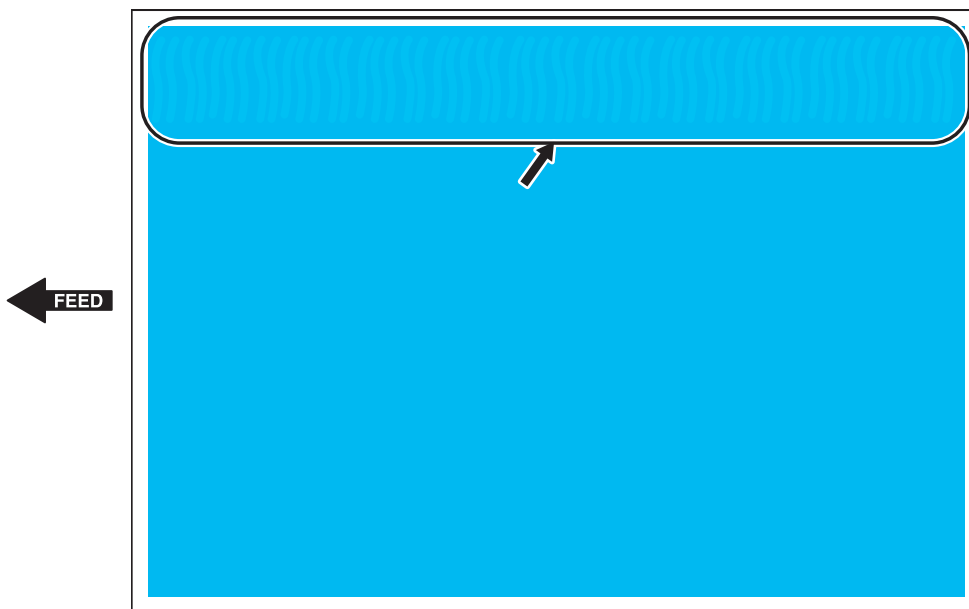
0017-6908

Description:

A measure against faulty image, 'uneven fogged image/strip at the rear of image' is described below.

<Symptom>

A faulty image, 'uneven fogged image/strip' occurs as shown below.



F-16-20

<Cause>

A faulty image, 'uneven fogged image/strip at the rear of image' may occur depending on the polarity cycle of the 2 cylinders (upper/lower) in the developing assembly and also on the state of developer at the time of installation.

<Factory remedy>

Adjust the polarity cycle by shifting the electrode positioning plate to the optimal position using a special jig.

Service Remedy:

Secure the electrode positioning plates by pushing and turning them clockwise to put them at the ideal positions to avoid faulty image (uneven fogged image/strip at the rear of image) (See the following for procedure).

Take note of the following points when making adjustment of position (polarity cycle) of electrode positioning plates.

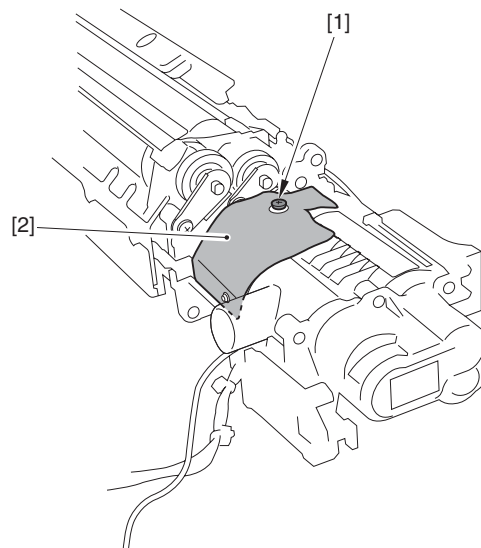
T-16-2

⚠ Points to Note When Adjusting the Position (Polarity Cycle) of the Electrode Positioning Plate

- Only the developing assembly that made a faulty image (uneven fogged image/strip at the rear of image) should be adjusted. Another type of failure may occur when making adjustment of the other developing assemblies that do not have this symptom.
- At the early phase after adjusting the position of the electrode positioning plate, the faulty image (uneven fogged image/strip at the rear of image) may still occur because the developer in the developing assembly is not stirred enough. At such cases, however, the incidence of faulty image (uneven fogged image/strip at the rear of image) is gradually reduced.

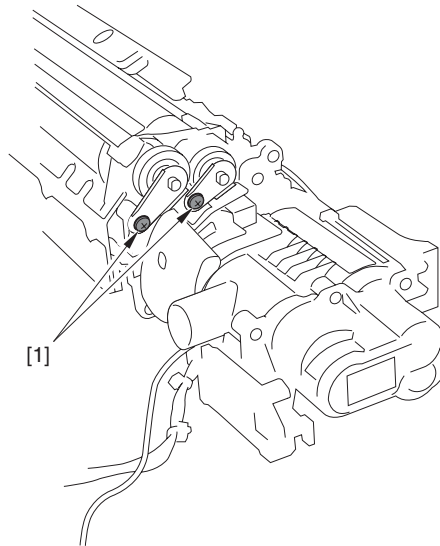
<Procedure>

- 1) Remove the developing assembly (refer to Service Manual)
- 2) Remove the screw [1] and protection seal [2].



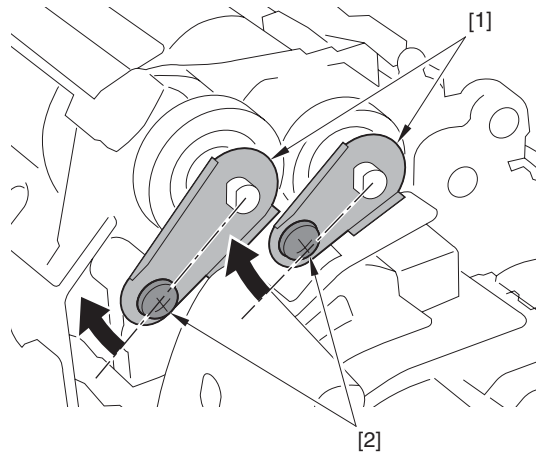
F-16-21

- 3) Loosen the 2 screws [1].



F-16-22

4) Secure the electrode positioning plates [1] with the 2 screws [2] while pushing them clockwise (Despite the slight change, the electrode positioning plates indeed move)



F-16-23

16.3.1.3 Partially Blank/Streaked

16.3.1.3.1 White spots appear at 68mm intervals: Secondary transfer internal roller is soiled

0017-9791

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

[Case in the field]

Description

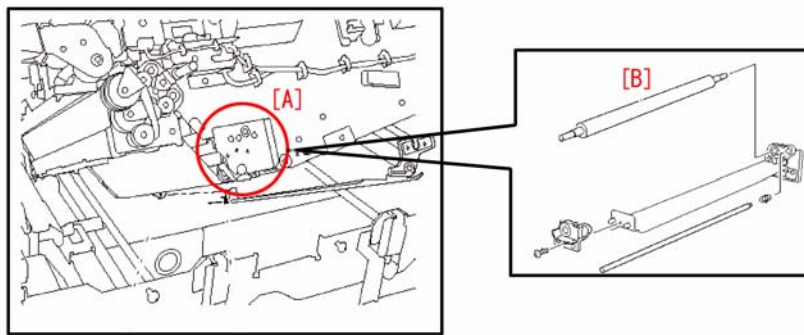
Because of a soiling on the secondary transfer internal roller, white spots appeared at 68mm intervals. When the same symptom occurs, perform the following field remedy.

Cause

A metal powder soiling existed on the surface of the secondary transfer internal roller.

Field Remedy

1. Taking care not to cause damage to the ITB belt, detach the secondary transfer internal roller unit [A], and then clean the secondary transfer internal roller [B] with lint-free paper moistened with alcohol.



F-16-24

2. Return the detached secondary transfer internal roller unit, and then make copies to check output images.
FC5-9252 Transfer Roller2

16.3.1.3.2 Light/uneven image due to faulty toner coat

0017-7634

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

Field Remedy

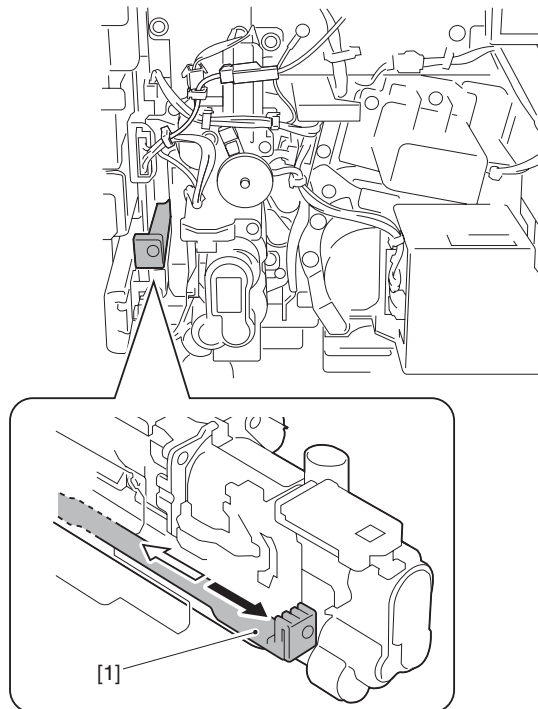
Do the following work for the developing assembly that has the symptom.

Remedy 1: Remove and attach the developing assembly for removing the compact cluster of toner accumulating on the developing cylinder-blade area due to the impact of the developing assembly to be removed and attached.

- 1) Shift the lever [1] of the developing assembly in the direction of the arrow (to the front/rear) to remove/attach the developing assembly. Repeat the removing/attaching operation for 5 to 10 times.

MEMO:

You do not need to remove the developing assembly or disconnect the connector of the developing assembly.



F-16-25

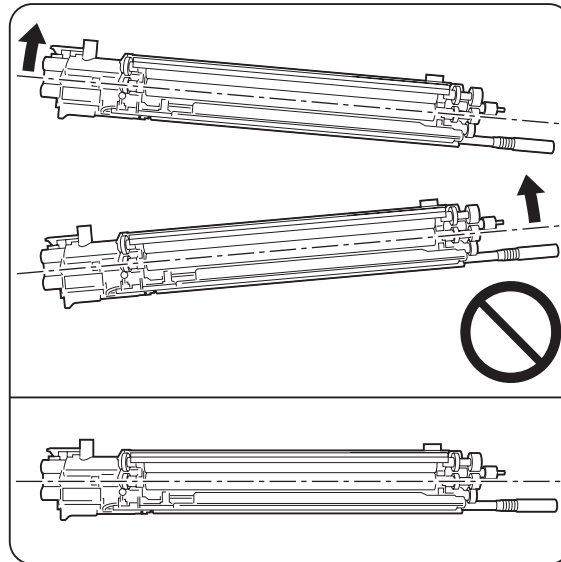
- 2) Make prints for approximately 10 sheets to check whether the symptom is solved. If not, execute remedy 2.

MEMO:

The compact cluster of toner may appear on the image as a soil right after executing remedy 1, however, making a couple sheets of prints will solve this symptom.

Remedy 2: Do the following work to remove the compact cluster of toner accumulating on the developing cylinder-blade area.

⚠ Point to Note When Handling the Developing Assembly
Do not overly tilt the developing assembly.



properly and may cause overflow of the developer during the operation after the developing assembly is attached to the host machine.

⚠ Point to Note When Handling the Developing Assembly
Do not overly tilt the developing assembly.

properly and may cause overflow of the developer during the operation after the developing assembly is attached to the host machine.

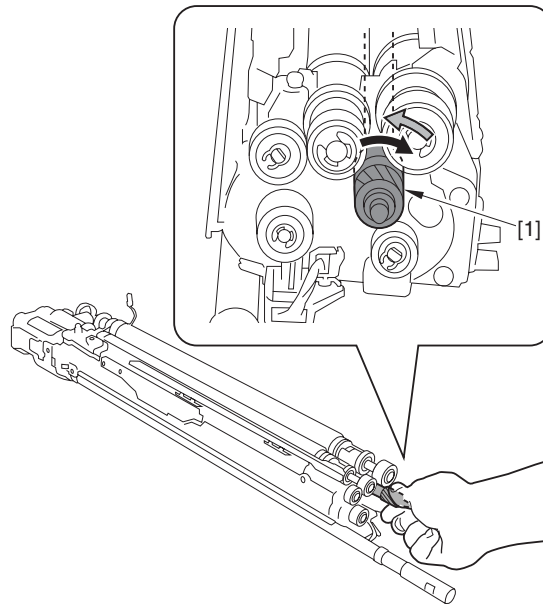
⚠ Point to Note When Handling the Developing Assembly

Do not overly tilt the developing assembly.

properly and may cause overflow of the developer during the operation after the developing assembly is attached to the host machine.

- 1) After removing the developing assembly, place the developing cylinder facing upward.
- 2) By turning the developing cylinder swiftly and fast, the compact cluster of toner accumulating on the developing cylinder-blade area is removed.

After turning the developing cylinder gear [1] clockwise for $1/8 + a$ -round, immediately turn it counterclockwise for $1/8$ -round. Repeat this procedure until the gear is making a clockwise turn (1-round) in total. In other words, the $+ a$ margins will make a full clockwise turn of the developing cylinder gear.



F-16-26

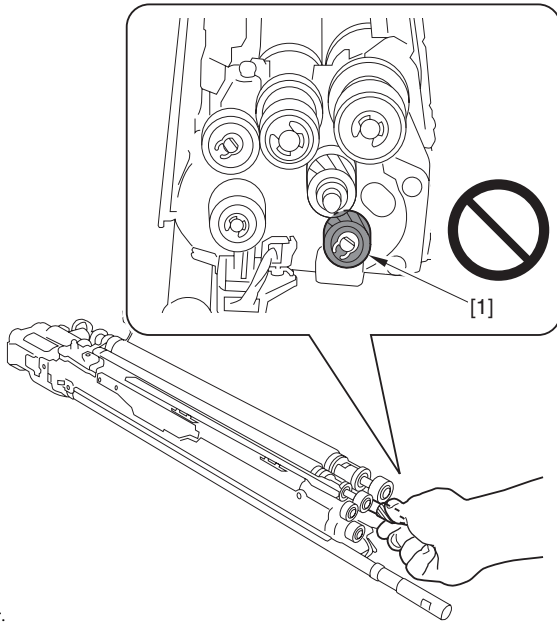


-The compact cluster of toner cannot be removed if turning the developing cylinder gear slowly. Try to turn the developing cylinder gear swiftly and fast as much as possible.

-Do not turn the developing cylinder gear more than 1 round. If turning the developing cylinder gear excessively, toner may be spilled out. In case of toner overflow, execute cleaning.



Do not turn the screw gear [1]. If wrongly turning the gear, stop the operation once, and attach the developing assembly to the host machine, and then turn ON the



power.

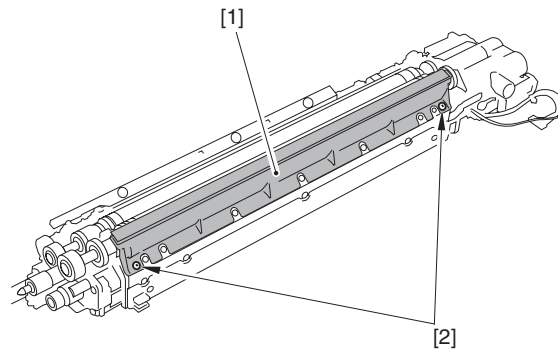
The developing assembly of this machine uses a vertical stirring method, thus the developer circulates in vertical direction. If manually turning the screw gear, the developer fails to circulate properly and it causes clogging of the developer due to lack of speed for turning the screw. The developer circulates properly if the developing assembly is attached to the host machine and the motor drives the screw at adequate speed. If keeping the developer manually turned until the gear is wrongly locked, there is no way to recover but replace the developer.

3) Detach the developing cylinder upper cover [1].

-2 screws [2]



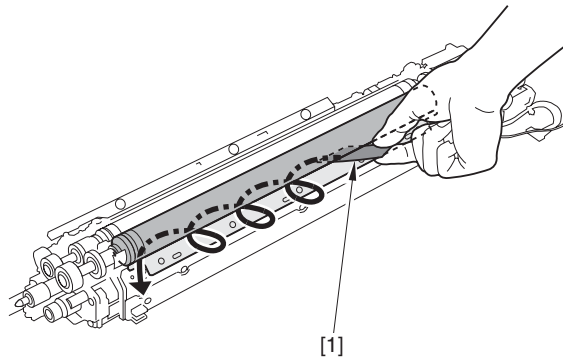
Do not remove the screws other than the screws [2] described above. Otherwise, the gap amount between the developing cylinder and the blade is changed, causing developing failure.



F-16-27

4) Insert a transparency sheet [1] (use the one with 300 micro m thickness or less) between the developing cylinder and the blade, and move the transparency sheet as shown in the figure to break down the compact cluster of toner.

After making 3-roundtrip along the developing cylinder shaft, repeat the operation to break down the compact cluster of toner.



F-16-28

5) After making 3-roundtrip along the developing cylinder shaft, repeat the operation to break down the compact cluster of toner.

MEMO:
Make prints for approximately 10 sheets to check whether the symptom is solved.

16.3.1.4 Smudged/Streaked

16.3.1.4.1 2mm-wide banding appears at 125 mm intervals at 1st job in morning after leaving this machine for longtime

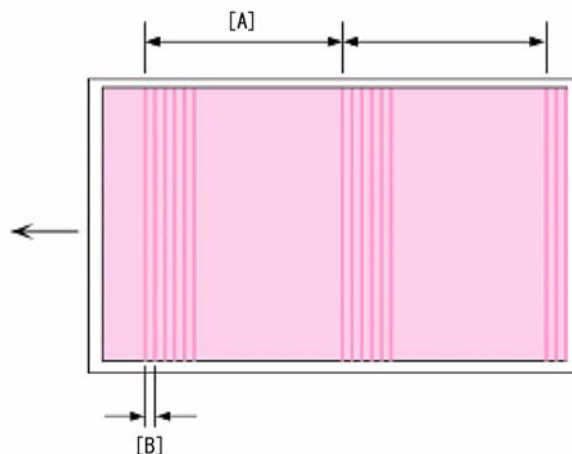
0017-8603

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

[Inspected by Canon Inc.]

Description

There were cases where 2mm-wide [B] banding appeared at 125mm intervals (drive roller intervals) [A].

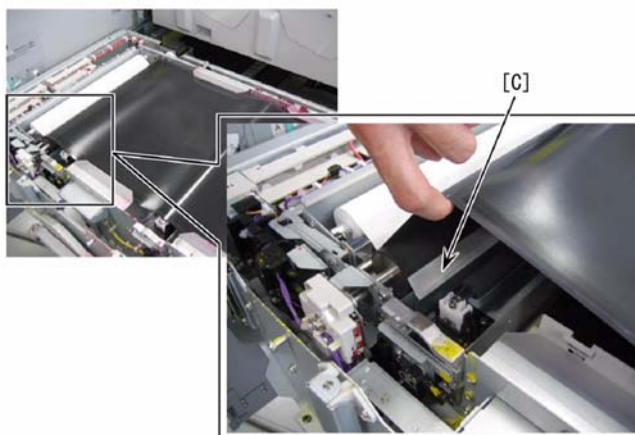


F-16-29

Cause

The roller cleaning scraper scraped off the abutment surface on the drive roller, and the scrapings adhered to the scraper, causing the roller to vibrate. To prevent this, the roller cleaning scraper assembly (FL2-2404) was eliminated from the machine with one of the following serial numbers. (It was confirmed that the machine operates normally without this part.)

- imagePRESS C7000 VP: KTF00010 and later



F-16-30

Field Remedy

When the symptom occurs with a machine having a serial number earlier than the above, refer to the attached "Removing Procedure of Roller Cleaning Scraper Ass'y" and remove the roller cleaning scraper assembly from the machine.

16.3.1.4.2 When using coated paper, shiny lines (1mm to 1.5mm-wide) appear in main scanning direction at fixing roller intervals

0018-7652

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

[Case in the field]

Description

Shiny lines (1mm to 1.5mm wide) appeared in the main scanning direction at the fixing roller intervals.

Cause

Soiling on the refresh roller transferred to the fixing roller surface, causing shiny lines on the output images. To deal with this, the DC controller software was updated to Ver. 6.04: specifically, for the purpose of preventing soiling on the refresh roller from transferring to the fixing roller, the refresh roller control sequence was so modified that it will contacts the fixing roller while the fixing roller is rotating, instead of waiting stop of its rotation.

Field Remedy

1. If the version of DC controller software is earlier than Ver. 6.04, update the software to Ver. 6.04 or later.
2. If it's impossible to update the software at once, make the following selections to execute the roller cleaning and make copies again: User mode > Adjustment/Cleaning > Roller Cleaning > Start.
3. If the symptom still occurs, clean the fixing roller with lint-free paper. White soiling may exist on the fixing roller surface.

16.3.1.4.3 Glossy Lines

0016-7249

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

Symptom

When printing on A3 or LDR paper after continuous printing on A4R or LTRR paper, glossy lines may appear on sides of A4R or LTRR paper.

Cause

The major causes are the abraded fixing or refresh roller or clogged refresh roller.

In continuous printing over hundreds pages, paper edges leave fine lines on the fixing roller surface.

This machine automatically refreshes the fixing roller at an arbitrary timing to erase such lines on the roller. However, lines cannot be erased by refresh operation if the fixing or refresh roller is abraded or the refresh roller is clogged. This will decrease the image gloss on the parts corresponding to lines on the roller.

Measures in the field

- 1) Clean the refresh roller and the refresh cleaning roller. Use lint-free paper impregnated with alcohol for cleaning.
- 2) If no improvement is seen, execute the fixing roller refresh in service mode. Enter service mode from any of the following paths:
 - COPIER>FUNCTION>MISC-P>FX1-CL-E (for refreshing the primary fixing roller)
 - COPIER>FUNCTION>MISC-P>FX2-CL-E (for refreshing the secondary fixing roller)
 - COPIER>FUNCTION>MISC-P>FXD-CL-E (for refreshing the primary/secondary fixing roller)

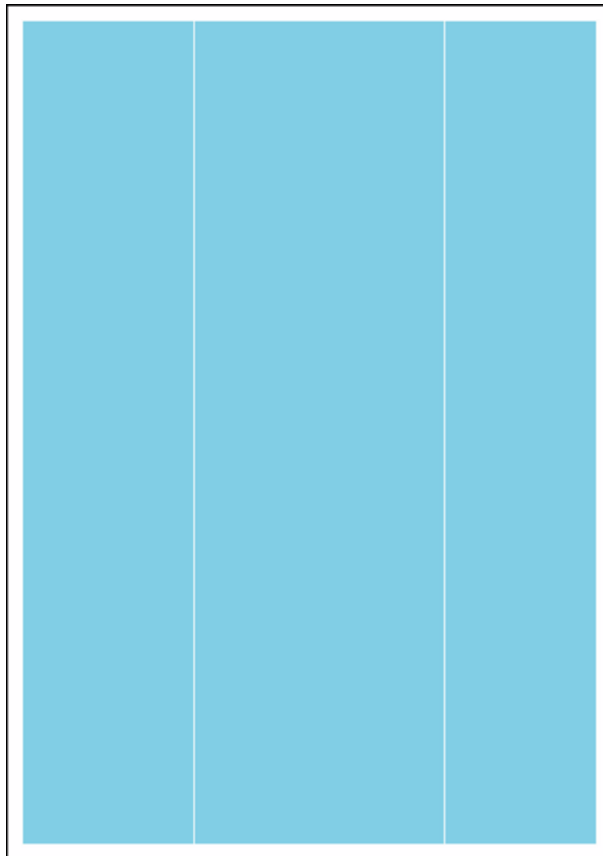


Frequent refresh operation will shorten life of the fixing and refresh rollers.

- 3) If the symptom reoccurs even after executing the steps above, replace the refresh roller. If no improvement is seen, replace the fixing roller.



In service mode the interval of the fixing roller auto-refresh can be shortened. This is effective to prevent this symptom, however, will shorten life of the fixing and refresh rollers.

Image sample

F-16-31

16.3.1.4.4 Trace of bypass decurler belt

0016-7277

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

Symptom

On the first side in continuous 2-sided printing, mark from the bypass decurler belt (uneven gloss) may appear.

Cause

In continuous printing of larger toner deposit images (solid images, etc.), excessive wax may remain on the image surface after the fixing process. In case of 2-sided

printing in the single fixing path, wax on the first side image is grazed by the bypass decurler belt after passing the primary fixing assembly twice and the gloss on the grazed parts is increased.

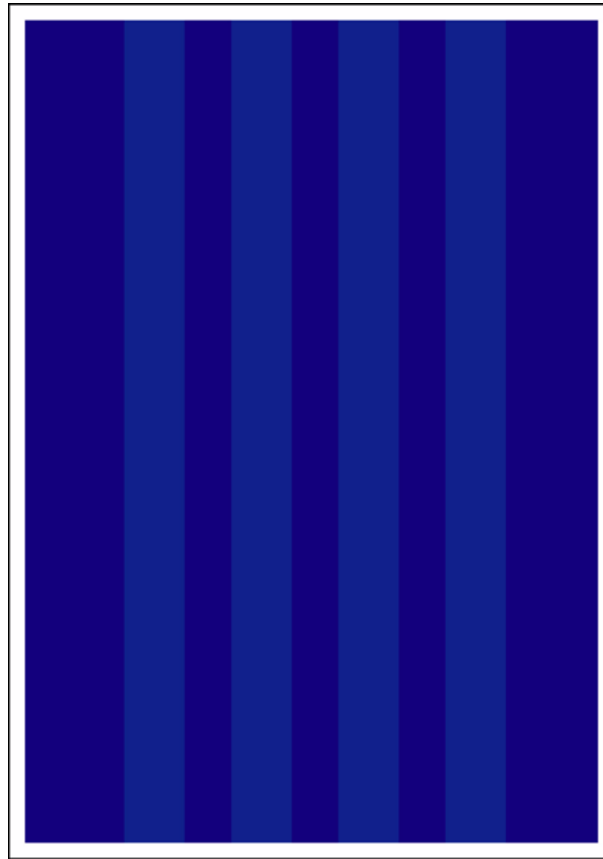
Measures in the field

Switch to the tandem fixing path in additional functions mode.

System Settings > Paper Type Management Settings > Gloss Adjustment

Enter +1 or +2 in the setting.

Image sample



F-16-32

16.3.1.4.5 Dirt of pin hole (ring mark)

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

0016-7252

Symptom

There is a possibility that dirt is attached to the pin hole caused by a fine foreign material that entered in the developing assembly.

Cause

On rare occasions, a fine foreign material enters into the developing assembly.

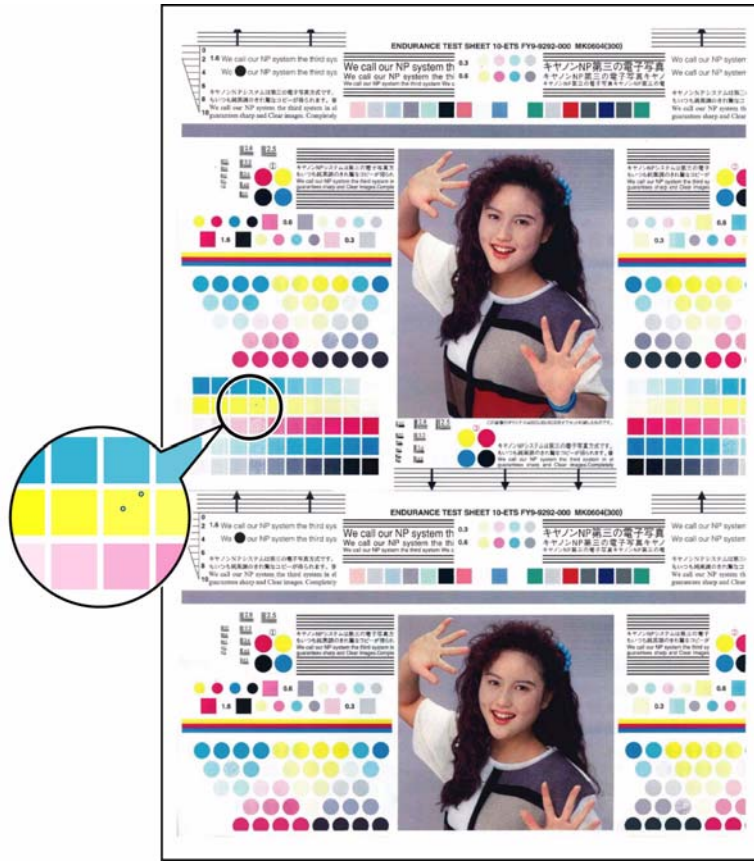
Since this material has low resistance, leakage occurs between the drum and sleeve.

As a result, dirt of the pin hole is printed in an image output.

Measures in the field

Replace the developer. If no improvement is seen, replace the developing assembly.

Image sample



F-16-33

16.3.1.4.6 Trace of delivery reversing roller

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

0016-7278

Symptom

On the first side in continuous 2-sided printing, mark from the delivery reverse roller (uneven gloss) may appear.

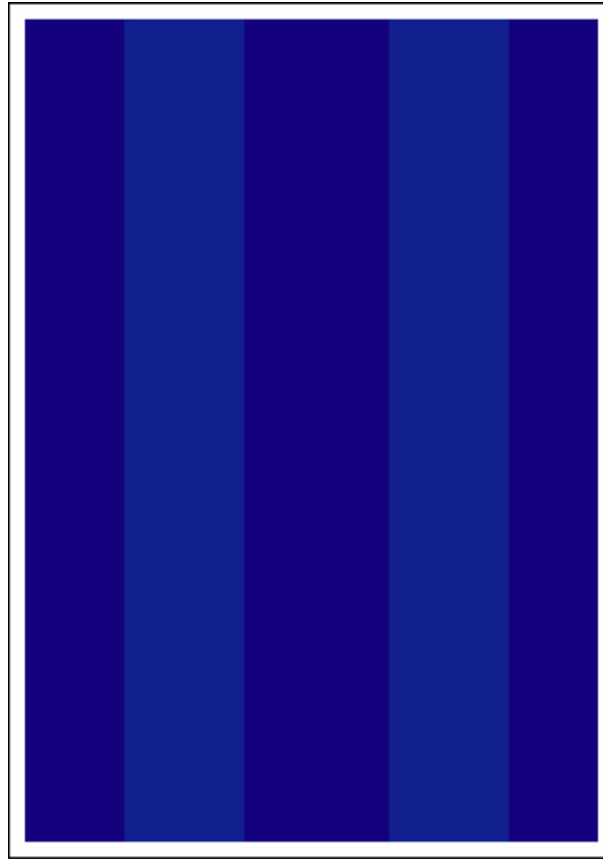
Cause

In continuous printing of larger toner deposit images (solid images, etc.), excessive wax may remain on the image surface after the fixing process. Wax on the image surface is grazed by the delivery reverse roller and the gloss on the grazed parts is increased.

Measures in the field

Change the feed method to straight feed (face-up feed) using the user mode.

Image sample



F-16-34

16.3.1.4.7 Image front edge foggy image (When using the 13X19 inch paper)

0016-7965

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

Symptom

A foggy image (black dots) may occur at the margin on the front side of the 13X19 inch paper.

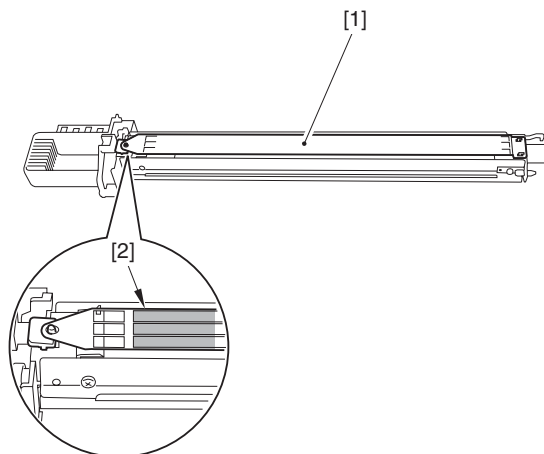
Cause

The toner attaches to the front side of the primary grid plate.

It may occur due to the installation environment, the image density ratio and deteriorated primary grid plates, etc.

Measures in the field

- 1) Detach the primary charging assembly.
- 2) Detach the primary grid plate.
- 3) Clean the both sides of the front side (only the area 3 to 4 cm [2] from the grid opening end) of the primary grid plate [1] alongside its pattern direction with a lint-free paper lightly.



F-16-35



- Be sure not to apply too much force.
- Be sure to clean it with a dry material and not use water and alcohol.
- Be sure not to perform cleaning even with a dry material for the area other than the above [2].

- 4) Check to see that there is no dust and fiber attached on the cleaned area, and attach the primary grid plate to the primary charging assembly.

- 5) Attach the primary charging assembly.
- 6) Execute cleaning the primary charging wire. (COPIER> FUNCTION> CLEANING> WIRE-EX)

16.3.1.4.8 Soiled image due to toner drop from developing assembly

0016-9826

imagePRESS C7000VP

Symptom

In case of continuous print of high-density image at early stage after installation, soil may appear on the following print images.

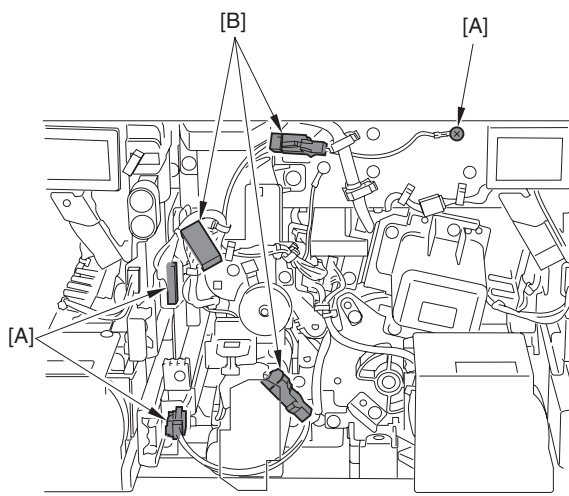
Cause

Toner blocking sheet (urethane sheet) is attached on the developer cylinder upper cover to prevent toner from scattering inside the machine at the time of development. In case of continuous print of high-density image (80% or more image ratio) at early stage after installation, large amount of toner scattered at the time of development is accumulated inside the toner blocking sheet of developing assembly. The accumulated toner cannot hold itself but drops on the drum, causing the image soiled.

MEMO:

Charging amount of developer at initial stage after installation tends to be big. Especially this symptom appears in developer of Cyan color compared to developers of other colors. Once the charging amount of developer increased, the T/D ratio gets high inside the developing assembly. In case of continuous print of high-density images (such as 2-sided print of solid image), the T/D ratio gets higher furthermore. The higher the T/D ratio inside the developing assembly, the more the scattered toner increased at the time of development. This symptom tends to appear with developer of Cyan color compared to developers of other colors, so cleaning frequency is expected to be higher.

High frequency in connecting/disconnecting of developing assembly's connector may exceed connect/disconnect life of connector, thus relay harness is connected with Cyan developing assembly. As shown in the figure below, disconnect [A] side connector when replacing the developing assembly, and disconnect [B] side connector when removing the developing assembly other than replacement (such as cleaning). See Parts Replacement Procedure in this document for details. The developing assembly is the same for Cyan and Black (so the relay harness is connected for Black developing assembly as well). There is no relay harness connected to developing assembly for Yellow and Magenta.

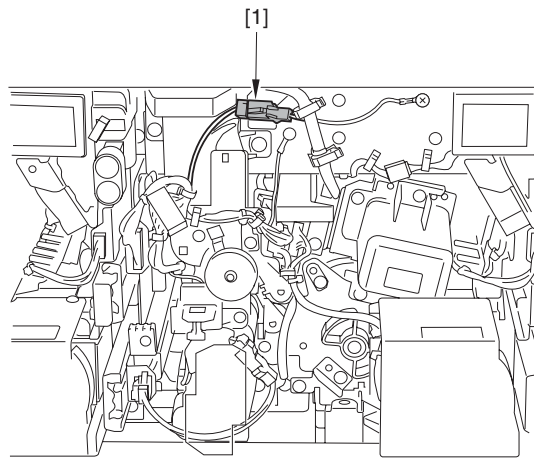


F-16-36

Measures in the field

Execute cleaning of developing assembly

- 1) Disconnect the connector [1].

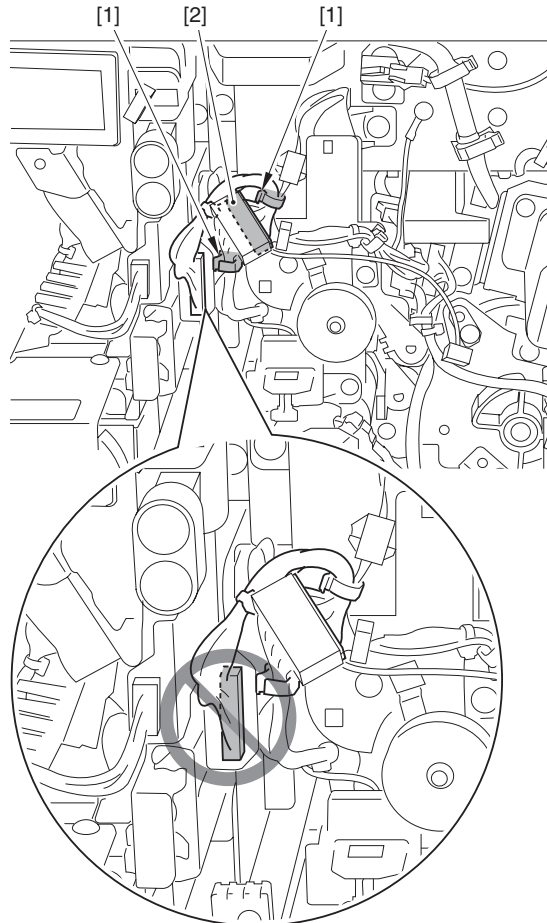


F-16-37

2) Open the 2 clamps [1] and disconnect the connector [2].



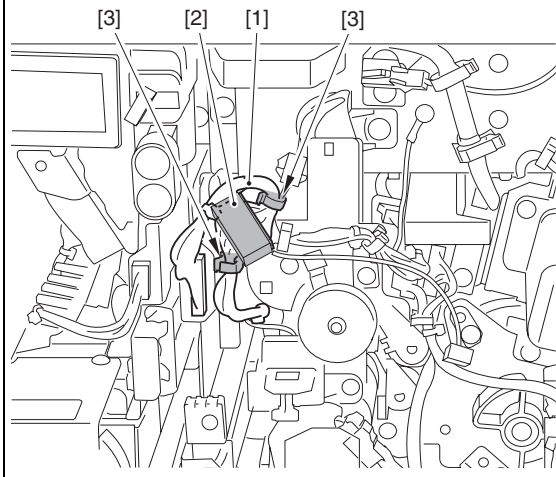
Do not disconnect the connector with the prohibition mark other than the time of developing assembly replacement.




F-16-38

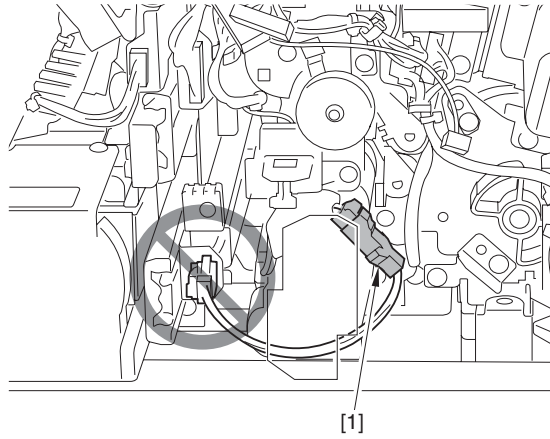


Point to note when connecting the relay harness
When fixing the relay harness [1], place the relay connector [2] between clamps [3].

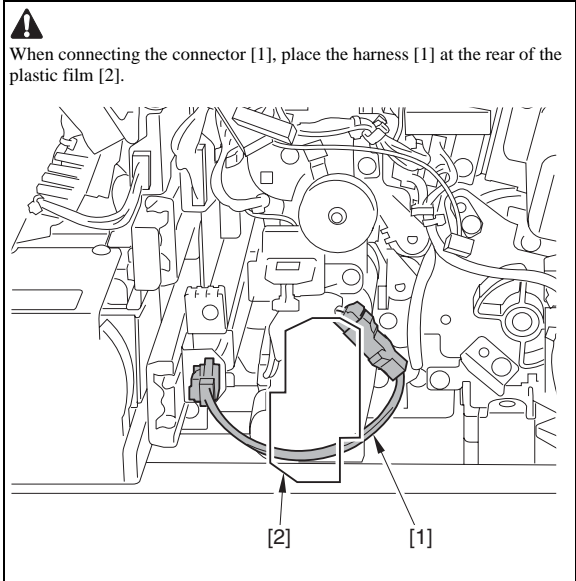


3) Disconnect the connector [1].

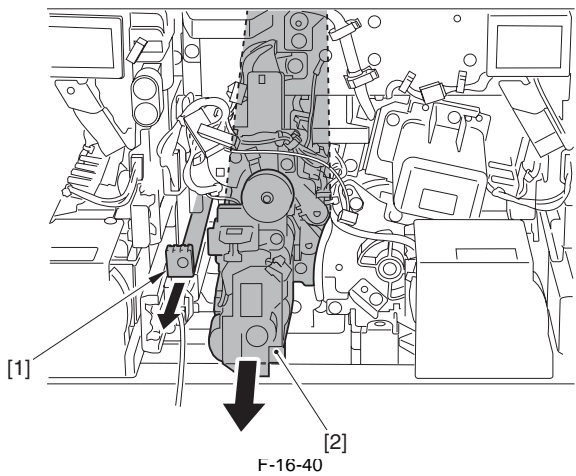
 Do not disconnect the connector with the prohibition mark other than the time of developing assembly replacement.



F-16-39



4) Pull the pressure release lever [1] until it locks and remove the developing assembly [2] forward.

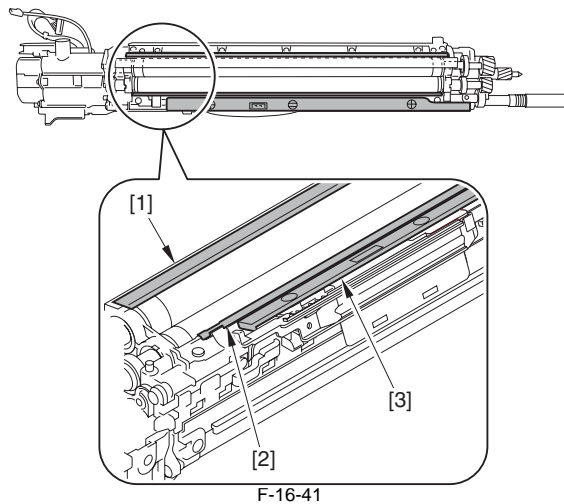


F-16-40

⚠ Points to note when applying the developing assembly pressure
While placing the developing assembly touched to the rear side of the host machine, push the developing assembly release lever.

5) Clean the following points with a cleaning tool.

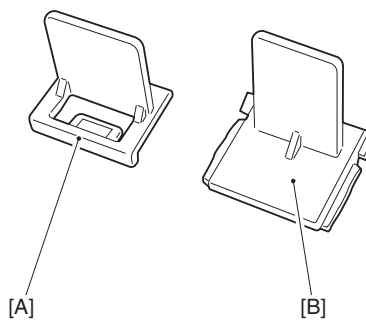
⚠ Do not touch the surface of the developing cylinder with your fingers when cleaning.



F-16-41

- [1] Back of toner blocking sheet
- [2] Front of developing cylinder lower cover
- [3] Front of drum patch sensor shutter

Tools



F-16-42

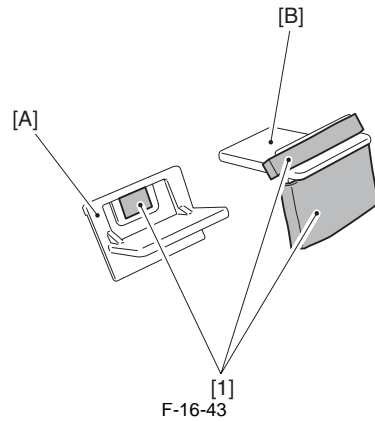
- Cleaning tool (for cleaning the toner blocking sheet) [A]
- Cleaning tool (for cleaning the developing cylinder lower cover/drum patch sensor shutter) [B]

MEMO:
The cooling tools are packaged with the machine.

⚠ Be sure to use these cooling tools for the C-color developing assembly only. If used for cleaning the developing assembly of another color, it may cause mixed color, leading to issue occurrence.

Check/actions before cleaning

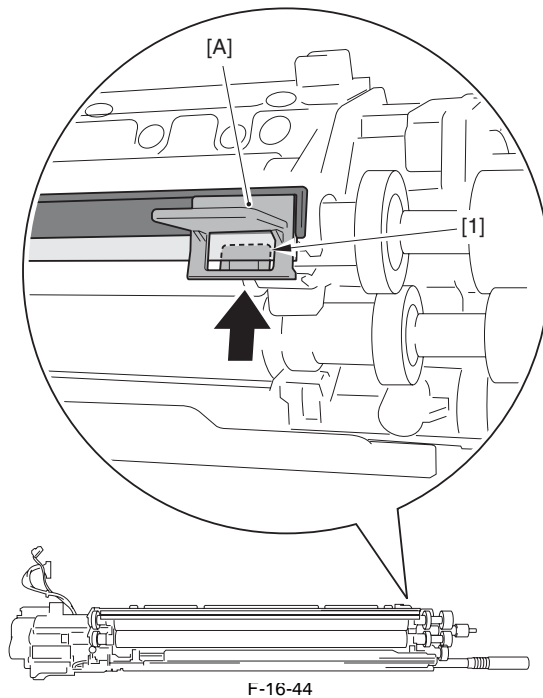
Check to see that there is no toner attached on the sponges [1] of the cleaning tool [A]/[B]. If the toner resides, clean it with a blower brush.



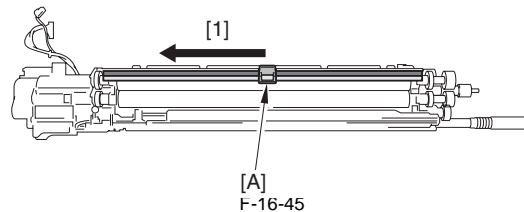
How to clean

- Back of the toner blocking sheet

- 1) Place the cleaning tool [A] as shown in the following figure. Be sure to place it so that the protrusion [1] of the cleaning tool [A] is beneath the toner blocking sheet [2].

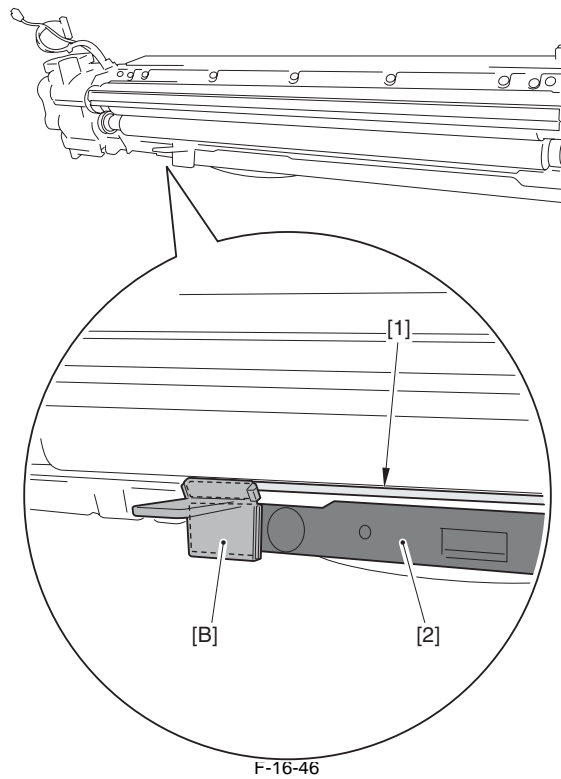


- 2) Slide the cooling tool [A] along the surface of the developing cylinder upper cover in the direction of the arrow [1]. Perform this operation twice.



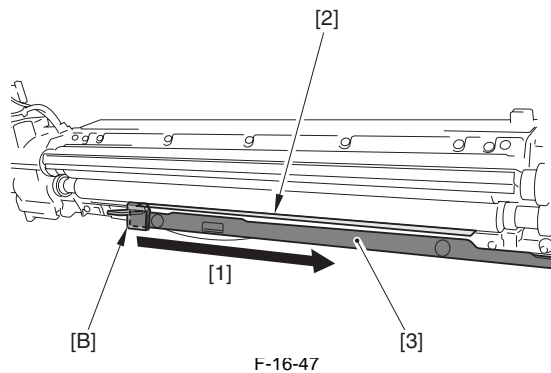
- Front of the developing cylinder lower cover/drum patch sensor shutter

- 1) Place the cooling tool [B] as shown in the following figure.



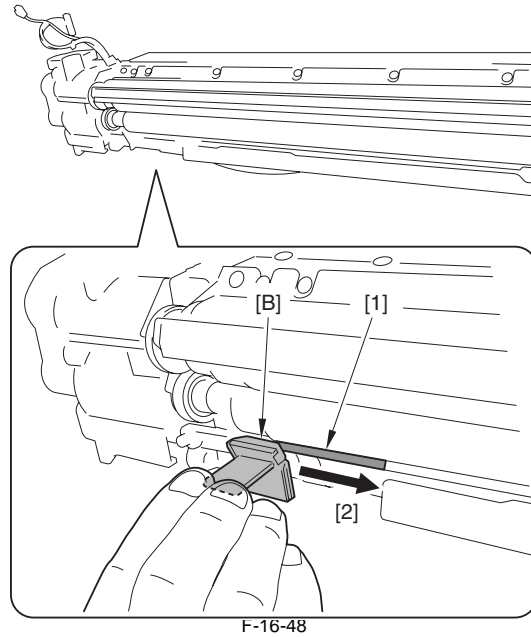
- [1] Developing cylinder lower cover
 [2] Drum patch sensor shutter

2) Slide the cooling tool [B] in the direction of the arrow [1]. Perform this operation twice.



⚠ Notes for cleaning direction
 Do not move the cooling tool [B] in the opposite direction to that shown as the arrow in the figure. (Do not move left and right.)
 If slid in the opposite way, the cooling tool hits against the drum patch sensor shutter, causing the shutter to be opened. The return force of the spring attached to the shutter moves the shutter to its closing position, where the impact due to this movement may cause the toner accumulated on the shutter surface to splash around.

3) Clean the remaining point [1] of the surface of the developing cylinder lower cover. Place the cooling tool [B] as shown in the figure, and then slide it in the direction of the arrow [2]. Perform this operation twice.



F-16-48

Expected status of completed cleaning

It should be deemed as completed cleaning that accumulated toner lump has been removed. It is not necessary to perform cleaning so that the toner disappears completely. (Thin toner layer attached causes no actual issue.)

16.3.1.4.9 Wax mark in tandem feeding

0017-9132

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

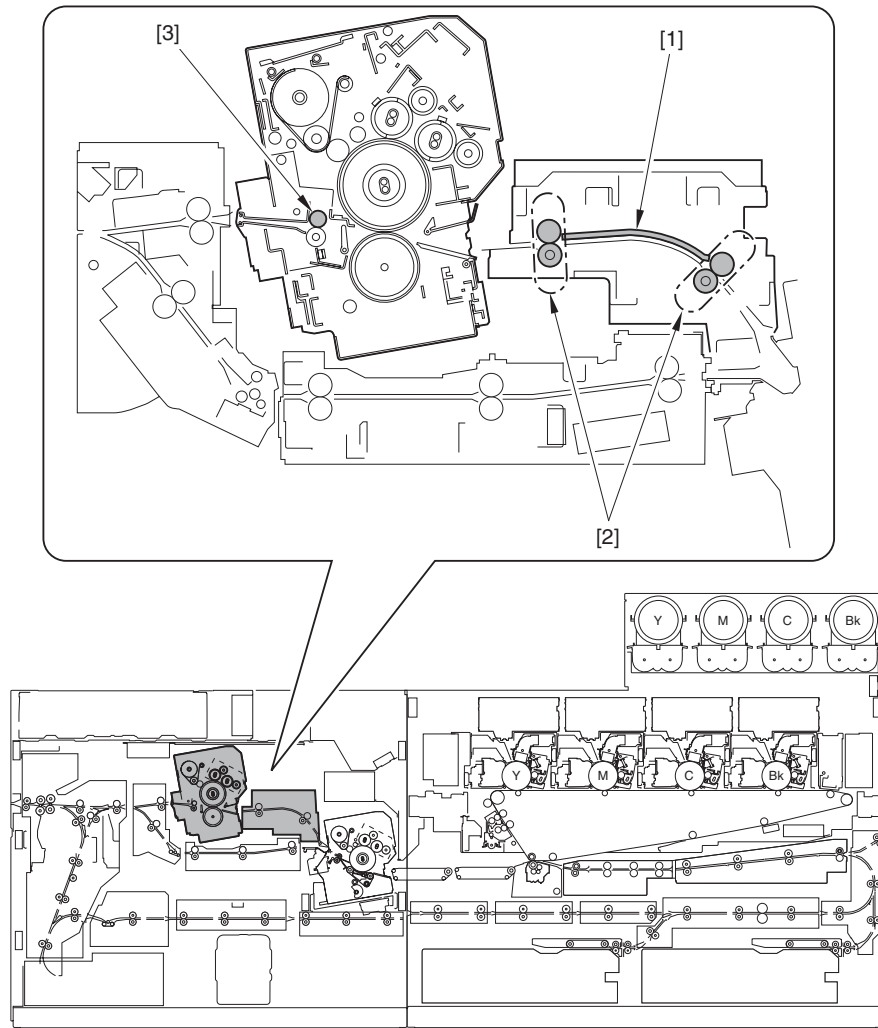
Symptom

Wax separated out from the toner may attach to the tandem assembly guide and roller, causing marks shaped like raindrops in the image.

Measures in the field

Clean the roller and the guide of the tandem feed assembly.

1. Cleaning points



F-16-49

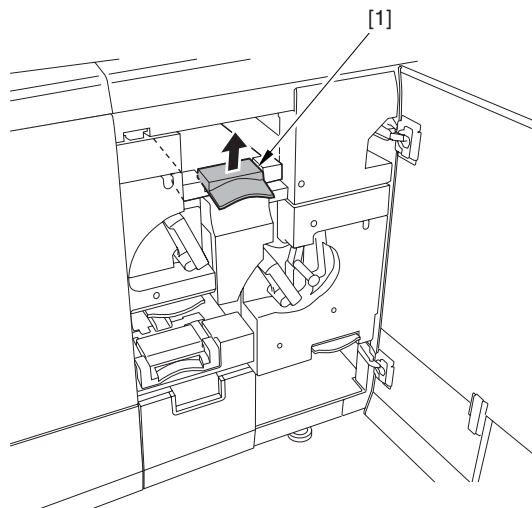
- Tandem guide [1]
- Tandem feed roller [2]
- Internal delivery roller [3]

2. Cleaning method

Alcohol solution + lint-free paper

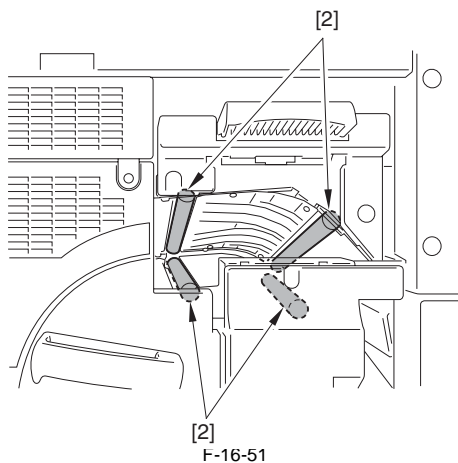
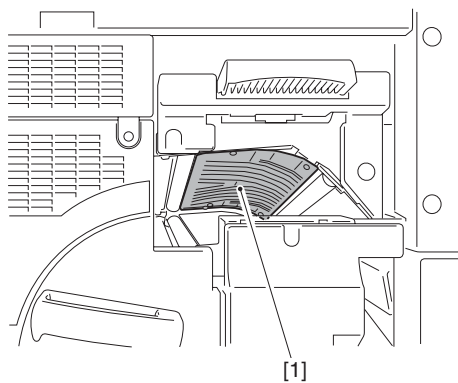
3. How to access each part

- 1) Open the front cover of the sub station.
- 2) Raise the lever (C-A1) [1] and open the C-A1 guide.



F-16-50

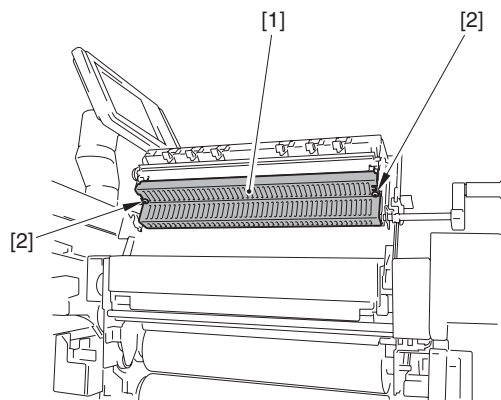
3) Clean the tandem guide [1] and the tandem feed roller [2].



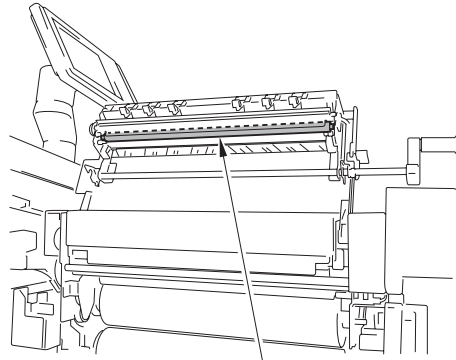
F-16-51

4) After pulling out the secondary fixing assembly, open the internal delivery unit.

5) Detach the guide cover [1].
- 2 screws [2]

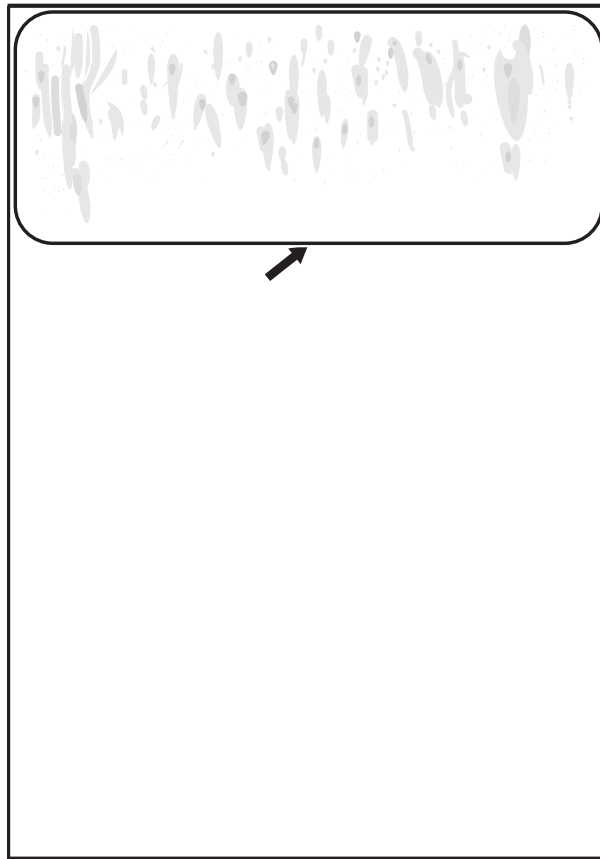


6) Clean the internal delivery roller [1].



[1]
F-16-52

Image sample



FEED
↓
F-16-53

16.3.2 Malfunction

16.3.2.1 Malfunction/Faulty Detection

16.3.2.1.1 Error indication "NG!" appears when executing developer supply mode (SPLY/STIR) during installation

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

0018-1059

[Manual-related]

Description

During installation of a machine with the DC controller software of version earlier than Ver.5.02, the developer was supplied in service mode > COPIER > Function > INSTALL > SUPLY-H-Y (M/C/K). When the STOP key was pressed during this developer supply operation, the machine behaved as if it had completed the operation normally. However, when the operator tried to supply the developer of next color, the error indication "NG!" appeared and the machine failed to start the next operation.

Reference: In the combination use of the DC controller of Ver. 5.02 or later and the system software of Ver. 6.01 or later, even if the STOP key is pressed

during the developer supply mode, the error indication "NG!" does not appear, and the machine can start the next operation.

Field Remedy

When the STOP key is pressed accidentally during the developer supply mode at time of installation of a machine having the DC controller software of version earlier than Ver. 5.02, execute the mode again.

Note: Be sure not to press the STOP key during SPLY or STIR mode. Change of the indication from "ACTIVE" to "OK!" shows the successful completion of the mode.

16.3.2.1.2 E018-0X11 error displayed due to faulty operation of the drum patch sensor shutter

0016-7541

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

Symptom

E018-0X11 error displayed due to faulty operation of the drum patch sensor shutter



X varies according to the developing assembly.

- 1: Y developing assembly
- 2: M developing assembly
- 3: C developing assembly
- 4: Bk developing assembly

Cause

Continuous output of the solid image in the product worn by long-time usage causes accumulation of the toner splashed around the drum patch sensor shutter, which may come into between the shutter lever slider and the guide.

It hinders the operation of the shutter lever, leading to disabled patch detection, thereby the error in drum patch sensor shutter drive motor may occur.

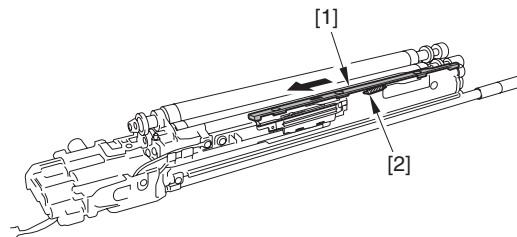
Field remedy

Clean the slider of the patch detection shutter lever and the guide of the machine with a lint-free paper moistened with alcohol.

The details are described below.

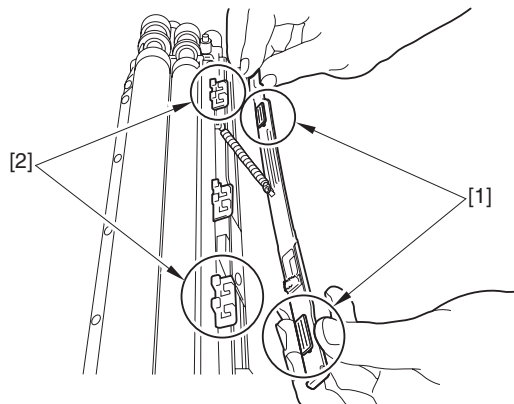
1) Remove the developing assembly.

2) Move the drum patch sensor shutter [1] in the direction of the arrow to free it from the spring [2].



F-16-54

3) As shown in the figure below, clean the slider [1] of the drum patch sensor shutter lever and the guide [2] of the machine with a lint-free paper moistened with alcohol.

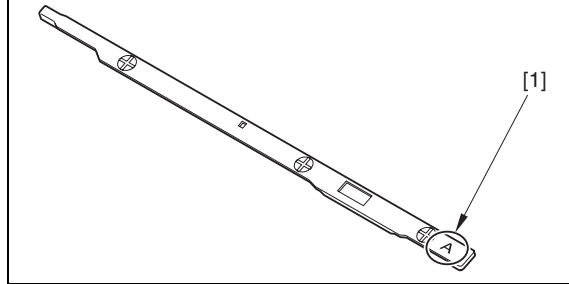


F-16-55

⚠ Points to Note at Attachment

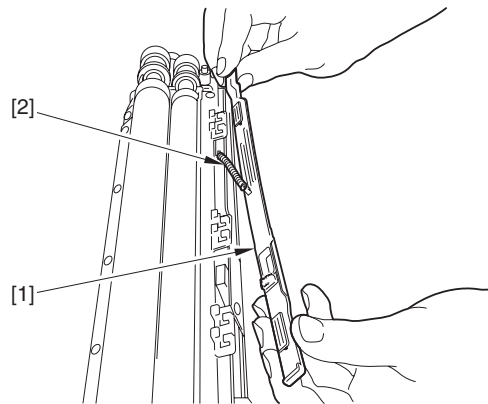
There are drum patch sensor shutters for Y/M and C/K.
 Check the combination of the mark [1] on the drum patch sensor shutter and the color of the developing assembly to attach.
 When the detached drum patch sensor shutter is attached again, do not choose one with a different color.

- Drum patch sensor shutter for Y/M: Mark A
- Drum patch sensor shutter for C/K: Mark B

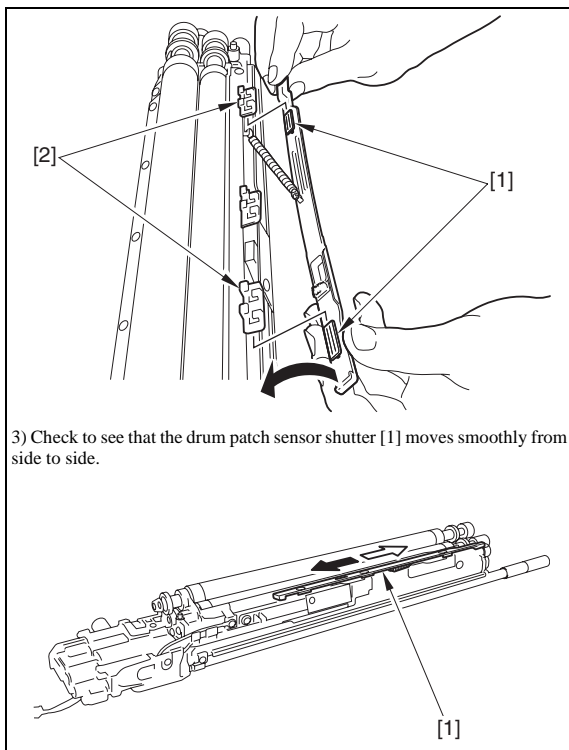


MEMO: How to attach the drum patch sensor shutter

- 1) Put the spring [2] on the drum patch sensor shutter [1].



- 2) Fit the slider [1] to the groove [2], and move it in the direction of the arrow to attach.



16.3.3 Jam (Main Unit)

16.3.3.1 0115 Jam Code: Primary fixing inner delivery sensor lever causes malfunction when A4/LTR-size paper is used

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

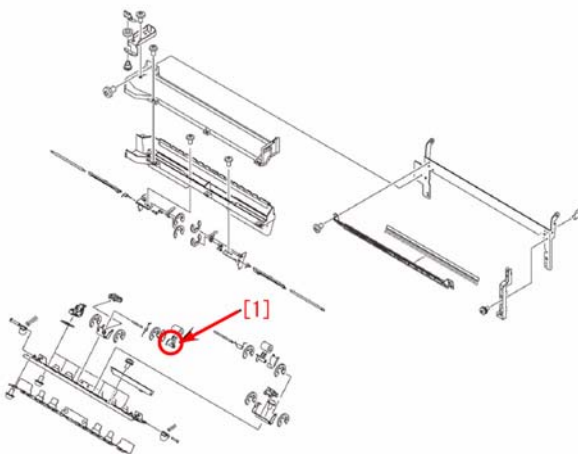
[Inspected by Canon Inc.]

Description

When small-size (A4/LTR-size) paper was being fed continuously, a jam code was indicated (no jam code appeared with large-size paper). On the other hand, when outputting P-PRINT printouts, the first three pages were output normally, but the fourth page stopped at the decurler unit, causing a jam code "0115."
- 0115 Jam Code: Delay jam at the primary fixing inner delivery sensor 1 (PS307).

Cause

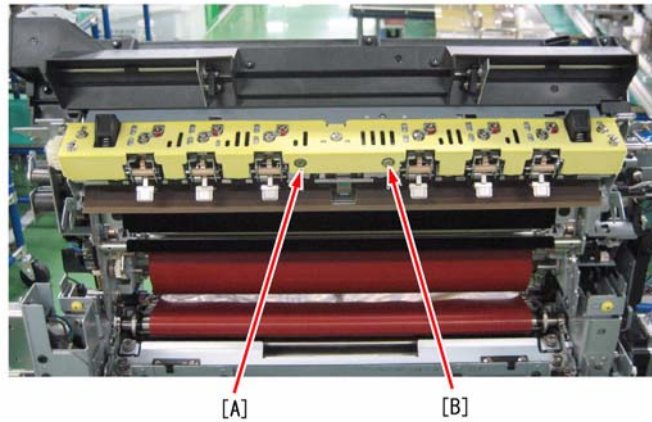
When the trail edge of paper came out of the lever of the primary fixing inner delivery sensor (PS305), the lever bounded. This caused this machine to falsely detect the arrival of the next page, allowing the primary fixing inner delivery sensor 2 (PS307) located after PS305 to detect a delay jam. This symptom is likely to occur with small-size paper having shorter paper intervals than large-size.



F-16-56

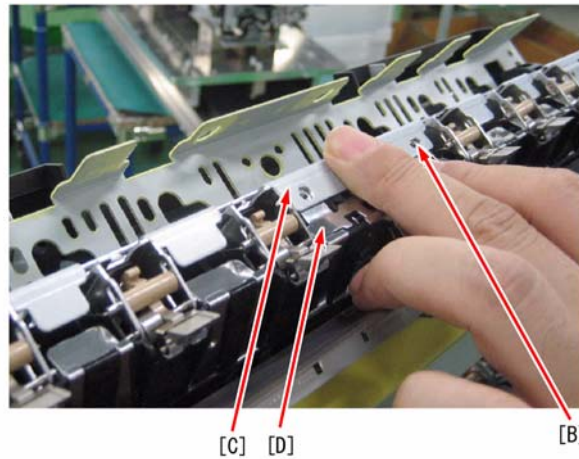
Field Remedy

When the aforementioned symptom occurs, check the type of screws used at [A] and [B]; if a stepped screw is used for [A] and a double sems screw for [B], perform the following procedure.



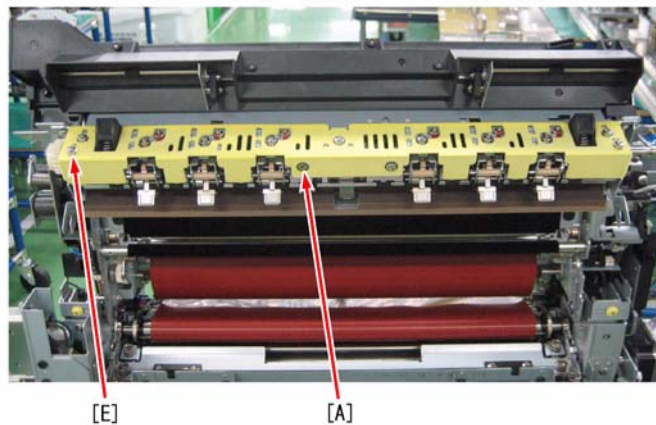
F-16-57

1. Remove the screws from [A] and [B].
2. While widening the gap between the inner delivery lower guide [C] and the inner delivery stay [D] with the fingers, tighten the screw at [B] again.



F-16-58

3. When tightening the screw at [A], interchange the stepped screw used at [A] and the double sems screw used at [E].



F-16-59

Note: Machines having the serial numbers listed below do not cause the symptom because the shape of the inner delivery sensor lever and the screws at [A] and [B] have been changed.

- imagePRESS C7000VP FS UL: KTM00083 and later
- imagePRESS C7000VP FS EU: KTQ00088 and later
- imagePRESS C7000VP FS CN: KTT00008 and later

16.3.3.2 011C Jam Code occurs because delivery reverse flapper does not open at duplex job or facedown delivery: Torsion spring is mounted is in wrong position

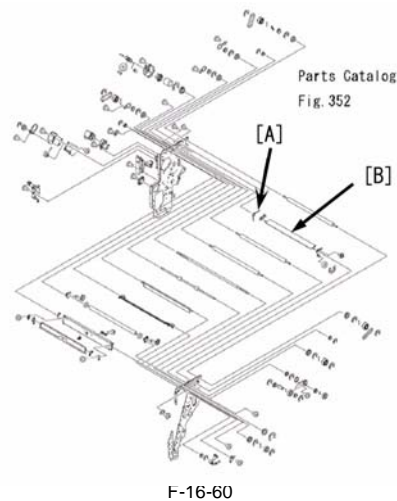
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

[Inspected by Canon Inc.]

Description

Since the delivery reverse flapper (FC5-9935) of the reverse assembly did not open at time of a duplex job or facedown delivery, paper did not reach the delivery reverse front sensor (PS342), causing the jam code "011C."

- 011C Jam Code: Delay jam at the delivery reverse front sensor (PS342)

**Cause**

The torsion spring [A] mounted onto the delivery reverse flapper tilted, load was applied to area where it slides with the flapper shaft [B], causing the flapper to fail to open. To prevent the torsion spring from tilting, spacers were added to either sides of the spring of the following machines.

iPR C7000 VP FS UL : KTM00031, KTM00035 through KTM00038, KTM00051 and later

iPR C7000 VP FS EUR : KTQ00015 and later

iPR C7000 VP FS CHI : KTT00001 and later

Field Remedy

1. Prepare 2 spacers (FC5-9007) and grease (Super Lub).
 2. Referring to "Procedures of attaching spacers", attach the spacers.
- FC5-9007 Spacer
FM2-2232 Reverse Assembly

16.3.4 Error Code**16.3.4.1 E077-0001 is displayed during initial rotation: Lever (B-E1) on Regist. Paper Feeder Assembly is not set properly**

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

[Case in the field]**Description**

In the field, the error code "E077-0001" was displayed during initial rotation performed upon power-on in response to closing of the front cover after a jam handling at the main station.

- E077-0001 can be displayed when the contact/separation operation of the secondary transfer roller is not completed normally during initial rotation because of incomplete shifting of the lever (B-E1) on the regist. paper feeder assembly (at the main station).

Field Remedy

1. If the same error code appears when the front cover is closed after work, check to see if the lever (B-E1) is shifted to the locking position; if not, shift it again. If the lever is in the locking position, go to Step2.
- Note: If the lever is locked at the wrong position, the lower portion of the cover may not be fitted completely although the upper portion does so. After the front cover is closed, be sure to make sure that both upper and lower portions fit completely to the main body.
2. Refit the connector of the secondary transfer pressure release motor (M184).
 3. If the symptom still occurs, replace the secondary transfer pressure release motor with a new one.
- FK2-3124 Stepping DC Motor

16.3.4.2 E078-0001: ITB cleaner motor (M108) is faulty

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

[Case in the field]**Description**

Since the ITB cleaner motor did not rotate, the error code "E078-0001" was displayed. When the same symptom occurs, perform the following field remedy.

- E078-0001 can be displayed when the phase lock signal is not detected for 500msec (100msec x 5 times) continuously even if 2 sec or more have passed since the start of the ITB cleaner motor.

Field Remedy

1. Re-fit the connector at J5229S or J5229P on the ITB cleaner motor.
 2. Re-fit the connectors at J1340 and J1337 on the I.T.B. Driver PCB Assembly (L).
 3. If the symptom still occurs, replace the ITB cleaner motor with a new one.
- Reference: The connector at J1046 on the DC Controller PCB 1-1 is also related to the aforementioned error code.
- FK2-2725 Brushless Motor
FM2-7690 I.T.B. Driver PCB Assembly, L

16.3.4.3 E578/error of paper folding position for saddle stitching: This machine stapled more than specified number of sheets at one time

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

[Case in the field]

Description

When copying 50 sheets of coated paper of 128g in weight in 2-point staple mode, an error of paper folding position for saddle stitching occurred and the error code "E578" was displayed.

- E578 can be displayed when the feed belt HP sensor does not go ON or OFF within 5 sec after the feed belt shift motor operation starts. (Knurling error)

Cause

This machine stapled more than the specified number of sheets at a time.

Field Remedy

Before making copies, check the used paper and the number of sheets to be stapled at a time. The following is specifications for stapling.

Reference: Specifications for stapling (S size/L size)

- 64g to 80g: 100sh/50sh

- over 80g to 81.4g: 80sh/50sh

- over 81.4g to 105g: 60sh/30sh

- over 105g to 200g: 20sh/10sh

- over 200g to 300g: Cover and back cover only

However, the thickness of stack has to be less than 11mm for S size, and less than 5.5mm for L size.

16.3.4.4 E732-8888/E490-0001 occurs upon installation (Color Image Reader-H1)

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

[Case in the field]**Description****a. E732-8888**

Although the Color Image Reader-H1 connected to the imagePRESS-C7000VP is shared with the imagePRESS-C1, when it is used in combination with the imagePRESS-C7000VP, the version of the reader controller software has to be Ver. 6.01 or later. If the version of this software is earlier than Ver. 6.01, the copier fails to recognize the reader, consequently displaying the error code "E732-8888."

Reference: The units of Color Image Reader-H1 with the following serial numbers have the reader controller software of Ver. 6.01.

- Color Image Reader-H1 (UL): TLD01815 and later

- Color Image Reader-H1 (EUR): TLF01558 and later

- Color Image Reader-H1 (OTH): TLG00304 and later

- E732-8888 can be displayed when this machine starts as a printer model and detects the reader unit. (The copier model also temporarily starts as a printer model at time of RAM clear: Switching OFF/ON)

b. E490-0001

In case this machine is used in combination with the DADF-R1 and the Color Image Reader-H1, if the versions of the DF controller software is Ver. 3.01 or later, and the reader controller software is Ver. 4.01 or earlier, the reader controller detects a DF model mismatch, displaying the error code "E490-0001."

- E490-0001 can be displayed when a DF model mismatch error occurs (the feeder for the other copier model is detected).

Field Remedy

1. When E732-8888 or E490-0001 is displayed upon installation, check the version of the reader controller software.

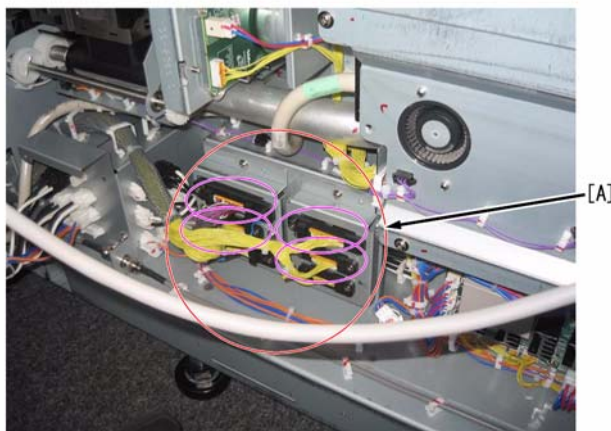
2. If the version of the software is earlier than Ver. 6.01, upgrade the software to Ver. 6.01 or later.

16.3.4.5 E750-0002 occurs when relocating this machine: Connector of drawer connector mount on backside of main station

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

[Case in the field]**Description**

In order to relocate this machine, work was performed according to "Relocating the Machine." At this time, however, not the drawer connector mount but each connector was detached from the backside of the main station. This caused an error in plugging each connector at the new installation place, ultimately leading to the error code "E750-0002."



F-16-61

- E750-0002 can be displayed when the model name informed by the main controller does not match with that stored in the DC controller (i.e., same series but different model).

Cause

Since connectors connected to the drawer connector mount were plugged improperly, a communication error occurred between the DC controller software and the main controller software.

Field Remedy

Although it's difficult to identify a connector plugged to the wrong jack from the error code, when the same error occurs at time of relocation of this machine or service work for the drawer connector mount, check to see if each connector is connected to the correct jack.

Note: When detaching/re-attaching the drawer connector to connect the main station and sub station during installation or relocation, be sure to work not by

the connector but by the drawer connector mount to prevent errors in plugging connectors.

16.3.5 Specifications-Related FAQ

16.3.5.1 FAQ on Main Unit Specifications

16.3.5.1.1 When uploading DC Controller data with SST, "SramDCON" does not appear on SST screen

0016-9189

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

[Manual-related]

Description

"SramDCON" and "SramRCON" files are displayed on the SST screen only when this machine is started in normal mode. If this machine is started in safe mode, these files do not appear on the SST screen.

Field Remedy

Holding down the numeric keys '1' and '7' on the control panel at the same time, turn ON the main power switch. In service mode > COPIER > Function > SYSTEM, select [DOWNLOAD] to enter the download mode, and then upload the data with SST.

16.3.5.1.2 Specifications for staple capacity of Finisher-AB1/AB2

0018-4128

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

[Manual-related]

Description

The following are specifications for staple capacity of Finisher-AB1/AB2 by basis weight of paper (both small and large sizes).

- 64g to 80g: 100sh/50sh
- over 80g to 81.4g: 80sh/50sh
- over 81.4g to 105g: 60sh/30sh
- over 105g to 200g: 20sh/10sh
- over 200g to 300g: Cover and back cover only

However, the thickness of stack has to be less than 11mm for small size, and less than 5.5mm for large size.

Reference: Although the staple capacity of the aforementioned Finisher units is specified like the above, on requests from the field, the units were so designed that they staple more than the number of sheets described above with regard to all basis weights in case the total number of sheets to be stapled is set within 100 sheets. But, please be informed that a problem may occur when the units staple more than the number specified above.

16.3.5.1.3 Description on fixing roller refresh operation and its execution timing

0018-7655

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

[Manual-related]

Description

There is a case where the lead edge (cut edge) of paper hit the fixing roller and, thus, causes shiny lines (1mm to 1.5mm wide) in the main scanning direction at the fixing roller intervals. To prevent this, this machine has a control sequence for automatically refreshing the fixing roller surface.

a. Execution timing

- a-1. At time of cleaning the corona wire
- a-2. At time of changing the paper size (from small to large)
- a-3. At time of post rotation

b. Execution condition

The refreshing operation is executed when the media size counter this machine computes reaches the threshold value.

c. Change of time spent for the refreshing operation

Changing the setting in user mode > System Settings > Device Management Settings > Fixing Roller Auto Refresh Level will change the length of time spent for refreshing operation. Changing the setting of this mode will also ease the execution condition of the refreshing operation.

c-1. Default value '0': perform the refreshing operation for about 30 sec to 60 sec. (The time spent for the operation changes depending on the media size counter.)

c-2. Adjustment range: between '-5' (30 sec) to '+5' (330 sec). Changing the value by '1' will increase/decrease the length of time spent for the operation by 30 sec. Selecting a positive value will increase the length of time spent for one operation while a negative value will decrease it. If the value '-5' is selected, the operation is not executed.

d. Conditions other than the above

- d-1. Interruption refreshing based on the video counter reading (1 sec)
- d-2. Refreshing at startup. (3 sec)

For these conditions, changing the fixing roller auto refresh level setting will change a parameter (the threshold value of video count), consequently changing the timing at which this machine starts the refreshing operation. However, if the setting value is between '-5' and '-1', the operation is not executed.

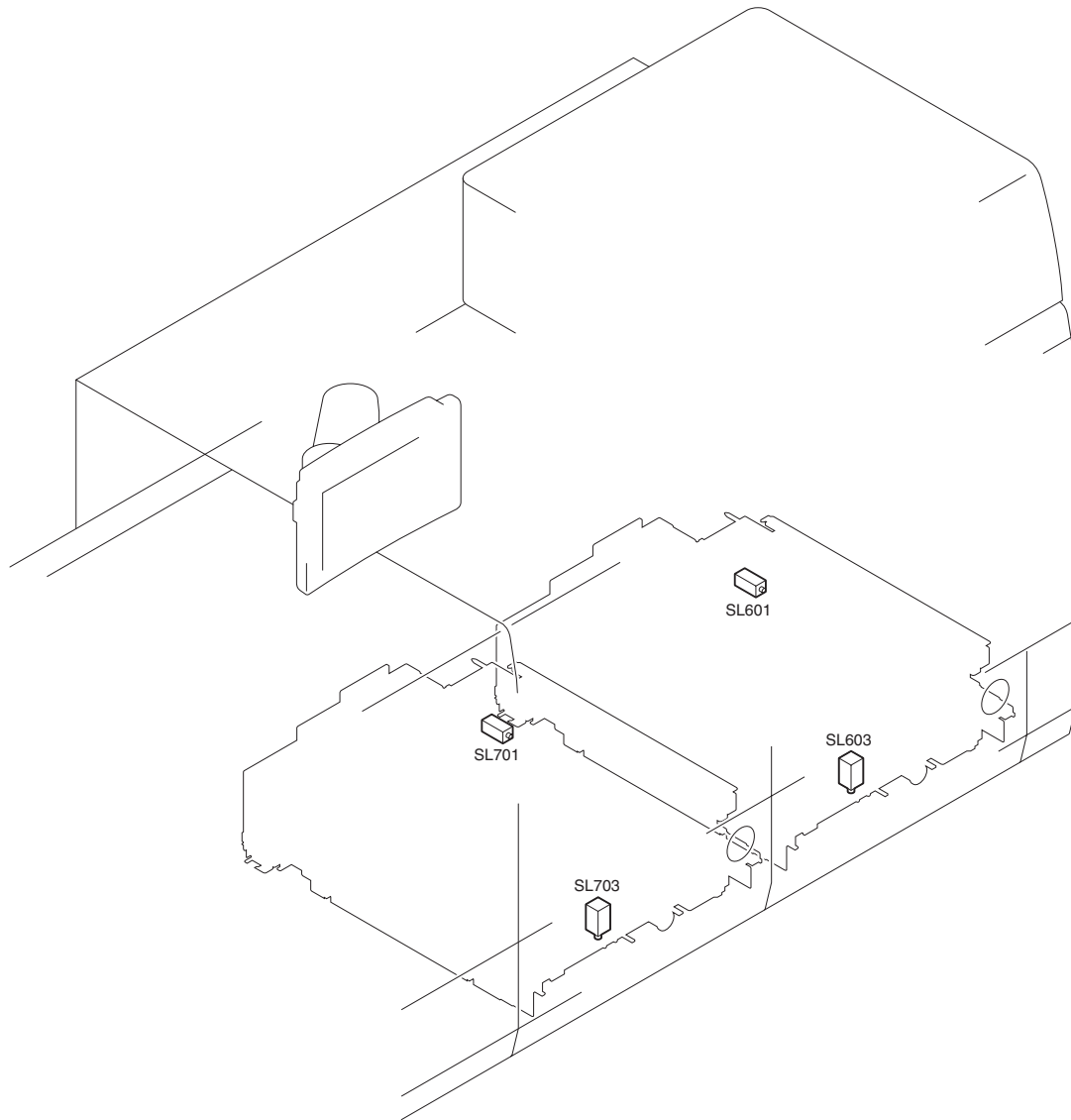
Note: No matter how many sheets of SRA3 or 13x19 size paper are fed, as papers larger than these sizes are not used, shiny lines due to paper lint do not occur. Therefore, the media size counter, the parameter for roller refreshing, does not increase.

16.4 Outline of Electrical Components

16.4.1 Clutch/Solenoid

16.4.1.1 Main Station

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000



F-16-62
T-16-3

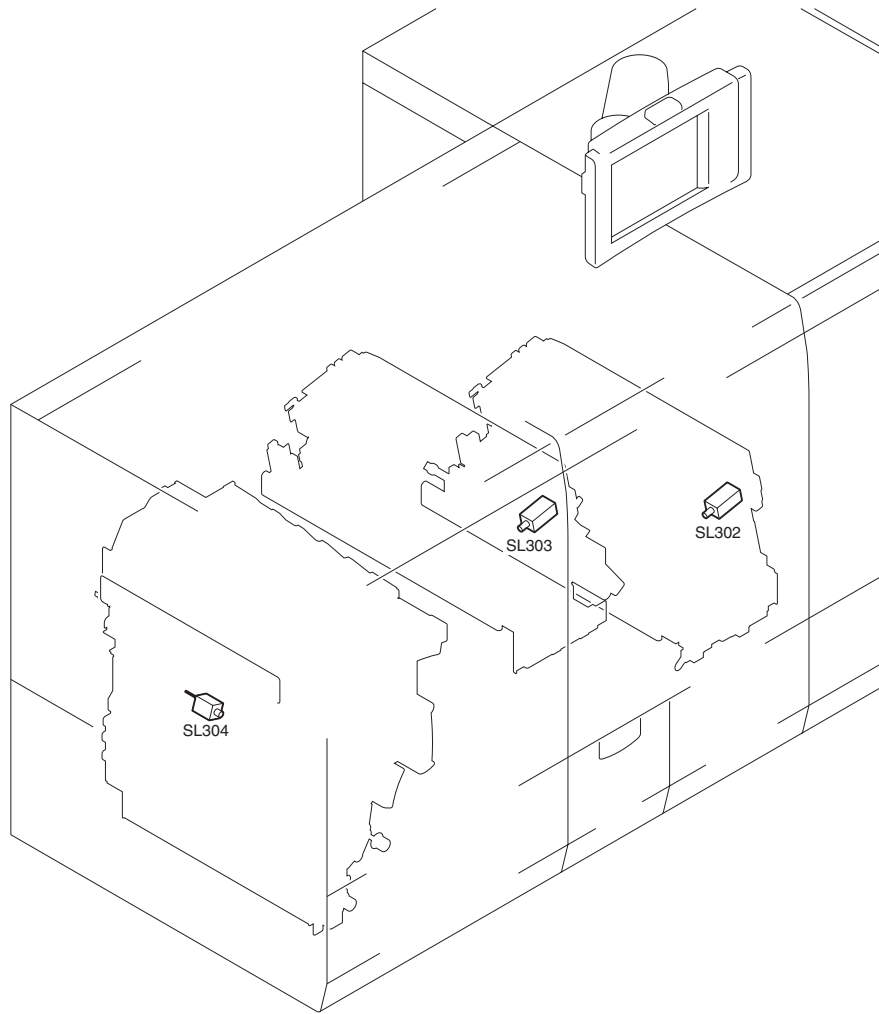
Symbol	Parts Name	Function	Parts No.	PART-CHK
SL601	Right deck pickup solenoid	open/close right deck pickup air shutter	FK2-0126	-
SL603	Right deck open/close solenoid	lock/release right deck tray	FK2-0127	-
SL701	Left deck pickup solenoid	open/close left deck pickup air shutter	FK2-0126	-
SL703	Left deck open/close solenoid	lock/release left deck tray	FK2-0127	-

T-16-4

Symbol	Connector No.				
	Right deck driver PCB	Right deck pickup driver PCB	Left deck driver PCB	Left deck pickup driver PCB	DC controller PCB 1-1
SL601		J2053R/J2051R			J1060
SL603	J2103R/J2102R	J2056R/J2051R			J1060
SL701				J2053L/J2051L	J1064
SL703			J2103L/J2102L	J2056L/J2051L	J1064

16.4.1.2 Sub Station

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000



F-16-63
T-16-5

Symbol	Parts Name	Function	Parts No.	PART-CHK
SL302	Primary fixing web solenoid	drive primary fixing web	FK2-2723	SL>1
SL303	Secondary fixing web solenoid	drive secondary fixing web	FK2-2723	SL>2
SL304	Color sensor roller solenoid	stick sheet to color sensor	FH7-5838	

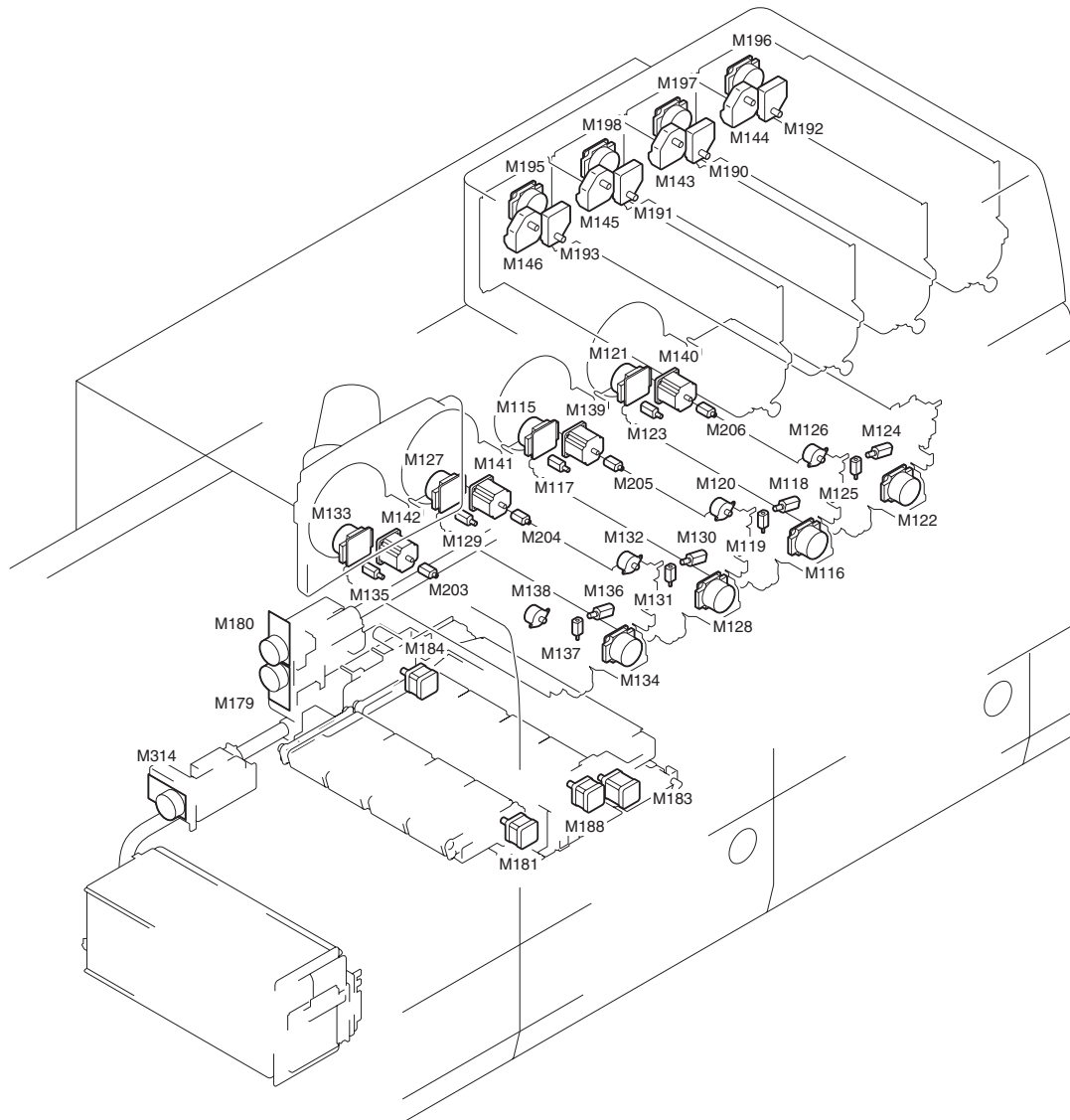
T-16-6

Symbol	Connector No.				
	Primary fixing inner driver PCB	Secondary fixing external driver PCB	Reverse/external delivery driver PCB	Duplexing feed driver PCB	DC controller PCB 1-2
SL302	J4374P/J4260P			J4080/J4070	J1072
SL303		J4374S/J4360S		J4085/J4070	J1072
SL304			J4127/4111	J4091/J4070	J1072

16.4.2 Motor

16.4.2.1 Main Station(1/6)

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000



F-16-64
T-16-7

Symbol	Parts Name	Function	Parts No.	PART-CHK	E-code
M115	Developing motor (C)	drive developing unit (C)	FK2-2726		E023-0300
M116	Drum cleaner motor (C)	drive drum cleaner (C)	FK2-2726		E016-0400
M117	Drum patch sensor cleaning motor (C)	clean drum patch sensor (C)	FL2-6138		E018-0312, 0313, 131X
M118	Primary charging wire cleaning motor (C)	clean primary charging wire (C)	FL2-0991		E060-3003
M119	Sub hopper motor (C)	drive sub-hopper (C)	FL2-6139		E025-0320
M120	Toner feed motor (C)	feed C toner	FK2-2729		
M121	Developing motor (Bk)	drive developing unit (Bk)	FK2-2726		E023-0400
M122	Drum cleaner motor (Bk)	drive drum Bkleaner (Bk)	FK2-2726		E016-0300
M123	Drum patch sensor cleaning motor (Bk)	Bklean drum patBk sensor (Bk)	FL2-6138		E018-0412, 0413, 141X
M124	Primary charging wire cleaning motor (Bk)	Bklean primary Bkcharging wire (Bk)	FL2-0991		E060-3004
M125	Sub hopper motor (Bk)	drive sub-hopper (Bk)	FL2-6139		E025-0420
M126	Toner feed motor (Bk)	feed Bk toner	FK2-2729		
M127	Developing motor (M)	drive developing unit (M)	FK2-2726		E023-0200
M128	Drum cleaner motor (M)	drive drum Mleaner (M)	FK2-2726		E016-0200

Symbol	Parts Name	Function	Parts No.	PART-CHK	E-code
M129	Drum patch sensor cleaning motor (M)	Mlean drum patMh sensor (M)	FL2-6138		E018-0212, 0213, 121X
M130	Primary charging wire cleaning motor (M)	Mlean primary Mharging wire (M)	FL2-0991		E060-3002
M131	Sub hopper motor (M)	drive sub-hopper (M)	FL2-6139		E025-0220
M132	Toner feed motor (M)	feed M toner	FK2-2729		
M133	Developing motor (Y)	drive developing unit (Y)	FK2-2726		E023-0100
M134	Drum cleaner motor (Y)	drive drum Yleaner (Y)	FK2-2726		E016-0100
M135	Drum patch sensor cleaning motor (Y)	Ylean drum patYh sensor (Y)	FL2-6138		E018-0112, 0113, 111X
M136	Primary charging wire cleaning motor (Y)	Ylean primary Yharging wire (Y)	FL2-0991		E060-3001
M137	Sub hopper motor (Y)	drive sub-hopper (Y)	FL2-6139		E025-0120
M138	Toner feed motor (Y)	feed Y toner	FK2-2729		
M139	Drum driving motor (C)	drive photosensitive drum C	FK2-3125		E012-03XX
M140	Drum driving motor (Bk)	drive photosensitive drum Bk	FK2-3125		E012-04XX
M141	Drum driving motor (M)	drive photosensitive drum M	FK2-3125		E012-02XX
M142	Drum driving motor (Y)	drive photosensitive drum Y	FK2-3125		E012-01XX
M143	Toner container motor (C)	drive tonar container C	FK2-0015		E025-0310
M144	Toner container motor (Bk)	drive tonar container Bk	FK2-0015		E025-0410
M145	Toner container motor (M)	drive tonar container M	FK2-0015		E025-0210
M146	Toner container motor (Y)	drive tonar container Y	FK2-0015		E025-0110
M179	Buffer motor	drive buffer unit	FK2-0022		E019-0003
M180	Drum waste toner feed motor	feed waste toner	FK2-0022		E019-0001
M181	Pre-fixing feed drive left motor	feed paper at pre-fixing unit (left)	FK2-3124	MTR>34	
M183	Secondary transfer driving motor	drive secondary transfer unit	FK2-3124	MTR>23	
M184	Secondary transfer pressure release motor	press/release secondary transfer unit	FK2-3124		E077-0001
M188	Pre-transfer feed driving right motor	feed paper at pre-fixing unit (right)	FK2-3124	MTR>33	
M190	Toner container slide motor (C)	slide C toner container	FK2-2728		E028-0301, 0302
M191	Toner container slide motor (M)	slide M toner container	FK2-2728		E028-0201, 0202
M192	Toner container slide motor (Bk)	slide Bk toner container	FK2-2728		E028-0401, 0402
M193	Toner container slide motor (Y)	slide Y toner container	FK2-2728		E028-0101, 0102
M195	Hopper motor (Y)	drive Y hopper	FK2-2726		E025-0100
M196	Hopper motor (Bk)	drive Bk hopper	FK2-2726		E025-0400
M197	Hopper motor (C)	drive C hopper	FK2-2726		E025-0300
M198	Hopper motor (M)	drive M hopper	FK2-2726		E025-0200
M203	Developing assembly knocking motor (Y)	Y toner anticoagulation	FL2-9917	MTR>12	E024-0001
M204	Developing assembly knocking motor (M)	M toner anticoagulation	FL2-9917	MTR>13	E024-0002
M205	Developing assembly knocking motor (C)	C toner anticoagulation	FL2-9917	MTR>14	E024-0003
M206	Developing assembly knocking motor (Bk)	Bk toner anticoagulation	FL2-9917	MTR>15	E024-0004
M314	Waste toner feed motor	feed waste toner	FK2-0022		E019-0002

T-16-8

Symbol	Connector No.				
	Drum driver PCB (C)	Drum driver PCB (Bk)	Drum driver PCB (Y)	Drum driver PCB (M)	DC controller PCB 1-1
M115	J1622C/J1611C				J1037
M121		J1622K/J1611K			J1038
M127				J1622M/J1611Y	J1036
M133			J1622Y/J1611Y		J1035
M139	J1621C/J1611C				J1037
M140		J1621K/J1611K			J1038
M141				J1621M/J1611M	J1036
M142			J1621Y/J1611Y		J1035

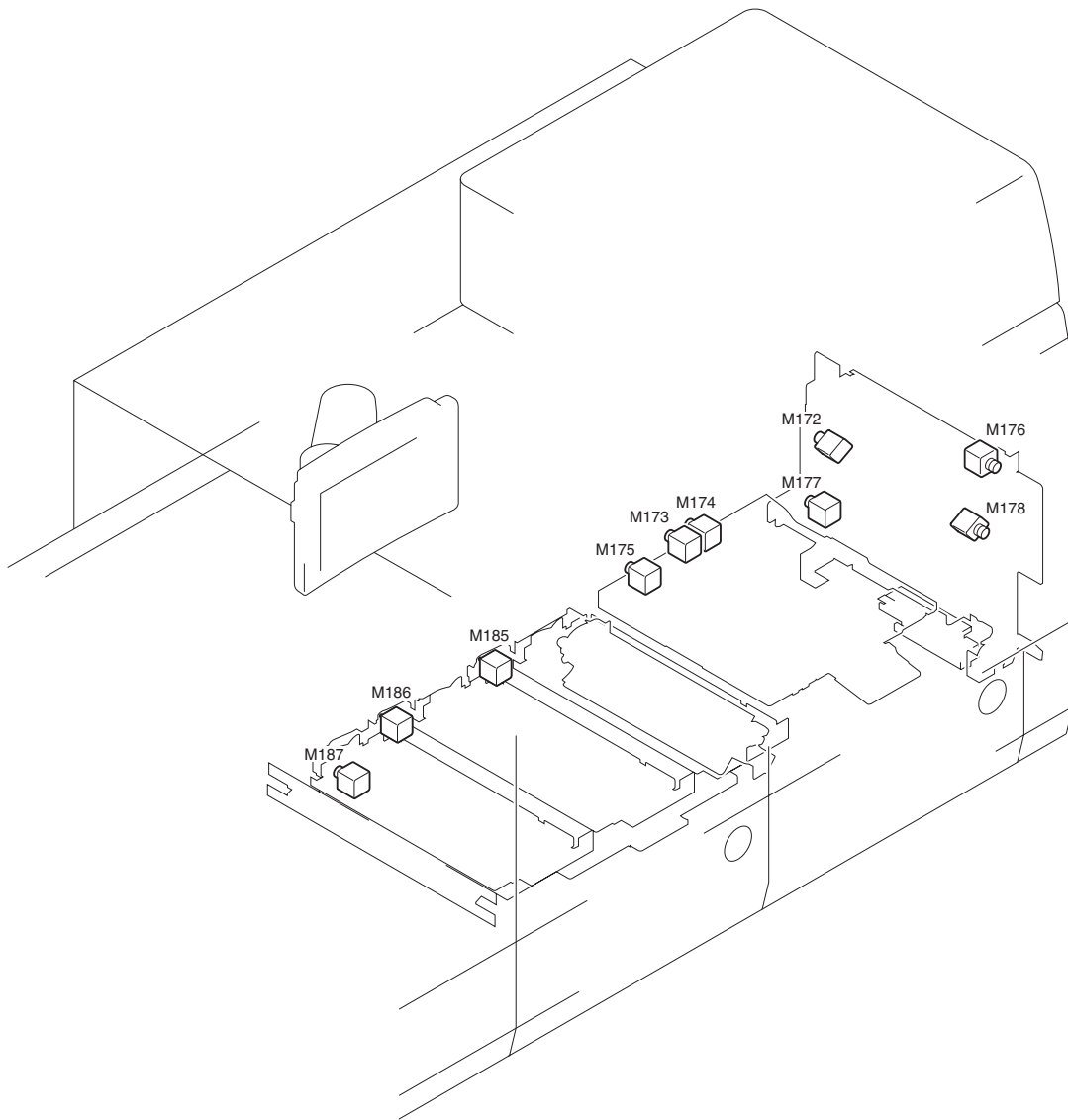
T-16-9

Symbol	Connector No.											
	Process unit driver PCB (Y)	Process unit driver PCB (M)	Process unit driver PCB (C)	Process unit driver PCB (Bk)	Hopper driver PCB (Y)	Hopper driver PCB (M)	Hopper driver PCB (C)	Hopper driver PCB (Bk)	Pre-fixing feed driver PCB	Secondary transfer/duplexing driver PCB	Fixing duplexing feed driver PCB	DC controller PCB 1-2
M116			J1371C/ J1360C									J1010
M117			J1377C/ J1361C									J1011
M118			J1375C/ J1361C									J1011
M119			J1375C/ J1361C									J1011
M120			J1373C/ J1361C									J1011
M122				J1371K/ J1360K								J1012
M123				J1377K/ J1361K								J1013
M124				J1375K/ J1361K								J1013
M125				J1374K/ J1361K								J1013
M126				J1373K/ J1361K								J1013
M128		J1371M/ J1360M										J108
M129		J1377M/ J1361M										J1009
M130		J1375M/ J1361M										J1009
M131		J1374M/ J1361M										J1009
M132		J1373M/ J1361M										J1009
M134	J1371Y/ J1360Y											J1006
M135	J1377Y/ J1361Y											J1007
M136	J1375Y/ J1361Y											J1007
M137	J1374Y/ J1361Y											J1007
M138	J1373Y/ J1361Y											J1007
M143							J1420C/ J1410C					J1016
M144								J1420K/ J1410K				J1017
M145						J1420M/ J1410M						J1015
M146				J1420Y/ J1410Y								J1014
M179									J1561/ J1553			J1026
M180									J1559/ J1553			J1026
M181									J1558/ J1551			J1027
M183										JJ1504/ J1513		J1024
M184										JJ1503/ J1513		J1024
M188										JJ1504/ J1513		J1024
M190							J1420C/ J1410C					J1016
M191						J1420M/ J1410M						J1015
M192								J1420K/ J1410K				J1017
M193					J1420Y/ J1410Y							J1014

Symbol	Connector No.											
	Process unit driver PCB (Y)	Process unit driver PCB (M)	Process unit driver PCB (C)	Process unit driver PCB (Bk)	Hopper driver PCB (Y)	Hopper driver PCB (M)	Hopper driver PCB (C)	Hopper driver PCB (Bk)	Pre-fixing feed driver PCB	Secondary transfer/ duplexing driver PCB	Fixing duplexing feed driver PCB	DC controller PCB 1-2
M195					J1421Y/ J1410Y							J1014
M196							J1421K/ J1410K					J1017
M197							J1421C/ J1410C					J1016
M198						J1421M/ J1410M						J1015
M314											J4016/ J4070	J1072

16.4.2.2 Main Station(2/6)

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

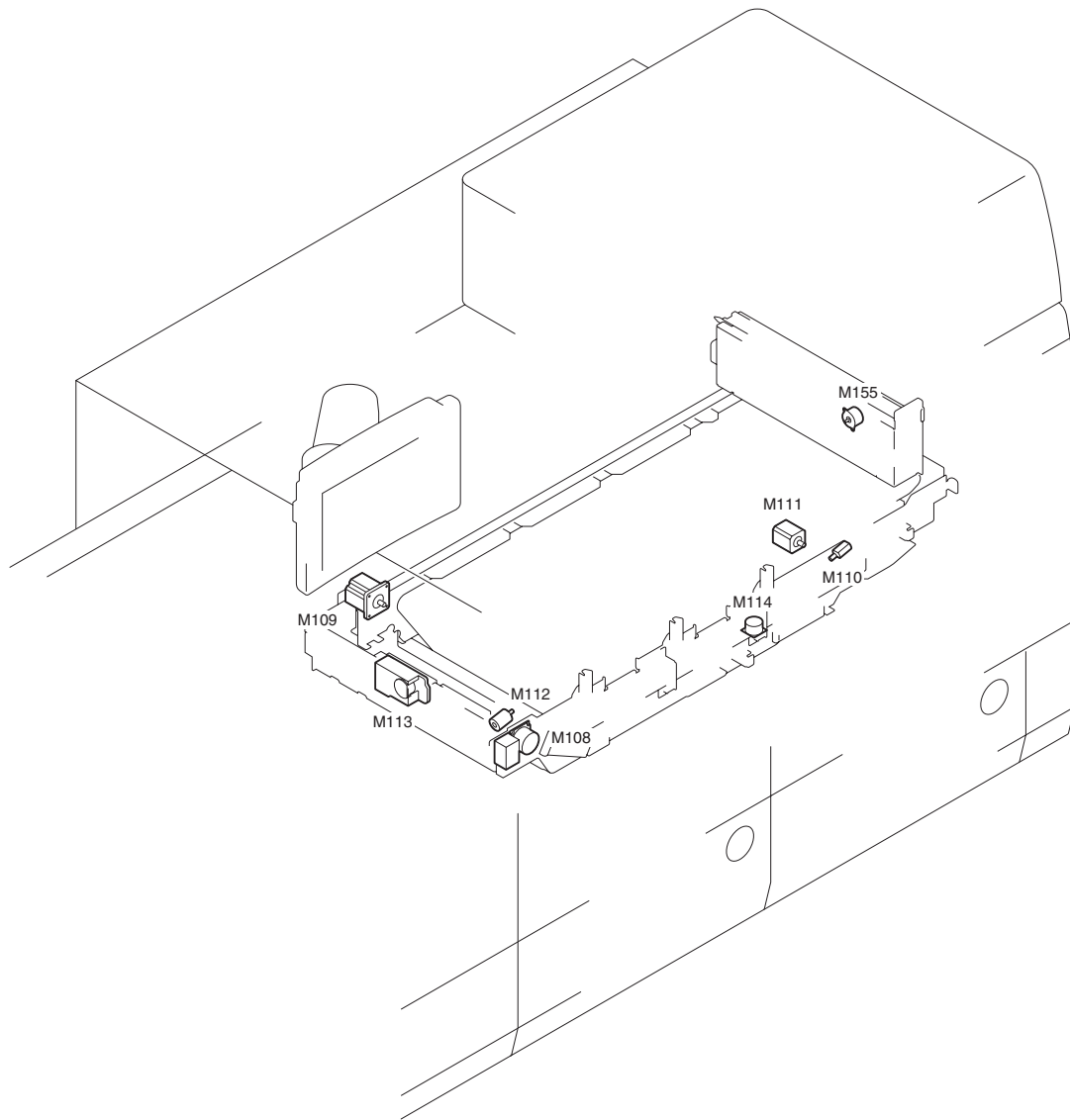
F-16-65
T-16-10

Symbol	Parts Name	Function	Parts No.	PART-CHK	E-code	Connector No.			
						Vertical path/lower feed driver PCB	Secondary transfer/duplexing driver PCB	DC controller PCB 1-1	DC controller PCB 1-2
M172	Lower feed motor 4	feed paper at lower feed unit	FK2-3125	MTR>7		J1503/ J1500		J1018	
M173	Lower feed motor 2	feed paper at lower feed unit	FK2-3125	MTR>8		J1506/ J1501		J1019	
M174	Lower feed motor 3	feed paper at lower feed unit	FK2-3125	MTR>9		J1506/ J1501		J1019	
M175	Lower feed motor 1	feed paper at lower feed unit	FK2-3125	MTR>10		J1506/ J1501		J1019	
M176	POD deck path feed motor	feed paper from POD deck	FK2-3125	MTR>11		J1504/ J1500		J1018	
M177	Right deck feeding motor	feed paper from right deck	FK2-3125	MTR>3		J1504/ J1500		J1018	
M178	Vertical path feed motor	feed paper at pickup vertical pass	FK2-3125	MTR>4		J1503/ J1500		J1018	
M185	Duplexing feed motor 1	feed paper in main station duplexing unit	FK2-3125	MTR>56			J1506/ J1501		J1025

Symbol	Parts Name	Function	Parts No.	PART-CHK	E-code	Connector No.			
						Vertical path/ lower feed driver PCB	Secondary transfer/ duplexing driver PCB	DC controller PCB 1-1	DC controller PCB 1-2
M186	Duplexing feed motor 2	feed paper in main station duplexing unit	FK2-3125	MTR>55			J1506/ J1501		J1025
M187	Duplexing feed motor 3	feed paper in main station duplexing unit	FK2-3125	MTR>54			J1506/ J1501		J1025

16.4.2.3 Main Station(3/6)

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

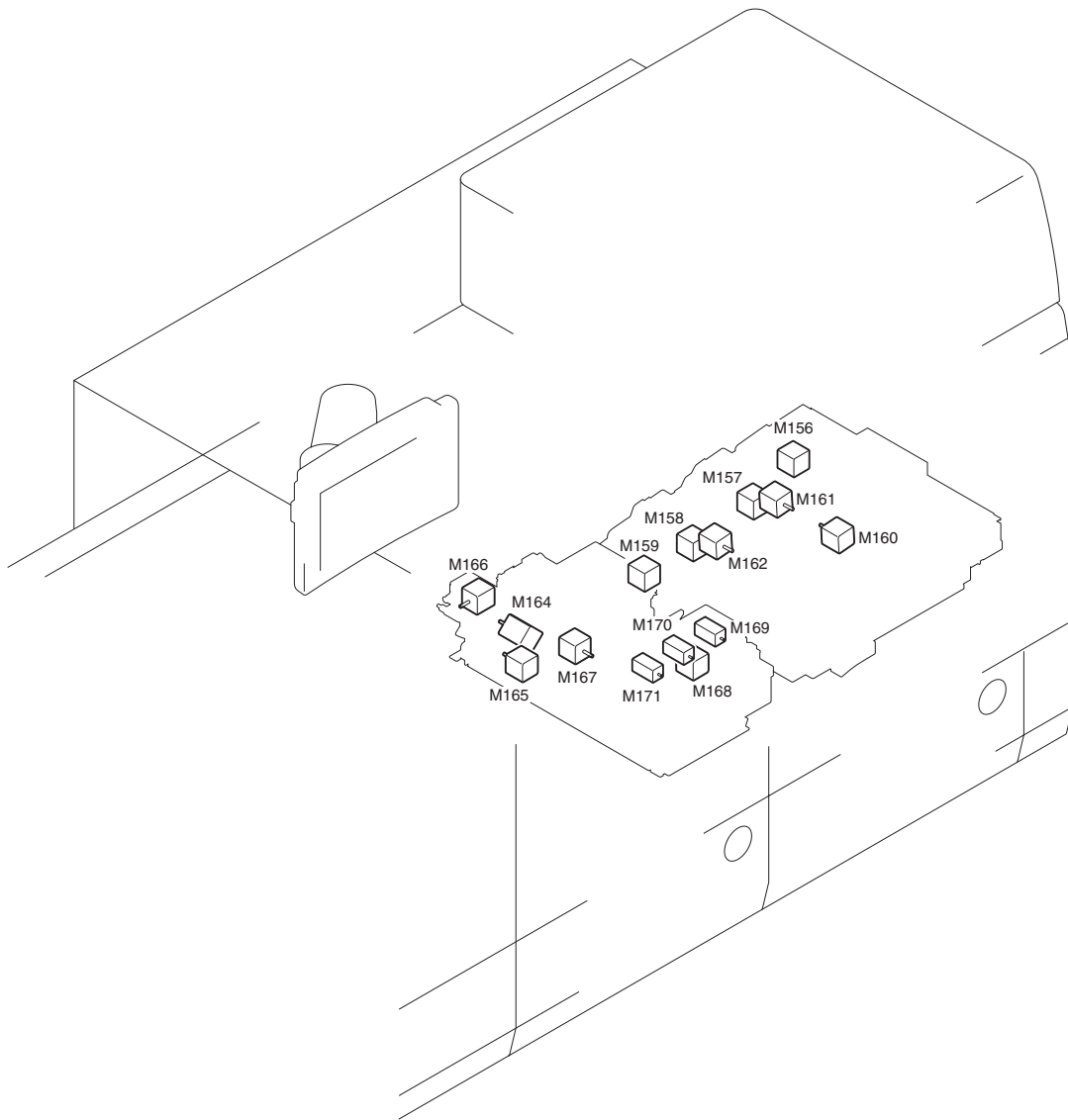
F-16-66
T-16-11

Symbol	Parts Name	Function	Parts No.	PART-CHK	E-code	Connector No.			
						ITB driver PCB (left)	ITB driver PCB (right)	ITB driver PCB (center)	DC controller PCB 1-1
M108	ITB cleaner motor	clean ITB surface	FK2-2725		E078-0001	J1340/ J1338			J1046
M109	ITB driving motor	drive ITB	FK2-3145		E012-10xx			J1310/ J1302	J1033
M110	ITB pre-transfer charging wire cleaning motor	clean ITB pre-transfer charging wire	FL2-0991		E060-3005			J1311/ J1302	J1033
M111	ITB steering motor	correct ITB displacement	FK2-3144					J1311/ J1302	J1033
M112	ITB web motor	drive ITB web	FG3-0698		E076-0003, 0005			J1313/ J1302	J1033
M113	ITB web releasing motor	press/release ITB web	FK2-0017		E076-0001, 0004	J1342/ J1338			J1046
M114	Leading edge registration patch sensor shutter motor	open/close leading edge registration patch sensor shutter	FK2-2729		E018-0101, 0102, 0103		J1332/ J1330		J1032

Symbol	Parts Name	Function	Parts No.	PART-CHK	E-code	Connector No.			
						ITB driver PCB (left)	ITB driver PCB (right)	ITB driver PCB (center)	DC controller PCB 1-1
M155	Color registration patch sensor shutter motor	open/close color registration patch sensor shutter	FK2-2729	MTR>12	E018-0201, 0202, 0203				

16.4.2.4 Main Station(4/6)

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

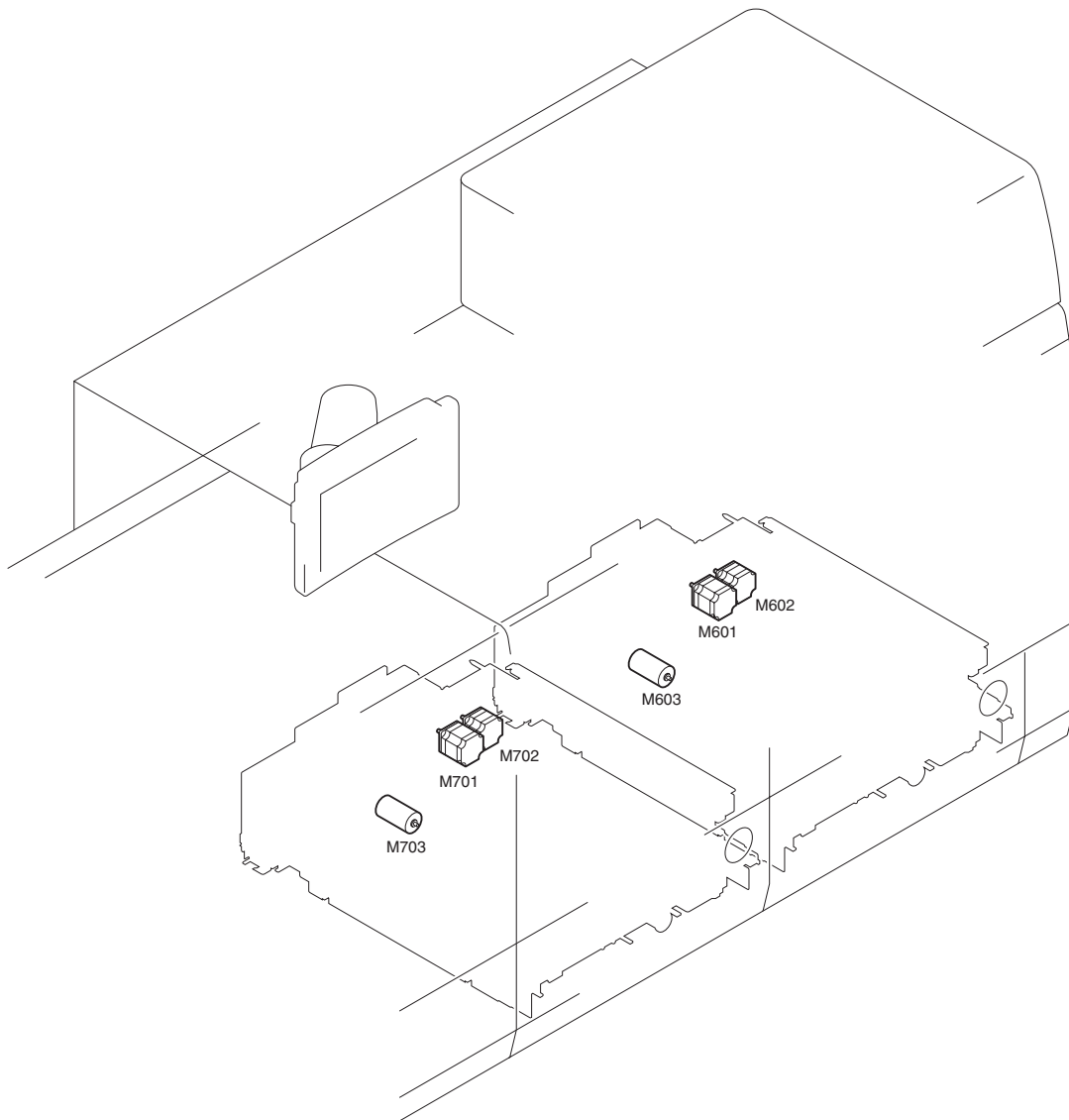
F-16-67
T-16-12

Symbol	Parts Name	Function	Parts No.	PART-CHK	E-code	Connector No.		
						Registration feed driver PCB (right)	Registration feed driver PCB (left)	DC controller PCB 1-1
M156	Pre-registration motor 1	feed paper at pre-registration unit	FK2-3125	MTR>17		J1220/J1210		J1020
M157	Pre-registration motor 2	feed paper at pre-registration unit	FK2-3125	MTR>18		J1220/J1210		J1020
M158	Pre-registration motor 3	feed paper at pre-registration unit	FK2-3125	MTR>19		J1221/J1210		J1020
M159	Pre-registration motor 4	feed paper at pre-registration unit	FK2-3125	MTR>20		J1221/J1210		J1020
M160	Pre-registration pressure release motor 1	press/release feed roller in pre-registration unit	FK2-3124	MTR24	E015-0120	J1222/J1210		J1020
M161	Pre-registration pressure release motor 2	press/release feed roller in pre-registration unit	FK2-3124	MTR25	E015-0220	J1222/J1210		J1020
M162	Pre-registration pressure release motor 3	press/release feed roller in pre-registration unit	FK2-3124	MTR14	E015-0320	J1222/J1210		J1020
M164	Registration motor	drive registration roller	FK2-3127	MTR22			J1223/J1210	J1022
M165	Registration releasing motor	press/release registration roller	FK2-3124	MTR30	E015-0150		J1220/J1210	J1022
M166	Registration swing motor	correct side registration	FK2-3124	MTR31	E015-0250		J1221/J1210	J1022

Symbol	Parts Name	Function	Parts No.	PART-CHK	E-code	Connector No.		
						Registration feed driver PCB (right)	Registration feed driver PCB (left)	DC controller PCB 1-1
M167	Cross feed push-on plate jogging motor	shift cross feed push-on plate	FM2-5180	MTR29			J1221/J1210	J1022
M168	Cross feed motor	drive cross feed roller	FK2-3124	MTR21			J1222/J1210	J1022
M169	Cross feed pressure release motor 1	press/release cross feed roller	FK2-3143	MTR26	E015-0130		J1222/J1210	J1022
M170	Cross feed pressure release motor 2	press/release cross feed roller	FK2-3143	MTR27	E015-0230		J1222/J1210	J1022
M171	Cross feed pressure release motor 3	press/release cross feed roller	FK2-3143	MTR28	E015-0330		J1220/J1210	J1022

16.4.2.5 Main Station(5/6)

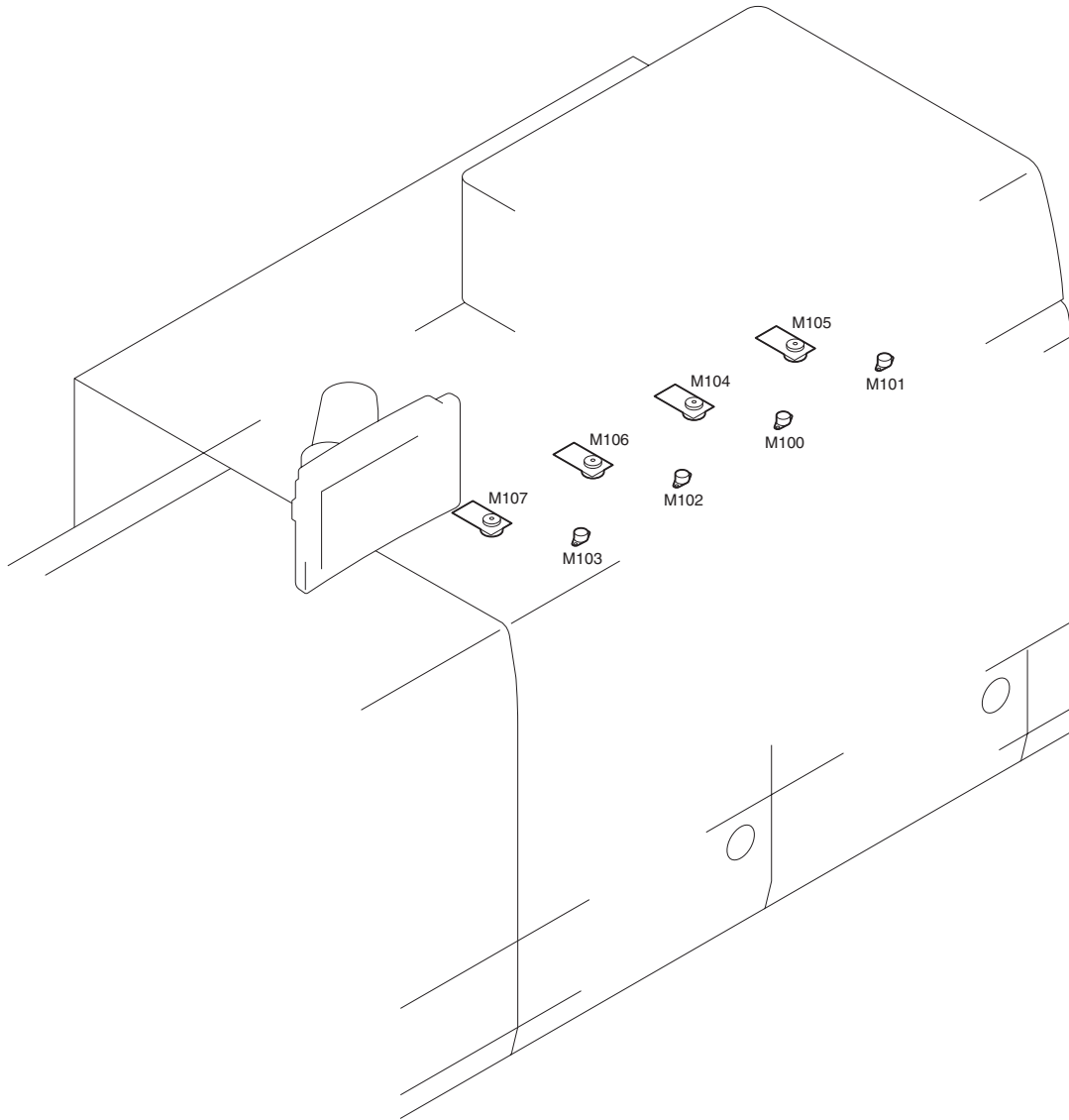
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

F-16-68
T-16-13

Symbol	Parts Name	Function	Parts No.	PART-CHK	E-code	Connector No.				
						Right deck driver PCB	Right deck pickup driver PCB	Left deck driver PCB	Left deck pickup driver PCB	DC controller PCB 1-1
M601	Right deck pickup belt motor	drive right deck pickup belt	FK2-3137	MTR>21			J2054R/ J2051R			J1060
M602	Right deck pull-out motor	drive right deck pull-out roller	FK2-3130	MTR>2			J2054R/ J2051R			J1060
M603	Right deck lifter motor	drive right deck lifter	FK2-2972			J2105R/ J2102R	J2056R/ J2051R			J1060
M701	Left deck pickyp belt motor	drive left deck pickup belt	FK2-3137	MTR>5					J2054L/ J2051L	J1064
M702	Left deck pull-out motor	drive left deck pull-out roller	FK2-3130	MTR>6					J2054L/ J2051L	J1064
M703	Left deck lifter motor	drive left deck lifter	FK2-2972					J2105L/ J2102L	J2056L/ J2051L	J1064

16.4.2.6 Main Station(6/6)

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000



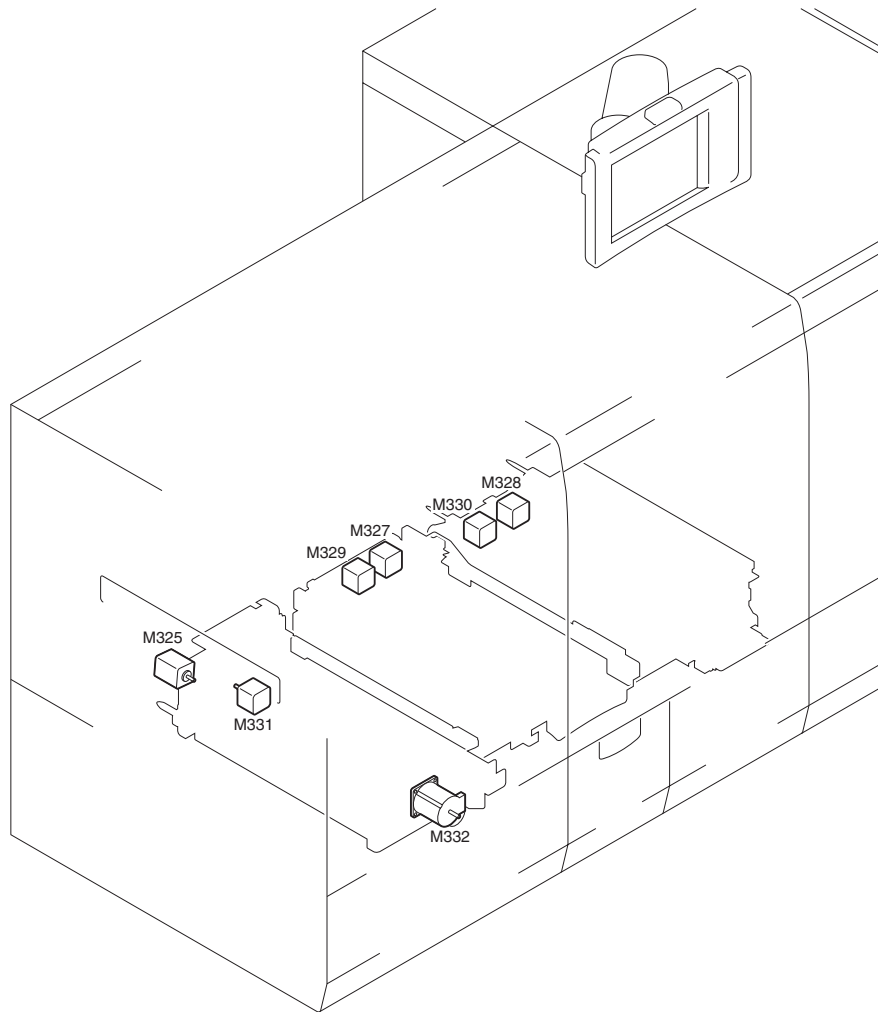
F-16-69
T-16-14

Symbol	Parts Name	Function	Parts No.	PART-CHK	E-code	Connector No.
						DC controller PCB 1-3
M100	Lens skew control motor (C)	Lens skew control (C)	FM2-4887 (laser scanner assembly)			J1134
M101	Lens skew control motor (Bk)	Lens skew control (Bk)	FM2-4887 (laser scanner assembly)			J1144
M102	Lens skew control motor (M)	Lens skew control (M)	FM2-4887 (laser scanner assembly)			J1124
M103	Lens skew control motor (Y)	Lens skew control (Y)	FM2-4887 (laser scanner assembly)			J1114
M104	Laser scanner motor (C)	drive C laser scanner mirror	FM2-4887 (laser scanner assembly)			J1132

Symbol	Parts Name	Function	Parts No.	PART-CHK	E-code	Connector No.
						DC controller PCB 1-3
M105	Laser scanner motor (Bk)	drive Bk laser scanner mirror	FM2-4887 (laser scanner assembly)			J1142
M106	Laser scanner motor (M)	drive M laser scanner mirror	FM2-4887 (laser scanner assembly)			J1122
M107	Laser scanner motor (Y)	drive Y laser scanner mirror	FM2-4887 (laser scanner assembly)			J1112

16.4.2.7 Sub Station(1/5)

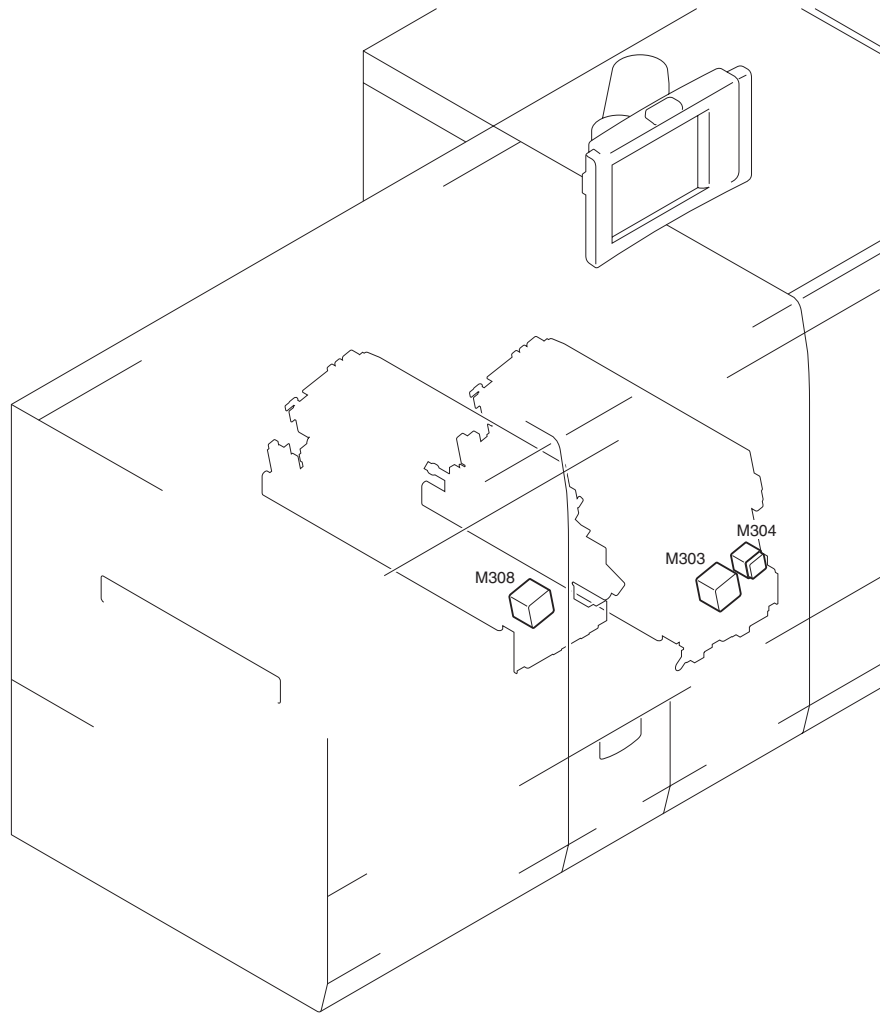
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

F-16-70
T-16-15

Symbol	Parts Name	Function	Parts No.	PART-CHK	E-code	Connector No.	
						Fixing duplexing feed driver PCB	DC controller PCB 1-2
M325	Duplexing decurler advancement adjusting motor	press/release duplexing decurler	FK2-3136	MTR>58		J4256/ J4070	J1072
M327	Fixing duplexing feed motor 5-2	feed paper in sub station fixing duplexing unit	FK2-3125	MTR>52		J4250/ J4070	J1072
M328	Fixing duplexing feed motor 4	feed paper in sub station fixing duplexing unit	FK2-3125	MTR>53		J4252/ J4070	J1072
M329	Fixing duplexing feed motor 6	feed paper in sub station fixing duplexing unit	FK2-3125	MTR>51		J4252/ J4070	J1072
M330	Fixing duplexing feed motor 5-1	feed paper in sub station fixing duplexing unit	FK2-3125	MTR>52		J4250/ J4070	J1072
M331	Fixing duplexing feed motor 7	feed paper in sub station fixing duplexing unit	FK2-3129	MTR>50		J4254/ J4070	J1072
M332	Duplexing decurler driving motor 2	drive duplexing decurler	FK2-3152			J4256/ J4070	J1072

16.4.2.8 Sub Station(2/5)

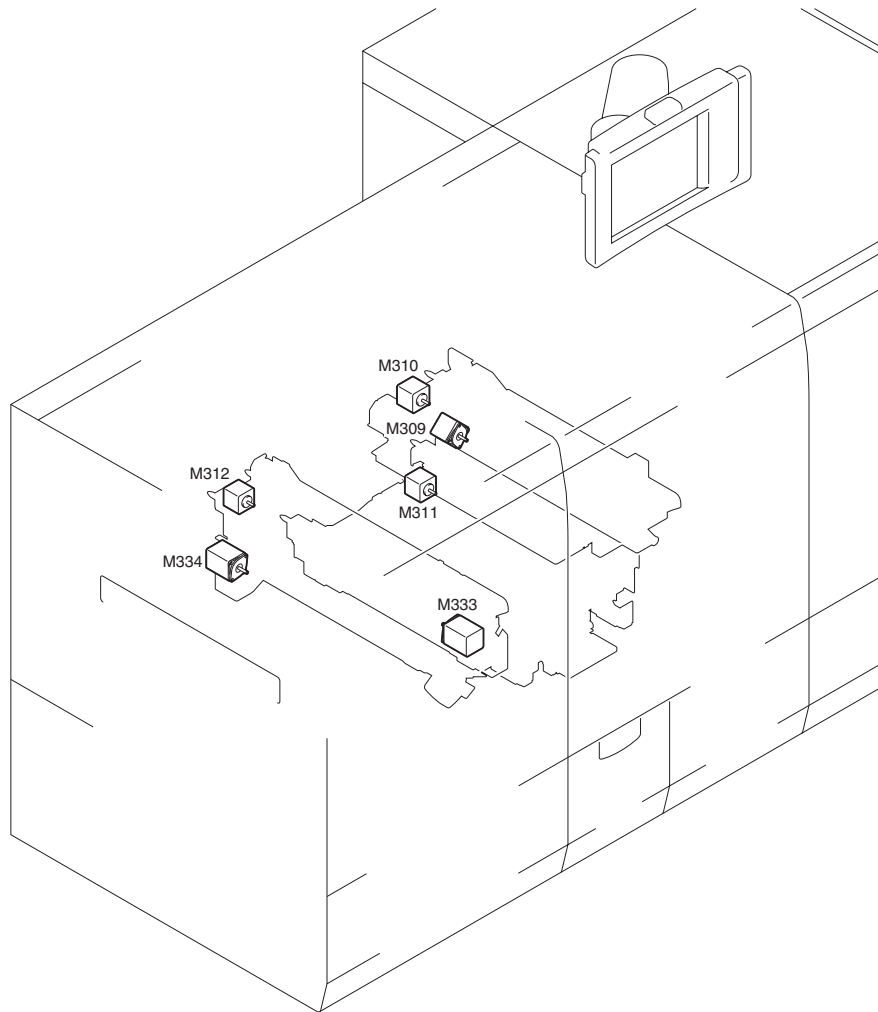
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

F-16-71
T-16-16

Symbol	Parts Name	Function	Parts No.	PART-CHK	E-code	Connector No.			
						Primary fixing inner driver PCB	Secondary fixing inner driver PCB	Fixing duplexing feed driver PCB	DC controller PCB 1-2
M303	Primary fixing pressure belt pressure motor	press/release primary fixing pressure belt	FK2-3132		E842-0111	J4370P/ J4360P		J4080/ J4070	J1072
M304	Primary fixing pressure belt full displacement control motor	correct displacement primary fixing pressure belt	FK2-3126			J4371P/ J4360P		J4080/ J4070	J1072
M308	Secondary fixing pressure roller pressure motor	press/release secondary fixing pressure belt	FK2-3132		E842-0211		J4370S/ J4360S	J4085/ J4070	J1072

16.4.2.9 Sub Station(3/5)

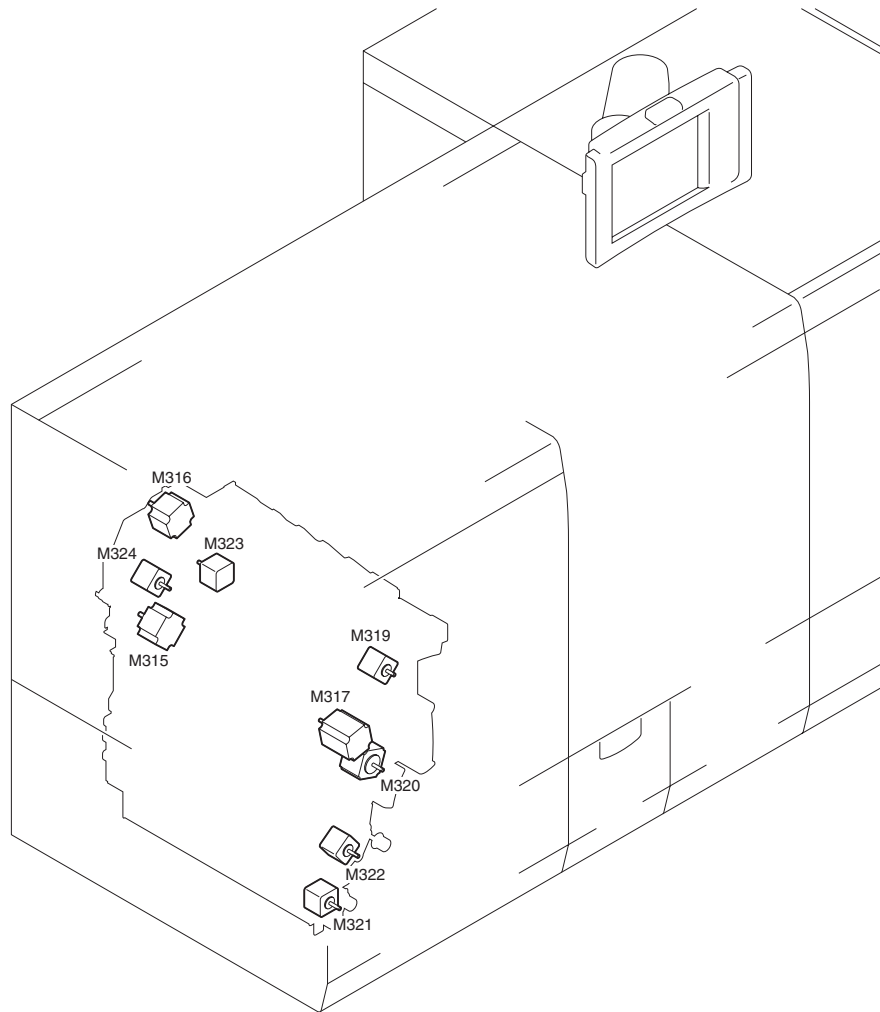
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

F-16-72
T-16-17

Symbol	Parts Name	Function	Parts No.	PART-CHK	E-code	Connector No.	
						Fixing duplexing feed driver PCB	DC controller PCB 1-2
M309	Fixing flapper motor	drive fixing flapper	FK2-3126	MTR>46	E015-0110	J4251/J4070	J1072
M310	Tandem feed motor	feed paper in tandem unit	FK2-3125	MTR>35		J4251/J4070	J1072
M311	Bypass feed motor	feed paper in bypass unit	FK2-3125	MTR>36		J4253/J4070	J1072
M312	Merger path feed motor	feed paper in merger path unit	FK2-3125	MTR>37		J4254/J4070	J1072
M333	Bypass decurler disengage/engage motor	press/release bypass decurler	FK2-3136			J4255/J4070	J1072
M334	Bypass decurler driving motor	drive bypass decurler	FK2-3136			J4255/J4070	J1072

16.4.2.10 Sub Station(4/5)

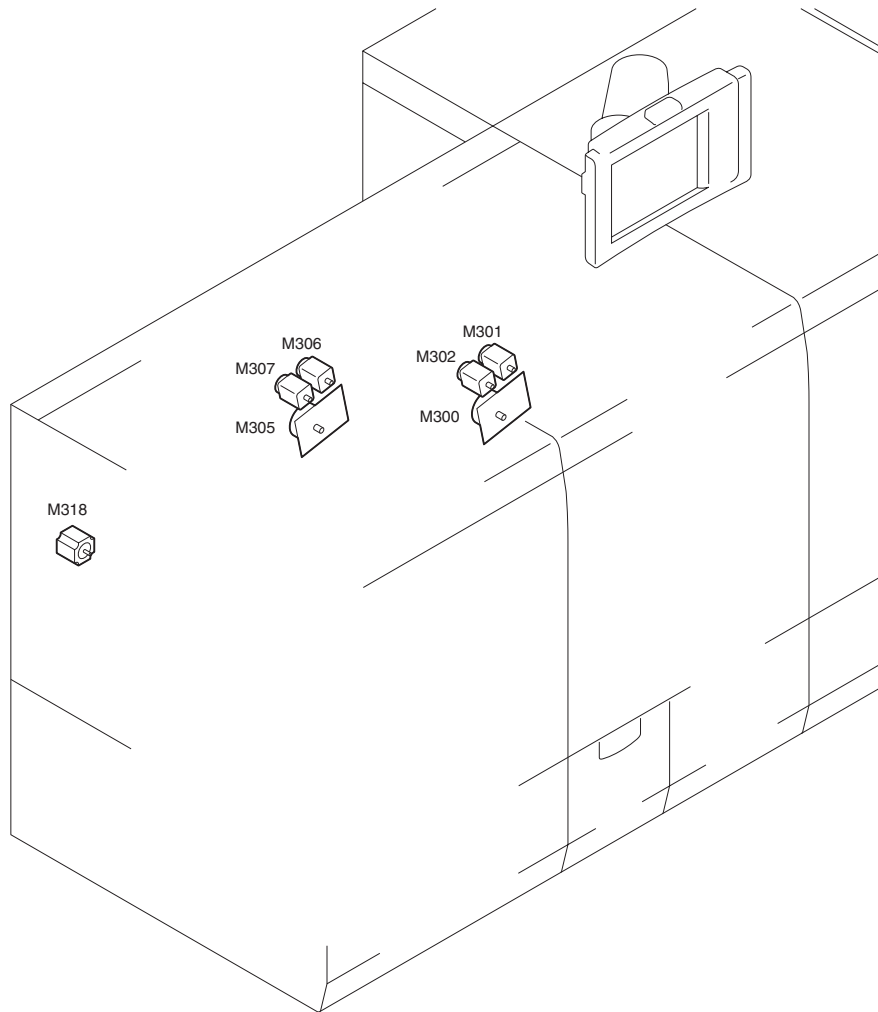
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

F-16-73
T-16-18

Symbol	Parts Name	Function	Parts No.	PART-CHK	E-code	Connector No.		
						Reverse / external delivery driver PCB	Fixing duplexing feed driver PCB	DC controller PCB 1-2
M315	Delivery decurler advancement adjusting motor 1	adjusti delivery decurler advancement (lower)	FK2-3132	MTR>44		J4120/ J4110	J4090/ J4070	J1072
M316	Delivery decurler advancement adjusting motor 2	adjusti delivery decurler advancement (upper)	FK2-3132	MTR>45		J4120/ J4110	J4090/ J4070	J1072
M317	Delivery decurler motor	drive delivery decurler	FK2-3135	MTR>43		J4124/ J4111	J4091/ J4070	J1072
M319	Delivery reverse flapper motor	drive delivery reverse flapper	FK2-3135	MTR>47	E015-0200	J4121/ J4110	J4090/ J4070	J1072
M320	Delivery reverse motor	drive delivery reverse unit	FK2-3134	MTR>41		J4121/ J4110	J4090/ J4070	J1072
M321	Duplexing delivery motor	drive duplexing delivery unit	FK2-3129	MTR>42		J4122/ J4110	J4090/ J4070	J1072
M322	Duplexing post-reverse motor	drive duplexing post-reverse unit	FK2-3129	MTR>49		J4122/ J4110	J4090/ J4070	J1072
M323	Pre-delivery feed motor 1	drive pre-delivery roller	FK2-3129	MTR>38		J4123/ J4110	J4090/ J4070	J1072
M324	Pre-delivery feed motor 2	drive delivery roller 2	FK2-3129	MTR>39		J4123/ J4110	J4090/ J4070	J1072

16.4.2.11 Sub Station(5/5)

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

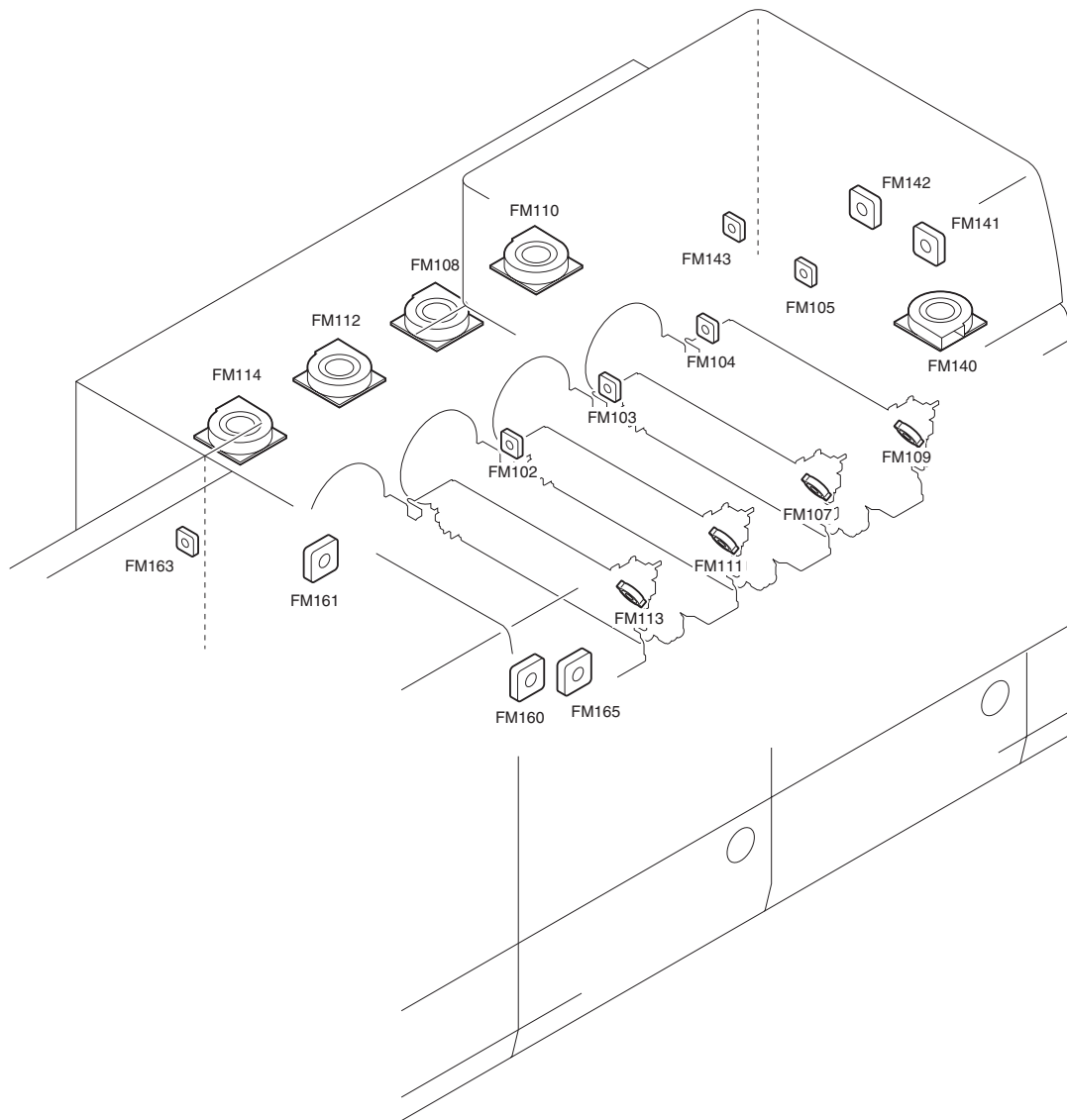
F-16-74
T-16-19

Symbol	Parts Name	Function	Parts No.	PART-CHK	E-code	Connector No.			
						Primary fixing external driver PCB	Secondary fixing external driver PCB	Duplexing feed driver PCB	DC controller PCB 1-2
M300	Primary fixing driving motor	drive primary fixing unit	FK2-2727		E014-0100	J4165P/ J4182P		J4082/ J4070	J1072
M301	Primary fixing outside heating roller pressure motor	press/release primary fixing outside heating roller	FK2-3154		E842-0101, 0121	J4163P/ J4182P		J4082/ J4070	J1072
M302	Primary fixing web pressure motor	press/release primary fixing web	FK2-3154		E842-0131	J4164P/ J4182P		J4082/ J4070	J1072
M305	Secondary fixing driving motor	drive secondary fixing unit	FK2-2727		E014-0200		J4165S/ J4182S	J4087/ J4070	J1072
M306	Secondary fixing outside heating roller pressure motor	press/release secondary fixing outside heating roller	FK2-3154		E842-0201, 0221		J4163S/ J4182S	J4087/ J4070	J1072
M307	Secondary fixing web pressure motor	press/release secondary fixing web	FK2-3154		E842-0231		J4164S/ J4182S	J4087/ J4070	J1072
M318	Delivery motor	drive delivery roller 3	FK2-3132					J4257/ J4070	J1072

16.4.3 Fan

16.4.3.1 Main Station(1/3)

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000



F-16-75
T-16-20

Symbol	Parts Name	Function	Parts No.	PART-CHK	Error Code/ Alarm Code
FM102	Laser cooling fan (C)	To cool the laser scanner unit	FH6-1486	FAN > 56	E121-0300
FM103	Laser cooling fan (Bk)	To cool the laser scanner unit	FH6-1486	FAN > 57	E121-0400
FM104	Laser cooling fan (M)	To cool the laser scanner unit	FH6-1486	FAN > 55	E121-0200
FM105	Laser cooling fan (Y)	To cool the laser scanner unit	FH6-1486	FAN > 56	E121-0100
FM107	Process unit cooling fan (C)	To cool the process unit	FK2-3149	FAN > 46	E820-0103
FM108	Process unit exhausting fan (C)	To exhaust air from the process unit	FK2-3098	FAN > 28	E820-0203
FM109	Process unit cooling fan (Bk)	To cool the process unit	FK2-3149	FAN > 47	E820-0104
FM110	Process unit exhausting fan (Bk)	To exhaust air from the process unit	FK2-3098	FAN > 29	E820-0204
FM111	Process unit cooling fan (M)	To cool the process unit	FK2-3149	FAN > 45	E820-0102
FM112	Process unit exhausting fan (M)	To exhaust air from the process unit	FK2-3098	FAN > 27	E820-0202
FM113	Process unit cooling fan (Y)	To cool the process unit	FK2-3149	FAN > 44	E820-0101
FM114	Process unit exhausting fan (Y)	To exhaust air from the process unit	FK2-3098	FAN > 26	E820-0201
FM140	Main station right cooling fan 1	To cool the main station	FK2-3100	FAN > 1	E822-0301
FM141	Main station right cooling fan 2	To cool the main station	FK2-3100	FAN > 2	E822-0302
FM142	Main station right cooling fan 3	To cool the main station	FK2-3100	FAN > 3	E822-0303
FM143	Main station rear right cooling fan	To cool the main station	FK2-3100	FAN > 4	E822-0304

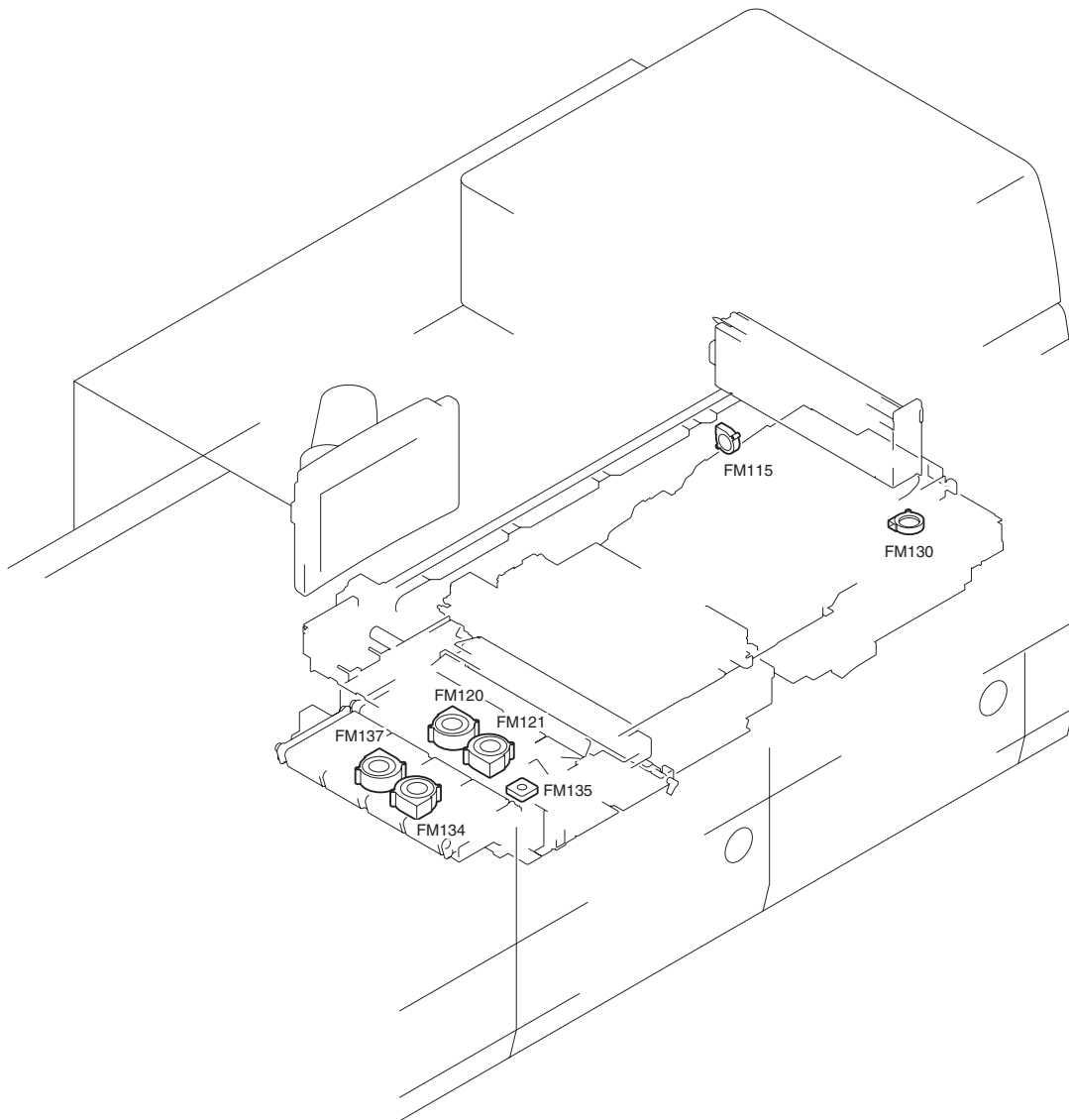
Symbol	Parts Name	Function	Parts No.	PART-CHK	Error Code / Alarm Code
FM160	Process unit front side cooling fan (Y)	To cool the developing assembly	FK2-3100	FAN > 70	E820-0301
FM161	Process unit rear side cooling fan (Y)	To cool the developing assembly	FK2-3100	FAN > 71	E820-0302
FM163	Main station rear left cooling fan	To cool the main station	FK2-3100	FAN > 72	E820-0305
FM165	Developing assembly cooling fan 1(Y)	To cool the developing assembly	FK2-3100	-	E820-0303

T-16-21

Symbol	Connector No.						
	Process unit driver PCB (C)	Process unit driver PCB (Bk)	Process unit driver PCB (M)	Process unit driver PCB (Y)	Secondary transfer/duplexing driver PCB cooling fan	Pre-fixing feed driver PCB	DC controller PCB 1-2
FM102							
FM103							
FM104							
FM105							
FM107	J1375C/J1360C						J1010
FM108							
FM109		J1375KJ1360K					J1012
FM110							
FM111			J1375M/J1360M				J1008
FM112							
FM113				J1375Y/J1360M			J1006
FM120					J1509/J1501		J1025
FM121					J1509/J1501		J1025
FM134						J1557/J1551	J1027
FM135					J1509/J1501		J1025
FM137						J1557/J1551	J1027
FM140							
FM141							
FM142							
FM143							
FM160							
FM161							
FM163							
FM165							

16.4.3.2 Main Station(2/3)

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

F-16-76
T-16-22

Symbol	Parts Name	Function	Parts No.	PART-CHK	Error Code / Alarm Code
FM115	Pre-transfer exhausting fan	To exhaust air from the pre-transfer charge assembly	FK2-3149	FAN > 42	E823-0001
FM120	Pre-fixing feed rear right fan	To attract paper to the pre-fixing feed belt	FL2-6885	FAN > 20	E805-0402
FM121	Pre-fixing feed front right fan	To attract paper to the pre-fixing feed belt	FL2-6885	FAN > 22	E805-0401
FM130	Registration feed driver PCB right cooling fan	To cool the registration feed driver PCB	FM3-2089	FAN > 33	E822-0501
FM134	Pre-fixing feed front left fan	To attract paper to the pre-fixing feed belt	FL2-6885	FAN > 25	E805-0403
FM135	Secondary transfer/duplexing driver PCB cooling fan	To cool the secondary transfer/duplexing driver PCB	FK2-3148	FAN > 49	E822-0502
FM137	Pre-fixing feed rear left fan	To attract paper to the pre-fixing feed belt	FL2-6885	FAN > 24	E805-0404

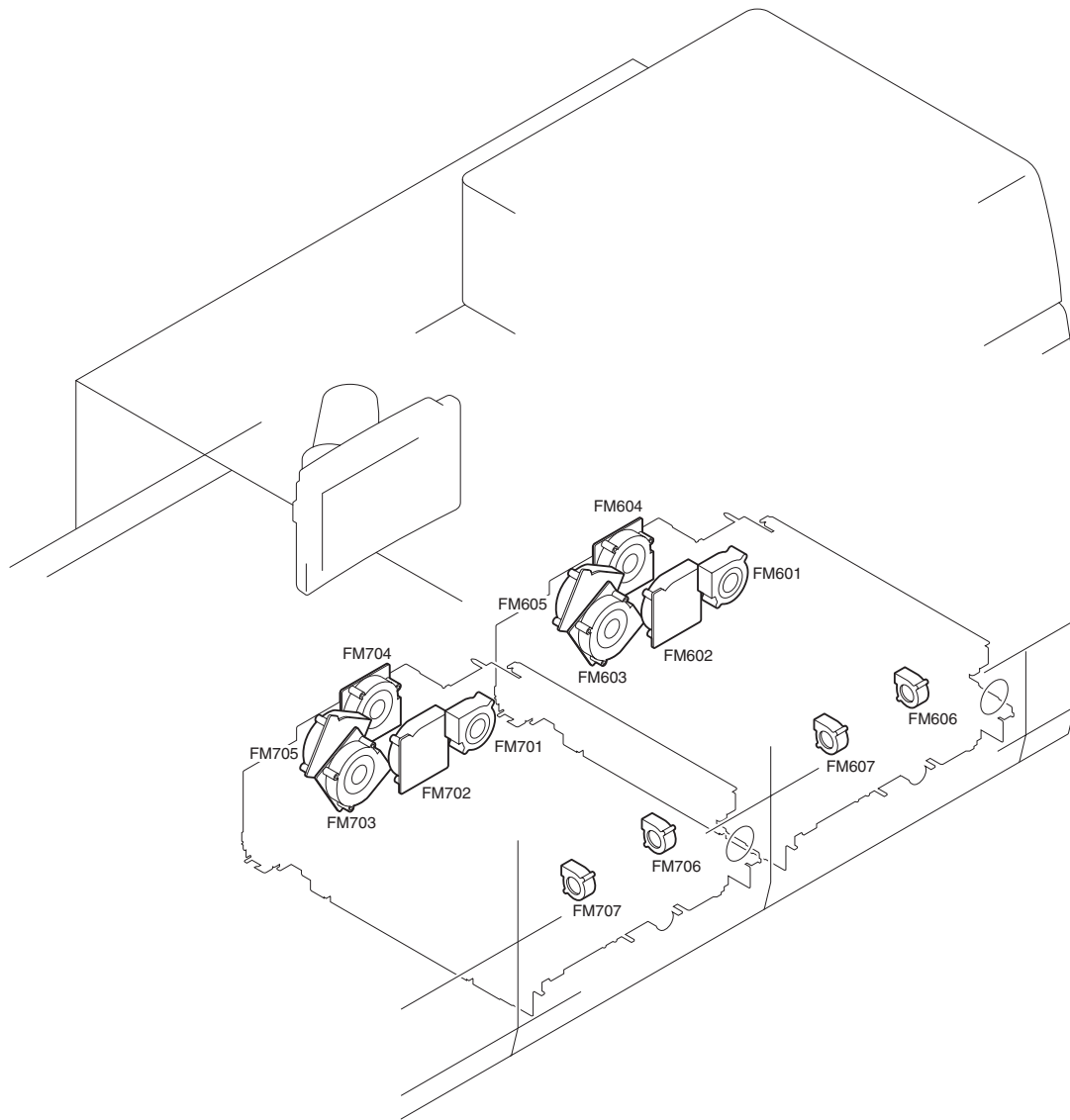
T-16-23

Symbol	Connector No.		
	ITB driver PCB (right)	DC controller PCB 1-1	Registration feed driver PCB (right)
FM115	J1334/J1330	J1032	
FM120			
FM121			

Symbol	Connector No.		
	ITB driver PCB (right)	DC controller PCB 1-1	Registration feed driver PCB (right)
FM130		J1021	J1232R/J1211R
FM134			
FM135			
FM137			

16.4.3.3 Main Station(3/3)

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000



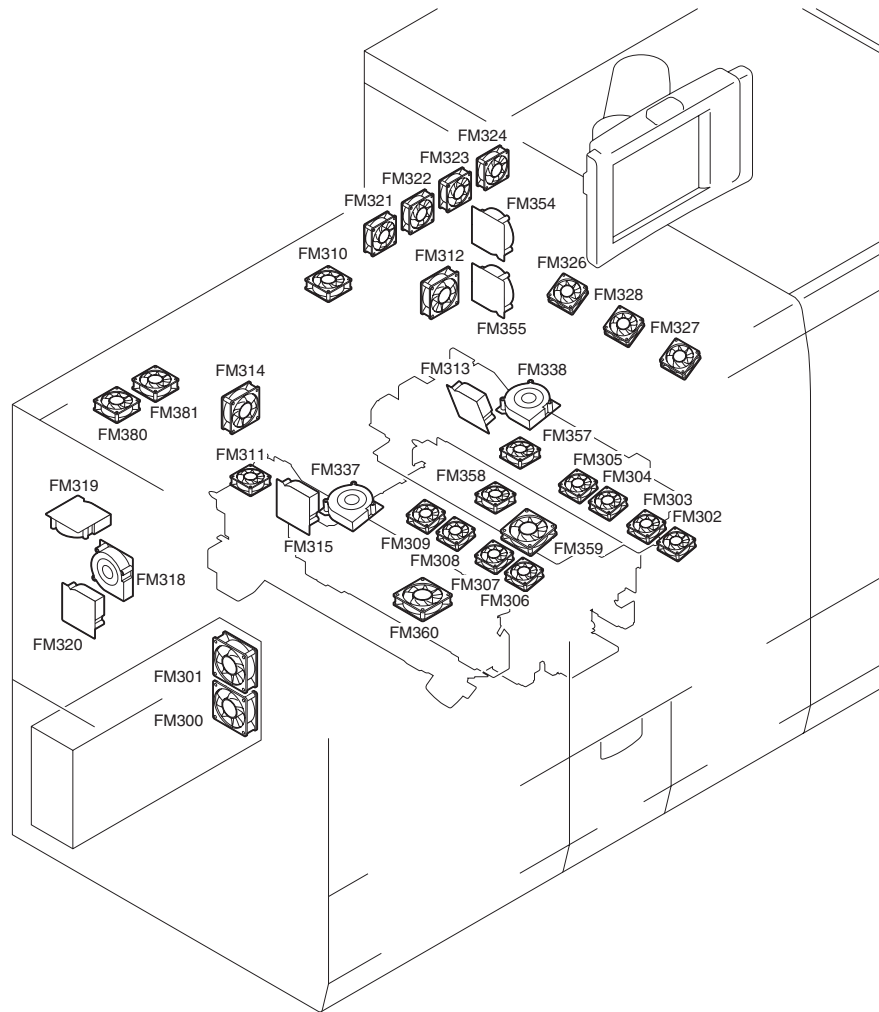
F-16-77
T-16-24

Symbol	Parts Name	Function	Parts No.	PART-CHK	Error Code / Alarm Code
FM601	Right deck suction fan	To pickup the paper	FK2-2974	-	04-1057/04-1058
FM602	Right deck main right floatation fan	To separate the paper	FK2-2974	-	04-1048/04-1049
FM603	Right deck main left floatation fan	To separate the paper	FK2-2974	-	04-10-50/04-1051
FM604	Right deck sub right floatation fan	To separate the paper	FK2-2974	-	04-1052/04-1053
FM605	Right deck sub left floatation fan	To separate the paper	FK2-2974	-	04-1054/04-1055
FM606	Right deck side right fan	To separate the paper (in larger sizes)	FK2-2975	-	04-1059
FM607	Right deck side left fan	To separate the paper (in larger sizes)	FK2-2975	-	04-1060
FM701	Left deck suction fan	To pickup the paper	FK2-2974	-	04-1157/04-1158
FM702	Left deck main right floatation fan	To separate the paper	FK2-2974	-	04-1148/04-1149
FM703	Left deck main left floatation fan	To separate the paper	FK2-2974	-	04-11-50/04-1151
FM704	Left deck sub right floatation fan	To separate the paper	FK2-2974	-	04-1152/04-1153
FM705	Left deck sub left floatation fan	To separate the paper	FK2-2974	-	04-1154/04-1155
FM706	Left deck side right fan	To separate the paper (in larger sizes)	FK2-2975	-	04-1159
FM707	Left deck side left fan	To separate the paper (in larger sizes)	FK2-2975	-	04-1160

Symbol	Connector No.					
	Registration feed driver PCB (right)	Right deck pickup driver PCB	Right deck driver PCB	Left deck pickup driver PCB	Left deck driver PCB	DC controller PCB 1-1
FM601		J2053R/J2051R				J1060
FM602		J2055R/J2051R				J1060
FM603		J2055R/J2051R				J1060
FM604		J2055R/J2051R				J1060
FM605		J2055R/J2051R				J1060
FM606		J2056R/J2051R	J2106R/J2102R			J1060
FM607		J2056R/J2051R	J2106R/J2102R			J1060
FM701				J2053L/J2051L		J1064
FM702				J2053L/J2051L		J1064
FM703				J2053L/J2051L		J1064
FM704				J2053L/J2051L		J1064
FM705				J2053L/J2051L		J1064
FM706				J2053L/J2051L	J2106L/J2102L	J1064
FM707				J2053L/J2051L	J2106L/J2102L	J1064

16.4.3.4 Sub Station (1/2)

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

F-16-78
T-16-26

Symbol	Parts Name	Function	Parts No.	PART-CHK	E Code/Alarm Code
FM300	Power supply cooling fan 7	To cool the power supply unit	FK2-3151	FAN > 53	E804-0104
FM301	Power supply cooling fan 8	To cool the power supply unit	FK2-3151	FAN > 53	E804-0104
FM302	Primary fixing belt cooling fan 1	To cool the fixing belt	FK2-3101	FAN > 90	E805-0101
FM303	Primary fixing belt cooling fan 2	To cool the fixing belt	FK2-3101	FAN > 91	E805-0102
FM304	Primary fixing belt cooling fan 3	To cool the fixing belt	FK2-3101	FAN > 92	E805-0103
FM305	Primary fixing belt cooling fan 4	To cool the fixing belt	FK2-3101	FAN > 93	E805-0104
FM306	Secondary fixing pressure roller cooling fan 1	To cool the pressure roller	FK2-3102	FAN > 97	E805-0301
FM307	Secondary fixing pressure roller cooling fan 2	To cool the pressure roller	FK2-3102	FAN > 98	E805-0302
FM308	Secondary fixing pressure roller cooling fan 3	To cool the pressure roller	FK2-3102	FAN > 99	E805-0303
FM309	Secondary fixing pressure roller cooling fan 4	To cool the pressure roller	FK2-3102	FAN > 100	E805-0304
FM310	Primary sub station power unit cooling fan	To cool the power unit located at the back of the sub-station	FK2-3100	FAN > 64	E805-0601
FM311	Secondary sub station power unit cooling fan	To cool the power unit located at the back of the sub-station	FK2-3100	FAN > 63	E805-0602
FM312	Primary fixing heat exhaust fan	To exhaust heat from the fixing assembly	FK2-3150	FAN > 62	E805-0201
FM313	Primary fixing inside delivery cooling fan	To cool the inner delivery unit and the paper at the fixing assembly	FK2-3098	FAN > 95	E822-0201
FM314	Secondary fixing heat exhaust fan	To exhaust heat from the fixing assembly	FK2-3150	FAN > 61	E805-0202
FM315	Secondary fixing inside delivery cooling fan	To cool the inner delivery unit and the paper at the fixing assembly	FK2-3098	FAN > 96	E822-0202
FM318	Delivery lower cooling fan	To cool the delivered paper through the delivery assembly	FK2-3098	FAN > 31	E822-0101
FM319	Delivery upper cooling fan	To cool the delivered paper through the delivery assembly	FK2-3098	FAN > 30	E822-0102

Symbol	Parts Name	Function	Parts No.	PART-CHK	E Code/Alarm Code
FM320	Duplexing decurler fan	To cool the delivered paper through the duplexing decurler	FK2-3098	FAN > 9	E822-0401
FM321	Station to station interval cooling fan 1	To cool the main station - sub station interval	FK2-3100	FAN > 10	E822-0601
FM322	Station to station interval cooling fan 2	To cool the main station - sub station interval	FK2-3100	FAN > 11	E822-0602
FM323	Station to station interval cooling fan 3	To cool the main station - sub station interval	FK2-3100	FAN > 12	E822-0603
FM324	Station to station interval cooling fan 4	To cool the main station - sub station interval	FK2-3100	FAN > 13	E822-0604
FM326	Station to station interval cooling fan 6	To cool the main station - sub station interval	FK2-3100	FAN > 15	E822-0606
FM327	Station to station interval cooling fan 7	To cool the main station - sub station interval	FK2-3100	FAN > 16	E822-0607
FM328	Station to station interval cooling fan 8	To cool the main station - sub station interval	FK2-3100	FAN > 17	E822-0608
FM337	Secondary fixing pressure roller cooling fan 5	To cool the pressure roller	FK2-3098	FAN > 89	E805-0305
FM338	Primary fixing belt cooling fan 5	To cool the fixing belt	FK2-3098	FAN > 94	E805-0105
FM354	Main station upper delivery fan	To exhaust air from the main station	FK2-3098	FAN > 80	E822-0801
FM355	Main station lower delivery fan	To exhaust air from the main station	FK2-3098	FAN > 81	E822-0802
FM357	Tandem guide upper cooling fan	To cool the tandem guide and the delivered paper	FK2-3100	FAN > 83	E822-0902
FM358	Tandem guide lower cooling fan	To cool the tandem guide and the delivered paper	FK2-3100	FAN > 84	E822-0903
FM359	Bypass guide front cooling fan	To cool the tandem guide and the delivered paper	FK2-0540	FAN > 85	E822-0904
FM360	Bypass guide rear cooling fan	To cool the tandem guide and the delivered paper	FK2-0540	FAN > 86	E822-0905
FM380	Fixing uneven gloss prevention fan right	Cooling papers for prevention of the uneven gloss	FK2-3100	-	-
FM381	Fixing uneven gloss prevention fan left	Cooling papers for prevention of the uneven gloss	FK2-3100	-	-

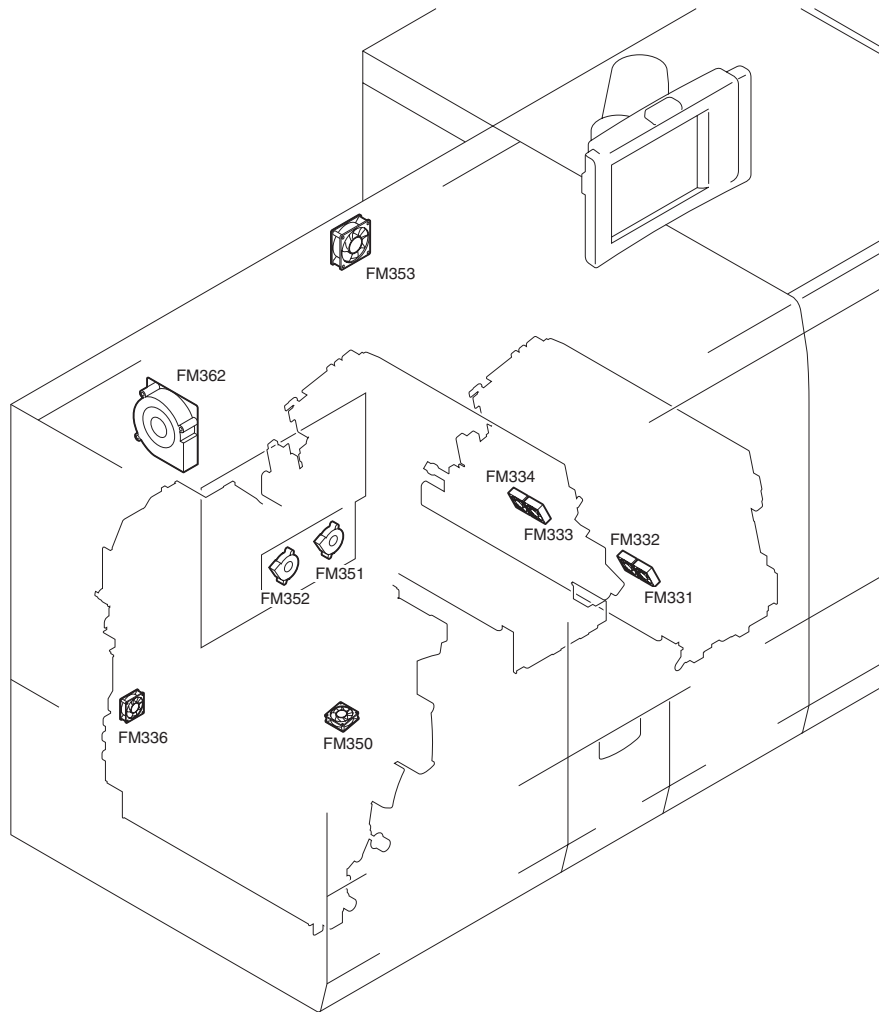
T-16-27

Symbol	Connector No.		
	Duplexing feed driver PCB	DC controller PCB 1-2	24V power supply 4
FM300	-	-	CN1
FM301	-	-	CN2
FM302	J4100/J4070	J1072	-
FM303	J4100/J4070	J1072	-
FM304	J4100/J4070	J1072	-
FM305	J4100/J4070	J1072	-
FM306	J4101/J4070	J1072	-
FM307	J4101/J4070	J1072	-
FM308	J4101/J4070	J1072	-
FM309	J4101/J4070	J1072	-
FM310	J4104/J4070	J1072	-
FM311	J4105/J4070	J1072	-
FM312	J4104/J4070	J1072	-
FM313	J4104/J4070	J1072	-
FM314	J4105/J4070	J1072	-
FM315	J4105/J4070	J1072	-
FM318	J4021/J4070	J1072	-
FM319	J4021/J4070	J1072	-
FM320	J4021/J4070	J1072	-
FM321	J4023/J4070	J1072	-
FM322	J4023/J4070	J1072	-
FM323	J4023/J4070	J1072	-
FM324	J4023/J4070	J1072	-
FM326	J4023/J4070	J1072	-
FM327	J4023/J4070	J1072	-
FM328	J4023/J4070	J1072	-
FM337	J4101/J4070	J1072	-
FM338	J4100/J4070	J1072	-
FM354	J4104/J4070	J1072	-
FM355	J4104/J4070	J1072	-
FM357	J4106/J4070	J1072	-

Symbol	Connector No.		
	Duplexing feed driver PCB	DC controller PCB 1-2	24V power supply 4
FM358	J4106/J4070	J1072	-
FM359	J4106/J4070	J1072	-
FM360	J4106/J4070	J1072	-
FM380	J4021/J4070	J1072	-
FM381	J4021/J4070	J1072	-

16.4.3.5 Sub Station(2/2)

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000



F-16-79
T-16-28

Symbol	Parts Name	Function	Parts No.	PART-CHK	Error Code
FM331	Primary fixing separating cooling fan 1	To cool the fixing belt (separating unit)	FK2-3148	FAN>100	E805-0701
FM332	Primary fixing separating cooling fan 2	To cool the fixing belt (separating unit)	FK2-3148	FAN>101	E805-0702
FM333	Primary fixing separating cooling fan 3	To cool the fixing belt (separating unit)	FK2-3148	FAN>102	E805-0703
FM334	Primary fixing separating cooling fan 4	To cool the fixing belt (separating unit)	FK2-3148	FAN>103	E805-0704
FM336	External delivery driver PCB cooling fan	To cool the external delivery driver PCB	FK2-3148	-	E822-0503
FM350	Delivery decurler cooling fan	To cool the delivered paper through the delivery assembly	FK2-3148	FAN>75	E822-0402
FM351	Fixing duplexing driver PCB left cooling fan	To cool the fixing duplexing driver PCB	FK2-3149	FAN > 77	E805-0801
FM352	Fixing duplexing driver PCB right cooling fan	To cool the fixing duplexing driver PCB	FK2-3149	FAN > 78	E805-0802
FM353	Reader cooling fan	To cool the reader (option)	FK2-0540	FAN > 79	E828-0001
FM361	Merger guide front fan	To cool the merger guide and the delivered paper	FK2-3099	FAN > 87	E822-0901

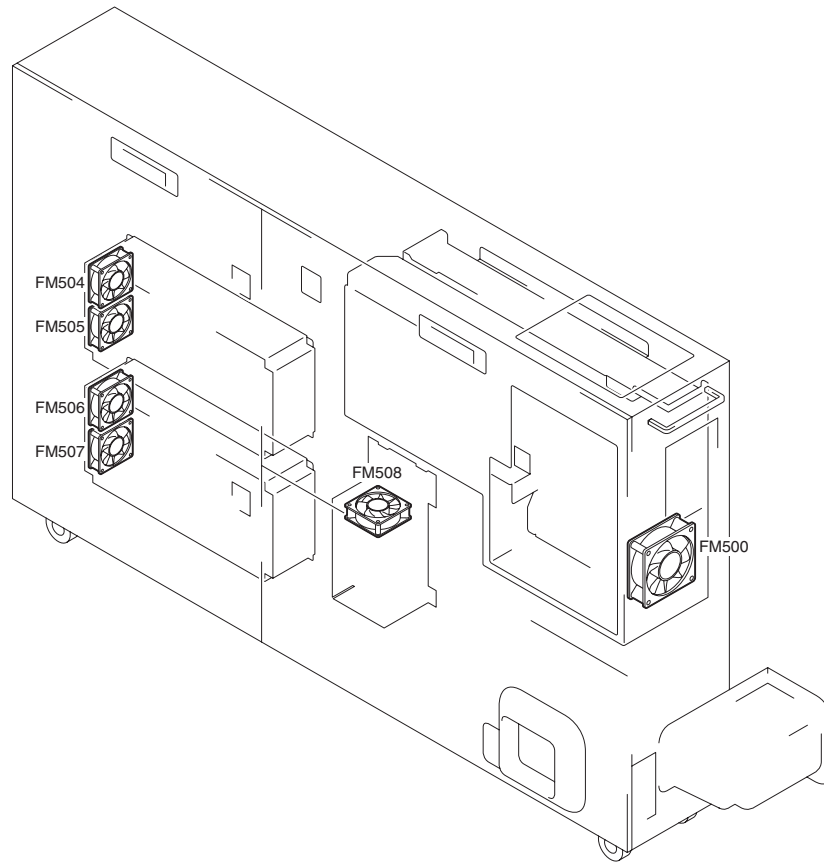
T-16-29

Symbol	Connector No.				
	Primary fixing inner driver PCB	Primary fixing heater driver PCB	DC controller PCB 1-2	External delivery driver PCB	Fixing duplexing driver PCB
FM331	J4372/J4360	J4080/J4400	J1003		
FM332	J4372/J4360	J4080/J4400	J1003		
FM333	J4372/J4360	J4080/J4400	J1003		
FM334	J4372/J4360	J4080/J4400	J1003		
FM336				J4128	J4091

Symbol	Connector No.				
	Primary fixing inner driver PCB	Primary fixing heater driver PCB	DC controller PCB 1-2	External delivery driver PCB	Fixing duplexing driver PCB
FM350	J11/J4111	J4091/J4071	J1070		
FM351					
FM352					
FM353					
FM361					

16.4.3.6 Power Unit Station

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000



F-16-80
T-16-30

Symbol	Parts Name	Function	Parts No.	PART-CHK	Error Code / Alarm Code
FM500	Main controller cooling fan 1	To cool the main controller	FK2-2888	-	E804-0004
FM504	Power supply cooling fan 3	To cool the 24V power supply 2	FK2-3151	FAN > 51	E804-0102
FM505	Power supply cooling fan 4	To cool the 24V power supply 2	FK2-3151	FAN > 51	E804-0102
FM506	Power supply cooling fan 5	To cool the 24V power supply 1	FK2-3151	FAN > 50	E804-0101
FM507	Power supply cooling fan 6	To cool the 24V power supply 1	FK2-3151	FAN > 50	E804-0101
FM508	Power supply cooling fan 9	To cool the 13V non-all-night power supply PCB	FK2-3151	-	-

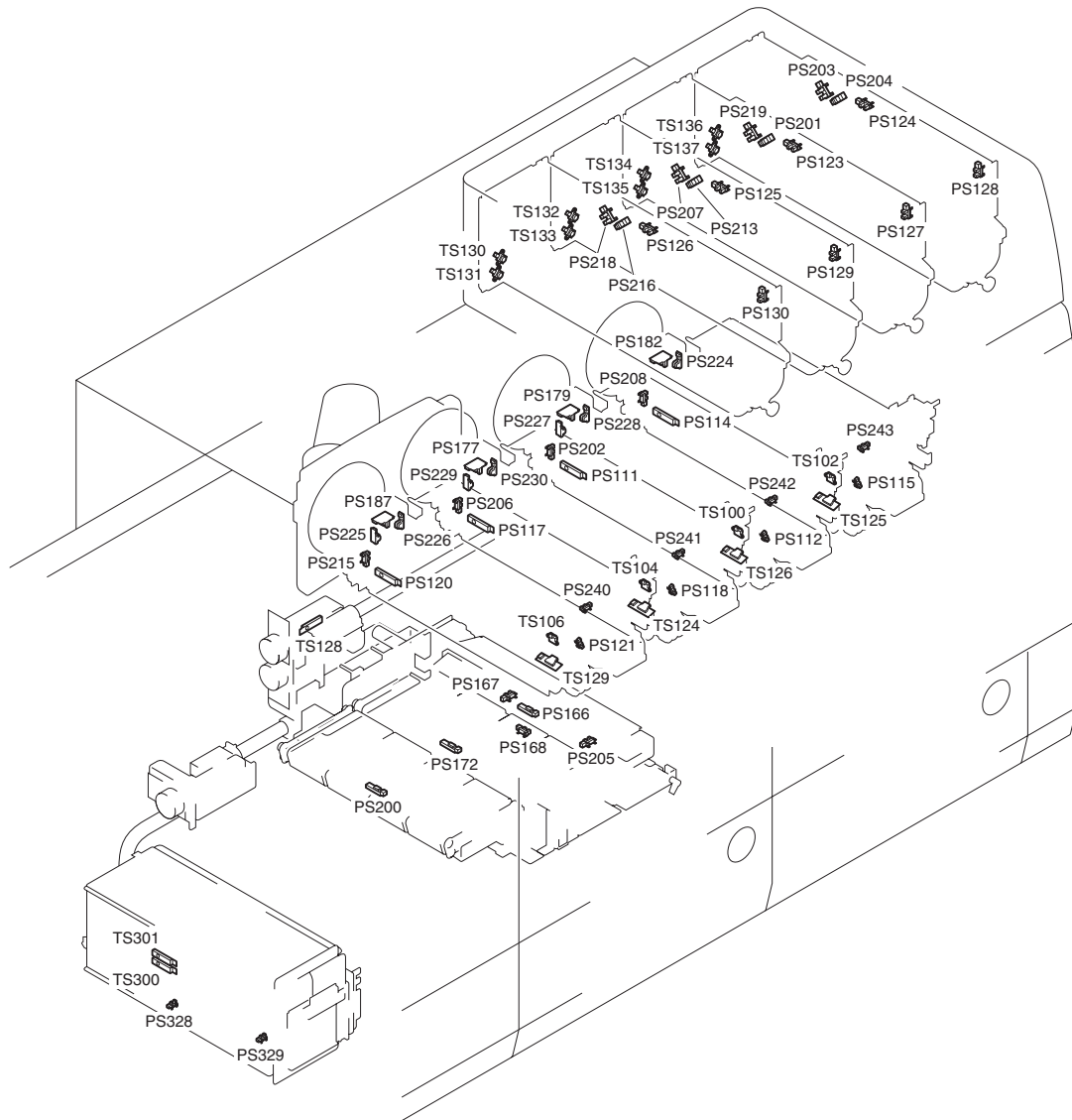
T-16-31

Symbol	Connector No.			
	Main controller PCB (MAIN-M)	24V power supply 1	24V power supply 2	13V non-all-night power supply PCB
FM500	J1007			
FM504			CN1	
FM505			CN2	
FM506		CN1		
FM507		CN2		
FM508				PN6

16.4.4 Sensor

16.4.4.1 Main Station(1/5)

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000



F-16-81
T-16-32

Notation	Name	Description	Parts No.	I/O
PS111	Drum patch sensor (C)	Patch image detection	FK2-0149	
PS112	Toner feed screw HP sensor	Toner feed screw HP detection(C)	FK2-0149	
PS114	Drum patch sensor (Bk)	Patch image detection	FK2-0149	
PS115	Toner feed screw HP sensor (Bk)	Toner feed screw HP detection(Bk)	FK2-0149	
PS117	Drum patch sensor (M)	Patch image detection	FK2-0149	
PS118	Toner feed screw HP sensor (M)	Toner feed screw HP detection(M)	FK2-0149	
PS120	Drum patch sensor (Y)	Patch image detection	FK2-0149	
PS121	Toner feed screw HP sensor (Y)	Toner feed screw HP detection(Y)	FK2-0149	
PS123	Hopper container presence/absence sensor	Hopper container presence/absence detection(C)	FK2-0149	
PS124	Hopper container presence/absence sensor (Bk)	Hopper container presence/absence detection(Bk)	FK2-0149	
PS125	Hopper container presence/absence sensor (M)	Hopper container presence/absence detection(M)	FK2-0149	
PS126	Hopper container presence/absence sensor (Y)	Hopper container presence/absence detection(Y)	FK2-0149	
PS127	Hopper cover sensor (C)	Hopper cover detection(C)	FK2-0149	
PS128	Hopper cover sensor (Bk)	Hopper cover detection(Bk)	FK2-0149	
PS129	Hopper cover sensor (M)	Hopper cover detection(M)	FK2-0149	
PS130	Hopper cover sensor (Y)	Hopper cover detection(Y)	FK2-0149	
PS166	Secondary transfer outlet sensor	Secondary transfer outlet detection	WG8-5736	P005-0

Notation	Name	Description	Parts No.	I/O
PS167	Secondary transfer pressure release HP sensor	Secondary transfer pressure release HP detection	FK2-0149	P005-8
PS168	Secondary transfer waste toner error sensor	Secondary transfer waste toner error detection	FK2-0149	P037-0
PS172	Pre-fixing feed sensor 1	Pre-fixing feed detection	WG8-5736	P005-2
PS177	Drum HP sensor (M)	Drum HP detection(M)	FM2-7724	
PS179	Drum HP sensor (C)	Drum HP detection (C)	FM2-7724	
PS182	Drum HP sensor (Bk)	Drum HP detection (Bk)	FM2-7724	
PS187	Drum HP sensor (Y)	Drum HP detection(Y)	FM2-7724	
PS200	Pre-fixing feed sensor 2	Pre-fixing feed sensor detection	WG8-5736	P005-1
PS201	Toner container slide sensor 2	Toner container slide detection (C)	FK2-0149	P037-13
PS202	Patch sensor cleaning motor HP sensor	Patch sensor cleaning motor HP detection (C)	FK2-0149	P015-7
PS203	Toner container slide sensor 1 (Bk)	Toner container slide detection (Bk)	FK2-0149	P037-14
PS204	Toner container slide sensor 2 (Bk)	Toner container slide detection (Bk)	FK2-0149	P037-15
PS205	Secondary transfer pressure release motor attachment position sensor	Secondary transfer pressure release motor position detection	FK2-0149	P015-9
PS206	Patch sensor cleaning motor HP sensor (M)	Patch sensor cleaning motor HP detection (M)	FK2-0149	P015-5
PS207	Toner container slide sensor 1 (M)	Toner container slide detection (M)	FK2-0149	P037-10
PS208	Patch sensor cleaning motor HP sensor (Bk)	Patch sensor cleaning motor HP detection(Bk)	FK2-0149	P015-7
PS213	Toner container slide sensor 2 (M)	Toner container slide detection (M)	FK2-0149	P037-11
PS215	Patch sensor cleaning motor HP sensor (Y)	Patch sensor cleaning motor HP detection (Y)	FK2-0149	P015-4
PS216	Toner container slide sensor 2 (Y)	Toner container slide detection (Y)	FK2-0149	P037-9
PS218	Toner container slide sensor 1 (Y)	Toner container slide detection (Y)	FK2-0149	P037-8
PS219	Toner container slide sensor 1	Toner container slide detection (C)	FK2-0149	P037-12
PS224	Drum encoder sensor A (Bk)	Drum encoder sensor A detection(Bk)	FM2-7722	
PS225	Drum encoder sensor B (Y)	Drum encoder sensor B detection(Y)	FM2-7723	
PS226	Drum encoder sensor A (Y)	Drum encoder sensor A detection(Y)	FM2-7722	
PS227	Drum encoder sensor B (C)	Drum encoder sensor B detection(C)	FM2-7723	
PS228	Drum encoder sensor A (C)	Drum encoder sensor A detection(C)	FM2-7723	
PS229	Drum encoder sensor B (M)	Drum encoder sensor B detection(M)	FM2-7723	
PS230	Drum encoder sensor A (M)	Drum encoder sensor A detection(M)	FM2-7722	
PS240	Primary charging wire cleaning motor HP sensor (Y)	Primary charging wire cleaning motor HP detection(Y)	FK2-0149	P015-0
PS241	Primary charging wire cleaning motor HP sensor (M)	Primary charging wire cleaning motor HP detection(M)	FK2-0149	P015-1
PS242	Primary charging wire cleaning motor HP sensor (C)	Primary charging wire cleaning motor HP detection(C)	FK2-0149	P015-2
PS243	Primary charging wire cleaning motor HP sensor (Bk)	Primary charging wire cleaning motor HP detection(Bk)	FK2-0149	P015-3
PS328	Waste toner container sensor	Waste toner container detection	FK2-0149	P012-6
PS329	Waste toner door switch sensor	Waste toner door switch detection	FK2-0149	P012-7
TS100	Sub hopper toner level sensor 1	Sub hopper toner level detection (C)	FK2-0590	P015-12
TS102	Sub hopper toner level sensor 1 (Bk)	Sub hopper toner level detection (Bk)	FK2-0590	P015-14
TS104	Sub hopper toner level sensor 1 (M)	Sub hopper toner level detection(M)	FK2-0590	P015-10
TS106	Sub hopper toner level sensor 1 (Y)	Sub hopper toner level detection(Y)	FK2-0590	P015-8
TS124	Developing assembly toner level sensor (M)	Developing assembly toner level detection(M)	FK2-2713	
TS125	Developing assembly toner level sensor (Bk)	Developing assembly toner level detection(Bk)	FK2-2713	
TS126	Developing assembly toner level sensor (C)	Developing assembly toner level detection(C)	FK2-2713	
TS128	Buffer toner full sensor	Developing assembly toner level detection	FK2-0591	
TS129	Developing assembly toner level sensor (Y)	Developing assembly toner level detection(Y)	FK2-2713	
TS130	Hopper toner level sensor 1 (Y)	Hopper toner level detection(Y)	FK2-0590	P038-7
TS131	Hopper toner level sensor 2 (Y)	Hopper toner level detection(Y)	FK2-0590	P038-3
TS132	Hopper toner level sensor 1 (M)	Hopper toner level detection(M)	FK2-0590	P038-6
TS133	Hopper toner level sensor 2 (M)	Hopper toner level detection(M)	FK2-0590	P038-4
TS134	Hopper toner level sensor 1	Hopper toner level detection (C)	FK2-0590	P038-2
TS135	Hopper toner level sensor 2	Hopper toner level detection (C)	FK2-0590	P038-1
TS136	Hopper toner level sensor 1 (Bk)	Hopper toner level detection(Bk)	FK2-0590	P038-0
TS137	Hopper toner level sensor 2 (Bk)	Hopper toner level detection(Bk)	FK2-0590	P038-5
TS300	Waste toner full sensor 2	Waste toner full the previous notice detection	FK2-0591	
TS301	Waste toner full sensor 1	Waste toner full detection	FK2-0591	

T-16-33

Notation	Jack No.								
	Process unit driver PCB (C)	Process unit driver PCB (Bk)	Process unit driver PCB (M)	Process unit driver PCB (Y)	Hopper driver PCB (C)	Hopper driver PCB (Bk)	Hopper driver PCB (M)	Hopper driver PCB (Y)	DC controller PCB 1-2
PS111	J1370C/ J1360C								J1010
PS112	J1374C/ J1361C								J1011

Notation	Jack No.								
	Process unit driver PCB (C)	Process unit driver PCB (Bk)	Process unit driver PCB (M)	Process unit driver PCB (Y)	Hopper driver PCB (C)	Hopper driver PCB (Bk)	Hopper driver PCB (M)	Hopper driver PCB (Y)	DC controller PCB 1-2
PS114		J1370K/ J1360K							J1012
PS115		J1374K/ J1361K							J1013
PS117			J1370M/ J1360M						J1008
PS118			J1374M/ J1361M						J1009
PS120				J1370Y/ J1360Y					J1006
PS121				J1374Y/ J1361Y					J1007
PS123					J1424C/ J1410C				J1016
PS124						J1424K/ J1410K			J1017
PS125							J1424M/ J1410M		J1015
PS126								J1424Y/ J1410Y	J1014
PS127					J1424C/ J1410C				J1016
PS128						J1424K/ J1410K			J1017
PS129							J1424M/ J1410M		J1015
PS130								J1424Y/ J1410Y	J1014
PS201					J1424C/ J1410C				J1016
PS202	J1377C/ J1361C								J1011
PS203						J1424K/ J1410K			J1017
PS204						J1424K/ J1410K			J1017
PS206			J1377M/ J1361M						J1009
PS207							J1424M/ J1410M		J1015
PS208		J1377K/ J1361K							J1013
PS213							J1424M/ J1410M		J1015
PS215				J1377Y/ J1361Y					J1007
PS216								J1424Y/ J1410Y	J1014
PS218								J1424Y/ J1410Y	J1014
PS219					J1424C/ J1410C				J1016
PS240				J1375Y/ J1361					J1007
PS241			J1375M/ J1631M						J1009
PS242	J1375C/ J1361C								J1011
PS243		J1375K/ J1361K							J1013
TS100	J1374C/ J1361C								J1011
TS102		J1374K/ J1361K							J1013
TS104			J1374M/ J1361M						J1009
TS106				J1374Y/ J1361Y					J1007
TS124			J1370M/ J1360M						J1008

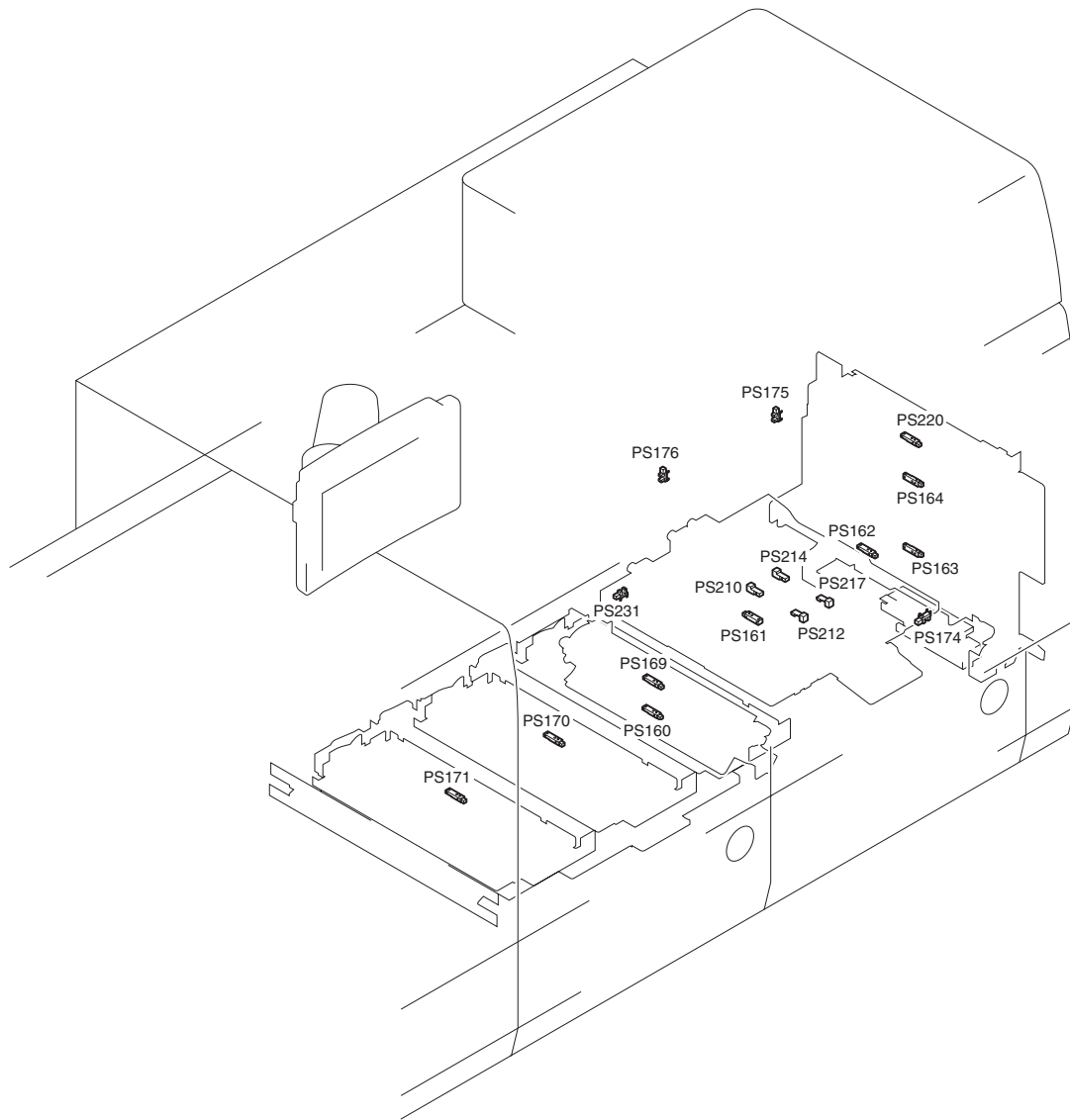
Notation	Jack No.								
	Process unit driver PCB (C)	Process unit driver PCB (Bk)	Process unit driver PCB (M)	Process unit driver PCB (Y)	Hopper driver PCB (C)	Hopper driver PCB (Bk)	Hopper driver PCB (M)	Hopper driver PCB (Y)	DC controller PCB 1-2
TS125		J1370K/ J1360K							J1012
TS126	J1370C/ J1360C								J1010
TS129				J1370Y/ J1360Y					J1006
TS130								J1423Y/ J1410Y	J1014
TS131								J1423Y/ J1410Y	J1014
TS132							J1423M/ J1410M		J1015
TS133							J1423M/ J1410M		J1015
TS134					J1423C/ J1410C				J1016
TS135					J1423C/ J1410C				J1016
TS136						J1423K/ J1410K			J1017
TS137						J1423K/ J1410K			J1017

T-16-34

Notation	Jack No.								
	Secondary transfer/duplexing driver PCB	Drum driver PCB (Bk)	Drum driver PCB (C)	Drum driver PCB (M)	Drum driver PCB (Y)	Pre-fixing feed driver PCB	Duplexing feed driver PCB	DC controller PCB 1-2	DC controller PCB 1-1
PS166	J1507/J1501							J1025	
PS167	J1507/J1513							J1024	
PS168	J1507/J1513							J1024	
PS172	J1505/J1501							J1025	
PS177				J1620M/ J1611M					J1036
PS179			J1620C/ J1611C						J1037
PS182		J1620K/ J1611K							J1038
PS187					J1620Y/ J1611Y				J1035
PS200						J1557/J1551		J1027	
PS205	J1507/J1501							J1025	
PS224		J1620K/ J1611K							J1038
PS225					J1620Y/ J1611Y				J1035
PS226					J1620Y/ J1611Y				J1035
PS227			J1620C/ J1611C						J1037
PS228			J1620C/ J1611C						J1037
PS229				J1620M/ J1611M					J1036
PS230				J1620M/ J1611M					J1036
PS328							J4032		
PS329							J4032		
TS126						J1561/1553		J1026	
TS300							J4032		
TS301							J4032		

16.4.4.2 Main Station(2/5)

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

F-16-82
T-16-35

Notation	Name	Description	Parts No.	I/O
PS160	Left deck merger sensor	Left deck merger detection	WG8-5736	P004-2
PS161	Lower feed sensor 1	Lower feed paper detection 1	WG8-5736	P004-4
PS162	Lower feed sensor 2	Lower feed paper detection 2	WG8-5736	P004-5
PS163	Right deck merger sensor	Right deck merger paper detection	WG8-5736	P004-1
PS164	Vertical path sensor	Vertical path paper detection	WG8-5736	P004-3
PS169	Duplexing standby sensor 1	Duplexing standby detection 1	WG8-5736	
PS170	Duplexing standby sensor 2	Duplexing standby detection 2	WG8-5736	
PS171	Duplexing standby sensor 3	Duplexing standby detection3	WG8-5736	
PS174	Vertical path cover open/close sensor	Vertical path cover open/close detection	FK2-0149	P040-5
PS175	Main station right front cover open/close sensor	Front cover detection	FK2-0149	
PS176	Main station left front cover open/close sensor	Front cover detection	FK2-0149	
PS210	Lower feed path paper length sensor (rear left)	Lower feed path paper length detection (rear left)	FM2-2186(PAPER LENGTH SENSOR ASSEMBLY)	
PS212	Lower feed path paper length sensor (front left)	Lower feed path paper length detection (front left)	FM2-2186(PAPER LENGTH SENSOR ASSEMBLY)	

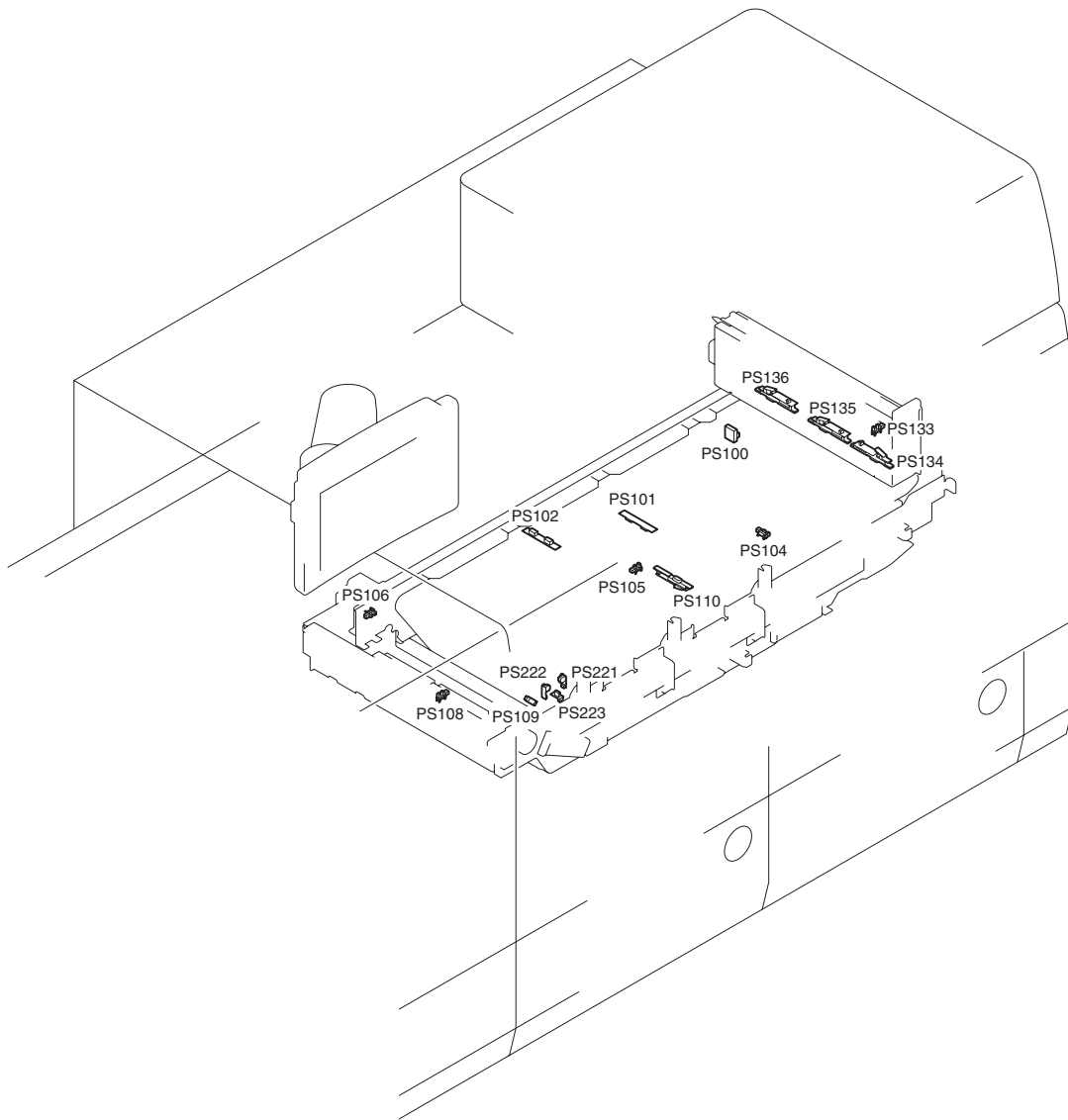
Notation	Name	Description	Parts No.	I/O
PS214	Lower feed path paper length sensor (rear right)	Lower feed path paper length detection (rear right)	FM2-2186(PAPER LENGTH SENSOR ASSEMBLY)	
PS217	Lower feed path paper length sensor (front right)	Lower feed path paper length detection (front right)	FM2-2186(PAPER LENGTH SENSOR ASSEMBLY)	
PS220	POD deck path sensor	POD deck path paper detection	WG8-5736	P004-0
PS231	Lower feed guide open/close sensor	Lower feed guide open/close detection	FK2-0149	P025-13

T-16-36

Notation	Jack No.				
	Vertical path/lower feed driver PCB	Secondary transfer/duplexing driver PCB	Main station power supply connect PCB	DC controller PCB 1-1	DC controller PCB 1-2
PS160	J1507V/J1501V			J1019	
PS161	J1507V/J1501V			J1019	
PS162	J1505V/J1501V			J1019	
PS163	J1505V/J1501V			J1019	
PS164	J1505V/J1501V			J1019	
PS169		J1505/J1501			J1025
PS170		J1505/J1501			J1025
PS171		J1505/J1501			J1025
PS174			J1813/J1810		J1001
PS175			J1813/J1810		J1001
PS176			J1813/J1810		J1001
PS210	J1511V/J1508V			J1057	
PS212	J1511V/J1508V			J1057	
PS214	J1511V/J1508V			J1057	
PS217	J1511V/J1508V			J1057	
PS220	J1505V/J1501V			J1019	
PS231	J1507V/J1500V			J1018	

16.4.4.3 Main Station(3/5)

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000



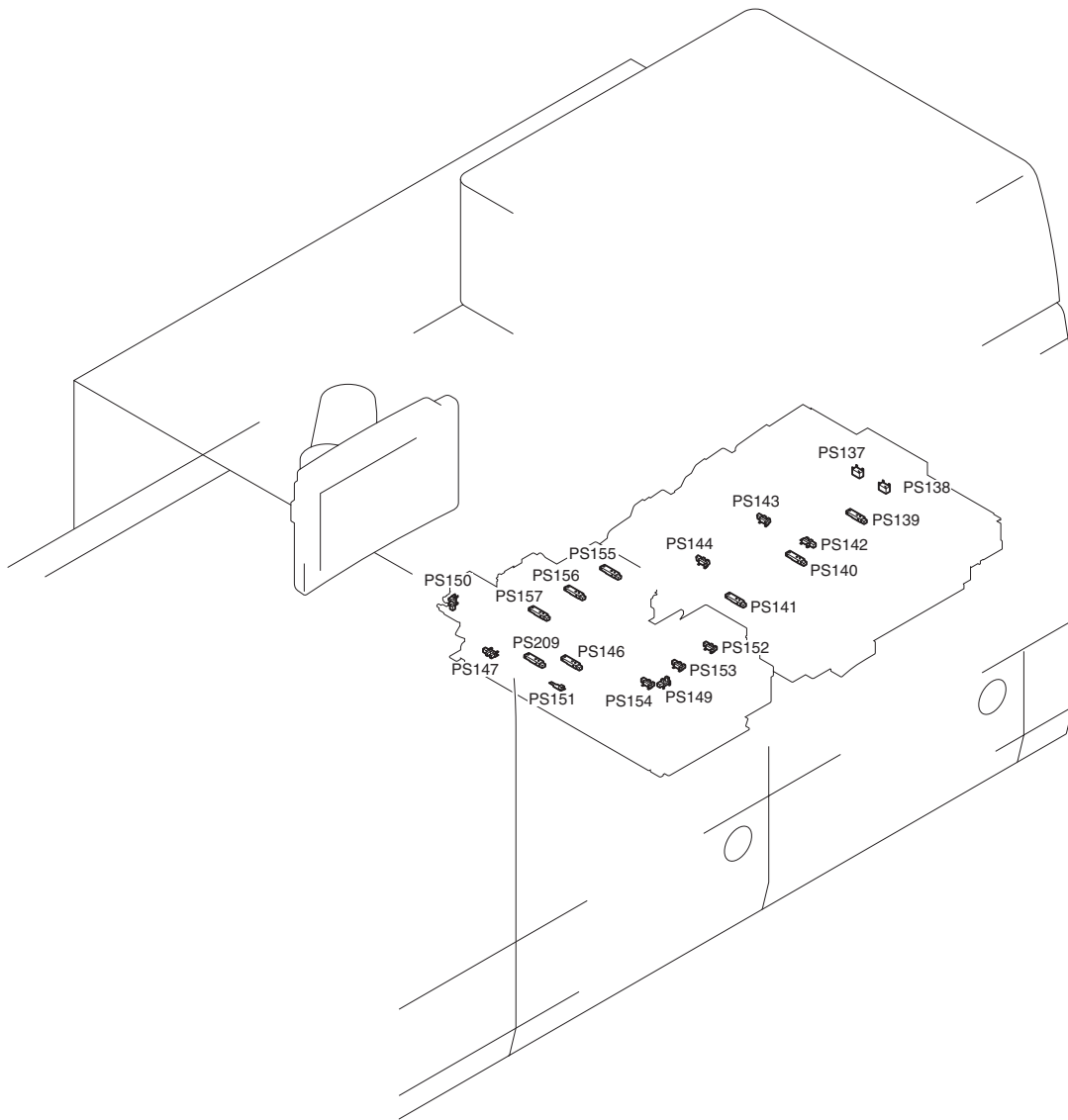
F-16-83
T-16-37

Notation	Name	Description	Parts No.	I/O
PS100	ITB displacement sensor	ITB displacement detection	FH7-7530	
PS101	ITB HP lower sensor	ITB HP lower detection	FK2-0161	P003-2
PS102	ITB HP upper sensor	ITB HP upper detection	FK2-0161	
PS104	ITB steering motor HP sensor	ITB steering motor HP detection	FK2-0149	P003-3
PS105	Leading edge registration shutter HP sensor	Leading edge registration shutter HP detection	FK2-0149	
PS106	ITB web feed sensor	ITB web feed detection	FK2-0149	P003-1
PS108	ITB web releasing sensor	ITB web releasing detection	FK2-0149	
PS109	ITB web absence sensor	ITB web absence detection	FK2-0149	P003-0
PS110	Leading edge registration patch sensor	Leading edge registration patch image detection	FM2-9256	
PS133	Registration patch sensor shutter HP sensor	Registration patch sensor shutter HP detection	FK2-0149	P005-11
PS134	Registration patch sensor (front)	Color registration patch image detection	FM2-9256	
PS135	Registration patch sensor (center)	Color registration patch image detection	FM2-9256	
PS136	Registration patch sensor (rear)	Color registration patch image detection	FM2-9256	
PS221	ITB drive roller encoder sensor A	ITB drive roller encoder detection A	FM2-7719	
PS222	ITB drive roller encoder sensor B	ITB drive roller encoder detection B	FM2-7719	
PS223	ITB drive roller HP sensor	ITB drive roller HP detection	FM2-7719	

Notation	Jack No.					
	ITB driver PCB (center)	ITB driver PCB (right)	ITB driver PCB (left)	Registration patch sensor driver PCB	DC controller PCB 1-1	DC controller PCB 1-2
PS100	J1315/J1303				J1034	
PS101	J1318/J1302				J1033	
PS102	J1315/J1302				J1033	
PS104	J1316/J1302				J1033	
PS105		J1333/J1330			J1032	
PS106	J1313/J1302				J1033	
PS108			J1341/J1338			J1046
PS109	J1313					
PS110		J1333/J1330			J1032	
PS133				J1458/J1450		J1028
PS134				J1453/J1450		J1028
PS135				J1454/J1450		J1028
PS136				J1455/J1450		J1028
PS221	J1314/J1302				J1033	
PS222	J1314/J1302				J1033	
PS223	J1314/J1302				J1033	

16.4.4.4 Main Station(4/5)

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

F-16-84
T-16-39

Notation	Name	Description	Parts No.	I/O
PS137	Transparency sensor (rear)	OHP paper detection	RH7-7129	P002-15
PS138	Transparency sensor (front)	OHP paper detection	RH7-7129	P002-14
PS139	Pre-feed sensor 1	Pre-feed paper detection 1	WG8-5736	P001-1
PS140	Pre-feed sensor 2	Pre-feed paper detection 2	WG8-5736	P001-2
PS141	Pre-feed sensor 3	Pre-feed paper detection 3	WG8-5736	P001-3
PS142	Cross feed pressure release motor HP sensor 1	Cross feed pressure release motor HP detection 1	FK2-0149	P002-0
PS143	Cross feed pressure release motor HP sensor 2	Cross feed pressure release motor HP detection 2	FK2-0149	P002-1
PS144	Cross feed pressure release motor HP sensor 3	Cross feed pressure release motor HP detection 3	FK2-0149	P002-2
PS146	Pre-registration sensor	Pre-registration paper detection	WG8-5736	P001-0
PS147	Registration roller release HP sensor 1	Registration roller release HPdetection 1	FK2-0149	P002-4
PS149	Cross feed plate HP sensor	Cross feed plate HP detection	FK2-0149	P002-3
PS150	Registration roller slide HP sensor	Registration roller slide HP detection	FK2-0149	P002-6
PS151	Registration sensor	Registration paper detection	FG6-8605	P001-6
PS152	Cross feed roller pressure release HP sensor 1	Cross feed roller pressure release HP detection 1	FK2-0149	P002-11
PS153	Cross feed roller pressure release HP sensor 2	Cross feed roller pressure release HP detection 2	FK2-0149	P002-12
PS154	Cross feed roller pressure release HP sensor 3	Cross feed roller pressure release HP detection3	FK2-0149	P002-13
PS155	Cross feed sensor 1	Cross feed detection 1	WG8-5736	P002-8
PS156	Cross feed sensor 2	Cross feed detection 2	WG8-5736	P002-9

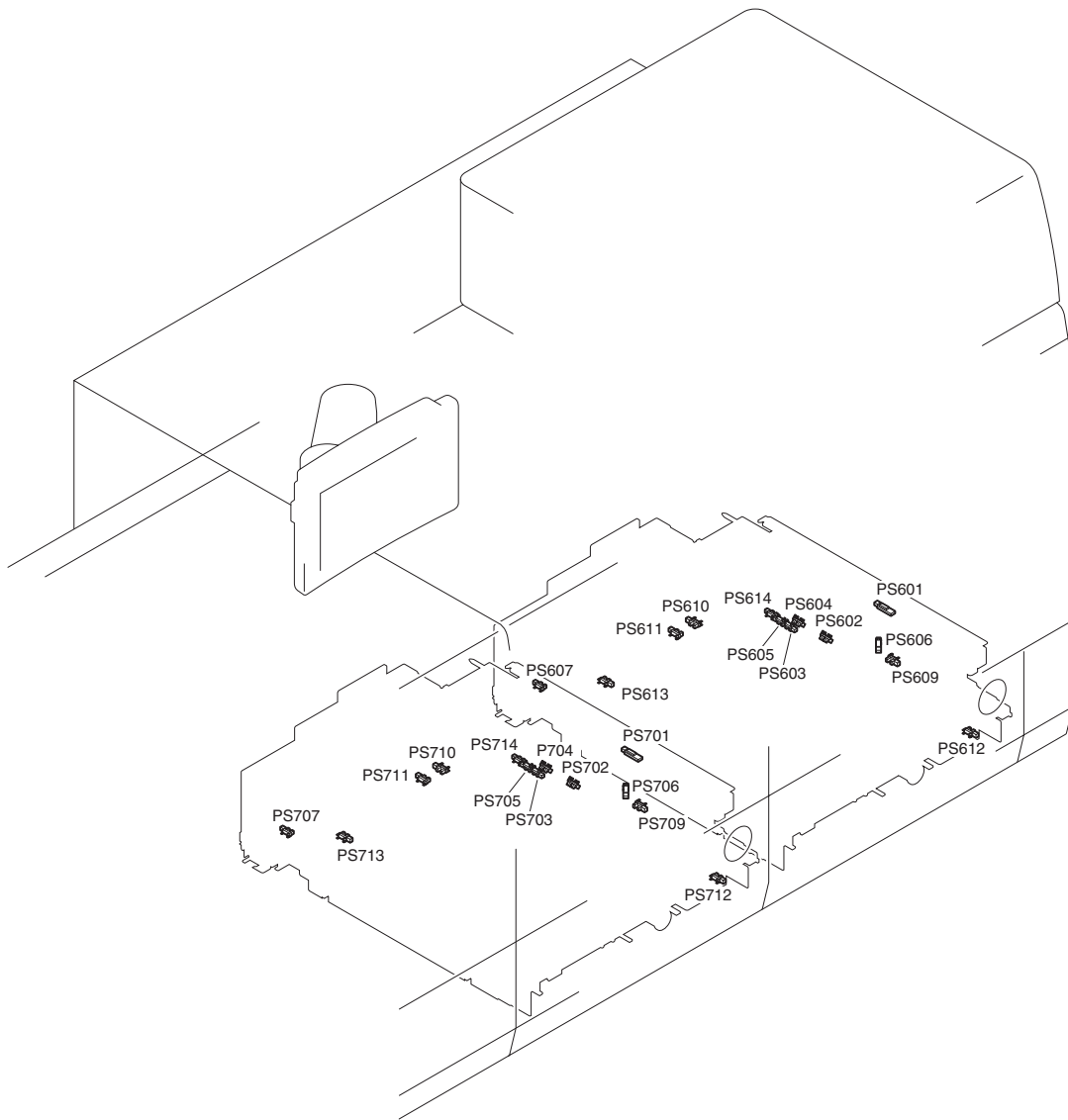
Notation	Name	Description	Parts No.	I/O
PS157	Cross feed sensor 3	Cross feed detection 3	WG8-5736	P002-10
PS209	Post-registration sensor	Post-registration detection	WG8-5736	P001-4

T-16-40

Notation	Jack No.		
	Registration feed driver PCB (left)	Registration feed driver PCB (right)	DC controller PCB 1-1
PS137	J1232L/J1211L		J1023
PS138		J1932R/J1211R	J1021
PS139		J1930R/J1211R	J1021
PS140		J1930R/J1211R	J1021
PS141		J1930R/J1211R	J1021
PS142		J1931R/J1211R	J1021
PS143		J1931R/J1211R	J1021
PS144		J1931R/J1211R	J1021
PS146	J1230L/J1211L		J1023
PS147	J1231L/J1211L		J1023
PS149	J1231L/J1211L		J1023
PS150	J1231L/J1211L		J1023
PS151		J1940R	
PS152	J1231L/J1211L		J1023
PS153	J1231L/J1211L		J1023
PS154	J1231L/J1211L		J1023
PS155	J1230L/J1211L		J1023
PS156	J1230L/J1211L		J1023
PS157	J1230L/J1211L		J1023
PS209	J1230L/J1211L		J1023

16.4.4.5 Main Station(5/5)

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

F-16-85
T-16-41

Notation	Name	Description	Parts No.	I/O
PS601	Right deck pull-out sensor	Right deck pull-out detection	WG8-5736	
PS602	Right deck paper sensor	Right deck paper detection	FK2-0149	
PS603	Right deck upper limit paper surface sensor	Right deck upper limit paper surface detection	FK2-0149	
PS604	Right deck lower limit paper surface sensor	Right deck lower limit paper surface detection	FK2-0149	
PS605	Right deck middle paper surface sensor	Right deck middle paper surface detection	FK2-0149	
PS606	Right deck suction completion sensor	Right deck suction completion detection	FK2-0149	
PS607	Right deck open/close sensor	Right deck open/close detection	FK2-0149	
PS609	Right deck supply position sensor	Right deck supply position detection	FM2-2006	
PS610	Right deck paper level sensor (right)	Right deck paper level detection	FK2-0149	
PS611	Right deck paper level sensor (left)	Right deck paper level detection	FK2-0149	
PS612	Right deck lifter lower limit sensor	Right deck lifter lower limit detection	FK2-0149	
PS613	Right deck foreign matter sensor	Right deck foreign matter detection	FK2-0149	
PS614	Right deck lifter upper limit sensor	Right deck lifter upper limit detection	FK2-0149	
PS701	Left deck pull-out sensor	Left deck pull-out detection	WG8-5736	
PS702	Left deck paper sensor	Left deck paper detection	FK2-0149	
PS703	Left deck upper limit paper surface sensor	Left deck upper limit paper surface detection	FK2-0149	
PS704	Left deck lower limit paper surface sensor	Left deck lower limit paper surface detection	FK2-0149	
PS705	Left deck middle paper surface sensor	Left deck middle paper surface detection	FK2-0149	
PS706	Left deck suction completion sensor	Left deck suction completion detection	FK2-0149	

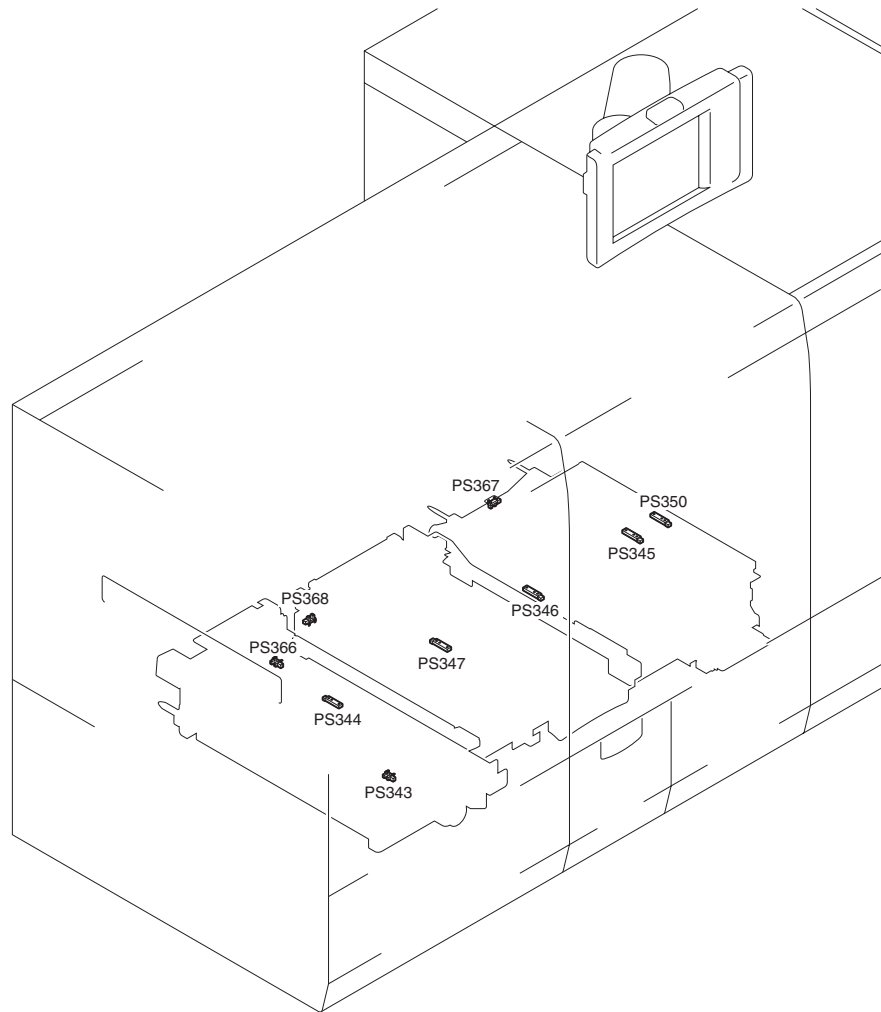
Notation	Name	Description	Parts No.	I/O
PS707	Left deck open/close sensor	Left deck open/close detection	FK2-0149	
PS709	Left deck supply position sensor	Left deck supply position detection	FM2-2006	
PS710	Left deck paper level sensor (right)	Left deck paper level detection	FK2-0149	
PS711	Left deck paper level sensor (left)	Left deck paper level detection	FK2-0149	
PS712	Left deck lifter lower limit sensor	Left deck lifter lower limit detection	FK2-0149	
PS713	Left deck foreign matter sensor	Left deck foreign matter detection	FK2-0149	
PS714	Left deck lifter upper limit sensor	Left deck lifter upper limit detection	FK2-0149	

T-16-42

Notation	Jack No.				
	Right deck driver PCB	Right deck pickup driver PCB	Left deck driver PCB	Left deck pickup driver PCB	DC controller PCB 1-1
PS601		J2053R/J2051R			J1060
PS602		J2053R/J2051R			J1060
PS603		J2053R/J2051R			J1060
PS604		J2053R/J2051R			J1060
PS605		J2053R/J2051R			J1060
PS606		J2053R/J2051R			J1060
PS607		J2061R/J2051R			J1060
PS609	J2107R/J1202R	J2056R/J2051R			J1060
PS610	J2107R/J1202R	J2056R/J2051R			J1060
PS611	J2107R/J1202R	J2056R/J2051R			J1060
PS612	J2107R/J1202R	J2056R/J2051R			J1060
PS613					
PS614					
PS701				J2053L/J2051L	J1064
PS702				J2053L/J2051L	J1064
PS703				J2053L/J2051L	J1064
PS704				J2053L/J2051L	J1064
PS705				J2053L/J2051L	J1064
PS706				J2053L/J2051L	J1064
PS707				J2061L/J2051L	J1064
PS709			J2107L/J202L	J2056L/J2051L	J1064
PS710			J2107L/J202L	J2056L/J2051L	J1064
PS711			J2107L/J202L	J2056L/J2051L	J1064
PS712			J2107L/J202L	J2056L/J2051L	J1064
PS713					
PS714					

16.4.4.6 Sub Station(1/4)

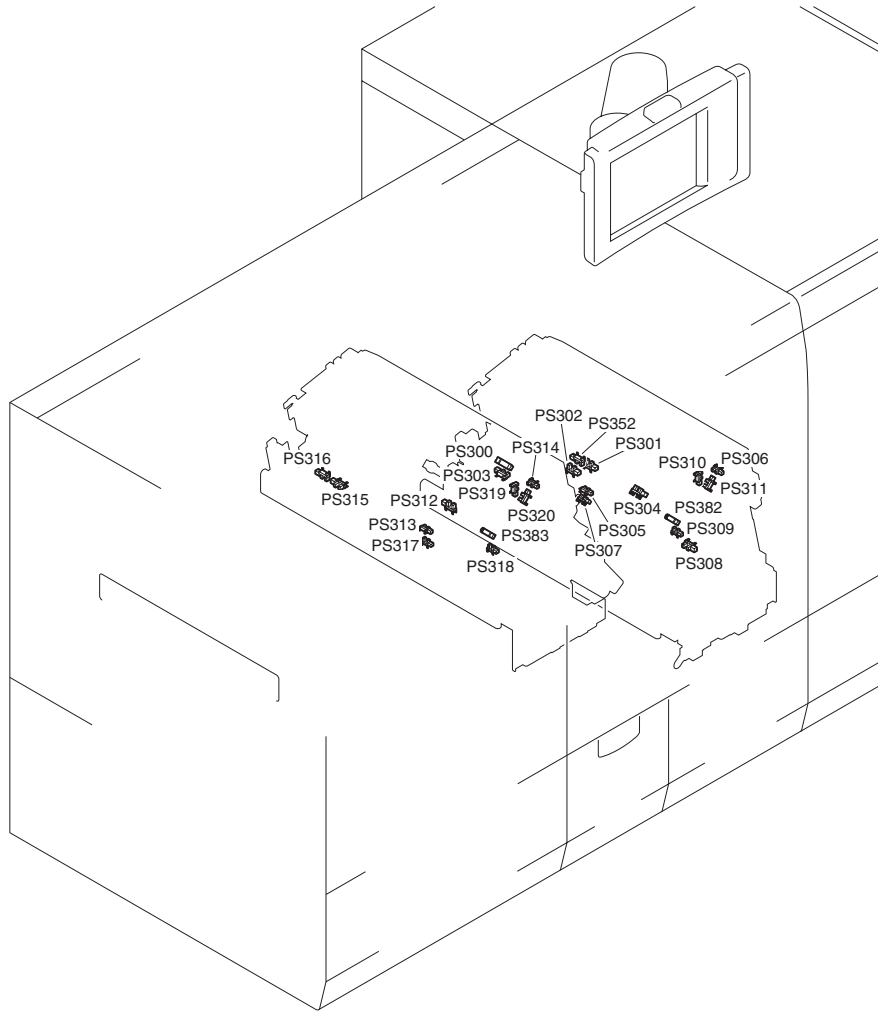
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

F-16-86
T-16-43

Notation	Name	Description	Parts No.	I/O	Jack No.	
					Duplexing feed driver PCB	DC controller PCB 1-2
PS343	Duplexing decurler HP sensor	Duplexing decurler HP detection	FK2-0149		J4033/J4070	J1072
PS344	Duplexing path inlet sensor	Duplexing path inlet detection	WG8-5736		J4033/J4070	J1072
PS345	Duplexing standby sensor 4	Duplexing path standby paper detection 4	WG8-5736		J4035/J4070	J1072
PS346	Duplexing standby sensor 5	Duplexing path standby paper detection 5	WG8-5736		J4035/J4070	J1072
PS347	Duplexing standby sensor 6	Duplexing path standby paper detection 6	WG8-5736		J4033/J4070	J1072
PS350	Duplexing path sub station outlet sensor	Duplexing path outlet detection	WG8-5736		J4035/J4070	J1072
PS366	Duplexing inlet guide open/close sensor	Duplexing inlet guide open/close detection	FK2-0149		J4033/J4070	J1072
PS367	Duplexing right guide open/close sensor	Duplexing right guide open/close detection	FK2-0149		J4035/J4070	J1072
PS368	Duplexing left guide open/close sensor	Duplexing left guide open/close detection	FK2-0149		J4033/J4070	J1072

16.4.4.7 Sub Station(2/4)

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000



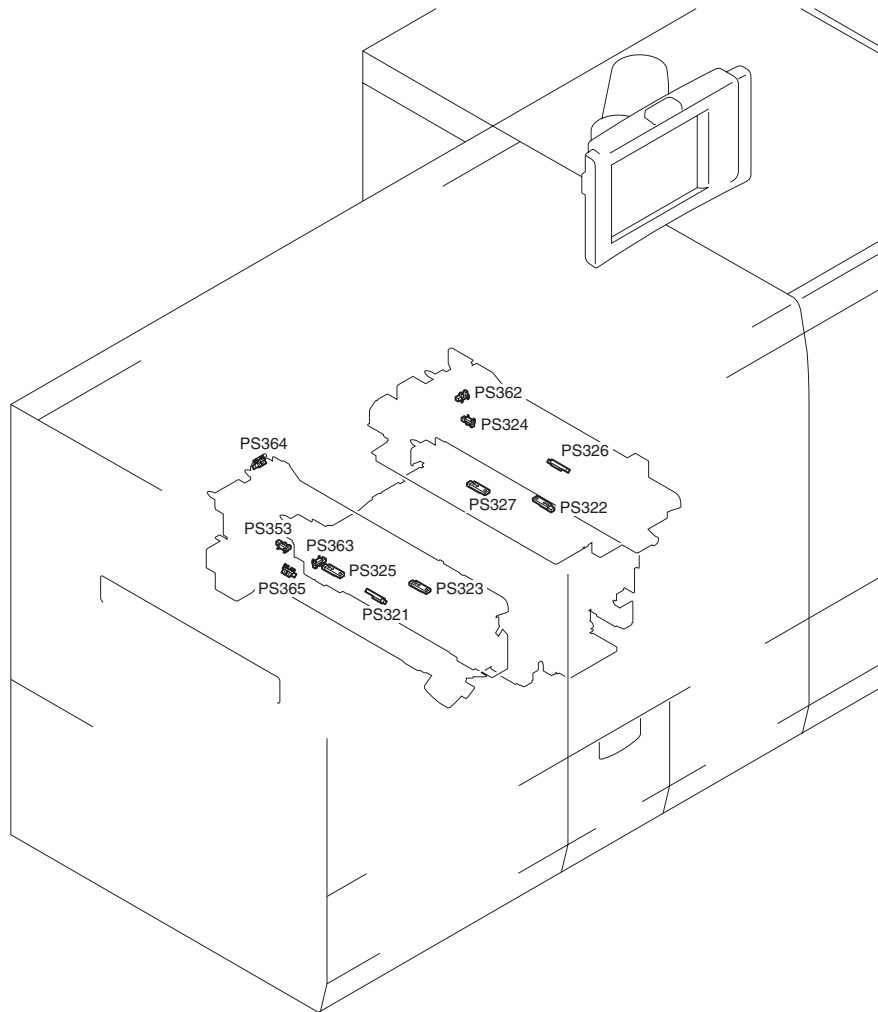
F-16-87
T-16-44

Notation	Name	Description	Parts No.	I/O	Jack No.			DC controller PCB 1-2
					Primary fixing inner driver PCB	Secondary fixing inner driver PCB	Duplexing feed driver PCB	
PS300	Primary fixing pressure belt HP sensor	Primary fixing pressure belt HP detection	FK2-0149		J4380P/J4360P		J4080/J4070	J1072
PS301	Primary fixing pressure belt position sensor (front)	Primary fixing pressure belt position detection (front)	FK2-0149		J4381P/J4360P		J4080/J4070	J1072
PS302	Primary fixing pressure belt position sensor (rear)	Primary fixing pressure belt position detection (rear)	FK2-0149		J4381P/J4360P		J4080/J4070	J1072
PS303	Primary fixing pressure belt pressure sensor	Primary fixing pressure belt pressure detection	FK2-0149		J4380P/J4360P		J4080/J4070	J1072
PS304	Primary fixing inlet sensor	Primary fixing inlet detection	FK2-0149		J4382P/J4360P		J4080/J4070	J1072
PS305	Primary fixing inner delivery sensor1	Primary fixing inner delivery detection	FK2-0149		J4374P/J4360P		J4080/J4070	J1072
PS306	Primary fixing external heat roller HP sensor	Primary fixing external heat roller HP detection	FK2-0149		J4374P/J4360P		J4080/J4070	J1072
PS307	Primary fixing inner delivery sensor2	Primary fixing inner delivery detection	FK2-0149		J4374P/J4360P		J4080/J4070	J1072
PS308	Primary fixing pressure belt displacement HP sensor	Primary fixing pressure belt displacement HP detection	FK2-0149		J4381P/J4360P		J4080/J4070	J1072
PS309	Primary fixing web HP sensor	Primary fixing web HP detection	FK2-0149		J4374P/J4360P		J4080/J4070	J1072

Notation	Name	Description	Parts No.	I/O	Jack No.			DC controller PCB 1-2
					Primary fixing inner driver PCB	Secondary fixing inner driver PCB	Duplexing feed driver PCB	
PS310	Primary fixing external heat roller overrun sensor	Primary fixing external heat roller overrun detection	FK2-0149		J4374P/J4360P		J4080/J4070	J1072
PS311	Primary fixing web absent alert sensor	Primary fixing web absent alert detection	FK2-0149		J4374P/J4360P		J4080/J4070	J1072
PS312	Secondary fixing inlet sensor	Secondary fixing inlet detection	FK2-0149			J4382S/J4360S	J4085/J4070	J1072
PS313	Secondary fixing inner delivery sensor1	Secondary fixing inner delivery detection	FK2-0149			J4382S/J4360S	J4085/J4070	J1072
PS314	Secondary fixing external heat roller HP sensor	Secondary fixing external heat roller HP detection	FK2-0149			J4374S/J4360S	J4085/J4070	J1072
PS315	Secondary fixing pressure roller HP sensor	Secondary fixing pressure roller HP detection	FK2-0149			J4380S/J4360S	J4085/J4070	J1072
PS316	Secondary fixing pressure roller pressure sensor	Secondary fixing pressure roller pressure detection	FK2-0149			J4380S/J4360S	J4085/J4070	J1072
PS317	Secondary fixing inner delivery sensor2	Secondary fixing inner delivery detection	FK2-0149			J4382S/J4360S	J4085/J4070	J1072
PS318	Secondary fixing web HP sensor	Secondary fixing web HP detection	FK2-0149			J4374S/J4360S	J4085/J4070	J1072
PS319	Secondary fixing external heat roller overrun sensor	Secondary fixing external heat roller overrun detection	FK2-0149			J4374S/J4360S	J4085/J4070	J1072
PS320	Secondary fixing web absent alert sensor	Secondary fixing web absent alert detection	FK2-0149			J4374S/J4360S	J4085/J4070	J1072
PS352	Primary fixing pressure belt retry sensor	Primary fixing pressure belt full displacement direction detection			J4374P/J4360P		J4080/J4070	J1072
PS382	Primary fixing refresh roller HP sensor	Primary fixing refresh roller HP detection	FK2-0149		J4374P/J4360P		J4080/J4070	J1072
PS383	Secondary fixing refresh roller HP sensor	Secondary fixing refresh roller HP detection	FK2-0149			J4374S/J4360S	J4085/J4070	J1072

16.4.4.8 Sub Station(3/4)

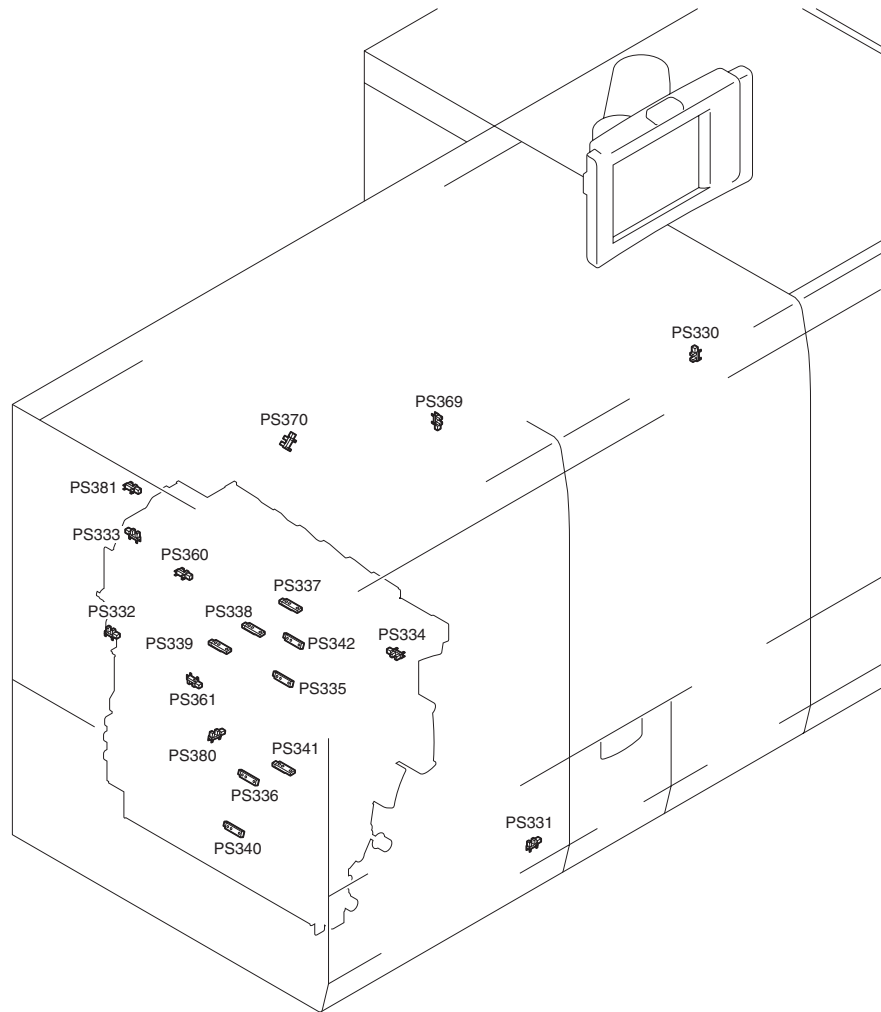
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

F-16-88
T-16-45

Notation	Name	Description	Parts No.	I/O	Jack No.	
					Duplexing feed driver PCB	DC controller PCB 1-2
PS321	Merger path lower sensor	Merger path paper detection	WG8-5736		J4031W/J4070	J1072
PS322	Bypass sensor 1	Bypass paper detection 1	WG8-5736		J4030W/J4070	J1072
PS323	Bypass sensor 2	Bypass paper detection 2	WG8-5736		J4030W/J4070	J1072
PS324	Flapper HP sensor	Flapper HP detection	FK2-0149		J4030W/J4070	J1072
PS325	Merger path upper sensor	Merger path paper detection	WG8-5736		J4031W/J4070	J1072
PS326	Tandem sensor 1	tandem path paper detection 1	WG8-5736		J4030W/J4070	J1072
PS327	Tandem sensor 2	tandem path paper detection 2	WG8-5736		J4030W/J4070	J1072
PS353	Bypass decurler disengage/engage motor HP sensor	Bypass decurler disengage/engage motor HP detection	FK2-0149		J4031W/J4070	J1072
PS362	Tandem guide open/close sensor	Tandem guide open/close detection	FK2-0149		J4030W/J4070	J1072
PS363	Bypass guide open/close sensor	Bypass guide open/close detection	FK2-0149		J4030W/J4070	J1072
PS364	Merger upper guide open/close sensor	Merger upper guide open/close detection	FK2-0149		J4031W/J4070	J1072
PS365	Merger lower guide open/close sensor	Merger lower guide open/close detection	FK2-0149		J4031W/J4070	J1072

16.4.4.9 Sub Station(4/4)

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

F-16-89
T-16-46

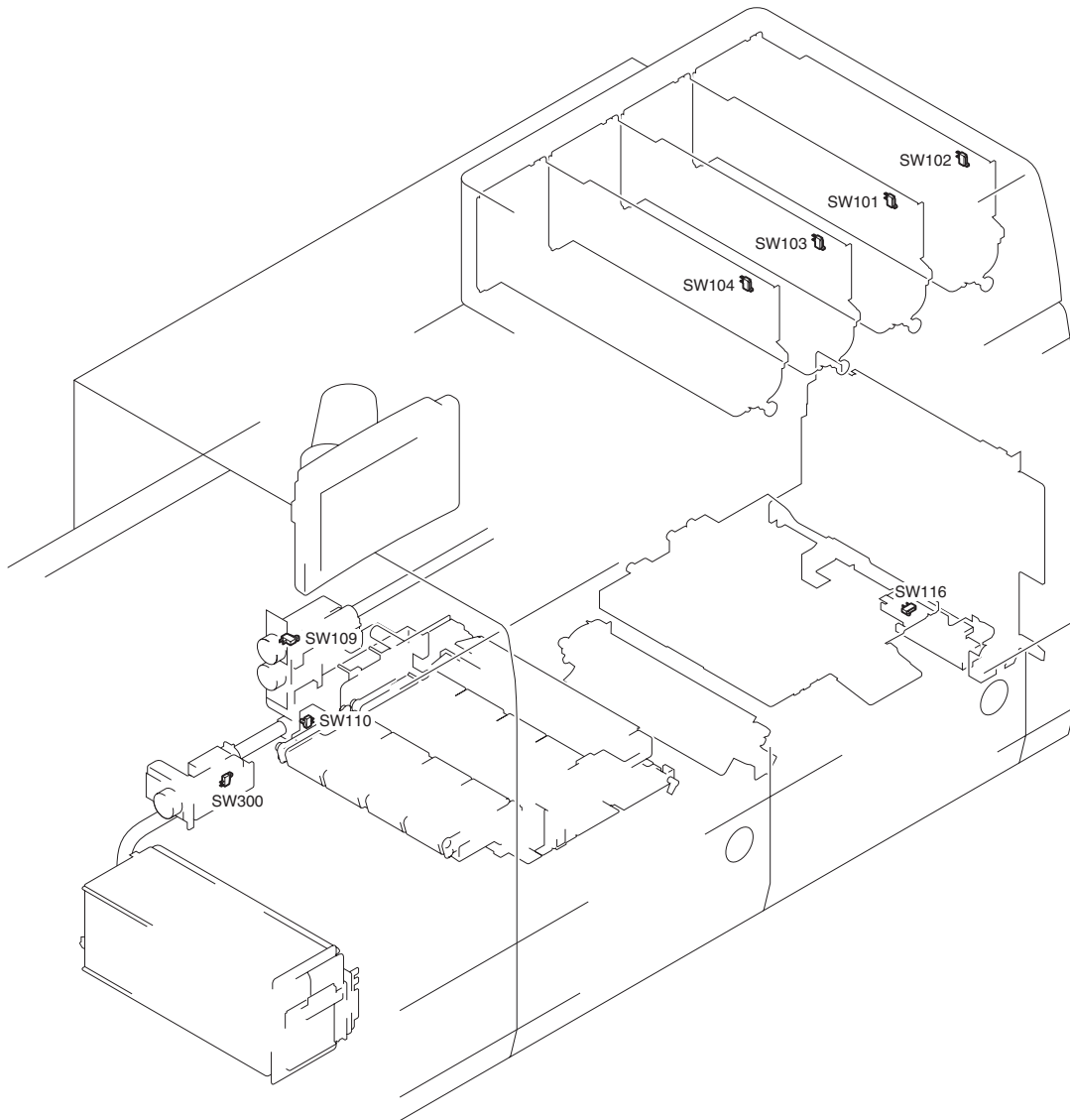
Notation	Name	Description	Parts No.	I/O
PS330	Sub station front right door open/close sensor	Sub station front right door detection	FK2-0149	
PS331	Delivery decurler HP sensor 1	Delivery decurler HP detection	FK2-0149	
PS332	Delivery decurler HP sensor 2	Delivery decurler HP detection	FK2-0149	
PS333	Delivery decurler HP sensor 2	Delivery decurler HP detection	FK2-0149	
PS334	Delivery reverse flapper HP sensor	Delivery reverse flapper HP detection	FK2-0149	
PS335	Delivery reverse sensor 1	Delivery reverse detection	WG8-5736	
PS336	Delivery reverse sensor 2	Delivery reverse detection	WG8-5736	
PS337	Delivery sensor 1	Delivery paper detection	WG8-5736	
PS338	Delivery sensor 2	Delivery paper detection	WG8-5736	
PS339	Delivery sensor 3	Delivery paper detection	WG8-5736	
PS340	Duplexing reverse sensor	Duplexing reverse paper detection	WG8-5736	
PS341	Duplexing reverse rear sensor	Duplexing reverse rear detection	WG8-5736	
PS342	Delivery reverse front sensor	Delivery reverse front detection	WG8-5736	
PS360	Delivery upper guide open/close sensor	Delivery upper guide open/close detection	FK2-0149	
PS361	Reverse guide open/close sensor	Reverse guide open/close detection	FK2-0149	
PS380	Color sensor HP sensor	Color sensor HP detection	FK2-0149	
PS369	Primary fixing lever sensor	Primary fixing lever detection	FK2-0149	
PS370	Secondary fixing lever sensor	Secondary fixing lever detection	FK2-0149	

Notation	Jack No.			
	Reverse/external delivery driver PCB	Duplexing feed driver PCB	Sub station power connecting PCB	DC controller PCB 1-2
PS330				
PS331				
PS332	J4126/J4111	J4091/J4070		J1072
PS333	J4126/J4111	J4091/J4070		J1072
PS334				
PS335	J4125/J4111	J4091/J4070		J1072
PS336	J4125/J4111	J4091/J4070		J1072
PS337	J4125/J4111	J4091/J4070		J1072
PS338	J4125/J4111	J4091/J4070		J1072
PS339	J4125/J4111	J4091/J4070		J1072
PS340	J4125/J4111	J4091/J4070		J1072
PS341	J4125/J1411	J4091/J4070		J1072
PS342	J4126/J1411	J4091/J4070		J1072
PS360	J4125/J1411	J4091/J4070		J1072
PS361	J4125/J1411	J4091/J4070		J1072
PS380				
PS369			J4213/J4210	J1002
PS370			J4213/J4210	J1002

16.4.5 Switch

16.4.5.1 Main Station(1/2)

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000



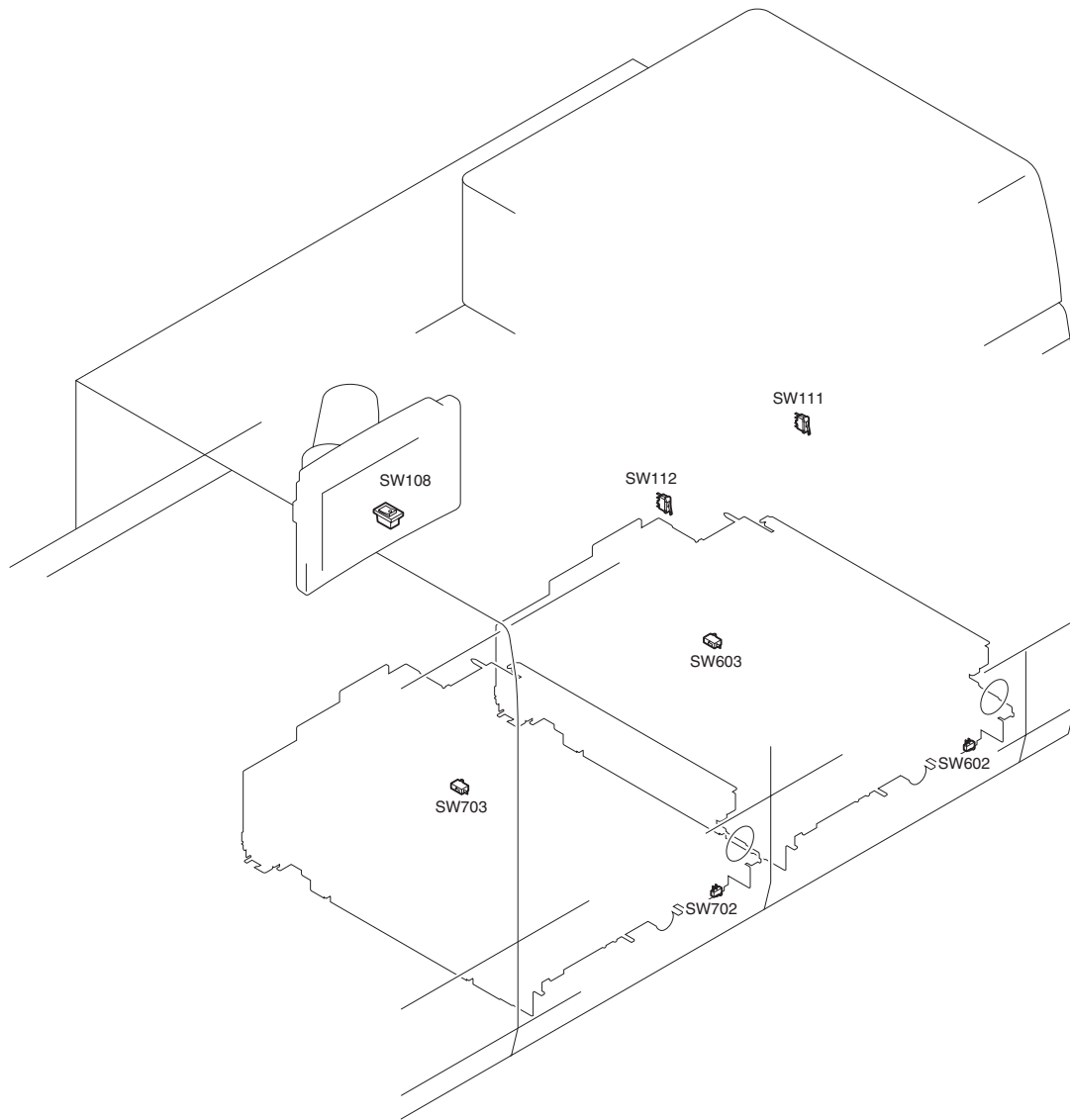
F-16-90
T-16-48

Symbol	Parts Name	Function	Parts No.	Connector No.		
				PCB		No.
SW101	Hopper cover switch (C)	Detection of toner replacement internal cover (C) open/close	FM2-0956	UN167	Hopper driver PCB (C)	J1420C
				UN167 UN124	Hopper driver PCB (C) DC controller PCB 1-2	J1410CB J1016B
SW102	Hopper cover switch (Bk)	Detection of toner replacement internal cover (Bk) open/close	FM2-0956	UN168	Hopper driver PCB (Bk)	J1420K
				UN168 UN124	Hopper driver PCB (Bk) DC controller PCB 1-2	J1410KB J1017B
SW103	Hopper cover switch (M)	Detection of toner replacement internal cover (M) open/close	FM2-0956	UN166	Hopper driver PCB (M)	J1420M
				UN166 UN124	Hopper driver PCB (M) DC controller PCB 1-2	J1410MB J1015B
SW104	Hopper cover switch (Y)	Detection of toner replacement internal cover (Y) open/close	FM2-0956	UN165	Hopper driver PCB (Y)	J1420Y
				UN165 UN124	Hopper driver PCB (Y) DC controller PCB 1-2	J1410YB J1014B
SW109	Drum waste toner lock detection switch	Detection of toner stuck inside the waste toner pipe (between process unit and the waste toner buffer)	FM2-0956	UN107	Pre-fixing feed driver PCB	J1559
				UN107 UN124	Pre-fixing feed driver PCB DC controller PCB 1-2	J1553A J1026A
SW110	Transfer waste toner lock detection switch	Detection of toner stuck inside the waste toner pipe (between the transfer cleaning assembly and the waste toner buffer)	FM2-0956	UN107	Pre-fixing feed driver PCB	J1559
				UN107 UN124	Pre-fixing feed driver PCB DC controller PCB 1-2	J1553A J1026A

Symbol	Parts Name	Function	Parts No.	Connector No.		
				PCB		No.
SW116	Vertical path cover open/close switch	Detection of the vertical path cover open/close	FM2-8509	UN102	Main station power supply connect PCB	J1814
SW300	Waste toner delivery lock detection switch	Detection of toner stuck inside the waste toner pipe (between the waste toner buffer and the waste toner container)	FM2-0956	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB	J4110

16.4.5.2 Main Station(2/2)

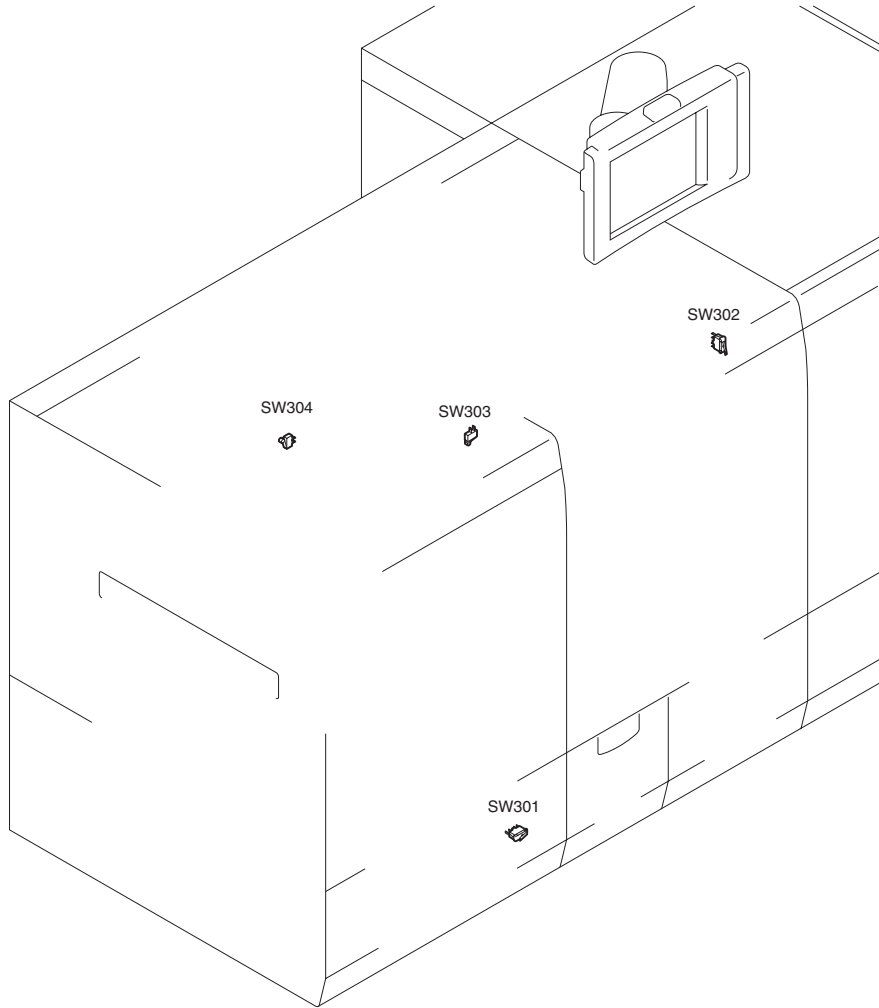
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

F-16-91
T-16-49

Symbol	Parts Name	Function	Parts No.	Connector No.		
				PCB		No.
SW108	Main power switch	ON/OFF the main power	FK2-2509			
SW111	Main station right front cover switch	Main station right front cover detection	FG3-2377			
SW112	Main station left front cover switch	Main station left front cover detection	FG3-2377			
SW602	Right deck lifter lower limit switch	Detection of the paper supply position limit of the right deck	FM2-9409	UN602	Right deck driver PCB	J2107R
SW603	Right deck interlock switch	Fail safe at failure of the right deck open/close sensor	FM2-8509	UN602	Right deck driver PCB	J2104R
SW702	Left deck lifter lower limit switch	Detection of the paper supply position limit of the left deck	FM2-9409	UN702	Left deck driver PCB	J2107L
SW703	Left deck interlock switch	Fail safe at failure of the right deck open/close sensor	FM2-8509	UN702	Left deck driver PCB	J2104L

16.4.5.3 Sub Station

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

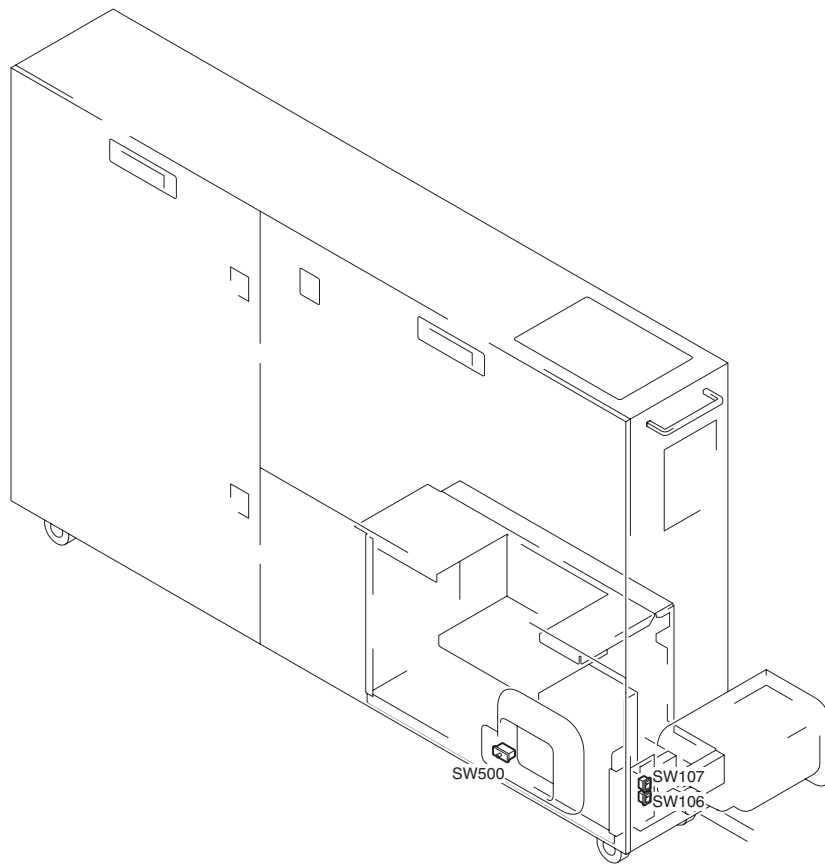


F-16-92
T-16-50

Symbol	Parts Name	Function	Parts No.	Connector No.		
				PCB		No.
SW301	Sub station front left door switch	Sub station front left door detection	RH7-6037			
SW302	Sub station front right door switch	Sub station front right door detection	RH7-6037			
SW303	Primary fixing lever switch	Detection of the primary fixing assembly lever set/not set	FM2-8509	UN301	Sub station power connecting PCB	J4215
				UN301	Sub station power connecting PCB	J4215
				UN124	DC controller PCB 1-2	J1002
SW304	Secondary fixing lever switch	Detection of the secondary fixing assembly lever set/not set	FM2-8509	UN301	Sub station power connecting PCB	J4215
				UN301	Sub station power connecting PCB	J4215
				UN124	DC controller PCB 1-3	J1002

16.4.5.4 Power Unit Station

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000



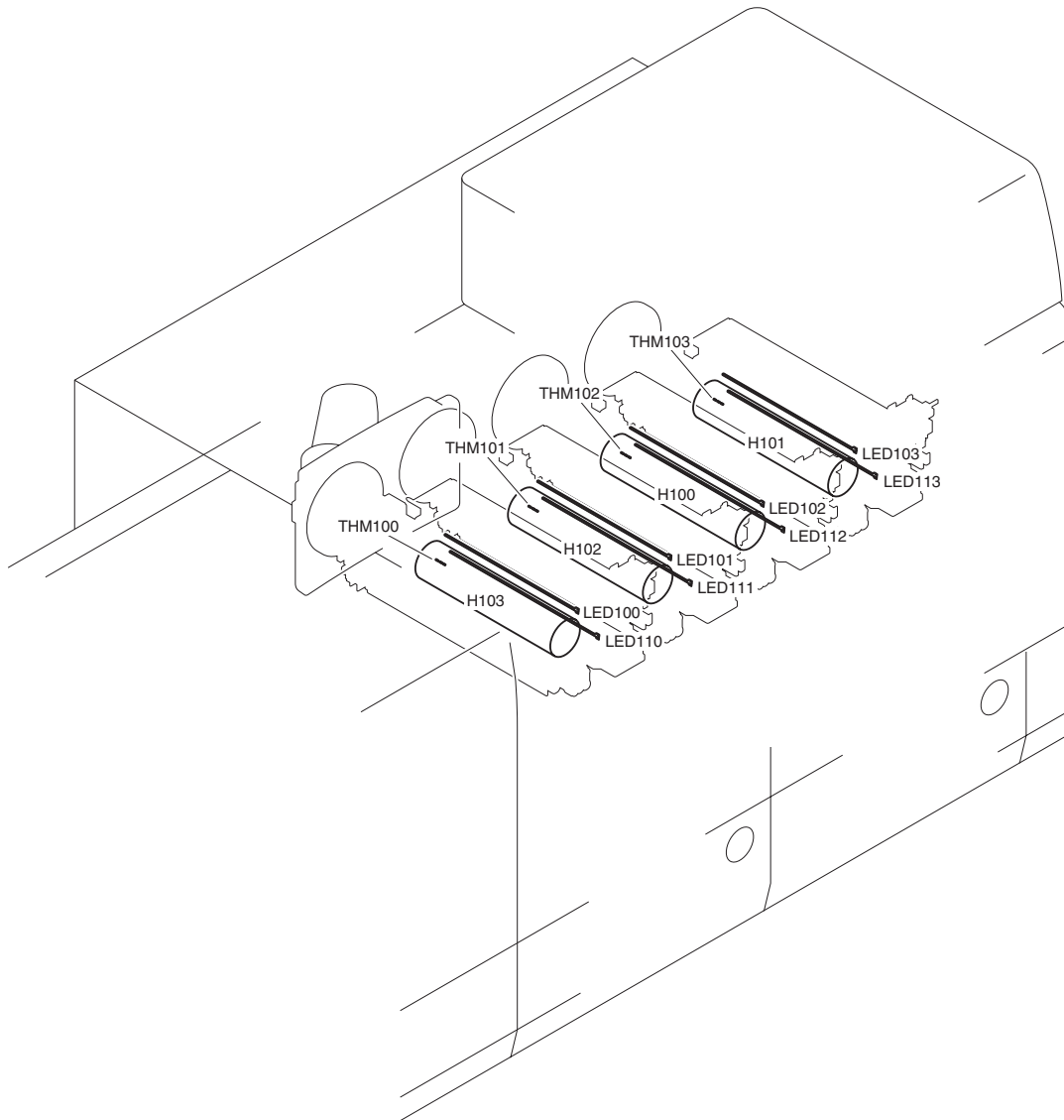
F-16-93
T-16-51

Symbol	Parts Name	Function	Parts No.	Connector No.		
				PCB		No.
SW106	Deck heater switch	ON/OFF the deck heater	WC1-5179	FM2-7715	Deck heater relay PCB	J7176
SW107	Environment switch	ON/OFF the environment heater	WC1-5179	UN101	Environment heater driver PCB	J4400
SW500	Leakage breaker test switch	Operation test for the leakage breaker	FM3-0409	ELB500	Leakage breaker	-

16.4.6 Lamps, Heaters, and Others

16.4.6.1 Main Station(1/2)

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

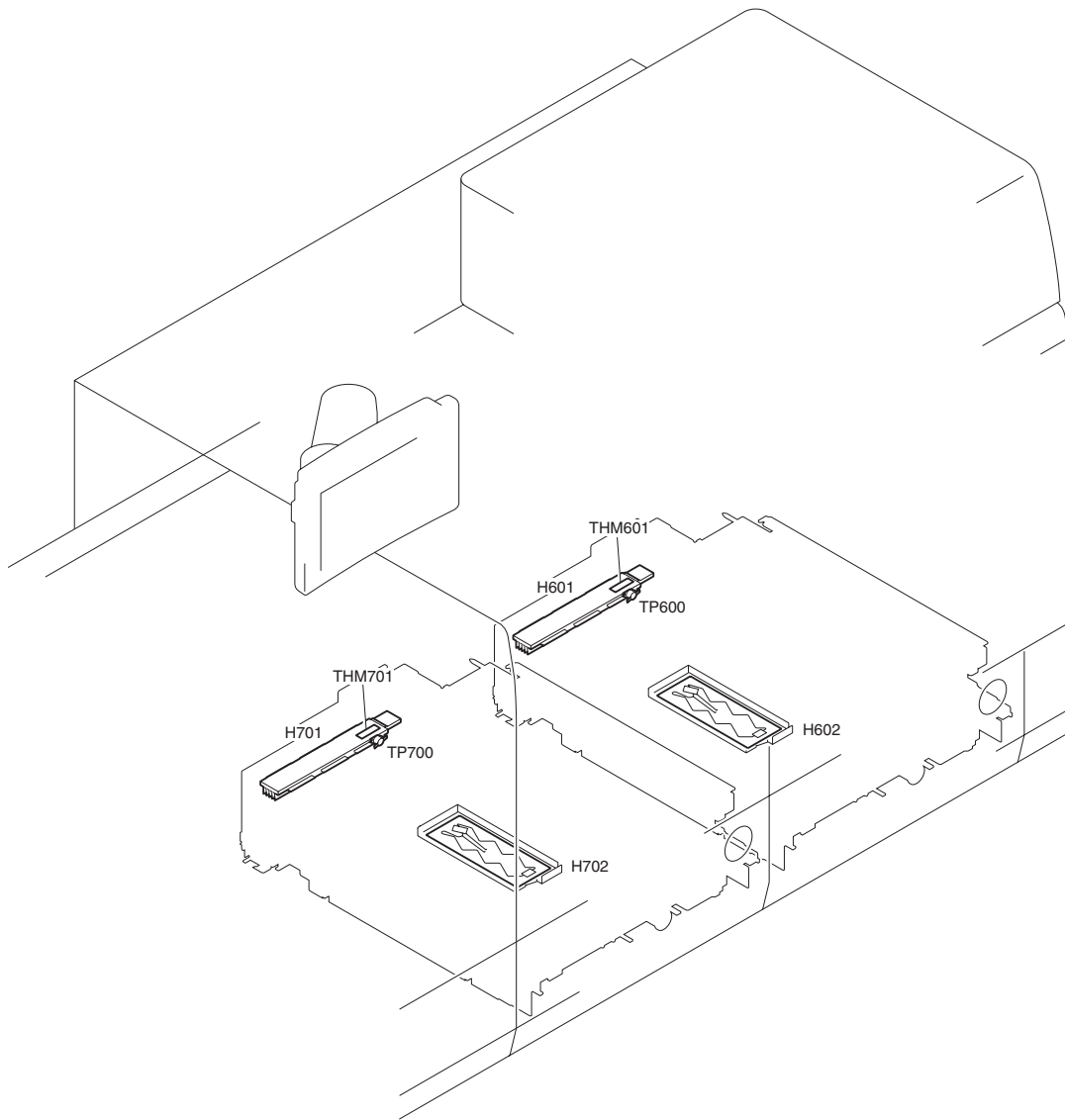
F-16-94
T-16-52

Symbol	Parts Name	Function	Parts No.	E code
H100	Drum heater (C)	Anti-condensation for drum (C)	FK2-2717	E062
H101	Drum heater (Bk)	Anti-condensation for drum (Bk)	FK2-2717	E062
H102	Drum heater(M)	Anti-condensation for drum (M)	FK2-2717	E062
H103	Drum heater (Y)	Anti-condensation for drum (Y)	FK2-2717	E062
LED100	Pre-exposure LED (Y)	Removing residual charge on photosensitive drum (Y)	FK2-0621	
LED101	Pre-exposure LED (M)	Removing residual charge on photosensitive drum (M)	FK2-0621	
LED102	Pre-exposure LED (C)	Removing residual charge on photosensitive drum (C)	FK2-0621	
LED103	Pre-exposure LED (Bk)	Removing residual charge on photosensitive drum (Bk)	FK2-0621	
LED110	Drum clearing pre-exposure LED (Y)	Prevention of drum memory generated during primary transfer (Y)	FK2-0621	
LED111	Drum clearing pre-exposure LED(M)	Prevention of drum memory generated during primary transfer(M)	FK2-0621	
LED112	Drum clearing pre-exposure LED (C)	Prevention of drum memory generated during primary transfer(C)	FK2-0621	
LED113	Drum clearing pre-exposure LED (Bk)	Prevention of drum memory generated during primary transfer(Bk)	FK2-0621	
THM100	Drum thermistor (Y)	Moisture absorption prevention for drum (Y)	FK2-3153	E062
THM101	Drum thermistor(M)	Moisture absorption prevention for drum (M)	FK2-3153	E062
THM102	Drum thermistor (C)	Moisture absorption prevention for drum (C)	FK2-3153	E062

Symbol	Parts Name	Function	Parts No.	E code
THM103	Drum thermistor (Bk)	Moisture absorption prevention for drum (Bk)	FK2-3153	E062

16.4.6.2 Main Station(2/2)

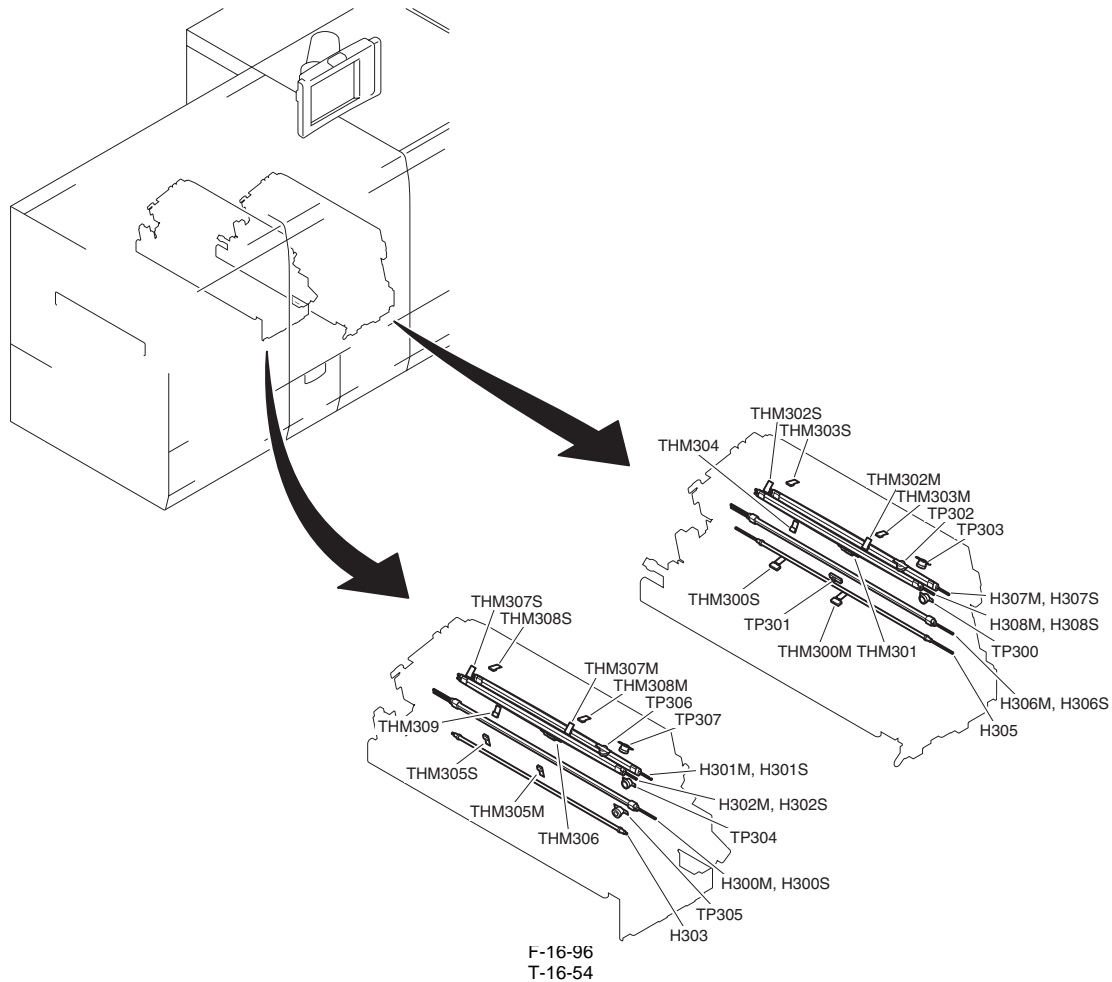
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

F-16-95
T-16-53

Symbol	Parts Name	Function	Parts No.	E code
H601	Right deck floating air heater	Moisture absorption prevention for paper inside right deck	FK2-2995	E906-0001
H602	Right deck heater	Moisture absorption prevention for paper inside right deck	FH7-4585	
H701	Left deck floating air heater	Moisture absorption prevention for paper inside left deck	FK2-2995	E906-0001
H702	Left deck heater	Moisture absorption prevention for paper inside left deck	FH7-4585	
THM601	Left deck floatation air thermistor	Abnormally high temperature of left deck floatation air heater	FH7-7531	
THM701	Right deck floatation air thermistor	Abnormally high temperature of right deck floatation air heater	FH7-7531	
TP600	Left deck floatation air heater thermoswitch	Abnormally high temperature of left deck floatation air heater	Fk2-2995	E906-0001
TP700	Right deck floatation air heater thermoswitch	Abnormally high temperature of right deck floatation air heater	Fk2-2995	E906-0001

16.4.6.3 Sub Station

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

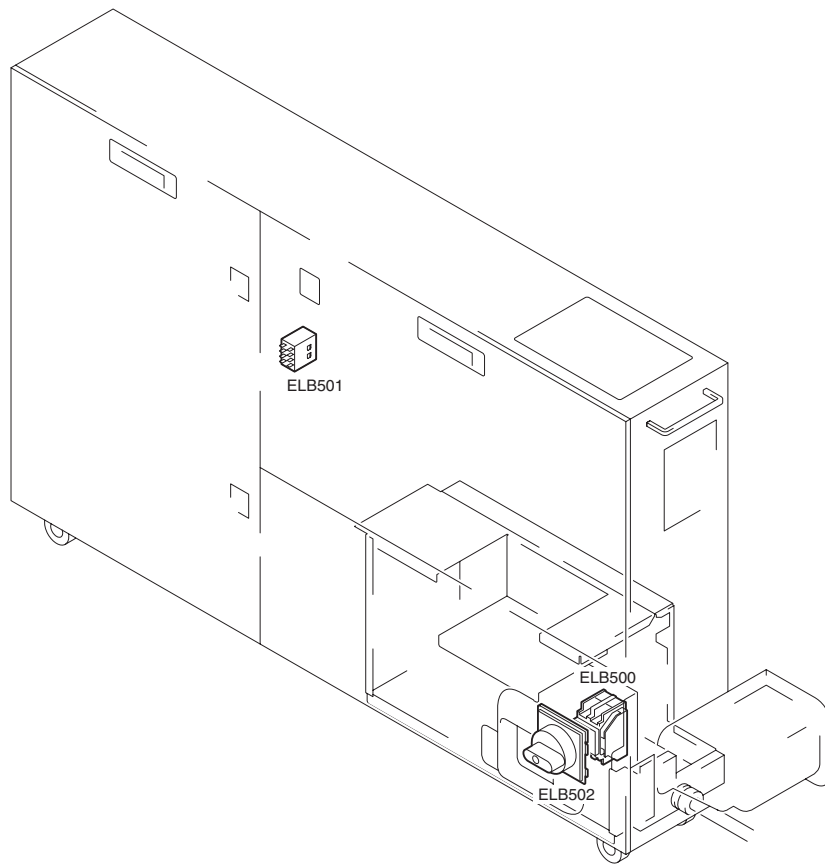


Symbol	Parts Name	Function	Parts No..
H300	H300M:Secondary fixing roller main heater H300S:Secondary fixing roller sub heater	Temperature control of Secondary fixing roller	FK2-3082 (200V) FK2-3083 (240V)
H301	H301M:Secondary fixing outside heating lower roller main heater H301S:Secondary fixing outside heating lower roller sub heater	Temperature control of secondary fixing outside heating lower roller	FK2-3080 (200V) FK2-3081 (240V)
H302	H302M:Secondary fixing outside heating upper roller main heater H302S: Secondary fixing outside heating upper roller sub heater	Temperature control of secondary fixing outside heating upper roller	FK2-3080 (200V) FK2-3081 (240V)
H303	Secondary fixing pressure roller heater	Temperature control of secondary fixing pressure heating roller	FK2-3090 (200V) FK2-3091 (240V)
H305	Primary fixing pressure belt heater	Temperature control of secondary fixing pressure heating roller	FK2-3086 (200V) FK2-3087 (240V)
H306	H306M:Primary fixing roller main heater H306S:Primary fixing roller sub heater	Temperature control of primary fixing roller	FK2-3082 (200V) FK2-3083 (240V)
H307	H307M: Primary fixing outside heating lower main heater H307S: Primary fixing outside heating lower sub heater	Temperature control of primary fixing outside heating lower roller	FK2-3080 (200V) FK2-3081 (240V)
H308	H308M: Primary fixing outside heating upper roller main heater H308S: Primary fixing outside heating upper roller sub heater	Temperature control of primary fixing outside heating upper roller	FK2-3080 (200V) FK2-3081 (240V)
THM300	THM300M:Primary fixing pressure belt main thermistor THM300S:Primary fixing pressure belt sub thermistor	Temperature detection of a primary fixing pressure belt(main) Temperature detection of a primary fixing pressure belt(sub)	FK2-3094
THM301	Primary fixing roller main thermistor	Temperature detection of a primary fixing roller(main)	FK2-3160

Symbol	Parts Name	Function	Parts No..
THM302	THM302M:Primary fixing external heat upper roller main thermistor	Temperature detection of a primary fixing upper roller(main)	FK2-3097
	THM302S:Primary fixing external heat upper roller sub thermistor	Temperature detection of a primary fixing upper roller(sub)	
THM303	THM303M:Primary fixing external heat lower roller main thermistor	Temperature detection of a primary fixing external heat lower roller(main)	FK2-3095
	THM303S:Primary fixing external heat lower roller sub thermistor	Temperature detection of a primary fixing external heat lower roller(sub)	
THM304	Primary fixing roller sub thermistor	Temperature detection of a primary fixing heat roller(sub)	FK2-3095
THM305	THM305M:Secondary fixing pressure roller main thermistor	Temperature detection of a secondary fixing pressure roller(main)	FK2-3096
	THM305S:Secondary fixing pressure roller sub thermistor	Temperature detection of a secondary fixing pressure roller(sub)	
THM306	Secondary fixing roller main thermistor	Temperature detection of a secondary fixing roller(main)	FK2-3160
THM307	THM307M:Secondary fixing external heat lower roller main thermistor	Temperature detection of a secondary fixing external heat lower roller (main)	FK2-3097
	THM307S:Secondary fixing external heat lower roller sub thermistor	Temperature detection of a secondary fixing external heat lower roller (sub)	
THM308	THM308M:Secondary fixing external heat upper roller main thermistor	Temperature detection of a primary fixing external heat upper roller (main)	FK2-3097
	THM308S:Secondary fixing external heat upper roller sub thermistor	Temperature detection of a primary fixing external heat upper roller (sub)	
THM309	Secondary fixing roller sub thermistor	Temperature detection of a secondary fixing roller(sub)	FK2-3095
TP300	Primary fixing roller thermoswitch	Abnormally high temperature of primary fixing roller	FM3-0656
TP301	Primary fixing pressure belt thermoswitch	Abnormally high temperature of primary fixing pressure belt	FK2-0605
TP302	Primary fixing external heat upper roller thermoswitch	Abnormally high temperature of primary fixing external heat upper roller	FM3-0657
TP303	Primary fixing external heat lower roller thermoswitch	Abnormally high temperature of primary fixing external heat lower roller	FM3-0657
TP304	Secondary fixing roller thermoswitch	Abnormally high temperature of secondary fixing roller	FM3-0656
TP305	Secondary fixing pressure roller thermoswitch	Abnormally high temperature of secondary fixing pressure roller	FM3-0655
TP306	Secondary fixing external heat upper roller thermoswitch	Abnormally high temperature of secondary external heat upper roller	FM3-0657
TP307	Secondary fixing external heat lower roller thermoswitch	Abnormally high temperature of secondary fixing external heat lower roller	FM3-0657

16.4.6.4 Power Unit Station

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000



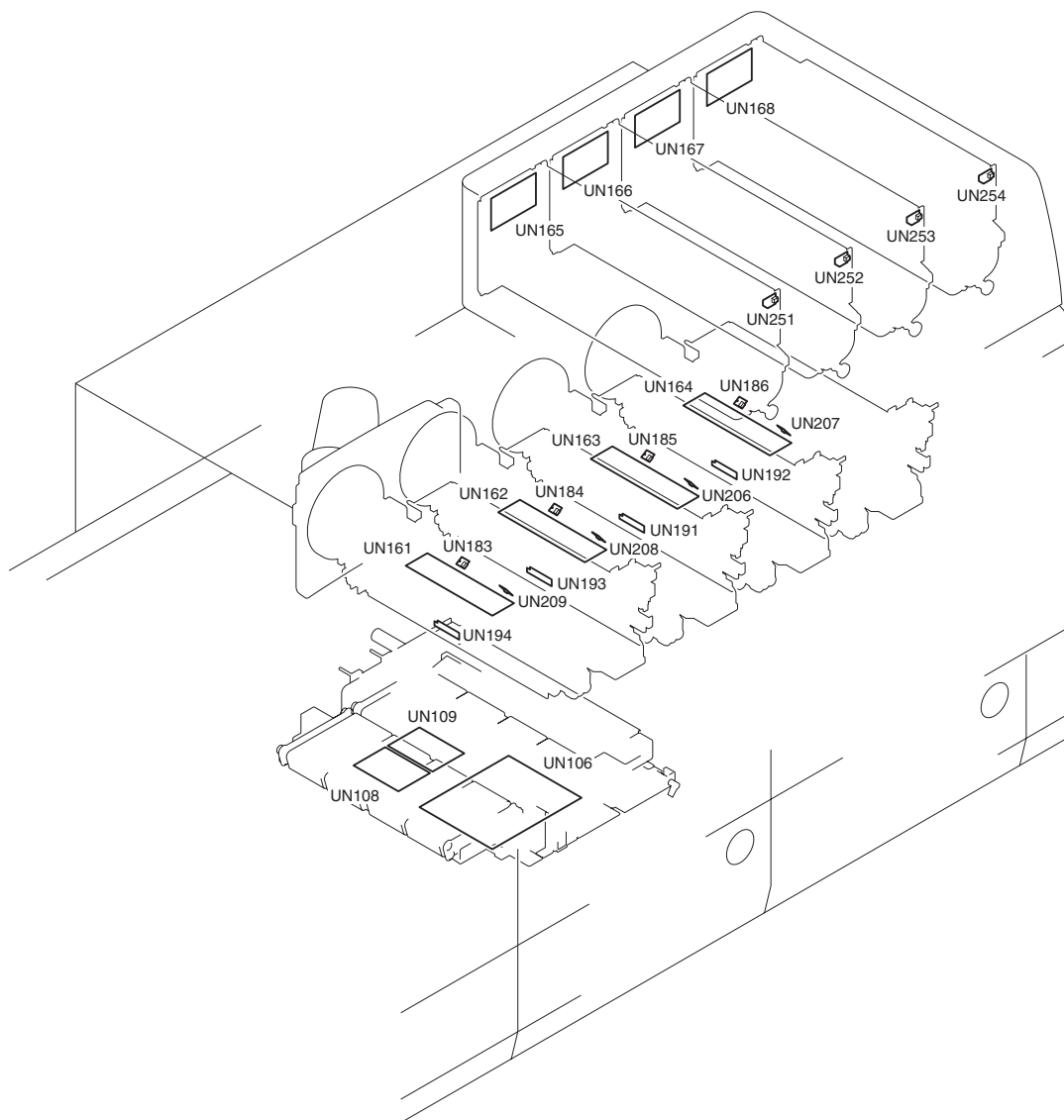
F-16-97
T-16-55

Symbol	Parts Name	Function	Parts No.		E code
			imagePRESS C7000VP/C6000VP	imagePRESS C6000	
ELB500	Leakage breaker	Leak prevention	JPN: FK2-2719 USA: FK2-2720 EUR: FK2-2718	FK2-6912	
ELB501	Leakage relay	Leak prevention	FK2-2722 (EUR only)	None	
ELB502	Outside operation handle	Shutdown in emergency	FK2-2721	FK2-2721	

16.4.7 PCBs

16.4.7.1 Main Station(1/4)

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

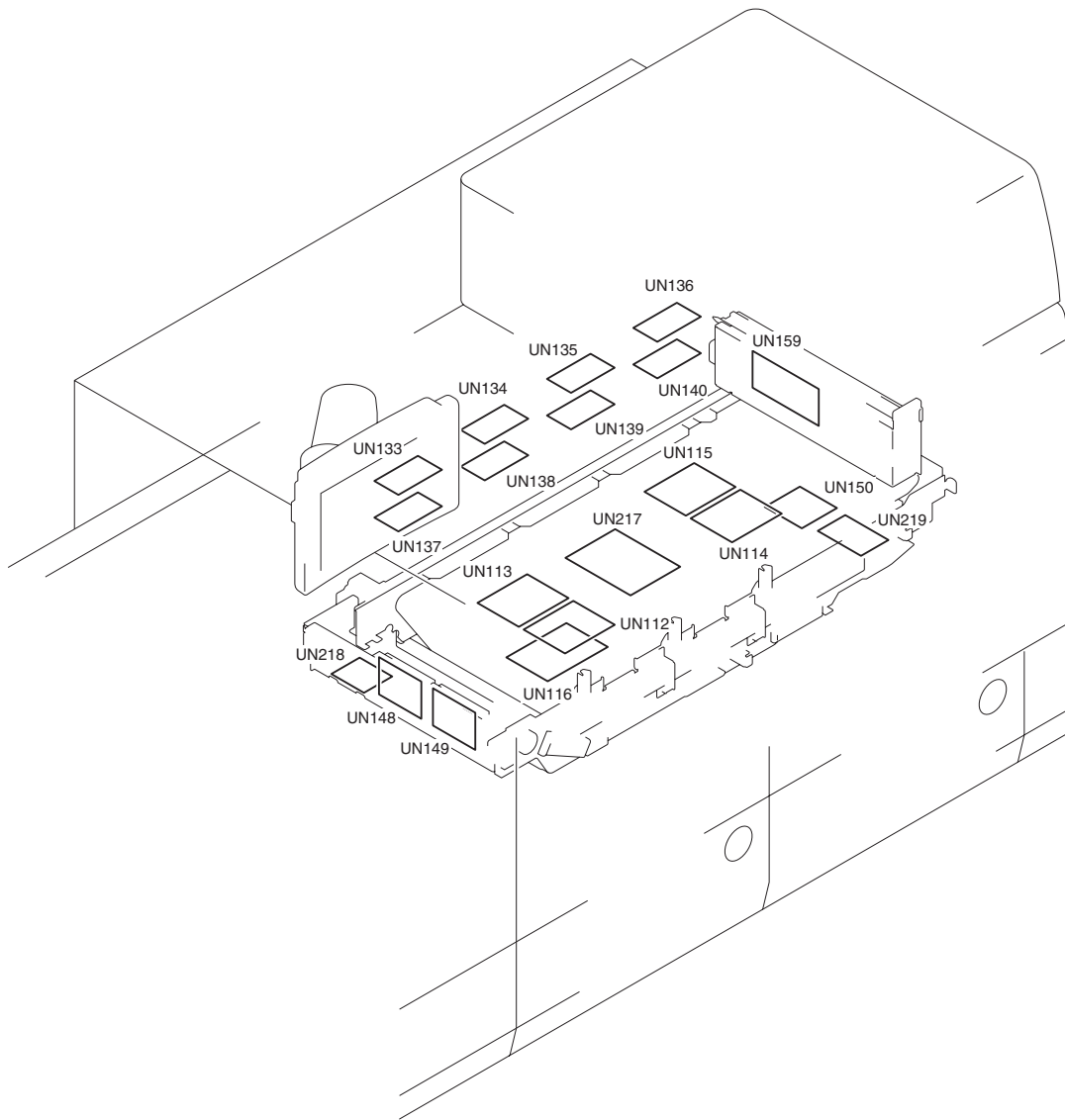
F-16-98
T-16-56

Symbol	Parts Name	Function	Parts No.
UN106	Secondary transfer/duplexing driver PCB	Drive control of secondary transfer/main station duplex unit	FM2-7689
UN108	Post-secondary transfer static elimination high-voltage PCB	Generate post-secondary transfer static elimination bias	FM2-7189
UN109	Secondary transfer cleaner high-voltage PCB	Generate secondary transfer cleaning bias	FM2-7193
UN161	Process unit driver PCB (Y)	Control Y process unit motors	FM2-7693
UN162	Process unit driver PCB (M)	Control M process unit motors	FM2-7693
UN163	Process unit driver PCB (C)	Control C process unit motors	FM2-7693
UN164	Process unit driver PCB (Bk)	Control Bk process unit motors	FM2-7693
UN165	Hopper driver PCB (Y)	Drive Y sub-hopper,/toner supply	FM2-7694
UN166	Hopper driver PCB (M)	Drive M sub-hopper,/toner supply	FM2-7694
UN167	Hopper driver PCB (C)	Drive C sub-hopper,/toner supply	FM2-7694
UN168	Hopper driver PCB (Bk)	Drive Bk sub-hopper,/toner supply	FM2-7694
UN183	Drum surface temperature sensor (Y)	Measure Y drum surface temperature	FK2-0607
UN184	Drum surface temperature sensor (M)	Measure M drum surface temperature	FK2-0607
UN185	Drum surface temperature sensor (C)	Measure C drum surface temperature	FK2-0607
UN186	Drum surface temperature sensor (Bk)	Measure Bk drum surface temperature	FK2-0607
UN191	Toner blocking high-voltage PCB (C)	Generate C toner blocking bias	FG5-9393

Symbol	Parts Name	Function	Parts No.
UN192	Toner blocking high-voltage PCB (Bk)	Generate Bk toner blocking bias	FG5-9393
UN193	Toner blocking high-voltage PCB (M)	Generate M toner blocking bias	FG5-9393
UN194	Toner blocking high-voltage PCB (Y)	Generate Y toner blocking bias	FG5-9393
UN206	Potential sensor (C)	Measure C drum surface potential voltage	FM2-9295 (Potential masurement assembly)
UN207	Potential sensor (Bk)	Measure Bk drum surface potential voltage	FM2-9295 (Potential masurement assembly)
UN208	Potential sensor (M)	Measure M drum surface potential voltage	FM2-9295 (Potential masurement assembly)
UN209	Potential sensor (Y)	Measure Y drum surface potential voltage	FM2-9295 (Potential masurement assembly)
UN251	Hopper switch PCB (Y)	Switch for slide out Y toner container	FM2-7698
UN252	Hopper switch PCB (M)	Switch for slide out M toner container	FM2-7698
UN253	Hopper switch PCB (C)	Switch for slide out C toner container	FM2-7698
UN254	Hopper switch PCB (Bk)	Switch for slide out Bk toner container	FM2-7698

16.4.7.2 Main Station(2/4)

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

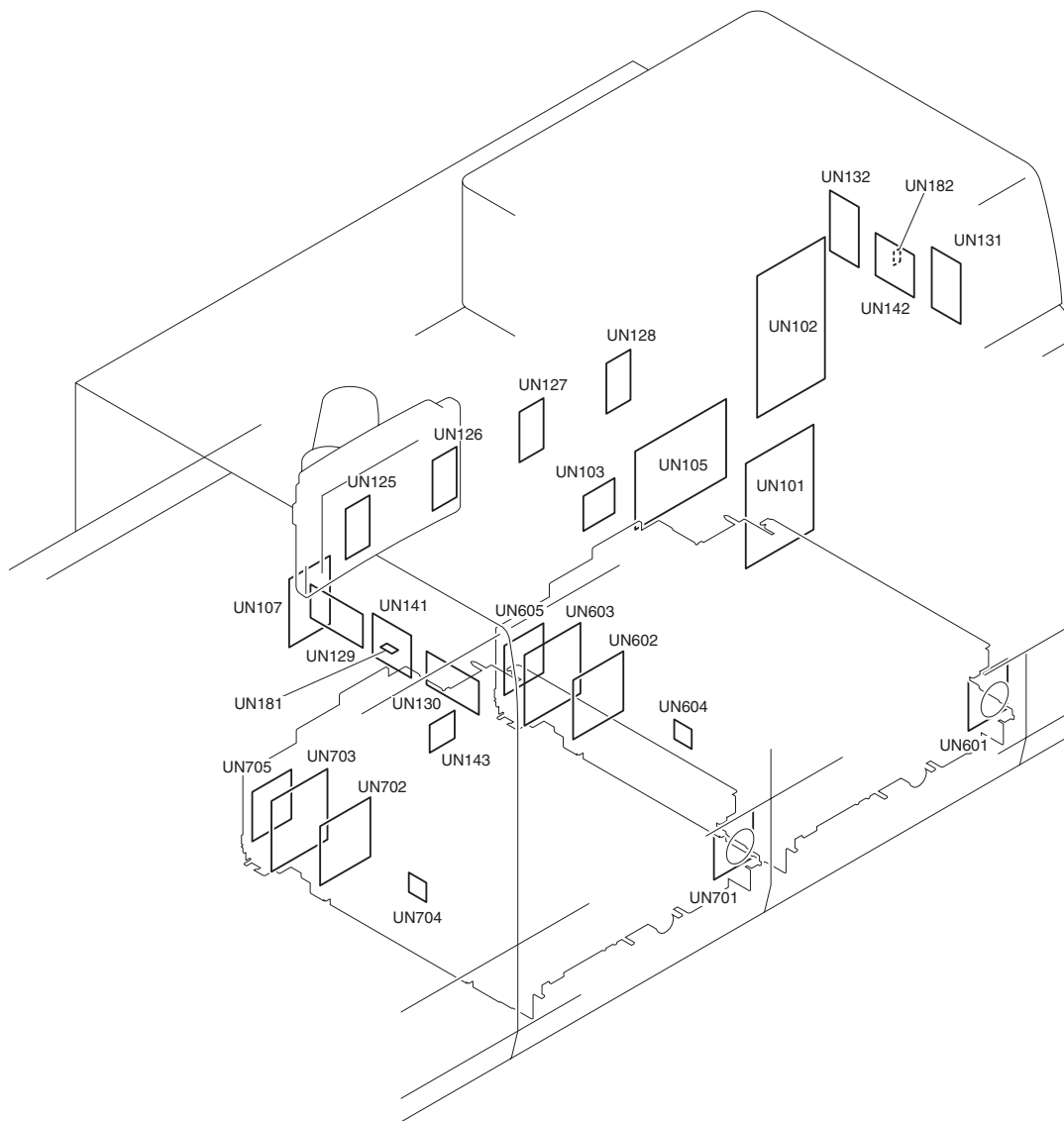
F-16-99
T-16-57

Symbol	Parts Name	Function	Parts No.
UN112	Primary transfer high-voltage PCB (Y)	Generate Y primary transfer bias	FM2-7188
UN113	Primary transfer high-voltage PCB (M)	Generate M primary transfer bias	FM2-7188
UN114	Primary transfer high-voltage PCB (C)	Generate C primary transfer bias	FM2-7188
UN115	Primary transfer high-voltage PCB (Bk)	Generate Bk primary transfer bias	FM2-7188
UN116	Secondary transfer high-voltage PCB	Generate secondary transfer bias	FM2-7190
UN133	Developing high-voltage PCB (Y)	Generate Y developing bias	FM2-7706
UN134	Developing high-voltage PCB (M)	Generate M developing bias	FM2-7706
UN135	Developing high-voltage PCB (C)	Generate C developing bias	FM2-7706
UN136	Developing high-voltage PCB (Bk)	Generate Bk developing bias	FM2-7706
UN137	Primary charging high-voltage PCB (Y)	Generate Y Primary charging bias	FM2-7705
UN138	Primary charging high-voltage PCB (M)	Generate M Primary charging bias	FM2-7705
UN139	Primary charging high-voltage PCB (C)	Generate C Primary charging bias	FM2-7705
UN140	Primary charging high-voltage PCB (Bk)	Generate Bk Primary charging bias	FM2-7705
UN148	ITB cleaner high-voltage PCB (upstream)	Generate ITB cleaning bias	FM2-7202
UN149	ITB cleaner high-voltage PCB (downstream)	Generate ITB cleaning bias	FM2-7192
UN150	ITB pre-transfer charging high-voltage PCB	Generate ITB pre-transfer bias	FM2-7707
UN159	Registration patch sensor driver PCB	Control registration patch sensor	FM2-2155
UN217	ITB driver PCB (center)	Drive ITB pre-transfer charging wire cleaner motor, ITB steering correction motor	FM2-7691

Symbol	Parts Name	Function	Parts No.
UN218	ITB driver PCB (left)	Drive ITB cleaner, press/release ITB web	FM2-7690
UN219	ITB driver PCB (right)	Drive leading edge registration patch sensor shutter	FM2-7692

16.4.7.3 Main Station(3/4)

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

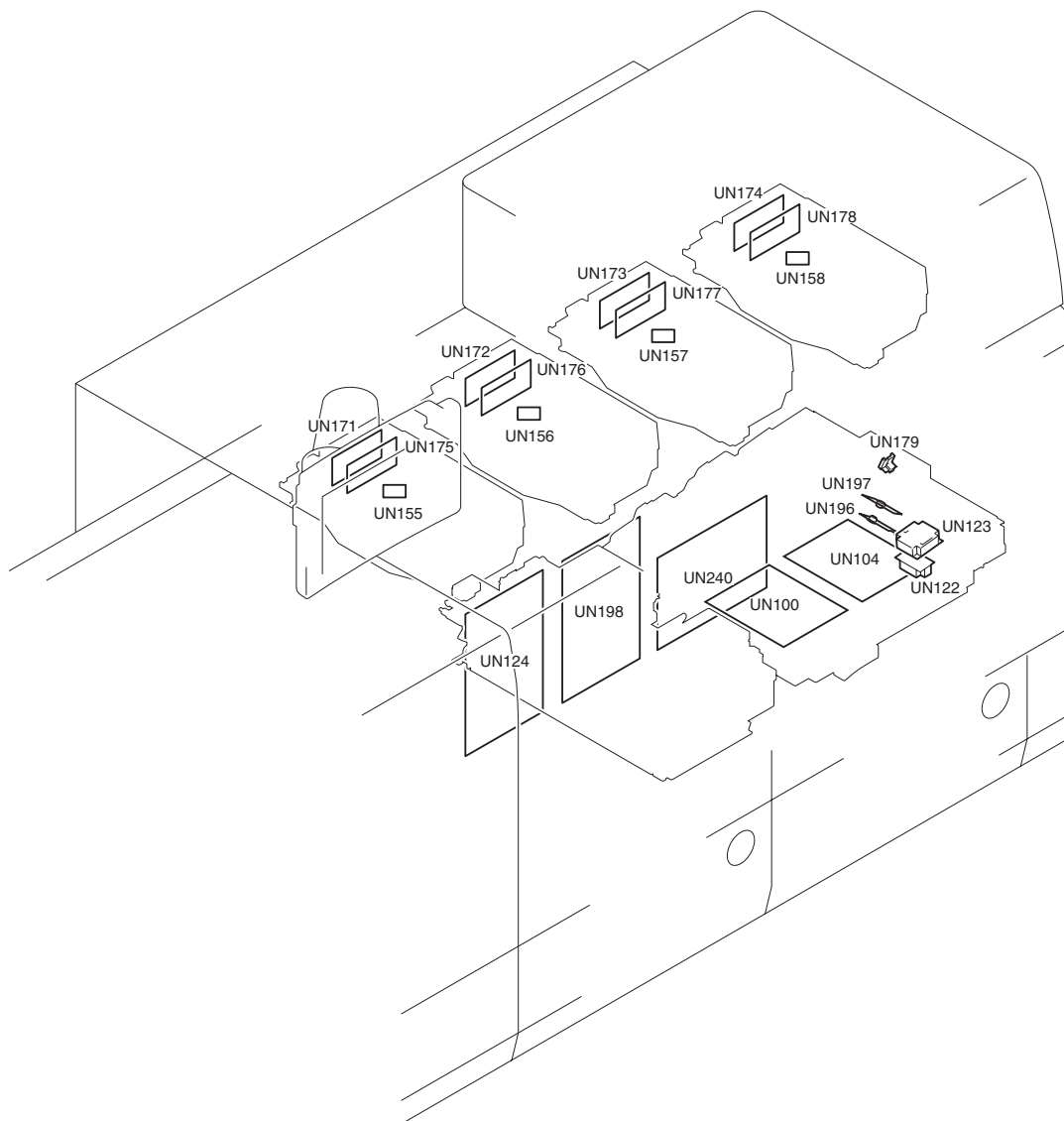
F-16-100
T-16-58

Symbol	Parts Name	Function	Parts No.
UN101	Environment heater driver PCB	Drive drum heater, reader heater (optional), right deck heater and left deck heater	FM2-7711
UN102	Main station power supply connect PCB	DC-DC converter Supply 5V/12V/13V/24V to electrical parts of main station	FM2-2254
UN103	DC controller power supply PCB	DC-DC converter Supply 3.3V/5V to DC controller	FM2-7709
UN105	Vertical path/lower feed driver PCB	Drive vertical path/lower feed section	FM2-7689
UN107	Pre-fixing feed driver PCB	Drive pre-fixing feed section	FM2-2260
UN125	Drum driver PCB (Y)	Drive Y drum	FM2-7699
UN126	Drum driver PCB (M)	Drive M drum	FM2-7699
UN127	Drum driver PCB (C)	Drive C drum	FM2-7699
UN128	Drum driver PCB (Bk)	Drive Bk drum	FM2-7699
UN129	Potential measuring PCB (Y)	Measurement of potential of drum (Y)	FM2-7201
UN130	Potential measuring PCB (M)	Measurement of potential of drum (M)	FM2-7201
UN131	Potential measuring PCB (C)	Measurement of potential of drum (C)	FM2-7201
UN132	Potential measuring PCB (Bk)	Measurement of potential of drum (Bk)	FM2-7201
UN141	Environment sensor PCB 1	Measurement of temperature and humidity inside the machine	FG5-3064
UN142	Environment sensor PCB 2	Measurement of temperature and humidity inside the machine	FG5-3064
UN143	ARCNET connector PCB	ARCNET network communication control	FM2-4358
UN181	Environment sensor 1	Measurement of temperature and humidity inside the machine	FK2-2724

Symbol	Parts Name	Function	Parts No.
UN182	Environment sensor 2	Measurement of temperature and humidity inside the machine	FK2-2724
UN601	Right deck indicator driver PCB	Display part control of right deck	FM2-7630
UN602	Right deck driver PCB	Drive right deck lifter	FM2-7629
UN603	Right deck pickup driver PCB	Drive right deck pickup	FM2-7627
UN604	Left deck environment sensor	Measurement of temperature and humidity inside the left deck	WP2-5200
UN605	Right deck pickup AC driver PCB	Drive deck floating air heater and deck heater (right deck)	FM2-7628
UN701	Left deck indicator driver PCB	Display part control of left deck	FM2-7630
UN702	Left deck driver PCB	Drive left deck lifter	FM2-7629
UN703	Left deck pickup driver PCB	Drive left deck pickup	FM2-7627
UN704	Right deck environment sensor	Measurement of temperature and humidity inside the right deck	WP2-5200
UN705	Left deck pickup AC driver PCB	Drive deck floating air heater and deck heater (left deck)	FM2-7628

16.4.7.4 Main Station(4/4)

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

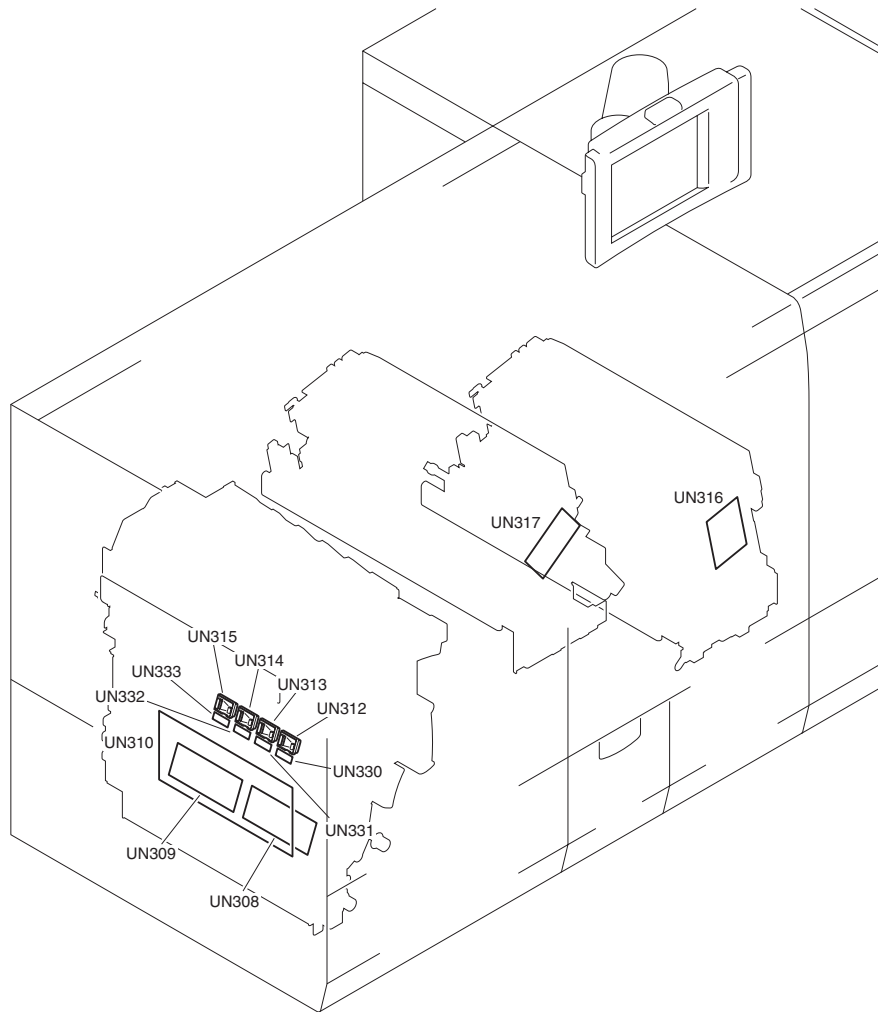
F-16-101
T-16-59

Symbol	Parts Name	Function	Parts No.
UN100	Registration feed driver PCB (left)	Drive registration unit	FM2-7688
UN104	Registration feed driver PCB (right)	Drive pre-registration unit	FM2-7688
UN122	Double feed detection PCB (transmission)	Detect double feed (transmission)	FM2-4356
UN123	Double feed detection PCB (reception)	Detect double feed (reception)	FM2-4357
UN124	DC controller PCB 1-2	Control drivers	FM2-7686
UN155	BD sensor PCB (Y)	Detect BD signal (Y)	FM2-4395
UN156	BD sensor PCB (M)	Detect BD signal (M)	FM2-4395
UN157	BD sensor PCB (C)	Detect BD signal (C)	FM2-4395
UN158	BD sensor PCB (Bk)	Detect BD signal (Bk)	FM2-4395
UN171	Laser driver sub PCB (Y)	Drive laser (Y)	FM2-7704
UN172	Laser driver sub PCB (M)	Drive laser (M)	FM2-7704
UN173	Laser driver sub PCB (C)	Drive laser (C)	FM2-7704
UN174	Laser driver sub PCB (Bk)	Drive laser (Bk)	FM2-7704
UN175	Laser driver main PCB (Y)	Drive laser (Y)	FM2-7203
UN176	Laser driver main PCB (M)	Drive laser (M)	FM2-7203
UN177	Laser driver main PCB (C)	Drive laser (C)	FM2-7203
UN178	Laser driver main PCB (Bk)	Drive laser (Bk)	FM2-7203
UN179	Paper thickness sensor	Detect paper thickness	FH7-7530
UN196	Double feed sensor (transmission)	Detect paper double feed	FK2-0999

Symbol	Parts Name	Function	Parts No.
UN197	Double feed sensor (reception)	Detect paper double feed	FK2-0999
UN198	DC controller PCB 1-1	Control printer engine	FM2-7685
UN240	DC controller PCB 1-3	Control laser	FM2-7687

16.4.7.5 Sub Station(1/2)

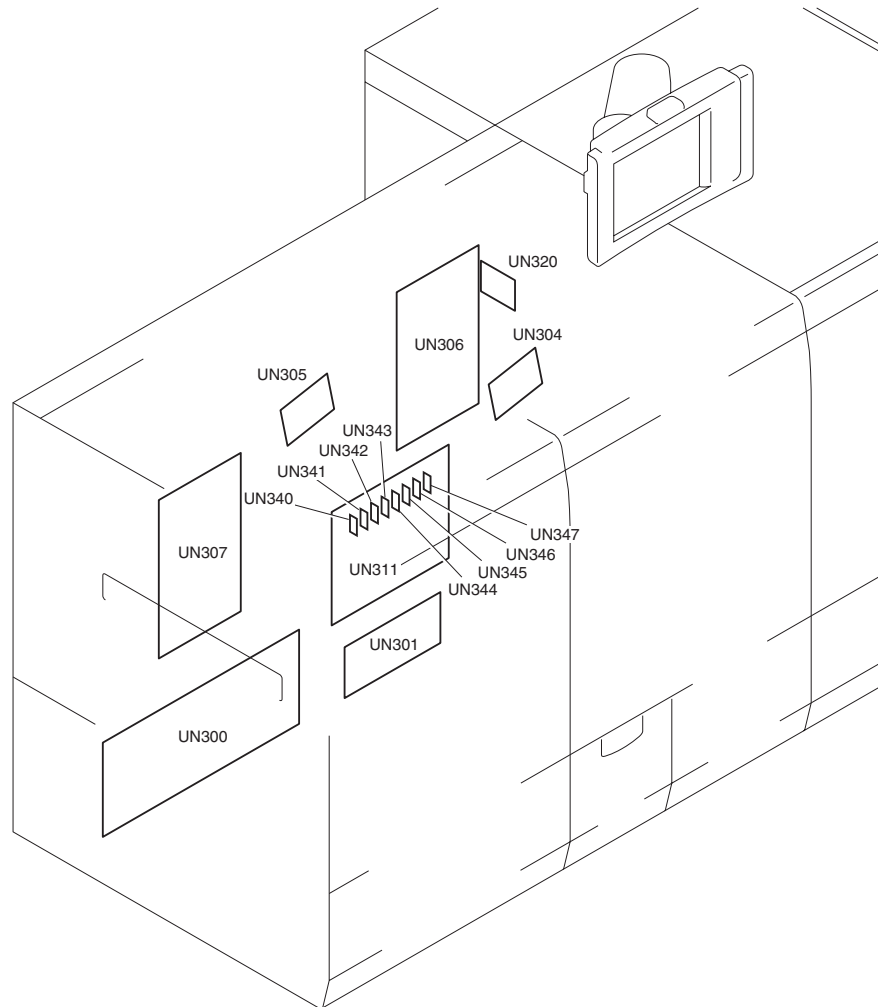
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

F-16-102
T-16-60

Symbol	Parts Name	Function	Parts No.
UN308	Color sensor control PCB 1	Supply DC power to color sensor, transform signal	FM2-7733
UN309	Color sensor control PCB 2	Supply DC power to color sensor, transform signal	FM2-7733
UN310	Reverse/external delivery driver PCB	drive reverse/external delivery unit	FM2-7701
UN312	Color sensor 1	Mesure patch density for printer PASCAL	FM2-2713 (Color sensor unit)
UN313	Color sensor 2	Mesure patch density for printer PASCAL	FM2-2713 (Color sensor unit)
UN314	Color sensor 3	Mesure patch density for printer PASCAL	FM2-2713 (Color sensor unit)
UN315	Color sensor 4	Mesure patch density for printer PASCAL	FM2-2713 (Color sensor unit)
UN316	Primary fixing inner driver PCB	Press primary fixing belt, drive fixing belt steering motor	FM2-7703
UN317	Secondary fixing inner driver PCB	Press secondary fixing belt, drive fixing belt steering motor	FM2-7703
UN330	Color sensor ROM PCB (Y)	Preservation of characteristic data of Y color sensor	FM2-2713 (Color sensor unit)
UN331	Color sensor ROM PCB (M)	Preservation of characteristic data of M color sensor	FM2-2713 (Color sensor unit)
UN332	Color sensor ROM PCB (C)	Preservation of characteristic data of C color sensor	FM2-2713 (Color sensor unit)
UN333	Color sensor ROM PCB (Bk)	Preservation of characteristic data of Bk color sensor	FM2-2713 (Color sensor unit)

16.4.7.6 Sub Station(2/2)

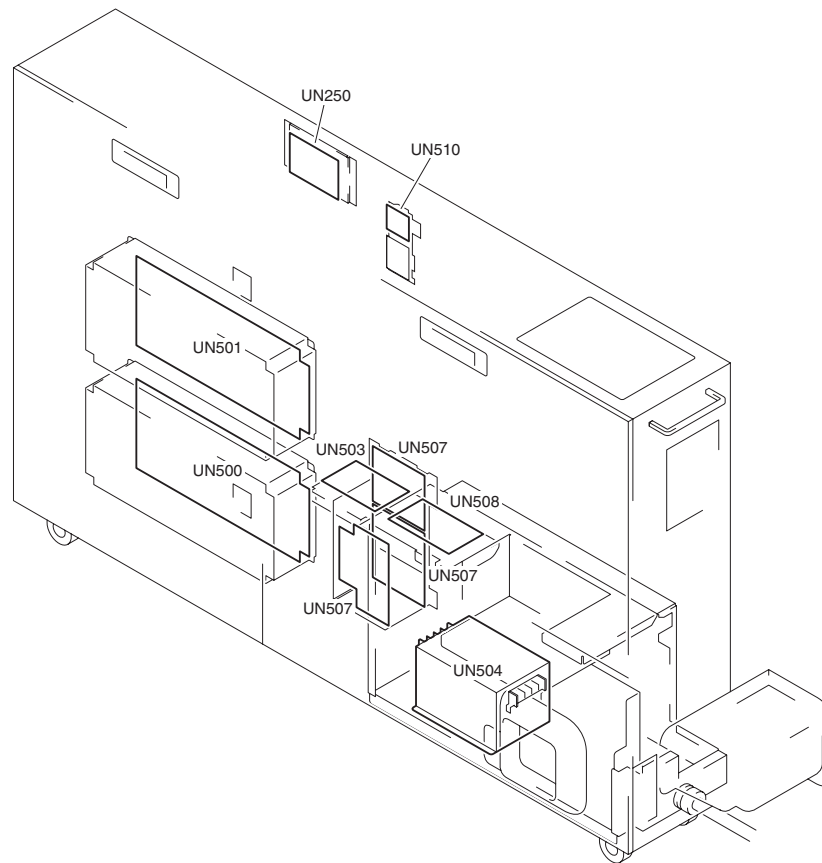
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

F-16-103
T-16-61

Symbol	Parts Name	Function	Parts No.
UN300	24V power supply 4	Supply 24V (non all-night) to electrical parts (various driver PCB's, etc.) and reader (optional)	FK2-2711
UN301	Sub station power connecting PCB	DC-DC converter Supply 3.3V/5V/13V/24V to electrical parts of sub station	FM2-7713
UN304	Primary fixing external driver PCB	Press primary fixing web/external heating unit, drive primary fixing roller/belt	FM2-7702
UN305	Secondary fixing external driver PCB	Press secondary fixing web/external heating unit, drive secondary fixing roller/belt	FM2-7702
UN306	Primary fixing heater driver PCB	Drive heater in primary fixing assembly	FK2-3147
UN307	Secondary fixing heater driver PCB	Drive heater in secondary fixing assembly	FK2-3147
UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB	Control electrical parts in sub station	FM2-7700
UN320	Primary fixing motor inverter PCB	24V is converted into 30V	FM2-0848
UN340	Motor driver PCB (A)	Motor driver small PCB 1	FM2-8297
UN341	Motor driver PCB (B)	Motor driver small PCB 2	FM2-8298
UN342	Motor driver PCB (A)	Motor driver small PCB 3	FM2-8297
UN343	Motor driver PCB (B)	Motor driver small PCB 4	FM2-8298
UN344	Motor driver PCB (A)	Motor driver small PCB 5	FM2-8297
UN345	Motor driver PCB (B)	Motor driver small PCB 6	FM2-8298
UN346	Motor driver PCB (A)	Motor driver small PCB 7	FM2-8297
UN347	Motor driver PCB (B)	Motor driver small PCB 8	FM2-8298

16.4.7.7 Power Unit Station(1/2)

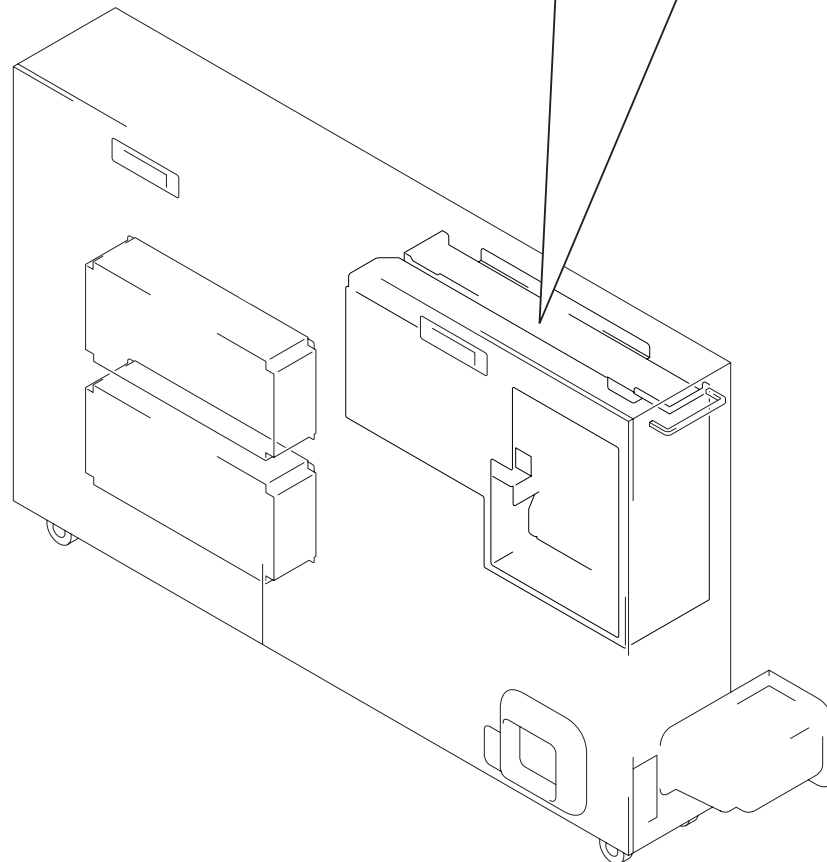
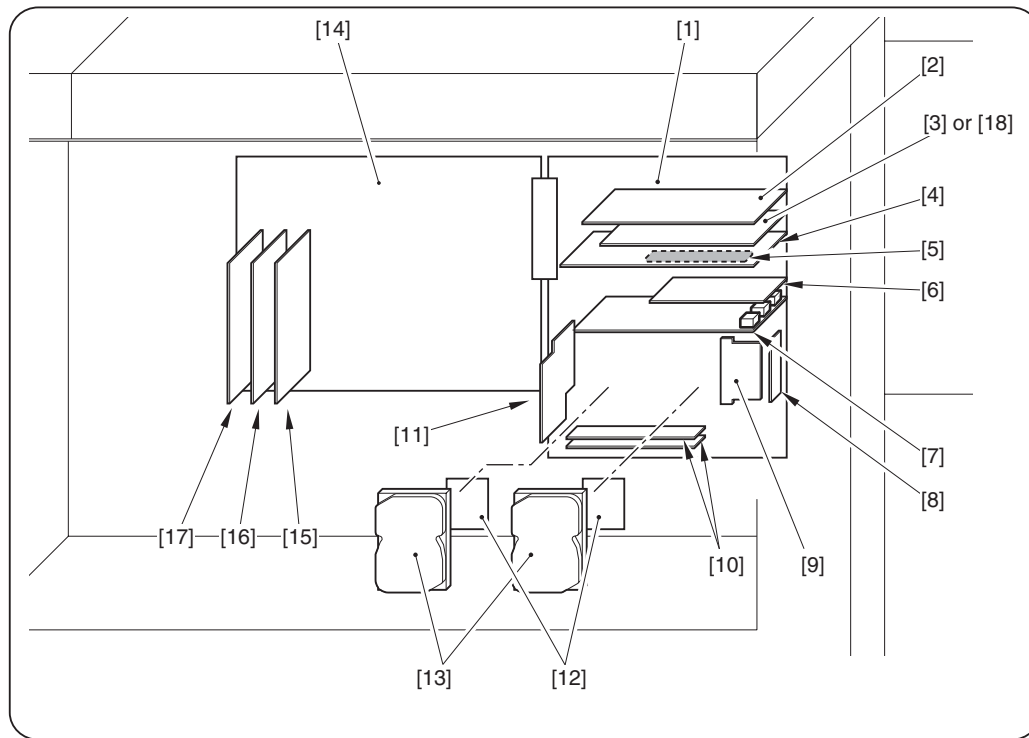
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

F-16-104
T-16-62

Symbol	Parts Name	Function	Parts No.
UN250	Drum surface temperature sensor power supply PCB	Generate DC power for drum surface temperature sensor	FM2-7708
UN500	24V power supply 1	Generate 24V DC power	FK2-2711
UN501	24V power supply 2	Generate 24V DC power	FK2-2711
UN503	3.3V all-night power supply PCB	Generate 3.3V all-night DC power	FK2-2858
UN504	AC filter unit	Noise filter	JPN: FM2-8992 USA: FM2-9081 EUR: FM2-9080
UN507	13V non-all-night power supply PCB	Generate 13V non-all-night DC power	FK2-2712
UN508	Main controller power supply PCB	Control of the entire system	FM2-7710
UN510	Shutdown PCB	Control power shutdown	FM2-7714

16.4.7.8 Power Unit Station(2/2)

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

F-16-105
T-16-63

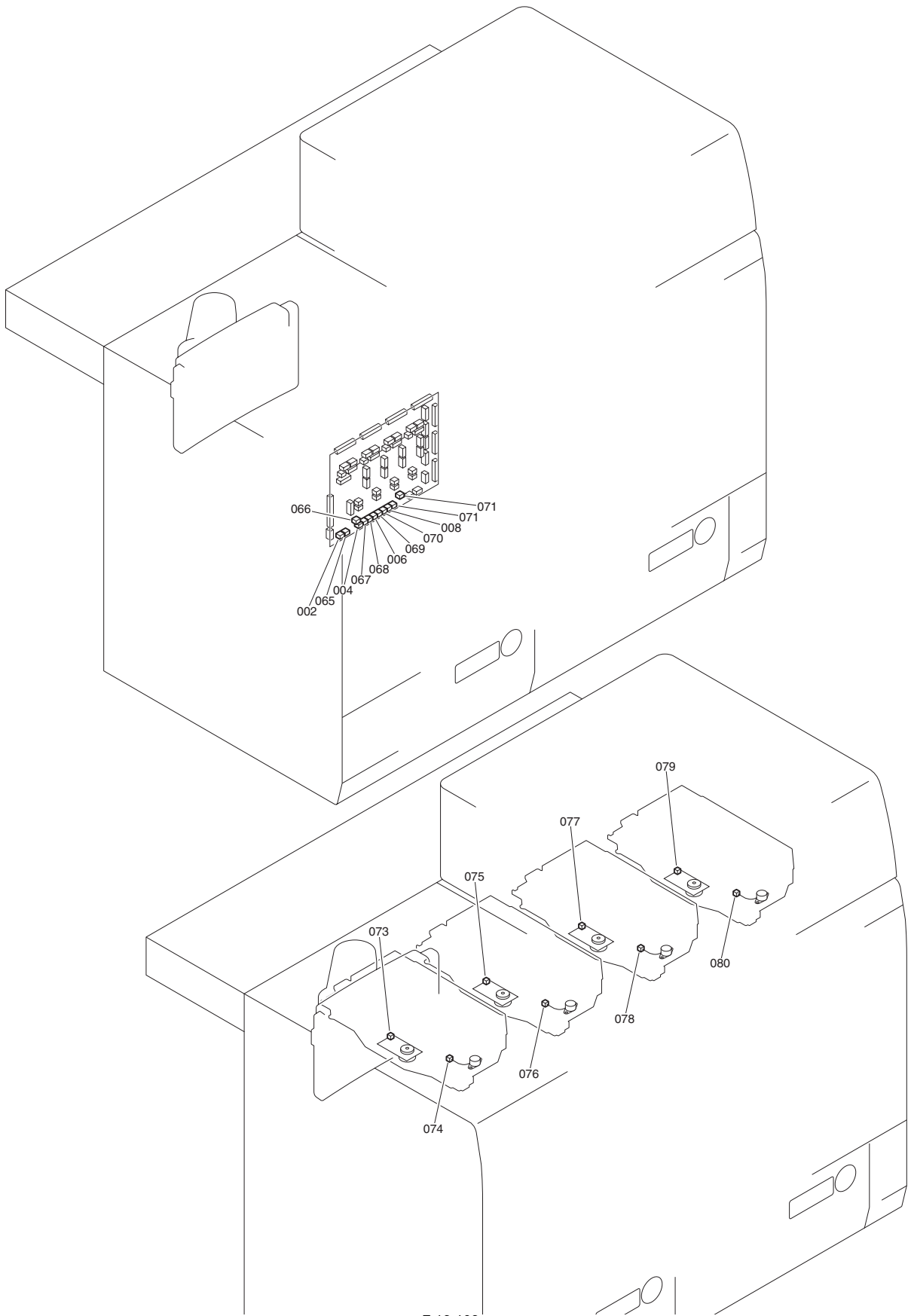
Parts Name	Function	Parts No.
[1] Main controller PCB (MAIN-M)	Whole system control, memory control, printer output image processing control, various I / O, expansion bus control, color preview control, 1200dpi / 600dpi conversion	FM2-7813

Parts Name		Function	Parts No.
[2]	RO-B PCB	External controller I / F, Color space conversion, electronic sorting rotation, binalization, resolution conversion. 1200dpi / 600dpi conversion, rotation function, margin function	FM2-7430
[3]	O-B PCB *	External controller I / F, 1200dpi / 600dpi conversion, rotation function, margin function	FM2-7360
[4]	S-B PCB	Reader I / F, reader image processing (resolution conversion, image rotation, compression and extension)	FM2-9076
[5]	ZJ-A PCB *	Character / shading determination, color determination	FM2-7352
[6]	Voice guidance PCB *	Voice data input / output	FM2-3909
[7]	LAN-bar-B PCB	LAN I / F, HDD controller	FM2-2284
[8]	BOOT ROM	Stores the BOOT programs	NPN
[9]	SRAM PCB	Retains user mode / service mode settings, retains the image data management information saved on the HDD	FM2-6040
[10]	DDR-SDRAM	Stores program-related data, image data	512MB: FM2-6208 1GB: FM2-6209
[11]	RB-A PCB *	Color space conversion, electronic sorting rotation, binalization, resolution conversion	FM2-6810
[12]	Encryption board *	Encryption / decryption, encryption key management	FM2-9158
[13]	Hard disk	Stores the system software, image data, BOX image data Capacity: 80 GB x 2	FK2-2889
[14]	Main controller PCB (MAIN-P)	Printer output image processing (color space compression, background omission, LOG conversion, direct mapping, color balance, zoom fine adjustment, gradation conversion, screen processing, trimming, masking), drum-to-drum delay memory control (Y color data)	FM2-7815
[15]	DRM (256) PCB	drum-to-drum delay memory control (M color data)	FM2-2281
[16]	DRM (512) PCB	drum-to-drum delay memory control (Bk color data)	FM2-2282
[17]	DRM (512) PCB	drum-to-drum delay memory control (C color data)	FM2-2282
[18]	Gu-Short PCB	internal bus connection	FM2-2283

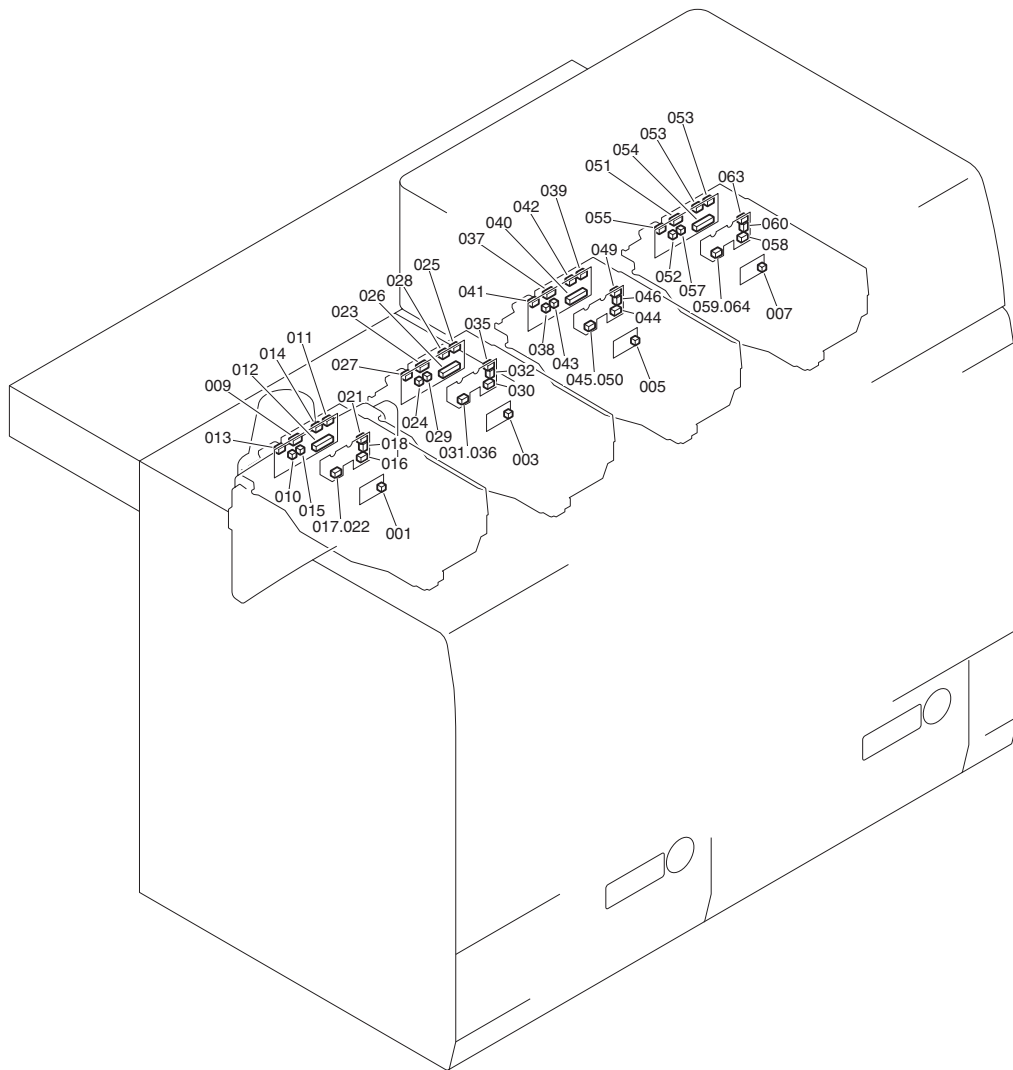
16.4.8 Connectors

16.4.8.1 Laser Unit

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000



F-16-106



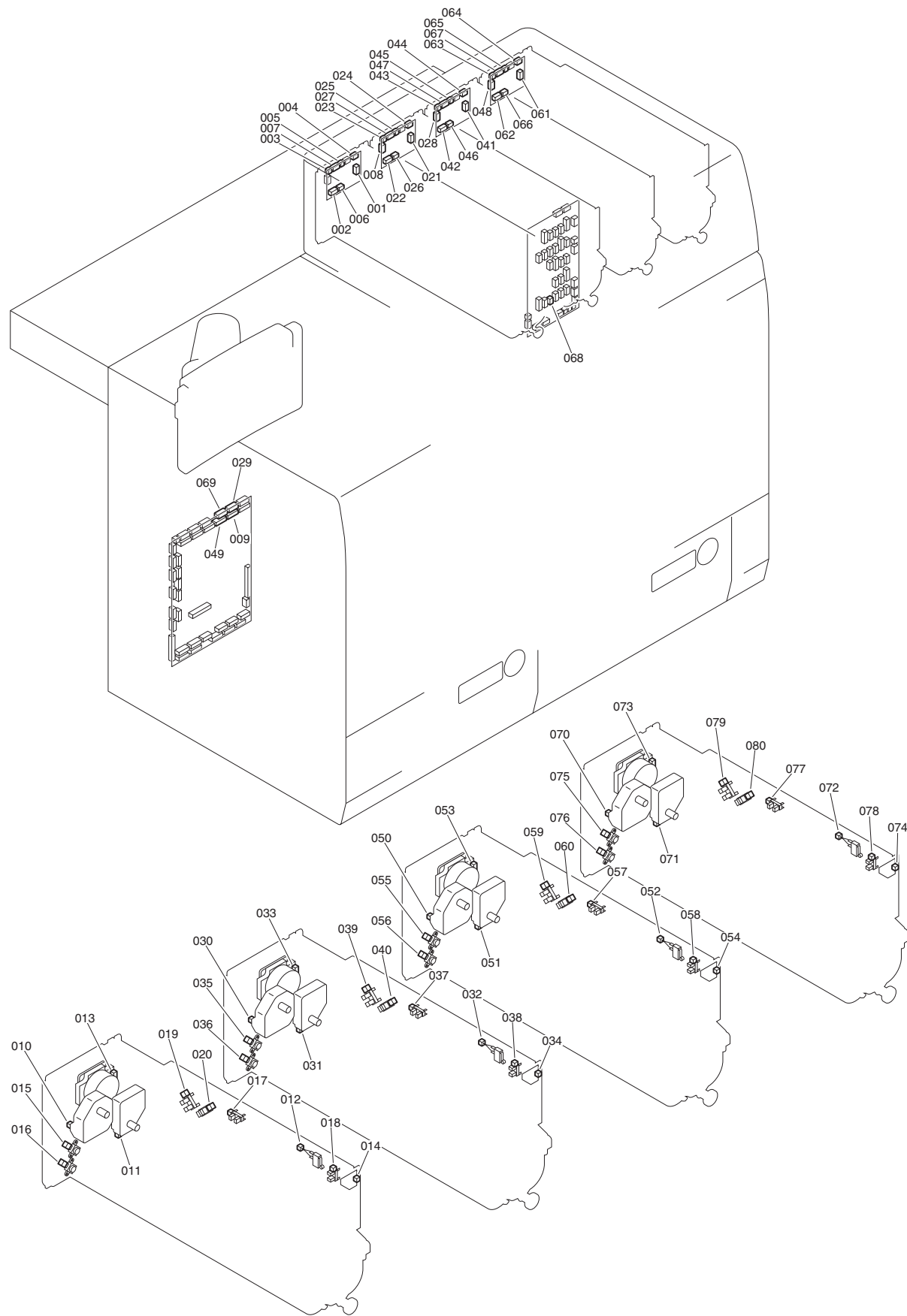
F-16-107

T-16-64

No.	Electric symbol	Electric parts name	J No.	Relay connector	J No.	No.	Electric symbol	Electric parts name
001	UN155	BD sensor PCB (Y)	J101Y	J7151Y	J1113	002	UN240	DC controller PCB 1-3
003	UN156	BD sensor PCB (M)	J101M	J7151M	J1123	004	UN240	DC controller PCB 1-3
005	UN157	BD sensor PCB (C)	J101C	J7151C	J1133	006	UN240	DC controller PCB 1-3
007	UN158	BD sensor PCB (Bk)	J101K	J7151K	J1143	008	UN240	DC controller PCB 1-3
009	UN171	Laser driver sub PCB (Y)	J3550Y		J3500Y	016	UN175	Laser driver main PCB (Y)
010	UN171	Laser driver sub PCB (Y)	J3551Y		J3501Y	017	UN175	Laser driver main PCB (Y)
011	UN171	Laser driver sub PCB (Y)	J3552Y		J3502Y	018	UN175	Laser driver main PCB (Y)
012	UN171	Laser driver sub PCB (Y)	J3553Y		J1111	019	UN240	DC controller PCB 1-3
013	UN171	Laser driver sub PCB (Y)	J3554Y		J1827	020	UN102	Main station power supply connect PCB
014	UN171	Laser driver sub PCB (Y)	J3555Y		J3503Y	021	UN175	Laser driver main PCB (Y)
015	UN171	Laser driver sub PCB (Y)	J3561Y		J3501Y	022	UN175	Laser driver main PCB (Y)
023	UN172	Laser driver sub PCB (M)	J3550M		J3500M	030	UN176	Laser driver main PCB (M)
024	UN172	Laser driver sub PCB (M)	J3551M		J3501M	031	UN176	Laser driver main PCB (M)
025	UN172	Laser driver sub PCB (M)	J3552M		J3502M	032	UN176	Laser driver main PCB (M)
026	UN172	Laser driver sub PCB (M)	J3553M		J1121	033	UN240	DC controller PCB 1-3
027	UN172	Laser driver sub PCB (M)	J3554M		J1827	034	UN102	Main station power supply connect PCB
028	UN172	Laser driver sub PCB (M)	J3555M		J3503M	035	UN176	Laser driver main PCB (M)
029	UN172	Laser driver sub PCB (M)	J3561M		J3501M	036	UN176	Laser driver main PCB (M)
037	UN173	Laser driver sub PCB (C)	J3550C		J3500C	044	UN177	Laser driver main PCB (C)
038	UN173	Laser driver sub PCB (C)	J3551C		J3501C	045	UN177	Laser driver main PCB (C)
039	UN173	Laser driver sub PCB (C)	J3552C		J3502C	046	UN177	Laser driver main PCB (C)
040	UN173	Laser driver sub PCB (C)	J3553C		J1131	047	UN240	DC controller PCB 1-3
041	UN173	Laser driver sub PCB (C)	J3554C		J1828	048	UN102	Main station power supply connect PCB
042	UN173	Laser driver sub PCB (C)	J3555C		J3503C	049	UN177	Laser driver main PCB (C)
043	UN173	Laser driver sub PCB (C)	J3561C		J3501C	050	UN177	Laser driver main PCB (C)
051	UN174	Laser driver sub PCB (Bk)	J3550K		J3500K	058	UN178	Laser driver main PCB (Bk)
052	UN174	Laser driver sub PCB (Bk)	J3551K		J3501K	059	UN178	Laser driver main PCB (Bk)
053	UN174	Laser driver sub PCB (Bk)	J3552K		J3502K	060	UN178	Laser driver main PCB (Bk)
054	UN174	Laser driver sub PCB (Bk)	J3553K		J1141	061	UN240	DC controller PCB 1-3
055	UN174	Laser driver sub PCB (Bk)	J3554K		J1828	062	UN102	Main station power supply connect PCB
056	UN174	Laser driver sub PCB (Bk)	J3555K		J3503K	063	UN178	Laser driver main PCB (Bk)
057	UN174	Laser driver sub PCB (Bk)	J3561K		J3501K	064	UN178	Laser driver main PCB (Bk)
065	UN240	DC controller PCB 1-3	J1112	J7150Y	J5200	073	M107	Laser scanner motor (Y)
066	UN240	DC controller PCB 1-3	J1114	J7152Y	J5204	074	M103	Lens skew control motor (Y)
067	UN240	DC controller PCB 1-3	J1122	J7150M	J5201	075	M106	Laser scanner motor (M)
068	UN240	DC controller PCB 1-3	J1124	J7152M	J5205	076	M102	Lens skew control motor (M)
069	UN240	DC controller PCB 1-3	J1132	J7150C	J5202	077	M104	Laser scanner motor (C)
070	UN240	DC controller PCB 1-3	J1134	J7152C	J5206	078	M100	Lens skew control motor (C)
071	UN240	DC controller PCB 1-3	J1142	J7150K	J5203	079	M105	Laser scanner motor (Bk)
072	UN240	DC controller PCB 1-3	J1144	J7152K	J5207	080	M101	Lens skew control motor (Bk)

16.4.8.2 Hopper Unit

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000



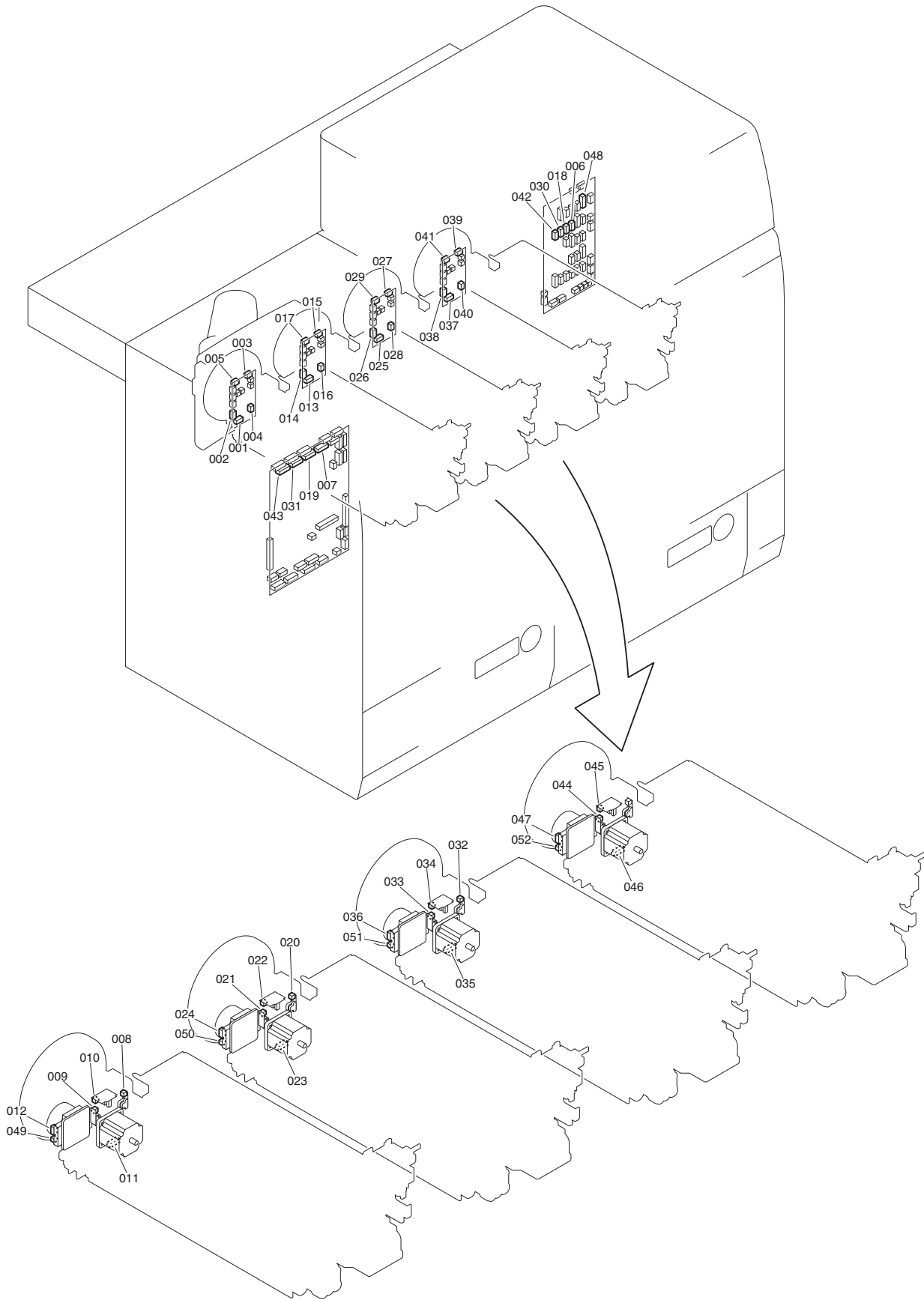
F-16-108

T-16-65

No.	Electric symbol	Electric parts name	J No.	Relay connector	J No.	No.	Electric symbol	Electric parts name
001	UN165	Hopper driver PCB (Y)	J1400Y		J1401M	008	UN166	Hopper driver PCB (M)
002	UN165	Hopper driver PCB (Y)	J1410Y	J7350	J1014	009	UN124	DC controller PCB 1-2
003	UN165	Hopper driver PCB (Y)	J1420Y		J5249	010	M146	Toner container motor (Y)
003	UN165	Hopper driver PCB (Y)	J1420Y		J5328	011	M193	Toner container slide motor (Y)
003	UN165	Hopper driver PCB (Y)	J1420Y	J7361Y	J5631	012	SW104	Hopper cover switch (Y)
004	UN165	Hopper driver PCB (Y)	J1421Y		J5253	013	M195	Hopper motor (Y)
005	UN165	Hopper driver PCB (Y)	J1422Y	J7357Y	J34Y	014	UN251	Hopper switch PCB (Y)
006	UN165	Hopper driver PCB (Y)	J1423Y		J5530	015	TS130	Hopper toner level sensor 1 (Y)
006	UN165	Hopper driver PCB (Y)	J1423Y		J5531	016	TS131	Hopper toner level sensor 2 (Y)
007	UN165	Hopper driver PCB (Y)	J1424Y	J7354Y	J5119	017	PS126	Hopper container presence/absence sensor (Y)
007	UN165	Hopper driver PCB (Y)	J1424Y	J7354Y	J5145	018	PS130	Hopper cover sensor (Y)
007	UN165	Hopper driver PCB (Y)	J1424Y	J7354Y	J5174	019	PS218	Toner container slide sensor 1 (Y)
007	UN165	Hopper driver PCB (Y)	J1424Y	J7354Y	J5178	020	PS216	Toner container slide sensor 2 (Y)
021	UN166	Hopper driver PCB (M)	J1400M		J1401C	028	UN167	Hopper driver PCB (C)
022	UN166	Hopper driver PCB (M)	J1410M	J7351	J1015	029	UN124	DC controller PCB 1-2
023	UN166	Hopper driver PCB (M)	J1420M		J5250	030	M145	Toner container motor (M)
023	UN166	Hopper driver PCB (M)	J1420M		J5329	031	M191	Toner container slide motor (M)
023	UN166	Hopper driver PCB (M)	J1420M	J7361M	J5632	032	SW103	Hopper cover switch (M)
024	UN166	Hopper driver PCB (M)	J1421M		J5254	033	M198	Hopper motor (M)
025	UN166	Hopper driver PCB (M)	J1422M	J7357M	J34M	034	UN252	Hopper switch PCB (M)
026	UN166	Hopper driver PCB (M)	J1423M		J5534	035	TS132	Hopper toner level sensor 1 (M)
026	UN166	Hopper driver PCB (M)	J1423M		J5535	036	TS133	Hopper toner level sensor 2 (M)
027	UN166	Hopper driver PCB (M)	J1424M	J7354M	J5120	037	PS125	Hopper container presence/absence sensor (M)
027	UN166	Hopper driver PCB (M)	J1424M	J7354M	J5146	038	PS129	Hopper cover sensor (M)
027	UN166	Hopper driver PCB (M)	J1424M	J7354M	J5175	039	PS207	Toner container slide sensor 1 (M)
027	UN166	Hopper driver PCB (M)	J1424M	J7354M	J5179	040	PS213	Toner container slide sensor 2 (M)
041	UN167	Hopper driver PCB (C)	J1400C		J1401K	048	UN168	Hopper driver PCB (Bk)
042	UN167	Hopper driver PCB (C)	J1410C	J7352	J1016	049	UN124	DC controller PCB 1-2
043	UN167	Hopper driver PCB (C)	J1420C		J5251	050	M143	Toner container motor (C)
043	UN167	Hopper driver PCB (C)	J1420C		J5330	051	M190	Toner container slide motor (C)
043	UN167	Hopper driver PCB (C)	J1420C	J7361C	J5633	052	SW101	Hopper cover switch (C)
044	UN167	Hopper driver PCB (C)	J1421C		J5255	053	M197	Hopper motor (C)
045	UN167	Hopper driver PCB (C)	J1422C	J7357C	J34C	054	UN253	Hopper switch PCB (C)
046	UN167	Hopper driver PCB (C)	J1423C		J5538	055	TS134	Hopper toner level sensor 1 (C)
046	UN167	Hopper driver PCB (C)	J1423C		J5539	056	TS135	Hopper toner level sensor 2 (C)
047	UN167	Hopper driver PCB (C)	J1424C	J7354C	J5121	057	PS123	Hopper container presence/absence sensor (C)
047	UN167	Hopper driver PCB (C)	J1424C	J7354C	J5147	058	PS127	Hopper cover sensor (C)
047	UN167	Hopper driver PCB (C)	J1424C	J7354C	J5176	059	PS219	Toner container slide sensor 1 (C)
047	UN167	Hopper driver PCB (C)	J1424C	J7354C	J5180	060	PS201	Toner container slide sensor 2 (C)
061	UN168	Hopper driver PCB (Bk)	J1400K	J7359	J1823	068	UN102	Main station power supply connect PCB
062	UN168	Hopper driver PCB (Bk)	J1410K	J7353	J1017	069	UN124	DC controller PCB 1-2
063	UN168	Hopper driver PCB (Bk)	J1420K		J5252	070	M144	Toner container motor (Bk)
063	UN168	Hopper driver PCB (Bk)	J1420K		J5331	071	M192	Toner container slide motor (Bk)
063	UN168	Hopper driver PCB (Bk)	J1420K	J7361K	J5634	072	SW102	Hopper cover switch (Bk)
064	UN168	Hopper driver PCB (Bk)	J1421K		J5256	073	M196	Hopper motor (Bk)
065	UN168	Hopper driver PCB (Bk)	J1422K	J7357K	J34K	074	UN254	Hopper switch PCB (Bk)
066	UN168	Hopper driver PCB (Bk)	J1423K		J5542	075	TS136	Hopper toner level sensor 1 (Bk)
066	UN168	Hopper driver PCB (Bk)	J1423K		J5543	076	TS137	Hopper toner level sensor 2 (Bk)
067	UN168	Hopper driver PCB (Bk)	J1424K	J7354K	J5122	077	PS124	Hopper container presence/absence sensor (Bk)
067	UN168	Hopper driver PCB (Bk)	J1424K	J7354K	J5148	078	PS128	Hopper cover sensor (Bk)
067	UN168	Hopper driver PCB (Bk)	J1424K	J7354K	J5177	079	PS203	Toner container slide sensor 1 (Bk)
067	UN168	Hopper driver PCB (Bk)	J1424K	J7354K	J5181	080	PS204	Toner container slide sensor 2 (Bk)

16.4.8.3 Process Unit (1/3)

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000



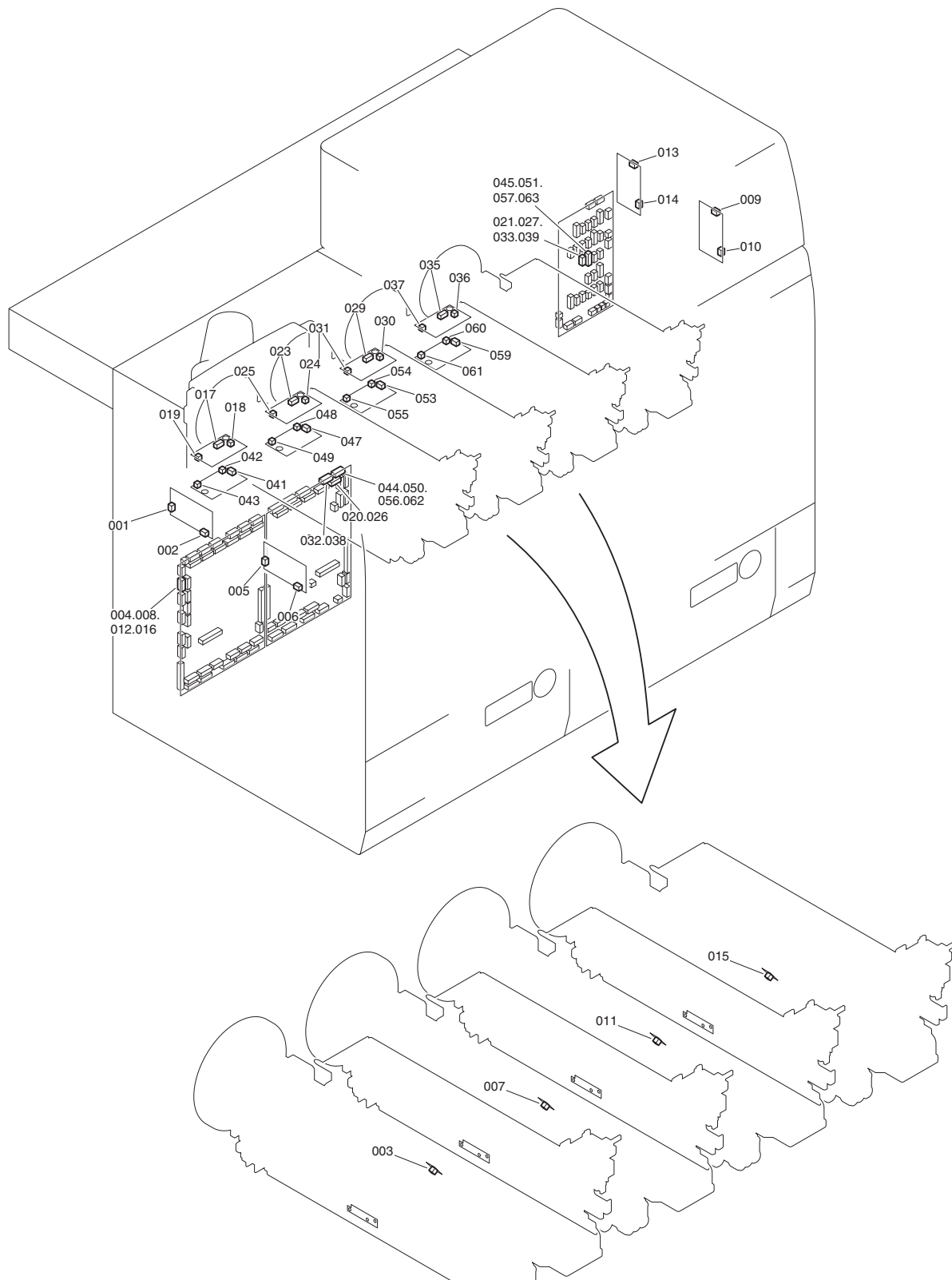
F-16-109

T-16-66

No.	Electric symbol	Electric parts name	J No.	Relay connector	J No.	No.	Electric symbol	Electric parts name
001	UN125	Drum driver PCB (Y)	J1600Y		J1834	006	UN102	Main station power supply connect PCB
002	UN125	Drum driver PCB (Y)	J1611Y		J1035	007	UN198	DC controller PCB 1-1
003	UN125	Drum driver PCB (Y)	J1620Y		J5064B	008	PS226	Drum encoder sensor A (Y)
003	UN125	Drum driver PCB (Y)	J1620Y		J5064A	009	PS225	Drum encoder sensor B (Y)
003	UN125	Drum driver PCB (Y)	J1620Y		J5064HP	010	PS187HP	Drum HP sensor (Y)
004	UN125	Drum driver PCB (Y)	J1621Y		J5282	011	M142	Drum driving motor (Y)
005	UN125	Drum driver PCB (Y)	J1622Y		J5233	012	M133	Developing motor (Y)
013	UN126	Drum driver PCB (M)	J1600M		J1835	018	UN102	Main station power supply connect PCB
014	UN126	Drum driver PCB (M)	J1611M		J1036	019	UN198	DC controller PCB 1-1
015	UN126	Drum driver PCB (M)	J1620M		J5067B	020	PS229	Drum encoder sensor B (M)
015	UN126	Drum driver PCB (M)	J1620M		J5067A	021	PS230	Drum encoder sensor A (M)
015	UN126	Drum driver PCB (M)	J1620M		J5067HP	022	PS177HP	Drum HP sensor (M)
016	UN126	Drum driver PCB (M)	J1621M		J5283	023	M141	Drum driving motor (M)
017	UN126	Drum driver PCB (M)	J1622M		J5234	024	M127	Developing motor (M)
025	UN127	Drum driver PCB (C)	J1600C		J1836	030	UN102	Main station power supply connect PCB
026	UN127	Drum driver PCB (C)	J1611C		J1037	031	UN198	DC controller PCB 1-1
027	UN127	Drum driver PCB (C)	J1620C		J5070B	032	PS227	Drum encoder sensor B (C)
027	UN127	Drum driver PCB (C)	J1620C		J5070A	033	PS228	Drum encoder sensor A (C)
027	UN127	Drum driver PCB (C)	J1620C		J5070HP	034	PS179HP	Drum HP sensor (C)
028	UN127	Drum driver PCB (C)	J1621C		J5284	035	M139	Drum driving motor (C)
029	UN127	Drum driver PCB (C)	J1622C		J5235	036	M115	Developing motor (C)
037	UN128	Drum driver PCB (Bk)	J1600K		J1837	042	UN102	Main station power supply connect PCB
038	UN128	Drum driver PCB (Bk)	J1611K		J1038	043	UN198	DC controller PCB 1-1
039	UN128	Drum driver PCB (Bk)	J1620K		J5073A	044	PS224	Drum encoder sensor A (Bk)
039	UN128	Drum driver PCB (Bk)	J1620K		J5073HP	045	PS182HP	Drum HP sensor (Bk)
040	UN128	Drum driver PCB (Bk)	J1621K		J5285	046	M140	Drum driving motor (Bk)
041	UN128	Drum driver PCB (Bk)	J1622K		J5236	047	M121	Developing motor (Bk)
048	UN102	Main station power supply connect PCB	J1846		J5233P	049	M133	Developing motor (Y)
048	UN102	Main station power supply connect PCB	J1846		J5234P	050	M127	Developing motor (M)
048	UN102	Main station power supply connect PCB	J1846		J5235P	051	M115	Developing motor (C)
048	UN102	Main station power supply connect PCB	J1846		J5236P	052	M121	Developing motor (Bk)

16.4.8.4 Process Unit (2/3)

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000



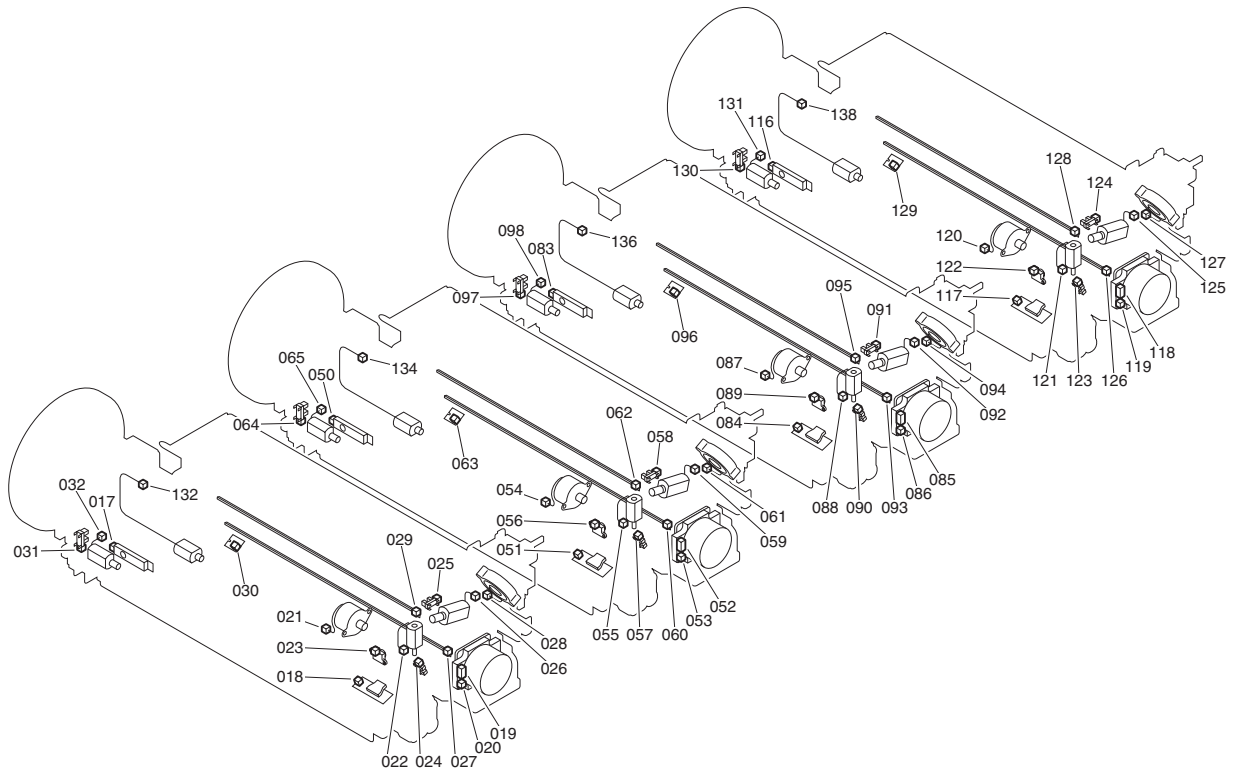
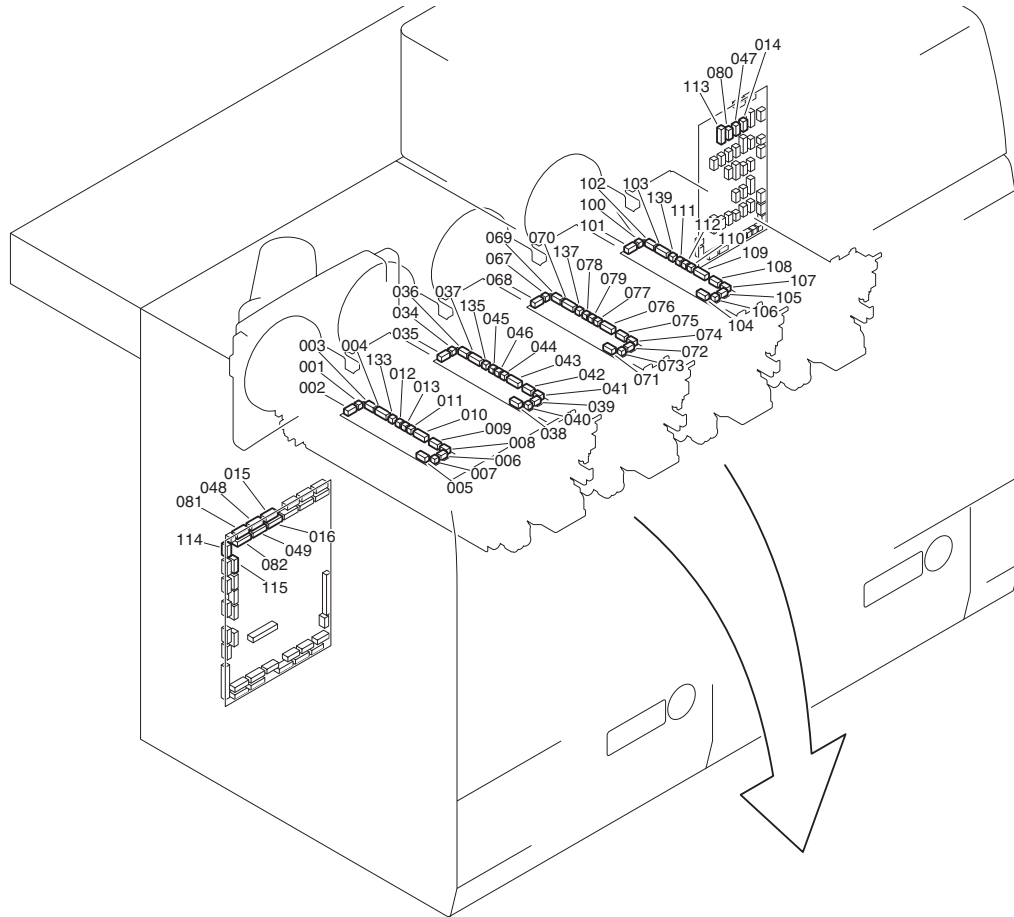
F-16-110

T-16-67

No.	Electric symbol	Electric parts name	J No.	Relay connector				J No.	No.	Electric symbol	Electric parts name
001	UN129	Potential measuring PCB (Y)	J1Y	J7256Y				J1Y	003	UN209	Potential sensor (Y)
002	UN129	Potential measuring PCB (Y)	J4603Y	J7750	J7788	J9010	J7764	J1095	004	UN124	DC controller PCB 1-2
005	UN130	Potential measuring PCB (M)	J1M	J7256M				J1M	007	UN208	Potential sensor (M)
006	UN130	Potential measuring PCB (M)	J4603M	J7750	J7788	J9010	J7764	J1095	008	UN124	DC controller PCB 1-2
009	UN131	Potential measuring PCB (C)	J1C	J7256C				J1C	011	UN206	Potential sensor (C)
010	UN131	Potential measuring PCB (C)	J4603C	J7751	J7788	J9010	J7764	J1095	012	UN124	DC controller PCB 1-2
013	UN132	Potential measuring PCB (Bk)	J1K	J7256K				J1K	015	UN207	Potential sensor (Bk)
014	UN132	Potential measuring PCB (Bk)	J4603K	J7751	J7788	J9010	J7764	J1095	016	UN124	DC controller PCB 1-2
017	UN133	Developing high-voltage PCB (Y)	J3201Y					J1047	020	UN198	DC controller PCB 1-1
018	UN133	Developing high-voltage PCB (Y)	J3202Y					J1838	021	UN102	Main station power supply connect PCB
019	UN133	Developing high-voltage PCB (Y)	J3211Y					-	-	UN194	Toner blocking high-voltage PCB (Y)
023	UN134	Developing high-voltage PCB (M)	J3201M					J1047	026	UN198	DC controller PCB 1-1
024	UN134	Developing high-voltage PCB (M)	J3202M					J1838	027	UN102	Main station power supply connect PCB
025	UN134	Developing high-voltage PCB (M)	J3211M					-	-	UN193	Toner blocking high-voltage PCB (M)
029	UN135	Developing high-voltage PCB (C)	J3201C					J1048	032	UN198	DC controller PCB 1-1
030	UN135	Developing high-voltage PCB (C)	J3202C					J1838	033	UN102	Main station power supply connect PCB
031	UN135	Developing high-voltage PCB (C)	J3211C					-	-	UN191	Toner blocking high-voltage PCB (C)
035	UN136	Developing high-voltage PCB (Bk)	J3201K					J1048	038	UN198	DC controller PCB 1-1
036	UN136	Developing high-voltage PCB (Bk)	J3202K					J1838	039	UN102	Main station power supply connect PCB
037	UN136	Developing high-voltage PCB (Bk)	J3211K					-	-	UN192	Toner blocking high-voltage PCB (Bk)
041	UN137	Primary charging high-voltage PCB (Y)	J3000Y					J1040	044	UN198	DC controller PCB 1-1
042	UN137	Primary charging high-voltage PCB (Y)	J3001Y					J1838	045	UN102	Main station power supply connect PCB
043	UN137	Primary charging high-voltage PCB (Y)	J3002Y					-	-	-	Primary charging assembly (Y) (grid bias)
047	UN138	Primary charging high-voltage PCB (M)	J3000M					J1040	050	UN198	DC controller PCB 1-1
048	UN138	Primary charging high-voltage PCB (M)	J3001M					J1838	051	UN102	Main station power supply connect PCB
049	UN138	Primary charging high-voltage PCB (M)	J3002M					-	-	-	Primary charging assembly (M) (grid bias)
053	UN139	Primary charging high-voltage PCB (C)	J3000C					J1040	056	UN198	DC controller PCB 1-1
054	UN139	Primary charging high-voltage PCB (C)	J3001C					J1838	057	UN102	Main station power supply connect PCB
055	UN139	Primary charging high-voltage PCB (C)	J3002C					-	-	-	Primary charging assembly (C) (grid bias)
059	UN140	Primary charging high-voltage PCB (Bk)	J3000K					J1040	062	UN198	DC controller PCB 1-1
060	UN140	Primary charging high-voltage PCB (Bk)	J3001K					J1838	063	UN102	Main station power supply connect PCB
061	UN140	Primary charging high-voltage PCB (Bk)	J3002K					-	-	-	Primary charging assembly (Bk) (grid bias)

16.4.8.5 Process Unit (3/3)

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000



F-16-111

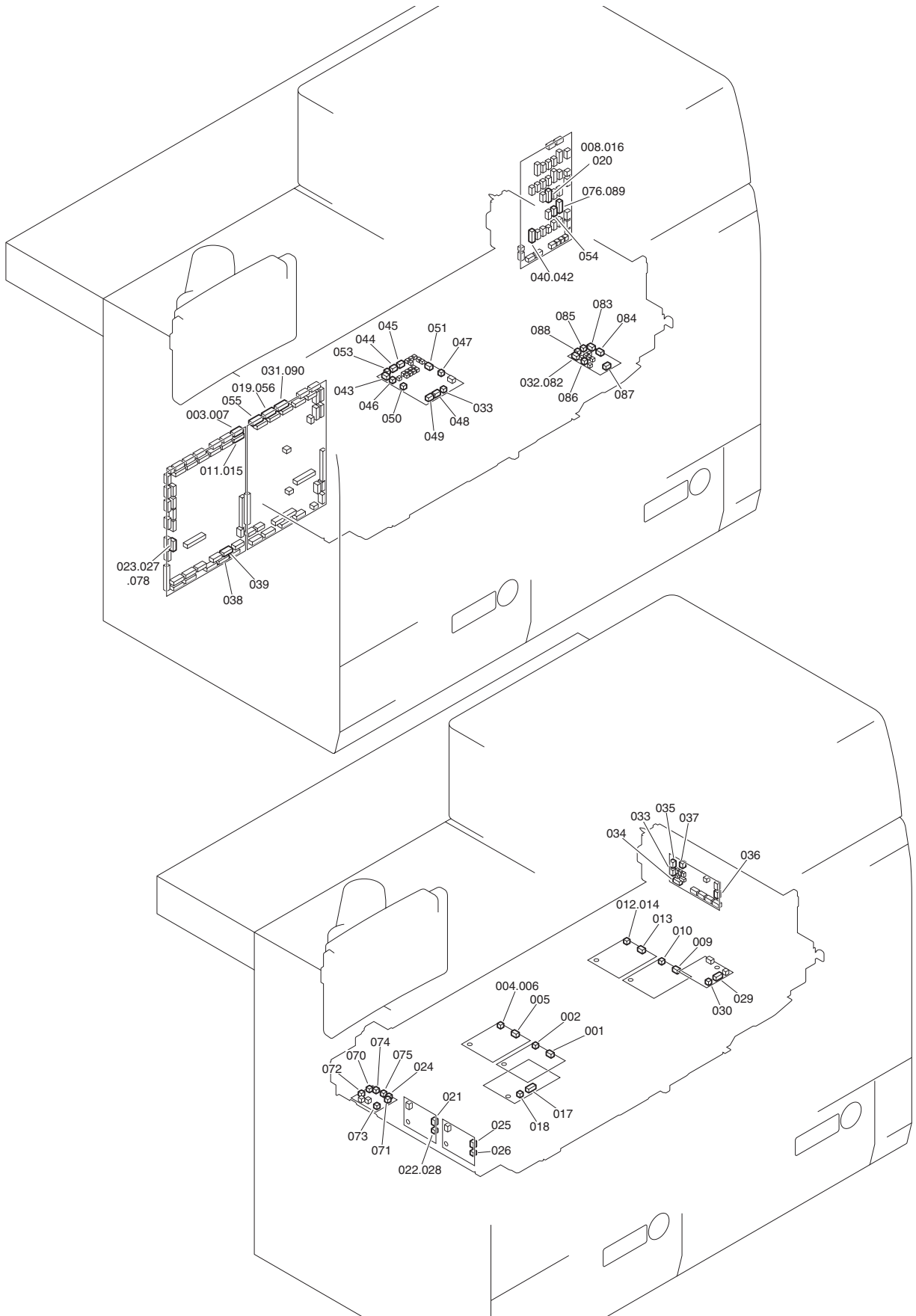
T-16-68

No.	Electric symbol	Electric parts name	J No.	Relay connector			J No.	No.	Electric symbol	Electric parts name
001	UN161	Process unit driver PCB (Y)	J1350Y	J7008	J7263		J1840	014	UN102	Main station power supply connect PCB
002	UN161	Process unit driver PCB (Y)	J1351Y	J7007	J7253		J1840	014	UN102	Main station power supply connect PCB
003	UN161	Process unit driver PCB (Y)	J1360Y	J7008	J7273	J7784	J1006X	015	UN124	DC controller PCB 1-2
004	UN161	Process unit driver PCB (Y)	J1361Y	J7007	J7272	J7780	J1007X	016	UN124	DC controller PCB 1-2
005	UN161	Process unit driver PCB (Y)	J1370Y	J7251Y			J5030	017	PS120	Drum patch sensor (Y)
005	UN161	Process unit driver PCB (Y)	J1370Y	J7251Y			J5034	018	TS129	Developing assembly toner level sensor (Y)
006	UN161	Process unit driver PCB (Y)	J1371Y	J7259Y			J5237	019	M134	Drum cleaner motor (Y)
007	UN161	Process unit driver PCB (Y)	J1372Y	J7260Y			J5237P	020	M134	Drum cleaner motor (Y)
008	UN161	Process unit driver PCB (Y)	J1373Y				J5257	021	M138	Toner feed motor (Y)
009	UN161	Process unit driver PCB (Y)	J1374Y	J7250Y			J5261	022	M137	Sub hopper motor (Y)
009	UN161	Process unit driver PCB (Y)	J1374Y	J7250Y			J5546	023	TS106	Sub hopper toner level sensor 1 (Y)
009	UN161	Process unit driver PCB (Y)	J1374Y	J7250Y			J5123	024	PS121	Toner feed screw HP sensor (Y)
010	UN161	Process unit driver PCB (Y)	J1375Y	J7252Y	J7271Y		J5024	025	PS240	Primary charging wire cleaning motor HP sensor (Y)
010	UN161	Process unit driver PCB (Y)	J1375Y	J7252Y			J5241	026	M136	Primary charging wire cleaning motor (Y)
010	UN161	Process unit driver PCB (Y)	J1375Y	J7270Y			J5604	027	LED110	Drum cleaner pre-exposure LED (Y)
010	UN161	Process unit driver PCB (Y)	J1375Y				J5432	028	FM113	Process unit cooling fan (Y)
010	UN161	Process unit driver PCB (Y)	J1375Y				J5600	029	LED100	Pre-exposure LED (Y)
011	UN161	Process unit driver PCB (Y)	J1376Y				J5192Y	030	UN183	Drum surface temperature sensor (Y)
012	UN161	Process unit driver PCB (Y)	J1377Y	J7275Y			J5173	031	PS215	Patch sensor cleaning motor HP sensor (Y)
012	UN161	Process unit driver PCB (Y)	J1377Y				J5245	032	M135	Drum patch sensor cleaning motor (Y)
013	UN161	Process unit driver PCB (Y)	J1378Y				J5420Y	-	THM100	Drum thermistor (Y)
034	UN162	Process unit driver PCB (M)	J1350M	J7010	J7265		J1841	047	UN102	Main station power supply connect PCB
035	UN162	Process unit driver PCB (M)	J1351M	J7009	J7254		J1841	047	UN102	Main station power supply connect PCB
036	UN162	Process unit driver PCB (M)	J1360M	J7010	J7275	J7785	J1008X	048	UN124	DC controller PCB 1-2
037	UN162	Process unit driver PCB (M)	J1361M	J7009	J7274	J7781	J1009X	049	UN124	DC controller PCB 1-2
038	UN162	Process unit driver PCB (M)	J1370M	J7251M			J5031	050	PS117	Drum patch sensor (M)
038	UN162	Process unit driver PCB (M)	J1370M	J7251M			J5035	051	TS124	Developing assembly toner level sensor (M)
039	UN162	Process unit driver PCB (M)	J1371M	J7259M			J5238	052	M128	Drum cleaner motor (M)
040	UN162	Process unit driver PCB (M)	J1372M	J7260M			J5238P	053	M128	Drum cleaner motor (M)
041	UN162	Process unit driver PCB (M)	J1373M				J5258	054	M132	Toner feed motor (M)
042	UN162	Process unit driver PCB (M)	J1374M	J7250M			J5262	055	M131	Sub hopper motor (M)
042	UN162	Process unit driver PCB (M)	J1374M	J7250M			J5548	056	TS104	Sub hopper toner level sensor 1 (M)
042	UN162	Process unit driver PCB (M)	J1374M	J7250M			J5124	057	PS118	Toner feed screw HP sensor (M)
043	UN162	Process unit driver PCB (M)	J1375M	J7252M	J7271M		J5025	058	PS241	Primary charging wire cleaning motor HP sensor (M)
043	UN162	Process unit driver PCB (M)	J1375M	J7252M			J5242	059	M130	Primary charging wire cleaning motor (M)
043	UN162	Process unit driver PCB (M)	J1375M	J7270M			J5605	060	LED111	Drum cleaner pre-exposure LED (M)
043	UN162	Process unit driver PCB (M)	J1375M				J5435	061	FM111	Process unit cooling fan (M)
043	UN162	Process unit driver PCB (M)	J1375M				J5601	062	LED101	Pre-exposure LED (M)
044	UN162	Process unit driver PCB (M)	J1376M				J5192M	063	UN184	Drum surface temperature sensor (M)
045	UN162	Process unit driver PCB (M)	J1377M				J5171	064	PS206	Patch sensor cleaning motor HP sensor (M)
045	UN162	Process unit driver PCB (M)	J1377M				J5246	065	M129	Drum patch sensor cleaning motor (M)
046	UN162	Process unit driver PCB (M)	J1378M				J5420M	-	THM01	Drum thermistor (M)
067	UN163	Process unit driver PCB (C)	J1350C	J7012	J7267		J1842	080	UN102	Main station power supply connect PCB
068	UN163	Process unit driver PCB (C)	J1351C	J7011	J7255		J1842	080	UN102	Main station power supply connect PCB
069	UN163	Process unit driver PCB (C)	J1360C	J7012	J7277	J7786	J1010X	081	UN124	DC controller PCB 1-2
070	UN163	Process unit driver PCB (C)	J1361C	J7011	J7276	J7782	J1011X	082	UN124	DC controller PCB 1-2
071	UN163	Process unit driver PCB (C)	J1370C	J7251C			J5032	083	PS111	Drum patch sensor (C)
071	UN163	Process unit driver PCB (C)	J1370C	J7251C			J5036	084	TS126	Developing assembly toner level sensor (C)
072	UN163	Process unit driver PCB (C)	J1371C	J7259C			J5239	085	M116	Drum cleaner motor (C)
073	UN163	Process unit driver PCB (C)	J1372C	J7260C			J5239P	086	M116	Drum cleaner motor (C)
074	UN163	Process unit driver PCB (C)	J1373C				J5259	087	M120	Toner feed motor (C)
075	UN163	Process unit driver PCB (C)	J1374C	J7250C			J5263	088	M119	Sub hopper motor (C)
075	UN163	Process unit driver PCB (C)	J1374C	J7250C			J5550	089	TS100	Sub hopper toner level sensor 1 (C)
075	UN163	Process unit driver PCB (C)	J1374C	J7250C			J5125	090	PS112	Toner feed screw HP sensor (C)
076	UN163	Process unit driver PCB (C)	J1375C	J7252C	J7271C		J5050	091	PS242	Primary charging wire cleaning motor HP sensor (C)
076	UN163	Process unit driver PCB (C)	J1375C	J7252C			J5243	092	M118	Primary charging wire cleaning motor (C)
076	UN163	Process unit driver PCB (C)	J1375C	J7270C			J5606	093	LED112	Drum cleaner pre-exposure LED (C)
076	UN163	Process unit driver PCB (C)	J1375C				J5437	094	FM107	Process unit cooling fan (C)

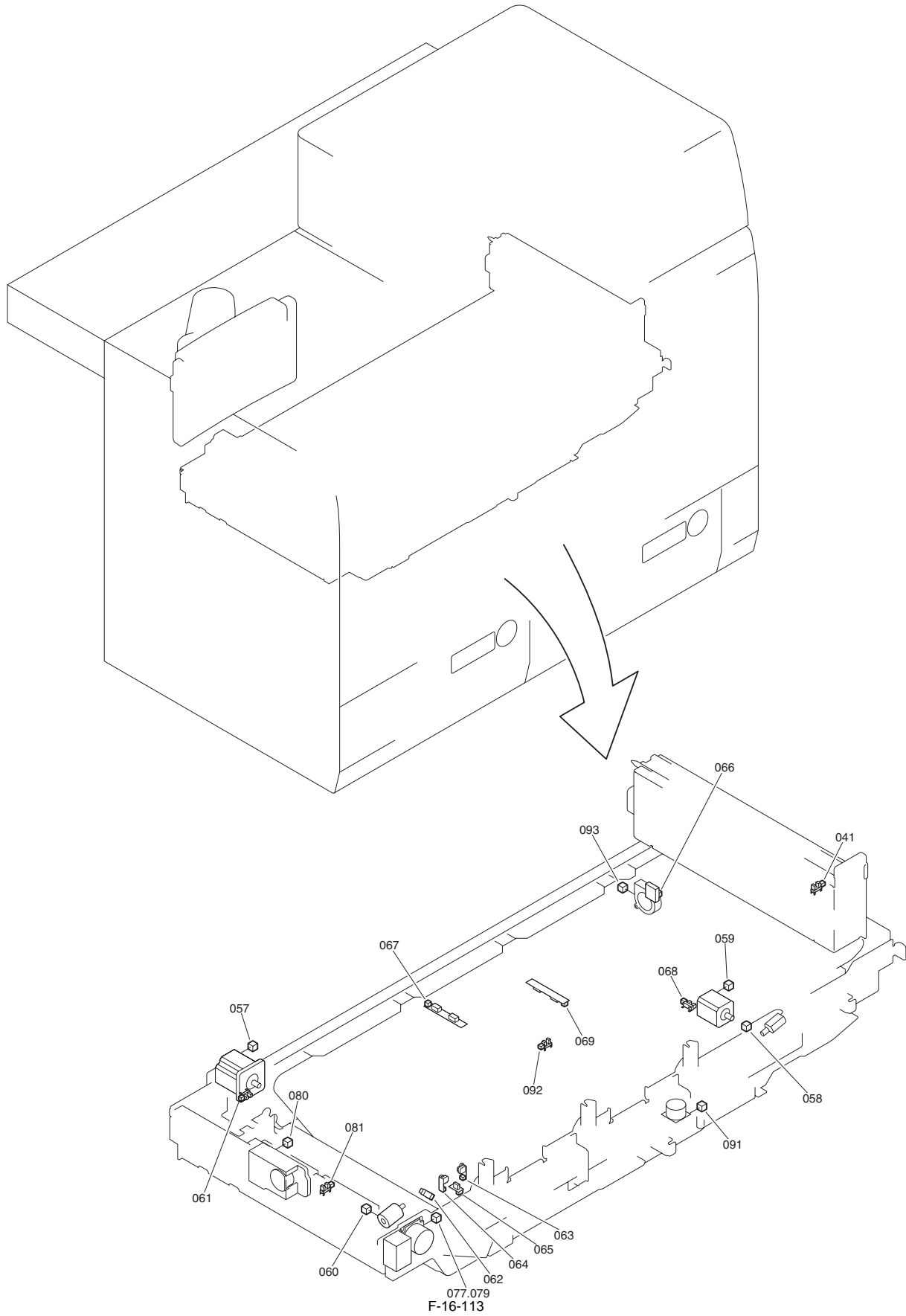
No.	Electric symbol	Electric parts name	J No.	Relay connector			J No.	No.	Electric symbol	Electric parts name
076	UN163	Process unit driver PCB (C)	J1375C				J5602	095	LED102	Pre-exposure LED (C)
077	UN163	Process unit driver PCB (C)	J1376C				J5192C	096	UN185	Drum surface temperature sensor (C)
078	UN163	Process unit driver PCB (C)	J1377C				J5170	097	PS202	Patch sensor cleaning motor HP sensor (C)
078	UN163	Process unit driver PCB (C)	J1377C				J5247	098	M117	Drum patch sensor cleaning motor (C)
079	UN163	Process unit driver PCB (C)	J1378C				J5420C	-	THM102	Drum thermistor (C)
100	UN164	Process unit driver PCB (Bk)	J1350K	JJ7014	J7269		J1843	113	UN102	Main station power supply connect PCB
101	UN164	Process unit driver PCB (Bk)	J1351K	JJ7013	J7257		J1843	113	UN102	Main station power supply connect PCB
102	UN164	Process unit driver PCB (Bk)	J1360K	J7014	J7279	J7787	J1012X	114	UN124	DC controller PCB 1-2
103	UN164	Process unit driver PCB (Bk)	J1361K	J7013	J7278	J7783	J1013X	115	UN124	DC controller PCB 1-2
104	UN164	Process unit driver PCB (Bk)	J1370K	J7251K			J5033	116	PS114	Drum patch sensor (Bk)
104	UN164	Process unit driver PCB (Bk)	J1370K	J7251K			J5037	117	TS125	Developing assembly toner level sensor (Bk)
105	UN164	Process unit driver PCB (Bk)	J1371K	J7259K			J5240	118	M122	Drum cleaner motor (Bk)
106	UN164	Process unit driver PCB (Bk)	J1372K	J7260K			J5240P	119	M122	Drum cleaner motor (Bk)
107	UN164	Process unit driver PCB (Bk)	J1373K				J5260	120	M126	Toner feed motor (Bk)
108	UN164	Process unit driver PCB (Bk)	J1374K	J7250K			J5264	121	M125	Sub hopper motor (Bk)
108	UN164	Process unit driver PCB (Bk)	J1374K	J7250K			J5552	122	TS102	Sub hopper toner level sensor 1 (Bk)
108	UN164	Process unit driver PCB (Bk)	J1374K	J7250K			J5126	123	PS115	Toner feed screw HP sensor (Bk)
109	UN164	Process unit driver PCB (Bk)	J1375K	J7252K	J7271K		J5055	124	PS243	Primary charging wire cleaning motor HP sensor (Bk)
109	UN164	Process unit driver PCB (Bk)	J1375K	J7252K			J5244	125	M124	Primary charging wire cleaning motor (Bk)
109	UN164	Process unit driver PCB (Bk)	J1375K	J7270K			J5607	126	LED113	Drum cleaner pre-exposure LED (Bk)
109	UN164	Process unit driver PCB (Bk)	J1375K				J5439	127	FM109	Process unit cooling fan (Bk)
109	UN164	Process unit driver PCB (Bk)	J1375K				J5603	128	LED103	Pre-exposure LED (Bk)
110	UN164	Process unit driver PCB (Bk)	J1376K				J5192K	129	UN186	Drum surface temperature sensor (Bk)
111	UN164	Process unit driver PCB (Bk)	J1377K				J5172	130	PS208	Patch sensor cleaning motor HP sensor (Bk)
111	UN164	Process unit driver PCB (Bk)	J1377K				J5248	131	M123	Drum patch sensor cleaning motor (Bk)
112	UN164	Process unit driver PCB (Bk)	J1378K				J5420K	-	THM103	Drum thermistor (Bk)
132	UN161	Process unit driver PCB (Y)	J1380Y	J7033Y			J7034Y	133	M203	Developing assembly knocking motor (Y)
134	UN162	Process unit driver PCB (M)	J1380M	J7033M			J7034M	135	M204	Developing assembly knocking motor (M)
136	UN163	Process unit driver PCB (C)	J1380C	J7033C			J7034C	137	M205	Developing assembly knocking motor (C)
138	UN164	Process unit driver PCB (Bk)	J1380K	J7033K			J7034K	139	M206	Developing assembly knocking motor (Bk)

16.4.8.6 Intermediate Transfer Unit

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000



F-16-112



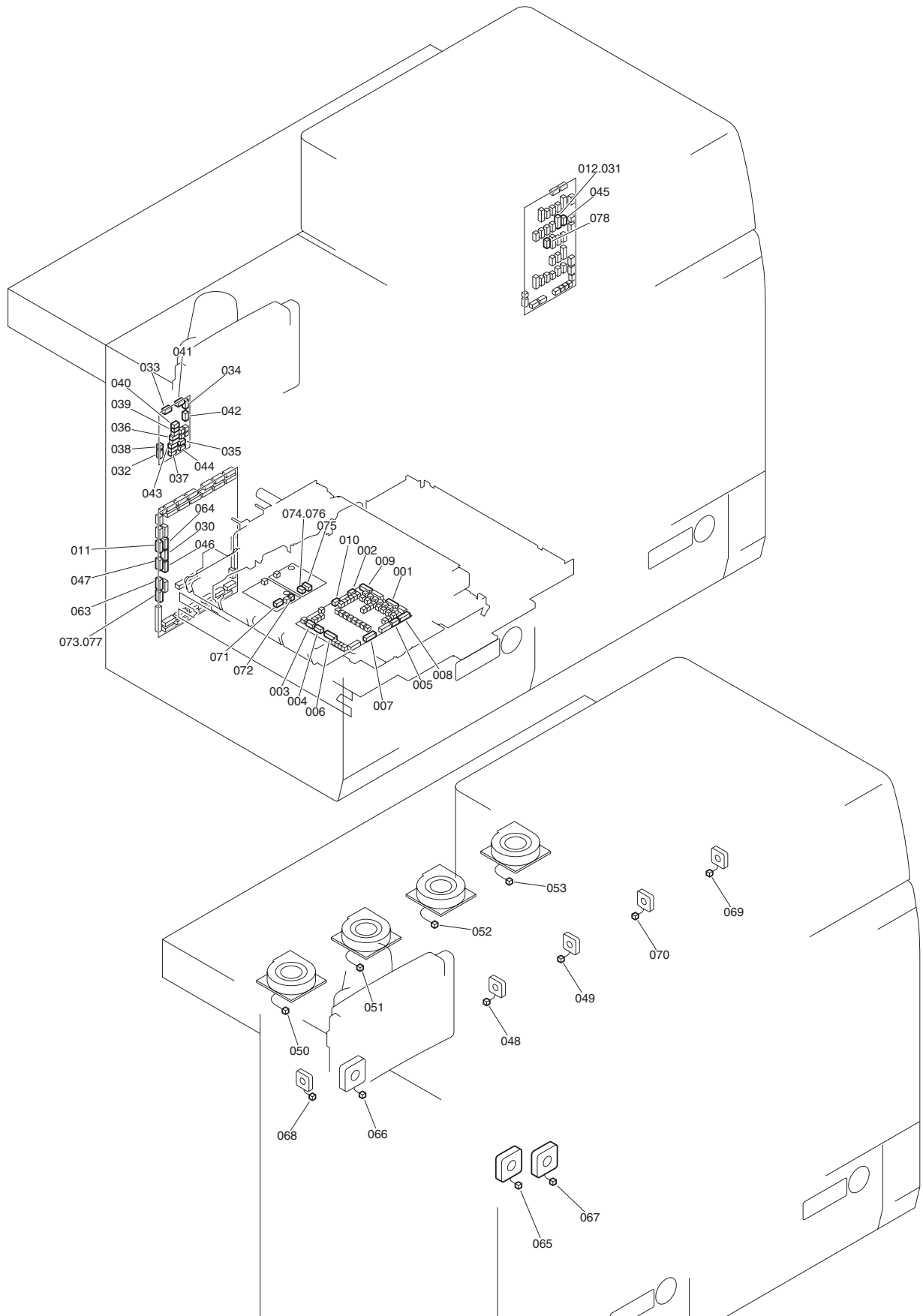
T-16-69

No.	Electric symbol	Electric parts name	J No.	Relay connector				J No.	No.	Electric symbol	Electric parts name	
001	UN112	Primary transfer high-voltage PCB (Y)	J3050Y	J7505	J7020	J7531		J1041	003	UN124	DC controller PCB 1-2	
002	UN112	Primary transfer high-voltage PCB (Y)	J3051Y					J3051M	004	UN113	Primary transfer high-voltage PCB (M)	
005	UN113	Primary transfer high-voltage PCB (M)	J3050M	J7505	J7020	J7531		J1041	007	UN124	DC controller PCB 1-2	
006	UN113	Primary transfer high-voltage PCB (M)	J3051M	J7501	J7517	J7020	J7508	J1838	008	UN102	Main station power supply connect PCB	
009	UN114	Primary transfer high-voltage PCB (C)	J3050C	J7506	J7021	J7533		J1042	011	UN124	DC controller PCB 1-2	
010	UN114	Primary transfer high-voltage PCB (C)	J3051C					J3051K	012	UN115	Primary transfer high-voltage PCB (Bk)	
013	UN115	Primary transfer high-voltage PCB (Bk)	J3050K	J7506	J7021	J7533		J1042	015	UN124	DC controller PCB 1-2	
014	UN115	Primary transfer high-voltage PCB (Bk)	J3051K	J7502	J7021	J7509		J1838	016	UN102	Main station power supply connect PCB	
017	UN116	Secondary transfer high-voltage PCB	J3150	J7507	J7523	J7023	J7530	J1034	019	UN198	DC controller PCB 1-1	
018	UN116	Secondary transfer high-voltage PCB	J3151	J7500	J7504	J7175	J7020	J7508	J1838	020	UN102	Main station power supply connect PCB
021	UN148	ITB cleaner high-voltage PCB (upstream)	J3250P	J7020	J7514			J1046	023	UN124	DC controller PCB 1-2	
022	UN148	ITB cleaner high-voltage PCB (upstream)	J3251P					J1336	024	UN218	ITB driver PCB (left)	
025	UN149	ITB cleaner high-voltage PCB (downstream)	J3250S	J7020	J7514			J1046	027	UN124	DC controller PCB 1-2	
026	UN149	ITB cleaner high-voltage PCB (downstream)	J3251S					J3251P	028	UN148	ITB cleaner high-voltage PCB (upstream)	
029	UN150	ITB pre-transfer charging high-voltage PCB	J3300	J7025	J7534			J1032	031	UN198	DC controller PCB 1-1	
030	UN150	ITB pre-transfer charging high-voltage PCB	J3301					J1320	032	UN219	ITB driver PCB (right)	
033	UN159	Registration patch sensor driver PCB	J1450	J7015	J7081			J1028	038	UN124	DC controller PCB 1-2	
034	UN159	Registration patch sensor driver PCB	J1451	J7016	J7082			J1029	039	UN124	DC controller PCB 1-2	
035	UN159	Registration patch sensor driver PCB	J1452	J7015	J7078			J1825	040	UN102	Main station power supply connect PCB	
036	UN159	Registration patch sensor driver PCB	J1458					J5042	041	PS133	Registration patch sensor shutter HP sensor	
037	UN159	Registration patch sensor driver PCB	J1460	J7016	J7079			J1825	042	UN102	Main station power supply connect PCB	
043	UN217	ITB driver PCB (center)	J1300	J7023	J7511			J1844	054	UN102	Main station power supply connect PCB	
044	UN217	ITB driver PCB (center)	J1301	J7518	J7024	J7512		J1844	054	UN102	Main station power supply connect PCB	
045	UN217	ITB driver PCB (center)	J1302	J7024	J7532			J1033	055	UN198	DC controller PCB 1-1	
046	UN217	ITB driver PCB (center)	J1303	J7023	J7530			J1034	056	UN198	DC controller PCB 1-1	
047	UN217	ITB driver PCB (center)	J1310					J5227	057	M109	ITB driving motor	
048	UN217	ITB driver PCB (center)	J1311	J5230	PIH1/2			J5230X	058	M110	ITB pre-transfer charging wire cleaning motor	
048	UN217	ITB driver PCB (center)	J1311					J5228	059	M111	ITB steering motor	
049	UN217	ITB driver PCB (center)	J1313	J7522				J5231	060	M112	ITB web motor	
049	UN217	ITB driver PCB (center)	J1313	J7522				J5028	061	PS106	ITB web feed sensor	
049	UN217	ITB driver PCB (center)	J1313	J7522				J5029	062	PS109	ITB web absence sensor	
050	UN217	ITB driver PCB (center)	J1314	J7519				J5165	063	PS221	ITB drive roller encoder sensor A	
050	UN217	ITB driver PCB (center)	J1314	J7519				J5166	064	PS222	ITB drive roller encoder sensor B	
050	UN217	ITB driver PCB (center)	J1314	J7519				J5026	065	PS223	ITB drive roller HP sensor	
051	UN217	ITB driver PCB (center)	J1315	J7516				J5022	066	PS100	ITB displacement sensor	
051	UN217	ITB driver PCB (center)	J1315					J5020	067	PS102	ITB HP upper sensor	
052	UN217	ITB driver PCB (center)	J1316					J5023	068	PS104	ITB steering motor HP sensor	
053	UN217	ITB driver PCB (center)	J1318					J5021	069	PS101	ITB HP lower sensor	
070	UN218	ITB driver PCB (left)	J1335	J7022	J7510			J1845	076	UN102	Main station power supply connect PCB	
071	UN218	ITB driver PCB (left)	J1337					J5229P	077	M108	ITB cleaner motor	
072	UN218	ITB driver PCB (left)	J1338	J7020	J7514			J1046	078	UN124	DC controller PCB 1-2	
073	UN218	ITB driver PCB (left)	J1340					J5229S	079	M108	ITB cleaner motor	
074	UN218	ITB driver PCB (left)	J1341					J5325	080	M113	ITB web releasing motor	

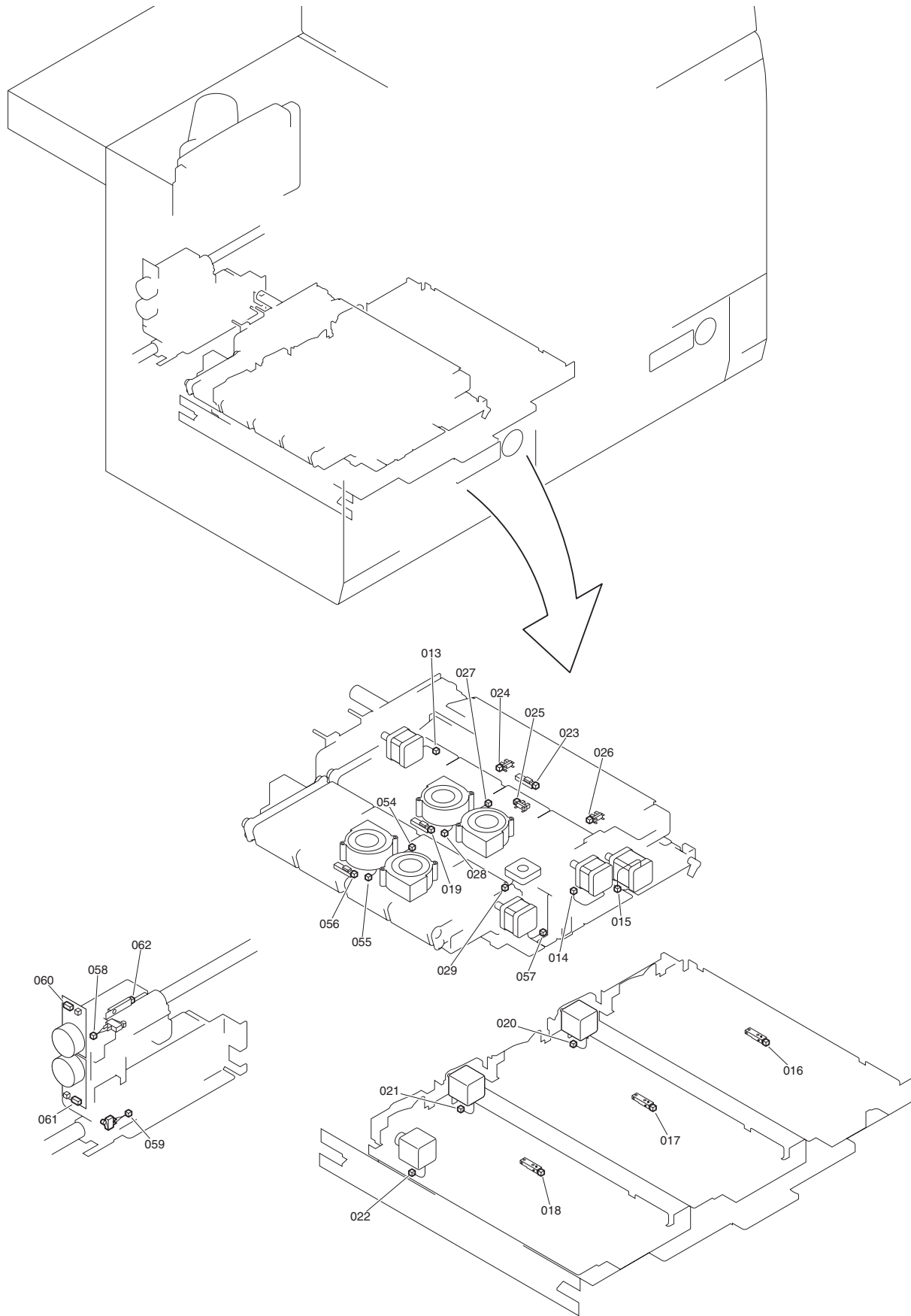
No.	Electric symbol	Electric parts name	J No.	Relay connector					J No.	No.	Electric symbol	Electric parts name
075	UN218	ITB driver PCB (left)	J1342						J5139	081	PS108	ITB web releasing sensor
082	UN219	ITB driver PCB (right)	J1320	J7503	J7021	J7515			J1845	089	UN102	Main station power supply connect PCB
083	UN219	ITB driver PCB (right)	J1321	J7025	J7513				J1845	089	UN102	Main station power supply connect PCB
084	UN219	ITB driver PCB (right)	J1330	J7025	J7534				J1032	090	UN198	DC controller PCB 1-1
085	UN219	ITB driver PCB (right)	J1331	J7025	J7534				J1032	090	UN198	DC controller PCB 1-1
086	UN219	ITB driver PCB (right)	J1332						J5232	091	M114	Leading edge registration patch sensor shutter motor
087	UN219	ITB driver PCB (right)	J1333	J7515					J5027	092	PS105	Leading edge registration shutter HP sensor
088	UN219	ITB driver PCB (right)	J1334						J5461	093	FM115	Pre-transfer exhausting fan

16.4.8.7 Secondary Transfer Unit

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000



F-16-114



F-16-115

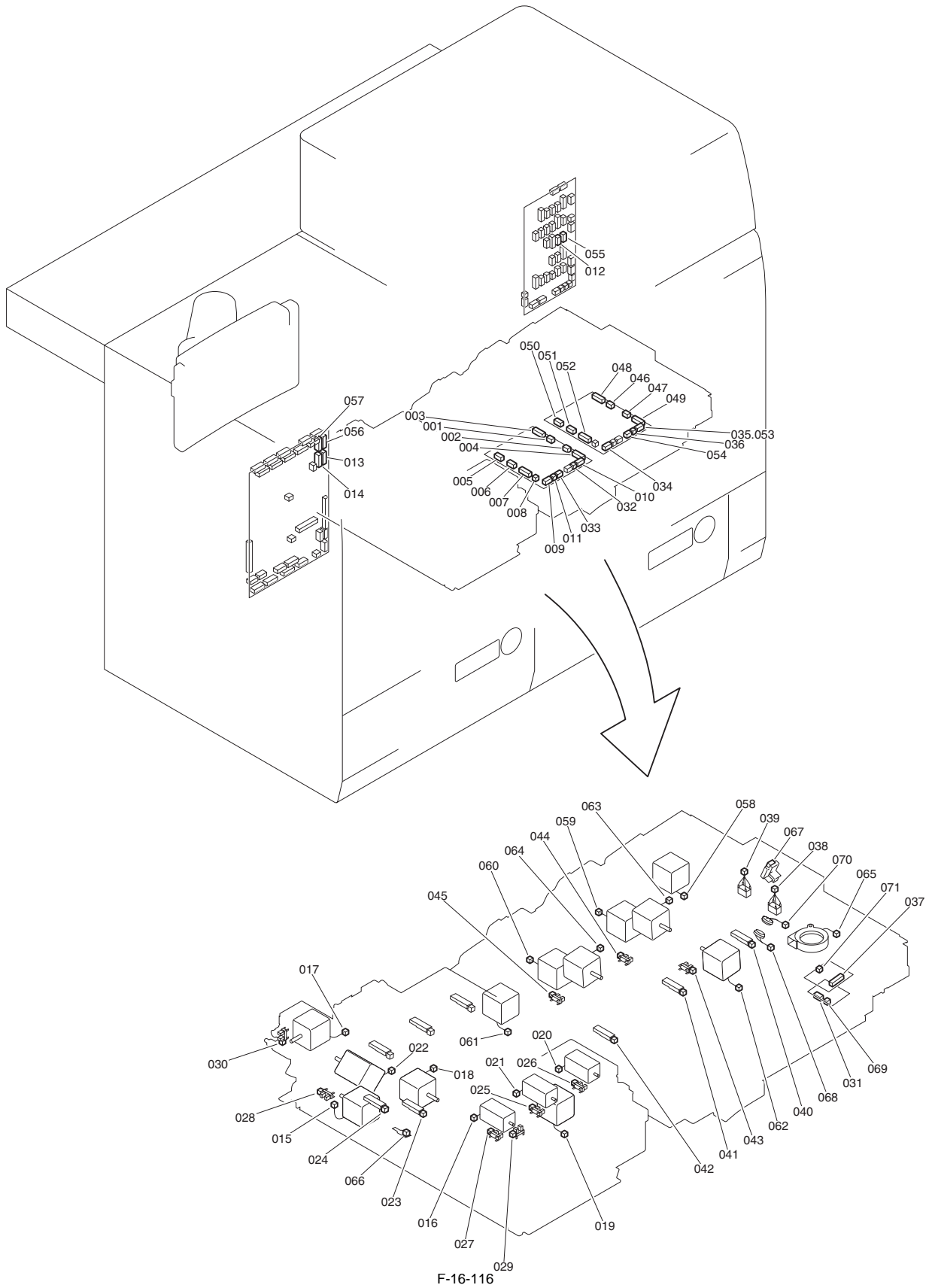
T-16-70

No.	Electric symbol	Electric parts name	J No.	Relay connector			J No.	No.	Electric symbol	Electric parts name
001	UN106	Secondary transfer/duplexing driver PCB	J1501	J7004			J1025	011	UN124	DC controller PCB 1-2
002	UN106	Secondary transfer/duplexing driver PCB	J1502	J7004	J7213		J1832	012	UN102	Main station power supply connect PCB
003	UN106	Secondary transfer/duplexing driver PCB	J1503	J5225			J7700	013	M184	Secondary transfer pressure release motor
004	UN106	Secondary transfer/duplexing driver PCB	J1504	J5224			J7702	014	M183	Secondary transfer driving motor
004	UN106	Secondary transfer/duplexing driver PCB	J1504	J7701			J7701	015	M188	Pre-transfer feed driving right motor
005	UN106	Secondary transfer/duplexing driver PCB	J1505	J7206	J7219		J5058	016	PS169	Duplexing standby sensor 1
005	UN106	Secondary transfer/duplexing driver PCB	J1505	J7206	J7220		J5059	017	PS170	Duplexing standby sensor 2
005	UN106	Secondary transfer/duplexing driver PCB	J1505	J7206	J7221		J5060	018	PS171	Duplexing standby sensor 3
005	UN106	Secondary transfer/duplexing driver PCB	J1505	J7208			J5017	019	PS172	Pre-fixing feed sensor 1
006	UN106	Secondary transfer/duplexing driver PCB	J1506	J7202	J7215	J5278	J7703	020	M185	Duplexing feed motor 1
006	UN106	Secondary transfer/duplexing driver PCB	J1506	J7202	J7216	J5279	J7704	021	M186	Duplexing feed motor 2
006	UN106	Secondary transfer/duplexing driver PCB	J1506	J7202	J7217	J5280	J7705	022	M187	Duplexing feed motor 3
007	UN106	Secondary transfer/duplexing driver PCB	J1507	J7211			J5016	023	PS166	Secondary transfer outlet sensor
007	UN106	Secondary transfer/duplexing driver PCB	J1507	J7204			J5018	024	PS167	Secondary transfer pressure release HP sensor
007	UN106	Secondary transfer/duplexing driver PCB	J1507	J7204			J5128	025	PS168	Secondary transfer waste toner error sensor
007	UN106	Secondary transfer/duplexing driver PCB	J1507	J7204			J5154	026	PS205	Secondary transfer pressure release motor attachment position sensor
008	UN106	Secondary transfer/duplexing driver PCB	J1509	J7208			J5430	027	FM121	Pre-fixing feed front right fan
008	UN106	Secondary transfer/duplexing driver PCB	J1509	J7208			J5431	028	FM120	Pre-fixing feed rear right fan
008	UN106	Secondary transfer/duplexing driver PCB	J1509				J5504	029	FM135	Secondary transfer/duplexing driver PCB cooling fan
009	UN106	Secondary transfer/duplexing driver PCB	J1513	J7005			J1024	030	UN124	DC controller PCB 1-2
010	UN106	Secondary transfer/duplexing driver PCB	J1515	J7005	J7214		J1832	031	UN102	Main station power supply connect PCB
032	UN107	Pre-fixing feed driver PCB	J1550				J1833	045	UN102	Main station power supply connect PCB
033	UN107	Pre-fixing feed driver PCB	J1551				J1027	046	UN124	DC controller PCB 1-2
034	UN107	Pre-fixing feed driver PCB	J1553				J1026	047	UN124	DC controller PCB 1-2
035	UN107	Pre-fixing feed driver PCB	J1555	J7773			J5459	048	FM102	Laser cooling fan (C)
035	UN107	Pre-fixing feed driver PCB	J1555	J7774			J5460	049	FM103	Laser cooling fan (Bk)
036	UN107	Pre-fixing feed driver PCB	J1556	J7406	J7407		J5433	050	FM114	Process unit exhausting fan (Y)
036	UN107	Pre-fixing feed driver PCB	J1556	J7406	J7408		J5436	051	FM112	Process unit exhausting fan (M)
036	UN107	Pre-fixing feed driver PCB	J1556	J7406	J7409		J5438	052	FM108	Process unit exhausting fan (C)
036	UN107	Pre-fixing feed driver PCB	J1556	J7406	J7410		J5440	053	FM110	Process unit exhausting fan (Bk)
037	UN107	Pre-fixing feed driver PCB	J1557	J7400	J7405		J5448	054	FM134	Pre-fixing feed front left fan
037	UN107	Pre-fixing feed driver PCB	J1557	J7400	J7405		J5449	055	FM137	Pre-fixing feed rear left fan
037	UN107	Pre-fixing feed driver PCB	J1557	J7400	J7401		J5061	056	PS200	Pre-fixing feed sensor 2
038	UN107	Pre-fixing feed driver PCB	J1558	J7402	J7412	J5281	J7707	057	M181	Pre-fixing feed drive left motor
039	UN107	Pre-fixing feed driver PCB	J1559	J7403			J5628	058	SW109	Drum waste toner lock detection switch
039	UN107	Pre-fixing feed driver PCB	J1559	J7404			J5629	059	SW110	Transfer waste toner lock detection switch
039	UN107	Pre-fixing feed driver PCB	J1559				J5286	060	M180	Drum waste toner feed motor
040	UN107	Pre-fixing feed driver PCB	J1561				J5288	061	M179	Buffer motor
040	UN107	Pre-fixing feed driver PCB	J1561	J7413			J5554	062	TS128	Buffer toner full sensor
041	UN107	Pre-fixing feed driver PCB	J1577				J1030	063	UN124	DC controller PCB 1-2
042	UN107	Pre-fixing feed driver PCB	J1578				J1097	064	UN124	DC controller PCB 1-2
043	UN107	Pre-fixing feed driver PCB	J1595	J7414	J7416	J7418	J5813	065	FM160	Process unit front side cooling fan (Y)
043	UN107	Pre-fixing feed driver PCB	J1595	J7414	J7416	J7418	J5814	066	FM161	Process unit rear side cooling fan (Y)
043	UN107	Pre-fixing feed driver PCB	J1595	J7415	J7416	J7418	J5816	067	FM165	Developing assembly cooling fan 1 (Y)
043	UN107	Pre-fixing feed driver PCB	J1595				J5815	068	FM163	Main station rear left cooling fan
044	UN107	Pre-fixing feed driver PCB	J1598	J7771			J5457	069	FM105	Laser cooling fan (Y)

No.	Electric symbol	Electric parts name	J No.	Relay connector			J No.	No.	Electric symbol	Electric parts name
044	UN107	Pre-fixing feed driver PCB	J1598	J7772			J5458	070	FM104	Laser cooling fan (M)
071	UN108	Post-secondary transfer static elimination high-voltage PCB	J3100	J7006			J1043	073	UN124	DC controller PCB 1-2
072	UN108	Post-secondary transfer static elimination high-voltage PCB	J3101				J3351	074	UN109	Secondary transfer cleaner high-voltage PCB
075	UN109	Secondary transfer cleaner high-voltage PCB	J3350	J7006			J1043	077	UN124	DC controller PCB 1-2
076	UN109	Secondary transfer cleaner high-voltage PCB	J3351	J7006	J7212		J1839	078	UN102	Main station power supply connect PCB

16.4.8.8 Registration Unit

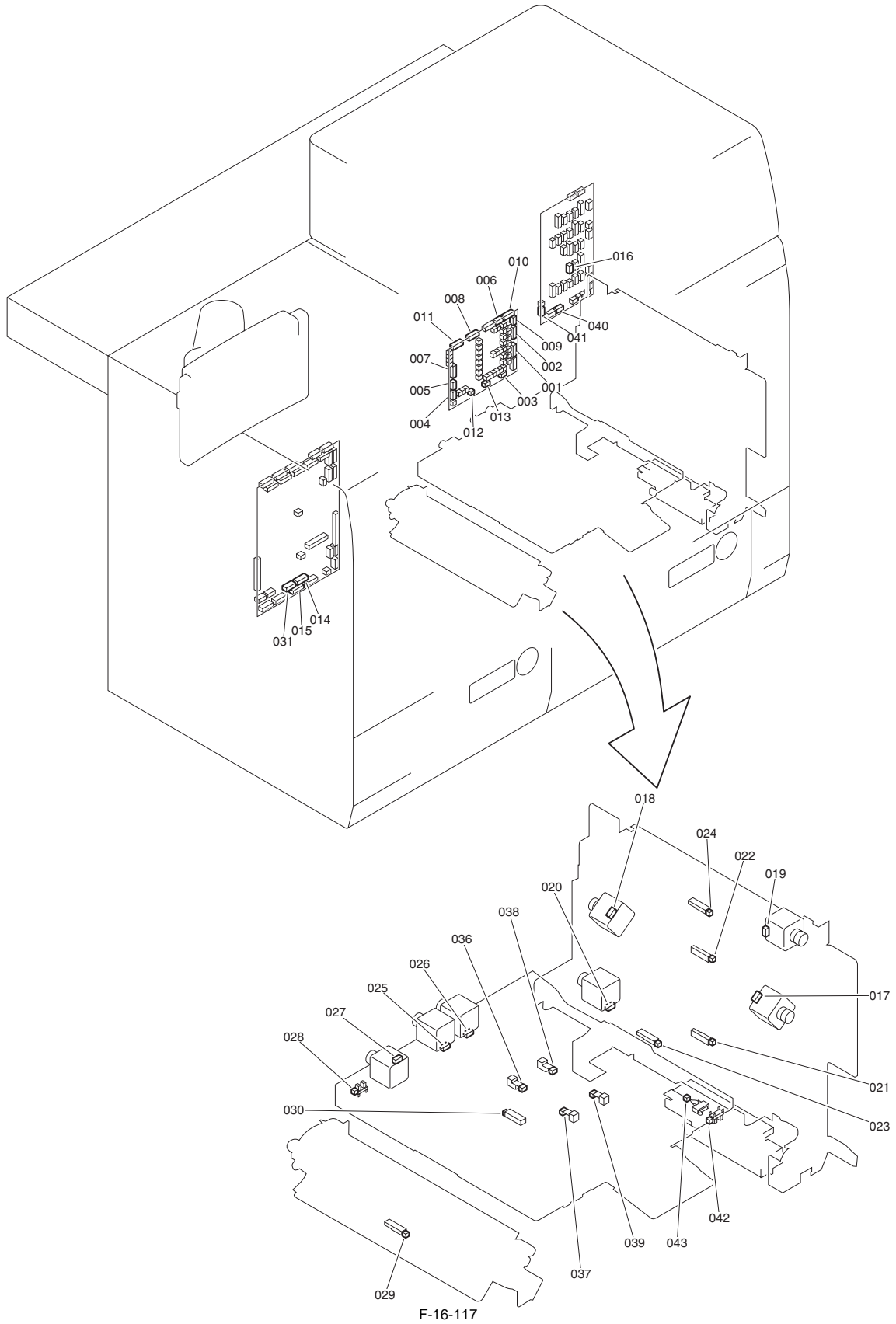
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

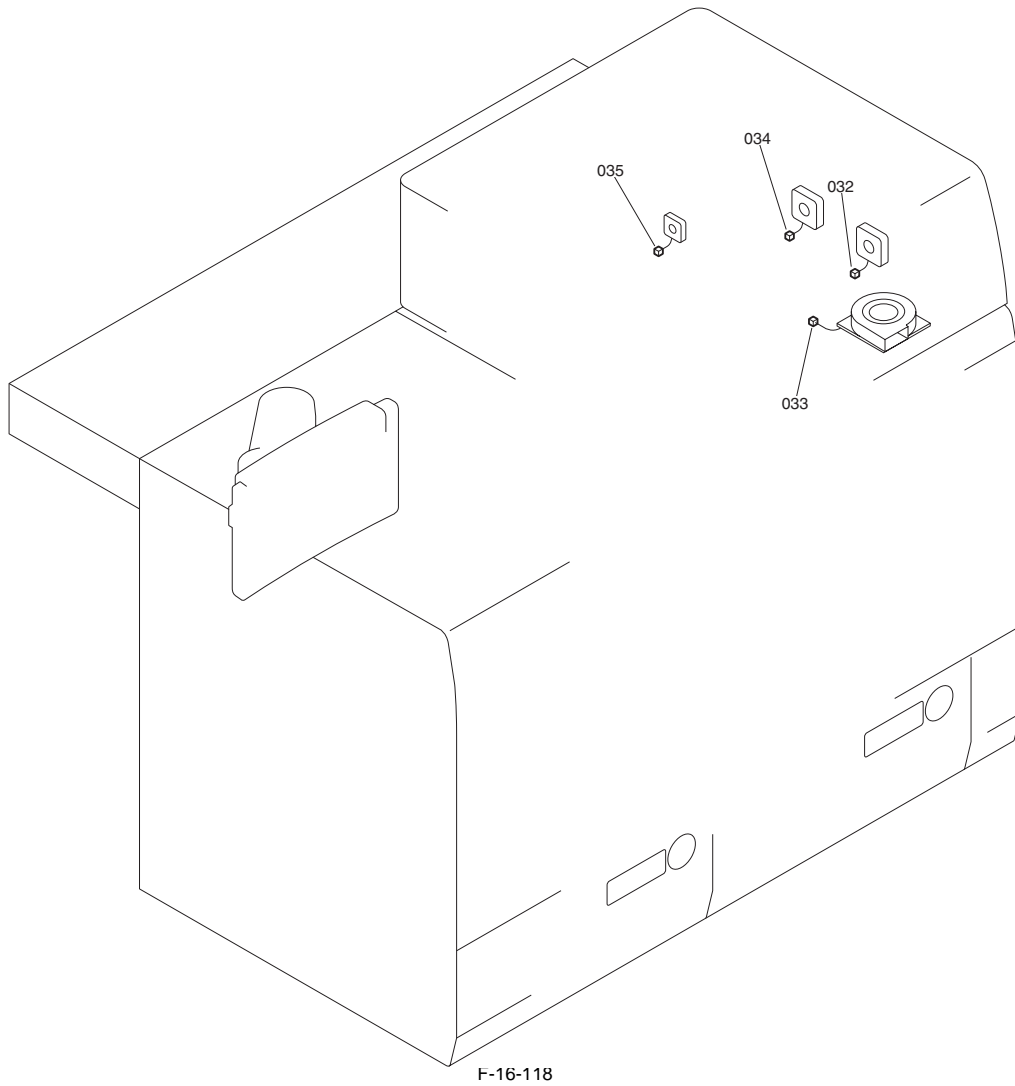


No.	Electric symbol	Electric parts name	J No.	Relay connector			J No.	No.	Electric symbol	Electric parts name
				J7118	J7002	J7124				
001	UN100	Registration feed driver PCB (left)	J1200	J7118	J7002	J7124	J1831	012	UN102	Main station power supply connect PCB
002	UN100	Registration feed driver PCB (left)	J1201	J7119	J7003	J7125	J1831	012	UN102	Main station power supply connect PCB
003	UN100	Registration feed driver PCB (left)	J1210	J7120	J7002		J1022	013	UN198	DC controller PCB 1-1
004	UN100	Registration feed driver PCB (left)	J1211	J7121	J7003		J1023	014	UN198	DC controller PCB 1-1
005	UN100	Registration feed driver PCB (left)	J1220	J5217			J253	015	M165	Registration releasing motor
005	UN100	Registration feed driver PCB (left)	J1220	J7106			J5222	016	M171	Cross feed pressure release motor 3
006	UN100	Registration feed driver PCB (left)	J1221	J7104	J5218		J254	017	M166	Registration swing motor
006	UN100	Registration feed driver PCB (left)	J1221	J5223			J255	018	M167	Cross feed push-on plate jogging motor
007	UN100	Registration feed driver PCB (left)	J1222	J7105	J5219		J256	019	M168	Cross feed motor
007	UN100	Registration feed driver PCB (left)	J1222	J7106			J5220	020	M169	Cross feed pressure release motor 1
007	UN100	Registration feed driver PCB (left)	J1222	J7106			J5221	021	M170	Cross feed pressure release motor 2
008	UN100	Registration feed driver PCB (left)	J1223	J5216			J252	022	M164	Registration motor
009	UN100	Registration feed driver PCB (left)	J1230	J7127	J7107		J5007	023	PS146	Pre-registration sensor
009	UN100	Registration feed driver PCB (left)	J1230	J7127	J7109		J5153	024	PS209	Post-registration sensor
010	UN100	Registration feed driver PCB (left)	J1231	J7127	J7112	J7129	J5008	025	PS152	Cross feed roller pressure release HP sensor 1
010	UN100	Registration feed driver PCB (left)	J1231	J7127	J7112	J7130	J5009	026	PS153	Cross feed roller pressure release HP sensor 2
010	UN100	Registration feed driver PCB (left)	J1231	J7127	J7112	J7131	J5010	027	PS154	Cross feed roller pressure release HP sensor 3
010	UN100	Registration feed driver PCB (left)	J1231	J7127	J7110		J5012	028	PS149	Cross feed plate HP sensor
010	UN100	Registration feed driver PCB (left)	J1231	J7127			J5013	029	PS147	Registration roller release HP sensor 1
010	UN100	Registration feed driver PCB (left)	J1231	J7127	J7111		J5015	030	PS150	Registration roller slide HP sensor
011	UN100	Registration feed driver PCB (left)	J1241L	J2702			J2702	031	UN122	Double feed detection PCB (transmission)
							J2706	037	UN123	Double feed detection PCB (reception)
							J5150	038	PS138	Transparency sensor (front)
032	UN100	Registration feed driver PCB (left)	J1232L				J5151	039	PS137	Transparency sensor (rear)
033	UN100	Registration feed driver PCB (left)	J1242L				J5000	040	PS139	Pre-feed sensor 1
034	UN104	Registration feed driver PCB (right)	J1930R	J7102			J5001	041	PS140	Pre-feed sensor 2
035	UN104	Registration feed driver PCB (right)	J1931R				J5002	042	PS141	Pre-feed sensor 3
036	UN104	Registration feed driver PCB (right)	J1932R				J5129	043	PS142	Cross feed pressure release motor HP sensor 1
							J5130	044	PS143	Cross feed pressure release motor HP sensor 2
							J5131	045	PS144	Cross feed pressure release motor HP sensor 3
046	UN104	Registration feed driver PCB (right)	J1900	J7114	J7000	J7122	J1830	055	UN102	Main station power supply connect PCB
047	UN104	Registration feed driver PCB (right)	J1901	J7115	J7001	J7123	J1830	055	UN102	Main station power supply connect PCB
048	UN104	Registration feed driver PCB (right)	J1910	J7116	J7000		J1020	056	UN198	DC controller PCB 1-1
049	UN104	Registration feed driver PCB (right)	J1911	J7117	J7001		J1021	057	UN198	DC controller PCB 1-1
050	UN104	Registration feed driver PCB (right)	J1920	J5208			J244	058	M156	Pre-registration motor 1
050	UN104	Registration feed driver PCB (right)	J1920	J5209			J245	059	M157	Pre-registration motor 2
051	UN104	Registration feed driver PCB (right)	J1921	J5210			J246	060	M158	Pre-registration motor 3
051	UN104	Registration feed driver PCB (right)	J1921	J5211			J247	061	M159	Pre-registration motor 4
052	UN104	Registration feed driver PCB (right)	J1922	J7103			J5212	062	M160	Pre-registration pressure release motor 1
052	UN104	Registration feed driver PCB (right)	J1922	J7103			J5213	063	M161	Pre-registration pressure release motor 2
052	UN104	Registration feed driver PCB (right)	J1922	J7103			J5214	064	M162	Pre-registration pressure release motor 3
053	UN104	Registration feed driver PCB (right)	J1931R				J5500	065	FM130	Registration feed driver PCB right cooling fan
054	UN104	Registration feed driver PCB (right)	J1940R	J7100			J5011	066	PS151	Registration sensor
054	UN104	Registration feed driver PCB (right)	J1940R	J7101	J7113		J5063	067	UN179	Paper thickness sensor
068	UN196	Double feed sensor (transmission)	J7777				J2703	069	UN122	Double feed detection PCB (transmission)
070	UN197	Double feed sensor (reception)	J7776				J2704	071	UN123	Double feed detection PCB (reception)

16.4.8.9 Vertical Path Unit

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000





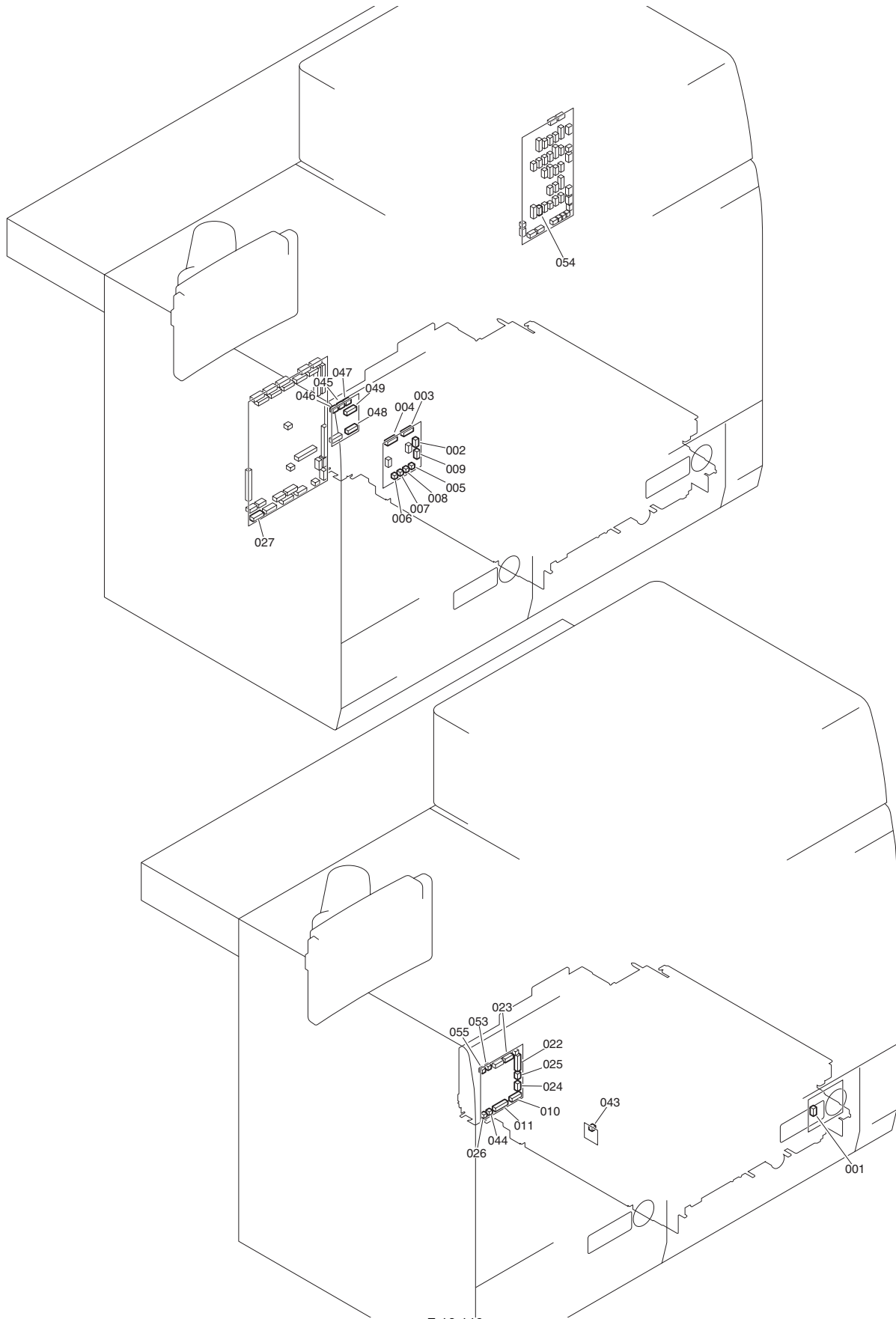
F-16-118

T-16-72

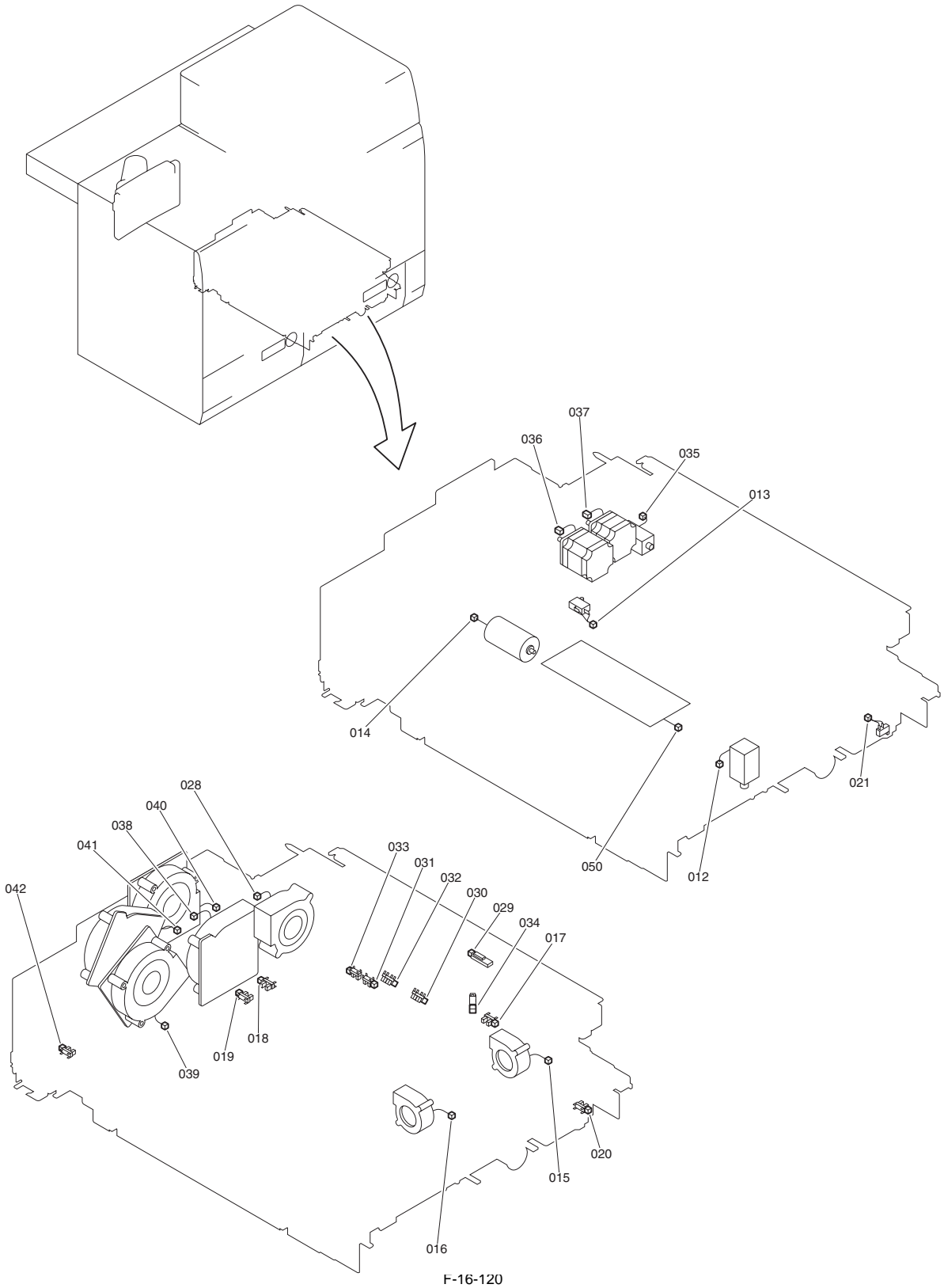
No.	Electric symbol	Electric parts name	J No.	Relay connector			J No.	No.	Electric symbol	Electric parts name
001	UN105	Vertical path/lower feed driver PCB	J1500				J1018	014	UN198	DC controller PCB 1-1
002	UN105	Vertical path/lower feed driver PCB	J1501				J1019	015	UN198	DC controller PCB 1-1
003	UN105	Vertical path/lower feed driver PCB	J1502				J1829	016	UN102	Main station power supply connect PCB
004	UN105	Vertical path/lower feed driver PCB	J1503	J7300	J7303		J5267	017	M178	Vertical path feed motor
004	UN105	Vertical path/lower feed driver PCB	J1503	J7300	J7303		J5268	018	M172	Lower feed motor 4
005	UN105	Vertical path/lower feed driver PCB	J1504	J7301	J7304		J5320	019	M176	POD deck path feed motor
005	UN105	Vertical path/lower feed driver PCB	J1504	J7301	J7304	J5266	J7738	020	M177	Right deck feeding motor
006	UN105	Vertical path/lower feed driver PCB	J1505	J7307	J7308	J7321	J5043	021	PS163	Right deck merger sensor
006	UN105	Vertical path/lower feed driver PCB	J1505	J7307	J7308		J5044	022	PS164	Vertical path sensor
006	UN105	Vertical path/lower feed driver PCB	J1505	J7307	J7308		J5047	023	PS162	Lower feed sensor 2
006	UN105	Vertical path/lower feed driver PCB	J1505	J7307	J7308		J5160	024	PS220	POD deck path sensor
007	UN105	Vertical path/lower feed driver PCB	J1506	J7302			J5269	025	M173	Lower feed motor 2
007	UN105	Vertical path/lower feed driver PCB	J1506	J7302			J5270	026	M174	Lower feed motor 3
007	UN105	Vertical path/lower feed driver PCB	J1506	J7302			J5271	027	M175	Lower feed motor 1
008	UN105	Vertical path/lower feed driver PCB	J1507	J7306			J12	028	PS231	Lower feed guide open/close sensor
008	UN105	Vertical path/lower feed driver PCB	J1507	J7305			J5045	029	PS160	Left deck merger sensor
008	UN105	Vertical path/lower feed driver PCB	J1507	J7306			J5046	030	PS161	Lower feed sensor 1
009	UN105	Vertical path/lower feed driver PCB	J1508				J1057	031	UN198	DC controller PCB 1-1
010	UN105	Vertical path/lower feed driver PCB	J1509	J7310			J5430	032	FM141	Main station right cooling fan 2
010	UN105	Vertical path/lower feed driver PCB	J1509	J7310			J5431	033	FM140	Main station right cooling fan 1
010	UN105	Vertical path/lower feed driver PCB	J1509	J7310			J5502	034	FM142	Main station right cooling fan 3
010	UN105	Vertical path/lower feed driver PCB	J1509				J5812	035	FM143	Main station rear right cooling fan
011	UN105	Vertical path/lower feed driver PCB	J1511	J7309	J7320		J5155	036	PS210	Lower feed path paper length sensor (rear left)
011	UN105	Vertical path/lower feed driver PCB	J1511	J7309	J7320		J5157	037	PS212	Lower feed path paper length sensor (front left)
011	UN105	Vertical path/lower feed driver PCB	J1511	J7309	J7320		J5158	038	PS214	Lower feed path paper length sensor (rear right)
011	UN105	Vertical path/lower feed driver PCB	J1511	J7309	J7320		J5159	039	PS217	Lower feed path paper length sensor (front right)
012	UN105	Vertical path/lower feed driver PCB	J1514				J1829	016	UN102	Main station power supply connect PCB
013	UN105	Vertical path/lower feed driver PCB	J1515				J1829	016	UN102	Main station power supply connect PCB
040	UN102	Main station power supply connect PCB	J1813	J7897	J7757		J5134	042	PS174	Vertical path cover open/close sensor
041	UN102	Main station power supply connect PCB	J1814	J7766			J7173	043	SW116	Vertical path cover open/close switch

16.4.8.10 Right Deck Unit

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000



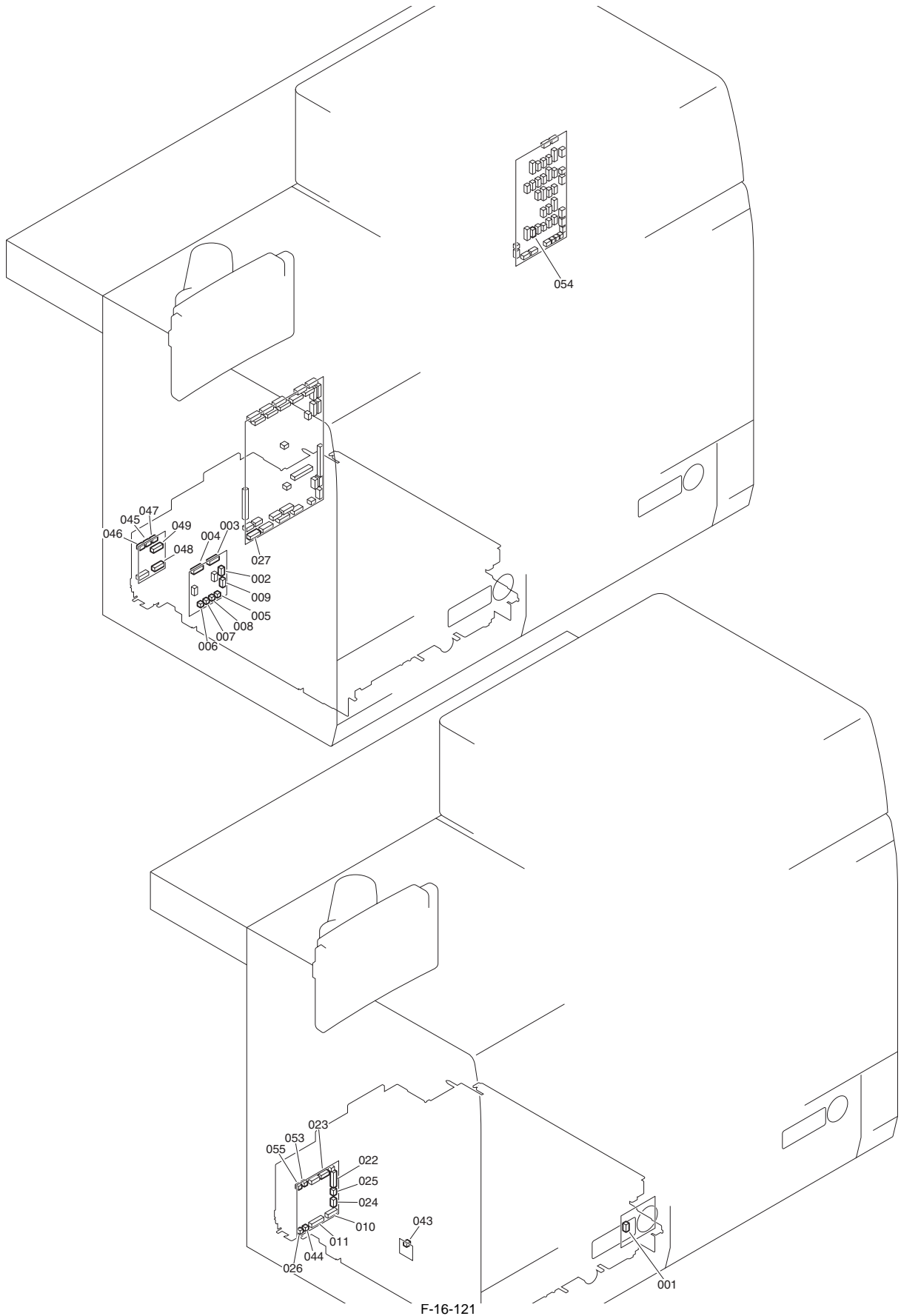
F-16-119



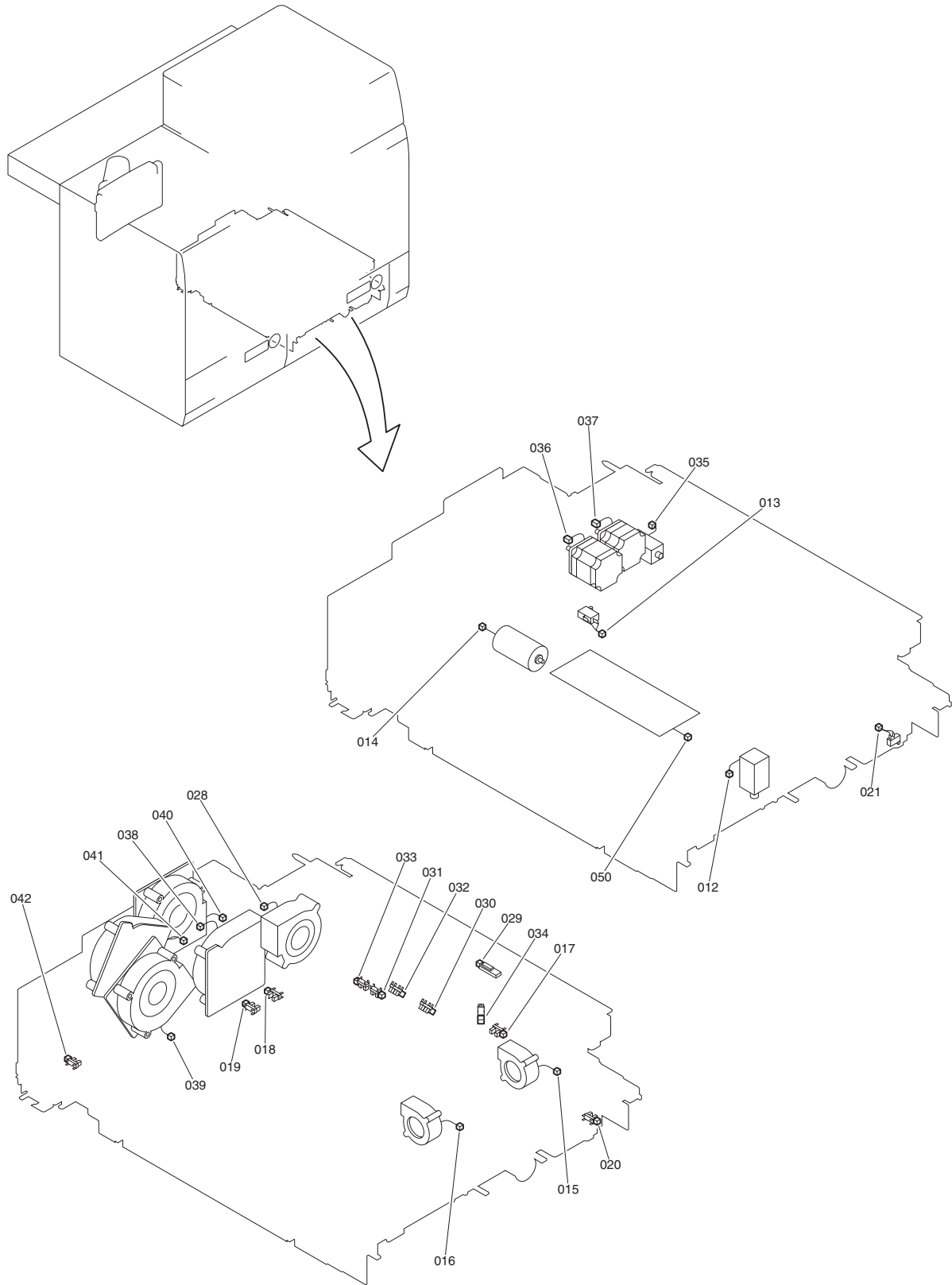
No.	Electric symbol	Electric parts name	J No.	Relay connector	J No.	No.	Electric symbol	Electric parts name
001	UN601	Right deck indicator driver PCB	J2150R		J2108R	002	UN602	Right deck driver PCB
003	UN602	Right deck driver PCB	J2101R		J2057R	010	UN603	Right deck pickup driver PCB
004	UN602	Right deck driver PCB	J2102R		J2056R	011	UN603	Right deck pickup driver PCB
005	UN602	Right deck driver PCB	J2103R	J7985	J5573	012	SL603	Right deck open/close solenoid
006	UN602	Right deck driver PCB	J2104R		J5652	013	SW603	Right deck interlock switch
007	UN602	Right deck driver PCB	J2105R		J5274	014	M603	Right deck lifter motor
008	UN602	Right deck driver PCB	J2106R	J7985 J7980	J5514	015	FM606	Right deck side right fan
008	UN602	Right deck driver PCB	J2106R	J7985 J7979	J5515	016	FM607	Right deck side left fan
009	UN602	Right deck driver PCB	J2107R		J5184	017	PS609	Right deck supply position sensor
009	UN602	Right deck driver PCB	J2107R		J5185	018	PS610	Right deck paper level sensor (right)
009	UN602	Right deck driver PCB	J2107R		J5186	019	PS611	Right deck paper level sensor (lower)
009	UN602	Right deck driver PCB	J2107R	J7983	J5181	020	PS612	Right deck lifter lower limit sensor
009	UN602	Right deck driver PCB	J2107R	J7983	J5624	021	SW602	Right deck lifter lower limit switch
022	UN603	Right deck pickup driver PCB	J2051R		J1060	027	UN198	DC controller PCB 1-1
023	UN603	Right deck pickup driver PCB	J2053R	J7952	J5445	028	FM601	Right deck suction fan
023	UN603	Right deck pickup driver PCB	J2053R	J7952 J7984	J5048	029	PS601	Right deck pull-out sensor
023	UN603	Right deck pickup driver PCB	J2053R	J7952	J5049	030	PS602	Right deck paper sensor
023	UN603	Right deck pickup driver PCB	J2053R	J7952	J5501	031	PS603	Right deck upper limit paper surface sensor
023	UN603	Right deck pickup driver PCB	J2053R	J7952	J5135	032	PS604	Right deck lower limit paper surface sensor
023	UN603	Right deck pickup driver PCB	J2053R		J5182	033	PS605	Right deck middle paper surface sensor
023	UN603	Right deck pickup driver PCB	J2053R	J7952	J5137	034	PS606	Right deck suction completion sensor
023	UN603	Right deck pickup driver PCB	J2053R		J5577	035	SL601	Right deck pickup solenoid
024	UN603	Right deck pickup driver PCB	J2054R	J7981	J5272	036	M601	Right deck pickup belt motor
024	UN603	Right deck pickup driver PCB	J2054R	J7981	J5273	037	M602	Right deck pull-out motor
025	UN603	Right deck pickup driver PCB	J2055R	J7982	J5496	038	FM602	Right deck main right floatation fan
025	UN603	Right deck pickup driver PCB	J2055R	J7982	J5495	039	FM603	Right deck main left floatation fan
025	UN603	Right deck pickup driver PCB	J2055R		J5447	040	FM604	Right deck sub right floatation fan
025	UN603	Right deck pickup driver PCB	J2055R		J5446	041	FM605	Right deck sub left floatation fan
026	UN603	Right deck pickup driver PCB	J2061R		J5052	042	PS607	Right deck open/close sensor
043	UN604	Left deck environment sensor	J9605		J2060R	044	UN603	Right deck pickup driver PCB
045	UN605	Right deck pickup AC driver PCB	J2401R	J7976	J5678	050	H602	Right deck heater
046	UN605	Right deck pickup AC driver PCB	J2402R		-	-	H601	Right deck floating air heater
046	UN605	Right deck pickup AC driver PCB	J2402R		-	-	TP600	Left deck floatation air heater thermoswitch
047	UN605	Right deck pickup AC driver PCB	J2404R		J2058R	053	UN603	Right deck pickup driver PCB
048	UN605	Right deck pickup AC driver PCB	J2405R		J1822	054	UN102	Main station power supply connect PCB
049	UN605	Right deck pickup AC driver PCB	J2406R		J2062R	055	UN603	Right deck pickup driver PCB

16.4.8.11 Left Deck Unit

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000



F-16-121

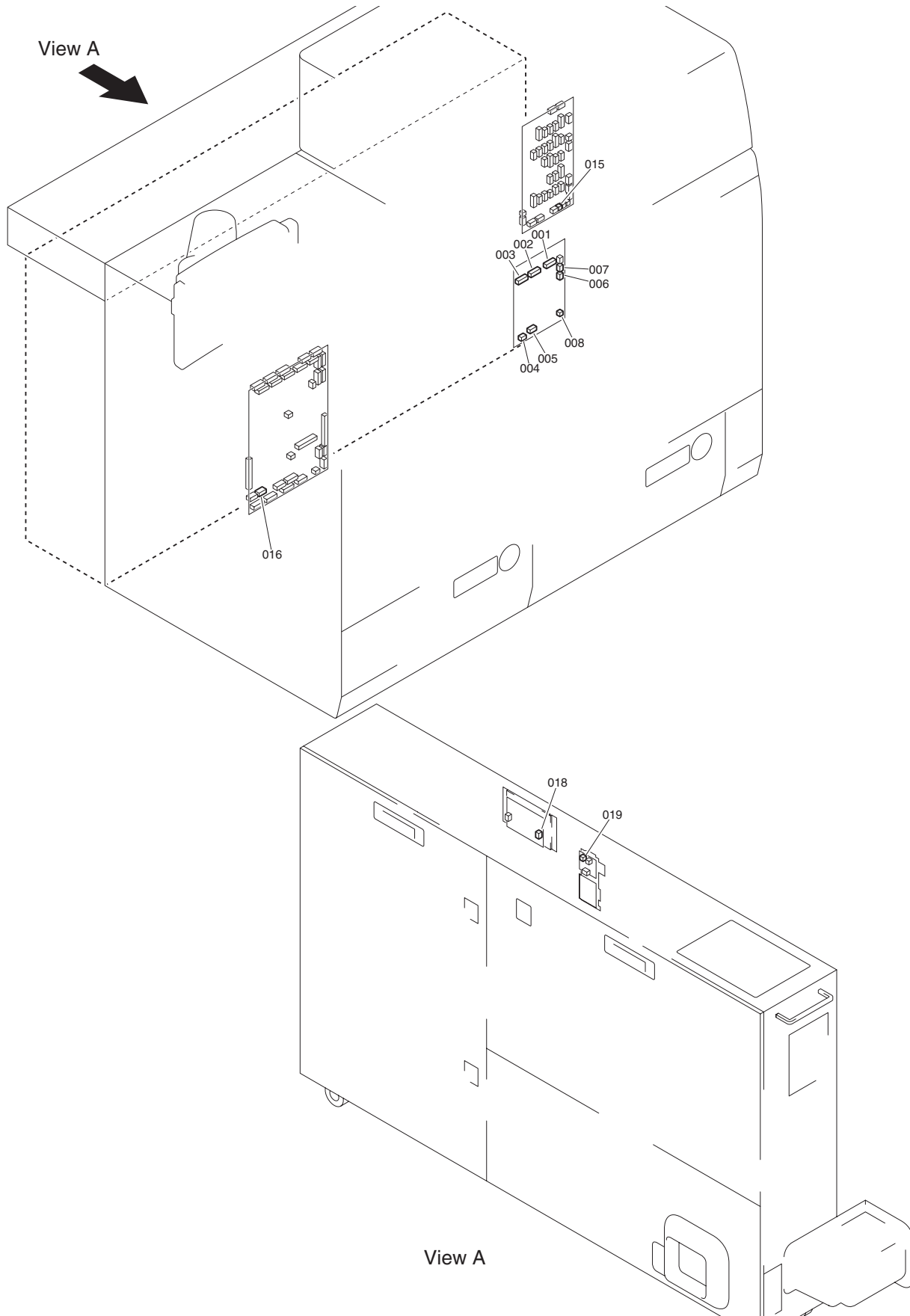


T-16-74

No.	Electric symbol	Electric parts name	J No.	Relay connector	J No.	No.	Electric symbol	Electric parts name	
001	UN701	Left deck indicator driver PCB	J2150L	J7965		J2108L	002	UN702	Left deck driver PCB
003	UN702	Left deck driver PCB	J2101L			J2057L	010	UN703	Left deck pickup driver PCB
004	UN702	Left deck driver PCB	J2102L			J2056L	011	UN703	Left deck pickup driver PCB
005	UN702	Left deck driver PCB	J2103L	J7962		J5571	012	SL702	Left deck open/close solenoid
006	UN702	Left deck driver PCB	J2104L			J5651	013	SW703	Left deck interlock switch
007	UN702	Left deck driver PCB	J2105L			J5277	014	M703	Left deck lifter motor
008	UN702	Left deck driver PCB	J2106L	J7962	J7966	J5517	015	FM706	Left deck side right fan
008	UN702	Left deck driver PCB	J2106L	J7962	J7967	J5516	016	FM707	Left deck side left fan
009	UN702	Left deck driver PCB	J2107L			J5188	017	PS709	Left deck supply position sensor
009	UN702	Left deck driver PCB	J2107L			J5189	018	PS710	Left deck paper level sensor (right)
009	UN702	Left deck driver PCB	J2107L			J5190	019	PS711	Left deck paper level sensor (lower)
009	UN702	Left deck driver PCB	J2107L			J5191	020	PS712	Left deck lifter lower limit sensor
009	UN702	Left deck driver PCB	J2107L	J7961		J5626	021	SW702	Left deck lifter lower limit switch
022	UN703	Left deck pickup driver PCB	J2051L			J1064	027	UN198	DC controller PCB 1-1
023	UN703	Left deck pickup driver PCB	J2053L	J7957		J5442	028	FM701	Left deck suction fan
023	UN703	Left deck pickup driver PCB	J2053L	J7957	J7959	J5053	029	PS701	Left deck pull-out sensor
023	UN703	Left deck pickup driver PCB	J2053L	J7957		J5054	030	PS702	Left deck paper sensor
023	UN703	Left deck pickup driver PCB	J2053L	J7957		J5056	031	PS703	Left deck upper limit paper surface sensor
023	UN703	Left deck pickup driver PCB	J2053L	J7957		J5136	032	PS704	Left deck lower limit paper surface sensor
023	UN703	Left deck pickup driver PCB	J2053L			J5183	033	PS705	Left deck middle paper surface sensor
023	UN703	Left deck pickup driver PCB	J2053L	J7957		J5138	034	PS706	Left deck suction completion sensor
023	UN703	Left deck pickup driver PCB	J2053L	J7957		J5572	035	SL701	Left deck pickup solenoid
024	UN703	Left deck pickup driver PCB	J2054L	J7974		J5275	036	M701	Left deck pickup belt motor
024	UN703	Left deck pickup driver PCB	J2054L	J7974		J5276	037	M702	Left deck pull-out motor
025	UN703	Left deck pickup driver PCB	J2055L	J7958		J5494	038	FM702	Left deck main right floatation fan
025	UN703	Left deck pickup driver PCB	J2055L	J7958		J5493	039	FM703	Left deck main left floatation fan
025	UN703	Left deck pickup driver PCB	J2055L			J5443	040	FM704	Left deck sub right floatation fan
025	UN703	Left deck pickup driver PCB	J2055L			J5444	041	FM705	Left deck sub left floatation fan
026	UN703	Left deck pickup driver PCB	J2061L			J5057	042	PS707	Left deck open/close sensor
043	UN704	Right deck environment sensor	J9606			J2060L	044	UN703	Left deck pickup driver PCB
045	UN705	Left deck pickup AC driver PCB	J2401L	J7975		J5680	050	H702	Left deck heater
046	UN705	Left deck pickup AC driver PCB	J2402L			-	-	H701	Left deck floating air heater
046	UN705	Left deck pickup AC driver PCB	J2402L			-	-	TP700	Right deck floatation air heater thermoswitch
047	UN705	Left deck pickup AC driver PCB	J2404L			J2058L	053	UN703	Left deck pickup driver PCB
048	UN705	Left deck pickup AC driver PCB	J2405L			J1822	054	UN102	Main station power supply connect PCB
049	UN705	Left deck pickup AC driver PCB	J2406L			J2062L	055	UN703	Left deck pickup driver PCB

16.4.8.12 Environment Heater Unit

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000



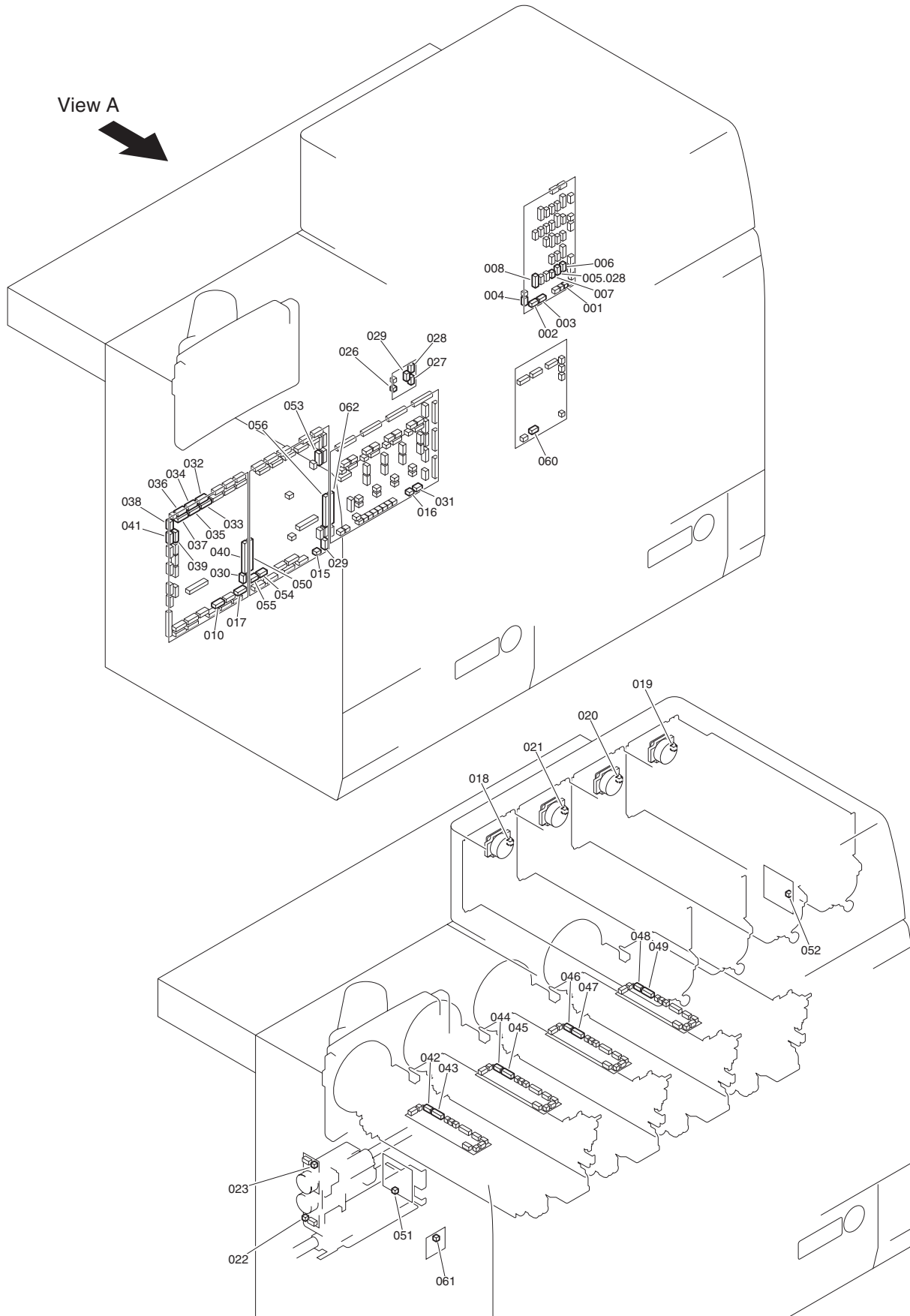
F-16-123

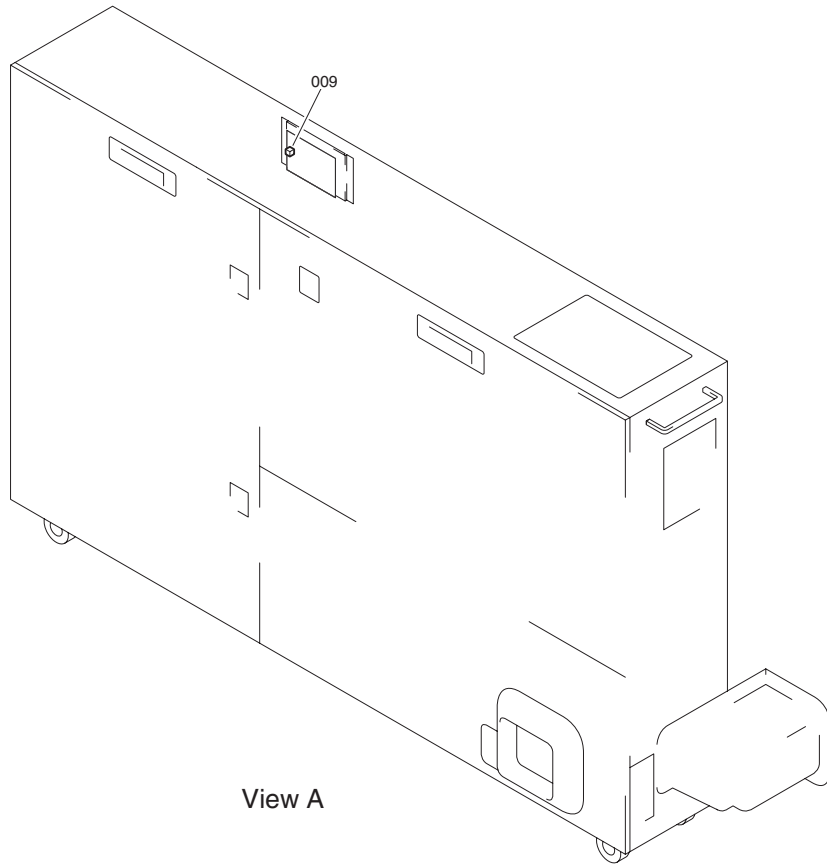
T-16-75

No.	Electric symbol	Electric parts name	J No.	Relay connector			J No.	No.	Electric symbol	Electric parts name
001	UN101	Environment heater driver PCB	J4400	J7779	J5653		J5653	-	SW3	Drum heater interlock switch
001	UN101	Environment heater driver PCB	J4400	J7778J	J7865J	J7856J	-	-	SW107	Environment switch
002	UN101	Environment heater driver PCB	J4401	J7266	J7012		-	-	H100	Drum heater (C)
002	UN101	Environment heater driver PCB	J4401	J7268	J7014		-	-	H101	Drum heater (Bk)
003	UN101	Environment heater driver PCB	J4402	J7262	J7008		-	-	H103	Drum heater (Y)
003	UN101	Environment heater driver PCB	J4402	J7264	J7010		-	-	H102	Drum heater (M)
004	UN101	Environment heater driver PCB	J4403				J1826	015	UN102	Main station power supply connect PCB
005	UN101	Environment heater driver PCB	J4404				J1054	016	UN198	DC controller PCB 1-1
006	UN101	Environment heater driver PCB	J4405	J7779	J5653		J5653	-	SW3	Drum heater interlock switch
007	UN101	Environment heater driver PCB	J4406	J7899	J7849	J7855	J7869	018	UN250	Drum surface temperature sensor power supply PCB
008	UN101	Environment heater driver PCB	J4407	J7902	J7188		J9135	019	UN510	Shutdown PCB

16.4.8.13 Main Station and Others

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000





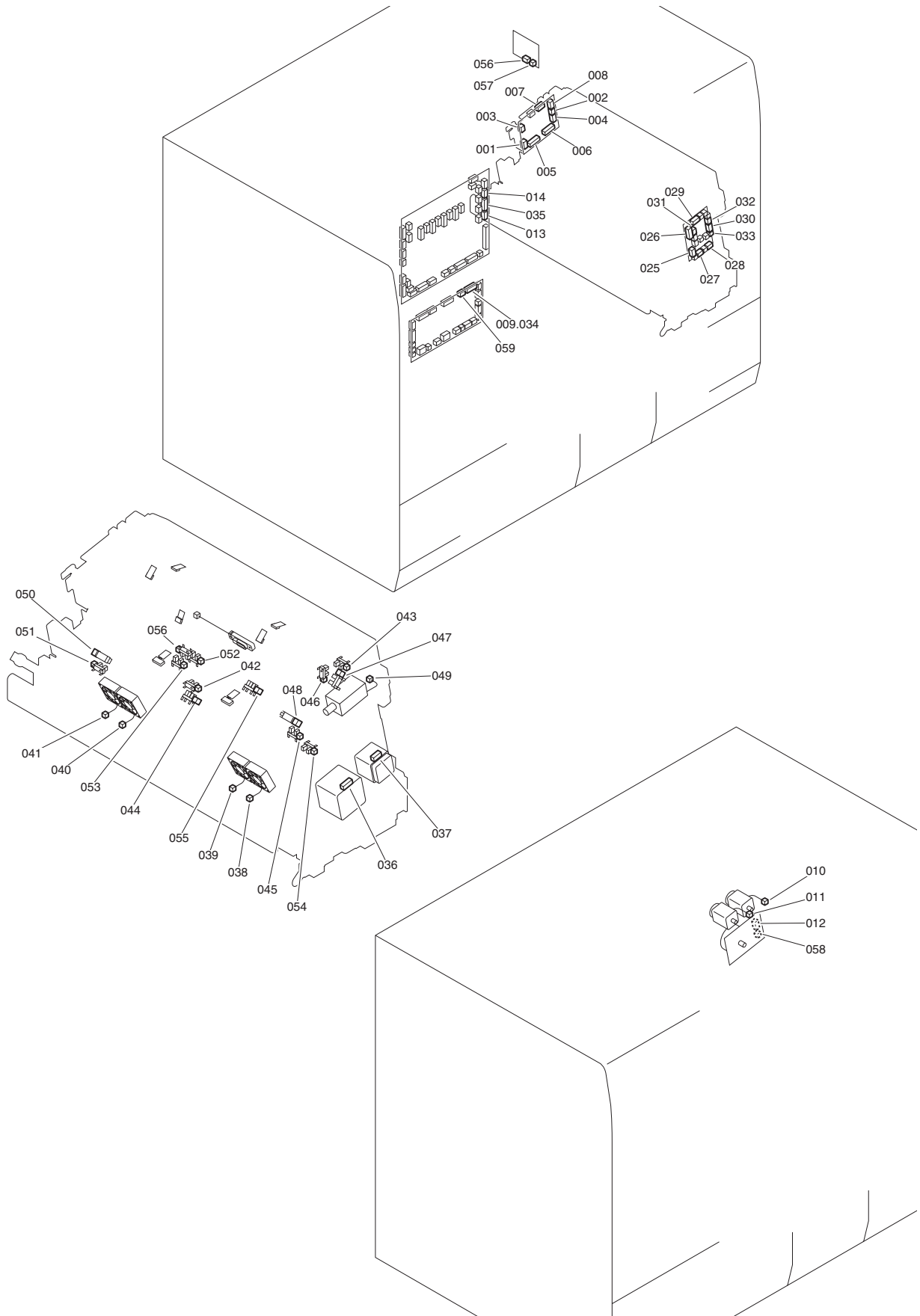
View A

F-16-125

No.	Electric symbol	Electric parts name	J No.	Relay connector			J No.	No.	Electric symbol	Electric parts name	
001	UN102	Main station power supply connect PCB	J1807	J7880			J6	009	UN250	Drum surface temperature sensor power supply PCB	
002	UN102	Main station power supply connect PCB	J1810				J1001	010	UN124	DC controller PCB 1-2	
003	UN102	Main station power supply connect PCB	J1813	J7898	J7896	J7756	J5141	011	PS175	Main station right front cover open/close sensor	
003	UN102	Main station power supply connect PCB	J1813	J7898	J7896	J7755	J5142	012	PS176	Main station left front cover open/close sensor	
004	UN102	Main station power supply connect PCB	J1814	J7770	J7763	J7759	J5637	013	SW111	Main station right front cover switch	
004	UN102	Main station power supply connect PCB	J1814	J7770	J7763	J7760	J5643	014	SW112	Main station left front cover switch	
005	UN102	Main station power supply connect PCB	J1820				J1051	015	UN198	DC controller PCB 1-1	
005	UN102	Main station power supply connect PCB	J1820				J1100	016	UN240	DC controller PCB 1-3	
006	UN102	Main station power supply connect PCB	J1821				J1086	017	UN124	DC controller PCB 1-2	
007	UN102	Main station power supply connect PCB	J1824	J5253	J7358 Y		J5253P	018	M195	Hopper motor (Y)	
007	UN102	Main station power supply connect PCB	J1824	J5253	J7358 K		J5256P	019	M196	Hopper motor (Bk)	
007	UN102	Main station power supply connect PCB	J1824	J5253	J7358 C		J5255P	020	M197	Hopper motor (C)	
007	UN102	Main station power supply connect PCB	J1824	J5253	J7358 M		J5254P	021	M198	Hopper motor (M)	
008	UN102	Main station power supply connect PCB	J1825	J7080			J5288P	022	M179	Buffer motor	
008	UN102	Main station power supply connect PCB	J1825	J7080			J5286P	023	M180	Drum waste toner feed motor	
024	UN103	DC controller power supply PCB	J1P	J1			J1820	028	UN102	Main station power supply connect PCB	
025	UN103	DC controller power supply PCB	J2				J1052	029	UN198	DC controller PCB 1-1	
026	UN103	DC controller power supply PCB	J3				J1085	030	UN124	DC controller PCB 1-2	
027	UN103	DC controller power supply PCB	J4				J1101	031	UN240	DC controller PCB 1-3	
032	UN124	DC controller PCB 1-2	J1006	J7273	J7008		J1360Y	042	UN161	Process unit driver PCB (Y)	
033	UN124	DC controller PCB 1-2	J1007	J7272	J7007		J1361Y	043	UN161	Process unit driver PCB (Y)	
034	UN124	DC controller PCB 1-2	J1008	J7275	J7010		J1360M	044	UN162	Process unit driver PCB (M)	
035	UN124	DC controller PCB 1-2	J1009	J7274	J7009		J1361M	045	UN162	Process unit driver PCB (M)	
036	UN124	DC controller PCB 1-2	J1010	J7277	J7012		J1360C	046	UN163	Process unit driver PCB (C)	
037	UN124	DC controller PCB 1-2	J1011	J7276	J7011		J1361C	047	UN163	Process unit driver PCB (C)	
038	UN124	DC controller PCB 1-2	J1012	J7279	J7014		J1360K	048	UN164	Process unit driver PCB (Bk)	
039	UN124	DC controller PCB 1-2	J1013	J7278	J7013		J1361K	049	UN164	Process unit driver PCB (Bk)	
040	UN124	DC controller PCB 1-2	J1091				J1091	050	UN198	DC controller PCB 1-1	
041	UN124	DC controller PCB 1-2	J1095	J7764	J9010	J7788	J7750	J4601	051	UN141	Environment sensor PCB 1
041	UN124	DC controller PCB 1-2	J1095	J7764	J9010	J7788	J7751	J4602	052	UN142	Environment sensor PCB 2
053	UN198	DC controller PCB 1-1	J1023				J5501	-	FM131	Registration feed driver PCB left cooling fan	
053	UN198	DC controller PCB 1-1	J1023				J5014	-	PS148	Registration roller release HP sensor 2	
053	UN198	DC controller PCB 1-1	J1023				J5152	-	PS159	Side registration sensor	
054	UN198	DC controller PCB 1-1	J1054				J4404	060	UN101	Environment heater driver PCB	
055	UN198	DC controller PCB 1-1	J1055				J4500	061	UN143	ARCNET connector PCB	
056	UN198	DC controller PCB 1-1	J1090				J1103	062	UN240	DC controller PCB 1-3	

16.4.8.14 Primary Fixing Unit

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

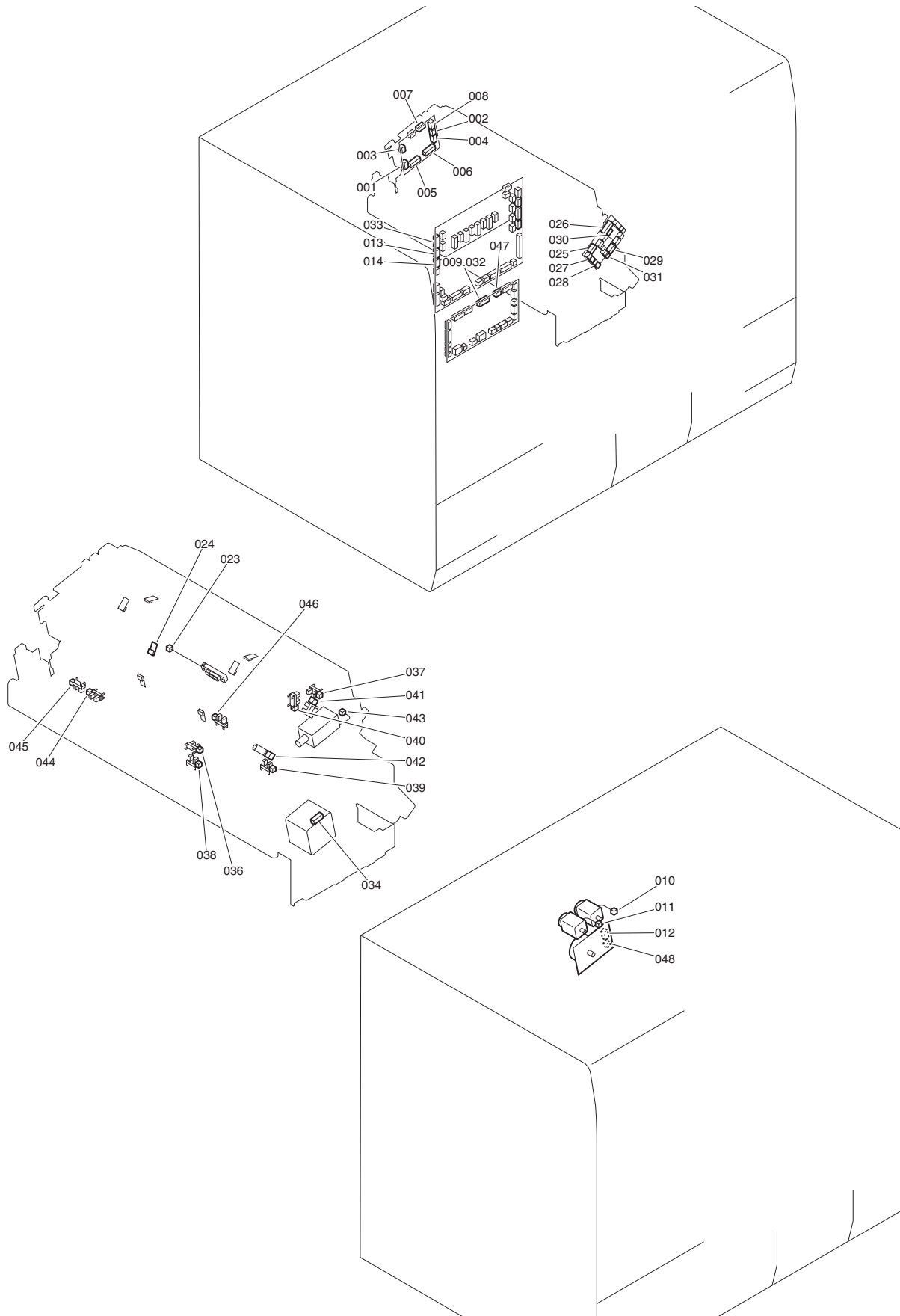


F-16-126

No.	Electric symbol	Electric parts name	J No.	Relay connector			J No.	No.	Electric symbol	Electric parts name
001	UN304	Primary fixing external driver PCB	J4150P				J4223	009	UN301	Sub station power connecting PCB
002	UN304	Primary fixing external driver PCB	J4163P				J7720	010	M301	Primary fixing outside heating roller pressure motor
003	UN304	Primary fixing external driver PCB	J4164P				J7721	011	M302	Primary fixing web pressure motor
004	UN304	Primary fixing external driver PCB	J4165P				J5310	012	M300	Primary fixing driving motor
005	UN304	Primary fixing external driver PCB	J4181P				J4081	013	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB
006	UN304	Primary fixing external driver PCB	J4182P				J4082	014	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB
007	UN304	Primary fixing external driver PCB	J4191P	J7027			-	-	THM30 2M	Primary fixing external heat upper roller main thermistor
007	UN304	Primary fixing external driver PCB	J4191P	J7027			-	-	THM30 2S	Primary fixing external heat upper roller sub thermistor
007	UN304	Primary fixing external driver PCB	J4191P	J7027			-	-	THM30 3M	Primary fixing external heat lower roller main thermistor
007	UN304	Primary fixing external driver PCB	J4191P	J7027			-	-	THM30 3S	Primary fixing external heat lower roller sub thermistor
008	UN304	Primary fixing external driver PCB	J4192P	J7026			J7603	-	-	Short connector (to detect locations)
008	UN304	Primary fixing external driver PCB	J4192P	J7026			J7625	-	-	Short connector (to detect locations)
008	UN304	Primary fixing external driver PCB	J4192P	J7026	J7613		J5402	-	THM30 0M	Primary fixing pressure belt main thermistor
008	UN304	Primary fixing external driver PCB	J4192P	J7026	J7613		J5402	-	THM30 0S	Primary fixing pressure belt sub thermistor
008	UN304	Primary fixing external driver PCB	J4192P	J7026			J5400	-	THM30 1	Primary fixing roller main thermistor
008	UN304	Primary fixing external driver PCB	J4192P	J7026			J5401	-	THM30 4	Primary fixing roller sub thermistor
025	UN316	Primary fixing inner driver PCB	J4350P	J7652	J7017	J7606	J4223	034	UN301	Sub station power connecting PCB
026	UN316	Primary fixing inner driver PCB	J4360P	J7017	J7527		J4080	035	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB
027	UN316	Primary fixing inner driver PCB	J4370P				J7723	036	M303	Primary fixing pressure belt pressure motor
028	UN316	Primary fixing inner driver PCB	J4371P				J7722	037	M304	Primary fixing pressure belt full displacement control motor
029	UN316	Primary fixing inner driver PCB	J4372				J5524	038	FM331	Primary fixing separating cooling fan 1
029	UN316	Primary fixing inner driver PCB	J4372				J5525	039	FM332	Primary fixing separating cooling fan 2
029	UN316	Primary fixing inner driver PCB	J4372				J5526	040	FM333	Primary fixing separating cooling fan 3
029	UN316	Primary fixing inner driver PCB	J4372				J5527	041	FM334	Primary fixing separating cooling fan 4
030	UN316	Primary fixing inner driver PCB	J4374P	J7764			J5107	042	PS305	Primary fixing inner delivery sensor1
030	UN316	Primary fixing inner driver PCB	J4374P				J5105	043	PS306	Primary fixing external heat roller HP sensor
030	UN316	Primary fixing inner driver PCB	J4374P	J7764			J5108	044	PS307	Primary fixing inner delivery sensor2
030	UN316	Primary fixing inner driver PCB	J4374P				J5097	045	PS309	Primary fixing web HP sensor
030	UN316	Primary fixing inner driver PCB	J4374P				J5099	046	PS310	Primary fixing external heat roller overrun sensor
030	UN316	Primary fixing inner driver PCB	J4374P				J5098	047	PS311	Primary fixing web absent alert sensor
030	UN316	Primary fixing inner driver PCB	J4374P				J5066	048	PS382	Primary fixing refresh roller HP sensor
030	UN316	Primary fixing inner driver PCB	J4374P				J5574	049	SL302	Primary fixing web solenoid
031	UN316	Primary fixing inner driver PCB	J4380P				J5103	050	PS300	Primary fixing pressure belt HP sensor
031	UN316	Primary fixing inner driver PCB	J4380P				J5104	051	PS303	Primary fixing pressure belt pressure sensor
032	UN316	Primary fixing inner driver PCB	J4381P				J5101	052	PS301	Primary fixing pressure belt position sensor (front)
032	UN316	Primary fixing inner driver PCB	J4381P				J5102	053	PS302	Primary fixing pressure belt position sensor (rear)
032	UN316	Primary fixing inner driver PCB	J4381P	J7639			J5100	054	PS308	Primary fixing pressure belt displacement HP sensor
033	UN316	Primary fixing inner driver PCB	J4382P	J7638			J5106	055	PS304	Primary fixing inlet sensor
033	UN316	Primary fixing inner driver PCB	J4383P				J5106	056	PS352	Primary fixing pressure belt retry sensor
056	UN320	Primary fixing motor inverter PCB	J4861				J5310P	058	M300	Primary fixing driving motor
057	UN320	Primary fixing motor inverter PCB	J4860				J4225	059	UN301	Sub station power connecting PCB

16.4.8.15 Secondary Fixing Unit

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

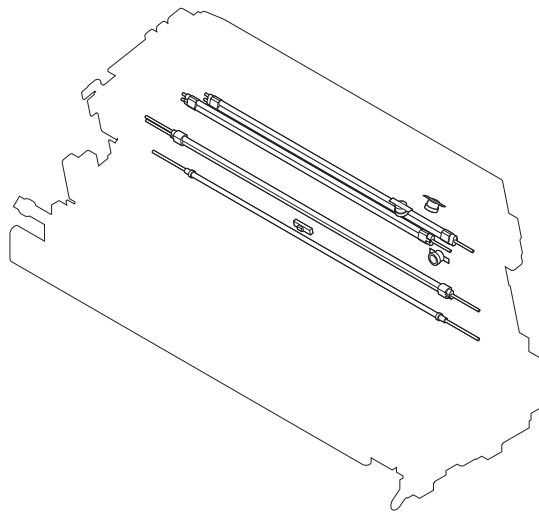
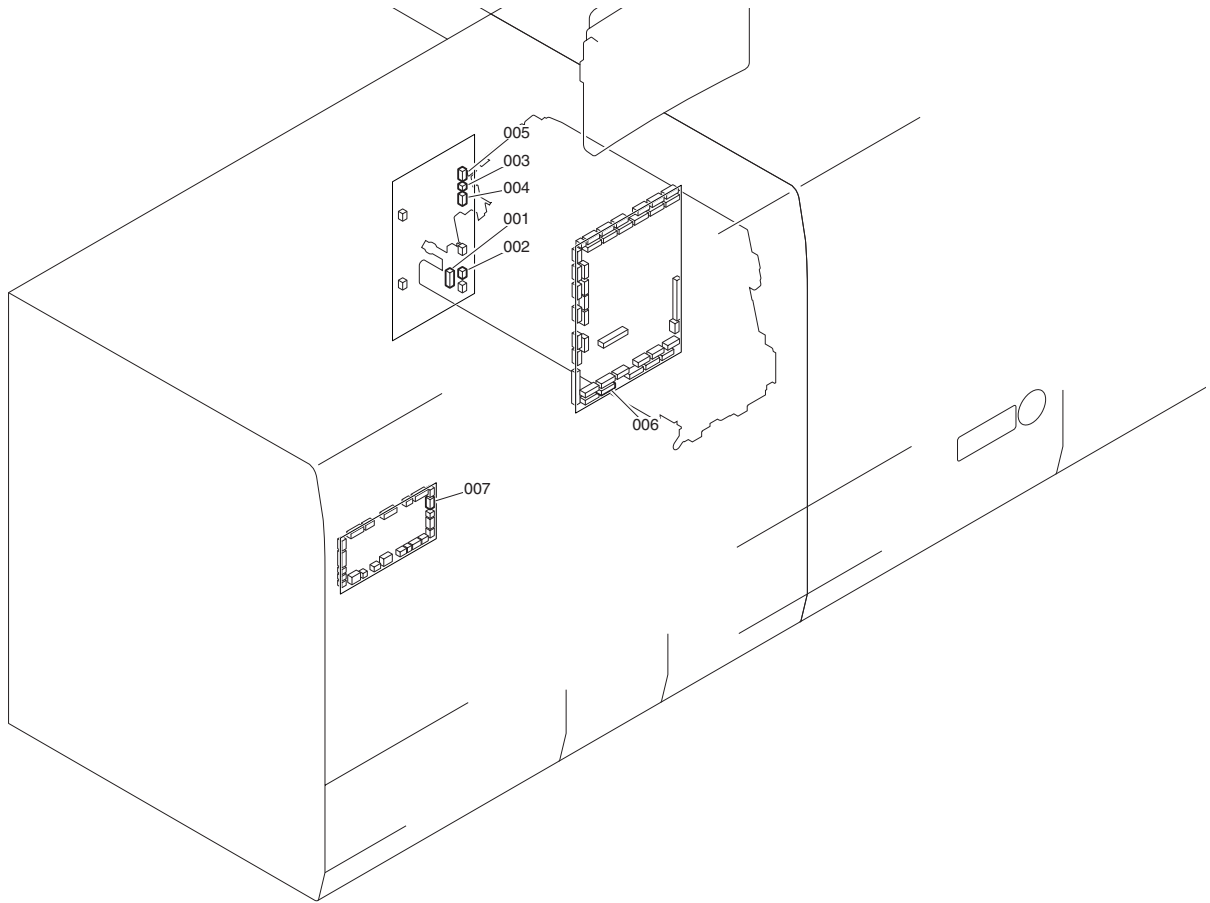


F-16-127

No.	Electric symbol	Electric parts name	J No.	Relay connector			J No.	No.	Electric symbol	Electric parts name
001	UN305	Secondary fixing external driver PCB	J4150S				J4224	009	UN301	Sub station power connecting PCB
002	UN305	Secondary fixing external driver PCB	J4163S				J7724	010	M306	Secondary fixing outside heating roller pressure motor
003	UN305	Secondary fixing external driver PCB	J4164S				J7725	011	M307	Secondary fixing web pressure motor
004	UN305	Secondary fixing external driver PCB	J4165S				J5315	012	M305	Secondary fixing driving motor
005	UN305	Secondary fixing external driver PCB	J4181S				J4086	013	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB
006	UN305	Secondary fixing external driver PCB	J4182S				J4087	014	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB
007	UN305	Secondary fixing external driver PCB	J4191S	J7029			-	-	THM307M	Secondary fixing external heat upper roller main thermistor
007	UN305	Secondary fixing external driver PCB	J4191S	J7029			-	-	THM307S	Secondary fixing external heat upper roller sub thermistor
007	UN305	Secondary fixing external driver PCB	J4191S	J7029			-	-	THM308M	Secondary fixing external heat lower roller main thermistor
007	UN305	Secondary fixing external driver PCB	J4191S	J7029			-	-	THM308S	Secondary fixing external heat lower roller sub thermistor
008	UN305	Secondary fixing external driver PCB	J4192S	J7028			J7608	-	-	Short connector (to detect locations)
008	UN305	Secondary fixing external driver PCB	J4192S	J7028			J7634	-	-	Short connector (to detect locations)
008	UN305	Secondary fixing external driver PCB	J4192S	J7028	J7614		J5407	021	THM305M	Secondary fixing pressure roller main thermistor
008	UN305	Secondary fixing external driver PCB	J4192S	J7028	J7614		J5407	-	THM305S	Secondary fixing pressure roller sub thermistor
008	UN305	Secondary fixing external driver PCB	J4192S	J7028			J5405	-	THM306	Secondary fixing roller main thermistor
008	UN305	Secondary fixing external driver PCB	J4192S	J7028			J5406	024	THM309	Secondary fixing roller sub thermistor
025	UN317	Secondary fixing inner driver PCB	J4350S	J7655	J7018	J7067	J4224	032	UN301	Sub station power connecting PCB
026	UN317	Secondary fixing inner driver PCB	J4360S	J7018	J7528		J4085	033	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB
027	UN317	Secondary fixing inner driver PCB	J4370S				J7726	034	M308	Secondary fixing pressure roller pressure motor
028	UN317	Secondary fixing inner driver PCB	J4371S				-	-	-	-
029	UN317	Secondary fixing inner driver PCB	J4374S	J7765			J5116	036	PS313	Secondary fixing inner delivery sensor1
029	UN317	Secondary fixing inner driver PCB	J4374S				J5114	037	PS314	Secondary fixing external heat roller HP sensor
029	UN317	Secondary fixing inner driver PCB	J4374S	J7765			J5117	038	PS317	Secondary fixing inner delivery sensor2
029	UN317	Secondary fixing inner driver PCB	J4374S				J5109	039	PS318	Secondary fixing web HP sensor
029	UN317	Secondary fixing inner driver PCB	J4374S				J5111	040	PS319	Secondary fixing external heat roller overrun sensor
029	UN317	Secondary fixing inner driver PCB	J4374S				J5110	041	PS320	Secondary fixing web absent alert sensor
029	UN317	Secondary fixing inner driver PCB	J4374S				J5073	042	PS383	Secondary fixing refresh roller HP sensor
029	UN317	Secondary fixing inner driver PCB	J4374S				J5575	043	SL303	Secondary fixing web solenoid
030	UN317	Secondary fixing inner driver PCB	J4380S				J5112	044	PS315	Secondary fixing pressure roller HP sensor
030	UN317	Secondary fixing inner driver PCB	J4380S				J5113	045	PS316	Secondary fixing pressure roller pressure sensor
031	UN317	Secondary fixing inner driver PCB	J4382S	J7619			J5115	046	PS312	Secondary fixing inlet sensor
047	UN301	Sub station power connecting PCB	J4225	J7622			J5315S	048	M305	Secondary fixing driving motor

16.4.8.16 Primary Fixing Heater Unit

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

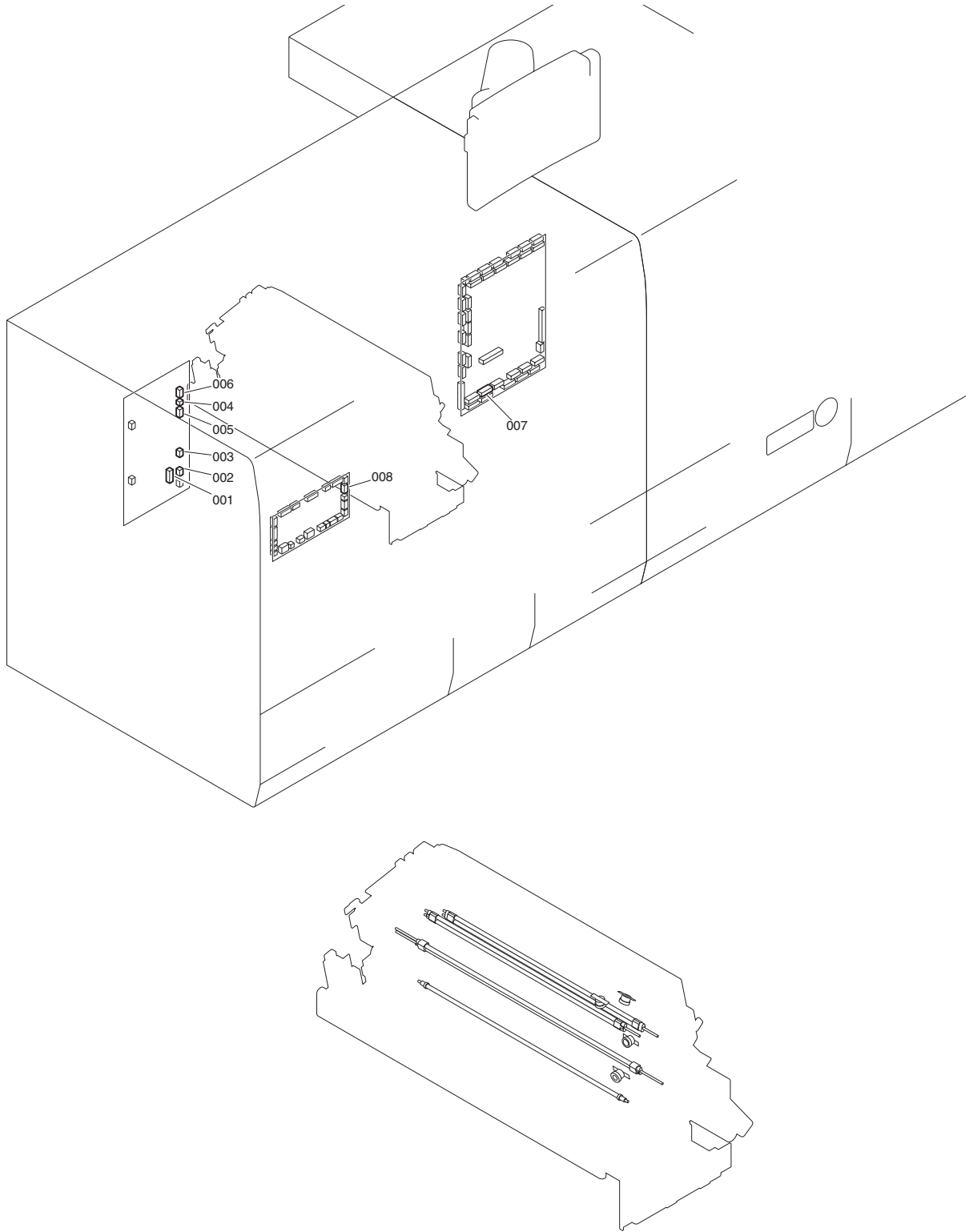


F-16-128

No.	Electric symbol	Electric parts name	J No.	Relay connector		J No.	No.	Electric symbol	Electric parts name				
001	UN306	Primary fixing heater driver PCB	J4400P	J7609			J1003	006	UN124	DC controller PCB 1-2			
002	UN306	Primary fixing heater driver PCB	J4401P				J4228	007	UN301	Sub station power connecting PCB			
003	UN306	Primary fixing heater driver PCB	J4405P	J7615	J7026	J7601	J7629	-	H305	Primary fixing pressure belt heater	J7628	MT10 12	
							-	-	TP301	Primary fixing pressure belt thermoswitch			
							J7626	-	-	H306M	Primary fixing roller main heater	J7627	MT10 06
								-	-	H306S	Primary fixing roller sub heater		
						-	-	TP300	Primary fixing roller thermoswitch				
003	UN306	Primary fixing heater driver PCB	J4405P	J7615	J7026	J7601/ J7642	J7643	-	H305	Primary fixing pressure belt heater	J7644	MT10 71	
						J7026	J7601/ J7642	-	-	TP308	Primary fixing pressure belt thermoswitch		
							-	-	H307M	H307M: Primary fixing outside heating lower main heater		MT10 20	
							-	-	H307S	H307S: Primary fixing outside heating lower sub heater			
004	UN306	Primary fixing heater driver PCB	J4406P	J7616	J7027		-	-	TP303	Primary fixing external heat lower roller thermoswitch			
005			J4407P				-	-	H308M	H308M: Primary fixing outside heating upper roller main heater			
								-	-	H308S	H308S: Primary fixing outside heating upper roller sub heater		MT10 28
							-	-	TP302	Primary fixing external heat upper roller thermoswitch			

16.4.8.17 Secondary Fixing Heater Unit

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

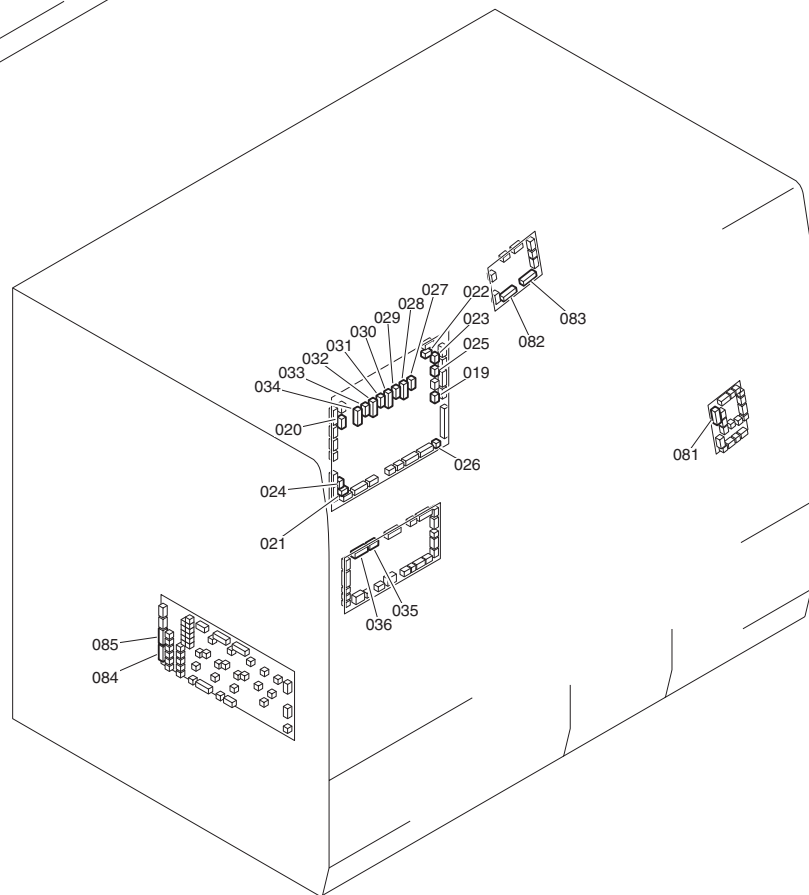
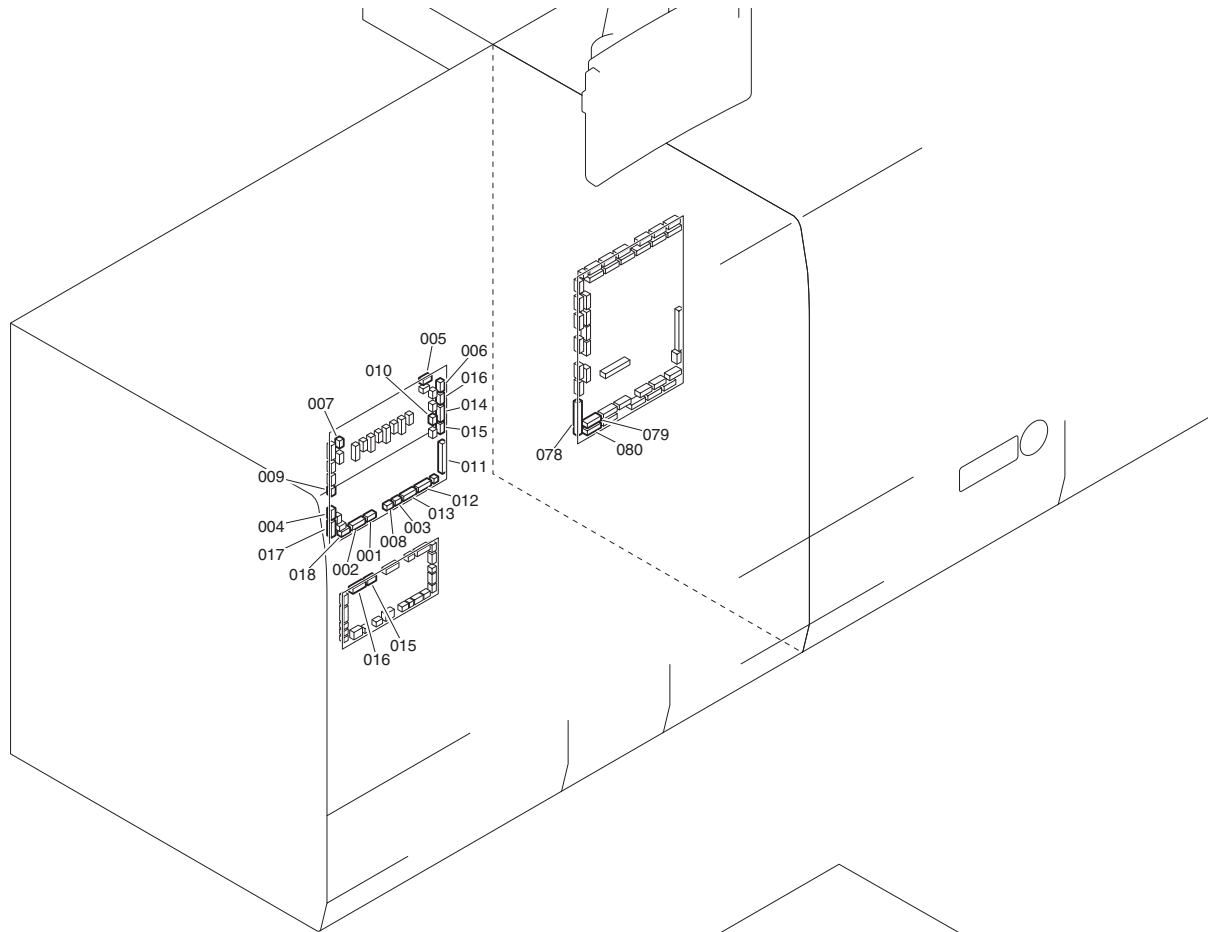


F-16-129

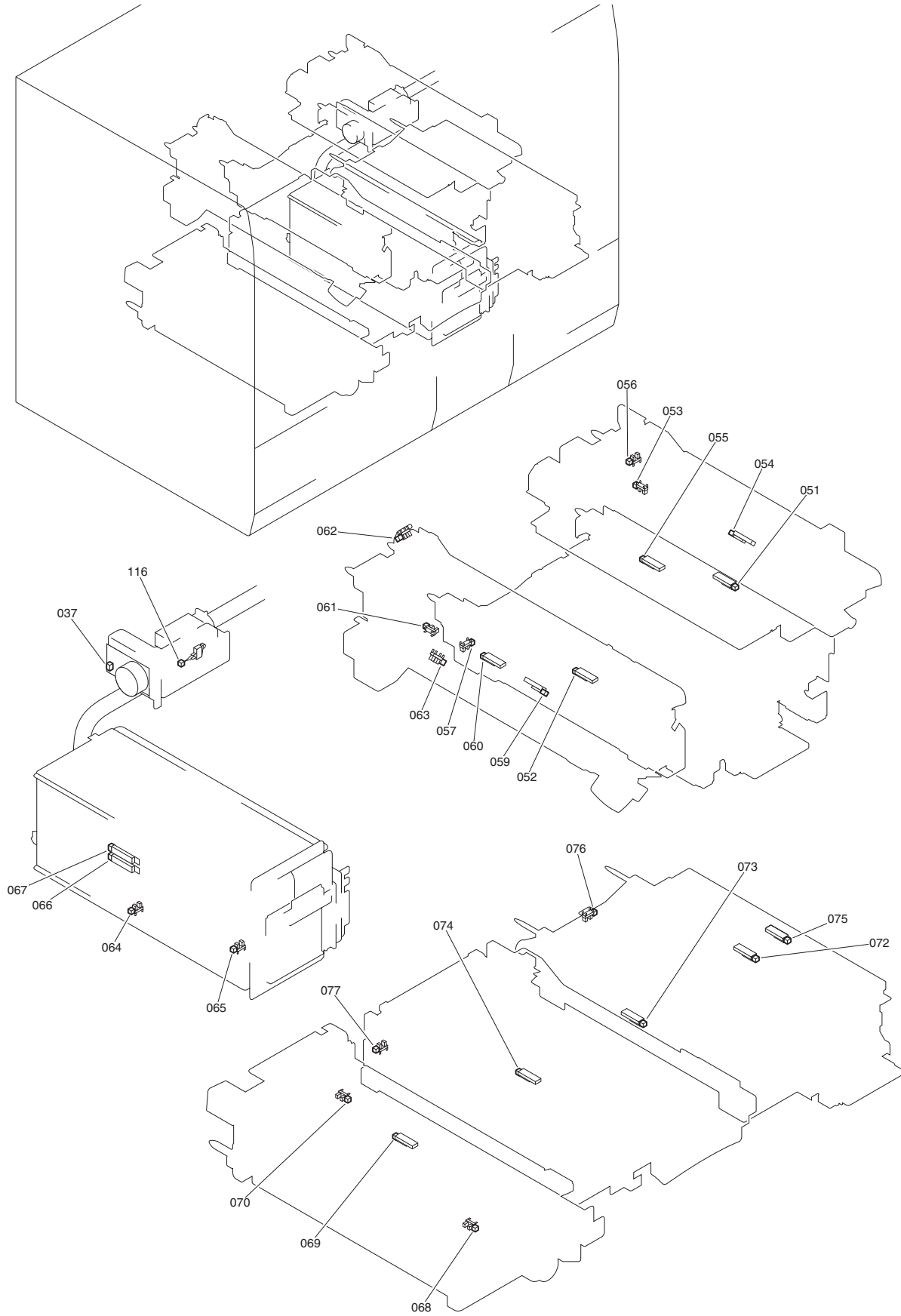
No.	Electric symbol	Electric parts name	J No.	Relay connector			J No.	No.	Electric symbol	Electric parts name		
001	UN307	Secondary fixing heater driver PCB	J4400S	J7610			J1004	007	UN124	DC controller PCB 1-2		
002	UN307	Secondary fixing heater driver PCB	J4401S				J4228	008	UN301	Sub station power connecting PCB		
003	UN307	Secondary fixing heater driver PCB	J4404S	J7617	J7028	J7604/ J7645	J7646	-	H303	Secondary fixing pressure roller heater	J7647	MT10 73
							-	-	TP309	Secondary fixing pressure roller thermoswitch		
							-	-	H300	Secondary fixing roller main heater	J7648	MT10 74
							-	-	TP304	Secondary fixing roller thermoswitch		
003 004	UN307	Secondary fixing heater driver PCB	J4404S J4405S	J7617	J7028	J7604	J7633	-	H303	Secondary fixing pressure roller heater	J7632	MT10 44
							-	-	TP305	Secondary fixing pressure roller thermoswitch		
							J7630	-	H300M	Secondary fixing roller main heater	J7631	MT10 38
							-	-	H300S	Secondary fixing roller sub heater		
-	-	TP304	Secondary fixing roller thermoswitch									
005 006	UN307	Secondary fixing heater driver PCB	J4406S J4407S	J7618	J7029		-	-	H301M	H301M: Secondary fixing outside heating lower roller main heater	MT10 50	
							-	-	H301S	H301S: Secondary fixing outside heating lower roller sub heater		
							-	-	TP307	Secondary fixing external heat lower roller thermoswitch		
							-	-	H302M	H302M: Secondary fixing outside heating roller main heater	MT10 58	
							-	-	H302S	H302S: Secondary fixing outside heating roller sub heater		
							-	-	TP306	Secondary fixing external heat upper roller thermoswitch		

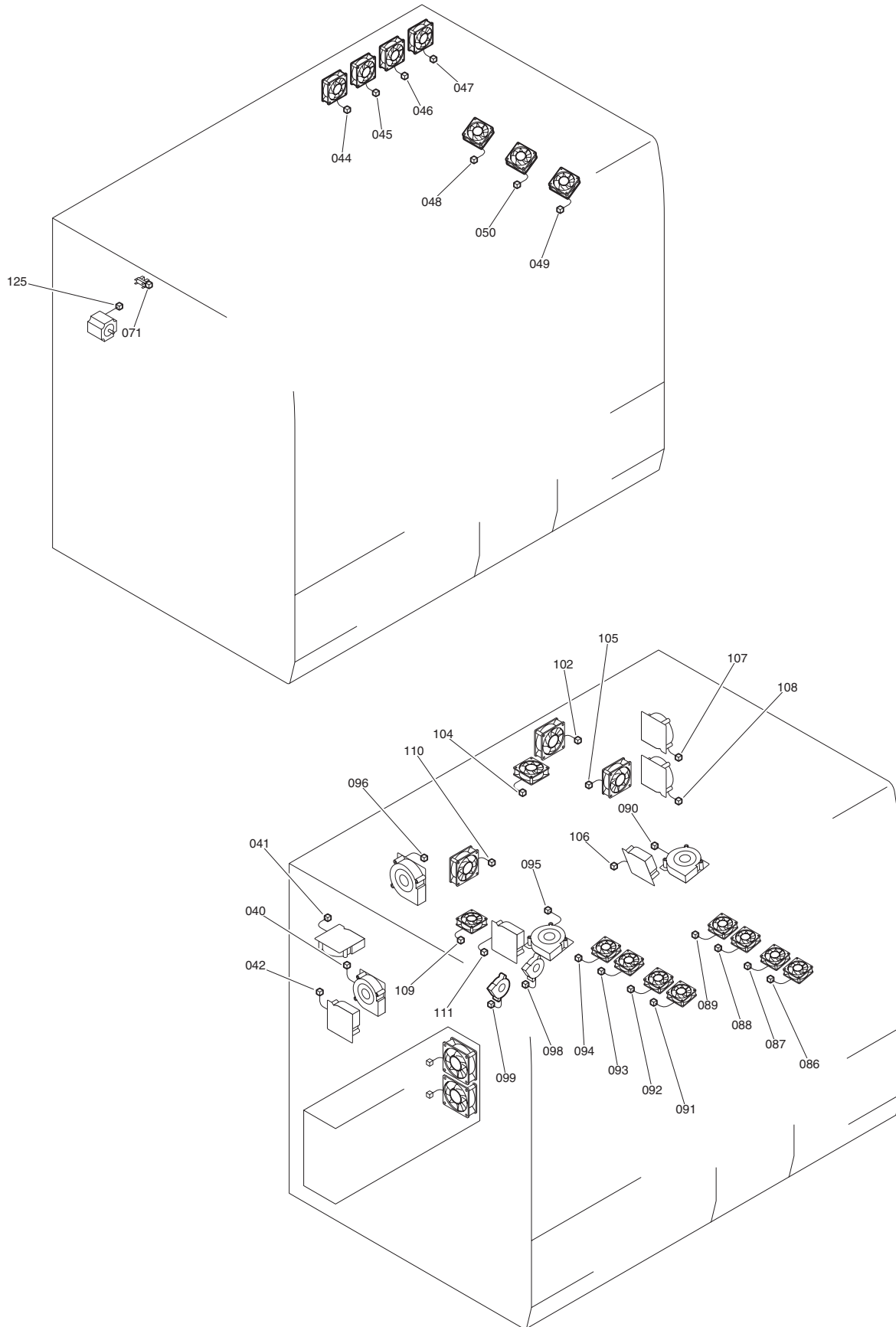
16.4.8.18 Fixing/Duplexing Feed Unit

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

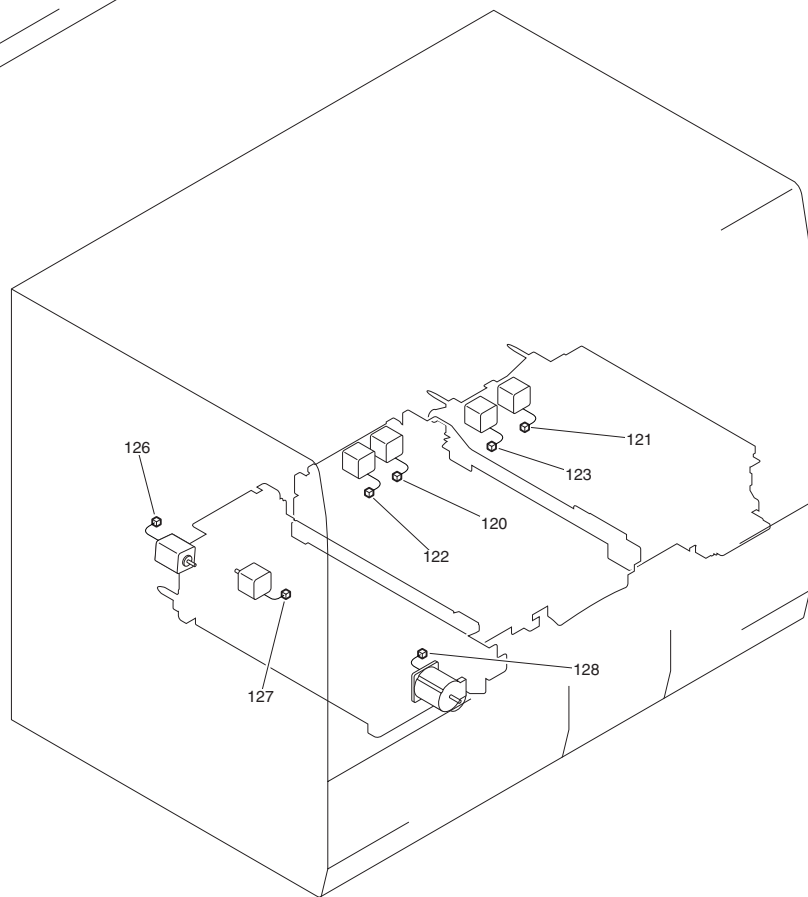
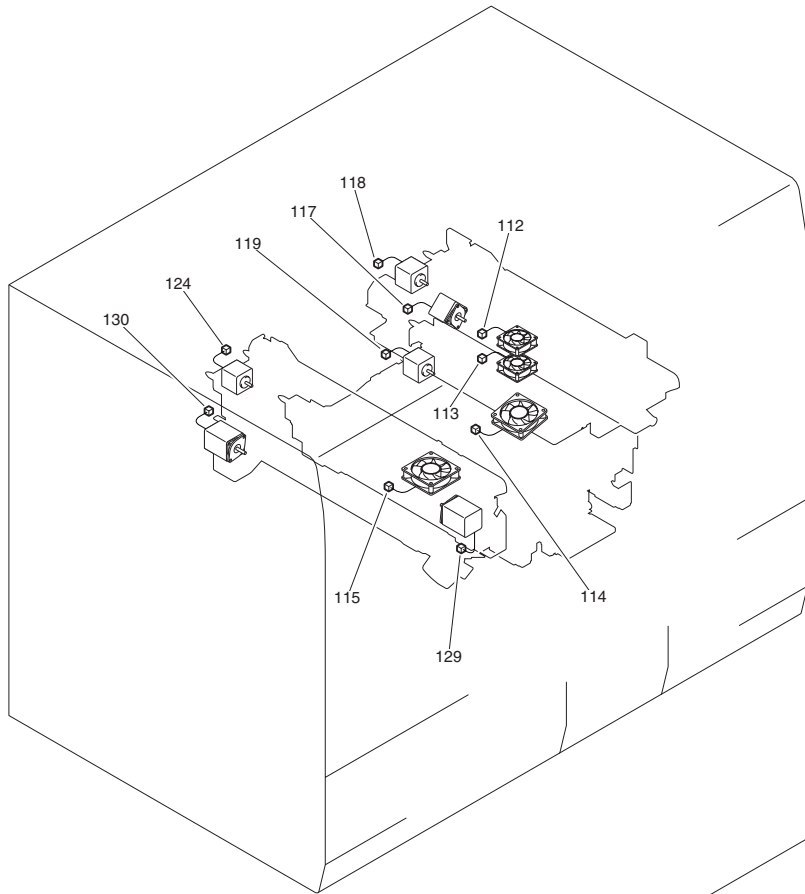


F-16-130





F-16-132



F-16-133

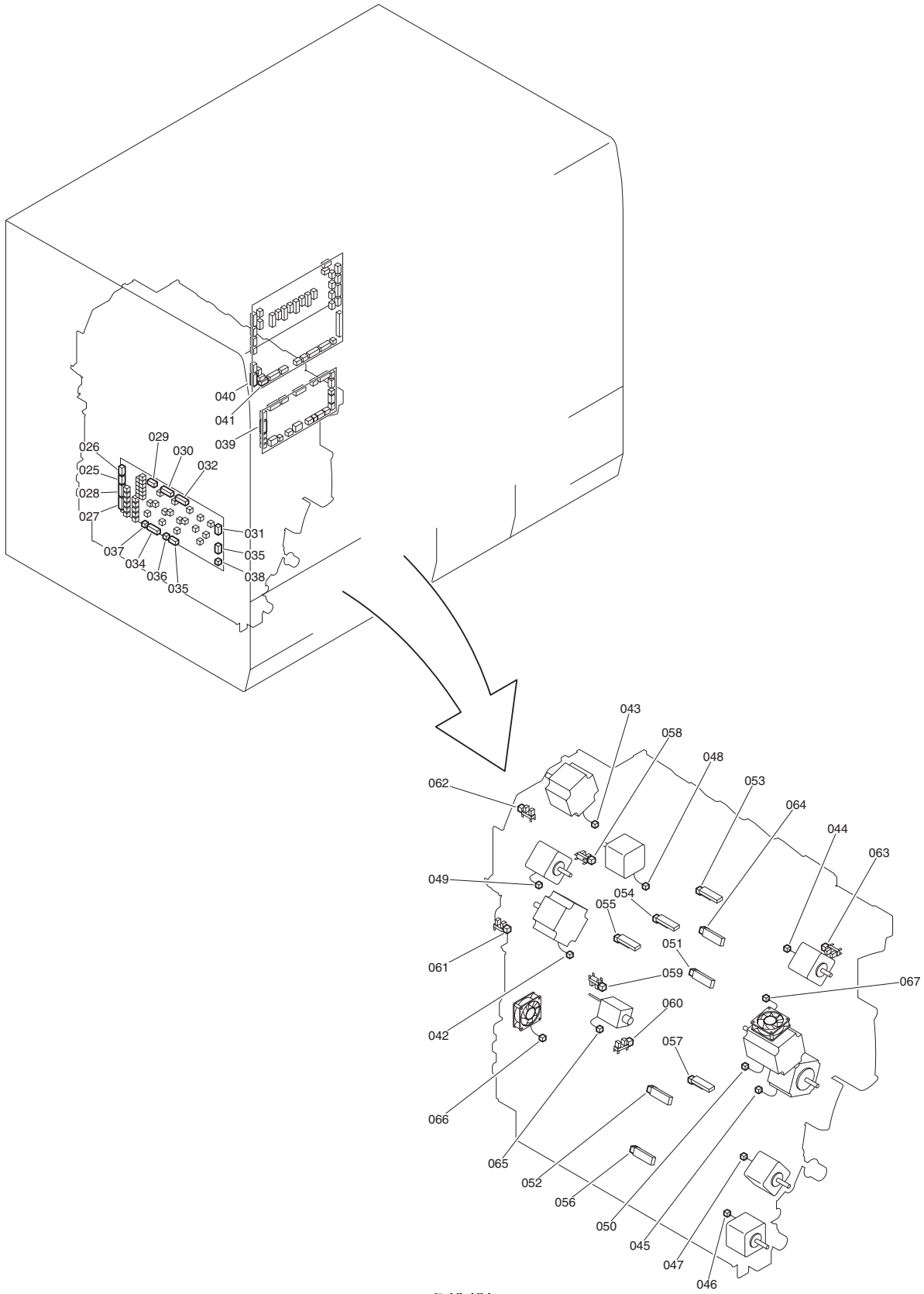
T-16-81

No.	Electric symbol	Electric parts name	J No.	Relay connector			J No.	No.	Electric symbol	Electric parts name	
001	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB	J4000				J4220	035	UN301	Sub station power connecting PCB	
002	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB	J4001				J4221	036	UN301	Sub station power connecting PCB	
003	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB	J4016				J5319	037	M314	Waste toner feed motor	
004	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB	J4021	J7486			J5465	038	FM316	Delivery assembly discharge fan 1	
004	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB	J4021	J7486			J5466	039	FM317	Delivery assembly discharge fan 2	
004	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB	J4021	J7542			J5453	040	FM318	Delivery lower cooling fan	
004	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB	J4021	J7542			J5452	041	FM319	Delivery upper cooling fan	
004	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB	J4021	J7542			J5454	042	FM320	Duplexing decurler fan	
004	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB	J4021	J7486			J5522	043	FM335	Fixing/feed cooling fan	
005	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB	J4023	J7487			J5483	044	FM321	Station to station interval cooling fan 1	
005	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB	J4023	J7487			J5484	045	FM322	Station to station interval cooling fan 2	
005	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB	J4023	J7487			J5485	046	FM323	Station to station interval cooling fan 3	
005	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB	J4023	J7487			J5486	047	FM324	Station to station interval cooling fan 4	
005	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB	J4023	J7488			J5488	048	FM326	Station to station interval cooling fan 6	
005	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB	J4023	J7488			J5489	049	FM327	Station to station interval cooling fan 7	
005	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB	J4023	J7488			J5490	050	FM328	Station to station interval cooling fan 8	
006	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB	J4030X	J4030	J7491	J7473	J5076	051	PS322	Bypass sensor 1	
006	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB	J4030X	J4030	J7491	J7473	J5077	052	PS323	Bypass sensor 2	
006	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB	J4030X	J4030	J7491	J7472	J5080	053	PS324	Flapper HP sensor	
006	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB	J4030X	J4030	J7491	J7472	J7739	J5074	054	PS326	Tandem sensor 1
006	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB	J4030X	J4030	J7491	J7472	J7739	J5075	055	PS327	Tandem sensor 2
006	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB	J4030X	J4030	J7491	J7472	J5196	056	PS362	Tandem guide open/close sensor	
006	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB	J4030X	J4030	J7491	J7473	J7411	J5197	057	PS363	Bypass guide open/close sensor
006	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB	J4030X	J4030	J7491	J7473	J5062	058	PS371	Bypass sensor 3	
007	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB	J4031X	J4030	J7481	J7485	J5078	059	PS321	Merger path lower sensor	
007	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB	J4031X	J4030	J7489	J7474	J7740	J5079	060	PS325	Merger path upper sensor
007	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB	J4031X	J4030	J7481	J7485	J5195	061	PS353	Bypass decurler disengage/engage motor HP sensor	
007	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB	J4031X	J4030	J7489	J7474	J5198	062	PS364	Merger upper guide open/close sensor	
007	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB	J4031X	J4030	J7481	J7485	J5199	063	PS365	Merger lower guide open/close sensor	
008	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB	J4032	J7476	J7753		J5127	064	PS328	Waste toner container sensor	
008	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB	J4032	J7476			J5118	065	PS329	Waste toner door switch sensor	
008	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB	J4032	J7469	J7497		J5555	066	TS300	Waste toner full sensor 2	
008	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB	J4032	J7469	J7497		J5556	067	TS301	Waste toner full sensor 1	
009	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB	J4033	J7458	J7459		J5085	068	PS343	Duplexing decurler HP sensor	
009	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB	J4033	J7458	J7459		J5081	069	PS344	Duplexing path inlet sensor	
009	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB	J4033	J7458	J7482		J5068	070	PS366	Duplexing inlet guide open/close sensor	
009	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB	J4033	J7451			J5817	071	PS381	Reverse external delivery lever sensor	
010	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB	J4035X	J4035	J7496	J7464	J5082	072	PS345	Duplexing standby sensor 4	
010	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB	J4035X	J4035	J7465	J7464	J5083	073	PS346	Duplexing standby sensor 5	
010	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB	J4035X	J4035	J7495	J7463	J5084	074	PS347	Duplexing standby sensor 6	
010	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB	J4035X	J4035	J7496	J7464	J5072	075	PS350	Duplexing path sub station outlet sensor	
010	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB	J4035X	J4035	J7496	J7464	J5069	076	PS367	Duplexing Right guide open/close sensor	
010	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB	J4035X	J4035	J7495	J7463	J5071	077	PS368	Duplexing Left guide open/close sensor	
011	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB	J4070				J1072	078	UN124	DC controller PCB 1-2	
012	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB	J4071	J7479			J1070	079	UN124	DC controller PCB 1-2	
013	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB	J4072	J7480			J1071	080	UN124	DC controller PCB 1-2	
014	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB	J4080	J7527	J7017		J4360P	081	UN316	Primary fixing inner driver PCB	
015	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB	J4081				J4181P	082	UN304	Primary fixing external driver PCB	
016	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB	J4082				J4182P	083	UN304	Primary fixing external driver PCB	
017	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB	J4090	J7031			J4110	084	UN310	Reverse/external delivery driver PCB	
018	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB	J4091	J7030			J4111	085	UN310	Reverse/external delivery driver PCB	
019	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB	J4100	J7650			J5467	086	FM302	Primary fixing belt cooling fan 1	
019	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB	J4100	J7656			J5468	087	FM303	Primary fixing belt cooling fan 2	
019	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB	J4100		J7651		J5469	088	FM304	Primary fixing belt cooling fan 3	
019	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB	J4100				J5470	089	FM305	Primary fixing belt cooling fan 4	
019	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB	J4100				J5519	090	FM338	Primary fixing belt cooling fan 5	
020	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB	J4101	J7662	J7621	J7623	J5471	091	FM306	Secondary fixing pressure roller cooling fan 1	
020	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB	J4101	J7662	J7621	J7623	J5472	092	FM307	Secondary fixing pressure roller cooling fan 2	
020	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB	J4101	J7662	J7621	J7623	J5473	093	FM308	Secondary fixing pressure roller cooling fan 3	
020	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB	J4101	J7662	J7621	J7623	J5474	094	FM309	Secondary fixing pressure roller cooling fan 4	
020	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB	J4101				J7659	095	FM337	Secondary fixing pressure roller cooling fan 5	

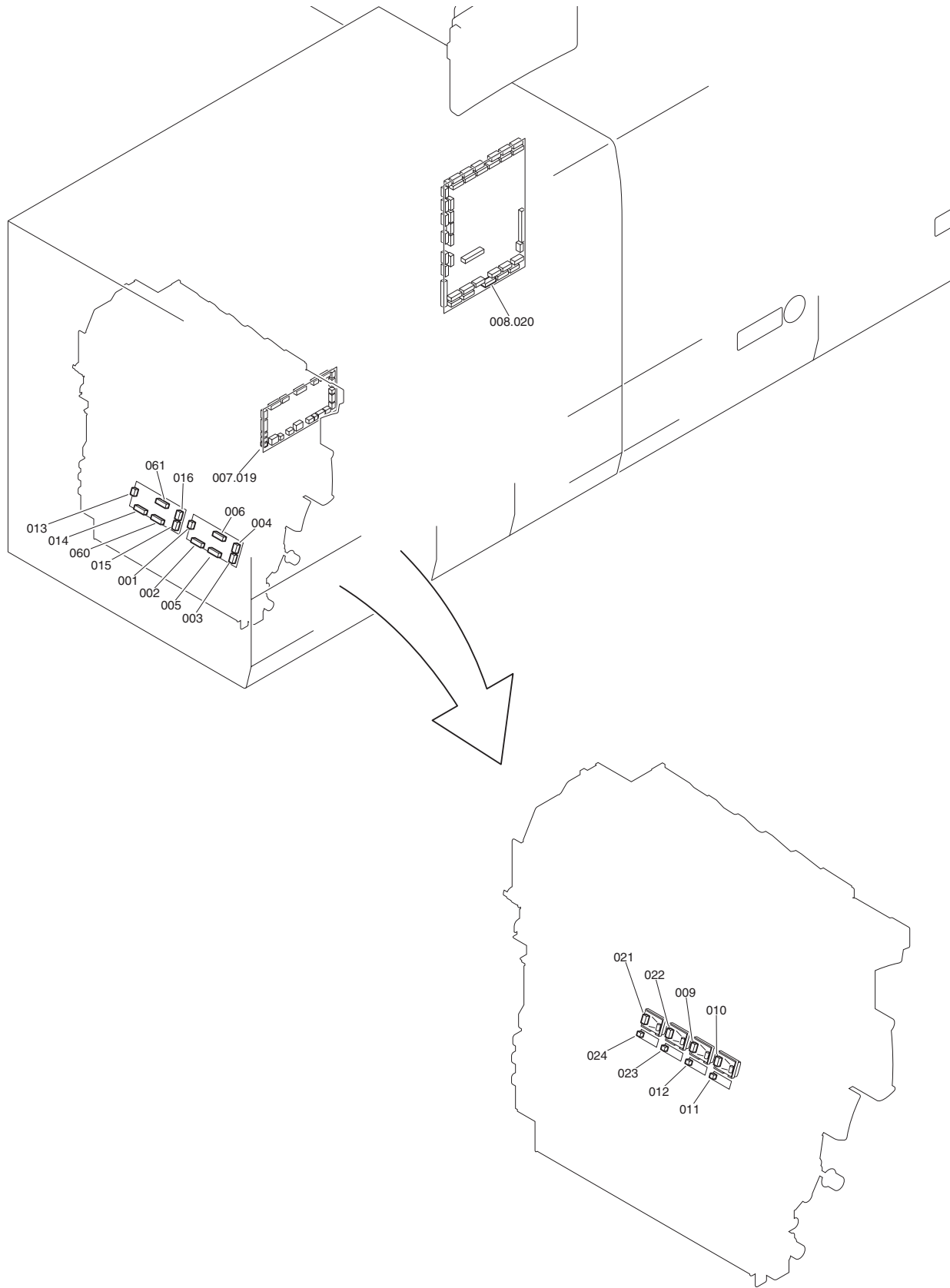
No.	Electric symbol	Electric parts name	J No.	Relay connector			J No.	No.	Electric symbol	Electric parts name	
020	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB	J4101	J7167	J7742		J5809	096	FM362	Merger guide rear fan	
020	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB	J4101	J7168			J7741	-	-	Short connector	
021	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB	J4102				J5810	098	FM351	Fixing duplexing driver PCB left cooling fan	
021	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB	J4102				J5811	099	FM352	Fixing duplexing driver PCB right cooling fan	
022	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB	J4103				J5491	100	FM329	Station to station interval cooling fan 9	
022	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB	J4103				J5492	101	FM330	Station to station interval cooling fan 10	
022	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB	J4103				J5800	102	FM353	Reader cooling fan	
022	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB	J4103				J9011	-	-	Short connector	
023	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB	J4104				J5475	104	FM310	Primary sub station power unit cooling fan	
023	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB	J4104	J7184			J5455	105	FM312	Primary fixing heat exhaust fan	
023	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB	J4104				J5450	106	FM313	Primary fixing inside delivery cooling fan	
023	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB	J4104	J7184			J5801	107	FM354	Main station upper delivery fan	
023	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB	J4104	J7184	J7183		J5802	108	FM355	Main station lower delivery fan	
024	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB	J4105				J5499	109	FM311	Secondary sub station power unit cooling fan	
024	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB	J4105				J5456	110	FM314	Secondary fixing heat exhaust fan	
024	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB	J4105				J5451	111	FM315	Secondary fixing inside delivery cooling fan	
025	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB	J4106	J7460	J7498	J7450	J5803	112	FM357	Tandem guide upper cooling fan	
025	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB	J4106	J7460	J7498		J5804	113	FM358	Tandem guide lower cooling fan	
025	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB	J4106	J7460	J7499	J7449	J5805	114	FM359	Bypass guide front cooling fan	
025	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB	J4106	J7460	J7499	J7449	J5806	115	FM360	Bypass guide rear cooling fan	
026	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB	J4110	J7471			J5630	116	SW300	Waste toner delivery lock detection switch	
027 028 029 030	UN311 UN311 UN311 UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB Duplexing feed driver PCB Duplexing feed driver PCB Duplexing feed driver PCB	J4250 J4251 J4252 J4253	J7525	J7492	J7466		J7716	117	M309	Fixing flapper motor
					J7492	J7466		J7717	118	M310	Tandem feed motor
					J7470	J7490		J7718	119	M311	Bypass feed motor
					J7494	J7457		J7714	120	M327	Duplexing feed motor 6
					J7493	J7456	J5297	J7709	121	M328	Duplexing feed motor 4
					J7494	J7457		J7715	122	M329	Duplexing feed motor 7
031 032 033 034	UN311 UN311 UN311 UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB Duplexing feed driver PCB Duplexing feed driver PCB Duplexing feed driver PCB	J4254 J4255 J4256 J4257	J7526	J7467	J7468		J7719	124	M312	Merger path feed motor
					J7529	J5303		J7790	125	M318	Delivery motor
					J7453	J5299		J7711	126	M325	Duplexing decurler advancement adjusting motor
					J7453	J7455	J5294	J7712	127	M331	Duplexing feed motor 8
					J7453	J7455	J5332	J7735	128	M332	Duplexing decurler driving motor
					J7454	J5333		J7736	129	M333	Bypass decurler disengage/engage motor
					J7451	J7468		J7737	130	M334	Bypass decurler driving motor

16.4.8.19 Reverse/External Delivery Unit

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000



F-16-134



F-16-135

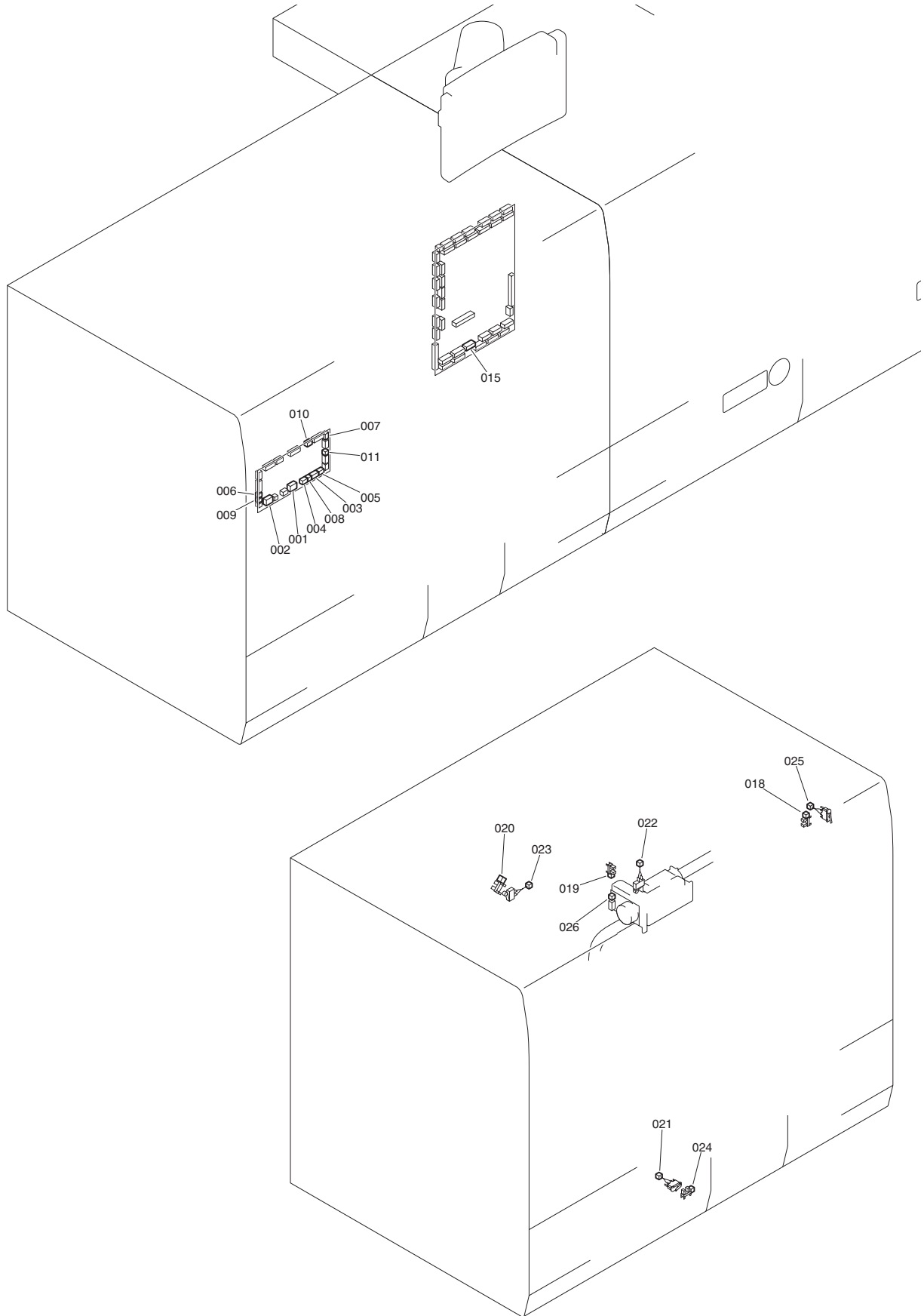
T-16-82

No.	Electric symbol	Electric parts name	J No.	Relay connector			J No.	No.	Electric symbol	Electric parts name
001	UN308	Color sensor control PCB 1	J3501F	J7562	J7019	J7761	J4230	007	UN301	Sub station power connecting PCB
002	UN308	Color sensor control PCB 1	J3502F	J7019	J7754		J1076	008	UN124	DC controller PCB 1-2
003	UN308	Color sensor control PCB 1	J3503F				J58	009	UN313	Color sensor 2
004	UN308	Color sensor control PCB 1	J3504F				J77	010	UN312	Color sensor 1
005	UN308	Color sensor control PCB 1	J3505F	J3510F/ J3510D			J3510L	011	UN330	Color sensor ROM PCB (Y)
006	UN308	Color sensor control PCB 1	J3506F	J3510F/ J3510D			J3510L	012	UN331	Color sensor ROM PCB (M)
013	UN309	Color sensor control PCB 2	J3501R	J7562	J7019	J7761	J4230	019	UN301	Sub station power connecting PCB
014	UN309	Color sensor control PCB 2	J3502R	J7019	J7754		J1076	020	UN124	DC controller PCB 1-2
015	UN309	Color sensor control PCB 2	J3503R				J81	021	UN315	Color sensor 4
016	UN309	Color sensor control PCB 2	J3504R				J78	022	UN314	Color sensor 3
017	UN309	Color sensor control PCB 2	J3505R	J3510R/ J3510D			J3510L	023	UN332	Color sensor ROM PCB (C)
018	UN309	Color sensor control PCB 2	J3506R	J3510R/ J3510D			J3510L	024	UN333	Color sensor ROM PCB (Bk)
025	UN310	Reverse/external delivery driver PCB	J4100	J7031	J7559		J4222	039	UN301	Sub station power connecting PCB
026	UN310	Reverse/external delivery driver PCB	J4101	J7030	J7558		J4222	039	UN301	Sub station power connecting PCB
027	UN310	Reverse/external delivery driver PCB	J4110	J7031			J4090	040	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB
028	UN310	Reverse/external delivery driver PCB	J4111	J7030			J4091	041	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB
029	UN310	Reverse/external delivery driver PCB	J4120	J5308			J7733	042	M315	Delivery decurler advancement adjusting motor 1
029	UN310	Reverse/external delivery driver PCB	J4120	J5309			J7734	043	M316	Delivery decurler advancement adjusting motor 2
030	UN310	Reverse/external delivery driver PCB	J4121	J7561	J5302		J7729	044	M319	Delivery reverse flapper motor
030	UN310	Reverse/external delivery driver PCB	J4121	J7561	J5304		J7730	045	M320	Delivery reverse motor
031	UN310	Reverse/external delivery driver PCB	J4122	J5305			J7731	046	M321	Duplexing delivery motor
031	UN310	Reverse/external delivery driver PCB	J4122	J5306			J7732	047	M322	Duplexing post-reverse motor
032	UN310	Reverse/external delivery driver PCB	J4123	J5300			J7727	048	M323	Pre-delivery feed motor 1
032	UN310	Reverse/external delivery driver PCB	J4123				J7728	049	M324	Pre-delivery feed motor 2
033	UN310	Reverse/external delivery driver PCB	J4124	J5307			J7743	050	M317	Delivery decurler motor
034	UN310	Reverse/external delivery driver PCB	J4125	J7555			J5093	051	PS335	Delivery reverse sensor 1
034	UN310	Reverse/external delivery driver PCB	J4125	J7556			J5094	052	PS336	Delivery reverse sensor 2
034	UN310	Reverse/external delivery driver PCB	J4125	J7560			J5089	053	PS337	Delivery sensor 1
034	UN310	Reverse/external delivery driver PCB	J4125	J7560			J5090	054	PS338	Delivery sensor 2
034	UN310	Reverse/external delivery driver PCB	J4125	J7560			J5091	055	PS339	Delivery sensor 3
034	UN310	Reverse/external delivery driver PCB	J4125	J7556			J5095	056	PS340	Duplexing reverse sensor
034	UN310	Reverse/external delivery driver PCB	J4125	J7557			J5096	057	PS341	Duplexing reverse rear sensor
034	UN310	Reverse/external delivery driver PCB	J4125	J7560			J5167	058	PS360	Delivery upper guide open/close sensor
034	UN310	Reverse/external delivery driver PCB	J4125	J7563			J5168	059	PS361	Reverse guide open/close sensor
034	UN310	Reverse/external delivery driver PCB	J4125	J7554			J5169	060	PS380	Color sensor HP sensor
035	UN310	Reverse/external delivery driver PCB	J4126				J5087	061	PS332	Delivery decurler HP sensor 1
035	UN310	Reverse/external delivery driver PCB	J4126				J5088	062	PS333	Delivery decurler HP sensor 2
035	UN310	Reverse/external delivery driver PCB	J4126	J7553	J7564		J5086	063	PS334	Delivery reverse flapper HP sensor
035	UN310	Reverse/external delivery driver PCB	J4126	J7553			J5092	064	PS342	Delivery reverse front sensor

No.	Electric symbol	Electric parts name	J No.	Relay connector			J No.	No.	Electric symbol	Electric parts name
036	UN310	Reverse/external delivery driver PCB	J4127				J5576	065	SL304	Color sensor roller solenoid
037	UN310	Reverse/external delivery driver PCB	J4128				J5513	066	FM336	External delivery driver PCB cooling fan
038	UN310	Reverse/external delivery driver PCB	J4130				J5497	067	FM350	Delivery decurler cooling fan

16.4.8.20 Sub Station and Others

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

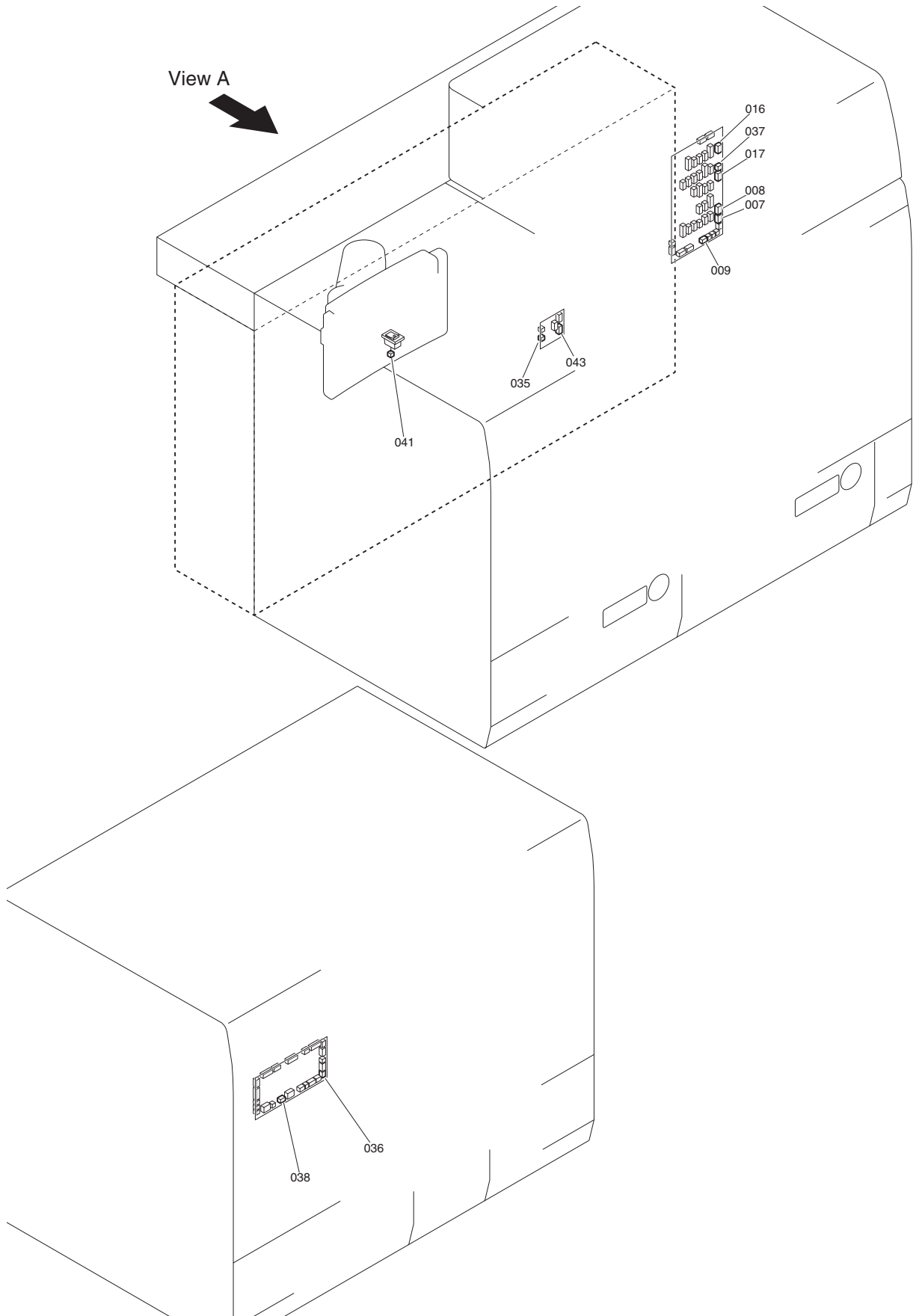


F-16-136

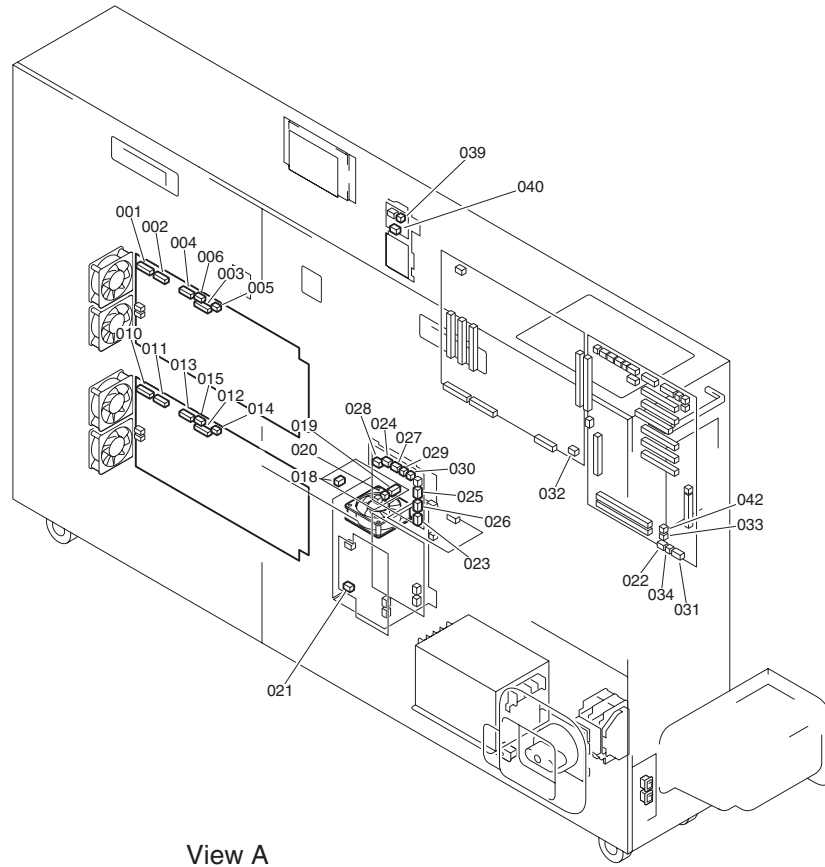
No.	Electric symbol	Electric parts name	J No.	Relay connector		J No.	No.	Electric symbol	Electric parts name
001	UN301	Sub station power connecting PCB	J4200	J30	J4760	-	-	UN300	24V power supply 4
001	UN301	Sub station power connecting PCB	J4200	J30	J4761	-	-	UN300	24V power supply 4
002	UN301	Sub station power connecting PCB	J4201	J33	J4762	-	-	UN300	24V power supply 4
002	UN301	Sub station power connecting PCB	J4201	J33	J4763	-	-	UN300	24V power supply 4
003	UN301	Sub station power connecting PCB	J4210	J7895		J1002	015	UN124	DC controller PCB 1-2
004	UN301	Sub station power connecting PCB	J4211	J4764		-	-	UN300	24V power supply 4
004	UN301	Sub station power connecting PCB	J4211	J4765		-	-	UN300	24V power supply 4
005	UN301	Sub station power connecting PCB	J4213	J7850	J7934	J5143	018	PS330	Sub station front right door open/close sensor
005	UN301	Sub station power connecting PCB	J4213	J7893		J5193	019	PS369	Primary fixing lever sensor
005	UN301	Sub station power connecting PCB	J4213	J7894		J5194	020	PS370	Secondary fixing lever sensor
006	UN301	Sub station power connecting PCB	J4214	J7853	J7937	J5644	021	SW301	Sub station front left door switch
007	UN301	Sub station power connecting PCB	J4215			J7891	022	SW303	Primary fixing lever switch
007	UN301	Sub station power connecting PCB	J4215			J7892	023	SW304	Secondary fixing lever switch
008	UN301	Sub station power connecting PCB	J4216	J7935	J7936	J5144	024	PS331	Sub station front left door open/close sensor
009	UN301	Sub station power connecting PCB	J4217	J7932	J7852	J5639	025	SW302	Sub station front right door switch
010	UN301	Sub station power connecting PCB	J4226			J5139P	026	M314	Waste toner feed motor

16.4.8.21 Power Unit Station

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000



F-16-137



View A

F-16-138

T-16-84

No.	Electric symbol	Electric parts name	J No.	Relay connector				J No.	No.	Electric symbol	Electric parts name
001	UN500	24V power supply 1	J4700	J12	J7886			J1800	007	UN102	Main station power supply connect PCB
002	UN500	24V power supply 1	J4701	J12	J7886			J1800	007	UN102	Main station power supply connect PCB
003	UN500	24V power supply 1	J4702	J15	J7886			J1801	008	UN102	Main station power supply connect PCB
004	UN500	24V power supply 1	J4703	J15	J7886			J1801	008	UN102	Main station power supply connect PCB
005	UN500	24V power supply 1	PN4	J4704	J7868			J1811	009	UN102	Main station power supply connect PCB
006	UN500	24V power supply 1	PN5	J4705	J7868			J1811	009	UN102	Main station power supply connect PCB
010	UN501	24V power supply 1	J4720	J18	J7875			J1802	016	UN102	Main station power supply connect PCB
011	UN501	24V power supply 1	J4721	J18	J7875			J1802	016	UN102	Main station power supply connect PCB
012	UN501	24V power supply 1	J4722	J21	J7875			J1803	017	UN102	Main station power supply connect PCB
013	UN501	24V power supply 1	J4723	J21	J7876			J1803	017	UN102	Main station power supply connect PCB
014	UN501	24V power supply 1	PN4	J4724	J7868			J1811	009	UN102	Main station power supply connect PCB
015	UN501	24V power supply 1	PN5	J4725	J7868			J1811	009	UN102	Main station power supply connect PCB
018	UN503	3.3V all-night power supply PCB	J681					J2	021	UN507	13V non-all-night power supply PCB
019	UN503	3.3V all-night power supply PCB	J691	J7171				J9100 (J1005)	022	-	Main controller PCB (MAIN-M)
020	UN503	3.3V all-night power supply PCB	J692					J3	023	UN507	13V non-all-night power supply PCB
024	UN507	13V non-all-night power supply PCB	J9050 (J09)	J7169				J9102M (J1004M)	031	-	Main controller PCB (MAIN-M)
024	UN507	13V non-all-night power supply PCB	J9050 (J09)	J7170				J9102P (J1004P)	032	-	Main controller PCB (MAIN-P)
025	UN507	13V non-all-night power supply PCB	J9051 (J04)	J7173				J9103 (J1006)	033	-	Main controller PCB (MAIN-M)
026	UN507	13V non-all-night power supply PCB	J9052 (J10)	J7174				J9104 (J1035)	034	-	Main controller PCB (MAIN-M)
027	UN507	13V non-all-night power supply PCB	J9053 (J06)					J9106 (J01)	035	UN103	DC controller power supply PCB
028	UN507	13V non-all-night power supply PCB	J9054 (J08)	J7182	J7872	J7890		J4203	036	UN301	Sub station power connecting PCB
029	UN507	13V non-all-night power supply PCB	J9055 (J07)	J7930	J7870			J1806	037	UN102	Main station power supply connect PCB
030	UN507	13V non-all-night power supply PCB	J9056 (J05)	J7181	J7873	J7883		J4202	038	UN301	Sub station power connecting PCB
039	UN510	Shutdown PCB	J9134	J7172	J7190	J7187	J7189	J5620	041	SW108	Main power switch
040	UN510	Shutdown PCB	J9133	J7160				J9108 (J1045)	042	-	Main controller PCB (MAIN-M)
043	UN103	DC controller power supply PCB	J9107	J7169				J9102M	031	-	Main controller PCB (MAIN-M)

Contents

16.1 Making Initial Checks	16-1
16.1.1 Installation Environment	16-1
16.1.2 Checking of Paper	16-1
16.1.3 Checking of Paper Setting	16-1
16.1.4 Checking of the Durable Parts	16-1
16.1.5 Checking of the Periodically Replaced Parts	16-1
16.1.6 Checking of Each Unit/Checking Item of Each Function System	16-1
16.2 Test Print	16-2
16.2.1 Overview	16-2
16.2.2 Test Print TYPE	16-2
16.2.3 Selecting the Test Print TYPE	16-2
16.2.4 16-Gradation (TYPE=4).....	16-2
16.2.5 Full Area Half Tone (TYPE=5)	16-4
16.2.6 Grid (TYPE=6).....	16-4
16.2.7 MCYBk Horizontal Line (TYPE=10).....	16-5
16.2.8 64-Gradation (TYPE=12).....	16-5
16.2.9 Full Color 16-gradation (TYPE=14).....	16-5
16.3 Troubleshooting	16-6
16.3.1 Image Faults	16-6
16.3.1.1 Light Image / Weak Density	16-6
16.3.1.1.1 Uneven density occurs in sub scanning direction at high-density areas of output images: Many originals with low image ratio are printed continuously.....	16-6
16.3.1.2 Uneven Density	16-7
16.3.1.2.1 Faulty image (uneven fogged image/strip at rear side) occurs upon installation.....	16-7
16.3.1.2.2 Magenta Spots	16-8
16.3.1.2.3 3.7mm Pitch Spots	16-9
16.3.1.2.4 2mm Pitch Spots	16-10
16.3.1.2.5 Uneven fogged image/strip at the rear	16-12
16.3.1.3 Partially Blank/Streaked	16-14
16.3.1.3.1 White spots appear at 68mm intervals: Secondary transfer internal roller is soiled.....	16-14
16.3.1.3.2 Light/uneven image due to faulty toner coat	16-15
16.3.1.4 Smudged/Streaked	16-19
16.3.1.4.1 2mm-wide banding appears at 125 mm intervals at 1st job in morning after leaving this machine for longtime.....	16-19
16.3.1.4.2 When using coated paper, shiny lines (1mm to 1.5mm-wide) appear in main scanning direction at fixing roller intervals	16-19
16.3.1.4.3 Glossy Lines.....	16-20
16.3.1.4.4 Trace of bypass decurler belt	16-20
16.3.1.4.5 Dirt of pin hole (ring mark).....	16-21
16.3.1.4.6 Trace of delivery reversing roller.....	16-22
16.3.1.4.7 Image front edge foggy image (When using the 13X19 inch paper).....	16-23
16.3.1.4.8 Soiled image due to toner drop from developing assembly.....	16-24
16.3.1.4.9 Wax mark in tandem feeding.....	16-30
16.3.2 Malfunction	16-33
16.3.2.1 Malfunction/Faulty Detection	16-33
16.3.2.1.1 Error indication "NG!" appears when executing developer supply mode (SPLY/STIR) during installation.....	16-33
16.3.2.1.2 E018-0X11 error displayed due to faulty operation of the drum patch sensor shutter	16-34
16.3.3 Jam (Main Unit)	16-36
16.3.3.1 0115 Jam Code: Primary fixing inner delivery sensor lever causes malfunction when A4/LTR-size paper is used	16-36
16.3.3.2 011C Jam Code occurs because delivery reverse flapper does not open at duplex job or facedown delivery: Torsion spring is mounted in wrong position.....	16-37

16.3.4 Error Code.....	16-38
16.3.4.1 E077-0001 is displayed during initial rotation: Lever (B-E1) on Regist. Paper Feeder Assembly is not set properly.....	16-38
16.3.4.2 E078-0001: ITB cleaner motor (M108) is faulty.....	16-38
16.3.4.3 E578/error of paper folding position for saddle stitching: This machine stapled more than specified number of sheets at one time.....	16-38
16.3.4.4 E732-8888/E490-0001 occurs upon installation (Color Image Reader-H1).....	16-39
16.3.4.5 E750-0002 occurs when relocating this machine: Connector of drawer connector mount on backside of main station.....	16-39
16.3.5 Specifications-Related FAQ.....	16-40
16.3.5.1 FAQ on Main Unit Specifications.....	16-40
16.3.5.1.1 When uploading DC Controller data with SST, "SramDCON" does not appear on SST screen.....	16-40
16.3.5.1.2 Specifications for staple capacity of Finisher-AB1/AB2.....	16-40
16.3.5.1.3 Description on fixing roller refresh operation and its execution timing.....	16-40
16.4 Outline of Electrical Components.....	16-40
16.4.1 Clutch/Solenoid.....	16-40
16.4.1.1 Main Station.....	16-40
16.4.1.2 Sub Station.....	16-42
16.4.2 Motor.....	16-43
16.4.2.1 Main Station(1/6).....	16-43
16.4.2.2 Main Station(2/6).....	16-47
16.4.2.3 Main Station(3/6).....	16-49
16.4.2.4 Main Station(4/6).....	16-51
16.4.2.5 Main Station(5/6).....	16-53
16.4.2.6 Main Station(6/6).....	16-54
16.4.2.7 Sub Station(1/5).....	16-56
16.4.2.8 Sub Station(2/5).....	16-57
16.4.2.9 Sub Station(3/5).....	16-58
16.4.2.10 Sub Station(4/5).....	16-59
16.4.2.11 Sub Station(5/5).....	16-60
16.4.3 Fan.....	16-61
16.4.3.1 Main Station(1/3).....	16-61
16.4.3.2 Main Station(2/3).....	16-63
16.4.3.3 Main Station(3/3).....	16-65
16.4.3.4 Sub Station (1/2).....	16-67
16.4.3.5 Sub Station(2/2).....	16-70
16.4.3.6 Power Unit Station.....	16-72
16.4.4 Sensor.....	16-73
16.4.4.1 Main Station(1/5).....	16-73
16.4.4.2 Main Station(2/5).....	16-77
16.4.4.3 Main Station(3/5).....	16-79
16.4.4.4 Main Station(4/5).....	16-81
16.4.4.5 Main Station(5/5).....	16-83
16.4.4.6 Sub Station(1/4).....	16-85
16.4.4.7 Sub Station(2/4).....	16-86
16.4.4.8 Sub Station(3/4).....	16-88
16.4.4.9 Sub Station(4/4).....	16-89
16.4.5 Switch.....	16-91
16.4.5.1 Main Station(1/2).....	16-91
16.4.5.2 Main Station(2/2).....	16-93
16.4.5.3 Sub Station.....	16-94
16.4.5.4 Power Unit Station.....	16-95
16.4.6 Lamps, Heaters, and Others.....	16-96
16.4.6.1 Main Station(1/2).....	16-96
16.4.6.2 Main Station(2/2).....	16-98
16.4.6.3 Sub Station.....	16-99
16.4.6.4 Power Unit Station.....	16-101
16.4.7 PCBs.....	16-102
16.4.7.1 Main Station(1/4).....	16-102
16.4.7.2 Main Station(2/4).....	16-104
16.4.7.3 Main Station(3/4).....	16-106
16.4.7.4 Main Station(4/4).....	16-108
16.4.7.5 Sub Station(1/2).....	16-110
16.4.7.6 Sub Station(2/2).....	16-111

16.4.7.7 Power Unit Station(1/2)	16-112
16.4.7.8 Power Unit Station(2/2)	16-113
16.4.8 Connectors	16-114
16.4.8.1 Laser Unit	16-114
16.4.8.2 Hopper Unit	16-117
16.4.8.3 Process Unit (1/3)	16-119
16.4.8.4 Process Unit (2/3)	16-121
16.4.8.5 Process Unit (3/3)	16-123
16.4.8.6 Intermediate Transfer Unit	16-126
16.4.8.7 Secondary Transfer Unit	16-130
16.4.8.8 Registration Unit	16-134
16.4.8.9 Vertical Path Unit	16-136
16.4.8.10 Right Deck Unit	16-139
16.4.8.11 Left Deck Unit	16-142
16.4.8.12 Environment Heater Unit	16-145
16.4.8.13 Main Station and Others	16-147
16.4.8.14 Primary Fixing Unit	16-150
16.4.8.15 Secondary Fixing Unit	16-152
16.4.8.16 Primary Fixing Heater Unit	16-154
16.4.8.17 Secondary Fixing Heater Unit	16-156
16.4.8.18 Fixing/Duplexing Feed Unit	16-158
16.4.8.19 Reverse/External Delivery Unit	16-164
16.4.8.20 Sub Station and Others	16-168
16.4.8.21 Power Unit Station	16-170

16.1 Making Initial Checks

16.1.1 Installation Environment

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- Be sure to check that the value of power supply voltage is maintained $\pm 10\%$ of the specified voltage (do not disconnect the plug even during the nighttime).
- Be sure to avoid areas that are: high temperature/humidity (around water tap, water heater, and humidifying device), cool temperature, near the fire, or dusty.
 - Temperature gradient must be 10 deg C/H or less to especially avoid faulty state.
 - Guaranteed environment for the machine: temperature: 20 to 27 deg C, humidity: 30 to 70%
 - Guaranteed environment for the media: temperature: 20 to 27 deg C, humidity: 30 to 60%
- Be sure to avoid areas subject to evaporation of ammonia gas.
- Be sure to avoid areas subject to exposure to direct sunlight. Instruct to attach curtains if there is no choice.
- Be sure to check the machine is installed in a place subject to sufficient ventilation, and also the machine can maintain its level.
- Be sure to check that the machine's power plug is connected to the outlet.

16.1.2 Checking of Paper

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- Check if Canon-recommended paper is used.
- Check if the paper is moistened. Try to make prints by setting paper taken out from a new package.

16.1.3 Checking of Paper Setting

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- Check if the specified volume of paper is set properly in the deck.

16.1.4 Checking of the Durable Parts

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

Check the list of expected life of durable parts, and replace parts that reach the stated life.

16.1.5 Checking of the Periodically Replaced Parts

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

According to the list for periodically service/the table of periodically replaced parts, replace parts that reach the stated life counts.

16.1.6 Checking of Each Unit/Checking Item of Each Function System

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

1. Reader (option)

- Check if there is no scar, soil or foreign particle in the scanning system (mirror/ white plate/ copyboard glass/ reflector).
- Check if the mirror mount moves smoothly/there is no soil on the rail.
- Check if there is no flickering of scanning lamp.
- Check if the scanning system wire is set properly.
- Check if there is no condensation in the scanning system.

2. Process

- Check if there is toner in the toner container.
- Check if the process unit is reliably attached.
- Check if there is no scar or soil on the photosensitive drum.
- Check if drum patch sensor is not soiled.

3. Transfer

- Check if there is no foreign particle on the secondary transfer unit.
- Check if there is no wear, scar, soil and deformation on the ITB/secondary transfer roller.
- Check if there is no break, flip, and deformation of the blade or spray of toner of the ITB cleaning unit.

4. Fixing

- Check if there is no wear, scar, soil and deformation of the fixing belt/pressure roller.
- Check if the fixing heater activates after turning on the power.
- Check if the fixing thermistor is not open circuit.
- Check if the thermal switch is conductive.

5. Paper Pickup/Feeding

- Check if no foreign particle (such as scrap of paper) is remained.
- Check if there is no paper lint accumulating on the pickup belt and feed roller. Also if there is no wear, scar, soil or deformation of the pickup/feed/separation roller.
- Check if there is no wear, scar, soil and deformation of pre-registration roller/registration/cross feed roller.
- Check if there is no wear, scar, soil or deformation of the feeder guide.
- Check if there is any fault of fold-down of leading edge/curl/ruffling/moisture absorption of paper.
- Check if the performance improves when using Canon-recommended paper/transparency.

6. Machine

- Check if the load of the drive system is not heavy.
- Check if there is no wear or chip of the gear.

7. Deck (Cassette)

- Check if: the deck is attached properly; the paper size and type is set correctly; the same symptom does not occur when replacing the deck that performs normal

- operation.
- Check if: the move of the lifter is smooth; there is no deformation.
- Check if the side guide plate/rear guide plate of the deck is attached properly.
- Check if the switch of the heater is ON (in case the heater is attached).

8. General

- Are both of the 2 power plugs plugged in completely?
- Is the specified AC voltage supplied to the power outlet?
- Are the sensors / clutches / motors / solenoids working properly? Is there any contact failure of connectors?
(Confirm power supplies and signal routes on the synthetic circuit diagram)
- Is the electric leakage breaker / circuit breaker working?
- Are there any pinched wires / loose screws?
- Are all external covers attached?
- Are the main power switch / control panel power switch ON?
- Are the power cable / signal cable wirings to each accessory correct?
- Is the cover switch operation normal?
- Is there any fuse blowout on the PCB assemblies?
- Are there any incorrect or misunderstood operations on the user side?

16.2 Test Print

16.2.1 Overview

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

This machine has 6 test print types as indicated below, and each test print can detect image fault. The data for these test prints is prepared by the main controller. In the case that there is no fault appeared on the test print by normal output, it may be caused by PDL input side, or/and the reader side.

16.2.2 Test Print TYPE

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

T-16-1

TYPE NO.	description
0	normal print
1-3	-(for R&D)
4	16-gradation
5	full area half tone
6	grid
7-9	-(for R&D)
10	MCYBk horizontal stripes (sub scanning direction)
11	-(for R&D)
12	64-gradation
13	-(for R&D)
14	full color 16-gradation
15-100	-(for R&D)

16.2.3 Selecting the Test Print TYPE

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- 1) Set number of prints and paper size.
- 2) Select the followings in service mode:
COPIER > TEST > PG
- 3) Make the following selections:
COPIER > TEST > PG > TYPE
- 4) Enter TYPE number by the numeric keypad, and then press OK key.
- 5) Select the color in question (output by '1') in COLOR-Y/M/C/K.
- 6) Set density in DENS-Y/M/C/K (effective only for TYPE=5).
- 7) Press start key.

16.2.4 16-Gradation (TYPE=4)

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

This test print can mainly check gradation performance, image fogging, and white line.

a. Gradation

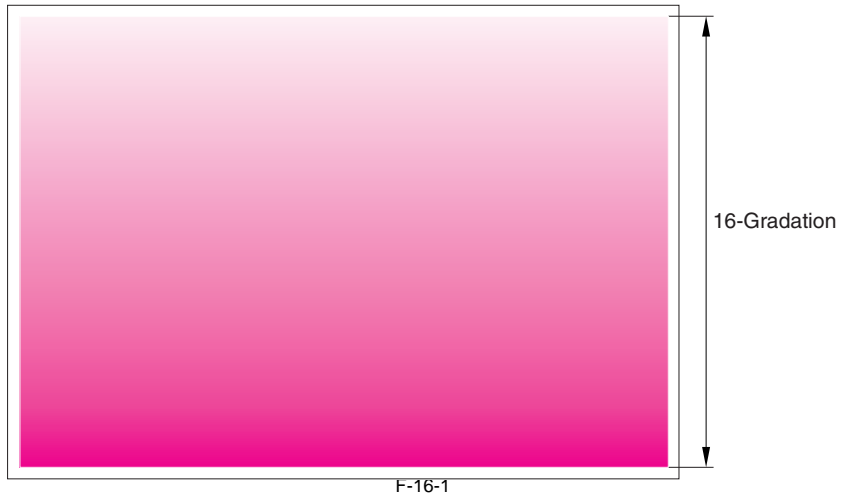
If there is no 16-step density gradation, it may be caused by fault of drum or laser scanning system.

b. Foggy image

If there is foggy image only at the white area as shown in the figure below, it may be caused by fault of drum or laser scanning system.

c. Vertical white line

If there is white line in the image, it may be caused by fault of developing system.



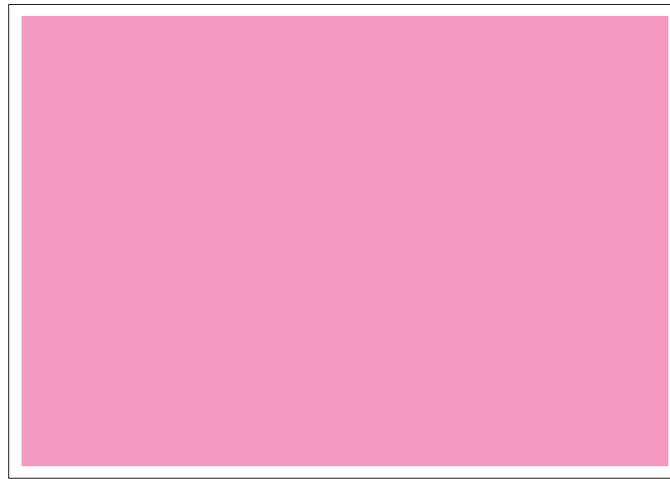
16.2.5 Full Area Half Tone (TYPE=5)

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

This test print can mainly check black line, white line, and Density unevenness at the rear/front.

MEMO:
(1) Output by every developing color is available by specifying the developing color COLOR-Y/M/C/K in the following service mode: COPIER>TEST>PG
(2) In the case of changing density of the test print, execute followings in service mode for density setting: TEST>PG>DENS-Y/M/C/K

- a. Black Line
If a black line occurs, suspect a scratch (approx. 264mm pitch) in the photosensitive drum or dirt on the primary charging assembly.
- b. White Line
If a white line occurs, suspect a fault in the Primary transfer roller (approx. 25 to 50mm pitch) , secondary transfer outside roller (approx. 75mm pitch), laser exposure system, or suspect dirt on the dust-blocking glass.
- c. Density unevenness at the rear/front
If there is density unevenness at the rear/front, suspect dirt on the dust-blocking glass, deterioration of the ITB, or suspect a fault in the developing cylinder (approx. 50mm pitch) .



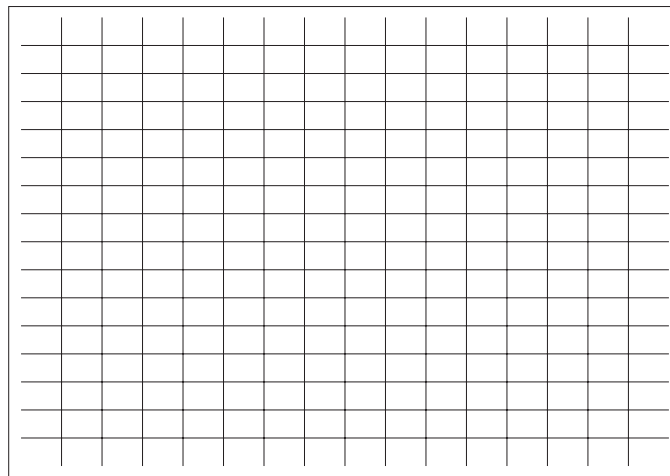
COLOR-M=1, COLOR-Y/C/K=0
F-16-2

16.2.6 Grid (TYPE=6)

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

This test print can mainly check color displacement, right angle accuracy and linearity.

- a. Color displacement
If there is color displacement, it may be caused by fault of each laser scanning system, transfer unit (intermediate transfer/secondary transfer) or photosensitive drum drive motor.
- b. Right angle accuracy and linearity
If there is fault of right angle accuracy or linearity, it may be caused by fault of laser scanning system, or defective shape of registration roller or the secondary transfer outer roller.



F-16-3

16.2.7 MCYBk Horizontal Line (TYPE=10)

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

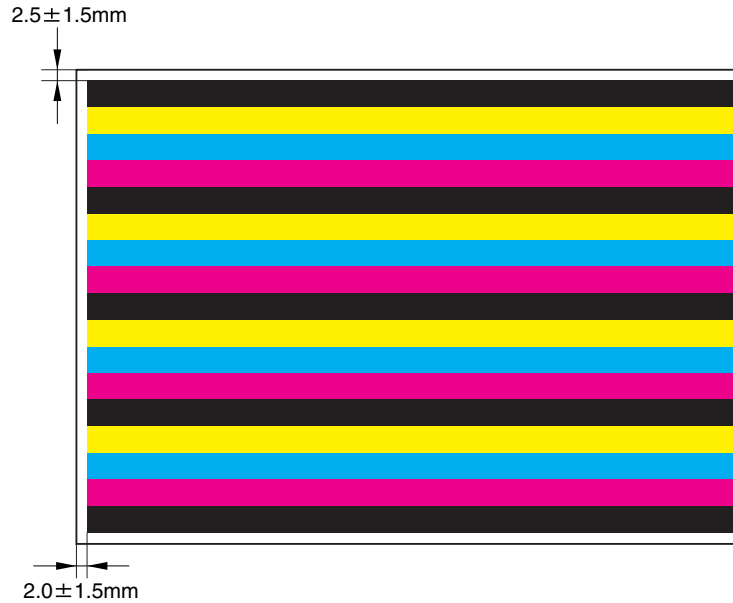
This test print can mainly check the dark area density of each color, balance among each color and white/black line.

a. Solid density of each color and balance among each color.

- Density is not extremely light.
- In the case of light density with a certain color, it may be caused by the developer of the color in question, or fault of primary transfer roller, laser scanning system or high voltage system.

b. White/black line

If there is white/black line with a certain color, it may be caused by fault of the drum of the color in question, or soiled laser light path.



F-16-4

16.2.8 64-Gradation (TYPE=12)

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

YMCBk 64 gradation test print can mainly check gradation performance of each color (YMCBk) at one time.



F-16-5

16.2.9 Full Color 16-gradation (TYPE=14)

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

Full color 16-gradation test print can mainly check gray balance, gradation performance of each color (YMCBk) and foggy image.

a. Gray balance

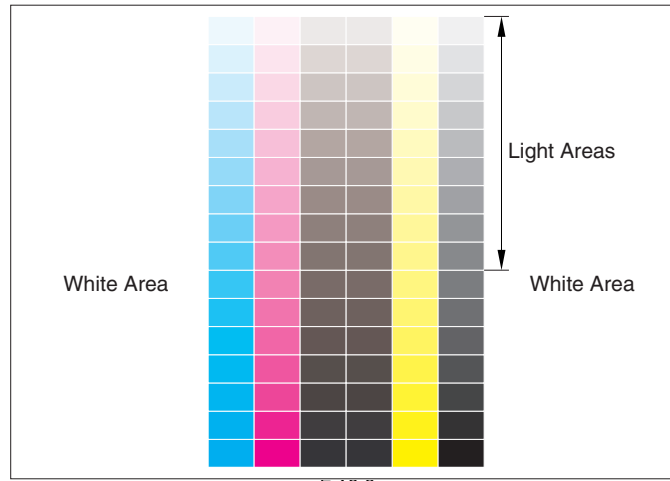
Check to see if the output comes with even density of each color at gray scale area.

b. Gradation performance

Check gradation performance and density difference of each color (YMCBk)

c. Foggy image

If there is foggy image at the white area, it may be caused by fault of developing system or photosensitive drum, or correction fault of laser scanning system.



16.3 Troubleshooting

16.3.1 Image Faults

16.3.1.1 Light Image / Weak Density

16.3.1.1.1 Uneven density occurs in sub scanning direction at high-density areas of output images: Many originals with low image ratio are printed continuously

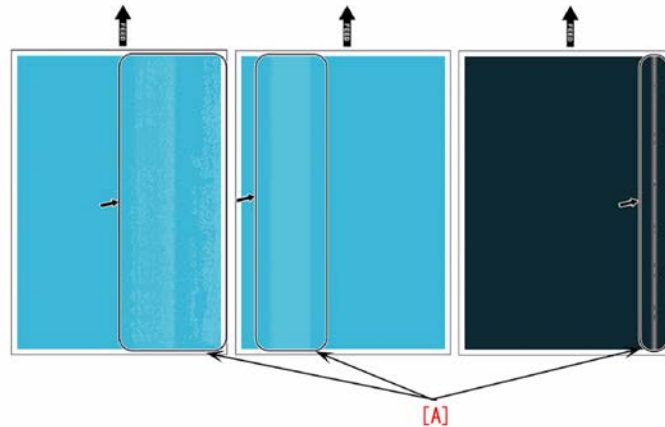
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

0018-1056

[Inspected by Canon Inc.]

Description

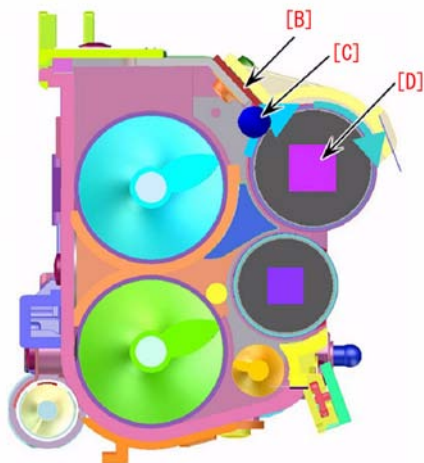
When a lot of originals with a low image ratio were printed continuously, uneven density occurred in the sub scanning direction at high-density areas of output images. In this inspection case, A4R-size originals were used.



F-16-7

Cause

Printing a lot of originals with a low image ratio caused a downturn in consumption of toner inside the developing assembly, causing toner clump [C] between the developing sleeve [D] and the blade [B]. This caused uneven toner coating on the sleeve.



F-16-8

Field Remedy

When the same symptom occurs, follow the procedure below.

1. In accordance with the description in "Measure for Uneven Density", improve uneven density occurring at the high-density areas.
2. In order to improve the amount of toner forcibly consumed and prevent toner clump from being created, perform the following:
 - Change the setting for the developing cylinder micro-rotation control
Service mode > COPIER > Option > BODY > SL-DRIVE > change the setting from '0' to '-1'.
 - Change the image ratio setting for the forced toner consumption sequence from 2% to 3%.
Service mode (Level2) > COPIER > Option > BODY > DEVL-VTH > change the setting from '2' to '3'.

16.3.1.2 Uneven Density**16.3.1.2.1 Faulty image (uneven fogged image/strip at rear side) occurs upon installation**

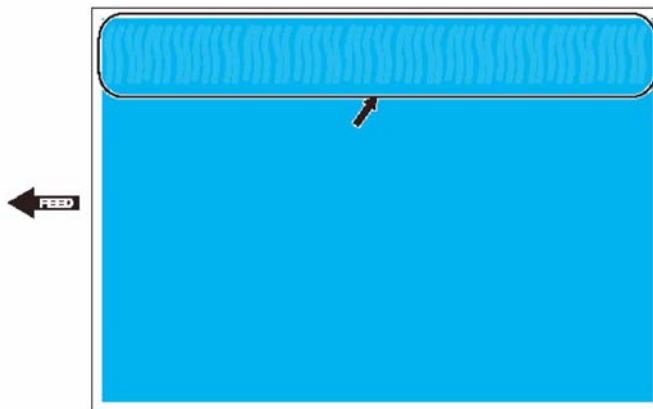
0018-1060

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

[Inspected by Canon Inc.]

Description

Since uneven fogged image occurred upon installation, the position of magnetic pole of developing cylinders was adjusted for solution.



F-16-9

Cause

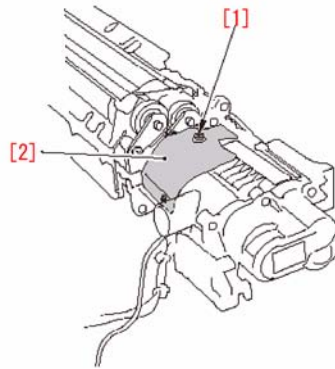
Inside a developing assembly, the magnetic pole of each developing cylinder (upper/lower) lost the positional balance. In addition, developer inside the assembly was collected in the rear side and stayed there.

Reference: The symptom is also likely to occur when starter is not stirred long enough upon installation (or at replacement of starter). When executing the following service mode (mode to rotate the developing assembly) for the purpose of fully stirring the supplied developer after supply of developer, be sure not to press the STOP key during operation. If the STOP key is not pressed, the mode will finish about 290 sec (5min) later.

- Service mode > COPIER > Function > INSTALL > SUPPLY-H-Y/M/C/K

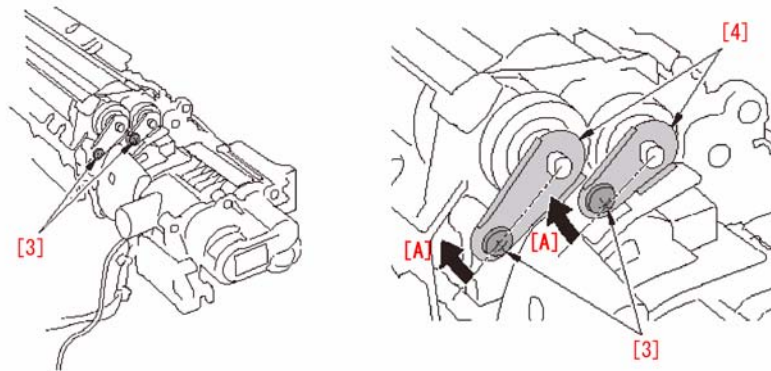
Field Remedy

1. Detach the developing assembly that caused the symptom.
2. Remove the 1 screw [1], and then remove the protection sheet [2].



F-16-10

3. Loosen the 2 screws [3]; then pressing each electrode positioning plate [4], turn them in the clockwise (the direction of the arrow [A]) by the distance equivalent to play, and tighten the 2 loosened screws [3] to fix the plates.



F-16-11

Note: Perform this step only on the developing assembly of the color causing the symptom. If this step is performed on the developing assembly of the color that is not causing the symptom, another fault may occur.

4. Affix the protection sheet that was removed in Step 2, and then return the developing assembly inside the machine; then make copies to check the quality of output images.

Note: Right after adjustment of the electrode positioning plate position, the developer inside the developing assembly may not shake down completely. Therefore, the symptom may occur. However, this will gradually be improved by generating outputs.

16.3.1.2.2 Magenta Spots

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

0016-6848

Cause

When developing the second and later color in single Magenta halftone during full-color printing, the carrier is sometimes stuck to the drum. This causes discharge during primary transfer for the second and later color, and the polarity of the Magenta toner on ITB becomes reversed. As a result, part of the Magenta toner on ITB is returned to the drum, sometimes causing spots on an image.

Measures in the field

Execute the following user mode and make an adjustment of gloss of paper.

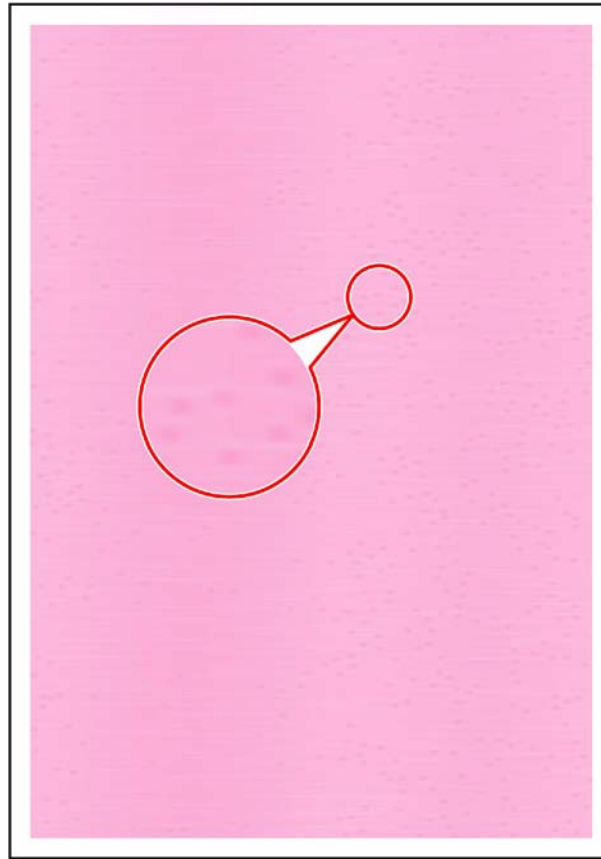
Select "Adjustment of gloss" from "User mode: Initial settings/registration > System management settings > Management of paper type".

When the value is set to + 1, gloss is increased.

When gloss is insufficient, increase the value to +2.

After changing the setting value, make sure that the problem on the image is eliminated using the CA-1 test chart or an image prepared by a user.

Image sample



F-16-12

16.3.1.2.3 3.7mm Pitch Spots

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

0016-7185

Symptom

Due to abrasion of the photosensitive drum cleaner drive gears or the like, 3.7mm banding image may occur.

Cause

Due to abrasion of the photosensitive drum drive gears, the gears do not engage well to cause vibration.

This results in uneven drum rotation and causes 3.7mm banding image.

This symptom also occurs due to soiled gears or contaminants.

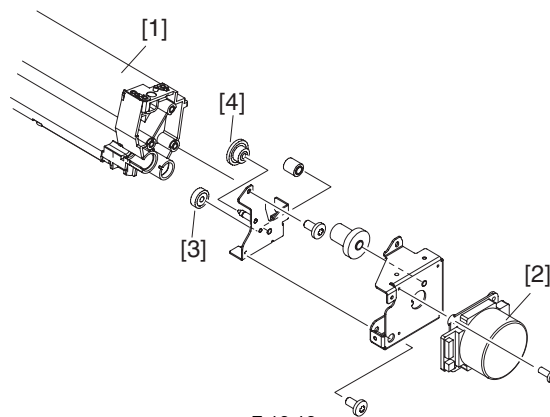
Measures in the field

Implement measures, following the procedure shown below.

1) Check the sliding condition of gears.

In a heavy sliding condition, there may be foreign objects on the shaft and inner circumference of two types of gears [3] and [4].

In this case, clean the shaft and inner circumference of two types of gears with lint-free paper containing alcohol.

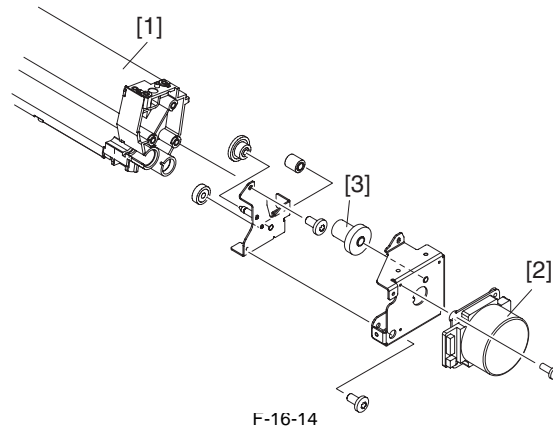


F-16-13

[1] Developing assembly

[2] Drum cleaner motor unit

2) If the problem is not eliminated after performing the foregoing procedure, replace the photosensitive drum cleaner drive gear [3].



F-16-14

- [1] Developing assembly
 - [2] Drum cleaner motor unit
- Image sample**



F-16-15

16.3.1.2.4 2mm Pitch Spots

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

0016-7184

Symptom

When starting a print job just after power-ON or long-term storage, 2mm banding image may occur.

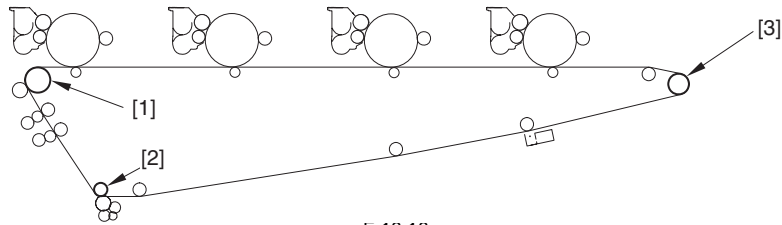
This symptom disappears after approximately 30 copies are made. However, if no measures are taken, this symptom again occurs at the timing mentioned above (when the power is turned on or printing is performed after recovery from the condition in which the machine was stored for a long time).

Cause

If the ITB drive roller is chipped off, chips are attached to the scraper on the side of ITB drive roller. This causes uneven ITB rotation, resulting in 2mm banding image. This symptom is prone to occur in the latter service life.

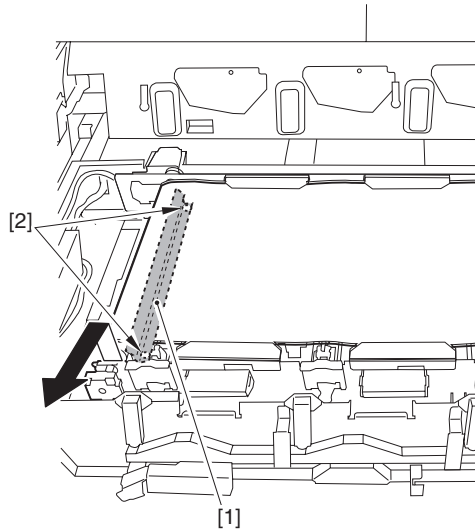
Measures in the field

After removing the ITB drive roller cleaning scraper [2] on the side of the ITB drive roller [1], clean the ITB drive roller [1]. The removed ITB drive roller cleaning scraper should not be reattached.



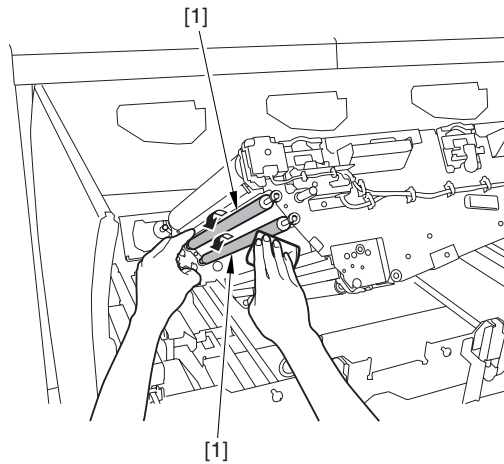
- [1] ITB drive roller
- [2] Secondary transfer inner roller
- [3] Tension roller

- 1) Remove the ITB (see the steps in "Removing Intermediate Transfer Belt").
- 2) Lift up the ITB from the back to remove the ITB drive roller cleaning scraper [1].
 - 1 screw [2]



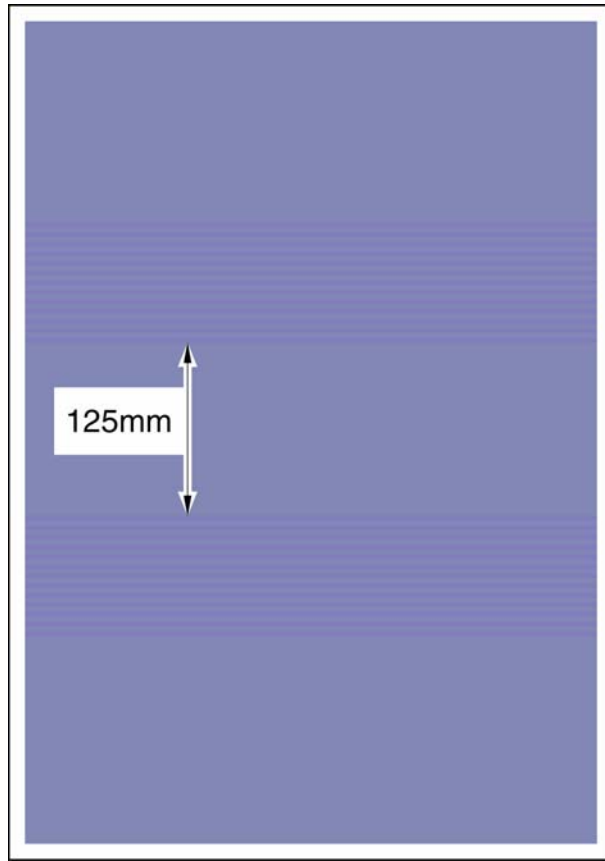
F-16-17

- 3) Rotate the ITB drive roller [1] by hand to clean the roller circumference with lint-free paper impregnated with alcohol.



F-16-18

- 4) Reattach the removed parts except the ITB drive roller cleaning scraper.
 - 5) Turn on the power.
 - 6) Execute the mandatory warm-up rotation mode (COPIER>FUNCTION>MISC-P>INTR-EX; Level 2).
 - 7) Execute the automatic color displacement correction control (COPIER>FUNCTION>MISC-P>AT-IMG-X).
- Image sample**



16.3.1.2.5 Uneven fogged image/strip at the rear

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

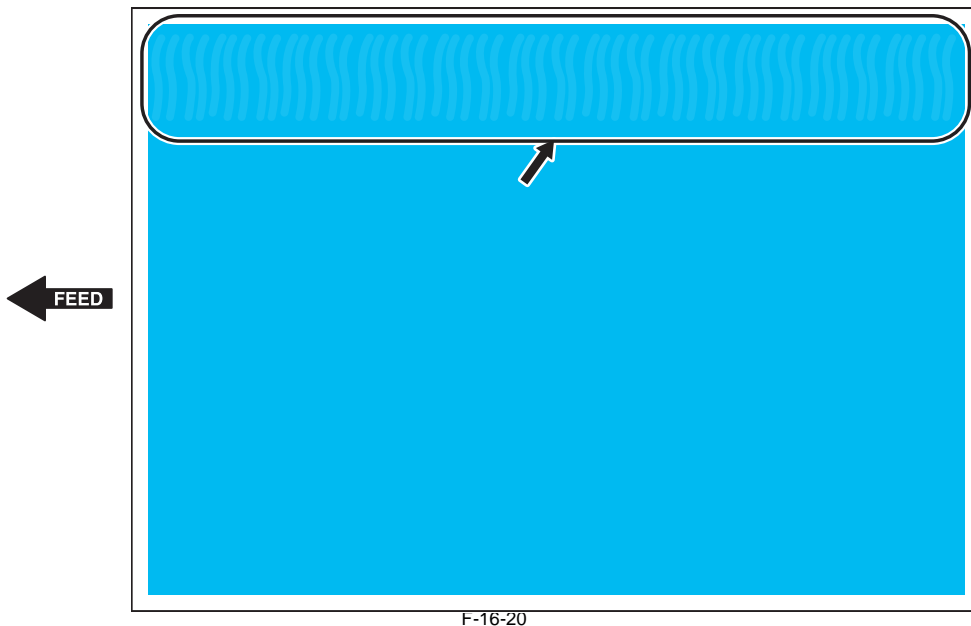
0017-6908

Description:

A measure against faulty image, 'uneven fogged image/strip at the rear of image' is described below.

<Symptom>

A faulty image, 'uneven fogged image/strip' occurs as shown below.



<Cause>

A faulty image, 'uneven fogged image/strip at the rear of image' may occur depending on the polarity cycle of the 2 cylinders (upper/lower) in the developing assembly and also on the state of developer at the time of installation.

<Factory remedy>

Adjust the polarity cycle by shifting the electrode positioning plate to the optimal position using a special jig.

Service Remedy:

Secure the electrode positioning plates by pushing and turning them clockwise to put them at the ideal positions to avoid faulty image (uneven fogged image/strip at the rear of image) (See the following for procedure).

Take note of the following points when making adjustment of position (polarity cycle) of electrode positioning plates.

T-16-2

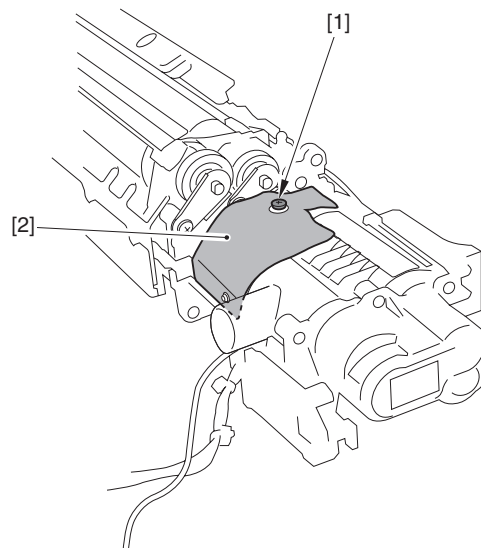
**Points to Note When Adjusting the Position (Polarity Cycle) of the Electrode Positioning Plate**

-Only the developing assembly that made a faulty image (uneven fogged image/strip at the rear of image) should be adjusted. Another type of failure may occur when making adjustment of the other developing assemblies that do not have this symptom.

-At the early phase after adjusting the position of the electrode positioning plate, the faulty image (uneven fogged image/strip at the rear of image) may still occur because the developer in the developing assembly is not stirred enough. At such cases, however, the incidence of faulty image (uneven fogged image/strip at the rear of image) is gradually reduced.

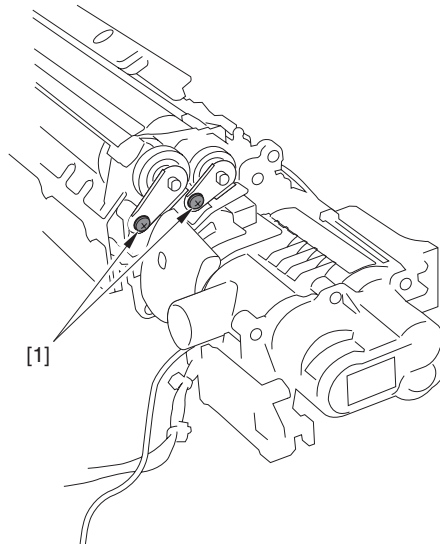
<Procedure>

- 1) Remove the developing assembly (refer to Service Manual)
- 2) Remove the screw [1] and protection seal [2].



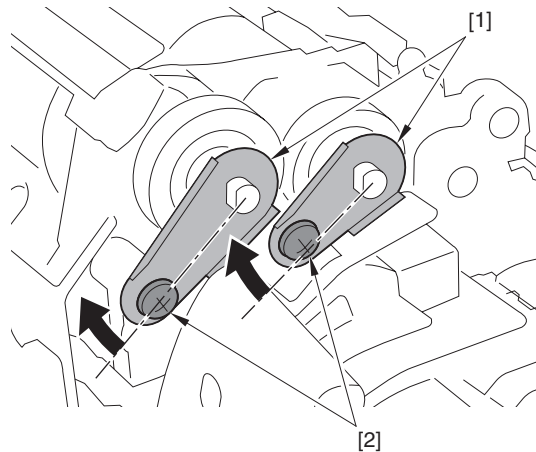
F-16-21

- 3) Loosen the 2 screws [1].



F-16-22

4) Secure the electrode positioning plates [1] with the 2 screws [2] while pushing them clockwise (Despite the slight change, the electrode positioning plates indeed move)



F-16-23

16.3.1.3 Partially Blank/Streaked

16.3.1.3.1 White spots appear at 68mm intervals: Secondary transfer internal roller is soiled

0017-9791

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

[Case in the field]

Description

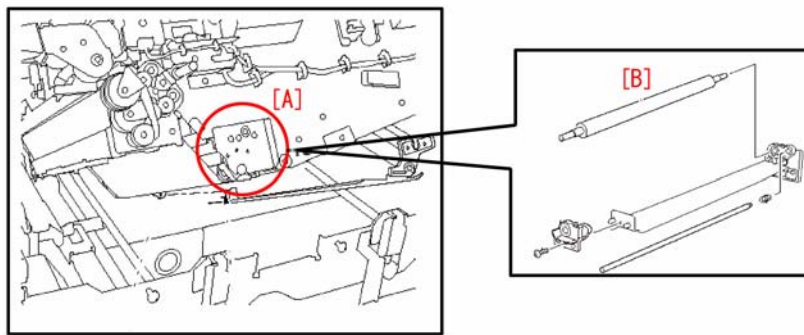
Because of a soiling on the secondary transfer internal roller, white spots appeared at 68mm intervals. When the same symptom occurs, perform the following field remedy.

Cause

A metal powder soiling existed on the surface of the secondary transfer internal roller.

Field Remedy

1. Taking care not to cause damage to the ITB belt, detach the secondary transfer internal roller unit [A], and then clean the secondary transfer internal roller [B] with lint-free paper moistened with alcohol.



F-16-24

2. Return the detached secondary transfer internal roller unit, and then make copies to check output images.
FC5-9252 Transfer Roller2

16.3.1.3.2 Light/uneven image due to faulty toner coat

0017-7634

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

Field Remedy

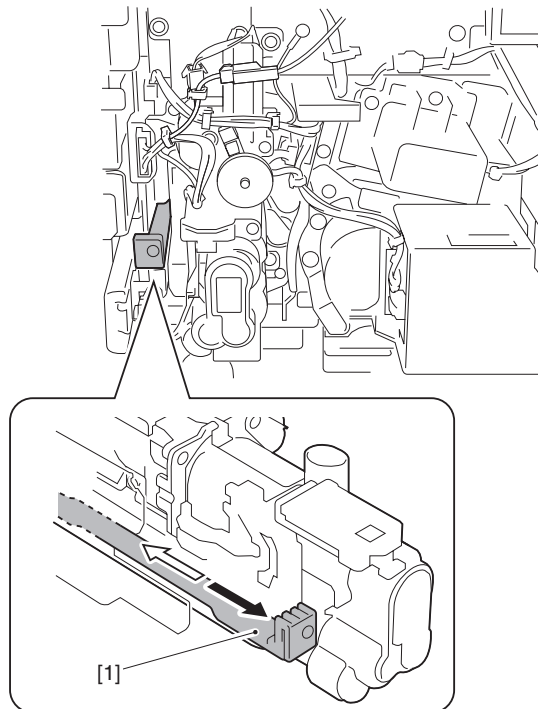
Do the following work for the developing assembly that has the symptom.

Remedy 1: Remove and attach the developing assembly for removing the compact cluster of toner accumulating on the developing cylinder-blade area due to the impact of the developing assembly to be removed and attached.

- 1) Shift the lever [1] of the developing assembly in the direction of the arrow (to the front/rear) to remove/attach the developing assembly. Repeat the removing/attaching operation for 5 to 10 times.

MEMO:

You do not need to remove the developing assembly or disconnect the connector of the developing assembly.



F-16-25

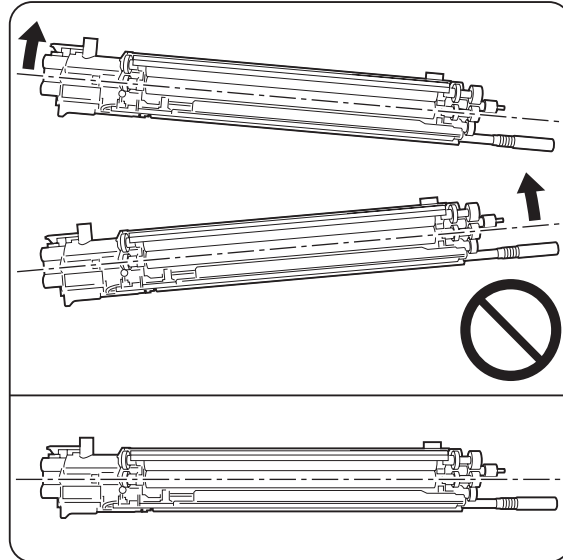
- 2) Make prints for approximately 10 sheets to check whether the symptom is solved. If not, execute remedy 2.

MEMO:

The compact cluster of toner may appear on the image as a soil right after executing remedy 1, however, making a couple sheets of prints will solve this symptom.

Remedy 2: Do the following work to remove the compact cluster of toner accumulating on the developing cylinder-blade area.

⚠ Point to Note When Handling the Developing Assembly
Do not overly tilt the developing assembly.



properly and may cause overflow of the developer during the operation after the developing assembly is attached to the host machine.

⚠ Point to Note When Handling the Developing Assembly
Do not overly tilt the developing assembly.

properly and may cause overflow of the developer during the operation after the developing assembly is attached to the host machine.

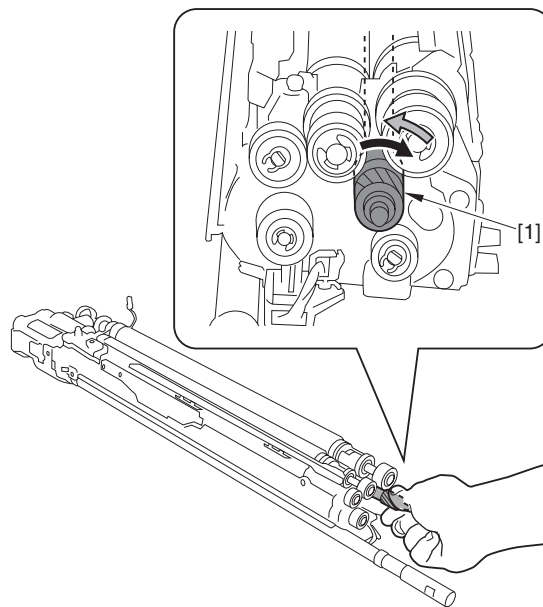
⚠ Point to Note When Handling the Developing Assembly

Do not overly tilt the developing assembly.

properly and may cause overflow of the developer during the operation after the developing assembly is attached to the host machine.

- 1) After removing the developing assembly, place the developing cylinder facing upward.
- 2) By turning the developing cylinder swiftly and fast, the compact cluster of toner accumulating on the developing cylinder-blade area is removed.

After turning the developing cylinder gear [1] clockwise for $1/8 + a$ -round, immediately turn it counterclockwise for $1/8$ -round. Repeat this procedure until the gear is making a clockwise turn (1-round) in total. In other words, the + a margins will make a full clockwise turn of the developing cylinder gear.



F-16-26

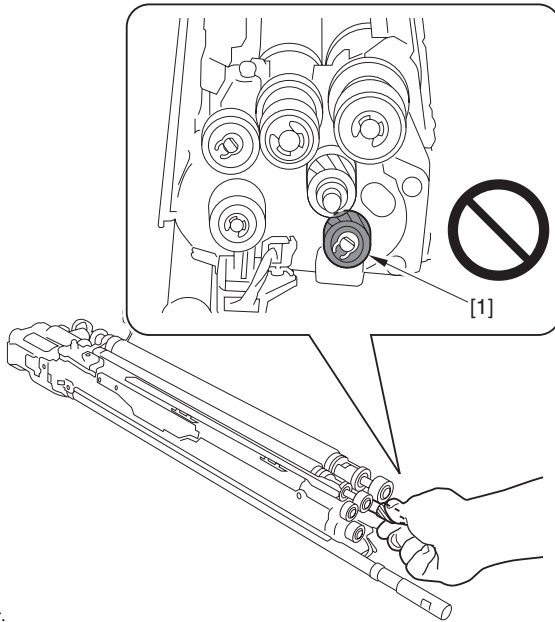


-The compact cluster of toner cannot be removed if turning the developing cylinder gear slowly. Try to turn the developing cylinder gear swiftly and fast as much as possible.

-Do not turn the developing cylinder gear more than 1 round. If turning the developing cylinder gear excessively, toner may be spilled out. In case of toner overflow, execute cleaning.



Do not turn the screw gear [1]. If wrongly turning the gear, stop the operation once, and attach the developing assembly to the host machine, and then turn ON the



power.

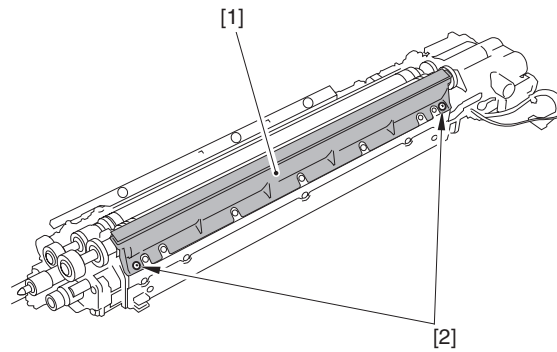
The developing assembly of this machine uses a vertical stirring method, thus the developer circulates in vertical direction. If manually turning the screw gear, the developer fails to circulate properly and it causes clogging of the developer due to lack of speed for turning the screw. The developer circulates properly if the developing assembly is attached to the host machine and the motor drives the screw at adequate speed. If keeping the developer manually turned until the gear is wrongly locked, there is no way to recover but replace the developer.

3) Detach the developing cylinder upper cover [1].

-2 screws [2]



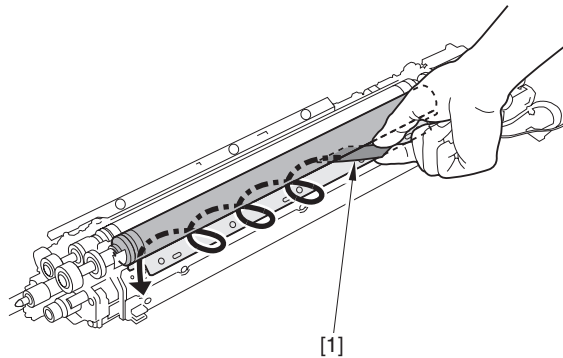
Do not remove the screws other than the screws [2] described above. Otherwise, the gap amount between the developing cylinder and the blade is changed, causing developing failure.



F-16-27

4) Insert a transparency sheet [1] (use the one with 300 micro m thickness or less) between the developing cylinder and the blade, and move the transparency sheet as shown in the figure to break down the compact cluster of toner.

After making 3-roundtrip along the developing cylinder shaft, repeat the operation to break down the compact cluster of toner.



F-16-28

5) After making 3-roundtrip along the developing cylinder shaft, repeat the operation to break down the compact cluster of toner.

MEMO:
Make prints for approximately 10 sheets to check whether the symptom is solved.

16.3.1.4 Smudged/Streaked

16.3.1.4.1 2mm-wide banding appears at 125 mm intervals at 1st job in morning after leaving this machine for longtime

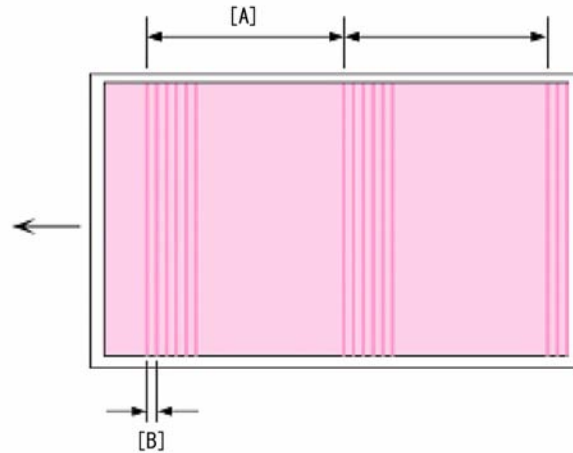
0017-8603

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

[Inspected by Canon Inc.]

Description

There were cases where 2mm-wide [B] banding appeared at 125mm intervals (drive roller intervals) [A].

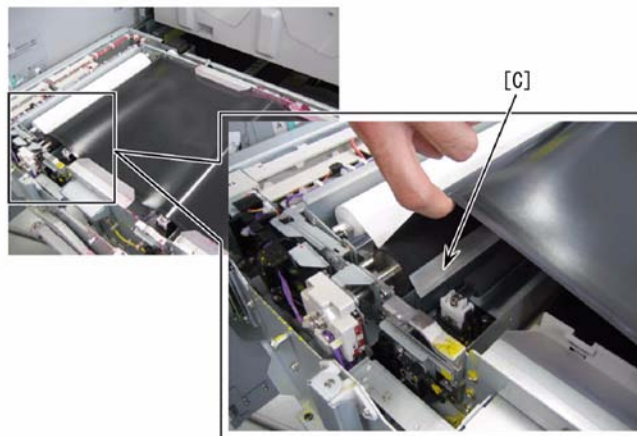


F-16-29

Cause

The roller cleaning scraper scraped off the abutment surface on the drive roller, and the scrapings adhered to the scraper, causing the roller to vibrate. To prevent this, the roller cleaning scraper assembly (FL2-2404) was eliminated from the machine with one of the following serial numbers. (It was confirmed that the machine operates normally without this part.)

- imagePRESS C7000 VP: KTF00010 and later



F-16-30

Field Remedy

When the symptom occurs with a machine having a serial number earlier than the above, refer to the attached "Removing Procedure of Roller Cleaning Scraper Ass'y" and remove the roller cleaning scraper assembly from the machine.

16.3.1.4.2 When using coated paper, shiny lines (1mm to 1.5mm-wide) appear in main scanning direction at fixing roller intervals

0018-7652

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

[Case in the field]

Description

Shiny lines (1mm to 1.5mm wide) appeared in the main scanning direction at the fixing roller intervals.

Cause

Soiling on the refresh roller transferred to the fixing roller surface, causing shiny lines on the output images. To deal with this, the DC controller software was updated to Ver. 6.04: specifically, for the purpose of preventing soiling on the refresh roller from transferring to the fixing roller, the refresh roller control sequence was so modified that it will contacts the fixing roller while the fixing roller is rotating, instead of waiting stop of its rotation.

Field Remedy

1. If the version of DC controller software is earlier than Ver. 6.04, update the software to Ver. 6.04 or later.
2. If it's impossible to update the software at once, make the following selections to execute the roller cleaning and make copies again: User mode > Adjustment/Cleaning > Roller Cleaning > Start.
3. If the symptom still occurs, clean the fixing roller with lint-free paper. White soiling may exist on the fixing roller surface.

16.3.1.4.3 Glossy Lines

0016-7249

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

Symptom

When printing on A3 or LDR paper after continuous printing on A4R or LTRR paper, glossy lines may appear on sides of A4R or LTRR paper.

Cause

The major causes are the abraded fixing or refresh roller or clogged refresh roller.

In continuous printing over hundreds pages, paper edges leave fine lines on the fixing roller surface.

This machine automatically refreshes the fixing roller at an arbitrary timing to erase such lines on the roller. However, lines cannot be erased by refresh operation if the fixing or refresh roller is abraded or the refresh roller is clogged. This will decrease the image gloss on the parts corresponding to lines on the roller.

Measures in the field

- 1) Clean the refresh roller and the refresh cleaning roller. Use lint-free paper impregnated with alcohol for cleaning.
- 2) If no improvement is seen, execute the fixing roller refresh in service mode. Enter service mode from any of the following paths:
 - COPIER>FUNCTION>MISC-P>FX1-CL-E (for refreshing the primary fixing roller)
 - COPIER>FUNCTION>MISC-P>FX2-CL-E (for refreshing the secondary fixing roller)
 - COPIER>FUNCTION>MISC-P>FXD-CL-E (for refreshing the primary/secondary fixing roller)

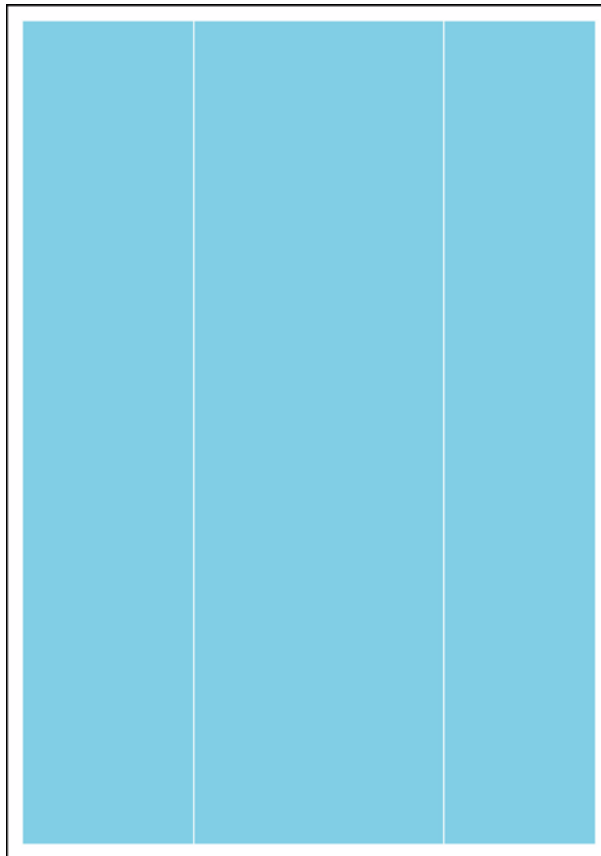


Frequent refresh operation will shorten life of the fixing and refresh rollers.

- 3) If the symptom reoccurs even after executing the steps above, replace the refresh roller. If no improvement is seen, replace the fixing roller.



In service mode the interval of the fixing roller auto-refresh can be shortened. This is effective to prevent this symptom, however, will shorten life of the fixing and refresh rollers.

Image sample

F-16-31

16.3.1.4.4 Trace of bypass decurler belt

0016-7277

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

Symptom

On the first side in continuous 2-sided printing, mark from the bypass decurler belt (uneven gloss) may appear.

Cause

In continuous printing of larger toner deposit images (solid images, etc.), excessive wax may remain on the image surface after the fixing process. In case of 2-sided

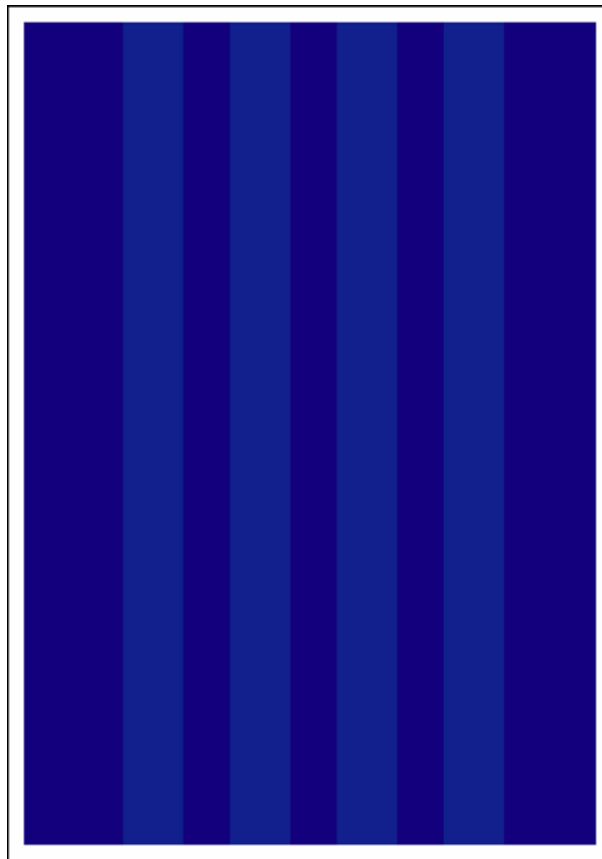
printing in the single fixing path, wax on the first side image is grazed by the bypass decurler belt after passing the primary fixing assembly twice and the gloss on the grazed parts is increased.

Measures in the field

Switch to the tandem fixing path in additional functions mode.

System Settings > Paper Type Management Settings > Gloss Adjustment

Enter +1 or +2 in the setting.

Image sample

F-16-32

16.3.1.4.5 Dirt of pin hole (ring mark)

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

0016-7252

Symptom

There is a possibility that dirt is attached to the pin hole caused by a fine foreign material that entered in the developing assembly.

Cause

On rare occasions, a fine foreign material enters into the developing assembly.

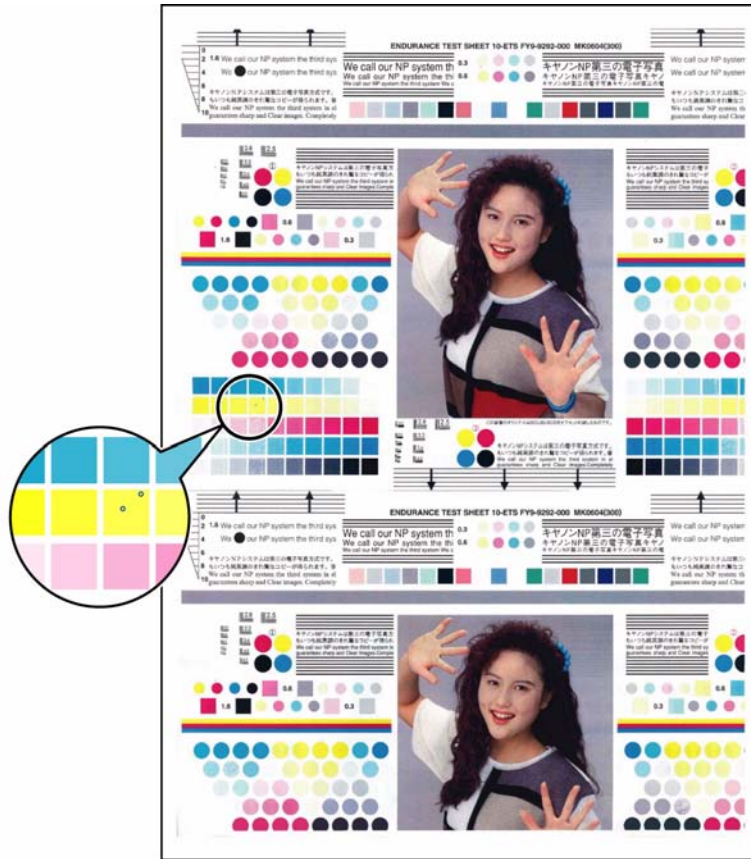
Since this material has low resistance, leakage occurs between the drum and sleeve.

As a result, dirt of the pin hole is printed in an image output.

Measures in the field

Replace the developer. If no improvement is seen, replace the developing assembly.

Image sample



F-16-33

16.3.1.4.6 Trace of delivery reversing roller

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

[0016-7278](#)

Symptom

On the first side in continuous 2-sided printing, mark from the delivery reverse roller (uneven gloss) may appear.

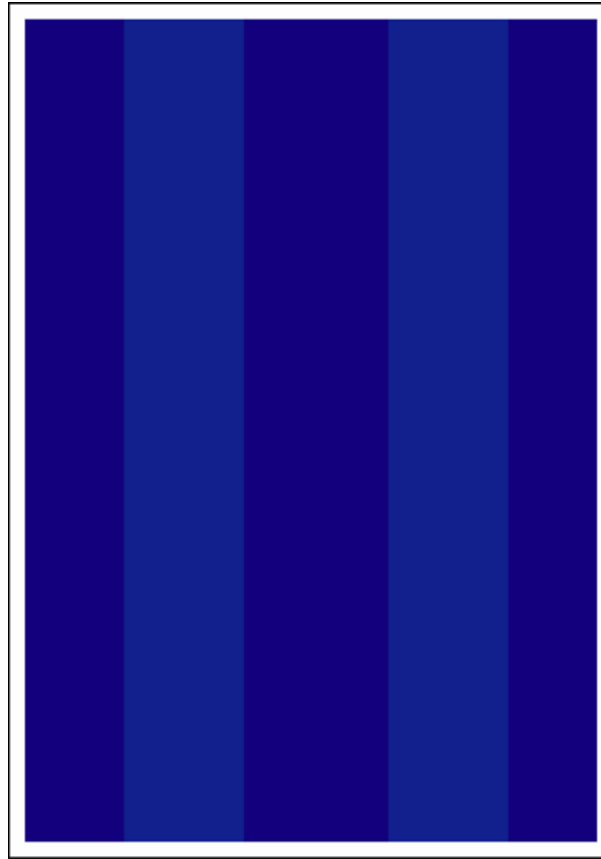
Cause

In continuous printing of larger toner deposit images (solid images, etc.), excessive wax may remain on the image surface after the fixing process. Wax on the image surface is grazed by the delivery reverse roller and the gloss on the grazed parts is increased.

Measures in the field

Change the feed method to straight feed (face-up feed) using the user mode.

Image sample



F-16-34

16.3.1.4.7 Image front edge foggy image (When using the 13X19 inch paper)

0016-7965

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

Symptom

A foggy image (black dots) may occur at the margin on the front side of the 13X19 inch paper.

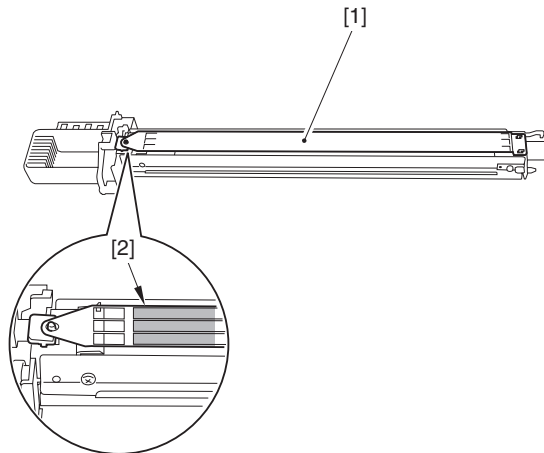
Cause

The toner attaches to the front side of the primary grid plate.

It may occur due to the installation environment, the image density ratio and deteriorated primary grid plates, etc.

Measures in the field

- 1) Detach the primary charging assembly.
- 2) Detach the primary grid plate.
- 3) Clean the both sides of the front side (only the area 3 to 4 cm [2] from the grid opening end) of the primary grid plate [1] alongside its pattern direction with a lint-free paper lightly.



F-16-35



- Be sure not to apply too much force.
- Be sure to clean it with a dry material and not use water and alcohol.
- Be sure not to perform cleaning even with a dry material for the area other than the above [2].

- 4) Check to see that there is no dust and fiber attached on the cleaned area, and attach the primary grid plate to the primary charging assembly.

- 5) Attach the primary charging assembly.
- 6) Execute cleaning the primary charging wire. (COPIER> FUNCTION> CLEANING> WIRE-EX)

16.3.1.4.8 Soiled image due to toner drop from developing assembly

0016-9826

imagePRESS C7000VP

Symptom

In case of continuous print of high-density image at early stage after installation, soil may appear on the following print images.

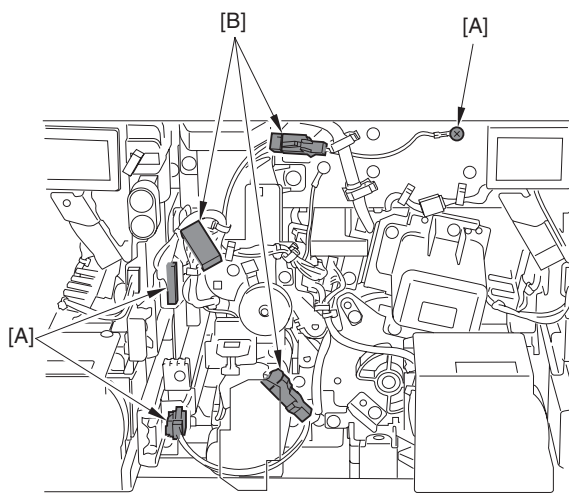
Cause

Toner blocking sheet (urethane sheet) is attached on the developer cylinder upper cover to prevent toner from scattering inside the machine at the time of development. In case of continuous print of high-density image (80% or more image ratio) at early stage after installation, large amount of toner scattered at the time of development is accumulated inside the toner blocking sheet of developing assembly. The accumulated toner cannot hold itself but drops on the drum, causing the image soiled.

MEMO:

Charging amount of developer at initial stage after installation tends to be big. Especially this symptom appears in developer of Cyan color compared to developers of other colors. Once the charging amount of developer increased, the T/D ratio gets high inside the developing assembly. In case of continuous print of high-density images (such as 2-sided print of solid image), the T/D ratio gets higher furthermore. The higher the T/D ratio inside the developing assembly, the more the scattered toner increased at the time of development. This symptom tends to appear with developer of Cyan color compared to developers of other colors, so cleaning frequency is expected to be higher.

High frequency in connecting/disconnecting of developing assembly's connector may exceed connect/disconnect life of connector, thus relay harness is connected with Cyan developing assembly. As shown in the figure below, disconnect [A] side connector when replacing the developing assembly, and disconnect [B] side connector when removing the developing assembly other than replacement (such as cleaning). See Parts Replacement Procedure in this document for details. The developing assembly is the same for Cyan and Black (so the relay harness is connected for Black developing assembly as well). There is no relay harness connected to developing assembly for Yellow and Magenta.

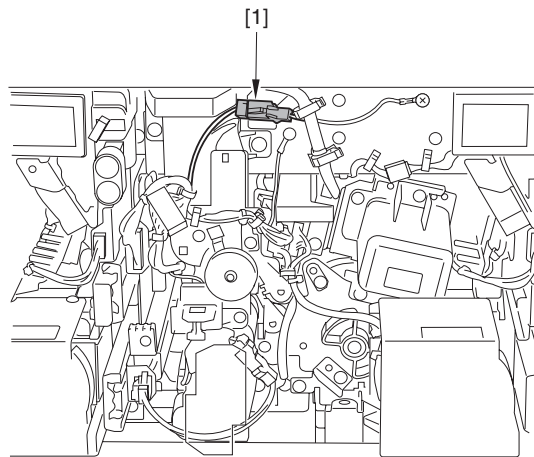


F-16-36

Measures in the field

Execute cleaning of developing assembly

- 1) Disconnect the connector [1].

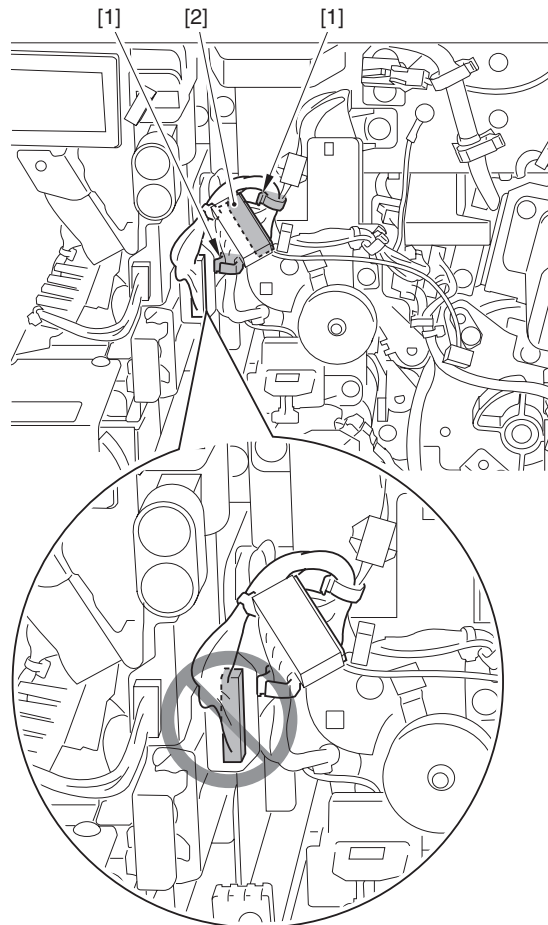


F-16-37

2) Open the 2 clamps [1] and disconnect the connector [2].



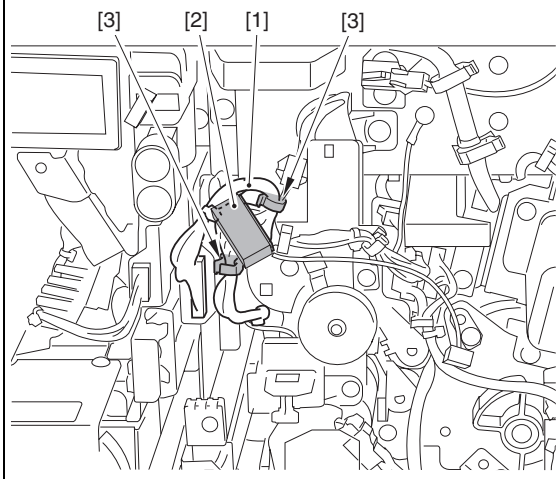
Do not disconnect the connector with the prohibition mark other than the time of developing assembly replacement.




F-16-38

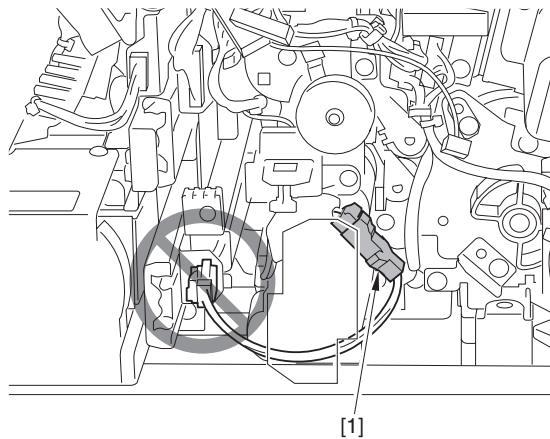


Point to note when connecting the relay harness
When fixing the relay harness [1], place the relay connector [2] between clamps [3].

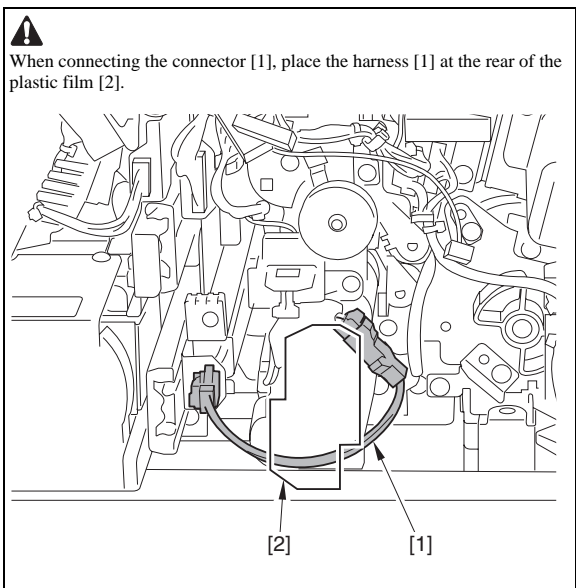


3) Disconnect the connector [1].

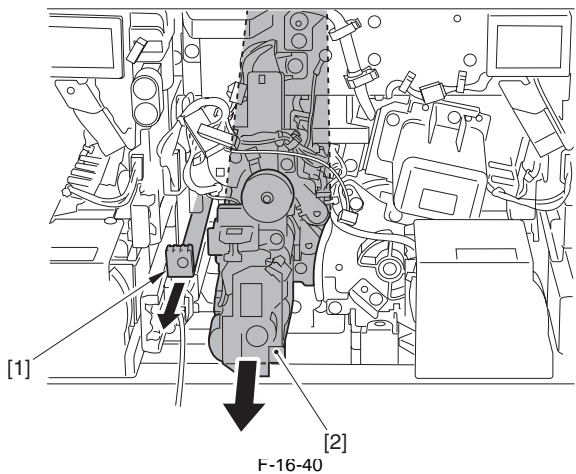
 Do not disconnect the connector with the prohibition mark other than the time of developing assembly replacement.



F-16-39



4) Pull the pressure release lever [1] until it locks and remove the developing assembly [2] forward.

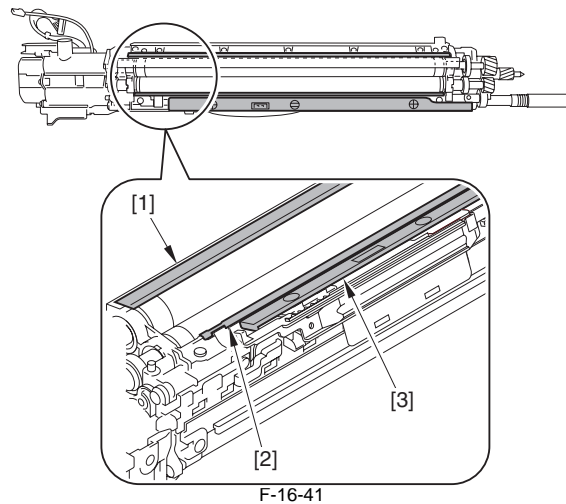


F-16-40

⚠ Points to note when applying the developing assembly pressure
While placing the developing assembly touched to the rear side of the host machine, push the developing assembly release lever.

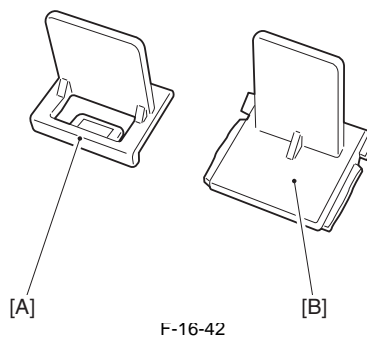
5) Clean the following points with a cleaning tool.

⚠ Do not touch the surface of the developing cylinder with your fingers when cleaning.



- [1] Back of toner blocking sheet
- [2] Front of developing cylinder lower cover
- [3] Front of drum patch sensor shutter

Tools



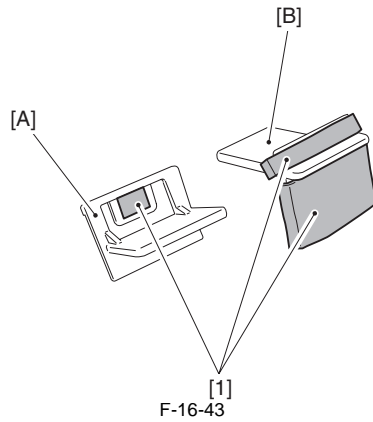
- Cleaning tool (for cleaning the toner blocking sheet) [A]
- Cleaning tool (for cleaning the developing cylinder lower cover/drum patch sensor shutter) [B]

MEMO:
The cooling tools are packaged with the machine.

⚠ Be sure to use these cooling tools for the C-color developing assembly only. If used for cleaning the developing assembly of another color, it may cause mixed color, leading to issue occurrence.

Check/actions before cleaning

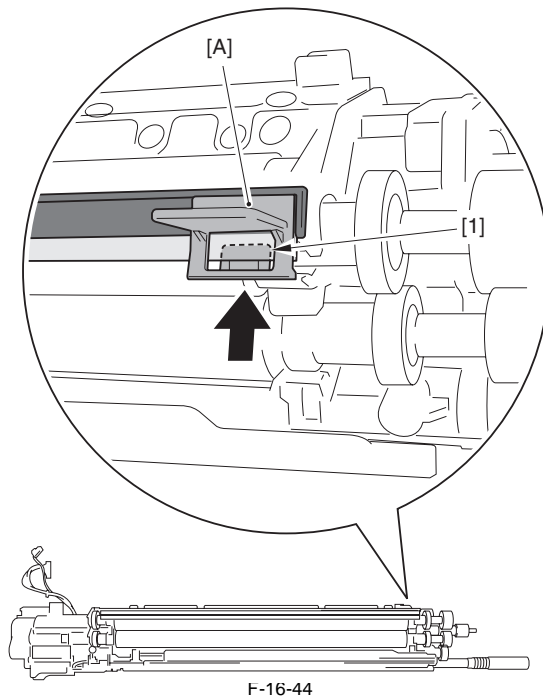
Check to see that there is no toner attached on the sponges [1] of the cleaning tool [A]/[B]. If the toner resides, clean it with a blower brush.



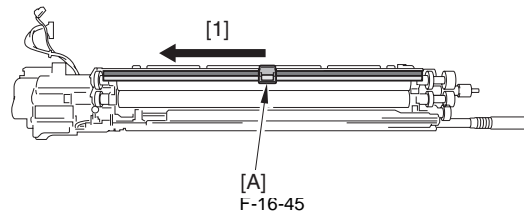
How to clean

- Back of the toner blocking sheet

1) Place the cleaning tool [A] as shown in the following figure. Be sure to place it so that the protrusion [1] of the cleaning tool [A] is beneath the toner blocking sheet [2].

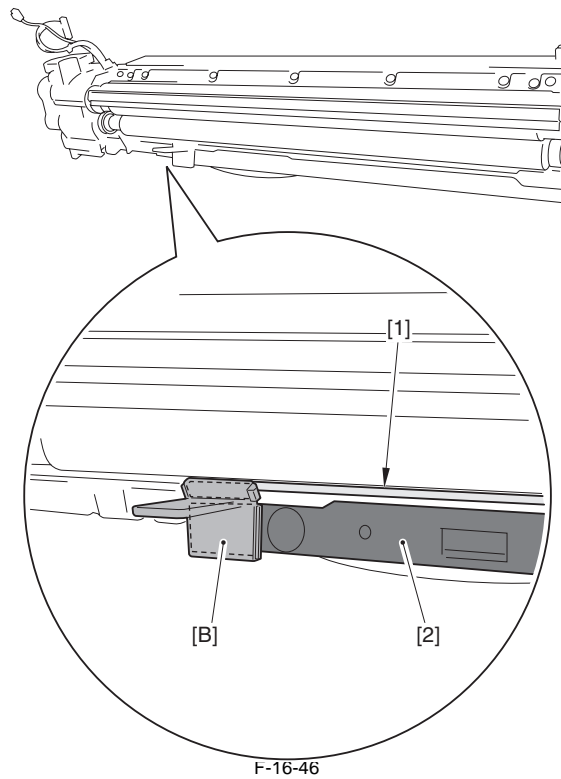


2) Slide the cooling tool [A] along the surface of the developing cylinder upper cover in the direction of the arrow [1]. Perform this operation twice.



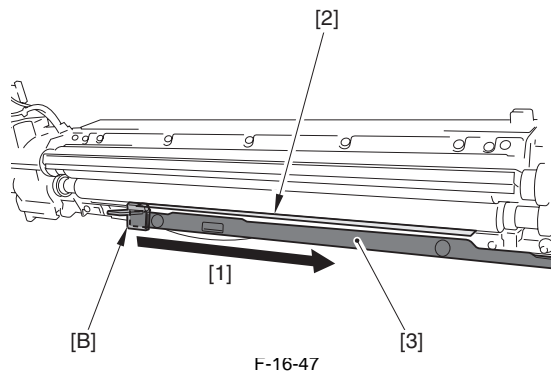
- Front of the developing cylinder lower cover/drum patch sensor shutter

1) Place the cooling tool [B] as shown in the following figure.



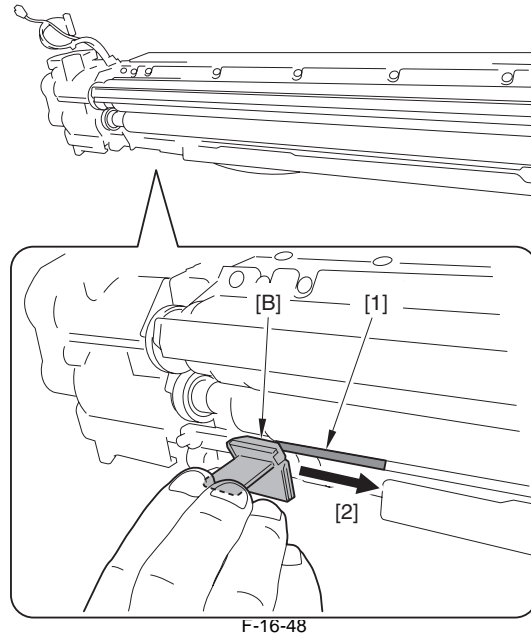
- [1] Developing cylinder lower cover
 [2] Drum patch sensor shutter

2) Slide the cooling tool [B] in the direction of the arrow [1]. Perform this operation twice.



⚠ Notes for cleaning direction
 Do not move the cooling tool [B] in the opposite direction to that shown as the arrow in the figure. (Do not move left and right.)
 If slid in the opposite way, the cooling tool hits against the drum patch sensor shutter, causing the shutter to be opened. The return force of the spring attached to the shutter moves the shutter to its closing position, where the impact due to this movement may cause the toner accumulated on the shutter surface to splash around.

3) Clean the remaining point [1] of the surface of the developing cylinder lower cover. Place the cooling tool [B] as shown in the figure, and then slide it in the direction of the arrow [2]. Perform this operation twice.



Expected status of completed cleaning

It should be deemed as completed cleaning that accumulated toner lump has been removed. It is not necessary to perform cleaning so that the toner disappears completely. (Thin toner layer attached causes no actual issue.)

16.3.1.4.9 Wax mark in tandem feeding

0017-9132

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

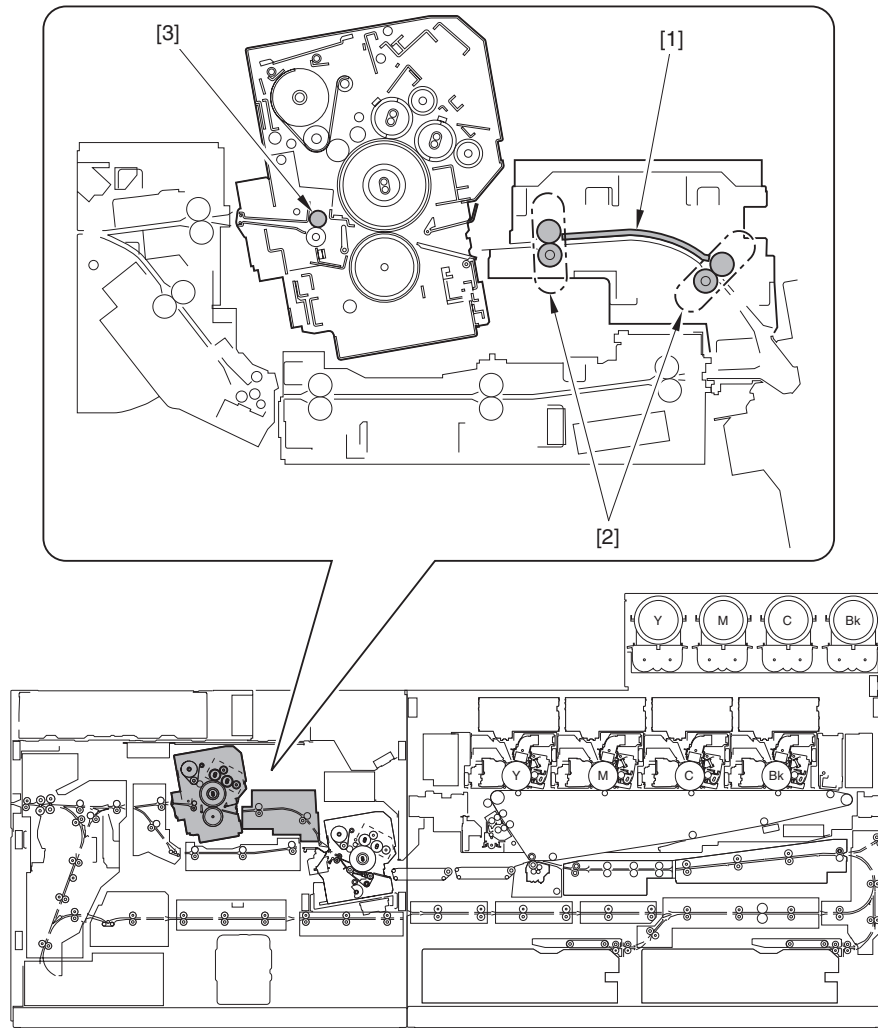
Symptom

Wax separated out from the toner may attach to the tandem assembly guide and roller, causing marks shaped like raindrops in the image.

Measures in the field

Clean the roller and the guide of the tandem feed assembly.

1. Cleaning points



F-16-49

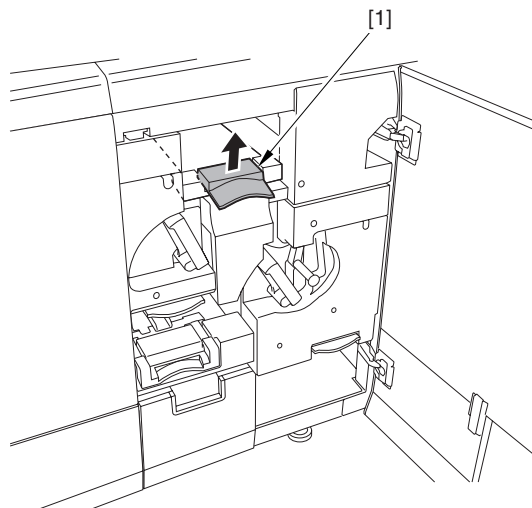
- Tandem guide [1]
- Tandem feed roller [2]
- Internal delivery roller [3]

2. Cleaning method

Alcohol solution + lint-free paper

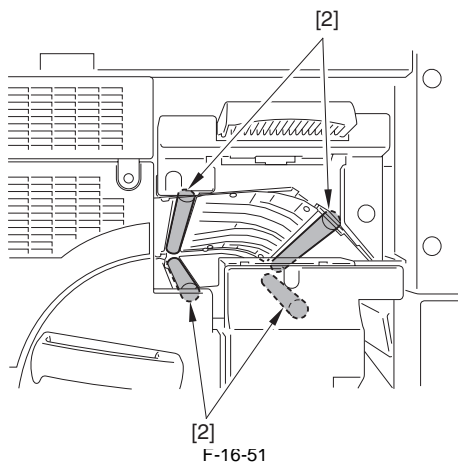
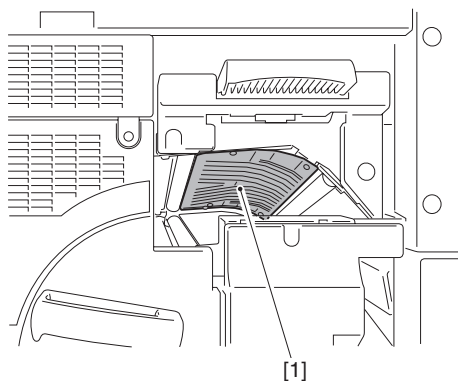
3. How to access each part

- 1) Open the front cover of the sub station.
- 2) Raise the lever (C-A1) [1] and open the C-A1 guide.



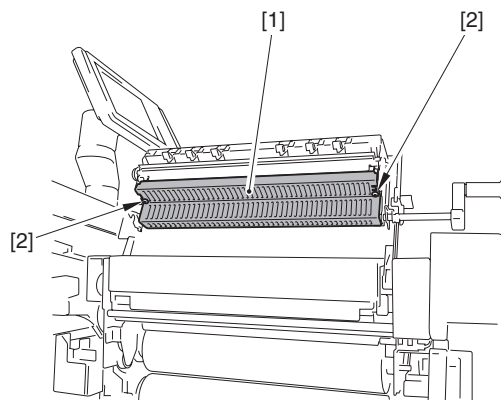
F-16-50

3) Clean the tandem guide [1] and the tandem feed roller [2].

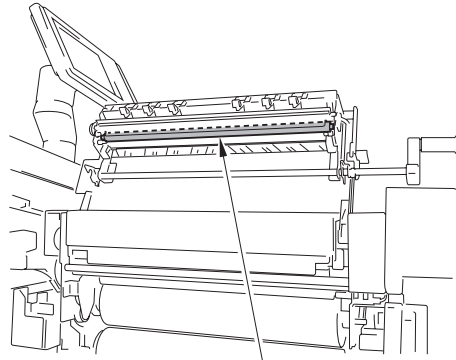


4) After pulling out the secondary fixing assembly, open the internal delivery unit.

5) Detach the guide cover [1].
- 2 screws [2]

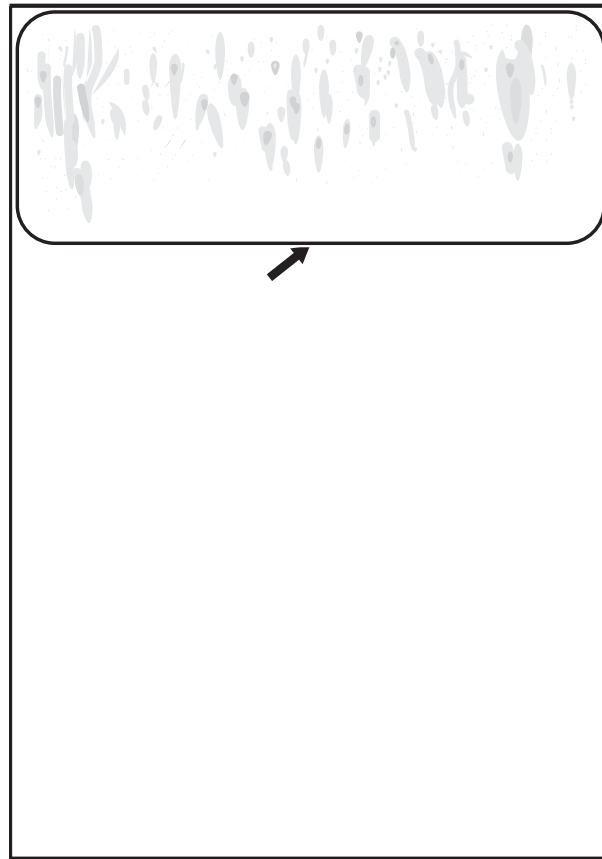


6) Clean the internal delivery roller [1].



[1]
F-16-52

Image sample



FEED
↓
F-16-53

16.3.2 Malfunction

16.3.2.1 Malfunction/Faulty Detection

16.3.2.1.1 Error indication "NG!" appears when executing developer supply mode (SPLY/STIR) during installation

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

0018-1059

[Manual-related]

Description

During installation of a machine with the DC controller software of version earlier than Ver.5.02, the developer was supplied in service mode > COPIER > Function > INSTALL > SUPLY-H-Y (M/C/K). When the STOP key was pressed during this developer supply operation, the machine behaved as if it had completed the operation normally. However, when the operator tried to supply the developer of next color, the error indication "NG!" appeared and the machine failed to start the next operation.

Reference: In the combination use of the DC controller of Ver. 5.02 or later and the system software of Ver. 6.01 or later, even if the STOP key is pressed

during the developer supply mode, the error indication "NG!" does not appear, and the machine can start the next operation.

Field Remedy

When the STOP key is pressed accidentally during the developer supply mode at time of installation of a machine having the DC controller software of version earlier than Ver. 5.02, execute the mode again.

Note: Be sure not to press the STOP key during SPLY or STIR mode. Change of the indication from "ACTIVE" to "OK!" shows the successful completion of the mode.

16.3.2.1.2 E018-0X11 error displayed due to faulty operation of the drum patch sensor shutter

0016-7541

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

Symptom

E018-0X11 error displayed due to faulty operation of the drum patch sensor shutter



X varies according to the developing assembly.

- 1: Y developing assembly
- 2: M developing assembly
- 3: C developing assembly
- 4: Bk developing assembly

Cause

Continuous output of the solid image in the product worn by long-time usage causes accumulation of the toner splashed around the drum patch sensor shutter, which may come into between the shutter lever slider and the guide.

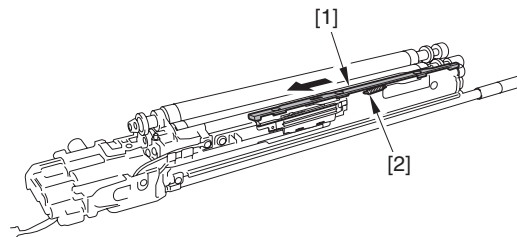
It hinders the operation of the shutter lever, leading to disabled patch detection, thereby the error in drum patch sensor shutter drive motor may occur.

Field remedy

Clean the slider of the patch detection shutter lever and the guide of the machine with a lint-free paper moistened with alcohol.

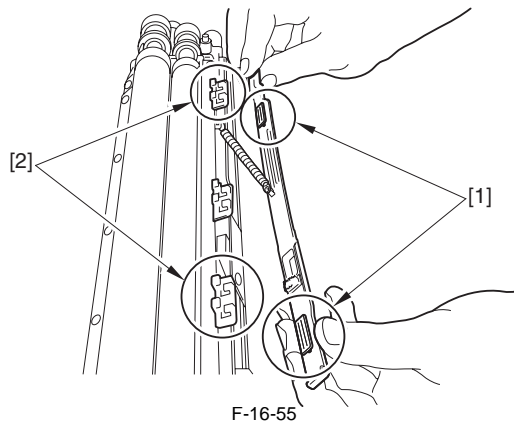
The details are described below.

- 1) Remove the developing assembly.
- 2) Move the drum patch sensor shutter [1] in the direction of the arrow to free it from the spring [2].



F-16-54

- 3) As shown in the figure below, clean the slider [1] of the drum patch sensor shutter lever and the guide [2] of the machine with a lint-free paper moistened with alcohol.

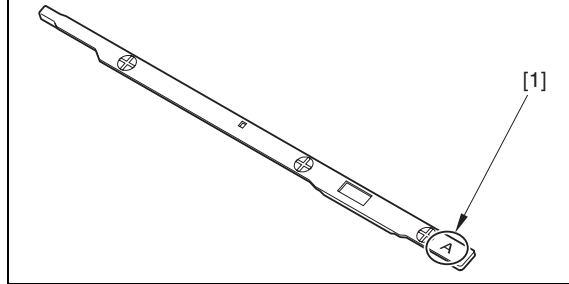


F-16-55

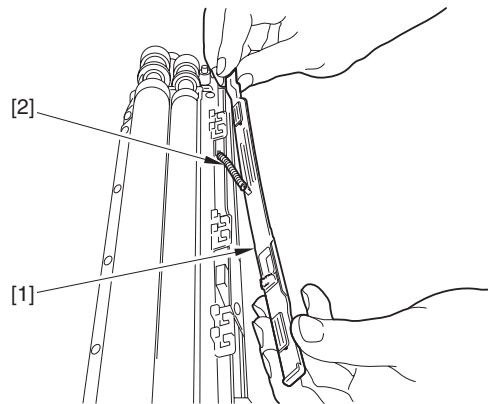
⚠ Points to Note at Attachment

There are drum patch sensor shutters for Y/M and C/K.
Check the combination of the mark [1] on the drum patch sensor shutter and the color of the developing assembly to attach.
When the detached drum patch sensor shutter is attached again, do not choose one with a different color.

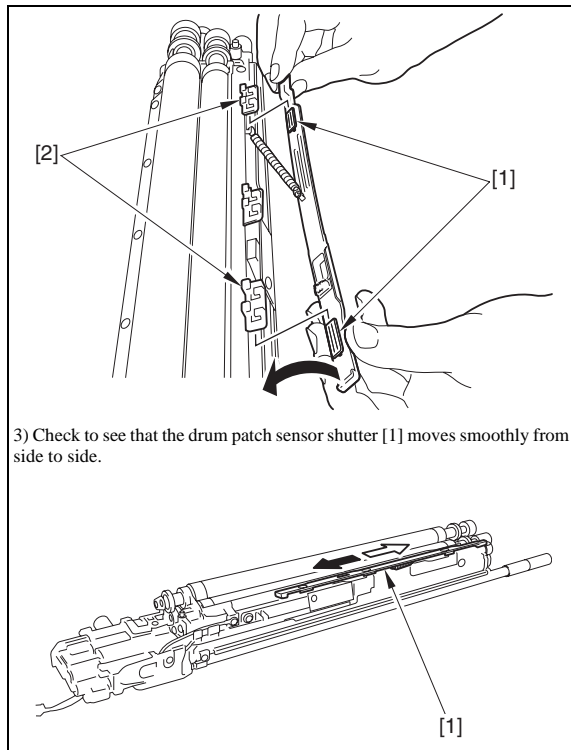
- Drum patch sensor shutter for Y/M: Mark A
- Drum patch sensor shutter for C/K: Mark B

**MEMO: How to attach the drum patch sensor shutter**

1) Put the spring [2] on the drum patch sensor shutter [1].



2) Fit the slider [1] to the groove [2], and move it in the direction of the arrow to attach.



16.3.3 Jam (Main Unit)

16.3.3.1 0115 Jam Code: Primary fixing inner delivery sensor lever causes malfunction when A4/LTR-size paper is used

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

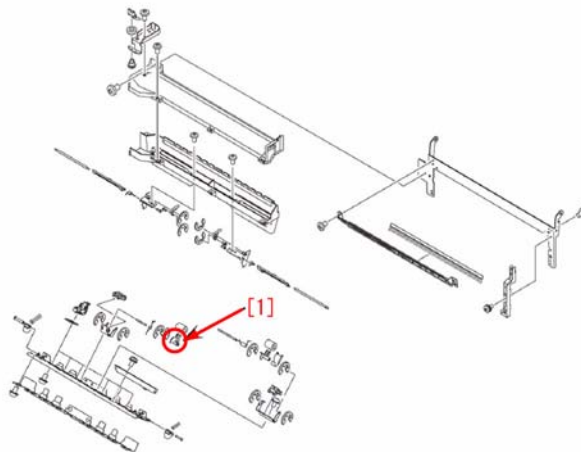
[Inspected by Canon Inc.]

Description

When small-size (A4/LTR-size) paper was being fed continuously, a jam code was indicated (no jam code appeared with large-size paper). On the other hand, when outputting P-PRINT printouts, the first three pages were output normally, but the fourth page stopped at the decurler unit, causing a jam code "0115."
- 0115 Jam Code: Delay jam at the primary fixing inner delivery sensor 1 (PS307).

Cause

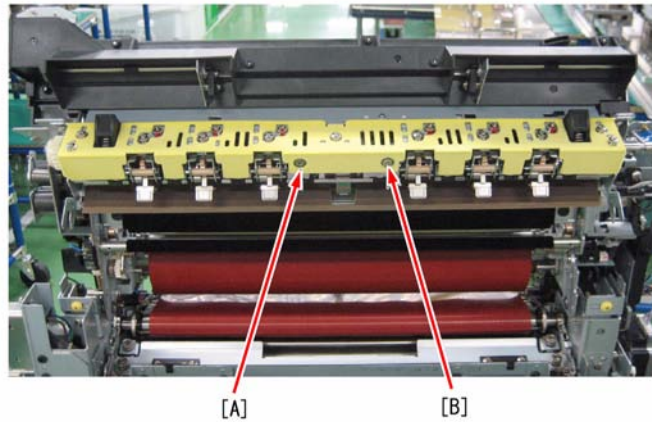
When the trail edge of paper came out of the lever of the primary fixing inner delivery sensor (PS305), the lever bounded. This caused this machine to falsely detect the arrival of the next page, allowing the primary fixing inner delivery sensor 2 (PS307) located after PS305 to detect a delay jam. This symptom is likely to occur with small-size paper having shorter paper intervals than large-size.



F-16-56

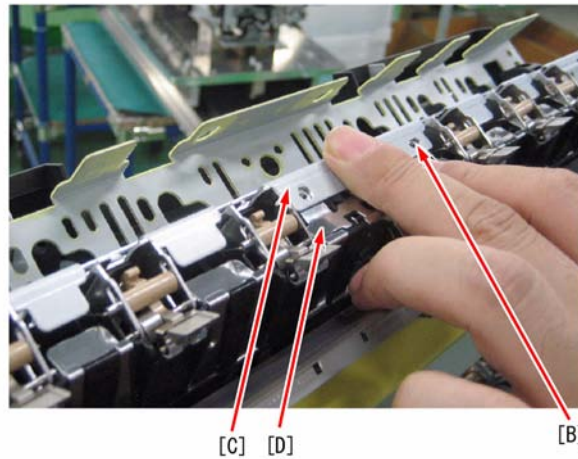
Field Remedy

When the aforementioned symptom occurs, check the type of screws used at [A] and [B]; if a stepped screw is used for [A] and a double sems screw for [B], perform the following procedure.



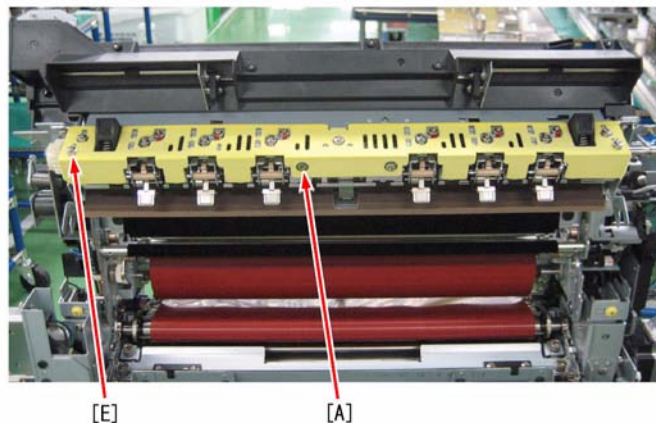
F-16-57

1. Remove the screws from [A] and [B].
2. While widening the gap between the inner delivery lower guide [C] and the inner delivery stay [D] with the fingers, tighten the screw at [B] again.



F-16-58

3. When tightening the screw at [A], interchange the stepped screw used at [A] and the double sems screw used at [E].



F-16-59

Note: Machines having the serial numbers listed below do not cause the symptom because the shape of the inner delivery sensor lever and the screws at [A] and [B] have been changed.

- imagePRESS C7000VP FS UL: KTM00083 and later
- imagePRESS C7000VP FS EU: KTQ00088 and later
- imagePRESS C7000VP FS CN: KTT00008 and later

16.3.3.2 011C Jam Code occurs because delivery reverse flapper does not open at duplex job or facedown delivery: Torsion spring is mounted is in wrong position

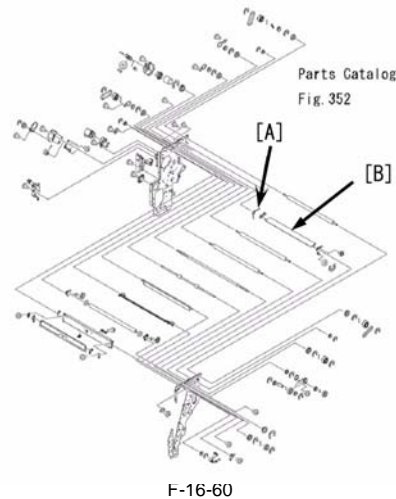
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

[Inspected by Canon Inc.]

Description

Since the delivery reverse flapper (FC5-9935) of the reverse assembly did not open at time of a duplex job or facedown delivery, paper did not reach the delivery reverse front sensor (PS342), causing the jam code "011C."

- 011C Jam Code: Delay jam at the delivery reverse front sensor (PS342)

**Cause**

The torsion spring [A] mounted onto the delivery reverse flapper tilted, load was applied to area where it slides with the flapper shaft [B], causing the flapper to fail to open. To prevent the torsion spring from tilting, spacers were added to either sides of the spring of the following machines.

iPR C7000 VP FS UL : KTM00031, KTM00035 through KTM00038, KTM00051 and later

iPR C7000 VP FS EUR : KTQ00015 and later

iPR C7000 VP FS CHI : KTT00001 and later

Field Remedy

1. Prepare 2 spacers (FC5-9007) and grease (Super Lub).
 2. Referring to "Procedures of attaching spacers", attach the spacers.
- FC5-9007 Spacer
FM2-2232 Reverse Assembly

16.3.4 Error Code**16.3.4.1 E077-0001 is displayed during initial rotation: Lever (B-E1) on Regist. Paper Feeder Assembly is not set properly**

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

[Case in the field]**Description**

In the field, the error code "E077-0001" was displayed during initial rotation performed upon power-on in response to closing of the front cover after a jam handling at the main station.

- E077-0001 can be displayed when the contact/separation operation of the secondary transfer roller is not completed normally during initial rotation because of incomplete shifting of the lever (B-E1) on the regist. paper feeder assembly (at the main station).

Field Remedy

1. If the same error code appears when the front cover is closed after work, check to see if the lever (B-E1) is shifted to the locking position; if not, shift it again. If the lever is in the locking position, go to Step2.
- Note: If the lever is locked at the wrong position, the lower portion of the cover may not be fitted completely although the upper portion does so. After the front cover is closed, be sure to make sure that both upper and lower portions fit completely to the main body.
2. Refit the connector of the secondary transfer pressure release motor (M184).
 3. If the symptom still occurs, replace the secondary transfer pressure release motor with a new one.
- FK2-3124 Stepping DC Motor

16.3.4.2 E078-0001: ITB cleaner motor (M108) is faulty

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

[Case in the field]**Description**

Since the ITB cleaner motor did not rotate, the error code "E078-0001" was displayed. When the same symptom occurs, perform the following field remedy.

- E078-0001 can be displayed when the phase lock signal is not detected for 500msec (100msec x 5 times) continuously even if 2 sec or more have passed since the start of the ITB cleaner motor.

Field Remedy

1. Re-fit the connector at J5229S or J5229P on the ITB cleaner motor.
 2. Re-fit the connectors at J1340 and J1337 on the I.T.B. Driver PCB Assembly (L).
 3. If the symptom still occurs, replace the ITB cleaner motor with a new one.
- Reference: The connector at J1046 on the DC Controller PCB 1-1 is also related to the aforementioned error code.
- FK2-2725 Brushless Motor
FM2-7690 I.T.B. Driver PCB Assembly, L

16.3.4.3 E578/error of paper folding position for saddle stitching: This machine stapled more than specified number of sheets at one time

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

[Case in the field]

Description

When copying 50 sheets of coated paper of 128g in weight in 2-point staple mode, an error of paper folding position for saddle stitching occurred and the error code "E578" was displayed.

- E578 can be displayed when the feed belt HP sensor does not go ON or OFF within 5 sec after the feed belt shift motor operation starts. (Knurling error)

Cause

This machine stapled more than the specified number of sheets at a time.

Field Remedy

Before making copies, check the used paper and the number of sheets to be stapled at a time. The following is specifications for stapling.

Reference: Specifications for stapling (S size/L size)

- 64g to 80g: 100sh/50sh

- over 80g to 81.4g: 80sh/50sh

- over 81.4g to 105g: 60sh/30sh

- over 105g to 200g: 20sh/10sh

- over 200g to 300g: Cover and back cover only

However, the thickness of stack has to be less than 11mm for S size, and less than 5.5mm for L size.

16.3.4.4 E732-8888/E490-0001 occurs upon installation (Color Image Reader-H1)

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

[Case in the field]**Description****a. E732-8888**

Although the Color Image Reader-H1 connected to the imagePRESS-C7000VP is shared with the imagePRESS-C1, when it is used in combination with the imagePRESS-C7000VP, the version of the reader controller software has to be Ver. 6.01 or later. If the version of this software is earlier than Ver. 6.01, the copier fails to recognize the reader, consequently displaying the error code "E732-8888."

Reference: The units of Color Image Reader-H1 with the following serial numbers have the reader controller software of Ver. 6.01.

- Color Image Reader-H1 (UL): TLD01815 and later

- Color Image Reader-H1 (EUR): TLF01558 and later

- Color Image Reader-H1 (OTH): TLG00304 and later

- E732-8888 can be displayed when this machine starts as a printer model and detects the reader unit. (The copier model also temporarily starts as a printer model at time of RAM clear: Switching OFF/ON)

b. E490-0001

In case this machine is used in combination with the DADF-R1 and the Color Image Reader-H1, if the versions of the DF controller software is Ver. 3.01 or later, and the reader controller software is Ver. 4.01 or earlier, the reader controller detects a DF model mismatch, displaying the error code "E490-0001."

- E490-0001 can be displayed when a DF model mismatch error occurs (the feeder for the other copier model is detected).

Field Remedy

1. When E732-8888 or E490-0001 is displayed upon installation, check the version of the reader controller software.

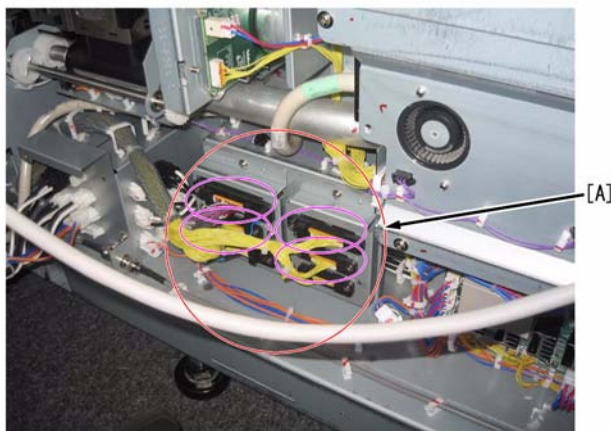
2. If the version of the software is earlier than Ver. 6.01, upgrade the software to Ver. 6.01 or later.

16.3.4.5 E750-0002 occurs when relocating this machine: Connector of drawer connector mount on backside of main station

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

[Case in the field]**Description**

In order to relocate this machine, work was performed according to "Relocating the Machine." At this time, however, not the drawer connector mount but each connector was detached from the backside of the main station. This caused an error in plugging each connector at the new installation place, ultimately leading to the error code "E750-0002."



F-16-61

- E750-0002 can be displayed when the model name informed by the main controller does not match with that stored in the DC controller (i.e., same series but different model).

Cause

Since connectors connected to the drawer connector mount were plugged improperly, a communication error occurred between the DC controller software and the main controller software.

Field Remedy

Although it's difficult to identify a connector plugged to the wrong jack from the error code, when the same error occurs at time of relocation of this machine or service work for the drawer connector mount, check to see if each connector is connected to the correct jack.

Note: When detaching/re-attaching the drawer connector to connect the main station and sub station during installation or relocation, be sure to work not by

the connector but by the drawer connector mount to prevent errors in plugging connectors.

16.3.5 Specifications-Related FAQ

16.3.5.1 FAQ on Main Unit Specifications

16.3.5.1.1 When uploading DC Controller data with SST, "SramDCON" does not appear on SST screen

0016-9189

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

[Manual-related]

Description

"SramDCON" and "SramRCON" files are displayed on the SST screen only when this machine is started in normal mode. If this machine is started in safe mode, these files do not appear on the SST screen.

Field Remedy

Holding down the numeric keys '1' and '7' on the control panel at the same time, turn ON the main power switch. In service mode > COPIER > Function > SYSTEM, select [DOWNLOAD] to enter the download mode, and then upload the data with SST.

16.3.5.1.2 Specifications for staple capacity of Finisher-AB1/AB2

0018-4128

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

[Manual-related]

Description

The following are specifications for staple capacity of Finisher-AB1/AB2 by basis weight of paper (both small and large sizes).

- 64g to 80g: 100sh/50sh
- over 80g to 81.4g: 80sh/50sh
- over 81.4g to 105g: 60sh/30sh
- over 105g to 200g: 20sh/10sh
- over 200g to 300g: Cover and back cover only

However, the thickness of stack has to be less than 11mm for small size, and less than 5.5mm for large size.

Reference: Although the staple capacity of the aforementioned Finisher units is specified like the above, on requests from the field, the units were so designed that they staple more than the number of sheets described above with regard to all basis weights in case the total number of sheets to be stapled is set within 100 sheets. But, please be informed that a problem may occur when the units staple more than the number specified above.

16.3.5.1.3 Description on fixing roller refresh operation and its execution timing

0018-7655

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

[Manual-related]

Description

There is a case where the lead edge (cut edge) of paper hit the fixing roller and, thus, causes shiny lines (1mm to 1.5mm wide) in the main scanning direction at the fixing roller intervals. To prevent this, this machine has a control sequence for automatically refreshing the fixing roller surface.

a. Execution timing

- a-1. At time of cleaning the corona wire
- a-2. At time of changing the paper size (from small to large)
- a-3. At time of post rotation

b. Execution condition

The refreshing operation is executed when the media size counter this machine computes reaches the threshold value.

c. Change of time spent for the refreshing operation

Changing the setting in user mode > System Settings > Device Management Settings > Fixing Roller Auto Refresh Level will change the length of time spent for refreshing operation. Changing the setting of this mode will also ease the execution condition of the refreshing operation.

c-1. Default value '0': perform the refreshing operation for about 30 sec to 60 sec. (The time spent for the operation changes depending on the media size counter.)

c-2. Adjustment range: between '-5' (30 sec) to '+5' (330 sec). Changing the value by '1' will increase/decrease the length of time spent for the operation by 30 sec. Selecting a positive value will increase the length of time spent for one operation while a negative value will decrease it. If the value '-5' is selected, the operation is not executed.

d. Conditions other than the above

- d-1. Interruption refreshing based on the video counter reading (1 sec)
- d-2. Refreshing at startup. (3 sec)

For these conditions, changing the fixing roller auto refresh level setting will change a parameter (the threshold value of video count), consequently changing the timing at which this machine starts the refreshing operation. However, if the setting value is between '-5' and '-1', the operation is not executed.

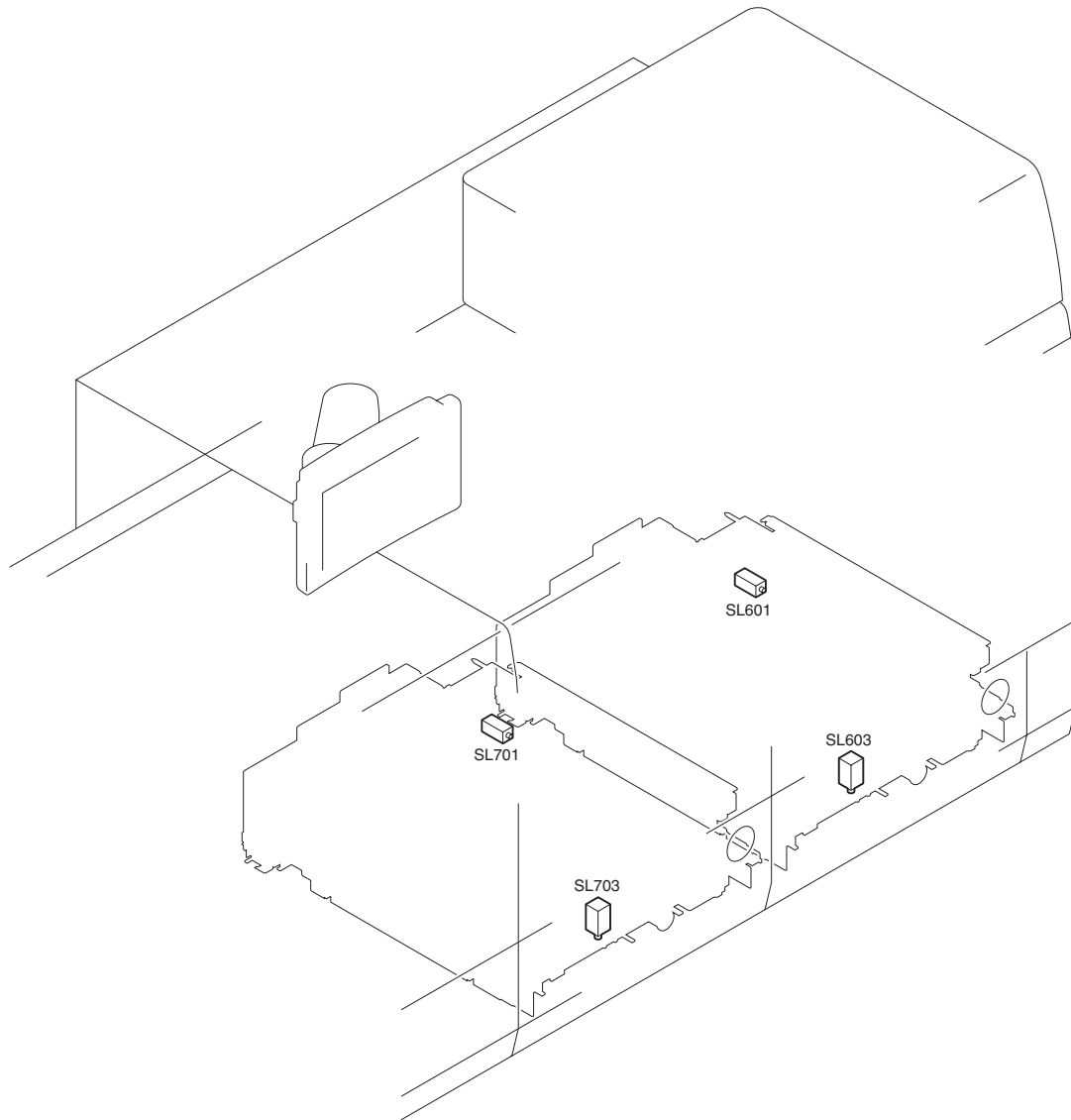
Note: No matter how many sheets of SRA3 or 13x19 size paper are fed, as papers larger than these sizes are not used, shiny lines due to paper lint do not occur. Therefore, the media size counter, the parameter for roller refreshing, does not increase.

16.4 Outline of Electrical Components

16.4.1 Clutch/Solenoid

16.4.1.1 Main Station

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000



F-16-62
T-16-3

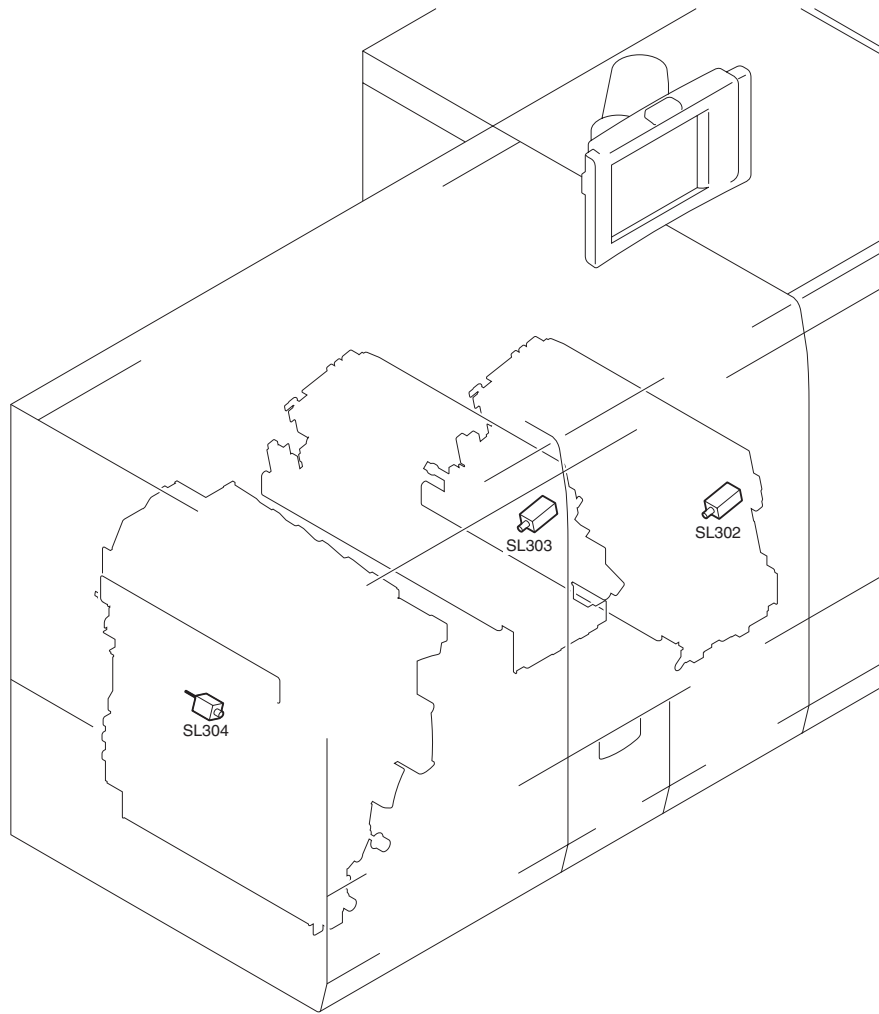
Symbol	Parts Name	Function	Parts No.	PART-CHK
SL601	Right deck pickup solenoid	open/close right deck pickup air shutter	FK2-0126	-
SL603	Right deck open/close solenoid	lock/release right deck tray	FK2-0127	-
SL701	Left deck pickup solenoid	open/close left deck pickup air shutter	FK2-0126	-
SL703	Left deck open/close solenoid	lock/release left deck tray	FK2-0127	-

T-16-4

Symbol	Connector No.				
	Right deck driver PCB	Right deck pickup driver PCB	Left deck driver PCB	Left deck pickup driver PCB	DC controller PCB 1-1
SL601		J2053R/J2051R			J1060
SL603	J2103R/J2102R	J2056R/J2051R			J1060
SL701				J2053L/J2051L	J1064
SL703			J2103L/J2102L	J2056L/J2051L	J1064

16.4.1.2 Sub Station

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000



F-16-63
T-16-5

Symbol	Parts Name	Function	Parts No.	PART-CHK
SL302	Primary fixing web solenoid	drive primary fixing web	FK2-2723	SL>1
SL303	Secondary fixing web solenoid	drive secondary fixing web	FK2-2723	SL>2
SL304	Color sensor roller solenoid	stick sheet to color sensor	FH7-5838	

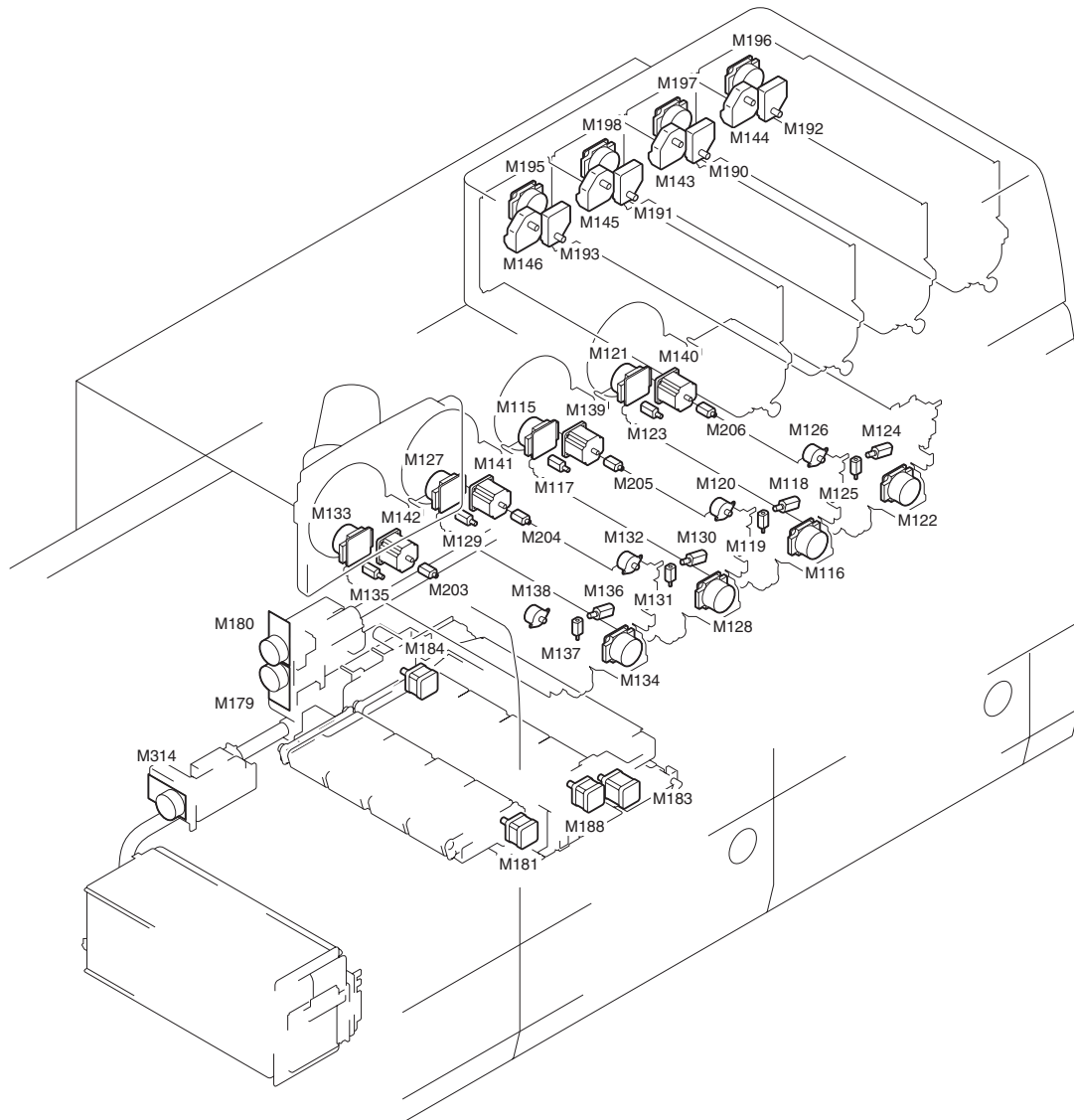
T-16-6

Symbol	Connector No.				
	Primary fixing inner driver PCB	Secondary fixing external driver PCB	Reverse/external delivery driver PCB	Duplexing feed driver PCB	DC controller PCB 1-2
SL302	J4374P/J4260P			J4080/J4070	J1072
SL303		J4374S/J4360S		J4085/J4070	J1072
SL304			J4127/4111	J4091/J4070	J1072

16.4.2 Motor

16.4.2.1 Main Station(1/6)

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000



F-16-64
T-16-7

Symbol	Parts Name	Function	Parts No.	PART-CHK	E-code
M115	Developing motor (C)	drive developing unit (C)	FK2-2726		E023-0300
M116	Drum cleaner motor (C)	drive drum cleaner (C)	FK2-2726		E016-0400
M117	Drum patch sensor cleaning motor (C)	clean drum patch sensor (C)	FL2-6138		E018-0312, 0313, 131X
M118	Primary charging wire cleaning motor (C)	clean primary charging wire (C)	FL2-0991		E060-3003
M119	Sub hopper motor (C)	drive sub-hopper (C)	FL2-6139		E025-0320
M120	Toner feed motor (C)	feed C toner	FK2-2729		
M121	Developing motor (Bk)	drive developing unit (Bk)	FK2-2726		E023-0400
M122	Drum cleaner motor (Bk)	drive drum Bkleaner (Bk)	FK2-2726		E016-0300
M123	Drum patch sensor cleaning motor (Bk)	Bklean drum patBk sensor (Bk)	FL2-6138		E018-0412, 0413, 141X
M124	Primary charging wire cleaning motor (Bk)	Bklean primary Bkcharging wire (Bk)	FL2-0991		E060-3004
M125	Sub hopper motor (Bk)	drive sub-hopper (Bk)	FL2-6139		E025-0420
M126	Toner feed motor (Bk)	feed Bk toner	FK2-2729		
M127	Developing motor (M)	drive developing unit (M)	FK2-2726		E023-0200
M128	Drum cleaner motor (M)	drive drum Mleaner (M)	FK2-2726		E016-0200

Symbol	Parts Name	Function	Parts No.	PART-CHK	E-code
M129	Drum patch sensor cleaning motor (M)	Mlean drum patMh sensor (M)	FL2-6138		E018-0212, 0213, 121X
M130	Primary charging wire cleaning motor (M)	Mlean primary Mharging wire (M)	FL2-0991		E060-3002
M131	Sub hopper motor (M)	drive sub-hopper (M)	FL2-6139		E025-0220
M132	Toner feed motor (M)	feed M toner	FK2-2729		
M133	Developing motor (Y)	drive developing unit (Y)	FK2-2726		E023-0100
M134	Drum cleaner motor (Y)	drive drum Yleaner (Y)	FK2-2726		E016-0100
M135	Drum patch sensor cleaning motor (Y)	Ylean drum patYh sensor (Y)	FL2-6138		E018-0112, 0113, 111X
M136	Primary charging wire cleaning motor (Y)	Ylean primary Yharging wire (Y)	FL2-0991		E060-3001
M137	Sub hopper motor (Y)	drive sub-hopper (Y)	FL2-6139		E025-0120
M138	Toner feed motor (Y)	feed Y toner	FK2-2729		
M139	Drum driving motor (C)	drive photosensitive drum C	FK2-3125		E012-03XX
M140	Drum driving motor (Bk)	drive photosensitive drum Bk	FK2-3125		E012-04XX
M141	Drum driving motor (M)	drive photosensitive drum M	FK2-3125		E012-02XX
M142	Drum driving motor (Y)	drive photosensitive drum Y	FK2-3125		E012-01XX
M143	Toner container motor (C)	drive tonar container C	FK2-0015		E025-0310
M144	Toner container motor (Bk)	drive tonar container Bk	FK2-0015		E025-0410
M145	Toner container motor (M)	drive tonar container M	FK2-0015		E025-0210
M146	Toner container motor (Y)	drive tonar container Y	FK2-0015		E025-0110
M179	Buffer motor	drive buffer unit	FK2-0022		E019-0003
M180	Drum waste toner feed motor	feed waste toner	FK2-0022		E019-0001
M181	Pre-fixing feed drive left motor	feed paper at pre-fixing unit (left)	FK2-3124	MTR>34	
M183	Secondary transfer driving motor	drive secondary transfer unit	FK2-3124	MTR>23	
M184	Secondary transfer pressure release motor	press/release secondary transfer unit	FK2-3124		E077-0001
M188	Pre-transfer feed driving right motor	feed paper at pre-fixing unit (right)	FK2-3124	MTR>33	
M190	Toner container slide motor (C)	slide C toner container	FK2-2728		E028-0301, 0302
M191	Toner container slide motor (M)	slide M toner container	FK2-2728		E028-0201, 0202
M192	Toner container slide motor (Bk)	slide Bk toner container	FK2-2728		E028-0401, 0402
M193	Toner container slide motor (Y)	slide Y toner container	FK2-2728		E028-0101, 0102
M195	Hopper motor (Y)	drive Y hopper	FK2-2726		E025-0100
M196	Hopper motor (Bk)	drive Bk hopper	FK2-2726		E025-0400
M197	Hopper motor (C)	drive C hopper	FK2-2726		E025-0300
M198	Hopper motor (M)	drive M hopper	FK2-2726		E025-0200
M203	Developing assembly knocking motor (Y)	Y toner anticoagulation	FL2-9917	MTR>12	E024-0001
M204	Developing assembly knocking motor (M)	M toner anticoagulation	FL2-9917	MTR>13	E024-0002
M205	Developing assembly knocking motor (C)	C toner anticoagulation	FL2-9917	MTR>14	E024-0003
M206	Developing assembly knocking motor (Bk)	Bk toner anticoagulation	FL2-9917	MTR>15	E024-0004
M314	Waste toner feed motor	feed waste toner	FK2-0022		E019-0002

T-16-8

Symbol	Connector No.				
	Drum driver PCB (C)	Drum driver PCB (Bk)	Drum driver PCB (Y)	Drum driver PCB (M)	DC controller PCB 1-1
M115	J1622C/J1611C				J1037
M121		J1622K/J1611K			J1038
M127				J1622M/J1611Y	J1036
M133			J1622Y/J1611Y		J1035
M139	J1621C/J1611C				J1037
M140		J1621K/J1611K			J1038
M141				J1621M/J1611M	J1036
M142			J1621Y/J1611Y		J1035

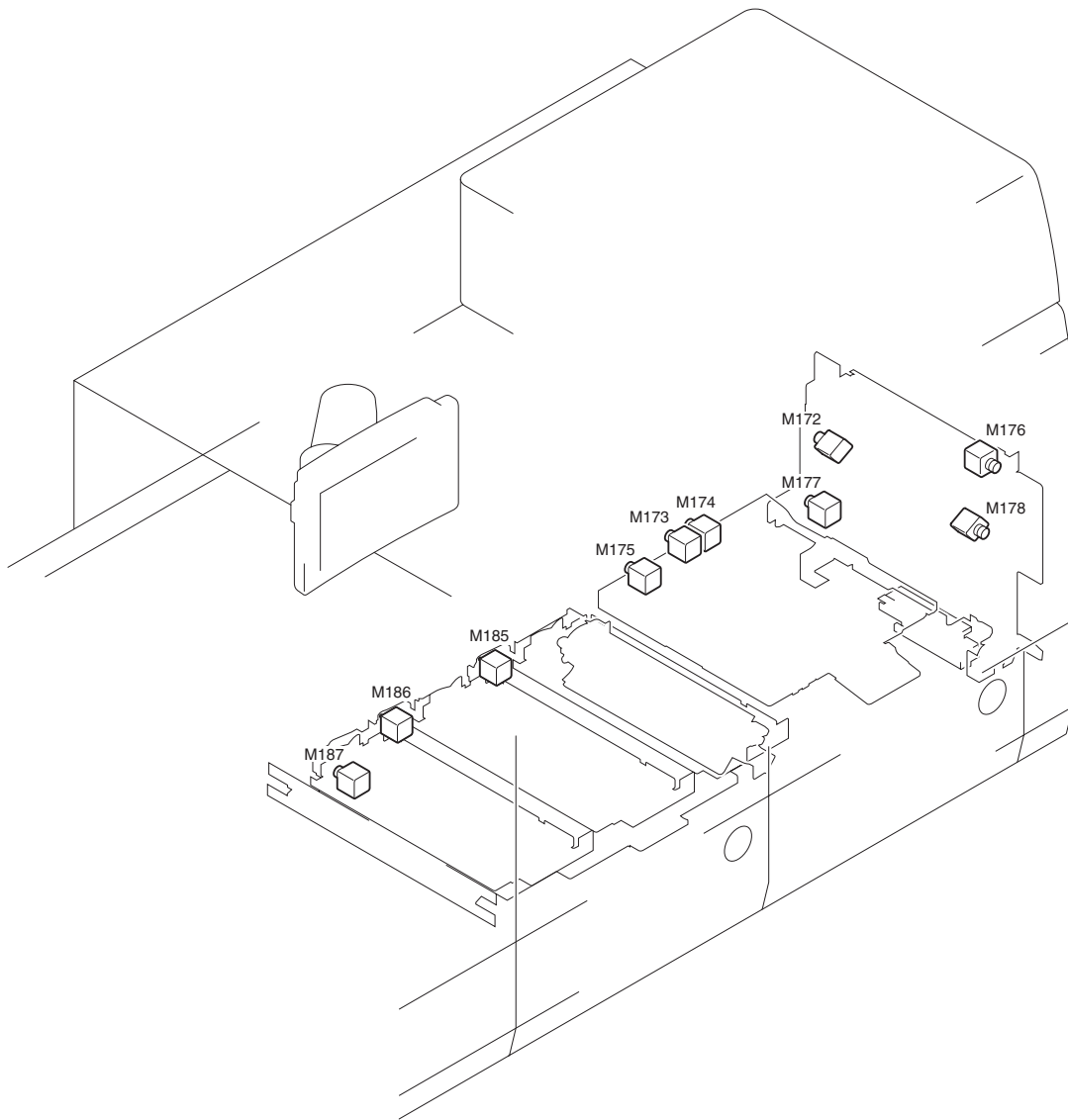
T-16-9

Symbol	Connector No.											
	Process unit driver PCB (Y)	Process unit driver PCB (M)	Process unit driver PCB (C)	Process unit driver PCB (Bk)	Hopper driver PCB (Y)	Hopper driver PCB (M)	Hopper driver PCB (C)	Hopper driver PCB (Bk)	Pre-fixing feed driver PCB	Secondary transfer/duplexing driver PCB	Fixing duplexing feed driver PCB	DC controller PCB 1-2
M116			J1371C/ J1360C									J1010
M117			J1377C/ J1361C									J1011
M118			J1375C/ J1361C									J1011
M119			J1375C/ J1361C									J1011
M120			J1373C/ J1361C									J1011
M122				J1371K/ J1360K								J1012
M123				J1377K/ J1361K								J1013
M124				J1375K/ J1361K								J1013
M125				J1374K/ J1361K								J1013
M126				J1373K/ J1361K								J1013
M128		J1371M/ J1360M										J108
M129		J1377M/ J1361M										J1009
M130		J1375M/ J1361M										J1009
M131		J1374M/ J1361M										J1009
M132		J1373M/ J1361M										J1009
M134	J1371Y/ J1360Y											J1006
M135	J1377Y/ J1361Y											J1007
M136	J1375Y/ J1361Y											J1007
M137	J1374Y/ J1361Y											J1007
M138	J1373Y/ J1361Y											J1007
M143							J1420C/ J1410C					J1016
M144								J1420K/ J1410K				J1017
M145						J1420M/ J1410M						J1015
M146					J1420Y/ J1410Y							J1014
M179									J1561/ J1553			J1026
M180									J1559/ J1553			J1026
M181									J1558/ J1551			J1027
M183										JJ1504/ J1513		J1024
M184										JJ1503/ J1513		J1024
M188										JJ1504/ J1513		J1024
M190							J1420C/ J1410C					J1016
M191						J1420M/ J1410M						J1015
M192								J1420K/ J1410K				J1017
M193					J1420Y/ J1410Y							J1014

Symbol	Connector No.											
	Process unit driver PCB (Y)	Process unit driver PCB (M)	Process unit driver PCB (C)	Process unit driver PCB (Bk)	Hopper driver PCB (Y)	Hopper driver PCB (M)	Hopper driver PCB (C)	Hopper driver PCB (Bk)	Pre-fixing feed driver PCB	Secondary transfer/ duplexing driver PCB	Fixing duplexing feed driver PCB	DC controller PCB 1-2
M195					J1421Y/ J1410Y							J1014
M196							J1421K/ J1410K					J1017
M197							J1421C/ J1410C					J1016
M198						J1421M/ J1410M						J1015
M314											J4016/ J4070	J1072

16.4.2.2 Main Station(2/6)

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

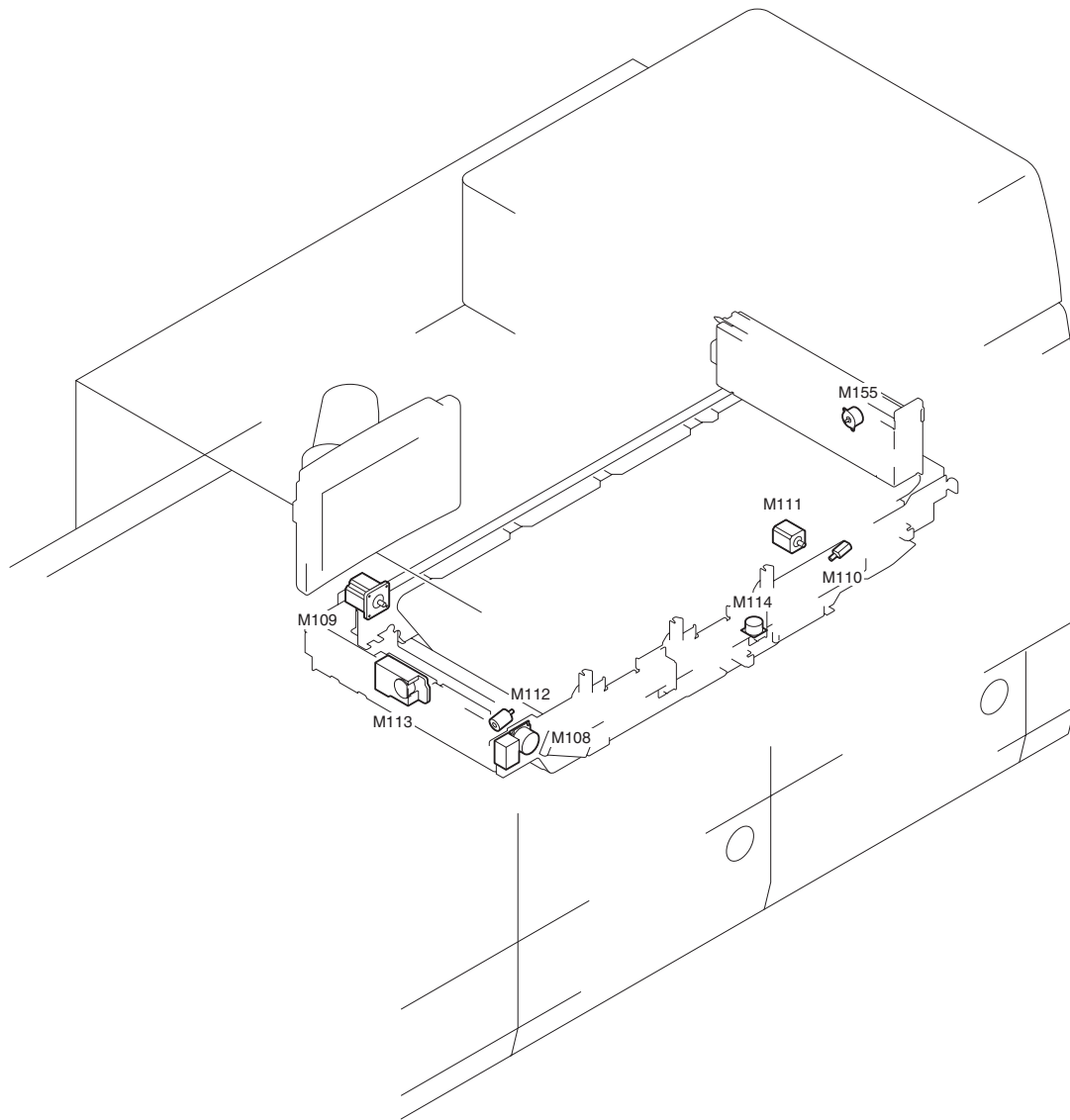
F-16-65
T-16-10

Symbol	Parts Name	Function	Parts No.	PART-CHK	E-code	Connector No.			
						Vertical path/lower feed driver PCB	Secondary transfer/duplexing driver PCB	DC controller PCB 1-1	DC controller PCB 1-2
M172	Lower feed motor 4	feed paper at lower feed unit	FK2-3125	MTR>7		J1503/ J1500		J1018	
M173	Lower feed motor 2	feed paper at lower feed unit	FK2-3125	MTR>8		J1506/ J1501		J1019	
M174	Lower feed motor 3	feed paper at lower feed unit	FK2-3125	MTR>9		J1506/ J1501		J1019	
M175	Lower feed motor 1	feed paper at lower feed unit	FK2-3125	MTR>10		J1506/ J1501		J1019	
M176	POD deck path feed motor	feed paper from POD deck	FK2-3125	MTR>11		J1504/ J1500		J1018	
M177	Right deck feeding motor	feed paper from right deck	FK2-3125	MTR>3		J1504/ J1500		J1018	
M178	Vertical path feed motor	feed paper at pickup vertical pass	FK2-3125	MTR>4		J1503/ J1500		J1018	
M185	Duplexing feed motor 1	feed paper in main station duplexing unit	FK2-3125	MTR>56			J1506/ J1501		J1025

Symbol	Parts Name	Function	Parts No.	PART-CHK	E-code	Connector No.			
						Vertical path/ lower feed driver PCB	Secondary transfer/ duplexing driver PCB	DC controller PCB 1-1	DC controller PCB 1-2
M186	Duplexing feed motor 2	feed paper in main station duplexing unit	FK2-3125	MTR>55			J1506/ J1501		J1025
M187	Duplexing feed motor 3	feed paper in main station duplexing unit	FK2-3125	MTR>54			J1506/ J1501		J1025

16.4.2.3 Main Station(3/6)

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

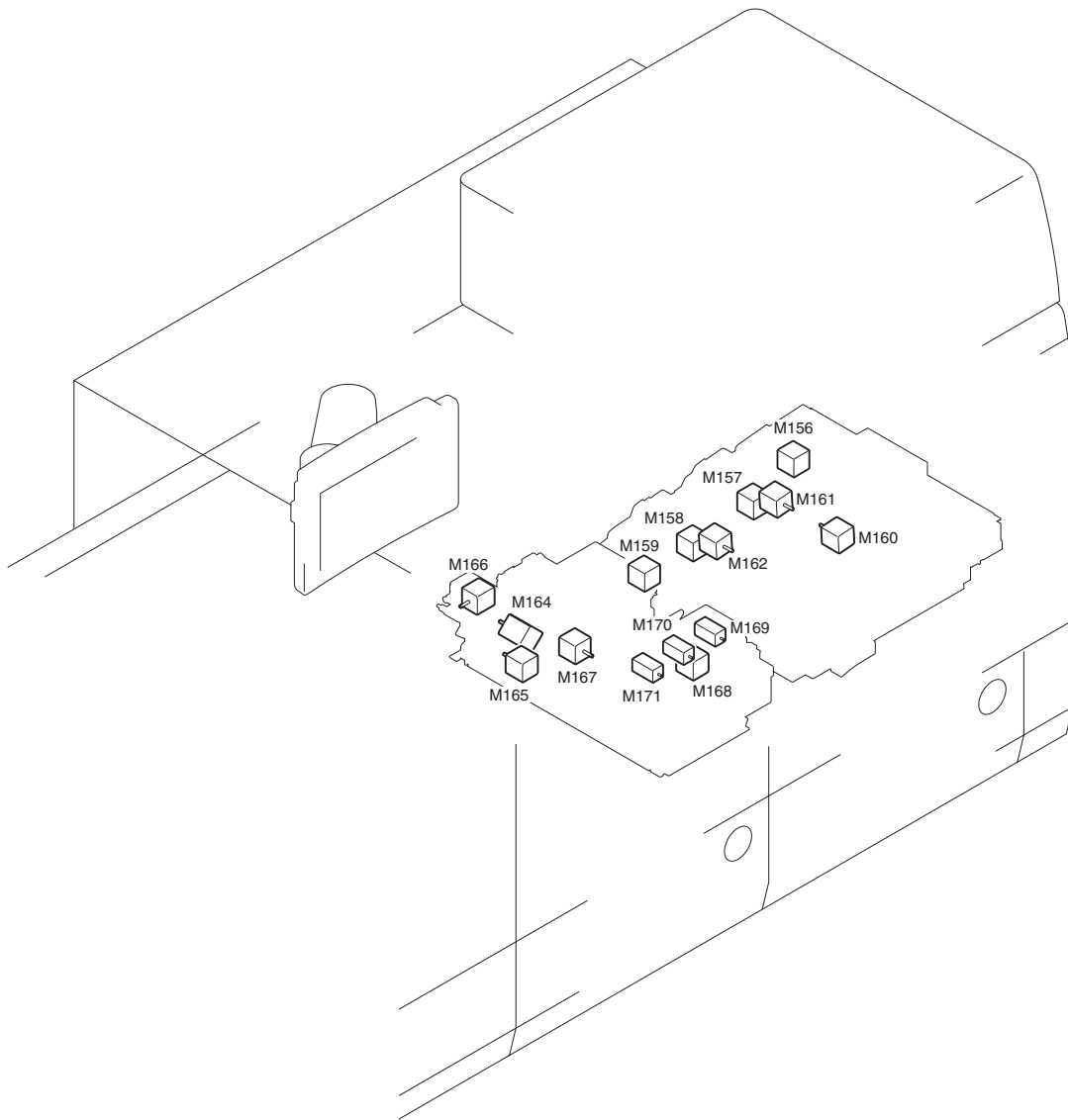
F-16-66
T-16-11

Symbol	Parts Name	Function	Parts No.	PART-CHK	E-code	Connector No.			
						ITB driver PCB (left)	ITB driver PCB (right)	ITB driver PCB (center)	DC controller PCB 1-1
M108	ITB cleaner motor	clean ITB surface	FK2-2725		E078-0001	J1340/ J1338			J1046
M109	ITB driving motor	drive ITB	FK2-3145		E012-10xx			J1310/ J1302	J1033
M110	ITB pre-transfer charging wire cleaning motor	clean ITB pre-transfer charging wire	FL2-0991		E060-3005			J1311/ J1302	J1033
M111	ITB steering motor	correct ITB displacement	FK2-3144					J1311/ J1302	J1033
M112	ITB web motor	drive ITB web	FG3-0698		E076-0003, 0005			J1313/ J1302	J1033
M113	ITB web releasing motor	press/release ITB web	FK2-0017		E076-0001, 0004	J1342/ J1338			J1046
M114	Leading edge registration patch sensor shutter motor	open/close leading edge registration patch sensor shutter	FK2-2729		E018-0101, 0102, 0103		J1332/ J1330		J1032

Symbol	Parts Name	Function	Parts No.	PART-CHK	E-code	Connector No.			
						ITB driver PCB (left)	ITB driver PCB (right)	ITB driver PCB (center)	DC controller PCB 1-1
M155	Color registration patch sensor shutter motor	open/close color registration patch sensor shutter	FK2-2729	MTR>12	E018-0201, 0202, 0203				

16.4.2.4 Main Station(4/6)

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

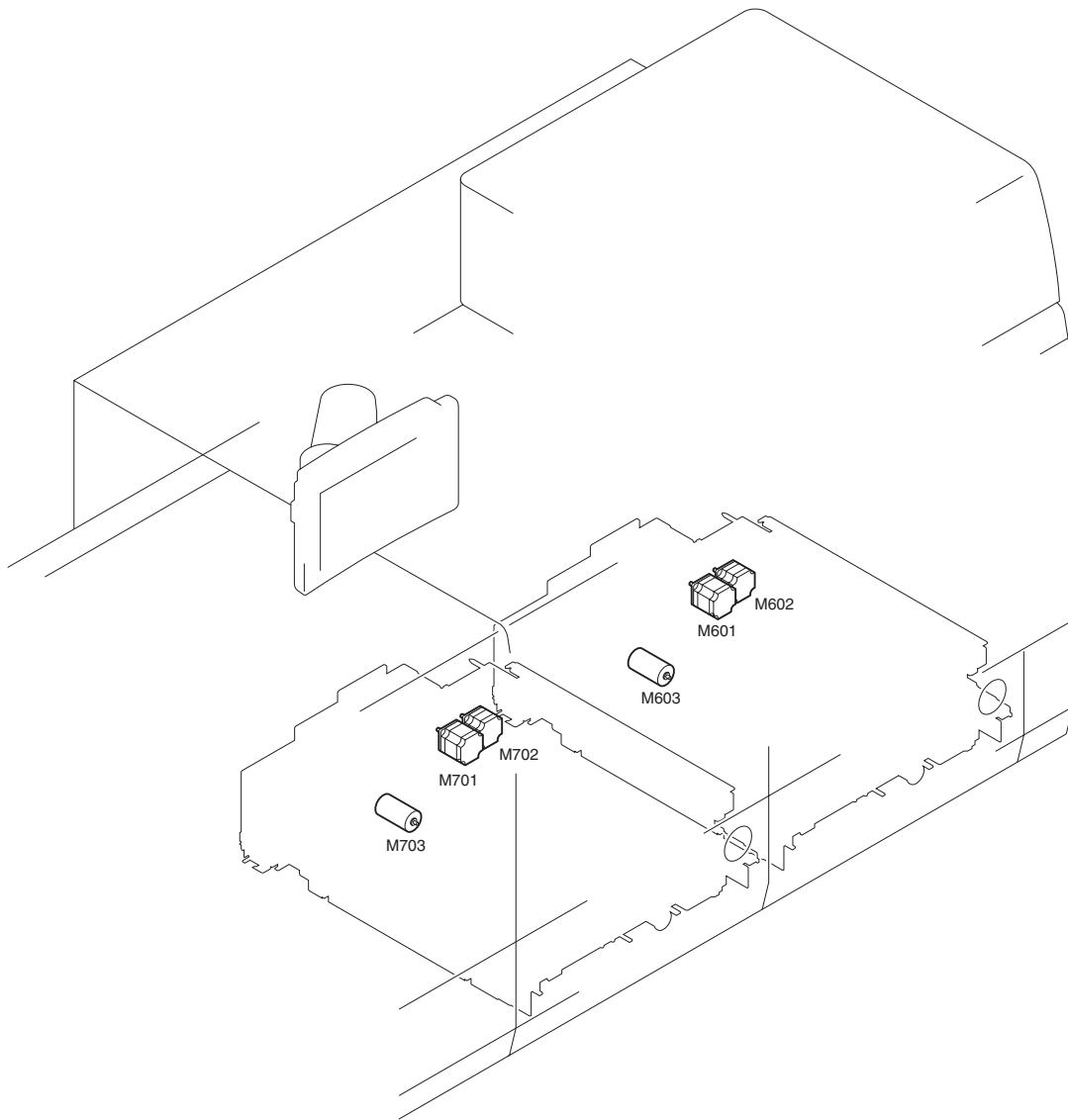
F-16-67
T-16-12

Symbol	Parts Name	Function	Parts No.	PART-CHK	E-code	Connector No.		
						Registration feed driver PCB (right)	Registration feed driver PCB (left)	DC controller PCB 1-1
M156	Pre-registration motor 1	feed paper at pre-registration unit	FK2-3125	MTR>17		J1220/J1210		J1020
M157	Pre-registration motor 2	feed paper at pre-registration unit	FK2-3125	MTR>18		J1220/J1210		J1020
M158	Pre-registration motor 3	feed paper at pre-registration unit	FK2-3125	MTR>19		J1221/J1210		J1020
M159	Pre-registration motor 4	feed paper at pre-registration unit	FK2-3125	MTR>20		J1221/J1210		J1020
M160	Pre-registration pressure release motor 1	press/release feed roller in pre-registration unit	FK2-3124	MTR24	E015-0120	J1222/J1210		J1020
M161	Pre-registration pressure release motor 2	press/release feed roller in pre-registration unit	FK2-3124	MTR25	E015-0220	J1222/J1210		J1020
M162	Pre-registration pressure release motor 3	press/release feed roller in pre-registration unit	FK2-3124	MTR14	E015-0320	J1222/J1210		J1020
M164	Registration motor	drive registration roller	FK2-3127	MTR22			J1223/J1210	J1022
M165	Registration releasing motor	press/release registration roller	FK2-3124	MTR30	E015-0150		J1220/J1210	J1022
M166	Registration swing motor	correct side registration	FK2-3124	MTR31	E015-0250		J1221/J1210	J1022

Symbol	Parts Name	Function	Parts No.	PART-CHK	E-code	Connector No.		
						Registration feed driver PCB (right)	Registration feed driver PCB (left)	DC controller PCB 1-1
M167	Cross feed push-on plate jogging motor	shift cross feed push-on plate	FM2-5180	MTR29			J1221/J1210	J1022
M168	Cross feed motor	drive cross feed roller	FK2-3124	MTR21			J1222/J1210	J1022
M169	Cross feed pressure release motor 1	press/release cross feed roller	FK2-3143	MTR26	E015-0130		J1222/J1210	J1022
M170	Cross feed pressure release motor 2	press/release cross feed roller	FK2-3143	MTR27	E015-0230		J1222/J1210	J1022
M171	Cross feed pressure release motor 3	press/release cross feed roller	FK2-3143	MTR28	E015-0330		J1220/J1210	J1022

16.4.2.5 Main Station(5/6)

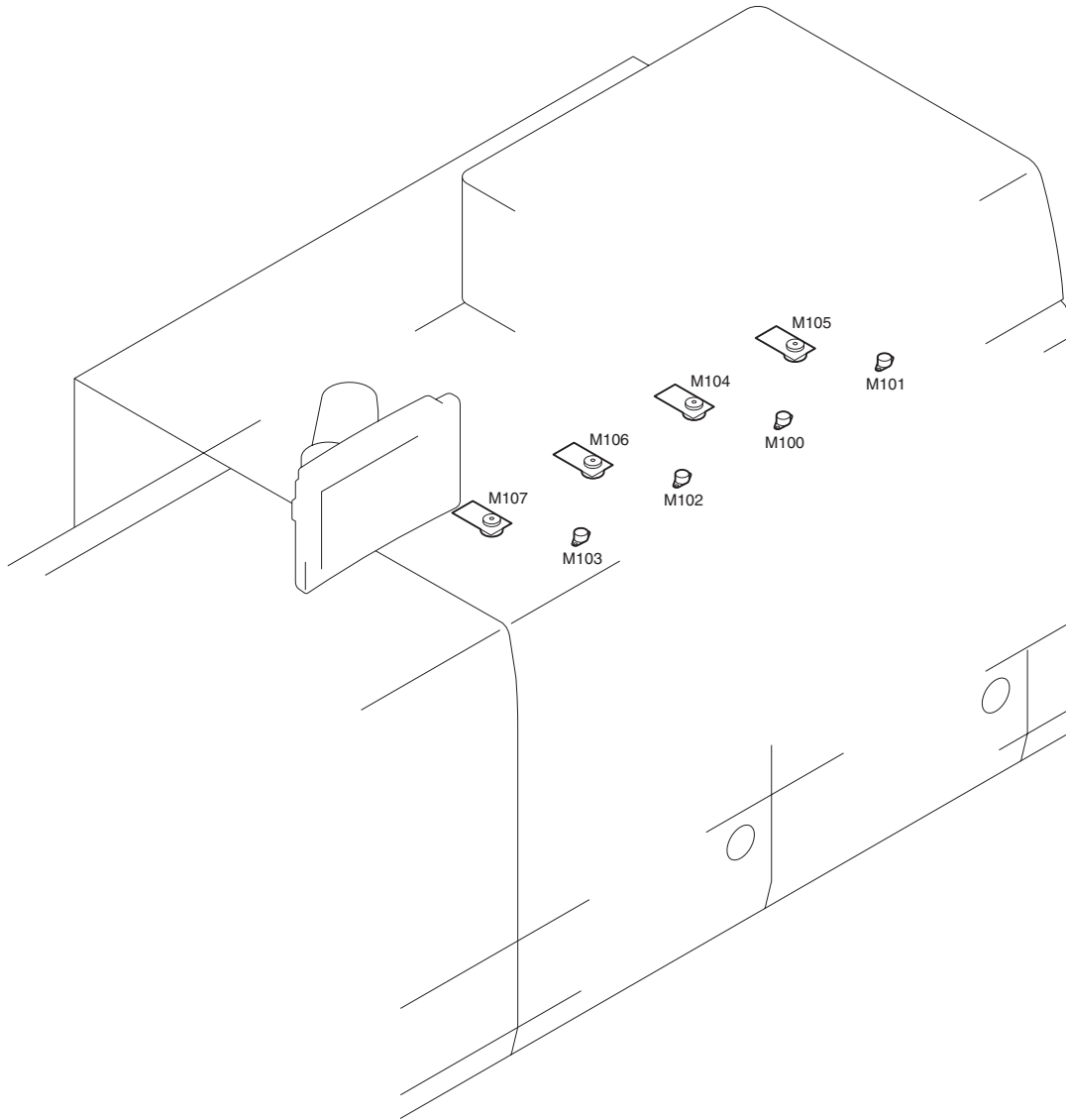
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

F-16-68
T-16-13

Symbol	Parts Name	Function	Parts No.	PART-CHK	E-code	Connector No.				
						Right deck driver PCB	Right deck pickup driver PCB	Left deck driver PCB	Left deck pickup driver PCB	DC controller PCB 1-1
M601	Right deck pickup belt motor	drive right deck pickup belt	FK2-3137	MTR>21			J2054R/ J2051R			J1060
M602	Right deck pull-out motor	drive right deck pull-out roller	FK2-3130	MTR>2			J2054R/ J2051R			J1060
M603	Right deck lifter motor	drive right deck lifter	FK2-2972			J2105R/ J2102R	J2056R/ J2051R			J1060
M701	Left deck pickyp belt motor	drive left deck pickup belt	FK2-3137	MTR>5					J2054L/ J2051L	J1064
M702	Left deck pull-out motor	drive left deck pull-out roller	FK2-3130	MTR>6					J2054L/ J2051L	J1064
M703	Left deck lifter motor	drive left deck lifter	FK2-2972					J2105L/ J2102L	J2056L/ J2051L	J1064

16.4.2.6 Main Station(6/6)

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000



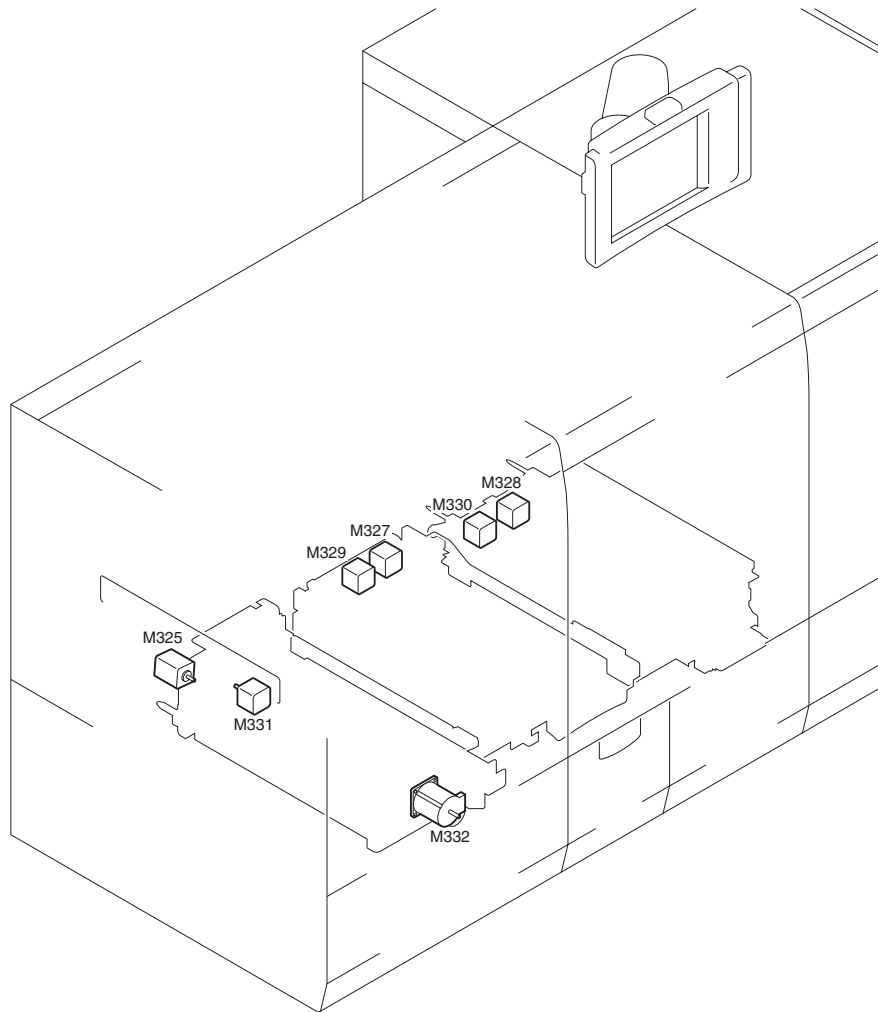
F-16-69
T-16-14

Symbol	Parts Name	Function	Parts No.	PART-CHK	E-code	Connector No.
						DC controller PCB 1-3
M100	Lens skew control motor (C)	Lens skew control (C)	FM2-4887 (laser scanner assembly)			J1134
M101	Lens skew control motor (Bk)	Lens skew control (Bk)	FM2-4887 (laser scanner assembly)			J1144
M102	Lens skew control motor (M)	Lens skew control (M)	FM2-4887 (laser scanner assembly)			J1124
M103	Lens skew control motor (Y)	Lens skew control (Y)	FM2-4887 (laser scanner assembly)			J1114
M104	Laser scanner motor (C)	drive C laser scanner mirror	FM2-4887 (laser scanner assembly)			J1132

Symbol	Parts Name	Function	Parts No.	PART-CHK	E-code	Connector No.
						DC controller PCB 1-3
M105	Laser scanner motor (Bk)	drive Bk laser scanner mirror	FM2-4887 (laser scanner assembly)			J1142
M106	Laser scanner motor (M)	drive M laser scanner mirror	FM2-4887 (laser scanner assembly)			J1122
M107	Laser scanner motor (Y)	drive Y laser scanner mirror	FM2-4887 (laser scanner assembly)			J1112

16.4.2.7 Sub Station(1/5)

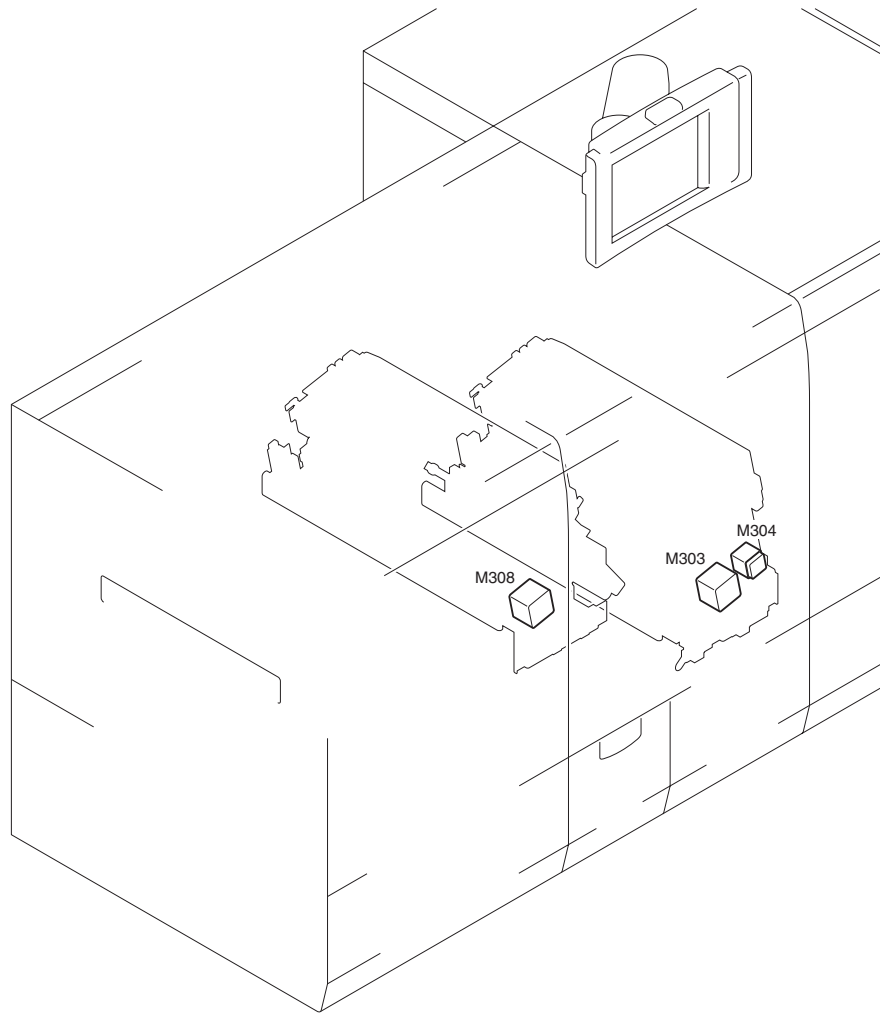
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

F-16-70
T-16-15

Symbol	Parts Name	Function	Parts No.	PART-CHK	E-code	Connector No.	
						Fixing duplexing feed driver PCB	DC controller PCB 1-2
M325	Duplexing decurler advancement adjusting motor	press/release duplexing decurler	FK2-3136	MTR>58		J4256/ J4070	J1072
M327	Fixing duplexing feed motor 5-2	feed paper in sub station fixing duplexing unit	FK2-3125	MTR>52		J4250/ J4070	J1072
M328	Fixing duplexing feed motor 4	feed paper in sub station fixing duplexing unit	FK2-3125	MTR>53		J4252/ J4070	J1072
M329	Fixing duplexing feed motor 6	feed paper in sub station fixing duplexing unit	FK2-3125	MTR>51		J4252/ J4070	J1072
M330	Fixing duplexing feed motor 5-1	feed paper in sub station fixing duplexing unit	FK2-3125	MTR>52		J4250/ J4070	J1072
M331	Fixing duplexing feed motor 7	feed paper in sub station fixing duplexing unit	FK2-3129	MTR>50		J4254/ J4070	J1072
M332	Duplexing decurler driving motor 2	drive duplexing decurler	FK2-3152			J4256/ J4070	J1072

16.4.2.8 Sub Station(2/5)

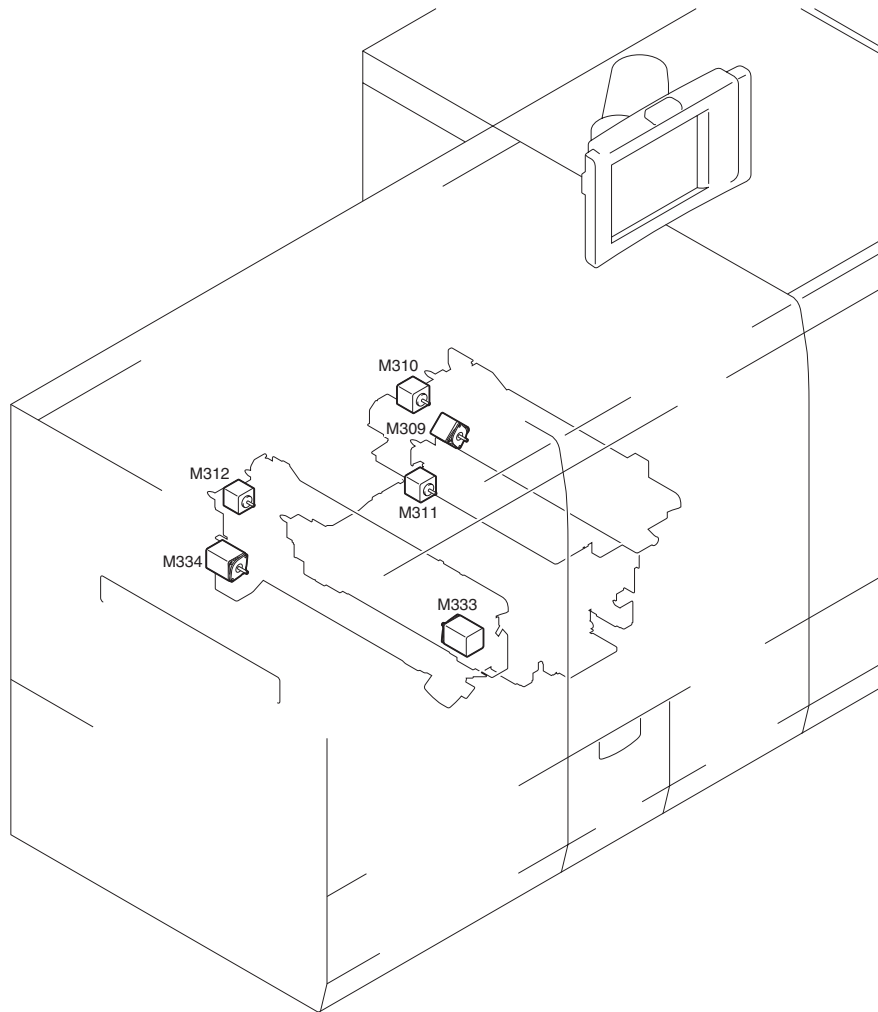
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

F-16-71
T-16-16

Symbol	Parts Name	Function	Parts No.	PART-CHK	E-code	Connector No.			
						Primary fixing inner driver PCB	Secondary fixing inner driver PCB	Fixing duplexing feed driver PCB	DC controller PCB 1-2
M303	Primary fixing pressure belt pressure motor	press/release primary fixing pressure belt	FK2-3132		E842-0111	J4370P/ J4360P		J4080/ J4070	J1072
M304	Primary fixing pressure belt full displacement control motor	correct displacement primary fixing pressure belt	FK2-3126			J4371P/ J4360P		J4080/ J4070	J1072
M308	Secondary fixing pressure roller pressure motor	press/release secondary fixing pressure belt	FK2-3132		E842-0211		J4370S/ J4360S	J4085/ J4070	J1072

16.4.2.9 Sub Station(3/5)

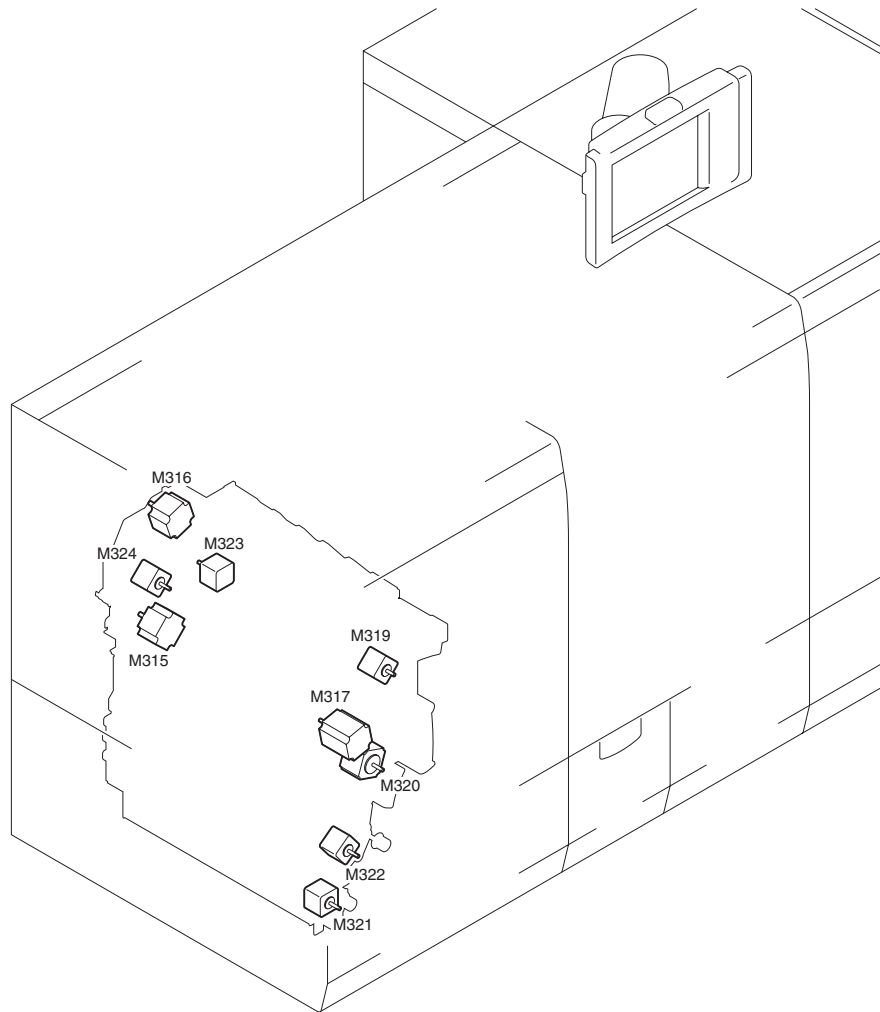
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

F-16-72
T-16-17

Symbol	Parts Name	Function	Parts No.	PART-CHK	E-code	Connector No.	
						Fixing duplexing feed driver PCB	DC controller PCB 1-2
M309	Fixing flapper motor	drive fixing flapper	FK2-3126	MTR>46	E015-0110	J4251/J4070	J1072
M310	Tandem feed motor	feed paper in tandem unit	FK2-3125	MTR>35		J4251/J4070	J1072
M311	Bypass feed motor	feed paper in bypass unit	FK2-3125	MTR>36		J4253/J4070	J1072
M312	Merger path feed motor	feed paper in merger path unit	FK2-3125	MTR>37		J4254/J4070	J1072
M333	Bypass decurler disengage/engage motor	press/release bypass decurler	FK2-3136			J4255/J4070	J1072
M334	Bypass decurler driving motor	drive bypass decurler	FK2-3136			J4255/J4070	J1072

16.4.2.10 Sub Station(4/5)

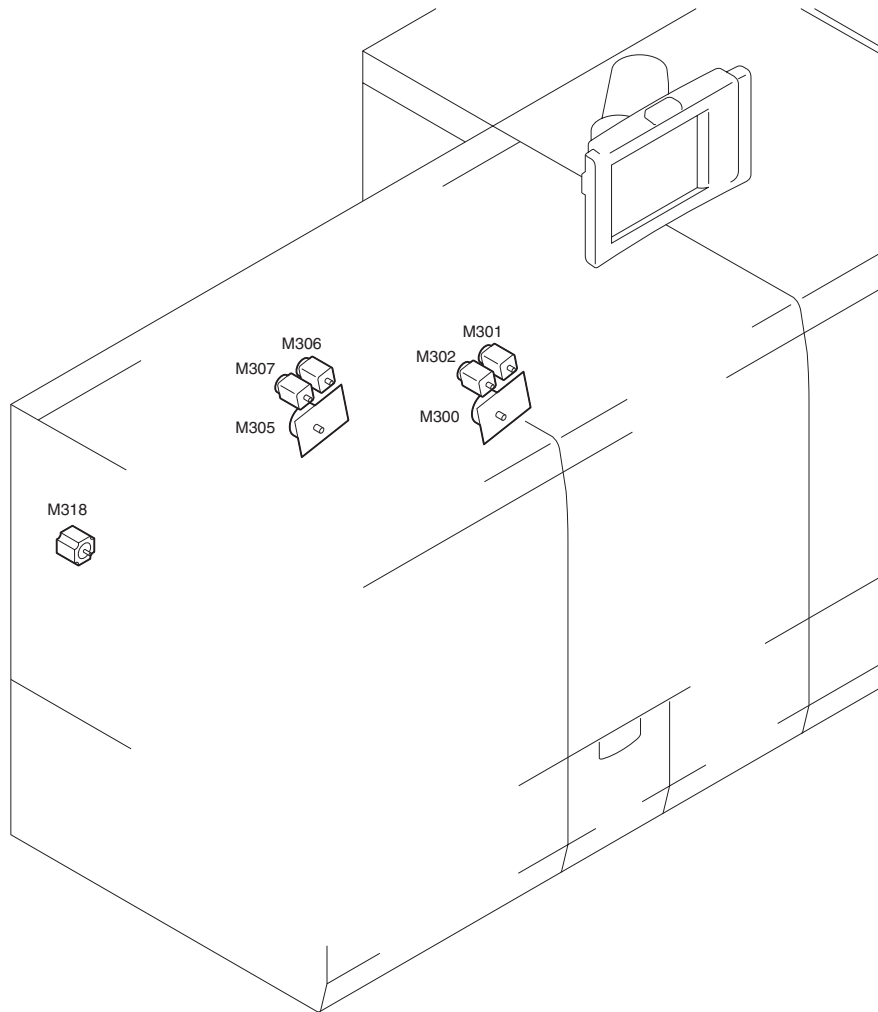
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

F-16-73
T-16-18

Symbol	Parts Name	Function	Parts No.	PART-CHK	E-code	Connector No.		
						Reverse / external delivery driver PCB	Fixing duplexing feed driver PCB	DC controller PCB 1-2
M315	Delivery decurler advancement adjusting motor 1	adjusti delivery decurler advancement (lower)	FK2-3132	MTR>44		J4120/ J4110	J4090/ J4070	J1072
M316	Delivery decurler advancement adjusting motor 2	adjusti delivery decurler advancement (upper)	FK2-3132	MTR>45		J4120/ J4110	J4090/ J4070	J1072
M317	Delivery decurler motor	drive delivery decurler	FK2-3135	MTR>43		J4124/ J4111	J4091/ J4070	J1072
M319	Delivery reverse flapper motor	drive delivery reverse flapper	FK2-3135	MTR>47	E015-0200	J4121/ J4110	J4090/ J4070	J1072
M320	Delivery reverse motor	drive delivery reverse unit	FK2-3134	MTR>41		J4121/ J4110	J4090/ J4070	J1072
M321	Duplexing delivery motor	drive duplexing delivery unit	FK2-3129	MTR>42		J4122/ J4110	J4090/ J4070	J1072
M322	Duplexing post-reverse motor	drive duplexing post-reverse unit	FK2-3129	MTR>49		J4122/ J4110	J4090/ J4070	J1072
M323	Pre-delivery feed motor 1	drive pre-delivery roller	FK2-3129	MTR>38		J4123/ J4110	J4090/ J4070	J1072
M324	Pre-delivery feed motor 2	drive delivery roller 2	FK2-3129	MTR>39		J4123/ J4110	J4090/ J4070	J1072

16.4.2.11 Sub Station(5/5)

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

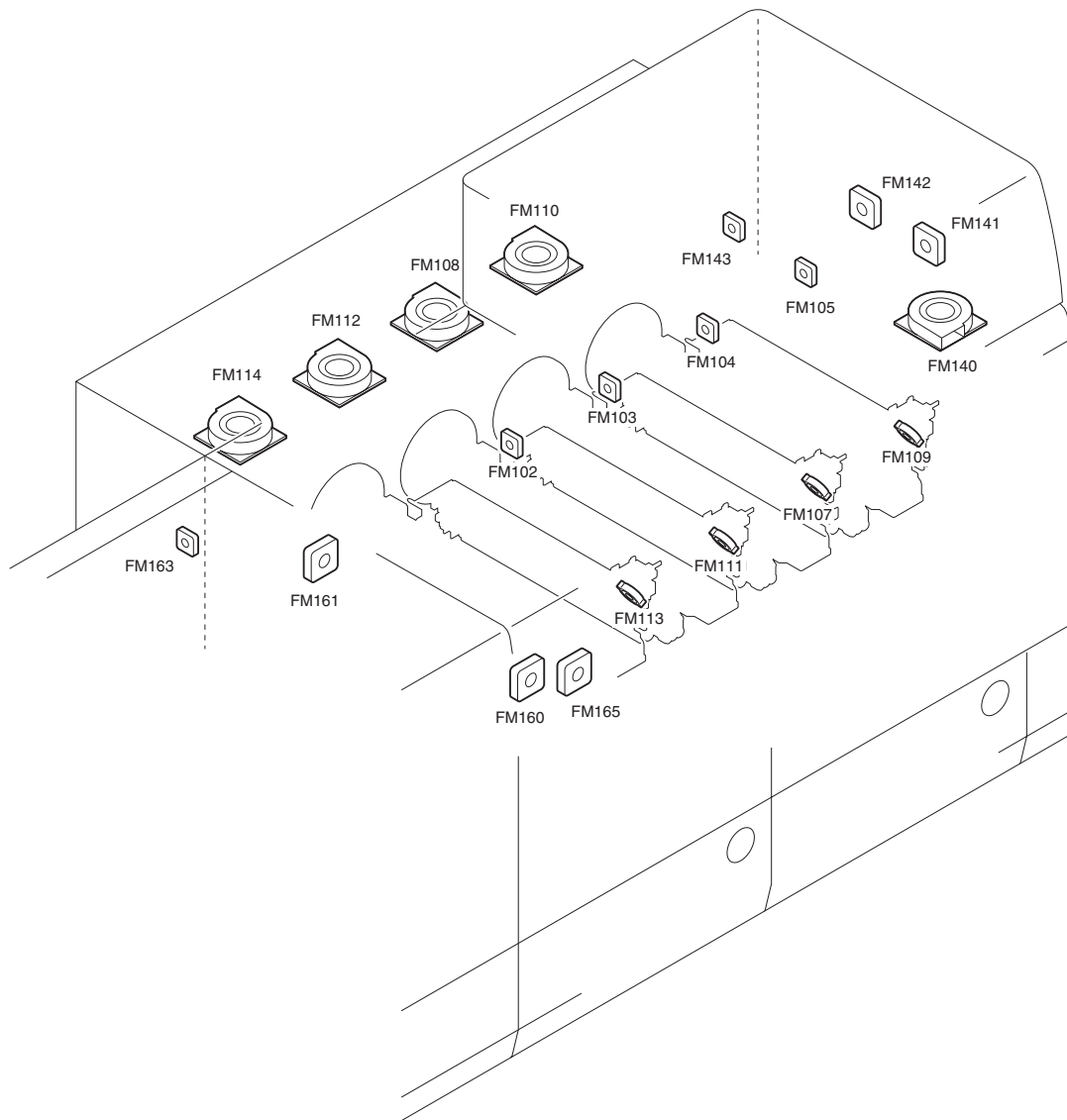
F-16-74
T-16-19

Symbol	Parts Name	Function	Parts No.	PART-CHK	E-code	Connector No.			
						Primary fixing external driver PCB	Secondary fixing external driver PCB	Duplexing feed driver PCB	DC controller PCB 1-2
M300	Primary fixing driving motor	drive primary fixing unit	FK2-2727		E014-0100	J4165P/ J4182P		J4082/ J4070	J1072
M301	Primary fixing outside heating roller pressure motor	press/release primary fixing outside heating roller	FK2-3154		E842-0101, 0121	J4163P/ J4182P		J4082/ J4070	J1072
M302	Primary fixing web pressure motor	press/release primary fixing web	FK2-3154		E842-0131	J4164P/ J4182P		J4082/ J4070	J1072
M305	Secondary fixing driving motor	drive secondary fixing unit	FK2-2727		E014-0200		J4165S/ J4182S	J4087/ J4070	J1072
M306	Secondary fixing outside heating roller pressure motor	press/release secondary fixing outside heating roller	FK2-3154		E842-0201, 0221	J4163S/ J4182S		J4087/ J4070	J1072
M307	Secondary fixing web pressure motor	press/release secondary fixing web	FK2-3154		E842-0231	J4164S/ J4182S		J4087/ J4070	J1072
M318	Delivery motor	drive delivery roller 3	FK2-3132					J4257/ J4070	J1072

16.4.3 Fan

16.4.3.1 Main Station(1/3)

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000



F-16-75
T-16-20

Symbol	Parts Name	Function	Parts No.	PART-CHK	Error Code/ Alarm Code
FM102	Laser cooling fan (C)	To cool the laser scanner unit	FH6-1486	FAN > 56	E121-0300
FM103	Laser cooling fan (Bk)	To cool the laser scanner unit	FH6-1486	FAN > 57	E121-0400
FM104	Laser cooling fan (M)	To cool the laser scanner unit	FH6-1486	FAN > 55	E121-0200
FM105	Laser cooling fan (Y)	To cool the laser scanner unit	FH6-1486	FAN > 56	E121-0100
FM107	Process unit cooling fan (C)	To cool the process unit	FK2-3149	FAN > 46	E820-0103
FM108	Process unit exhausting fan (C)	To exhaust air from the process unit	FK2-3098	FAN > 28	E820-0203
FM109	Process unit cooling fan (Bk)	To cool the process unit	FK2-3149	FAN > 47	E820-0104
FM110	Process unit exhausting fan (Bk)	To exhaust air from the process unit	FK2-3098	FAN > 29	E820-0204
FM111	Process unit cooling fan (M)	To cool the process unit	FK2-3149	FAN > 45	E820-0102
FM112	Process unit exhausting fan (M)	To exhaust air from the process unit	FK2-3098	FAN > 27	E820-0202
FM113	Process unit cooling fan (Y)	To cool the process unit	FK2-3149	FAN > 44	E820-0101
FM114	Process unit exhausting fan (Y)	To exhaust air from the process unit	FK2-3098	FAN > 26	E820-0201
FM140	Main station right cooling fan 1	To cool the main station	FK2-3100	FAN > 1	E822-0301
FM141	Main station right cooling fan 2	To cool the main station	FK2-3100	FAN > 2	E822-0302
FM142	Main station right cooling fan 3	To cool the main station	FK2-3100	FAN > 3	E822-0303
FM143	Main station rear right cooling fan	To cool the main station	FK2-3100	FAN > 4	E822-0304

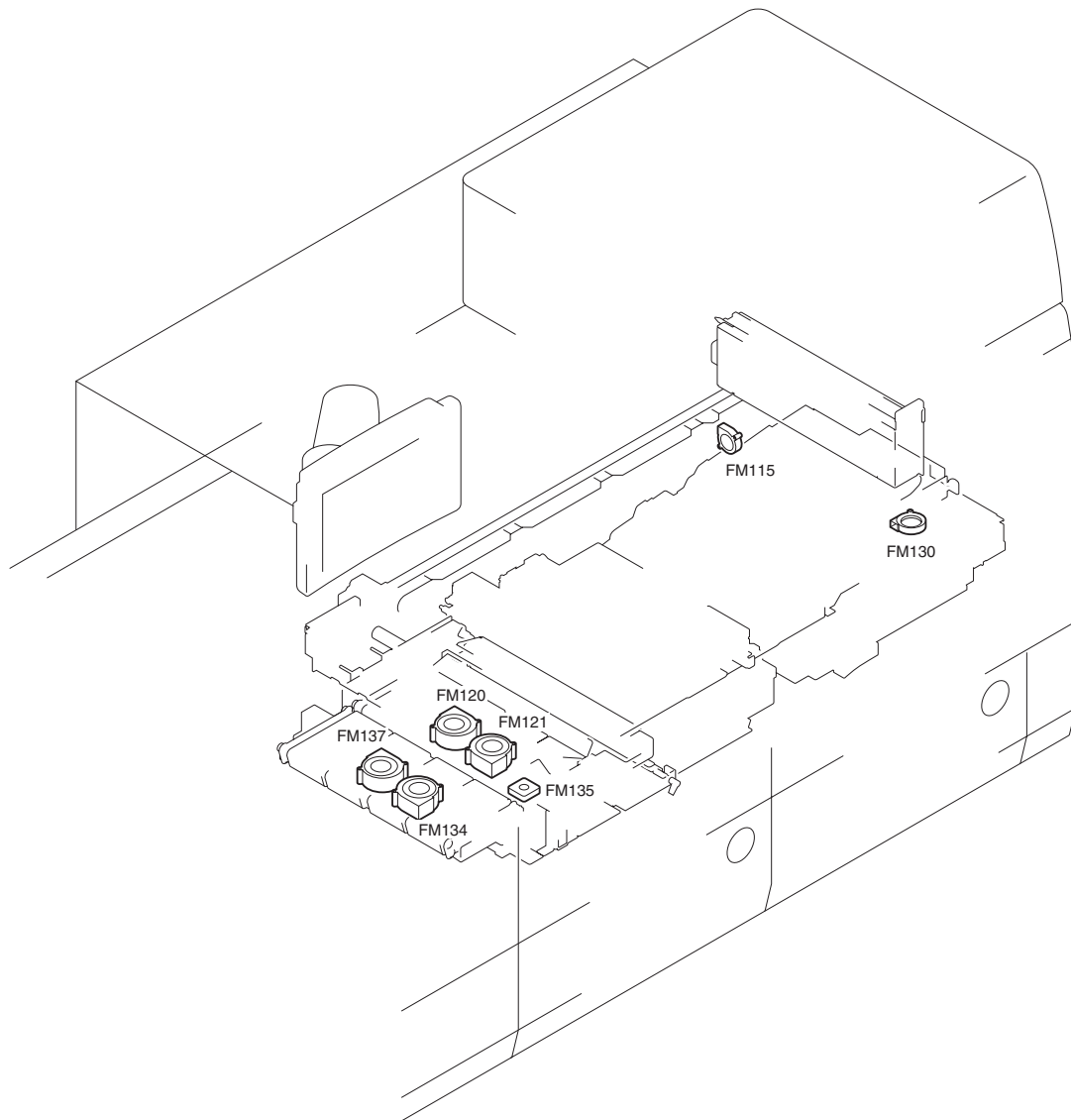
Symbol	Parts Name	Function	Parts No.	PART-CHK	Error Code / Alarm Code
FM160	Process unit front side cooling fan (Y)	To cool the developing assembly	FK2-3100	FAN > 70	E820-0301
FM161	Process unit rear side cooling fan (Y)	To cool the developing assembly	FK2-3100	FAN > 71	E820-0302
FM163	Main station rear left cooling fan	To cool the main station	FK2-3100	FAN > 72	E820-0305
FM165	Developing assembly cooling fan 1(Y)	To cool the developing assembly	FK2-3100	-	E820-0303

T-16-21

Symbol	Connector No.						
	Process unit driver PCB (C)	Process unit driver PCB (Bk)	Process unit driver PCB (M)	Process unit driver PCB (Y)	Secondary transfer/duplexing driver PCB cooling fan	Pre-fixing feed driver PCB	DC controller PCB 1-2
FM102							
FM103							
FM104							
FM105							
FM107	J1375C/J1360C						J1010
FM108							
FM109		J1375KJ1360K					J1012
FM110							
FM111			J1375M/J1360M				J1008
FM112							
FM113				J1375Y/J1360M			J1006
FM120					J1509/J1501		J1025
FM121					J1509/J1501		J1025
FM134						J1557/J1551	J1027
FM135					J1509/J1501		J1025
FM137						J1557/J1551	J1027
FM140							
FM141							
FM142							
FM143							
FM160							
FM161							
FM163							
FM165							

16.4.3.2 Main Station(2/3)

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000



F-16-76
T-16-22

Symbol	Parts Name	Function	Parts No.	PART-CHK	Error Code / Alarm Code
FM115	Pre-transfer exhausting fan	To exhaust air from the pre-transfer charge assembly	FK2-3149	FAN > 42	E823-0001
FM120	Pre-fixing feed rear right fan	To attract paper to the pre-fixing feed belt	FL2-6885	FAN > 20	E805-0402
FM121	Pre-fixing feed front right fan	To attract paper to the pre-fixing feed belt	FL2-6885	FAN > 22	E805-0401
FM130	Registration feed driver PCB right cooling fan	To cool the registration feed driver PCB	FM3-2089	FAN > 33	E822-0501
FM134	Pre-fixing feed front left fan	To attract paper to the pre-fixing feed belt	FL2-6885	FAN > 25	E805-0403
FM135	Secondary transfer/duplexing driver PCB cooling fan	To cool the secondary transfer/duplexing driver PCB	FK2-3148	FAN > 49	E822-0502
FM137	Pre-fixing feed rear left fan	To attract paper to the pre-fixing feed belt	FL2-6885	FAN > 24	E805-0404

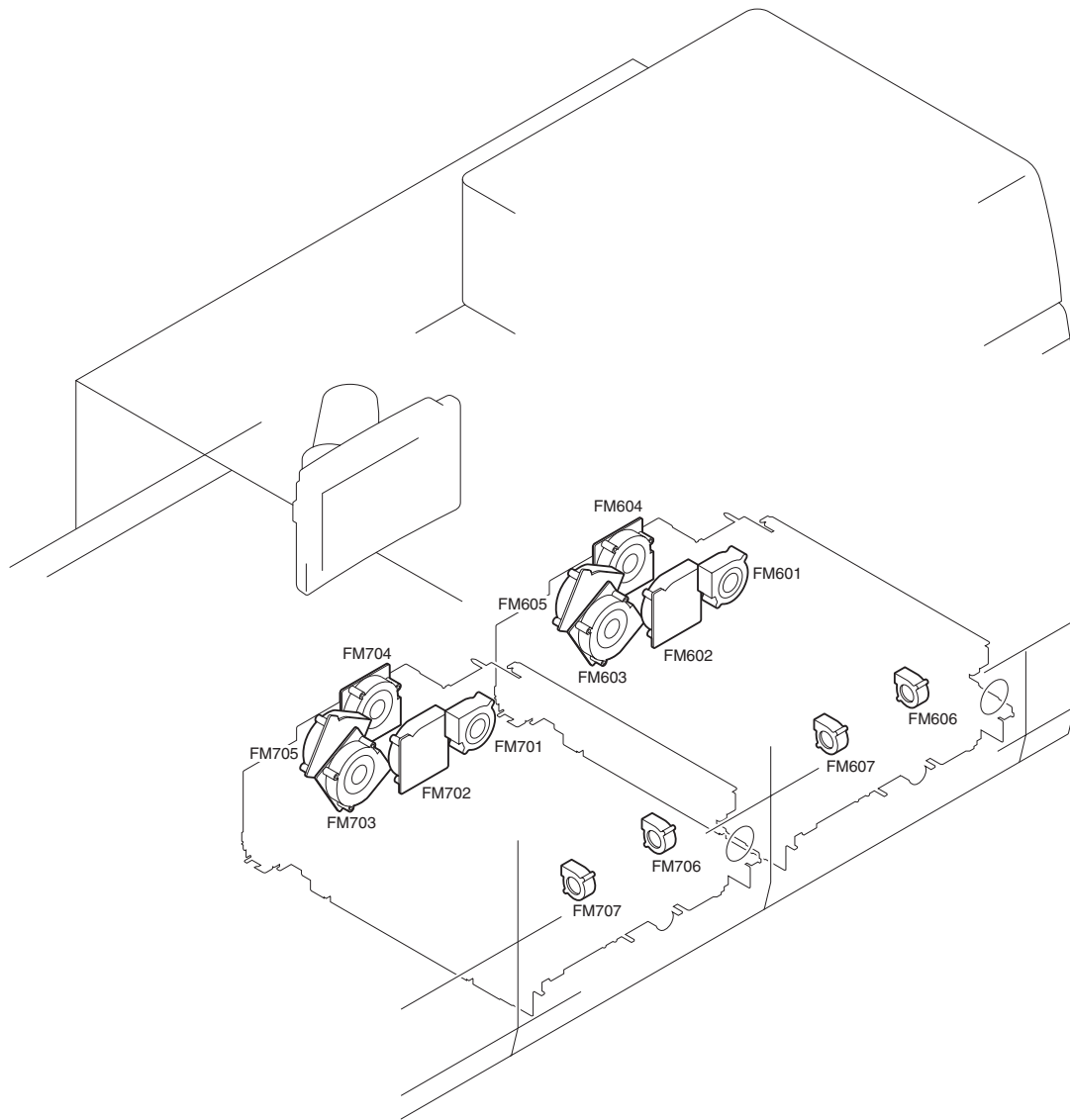
T-16-23

Symbol	Connector No.		
	ITB driver PCB (right)	DC controller PCB 1-1	Registration feed driver PCB (right)
FM115	J1334/J1330	J1032	
FM120			
FM121			

Symbol	Connector No.		
	ITB driver PCB (right)	DC controller PCB 1-1	Registration feed driver PCB (right)
FM130		J1021	J1232R/J1211R
FM134			
FM135			
FM137			

16.4.3.3 Main Station(3/3)

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000



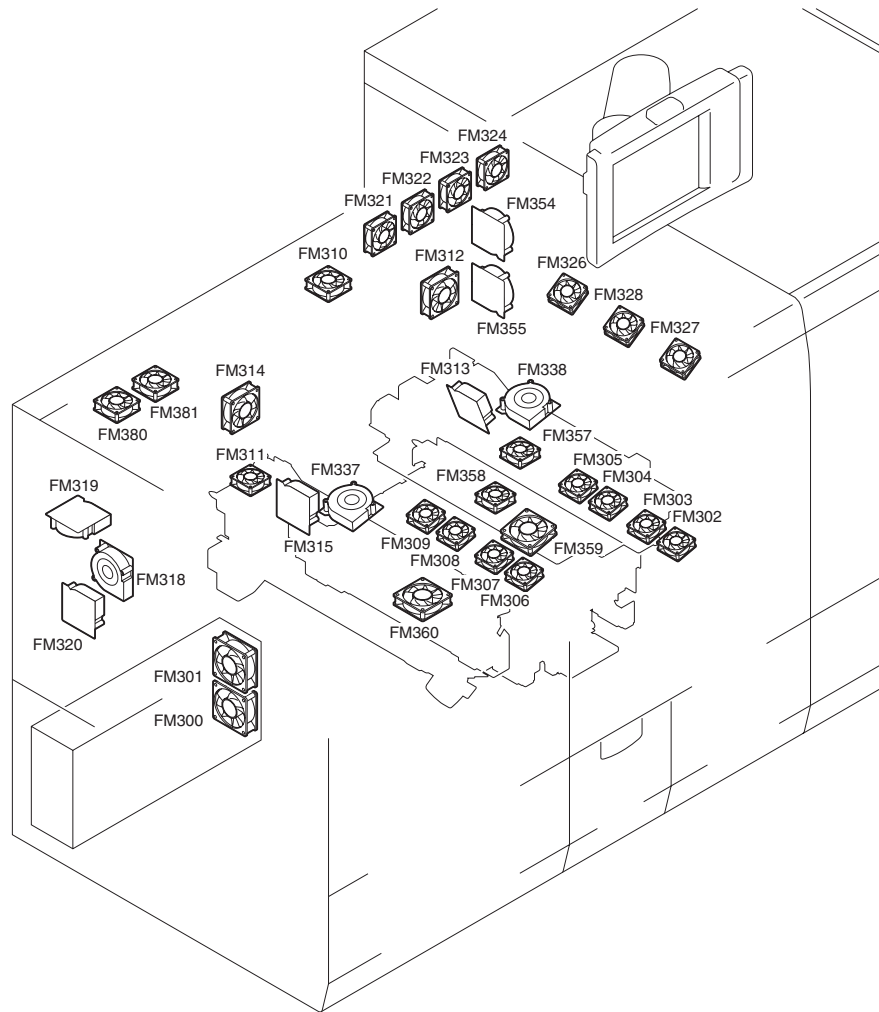
F-16-77
T-16-24

Symbol	Parts Name	Function	Parts No.	PART-CHK	Error Code / Alarm Code
FM601	Right deck suction fan	To pickup the paper	FK2-2974	-	04-1057/04-1058
FM602	Right deck main right floatation fan	To separate the paper	FK2-2974	-	04-1048/04-1049
FM603	Right deck main left floatation fan	To separate the paper	FK2-2974	-	04-10-50/04-1051
FM604	Right deck sub right floatation fan	To separate the paper	FK2-2974	-	04-1052/04-1053
FM605	Right deck sub left floatation fan	To separate the paper	FK2-2974	-	04-1054/04-1055
FM606	Right deck side right fan	To separate the paper (in larger sizes)	FK2-2975	-	04-1059
FM607	Right deck side left fan	To separate the paper (in larger sizes)	FK2-2975	-	04-1060
FM701	Left deck suction fan	To pickup the paper	FK2-2974	-	04-1157/04-1158
FM702	Left deck main right floatation fan	To separate the paper	FK2-2974	-	04-1148/04-1149
FM703	Left deck main left floatation fan	To separate the paper	FK2-2974	-	04-11-50/04-1151
FM704	Left deck sub right floatation fan	To separate the paper	FK2-2974	-	04-1152/04-1153
FM705	Left deck sub left floatation fan	To separate the paper	FK2-2974	-	04-1154/04-1155
FM706	Left deck side right fan	To separate the paper (in larger sizes)	FK2-2975	-	04-1159
FM707	Left deck side left fan	To separate the paper (in larger sizes)	FK2-2975	-	04-1160

Symbol	Connector No.					
	Registration feed driver PCB (right)	Right deck pickup driver PCB	Right deck driver PCB	Left deck pickup driver PCB	Left deck driver PCB	DC controller PCB 1-1
FM601		J2053R/J2051R				J1060
FM602		J2055R/J2051R				J1060
FM603		J2055R/J2051R				J1060
FM604		J2055R/J2051R				J1060
FM605		J2055R/J2051R				J1060
FM606		J2056R/J2051R	J2106R/J2102R			J1060
FM607		J2056R/J2051R	J2106R/J2102R			J1060
FM701				J2053L/J2051L		J1064
FM702				J2053L/J2051L		J1064
FM703				J2053L/J2051L		J1064
FM704				J2053L/J2051L		J1064
FM705				J2053L/J2051L		J1064
FM706				J2053L/J2051L	J2106L/J2102L	J1064
FM707				J2053L/J2051L	J2106L/J2102L	J1064

16.4.3.4 Sub Station (1/2)

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

F-16-78
T-16-26

Symbol	Parts Name	Function	Parts No.	PART-CHK	E Code/Alarm Code
FM300	Power supply cooling fan 7	To cool the power supply unit	FK2-3151	FAN > 53	E804-0104
FM301	Power supply cooling fan 8	To cool the power supply unit	FK2-3151	FAN > 53	E804-0104
FM302	Primary fixing belt cooling fan 1	To cool the fixing belt	FK2-3101	FAN > 90	E805-0101
FM303	Primary fixing belt cooling fan 2	To cool the fixing belt	FK2-3101	FAN > 91	E805-0102
FM304	Primary fixing belt cooling fan 3	To cool the fixing belt	FK2-3101	FAN > 92	E805-0103
FM305	Primary fixing belt cooling fan 4	To cool the fixing belt	FK2-3101	FAN > 93	E805-0104
FM306	Secondary fixing pressure roller cooling fan 1	To cool the pressure roller	FK2-3102	FAN > 97	E805-0301
FM307	Secondary fixing pressure roller cooling fan 2	To cool the pressure roller	FK2-3102	FAN > 98	E805-0302
FM308	Secondary fixing pressure roller cooling fan 3	To cool the pressure roller	FK2-3102	FAN > 99	E805-0303
FM309	Secondary fixing pressure roller cooling fan 4	To cool the pressure roller	FK2-3102	FAN > 100	E805-0304
FM310	Primary sub station power unit cooling fan	To cool the power unit located at the back of the sub-station	FK2-3100	FAN > 64	E805-0601
FM311	Secondary sub station power unit cooling fan	To cool the power unit located at the back of the sub-station	FK2-3100	FAN > 63	E805-0602
FM312	Primary fixing heat exhaust fan	To exhaust heat from the fixing assembly	FK2-3150	FAN > 62	E805-0201
FM313	Primary fixing inside delivery cooling fan	To cool the inner delivery unit and the paper at the fixing assembly	FK2-3098	FAN > 95	E822-0201
FM314	Secondary fixing heat exhaust fan	To exhaust heat from the fixing assembly	FK2-3150	FAN > 61	E805-0202
FM315	Secondary fixing inside delivery cooling fan	To cool the inner delivery unit and the paper at the fixing assembly	FK2-3098	FAN > 96	E822-0202
FM318	Delivery lower cooling fan	To cool the delivered paper through the delivery assembly	FK2-3098	FAN > 31	E822-0101
FM319	Delivery upper cooling fan	To cool the delivered paper through the delivery assembly	FK2-3098	FAN > 30	E822-0102

Symbol	Parts Name	Function	Parts No.	PART-CHK	E Code/Alarm Code
FM320	Duplexing decurler fan	To cool the delivered paper through the duplexing decurler	FK2-3098	FAN > 9	E822-0401
FM321	Station to station interval cooling fan 1	To cool the main station - sub station interval	FK2-3100	FAN > 10	E822-0601
FM322	Station to station interval cooling fan 2	To cool the main station - sub station interval	FK2-3100	FAN > 11	E822-0602
FM323	Station to station interval cooling fan 3	To cool the main station - sub station interval	FK2-3100	FAN > 12	E822-0603
FM324	Station to station interval cooling fan 4	To cool the main station - sub station interval	FK2-3100	FAN > 13	E822-0604
FM326	Station to station interval cooling fan 6	To cool the main station - sub station interval	FK2-3100	FAN > 15	E822-0606
FM327	Station to station interval cooling fan 7	To cool the main station - sub station interval	FK2-3100	FAN > 16	E822-0607
FM328	Station to station interval cooling fan 8	To cool the main station - sub station interval	FK2-3100	FAN > 17	E822-0608
FM337	Secondary fixing pressure roller cooling fan 5	To cool the pressure roller	FK2-3098	FAN > 89	E805-0305
FM338	Primary fixing belt cooling fan 5	To cool the fixing belt	FK2-3098	FAN > 94	E805-0105
FM354	Main station upper delivery fan	To exhaust air from the main station	FK2-3098	FAN > 80	E822-0801
FM355	Main station lower delivery fan	To exhaust air from the main station	FK2-3098	FAN > 81	E822-0802
FM357	Tandem guide upper cooling fan	To cool the tandem guide and the delivered paper	FK2-3100	FAN > 83	E822-0902
FM358	Tandem guide lower cooling fan	To cool the tandem guide and the delivered paper	FK2-3100	FAN > 84	E822-0903
FM359	Bypass guide front cooling fan	To cool the tandem guide and the delivered paper	FK2-0540	FAN > 85	E822-0904
FM360	Bypass guide rear cooling fan	To cool the tandem guide and the delivered paper	FK2-0540	FAN > 86	E822-0905
FM380	Fixing uneven gloss prevention fan right	Cooling papers for prevention of the uneven gloss	FK2-3100	-	-
FM381	Fixing uneven gloss prevention fan left	Cooling papers for prevention of the uneven gloss	FK2-3100	-	-

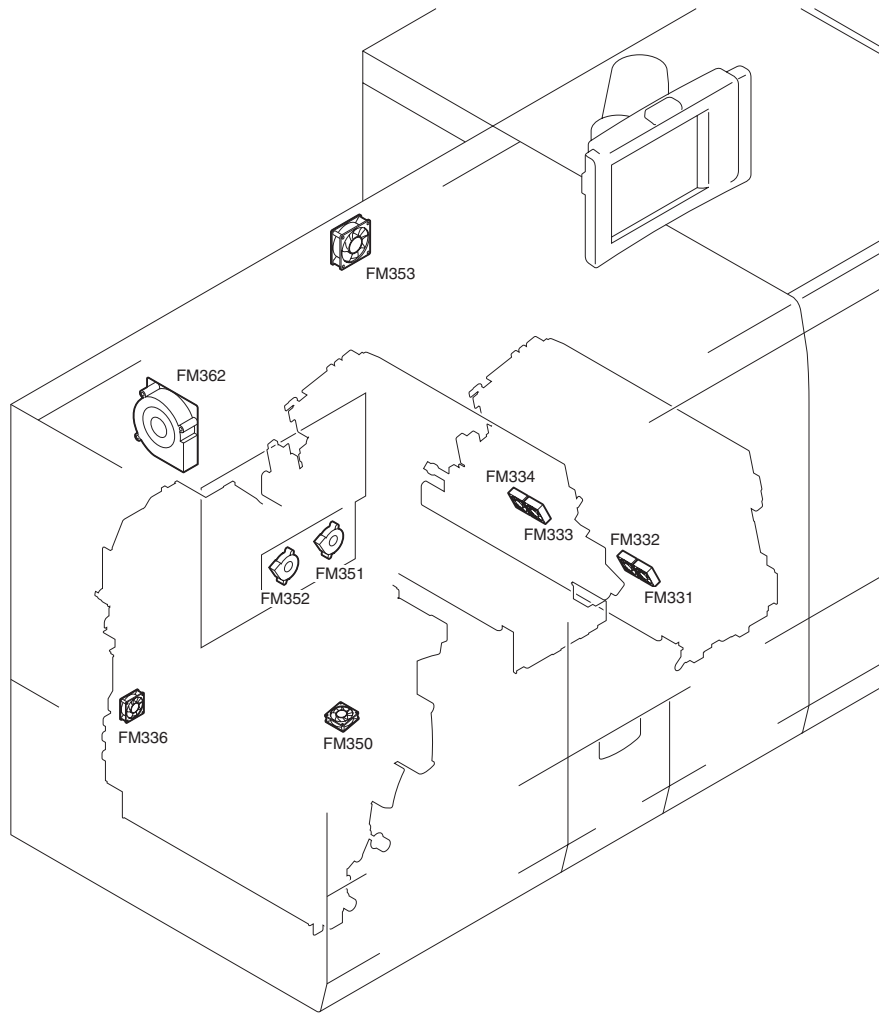
T-16-27

Symbol	Connector No.		
	Duplexing feed driver PCB	DC controller PCB 1-2	24V power supply 4
FM300	-	-	CN1
FM301	-	-	CN2
FM302	J4100/J4070	J1072	-
FM303	J4100/J4070	J1072	-
FM304	J4100/J4070	J1072	-
FM305	J4100/J4070	J1072	-
FM306	J4101/J4070	J1072	-
FM307	J4101/J4070	J1072	-
FM308	J4101/J4070	J1072	-
FM309	J4101/J4070	J1072	-
FM310	J4104/J4070	J1072	-
FM311	J4105/J4070	J1072	-
FM312	J4104/J4070	J1072	-
FM313	J4104/J4070	J1072	-
FM314	J4105/J4070	J1072	-
FM315	J4105/J4070	J1072	-
FM318	J4021/J4070	J1072	-
FM319	J4021/J4070	J1072	-
FM320	J4021/J4070	J1072	-
FM321	J4023/J4070	J1072	-
FM322	J4023/J4070	J1072	-
FM323	J4023/J4070	J1072	-
FM324	J4023/J4070	J1072	-
FM326	J4023/J4070	J1072	-
FM327	J4023/J4070	J1072	-
FM328	J4023/J4070	J1072	-
FM337	J4101/J4070	J1072	-
FM338	J4100/J4070	J1072	-
FM354	J4104/J4070	J1072	-
FM355	J4104/J4070	J1072	-
FM357	J4106/J4070	J1072	-

Symbol	Connector No.		
	Duplexing feed driver PCB	DC controller PCB 1-2	24V power supply 4
FM358	J4106/J4070	J1072	-
FM359	J4106/J4070	J1072	-
FM360	J4106/J4070	J1072	-
FM380	J4021/J4070	J1072	-
FM381	J4021/J4070	J1072	-

16.4.3.5 Sub Station(2/2)

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000



F-16-79
T-16-28

Symbol	Parts Name	Function	Parts No.	PART-CHK	Error Code
FM331	Primary fixing separating cooling fan 1	To cool the fixing belt (separating unit)	FK2-3148	FAN>100	E805-0701
FM332	Primary fixing separating cooling fan 2	To cool the fixing belt (separating unit)	FK2-3148	FAN>101	E805-0702
FM333	Primary fixing separating cooling fan 3	To cool the fixing belt (separating unit)	FK2-3148	FAN>102	E805-0703
FM334	Primary fixing separating cooling fan 4	To cool the fixing belt (separating unit)	FK2-3148	FAN>103	E805-0704
FM336	External delivery driver PCB cooling fan	To cool the external delivery driver PCB	FK2-3148	-	E822-0503
FM350	Delivery decurler cooling fan	To cool the delivered paper through the delivery assembly	FK2-3148	FAN>75	E822-0402
FM351	Fixing duplexing driver PCB left cooling fan	To cool the fixing duplexing driver PCB	FK2-3149	FAN > 77	E805-0801
FM352	Fixing duplexing driver PCB right cooling fan	To cool the fixing duplexing driver PCB	FK2-3149	FAN > 78	E805-0802
FM353	Reader cooling fan	To cool the reader (option)	FK2-0540	FAN > 79	E828-0001
FM361	Merger guide front fan	To cool the merger guide and the delivered paper	FK2-3099	FAN > 87	E822-0901

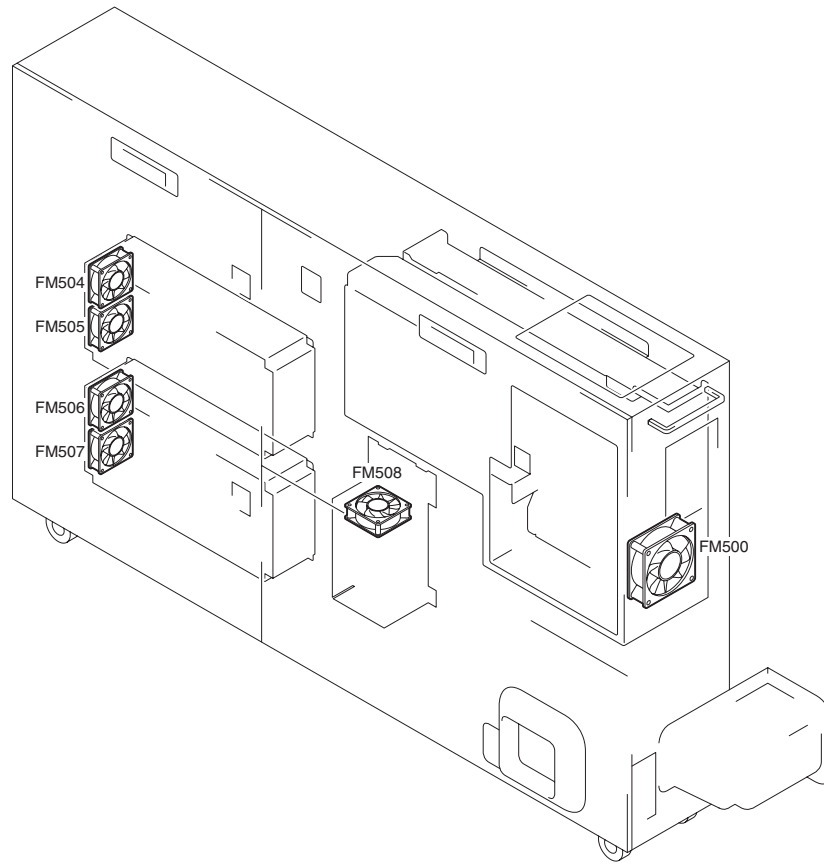
T-16-29

Symbol	Connector No.				
	Primary fixing inner driver PCB	Primary fixing heater driver PCB	DC controller PCB 1-2	External delivery driver PCB	Fixing duplexing driver PCB
FM331	J4372/J4360	J4080/J4400	J1003		
FM332	J4372/J4360	J4080/J4400	J1003		
FM333	J4372/J4360	J4080/J4400	J1003		
FM334	J4372/J4360	J4080/J4400	J1003		
FM336				J4128	J4091

Symbol	Connector No.				
	Primary fixing inner driver PCB	Primary fixing heater driver PCB	DC controller PCB 1-2	External delivery driver PCB	Fixing duplexing driver PCB
FM350	J11/J4111	J4091/J4071	J1070		
FM351					
FM352					
FM353					
FM361					

16.4.3.6 Power Unit Station

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000



F-16-80
T-16-30

Symbol	Parts Name	Function	Parts No.	PART-CHK	Error Code / Alarm Code
FM500	Main controller cooling fan 1	To cool the main controller	FK2-2888	-	E804-0004
FM504	Power supply cooling fan 3	To cool the 24V power supply 2	FK2-3151	FAN > 51	E804-0102
FM505	Power supply cooling fan 4	To cool the 24V power supply 2	FK2-3151	FAN > 51	E804-0102
FM506	Power supply cooling fan 5	To cool the 24V power supply 1	FK2-3151	FAN > 50	E804-0101
FM507	Power supply cooling fan 6	To cool the 24V power supply 1	FK2-3151	FAN > 50	E804-0101
FM508	Power supply cooling fan 9	To cool the 13V non-all-night power supply PCB	FK2-3151	-	-

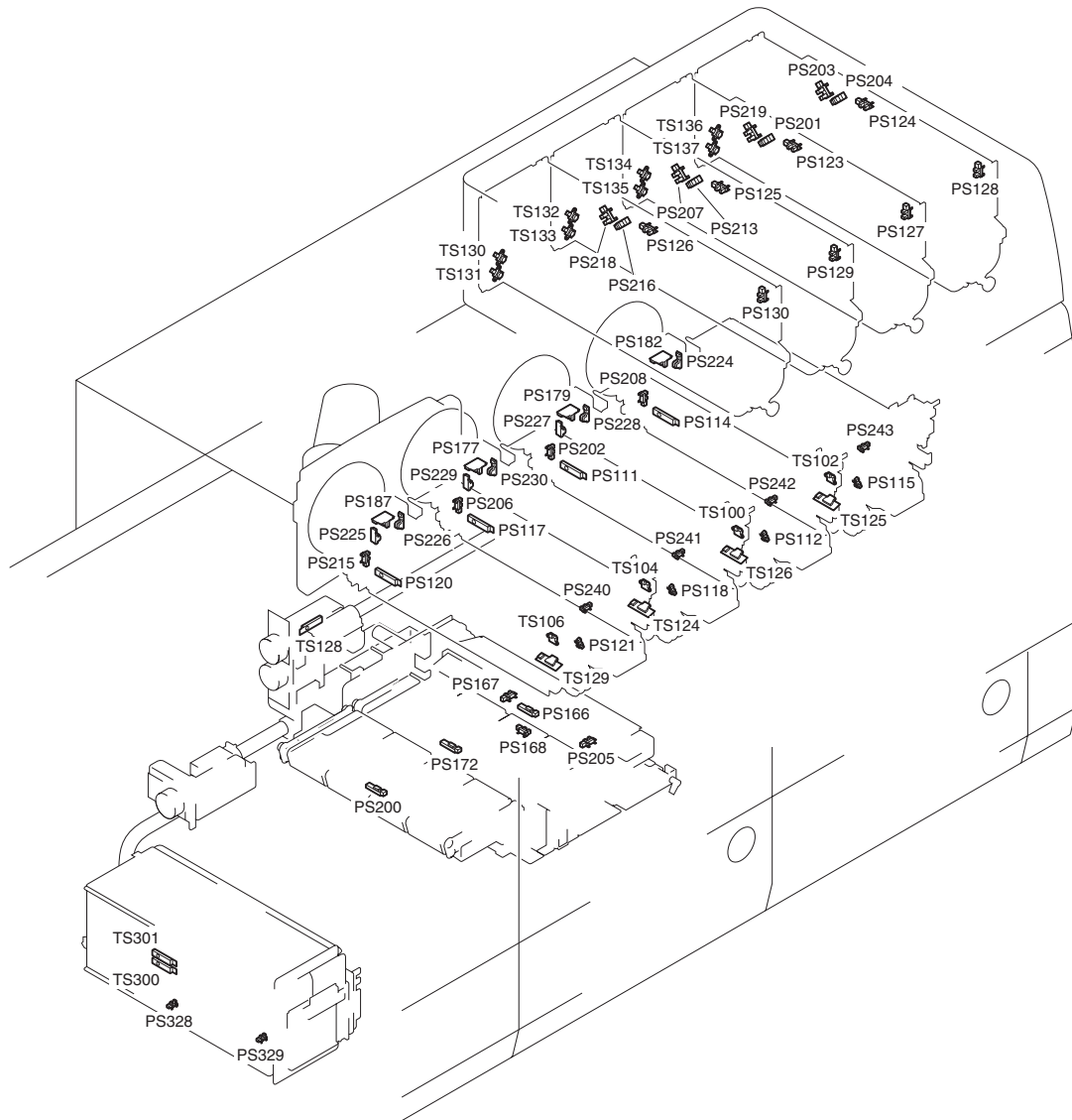
T-16-31

Symbol	Connector No.			
	Main controller PCB (MAIN-M)	24V power supply 1	24V power supply 2	13V non-all-night power supply PCB
FM500	J1007			
FM504			CN1	
FM505			CN2	
FM506		CN1		
FM507		CN2		
FM508				PN6

16.4.4 Sensor

16.4.4.1 Main Station(1/5)

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000



F-16-81
T-16-32

Notation	Name	Description	Parts No.	I/O
PS111	Drum patch sensor (C)	Patch image detection	FK2-0149	
PS112	Toner feed screw HP sensor	Toner feed screw HP detection(C)	FK2-0149	
PS114	Drum patch sensor (Bk)	Patch image detection	FK2-0149	
PS115	Toner feed screw HP sensor (Bk)	Toner feed screw HP detection(Bk)	FK2-0149	
PS117	Drum patch sensor (M)	Patch image detection	FK2-0149	
PS118	Toner feed screw HP sensor (M)	Toner feed screw HP detection(M)	FK2-0149	
PS120	Drum patch sensor (Y)	Patch image detection	FK2-0149	
PS121	Toner feed screw HP sensor (Y)	Toner feed screw HP detection(Y)	FK2-0149	
PS123	Hopper container presence/absence sensor	Hopper container presence/absence detection(C)	FK2-0149	
PS124	Hopper container presence/absence sensor (Bk)	Hopper container presence/absence detection(Bk)	FK2-0149	
PS125	Hopper container presence/absence sensor (M)	Hopper container presence/absence detection(M)	FK2-0149	
PS126	Hopper container presence/absence sensor (Y)	Hopper container presence/absence detection(Y)	FK2-0149	
PS127	Hopper cover sensor (C)	Hopper cover detection(C)	FK2-0149	
PS128	Hopper cover sensor (Bk)	Hopper cover detection(Bk)	FK2-0149	
PS129	Hopper cover sensor (M)	Hopper cover detection(M)	FK2-0149	
PS130	Hopper cover sensor (Y)	Hopper cover detection(Y)	FK2-0149	
PS166	Secondary transfer outlet sensor	Secondary transfer outlet detection	WG8-5736	P005-0

Notation	Name	Description	Parts No.	I/O
PS167	Secondary transfer pressure release HP sensor	Secondary transfer pressure release HP detection	FK2-0149	P005-8
PS168	Secondary transfer waste toner error sensor	Secondary transfer waste toner error detection	FK2-0149	P037-0
PS172	Pre-fixing feed sensor 1	Pre-fixing feed detection	WG8-5736	P005-2
PS177	Drum HP sensor (M)	Drum HP detection(M)	FM2-7724	
PS179	Drum HP sensor (C)	Drum HP detection (C)	FM2-7724	
PS182	Drum HP sensor (Bk)	Drum HP detection (Bk)	FM2-7724	
PS187	Drum HP sensor (Y)	Drum HP detection(Y)	FM2-7724	
PS200	Pre-fixing feed sensor 2	Pre-fixing feed sensor detection	WG8-5736	P005-1
PS201	Toner container slide sensor 2	Toner container slide detection (C)	FK2-0149	P037-13
PS202	Patch sensor cleaning motor HP sensor	Patch sensor cleaning motor HP detection (C)	FK2-0149	P015-7
PS203	Toner container slide sensor 1 (Bk)	Toner container slide detection (Bk)	FK2-0149	P037-14
PS204	Toner container slide sensor 2 (Bk)	Toner container slide detection (Bk)	FK2-0149	P037-15
PS205	Secondary transfer pressure release motor attachment position sensor	Secondary transfer pressure release motor position detection	FK2-0149	P015-9
PS206	Patch sensor cleaning motor HP sensor (M)	Patch sensor cleaning motor HP detection (M)	FK2-0149	P015-5
PS207	Toner container slide sensor 1 (M)	Toner container slide detection (M)	FK2-0149	P037-10
PS208	Patch sensor cleaning motor HP sensor (Bk)	Patch sensor cleaning motor HP detection(Bk)	FK2-0149	P015-7
PS213	Toner container slide sensor 2 (M)	Toner container slide detection (M)	FK2-0149	P037-11
PS215	Patch sensor cleaning motor HP sensor (Y)	Patch sensor cleaning motor HP detection (Y)	FK2-0149	P015-4
PS216	Toner container slide sensor 2 (Y)	Toner container slide detection (Y)	FK2-0149	P037-9
PS218	Toner container slide sensor 1 (Y)	Toner container slide detection (Y)	FK2-0149	P037-8
PS219	Toner container slide sensor 1	Toner container slide detection (C)	FK2-0149	P037-12
PS224	Drum encoder sensor A (Bk)	Drum encoder sensor A detection(Bk)	FM2-7722	
PS225	Drum encoder sensor B (Y)	Drum encoder sensor B detection(Y)	FM2-7723	
PS226	Drum encoder sensor A (Y)	Drum encoder sensor A detection(Y)	FM2-7722	
PS227	Drum encoder sensor B (C)	Drum encoder sensor B detection(C)	FM2-7723	
PS228	Drum encoder sensor A (C)	Drum encoder sensor A detection(C)	FM2-7723	
PS229	Drum encoder sensor B (M)	Drum encoder sensor B detection(M)	FM2-7723	
PS230	Drum encoder sensor A (M)	Drum encoder sensor A detection(M)	FM2-7722	
PS240	Primary charging wire cleaning motor HP sensor (Y)	Primary charging wire cleaning motor HP detection(Y)	FK2-0149	P015-0
PS241	Primary charging wire cleaning motor HP sensor (M)	Primary charging wire cleaning motor HP detection(M)	FK2-0149	P015-1
PS242	Primary charging wire cleaning motor HP sensor (C)	Primary charging wire cleaning motor HP detection(C)	FK2-0149	P015-2
PS243	Primary charging wire cleaning motor HP sensor (Bk)	Primary charging wire cleaning motor HP detection(Bk)	FK2-0149	P015-3
PS328	Waste toner container sensor	Waste toner container detection	FK2-0149	P012-6
PS329	Waste toner door switch sensor	Waste toner door switch detection	FK2-0149	P012-7
TS100	Sub hopper toner level sensor 1	Sub hopper toner level detection (C)	FK2-0590	P015-12
TS102	Sub hopper toner level sensor 1 (Bk)	Sub hopper toner level detection (Bk)	FK2-0590	P015-14
TS104	Sub hopper toner level sensor 1 (M)	Sub hopper toner level detection(M)	FK2-0590	P015-10
TS106	Sub hopper toner level sensor 1 (Y)	Sub hopper toner level detection(Y)	FK2-0590	P015-8
TS124	Developing assembly toner level sensor (M)	Developing assembly toner level detection(M)	FK2-2713	
TS125	Developing assembly toner level sensor (Bk)	Developing assembly toner level detection(Bk)	FK2-2713	
TS126	Developing assembly toner level sensor (C)	Developing assembly toner level detection(C)	FK2-2713	
TS128	Buffer toner full sensor	Developing assembly toner level detection	FK2-0591	
TS129	Developing assembly toner level sensor (Y)	Developing assembly toner level detection(Y)	FK2-2713	
TS130	Hopper toner level sensor 1 (Y)	Hopper toner level detection(Y)	FK2-0590	P038-7
TS131	Hopper toner level sensor 2 (Y)	Hopper toner level detection(Y)	FK2-0590	P038-3
TS132	Hopper toner level sensor 1 (M)	Hopper toner level detection(M)	FK2-0590	P038-6
TS133	Hopper toner level sensor 2 (M)	Hopper toner level detection(M)	FK2-0590	P038-4
TS134	Hopper toner level sensor 1	Hopper toner level detection (C)	FK2-0590	P038-2
TS135	Hopper toner level sensor 2	Hopper toner level detection (C)	FK2-0590	P038-1
TS136	Hopper toner level sensor 1 (Bk)	Hopper toner level detection(Bk)	FK2-0590	P038-0
TS137	Hopper toner level sensor 2 (Bk)	Hopper toner level detection(Bk)	FK2-0590	P038-5
TS300	Waste toner full sensor 2	Waste toner full the previous notice detection	FK2-0591	
TS301	Waste toner full sensor 1	Waste toner full detection	FK2-0591	

T-16-33

Notation	Jack No.								
	Process unit driver PCB (C)	Process unit driver PCB (Bk)	Process unit driver PCB (M)	Process unit driver PCB (Y)	Hopper driver PCB (C)	Hopper driver PCB (Bk)	Hopper driver PCB (M)	Hopper driver PCB (Y)	DC controller PCB 1-2
PS111	J1370C/ J1360C								J1010
PS112	J1374C/ J1361C								J1011

Notation	Jack No.								
	Process unit driver PCB (C)	Process unit driver PCB (Bk)	Process unit driver PCB (M)	Process unit driver PCB (Y)	Hopper driver PCB (C)	Hopper driver PCB (Bk)	Hopper driver PCB (M)	Hopper driver PCB (Y)	DC controller PCB 1-2
PS114		J1370K/ J1360K							J1012
PS115		J1374K/ J1361K							J1013
PS117			J1370M/ J1360M						J1008
PS118			J1374M/ J1361M						J1009
PS120				J1370Y/ J1360Y					J1006
PS121				J1374Y/ J1361Y					J1007
PS123					J1424C/ J1410C				J1016
PS124						J1424K/ J1410K			J1017
PS125							J1424M/ J1410M		J1015
PS126								J1424Y/ J1410Y	J1014
PS127					J1424C/ J1410C				J1016
PS128						J1424K/ J1410K			J1017
PS129							J1424M/ J1410M		J1015
PS130								J1424Y/ J1410Y	J1014
PS201					J1424C/ J1410C				J1016
PS202	J1377C/ J1361C								J1011
PS203						J1424K/ J1410K			J1017
PS204						J1424K/ J1410K			J1017
PS206			J1377M/ J1361M						J1009
PS207							J1424M/ J1410M		J1015
PS208		J1377K/ J1361K							J1013
PS213							J1424M/ J1410M		J1015
PS215				J1377Y/ J1361Y					J1007
PS216								J1424Y/ J1410Y	J1014
PS218								J1424Y/ J1410Y	J1014
PS219					J1424C/ J1410C				J1016
PS240				J1375Y/ J1361					J1007
PS241			J1375M/ J1631M						J1009
PS242	J1375C/ J1361C								J1011
PS243		J1375K/ J1361K							J1013
TS100	J1374C/ J1361C								J1011
TS102		J1374K/ J1361K							J1013
TS104			J1374M/ J1361M						J1009
TS106				J1374Y/ J1361Y					J1007
TS124			J1370M/ J1360M						J1008

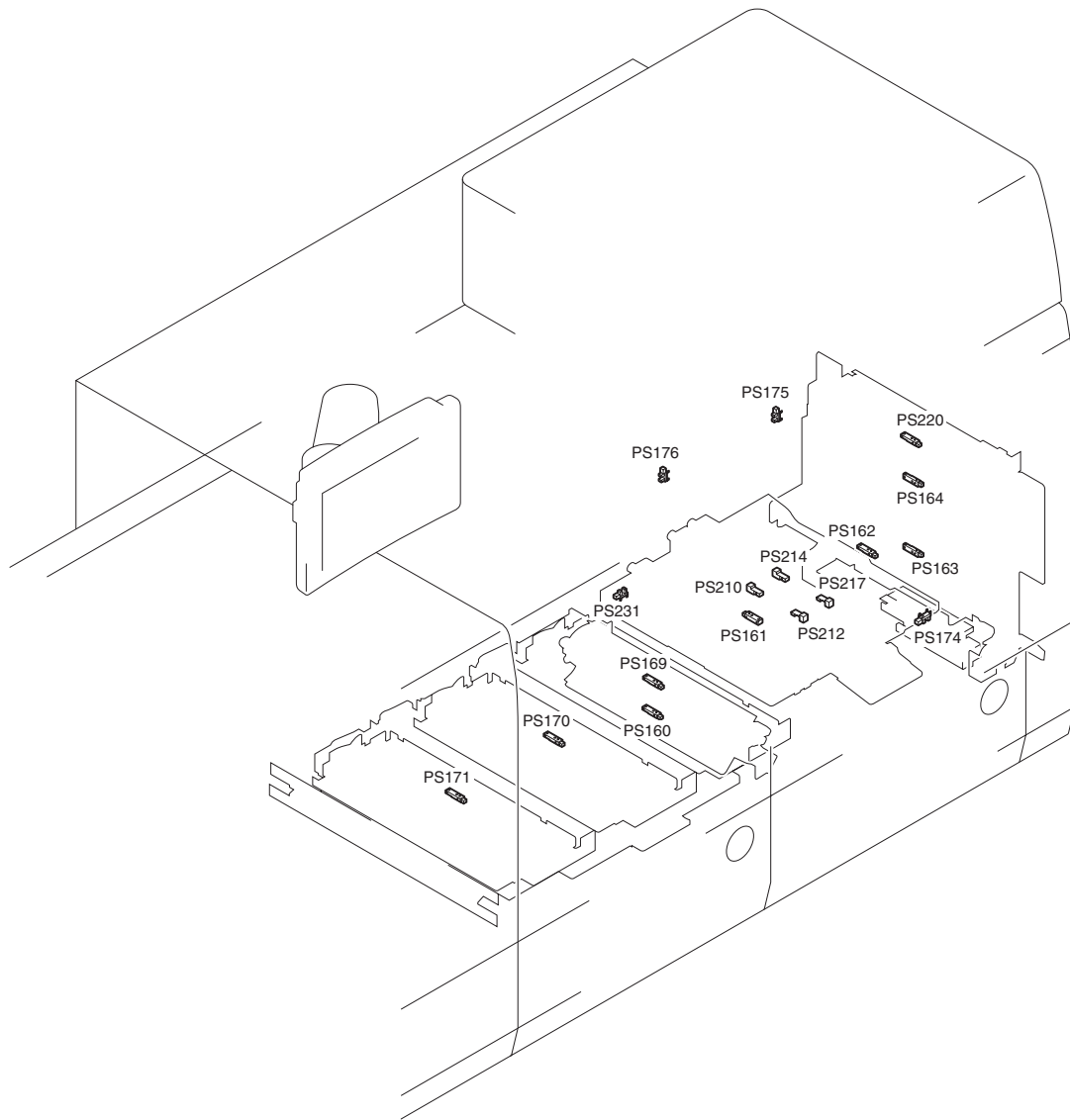
Notation	Jack No.								
	Process unit driver PCB (C)	Process unit driver PCB (Bk)	Process unit driver PCB (M)	Process unit driver PCB (Y)	Hopper driver PCB (C)	Hopper driver PCB (Bk)	Hopper driver PCB (M)	Hopper driver PCB (Y)	DC controller PCB 1-2
TS125		J1370K/ J1360K							J1012
TS126	J1370C/ J1360C								J1010
TS129				J1370Y/ J1360Y					J1006
TS130								J1423Y/ J1410Y	J1014
TS131								J1423Y/ J1410Y	J1014
TS132							J1423M/ J1410M		J1015
TS133							J1423M/ J1410M		J1015
TS134					J1423C/ J1410C				J1016
TS135					J1423C/ J1410C				J1016
TS136						J1423K/ J1410K			J1017
TS137						J1423K/ J1410K			J1017

T-16-34

Notation	Jack No.								
	Secondary transfer/duplexing driver PCB	Drum driver PCB (Bk)	Drum driver PCB (C)	Drum driver PCB (M)	Drum driver PCB (Y)	Pre-fixing feed driver PCB	Duplexing feed driver PCB	DC controller PCB 1-2	DC controller PCB 1-1
PS166	J1507/J1501							J1025	
PS167	J1507/J1513							J1024	
PS168	J1507/J1513							J1024	
PS172	J1505/J1501							J1025	
PS177				J1620M/ J1611M					J1036
PS179			J1620C/ J1611C						J1037
PS182		J1620K/ J1611K							J1038
PS187					J1620Y/ J1611Y				J1035
PS200						J1557/J1551		J1027	
PS205	J1507/J1501							J1025	
PS224		J1620K/ J1611K							J1038
PS225					J1620Y/ J1611Y				J1035
PS226					J1620Y/ J1611Y				J1035
PS227			J1620C/ J1611C						J1037
PS228			J1620C/ J1611C						J1037
PS229				J1620M/ J1611M					J1036
PS230				J1620M/ J1611M					J1036
PS328							J4032		
PS329							J4032		
TS126						J1561/1553		J1026	
TS300							J4032		
TS301							J4032		

16.4.4.2 Main Station(2/5)

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

F-16-82
T-16-35

Notation	Name	Description	Parts No.	I/O
PS160	Left deck merger sensor	Left deck merger detection	WG8-5736	P004-2
PS161	Lower feed sensor 1	Lower feed paper detection 1	WG8-5736	P004-4
PS162	Lower feed sensor 2	Lower feed paper detection 2	WG8-5736	P004-5
PS163	Right deck merger sensor	Right deck merger paper detection	WG8-5736	P004-1
PS164	Vertical path sensor	Vertical path paper detection	WG8-5736	P004-3
PS169	Duplexing standby sensor 1	Duplexing standby detection 1	WG8-5736	
PS170	Duplexing standby sensor 2	Duplexing standby detection 2	WG8-5736	
PS171	Duplexing standby sensor 3	Duplexing standby detection3	WG8-5736	
PS174	Vertical path cover open/close sensor	Vertical path cover open/close detection	FK2-0149	P040-5
PS175	Main station right front cover open/close sensor	Front cover detection	FK2-0149	
PS176	Main station left front cover open/close sensor	Front cover detection	FK2-0149	
PS210	Lower feed path paper length sensor (rear left)	Lower feed path paper length detection (rear left)	FM2-2186(PAPER LENGTH SENSOR ASSEMBLY)	
PS212	Lower feed path paper length sensor (front left)	Lower feed path paper length detection (front left)	FM2-2186(PAPER LENGTH SENSOR ASSEMBLY)	

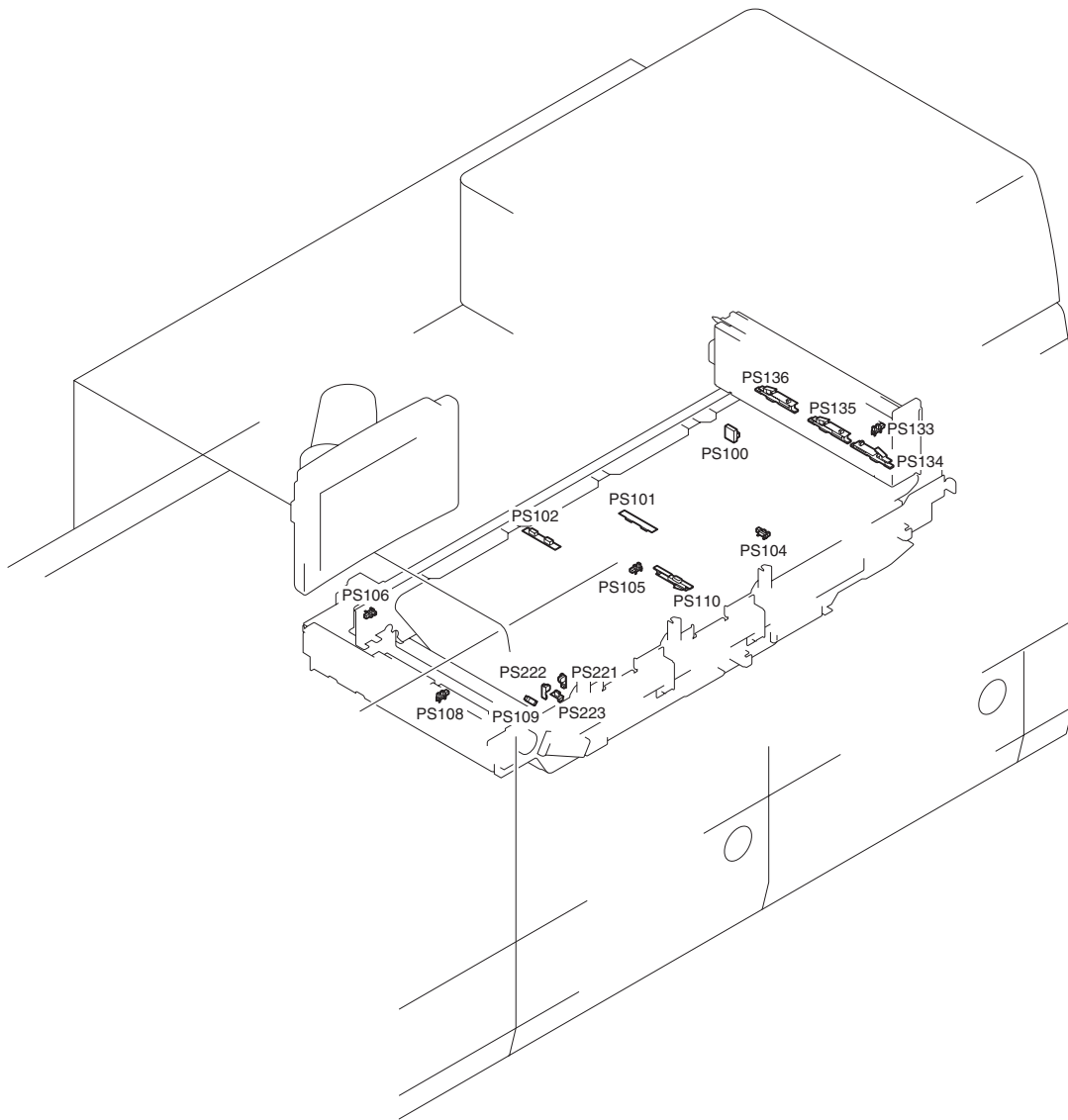
Notation	Name	Description	Parts No.	I/O
PS214	Lower feed path paper length sensor (rear right)	Lower feed path paper length detection (rear right)	FM2-2186(PAPER LENGTH SENSOR ASSEMBLY)	
PS217	Lower feed path paper length sensor (front right)	Lower feed path paper length detection (front right)	FM2-2186(PAPER LENGTH SENSOR ASSEMBLY)	
PS220	POD deck path sensor	POD deck path paper detection	WG8-5736	P004-0
PS231	Lower feed guide open/close sensor	Lower feed guide open/close detection	FK2-0149	P025-13

T-16-36

Notation	Jack No.				
	Vertical path/lower feed driver PCB	Secondary transfer/duplexing driver PCB	Main station power supply connect PCB	DC controller PCB 1-1	DC controller PCB 1-2
PS160	J1507V/J1501V			J1019	
PS161	J1507V/J1501V			J1019	
PS162	J1505V/J1501V			J1019	
PS163	J1505V/J1501V			J1019	
PS164	J1505V/J1501V			J1019	
PS169		J1505/J1501			J1025
PS170		J1505/J1501			J1025
PS171		J1505/J1501			J1025
PS174			J1813/J1810		J1001
PS175			J1813/J1810		J1001
PS176			J1813/J1810		J1001
PS210	J1511V/J1508V			J1057	
PS212	J1511V/J1508V			J1057	
PS214	J1511V/J1508V			J1057	
PS217	J1511V/J1508V			J1057	
PS220	J1505V/J1501V			J1019	
PS231	J1507V/J1500V			J1018	

16.4.4.3 Main Station(3/5)

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000



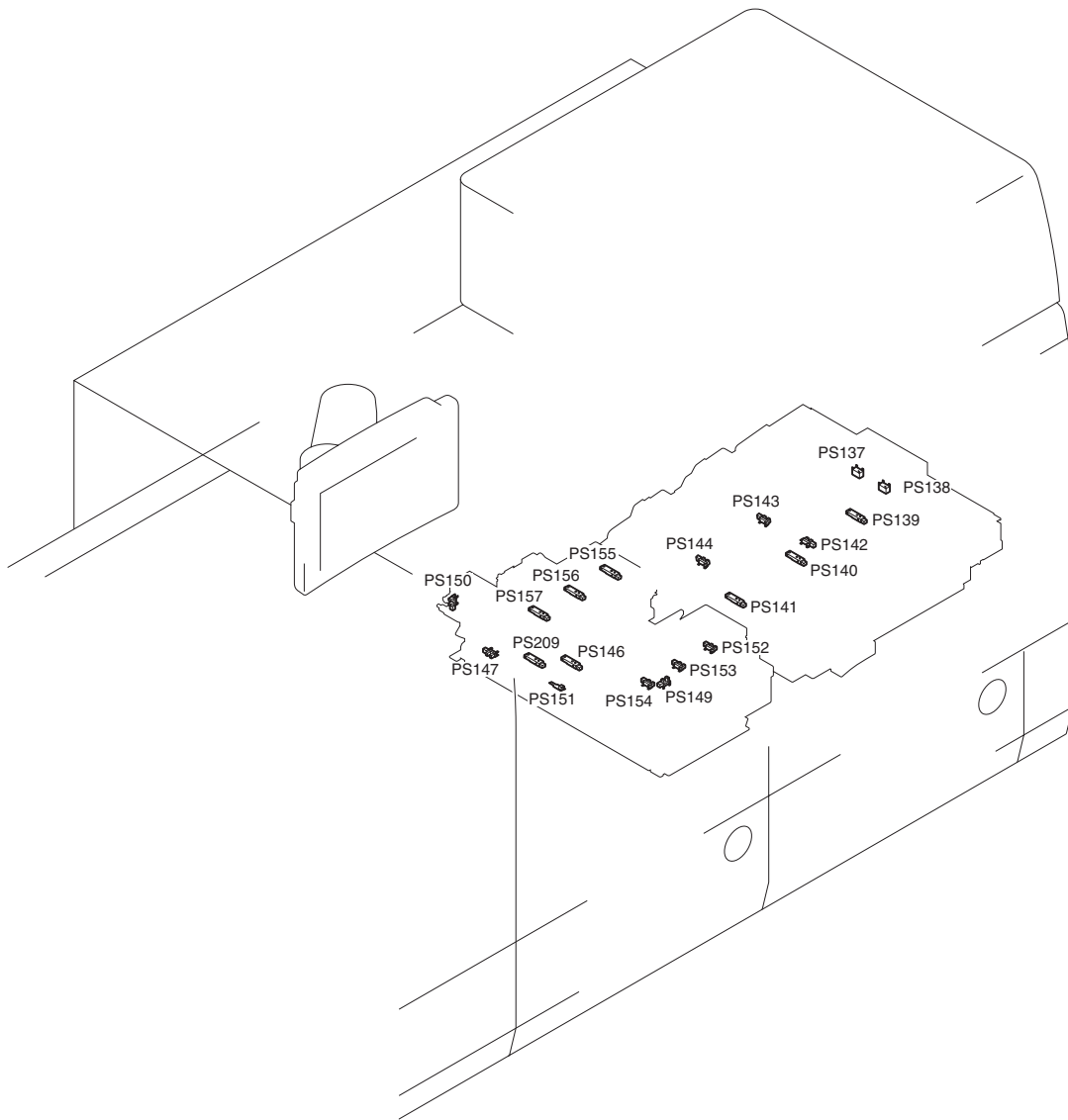
F-16-83
T-16-37

Notation	Name	Description	Parts No.	I/O
PS100	ITB displacement sensor	ITB displacement detection	FH7-7530	
PS101	ITB HP lower sensor	ITB HP lower detection	FK2-0161	P003-2
PS102	ITB HP upper sensor	ITB HP upper detection	FK2-0161	
PS104	ITB steering motor HP sensor	ITB steering motor HP detection	FK2-0149	P003-3
PS105	Leading edge registration shutter HP sensor	Leading edge registration shutter HP detection	FK2-0149	
PS106	ITB web feed sensor	ITB web feed detection	FK2-0149	P003-1
PS108	ITB web releasing sensor	ITB web releasing detection	FK2-0149	
PS109	ITB web absence sensor	ITB web absence detection	FK2-0149	P003-0
PS110	Leading edge registration patch sensor	Leading edge registration patch image detection	FM2-9256	
PS133	Registration patch sensor shutter HP sensor	Registration patch sensor shutter HP detection	FK2-0149	P005-11
PS134	Registration patch sensor (front)	Color registration patch image detection	FM2-9256	
PS135	Registration patch sensor (center)	Color registration patch image detection	FM2-9256	
PS136	Registration patch sensor (rear)	Color registration patch image detection	FM2-9256	
PS221	ITB drive roller encoder sensor A	ITB drive roller encoder detection A	FM2-7719	
PS222	ITB drive roller encoder sensor B	ITB drive roller encoder detection B	FM2-7719	
PS223	ITB drive roller HP sensor	ITB drive roller HP detection	FM2-7719	

Notation	Jack No.					
	ITB driver PCB (center)	ITB driver PCB (right)	ITB driver PCB (left)	Registration patch sensor driver PCB	DC controller PCB 1-1	DC controller PCB 1-2
PS100	J1315/J1303				J1034	
PS101	J1318/J1302				J1033	
PS102	J1315/J1302				J1033	
PS104	J1316/J1302				J1033	
PS105		J1333/J1330			J1032	
PS106	J1313/J1302				J1033	
PS108			J1341/J1338			J1046
PS109	J1313					
PS110		J1333/J1330			J1032	
PS133				J1458/J1450		J1028
PS134				J1453/J1450		J1028
PS135				J1454/J1450		J1028
PS136				J1455/J1450		J1028
PS221	J1314/J1302				J1033	
PS222	J1314/J1302				J1033	
PS223	J1314/J1302				J1033	

16.4.4.4 Main Station(4/5)

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

F-16-84
T-16-39

Notation	Name	Description	Parts No.	I/O
PS137	Transparency sensor (rear)	OHP paper detection	RH7-7129	P002-15
PS138	Transparency sensor (front)	OHP paper detection	RH7-7129	P002-14
PS139	Pre-feed sensor 1	Pre-feed paper detection 1	WG8-5736	P001-1
PS140	Pre-feed sensor 2	Pre-feed paper detection 2	WG8-5736	P001-2
PS141	Pre-feed sensor 3	Pre-feed paper detection 3	WG8-5736	P001-3
PS142	Cross feed pressure release motor HP sensor 1	Cross feed pressure release motor HP detection 1	FK2-0149	P002-0
PS143	Cross feed pressure release motor HP sensor 2	Cross feed pressure release motor HP detection 2	FK2-0149	P002-1
PS144	Cross feed pressure release motor HP sensor 3	Cross feed pressure release motor HP detection 3	FK2-0149	P002-2
PS146	Pre-registration sensor	Pre-registration paper detection	WG8-5736	P001-0
PS147	Registration roller release HP sensor 1	Registration roller release HPdetection 1	FK2-0149	P002-4
PS149	Cross feed plate HP sensor	Cross feed plate HP detection	FK2-0149	P002-3
PS150	Registration roller slide HP sensor	Registration roller slide HP detection	FK2-0149	P002-6
PS151	Registration sensor	Registration paper detection	FG6-8605	P001-6
PS152	Cross feed roller pressure release HP sensor 1	Cross feed roller pressure release HP detection 1	FK2-0149	P002-11
PS153	Cross feed roller pressure release HP sensor 2	Cross feed roller pressure release HP detection 2	FK2-0149	P002-12
PS154	Cross feed roller pressure release HP sensor 3	Cross feed roller pressure release HP detection3	FK2-0149	P002-13
PS155	Cross feed sensor 1	Cross feed detection 1	WG8-5736	P002-8
PS156	Cross feed sensor 2	Cross feed detection 2	WG8-5736	P002-9

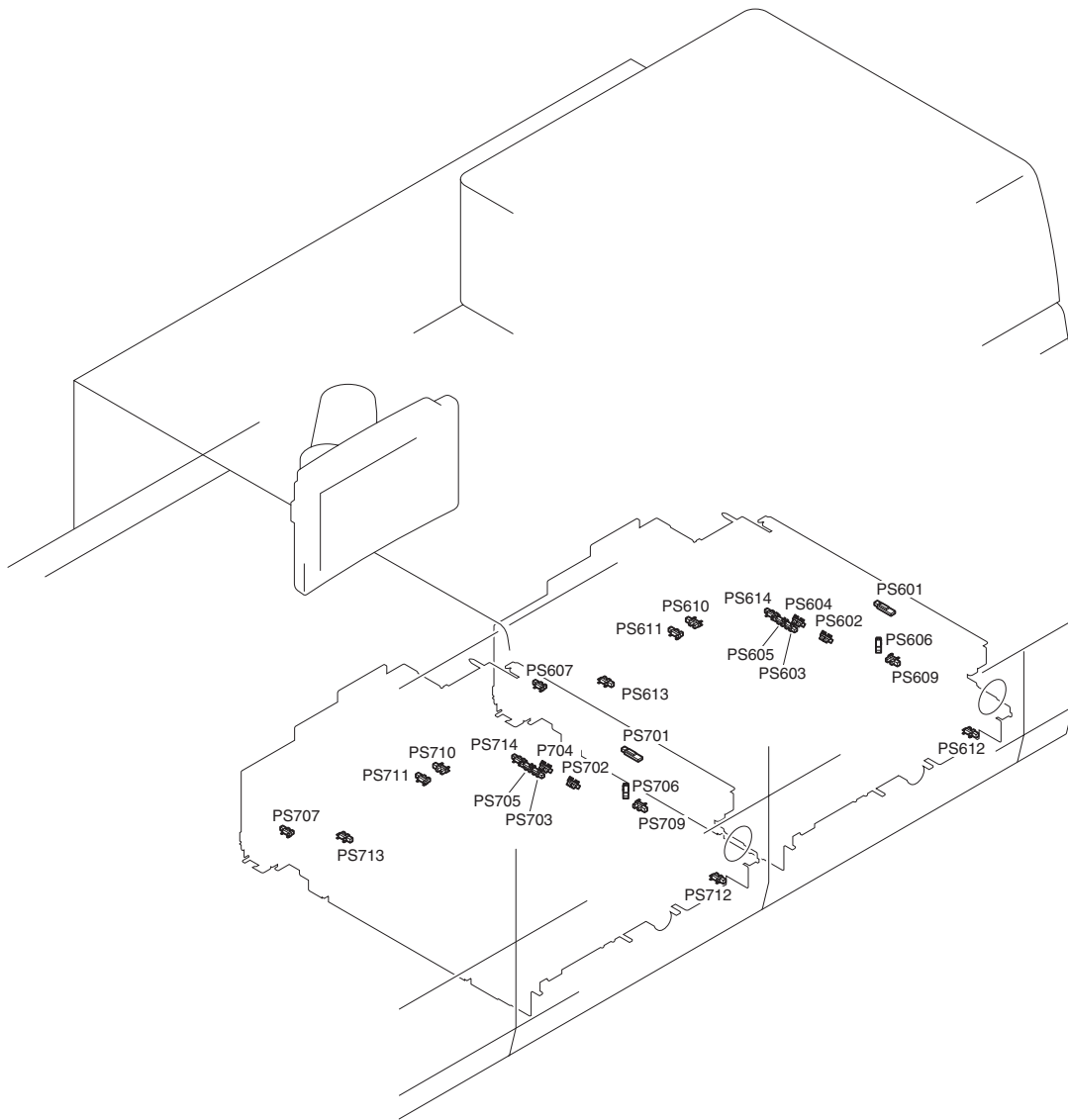
Notation	Name	Description	Parts No.	I/O
PS157	Cross feed sensor 3	Cross feed detection 3	WG8-5736	P002-10
PS209	Post-registration sensor	Post-registration detection	WG8-5736	P001-4

T-16-40

Notation	Jack No.		
	Registration feed driver PCB (left)	Registration feed driver PCB (right)	DC controller PCB 1-1
PS137	J1232L/J1211L		J1023
PS138		J1932R/J1211R	J1021
PS139		J1930R/J1211R	J1021
PS140		J1930R/J1211R	J1021
PS141		J1930R/J1211R	J1021
PS142		J1931R/J1211R	J1021
PS143		J1931R/J1211R	J1021
PS144		J1931R/J1211R	J1021
PS146	J1230L/J1211L		J1023
PS147	J1231L/J1211L		J1023
PS149	J1231L/J1211L		J1023
PS150	J1231L/J1211L		J1023
PS151		J1940R	
PS152	J1231L/J1211L		J1023
PS153	J1231L/J1211L		J1023
PS154	J1231L/J1211L		J1023
PS155	J1230L/J1211L		J1023
PS156	J1230L/J1211L		J1023
PS157	J1230L/J1211L		J1023
PS209	J1230L/J1211L		J1023

16.4.4.5 Main Station(5/5)

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

F-16-85
T-16-41

Notation	Name	Description	Parts No.	I/O
PS601	Right deck pull-out sensor	Right deck pull-out detection	WG8-5736	
PS602	Right deck paper sensor	Right deck paper detection	FK2-0149	
PS603	Right deck upper limit paper surface sensor	Right deck upper limit paper surface detection	FK2-0149	
PS604	Right deck lower limit paper surface sensor	Right deck lower limit paper surface detection	FK2-0149	
PS605	Right deck middle paper surface sensor	Right deck middle paper surface detection	FK2-0149	
PS606	Right deck suction completion sensor	Right deck suction completion detection	FK2-0149	
PS607	Right deck open/close sensor	Right deck open/close detection	FK2-0149	
PS609	Right deck supply position sensor	Right deck supply position detection	FM2-2006	
PS610	Right deck paper level sensor (right)	Right deck paper level detection	FK2-0149	
PS611	Right deck paper level sensor (left)	Right deck paper level detection	FK2-0149	
PS612	Right deck lifter lower limit sensor	Right deck lifter lower limit detection	FK2-0149	
PS613	Right deck foreign matter sensor	Right deck foreign matter detection	FK2-0149	
PS614	Right deck lifter upper limit sensor	Right deck lifter upper limit detection	FK2-0149	
PS701	Left deck pull-out sensor	Left deck pull-out detection	WG8-5736	
PS702	Left deck paper sensor	Left deck paper detection	FK2-0149	
PS703	Left deck upper limit paper surface sensor	Left deck upper limit paper surface detection	FK2-0149	
PS704	Left deck lower limit paper surface sensor	Left deck lower limit paper surface detection	FK2-0149	
PS705	Left deck middle paper surface sensor	Left deck middle paper surface detection	FK2-0149	
PS706	Left deck suction completion sensor	Left deck suction completion detection	FK2-0149	

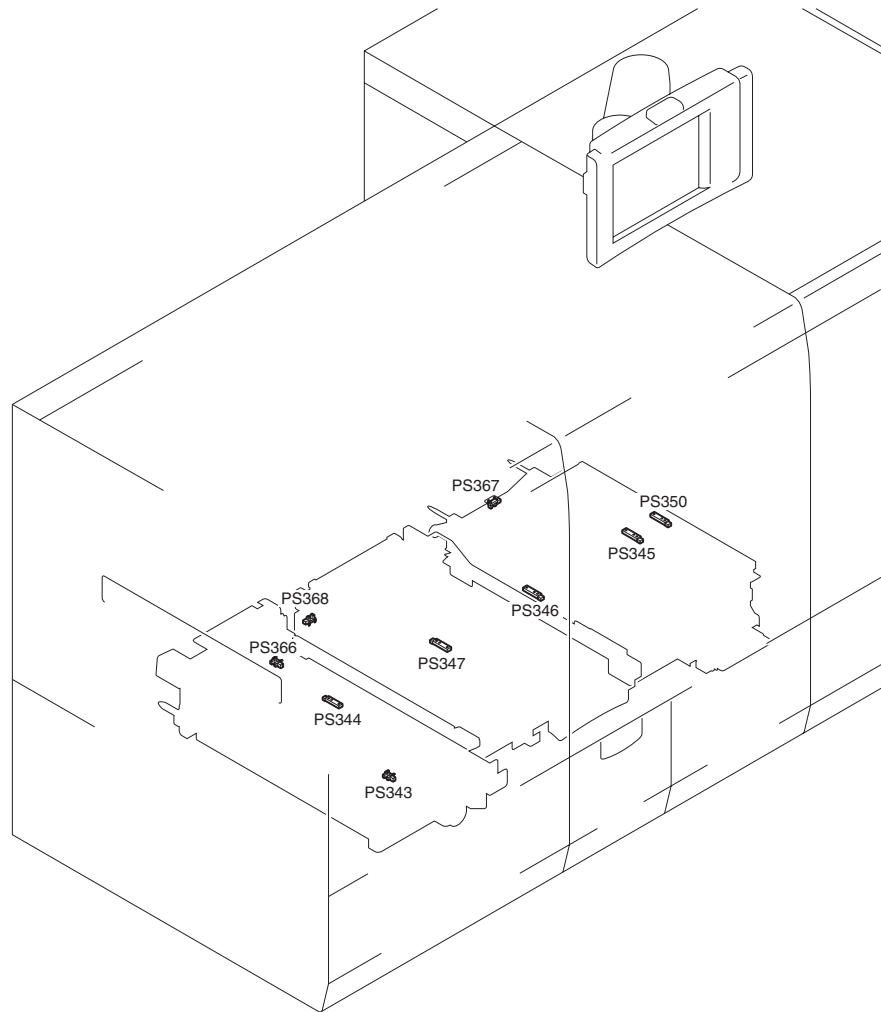
Notation	Name	Description	Parts No.	I/O
PS707	Left deck open/close sensor	Left deck open/close detection	FK2-0149	
PS709	Left deck supply position sensor	Left deck supply position detection	FM2-2006	
PS710	Left deck paper level sensor (right)	Left deck paper level detection	FK2-0149	
PS711	Left deck paper level sensor (left)	Left deck paper level detection	FK2-0149	
PS712	Left deck lifter lower limit sensor	Left deck lifter lower limit detection	FK2-0149	
PS713	Left deck foreign matter sensor	Left deck foreign matter detection	FK2-0149	
PS714	Left deck lifter upper limit sensor	Left deck lifter upper limit detection	FK2-0149	

T-16-42

Notation	Jack No.				
	Right deck driver PCB	Right deck pickup driver PCB	Left deck driver PCB	Left deck pickup driver PCB	DC controller PCB 1-1
PS601		J2053R/J2051R			J1060
PS602		J2053R/J2051R			J1060
PS603		J2053R/J2051R			J1060
PS604		J2053R/J2051R			J1060
PS605		J2053R/J2051R			J1060
PS606		J2053R/J2051R			J1060
PS607		J2061R/J2051R			J1060
PS609	J2107R/J1202R	J2056R/J2051R			J1060
PS610	J2107R/J1202R	J2056R/J2051R			J1060
PS611	J2107R/J1202R	J2056R/J2051R			J1060
PS612	J2107R/J1202R	J2056R/J2051R			J1060
PS613					
PS614					
PS701				J2053L/J2051L	J1064
PS702				J2053L/J2051L	J1064
PS703				J2053L/J2051L	J1064
PS704				J2053L/J2051L	J1064
PS705				J2053L/J2051L	J1064
PS706				J2053L/J2051L	J1064
PS707				J2061L/J2051L	J1064
PS709			J2107L/J202L	J2056L/J2051L	J1064
PS710			J2107L/J202L	J2056L/J2051L	J1064
PS711			J2107L/J202L	J2056L/J2051L	J1064
PS712			J2107L/J202L	J2056L/J2051L	J1064
PS713					
PS714					

16.4.4.6 Sub Station(1/4)

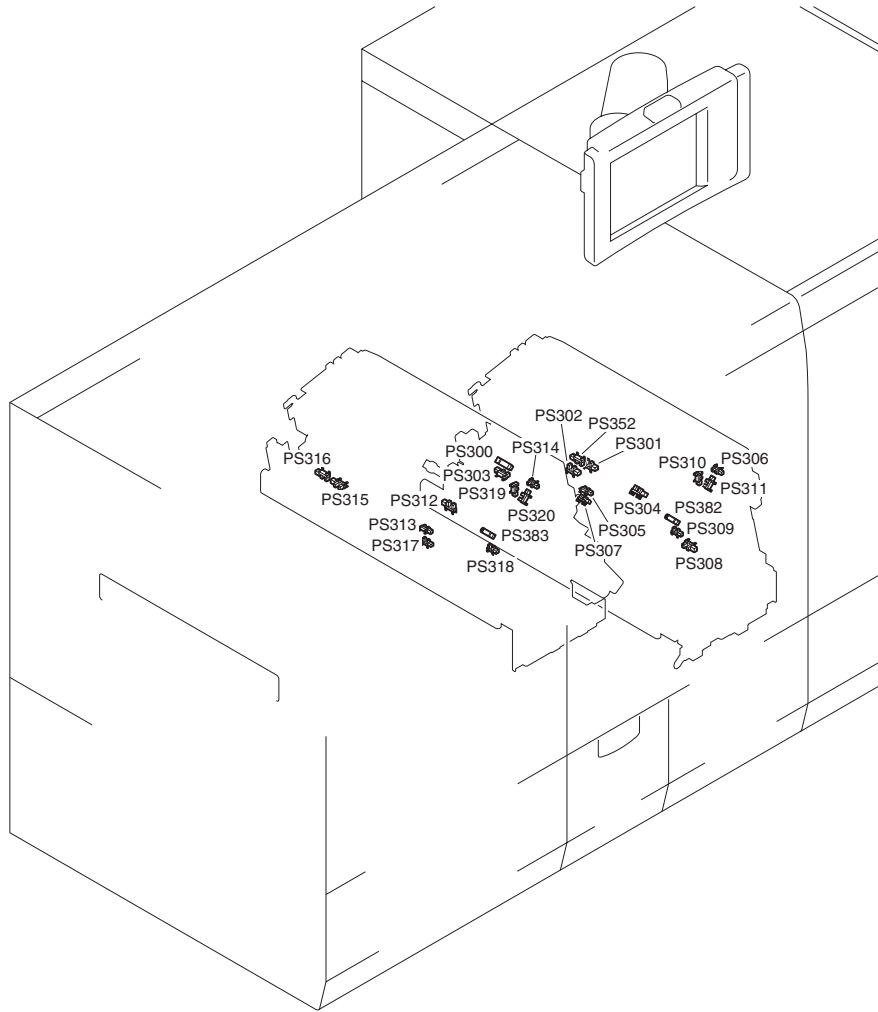
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

F-16-86
T-16-43

Notation	Name	Description	Parts No.	I/O	Jack No.	
					Duplexing feed driver PCB	DC controller PCB 1-2
PS343	Duplexing decurler HP sensor	Duplexing decurler HP detection	FK2-0149		J4033/J4070	J1072
PS344	Duplexing path inlet sensor	Duplexing path inlet detection	WG8-5736		J4033/J4070	J1072
PS345	Duplexing standby sensor 4	Duplexing path standby paper detection 4	WG8-5736		J4035/J4070	J1072
PS346	Duplexing standby sensor 5	Duplexing path standby paper detection 5	WG8-5736		J4035/J4070	J1072
PS347	Duplexing standby sensor 6	Duplexing path standby paper detection 6	WG8-5736		J4033/J4070	J1072
PS350	Duplexing path sub station outlet sensor	Duplexing path outlet detection	WG8-5736		J4035/J4070	J1072
PS366	Duplexing inlet guide open/close sensor	Duplexing inlet guide open/close detection	FK2-0149		J4033/J4070	J1072
PS367	Duplexing right guide open/close sensor	Duplexing right guide open/close detection	FK2-0149		J4035/J4070	J1072
PS368	Duplexing left guide open/close sensor	Duplexing left guide open/close detection	FK2-0149		J4033/J4070	J1072

16.4.4.7 Sub Station(2/4)

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000



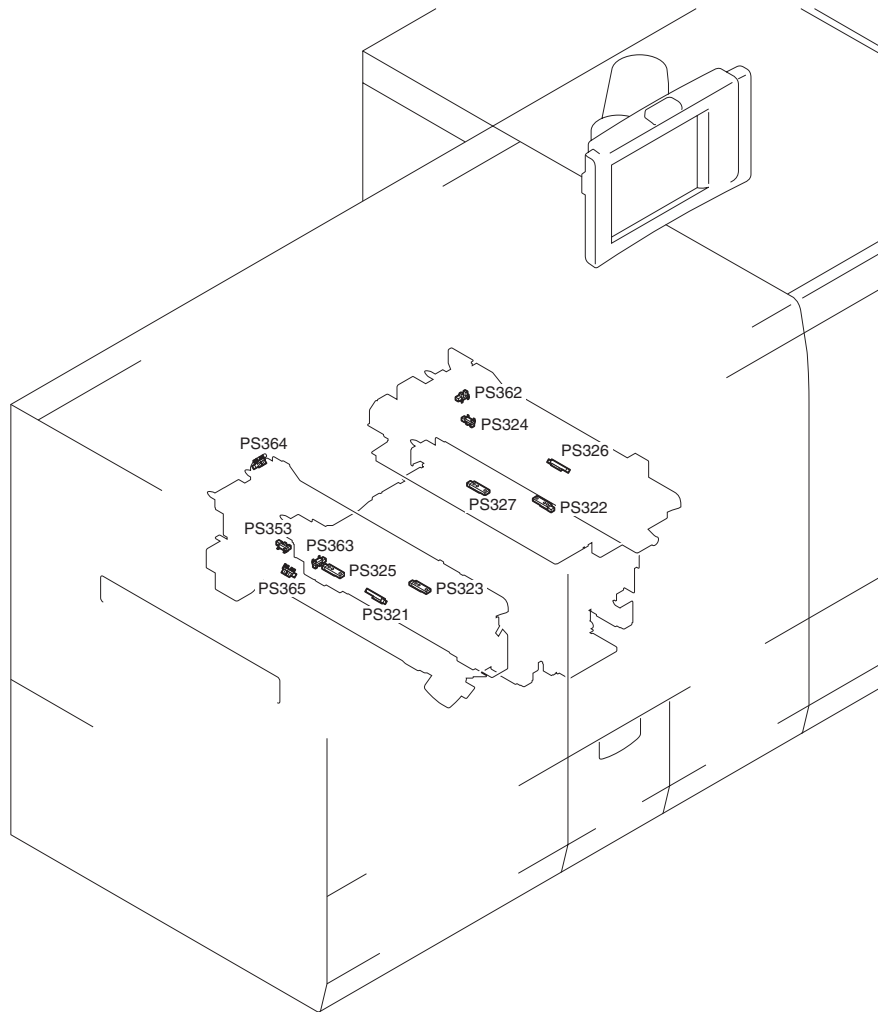
F-16-87
T-16-44

Notation	Name	Description	Parts No.	I/O	Jack No.			DC controller PCB 1-2
					Primary fixing inner driver PCB	Secondary fixing inner driver PCB	Duplexing feed driver PCB	
PS300	Primary fixing pressure belt HP sensor	Primary fixing pressure belt HP detection	FK2-0149		J4380P/J4360P		J4080/J4070	J1072
PS301	Primary fixing pressure belt position sensor (front)	Primary fixing pressure belt position detection (front)	FK2-0149		J4381P/J4360P		J4080/J4070	J1072
PS302	Primary fixing pressure belt position sensor (rear)	Primary fixing pressure belt position detection (rear)	FK2-0149		J4381P/J4360P		J4080/J4070	J1072
PS303	Primary fixing pressure belt pressure sensor	Primary fixing pressure belt pressure detection	FK2-0149		J4380P/J4360P		J4080/J4070	J1072
PS304	Primary fixing inlet sensor	Primary fixing inlet detection	FK2-0149		J4382P/J4360P		J4080/J4070	J1072
PS305	Primary fixing inner delivery sensor1	Primary fixing inner delivery detection	FK2-0149		J4374P/J4360P		J4080/J4070	J1072
PS306	Primary fixing external heat roller HP sensor	Primary fixing external heat roller HP detection	FK2-0149		J4374P/J4360P		J4080/J4070	J1072
PS307	Primary fixing inner delivery sensor2	Primary fixing inner delivery detection	FK2-0149		J4374P/J4360P		J4080/J4070	J1072
PS308	Primary fixing pressure belt displacement HP sensor	Primary fixing pressure belt displacement HP detection	FK2-0149		J4381P/J4360P		J4080/J4070	J1072
PS309	Primary fixing web HP sensor	Primary fixing web HP detection	FK2-0149		J4374P/J4360P		J4080/J4070	J1072

Notation	Name	Description	Parts No.	I/O	Jack No.			DC controller PCB 1-2
					Primary fixing inner driver PCB	Secondary fixing inner driver PCB	Duplexing feed driver PCB	
PS310	Primary fixing external heat roller overrun sensor	Primary fixing external heat roller overrun detection	FK2-0149		J4374P/J4360P		J4080/J4070	J1072
PS311	Primary fixing web absent alert sensor	Primary fixing web absent alert detection	FK2-0149		J4374P/J4360P		J4080/J4070	J1072
PS312	Secondary fixing inlet sensor	Secondary fixing inlet detection	FK2-0149			J4382S/J4360S	J4085/J4070	J1072
PS313	Secondary fixing inner delivery sensor1	Secondary fixing inner delivery detection	FK2-0149			J4382S/J4360S	J4085/J4070	J1072
PS314	Secondary fixing external heat roller HP sensor	Secondary fixing external heat roller HP detection	FK2-0149			J4374S/J4360S	J4085/J4070	J1072
PS315	Secondary fixing pressure roller HP sensor	Secondary fixing pressure roller HP detection	FK2-0149			J4380S/J4360S	J4085/J4070	J1072
PS316	Secondary fixing pressure roller pressure sensor	Secondary fixing pressure roller pressure detection	FK2-0149			J4380S/J4360S	J4085/J4070	J1072
PS317	Secondary fixing inner delivery sensor2	Secondary fixing inner delivery detection	FK2-0149			J4382S/J4360S	J4085/J4070	J1072
PS318	Secondary fixing web HP sensor	Secondary fixing web HP detection	FK2-0149			J4374S/J4360S	J4085/J4070	J1072
PS319	Secondary fixing external heat roller overrun sensor	Secondary fixing external heat roller overrun detection	FK2-0149			J4374S/J4360S	J4085/J4070	J1072
PS320	Secondary fixing web absent alert sensor	Secondary fixing web absent alert detection	FK2-0149			J4374S/J4360S	J4085/J4070	J1072
PS352	Primary fixing pressure belt retry sensor	Primary fixing pressure belt full displacement direction detection			J4374P/J4360P		J4080/J4070	J1072
PS382	Primary fixing refresh roller HP sensor	Primary fixing refresh roller HP detection	FK2-0149		J4374P/J4360P		J4080/J4070	J1072
PS383	Secondary fixing refresh roller HP sensor	Secondary fixing refresh roller HP detection	FK2-0149			J4374S/J4360S	J4085/J4070	J1072

16.4.4.8 Sub Station(3/4)

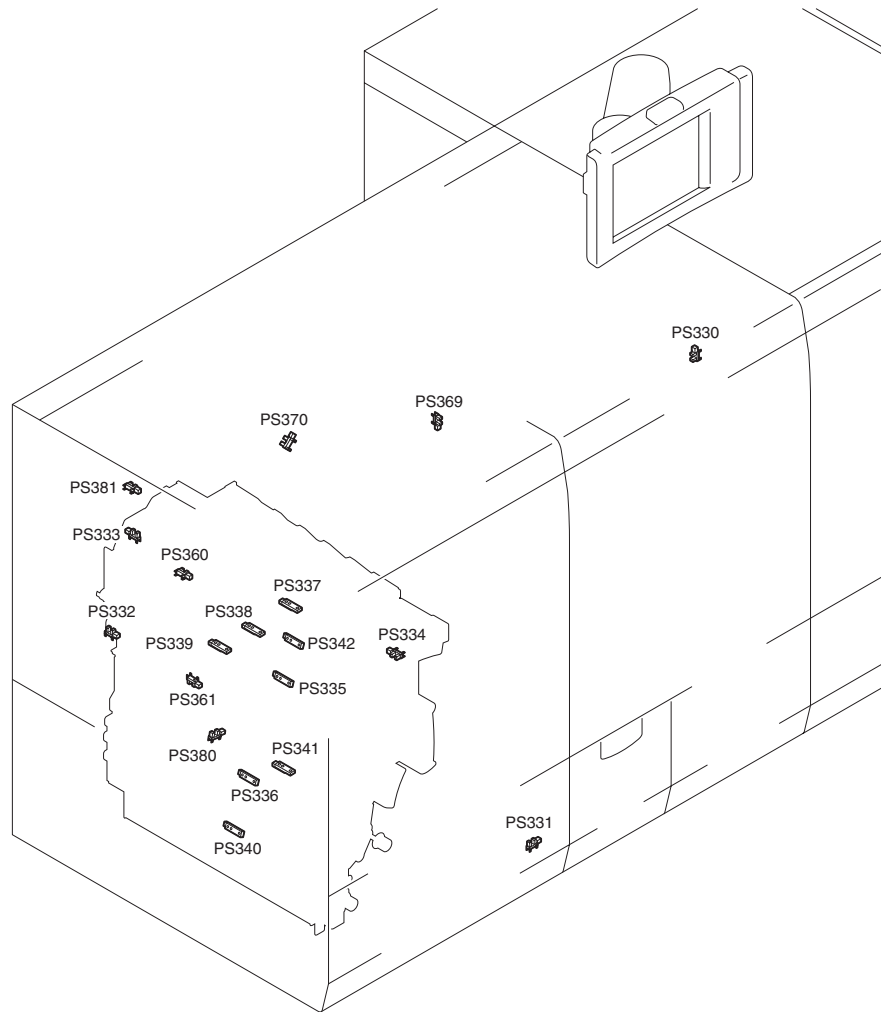
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

F-16-88
T-16-45

Notation	Name	Description	Parts No.	I/O	Jack No.	
					Duplexing feed driver PCB	DC controller PCB 1-2
PS321	Merger path lower sensor	Merger path paper detection	WG8-5736		J4031W/J4070	J1072
PS322	Bypass sensor 1	Bypass paper detection 1	WG8-5736		J4030W/J4070	J1072
PS323	Bypass sensor 2	Bypass paper detection 2	WG8-5736		J4030W/J4070	J1072
PS324	Flapper HP sensor	Flapper HP detection	FK2-0149		J4030W/J4070	J1072
PS325	Merger path upper sensor	Merger path paper detection	WG8-5736		J4031W/J4070	J1072
PS326	Tandem sensor 1	tandem path paper detection 1	WG8-5736		J4030W/J4070	J1072
PS327	Tandem sensor 2	tandem path paper detection 2	WG8-5736		J4030W/J4070	J1072
PS353	Bypass decurler disengage/engage motor HP sensor	Bypass decurler disengage/engage motor HP detection	FK2-0149		J4031W/J4070	J1072
PS362	Tandem guide open/close sensor	Tandem guide open/close detection	FK2-0149		J4030W/J4070	J1072
PS363	Bypass guide open/close sensor	Bypass guide open/close detection	FK2-0149		J4030W/J4070	J1072
PS364	Merger upper guide open/close sensor	Merger upper guide open/close detection	FK2-0149		J4031W/J4070	J1072
PS365	Merger lower guide open/close sensor	Merger lower guide open/close detection	FK2-0149		J4031W/J4070	J1072

16.4.4.9 Sub Station(4/4)

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

F-16-89
T-16-46

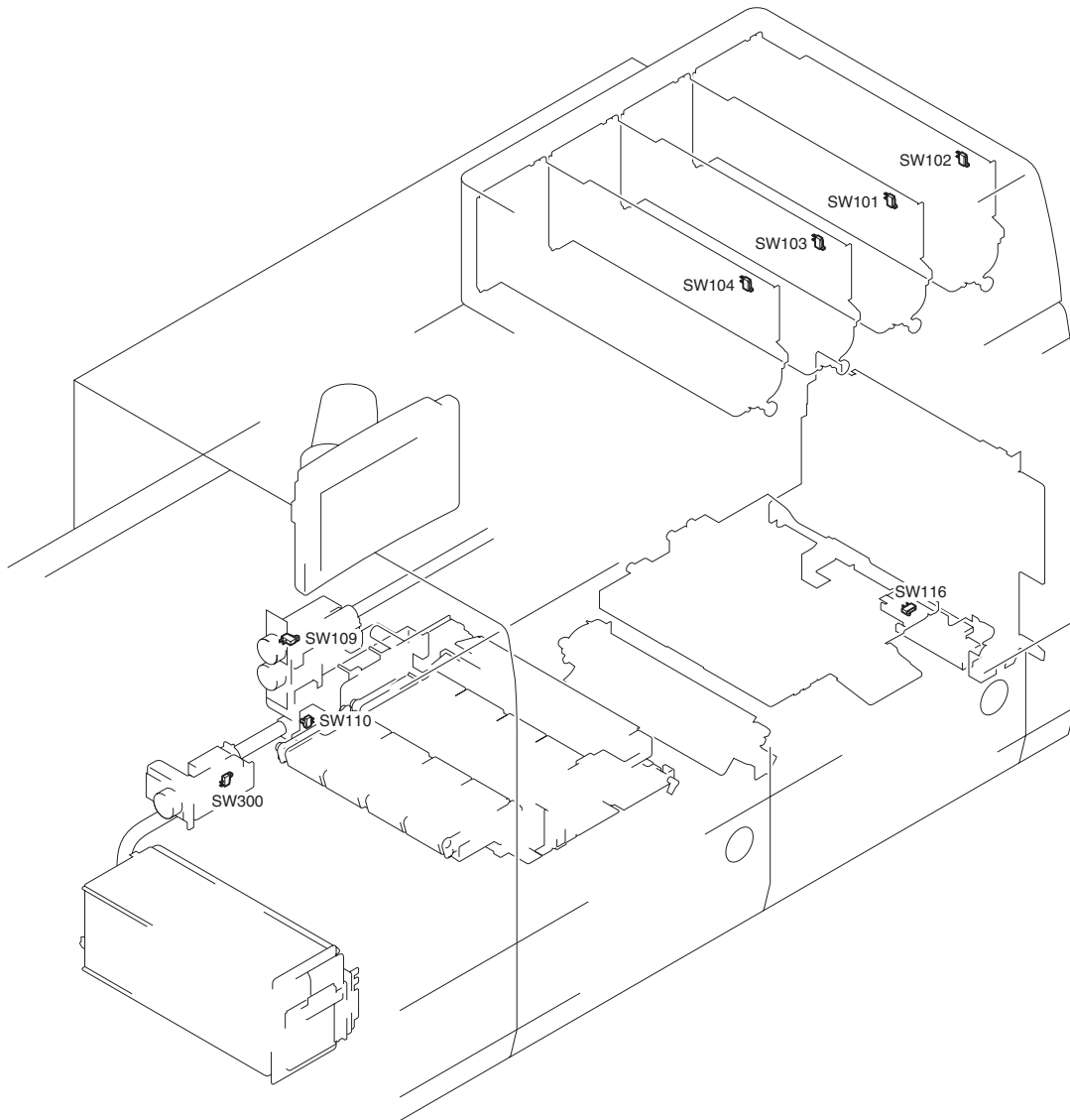
Notation	Name	Description	Parts No.	I/O
PS330	Sub station front right door open/close sensor	Sub station front right door detection	FK2-0149	
PS331	Delivery decurler HP sensor 1	Delivery decurler HP detection	FK2-0149	
PS332	Delivery decurler HP sensor 2	Delivery decurler HP detection	FK2-0149	
PS333	Delivery decurler HP sensor 2	Delivery decurler HP detection	FK2-0149	
PS334	Delivery reverse flapper HP sensor	Delivery reverse flapper HP detection	FK2-0149	
PS335	Delivery reverse sensor 1	Delivery reverse detection	WG8-5736	
PS336	Delivery reverse sensor 2	Delivery reverse detection	WG8-5736	
PS337	Delivery sensor 1	Delivery paper detection	WG8-5736	
PS338	Delivery sensor 2	Delivery paper detection	WG8-5736	
PS339	Delivery sensor 3	Delivery paper detection	WG8-5736	
PS340	Duplexing reverse sensor	Duplexing reverse paper detection	WG8-5736	
PS341	Duplexing reverse rear sensor	Duplexing reverse rear detection	WG8-5736	
PS342	Delivery reverse front sensor	Delivery reverse front detection	WG8-5736	
PS360	Delivery upper guide open/close sensor	Delivery upper guide open/close detection	FK2-0149	
PS361	Reverse guide open/close sensor	Reverse guide open/close detection	FK2-0149	
PS380	Color sensor HP sensor	Color sensor HP detection	FK2-0149	
PS369	Primary fixing lever sensor	Primary fixing lever detection	FK2-0149	
PS370	Secondary fixing lever sensor	Secondary fixing lever detection	FK2-0149	

Notation	Jack No.			
	Reverse/external delivery driver PCB	Duplexing feed driver PCB	Sub station power connecting PCB	DC controller PCB 1-2
PS330				
PS331				
PS332	J4126/J4111	J4091/J4070		J1072
PS333	J4126/J4111	J4091/J4070		J1072
PS334				
PS335	J4125/J4111	J4091/J4070		J1072
PS336	J4125/J4111	J4091/J4070		J1072
PS337	J4125/J4111	J4091/J4070		J1072
PS338	J4125/J4111	J4091/J4070		J1072
PS339	J4125/J4111	J4091/J4070		J1072
PS340	J4125/J4111	J4091/J4070		J1072
PS341	J4125/J1411	J4091/J4070		J1072
PS342	J4126/J1411	J4091/J4070		J1072
PS360	J4125/J1411	J4091/J4070		J1072
PS361	J4125/J1411	J4091/J4070		J1072
PS380				
PS369			J4213/J4210	J1002
PS370			J4213/J4210	J1002

16.4.5 Switch

16.4.5.1 Main Station(1/2)

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000



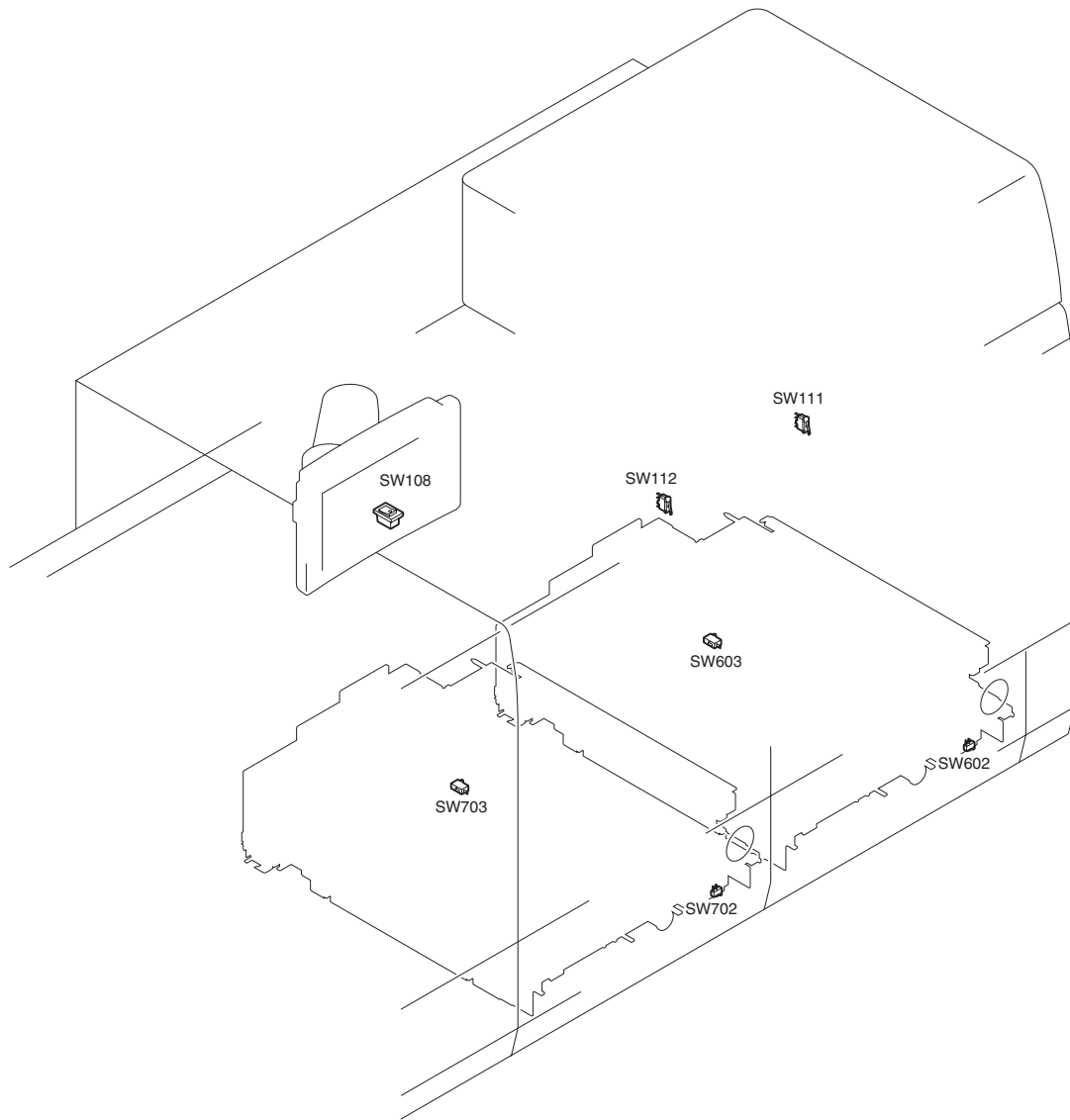
F-16-90
T-16-48

Symbol	Parts Name	Function	Parts No.	Connector No.		
				PCB		No.
SW101	Hopper cover switch (C)	Detection of toner replacement internal cover (C) open/close	FM2-0956	UN167	Hopper driver PCB (C)	J1420C
				UN167 UN124	Hopper driver PCB (C) DC controller PCB 1-2	J1410CB J1016B
SW102	Hopper cover switch (Bk)	Detection of toner replacement internal cover (Bk) open/close	FM2-0956	UN168	Hopper driver PCB (Bk)	J1420K
				UN168 UN124	Hopper driver PCB (Bk) DC controller PCB 1-2	J1410KB J1017B
SW103	Hopper cover switch (M)	Detection of toner replacement internal cover (M) open/close	FM2-0956	UN166	Hopper driver PCB (M)	J1420M
				UN166 UN124	Hopper driver PCB (M) DC controller PCB 1-2	J1410MB J1015B
SW104	Hopper cover switch (Y)	Detection of toner replacement internal cover (Y) open/close	FM2-0956	UN165	Hopper driver PCB (Y)	J1420Y
				UN165 UN124	Hopper driver PCB (Y) DC controller PCB 1-2	J1410YB J1014B
SW109	Drum waste toner lock detection switch	Detection of toner stuck inside the waste toner pipe (between process unit and the waste toner buffer)	FM2-0956	UN107	Pre-fixing feed driver PCB	J1559
				UN107 UN124	Pre-fixing feed driver PCB DC controller PCB 1-2	J1553A J1026A
SW110	Transfer waste toner lock detection switch	Detection of toner stuck inside the waste toner pipe (between the transfer cleaning assembly and the waste toner buffer)	FM2-0956	UN107	Pre-fixing feed driver PCB	J1559
				UN107 UN124	Pre-fixing feed driver PCB DC controller PCB 1-2	J1553A J1026A

Symbol	Parts Name	Function	Parts No.	Connector No.		
				PCB		No.
SW116	Vertical path cover open/close switch	Detection of the vertical path cover open/close	FM2-8509	UN102	Main station power supply connect PCB	J1814
SW300	Waste toner delivery lock detection switch	Detection of toner stuck inside the waste toner pipe (between the waste toner buffer and the waste toner container)	FM2-0956	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB	J4110

16.4.5.2 Main Station(2/2)

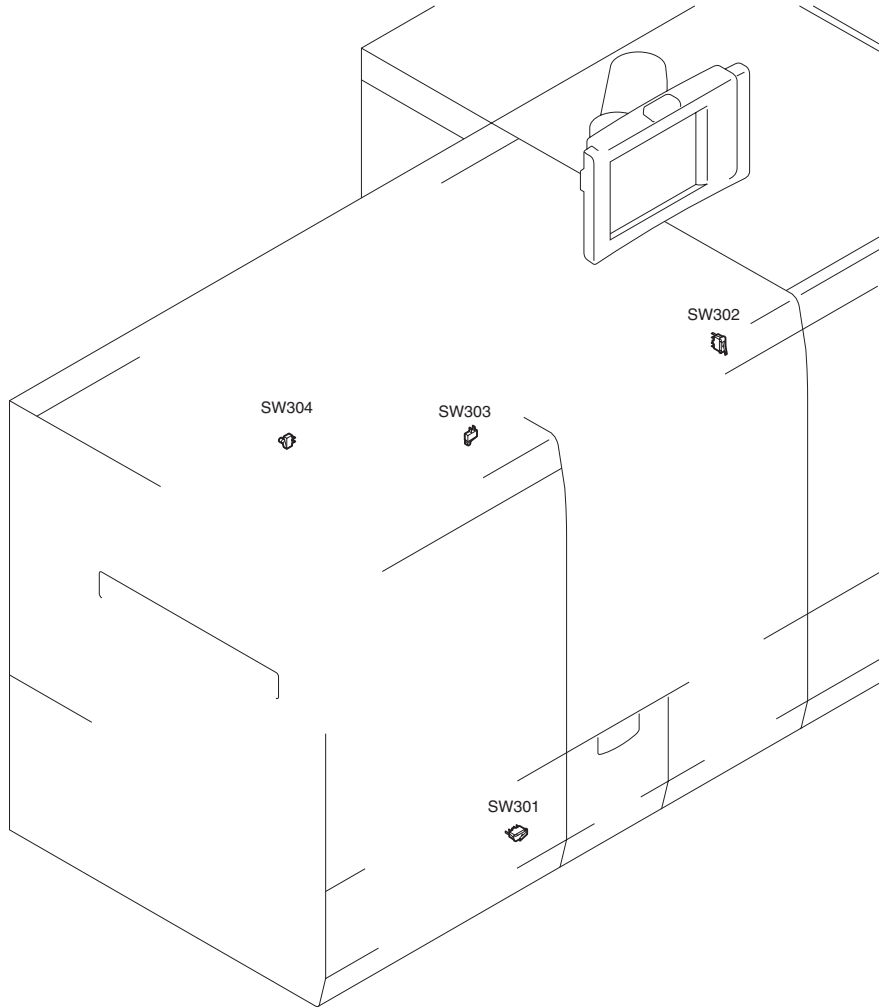
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

F-16-91
T-16-49

Symbol	Parts Name	Function	Parts No.	Connector No.		
				PCB		No.
SW108	Main power switch	ON/OFF the main power	FK2-2509			
SW111	Main station right front cover switch	Main station right front cover detection	FG3-2377			
SW112	Main station left front cover switch	Main station left front cover detection	FG3-2377			
SW602	Right deck lifter lower limit switch	Detection of the paper supply position limit of the right deck	FM2-9409	UN602	Right deck driver PCB	J2107R
SW603	Right deck interlock switch	Fail safe at failure of the right deck open/close sensor	FM2-8509	UN602	Right deck driver PCB	J2104R
SW702	Left deck lifter lower limit switch	Detection of the paper supply position limit of the left deck	FM2-9409	UN702	Left deck driver PCB	J2107L
SW703	Left deck interlock switch	Fail safe at failure of the right deck open/close sensor	FM2-8509	UN702	Left deck driver PCB	J2104L

16.4.5.3 Sub Station

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

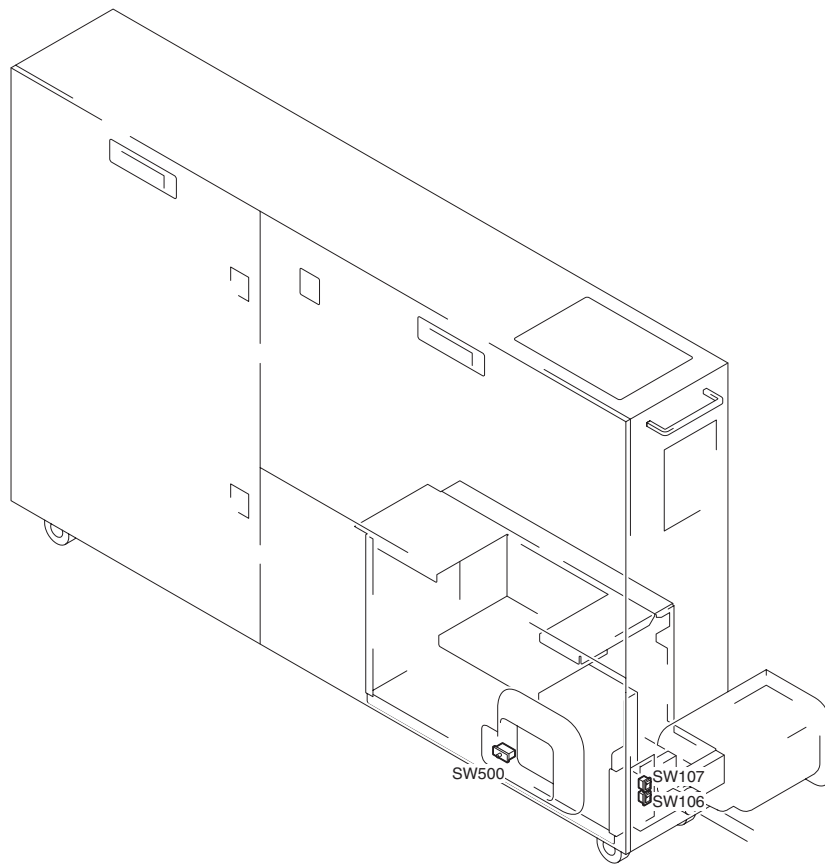


F-16-92
T-16-50

Symbol	Parts Name	Function	Parts No.	Connector No.		
				PCB		No.
SW301	Sub station front left door switch	Sub station front left door detection	RH7-6037			
SW302	Sub station front right door switch	Sub station front right door detection	RH7-6037			
SW303	Primary fixing lever switch	Detection of the primary fixing assembly lever set/not set	FM2-8509	UN301	Sub station power connecting PCB	J4215
				UN301	Sub station power connecting PCB	J4215
				UN124	DC controller PCB 1-2	J1002
SW304	Secondary fixing lever switch	Detection of the secondary fixing assembly lever set/not set	FM2-8509	UN301	Sub station power connecting PCB	J4215
				UN301	Sub station power connecting PCB	J4215
				UN124	DC controller PCB 1-3	J1002

16.4.5.4 Power Unit Station

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000



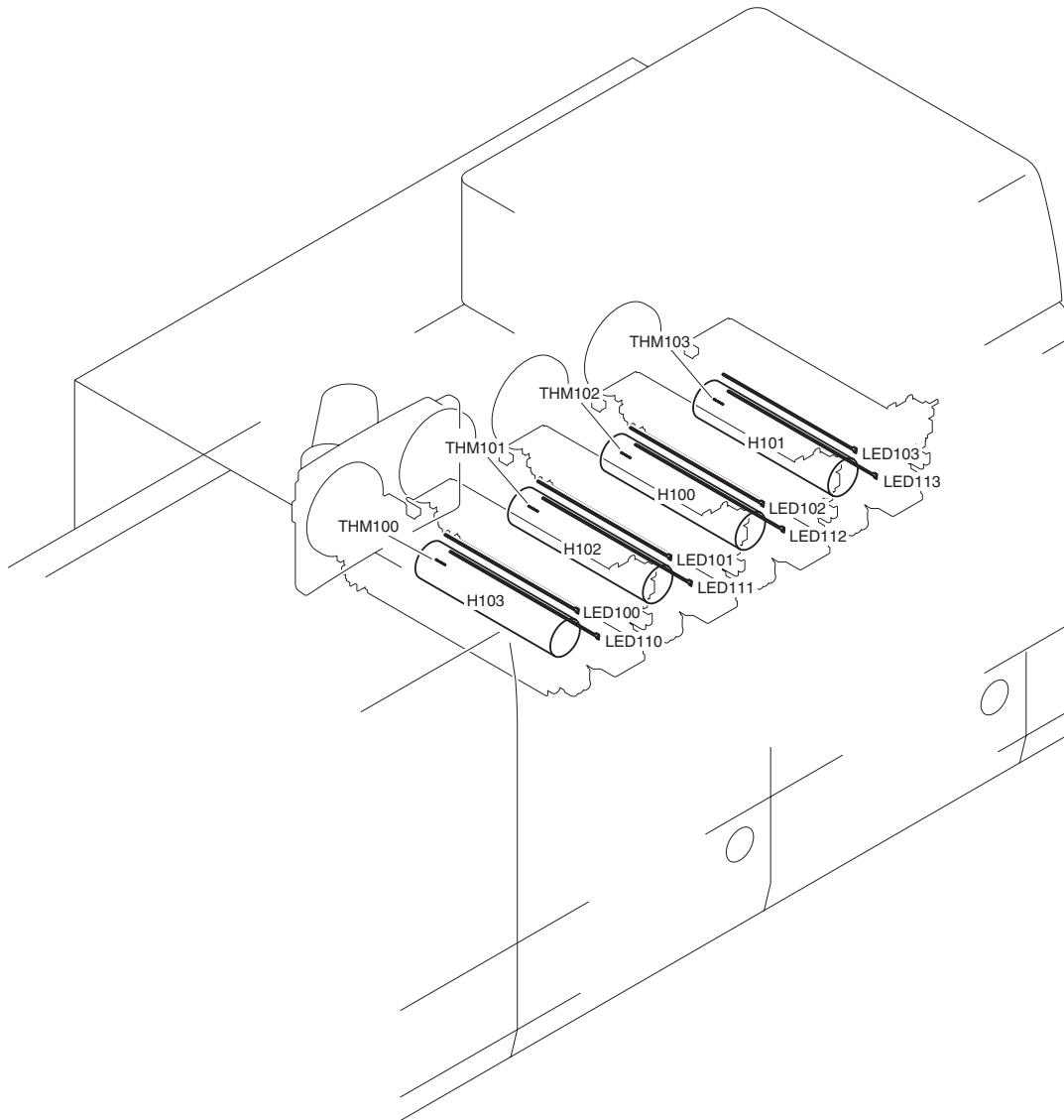
F-16-93
T-16-51

Symbol	Parts Name	Function	Parts No.	Connector No.		
				PCB		No.
SW106	Deck heater switch	ON/OFF the deck heater	WC1-5179	FM2-7715	Deck heater relay PCB	J7176
SW107	Environment switch	ON/OFF the environment heater	WC1-5179	UN101	Environment heater driver PCB	J4400
SW500	Leakage breaker test switch	Operation test for the leakage breaker	FM3-0409	ELB500	Leakage breaker	-

16.4.6 Lamps, Heaters, and Others

16.4.6.1 Main Station(1/2)

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000



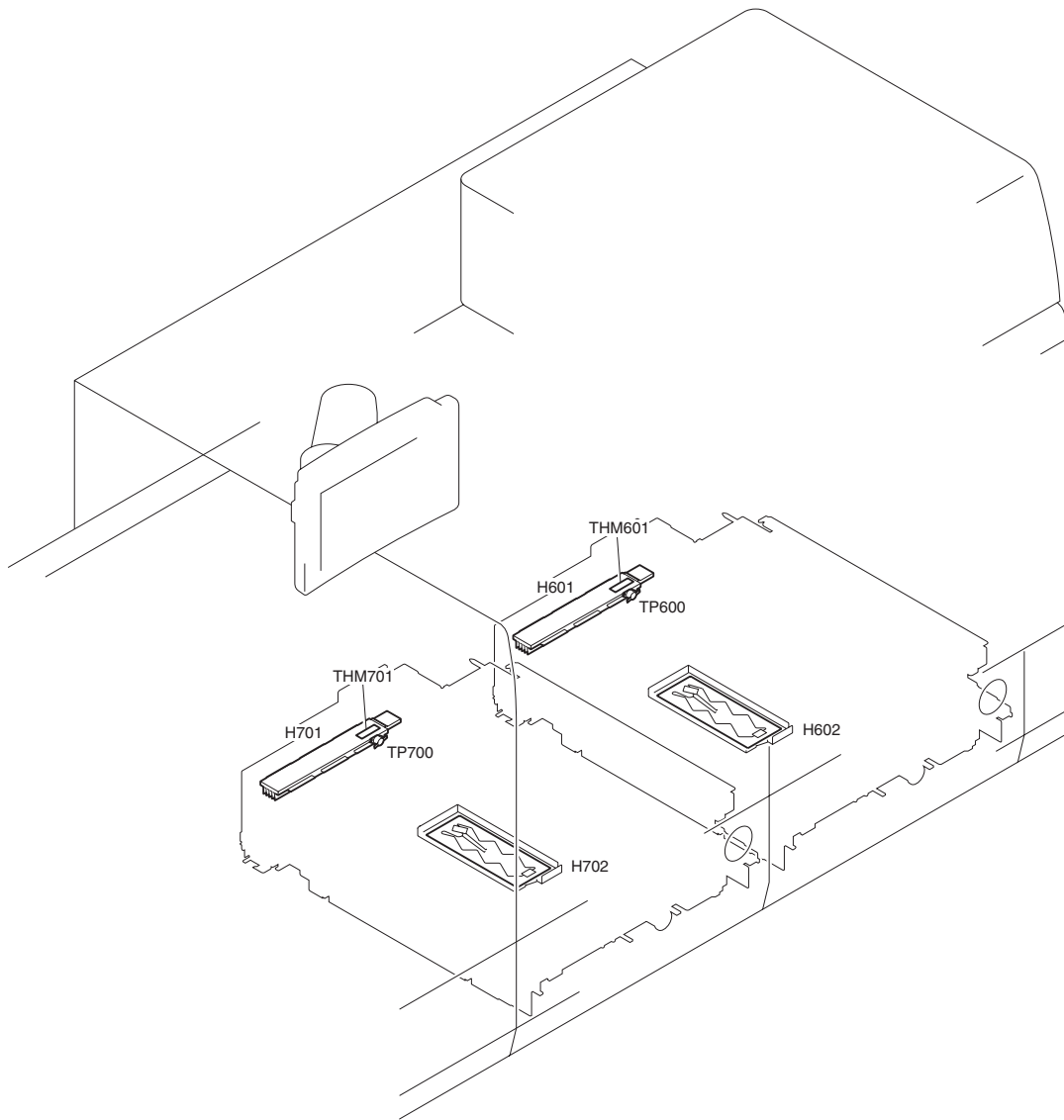
F-16-94
T-16-52

Symbol	Parts Name	Function	Parts No.	E code
H100	Drum heater (C)	Anti-condensation for drum (C)	FK2-2717	E062
H101	Drum heater (Bk)	Anti-condensation for drum (Bk)	FK2-2717	E062
H102	Drum heater(M)	Anti-condensation for drum (M)	FK2-2717	E062
H103	Drum heater (Y)	Anti-condensation for drum (Y)	FK2-2717	E062
LED100	Pre-exposure LED (Y)	Removing residual charge on photosensitive drum (Y)	FK2-0621	
LED101	Pre-exposure LED (M)	Removing residual charge on photosensitive drum (M)	FK2-0621	
LED102	Pre-exposure LED (C)	Removing residual charge on photosensitive drum (C)	FK2-0621	
LED103	Pre-exposure LED (Bk)	Removing residual charge on photosensitive drum (Bk)	FK2-0621	
LED110	Drum clearing pre-exposure LED (Y)	Prevention of drum memory generated during primary transfer (Y)	FK2-0621	
LED111	Drum clearing pre-exposure LED(M)	Prevention of drum memory generated during primary transfer(M)	FK2-0621	
LED112	Drum clearing pre-exposure LED (C)	Prevention of drum memory generated during primary transfer(C)	FK2-0621	
LED113	Drum clearing pre-exposure LED (Bk)	Prevention of drum memory generated during primary transfer(Bk)	FK2-0621	
THM100	Drum thermistor (Y)	Moisture absorption prevention for drum (Y)	FK2-3153	E062
THM101	Drum thermistor(M)	Moisture absorption prevention for drum (M)	FK2-3153	E062
THM102	Drum thermistor (C)	Moisture absorption prevention for drum (C)	FK2-3153	E062

Symbol	Parts Name	Function	Parts No.	E code
THM103	Drum thermistor (Bk)	Moisture absorption prevention for drum (Bk)	FK2-3153	E062

16.4.6.2 Main Station(2/2)

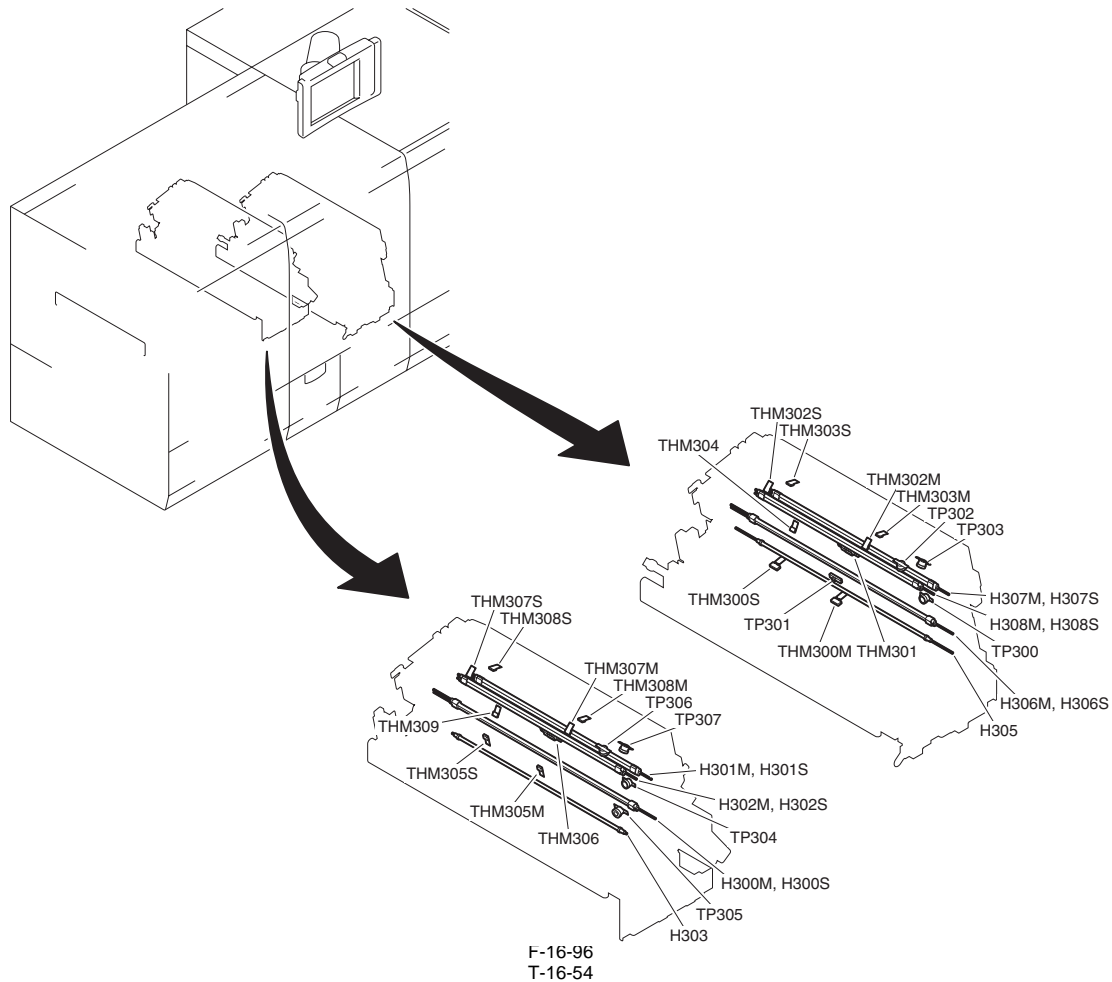
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

F-16-95
T-16-53

Symbol	Parts Name	Function	Parts No.	E code
H601	Right deck floating air heater	Moisture absorption prevention for paper inside right deck	FK2-2995	E906-0001
H602	Right deck heater	Moisture absorption prevention for paper inside right deck	FH7-4585	
H701	Left deck floating air heater	Moisture absorption prevention for paper inside left deck	FK2-2995	E906-0001
H702	Left deck heater	Moisture absorption prevention for paper inside left deck	FH7-4585	
THM601	Left deck floatation air thermistor	Abnormally high temperature of left deck floatation air heater	FH7-7531	
THM701	Right deck floatation air thermistor	Abnormally high temperature of right deck floatation air heater	FH7-7531	
TP600	Left deck floatation air heater thermoswitch	Abnormally high temperature of left deck floatation air heater	Fk2-2995	E906-0001
TP700	Right deck floatation air heater thermoswitch	Abnormally high temperature of right deck floatation air heater	Fk2-2995	E906-0001

16.4.6.3 Sub Station

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

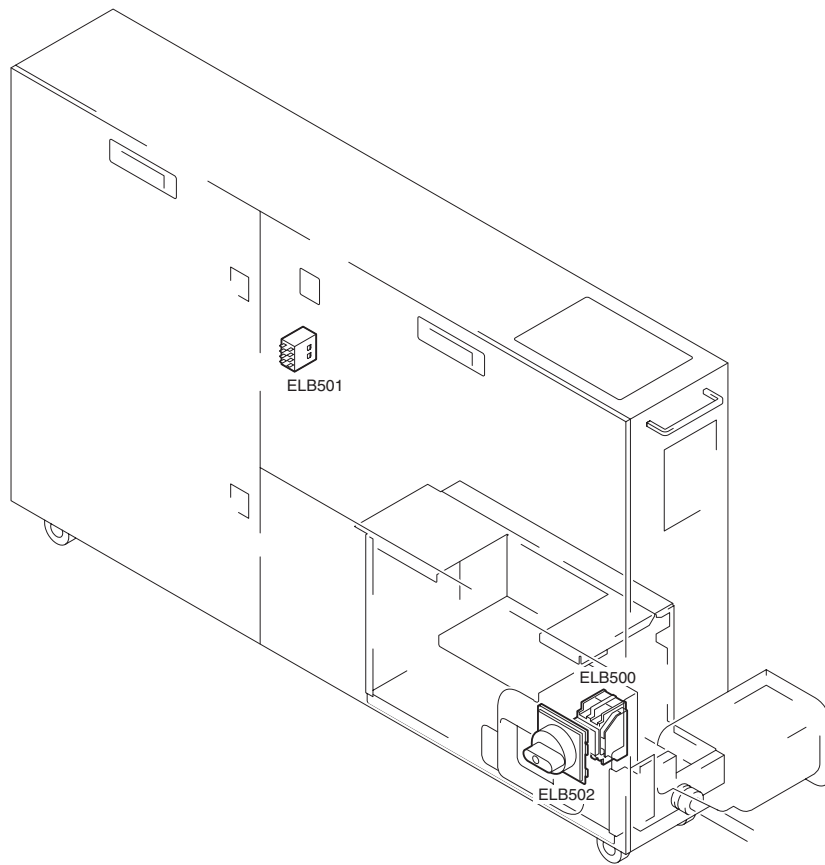


Symbol	Parts Name	Function	Parts No..
H300	H300M:Secondary fixing roller main heater H300S:Secondary fixing roller sub heater	Temperature control of Secondary fixing roller	FK2-3082 (200V) FK2-3083 (240V)
H301	H301M:Secondary fixing outside heating lower roller main heater H301S:Secondary fixing outside heating lower roller sub heater	Temperature control of secondary fixing outside heating lower roller	FK2-3080 (200V) FK2-3081 (240V)
H302	H302M:Secondary fixing outside heating upper roller main heater H302S: Secondary fixing outside heating upper roller sub heater	Temperature control of secondary fixing outside heating upper roller	FK2-3080 (200V) FK2-3081 (240V)
H303	Secondary fixing pressure roller heater	Temperature control of secondary fixing pressure heating roller	FK2-3090 (200V) FK2-3091 (240V)
H305	Primary fixing pressure belt heater	Temperature control of secondary fixing pressure heating roller	FK2-3086 (200V) FK2-3087 (240V)
H306	H306M:Primary fixing roller main heater H306S:Primary fixing roller sub heater	Temperature control of primary fixing roller	FK2-3082 (200V) FK2-3083 (240V)
H307	H307M: Primary fixing outside heating lower main heater H307S: Primary fixing outside heating lower sub heater	Temperature control of primary fixing outside heating lower roller	FK2-3080 (200V) FK2-3081 (240V)
H308	H308M: Primary fixing outside heating upper roller main heater H308S: Primary fixing outside heating upper roller sub heater	Temperature control of primary fixing outside heating upper roller	FK2-3080 (200V) FK2-3081 (240V)
THM300	THM300M:Primary fixing pressure belt main thermistor THM300S:Primary fixing pressure belt sub thermistor	Temperature detection of a primary fixing pressure belt(main) Temperature detection of a primary fixing pressure belt(sub)	FK2-3094
THM301	Primary fixing roller main thermistor	Temperature detection of a primary fixing roller(main)	FK2-3160

Symbol	Parts Name	Function	Parts No..
THM302	THM302M:Primary fixing external heat upper roller main thermistor	Temperature detection of a primary fixing upper roller(main)	FK2-3097
	THM302S:Primary fixing external heat upper roller sub thermistor	Temperature detection of a primary fixing upper roller(sub)	
THM303	THM303M:Primary fixing external heat lower roller main thermistor	Temperature detection of a primary fixing external heat lower roller(main)	FK2-3095
	THM303S:Primary fixing external heat lower roller sub thermistor	Temperature detection of a primary fixing external heat lower roller(sub)	
THM304	Primary fixing roller sub thermistor	Temperature detection of a primary fixing heat roller(sub)	FK2-3095
THM305	THM305M:Secondary fixing pressure roller main thermistor	Temperature detection of a secondary fixing pressure roller(main)	FK2-3096
	THM305S:Secondary fixing pressure roller sub thermistor	Temperature detection of a secondary fixing pressure roller(sub)	
THM306	Secondary fixing roller main thermistor	Temperature detection of a secondary fixing roller(main)	FK2-3160
THM307	THM307M:Secondary fixing external heat lower roller main thermistor	Temperature detection of a secondary fixing external heat lower roller (main)	FK2-3097
	THM307S:Secondary fixing external heat lower roller sub thermistor	Temperature detection of a secondary fixing external heat lower roller (sub)	
THM308	THM308M:Secondary fixing external heat upper roller main thermistor	Temperature detection of a primary fixing external heat upper roller (main)	FK2-3097
	THM308S:Secondary fixing external heat upper roller sub thermistor	Temperature detection of a primary fixing external heat upper roller (sub)	
THM309	Secondary fixing roller sub thermistor	Temperature detection of a secondary fixing roller(sub)	FK2-3095
TP300	Primary fixing roller thermostwitch	Abnormally high temperature of primary fixing roller	FM3-0656
TP301	Primary fixing pressure belt thermostwitch	Abnormally high temperature of primary fixing pressure belt	FK2-0605
TP302	Primary fixing external heat upper roller thermostwitch	Abnormally high temperature of primary fixing external heat upper roller	FM3-0657
TP303	Primary fixing external heat lower roller thermostwitch	Abnormally high temperature of primary fixing external heat lower roller	FM3-0657
TP304	Secondary fixing roller thermostwitch	Abnormally high temperature of secondary fixing roller	FM3-0656
TP305	Secondary fixing pressure roller thermostwitch	Abnormally high temperature of secondary fixing pressure roller	FM3-0655
TP306	Secondary fixing external heat upper roller thermostwitch	Abnormally high temperature of secondary external heat upper roller	FM3-0657
TP307	Secondary fixing external heat lower roller thermostwitch	Abnormally high temperature of secondary fixing external heat lower roller	FM3-0657

16.4.6.4 Power Unit Station

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000



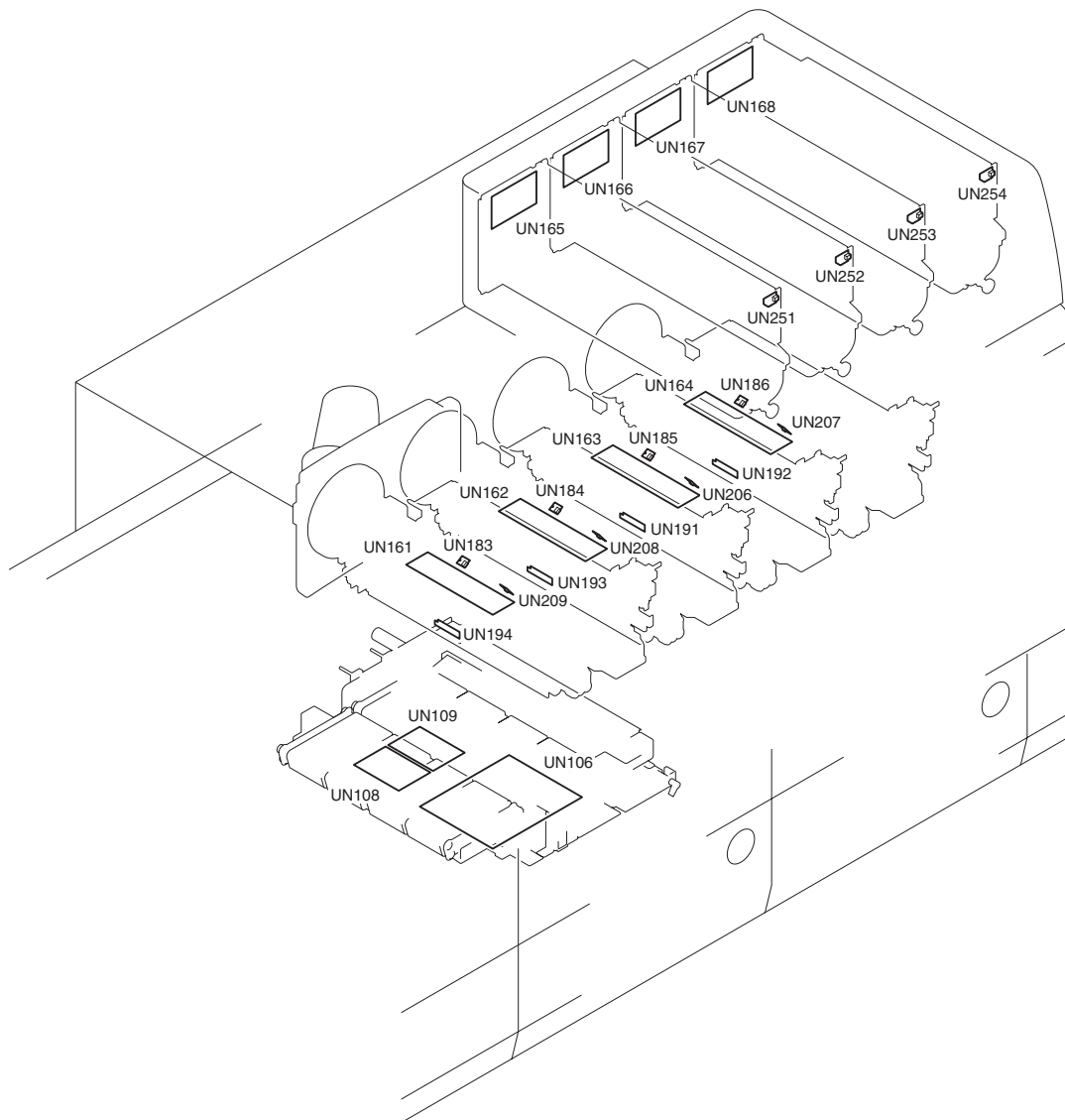
F-16-97
T-16-55

Symbol	Parts Name	Function	Parts No.		E code
			imagePRESS C7000VP/C6000VP	imagePRESS C6000	
ELB500	Leakage breaker	Leak prevention	JPN: FK2-2719 USA: FK2-2720 EUR: FK2-2718	FK2-6912	
ELB501	Leakage relay	Leak prevention	FK2-2722 (EUR only)	None	
ELB502	Outside operation handle	Shutdown in emergency	FK2-2721	FK2-2721	

16.4.7 PCBs

16.4.7.1 Main Station(1/4)

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

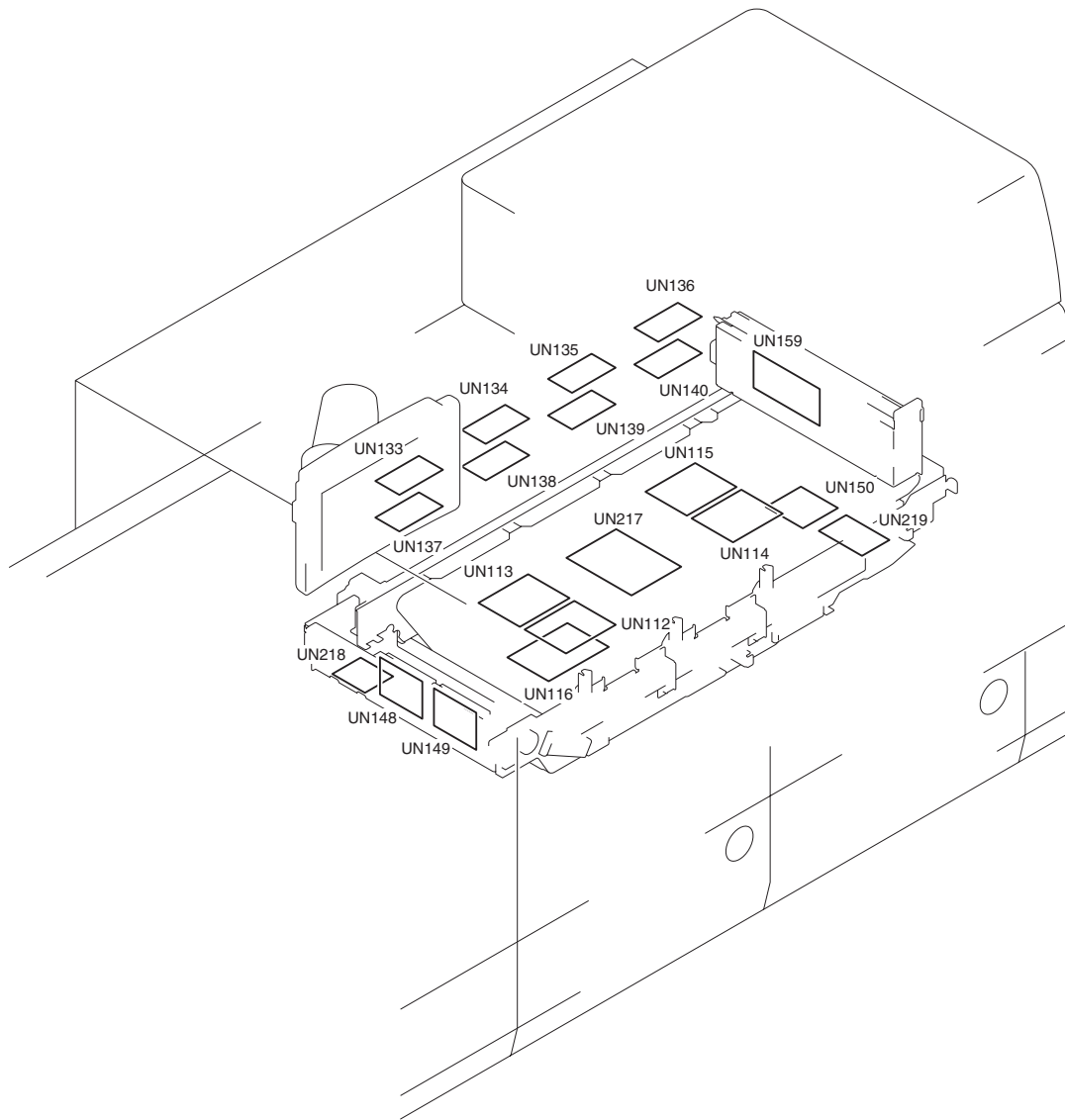
F-16-98
T-16-56

Symbol	Parts Name	Function	Parts No.
UN106	Secondary transfer/duplexing driver PCB	Drive control of secondary transfer/main station duplex unit	FM2-7689
UN108	Post-secondary transfer static elimination high-voltage PCB	Generate post-secondary transfer static elimination bias	FM2-7189
UN109	Secondary transfer cleaner high-voltage PCB	Generate secondary transfer cleaning bias	FM2-7193
UN161	Process unit driver PCB (Y)	Control Y process unit motors	FM2-7693
UN162	Process unit driver PCB (M)	Control M process unit motors	FM2-7693
UN163	Process unit driver PCB (C)	Control C process unit motors	FM2-7693
UN164	Process unit driver PCB (Bk)	Control Bk process unit motors	FM2-7693
UN165	Hopper driver PCB (Y)	Drive Y sub-hopper,/toner supply	FM2-7694
UN166	Hopper driver PCB (M)	Drive M sub-hopper,/toner supply	FM2-7694
UN167	Hopper driver PCB (C)	Drive C sub-hopper,/toner supply	FM2-7694
UN168	Hopper driver PCB (Bk)	Drive Bk sub-hopper,/toner supply	FM2-7694
UN183	Drum surface temperature sensor (Y)	Measure Y drum surface temperature	FK2-0607
UN184	Drum surface temperature sensor (M)	Measure M drum surface temperature	FK2-0607
UN185	Drum surface temperature sensor (C)	Measure C drum surface temperature	FK2-0607
UN186	Drum surface temperature sensor (Bk)	Measure Bk drum surface temperature	FK2-0607
UN191	Toner blocking high-voltage PCB (C)	Generate C toner blocking bias	FG5-9393

Symbol	Parts Name	Function	Parts No.
UN192	Toner blocking high-voltage PCB (Bk)	Generate Bk toner blocking bias	FG5-9393
UN193	Toner blocking high-voltage PCB (M)	Generate M toner blocking bias	FG5-9393
UN194	Toner blocking high-voltage PCB (Y)	Generate Y toner blocking bias	FG5-9393
UN206	Potential sensor (C)	Measure C drum surface potential voltage	FM2-9295 (Potential masurement assembly)
UN207	Potential sensor (Bk)	Measure Bk drum surface potential voltage	FM2-9295 (Potential masurement assembly)
UN208	Potential sensor (M)	Measure M drum surface potential voltage	FM2-9295 (Potential masurement assembly)
UN209	Potential sensor (Y)	Measure Y drum surface potential voltage	FM2-9295 (Potential masurement assembly)
UN251	Hopper switch PCB (Y)	Switch for slide out Y toner container	FM2-7698
UN252	Hopper switch PCB (M)	Switch for slide out M toner container	FM2-7698
UN253	Hopper switch PCB (C)	Switch for slide out C toner container	FM2-7698
UN254	Hopper switch PCB (Bk)	Switch for slide out Bk toner container	FM2-7698

16.4.7.2 Main Station(2/4)

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

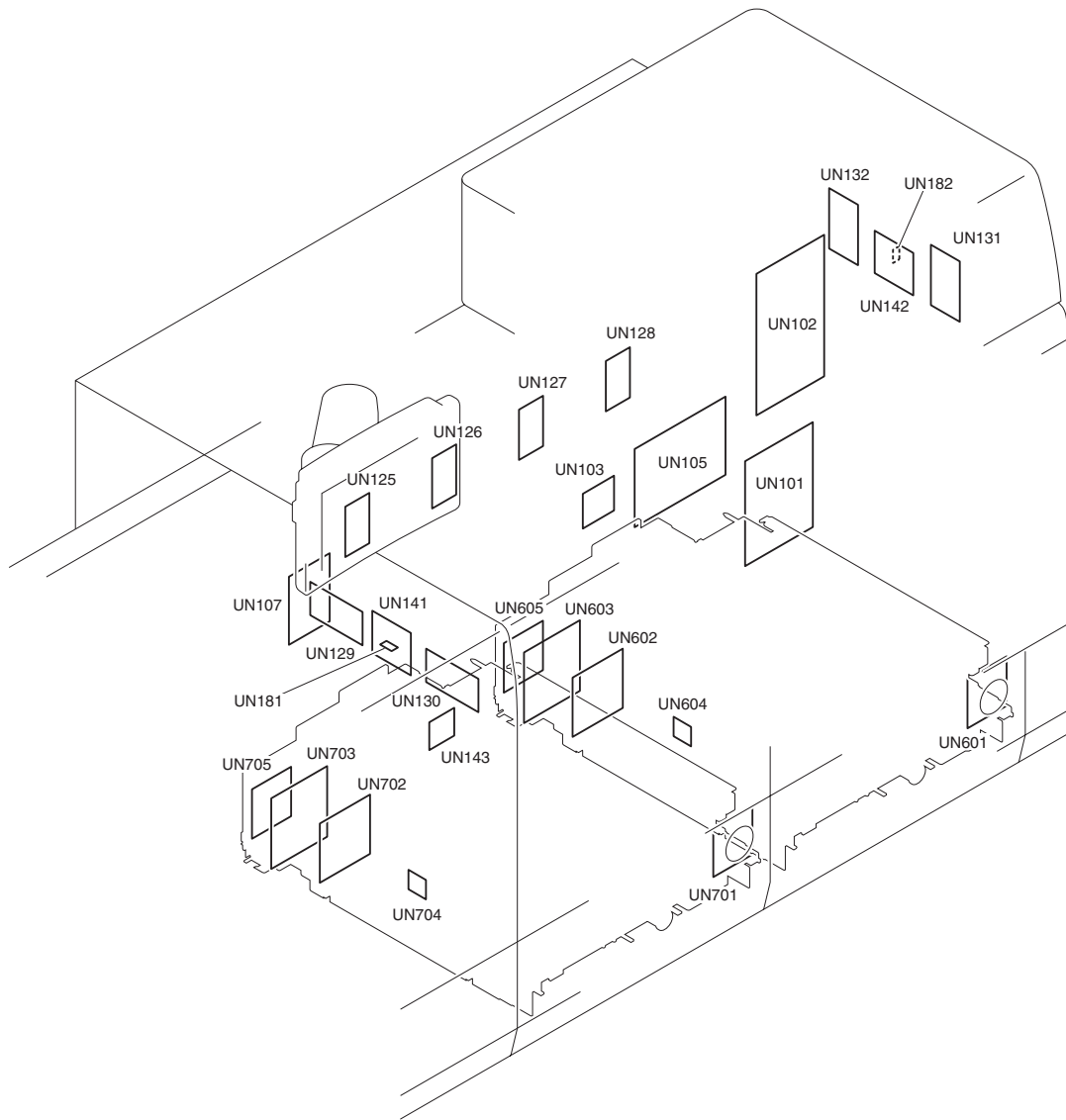
F-16-99
T-16-57

Symbol	Parts Name	Function	Parts No.
UN112	Primary transfer high-voltage PCB (Y)	Generate Y primary transfer bias	FM2-7188
UN113	Primary transfer high-voltage PCB (M)	Generate M primary transfer bias	FM2-7188
UN114	Primary transfer high-voltage PCB (C)	Generate C primary transfer bias	FM2-7188
UN115	Primary transfer high-voltage PCB (Bk)	Generate Bk primary transfer bias	FM2-7188
UN116	Secondary transfer high-voltage PCB	Generate secondary transfer bias	FM2-7190
UN133	Developing high-voltage PCB (Y)	Generate Y developing bias	FM2-7706
UN134	Developing high-voltage PCB (M)	Generate M developing bias	FM2-7706
UN135	Developing high-voltage PCB (C)	Generate C developing bias	FM2-7706
UN136	Developing high-voltage PCB (Bk)	Generate Bk developing bias	FM2-7706
UN137	Primary charging high-voltage PCB (Y)	Generate Y Primary charging bias	FM2-7705
UN138	Primary charging high-voltage PCB (M)	Generate M Primary charging bias	FM2-7705
UN139	Primary charging high-voltage PCB (C)	Generate C Primary charging bias	FM2-7705
UN140	Primary charging high-voltage PCB (Bk)	Generate Bk Primary charging bias	FM2-7705
UN148	ITB cleaner high-voltage PCB (upstream)	Generate ITB cleaning bias	FM2-7202
UN149	ITB cleaner high-voltage PCB (downstream)	Generate ITB cleaning bias	FM2-7192
UN150	ITB pre-transfer charging high-voltage PCB	Generate ITB pre-transfer bias	FM2-7707
UN159	Registration patch sensor driver PCB	Control registration patch sensor	FM2-2155
UN217	ITB driver PCB (center)	Drive ITB pre-transfer charging wire cleaner motor, ITB steering correction motor	FM2-7691

Symbol	Parts Name	Function	Parts No.
UN218	ITB driver PCB (left)	Drive ITB cleaner, press/release ITB web	FM2-7690
UN219	ITB driver PCB (right)	Drive leading edge registration patch sensor shutter	FM2-7692

16.4.7.3 Main Station(3/4)

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

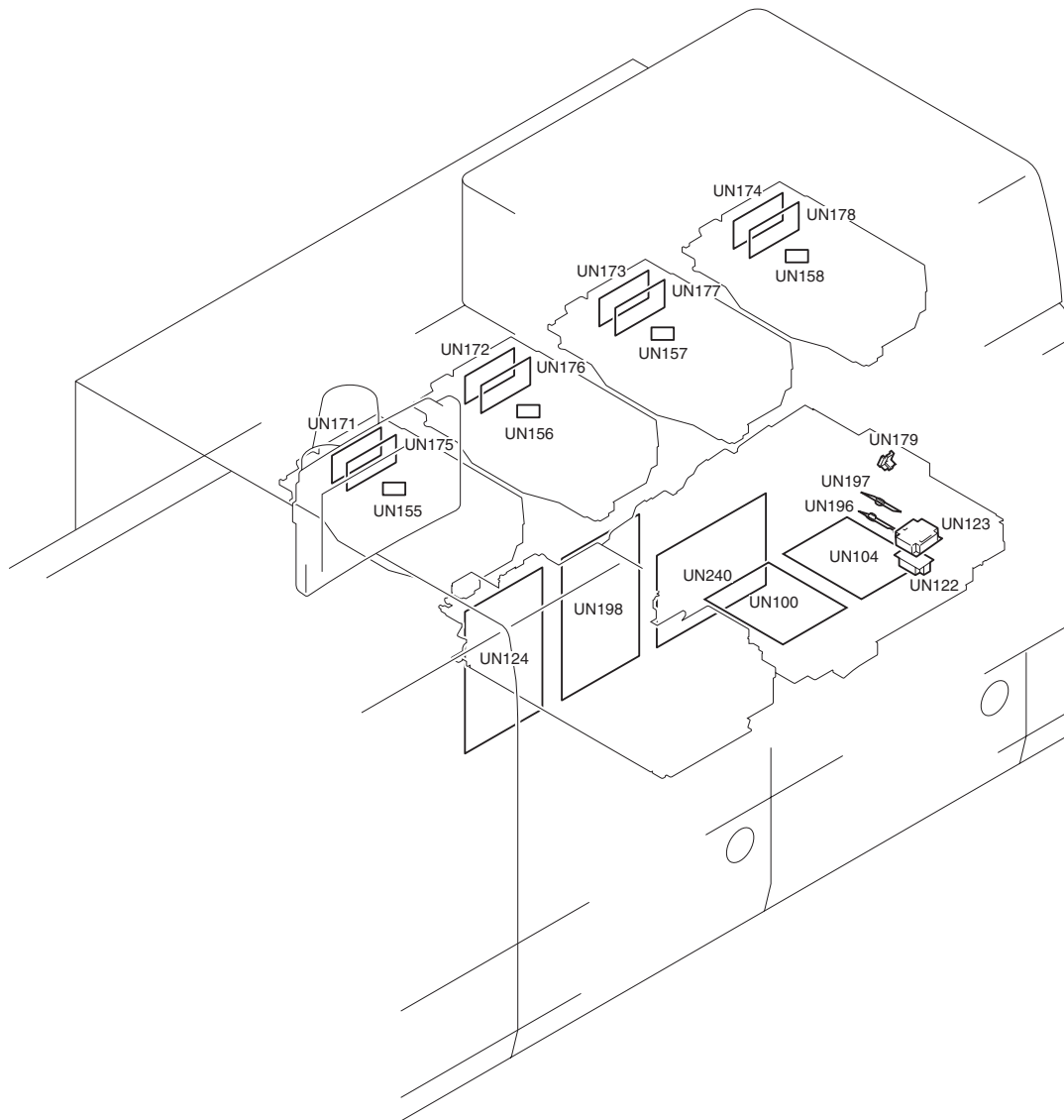
F-16-100
T-16-58

Symbol	Parts Name	Function	Parts No.
UN101	Environment heater driver PCB	Drive drum heater, reader heater (optional), right deck heater and left deck heater	FM2-7711
UN102	Main station power supply connect PCB	DC-DC converter Supply 5V/12V/13V/24V to electrical parts of main station	FM2-2254
UN103	DC controller power supply PCB	DC-DC converter Supply 3.3V/5V to DC controller	FM2-7709
UN105	Vertical path/lower feed driver PCB	Drive vertical path/lower feed section	FM2-7689
UN107	Pre-fixing feed driver PCB	Drive pre-fixing feed section	FM2-2260
UN125	Drum driver PCB (Y)	Drive Y drum	FM2-7699
UN126	Drum driver PCB (M)	Drive M drum	FM2-7699
UN127	Drum driver PCB (C)	Drive C drum	FM2-7699
UN128	Drum driver PCB (Bk)	Drive Bk drum	FM2-7699
UN129	Potential measuring PCB (Y)	Measurement of potential of drum (Y)	FM2-7201
UN130	Potential measuring PCB (M)	Measurement of potential of drum (M)	FM2-7201
UN131	Potential measuring PCB (C)	Measurement of potential of drum (C)	FM2-7201
UN132	Potential measuring PCB (Bk)	Measurement of potential of drum (Bk)	FM2-7201
UN141	Environment sensor PCB 1	Measurement of temperature and humidity inside the machine	FG5-3064
UN142	Environment sensor PCB 2	Measurement of temperature and humidity inside the machine	FG5-3064
UN143	ARCNET connector PCB	ARCNET network communication control	FM2-4358
UN181	Environment sensor 1	Measurement of temperature and humidity inside the machine	FK2-2724

Symbol	Parts Name	Function	Parts No.
UN182	Environment sensor 2	Measurement of temperature and humidity inside the machine	FK2-2724
UN601	Right deck indicator driver PCB	Display part control of right deck	FM2-7630
UN602	Right deck driver PCB	Drive right deck lifter	FM2-7629
UN603	Right deck pickup driver PCB	Drive right deck pickup	FM2-7627
UN604	Left deck environment sensor	Measurement of temperature and humidity inside the left deck	WP2-5200
UN605	Right deck pickup AC driver PCB	Drive deck floating air heater and deck heater (right deck)	FM2-7628
UN701	Left deck indicator driver PCB	Display part control of left deck	FM2-7630
UN702	Left deck driver PCB	Drive left deck lifter	FM2-7629
UN703	Left deck pickup driver PCB	Drive left deck pickup	FM2-7627
UN704	Right deck environment sensor	Measurement of temperature and humidity inside the right deck	WP2-5200
UN705	Left deck pickup AC driver PCB	Drive deck floating air heater and deck heater (left deck)	FM2-7628

16.4.7.4 Main Station(4/4)

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

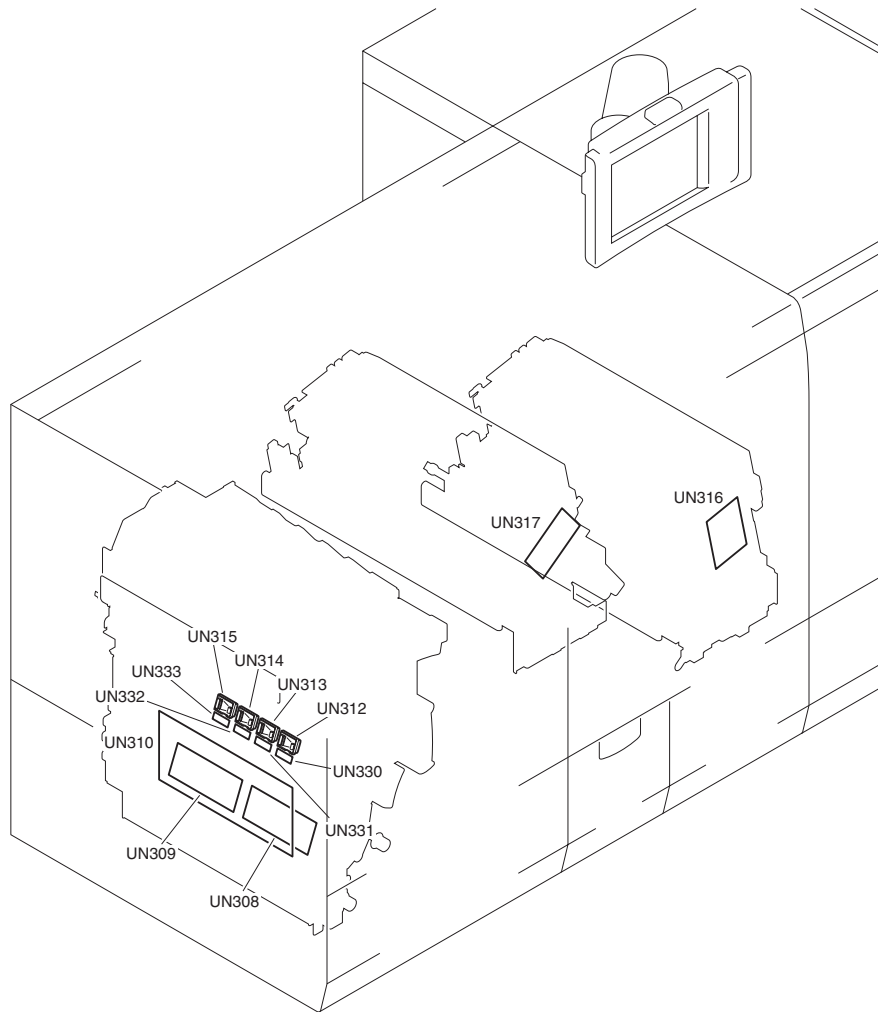
F-16-101
T-16-59

Symbol	Parts Name	Function	Parts No.
UN100	Registration feed driver PCB (left)	Drive registration unit	FM2-7688
UN104	Registration feed driver PCB (right)	Drive pre-registration unit	FM2-7688
UN122	Double feed detection PCB (transmission)	Detect double feed (transmission)	FM2-4356
UN123	Double feed detection PCB (reception)	Detect double feed (reception)	FM2-4357
UN124	DC controller PCB 1-2	Control drivers	FM2-7686
UN155	BD sensor PCB (Y)	Detect BD signal (Y)	FM2-4395
UN156	BD sensor PCB (M)	Detect BD signal (M)	FM2-4395
UN157	BD sensor PCB (C)	Detect BD signal (C)	FM2-4395
UN158	BD sensor PCB (Bk)	Detect BD signal (Bk)	FM2-4395
UN171	Laser driver sub PCB (Y)	Drive laser (Y)	FM2-7704
UN172	Laser driver sub PCB (M)	Drive laser (M)	FM2-7704
UN173	Laser driver sub PCB (C)	Drive laser (C)	FM2-7704
UN174	Laser driver sub PCB (Bk)	Drive laser (Bk)	FM2-7704
UN175	Laser driver main PCB (Y)	Drive laser (Y)	FM2-7203
UN176	Laser driver main PCB (M)	Drive laser (M)	FM2-7203
UN177	Laser driver main PCB (C)	Drive laser (C)	FM2-7203
UN178	Laser driver main PCB (Bk)	Drive laser (Bk)	FM2-7203
UN179	Paper thickness sensor	Detect paper thickness	FH7-7530
UN196	Double feed sensor (transmission)	Detect paper double feed	FK2-0999

Symbol	Parts Name	Function	Parts No.
UN197	Double feed sensor (reception)	Detect paper double feed	FK2-0999
UN198	DC controller PCB 1-1	Control printer engine	FM2-7685
UN240	DC controller PCB 1-3	Control laser	FM2-7687

16.4.7.5 Sub Station(1/2)

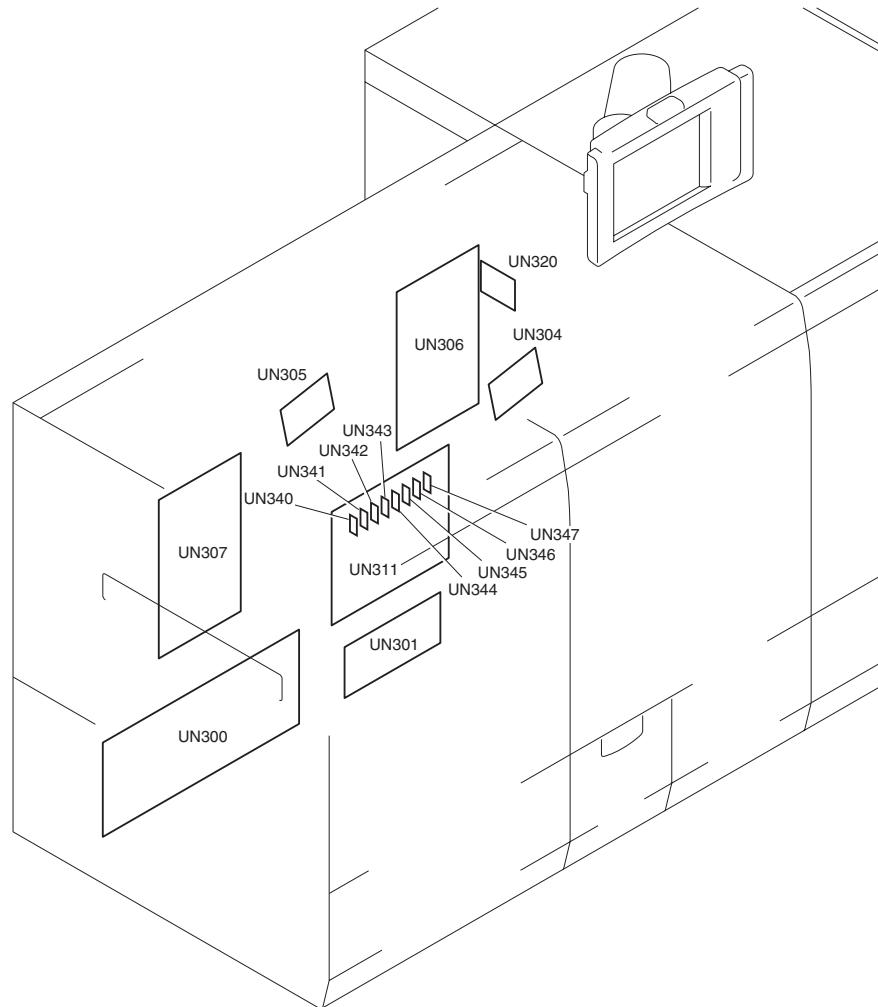
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

F-16-102
T-16-60

Symbol	Parts Name	Function	Parts No.
UN308	Color sensor control PCB 1	Supply DC power to color sensor, transform signal	FM2-7733
UN309	Color sensor control PCB 2	Supply DC power to color sensor, transform signal	FM2-7733
UN310	Reverse/external delivery driver PCB	drive reverse/external delivery unit	FM2-7701
UN312	Color sensor 1	Mesure patch density for printer PASCAL	FM2-2713 (Color sensor unit)
UN313	Color sensor 2	Mesure patch density for printer PASCAL	FM2-2713 (Color sensor unit)
UN314	Color sensor 3	Mesure patch density for printer PASCAL	FM2-2713 (Color sensor unit)
UN315	Color sensor 4	Mesure patch density for printer PASCAL	FM2-2713 (Color sensor unit)
UN316	Primary fixing inner driver PCB	Press primary fixing belt, drive fixing belt steering motor	FM2-7703
UN317	Secondary fixing inner driver PCB	Press secondary fixing belt, drive fixing belt steering motor	FM2-7703
UN330	Color sensor ROM PCB (Y)	Preservation of characteristic data of Y color sensor	FM2-2713 (Color sensor unit)
UN331	Color sensor ROM PCB (M)	Preservation of characteristic data of M color sensor	FM2-2713 (Color sensor unit)
UN332	Color sensor ROM PCB (C)	Preservation of characteristic data of C color sensor	FM2-2713 (Color sensor unit)
UN333	Color sensor ROM PCB (Bk)	Preservation of characteristic data of Bk color sensor	FM2-2713 (Color sensor unit)

16.4.7.6 Sub Station(2/2)

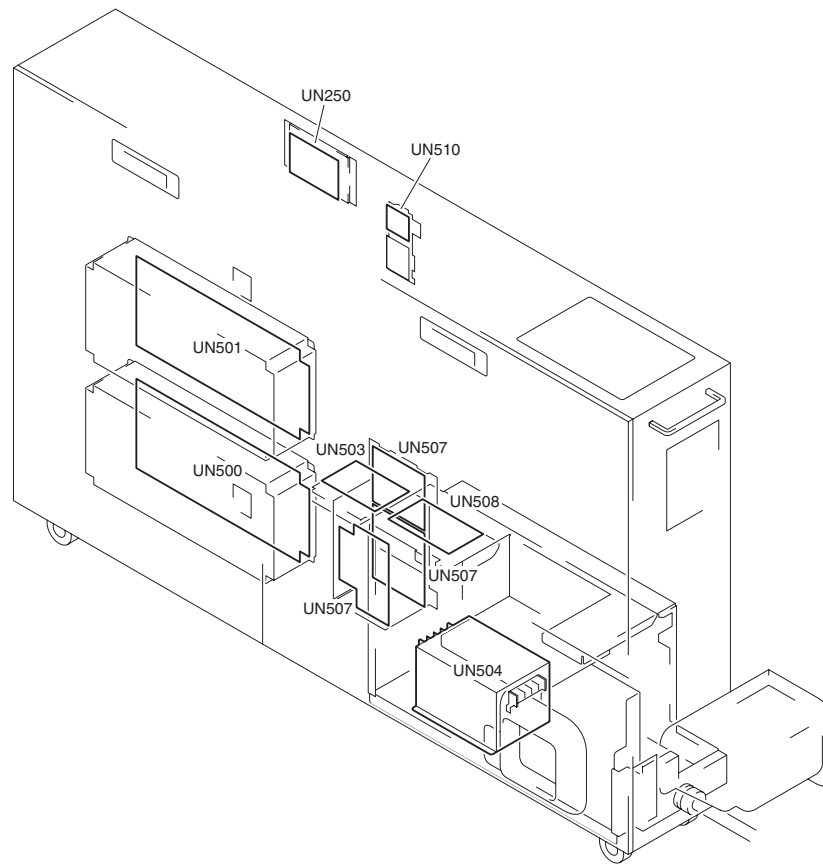
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

F-16-103
T-16-61

Symbol	Parts Name	Function	Parts No.
UN300	24V power supply 4	Supply 24V (non all-night) to electrical parts (various driver PCB's, etc.) and reader (optional)	FK2-2711
UN301	Sub station power connecting PCB	DC-DC converter Supply 3.3V/5V/13V/24V to electrical parts of sub station	FM2-7713
UN304	Primary fixing external driver PCB	Press primary fixing web/external heating unit, drive primary fixing roller/belt	FM2-7702
UN305	Secondary fixing external driver PCB	Press secondary fixing web/external heating unit, drive secondary fixing roller/belt	FM2-7702
UN306	Primary fixing heater driver PCB	Drive heater in primary fixing assembly	FK2-3147
UN307	Secondary fixing heater driver PCB	Drive heater in secondary fixing assembly	FK2-3147
UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB	Control electrical parts in sub station	FM2-7700
UN320	Primary fixing motor inverter PCB	24V is converted into 30V	FM2-0848
UN340	Motor driver PCB (A)	Motor driver small PCB 1	FM2-8297
UN341	Motor driver PCB (B)	Motor driver small PCB 2	FM2-8298
UN342	Motor driver PCB (A)	Motor driver small PCB 3	FM2-8297
UN343	Motor driver PCB (B)	Motor driver small PCB 4	FM2-8298
UN344	Motor driver PCB (A)	Motor driver small PCB 5	FM2-8297
UN345	Motor driver PCB (B)	Motor driver small PCB 6	FM2-8298
UN346	Motor driver PCB (A)	Motor driver small PCB 7	FM2-8297
UN347	Motor driver PCB (B)	Motor driver small PCB 8	FM2-8298

16.4.7.7 Power Unit Station(1/2)

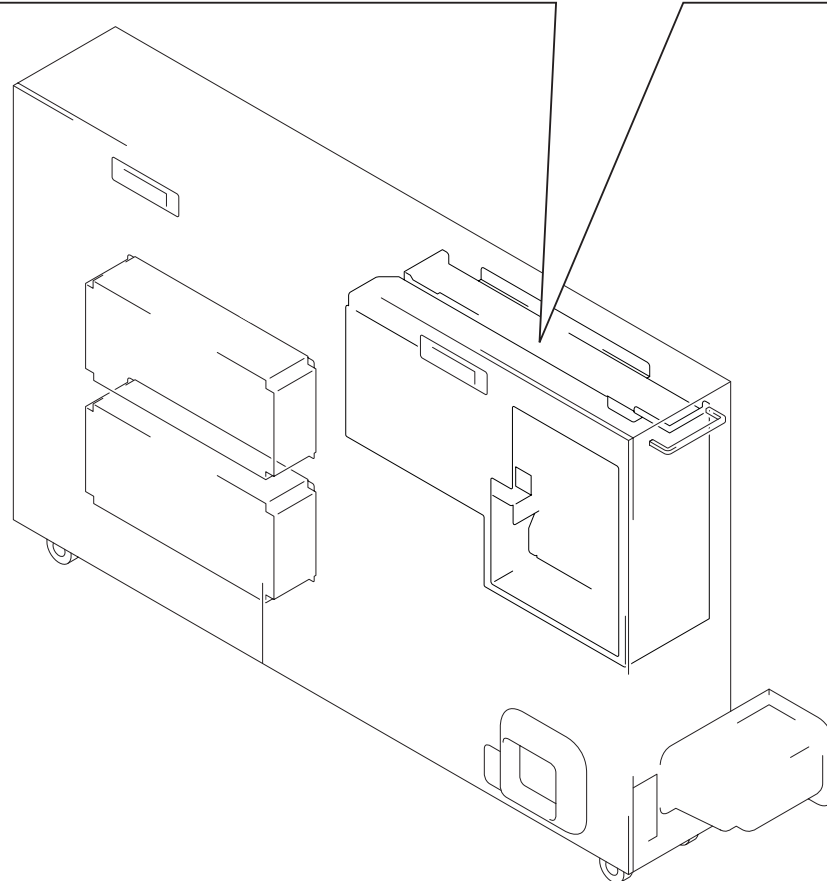
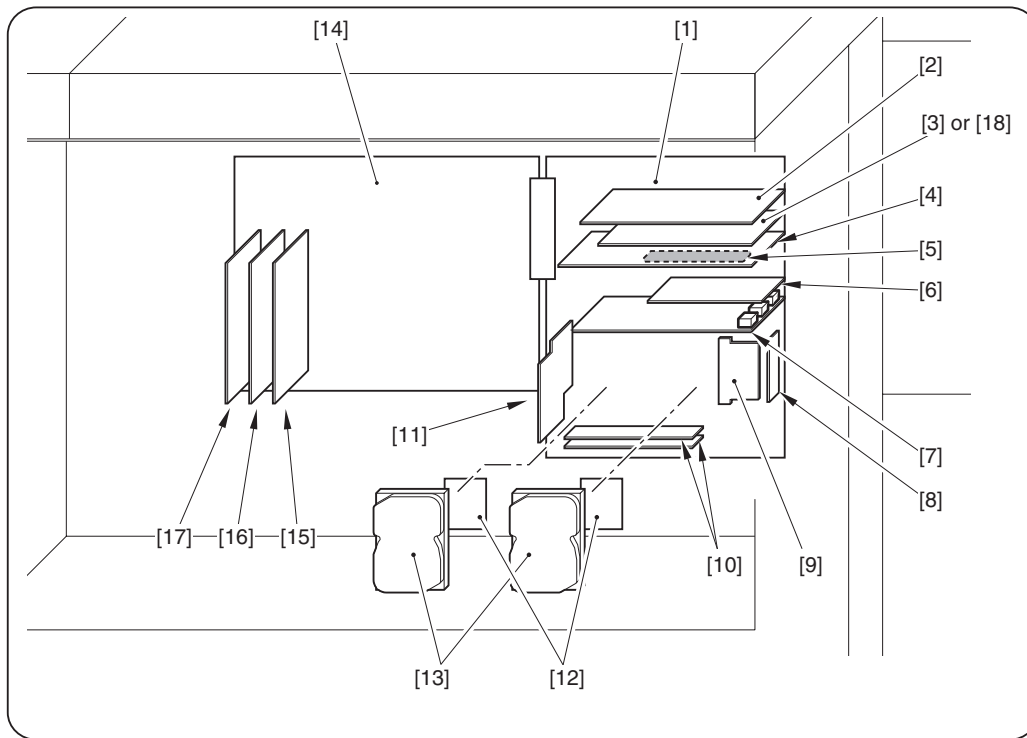
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

F-16-104
T-16-62

Symbol	Parts Name	Function	Parts No.
UN250	Drum surface temperature sensor power supply PCB	Generate DC power for drum surface temperature sensor	FM2-7708
UN500	24V power supply 1	Generate 24V DC power	FK2-2711
UN501	24V power supply 2	Generate 24V DC power	FK2-2711
UN503	3.3V all-night power supply PCB	Generate 3.3V all-night DC power	FK2-2858
UN504	AC filter unit	Noise filter	JPN: FM2-8992 USA: FM2-9081 EUR: FM2-9080
UN507	13V non-all-night power supply PCB	Generate 13V non-all-night DC power	FK2-2712
UN508	Main controller power supply PCB	Control of the entire system	FM2-7710
UN510	Shutdown PCB	Control power shutdown	FM2-7714

16.4.7.8 Power Unit Station(2/2)

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000



F-16-105
T-16-63

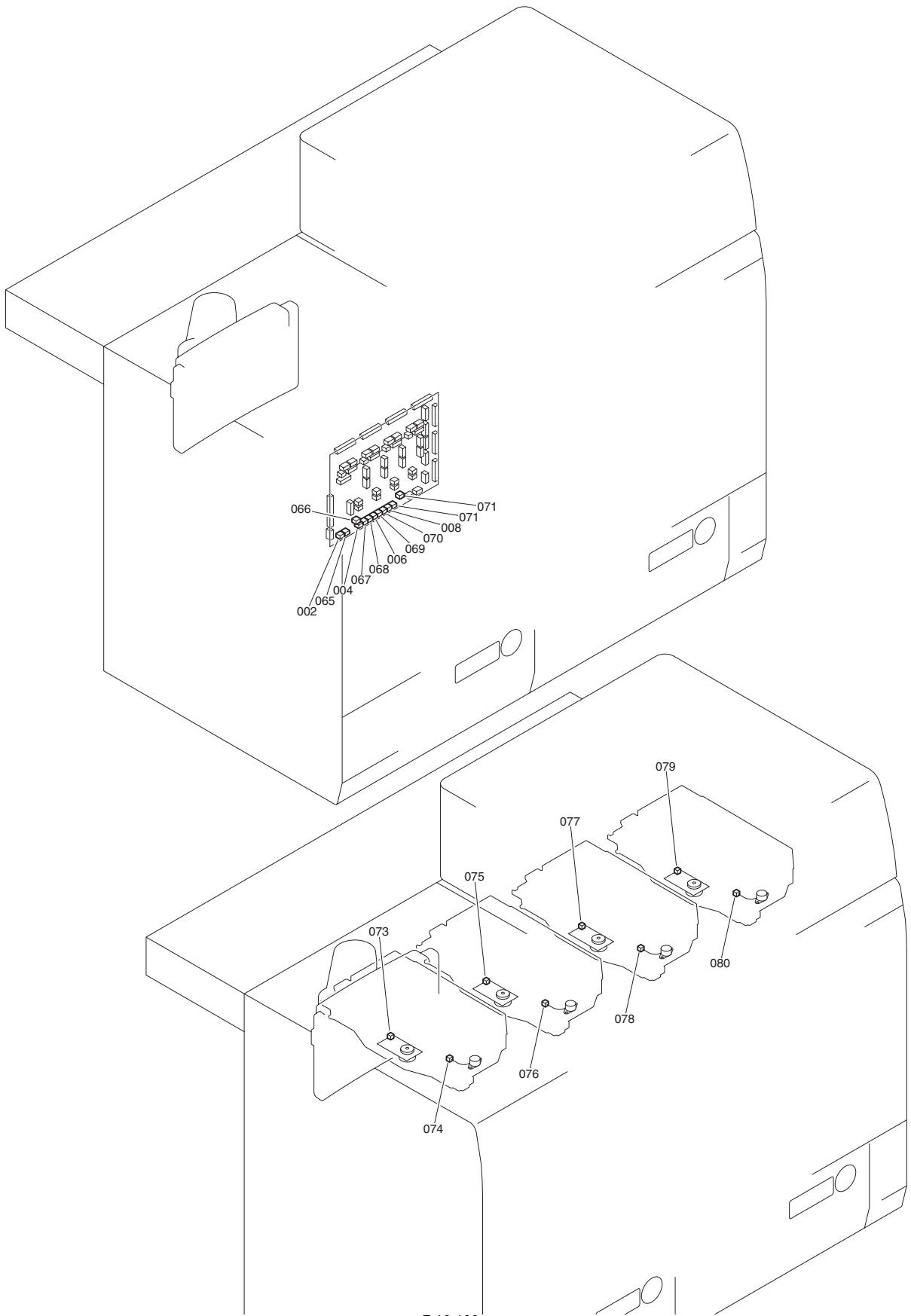
Parts Name	Function	Parts No.
[1] Main controller PCB (MAIN-M)	Whole system control, memory control, printer output image processing control, various I / O, expansion bus control, color preview control, 1200dpi / 600dpi conversion	FM2-7813

Parts Name		Function	Parts No.
[2]	RO-B PCB	External controller I / F, Color space conversion, electronic sorting rotation, binalization, resolution conversion. 1200dpi / 600dpi conversion, rotation function, margin function	FM2-7430
[3]	O-B PCB *	External controller I / F, 1200dpi / 600dpi conversion, rotation function, margin function	FM2-7360
[4]	S-B PCB	Reader I / F, reader image processing (resolution conversion, image rotation, compression and extension)	FM2-9076
[5]	ZJ-A PCB *	Character / shading determination, color determination	FM2-7352
[6]	Voice guidance PCB *	Voice data input / output	FM2-3909
[7]	LAN-bar-B PCB	LAN I / F, HDD controller	FM2-2284
[8]	BOOT ROM	Stores the BOOT programs	NPN
[9]	SRAM PCB	Retains user mode / service mode settings, retains the image data management information saved on the HDD	FM2-6040
[10]	DDR-SDRAM	Stores program-related data, image data	512MB: FM2-6208 1GB: FM2-6209
[11]	RB-A PCB *	Color space conversion, electronic sorting rotation, binalization, resolution conversion	FM2-6810
[12]	Encryption board *	Encryption / decryption, encryption key management	FM2-9158
[13]	Hard disk	Stores the system software, image data, BOX image data Capacity: 80 GB x 2	FK2-2889
[14]	Main controller PCB (MAIN-P)	Printer output image processing (color space compression, background omission, LOG conversion, direct mapping, color balance, zoom fine adjustment, gradation conversion, screen processing, trimming, masking), drum-to-drum delay memory control (Y color data)	FM2-7815
[15]	DRM (256) PCB	drum-to-drum delay memory control (M color data)	FM2-2281
[16]	DRM (512) PCB	drum-to-drum delay memory control (Bk color data)	FM2-2282
[17]	DRM (512) PCB	drum-to-drum delay memory control (C color data)	FM2-2282
[18]	Gu-Short PCB	internal bus connection	FM2-2283

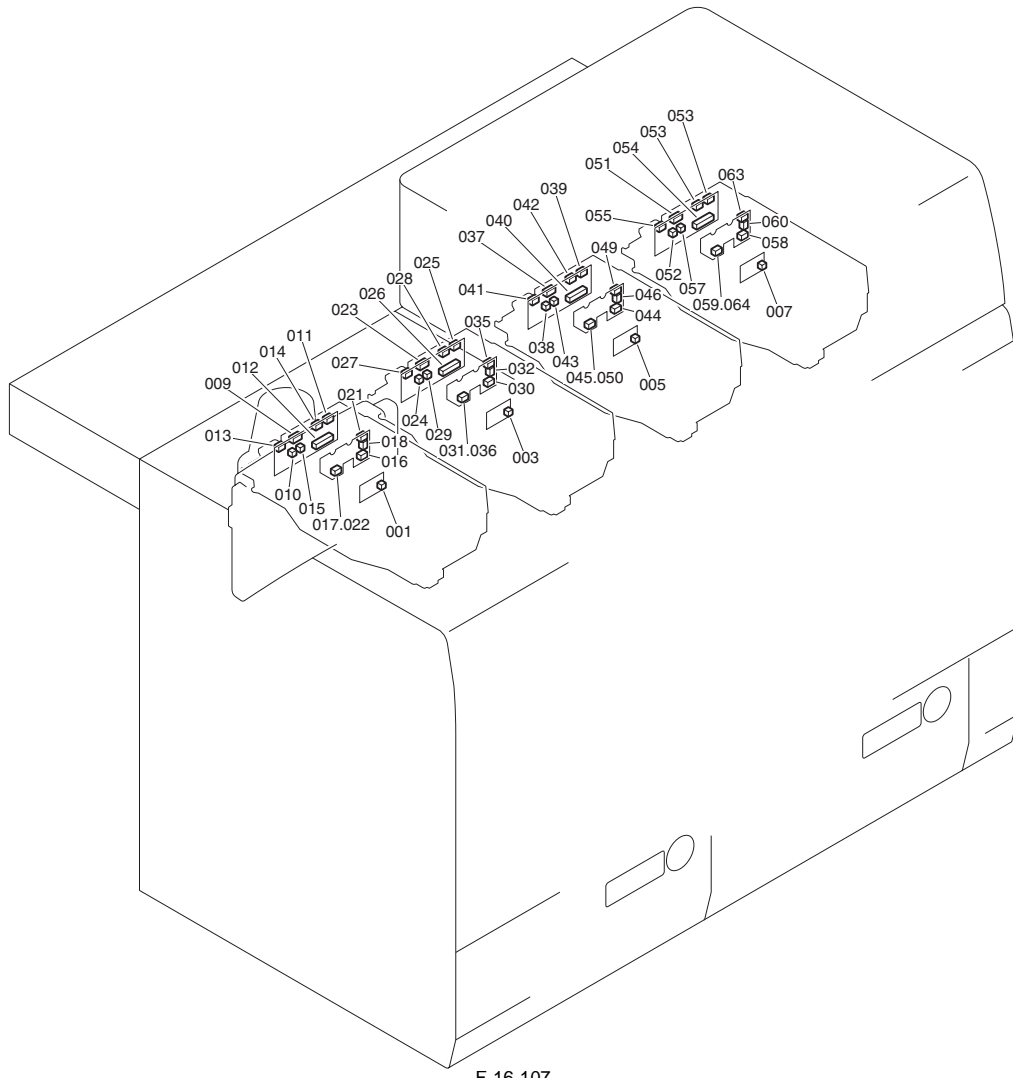
16.4.8 Connectors

16.4.8.1 Laser Unit

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000



F-16-106



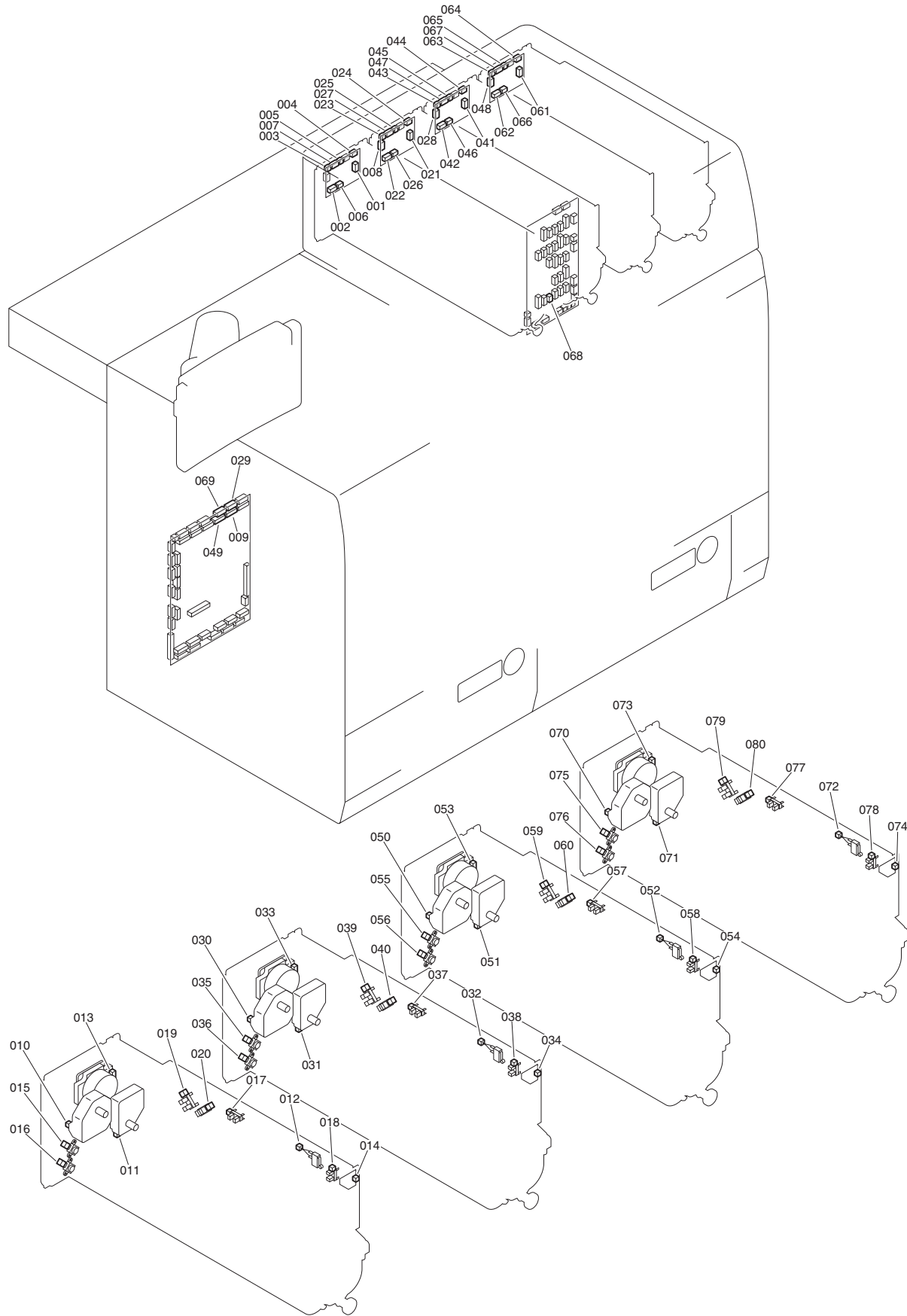
F-16-107

T-16-64

No.	Electric symbol	Electric parts name	J No.	Relay connector	J No.	No.	Electric symbol	Electric parts name
001	UN155	BD sensor PCB (Y)	J101Y	J7151Y	J1113	002	UN240	DC controller PCB 1-3
003	UN156	BD sensor PCB (M)	J101M	J7151M	J1123	004	UN240	DC controller PCB 1-3
005	UN157	BD sensor PCB (C)	J101C	J7151C	J1133	006	UN240	DC controller PCB 1-3
007	UN158	BD sensor PCB (Bk)	J101K	J7151K	J1143	008	UN240	DC controller PCB 1-3
009	UN171	Laser driver sub PCB (Y)	J3550Y		J3500Y	016	UN175	Laser driver main PCB (Y)
010	UN171	Laser driver sub PCB (Y)	J3551Y		J3501Y	017	UN175	Laser driver main PCB (Y)
011	UN171	Laser driver sub PCB (Y)	J3552Y		J3502Y	018	UN175	Laser driver main PCB (Y)
012	UN171	Laser driver sub PCB (Y)	J3553Y		J1111	019	UN240	DC controller PCB 1-3
013	UN171	Laser driver sub PCB (Y)	J3554Y		J1827	020	UN102	Main station power supply connect PCB
014	UN171	Laser driver sub PCB (Y)	J3555Y		J3503Y	021	UN175	Laser driver main PCB (Y)
015	UN171	Laser driver sub PCB (Y)	J3561Y		J3501Y	022	UN175	Laser driver main PCB (Y)
023	UN172	Laser driver sub PCB (M)	J3550M		J3500M	030	UN176	Laser driver main PCB (M)
024	UN172	Laser driver sub PCB (M)	J3551M		J3501M	031	UN176	Laser driver main PCB (M)
025	UN172	Laser driver sub PCB (M)	J3552M		J3502M	032	UN176	Laser driver main PCB (M)
026	UN172	Laser driver sub PCB (M)	J3553M		J1121	033	UN240	DC controller PCB 1-3
027	UN172	Laser driver sub PCB (M)	J3554M		J1827	034	UN102	Main station power supply connect PCB
028	UN172	Laser driver sub PCB (M)	J3555M		J3503M	035	UN176	Laser driver main PCB (M)
029	UN172	Laser driver sub PCB (M)	J3561M		J3501M	036	UN176	Laser driver main PCB (M)
037	UN173	Laser driver sub PCB (C)	J3550C		J3500C	044	UN177	Laser driver main PCB (C)
038	UN173	Laser driver sub PCB (C)	J3551C		J3501C	045	UN177	Laser driver main PCB (C)
039	UN173	Laser driver sub PCB (C)	J3552C		J3502C	046	UN177	Laser driver main PCB (C)
040	UN173	Laser driver sub PCB (C)	J3553C		J1131	047	UN240	DC controller PCB 1-3
041	UN173	Laser driver sub PCB (C)	J3554C		J1828	048	UN102	Main station power supply connect PCB
042	UN173	Laser driver sub PCB (C)	J3555C		J3503C	049	UN177	Laser driver main PCB (C)
043	UN173	Laser driver sub PCB (C)	J3561C		J3501C	050	UN177	Laser driver main PCB (C)
051	UN174	Laser driver sub PCB (Bk)	J3550K		J3500K	058	UN178	Laser driver main PCB (Bk)
052	UN174	Laser driver sub PCB (Bk)	J3551K		J3501K	059	UN178	Laser driver main PCB (Bk)
053	UN174	Laser driver sub PCB (Bk)	J3552K		J3502K	060	UN178	Laser driver main PCB (Bk)
054	UN174	Laser driver sub PCB (Bk)	J3553K		J1141	061	UN240	DC controller PCB 1-3
055	UN174	Laser driver sub PCB (Bk)	J3554K		J1828	062	UN102	Main station power supply connect PCB
056	UN174	Laser driver sub PCB (Bk)	J3555K		J3503K	063	UN178	Laser driver main PCB (Bk)
057	UN174	Laser driver sub PCB (Bk)	J3561K		J3501K	064	UN178	Laser driver main PCB (Bk)
065	UN240	DC controller PCB 1-3	J1112	J7150Y	J5200	073	M107	Laser scanner motor (Y)
066	UN240	DC controller PCB 1-3	J1114	J7152Y	J5204	074	M103	Lens skew control motor (Y)
067	UN240	DC controller PCB 1-3	J1122	J7150M	J5201	075	M106	Laser scanner motor (M)
068	UN240	DC controller PCB 1-3	J1124	J7152M	J5205	076	M102	Lens skew control motor (M)
069	UN240	DC controller PCB 1-3	J1132	J7150C	J5202	077	M104	Laser scanner motor (C)
070	UN240	DC controller PCB 1-3	J1134	J7152C	J5206	078	M100	Lens skew control motor (C)
071	UN240	DC controller PCB 1-3	J1142	J7150K	J5203	079	M105	Laser scanner motor (Bk)
072	UN240	DC controller PCB 1-3	J1144	J7152K	J5207	080	M101	Lens skew control motor (Bk)

16.4.8.2 Hopper Unit

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000



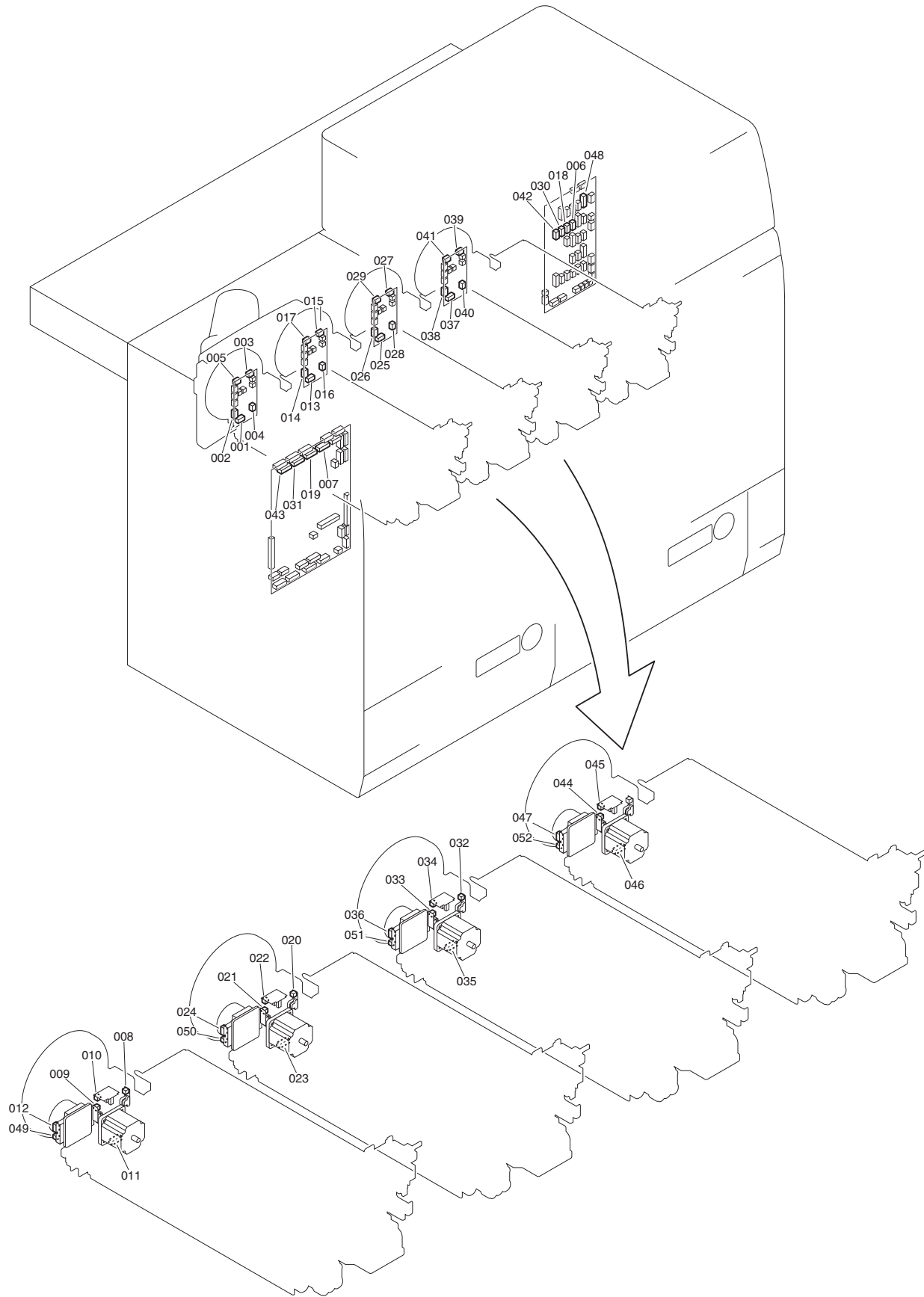
F-16-108

T-16-65

No.	Electric symbol	Electric parts name	J No.	Relay connector	J No.	No.	Electric symbol	Electric parts name
001	UN165	Hopper driver PCB (Y)	J1400Y		J1401M	008	UN166	Hopper driver PCB (M)
002	UN165	Hopper driver PCB (Y)	J1410Y	J7350	J1014	009	UN124	DC controller PCB 1-2
003	UN165	Hopper driver PCB (Y)	J1420Y		J5249	010	M146	Toner container motor (Y)
003	UN165	Hopper driver PCB (Y)	J1420Y		J5328	011	M193	Toner container slide motor (Y)
003	UN165	Hopper driver PCB (Y)	J1420Y	J7361Y	J5631	012	SW104	Hopper cover switch (Y)
004	UN165	Hopper driver PCB (Y)	J1421Y		J5253	013	M195	Hopper motor (Y)
005	UN165	Hopper driver PCB (Y)	J1422Y	J7357Y	J34Y	014	UN251	Hopper switch PCB (Y)
006	UN165	Hopper driver PCB (Y)	J1423Y		J5530	015	TS130	Hopper toner level sensor 1 (Y)
006	UN165	Hopper driver PCB (Y)	J1423Y		J5531	016	TS131	Hopper toner level sensor 2 (Y)
007	UN165	Hopper driver PCB (Y)	J1424Y	J7354Y	J5119	017	PS126	Hopper container presence/absence sensor (Y)
007	UN165	Hopper driver PCB (Y)	J1424Y	J7354Y	J5145	018	PS130	Hopper cover sensor (Y)
007	UN165	Hopper driver PCB (Y)	J1424Y	J7354Y	J5174	019	PS218	Toner container slide sensor 1 (Y)
007	UN165	Hopper driver PCB (Y)	J1424Y	J7354Y	J5178	020	PS216	Toner container slide sensor 2 (Y)
021	UN166	Hopper driver PCB (M)	J1400M		J1401C	028	UN167	Hopper driver PCB (C)
022	UN166	Hopper driver PCB (M)	J1410M	J7351	J1015	029	UN124	DC controller PCB 1-2
023	UN166	Hopper driver PCB (M)	J1420M		J5250	030	M145	Toner container motor (M)
023	UN166	Hopper driver PCB (M)	J1420M		J5329	031	M191	Toner container slide motor (M)
023	UN166	Hopper driver PCB (M)	J1420M	J7361M	J5632	032	SW103	Hopper cover switch (M)
024	UN166	Hopper driver PCB (M)	J1421M		J5254	033	M198	Hopper motor (M)
025	UN166	Hopper driver PCB (M)	J1422M	J7357M	J34M	034	UN252	Hopper switch PCB (M)
026	UN166	Hopper driver PCB (M)	J1423M		J5534	035	TS132	Hopper toner level sensor 1 (M)
026	UN166	Hopper driver PCB (M)	J1423M		J5535	036	TS133	Hopper toner level sensor 2 (M)
027	UN166	Hopper driver PCB (M)	J1424M	J7354M	J5120	037	PS125	Hopper container presence/absence sensor (M)
027	UN166	Hopper driver PCB (M)	J1424M	J7354M	J5146	038	PS129	Hopper cover sensor (M)
027	UN166	Hopper driver PCB (M)	J1424M	J7354M	J5175	039	PS207	Toner container slide sensor 1 (M)
027	UN166	Hopper driver PCB (M)	J1424M	J7354M	J5179	040	PS213	Toner container slide sensor 2 (M)
041	UN167	Hopper driver PCB (C)	J1400C		J1401K	048	UN168	Hopper driver PCB (Bk)
042	UN167	Hopper driver PCB (C)	J1410C	J7352	J1016	049	UN124	DC controller PCB 1-2
043	UN167	Hopper driver PCB (C)	J1420C		J5251	050	M143	Toner container motor (C)
043	UN167	Hopper driver PCB (C)	J1420C		J5330	051	M190	Toner container slide motor (C)
043	UN167	Hopper driver PCB (C)	J1420C	J7361C	J5633	052	SW101	Hopper cover switch (C)
044	UN167	Hopper driver PCB (C)	J1421C		J5255	053	M197	Hopper motor (C)
045	UN167	Hopper driver PCB (C)	J1422C	J7357C	J34C	054	UN253	Hopper switch PCB (C)
046	UN167	Hopper driver PCB (C)	J1423C		J5538	055	TS134	Hopper toner level sensor 1 (C)
046	UN167	Hopper driver PCB (C)	J1423C		J5539	056	TS135	Hopper toner level sensor 2 (C)
047	UN167	Hopper driver PCB (C)	J1424C	J7354C	J5121	057	PS123	Hopper container presence/absence sensor (C)
047	UN167	Hopper driver PCB (C)	J1424C	J7354C	J5147	058	PS127	Hopper cover sensor (C)
047	UN167	Hopper driver PCB (C)	J1424C	J7354C	J5176	059	PS219	Toner container slide sensor 1 (C)
047	UN167	Hopper driver PCB (C)	J1424C	J7354C	J5180	060	PS201	Toner container slide sensor 2 (C)
061	UN168	Hopper driver PCB (Bk)	J1400K	J7359	J1823	068	UN102	Main station power supply connect PCB
062	UN168	Hopper driver PCB (Bk)	J1410K	J7353	J1017	069	UN124	DC controller PCB 1-2
063	UN168	Hopper driver PCB (Bk)	J1420K		J5252	070	M144	Toner container motor (Bk)
063	UN168	Hopper driver PCB (Bk)	J1420K		J5331	071	M192	Toner container slide motor (Bk)
063	UN168	Hopper driver PCB (Bk)	J1420K	J7361K	J5634	072	SW102	Hopper cover switch (Bk)
064	UN168	Hopper driver PCB (Bk)	J1421K		J5256	073	M196	Hopper motor (Bk)
065	UN168	Hopper driver PCB (Bk)	J1422K	J7357K	J34K	074	UN254	Hopper switch PCB (Bk)
066	UN168	Hopper driver PCB (Bk)	J1423K		J5542	075	TS136	Hopper toner level sensor 1 (Bk)
066	UN168	Hopper driver PCB (Bk)	J1423K		J5543	076	TS137	Hopper toner level sensor 2 (Bk)
067	UN168	Hopper driver PCB (Bk)	J1424K	J7354K	J5122	077	PS124	Hopper container presence/absence sensor (Bk)
067	UN168	Hopper driver PCB (Bk)	J1424K	J7354K	J5148	078	PS128	Hopper cover sensor (Bk)
067	UN168	Hopper driver PCB (Bk)	J1424K	J7354K	J5177	079	PS203	Toner container slide sensor 1 (Bk)
067	UN168	Hopper driver PCB (Bk)	J1424K	J7354K	J5181	080	PS204	Toner container slide sensor 2 (Bk)

16.4.8.3 Process Unit (1/3)

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000



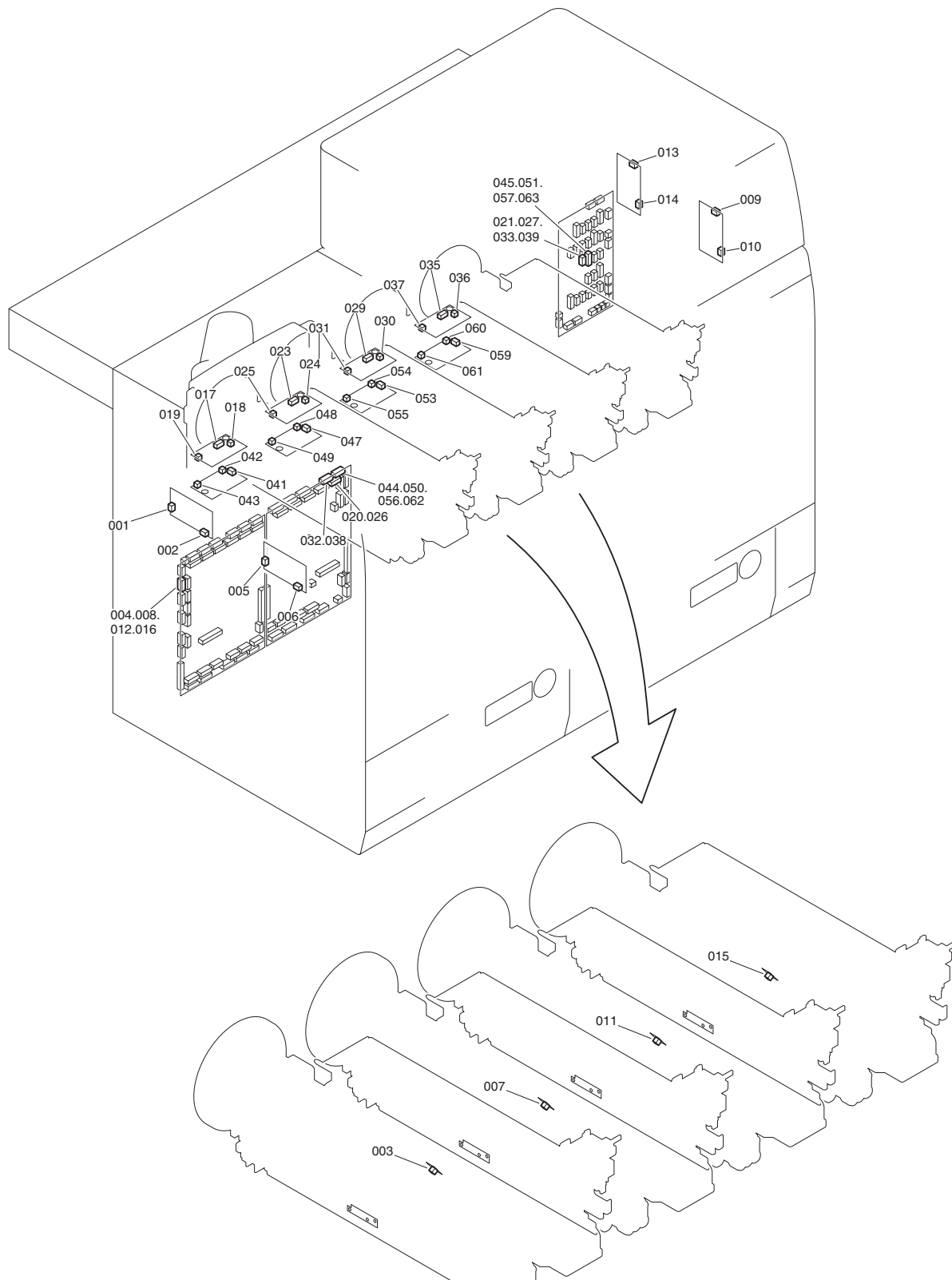
F-16-109

T-16-66

No.	Electric symbol	Electric parts name	J No.	Relay connector	J No.	No.	Electric symbol	Electric parts name
001	UN125	Drum driver PCB (Y)	J1600Y		J1834	006	UN102	Main station power supply connect PCB
002	UN125	Drum driver PCB (Y)	J1611Y		J1035	007	UN198	DC controller PCB 1-1
003	UN125	Drum driver PCB (Y)	J1620Y		J5064B	008	PS226	Drum encoder sensor A (Y)
003	UN125	Drum driver PCB (Y)	J1620Y		J5064A	009	PS225	Drum encoder sensor B (Y)
003	UN125	Drum driver PCB (Y)	J1620Y		J5064HP	010	PS187HP	Drum HP sensor (Y)
004	UN125	Drum driver PCB (Y)	J1621Y		J5282	011	M142	Drum driving motor (Y)
005	UN125	Drum driver PCB (Y)	J1622Y		J5233	012	M133	Developing motor (Y)
013	UN126	Drum driver PCB (M)	J1600M		J1835	018	UN102	Main station power supply connect PCB
014	UN126	Drum driver PCB (M)	J1611M		J1036	019	UN198	DC controller PCB 1-1
015	UN126	Drum driver PCB (M)	J1620M		J5067B	020	PS229	Drum encoder sensor B (M)
015	UN126	Drum driver PCB (M)	J1620M		J5067A	021	PS230	Drum encoder sensor A (M)
015	UN126	Drum driver PCB (M)	J1620M		J5067HP	022	PS177HP	Drum HP sensor (M)
016	UN126	Drum driver PCB (M)	J1621M		J5283	023	M141	Drum driving motor (M)
017	UN126	Drum driver PCB (M)	J1622M		J5234	024	M127	Developing motor (M)
025	UN127	Drum driver PCB (C)	J1600C		J1836	030	UN102	Main station power supply connect PCB
026	UN127	Drum driver PCB (C)	J1611C		J1037	031	UN198	DC controller PCB 1-1
027	UN127	Drum driver PCB (C)	J1620C		J5070B	032	PS227	Drum encoder sensor B (C)
027	UN127	Drum driver PCB (C)	J1620C		J5070A	033	PS228	Drum encoder sensor A (C)
027	UN127	Drum driver PCB (C)	J1620C		J5070HP	034	PS179HP	Drum HP sensor (C)
028	UN127	Drum driver PCB (C)	J1621C		J5284	035	M139	Drum driving motor (C)
029	UN127	Drum driver PCB (C)	J1622C		J5235	036	M115	Developing motor (C)
037	UN128	Drum driver PCB (Bk)	J1600K		J1837	042	UN102	Main station power supply connect PCB
038	UN128	Drum driver PCB (Bk)	J1611K		J1038	043	UN198	DC controller PCB 1-1
039	UN128	Drum driver PCB (Bk)	J1620K		J5073A	044	PS224	Drum encoder sensor A (Bk)
039	UN128	Drum driver PCB (Bk)	J1620K		J5073HP	045	PS182HP	Drum HP sensor (Bk)
040	UN128	Drum driver PCB (Bk)	J1621K		J5285	046	M140	Drum driving motor (Bk)
041	UN128	Drum driver PCB (Bk)	J1622K		J5236	047	M121	Developing motor (Bk)
048	UN102	Main station power supply connect PCB	J1846		J5233P	049	M133	Developing motor (Y)
048	UN102	Main station power supply connect PCB	J1846		J5234P	050	M127	Developing motor (M)
048	UN102	Main station power supply connect PCB	J1846		J5235P	051	M115	Developing motor (C)
048	UN102	Main station power supply connect PCB	J1846		J5236P	052	M121	Developing motor (Bk)

16.4.8.4 Process Unit (2/3)

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000



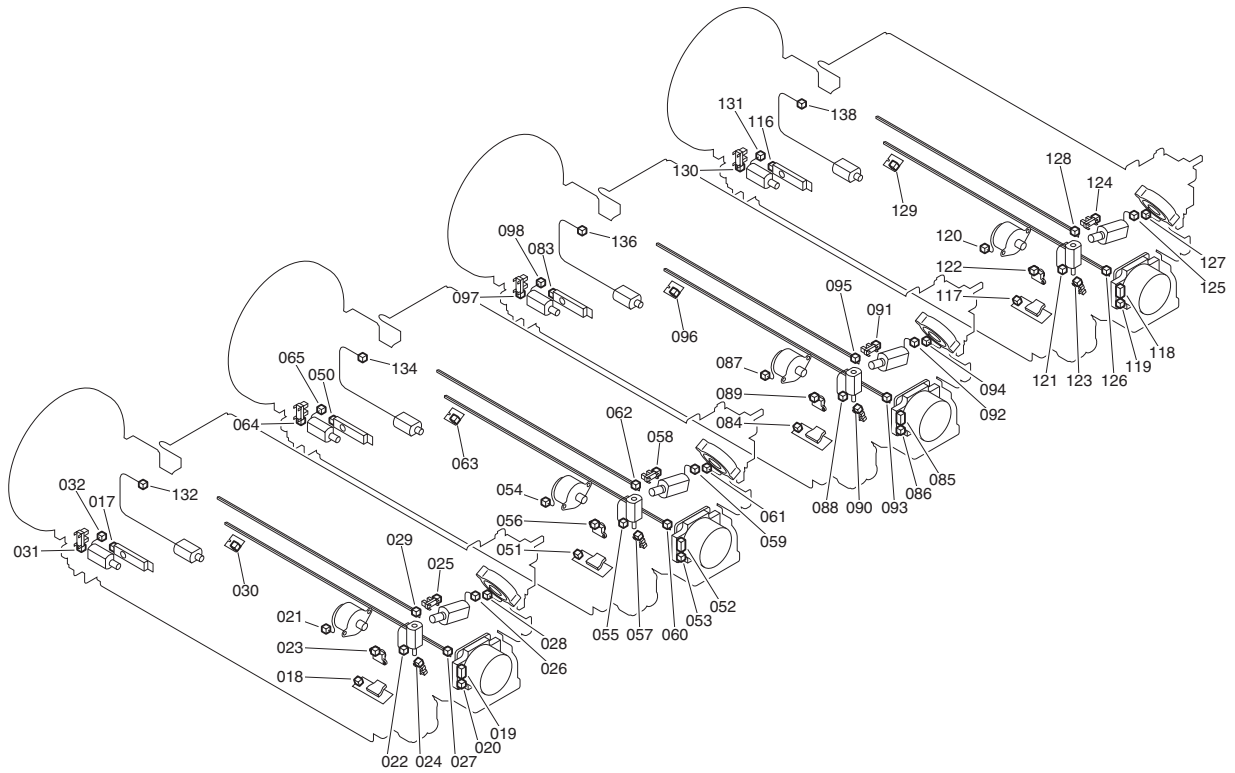
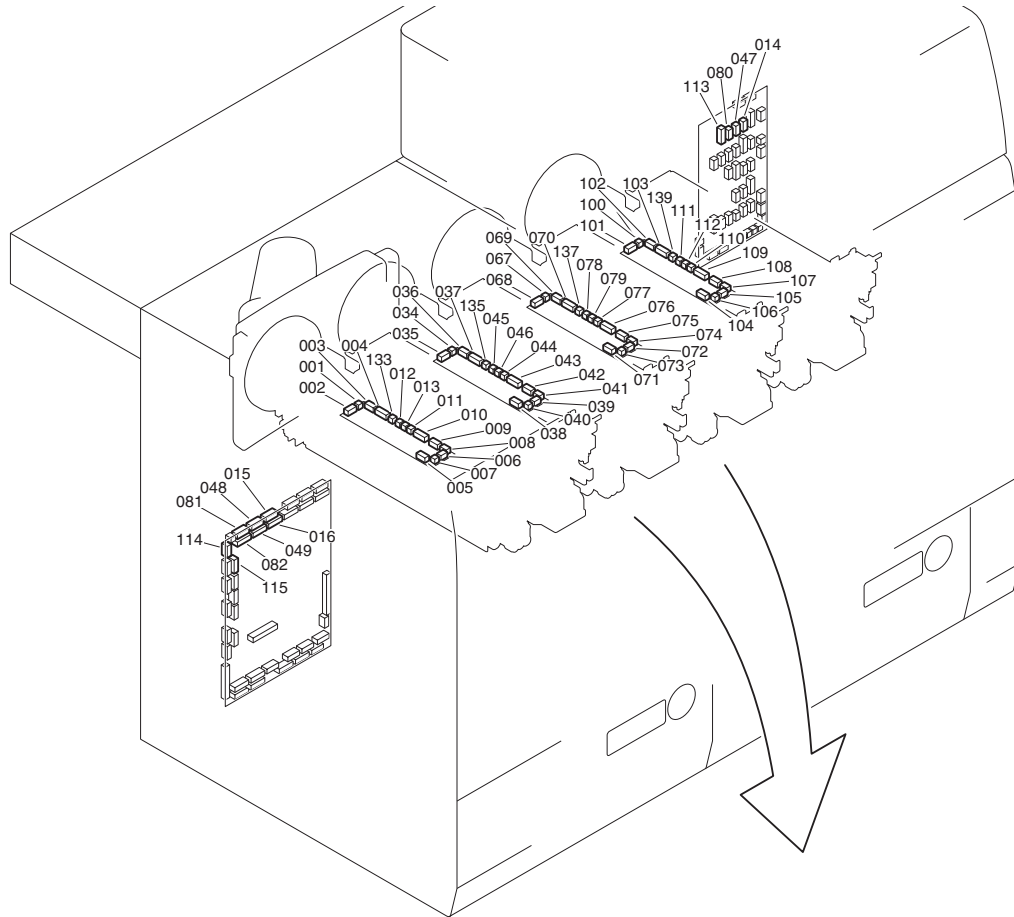
F-16-110

T-16-67

No.	Electric symbol	Electric parts name	J No.	Relay connector				J No.	No.	Electric symbol	Electric parts name
001	UN129	Potential measuring PCB (Y)	J1Y	J7256Y				J1Y	003	UN209	Potential sensor (Y)
002	UN129	Potential measuring PCB (Y)	J4603Y	J7750	J7788	J9010	J7764	J1095	004	UN124	DC controller PCB 1-2
005	UN130	Potential measuring PCB (M)	J1M	J7256M				J1M	007	UN208	Potential sensor (M)
006	UN130	Potential measuring PCB (M)	J4603M	J7750	J7788	J9010	J7764	J1095	008	UN124	DC controller PCB 1-2
009	UN131	Potential measuring PCB (C)	J1C	J7256C				J1C	011	UN206	Potential sensor (C)
010	UN131	Potential measuring PCB (C)	J4603C	J7751	J7788	J9010	J7764	J1095	012	UN124	DC controller PCB 1-2
013	UN132	Potential measuring PCB (Bk)	J1K	J7256K				J1K	015	UN207	Potential sensor (Bk)
014	UN132	Potential measuring PCB (Bk)	J4603K	J7751	J7788	J9010	J7764	J1095	016	UN124	DC controller PCB 1-2
017	UN133	Developing high-voltage PCB (Y)	J3201Y					J1047	020	UN198	DC controller PCB 1-1
018	UN133	Developing high-voltage PCB (Y)	J3202Y					J1838	021	UN102	Main station power supply connect PCB
019	UN133	Developing high-voltage PCB (Y)	J3211Y					-	-	UN194	Toner blocking high-voltage PCB (Y)
023	UN134	Developing high-voltage PCB (M)	J3201M					J1047	026	UN198	DC controller PCB 1-1
024	UN134	Developing high-voltage PCB (M)	J3202M					J1838	027	UN102	Main station power supply connect PCB
025	UN134	Developing high-voltage PCB (M)	J3211M					-	-	UN193	Toner blocking high-voltage PCB (M)
029	UN135	Developing high-voltage PCB (C)	J3201C					J1048	032	UN198	DC controller PCB 1-1
030	UN135	Developing high-voltage PCB (C)	J3202C					J1838	033	UN102	Main station power supply connect PCB
031	UN135	Developing high-voltage PCB (C)	J3211C					-	-	UN191	Toner blocking high-voltage PCB (C)
035	UN136	Developing high-voltage PCB (Bk)	J3201K					J1048	038	UN198	DC controller PCB 1-1
036	UN136	Developing high-voltage PCB (Bk)	J3202K					J1838	039	UN102	Main station power supply connect PCB
037	UN136	Developing high-voltage PCB (Bk)	J3211K					-	-	UN192	Toner blocking high-voltage PCB (Bk)
041	UN137	Primary charging high-voltage PCB (Y)	J3000Y					J1040	044	UN198	DC controller PCB 1-1
042	UN137	Primary charging high-voltage PCB (Y)	J3001Y					J1838	045	UN102	Main station power supply connect PCB
043	UN137	Primary charging high-voltage PCB (Y)	J3002Y					-	-	-	Primary charging assembly (Y) (grid bias)
047	UN138	Primary charging high-voltage PCB (M)	J3000M					J1040	050	UN198	DC controller PCB 1-1
048	UN138	Primary charging high-voltage PCB (M)	J3001M					J1838	051	UN102	Main station power supply connect PCB
049	UN138	Primary charging high-voltage PCB (M)	J3002M					-	-	-	Primary charging assembly (M) (grid bias)
053	UN139	Primary charging high-voltage PCB (C)	J3000C					J1040	056	UN198	DC controller PCB 1-1
054	UN139	Primary charging high-voltage PCB (C)	J3001C					J1838	057	UN102	Main station power supply connect PCB
055	UN139	Primary charging high-voltage PCB (C)	J3002C					-	-	-	Primary charging assembly (C) (grid bias)
059	UN140	Primary charging high-voltage PCB (Bk)	J3000K					J1040	062	UN198	DC controller PCB 1-1
060	UN140	Primary charging high-voltage PCB (Bk)	J3001K					J1838	063	UN102	Main station power supply connect PCB
061	UN140	Primary charging high-voltage PCB (Bk)	J3002K					-	-	-	Primary charging assembly (Bk) (grid bias)

16.4.8.5 Process Unit (3/3)

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000



F-16-111

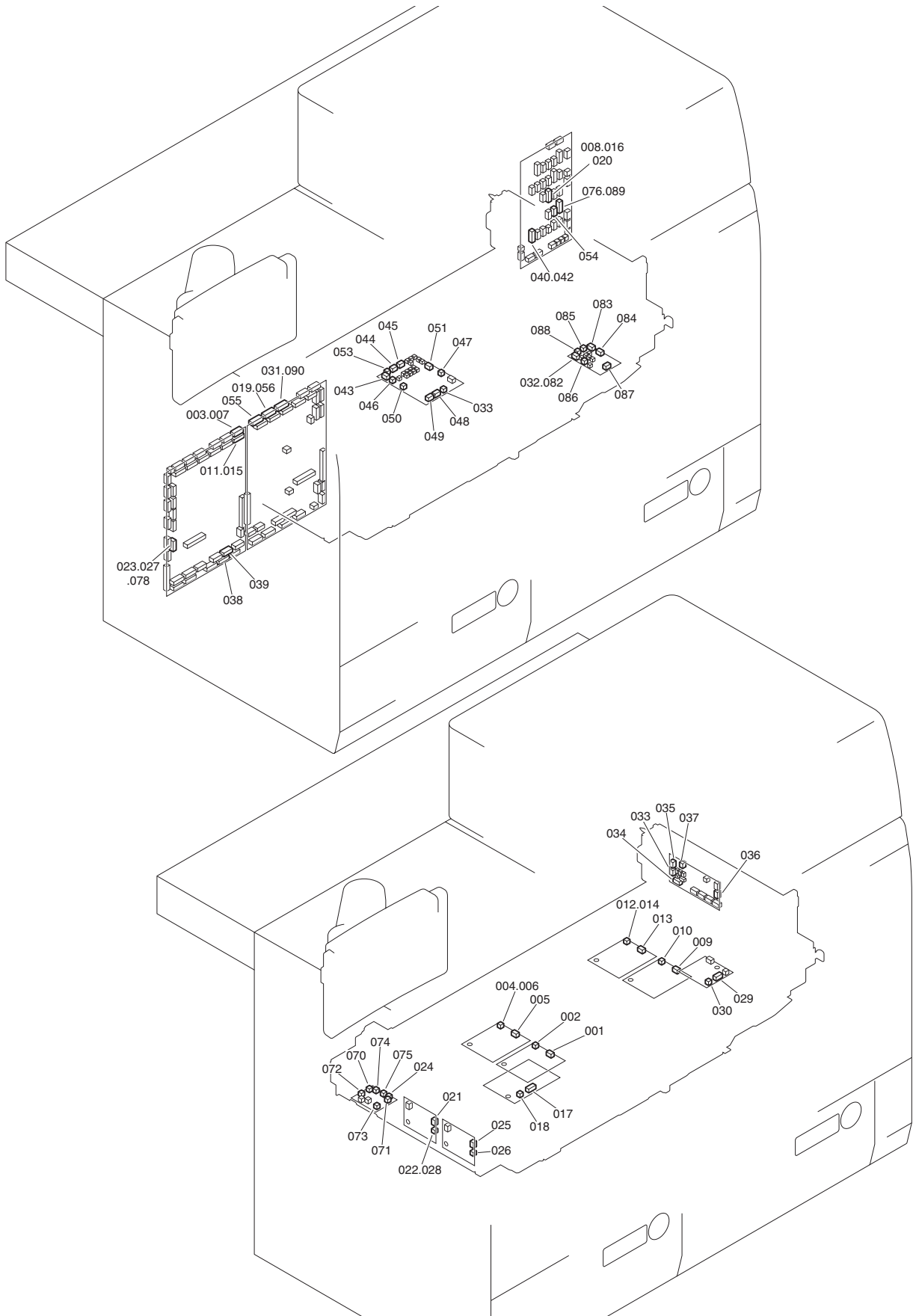
T-16-68

No.	Electric symbol	Electric parts name	J No.	Relay connector			J No.	No.	Electric symbol	Electric parts name
001	UN161	Process unit driver PCB (Y)	J1350Y	J7008	J7263		J1840	014	UN102	Main station power supply connect PCB
002	UN161	Process unit driver PCB (Y)	J1351Y	J7007	J7253		J1840	014	UN102	Main station power supply connect PCB
003	UN161	Process unit driver PCB (Y)	J1360Y	J7008	J7273	J7784	J1006X	015	UN124	DC controller PCB 1-2
004	UN161	Process unit driver PCB (Y)	J1361Y	J7007	J7272	J7780	J1007X	016	UN124	DC controller PCB 1-2
005	UN161	Process unit driver PCB (Y)	J1370Y	J7251Y			J5030	017	PS120	Drum patch sensor (Y)
005	UN161	Process unit driver PCB (Y)	J1370Y	J7251Y			J5034	018	TS129	Developing assembly toner level sensor (Y)
006	UN161	Process unit driver PCB (Y)	J1371Y	J7259Y			J5237	019	M134	Drum cleaner motor (Y)
007	UN161	Process unit driver PCB (Y)	J1372Y	J7260Y			J5237P	020	M134	Drum cleaner motor (Y)
008	UN161	Process unit driver PCB (Y)	J1373Y				J5257	021	M138	Toner feed motor (Y)
009	UN161	Process unit driver PCB (Y)	J1374Y	J7250Y			J5261	022	M137	Sub hopper motor (Y)
009	UN161	Process unit driver PCB (Y)	J1374Y	J7250Y			J5546	023	TS106	Sub hopper toner level sensor 1 (Y)
009	UN161	Process unit driver PCB (Y)	J1374Y	J7250Y			J5123	024	PS121	Toner feed screw HP sensor (Y)
010	UN161	Process unit driver PCB (Y)	J1375Y	J7252Y	J7271Y		J5024	025	PS240	Primary charging wire cleaning motor HP sensor (Y)
010	UN161	Process unit driver PCB (Y)	J1375Y	J7252Y			J5241	026	M136	Primary charging wire cleaning motor (Y)
010	UN161	Process unit driver PCB (Y)	J1375Y	J7270Y			J5604	027	LED110	Drum cleaner pre-exposure LED (Y)
010	UN161	Process unit driver PCB (Y)	J1375Y				J5432	028	FM113	Process unit cooling fan (Y)
010	UN161	Process unit driver PCB (Y)	J1375Y				J5600	029	LED100	Pre-exposure LED (Y)
011	UN161	Process unit driver PCB (Y)	J1376Y				J5192Y	030	UN183	Drum surface temperature sensor (Y)
012	UN161	Process unit driver PCB (Y)	J1377Y	J7275Y			J5173	031	PS215	Patch sensor cleaning motor HP sensor (Y)
012	UN161	Process unit driver PCB (Y)	J1377Y				J5245	032	M135	Drum patch sensor cleaning motor (Y)
013	UN161	Process unit driver PCB (Y)	J1378Y				J5420Y	-	THM100	Drum thermistor (Y)
034	UN162	Process unit driver PCB (M)	J1350M	J7010	J7265		J1841	047	UN102	Main station power supply connect PCB
035	UN162	Process unit driver PCB (M)	J1351M	J7009	J7254		J1841	047	UN102	Main station power supply connect PCB
036	UN162	Process unit driver PCB (M)	J1360M	J7010	J7275	J7785	J1008X	048	UN124	DC controller PCB 1-2
037	UN162	Process unit driver PCB (M)	J1361M	J7009	J7274	J7781	J1009X	049	UN124	DC controller PCB 1-2
038	UN162	Process unit driver PCB (M)	J1370M	J7251M			J5031	050	PS117	Drum patch sensor (M)
038	UN162	Process unit driver PCB (M)	J1370M	J7251M			J5035	051	TS124	Developing assembly toner level sensor (M)
039	UN162	Process unit driver PCB (M)	J1371M	J7259M			J5238	052	M128	Drum cleaner motor (M)
040	UN162	Process unit driver PCB (M)	J1372M	J7260M			J5238P	053	M128	Drum cleaner motor (M)
041	UN162	Process unit driver PCB (M)	J1373M				J5258	054	M132	Toner feed motor (M)
042	UN162	Process unit driver PCB (M)	J1374M	J7250M			J5262	055	M131	Sub hopper motor (M)
042	UN162	Process unit driver PCB (M)	J1374M	J7250M			J5548	056	TS104	Sub hopper toner level sensor 1 (M)
042	UN162	Process unit driver PCB (M)	J1374M	J7250M			J5124	057	PS118	Toner feed screw HP sensor (M)
043	UN162	Process unit driver PCB (M)	J1375M	J7252M	J7271M		J5025	058	PS241	Primary charging wire cleaning motor HP sensor (M)
043	UN162	Process unit driver PCB (M)	J1375M	J7252M			J5242	059	M130	Primary charging wire cleaning motor (M)
043	UN162	Process unit driver PCB (M)	J1375M	J7270M			J5605	060	LED111	Drum cleaner pre-exposure LED (M)
043	UN162	Process unit driver PCB (M)	J1375M				J5435	061	FM111	Process unit cooling fan (M)
043	UN162	Process unit driver PCB (M)	J1375M				J5601	062	LED101	Pre-exposure LED (M)
044	UN162	Process unit driver PCB (M)	J1376M				J5192M	063	UN184	Drum surface temperature sensor (M)
045	UN162	Process unit driver PCB (M)	J1377M				J5171	064	PS206	Patch sensor cleaning motor HP sensor (M)
045	UN162	Process unit driver PCB (M)	J1377M				J5246	065	M129	Drum patch sensor cleaning motor (M)
046	UN162	Process unit driver PCB (M)	J1378M				J5420M	-	THM01	Drum thermistor (M)
067	UN163	Process unit driver PCB (C)	J1350C	J7012	J7267		J1842	080	UN102	Main station power supply connect PCB
068	UN163	Process unit driver PCB (C)	J1351C	J7011	J7255		J1842	080	UN102	Main station power supply connect PCB
069	UN163	Process unit driver PCB (C)	J1360C	J7012	J7277	J7786	J1010X	081	UN124	DC controller PCB 1-2
070	UN163	Process unit driver PCB (C)	J1361C	J7011	J7276	J7782	J1011X	082	UN124	DC controller PCB 1-2
071	UN163	Process unit driver PCB (C)	J1370C	J7251C			J5032	083	PS111	Drum patch sensor (C)
071	UN163	Process unit driver PCB (C)	J1370C	J7251C			J5036	084	TS126	Developing assembly toner level sensor (C)
072	UN163	Process unit driver PCB (C)	J1371C	J7259C			J5239	085	M116	Drum cleaner motor (C)
073	UN163	Process unit driver PCB (C)	J1372C	J7260C			J5239P	086	M116	Drum cleaner motor (C)
074	UN163	Process unit driver PCB (C)	J1373C				J5259	087	M120	Toner feed motor (C)
075	UN163	Process unit driver PCB (C)	J1374C	J7250C			J5263	088	M119	Sub hopper motor (C)
075	UN163	Process unit driver PCB (C)	J1374C	J7250C			J5550	089	TS100	Sub hopper toner level sensor 1 (C)
075	UN163	Process unit driver PCB (C)	J1374C	J7250C			J5125	090	PS112	Toner feed screw HP sensor (C)
076	UN163	Process unit driver PCB (C)	J1375C	J7252C	J7271C		J5050	091	PS242	Primary charging wire cleaning motor HP sensor (C)
076	UN163	Process unit driver PCB (C)	J1375C	J7252C			J5243	092	M118	Primary charging wire cleaning motor (C)
076	UN163	Process unit driver PCB (C)	J1375C	J7270C			J5606	093	LED112	Drum cleaner pre-exposure LED (C)
076	UN163	Process unit driver PCB (C)	J1375C				J5437	094	FM107	Process unit cooling fan (C)

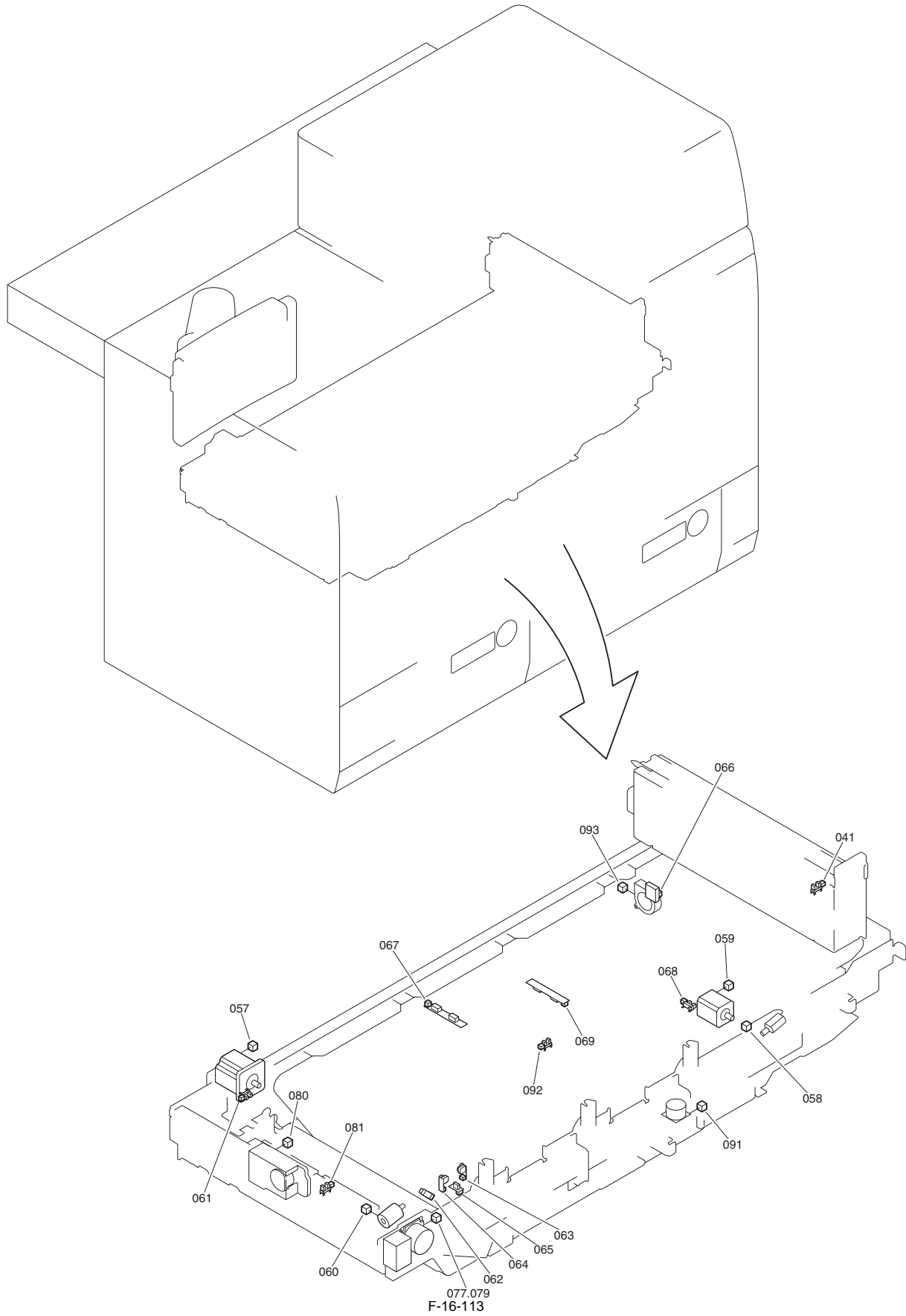
No.	Electric symbol	Electric parts name	J No.	Relay connector			J No.	No.	Electric symbol	Electric parts name
076	UN163	Process unit driver PCB (C)	J1375C				J5602	095	LED102	Pre-exposure LED (C)
077	UN163	Process unit driver PCB (C)	J1376C				J5192C	096	UN185	Drum surface temperature sensor (C)
078	UN163	Process unit driver PCB (C)	J1377C				J5170	097	PS202	Patch sensor cleaning motor HP sensor (C)
078	UN163	Process unit driver PCB (C)	J1377C				J5247	098	M117	Drum patch sensor cleaning motor (C)
079	UN163	Process unit driver PCB (C)	J1378C				J5420C	-	THM102	Drum thermistor (C)
100	UN164	Process unit driver PCB (Bk)	J1350K	JJ7014	J7269		J1843	113	UN102	Main station power supply connect PCB
101	UN164	Process unit driver PCB (Bk)	J1351K	JJ7013	J7257		J1843	113	UN102	Main station power supply connect PCB
102	UN164	Process unit driver PCB (Bk)	J1360K	J7014	J7279	J7787	J1012X	114	UN124	DC controller PCB 1-2
103	UN164	Process unit driver PCB (Bk)	J1361K	J7013	J7278	J7783	J1013X	115	UN124	DC controller PCB 1-2
104	UN164	Process unit driver PCB (Bk)	J1370K	J7251K			J5033	116	PS114	Drum patch sensor (Bk)
104	UN164	Process unit driver PCB (Bk)	J1370K	J7251K			J5037	117	TS125	Developing assembly toner level sensor (Bk)
105	UN164	Process unit driver PCB (Bk)	J1371K	J7259K			J5240	118	M122	Drum cleaner motor (Bk)
106	UN164	Process unit driver PCB (Bk)	J1372K	J7260K			J5240P	119	M122	Drum cleaner motor (Bk)
107	UN164	Process unit driver PCB (Bk)	J1373K				J5260	120	M126	Toner feed motor (Bk)
108	UN164	Process unit driver PCB (Bk)	J1374K	J7250K			J5264	121	M125	Sub hopper motor (Bk)
108	UN164	Process unit driver PCB (Bk)	J1374K	J7250K			J5552	122	TS102	Sub hopper toner level sensor 1 (Bk)
108	UN164	Process unit driver PCB (Bk)	J1374K	J7250K			J5126	123	PS115	Toner feed screw HP sensor (Bk)
109	UN164	Process unit driver PCB (Bk)	J1375K	J7252K	J7271K		J5055	124	PS243	Primary charging wire cleaning motor HP sensor (Bk)
109	UN164	Process unit driver PCB (Bk)	J1375K	J7252K			J5244	125	M124	Primary charging wire cleaning motor (Bk)
109	UN164	Process unit driver PCB (Bk)	J1375K	J7270K			J5607	126	LED113	Drum cleaner pre-exposure LED (Bk)
109	UN164	Process unit driver PCB (Bk)	J1375K				J5439	127	FM109	Process unit cooling fan (Bk)
109	UN164	Process unit driver PCB (Bk)	J1375K				J5603	128	LED103	Pre-exposure LED (Bk)
110	UN164	Process unit driver PCB (Bk)	J1376K				J5192K	129	UN186	Drum surface temperature sensor (Bk)
111	UN164	Process unit driver PCB (Bk)	J1377K				J5172	130	PS208	Patch sensor cleaning motor HP sensor (Bk)
111	UN164	Process unit driver PCB (Bk)	J1377K				J5248	131	M123	Drum patch sensor cleaning motor (Bk)
112	UN164	Process unit driver PCB (Bk)	J1378K				J5420K	-	THM103	Drum thermistor (Bk)
132	UN161	Process unit driver PCB (Y)	J1380Y	J7033Y			J7034Y	133	M203	Developing assembly knocking motor (Y)
134	UN162	Process unit driver PCB (M)	J1380M	J7033M			J7034M	135	M204	Developing assembly knocking motor (M)
136	UN163	Process unit driver PCB (C)	J1380C	J7033C			J7034C	137	M205	Developing assembly knocking motor (C)
138	UN164	Process unit driver PCB (Bk)	J1380K	J7033K			J7034K	139	M206	Developing assembly knocking motor (Bk)

16.4.8.6 Intermediate Transfer Unit

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000



F-16-112



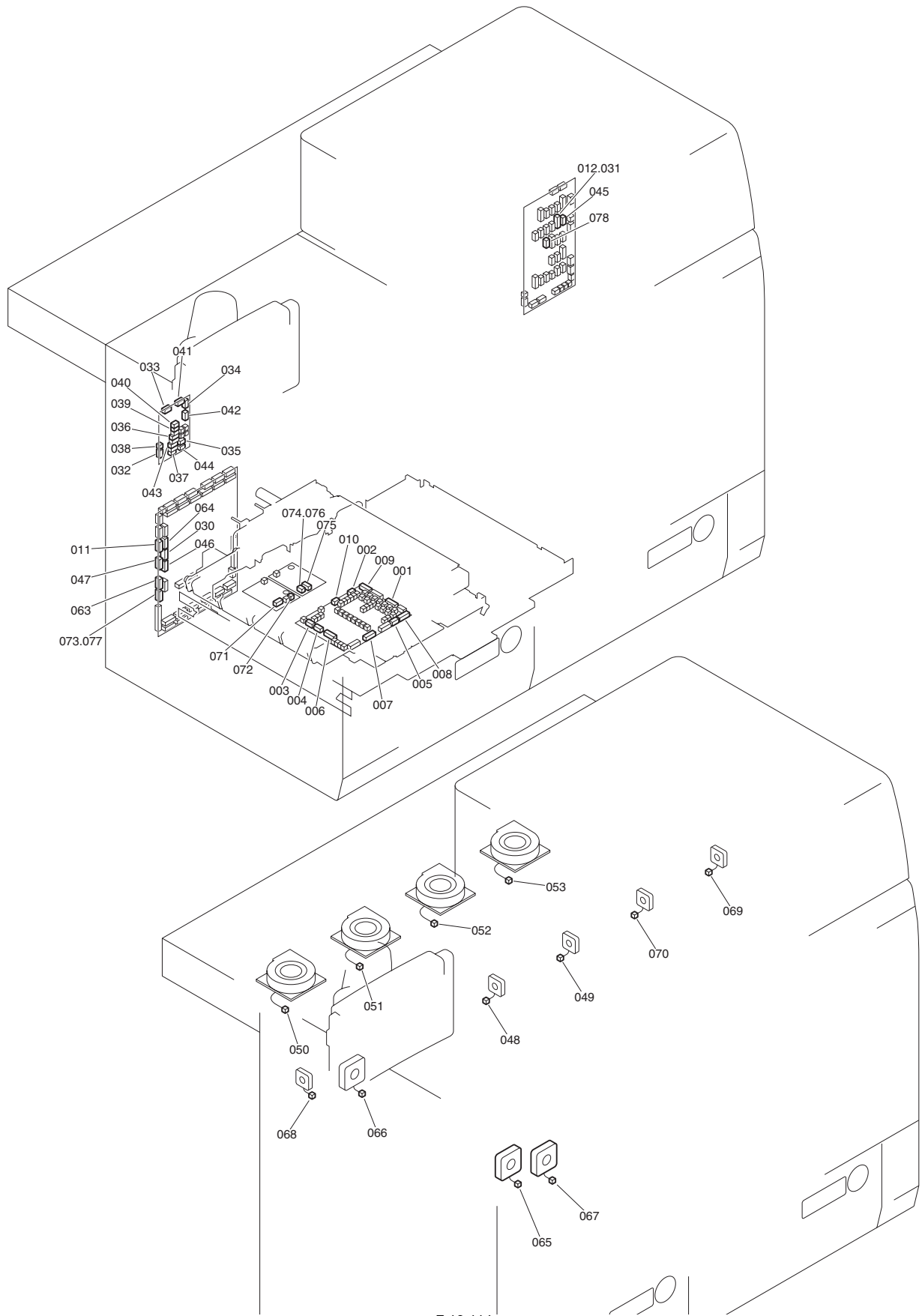
T-16-69

No.	Electric symbol	Electric parts name	J No.	Relay connector				J No.	No.	Electric symbol	Electric parts name
001	UN112	Primary transfer high-voltage PCB (Y)	J3050Y	J7505	J7020	J7531		J1041	003	UN124	DC controller PCB 1-2
002	UN112	Primary transfer high-voltage PCB (Y)	J3051Y					J3051M	004	UN113	Primary transfer high-voltage PCB (M)
005	UN113	Primary transfer high-voltage PCB (M)	J3050M	J7505	J7020	J7531		J1041	007	UN124	DC controller PCB 1-2
006	UN113	Primary transfer high-voltage PCB (M)	J3051M	J7501	J7517	J7020	J7508	J1838	008	UN102	Main station power supply connect PCB
009	UN114	Primary transfer high-voltage PCB (C)	J3050C	J7506	J7021	J7533		J1042	011	UN124	DC controller PCB 1-2
010	UN114	Primary transfer high-voltage PCB (C)	J3051C					J3051K	012	UN115	Primary transfer high-voltage PCB (Bk)
013	UN115	Primary transfer high-voltage PCB (Bk)	J3050K	J7506	J7021	J7533		J1042	015	UN124	DC controller PCB 1-2
014	UN115	Primary transfer high-voltage PCB (Bk)	J3051K	J7502	J7021	J7509		J1838	016	UN102	Main station power supply connect PCB
017	UN116	Secondary transfer high-voltage PCB	J3150	J7507	J7523	J7023	J7530	J1034	019	UN198	DC controller PCB 1-1
018	UN116	Secondary transfer high-voltage PCB	J3151	J7500	J7504	J7175	J7020	J7508	020	UN102	Main station power supply connect PCB
021	UN148	ITB cleaner high-voltage PCB (upstream)	J3250P	J7020	J7514			J1046	023	UN124	DC controller PCB 1-2
022	UN148	ITB cleaner high-voltage PCB (upstream)	J3251P					J1336	024	UN218	ITB driver PCB (left)
025	UN149	ITB cleaner high-voltage PCB (downstream)	J3250S	J7020	J7514			J1046	027	UN124	DC controller PCB 1-2
026	UN149	ITB cleaner high-voltage PCB (downstream)	J3251S					J3251P	028	UN148	ITB cleaner high-voltage PCB (upstream)
029	UN150	ITB pre-transfer charging high-voltage PCB	J3300	J7025	J7534			J1032	031	UN198	DC controller PCB 1-1
030	UN150	ITB pre-transfer charging high-voltage PCB	J3301					J1320	032	UN219	ITB driver PCB (right)
033	UN159	Registration patch sensor driver PCB	J1450	J7015	J7081			J1028	038	UN124	DC controller PCB 1-2
034	UN159	Registration patch sensor driver PCB	J1451	J7016	J7082			J1029	039	UN124	DC controller PCB 1-2
035	UN159	Registration patch sensor driver PCB	J1452	J7015	J7078			J1825	040	UN102	Main station power supply connect PCB
036	UN159	Registration patch sensor driver PCB	J1458					J5042	041	PS133	Registration patch sensor shutter HP sensor
037	UN159	Registration patch sensor driver PCB	J1460	J7016	J7079			J1825	042	UN102	Main station power supply connect PCB
043	UN217	ITB driver PCB (center)	J1300	J7023	J7511			J1844	054	UN102	Main station power supply connect PCB
044	UN217	ITB driver PCB (center)	J1301	J7518	J7024	J7512		J1844	054	UN102	Main station power supply connect PCB
045	UN217	ITB driver PCB (center)	J1302	J7024	J7532			J1033	055	UN198	DC controller PCB 1-1
046	UN217	ITB driver PCB (center)	J1303	J7023	J7530			J1034	056	UN198	DC controller PCB 1-1
047	UN217	ITB driver PCB (center)	J1310					J5227	057	M109	ITB driving motor
048	UN217	ITB driver PCB (center)	J1311	J5230	PIH1/2			J5230X	058	M110	ITB pre-transfer charging wire cleaning motor
048	UN217	ITB driver PCB (center)	J1311					J5228	059	M111	ITB steering motor
049	UN217	ITB driver PCB (center)	J1313	J7522				J5231	060	M112	ITB web motor
049	UN217	ITB driver PCB (center)	J1313	J7522				J5028	061	PS106	ITB web feed sensor
049	UN217	ITB driver PCB (center)	J1313	J7522				J5029	062	PS109	ITB web absence sensor
050	UN217	ITB driver PCB (center)	J1314	J7519				J5165	063	PS221	ITB drive roller encoder sensor A
050	UN217	ITB driver PCB (center)	J1314	J7519				J5166	064	PS222	ITB drive roller encoder sensor B
050	UN217	ITB driver PCB (center)	J1314	J7519				J5026	065	PS223	ITB drive roller HP sensor
051	UN217	ITB driver PCB (center)	J1315	J7516				J5022	066	PS100	ITB displacement sensor
051	UN217	ITB driver PCB (center)	J1315					J5020	067	PS102	ITB HP upper sensor
052	UN217	ITB driver PCB (center)	J1316					J5023	068	PS104	ITB steering motor HP sensor
053	UN217	ITB driver PCB (center)	J1318					J5021	069	PS101	ITB HP lower sensor
070	UN218	ITB driver PCB (left)	J1335	J7022	J7510			J1845	076	UN102	Main station power supply connect PCB
071	UN218	ITB driver PCB (left)	J1337					J5229P	077	M108	ITB cleaner motor
072	UN218	ITB driver PCB (left)	J1338	J7020	J7514			J1046	078	UN124	DC controller PCB 1-2
073	UN218	ITB driver PCB (left)	J1340					J5229S	079	M108	ITB cleaner motor
074	UN218	ITB driver PCB (left)	J1341					J5325	080	M113	ITB web releasing motor

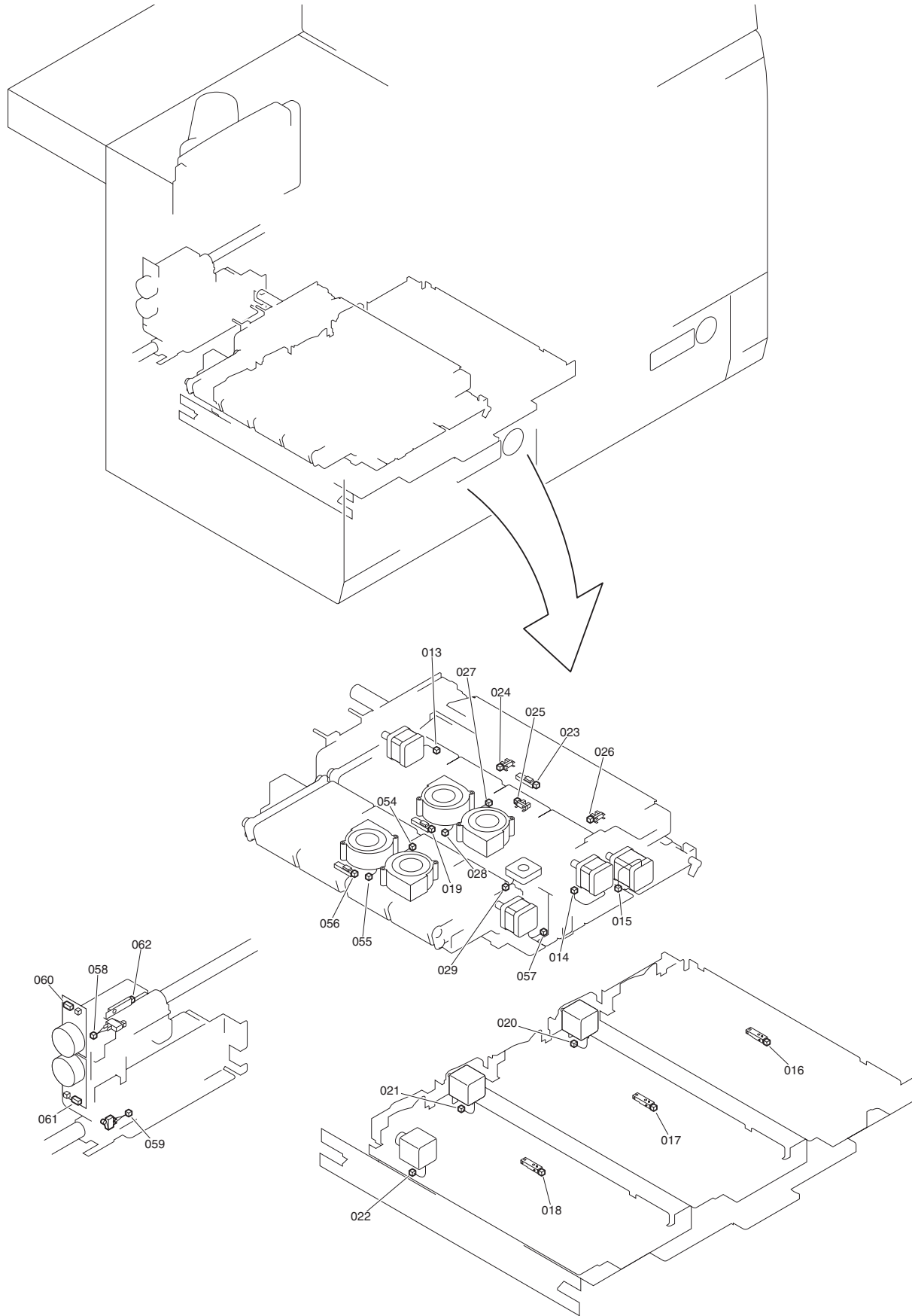
No.	Electric symbol	Electric parts name	J No.	Relay connector					J No.	No.	Electric symbol	Electric parts name
075	UN218	ITB driver PCB (left)	J1342						J5139	081	PS108	ITB web releasing sensor
082	UN219	ITB driver PCB (right)	J1320	J7503	J7021	J7515			J1845	089	UN102	Main station power supply connect PCB
083	UN219	ITB driver PCB (right)	J1321	J7025	J7513				J1845	089	UN102	Main station power supply connect PCB
084	UN219	ITB driver PCB (right)	J1330	J7025	J7534				J1032	090	UN198	DC controller PCB 1-1
085	UN219	ITB driver PCB (right)	J1331	J7025	J7534				J1032	090	UN198	DC controller PCB 1-1
086	UN219	ITB driver PCB (right)	J1332						J5232	091	M114	Leading edge registration patch sensor shutter motor
087	UN219	ITB driver PCB (right)	J1333	J7515					J5027	092	PS105	Leading edge registration shutter HP sensor
088	UN219	ITB driver PCB (right)	J1334						J5461	093	FM115	Pre-transfer exhausting fan

16.4.8.7 Secondary Transfer Unit

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000



F-16-114



F-16-115

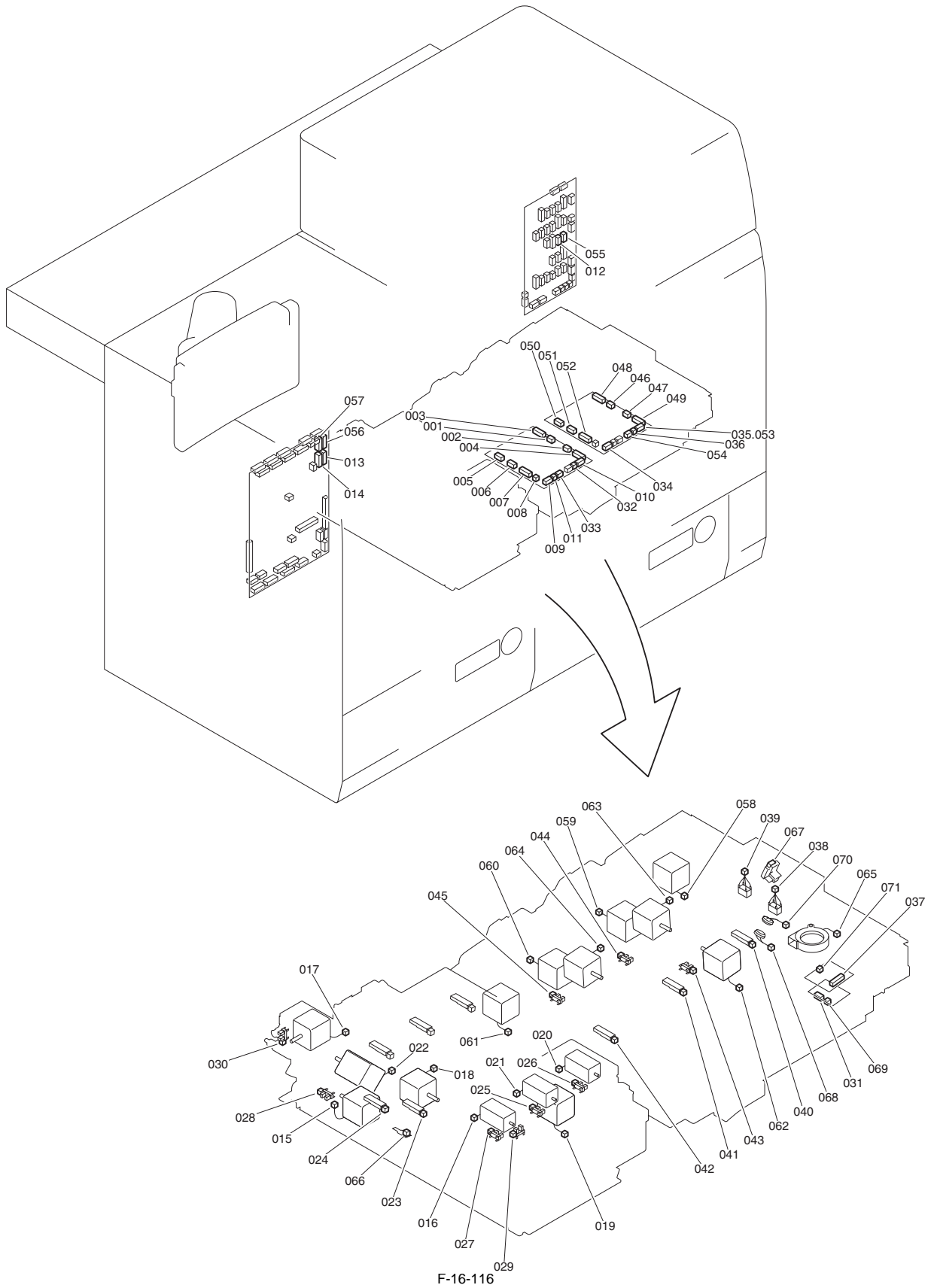
T-16-70

No.	Electric symbol	Electric parts name	J No.	Relay connector			J No.	No.	Electric symbol	Electric parts name
001	UN106	Secondary transfer/duplexing driver PCB	J1501	J7004			J1025	011	UN124	DC controller PCB 1-2
002	UN106	Secondary transfer/duplexing driver PCB	J1502	J7004	J7213		J1832	012	UN102	Main station power supply connect PCB
003	UN106	Secondary transfer/duplexing driver PCB	J1503	J5225			J7700	013	M184	Secondary transfer pressure release motor
004	UN106	Secondary transfer/duplexing driver PCB	J1504	J5224			J7702	014	M183	Secondary transfer driving motor
004	UN106	Secondary transfer/duplexing driver PCB	J1504	J7701			J7701	015	M188	Pre-transfer feed driving right motor
005	UN106	Secondary transfer/duplexing driver PCB	J1505	J7206	J7219		J5058	016	PS169	Duplexing standby sensor 1
005	UN106	Secondary transfer/duplexing driver PCB	J1505	J7206	J7220		J5059	017	PS170	Duplexing standby sensor 2
005	UN106	Secondary transfer/duplexing driver PCB	J1505	J7206	J7221		J5060	018	PS171	Duplexing standby sensor 3
005	UN106	Secondary transfer/duplexing driver PCB	J1505	J7208			J5017	019	PS172	Pre-fixing feed sensor 1
006	UN106	Secondary transfer/duplexing driver PCB	J1506	J7202	J7215	J5278	J7703	020	M185	Duplexing feed motor 1
006	UN106	Secondary transfer/duplexing driver PCB	J1506	J7202	J7216	J5279	J7704	021	M186	Duplexing feed motor 2
006	UN106	Secondary transfer/duplexing driver PCB	J1506	J7202	J7217	J5280	J7705	022	M187	Duplexing feed motor 3
007	UN106	Secondary transfer/duplexing driver PCB	J1507	J7211			J5016	023	PS166	Secondary transfer outlet sensor
007	UN106	Secondary transfer/duplexing driver PCB	J1507	J7204			J5018	024	PS167	Secondary transfer pressure release HP sensor
007	UN106	Secondary transfer/duplexing driver PCB	J1507	J7204			J5128	025	PS168	Secondary transfer waste toner error sensor
007	UN106	Secondary transfer/duplexing driver PCB	J1507	J7204			J5154	026	PS205	Secondary transfer pressure release motor attachment position sensor
008	UN106	Secondary transfer/duplexing driver PCB	J1509	J7208			J5430	027	FM121	Pre-fixing feed front right fan
008	UN106	Secondary transfer/duplexing driver PCB	J1509	J7208			J5431	028	FM120	Pre-fixing feed rear right fan
008	UN106	Secondary transfer/duplexing driver PCB	J1509				J5504	029	FM135	Secondary transfer/duplexing driver PCB cooling fan
009	UN106	Secondary transfer/duplexing driver PCB	J1513	J7005			J1024	030	UN124	DC controller PCB 1-2
010	UN106	Secondary transfer/duplexing driver PCB	J1515	J7005	J7214		J1832	031	UN102	Main station power supply connect PCB
032	UN107	Pre-fixing feed driver PCB	J1550				J1833	045	UN102	Main station power supply connect PCB
033	UN107	Pre-fixing feed driver PCB	J1551				J1027	046	UN124	DC controller PCB 1-2
034	UN107	Pre-fixing feed driver PCB	J1553				J1026	047	UN124	DC controller PCB 1-2
035	UN107	Pre-fixing feed driver PCB	J1555	J7773			J5459	048	FM102	Laser cooling fan (C)
035	UN107	Pre-fixing feed driver PCB	J1555	J7774			J5460	049	FM103	Laser cooling fan (Bk)
036	UN107	Pre-fixing feed driver PCB	J1556	J7406	J7407		J5433	050	FM114	Process unit exhausting fan (Y)
036	UN107	Pre-fixing feed driver PCB	J1556	J7406	J7408		J5436	051	FM112	Process unit exhausting fan (M)
036	UN107	Pre-fixing feed driver PCB	J1556	J7406	J7409		J5438	052	FM108	Process unit exhausting fan (C)
036	UN107	Pre-fixing feed driver PCB	J1556	J7406	J7410		J5440	053	FM110	Process unit exhausting fan (Bk)
037	UN107	Pre-fixing feed driver PCB	J1557	J7400	J7405		J5448	054	FM134	Pre-fixing feed front left fan
037	UN107	Pre-fixing feed driver PCB	J1557	J7400	J7405		J5449	055	FM137	Pre-fixing feed rear left fan
037	UN107	Pre-fixing feed driver PCB	J1557	J7400	J7401		J5061	056	PS200	Pre-fixing feed sensor 2
038	UN107	Pre-fixing feed driver PCB	J1558	J7402	J7412	J5281	J7707	057	M181	Pre-fixing feed drive left motor
039	UN107	Pre-fixing feed driver PCB	J1559	J7403			J5628	058	SW109	Drum waste toner lock detection switch
039	UN107	Pre-fixing feed driver PCB	J1559	J7404			J5629	059	SW110	Transfer waste toner lock detection switch
039	UN107	Pre-fixing feed driver PCB	J1559				J5286	060	M180	Drum waste toner feed motor
040	UN107	Pre-fixing feed driver PCB	J1561				J5288	061	M179	Buffer motor
040	UN107	Pre-fixing feed driver PCB	J1561	J7413			J5554	062	TS128	Buffer toner full sensor
041	UN107	Pre-fixing feed driver PCB	J1577				J1030	063	UN124	DC controller PCB 1-2
042	UN107	Pre-fixing feed driver PCB	J1578				J1097	064	UN124	DC controller PCB 1-2
043	UN107	Pre-fixing feed driver PCB	J1595	J7414	J7416	J7418	J5813	065	FM160	Process unit front side cooling fan (Y)
043	UN107	Pre-fixing feed driver PCB	J1595	J7414	J7416	J7418	J5814	066	FM161	Process unit rear side cooling fan (Y)
043	UN107	Pre-fixing feed driver PCB	J1595	J7415	J7416	J7418	J5816	067	FM165	Developing assembly cooling fan 1 (Y)
043	UN107	Pre-fixing feed driver PCB	J1595				J5815	068	FM163	Main station rear left cooling fan
044	UN107	Pre-fixing feed driver PCB	J1598	J7771			J5457	069	FM105	Laser cooling fan (Y)

No.	Electric symbol	Electric parts name	J No.	Relay connector			J No.	No.	Electric symbol	Electric parts name
044	UN107	Pre-fixing feed driver PCB	J1598	J7772			J5458	070	FM104	Laser cooling fan (M)
071	UN108	Post-secondary transfer static elimination high-voltage PCB	J3100	J7006			J1043	073	UN124	DC controller PCB 1-2
072	UN108	Post-secondary transfer static elimination high-voltage PCB	J3101				J3351	074	UN109	Secondary transfer cleaner high-voltage PCB
075	UN109	Secondary transfer cleaner high-voltage PCB	J3350	J7006			J1043	077	UN124	DC controller PCB 1-2
076	UN109	Secondary transfer cleaner high-voltage PCB	J3351	J7006	J7212		J1839	078	UN102	Main station power supply connect PCB

16.4.8.8 Registration Unit

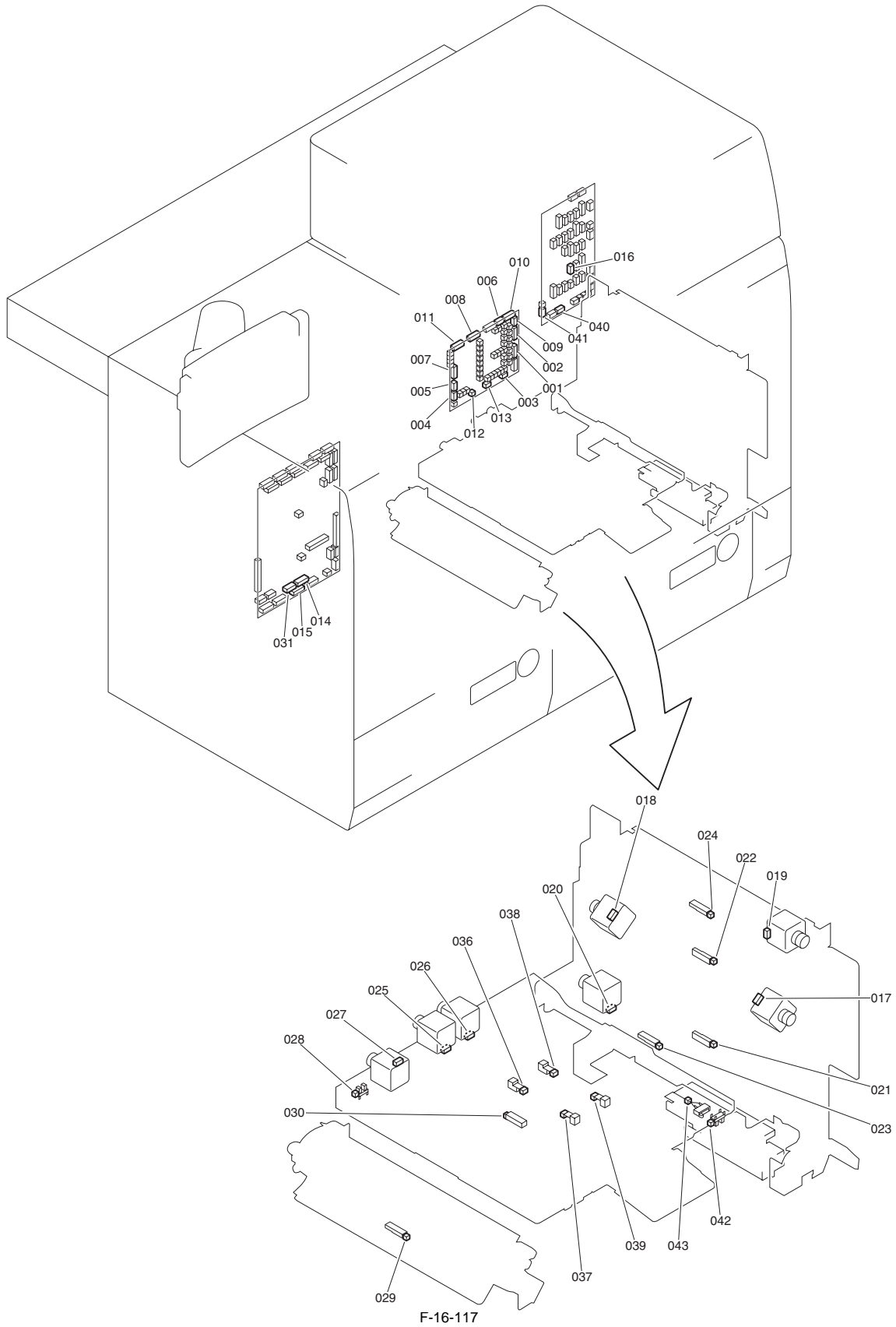
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

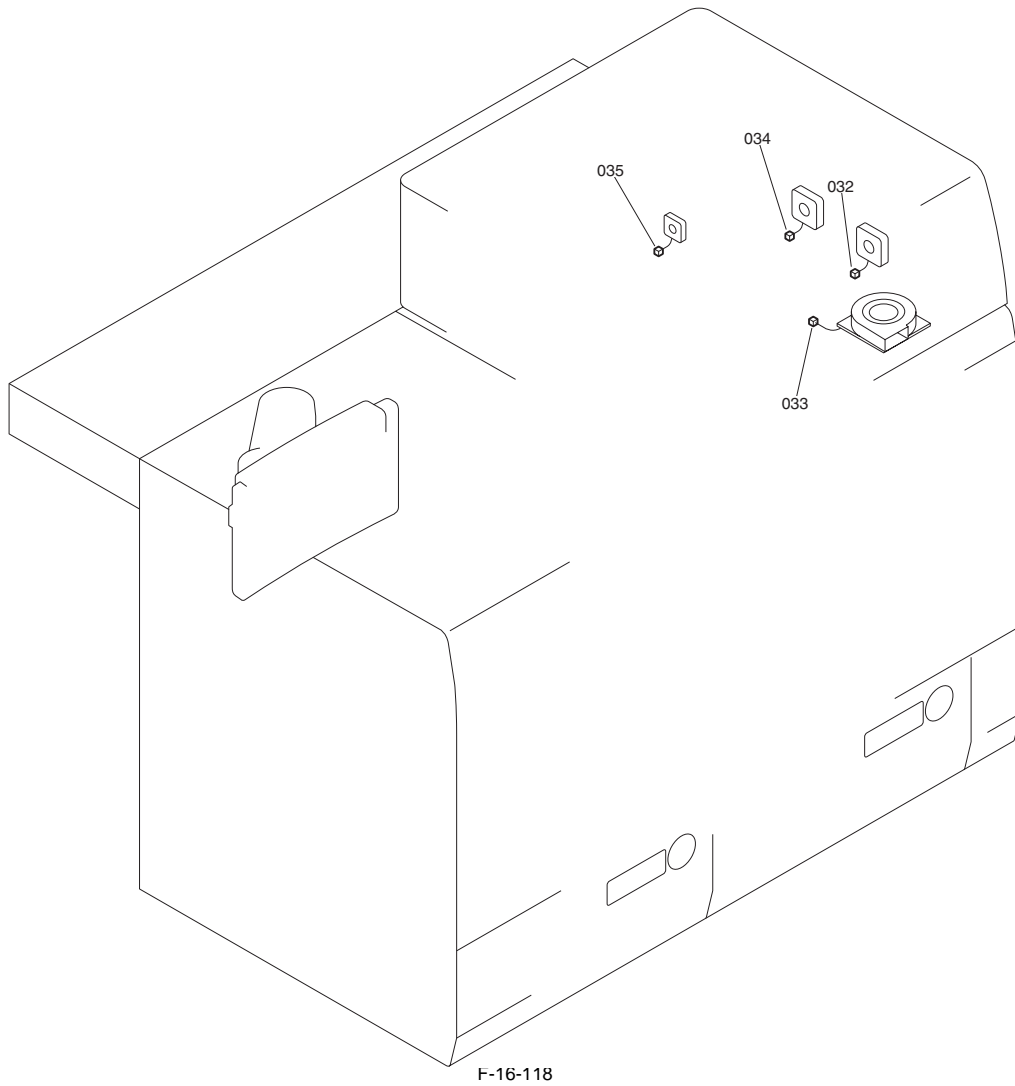


No.	Electric symbol	Electric parts name	J No.	Relay connector			J No.	No.	Electric symbol	Electric parts name
001	UN100	Registration feed driver PCB (left)	J1200	J7118	J7002	J7124	J1831	012	UN102	Main station power supply connect PCB
002	UN100	Registration feed driver PCB (left)	J1201	J7119	J7003	J7125	J1831	012	UN102	Main station power supply connect PCB
003	UN100	Registration feed driver PCB (left)	J1210	J7120	J7002		J1022	013	UN198	DC controller PCB 1-1
004	UN100	Registration feed driver PCB (left)	J1211	J7121	J7003		J1023	014	UN198	DC controller PCB 1-1
005	UN100	Registration feed driver PCB (left)	J1220	J5217			J253	015	M165	Registration releasing motor
005	UN100	Registration feed driver PCB (left)	J1220	J7106			J5222	016	M171	Cross feed pressure release motor 3
006	UN100	Registration feed driver PCB (left)	J1221	J7104	J5218		J254	017	M166	Registration swing motor
006	UN100	Registration feed driver PCB (left)	J1221	J5223			J255	018	M167	Cross feed push-on plate jogging motor
007	UN100	Registration feed driver PCB (left)	J1222	J7105	J5219		J256	019	M168	Cross feed motor
007	UN100	Registration feed driver PCB (left)	J1222	J7106			J5220	020	M169	Cross feed pressure release motor 1
007	UN100	Registration feed driver PCB (left)	J1222	J7106			J5221	021	M170	Cross feed pressure release motor 2
008	UN100	Registration feed driver PCB (left)	J1223	J5216			J252	022	M164	Registration motor
009	UN100	Registration feed driver PCB (left)	J1230	J7127	J7107		J5007	023	PS146	Pre-registration sensor
009	UN100	Registration feed driver PCB (left)	J1230	J7127	J7109		J5153	024	PS209	Post-registration sensor
010	UN100	Registration feed driver PCB (left)	J1231	J7127	J7112	J7129	J5008	025	PS152	Cross feed roller pressure release HP sensor 1
010	UN100	Registration feed driver PCB (left)	J1231	J7127	J7112	J7130	J5009	026	PS153	Cross feed roller pressure release HP sensor 2
010	UN100	Registration feed driver PCB (left)	J1231	J7127	J7112	J7131	J5010	027	PS154	Cross feed roller pressure release HP sensor 3
010	UN100	Registration feed driver PCB (left)	J1231	J7127	J7110		J5012	028	PS149	Cross feed plate HP sensor
010	UN100	Registration feed driver PCB (left)	J1231	J7127			J5013	029	PS147	Registration roller release HP sensor 1
010	UN100	Registration feed driver PCB (left)	J1231	J7127	J7111		J5015	030	PS150	Registration roller slide HP sensor
011	UN100	Registration feed driver PCB (left)	J1241L	J2702			J2702	031	UN122	Double feed detection PCB (transmission)
							J2706	037	UN123	Double feed detection PCB (reception)
							J5150	038	PS138	Transparency sensor (front)
032	UN100	Registration feed driver PCB (left)	J1232L				J5151	039	PS137	Transparency sensor (rear)
033	UN100	Registration feed driver PCB (left)	J1242L				J5000	040	PS139	Pre-feed sensor 1
034	UN104	Registration feed driver PCB (right)	J1930R	J7102			J5001	041	PS140	Pre-feed sensor 2
035	UN104	Registration feed driver PCB (right)	J1931R				J5002	042	PS141	Pre-feed sensor 3
036	UN104	Registration feed driver PCB (right)	J1932R				J5129	043	PS142	Cross feed pressure release motor HP sensor 1
							J5130	044	PS143	Cross feed pressure release motor HP sensor 2
							J5131	045	PS144	Cross feed pressure release motor HP sensor 3
046	UN104	Registration feed driver PCB (right)	J1900	J7114	J7000	J7122	J1830	055	UN102	Main station power supply connect PCB
047	UN104	Registration feed driver PCB (right)	J1901	J7115	J7001	J7123	J1830	055	UN102	Main station power supply connect PCB
048	UN104	Registration feed driver PCB (right)	J1910	J7116	J7000		J1020	056	UN198	DC controller PCB 1-1
049	UN104	Registration feed driver PCB (right)	J1911	J7117	J7001		J1021	057	UN198	DC controller PCB 1-1
050	UN104	Registration feed driver PCB (right)	J1920	J5208			J244	058	M156	Pre-registration motor 1
050	UN104	Registration feed driver PCB (right)	J1920	J5209			J245	059	M157	Pre-registration motor 2
051	UN104	Registration feed driver PCB (right)	J1921	J5210			J246	060	M158	Pre-registration motor 3
051	UN104	Registration feed driver PCB (right)	J1921	J5211			J247	061	M159	Pre-registration motor 4
052	UN104	Registration feed driver PCB (right)	J1922	J7103			J5212	062	M160	Pre-registration pressure release motor 1
052	UN104	Registration feed driver PCB (right)	J1922	J7103			J5213	063	M161	Pre-registration pressure release motor 2
052	UN104	Registration feed driver PCB (right)	J1922	J7103			J5214	064	M162	Pre-registration pressure release motor 3
053	UN104	Registration feed driver PCB (right)	J1931R				J5500	065	FM130	Registration feed driver PCB right cooling fan
054	UN104	Registration feed driver PCB (right)	J1940R	J7100			J5011	066	PS151	Registration sensor
054	UN104	Registration feed driver PCB (right)	J1940R	J7101	J7113		J5063	067	UN179	Paper thickness sensor
068	UN196	Double feed sensor (transmission)	J7777				J2703	069	UN122	Double feed detection PCB (transmission)
070	UN197	Double feed sensor (reception)	J7776				J2704	071	UN123	Double feed detection PCB (reception)

16.4.8.9 Vertical Path Unit

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000





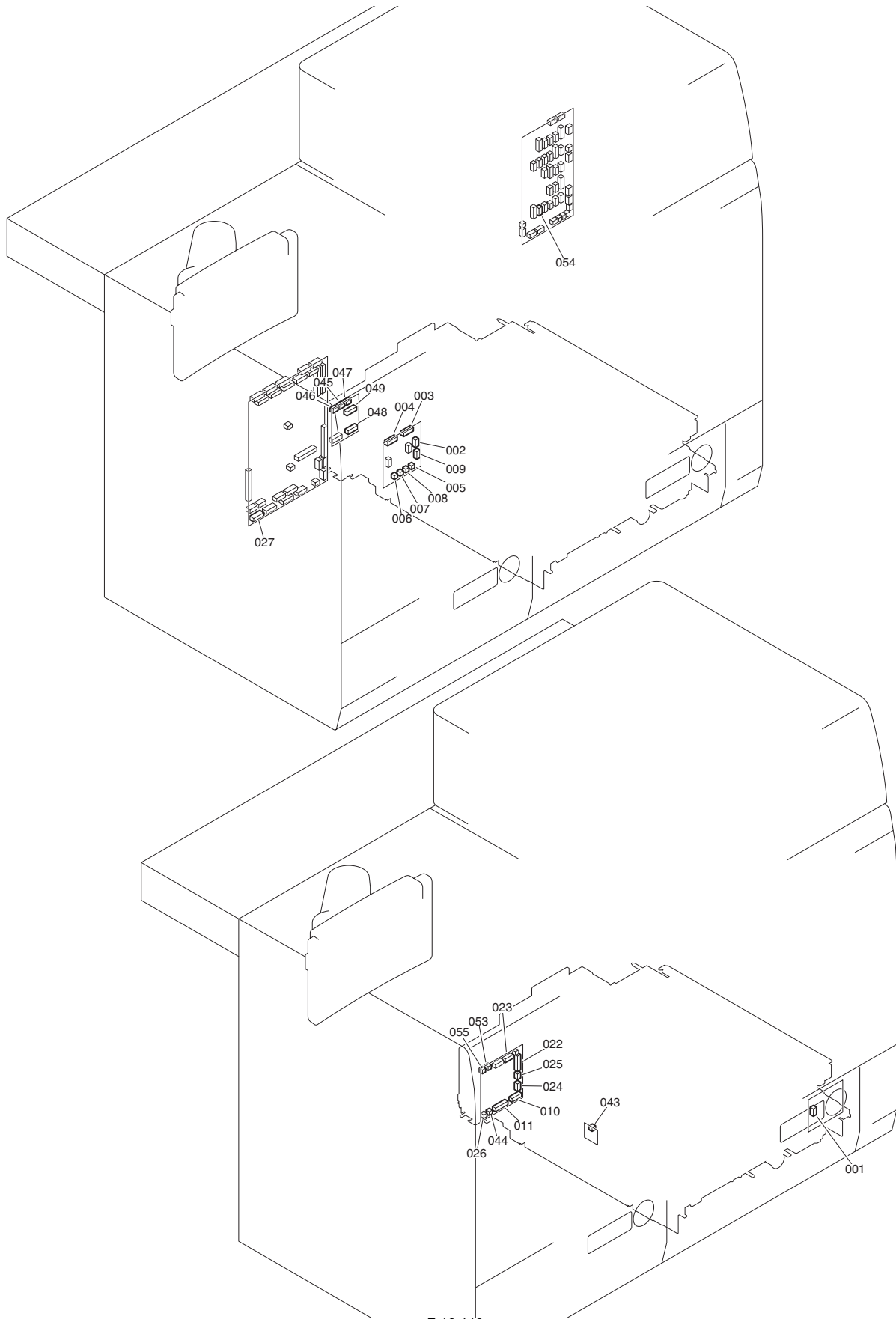
F-16-118

T-16-72

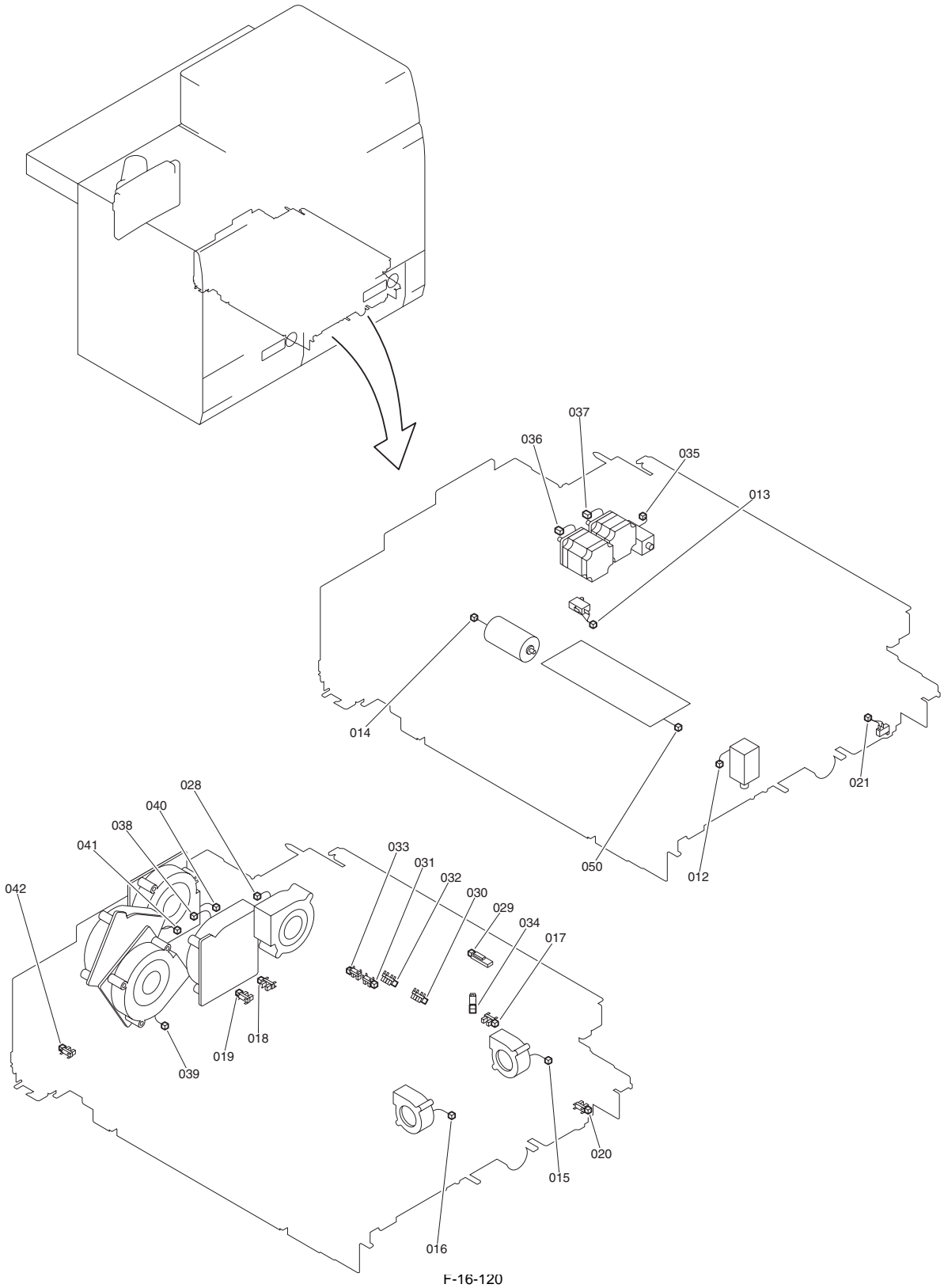
No.	Electric symbol	Electric parts name	J No.	Relay connector			J No.	No.	Electric symbol	Electric parts name
001	UN105	Vertical path/lower feed driver PCB	J1500				J1018	014	UN198	DC controller PCB 1-1
002	UN105	Vertical path/lower feed driver PCB	J1501				J1019	015	UN198	DC controller PCB 1-1
003	UN105	Vertical path/lower feed driver PCB	J1502				J1829	016	UN102	Main station power supply connect PCB
004	UN105	Vertical path/lower feed driver PCB	J1503	J7300	J7303		J5267	017	M178	Vertical path feed motor
004	UN105	Vertical path/lower feed driver PCB	J1503	J7300	J7303		J5268	018	M172	Lower feed motor 4
005	UN105	Vertical path/lower feed driver PCB	J1504	J7301	J7304		J5320	019	M176	POD deck path feed motor
005	UN105	Vertical path/lower feed driver PCB	J1504	J7301	J7304	J5266	J7738	020	M177	Right deck feeding motor
006	UN105	Vertical path/lower feed driver PCB	J1505	J7307	J7308	J7321	J5043	021	PS163	Right deck merger sensor
006	UN105	Vertical path/lower feed driver PCB	J1505	J7307	J7308		J5044	022	PS164	Vertical path sensor
006	UN105	Vertical path/lower feed driver PCB	J1505	J7307	J7308		J5047	023	PS162	Lower feed sensor 2
006	UN105	Vertical path/lower feed driver PCB	J1505	J7307	J7308		J5160	024	PS220	POD deck path sensor
007	UN105	Vertical path/lower feed driver PCB	J1506	J7302			J5269	025	M173	Lower feed motor 2
007	UN105	Vertical path/lower feed driver PCB	J1506	J7302			J5270	026	M174	Lower feed motor 3
007	UN105	Vertical path/lower feed driver PCB	J1506	J7302			J5271	027	M175	Lower feed motor 1
008	UN105	Vertical path/lower feed driver PCB	J1507	J7306			J12	028	PS231	Lower feed guide open/close sensor
008	UN105	Vertical path/lower feed driver PCB	J1507	J7305			J5045	029	PS160	Left deck merger sensor
008	UN105	Vertical path/lower feed driver PCB	J1507	J7306			J5046	030	PS161	Lower feed sensor 1
009	UN105	Vertical path/lower feed driver PCB	J1508				J1057	031	UN198	DC controller PCB 1-1
010	UN105	Vertical path/lower feed driver PCB	J1509	J7310			J5430	032	FM141	Main station right cooling fan 2
010	UN105	Vertical path/lower feed driver PCB	J1509	J7310			J5431	033	FM140	Main station right cooling fan 1
010	UN105	Vertical path/lower feed driver PCB	J1509	J7310			J5502	034	FM142	Main station right cooling fan 3
010	UN105	Vertical path/lower feed driver PCB	J1509				J5812	035	FM143	Main station rear right cooling fan
011	UN105	Vertical path/lower feed driver PCB	J1511	J7309	J7320		J5155	036	PS210	Lower feed path paper length sensor (rear left)
011	UN105	Vertical path/lower feed driver PCB	J1511	J7309	J7320		J5157	037	PS212	Lower feed path paper length sensor (front left)
011	UN105	Vertical path/lower feed driver PCB	J1511	J7309	J7320		J5158	038	PS214	Lower feed path paper length sensor (rear right)
011	UN105	Vertical path/lower feed driver PCB	J1511	J7309	J7320		J5159	039	PS217	Lower feed path paper length sensor (front right)
012	UN105	Vertical path/lower feed driver PCB	J1514				J1829	016	UN102	Main station power supply connect PCB
013	UN105	Vertical path/lower feed driver PCB	J1515				J1829	016	UN102	Main station power supply connect PCB
040	UN102	Main station power supply connect PCB	J1813	J7897	J7757		J5134	042	PS174	Vertical path cover open/close sensor
041	UN102	Main station power supply connect PCB	J1814	J7766			J7173	043	SW116	Vertical path cover open/close switch

16.4.8.10 Right Deck Unit

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000



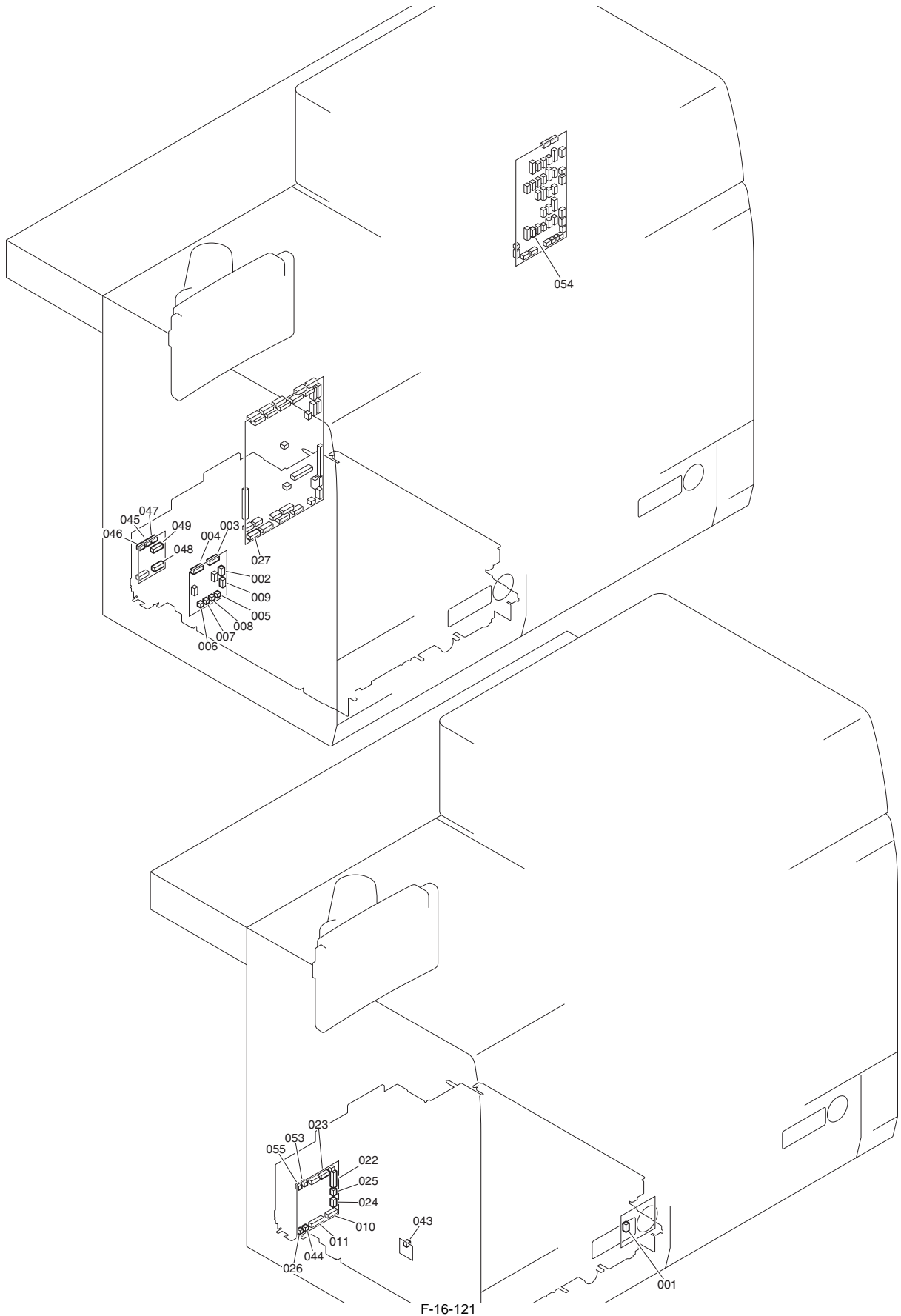
F-16-119



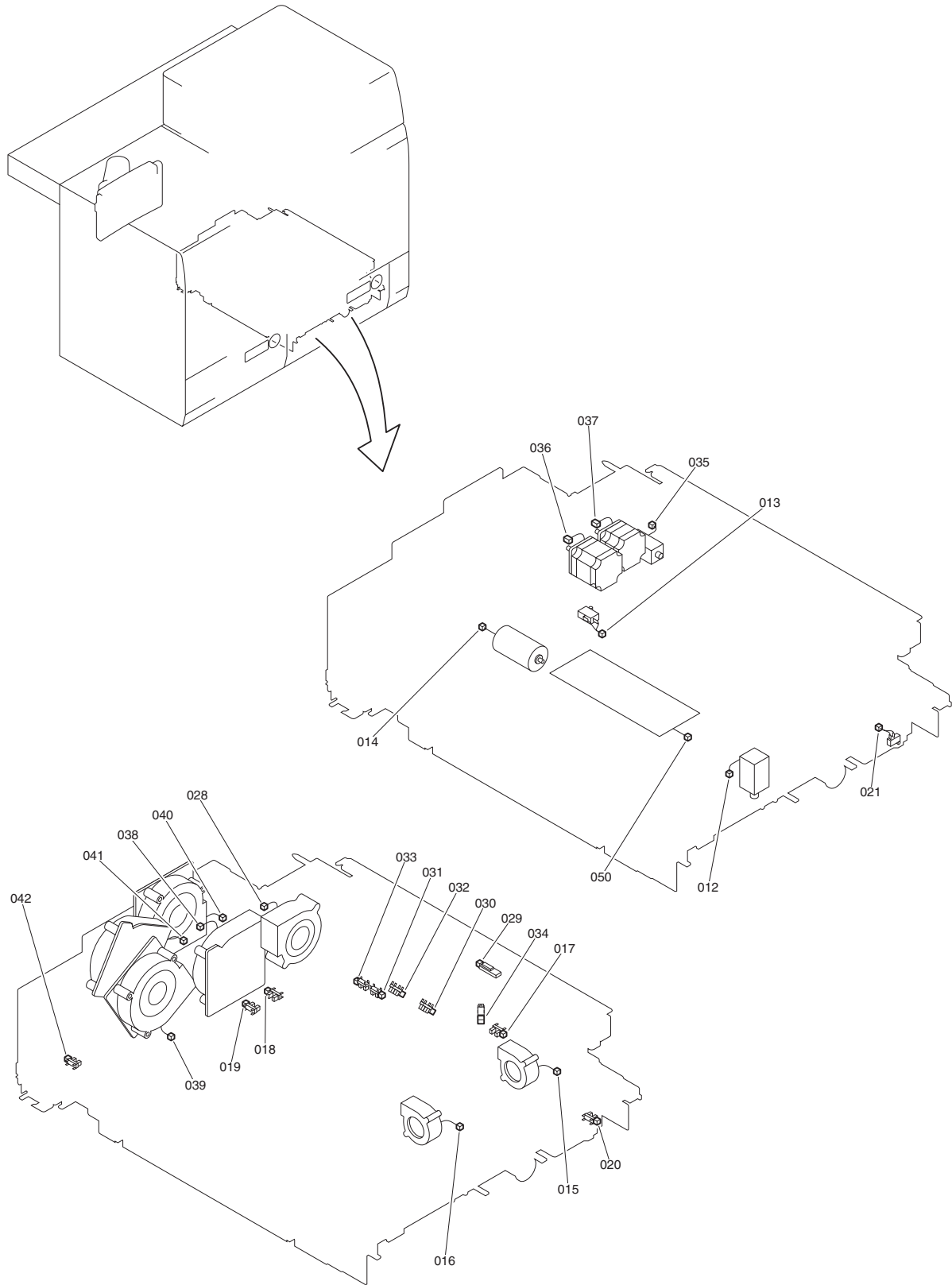
No.	Electric symbol	Electric parts name	J No.	Relay connector	J No.	No.	Electric symbol	Electric parts name
001	UN601	Right deck indicator driver PCB	J2150R		J2108R	002	UN602	Right deck driver PCB
003	UN602	Right deck driver PCB	J2101R		J2057R	010	UN603	Right deck pickup driver PCB
004	UN602	Right deck driver PCB	J2102R		J2056R	011	UN603	Right deck pickup driver PCB
005	UN602	Right deck driver PCB	J2103R	J7985	J5573	012	SL603	Right deck open/close solenoid
006	UN602	Right deck driver PCB	J2104R		J5652	013	SW603	Right deck interlock switch
007	UN602	Right deck driver PCB	J2105R		J5274	014	M603	Right deck lifter motor
008	UN602	Right deck driver PCB	J2106R	J7985 J7980	J5514	015	FM606	Right deck side right fan
008	UN602	Right deck driver PCB	J2106R	J7985 J7979	J5515	016	FM607	Right deck side left fan
009	UN602	Right deck driver PCB	J2107R		J5184	017	PS609	Right deck supply position sensor
009	UN602	Right deck driver PCB	J2107R		J5185	018	PS610	Right deck paper level sensor (right)
009	UN602	Right deck driver PCB	J2107R		J5186	019	PS611	Right deck paper level sensor (lower)
009	UN602	Right deck driver PCB	J2107R	J7983	J5181	020	PS612	Right deck lifter lower limit sensor
009	UN602	Right deck driver PCB	J2107R	J7983	J5624	021	SW602	Right deck lifter lower limit switch
022	UN603	Right deck pickup driver PCB	J2051R		J1060	027	UN198	DC controller PCB 1-1
023	UN603	Right deck pickup driver PCB	J2053R	J7952	J5445	028	FM601	Right deck suction fan
023	UN603	Right deck pickup driver PCB	J2053R	J7952 J7984	J5048	029	PS601	Right deck pull-out sensor
023	UN603	Right deck pickup driver PCB	J2053R	J7952	J5049	030	PS602	Right deck paper sensor
023	UN603	Right deck pickup driver PCB	J2053R	J7952	J5501	031	PS603	Right deck upper limit paper surface sensor
023	UN603	Right deck pickup driver PCB	J2053R	J7952	J5135	032	PS604	Right deck lower limit paper surface sensor
023	UN603	Right deck pickup driver PCB	J2053R		J5182	033	PS605	Right deck middle paper surface sensor
023	UN603	Right deck pickup driver PCB	J2053R	J7952	J5137	034	PS606	Right deck suction completion sensor
023	UN603	Right deck pickup driver PCB	J2053R		J5577	035	SL601	Right deck pickup solenoid
024	UN603	Right deck pickup driver PCB	J2054R	J7981	J5272	036	M601	Right deck pickup belt motor
024	UN603	Right deck pickup driver PCB	J2054R	J7981	J5273	037	M602	Right deck pull-out motor
025	UN603	Right deck pickup driver PCB	J2055R	J7982	J5496	038	FM602	Right deck main right floatation fan
025	UN603	Right deck pickup driver PCB	J2055R	J7982	J5495	039	FM603	Right deck main left floatation fan
025	UN603	Right deck pickup driver PCB	J2055R		J5447	040	FM604	Right deck sub right floatation fan
025	UN603	Right deck pickup driver PCB	J2055R		J5446	041	FM605	Right deck sub left floatation fan
026	UN603	Right deck pickup driver PCB	J2061R		J5052	042	PS607	Right deck open/close sensor
043	UN604	Left deck environment sensor	J9605		J2060R	044	UN603	Right deck pickup driver PCB
045	UN605	Right deck pickup AC driver PCB	J2401R	J7976	J5678	050	H602	Right deck heater
046	UN605	Right deck pickup AC driver PCB	J2402R		-	-	H601	Right deck floating air heater
046	UN605	Right deck pickup AC driver PCB	J2402R		-	-	TP600	Left deck floatation air heater thermoswitch
047	UN605	Right deck pickup AC driver PCB	J2404R		J2058R	053	UN603	Right deck pickup driver PCB
048	UN605	Right deck pickup AC driver PCB	J2405R		J1822	054	UN102	Main station power supply connect PCB
049	UN605	Right deck pickup AC driver PCB	J2406R		J2062R	055	UN603	Right deck pickup driver PCB

16.4.8.11 Left Deck Unit

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000



F-16-121

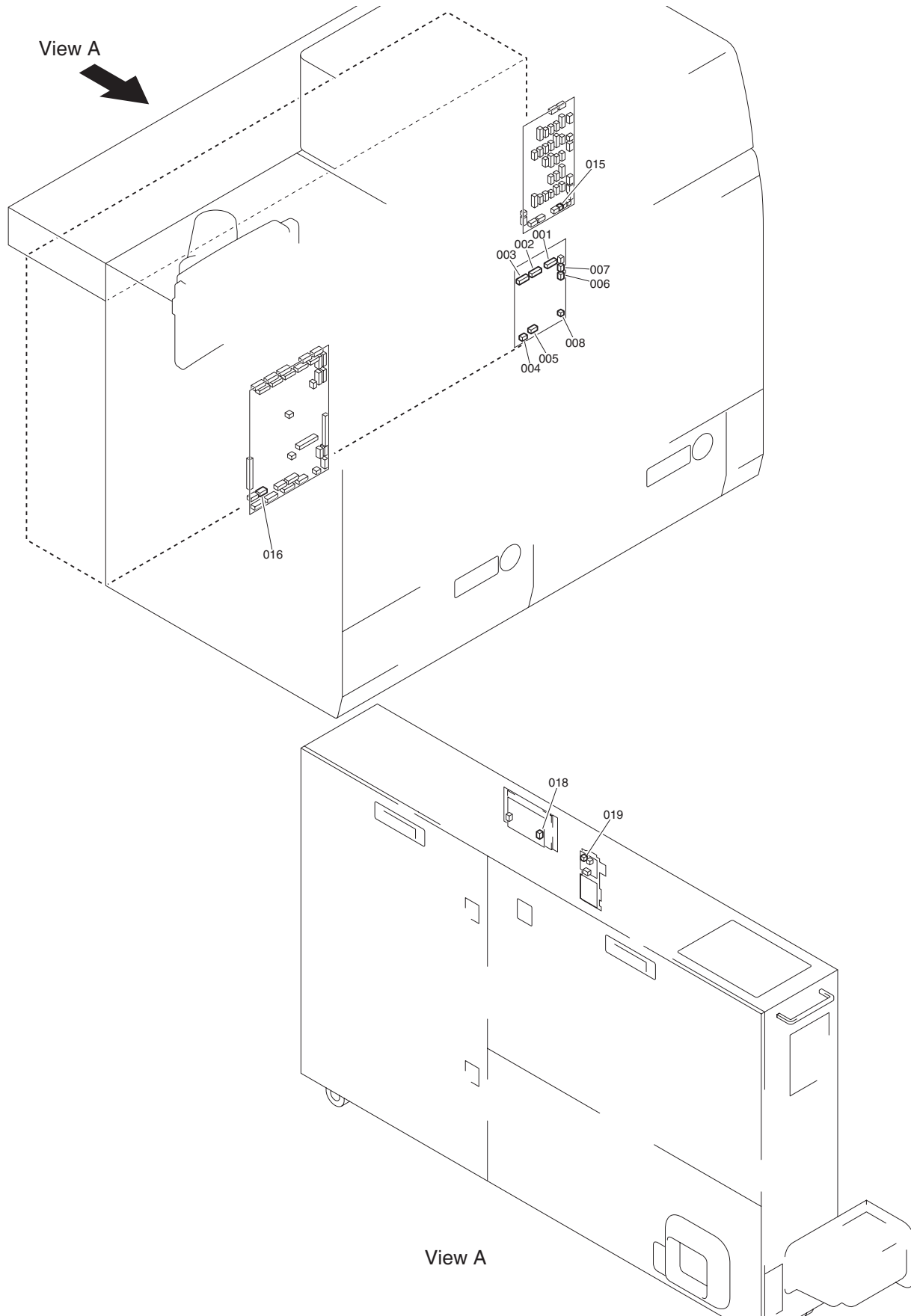


T-16-74

No.	Electric symbol	Electric parts name	J No.	Relay connector		J No.	No.	Electric symbol	Electric parts name
001	UN701	Left deck indicator driver PCB	J2150L	J7965		J2108L	002	UN702	Left deck driver PCB
003	UN702	Left deck driver PCB	J2101L			J2057L	010	UN703	Left deck pickup driver PCB
004	UN702	Left deck driver PCB	J2102L			J2056L	011	UN703	Left deck pickup driver PCB
005	UN702	Left deck driver PCB	J2103L	J7962		J5571	012	SL702	Left deck open/close solenoid
006	UN702	Left deck driver PCB	J2104L			J5651	013	SW703	Left deck interlock switch
007	UN702	Left deck driver PCB	J2105L			J5277	014	M703	Left deck lifter motor
008	UN702	Left deck driver PCB	J2106L	J7962	J7966	J5517	015	FM706	Left deck side right fan
008	UN702	Left deck driver PCB	J2106L	J7962	J7967	J5516	016	FM707	Left deck side left fan
009	UN702	Left deck driver PCB	J2107L			J5188	017	PS709	Left deck supply position sensor
009	UN702	Left deck driver PCB	J2107L			J5189	018	PS710	Left deck paper level sensor (right)
009	UN702	Left deck driver PCB	J2107L			J5190	019	PS711	Left deck paper level sensor (lower)
009	UN702	Left deck driver PCB	J2107L			J5191	020	PS712	Left deck lifter lower limit sensor
009	UN702	Left deck driver PCB	J2107L	J7961		J5626	021	SW702	Left deck lifter lower limit switch
022	UN703	Left deck pickup driver PCB	J2051L			J1064	027	UN198	DC controller PCB 1-1
023	UN703	Left deck pickup driver PCB	J2053L	J7957		J5442	028	FM701	Left deck suction fan
023	UN703	Left deck pickup driver PCB	J2053L	J7957	J7959	J5053	029	PS701	Left deck pull-out sensor
023	UN703	Left deck pickup driver PCB	J2053L	J7957		J5054	030	PS702	Left deck paper sensor
023	UN703	Left deck pickup driver PCB	J2053L	J7957		J5056	031	PS703	Left deck upper limit paper surface sensor
023	UN703	Left deck pickup driver PCB	J2053L	J7957		J5136	032	PS704	Left deck lower limit paper surface sensor
023	UN703	Left deck pickup driver PCB	J2053L			J5183	033	PS705	Left deck middle paper surface sensor
023	UN703	Left deck pickup driver PCB	J2053L	J7957		J5138	034	PS706	Left deck suction completion sensor
023	UN703	Left deck pickup driver PCB	J2053L	J7957		J5572	035	SL701	Left deck pickup solenoid
024	UN703	Left deck pickup driver PCB	J2054L	J7974		J5275	036	M701	Left deck pickup belt motor
024	UN703	Left deck pickup driver PCB	J2054L	J7974		J5276	037	M702	Left deck pull-out motor
025	UN703	Left deck pickup driver PCB	J2055L	J7958		J5494	038	FM702	Left deck main right floatation fan
025	UN703	Left deck pickup driver PCB	J2055L	J7958		J5493	039	FM703	Left deck main left floatation fan
025	UN703	Left deck pickup driver PCB	J2055L			J5443	040	FM704	Left deck sub right floatation fan
025	UN703	Left deck pickup driver PCB	J2055L			J5444	041	FM705	Left deck sub left floatation fan
026	UN703	Left deck pickup driver PCB	J2061L			J5057	042	PS707	Left deck open/close sensor
043	UN704	Right deck environment sensor	J9606			J2060L	044	UN703	Left deck pickup driver PCB
045	UN705	Left deck pickup AC driver PCB	J2401L	J7975		J5680	050	H702	Left deck heater
046	UN705	Left deck pickup AC driver PCB	J2402L			-	-	H701	Left deck floating air heater
046	UN705	Left deck pickup AC driver PCB	J2402L			-	-	TP700	Right deck floatation air heater thermoswitch
047	UN705	Left deck pickup AC driver PCB	J2404L			J2058L	053	UN703	Left deck pickup driver PCB
048	UN705	Left deck pickup AC driver PCB	J2405L			J1822	054	UN102	Main station power supply connect PCB
049	UN705	Left deck pickup AC driver PCB	J2406L			J2062L	055	UN703	Left deck pickup driver PCB

16.4.8.12 Environment Heater Unit

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

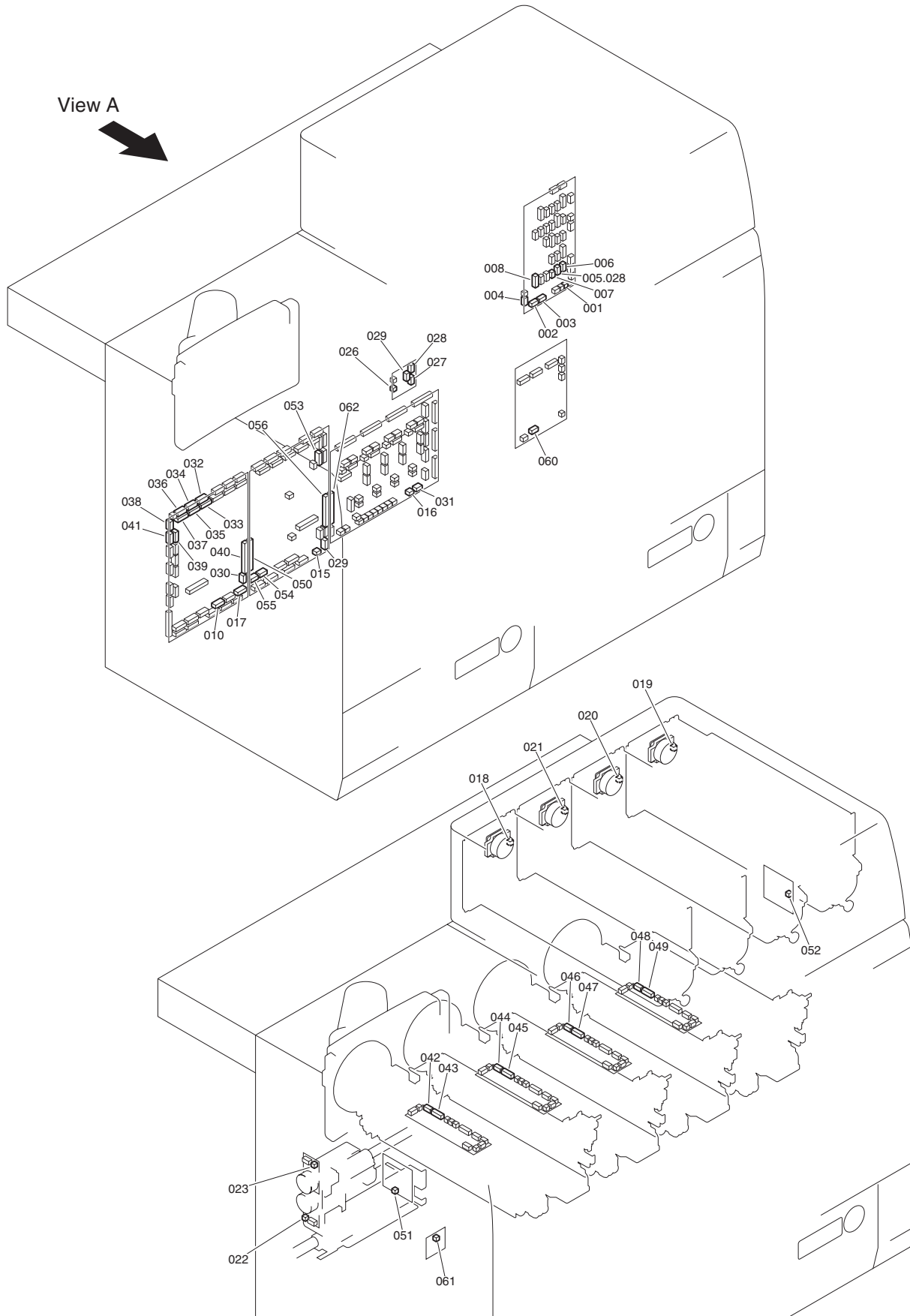


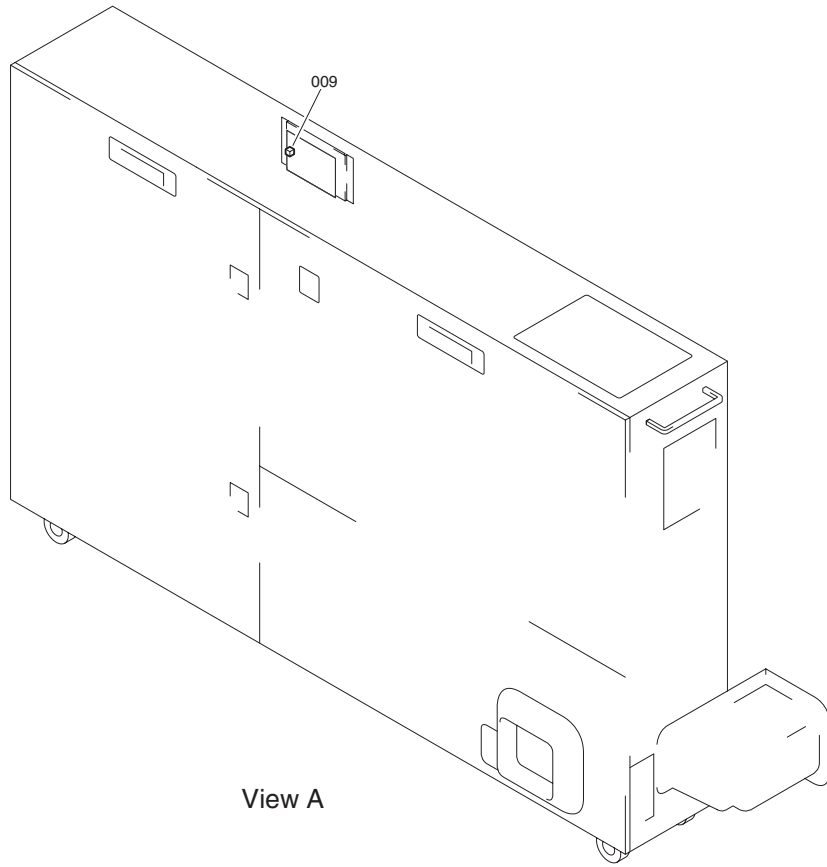
T-16-75

No.	Electric symbol	Electric parts name	J No.	Relay connector			J No.	No.	Electric symbol	Electric parts name
001	UN101	Environment heater driver PCB	J4400	J7779	J5653		J5653	-	SW3	Drum heater interlock switch
001	UN101	Environment heater driver PCB	J4400	J7778J	J7865J	J7856J	-	-	SW107	Environment switch
002	UN101	Environment heater driver PCB	J4401	J7266	J7012		-	-	H100	Drum heater (C)
002	UN101	Environment heater driver PCB	J4401	J7268	J7014		-	-	H101	Drum heater (Bk)
003	UN101	Environment heater driver PCB	J4402	J7262	J7008		-	-	H103	Drum heater (Y)
003	UN101	Environment heater driver PCB	J4402	J7264	J7010		-	-	H102	Drum heater (M)
004	UN101	Environment heater driver PCB	J4403				J1826	015	UN102	Main station power supply connect PCB
005	UN101	Environment heater driver PCB	J4404				J1054	016	UN198	DC controller PCB 1-1
006	UN101	Environment heater driver PCB	J4405	J7779	J5653		J5653	-	SW3	Drum heater interlock switch
007	UN101	Environment heater driver PCB	J4406	J7899	J7849	J7855	J7869	018	UN250	Drum surface temperature sensor power supply PCB
008	UN101	Environment heater driver PCB	J4407	J7902	J7188		J9135	019	UN510	Shutdown PCB

16.4.8.13 Main Station and Others

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000





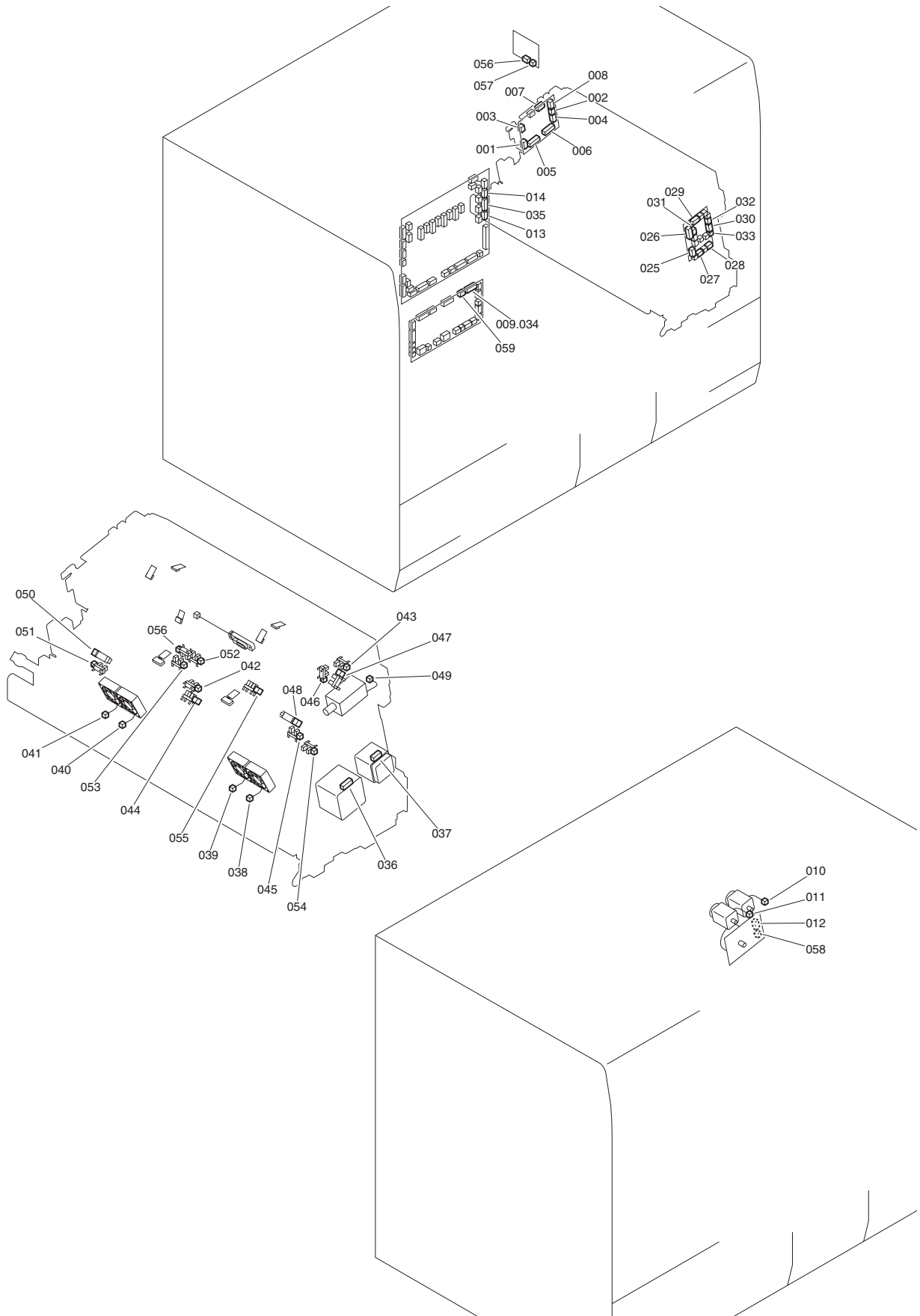
View A

F-16-125

No.	Electric symbol	Electric parts name	J No.	Relay connector			J No.	No.	Electric symbol	Electric parts name	
001	UN102	Main station power supply connect PCB	J1807	J7880			J6	009	UN250	Drum surface temperature sensor power supply PCB	
002	UN102	Main station power supply connect PCB	J1810				J1001	010	UN124	DC controller PCB 1-2	
003	UN102	Main station power supply connect PCB	J1813	J7898	J7896	J7756	J5141	011	PS175	Main station right front cover open/close sensor	
003	UN102	Main station power supply connect PCB	J1813	J7898	J7896	J7755	J5142	012	PS176	Main station left front cover open/close sensor	
004	UN102	Main station power supply connect PCB	J1814	J7770	J7763	J7759	J5637	013	SW111	Main station right front cover switch	
004	UN102	Main station power supply connect PCB	J1814	J7770	J7763	J7760	J5643	014	SW112	Main station left front cover switch	
005	UN102	Main station power supply connect PCB	J1820				J1051	015	UN198	DC controller PCB 1-1	
005	UN102	Main station power supply connect PCB	J1820				J1100	016	UN240	DC controller PCB 1-3	
006	UN102	Main station power supply connect PCB	J1821				J1086	017	UN124	DC controller PCB 1-2	
007	UN102	Main station power supply connect PCB	J1824	J5253	J7358 Y		J5253P	018	M195	Hopper motor (Y)	
007	UN102	Main station power supply connect PCB	J1824	J5253	J7358 K		J5256P	019	M196	Hopper motor (Bk)	
007	UN102	Main station power supply connect PCB	J1824	J5253	J7358 C		J5255P	020	M197	Hopper motor (C)	
007	UN102	Main station power supply connect PCB	J1824	J5253	J7358 M		J5254P	021	M198	Hopper motor (M)	
008	UN102	Main station power supply connect PCB	J1825	J7080			J5288P	022	M179	Buffer motor	
008	UN102	Main station power supply connect PCB	J1825	J7080			J5286P	023	M180	Drum waste toner feed motor	
024	UN103	DC controller power supply PCB	J1P	J1			J1820	028	UN102	Main station power supply connect PCB	
025	UN103	DC controller power supply PCB	J2				J1052	029	UN198	DC controller PCB 1-1	
026	UN103	DC controller power supply PCB	J3				J1085	030	UN124	DC controller PCB 1-2	
027	UN103	DC controller power supply PCB	J4				J1101	031	UN240	DC controller PCB 1-3	
032	UN124	DC controller PCB 1-2	J1006	J7273	J7008		J1360Y	042	UN161	Process unit driver PCB (Y)	
033	UN124	DC controller PCB 1-2	J1007	J7272	J7007		J1361Y	043	UN161	Process unit driver PCB (Y)	
034	UN124	DC controller PCB 1-2	J1008	J7275	J7010		J1360M	044	UN162	Process unit driver PCB (M)	
035	UN124	DC controller PCB 1-2	J1009	J7274	J7009		J1361M	045	UN162	Process unit driver PCB (M)	
036	UN124	DC controller PCB 1-2	J1010	J7277	J7012		J1360C	046	UN163	Process unit driver PCB (C)	
037	UN124	DC controller PCB 1-2	J1011	J7276	J7011		J1361C	047	UN163	Process unit driver PCB (C)	
038	UN124	DC controller PCB 1-2	J1012	J7279	J7014		J1360K	048	UN164	Process unit driver PCB (Bk)	
039	UN124	DC controller PCB 1-2	J1013	J7278	J7013		J1361K	049	UN164	Process unit driver PCB (Bk)	
040	UN124	DC controller PCB 1-2	J1091				J1091	050	UN198	DC controller PCB 1-1	
041	UN124	DC controller PCB 1-2	J1095	J7764	J9010	J7788	J7750	J4601	051	UN141	Environment sensor PCB 1
041	UN124	DC controller PCB 1-2	J1095	J7764	J9010	J7788	J7751	J4602	052	UN142	Environment sensor PCB 2
053	UN198	DC controller PCB 1-1	J1023				J5501	-	FM131	Registration feed driver PCB left cooling fan	
053	UN198	DC controller PCB 1-1	J1023				J5014	-	PS148	Registration roller release HP sensor 2	
053	UN198	DC controller PCB 1-1	J1023				J5152	-	PS159	Side registration sensor	
054	UN198	DC controller PCB 1-1	J1054				J4404	060	UN101	Environment heater driver PCB	
055	UN198	DC controller PCB 1-1	J1055				J4500	061	UN143	ARCNET connector PCB	
056	UN198	DC controller PCB 1-1	J1090				J1103	062	UN240	DC controller PCB 1-3	

16.4.8.14 Primary Fixing Unit

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

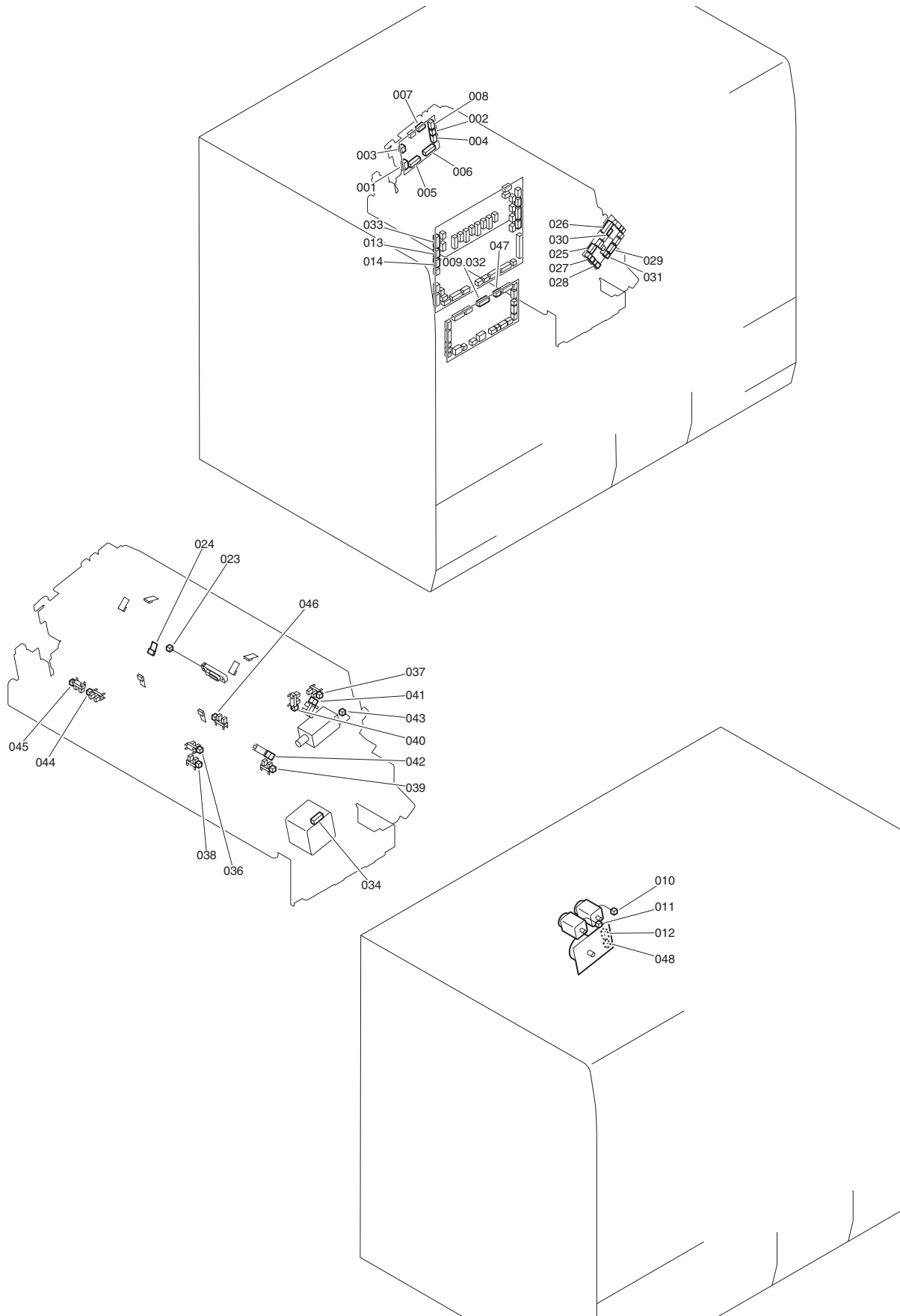


F-16-126

No.	Electric symbol	Electric parts name	J No.	Relay connector			J No.	No.	Electric symbol	Electric parts name
001	UN304	Primary fixing external driver PCB	J4150P				J4223	009	UN301	Sub station power connecting PCB
002	UN304	Primary fixing external driver PCB	J4163P				J7720	010	M301	Primary fixing outside heating roller pressure motor
003	UN304	Primary fixing external driver PCB	J4164P				J7721	011	M302	Primary fixing web pressure motor
004	UN304	Primary fixing external driver PCB	J4165P				J5310	012	M300	Primary fixing driving motor
005	UN304	Primary fixing external driver PCB	J4181P				J4081	013	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB
006	UN304	Primary fixing external driver PCB	J4182P				J4082	014	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB
007	UN304	Primary fixing external driver PCB	J4191P	J7027			-	-	THM30 2M	Primary fixing external heat upper roller main thermistor
007	UN304	Primary fixing external driver PCB	J4191P	J7027			-	-	THM30 2S	Primary fixing external heat upper roller sub thermistor
007	UN304	Primary fixing external driver PCB	J4191P	J7027			-	-	THM30 3M	Primary fixing external heat lower roller main thermistor
007	UN304	Primary fixing external driver PCB	J4191P	J7027			-	-	THM30 3S	Primary fixing external heat lower roller sub thermistor
008	UN304	Primary fixing external driver PCB	J4192P	J7026			J7603	-	-	Short connector (to detect locations)
008	UN304	Primary fixing external driver PCB	J4192P	J7026			J7625	-	-	Short connector (to detect locations)
008	UN304	Primary fixing external driver PCB	J4192P	J7026	J7613		J5402	-	THM30 0M	Primary fixing pressure belt main thermistor
008	UN304	Primary fixing external driver PCB	J4192P	J7026	J7613		J5402	-	THM30 0S	Primary fixing pressure belt sub thermistor
008	UN304	Primary fixing external driver PCB	J4192P	J7026			J5400	-	THM30 1	Primary fixing roller main thermistor
008	UN304	Primary fixing external driver PCB	J4192P	J7026			J5401	-	THM30 4	Primary fixing roller sub thermistor
025	UN316	Primary fixing inner driver PCB	J4350P	J7652	J7017	J7606	J4223	034	UN301	Sub station power connecting PCB
026	UN316	Primary fixing inner driver PCB	J4360P	J7017	J7527		J4080	035	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB
027	UN316	Primary fixing inner driver PCB	J4370P				J7723	036	M303	Primary fixing pressure belt pressure motor
028	UN316	Primary fixing inner driver PCB	J4371P				J7722	037	M304	Primary fixing pressure belt full displacement control motor
029	UN316	Primary fixing inner driver PCB	J4372				J5524	038	FM331	Primary fixing separating cooling fan 1
029	UN316	Primary fixing inner driver PCB	J4372				J5525	039	FM332	Primary fixing separating cooling fan 2
029	UN316	Primary fixing inner driver PCB	J4372				J5526	040	FM333	Primary fixing separating cooling fan 3
029	UN316	Primary fixing inner driver PCB	J4372				J5527	041	FM334	Primary fixing separating cooling fan 4
030	UN316	Primary fixing inner driver PCB	J4374P	J7764			J5107	042	PS305	Primary fixing inner delivery sensor1
030	UN316	Primary fixing inner driver PCB	J4374P				J5105	043	PS306	Primary fixing external heat roller HP sensor
030	UN316	Primary fixing inner driver PCB	J4374P	J7764			J5108	044	PS307	Primary fixing inner delivery sensor2
030	UN316	Primary fixing inner driver PCB	J4374P				J5097	045	PS309	Primary fixing web HP sensor
030	UN316	Primary fixing inner driver PCB	J4374P				J5099	046	PS310	Primary fixing external heat roller overrun sensor
030	UN316	Primary fixing inner driver PCB	J4374P				J5098	047	PS311	Primary fixing web absent alert sensor
030	UN316	Primary fixing inner driver PCB	J4374P				J5066	048	PS382	Primary fixing refresh roller HP sensor
030	UN316	Primary fixing inner driver PCB	J4374P				J5574	049	SL302	Primary fixing web solenoid
031	UN316	Primary fixing inner driver PCB	J4380P				J5103	050	PS300	Primary fixing pressure belt HP sensor
031	UN316	Primary fixing inner driver PCB	J4380P				J5104	051	PS303	Primary fixing pressure belt pressure sensor
032	UN316	Primary fixing inner driver PCB	J4381P				J5101	052	PS301	Primary fixing pressure belt position sensor (front)
032	UN316	Primary fixing inner driver PCB	J4381P				J5102	053	PS302	Primary fixing pressure belt position sensor (rear)
032	UN316	Primary fixing inner driver PCB	J4381P	J7639			J5100	054	PS308	Primary fixing pressure belt displacement HP sensor
033	UN316	Primary fixing inner driver PCB	J4382P	J7638			J5106	055	PS304	Primary fixing inlet sensor
033	UN316	Primary fixing inner driver PCB	J4383P				J5106	056	PS352	Primary fixing pressure belt retry sensor
056	UN320	Primary fixing motor inverter PCB	J4861				J5310P	058	M300	Primary fixing driving motor
057	UN320	Primary fixing motor inverter PCB	J4860				J4225	059	UN301	Sub station power connecting PCB

16.4.8.15 Secondary Fixing Unit

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

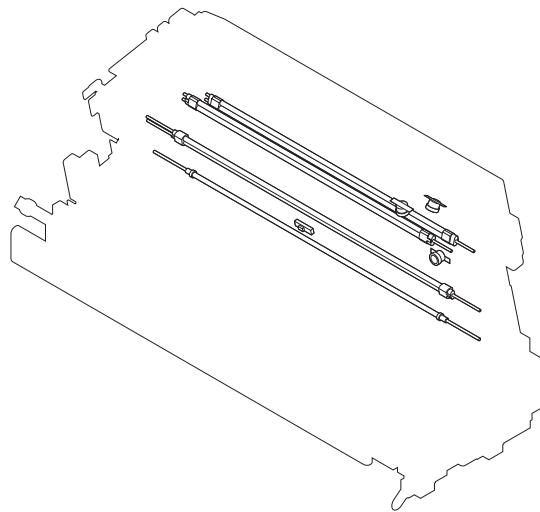
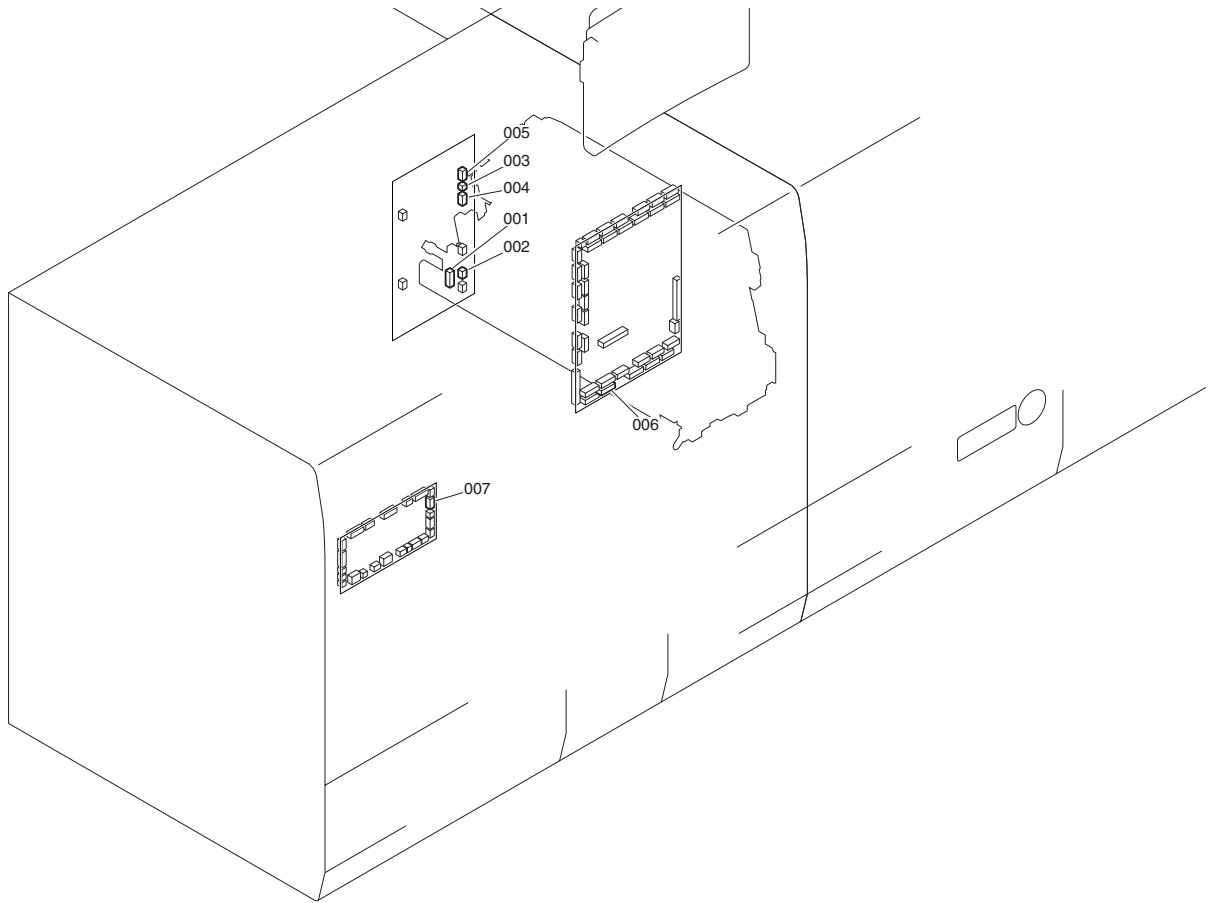


F-16-127

No.	Electric symbol	Electric parts name	J No.	Relay connector			J No.	No.	Electric symbol	Electric parts name
001	UN305	Secondary fixing external driver PCB	J4150S				J4224	009	UN301	Sub station power connecting PCB
002	UN305	Secondary fixing external driver PCB	J4163S				J7724	010	M306	Secondary fixing outside heating roller pressure motor
003	UN305	Secondary fixing external driver PCB	J4164S				J7725	011	M307	Secondary fixing web pressure motor
004	UN305	Secondary fixing external driver PCB	J4165S				J5315	012	M305	Secondary fixing driving motor
005	UN305	Secondary fixing external driver PCB	J4181S				J4086	013	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB
006	UN305	Secondary fixing external driver PCB	J4182S				J4087	014	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB
007	UN305	Secondary fixing external driver PCB	J4191S	J7029			-	-	THM307M	Secondary fixing external heat upper roller main thermistor
007	UN305	Secondary fixing external driver PCB	J4191S	J7029			-	-	THM307S	Secondary fixing external heat upper roller sub thermistor
007	UN305	Secondary fixing external driver PCB	J4191S	J7029			-	-	THM308M	Secondary fixing external heat lower roller main thermistor
007	UN305	Secondary fixing external driver PCB	J4191S	J7029			-	-	THM308S	Secondary fixing external heat lower roller sub thermistor
008	UN305	Secondary fixing external driver PCB	J4192S	J7028			J7608	-	-	Short connector (to detect locations)
008	UN305	Secondary fixing external driver PCB	J4192S	J7028			J7634	-	-	Short connector (to detect locations)
008	UN305	Secondary fixing external driver PCB	J4192S	J7028	J7614		J5407	021	THM305M	Secondary fixing pressure roller main thermistor
008	UN305	Secondary fixing external driver PCB	J4192S	J7028	J7614		J5407	-	THM305S	Secondary fixing pressure roller sub thermistor
008	UN305	Secondary fixing external driver PCB	J4192S	J7028			J5405	-	THM306	Secondary fixing roller main thermistor
008	UN305	Secondary fixing external driver PCB	J4192S	J7028			J5406	024	THM309	Secondary fixing roller sub thermistor
025	UN317	Secondary fixing inner driver PCB	J4350S	J7655	J7018	J7067	J4224	032	UN301	Sub station power connecting PCB
026	UN317	Secondary fixing inner driver PCB	J4360S	J7018	J7528		J4085	033	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB
027	UN317	Secondary fixing inner driver PCB	J4370S				J7726	034	M308	Secondary fixing pressure roller pressure motor
028	UN317	Secondary fixing inner driver PCB	J4371S				-	-	-	-
029	UN317	Secondary fixing inner driver PCB	J4374S	J7765			J5116	036	PS313	Secondary fixing inner delivery sensor1
029	UN317	Secondary fixing inner driver PCB	J4374S				J5114	037	PS314	Secondary fixing external heat roller HP sensor
029	UN317	Secondary fixing inner driver PCB	J4374S	J7765			J5117	038	PS317	Secondary fixing inner delivery sensor2
029	UN317	Secondary fixing inner driver PCB	J4374S				J5109	039	PS318	Secondary fixing web HP sensor
029	UN317	Secondary fixing inner driver PCB	J4374S				J5111	040	PS319	Secondary fixing external heat roller overrun sensor
029	UN317	Secondary fixing inner driver PCB	J4374S				J5110	041	PS320	Secondary fixing web absent alert sensor
029	UN317	Secondary fixing inner driver PCB	J4374S				J5073	042	PS383	Secondary fixing refresh roller HP sensor
029	UN317	Secondary fixing inner driver PCB	J4374S				J5575	043	SL303	Secondary fixing web solenoid
030	UN317	Secondary fixing inner driver PCB	J4380S				J5112	044	PS315	Secondary fixing pressure roller HP sensor
030	UN317	Secondary fixing inner driver PCB	J4380S				J5113	045	PS316	Secondary fixing pressure roller pressure sensor
031	UN317	Secondary fixing inner driver PCB	J4382S	J7619			J5115	046	PS312	Secondary fixing inlet sensor
047	UN301	Sub station power connecting PCB	J4225	J7622			J5315S	048	M305	Secondary fixing driving motor

16.4.8.16 Primary Fixing Heater Unit

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

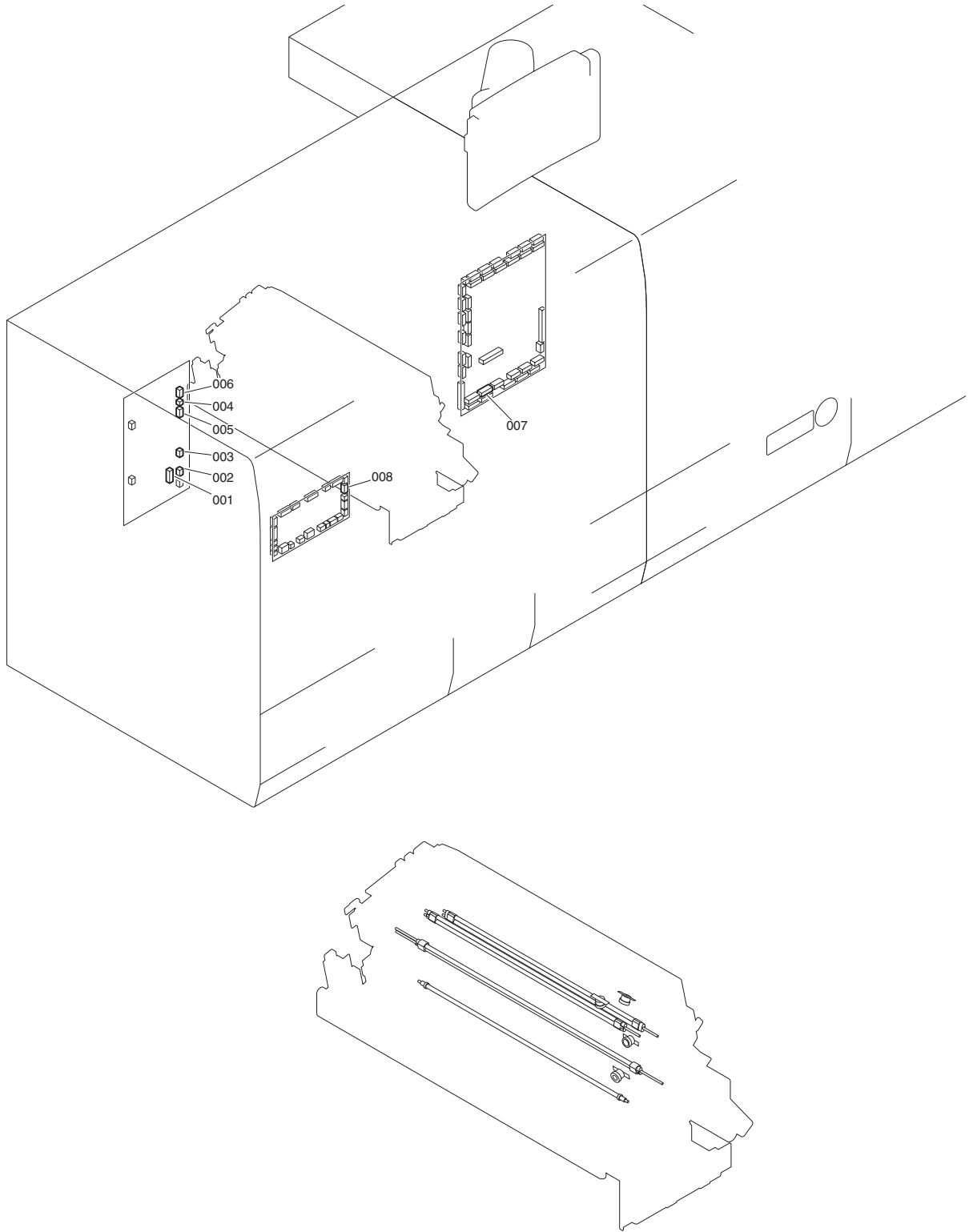


F-16-128

No.	Electric symbol	Electric parts name	J No.	Relay connector			J No.	No.	Electric symbol	Electric parts name			
001	UN306	Primary fixing heater driver PCB	J4400P	J7609			J1003	006	UN124	DC controller PCB 1-2			
002	UN306	Primary fixing heater driver PCB	J4401P				J4228	007	UN301	Sub station power connecting PCB			
003	UN306	Primary fixing heater driver PCB	J4405P	J7615	J7026	J7601	J7629	-	H305	Primary fixing pressure belt heater	J7628	MT10 12	
							-	-	TP301	Primary fixing pressure belt thermoswitch			
							J7626	-	-	H306M	Primary fixing roller main heater	J7627	MT10 06
								-	-	H306S	Primary fixing roller sub heater		
-	-	TP300	Primary fixing roller thermoswitch										
003	UN306	Primary fixing heater driver PCB	J4405P	J7615	J7026	J7601/ J7642	J7643	-	H305	Primary fixing pressure belt heater	J7644	MT10 71	
					J7026	J7601/ J7642	-	-	TP308	Primary fixing pressure belt thermoswitch			
	UN306	Primary fixing heater driver PCB		J7616	J7027		-	-	H307M	H307M: Primary fixing outside heating lower main heater	MT10 20		
						-	-	H307S	H307S: Primary fixing outside heating lower sub heater				
004			J4406P			-	-	TP303	Primary fixing external heat lower roller thermoswitch				
005			J4407P			-	-	H308M	H308M: Primary fixing outside heating upper roller main heater	MT10 28			
						-	-	H308S	H308S: Primary fixing outside heating upper roller sub heater				
						-	-	TP302	Primary fixing external heat upper roller thermoswitch				

16.4.8.17 Secondary Fixing Heater Unit

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

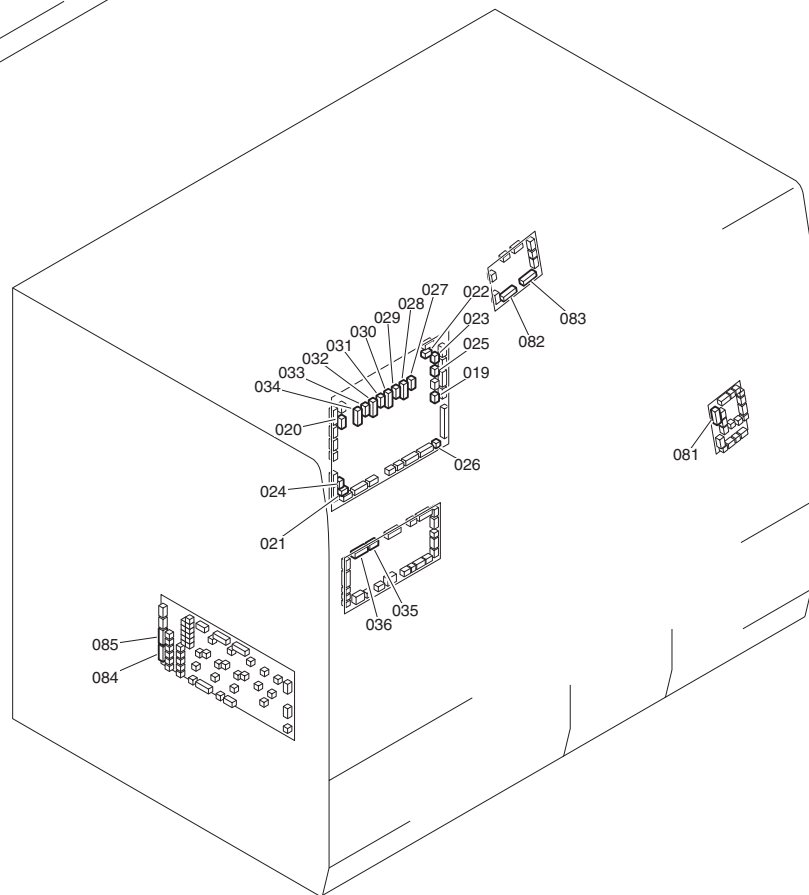
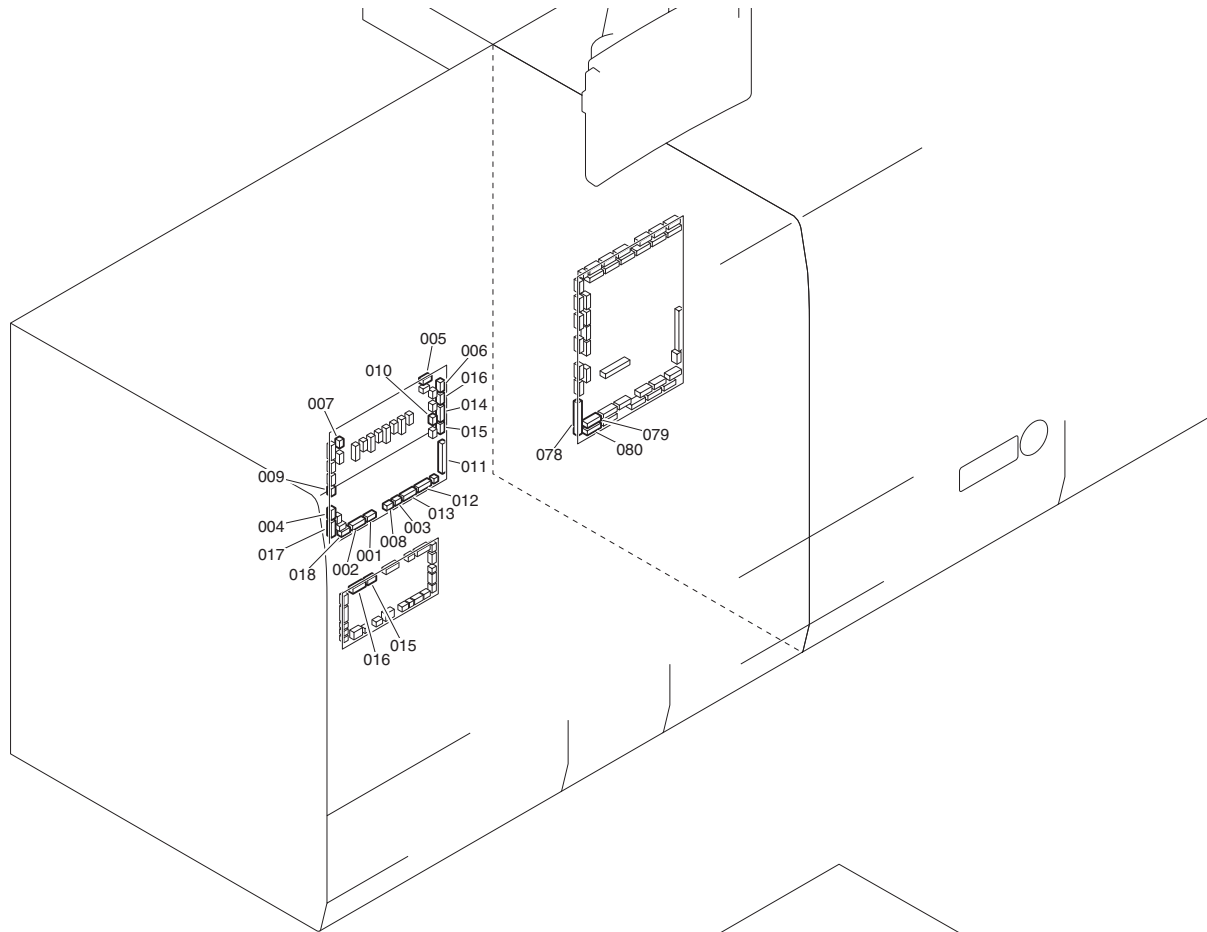


F-16-129

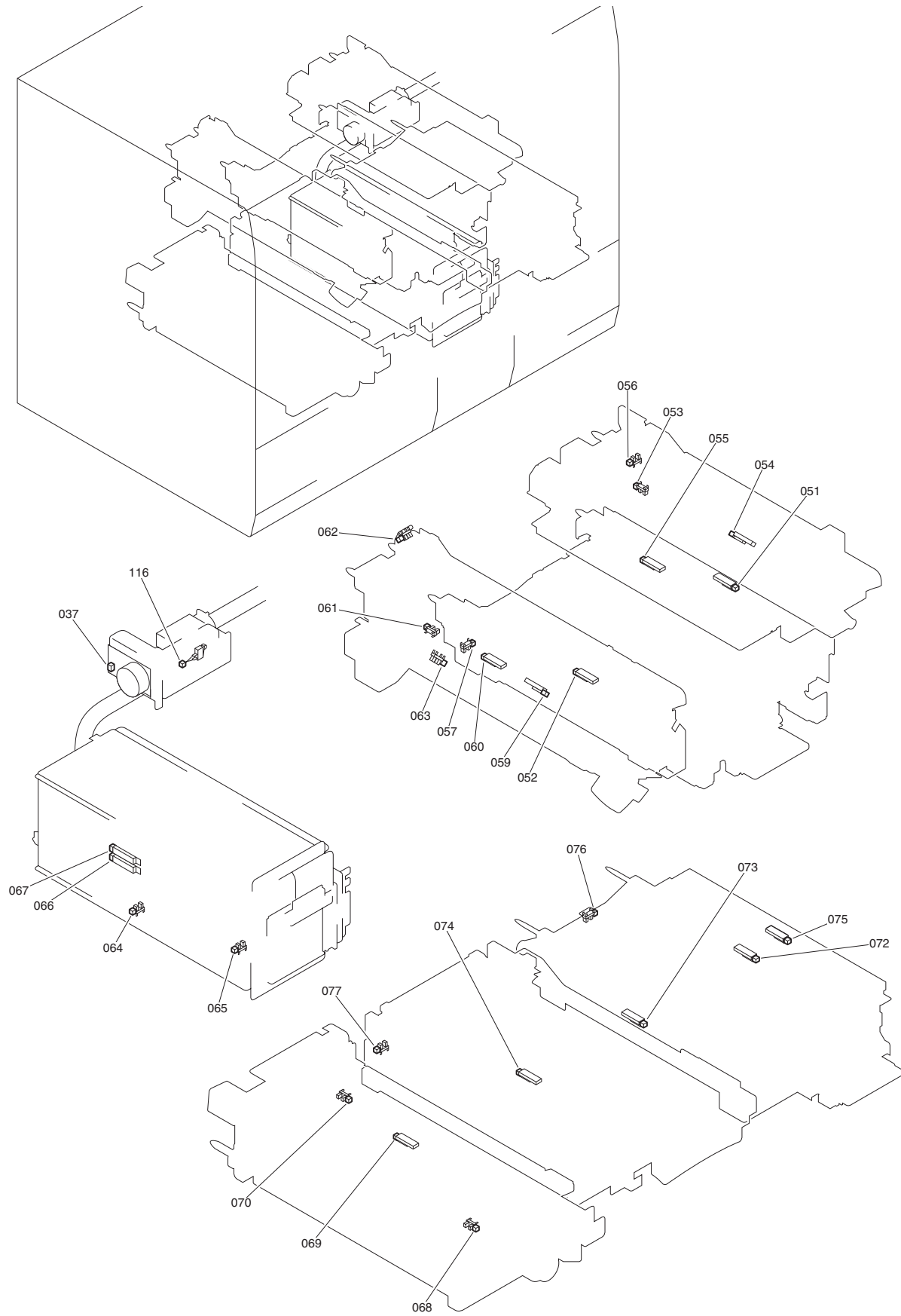
No.	Electric symbol	Electric parts name	J No.	Relay connector			J No.	No.	Electric symbol	Electric parts name		
001	UN307	Secondary fixing heater driver PCB	J4400S	J7610			J1004	007	UN124	DC controller PCB 1-2		
002	UN307	Secondary fixing heater driver PCB	J4401S				J4228	008	UN301	Sub station power connecting PCB		
003	UN307	Secondary fixing heater driver PCB	J4404S	J7617	J7028	J7604/ J7645	J7646	-	H303	Secondary fixing pressure roller heater	J7647	MT10 73
							-	-	TP309	Secondary fixing pressure roller thermoswitch		
							-	-	H300	Secondary fixing roller main heater	J7648	MT10 74
							-	-	TP304	Secondary fixing roller thermoswitch		
003 004	UN307	Secondary fixing heater driver PCB	J4404S J4405S	J7617	J7028	J7604	J7633	-	H303	Secondary fixing pressure roller heater	J7632	MT10 44
							-	-	TP305	Secondary fixing pressure roller thermoswitch		
							J7630	-	H300M	Secondary fixing roller main heater	J7631	MT10 38
							-	-	H300S	Secondary fixing roller sub heater		
-	-	TP304	Secondary fixing roller thermoswitch									
005 006	UN307	Secondary fixing heater driver PCB	J4406S J4407S	J7618	J7029		-	-	H301M	H301M: Secondary fixing outside heating lower roller main heater	MT10 50	
							-	-	H301S	H301S: Secondary fixing outside heating lower roller sub heater		
							-	-	TP307	Secondary fixing external heat lower roller thermoswitch		
							-	-	H302M	H302M: Secondary fixing outside heating roller main heater	MT10 58	
							-	-	H302S	H302S: Secondary fixing outside heating roller sub heater		
							-	-	TP306	Secondary fixing external heat upper roller thermoswitch		

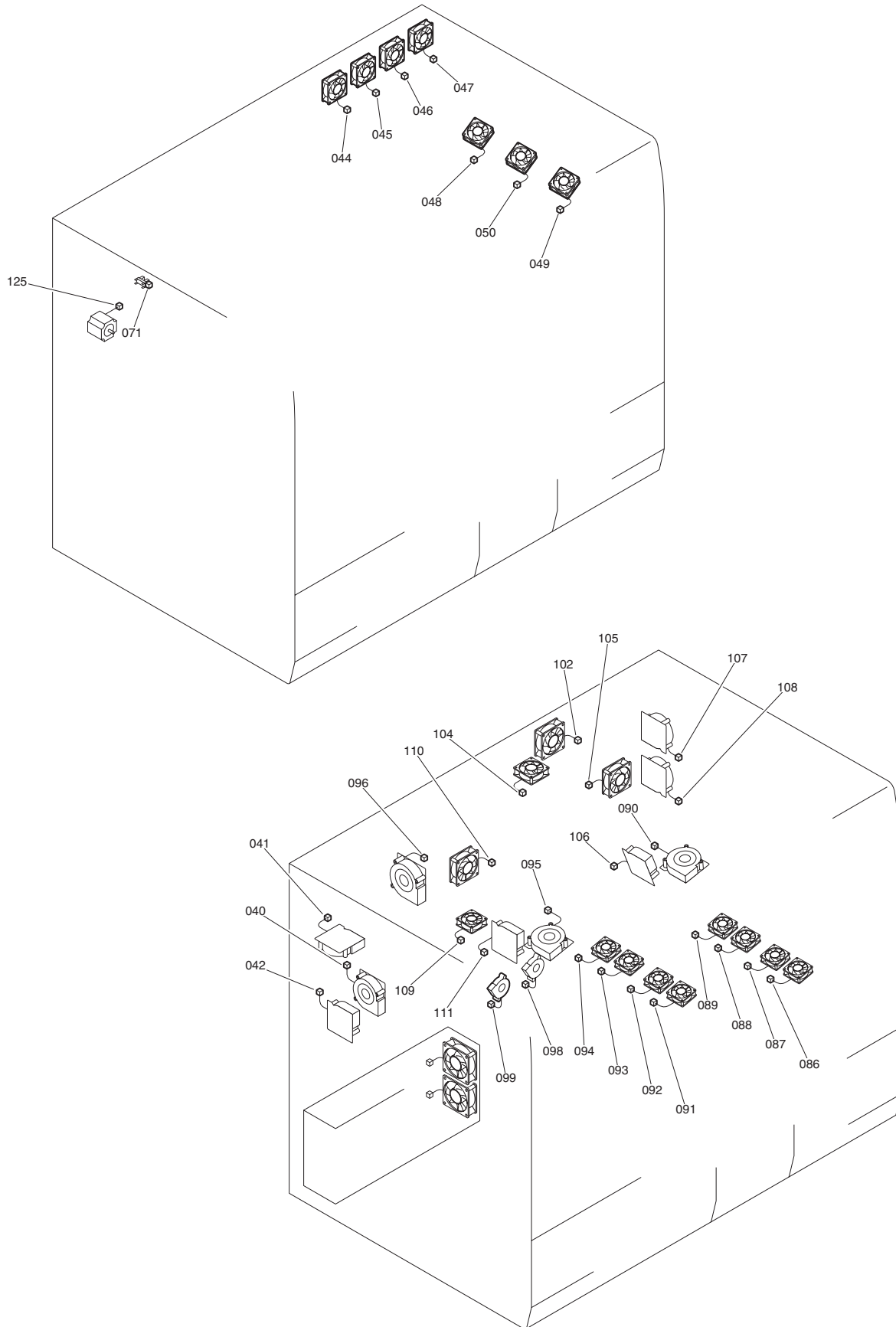
16.4.8.18 Fixing/Duplexing Feed Unit

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

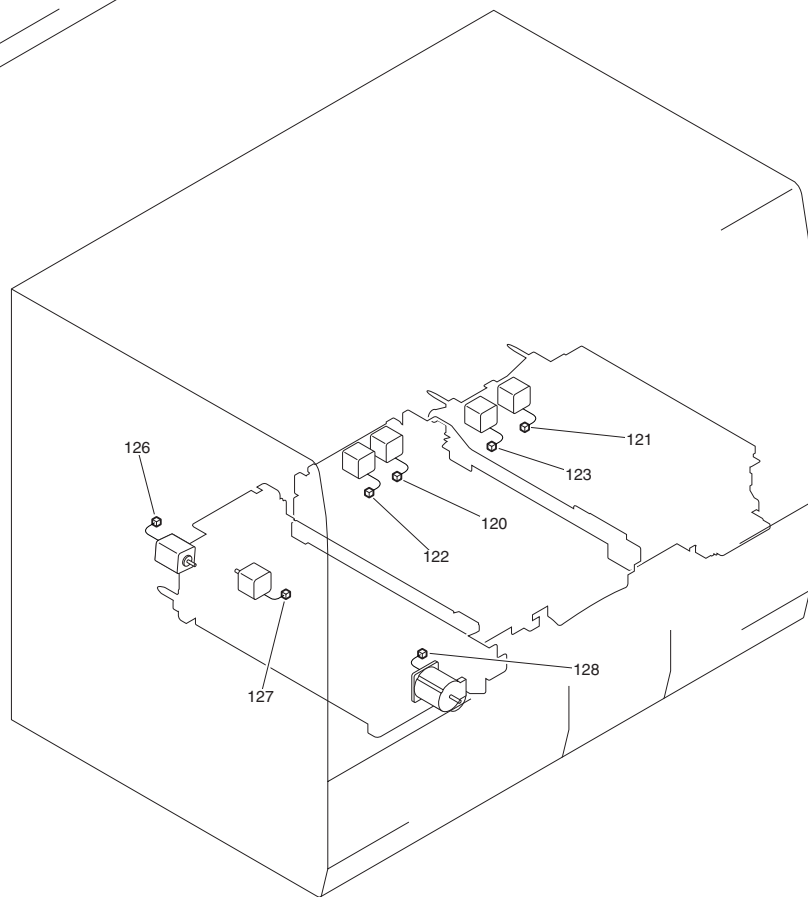
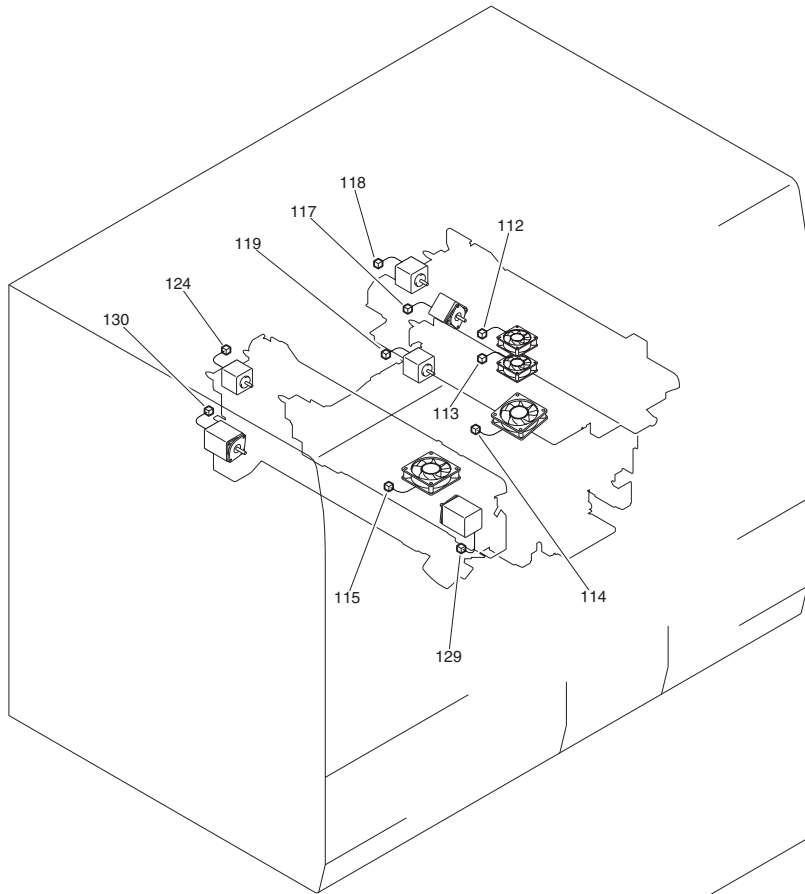


F-16-130





F-16-132



F-16-133

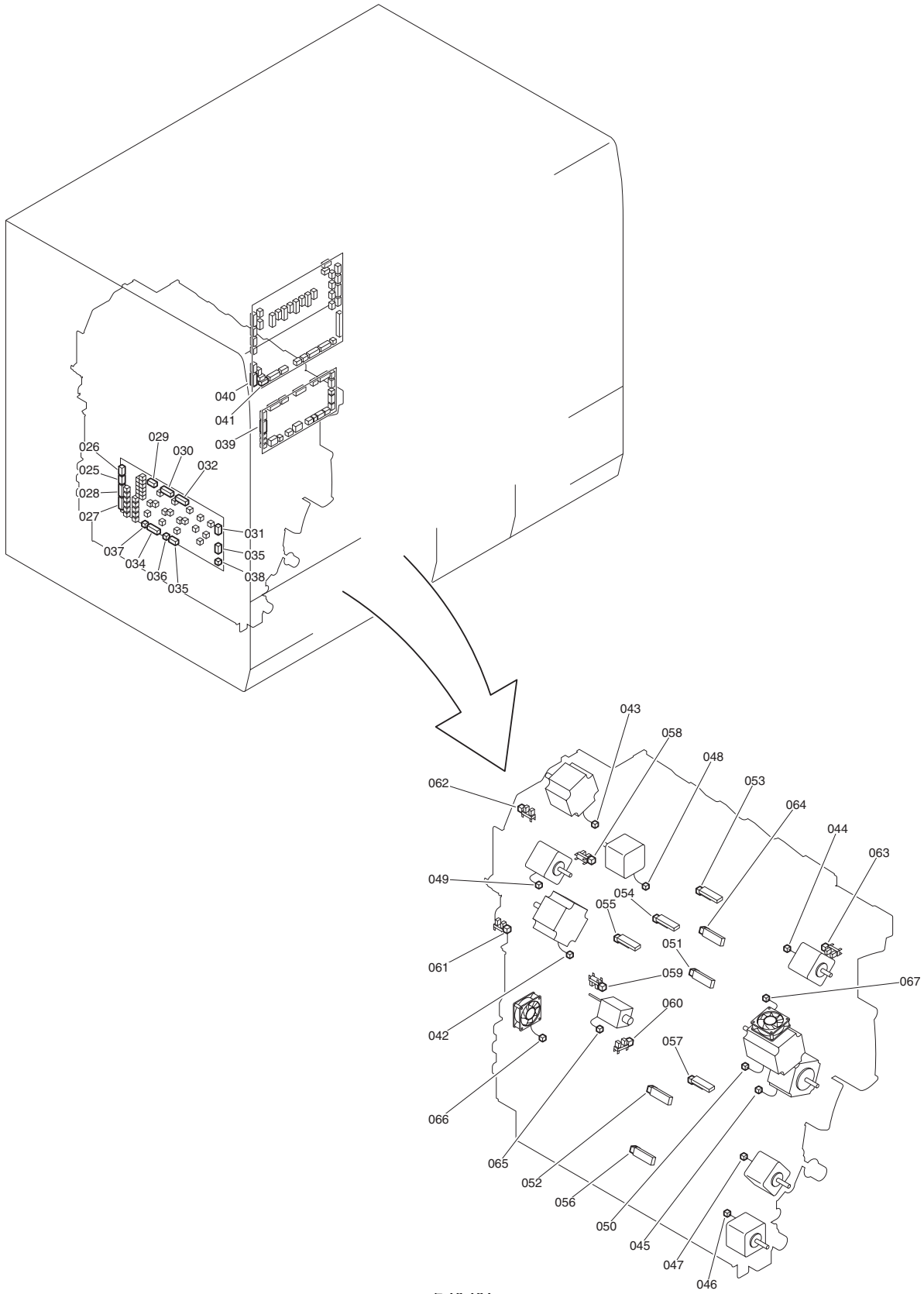
T-16-81

No.	Electric symbol	Electric parts name	J No.	Relay connector			J No.	No.	Electric symbol	Electric parts name	
001	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB	J4000				J4220	035	UN301	Sub station power connecting PCB	
002	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB	J4001				J4221	036	UN301	Sub station power connecting PCB	
003	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB	J4016				J5319	037	M314	Waste toner feed motor	
004	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB	J4021	J7486			J5465	038	FM316	Delivery assembly discharge fan 1	
004	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB	J4021	J7486			J5466	039	FM317	Delivery assembly discharge fan 2	
004	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB	J4021	J7542			J5453	040	FM318	Delivery lower cooling fan	
004	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB	J4021	J7542			J5452	041	FM319	Delivery upper cooling fan	
004	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB	J4021	J7542			J5454	042	FM320	Duplexing decurler fan	
004	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB	J4021	J7486			J5522	043	FM335	Fixing/feed cooling fan	
005	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB	J4023	J7487			J5483	044	FM321	Station to station interval cooling fan 1	
005	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB	J4023	J7487			J5484	045	FM322	Station to station interval cooling fan 2	
005	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB	J4023	J7487			J5485	046	FM323	Station to station interval cooling fan 3	
005	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB	J4023	J7487			J5486	047	FM324	Station to station interval cooling fan 4	
005	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB	J4023	J7488			J5488	048	FM326	Station to station interval cooling fan 6	
005	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB	J4023	J7488			J5489	049	FM327	Station to station interval cooling fan 7	
005	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB	J4023	J7488			J5490	050	FM328	Station to station interval cooling fan 8	
006	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB	J4030X	J4030	J7491	J7473	J5076	051	PS322	Bypass sensor 1	
006	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB	J4030X	J4030	J7491	J7473	J5077	052	PS323	Bypass sensor 2	
006	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB	J4030X	J4030	J7491	J7472	J5080	053	PS324	Flapper HP sensor	
006	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB	J4030X	J4030	J7491	J7472	J7739	J5074	054	PS326	Tandem sensor 1
006	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB	J4030X	J4030	J7491	J7472	J7739	J5075	055	PS327	Tandem sensor 2
006	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB	J4030X	J4030	J7491	J7472	J5196	056	PS362	Tandem guide open/close sensor	
006	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB	J4030X	J4030	J7491	J7473	J7411	J5197	057	PS363	Bypass guide open/close sensor
006	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB	J4030X	J4030	J7491	J7473	J5062	058	PS371	Bypass sensor 3	
007	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB	J4031X	J4030	J7481	J7485	J5078	059	PS321	Merger path lower sensor	
007	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB	J4031X	J4030	J7489	J7474	J7740	J5079	060	PS325	Merger path upper sensor
007	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB	J4031X	J4030	J7481	J7485	J5195	061	PS353	Bypass decurler disengage/engage motor HP sensor	
007	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB	J4031X	J4030	J7489	J7474	J5198	062	PS364	Merger upper guide open/close sensor	
007	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB	J4031X	J4030	J7481	J7485	J5199	063	PS365	Merger lower guide open/close sensor	
008	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB	J4032	J7476	J7753		J5127	064	PS328	Waste toner container sensor	
008	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB	J4032	J7476			J5118	065	PS329	Waste toner door switch sensor	
008	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB	J4032	J7469	J7497		J5555	066	TS300	Waste toner full sensor 2	
008	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB	J4032	J7469	J7497		J5556	067	TS301	Waste toner full sensor 1	
009	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB	J4033	J7458	J7459		J5085	068	PS343	Duplexing decurler HP sensor	
009	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB	J4033	J7458	J7459		J5081	069	PS344	Duplexing path inlet sensor	
009	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB	J4033	J7458	J7482		J5068	070	PS366	Duplexing inlet guide open/close sensor	
009	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB	J4033	J7451			J5817	071	PS381	Reverse external delivery lever sensor	
010	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB	J4035X	J4035	J7496	J7464	J5082	072	PS345	Duplexing standby sensor 4	
010	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB	J4035X	J4035	J7465	J7464	J5083	073	PS346	Duplexing standby sensor 5	
010	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB	J4035X	J4035	J7495	J7463	J5084	074	PS347	Duplexing standby sensor 6	
010	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB	J4035X	J4035	J7496	J7464	J5072	075	PS350	Duplexing path sub station outlet sensor	
010	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB	J4035X	J4035	J7496	J7464	J5069	076	PS367	Duplexing Right guide open/close sensor	
010	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB	J4035X	J4035	J7495	J7463	J5071	077	PS368	Duplexing Left guide open/close sensor	
011	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB	J4070				J1072	078	UN124	DC controller PCB 1-2	
012	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB	J4071	J7479			J1070	079	UN124	DC controller PCB 1-2	
013	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB	J4072	J7480			J1071	080	UN124	DC controller PCB 1-2	
014	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB	J4080	J7527	J7017		J4360P	081	UN316	Primary fixing inner driver PCB	
015	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB	J4081				J4181P	082	UN304	Primary fixing external driver PCB	
016	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB	J4082				J4182P	083	UN304	Primary fixing external driver PCB	
017	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB	J4090	J7031			J4110	084	UN310	Reverse/external delivery driver PCB	
018	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB	J4091	J7030			J4111	085	UN310	Reverse/external delivery driver PCB	
019	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB	J4100	J7650			J5467	086	FM302	Primary fixing belt cooling fan 1	
019	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB	J4100	J7656			J5468	087	FM303	Primary fixing belt cooling fan 2	
019	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB	J4100		J7651		J5469	088	FM304	Primary fixing belt cooling fan 3	
019	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB	J4100				J5470	089	FM305	Primary fixing belt cooling fan 4	
019	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB	J4100				J5519	090	FM338	Primary fixing belt cooling fan 5	
020	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB	J4101	J7662	J7621	J7623	J5471	091	FM306	Secondary fixing pressure roller cooling fan 1	
020	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB	J4101	J7662	J7621	J7623	J5472	092	FM307	Secondary fixing pressure roller cooling fan 2	
020	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB	J4101	J7662	J7621	J7623	J5473	093	FM308	Secondary fixing pressure roller cooling fan 3	
020	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB	J4101	J7662	J7621	J7623	J5474	094	FM309	Secondary fixing pressure roller cooling fan 4	
020	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB	J4101				J7659	095	FM337	Secondary fixing pressure roller cooling fan 5	

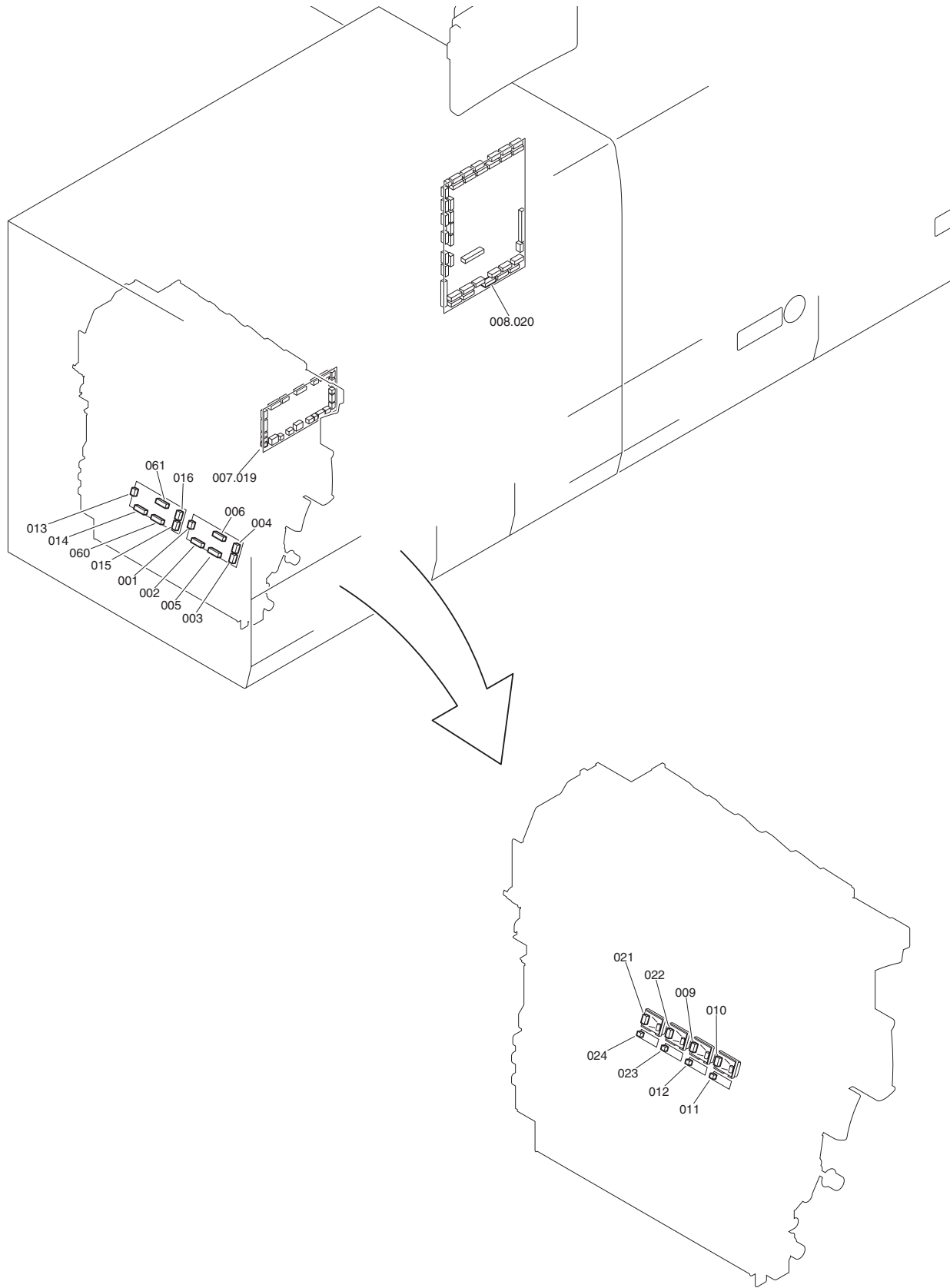
No.	Electric symbol	Electric parts name	J No.	Relay connector			J No.	No.	Electric symbol	Electric parts name	
020	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB	J4101	J7167	J7742		J5809	096	FM362	Merger guide rear fan	
020	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB	J4101	J7168			J7741	-	-	Short connector	
021	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB	J4102				J5810	098	FM351	Fixing duplexing driver PCB left cooling fan	
021	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB	J4102				J5811	099	FM352	Fixing duplexing driver PCB right cooling fan	
022	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB	J4103				J5491	100	FM329	Station to station interval cooling fan 9	
022	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB	J4103				J5492	101	FM330	Station to station interval cooling fan 10	
022	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB	J4103				J5800	102	FM353	Reader cooling fan	
022	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB	J4103				J9011	-	-	Short connector	
023	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB	J4104				J5475	104	FM310	Primary sub station power unit cooling fan	
023	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB	J4104	J7184			J5455	105	FM312	Primary fixing heat exhaust fan	
023	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB	J4104				J5450	106	FM313	Primary fixing inside delivery cooling fan	
023	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB	J4104	J7184			J5801	107	FM354	Main station upper delivery fan	
023	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB	J4104	J7184	J7183		J5802	108	FM355	Main station lower delivery fan	
024	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB	J4105				J5499	109	FM311	Secondary sub station power unit cooling fan	
024	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB	J4105				J5456	110	FM314	Secondary fixing heat exhaust fan	
024	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB	J4105				J5451	111	FM315	Secondary fixing inside delivery cooling fan	
025	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB	J4106	J7460	J7498	J7450	J5803	112	FM357	Tandem guide upper cooling fan	
025	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB	J4106	J7460	J7498		J5804	113	FM358	Tandem guide lower cooling fan	
025	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB	J4106	J7460	J7499	J7449	J5805	114	FM359	Bypass guide front cooling fan	
025	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB	J4106	J7460	J7499	J7449	J5806	115	FM360	Bypass guide rear cooling fan	
026	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB	J4110	J7471			J5630	116	SW300	Waste toner delivery lock detection switch	
027 028 029 030	UN311 UN311 UN311 UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB Duplexing feed driver PCB Duplexing feed driver PCB Duplexing feed driver PCB	J4250 J4251 J4252 J4253	J7525	J7492	J7466		J7716	117	M309	Fixing flapper motor
					J7492	J7466		J7717	118	M310	Tandem feed motor
					J7470	J7490		J7718	119	M311	Bypass feed motor
					J7494	J7457		J7714	120	M327	Duplexing feed motor 6
					J7493	J7456	J5297	J7709	121	M328	Duplexing feed motor 4
					J7494	J7457		J7715	122	M329	Duplexing feed motor 7
031 032 033 034	UN311 UN311 UN311 UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB Duplexing feed driver PCB Duplexing feed driver PCB Duplexing feed driver PCB	J4254 J4255 J4256 J4257	J7526	J7467	J7468		J7719	124	M312	Merger path feed motor
					J7529	J5303		J7790	125	M318	Delivery motor
					J7453	J5299		J7711	126	M325	Duplexing decurler advancement adjusting motor
					J7453	J7455	J5294	J7712	127	M331	Duplexing feed motor 8
					J7453	J7455	J5332	J7735	128	M332	Duplexing decurler driving motor
					J7454	J5333		J7736	129	M333	Bypass decurler disengage/engage motor
					J7451	J7468		J7737	130	M334	Bypass decurler driving motor

16.4.8.19 Reverse/External Delivery Unit

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000



F-16-134



F-16-135

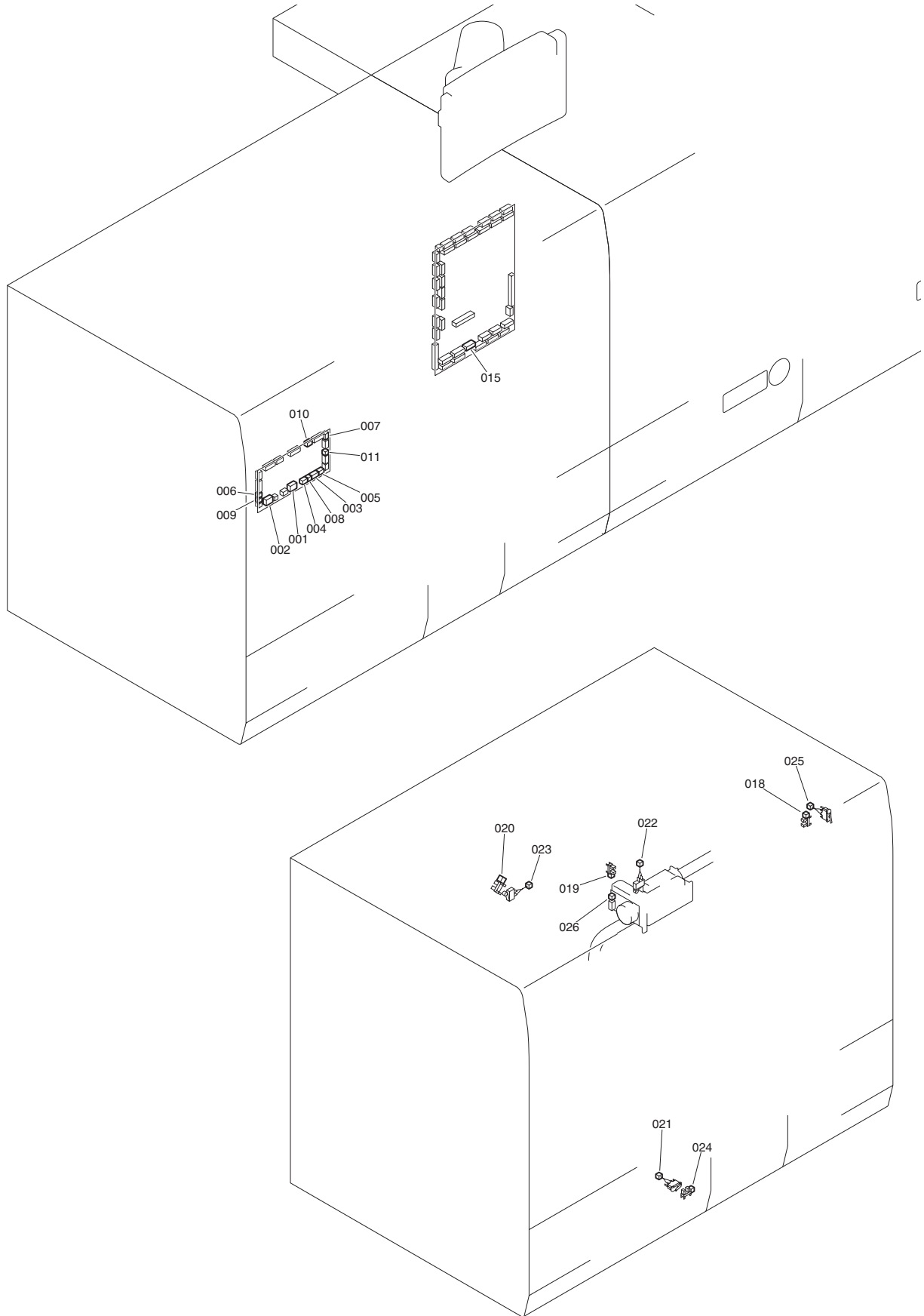
T-16-82

No.	Electric symbol	Electric parts name	J No.	Relay connector			J No.	No.	Electric symbol	Electric parts name
001	UN308	Color sensor control PCB 1	J3501F	J7562	J7019	J7761	J4230	007	UN301	Sub station power connecting PCB
002	UN308	Color sensor control PCB 1	J3502F	J7019	J7754		J1076	008	UN124	DC controller PCB 1-2
003	UN308	Color sensor control PCB 1	J3503F				J58	009	UN313	Color sensor 2
004	UN308	Color sensor control PCB 1	J3504F				J77	010	UN312	Color sensor 1
005	UN308	Color sensor control PCB 1	J3505F	J3510F/ J3510D			J3510L	011	UN330	Color sensor ROM PCB (Y)
006	UN308	Color sensor control PCB 1	J3506F	J3510F/ J3510D			J3510L	012	UN331	Color sensor ROM PCB (M)
013	UN309	Color sensor control PCB 2	J3501R	J7562	J7019	J7761	J4230	019	UN301	Sub station power connecting PCB
014	UN309	Color sensor control PCB 2	J3502R	J7019	J7754		J1076	020	UN124	DC controller PCB 1-2
015	UN309	Color sensor control PCB 2	J3503R				J81	021	UN315	Color sensor 4
016	UN309	Color sensor control PCB 2	J3504R				J78	022	UN314	Color sensor 3
017	UN309	Color sensor control PCB 2	J3505R	J3510R/ J3510D			J3510L	023	UN332	Color sensor ROM PCB (C)
018	UN309	Color sensor control PCB 2	J3506R	J3510R/ J3510D			J3510L	024	UN333	Color sensor ROM PCB (Bk)
025	UN310	Reverse/external delivery driver PCB	J4100	J7031	J7559		J4222	039	UN301	Sub station power connecting PCB
026	UN310	Reverse/external delivery driver PCB	J4101	J7030	J7558		J4222	039	UN301	Sub station power connecting PCB
027	UN310	Reverse/external delivery driver PCB	J4110	J7031			J4090	040	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB
028	UN310	Reverse/external delivery driver PCB	J4111	J7030			J4091	041	UN311	Duplexing feed driver PCB
029	UN310	Reverse/external delivery driver PCB	J4120	J5308			J7733	042	M315	Delivery decurler advancement adjusting motor 1
029	UN310	Reverse/external delivery driver PCB	J4120	J5309			J7734	043	M316	Delivery decurler advancement adjusting motor 2
030	UN310	Reverse/external delivery driver PCB	J4121	J7561	J5302		J7729	044	M319	Delivery reverse flapper motor
030	UN310	Reverse/external delivery driver PCB	J4121	J7561	J5304		J7730	045	M320	Delivery reverse motor
031	UN310	Reverse/external delivery driver PCB	J4122	J5305			J7731	046	M321	Duplexing delivery motor
031	UN310	Reverse/external delivery driver PCB	J4122	J5306			J7732	047	M322	Duplexing post-reverse motor
032	UN310	Reverse/external delivery driver PCB	J4123	J5300			J7727	048	M323	Pre-delivery feed motor 1
032	UN310	Reverse/external delivery driver PCB	J4123				J7728	049	M324	Pre-delivery feed motor 2
033	UN310	Reverse/external delivery driver PCB	J4124	J5307			J7743	050	M317	Delivery decurler motor
034	UN310	Reverse/external delivery driver PCB	J4125	J7555			J5093	051	PS335	Delivery reverse sensor 1
034	UN310	Reverse/external delivery driver PCB	J4125	J7556			J5094	052	PS336	Delivery reverse sensor 2
034	UN310	Reverse/external delivery driver PCB	J4125	J7560			J5089	053	PS337	Delivery sensor 1
034	UN310	Reverse/external delivery driver PCB	J4125	J7560			J5090	054	PS338	Delivery sensor 2
034	UN310	Reverse/external delivery driver PCB	J4125	J7560			J5091	055	PS339	Delivery sensor 3
034	UN310	Reverse/external delivery driver PCB	J4125	J7556			J5095	056	PS340	Duplexing reverse sensor
034	UN310	Reverse/external delivery driver PCB	J4125	J7557			J5096	057	PS341	Duplexing reverse rear sensor
034	UN310	Reverse/external delivery driver PCB	J4125	J7560			J5167	058	PS360	Delivery upper guide open/close sensor
034	UN310	Reverse/external delivery driver PCB	J4125	J7563			J5168	059	PS361	Reverse guide open/close sensor
034	UN310	Reverse/external delivery driver PCB	J4125	J7554			J5169	060	PS380	Color sensor HP sensor
035	UN310	Reverse/external delivery driver PCB	J4126				J5087	061	PS332	Delivery decurler HP sensor 1
035	UN310	Reverse/external delivery driver PCB	J4126				J5088	062	PS333	Delivery decurler HP sensor 2
035	UN310	Reverse/external delivery driver PCB	J4126	J7553	J7564		J5086	063	PS334	Delivery reverse flapper HP sensor
035	UN310	Reverse/external delivery driver PCB	J4126	J7553			J5092	064	PS342	Delivery reverse front sensor

No.	Electric symbol	Electric parts name	J No.	Relay connector			J No.	No.	Electric symbol	Electric parts name
036	UN310	Reverse/external delivery driver PCB	J4127				J5576	065	SL304	Color sensor roller solenoid
037	UN310	Reverse/external delivery driver PCB	J4128				J5513	066	FM336	External delivery driver PCB cooling fan
038	UN310	Reverse/external delivery driver PCB	J4130				J5497	067	FM350	Delivery decurler cooling fan

16.4.8.20 Sub Station and Others

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

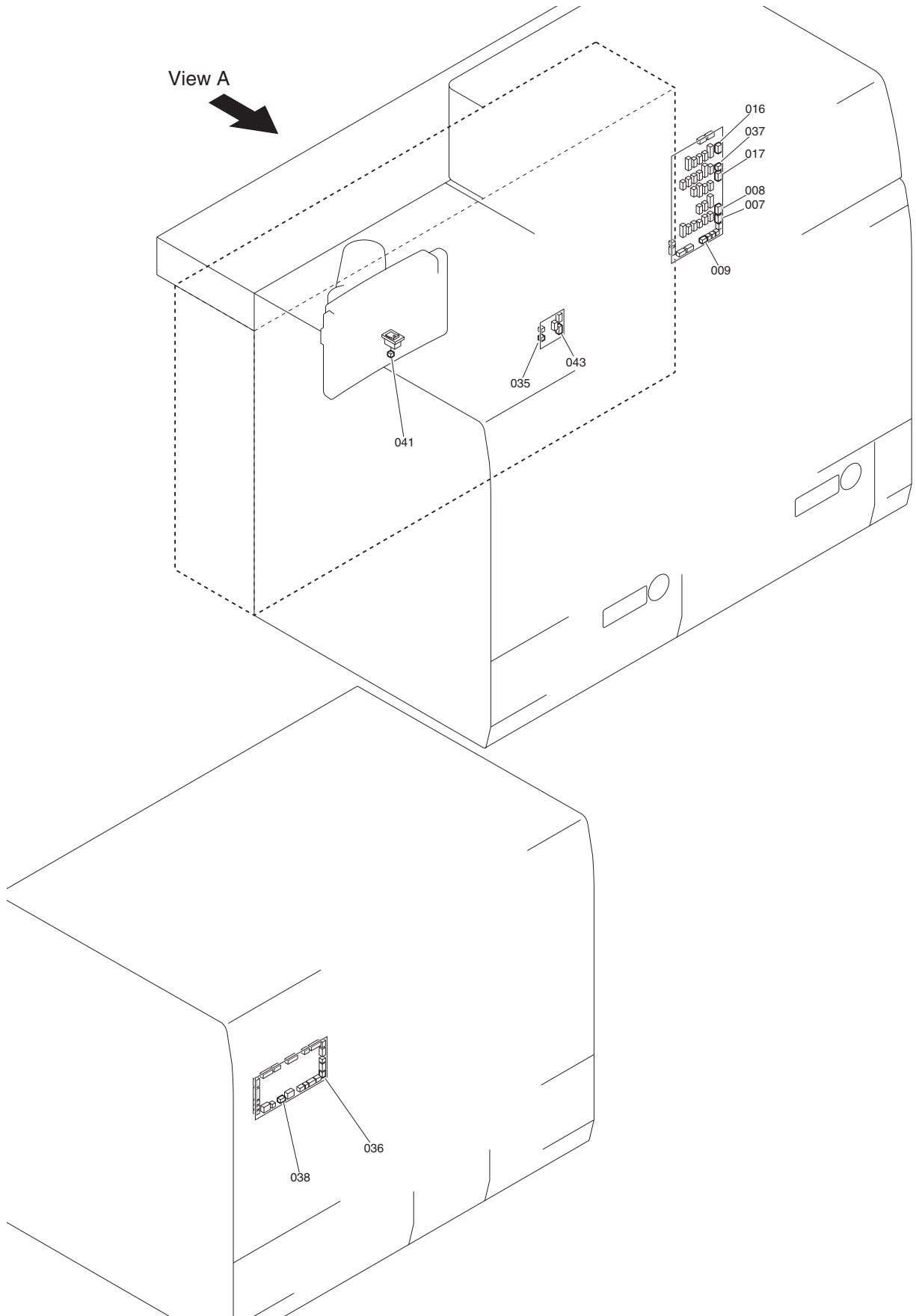


F-16-136

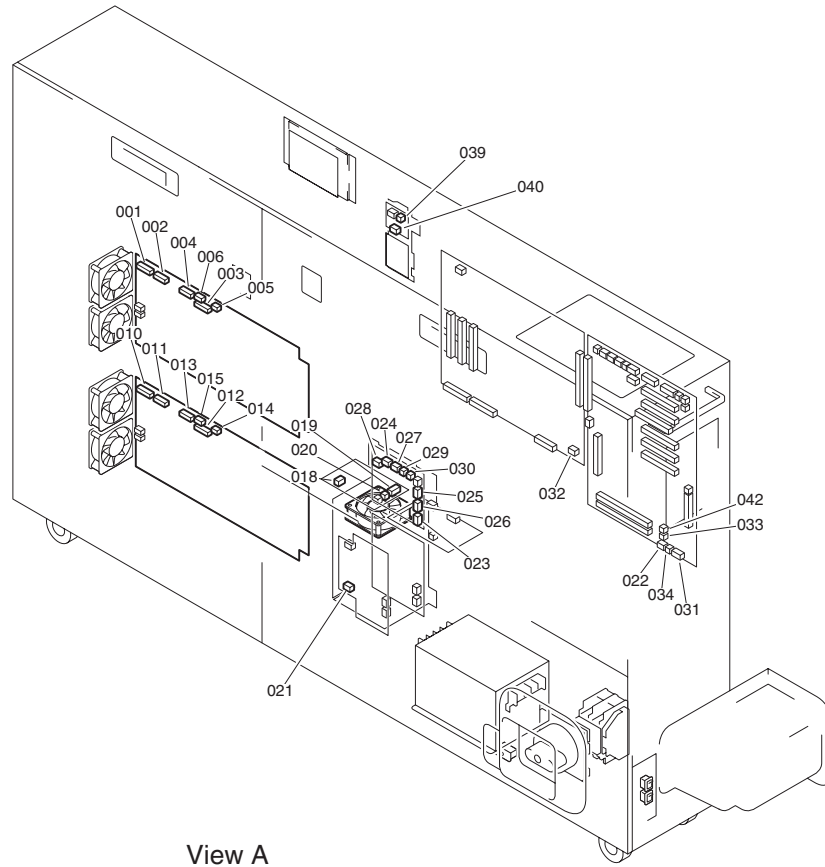
No.	Electric symbol	Electric parts name	J No.	Relay connector		J No.	No.	Electric symbol	Electric parts name
001	UN301	Sub station power connecting PCB	J4200	J30	J4760	-	-	UN300	24V power supply 4
001	UN301	Sub station power connecting PCB	J4200	J30	J4761	-	-	UN300	24V power supply 4
002	UN301	Sub station power connecting PCB	J4201	J33	J4762	-	-	UN300	24V power supply 4
002	UN301	Sub station power connecting PCB	J4201	J33	J4763	-	-	UN300	24V power supply 4
003	UN301	Sub station power connecting PCB	J4210	J7895		J1002	015	UN124	DC controller PCB 1-2
004	UN301	Sub station power connecting PCB	J4211	J4764		-	-	UN300	24V power supply 4
004	UN301	Sub station power connecting PCB	J4211	J4765		-	-	UN300	24V power supply 4
005	UN301	Sub station power connecting PCB	J4213	J7850	J7934	J5143	018	PS330	Sub station front right door open/close sensor
005	UN301	Sub station power connecting PCB	J4213	J7893		J5193	019	PS369	Primary fixing lever sensor
005	UN301	Sub station power connecting PCB	J4213	J7894		J5194	020	PS370	Secondary fixing lever sensor
006	UN301	Sub station power connecting PCB	J4214	J7853	J7937	J5644	021	SW301	Sub station front left door switch
007	UN301	Sub station power connecting PCB	J4215			J7891	022	SW303	Primary fixing lever switch
007	UN301	Sub station power connecting PCB	J4215			J7892	023	SW304	Secondary fixing lever switch
008	UN301	Sub station power connecting PCB	J4216	J7935	J7936	J5144	024	PS331	Sub station front left door open/close sensor
009	UN301	Sub station power connecting PCB	J4217	J7932	J7852	J5639	025	SW302	Sub station front right door switch
010	UN301	Sub station power connecting PCB	J4226			J5139P	026	M314	Waste toner feed motor

16.4.8.21 Power Unit Station

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000



F-16-137



View A

F-16-138

T-16-84

No.	Electric symbol	Electric parts name	J No.	Relay connector			J No.	No.	Electric symbol	Electric parts name	
001	UN500	24V power supply 1	J4700	J12	J7886		J1800	007	UN102	Main station power supply connect PCB	
002	UN500	24V power supply 1	J4701	J12	J7886		J1800	007	UN102	Main station power supply connect PCB	
003	UN500	24V power supply 1	J4702	J15	J7886		J1801	008	UN102	Main station power supply connect PCB	
004	UN500	24V power supply 1	J4703	J15	J7886		J1801	008	UN102	Main station power supply connect PCB	
005	UN500	24V power supply 1	PN4	J4704	J7868		J1811	009	UN102	Main station power supply connect PCB	
006	UN500	24V power supply 1	PN5	J4705	J7868		J1811	009	UN102	Main station power supply connect PCB	
010	UN501	24V power supply 1	J4720	J18	J7875		J1802	016	UN102	Main station power supply connect PCB	
011	UN501	24V power supply 1	J4721	J18	J7875		J1802	016	UN102	Main station power supply connect PCB	
012	UN501	24V power supply 1	J4722	J21	J7875		J1803	017	UN102	Main station power supply connect PCB	
013	UN501	24V power supply 1	J4723	J21	J7876		J1803	017	UN102	Main station power supply connect PCB	
014	UN501	24V power supply 1	PN4	J4724	J7868		J1811	009	UN102	Main station power supply connect PCB	
015	UN501	24V power supply 1	PN5	J4725	J7868		J1811	009	UN102	Main station power supply connect PCB	
018	UN503	3.3V all-night power supply PCB	J681				J2	021	UN507	13V non-all-night power supply PCB	
019	UN503	3.3V all-night power supply PCB	J691	J7171			J9100 (J1005)	022	-	Main controller PCB (MAIN-M)	
020	UN503	3.3V all-night power supply PCB	J692				J3	023	UN507	13V non-all-night power supply PCB	
024	UN507	13V non-all-night power supply PCB	J9050 (J09)	J7169			J9102M (J1004M)	031	-	Main controller PCB (MAIN-M)	
024	UN507	13V non-all-night power supply PCB	J9050 (J09)	J7170			J9102P (J1004P)	032	-	Main controller PCB (MAIN-P)	
025	UN507	13V non-all-night power supply PCB	J9051 (J04)	J7173			J9103 (J1006)	033	-	Main controller PCB (MAIN-M)	
026	UN507	13V non-all-night power supply PCB	J9052 (J10)	J7174			J9104 (J1035)	034	-	Main controller PCB (MAIN-M)	
027	UN507	13V non-all-night power supply PCB	J9053 (J06)				J9106 (J01)	035	UN103	DC controller power supply PCB	
028	UN507	13V non-all-night power supply PCB	J9054 (J08)	J7182	J7872	J7890	J4203	036	UN301	Sub station power connecting PCB	
029	UN507	13V non-all-night power supply PCB	J9055 (J07)	J7930	J7870		J1806	037	UN102	Main station power supply connect PCB	
030	UN507	13V non-all-night power supply PCB	J9056 (J05)	J7181	J7873	J7883	J4202	038	UN301	Sub station power connecting PCB	
039	UN510	Shutdown PCB	J9134	J7172	J7190	J7187	J7189	J5620	041	SW108	Main power switch
040	UN510	Shutdown PCB	J9133	J7160			J9108 (J1045)	042	-	Main controller PCB (MAIN-M)	
043	UN103	DC controller power supply PCB	J9107	J7169			J9102M	031	-	Main controller PCB (MAIN-M)	

Chapter 17 Self Diagnosis

Contents

17.1 Error Code Details	17-1
17.1.1 E000 to E197 (DC Controller)	17-1
17.1.2 E202 to E420 (Reader, ADF, DC Controller, Main Controller)	17-26
17.1.3 E500 to E5FF (Stacker, Finisher, Inserter, Trimmer, POD Deck).....	17-29
17.1.4 E601 to E750 (Main Controller, DC Controller)	17-41
17.1.5 E804 to E998 (DC Controller, POD Deck).....	17-48
17.1.6 Detail in E020 (Error in ATR)	17-57
17.1.7 Detail in E061 (Error in Potential Control).....	17-58
17.1.8 Detail in E260 (Power error)	17-59
17.1.9 Detail in E602 (Error in hard disk or encryption board).....	17-60
17.1.10 Detail in E747 (Main controller image processing ASIC error)	17-64
17.1.11 Detail in E748 (Main controller associated board errors).....	17-65
17.2 Jam Codes	17-66
17.2.1 Jam Code : 0101-0D94 (host machine).....	17-66
17.2.2 Jam Code : 2001-2B00 (POD deck).....	17-67
17.2.3 Jam Code : 012F-0A30 (Paper deck)	17-68
17.2.4 Jam Code : 0001-0098 (ADF-Related)	17-68
17.2.5 Jam Code : 1001-1700 (Stacker).....	17-71
17.2.6 Jam Code : 1002-1FDF (Finisher-Related)	17-71
17.3 Alarm Codes	17-74
17.3.1 Alarm Code	17-74
17.3.2 Alarm for completion of Operator Maintenance work.....	17-79

17.1 Error Code Details

17.1.1 E000 to E197 (DC Controller)

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

T-17-1

Code	Detail code	Cause (description)	Remedy	Remarks
<p>-When a following error occurs, after taking appropriate action (remedy), be sure to turn ON the power, and then select the following to execute ERR: COPIER > FUNCTION > CLEAR > ERR. The error is cleared by turning OFF and then ON the power after ERR execution. E000, E001, E002, E003, E004, E013, E717, E719 For errors other than those described above, the error is cleared by turning OFF and then ON the power after taking appropriate action (remedy). -When turning ON the power, be sure to turn ON the power in the following order: pickup/delivery accessories -> Main Body: Otherwise the pickup/delivery accessories are not recognized.</p>				
E000		Error in delay of fixing assembly temperature rise		
	0x01	<p>Fault: fixing heater, fixing heater driver PCB At warm-up rotation, the fixing roller main thermistor detecting temperature fails to increase by 10 deg C within 50 sec.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Check if the connector of fixing heater is disconnected/not securely inserted ->disconnect and connect the connector - heater harness relay connector inside the fixing assembly - connector of the fixing heater driver PCB (J4404) 2. Check if the fixing heater harness is open-circuit -> replace fixing the heater 3. Check soil of fixing roller main thermistor -> clean it 4. Check the attachment of fixing roller main thermistor -> reattach it 5. Check if the fixing roller main thermistor is disconnected/not securely inserted -> disconnect and connect the connector - connector of fixing external driver PCB (J4192) - connector of fixing duplex feed driver PCB 6. Replace the fixing heater 7. Replace the fixing heater driver PCB 8. Replace the fixing roller main thermistor 	<p>x= 1: Primary fixing 2: Secondary fixing Fixing heater: H306(primary fixing), H300(secondary fixing) Fixing heater driver PCB: UN306(primary fixing), UN307(secondary fixing) Fixing roller main thermistor: THM301(primary fixing), THM306(secondary fixing) Fixing external driver PCB: UN304(primary fixing), THM305(secondary fixing) Fixing duplexing feed driver PCB: UN311</p>
	0x02	<p>Fault: fixing heater, fixing heater driver PCB At warm-up rotation, the fixing roller main thermistor detecting temperature fails to increase by 10 deg C within 100 sec.</p>	Same as above	
	0x03	<p>Fault: fixing heater, fixing heater driver PCB At warm-up rotation, the external heat upper roller main thermistor detecting temperature fails to increase by 15 deg C within 50 sec.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Check if the connector of external heat upper roller heater is disconnected/not securely inserted ->disconnect and connect the connector - heater harness relay connector inside the fixing assembly - connector of the fixing heater driver PCB (J4404) 2. Check if the external heat upper roller heater harness is open-circuit-> replace the external heat upper roller heater 3. Check soil of external heat upper roller main thermistor -> clean it 4. Check the attachment of external heat upper roller main thermistor -> reattach it 5. Check if the external heat upper roller main thermistor is disconnected/not securely inserted -> disconnect and connect the connector - connector of fixing external driver PCB (J4192) - connector of fixing duplex feed driver PCB 6. Replace the external heat upper roller heater 7. Replace the fixing heater driver PCB 8. Replace the external heat upper roller main thermistor (all-in-one main/sub thermistor) 	<p>x= 1: Primary fixing 2: Secondary fixing External heat upper roller heater: H308(primary fixing), H302(secondary fixing) External heat upper roller thermistor: THM302(primary fixing), THM307(secondary fixing) Fixing heater driver PCB: UN306(primary fixing), UN307(secondary fixing) Fixing external driver PCB: UN304(primary fixing), THM305(secondary fixing) Fixing duplexing feed driver PCB: UN311</p>

Code	Detail code	Cause (description)	Remedy	Remarks
<p>-When a following error occurs, after taking appropriate action (remedy), be sure to turn ON the power, and then select the following to execute ERR: COPIER > FUNCTION > CLEAR > ERR. The error is cleared by turning OFF and then ON the power after ERR execution. E000, E001, E002, E003, E004, E013, E717, E719 For errors other than those described above, the error is cleared by turning OFF and then ON the power after taking appropriate action (remedy). -When turning ON the power, be sure to turn ON the power in the following order: pickup/delivery accessories -> Main Body: Otherwise the pickup/delivery accessories are not recognized.</p>				
E000 (continue)	0x04	Fault: fixing heater, fixing heater driver PCB At warm-up rotation, the external heat lower roller main thermistor detecting temperature fails to increase by 15 deg C within 50 sec.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Check if the connector of external heat lower roller heater is disconnected/not securely inserted ->disconnect and connect the connector - heater harness relay connector inside the fixing assembly - connector of the fixing heater driver PCB (J4404) 2. Check if the external heat lower roller heater harness is open-circuit -> replace the external heat lower roller heater 3. Check soil of external heat lower roller main thermistor -> clean it 4. Check the attachment of external heat lower roller main thermistor -> reattach it 5. Check if the external heat lower roller main thermistor is disconnected/not securely inserted -> disconnect and connect the connector - connector of fixing external driver PCB (J4192) - connector of fixing duplex feed driver PCB 6. Replace the external heat lower roller heater 7. Replace the fixing heater driver PCB 8. Replace the external heat lower roller main thermistor (all-in-one main/sub thermistor) 	<p>x= 1: Primary fixing 2: Secondary fixing External heat lower roller heater: H307(primary fixing), H301(secondary fixing) External heat lower roller thermistor: THM303(primary fixing), THM308(secondary fixing) Fixing heater driver PCB: UN306(primary fixing), UN307(secondary fixing) Fixing external driver PCB: UN304(primary fixing), THM305(secondary fixing) Fixing duplexing feed driver PCB: UN311</p>
	0x05	Fault: fixing heater, fixing heater driver PCB At warm-up rotation, the detected temperature of the external heat upper roller main thermistor does not reach the standby temperature within the specified period of time.	Take the same remedy for "0x03"	<p>x= 1: Primary fixing 2: Secondary fixing <specified period of time> C7000VP, C6000VP: 11 min. C6000: 18 min.</p>
	0x06	Fault: fixing heater, fixing heater driver PCB At warm-up rotation, the detected temperature of the external heat lower roller main thermistor does not reach the standby temperature within the specified period of time.	Take the same remedy for "0x04"	<p>x= 1: Primary fixing 2: Secondary fixing <specified period of time> C7000VP, C6000VP: 11 min. C6000: 18 min.</p>
	0107	Fault: fixing heater, fixing heater driver PCB At warm-up rotation, the pressure belt main thermistor detecting temperature fails to increase by 17 deg C within 50 sec.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Check if the connector of primary fixing pressure belt heater is disconnected/not securely inserted ->disconnect and connect the connector - heater harness relay connector inside the fixing assembly - connector of the fixing heater driver PCB (J4404) 2. Check if the primary fixing pressure belt heater harness is open-circuit -> replace the primary fixing pressure heater 3. Check soil of primary fixing pressure belt main thermistor -> clean it 4. Check the attachment of primary fixing pressure belt main thermistor -> reattach it 5. Check if the primary fixing pressure belt main thermistor is disconnected/not securely inserted -> disconnect and connect the connector - connector of fixing external driver PCB (J4192) - connector of fixing duplex feed driver PCB 6. Replace the primary fixing pressure belt heater 7. Replace the fixing heater driver PCB 8. Replace the primary fixing pressure belt main thermistor (all-in-one main/sub thermistor) 	<p>Primary fixing pressure belt thermistor: THM300 Primary fixing pressure belt heater: H305 Fixing heater driver PCB: UN306 Fixing external driver PCB: UN304 Fixing duplexing feed driver PCB: UN311</p>
	0208	Fault: fixing heater, fixing heater driver PCB At warm-up rotation, the pressure roller main thermistor detecting temperature fails to increase by 6 deg C within 100 sec.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Check if the connector of secondary fixing pressure belt heater is disconnected/not securely inserted ->disconnect and connect the connector - heater harness relay connector inside the fixing assembly - connector of the fixing heater driver PCB (J4404) 2. Check if the secondary fixing pressure belt heater harness is open-circuit -> replace the secondary fixing pressure heater 3. Check soil of secondary fixing pressure belt main thermistor -> clean it 4. Check the attachment of secondary fixing pressure belt main thermistor -> reattach it 5. Check if the secondary fixing pressure belt main thermistor is disconnected/not securely inserted -> disconnect and connect the connector - connector of fixing external driver PCB (J4192) - connector of fixing duplex feed driver PCB 6. Replace the primary fixing pressure belt heater 7. Replace the fixing heater driver PCB 8. Replace the secondary fixing pressure belt main thermistor (all-in-one main/sub thermistor) 	<p>Secondary fixing pressure roller thermistor: THM305 Secondary fixing pressure roller heater: H303 Fixing heater driver PCB: UN307 Fixing external driver PCB: THM305 Fixing duplexing feed driver PCB: UN311</p>

Code	Detail code	Cause (description)	Remedy	Remarks
<p>-When a following error occurs, after taking appropriate action (remedy), be sure to turn ON the power, and then select the following to execute ERR: COPIER > FUNCTION > CLEAR > ERR. The error is cleared by turning OFF and then ON the power after ERR execution. E000, E001, E002, E003, E004, E013, E717, E719 For errors other than those described above, the error is cleared by turning OFF and then ON the power after taking appropriate action (remedy). -When turning ON the power, be sure to turn ON the power in the following order: pickup/delivery accessories -> Main Body: Otherwise the pickup/delivery accessories are not recognized.</p>				
E001 Error in abnormally high temperature of fixing assembly				
	0x11	<p>Error: hardware detection of abnormally rising temperature at fixing roller sub thermistor</p> <p>When the hardware detects an error of abnormally rising temperature at fixing roller sub thermistor for 1 sec continuously.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Check if the fixing roller sub thermistor is open circuit -> replace the thermistor 2. Check if the harness is open-circuit -> replace the harness <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - between the fixing roller sub thermistor and the fixing external driver PCB - between the fixing external driver PCB and the fixing duplexing feed driver PCB - between the fixing duplexing feed driver and the DC controller PCB 1-2 3. Check soil of fixing roller main thermistor -> clean it 4. Check the attachment of fixing roller main thermistor -> reattach it 5. Replace the fixing roller main thermistor 6. Replace the fixing roller sub thermistor 7. Replace the fixing heater driver PCB 8. Replace the fixing external driver PCB 9. Replace the fixing duplexing feed driver PCB 10. Replace the DC controller PCB 1-2 	<p>x= 1: Primary fixing 2: Secondary fixing Fixing heater: H306(primary fixing), H300(secondary fixing) Fixing heater driver PCB: UN306(primary fixing), UN307(secondary fixing) Fixing roller main thermistor: THM301(primary fixing), THM306(secondary fixing) Fixing roller sub thermistor: THM304(primary fixing), THM309(secondary fixing) Fixing external driver PCB: UN304(primary fixing), THM305(secondary fixing) Fixing duplexing feed driver PCB: UN311 DC controller PCB 1-2: UN124</p>
	0x20	<p>Error: hardware detection of abnormally rising temperature at pressure belt (pressure roller) main thermistor</p> <p>When the hardware detects an error of abnormally rising temperature at pressure belt (pressure roller) main thermistor for 1 sec continuously.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Check if the primary fixing pressure belt (secondary fixing pressure roller) main thermistor is open-circuit -> clean it 2. Check the attachment of the primary fixing pressure belt (secondary fixing pressure roller) main thermistor -> reattach it 3. Check if the primary fixing pressure belt (secondary fixing pressure roller) main thermistor is open-circuit -> replace the thermistor 4. Check if the harness if open-circuit -> replace the harness <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - between the primary fixing pressure belt (secondary fixing pressure roller) main thermistor and the fixing external driver PCB - between the fixing external driver PCB and the fixing duplexing feed driver PCB - between the fixing duplexing feed driver PCB and the DC controller PCB 1-2 5. Replace the primary fixing pressure belt (secondary fixing pressure roller) thermistor 6. Replace the fixing heater driver PCB 7. Replace the fixing external driver PCB 8. Replace the fixing duplexing feed driver PCB 9. Replace the DC controller PCB 1-2 	<p>x= 1: Primary fixing 2: Secondary fixing Primary fixing pressure belt heater: H305 Secondary fixing pressure roller heater: H303 Primary fixing pressure belt thermistor: THM300 Secondary fixing pressure roller thermistor: THM305 Fixing heater driver PCB: UN306(primary fixing), UN307(secondary fixing) Fixing external driver PCB: UN304(primary fixing), THM305(secondary fixing) Fixing duplexing feed driver PCB: UN311 DC controller PCB 1-2: UN124</p>
	0x21	<p>Error: hardware detection of abnormally rising temperature at pressure belt (pressure roller) sub thermistor</p> <p>When the hardware detects an error of abnormally rising temperature at pressure belt (pressure roller) sub thermistor for 1 sec continuously.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Check if the primary fixing pressure belt (secondary fixing pressure roller) sub thermistor is open circuit -> replace the thermistor 2. Check if the harness if open-circuit -> replace the harness <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - between the primary fixing pressure belt (secondary fixing pressure roller) sub thermistor and the fixing external driver PCB - between the fixing external driver PCB and the fixing duplexing feed driver PCB - between the fixing duplexing feed driver PCB and the DC controller PCB 1-2 3. Check soil of the primary fixing pressure belt (secondary fixing pressure roller) main thermistor -> clean it 4. Check the attachment of the primary fixing pressure belt (secondary fixing pressure roller) main thermistor -> reattach it 5. Replace the primary fixing pressure belt (secondary fixing pressure roller) thermistor 6. Replace the fixing heater driver PCB 7. Replace the fixing external driver PCB 8. Replace the fixing duplexing feed driver PCB 9. Replace the DC controller PCB 1-2 	<p>x= 1: Primary fixing 2: Secondary fixing Primary fixing pressure belt thermistor: THM300 Secondary fixing pressure roller thermistor: THM305 Fixing heater driver PCB: UN306(primary fixing), UN307(secondary fixing) Fixing external driver PCB: UN304(primary fixing), THM305(secondary fixing) Fixing duplexing feed driver PCB: UN311 DC controller PCB 1-2: UN124</p>

Code	Detail code	Cause (description)	Remedy	Remarks
<p>-When a following error occurs, after taking appropriate action (remedy), be sure to turn ON the power, and then select the following to execute ERR: COPIER > FUNCTION > CLEAR > ERR. The error is cleared by turning OFF and then ON the power after ERR execution. E000, E001, E002, E003, E004, E013, E717, E719 For errors other than those described above, the error is cleared by turning OFF and then ON the power after taking appropriate action (remedy). -When turning ON the power, be sure to turn ON the power in the following order: pickup/delivery accessories -> Main Body: Otherwise the pickup/delivery accessories are not recognized.</p>				
E001 (continue)	0x30	<p>Error: hardware detection of abnormally rising temperature at external heat upper roller main thermistor</p> <p>When the hardware detects an error of abnormally rising temperature at external heat upper roller main thermistor for 1 sec continuously.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Check soil of the external heat upper roller main thermistor - > clean it 2. Check the attachment of the external heat upper roller main thermistor -> reattach it 3. Check if the external heat upper roller main thermistor is open-circuit -> replace the thermistor 4. Check if the harness is open-circuit -> replace the harness <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - between the external heat upper roller main thermistor and the fixing external driver PCB - between the fixing external driver PCB and the fixing duplexing feed driver PCB - between the fixing duplexing feed driver PCB and the DC controller PCB 1-2 5. Replace the external heat upper roller thermistor 6. Replace the fixing heater driver PCB 7. Replace the fixing external driver PCB 8. Replace the fixing duplexing feed driver PCB 9. Replace the DC controller PCB 1-2 	<p>x= 1: Primary fixing 2: Secondary fixing</p> <p>External heat upper roller thermistor: THM302(primary fixing), THM307(secondary fixing)</p> <p>Fixing heater driver PCB: UN306(primary fixing), UN307(secondary fixing)</p> <p>Fixing external driver PCB: UN304(primary fixing), THM305(secondary fixing)</p> <p>Fixing duplexing feed driver PCB: UN311 DC controller PCB 1-2: UN124</p>
	0x31	<p>Error: hardware detection of abnormally rising temperature at external heat upper roller sub thermistor</p> <p>When the hardware detects an error of abnormally rising temperature at external heat upper roller sub thermistor for 1 sec continuously.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Check if the external heat upper roller sub thermistor is open-circuit -> replace the thermistor 2. Check if the harness is open-circuit -> replace the harness <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - between the external heat upper roller main thermistor and the fixing external driver PCB - between the fixing external driver PCB and the fixing duplexing feed driver PCB - between the fixing duplexing feed driver PCB and the DC controller PCB 1-2 3. Check soil of the external heat upper roller main thermistor - > clean it 4. Check the attachment of the external heat upper roller main thermistor -> reattach it 5. Replace the external heat upper roller thermistor 6. Replace the fixing heater driver PCB 7. Replace the fixing external driver PCB 8. Replace the fixing duplexing feed driver PCB 9. Replace the DC controller PCB 1-2 	<p>x= 1: Primary fixing 2: Secondary fixing</p> <p>External heat upper roller thermistor: THM302(primary fixing), THM307(secondary fixing)</p> <p>Fixing heater driver PCB: UN306(primary fixing), UN307(secondary fixing)</p> <p>Fixing external driver PCB: UN304(primary fixing), THM305(secondary fixing)</p> <p>Fixing duplexing feed driver PCB: UN311 DC controller PCB 1-2: UN124</p>
	0x40	<p>Error: hardware detection of abnormally rising temperature at external heat lower roller main thermistor</p> <p>When the hardware detects an error of abnormally rising temperature at external heat lower roller main thermistor for 1 sec continuously.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Check soil of the external heat lower roller main thermistor - > clean it 2. Check the attachment of the external heat lower roller main thermistor -> reattach it 3. Check if the external heat lower roller main thermistor is open-circuit -> replace the thermistor 4. Check if the harness is open-circuit -> replace the harness <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - between the external heat lower roller main thermistor and the fixing external driver PCB - between the fixing external driver PCB and the fixing duplexing feed driver PCB - between the fixing duplexing feed driver PCB and the DC controller PCB 1-2 5. Replace the external heat lower roller thermistor 6. Replace the fixing heater driver PCB 7. Replace the fixing external driver PCB 8. Replace the fixing duplexing feed driver PCB 9. Replace the DC controller PCB 1-2 	<p>x= 1: Primary fixing 2: Secondary fixing</p> <p>External heat lower roller thermistor: THM303(primary fixing), THM308(secondary fixing)</p> <p>Fixing heater driver PCB: UN306(primary fixing), UN307(secondary fixing)</p> <p>Fixing external driver PCB: UN304(primary fixing), THM305(secondary fixing)</p> <p>Fixing duplexing feed driver PCB: UN311 DC controller PCB 1-2: UN124</p>
	0x41	<p>Error: hardware detection of abnormally rising temperature at external heat lower roller sub thermistor</p> <p>When the hardware detects an error of abnormally rising temperature at external heat lower roller sub thermistor for 1 sec continuously.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Check if the external heat lower roller sub thermistor is open-circuit -> replace the thermistor 2. Check if the harness is open-circuit -> replace the harness <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - between the external heat lower roller main thermistor and the fixing external driver PCB - between the fixing external driver PCB and the fixing duplexing feed driver PCB - between the fixing duplexing feed driver PCB and the DC controller PCB 1-2 3. Check soil of the external heat lower roller main thermistor - > clean it 4. Check the attachment of the external heat lower roller main thermistor -> reattach it 5. Replace the external heat lower roller thermistor 6. Replace the fixing heater driver PCB 7. Replace the fixing external driver PCB 8. Replace the fixing duplexing feed driver PCB 9. Replace the DC controller PCB 1-2 	<p>x= 1: Primary fixing 2: Secondary fixing</p> <p>External heat lower roller thermistor: THM303(primary fixing), THM308(secondary fixing)</p> <p>Fixing heater driver PCB: UN306(primary fixing), UN307(secondary fixing)</p> <p>Fixing external driver PCB: UN304(primary fixing), THM305(secondary fixing)</p> <p>Fixing duplexing feed driver PCB: UN311 DC controller PCB 1-2: UN124</p>

Code	Detail code	Cause (description)	Remedy	Remarks
<p>-When a following error occurs, after taking appropriate action (remedy), be sure to turn ON the power, and then select the following to execute ERR: COPIER > FUNCTION > CLEAR > ERR. The error is cleared by turning OFF and then ON the power after ERR execution. E000, E001, E002, E003, E004, E013, E717, E719 For errors other than those described above, the error is cleared by turning OFF and then ON the power after taking appropriate action (remedy). -When turning ON the power, be sure to turn ON the power in the following order: pickup/delivery accessories -> Main Body: Otherwise the pickup/delivery accessories are not recognized.</p>				
E002		Error in temperature difference between the center and the edge of fixing roller		
	0x02	<p>Error: hardware detection of temperature difference at pressure belt (pressure roller) When the hardware detects fault in temperature difference between the pressure belt (pressure roller)'s main and the sub thermistors for 1 sec continuously.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Check soil of the primary fixing pressure belt (secondary fixing pressure roller) main/sub thermistor -> clean it 2. Check the attachment of primary fixing pressure belt (secondary fixing pressure roller) main/sub thermistor -> reattach it 3. Check if the connector of primary fixing pressure belt (secondary fixing pressure roller) main/sub thermistor is disconnected/not securely inserted -> disconnect and then connect the connector - connector at the fixing external driver PCB - connector at the fixing duplexing feed driver PCB 4. Replace the primary fixing pressure belt (secondary fixing pressure roller) thermistor 	<p>x= 1: Primary fixing 2: Secondary fixing Primary fixing pressure belt thermistor: THM300 Secondary fixing pressure roller thermistor: THM305 Fixing external driver PCB: UN304(primary fixing), THM305(secondary fixing) Fixing duplexing feed driver PCB: UN311</p>
	0x03	<p>Error: hardware detection of temperature difference at external heat upper roller When the hardware detects fault in temperature difference between the external heat upper roller's main and the sub thermistors for 1 sec continuously.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Check soil of the external heat upper roller main/sub thermistor -> clean it 2. Check the attachment of the external heat upper roller main/sub thermistor -> reattach it 3. Check if the connector of external heat upper roller main/sub thermistor is disconnected/not securely inserted -> disconnect and then connect the connector - connector at the fixing external driver PCB - connector at the fixing duplexing feed driver PCB 4. Replace the external heat upper roller thermistor 	<p>x= 1: Primary fixing 2: Secondary fixing External heat upper roller thermistor: THM302(primary fixing), THM307(secondary fixing) Fixing external driver PCB: UN304(primary fixing), THM305(secondary fixing) Fixing duplexing feed driver PCB: UN311</p>
	0x04	<p>Error: hardware detection of temperature difference at external heat lower roller When the hardware detects fault in temperature difference between the external heat lower roller's main and the sub thermistors for 1 sec continuously.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Check soil of the external heat lower roller main/sub thermistor -> clean it 2. Check the attachment of the external heat lower roller main/sub thermistor -> reattach it 3. Check if the connector of external heat lower roller main/sub thermistor is disconnected/not securely inserted -> disconnect and then connect the connector - connector at the fixing external driver PCB - connector at the fixing duplexing feed driver PCB 4. Replace the external heat lower roller thermistor 	<p>x= 1: Primary fixing 2: Secondary fixing External heat lower roller thermistor: THM303(primary fixing), THM308(secondary fixing) Fixing external driver PCB: UN304(primary fixing), THM305(secondary fixing) Fixing duplexing feed driver PCB: UN311</p>

Code	Detail code	Cause (description)	Remedy	Remarks
<p>-When a following error occurs, after taking appropriate action (remedy), be sure to turn ON the power, and then select the following to execute ERR: COPIER > FUNCTION > CLEAR > ERR. The error is cleared by turning OFF and then ON the power after ERR execution.</p> <p>E000, E001, E002, E003, E004, E013, E717, E719</p> <p>For errors other than those described above, the error is cleared by turning OFF and then ON the power after taking appropriate action (remedy).</p> <p>-When turning ON the power, be sure to turn ON the power in the following order: pickup/delivery accessories -> Main Body; Otherwise the pickup/delivery accessories are not recognized.</p>				
E002 (cont nue)	0x11	Error: software detection in temperature difference at fixing roller When the software detects that the temperature difference between the fixing roller's main and the sub thermistors is 100 deg C or more for 1 sec continuously.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Check soil of the fixing roller main/sub thermistor -> clean it 2. Check the attachment of the fixing roller main/sub thermistor -> reattach it 3. Check if the connector at fixing roller main/sub thermistor is disconnected/not securely inserted -> disconnect and then connect the connector - connector at the fixing external driver PCB - connector at the fixing duplexing feed driver PCB 4. Replace the fixing roller main/sub thermistor 	<p>x= 1: Primary fixing 2: Secondary fixing</p> <p>Fixing roller main thermistor: THM301(primary fixing), THM306(secondary fixing)</p> <p>Fixing roller sub thermistor: THM304(primary fixing), THM309(secondary fixing)</p> <p>Fixing external driver PCB: UN304(primary fixing), THM305(secondary fixing)</p> <p>Fixing duplexing feed driver PCB: UN311</p>
	0x12	Error: software detection in temperature difference at pressure belt (pressure roller) When the software detects that the temperature difference between the pressure belt (pressure roller)'s main and the sub thermistors is 100 deg C or more for 1 sec continuously.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Check soil of the primary fixing pressure belt (secondary fixing pressure roller) main/sub thermistor -> clean it 2. Check the attachment of primary fixing pressure belt (secondary fixing pressure roller) main/sub thermistor -> reattach it 3. Check if the connector of primary fixing pressure belt (secondary fixing pressure roller) main/sub thermistor is disconnected/not securely inserted -> disconnect and then connect the connector - connector at the fixing external driver PCB - connector at the fixing duplexing feed driver PCB 4. Replace the primary fixing pressure belt (secondary fixing pressure roller) thermistor 	<p>x= 1: Primary fixing 2: Secondary fixing</p> <p>Primary fixing pressure belt thermistor: THM300</p> <p>Secondary fixing pressure roller thermistor: THM305</p> <p>Fixing external driver PCB: UN304(primary fixing), THM305(secondary fixing)</p> <p>Fixing duplexing feed driver PCB: UN311</p>
	0x13	Error: software detection of temperature difference at external heat upper roller When the software detects that the temperature difference between the external heat upper roller's main and the sub thermistors is 100 deg C or more for 1 sec continuously.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Check soil of the external heat upper roller main/sub thermistor -> clean it 2. Check the attachment of the external heat upper roller main/sub thermistor -> reattach it 3. Check if the connector of external heat upper roller main/sub thermistor is disconnected/not securely inserted -> disconnect and then connect the connector - connector at the fixing external driver PCB - connector at the fixing duplexing feed driver PCB 4. Replace the external heat upper roller thermistor 	<p>x= 1: Primary fixing 2: Secondary fixing</p> <p>External heat upper roller thermistor: THM302(primary fixing), THM307(secondary fixing)</p> <p>Fixing external driver PCB: UN304(primary fixing), THM305(secondary fixing)</p> <p>Fixing duplexing feed driver PCB: UN311</p>
	0x14	Error: software detection of temperature difference at external heat lower roller When the software detects that the temperature difference between the external heat lower roller's main and the sub thermistors is 100 deg C or more for 1 sec continuously.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Check soil of the external heat lower roller main/sub thermistor -> clean it 2. Check the attachment of the external heat lower roller main/sub thermistor -> reattach it 3. Check if the connector of external heat lower roller main/sub thermistor is disconnected/not securely inserted -> disconnect and then connect the connector - connector at the fixing external driver PCB - connector at the fixing duplexing feed driver PCB 4. Replace the external heat lower roller thermistor 	<p>x= 1: Primary fixing 2: Secondary fixing</p> <p>External heat lower roller thermistor: THM303(primary fixing), THM308(secondary fixing)</p> <p>Fixing external driver PCB: UN304(primary fixing), THM305(secondary fixing)</p> <p>Fixing duplexing feed driver PCB: UN311</p>

Code	Detail code	Cause (description)	Remedy	Remarks
<p>-When a following error occurs, after taking appropriate action (remedy), be sure to turn ON the power, and then select the following to execute ERR: COPIER > FUNCTION > CLEAR > ERR. The error is cleared by turning OFF and then ON the power after ERR execution. E000, E001, E002, E003, E004, E013, E717, E719 For errors other than those described above, the error is cleared by turning OFF and then ON the power after taking appropriate action (remedy). -When turning ON the power, be sure to turn ON the power in the following order: pickup/delivery accessories -> Main Body: Otherwise the pickup/delivery accessories are not recognized.</p>				
E003 Error in abnormally low temperature of fixing assembly				
	0x01	Error: low temperature detection at fixing roller main thermistor When detecting temperature at standby/during print decreased by 30 deg C against the target temperature for 1 sec or more.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Check if the connector at fixing heater is disconnected/not securely inserted -> disconnect and then connect the connector - heater harness relay connector inside the fixing assembly - connector at the fixing heater driver PCB (J4404) 2. Check if the fixing heater harness is open-circuit -> replace the fixing heater 3. Check soil of the fixing roller main thermistor -> clean it 4. Check the attachment of the fixing roller main thermistor -> reattach it 5. Check if the connector at the fixing roller main thermistor is disconnected/not securely inserted -> disconnect and then connect the connector - connector at the fixing external driver PCB (J4192) - connector at the fixing duplexing feed driver PCB 6. Replace the fixing heater 7. Replace the fixing heater driver PCB 8. Replace the fixing roller main thermistor 	x= 1: Primary fixing 2: Secondary fixing Fixing heater: H306(primary fixing), H300(secondary fixing) Fixing heater driver PCB: UN306(primary fixing), UN307(secondary fixing) Fixing roller main thermistor: THM301(primary fixing), THM306(secondary fixing) Fixing external driver PCB: UN304(primary fixing), THM305(secondary fixing) Fixing duplexing feed driver PCB: UN311
	0x02	Error: low temperature detection of fixing roller sub thermistor When detecting temperature at standby/during print decreases by 30 deg C or more against the target temperature for 1 sec or more.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Check if the connector at fixing heater is disconnected/not securely inserted -> disconnect and then connect the connector - heater harness relay connector inside the fixing assembly - connector at the fixing heater driver PCB (J4404) 2. Check if the fixing heater harness is open-circuit -> replace the fixing heater 3. Check soil of the fixing roller sub thermistor -> clean it 4. Check the attachment of the fixing roller sub thermistor -> reattach it 5. Check if the connector at the fixing roller sub thermistor is disconnected/not securely inserted -> disconnect and then connect the connector - connector at the fixing external driver PCB (J4192) - connector at the fixing duplexing feed driver PCB 6. Replace the fixing heater 7. Replace the fixing heater driver PCB 8. Replace the fixing roller sub thermistor 	x= 1: Primary fixing 2: Secondary fixing Fixing heater: H306(primary fixing), H300(secondary fixing) Fixing heater driver PCB: UN306(primary fixing), UN307(secondary fixing) Fixing roller sub thermistor: THM304(primary fixing), THM309(secondary fixing) Fixing external driver PCB: UN304(primary fixing), THM305(secondary fixing) Fixing duplexing feed driver PCB: UN311
	0x03	Error: low temperature detection of pressure belt (pressure roller) main thermistor When detecting temperature at standby/during print decreases by 50 deg C or more against the target temperature for 1 sec or more.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Check if the connector at primary fixing pressure belt (secondary fixing pressure roller) heater is disconnected/not securely inserted -> disconnect and then connect the connector - heater harness relay connector inside the fixing assembly - connector at the fixing heater driver PCB 2. Check if the primary fixing pressure belt (secondary fixing pressure roller) heater harness is open-circuit -> replace the heater 3. Check soil of the primary fixing pressure belt (secondary fixing pressure roller) main thermistor -> clean it 4. Check the attachment of the primary fixing pressure belt (secondary fixing pressure roller) main thermistor -> reattach it 5. Check if the connector at the primary fixing pressure belt (secondary fixing pressure roller) main thermistor is disconnected/not securely inserted -> disconnect and then connect the connector - connector at the fixing external driver PCB - connector at the fixing duplexing feed driver PCB 6. Replace the primary fixing pressure belt (secondary fixing press 	x= 1: Primary fixing 2: Secondary fixing Primary fixing pressure belt heater: H305 Secondary fixing pressure roller heater: H303 Primary fixing pressure belt thermistor: THM300 Secondary fixing pressure roller thermistor: THM305 Fixing heater driver PCB: UN306(primary fixing), UN307(secondary fixing) Fixing external driver PCB: UN304(primary fixing), THM305(secondary fixing) Fixing duplexing feed driver PCB: UN311
	0x04	Error: low temperature detection of pressure belt (pressure roller) sub thermistor When detecting temperature at standby/during print decreases by 50 deg C or more against the target temperature for 1 sec or more.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Check if the connector at primary fixing pressure belt (secondary fixing pressure roller) heater is disconnected/not securely inserted -> disconnect and then connect the connector - heater harness relay connector inside the fixing assembly - connector at the fixing heater driver PCB 2. Check if the primary fixing pressure belt (secondary fixing pressure roller) heater harness is open-circuit -> replace the heater 3. Check soil of the primary fixing pressure belt (secondary fixing pressure roller) sub thermistor -> clean it 4. Check the attachment of the primary fixing pressure belt (secondary fixing pressure roller) sub thermistor -> reattach it 5. Check if the connector at the primary fixing pressure belt (secondary fixing pressure roller) sub thermistor is disconnected/not securely inserted -> disconnect and then connect the connector - connector at the fixing external driver PCB - connector at the fixing duplexing feed driver PCB 6. Replace the primary fixing pressure belt (secondary fixing pressure 	x= 1: Primary fixing 2: Secondary fixing Primary fixing pressure belt heater: H305 Secondary fixing pressure roller heater: H303 Primary fixing pressure belt thermistor: THM300 Secondary fixing pressure roller thermistor: THM305 Fixing heater driver PCB: UN306(primary fixing), UN307(secondary fixing) Fixing external driver PCB: UN304(primary fixing), THM305(secondary fixing) Fixing duplexing feed driver PCB: UN311

Code	Detail code	Cause (description)	Remedy	Remarks
<p>-When a following error occurs, after taking appropriate action (remedy), be sure to turn ON the power, and then select the following to execute ERR: COPIER > FUNCTION > CLEAR > ERR. The error is cleared by turning OFF and then ON the power after ERR execution. E000, E001, E002, E003, E004, E013, E717, E719 For errors other than those described above, the error is cleared by turning OFF and then ON the power after taking appropriate action (remedy). -When turning ON the power, be sure to turn ON the power in the following order: pickup/delivery accessories -> Main Body: Otherwise the pickup/delivery accessories are not recognized.</p>				
E003 (cont nue)	0x05	Error: low temperature detection of external heat upper roller main thermistor When detecting temperature at standby/during print decreases by 80 deg C or more against the target temperature for 1 sec or more.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Check if the connector at external heat upper roller heater is disconnected/not securely inserted -> disconnect and then connect the connector - heater harness relay connector inside the fixing assembly - connector at the fixing heater driver PCB 2. Check if the external heat upper roller heater harness is open-circuit -> replace the external heat 1 main heater 3. Check soil of the external heat upper roller main thermistor -> clean it 4. Check the attachment of the external heat upper roller main thermistor -> reattach it 5. Check if the connector at the external heat upper roller main thermistor is disconnected/not securely inserted -> disconnect and then connect the connector - connector at the fixing external driver PCB - connector at the fixing duplexing feed driver PCB 6. Replace the external heat upper roller heater 7. Replace the fixing heater driver PCB 8. Replace the external heat upper roller thermistor 	<p>x= 1: Primary fixing 2: Secondary fixing External heat upper roller heater: H308 (primary fixing), H302 (secondary fixing) External heat upper roller thermistor: THM302 (primary fixing), THM307 (secondary fixing) Fixing heater driver PCB: UN306(primary fixing), UN307(secondary fixing) Fixing external driver PCB: UN304(primary fixing), THM305(secondary fixing) Fixing duplexing feed driver PCB: UN311</p>
	0x06	Error: low temperature detection of external heat upper roller sub thermistor When detecting temperature at standby/during print decreases by 80 deg C or more against the target temperature for 1 sec or more.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Check if the connector at external heat upper roller heater is disconnected/not securely inserted -> disconnect and then connect the connector - heater harness relay connector inside the fixing assembly - connector at the fixing heater driver PCB 2. Check if the external heat upper roller heater harness is open-circuit -> replace the external heat 1 main heater 3. Check soil of the external heat upper roller sub thermistor -> clean it 4. Check the attachment of the external heat upper roller sub thermistor -> reattach it 5. Check if the connector at the external heat upper roller sub thermistor is disconnected/not securely inserted -> disconnect and then connect the connector - connector at the fixing external driver PCB - connector at the fixing duplexing feed driver PCB 6. Replace the external heat upper roller heater 7. Replace the fixing heater driver PCB 8. Replace the external heat upper roller thermistor 	<p>x= 1: Primary fixing 2: Secondary fixing External heat upper roller heater: H308 (primary fixing), H302 (secondary fixing) External heat upper roller thermistor: THM302 (primary fixing), THM307 (secondary fixing) Fixing heater driver PCB: UN306(primary fixing), UN307(secondary fixing) Fixing external driver PCB: UN304(primary fixing), THM305(secondary fixing) Fixing duplexing feed driver PCB: UN311</p>
	0x07	Error: low temperature detection of external heat lower roller main thermistor When detecting temperature at standby/during print decreases by 80 deg C or more against the target temperature for 1 sec or more.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Check if the connector at external heat lower roller heater is disconnected/not securely inserted -> disconnect and then connect the connector - heater harness relay connector inside the fixing assembly - connector at the fixing heater driver PCB 2. Check if the external heat lower roller heater harness is open-circuit -> replace the external heat 1 main heater 3. Check soil of the external heat lower roller main thermistor -> clean it 4. Check the attachment of the external heat lower roller main thermistor -> reattach it 5. Check if the connector at the external heat lower roller main thermistor is disconnected/not securely inserted -> disconnect and then connect the connector - connector at the fixing external driver PCB - connector at the fixing duplexing feed driver PCB 6. Replace the external heat lower roller heater 7. Replace the fixing heater driver PCB 8. Replace the external heat lower roller thermistor 	<p>x= 1: Primary fixing 2: Secondary fixing External heat lower roller heater: H307 (primary fixing), H301 (secondary fixing) External heat lower roller thermistor: THM303 (primary fixing), THM308 (secondary fixing) Fixing heater driver PCB: UN306(primary fixing), UN307(secondary fixing) Fixing external driver PCB: UN304(primary fixing), THM305(secondary fixing) Fixing duplexing feed driver PCB: UN311</p>
	0x08	Error: low temperature detection of external heat lower roller sub thermistor When detecting temperature at standby/during print decreases by 80 deg C or more against the target temperature for 1 sec or more.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Check if the connector at external heat lower roller heater is disconnected/not securely inserted -> disconnect and then connect the connector - heater harness relay connector inside the fixing assembly - connector at the fixing heater driver PCB 2. Check if the external heat lower roller heater harness is open-circuit -> replace the external heat 1 main heater 3. Check soil of the external heat lower roller sub thermistor -> clean it 4. Check the attachment of the external heat lower roller sub thermistor -> reattach it 5. Check if the connector at the external heat lower roller sub thermistor is disconnected/not securely inserted -> disconnect and then connect the connector - connector at the fixing external driver PCB - connector at the fixing duplexing feed driver PCB 6. Replace the external heat lower roller heater 7. Replace the fixing heater driver PCB 8. Replace the external heat lower roller thermistor 	<p>x= 1: Primary fixing 2: Secondary fixing External heat lower roller heater: H307 (primary fixing), H301 (secondary fixing) External heat lower roller thermistor: THM303 (primary fixing), THM308 (secondary fixing) Fixing heater driver PCB: UN306(primary fixing), UN307(secondary fixing) Fixing external driver PCB: UN304(primary fixing), THM305(secondary fixing) Fixing duplexing feed driver PCB: UN311</p>

Code	Detail code	Cause (description)	Remedy	Remarks
<p>-When a following error occurs, after taking appropriate action (remedy), be sure to turn ON the power, and then select the following to execute ERR: COPIER > FUNCTION > CLEAR > ERR. The error is cleared by turning OFF and then ON the power after ERR execution. E000, E001, E002, E003, E004, E013, E717, E719 For errors other than those described above, the error is cleared by turning OFF and then ON the power after taking appropriate action (remedy). -When turning ON the power, be sure to turn ON the power in the following order: pickup/delivery accessories -> Main Body: Otherwise the pickup/delivery accessories are not recognized.</p>				
E004 Fixing heater SSR (Solid State Relay) error				
	0x10	Fixing roller main heater SSR error When detecting the fixing roller main heater SSR error for 1 sec	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Check if the connector at fixing roller heater is connected/not securely inserted -> disconnect and then connect the connector - heater harness relay connector inside the fixing assembly - connector at the fixing heater driver PCB (J4404) 2. Check if the fixing roller heater harness is open-circuit -> replace the heater 3. Replace the fixing heater 4. Replace the fixing heater driver PCB 	x= 1: Primary fixing 2: Secondary fixing Fixing heater: H306 (primary fixing), H300 (secondary fixing) Fixing heater driver PCB: UN306 (primary fixing), UN307 (secondary fixing)
	0x11	Fixing roller sub heater SSR error When detecting the fixing roller sub heater SSR error for 1 sec	Same as above	Same as above
	0x12	Pressure belt (pressure roller) heater SSR error When detecting the fixing belt (pressure roller) heater SSR error for 1 sec	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Check if the connector at primary fixing pressure belt (secondary fixing pressure roller) heater is connected/not securely inserted -> disconnect and then connect the connector - heater harness relay connector inside the fixing assembly - connector at the fixing heater driver PCB 2. Check if the primary fixing pressure belt (secondary fixing pressure roller) heater harness is open-circuit -> replace the heater 3. Replace the primary fixing pressure belt (secondary fixing pressure roller) heater 4. Replace the fixing heater driver PCB 	x= 1: Primary fixing 2: Secondary fixing Primary fixing pressure belt heater: H305 Secondary fixing pressure roller heater: H303 Fixing heater driver PCB: UN306 (primary fixing), UN307 (secondary fixing)
	0x13	External heat upper roller main heater SSR error When detecting the external heat upper roller main heater SSR error for 1 sec	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Check if the connector at external heat upper roller heater is connected/not securely inserted -> disconnect and then connect the connector - heater harness relay connector inside the fixing assembly - connector at the fixing heater driver PCB 2. Check if the external heat upper roller heater harness is open-circuit -> replace the heater 3. Replace the external heat upper roller heater 4. Replace the fixing heater driver PCB 	x= 1: Primary fixing 2: Secondary fixing External heat upper roller heater: H308 (primary fixing), H302 (secondary fixing) Fixing heater driver PCB: UN306 (primary fixing), UN307 (secondary fixing)
	0x14	External heat upper roller sub heater SSR error When detecting the external heat upper roller sub heater SSR error for 1 sec	Same as above	Same as above

Code	Detail code	Cause (description)	Remedy	Remarks
<p>-When a following error occurs, after taking appropriate action (remedy), be sure to turn ON the power, and then select the following to execute ERR: COPIER > FUNCTION > CLEAR > ERR. The error is cleared by turning OFF and then ON the power after ERR execution.</p> <p>E000, E001, E002, E003, E004, E013, E717, E719</p> <p>For errors other than those described above, the error is cleared by turning OFF and then ON the power after taking appropriate action (remedy).</p> <p>-When turning ON the power, be sure to turn ON the power in the following order: pickup/delivery accessories -> Main Body: Otherwise the pickup/delivery accessories are not recognized.</p>				
E004 (cont nue)	0x15	External heat lower roller main heater SSR error When detecting the external heat lower roller main heater SSR error for 1 sec	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Check if the connector at external heat lower roller heater is connected/not securely inserted -> disconnect and then connect the connector - heater harness relay connector inside the fixing assembly - connector at the fixing heater driver PCB 2. Check if the external heat lower roller heater harness is open-circuit -> replace the heater 3. Replace the external heat lower roller heater 4. Replace the fixing heater driver PCB 	x= 1: Primary fixing 2: Secondary fixing External heat lower roller heater: H307 (primary fixing), H301 (secondary fixing) Fixing heater driver PCB: UN306 (primary fixing), UN307 (secondary fixing)
	0x16	External heat lower roller sub heater SSR error When detecting the external heat lower roller sub heater SSR error for 1 sec	Same as above	Same as above
	0x20	Error: hardware detection of disconnection of the connector/cable of pressure belt (pressure roller) main thermistor	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Check if the connector at primary fixing pressure belt (secondary fixing pressure roller) main thermistor is connected/not securely inserted -> disconnect and then connect the connector - heater harness relay connector inside the fixing assembly - connector at the fixing external driver PCB (J4192/4181) - connector at the fixing duplexing feed driver PCB (J4081/4086/4072) 	x= 1: Primary fixing 2: Secondary fixing Primary fixing pressure belt thermistor: THM300 Secondary fixing pressure roller thermistor: THM305 Fixing external driver PCB: UN304 (primary fixing), THM305 (secondary fixing) Fixing duplexing feed driver PCB: UN311
	0x21	Error: hardware detection of disconnection of the connector/cable of external heat upper/lower roller thermistor	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Check if the connector at external heat thermistor is connected/not securely inserted -> disconnect and then connect the connector - heater harness relay connector inside the fixing assembly - connector at the fixing external driver PCB (J4191/4181) - connector at the fixing duplexing feed driver PCB (J4081/4086/4072) 	x= 1: Primary fixing 2: Secondary fixing External heat upper roller thermistor: THM302 (primary fixing), THM307 (secondary fixing) External heat lower roller thermistor: THM303 (primary fixing), THM308 (secondary fixing) Fixing external driver PCB: UN304 (primary fixing), THM305 (secondary fixing) Fixing duplexing feed driver PCB: UN311

Code	Detail code	Cause (description)	Remedy	Remarks
<p>-When a following error occurs, after taking appropriate action (remedy), be sure to turn ON the power, and then select the following to execute ERR: COPIER > FUNCTION > CLEAR > ERR. The error is cleared by turning OFF and then ON the power after ERR execution. E000, E001, E002, E003, E004, E013, E717, E719 For errors other than those described above, the error is cleared by turning OFF and then ON the power after taking appropriate action (remedy). -When turning ON the power, be sure to turn ON the power in the following order: pickup/delivery accessories -> Main Body: Otherwise the pickup/delivery accessories are not recognized.</p>				
E005		Fixing web error		
	0x01	Error: no fixing web	1. Check the position of paper level sensor arm -> Place it in a correct position 2. Replace the fixing web	x= 1: Primary fixing 2: Secondary fixing
E007		Error related to pressure belt		
	0001	Error: primary fixing pressure belt full displacement	Rotate the drive gear (yellow) with hand, and shift the belt to the center.	
	0010	Error: primary fixing pressure belt displacement control motor drive The signal logic of the HP sensor does not change even when driving the steering motor from the backside to the front side for a specified period (specified pulse).	Rotate the drive gear (yellow) with hand, and shift the belt to the center.	
	0011	Error: primary fixing pressure belt displacement control motor drive The signal logic of the HP sensor does not change even when driving the steering motor from the front side to the backside for a specified period (specified pulse).	Rotate the drive gear (yellow) with hand, and shift the belt to the center.	
E012		Error in drum driving motor/ITB driving motor		
	Oxyy	Error: drum driving motor When the DSP cannot detect the drum driving motor control signal for a specified period	1. Check if the connector at drum driving motor (M139-M142) is disconnected/not securely inserted -> disconnect and then connect the connector - connector at the drum driving motor - connector at the drum driving driver PCB (UN125-UN128) (J1621) 2. Check soil in the area around the drum encoder sensor (PS223B, PS224-PS230) and drum HP sensor (PS177, PS179, PS182, PS187) -> clean it 3. Check if the connector (J1620) at drum encoder sensor and drum HP sensor is disconnected/not securely inserted -> disconnect and then connect the connector 4. Replace the drum encoder sensor and drum HP sensor 5. Replace the drum driving motor 6. Replace the drum driver PCB 8. Replace the DC controller PCB 1-1 (UN198)	x= 1:Y 2:M 3:C 4:Bk yy=80: When the driving control encoder signal is not entered for a specified period yy=40: When the driving control HP sensor is not entered for a specified period
	10yy	Error: ITB driving motor When the digital signal processor (hereinafter called "DSP") cannot detect the ITB driving motor control signal for a specified period	1. Check if the connector at ITB driving motor (M109) is disconnected/not securely inserted -> disconnect and then connect the connector - connector at the ITB driving motor - connector at the ITB driver PCB (center) (UN217) (J1310) 2. Check soil in the area around the ITB driving encoder sensor (PS221, PS222) and ITB driving roller HP sensor (PS223) -> clean it 3. Check if the connector (J1314) at ITB driving encoder sensor and ITB driving roller HP sensor is disconnected/not securely inserted -> disconnect and then connect the connector 4. Replace the ITB driving encoder sensor and ITB driving roller HP sensor 5. Replace the ITB driving motor 6. Replace the ITB driver PCB (center) 8. Replace the DC controller PCB 1-1 (UN198)	yy=80: When the driving control encoder signal is not entered for a specified period yy=40: When the driving control HP sensor signal is not entered for a specified period yy=20: When the ITB HP sensor signal is not entered for a specified period

Code	Detail code	Cause (description)	Remedy	Remarks
<p>-When a following error occurs, after taking appropriate action (remedy), be sure to turn ON the power, and then select the following to execute ERR: COPIER > FUNCTION > CLEAR > ERR. The error is cleared by turning OFF and then ON the power after ERR execution. E000, E001, E002, E003, E004, E013, E717, E719 For errors other than those described above, the error is cleared by turning OFF and then ON the power after taking appropriate action (remedy). -When turning ON the power, be sure to turn ON the power in the following order: pickup/delivery accessories -> Main Body: Otherwise the pickup/delivery accessories are not recognized.</p>				
E012 (cont nue)	FFFF	Error: DSP not activated - Activation of DSP is not detected even when 10 sec elapse after activation of the CPU of DC controller/ - The DSP is not placed in accessible status even when 1 sec elapses when the request of ON/OFF of the ITB driving motor (drum driving motor) is issued.	1. Check DSP ROM-DIMM connection on DC controller PCB 1-1 (UN198) -> Disconnect then reconnect DSP ROM-DIMM. 2. Replace the DC controller PCB 1- 1	
	FF**	Error: ITB driving motor (drum driving motor) driving conclusion timeout - The DSP is not placed in the motor activation completion status even when 20 sec elapse after "ON" of the ITB driving motor (drum driving motor) is requested. - The DSP is not placed in the operation completion status even when 20 sec elapse after "OFF" of the ITB driving motor (drum driving motor) is requested.	1. Replace the DC controller PCB 1- 1	
E013		Error in waste toner feed path lock detection, waste toner sensor		
	0001	Error: detection of screw lock in the waste toner pipe (between the drum cleaning unit / developer and waste toner buffer) When the screw lock switch in the waste toner pipe detects the lock status for 500msec (100msec x 5 times) consecutively	1. Remove the toner clogged in the waste toner pipe 2. Replace the waste toner pipe 3. Replace the waste toner pipe internal screw lock detection SW	
	0002	Error: detection of screw lock in the waste toner pipe (between the sub station inlet and waste toner container), or excessive waste toner level in the waste toner container When the screw lock switch in the waste toner pipe detects the lock status for 500msec (100msec x 5 times) consecutively	1. Remove the toner clogged in the waste toner pipe 2. Replace the waste toner pipe 3. Replace the waste toner pipe internal screw lock detection SW	
	0003	Error: detection of screw lock in the waste toner pipe (between the waste toner buffer and main station outlet) When the screw lock switch in the waste toner pipe detects the lock status for 500msec (100msec x 5 times) consecutively	1. Remove the toner clogged in the waste toner pipe 2. Replace the waste toner pipe 3. Replace the waste toner pipe internal screw lock detection SW	
	0006	Error: waste toner full sensor adjustment When the output voltage after adjustment of the waste toner sensor is lower than 0.6V or higher than 2.78V	1. Check if the connector at waste toner full sensor 1 (TS301) and waste toner full sensor 2 (TS300) is disconnected/not securely inserted -> disconnect and then connect the connector 2. Clean the waste toner full sensor 1 and waste toner full sensor 2 3. Replace the waste toner full sensor 1 and waste toner full sensor 2	
	0010	Error: detection of secondary transfer waste toner delivery screw lock When the secondary transfer waste toner lock detection switch detects "being turned on for 5 seconds"	1. Remove the toner clogged in the waste toner pipe 2. Replace the waste toner pipe 3. Replace the secondary transfer waste toner lock detection SW	
	0011	Error: detection of secondary transfer waste toner delivery screw lock When the secondary transfer waste toner lock detection switch detects "being turned off for 5 seconds"	Replace the secondary transfer waste toner lock detection SW	
	002x	Error: waste toner full sensor When detecting the output voltage of the waste toner sensor at lower than 0.6V for 5 sec consecutively	1. Check if the connector at waste toner full sensor 1 (TS301), waste toner full sensor 2 (TS300), and waste toner buffer full sensor (TS128) is disconnected/not securely inserted -> disconnect and then connect the connector 2. Clean the waste toner full sensor 1 (TS301), waste toner full sensor 2 (TS300), and waste toner buffer full sensor (TS128) 3. Replace the waste toner full sensor 1 (TS301), waste toner full sensor 2 (TS300), and waste toner buffer full sensor (TS128)	x= 1: Waste toner full sensor 1 (TS301) 2: Waste toner full sensor 2 (TS300) 3: Waste toner buffer full sensor (TS128)

Code	Detail code	Cause (description)	Remedy	Remarks
<p>-When a following error occurs, after taking appropriate action (remedy), be sure to turn ON the power, and then select the following to execute ERR: COPIER > FUNCTION > CLEAR > ERR. The error is cleared by turning OFF and then ON the power after ERR execution. E000, E001, E002, E003, E004, E013, E717, E719 For errors other than those described above, the error is cleared by turning OFF and then ON the power after taking appropriate action (remedy). -When turning ON the power, be sure to turn ON the power in the following order: pickup/delivery accessories -> Main Body: Otherwise the pickup/delivery accessories are not recognized.</p>				
E014		Error in fixing motor		
	0x00	<p>Error: fixing motor The phase lock signal cannot be detected for 500msec (100msec x 5 times) consecutively when more than 2 sec elapsed after activation of the motor.</p>	<p>1. Check if the connector at fixing driving motor is disconnected/not securely inserted -> disconnect and then connect the connector - connector at the fixing driving motor - connector at the Sub station power connecting PCB (J4225) - connector at the fixing external driver PCB (J4165) - connector at the fixing duplexing feed driver PCB (J4081) 2. Replace the fixing driving motor</p>	<p>x= 1: Primary fixing 2: Secondary fixing Fixing driving motor: M300 (primary fixing), M305 (secondary fixing) Sub station power connecting PCB: UN301 Fixing external driver PCB: UN304 (primary fixing), THM305 (secondary fixing) Fixing duplexing feed driver PCB: UN311</p>
E015		Error in feed related roller position control		
	0x10	<p>Error: flapper position control The change of the position control sensor cannot be detected even when a specified period elapsed after the start of motor driving.</p>	<p>1. Check if the connector at fixing flapper motor (M309) and delivery reverse flapper motor (M319) is disconnected/not securely inserted -> disconnect and then connect the connector 2. Replace the fixing flapper motor and delivery reverse flapper motor</p>	<p>x= 1: Fixing path (tandem/bypass) 2: Delivery reverse flapper</p>
	0x20	<p>Error: disengage/engage of the pre-registration roller The change in the position control sensor cannot be detected even when a specified period elapsed after the start of motor driving.</p>	<p>1. Check if the connector at pre-registration pressure release motor 1 to 3 (M160 to M162) is disconnected/not securely inserted -> disconnect and then connect the connector 2. Replace the pre-registration pressure release motor 1 to 3</p>	<p>x= 1: Pre-registration roller release 1 2: Pre-registration roller release 2 3: Pre-registration roller release 3</p>
	0x30	<p>Error: disengage/engage of the cross feed roller The change in the position control sensor cannot be detected even when a specified period elapsed after the start of motor driving.</p>	<p>1. Check if the connector at cross feed pressure release motor 1 to 3 (M169 to M171) and cross feed push-on plate jogging motor (M167) is disconnected/not securely inserted -> disconnect and then connect the connector 2. Replace the cross feed pressure release motor 1 to 3 and cross feed push-on plate jogging motor</p>	<p>x=1: Cross feed roller release 1 2: Cross feed roller release 2 3: Cross feed roller release 3 4: Cross feed jogging</p>
	0x40	<p>Error: decurler roller advancement control The change in the position control sensor cannot be detected even when a specified period elapsed after the start of motor driving.</p>	<p>1. Check if the connector at bypass decurler detach/attach motor (M333), duplexing decurler advancement adjusting motor (M325), and delivery decurler advancement adjusting motor 1 and 2 (M315 and M316) is disconnected/not securely inserted -> disconnect and then connect the connector 2. Replace the bypass decurler detach/attach motor, duplexing decurler advancement adjusting motor, and delivery decurler advancement adjusting motor 1 and 2</p>	<p>x= 1: Delivery decurler 1 2: Delivery decurler 2 3: Duplexing decurler 4: Bypass decurler</p>
	0x50	<p>Error: disengage/engage control in the area around the registration unit The change in the position control sensor cannot be detected even when a specified period elapsed after the start of motor driving.</p>	<p>1. Check if the connector at registration release motor (M165) and registration swing motor (M166) is disconnected/not securely inserted -> disconnect and then connect the connector 2. Replace the registration release motor and registration swing motor</p>	<p>x= 1: Registration roller release 2: Registration swing roller release</p>
E016		Error in drum cleaner motor		
	0x00	<p>Error: drum cleaner motor The phase lock signal cannot be detected for 500msec (100msec x 5 times) consecutively when more than 2 sec elapsed after activation of the motor.</p>	<p>1. Check if the connector at drum cleaner motor (M134, M128, M122, M116) is disconnected/not securely inserted -> disconnect and then connect the connector 2. Replace the drum cleaner motor</p>	<p>x= 1:Y 2:M 3:C 4:Bk</p>

Code	Detail code	Cause (description)	Remedy	Remarks
<p>-When a following error occurs, after taking appropriate action (remedy), be sure to turn ON the power, and then select the following to execute ERR: COPIER > FUNCTION > CLEAR > ERR. The error is cleared by turning OFF and then ON the power after ERR execution. E000, E001, E002, E003, E004, E013, E717, E719 For errors other than those described above, the error is cleared by turning OFF and then ON the power after taking appropriate action (remedy). -When turning ON the power, be sure to turn ON the power in the following order: pickup/delivery accessories -> Main Body: Otherwise the pickup/delivery accessories are not recognized.</p>				
E018 Error in shutter operation				
	0x01	Error: color registration patch sensor shutter When the shutter is "open", it stays at the home position due to motor lock or sensor failure.	1. Check if the connector at leading edge registration patch sensor shutter motor (M114) and color registration patch sensor shutter motor (M155) is disconnected/not securely inserted -> disconnect and then connect the connector 2. Check if the connector at leading edge registration sensor shutter HP sensor (PS105) and color registration patch sensor shutter HP sensor (PS133) is disconnected/not securely inserted -> disconnect and then connect the connector 3. Replace the leading edge registration patch sensor shutter motor and color registration patch sensor shutter motor 4. Replace the leading edge registration sensor shutter HP sensor and color registration patch sensor shutter HP sensor	x= 1: Leading edge registration patch sensor 2: Color registration patch sensor
	0x02	Error: color registration patch sensor shutter When the shutter is "close", it does not move to the home position due to motor lock or sensor failure.	1. Replace the leading edge registration patch sensor shutter motor (M114) and color registration patch sensor shutter motor (M155) 2. Replace the leading edge registration shutter HP sensor (PS105) and color registration patch sensor shutter HP sensor (PS133)	x= 1: Leading edge registration patch sensor 2: Color registration patch sensor
	0x03	Error: color registration patch sensor shutter When the shutter is initialized, it does not move to the home position due to motor lock or sensor failure.	1. Check if the connector at leading edge registration patch sensor shutter motor (M114) and color registration patch sensor shutter motor (M155) is disconnected/not securely inserted -> disconnect and then connect the connector 2. Check if the connector at leading edge registration sensor shutter HP sensor (PS105) and color registration patch sensor shutter HP sensor (PS133) is disconnected/not securely inserted -> disconnect and then connect the connector 3. Replace the leading edge registration patch sensor shutter motor and color registration patch sensor shutter motor 4. Replace the leading edge registration sensor shutter HP sensor and color registration patch sensor shutter HP sensor	x= 1: Leading edge registration patch sensor 2: Color registration patch sensor
	0x11	Error: drum patch sensor shutter When the shutter is "open", it stays at the home position due to motor lock or sensor failure.	1. Clean the shutter. 2. Check if the connector at drum patch sensor cleaning motor (M135, M129, M117, M123) is disconnected/not securely inserted -> disconnect and then connect the connector - connector at the process unit driver PCB (UN161 to 164) (J1377) 3. Check if the connector at patch sensor cleaning motor HP sensor (PS215, PS206, PS202, PS208) is disconnected/not securely inserted -> disconnect and then connect the connector 4. Replace the drum patch sensor cleaning motor 5. Replace the drum patch sensor cleaning motor HP sensor	x= 1:Y 2:M 3:C 4:Bk
	0x12	Error: drum patch sensor shutter When the shutter is "close", it does not move to the home position due to motor lock or sensor failure.	1. Replace the drum patch sensor cleaning motor (M135, M129, M117, M123) 2. Replace the patch sensor cleaning motor HP sensor (PS215, PS206, PS202, PS208)	x= 1:Y 2:M 3:C 4:Bk
	0x13	Error: drum patch sensor shutter When the shutter is initialized, it does not move to the home position due to motor lock or sensor failure.	1. Check if the connector at drum patch sensor cleaning motor (M135, M129, M117, M123) is disconnected/not securely inserted -> disconnect and then connect the connector - connector at the process unit driver PCB (UN161 to 164) (J1377) 2. Check if the connector at patch sensor cleaning motor HP sensor (PS215, PS206, PS202, PS208) is disconnected/not securely inserted -> disconnect and then connect the connector 3. Replace the drum patch sensor cleaning motor 4. Replace the drum patch sensor cleaning motor HP sensor	x= 1:Y 2:M 3:C 4:Bk
	1x1y	Error: excess current in the drum patch sensor shutter motor Excess current of shutter motor is detected when the above-mentioned shutter errors (Detailed Code: 0x11 to 0x13) are detected.	1. Check whether the cables of the drum patch sensor cleaning motor(s) (M135, M129, M117, M123) are being nipped. 2. Check load on drum patch sensor cleaning motor spindle(s) (any obstacles preventing motor rotation? etc.). 3. Replace drum patch sensor cleaning motor(s).	x= 1:Y 2:M 3:C 4:Bk y= 1: When the shutter is open 2: When the shutter is close 3: When the shutter is initialized

Code	Detail code	Cause (description)	Remedy	Remarks
<p>-When a following error occurs, after taking appropriate action (remedy), be sure to turn ON the power, and then select the following to execute ERR: COPIER > FUNCTION > CLEAR > ERR. The error is cleared by turning OFF and then ON the power after ERR execution. E000, E001, E002, E003, E004, E013, E717, E719 For errors other than those described above, the error is cleared by turning OFF and then ON the power after taking appropriate action (remedy). -When turning ON the power, be sure to turn ON the power in the following order: pickup/delivery accessories -> Main Body: Otherwise the pickup/delivery accessories are not recognized.</p>				
E019		Error in waste toner motor		
	0001	Error: drum waste toner delivery motor The phase lock signal cannot be detected for 500msec (100msec x 5 times) consecutively when more than 2 sec elapsed after activation of the motor.	1. Check if the connector at drum waste toner delivery motor (M180) is disconnected/not securely inserted -> disconnect and then connect the connector 2. Replace the drum waste toner delivery motor	
	0002	Error: waste toner delivery motor The phase lock signal cannot be detected for 500msec (100msec x 5 times) consecutively when more than 2 sec elapsed after activation of the motor.	1. Check if the connector at waste toner delivery motor (M314) is disconnected/not securely inserted -> disconnect and then connect the connector 2. Replace the waste toner delivery motor	
	0003	Error: buffer motor The phase lock signal cannot be detected for 500msec (100msec x 5 times) consecutively when more than 2 sec elapsed after activation of the motor.	1. Check if the connector at buffer motor (M179) is disconnected/not securely inserted -> disconnect and then connect the connector 2. Replace the buffer motor	

Code	Detail code	Cause (description)	Remedy	Remarks
<p>-When a following error occurs, after taking appropriate action (remedy), be sure to turn ON the power, and then select the following to execute ERR: COPIER > FUNCTION > CLEAR > ERR. The error is cleared by turning OFF and then ON the power after ERR execution. E000, E001, E002, E003, E004, E013, E717, E719</p> <p>For errors other than those described above, the error is cleared by turning OFF and then ON the power after taking appropriate action (remedy). -When turning ON the power, be sure to turn ON the power in the following order: pickup/delivery accessories -> Main Body: Otherwise the pickup/delivery accessories are not recognized.</p>				
E020		ATR error		

Code	Detail code	Cause (description)	Remedy	Remarks
<p>-When a following error occurs, after taking appropriate action (remedy), be sure to turn ON the power, and then select the following to execute ERR: COPIER > FUNCTION > CLEAR > ERR. The error is cleared by turning OFF and then ON the power after ERR execution. E000, E001, E002, E003, E004, E013, E717, E719 For errors other than those described above, the error is cleared by turning OFF and then ON the power after taking appropriate action (remedy). -When turning ON the power, be sure to turn ON the power in the following order: pickup/delivery accessories -> Main Body: Otherwise the pickup/delivery accessories are not recognized.</p>				
	0x81	Lower limit error in light intensity on drum base (reflecting light intensity from the drum surface) DISPLAY>DENS>P-B-P-Y/M/C/ K(Measured value of drum base)<150	Refer to "Detail in E020".	x= 1:Y 2:M 3:C 4:Bk
	0x82	Lower limit error in current passed to the sensor while the patch sensor LED is off DISPLAY>DENS>P-D-P-Y/M/C/ K(Dark state current value) <= 30		
	0x84	Fault at sampling drum base DISPLAY>DENS>P-B-P-Y/M/C/ K(Measured value of drum base) - DISPLAY>DENS>P-D-P-Y/M/C/ K(dark state current value) <=30		
	0x85	Fault at sampling 1 in patch image DISPLAY>DENS>DENS-S-Y/M/C/ K(Measured value of patch image) - DISPLAY>DENS>P-D-P-Y/M/C/ K(dark state current value) <= 30		
	0x86	Fault at sampling 2 in patch image DISPLAY>DENS>DENS-S-Y/M/C/ K(Measured value of patch image) - DISPLAY>DENS>P-B-P-Y/M/C/ K(measured value of drum base) <= 30		
	0x87	Upper limit error 2 in current passed to the sensor while the patch sensor LED is off DISPLAY>DENS>P-D-P-Y/M/C/ K(Dark state current value) >= 930		
	0x90	Lower limit error in ATR patch image density DISPLAY>DENS>DENS-S-Y/M/C/ K (patch reading value after calculation) <= 16 when making prints		
	0x91	Lower limit error in ATR patch image density DISPLAY>DENS>DENS-S-Y/M/C/ K (patch reading value after calculation) >= 880 when making prints		
	0x92	Lower limit error in developer density DISPLAY>DENS>DENS-S-Y/M/C/ K is -5% or less for 3 times continuously		
	0x93	Upper limit error in developer density DISPLAY>DENS>DENS-S-Y/M/C/ K is +5% or more for 3 times continuously		
	0xB0	Lower limit error in signal value of toner density sensor When making prints, the DISPLAY>DENS>SGLL-Y/M/C/K value "Y:0040, M/C/K:0030H" or less for 5 prints continuously		
	0xB1	Upper limit error in signal value of toner density sensor When making prints, the DISPLAY>DENS>SGLL-Y/M/C/K value "Y:192, M/C/K:126" or more for 5 prints continuously		
	0xC2	Error in variation of sampling value in patch image		

Code	Detail code	Cause (description)	Remedy	Remarks
<p>-When a following error occurs, after taking appropriate action (remedy), be sure to turn ON the power, and then select the following to execute ERR: COPIER > FUNCTION > CLEAR > ERR. The error is cleared by turning OFF and then ON the power after ERR execution. E000, E001, E002, E003, E004, E013, E717, E719 For errors other than those described above, the error is cleared by turning OFF and then ON the power after taking appropriate action (remedy). -When turning ON the power, be sure to turn ON the power in the following order: pickup/delivery accessories -> Main Body: Otherwise the pickup/delivery accessories are not recognized.</p>				
E023				
	0x00	Error: developing motor The phase lock signal cannot be detected for 500msec (100msec x 5 times) consecutively when more than 2 sec elapsed after activation of the motor.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Rotate the developing cylinder gear only (Do not rotate it more than one rotation.) 2. Rotate the gear of developer stirring screw only (Do not rotate it more than one rotation.) -> If it cannot be rotated, replace the developing assembly 3. Check if the connector at developing motor (M133, M127, M115, M121) is disconnected/not securely inserted -> disconnect and then connect the connector 4. Replace the developing motor 	x= 1:Y 2:M 3:C 4:Bk
E024				
Connection error in developing assembly knocking motor				
	000x	Connection error in developing assembly knocking motor The hardware detects an error signal in motor connection when the machine is shifting to the standby state.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Check if the connector at developing assembly knocking motor (M203, M204, M205, M206) is disconnected/not securely inserted -> disconnect and then connect the connector 2. Replace the developing assembly knocking motor 	x= 1:Y 2:M 3:C 4:Bk
E025				
Error in toner delivery related motor				
	0x00	Error: hopper motor The phase lock signal cannot be detected for 500msec (100msec x 5 times) consecutively when more than 2 sec elapsed after activation of the motor.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Check if the connector at hopper motor (M195, M198, M197, M196) is disconnected/not securely inserted -> disconnect and then connect the connector 2. Replace the hopper motor 	x= 1:Y 2:M 3:C 4:Bk
	0x10	Error: detection of excess current in the toner container motor	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Check if the connector at toner container motor (M146, M145, M143, M144) is disconnected/not securely inserted -> disconnect and then connect the connector 2. Replace the toner container motor 	x= 1:Y 2:M 3:C 4:Bk
	0x20	Error: detection of excess current in the sub hopper motor	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Check whether the cables of the sub-hopper motor(s) (M137, M131, M119, M125) are being nipped. 2. Check load on sub-hopper motor spindle(s) (any obstacles preventing motor rotation? etc.). 3. Replace sub-hopper motor(s). 	x= 1:Y 2:M 3:C 4:Bk
E027				
Fault in sub hopper motor				
	0x01	Error: sub hopper motor lock When rotation cannot be performed for one block of toner supply due to motor lock	Check the load on the sub hopper shaft (e.g., is there any foreign particle disturbing the motor rotation?)	x= 1:Y 2:M 3:C 4:Bk
	0x02	Error: sub hopper motor sequence When the sub hopper cannot stop after it was rotated for one block of toner supply	Turn OFF/ON the main power	x= 1:Y 2:M 3:C 4:Bk
E028				
Fault in toner container slide motor				
	0x01	Error: toner container slide motor lock When sliding of toner container is not completed within 5 sec	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Check if the connector at toner container slide motor (M193, M191, M190, M192) is disconnected/not securely inserted -> disconnect and then connect the connector 2. Replace the toner container slide motor 	x= 1:Y 2:M 3:C 4:Bk
	0x02	Error: detection of excess current in the toner container slide motor	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Check whether the cables of the toner container slider motor(s) (M193, M191, M190, M192) are being nipped. 2. Check load on sub-hopper motor spindle(s) (any obstacles preventing motor rotation? etc.). 3. Replace toner container slider motor (s). 	x= 1:Y 2:M 3:C 4:Bk
E032				
ASSIST (NE controller) not working				
	0001	Count pulse signal disconnection detected.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Check for disconnected/loose wiring of the cable connector -> re-connect 2. Replace the cable. 	

Code	Detail code	Cause (description)	Remedy	Remarks
<p>-When a following error occurs, after taking appropriate action (remedy), be sure to turn ON the power, and then select the following to execute ERR: COPIER > FUNCTION > CLEAR > ERR. The error is cleared by turning OFF and then ON the power after ERR execution. E000, E001, E002, E003, E004, E013, E717, E719 For errors other than those described above, the error is cleared by turning OFF and then ON the power after taking appropriate action (remedy). -When turning ON the power, be sure to turn ON the power in the following order: pickup/delivery accessories -> Main Body: Otherwise the pickup/delivery accessories are not recognized.</p>				
E060 Error in charging wire cleaning				
	100x	Error: cleaner materials not returned When cleaner materials are not returned (The HP sensor is not turned on)	Replace the primary charging wire cleaning motor HP sensor (PS240 to M243)	x= 1:Y 2:M 3:C 4:Bk
	200x	Error: operation start of cleaner materials When the HP sensor is not turned off after the operation starts	1. Check if the connector at primary charging wire cleaning motor (M136, M130, M118, M124) is disconnected/not securely inserted -> disconnect and then connect the connector 2. Check if the connector at primary charging wire cleaning motor HP sensor (PS240 to M243) is disconnected/not securely inserted -> disconnect and then connect the connector 3. Replace the primary charging wire cleaning motor HP sensor	x= 1:Y 2:M 3:C 4:Bk
	300x	Error: detection of excess current in the charging wire cleaning motor Primary charging wire cleaning motor: when detecting an excess current error in the motor at the occurrence of the above-mentioned errors (Detailed Codes: 10xx, 20xx) Pre-transfer charging wire cleaning motor: when detecting an excess current error during operation	1. Check whether the cables of the primary charging wire cleaning motor(s) (M136, M130, M118, M124) or the pre-transfer charging wire cleaning motor (M110) are being nipped. 2. Check load on primary charging wire motor and pre-transfer charging wire cleaning motor spindle(s) (any obstacles preventing motor rotation? etc.). 3. Replace primary charging wire cleaning motor(s) or pre-transfer charging wire cleaning motor..	x= 1:Y 2:M 3:C 4:Bk (All for primary charging assembly) x= 5: Pre-transfer charging assembly
E061 Error in potential control				
	0x11	Error: lower limit of the potential control grid bias When "Vgrid" is 400V or lower	Refer to "Detail in E061"	x= 1:Y 2:M 3:C 4:Bk
	0x81	Error: lack of laser power When the difference between Vd and V1 is lower than 200V at the maximum level of potential control laser power		
	0x82	Error: adjustment of laser power When the difference of V1 between at the maximum level and the minimum level of potential control laser power is lower than 100V		
	0x91	Error: lower limit of the patch image laser power determined by patch potential control When the patch image laser power is 30(H) or lower		
	0x92	Error: upper limit of the patch image laser power determined by patch potential control When the patch image laser power is FF(H) or higher		

Code	Detail code	Cause (description)	Remedy	Remarks
<p>-When a following error occurs, after taking appropriate action (remedy), be sure to turn ON the power, and then select the following to execute ERR: COPIER > FUNCTION > CLEAR > ERR. The error is cleared by turning OFF and then ON the power after ERR execution. E000, E001, E002, E003, E004, E013, E717, E719 For errors other than those described above, the error is cleared by turning OFF and then ON the power after taking appropriate action (remedy). -When turning ON the power, be sure to turn ON the power in the following order: pickup/delivery accessories -> Main Body: Otherwise the pickup/delivery accessories are not recognized.</p>				
E062		Error in drum heater		
	0x00	<p>Error: initial lower temperature After the machine was activated, the temperature only increased by 0.5 deg C or more per minute in the condition where the drum was being stopped, before reaching the target control temperature (42.5 deg C).</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Check drum heater switch (SW3) (is the drum heater switch ON when the process unit cover is attached?) -> Re-attach process unit cover. 2. Check following for faulty connection/ loose wiring -> Disconnect then reconnect connectors. - Environment heater driver PCB (J4400/ 4405/ 4404/ 4401) - Terminal mount (J7856) - DC controller PCB 1-1 (J1054) - Drum surface temperature sensor - Process unit driver PCB (J1361/ 1378) - DC controller PCB 1-2 (J1007) 3. Clean drum heater contacts (slip rings). 4. Replace environment heater driver PCB. 5. Replace drum heater. 6. Replace drum surface temperature sensor. 7. Replace process unit driver PCB. 	x= 1:Y 2:M 3:C 4:Bk
	0x01	<p>Error: high temperature When detecting the temperature at 96.5 deg C or higher for 40 sec (4 sec x 10 times) consecutively after reaching the target control temperature (42.5 deg C)</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Check following for nipped cables. - Environment heater driver PCB (J4404) - DC controller PCB 1-1 (J1054) - Drum surface temperature sensor - Process unit driver PCB (J1361/ 1378) - DC controller PCB 1-2 (J1007) 2. Replace environment heater driver PCB. 3. Replace drum surface temperature sensor. 4. Process unit driver PCB. 5. Replace DC controller PCB 1-1. 6. Replace DC controller PCB 1-2. 	x= 1:Y 2:M 3:C 4:Bk
	0x02	<p>Error: low temperature When detecting the temperature at 22.5 deg C or lower for 40 sec (4 sec x 10 times) consecutively after reaching the target control temperature (42.5 deg C)</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Check drum heater switch (SW3) (is the drum heater switch ON when the process unit cover is attached?) -> Re-attach process unit cover. 2. Check following for faulty connection/ loose wiring -> Disconnect then reconnect connectors. - Environment heater driver PCB (J4400/ 4405/ 4404/ 4401) - Terminal mount (J7856) - DC controller PCB 1-1 (J1054) - Drum surface temperature sensor - Process unit driver PCB (J1361/ 1378) - DC controller PCB 1-2 (J1007) 3. Clean drum heater contacts (slip rings). 4. Replace environment heater driver PCB. 5. Replace drum heater. 6. Replace drum surface temperature sensor. 7. Replace process unit driver PCB. 	x= 1:Y 2:M 3:C 4:Bk
	1000	<p>Failure: environment heater driver PCB Disconnection of AC power supply could not be detected when 100msec elapsed after the AC supplying electricity to the drum heater was turned off.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Check following for faulty connection/ loose wiring -> Disconnect then reconnect connectors. - Environment heater driver PCB (J4407) - Shutdown driver heater PCB (J9135/9133) - Main controller PCB (MAIN-M) (J9180) 2. Replace the environment heater driver PCB. 3. Replace the shutdown PCB. 	

Code	Detail code	Cause (description)	Remedy	Remarks
<p>-When a following error occurs, after taking appropriate action (remedy), be sure to turn ON the power, and then select the following to execute ERR: COPIER > FUNCTION > CLEAR > ERR. The error is cleared by turning OFF and then ON the power after ERR execution. E000, E001, E002, E003, E004, E013, E717, E719 For errors other than those described above, the error is cleared by turning OFF and then ON the power after taking appropriate action (remedy). -When turning ON the power, be sure to turn ON the power in the following order: pickup/delivery accessories -> Main Body: Otherwise the pickup/delivery accessories are not recognized.</p>				
E065		Error in primary charging high-voltage/developing high-voltage		
	0x01	Error: leak in primary charging When detecting the leak status for 300msec (100msec x 3 times) consecutively when 200msec elapsed after the primary charging high-voltage output started	1. Turn the power OFF/ON 2. Replace the primary charging assembly 3. Replace the drum 4. Check if the connector at primary charging assembly and HV1 PCB (UN137 to UN140) is disconnected/not securely inserted -> disconnect and then connect the connector 5. Replace the HV1 PCB	x= 1:Y 2:M 3:C 4:Bk
	0x02	Error: developing AC leak When detecting the leak status for 300msec (100msec x 3 times) consecutively when 200msec elapsed after the developing AC output started	1. Turn the power OFF/ON. 2. Check scratches on the drum surface -> replace the drum 3. Check holes and peering on the developing cylinder edge seal -> replace the developer 4. Check if the connector at developer and HV5 PCB (UN133 to UN136) is disconnected/not securely inserted -> disconnect and then connect the connector 5. Replace the HV5 PCB	x= 1:Y 2:M 3:C 4:Bk Alarm generated until third occurrence.
E069		Error related to transfer high-voltage		
	0x90	Error: leak in primary transfer When detecting the leak status for 300msec (100msec x 3 times) consecutively when 200msec elapsed after the primary transfer high-voltage output started	1. Turn the power OFF/ON 2. Execute primary transfer ATVC control (COPIER>FUNCTION>MISC-P>1ATVC-EX) 3. Clean the primary transfer high-voltage contact point 4. Replace the primary transfer roller 5. Check if the connector at HV2 PCB (UN112 to UN115) is disconnected/not securely inserted -> disconnect and then connect the connector 6. Replace the HV2 PCB	x= 1:Y 2:M 3:C 4:Bk Alarm generated until third occurrence.
	2090	Error: leak in secondary transfer When detecting the leak status for 300msec (100msec x 3 times) consecutively when 200msec elapsed after the secondary transfer high-voltage output started	1. Turn the power OFF/ON 2. Execute secondary transfer ATVC control (COPIER>FUNCTION>MISC-P>2ATVC-EX) 3. Clean the secondary transfer high-voltage contact point 4. Replace the secondary transfer external roller 5. Check if the connector at HV4 PCB (UN116) is disconnected/not securely inserted -> disconnect and then connect the connector 6. Replace the HV4 PCB	x= 1:Y 2:M 3:C 4:Bk Alarm generated until third occurrence.
	2290	Error: leak in pre-transfer charging AC When detecting the leak status for 300msec (100msec x 3 times) consecutively when 200msec elapsed after the pre-transfer charging AC output started	1. Turn the power OFF/ON 2. Clean the pre-transfer charging high-voltage contact point 3. Replace the pre-transfer charging assembly 4. Check if the connector at HV7 PCB (UN150) is disconnected/not securely inserted -> disconnect and then connect the connector 5. Replace the HV7 PCB	x= 1:Y 2:M 3:C 4:Bk Alarm generated until third occurrence.

Code	Detail code	Cause (description)	Remedy	Remarks
<p>-When a following error occurs, after taking appropriate action (remedy), be sure to turn ON the power, and then select the following to execute ERR: COPIER > FUNCTION > CLEAR > ERR. The error is cleared by turning OFF and then ON the power after ERR execution. E000, E001, E002, E003, E004, E013, E717, E719 For errors other than those described above, the error is cleared by turning OFF and then ON the power after taking appropriate action (remedy). -When turning ON the power, be sure to turn ON the power in the following order: pickup/delivery accessories -> Main Body: Otherwise the pickup/delivery accessories are not recognized.</p>				
E075		Error in ITB displacement correction control		
	0001	Error: ITB HP The ITB-HP signal cannot be detected even when a specified period elapsed during ITB steering control (during rotation of the ITB driving motor).	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. After moving the ITB to the centre in the main scanning direction, turn the power OFF/ ON. 2. Clean the ITB HP detection seal. (use alcohol solution + lint-free paper) 3. Clean the ITB HP upper sensor (PS102) and lower sensor (PS101). 4. Check the ITB HP upper and lower sensors for any faulty connection/ loose wiring -> Disconnect then reconnect the connectors. 5. Replace the ITB HP upper or lower sensor. 	
	0002	Error: ITB steering HP The steering HP signal cannot be detected even after a specified period elapsed after the start of ITB steering HP detection.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. After moving the ITB to the centre in the main scanning direction, turn the power OFF/ ON. 2. Clean the ITB steering motor HP sensor (PS104). 3. Check the ITB steering motor HP sensor for any faulty connection/ loose wiring -> Disconnect then reconnect the connectors. 4. Clean the HP sticker on the inner face of the ITB at the rear side. 5. Replace the ITB steering motor HP sensor. 	
	0003	Error: ITB full displacement When detecting that the ITB edge is fully displaced regardless of the ITB driving status (regardless of whether it is being stopped or rotated)	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. After moving the ITB to the centre in the main scanning direction, turn the power OFF/ ON. 2. Clean the ITB skew detection sensor (PS100). 3. Check the ITB skew detection sensor for any faulty connection/ loose wiring -> Disconnect then reconnect the connectors. 4. Replace the ITB skew detection sensor. 	
	1000	Error: acquisition of ITB edge profile When no stable detection result can be obtained even after executing sampling at the neutral position for 20 times	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. After moving the ITB to the centre in the main scanning direction, turn the power OFF/ ON. 2. Clean the ITB skew detection sensor (PS100). 3. Check the ITB skew detection sensor for any faulty connection/ loose wiring -> Disconnect then reconnect the connectors. 4. Replace the ITB skew detection sensor. 5. Check the rear edge of the ITB -> If there is any damage, replace the ITB. 	
	2000	Error: acquisition of ITB edge profile When the quantity of ITB edge data acquired for one rotation is not within a specified range (70 to 80)	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. After moving the ITB to the centre in the main scanning direction, turn the power OFF/ ON. 2. Clean the ITB HP upper sensor (PS102) and lower sensor (PS101). 3. Check the ITB HP upper and lower sensors for any faulty connection/ loose wiring -> Disconnect then reconnect the connectors. 4. Replace the ITB HP upper or lower sensor. 	

Code	Detail code	Cause (description)	Remedy	Remarks
<p>-When a following error occurs, after taking appropriate action (remedy), be sure to turn ON the power, and then select the following to execute ERR: COPIER > FUNCTION > CLEAR > ERR. The error is cleared by turning OFF and then ON the power after ERR execution. E000, E001, E002, E003, E004, E013, E717, E719 For errors other than those described above, the error is cleared by turning OFF and then ON the power after taking appropriate action (remedy). -When turning ON the power, be sure to turn ON the power in the following order: pickup/delivery accessories -> Main Body: Otherwise the pickup/delivery accessories are not recognized.</p>				
E076		Error in ITB web		
	0001	Error: ITB web releasing motor When disengagement/engagement could not be completed within 3 sec	1. Check if the connector at ITB web releasing motor (M113) is disconnected/not securely inserted -> disconnect and then connect the connector 2. Replace the ITB web releasing motor	
	0002	Error: absence of ITB web When detecting the absence in ITB web	1. Replace the ITB web	
	0003	Error: ITB web motor When the sensor logical change could not be detected within 5 sec after the ITB web motor was turned on	1. Check if the connector at ITB web motor (M112) is disconnected/not securely inserted -> disconnect and then connect the connector 2. Replace the ITB web motor	
	0004	Error: detection of excess current in the ITB web releasing motor When detecting a motor excess current error at the occurrence of the ITB web releasing motor error (Detailed Code: 0001)	1. Check whether the ITB web release motor (M113) cables are being nipped. 2. Check load on ITB web release motor spindle (any obstacles preventing motor rotation? etc.). 3. Replace ITB web release motor.	
	0005	Error: detection of excess current in the ITB web motor When detecting a motor excess current error at the occurrence of the ITB web motor error (Detailed Code: 0003)	1. Check whether the ITB web motor (M112) cables are being nipped. 2. Check load on ITB web motor spindle (any obstacles preventing motor rotation? etc.). 3. Replace ITB web motor.	
E077		Error in engagement/disengagement of the secondary transfer external roller		
	0001	When engagement/disengagement of the secondary transfer external roller could not be completed within 5 sec	1. Check if the connector at secondary transfer pressure release motor (M184) is disconnected/not securely inserted -> disconnect and then connect the connector 2. Replace the secondary transfer pressure release motor	
E078		Error in ITB cleaner motor		
	0001	Error: ITB cleaner motor The phase lock signal cannot be detected for 500msec (100msec x 5 times) consecutively when more than 2 sec elapsed after activation of the motor.	1. Check if the connector at ITB cleaner motor (M108) is disconnected/not securely inserted -> disconnect and then connect the connector 2. Replace the ITB cleaner motor	
E102		Error in laser scanner unit EEPROM		
	0x01	Fault: laser scanner unit EEPROM When detecting a fault in the data written in the laser scanner unit EEPROM	1. Check if the connector at laser scanner unit is disconnected/not securely inserted -> disconnect and then connect the connector - connector at the laser scanner unit - connector at the DC controller PCB 1-3 (UN240) 2. Check if the harness between the laser scanner unit and DC controller PCB 1-3 is disconnected/caught by a unit 3. Replace the laser scanner unit 4. Replace the DC controller PCB 1-3	x= 1:Y 2:M 3:C 4:Bk
E110		Error in laser scanner motor lock		
	0x01	When the laser scanner motor does not reach a certain speed within a specified period	1. Check if the connector at laser scanner unit is disconnected/not securely inserted -> disconnect and then connect the connector - connector at the laser scanner unit - connector at the DC controller PCB 1-3 (UN240) 2. Check if the harness between the laser scanner unit and DC controller PCB 1-3 is disconnected/caught by a unit 3. Replace the laser scanner unit 4. Replace the DC controller PCB 1-3	x= 1:Y 2:M 3:C 4:Bk
E121		Error in laser cooling fan		
	0x00	Error: laser cooling fan When detecting phase unlock for 2 sec consecutively when 10 sec elapsed after the fan was turned on	1. Check connectors for faulty connections/ loose wiring -> Disconnect then reconnect the connectors. 2. Replace laser cooling fan.	x= 1:Y 2:M 3:C 4:Bk
E193		Error in video/laser control ASIC		
	0x01	When the setting of "add-on through" for the video/laser control ASIC has failed 10 times consecutively	1. Check if the connector between the DC controller PCB 1-1 and DC controller PCB 1-3 is disconnected/not securely inserted -> disconnect and then connect the connector 2. Replace the DC controller PCB 1-3 3. Replace the DC controller PCB 1-1	x= 1:Y 2:M 3:C 4:Bk

Code	Detail code	Cause (description)	Remedy	Remarks
<p>-When a following error occurs, after taking appropriate action (remedy), be sure to turn ON the power, and then select the following to execute ERR: COPIER > FUNCTION > CLEAR > ERR. The error is cleared by turning OFF and then ON the power after ERR execution. E000, E001, E002, E003, E004, E013, E717, E719 For errors other than those described above, the error is cleared by turning OFF and then ON the power after taking appropriate action (remedy). -When turning ON the power, be sure to turn ON the power in the following order: pickup/delivery accessories -> Main Body: Otherwise the pickup/delivery accessories are not recognized.</p>				
E194		Error related to color displacement correction control		
	0x01	Error: upper limit of color displacement correction control When the clockwise driving volume of the lens skew control motor reached 462 (cumulative) pulses or more	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Turn OFF/ON the power 2. Clean the sensor surface of the color registration patch sensor 3. Execute the ITB gloss recovery mode (COPIER>FUNCTION>HV-TR>ITB-GLS) 4. Execute auto color displacement correction control (COPIER > FUNCTION > MISC-P > AT-IMG-X) 5. Replace the ITB 	x= 1:Y 2:M 3:C 4:Bk
	0x02	Error: upper limit of color displacement correction control When the counterclockwise driving volume of the lens skew control motor reached 462 (cumulative) pulses or more	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Turn OFF/ON the power 2. Clean the sensor surface of the color registration patch sensor 3. Execute the ITB gloss recovery mode (COPIER>FUNCTION>HV-TR>ITB-GLS) 4. Execute auto color displacement correction control (COPIER > FUNCTION > MISC-P > AT-IMG-X) 5. Replace the ITB 	x= 1:Y 2:M 3:C 4:Bk
	0x11	Error: color registration patch sensor When there is no change in sensor output at the time of adjustment of sensor light volume	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Check following for faulty connections/ loose wiring -> Disconnect then reconnect the connectors. - Color registration patch sensors - Registration patch sensor drive PCBs (J1453/ 1454/ 1454/ 1455/ 1450) - DC controller PCB 1-2 (J1028) 2. Replace color registration patch sensor. 3. Replace registration patch sensor driver. 4. Replace DC controller PCB 1-2. 	Sensor position x= 1:Front (PS134) 2: Center (PS135) 3: Rear (PS136)
	0x15	Error: detection of decrease in ITB gloss (color registration patch sensor unit) When detecting that the ITB gloss value is 40 or lower in the area over 30mm at the time of adjustment of color registration patch sensor light volume	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Turn OFF/ON the power 2. Clean the sensor surface of the color registration patch sensor 3. Execute the ITB gloss recovery mode (COPIER>FUNCTION>HV-TR>ITB-GLS) 4. Execute auto color displacement correction control (COPIER > FUNCTION > MISC-P > AT-IMG-X) 5. Replace the ITB 	Sensor position x= 1:Front (PS134) 2: Center (PS135) 3: Rear (PS136)
	0021	Error: leading edge registration patch sensor When there is no change in sensor output at the time of adjustment of sensor light volume	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Check following for faulty connections/ loose wiring -> Disconnect then reconnect the connectors. - Leading edge registration patch sensor - ITB driver PCB (right) (J1331) - DC controller PCB 1-1 (J1032) 2. Replace leading edge registration patch sensor. 3. Replace the ITB driver PCB (right). 4. Replace the DC controller PCB 1-1. 	
	005x	Error: ITB scratch detection control When detecting faulty data during ITB scratch detection	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Turn power OFF/ ON, execute (COPIER > FUNCTION > MISC-P > INTR-EX). 2. Check following for faulty connections/ loose wiring -> Disconnect then reconnect the connectors. - ITB HP sensor- Leading edge registration sensor - ITB driver PCB (center) (J1302) - ITB driver PCB (right) (J1331) - DC controller PCB 1-1 (J1032/ 1033) 3. Replace ITB HP sensor. 4. Replace leading edge registration patch sensor. 5. ITB driver PCB (centre). 6. Replace ITB driver PCB (right). 7. Replace DC controller PCB 1-1. 8. Check condition of ITB surface -> Replace ITB if there are dents, scratches, soiling, etc. 	x= 1: The threshold of the quantity of ITB scratch data acquired is exceeded 2: The threshold of the width of the scratch on the ITB belt is exceeded 3: The threshold of the position of the scratch on the ITB belt is exceeded

Code	Detail code	Cause (description)	Remedy	Remarks
<p>-When a following error occurs, after taking appropriate action (remedy), be sure to turn ON the power, and then select the following to execute ERR: COPIER > FUNCTION > CLEAR > ERR. The error is cleared by turning OFF and then ON the power after ERR execution. E000, E001, E002, E003, E004, E013, E717, E719 For errors other than those described above, the error is cleared by turning OFF and then ON the power after taking appropriate action (remedy). -When turning ON the power, be sure to turn ON the power in the following order: pickup/delivery accessories -> Main Body: Otherwise the pickup/delivery accessories are not recognized.</p>				
E194 (continue)	0061	Color displacement correction patch read error Front/ rear patch could not be read during color displacement rough adjustment	1. Turn power OFF/ ON. 2. Clean sensor face of color registration patch sensor. 3. Check the alarm code history (COPIER>DISPLAY>ALARM-2) 340211, 340401, 340412, 340001 When the foregoing alarm codes are occurred, execute the ITB gloss recovery mode (COPIER > FUNCTION > HV-TR > ITB-GLS). 4. Execute auto color displacement correction control (COPIER > FUNCTION > MISC-P > AT-IMG-X) 5. Replace ITB.	
	0071	Color displacement correction patch read error Front/ rear patch could not be read seven times in succession during color displacement rough adjustment	1. Turn power OFF/ ON. 2. Clean sensor face of color registration patch sensor. 3. Check the alarm code history (COPIER>DISPLAY>ALARM-2) 340211, 340401, 340412, 340001 When the foregoing alarm codes are occurred, execute the ITB gloss recovery mode (COPIER > FUNCTION > HV-TR > ITB-GLS). 4. Execute auto color displacement correction control (COPIER > FUNCTION > MISC-P > AT-IMG-X) 5. Replace ITB.	
E196		Error in color sensor EEPROM		
	000x	Error: EEPROM on color sensor PCB When detecting a fault in the data read from the EEPROM on the color sensor PCB	1. Replace the color sensor PCB 1 (UN308) and color sensor PCB 2 (UN309)	x= 1: Color sensor PCB 1 2: Color sensor PCB 2
E197		Error in communication between DC controller PCB and driver PCB		
	000x	When x = 1, 2, Malfunction detected in high speed serial communication between DC controller PCB 1-1 and driver PCB. When x = 3 to 8, Malfunction detected in high speed serial communication between DC controller PCB 1-2 and driver PCB.	1. Turn power OFF/ ON. 2. Check the connectors for any faulty connection/ loose wiring -> Disconnect then reconnect the connectors. 3. Replace boards.	x= 1: right deck pickup driver PCB, 2: left deck pickup driver PCB, 3 to 6: fixing unit duplex feeding sub-PCB 4: function extension PCB.
	010x	Communication error between DC controller 1-2 and color sensor control PCB. Malfunction detected in high speed serial communication between DC controller PCB 1-2 and color sensor control PCB during printer PASCAL (auto-gradation correction: full correction) operation.	1. Check if the connector is disconnected/not securely inserted -> disconnect and then connect the connector - connector at the color sensor PCB 1 (UN308), connector at the color sensor PCB 2 (UN309) - DC controller PCB 1-2 (UN124) 2. Check if the harness is disconnected - between color sensor PCB 1 (UN308)/color sensor PCB 2 and DC controller PCB 1-2 3. Replace the color sensor PCB 1 (UN308) and color sensor PCB 2 3. Replace the DC controller PCB 1-2	x= 1: Color sensor PCB 1 2: Color sensor PCB 2

17.1.2 E202 to E420 (Reader, ADF, DC Controller, Main Controller)

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

T-17-4

Code	Detail code	Cause (description)	Remedy	Remarks
<p>-When a following error occurs, after taking appropriate action (remedy), be sure to turn ON the power, and then select the following to execute ERR: COPIER > FUNCTION > CLEAR > ERR. The error is cleared by turning OFF and then ON the power after ERR execution. E000, E001, E002, E003, E004, E013, E717, E719 For errors other than those described above, the error is cleared by turning OFF and then ON the power after taking appropriate action (remedy). -When turning ON the power, be sure to turn ON the power in the following order: pickup/delivery accessories -> Main Body: Otherwise the pickup/delivery accessories are not recognized.</p>				
E202		The scanner HP detection mechanism has a fault.		
	0001	While HP positioning is under way, the forward trip fails.	Disconnect and then connect the connector of the scanner HP sensor. Replace the scanner	
	0002	While HP positioning is under way, the reverse trip fails.	HP sensor. Replace the scanner motor. Replace the reader controller PCB.	
E225		The intensity of the scanning lamp is inadequate. (The lamp is exhausted.)		
	0001	At time of shading, the intensity of light is below the standard level.	Disconnect and then connect the connector of the scanning lamp. Replace the scanning lamp. Replace the inverter PCB. Replace the reader controller PCB.	
E227		The reader unit power supply (24 V) has a fault.		
	0001	At power-on, the 24V port is off.	Disconnect and then connect the reader power supply connector. Replace the power supply.	
	0002	At the start of a job, the 24V port is off.		
	0003	At the end of a job, the 24V port is off.		
	0004	While a load is driven, the 24V port is off.		
E240		Error in communication between the DC controller PCB 1-2 and main controller PCB (MAIN-P)		
	0000	When detecting a fault in communication I/F	1. Turn the power OFF/ON 2. Check the connection of the video cable -> connect it again	
	0002	When detecting a fault during print sequence	1. Turn the power OFF/ON 2. Check the connection of the video cable -> connect it again	
E243		Error in communication on control panel		
	0000	Communication fault between the main controller and the control panel	Check for disconnected/loose wiring of the cable connector -> re-connect.	
E246		Call the contact for the service		
E247		Call the contact for the service		
E248		A fault exists in the following: SRAM PCB, reader controller EEPROM.		
	0000	At start-up, an SRAM check error has occurred.	Replace the SRAM PCB.	
	0001	An error has occurred at time of power-on (EEPROM).	Replace the reader controller PCB.	
	0002	An error has occurred during write operation (EEPROM).		
	0003	A read error has occurred after write operation (EEPROM).		
E251		The inverter cooling fan rotation is faulty.		
	0000	After the inverter cooling fan has gone on, the fan stop signal is detected for 5 sec or more.	Disconnect and then connect connector of the reader controller PCB. Replace the inverter cooling fan. Replace the reader controller PCB.	

Code	Detail code	Cause (description)	Remedy	Remarks
<p>-When a following error occurs, after taking appropriate action (remedy), be sure to turn ON the power, and then select the following to execute ERR: COPIER > FUNCTION > CLEAR > ERR. The error is cleared by turning OFF and then ON the power after ERR execution. E000, E001, E002, E003, E004, E013, E717, E719 For errors other than those described above, the error is cleared by turning OFF and then ON the power after taking appropriate action (remedy). -When turning ON the power, be sure to turn ON the power in the following order: pickup/delivery accessories -> Main Body: Otherwise the pickup/delivery accessories are not recognized.</p>				
E260		Error in power supply		
	0001	Error: 24V power supply 1 (main station) When activation of 24V-1 cannot be detected even when 1 sec elapsed after the relay and remote signal was turned on	1. Check the following for faulty connection/ loose wires -> Disconnect then reconnect the connectors. - Main station DC power supply relay connector (J7868) - Main station power supply relay connector (J1811/1810) - 24V power supply 1 - Terminal mount (J7861) - DC controller PCB 1-2 (J1001) 2. Replace Main station power supply connect PCB. 3. 24V power supply 1.	
	0002	Error: 24V power supply 2 (main station) When activation of 24V-2 cannot be detected even when 1 sec elapsed after the relay and remote signal was turned on	1. Check the following for faulty connection/ loose wires -> Disconnect then reconnect the connectors. - Main station DC power supply relay connector (J7868) - Main station power supply relay connector (J1811/1810) - 24V power supply 2 - Terminal mount (J7861) - DC controller PCB 1-2 (J1001) 2. Replace Main station power supply connect PCB. 3. 24V power supply 2.	
	0004	Error: 24V power supply 4 (sub station) When activation of 24V-4 cannot be detected even when 1 sec elapsed after the relay and remote signal was turned on	1. Check the following for faulty connection/ loose wires -> Disconnect then reconnect the connectors. - Sub-station power supply relay connector (J4211/ 4210) - 24V power supply 4- Terminal mount (J7859) - DC controller PCB 1-2 (J1002) 2. Replace Sub station power connecting PCB. 3. 24V power supply 4.	
	10xx	Error: 24V, 12V power supply Unit-type 24V/12V error other than 24V power supply errors (Detailed Codes: 0001 to 0004) mentioned above When detecting the error signal for 500msec (100msec x 5 times) consecutively when the power was turned on	Refer to "Detail in E260 to 10XX, 20XX"	
	20xx	Error: 5V, 13V power supply When detecting the error signal for 500msec (100msec x 5 times) consecutively when the power was turned on		
E261		Zero cross error		
	0x01	Error 1: zero cross hardware detection When AC is not entered for external heating roller heater and primary fixing pressure belt heater	1. Check the following for faulty connection/ loose wires -> Disconnect then reconnect the connectors. - Terminal mount (J7863) - Fixing heater driver PCB (J01/ J10) - DC controller PCB 1-2 (J1003/ 1004) 2. Replace fixing heater driver. 3. Replace DC controller PCB 1-2.	x = 1: Primary fixing heater driver PCB (UN306) 2: Secondary fixing heater driver PCB (UN307)
	0x02	Error 2: zero cross hardware detection When AC is not entered for fixing roller main/sub heater	1. Check the following for faulty connection/ loose wires -> Disconnect then reconnect the connectors. - Terminal mount (J7863) - Fixing heater driver PCB (J03/ J10) - DC controller PCB 1-2 (J1003/ 1004) 2. Replace fixing heater driver. 3. Replace DC controller PCB 1-2.	x = 1: Primary fixing heater driver PCB (UN306) 2: Secondary fixing heater driver PCB (UN307)

Code	Detail code	Cause (description)	Remedy	Remarks
<p>-When a following error occurs, after taking appropriate action (remedy), be sure to turn ON the power, and then select the following to execute ERR: COPIER > FUNCTION > CLEAR > ERR. The error is cleared by turning OFF and then ON the power after ERR execution. E000, E001, E002, E003, E004, E013, E717, E719 For errors other than those described above, the error is cleared by turning OFF and then ON the power after taking appropriate action (remedy). -When turning ON the power, be sure to turn ON the power in the following order: pickup/delivery accessories -> Main Body: Otherwise the pickup/delivery accessories are not recognized.</p>				
E302		Shading operation is faulty.		
	0000	In the course of shading operation, the processing does not end within the reader controller.	Disconnect and then connect connector of the reader controller PCB. Replace the reader controller PCB.	
E315		Error in codec		
	000E	Error during software decoding Data destroyed (memory, HDD malfunction)	1. Replace SDRAM. 2. Replace HDD.	- Both HDD must be replaced at the same time - After being replaced, be sure to format the HDD, and then install the system software
E350		Call the contact for the service		
E351		Error in main controller PCB		
	0000	Main controller PCB communication error occurs on startup	Replace main controller PCB (MAIN-M).	
E354		Call the contact for the service		
E355		Call the contact for the service		
E402		The ADF belt motor rotation is faulty.		
	0000	While the belt motor drive signal is on, no lock signal occurs for 100 msec.	Disconnect and then connect the cable between the belt motor driver PCB and the ADF controller PCB. Replace the belt motor clock sensor (PI1). Replace the belt motor clock sensor (M2). Replace the belt motor. Replace the belt motor driver PCB. Replace t	
E404		The ADF delivery motor rotation is faulty.		
	0000	When the delivery motor drive signal is on, no clock signal occurs for 200 msec.	Replace the delivery motor (M5). Replace the delivery motor clock sensor (PI11). Replace the ADF controller PCB.	
E405		The ADF separation motor rotation is faulty.		
	0000	When the separation motor drive signal is on, no clock signal occurs for 200 msec.	Replace the separation motor (M4). Replace the separation motor clock sensor (PI2). Replace the ADF controller PCB.	
E410		The ADF pickup motor rotation is faulty.		
	0000	No signal occurs from the following sensors within 2 sec after the pickup motor is driven: - pickup roller height sensor 1 (PI8), pickup roller height sensor 2 (PI9) - pickup roller HP sensor (PI7)	Replace the pickup motor (M3). Replace the pickup roller height sensor (PI8). Replace the pickup roller height sensor 2 (PI9). Replace the pickup roller HP sensor (PI7). Replace the ADF controller PCB.	
E420		The ADF EEPROM read error has occurred.		
	0000	The backup data cannot be read; or, the data that has been read has an error. When the copier is turned on, the backup data cannot be read twice; or, the data that has been read has an error.	Replace the ADF controller PCB.	

17.1.3 E500 to E5FF (Stacker, Finisher, Inserter, Trimmer, POD Deck)

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

T-17-5

Code	Detail code	Occurrence classification	Description	Treatment/ detection timing
- Occurrence classification 02: Finisher (including inserter, puncher, trimmer) 11: POD deck 12: Secondary POD deck 51: Stacker 52: Secondary stacker - When turning ON the power, be sure to turn ON the power in the following order: pickup/delivery accessories -> Main Body: Otherwise the pickup/delivery accessories are not recognized.				
E500		Communication error between main unit and option		
	0001	02	Malfunction in communication with ARCNET network	Turn power OFF/ ON, re-attach communication cable/ terminal resistor, replace transceiver PCB.
	0001	11, 12	Malfunction in communication with ARCNET network	1. Check the status of power supply switch (is it turned ON?) 2. Check the status of leakage breaker (is it turned ON?) 3. Check disconnection/loose connection of power supply cord 4. Check connection of ARCNET cable (Are terminal connector and coaxial connector securely locked?) 5. Replace POD deck controller PCB 6. Replace ARCNET driver PCB
	0001	51, 52	Malfunction in communication with ARCNET network	Turn power OFF/ ON, re-attach communication cable/ terminal resistor, replace transceiver PCB.
E501		Communication error between main unit and option		

Code	Detail code	Occurrence classification	Description	Treatment/ detection timing
<p>- Occurrence classification 02: Finisher (including inserter, puncher, trimmer) 11: POD deck 12: Secondary POD deck 51: Stacker 52: Secondary stacker - When turning ON the power, be sure to turn ON the power in the following order: pickup/delivery accessories -> Main Body: Otherwise the pickup/delivery accessories are not recognized.</p>				
0001		02	Data communication could not be performed properly and failed after three retries.	Check connections of finisher controller PCB and DC controller PCB connectors. - Replace finisher controller PCB. - Replace DC controller PCB.
0001		51, 52	Communication Error (SerialError Signal)	The SerialError signal has been detected.
0002		51, 52	Communication Error (Serial Driver)	The serial process overrun and the parity error have occurred.
0003		51, 52	Communication Error (Re-transfer Processing)	The transfer processing have been done over five times.
0011		51, 52	Communication Error (Standby Signal)	The Standby signal has been already turned on when the CycleUp signal is turned on.
0012		51, 52	Communication Error (StackSheetDelivered Signal)	The StackSheetDelivered signal has been already turned on when the CycleUp signal is turned on.
0013		51, 52	Communication Error (SampleSheetDeliver-ed Signal)	The SampleSheetDelivered signal has been already turned on when the CycleUp signal is turned on.
0014		51, 52	Communication Error (ForceExitAbnormal Accepted Signal)	The ForceExitAbnormalAccepted signal has been already turned on when the CycleUp signal is turned on.
0015		51, 52	Communication Error (SheetExitAck Signal)	The SheetExitAck signal has been already turned on when the CycleUp signal is turned on.
0016		51, 52	Communication Error (SheetEjectOn Signal)	The SheetEjectOn signal has been already turned on when the CycleUp signal is turned on.
0017		51, 52	Communication Error (Faulted Signal)	The Faulted signal has been already turned on when the CycleUp signal is turned on.
00D0		51, 52	CycleUp Off Error	The CycleUp signal is still being received when the stacker receives the first stacker operation mode information after power-up.
00D1		51, 52	SheetExit Off Error	The SheetExit signal is still being received when the stacker receives the first stacker operation mode information after power-up.
00D2		51, 52	ForceExit-Req Off Error	The ForceExitReq signal is still being received when the stacker receives the first stacker operation mode information after power-up.
00D3		51, 52	SampleSheet-DeliveredAck Off Error	The SampleSheetDeliveredAck signal is still being received when the stacker receives the first stacker operation mode information after power-up.

Code	Detail code	Occurrence classification	Description	Treatment/ detection timing
- Occurrence classification 02: Finisher (including inserter, puncher, trimmer) 11: POD deck 12: Secondary POD deck 51: Stacker 52: Secondary stacker - When turning ON the power, be sure to turn ON the power in the following order: pickup/delivery accessories -> Main Body: Otherwise the pickup/delivery accessories are not recognized.				
E501 (continue)	00D4	51, 52	StackSheet-DeliveredAck Off Error	The StackSheetDeliveredAck signal is still being received when the stacker receives the first stacker operation mode information after power-up.
	00D5	51, 52	SheetEjectOnAck Off Error	The SheetEjectOnAck signal is still being received when the stacker receives the first stacker operation mode information after power-up.
	00D6	51, 52	SuspendAck Off Error	The SuspendAck signal is still being received when the stacker receives the first stacker operation mode information after power-up.
	00D7	51, 52	EmergencyStop Off Error	The EmergencyStop signal is still being received when the stacker receives the first stacker operation mode information after power-up.
	00D8	51, 52	SampleSheet-DeliveredAck No Response	The previous SampleSheetDelivered signal is still on when the stacker tries to turn the SampleSheetDelivered signal on. (No Ack returns for the previous sheet.)
	00D9	51, 52	StackSheet-DeliveredAck No Response	The previous StackSheetDelivered signal is still on when the stacker tries to turn the StackSheetDelivered signal on. (No Ack returns for the previous sheet.)
	00DA	51, 52	SheetEjectOnAck No Response	The previous SheetEjectOn signal is still on when the stacker tries to turn the SheetEjectOn signal on. (No Ack returns for the previous sheet.)
	0000	51, 52	Unexpected data reception	The operation mode disabling transition is received.
	0000	51, 52	Unexpected data reception	Unfeedable size is received.
	0000	51, 52	Unexpected data reception	The size that cannot be mixed on the stacker is received.
	0000	51, 52	Unexpected data reception	The delivery speed that is out of the specified range is received.
	0000	51, 52	Unexpected data reception	Undefined delivery pattern is received.
	0000	51, 52	Unexpected data reception	Non-consecutive Paper ID is received.
	0000	51, 52	Unexpected data reception	Idle rotation speed that is out of the specified range is received.
	00F1	51, 52	Parallel signal error	Faulted signal is not activated when receiving the jam information.
	00FF	51, 52	Communication Error (Transferring Error)	The maximum number of memories for a send queue has exceeded.
E503			Communication error between finisher and options	
	8004	02	No communication between finisher and option	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Check connections of connectors between finisher and trimmer. - Replace finisher controller PCB. - Possible trimmer problem (For details, refer to the trimmer manual.)
	8005	02	No communication between finisher and inserter	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Check connections of connectors between finisher and trimmer. - Replace finisher controller PCB. - Possible trimmer problem (For details, refer to the trimmer manual.)

Code	Detail code	Occurrence classification	Description	Treatment/ detection timing
<p>- Occurrence classification 02: Finisher (including inserter, puncher, trimmer) 11: POD deck 12: Secondary POD deck 51: Stacker 52: Secondary stacker - When turning ON the power, be sure to turn ON the power in the following order: pickup/delivery accessories -> Main Body: Otherwise the pickup/delivery accessories are not recognized.</p>				
E505		EEPROM error		
	0001	11, 12	The specified value is not written in the specified area.	<p>1. Execute error clear operation</p> <p>1-1. For the DIP switch (SW102) on POD deck controller PCB, turn ON for 1 to 7, and turn OFF for 8</p> <p>1-2. Hold down "ENTER" key (SW105) once.</p> <p>1-3. Hold down "+" key (SW104) once.</p> <p>1-4. Hold down "-" key (SW103) once.</p> <p>1-5. Power OFF/ON.</p> <p>Go through Step 1 to 5 if the error is cleared by taking the steps 1-6 to 1-7. If not, execute Step 2.</p> <p>1-6. Delivery tray paper sensor adjustment (See "Adjustment after replacing delivery tray full level detection PCB" in Service Manual for POD deck).</p> <p>1-7. Floatation fan adjustment (See "When replacing floatation fan, fan duct" in Service Manual for POD deck.).</p> <p>2. Replace EEPROM. After replacement, be sure to execute Step 1.</p> <p>3. Replace POD deck controller PCB. After replacement, be sure to execute Step 1.</p>
	0001	02	Data malfunction in EEPROM on finisher controller PCB	- Replace the EEPROM on the finisher controller PCB.
	0004	02	Response timed out	- Replace finisher controller PCB. Remove the EEPROM from the old board and mount it on the new board. If the problem is not solved, replace with a new EEPROM.
	0007	02	Finisher controller PCB malfunction	- Replace finisher controller PCB. Remove the EEPROM from the old board and mount it on the new board. If the problem is not solved, replace with a new EEPROM.D45
	0010	51, 52	EEPROM Data Loading Error	The EEPROM data has a problem after turning on the power switch and the initial communication starts.
	0011	51, 52	EEPROM Guide Data Range Error	The home position data for each guide and stopper in the EEPROM have a problem after turning on the power switch and the initial communication starts.
E509		Software compatibility malfunction		
	0001	51, 52	PC Board certificate Error	Certificate tips conflict
	0002	02	Boot ROM malfunction	Replace the finisher controller PCB with the correct one. Remove the EEPROM from the old board and mount it on the new board.
	0003	02	Non-supported option (professional puncher) connected	Remove professional puncher.
	0004	02	Non-supported option (trimmer B-1) connected	Connect trimmer C-1.
E511		Error in main drive motor		
	0010	51, 52	Main Drive Motor M06 Alarm	An alarm has occurred on the main drive motor driver PCB A06.
E512		Error in stack tray motor		
	8011	51, 52	Stack Tray Up/Down Motor M08 Alarm	An alarm has occurred on the stack tray up/down motor driver PCB A08.

Code	Detail code	Occurrence classification	Description	Treatment/ detection timing
- Occurrence classification 02: Finisher (including inserter, puncher, trimmer) 11: POD deck 12: Secondary POD deck 51: Stacker 52: Secondary stacker - When turning ON the power, be sure to turn ON the power in the following order: pickup/delivery accessories -> Main Body: Otherwise the pickup/delivery accessories are not recognized.				
E514			ASSIST operation error	
	8001	02	ASSIST HP sensor does not come ON within 5 sec. after ASSIST motor operation begins.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Check ASSIST HP sensor connectors. - Check ASSIST motor connectors. - Replace ASSIST HP sensor. - Replace ASSIST motor. - Replace finisher controller PCB.
	8002	02	ASSIST HP sensor does not go OFF within 5 sec. after ASSIST motor operation begins.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Check ASSIST HP sensor connectors. - Check ASSIST motor connectors. - Replace ASSIST HP sensor. - Replace ASSIST motor. - Replace finisher controller PCB.
E515			Inserter malfunction or stacker feed motor error	
	8001	02 (Inserter)	Switching gear does not clear drive switching sensor home position after the drive switching motor has been running for the prescribed interval.	Check drive switching motor connectors, replace.
	8002		Switching gear does not reach drive switching sensor home position after the drive switching motor has been running for the prescribed interval.	Check drive switching motor connectors, replace.
	8003		Tray A does not clear home position after tray A lifter motor has been running for the prescribed interval.	Check tray A lifting motor connectors, replace.
	8004		Tray A lifting motor does not reach the home position after the lifting motor has been running for the prescribed interval.	Check tray A lifting motor connectors, replace.
	8005		Tray B does not clear home position after tray B lifter motor has been running for the prescribed interval.	Check tray B lifting motor connectors, replace.
	8006		Tray B lifting motor does not reach the home position after the lifting motor has been running for the prescribed interval.	Check tray B lifting motor connectors, replace.
	8007		Improper value detected for tray A width detection sensor or tray B width detection sensor.	Adjust tray width.
	8010		51, 52	Offset Section Drive Motor M07 Alarm
E520			Error in tray sensor	
	8010	51, 52	Stack Tray Upper Limit Sensor PI17 Off Error	During stack preparation, PI17 is still activated even after the stack tray has moved down.
	8011	51, 52	Stack Tray lower limit Sensor PI19 Off Error	During stack preparation, PI19 is still activated even after the stack tray has moved up.
E522			Error in offset section guide motor	
	8010	51, 52	Offset Section Guide Motor M01 Home Position Error 1	The offset section guide home position sensor PI21 is not activated.
	8011	51, 52	Offset Section Guide Motor M01 Home Position Error 2	The offset section guide home position sensor PI21 is not turned off.

Code	Detail code	Occurrence classification	Description	Treatment/ detection timing
- Occurrence classification 02: Finisher (including inserter, puncher, trimmer) 11: POD deck 12: Secondary POD deck 51: Stacker 52: Secondary stacker - When turning ON the power, be sure to turn ON the power in the following order: pickup/delivery accessories -> Main Body: Otherwise the pickup/delivery accessories are not recognized.				
E523				
	8010	51, 52	Stopper Motor M02 Home Position Error 1	The stopper home position sensor PI22 is not activated.
	8011	51, 52	Stopper Motor M02Home Position Error 2	Stopper home position sensor PI22 is not turned off.
E524				
	8010	51, 52	Stack Guide Motor M03 Home Position Error 1	Stack guide home position sensor PI23 is not activated.
	8011	51, 52	Stack Guide Motor M03 Home Position Error 2	Stack guide home position sensor PI23 is not turned off.
E527				
	8010	51, 52	Stack Tray Receiving Position Sensor PI14 Off Error	During stack preparation, PI14 is still activated even after the stack tray has moved down.
	8011	51, 52	Stack Tray Receiving Position Sensor PI14 On Error	During stack preparation, when the stack tray is positioned at the upper limit (stack tray upper limit sensor PI17 activated), the stack tray receiving position sensor PI14 is not activated.
E530				
Rear alignment malfunction				
	8001	02	Rear alignment HP sensor does not come on after the rear alignment motor has been running for 5 sec.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Check rear alignment HP sensor connectors. - Check rear alignment motor connectors. - Replace rear alignment HP sensor. - Replace rear alignment motor. - Replace finisher controller.
	8002	02	Rear alignment sensor does not go OFF within 1 sec. of rear alignment motor operation starting.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Check rear alignment HP sensor connectors. - Check rear alignment motor connectors. - Replace rear alignment HP sensor. - Replace rear alignment motor. - Replace finisher controller.
E531				
Staple malfunction				
	8001	02	Staple position HP sensor does not come ON within 500 msec. after staple motor operation begins.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Check the staple unit connectors. - Replace the staple unit. - Check the staple unit HP sensor connectors. - Replace the staple unit HP sensor. - Replace the finisher unit controller PCB.E89
	8002	02	Staple HP sensor does not go OFF within 500 msec. after staple motor operation begins.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Check the staple unit connectors. - Replace the staple unit. - Check the staple unit HP sensor connectors. - Replace the staple unit HP sensor. - Replace the finisher unit controller PCB.
E532				
Staple slide malfunction				
	8001	02	Staple HP sensor does not come ON within 500 msec. after staple shift motor operation begins.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Check the staple shift motor connectors. - Replace the staple shift motor.. - Check the staple unit HP sensor connectors. - Replace the staple unit HP sensor. - Replace the finisher unit controller PCB.
	8002	02	Staple HP sensor does not go OFF within 500 msec. after staple shift motor operation begins.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Check the staple shift motor connectors. - Replace the staple shift motor.. - Check the staple unit HP sensor connectors. - Replace the staple unit HP sensor. - Replace the finisher unit controller PCB.

Code	Detail code	Occurrence classification	Description	Treatment/ detection timing
- Occurrence classification 02: Finisher (including inserter, puncher, trimmer) 11: POD deck 12: Secondary POD deck 51: Stacker 52: Secondary stacker - When turning ON the power, be sure to turn ON the power in the following order: pickup/delivery accessories -> Main Body: Otherwise the pickup/delivery accessories are not recognized.				
E535			Swing guide malfunction	
	8001	02	Swing guide open detection sensor does not come ON within 2 sec. after the swing guide motor operation begins.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Check the swing guide motor connectors. - Replace the swing guide motor. - Check the swing guide open detection sensor. - Replace the swing guide open detection sensor. - Replace the finisher controller PCB.
	8002	02	Swing guide open detection sensor does not go OFF within 2 sec. after the swing guide motor operation begins.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Check the swing guide motor connectors. - Replace the swing guide motor. - Check the swing guide open detection sensor. - Replace the swing guide open detection sensor. - Replace the finisher controller PCB.
E537			Front alignment malfunction	
	8001	02	Front alignment HP sensor does not come on after the front alignment motor has been running for 5 sec.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Check front alignment HP sensor connectors. - Check front alignment motor connectors. - Replace front alignment HP sensor. - Replace front alignment motor. - Replace finisher controller.
	8002	02	Front alignment sensor does not go OFF within 5 sec. of front alignment motor operation starting.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Check front alignment HP sensor connectors. - Check front alignment motor connectors. - Replace front alignment HP sensor. - Replace front alignment motor. - Replace finisher controller.
E540			Tray A (upper tray) malfunction	
	8001	02	Tray A rotation detection sensor does not come ON within 300ms after the tray A lifter motor operation begins.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Check tray A rotation detection sensor connectors. - Check tray A lifter motor connectors. - Replace tray A rotation detection sensor. - Replace tray A lifter motor. - Replace finisher controller PCB.
	8002	02	Tray A is detected at a lower position than tray B.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Check tray A area sensor connectors. - Replace tray A area sensor. - Replace finisher controller PCB.
	8003	02	Tray approach switch faulty operation..	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Check the tray approach switch connectors. - Replace the tray approach switch. - Replace the finisher approach PCB.
	80FF	02	Tray lifting operation does not complete within 25 sec. after the tray lifter motor operation has started.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Check the tray A rotation detection sensor connectors. - Check the tray A lifter motor connectors. - Replace the tray A rotation detection sensor. - Replace the tray A lifter motor. - Replace the finisher controller PCB.

Code	Detail code	Occurrence classification	Description	Treatment/ detection timing
- Occurrence classification 02: Finisher (including inserter, puncher, trimmer) 11: POD deck 12: Secondary POD deck 51: Stacker 52: Secondary stacker - When turning ON the power, be sure to turn ON the power in the following order: pickup/delivery accessories -> Main Body: Otherwise the pickup/delivery accessories are not recognized.				
E542			Tray B (lower tray) malfunction	
	8001	02	Tray B rotation detection sensor does not come ON within 300ms after the tray B lifter motor operation begins.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Check the tray B rotation detection sensor connectors. - Check the tray B lifter motor connectors. - Replace the tray B rotation detection sensor. - Replace the tray B lifter motor. - Replace the finisher controller PCB.
	8002	02	Tray B is detected at a higher position than the intermediate processing delivery guide.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Check tray B area sensor connectors. - Replace tray B area sensor. - Replace the finisher controller PCB.
	80FF	02	Tray B lifting operation does not complete within 25 sec. after the tray B lifter motor operation has started.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Check the tray B rotation detection sensor connectors. - Check the tray B lifter motor connectors. - Replace the tray B rotation detection sensor. - Replace the tray B lifter motor. - Replace the finisher controller PCB.
E551			Fan malfunction	
	8001	02	Lock signal detected after power supply fan has been operating for 2 sec. or longer.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Check the power supply fan connectors. - Faulty power supply fan. -Replace the finisher controller PCB.
	8002	02	Lock signal detected after paper feed fan has been operating for 2 sec. or longer.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Check the paper feed fan connectors. - Faulty paper feed fan. -Replace the finisher controller PCB.
E566			Horizontal registration detection malfunction	
	8001	02	Horizontal registration sensor does not come ON within 5 sec. after side registration detection unit shift motor operation has started.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Check the side registration detection unit shift motor and side registration sensor connectors. - Replace the side registration detection unit shift motor and side registration sensor. -Replace the finisher controller PCB.
	8002	02	Horizontal registration sensor does not go OFF within 5 sec. after side registration detection unit shift motor operation has started.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Check the side registration detection unit shift motor and side registration sensor connectors. - Replace the side registration detection unit shift motor and side registration sensor. -Replace the finisher controller PCB.
E567			Shift roller operation malfunction	
	8001	02	Shift roller unit HP sensor does not come ON within 5 sec. after side registration shift motor operation begins.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Check the side registration shift motor and shift roller unit HP sensor connectors. - Replace the side registration shift motor and the shift roller unit HP sensor. -Replace the finisher controller PCB.
	8002	02	Shift roller unit HP sensor does not go OFF within 5 sec. after side registration shift motor operation begins.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Check the side registration shift motor and shift roller unit HP sensor connectors. - Replace the side registration shift motor and the shift roller unit HP sensor. -Replace the finisher controller PCB.
E568			Feed roller disengage operation malfunction	
	8001	02	Feed roller HP sensor does not come ON within 5 sec. after feed roller disengage motor operation begins.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Check the feed roller disengage motor and feed roller HP sensor connectors. - Replace the feed roller disengage motor and the feed roller HP sensor connectors. -Replace the finisher controller PCB.
	8002	02	Feed roller HP sensor does not go OFF within 5 sec. after feed roller disengage motor operation begins.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Check the feed roller disengage motor and feed roller HP sensor connectors. - Replace the feed roller disengage motor and the feed roller HP sensor connectors. -Replace the finisher controller PCB.

Code	Detail code	Occurrence classification	Description	Treatment/ detection timing
- Occurrence classification 02: Finisher (including inserter, puncher, trimmer) 11: POD deck 12: Secondary POD deck 51: Stacker 52: Secondary stacker - When turning ON the power, be sure to turn ON the power in the following order: pickup/delivery accessories -> Main Body: Otherwise the pickup/delivery accessories are not recognized.				
E577			Paddle rotation/ lifting operation malfunction	
	8001	02	Paddle rotation HP sensor does not come ON within 5 sec. after paddle rotation motor operation begins.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Check the paddle rotation motor and paddle rotation HP sensor connectors. - Replace the paddle rotation motor and the paddle rotation HP sensor. -Replace the finisher controller PCB.
	8002	02	Paddle rotation HP sensor does not go OFF within 5 sec. after paddle rotation motor operation begins.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Check the paddle rotation motor and paddle rotation HP sensor connectors. - Replace the paddle rotation motor and the paddle rotation HP sensor. -Replace the finisher controller PCB.
	8003	02	Paddle lifter HP sensor does not come ON within 5 sec. after the paddle lifter motor operation begins.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> -Check the paddle lifter motor and paddle lifter HP sensor connectors. - Replace the paddle lifter motor and the paddle lifter HP sensor. -Replace the finisher controller PCB.
	8004	02	Paddle lifter HP sensor does not go OFF within 5 sec. after the paddle lifter motor operation begins.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> -Check the paddle lifter motor and paddle lifter HP sensor connectors. - Replace the paddle lifter motor and the paddle lifter HP sensor. -Replace the finisher controller PCB.
E578			Rollette malfunction	
	8001	02	Feed belt HP sensor does not come ON within 5 sec. after feed belt shift motor operation begins.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Check feed belt shift motor and feed belt HP sensor connectors. - Replace feed belt shift motor and feed belt HP sensor. -Replace the finisher controller PCB.
	8002	02	Feed belt HP sensor does not go OFF within 5 sec. after feed belt shift motor operation begins.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Check feed belt shift motor and feed belt HP sensor connectors. - Replace feed belt shift motor and feed belt HP sensor. -Replace the finisher controller PCB.
E57A			Paper edge stopper operation malfunction	
	8001	02	Paper edge area HP sensor does not come ON within 5 sec. after paper edge stopper motor operation begins.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Check the paper edge stopper shift motor and paper edge area HP sensor connectors. - Replace the paper edge stopper shift motor and paper edge area HP sensor. -Replace the finisher controller PCB.
	8002	02	Paper edge area HP sensor does not go OFF within 5 sec. after paper edge stopper motor operation begins.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Check the paper edge stopper shift motor and paper edge area HP sensor connectors. - Replace the paper edge stopper shift motor and paper edge area HP sensor. -Replace the finisher controller PCB.
	8003	02	Paper edge stopper is obstructed by stapler and cannot operate.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Check paper edge stopper shift motor connectors. - Replace paper edge stopper shift motor. -Replace the finisher controller PCB.

Code	Detail code	Occurrence classification	Description	Treatment/ detection timing
- Occurrence classification 02: Finisher (including inserter, puncher, trimmer) 11: POD deck 12: Secondary POD deck 51: Stacker 52: Secondary stacker - When turning ON the power, be sure to turn ON the power in the following order: pickup/delivery accessories -> Main Body: Otherwise the pickup/delivery accessories are not recognized.				
E57B				
	8001	02	Paper trailing edge retainer HP sensor does not come ON within 5 sec. after paper trailing edge motor operation begins	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> -Check paper trailing edge retainer motor and paper trailing edge retainer HP sensor connectors. -Replace paper trailing edge retainer motor and paper trailing edge retainer HP sensor. -Replace the finisher controller PCB.
	8002	02	Paper trailing edge retainer HP sensor does not come OFF within 5 sec. after paper trailing edge motor operation begins	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> -Check paper trailing edge retainer motor and paper trailing edge retainer HP sensor connectors. -Replace paper trailing edge retainer motor and paper trailing edge retainer HP sensor. -Replace the finisher controller PCB.
E57C				
	8001	02	Upper guide HP sensor does not come ON within 5 sec. after upper guide motor operation begins. .	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Check upper guide motor and upper guide HP sensor connectors. - Replace upper guide motor and upper guide HP sensor. -Replace the finisher controller PCB.
	8002	02	Upper guide HP sensor does not go OFF within 5 sec. after upper guide motor operation begins. .	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Check upper guide motor and upper guide HP sensor connectors. - Replace upper guide motor and upper guide HP sensor. -Replace the finisher controller PCB.
E580				
Error in stack tray				
	8010	51, 52	Stack Tray Rising Timeout	During stack preparation, while the stack tray is moving up, the stack tray receiving position sensor PI14 is not activated within the timeout period.
	8011	51, 52	Stack Tray Lowering Timeout	While the stack tray is moving down to be removed, the stack tray lower limit sensor PI19 is not activated within the timeout period.
E583				
Bundle delivery auxiliary tray operation malfunction				
	8001	02	Bundle delivery auxiliary tray HP sensor does not come ON within 5 sec. after bundle delivery auxiliary tray motor operation begins.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> -Check bundle delivery auxiliary tray motor and bundle delivery auxiliary tray HP sensor connectors bundle delivery auxiliary tray motor -Replace bundle delivery auxiliary tray motor and bundle delivery auxiliary tray HP sensor.
	8002	02	Bundle delivery auxiliary tray HP sensor does not go OFF within 5 sec. after bundle delivery auxiliary tray motor operation begins.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> -Check bundle delivery auxiliary tray motor and bundle delivery auxiliary tray HP sensor connectors bundle delivery auxiliary tray motor -Replace bundle delivery auxiliary tray motor and bundle delivery auxiliary tray HP sensor.
E584				
Shutter malfunction				
	8001	02	Shutter HP sensor does not come ON within 5 sec. after paddle rotation motor operation begins.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> -Check paddle rotation motor and shutter HP sensor connectors. -Replace paddle rotation motor and shutter HP sensor connectors. -Replace the finisher controller PCB.
	8002	02	Shutter HP sensor does not go OFF within 5 sec. after paddle rotation motor operation begins.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> -Check paddle rotation motor and shutter HP sensor connectors. -Replace paddle rotation motor and shutter HP sensor connectors. -Replace the finisher controller PCB.
E586				
Error in decurl motor				
	8001	51, 52	Decurl Motor (M14) Home Position Error	The decurl motor (M14) cannot return to its home position.
	8002	51, 52	Decurl Motor (M14) Pulse Signal Error	The pulse signal from the decurl motor (M14) is not input.

Code	Detail code	Occurrence classification	Description	Treatment/ detection timing
- Occurrence classification 02: Finisher (including inserter, puncher, trimmer) 11: POD deck 12: Secondary POD deck 51: Stacker 52: Secondary stacker - When turning ON the power, be sure to turn ON the power in the following order: pickup/delivery accessories -> Main Body: Otherwise the pickup/delivery accessories are not recognized.				
E5A7		Error in home position		
	8011	02 (Trimmer)	Transport hook motor M02 home positioning incomplection	The transport hook home position sensor PI04 is not activated.
	8012		Transport hook motor M02 remaining in home position	The transport hook home position sensor PI04 is not turned off.
	8021		Top-bottom guide motor M03home positioning incomplection	The top-bottom guide home position sensor PI03 is not activated.
	8022		Top-bottom guide motor M03 remaining in home position	The top-bottom guide home position sensor PI03 is not turned off.
	8033		Trim section transport motor M04 driver problem	The trim section transport motor driver A04 has a problem.
	8043		Knife motor M05 driver problem	The knife motor driver A05 has a problem.
	8044		Upper knife cannot detect upper limit position in one stroke	The upper knife upper limit sensor PI06 is not activated.
	8051		Stopper move motor M06 home positioning incomplection	The stopper home position sensor PI05 is not activated.
	8052		Stopper move motor M06 remaining in home position	The stopper home position sensor PI05 is not turned off.
	8061		Conveyor delivery roller positioning motor M08 home positioning incomplection	The delivery roller home position sensor PI14 is not activated.
	8062		Conveyor delivery roller positioning motor M08 remaining in home position	The delivery roller home position sensor PI14 is not turned off.
	8073		Main drive motor M10 driver problem	The main drive motor driver A10 has a problem.
	80X5		EEPROM error	The memorized value for the home position has a problem.
E5F0			Saddle positioning plate malfunction	
	8001	02 (Saddle)	Stopper HP sensor does not come ON within 5 sec. after stopper motor operation begins.	- Check stopper motor and stopper HP sensor connectors. - Replace stopper motor and stopper HP sensor. -Replace saddle stitcher controller PCB.
	8002		Stopper HP sensor does not go OFF within 5 sec. after stopper motor operation begins.	- Check stopper motor and stopper HP sensor connectors. - Replace stopper motor and stopper HP sensor. -Replace saddle stitcher controller PCB.
	8010	51, 52	Stack tray overflow	Stack tray overflow The tray lower dead center sensor is activated during the stack delivery.
E5F1		Saddle folding malfunction		
	8001	02 (Saddle)	Fold/ feed motor rotation detection sensor does not come ON within 5 sec. after fold/ feed motor operation begins.	-Check fold/ feed motor and fold/ feed motor rotation detection sensor connectors. -Replace fold/ feed motor and fold/ feed motor rotation detection sensor. -Replace saddle stitcher controller PCB.
E5F2		Saddle roller guide HP sensor malfunction or saddle guide motor malfunction		
	8001	02	Saddle roller guide HP sensor does not come ON within 5 sec. after saddle guide motor operation begins.	-Check saddle guide motor and saddle roller guide HP sensor connectors. -Replace saddle guide motor and saddle roller guide HP sensor. -Replace saddle stitcher controller PCB.
	8002	02	Saddle roller guide HP sensor does not go OFF within 5 sec. after saddle guide motor operation begins.	-Check saddle guide motor and saddle roller guide HP sensor connectors. -Replace saddle guide motor and saddle roller guide HP sensor. -Replace saddle stitcher controller PCB.

Code	Detail code	Occurrence classification	Description	Treatment/ detection timing
- Occurrence classification 02: Finisher (including inserter, puncher, trimmer) 11: POD deck 12: Secondary POD deck 51: Stacker 52: Secondary stacker - When turning ON the power, be sure to turn ON the power in the following order: pickup/delivery accessories -> Main Body: Otherwise the pickup/delivery accessories are not recognized.				
E5F3			Saddle alignment guide	
	8001	02	Saddle alignment plate HP sensor does not come ON within 5 sec. after saddle alignment motor operation begins.	-Check saddle alignment motor and saddle alignment plate HP sensor connectors. -Replace s saddle alignment motor and saddle alignment plate HP sensor. -Replace saddle stitcher controller PCB.
	8002	02	Saddle alignment plate HP sensor does not go OFF within 5 sec. after saddle alignment motor operation begins.	-Check saddle alignment motor and saddle alignment plate HP sensor connectors. -Replace s saddle alignment motor and saddle alignment plate HP sensor. -Replace saddle stitcher controller PCB.
E5F4			Saddle staple malfunction	
	8001	02	Saddle unit not detected in home position within 500 ms after saddle unit operation begins.	-Check stitcher unit connectors. -Replace stitcher unit. -Replace saddle stitcher controller PCB.
	8002	02	Saddle unit does not leave home position within 500 ms after saddle unit operation begins.	-Check stitcher unit connectors. -Replace stitcher unit. -Replace saddle stitcher controller PCB.
E5F6			Saddle paper strike plate operation malfunction	
	8001	02	Saddle paper strike plate HP sensor does not come ON within 800ms. after saddle paper strike plate motor operation begins.	-Check saddle paper strike plate motor and saddle paper strike plate HP sensor connectors. -Replace saddle paper strike plate motor and saddle paper strike plate HP sensor. -Replace saddle stitcher controller PCB.
	8002	02	Saddle paper strike plate HP sensor does not go OFF within 300ms. after saddle paper strike plate motor operation begins.	-Check saddle paper strike plate motor and saddle paper strike plate HP sensor connectors. -Replace saddle paper strike plate motor and saddle paper strike plate HP sensor. -Replace saddle stitcher controller PCB.
E5FA			Saddle press malfunction	
	8000	02	Saddle press position sensor does not come ON within 200ms. after saddle press motor operation begins.	-Check saddle press motor and saddle press position sensor connectors. -Replace saddle press motor and saddle press position sensor. -Replace stitcher controller PCB.
	8001	02	Saddle press HP sensor does not come ON within 1 sec. after saddle press motor operation begins.	-Check saddle press motor and saddle press HP sensor connectors. -Replace saddle press motor and saddle press HP sensor. -Replace stitcher controller PCB.
	8002	02	Saddle press HP sensor does not go OFF within 1 sec. after saddle press motor operation begins.	-Check saddle press motor and saddle press HP sensor connectors. -Replace saddle press motor and saddle press HP sensor. -Replace stitcher controller PCB.
E5FB			Saddle disengage operation malfunction	
	8001	02	Saddle pull-in roller HP sensor does not come ON within 3 sec. after saddle pull-in roller disengage motor operation begins.	-Check saddle pull-in roller and saddle pull-in roller HP sensor connectors. -Replace saddle pull-in roller and saddle pull-in roller HP sensor. -Replace stitcher controller PCB.
	8002	02	Saddle pull-in roller HP sensor does not go OFF within 3 sec. after saddle pull-in roller disengage motor operation begins.	-Check saddle pull-in roller and saddle pull-in roller HP sensor connectors. -Replace saddle pull-in roller and saddle pull-in roller HP sensor. -Replace stitcher controller PCB.
E5FF			Optional controller software error	
	00xx	51, 52	Communication protocol error between the optional controller and the printer engine, and between the optional controller and the stacker	xx= varies depending on the communication protocol detects the error

17.1.4 E601 to E750 (Main Controller, DC Controller)

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

T-17-6

Code	Detail code	Cause (description)	Remedy	Remarks
<p>- When a following error occurs, after taking appropriate action (remedy), be sure to turn ON the power, and then select the following to execute ERR: COPIER > FUNCTION > CLEAR > ERR. The error is cleared by turning OFF and then ON the power after ERR execution. E000,E001,E002,E003,E004,E013,E717,E719 For errors other than those described above, the error is cleared by turning OFF and then ON the power after taking appropriate action (remedy). - When turning ON the power, be sure to turn ON the power in the following order: pickup/delivery accessories -> Main Body: Otherwise the pickup/delivery accessories are not recognized.</p>				
E601		Error in page memory communication		
	0000	Image memory (SDRAM) communication malfunction	Replace SDRAM.	
E602		Error in hard disk or encryption board		
E604		Faulty/insufficient image memory		
	0000	Required image memory size (1.5GB) not recognized.	1. Disconnect and re-connect SDRAM. 2. Replace SDRAM (2 boards totaling 1.5GB).	
	0001	Not enough memory for MEAP application.	Reconfigure to MEAP-Full model then, after uninstalling the MEAP application (download license, etc.), change to MEAP-Base model.	
	0002	When only 1GB SDRAM is not connected (among 1GB and 512MB SDRAMs).	1. Disconnect and then connect the SDRAM 2. Replace SDRAM (1GB)	When both 1GB and 512MB SDRAMs are not connected, E748-4042 error occurs.
	1536	When only 512MB SDRAM is not connected (among 1GB and 512MB SDRAMs).	1. Disconnect and then connect the SDRAM 2. Replace SDRAM (512MB)	When both 1GB and 512MB SDRAMs are not connected, E748-4042 error occurs.
E610		Error in HDD encryption key (hardware configuration error)		
	0001	No encryption board	Attach encryption board.	
	0002	Memory configuration not sufficient to perform encryption.	Disconnect and then connect SDRAM	
	0101	Initialization of encryption key storage area within memory failed.	1. Turn OFF and then ON the main power. 2. Replace main controller PCB (MAIN-M).	
	0102	Initialization of encryption processing area failed.	1. Turn OFF and then ON the main power. 2. Disconnect and then connect the cable between the encryption board and HDD and the HDD power cable 3. Replace the encryption board/HDD	-Two encryption boards and two HDD must be replaced at the same time. - After being replaced, be sure to format the HDD, and then install the system software.
	0201	Encryption processing area error.	1. Turn OFF and then ON the main power. 2. Disconnect and then connect the cable between the encryption board and HDD and the HDD power cable 3. Replace the encryption board/HDD	- Two encryption boards and two HDD must be replaced at the same time. - After being replaced, be sure to format the HDD, and then install the system software.
	0202	Encryption processing area error.	1. Turn OFF and then ON the main power. 2. Disconnect and then connect the cable between the encryption board and HDD and the HDD power cable 3. Replace the encryption board/HDD	- Two encryption boards and two HDD must be replaced at the same time. - After being replaced, be sure to format the HDD, and then install the system software.
	0301	Encryption key creation error.	1. Turn OFF and then ON the main power. 2. Disconnect and then connect the cable between the encryption board and HDD and the HDD power cable 3. Replace the encryption board/HDD	-Two encryption boards and two HDD must be replaced at the same time. - After being replaced, be sure to format the HDD, and then install the system software.
	0302	Encryption key failure detected.	1. Turn OFF and then ON the main power. 2. Replace main controller PCB (MAIN-M).	Because of this error, the HDD are re-formatted. Therefore, after recovery, be sure to install the system software.

Code	Detail code	Cause (description)	Remedy	Remarks
<p>- When a following error occurs, after taking appropriate action (remedy), be sure to turn ON the power, and then select the following to execute ERR: COPIER > FUNCTION > CLEAR > ERR. The error is cleared by turning OFF and then ON the power after ERR execution. E000,E001,E002,E003,E004,E013,E717,E719</p> <p>For errors other than those described above, the error is cleared by turning OFF and then ON the power after taking appropriate action (remedy). - When turning ON the power, be sure to turn ON the power in the following order: pickup/delivery accessories -> Main Body: Otherwise the pickup/delivery accessories are not recognized.</p>				
E610 (cont nue)	0303	Encryption key failure detected.	1. Turn OFF and then ON the main power. 2. Replace main controller PCB (MAIN-M).	Because of this error, the HDD are re-formatted. Therefore, after recovery, be sure to install the system software.
	0401	Error detected during encryption	1. Turn OFF and then ON the main power. 2. Disconnect and then connect the cable between the encryption board and HDD and the HDD power cable 3. Replace the encryption board/HDD	-Two encryption boards and two HDD must be replaced at the same time. - After being replaced, be sure to format the HDD, and then install the system software.
	0402	Error detected during decryption.	1. Turn OFF and then ON the main power. 2. Disconnect and then connect the cable between the encryption board and HDD and the HDD power cable 3. Replace the encryption board/HDD	-Two encryption boards and two HDD must be replaced at the same time. - After being replaced, be sure to format the HDD, and then install the system software.
E677	Error in Print server (imagePRESS server)			
	0003	When a fault is detected by the configuration check at the print server startup.	1. Check the connection of the cable 2. Reinstall the print server	
	0010	When the non-supported print server is being connected	1. Check that the print server for the machine is connected 2. Check the connection of the cable 3. Reinstall the print server	
	0080	When a communication error occurs between the machine and the print server after the startup of the print server	1. Check the connection of the cable 2. Reinstall the print server	
E710	Error in IPC initialization			
	0001	IPC communication IC did not attain Ready status within 3 sec of startup.	Check connection of card reader cable.	
E711	Error in communication between the host machine and pickup/delivery accessories / Error in communication between the reader and the ADF			
	0001	Error detected 4 times or more within 1.5 sec during communication between reader and ADF.	1. Check cable connection between reader and ADF. 2. Replace ADF controller PCB.3. Replace reader controller PCB.	
	0001	Error: recognition of accessory When accessories cannot be recognized correctly on ARCNET	1. Turn the power OFF/ON 2. Check the connection of ARCNET cable and terminal connector -> connect it again	Occurrence classification: 04 (Reader)
	0010	Fault: delivery accessory control When detecting a fault in the accessory communication control assembly	1. Turn the power OFF/ON 2. Check the connection of ARCNET cable and terminal connector -> connect it again	Occurrence classification: 05 (DC Controller)
	0011	Error: communication with delivery accessory When no response is made although data was sent to the accessory	1. Turn the power OFF/ON 2. Check the connection of ARCNET cable and terminal connector -> connect it again	Occurrence classification: 05 (DC Controller)
	0020	Fault: pickup accessory control When detecting a fault in the accessory communication control assembly	1. Turn the power OFF/ON 2. Check the connection of ARCNET cable and terminal connector -> connect it again	Occurrence classification: 05 (DC Controller)
	0021	Error: communication with pickup accessory When no response is made although data was sent to the accessory	1. Turn the power OFF/ON 2. Check the connection of ARCNET cable and terminal connector -> connect it again	Occurrence classification: 05 (DC Controller)

Code	Detail code	Cause (description)	Remedy	Remarks
<p>- When a following error occurs, after taking appropriate action (remedy), be sure to turn ON the power, and then select the following to execute ERR: COPIER > FUNCTION > CLEAR > ERR. The error is cleared by turning OFF and then ON the power after ERR execution. E000,E001,E002,E003,E004,E013,E717,E719 For errors other than those described above, the error is cleared by turning OFF and then ON the power after taking appropriate action (remedy). - When turning ON the power, be sure to turn ON the power in the following order: pickup/delivery accessories -> Main Body: Otherwise the pickup/delivery accessories are not recognized.</p>				
E717		Error in communication with ASSIST (NE controller).		
	0001	NE controller was connected just before power was turned OFF, but could not be recognized when power was turned ON.	1. Check cable connection. 2. Attach NE controller.	After taking remedy, perform error clear operation:(COPIER > FUNCTION > CLEAR > ERR)
	0002	IPC communication cable disconnection/irrecoverable communication error detected.	1. Check cable connection. 2. Replace cable.	After taking remedy, perform error clear operation:(COPIER > FUNCTION > CLEAR > ERR)
E719		Error in communication with coin vendor unit or card reader.		
	0001	Coin vendor unit was connected just before power was turned OFF, but could not be recognized when power was turned ON.	1. Check cable connection. 2. Attach coin vendor unit.	After taking remedy, perform error clear operation:(COPIER > FUNCTION > CLEAR > ERR)
	0002	Coin vendor unit IPC cable disconnection/irrecoverable communication error detected. - Pickup/delivery signal line disconnection detected. - Invalid connection detected (short-circuit of IPC Rx and Tx).	1. Check cable connection. 2. Replace cable.	After taking remedy, perform error clear operation:(COPIER > FUNCTION > CLEAR > ERR)
	0003	Error occurred in communicating with coin vendor unit while obtaining unit price at startup.	1. Turn OFF and then ON the main power. 2. Check cable connection.	After taking remedy, perform error clear operation:(COPIER > FUNCTION > CLEAR > ERR)
	0011	Card reader was connected just before power was turned OFF, but could not be recognized when power was turned ON.	1. Check cable connection. 2. Attach card reader.	After taking remedy, perform error clear operation:(COPIER > FUNCTION > CLEAR > ERR)
	0012	Card reader IPC cable disconnection/irrecoverable communication error detected.	1. Check cable connection. 2. Replace cable.	After taking remedy, perform error clear operation:(COPIER > FUNCTION > CLEAR > ERR)
E720		Non-applicable option connection error		
	00xx	A non-applicable option (iR7105 series options, etc.) is recognized during initial communication after turning power ON.	When xx = 11, 12: set node ID switch correctly on POD/secondary POD deck ARCNET PCB. When xx = 51, 52: set node ID switch correctly on stacker/secondary stacker ARCNET PCB. When xx = 02: mount correct finisher for this model (Finisher AB1/Saddle finisher AB2).	xx: option mounting ID11 = POD deck, 12 = secondary POD deck, 51 = stacker, 52 = secondary stacker, 02 = finisher

Code	Detail code	Cause (description)	Remedy	Remarks
<p>- When a following error occurs, after taking appropriate action (remedy), be sure to turn ON the power, and then select the following to execute ERR: COPIER > FUNCTION > CLEAR > ERR. The error is cleared by turning OFF and then ON the power after ERR execution. E000,E001,E002,E003,E004,E013,E717,E719</p> <p>For errors other than those described above, the error is cleared by turning OFF and then ON the power after taking appropriate action (remedy). - When turning ON the power, be sure to turn ON the power in the following order: pickup/delivery accessories -> Main Body: Otherwise the pickup/delivery accessories are not recognized.</p>				
E730		Error in PDL software		
	1001	PDL software malfunction Initialization error at job start	1. PDL reset process 2. Turn OFF and then ON the main power.	
	100A	PDL software malfunction System error, such as initialization failure during job processing, etc., occurs.	1. PDL reset process 2. Turn OFF and then ON the main power.	
	100B	PDL master font malfunction	1. PDL reset process 2. Turn OFF and then ON the main power. 3. Re-install Kanji font file. 4. After full HDD reformat, re-install system software.	PS-kanji only
	9004	External controller (imagePRESS server) communication error	1. Turn OFF and then ON the main power. 2. Check communication cable connection. 3. Check O-B/ RO-B PCB connection (any loose wiring? connectors inserted at an angle?) -> remove and re-attach PCB. 4. Replace O-B/RO-B PCB. 5. Replace imagePRESS server. 6. Replace main controller PCB (MAIN-M).	
	9005	Video cable connection malfunction with external controller (imagePRESS server) detected.	Same as above.	
	A006	PDL communication error PDL does not respond.	1. PDL reset process 2. Turn OFF and then ON the main power. 3. Check RB-A PCB connection (any loose wiring? connectors inserted at an angle?) -> remove and re-attach PCB. 4. Re-install system software. 5. Replace main controller PCB (MAIN-M).	
	A007	PDL version incompatibility At startup, the versions of the main unit control software and the PDL control software do not match.	1. PDL reset process 2. Turn OFF and then ON the main power. 3. After full HDD reformat, re-install system software.	
	B013	PDL embedded font malfunction Font data are destroyed at startup.	1. PDL reset process 2. Turn OFF and then ON the main power. 3. After full HDD reformat, re-install system software.	
	C000	Initialization error	1. After full HDD reformat, re-install system software. 2. Replace main controller PCB (MAIN-M).	
	C001	HDD access error	1. After full HDD reformat, re-install system software. 2. Replace HDD. 3. Replace main controller PCB (MAIN-M).	- Both HDD must be replaced at the same time. - After being replaced, the HDD are completely reformatted, so the system software must be reinstalled.
E731		Error in RB-A PCB		
	3000	RB-A PCB cannot be recognized at startup.	1. Check RB-A PCB connection (any loose wiring? connectors inserted at an angle?) -> remove and re-attach PCB. 2. Replace BR-A PCB. 3. Replace main controller PCB (MAIN-M).	
	3001	BR-A PCB initialization failed at startup.	Same as above.	
	3015	During job processing, video data are not input into the image processing ASIC on the main controller PCB (MAIN-M).	1. Turn OFF and then ON the main power. 2. Replace BR-A PCB. 3. Replace main controller PCB (MAIN-M).	
E732		Reader communication error		

Code	Detail code	Cause (description)	Remedy	Remarks
<p>- When a following error occurs, after taking appropriate action (remedy), be sure to turn ON the power, and then select the following to execute ERR: COPIER > FUNCTION > CLEAR > ERR. The error is cleared by turning OFF and then ON the power after ERR execution. E000,E001,E002,E003,E004,E013,E717,E719</p> <p>For errors other than those described above, the error is cleared by turning OFF and then ON the power after taking appropriate action (remedy). - When turning ON the power, be sure to turn ON the power in the following order: pickup/delivery accessories -> Main Body: Otherwise the pickup/delivery accessories are not recognized.</p>				
	0000	Reader communication error	Disconnect then reconnect the reader communication cable, check the reader power supply (is the unit initializing at startup?), replace the reader controller PCB, replace the S-B PCB.	
	8888	Error: recognition of reader	Install the latest reader controller software.	
	9999	- Reader detected on first startup after reader connection. - RAM cleared upon reader connection.	On the first power ON after reader connection, a screen is displayed prompting power shutdown. Shut down the power as per the instructions on the screen. This error code is not displayed on the shutdown prompt screen, and is only shown on the error history display (COPIER > DISPLAY > ERR).	

Code	Detail code	Cause (description)	Remedy	Remarks
<p>- When a following error occurs, after taking appropriate action (remedy), be sure to turn ON the power, and then select the following to execute ERR: COPIER > FUNCTION > CLEAR > ERR. The error is cleared by turning OFF and then ON the power after ERR execution. E000,E001,E002,E003,E004,E013,E717,E719</p> <p>For errors other than those described above, the error is cleared by turning OFF and then ON the power after taking appropriate action (remedy). - When turning ON the power, be sure to turn ON the power in the following order: pickup/delivery accessories -> Main Body: Otherwise the pickup/delivery accessories are not recognized.</p>				
E733 Error in printer communication				
	0000	Could not communicate with printer (DC controller PCB 1-1) at startup.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Turn OFF and then ON the main power. 2. Check cable connection between DC controller PCB 1-3 and main controller PCB (MAIN-P). 3. Check printer power supply. 4. Replace the DC controller PCB 1-1. 5. Replace the main controller PCB (MAIN-P). 6. Replace the main controller PCB (MAIN-P). 	When turning OFF the main power, both the main unit and accessories must be turned OFF. When turning the main power back ON, turn the accessories ON first, then the main unit.
	0001	Could not communicate with printer (DC controller PCB 1-1) after startup.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Turn OFF and then ON the main power. 2. Check cable connection between DC controller PCB 1-3 and main controller PCB (MAIN-P). 3. Check printer power supply. 4. Replace the DC controller PCB 1-1. 5. Replace the main controller PCB (MAIN-P). 6. Replace the main controller PCB (MAIN-P). 	When turning OFF the main power, both the main unit and accessories must be turned OFF. When turning the main power back ON, turn the accessories ON first, then the main unit.
E740 Error in LAN-bar-B PCB				
	0002	Invalid MAC address detected at startup.	Replace LAN-bar-B PCB.	
	0003	Invalid network ID detected at startup.	Replace LAN-bar-B PCB.	
E744 Error in language file				
	0001	The language version in the HDD and the Bootable version are different.	Re-install proper language file (Language).	
	0002	The language size in the HDD is too big.	Re-install proper language file (Language).	
	0003	The language to be switched to, as described in HDD Config.txt, cannot be found. Language in HDD switching cannot be performed.	Re-install proper language file (Language).	
	0004	Language in HDD switching cannot be performed.	Re-install proper language file (Language).	
	1000	Boot ROM connection for a different model has been detected.	Replace with correct Boot ROM for this model.	
	2000	Invalid engine ID detected.	Does not usually occur. If this does occur, call the contact for the service.	
E747 Error in main controller image processing ASIC				
	0000 - Exxx	See 'E747 descriptions'.		
E748 Error in main controller associated board				
	4xxx	See 'E748 descriptions'.		
E749 Restart instruction due to product configuration change				
	0001	Boot ROM for different model replaced (when installing PDL option, etc.).	Recovered by turning OFF and then ON the main power.	
	0003	Boot instruction due to mAccele (MEAP features) configuration change	Same as above	

Code	Detail code	Cause (description)	Remedy	Remarks
<p>- When a following error occurs, after taking appropriate action (remedy), be sure to turn ON the power, and then select the following to execute ERR: COPIER > FUNCTION > CLEAR > ERR. The error is cleared by turning OFF and then ON the power after ERR execution. E000,E001,E002,E003,E004,E013,E717,E719</p> <p>For errors other than those described above, the error is cleared by turning OFF and then ON the power after taking appropriate action (remedy). - When turning ON the power, be sure to turn ON the power in the following order: pickup/delivery accessories -> Main Body: Otherwise the pickup/delivery accessories are not recognized.</p>				
E750		Error in combination of hardware and software		
	0001	Compatibility error between DC controller software and electrical circuitry The DC controller software and printer engine electrical circuitry identifiers do not match.	Install proper DC controller software and mount proper DC controller PCB.	
	0002	Compatibility error between DC controller software and main controller software The model name notified by the main controller does not match that of the DC controller software (same series but different model).	Install the correct DC controller software for this model.	
	1111	Compatibility error between DC controller software and DC controller PCBR&D DC controller software and DC controller PCB have been installed and they are not compatible with each other.	Install the correct DC controller software and replace the DC controller PCB with the correct one for this model.	This error does not occur with full production models.
	1112 1113 1122 1123	Error: combination of DC controller software and DC controller PCB 1112: OEM software and Canon DC controller PCB 1-1 1113: Canon software and OEM DC controller PCB 1-1 1122: OEM software and Canon DC controller PCB 1-2 1123: Canon software and OEM DC controller PCB 1-2	Install the correct DC controller software.	
	2000	Combination error at fixing assembly (Primary fixing assembly, secondary fixing assembly) When the power supply information signals are the different between the primary fixing assembly and the secondary fixing assembly	1) Attach the short connector to drawer unit of fixing assembly. 2) Replace it to the appropriate combination fixing assembly.	
	2011 2012	Error: combination of DC controller software and fixing assembly 2011: OEM software and Canon fixing assembly 2012: Canon software and OEM fixing assembly	Install proper DC controller software and mount proper fixing assembly.	
	9999	Error: combination of DC controller ROMs When the version information of the ROM mounted in the CPU of DC controller PCB 1-2 and that of the ROM on DC controller PCB 1-2 do not match	Replace the DC controller PCB 1-1 with the correct one.	

17.1.5 E804 to E998 (DC Controller, POD Deck)

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

T-17-7

Code	Detail code	Cause (description)	Remedy	Remarks
<p>-When a following error occurs, after taking appropriate action (remedy), be sure to turn ON the power, and then select the following to execute ERR: COPIER > FUNCTION > CLEAR > ERR. The error is cleared by turning OFF and then ON the power after ERR execution. E000,E001,E002,E003,E004,E013,E717,E719 For errors other than those described above, the error is cleared by turning OFF and then ON the power after taking appropriate action (remedy). -When turning ON the power, be sure to turn ON the power in the following order: pickup/delivery accessories -> Main Body: Otherwise the pickup/delivery accessories are not recognized.</p>				
E804		Error in power supply cooling fan When detecting phase unlock for 2 sec consecutively when 10 sec elapsed after the fan was turned on		
	0004	Error: primary fixing belt cooling fan 1 (FM500)	1. Check if the connector is disconnected/not securely inserted -> disconnect and then connect the connector 2. Replace the fan	Power unit station
	0101	Error: power supply cooling fan 1, 2 (FM502, FM503)	1. Check if the connector is disconnected/not securely inserted -> disconnect and then connect the connector 2. Replace the fan	Power unit station
	0102	Error: power supply cooling fan 3, 4 (FM504, FM505)	1. Check if the connector is disconnected/not securely inserted -> disconnect and then connect the connector 2. Replace the fan	Power unit station
	0103	Error: power supply cooling fan 5, 6 (FM506, FM507)	1. Check if the connector is disconnected/not securely inserted -> disconnect and then connect the connector 2. Replace the fan	Power unit station
	0104	Error: power supply cooling fan 7, 8 (FM300, FM301)	1. Check if the connector is disconnected/not securely inserted -> disconnect and then connect the connector 2. Replace the fan	Sub station
E805		Error in fixing assembly fan When detecting phase unlock for 2 sec consecutively when 10 sec elapsed after the fan was turned on		
	0101	Error: primary fixing belt cooling fan 1 (FM302)	1. Check if the connector is disconnected/not securely inserted -> disconnect and then connect the connector 2. Replace the fan	Sub station
	0102	Error: primary fixing belt cooling fan 2 (FM303)	1. Check if the connector is disconnected/not securely inserted -> disconnect and then connect the connector 2. Replace the fan	Sub station
	0103	Error: primary fixing belt cooling fan 3 (FM304)	1. Check if the connector is disconnected/not securely inserted -> disconnect and then connect the connector 2. Replace the fan	Sub station
	0104	Error: primary fixing belt cooling fan 4 (FM305)	1. Check if the connector is disconnected/not securely inserted -> disconnect and then connect the connector 2. Replace the fan	Sub station
	0105	Error: primary fixing belt cooling fan 5 (FM338)	1. Check if the connector is disconnected/not securely inserted -> disconnect and then connect the connector 2. Replace the fan	Sub station
	0201	Error: primary fixing heat exhaust fan (F312)	1. Check if the connector is disconnected/not securely inserted -> disconnect and then connect the connector 2. Replace the fan	Sub station
	0202	Error: secondary fixing heat exhaust fan (FM314)	1. Check if the connector is disconnected/not securely inserted -> disconnect and then connect the connector 2. Replace the fan	Sub station
	0301	Error: secondary fixing pressure roller cooling fan 1 (FM306)	1. Check if the connector is disconnected/not securely inserted -> disconnect and then connect the connector 2. Replace the fan	Sub station
	0302	Error: secondary fixing pressure roller cooling fan 2 (FM307)	1. Check if the connector is disconnected/not securely inserted -> disconnect and then connect the connector 2. Replace the fan	Sub station
	0303	Fan: secondary fixing pressure roller cooling fan 3 (FM308)	1. Check if the connector is disconnected/not securely inserted -> disconnect and then connect the connector 2. Replace the fan	Sub station
	0304	Error: secondary fixing pressure roller cooling fan 4 (FM309)	1. Check if the connector is disconnected/not securely inserted -> disconnect and then connect the connector 2. Replace the fan	Sub station
	0305	Error: secondary fixing pressure roller cooling fan 5 (FM337)	1. Check if the connector is disconnected/not securely inserted -> disconnect and then connect the connector 2. Replace the fan	Sub station

Code	Detail code	Cause (description)	Remedy	Remarks
<p>-When a following error occurs, after taking appropriate action (remedy), be sure to turn ON the power, and then select the following to execute ERR: COPIER > FUNCTION > CLEAR > ERR. The error is cleared by turning OFF and then ON the power after ERR execution. E000,E001,E002,E003,E004,E013,E717,E719 For errors other than those described above, the error is cleared by turning OFF and then ON the power after taking appropriate action (remedy). -When turning ON the power, be sure to turn ON the power in the following order: pickup/delivery accessories -> Main Body: Otherwise the pickup/delivery accessories are not recognized.</p>				
E805 (continue)	0401	Error: pre-fixing feed front right fan (FM121)	1. Check if the connector is disconnected/not securely inserted -> disconnect and then connect the connector 2. Replace the fan	Sub station
	0402	Error: pre-fixing feed rear right fan (FM120)	1. Check if the connector is disconnected/not securely inserted -> disconnect and then connect the connector 2. Replace the fan	Sub station
	0403	Error: pre-fixing feed front left fan (FM134)	1. Check if the connector is disconnected/not securely inserted -> disconnect and then connect the connector 2. Replace the fan	Sub station
	0404	Error: pre-fixing feed rear left fan (FM137)	1. Check if the connector is disconnected/not securely inserted -> disconnect and then connect the connector 2. Replace the fan	Sub station
	0601	Error: primary fixing sub station power unit cooling fan (FM310)	1. Check if the connector is disconnected/not securely inserted -> disconnect and then connect the connector 2. Replace the fan	Sub station
	0602	Error: secondary fixing sub station power unit cooling fan (FM311)	1. Check if the connector is disconnected/not securely inserted -> disconnect and then connect the connector 2. Replace the fan	Sub station
	0701	Error: primary fixing separating cooling fan 1 (FM331)	1. Check if the connector is disconnected/not securely inserted -> disconnect and then connect the connector 2. Replace the fan	Sub station
	0702	Error: primary fixing separating cooling fan 2 (FM332)	1. Check if the connector is disconnected/not securely inserted -> disconnect and then connect the connector 2. Replace the fan	Sub station
	0703	Error: primary fixing separating cooling fan 3 (FM333)	1. Check if the connector is disconnected/not securely inserted -> disconnect and then connect the connector 2. Replace the fan	Sub station
	0704	Error: primary fixing separating cooling fan 4 (FM334)	1. Check if the connector is disconnected/not securely inserted -> disconnect and then connect the connector 2. Replace the fan	Sub station
	0801	Error: fixing duplexing driver PCB left cooling fan (FM351)	1. Check if the connector is disconnected/not securely inserted -> disconnect and then connect the connector 2. Replace the fan	Sub station
	0802	Error: fixing duplexing driver PCB right cooling fan (FM352)	1. Check if the connector is disconnected/not securely inserted -> disconnect and then connect the connector 2. Replace the fan	Sub station
E820	Error in drum cooling fan When detecting phase unlock for 2 sec consecutively when 10 sec elapsed after the fan was turned on			
	010x	Error: process unit cooling fan (FM107, FM109, FM111, FM113)	1. Check if the connector is disconnected/not securely inserted -> disconnect and then connect the connector 2. Replace the fan	x= 1:Y 2:M 3:C 4:Bk Main station
	020x	Error: process unit exhausting fan (FM114, FM112, FM108, FM110)	1. Check if the connector is disconnected/not securely inserted -> disconnect and then connect the connector 2. Replace the fan	x= 1:Y 2:M 3:C 4:Bk Main station
	0301	Error: process unit front side cooling fan (FM160)	1. Check if the connector is disconnected/not securely inserted -> disconnect and then connect the connector 2. Replace the fan	Main station
	0302	Error: process unit rear side cooling fan (FM161)	1. Check if the connector is disconnected/not securely inserted -> disconnect and then connect the connector 2. Replace the fan	Main station
	0303	Error: yellow developing assembly cooling fan 1	1. Check if the connector is disconnected/not securely inserted -> disconnect and then connect the connector 2. Replace the fan	Main station

Code	Detail code	Cause (description)	Remedy	Remarks
<p>-When a following error occurs, after taking appropriate action (remedy), be sure to turn ON the power, and then select the following to execute ERR: COPIER > FUNCTION > CLEAR > ERR. The error is cleared by turning OFF and then ON the power after ERR execution. E000,E001,E002,E003,E004,E013,E717,E719</p> <p>For errors other than those described above, the error is cleared by turning OFF and then ON the power after taking appropriate action (remedy).</p> <p>-When turning ON the power, be sure to turn ON the power in the following order: pickup/delivery accessories -> Main Body: Otherwise the pickup/delivery accessories are not recognized.</p>				
E822		Error in delivery fan When detecting phase unlock for 2 sec consecutively when 10 sec elapsed after the fan was turned on		
	0101	Error: delivery upper cooling fan (FM318)	1. Check if the connector is disconnected/not securely inserted -> disconnect and then connect the connector 2. Replace the fan	Sub station
	0102	Error: delivery lower cooling fan (FM319)	1. Check if the connector is disconnected/not securely inserted -> disconnect and then connect the connector 2. Replace the fan	Sub station
	0201	Error: primary fixing inside delivery cooling fan (FM313)	1. Check if the connector is disconnected/not securely inserted -> disconnect and then connect the connector 2. Replace the fan	Sub station
	0202	Error: secondary fixing inside delivery cooling fan (FM315)	1. Check if the connector is disconnected/not securely inserted -> disconnect and then connect the connector 2. Replace the fan	Sub station
	0301	Error: main station right cooling fan 1 (FM140)	1. Check if the connector is disconnected/not securely inserted -> disconnect and then connect the connector 2. Replace the fan	
	0302	Error: main station right cooling fan 2 (FM141)	1. Check if the connector is disconnected/not securely inserted -> disconnect and then connect the connector 2. Replace the fan	
	0303	Error: main station right cooling fan 3 (FM142)	1. Check if the connector is disconnected/not securely inserted -> disconnect and then connect the connector 2. Replace the fan	
	0304	Error: main body high-voltage cooling fan right	1. Check if the connector is disconnected/not securely inserted -> disconnect and then connect the connector 2. Replace the fan	
	0305	Error: main station rear left cooling fan (FM163)	1. Check if the connector is disconnected/not securely inserted -> disconnect and then connect the connector 2. Replace the fan	
	0401	Error: duplexing decurler fan (FM320)	1. Check if the connector is disconnected/not securely inserted -> disconnect and then connect the connector 2. Replace the fan	Sub station
	0402	Error: delivery decurler cooling fan (FM350)	1. Check if the connector is disconnected/not securely inserted -> disconnect and then connect the connector 2. Replace the fan	Sub station
	0501	Error: registration feed driver PCB right cooling fan (FM130)	1. Check if the connector is disconnected/not securely inserted -> disconnect and then connect the connector 2. Replace the fan	Main station
	0502	Error: secondary transfer/duplexing driver PCB cooling fan (FM135)	1. Check if the connector is disconnected/not securely inserted -> disconnect and then connect the connector 2. Replace the fan	Main station
	0503	Error: reverse external delivery driver PCB cooling fan	1. Check if the connector is disconnected/not securely inserted -> disconnect and then connect the connector 2. Replace the fan	Sub station
	0601	Error: station to station interval cooling fan 1 (FM321)	1. Check if the connector is disconnected/not securely inserted -> disconnect and then connect the connector 2. Replace the fan	
	0602	Error: station to station interval cooling fan 2 (FM322)	1. Check if the connector is disconnected/not securely inserted -> disconnect and then connect the connector 2. Replace the fan	

Code	Detail code	Cause (description)	Remedy	Remarks
<p>-When a following error occurs, after taking appropriate action (remedy), be sure to turn ON the power, and then select the following to execute ERR: COPIER > FUNCTION > CLEAR > ERR. The error is cleared by turning OFF and then ON the power after ERR execution. E000,E001,E002,E003,E004,E013,E717,E719</p> <p>For errors other than those described above, the error is cleared by turning OFF and then ON the power after taking appropriate action (remedy).</p> <p>-When turning ON the power, be sure to turn ON the power in the following order: pickup/delivery accessories -> Main Body: Otherwise the pickup/delivery accessories are not recognized.</p>				
E822 (cont nue)	0603	Error: station to station interval cooling fan 3 (FM323)	1. Check if the connector is disconnected/not securely inserted -> disconnect and then connect the connector 2. Replace the fan	
	0604	Error: station to station interval cooling fan 4 (FM324)	1. Check if the connector is disconnected/not securely inserted -> disconnect and then connect the connector 2. Replace the fan	
	0606	Error: station to station interval cooling fan 6 (FM326)	1. Check if the connector is disconnected/not securely inserted -> disconnect and then connect the connector 2. Replace the fan	
	0607	Error: station to station interval cooling fan 7 (FM327)	1. Check if the connector is disconnected/not securely inserted -> disconnect and then connect the connector 2. Replace the fan	
	0608	Error: station to station interval cooling fan 8 (FM328)	1. Check if the connector is disconnected/not securely inserted -> disconnect and then connect the connector 2. Replace the fan	
	0702	Error: merger intake air fan (right)	1. Check if the connector is disconnected/not securely inserted -> disconnect and then connect the connector 2. Replace the fan	Sub station
	0703	Error: merger intake air fan (left)	1. Check if the connector is disconnected/not securely inserted -> disconnect and then connect the connector 2. Replace the fan	Sub station
	0801	Error: main station upper delivery fan (FM354)	1. Check if the connector is disconnected/not securely inserted -> disconnect and then connect the connector 2. Replace the fan	
	0802	Error: main station lower delivery fan (FM355)	1. Check if the connector is disconnected/not securely inserted -> disconnect and then connect the connector 2. Replace the fan	
	0901	Error: merger guide front fan (FM361)	1. Check if the connector is disconnected/not securely inserted -> disconnect and then connect the connector 2. Replace the fan	Sub station
	0902	Error: tandem guide upper cooling fan (FM357)	1. Check if the connector is disconnected/not securely inserted -> disconnect and then connect the connector 2. Replace the fan	Sub station
	0903	Error: tandem guide lower cooling fan (FM358)	1. Check if the connector is disconnected/not securely inserted -> disconnect and then connect the connector 2. Replace the fan	Sub station
	0904	Error: bypass guide front cooling fan (FM359)	1. Check if the connector is disconnected/not securely inserted -> disconnect and then connect the connector 2. Replace the fan	Sub station
	0905	Error: bypass guide rear cooling fan (FM360)	1. Check if the connector is disconnected/not securely inserted -> disconnect and then connect the connector 2. Replace the fan	Sub station
E823	Error in post fan When detecting phase unlock for 2 sec consecutively when 10 sec elapsed after the fan was turned on			
	0001	Error: pre-transfer exhausting fan (FM115)	1. Check if the connector is disconnected/not securely inserted -> disconnect and then connect the connector 2. Replace the fan	Main station
E828	Error in reader cooling fan When detecting phase unlock for 2 sec consecutively when 10 sec elapsed after the fan was turned on			
	0001	Error: reader cooling fan (FM353)	1. Check if the connector is disconnected/not securely inserted -> disconnect and then connect the connector 2. Replace the fan	Sub station

Code	Detail code	Cause (description)	Remedy	Remarks
<p>-When a following error occurs, after taking appropriate action (remedy), be sure to turn ON the power, and then select the following to execute ERR: COPIER > FUNCTION > CLEAR > ERR. The error is cleared by turning OFF and then ON the power after ERR execution. E000,E001,E002,E003,E004,E013,E717,E719 For errors other than those described above, the error is cleared by turning OFF and then ON the power after taking appropriate action (remedy). -When turning ON the power, be sure to turn ON the power in the following order: pickup/delivery accessories -> Main Body: Otherwise the pickup/delivery accessories are not recognized.</p>				
E842 Error related to fixing disengagement/engagement mechanism				
	0x01	Error: external heat roller HP (hardware detection)	1. Check following for faulty connection/ loose wiring -> Disconnect then reconnect connectors. - External heater roller HP sensor - External heater pressure motor 2. Replace external heater roller HP sensor. 3. Replace external pressure motor.	x= 1: Primary fixing 2: Secondary fixing
	0x11	Error: pressure belt (pressure roller) disengagement/engagement	1. Check following for faulty connection/ loose wiring -> Disconnect then reconnect connectors. - Primary fixing pressure belt HP sensor (secondary fixing pressure roller HP sensor) - Primary fixing pressure belt pressure sensor (secondary fixing pressure roller pressure sensor) - Primary fixing pressure belt pressure motor (secondary fixing pressure roller pressure motor) 2. Replace primary fixing pressure belt HP sensor (secondary pressure roller HP sensor). 3. Replace primary fixing pressure belt pressure sensor (secondary fixing pressure roller pressure sensor) 4. Replace primary fixing pressure belt pressure motor (secondary fixing pressure roller pressure motor).	x= 1: Primary fixing 2: Secondary fixing
	0x12	Error: pressure belt (pressure roller) disengagement	Same as above	x= 1: Primary fixing 2: Secondary fixing
	0x13	Error: pressure belt (pressure roller) engagement	Same as above	x= 1: Primary fixing 2: Secondary fixing
	0x21	Error: external heat roller disengagement/engagement	1. Check following for faulty connection/ loose wiring -> Disconnect then reconnect connectors. - External heater roller HP sensor - External heater pressure motor 2. Replace external heater roller HP sensor. 3. Replace external heater pressure motor.	x= 1: Primary fixing 2: Secondary fixing
	0x22	Error: external heat roller disengagement	Same as above	x= 1: Primary fixing 2: Secondary fixing
	0x23	Error: external heat roller engagement	Same as above	x= 1: Primary fixing 2: Secondary fixing
	0x31	Error: fixing web disengagement/engagement	1. Check following for faulty connection/ loose wiring -> Disconnect then reconnect connectors. - Fixing web HP sensor - Fixing refresh roller HP sensor - Fixing web pressure motor 2. Replace the following: - Fixing web HP sensor - Fixing refresh roller HP sensor - Fixing web pressure motor	x= 1: Primary fixing 2: Secondary fixing
	0x32	Error: fixing web disengagement	Same as above	x= 1: Primary fixing 2: Secondary fixing
	0x33	Error: fixing web engagement	Same as above	x= 1: Primary fixing 2: Secondary fixing

Code	Detail code	Cause (description)	Remedy	Remarks
<p>-When a following error occurs, after taking appropriate action (remedy), be sure to turn ON the power, and then select the following to execute ERR: COPIER > FUNCTION > CLEAR > ERR. The error is cleared by turning OFF and then ON the power after ERR execution. E000,E001,E002,E003,E004,E013,E717,E719 For errors other than those described above, the error is cleared by turning OFF and then ON the power after taking appropriate action (remedy). -When turning ON the power, be sure to turn ON the power in the following order: pickup/delivery accessories -> Main Body: Otherwise the pickup/delivery accessories are not recognized.</p>				
E860		Error in power supply cooling fan (POD deck)		
	0001	Fan fault (no rotation)	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Check disconnection/loose connection of connector -> Disconnect and then connect the connector 2. Replace fan 3. Replace POD deck controller PCB 	Occurrence classification 11: POD deck 12: Secondary POD deck
E861		Error in POD deck controller PCB (POD deck)		
	0001	(upper deck) ASIC communication error	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Replace POD deck controller PCB 2. Replace pickup driver PCB 	Occurrence classification 11: POD deck 12: Secondary POD deck
	0002	(middle deck) ASIC communication error	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Replace POD deck controller PCB 2. Replace pickup driver PCB 	Occurrence classification 11: POD deck 12: Secondary POD deck
	0003	(lower deck) ASIC communication error	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Replace POD deck controller PCB 2. Replace pickup driver PCB 	Occurrence classification 11: POD deck 12: Secondary POD deck
	0004	(escape tray) ASIC communication error	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Replace POD deck controller PCB 2. Replace escape driver PCB 	Occurrence classification 11: POD deck 12: Secondary POD deck
	0005	(inside POD deck controller) ASIC communication error	Replace POD deck controller PCB	Occurrence classification 11: POD deck 12: Secondary POD deck
E862		Error in deck driver PCB (POD deck)		
	0x01	Fault: 24V	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Check disconnection/loose connection of the deck driver PCB connector -> Disconnect and then connect the connector 2. Check disconnection/open circuit of flexible cable 3. Replace deck driver PCB 	x= 0:upper deck 1:middle deck 2:lower deck Occurrence classification 11: POD deck 12: Secondary POD deck
	0x02	Fault: 12V	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Check disconnection/loose connection of the deck driver PCB connector -> Disconnect and then connect the connector 2. Check disconnection/open circuit of flexible cable 3. Replace deck driver PCB 	x= 0:upper deck 1:middle deck 2:lower deck Occurrence classification 11: POD deck 12: Secondary POD deck
	0x03	Fault: 5V	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Check disconnection/loose connection of the deck driver PCB connector -> Disconnect and then connect the connector 2. Check disconnection/open circuit of flexible cable 3. Replace deck driver PCB 	x= 0:upper deck 1:middle deck 2:lower deck Occurrence classification 11: POD deck 12: Secondary POD deck
	0x04	Connector disconnection (J2101)	Check disconnection/loose connection of the deck driver PCB connector (J2101) -> Disconnect and then connect the connector	x= 0:upper deck 1:middle deck 2:lower deck Occurrence classification 11: POD deck 12: Secondary POD deck
	0x05	Connector disconnection (J2102)	Check disconnection/loose connection of the deck driver PCB connector (J2102) -> Disconnect and then connect the connector	x= 0:upper deck 1:middle deck 2:lower deck Occurrence classification 11: POD deck 12: Secondary POD deck

Code	Detail code	Cause (description)	Remedy	Remarks
<p>-When a following error occurs, after taking appropriate action (remedy), be sure to turn ON the power, and then select the following to execute ERR: COPIER > FUNCTION > CLEAR > ERR. The error is cleared by turning OFF and then ON the power after ERR execution. E000,E001,E002,E003,E004,E013,E717,E719 For errors other than those described above, the error is cleared by turning OFF and then ON the power after taking appropriate action (remedy). -When turning ON the power, be sure to turn ON the power in the following order: pickup/delivery accessories -> Main Body: Otherwise the pickup/delivery accessories are not recognized.</p>				
E863		Error in pickup driver PCB (POD deck)		
	0x01	Fault: 24V	1. Check disconnection/loose connection of pickup driver PCB connector -> Disconnect and then connect the connector 2. Replace pickup driver PCB 3. Replace fuse PCB 4. Replace power supply	x= 0:upper deck 1:middle deck 2:lower deck Occurrence classification 11: POD deck 12: Secondary POD deck
	0x02	Fault: 5V	1. Check disconnection/loose connection of pickup driver PCB connector -> Disconnect and then connect the connector 2. Replace pickup driver PCB 3. Replace fuse PCB 4. Replace power supply	x= 0:upper deck 1:middle deck 2:lower deck Occurrence classification 11: POD deck 12: Secondary POD deck
	0x03	Connector disconnection (J2051)	Check disconnection/loose connection of the pickup driver PCB connector (J2051) -> Disconnect and then connect the connector	x= 0:upper deck 1:middle deck 2:lower deck Occurrence classification 11: POD deck 12: Secondary POD deck
E864		Error in path motor driver PCB (POD deck)		
	0001	Fault: 24V	1. Check disconnection/loose connection of path motor driver PCB connector -> Disconnect and then connect the connector 2. Replace path motor driver PCB 3. Replace fuse PCB 4. Replace power supply	Occurrence classification 11: POD deck 12: Secondary POD deck
	0002	Fault: 5V	1. Check disconnection/loose connection of path motor driver PCB connector -> Disconnect and then connect the connector 2. Replace path motor driver PCB 3. Replace fuse PCB 4. Replace power supply	Occurrence classification 11: POD deck 12: Secondary POD deck
	0003	Connector disconnection (J3002)	Check disconnection/loose connection of path motor driver PCB (J3002) -> Disconnect and then connect the connector	Occurrence classification 11: POD deck 12: Secondary POD deck
	0004	Connector disconnection (J3003)	Check disconnection/loose connection of path motor driver PCB (J3003) -> Disconnect and then connect the connector	Occurrence classification 11: POD deck 12: Secondary POD deck
	0005	Connector disconnection (J3004)	Check disconnection/loose connection of path motor driver PCB (J3004) -> Disconnect and then connect the connector	Occurrence classification 11: POD deck 12: Secondary POD deck
	0006	Fault: 24V at vertical path front cover	1. Check if the door switch lever is damaged 2. Check if the vertical path cover interlock switch (MSW11) is faulty	Occurrence classification 11: POD deck 12: Secondary POD deck
	0007	Fault: 24V at front cover	1. Check if the door switch lever is damaged 2. Check if the horizontal path cover interlock switch (MSW10) is faulty	Occurrence classification 11: POD deck 12: Secondary POD deck
E865		Error in escape driver PCB (POD deck)		
	0001	Fault: 24V	1. Check disconnection/loose connection of escape driver PCB connector -> Disconnect and then connect the connector 2. Replace escape driver PCB 3. Replace fuse PCB 4. Replace power supply	
	0002	Fault: 24V at buffer path front cover	1. Check if the door switch lever is damaged 2. Check if the buffer cover interlock switch (MSW12) is faulty	
	0003	Connector disconnection (J359)	Check disconnection/loose connection of escape driver PCB (J359) -> Disconnect and then connect the connector	

Code	Detail code	Cause (description)	Remedy	Remarks
<p>-When a following error occurs, after taking appropriate action (remedy), be sure to turn ON the power, and then select the following to execute ERR: COPIER > FUNCTION > CLEAR > ERR. The error is cleared by turning OFF and then ON the power after ERR execution. E000,E001,E002,E003,E004,E013,E717,E719 For errors other than those described above, the error is cleared by turning OFF and then ON the power after taking appropriate action (remedy). -When turning ON the power, be sure to turn ON the power in the following order: pickup/delivery accessories -> Main Body: Otherwise the pickup/delivery accessories are not recognized.</p>				
E866 Error in indicator driver PCB (POD deck)				
	0x01	Fault: 12V	1. Check disconnection/loose connection of control panel driver PCB connector -> Disconnect and then connect the connector 2. Check if the flexible cable is damaged or disconnected. 3. Replace control panel driver PCB 4. Replace deck driver PCB	x= 0:upper deck 1:middle deck 2:lower deck Occurrence classification 11: POD deck 12: Secondary POD deck
	0x02	Connector disconnection (J2151)	Check disconnection/loose connection of control panel driver PCB connector (J2151) -> disconnect and then connect the connector	x= 0:upper deck 1:middle deck 2:lower deck Occurrence classification 11: POD deck 12: Secondary POD deck
E867 Error in deck floatation air heater (POD deck)				
	0x01	Fault: heater (overheating detection)	1. Check disconnection/loose connection/trapped wiring of connector -> disconnect and then connect the connector 2. Replace air heater 3. Replace pickup driver PCB 4. Replace pickup AC driver PCB	x= 0:upper deck 1:middle deck 2:lower deck Occurrence classification 11: POD deck 12: Secondary POD deck
	0x02	Fault: heater (low temperature detection, thermistor disconnection detection)	1. Check disconnection/loose connection/trapped wiring of connector -> disconnect and then connect the connector 2. Replace air heater 3. Replace pickup driver PCB 4. Replace pickup AC driver PCB	x= 0:upper deck 1:middle deck 2:lower deck Occurrence classification 11: POD deck 12: Secondary POD deck
E869 Error in path driver cooling fan (POD deck)				
	0001	Fault: fan (no rotation)	1. Check disconnection/loose connection of connector -> disconnect and then connect the connector 2. Replace fan 3. Replace feed path driver PCB	Occurrence classification 11: POD deck 12: Secondary POD deck
E870 Error in fuse PCB (POD deck)				
	0001	Connector disconnection (J210)	Check disconnection/loose connection of fuse PCB connector (J210) -> disconnect and then connect the connector	Occurrence classification 11: POD deck 12: Secondary POD deck
E905 Error in swing motor				
	0001	Error: swing motor, air assist fan	1. Check if the connector is disconnected/not securely inserted -> disconnect and then connect the connector 2. Replace swing motor, air assist fan.	Side paper deck only.
E906 Error in air heater				
	0001	Error: air heater high temperature	1. Check connectors for faulty connection/ loose wiring -> Disconnect then reconnect connectors. 2. Replace deck paper separation air heater. 3. Replace the following PCB Side paper deck: - Deck controller PCB Right deck, left deck: - Storage space driver PCB - Pickup driver PCB	x= 0: side paper deck 1: Right deck 2: Left deck
	0x02	Error: air heater low temperature	Same as above	x= 0: side paper deck 1: Right deck 2: Left deck
E998 Error in PCB connection				
	0002	Connection error of registration feed driver PCB	1. Check if the connector is disconnected or poorly connected -> disconnect and connect the connector 2. Replace the registration feed driver PCB	
	0004	Connection error of ITB driver PCB	1. Check if the connector is disconnected or poorly connected -> disconnect and connect the connector 2. Replace the ITB driver PCB	
	0008	Connection error of the primary fixing driver PCB	1. Check if the connector is disconnected or poorly connected -> disconnect and connect the connector 2. Replace the primary fixing driver PCB	
	0010	Connection error of the deck control PCB	1. Check if the connector is disconnected or poorly connected -> disconnect and connect the connector 2. Replace the deck control PCB	
	0020	Connection error of the hopper driver PCB	1. Check if the connector is disconnected or poorly connected -> disconnect and connect the connector 2. Replace the hopper driver PCB	
	0040	Connection error of registration patch sensor driver PCB	1. Check if the connector is disconnected or poorly connected -> disconnect and connect the connector 2. Replace the registration patch sensor driver PCB	
	0080	Connection error of the secondary fixing driver PCB	1. Check if the connector is disconnected or poorly connected -> disconnect and connect the connector 2. Replace the secondary fixing driver PCB	

Code	Detail code	Cause (description)	Remedy	Remarks
<p>-When a following error occurs, after taking appropriate action (remedy), be sure to turn ON the power, and then select the following to execute ERR: COPIER > FUNCTION > CLEAR > ERR. The error is cleared by turning OFF and then ON the power after ERR execution. E000,E001,E002,E003,E004,E013,E717,E719</p> <p>For errors other than those described above, the error is cleared by turning OFF and then ON the power after taking appropriate action (remedy). -When turning ON the power, be sure to turn ON the power in the following order: pickup/delivery accessories -> Main Body: Otherwise the pickup/delivery accessories are not recognized.</p>				
	0100	Connection error of the process unit driver PCB (Bk)	1.Check if the connector is disconnected or poorly connected -> disconnect and connect the connector 2.Replace the process unit driver PCB (Bk)	
	0200	Connection error of the process unit driver PCB (C)	1.Check if the connector is disconnected or poorly connected -> disconnect and connect the connector 2.Replace the process unit driver PCB (C)	
	0400	Connection error of the process unit driver PCB (M)	1.Check if the connector is disconnected or poorly connected -> disconnect and connect the connector 2.Replace the process unit driver PCB (M)	
	0800	Connection error of the process unit driver PCB (Y)	1.Check if the connector is disconnected or poorly connected -> disconnect and connect the connector 2.Replace the process unit driver PCB (Y)	
	1000	Connection error of the drum driver PCB (Bk)	1.Check if the connector is disconnected or poorly connected -> disconnect and connect the connector 2.Replace the drum driver PCB (Bk)	
	2000	Connection error of the drum driver PCB (C)	1.Check if the connector is disconnected or poorly connected -> disconnect and connect the connector 2.Replace the drum driver PCB (C)	
	4000	Connection error of the drum driver PCB (M)	1.Check if the connector is disconnected or poorly connected -> disconnect and connect the connector 2.Replace the drum driver PCB (M)	
	8000	Connection error of the drum driver PCB (Y)	1.Check if the connector is disconnected or poorly connected -> disconnect and connect the connector 2.Replace the drum driver PCB (Y)	

17.1.6 Detail in E020 (Error in ATR)

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

T-17-9

E020 (Error in ATR)		x= 1:Y 2:M 3:C 4:Bk
Detailed code	Error Description	Cause
0x81	Lower limit error in light intensity on drum base (reflecting light intensity from the drum surface) DISPLAY>DENS>P-B-P-Y/M/C/K(Measured value of drum base)<150	Clean the patch sensor
0x82	Lower limit error in current passed to the sensor while the patch sensor LED is off DISPLAY>DENS>P-D-P-Y/M/C/K(Dark state current value) <= 30	Check if the harness for patch sensor is shorted out
0x84	Fault at sampling drum base DISPLAY>DENS>P-B-P-Y/M/C/K(Measured value of drum base) - DISPLAY>DENS>P-D-P-Y/M/C/K(dark state current value) <=30	1. After cleaning the patch sensor, execute FUNCTION>MISC-P>PTLPADJ-Y/M/C/K -> check the DISPLAY>DENS>P-DA-Y/M/C/K value (1) 2. After removing the patch sensor shutter, execute FUNCTION>MISC-P>PTLPADJ-Y/M/C/K -> check the DISPLAY>DENS>P-DA-Y/M/C/K(level2) value (2) 3. If (1) = (2): Go to Remedy 4 If (1) > 240, (2) < 170: Replace the shutter and the shutter motor 4. If (1) = (2) and also the value is 255: Replace the patch sensor
0x85	Fault at sampling 1 in patch image DISPLAY>DENS>DENS-S-Y/M/C/K(Measured value of patch image) - DISPLAY>DENS>P-D-P-Y/M/C/K(dark state current value) <= 30	Take the same remedy for "0x84"
0x86	Fault at sampling 2 in patch image DISPLAY>DENS>DENS-S-Y/M/C/K(Measured value of patch image) - DISPLAY>DENS>P-B-P-Y/M/C/K(measured value of drum base) <= 30	1. PG05-96 (D) Single color/4C Check uniformity of the image -> Check the developing motor 2. Check the DISPLAY>DPOT>P-LPW-Y/M/C/K (patch laser power value) 3. Go to Remedies 1 and 2 for "0x84"
0x87	Upper limit error 2 in current passed to the sensor while the patch sensor LED is off DISPLAY>DENS>P-D-P-Y/M/C/K(Dark state current value) >= 930	Replace the patch sensor
0xC2	Error in variation of sampling value in patch image	PG14-THRU=1 Check gradation Check the image position in horizontal/vertical scanning direction
0x90	Lower limit error in ATR patch image density DISPLAY>DENS>DENS-S-Y/M/C/K (patch reading value after calculation) <= 16 when making prints	1. DISPLAY>DENS>SPL-LG-Y/M/C/K (level2) check -> If the value marks 00 continuously, go to Remedy 2 2. Check if the harness (A) of sub hopper toner detect sensor/hopper toner detect sensor are shorted out
0x91	Lower limit error in ATR patch image density DISPLAY>DENS>DENS-S-Y/M/C/K (patch reading value after calculation) >= 880 when making prints	1. DISPLAY>DENS>SPL-LG-Y/M/C/K (level2) check -> If the value marks 01 or more continuously, check the toner amount inside the toner bottle/sub hopper 2. Check if the harness (B) of sub hopper toner detect sensor/hopper toner detect sensor are shorted out
0x92	Lower limit error in developer density DISPLAY>DENS>DENS-S-Y/M/C/K is -5% or less for 3 times continuously	Take the same remedy for "0x91"
0x93	Upper limit error in developer density DISPLAY>DENS>DENS-S-Y/M/C/K is +5% or more for 3 times continuously	Take the same remedy for "0x90"

E020 (Error in ATR)		x= 1:Y 2:M 3:C 4:Bk
Detailed code	Error Description	Cause
0xB0	Lower limit error in signal value of toner density sensor When making prints, the DISPLAY>DENS>SGLL-Y/M/C/K value "Y:0040, M/C/K:0030H" or less for 5 prints continuously	1. DISPLAY>DENS>SPL-LG-Y/M/C/K (level2) check -> If the value marks 00 continuously, go to Remedy 2 2. Check if the connector is disconnected toner density sensor 3. Check if the harness (A) of sub hopper toner detect sensor/hopper toner detect sensor are shorted out 4. Replace the toner density sensor
0xB1	Upper limit error in signal value of toner density sensor When making prints, the DISPLAY>DENS>SGLL-Y/M/C/K value "Y:192, M/C/K:126" or more for 5 prints continuously	1. DISPLAY>DENS>SPL-LG-Y/M/C/K (level2) check -> If the value marks 01 or more continuously, check the toner amount inside the toner bottle/sub hopper 2. Check if the connector is disconnected toner density sensor 3. Check if the harness (B) of sub hopper toner detect sensor/hopper toner detect sensor are shorted out

17.1.7 Detail in E061 (Error in Potential Control)

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

T-17-10

E061 (Error in Potential Control)		x= 1:Y 2:M 3:C 4:Bk
Detailed Code	Error Description	Remedy 1
0x11	Lower limit error in potential control grid bias V _{grid} <= 400V	1. Check the potential sensor offset adjustment value 2. Reattach of drum unit (Be sure to connect the connector of the potential sensor and the pre-exposure lamp.) 3. Reattach of the primary charging assembly 4. Check the activation of the pre-exposure lamp 5. Replace the parts - primary charging assembly - drum - potential sensor - HV1 PCB
0x81	Error in poor power of laser When the laser power at potential control is at its MAX, the difference between V _d and V _I is 200V or less	1. Clean the dust-proof glass 2. Reattach of drum unit (Be sure to connect the connector of the potential sensor and the pre-exposure lamp.) 3. Check the values of V00-Y/M/C/K to VFF-Y/M/C/K by making the following selection: DISPLAY > DPOT > V00-Y/M/C/K to VFF-Y/M/C/K. If the values are almost same, it means that the laser is not activated. Thus, check the connection of the video cable. 4. Reattach of the primary charging assembly 5. Replace the parts - potential sensor - laser scanner unit - primary charging assembly
0x82	Error in power adjustment of laser At potential control, the difference in V _I of the laser power between at its MAX. and at its MIN. is 100V or less	1. Clean the dust-proof glass 2. Reattach of drum unit (Be sure to connect the connector of the potential sensor and the pre-exposure lamp.) 3. Check the values of V00-Y/M/C/K to VFF-Y/M/C/K by making the following selection: DISPLAY > DPOT > V00-Y/M/C/K to VFF-Y/M/C/K. If the values are almost same, it means that the laser is not activated. Thus, check the connection of the video cable. 4. Replace the parts - potential sensor - laser scanner unit
0x91	Lower limit error of laser power for the patch image determined at patch potential control Laser power for patch image <= 30 (H)	1. Clean the dust-proof glass 2. Reattach of drum unit (Be sure to connect the connector of the potential sensor and the pre-exposure lamp.) 3. Check the values of V00-Y/M/C/K to VFF-Y/M/C/K by making the following selection: DISPLAY > DPOT > V00-Y/M/C/K to VFF-Y/M/C/K. If the values are almost same, it means that the laser is not activated. Thus, check the connection of the video cable.
0x92	Upper limit error of laser power for the patch image determined at patch potential control Laser power for patch image >= FF (H)	4. Replace the parts - drum - potential sensor - laser scanner unit

17.1.8 Detail in E260 (Power error)

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

T-17-11

xx	E260-10xx (24V/12V)	E260-20xx (13V/5V)
00	Developing high-voltage PCB (Bk)	Registration feed driver PCB (left)_B_13V
01	Developing high-voltage PCB (C)	Registration feed driver PCB (left)_A_5V
02	Developing high-voltage PCB (M)	Registration feed driver PCB (right)_B_13V
03	Potential measuring PCB (Y)	Registration feed driver PCB (right)_A_5V
04	Registration feed driver PCB (left)_B	ITB driver PCB (right); 13V
05	Registration feed driver PCB (left)_A	ITB driver PCB (right); 5V
06	Registration feed driver PCB (right)_B	ITB driver PCB (center); 13V
07	Registration feed driver PCB (right)_A	ITB driver PCB (center); 5V
08	Secondary transfer high-voltage PCB	Drum driver PCB (Bk); 13V
09	ITB driver PCB (right)	Drum driver PCB (Bk); 5V
0A	ITB pre-transfer charging high-voltage PCB	Drum driver PCB (C); 13V
0B	ITB driver PCB (center)_2	Drum driver PCB (C); 5V
0C	ITB driver PCB (center)_1	Drum driver PCB (M); 13V
0D	Drum driver PCB (Bk)	Drum driver PCB (M); 5V
0E	Drum driver PCB (C)	Drum driver PCB (Y); 13V
0F	Drum driver PCB (M)	Drum driver PCB (Y); 5V
10	Drum driver PCB (Y)	DC controller PCB 1-21; 13V
11	DC controller PCB 1-3	Vertical path/lower feed driver PCB; 13V
12	Vertical path/lower feed driver PCB 3	Vertical path/lower feed driver PCB; 5V
13	Vertical path/lower feed driver PCB 2	DC controller PCB 1-2; 13V
14	Vertical path/lower feed driver PCB 1	Hopper driver PCB (Bk); 5V
15	DC controller PCB 1-2	Hopper driver PCB (C); 13V
16	Primary transfer high-voltage PCB (Bk)	Hopper driver PCB (M); 13V
17	Primary transfer high-voltage PCB (C)	Hopper driver PCB (Y); 13V
18	Primary transfer high-voltage PCB (M)	Process unit driver PCB (Bk); 13V
19	Primary transfer high-voltage PCB (Y)	Process unit driver PCB (Bk); 5V
1A	Hopper driver PCB (Bk)	Process unit driver PCB (C); 13V
1B	Hopper driver PCB (C)	Process unit driver PCB (C); 5V
1C	Hopper driver PCB (M)	Process unit driver PCB (M); 13V
1D	Hopper driver PCB (Y)	Process unit driver PCB (M); 5V
1E	-	Process unit driver PCB (Y); 13V
1F	Process unit driver PCB (Bk)	Process unit driver PCB (Y); 5V
20	-	Secondary transfer/duplexing driver PCB; 13V
21	Process unit driver PCB (C)	Secondary transfer/duplexing driver PCB; 5V
22	-	Registration patch sensor driver PCB; 13V
23	Process unit driver PCB (M)	Registration patch sensor driver PCB; 5V
24	-	ITB driver PCB (left); 5V
25	Process unit driver PCB (Y)	Pre-fixing feed driver PCB; 5V
26	-	Left deck pickup AC driver PCB; 5V
27	Secondary transfer/duplexing driver PCB 2	Left deck driver PCB; 5V
28	Secondary transfer/duplexing driver PCB 1	Right deck pickup AC driver PCB; 5V
29	Registration patch sensor driver PCB	Right deck driver PCB; 5V
2A	Pre-fixing feed driver PCB	-
2B	Secondary transfer cleaner high-voltage PCB	-
2C	Secondary transfer cleaner high-voltage PCB	-
2D	ITB cleaner high-voltage PCB (upstream)	-
2E	ITB cleaner high-voltage PCB (downstream)	-
2F	24V power supply 4	-
30	-	-
31	24V power supply 2	-
32	24V power supply 1	-
33	Left deck pickup AC driver PCB; 24V	-
34	Left deck driver PCB; 24V	-
35	Left deck driver PCB; 12V	-
36	Left deck indicator driver PCB; 12V	-
37	Right deck pickup AC driver PCB; 24V	-
38	Right deck driver PCB; 24V	-
39	Right deck driver PCB; 12V	-
3A	Right deck indicator driver PCB; 12V	-

17.1.9 Detail in E602 (Error in hard disk or encryption board)

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000



Points to Note When Replacing the Hard Disk

Be sure to replace the both 2 hard disks at the same time upon hard disk replacement. We do not guarantee the operation if only 1 hard disk is replaced. In case of attaching the encryption boards (option), be sure to replace the 2 hard disks along with the 2 encryption boards at the same time.

<E602-XXYY>

XX="00"

T-17-12

XX	YY	Contents	Measures
00	01	(*1) HDD is not recognized. The activation partition (BOOTDEV) cannot be found at the activation.	1. Turn off the power and check the connection of the HDD cable. Then, turn on the power again. 2. After turning on the power, put your ear to the HDD or touch the HDD with your finger to check whether or not the internal disk is rotating. 3. Replace the HDD. (Reinstall the system after replacement.) 4. Replace the main controller PCB (MAIN-M).
	02	The system for the main CPU does not exist.	1. Activate the machine in the safe mode. Perform all formatting and system reinstallation work by SST and turn the power OFF/ON. 2. Replace the HDD. (Reinstall the system after replacement.)
	03	Writing interruption is detected in BootDevice.	Actions to be taken vary depending on the display of error codes. <When an error code is displayed in black and white> 1. After turning off the power, turn on the power while pressing the 1+9 keys. This operation automatically starts the writing interruption sector recovery process. (The screen is displayed in black at this time.) During the writing interruption sector recovery process, the progress status is displayed in the screen. When the screen is displayed all in white, the process is completed. After the process is completed, turn the power OFF/ON. 2. Activate the machine in the safe mode. Perform all formatting and system reinstallation work by SST and turn the power OFF/ON. 3. Replace the HDD. (Reinstall the system after replacement.) <When a normal error code (a wrench mark) is displayed> 1. Set CHK-TYPE=0. Perform all formatting and system reinstallation work by SST and turn the power OFF/ON. 2. Activate the machine in the safe mode. Perform all formatting and system reinstallation work by SST and turn the power OFF/ON. 3. Replace the HDD. (Reinstall the system after replacement.)
	06	The system for sub CPU does not exist.	1. Activate the machine in the safe mode. Perform all formatting and system reinstallation work by SST and turn the power OFF/ON. 2. Replace the HDD. (Reinstall the system after replacement.)
	07	The ICC profile (color resource file) does not exist.	1. Activate the machine in the safe mode. Perform all formatting and system reinstallation work by SST and turn the power OFF/ON. 2. Replace the HDD. (Reinstall the system after replacement.)
	12	The file on the HDD referred to by a Web browser is damaged or eliminated.	1. Reinstall the web browser contents. 2. Replace the HDD. (Reinstall the system after replacement.)
	13	The patch data for main scanning shading does not exist.	1. Reinstall the patch data for main scanning shading by SST. 2. Replace the HDD. (Reinstall the system after replacement.)
	14	(*2) HDD is not recognized. The activation partition (BOOTDEV) cannot be found at the activation.	1. Turn off the power and check the connection of the HDD cable. Then, turn on the power again. 2. After turning on the power, put your ear to the HDD or touch the HDD with your finger to check whether or not the internal disk is rotating. 3. Replace the HDD. (Reinstall the system after replacement.) 4. Replace the main controller PCB (MAIN-M).

*1: In case of detecting an error of HDD that is located at the left side.

*2: In case of detecting an error of HDD that is located at the right side.



In case of E602-0001 and E602-0014, be sure to replace the both 2 hard disks at the same time although it is possible to specify which hard disk makes an error. Replacing only 1 hard disk may cause fault such as decrease in performance.

<E602-XXYY>

XX= "01 to 13, FF"

T-17-13

XX				YY											
XX	CHK-TYPE	Partition	Contents	Error occurred at the time of activation			Error occurred during normal operation								
				3	5	00,01,02,04	11,21	13,25	10,12,14,22,23,24						
				Measures			Measures								
1	1	FSTDEV	Compressed image data (BOX, etc.)	*1	*5	*9	*10	*11	*12						
2		IMG_MNG	Document management table, profile												
3		FSTCDEV	Job archiving (chasing)												
4		THUMDEV	Thumbnail												
5	2	APL_GEN	Universal data												
6		TMP_GEN	Universal data (temporary file)												
7		TMP_FAX	Not used												
8		TMP_PSS	For PDL spool (temporary file)												
9	3	PDLDEV	PDL related file (font, registration form, color correction information file for PDL function)							*3	*8	*9	*10	*11	*12
10	4	BOOTDEV	Firmware (System/MEAP/key/certificate/PDL dictionary/RUI contents/voice dictionary)												
11	5	APL_MEAP	MEAP application							*1	*5				
12	6	APL_SEND	Address book, filter							*2	*5				
13	7	APL_KEEP	MEAP storage data							*3	*8				
14	8	APL_LOG	System log							*1	*5				
FF	0	Cannot be specified	HDD entire fault sector check and recovery	*4	*7										

T-17-14

	YY	Contents	Measures
*1	3	Writing interrupted (at activation)	1. Set a relevant partition number to CHK-TYPE, execute HD-CHECK, and turn the power OFF/ON. 2. Set a relevant partition number to CHK-TYPE, execute HD-CLEAR, and turn the power OFF/ON.
*2			1. Request a user to download the address book data using the remote UI. 2. Set a relevant partition number to CHK-TYPE, execute HD-CLEAR, and turn the power OFF/ON. 3. Enter the download mode, perform all formatting and system reinstallation work by SST, and turn the power OFF/ON.
*3			Recovery in the Boot partition can be performed only by using SST in the safe mode. 1. Set CHK-TYPE=0, execute HD-CHECK, and turn the power OFF/ON. 2. Enter the download mode, perform all formatting and system reinstallation work by SST, and turn the power OFF/ON.
*4			1. Set CHK-TYPE=0, execute HD-CHECK, and turn the power OFF/ON. 2. Execute HD-CLEAR by setting CHK-TYPE=1, 2, 3, 5, and turn the power OFF/ON.
*5	5	File system error	1. Set a relevant partition number to CHK-TYPE, execute HD-CLEAR, and turn the power OFF/ON. 2. After replacing the HDD, reinstall the system.
*6			HD-CLEAR cannot be performed from the service mode. (To prevent information of this partition (address book, filter information, etc.) from being deleted by mistake.) 1. Request a user to download the address book data using the remote UI. 2. Enter the download mode from the service mode, perform all formatting and system reinstallation work by SST, and turn the power OFF/ON.
*7			1. Execute HD-CLEAR by setting CHK-TYPE=1, 2, 3, 5, and turn the power OFF/ON. 2. After replacing the HDD, reinstall the system.
*8			Recovery in the Boot partition can be performed only by using SST in the safe mode. 1. Activate the machine in the safe mode, perform all formatting and system reinstallation work by SST, and turn the power OFF/ON. 2. After replacing the HDD, reinstall the system.
*9	00 01 02 04	HDD contact failure, or system error	1. Check the connection of the communication cable of the HDD and the power cable. 2. Activate the machine in the safe mode, perform all formatting and system reinstallation work by SST, and turn the power OFF/ON. 3. After replacing the HDD, reinstall the system.
*10	11 21	HDD contact failure, etc.	1. Check the connection of the communication cable of the HDD and the power cable. 2. After replacing the HDD, reinstall the system.

	YY	Contents	Measures
*11	13 25	Writing interrupted	There is a high possibility that the document data such as BOX, etc. on the HDD may be damaged. 1. Set a relevant partition number to CHK-TYPE, execute HD-CHECK, and turn the power OFF/ON. 2. Set a relevant partition number to CHK-TYPE, execute HD-CLEAR, and turn the power OFF/ON. (In the case of BOOTDEV or APL_SEND, perform formatting and system reinstallation work by SST.) 3. After replacing the HDD, reinstall the system.
*12	10 12 14 22 23 24	System error, or packet data error	1. Activate the machine in the safe mode, perform all formatting and system reinstallation work by SST, and turn the power OFF/ON. 2. After replacing the HDD, reinstall the system.

<E602-XXYY>

XX="20"

T-17-15

XX	YY	Contents	Measures
20	00	Authentication error between the main unit and encryption board	1. Remove and insert the encryption board, and turn the power OFF/ON. 2. After clearing the encryption key (*), perform HDD formatting and system reinstallation work by SST.
	01	The encryption board cannot be recognized.	1. After clearing the encryption key (*), perform HDD formatting and system reinstallation work by SST.
	02	Failure in the encryption board / HDD	1. Remove and insert the encryption board, and turn the power OFF/ON. 2. After clearing the encryption key (*), perform HDD formatting and system reinstallation work by SST. 3. After replacing the encryption board, perform HDD formatting and system reinstallation work by SST. 4. After replacing the HDD, perform HDD formatting and system reinstallation work by SST. 5. Replace the LAN-bar-B PCB. 6. Replace the main controller PCB (MAIN-M).

*: Clearing of the encryption key can be performed from the service mode "COPIER>FUNCTION>CLEAR>KEY-CLR (Level 2)". After this operation, the HDD becomes unformatted, and if the machine is activated in this condition, E602-0001 is displayed. Therefore, it is necessary to perform HDD formatting and system reinstallation work by SST.

17.1.10 Detail in E747 (Main controller image processing ASIC error)

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

T-17-16

E747 (Main controller image processing ASIC error)		
Detail code	Description	Treatment
0000-1217	Main controller PCB (MAIN-M) internal error	1. Turn main power switch OFF/ ON. 2. Replace main controller PCB (MAIN-M).
2000-3D00	Main controller PCB (MAIN-P) internal communication error	1. Replace main controller PCB (MAIN-P). 2. Replace main controller PCB (MAIN-M).
3F00-3F04	Main controller PCB (MAIN-P) internal ASIC error	1. Disconnect then re-connect main controller PCB (MAIN-P). 2. Replace main controller PCB (MAIN-P).
3F05	DRM (256) PCB (magenta) ASIC could not be detected.	1. Disconnect then reconnect DRM (256) (connector No. J2). 2. Replace DRM (256) PCB. 3. Replace main controller PCB (MAIN-P).
3F06	DRM (512) PCB (black) ASIC could not be detected.	1. Disconnect then reconnect DRM (512) (connector No. J3). 2. Replace DRM (512) PCB. 3. Replace main controller PCB (MAIN-P).
3F07	DRM (512) PCB (cyan) ASIC could not be detected.	1. Disconnect then reconnect DRM (512) (connector No. J4). 2. Replace DRM (512) PCB. 3. Replace main controller PCB (MAIN-P).
4000-5D00	Main controller PCB (MAIN-P) could not be detected.	1. Disconnect then reconnect main controller PCB (MAIN-P). 2. Replace main controller PCB (MAIN-P).
5F00-5F04	Main controller PCB (MAIN-P) could not be detected.	1. Disconnect then reconnect main controller PCB (MAIN-P). 2. Replace main controller PCB (MAIN-P).
5F05	DRM (256) PCB (magenta) ASIC could not be detected.	1. Disconnect then reconnect DRM (256) (connector No. J2). 2. Replace DRM (256) PCB. 3. Replace main controller PCB (MAIN-P).
5F06	DRM (512) PCB (black) ASIC could not be detected.	1. Disconnect then reconnect DRM (512) (connector No. J3). 2. Replace DRM (512) PCB. 3. Replace main controller PCB (MAIN-P).
5F07	DRM (512) PCB (cyan) ASIC could not be detected.	1. Disconnect then reconnect DRM (512) (connector No. J4). 2. Replace DRM (512) PCB. 3. Replace main controller PCB (MAIN-P).
6000-7D00	Communication error with RO-B PCB	1. Disconnect then reconnect RO-B PCB. 2. Replace RO-B PCB. 3. Replace main controller PCB (MAIN-M).
7F00	RO-B PCB ASIC could not be detected.	1. Disconnect then reconnect RO-B PCB. 2. Replace RO-B PCB.
8000-9C00	Communication error with RO-B PCB	1. Disconnect then reconnect RO-B PCB. 2. Replace RO-B PCB. 3. Replace main controller PCB (MAIN-M).
9F00	RO-B PCB ASIC could not be detected.	1. Disconnect then reconnect RO-B PCB. 2. Replace RO-B PCB.
A000-BC00	Communication error with O-B PCB (option)	1. Disconnect then reconnect O-B PCB. 2. Replace O-B PCB. 3. Replace main controller PCB (MAIN-M).
BF00	O-B PCB (option) ASIC could not be detected.	1. Disconnect then reconnect O-B PCB. 2. Replace O-B PCB.
C000-DC00	Communication error with S-B PCB (option)	1. Disconnect then reconnect S-B PCB. 2. Replace S-B PCB. 3. Replace main controller PCB (MAIN-M).
DF00	S-B PCB (option) ASIC could not be detected.	1. Disconnect then reconnect S-B PCB. 2. Replace S-B PCB.
DF01	ZJ-A PCB (option) ASIC could not be detected.	1. Disconnect then reconnect ZJ-A PCB. 2. Replace ZJ-A PCB.
FF00	Correct data not written into EEPROM (in PCBs).	Replace with correct PCBs for this model. - RO-B PCB - O-B PCB - LAN-bar-B PCB - DRM (256) PCB - DRM (512) PCB (x2) - S-B PCB - ZJ-A PCB - RB-A PCB
EXXX	Interrupt signal received from unexpected ASIC.	1. Turn main power switch OFF/ ON. 2. Replace main controller PCB (MAIN-M).

17.1.11 Detail in E748 (Main controller associated board errors)

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

T-17-17

E748 (Main controller associated board errors)		
Detail code	Description	Treatment
4000	None of the PCB ASICs could be detected.	1. Perform the following on each PCB (RO-B, Gu-Short (or O-B), LAN-bar-B, DRM (256), DRM (512) x2, S-B, ZJ-A, RB-A). - Disconnect then re-connect - clean terminals - replace 2. Replace main controller PCB (MAIN-M). 3. Replace main controller PCB (MAIN-P).
4020	Irregular PCB detected in PCI expansion slot.	Attach correct PCI expansion PCB (as of April, 2007, only voice PCB is mountable) for this model.
4021	PCI /SERR0R signal detected (address parity error, etc.)	1. Perform the following on PCI expansion PCB. - Disconnect then re-connect - clean terminals - replace 2. Replace main controller PCB (MAIN-M).
4030	HDD controller access error	1. Replace LAN-bar-B PCB. 2. Replace main controller PCB (MAIN-M).
4031	HDD access error	1. Check adhesion of aluminium coated tape on HDD. 2. Disconnect then re-connect LAN-bar-B PCB. 3. Replace LAN-bar-B PCB. 4. Replace HDD. 5. Replace main controller PCB (MAIN-M).
4040	PCB access error	1. Perform the following on each PCB (RO-B, Gu-Short (or O-B), LAN-bar-B, DRM (256), DRM (512) x2, S-B, ZJ-A, RB-A). - Disconnect then re-connect - clean terminals - replace 2. Replace main controller PCB (MAIN-M). 3. Replace main controller PCB (MAIN-P).
4041	Call made to service center.	
4042	SDRAM size error	1. Disconnect then re-connect SDRAM. 2. Replace SDRAM (2 boards, totaling 1.5GB). 3. Replace main controller PCB (MAIN-M).
4043	MAC address read error	1. Replace LAN-bar-B PCB. 2. Replace main controller PCB (MAIN-M).
4050	LAN controller access error	1. Replace LAN-bar-B PCB. 2. Replace main controller PCB (MAIN-M).
4150	SRAM/ RTC backup battery dry detected.	1. Turn main power switch OFF/ ON. 2. Replace SRAM PCB.
4160	Access error	Replace main controller PCB (MAIN-M).
4190	IPC communication I/F controller (card reader, coin vendor unit) access error	1. Replace LAN-bar-B PCB. 2. Replace main controller PCB (MAIN-M).
4210	I/O, interrupt process ASIC access error	Replace main controller PCB (MAIN-M).
4220	SDRAM (slot location: upper level) read error	1. Disconnect then re-connect SDRAM. 2. Replace SDRAM (2 boards, totaling 1.5GB).
4221	SDRAM (slot location: lower level) read error	1. Disconnect then re-connect SDRAM. 2. Replace SDRAM (2 boards, totaling 1.5GB).
4230	LCD controller access	Replace main controller PCB (MAIN-M).
4260	Write error at Boot ROM version upgrade	After replacing Boot ROM, perform version upgrade again.
4311	RB-A PCB detection error	1. Disconnect and re-connect RB-A PCB. 2. Replace main controller PCB (MAIN-M).
48XX	CPU lock detected at startup	Perform the following for detail codes 4883/ 4831/ 4837/ 4838/ 4894/ 4854. 1. Replace RB-A PCB, disconnect then re-connect SDRAM. 2. Replace main controller PCB (MAIN-M).
4883	CPU locked during initialization of RB-A PCB at startup.	1. Disconnect then reconnect RB-A PCB. 2. Replace RB-A PCB. 3. Replace main controller PCB (MAIN-M).
4831 4837 4838 4894	CPU locked during PCB ASIC initialization at startup.	1. Perform the following on each PCB (RO-B, O-B, DRM (256), DRM (512) x2, S-B, ZJ-A,). - disconnect then re-connect - clean terminals - replace

E748 (Main controller associated board errors)		
Detail code	Description	Treatment
4854	CPU locked during LAN-bar-B PCB ASIC initialization at startup.	1. Disconnect then reconnect LAN-bar-B PCB, RB-A PCB, SDRAM. 2. Replace HDD. 3. Replace main controller PCB (MAIN-M).
4901	3.3V emergency night-time power supply OFF detected during operation.	1. Disconnect then reconnect 3.3V emergency night-time power supply PCB connector. 2. Replace 3.3V emergency night-time power supply PCB. 3. Replace main controller PCB (MAIN-M).
4910	Main controller PCB for different model detected.	Replace main controller PCB (MAIN-M) with correct PCB for this model.

17.2 Jam Codes

17.2.1 Jam Code : 0101-0D94 (host machine)

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

Variety of Jams

T-17-18

Code	Jam Type
01 xx	Delay jam
02 xx	Stationary jam
03 00	Double feeding jam
06 0F	Timing jam
07 0F	Delay jam
08 xx	Pickup fault jam
09 xx	Attraction fault jam
0A xx	Residual jam
0B 00	Door-open jam
0C xx	Sequence jam

Jam Codes

T-17-19

Code	Sensor Name	Sensor ID	Remarks
xx 01	Right deck pull-out sensor	PS601	
xx 02	Right deck merger sensor	PS163	
xx 03	Left deck pull-out sensor	PS701	
xx 04	Left deck merger sensor	PS160	
xx 05	Lower feed sensor 1	PS161	
xx 06	Lower feed sensor 2	PS162	
xx 07	Vertical path sensor	PS164	
xx 08	Pre-feed sensor 1	PS139	
xx 09	Pre-feed sensor 2	PS140	
xx 0A	Pre-feed sensor 3	PS141	
xx 0E	Pre-registration sensor	PS146	
xx 0F	Registration sensor	PS151	
xx 10	Secondary transfer outlet sensor	PS166	Not detect stationary jam.
xx 11	Pre-fixing feed sensor 1	PS172	
xx 12	Pre-fixing feed sensor 2	PS200	
xx 13	Primary fixing inlet sensor	PS304	Detect residual jam only.
xx 14	Primary fixing inner delivery sensor1	PS305	
xx 15	Primary fixing inner delivery sensor2	PS307	

Code	Sensor Name	Sensor ID	Remarks
xx 16	Tandem sensor 1	PS326	
xx 17	Tandem sensor 2	PS327	
xx 18	Secondary fixing inner delivery sensor	PS312	Detect residual jam only.
xx 19	Secondary fixing inner delivery sensor1	PS313	
xx 1A	Secondary fixing inner delivery sensor2	PS317	
xx 1B	Merger path upper sensor	PS325	
xx 1C	Delivery reverse front sensor	PS342	
xx 1D	Delivery reverse sensor 1	PS335	
xx 1E	Delivery reverse sensor 2	PS336	Detect residual jam only.
xx 1F	Duplexing reverse sensor	PS340	
xx 20	Duplexing reverse rear sensor	PS341	
xx 21	Duplexing path inlet sensor	PS344	
xx 22	Duplexing standby sensor 6	PS347	
xx 23	Duplexing standby sensor 5	PS346	
xx 24	Duplexing standby sensor 4	PS345	
xx 25	Duplexing standby sensor 3	PS171	
xx 26	Duplexing standby sensor 2	PS170	
xx 27	Duplexing standby sensor 1	PS169	
xx 28	Bypass sensor 1	PS322	
xx 29	Bypass sensor 2	PS323	
xx 2A	Merger path lower sensor	PS321	
xx 2B	Delivery sensor 1	PS337	
xx 2C	Delivery sensor 2	PS338	
xx 2D	Delivery sensor 3	PS339	
xx 2E	POD deck path sensor	PS220	
xx 99	Duplexing path sub station outlet sensor	PS350	Detect residual jam only.
06 0A	Pre-feed front sensor 3	PS141	If the lead edge registration patch image cannot be detected
06 0F	Registration sensor	PS151	A paper arrives so early that the leading edge registration adjustment cannot be implemented.
07 0A	Pre-feed front sensor 3	PS141	If the paper cannot be in time when the pre-registration feeding is started
07 0F	Registration sensor	PS151	A paper arrives so late that the leading edge registration adjustment cannot be implemented.
08 01	Right deck pull-out sensor	PS601	The paper surface height control is not completed by the time that the pickup motor starts.
08 03	Left deck pull-out sensor	PS701	The paper surface height control is not completed by the time that the pickup motor starts.
09 01	Right deck pull-out sensor	PS601	A paper is not attracted to the belt.
09 03	Left deck pull-out sensor	PS701	A paper is not attracted to the belt.
0C 1F	-	-	With the 2-sided waiting position full, a new paper is fed.
0C 90	-	-	Jam occurred and due to the accessory-related cause, and the delivery failed.
0D 00	Paper thickness sensor	UN179	The paper thickness of the paper being fed is significantly different from the specified paper type (Paper thickness jam).
0D 90	Transparency sensor (rear)	PS137	A transparency out of specification has been fed (Transparency jam).
	Transparency sensor (front)	PS138	
0D 91	Vertical path sensor	PS164	The size of the paper being fed is significantly different from the specified size (Paper length = vertical scanning length) (Paper length jam).
	POD deck path sensor	PS220	
0D 92	Transparency sensor (rear)	PS137	A paper other than transparency has been fed with the setting of transparency (Transparency jam).
	Transparency sensor (front)	PS138	
0D 93	Transparency sensor (rear)	PS137	A transparency has been fed with the non-transparency setting (Transparency jam).
	Transparency sensor (front)	PS138	
0D 94	Transparency sensor (rear)	PS137	The paper length detected by the lower feed path paper length sensor is different from the specified size (Transparency jam).
	Transparency sensor (front)	PS138	

17.2.2 Jam Code : 2001-2B00 (POD deck)

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

Variety of Jams

T-17-20

Code	Jam Type
20 xx	Delay jam
21 xx	Stationary jam
23 00	Residual jam
24 00	Open jam

Code	Jam Type
27 00	Stationary jam (escape residual paper)
28 00	Double-feeding jam
2B 00	Delay jam (attraction NG)

Jam Code

T-17-21

Code	Sensor/Switch Name	Sensor/Switch ID	Remarks
xx 01	upper deck pull-out sensor	PS601	
xx 02	middle deck pull-out sensor	PS701	
xx 03	lower deck pull-out sensor	PS801	
xx 04	upper vertical path sensor 1	PS37	
xx 05	upper vertical path sensor 2	PS38	
xx 06	lower vertical path sensor 1	PS39	
xx 07	lower vertical path sensor 2	PS40	
xx 08	lower vertical path sensor 3	PS41	
xx 09	multi path sensor 1	PS50	
xx 0B	horizontal path sensor 1	PS42	
xx 0C	horizontal path sensor 2	PS43	
xx 0D	horizontal path sensor 3	PS44	
xx 0E	horizontal path sensor 4	PS45	
xx 0F	buffer path sensor 1	PS52	
xx 11	buffer path sensor 2	PS53	
xx 12	escape path sensor 1	PS54	
xx 13	escape delivery sensor	PS57	
24 00	vertical path cover interlock switch	MSW11	Deck right front cover / multi path front cover is opened.
	horizontal path cover interlock switch	MSW10	Deck horizontal path cover is opened.
	buffer cover interlock switch	MSW12	Buffer path front cover is opened.

17.2.3 Jam Code : 012F-0A30 (Paper deck)

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

T-17-22

Code	Sensor Name	Sensor ID	Remarks
01 2F	Deck pickup sensor	PS1	Detect delay jam only.
01 30	Deck feed sensor	PS6	Delay jam
02 30			Stationary jam
0A 30			Residual jam

17.2.4 Jam Code : 0001-0098 (ADF-Related)

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

T-17-23

Code	Type of Sensor	Sensor ID	Details
0001	Separation delay	S4	When the separation sensor fails to detect a document after it is fed by a specified amount (221 mm) after the startup of the separation motor during the separation operation.
0002	Pickup delay	S4, S2	When the registration roller front sensor fails to detect a document after it is fed by a specified amount (93 mm) after the separation sensor detects the leading edge of the sheet during the separation operation.
0003	Pickup stationary 1	S3	When the registration roller rear sensor fails to detect a document after it is fed by a specified amount (40 mm) after the startup of the reverse motor during the pickup operation.
0004	Pickup stationary 2	S2	When the registration roller front sensor detects a document after it is fed by a specified amount (small: 330 mm/ large: 660 mm) after the startup of the reverse motor during the pickup operation.

Code	Type of Sensor	Sensor ID	Details
0005	Reverse delay	S1	When the reverse sensor fails to detect a document after it is fed by a specified amount (104 mm) from the platen roller during the reverse operation.
0006	Reverse stationary	S1	When the reverse sensor detects a document after it is fed by a specified amount (length of document x 1.5 mm) after the loop formation is completed during the reverse operation.
0007	Delivery delay	PI13	When the delivery sensor fails to detect a document after it is fed by a specified amount (631 mm - length of document) after the startup of the belt motor during the delivery operation.
0008	Delivery stationary 1	PI13, S9	When the multifeed registration roller sensor detects a document after it is fed by a specified amount (length of document + 100 mm) after the delivery sensor is turned ON during the delivery operation.
0009	Delivery stationary 2	PI13, S9	When the delivery sensor detects a document after it is fed by a specified amount (100 mm) after the multifeed registration roller sensor is turned OFF during the delivery operation.
0010	Pre-reverse delay 1	S3	When the registration rear roller sensor fails to detect a document after it is fed by a specified amount (50 mm) after the startup of the reverse motor during the pre-reverse operation.
0011	Pre-reverse delay 2	S1, S3	When the reverse sensor fails to detect a document after it is fed by a specified amount (100 mm) after the registration roller rear sensor is turned ON during the pre-reverse operation.
0012	Pre-reverse delay 3	PI4	When the pre-reverse sensor fails to detect a document when the reverse motor is stopped during the pre-reverse operation.
0013	Pre-reverse stationary 1	S1, S4	When the separation sensor detects a document after it is fed by a specified amount (169 mm) after the reverse sensor is turned ON during the pre-reverse operation.
0014	Pre-reverse stationary 2	S2, S4	When the registration roller front sensor detects a document after it is fed by a specified amount (120 mm) after the trailing edge of the sheet comes out of the separation pullout roller during the pre-reverse operation.
0015	Pre-reverse stationary 3	S2, S3	When the registration roller rear sensor detects a document after it is fed by a specified amount (50 mm) after the trailing edge of the sheet comes out of the registration roller front sensor during the pre-reverse operation.
0016	Pre-reverse stationary 4	S1, S3	When the reverse sensor detects a document after it is fed by a specified amount (100 mm) after the trailing edge of the sheet comes out of the registration roller rear sensor during the pre-reverse operation.
0017	Pre-reverse pickup delay	S1	When the reverse sensor fails to detect a document after it is fed by a specified amount (100 mm) after the startup of the reverse motor during the pre-reverse pickup operation.
0018	Pre-reverse pickup stationary 1	S1, PI4	When the pre-reverse sensor detects a document after it is fed by a specified amount after the reverse sensor detects the leading edge of the sheet during the pre-reverse pickup operation.
0019	Pre-reverse pickup stationary 2	S1, PI4	When the reverse sensor detects a document after it is fed by a specified amount after the pre-reverse sensor detects the trailing edge of the sheet during the pre-reverse pickup operation.
0020	Reverse pickup delay	S2	When the registration roller front sensor fails to detect a document after it is fed by a specified amount (197 mm) after the loop formation is completed during the reverse operation.
0021	Reverse pickup stationary	S2	When the registration roller front sensor detects a document after it is fed by a specified amount (length of document x 1.5mm) after the registration roller front sensor is turned ON during the reverse operation.
0022	Pickup leading edge skew	S4, S5	When a difference in the leading edge detection timing between the separation sensor and the skew sensor is 10 mm or more during the separation operation.
0023	Pickup trailing edge skew	S4, S5	When a difference in the trailing edge detection timing between the separation sensor and the skew sensor is 10mm or more during the pickup operation.
0024	Pickup NG 1	S1	When the reverse sensor detects a document before it comes out of the registration roller front sensor during the pickup operation.
0025	Pickup NG 2	S3, S2	When the registration roller rear sensor detects a document before the reverse motor is started during the pickup operation. When the registration roller front sensor fails to detect a document after it is fed by a certain amount during the pickup operation. When the registration roller rear sensor detects a document before the reverse motor is started during the pre-reverse operation. When the registration roller front sensor fails to detect a document when the trailing edge of the document passes through the reverse sensor during the reverse operation.
0026	Reverse pickup trailing edge skew	S4, S5	When a difference in the trailing edge detection timing between the separation sensor and the skew sensor is 10 mm or more during the pre-reverse operation.
0027	Reverse pickup NG 1	PI4	When the pre-reverse sensor detects a document while the machine is waiting for the registration roller front sensor to be turned ON during the reverse operation.
0030	Multifeeder registration delay	S9	When the multifeed registration roller sensor fails to detect a document after a specified period of time (1 sec) passes after the startup of the delivery motor during the multifeed loop formation.
0031	Multifeeder registration stationary	S1	When the reverse sensor fails to detect a document after it is fed by a specified amount (638 mm) after the startup of belt motor during the multifeed pickup operation.
0032	Multifeeder reverse stationary	S1	When the reverse sensor fails to detect a document after it is fed by a specified amount (50 mm) after the startup of the belt motor during the multifeed (platen roller) pickup operation.

Code	Type of Sensor	Sensor ID	Details
0033	Multifeeder delivery delay	PI13	When the delivery sensor fails to detect a document after it is fed by a specified amount (621 mm - length of document) during the multifeed delivery operation.
0034	Multifeeder delivery stationary	PI13	When the delivery sensor detects a document after it is fed by a specified amount (length of document x 1.5 mm) after the delivery sensor is turned ON during the multifeed delivery operation.
0043	1st sheet pickup stationary 1	S3	When pickup stationary 1 (0003) occurs on the 1st sheet.
0044	1st sheet pickup stationary 2	S2	When pickup stationary 2 (0004) occurs on the 1st sheet.
0045	1st sheet reverse delay	S1	When reverse delay (0005) occurs on the 1st sheet.
0046	1st sheet reverse stationary	S1	When reverse stationary (0006) occurs on the 1st sheet.
0047	1st sheet delivery delay	PI13	When delivery delay (0007) occurs on the 1st sheet.
0048	1st sheet delivery stationary 1	PI13, S9	When delivery stationary 1 (0008) occurs on the 1st sheet.
0049	1st sheet delivery stationary 2	PI13, S9	When delivery stationary 2 (0009) occurs on the 1st sheet.
0050	1st sheet pre-reverse delay 1	S3	When pre-reverse delay 1 (0010) occurs on the 1st sheet.
0051	1st sheet pre-reverse delay 2	S1, S3	When pre-reverse delay 2 (0011) occurs on the 1st sheet.
0052	1st sheet pre-reverse delay 3	PI4	When pre-reverse delay 3 (0012) occurs on the 1st sheet.
0053	1st sheet pre-reverse stationary 1	S1, S4	When pre-reverse stationary 1 (0013) occurs on the 1st sheet.
0054	1st sheet pre-reverse stationary 2	S2, S4	When pre-reverse stationary 2 (0014) occurs on the 1st sheet.
0055	1st sheet pre-reverse stationary 3	S2, S3	When pre-reverse stationary 3 (0015) occurs on the 1st sheet.
0056	1st sheet pre-reverse stationary 4	S1, S3	When pre-reverse stationary 4 (0016) occurs on the 1st sheet.
0057	1st sheet pre-reverse pickup delay	S1	When pre-reverse pickup delay (0017) occurs on the 1st sheet.
0058	1st sheet pre-reverse pickup stationary 1	S1, PI4	When pre-reverse pickup stationary 1 (0018) occurs on the 1st sheet.
0059	1st sheet pre-reverse pickup stationary 2	S1, PI4	When pre-reverse pickup stationary 2 (0019) occurs on the 1st sheet.
0060	1st sheet reverse pickup delay	S2	When reverse pickup delay (0020) occurs on the 1st sheet.
0061	1st sheet reverse pickup stationary	S2	When reverse pickup stationary (0021) occurs on the 1st sheet.
0062	1st sheet pickup leading edge skew	S4, S5	When pickup leading edge skew (0022) occurs on the 1st sheet.
0063	1st sheet pickup trailing edge skew	S4, S5	When pickup trailing edge skew (0023) occurs on the 1st sheet.
0064	1st sheet pickup NG 1	S1	When pickup NG 1 (0024) occurs on the 1st sheet.
0065	1st sheet pickup NG 2	S3, S2	When pickup NG 2 (0025) occurs on the 1st sheet.
0066	1st sheet reverse pickup trailing edge skew	S4, S5	When reverse pickup trailing edge skew (0026) occurs on the 1st sheet.
0067	1st sheet reverse pickup NG 1	PI4	When reverse pickup NG 1 (0027) occurs on the 1st sheet.
0071	Timing error 1	-	Beyond control of software
0072	Timing error 2	-	When a previous document has yet to be delivered while a scanned document is moved to the right side of the platen roller during the fixed reading.
0073	Illegal size	S3	When the registration roller rear sensor detects a document after it is fed by a specified amount (30 mm) from the waiting position during the LDR stream reading.
0074	Manual feed document size error	S9, S1	When the reverse sensor detects a document while the multifeed registration roller sensor is detecting it during the multifeed pickup operation.
0075	Image start position error	S7	When the reading position is not changed in response to a reading position change request during the stream reading.
0076	1st sheet image start position error	S7	When image start position error (0075) occurs on the 1st sheet.
0077	Belt speed setting error	PI1	When the specified speed of the belt motor is less than the minimum speed (100 mm/s) or more than the maximum speed (700 mm/s).
0078	Belt speed switch error	PI1	When the belt motor is not in the normal speed when the belt motor speed is switched.
0079	Belt status error	PI1	When the belt motor status is not any of acceleration, normal, or deceleration when it is switched.
0080	Image start position output timing error	S2, S3, SW301	When the image start position signal is output during acceleration while a document is fed from the waiting position to the image start position during the stream reading.
0081	Reverse speed setting error	PI5	When the specified speed of the reverse motor is less than the minimum speed (100 mm/s) or more than the maximum speed (700 mm/s).
0082	Reverse speed switch error	PI5	When the reverse motor is not in the normal speed when the reverse motor speed is switched.
0083	Reverse status error	PI5	When the reverse motor status is not any of acceleration, normal, or deceleration when it is switched.
0084	Last document error	PI1	A belt motor error occurs while a last document is being delivered or moved from the platen roller.

Code	Type of Sensor	Sensor ID	Details
0085	Error	PI1, PI2, PI11	When a motor error other than IPC communication/ pickup error occurs. (less than three times)
0090	ADF open	PI10	When opening of the ADF is detected.
0091	User ADF open	PI10	When opening of the ADF is detected while the machine is in operation.
0092	Cover open	PI3, PI6	When opening of a cover (front or rear) is detected.
0093	User cover open	PI3, PI6	When opening of a cover (front or rear) is detected while the machine is in operation.
0094	Initial stationary	PI4, PI12, PI13, S1, S2, S3, S4, S5, S9	When a sensor in the delivery path detects a document when the operation is started.
0095	Cycle NG	S6	When a pickup signal is received for a specified period of time (2 sec) in the no document detection state.
0096	Remaining document	S1	When the reverse sensor detects a document while the belt motor is driven by a specified amount before a left pickup job is started.
0097	Manual feed document stationary	S1, S9	When the reverse sensor detects a document while the multifeed registration roller sensor is detecting it during the multifeed pickup operation.
0098	Power down	-	When supply voltage from the main unit is lowered while the machine is in operation.

17.2.5 Jam Code : 1001-1700 (Stacker)

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

Variety of Jams

T-17-24

Code	Jam Type
10 xx	Delay jam
11 xx	Stationary jam
13 00	Power on jam
14 00	Open jam
17 00	Residual jam

Jam Code

T-17-25

Code	Sensor/Switch Name	Sensor/Switch ID	Remarks
xx 01	Entrance sheet sensor	PI01	
xx 02	Gate entrance sheet sensor	PI02	
xx 03	OUTPUT TRAY exit sheet sensor	PI03	
xx 04	Horizontal transport sheet sensor	PI06	
xx 05	Offset entrance sheet sensor	PI08	
xx 06	Left offset sheet sensor	PI09	
xx 07	Right offset sheet sensor	PI10	
xx 08	Right turnover sheet sensor	PI11	
xx 09	Stacker exit sheet sensor	PI07	
xx 0A	Downstream exit sheet sensor	PI15	
14 00	OUTPUT TRAY cover switch	SW01	Output tray is opened.
	Top cover switch	SW02	Top cover is opened.
	Front cover switch	SW03	Front cover is opened.

17.2.6 Jam Code : 1002-1FDF (Finsher-Related)

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

Staple stacker Assembly

T-17-26

Code	Sensor/Switch Name	Sensor/Switch ID	Remarks
10 02	Inlet sensor	PS3	When implementing the specified time of feeding since ExitStart was received from the upstream unit, the inlet sensor is not on.

Code	Sensor/Switch Name	Sensor/Switch ID	Remarks
10 04	Shift unit sensor	PS4	When implementing the specified time of feeding since the inlet sensor was on, the shift unit sensor is not on.
10 06	Buffer path 1 sensor	UN13	When implementing the specified time of feeding since the shift unit sensor was on, the buffer path 1 sensor is not on.
10 08	Buffer path 2 sensor	UN14	When implementing the specified time of feeding since the buffer path 1 sensor was on, the buffer path 2 sensor is not on.
10 0A	Upper delivery sensor	PS5	When implementing the specified time of feeding since the buffer path 2 sensor was on, the upper delivery sensor is not on.
10 0C	Lower path sensor	UN24	When implementing the specified time of feeding since the buffer path 2 sensor was on, the lower path sensor is not on.
10 0E	Lower delivery sensor	PS6	When implementing the specified time of feeding since the lower path sensor was on, the lower delivery sensor is not on.
11 03	Inlet sensor	PS3	When implementing the specified time of feeding since the inlet sensor was on, the inlet sensor is not off.
11 05	Shift unit sensor	PS4	When implementing the specified time of feeding since the inlet sensor was off, the shift unit sensor is not off.
11 07	Buffer path 1 sensor	UN13	When implementing the specified time of feeding since the shift unit sensor was off, the buffer path 1 sensor is not off.
11 09	Buffer path 2 sensor	UN14	When implementing the specified time of feeding since the buffer path 1 sensor was off, the buffer path 2 sensor is not off. (At switchback on the buffer) When implementing the specified time of feeding since the switchback started, the buffer path 2 sensor is not off.
11 0B	Upper delivery sensor	PS5	When implementing the specified time of feeding since the buffer path 2 sensor was off, the upper delivery sensor is not off.
11 0D	Lower path sensor	UN24	When implementing the specified time of feeding since the buffer path 2 sensor was off, the lower path sensor is not off.
11 0F	Lower delivery sensor	PS6	When implementing the specified time of feeding since the lower path sensor was off, the lower delivery sensor is not off.
13 20	-	-	At power on, a residual paper was detected in the feed path.
14 22	Front cover switch	MSW1	Door open was detected during operation.
17 21	-	-	At the finisher idle rotation in the machine warm-up rotation, a residual paper was detected.
1F 25	Lower delivery sensor	PS6	During stacking the preceding paper on the process tray, the trailing edge of the succeeding paper came into the process tray.

Saddle Assembly

T-17-27

Code	Sensor Name	Sensor ID	Remarks
10 42	Saddle inlet sensor	PS101	When implementing the specified time of feeding since the lower path sensor was on, the saddle inlet sensor is not on.
10 44	Saddle small sensor	PS103	When implementing the specified time of feeding since the saddle inlet sensor was on, the saddle small sensor is not on.
10 46	Saddle vertical path sensor	PS105	When stacking papers on the saddle process tray is completed, the saddle vertical path sensor is not on.
10 4A	Saddle pre-pressing sensor	PS111	When implementing the specified time of feeding since the saddle stop plate operation was completed, the saddle pre-pressing sensor is not on.
10 54	Saddle pressing HP sensor	PS113	The saddle pressing HP sensor is not on when the saddle stack delivery starts.
11 43	Saddle inlet sensor	PS101	When implementing the specified time of feeding since the lower path sensor was off, the saddle inlet sensor is not off.
11 45	Saddle small sensor	PS103	When implementing the specified time of feeding since the saddle inlet sensor was off, the saddle small sensor is not off.
11 47	Saddle vertical path sensor	PS105	After the specified time of feeding since the saddle stop plate operation had started, the saddle vertical path sensor is not off when a certain additional period passed from that time.
11 4B	Saddle pre-pressing sensor	PS111	When implementing the specified time of feeding since the saddle stack delivery started, the saddle pre-pressing sensor is not off.
11 55	Saddle pressing HP sensor	PS113	The press unit has not been moved to the waiting position when the saddle press starts.
15 50	Saddle stitcher sensor	SU	After the specified time since the saddle staple motor normal rotation started, the saddle stitcher sensor was not on. Inverse rotation started after a certain period, and the saddle stitcher sensor was on in the specified period.
1F 52	Saddle paper stop plate HP sensor	PS110	When the specified time passed since the saddle paper stop plate HP sensor had been off after starting the saddle motor stop plate motor, the saddle paper stop plate HP sensor was not on. Inverse rotation started after a certain period, and the saddle paper stop plate HP sensor was on in the specified period.

Inserter Assembly

T-17-28

Code	Sensor/Switch Name	Sensor/Switch ID	Remarks
10 62	Tray A registration sensor	S5	At pickup from the upper tray, the tray A registration sensor did not detect presence of papers by activating the motor for the specified period.
10 64	Tray B registration sensor	S13	At pickup from the lower tray, the tray B registration sensor did not detect presence of papers by activating the motor for the specified period.
10 66	Feed sensor 1	S14	After the tray A registration sensor detected presence of papers, the feed sensor 1 did not detect presence of papers in the specified period.
10 6A	Feed sensor 2	S18	After the feed sensor 1 detected presence of papers, the feed sensor 2 did not detect presence of papers in the specified period.
11 63	Tray A registration sensor	S5	After the tray A registration sensor detected presence of papers, the tray A registration sensor did not detect absence of papers in the specified period.
11 65	Tray B registration sensor	S13	After the tray B registration sensor detected presence of papers, the tray B registration sensor did not detect absence of papers in the specified period.
11 67	Feed sensor 1	S14	After the feed sensor 1 detected presence of papers, the feed sensor 1 did not detect absence of papers in the specified period.
11 6B	Feed sensor 2	S18	After the feed sensor 2 detected presence of papers, the feed sensor 2 did not detect absence of papers in the specified period.
13 74	-	-	At power on, a residual paper was detected in the unit.
14 75	Inserter open/close sensor	S15	While the inserter was operating, door open was detected.
	top cover open/close sensor	S17	
1F 70	Tray A paper set sensor	S1	At pickup from the upper tray, absence of papers was detected.
1F 71	Tray B paper set sensor	S6	At pickup from the lower tray, absence of papers was detected.
1F 72	Tray B paper width sensor	S7	The paper size detected by the inserter was different from the notified paper size.
1F 73	-	-	The reply to pickup cancel request was NG.

Trimmer Assembly

T-17-29

Code	Sensor Name	Sensor ID	Remarks
10 C2	Infeed section entrance booklet sensor	PI01	After the trimmer received the booklet delivery complete command, the booklet has not arrived at the entrance booklet sensor within the timeout period.
10 C4	Infeed section exit booklet sensor	PI02	A booklet which was detected by the infeed section entrance booklet sensor has not arrived at the exit booklet sensor within the timeout period.
10 C6	Trim section entrance booklet sensor	PI07	A booklet which was detected by the infeed section exit booklet sensor has not arrived at the trim section entrance booklet sensor within the timeout period.
10 C8	Stopper booklet sensor	PI08	A booklet which was detected by the trim section entrance booklet sensor has not arrived at the trim section stopper booklet sensor within the timeout period.
10 CA	Trim section exit booklet sensor	PI10	A booklet which was detected by the trim section stopper booklet sensor has not arrived at the trim section exit booklet sensor within the timeout period.
10 CC	Booklet lifter booklet sensor	PI11	A booklet which was detected by the trim section exit booklet sensor has not arrived at the booklet lifter section booklet sensor within the timeout period.
10 CE	Delivery section booklet sensor	PI12	A booklet which was detected by the booklet lifter section booklet sensor has not arrived at the delivery section booklet sensor within the timeout period.
10 D0	Conveyor section booklet sensor	PI13	A booklet which was detected by the delivery section booklet sensor has not arrived at the conveyor section booklet sensor within the timeout period.
11 C3	Infeed section entrance booklet sensor	PI01	A booklet has been left on the entrance booklet sensor for the timeout period.
11 C5	Infeed section exit booklet sensor	PI02	A booklet has been left on the exit booklet sensor for the timeout period.

Code	Sensor Name	Sensor ID	Remarks
11 C7	Trim section entrance booklet sensor	PI07	A booklet has been left on the trim section entrance booklet sensor for the timeout period.
11 C9	Stopper booklet sensor	PI08	A booklet has been left on the trim section stopper booklet sensor for the timeout period.
11 CB	Trim section exit booklet sensor	PI10	A booklet has been left on the trim section exit booklet sensor for the timeout period.
11 CD	Booklet lifter booklet sensor	PI11	A booklet has been left on the booklet lifter section booklet sensor for the timeout period.
11 CF	Delivery section booklet sensor	PI12	A booklet has been left on the delivery section booklet sensor for the timeout period.
13 DC	-	-	After the power switch is turned on, the transport system drives to check whether a booklet has been left. During this operation, one of the sensors has detected a booklet.
14 DB	-	-	One of the covers has been opened during operation.
17 DD	-	-	After the cover is closed, the transport system drives to check whether a booklet has been left. During this operation, one of the sensors has detected a booklet.
17 DE	-	-	After the operation had started, a sensor at the downstream path detected a booklet while the first booklet was being transported in the trimmer.
			A sensor detected a booklet when the trimmer operation had been finished.
1F DA	-	-	The finisher has delivered a booklet (sent the booklet delivery command) when the trimmer cannot receive a booklet.
1F DF	-	-	The trimmer declared that a size data out of specification had been transmitted.

17.3 Alarm Codes

17.3.1 Alarm Code

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

Host Machine

Code	Detail Code		Error Occurrence Position	Error Occurrence Background	Error Occurrence Details	Device Operation
	Upper	Lower				
04	10 (right deck) 11 (left deck)	37	Host machine deck lifter motor	Lift down: Specified time pulse count does not change	Lifter motor does not go down.	Lifter motor stop Do not use the corresponding storage
		38		Lift down: Does not come to the lifter lower limit within the specified time pulse and more than maximum pulse count	Failure of lifter lower limit sensor	
		39		Lift up: Specified time pulse count does not change	Lifter motor does not go up.	Lifter motor stop Do not use the corresponding storage
		40		Lift up: Does not go up from the lifter lower limit within the specified time	Failure of lifter lower limit sensor	
		41		Lift up: Does not come to the paper sensor position within the specified time	Failure of paper sensor	Do not use the corresponding storage. Lower the lifter until the lower limit position
		42	Host machine deck lifter upper limit sensor	Lifter upper limit sensor is ON	Exceeds upper limit	Do not use the corresponding storage. Lower the lifter until the lower limit position
		43	Host machine deck lifter lower limit switch	Lifter lower limit switch is ON	Exceeds lower limit	In normal operation, displays an alarm
		44	Host machine deck remaining level sensor	Count value exceeds the specified value (exceeds upper limit)	Out of count value range	Do not use the corresponding storage. Lower the lifter until the lower limit position
		45			Count value exceeds the specified value (exceeds lower limit)	Out of count value range
		46	Host machine deck supply position sensor	In a case that the supply position sensor remains OFF although the lifter is at the ON position of the sensor when it goes up and down.	Damage of flag	Do not use the corresponding storage Stop the lifter motor
		47			In a case that the supply position sensor remains ON although the encoder count value surely exceeds the position of the sensor.	Disconnection
		48	Main right floatation fan	Error in disconnection of the connector	Disconnection of the connector	Do not use the corresponding storage.
		49			Error in low speed	End of life of fan/ failure of fan
		50	Main left floatation fan	Error in disconnection of the connector	Disconnection of the connector	Do not use the corresponding storage.
		51			Error in low speed	End of life of fan/ failure of fan
		52	Sub right floatation fan	Error in disconnection of the connector	Disconnection of the connector	Do not use the corresponding storage.
		53			Error in low speed	End of life of fan/ failure of fan
		54	Sub left floatation fan	Error in disconnection of the connector	Disconnection of the connector	Do not use the corresponding storage.
		55			Error in low speed	End of life of fan/ failure of fan
		56	Host machine floatation fan automatic adjustment	Failure in automatic adjustment	Cannot adjust	In normal operation, displays an alarm
57	Suction fan	Error in disconnection of the connector	Disconnection of the connector	Do not use the corresponding storage.		
58			Error in low speed	End of life of fan/ failure of fan	Lower the lifter until the lower limit position	
59	Side right fan	Lock signal	Fan does not rotate: failure	Do not use the corresponding storage. Lower the lifter until the lower limit position		
60	Side left fan	Lock signal	Fan does not rotate: failure	Do not use the corresponding storage. Lower the lifter until the lower limit position		
80	Host machine compulsory suction	Paper separation is delayed and about to paper jam	Failure in separation	Change the separation condition at type settings.		
08	00	01	Duplex path full alarm	When connecting with ACC, error in re-pickup operation (full)		
		02	Duplex path full alarm 2	When connecting with ACC, error in re-pickup operation (no paper)		

Code	Detail Code		Error Occurrence Position	Error Occurrence Background	Error Occurrence Details	Device Operation
	Upper	Lower				
10	01	01	Development	Patch sensor window dirt(Y)		
		02	Development	Patch sensor window dirt(M)		
		03	Development	Patch sensor window dirt(C)		
		04	Development	Patch sensor window dirt(K)		
11	00	01	Waste toner alarm	Waste toner alarm	Detects the waste toner bottle full	Empty the waste toner bottle
30	00	01	High-voltage unit	Error in potential control grid bias	About to the end of the duration life and exceeds upper limit	
		02	High-voltage unit	Error in potential control grid bias	About to the end of the duration life and exceeds upper limit	
		03	High-voltage unit	Error in potential control grid bias	About to the end of the duration life and exceeds upper limit	
		04	High-voltage unit	Error in potential control grid bias	About to the end of the duration life and exceeds upper limit	
		05	High-voltage unit	Secondary transfer high-voltage leak(Y)	Detects leak current	
		06	High-voltage unit	Secondary transfer high-voltage leak(M)	Detects leak current	
		07	High-voltage unit	Secondary transfer high-voltage leak(C)	Detects leak current	
		08	High-voltage unit	Secondary transfer high-voltage leak(K)	Detects leak current	
		09	High-voltage unit	Development AC high-voltage leak(Y)	Detects leak current	
		10	High-voltage unit	Development AC high-voltage leak(M)	Detects leak current	
		11	High-voltage unit	Development AC high-voltage leak(C)	Detects leak current	
		12	High-voltage unit	Development AC high-voltage leak(K)	Detects leak current	
		13	High-voltage unit	ITB post high-voltage leak	Detects leak current	
		14	High-voltage unit	Third transfer high-voltage leak	Detects leak current	
		15	High-voltage unit	Third transfer static eliminator high-voltage leak	Detects leak current	
		21	High-voltage unit	Error in primary transfer ATVC(Y)	About to the end of the duration life and exceeds upper limit	
		22	High-voltage unit	Error in primary transfer ATVC(M)	About to the end of the duration life and exceeds upper limit	
		23	High-voltage unit	Error in primary transfer ATVC(C)	About to the end of the duration life and exceeds upper limit	
		24	High-voltage unit	Error in primary transfer ATVC(K)	About to the end of the duration life and exceeds upper limit	
		25	High-voltage unit	Error in primary transfer ATVC(Y)	About to the end of the duration life and exceeds lower limit	
		26	High-voltage unit	Error in primary transfer ATVC(M)	About to the end of the duration life and exceeds lower limit	
		27	High-voltage unit	Error in primary transfer ATVC(C)	About to the end of the duration life and exceeds lower limit	
		28	High-voltage unit	Error in primary transfer ATVC(K)	About to the end of the duration life and exceeds lower limit	
		31	High-voltage unit	Error in secondary transfer ATVC	About to the end of the duration life and exceeds upper limit	
		32	High-voltage unit	Error in secondary transfer ATVC	About to the end of the duration life and exceeds lower limit	
		33	High-voltage unit	Error in ITB cleaner upper stream ACVC	About to the end of the duration life and exceeds upper limit	
		34	High-voltage unit	Error in ITB cleaner upper stream ACVC	About to the end of the duration life and exceeds lower limit	
		35	High-voltage unit	Error in ITB cleaner lower stream ACVC	About to the end of the duration life and exceeds upper limit	
		36	High-voltage unit	Error in ITB cleaner lower stream ACVC	About to the end of the duration life and exceeds lower limit	

Code	Detail Code		Error Occurrence Position	Error Occurrence Background	Error Occurrence Details	Device Operation
	Upper	Lower				
34	00	01	Registration unit	Auto registration fine adjustment	Cannot read the front/rear patch	
		x2	Registration unit	Auto registration fine adjustment(x= 1:Y, 2:M, 3:C, 4:K)	Correction value per once of tilt correction exceeds the limit	
		x4	Registration unit	Auto registration fine adjustment(x= 1:Y, 2:M, 3:C, 4:K)	Correction value per once of the vertical write start position correction exceeds the limit.	
		x5	Registration unit	Auto registration fine adjustment(x= 1:Y, 2:M, 3:C, 4:K)	Total correction value of the vertical write start position correction exceeds the total limit.	
		x6	Registration unit	Auto registration fine adjustment(x= 1:Y, 2:M, 3:C, 4:K)	Correction value per once of the horizontal write start position correction exceeds the limit.	
		x8	Registration unit	Auto registration fine adjustment(x= 1:Y, 2:M, 3:C, 4:K)	Correction value per once of main magnification correction exceeds the limit.	
		x9	Registration unit	Auto registration fine adjustment(x= 1:Y, 2:M, 3:C, 4:K)	Total correction value per once of main magnification correction exceeds the total limit.	
	02	x5	Registration unit	Auto registration coarse adjustment(x= 1:Y, 2:M, 3:C, 4:K)	Total correction value of the vertical write start position correction exceeds the total limit.	
		x9	Registration unit	Auto registration coarse adjustment(x= 1:Y, 2:M, 3:C, 4:K)	Total correction value per once of main magnification correction exceeds the total limit.	
		11	Registration unit	Auto registration coarse adjustment	Cannot read the center patch	
	04	01	Registration unit	When adjusting registration sensor laser, at leading edge patch sensor part.	Detects the ITB gross decline	
		12	Registration unit	When adjusting registration sensor laser, at center registration sensor part.	Detects the ITB gross decline	
	61	00	01	Finisher	Finisher staple alarm	
62	00	01	Saddle unit	Saddle staple alarm		
65	00	01	Punch unit	Punch alarm		

- Stepping motor error is JAM.
- Deck heater check is not needed because there is no method for error detection.
- Code: First 2 digits
 - 04: Pickup alarm
 - 08: Duplex pickup alarm
 - 09: Drum around alarm
 - 10: Development around alarm
 - 11: Cleaner around alarm
 - 30: High voltage alarm
 - 34: Auto registration alarm
 - 61: Finisher staple alarm
 - 62: Saddle staple alarm
 - 65: Punch alarm

POD Deck

Code	Detail Code		Error Occurrence Position	Error Occurrence Background	Error Occurrence Details	Device Operation
	Upper	Lower				
04	00 (upper deck) 01 (middle deck) 02 (lower deck)	37	POD deck lifter motor	Lift down: Specified time pulse count does not change	Lifter motor does not go down.	Lifter motor stop Do not use the corresponding storage
		38		Lift down: Does not come to the lifter lower limit within the specified time pulse and more than maximum pulse count	Failure of lifter lower limit sensor	
		39		Lift up: Specified time pulse count does not change	Lifter motor does not go up.	Lifter motor stop Do not use the corresponding storage
		40		Lift up: Does not go up from the lifter lower limit within the specified time	Failure of lifter lower limit sensor	
		41		Lift up: Does not come to the paper sensor position within the specified time	Failure of paper sensor	Do not use the corresponding storage. Lower the lifter until the lower limit position
		42	POD deck lifter upper limit sensor	Lifter upper limit sensor is ON	Exceeds upper limit	Do not use the corresponding storage. Lower the lifter until the lower limit position
		43	POD deck lifter lower limit switch	Lower limit SW is ON	Exceeds lower limit	In normal operation, displays an alarm
		44	POD deck remaining level sensor	Count value exceeds the specified value (exceeds upper limit)	Out of count value range	Do not use the corresponding storage. Lower the lifter until the lower limit position
		45			Count value exceeds the specified value (exceeds lower limit)	Out of count value range Do not use the corresponding storage Stop the lifter motor
		46	POD deck supply position sensor	In a case that the supply position sensor remains OFF although the lifter is at the ON position of the sensor when it goes up and down.	Damage of flag	Do not use the corresponding storage Stop the lifter motor
		47			In a case that the supply position sensor remains ON although the encoder count value surely exceeds the position of the sensor.	Disconnection In normal operation, displays an alarm
		48	POD deck main right floatation fan	Error in disconnection of the connector	Disconnection of the connector	Do not use the corresponding storage.
		49			Error in low speed	End of life of fan/ failure of fan Lower the lifter until the lower limit position
		50	POD deck main left floatation fan	Error in disconnection of the connector	Disconnection of the connector	Do not use the corresponding storage.
		51			Error in low speed	End of life of fan/ failure of fan Lower the lifter until the lower limit position
		52	POD deck sub right floatation fan	Error in disconnection of the connector	Disconnection of the connector	Do not use the corresponding storage.
		53			Error in low speed	End of life of fan/ failure of fan Lower the lifter until the lower limit position
		54	POD deck sub left floatation fan	Error in disconnection of the connector	Disconnection of the connector	Do not use the corresponding storage.
		55			Error in low speed	End of life of fan/ failure of fan Lower the lifter until the lower limit position
		56	POD deck floatation fan automatic adjustment	Failure in automatic adjustment	Cannot adjust	In normal operation, displays an alarm
57	POD deck suction fan	Error in disconnection of the connector	Disconnection of the connector	Do not use the corresponding storage.		
58			Error in low speed	End of life of fan/ failure of fan Lower the lifter until the lower limit position		
59	POD deck side right fan	Lock signal	Fan does not rotate: failure	Do not use the corresponding storage. Lower the lifter until the lower limit position		
60	POD deck side left fan	Lock signal	Fan does not rotate: failure	Do not use the corresponding storage. Lower the lifter until the lower limit position		

- The foreign substance detection is used to detect the condition, not included in the alarm.
- Stepping motor error is JAM.
- Deck heater check is not needed because there is no method for error detection.
- Because the adjustment of the delivery tray full detection PCB is the target of the service, the delivery tray full detection is not included in the alarm.

17.3.2 Alarm for completion of Operator Maintenance work

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

Alarm for completion of ORP replacement

T-17-32

Location	Alarm Code	Title	Detailed code	Description	Service Mode
35	0001	Primary corona wire with cleaning pad replacement completion alarm	712837	Primary corona wire with cleaning pad replacement (Y) completion alarm	COUNTER/PRDC-1/PRM-W-Y
			712836	Primary corona wire with cleaning pad replacement (M) completion alarm	COUNTER/PRDC-1/PRM-W-M
			712838	Primary corona wire with cleaning pad replacement (C) completion alarm	COUNTER/PRDC-1/PRM-W-C
			712100	Primary corona wire with cleaning pad replacement (K) completion alarm	COUNTER/PRDC-1/PRM-WIRE
35	0002	Grid replacement completion alarm	712839	Grid (Y) replacement completion alarm	COUNTER/PRDC-1/PRM-G-Y
			712840	Grid (M) replacement completion alarm	COUNTER/PRDC-1/PRM-G-M
			712841	Grid (C) replacement completion alarm	COUNTER/PRDC-1/PRM-G-C
			712101	Grid (K) replacement completion alarm	COUNTER/PRDC-1/PRM-GRID
35	0003	Drum cleaner kit replacement completion alarm	714844	Drum cleaner kit (Y) replacement completion alarm	COUNTER/DRBL-1/BS-SL-Y
			714888	Drum cleaner kit (M) replacement completion alarm	COUNTER/DRBL-1/BS-SL-M
			714845	Drum cleaner kit (C) replacement completion alarm	COUNTER/DRBL-1/BS-SL-C
			714846	Drum cleaner kit (K) replacement completion alarm	COUNTER/DRBL-1/BS-CL-K
35	0004	Cleaning blade replacement	714851	Cleaning blade (Y) replacement completion alarm	COUNTER/DRBL-1/CL-BLD-Y
			714852	Cleaning blade (M) replacement completion alarm	COUNTER/DRBL-1/CL-BLD-M
			714853	Cleaning blade (C) replacement completion alarm	COUNTER/DRBL-1/CL-BLD-C
			714206	Cleaning blade (K) replacement completion alarm	COUNTER/DRBL-1/CLN-BLD
35	0005	Drum replacement completion alarm	714854	Drum (Y) replacement completion alarm	COUNTER/DRBL-1/PT-DRM-Y
			714855	Drum (M) replacement completion alarm	COUNTER/DRBL-1/PT-DRM-M
			714856	Drum (C) replacement completion alarm	COUNTER/DRBL-1/PT-DRM-C
			714200	Drum (K) replacement completion alarm	COUNTER/DRBL-1/PT-DRM
35	0006	ITB replacement completion alarm	714137	ITB replacement completion alarm	COUNTER/DRBL-1/TR-BLT
35	0007	Primary transfer roller replacement completion alarm	714858	Primary transfer roller (Y) replacement completion alarm	COUNTER/DRBL-1/1TR-RL-Y
			714859	Primary transfer roller (M) replacement completion alarm	COUNTER/DRBL-1/1TR-RL-M
			714860	Primary transfer roller (C) replacement completion alarm	COUNTER/DRBL-1/1TR-RL-C
			714861	Primary transfer roller (K) replacement completion alarm	COUNTER/DRBL-1/1TR-RL-K
35	0008	Secondary transfer inside roller replacement completion alarm	714150	Secondary transfer inside roller replacement completion alarm	COUNTER/DRBL-1/2TR-INRL
35	0009	ITB cleaning brush replacement completion alarm	714840	ITB cleaning brush (x2) replacement completion alarm	COUNTER/DRBL-1/ITB-CLN1
35	0010	Bias roller cleaning blade replacement completion alarm	714156	Bias roller cleaning blade (x2) replacement completion alarm	COUNTER/DRBL-1/ITB-BLD1
35	0011	Web replacement completion alarm	714865	Web replacement completion alarm	COUNTER/DRBL-1/ITB-WEB
35	0012	Post-corona wire replacement completion alarm	712102	Post-corona wire replacement completion alarm	COUNTER/PRDC-1/PO-WIRE
35	0013	Secondary transfer outside roller replacement completion alarm	714143	Secondary transfer outside roller replacement completion alarm	COUNTER/DRBL-1/2TR-ROLL
35	0014	Secondary transfer cleaner kit replacement completion alarm	714843	Secondary cleaner kit replacement completion alarm	COUNTER/DRBL-1/2TR-CLN
35	0015	Patch sensor cleaning pad replacement completion alarm	714868	Patch sensor cleaning pad (x3) replacement completion alarm	COUNTER/DRBL-1/PCH-S-R
35	0016	Fixing roller replacement completion alarm	714500	Primary fixing roller replacement completion alarm	COUNTER/DRBL-1/FX-UP-RL
			714872	Secondary fixing roller replacement completion alarm	COUNTER/DRBL-1/FX2-UPRL

Location	Alarm Code	Title	Detailed code	Description	Service Mode
35	0017	Fixing roller web replacement completion alarm	714509	Primary fixing roller web replacement completion alarm	COUNTER/DRBL-1/FX-WEB
			714873	Primary fixing roller web replacement completion alarm	COUNTER/DRBL-1/FX2-WEB
35	0018	Fixing roller web roller replacement completion alarm	714874	Primary fixing roller web roller replacement completion alarm	COUNTER/DRBL-1/FX-WB-RL
			714876	Secondary roller web roller replacement completion alarm	COUNTER/DRBL-1/FX2-WBRL
35	0019	Fixing belt unit replacement completion alarm	714827	Primary fixing belt unit replacement completion alarm	COUNTER/DRBL-1/FX-BLT-U
35	0020	Pressure roller replacement completion alarm	714878	Secondary pressure roller replacement completion alarm	COUNTER/DRBL-1/FX2-LWRL
35	0021	Outside heating roller unit replacement completion alarm	714524	Primary outside heating roller unit replacement completion alarm	COUNTER/DRBL-1/FX-EX-RL
			714880	Secondary outside heating roller unit replacement completion alarm	COUNTER/DRBL-1/FX2EXRL
35	0024	Intermediary transfer assembly inside air filter replacement completion alarm	712811	Intermediary transfer assembly inside air filter (dustproof filter) replacement completion alarm	COUNTER/PRDC-1/AR-FIL2
35	0025	Intermediary transfer unit assembly inside ozone filter replacement completion alarm	712800	Intermediary transfer unit assembly inside ozone filter replacement completion alarm	COUNTER/PRDC-1/OZ-FIL1
35	0026	Main station rear ozone filter replacement completion alarm	712801	Main station rear ozone filter (x4) replacement completion alarm	COUNTER/PRDC-1/OZ-FIL2
35	0027	Sub station upper rear ozone filter replacement completion alarm	712802	Sub station upper rear ozone filter replacement completion alarm	COUNTER/PRDC-1/OZ-FIL3
35	0028	Sub station middle rear ozone filter replacement completion alarm	712803	Sub station middle rear ozone filter (x2) replacement completion alarm	COUNTER/PRDC-1/OZ-FIL4
35	0029	Sub station right rear ozone filter replacement completion alarm	712804	Sub station right rear ozone filter (x2) replacement completion alarm	COUNTER/PRDC-1/OZ-FIL5
35	0030	Toner filter replacement completion alarm	712822	Toner filter (x4) replacement completion alarm	COUNTER/PRDC-1/TN-FIL1
35	0032	Fixing refresh roller replacement completion alarm	714901	Primary fixing refresh roller replacement completion alarm	COUNTER/DRBL-1/FX-RF-RL
			714541	Secondary fixing refresh roller replacement completion alarm	COUNTER/DRBL-1/FX-RFRL2
35	0033	Refresh cleaning roller replacement completion alarm	714543	Primary refresh cleaning roller replacement completion alarm	COUNTER/DRBL-1/FX-RFCL
			714542	Secondary refresh cleaning roller replacement completion alarm	COUNTER/DRBL-1/FX-RFCL2
35	0034	Leading edge patch sensor shatter replacement completion alarm	714871	Leading edge patch sensor shatter replacement completion alarm	COUNTER/DRBL-1/PCH-S-T
35	0035	ITB inside cleaning scraper replacement completion alarm	714825	ITB inside cleaning scraper replacement completion alarm	COUNTER/DRBL-1/ITB-SCRIP
35	0037	Drum patch sensor shutter replacement completion alarm	714891	Drum patch sensor shutter (Y) replacement completion alarm	COUNTER/DRBL-1/DEV-P-Y
			714892	Drum patch sensor shutter (M) replacement completion alarm	COUNTER/DRBL-1/DEV-P-M
			714893	Drum patch sensor shutter (C) replacement completion alarm	COUNTER/DRBL-1/DEV-P-C
			714894	Drum patch sensor shutter (K) replacement completion alarm	COUNTER/DRBL-1/DEV-P-K
35	0038	Drum patch sensor replacement completion alarm	714895	Drum patch sensor (Y) replacement completion alarm	COUNTER/DRBL-1/DV-P-S-Y
			714896	Drum patch sensor (M) replacement completion alarm	COUNTER/DRBL-1/DV-P-S-M
			714897	Drum patch sensor (C) replacement completion alarm	COUNTER/DRBL-1/DV-P-S-C
			714898	Drum patch sensor (K) replacement completion alarm	COUNTER/DRBL-1/DV-P-S-K
35	0039	Deck separation pad replacement completion alarm	714899	Right deck separation pad replacement completion alarm	COUNTER/DRBL-1/RD-PAD
			714900	Left deck separation pad replacement completion alarm	COUNTER/DRBL-1/LD-PAD
35	0040	POD deck separation pad replacement completion alarm	715301	POD deck upper separation pad replacement completion alarm	COUNTER/DRBL-2/D1-U-PD
			715302	POD deck middle separation pad replacement completion alarm	COUNTER/DRBL-2/D1-M-PD
			715303	POD deck lower separation pad replacement completion alarm	COUNTER/DRBL-2/D1-L-PD
35	0041	Secondary POD deck separation pad replacement completion alarm	715304	Secondary POD deck upper separation pad replacement completion alarm	COUNTER/DRBL-2/D2-U-PD
			715305	Secondary POD deck middle separation pad replacement completion alarm	COUNTER/DRBL-2/D2-M-PD
			715306	Secondary POD deck lower separation pad replacement completion alarm	COUNTER/DRBL-2/D2-L-PD

Location	Alarm Code	Title	Detailed code	Description	Service Mode
35	0042	ITB edge scraper unit replacement completion alarm	714158	ITB edge scraper unit replacement completion alarm	COUNTER/DRBL-1/ITB-E-SC
35	0043	Primary charging assembly replacement completion alarm	712842	Primary charging assembly (Y) replacement completion alarm	COUNTER/PRDC-1/PRM-U-Y
			712843	Primary charging assembly (M) replacement completion alarm	COUNTER/PRDC-1/PRM-U-M
			712844	Primary charging assembly (C) replacement completion alarm	COUNTER/PRDC-1/PRM-U-C
			712113	Primary charging assembly (K) replacement completion alarm	COUNTER/PRDC-1/PRM-UNIT
35	0044	Drum unit replacement completion alarm	714229	Drum unit (Y) replacement completion alarm	COUNTER/DRBL-1/D-UNIT-Y
			714230	Drum unit (M) replacement completion alarm	COUNTER/DRBL-1/D-UNIT-M
			714231	Drum unit (C) replacement completion alarm	COUNTER/DRBL-1/D-UNIT-C
			714232	Drum unit (K) replacement completion alarm	COUNTER/DRBL-1/D-UNIT-K
35	0045	ITB cleaner unit replacement completion alarm	714159	ITB cleaner unit replacement completion alarm	COUNTER/DRBL-1/ITBCLN-U
35	0046	Pre-transfer charging assembly replacement completion alarm	712112	Pre-transfer charging assembly replacement completion alarm	COUNTER/PRDC-1/PO-UNIT
35	0047	Web unit replacement completion alarm	714550	Primary web unit replacement completion alarm	COUNTER/DRBL-1/FX1WEB-U
			714551	Secondary web unit replacement completion alarm	COUNTER/DRBL-1/FX2WEB-U

Alarm for completion of manual cleaning

T-17-33

Location	Alarm Code	Title	Detailed code	Description	Service Mode
36	0003	Develop-assembly lower metal cleaning completion alarm	720042	Develop-assembly lower metal (Y) cleaning completion alarm	COUNTER/CLEANING/PKIT-LFY
			720040	Develop-assembly lower metal (M) cleaning completion alarm	COUNTER/CLEANING/PKIT-LFM
			720041	Develop-assembly lower metal (C) cleaning completion alarm	COUNTER/CLEANING/PKIT-LFC
			720006	Develop-assembly lower metal (K) cleaning completion alarm	COUNTER/CLEANING/PKIT-LF
36	0004	Pre-fixing feeder belt cleaning completion alarm	720007	Pre-fixing feeder belt cleaning completion alarm	COUNTER/CLEANING/2TR-FDPS
36	0005	Pre-transfer charging assembly cleaning completion alarm	720008	Pre-transfer charging assembly cleaning completion alarm	COUNTER/CLEANING/PO-SLD
36	0008	Fixing thermistor/thermo-switch cleaning completion alarm	720011	Primary fixing thermistor/thermo-switch cleaning completion alarm	COUNTER/CLEANING/FX1-THTS
			720012	Secondary fixing thermistor/thermo-switch cleaning completion alarm	COUNTER/CLEANING/FX2-THTS
36	0010	Dustproof glass cleaning completion alarm	720048	Dustproof glass (Y) cleaning completion alarm	COUNTER/CLEANING/DP-GRS-Y
			720046	Dustproof glass (M) cleaning completion alarm	COUNTER/CLEANING/DP-GRS-M
			720047	Dustproof glass (C) cleaning completion alarm	COUNTER/CLEANING/DP-GRS-C
			720014	Dustproof glass (K) cleaning completion alarm	COUNTER/CLEANING/DP-GRS
36	0011	Secondary transfer outlet sensor cleaning completion alarm	720015	Secondary transfer outlet sensor cleaning completion alarm	COUNTER/CLEANING/2TR-EX-S
36	0012	Askew feed registration askew feed roller cleaning completion alarm	720016	Askew feed registration askew feed roller cleaning completion alarm	COUNTER/CLEANING/SS-RG-RL
36	0013	Drum pre-conditioning exposure cleaning completion alarm	720045	Drum pre-conditioning exposure (Y) cleaning completion alarm	COUNTER/CLEANING/PRE-EXPY
			720043	Drum pre-conditioning exposure (M) cleaning completion alarm	COUNTER/CLEANING/PRE-EXPM
			720044	Drum pre-conditioning exposure (C) cleaning completion alarm	COUNTER/CLEANING/PRE-EXPC
			720017	Drum pre-conditioning exposure (K) cleaning completion alarm	COUNTER/CLEANING/PRE-EXPO
36	0014	Cleaning ITB end scraper unit cleaning completion alarm	720018	Cleaning ITB end scraper unit cleaning completion alarm	COUNTER/CLEANING/ITB-EDGE
36	0015	Registration patch sensor cleaning completion alarm	720019	Registration patch sensor cleaning completion alarm	COUNTER/CLEANING/REGP-SNS
36	0016	Leading edge regi-patch sensor cleaning completion alarm	720020	Leading edge regi-patch sensor cleaning completion alarm	COUNTER/CLEANING/TREG-SNS
36	0018	ITB idler roller cleaning completion alarm	720022	ITB idler roller cleaning completion alarm	COUNTER/CLEANING/ITB-IROL

Location	Alarm Code	Title	Detailed code	Description	Service Mode
36	0019	ITB HP sensor cleaning completion alarm	720023	ITB HP sensor cleaning completion alarm	COUNTER/CLEANING/ITBHPSNS
36	0020	ITB edge sensor cleaning completion alarm	720024	ITB edge sensor cleaning completion alarm	COUNTER/CLEANING/ITB-ESNS
36	0021	Fixing refresh roller cleaning completion alarm	720025	Primary fixing refresh roller cleaning completion alarm	COUNTER/CLEANING/FX1-RFRL
			720026	Secondary fixing refresh roller cleaning completion alarm	COUNTER/CLEANING/FX2-RFRL
36	0022	Fixing refresh cleaning roller cleaning completion alarm	720027	Primary fixing refresh cleaning roller cleaning completion alarm	COUNTER/CLEANING/FX1-RFCL
			720028	Secondary fixing refresh cleaning roller cleaning completion alarm	COUNTER/CLEANING/FX2-RFCL
36	0023	Drum patch sensor cleaning completion alarm	720029	Drum patch sensor (Y) cleaning completion alarm	COUNTER/CLEANING/DV-P-S-Y
			720030	Drum patch sensor (M) cleaning completion alarm	COUNTER/CLEANING/DV-P-S-M
			720031	Drum patch sensor (C) cleaning completion alarm	COUNTER/CLEANING/DV-P-S-C
			720032	Drum patch sensor (K) cleaning completion alarm	COUNTER/CLEANING/DV-P-S-K
36	0024	Sub rear middle ozone filter cleaning completion alarm	720037	Sub rear middle ozone filter cleaning completion alarm	COUNTER/CLEANING/OZ-FIL-M
36	0025	Sub rear left ozone filter cleaning completion alarm	720038	Sub rear left ozone filter cleaning completion alarm	COUNTER/CLEANING/OZ-FIL-L
36	0026	Sub rear upper ozone filter cleaning completion alarm	720039	Sub rear upper ozone filter cleaning completion alarm	COUNTER/CLEANING/OZ-FIL-U

Chapter 18 Service Mode

Contents

18.1 Outline	18-1
18.1.1 Construction of Service Mode	18-1
18.1.2 Entering or selecting service modes	18-2
18.1.3 Exiting service modes	18-2
18.1.4 Back-up of service mode	18-3
18.1.5 Initial screen	18-3
18.1.6 Main/intermediate Item Screen	18-4
18.1.7 Sub- Item Screen	18-4
18.2 DISPLAY (Status Display Mode)	18-5
18.2.1 COPIER	18-5
18.2.1.1 COPIER > DISPLAY > VERSION	18-5
18.2.1.2 COPIER > DISPLAY > ACC-ST5	18-21
18.2.1.3 COPIER > DISPLAY > ANALOG	18-24
18.2.1.4 COPIER > DISPLAY > CST-ST5	18-35
18.2.1.5 COPIER > DISPLAY > JAM	18-36
18.2.1.6 COPIER > DISPLAY > ERR	18-37
18.2.1.7 COPIER > DISPLAY > HV-ST5	18-38
18.2.1.8 COPIER > DISPLAY > CCD	18-43
18.2.1.9 COPIER > DISPLAY > DPOT	18-45
18.2.1.10 COPIER > DISPLAY > DENS	18-59
18.2.1.11 COPIER > DISPLAY > FIXING	18-70
18.2.1.12 COPIER > DISPLAY > SENSOR	18-71
18.2.1.13 COPIER > DISPLAY > MISC	18-72
18.2.1.14 COPIER > DISPLAY > ALARM-1	18-74
18.2.1.15 COPIER > DISPLAY > ALARM-2	18-76
18.2.1.16 COPIER > DISPLAY > ENVRNT	18-76
18.2.1.17 COPIER > DISPLAY > HT-C	18-76
18.2.1.18 COPIER > DISPLAY > HV-TR	18-86
18.2.1.19 COPIER > DISPLAY > P-PASCAL	18-89
18.2.2 FEEDER	18-91
18.2.2.1 FEEDER > DISPLAY >	18-91
18.3 I/O (I/O Display Mode)	18-91
18.3.1 Overview	18-91
18.3.2 DC-CON	18-92
18.3.3 R-CON	18-110
18.3.4 FEEDER	18-111
18.3.5 SORTER	18-113
18.3.6 MN-CONT	18-122
18.4 ADJUST (Adjustment Mode)	18-124
18.4.1 COPIER	18-124
18.4.1.1 COPIER > ADJUST > ADJ-XY	18-124
18.4.1.2 COPIER > ADJUST > CCD	18-126
18.4.1.3 COPIER > ADJUST > LASER	18-133
18.4.1.4 COPIER > ADJUST > IMG-REG	18-135
18.4.1.5 COPIER > ADJUST > DENS	18-140
18.4.1.6 COPIER > ADJUST > BLANK	18-150
18.4.1.7 COPIER > ADJUST > V-CONT	18-151
18.4.1.8 COPIER > ADJUST > PASCAL	18-157
18.4.1.9 COPIER > ADJUST > COLOR	18-163

18.4.1.10 COPIER > ADJUST > HV-PRI	18-170
18.4.1.11 COPIER > ADJUST > HV-TR	18-171
18.4.1.12 COPIER > ADJUST > FEED-ADJ	18-179
18.4.1.13 COPIER > ADJUST > CST-ADJ	18-180
18.4.1.14 COPIER > ADJUST > MISC	18-182
18.4.1.15 COPIER > ADJUST > SENS-ADJ	18-184
18.4.1.16 COPIER > ADJUST > EXP-LED	18-187
18.4.1.17 COPIER > ADJUST > P-PASCAL	18-190
18.4.2 FEEDER	18-198
18.4.2.1 FEEDER > ADJUST >	18-198
18.4.3 SORTER	18-200
18.4.3.1 SORTER > ADJUST	18-200
18.5 FUNCTION (Operation/Inspection Mode)	18-212
18.5.1 COPIER	18-212
18.5.1.1 Points To Note When Operate The Service Mode (FUNCTION)	18-212
18.5.1.2 COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL	18-212
18.5.1.3 COPIER > FUNCTION > LASER	18-222
18.5.1.4 COPIER > FUNCTION > ATTRACT	18-224
18.5.1.5 COPIER > FUNCTION > DPC	18-224
18.5.1.6 COPIER > FUNCTION > CST	18-226
18.5.1.7 COPIER > FUNCTION > CLEANING	18-227
18.5.1.8 COPIER > FUNCTION > FIXING	18-229
18.5.1.9 COPIER > FUNCTION > PANEL	18-230
18.5.1.10 COPIER > FUNCTION > PART-CHK	18-232
18.5.1.11 COPIER > FUNCTION > CLEAR	18-236
18.5.1.12 COPIER > FUNCTION > MISC-R	18-242
18.5.1.13 COPIER > FUNCTION > MISC-P	18-242
18.5.1.14 COPIER > FUNCTION > SENS-ADJ	18-249
18.5.1.15 COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM	18-252
18.5.1.16 COPIER > FUNCTION > HV-TR	18-254
18.5.2 FEEDER	18-256
18.5.2.1 FEEDER > FUNCTION >	18-256
18.6 OPTION (Machine Settings Mode)	18-257
18.6.1 COPIER	18-257
18.6.1.1 COPIER > OPTION > BODY (1/5)	18-257
18.6.1.2 COPIER > OPTION > BODY (2/5)	18-265
18.6.1.3 COPIER > OPTION > BODY (3/5)	18-275
18.6.1.4 COPIER > OPTION > BODY (4/5)	18-284
18.6.1.5 COPIER > OPTION > BODY (5/5)	18-292
18.6.1.6 COPIER > OPTION > USER (1/3)	18-311
18.6.1.7 Soft counter specifications	18-314
18.6.1.8 COPIER > OPTION > USER (2/3)	18-321
18.6.1.9 COPIER > OPTION > USER (3/3)	18-347
18.6.1.10 COPIER > OPTION > CST	18-348
18.6.1.11 COPIER > OPTION > ACC	18-353
18.6.1.12 COPIER > OPTION > INT-FACE	18-356
18.6.1.13 COPIER > OPTION > LCNS-TR	18-358
18.6.1.14 COPIER > OPTION > ACCPST-D	18-375
18.6.1.15 COPIER > OPTION > ACCPST-P	18-376
18.6.1.16 COPIER > OPTION > SERIAL	18-376
18.6.2 FEEDER	18-377
18.6.2.1 FEEDER > OPTION >	18-377
18.6.3 SORTER	18-378
18.6.3.1 SORTER > OPTION	18-378
18.6.4 BOARD	18-384
18.6.4.1 BOARD > OPTION	18-384
18.7 TEST (Test Print Mode)	18-385
18.7.1 COPIER	18-385
18.7.1.1 COPIER>TEST>PG	18-385
18.7.1.2 COPIER>TEST>NETWORK	18-388

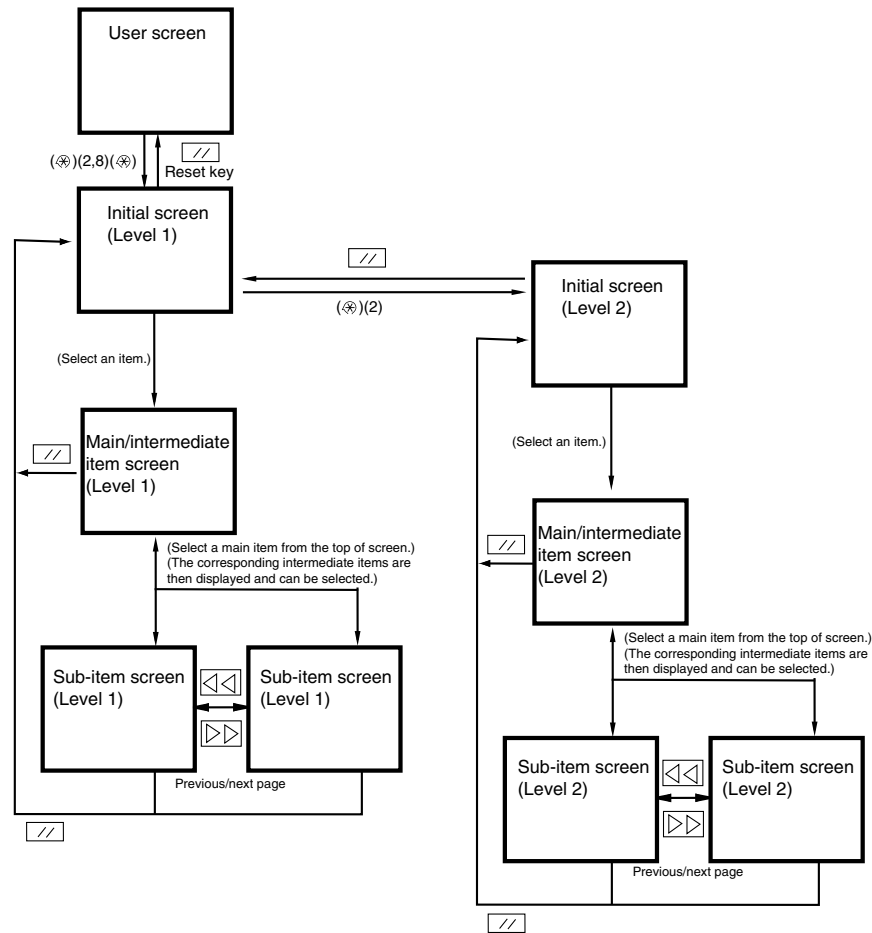
18.8 COUNTER (Counter Mode).....	18-389
18.8.1 COPIER.....	18-389
18.8.1.1 COPIER > COUNTER > TOTAL.....	18-389
18.8.1.2 COPIER > COUNTER > PICK-UP.....	18-392
18.8.1.3 COPIER > COUNTER > FEEDER.....	18-394
18.8.1.4 COPIER > COUNTER > JAM.....	18-394
18.8.1.5 COPIER > COUNTER > MISC.....	18-396
18.8.1.6 COPIER > COUNTER > PRDC-1.....	18-398
18.8.1.7 COPIER > COUNTER > DRBL-1 (1/4).....	18-407
18.8.1.8 COPIER > COUNTER > DRBL-1 (2/4).....	18-414
18.8.1.9 COPIER > COUNTER > DRBL-1 (3/4).....	18-421
18.8.1.10 COPIER > COUNTER > DRBL-1 (4/4).....	18-428
18.8.1.11 COPIER > COUNTER > DRBL-2.....	18-434
18.8.1.12 COPIER > COUNTER > H-DRBL-1.....	18-445
18.8.1.13 COPIER > COUNTER > PD1-SW.....	18-452
18.8.1.14 COPIER > COUNTER > DB1-SW.....	18-454
18.8.1.15 COPIER > COUNTER > CLEANING.....	18-461
18.8.1.16 COPIER > COUNTER > AVE-PRD1.....	18-471
18.8.1.17 COPIER > COUNTER > AVE-DRB1.....	18-476
18.8.1.18 COPIER > COUNTER > CLN-SW.....	18-491
18.8.1.19 COPIER > COUNTER > H-DBL-A1.....	18-495
18.8.1.20 COPIER > COUNTER > AVE-DRB2.....	18-507
18.8.1.21 COPIER > COUNTER > AVE-CLN.....	18-508

18.1 Outline

18.1.1 Construction of Service Mode

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

The Service Mode screen is divided into three layers; initial screen, large/middle items, and small items, as shown below. Each screen provides a mode used for regular maintenance (Level 1 mode) and a mode used for troubleshooting (Level 2 mode).

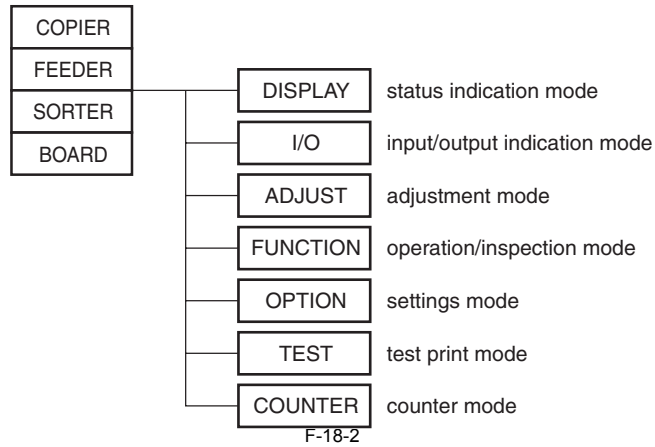


F-18-1

The initial screen of this machine displays the function names shown below.

- (1) COPIER: Service mode for the main unit
- (2) FEEDER: Service mode for the document feeder
- (3) SORTER: Service mode for the finisher
- (4) FAX: Service mode for the fax
- (5) BOARD: Service mode for the optional board

Each of COPIER, FEEDER, SORTER, and BOARD has seven large items as shown below.




F-18-2

FAX has 10 large items as shown below. For details of each item, refer to the Service Manual for a fax machine.

- (1) Sssw: Service soft switch group
- (2) Menu: Menu group
- (3) Num: Numeric group
- (4) Ncu: NCU parameter group
- (5) Type: Type group
- (6) ISDN: ISDN group
- (7) Print: Print group
- (8) Clear: Clear group
- (9) Test: Test mode group
- (10) Report: Service report group

18.1.2 Entering or selecting service modes

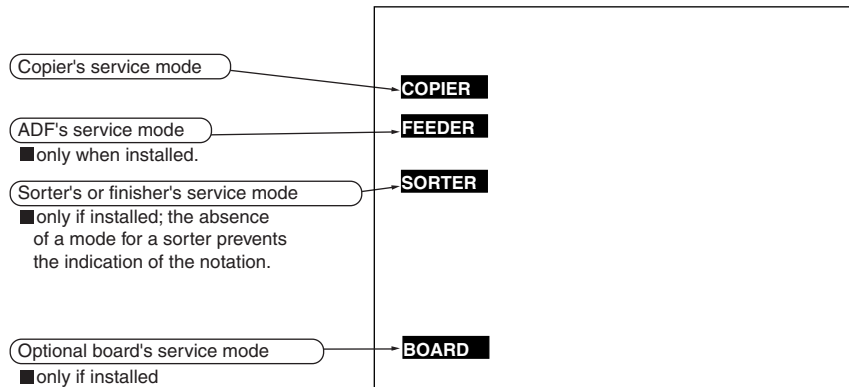
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000



When you make the machine operate via the Service Mode, be sure to remove a cable from an external controller or a network cable before the machine enters the Service Mode. If a print job enters the machine operating in the FUNCTION mode (operation/inspection mode), it may cause a malfunction and damage the main unit.

- 1) Press the asterisk key "*" on the control panel.
- 2) Press the 2 and 8 keys of the keypad at the same time.
- 3) Press the asterisk key "*" on the control panel.

This operation displays the initial screen (as shown below).



F-18-3

18.1.3 Exiting service modes

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- 1) Press the Reset key once. The screen returns to the initial screen of Service Mode.
- 2) Press the Reset key twice. The Service Mode is cancelled and the screen returns to the User screen (standard screen).



When you have used the Service Mode (ADJUST, FUNCTION, or OPTION), be sure to turn OFF/ON the main power switch after canceling the Service Mode.

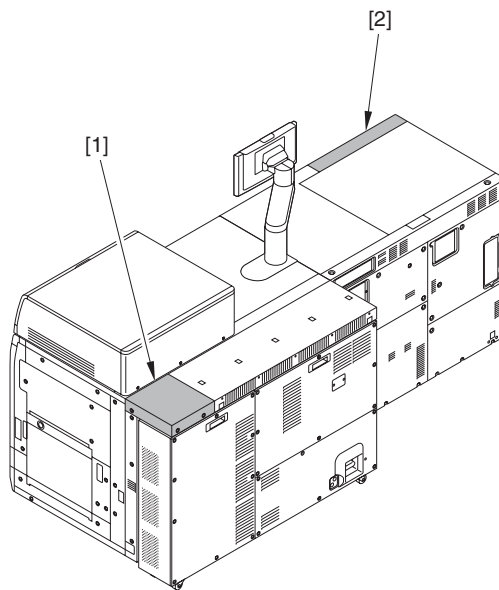
18.1.4 Back-up of service mode

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

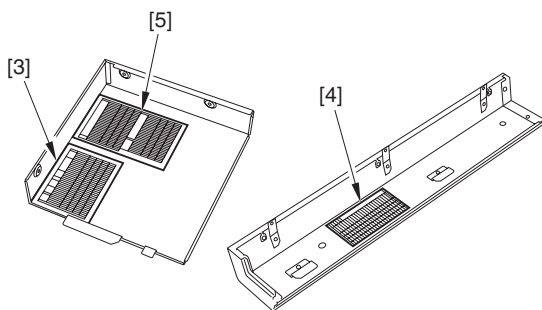
In factory setting, adjustments are made for each machine, and adjustment values are written in the service label.

When you replaced the reader controller PCB or DC controller PCB, or executed the RAM clear function, adjustment values for ADJUST or OPTION return to default. Therefore, when you made adjustments and changed values of the Service Mode in the field, be sure to write down the changed values in the service label. When there is no relevant field in the service label, write down the values in a blank field.

- Service label [3]/[4] for the main controller PCB / DC controller PCB: Inside of the Main-Station Rear Upper Cover 2[1] and the Sub-Station Front Upper Cover[2]. (Refer to the figure below.)
- Service Label [5] for the Reader Controller PCB: Inside of the Main-Station Rear Upper Cover 2[1]. (Refer to the figure below.)



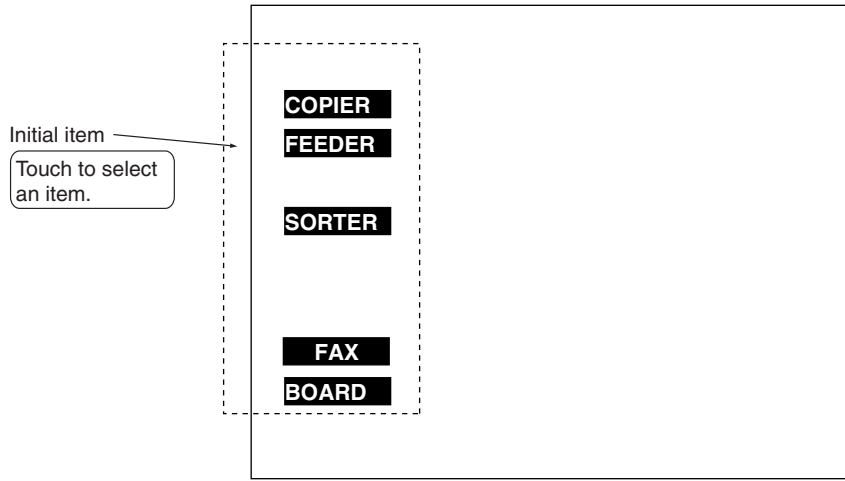
F-18-4



F-18-5

18.1.5 Initial screen

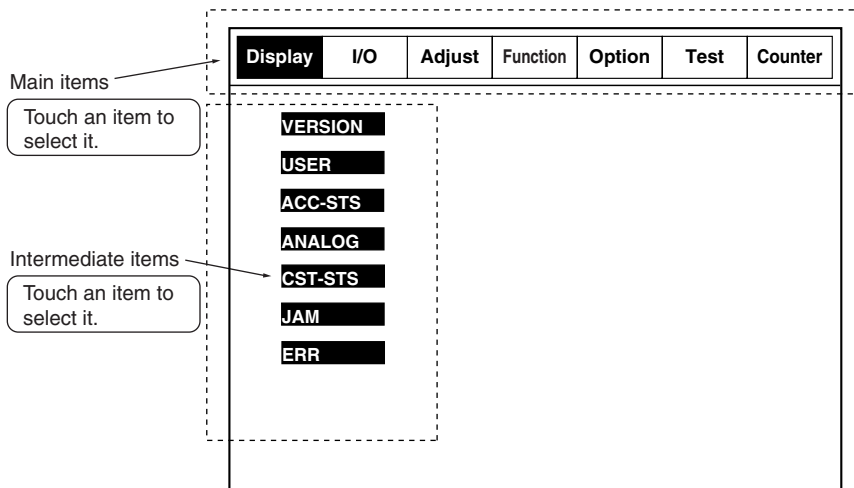
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000



F-18-6

18.1.6 Main/intermediate Item Screen

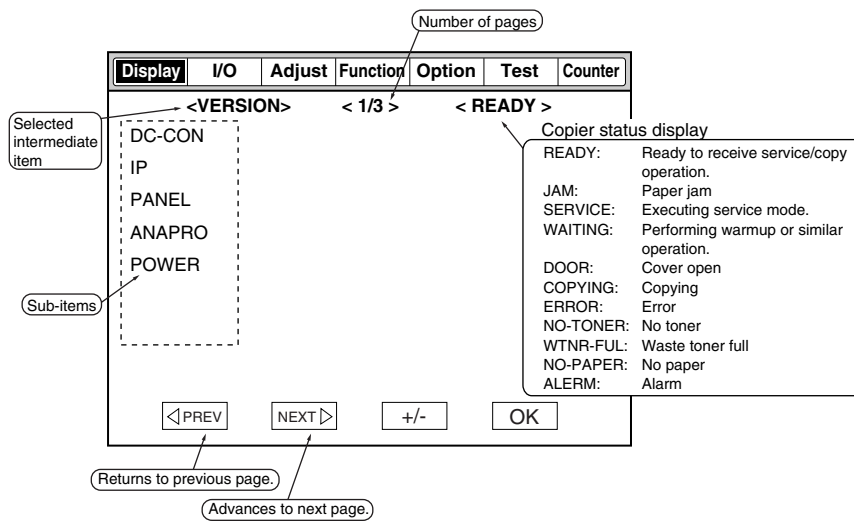
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000



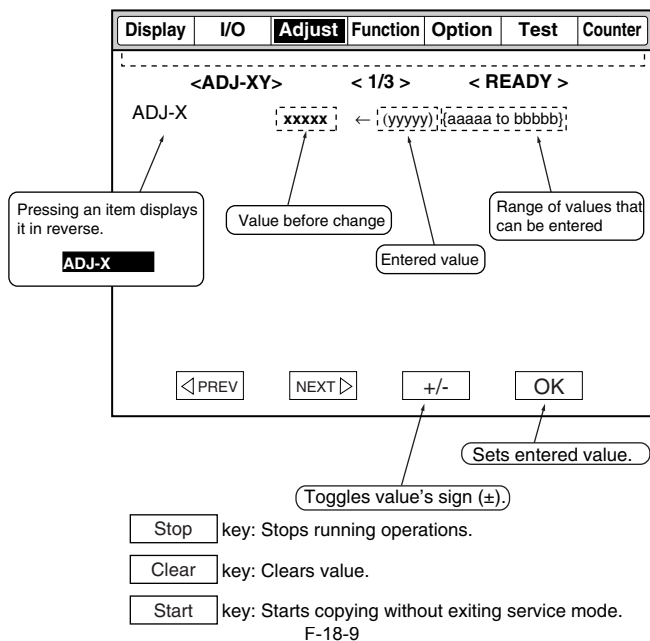
F-18-7

18.1.7 Sub- Item Screen

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000



F-18-8



18.2 DISPLAY (Status Display Mode)

18.2.1 COPIER

18.2.1.1 COPIER > DISPLAY > VERSION

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

T-18-1

COPIER > DISPLAY > VERSION			
Item	Level	Description	
DC-CON	1	Title	Firmware version of DC controller PCB
		Purpose of use	To check the firmware version of the DC controller PCB.
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	Check that the firmware version of the DC controller PCB is displayed correctly.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0xXXYY
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
R-CON	1	Title	Firmware version of reader controller PCB
		Purpose of use	To check the firmware version of the reader controller PCB.
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0xXXYY
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
PANEL	1	Title	ROM version of operation unit CPU PCB
		Purpose of use	To check the ROM version of the operation unit CPU PCB.
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0xXXYY
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > DISPLAY > VERSION			
Item	Level	Description	
ECO	1	Title	ROM version of ECO PCB
		Purpose of use	To check the ROM version of the ECO PCB.
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0xXXYY
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
FEEDER	1	Title	ROM version of DADF controller PCB
		Purpose of use	To check the ROM version of the DADF controller PCB.
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0xXXYY
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
SORTER	1	Title	Firmware version of finisher controller PCB
		Purpose of use	To check the firmware version of the finisher controller PCB.
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0xXXYY
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
NIB	1	Title	Network software version
		Purpose of use	To check the network software version.
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0xXXYY
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
DECK	1	Title	POD deck version
		Purpose of use	To check the POD deck version.
		When used	When checking the firmware version of the POD deck
		Precautions for use	Check that the firmware version of the POD deck is displayed correctly.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0xXXYY
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
MN-CONT	1	Title	Firmware version of main controller PCB
		Purpose of use	To check the firmware version of the main controller PCB.
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0xXXYY
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > DISPLAY > VERSION			
Item	Level	Description	
RUI	1	Title	Remote UI version
		Purpose of use	To check the remote UI version.
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0xXXYY
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
LANG-EN	1	Title	English language file version
		Purpose of use	To check the version of the English language file.
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0xXXYY
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
LANG-FR	1	Title	French language file version
		Purpose of use	To check the version of the French language file.
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0xXXYY
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
LANG-DE	1	Title	German language file version
		Purpose of use	To check the version of the German language file.
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0xXXYY
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
LANG-IT	1	Title	Italian language file version
		Purpose of use	To check the version of the Italian language file.
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0xXXYY
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
LANG-JP	1	Title	Japanese language file version
		Purpose of use	To check the version of the Japanese language file.
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0xXXYY
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > DISPLAY > VERSION			
Item	Level	Description	
LANG-CS	2	Title	Czech language file version
		Purpose of use	To check the version of the Czech language file.
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0xXXYY
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
LANG-DA	2	Title	Danish language file version
		Purpose of use	To check the version of the Danish language file.
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0xXXYY
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
LANG-EL	2	Title	Greek language file version
		Purpose of use	To check the version of the Greek language file.
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0xXXYY
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
LANG-ES	2	Title	Spanish language file version
		Purpose of use	To check the version of the Spanish language file.
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0xXXYY
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
LANG-ET	2	Title	Estonian language file version
		Purpose of use	To check the version of the Estonian language file.
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0xXXYY
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
LANG-FI	2	Title	Finnish language file version
		Purpose of use	To check the version of the Finnish language file.
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0xXXYY
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > DISPLAY > VERSION			
Item	Level	Description	
LANG-HU	2	Title	Hungarian language file version
		Purpose of use	To check the version of the Hungarian language file.
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0xXXYY
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
LANG-KO	2	Title	Korean language file version
		Purpose of use	To check the version of the Korean language file.
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0xXXYY
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
LANG-NL	2	Title	Dutch language file version
		Purpose of use	To check the version of the Dutch language file.
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0xXXYY
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
LANG-NO	2	Title	Norwegian language file version
		Purpose of use	To check the version of the Norwegian language file.
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0xXXYY
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
LANG-PL	2	Title	Polish language file version
		Purpose of use	To check the version of the Polish language file.
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0xXXYY
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
LANG-PT	2	Title	Portuguese language file version
		Purpose of use	To check the version of the Portuguese language file.
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0xXXYY
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > DISPLAY > VERSION			
Item	Level	Description	
LANG-RU	2	Title	Russian language file version
		Purpose of use	To check the version of the Russian language file.
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0xXXYY
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
LANG-SL	2	Title	Slovenian language file version
		Purpose of use	To check the version of the Slovenian language file.
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0xXXYY
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
LANG-SV	2	Title	Swedish language file version
		Purpose of use	To check the version of the Swedish language file.
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0xXXYY
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
LANG-TW	2	Title	Chinese (traditional) language file version
		Purpose of use	To check the version of the Chinese (traditional) language file.
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0xXXYY
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
LANG-ZH	2	Title	Chinese (simplified) language file version
		Purpose of use	To check the version of the Chinese (simplified) language file.
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0xXXYY
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
ECO-ID	2	Title	ECO-ID code display
		Purpose of use	To display the ECO-ID code
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	12-digit ASCII code
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > DISPLAY > VERSION			
Item	Level	Description	
GDI-UFR	1	Title	UFR board (GDI-UFR function) version
		Purpose of use	To check the UFR board (GDI-UFR function) version.
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0xXXYY
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
LANG-BU	2	Title	Bulgarian language file version
		Purpose of use	To check the version of the Bulgarian language file.
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0xXXYY
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
LANG-CR	2	Title	Croatian language file version
		Purpose of use	To check the version of the Croatian language file.
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0xXXYY
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
LANG-RM	2	Title	Romanian language file version
		Purpose of use	To check the version of the Romanian language file.
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0xXXYY
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
LANG-SK	2	Title	Slovak language file version
		Purpose of use	To check the version of the Slovak language file.
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0xXXYY
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
LANG-TK	2	Title	Turkish language file version
		Purpose of use	To check the version of the Turkish language file.
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0xXXYY
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > DISPLAY > VERSION			
Item	Level	Description	
TRIM-VER	1	Title	Trimmer ROM version display
		Purpose of use	To check the trimmer ROM version.
		When used	When checking the trimmer ROM version
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0xXXYY
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
MEAP	1	Title	MEAP contents version
		Purpose of use	To check the version of the MEAP contents stored on the hard disk.
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
OCR-CN	1	Title	Chinese (simplified) language OCR version
		Purpose of use	To check the Chinese (simplified) language OCR version.
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0xXXYY
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	--- is displayed if the applicable file does not exist.
OCR-JP	1	Title	Japanese language OCR version
		Purpose of use	To check the Japanese language OCR version.
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0xXXYY
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	--- is displayed if the applicable file does not exist.
OCR-KR	1	Title	Korean language OCR version
		Purpose of use	To check the Korean language OCR version.
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0xXXYY
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	--- is displayed if the applicable file does not exist.
OCR-TW	1	Title	Chinese (traditional) language OCR version
		Purpose of use	To check the Chinese (traditional) language OCR version.
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0xXXYY
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	--- is displayed if the applicable file does not exist.

COPIER > DISPLAY > VERSION			
Item	Level	Description	
BOOTROM	1	Title	BOOT-ROM version display
		Purpose of use	To check the BOOT-ROM version.
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0xXXYY + 9 ASCII characters
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
TTS-JA	1	Title	Japanese language audio dictionary version display
		Purpose of use	To check the Japanese language audio dictionary version.
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	--- is displayed if the applicable file does not exist.		
TTS-EN	1	Title	English language audio dictionary version display
		Purpose of use	To check the English language audio dictionary version.
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0xXXYY
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	--- is displayed if the applicable file does not exist.		
WEB-BRWS	1	Title	Web browser version indication
		Purpose of use	To check the web browser version.
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	1xXXYY
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	--- is displayed if the applicable file does not exist.		
FN-INS	1	Title	Finisher inserter ROM version
		Purpose of use	To check the finisher inserter ROM version.
		When used	When checking the finisher inserter ROM version
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0xXXYY
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	-		
MLT-INS	1	Title	Multi inserter ROM version
		Purpose of use	To check the multi inserter ROM version.
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0xXXYY
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	-		

COPIER > DISPLAY > VERSION			
Item	Level	Description	
DECK2	1	Title	Secondary deck ROM version
		Purpose of use	To check the secondary deck ROM version.
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	Check that the secondary deck ROM version is displayed.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0xXXYY
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
STK-IF	1	Title	Relay PCB (for stacker) ROM version
		Purpose of use	To check the relay PCB (for stacker) ROM version.
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	Check that the relay PCB (for stacker) ROM version is displayed.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0xXXYY
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
STACK	1	Title	Stacker ROM version
		Purpose of use	To check the stacker ROM version.
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	Check that the stacker ROM version is displayed.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0xXXYY
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
STACK	1	Title	Stacker ROM version
		Purpose of use	To check the stacker ROM version.
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	Check that the stacker ROM version is displayed.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0xXXYY
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
STK2-IF	1	Title	Relay PCB (for multi stacker) ROM version
		Purpose of use	To check the relay PCB (for multi stacker) ROM version.
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	Check that the relay PCB (for multi stacker) ROM version is displayed.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0xXXYY
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
STACK2	1	Title	Multi stacker ROM version
		Purpose of use	To check the multi stacker ROM version.
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	Check that the multi stacker ROM version is displayed.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0xXXYY
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > DISPLAY > VERSION			
Item	Level	Description	
BND-IF	1	Title	ROM version of perfect binder relay PCB
		Purpose of use	To check the ROM version of the perfect binder relay PCB.
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	Check that the ROM version of the perfect binder relay PCB is displayed.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0xXXYY
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
BND-MSTR	1	Title	Perfect binder master ROM version
		Purpose of use	To check the perfect binder master ROM version.
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	Check that the perfect binder master ROM version is displayed.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0xXXYY
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
BND-SLAV	1	Title	Perfect binder slave ROM version
		Purpose of use	To check the perfect binder slave ROM version.
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	Check that the perfect binder slave ROM version is displayed.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0xXXYY
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
BND-TRIM	1	Title	Perfect binder trimmer ROM version
		Purpose of use	To check the perfect binder trimmer ROM version.
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	Check that the perfect binder trimmer ROM version is displayed.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0xXXYY
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
BND-INS	1	Title	Perfect binder inserter ROM version
		Purpose of use	To check the perfect binder inserter ROM version.
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	Check that the perfect binder inserter ROM version is displayed.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0xXXYY
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
HELP	1	Title	Easy NAVI version
		Purpose of use	For displaying the "Easy NAVI" file.
		When used	The "Easy NAVI" function is provided instead of the "help" provided previously. (Standard)
		Precautions for use	The "Easy NAVI" function is an external file so its version must be displayed.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > DISPLAY > VERSION			
Item	Level	Description	
LANG-CA	2	Title	Catalan language file version
		Purpose of use	To check the version of the Catalan language file.
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	Check that the Catalan language file version is displayed.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0xXXYY
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-- is displayed if the applicable file does not exist.
WEBDAV	1	Title	WebDAV version display
		Purpose of use	To check the "WebDAV" file version.
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	Check that the "WebDAV" file version is displayed.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-- is displayed if the applicable file does not exist.
TIMESTAMP	1	Title	Time stamp version display
		Purpose of use	To check the "time stamp" file version
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	Check that the "time stamp" file version is displayed.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0xXXYY
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-- is displayed if the applicable file does not exist.
MEDIA-JA	2	Title	Display of paper brand information version in Japanese
		Purpose of use	To check the paper brand information version in Japanese.
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	Check that the paper brand information version is displayed correctly.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0xXXYY
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
MEDIA-EN	2	Title	Display of paper brand information version in English
		Purpose of use	To check the paper brand information version in English.
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	Check that the paper brand information version is displayed correctly.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0xXXYY
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
MEDIA-DE	2	Title	Display of paper brand information version in German
		Purpose of use	To check the paper brand information version in German.
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	Check that the paper brand information version is displayed correctly.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0xXXYY
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > DISPLAY > VERSION			
Item	Level	Description	
MEDIA-IT	2	Title	Display of paper brand information version in Italian
		Purpose of use	To check the paper brand information version in Italian.
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	Check that the paper brand information version is displayed correctly.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0xXXYY
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
MEDIA-FR	2	Title	Display of paper brand information version in French
		Purpose of use	To check the paper brand information version in French.
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	Check that the paper brand information version is displayed correctly.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0xXXYY
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
MEDIA-ZH	2	Title	Display of paper brand information version in Chinese (simplified)
		Purpose of use	To check the paper brand information version in Chinese (simplified)
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	Check that the paper brand information version is displayed correctly.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0xXXYY
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
MEDIA-SK	2	Title	Display of paper brand information version in Slovak
		Purpose of use	To check the paper brand information version in Slovak.
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	Check that the paper brand information version is displayed correctly.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0xXXYY
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
MEDIA-TK	2	Title	Display of paper brand information version in Turkish
		Purpose of use	To check the paper brand information version in Turkish.
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	Check that the paper brand information version is displayed correctly.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0xXXYY
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
MEDIA-CS	2	Title	Display of paper brand information version in Czech
		Purpose of use	To check the paper brand information version in Czech.
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	Check that the paper brand information version is displayed correctly.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0xXXYY
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > DISPLAY > VERSION			
Item	Level	Description	
MEDIA-EL	2	Title	Display of paper brand information version in Greek
		Purpose of use	To check the paper brand information version in Greek.
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	Check that the paper brand information version is displayed correctly.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0xXXYY
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
MEDIA-ES	2	Title	Display of paper brand information version in Spanish
		Purpose of use	To check the paper brand information version in Spanish.
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	Check that the paper brand information version is displayed correctly.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0xXXYY
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
MEDIA-ET	2	Title	Display of paper brand information version in Estonian
		Purpose of use	To check the paper brand information version in Estonian.
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	Check that the paper brand information version is displayed correctly.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0xXXYY
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
MEDIA-FI	2	Title	Display of paper brand information version in Finnish
		Purpose of use	To check the paper brand information version in Finnish.
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	Check that the paper brand information version is displayed correctly.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0xXXYY
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
MEDIA-HU	2	Title	Display of paper brand information version in Hungarian
		Purpose of use	To check the paper brand information version in Hungarian.
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	Check that the paper brand information version is displayed correctly.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0xXXYY
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
MEDIA-KO	2	Title	Display of paper brand information version in Korean
		Purpose of use	To check the paper brand information version in Korean.
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	Check that the paper brand information version is displayed correctly.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0xXXYY
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > DISPLAY > VERSION			
Item	Level	Description	
MEDIA-NL	2	Title	Display of paper brand information version in Dutch
		Purpose of use	To check the paper brand information version in Dutch.
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	Check that the paper brand information version is displayed correctly.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0xXXYY
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
MEDIA-NO	2	Title	Display of paper brand information version in Norwegian
		Purpose of use	To check the paper brand information version in Norwegian.
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	Check that the paper brand information version is displayed correctly.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0xXXYY
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
MEDIA-PL	2	Title	Display of paper brand information version in Polish
		Purpose of use	To check the paper brand information version in Polish.
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	Check that the paper brand information version is displayed correctly.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0xXXYY
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
MEDIA-PT	2	Title	Display of paper brand information version in Portuguese
		Purpose of use	To check the paper brand information version in Portuguese.
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	Check that the paper brand information version is displayed correctly.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0xXXYY
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
MEDIA-RU	2	Title	Display of paper brand information version in Russian
		Purpose of use	To check the paper brand information version in Russian.
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	Check that the paper brand information version is displayed correctly.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0xXXYY
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
MEDIA-SL	2	Title	Display of paper brand information version in Slovenian
		Purpose of use	To check the paper brand information version in Slovenian.
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	Check that the paper brand information version is displayed correctly.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0xXXYY
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > DISPLAY > VERSION			
Item	Level	Description	
MEDIA-SV	2	Title	Display of paper brand information version in Swedish
		Purpose of use	To check the paper brand information version in Swedish.
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	Check that the paper brand information version is displayed correctly.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0xXXYY
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
MEDIA-TW	2	Title	Display of paper brand information version in Chinese (traditional)
		Purpose of use	To check the paper brand information version in Chinese (traditional)
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	Check that the paper brand information version is displayed correctly.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0xXXYY
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
MEDIA-BU	2	Title	Display of paper brand information version in Bulgarian
		Purpose of use	To check the paper brand information version in Bulgarian.
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	Check that the paper brand information version is displayed correctly.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0xXXYY
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
MEDIA-CR	2	Title	Display of paper brand information version in Croatian
		Purpose of use	To check the paper brand information version in Croatian.
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	Check that the paper brand information version is displayed correctly.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0xXXYY
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
MEDIA-RM	2	Title	Display of paper brand information version in Romanian
		Purpose of use	To check the paper brand information version in Romanian.
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	Check that the paper brand information version is displayed correctly.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0xXXYY
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
MEDIA-CA	2	Title	Display of paper brand information version in Catalan
		Purpose of use	To check the paper brand information version in Catalan.
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	Check that the paper brand information version is displayed correctly.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0xXXYY
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

18.2.1.2 COPIER > DISPLAY > ACC-ST5

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

T-18-2

COPIER > DISPLAY > ACC-ST5			
Item	Level	Description	
FEEDER	1	Title	DADF connection status display
		Purpose of use	To check the connection status of DADF.
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0: Not connected 1: Connected
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
SORTER	1	Title	Not used
		Purpose of use	To check the connection status of the finisher.
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0: Not connected 1: Finisher M1 or N1 connected 2: Saddle finisher N2 connected
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
DECK	1	Title	Paper deck connection status display
		Purpose of use	To check the connection status of the paper deck.
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0: Not connected 1: Connected (small) (not displayed on this unit) 2: Connected (large) 3: POD deck light (with multi manual feed) 4: POD deck light (without multi manual feed) 5: Multi manual feed only 6: POD deck 7: POD deck double connection 8: POD deck triple connection (not displayed on this unit)
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
CARD	1	Title	Card reader connection status display
		Purpose of use	To check the connection status of the card reader.
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0: Card reader is connected but no card is inserted 1: Card reader is not connected or card reader is connected and a card is inserted ("1" is indicated in the copy enable status and "0" in the copy disable status.)
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
RAM	1	Title	Display of capacity of memory installed on main controller PCB
		Purpose of use	To check the capacity of the memory installed on the main controller PCB.
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	1536MB
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	-		

COPIER > DISPLAY > ACC-ST5			
Item	Level	Description	
COINROBO	1	Title	Coin vendor connection status display
		Purpose of use	To check the connection status of the coin vendor.
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0: Not connected 1: Connected
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
NIB	1	Title	Network board connection status display
		Purpose of use	To check the connection status of the network board.
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0: Not connected 1: Ethernet board connected 2: Token Ring board connected 3: Ethernet board and Token Ring board connected
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
NETWARE	1	Title	NetWare firmware installation status display
		Purpose of use	To check the installation status of the NetWare firmware.
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0: Not installed 1: Installed
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
SEND	1	Title	Display of availability of board for supporting SEND
		Purpose of use	To check whether the board used to support SEND is available. The SEND function can be used only when the board is available.
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0: Not provided 1: Provided
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > DISPLAY > ACC-ST5			
Item	Level	Description	
PDL-FNC1	1	Title	Enabled PDL display 1
		Purpose of use	To check the enabled PDL using 0 and 1.
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0000 0000 0000 0000 - 1111 1111 1111 1111 (0: OFF, 1: ON) b31: BDL b30: PS b29: PCL b28: PDF b27: LIPS (LIPS/LX emulation) b26: N201 (LIPS/LX emulation) b25: I5577 (LIPS/LX emulation) b24: ESC/P (LIPS/LX emulation) b23: HPGL (LIPS/LX emulation) b22: HPGL2 (LIPS/LX emulation) b21: IMAGING b20: KS (not used with this machine) b19 to b16: Reserved (scheduled to be used when a new PDL is added)
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	
PDL-FNC2	1	Title	Enabled PDL display 2
		Purpose of use	To check the enabled PDL using 0 and 1.
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0000 0000 0000 0000 - 1111 1111 1111 1111 (0: OFF, 1: ON) b15 to b0 :Reserved (scheduled to be used when a new PDL is added)
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
HDD	1	Title	HDD model name display
		Purpose of use	To check the model name of the HDD.
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
PCI1	1	Title	PCI1 board name display
		Purpose of use	To check the name of the board connected to PCI1.
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	When no board is connected, a hyphen [-] is displayed; when one is connected; the name of the board is displayed.
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Voice board -> "Voice Board," code board -> "3DES Board, "Gigabit Ethernet board -> "1Gbit-Board"

COPIER > DISPLAY > ACC-ST5			
Item	Level	Description	
PCI2	1	Title	PCI2 board name display
		Purpose of use	To check the name of the board connected to PCI2.
		When used	To display the name of the board connected to PCI2, connect the board to PCI2, and use this item.
		Precautions for use	Check that the board is connected to PCI2 and that its name is displayed correctly by this item.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	When no board is connected, a hyphen [-] is displayed; when one is connected; the name of the board is displayed.
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	<Board names> iSLOT wireless LAN -> "iSLOT" Voice board -> "Voice Board" Voice recognition board -> "Voice Board R" (Not displayed in this machine) Code board -> "3DES Board" Gigabit Ethernet board -> "1Gbit-Board"
PCI3	1	Title	PCI3 board name display
		Purpose of use	To check the name of the board connected to PCI3.
		When used	To display the name of the board connected to PCI3, connect the board to PCI3, and use this item.
		Precautions for use	Check that the board is connected to PCI3 and that its name is displayed correctly by this item.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	When no board is connected, a hyphen [-] is displayed; when one is connected; the name of the board is displayed.
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	<Board names> iSLOT wireless LAN -> "iSLOT" Voice board -> "Voice Board" Voice recognition board -> "Voice Board R" (Not displayed in this machine) Code board -> "3DES Board" Gigabit Ethernet board -> "1Gbit-Board"
USBH-SPD	2	Title	USB device connection speed display
		Purpose of use	To check the connection speed of the 8 USB devices connected to the USB-Host chip.
		When used	When checking whether a high-speed connection can be established since with some devices it is not possible to establish a high-speed connection, which results in a low-speed connection
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	Every 2 bits 0: OFF 1: LOW 2: FLL 3: HGH
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	<Display example> USBH-SPD OFF OFF FLL OFF HGH OFF OFF

18.2.1.3 COPIER > DISPLAY > ANALOG

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

T-18-3

COPIER > DISPLAY > ANALOG			
Item	Level	Description	
TEMP	1	Title	Temperature inside unit (environment sensor (left))
		Purpose of use	To check the temperature inside the host machine.
		When used	When checking the temperature inside the machine
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	degC
		Appropriate guideline	Conditions under which the host machine performance is guaranteed: Temperature of 20 to 27degC, humidity of 30% to 70%
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	The temperature and humidity detected by the ambient sensor (left) are not used as control parameters.

COPIER > DISPLAY > ANALOG			
Item	Level	Description	
HUM	1	Title	Humidity inside unit (environment sensor (left))
		Purpose of use	To check the humidity inside the host machine.
		When used	When checking the temperature inside the machine
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	%RH
		Appropriate guideline	Conditions under which the host machine performance is guaranteed: Temperature of 20 to 27degC, humidity of 30% to 70%
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	The temperature and humidity detected by the environment sensor (left) are not used as control parameters.
ABS-HUM	1	Title	Moisture content (environment sensor (left))
		Purpose of use	To check the moisture content.
		When used	When checking the moisture content
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	XX.xx
		Unit	g
		Appropriate guideline	0 to 20
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	The temperature and humidity detected by the environment sensor (left) are not used as control parameters.
DR-TEMP	1	Title	Photosensitive drum (Black) environment temperature display
		Purpose of use	To check the status of the drum surface temperature as detected by the drum thermistor.
		When used	When displaying the drum surface temperature and checking whether it is being controlled properly
		Precautions for use	If the display does not indicate a value within the normal operating range (around 42.5degC), use the heater temperature setting switch to switch the temperature or check the heater function.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	degC
		Appropriate guideline	The temperature must be above room temperature but below the drum thermopile temperature. (The drum thermistor is used for protection purposes so no problems are posed if the temperature is not significantly outside this range.)
		Related service modes	COPIER > DISPLAY > ANALOG > DR-TEMPL
		Additional description and notes	-
FIX-C	1	Title	Primary fixing roller surface temperature (as detected by main thermistor)
		Purpose of use	To check the fixing roller surface temperature (as detected by main thermistor).
		When used	When checking the surface temperature at the center of the fixing roller
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	degC
		Appropriate guideline	180degC +/- 10degC However, this value differs depending on the type of sheet which was output last and on whether the image priority or productivity priority mode is established.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
FIX-E	1	Title	Primary fixing roller surface temperature (as detected by sub thermistor)
		Purpose of use	To check the fixing roller surface temperature (as detected by sub thermistor).
		When used	When checking the surface temperature at the end area of the fixing roller
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	degC
		Appropriate guideline	180degC +/- 10degC However, this value differs depending on the type of sheet which was output last and on whether the image priority or productivity priority mode is established.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > DISPLAY > ANALOG			
Item	Level	Description	
FIX-LC	1	Title	Primary fixing pressure belt surface temperature (as detected by main thermistor)
		Purpose of use	To check the primary fixing pressure belt surface temperature (as detected by main thermistor).
		When used	When checking the surface temperature at the primary fixing pressure belt surface
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	degC
		Appropriate guideline	100degC +/- 4degC However, this value differs depending on the type of sheet which was output last and on whether the image priority or productivity priority mode is established.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
FIX-LE	1	Title	Primary fixing pressure belt surface temperature (as detected by sub thermistor)
		Purpose of use	To check the primary fixing pressure belt surface temperature (as detected by sub thermistor).
		When used	When checking the surface temperature at the end area of the primary fixing pressure belt surface
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	degC
		Appropriate guideline	100degC +/- 4degC However, this value differs depending on the type of sheet which was output last and on whether the image priority or productivity priority mode is established.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
FIX-EXC	1	Title	1st fixing external heating roller 1 center area temperature
		Purpose of use	To check the status of the 1st fixing external heating roller 1 center area temperature.
		When used	When checking the surface temperature at the center area of the 1st fixing external heating roller 1.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	degC
		Appropriate guideline	210degC +/- 4degC However, this value differs depending on the type of sheet which was output last and on whether the image priority or productivity priority mode is established.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
FIX-EXE	1	Title	External heating roller end area temperature
		Purpose of use	To check the status of the external heating roller end area temperature.
		When used	When checking the surface temperature at the end area of the external heating roller
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	degC
		Appropriate guideline	210degC +/- 4degC However, this value differs depending on the type of sheet which was output last and on whether the image priority or productivity priority mode is established.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
TEMP2	1	Title	Temperature inside unit (environment sensor (right))
		Purpose of use	To check the temperature around PCRG inside unit.
		When used	When checking the temperature near PCRG inside the machine
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 100
		Unit	degC
		Appropriate guideline	Conditions under which the host machine performance is guaranteed: Temperature of 20 to 27degC, humidity of 30% to 70%
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	The temperature and humidity detected by the environment sensor (right) are used as control parameters.

COPIER > DISPLAY > ANALOG			
Item	Level	Description	
HUM2	1	Title	Humidity inside unit (environment sensor (right))
		Purpose of use	To check the humidity around PCRG inside unit.
		When used	When checking the humidity near PCRG inside the machine
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 255
		Unit	%
		Appropriate guideline	Conditions under which the host machine performance is guaranteed: Temperature of 20 to 27degC, humidity of 30% to 70%
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	The temperature and humidity detected by the environmentsensor (right) are used as control parameters.
DR-TEMPL	1	Title	Drum thermopile temperature display
		Purpose of use	To display the drum surface temperature detected by the thermopile. For the black station
		When used	When displaying the drum surface temperature and checking whether it is being controlled properly
		Precautions for use	If the display does not indicate a value within the normal operating range (around 42.5 degrees), use the heater temperature setting switch to switch the temperature or check the heater function.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 60
		Unit	degC
		Appropriate guideline	42.5degC +/- 2.5degC (However, depending on the operating environment, the temperature may temporarily deviate slightly, but no problems are posed if it returns to the above range.)
		Related service modes	COPIER > DISPLAY > ANALOG > DR-TEMP
		Additional description and notes	-
DK4-TEMP	1	Title	Temperature inside upper level deck of POD deck (environment sensor)
		Purpose of use	To check the status of the temperature inside the upper level deck of the POD deck.
		When used	When checking the temperature inside the container
		Precautions for use	Warm up the container (by, for instance, changing the environmental conditions), and check its temperature.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	degC
		Appropriate guideline	Conditions under which the host machine performance is guaranteed: Temperature of 20 to 27degC, humidity of 30% to 70% Conditions under which the performance of the paper is guaranteed: Temperature of 20 to 27degC, humidity of 30% to 60%
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
DK5-TEMP	1	Title	Temperature inside middle level deck of POD deck (environment sensor)
		Purpose of use	To check the status of the temperature inside the middle level deck of the POD deck.
		When used	When checking the temperature inside the container
		Precautions for use	Warm up the container (by, for instance, changing the environmental conditions), and check its temperature.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	degC
		Appropriate guideline	Conditions under which the host machine performance is guaranteed: Temperature of 20 to 27degC, humidity of 30% to 70% Conditions under which the performance of the paper is guaranteed: Temperature of 20 to 27degC, humidity of 30% to 60%
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
DK8-TEMP	1	Title	Temperature inside middle level deck of secondary POD deck (environment sensor)
		Purpose of use	To check the status of the temperature inside the middle level deck of the secondary POD deck.
		When used	When checking the temperature inside the container
		Precautions for use	Warm up the container (by, for instance, changing the environmental conditions), and check its temperature.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	degC
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > DISPLAY > ANALOG			
Item	Level	Description	
DK9-TEMP	1	Title	Temperature inside lower level deck of secondary POD deck (environment sensor)
		Purpose of use	To check the status of the temperature inside the lower level deck of the secondary POD deck.
		When used	When checking the temperature inside the container
		Precautions for use	Warm up the container (by, for instance, changing the environmental conditions), and check its temperature.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	degC
		Appropriate guideline	Conditions under which the host machine performance is guaranteed: Temperature of 20 to 27degC, humidity of 30% to 70% Conditions under which the performance of the paper is guaranteed: Temperature of 20 to 27degC, humidity of 30% to 60%
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
DK4-HUM	1	Title	Humidity inside upper level deck of POD deck (environment sensor)
		Purpose of use	To check the status of the humidity inside the upper level deck of the POD deck.
		When used	When checking the humidity inside the container
		Precautions for use	Change the environmental conditions, and check that the humidity changes.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	%RH
		Appropriate guideline	Conditions under which the host machine performance is guaranteed: Temperature of 20 to 27degC, humidity of 30% to 70% Conditions under which the performance of the paper is guaranteed: Temperature of 20 to 27degC, humidity of 30% to 60%
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
DK5-HUM	1	Title	Humidity inside middle level deck of POD deck (environment sensor)
		Purpose of use	To check the status of the humidity inside the middle level deck of the POD deck.
		When used	When checking the humidity inside the container
		Precautions for use	Change the environmental conditions, and check that the humidity changes.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	%RH
		Appropriate guideline	Conditions under which the host machine performance is guaranteed: Temperature of 20 to 27degC, humidity of 30% to 70% Conditions under which the performance of the paper is guaranteed: Temperature of 20 to 27degC, humidity of 30% to 60%
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
DK6-HUM	1	Title	Humidity inside lower level deck of POD deck (environment sensor)
		Purpose of use	To check the status of the humidity inside the lower level deck of the POD deck.
		When used	When checking the humidity inside the container
		Precautions for use	Change the environmental conditions, and check that the humidity changes.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	%RH
		Appropriate guideline	Conditions under which the host machine performance is guaranteed: Temperature of 20 to 27degC, humidity of 30% to 70% Conditions under which the performance of the paper is guaranteed: Temperature of 20 to 27degC, humidity of 30% to 60%
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > DISPLAY > ANALOG			
Item	Level	Description	
DK7-HUM	1	Title	Humidity inside upper level deck of secondary POD deck (environment sensor)
		Purpose of use	To check the status of the humidity inside the upper level deck of the secondary POD deck.
		When used	When checking the humidity inside the container
		Precautions for use	Change the environmental conditions, and check that the humidity changes.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	%RH
		Appropriate guideline	Conditions under which the host machine performance is guaranteed: Temperature of 20 to 27degC, humidity of 30% to 70% Conditions under which the performance of the paper is guaranteed: Temperature of 20 to 27degC, humidity of 30% to 60%
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
DK8-HUM	1	Title	Humidity inside middle level deck of secondary POD deck (environment sensor)
		Purpose of use	To check the status of the humidity inside the middle level deck of the secondary POD deck.
		When used	When checking the humidity inside the container
		Precautions for use	Change the environmental conditions, and check that the humidity changes.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	%RH
		Appropriate guideline	Conditions under which the host machine performance is guaranteed: Temperature of 20 to 27degC, humidity of 30% to 70% Conditions under which the performance of the paper is guaranteed: Temperature of 20 to 27degC, humidity of 30% to 60%
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
DK9-HUM	1	Title	Humidity inside lower level deck of secondary POD deck (environment sensor)
		Purpose of use	To check the status of the humidity inside the lower level deck of the secondary POD deck.
		When used	When checking the humidity inside the container
		Precautions for use	Change the environmental conditions, and check that the humidity changes.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	%RH
		Appropriate guideline	Conditions under which the host machine performance is guaranteed: Temperature of 20 to 27degC, humidity of 30% to 70% Conditions under which the performance of the paper is guaranteed: Temperature of 20 to 27degC, humidity of 30% to 60%
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
DK1-TEMP	1	Title	Temperature inside this unit right deck (environment sensor)
		Purpose of use	To check the status of the temperature inside this unit right deck.
		When used	When checking the temperature inside the container
		Precautions for use	Warm up the container (by, for instance, changing the environmental conditions), and check its temperature.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	degC
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
DK2-TEMP	1	Title	Temperature inside this unit left deck (environment sensor)
		Purpose of use	To check the status of the temperature inside this unit left deck.
		When used	When checking the temperature inside the container
		Precautions for use	Warm up the container (by, for instance, changing the environmental conditions), and check its temperature.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	degC
		Appropriate guideline	Conditions under which the host machine performance is guaranteed: Temperature of 20 to 27degC, humidity of 30% to 70% Conditions under which the performance of the paper is guaranteed: Temperature of 20 to 27degC, humidity of 30% to 60%
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > DISPLAY > ANALOG			
Item	Level	Description	
DK1-HUM	1	Title	Humidity inside this unit right deck (environment sensor)
		Purpose of use	To check the status of the humidity inside this unit right deck.
		When used	When checking the humidity inside the container
		Precautions for use	Change the environmental conditions, and check that the humidity changes.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	%RH
		Appropriate guideline	Conditions under which the host machine performance is guaranteed: Temperature of 20 to 27degC, humidity of 30% to 70% Conditions under which the performance of the paper is guaranteed: Temperature of 20 to 27degC, humidity of 30% to 60%
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
DK2-HUM	1	Title	Humidity inside this unit left deck (environment sensor)
		Purpose of use	To check the status of the humidity inside this unit left deck.
		When used	When checking the humidity inside the container
		Precautions for use	Change the environmental conditions, and check that the humidity changes.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	%RH
		Appropriate guideline	Conditions under which the host machine performance is guaranteed: Temperature of 20 to 27degC, humidity of 30% to 70% Conditions under which the performance of the paper is guaranteed: Temperature of 20 to 27degC, humidity of 30% to 60%
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
DK6-TEMP	1	Title	Temperature inside lower level deck of POD deck (environment sensor)
		Purpose of use	To check the status of the temperature inside the lower level deck of the POD deck.
		When used	When checking the temperature inside the container
		Precautions for use	Warm up the container (by, for instance, changing the environmental conditions), and check its temperature.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	degC
		Appropriate guideline	Conditions under which the host machine performance is guaranteed: Temperature of 20 to 27degC, humidity of 30% to 70% Conditions under which the performance of the paper is guaranteed: Temperature of 20 to 27degC, humidity of 30% to 60%
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
DR-TMP-Y	1	Title	Photosensitive drum (Y) ambient temperature display
		Purpose of use	To check the status of the drum surface temperature detected by the drum thermistor.
		When used	When displaying the drum surface temperature and checking whether it is being controlled properly
		Precautions for use	If the display does not indicate a value within the normal operating range (around 42.5 degrees), use the heater temperature setting switch to switch the temperature or check the heater function.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 60
		Unit	degC
		Appropriate guideline	The temperature must be above room temperature but below the drum thermopile temperature. (The drum thermistor is used for protection purposes so no problems are posed if the temperature is not significantly outside this range.)
		Related service modes	COPIER > DISPLAY > ANALOG > DR-TMPL-Y
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > DISPLAY > ANALOG			
Item	Level	Description	
DR-TMP-M	1	Title	Photosensitive drum (Magenta) ambient temperature display
		Purpose of use	To check the status of the drum surface temperature detected by the drum thermistor.
		When used	When displaying the drum surface temperature and checking whether it is being controlled properly
		Precautions for use	If the display does not indicate a value within the normal operating range (around 42.5 degrees), use the heater temperature setting switch to switch the temperature or check the heater function.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 60
		Unit	degC
		Appropriate guideline	The temperature must be above room temperature but below the drum thermopile temperature. (The drum thermistor is used for protection purposes so no problems are posed if the temperature is not significantly outside this range.)
		Related service modes	COPIER > DISPLAY > ANALOG > DR-TMPL-M
		Additional description and notes	-
DR-TMP-C	1	Title	Photosensitive drum (C) ambient temperature display
		Purpose of use	To check the status of the drum surface temperature detected by the drum thermistor.
		When used	When displaying the drum surface temperature and checking whether it is being controlled properly
		Precautions for use	If the display does not indicate a value within the normal operating range (around 42.5 degrees), use the heater temperature setting switch to switch the temperature or check the heater function.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 60
		Unit	degC
		Appropriate guideline	The temperature must be above room temperature but below the drum thermopile temperature. (The drum thermistor is used for protection purposes so no problems are posed if the temperature is not significantly outside this range.)
		Related service modes	COPIER > DISPLAY > ANALOG > DR-TMPL-C
		Additional description and notes	-
D-TMPL-Y	1	Title	Drum thermopile (Yellow) temperature display
		Purpose of use	To check the status of the drum surface temperature detected by the thermopile. For the yellow station
		When used	When displaying the drum surface temperature and checking whether it is being controlled properly
		Precautions for use	If the display does not indicate a value within the normal operating range (around 42.5 degrees), use the heater temperature setting switch to switch the temperature or check the heater function.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 60
		Unit	degC
		Appropriate guideline	42.5degC +/- 2.5degC (However, depending on the operating environment, the temperature may temporarily deviate slightly, but no problems are posed if it returns to the above range.)
		Related service modes	COPIER > DISPLAY > ANALOG > DR-TMP-Y
		Additional description and notes	-
D-TMPL-M	1	Title	Drum thermopile (Magenta) temperature display
		Purpose of use	To check the status of the drum surface temperature detected by the thermopile. For the magenta station
		When used	When displaying the drum surface temperature and checking whether it is being controlled properly
		Precautions for use	If the display does not indicate a value within the normal operating range (around 42.5 degrees), use the heater temperature setting switch to switch the temperature or check the heater function.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 60
		Unit	degC
		Appropriate guideline	42.5degC +/- 2.5degC (However, depending on the operating environment, the temperature may temporarily deviate slightly, but no problems are posed if it returns to the above range.)
		Related service modes	COPIER > DISPLAY > ANALOG > DR-TMP-M
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > DISPLAY > ANALOG			
Item	Level	Description	
D-TMPL-C	1	Title	Drum thermopile (Cyan) temperature display
		Purpose of use	To check the status of the drum surface temperature detected by the thermopile. For the cyan station
		When used	When displaying the drum surface temperature and checking whether it is being controlled properly
		Precautions for use	If the display does not indicate a value within the normal operating range (around 42.5 degrees), use the heater temperature setting switch to switch the temperature or check the heater function.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 60
		Unit	degC
		Appropriate guideline	42.5degC +/- 2.5degC (However, depending on the operating environment, the temperature may temporarily deviate slightly, but no problems are posed if it returns to the above range.)
		Related service modes	COPIER > DISPLAY > ANALOG > DR-TMP-C
		Additional description and notes	-
FIX2-C	1	Title	2nd fixing roller surface temperature (as detected by main thermistor)
		Purpose of use	To check the status of the 2nd fixing roller surface temperature (as detected by main thermistor).
		When used	When checking the status of the 2nd fixing assembly temperature
		Precautions for use	The 2nd fixing temperature must match the fixing regulation temperature.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	degC
		Appropriate guideline	185degC +/- 10degC However, this value differs depending on the type of sheet which was output last and on whether the image priority or productivity priority mode is established.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
FIX2-E	1	Title	2nd fixing roller surface temperature (as detected by sub thermistor)
		Purpose of use	To check the status of the 2nd fixing roller surface temperature (as detected by sub thermistor).
		When used	When checking the status of the 2nd fixing assembly end temperature
		Precautions for use	This temperature must be virtually equal to the regulation temperature of the 2nd fixing.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	degC
		Appropriate guideline	185degC +/- 10degC However, this value differs depending on the type of sheet which was output last and on whether the image priority or productivity priority mode is established.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
ITB-POST	2	Title	Current setting of transfer front charger
		Purpose of use	To check the current setting of the transfer front charger. This item is used when analyzing the causes of faulty transfer (coarse image, mottling image) The setting must be changed in accordance with the instructions given by the Quality Support department.
		When used	When transfer trouble (roughness, BOSO) has occurred
		Precautions for use	
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	uA
		Appropriate guideline	-250 to -190
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	
FIX-EX2C	1	Title	1st fixing assembly external heating 2 surface temperature (as detected by main thermistor)
		Purpose of use	To check the status of the 1st fixing assembly external heating 2 surface temperature (as detected by main thermistor)
		When used	When checking the status of the 1st fixing assembly external heating 2 temperature
		Precautions for use	The external heating 2 temperature of the 1st fixing assembly must match the fixing regulation temperature.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	degC
		Appropriate guideline	210degC +/- 4degC However, this value differs depending on the type of sheet which was output last and on whether the image priority or productivity priority mode is established.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > DISPLAY > ANALOG			
Item	Level	Description	
FIX-EX2E	1	Title	1st fixing assembly external heating 2 surface temperature (as detected by sub thermistor)
		Purpose of use	To check the status of the 1st fixing assembly external heating 2 surface temperature (as detected by sub thermistor)
		When used	When checking the status of the 1st fixing assembly external heating 2 temperature
		Precautions for use	The external heating 2 temperature of the 1st fixing assembly must match the fixing regulation temperature.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	degC
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
FIX2EX1C	1	Title	2nd fixing assembly external heating 1 surface temperature (as detected by main thermistor)
		Purpose of use	To check the status of the 2nd fixing assembly external heating 1 surface temperature (as detected by main thermistor)
		When used	When checking the status of the 2nd fixing assembly external heating 1 temperature
		Precautions for use	The external heating 1 temperature of the 2nd fixing assembly must match the fixing regulation temperature.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	degC
		Appropriate guideline	210degC +/- 4degC However, this value differs depending on the type of sheet which was output last and on whether the image priority or productivity priority mode is established.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
FIX2EX1E	1	Title	2nd fixing assembly external heating 1 surface temperature (as detected by sub thermistor)
		Purpose of use	To check the status of the 2nd fixing assembly external heating 1 surface temperature (as detected by sub thermistor)
		When used	When checking the status of the 2nd fixing assembly external heating 1 surface temperature
		Precautions for use	The external heating 1 temperature of the 2nd fixing assembly must match the fixing regulation temperature.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	degC
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
FIX2EX2C	1	Title	2nd fixing assembly external heating 2 surface temperature (as detected by main thermistor)
		Purpose of use	To check the status of the 2nd fixing assembly external heating 2 surface temperature (as detected by main thermistor)
		When used	When checking the status of the 2nd fixing assembly external heating 2 surface temperature
		Precautions for use	The external heating 2 temperature of the 2nd fixing assembly must match the fixing regulation temperature.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	degC
		Appropriate guideline	210degC +/- 4degC However, this value differs depending on the type of sheet which was output last and on whether the image priority or productivity priority mode is established.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > DISPLAY > ANALOG			
Item	Level	Description	
FIX2EX2E	1	Title	2nd fixing assembly external heating 2 surface temperature (as detected by sub thermistor)
		Purpose of use	To check the status of the 2nd fixing assembly external heating 2 surface temperature (as detected by sub thermistor).
		When used	When checking the status of the 2nd fixing assembly external heating 2 surface temperature (as detected by sub thermistor)
		Precautions for use	The external heating 2 temperature (as detected by sub thermistor) of the 2nd fixing assembly must match the fixing regulation temperature.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	degC
		Appropriate guideline	210degC +/- 4degC However, this value differs depending on the type of sheet which was output last and on whether the image priority or productivity priority mode is established.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
FIX2-LC	1	Title	2nd fixing/pressing roller surface temperature (as detected by main thermistor)
		Purpose of use	To check the status of the 2nd fixing/pressing roller surface temperature (as detected by main thermistor).
		When used	When checking the status of the 2nd fixing/pressing roller surface temperature
		Precautions for use	The 2nd fixing/pressing roller surface temperature must match the fixing regulation temperature.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	degC
		Appropriate guideline	90degC +/- 6degC However, this value differs depending on the type of sheet which was output last and on whether the image priority or productivity priority mode is established.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
FIX2-LE	1	Title	2nd fixing/pressing roller surface temperature (as detected by sub thermistor)
		Purpose of use	To check the status of the 2nd fixing/pressing roller surface temperature (as detected by sub thermistor).
		When used	When checking the status of the 2nd fixing/pressing roller surface temperature
		Precautions for use	The 2nd fixing/pressing roller surface temperature must match the fixing regulation temperature.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	degC
		Appropriate guideline	90degC +/- 6degC However, this value differs depending on the type of sheet which was output last and on whether the image priority or productivity priority mode is established.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
ABS-HUM2	1	Title	Absolute humidity inside unit (environment sensor (right))
		Purpose of use	To check the moisture content inside unit.
		When used	When checking the moisture content inside the machine
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 30
		Unit	g
		Appropriate guideline	0 to 20
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	The temperature and humidity detected by the ambient sensor (right) are used as control parameters.

COPIER > DISPLAY > ANALOG			
Item	Level	Description	
DK7-TEMP	1	Title	Temperature inside upper level deck of secondary POD deck (environment sensor)
		Purpose of use	To check the status of the temperature inside the upper level deck of the secondary POD deck.
		When used	When checking the temperature inside the container
		Precautions for use	Warm up the container (by, for instance, changing the environmental conditions), and check its temperature.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	degC
		Appropriate guideline	Conditions under which the host machine performance is guaranteed: Temperature of 20 to 27degC, humidity of 30% to 70% Conditions under which the performance of the paper is guaranteed: Temperature of 20 to 27degC, humidity of 30% to 60%
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

18.2.1.4 COPIER > DISPLAY > CST-ST5

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

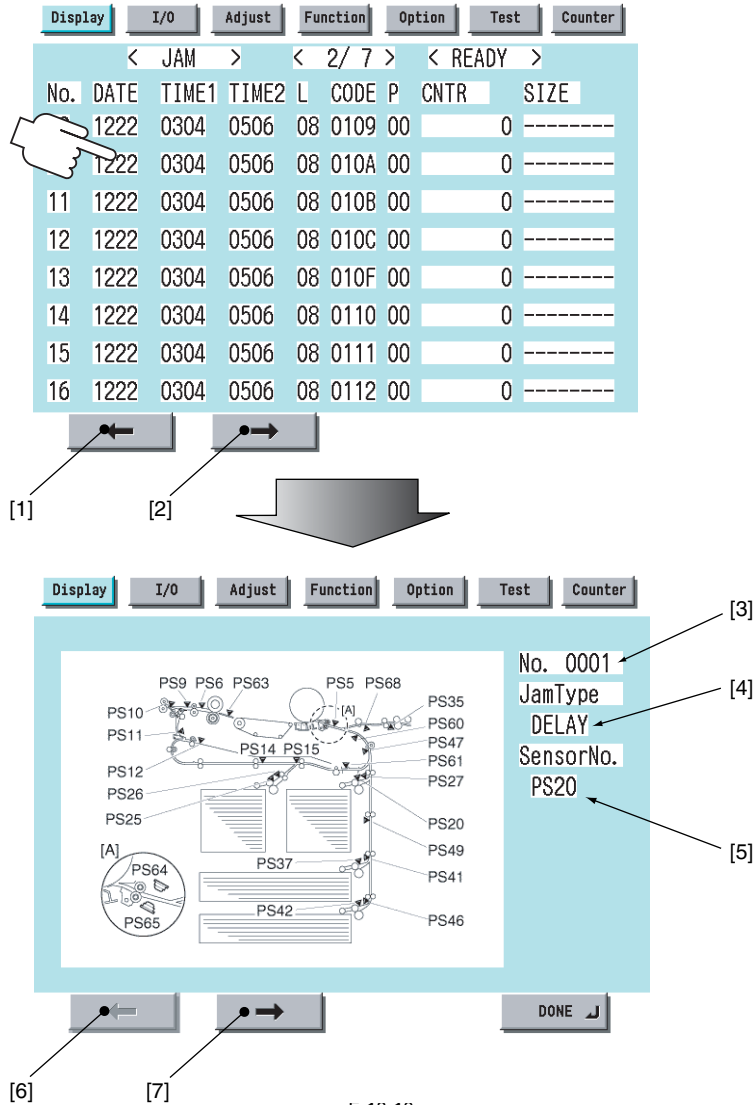
T-18-4

COPIER > DISPLAY > CST-ST5			
Item	Level	Description	
WIDTH-MF	2	Title	Sheet width size on manual feed tray
		Purpose of use	To check the sheet width size on the manual feed tray.
		When used	When checking the sheet width size on the stack bypass tray
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	mm
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

18.2.1.5 COPIER > DISPLAY > JAM

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

<JAM>



F-18-10

A touch on any Jam Indication screen will bring up the Detail screen of the jam in question.

- [1] to previous page
- [2] to next page
- [3] number indicating order of jam occurrence
- [4] type of jam
- [5] sensor in question
- [6] to previous jam screen
- [7] to next jam screen

No.: number indicating the order of jam occurrence; 1 through 50 (the higher the number, the older the jam)

DATE: date of jam occurrence

TIEM1: time of jam occurrence

TIEM1: time of jam recovery

L: location of jam

Code	Location
00	host machine
01	feeder
02	finisher / insertion unit / panch unit / trimmer
11	POD deck
12	Secondary POD deck
51	stacker (Primary)
52	stacker (Secondary)
61	for future use

CODE: jam code
P: source of paper

Code	Description
01	right deck
02	left deck
03	not used
04	not used
07	side paper deck
08	manual feeder tray
09	duplexing assembly
0A	inserter for finisher (upper)
0B	inserter for finisher (lower)
10	POD upper deck
11	POD middle deck
12	POD lower deck
13	Secondary POD upper deck
14	Secondary POD middle deck
15	Secondary POD lower deck
60	for future use
61	for future use

CNTR: reading of soft counter for source of paper
SIZE: paper size

18.2.1.6 COPIER > DISPLAY > ERR

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

<ERR>

Display	I/O	Adjust	Function	Option	Test	Counter	
< ERR > < 2/ 7 > < READY >							
No.	DATE	TIME1	TIME2	CODE	DTL	L	P
09	0102	0304	0506	E0708	090A	0C	0D
10	----	----	----	----	----	--	--
11	0102	0304	0506	E0708	090A	0C	0D
12	0102	0304	0506	E0708	090A	0C	0D
13	0102	0304	0506	E0708	090A	0C	0D
14	0102	0304	0506	E0708	090A	0C	0D
15	0102	0304	0506	E0708	090A	0C	0D
16	0102	0304	0506	E0708	090A	0C	0D

F-18-11

No.: number indicating order of error occurrence (the higher the number, the older the error)

DATE: date of error occurrence

TIME1: time of error occurrence

TIME2: time of error recovery

CODE: error code

DTL: detail code (if none, '0000')

L: location grouping

Code	Location grouping
00	main controller
01	DADF
02	finisher / insertion unit / punch unit / trimmer
04	reader unit
05	Printer unit
06	PDL board
11	POD deck
12	Secondary POD deck
51	stacker (Primary)
52	stacker (Secondary)
61	for future use

P: not used

18.2.1.7 COPIER > DISPLAY > HV-ST5

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

T-18-5

COPIER > DISPLAY > HV-ST5			
Item	Level	Description	
2TR-CMOF	1	Title	Display of offset value used for secondary transfer DC current monitor adjustment
		Purpose of use	To check the offset value used for the secondary transfer DC current monitor adjustment.
		When used	Check the adjustment value using this item when the contents of the RAM have been cleared, when the DC controller PCB has been replaced or after executing FUNCTION > MISC-P > HV-ADOF5 for the secondary transfer high-voltage PCB. If the value displayed is not within ± 300 , replace the DC controller PCB or high-voltage unit.
		Precautions for use	Check that the value displayed for this item is within ± 300 after executing adjustment mode FUNCTION > MISC-P > HV-ADOF5.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-999 to 999
		Unit	mV
		Appropriate guideline	-300 to +300
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
BCL1CMOF	1	Title	Display of offset value used for ITB cleaning bias roller upstream current monitor adjustment
		Purpose of use	To check the offset value used for the ITB cleaning bias roller upstream current monitor adjustment.
		When used	Check the adjustment value using this item when the contents of the RAM have been cleared, when the DC controller PCB has been replaced or when the ITB cleaner high-voltage PCB (upstream) has been replaced after executing FUNCTION > MISC-P > HV-ADOF5. If the value displayed is not within ± 300 , replace the DC controller PCB or high-voltage unit.
		Precautions for use	Check that the value displayed for this item is within ± 300 after executing adjustment mode FUNCTION > MISC-P > HV-ADOF5.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-999 to 999
		Unit	mV
		Appropriate guideline	-300 to +300
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
BCL2CMOF	1	Title	Display of offset value used for ITB cleaning bias roller downstream current monitor adjustment
		Purpose of use	To check the offset value used for the ITB cleaning bias roller downstream current monitor adjustment.
		When used	Check the adjustment value using this item when the contents of the RAM have been cleared, when the DC controller PCB has been replaced or when the ITB cleaner high-voltage PCB (downstream) has been replaced after executing FUNCTION > HV-ADOF5. If the value displayed is not within ± 300 , replace the DC controller PCB or high-voltage unit.
		Precautions for use	Check that the value displayed for this item is within ± 300 after executing adjustment mode FUNCTION > MISC-P > HV-ADOF5.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-999 to 999
		Unit	mV
		Appropriate guideline	-300 to +300
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
1-ATVC-Y	1	Title	Display of Vb for Yellow primary transfer ATVC
		Purpose of use	To check the base voltage Vb calculated by Yellow primary transfer ATVC.
		When used	When forecasting the service life of the Yellow primary transfer roller When Vb reaches 5000, it means that the primary transfer roller is near the end of its service life. At such a time, 'leopard spots', 'mottling image' and other types of trouble tend to occur in the images.
		Precautions for use	The ATVC results must be displayed correctly. Back up the data to ensure that the data is not lost when the power is turned off and on (sleep resetting).
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 5000
		Unit	V
		Appropriate guideline	Under 5000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	An alarm alerts the user when Vb exceeds the upper limit of 5000.

COPIER > DISPLAY > HV-STS			
Item	Level	Description	
1-ATVC-M	1	Title	Display of Vb for Magenta primary transfer ATVC
		Purpose of use	To check the base voltage Vb calculated by Magenta primary transfer ATVC.
		When used	When forecasting the service life of the Magenta primary transfer roller When Vb reaches 5000, it means that the primary transfer roller is near the end of its service life. At such a time, 'leopard spots', 'mottling image' and other types of trouble tend to occur in the images.
		Precautions for use	The ATVC results must be displayed correctly. Back up the data to ensure that the data is not lost when the power is turned off and on (sleep resetting).
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 5000
		Unit	V
		Appropriate guideline	Under 5000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	An alarm alerts the user when Vb exceeds the upper limit of 5000.
1-ATVC-C	1	Title	Display of Vb for Cyan primary transfer ATVC
		Purpose of use	To check the base voltage Vb calculated by Cyan primary transfer ATVC.
		When used	When forecasting the service life of the Cyan primary transfer roller When Vb reaches 5000, it means that the primary transfer roller is near the end of its service life. At such a time, 'leopard spots', 'mottling image' and other types of trouble tend to occur in the images.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 5000
		Unit	V
		Appropriate guideline	Under 5000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	An alarm alerts the user when Vb exceeds the upper limit of 5000.
1-ATVC-K	1	Title	Display of Vb for Black primary transfer ATVC
		Purpose of use	To check the base voltage Vb calculated by Black primary transfer ATVC.
		When used	When forecasting the service life of the Black primary transfer roller When Vb reaches 5000, it means that the primary transfer roller is near the end of its service life. At such a time, 'leopard spots', 'mottling image' and other types of trouble tend to occur in the images.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 5000
		Unit	V
		Appropriate guideline	Under 5000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	An alarm alerts the user when Vb exceeds the upper limit of 5000.
2-ATVC	1	Title	Display of Vb for secondary transfer ATVC
		Purpose of use	To check the base voltage Vb calculated by secondary transfer ATVC.
		When used	When forecasting the service life of the secondary transfer roller When Vb reaches 5000, it means that the secondary transfer roller is near the end of its service life. At such a time, 'white spots' trouble tends to occur in the images.
		Precautions for use	The ATVC results must be displayed correctly. Back up the data to ensure that the data is not lost when the power is turned off and on (sleep resetting).
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-7000 to 0
		Unit	V
		Appropriate guideline	Under 5000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	An alarm alerts the user when Vb exceeds the upper limit of 5000.
TC-ACVCI	1	Title	Display of Vb for ITB cleaning bias roller (upstream) ACVC
		Purpose of use	To check the base voltage Vb calculated by ITB cleaning bias roller (upstream) (reverse bias direction) ACVC.
		When used	When forecasting the end of the service life of the ITB cleaning fur brush (upstream) When Vb reaches 3300, it means that the ITB cleaning bias roller (upstream) is near the end of its service life. At such a time, 'vertical streaks', etc. caused by cleaning trouble tend to occur.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 3000
		Unit	V
		Appropriate guideline	2500 to 3400
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	An alarm alerts the user when Vb exceeds the upper limit of 3300.

COPIER > DISPLAY > HV-ST5			
Item	Level	Description	
TC-ACVC2	1	Title	Display of Vb for ITB cleaning bias roller (downstream) ACVC
		Purpose of use	To check the base voltage Vb calculated by ITB cleaning bias roller (downstream) (forward bias direction) ACVC.
		When used	When forecasting the end of the service life of the ITB cleaning fur brush (downstream) When Vb reaches 3300, it means that the ITB cleaning bias roller (downstream) is near the end of its service life. At such a time, 'vertical streaks', etc. caused by cleaning trouble tend to occur.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-3000 to 0
		Unit	V
		Appropriate guideline	500 to 2500
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	An alarm alerts the user when Vb exceeds the upper limit of 3300.
1ATVCENV	1	Title	Display of absolute moisture amount when primary transfer ATVC is executed
		Purpose of use	To check the amount of absolute moisture when primary transfer ATVC is executed
		When used	When forecasting the service life of the primary transfer roller (KHL supported)
		Precautions for use	This item is used when analyzing the causes of trouble. The setting must be changed in accordance with the instructions given by the Quality Support department.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 99
		Unit	g
		Appropriate guideline	0 to 40
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
2ATVCENV	1	Title	Display of absolute moisture amount when secondary transfer ATVC is executed
		Purpose of use	To check the amount of absolute moisture when secondary transfer ATVC is executed
		When used	When forecasting the service life of the secondary transfer roller (KHL supported)
		Precautions for use	This item is used when analyzing the causes of trouble. The setting must be changed in accordance with the instructions given by the Quality Support department.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 99
		Unit	g
		Appropriate guideline	0 to 40
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
ACVC-ENV	1	Title	Display of absolute moisture amount when ITB cleaning ACVC is executed
		Purpose of use	To check the amount of absolute moisture when ITB cleaning ACVC is executed
		When used	When forecasting the service life of the ITB cleaning fur brush (KHL supported)
		Precautions for use	This item is used when analyzing the causes of trouble. The setting must be changed in accordance with the instructions given by the Quality Support department.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 99
		Unit	g
		Appropriate guideline	0 to 40
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > DISPLAY > HV-ST5			
Item	Level	Description	
PR-GRI-Y	1	Title	Yellow primary charger grid voltage
		Purpose of use	To check the primary charger grid voltage (Yellow).
		When used	When checking whether the primary charger grid voltage is to blame in cases where density system image trouble has occurred
		Precautions for use	After potential control (by executing service mode > FUNCTION > DPC), compare the potential with the drum dark area potential (V00), and ensure that the value is within the V00 + 0 to 200V range. If it is not within this range, primary high voltage trouble or other trouble in the primary charger or drum trouble may be to blame. Reference should be made to the action to take for potential control error E061-0x11/0x12.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 1200
		Unit	V
		Appropriate guideline	Drum dark area potential (V00) + 0 to 200V
		Related service modes	The drum dark area potential (V00) can be checked by accessing DISPLAY > D-POT > V00-Y/M/C/K.
		Additional description and notes	-
PR-GRI-M	1	Title	Magenta primary charger grid voltage
		Purpose of use	To check the primary charger grid voltage (Magenta).
		When used	It is used to compare the voltage with the drum dark area voltage (VO0) to ensure that it is within the VO0 + 0 to 200V range. If it is not within this range, primary high voltage trouble or other trouble in the primary charger or drum trouble may be to blame.
		Precautions for use	After controlling the electric potential (service mode > FUNCTION > DPC), compare the voltage with the drum dark area voltage (VO0) to ensure that it is within the VO0 + 0 to 200V range.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 1200
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	The DISPLAY > HV-ST5 > PR-GRI-Y/M/C/K values must be within DISPLAY > D-POT > VO0-Y/M/C/K + 0 to 200V.
		Additional description and notes	-
PR-GRI-C	1	Title	Cyan primary charger grid voltage
		Purpose of use	To check the primary charger grid voltage (Cyan).
		When used	It is used to compare the voltage with the drum dark area voltage (VO0) to ensure that it is within the VO0 + 0 to 200V range. If it is not within this range, primary high voltage trouble or other trouble in the primary charger or drum trouble may be to blame.
		Precautions for use	After controlling the electric potential (service mode > FUNCTION > DPC), compare the voltage with the drum dark area voltage (VO0) to ensure that it is within the VO0 + 0 to 200V range.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 1200
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
PR-GRI-K	1	Title	Black primary charger grid voltage
		Purpose of use	To check the primary charger grid voltage (Black).
		When used	It is used to compare the voltage with the drum dark area voltage (VO0) to ensure that it is within the VO0 + 0 to 200V range. If it is not within this range, primary high voltage trouble or other trouble in the primary charger or drum trouble may be to blame.
		Precautions for use	After controlling the electric potential (service mode > FUNCTION > DPC), compare the voltage with the drum dark area voltage (VO0) to ensure that it is within the VO0 + 0 to 200V range.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 1200
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	The DISPLAY > HV-ST5 > PR-GRI-Y/M/C/K values must be within DISPLAY > D-POT > VO0-Y/M/C/K + 0 to 200V.
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > DISPLAY > HV-ST5			
Item	Level	Description	
2TC-TGI	2	Title	Current setting of secondary transfer cleaning bias roller
		Purpose of use	To check the current setting of the secondary transfer cleaning bias roller.
		When used	This is used when secondary transfer cleaning errors have occurred (dirt on back sides of paper). This item is used when analyzing the causes of trouble. The setting must be changed in accordance with the instructions given by the Quality Support department.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 50
		Unit	uA
		Appropriate guideline	10 to 20
		Related service modes	-
2ATVC-F1	2	Title	Target current during secondary transfer ATVC
		Purpose of use	To check the target current during secondary transfer ATVC.
		When used	For use when 'mottling image', 'white spots' or 'leopard spots' trouble tends to occur in the images. This item is used when analyzing the causes of trouble. The setting must be changed in accordance with the instructions given by the Quality Support department.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-70 to 0
		Unit	uA
		Appropriate guideline	-45 to -60
		Related service modes	-
BCLI-TGI	2	Title	Target current (upstream) during ITB cleaning ACVC
		Purpose of use	To check the target current (upstream) during ITB cleaning ACVC.
		When used	For use when checking the setting in cases where ITB cleaning trouble (vertical streaks) has occurred. This item is used when analyzing the causes of trouble. The setting must be changed in accordance with the instructions given by the Quality Support department.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to -75
		Unit	uA
		Appropriate guideline	-45 to -70
		Related service modes	-
BCLTGV1	2	Title	Setting of ITB cleaning DC voltage (upstream) output last
		Purpose of use	To check the setting of the ITB cleaning DC voltage (upstream) output last.
		When used	For use as a means of checking the setting when ITB cleaning trouble (vertical streaks) has occurred. This item is used when analyzing the causes of trouble. The setting must be changed in accordance with the instructions given by the Quality Support department.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 214
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-1500 to -3300
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	-		

COPIER > DISPLAY > HV-STS			
Item	Level	Description	
BCLTGV2	2	Title	Output of ITB cleaning DC voltage (downstream) output last
		Purpose of use	To check the current setting for the target current (downstream) during ITB cleaning ACVC.
		When used	For use as a means of checking the setting when ITB cleaning trouble (vertical streaks) has occurred. This item is used when analyzing the causes of trouble. The setting must be changed in accordance with the instructions given by the Quality Support department.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 70
		Unit	uA
		Appropriate guideline	1000 to 2500
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
BGL2-TGF	2	Title	Target current (downstream) during ITB cleaning ACVC
		Purpose of use	To check the current setting for the target current (downstream) during ITB cleaning ACVC.
		When used	For use as a means of checking the setting when ITB cleaning trouble (vertical streaks) has occurred. This item is used when analyzing the causes of trouble. The setting must be changed in accordance with the instructions given by the Quality Support department.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 70
		Unit	uA
		Appropriate guideline	10 to 20
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

18.2.1.8 COPIER > DISPLAY > CCD

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

T-18-6

COPIER > DISPLAY > CCD			
Item	Level	Description	
TARGET-B	2	Title	Target value for Blue shading
		Purpose of use	To check the target value for Blue shading.
		When used	When the reader controller PCB has been replaced, when there is trouble in the scanned images
		Precautions for use	If the displayed value continues to be 0 (minimum) or FFFF (maximum), trouble in the reader controller PCB may be to blame.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	512 to 2047
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
TARGET-G	2	Title	Target value for Green shading
		Purpose of use	To check the target value for the Green shading.
		When used	When the reader controller PCB has been replaced, when there is trouble in the scanned images
		Precautions for use	If the displayed value continues to be 0 (minimum) or FFFF (maximum), trouble in the reader controller PCB may be to blame.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	512 to 2047
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > DISPLAY > CCD			
Item	Level	Description	
TARGET-R	2	Title	Target value for Red shading
		Purpose of use	To check the target value for the Red shading.
		When used	When the reader controller PCB has been replaced, when there is trouble in the scanned images
		Precautions for use	If the displayed value continues to be 0 (minimum) or FFFF (maximum), trouble in the reader controller PCB may be to blame.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	512 to 2047
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
GAIN-OB	2	Title	Blue gain level adjustment value (for color) for odd-numbered bits of CCD
		Purpose of use	To check the Blue gain level adjustment value (for color) for the odd-numbered bits of the CCD.
		When used	When the reader controller PCB has been replaced, when there is trouble in the scanned images
		Precautions for use	If the displayed value continues to be 246, trouble in the CCD unit or reader controller PCB may be to blame.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	16 to 246
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
GAIN-OG	2	Title	Green gain level adjustment value (for color) for odd-numbered bits of CCD
		Purpose of use	To check the Green gain level adjustment value (for color) for the odd-numbered bits of the CCD.
		When used	When the reader controller PCB has been replaced, when there is trouble in the scanned images
		Precautions for use	If the displayed value continues to be 246, trouble in the CCD unit or reader controller PCB may be to blame.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	16 to 246
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
GAIN-OR	2	Title	Red gain level adjustment value (for color) for odd-numbered bits of CCD
		Purpose of use	To check the Red gain level adjustment value (for color) for the odd-numbered bits of the CCD.
		When used	When the reader controller PCB has been replaced, when there is trouble in the scanned images
		Precautions for use	If the displayed value continues to be 246, trouble in the CCD unit or reader controller PCB may be to blame.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	16 to 246
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
GAIN-EB	2	Title	Blue gain level adjustment value (for color) for even-numbered bits of CCD
		Purpose of use	To check the Blue gain level adjustment value (for color) for the even-numbered bits of the CCD.
		When used	When the reader controller PCB has been replaced, when there is trouble in the scanned images
		Precautions for use	If the displayed value continues to be 246, trouble in the CCD unit or reader controller PCB may be to blame.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	16 to 246
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > DISPLAY > CCD			
Item	Level	Description	
GAIN-EG	2	Title	Green gain level adjustment value (for color) for even-numbered bits of CCD
		Purpose of use	To check the Green gain level adjustment value (for color) for the even-numbered bits of the CCD.
		When used	When the reader controller PCB has been replaced, when the scanned images are faulty
		Precautions for use	If the displayed value continues to be 246, trouble in the CCD unit or reader controller PCB may be to blame.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	16 to 246
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
GAIN-ER	2	Title	Red gain level adjustment value (for color) for even-numbered bits of CCD
		Purpose of use	To check the Red gain level adjustment value (for color) for the even-numbered bits of the CCD.
		When used	When the reader controller PCB has been replaced, when the scanned images are faulty
		Precautions for use	If the displayed value continues to be 246, trouble in the CCD unit or reader controller PCB may be to blame.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	16 to 246
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

18.2.1.9 COPIER > DISPLAY > DPOT

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

T-18-7

COPIER > DISPLAY > DPOT			
Item	Level	Description	
DPOT-Y	1	Title	Electric potential on surface of Yellow photosensitive drum
		Purpose of use	To check the potential of the Yellow drum at the present point in time; to check the value after calculating the potential offset.
		When used	If there are problems with the density or fogging, this item can be used to find out whether the potential is to blame.
		Precautions for use	A '-' value which is not near 0 must be displayed during printing operations.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-1023 to 1023
		Unit	V
		Appropriate guideline	Near 0 (-50V to +50V) in standby mode
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	When updating the display, operation must be moved first to a different screen and then back to this screen. (The potential of the timing at which operation was moved to this screen is displayed.)
DPOT-M	1	Title	Potential on surface of Magenta photosensitive drum
		Purpose of use	To check the potential of the Magenta drum at the present point in time; to check the value after calculating the potential offset.
		When used	If there are problems with the density or fogging, this item can be used to find out whether the potential is to blame.
		Precautions for use	A '-' value which is not near 0 must be displayed during printing operations.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-1023 to 1023
		Unit	V
		Appropriate guideline	Near 0 (-50V to +50V) in standby mode
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	When updating the display, operation must be moved first to a different screen and then back to this screen. (The potential of the timing at which operation was moved to this screen is displayed.)

COPIER > DISPLAY > DPOT			
Item	Level	Description	
DPOT-C	1	Title	Potential on surface of Cyan photosensitive drum
		Purpose of use	To check the potential of the Cyan drum at the present point in time; to check the value after calculating the potential offset.
		When used	If there are problems with the density or fogging, this item can be used to find out whether the potential is to blame.
		Precautions for use	A '-' value which is not near 0 must be displayed during printing operations.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-1023 to 1023
		Unit	V
		Appropriate guideline	Near 0 (-50V to +50V) in standby mode
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	When updating the display, operation must be moved first to a different screen and then back to this screen. (The potential of the timing at which operation was moved to this screen is displayed.)
DPOT-K	1	Title	Electric potential on surface of Black photosensitive drum
		Purpose of use	To check the potential of the Black drum at the present point in time; to check the value after calculating the potential offset.
		When used	If there are problems with the density or fogging, this item can be used to find out whether the potential is to blame.
		Precautions for use	A '-' value which is not near 0 must be displayed during printing operations.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-1023 to 1023
		Unit	V
		Appropriate guideline	Near 0 (-50V to +50V) in standby mode
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	When updating the display, operation must be moved first to a different screen and then back to this screen. (The potential of the timing at which operation was moved to this screen is displayed.)
V00-Y	1	Title	Yellow measurement value with 00 laser output
		Purpose of use	To check the value measured for the Yellow when the laser output is 00 during potential control.
		When used	This item makes it possible to check whether the potential control is to blame when the image density is abnormal. By checking the potential at a laser power of 00H, 40H, 80H, C0H and FFH, whether the potential sensor, drum or charger is abnormal can be inferred.
		Precautions for use	The value must change when potential control (service mode > COPIER > FUNCTION > DPC) is performed.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 1023
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	V00 < V40 < V80 < VC0 < VFF The difference between V00 and VFF must be 250V or more.
		Related service modes	The DISPLAY > HV-ST5 > PR-GRI-Y/M/C/K values must be within DISPLAY > D-POT > V00-Y/M/C/K + 0 to 200V.
		Additional description and notes	-
V00-M	1	Title	Magenta measurement value with 00 laser output
		Purpose of use	To check the value measured for the Magenta when the laser output is 00 during potential control.
		When used	This item makes it possible to check whether the potential control is to blame when the image density is abnormal. By checking the potential at a laser power of 00H, 40H, 80H, C0H and FFH, whether the potential sensor, drum or charger is abnormal can be inferred.
		Precautions for use	The value must change when potential control (service mode > COPIER > FUNCTION > DPC) is performed.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 1023
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	V00 < V40 < V80 < VC0 < VFF The difference between V00 and VFF must be 250V or more.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	The DISPLAY > HV-ST5 > PR-GRI-Y/M/C/K values must be within DISPLAY > D-POT > V00-Y/M/C/K + 0 to 200V.

COPIER > DISPLAY > DPOT			
Item	Level	Description	
V00-C	1	Title	Cyan measurement value with 00 laser output
		Purpose of use	To check the value measured for the Cyan when the laser output is 00 during potential control.
		When used	This item makes it possible to check whether the potential control is to blame when the image density is abnormal. By checking the potential at a laser power of 00H, 40H, 80H, C0H and FFH, whether the potential sensor, drum or charger is abnormal can be inferred.
		Precautions for use	The value must change when potential control (service mode > COPIER > FUNCTION > DPC) is performed.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 1023
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	V00 < V40 < V80 < VC0 < VFF The difference between V00 and VFF must be 250V or more.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	The DISPLAY > HV-ST5 > PR-GRI-Y/M/C/K values must be within DISPLAY > D-POT > V00-Y/M/C/K + 0 to 200V.
V00-K	1	Title	Black measurement value with 00 laser output or value measured by black-and-white copier
		Purpose of use	To check the value measured for the Black when the laser output is 00 during potential control.
		When used	This item makes it possible to check whether the potential control is to blame when the image density is abnormal. By checking the potential at a laser power of 00H, 40H, 80H, C0H and FFH, whether the potential sensor, drum or charger is abnormal can be inferred.
		Precautions for use	The value must change when potential control (service mode > COPIER > FUNCTION > DPC) is performed.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 1023
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	V00 < V40 < V80 < VC0 < VFF The difference between V00 and VFF must be 250V or more.
		Related service modes	The DISPLAY > HV-ST5 > PR-GRI-Y/M/C/K values must be within DISPLAY > D-POT > V00-Y/M/C/K + 0 to 200V.
		Additional description and notes	-
VFF-Y	1	Title	Yellow measurement value with FF laser output
		Purpose of use	To check the value measured for the Yellow when the laser output is FF during potential control.
		When used	If there are problems with the density or fogging, this item can be used to find out whether the potential is to blame.
		Precautions for use	The value must change when potential control (service mode > COPIER > FUNCTION > DPC) is performed.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 1023
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	V00 < V40 < V80 < VC0 < VFF The difference between V00 and VFF must be 250V or more.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
VFF-M	1	Title	Magenta measurement value with FF laser output
		Purpose of use	To check the value measured for the Magenta when the laser output is FF during potential control.
		When used	If there are problems with the density or fogging, this item can be used to find out whether the potential is to blame.
		Precautions for use	The value must change when potential control (service mode > COPIER > FUNCTION > DPC) is performed.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 1023
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	V00 < V40 < V80 < VC0 < VFF The difference between V00 and VFF must be 250V or more.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > DISPLAY > DPOT			
Item	Level	Description	
VFF-C	1	Title	Cyan measurement value with FF laser output
		Purpose of use	To check the value measured for the Cyan when the laser output is FF during potential control.
		When used	If there are problems with the density or fogging, this item can be used to find out whether the potential is to blame.
		Precautions for use	The value must change when potential control (service mode > COPIER > FUNCTION > DPC) is performed.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 1023
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	V00 < V40 < V80 < VC0 < VFF The difference between V00 and VFF must be 250V or more.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
VFF-K	1	Title	Black measurement value with FF laser output or value measured by black-and-white copier
		Purpose of use	To check the value measured for the Black when the laser output is FF during potential control.
		When used	If there are problems with the density or fogging, this item can be used to find out whether the potential is to blame.
		Precautions for use	The value must change when potential control (service mode > COPIER > FUNCTION > DPC) is performed.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 1023
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	V00 < V40 < V80 < VC0 < VFF The difference between V00 and VFF must be 250V or more.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
VG-Y	2	Title	Grid bias Yellow measurement value
		Purpose of use	To check the results displayed for the grid bias of potential control for the Yellow.
		When used	When checking whether the primary charger grid voltage is to blame in cases where density system image trouble has occurred
		Precautions for use	After potential control (by executing service mode > FUNCTION > DPC), compare the potential with the drum dark area potential (V00), and ensure that the value is within the V00 + 0 to 200V range. If it is not within this range, primary high voltage trouble or other trouble in the primary charger or drum trouble may be to blame. Reference should be made to the action to take for potential control error E061-0x11/0x12.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-1000 to 0
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	Drum dark area electric potential (V00) + 0 to 200V
		Related service modes	The drum dark area electric potential (V00) value can be checked by accessing DISPLAY > D-POT > V00-Y/M/C/K.
		Additional description and notes	When the primary charger grid voltage exceeds the lower or upper limit, the electric potential control error E061-0x11 or 0x12 occurs.
VG-M	2	Title	Grid bias Magenta measurement value
		Purpose of use	To check the results displayed for the grid bias of potential control for the Magenta.
		When used	When finding trouble in the areas around the drum by the potential control results.
		Precautions for use	Check whether a value commensurate with the potential control results is displayed.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-1000 to 0
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
VG-C	2	Title	Grid bias Cyan measurement value
		Purpose of use	To check the results displayed for the grid bias of potential control for the Cyan.
		When used	When finding trouble in the areas around the drum by the potential control results.
		Precautions for use	Check whether a value commensurate with the potential control results is displayed.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-1000 to 0
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > DISPLAY > DPOT			
Item	Level	Description	
VG-K	2	Title	Grid bias Black measurement value or value measured by black-and-white copier
		Purpose of use	To check the results displayed for the grid bias of potential control for the Black.
		When used	When finding trouble in the areas around the drum by the potential control results.
		Precautions for use	Check whether a value commensurate with the potential control results is displayed.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-1000 to 0
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
VCONT-Y	2	Title	Current Yellow value for target contrast potential
		Purpose of use	To check the development contrast setting.
		When used	When displaying the development contrast setting in cases where images with an abnormal density have been produced in the field.
		Precautions for use	High voltage or potential sensor trouble is to blame when density trouble has occurred in a regular operating range of 150 to 400.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 400
		Unit	V
		Appropriate guideline	150 to 400
		Related service modes	-
VCONT-M	2	Title	Current Magenta value for target contrast potential
		Purpose of use	To check the development contrast setting.
		When used	When displaying the development contrast setting in cases where images with an abnormal density have been produced in the field.
		Precautions for use	High voltage or potential sensor trouble is to blame when density trouble has occurred in a regular operating range of 150 to 400.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 400
		Unit	V
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
VCONT-C	2	Title	Current Cyan value for target contrast potential
		Purpose of use	To check the development contrast setting.
		When used	When displaying the development contrast setting in cases where images with an abnormal density have been produced in the field.
		Precautions for use	High voltage or potential sensor trouble is to blame when density trouble has occurred in a regular operating range of 150 to 400.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 400
		Unit	V
		Appropriate guideline	150 to 400
		Related service modes	-
VCONT-K	2	Title	Current Black value for target contrast potential
		Purpose of use	To check the development contrast setting.
		When used	When displaying the development contrast setting in cases where images with an abnormal density have been produced in the field.
		Precautions for use	High voltage or electric potential sensor trouble is to blame when density trouble has occurred in a regular operating range of 150 to 400.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 400
		Unit	V
		Appropriate guideline	150 to 400
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	-		

COPIER > DISPLAY > DPOT			
Item	Level	Description	
VBACK-Y	2	Title	Current Yellow value for defogging electric potential
		Purpose of use	To check the setting for the difference between the Yellow development DC bias and charging potential.
		When used	When displaying the VBACK setting in cases where fogged or otherwise abnormal images have been produced in the field.
		Precautions for use	High-voltage or potential sensor trouble is identified if fogging, etc. has occurred in the normal usage range of 150 to 250.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	V
		Appropriate guideline	150 to 250 (default: 200)
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	The value factoring in the adjustment value used to correct color fogging (fogging correction) which is accessed from the user mode followed by the administrator mode is set as the fogging correction value.
VBACK-M	2	Title	Current Magenta value for defogging potential
		Purpose of use	To check the setting for the difference between the Magenta development DC bias and charging potential.
		When used	When displaying the VBACK setting in cases where fogged or otherwise abnormal images have been produced in the field.
		Precautions for use	High-voltage or potential sensor trouble is identified if fogging, etc. has occurred in the normal usage range of 150 to 250.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	V
		Appropriate guideline	150 to 250 (default: 200)
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	The value factoring in the adjustment value used to correct color fogging (fogging correction) which is accessed from the user mode followed by the administrator mode is set as the fogging correction value.
VBACK-C	2	Title	Current Cyan value for defogging potential
		Purpose of use	To check the setting for the difference between the Cyan development DC bias and charging potential.
		When used	When displaying the VBACK setting in cases where fogged or otherwise abnormal images have been produced in the field.
		Precautions for use	High-voltage or potential sensor trouble is identified if fogging, etc. has occurred in the normal usage range of 150 to 250.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	V
		Appropriate guideline	150 to 250 (default: 200)
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	The value factoring in the adjustment value used to correct color fogging (fogging correction) which is accessed from the user mode followed by the administrator mode is set as the fogging correction value.
VBACK-K	2	Title	Current Black value for defogging potential
		Purpose of use	To check the setting for the difference between the Black development DC bias and charging potential.
		When used	When displaying the VBACK setting in cases where fogged or otherwise abnormal images have been produced in the field.
		Precautions for use	High-voltage or potential sensor trouble is identified if fogging, etc. has occurred in the normal usage range of 150 to 250.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	V
		Appropriate guideline	150 to 250 (default: 200)
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	The value factoring in the adjustment value used to correct color fogging (fogging correction) which is accessed from the user mode followed by the administrator mode is set as the fogging correction value.

COPIER > DISPLAY > DPOT			
Item	Level	Description	
2TR-PPR	2	Title	Output value of paper sharing voltage for secondary transfer DC voltage output last
		Purpose of use	To check the output value of the paper sharing voltage for the secondary transfer DC voltage which was output last.
		When used	When transfer trouble inherent to the media has occurred
		Precautions for use	The proper range may be exceeded if the media settings are incorrect.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 5000
		Unit	V
		Appropriate guideline	This value differs for each media.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
2TR-BASE	2	Title	Output value of reference voltage for secondary transfer DC voltage output last
		Purpose of use	To check the output value of the reference voltage for the secondary transfer DC voltage which was output last.
		When used	When transfer trouble inherent to the media has occurred
		Precautions for use	The proper range may be exceeded if the media settings are incorrect.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 5000
		Unit	V
		Appropriate guideline	1000 to 5000V
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
1TR-DC-Y	2	Title	Output value of primary transfer DC voltage (Yellow) output last
		Purpose of use	To check the output value of the primary transfer DC voltage (Yellow) which was output last.
		When used	When transfer trouble caused by primary transfer has occurred
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 5000
		Unit	V
		Appropriate guideline	1000 to 5000V
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
1TR-DC-M	2	Title	Output value of primary transfer DC voltage (Magenta) output last
		Purpose of use	To check the output value of the primary transfer DC voltage (Magenta) which was output last.
		When used	When transfer trouble caused by primary transfer has occurred
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 5000
		Unit	V
		Appropriate guideline	1000 to 5000V
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
1TR-DC-C	2	Title	Output value of primary transfer DC voltage (Cyan) output last
		Purpose of use	To check the output value of the primary transfer DC voltage (Cyan) which was output last.
		When used	When transfer trouble caused by primary transfer has occurred
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 5000
		Unit	V
		Appropriate guideline	1000 to 5000V
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > DISPLAY > DPOT			
Item	Level	Description	
ITR-DC-K	2	Title	Output value of primary transfer DC voltage (Black) output last
		Purpose of use	To check the output value of the primary transfer DC voltage (Black) which was output last.
		When used	When transfer trouble caused by primary transfer has occurred
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 5000
		Unit	V
		Appropriate guideline	1000 to 5000V
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
LPWR-Y	2	Title	Display of Yellow/Magenta/Cyan/Black laser power values (potential control results) which will be used as VL target potential
		Purpose of use	To check for each color laser power level which will be used as the VL target potential through potential control.
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	When checking the display in cases where the density is low A display of FF when the density is low indicates that the drum is near the end of its service life.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	00 to FF (hexadecimal display)
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
LPWR-M	2	Title	Display of Yellow/Magenta/Cyan/Black laser power values (potential control results) which will be used as VL target potential
		Purpose of use	To check for each color laser power level which will be used as the VL target electric potential for the potential control.
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	When checking the display in cases where the density is low A display of FF when the density is low indicates that the drum is near the end of its service life.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	00 to FF (hexadecimal display)
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
LPWR-C	2	Title	Display of Yellow/Magenta/Cyan/Black laser power values (potential control results) which will be used as VL target potential
		Purpose of use	When checking the display in cases where the density is low A display of FF when the density is low indicates that the drum is near the end of its service life.
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	00 to FF (hexadecimal display)
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
LPWR-K	2	Title	When checking the display in cases where the density is low A display of FF when the density is low indicates that the drum is near the end of its service life.
		Purpose of use	To check for each color laser power level which will be used as the VL target potential for the potential control.
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	This item is used when analyzing the causes of trouble. The setting must be changed in accordance with the instructions given by the Quality Support department.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > DISPLAY > DPOT			
Item	Level	Description	
PVCONT-Y	2	Title	Current value for target patch contrast potential (Yellow)
		Purpose of use	To check the current value for the target patch contrast potential (Yellow).
		When used	This item is used when analyzing the causes of trouble. The setting must be changed in accordance with the instructions given by the Quality Support department. When displaying the target patch contrast potential and checking whether the supply is being controlled properly if image density trouble has occurred in the field.
		Precautions for use	If the target patch contrast is the prescribed value, investigate other causes.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 255
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	20 to 60
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
PVCONT-M	2	Title	Current value for target patch contrast potential (Magenta)
		Purpose of use	To check the current value for the target patch contrast potential (Magenta).
		When used	This item is used when analyzing the causes of trouble. The setting must be changed in accordance with the instructions given by the Quality Support department. When displaying the target patch contrast potential and checking whether the supply is being controlled properly if image density trouble has occurred in the field.
		Precautions for use	If the target patch contrast is the prescribed value, investigate other causes.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 255
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	20 to 60
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
PVCONT-C	2	Title	Current value for target patch contrast potential (Cyan)
		Purpose of use	To check the current value for the target patch contrast potential (Cyan).
		When used	This item is used when analyzing the causes of trouble. The setting must be changed in accordance with the instructions given by the Quality Support department. When displaying the target patch contrast potential and checking whether the supply is being controlled properly if image density trouble has occurred in the field.
		Precautions for use	This item is used when analyzing the causes of trouble. The setting must be changed in accordance with the instructions given by the Quality Support department.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 255
		Unit	V
		Appropriate guideline	20 to 60
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
PVCONT-K	2	Title	Current value for target patch contrast electric potential (Black)
		Purpose of use	To check the current value for the target patch contrast potential (Black).
		When used	This item is used when analyzing the causes of trouble. The setting must be changed in accordance with the instructions given by the Quality Support department. When displaying the target patch contrast potential and checking whether the supply is being controlled properly if image density trouble has occurred in the field.
		Precautions for use	If the target patch contrast is the prescribed value, investigate other causes.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 255
		Unit	V
		Appropriate guideline	20 to 60
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > DISPLAY > DPOT			
Item	Level	Description	
P-LPW-Y	2	Title	Display of laser power level for Yellow which will be used as target patch contrast potential
		Purpose of use	To check the laser power level for the Yellow which will be used as the target patch contrast potential.
		When used	This item is used when analyzing the causes of trouble. The setting must be changed in accordance with the instructions given by the Quality Support department. When displaying the laser power level which will be used as the target patch contrast potential and checking whether the supply is being controlled properly if image density trouble has occurred in the field.
		Precautions for use	If the laser power level which will be used as the target patch contrast is the prescribed value, investigate other causes.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to FF
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	60 to FF
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
P-LPW-M	2	Title	Display of laser power level for Magenta which will be used as target patch contrast potential
		Purpose of use	To check the laser power level for the Magenta which will be used as the target patch contrast potential.
		When used	This item is used when analyzing the causes of trouble. The setting must be changed in accordance with the instructions given by the Quality Support department. When displaying the laser power level which will be used as the target patch contrast potential and checking whether the supply is being controlled properly if image density trouble has occurred in the field.
		Precautions for use	If the laser power level which will be used as the target patch contrast is the prescribed value, investigate other causes.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to FF
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	60 to FF
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
P-LPW-C	2	Title	Display of laser power level for Cyan which will be used as target patch contrast potential
		Purpose of use	To check the laser power level for the Cyan which will be used as the target patch contrast potential.
		When used	This item is used when analyzing the causes of trouble. The setting must be changed in accordance with the instructions given by the Quality Support department. When displaying the laser power level which will be used as the target patch contrast potential and checking whether the supply is being controlled properly if image density trouble has occurred in the field.
		Precautions for use	If the laser power level which will be used as the target patch contrast is the prescribed value, investigate other causes.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to FF
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	60 to FF
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
P-LPW-K	2	Title	Display of laser power level for Black which will be used as target patch contrast potential
		Purpose of use	To check the laser power level for the Black which will be used as the target patch contrast potential.
		When used	This item is used when analyzing the causes of trouble. The setting must be changed in accordance with the instructions given by the Quality Support department. When displaying the laser power level which will be used as the target patch contrast potential and checking whether the supply is being controlled properly if image density trouble has occurred in the field.
		Precautions for use	If the laser power level which will be used as the target patch contrast is the prescribed value, investigate other causes.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to FF
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	60 to FF
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > DISPLAY > DPOT			
Item	Level	Description	
VDT-Y	1	Title	Yellow dark area potential target value
		Purpose of use	To check the dark area potential target value of the Yellow during potential control.
		When used	When there is a problem with the density or fogging, it is possible to ascertain whether the potential control is working properly by comparing the potential target value to the value actually measured.
		Precautions for use	When the display value is abnormal, check the electric potential sensor offset value, and check the potential control system parts (such as the pre-exposure unit, primary charger, drum, potential sensor and HV1 circuit board).
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 1023
		Unit	V
		Appropriate guideline	500 to 900 Compare the measured value with value accessed by COPIER > DISPLAY > D-POT > V00-Y/M/C/K. The difference must be within +/-10.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	For details of the corrective action, reference should be made to the action to take for E061-0x11.
VDT-M	1	Title	Magenta dark area potential target value
		Purpose of use	To check the dark area potential target value of the Magenta during potential control.
		When used	When there is a problem with the density or fogging, it is possible to ascertain whether the potential control is working properly by comparing the potential target value to the value actually measured.
		Precautions for use	When the display value is abnormal, check the potential sensor offset value, and check the potential control system parts (such as the pre-exposure unit, primary charger, drum, potential sensor and HV1 PCB).
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 1023
		Unit	V
		Appropriate guideline	500 to 900 Compare the measured value with value accessed by COPIER > DISPLAY > D-POT > V00-Y/M/C/K. The difference must be within +/-10.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	For details of the corrective action, reference should be made to the action to take for E061-0x11.
VDT-C	1	Title	Cyan dark area potential target value
		Purpose of use	To check the dark area potential target value of the Cyan during potential control.
		When used	When there is a problem with the density or fogging, it is possible to ascertain whether the potential control is working properly by comparing the potential target value to the value actually measured.
		Precautions for use	When the display value is abnormal, check the potential sensor offset value, and check the potential control system parts (such as the pre-exposure unit, primary charger, drum, electric potential sensor and HV1 PCB).
		Appropriate guideline	500 to 900 Compare the measured value with value accessed by COPIER > DISPLAY > D-POT > V00-Y/M/C/K. The difference must be within +/-10.
		Unit	V
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
VDT-K	1	Title	Black dark area potential target value
		Purpose of use	To check the dark area potential target value of the Black during potential control.
		When used	When there is a problem with the density or fogging, it is possible to ascertain whether the potential control is working properly by comparing the potential target value to the value actually measured.
		Precautions for use	When the display value is abnormal, check the potential sensor offset value, and check the potential control system parts (such as the pre-exposure unit, primary charger, drum, potential sensor and HV1 PCB).
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Unit	V
		Appropriate guideline	500 to 900 Compare the measured value with value accessed by COPIER > DISPLAY > D-POT > V00-Y/M/C/K. The difference must be within +/-10.
		Related service modes	COPIER>ADJUST>V-CONT>EPOT-O-Y/M/C/K
		Additional description and notes	For details of the corrective action, reference should be made to the action to take for E061-0x11.

COPIER > DISPLAY > DPOT			
Item	Level	Description	
V40-Y	1	Title	Yellow measured value with laser output of 40
		Purpose of use	To check the measured Yellow value when the laser output is 40.
		When used	This item makes it possible to check whether the potential control is to blame when the image density is abnormal. By checking the potential at a laser power of 00H, 40H, 80H, C0H and FFH, whether the potential sensor, drum or charger is abnormal can be inferred.
		Precautions for use	The value must change after the potential is controlled by service mode > COPIER > FUNCTION > DPC.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 1023
		Unit	V
		Appropriate guideline	V00 < V40 < V80 < VC0 < VFF The difference between V00 and VFF must be 250V or more.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
V40-M	1	Title	Magenta measured value with laser output of 40
		Purpose of use	To check the measured Magenta value when the laser output is 40.
		When used	This item makes it possible to check whether the potential control is to blame when the image density is abnormal. By checking the potential at a laser power of 00H, 40H, 80H, C0H and FFH, whether the potential sensor, drum or charger is abnormal can be inferred.
		Precautions for use	The value must change after the potential is controlled by service mode > COPIER > FUNCTION > DPC.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 1023
		Unit	V
		Appropriate guideline	V00 < V40 < V80 < VC0 < VFF The difference between V00 and VFF must be 250V or more.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
V40-C	1	Title	Cyan measured value with laser output of 40
		Purpose of use	To check the measured Cyan value when the laser output is 40.
		When used	This item makes it possible to check whether the potential control is to blame when the image density is abnormal. By checking the potential at a laser power of 00H, 40H, 80H, C0H and FFH, whether the potential sensor, drum or charger is abnormal can be inferred.
		Precautions for use	The value must change after the potential is controlled by service mode > COPIER > FUNCTION > DPC.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 1023
		Unit	V
		Appropriate guideline	V00 < V40 < V80 < VC0 < VFF The difference between V00 and VFF must be 250V or more.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
V40-K	1	Title	Black measured value with laser output of 40
		Purpose of use	To check the measured Black value when the laser output is 40.
		When used	This item makes it possible to check whether the potential control is to blame when the image density is abnormal. By checking the potential at a laser power of 00H, 40H, 80H, C0H and FFH, whether the potential sensor, drum or charger is abnormal can be inferred.
		Precautions for use	The value must change after the potential is controlled by service mode > COPIER > FUNCTION > DPC.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 1023
		Unit	V
		Appropriate guideline	V00 < V40 < V80 < VC0 < VFF The difference between V00 and VFF must be 250V or more.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > DISPLAY > DPOT			
Item	Level	Description	
V80-Y	1	Title	Yellow measured value with laser output of 80
		Purpose of use	To check the measured Yellow value when the laser output is 80.
		When used	This item makes it possible to check whether the potential control is to blame when the image density is abnormal. By checking the potential at a laser power of 00H, 40H, 80H, C0H and FFH, whether the potential sensor, drum or charger is abnormal can be inferred.
		Precautions for use	The value must change after the potential is controlled by service mode > COPIER > FUNCTION > DPC.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 1023
		Unit	V
		Appropriate guideline	V00 < V40 < V80 < VC0 < VFF The difference between V00 and VFF must be 250V or more.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
V80-M	1	Title	Magenta measured value with laser output of 80
		Purpose of use	To check the measured Magenta value when the laser output is 80.
		When used	This item makes it possible to check whether the potential control is to blame when the image density is abnormal. By checking the potential at a laser power of 00H, 40H, 80H, C0H and FFH, whether the potential sensor, drum or charger is abnormal can be inferred.
		Precautions for use	The value must change after the potential is controlled by service mode > COPIER > FUNCTION > DPC.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 1023
		Unit	V
		Appropriate guideline	V00 < V40 < V80 < VC0 < VFF The difference between V00 and VFF must be 250V or more.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
V80-C	1	Title	Cyan measured value with laser output of 80
		Purpose of use	To check the measured Cyan value when the laser output is 80.
		When used	This item makes it possible to check whether the potential control is to blame when the image density is abnormal. By checking the potential at a laser power of 00H, 40H, 80H, C0H and FFH, whether the potential sensor, drum or charger is abnormal can be inferred.
		Precautions for use	The value must change after the potential is controlled by service mode > COPIER > FUNCTION > DPC.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 1023
		Unit	V
		Appropriate guideline	V00 < V40 < V80 < VC0 < VFF The difference between V00 and VFF must be 250V or more.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
V80-K	1	Title	Black measured value with laser output of 80
		Purpose of use	To check the measured Black value when the laser output is 80.
		When used	This item makes it possible to check whether the potential control is to blame when the image density is abnormal. By checking the potential at a laser power of 00H, 40H, 80H, C0H and FFH, whether the potential sensor, drum or charger is abnormal can be inferred.
		Precautions for use	The value must change after the potential is controlled by service mode > COPIER > FUNCTION > DPC.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 1023
		Unit	V
		Appropriate guideline	V00 < V40 < V80 < VC0 < VFF The difference between V00 and VFF must be 250V or more.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > DISPLAY > DPOT			
Item	Level	Description	
VC0-Y	1	Title	Yellow measured value with laser output of C0
		Purpose of use	To check the measured Yellow value when the laser output is C0.
		When used	This item makes it possible to check whether the potential control is to blame when the image density is abnormal. By checking the potential at a laser power of 00H, 40H, 80H, C0H and FFH, whether the potential sensor, drum or charger is abnormal can be inferred.
		Precautions for use	The value must change after the potential is controlled by service mode > COPIER > FUNCTION > DPC.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 1023
		Unit	V
		Appropriate guideline	V00 < V40 < V80 < VC0 < VFF The difference between V00 and VFF must be 250V or more.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
VC0-M	1	Title	Magenta measured value with laser output of C0
		Purpose of use	To check the measured Magenta value when the laser output is C0.
		When used	This item makes it possible to check whether the potential control is to blame when the image density is abnormal. By checking the potential at a laser power of 00H, 40H, 80H, C0H and FFH, whether the potential sensor, drum or charger is abnormal can be inferred.
		Precautions for use	The value must change after the potential is controlled by service mode > COPIER > FUNCTION > DPC.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 1023
		Unit	V
		Appropriate guideline	V00 < V40 < V80 < VC0 < VFF The difference between V00 and VFF must be 250V or more.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
VC0-C	1	Title	Cyan measured value with laser output of C0
		Purpose of use	To check the measured Cyan value when the laser output is C0.
		When used	This item makes it possible to check whether the potential control is to blame when the image density is abnormal. By checking the potential at a laser power of 00H, 40H, 80H, C0H and FFH, whether the potential sensor, drum or charger is abnormal can be inferred.
		Precautions for use	The value must change after the potential is controlled by service mode > COPIER > FUNCTION > DPC.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 1023
		Unit	V
		Appropriate guideline	V00 < V40 < V80 < VC0 < VFF The difference between V00 and VFF must be 250V or more.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
VC0-K	1	Title	Black measured value with laser output of C0
		Purpose of use	To check the measured Black value when the laser output is C0.
		When used	This item makes it possible to check whether the potential control is to blame when the image density is abnormal. By checking the potential at a laser power of 00H, 40H, 80H, C0H and FFH, whether the potential sensor, drum or charger is abnormal can be inferred.
		Precautions for use	The value must change after the potential is controlled by service mode > COPIER > FUNCTION > DPC.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 1023
		Unit	V
		Appropriate guideline	V00 < V40 < V80 < VC0 < VFF The difference between V00 and VFF must be 250V or more.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > DISPLAY > DPOT			
Item	Level	Description	
VRATE-Y	1	Title	Display of Vcont(Y) determined by PASCAL-Dmax
		Purpose of use	To check Vcont(Y) determined by Dmax PASCAL.
		When used	Check the value of this item when the density is not appropriate. This machine is not working properly if 100 or more is shown as the display value even though the density (high-density area) is high or a value under 100 is shown as the display value even though the density (high-density area) is low. At times like this, trouble in the reader or color sensors may be to blame.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 255
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	70 to 130 (default: 100)
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
VRATE-M	1	Title	Display of Vcont(M) determined by Dmax PASCAL
		Purpose of use	To check Vcont(M) determined by Dmax PASCAL.
		When used	Check the value of this item when the density is not appropriate. This machine is not working properly if 100 or more is shown as the display value even though the density (high-density area) is high or a value under 100 is shown as the display value even though the density (high-density area) is low. At times like this, trouble in the reader or color sensors may be to blame.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 255
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	70 to 130 (default: 100)
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
VRATE-C	1	Title	Display of Vcont(C) determined by Dmax PASCAL
		Purpose of use	To check Vcont(C) determined by Dmax PASCAL.
		When used	Check the value of this item when the density is not appropriate. This machine is not working properly if 100 or more is shown as the display value even though the density (high-density area) is high or a value under 100 is shown as the display value even though the density (high-density area) is low. At times like this, trouble in the reader or color sensors may be to blame.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 255
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	70 to 130 (default: 100)
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
VRATE-K	1	Title	Display of Vcont(K) determined by Dmax PASCAL
		Purpose of use	To check Vcont(K) determined by Dmax PASCAL.
		When used	Check the value of this item when the density is not appropriate. This machine is not working properly if 100 or more is shown as the display value even though the density (high-density area) is high or a value under 100 is shown as the display value even though the density (high-density area) is low. At times like this, trouble in the reader or color sensors may be to blame.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 255
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	70 to 130 (default: 100)
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

18.2.1.10 COPIER > DISPLAY > DENS

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

COPIER > DISPLAY > DENS			
Item	Level	Description	
DENS-Y	1	Title	Calculated value of developer density
		Purpose of use	To check the calculated value of the developer density (how far it deviates from the target value is indicated as a percentage). To register the Yellow drum patch sensor gain. Please advise the purpose of using this mode (when it is checked).
		When used	When the density fluctuates significantly, when the density does not stabilize even after implementing gradation correction Error E020 results when an abnormal value (-/+5%) is displayed. Deterioration of the developer, dirt on the drum patch sensor window or failure of the patch sensor, etc. may be to blame.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	%
		Appropriate guideline	-3.0 to 3.0%
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	The value is updated when toner is supplied after the main power switch has been set to ON.
DENS-M	1	Title	Calculated value of developer density
		Purpose of use	To check the calculated value of the developer density (how far it deviates from the target value is indicated as a percentage).
		When used	When the density fluctuates significantly, when the density does not stabilize even after implementing gradation correction Error E020 results when an abnormal value (-/+5%) is displayed. Deterioration of the developer, dirt on the drum patch sensor window or failure of the patch sensor, etc. may be to blame.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	%
		Appropriate guideline	-2.0 to 4.0%
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	The value is updated when toner is supplied after the main power switch has been set to ON.
DENS-C	1	Title	Calculated value of developer density
		Purpose of use	To check the calculated value of the developer density (how far it deviates from the target value is indicated as a percentage).
		When used	When the density fluctuates significantly, when the density does not stabilize even after implementing gradation correction Error E020 results when an abnormal value (-/+5%) is displayed. Deterioration of the developer, dirt on the drum patch sensor window or failure of the patch sensor, etc. may be to blame.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	%
		Appropriate guideline	-2.0 to 4.0%
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	The value is updated when toner is supplied after the main power switch has been set to ON.
DENS-K	1	Title	Calculated value of developer density
		Purpose of use	To check the calculated value of the developer density (how far it deviates from the target value is indicated as a percentage).
		When used	When the density fluctuates significantly, when the density does not stabilize even after implementing gradation correction Error E020 results when an abnormal value (-/+5%) is displayed. Deterioration of the developer, dirt on the drum patch sensor window or failure of the patch sensor, etc. may be to blame.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	%
		Appropriate guideline	-2.0 to 4.0%
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	The value is updated when toner is supplied after the main power switch has been set to ON.

COPIER > DISPLAY > DENS			
Item	Level	Description	
DENS-S-Y	2	Title	Patch density level (Yellow) created during ATR control (equivalent to NN environment value)
		Purpose of use	To check the density level (Yellow) at which patches are detected in the sample images which are created during ATR control.
		When used	This item is used when analyzing the causes of trouble. It must be used in accordance with the instructions given by the Quality Support department.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	300 to 500
		Related service modes	-
DENS-S-M	2	Title	Patch density level (Magenta) created during ATR control (equivalent to NN environment value)
		Purpose of use	To check the density level (Magenta) at which patches are detected in the sample images which are created during ATR control.
		When used	This item is used when analyzing the causes of trouble. It must be used in accordance with the instructions given by the Quality Support department.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	300 to 500
		Related service modes	-
DENS-S-C	2	Title	Patch density level (Cyan) created during ATR control (equivalent to NN environment value)
		Purpose of use	To check the density level (Cyan) at which patches are detected in the sample images which are created during ATR control.
		When used	This item is used when analyzing the causes of trouble. It must be used in accordance with the instructions given by the Quality Support department.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	300 to 500
		Related service modes	-
DENS-S-K	2	Title	Patch density level (Black) created during ATR control (equivalent to NN environment value)
		Purpose of use	To check the density level (Black) at which patches are detected in the sample images which are created during ATR control.
		When used	This item is used when analyzing the causes of trouble. It must be used in accordance with the instructions given by the Quality Support department.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	300 to 500
		Related service modes	-
WINDOW-Y	1	Title	Window dirt coefficient (Yellow) for drum path sensor
		Purpose of use	To check how dirty the drum patch sensor window is.
		When used	When a reduction in density or fogging has occurred When an abnormal value (255) is displayed by COPIER > DISPLAY > DENS > P-D-A-Y/M/C/K or the drum patch sensor window dirt alarm (1001XX) has occurred
		Precautions for use	The window dirt coefficient (Yellow) for the drum patch sensor drops when the sensor window becomes dirty. If there is a great deal of dirt, a value of 700 or so will be displayed.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	Near 1000
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	The value is updated when toner is supplied after the main power switch has been set to ON.		

COPIER > DISPLAY > DENS			
Item	Level	Description	
WINDOW-M	1	Title	Window dirt coefficient (Magenta) for drum path sensor
		Purpose of use	To check how dirty the drum patch sensor window is.
		When used	When a reduction in density or fogging has occurred When an abnormal value (255) is displayed by COPIER > DISPLAY > DENS > P-D-A-Y/M/C/K or the drum patch sensor window dirt alarm (1001XX) has occurred
		Precautions for use	The window dirt coefficient (Magenta) for the drum patch sensor drops when the sensor window becomes dirty. If there is a great deal of dirt, a value of 700 or so will be displayed.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	Near 1000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	The value is updated when toner is supplied after the main power switch has been set to ON.
WINDOW-C	1	Title	Window dirt coefficient (Cyan) for drum path sensor
		Purpose of use	To check how dirty the drum patch sensor window is.
		When used	When a reduction in density or fogging has occurred When an abnormal value (255) is displayed by COPIER > DISPLAY > DENS > P-D-A-Y/M/C/K or the drum patch sensor window dirt alarm (1001XX) has occurred
		Precautions for use	The window dirt coefficient (Cyan) for the drum patch sensor drops when the sensor window becomes dirty. If there is a great deal of dirt, a value of 700 or so will be displayed.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	Near 1000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	The value is updated when toner is supplied after the main power switch has been set to ON.
WINDOW-K	1	Title	Window dirt coefficient (Black) for drum path sensor
		Purpose of use	To check how dirty the drum patch sensor window is.
		When used	When a reduction in density or fogging has occurred When an abnormal value (255) is displayed by COPIER > DISPLAY > DENS > P-D-A-Y/M/C/K or the drum patch sensor window dirt alarm (1001XX) has occurred
		Precautions for use	The window dirt coefficient (Black) for the drum patch sensor drops when the sensor window becomes dirty. If there is a great deal of dirt, a value of 700 or so will be displayed.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	Near 1000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	The value is updated when toner is supplied after the main power switch has been set to ON.
D-Y-TRGT	2	Title	Target value (Yellow) of ATR control (drum patch sensor detection density)
		Purpose of use	To check the target value (Yellow) of ATR control (drum patch sensor detection density).
		When used	This item is used when analyzing the causes of trouble. It must be used in accordance with the instructions given by the Quality Support department.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	300 to 500
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
D-M-TRGT	2	Title	Target value (Magenta) of ATR control (drum patch sensor detection density)
		Purpose of use	To check the target value(Magenta)of ATR control (drum patch sensor detection density).
		When used	This item is used when analyzing the causes of trouble. It must be used in accordance with the instructions given by the Quality Support department.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	300 to 500
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > DISPLAY > DENS			
Item	Level	Description	
D-C-TRGT	2	Title	Target value (Cyan) of ATR control (drum patch sensor detection density)
		Purpose of use	To check the target value (Cyan) of ATR control (drum patch sensor detection density).
		When used	This item is used when analyzing the causes of trouble. It must be used in accordance with the instructions given by the Quality Support department.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	300 to 500
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
DEV-DC-Y	2	Title	Output value of development DC voltage (Yellow) output last
		Purpose of use	To check the output value of the development DC voltage (Yellow) which was output last.
		When used	When fogging has worsened, 'carrier stuck' faulty images or 'fogging' has occurred
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-700 to -500
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
DEV-DC-M	2	Title	Output value of development DC voltage (Magenta) output last
		Purpose of use	To check the output value of the development DC voltage (Magenta) which was output last.
		When used	When fogging has worsened, 'carrier stuck' faulty images or 'fogging' has occurred
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-700 to -500
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
DEV-DC-C	2	Title	Output value of development DC voltage (Cyan) output last
		Purpose of use	To check the output value of the development DC voltage (Cyan) which was output last.
		When used	When fogging has worsened, 'carrier stuck' faulty images or 'fogging' has occurred
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-700 to -500
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
DEV-DC-K	2	Title	Output value of development DC voltage (Black) output last
		Purpose of use	To check the output value of the development DC voltage (Black) which was output last.
		When used	When fogging has worsened, 'carrier stuck' faulty images or 'fogging' has occurred
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-700 to -500
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > DISPLAY > DENS			
Item	Level	Description	
D-K-TRGT	2	Title	Target value (Black) of ATR control (drum patch sensor detection density)
		Purpose of use	To check the target value (Black) of ATR control (drum patch sensor detection density).
		When used	This item is used when analyzing the causes of trouble. It must be used in accordance with the instructions given by the Quality Support department.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	300 to 500
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
DS-S-Y-H	2	Title	Display of drum patch image detection result history (for the last 8 results for Yellow)
		Purpose of use	When differentiating between the causes in cases where error E020 has occurred The causes can be inferred from whether the value has fluctuated suddenly or gradually. It is highly likely that the drum patch sensor or laser is to blame if it has fluctuated suddenly and that trouble in the supply system and one of the developer toner density sensors (Yellow) is to blame if it has fluctuated gradually. This item is used when analyzing the causes of trouble. It must be used in accordance with the instructions given by the Quality Support department.
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
DS-S-M-H	2	Title	Display of drum patch image detection result history (for the last 8 results for Magenta)
		Purpose of use	When differentiating between the causes in cases where error E020 has occurred The causes can be inferred from whether the value has fluctuated suddenly or gradually. It is highly likely that the drum patch sensor or laser is to blame if it has fluctuated suddenly and that trouble in the supply system and one of the developer toner density sensors (Magenta) is to blame if it has fluctuated gradually. This item is used when analyzing the causes of trouble. It must be used in accordance with the instructions given by the Quality Support department.
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
DS-S-C-H	2	Title	Display of drum patch image detection result history (for the last 8 results for Cyan)
		Purpose of use	When differentiating between the causes in cases where error E020 has occurred The causes can be inferred from whether the value has fluctuated suddenly or gradually. It is highly likely that the drum patch sensor or laser is to blame if it has fluctuated suddenly and that trouble in the supply system and one of the developer toner density sensors (Cyan) is to blame if it has fluctuated gradually. This item is used when analyzing the causes of trouble. It must be used in accordance with the instructions given by the Quality Support department.
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > DISPLAY > DENS			
Item	Level	Description	
DS-S-K-H	2	Title	Display of drum patch image detection result history (for the last 8 results for Black)
		Purpose of use	When differentiating between the causes in cases where error E020 has occurred The causes can be inferred from whether the value has fluctuated suddenly or gradually. It is highly likely that the drum patch sensor or laser is to blame if it has fluctuated suddenly and that trouble in the supply system and one of the developer toner density sensors (Black) is to blame if it has fluctuated gradually. This item is used when analyzing the causes of trouble. It must be used in accordance with the instructions given by the Quality Support department.
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
SPL-LG-Y	2	Title	Yellow supply history
		Purpose of use	To check the history of supplying Yellow for the last 8 times.
		When used	When checking for supply trouble in cases where the density has diminished or fogging has worsened
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 10
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	0 to 4
		Related service modes	-
SPL-LG-M	2	Title	Magenta supply history
		Purpose of use	To check the history of supplying Magenta for the last 8 times.
		When used	When checking for supply trouble in cases where the density has diminished or fogging has worsened
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 10
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	0 to 4
		Related service modes	-
SPL-LG-C	2	Title	Cyan supply history
		Purpose of use	To check the history of supplying Cyan for the last 8 times.
		When used	When checking for supply trouble in cases where the density has diminished or fogging has worsened
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 10
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	0 to 4
		Related service modes	-
P-D-P-Y	2	Title	Value (P wave) measured for Yellow dark current during ATR control
		Purpose of use	To check the value (P wave) measured for the Yellow dark current during ATR control.
		When used	When checking for patch sensor trouble in cases where the density has diminished or fogging has worsened
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 1023
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	50 to 150
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	-		

COPIER > DISPLAY > DENS			
Item	Level	Description	
P-D-P-M	2	Title	Value (P wave) measured for Magenta dark current during ATR control
		Purpose of use	To check the value (P wave) measured for the Magenta dark current during ATR control.
		When used	When checking for patch sensor trouble in cases where the density has diminished or fogging has worsened
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 1023
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	50 to 150
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
P-D-P-C	2	Title	Value (P wave) measured for Cyan dark current during ATR control
		Purpose of use	To check the value (P wave) measured for the Cyan dark current during ATR control.
		When used	When checking for patch sensor trouble in cases where the density has diminished or fogging has worsened
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 1023
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	50 to 150
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
P-D-P-K	2	Title	Value (P wave) measured for Black dark current during ATR control
		Purpose of use	To check the value (P wave) measured for the Black dark current during ATR control.
		When used	When checking for patch sensor trouble in cases where the density has diminished or fogging has worsened
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 1023
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	50 to 150
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
P-B-P-Y	2	Title	Light quantity value (P wave) detected for Yellow ground (drum) during ATR control
		Purpose of use	To check the light quantity value (P wave) detected for the Yellow ground (drum) during ATR control.
		When used	When checking for patch sensor trouble in cases where the density has diminished or fogging has worsened
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 1023
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	300 to 650
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
P-B-P-M	2	Title	Light quantity value (P wave) detected for Magenta ground (drum) during ATR control
		Purpose of use	To check the light quantity value (P wave) detected for the Magenta ground (drum) during ATR control.
		When used	When checking for patch sensor trouble in cases where the density has diminished or fogging has worsened
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 1023
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	300 to 650
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > DISPLAY > DENS			
Item	Level	Description	
P-B-P-C	2	Title	Light quantity value (P wave) detected for Cyan ground (drum) during ATR control
		Purpose of use	To check the light quantity value (P wave) detected for the Cyan ground (drum) during ATR control.
		When used	When checking for patch sensor trouble in cases where the density has diminished or fogging has worsened
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 1023
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	300 to 650
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
P-B-P-K	2	Title	Light quantity value (P wave) detected for Black ground (drum) during ATR control
		Purpose of use	To check the light quantity value (P wave) detected for the Black ground (drum) during ATR control.
		When used	When checking for patch sensor trouble in cases where the density has diminished or fogging has worsened
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 1023
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	300 to 650
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
P-B-S-Y	2	Title	Light quantity value (S wave) detected for Yellow ground (drum) during ATR control
		Purpose of use	To check the light quantity value (S wave) detected for the Yellow ground (drum) during ATR control.
		When used	When checking for patch sensor trouble in cases where the density has diminished or fogging has worsened
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 1023
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	200 to 450
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
P-B-S-M	2	Title	Light quantity value (S wave) detected for Magenta ground (drum) during ATR control
		Purpose of use	To check the light quantity value (S wave) detected for the Magenta ground (drum) during ATR control.
		When used	When checking for patch sensor trouble in cases where the density has diminished or fogging has worsened
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 1023
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	200 to 450
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
P-B-S-C	2	Title	Light quantity value (S wave) detected for Cyan ground (drum) during ATR control
		Purpose of use	To check the light quantity value (S wave) detected for the Cyan ground (drum) during ATR control.
		When used	When checking for patch sensor trouble in cases where the density has diminished or fogging has worsened
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 1023
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	200 to 450
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > DISPLAY > DENS			
Item	Level	Description	
P-B-S-K	2	Title	Light quantity value (S wave) detected for Black ground (drum) during ATR control
		Purpose of use	To check the light quantity value (S wave) detected for the Black ground (drum) during ATR control.
		When used	When checking for patch sensor trouble in cases where the density has diminished or fogging has worsened
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 1023
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	200 to 450
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
P-D-S-Y	2	Title	Value (S wave) measured for Yellow dark current during ATR control
		Purpose of use	To check the value (S wave) measured for the Yellow dark current during ATR control.
		When used	When checking for drum patch sensor trouble in cases where the density has diminished or fogging has worsened
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 1023
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	100 to 200
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
P-D-S-M	2	Title	Value (S wave) measured for Magenta dark current during ATR control
		Purpose of use	To check the value (S wave) measured for the Magenta dark current during ATR control.
		When used	When checking for drum patch sensor trouble in cases where the density has diminished or fogging has worsened
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 1023
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	100 to 200
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
P-D-S-C	2	Title	Value (S wave) measured for Cyan dark current during ATR control
		Purpose of use	To check the value (S wave) measured for the Cyan dark current during ATR control.
		When used	When checking for drum patch sensor trouble in cases where the density has diminished or fogging has worsened
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 1023
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	100 to 200
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
P-D-S-K	2	Title	Value (S wave) measured for Black dark current during ATR control
		Purpose of use	To check the value (S wave) measured for the Black dark current during ATR control.
		When used	When checking for drum patch sensor trouble in cases where the density has diminished or fogging has worsened
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 1023
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	100 to 200
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > DISPLAY > DENS			
Item	Level	Description	
DRDMAX-Y	1	Title	Dmax control amount on Yellow drum
		Purpose of use	To check the Dmax control amount on the Yellow drum.
		When used	When checking the laser power last used When checking whether limit control is being exercised over the TD ratio and ATR patch
		Precautions for use	This item is used when analyzing the causes of trouble. It must be used in accordance with the instructions given by the Quality Support department.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-255 to 255
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	The last laser power is the level obtained when the level after potential control has been offset by an amount equivalent to the value of this item. Laser power level = Laser power level determined by potential control + Dmax control amount on drum
DRDMAX-M	1	Title	Dmax control amount on Magenta drum
		Purpose of use	To check the Dmax control amount on the Magenta drum.
		When used	When checking the laser power last used When checking whether limit control is being exercised over the TD ratio and ATR patch
		Precautions for use	This item is used when analyzing the causes of trouble. It must be used in accordance with the instructions given by the Quality Support department.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-255 to 255
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
DRDMAX-C	1	Title	Dmax control amount on Cyan drum
		Purpose of use	To check the Dmax control amount on the Cyan drum.
		When used	When checking the laser power last used When checking whether limit control is being exercised over the TD ratio and ATR patch
		Precautions for use	This item is used when analyzing the causes of trouble. It must be used in accordance with the instructions given by the Quality Support department.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-255 to 255
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
DRDMAX-K	1	Title	Dmax control amount on Black color drum
		Purpose of use	To check the Dmax control amount on the Black drum.
		When used	When checking the laser power last used When checking whether limit control is being exercised over the TD ratio and ATR patch
		Precautions for use	This item is used when analyzing the causes of trouble. It must be used in accordance with the instructions given by the Quality Support department.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
DENS-K-H	1	Title	Display of history data for last 8 TD ratios (%) for inductance sensor Black
		Purpose of use	To check the data for the last 8 Black toner density (TD ratio) levels yielded by the inductance sensor.
		When used	When checking the toner density inside the developing assembly in cases where the density has diminished or fogging has worsened
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 255
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > DISPLAY > DENS			
Item	Level	Description	
P-DA-Y	2	Title	Display of DA setting of patch sensor LED
		Purpose of use	To check the LED DA setting of the patch sensor for Y.
		When used	When checking for dirt on the drum patch sensor window or drum patch sensor trouble in cases where the density has dropped or fogging has worsened
		Precautions for use	If 255 is constantly indicated for the value, this can be identified as trouble.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 255
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
P-DA-M	2	Title	Display of DA setting of patch sensor LED
		Purpose of use	To check the LED DA setting of the patch sensor for Magenta.
		When used	When checking for dirt on the drum patch sensor window or drum patch sensor trouble in cases where the density has dropped or fogging has worsened
		Precautions for use	
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 255
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
P-DA-K	2	Title	Display of DA setting of patch sensor LED
		Purpose of use	To check the LED DA setting of the patch sensor for Black.
		When used	When checking for dirt on the drum patch sensor window or drum patch sensor trouble in cases where the density has dropped or fogging has worsened
		Precautions for use	If 255 is constantly indicated for the value, this can be identified as trouble.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 255
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
SPL-LG-K	2	Title	Black supply history
		Purpose of use	To check the history of supplying Black for the last 8 times.
		When used	When checking for dirt on the drum patch sensor window or drum patch sensor trouble in cases where the density has dropped or fogging has worsened
		Precautions for use	If 255 is constantly indicated for the value, this can be identified as trouble.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 10
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	0 to 4
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
P-DA-C	2	Title	Display of DA setting of patch sensor LED
		Purpose of use	To check the LED DA setting of the patch sensor for Y.
		When used	When checking for patch sensor trouble in cases where the density has diminished or fogging has worsened
		Precautions for use	If 255 is constantly indicated for the value, this can be identified as trouble.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 255
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

18.2.1.11 COPIER > DISPLAY > FIXING

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

T-18-9

COPIER > DISPLAY > FIXING			
Item	Level	Description	
FX-TM-LV	1	Title	Displays of temperature regulation levels for fixing assembly
		Purpose of use	To check the current temperature control levels (H, M, N, L and SL) of the fixing assemblies. To check the temperature control level in this mode when paper creasing or gloss unevenness has occurred in order to ascertain the temperature control level which is to be changed.
		When used	When checking the H, M, N, L and SL temperature control levels of the first and second fixing assemblies and then changing the temperature control temperatures in line with the current temperature control levels if the checks indicate that changes in the temperature control must be made. When the temperature control temperatures are to be changed, make the adjustments in the service modes below in line with the temperature control levels.
		Precautions for use	The temperature displays are viewed.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	2-digit display 1: H, 2: M, 3: N, 4: L, 5: SL Left digit: Temperature control level of first fixing assembly Right digit: Temperature control level of second fixing assembly
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	COPIER > OPTION > BODY > FX1-TMH COPIER > OPTION > BODY > FX2-TMH COPIER > OPTION > BODY > FX1-TMN COPIER > OPTION > BODY > FX2-TMN COPIER > OPTION > BODY > FX1-TML COPIER > OPTION > BODY > FX2-TML COPIER > OPTION > BODY > FX1-TMSL COPIER > OPTION > BODY > FX2-TMSL COPIER > OPTION > BODY > FX1-TMM
		Additional description and notes	-

18.2.1.12 COPIER > DISPLAY > SENSOR

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

T-18-10

COPIER > DISPLAY > SENSOR			
Item	Level	Description	
W-TNR-1	1	Title	Collected toner full sensor 1 output value
		Purpose of use	To check the collected toner full sensor 1 output value and full tank threshold value.
		When used	When checking the operation of the collected toner full sensor 1, when checking for collected toner blockages
		Precautions for use	If the value is somewhere between 110 and 126, the sensor window of the collected toner cartridge may be dirty. In a case like this, tap the sensor window to knock off the toner. Replace the sensor window if the threshold value is exceeded while there is no toner as this means that the detection is in error.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	Left display value: This indicates the current value. Right display value: This indicates the value (threshold) for "full."
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	When the cartridge is not full: 90 to 110 (102) When the cartridge is full: Near 126
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Since this item is used in conjunction with W-TNR-2 applied for separately, the two displays should be placed next to each other.
W-TNR-2	1	Title	Collected toner full sensor 2 output value
		Purpose of use	To check the collected toner full sensor 2 output value and full tank threshold value.
		When used	When checking the operation of the collected toner full sensor 2, when checking for collected toner blockages
		Precautions for use	If the value is somewhere between 110 and 126, the sensor window of the collected toner cartridge may be dirty. In a case like this, tap the sensor window to knock off the toner. Replace the sensor window if the threshold value is exceeded while there is no toner as this means that the detection is in error.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	Left display value: This indicates the current value. Right display value: This indicates the value (threshold) for "full."
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	When the cartridge is not full: 90 to 110 (102) When the cartridge is full: Near 126
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > DISPLAY > SENSOR			
Item	Level	Description	
W-BUF-1	1	Title	Buffer toner full sensor output value
		Purpose of use	To check the buffer toner full sensor output value and full tank threshold value.
		When used	When checking the operation of the buffer toner full sensor, when checking for collected toner buffer blockages
		Precautions for use	If the value is somewhere between 110 and 126, the buffer toner full sensor window may be dirty.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	Left display value: This indicates the current value. Right display value: This indicates the value (threshold) for "full."
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	When the cartridge is not full: 90 to 110 (102) When the cartridge is full: Near 126
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
W-BUF-2	1	Title	Not used
		Purpose of use	To check the minimum latch of the toner sensor output value of the waste toner buffer.
		When used	When checking the sensor
		Precautions for use	Place the tool magnet up against the sensor.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

18.2.1.13 COPIER > DISPLAY > MISC

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

T-18-11

COPIER > DISPLAY > MISC			
Item	Level	Description	
ENV-TR	1	Title	Display of environmental region inside printer
		Purpose of use	To check the environmental region inside the printer.
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	1: Low-humidity environment (up to 5.8g) 2: Normal humidity environment (5.9g to 17.3g) 3: High-humidity environment (17.4g or more)
		Unit	g
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
Y-DRM-LF	1	Title	Drum unit service life (Yellow)
		Purpose of use	To display as a percentage the extent to which the drum unit service life (Yellow) has been expended.
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	%
		Appropriate guideline	0 to 100
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	The drum unit service life spent percentage is displayed as 0 when a new unit is installed.
M-DRM-LF	1	Title	Drum unit service life (Magenta)
		Purpose of use	To display as a percentage the extent to which the drum unit service life (Magenta) has been expended.
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	%
		Appropriate guideline	0 to 100
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	The drum unit service life spent percentage is displayed as 0 when a new unit is installed.

COPIER > DISPLAY > MISC			
Item	Level	Description	
C-DRM-LF	1	Title	Drum unit service life (Cyan)
		Purpose of use	To display as a percentage the extent to which the drum unit service life (Cyan) has been expended.
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	%
		Appropriate guideline	0 to 100
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	The drum unit service life spent percentage is displayed as 0 when a new unit is installed.
K-DRM-LF	1	Title	Drum unit service life (Black)
		Purpose of use	To display as a percentage the extent to which the drum unit service life (Black) has been expended.
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	%
		Appropriate guideline	0 to 100
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	The drum unit service life spent percentage is displayed as 0 when a new unit is installed.
LPOWER-Y	2	Title	Real-time display (Yellow) of laser light quantity
		Purpose of use	To check the real-time display (Yellow) of the laser light quantity.
		When used	When checking whether something is wrong with the laser light quantity in cases where the density is abnormal
		Precautions for use	Compare the light quantity with the EPC screen laser power accessed from the DC controller PCB. The same value as the laser power during image forming and for inter-sheet use (ATR patch) must be displayed.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to FF (hexadecimal display)
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
LPOWER-M	2	Title	Real-time display (Magenta) of laser light quantity
		Purpose of use	To check the real-time display (Magenta) of the laser light quantity.
		When used	When checking whether something is wrong with the laser light quantity in cases where the density is abnormal
		Precautions for use	Compare the light quantity with the EPC screen laser power accessed from the DC controller PCB. The same value as the laser power during image forming and for inter-sheet use (ATR patch) must be displayed.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to FF (hexadecimal display)
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
LPOWER-C	2	Title	Real-time display (Cyan) of laser light quantity
		Purpose of use	To check the real-time display (Cyan) of the laser light quantity.
		When used	When checking whether something is wrong with the laser light quantity in cases where the density is abnormal
		Precautions for use	Compare the light quantity with the EPC screen laser power accessed from the DC controller PCB. The same value as the laser power during image forming and for inter-sheet use (ATR patch) must be displayed.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to FF (hexadecimal display)
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > DISPLAY > MISC			
Item	Level	Description	
LPOWER-K	2	Title	Real-time display (Black) of laser light quantity
		Purpose of use	To check the real-time display (Black) of the laser light quantity.
		When used	When checking whether something is wrong with the laser light quantity in cases where the density is abnormal
		Precautions for use	Compare the light quantity with the EPC screen laser power accessed from the DC controller PCB. The same value as the laser power during image forming and for inter-sheet use (ATR patch) must be displayed.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to FF (hexadecimal display)
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

18.2.1.14 COPIER > DISPLAY > ALARM-1

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

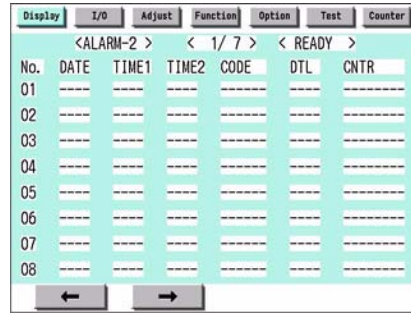
T-18-12

COPIER > DISPLAY > ALARM-1			
Item	Level	Description	
IMG-DT-Y	1	Title	Display of average value of copy/print job image ratio
		Purpose of use	To check the average value of the copy/print job image ratio. To check the average image ratio (color ratio) inside the drum unit.
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	%
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
IMG-DT-M	1	Title	Display of average value of copy/print job image ratio
		Purpose of use	To check the average value of the copy/print job image ratio. To check the average image ratio (color ratio) inside the drum unit.
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	%
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
IMG-DT-C	1	Title	Display of average value of copy/print job image ratio
		Purpose of use	To check the average value of the copy/print job image ratio. To check the average image ratio (color ratio) inside the drum unit.
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	%
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > DISPLAY > ALARM-1			
Item	Level	Description	
IMG-DT-K	1	Title	Display of average value of copy/print job image ratio
		Purpose of use	To check the average value of the copy/print job image ratio. To check the average image ratio (color ratio) inside the drum unit.
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	%
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
LST-DY-Y	2	Title	Y color image duty ratio output last
		Purpose of use	To display the duty ratio of the image output last in 1% increments. Solid color = 100%
		When used	When investigating the causes of errors by checking the duty ratio displayed and supply status in cases where ATR errors, etc. have occurred
		Precautions for use	Copy a chart that identifies the duty ratio, and check that the duty ratio is close to the one displayed in this mode. What is actually displayed is the previous ratio so make two copies in succession to make sure.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 100
		Unit	%
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
LST-DY-M	2	Title	M color image duty ratio output last
		Purpose of use	To display the duty ratio of the image output last in 1% increments. Solid color = 100%
		When used	When investigating the causes of errors by checking the duty ratio displayed and supply status in cases where ATR errors, etc. have occurred
		Precautions for use	Copy a chart that identifies the duty ratio, and check that the duty ratio is close to the one displayed in this mode. What is actually displayed is the previous ratio so make two copies in succession to make sure.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 100
		Unit	%
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
LST-DY-C	2	Title	C color image duty ratio output last
		Purpose of use	To display the duty ratio of the image output last in 1% increments. Solid color = 100%
		When used	When investigating the causes of errors by checking the duty ratio displayed and supply status in cases where ATR errors, etc. have occurred
		Precautions for use	Copy a chart that identifies the duty ratio, and check that the duty ratio is close to the one displayed in this mode. What is actually displayed is the previous ratio so make two copies in succession to make sure.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 100
		Unit	%
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
LST-DY-K	2	Title	Black image duty ratio output last
		Purpose of use	To display the duty ratio of the image output last in 1% increments. Solid color = 100%
		When used	When investigating the causes of errors by checking the duty ratio displayed and supply status in cases where ATR errors, etc. have occurred
		Precautions for use	Copy a chart that identifies the duty ratio, and check that the duty ratio is close to the one displayed in this mode. What is actually displayed is the previous ratio so make two copies in succession to make sure.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 100
		Unit	%
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

18.2.1.15 COPIER > DISPLAY > ALARM-2

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000



F-18-12
T-18-13

Item	Description
No.	Indicates the order of occurrence of alarms (1 to 50; the highest number indicating the oldest)
DATE	Indicates the date of occurrence of alarms
TIME1	Indicates the time of occurrence of alarms
TIME2	Indicates the time of occurrence of alarms
CODE	Indicates the location of occurrence of alarms
DTL	Indicates alarm codes.
CNTR	Indicates the reading of the total counter at time of alarm.

18.2.1.16 COPIER > DISPLAY > ENVRNT

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

Use it to indicate the environment log.

The machine shows a log of changes taking place as indicated by the readings of the environment sensor 2 and the output of the fixing thermistor: machine inside temperature in deg C, humidity in %, primary fixing roller surface temperature (center) in deg C, secondary fixing roller surface temperature (center) in deg C.

MEMO:
The intervals at which data is collected may be changed in the following service mode item:
COPIER>OPTION>BODY>ENVP-INT.



F-18-13
T-18-14

Item	Description
No.	order of data collection (highest number indicating oldest data)
DATE	date of data collection
TIME	time of data collection
D+deg C	machine inside temperature
E+%	machine inside Humidity
F+deg C	primary fixing roller surface (center) temperature
F2+deg C	secondary fixing roller surface (center) temperature

18.2.1.17 COPIER > DISPLAY > HT-C

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

COPIER > DISPLAY > HT-C			
Item	Level	Description	
TGT-A-Y	2	Title	ARCDAT target value in pattern (Yellow on screen A)
		Purpose of use	To check the ARCDAT target value for Yellow on screen A.
		When used	This value is checked when fluctuations have occurred in the color tones. If the value is abnormal, redo PASCAL/Dhalf. If the value is still abnormal, replace the drum patch sensor.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 1023
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	150 to 400
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
TGT-A-M	2	Title	ARCDAT target value in pattern (Magenta on screen A)
		Purpose of use	To check the ARCDAT target value for Magenta on screen A.
		When used	This value is checked when fluctuations have occurred in the color tones. If the value is abnormal, redo PASCAL/Dhalf. If the value is still abnormal, replace the drum patch sensor.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 1023
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	150 to 400
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
TGT-A-C	2	Title	ARCDAT target value in pattern (Cyan on screen A)
		Purpose of use	To check the ARCDAT target value for Cyan on screen A.
		When used	This value is checked when fluctuations have occurred in the color tones. If the value is abnormal, redo PASCAL/Dhalf. If the value is still abnormal, replace the drum patch sensor.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 1023
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	150 to 400
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
TGT-A-K	2	Title	ARCDAT target value in pattern (Black on screen A)
		Purpose of use	To check the ARCDAT target value for Black on screen A.
		When used	This value is checked when fluctuations have occurred in the color tones. If the value is abnormal, redo PASCAL/Dhalf. If the value is still abnormal, replace the drum patch sensor.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 1023
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	150 to 400
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
TGT-B-Y	2	Title	ARCDAT target value in pattern (Yellow on screen B)
		Purpose of use	To check the ARCDAT target value for Yellow on screen B.
		When used	This value is checked when fluctuations have occurred in the color tones. If the value is abnormal, redo PASCAL/Dhalf. If the value is still abnormal, replace the drum patch sensor.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 1023
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	150 to 400
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > DISPLAY > HT-C			
Item	Level	Description	
TGT-B-M	2	Title	ARCDAT target value in pattern (Magenta on screen B)
		Purpose of use	To check the ARCDAT target value for Magenta on screen B.
		When used	This value is checked when fluctuations have occurred in the color tones. If the value is abnormal, redo PASCAL/Dhalf. If the value is still abnormal, replace the drum patch sensor.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 1023
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	150 to 400
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
TGT-B-C	2	Title	ARCDAT target value in pattern (Cyan on screen B)
		Purpose of use	To check the ARCDAT target value for Cyan on screen B.
		When used	This value is checked when fluctuations have occurred in the color tones. If the value is abnormal, redo PASCAL/Dhalf. If the value is still abnormal, replace the drum patch sensor.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 1023
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	150 to 400
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
TGT-B-K	2	Title	ARCDAT target value in pattern (Black on screen B)
		Purpose of use	To check the ARCDAT target value for Black on screen B.
		When used	This value is checked when fluctuations have occurred in the color tones. If the value is abnormal, redo PASCAL/Dhalf. If the value is still abnormal, replace the drum patch sensor.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 1023
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	150 to 400
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
TGT-C-Y	2	Title	ARCDAT target value in pattern (Yellow on screen C)
		Purpose of use	To check the ARCDAT target value for Yellow on screen C.
		When used	This value is checked when fluctuations have occurred in the color tones. If the value is abnormal, redo PASCAL/Dhalf. If the value is still abnormal, replace the drum patch sensor.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 1023
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	150 to 400
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
TGT-C-M	2	Title	ARCDAT target value in pattern (Magenta on screen C)
		Purpose of use	To check the ARCDAT target value for Magenta on screen C.
		When used	This value is checked when fluctuations have occurred in the color tones. If the value is abnormal, redo PASCAL/Dhalf. If the value is still abnormal, replace the drum patch sensor.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 1023
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > DISPLAY > HT-C			
Item	Level	Description	
TGT-C-C	2	Title	ARCDAT target value in pattern (Cyan on screen C)
		Purpose of use	To check the ARCDAT target value for Cyan on screen C.
		When used	This value is checked when fluctuations have occurred in the color tones. If the value is abnormal, redo PASCAL/Dhalf. If the value is still abnormal, replace the drum patch sensor.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 1023
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	150 to 400
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
TGT-C-K	2	Title	ARCDAT target value in pattern (Black on screen C)
		Purpose of use	To check the ARCDAT target value for Black on screen C.
		When used	This value is checked when fluctuations have occurred in the color tones. If the value is abnormal, redo PASCAL/Dhalf. If the value is still abnormal, replace the drum patch sensor.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 1023
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	150 to 400
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
SUM-A-Y	2	Title	Total control amount of ARCDAT in pattern (Yellow on screen A)
		Purpose of use	To check the total control amount of ARCDAT for Yellow on screen A.
		When used	This value is checked when fluctuations have occurred in the color tones. If the value is abnormal, redo PASCAL/Dhalf. If the value is still abnormal, replace the drum patch sensor or replace the developer.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-1023 to 1023
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
SUM-A-M	2	Title	Total control amount of ARCDAT in pattern (Magenta on screen A)
		Purpose of use	To check the total control amount of ARCDAT for Magenta on screen A.
		When used	This value is checked when fluctuations have occurred in the color tones. If the value is abnormal, redo PASCAL/Dhalf. If the value is still abnormal, replace the drum patch sensor or replace the developer.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-1023 to 1023
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
SUM-A-C	2	Title	Total control amount of ARCDAT in pattern (Cyan on screen A)
		Purpose of use	To check the total control amount of ARCDAT for Cyan on screen A.
		When used	This value is checked when fluctuations have occurred in the color tones. If the value is abnormal, redo PASCAL/Dhalf. If the value is still abnormal, replace the drum patch sensor or replace the developer.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-1023 to 1023
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > DISPLAY > HT-C			
Item	Level	Description	
SUM-A-K	2	Title	Total control amount of ARCDAT in pattern (Black on screen A)
		Purpose of use	To check the total control amount of ARCDAT for Black on screen A.
		When used	This value is checked when fluctuations have occurred in the color tones. If the value is abnormal, redo PASCAL/Dhalf. If the value is still abnormal, replace the drum patch sensor or replace the developer.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-1023 to 1023
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
SUM-B-Y	2	Title	Total control amount of ARCDAT in pattern (Yellow on screen B)
		Purpose of use	To check the total control amount of ARCDAT for Yellow on screen B.
		When used	This value is checked when fluctuations have occurred in the color tones. If the value is abnormal, redo PASCAL/Dhalf. If the value is still abnormal, replace the drum patch sensor or replace the developer.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-1023 to 1023
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
SUM-B-M	2	Title	Total control amount of ARCDAT in pattern (Magenta on screen B)
		Purpose of use	To check the total control amount of ARCDAT for Magenta on screen B.
		When used	This value is checked when fluctuations have occurred in the color tones. If the value is abnormal, redo PASCAL/Dhalf. If the value is still abnormal, replace the drum patch sensor or replace the developer.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-1023 to 1023
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-60 to 60 A value in the vicinity of +/-160 is abnormal.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
SUM-B-C	2	Title	Total control amount of ARCDAT in pattern (Cyan on screen B)
		Purpose of use	To check the total control amount of ARCDAT for Cyan on screen B.
		When used	This value is checked when fluctuations have occurred in the color tones. If the value is abnormal, redo PASCAL/Dhalf. If the value is still abnormal, replace the drum patch sensor or replace the developer.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-1023 to 1023
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-60 to 60 A value in the vicinity of +/-160 is abnormal.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
SUM-B-K	2	Title	Total control amount of ARCDAT in pattern (Black on screen B)
		Purpose of use	To check the total control amount of ARCDAT for Black on screen B.
		When used	This value is checked when fluctuations have occurred in the color tones. If the value is abnormal, redo PASCAL/Dhalf. If the value is still abnormal, replace the drum patch sensor or replace the developer.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-1023 to 1023
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > DISPLAY > HT-C			
Item	Level	Description	
SUM-C-Y	2	Title	Total control amount of ARCDAT in pattern (Yellow on screen C)
		Purpose of use	To check the total control amount of ARCDAT for Yellow on screen C.
		When used	This value is checked when fluctuations have occurred in the color tones. If the value is abnormal, redo PASCAL/Dhalf. If the value is still abnormal, replace the drum patch sensor or replace the developer.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-1023 to 1023
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-60 to 60 A value in the vicinity of +/-160 is abnormal.
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	-		
SUM-C-M	2	Title	Total control amount of ARCDAT in pattern (Magenta on screen C)
		Purpose of use	To check the total control amount of ARCDAT for Magenta on screen C.
		When used	This value is checked when fluctuations have occurred in the color tones. If the value is abnormal, redo PASCAL/Dhalf. If the value is still abnormal, replace the drum patch sensor or replace the developer.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-1023 to 1023
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	-		
SUM-C-C	2	Title	Total control amount of ARCDAT in pattern (Cyan on screen C)
		Purpose of use	To check the total control amount of ARCDAT for Cyan on screen C.
		When used	This value is checked when fluctuations have occurred in the color tones. If the value is abnormal, redo PASCAL/Dhalf. If the value is still abnormal, replace the drum patch sensor or replace the developer.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-1023 to 1023
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-60 to 60 A value in the vicinity of +/-160 is abnormal.
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	-		
SUM-C-K	2	Title	Total control amount of ARCDAT in pattern (Black on screen C)
		Purpose of use	To check the total control amount of ARCDAT for Black on screen C.
		When used	This value is checked when fluctuations have occurred in the color tones. If the value is abnormal, redo PASCAL/Dhalf. If the value is still abnormal, replace the drum patch sensor or replace the developer.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-1023 to 1023
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-60 to 60 A value in the vicinity of +/-160 is abnormal.
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	-		
SGNL-A-Y	2	Title	ARCDAT latest patch results in pattern (Yellow on screen A)
		Purpose of use	To check the latest patch results (p-ks) of ARCDAT for Yellow on screen A.
		When used	This value is checked when fluctuations have occurred in the color tones. If the value is abnormal, replace the drum patch sensor or replace the developer.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 1023
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	150 to 400
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	-		

COPIER > DISPLAY > HT-C			
Item	Level	Description	
SGNL-A-M	2	Title	ARCDAT latest patch results in pattern (Magenta on screen A)
		Purpose of use	To check the latest patch results (p-ks) of ARCDAT for Magenta on screen A.
		When used	This value is checked when fluctuations have occurred in the color tones. If the value is abnormal, replace the drum patch sensor or replace the developer.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 1023
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	150 to 400
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
SGNL-A-C	2	Title	ARCDAT latest patch results in pattern (Cyan on screen A)
		Purpose of use	To check the latest patch results (p-ks) of ARCDAT for Cyan on screen A.
		When used	This value is checked when fluctuations have occurred in the color tones. If the value is abnormal, replace the drum patch sensor or replace the developer.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 1023
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	150 to 400
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
SGNL-A-K	2	Title	ARCDAT latest patch results in pattern (Black on screen A)
		Purpose of use	To check the latest patch results (p-ks) of ARCDAT for Black on screen A.
		When used	This value is checked when fluctuations have occurred in the color tones. If the value is abnormal, replace the drum patch sensor or replace the developer.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 1023
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	150 to 400
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
SGNL-B-Y	2	Title	ARCDAT latest patch results in pattern (Yellow on screen B)
		Purpose of use	To check the latest patch results (p-ks) of ARCDAT for Yellow on screen B.
		When used	This value is checked when fluctuations have occurred in the color tones. If the value is abnormal, replace the drum patch sensor or replace the developer.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 1023
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	100 to 300
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
SGNL-B-M	2	Title	ARCDAT latest patch results in pattern (Magenta on screen B)
		Purpose of use	To check the latest patch results (p-ks) of ARCDAT for Magenta on screen B.
		When used	This value is checked when fluctuations have occurred in the color tones. If the value is abnormal, replace the drum patch sensor or replace the developer.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 1023
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	150 to 400
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > DISPLAY > HT-C			
Item	Level	Description	
SGNL-B-C	2	Title	ARCDAT latest patch results in pattern (Cyan on screen B)
		Purpose of use	To check the latest patch results (p-ks) of ARCDAT for Cyan on screen B.
		When used	This value is checked when fluctuations have occurred in the color tones. If the value is abnormal, replace the drum patch sensor or replace the developer.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 1023
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	150 to 400
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
SGNL-B-K	2	Title	ARCDAT latest patch results in pattern (Black on screen B)
		Purpose of use	To check the latest patch results (p-ks) of ARCDAT for Black on screen B.
		When used	This value is checked when fluctuations have occurred in the color tones. If the value is abnormal, replace the drum patch sensor or replace the developer.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 1023
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	150 to 400
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
SGNL-C-Y	2	Title	ARCDAT latest patch results in pattern (Yellow on screen C)
		Purpose of use	To check the latest patch results (p-ks) of ARCDAT for Yellow on screen C.
		When used	This value is checked when fluctuations have occurred in the color tones. If the value is abnormal, replace the drum patch sensor or replace the developer.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 1023
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	150 to 400
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
SGNL-C-M	2	Title	ARCDAT latest patch results in pattern (Magenta on screen C)
		Purpose of use	To check the latest patch results (p-ks) of ARCDAT for Magenta on screen C.
		When used	This value is checked when fluctuations have occurred in the color tones. If the value is abnormal, replace the drum patch sensor or replace the developer.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 1023
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	150 to 400
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
SGNL-C-K	2	Title	ARCDAT latest patch results in pattern (Black on screen C)
		Purpose of use	To check the latest patch results (p-ks) of ARCDAT for Black on screen C.
		When used	This value is checked when fluctuations have occurred in the color tones. If the value is abnormal, replace the drum patch sensor or replace the developer.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 1023
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	150 to 400
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > DISPLAY > HT-C			
Item	Level	Description	
SGNL-C-C	2	Title	ARCDAT latest patch results in pattern (Cyan on screen C)
		Purpose of use	To check the latest patch results (p-ks) of ARCDAT for Cyan on screen C.
		When used	This value is checked when fluctuations have occurred in the color tones. If the value is abnormal, replace the drum patch sensor or replace the developer.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 1023
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	150 to 400
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
DLTA-A-Y	2	Title	Difference between target value and ARCDAT latest patch results in pattern (Yellow on screen A)
		Purpose of use	To check the difference between the target value and the ARCDAT latest patch results (control amount) for Yellow on screen A.
		When used	This value is checked when fluctuations have occurred in the color tones. If the value is abnormal, redo PASCAL/Dhalf. If the value is still abnormal, replace the drum patch sensor or replace the developer.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-1023 to 1023
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-30 to 30
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
DLTA-A-M	2	Title	Difference between target value and ARCDAT latest patch results in pattern (Magenta on screen A)
		Purpose of use	To check the difference between the target value and the ARCDAT latest patch results (control amount) for Magenta on screen A.
		When used	This value is checked when fluctuations have occurred in the color tones. If the value is abnormal, redo PASCAL/Dhalf. If the value is still abnormal, replace the drum patch sensor or replace the developer.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-1023 to 1023
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-30 to 30
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
DLTA-A-C	2	Title	Difference between target value and ARCDAT latest patch results in pattern (Cyan on screen A)
		Purpose of use	To check the difference between the target value and the ARCDAT latest patch results (control amount) for Cyan on screen A.
		When used	This value is checked when fluctuations have occurred in the color tones. If the value is abnormal, redo PASCAL/Dhalf. If the value is still abnormal, replace the drum patch sensor or replace the developer.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-1023 to 1023
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-30 to 30
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
DLTA-A-K	2	Title	Difference between target value and ARCDAT latest patch results in pattern (Black on screen A)
		Purpose of use	To check the difference between the target value and the ARCDAT latest patch results (control amount) for Black on screen A.
		When used	This value is checked when fluctuations have occurred in the color tones. If the value is abnormal, redo PASCAL/Dhalf. If the value is still abnormal, replace the drum patch sensor or replace the developer.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-1023 to 1023
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-30 to 30
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > DISPLAY > HT-C			
Item	Level	Description	
DLTA-B-Y	2	Title	Difference between target value and ARCDAT latest patch results in pattern (Yellow on screen B)
		Purpose of use	To check the difference between the target value and the ARCDAT latest patch results (control amount) for Yellow on screen B.
		When used	This value is checked when fluctuations have occurred in the color tones. If the value is abnormal, redo PASCAL/Dhalf. If the value is still abnormal, replace the drum patch sensor or replace the developer.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-1023 to 1023
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-30 to 30
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	-		
DLTA-B-M	2	Title	Difference between target value and ARCDAT latest patch results in pattern (Magenta on screen B)
		Purpose of use	To check the difference between the target value and the ARCDAT latest patch results (control amount) for Magenta on screen B.
		When used	This value is checked when fluctuations have occurred in the color tones. If the value is abnormal, redo PASCAL/Dhalf. If the value is still abnormal, replace the drum patch sensor or replace the developer.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-1023 to 1023
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-30 to 30
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	-		
DLTA-B-C	2	Title	Difference between target value and ARCDAT latest patch results in pattern (Cyan on screen B)
		Purpose of use	To check the difference between the target value and the ARCDAT latest patch results (control amount) for Cyan on screen B.
		When used	This value is checked when fluctuations have occurred in the color tones. If the value is abnormal, redo PASCAL/Dhalf. If the value is still abnormal, replace the drum patch sensor or replace the developer.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-1023 to 1023
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-30 to 30
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	-		
DLTA-B-K	2	Title	Difference between target value and ARCDAT latest patch results in pattern (Black on screen B)
		Purpose of use	To check the difference between the target value and the ARCDAT latest patch results (control amount) for Black on screen B.
		When used	This value is checked when fluctuations have occurred in the color tones. If the value is abnormal, redo PASCAL/Dhalf. If the value is still abnormal, replace the drum patch sensor or replace the developer.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-1023 to 1023
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-30 to 30
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	-		

COPIER > DISPLAY > HT-C			
Item	Level	Description	
DLTA-C-Y	2	Title	Difference between target value and ARCDAT latest patch results in pattern (Yellow on screen C)
		Purpose of use	To check the difference between the target value and the ARCDAT latest patch results (control amount) for Yellow on screen C.
		When used	This value is checked when fluctuations have occurred in the color tones. If the value is abnormal, redo PASCAL/Dhalf. If the value is still abnormal, replace the drum patch sensor or replace the developer.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-1023 to 1023
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-30 to 30
		Related service modes	-
DLTA-C-M	2	Title	Difference between target value and ARCDAT latest patch results in pattern (Magenta on screen C)
		Purpose of use	To check the difference between the target value and the ARCDAT latest patch results (control amount) for Magenta on screen C.
		When used	This value is checked when fluctuations have occurred in the color tones. If the value is abnormal, redo PASCAL/Dhalf. If the value is still abnormal, replace the drum patch sensor or replace the developer.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-1023 to 1023
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	-
DLTA-C-C	2	Title	Difference between target value and ARCDAT latest patch results in pattern (Cyan on screen C)
		Purpose of use	To check the difference between the target value and the ARCDAT latest patch results (control amount) for Cyan on screen C.
		When used	This value is checked when fluctuations have occurred in the color tones. If the value is abnormal, redo PASCAL/Dhalf. If the value is still abnormal, replace the drum patch sensor or replace the developer.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-30 to 30
		Related service modes	-
DLTA-C-K	2	Title	Difference between target value and ARCDAT latest patch results in pattern (Black on screen C)
		Purpose of use	To check the difference between the target value and the ARCDAT latest patch results (control amount) for Black on screen C.
		When used	This value is checked when fluctuations have occurred in the color tones. If the value is abnormal, redo PASCAL/Dhalf. If the value is still abnormal, replace the drum patch sensor or replace the developer.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-1023 to 1023
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-30 to 30
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

18.2.1.18 COPIER > DISPLAY > HV-TR

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

COPIER > DISPLAY > HV-TR			
Item	Level	Description	
S-ATVCVY		Title	Display of voltage offset amount (Y) during sheet-to-sheet ATVC
		Purpose of use	To check the voltage offset amount during sheet-to-sheet ATVC.
		When used	This item is used when analyzing the causes of trouble. It must be used in accordance with the instructions given by the Quality Support department.
		Precautions for use	If the amount deviates from the correct level, faulty control may be to blame so open and close the front door, execute ATVC control, and check the display value.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 5000
		Unit	V
		Appropriate guideline	0 to 200
		Related service modes	COPIER>FUNCTION>MISC-P>INTR-EX
		Additional description and notes	
S-ATVCVM		Title	Display of voltage offset amount (M) during sheet-to-sheet ATVC
		Purpose of use	To check the voltage offset amount during sheet-to-sheet ATVC.
		When used	This item is used when analyzing the causes of trouble. It must be used in accordance with the instructions given by the Quality Support department.
		Precautions for use	If the amount deviates from the correct level, faulty control may be to blame so open and close the front door, execute ATVC control, and check the display value.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 5000
		Unit	V
		Appropriate guideline	0 to 200
		Related service modes	COPIER>FUNCTION>MISC-P>INTR-EX
		Additional description and notes	
S-ATVCVC		Title	Display of voltage offset amount (C) during sheet-to-sheet ATVC
		Purpose of use	To check the voltage offset amount during sheet-to-sheet ATVC.
		When used	This item is used when analyzing the causes of trouble. It must be used in accordance with the instructions given by the Quality Support department.
		Precautions for use	If the amount deviates from the correct level, faulty control may be to blame so open and close the front door, execute ATVC control, and check the display value.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 5000
		Unit	V
		Appropriate guideline	0 to 200
		Related service modes	COPIER>FUNCTION>MISC-P>INTR-EX
		Additional description and notes	
S-ATVCVK		Title	Display of voltage offset amount (K) during sheet-to-sheet ATVC
		Purpose of use	To check the voltage offset amount during sheet-to-sheet ATVC.
		When used	This item is used when analyzing the causes of trouble. It must be used in accordance with the instructions given by the Quality Support department.
		Precautions for use	If the amount deviates from the correct level, faulty control may be to blame so open and close the front door, execute ATVC control, and check the display value.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 5000
		Unit	V
		Appropriate guideline	0 to 200
		Related service modes	COPIER>FUNCTION>MISC-P>INTR-EX
		Additional description and notes	
S-ATV2TR		Title	Display of voltage offset amount during secondary transfer sheet-to-sheet ATVC
		Purpose of use	To display the voltage offset amount during secondary transfer sheet-to-sheet ATVC.
		When used	This item is used when analyzing the causes of trouble. It must be used in accordance with the instructions given by the Quality Support department.
		Precautions for use	If the amount deviates from the proper value, control trouble may be to blame so forcibly execute the first warm-up rotation in the morning (COPIER > FUNCTION > MISC-P > INTR-EX).
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 5000
		Unit	V
		Appropriate guideline	0 to 200
		Related service modes	COPIER>FUNCTION>MISC-P>INTR-EX
		Additional description and notes	

COPIER > DISPLAY > HV-TR			
Item	Level	Description	
S-ATVCL1		Title	Display of ACVC correction voltage offset amount for ITB cleaning (upstream)
		Purpose of use	To check the ACVC correction voltage offset amount for ITB cleaning (upstream).
		When used	This item is used when analyzing the causes of trouble. It must be used in accordance with the instructions given by the Quality Support department.
		Precautions for use	If the amount deviates from the proper value, control trouble may be to blame so forcibly execute the first warm-up rotation in the morning (COPIER > FUNCTION > MISC-P > INTR-EX).
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 5000
		Unit	V
		Appropriate guideline	0 to 200
		Related service modes	COPIER>FUNCTION>MISC-P>INTR-EX
		Additional description and notes	
S-ATVCL2		Title	Display of ACVC correction voltage offset amount for ITB cleaning (downstream)
		Purpose of use	To check the ACVC correction voltage offset amount for ITB cleaning (downstream).
		When used	This item is used when analyzing the causes of trouble. It must be used in accordance with the instructions given by the Quality Support department.
		Precautions for use	If the amount deviates from the proper value, control trouble may be to blame so forcibly execute the first warm-up rotation in the morning (COPIER > FUNCTION > MISC-P > INTR-EX).
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 5000
		Unit	V
		Appropriate guideline	0 to 200
		Related service modes	COPIER>FUNCTION>MISC-P>INTR-EX
		Additional description and notes	
S-ATVCIY		Title	Display of ACVC target current offset amount (Y) during sheet-to-sheet ATVC
		Purpose of use	To check the ACVC target current offset amount during sheet-to-sheet ATVC.
		When used	This item is used when analyzing the causes of trouble. It must be used in accordance with the instructions given by the Quality Support department.
		Precautions for use	If the amount deviates from the proper value, control trouble may be to blame so forcibly execute the first warm-up rotation in the morning (COPIER > FUNCTION > MISC-P > INTR-EX).
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 5000
		Unit	uA
		Appropriate guideline	250 to 350
		Related service modes	COPIER>FUNCTION>MISC-P>INTR-EX COPIER>ADJUST>HV-TR>1TR-YGY
		Additional description and notes	
S-ATVCIM		Title	Display of ACVC target current offset amount (M) during sheet-to-sheet ATVC
		Purpose of use	To check the ACVC target current offset amount during sheet-to-sheet ATVC.
		When used	This item is used when analyzing the causes of trouble. It must be used in accordance with the instructions given by the Quality Support department.
		Precautions for use	If the amount deviates from the proper value, control trouble may be to blame so forcibly execute the first warm-up rotation in the morning (COPIER > FUNCTION > MISC-P > INTR-EX).
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 5000
		Unit	uA
		Appropriate guideline	250 to 350
		Related service modes	COPIER>FUNCTION>MISC-P>INTR-EX COPIER>ADJUST>HV-TR>1TR-YGM
		Additional description and notes	
S-ATVCIC		Title	Display of ACVC target current offset amount (C) during sheet-to-sheet ATVC
		Purpose of use	To check the ACVC target current offset amount during sheet-to-sheet ATVC.
		When used	This item is used when analyzing the causes of trouble. It must be used in accordance with the instructions given by the Quality Support department.
		Precautions for use	If the amount deviates from the proper value, control trouble may be to blame so forcibly execute the first warm-up rotation in the morning (COPIER > FUNCTION > MISC-P > INTR-EX).
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 5000
		Unit	uA
		Appropriate guideline	250 to 350
		Related service modes	COPIER>FUNCTION>MISC-P>INTR-EX COPIER>ADJUST>HV-TR>1TR-YGC
		Additional description and notes	

COPIER > DISPLAY > HV-TR			
Item	Level	Description	
S-ATVCIK		Title	Display of ACVC target current offset amount (K) during sheet-to-sheet ATVC
		Purpose of use	To check the ACVC target current offset amount during sheet-to-sheet ATVC.
		When used	This item is used when analyzing the causes of trouble. It must be used in accordance with the instructions given by the Quality Support department.
		Precautions for use	If the amount deviates from the proper value, control trouble may be to blame so forcibly execute the first warm-up rotation in the morning (COPIER > FUNCTION > MISC-P > INTR-EX).
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 5000
		Unit	uA
		Appropriate guideline	250 to 350
		Related service modes	COPIER>FUNCTION>MISC-P>INTR-EX COPIER>ADJUST>HV-TR>1TR-YGK
		Additional description and notes	
S-ATVC2T		Title	Display of secondary transfer ATVC target current
		Purpose of use	To check the secondary transfer ATVC target current.
		When used	This item is used when analyzing the causes of trouble. It must be used in accordance with the instructions given by the Quality Support department.
		Precautions for use	If the amount deviates from the proper value, control trouble may be to blame so forcibly execute the first warm-up rotation in the morning (COPIER > FUNCTION > MISC-P > INTR-EX).
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 5000
		Unit	uA
		Appropriate guideline	250 to 350
		Related service modes	COPIER>FUNCTION>MISC-P>INTR-EX COPIER>ADJUST>HV-TR>2TR-TG
		Additional description and notes	
S-ATVIC1		Title	Display of current monitored value when monitoring correction data to be used for sheet-to-sheet ACVC in ITB cleaning (upstream)
		Purpose of use	To check the current monitored value when monitoring the correction data which is to be used for sheet-to-sheet ACVC in ITB cleaning (upstream).
		When used	This item is used when analyzing the causes of trouble. It must be used in accordance with the instructions given by the Quality Support department.
		Precautions for use	If the amount deviates from the proper value, control trouble may be to blame so forcibly execute the first warm-up rotation in the morning (COPIER > FUNCTION > MISC-P > INTR-EX).
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 5000
		Unit	uA
		Appropriate guideline	250 to 350
		Related service modes	COPIER>FUNCTION>MISC-P>INTR-EX COPIER>ADJUST>HV-TR>BCL1-TGF
		Additional description and notes	
S-ATVIC2		Title	Display of current monitored value when monitoring correction data to be used for sheet-to-sheet ACVC in ITB cleaning (downstream)
		Purpose of use	To check the current monitored value when monitoring the correction data which is to be used for sheet-to-sheet ACVC in ITB cleaning (downstream).
		When used	This item is used when analyzing the causes of trouble. It must be used in accordance with the instructions given by the Quality Support department.
		Precautions for use	If the amount deviates from the proper value, control trouble may be to blame so forcibly execute the first warm-up rotation in the morning (COPIER > FUNCTION > MISC-P > INTR-EX).
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 5000
		Unit	uA
		Appropriate guideline	250 to 350
		Related service modes	COPIER>FUNCTION>MISC-P>INTR-EX COPIER>ADJUST>HV-TR>BCL2-TGF
		Additional description and notes	

18.2.1.19 COPIER > DISPLAY > P-PASCAL

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

COPIER > DISPLAY > P-PASCAL			
Item	Level	Description	
CS-0Y-B	2	Title	Sensor output B when solid white is seen for Yellow on paper of printer PASCAL (latest value displayed)
		Purpose of use	To check the sensor output B when solid white is seen for Yellow on the paper of the printer PASCAL.
		When used	When the color tones after printer PASCAL are abnormal, check whether the color sensor is to blame (check the installation of the color sensor and replace the sensor if necessary).
		Precautions for use	Find out whether the value changes in the 300 to 500 range after printing by printer PASCAL.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 1023
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	300 to 500V
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
CS-0M-G	2	Title	Sensor output G when solid white is seen for Magenta on paper of printer PASCAL (latest value displayed)
		Purpose of use	To check the sensor output G when solid white is seen for Magenta on the paper of the printer PASCAL.
		When used	When the color tones after printer PASCAL are abnormal, check whether the color sensor is to blame (check the installation of the color sensor and replace the sensor if necessary).
		Precautions for use	Find out whether the value changes in the 300 to 500 range after printing by printer PASCAL.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 1023
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	300 to 500V
		Additional description and notes	-
CS-0C-R	2	Title	Sensor output R when solid white is seen for Cyan on paper of printer PASCAL (latest value displayed)
		Purpose of use	To check the sensor output R when solid white is seen for Cyan on the paper of the printer PASCAL.
		When used	When the color tones after printer PASCAL are abnormal, check whether the color sensor is to blame (check the installation of the color sensor and replace the sensor if necessary).
		Precautions for use	Find out whether the value changes in the 300 to 500 range after printing by printer PASCAL.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 1023
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	300 to 500V
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
CS-0K-G	2	Title	Sensor output G when solid white is seen for Black on paper of printer PASCAL (latest value displayed)
		Purpose of use	To check the sensor output G when solid white is seen for Black on the paper of the printer PASCAL.
		When used	When the color tones after printer PASCAL are abnormal, check whether the color sensor is to blame (check the installation of the color sensor and replace the sensor if necessary).
		Precautions for use	Find out whether the value changes in the 300 to 500 range after printing by printer PASCAL.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 1023
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	300 to 500V
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
CS-FC-R	2	Title	Sensor output R when solid Cyan is seen on paper of printer PASCAL (latest value displayed)
		Purpose of use	To check the sensor output R when solid Cyan is seen on the paper of the printer PASCAL.
		When used	When the color tones after printer PASCAL are abnormal, check whether the color sensor is to blame (check the installation of the color sensor and replace the sensor if necessary).
		Precautions for use	The value changes each time printer PASCAL operation is performed.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 1023
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	800 to 1000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > DISPLAY > P-PASCAL			
Item	Level	Description	
CS-FM-G	2	Title	Sensor output G when solid Magenta is seen on paper of printer PASCAL (latest value displayed)
		Purpose of use	To check the sensor output G when solid Magenta is seen on the paper of the printer PASCAL.
		When used	When the color tones after printer PASCAL are abnormal, check whether the color sensor is to blame (check the installation of the color sensor and replace the sensor if necessary).
		Precautions for use	The value changes each time printer PASCAL operation is performed.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 1023
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	800 to 1000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
CS-FY-B	2	Title	Sensor output B when solid Yellow is seen on paper of printer PASCAL (latest value displayed)
		Purpose of use	To check the sensor output B when solid Yellow is seen on the paper of the printer PASCAL.
		When used	When the color tones after printer PASCAL are abnormal, check whether the color sensor is to blame (check the installation of the color sensor and replace the sensor if necessary).
		Precautions for use	The value changes each time printer PASCAL operation is performed.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 1023
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	800 to 1000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
CS-FK-G	2	Title	Sensor output G when solid Black is seen on paper of printer PASCAL (latest value displayed)
		Purpose of use	To check the sensor output G when solid Black is seen on the paper of the printer PASCAL.
		When used	When the color tones after printer PASCAL are abnormal, check whether the color sensor is to blame (check the installation of the color sensor and replace the sensor if necessary).
		Precautions for use	The value changes each time printer PASCAL operation is performed.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 1023
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	800 to 1000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

18.2.2 FEEDER

18.2.2.1 FEEDER > DISPLAY >

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

T-18-18

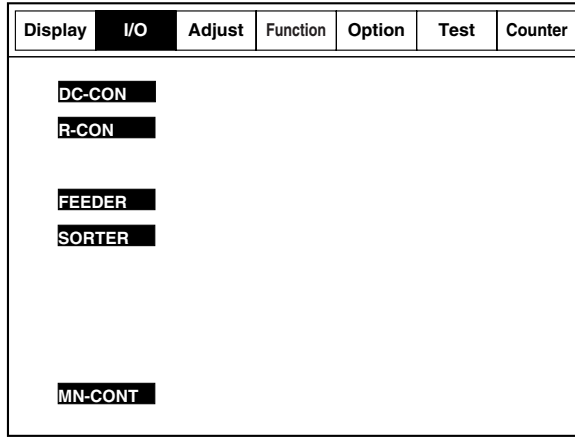
FEEDER > DISPLAY >			
Item	Level	Description	
FEEDSIZE	1	Title	Display of document size detected by ADF
		Purpose of use	-
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Appropriate guideline	-
		Related service modes	COPIER > OPTION > CST > CST-U1, CST-U2
		Additional description and notes	This item is used to display A4, letter and other sheet sizes. For the sheet names, refer to CST-U1 and CST-U2.

18.3 I/O (I/O Display Mode)

18.3.1 Overview

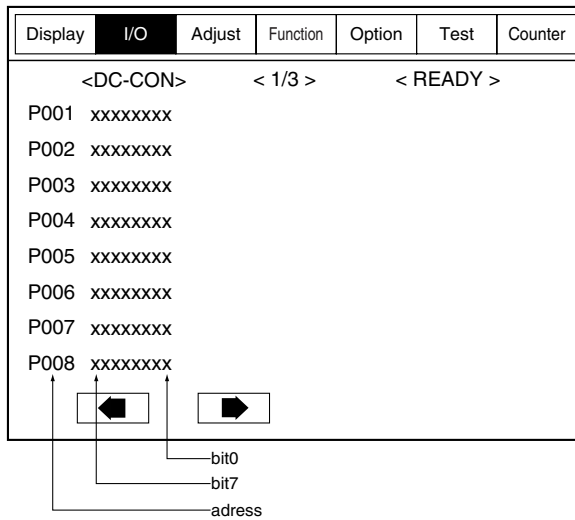
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

The COPIER > I/O screen and items (only items required for services in the field) are shown below.



F-18-14

1. How to view the screen



F-18-15

18.3.2 DC-CON

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

T-18-19

Address	Bit	Name	Symbol	Remarks
P001	15	-		
	14	-		
	13	-		
	12	-		
	11	-		
	10	-		
	9	-		
	8	-		
	7	-		
	6	Registration sensor	PS151	H: Paper is present
	5	-		
	4	Post-registration sensor	PS209	H: Paper is present
	3	Pre-feed sensor 3	PS141	H: Paper is present
2	Pre-feed sensor 2	PS140	H: Paper is present	
1	Pre-feed sensor 1	PS139	H: Paper is present	
0	Pre-registration sensor	PS146	H: Paper is present	

Address	Bit	Name	Symbol	Remarks
P002	15	Transparency sensor (rear)	PS137	H
	14	Transparency sensor (front)	PS138	H
	13	Cross feed roller pressure release HP sensor 3	PS154	L: HP
	12	Cross feed roller pressure release HP sensor 2	PS153	L: HP
	11	Cross feed roller pressure release HP sensor 1	PS152	L: HP
	10	Cross feed sensor 3	PS157	H: Paper is present
	9	Cross feed sensor 2	PS156	H: Paper is present
	8	Cross feed sensor 1	PS155	H: Paper is present
	7	Side registration sensor	PS159	H
	6	Registration roller slide HP sensor	PS150	L: HP
	5	-		
	4	Registration roller release HP sensor 1	PS147	L: HP
	3	Cross feed plate HP sensor	PS149	L
	2	Cross feed pressure release motor HP sensor 3	PS144	L: HP
	1	Cross feed pressure release motor HP sensor 2	PS143	L: HP
	0	Cross feed pressure release motor HP sensor 1	PS142	L: HP
P003	15	-		
	14	-		
	13	-		
	12	-		
	11	-		
	10	-		
	9	-		
	8	-		
	7	-		
	6	-		
	5	-		
	4	-		
	3	ITB steering motor HP sensor	PS104	L: HP
	2	Leading edge registration shutter HP sensor	PS105	L: HP
1	ITB web feed sensor	PS106		
0	ITB web absence sensor	PS109	L: Web is present	
P004	15	-		
	14	-		
	13	-		
	12	-		
	11	Manual feed tray paper path sensor	PS800	L: Paper is present
	10	Manual feed tray last paper sensor	PS801	-
	9	Manual feed tray vertical path 0 sensor	PS802	L: Paper is present
	8	-		
	7	-		
	6	-		
	5	Lower feed sensor 2	PS162	L: Paper is present
	4	Lower feed sensor 1	PS161	L: Paper is present
	3	Vertical path sensor	PS164	L: Paper is present
	2	Left deck merger sensor	PS160	L: Paper is present
1	Right deck merger sensor	PS163	L: Paper is present	
0	POD deck path sensor	PS220	L: Paper is present	

Address	Bit	Name	Symbol	Remarks
P005	15	-		
	14	-		
	13	-		
	12	-		
	11	Registration patch sensor shutter HP sensor	PS133	H: HP
	10	-		
	9	Secondary transfer pressure release motor attachment position sensor	PS205	L: releas
	8	Secondary transfer pressure release HP sensor	PS167	L: releas
	7	-		
	6	-		
	5	Duplexing feed motor 3	M187	H: ON
	4	Duplexing feed motor 2	M186	H: ON
	3	Duplexing feed motor 1	M185	H: ON
	2	Pre-fixing feed sensor 1	PS172	H: Paper is present
1	Pre-fixing feed sensor 2	PS200	L: Paper is present	
0	Secondary transfer outlet sensor	PS166	H: Paper is present	
P006 (Left deck)	15	Left deck middle paper surface sensor	PS705	L: Paper is absent H: Paper is present
	14	Left deck suction completion sensor	PS706	L: completion H: noncompletion
	13	Left deck paper sensor	PS702	L: Paper is absent H: Paper is present
	12	Left deck pull-out sensor	PS701	L: Paper is absent H: Paper is present
	11	Left deck lifter upper limit sensor	PS714	L: Nomal H: upper limit
	10	Left deck foreign matter sensor	PS713	L: foreign matter is absent H: foreign matter is present
	9	Left deck lower limit paper surface sensor	PS704	L: Paper is absent H: Paper is present
	8	Left deck upper limit paper surface sensor	PS703	L: Paper is absent H: Paper is present
	7	-		
	6	Excessive heating of the air heater		L: Nomal H: High temperature
	5	Low temperature of air heater		L: low temperature H: Normal
	4	-		
	3	-		
	2	-		
1	-			
0	-			
P007 (Right deck)	15	Right deck middle paper surface sensor	PS605	L: Paper is absent H: Paper is present
	14	Right deck suction completion sensor	PS606	L: completion H: noncompletion
	13	Right deck paper sensor	PS602	L: Paper is absent H: Paper is present
	12	Right deck pull-out sensor	PS601	L: Paper is absent H: Paper is present
	11	Right deck lifter upper limit sensor	PS614	L: Nomal H: upper limit
	10	Right deck foreign matter sensor	PS613	L: foreign matter is absent H: foreign matter is present
	9	Right deck lower limit paper surface sensor	PS604	L: Paper is absent H: Paper is present
	8	Right deck upper limit paper surface sensor	PS603	L: Paper is absent H: Paper is present
	7	-		
	6	Excessive heating of the air heater		L: Nomal H: High temperature
	5	Low temperature of air heater		L: low temperature H: Normal
	4	-		
	3	-		
	2	-		
1	-			
0	-			

Address	Bit	Name	Symbol	Remarks
P008	15	-		
	14			
	13	Primary fixing pressure belt displacement HP sensor	PS308	L: CCW H: CW
	12	Primary fixing pressure belt position sensor (rear)	PS302	H: Error L: Normal
	11	Primary fixing pressure belt position sensor (front)	PS301	H: Error L: Normal
	10	Secondary fixing driving motor	M305	1: Locked
	9	Primary fixing driving motor	M300	2: Locked
	8	Primary fixing web HP sensor	PS309	H: Attached L: Detached
	7	Primary fixing inner delivery sensor2	PS307	H: Paper is present L: Paper is absent
	6	Primary fixing external heat roller HP sensor	PS306	H: Attached L: Detached
	5	Primary fixing inner delivery sensor1	PS305	H: Paper is present L: Paper is absent
	4	Secondary fixing external heat roller HP sensor	PS314	H: Attached L: Detached
	3	Primary fixing pressure belt pressure sensor	PS303	H: Attached L: Detached
	2	Primary fixing pressure belt HP sensor	PS300	H: Detached L: Attached
	1	Reverse/external delivery driverPCB-J4111-CNCT-ERR	UN310	0: Error
	0	Reverse/external delivery driver PCB-J4110-CNCT-ERR	UN310	0: Error
P009	15	Merger path upper sensor	PS325	H: Paper is absent L: Paper is present
	14	Delivery reverse flapper HP sensor	PS334	H: Tandem L: Bypass
	13	Bypass sensor 2	PS323	H: Paper is absent L: Paper is present
	12	Bypass sensor 1	PS322	H: Paper is absent L: Paper is present
	11	Merger path lower sensor	PS321	H: Paper is absent L: Paper is present
	10	Color sensor HP sensor	PS380	DEF
	9	Reverse guide open/close sensor	PS361	DEF
	8	Delivery reverse front sensor	PS342	H: Paper is absent L: Paper is present
	7	Duplexing reverse rear sensor	PS341	H: Paper is absent L: Paper is present
	6	Duplexing reverse rear sensor	PS341	H: Paper is absent L: Paper is present
	5	Delivery sensor 3	PS339	H: Paper is absent L: Paper is present
	4	Delivery sensor 2	PS338	H: Paper is absent L: Paper is present
	3	Delivery sensor 1	PS337	H: Paper is absent L: Paper is present
	2	Delivery reverse sensor 2	PS336	H: Paper is absent L: Paper is present
	1	Delivery reverse sensor 1	PS335	H: Paper is absent L: Paper is present
	0	Delivery upper guide open/close sensor	PS360	DEF
P010	15	Delivery reverse flapper HP sensor	PS334	H: HP L: Duplexing
	14	Delivery decurler HP sensor 2	PS333	H: HP L: Other
	13	Delivery decurler HP sensor 1	PS332	H: HP L: Other
	12	Secondary fixing web absent alert sensor	PS320	H: web absent alert L: Web is present
	11	Secondary fixing web absent sensor	PS319	H: Webr is absent L: Web is present
	10	Secondary fixing web HP sensor	PS318	H: Attached L: Detached
	9	Secondary fixing inner delivery sensor2	PS317	H: Paper is present L: Paper is absent
	8	Primary fixing inlet sensor	PS304	H: Paper is present L: Paper is absent
	7	Secondary fixing inner delivery sensor1	PS313	H: Paper is present L: Paper is absent
	6	Secondary fixing inlet sensor	PS312	H: Paper is present L: Paper is absent
	5	Secondary fixing pressure roller pressure sensor	PS316	H: Attached L: Detached
	4	Secondary fixing pressure roller HP sensor	PS315	H: Detached L: Attached
	3	-		
	2	-		
	1	-		
	0	-		

Address	Bit	Name	Symbol	Remarks
P011	15	Secondary fixing external driver PCB-5V-ERR	UN305	0: Error
	14	Secondary fixing external driver PCB-24V-ERR	UN305	0: Error
	13	Secondary fixing inner driver PCB-5V-ERR	UN317	0: Error
	12	Secondary fixing inner driver PCB-24V-ERR	UN317	0: Error
	11	Primary fixing external driver PCB-5V-ERR	UN304	0: Error
	10	Primary fixing external driver PCB-24V-ERR	UN304	0: Error
	9	Primary fixing inner driver PCB-5V-ERR	UN316	0: Error
	8	Primary fixing inner driver PCB-24V-ERR	UN316	0: Error
	7	Waste toner delivery lock detection switch	SW300	H: Abnormal L: Normal
	6	-		
	5	Duplexing Left guide open/close sensor	PS368	H: open L: close
	4	Duplexing Right guide open/close sensor	PS367	H: open L: close
	3	Duplexing inlet guide open/close sensor	PS366	H: guide open L: guide close
	2	Merger lower guide open/close sensor	PS365	H: guide open L: guide close
	1	Merger upper guide open/close sensor	PS364	H: guide open L: guide close
	0	Bypass guide open/close sensor	PS363	H: guide open L: guide close
P012	15	Tandem guide open/close sensor	PS362	H: guide open L: guide close
	14	Bypass decurler disengage/engage motor HP sensor	PS353	
	13	Duplexing path sub station outlet sensor	PS350	H: Paper is absent L: Paper is present
	12	Duplexing standby sensor 6	PS347	H: Paper is absent L: Paper is present
	11	Duplexing standby sensor 5	PS346	H: Paper is absent L: Paper is present
	10	Duplexing standby sensor 4	PS345	H: Paper is absent L: Paper is present
	9	Duplexing path inlet sensor	PS344	H: Paper is absent L: Paper is present
	8	Duplexing decurler HP sensor	PS343	H: HP L: Other
	7	Waste toner door switch sensor	PS329	H: open L: Close
	6	Waste toner container sensor	PS328	H: toner container is absent L: toner container is present
	5	Tandem sensor 2	PS327	H: Paper is absent L: Paper is present
	4	Tandem sensor 1	PS326	H: Paper is absent L: Paper is present
	3	-		
	2	-		
	1	-		
	0	-		
P013	15	-		
	14	-		
	13	-		
	12	-		
	11	-		
	10	-		
	9	-		
	8	-		
	7	-		
	6	-		
	5	-		
	4	-		
	3	-		
	2	-		
	1	-		
	0	-		

Address	Bit	Name	Symbol	Remarks
P014	15	-		
	14	-		
	13	-		
	12	-		
	11	-		
	10	-		
	9	-		
	8	-		
	7	-		
	6	-		
	5	-		
	4	-		
	3	-		
	2	-		
	1	-		
	0	-		
P015	15	-		
	14	Sub hopper toner level sensor 1 (Bk)	TS102	H: Toner is absent
	13	-		
	12	Sub hopper toner level sensor 1 (C)	TS100	H: Toner is absent
	11	-		
	10	Sub hopper toner level sensor 1 (M)	TS104	H: Toner is absent
	9	-		
	8	Sub hopper toner level sensor 1 (Y)	TS106	H: Toner is absent
	7	Patch sensor cleaning motor HP sensor (Bk)	PS208	H: HP
	6	Patch sensor cleaning motor HP sensor (C)	PS202	H: HP
	5	Patch sensor cleaning motor HP sensor (M)	PS206	H: HP
	4	Patch sensor cleaning motor HP sensor (Y)	PS215	H: HP
	3	Primary charging wire cleaning motor HP sensor (Bk)	PS243	H: HP
	2	Primary charging wire cleaning motor HP sensor (C)	PS242	H: HP
1	Primary charging wire cleaning motor HP sensor (M)	PS241	H: HP	
0	Primary charging wire cleaning motor HP sensor (Y)	PS240	H: HP	
P016	15	-		
	14	-		
	13	-		
	12	-		
	11	-		
	10	-		
	9	-		
	8	-		
	7	-		
	6	-		
	5	-		
	4	-		
	3	-		
	2	-		
	1	-		
	0	-		

Address	Bit	Name	Symbol	Remarks
P017	15	-		
	14	-		
	13	-		
	12	-		
	11	-		
	10	-		
	9	-		
	8	-		
	7	Detection of 24V at Developing high-voltage PCB (Bk)	UN136	H: Error
	6	Detection of connection of the Developing high-voltage PCB (Bk)	UN136	H: Connected
	5	Detection of 24V at Developing high-voltage PCB (C)	UN135	H: Error
	4	Detection of connection of the Developing high-voltage PCB (C)	UN135	H: Connected
	3	Detection of 24V at Developing high-voltage PCB (M)	UN138	H: Error
	2	Detection of connection of the Developing high-voltage PCB (M)	UN138	H: Connected
1	Detection of 24V at Developing high-voltage PCB (Y)	UN137	H: Error	
0	Detection of connection of the Developing high-voltage PCB (Y)	UN137	H: Connected	
P018	15	Detection of 24V at Primary charging high-voltage PCB (Bk)	UN140	H: Error
	14	Detection of connection of the Primary charging high-voltage PCB (Bk)	UN140	H: Connected
	13	Detection of 24V at Primary charging high-voltage PCB (C)	UN139	H: Error
	12	Detection of connection of the Primary charging high-voltage PCB (C)	UN139	H: Connected
	11	Detection of 24V at Primary charging high-voltage PCB (M)	UN138	H: Error
	10	Detection of connection of the Primary charging high-voltage PCB (M)	UN138	H: Connected
	9	Detection of 24V at Primary charging high-voltage PCB (Y)	UN137	H: Error
	8	Detection of connection of the Primary charging high-voltage PCB (Y)	UN137	H: Connected
	7	-		
	6	-		
	5	-		
	4	-		
	3	-		
	2	-		
1	-			
0	-			
P019	15	-		
	14	-		
	13	-		
	12	-		
	11	Detection of connection of the Registration feed driver PCB (left)J1023	UN104	H: Connected
	10	Detection of connection of the Registration feed driver PCB (left)1022	UN104	H: Connected
	9	Detection of connection of the Registration feed driver PCB (right)J1021	UN104	H: Connected
	8	Detection of connection of the Registration feed driver PCB (right)J1020	UN104	H: Connected
	7	Detection of 24VB at Registration feed driver PCB (left)	UN104	H: Error
	6	Detection of 24VA at Registration feed driver PCB (left)	UN104	H: Error
	5	Detection of 13V at Registration feed driver PCB (left)	UN104	H: Error
	4	Detection of 5V at Registration feed driver PCB (left)	UN104	H: Error
	3	Detection of 24VB at Registration feed driver PCB (right)	UN104	H: Error
	2	Detection of 24AV at Registration feed driver PCB (right)	UN104	H: Error
1	Detection of 13V at Registration feed driver PCB (right)	UN104	H: Error	
0	Detection of 24V at Registration feed driver PCB (right)	UN104	H: Error	

Address	Bit	Name	Symbol	Remarks
P020	15	-		
	14	-		
	13	-		
	12	-		
	11	Detection of 24V at Secondary transfer high-voltage PCB	UN116	H: Error
	10	Detection of connection of the Secondary transfer high-voltage PCB	UN116	H: Connected
	9	Detection of 24V at ITB pre-transfer charging high-voltage PCB	UN150	H: Error
	8	Detection of connection of the ITB pre-transfer charging high-voltage PCB	UN150	H: Connected
	7	-		
	6	ITB web motor	M112	L: Error
	5	ITB pre-transfer charging wire cleaning motor	M110	L: Error
	4	Pre-transfer exhausting fan	FM115	L: Error
	3	Detection of connection of the ITB driver PCB (center)J1034	UN217	H: Connected
	2	Detection of connection of the ITB driver PCB (center)J1033	UN217	H: Connected
	1	Detection of connection of the ITB driver PCB (right)J1032	UN219	H: Connected
0	Detection of connection of the ITB driver PCB (right)J1032	UN219	H: Connected	
P021	15	-		
	14	Detection of 24V at ITB driver PCB (right)	UN219	H: Error
	13	Detection of 24V at ITB driver PCB (right)	UN219	H: Error
	12	Detection of 24V at ITB driver PCB (right)	UN219	H: Error
	11	Detection of 24V at ITB driver PCB (center) 2	UN217	H: Error
	10	Detection of 24V at ITB driver PCB (center) 1	UN217	H: Error
	9	Detection of 13V at ITB driver PCB (center)	UN217	H: Error
	8	Detection of 5V at ITB driver PCB (center)	UN217	H: Error
	7	-		
	6	-		
	5	-		
	4	-		
	3	-		
	2	-		
	1	-		
0	-			
P022	15	Detection of 24V at Drum driver PCB (Bk)	UN128	H: Error
	14	Detection of 13V at Drum driver PCB (Bk)	UN128	H: Error
	13	Detection of 5V at Drum driver PCB (Bk)	UN128	H: Error
	12	Detection of connection of the Drum driver PCB (Bk) (J1038)	UN128	H: Connected
	11	Detection of 24V at Drum driver PCB (C)	UN127	H: Error
	10	Detection of 13V at Drum driver PCB (C)	UN127	H: Error
	9	Detection of 5V at Drum driver PCB (C)	UN127	H: Error
	8	Detection of connection of the Drum driver PCB (C) (J1037)	UN127	H: Connected
	7	Detection of 24V at Drum driver PCB (M)	UN126	H: Error
	6	Detection of 13V at Drum driver PCB (M)	UN126	H: Error
	5	Detection of 5V at Drum driver PCB (M)	UN126	H: Error
	4	Detection of connection of the Drum driver PCB (M) (J1036)	UN126	H: Connected
	3	Detection of 24V at Drum driver PCB (Y)	UN125	H: Error
	2	Detection of 13V at Drum driver PCB (Y)	UN125	H: Error
	1	Detection of 5V at Drum driver PCB (Y)	UN125	H: Error
0	Detection of connection of the Drum driver PCB (Y) (J1035)	UN125	H: Connected	

Address	Bit	Name	Symbol	Remarks
P023	15	-		
	14	-		
	13	-		
	12	-		
	11	Developing motor (Bk)	M121	L: Error
	10	Developing motor (C)	M115	L: Error
	9	Developing motor (M)	M127	L: Error
	8	Developing motor (Y)	M133	L: Error
	7	-		
	6	-		
	5	-		
	4	-		
	3	-		
	2	-		
	1	-		
	0	-		
P024	15	-		
	14	-		
	13	-		
	12	-		
	11	-		
	10	-		
	9	Detection of 13V at DC controller PCB 1-1	UN198	H: Error
	8	Detection of 24V at DC controller PCB 1-3	UN240	H: Error
	7	-		
	6	-		
	5	-		
	4	-		
	3	-		
	2	-		
	1	-		
	0	-		
P025	15	-		
	14	-		
	13	Lower feed guide open/close sensor	PS231	L: open
	12	-		
	11	Main station rear right cooling fan	FM143	
	10	Main station right cooling fan 3	FM142	
	9	Main station right cooling fan 2	FM141	
	8	Main station right cooling fan 1	FM140	
	7	Detection of connection of the Vertical path/lower feed driver PCB (J1057)	UN105	H: Connected
	6	Detection of connection of the Vertical path/lower feed driver PCB (J1019)	UN105	H: Connected
	5	Detection of connection of the Vertical path/lower feed driver PCB (J1018)	UN105	H: Connected
	4	Detection of 24V at Vertical path/lower feed driver PCB	UN105	H: Error
	3	Detection of 24V at Vertical path/lower feed driver PCB	UN105	H: Error
	2	Detection of 24V at Vertical path/lower feed driver PCB	UN105	H: Error
	1	Detection of 13V at Vertical path/lower feed driver PCB	UN105	H: Error
	0	Detection of 5V at Vertical path/lower feed driver PCB	UN105	H: Error

Address	Bit	Name	Symbol	Remarks
P026	15	-		
	14	-		
	13	-		
	12	-		
	11	-		
	10	-		
	9	-		
	8	-		
	7	-		
	6	-		
	5	-		
	4	-		
	3	-		
	2	-		
	1	Detection of connection of the Right deck pickup driver PCB (J1060)		H: Connected
	0	Detection of connection of the Left deck pickup driver PCB (J1064)		H: Connected
P027	15	-		
	14	-		
	13	Detection of 24V at DC controller PCB 1-2	UN124	H: Error
	12	Detection of 24V at DC controller PCB 1-2	UN124	H: Error
	11	Detection of 24V at Primary transfer high-voltage PCB (Y)	UN112	H: Error
	10	Detection of 24V at Primary transfer high-voltage PCB (C)	UN114	H: Error
	9	Detection of 24V at Primary transfer high-voltage PCB (M)	UN113	H: Error
	8	Detection of 24V at Primary transfer high-voltage PCB (Y)	UN112	H: Error
	7	Detection of 24V at Hopper driver PCB (Bk)	UN168	H: Error
	6	Detection of 24V at Hopper driver PCB (Bk)	UN168	H: Error
	5	Detection of 24V at Hopper driver PCB (C)	UN167	H: Error
	4	Detection of 24V at Hopper driver PCB (C)	UN167	H: Error
	3	Detection of 24V at Hopper driver PCB (M)	UN166	H: Error
	2	Detection of 24V at Hopper driver PCB (M)	UN166	H: Error
	1	Detection of 24V at Hopper driver PCB (Y)	UN165	H: Error
	0	Detection of 24V at Hopper driver PCB (Y)	UN165	H: Error
P028	15	Process unit cooling fan (Bk)	FM109	H: Stopped
	14	Detection of 24V at Process unit driver PCB (Bk)	UN164	H: Error
	13	Detection of 13V at Process unit driver PCB (Bk)	UN164	H: Error
	12	Detection of 5V at Process unit driver PCB (Bk)	UN164	H: Error
	11	Process unit cooling fan (C)	FM107	H: Stopped
	10	Detection of 24V at Process unit driver PCB (C)	UN163	H: Error
	9	Detection of 13V at Process unit driver PCB (C)	UN163	H: Error
	8	Detection of 5V at Process unit driver PCB (C)	UN163	H: Error
	7	Process unit cooling fan (M)	FM111	H: Stopped
	6	Detection of 24V at Process unit driver PCB (M)	UN162	H: Error
	5	Detection of 13V at Process unit driver PCB (M)	UN162	H: Error
	4	Detection of 5V at Process unit driver PCB (M)	UN162	H: Error
	3	Process unit cooling fan (Y)	FM113	H: Stopped
	2	Detection of 24V at Process unit cooling fan (Y)	UN161	H: Error
	1	Detection of 13V at Process unit cooling fan (Y)	UN161	H: Error
	0	Detection of 5V at Process unit cooling fan (Y)	UN161	H: Error

Address	Bit	Name	Symbol	Remarks
P029	15	-		
	14	-		
	13	-		
	12	Detection of 24V at Secondary transfer/duplexing driver PCB 3	UN106	H: Error
	11	Detection of 24V at Secondary transfer/duplexing driver PCB 2	UN106	H: Error
	10	Detection of 24V at Secondary transfer/duplexing driver PCB 1	UN106	H: Error
	9	Detection of 13V at Secondary transfer/duplexing driver PCB	UN106	H: Error
	8	Detection of 5V at Secondary transfer/duplexing driver PCB	UN106	H: Error
	7	-		
	6	Detection of 24V at Registration patch sensor driver PCB	UN159	H: Error
	5	Detection of 13V at Registration patch sensor driver PCB	UN159	H: Error
	4	Detection of 5V at Registration patch sensor driver PCB	UN159	H: Error
	3	-		
	2	Detection of 5V at ITB driver PCB (left)	UN218	H: Error
	1	Detection of 24V at Pre-fixing feed driver PCB	UN107	H: Error
0	Detection of 5V at Pre-fixing feed driver PCB	UN107	H: Error	
P030	15	Detection of 24V at Secondary transfer cleaner high-voltage PCB	UN109	H: Error
	14	Detection of 24V at Secondary transfer high-voltage PCB	UN116	H: Error
	13	Detection of 24V at ITB cleaner high-voltage PCB (downstream)	UN149	H: Error
	12	Detection of 24V at ITB cleaner high-voltage PCB (upstream)	UN148	H: Error
	11	Detection of connection of the Primary transfer high-voltage PCB (Bk) (J1042B)	UN115	H: Connected
	10	Detection of connection of the Primary transfer high-voltage PCB (C) (J1042A)	UN114	H: Connected
	9	Detection of connection of the Primary transfer high-voltage PCB (M) (J1041B)	UN113	H: Connected
	8	Detection of connection of the Primary transfer high-voltage PCB (Y) (J1041A)	UN112	H: Connected
	7	Detection of connection of the Post-secondary transfer static elimination high-voltage PCB (J1043B)	UN108	H: Connected
	6	Detection of connection of the Secondary transfer cleaner high-voltage PCB (J1043A)	UN109	H: Connected
	5	Detection of connection of the ITB cleaner high-voltage PCB (downstream) (J1046B)	UN149	H: Connected
	4	Detection of connection of the ITB cleaner high-voltage PCB (upstream) (J1046A)	UN148	H: Connected
	3	Detection of connection of the Hopper driver PCB (Bk) (J1017)	UN168	H: Connected
	2	Detection of connection of the Hopper driver PCB (C) (J1016)	UN167	H: Connected
	1	Detection of connection of the Hopper driver PCB (M) (J1015)	UN166	H: Connected
0	Detection of connection of the Hopper driver PCB (Y) (J1014)	UN165	H: Connected	

Address	Bit	Name	Symbol	Remarks
P031	15	Detection of connection of the Process unit driver PCB (Bk) 2(J1013)	UN164	H: Connected
	14	Detection of connection of the Process unit driver PCB (Bk) 1(J1012)	UN164	H: Connected
	13	Detection of connection of the Process unit driver PCB (C) 2(J1011)	UN167	H: Connected
	12	Detection of connection of the Process unit driver PCB (C) 1(J1010)	UN167	H: Connected
	11	Detection of connection of the Process unit driver PCB (M) 1(J1009)	UN166	H: Connected
	10	Detection of connection of the Process unit driver PCB (M) 1(J1008)	UN166	H: Connected
	9	Detection of connection of the Process unit driver PCB (Y) 1(J1007)	UN165	H: Connected
	8	Detection of connection of the Process unit driver PCB (Y) 1(J1006)	UN165	H: Connected
	7	-		
	6	Detection of connection of the Color sensor control PCB 2 (J1076B)	UN309	H: Connected
	5	Detection of connection of the Color sensor control PCB 1 (J1076A)	UN308	H: Connected
	4	Detection of connection of the Secondary fixing heater driver PCB (J1004)	UN307	H: Connected
	3	Detection of connection of the Primary fixing heater driver PCB (J1003)	UN306	H: Connected
	2	Detection of connection of the Registration patch sensor driver PCB (J1029)	UN159	H: Connected
	1	Detection of connection of the Registration patch sensor driver PCB (J1028)	UN159	H: Connected
	0	Detection of connection of the ITB driver PCB (left) (J1046)	UN218	H: Connected
P032	15	Detection of connection of the Duplexing feed driver PCB 2(J1071)	UN311	H: Connected
	14	Detection of connection of the Duplexing feed driver PCB 1(J1070)	UN311	H: Connected
	13	Detection of connection of the Sub station power connecting PCB (J1002)	UN301	H: Connected
	12	Detection of connection of the Main station power supply connect PCB (J1001)	UN102	H: Connected
	11	Detection of connection of the Pre-fixing feed driver PCB (J1027)	UN107	H: Connected
	10	Detection of connection of the Pre-fixing feed driver PCB (J1026)	UN107	H: Connected
	9	Detection of connection of the Secondary transfer/duplexing driver PCB (J1025)	UN106	H: Connected
	8	Detection of connection of the Secondary transfer/duplexing driver PCB (J1024)	UN106	H: Connected
	7	Toner container motor (Bk)	M144	L: Stopped
	6	Toner container motor (C)	M143	L: Stopped
	5	Toner container motor (M)	M145	L: Stopped
	4	Toner container motor (Y)	M146	L: Stopped
	3	Toner container slide motor (Bk)	M192	L: Stopped
	2	Toner container slide motor (C)	M190	L: Stopped
	1	Toner container slide motor (M)	M191	L: Stopped
	0	Toner container slide motor (Y)	M193	L: Stopped

Address	Bit	Name	Symbol	Remarks
P033	15	Hopper motor (Bk)	M196	L: Stopped
	14	Hopper motor (C)	M197	L: Stopped
	13	Hopper motor (M)	M198	L: Stopped
	12	Hopper motor (Y)	M195	L: Stopped
	11	Primary charging wire cleaning motor (Bk)	M124	L: Stopped
	10	Primary charging wire cleaning motor (C)	M118	L: Stopped
	9	Primary charging wire cleaning motor (M)	M130	L: Stopped
	8	Primary charging wire cleaning motor (Y)	M136	L: Stopped
	7	Sub hopper motor (Bk)	M125	L: Stopped
	6	Sub hopper motor (C)	M119	L: Stopped
	5	Sub hopper motor (M)	M131	L: Stopped
	4	Sub hopper motor (Y)	M137	L: Stopped
	3	Drum cleaner motor (Bk)	M122	L: Stopped
	2	Drum cleaner motor (C)	M116	L: Stopped
	1	Drum cleaner motor (M)	M128	L: Stopped
	0	Drum cleaner motor (Y)	M134	L: Stopped
P034	15	Drum patch sensor cleaning motor (Bk)	M123	L: Stopped
	14	Drum patch sensor cleaning motor (C)	M117	L: Stopped
	13	Drum patch sensor cleaning motor (M)	M129	L: Stopped
	12	Drum patch sensor cleaning motor (Y)	M135	L: Stopped
	11	ITB web releasing motor	M113	L: Stopped
	10	ITB cleaner motor	M108	L: Stopped
	9	Buffer motor	M179	L: Stopped
	8	Drum waste toner feed motor	M180	L: Stopped
	7	Process unit exhausting fan (Bk)	FM110	L: Stopped
	6	Process unit cooling fan (Bk)	FM109	L: Stopped
	5	Process unit exhausting fan (C)	FM108	L: Stopped
	4	Process unit cooling fan (C)	FM107	L: Stopped
	3	Process unit exhausting fan (M)	FM112	L: Stopped
	2	Process unit cooling fan (M)	FM111	L: Stopped
	1	Process unit exhausting fan (Y)	FM114	L: Stopped
	0	Process unit cooling fan (Y)	FM113	L: Stopped
P035	15	-		
	14	-		
	13	-		
	12	-		
	11	Laser cooling fan (Bk)	FM103	L: Stopped
	10	Laser cooling fan (C)	FM102	L: Stopped
	9	Laser cooling fan (M)	FM104	L: Stopped
	8	Laser cooling fan (Y)	FM105	L: Stopped
	7	-		
	6	-		
	5	-		
	4	-		
	3	Power supply cooling fan 4	FM505	L: Stopped
	2	Power supply cooling fan 3	FM504	L: Stopped
	1	Power supply cooling fan 2	FM503	L: Stopped
	0	Power supply cooling fan 1	FM502	L: Stopped

Address	Bit	Name	Symbol	Remarks
P036	15	-		
	14	Secondary transfer/duplexing driver PCB cooling fan	FM135	L: Stopped
	13	Pre-fixing feed rear left fan	FM137	L: Stopped
	12	Pre-fixing feed front left fan	FM134	L: Stopped
	11	-		
	10	-		
	9	Pre-fixing feed front right fan	FM121	L: Stopped
	8	Pre-fixing feed rear right fan	FM120	L: Stopped
	7	Hopper container presence/absence sensor (Bk)	PS124	L: present
	6	Hopper container presence/absence sensor (C)	PS123	L: present
	5	Hopper container presence/absence sensor (M)	PS125	L: present
	4	Hopper container presence/absence sensor (Y)	PS126	L: present
	3	Hopper cover sensor (Bk)	PS128	L: close
	2	Hopper cover sensor (C)	PS127	L: close
	1	Hopper cover sensor (M)	PS129	L: close
	0	Hopper cover sensor (Y)	PS130	L: close
P037	15	Toner container slide sensor 2(Bk)	PS204	L
	14	Toner container slide sensor 1(Bk)	PS203	L
	13	Toner container slide sensor 2(C)	PS201	L
	12	Toner container slide sensor 1(C)	PS219	L
	11	Toner container slide sensor 2(M)	PS213	L
	10	Toner container slide sensor 1(M)	PS207	L
	9	Toner container slide sensor 2(Y)	PS216	L
	8	Toner container slide sensor 1(Y)	PS218	L
	7	Hopper cover switch (Bk)	SW102	L: Active
	6	Hopper cover switch (C)	SW101	L: Active
	5	Hopper cover switch (M)	SW103	L: Active
	4	Hopper cover switch (Y)	SW104	L: Active
	3	-		
	2	Drum waste toner lock detection switch	SW109	H: Active
	1	Transfer waste toner lock detection switch	SW110	H: Active
	0	Secondary transfer waste toner error sensor	PS168	H: Active
P038	15	-		
	14	-		
	13	-		
	12	-		
	11	-		
	10	-		
	9	-		
	8	-		
	7	Hopper toner level sensor 1 (Y)	TS130	L: Toner is absent
	6	Hopper toner level sensor 1 (M)	TS132	L: Toner is absent
	5	Hopper toner level sensor 2 (Bk)	TS137	L: Toner is absent
	4	Hopper toner level sensor 2 (M)	TS133	L: Toner is absent
	3	Hopper toner level sensor 2 (Y)	TS131	L: Toner is absent
	2	Hopper toner level sensor 1 (C)	TS134	L: Toner is absent
	1	Hopper toner level sensor 2 (C)	TS135	L: Toner is absent
	0	Hopper toner level sensor 1 (Bk)	TS136	L: Toner is absent

Address	Bit	Name	Symbol	Remarks
P039	15	-		
	14	-		
	13	-		
	12	-		
	11	-		
	10	-		
	9	-		
	8	-		
	7	-		
	6	-		
	5	-		
	4	-		
	3	-		
	2	-		
	1	-		
	0	-		
P040	15	-		
	14	-		
	13	-		
	12	-		
	11	DCP24V-4-ERR	UN102	H: Error
	10	DCP24V-3-ERR	UN102	H: Error
	9	DCP24V-2-ERR	UN102	H: Error
	8	DCP24V-1-ERR	UN102	H: Error
	7	-		
	6	-		
	5	Vertical path cover open/close sensor	PS174	H: close
	4	Manual feed tray cover open/close sensor	PS173	H: close
	3	Sub station front left door open/close sensor	PS331	H: close
	2	Sub station front right door open/close sensor	PS330	H: close
	1	Main station left front cover open/close sensor	PS176	H: close
	0	Main station right front cover open/close sensor	PS175	H: close
P041	15	Laser cooling fan (Bk)	FM103	H: ON
	14	Laser cooling fan (C)	FM102	H: ON
	13	Laser cooling fan (M)	FM104	H: ON
	12	Laser cooling fan (Y)	FM105	H: ON
	11	-		
	10	-		
	9	-		
	8	-		
	7	-		
	6	-		
	5	-		
	4	-		
	3	-		
	2	-		
	1	-		
	0	-		

Address	Bit	Name	Symbol	Remarks
P042	15	Detection of 5V at Left deck indicator driver PCB	UN701	L: Normal H: Error
	14	Detection of 5V at Left deck driver PCB	UN702	L: Normal H: Error
	13	Detection of 24V at Left deck driver PCB	UN702	L: Normal H: Error
	12	Detection of 24V at Left deck driver PCB	UN702	L: Normal H: Error
	11	Detection of connection of the Left deck indicator driver PCB (J2101)	UN701	L: Error H: Connected
	10	Left deck interlock switch	SW703	L: free H: push
	9	Detection of locking of the Left deck side left fan	FM707	L: Error H: Running
	8	Detection of locking of the Left deck side right fan	FM706	L: Error H: Running
	7	Detection of connection of the Left deck driver PCB (J2102)	UN702	L: Error H: Connected
	6	-		
	5	Left deck lifter lower limit sensor	PS712	L: Lower limit H: other
	4	Left deck supply position sensor	PS709	L: supply position H: other
	3	Detection of connection of the Left deck indicator driver PCB (J2150)	UN701	L: Error H: Connected
	2	Detection of 5V at Left deck pickup driver PCB	UN703	L: Normal H: Error
	1	Detection of 24V at Left deck pickup driver PCB	UN703	L: Normal H: Error
0	Right deck open/close sensor	PS607	L: Open H: Close	
P043	15	Detection of 5V at Right deck indicator driver PCB	UN601	L: Normal H: Error
	14	Detection of 5V at Right deck driver PCB	UN602	L: Normal H: Error
	13	Detection of 12V at Right deck driver PCB	UN602	L: Normal H: Error
	12	Detection of 24V at Right deck driver PCB	UN602	L: Normal H: Error
	11	Detection of connection of the Right deck indicator driver PCB (J2101)	UN601	L: Error H: Connected
	10	Right deck interlock switch	SW603	L: free H: push
	9	Detection of locking of the Right deck side left fan	FM607	L: Error H: Running
	8	Detection of locking of the Right deck side rihft fan	FM606	L: Error H: Running
	7	Detection of connection of the Right deck driver PCB (J2102)	UN602	L: Error H: Connected
	6	-		
	5	Right deck lifter lower limit sensor	PS612	L: Lower limit H: other
	4	Right deck supply position sensor	PS609	L: supply position H: other
	3	Detection of connection of the Right deck indicator driver PCB (J2150)	UN601	L: Error H: Connected
	2	Detection of 5V at Right deck pickup driver PCB	UN603	L: Normal H: Error
	1	Detection of 24V at Right deck pickup driver PCB	UN603	L: Normal H: Error
0	Right deck open/close sensor	PS607	L: Open H: Close	
P044	15	-		
	14	-		
	13	-		
	12	Detection of connection of the Secondary fixing external driver PCB (J4193)	UN305	0: Error
	11	Detection of connection of the Secondary fixing external driver PCB (J4192)	UN305	0: Error
	10	Detection of connection of the Secondary fixing external driver PCB (J4360)	UN317	0: Error
	9	-		
	8	-		
	7	-		
	6	Detection of connection of the Primary fixing external driver PCB (J4193)	UN304	0: Error
	5	Detection of connection of the Primary fixing external driver PCB (J4192)	UN304	0: Error
	4	Detection of connection of the Primary fixing external driver PCB (J4360)	UN316	0: Error
	3	-		
	2	-		
	1	-		
0	-			

Address	Bit	Name	Symbol	Remarks
P045	15	-		
	14	-		
	13	-		
	12	-		
	11	-		
	10	-		
	9	-		
	8	-		
	7	-		
	6	-		
	5	-		
	4	-		
	3	-		
	2	-		
	1	-		
	0	-		
P046	15	-		
	14	-		
	13	-		
	12	-		
	11	-		
	10	-		
	9	-		
	8	-		
	7	-		
	6	-		
	5	-		
	4	-		
	3	-		
	2	-		
	1	-		
	0	-		
P047	15	Secondary fixing heat exhaust fan-ERR	FM314	0: Error
	14	Primary fixing inside delivery cooling fan-ERR	FM313	0: Error
	13	Primary fixing heat exhaust fan-ERR	FM312	0: Error
	12	Secondary sub station power unit cooling fan-ERR	FM311	0: Error
	11	Primary sub station power unit cooling fan-ERR	FM310	0: Error
	10			
	9			
	8			
	7			
	6			
	5	Primary fixing separating cooling fan 4-ERR	FM334	0: Error
	4	Primary fixing separating cooling fan 3-ERR	FM333	0: Error
	3	Primary fixing separating cooling fan 2-ERR	FM332	0: Error
	2	Primary fixing separating cooling fan 1-ERR	FM331	0: Error
	1			
	0			

Address	Bit	Name	Symbol	Remarks
P048	15			
	14			
	13	Reverse/external delivery driver PCB 5V-ERR	UN310	0: Error
	12	Reverse/external delivery driver PCB24V-ERR-3		0: Error
	11	Reverse/external delivery driver PCB24V-ERR-2		0: Error
	10	Reverse/external delivery driver PCB24V-ERR-1		0: Error
	9	FUSER-CARRYING-5V-ERR		0: Error
	8	FUSER-CARRYING-24V-ERR-5		0: Error
	7	FUSER-CARRYING-24V-ERR-4		0: Error
	6	FUSER-CARRYING-24V-ERR-3		0: Error
	5	FUSER-CARRYING-24V-ERR-2		0: Error
	4	FUSER-CARRYING-24V-ERR-1		0: Error
	3	Drum waste toner feed motor	M180	BLM output
	2	Secondary fixing driving motor	M305	BLM output
	1	Primary fixing driving motor	M300	BLM output
	0	-		
P049	15	Primary fixing web absent alert sensor	PS311	H:web absent alert L: Web present
	14	Primary fixing web absent sensor	PS310	H:web absent L: Web present
	13	-		
	12	-		
	11	-		
	10	Station to station interval cooling fan 8-ERR	FM328	0: Error
	9	Station to station interval cooling fan 7-ERR	FM327	0: Error
	8	Station to station interval cooling fan 6-ERR	FM326	0: Error
	7	-		
	6	Station to station interval cooling fan 4-ERR	FM324	0: Error
	5	Station to station interval cooling fan 3-ERR	FM323	0: Error
	4	Station to station interval cooling fan 2-ERR	FM322	0: Error
	3	Station to station interval cooling fan 1-ERR	FM321	0: Error
	2	Duplexing decurler fan-ERR	FM320	0: Error
	1	Delivery upper cooling fan-ERR	FM319	0: Error
	0	Delivery lower cooling fan-ERR	FM318	0: Error
P050	15	-		
	14	-		
	13	Secondary fixing inside delivery cooling fan-ERR	FM315	0: Error
	12	Secondary fixing pressure roller cooling fan 5-ERR	FM337	0: Error
	11	Secondary fixing pressure roller cooling fan 4-ERR	FM309	0: Error
	10	Secondary fixing pressure roller cooling fan 3-ERR	FM308	0: Error
	9	Secondary fixing pressure roller cooling fan 2-ERR	FM307	0: Error
	8	Secondary fixing pressure roller cooling fan 1-ERR	FM306	0: Error
	7	Primary fixing belt cooling fan 5-ERR	FM338	0: Error
	6	Primary fixing belt cooling fan 4-ERR	FM305	0: Error
	5	Primary fixing belt cooling fan 3-ERR	FM304	0: Error
	4	Primary fixing belt cooling fan 2-ERR	FM303	0: Error
	3	Primary fixing belt cooling fan 1-ERR	FM302	0: Error
	2	Waste toner feed motor-LOCK	M180	1: Locked
	1	-		
	0	-		

Address	Bit	Name	Symbol	Remarks
P051	15	-		
	14	-		
	13	-		
	12	-		
	11	-		
	10	-		
	9	-		
	8	-		
	7	-		
	6	-		
	5	-		
	4	-		
	3	-		
	2	-		
	1	Primary fixing lever sensor	PS369	0: Locked
0	Secondary fixing lever sensor	PS370	0: Locked	
P052-P054		not used		

18.3.3 R-CON

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

T-18-20

Indication	bit	Item	Remarks
P001	7	SCTS of DDIS	
	6	SPRDY of DDIS	
	5	SRTS of DDIS	
	4	---	
	3	ON signal of FAN2	This is usually 0.
	2	Detection of locking of FAN2	This is usually 1.
	1	ON signal of FAN1	This is usually 0.
P002	0	Detection of locking of FAN1	This is usually 1.
	7	Size detection input port	Indefinite
	6	Size detection input port	Indefinite
	5	Size detection input port	Indefinite
	4	---	
	3	Optical motor clock signal	Indefinite value
	2	13V detection port	This is usually 0.
P003	1	24V detection port	This is usually 0.
	0	Lamp ON signal	Indefinite
	7	---	
	6	---	
	5	SP10 of DDIS	Indefinite value
	4	LED flash signal for the RCON board	Indefinite value
	3	---	
P004	2	---	
	1	---	
	0	---	
	7	---	
	6	---	
	5	---	
	4	---	
P005	3	SLIVEWAKE signal of DDIS	This is usually 0.
	2	SP01 of DDIS	Indefinite value
	1	SCPRDY of DDIS	Indefinite value
	0	---	
	7	---	
	6	---	
	5	---	
P006	4	---	
	3	SP11 of DDIS	Indefinite value
	2	SP12 of DDIS	Indefinite value
	1	---	
	0	---	
	7	Platen open/close detection sensor	1 when the platen is closed

Indication	bit	Item	Remarks
	6	---	
	5	Optical system home position sensor	1 when it is placed at HP
	4	---	
	3	---	
	2	LED for size detection	Indefinite
	1	Board checking port	This is usually 0.
	0	---	
P007	7	---	
	6	ADF download mode (not used)	
	5	ADF reset signal (not used)	
	4	ADF download signal (not used)	
	3	---	
	2	---	
	1	---	
	0	---	
P008	7	---	
	6	---	
	5	---	
	4	---	
	3	---	
	2	---	
	1	ON signal of CCD	1 when CCD is ON
	0	---	
P009	7	---	
	6	---	
	5	---	
	4	---	
	3	---	
	2	---	
	1	---	
	0	---	

18.3.4 FEEDER

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

T-18-21

Indication	bit	Item	Remarks
P001	7	Not used	
	6	Delivery motor PWM	
	5	Delivery clock	0 or 1
	4	Not used	
	3	Not used	
	2	OSC	Indefinite value
	1	Pre-registration sensor	Indefinite value
	0	Lead edge signal	This is usually 0.
P002	7	Reverse motor phase B	Indefinite value
	6	Separation standard REF	Indefinite value
	5	Reverse motor phase A	Indefinite value
	4	Separation motor PWM	Indefinite value
	3	Belt motor phase B*	Indefinite value
	2	Belt motor phase A*	Indefinite value
	1	Belt motor phase B	Indefinite value
	0	Belt motor phase A	Indefinite value
P003	7	Not used	
	6	Not used	
	5	EEPROM CS	Indefinite value
	4	SCK0	Indefinite value
	3	Not used	
	2	RxD0	Indefinite value
	1	Not used	
	0	TxD0	Indefinite value

Indication	bit	Item	Remarks
P004	7	Manual feed registration sensor	0 when paper is absent
	6	13VL down detection	This is usually 1.
	5	24VL down detection	This is usually 1.
	4	24VP down detection	This is usually 1.
	3	Trail edge detection sensor	0 when paper is absent
	2	Document detection sensor	0 when paper is absent
	1	Not used	
	0	Not used	
P005	7	Not used	
	6	Not used	
	5	Not used	
	4	Not used	
	3	ADTRIG	Indefinite value
	2	Not used	
	1	Not used	
	0	Not used	
P006	7	Post-registration sensor	Indefinite value
	6	Belt clock	Indefinite value
	5	Paper interval clock	Indefinite value
	4	Separation sensor	Indefinite value
	3	PICKSTBY	Indefinite value
	2	PICK0	Indefinite value
	1	PICK1	Indefinite value
	0	DA road signal	Indefinite value
P007	7	Reverse slave clock	0 or 1
	6	Reverse sensor	0 when paper is absent
	5	Separation clock	Indefinite value
	4	Skew detection sensor	0 when paper is absent
	3	FAN locking signal (not used)	
	2	Cover rear sensor	1 when DF is closed
	1	Pre-reverse sensor	0 when paper is absent
	0	DF open/close detection	1 when DF is closed
P008	7	Manual feed document detection sensor	0 when paper is absent
	6	Delivery sensor	0 when paper is absent
	5	Not used	
	4	Not used	
	3	Cover front sensor	1 when DF is closed
	2	Pickup paper detection sensor 2	0 or 1
	1	Pickup paper detection sensor 1	0 or 1
	0	Pickup HP sensor	This is usually 1.
P009	7	Solenoid timer	Indefinite value
	6	Separation clutch	Indefinite value
	5	Pre-reverse flapper solenoid	This is usually 1.
	4	FAN ON signal	This is usually 0.
	3	Shutter solenoid 2	Indefinite value
	2	Shutter solenoid 1	Indefinite value
	1	Reverse flapper solenoid	This is usually 0.
	0	Tray LED	1 when paper is present.
P010	7	Not used	
	6	Not used	
	5	Not used	
	4	Not used	
	3	Pickup phase B*	Indefinite value
	2	Pickup phase A*	Indefinite value
	1	Pickup phase B	Indefinite value
	0	Pickup phase A	Indefinite value
P011	7	Not used	

Indication	bit	Item	Remarks
	6	Not used	
	5	Not used	
	4	Not used	
	3	Sensor power ON/OFF	Indefinite value
	2	Not used	
	1	Delivery flapper SL2	Indefinite value
	0	Delivery flapper SL1	Indefinite value
P012	7	DIPSW8	1 when the switch is turned on
	6	DIPSW7	1 when the switch is turned on
	5	DIPSW6	1 when the switch is turned on
	4	DIPSW5	1 when the switch is turned on
	3	DIPSW4	1 when the switch is turned on
	2	DIPSW3	1 when the switch is turned on
	1	DIPSW2	1 when the switch is turned on
	0	DIPSW1	1 when the switch is turned on
P013	7	Not used	
	6	7-segment LED A	Indefinite value
	5	7-segment LED F	Indefinite value
	4	7-segment LED B	Indefinite value
	3	7-segment LED G	Indefinite value
	2	7-segment LED C	Indefinite value
	1	7-segment LED E	Indefinite value
	0	7-segment LED D	Indefinite value
P014	7	PUSHSW4	1 when the switch is pressed
	6	PUSHSW3	1 when the switch is pressed
	5	PUSHSW2	1 when the switch is pressed
	4	Tray width detection sensor 5	0 or 1
	3	Tray width detection sensor 4	0 or 1
	2	Tray width detection sensor 3	0 or 1
	1	Tray width detection sensor 2	0 or 1
	0	Tray width detection sensor 1	0 or 1
P015		Separation clock F/V	Indefinite value
P016		Delivery clock F/V	Indefinite value
P017		Document detection sensor AD	Indefinite value
P018		Document detection sensor AD	Indefinite value
P019		Reverse motor current adjustment	Indefinite value
P020		Belt motor current adjustment	Indefinite value
P021		Document detection sensor adjustment	Indefinite value
P022		Trail edge detection sensor adjustment	Indefinite value
P023		Separation sensor adjustment	Indefinite value
P024		Skew detection sensor adjustment	Indefinite value
P025		Pre-registration sensor adjustment	Indefinite value
P026		Post-registration sensor adjustment	Indefinite value
P027		Reverse sensor adjustment	Indefinite value
P028		Manual feed registration sensor adjustment	Indefinite value
P029		Sensor REF voltage adjustment	Indefinite value
P030		Separation motor current limit adjustment	Indefinite value

18.3.5 SORTER

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

Address	Bit	Description	Remarks
P001	0	stack delivery clock	
	1	pre-buffer transport motor FG	
	2	not used	
	3	not used	
	4	saddle press motor encoder clock	
	5	saddle feed motor FG	
	6	saddle butting motor encoder clock	
	7	saddle folding encoder clock	
	8	shift transport motor FG	
	9	buffer motor FG	
	10	punch motor FG	
	11	inlet motor FG	
	12	not used	
	13	not used	
	14	trimmer RX interrupt	
15	trimmer TX interrupt		
P002	0	horizontal registration sensor	
	1	buffer No. 2 sensor	
	2	buffer sensor	
	3	dust sensor	
	4	not used	
	5	lower path sensor	
	6	sample tray ISA/paper surface	
	7	stack tray ISA/paper surface	
	8	inserter output	
	9	download output	
	10	inserter input	
	11	download input	
	12	inserter reset	
	13	inserter mode	
	14	not used	
15	not used		
P003	0	ASIC0 chip select	
	1	ASIC1 chip select	
	2	ASIC reset output	0: Reset
	3	SST download mode	
	4	ASIC0 interrupt 1	
	5	ASIC1 interrupt	
	6	sample tray idle movement detection	
	7	ASIC0 interrupt 2	
	8	not used	
	9	not used	
	10	not used	
	11	power supply remote output	1: ON
12-15	not used		
P004	0	download hard latch command	
	1	download hard latch input	
	2	download latch release	
	3	light signal (lower order)	
	4	light signal (upper order)	
	5	read signal	
	6	not used	
	7	clock output	
	8-11	address bus	
	12	not used	
	13	delivery motor FG	
	14	ARCNET-INT	
	15	stack tray idle movement detection	

Address	Bit	Description	Remarks
P005	0-10	not used	
	11	check LED	1: on
	12	SRAM chip select	0: selected
	13	not used	
	14	ROM chip select	0: selected
	15	ARCNET chip select	0: selected
P006	0	upper guide motor phase A	
	1	upper guide motor phase B	
	2	upper guide motor current switchover	
	3	not used	
	4	assist motor clock	
	5	assist motor CW	1: CCW
	6	assist motor current switchover 1	
	7	assist motor current switchover 2	
	8	swing motor speed setting (High)	
	9	swing motor speed setting (Middle)	
	10	swing motor speed setting (Low)	
	11	swing motor on*	0: ON
	12	knurled belt shift motor phase A	
	13	knurled belt shift motor phase B	
	14	knurled belt shift motor current switchover	
15	not used		
P007	0-8	not used	
	9	stack delivery motor clock	
	10	stack delivery motor CW	1: CCW
	11	stack delivery motor current switchover 1	
	12	stack delivery motor current switchover 2	
	13	conveyer motor phase A	
	14	conveyer motor phase B	
	15	conveyor motor current switchover	
P008	0-15	not used	
P009	0	upper guide HP sensor	1: HP
	1	knurled belt shift HP sensor	1: HP
	2	stack delivery motor 8FG	
	3	assist motor 8FG	
	4	saddle sub tray sensor	
	5	conveyer paper sensor 2	1: paper present
	6	conveyer paper sensor 1	1: paper present
7-15	not used		
P010	0	saddle alignment motor phase A	
	1	saddle alignment motor phase B	
	2	saddle alignment motor current	1: retained
	3	saddle press motor PWM	0: ON
	4	saddle alignment motor phase A*	
	5	saddle alignment motor phase B*	
	6	not used	
	7	not used	
	8	LED4 (for indication of presence of paper)	1: ON
	9	not used	
	10	saddle butting motor CCW	1: CW
	11	saddle butting motor CW	1: CCW
	12	saddle butting transport motor PWM	0: ON
	13	saddle folding transport motor PWM	0: ON
	14	saddle folding transport motor CCW	1: CW
15	saddle folding transport motor CW	1: CCW	

Address	Bit	Description	Remarks
P011	0	not used	
	1	not used	
	2	not used	
	3	not used	
	4	not used	
	5	LED1	1: ON
	6	not used	
	7	not used	
	8	saddle press motor CCW	1: CW
	9	saddle press motor CW	1: CCW
	10	not used	
	11	not used	
	12	saddle stapler motor CCW	1: CCW
	13	saddle stapler motor CW	1: CW
	14	not used	
15	not used		
P012	0	not used	
	1	not used	
	2	not used	
	3	not used	
	4	saddle press motor clock sensor	
	5	saddle transport motor FG	
	6	SDL butting motor lock sensor	
	7	saddle folding motor clock sensor	
8-15	not used		
P013	0	saddle press HP sensor	1: HP
	1	saddle press intermediate sensor	
	2	saddle lead edge stopper HP sensor	1: HP
	3	saddle alignment HP sensor	1: HP
	4	saddle lead edge path sensor	1: paper present
	5	saddle staple detection 2	1: staple present
	6	saddle staple detection 2	1: staple present
	7	saddle stapler HP sensor	1: HP
8-15	not used		
P014	0	front bin shift motor phase A	
	1	front bin shift motor phase B	
	2	front bin shift motor current switchover	
	3	not used	
	4	trail edge motor phase A	
	5	trail edge motor phase B	
	6	trail edge motor alignment switchover	
	7	handling tray solenoid	
	8	rear alignment motor clock	
	9	rear alignment motor CW	
	10	rear alignment motor current switchover	
	11	not used	
	12	front alignment motor clock	
	13	front alignment motor CW	
	14	front alignment motor current switchover IH	
15	not used		

Address	Bit	Description	Remarks
P015	0	paddle rotation motor clock	
	1	paddle rotation motor CW	
	2	paddle rotation motor current switchover	
	3	not used	
	4	tray motor A	
	5	tray motor B	
	6	tray motor ON	
	7	check LED	1: on
	8	paddle lift motor phase A	
	9	paddle lift motor phase B	
	10	paddle lift motor current switchover	
	11	power-down (host standby mode)	
	12	not used	
	13	not used	
	14	not used	
15	not used		
P016	0	check SW8	
	1	check SW7	
	2	check SW6	
	3	check SW5	
	4	check SW4	
	5	check SW3	
	6	check SW2	
	7	check SW1	
8-15	not used		
P017	0	paddle rotation HP sensor	1: HP
	1	swing motor clock sensor	
	2	rear alignment motor HP sensor	1: HP
	3	bin \$ sensor 2	
	4	handling tray paper sensor	0: paper present
	5	assist HP sensor	1: HP
	6	bin sensor 1	0: HP (bin HP)
	7	front alignment HP sensor	1: HP
	8	not used	
	9	not used	
	10	not used	
	11	paddle lift HP sensor	1: HP
	12	shutter HP sensor	0: HP
	13	swing guide closed detection	0: Close
	14	swing guide open detention	1: HP
15	tray HP sensor	1: HP	
P018	0	saddle flapper solenoid 1	1: ON
	1	saddle flapper solenoid 2	1: ON
	2-7	not used	
	8	not used	
	9	not used	
	10	not used	
	11	not used	
	12	saddle lead edge stopper motor phase A	
	13	saddle lead edge stopper motor phase B	
	14	saddle lead edge stopper current	1: retained
15	not used		

Address	Bit	Description	Remarks
P019	0	saddle transport motor clock	
	1	saddle transport motor CW	
	2	saddle transport motor current	
	3	saddle transport motor current	
	4	motor off signal	1: ON
	5-7	not used	
	8	saddle pull-in roller shift motor phase A	
	9	saddle pull-in roller shift motor phase B	
	10	saddle pull-in roller shift motor current switchover	1: retained
	11	not used	
	12	saddle roller guide motor phase A	
	13	saddle roller guide motor phase B	
	14	saddle roller guide motor current switchover	1: retained
	15	not used	
	P020	0-15	not used
P021	0	saddle butting HP sensor	1: HP
	1	saddle vertical path sensor	1: paper present
	2	saddle pull-in roller HP sensor	1: HP
	3	saddle roller guide HP sensor	1: HP
	4	saddle stack delivery sensor	0: paper present
	5	saddle small sensor	0: paper present
	6	saddle inlet sensor	1: paper present
	7	saddle roller guide HP sensor passage detection	1: HP passed
	8-15	not used	
P022	0	pre-buffer transport motor clock	
	1	pre-buffer transport motor CW	1: CCW
	2	pre-buffer transport motor current switchover 1	
	3	pre-buffer transport motor current switchover 2	
	4	inserter detachment	0: detached
	5	not used	0: detached
	6	saddle detachment	1: detached
	7	not used	
	8	buffer motor clock	
	9	buffer motor CW	1: CCW
	10	buffer motor current switchover 1	
	11	buffer motor current switchover 2	
	12	trimmer remote signal	0: ON
	13	trimmer output spare	
	14	not used	
15	not used	1: ON	
P023	0	not used	1: ON
	1	not used	1: ON
	2	not used	1: ON
	3	motor standby	1: operating
	4	inlet transport motor clock	
	5	inlet transport motor CW	1: CCW
	6	inlet transport motor ON signal	
	7	inlet transport motor current switchover	
	8	shift transport motor clock	
	9	shift transport motor CW	1: CCW
	10	shift transport motor current switchover 1	
	11	shift transport motor current switchover 2	
	12	not used	
	13	fan on signal	1: ON
	14	not used	
15	not used		

Address	Bit	Description	Remarks
P024	0	not used	
	1	not used	
	2	not used	
	3	not used	
	4	not used	
	5	not used	
	6	not used	
	7	horizontal registration HP sensor	1: HP
	8	lower delivery sensor	1: paper present
	9	buffer No. 2 sensor	0: paper present
	10	horizontal registration sensor	0: paper present
	11	buffer path sensor	0: paper present
	12	shift unit trail edge sensor	1: paper present
	13	inlet sensor	1: paper present
	14	upper delivery sensor	1: paper present
15	lower path sensor	0: paper present	
P025	0	not used	
	1	not used	
	2	not used	
	3	not used	
	4	not used	
	5	trimmer connection detection	0: connected
	6	not used	
	7	not used	
	8	stapler HP sensor	0: HP
	9	punch motor HP detection	1: HP
	10	punch front detection	1: rear; 0: front
	11	shift roller unit HP sensor	1: HP
	12	transport roller HP sensor	1: HP
	13	trail edge HP	1: HP
	14	not used	
15	not used		
P026	0	upper tray motor clock (sample tray)	
	1	upper tray motor CW (sample tray)	1: CW
	2	upper tray motor current switchover 1	
	3	upper tray motor current switchover 2	
	4	sub tray lifter solenoid	0: ON
	5	not used	
	6	stapler motor ON	
	7	stapler motor direction switchover	
	8	paper surface sensor A/D input selector 1	
	9	paper surface sensor A/D input selector 2	
	10	paper surface sensor A/D input selector 3	
	11	not used	
	12	lower tray motor clock	
	13	lower tray motor CW	1: CW
	14	lower tray motor current switchover 1	
15	lower tray motor current switchover 2		

Address	Bit	Description	Remarks
P027	0	7-segment DOT	1: on
	1	7-segment G	1: on
	2	7-segment F	1: on
	3	7-segment e	1: on
	4	7-segment d	1: on
	5	7-segment c	1: on
	6	7-segment b	1: on
	7	7-segment a	1: on
	8	stapler shift motor clock	
	9	stapler shift motor CW	1: CW
	10	stapler shift motor current switchover	
	11	stapler shift motor current switchover	
	12	lower tray detachment	0: detached
	13	not used	
	14	inserter CONFIGSET	
15	inserter FEEDREQ		
P028	0	lower tray sensor	0: paper present
	1	lower tray paper surface sensor	0: paper present
	2	lower tray ISA sensor	0: paper present
	3	upper tray sensor	0: paper present
	4	upper tray paper surface sensor	0: paper present
	5	upper tray ISA sensor	0: paper present
	6	rib guide safety detection	1: detected
	7	tray approach switch	0: detected
	8	upper tray area sensor 1	1: light blocked
	9	upper tray area sensor 2	1: light blocked
	10	upper tray area sensor 3	1: light blocked
	11	upper tray area sensor 4	1: light blocked
	12	lower tray position sensor 1	1: light blocked
	13	lower tray position sensor 2	1: light blocked
	14	lower tray position sensor 3	1: light blocked
15	lower tray position sensor 4	1: light blocked	
P029	0	stapler slide HP	
	1	stapler 24V down detection	1: 24V OFF
	2	READY detection	1: Ready
	3	staple absent detection	0: staple absent
	4	inserter SENSON	
	5	inserter serial error	
	6	inserter connector detection	1: connected
	7	not used	
	8	upper tray paper sensor	1: paper present
	9	lower tray paper sensor	1: paper present
	10	waste staple case full detection 1	1: not set/full
	11	puncher unit detection	0: present
	12	stapling position 1	1: OK
	13	stapling position 2	1: OK
	14	stapling position 3	1: OK
15	stapling position 4	1: OK	

Address	Bit	Description	Remarks
P030	0	horizontal registration shift motor clock (1-2 phase)	
	1	horizontal registration motor CW/CCW	1: CCW
	2	horizontal registration shift motor current switchover 1	
	3	horizontal registration shift motor current switchover 2	
	4	transport roller shift motor phase A	
	5	transport roller shift motor phase B	
	6	transport roller shift motor current switchover 1	
	7	transport roller shift motor current switchover 2	
	8	assist roller shift solenoid 1	1: ON
	9	upper path switchover solenoid	1: ON
	10	punch PWM	
	11	saddle path switching solenoid	1: ON
	12	delivery motor clock	
	13	delivery motor CW/CCW	1: CCW
	14	delivery motor current switchover 1	
15	delivery motor current switchover 2		
P031	0	punch motor on signal	PCH-M-CW
	1	punch motor direction switchover	PCH-M-CCW
	2	5V power-down	0: power-down
	3	not used	
	4	not used	
	5	not used	
	6	not used	
	7	not used	
	8	horizontal registration detection motor phase A	
	9	horizontal registration detection motor phase B	
	10	horizontal registration detection motor current switchover 1	
	11	horizontal registration detection motor current switchover 2	
	12	horizontal registration detection motor phase A*	
	13	horizontal registration detection motor phase B*	
	14	buffer path switchover solenoid	1: ON
15	not used		
P032	0	puncher check 2	
	1	puncher check 1	
	2	puncher check 0	
	3	for adjustment 0	
	4	for adjustment 1	
	5	for adjustment 2	
	6	for adjustment 3	
	7	for adjustment 4	
	8	check SW8	
	9	check SW7	
	10	check SW6	
	11	check SW5	
	12	check SW4	
	13	check SW3	
	14	check SW2	
15	check SW1		

Address	Bit	Description	Remarks
P033	0	front door open detection	0: open
	1	punch fan error	1: error
	2	upper cover open detection	0: open
	3	power supply fan error	1: error
	4	not used	
	5	not used	
	6	not used	
	7	saddle unit connection detection	0: connected
	8	push switch (for ENTER)	not used
	9	push switch (for +)	0: pushed
	10	push switch (for -)	0: pushed
	11	not used	
	12	pre-buffer transport FG	
	13	door 24V power-down detection	1: power-down
	14	punch 2-hole/3-hole detection	1: 3-hole; 0: 2-hole
15	punch waste case set detection	1: set	
P045		not used	analog output
P046		not used	
P047		horizontal registration sensor	
P048		buffer No. 2 sensor	
P049		buffer sensor	
P050		waste sensor	
P051		not used	
P052		lower path sensor	
P053		not used	
P054		not used	
P055		sample tray ISA sensor adjustment	
P056		buffer path 2 adjustment	
P057		horizontal registration sensor adjustment	
P058		buffer path sensor adjustment	
P059		swing guide adjustment	
P060		lower path sensor adjustment	
P061-P063		not used	
P064		stack tray ISA sensor adjustment	
P065-P067		not used	

18.3.6 MN-CONT

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

Address	Bit	Sign	Remarks
P001	0	I/O port for general-purpose (P1-board)	
	1	I/O port for general-purpose (S-board)	
	2	I/O port for general-purpose (R-board)	
	3	not used	
	4	Test packet issuance request to the image processing ASIC	
	5	DDI-P POWER signal	L:ON
	6	Delivery count (Control card, Coin machine)	H:At delivery
	7	Pick-up count (Control card, Coin machine)	H:At pick-up
P002	0	CPU reset cancel signal	
	1	Image processing ASIC reset signal	
	2	DDI-P CTS signal (Printer -> Controller)	
	3	DDI-P RTS signal (Controller -> Printer)	
	4	DDI-P Power Ready signal (Controller -> Printer)	
	5	DDI-P Power Ready signal (Printer -> Controller)	
	6	Copy allowing signal (Control card)	
	7	Copy allowing signal (Coin machine)	

Address	Bit	Sign	Remarks
P003	0	Controller cooling fan ON signal	1:ON 0:OFF
	1	USB host Power (5V) control signal	1:ON 0:OFF
	2	PCI Serror interruption clear	
	3	not used	
	4	JailROM access control for R&D	L: CL2M H: JailROM
	5	for R&D	
	6	for R&D	
P004	0	for R&D	
	1	not used	
	2	not used	
	3	TFT-UI connection check	0: Connected 1: Unconnected
	4	Control panel connection check	0: Connected 1: Unconnected
	5	DIMM judgment	
	6	DIMM judgment	
P005	0	Open Interface Power Ready signal	
	1	Watch dog function	
	2	Watch dog interruption clear	
	3	DDI-S Livewake signal	
	4	DDI-S Download signal	
	5	DDI-P Livewake signal	
	6	DDI-P Download signal	
P006	0	Main controller PCB version	
	1	Main controller PCB version	
	2	Main controller PCB version	
	3	Main controller PCB version	
	4	Coin machine controller Power Ready signal	
	5	Coin machine Power Ready signal	
	6	Coin machine Communication Ready signal	
P007	0	not used	
	1	not used	
	2	Power control signal	
	3-7	not used	
P008	0	FRAM CLK	
	1	FRAM DATA	
	2	FRAM WP	
	3-7	not used	
P009	0	not used	
	1	not used	
	2	Emergency night power source(13V) ON signal other than CL2	0:OFF 1:ON
	3	Emergency night power source (12V, 5V) ON signal	0:OFF 1:ON
	4	not used	
	5	Emergency night power source (13V) ON signal	0:OFF 1:ON
P010	0	LCD Backlit switch control signal	0:ON 1:OFF
	1	not used	
	2	SDRAM structure detection	
	3	SDRAM structure detection	
	4	Watch dog timer CLK	
	5	Emergency night power source reset signal	
	6,7	not used	
P011	0-7	not used	
P012	0-7	not used	
P013	0-7	not used	
P014	0-7	not used	
P015	0-7	not used	
P016	0-7	not used	

18.4 ADJUST (Adjustment Mode)

18.4.1 COPIER

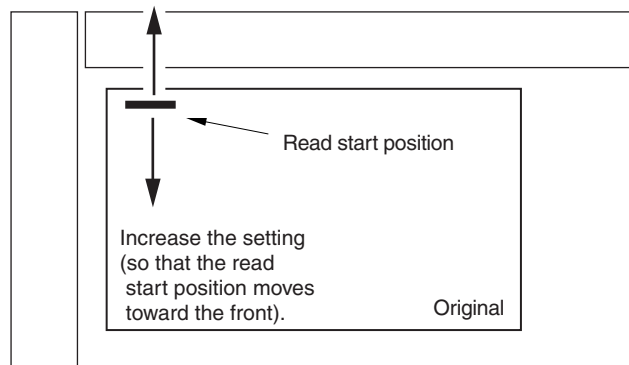
18.4.1.1 COPIER > ADJUST > ADJ-XY

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

T-18-23

COPIER > ADJUST > ADJ-XY			
Item	Level	Description	
ADJ-X	1	Title	Adjustment of scanning system image leading edge position (image scan start position in sub scanning direction)
		Purpose of use	To adjust the image leading edge position (image scan start position in sub scanning direction) of the scanning system.
		When used	When the contents of the RAM on the reader controller PCB have been cleared, when the reader controller PCB has been replaced
		Precautions for use	- The value on the service label must be input when the contents of the RAM on the reader controller PCB have been cleared or when the reader controller PCB has been replaced. - When the setting of this item has been changed, the new value must be entered on the reader service label.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	1 to 211
		Unit	0.1 mm
		Amount of change per unit	When the setting is increased by 1, the image scan start position moves 0.1 mm toward the trailing edge. (The scan range of the image moves toward the trailing edge.)
		Value established when RAM is cleared	20
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	Adjusted
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON. - If the width of the non-reproduction area of the image is greater than the standard value, reduce the setting. - If areas outside the document region are also copied, increase the setting.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
ADJ-Y	1	Title	Adjustment of image scan start position (Y direction)
		Purpose of use	To adjust the image scan start position (Y direction).
		When used	When the contents of the RAM on the reader controller PCB have been cleared, when the reader controller PCB has been replaced
		Precautions for use	- The value on the service label must be input when the contents of the RAM on the reader controller PCB have been cleared or when the reader controller PCB has been replaced. - When the setting of this item has been changed, the new value must be entered on the reader service label.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	1 to 211
		Unit	0.1 mm
		Amount of change per unit	When the setting is increased by 1, the image scan start position moves 0.1 mm toward the trailing edge. (The scan range of the image moves toward the trailing edge.)
		Value established when RAM is cleared	79
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	Adjusted
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	- If the width of the missing parts of the image is greater than the rating, reduce the setting. - If areas outside the document region are also copied, increase the setting.

Decrease the setting
(so that the read start
position moves toward the rear).



F-18-16

T-18-24

COPIER > ADJUST > ADJ-XY			
Item	Level	Description	
ADJ-Y-DF	1	Title	Adjustment of main scanning position in feeder mode
		Purpose of use	To adjust the main scanning position in the feeder mode (since there is no side registration adjustment mechanism on the document tray at the feeder side).
		When used	When the contents of the RAM on the reader controller PCB have been cleared, when the reader controller PCB has been replaced
		Precautions for use	- The value on the service label must be input when the contents of the RAM on the reader controller PCB have been cleared or when the reader controller PCB has been replaced. - When the setting of this item has been changed, the new value must be entered on the reader service label.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	1 to 211
		Unit	0.1 mm
		Amount of change per unit	When the setting is increased by 1, the image scan start position moves 0.1 mm toward the front.
		Value established when RAM is cleared	109
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	Adjusted
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
ADJ-Y-FX	1	Title	Adjustment of main scanning position of feeder (for feeder fixed scanning)
		Purpose of use	To adjust the main scanning position in the feeder mode.
		When used	When the contents of the RAM on the reader controller PCB have been cleared, when the reader controller PCB has been replaced
		Precautions for use	- The value on the service label must be input when the contents of the RAM on the reader controller PCB have been cleared or when the reader controller PCB has been replaced. - When the setting of this item has been changed, the new value must be entered on the reader service label.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	1 to 211
		Unit	0.1 mm
		Amount of change per unit	When the setting is increased by 1, the image scan start position moves 0.1 mm toward the front.
		Value established when RAM is cleared	103
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	Adjusted
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > ADJUST > ADJ-XY			
Item	Level	Description	
ADJ-X-MG	1	Title	Fine adjustment of sub scanning magnification during reader platen scanning
		Purpose of use	To finely adjust the sub scanning magnification during reader platen scanning.
		When used	When the contents of the RAM on the reader controller PCB have been cleared, when the reader controller PCB has been replaced
		Precautions for use	- The value on the service label must be input when the contents of the RAM on the reader controller PCB have been cleared or when the reader controller PCB has been replaced. - When the setting of this item has been changed, the new value must be entered on the reader service label.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	-50 to +50
		Unit	0.1 mm
		Amount of change per unit	When the setting is increased by 1, the image scan start position moves 0.1 mm toward the front.
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	Adjusted
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting (use the +/- keys to switch between plus and minus), and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

18.4.1.2 COPIER > ADJUST > CCD

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

T-18-25

COPIER > ADJUST > CCD			
Item	Level	Description	
W-PLT-X	1	Title	Input of white level data for standard white board
		Purpose of use	To input the white level data for the standard white board.
		When used	When the contents of the RAM on the reader controller PCB have been cleared, when the reader controller PCB has been replaced, when the original glass has been replaced
		Precautions for use	- The value on the service label must be input when the contents of the RAM on the reader controller PCB have been cleared or when the reader controller PCB has been replaced. - The number on the original glass must be input when the original glass has been replaced. - When the setting of this item has been changed, the new value must be entered on the reader service label.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	1 to 9999
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	8271
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	Adjusted
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > ADJUST > CCD			
Item	Level	Description	
W-PLT-Y	1	Title	Input of white level data (Y) for standard white board
		Purpose of use	To input the white level data (Y) for the standard white board.
		When used	When the contents of the RAM on the reader controller PCB have been cleared, when the reader controller PCB has been replaced, when the original glass has been replaced
		Precautions for use	- The value on the service label must be input when the contents of the RAM on the reader controller PCB have been cleared or when the reader controller PCB has been replaced. - The number on the original glass must be input when the original glass has been replaced. - When the setting of this item has been changed, the new value must be entered on the reader service label.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	1 to 9999
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	8735
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	Adjusted
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
W-PLT-Z	1	Title	Input of white level data (Z) for standard white board
		Purpose of use	To input the white level data (Z) for the standard white board.
		When used	When the contents of the RAM on the reader controller PCB have been cleared, when the reader controller PCB has been replaced, when the original glass has been replaced
		Precautions for use	- The value on the service label must be input when the contents of the RAM on the reader controller PCB have been cleared or when the reader controller PCB has been replaced. - The number on the original glass must be input when the original glass has been replaced. - When the setting of this item has been changed, the new value must be entered on the reader service label.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	1 to 9999
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	9418
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	Adjusted
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
EC-B	1	Title	Display of correction value B after EC coat correction execution and input of desired value
		Purpose of use	To display the correction value B (blue) after EC coat correction execution and to input the desired value.
		When used	Input the value which is on the service label when the reader controller PCB has been replaced or when contents of RCON have been cleared. When the original glass has been replaced, the correction value on the label supplied with the original glass must be input for this mode and entered on the service label of the reader.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	10000 to 15000
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	10000
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	Adjusted
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	The EC coat refers to a coating which is applied to the glass surface. Correction is performed because the color tones are changed by its application.

COPIER > ADJUST > CCD			
Item	Level	Description	
EC-G	1	Title	Display of correction value G after EC code correction and input of any desired value
		Purpose of use	To display the correction value (green) after EC code correction and input any desired value.
		When used	Input the value which is on the service label when the reader controller PCB has been replaced or when contents of RCON have been cleared. When the original glass has been replaced, the correction value on the label supplied with the original glass must be input for this mode and entered on the service label of the reader.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	10000 to 15000
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	10000
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	Adjusted
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	The EC coat refers to a coating which is applied to the glass surface. Correction is performed because the color tones are changed by its application.
EC-R	1	Title	Display of correction value R after EC coat correction execution and input of desired value
		Purpose of use	To display the correction value R (red) after EC coat correction execution and to input the desired value.
		When used	Input the value which is on the service label when the reader controller PCB has been replaced or when contents of RCON have been cleared. When the original glass has been replaced, the correction value on the label supplied with the original glass must be input for this mode and entered on the service label of the reader.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	10000 to 15000
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	10000
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	Adjusted
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	The EC coat refers to a coating which is applied to the glass surface. Correction is performed because the color tones are changed by its application.
CCDU-RG	1	Title	Input correction value for color shift in sub scanning direction (between R and G during scanning of documents which depends on CCD unit and lens)
		Purpose of use	To input the correction value for the color shift in the sub scanning direction (between R and G during the scanning of documents which depends on the CCD unit and lens).
		When used	When the contents of the RAM on the reader controller PCB have been cleared, when the reader controller PCB has been replaced, when the CCD unit has been replaced
		Precautions for use	- The value on the service label must be input when the contents of the RAM on the reader controller PCB have been cleared or when the reader controller PCB has been replaced. - The value on the service label provided with the CCD unit must be input when the CCD unit has been replaced. - When the setting of this item has been changed, the new value must be entered on the reader service label.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	-9 to 9
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	Adjusted
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting (use the +/- keys to switch between plus and minus), and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Of the color displacement in the sub scanning direction arising in the scan optical system, the amount of the displacement dependent on the CCD unit and lens is corrected by adjusting the correction amount between R and G of the 3-line CCD sensor. Image correction is undertaken by image processing on the main controller PCB.

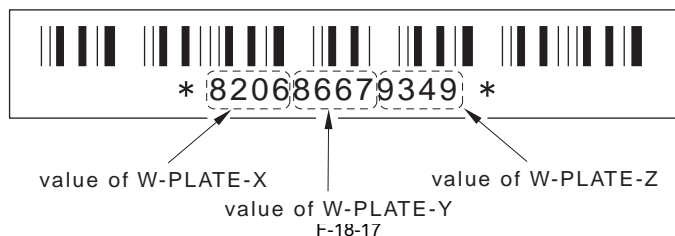
COPIER > ADJUST > CCD			
Item	Level	Description	
CCDU-GB	1	Title	Input of correction value for color displacement in sub scanning direction (between G and B when scanning documents which depend on CCD unit and lens)
		Purpose of use	To input the correction value for the color displacement in sub scanning direction (between G and B during the scanning of documents which depends on CCD unit and lens).
		When used	When the contents of the RAM on the reader controller PCB have been cleared, when the reader controller PCB has been replaced, when the CCD unit has been replaced
		Precautions for use	- The value on the service label must be input when the contents of the RAM on the reader controller PCB have been cleared or when the reader controller PCB has been replaced. - The value on the service label provided with the CCD unit must be input when the CCD unit has been replaced. - When the setting of this item has been changed, the new value must be entered on the reader service label.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	-9 to 9
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	Adjusted
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting (use the +/- keys to switch between plus and minus), and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	Of the color displacement in the sub scanning direction arising in the scanning system, the amount of shift dependent on the CCD unit and lens is corrected by adjusting the correction amount between R and G of the 3-line CCD sensor. Image correction is undertaken by image processing on the main controller PCB.		
FCCDU-RG	1	Title	Input of correction value for color displacement in sub scanning direction (between R and G during scanning of documents which depends on CCD unit and lens)
		Purpose of use	To input the correction value for the color displacement in sub scanning direction (between R and G during the scanning of documents which depends on CCD unit and lens).
		When used	When the contents of the RAM on the reader controller PCB have been cleared, when the reader controller PCB has been replaced
		Precautions for use	- The value on the service label must be input when the contents of the RAM on the reader controller PCB have been cleared or when the reader controller PCB has been replaced. - When the setting of this item has been changed, the new value must be entered on the reader service label.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	-9 to 9
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	Adjusted
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting (use the +/- keys to switch between plus and minus), and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	Of the color displacement in the sub scanning direction arising in the scanning system, the amount of displacement dependent on the CCD unit and lens is corrected by adjusting the correction amount between R and G of the 3-line CCD sensor. Image correction is undertaken by image processing on the main controller circuit board.		

COPIER > ADJUST > CCD			
Item	Level	Description	
FCCDU-GB	1	Title	Input of correction value for color shift in sub scanning direction (between G and B during scanning of documents which depends on CCD unit and lens at the factory settings)
		Purpose of use	To input the correction value for the color shift in sub scanning direction (between G and B during the scanning of documents which depends on CCD unit and lens at the factory settings).
		When used	When the contents of the RAM on the reader controller PCB have been cleared, when the reader controller PCB has been replaced
		Precautions for use	- The value on the service label must be input when the contents of the RAM on the reader controller PCB have been cleared or when the reader controller PCB has been replaced. - When the setting of this item has been changed, the new value must be entered on the reader service label.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	-9 to 9
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	Adjusted
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting (use the +/- keys to switch between plus and minus), and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	COPIER > FUNCTION > DPC > OFST-M
		Additional description and notes	[Reference] Of the color displacement in the sub scanning direction arising in the scanning system, the amount of displacement dependent on the CCD unit and lens is corrected by adjusting the correction amount between R and G of the 3-line CCD sensor. Image correction is undertaken by image processing on the main controller PCB.
		50-RG	1
Purpose of use	To display the offset value for the color displacement (G-R) in the BOOK mode during 50% scanning.		
When used	- When the contents of the RAM on the reader controller PCB have been cleared, when the reader controller PCB has been replaced		
Precautions for use	- The value on the service label must be input when the contents of the RAM on the reader controller PCB have been cleared or when the reader controller PCB has been replaced. - When the setting of this item has been changed, the new value must be entered on the reader service label.		
Settings and adjustment ranges	-256 to 256		
Unit	-		
Amount of change per unit	-		
Value established when RAM is cleared	0		
Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	Adjusted		
Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting (use the +/- keys to switch between plus and minus), and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.		
Related service modes	-		
Additional description and notes	-		
50-GB	1		
		Purpose of use	To display the offset value for the color displacement (G-B) in the BOOK mode during 50% scanning.
		When used	- When the contents of the RAM on the reader controller PCB have been cleared, when the reader controller PCB has been replaced
		Precautions for use	- The value on the service label must be input when the contents of the RAM on the reader controller circuit board have been cleared or when the reader controller circuit board has been replaced. - When the setting of this item has been changed, the new value must be entered on the reader service label.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	-256 to 256
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	Adjusted
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting (use the +/- keys to switch between plus and minus), and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > ADJUST > CCD			
Item	Level	Description	
100-RG	1	Title	Display of offset value for color shift (G-R) in BOOK mode during 100% scanning
		Purpose of use	To display the offset value for the color displacement (G-R) in the BOOK mode during 100% scanning.
		When used	- When the contents of the RAM on the reader controller circuit board have been cleared, when the reader controller circuit board has been replaced
		Precautions for use	- The value on the service label must be input when the contents of the RAM on the reader controller PCB have been cleared or when the reader controller PCB has been replaced. - When the setting of this item has been changed, the new value must be entered on the reader service label.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	-256 to 256
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	Adjusted
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting (use the +/- keys to switch between plus and minus), and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	-		
100-GB	1	Title	Display of offset value for color displacement (G-B) in BOOK mode during 100% scanning
		Purpose of use	To display the offset value for the color displacement (G-B) in the BOOK mode during 100% scanning.
		When used	- When the contents of the RAM on the reader controller PCB have been cleared, when the reader controller PCB has been replaced
		Precautions for use	- The value on the service label must be input when the contents of the RAM on the reader controller PCB have been cleared or when the reader controller PCB has been replaced. - When the setting of this item has been changed, the new value must be entered on the reader service label.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	-256 to 256
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	Adjusted
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting (use the +/- keys to switch between plus and minus), and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	-		
50DF-RG	1	Title	Display of offset value for color displacement (G-R) in ADF mode during 50% scanning
		Purpose of use	To display the offset value for the color displacement (G-R) in the ADF mode during 50% scanning.
		When used	- When the contents of the RAM on the reader controller PCB have been cleared, when the reader controller PCB has been replaced
		Precautions for use	- The value on the service label must be input when the contents of the RAM on the reader controller PCB have been cleared or when the reader controller PCB has been replaced. - When the setting of this item has been changed, the new value must be entered on the reader service label.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	-256 to 256
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	Adjusted
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting (use the +/- keys to switch between plus and minus), and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	-		

COPIER > ADJUST > CCD			
Item	Level	Description	
50DF-GB	1	Title	Display of offset value for color displacement (G-B) in ADF mode during 50% scanning
		Purpose of use	To display the offset value for the color displacement (G-B) in the ADF mode during 50% scanning.
		When used	- When the contents of the RAM on the reader controller PCB have been cleared, when the reader controller PCB has been replaced
		Precautions for use	- The value on the service label must be input when the contents of the RAM on the reader controller PCB have been cleared or when the reader controller PCB has been replaced. - When the setting of this item has been changed, the new value must be entered on the reader service label.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	-256 to 256
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	Adjusted
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting (use the +/- keys to switch between plus and minus), and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	-		
100DF-RG	1	Title	Display of offset value for color displacement (G-R) in ADF mode during 100% scanning
		Purpose of use	To display the offset value for the color displacement (G-R) in the ADF mode during 100% scanning.
		When used	- When the contents of the RAM on the reader controller PCB have been cleared, when the reader controller PCB has been replaced
		Precautions for use	- The value on the service label must be input when the contents of the RAM on the reader controller PCB have been cleared or when the reader controller PCB has been replaced. - When the setting of this item has been changed, the new value must be entered on the reader service label.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	-256 to 256
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	Adjusted
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting (use the +/- keys to switch between plus and minus), and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	-		
100DF-GB	1	Title	Display of offset value for color displacement (G-B) in ADF mode during 100% scanning
		Purpose of use	To display the offset value for the color displacement (G-B) in the ADF mode during 100% scanning.
		When used	- When the contents of the RAM on the reader controller PCB have been cleared, when the reader controller PCB has been replaced
		Precautions for use	- The value on the service label must be input when the contents of the RAM on the reader controller PCB have been cleared or when the reader controller PCB has been replaced. - When the setting of this item has been changed, the new value must be entered on the reader service label.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	-256 to 256
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	Adjusted
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting (use the +/- keys to switch between plus and minus), and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	-		
DFTAR-R	1	Title	Not used
DFTAR-G	1	Title	Not used
DFTAR-B	1	Title	Not used

COPIER > ADJUST > CCD			
Item	Level	Description	
BLTVGAIN	1	Title	ADF belt lift correction (leading edge of images)
		Purpose of use	To correct faulty images caused by end area scanned back [URA-UTSURI??], which is in turn caused by ADF belt end area lifting, and by end area lifting.
		When used	When fogging has occurred at the end areas of the images by original glass copying
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	Change the value of this mode depending on the type of documents used frequently by the user. 0: Belt lift is not corrected. 1: Belt lift is corrected (level 1: fogging reduced minimally) 2: Belt lift is corrected (level 2) 3: Belt lift is corrected (level 3) 4: Belt lift is corrected (level 4) 5: Belt lift is corrected (level 5: fogging reduced maximally)
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	
BLTVG2	1	Title	ADF belt lift correction (trailing edge of images)
		Purpose of use	To correct faulty images caused by end area scanned back [URA-UTSURI??], which is in turn caused by ADF belt end area lifting, and by end area lifting.
		When used	When fogging has occurred at the end areas of the images by original glass copying
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	Change the value of this mode depending on the type of documents used frequently by the user. 0: Belt lift is not corrected. 1: Belt lift is corrected (level 1: fogging reduced minimally) 2: Belt lift is corrected (level 2) 3: Belt lift is corrected (level 3) 4: Belt lift is corrected (level 4) 5: Belt lift is corrected (level 5: fogging reduced maximally)
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	



18.4.1.3 COPIER > ADJUST > LASER

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000



It is an adjustment item at the time of shipment; thus, it is not adjusted at the filed service.

T-18-26

COPIER > ADJUST > LASER			
Item	Level	Description	
LNSMTR-Y	1	Title	Total travel amount of lens motor Y
		Purpose of use	To display the cumulative pulses of the tilt adjustment motor.
		When used	- When the contents of the RAM on the DC controller PCB have been cleared, when the DC controller PCB has been replaced - After adjusting the image position and color displacement when one or more scanner units of the 4 stations have been replaced, removed or installed
		Precautions for use	- Input the value on the main station service label when the contents of the RAM on the DC controller PCB have been cleared or when the DC controller PCB has been replaced. - Enter the readout value on the main station service label after adjusting the image position and color displacement when one or more scanner units of the 4 stations have been replaced, removed or installed.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	-300 to 300
		Unit	Pulse
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	Adjusted
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
		LNSMTR-M	1
Purpose of use	To display the cumulative pulses of the tilt adjustment motor.		
When used	- When the contents of the RAM on the DC controller circuit board have been cleared, when the DC controller circuit board has been replaced - After adjusting the image position and color shift when one or more scanner units of the four stations have been replaced, removed or installed		
Precautions for use	- Input the value on the main station service label when the contents of the RAM on the DC controller circuit board have been cleared or when the DC controller circuit board has been replaced. - Enter the readout value on the main station service label after adjusting the image position and color shift when one or more scanner units of the four stations have been replaced, removed or installed.		
Settings and adjustment ranges	-300 to 300		
Unit	Pulse		
Amount of change per unit	0		
Value established when RAM is cleared	-		
Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	Adjusted		
Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.		
Related service modes	-		
Additional description and notes	-		

COPIER > ADJUST > LASER			
Item	Level	Description	
LNSMTR-K	1	Title	Total travel amount of lens motor K
		Purpose of use	To display the cumulative pulses of the tilt adjustment motor.
		When used	- When the contents of the RAM on the DC controller PCB have been cleared, when the DC controller PCB has been replaced - After adjusting the image position and color displacement when one or more scanner units of the 4 stations have been replaced, removed or installed
		Precautions for use	- Input the value on the main station service label when the contents of the RAM on the DC controller circuit board have been cleared or when the DC controller circuit board has been replaced. - Enter the readout value on the main station service label after adjusting the image position and color shift when one or more scanner units of the four stations have been replaced, removed or installed.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	-300 to 300
		Unit	Pulse
		Amount of change per unit	0
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	Adjusted
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
LNSMTR-C	1	Title	Total travel amount of lens motor C
		Purpose of use	To display the cumulative pulses of the tilt adjustment motor.
		When used	- When the contents of the RAM on the DC controller PCB have been cleared, when the DC controller PCB has been replaced - After adjusting the image position and color displacement when one or more scanner units of the 4 stations have been replaced, removed or installed
		Precautions for use	- Input the value on the main station service label when the contents of the RAM on the DC controller PCB have been cleared or when the DC controller PCB has been replaced. - Enter the readout value on the main station service label after adjusting the image position and color displacement when one or more scanner units of the 4 stations have been replaced, removed or installed.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	-300 to 300
		Unit	Pulse
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	Adjusted
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

18.4.1.4 COPIER > ADJUST > IMG-REG

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

COPIER > ADJUST > IMG-REG			
Item	Level	Description	
MAG-H-M	1	Title	Main scanning reference magnification adjustment (M)
		Purpose of use	To adjust the main scanning reference magnification for the M color.
		When used	When the reference magnification needs to be adjusted due to environmental changes, etc.
		Precautions for use	Adjust the polygon speed only for magenta (for the other colors, adjust by correcting the color displacement). When this item is used, all the corrected values registered on the media list will be shifted in proportion. Color displacement correction must be executed when this adjustment has been performed.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	-100 to 100
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	Color displacement correction: COPIER > FUNCTION > MISC-P > AUTO-IMG
		Additional description and notes	-
SLID-F1	1	Title	Main scanning registration slide amount adjustment F1
		Purpose of use	To finely adjust the left edge registration for each of the 5 slide stop positions (slide amounts). (To change the image writing.)
		When used	When the registration unit has been replaced When the left edge margin has been found to shift out of position cyclically After the adjustment has been performed, the adjustment value must be entered on the main station service label.
		Precautions for use	The registration roller of this machine will cause the paper to slide toward the center by a specified amount after diagonal feed registration control. There are 5 slide stop positions (slide amounts): 10.0 mm (C), 10.5 (R1), 11 (R2), 9.5 (F1) and 9.0 (F2). When sheets are continuously passed through the machine, the slide amounts for these slide stop positions are constantly being changed as follows with 10.0 mm (C) serving as the reference: 10.0 mm (C) -> 10.5 (R1) -> 11 (R2) -> 10.5 (R1) -> 10.0 (C) -> 9.5 (F1) -> 9.0 (F2) -> 9.5 (F1) and so on. In this mode, adjustments are made for each of the slide positions.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	-4 to 4
		Unit	0.1 mm
		Amount of change per unit	When the value is increased by 1, the margin is reduced by 0.1 mm. When the value is reduced by 1, the margin is increased by 0.1 mm.
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	COPIER > ADJUST > IMG-REG>SLID-MOD COPIER > ADJUST > IMG-REG>SLID-M-P
		Additional description and notes	When adjusting the main scanning registration slide amounts, follow the steps below. 1) Set the COPIER > ADJUST > IMG-REG > SLID-MOD setting to "2". 2) Specify the slide stop position (10.0 mm (C), 10.5 (R1), 11 (R2), 9.5 (F1) or 9.0 (F2)) to be adjusted by selecting COPIER > ADJUST > IMG-REG > SLID-M-P. 3) Adjust the slide stop position by selecting COPIER > ADJUST > IMG-REG > SLID-SLID-F1/F2/R1/R2.

COPIER > ADJUST > IMG-REG			
Item	Level	Description	
2TR-R-V	2	Title	Secondary transfer roller speed adjustment
		Purpose of use	To finely adjust the rotational speed of the secondary transfer outer roller drive motor.
		When used	When the secondary transfer outer roller is replaced, when the image magnification is adjusted
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	-1: Speed reduced (0.1 mm reduction) 0: Normal rotational speed (default) +1: Speed increased (0.25 mm expansion) +2: Speed increased (0.5 mm expansion)
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	The images (length in the sub scanning direction) are used for evaluation purposes.
SLID-R2	1	Title	Main scanning registration slide amount adjustment R2
		Purpose of use	To finely adjust the left edge registration for each of the 5 slide stop positions (slide amounts). (To change the image writing.)
		When used	When the registration unit has been replaced When the left edge margin has been found to shift out of position cyclically After the adjustment has been performed, the adjustment value must be entered on the main station service label.
		Precautions for use	The registration roller of this machine will cause the paper to slide toward the center by a specified amount after diagonal feed registration control. There are 5 slide stop positions (slide amounts): 10.0 mm (C), 10.5 (R1), 11 (R2), 9.5 (F1) and 9.0 (F2). When sheets are continuously passed through the machine, the slide amounts for these slide stop positions are constantly being changed as follows with 10.0 mm (C) serving as the reference: 10.0 mm (C) -> 10.5 (R1) -> 11 (R2) -> 10.5 (R1) -> 10.0 (C) -> 9.5 (F1) -> 9.0 (F2) -> 9.5 (F1) and so on. In this mode, adjustments are made for each of the slide positions.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	-4 to 4
		Unit	0.1 mm
		Amount of change per unit	When the value is increased by 1, the margin is reduced by 0.1 mm. When the value is reduced by 1, the margin is increased by 0.1 mm.
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	Adjusted
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	COPIER > ADJUST > IMG-REG>SLID-MOD COPIER > ADJUST > IMG-REG>SLID-M-P
		Additional description and notes	When adjusting the main scanning registration slide amounts, follow the steps below. 1) Set the COPIER > ADJUST > IMG-REG > SLID-MOD setting to "2". 2) Specify the slide stop position (10.0 mm (C), 10.5 (R1), 11 (R2), 9.5 (F1) or 9.0 (F2)) to be adjusted by selecting COPIER > ADJUST > IMG-REG > SLID-M-P. 3) Adjust the slide stop position by selecting COPIER > ADJUST > IMG-REG > SLID-SLID-F1/F2/R1/R2.

COPIER > ADJUST > IMG-REG			
Item	Level	Description	
SLID-R1	1	Title	Main scanning registration slide amount adjustment R1
		Purpose of use	To finely adjust the left edge registration according to the stop points of the registration slide. (To change the image writing.)
		When used	When the registration unit has been replaced When the left edge margin has been found to shift out of position cyclically After the adjustment has been performed, the adjustment value must be entered on the main station service label.
		Precautions for use	The registration roller of this machine will cause the paper to slide toward the center by a specified amount after diagonal feed registration control. There are 5 slide stop positions (slide amounts): 10.0 mm (C), 10.5 (R1), 11 (R2), 9.5 (F1) and 9.0 (F2). When sheets are continuously passed through the machine, the slide amounts for these slide stop positions are constantly being changed as follows with 10.0 mm (C) serving as the reference: 10.0 mm (C) -> 10.5 (R1) -> 11 (R2) -> 10.5 (R1) -> 10.0 (C) -> 9.5 (F1) -> 9.0 (F2) -> 9.5 (F1) and so on. In this mode, adjustments are made for each of the slide positions.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	-4 to 4
		Unit	0.1 mm
		Amount of change per unit	When the value is increased by 1, the margin is reduced by 0.1 mm. When the value is reduced by 1, the margin is increased by 0.1 mm.
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	Adjusted
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	When adjusting the main scanning registration slide amounts, follow the steps below. 1) Set the COPIER > ADJUST > IMG-REG > SLID-MOD setting to "2". 2) Specify the slide stop position (10.0 mm (C), 10.5 (R1), 11 (R2), 9.5 (F1) or 9.0 (F2)) to be adjusted by selecting COPIER > ADJUST > IMG-REG > SLID-M-P. 3) Adjust the slide stop position by selecting COPIER > ADJUST > IMG-REG > SLID-SLID-F1/F2/R1/R2.
SLID-F2	1	Title	Main scanning registration slide amount adjustment F2
		Purpose of use	To finely adjust the left edge registration according to the stop points of the registration slide. (To change the image writing.)
		When used	When the registration unit has been replaced When the left edge margin has been found to shift out of position cyclically After the adjustment has been performed, the adjustment value must be entered on the main station service label.
		Precautions for use	The registration roller of this machine will cause the paper to slide toward the center by a specified amount after diagonal feed registration control. There are 5 slide stop positions (slide amounts): 10.0 mm (C), 10.5 (R1), 11 (R2), 9.5 (F1) and 9.0 (F2). When sheets are continuously passed through the machine, the slide amounts for these slide stop positions are constantly being changed as follows with 10.0 mm (C) serving as the reference: 10.0 mm (C) -> 10.5 (R1) -> 11 (R2) -> 10.5 (R1) -> 10.0 (C) -> 9.5 (F1) -> 9.0 (F2) -> 9.5 (F1) and so on. In this mode, adjustments are made for each of the slide positions.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	-4 to 4
		Unit	0.1 mm
		Amount of change per unit	When the value is increased by 1, the margin is reduced by 0.1 mm. When the value is reduced by 1, the margin is increased by 0.1 mm.
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	Adjusted
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	COPIER > ADJUST > IMG-REG>SLID-MOD COPIER > ADJUST > IMG-REG>SLID-M-P
		Additional description and notes	When adjusting the main scanning registration slide amounts, follow the steps below. 1) Set the COPIER > ADJUST > IMG-REG > SLID-MOD setting to "2". 2) Specify the slide stop position (10.0 mm (C), 10.5 (R1), 11 (R2), 9.5 (F1) or 9.0 (F2)) to be adjusted by selecting COPIER > ADJUST > IMG-REG > SLID-M-P. 3) Adjust the slide stop position by selecting COPIER > ADJUST > IMG-REG > SLID-SLID-F1/F2/R1/R2.

COPIER > ADJUST > IMG-REG			
Item	Level	Description	
MAG-V-M	1	Title	Sub scanning reference magnification adjustment (M)
		Purpose of use	To adjust the sub scanning reference magnification.
		When used	When the reference magnification needs to be adjusted due to the replacement of the secondary transfer roller or other parts or due to environmental changes, etc.
		Precautions for use	Adjust the polygon speed only for magenta (for the other colors, adjust using the auto registration). When this item is used, all the corrected values registered on the media list will be shifted in proportion. Color displacement correction must be executed when this adjustment has been performed.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	-100 to +100
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	Color displacement correction:COPIER > FUNCTION > MISC-P >AUTO-IMG
		Additional description and notes	-
SLOP-H-M	2	Title	Magenta polygon motor tilt adjustment
		Purpose of use	This item is used when the sub scanning and main scanning of the images are not performed squarely.
		When used	Adjustment is made in this mode if the scanning is not performed squarely as this will result in the image positions of the images on the top side and reverse side not being laid on top of each other properly. For details of the procedure, refer to the image position adjustment procedure.
		Precautions for use	Color displacement correction must be executed when this adjustment has been performed.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	-200 to 200
		Unit	Pulse
		Amount of change per unit	0.0045 mm
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	-
		Related service modes	Color displacement correction:COPIER > FUNCTION > MISC-P >AUTO-IMG
		Additional description and notes	-
SLID-MOD	1	Title	Switching of main scanning registration slide mode for registration swing motor
		Purpose of use	To switch the registration slide mode.
		When used	When the registration unit has been replaced When the left edge margin has been found to shift out of position cyclically
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	1: Registration slide mode (movement between 9 and 11 mm) 2: Slide position fixed mode (position specified by selecting COPIER > ADJUST > IMG-REG > SLID-M-P). 3: Not used
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	1
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	COPIER > ADJUST > IMG-REG>SLID-SLID-F1/F2/R1/R2 COPIER > ADJUST > IMG-REG>SLID-M-P
		Additional description and notes	When adjusting the main scanning registration slide amounts, follow the steps below. 1) Set the COPIER > ADJUST > IMG-REG > SLID-MOD setting to "2". 2) Specify the slide stop position (10.0 mm (C), 10.5 (R1), 11 (R2), 9.5 (F1) or 9.0 (F2)) to be adjusted by selecting COPIER > ADJUST > IMG-REG > SLID-M-P. 3) Adjust the slide stop position by selecting COPIER > ADJUST > IMG-REG > SLID-SLID-F1/F2/R1/R2.

COPIER > ADJUST > IMG-REG			
Item	Level	Description	
SLID-M-P	1	Title	Setting of fixed value in main scanning registration slide mode
		Purpose of use	To specify the position to be established when the FIX mode is designated in the main scanning registration slide mode.
		When used	When the registration unit has been replaced When the left edge margin has been found to shift out of position cyclically
		Precautions for use	If, when adjusting the main scanning registration slide amounts, the COPIER > ADJUST > IMG-REG > SLID-MOD setting has been set to "2," it is possible to adjust which of the slide positions is to be fixed and adjust the registration vis-a-vis that stop position.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0 -> R2 1 -> R1 2 -> C (10 mm (default)) 3 -> F1 4 -> F2
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	COPIER > FUNCTION > DPC > OFST-M
Additional description and notes	When adjusting the main scanning registration slide amounts, follow the steps below. 1) Set the COPIER > ADJUST > IMG-REG > SLID-MOD setting to "2". 2) Specify the slide stop position (10.0 mm (C), 10.5 (R1), 11 (R2), 9.5 (F1) or 9.0 (F2)) to be adjusted by selecting COPIER > ADJUST > IMG-REG > SLID-M-P. 3) Adjust the slide stop position by selecting COPIER > ADJUST > IMG-REG > SLID-SLID-F1/F2/R1/R2.		
SLID-RST	1	Title	Main scanning registration slide position reset mode
		Purpose of use	To start from position 0 when the registration slide mode is established.
		When used	When the transportation parts up to the registration unit and registration area have been replaced When the left edge margin has been found to shift out of position cyclically
		Precautions for use	Reset the position in order to specify the slide stop position where the sheets are to be output. An easier way to specify the slide stop position is to select COPIER > ADJUST > IMG-REG > SLID-M-P.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	1: Setting 0: Cleared when job is completed
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	COPIER > ADJUST > IMG-REG>SLID-SLID-F1/F2/R1/R2 COPIER > ADJUST > IMG-REG>SLID-M-P COPIER > ADJUST > IMG-REG>SLID-MOD
Additional description and notes	-		

18.4.1.5 COPIER > ADJUST > DENS

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

COPIER > ADJUST > DENS			
Item	Level	Description	
SGNL-Y	2	Title	This service mode is not used.
		Purpose of use	To set the Yellow toner density signal value when "INIT" is executed for ATR control.
		When used	When inputting the initial values into the backup RAM
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 255
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	After executing "INIT," check that the signal value is identical to the toner density signal value in the ATR log.
		SGNL-M	2
Purpose of use	To set Magentar toner density signal value when "INIT" is executed for ATR control.		
When used	When inputting the initial values into the backup RAM		
Precautions for use	-		
Settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 255		
Unit	-		
Amount of change per unit	-		
Value established when RAM is cleared	-		
Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-		
Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.		
Related service modes	-		
Additional description and notes	After executing "INIT," check that the signal value is identical to the toner density signal value in the ATR log.		
SGNL-C	2		
		Purpose of use	To set Cyan toner density signal value when "INIT" is executed for ATR control.
		When used	When inputting the initial values into the backup RAM
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 255
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	After executing "INIT," check that the signal value is identical to the toner density signal value in the ATR log.

COPIER > ADJUST > DENS			
Item	Level	Description	
P-SGNL-Y	1	Title	This service mode is not used.
		Purpose of use	To set the signal value for the toner density of Yellow on photosensitive drum when INIT is executed.
		When used	When the contents of the RAM on the DC controller PCB have been cleared, when the DC controller PCB has been replaced
		Precautions for use	Input the value on the main station service label when the contents of the RAM on the DC controller PCB have been cleared or when the DC controller PCB has been replaced.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	150 to 800
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	350
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	Adjusted
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
P-SGNL-M	1	Title	This service mode is not used.
		Purpose of use	To set the signal value for the toner density of Magenta on photosensitive drum when INIT is executed.
		When used	When the contents of the RAM on the DC controller PCB have been cleared, when the DC controller PCB has been replaced
		Precautions for use	Input the value on the main station service label when the contents of the RAM on the DC controller PCB have been cleared or when the DC controller PCB has been replaced.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	150 to 800
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	350
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	Adjusted
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
P-SGNL-C	1	Title	This service mode is not used.
		Purpose of use	To set the signal value for the toner density of Cyan on photosensitive drum when INIT is executed.
		When used	When the contents of the RAM on the DC controller PCB have been cleared, when the DC controller PCB has been replaced
		Precautions for use	Input the value on the main station service label when the contents of the RAM on the DC controller PCB have been cleared or when the DC controller PCB has been replaced.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	150 to 800
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	350
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	Adjusted
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > ADJUST > DENS			
Item	Level	Description	
P-SGNL-K	1	Title	This service mode is not used.
		Purpose of use	To set the signal value for the toner density of Black on photosensitive drum when INIT is executed.
		When used	When the contents of the RAM on the DC controller PCB have been cleared, when the DC controller PCB has been replaced
		Precautions for use	Input the value on the main station service label when the contents of the RAM on the DC controller PCB have been cleared or when the DC controller PCB has been replaced.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	150 to 800
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	350
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	Adjusted
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
SGNL-K	2	Title	This service mode is not used.
		Purpose of use	To set the Black toner density signal value when "INIT" is executed for ATR control.
		When used	When inputting the initial values into the backup RAM
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 255
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	After executing "INIT," check that the signal value is identical to the toner density signal value in the ATR log.

COPIER > ADJUST > DENS			
Item	Level	Description	
HLMT-PTY	2	Title	Adjustment of toner density (TD ratio) target upper limit value for developing assembly residual toner sensor (Yellow)
		Purpose of use	Developing assembly residual toner sensor (Yellow)
		When used	When adjusting the toner density (TD ratio) in cases where trouble with the density, fogging, carrier sticking, spraying, etc. has occurred
		Precautions for use	This item is used when analyzing the causes of trouble. It must be used in accordance with the instructions given by the Quality Support department. When replacing the developer, this setting is returned to '0' because COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL > SPLY-H-Y is executed.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 11 0: TD ratio upper limit is 12 to 8% (9 to 8% for cyan only). 1: TD ratio upper limit is 12% fixed (density- focused). 2: TD ratio upper limit is 12 to 11 % (density- focused). 3: TD ratio upper limit is 12 to 10 % (density/toner drop/foggy image concern, balance-priority). 4: TD ratio upper limit is 12 to 10%, [0] setting applies until 70K (Prevention of toner drop/foggy image-focused). 5: TD ratio upper limit is 12 to 9%, Initial density-focused (Prevention of toner drop/foggy image-focused). 6: TD ratio upper limit is 12 to 9%, setting [0] applies until 200K (Prevention of toner drop/foggy image-focused). 7: TD ratio upper limit is 9 to 8%. 8: TD ratio upper limit is 11% fixed. 9: TD ratio upper limit is 10% fixed. 10: TD ratio upper limit is 9% fixed. 11: TD ratio upper limit is 13% fixed (prohibited). * The machine changes the TD ratio upper limit according to the duration of developer within a range in the settings other than fixed TD ratio upper limit. * Toner drop is a symptom of dropping of toner from developing assembly. * Do not use the setting 11.
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. The lower the setting, the greater the improvement in the density and carrier sticking trouble, but the worse the fogging and spraying trouble becomes. The higher the setting, the worse the density and carrier sticking trouble becomes, but the greater the improvement in the fogging and spraying trouble. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL > SPLY-H-Y
Additional description and notes	-		

COPIER > ADJUST > DENS			
Item	Level	Description	
HLMT-PTM	2	Title	Adjustment of toner density (TD ratio) target upper limit value for developing assembly remaining toner sensor (M)
		Purpose of use	Developing assembly remaining toner sensor (M)
		When used	When adjusting the toner density (TD ratio) in cases where trouble with the density, fogging, carrier sticking, spraying, etc. has occurred
		Precautions for use	This item is used when analyzing the causes of trouble. It must be used in accordance with the instructions given by the Quality Support department. When replacing the developer, this setting is returned to '0' because COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL > SPLY-H-M is executed.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 11 0: TD ratio upper limit is 12 to 8% (9 to 8% for cyan only). 1: TD ratio upper limit is 12% fixed (density- focused). 2: TD ratio upper limit is 12 to 11 % (density- focused). 3: TD ratio upper limit is 12 to 10 % (density/toner drop/foggy image concern, balance-priority). 4: TD ratio upper limit is 12 to 10%, [0] setting applies until 70K (Prevention of toner drop/foggy image-focused). 5: TD ratio upper limit is 12 to 9%, Initial density-focused (Prevention of toner drop/foggy image-focused). 6: TD ratio upper limit is 12 to 9%, setting [0] applies until 200K (Prevention of toner drop/foggy image-focused). 7: TD ratio upper limit is 9 to 8%. 8: TD ratio upper limit is 11% fixed. 9: TD ratio upper limit is 10% fixed. 10: TD ratio upper limit is 9% fixed. 11: TD ratio upper limit is 13% fixed (prohibited). * The machine changes the TD ratio upper limit according to the duration of developer within a range in the settings other than fixed TD ratio upper limit. * Toner drop is a symptom of dropping of toner from developing assembly. * Do not use the setting 11.
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. The lower the setting, the greater the improvement in the density and carrier sticking trouble, but the worse the fogging and spraying trouble becomes. The higher the setting, the worse the density and carrier sticking trouble becomes, but the greater the improvement in the fogging and spraying trouble. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
Related service modes	COPIER > FUNCTION > DPC > OFST-M		
Additional description and notes	-		

COPIER > ADJUST > DENS			
Item	Level	Description	
HLMT-PTC	2	Title	Adjustment of toner density (TD ratio) target upper limit value for developing assembly residual toner sensor (Cyan)
		Purpose of use	Developing assembly remaining toner sensor (Cyan)
		When used	When adjusting the toner density (TD ratio) in cases where trouble with the density, fogging, carrier sticking, spraying, etc. has occurred
		Precautions for use	This item is used when analyzing the causes of trouble. It must be used in accordance with the instructions given by the Quality Support department. When replacing the developer, this setting is returned to '0' because COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL > SPLY-H-C is executed.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 11 0: TD ratio upper limit is 12 to 8% (9 to 8% for cyan only). 1: TD ratio upper limit is 12% fixed (density- focused). 2: TD ratio upper limit is 12 to 11 % (density- focused). 3: TD ratio upper limit is 12 to 10 % (density/toner drop/foggy image concern, balance-priority). 4: TD ratio upper limit is 12 to 10%, [0] setting applies until 70K (Prevention of toner drop/foggy image-focused). 5: TD ratio upper limit is 12 to 9%, Initial density-focused (Prevention of toner drop/foggy image-focused). 6: TD ratio upper limit is 12 to 9%, setting [0] applies until 200K (Prevention of toner drop/foggy image-focused). 7: TD ratio upper limit is 9 to 8%. 8: TD ratio upper limit is 11% fixed. 9: TD ratio upper limit is 10% fixed. 10: TD ratio upper limit is 9% fixed. 11: TD ratio upper limit is 13% fixed (prohibited). * The machine changes the TD ratio upper limit according to the duration of developer within a range in the settings other than fixed TD ratio upper limit. * Toner drop is a symptom of dropping of toner from developing assembly. * Do not use the setting 11.
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. The lower the setting, the greater the improvement in the density and carrier sticking trouble, but the worse the fogging and spraying trouble becomes. The higher the setting, the worse the density and carrier sticking trouble becomes, but the greater the improvement in the fogging and spraying trouble. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL > SPLY-H-C
		Additional description and notes	-
		P-TG-Y	2
Purpose of use	To add the offset, which was decided upon at initialization, to the ATR patch target and change the TD ratio.		
When used	When the density is too low or too high, when fogging or carrier stuck images or other problems have occurred When the images are fogged or too saturated, increase the setting. When 'carrier stuck' faulty images have occurred, reduce the value.		
Precautions for use	Performing adjustments in this mode as a way of increasing the density is not recommended since it may adversely affect the fogging. (It is acceptable to use this mode if it does not affect the fogging.) To increase the density, first proceed with auto gradation correction.		
Settings and adjustment ranges	-40 to +40		
Unit	-		
Amount of change per unit	Offset of one level is applied to ATR patch TGT.		
Value established when RAM is cleared	0		
Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-		
Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting (use the +/- keys to switch between plus and minus), and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON. 3) After printing 300 sheets of image with approx. 10% image ratio (e.g. PG > TYPE = 16), execute auto gradation correction (full correction).		
Related service modes	-		
Additional description and notes	Check that the target density during ATR changes depending on the setting.		

COPIER > ADJUST > DENS			
Item	Level	Description	
P-TG-M	2	Title	Offset adjustment of ATR control target value (Magenta)
		Purpose of use	To add the offset, which was decided upon at initialization, to the ATR patch target and change the TD ratio.
		When used	When the density is too low or too high, when fogging or carrier stuck images or other problems have occurred When the images are fogged or too saturated, increase the setting. When 'carrier stuck' faulty images have occurred, reduce the value.
		Precautions for use	Performing adjustments in this mode as a way of increasing the density is not recommended since it may adversely affect the fogging. (It is acceptable to use this mode if it does not affect the fogging.) To increase the density, first proceed with auto gradation correction.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	-40 to +40
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	Offset of one level is applied to ATR patch TGT.
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting (use the +/- keys to switch between plus and minus), and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON. 3) After printing 300 sheets of image with approx. 10% image ratio (e.g. PG > TYPE = 16), execute auto gradation correction (full correction).
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Check that the target density during ATR changes depending on the setting.
P-TG-C	2	Title	Offset adjustment of ATR control target value (Cyan)
		Purpose of use	To add the offset, which was decided upon at initialization, to the ATR patch target and change the TD ratio.
		When used	When the density is too low or too high, when fogging or carrier stuck images or other problems have occurred When the images are fogged or too saturated, increase the setting. When 'carrier stuck' faulty images have occurred, reduce the value.
		Precautions for use	Performing adjustments in this mode as a way of increasing the density is not recommended since it may adversely affect the fogging. (It is acceptable to use this mode if it does not affect the fogging.) To increase the density, first proceed with auto gradation correction.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	-40 to +40
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	Offset of one level is applied to ATR patch TGT.
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting (use the +/- keys to switch between plus and minus), and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON. 3) After printing 300 sheets of image with approx. 10% image ratio (e.g. PG > TYPE = 16), execute auto gradation correction (full correction).
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Check that the target density during ATR changes depending on the setting.

COPIER > ADJUST > DENS			
Item	Level	Description	
P-TG-K	2	Title	Offset adjustment of ATR control target value (Black)
		Purpose of use	To apply offset to ATR patch TGT decided on at the initialization stage to change the TD ratio.
		When used	When the density is too low or too high, when fogging or carrier stuck images or other problems have occurred When the images are fogged or too saturated, increase the setting. When 'carrier stuck' faulty images have occurred, reduce the value.
		Precautions for use	Performing adjustments in this mode as a way of increasing the density is not recommended since it may adversely affect the fogging. (It is acceptable to use this mode if it does not affect the fogging.) To increase the density, first proceed with auto gradation correction.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	-40 to +40
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	Offset of one level is applied to ATR patch TGT.
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting (use the +/- keys to switch between plus and minus), and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON. 3) After printing 300 sheets of image with approx. 10% image ratio (e.g. PG > TYPE = 16), execute auto gradation correction (full correction).
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Check that the target density during ATR changes depending on the setting.
		ALF-C	1
Purpose of use	To display and input the Alpha value of the Cyan patch sensor.		
When used	When the contents of the RAM have been cleared, when the developer has been replaced, when the drum patch sensor has been replaced		
Precautions for use	When the setting is changed, it must be entered on the main station service label.		
Settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 3000		
Unit	-		
Amount of change per unit	-		
Value established when RAM is cleared	1000		
Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-		
Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.		
Related service modes	-		
Additional description and notes	The Alpha value can be input even while performing adjustments/cleaning accessed from the operator maintenance mode.		

COPIER > ADJUST > DENS			
Item	Level	Description	
HLMT-PTK	2	Title	Adjustment of toner density (TD ratio) target upper limit value for developing assembly residual toner sensor (Black)
		Purpose of use	Developing assembly residual toner sensor (Black)
		When used	When adjusting the toner density (TD ratio) in cases where trouble with the density, fogging, carrier sticking, spraying, etc. has occurred
		Precautions for use	This item is used when analyzing the causes of trouble. It must be used in accordance with the instructions given by the Quality Support department. When replacing the developer, this setting is returned to '0' because COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL > SPLY-H-K is executed.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 11 0: TD ratio upper limit is 12 to 8% (9 to 8% for cyan only). 1: TD ratio upper limit is 12% fixed (density- focused). 2: TD ratio upper limit is 12 to 11 % (density- focused). 3: TD ratio upper limit is 12 to 10 % (density/toner drop/foggy image concern, balance-priority). 4: TD ratio upper limit is 12 to 10%, [0] setting applies until 70K (Prevention of toner drop/foggy image-focused). 5: TD ratio upper limit is 12 to 9%, Initial density-focused (Prevention of toner drop/foggy image-focused). 6: TD ratio upper limit is 12 to 9%, setting [0] applies until 200K (Prevention of toner drop/foggy image-focused). 7: TD ratio upper limit is 9 to 8%. 8: TD ratio upper limit is 11% fixed. 9: TD ratio upper limit is 10% fixed. 10: TD ratio upper limit is 9% fixed. 11: TD ratio upper limit is 13% fixed (prohibited). * The machine changes the TD ratio upper limit according to the duration of developer within a range in the settings other than fixed TD ratio upper limit. * Toner drop is a symptom of dropping of toner from developing assembly. * Do not use the setting 11.
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. The lower the setting, the greater the improvement in the density and carrier sticking trouble, but the worse the fogging and spraying trouble becomes. The higher the setting, the worse the density and carrier sticking trouble becomes, but the greater the improvement in the fogging and spraying trouble. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL > SPLY-H-K
		Additional description and notes	-
		ALF-Y	1
Purpose of use	To display and input the Alpha value of the Yellow patch sensor.		
When used	When the contents of the RAM have been cleared, when the developer has been replaced, when the drum patch sensor has been replaced		
Precautions for use	When the setting has been changed, the new value must be entered on the main station service label.		
Settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 3000		
Unit	-		
Amount of change per unit	-		
Value established when RAM is cleared	1000		
Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-		
Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.		
Related service modes	-		
Additional description and notes	It is also possible to input the alpha value during adjustments or cleaning accessed from operator maintenance mode.		

COPIER > ADJUST > DENS			
Item	Level	Description	
ALF-M	1	Title	Display and input of Alpha value of Magenta patch sensor
		Purpose of use	To display and input the Alpha value of the Magenta patch sensor.
		When used	When the contents of the RAM have been cleared, when the developer has been replaced, when the drum patch sensor has been replaced
		Precautions for use	When the setting has been changed, the new value must be entered on the main station service label.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 3000
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	1000
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	Adjusted
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	The Alpha value can be input even while performing adjustments/cleaning accessed from the operator maintenance mode.
ALF-K	1	Title	Display and input of Alpha value of Black patch sensor
		Purpose of use	To display and input the Alpha value of the Black patch sensor.
		When used	When the contents of the RAM have been cleared, when the developer has been replaced, when the drum patch sensor has been replaced
		Precautions for use	When the setting has been changed, the new value must be entered on the main station service label.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 3000
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	1000
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	Adjusted
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	The Alpha value can be input even while performing adjustments/cleaning accessed from the operator maintenance mode.

18.4.1.6 COPIER > ADJUST > BLANK

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

T-18-29

COPIER > ADJUST > BLANK			
Item	Level	Description	
BLANK-T	1	Title	Not used
		Purpose of use	To input the adjustment value for the non-image width (leading edge).
		When used	When the contents of the RAM on the main controller PCB have been cleared, when the SRAM PCB has been replaced
		Precautions for use	Input the service label value. <- This is not mentioned on the service label.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	-1000 to 1000
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	59
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	Adjusted
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting (use the +/- keys to switch between plus and minus), and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > ADJUST > BLANK			
Item	Level	Description	
BLANK-L	1	Title	Not used
		Purpose of use	To input the adjustment value for the non-image width (left edge).
		When used	When the contents of the RAM on the main controller PCB have been cleared, when the SRAM PCB has been replaced
		Precautions for use	Input the service label value.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	-1000 to 1000
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	59
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	Adjusted
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting (use the +/- keys to switch between plus and minus), and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	-		
BLANK-R	1	Title	Not used
		Purpose of use	To input the adjustment value for the non-image width (right edge).
		When used	When the contents of the RAM on the main controller PCB have been cleared, when the SRAM PCB has been replaced
		Precautions for use	Input the service label value.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	-1000 to 1000
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	59
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	Adjusted
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting (use the +/- keys to switch between plus and minus), and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	-		
BLANK-B	1	Title	Not used
		Purpose of use	To input the adjustment value for the non-produced image width (trailing edge).
		When used	When the contents of the RAM on the main controller PCB have been cleared, when the SRAM PCB has been replaced
		Precautions for use	Input the service label value.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	-1000 to 1000
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	59
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	Adjusted
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting (use the +/- keys to switch between plus and minus), and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	-		

18.4.1.7 COPIER > ADJUST > V-CONT

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

COPIER > ADJUST > V-CONT			
Item	Level	Description	
EPOT-O-Y	1	Title	Potential offset value (Y)
		Purpose of use	To input the potential offset value (Y). Please advise the purpose of using the mode (the times when the mode is used).
		When used	When the contents of the RAM on the DC controller PCB 1-1 have been cleared
		Precautions for use	After the contents of the RAM on the DC controller PCB 1-1 have been cleared, input the value which is on the main station service label.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	-1000 to 1000 Please advise the adjustment method and any adverse effects.
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	Adjusted
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting (use the +/- keys to switch between plus and minus), and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	COPIER > FUNCTION > DPC > OFST-Y
		Additional description and notes	-
EPOT-O-M	1	Title	Potential offset value (M)
		Purpose of use	To input the potential offset value (M).
		When used	When the contents of the RAM on the DC controller PCB 1-1 have been cleared
		Precautions for use	After the contents of the RAM on the DC controller PCB 1-1 have been cleared, input the value which is on the main station service label.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	-1000 to 1000
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	Adjusted
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting (use the +/- keys to switch between plus and minus), and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	COPIER > FUNCTION > DPC > OFST-M
		Additional description and notes	-
EPOT-O-C	1	Title	Potential offset value (C)
		Purpose of use	To input the potential offset value (C).
		When used	When the contents of the RAM on the DC controller PCB 1-1 have been cleared
		Precautions for use	After the contents of the RAM on the DC controller PCB 1-1 have been cleared, input the value which is on the main station service label.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	-1000 to 1000
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	Adjusted
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting (use the +/- keys to switch between plus and minus), and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	COPIER > FUNCTION > DPC > OFST-C
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > ADJUST > V-CONT				
Item	Level	Description		
EPOT-O-K	1	Title	Potential offset value (K)	
		Purpose of use	To input the potential offset value (K).	
		When used	When the contents of the RAM on the DC controller PCB 1-1 have been cleared	
		Precautions for use	After the contents of the RAM on the DC controller PCB 1-1 have been cleared, input the value which is on the main station service label.	
		Settings and adjustment ranges	-1000 to 1000	
		Unit	-	
		Amount of change per unit	-	
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-	
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	Adjusted	
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting (use the +/- keys to switch between plus and minus), and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.	
		Related service modes	COPIER > FUNCTION > DPC > OFST-K	
		Additional description and notes	-	
VCONT-Y	2	Title	Yellow image contrast potential adjustment	
		Purpose of use	To adjust the Yellow image contrast potential.	
		When used	When adjusting the density (DMAX)	
		Precautions for use	Use of this item during normal operations must be avoided unless it is absolutely necessary. As a basic rule, the density must be adjusted in the density adjustment mode accessed from user mode followed by device control settings. If the setting is too high, the sheets will wrap around the fixing roller, possibly causing transfer trouble.	
		Settings and adjustment ranges	-30 to 30	
		Unit	10V	
		Amount of change per unit	When the value is increased by 1, the contrast electric potential increases by 10V, and the density is increased.	
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0	
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-	
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting (use the +/- keys to switch between plus and minus), and press the OK key. To increase the density: Increase the setting. To reduce the density: Reduce the setting. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON. 3) Execute service mode FUNCTION > DPC > DPC. 4) Execute auto gradation adjustment. (full correction)	
		Related service modes	-	
		Additional description and notes	-	

COPIER > ADJUST > V-CONT			
Item	Level	Description	
VCONT-M	2	Title	Magenta image contrast potential adjustment
		Purpose of use	To adjust the Magenta image contrast potential.
		When used	When adjusting the density (DMAX)
		Precautions for use	Use of this item during normal operations must be avoided unless it is absolutely necessary. As a basic rule, the density must be adjusted in the density adjustment mode accessed from user mode followed by device control settings. If the setting is too high, the sheets will wrap around the fixing roller, possibly causing transfer trouble.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	-30 to 30
		Unit	10V
		Amount of change per unit	When the value is increased by 1, the contrast potential increases by 10V, and the density is increased.
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting (use the +/- keys to switch between plus and minus), and press the OK key. To increase the density: Increase the setting. To reduce the density: Reduce the setting. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON. 3) Execute service mode FUNCTION > DPC > DPC. 4) Execute auto gradation adjustment. (full correction)
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
VCONT-C	2	Title	Cyan image contrast potential adjustment
		Purpose of use	To adjust the Cyan image contrast potential.
		When used	When adjusting the density (DMAX)
		Precautions for use	Use of this item during normal operations must be avoided unless it is absolutely necessary. As a basic rule, the density must be adjusted in the density adjustment mode accessed from user mode followed by device control settings. If the setting is too high, the sheets will wrap around the fixing roller, possibly causing transfer trouble.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	-30 to 30
		Unit	10V
		Amount of change per unit	When the value is increased by 1, the contrast potential increases by 10V, and the density is increased.
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting (use the +/- keys to switch between plus and minus), and press the OK key. To increase the density: Increase the setting. To reduce the density: Reduce the setting. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON. 3) Execute service mode FUNCTION > DPC > DPC. 4) Execute auto gradation adjustment. (full correction)
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > ADJUST > V-CONT			
Item	Level	Description	
VCONT-K	2	Title	Black image contrast potential adjustment
		Purpose of use	To adjust the Black image contrast potential.
		When used	When adjusting the density (DMAX)
		Precautions for use	Use of this item during normal operations must be avoided unless it is absolutely necessary. As a basic rule, the density must be adjusted in the density adjustment mode accessed from user mode followed by device control settings. If the setting is too high, the sheets will wrap around the fixing roller, possibly causing transfer trouble.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	-30 to 30
		Unit	10V
		Amount of change per unit	When the value is increased by 1, the contrast potential increases by 10V, and the density is increased.
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting (use the +/- keys to switch between plus and minus), and press the OK key. To increase the density: Increase the setting. To reduce the density: Reduce the setting. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON. 3) Execute service mode FUNCTION > DPC > DPC. 4) Execute auto gradation adjustment. (full correction)
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	-		
VBACK-Y	2	Title	Yellow image defogging potential adjustment
		Purpose of use	To adjust the Yellow image defogging potential.
		When used	When Yellow image fogging has occurred
		Precautions for use	Use of this item during normal operations must be avoided unless it is absolutely necessary. A more effective way to deal with fogging is to perform the adjustment by executing COPIER > ADJUST > DENS > VBACK-Y/M/C/K.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	-30 to 30
		Unit	5V
		Amount of change per unit	When the value is increased by 1, the defogging potential increases by 5V, and the fogging is reduced.
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting (use the +/- keys to switch between plus and minus), and press the OK key. To alleviate fogging, missing white areas along the image edges or carrier stuck, increase the setting. To prevent missing white areas along the image edges or reduce roughness or carrier stuck, reduce the setting. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON. 3) Execute auto gradation adjustment. (full correction)
		Related service modes	COPIER > DISPLAY > DPOT > VBACK-Y
Additional description and notes	The value factoring in the adjustment value used to correct color fogging (fogging correction) which is accessed from the user mode followed by the administrator mode is set as the fogging correction value.		

COPIER > ADJUST > V-CONT			
Item	Level	Description	
VBACK-M	2	Title	Magenta image defogging potential adjustment
		Purpose of use	To adjust the Magenta image defogging potential.
		When used	When Magenta image fogging has occurred
		Precautions for use	Use of this item during normal operations must be avoided unless it is absolutely necessary. A more effective way to deal with fogging is to perform the adjustment by executing COPIER > ADJUST > DENS > VBACK-Y/M/C/K.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	-30 to 30
		Unit	5V
		Amount of change per unit	When the value is increased by 1, the defogging potential increases by 5V, and the fogging is reduced.
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting (use the +/- keys to switch between plus and minus), and press the OK key. To alleviate fogging, missing white areas along the image edges or carrier stuck, increase the setting. To prevent missing white areas along the image edges or reduce roughness or carrier stuck, reduce the setting. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON. 3) Execute auto gradation adjustment. (full correction)
		Related service modes	COPIER > DISPLAY > DPOT > VBACK-Y
		Additional description and notes	The value factoring in the adjustment value used to correct color fogging (fogging correction) which is accessed from the user mode followed by the administrator mode is set as the fogging correction value.
VBACK-C	2	Title	Cyan image defogging potential adjustment
		Purpose of use	To adjust the Cyan image defogging potential.
		When used	When Cyan image fogging has occurred
		Precautions for use	Use of this item during normal operations must be avoided unless it is absolutely necessary. A more effective way to deal with fogging is to perform the adjustment by executing COPIER > ADJUST > DENS > VBACK-Y/M/C/K.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	-30 to 30
		Unit	5V
		Amount of change per unit	When the value is increased by 1, the defogging potential increases by 5V, and the fogging is reduced.
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting (use the +/- keys to switch between plus and minus), and press the OK key. To alleviate fogging, missing white areas along the image edges or carrier stuck, increase the setting. To prevent missing white areas along the image edges or reduce roughness or carrier stuck, reduce the setting. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON. 3) Execute auto gradation adjustment. (full correction)
		Related service modes	COPIER > DISPLAY > DPOT > VBACK-Y
		Additional description and notes	The value factoring in the adjustment value used to correct color fogging (fogging correction) which is accessed from the user mode followed by the administrator mode is set as the fogging correction value.

COPIER > ADJUST > V-CONT			
Item	Level	Description	
VBACK-K	2	Title	Black image defogging potential adjustment
		Purpose of use	To adjust the Black image defogging potential.
		When used	When Black image fogging has occurred
		Precautions for use	Use of this item during normal operations must be avoided unless it is absolutely necessary. A more effective way to deal with fogging is to perform the adjustment by executing COPIER > ADJUST > DENS > VBACK-Y/M/C/K.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	-30 to 30
		Unit	5V
		Amount of change per unit	When the value is increased by 1, the defogging potential increases by 5V, and the fogging is reduced.
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting (use the +/- keys to switch between plus and minus), and press the OK key. To alleviate fogging, missing white areas along the image edges or carrier stuck, increase the setting. To prevent missing white areas along the image edges or reduce roughness or carrier stuck, reduce the setting. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON. 3) Execute auto gradation adjustment. (full correction)
		Related service modes	COPIER > DISPLAY > DPOT > VBACK-Y
Additional description and notes	The value factoring in the adjustment value used to correct color fogging (fogging correction) which is accessed from the user mode followed by the administrator mode is set as the fogging correction value.		

18.4.1.8 COPIER > ADJUST > PASCAL

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

T-18-31

COPIER > ADJUST > PASCAL			
Item	Level	Description	
OFST-P-Y	1	Title	Adjustment of density during test print scanning
		Purpose of use	To adjust by offsetting the test print scan signals in PASCAL control during automatic gray scale correction (full correction).
		When used	Only when the reader controller PCB has been replaced or when the contents of RCON have been cleared
		Precautions for use	Input the value onto the reader service label when the setting has been adjusted.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	-128 to +128
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	Adjusted
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting (use the +/- keys to switch between plus and minus), and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	-		

COPIER > ADJUST > PASCAL			
Item	Level	Description	
OFST-P-M	1	Title	Adjustment of density during test print scanning
		Purpose of use	To adjust by offsetting the test print scan signals in PASCAL control during automatic gray scale correction (full correction).
		When used	Only when the reader controller PCB has been replaced or when the contents of RCON have been cleared
		Precautions for use	When the setting has been changed, the new value must be entered on the main station service label.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	-128 to +128
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting (use the +/- keys to switch between plus and minus), and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
OFST-P-C	1	Title	Adjustment of density during test print scanning
		Purpose of use	To adjust by offsetting the test print scan signals in PASCAL control during automatic gray scale correction (full correction).
		When used	Only when the reader controller PCB has been replaced or when the contents of RCON have been cleared
		Precautions for use	When the setting has been changed, the new value must be entered on the main station service label.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	-128 to +128
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting (use the +/- keys to switch between plus and minus), and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
OFST-P-K	1	Title	Adjustment of density during test print scanning
		Purpose of use	To adjust by offsetting the test print scan signals in PASCAL control during automatic gray scale correction (full correction).
		When used	Only when the reader controller PCB has been replaced or when the contents of RCON have been cleared
		Precautions for use	Input the value onto the reader service label when the setting has been adjusted.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	-128 to +128
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	Adjusted
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting (use the +/- keys to switch between plus and minus), and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > ADJUST > PASCAL			
Item	Level	Description	
OFSTPLM	1	Title	Not used
		Purpose of use	To retain the density adjustment value of LM when a test print has been scanned. (Media 1)
		When used	When the reader controller PCB has been replaced
		Precautions for use	Input the main station service label value when the setting has been adjusted.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	-128 to 128
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	Adjusted
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting (use the +/- keys to switch between plus and minus), and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
OFSTPLC	1	Title	Not used
		Purpose of use	To retain the density adjustment value of LC when a test print has been scanned. (Media 1)
		When used	When the reader controller PCB has been replaced
		Precautions for use	Input the main station service label value when the setting has been adjusted.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	-128 to 128
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	Adjusted
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting (use the +/- keys to switch between plus and minus), and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
OFSTP2Y	1	Title	Density adjustment during test print scanning
		Purpose of use	To retain the density adjustment value of Y when a test print has been scanned. (Media 2) (For models destined for the North American market)
		When used	Only when the reader controller PCB has been replaced or when the contents of RCON have been cleared
		Precautions for use	Input the value onto the reader service label when the setting has been adjusted.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	-128 to 128 Please advise the adjustment method and any adverse effects.
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	Adjusted
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting (use the +/- keys to switch between plus and minus), and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > ADJUST > PASCAL			
Item	Level	Description	
OFSTP2M	1	Title	Density adjustment during test print scanning
		Purpose of use	To retain the density adjustment value of M when a test print has been scanned. (Media 2) (For models destined for the North American market)
		When used	Only when the reader controller PCB has been replaced or when the contents of RCON have been cleared
		Precautions for use	Input the value onto the reader service label when the setting has been adjusted.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	-128 to 128
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	Adjusted
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting (use the +/- keys to switch between plus and minus), and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
OFSTP2C	1	Title	Density adjustment during test print scanning
		Purpose of use	To retain the density adjustment value of C when a test print has been scanned. (Media 2) (For models destined for the North American market)
		When used	Only when the reader controller PCB has been replaced or when the contents of RCON have been cleared
		Precautions for use	Input the value onto the reader service label when the setting has been adjusted.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	-128 to 128
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	Adjusted
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting (use the +/- keys to switch between plus and minus), and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
OFSTP2K	1	Title	Density adjustment during test print scanning
		Purpose of use	To retain the density adjustment value of K when a test print has been scanned. (Media 2) (For models destined for the North American market)
		When used	Only when the reader controller PCB has been replaced or when the contents of RCON have been cleared
		Precautions for use	Input the value onto the reader service label when the setting has been adjusted.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	-128 to 128
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	Adjusted
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting (use the +/- keys to switch between plus and minus), and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	COPIER > FUNCTION > DPC > OFST-M
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > ADJUST > PASCAL			
Item	Level	Description	
OFSTP2LM	1	Title	Not used
		Purpose of use	To retain the density adjustment value of LM when a test print has been scanned. (Media 2)
		When used	When the reader controller PCB has been replaced
		Precautions for use	Input the main station service label value.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	-128 to 128
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	Adjusted
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting (use the +/- keys to switch between plus and minus), and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
OFSTP2LC	1	Title	Not used
		Purpose of use	To retain the density adjustment value of LC when a test print has been scanned. (Media 2) (For models destined for the European market)
		When used	Only when the reader controller PCB has been replaced or when the contents of RCON have been cleared
		Precautions for use	When the setting has been changed, the new value must be entered on the main station service label.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	-128 to 128
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	Adjusted
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting (use the +/- keys to switch between plus and minus), and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
OFSTP3Y	1	Title	Density adjustment during test print scanning
		Purpose of use	To retain the density adjustment value of Y when a test print has been scanned. (Media 3)
		When used	When the reader controller PCB has been replaced
		Precautions for use	Input the value onto the reader service label when the setting has been adjusted.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	-128 to 128
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	Adjusted
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting (use the +/- keys to switch between plus and minus), and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > ADJUST > PASCAL			
Item	Level	Description	
OFSTP3M	1	Title	Density adjustment during test print scanning
		Purpose of use	To retain the density adjustment value of M when a test print has been scanned. (Media 3) (For models destined for the European market)
		When used	Only when the reader controller PCB has been replaced or when the contents of RCON have been cleared
		Precautions for use	Input the value onto the reader service label when the setting has been adjusted.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	-128 to 128
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	Adjusted
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting (use the +/- keys to switch between plus and minus), and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
OFSTP3C	1	Title	Density adjustment during test print scanning
		Purpose of use	To retain the density adjustment value of C when a test print has been scanned. (Media 3) (For models destined for the European market)
		When used	Only when the reader controller PCB has been replaced or when the contents of RCON have been cleared
		Precautions for use	Input the value onto the reader service label when the setting has been adjusted.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	-128 to 128
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	Adjusted
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting (use the +/- keys to switch between plus and minus), and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
OFSTP3K	1	Title	Density adjustment during test print scanning
		Purpose of use	To retain the density adjustment value of K when a test print has been scanned. (Media 3) (For models destined for the European market)
		When used	Only when the reader controller PCB has been replaced or when the contents of RCON have been cleared
		Precautions for use	Input the value onto the reader service label when the setting has been adjusted.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	-128 to 128
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	Adjusted
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting (use the +/- keys to switch between plus and minus), and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > ADJUST > PASCAL			
Item	Level	Description	
OFSTP3LM	1	Title	Not used
		Purpose of use	To retain the density adjustment value of LM when a test print has been scanned. (Media 3)
		When used	When the reader controller PCB has been replaced
		Precautions for use	Input the main station service label value.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	-128 to 128
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	Adjusted
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting (use the +/- keys to switch between plus and minus), and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
OFSTP3LC	1	Title	Not used
		Purpose of use	To retain the density adjustment value of LC when a test print has been scanned. (Media 3)
		When used	When the reader controller PCB has been replaced
		Precautions for use	Input the main station service label value.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	-128 to 128
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	Adjusted
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting (use the +/- keys to switch between plus and minus), and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

18.4.1.9 COPIER > ADJUST > COLOR

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

T-18-32

COPIER > ADJUST > COLOR			
Item	Level	Description	
ADJ-Y	1	Title	Color balance adjustment of Yellow for users
		Purpose of use	To adjust the color balance of the Yellow for users.
		When used	When the output density oscillates due to differences in the host machine
		Precautions for use	Change the default value of the color balance when the output density oscillates due to differences in the host machine. (Increasing the value makes the color more intense; reducing it makes it less intense.) If this value is too high, faulty transfer and/or faulty fixing may occur.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	-8 to +8
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting (use the +/- keys to switch between plus and minus), and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > ADJUST > COLOR			
Item	Level	Description	
ADJ-M	1	Title	Color balance adjustment of Magenta color for users
		Purpose of use	To adjust the color balance of the Magenta for users.
		When used	When the output density oscillates due to differences in the host machine
		Precautions for use	Change the default value of the color balance when the output density oscillates due to differences in the host machine. (Increasing the value makes the color more intense; reducing it makes it less intense.) If this value is too high, faulty transfer and/or faulty fixing may occur.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	-8 to +8
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting (use the +/- keys to switch between plus and minus), and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
ADJ-C	1	Title	Color balance adjustment of Cyan for users
		Purpose of use	To adjust the color balance of the Cyan for users.
		When used	When the output density oscillates due to differences in the host machine
		Precautions for use	Change the default value of the color balance when the output density oscillates due to differences in the host machine. (Increasing the value makes the color more intense; reducing it makes it less intense.) If this value is too high, faulty transfer and/or faulty fixing may occur.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	-8 to +8
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting (use the +/- keys to switch between plus and minus), and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
ADJ-K	1	Title	Color balance adjustment of Black for users
		Purpose of use	To adjust the color balance of the Black for users.
		When used	When the output density oscillates due to differences in the host machine
		Precautions for use	Change the default value of the color balance when the output density oscillates due to differences in the host machine. (Increasing the value makes the color more intense; reducing it makes it less intense.) If this value is too high, faulty transfer and/or faulty fixing may occur.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	-8 to +8
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting (use the +/- keys to switch between plus and minus), and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > ADJUST > COLOR			
Item	Level	Description	
OFST-Y	1	Title	Adjustment of Y color density and color balance of light areas
		Purpose of use	To adjust the Y color density and color balance of light areas.
		When used	When the under colors of the documents are not read properly, when the under colors are not removed properly and an effect resembling fogging is seen
		Precautions for use	Offset the color balance for the light areas when the under colors of the documents are not read properly. (Increasing the value makes the color more intense; reducing it makes it less intense.) When the under colors are not removed properly and an effect resembling fogging is seen, reduce the value until the effect is no longer seen.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	-32 to +32
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting (use the +/- keys to switch between plus and minus), and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	This item is linked with [Initial/setting registration] > [System control settings] > [Device control settings] > [Color adjustments].
OFST-M	1	Title	Adjustment of Magenta density and color balance of light areas
		Purpose of use	To adjust the Magenta density and color balance of the light areas.
		When used	When the under colors of the documents are not read properly, when the under colors are not removed properly and an effect resembling fogging is seen
		Precautions for use	Offset the color balance for the light areas when the under colors of the documents are not read properly. (Increasing the value makes the color more intense; reducing it makes it less intense.) When the under colors are not removed properly and an effect resembling fogging is seen, reduce the value until the effect is no longer seen.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	-32 to +32
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting (use the +/- keys to switch between plus and minus), and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	This item is linked with [Initial/setting registration] > [System control settings] > [Device control settings] > [Color adjustments].
OFST-C	1	Title	Adjustment of Cyan density and color balance of light areas
		Purpose of use	To adjust the Cyan density and color balance of the light areas.
		When used	When the under colors of the documents are not read properly, when the under colors are not removed properly and an effect resembling fogging is seen
		Precautions for use	Offset the color balance for the light areas when the under colors of the documents are not read properly. (Increasing the value makes the color more intense; reducing it makes it less intense.) When the under colors are not removed properly and an effect resembling fogging is seen, reduce the value until the effect is no longer seen.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	-32 to +32
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting (use the +/- keys to switch between plus and minus), and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	This item is linked with [Initial/setting registration] > [System control settings] > [Device control settings] > [Color adjustments].

COPIER > ADJUST > COLOR			
Item	Level	Description	
OFST-K	1	Title	Adjustment of Black density and color balance of light areas
		Purpose of use	To adjust the Black density and color balance of the light areas.
		When used	When the under colors of the documents are not read properly, when the under colors are not removed properly and an effect resembling fogging is seen
		Precautions for use	Offset the color balance for the light areas when the under colors of the documents are not read properly. (Increasing the value makes the color more intense; reducing it makes it less intense.) When the under colors are not removed properly and an effect resembling fogging is seen, reduce the value until the effect is no longer seen.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	-32 to +32
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting (use the +/- keys to switch between plus and minus), and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	This item is linked with [Initial/setting registration] > [System control settings] > [Device control settings] > [Color adjustments].
LD-OFS-Y	2	Title	Color balance adjustment in low-density areas
		Purpose of use	To adjust the color balance in the low-density areas.
		When used	When the color balance in the low-density areas is to be adjusted
		Precautions for use	Use of this item during normal operations must be avoided unless it is absolutely necessary.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	-8 to +8 Please advise the adjustment method.
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting (use the +/- keys to switch between plus and minus), and press the OK key. The color becomes more saturated when the value is increased. The color becomes less saturated when the value is reduced. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	This item is linked with [Initial/setting registration] > [System control settings] > [Device control settings] > [Color adjustments].
LD-OFS-M	2	Title	Color balance adjustment in low-density areas
		Purpose of use	To adjust the color balance in the low-density areas.
		When used	When the color balance in the low-density areas is to be adjusted
		Precautions for use	Use of this item during normal operations must be avoided unless it is absolutely necessary.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	-8 to +8
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting (use the +/- keys to switch between plus and minus), and press the OK key. The color becomes more saturated when the value is increased. The color becomes less saturated when the value is reduced. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	COPIER > FUNCTION > DPC > OFST-M
		Additional description and notes	This item is linked with [Initial/setting registration] > [System control settings] > [Device control settings] > [Color adjustments].

COPIER > ADJUST > COLOR			
Item	Level	Description	
LD-OFS-C	2	Title	Color balance adjustment in low-density areas
		Purpose of use	To adjust the color balance in the low-density areas.
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	Use of this item during normal operations must be avoided unless it is absolutely necessary.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	-8 to +8
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	This item is linked with [Initial/setting registration] > [System control settings] > [Device control settings] > [Color adjustments].
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting (use the +/- keys to switch between plus and minus), and press the OK key. The color becomes more saturated when the value is increased. The color becomes less saturated when the value is reduced. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	-		
LD-OFS-K	2	Title	Color balance adjustment in low-density areas
		Purpose of use	To adjust the color balance in the low-density areas.
		When used	When the color balance in the low-density areas is to be adjusted
		Precautions for use	Use of this item during normal operations must be avoided unless it is absolutely necessary.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	-8 to +8
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting (use the +/- keys to switch between plus and minus), and press the OK key. The color becomes more saturated when the value is increased. The color becomes less saturated when the value is reduced. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	This item is linked with [Initial/setting registration] > [System control settings] > [Device control settings] > [Color adjustments].		
MD-OFS-Y	2	Title	Color balance adjustment in medium-density areas
		Purpose of use	To adjust the color balance in the medium-density areas.
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	Use of this item during normal operation must be kept to the absolute minimum.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	-8 to +8 Please advise the adjustment method.
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting (use the +/- keys to switch between plus and minus), and press the OK key. The color becomes more saturated when the value is increased. The color becomes less saturated when the value is reduced. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	This item is linked with [Initial/setting registration] > [System control settings] > [Device control settings] > [Color adjustments].		

COPIER > ADJUST > COLOR				
Item	Level	Description		
MD-OFS-M	2	Title	Color balance adjustment in medium-density areas	
		Purpose of use	To adjust the color balance in the medium-density areas.	
		When used	When the color balance in the medium-density areas is to be adjusted	
		Precautions for use	Use of this item during normal operation must be kept to the absolute minimum.	
		Settings and adjustment ranges	-8 to +8	
		Unit	-	
		Amount of change per unit	-	
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0	
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-	
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting (use the +/- keys to switch between plus and minus), and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.	
		Related service modes	-	
		Additional description and notes	This item is linked with [Initial/setting registration] > [System control settings] > [Device control settings] > [Color adjustments].	
		MD-OFS-C	2	Title
Purpose of use	To adjust the color balance in the medium-density areas.			
When used	When the color balance in the medium-density areas is to be adjusted			
Precautions for use	Use of this item during normal operation must be kept to the absolute minimum.			
Settings and adjustment ranges	-8 to +8			
Unit	-			
Amount of change per unit	-			
Value established when RAM is cleared	0			
Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-			
Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting (use the +/- keys to switch between plus and minus), and press the OK key. The color becomes more saturated when the value is increased. The color becomes less saturated when the value is reduced. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.			
Related service modes	-			
Additional description and notes	This item is linked with [Initial/setting registration] > [System control settings] > [Device control settings] > [Color adjustments].			
MD-OFS-K	2			Title
		Purpose of use	Use of this item during normal operations must be avoided unless it is absolutely necessary. (Recommended setting: -1)	
		When used	To adjust the color balance in the medium-density areas.	
		Precautions for use	When the color balance in the medium-density areas is to be adjusted	
		Settings and adjustment ranges	Use of this item during normal operation must be kept to the absolute minimum.	
		Unit	-8 to +8	
		Amount of change per unit	-	
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-	
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	0	
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting (use the +/- keys to switch between plus and minus), and press the OK key. The color becomes more saturated when the value is increased. The color becomes less saturated when the value is reduced. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.	
		Related service modes	-	
		Additional description and notes	This item is linked with [Initial/setting registration] > [System control settings] > [Device control settings] > [Color adjustments].	

COPIER > ADJUST > COLOR				
Item	Level	Description		
HD-OFS-Y	2	Title	Color balance adjustment in high-density areas	
		Purpose of use	To adjust the color balance in the high-density areas.	
		When used	When the color balance in the high-density areas is to be adjusted	
		Precautions for use	Use of this item during normal operation must be kept to the absolute minimum.	
		Settings and adjustment ranges	-8 to +8	
		Unit	-	
		Amount of change per unit	-	
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0	
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-	
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting (use the +/- keys to switch between plus and minus), and press the OK key. The color becomes more saturated when the value is increased. The color becomes less saturated when the value is reduced. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.	
		Related service modes	-	
Additional description and notes	-			
HD-OFS-M	2	Title	Color balance adjustment in high-density areas	
		Purpose of use	To adjust the color balance in the high-density areas.	
		When used	When the color balance in the high-density areas is to be adjusted	
		Precautions for use	Use of this item during normal operation must be kept to the absolute minimum.	
		Settings and adjustment ranges	-8 to +8	
		Unit	-	
		Amount of change per unit	-	
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0	
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-	
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting (use the +/- keys to switch between plus and minus), and press the OK key. The color becomes more saturated when the value is increased. The color becomes less saturated when the value is reduced. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.	
		Related service modes	-	
Additional description and notes	This item is linked with [Initial/setting registration] > [System control settings] > [Device control settings] > [Color adjustments].			
HD-OFS-C	2	Title	Color balance adjustment in high-density areas	
		Purpose of use	To adjust the color balance in the high-density areas.	
		When used	-	
		Precautions for use	Use of this item during normal operation must be kept to the absolute minimum.	
		Settings and adjustment ranges	-8 to +8	
		Unit	-	
		Amount of change per unit	-	
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0	
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-	
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting (use the +/- keys to switch between plus and minus), and press the OK key. The color becomes more saturated when the value is increased. The color becomes less saturated when the value is reduced. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.	
		Related service modes	-	
Additional description and notes	This item is linked with [Initial/setting registration] > [System control settings] > [Device control settings] > [Color adjustments].			

COPIER > ADJUST > COLOR				
Item	Level	Description		
HD-OFS-K	2	Title	Color balance adjustment in high-density areas	
		Purpose of use	To adjust the color balance in the high-density areas.	
		When used	When the color balance in the high-density areas is to be adjusted	
		Precautions for use	Use of this item during normal operation must be kept to the absolute minimum.	
		Settings and adjustment ranges	-8 to +8	
		Unit	-	
		Amount of change per unit	-	
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0	
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-	
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting (use the +/- keys to switch between plus and minus), and press the OK key. The color becomes more saturated when the value is increased. The color becomes less saturated when the value is reduced. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.	
		Related service modes	-	
		Additional description and notes	This item is linked with [Initial/setting registration] > [System control settings] > [Device control settings] > [Color adjustments].	

18.4.1.10 COPIER > ADJUST > HV-PRI

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

T-18-33

COPIER > ADJUST > HV-PRI				
Item	Level	Description		
PRIM-Y	2	Title	Primary charger current adjustment (Y)	
		Purpose of use	To adjust the current of the Yellow primary charger.	
		When used	When reduced density, fogging or smeared image has occurred due to insufficient charging	
		Precautions for use	This item is used when analyzing the causes of trouble. The setting must be changed in accordance with the instructions given by the Quality Support department.	
		Settings and adjustment ranges	-2 to +2	
		Unit	uA	
		Amount of change per unit	100uA	
		Value established when RAM is cleared	1000	
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-	
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. Increase this value when faulty images caused by insufficient charging occur. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.	
		Related service modes	-	
		Additional description and notes	-	
PRIM-M	2	Title	Primary charger current adjustment (M)	
		Purpose of use	To adjust the current of the Magenta primary charger.	
		When used	When reduced density, fogging or smeared image has occurred due to insufficient charging	
		Precautions for use	This item is used when analyzing the causes of trouble. The setting must be changed in accordance with the instructions given by the Quality Support department.	
		Settings and adjustment ranges	-2 to +2	
		Unit	uA	
		Amount of change per unit	100uA	
		Value established when RAM is cleared	1000	
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-	
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. Increase this value when faulty images caused by insufficient charging occur. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.	
		Related service modes	-	
		Additional description and notes	-	

COPIER > ADJUST > HV-PRI			
Item	Level	Description	
PRIM-C	2	Title	Primary charger current adjustment (C)
		Purpose of use	To adjust the current of the Cyan primary charger.
		When used	When reduced density, fogging or smeared image has occurred due to insufficient charging
		Precautions for use	This item is used when analyzing the causes of trouble. The setting must be changed in accordance with the instructions given by the Quality Support department.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	-2 to +2
		Unit	uA
		Amount of change per unit	100uA
		Value established when RAM is cleared	1000
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. Increase this value when faulty images caused by insufficient charging occur. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
PRIM-K	2	Title	Primary charger current adjustment (K)
		Purpose of use	To adjust the current of the Black primary charger.
		When used	When reduced density, fogging or smeared image has occurred due to insufficient charging
		Precautions for use	This item is used when analyzing the causes of trouble. The setting must be changed in accordance with the instructions given by the Quality Support department.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	-2 to +2
		Unit	uA
		Amount of change per unit	100uA
		Value established when RAM is cleared	1000
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. Increase this value when faulty images caused by insufficient charging occur. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

18.4.1.11 COPIER > ADJUST > HV-TR

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

COPIER > ADJUST > HV-TR			
Item	Level	Description	
ITR-TGY	2	Title	Yellow primary transfer ATVC target current offset adjustment value
		Purpose of use	To input the Yellow primary transfer ATVC target current offset adjustment value.
		When used	- Low primary transfer current level: select a higher figure than the setting. Dappled marks, auxiliary brush marks made by residual transfer toner (when the color in which the brush is appearing has a high density) or residual transfer ghosting - High primary transfer current level: select a lower figure than the setting. Re-transfer fogging or auxiliary brush marks made by residual re-transfer toner (when the color in the previous station has a higher density than the color in which the brush marks appear)
		Precautions for use	If the setting is too high, 'white spot' trouble tends to occur in the images; conversely, if it is too low, 'leopard spots' and other types of trouble tend to occur in the images.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	-10 to 10
		Unit	1 μ A
		Amount of change per unit	Increase of 1 setting value results in the increase of 1 μ A.
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting (use the +/- keys to switch between plus and minus), and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	COPIER > DISPLAY > HV-TR > S-ATVCIY
		Additional description and notes	-
ITR-TGM	2	Title	Magenta primary transfer ATVC target current offset adjustment value
		Purpose of use	To input the Magenta primary transfer ATVC target current offset adjustment value.
		When used	- Low primary transfer current level: select a higher figure than the setting. Dappled marks, auxiliary brush marks made by residual transfer toner (when the color in which the brush is appearing has a high density) or residual transfer ghosting - High primary transfer current level: select a lower figure than the setting. Re-transfer fogging or auxiliary brush marks made by residual re-transfer toner (when the color in the previous station has a higher density than the color in which the brush marks appear)
		Precautions for use	If the setting is too high, 'white spot' trouble tends to occur in the images; conversely, if it is too low, 'leopard spots' and other types of trouble tend to occur in the images.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	-10 to 10
		Unit	1 μ A
		Amount of change per unit	Increase of 1 setting value results in the increase of 1 μ A.
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting (use the +/- keys to switch between plus and minus), and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	COPIER > DISPLAY > HV-TR > S-ATVCIM
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > ADJUST > HV-TR			
Item	Level	Description	
ITR-TGC	2	Title	Cyan primary transfer ATVC target current offset adjustment value
		Purpose of use	To input the Cyan primary transfer ATVC target current offset adjustment value.
		When used	- Low primary transfer current level: select a higher figure than the setting. Dappled marks, auxiliary brush marks made by residual transfer toner (when the color in which the brush is appearing has a high density) or residual transfer ghosting - High primary transfer current level: select a lower figure than the setting. Re-transfer fogging or auxiliary brush marks made by residual re-transfer toner (when the color in the previous station has a higher density than the color in which the brush marks appear)
		Precautions for use	If the setting is too high, 'white spot' trouble tends to occur in the images; conversely, if it is too low, 'leopard spots' and other types of trouble tend to occur in the images.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	-10 to 10
		Unit	1 μ A
		Amount of change per unit	Increase of 1 setting value results in the increase of 1 μ A.
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting (use the +/- keys to switch between plus and minus), and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	COPIER > DISPLAY > HV-TR > S-ATVCIC
		Additional description and notes	-
ITR-TGKI	2	Title	Black primary transfer ATVC target current offset adjustment value (K: Black-only mode)
		Purpose of use	To input the Black primary transfer ATVC target current offset adjustment value.
		When used	- Low primary transfer current level: select a higher figure than the setting. Dappled marks, auxiliary brush marks made by residual transfer toner (when the color in which the brush is appearing has a high density) or residual transfer ghosting - High primary transfer current level: select a lower figure than the setting. Re-transfer fogging or auxiliary brush marks made by residual re-transfer toner (when the color in the previous station has a higher density than the color in which the brush marks appear)
		Precautions for use	If the setting is too high, 'white spot' trouble tends to occur in the images; conversely, if it is too low, 'leopard spots' and other types of trouble tend to occur in the images.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	-10 to 10
		Unit	1 μ A
		Amount of change per unit	Increase of 1 setting value results in the increase of 1 μ A.
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting (use the +/- keys to switch between plus and minus), and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > ADJUST > HV-TR				
Item	Level	Description		
ITB-POST	1	Title	Adjustment of pre-transfer charger current level	
		Purpose of use	To enable the current setting of the pre-transfer charger to be varied.	
		When used	When 'roughness' or 'transfer white line' faulty image has occurred due to high-humidity conditions	
		Precautions for use	-	
		Settings and adjustment ranges	-5 to 10	
		Unit	1 μ A	
		Amount of change per unit	50 μ A	
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0	
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-	
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting (use the +/- keys to switch between plus and minus), and press the OK key. To reduce the roughness: Increase the value. To reduce the transfer white line, reduce the value. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.	
		Related service modes	-	
		Additional description and notes	-	
ITB-WEB	1	Title	Setting of number of ITB web roll sheets	
		Purpose of use	To enable the number of ITB web roll sheets to be set.	
		When used	- When the ITB gloss has deteriorated significantly - When unsatisfactory images caused by insufficient ITB web capacity have been pointed out (normally known as fogging over Y)	
		Precautions for use	When the alarm for ITB reduced gloss has occurred, reduced gloss can be prevented by reducing the ITB roll cleaning intervals in this mode.	
		Settings and adjustment ranges	The ITB web is fed 2 mm with the following numbers of sheets if they are in the A4 size: 1: 13 sheets 2: 19 sheets 3: 25 sheets (default) 4: 31 sheets 5: 38 sheets	
		Unit	-	
		Amount of change per unit	-	
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-	
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-	
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting (use the +/- keys to switch between plus and minus), and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.	
		Related service modes	-	
		Additional description and notes	An alarm occurs when the ITB gloss is reduced.	
N-ITRV	1	Title	Primary transfer reverse bias setting	
		Purpose of use	To enable the voltage setting with primary transfer reverse bias to be changed.	
		When used	When secondary transfer faulty cleaning has occurred, sheet to sheet intervals image memory trouble has occurred	
		Precautions for use	-	
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0V to 10V	
		Unit	V	
		Amount of change per unit	100V	
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0	
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-	
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting (use the +/- keys to switch between plus and minus), and press the OK key. To reduce the secondary transfer faulty cleaning (soiled back): Increase the setting. To reduce the sheet to sheet intervals image memory (80 mm): Reduce the setting. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.	
		Related service modes	-	
		Additional description and notes	-	

COPIER > ADJUST > HV-TR			
Item	Level	Description	
BCL1-TGF	2	Title	ITB cleaning ACVC target current offset adjustment (upstream)
		Purpose of use	To adjust the ITB cleaning ACVC target current offset (upstream).
		When used	When ITB cleaning trouble (vertical streaks) or unevenness in the waste toner color (black) occurs
		Precautions for use	Cleaning trouble is alleviated when the setting is increased.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 20 (-65uA to -35uA) Setting the value ranged from 16 to 20 results -35uA.
		Unit	1 μ A
		Amount of change per unit	2 μ A
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting (use the +/- keys to switch between plus and minus), and press the OK key. To reduce the secondary transfer faulty cleaning (soiled back): Increase the setting. To reduce the sheet to sheet intervals image memory (80 mm): Reduce the setting. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	COPIER > DISPLAY > HV-TR >S-ATVIC1
Additional description and notes	-		
BCL2-TGF	2	Title	ITB cleaning ACVC target current offset adjustment (downstream)
		Purpose of use	To adjust the ITB cleaning ACVC target current offset (downstream).
		When used	When ITB faulty cleaning (vertical streaks) or unevenness in the waste toner color (black) occurs
		Precautions for use	Cleaning trouble is alleviated when the setting is increased.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	-10 to 30 (0uA to 75uA) Setting the value ranged from -10 to -8 results 0uA. Setting the value to -7 result 1uA. For the setting values greater than -7, each 1 setting value change results in the increase of 2uA. Thus, when the setting value is 0, it will be 15uA.
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	2 μ A
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting (use the +/- keys to switch between plus and minus), and press the OK key. To alleviate the secondary transfer faulty cleaning (dirt on the reverse sides of the sheets): Increase the setting. To reduce the amount of sheet-to-sheet intervals image memory (80 mm): Reduce the setting. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	COPIER > DISPLAY > HV-TR >S-ATVIC2
Additional description and notes	-		

COPIER > ADJUST > HV-TR			
Item	Level	Description	
2TR-TG2	2	Title	Secondary transfer sheet to sheet intervals target voltage offset
		Purpose of use	To adjust the offset of the secondary transfer sheet-to-sheet intervals target voltage.
		When used	When secondary transfer faulty cleaning (dirt on the reverse sides of the sheets) has occurred
		Precautions for use	The voltage is adjusted by changing the value a little at a time until the dirt on the back is removed. Whether the setting is to be increased or reduced depends on the situation at hand.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 21 (-250V to -5000V) When the setting value is 0, the secondary transfer sheet-to-sheet intervals target voltage, which is determined with ATVC control, will be output. When the setting value is within the range from +1 to +21, -250V to -5000V will be output. (Increase of 1 setting value results in the decrease of -250V) To solve the soiled back, increase the setting value.
		Unit	V
		Amount of change per unit	-250V
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
2TC-H11	2	Title	Secondary transfer cleaning current setting adjustment
		Purpose of use	To adjust the secondary transfer cleaning current setting.
		When used	When secondary transfer faulty cleaning (soiled back of the sheets) has occurred
		Precautions for use	The current is adjusted by changing the value a little at a time until the soiled back is removed.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	-15 to +15(0 to 27.5)
		Unit	μA
		Amount of change per unit	1 μA
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting (use the +/- keys to switch between plus and minus), and press the OK key. To prevent dirt on the reverse sides of the sheets, increase the setting. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	COPIER > DISPLAY > HV-ST5 > 2TC-TGI
		Additional description and notes	-
2ELSW	2	Title	Secondary transfer static eliminator bias ON/OFF
		Purpose of use	To set the secondary transfer static eliminator bias to ON or OFF.
		When used	When faulty secondary transfer separation or numerous cases of faulty images(Bursting) caused by the static eliminator have occurred
		Precautions for use	Select the OFF setting when faulty secondary transfer separation or numerous cases of faulty images(Bursting) caused by the static eliminator have occurred.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0:ON 1:OFF
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	COPIER > DISPLAY > HV-ST5 > 2EL
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > ADJUST > HV-TR			
Item	Level	Description	
2TR-TG	2	Title	Secondary transfer ATVC target current offset
		Purpose of use	To offset the secondary transfer ATVC target current.
		When used	When faulty transfer has occurred in the secondary transfer unit
		Precautions for use	The current is adjusted by changing the value a little at a time until the soiled back is removed. Whether the setting is to be increased or reduced depends on the situation at hand.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-16 to 8
		Amount of change per unit	μA
		Value established when RAM is cleared	2.5 μA
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	COPIER > DISPLAY > HV-TR > S-ATVC2T
Additional description and notes	-		
S-ATVC-Y	2	Title	Adjustment of primary transfer (Yellow) sheet-to-sheet intervals ATVC offset voltage correction value
		Purpose of use	To adjust the primary transfer (Yellow) sheet-to-sheet intervals ATVC offset voltage correction value.
		When used	When faulty transfer has occurred during continuous printing
		Precautions for use	Reduce the value when the density fluctuates significantly. Increasing the value must be avoided whenever possible. It will increase the density fluctuations.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	-7 to +13(0 to 200V)
		Unit	10
		Amount of change per unit	10V
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting (use the +/- keys to switch between plus and minus), and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	-		
S-ATVC-M	2	Title	Adjustment of primary transfer (Magenta) sheet-to-sheet intervals ATVC offset voltage correction value
		Purpose of use	To adjust the primary transfer (Magenta) sheet-to-sheet intervals ATVC offset voltage correction value.
		When used	When faulty transfer has occurred during continuous printing
		Precautions for use	Reduce the value when the density fluctuates significantly. Increasing the value must be avoided whenever possible. It will increase the density fluctuations.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	-7 to +13(0 to 200V)
		Unit	10
		Amount of change per unit	10V
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting (use the +/- keys to switch between plus and minus), and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	-		

COPIER > ADJUST > HV-TR			
Item	Level	Description	
S-ATVC-C	2	Title	Adjustment of primary transfer (Cyan) sheet-to-sheet intervals ATVC offset voltage correction value
		Purpose of use	To adjust the primary transfer (Cyan) sheet-to-sheet intervals ATVC offset voltage correction value.
		When used	When faulty transfer has occurred during continuous printing
		Precautions for use	Reduce the value when the density fluctuates significantly. Increasing the value must be avoided whenever possible. It will increase the density fluctuations.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	-7 to +13(0 to 200V)
		Unit	10
		Amount of change per unit	10V
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting (use the +/- keys to switch between plus and minus), and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
S-ATVC-K	2	Title	Adjustment of primary transfer (Black) sheet-to-sheet intervals ATVC offset voltage correction value
		Purpose of use	To adjust the primary transfer (Black) sheet-to-sheet intervals ATVC offset voltage correction value.
		When used	When faulty transfer has occurred during continuous printing
		Precautions for use	Reduce the value when the density fluctuates significantly. Increasing the value must be avoided whenever possible. It will increase the density fluctuations.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	-7 to +13(0 to 200V)
		Unit	10
		Amount of change per unit	10V
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting (use the +/- keys to switch between plus and minus), and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
S-ATVC2T	2	Title	Adjustment of secondary transfer sheet-to-sheet intervals ATVC offset voltage correction value
		Purpose of use	To adjust the secondary transfer sheet-to-sheet intervals ATVC offset voltage correction value.
		When used	When faulty transfer has occurred during continuous printing
		Precautions for use	Reduce the value when the density fluctuates significantly. Increasing the value must be avoided whenever possible. It will increase the density fluctuations.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	-7 to +13(0 to 200V)
		Unit	10
		Amount of change per unit	10V
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting (use the +/- keys to switch between plus and minus), and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > ADJUST > HV-TR			
Item	Level	Description	
S-ATVCL1	2	Title	Adjustment of sheet-to-sheet intervals ACVC correction voltage offset for ITB cleaning (upstream)
		Purpose of use	To adjust the sheet-to-sheet intervals ACVC correction voltage offset for ITB cleaning (upstream).
		When used	When faulty transfer has occurred during continuous printing
		Precautions for use	Reduce the value when the density fluctuates significantly. Increasing the value must be avoided whenever possible. It will increase the density fluctuations.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	-7 to +13(0 to 200V)
		Unit	10
		Amount of change per unit	10V
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting (use the +/- keys to switch between plus and minus), and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
		S-ATVCL1	2
Purpose of use	To adjust the sheet-to-sheet intervals ACVC correction voltage offset for ITB cleaning (Downstream).		
When used	When faulty transfer has occurred during continuous printing		
Precautions for use	When faulty transfer has occurred during continuous printing		
Settings and adjustment ranges	-7 to +13(0 to 200V)		
Unit	10		
Amount of change per unit	10V		
Value established when RAM is cleared	0		
Related service modes	-		
Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting (use the +/- keys to switch between plus and minus), and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.		
Setting, adjustment and operation procedures			
Related service modes	-		
Additional description and notes	-		

18.4.1.12 COPIER > ADJUST > FEED-ADJ

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

COPIER > ADJUST > FEED-ADJ				
Item	Level	Description		
REG-TOP	1	Title	Leading edge margin adjustment	
		Purpose of use	To adjust the leading edge margin.	
		When used	When the leading edge margin is to be adjusted (at the time of installation)	
		Precautions for use	When the setting has been changed, it must be entered on the main station service label.	
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 200	
		Unit	0.06 mm	
		Amount of change per unit	-	
		Value established when RAM is cleared	100	
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	Adjusted	
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting (use the +/- keys to switch between plus and minus), and press the OK key. To increase the leading edge margin: Increase the value. To reduce the leading edge margin: Reduce the value. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.	
		Related service modes	-	
Additional description and notes	-			
REG-LEFT	1	Title	Left edge margin adjustment	
		Purpose of use	To adjust the left edge margin.	
		When used	When the leading edge margin is to be adjusted (at the time of installation)	
		Precautions for use	When the setting has been changed, it must be entered on the main station service label.	
		Settings and adjustment ranges	-30 to 30	
		Unit	0.1 mm	
		Amount of change per unit	-	
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0	
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	Adjusted	
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting (use the +/- keys to switch between plus and minus), and press the OK key. To increase the left edge margin: Increase the value. To reduce the left edge margin: Reduce the value. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.	
		Related service modes	-	
Additional description and notes	-			
OHP-ADJ	1	Title	Leading edge margin adjustment for transparency sensor	
		Purpose of use	Because of individual difference among the transparency sensors, the light-reception area (spot width) varies. Thus, when replacing the sensor, the leading edge margin adjustment must be performed.	
		When used	When replacing the transparency sensor, or when replacing the DC controller PCB	
		Precautions for use	-	
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 200	
		Unit	mm	
		Amount of change per unit	0.06 mm	
		Value established when RAM is cleared	130	
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	Adjusted	
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight and enter the setting value. Then, press [OK]. Widen the lead edge margin: increase the value Narrow the lead edge margin: decrease the value 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.	
		Related service modes	-	
Additional description and notes	-			

18.4.1.13 COPIER > ADJUST > CST-ADJ

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

COPIER > ADJUST > CST-ADJ			
Item	Level	Description	
MF-A4R	1	Title	A4R manual feeder tray sheet width basic number input
		Purpose of use	To input the basic number for the sheet width of the A4R manual feeder tray.
		When used	- When the contents of the RAM on the DC controller PCB have been cleared, when the DC controller PCB has been replaced - When the sheet width detection VR has been replaced or a new value is to be registered
		Precautions for use	- Input the value on the service label when the contents of the RAM on the DC controller PCB have been cleared or when the DC controller PCB has been replaced. - Execute service mode: COPIER > FUNCTION > CST > A4R when the sheet width detection VR has been replaced or a new value is to be registered. When the setting has been changed, it must be entered on the main station service label.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 255
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	Adjusted
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	COPIER > FUNCTION > CST > A4R (level 1)
		Additional description and notes	-
MF-A6R	1	Title	A6R manual feeder tray sheet width basic number input
		Purpose of use	To input the basic number for the sheet width of the A4R stack bypass tray.
		When used	- When the contents of the RAM on the DC controller PCB have been cleared, when the DC controller PCB has been replaced - When the sheet width detection VR has been replaced or a new value is to be registered
		Precautions for use	- Input the value on the service label when the contents of the RAM on the DC controller PCB have been cleared or when the DC controller PCB has been replaced. - Execute service mode: COPIER > FUNCTION > CST > A6R when the sheet width detection VR has been replaced or a new value is to be registered. When the setting has been changed, it must be entered on the main station service label.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 255
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	Adjusted
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	COPIER > FUNCTION > CST > A6R (level 1)
		Additional description and notes	-
MF-A4	1	Title	A4 manual feeder tray sheet width basic number input
		Purpose of use	To input the basic number for the sheet width of the A4 stack bypass tray.
		When used	- When the contents of the RAM on the DC controller PCB have been cleared, when the DC controller PCB has been replaced - When the sheet width detection VR has been replaced or a new value is to be registered
		Precautions for use	- Input the value on the service label when the contents of the RAM on the DC controller PCB have been cleared or when the DC controller PCB has been replaced. - Execute service mode: COPIER > FUNCTION > CST > A4 when the sheet width detection VR has been replaced or a new value is to be registered. When the setting has been changed, it must be entered on the main station service label.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 255
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	26
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	Adjusted
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	COPIER > FUNCTION > CST > A4 (level 1)
		Additional description and notes	-

18.4.1.14 COPIER > ADJUST > MISC

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

T-18-37

COPIER > ADJUST > MISC			
Item	Level	Description	
SEG-ADJ	1	Title	Adjustment of text and photo recognition level in text, photo and map modes
		Purpose of use	To adjust the text and photo recognition level in the text, photo and map modes.
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	- To make it easier to identify photo documents: Increase the setting. - To make it easier to identify text documents: Reduce the setting.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	-4 to 4
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting (use the +/- keys to switch between plus and minus), and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
K-ADJ	1	Title	Adjustment of black color recognition during black text processing
		Purpose of use	To adjust the black color recognition during black text processing.
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	To make it easier to identify the color as black: Increase the setting.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	-3 to 3
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting (use the +/- keys to switch between plus and minus), and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
DF-S-RK	1	Title	Characteristics value of sheet thickness sensors set at factory
		Purpose of use	Since there are differences in the detection levels of the sensors, to set the sensor rank information for each sheet thickness sensor when one of these sensors has been replaced or the contents of the RAM on the DC controller PCB have been cleared.
		When used	When a sheet thickness sensor has been replaced or the contents of the RAM on the DC controller PCB have been cleared
		Precautions for use	When the setting has been changed, it must be entered on the main station service label.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	1 to 5 Set the value which corresponds to the letter given on the label attached to the thick paper sensor. A:1 B:2 C:3 D:4 E:5
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	1
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	Adjusted
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > ADJUST > MISC			
Item	Level	Description	
ACS-ADJ	1	Title	Adjustment of color recognition in ACS mode
		Purpose of use	To adjust the color recognition in the ACS mode.
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	- To make it easier to identify black-and-white documents: Increase the setting. - To make it easier to identify color documents: Reduce the setting.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	-3 to 3
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting (use the +/- keys to switch between plus and minus), and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	-		
ACS-EN	2	Title	Adjustment of ACS identification area
		Purpose of use	To adjust the ACS identification area.
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	The identification area is increased when the setting is increased.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	Numerical value
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	1
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	-		
ACS-CNT	2	Title	Adjustment of area for counting pixels identifying colors as chromatic colors during ACS identification (when DF stream reading is used)
		Purpose of use	To adjust the area for counting the pixels identifying colors as chromatic colors during ACS identification. (when DF stream reading is used)
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	The identification area is increased when the setting is increased.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	Numerical value
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	-		

COPIER > ADJUST > MISC			
Item	Level	Description	
ACS-EN2	2	Title	Adjustment of ACS identification area
		Purpose of use	To adjust the ACS identification area. (When DF stream reading is used)
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	The identification area is increased when the setting is increased.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	-2 to 2
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	1
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting (use the +/- keys to switch between plus and minus), and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
ACS-CNT2	2	Title	Adjustment of area for counting pixels identifying colors as chromatic colors during ACS identification (when DF stream reading is used)
		Purpose of use	To adjust the area for counting the pixels identifying colors as chromatic colors during ACS identification. (When DF stream reading is used)
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	The identification area is increased when the setting is increased.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	-2 to 2
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting (use the +/- keys to switch between plus and minus), and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
REOS-PG	2	Title	Selection of Reos processing coefficient at 1200 dpi
		Purpose of use	To select the Reos processing coefficient at 1200 dpi.
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	Print PG of PG type 55 (COPIER > TEST > PG > TYPE: 55) and, based on this PG, set the numbers of the areas where the character proportions and line widths appear to be optimal in the Reos processing module at the PDL 1200 dpi setting (there are 4 areas on the type 55 PG, and the respective images appear in these areas).
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 4
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	2
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	2
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	COPIER > TEST > PG > TYPE (level 1)
		Additional description and notes	Output vertical and horizontal patterns consisting of 3 dots and 10 spaces (same patterns as for above PG) at 1200 dpi, and check that the output is the same as that delivered as the printing results of the set areas.

18.4.1.15 COPIER > ADJUST > SENS-ADJ

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

COPIER > ADJUST > SENS-ADJ			
Item	Level	Description	
P-GAIN-Y	1	Title	Not used
		Purpose of use	To register the Yellow drum patch sensor gain. Please advise the purpose of using this mode (when it is checked). Please advise how this items compares with ADJUST > DENS > ALF-C.
		When used	When the drum patch sensor has been replaced
		Precautions for use	Register the adjustment value for each drum patch sensor (a label with this numerical value is attached to the drum patch sensor) in the host machine.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	4-digit decimal number
		Unit	4 digits
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
		P-GAIN-M	1
Purpose of use	To register the Magenta drum patch sensor gain.		
When used	When the drum patch sensor has been replaced		
Precautions for use	Register the adjustment value for each drum patch sensor (a label with this numerical value is attached to the drum patch sensor) in the host machine.		
Settings and adjustment ranges	4-digit decimal number		
Unit	-		
Amount of change per unit	-		
Value established when RAM is cleared	-		
Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-		
Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.		
Related service modes	-		
Additional description and notes	Operator maintenance mode		
P-GAIN-C	1		
		Purpose of use	To register the Cyan drum patch sensor gain.
		When used	When the drum patch sensor has been replaced
		Precautions for use	Register the adjustment value for each drum patch sensor (a label with this numerical value is attached to the drum patch sensor) in the host machine.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	4-digit decimal number
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > ADJUST > SENS-ADJ			
Item	Level	Description	
P-GAIN-K	1	Title	Not used
		Purpose of use	To register the Black drum patch sensor gain.
		When used	When the drum patch sensor has been replaced
		Precautions for use	Register the adjustment value for each drum patch sensor (a label with this numerical value is attached to the drum patch sensor) in the host machine.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	4-digit decimal number
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
W-TNR-1	1	Title	Waste toner inductor sensor offset adjustment value (box sensor 1)
		Purpose of use	To display the offset value in relation to the threshold (COPIER > FUNCTION > MISC-P > WTN-OFST adjustment result).
		When used	When the DC controller PCB 1-1 has been replaced, when the waste toner full sensor 1 or 2 has been replaced
		Precautions for use	When the DC controller PCB 1-1 has been replaced or when the waste toner full sensor 1 or 2 has been replaced, the value of this item must be entered on the main station service label after COPIER > FUNCTION > MISC-P > WTN-OFST has been executed.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	-100 to 100
		Unit	0.01V
		Amount of change per unit	0.01V
		Value established when RAM is cleared	
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting (use the +/- keys to switch between plus and minus), and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	COPIER>FUNCTION>MISC-P>WTN-OFST
		Additional description and notes	
W-TNR-2	1	Title	Waste toner inductor sensor offset adjustment value (box sensor 2)
		Purpose of use	To display the offset value in relation to the threshold (COPIER > FUNCTION > MISC-P > WTN-OFST adjustment result).
		When used	When the DC controller PCB 1-1 has been replaced, when the waste toner full sensor 1 or 2 has been replaced
		Precautions for use	When the DC controller PCB 1-1 has been replaced or when the waste toner full sensor 1 or 2 has been replaced, the value of this item must be entered on the main station service label after COPIER > FUNCTION > MISC-P > WTN-OFST has been executed.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	-100 to 100
		Unit	0.01V
		Amount of change per unit	0.01V
		Value established when RAM is cleared	
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting (use the +/- keys to switch between plus and minus), and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	COPIER>FUNCTION>MISC-P>WTN-OFST
		Additional description and notes	

COPIER > ADJUST > SENS-ADJ			
Item	Level	Description	
W-BUF-1	1	Title	Waste toner inductor sensor offset adjustment value (box sensor 2)
		Purpose of use	To display the offset value in relation to the threshold (COPIER > FUNCTION > MISC-P > WTN-BUFOF adjustment result).
		When used	When the DC controller PCB 1-1 has been replaced, when the waste toner full sensor 1 or 2 has been replaced
		Precautions for use	When the DC controller PCB 1-1 has been replaced or when the waste toner full sensor 1 or 2 has been replaced, the value of this item must be entered on the main station service label after COPIER > FUNCTION > MISC-P > WTN-BUFOF has been executed.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	-100 to 100
		Unit	0.01V
		Amount of change per unit	0.01V
		Value established when RAM is cleared	
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	
		Related service modes	COPIER>FUNCTION>MISC-P>WTN-OFST
		Additional description and notes	
DUP-PLEN	1	Title	Enter the distance between the sheet length sensors
		Purpose of use	Enter the distance between the sheet length sensors
		When used	Re-enter the value indicated on the main station service label when replacing the DC controller PCB or when clearing RAM of the DC controller PCB.
		Precautions for use	
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 99999
		Unit	0.001mm
		Amount of change per unit	0.001mm
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	Adjusted
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	
		Additional description and notes	

18.4.1.16 COPIER > ADJUST > EXP-LED

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

COPIER > ADJUST > EXP-LED			
Item	Level	Description	
CL-EX-Y	2	Title	Yellow cleaning pre-exposure LED current setting (image area)
		Purpose of use	To set the Yellow cleaning pre-exposure LED current (image area).
		When used	When drum ghost is very noticeable, when it is difficult to obtain a sufficient potential When drum ghost (drum pitch) is very noticeable, when it is difficult to obtain a sufficient potential
		Precautions for use	When the setting is high, it is difficult to obtain a sufficient potential, and so the images become darker. When the setting is low, 'drum ghost' occurs where the image of the one revolution of the drum before can be seen.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	-5 to 5 (0mA to 80ma)
		Unit	mA
		Amount of change per unit	It increases by the increase +1 unit six mA. -It decreases by the increase one unit ten mA.
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0(50mA)
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. When dealing with drum ghost: Increase the value. When it is difficult to obtain a sufficient potential: Reduce the setting. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
CL-EX-M	2	Title	Magenta cleaning pre-exposure LED current setting (image area)
		Purpose of use	To set the Magenta cleaning pre-exposure LED current (image area).
		When used	When drum ghost (drum pitch) is very noticeable, when it is difficult to obtain a sufficient potential
		Precautions for use	When the setting is high, it is difficult to obtain a sufficient potential, and so the images become darker. When the setting is low, 'drum ghost' occurs where the image of the one revolution of the drum before can be seen.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	-5 to 5 (0mA to 80ma)
		Unit	mA
		Amount of change per unit	It increases by the increase +1 unit six mA. -It decreases by the increase one unit ten mA.
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0(50mA)
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. When dealing with drum ghost: Increase the value. When it is difficult to obtain a sufficient potential: Reduce the setting. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > ADJUST > EXP-LED			
Item	Level	Description	
CL-EX-C	2	Title	Cyan cleaning pre-exposure LED current setting (image area)
		Purpose of use	To set the Cyan cleaning pre-exposure LED current (image area).
		When used	When drum ghost (drum pitch) is very noticeable, when it is difficult to obtain a sufficient potential
		Precautions for use	When the setting is high, it is difficult to obtain a sufficient potential, and so the images become darker. When the setting is low, 'drum ghost' occurs where the image of the one revolution of the drum before can be seen.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	-5 to 5 (0mA to 80ma)
		Unit	mA
		Amount of change per unit	It increases by the increase +1 unit six mA. -It decreases by the increase one unit ten mA.
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0(50mA)
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. When dealing with drum ghost: Increase the value. When it is difficult to obtain a sufficient potential: Reduce the setting. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
CL-EX-K	2	Title	Black cleaning pre-exposure LED current setting (image area)
		Purpose of use	To set the Black cleaning pre-exposure LED current (image area).
		When used	When drum ghost (drum pitch) is very noticeable, when it is difficult to obtain a sufficient potential
		Precautions for use	When the setting is high, it is difficult to obtain a sufficient potential, and so the images become darker. When the setting is low, 'drum ghost' occurs where the image of the one revolution of the drum before can be seen.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	-5 to 5 (0mA to 80ma)
		Unit	mA
		Amount of change per unit	It increases by the increase +1 unit six mA. -It decreases by the increase one unit ten mA.
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0(50mA)
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. When dealing with drum ghost: Increase the value. When it is difficult to obtain a sufficient potential: Reduce the setting. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
PR-EXP-Y	2	Title	Yellow pre-exposure LED current setting
		Purpose of use	To set the Yellow pre-exposure LED current. Please advise the purpose of using the mode (when it is checked).
		When used	When drum ghost (drum pitch) is very noticeable, when it is difficult to obtain a sufficient potential
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	-5 to 5 (0mA to 85ma)
		Unit	mA
		Amount of change per unit	It increases by the increase +1 unit one mA. -It decreases by the increase one unit 16mA.
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0(80mA)
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. When dealing with drum ghost: Increase the value. When it is difficult to obtain a sufficient potential: Reduce the setting. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > ADJUST > EXP-LED			
Item	Level	Description	
PR-EXP-M	2	Title	Magenta pre-exposure LED current setting
		Purpose of use	To set the Magenta pre-exposure LED current.
		When used	When drum ghost (drum pitch) is very noticeable, when it is difficult to obtain a sufficient potential
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	-5 to 5 (0mA to 85ma)
		Unit	mA
		Amount of change per unit	It increases by the increase +1 unit one mA. -It decreases by the increase one unit 16mA.
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0(80mA)
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. When dealing with drum ghost: Increase the value. When it is difficult to obtain a sufficient potential: Reduce the setting. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
PR-EXP-C	2	Title	Cyan pre-exposure LED current setting
		Purpose of use	To set the Cyan pre-exposure LED current.
		When used	When drum ghost (drum pitch) is very noticeable, when it is difficult to obtain a sufficient potential
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	-5 to 5 (0mA to 85ma)
		Unit	mA
		Amount of change per unit	It increases by the increase +1 unit one mA. -It decreases by the increase one unit 16mA.
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0(80mA)
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. When dealing with drum ghost: Increase the value. When it is difficult to obtain a sufficient potential: Reduce the setting. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
PR-EXP-K	2	Title	Black pre-exposure LED current setting
		Purpose of use	To set the Black pre-exposure LED current.
		When used	When drum ghost (drum pitch) is very noticeable, when it is difficult to obtain a sufficient potential
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	-5 to 5 (0mA to 85ma)
		Unit	mA
		Amount of change per unit	It increases by the increase +1 unit one mA. -It decreases by the increase one unit 16mA.
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0(80mA)
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. When dealing with drum ghost: Increase the value. When it is difficult to obtain a sufficient potential: Reduce the setting. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

18.4.1.17 COPIER > ADJUST > P-PASCAL

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

COPIER > ADJUST > P-PASCAL			
Item	Level	Description	
CSIOFWMY	1	Title	Host machine offset adjustment for solid white measured luminance value Y of color sensor 1
		Purpose of use	To adjust the host machine offset for the solid white measured luminance value Y of color sensor 1.
		When used	Only when the DC controller PCB has been replaced or when the contents of DCON have been cleared
		Precautions for use	Input the value on the sub station service label. After inputting the value, the following must be selected in the user mode: Adjustments/cleaning > automatic gradation correction > full correction.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 1023
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	Adjusted
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
CSIOFWIM	1	Title	Host machine offset adjustment for solid white ideal luminance value M of color sensor 1
		Purpose of use	To adjust the host machine offset for the solid white ideal luminance value M of color sensor 1.
		When used	Only when the DC controller PCB has been replaced or when the contents of DCON have been cleared
		Precautions for use	Input the value on the sub station service label. After inputting the value, the following must be selected in the user mode: Adjustments/cleaning > automatic gradation correction > full correction.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 1023
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
CSIOFDMM	1	Title	Host machine offset adjustment for solid measured luminance value M of color sensor 1
		Purpose of use	To adjust the host machine offset for the solid measured luminance value M of color sensor 1.
		When used	Only when the DC controller PCB has been replaced or when the contents of DCON have been cleared
		Precautions for use	Input the value on the sub station service label. After inputting the value, the following must be selected in the user mode: Adjustments/cleaning > automatic gradation correction > full correction.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 1023
		Unit	Please advise the unit.
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	Adjusted
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > ADJUST > P-PASCAL			
Item	Level	Description	
CSIOFDMY	1	Title	Host machine offset adjustment for solid measured luminance value Y of color sensor 1
		Purpose of use	To adjust the host machine offset for the solid measured luminance value Y of color sensor 1.
		When used	Only when the DC controller PCB has been replaced or when the contents of DCON have been cleared
		Precautions for use	Input the value on the sub station service label. After inputting the value, the following must be selected in the user mode: Adjustments/cleaning > automatic gradation correction > full correction.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 1023
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	Adjusted
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
CSIOFDIM	1	Title	Host machine offset adjustment for solid ideal luminance value M of color sensor 1
		Purpose of use	To adjust the host machine offset for the solid ideal luminance value M of color sensor 1.
		When used	Only when the DC controller PCB has been replaced or when the contents of DCON have been cleared
		Precautions for use	Input the value on the sub station service label. After inputting the value, the following must be selected in the user mode: Adjustments/cleaning > automatic gradation correction > full correction.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 1023
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	Adjusted
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
CSIOFDIY	1	Title	Host machine offset adjustment for solid ideal luminance value Y of color sensor 1
		Purpose of use	To adjust the host machine offset for the solid ideal luminance value Y of color sensor 1.
		When used	When printer PASCAL has caused faulty gradation reproducibility
		Precautions for use	Input the value on the sub station service label. After inputting the value, the following must be selected in the user mode: Adjustments/cleaning > automatic gradation correction > full correction.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 1023
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	Adjusted
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > ADJUST > P-PASCAL			
Item	Level	Description	
CSIOFHMM	1	Title	Host machine offset adjustment for HT measured luminance value M of color sensor 1
		Purpose of use	To adjust the host machine offset for the HT measured luminance value M of color sensor 1.
		When used	Only when the DC controller PCB has been replaced or when the contents of DCON have been cleared
		Precautions for use	Input the value on the sub station service label. After inputting the value, the following must be selected in the user mode: Adjustments/cleaning > automatic gradation correction > full correction.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 1023
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
CSIOFHMY	1	Title	Host machine offset adjustment for HT measured luminance value Y of color sensor 1
		Purpose of use	To adjust the host machine offset for the HT measured luminance value Y of color sensor 1.
		When used	Only when the DC controller PCB has been replaced or when the contents of DCON have been cleared
		Precautions for use	Input the value on the sub station service label. After inputting the value, the following must be selected in the user mode: Adjustments/cleaning > automatic gradation correction > full correction.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 1023
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	Adjusted
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
CSIOFHIM	1	Title	Host machine offset adjustment for HT ideal luminance value M of color sensor 1
		Purpose of use	To adjust the host machine offset for the HT ideal luminance value M of color sensor 1.
		When used	Only when the DC controller PCB has been replaced or when the contents of DCON have been cleared
		Precautions for use	Input the value on the sub station service label. After inputting the value, the following must be selected in the user mode: Adjustments/cleaning > automatic gradation correction > full correction.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 1023
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	Adjusted
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > ADJUST > P-PASCAL			
Item	Level	Description	
CS1OFHIY	1	Title	Host machine offset adjustment for HT ideal luminance value Y of color sensor 1
		Purpose of use	To adjust the host machine offset for the HT ideal luminance value Y of color sensor 1.
		When used	Only when the DC controller PCB has been replaced or when the contents of DCON have been cleared
		Precautions for use	Input the value on the sub station service label. After inputting the value, the following must be selected in the user mode: Adjustments/cleaning > automatic gradation correction > full correction.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 1023
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	Adjusted
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	COPIER > FUNCTION > DPC > OFST-M
		Additional description and notes	-
CS2OFDMK	1	Title	Host machine offset adjustment for solid measured luminance value K of color sensor 2
		Purpose of use	To adjust the host machine offset for the solid measured luminance value K of color sensor 2.
		When used	Only when the DC controller PCB has been replaced or when the contents of DCON have been cleared
		Precautions for use	Input the value on the sub station service label. After inputting the value, the following must be selected in the user mode: Adjustments/cleaning > automatic gradation correction > full correction.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 1023
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	Adjusted
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
CS2OFDMC	1	Title	Host machine offset adjustment for solid measured luminance value C of color sensor 2
		Purpose of use	To adjust the host machine offset for the solid measured luminance value C of color sensor 2.
		When used	Only when the DC controller PCB has been replaced or when the contents of DCON have been cleared
		Precautions for use	Input the value on the sub station service label. After inputting the value, the following must be selected in the user mode: Adjustments/cleaning > automatic gradation correction > full correction.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 1023
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	Adjusted
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > ADJUST > P-PASCAL			
Item	Level	Description	
CS20FDIK	1	Title	Host machine offset adjustment for solid ideal luminance value K of color sensor 2
		Purpose of use	To adjust the host machine offset for the solid white ideal luminance value K of color sensor 2.
		When used	Only when the DC controller PCB has been replaced or when the contents of DCON have been cleared
		Precautions for use	Input the value on the sub station service label. After inputting the value, the following must be selected in the user mode: Adjustments/cleaning > automatic gradation correction > full correction.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 1023
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	Adjusted
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
CS20FDIC	1	Title	Host machine offset adjustment for solid ideal luminance value C of color sensor 2
		Purpose of use	To adjust the host machine offset for the solid white ideal luminance value C of color sensor 2.
		When used	Only when the DC controller PCB has been replaced or when the contents of DCON have been cleared
		Precautions for use	Input the value on the sub station service label. After inputting the value, the following must be selected in the user mode: Adjustments/cleaning > automatic gradation correction > full correction.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 1023
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	Adjusted
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
CS20FHMK	1	Title	Host machine offset adjustment for HT measured luminance value K of color sensor 2
		Purpose of use	To adjust the host machine offset for the HT measured luminance value K of color sensor 2.
		When used	Only when the DC controller PCB has been replaced or when the contents of DCON have been cleared
		Precautions for use	Input the value on the sub station service label. After inputting the value, the following must be selected in the user mode: Adjustments/cleaning > automatic gradation correction > full correction.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 1023
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	Adjusted
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > ADJUST > P-PASCAL			
Item	Level	Description	
CS20FHMC	1	Title	Host machine offset adjustment for HT measured luminance value C of color sensor 2
		Purpose of use	To adjust the host machine offset for the HT measured luminance value C of color sensor 2.
		When used	Only when the DC controller PCB has been replaced or when the contents of DCON have been cleared
		Precautions for use	Input the value on the sub station service label. After inputting the value, the following must be selected in the user mode: Adjustments/cleaning > automatic gradation correction > full correction.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 1023
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	Adjusted
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
CS20FHIK	1	Title	Host machine offset adjustment for HT ideal luminance value K of color sensor 2
		Purpose of use	To adjust the host machine offset for the HT ideal luminance value K of color sensor 2.
		When used	Only when the DC controller PCB has been replaced or when the contents of DCON have been cleared
		Precautions for use	Input the value on the sub station service label. After inputting the value, the following must be selected in the user mode: Adjustments/cleaning > automatic gradation correction > full correction.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 1023
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	Adjusted
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
CS20FHIC	1	Title	Host machine offset adjustment for HT ideal luminance value C of color sensor 2
		Purpose of use	To adjust the host machine offset for the HT ideal luminance value C of color sensor 2.
		When used	Only when the DC controller PCB has been replaced or when the contents of DCON have been cleared
		Precautions for use	Input the value on the sub station service label. After inputting the value, the following must be selected in the user mode: Adjustments/cleaning > automatic gradation correction > full correction.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 1023
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	Adjusted
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > ADJUST > P-PASCAL			
Item	Level	Description	
CS2OFWMK	1	Title	Host machine offset adjustment for solid white measured luminance value K of color sensor 2
		Purpose of use	To adjust the host machine offset for the solid white measured luminance value K of color sensor 2.
		When used	Only when the DC controller PCB has been replaced or when the contents of DCON have been cleared
		Precautions for use	Input the value on the sub station service label. After inputting the value, the following must be selected in the user mode: Adjustments/cleaning > automatic gradation correction > full correction.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 1023
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	Adjusted
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
CS2OFWMC	1	Title	Host machine offset adjustment for solid white measured luminance value C of color sensor 2
		Purpose of use	To adjust the host machine offset for the solid white measured luminance value C of color sensor 2.
		When used	Only when the DC controller PCB has been replaced or when the contents of DCON have been cleared
		Precautions for use	Input the value on the sub station service label. After inputting the value, the following must be selected in the user mode: Adjustments/cleaning > automatic gradation correction > full correction.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 1023
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	Adjusted
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
CS2OFWIK	1	Title	Host machine offset adjustment for solid white ideal luminance value K of color sensor 2
		Purpose of use	To adjust the host machine offset for the solid white ideal luminance value K of color sensor 2.
		When used	Only when the DC controller PCB has been replaced or when the contents of DCON have been cleared
		Precautions for use	Input the value on the sub station service label. After inputting the value, the following must be selected in the user mode: Adjustments/cleaning > automatic gradation correction > full correction.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 1023
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	Adjusted
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > ADJUST > P-PASCAL			
Item	Level	Description	
CS2OFWIC	1	Title	Host machine offset adjustment for solid white ideal luminance value C of color sensor 2
		Purpose of use	To adjust the host machine offset for the solid white ideal luminance value C of color sensor 2.
		When used	Only when the DC controller PCB has been replaced or when the contents of DCON have been cleared
		Precautions for use	Input the value on the sub station service label. After inputting the value, the following must be selected in the user mode: Adjustments/cleaning > automatic gradation correction > full correction.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 1023
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	Adjusted
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
CS1OFWMM	1	Title	Host machine offset adjustment for solid white measured luminance value M of color sensor 1
		Purpose of use	To adjust the host machine offset for the solid white measured luminance value M of color sensor 1.
		When used	Only when the DC controller PCB has been replaced or when the contents of DCON have been cleared
		Precautions for use	Input the value on the sub station service label. After inputting the value, the following must be selected in the user mode: Adjustments/cleaning > automatic gradation correction > full correction.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 1023
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	Adjusted
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
CS1OFWIY	1	Title	Host machine offset adjustment for solid white ideal luminance value Y of color sensor 1
		Purpose of use	To adjust the host machine offset for the solid white ideal luminance value Y of color sensor 1.
		When used	Only when the DC controller PCB has been replaced or when the contents of DCON have been cleared
		Precautions for use	Input the value on the sub station service label. After inputting the value, the following must be selected in the user mode: Adjustments/cleaning > automatic gradation correction > full correction.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 1023
		Unit	-
		Amount of change per unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	Adjusted
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

18.4.2 FEEDER

18.4.2.1 FEEDER > ADJUST >

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

FEEDER > ADJUST >			
Item	Level	Description	
DOCST	1	Title	Document stop position adjustment for ADF feed (document tray feed)
		Purpose of use	
		When used	
		Precautions for use	Since this setting is made to take effect by delivering documents, the OK key must be pressed and the documents delivered.
		Display, settings and adjustment ranges	-7 to +7
		Unit	mm
		Amount of change per unit	0.5mm
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	Adjusted
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	When the value is increased, the leading edge margin is reduced.
DOCST-M	1	Title	Document stop position adjustment when using feeder (for manual feed tray)
		Purpose of use	To indicate the procedure for adjusting the document stop positions when using the feeder (for the manual feed tray).
		When used	
		Precautions for use	
		Display, settings and adjustment ranges	-7 to +7
		Unit	mm
		Amount of change per unit	0.5mm
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	Adjusted
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	When the items are executed, the sheet placed in the document tray of the feeder are fed, and it is stopped on the original glass. Visually check this status, and adjust so that the document stops at the proper position. 1) Press the items to highlight them. 2) Place one A3 sheet on the document tray. 3) Input the numerical value using the numeric keypad. - When the value is increased, the sheet is skewed in the direction of its trailing edge. - When the value is reduced, the sheet is skewed in the direction of its leading edge. 4) Press the OK key. The sheet in the document tray is now fed, and it is stopped on the original glass. 5) Open the feeder gently, and check the position at which the sheet is stopped. After checking the position, do not remove the sheet but leave it in place, and close the feeder gently. 6) Press the OK key. The sheet on the original glass is now delivered into the document tray of the feeder.
		Related service modes	
		Additional description and notes	-
LA-SPEED	1	Title	Document transport speed adjustment during feeder stream reading
		Purpose of use	To adjust the document transport speed in the stream reading mode. When the setting is increased, the speed increases (the images shrink).
		When used	
		Precautions for use	
		Display, settings and adjustment ranges	-30 to +30 (in 0.1% increments)
		Unit	%
		Amount of change per unit	0.10%
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	Adjusted
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. When the setting is increased, the speed is increased (the images are reduced in size). When the setting is reduced, the speed is reduced (the images are enlarged). 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	
		Additional description and notes	-

FEEDER > ADJUST >				
Item	Level	Description		
STRD-S	1	Title	Adjustment of optical system stop position in small size document stream reading mode	
		Purpose of use	To adjust the optical system stop position in the small size document stream reading mode.	
		When used	When adjusting the amount of the leading edge margin in the sub scanning direction in the small size document stream reading mode	
		Precautions for use		
		Display, settings and adjustment ranges	-7 to +7	
		Unit	mm	
		Amount of change per unit	0.1mm	
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0	
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	Adjusted	
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. When the leading edge margin is too wide: Increase the value (the amount of the margin is reduced). When the leading edge margin is too narrow: Reduce the value (the amount of the margin is increased). 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.	
		Related service modes		
Additional description and notes	-			
STRD-L	1	Title	Adjustment of optical system stop position in large size document stream reading mode	
		Purpose of use	To adjust the optical system stop position in the large size document stream reading mode.	
		When used	When adjusting the amount of the leading edge margin in the sub scanning direction in the large size document stream reading mode	
		Precautions for use		
		Display, settings and adjustment ranges	-7 to +7	
		Unit	mm	
		Amount of change per unit	0.1mm	
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0	
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	Adjusted	
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. When the leading edge margin is too wide: Increase the value (the amount of the margin is reduced). When the leading edge margin is too narrow: Reduce the value (the amount of the margin is increased). 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.	
		Related service modes		
Additional description and notes	-			
RVM-SPD	2	Title	Not used.	

18.4.3 SORTER

18.4.3.1 SORTER > ADJUST

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

T-18-42

SORTER > ADJUST			
Item	Level	Description	
PNCH-Y	1	Title	Adjustment of the horizontal registration position of the punch hole
		Purpose of use	To adjust the horizontal registration position (front/rear) of the punch hole
		When used	When replacing the EEPROM on the finisher controller PCB
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	-5 to +5 Adjusting the value in + direction moves the punch hole position toward rear. Adjusting the value in - direction moves the punch hole position toward front.
		Unit	mm
		Variation per unit	0.45mm
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it and enter the setting value, then press [OK]. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
CV-REG-L	1	Title	Adjustment of the horizontal registration position of the front cover (large paper)
		Purpose of use	To adjust the horizontal registration position (front/rear) of the front cover (the paper length is 298mm or longer in vertical scanning direction)
		When used	When replacing the master controller PCB or the EEPROM on the master controller PCB
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	-50 to +50 Adjusting the value in + direction moves the front cover toward front. Adjusting the value in - direction moves the front cover toward rear.
		Unit	mm
		Variation per unit	0.1mm
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it and enter the setting value, then press [OK]. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
CV-REG-S	1	Title	Adjustment of the horizontal registration position of the front cover (small paper)
		Purpose of use	To adjust the horizontal registration position (front/rear) of the front cover (the paper length is shorter than 298mm in vertical scanning direction)
		When used	When replacing the master controller PCB or the EEPROM on the master controller PCB
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	-50 to +50 Adjusting the value in + direction moves the front cover toward front. Adjusting the value in - direction moves the front cover toward rear.
		Unit	mm
		Variation per unit	0.1mm
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it and enter the setting value, then press [OK]. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

SORTER > ADJUST			
Item	Level	Description	
CV-CENT	1	Title	Adjustment of the center position of the front cover
		Purpose of use	To adjust the center position of the front cover
		When used	When replacing the master controller PCB or the EEPROM on the master controller PCB
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	-50 to +50 Adjusting the value in + direction moves the front cover toward delivery side. Adjusting the value in - direction moves the front cover toward entrance side.
		Unit	mm
		Variation per unit	0.1mm
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it and enter the setting value, then press [OK]. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
		CLCT-SB	1
Purpose of use	To adjust the shift in switching back paper to the stacking tray.		
When used	When replacing the master controller PCB or the EEPROM on the master controller PCB, or in the case that the paper is poorly aligned on the stacking tray.		
Precautions for use	-		
Settings and adjustment ranges	-50 to +50 Adjusting the value in + direction increases the amount of contact. Adjusting the value in - direction decreases the amount of contact.		
Unit	mm		
Variation per unit	0.1mm		
Value established when RAM is cleared	0 (Amount of contact is approx. 10mm.)		
Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	0		
Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it and enter the setting value, then press [OK]. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.		
Related service modes	-		
Additional description and notes	-		
ALG-F-A4	1		
		Purpose of use	To adjust the shift (depth of the paper push-in by the alignment plate) of the alignment plate (front) against the paper length is less than 298mm in vertical scanning direction.
		When used	When replacing the master controller PCB or the EEPROM on the master controller PCB, or in the case that the paper is poorly aligned on the stacking tray.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	-30 to +30 Adjusting the value in + direction increases the amount of alignment plate shift. Adjusting the value in - direction decreases the amount of alignment plate shift.
		Unit	mm
		Variation per unit	0.1mm
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it and enter the setting value, then press [OK]. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

SORTER > ADJUST			
Item	Level	Description	
ALG-R-A4	1	Title	Adjustment of the alignment plate (rear) shift (Small paper)
		Purpose of use	To adjust the shift (depth of the paper push-in by the alignment plate) of the alignment plate (rear) against the paper length is less than 298mm in vertical scanning direction.
		When used	When replacing the master controller PCB or the EEPROM on the master controller PCB, or in the case that the paper is poorly aligned on the stacking tray.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	-30 to +30 Adjusting the value in + direction increases the amount of alignment plate shift. Adjusting the value in - direction decreases the amount of alignment plate shift.
		Unit	mm
		Variation per unit	0.1mm
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it and enter the setting value, then press [OK]. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
		ALG-F-L	1
Purpose of use	To adjust the shift (depth of the paper push-in by the alignment plate) of the alignment plate (front) against the paper length is 298mm or more in vertical scanning direction.		
When used	When replacing the master controller PCB or the EEPROM on the master controller PCB, or in the case that the paper is poorly aligned on the stacking tray.		
Precautions for use	-		
Settings and adjustment ranges	-30 to +30 Adjusting the value in + direction increases the amount of alignment plate shift. Adjusting the value in - direction decreases the amount of alignment plate shift.		
Unit	mm		
Variation per unit	0.1mm		
Value established when RAM is cleared	0		
Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	0		
Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it and enter the setting value, then press [OK]. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.		
Related service modes	-		
Additional description and notes	-		
ALG-R-L	1		
		Purpose of use	To adjust the shift (depth of the paper push-in by the alignment plate) of the alignment plate (rear) against the paper length is 298mm or more in vertical scanning direction.
		When used	When replacing the master controller PCB or the EEPROM on the master controller PCB, or in the case that the paper is poorly aligned on the stacking tray.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	-30 to +30 Adjusting the value in + direction increases the amount of alignment plate shift. Adjusting the value in - direction decreases the amount of alignment plate shift.
		Unit	mm
		Variation per unit	0.1mm
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it and enter the setting value, then press [OK]. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
		GLUING	1

SORTER > ADJUST			
Item	Level	Description	
STK-DLV	2	Title	Adjustment of stack feed shift
		Purpose of use	To adjust the shift in feeding stacks from the stack delivery roller of the cover feed unit to the trimming unit.
		When used	When replacing the master controller PCB or the EEPROM on the master controller PCB, or in the case that some error occurs in feeding the stacks to the trimming unit.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	-50 to +50 Adjusting the value in + direction increases the amount of shift. Adjusting the value in - direction decreases the amount of shift.
		Unit	mm
		Variation per unit	0.1mm
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it and enter the setting value, then press [OK]. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
GRP-CHNG	2	Title	Adjustment of main grip stack regripping position
		Purpose of use	To adjust the position (height) at which stacks are regripped by the main grip after a gluing operation.
		When used	When replacing the master controller PCB or the EEPROM on the master controller PCB, or in the case that some error occurs in feeding the stacks to the trimming unit.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	-50 to +50 Adjusting the value in - direction lowers the main grip position.
		Unit	mm
		Variation per unit	0.1mm
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it and enter the setting value, then press [OK]. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
SIZE-H	2	Title	Adjustment of finishing size (Vertical direction)
		Purpose of use	To adjust the paper length in vertical scanning direction
		When used	When replacing the master controller PCB or the EEPROM on the master controller PCB, or changing the finishing size.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	-50 to +50 Adjusting the value in + direction enlarges the paper length in vertical scanning direction. Adjusting the value in - direction reduces the paper length in vertical scanning direction.
		Unit	mm
		Variation per unit	0.1mm
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it and enter the setting value, then press [OK]. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

SORTER > ADJUST			
Item	Level	Description	
SIZE-W	2	Title	Adjustment of finishing size (Horizontal direction)
		Purpose of use	To adjust the paper length in horizontal scanning direction
		When used	When replacing the master controller PCB or the EEPROM on the master controller PCB, or changing the finishing size.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	-50 to +50 Adjusting the value in + direction enlarges the paper length in horizontal scanning direction. Adjusting the value in - direction reduces the paper length in horizontal scanning direction.
		Unit	mm
		Variation per unit	0.1mm
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it and enter the setting value, then press [OK]. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
CV-LNG	2	Title	Adjustment of the trimming position at top line
		Purpose of use	To adjust the trimming position (degree) at top line
		When used	When replacing the master controller PCB or the EEPROM on the master controller PCB, or changing the finishing size.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	-50 to +50 Adjusting the value in + direction increases the trimming degree. Adjusting the value in - direction decreases the trimming degree.
		Unit	mm
		Variation per unit	0.1mm
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it and enter the setting value, then press [OK]. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
10RGT-1	2	Title	Adjustment data of the trimming right angle accuracy at 10-sheet stack trimming (Top-line side)
		Purpose of use	To adjust the trimming angle
		When used	When replacing the master controller PCB or the EEPROM on the master controller PCB, or the right angle is not accurate on a result.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	-100 to +100 Adjusting the value in + direction increases the number of rotation leading to the narrower trimming angle. Adjusting the value in - direction decreases the number of rotation leading to the wider trimming angle.
		Unit	mm
		Variation per unit	0.1mm
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it and enter the setting value, then press [OK]. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

SORTER > ADJUST			
Item	Level	Description	
10RGT-2	2	Title	Adjustment data of the trimming right angle accuracy at 10-sheet stack trimming (Bottom-line side)
		Purpose of use	To adjust the trimming angle
		When used	When replacing the master controller PCB or the EEPROM on the master controller PCB, or the right angle is not accurate on a result.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	-100 to +100 Adjusting the value in + direction increases the number of rotation leading to the narrower trimming angle. Adjusting the value in - direction decreases the number of rotation leading to the wider trimming angle.
		Unit	mm
		Variation per unit	0.1mm
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it and enter the setting value, then press [OK]. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
10RGT-3	2	Title	Adjustment data of the trimming right angle accuracy at 10-sheet stack trimming (fore-edge side)
		Purpose of use	To adjust the trimming angle
		When used	When replacing the master controller PCB or the EEPROM on the master controller PCB, or the right angle is not accurate on a result.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	-100 to +100 Adjusting the value in + direction increases the number of rotation leading to the narrower trimming angle. Adjusting the value in - direction decreases the number of rotation leading to the wider trimming angle.
		Unit	mm
		Variation per unit	0.1mm
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it and enter the setting value, then press [OK]. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
200RGT-1	2	Title	Adjustment data of the trimming right angle accuracy at 200-sheet stack trimming (Top line side)
		Purpose of use	To adjust the trimming angle
		When used	When replacing the master controller PCB or the EEPROM on the master controller PCB, or the right angle is not accurate on a result.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	-100 to +100 Adjusting the value in + direction increases the number of rotation leading to the narrower trimming angle. Adjusting the value in - direction decreases the number of rotation leading to the wider trimming angle.
		Unit	mm
		Variation per unit	0.1mm
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it and enter the setting value, then press [OK]. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

SORTER > ADJUST			
Item	Level	Description	
200RGT-2	2	Title	Adjustment data of the trimming right angle accuracy at 200-sheet stack trimming (Bottom line side)
		Purpose of use	To adjust the trimming angle
		When used	When replacing the master controller PCB or the EEPROM on the master controller PCB, or the right angle is not accurate on a result.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	-100 to +100 Adjusting the value in + direction increases the number of rotation leading to the narrower trimming angle. Adjusting the value in - direction decreases the number of rotation leading to the wider trimming angle.
		Unit	mm
		Variation per unit	0.1mm
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it and enter the setting value, then press [OK]. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	-		
200RGT-3	2	Title	Adjustment data of the trimming right angle accuracy at 200-sheet stack trimming (Fore-edge side)
		Purpose of use	To adjust the trimming angle
		When used	When replacing the master controller PCB or the EEPROM on the master controller PCB, or the right angle is not accurate on a result.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	-100 to +100 Adjusting the value in + direction increases the number of rotation leading to the narrower trimming angle. Adjusting the value in - direction decreases the number of rotation leading to the wider trimming angle.
		Unit	mm
		Variation per unit	0.1mm
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it and enter the setting value, then press [OK]. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	-		
SLD-MTR	2	Title	Adjustment of the home position (HP) of slide motor
		Purpose of use	To adjust the HP of slide motor
		When used	In the case that the positions of the blade and the slide motor HP are misaligned.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	-20 to +20 Adjusting the value in + direction reduces the finishing size. Adjusting the value in - direction enlarges the finishing size.
		Unit	mm
		Variation per unit	0.1mm
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it and enter the setting value, then press [OK]. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	-		

SORTER > ADJUST			
Item	Level	Description	
STK-VR0	1	Title	Adjustment of the stack thickness volume sensor (At stack thickness 0mm)
		Purpose of use	To enter the volume value of stack thickness volume sensor
		When used	When replacing the master controller PCB, the EEPROM on the master controller PCB, or the stack thickness volume sensor.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 1023
		Unit	-
		Variation per unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it and enter the setting value, then press [OK]. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
		STK-VR25	1
Purpose of use	To enter the volume value of stack thickness volume sensor		
When used	When replacing the master controller PCB, the EEPROM on the master controller PCB, or the stack thickness volume sensor.		
Precautions for use	-		
Settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 1023		
Unit	-		
Variation per unit	-		
Value established when RAM is cleared	0		
Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	0		
Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it and enter the setting value, then press [OK]. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.		
Related service modes	-		
Additional description and notes	-		
GLU-LOW	1		
		Purpose of use	To enter the lower limit level of gluing area
		When used	When replacing the master controller PCB or the EEPROM on the master controller PCB.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 255
		Unit	-
		Variation per unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it and enter the setting value, then press [OK]. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
		GLU-UP	1
Purpose of use	To enter the upper limit level of gluing area		
When used	When replacing the master controller PCB or the EEPROM on the master controller PCB.		
Precautions for use	-		
Settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 255		
Unit	-		
Variation per unit	-		
Value established when RAM is cleared	0		
Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	0		
Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it and enter the setting value, then press [OK]. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.		
Related service modes	-		
Additional description and notes	-		

SORTER > ADJUST			
Item	Level	Description	
GLU-EDG1	1	Title	Setting of edge gluing exclusion area (Top line side with top/bottom trimming)
		Purpose of use	To adjust the edge exclusion area at the top line with top/bottom trimming.
		When used	When replacing the master controller PCB or the EEPROM on the master controller PCB, or in the case that glue peeling at edge or over gluing occurs.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 5 Adjusting the value in + direction enlarges the edge gluing exclusion area (reducing the edge glue peeling). Adjusting the value in - direction reduces the edge gluing exclusion area (reducing the edge over gluing).
		Unit	mm
		Variation per unit	1mm
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it and enter the setting value, then press [OK]. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Edge glue exclusion area: The edge of the paper that is free of gluing on a paper stack.
GLU-EDG2	1	Title	Setting of edge gluing exclusion area (Bottom line side with top/bottom trimming)
		Purpose of use	To adjust the edge exclusion area at the bottom line with top/bottom trimming.
		When used	When replacing the master controller PCB or the EEPROM on the master controller PCB, or in the case that glue peeling at edge or over gluing occurs.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 5 Adjusting the value in + direction enlarges the edge gluing exclusion area (reducing the edge glue peeling). Adjusting the value in - direction reduces the edge gluing exclusion area (reducing the edge over gluing).
		Unit	mm
		Variation per unit	1mm
		Value established when RAM is cleared	2
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	2
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it and enter the setting value, then press [OK]. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Edge glue exclusion area: The edge of the paper that is free of gluing on a paper stack.
GLU-EDG3	1	Title	Setting of edge gluing exclusion area (Top line side without top/bottom trimming)
		Purpose of use	To adjust the edge exclusion area at the top line without top/bottom trimming.
		When used	When replacing the master controller PCB or the EEPROM on the master controller PCB, or in the case that glue peeling at edge or over gluing occurs.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 5 Adjusting the value in + direction enlarges the edge gluing exclusion area (reducing the edge glue peeling). Adjusting the value in - direction reduces the edge gluing exclusion area (reducing the edge over gluing).
		Unit	mm
		Variation per unit	1mm
		Value established when RAM is cleared	2
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	2
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it and enter the setting value, then press [OK]. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Edge glue exclusion area: The edge of the paper that is free of gluing on a paper stack.

SORTER > ADJUST			
Item	Level	Description	
GLU-EDG4	1	Title	Setting of edge gluing exclusion area (Bottom line side without top/bottom trimming)
		Purpose of use	To adjust the edge exclusion area at the bottom line without top/bottom trimming.
		When used	When replacing the master controller PCB or the EEPROM on the master controller PCB, or in the case that glue peeling at edge or over gluing occurs.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 5 Adjusting the value in + direction enlarges the edge gluing exclusion area (reducing the edge glue peeling). Adjusting the value in - direction reduces the edge gluing exclusion area (reducing the edge over gluing).
		Unit	mm
		Variation per unit	1mm
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it and enter the setting value, then press [OK]. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Edge glue exclusion area: The edge of the paper that is free of gluing on a paper stack.
		GLU-AMT1	1
Purpose of use	To adjust the glue amount		
When used	When replacing the master controller PCB or the EEPROM on the master controller PCB, or in the case that glue amount is too little or too much on a paper stack.		
Precautions for use	-		
Settings and adjustment ranges	-20 to +20 Adjusting the value in + direction increases the glue amount. Adjusting the value in - direction decreases the glue amount.		
Unit	mm		
Variation per unit	0.05mm		
Value established when RAM is cleared	0		
Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	0		
Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it and enter the setting value (to switch +/-, press +/- key), then press [OK]. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.		
Related service modes	-		
Additional description and notes	-		
GLU-AMT2	1		
		Purpose of use	To adjust the glue amount
		When used	When replacing the master controller PCB or the EEPROM on the master controller PCB, or in the case that glue amount is too little or too much on a paper stack.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	-20 to +20 Adjusting the value in + direction increases the glue amount. Adjusting the value in - direction decreases the glue amount.
		Unit	mm
		Variation per unit	0.05mm
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it and enter the setting value (to switch +/-, press +/- key), then press [OK]. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

SORTER > ADJUST			
Item	Level	Description	
GLU-AMT3	1	Title	Adjustment of glue amount (At stack thickness 3.5 to 6.4mm)
		Purpose of use	To adjust the glue amount
		When used	When replacing the master controller PCB or the EEPROM on the master controller PCB, or in the case that glue amount is too little or too much on a paper stack.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	-20 to +20 Adjusting the value in + direction increases the glue amount. Adjusting the value in - direction decreases the glue amount.
		Unit	mm
		Variation per unit	0.05mm
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it and enter the setting value (to switch +/-, press +/- key), then press [OK]. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
GLU-AMT4	1	Title	Adjustment of glue amount (At stack thickness 6.5 to 11.4mm)
		Purpose of use	To adjust the glue amount
		When used	When replacing the master controller PCB or the EEPROM on the master controller PCB, or in the case that glue amount is too little or too much on a paper stack.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	-20 to +20 Adjusting the value in + direction increases the glue amount. Adjusting the value in - direction decreases the glue amount.
		Unit	mm
		Variation per unit	0.05mm
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it and enter the setting value (to switch +/-, press +/- key), then press [OK]. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
GLU-AMT5	1	Title	Adjustment of glue amount (At stack thickness 11.5 to 22.4mm)
		Purpose of use	To adjust the glue amount
		When used	When replacing the master controller PCB or the EEPROM on the master controller PCB, or in the case that glue amount is too little or too much on a paper stack.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	-20 to +20 Adjusting the value in + direction increases the glue amount. Adjusting the value in - direction decreases the glue amount.
		Unit	mm
		Variation per unit	0.05mm
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it and enter the setting value (to switch +/-, press +/- key), then press [OK]. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

SORTER > ADJUST			
Item	Level	Description	
GLU-AMT6	1	Title	Adjustment of glue amount (At stack thickness 22.5 to 25mm)
		Purpose of use	To adjust the glue amount
		When used	When replacing the master controller PCB or the EEPROM on the master controller PCB, or in the case that glue amount is too little or too much on a paper stack.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	-20 to +20 Adjusting the value in + direction increases the glue amount. Adjusting the value in - direction decreases the glue amount.
		Unit	mm
		Variation per unit	0.05mm
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it and enter the setting value (to switch +/-, press +/- key), then press [OK]. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
		GLU-MOVE	1
Purpose of use	To adjust the gluing start position		
When used	When replacing the master controller PCB or the EEPROM on the master controller PCB.		
Precautions for use	-		
Settings and adjustment ranges	-80 to +80 Adjusting the value in + direction moves the gluing position toward front. Adjusting the value in - direction moves the gluing position toward rear.		
Unit	mm		
Variation per unit	0.1mm		
Value established when RAM is cleared	0		
Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-		
Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it and enter the setting value (to switch +/-, press +/- key), then press [OK]. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.		
Related service modes	-		
Additional description and notes	-		
GLU-TEMP	1		

18.5 FUNCTION (Operation/Inspection Mode)

18.5.1 COPIER

18.5.1.1 Points To Note When Operate The Service Mode (FUNCTION)

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

T-18-43



Points to Note When Operate The Service Mode (FUNCTION)

When operate the service mode (FUNCTION), check on the upper right of the screen for "READY", then push the button [OK].

18.5.1.2 COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL			
Item	Level	Description	
SPLY-H-Y	1	Title	Supplying Yellow developing solution
		Purpose of use	To supply the Yellow developer to the developing assembly.
		When used	At the time of installation, when the developer is replaced
		Precautions for use	When this mode is executed, the COPIER > ADJUST > DENS > HLMT-PTY setting returns to 0.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	'ACTIVE' is displayed during operation; 'OK!' is displayed upon completion.
		Unit	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, and press the OK key. 2) Press the OK key again. (Operation now stops.)
		OK/NG criteria	OK if the display switches to 'ACTIVE' (flashing) when the OK key is pressed the first time and to 'OK!' when it is pressed the second time.
		Time required	-
		Related service modes	COPIER > ADJUST > DENS > HLMT-PTY
		Additional description and notes	-
SPLY-H-M	1	Title	Supplying Magenta developer
		Purpose of use	To supply the Magenta developer to the developing assembly.
		When used	At the time of installation, when the developing solution is replaced
		Precautions for use	When this mode is executed, the COPIER > ADJUST > DENS > HLMT-PTM setting returns to 0.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	'ACTIVE' is displayed during operation; 'OK!' is displayed upon completion.
		Unit	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, and press the OK key. 2) Press the OK key again. (Operation now stops.)
		OK/NG criteria	OK if the display switches to 'ACTIVE' (flashing) when the OK key is pressed the first time and to 'OK!' when it is pressed the second time.
		Time required	-
		Related service modes	COPIER > ADJUST > DENS > HLMT-PTM
		Additional description and notes	-
SPLY-H-C	1	Title	Supplying Cyan developer
		Purpose of use	To supply the Cyan developer to the developing assembly.
		When used	At the time of installation, when the developer is replaced.
		Precautions for use	When this mode is executed, the COPIER > ADJUST > DENS > HLMT-PTC setting returns to 0.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	'ACTIVE' is displayed during operation; 'OK!' is displayed upon completion.
		Unit	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, and press the OK key. 2) Press the OK key again. (Operation now stops.)
		OK/NG criteria	OK if the display switches to 'ACTIVE' (flashing) when the OK key is pressed the first time and to 'OK!' when it is pressed the second time.
		Time required	-
		Related service modes	COPIER > ADJUST > DENS > HLMT-PTC
		Additional description and notes	-
SPLY-H-K	1	Title	Supplying Black developer
		Purpose of use	To supply the Black developer to the developing assembly
		When used	At the time of installation, when the developer is replaced
		Precautions for use	When this mode is executed, the COPIER > ADJUST > DENS > HLMT-PTK setting returns to 0.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	'ACTIVE' is displayed during operation; 'OK!' is displayed upon completion.
		Unit	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, and press the OK key. 2) Press the OK key again. (Operation now stops.)
		OK/NG criteria	OK if the display switches to 'ACTIVE' (flashing) when the OK key is pressed the first time and to 'OK!' when it is pressed the second time.
		Time required	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL			
Item	Level	Description	
STIR-Y	1	Title	Stirring developer inside Yellow developing assembly.
		Purpose of use	To stir the developer inside the Yellow developing assembly.
		When used	At the time of installation, when the developing assembly and/or developer is replaced, when the image is faulty
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	'ACTIVE' is displayed during operation; 'OK!' is displayed upon completion.
		Unit	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	Select the item to highlight it, and then press the OK key.
		OK/NG criteria	OK if the display switches to 'OK!' after 'ACTIVE' is displayed (flashing).
		Time required	Approx. 2 minutes
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
STIR-M	1	Title	Stirring of developer inside Magenta developing assembly.
		Purpose of use	To stir the developer inside the Magenta developing assembly.
		When used	At the time of installation, when the developing assembly and/or developer is replaced, when the image is faulty
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	'ACTIVE' is displayed during operation; 'OK!' is displayed upon completion.
		Unit	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	Select the item to highlight it, and then press the OK key.
		OK/NG criteria	OK if the display switches to 'OK!' after 'ACTIVE' is displayed (flashing).
		Time required	Approx. 2 minutes
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
STIR-C	1	Title	Stirring of developer inside Cyan developing assembly
		Purpose of use	To stir the developer inside the Cyan developing assembly.
		When used	At the time of installation, when the developing assembly and/or developer is replaced, when the image is faulty
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	'ACTIVE' is displayed during operation; 'OK!' is displayed upon completion.
		Unit	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	Select the item to highlight it, and then press the OK key.
		OK/NG criteria	OK if the display switches to 'OK!' after 'ACTIVE' is displayed (flashing).
		Time required	Approx. 2 minutes
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
STIR-K	1	Title	Stirring of developer inside Black developing assembly
		Purpose of use	To stir the developer inside the Black developing assembly.
		When used	At the time of installation, when the developing assembly and/or developer is replaced, when the image is faulty
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	'ACTIVE' is displayed during operation; 'OK!' is displayed upon completion.
		Unit	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	Select the item to highlight it, and then press the OK key.
		OK/NG criteria	OK if the display switches to 'OK!' after 'ACTIVE' is displayed (flashing).
		Time required	Approx. 2 minutes
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL			
Item	Level	Description	
STIR-4	1	Title	Stirring of developer inside 4-color developers
		Purpose of use	To stir the developer inside the developing assembly of all four colors (YMCK).
		When used	At the time of installation, when the developing assembly and/or developer is replaced, when the image is faulty
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	'ACTIVE' is displayed during operation; 'OK!' is displayed upon completion.
		Unit	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	Select the item to highlight it, and then press the OK key.
		OK/NG criteria	OK if the display switches to 'OK!' after 'ACTIVE' is displayed (flashing).
		Time required	Approx. 2 minutes
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
RECV-Y	1	Title	Discharge of developer from Yellow developing assembly
		Purpose of use	To discharge the developer from the Yellow developing assembly.
		When used	When the developer is replaced
		Precautions for use	Prior to execution, the developer collection container must be placed at the developer shutter, and the shutter must be opened. If the shutter is not opened, the gears may be damaged.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	'ACTIVE' is displayed during operation; 'OK!' is displayed upon completion.
		Unit	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	Select the item to highlight it, and then press the OK key.
		OK/NG criteria	OK if the display switches to 'OK!' after 'ACTIVE' is displayed (flashing).
		Time required	2 minutes
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
RECV-M	1	Title	Discharge of developer from Magenta developing assembly
		Purpose of use	To discharge the developer from the Magenta developing assembly.
		When used	When the developer is replaced
		Precautions for use	Prior to execution, the developer collection container must be placed at the developer shutter, and the shutter must be opened. If the shutter is not opened, the gears may be damaged.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	'ACTIVE' is displayed during operation; 'OK!' is displayed upon completion.
		Unit	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	Select the item to highlight it, and then press the OK key.
		OK/NG criteria	OK if the display switches to 'OK!' after 'ACTIVE' is displayed (flashing).
		Time required	2 minutes
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
RECV-C	1	Title	Discharge of developer from Cyan developing assembly
		Purpose of use	To discharge the developer from the Cyan developing assembly.
		When used	When the developer is replaced
		Precautions for use	Prior to execution, the developer collection container must be placed at the developer shutter, and the shutter must be opened. If the shutter is not opened, the gears may be damaged.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	'ACTIVE' is displayed during operation; 'OK!' is displayed upon completion.
		Unit	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	Select the item to highlight it, and then press the OK key.
		OK/NG criteria	OK if the display switches to 'OK!' after 'ACTIVE' is displayed (flashing).
		Time required	2 minutes
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL			
Item	Level	Description	
RECV-K	1	Title	Discharge of developer from Black developing assembly
		Purpose of use	To discharge the developer from the Black developing assembly.
		When used	When the developer is replaced
		Precautions for use	Prior to execution, the developer collection container must be placed at the developer shutter, and the shutter must be opened. If the shutter is not opened, the gears may be damaged.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	'ACTIVE' is displayed during operation; 'OK!' is displayed upon completion.
		Unit	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	Select the item to highlight it, and then press the OK key.
		OK/NG criteria	OK if the display switches to 'OK!' after ACTIVE is displayed (flashing).
		Time required	2 minutes
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
RECV-4	1	Title	Discharge of developing solutions from 4-color developers
		Purpose of use	To discharge the developer from the developing assemblies of all four colors (YMCK).
		When used	When the developer is replaced
		Precautions for use	Prior to execution, the developer collection container must be placed at the developer shutter, and the shutter must be opened. If the shutter is not opened, the gears may be damaged.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	'ACTIVE' is displayed during operation; 'OK!' is displayed upon completion.
		Unit	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	Select the item to highlight it, and then press the OK key.
		OK/NG criteria	OK if the display switches to 'OK!' after 'ACTIVE' is displayed (flashing).
		Time required	2 minutes
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
CARD	1	Title	Setting of card numbers in card reader
		Purpose of use	To set the numbers of the cards in the card reader.
		When used	When the card reader is installed; after the hard drive is replaced
		Precautions for use	When this setting is executed, the card control information (department ID and ID No.) is initialized.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 2001
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it. 2) Input the number of card being used, and press the OK key. 3) Turn the main power switch OFF and then back ON.
		OK/NG criteria	-
		Time required	-
		Related service modes	COPIER > OPTION > BODY > CARD-RNG (level 2)
Additional description and notes	The numbers in the series starting with the number input for the number of cards set in CARD-RNG serve as the numbers of the cards which can be used.		
KEY	1	Title	Setting of control key function
		Purpose of use	To set whether to enable or disable the control key function.
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0: disabled 1: enabled
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and then press the OK key. 2) Turn the main power switch OFF and then back ON.
		OK/NG criteria	-
		Time required	-
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	The setting is switched when the main power switch is turned OFF and then back ON.		

COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL			
Item	Level	Description	
INISSET-Y	1	Title	Execution of initial installation mode for Yellow developing assembly
		Purpose of use	To automatically execute the operations required for the initial installation of the Yellow developing assembly.
		When used	At the time of installation, when the developer is replaced
		Precautions for use	This item must be used only when the Yellow developing assembly is replaced.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	During operation: The remaining time (in seconds) is counted down on the display. '0' displayed for normal completion; '0xFFFF' displayed for abnormal completion.
		Unit	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	Select the item to highlight it, and then press the OK key.
		OK/NG criteria	OK if '0' is displayed after the remaining time is counted down on the display.
		Time required	Approx. 500 seconds
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Execution details <1> Drum patch light quantity correction <2> Electric potential control <3> ATVC control <4> ATR patch initialization <5> Leading edge registration sensor light quantity correction <6> ITB cleaning <7> Color displacement correction (coarse adjustment) <8> ITB cleaning <9> Color displacement correction (fine adjustment) <10> Charging wire cleaning
INISSET-M	1	Title	Execution of initial installation mode for Magentar developing assembly
		Purpose of use	To automatically execute the operations required for the initial installation of the Magentar developing assembly.
		When used	At the time of installation, when the developer is replaced
		Precautions for use	This item must be used only when the Magentar developing assembly is replaced.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	During operation: The remaining time (in seconds) is counted down on the display. '0' displayed for normal completion; '0xFFFF' displayed for abnormal completion.
		Unit	Seconds
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	Select the item to highlight it, and then press the OK key.
		OK/NG criteria	OK if 0 is displayed after the remaining time is counted down on the display.
		Time required	Approx. 500 seconds
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Execution details <1> Drum patch light quantity correction <2> Electric potential control <3> ATVC control <4> ATR patch initialization <5> Leading edge registration sensor light quantity correction <6> ITB cleaning <7> Color displacement correction (coarse adjustment) <8> ITB cleaning <9> Color displacement correction (fine adjustment) <10> Charging wire cleaning

COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL			
Item	Level	Description	
INSET-C	1	Title	Execution of initial installation mode for Cyan developing assembly
		Purpose of use	To automatically execute the operations required for the initial installation of the Cyan developing assembly.
		When used	At the time of installation, when the developing assembly is replaced
		Precautions for use	This item must be used only when the Cyan developing assembly is replaced.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	During operation: The remaining time (in seconds) is counted down on the display. '0' displayed for normal completion; '0xFFFF' displayed for abnormal completion.
		Unit	Seconds
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	Select the item to highlight it, and then press the OK key.
		OK/NG criteria	OK if 0 is displayed after the remaining time is counted down on the display.
		Time required	Approx. 500 seconds
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Execution details <1> Drum patch light quantity correction <2> Electric potential control <3> ATVC control <4> ATR patch initialization <5> Leading edge registration sensor light quantity correction <6> ITB cleaning <7> Color displacement correction (coarse adjustment) <8> ITB cleaning <9> Color displacement correction (fine adjustment) <10> Charging wire cleaning
AINR-OFF	1	Title	Disabling of warm-up rotation
		Purpose of use	To disable the warm-up rotation execution. If, after executing the warm-up rotation adjustment and other adjustments, work has been carried out with the body power OFF, the warm-up rotation can be skipped when the power is to be turned back ON for checking the images, etc. This item is executed when warm-up rotation is not required.
		When used	At the time of installation, when the developing solution is replaced
		Precautions for use	As a general rule, the disabled status must be released (= set to enabled) before the copier is to be used by the users. Moreover, if the execution of the initial installation mode for the 4-color developers (INSET-4) was completed normally, the disabling of the warm-up rotation will be released automatically. If its completion was abnormal, warm-up rotation will remain disabled.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0: enabled 1: disabled
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Unit	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and then press the OK key. 2) Turn the main power switch OFF and then back ON.
		OK/NG criteria	-
		Time required	-
		Related service modes	COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL > INSET-4
Additional description and notes	This item makes it possible to prevent staining as well as wear and tear inside the copier as a result of the operation of the image-forming sequence due to the generation of patches during the warm-up rotation sequence or Dmax/Dhalf processing at the initial installation stage.		
E-RDS	1	Title	Setting whether to use the embedded-RDS function
		Purpose of use	To set whether the embedded-RDS function is to be used
		When used	When embedded-RDS is used
		Precautions for use	All of the 5 items of E-RDS, RGW-PORT, COM-TEST, COM-LOG and RGW-ADR must be used as a set without fail.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0: Function not used 1: Function used (all counter information transmitted)
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Unit	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and then press the OK key. 2) Turn the main power switch OFF and then back ON.
		OK/NG criteria	-
		Time required	-
		Related service modes	COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL > E-RDS, RGW-PORT, COM-TEST, COM-LOG, RGW-ADR (level 1)
Additional description and notes	Embedded-RDS is a function which transmits the copier counter, trouble, consumable and other device information to the sales company server using the SOAP protocol.		

COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL			
Item	Level	Description	
RGW-PORT	1	Title	Designation of port numbers of sales company server used by embedded-RDS
		Purpose of use	To designate the port numbers of the sales company server used by the embedded-RDS.
		When used	When embedded-RDS is used
		Precautions for use	All of the 5 items of E-RDS, RGW-PORT, COM-TEST, COM-LOG and RGW-ADR must be used as a set without fail.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	1 to 65535
		Value established when RAM is cleared	443
		Unit	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and then press the OK key. 2) Turn the main power switch OFF and then back ON.
		OK/NG criteria	-
		Time required	-
		Related service modes	COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL > E-RDS, RGW-PORT, COM-TEST, COM-LOG, RGW-ADR (level 1)
Additional description and notes	-		
COM-TEST	1	Title	Checking of connections with sales company server used by embedded-RDS
		Purpose of use	To test the connections to the sales company server, determine whether the connections have been made, and display the results.
		When used	When embedded-RDS is used
		Precautions for use	All of the 5 items of E-RDS, RGW-PORT, COM-TEST, COM-LOG and RGW-ADR must be used as a set without fail.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	'ACTIVE' displayed during operation; 'OK' displayed when connection was successful; 'NG' displayed when connection failed
		Unit	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	Select the item to highlight it, and then press the OK key.
		OK/NG criteria	OK if the display switches to 'OK' after 'ACTIVE' is displayed (flashing).
		Time required	-
		Related service modes	COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL > E-RDS, RGW-PORT, COM-TEST, COM-LOG, RGW-ADR (level 1)
		Additional description and notes	-
COM-LOG	1	Title	Detailed display of test results of communication with sales company server used by embedded-RDS
		Purpose of use	To display the error information when errors have occurred in the connection with the sales company server.
		When used	When embedded-RDS is used
		Precautions for use	All of the 5 items of E-RDS, RGW-PORT, COM-TEST, COM-LOG and RGW-ADR must be used as a set without fail.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	Calendar year, date, time, error code, error detail information (up to 128 characters)
		Unit	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	-
		OK/NG criteria	-
		Time required	-
		Related service modes	COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL > E-RDS, RGW-PORT, COM-TEST, COM-LOG, RGW-ADR (level 1)
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL			
Item	Level	Description	
RGW-ADR	1	Title	Designation of URL of sales company server used by embedded-RDS
		Purpose of use	To set the URL of the sales company server.
		When used	When embedded-RDS is used
		Precautions for use	- Shift-JIS character strings cannot be input. - All of the 5 items of E-RDS, RGW-PORT, COM-TEST, COM-LOG and RGW-ADR must be used as a set without fail.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	URL
		Value established when RAM is cleared	https://a01.ugwdevice.net/ugw/agentif010
		Unit	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it. Then press URL. 2) Input the URL into the dialog box, and press the OK key. 3) Turn the main power switch OFF and then back ON.
		OK/NG criteria	-
		Time required	-
		Related service modes	COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL > E-RDS, RGW-PORT, COM-TEST, COM-LOG, RGW-ADR (level 1)
		Additional description and notes	-
CNT-DATE	1	Title	Setting of date/time for start of counter transmission to sales company server
		Purpose of use	To set the start date/time of the transmission schedule when transmitting the counter information to the sales company server when the third-party expansion functions in RDS are supported.
		When used	When the third-party expansion functions in embedded-RDS are supported
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	YYYY: year; MM: month; DD: day, HH: hour; MM: minute
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	000000000000 (12 digits: YYYYMMDDHHMM)
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it. 2) Input the settings for the year, month, day, hour and minute, and then press the OK key. 3) Turn the main power switch OFF and then back ON.
		OK/NG criteria	-
		Time required	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	This item is displayed only when the third-party expansion functions in embedded-RDS are supported.
CNT-INTV	1	Title	Setting of interval for counter transmission to sales company server
		Purpose of use	To set the transmission interval for transmitting the counter information to the sales company server when the third-party expansion functions in embedded-RDS are supported.
		When used	When the third-party expansion functions in embedded-RDS are supported
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	1 to 168 (168 hours = 1 week)
		Value established when RAM is cleared	24
		Unit	Hour
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and then press the OK key. 2) Turn the main power switch OFF and then back ON.
		OK/NG criteria	-
		Time required	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	This item is displayed only when the third-party expansion functions in embedded-RDS are supported.

COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL			
Item	Level	Description	
CLV-SET	2	Title	Color guarantee mode setting (does not function on this machine)
		Purpose of use	To set which of the setting information relating to the colors stored in the device (image/gray scale characteristics tables, user modes and service modes) is to be transmitted to UGW (universal gateway) via embedded-RDS.
		When used	When the setting information relating to the colors is transmitted to UGW
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 (fixed)
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Unit	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and then press the OK key. 2) Turn the main power switch OFF and then back ON.
		OK/NG criteria	-
		Time required	-
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	-		
CLV-SEND	2	Title	Color guarantee information transmission (does not function on this unit)
		Purpose of use	To send the transmission information decided on by the color guarantee mode setting (CLV-SET) to UGW (universal gateway) via embedded-RDS.
		When used	When the setting information relating to the colors is transmitted to UGW
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	Select the item to highlight it, and then press the OK key.
		OK/NG criteria	-
		Time required	-
		Related service modes	COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL > CLV-SET (level 2)
		Additional description and notes	-
INSET-4	1	Title	Execution of initial installation mode for 4-color developers
		Purpose of use	To automatically execute the operations required for the initial installation of the 4-color (YMCK) developers.
		When used	At the time of installation, when the developing solution is replaced
		Precautions for use	- Prior to execution, '0' must be set for AINR-OFF. - This item must be used only when the developers for all 4 colors (YMCK) are replaced.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	During operation: The time is counted down from 500 (seconds), and the remaining time (in seconds) is shown on the display. 'OK!' displayed for normal completion; '0xFFFF' displayed for abnormal completion.
		Unit	Seconds
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	Select the item to highlight it, and then press the OK key.
		OK/NG criteria	OK if '0' is displayed after the remaining time is counted down on the display.
		Time required	Approx. 500 seconds
		Related service modes	COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL > AINR-OFF (level 1)
		Additional description and notes	Details of execution - Potential control - Primary transfer ATVC - Idling of developing cylinder (charging of developer) - Patch sensor light intensity correction (patch sensor light intensity adjustment) - Transfer cleaning ACVC (determination of transfer CLN upstream/downstream brush high voltage) - Optical ATR initial setting (noncontact optical ATR initial setting) - Patch detection initial setting (patch detection ATR initial setting) - Patch potential control initial setting (patch potential initial setting)

COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL			
Item	Level	Description	
INISSET-K	1	Title	Execution of initial installation mode for Black developing assembly
		Purpose of use	To automatically execute the operations required for the initial installation of the Black developing assembly.
		When used	At the time of installation, when the developing assembly is replaced
		Precautions for use	This item must be used only when the Black developing assembly is replaced.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	During operation: The remaining time (in seconds) is counted down and displayed. '0' displayed for normal completion; '0xFFFF' displayed for abnormal completion.
		Unit	Seconds
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	Select the item to highlight it, and then press the OK key.
		OK/NG criteria	OK if '0' is displayed after the remaining time is counted down on the display.
		Time required	Approx. 500 seconds
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Execution details <1> Drum patch light quantity correction <2> Electric potential control <3> ATVC control <4> ATR patch initialization <5> Leading edge registration sensor light quantity correction <6> ITB cleaning <7> Color displacement correction (coarse adjustment) <8> ITB cleaning <9> Color displacement correction (fine adjustment) <10> Charging wire cleaning
INIT-ITB	1	Title	ITB edge profile measurement mode execution
		Purpose of use	To measure the initial ITB edge profile (for controlling displacement), and save the result.
		When used	When ITB is replaced
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	ACTIVE is displayed during operation; OK! is displayed upon completion.
		Unit	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	Select the item to highlight it, and then press the OK key.
		OK/NG criteria	OK if the display switches to 'OK!' after 'ACTIVE' is displayed (flashing).
		Time required	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	This operation is linked to the operation which is to be performed after the following sequence as per the initial settings: operator maintenance mode > adjustments/cleaning > ITB replacement.
GS-CHECK	1	Title	Verification of S-B circuit board image processing chip operation
		Purpose of use	To check whether the image processing chip on the S-B PCB operates properly when the ZJ-A PCB, which is a part configuring the reader (option), has been installed.
		When used	When the reader is installed
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	'ACTIVE' is displayed during operation; 'OK' displayed when chip operates properly; 'NG' displayed when chip does not operate properly.
		Unit	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Connect the ZJ-A PCB to (or disconnect it from) the SB PCB. 2) Select the item to highlight it, and then press the OK key. 3) Press the copy start button. The job is executed. Job contents: 'Generate PG inside the image processing chip (CLGS), and compare the images transferred into the memory.' 4) Check whether 'OK' or 'NG' is displayed. 5) Turn the main power switch OFF and then back ON.
		OK/NG criteria	OK if 'OK' is displayed when the ZJ-A PCB is connected and 'NG' is displayed when the ZJ-A PCB is disconnected.
		Time required	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

18.5.1.3 COPIER > FUNCTION > LASER

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

COPIER > FUNCTION > LASER			
Item	Level	Description	
LD-ADJ-Y	2	Title	Automatic return of tilt control motor to initial position (Y)
		Purpose of use	To automatically return the tilt control motor to its initial position (Y).
		When used	When color displacement cannot be corrected even when the color displacement correction is performed
		Precautions for use	If the tilt amount (Yellow) in the main scanning direction deviates beyond all expectations, the tilt control motor may lock up, making it impossible to correct the color displacement even when the color displacement correction is performed. When this has happened, the operation which returns the tilt control motor to its center position is automatically performed by selecting this mode.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	'ACTIVE' is displayed during operation; 'OK!' is displayed upon completion.
		Unit	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	Select the item to highlight it, and then press the OK key.
		OK/NG criteria	OK if the display switches to 'OK!' after 'ACTIVE' is displayed (flashing).
		Time required	30 seconds
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
LD-ADJ-M	2	Title	Automatic return of tilt control motor to initial position (M)
		Purpose of use	To automatically return the tilt control motor to its initial position (M).
		When used	When color displacement cannot be corrected even when the color displacement correction is performed
		Precautions for use	If the tilt amount (Magenta) in the main scanning direction deviates beyond all expectations, the tilt control motor may lock up, making it impossible to correct the color displacement even when the color displacement correction is performed. When this has happened, the operation which returns the tilt control motor to its center position is automatically performed by selecting this mode.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	'ACTIVE' is displayed during operation; 'OK!' is displayed upon completion.
		Unit	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	When faulty transfer during continuous printing has occurred This item is used when analyzing the causes of trouble. It must be used in accordance with the instructions given by the Quality Support department.
		OK/NG criteria	OK if the display switches to 'OK!' after 'ACTIVE' is displayed (flashing).
		Time required	0: ON 1: OFF
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
LD-ADJ-C	2	Title	Automatic return of tilt control motor to initial position (C)
		Purpose of use	To automatically return the tilt control motor to its initial position (C).
		When used	When color displacement cannot be corrected even when the color displacement correction is performed
		Precautions for use	If the tilt amount (Cyan) in the main scanning direction deviates beyond all expectations, the tilt control motor may lock up, making it impossible to correct the color displacement even when the color displacement correction is performed. When this has happened, the operation which returns the tilt control motor to its center position is automatically performed by selecting this mode.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	'ACTIVE' is displayed during operation; 'OK!' is displayed upon completion.
		Unit	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	Select the item to highlight it, and then press the OK key.
		OK/NG criteria	OK if the display switches to 'OK!' after 'ACTIVE' is displayed (flashing).
		Time required	0: ON 1: OFF
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > FUNCTION > LASER			
Item	Level	Description	
LD-ADJ-K	2	Title	Automatic return of tilt control motor to initial position (Bk)
		Purpose of use	To automatically return the tilt control motor to its initial position (Bk).
		When used	When color displacement cannot be corrected even when the color displacement control is performed
		Precautions for use	If the tilt amount (Black) in the main scanning direction deviates significantly, the tilt correction motor may lock up, making it impossible to correct the color shift even when the color displacement control is performed. When this has happened, the operation which returns the tilt correction motor to its center position is automatically performed by selecting this mode.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	OK if the display switches to 'OK!' after 'ACTIVE' is displayed (flashing).
		Unit	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	Select the item to highlight it, and then press the OK key.
		OK/NG criteria	The color shift must be improved after execution.
		Time required	0: ON 1: OFF
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

18.5.1.4 COPIER > FUNCTION > ATTRACT

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

T-18-46

COPIER > FUNCTION > ATTRACT			
Item	Level	Description	
P-POSI	1	Title	Side registration adjustment mode
		Purpose of use	To adjust the variations in the transport of the paper during paper transport from the feed opening to the pre-registration stop position.
		When used	When the side registration is adjusted
		Precautions for use	Check whether the position where the paper stops in the pre-registration area is inside the specified range.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	Paper feed level settings: Input field 1 (left side), 0 to 13 1. Right deck 2. Left deck 3, 4. Not used 5. Side deck 6. Manual 7. Not used 8. POD deck top level 9. POD deck middle level 10. POD deck bottom level 11. Secondary POD deck top level 12. Secondary POD deck middle level 13. Secondary POD deck bottom level Single side/both sides setting: Input field 2 (right side), 0 or 1 0: Single side 1: Both sides
		Unit	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	Refer to the side registration adjustment in the service manual.
		OK/NG criteria	-
		Time required	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

18.5.1.5 COPIER > FUNCTION > DPC

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

COPIER > FUNCTION > DPC			
Item	Level	Description	
DPC	1	Title	Implementation of photosensitive drum potential measurement control
		Purpose of use	To implement the Yellow Magenta Cyan Black photosensitive drum potential control.
		When used	When the photosensitive drum or the parts around the photosensitive drum such as the primary charger are replaced
		Precautions for use	This item is used when forcibly controlling the potential, when the photosensitive drum or the parts around the photosensitive drum such as the primary charger are replaced. (Although the potential is normally controlled by a means such as warm-up rotation when the power has been turned on at a low fixing temperature, this item is used when the parts are replaced because this control needs to be implemented at a specific timing.)
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	'ACTIVE' is displayed during operation; 'OK!' is displayed upon completion.
		Unit	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	Select the item to highlight it, and then press the OK key.
		OK/NG criteria	OK if the display switches to 'OK!' after 'ACTIVE' is displayed (flashing).
		Time required	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
OFST	1	Not used	
DRM-RSET	1	Not used	
OFST-Y	1	Title	Offset adjustment of potential measurement circuit for photosensitive drum (Yellow)
		Purpose of use	To adjust the offset of the potential measurement circuit for the photosensitive drum (Yellow).
		When used	When the DC controller PCB 1-2 and potential sensor/potential control PCB are replaced
		Precautions for use	After executing this mode, the COPIER > ADJUST > V-CONT > EPOT-O-Y value must be entered on the main station service label without fail.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	'ACTIVE' is displayed during operation; 'OK!' is displayed upon completion.
		Unit	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	Select the item to highlight it, and then press the OK key.
		OK/NG criteria	OK if the display switches to 'OK!' after 'ACTIVE' is displayed (flashing).
		Time required	Approx. 60 seconds
		Related service modes	COPIER>ADJUST>V-CONT>EPOT-O-Y
		Additional description and notes	-
OFST-M	1	Title	Offset adjustment of potential measurement circuit for photosensitive drum (M)
		Purpose of use	To adjust the offset of the potential measurement circuit for the photosensitive drum (M).
		When used	When the DC controller PCB 1-2 and potential sensor/potential control PCB are replaced
		Precautions for use	After executing this mode, the COPIER > ADJUST > V-CONT > EPOT-O-M value must be entered on the main station service label without fail.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	'ACTIVE' is displayed during operation; 'OK!' is displayed upon completion.
		Unit	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	Select the item to highlight it, and then press the OK key.
		OK/NG criteria	OK if the display switches to 'OK!' after 'ACTIVE' is displayed (flashing).
		Time required	Approx. 60 seconds
		Related service modes	COPIER>ADJUST>V-CONT>EPOT-O-M
		Additional description and notes	-
OFST-C	1	Title	Offset adjustment of potential measurement circuit for photosensitive drum (Cyan)
		Purpose of use	To adjust the offset of the potential measurement circuit for the photosensitive drum (Cyan).
		When used	When the DC controller PCB 1-2 and potential sensor/potential control PCB are replaced
		Precautions for use	After executing this mode, the COPIER > ADJUST > V-CONT > EPOT-O-C value must be entered on the main station service label without fail.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	'ACTIVE' is displayed during operation; 'OK!' is displayed upon completion.
		Unit	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	Select the item to highlight it, and then press the OK key.
		OK/NG criteria	OK if the display switches to 'OK!' after 'ACTIVE' is displayed (flashing).
		Time required	Approx. 60 seconds
		Related service modes	COPIER>ADJUST>V-CONT>EPOT-O-C
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > FUNCTION > DPC			
Item	Level	Description	
OFST-K	1	Title	Offset adjustment of potential measurement circuit for photosensitive drum (Black)
		Purpose of use	To adjust the offset of the potential measurement circuit for the photosensitive drum (Black).
		When used	When the DC controller PCB 1-2 and potential sensor/potential control PCB are replaced
		Precautions for use	After executing this mode, the COPIER > ADJUST > V-CONT > EPOT-O-K value must be entered on the main station service label without fail.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	'ACTIVE' is displayed during operation; 'OK!' is displayed upon completion.
		Unit	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	Select the item to highlight it, and then press the OK key.
		OK/NG criteria	OK if the display switches to 'OK!' after 'ACTIVE' is displayed (flashing).
		Time required	Approx. 60 seconds
		Related service modes	COPIER>ADJUST>V-CONT>EPOT-O-K
		Additional description and notes	-

18.5.1.6 COPIER > FUNCTION > CST

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

T-18-48

COPIER > FUNCTION > CST			
Item	Level	Description	
MF-A4R	1	Title	Registration of basic value of sheet width for manual feed tray (DADF) (A4R width: 210 mm)
		Purpose of use	To register the basic value of the sheet width (A4R) for the manual feed tray (DADF).
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	AD value
		Unit	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Load the sheets concerned in the manual feed tray, and align the guide with the sheet width. 2) Select the item to highlight it. 3) Press the OK key. Upon completion of the automatic adjustment, the value is registered.
		OK/NG criteria	-
		Time required	-
		Related service modes	Fine adjustments are performed by ADJUST > CST-ADJ > MF-A4R.
		Additional description and notes	-
MF-A6R	1	Title	Registration of basic value of sheet width for manual feed tray (DADF) (A6R width: 105 mm)
		Purpose of use	To register the basic value of the sheet width (A6R) for the manual feed tray (DADF).
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	AD value
		Unit	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	When faulty transfer during continuous printing has occurred This item is used when analyzing the causes of trouble. It must be used in accordance with the instructions given by the Quality Support department.
		OK/NG criteria	-
		Time required	0: ON 1: OFF
		Related service modes	Fine adjustments are performed by ADJUST > CST-ADJ > MF-A6R.
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > FUNCTION > CST			
Item	Level	Description	
MF-A4	1	Title	Registration of basic value of sheet width for manual feed tray (DADF) (A4 width: 297 mm)
		Purpose of use	To register the basic value of the sheet width (A4) for the manual feed tray (DADF).
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	AD value
		Unit	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Load the sheets concerned in the manual feed tray, and align the guide with the sheet width. 2) Select the item to highlight it. 3) Press the OK key. Upon completion of the automatic adjustment, the value is registered.
		OK/NG criteria	-
		Time required	0: ON 1: OFF
		Related service modes	Fine adjustments are performed by ADJUST > CST-ADJ > MF-A4.
Additional description and notes	-		

18.5.1.7 COPIER > FUNCTION > CLEANING

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

T-18-49

COPIER > FUNCTION > CLEANING			
Item	Level	Description	
TBLT-CLN	1	Title	ITB cleaning
		Purpose of use	To remove the foreign matter (sebums such as fingerprints, paper dust, etc.) adhering to the ITB.
		When used	This item is used when dirt on the ITB has given rise to unsatisfactory images.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	'ACTIVE' is displayed during operation; 'OK!' is displayed upon completion.
		Unit	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	Select the item to highlight it, and then press the OK key.
		OK/NG criteria	OK if the display switches to OK! after ACTIVE is displayed (flashing).
		Time required	Approx. 45 seconds
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	-		
WIRE-CLN	1	Title	Simultaneous cleaning of all charging wires
		Purpose of use	To clean the primary charging wires.
		When used	This item is used when dirt on the charging wires has given rise to unsatisfactory images.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	'ACTIVE' is displayed during operation; 'OK!' is displayed upon completion.
		Unit	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	When faulty transfer during continuous printing has occurred This item is used when analyzing the causes of trouble. It must be used in accordance with the instructions given by the Quality Support department.
		OK/NG criteria	It must be possible for the cleaning operation of the primary charging wires of all the YMCK colors to be executed properly.
		Time required	0: ON 1: OFF
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	-		

COPIER > FUNCTION > CLEANING			
Item	Level	Description	
WIRE-EX	1	Title	Cleaning of primary charging wires and pre-transfer charging wires (single-return mode)
		Purpose of use	Function for a single-return cleaning of the primary charging wires
		When used	This item is executed when dirt on the charger has given rise to unsatisfactory images.
		Precautions for use	
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	'ACTIVE' is displayed during operation; 'OK!' is displayed upon completion.
		Unit	
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	Select the item to highlight it, and then press the OK key.
		OK/NG criteria	Operation ends if the problem with image quality is eliminated; otherwise, it is repeated several times. If normal images are not reproduced even after the operation has been performed several times, track down other causes or replace the charging wires.
		Time required	0: ON 1: OFF
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
FX1-CL-E	1	Title	Cleaning of streaks on fixing roller of first fixing assembly
		Purpose of use	To clean the streaks on the fixing roller of the first fixing assembly.
		When used	When faulty image (streaks, stains) caused by streaks on the first fixing assembly roller has occurred
		Precautions for use	Increasing the setting, which increases the cleaning amount, adversely affects the service life of the fixing roller so refrain from frequent increases.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	'ACTIVE' is displayed during operation; 'OK!' is displayed upon completion.
		Unit	
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	Select the item to highlight it, and then press the OK key.
		OK/NG criteria	Confirmation of refresh operation
		Time required	0: ON 1: OFF
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
FX2-CL-E	1	Title	Cleaning of streaks on fixing roller of second fixing assembly
		Purpose of use	To clean the streaks on the fixing roller of the second fixing assembly.
		When used	When faulty image (streaks, stains) caused by streaks on the second fixing assembly roller has occurred
		Precautions for use	Increasing the setting, which increases the cleaning amount, adversely affects the service life of the fixing roller so refrain from frequent increases.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	'ACTIVE' is displayed during operation; 'OK!' is displayed upon completion.
		Unit	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	Select the item to highlight it, and then press the OK key.
		OK/NG criteria	'ACTIVE' is displayed during operation; 'OK!' is displayed upon completion.
		Time required	0: ON 1: OFF
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
FXD-CL-E	1	Title	Cleaning of streaks on fixing roller of second fixing assembly
		Purpose of use	To clean the streaks on the fixing roller of the second fixing assembly.
		When used	When faulty image (streaks, stains) caused by streaks on the second fixing assembly roller has occurred
		Precautions for use	Increasing the setting, which increases the cleaning amount, adversely affects the service life of the fixing roller so refrain from frequent increases.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	'ACTIVE' is displayed during operation; 'OK!' is displayed upon completion.
		Unit	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	Select the item to highlight it, and then press the OK key.
		OK/NG criteria	'ACTIVE' is displayed during operation; 'OK!' is displayed upon completion.
		Time required	Approx. 30 seconds
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > FUNCTION > CLEANING			
Item	Level	Description	
T-CL-REV	1	Title	Secondary transfer cleaning reverse rotation mode
		Purpose of use	To rotate the secondary transfer cleaning roller in reverse to prevent the buildup of collected toner in the screw areas.
		When used	When transfer cleaning trouble has occurred
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	'ACTIVE' is displayed during operation; 'OK!' is displayed upon completion.
		Unit	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	Select the item to highlight it, and then press the OK key.
		OK/NG criteria	Visually inspected
		Time required	Approx. 30 seconds
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
FX-CL-LV	1	Title	Adjustment of fixing assembly cleaning level after jamming
		Purpose of use	To prevent faulty images caused by trouble in the fixing assembly cleaning after jamming.
		When used	When faulty images caused by dirt on the fixing roller are a frequent occurrence after jamming, etc.
		Precautions for use	
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 4 The number of times the fixing web is wound after unjamming is determined by the setting. 0: 40 times 1: 60 times 2: 80 times 3: 100 times 4: 120 times
		Unit	Times
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key.
		OK/NG criteria	'ACTIVE' is displayed during operation; 'OK!' is displayed upon completion.
		Time required	-
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	-		

18.5.1.8 COPIER > FUNCTION > FIXING

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

T-18-50

COPIER > FUNCTION > FIXING			
Item	Level	Description	
FX1-SHD1	1	Title	Not used
FX2-SHD1	1	Title	Not used
FX1-SHD2	1	Title	Not used
FX2-SHD2	1	Title	Not used
FX1-EXD1	1	Title	Not used
FX2-EXD1	1	Title	Not used
FX1-EXD2	1	Title	Not used
FX2-EXD2	1	Title	Not used

COPIER > FUNCTION > FIXING			
Item	Level	Description	
FX1-NIP1	1	Title	Primary fixing nip measurement mode 1
		Purpose of use	To output the paper for measuring the nip of the primary fixing assembly.
		When used	When checking whether the fixing nip is correct in cases where fixing-related parts (fixing roller, pressure belt unit and pressure roller) have been replaced or when fixing trouble has occurred
		Precautions for use	For details on the procedure for checking the fixing nip amount, refer to the ratings/adjustments > fixing nip check.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0: White paper print (no image formed) ÅiDefaultÅj 1: Not used 2: Not used
		Unit	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Load the test print paper for checking the nip with the image side face up in the right deck. 2) Select the item to highlight it, input "0," and press the OK key. For details on the procedure for checking the fixing nip amount, refer to the ratings/adjustments > fixing nip check.
		OK/NG criteria	
		Time required	Approx. 100 seconds
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
FX2-NIP1	1	Title	Secondary fixing nip measurement mode 1
		Purpose of use	To output the paper for measuring the nip of the secondary fixing assembly.
		When used	When checking whether the fixing nip is correct in cases where fixing-related parts (fixing roller, pressure belt unit and pressure roller) have been replaced or when fixing trouble has occurred
		Precautions for use	For details on the procedure for checking the fixing nip amount, refer to the ratings/adjustments > fixing nip check.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0: White paper print (no image formed) ÅiDefaultÅj 1: Not used 2: Not used
		Unit	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Load the test print paper for checking the nip with the image side face up in the right deck. 2) Select the item to highlight it, and press the OK key. For details on the procedure for checking the fixing nip amount, refer to the ratings/adjustments > fixing nip check.
		OK/NG criteria	
		Time required	Approx. 100 seconds
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

18.5.1.9 COPIER > FUNCTION > PANEL

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

T-18-51

COPIER > FUNCTION > PANEL			
Item	Level	Description	
LCD-CHK	1	Title	Checking of missing dots on LCD display
		Purpose of use	To check the LCD display for missing dots.
		When used	When the LCD unit is replaced
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select this item, and press the OK key to start the operation. The touch panel front lights in the sequence of white -> black -> red -> green -> blue, and this sequence is repeated. (Check that this holds true.) 2) Press the stop key to end the operation.
		OK/NG criteria	-
		Time required	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > FUNCTION > PANEL			
Item	Level	Description	
LED-CHK	1	Title	Operation unit LED lighting check start
		Purpose of use	To check the lighting of the LEDs on the operation unit.
		When used	When the LCD unit is replaced
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	When faulty transfer during continuous printing has occurred This item is used when analyzing the causes of trouble. It must be used in accordance with the instructions given by the Quality Support department.
		OK/NG criteria	-
		Time required	0: ON 1: OFF
		Related service modes	COPIER > FUNCTION > PANEL > LED-OFF (level 1)
		Additional description and notes	-
LED-OFF	1	Title	Operation unit LED lighting check end
		Purpose of use	To end the lighting check of the LEDs on the operation unit.
		When used	While the lighting of the LEDs on the operation unit is being checked
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	Press while LED-CHK is being executed.
		OK/NG criteria	-
		Time required	0: ON 1: OFF
		Related service modes	COPIER > FUNCTION > PANEL > LED-CHK (level 1)
		Additional description and notes	-
KEY-CHK	1	Title	Key input check
		Purpose of use	To check the input of the keys on the operation unit.
		When used	When the LCD unit is replaced
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it. The input box now appears. 2) When the keys on the operation unit are pressed, input values appear. For the relationship between the input key of KEY-CHK and the screen display, see the table (Input key of KEY-CHK and screen display) indicated below. 3) After checking the key input, press the item to release the highlighting, and operation ends.
		OK/NG criteria	-
		Time required	0: ON 1: OFF
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
TOUCHCHK	1	Title	Analog touch panel coordinate position adjustment
		Purpose of use	To adjust the position of the analog touch panel coordinates.
		When used	When the LCD unit is replaced
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, and then press the OK key. 2) Adjustment is completed by pressing in sequence the 9 '+' displayed on the touch panel.
		OK/NG criteria	-
		Time required	0: ON 1: OFF
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

- Input key and screen display of KEY-CHK

Key	Indication on the screen
0 to 9, #, *	0 to 9, #, *
Reset	RESET
Stop	STOP
User mode	USER
Start	START
Power save	STAND BY
Clear	CLEAR
ID	ID
Help	?
Counter Check	BILL

18.5.1.10 COPIER > FUNCTION > PART-CHK

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

COPIER > FUNCTION > PART-CHK			
Item	Level	Description	
CL	1	Title	Not used
CL-ON	1	Title	Not used
FAN	1	Title	Designation of fan whose operation is to be checked
		Purpose of use	To designate the fan whose operation is to be checked.
		When used	When the fan is replaced
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	1 to 104 (for details, refer to separate table provided later)
		Unit	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it. 2) Use the numeric keypad to input the fan code. 3) Press the OK key. 4) Press FAN-ON, and check the operation of the fan.
		OK/NG criteria	-
		Time required	-
		Related service modes	COPIER > FUNCTION > PART-CHK > FAN-ON (level 1)
Additional description and notes	-		
FAN-ON	1	Title	Fan operation start
		Purpose of use	To start the fan operation check.
		When used	When the fan is replaced
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	When faulty transfer during continuous printing has occurred This item is used when analyzing the causes of trouble. It must be used in accordance with the instructions given by the Quality Support department.
		Unit	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	0: ON 1: OFF
		OK/NG criteria	-
		Time required	-
		Related service modes	COPIER > FUNCTION > PART-CHK > FAN (level 1)
Additional description and notes	-		
MTR	1	Title	Designation of motor whose operation is to be checked
		Purpose of use	To designate the motor whose operation is to be checked.
		When used	When the motor is replaced
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	1 to 58 (for details, refer to separate table provided later)
		Unit	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	0: ON 1: OFF
		OK/NG criteria	-
		Time required	-
		Related service modes	COPIER > FUNCTION > PART-CHK > MTR-ON (level 1)
Additional description and notes	-		

COPIER > FUNCTION > PART-CHK			
Item	Level	Description	
MTR-ON	1	Title	Motor operation start
		Purpose of use	To start the motor operation check.
		When used	When the motor is replaced
		Precautions for use	The toner container must be removed before checking the bottle motor operation. (The toner may leak out inside the unit if the check is performed with the toner cartridge still in place.)
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	0: ON 1: OFF
		OK/NG criteria	-
		Time required	-
		Related service modes	COPIER > FUNCTION > PART-CHK > MTR (level 1)
		Additional description and notes	-
SL	1	Title	Designation of solenoid whose operation is to be checked
		Purpose of use	To designate the solenoid whose operation is to be checked.
		When used	When the solenoid is replaced
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	1 or 2 1: Primary fixing web solenoid 2: Secondary fixing web solenoid
		Unit	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	0: ON 1: OFF
		OK/NG criteria	-
		Time required	-
		Related service modes	COPIER > FUNCTION > PART-CHK > SL-ON (level 1)
		Additional description and notes	-
SL-ON	1	Title	Solenoid operation start
		Purpose of use	To start the motor operation check.
		When used	When the solenoid is replaced
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item, and press the OK key. The clutch is now repeatedly turned ON and OFF in the following sequence: ON for 0.5 sec -> OFF for 10 sec -> ON for 0.5 sec -> OFF for 10 sec-> ON for 0.5 sec -> OFF
		OK/NG criteria	-
		Time required	-
		Related service modes	COPIER > FUNCTION > PART-CHK > SL (level 1)
		Additional description and notes	-

- Displays, settings and adjustment ranges of FAN

T-18-54

No. (DEC)	Notation	Name
1	FM140	Main station right cooling fan 1
2	FM141	Main station right cooling fan 2
3	FM142	Main station right cooling fan 3
4	FM143	Main station rear right cooling fan
5	-	Not used
6	-	Not used
7	-	Not used
8	-	Not used
9	FM320	Duplexing decurler fan
10	FM321	Station to station interval cooling fan 1
11	FM322	Station to station interval cooling fan 2
12	FM323	Station to station interval cooling fan 3
13	FM324	Station to station interval cooling fan 4
14	-	Not used
15	FM326	Station to station interval cooling fan 6

No. (DEC)	Notation	Name
16	FM327	Station to station interval cooling fan 7
17	FM328	Station to station interval cooling fan 8
18	-	Not used
19	-	Not used
20	FM120	Pre-fixing feed rear right fan
21	-	Not used
22	FM121	Pre-fixing feed front right fan
23	-	Not used
24	FM137	Pre-fixing feed rear left fan
25	FM134	Pre-fixing feed front left fan
26	FM114	Process unit exhausting fan (Y)
27	FM112	Process unit exhausting fan (M)
28	FM108	Process unit exhausting fan (C)
29	FM110	Process unit exhausting fan (Bk)
30	FM319	Delivery upper cooling fan
31	FM318	Delivery lower cooling fan
32	-	Not used
33	FM130	Registration feed driver PCB right cooling fan
34	-	Not used
35	-	Not used
36	-	Not used
37	-	Not used
38	-	Not used
39	-	Not used
40	-	Not used
41	-	Not used
42	FM115	Pre-transfer exhausting fan
43	-	Not used
44	FM113	Process unit cooling fan (Y)
45	FM111	Process unit cooling fan (M)
46	FM107	Process unit cooling fan (C)
47	FM109	Process unit cooling fan (Bk)
48	-	Not used
49	FM135	Secondary transfer/duplexing driver PCB cooling fan
50	FM502	Power supply cooling fan 1
50	FM503	Power supply cooling fan 2
51	FM504	Power supply cooling fan 3
51	FM505	Power supply cooling fan 4
52	FM506	Power supply cooling fan 5
52	FM507	Power supply cooling fan 6
53	FM300	Power supply cooling fan 7
53	FM301	Power supply cooling fan 8
54	FM105	Laser cooling fan (Y)
55	FM104	Laser cooling fan (M)
56	FM102	Laser cooling fan (C)
57	FM103	Laser cooling fan (Bk)
58	-	Not used
59	-	Not used
60	-	Not used
61	FM314	Secondary fixing heat exhaust fan
62	FM312	Primary fixing heat exhaust fan
63	FM311	Secondary sub station power unit cooling fan
64	FM310	Primary sub station power unit cooling fan
65	-	Not used
66	-	Not used
67	-	Not used
68	-	Not used
69	-	Not used
70	FM160	Process unit front side cooling fan (Y)
71	FM161	Process unit rear side cooling fan (Y)
72	FM163	Main station rear left cooling fan
73	-	Not used
74	-	Not used

No. (DEC)	Notation	Name
75	-	Not used
76	FM350	Delivery decurler cooling fan
77	FM351	Fixing duplexing driver PCB left cooling fan
78	FM352	Fixing duplexing driver PCB right cooling fan
79	FM353	Reader cooling fan
80	FM354	Main station upper delivery fan
81	FM355	Main station lower delivery fan
82	FM356	Sub station frame cooling fan
83	FM357	Tandem guide upper cooling fan
84	FM358	Tandem guide lower cooling fan
85	FM359	Bypass guide front cooling fan
86	FM360	Bypass guide rear cooling fan
87	FM361	Merger guide front fan
88	-	Not used
89	FM337	Secondary fixing pressure roller cooling fan 5
90	FM302	Primary fixing belt cooling fan 1
91	FM303	Primary fixing belt cooling fan 2
92	FM304	Primary fixing belt cooling fan 3
93	FM305	Primary fixing belt cooling fan 4
94	FM338	Primary fixing belt cooling fan 5
95	FM313	Primary fixing inside delivery cooling fan
96	FM315	Secondary fixing inside delivery cooling fan
97	FM306	Secondary fixing pressure roller cooling fan 1
98	FM307	Secondary fixing pressure roller cooling fan 2
99	FM308	Secondary fixing pressure roller cooling fan 3
100	FM309	Secondary fixing pressure roller cooling fan 4
101	FM331	Primary fixing separating cooling fan 1
102	FM332	Primary fixing separating cooling fan 2
103	FM333	Primary fixing separating cooling fan 3
104	FM334	Primary fixing separating cooling fan 4

- Displays, settings and adjustment ranges of MTR

T-18-55

ID (DEC)	Notation	Name
1	M601	Right deck pickup belt motor
2	M602	Right deck pull-out motor
3	M177	Right deck feeding motor
4	M178	Vertical path feed motor
5	M701	Left deck pickup belt motor
6	M702	Left deck pull-out motor
7	M172	Lower feed motor 4
8	M173	Lower feed motor 2
9	M174	Lower feed motor 3
10	M175	Lower feed motor 1
11	M176	POD deck path feed motor
12	M155	Color registration patch sensor shutter motor
13	M800	Manual feed motor
14	M162	Pre-registration pressure release motor 3
15	-	Not used
16	-	Not used
17	M156	Pre-registration motor 1
18	M157	Pre-registration motor 2
19	M158	Pre-registration motor 3
20	M159	Pre-registration motor 4
21	M168	Cross feed motor
22	M164	Registration motor
23	M183	Secondary transfer driving motor
24	M160	Pre-registration pressure release motor 1
25	M161	Pre-registration pressure release motor 2
26	M169	Cross feed pressure release motor 1
27	M170	Cross feed pressure release motor 2
28	M171	Cross feed pressure release motor 3

ID (DEC)	Notation	Name
29	M167	Cross feed push-on plate jogging motor
30	M165	Registration releasing motor
31	M166	Registration swing motor
32	-	Not used
33	M188	Pre-transfer feed driving right motor
34	M181	Pre-fixing feed drive left motor
35	M310	Tandem feed motor
36	M311	Bypass feed motor
37	M312	Merger path feed motor
38	M323	Pre-delivery feed motor 1
39	M324	Pre-delivery feed motor 2
40	M318	Delivery motor
41	M320	Delivery reverse motor
42	M321	Duplexing delivery motor
43	M317	Delivery decurler motor
44	M315	Delivery decurler advancement adjusting motor 1
45	M316	Delivery decurler advancement adjusting motor 2
46	M309	Fixing flapper motor
47	M319	Delivery reverse flapper motor
48	-	Not used
49	M322	Duplexing post-reverse motor
50	M331	Duplexing feed motor 8
51	M329	Duplexing feed motor 7
52	M330	Duplexing feed motor 5
52	M327	Duplexing feed motor 5
53	M328	Duplexing feed motor 4
54	M187	Duplexing feed motor 3
55	M186	Duplexing feed motor 2
56	M185	Duplexing feed motor 1
57	M326	Duplexing feed motor 6
58	M325	Duplexing decurler advancement adjusting motor

18.5.1.11 COPIER > FUNCTION > CLEAR

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

T-18-56

COPIER > FUNCTION > CLEAR			
Item	Level	Description	
ERR	1	Title	Clearing of error codes
		Purpose of use	To clear the error codes.
		When used	When errors have occurred
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	(Targeted error codes: E000, E001, E002, E003, E005) 1) Select this item, and press the OK key. 2) Turn the main power OFF and then back ON.
		OK/NG criteria	-
		Time required	-
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	-		

COPIER > FUNCTION > CLEAR			
Item	Level	Description	
DC-CON	1	Title	Clearing of DC controller PCB RAM contents
		Purpose of use	To clear the RAM contents on the DC controller PCB.
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	The RAM contents are cleared only after the main power switch has been turned OFF and then back ON.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	When faulty transfer during continuous printing has occurred This item is used when analyzing the causes of trouble. It must be used in accordance with the instructions given by the Quality Support department.
		OK/NG criteria	-
		Time required	0: ON 1: OFF
		Related service modes	COPIER > FUNCTION > MISC-P > P-PRINT (level 1)
		Additional description and notes	-
R-CON	1	Title	Clearing of reader controller PCB RAM contents
		Purpose of use	To clear the RAM contents on the reader controller PCB.
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	The settings are cleared only after the main power switch has been turned OFF and then back ON.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Print out the service mode contents by selecting COPIER > FUNCTION > MISC-P > P-PRINT. 2) Select this item, and press the OK key. 3) Turn the main power OFF and then back ON. 4) If necessary, input the data which has been printed by P-PRINT.
		OK/NG criteria	-
		Time required	0: ON 1: OFF
		Related service modes	COPIER > FUNCTION > MISC-P > P-PRINT (level 1)
		Additional description and notes	-
JAM-HIST	1	Title	Clearing of jam history
		Purpose of use	To clear the jam history.
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	The jam history is cleared only after the OK key has been pressed.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select this item, and press the OK key.
		OK/NG criteria	-
		Time required	0: ON 1: OFF
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
ERR-HIST	1	Title	Clearing of error code history
		Purpose of use	To clear the error code history.
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	The jam history is cleared only after the OK key has been pressed.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select this item, and press the OK key.
		OK/NG criteria	-
		Time required	0: ON 1: OFF
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > FUNCTION > CLEAR			
Item	Level	Description	
PWD-CLR	1	Title	Clearing of system administrator password set in user mode
		Purpose of use	To clear the password of the system administrator which was set in the user mode.
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	The password is cleared only after the OK key has been pressed.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select this item, and press the OK key.
		OK/NG criteria	-
		Time required	-
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	-		
ADRS-BK	1	Title	Clearing of address book data
		Purpose of use	To clear the address book data.
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	The address book data is cleared only after the main power switch has been turned OFF and then back ON.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item, and press the OK key. 2) Turn the main power OFF and then back ON.
		OK/NG criteria	-
		Time required	-
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	-		
CNT-MCON	1	Title	Clearing of counter for services counted by main controller PCB (main)
		Purpose of use	To clear the counter for services which have been counted by the main controller PCB (main).
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	The counter value is cleared only after the OK key has been pressed. (For details on the counter which is cleared, refer to the section on the COUNTER mode.)
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select this item, and press the OK key.
		OK/NG criteria	-
		Time required	-
		Related service modes	COUNTER
Additional description and notes	-		
CNT-DCON	1	Title	Clearing of counters for services counted by DC controller PCB
		Purpose of use	To clear the counters (FIN-STPR, FIN-PDDL, SADDLE, STPL) for services counted by the DC controller PCB.
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	The counter value is cleared only after the OK key has been pressed.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select this item, and press the OK key.
		OK/NG criteria	-
		Time required	-
		Related service modes	COPIER > COUNTER > DRBL-2 > FIN-STPR (level 1) COPIER > COUNTER > DRBL-2 > FIN-PDDL (level 1) COPIER > COUNTER > DRBL-2 > SADDLE (level 1) COPIER > COUNTER > DRBL-2 > STPL (level 1)
Additional description and notes	-		

COPIER > FUNCTION > CLEAR			
Item	Level	Description	
OPTION	1	Title	Mode for returning service mode (OPTION) settings to their default values (values established when RAM is cleared)
		Purpose of use	To return the service mode (OPTION) settings to their default values (values established when the RAM is cleared).
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	The settings are cleared only after the OK key has been pressed. It is the data for the main controller, DC controller and reader controller that is cleared.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Print out the service mode contents by selecting COPIER > FUNCTION > MISC-P > P-PRINT. 2) Select this item, and press the OK key.
		OK/NG criteria	-
		Time required	-
		Related service modes	COPIER > FUNCTION > MISC-P > P-PRINT (level 1)
		Additional description and notes	-
MMI	1	Title	Clearing of user mode settings
		Purpose of use	The following user mode settings are cleared: - Backup data for copy operation unit - Backup data of common settings - Backup data except for FAX
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	The settings are cleared only after the main power switch has been turned OFF and then back ON.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item, and press the OK key. 2) Turn the main power OFF and then back ON.
		OK/NG criteria	-
		Time required	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
MN-CON	1	Title	Clearing of RAM contents on main controller PCB SRAM board
		Purpose of use	To clear the RAM contents on the main controller PCB SRAM board.
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	- The RAM contents are cleared only after the main power switch has been turned OFF and then back ON. - When this item is executed, all the data on the SRAM board will be initialized. - The file control information for the hard drive will also be initialized, making it no longer be possible to read the image data on the hard drive. - Execute this item only after advising the user that all the images inside the box will be lost by the execution of the item and only after the user's approval to proceed has been obtained.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Print out the service mode contents by selecting COPIER > FUNCTION > MISC-P > P-PRINT. 2) Select this item, and press the OK key. Operation is automatically restarted, and the "Turn main power back on" message is displayed. 3) Turn the main power OFF and then back ON.
		OK/NG criteria	-
		Time required	-
		Related service modes	COPIER > FUNCTION > MISC-P > P-PRINT (level 1)
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > FUNCTION > CLEAR			
Item	Level	Description	
CARD	1	Title	Clearing of data relating to card IDs (group)
		Purpose of use	To clear the data on card IDs (group).
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	The card ID-related data is cleared only after the main power switch has been turned OFF and then back ON.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item, and press the OK key. 2) Turn the main power OFF and then back ON.
		OK/NG criteria	-
		Time required	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
SND-STUP	2	Title	Clearing of names of send/readout settings
		Purpose of use	To clear the backup data of the send/readout settings.
		When used	When the language setting is changed
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select this item, and press the OK key.
		OK/NG criteria	-
		Time required	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
CA-KEY	2	Title	Deletion of all CA certificates and key pairs
		Purpose of use	To delete all the CA certificates and key pairs.
		When used	When devices are replaced or disposed of by the service technician
		Precautions for use	All the CA certificates and key pairs are deleted when devices are replaced or disposed of by the service technician. The CA certificates are used by the MEAP application which uses the E-RDS and SSL client connections. The key pairs are used by the IPP, RUI and MEAP SSL functions. - If this operation is not performed when a device is replaced or disposed of, the CA certificates and key pairs additionally registered by the users will remain on the hard drive, and pose security problems. This is why the service technician must perform this operation without fail. - After performing the operation, it must be checked without fail that the OK display appears. If the NG display appears, it may mean that the CA certificates and key pairs have not been deleted properly, in which case the hard drive must be initialized or other action taken to definitely delete the CA certificates and key pairs.
			- This operation must not be performed without due cause since the SSL server certificates and key pairs additionally registered by the users will be deleted. If the server certificates and key pairs have been deleted by mistake, the service technician must ask the user to re-install the SSL server certificates. If the user has not installed any additional certificates or pairs, the settings will be the same as the factory settings so the user will not be affected by the mistake.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item, and press the OK key. 2) If the certificates and key pairs have been cleared properly, the OK display will appear. 3) Turn the main power OFF and then back ON.
		OK/NG criteria	-
		Time required	-
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	By turning the main power OFF and then back ON, the CA certificates and key pairs established when the unit was shipped from the factory are decompressed from the archive (/BOOTDEV/KCMNG) and become usable by the above functions (E-RDS and SSL functions).		

COPIER > FUNCTION > CLEAR			
Item	Level	Description	
LANG-ERR	1	Title	Clearing of language-related errors
		Purpose of use	When a language-related error code has occurred after switching to a language different from the default language, resetting is enabled by this item (the default language is restored after resetting).
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select this item, and press the OK key.
		OK/NG criteria	-
		Time required	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
ERDS-DAT	1	Title	Clearing of embedded-RDS SRAM data
		Purpose of use	To return the SCM values stored in the embedded-RDS SRAM to the factory settings.
		When used	When the bootable version is upgraded in an environment in which E-RDS is used
		Precautions for use	-The SRAM contents are cleared only after the OK key has been pressed. -This item must be used without fail when upgrading the bootable version in an environment in which E-RDS is used. SRAM usage in E-RDS differs depending on the version so data mismatches will occur if the SRAM contents are not cleared. - The following data relating to E-RDS is stored in the SRAM: ON/OFF of E-RDS, port numbers of the server, SOAP URL of the server, schedule of communication with the server (in how many hourly intervals the data is retrieved), etc. The values set for the following items are cleared. -COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL > E-RDS -COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL > RGW-PORT -COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL > RGW-ADR -COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL > COM-LOG
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item, and press the OK key. 2) If the data has been cleared properly, the OK display will appear.
		OK/NG criteria	-
		Time required	-
		Related service modes	COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL > E-RDS (level 1) COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL > RGW-PORT (level 1) COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL > RGW-ADR (level 1) COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL > COM-LOG (level 1)
		Additional description and notes	-
KEY-CLR	2	Title	Clearing of encryption keys of hard drive encryption board
		Purpose of use	To clear the encryption keys of the hard drive encryption board (security kit) in order to replace them.
		When used	When replacing the encryption keys of the hard drive encryption board (security kit)
		Precautions for use	Performing this operation will make it impossible to use all the data on the hard drive: therefore, after this operation is performed and the main power is turned OFF and back ON, the hard drive must be formatted.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select this item, and press the OK key. 2) If the keys have been cleared properly, the OK display will appear. 3) Turn the main power OFF and then back ON. 4) When the encryption board is installed, processing starts. When the processing is performed at installation, new encryption keys are generated.
		OK/NG criteria	Check that new encryption keys are generated.
		Time required	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > FUNCTION > CLEAR			
Item	Level	Description	
INT-DSP	2	Title	Initialization of parts display setting in operator maintenance mode
		Purpose of use	To initiate the setting values in related service mode to default settings. Default values differ depending on destinations.
		When used	When initializing the parts display settings to default values.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	
		Unit	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select this item and press [OK].2) Turn OFF/ON the main power.
		OK/NG criteria	-
		Time required	-
		Related service modes	COPIER > COUNTER > PRD1-SW (level 1)COPER > COUNTER > DRB1-SW (level 1)COPIER > COUNTER > CLN-SW (level 1)
		Additional description and notes	-

18.5.1.12 COPIER > FUNCTION > MISC-R

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

T-18-57

COPIER > FUNCTION > MISC-R			
Item	Level	Description	
SCANLAMP	1	Title	Scanning lamp lighting operation execution
		Purpose of use	To execute the lighting operation of the scanning lamp
		When used	When the scanning lamp is replaced
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	'ACTIVE' is displayed during operation; 'OK!' is displayed upon completion.
		Unit	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select this item. 2) Press the OK key. The scanning lamp now lights for 3 sec.
		OK/NG criteria	OK if the display switches to 'OK!' after 'ACTIVE' is displayed (flashing).
		Time required	3 seconds
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

18.5.1.13 COPIER > FUNCTION > MISC-P

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

T-18-58

COPIER > FUNCTION > MISC-P			
Item	Level	Description	
P-PRINT	1	Title	Service mode setting printout
		Purpose of use	To print out the service mode settings.
		When used	When the CLEAR service mode is executed, etc.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select this item. 2) Press the OK key. The settings are now printed out.
		OK/NG criteria	OK if the display switches to 'OK!' after 'ACTIVE' is displayed (flashing).
		Time required	Approx. 120 seconds
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	It takes about 15 seconds for the printout to start.

COPIER > FUNCTION > MISC-P			
Item	Level	Description	
AUTO-IMG	1	Title	Execution of a series of image position correction control operations
		Purpose of use	To execute a series of operations for correcting the color registration of each color.
		When used	When conducting the color displacement correction operation as and when desired (Color displacement correction is normally conducted at the specified time in line with conditions under which the engine is operated and changes in the environment.)
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	Select the item to highlight it, and then press the OK key.
		OK/NG criteria	OK if the display switches to 'OK!' after 'ACTIVE' is displayed (flashing).
		Time required	Approx. 45 seconds
		Related service modes	COPIER > FUNCTION > MISC-P > AUTO-IMG Select AT-IMG-X for the color displacement correction which is performed when the drum unit has been removed or when the ITB pressure is released.
Additional description and notes	This item is linked with operator maintenance mode > adjustments/cleaning > automatic color displacement correction > correction under normal circumstances (fine adjustment).		

COPIER > FUNCTION > MISC-P			
Item	Level	Description	
MAIN-DRV	2	Title	Not used
		Title	Printout of key input history of operation unit
		Purpose of use	To print out the key input history of the operation unit.
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select this item. 2) Press the OK key. The settings are now printed out.
		OK/NG criteria	OK if the display switches to 'OK!' after 'ACTIVE' is displayed (flashing).
		Time required	Approx. 40 seconds
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
		Title	Printout of jam history and error history
		Purpose of use	To print out the jam history and error history.
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select this item. 2) Press the OK key. The settings are now printed out.
		OK/NG criteria	OK if the display switches to 'OK!' after 'ACTIVE' is displayed (flashing).
		Time required	Approx. 30 seconds
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
		Title	Movement of data received in memory to box
		Purpose of use	To move the data received in the memory to the box.
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select this item. 2) Press the OK key. The settings are now printed out.
		OK/NG criteria	OK if the display switches to 'OK!' after 'ACTIVE' is displayed (flashing).
		Time required	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
		Title	Printout of user mode list
		Purpose of use	To print out a list of the user modes.
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select this item. 2) Press the OK key. The settings are now printed out.
		OK/NG criteria	OK if the display switches to 'OK!' after 'ACTIVE' is displayed (flashing).
		Time required	Approx. 35 seconds
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	It takes about 3 seconds for the printout to start.		
Title	Service label printout		
Purpose of use	To print out the service labels.		
When used	-		
Precautions for use	-		
Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-		
Unit	-		

COPIER > FUNCTION > MISC-P			
Item	Level	Description	
HV-ADOFS	1	Title	High-voltage AD offset adjustment
		Purpose of use	To adjust the primary transfer, secondary transfer and ITB cleaner high voltage AD offset.
		When used	When the RAM contents are cleared, when DCON is replaced, when the high-voltage units (primary transfer high-voltage PCB (Y)/(M)/(C)/(K), secondary transfer high-voltage PCB, ITB cleaner high-voltage PCB (downstream)/(upstream) has been replaced
		Precautions for use	If, after executing this mode, the values displayed for the six items provided in the related service mode fields are not within the +/-300 range, replace the DC controller PCB 1-1 and DC controller PCB 1-2 [1-1??] in this order. (If the values are not within the +/-300 range, it is highly likely that the cause of the trouble lies in the DC controller PCB 1-1.)
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	Select the item to highlight it, and then press the OK key.
		OK/NG criteria	OK if the display switches to 'OK!' after 'ACTIVE' is displayed (flashing).
		Time required	Approx. 10 seconds
		Related service modes	COPIER > DISPLAY > HV-ST5 > 1TR-CMOF (level1) COPIER > DISPLAY > HV-ST5 > 1TR-VMOF (level1) COPIER > DISPLAY > HV-ST5 > 2TR-CMOF (level1) COPIER > DISPLAY > HV-ST5 > 2TR-VMOF (level1) COPIER > DISPLAY > HV-ST5 > BCL1CMOF (level1) COPIER > DISPLAY > HV-ST5 > BCL2CMOF (level1)
		Additional description and notes	-
		ITB-ACVC	1
Purpose of use	To optimize the ITB cleaning voltage.		
When used	When faulty ITB cleaning has occurred		
Precautions for use	-		
Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-		
Unit	-		
Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	Select the item to highlight it, and then press the OK key.		
OK/NG criteria	OK if the display switches to 'OK!' after 'ACTIVE' is displayed (flashing).		
Time required	Approx. 80 seconds		
Related service modes	-		
Additional description and notes	-		
2ATVC-EX	1	Title	Secondary transfer ATVC execution
		Purpose of use	To optimize the secondary transfer voltage.
		When used	When faulty secondary transfer has occurred
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	Select the item to highlight it, and then press the OK key.
		OK/NG criteria	-
		Time required	Approx. 80 seconds
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	-		

COPIER > FUNCTION > MISC-P			
Item	Level	Description	
AT-IMG-X	1	Title	Execution of a series of image position correction control operations (when parts are replaced)
		Purpose of use	To execute a series of operations for correcting the color displacement of each color.
		When used	When the ITB pressure is released, when the drum unit is removed
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	Select the item to highlight it, and then press the OK key.
		OK/NG criteria	OK if the display switches to 'OK!' after 'ACTIVE' is displayed (flashing).
		Time required	Approx. 95 seconds
		Related service modes	COPIER > FUNCTION > MISC-P > AT-IMG-X The color displacement correction implemented under normal circumstances is implemented using AUTO-IMG.
		Additional description and notes	Operator maintenance mode > adjustments/cleaning > automatic color displacement correction > correction during work
ITB-EDGE	1	Title	ITB belt edge shape detection
		Purpose of use	To detect and control the shape of the intermediate transfer belt edge.
		When used	When the intermediate transfer belt is replaced
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	Select the item to highlight it, and then press the OK key.
		OK/NG criteria	OK if the display switches to 'OK!' after 'ACTIVE' is displayed (flashing).
		Time required	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
ITB-DMPL	1	Title	ITB damage detection
		Purpose of use	To detect damage to the intermediate transfer belt, and make a back-up of the damage position information.
		When used	When the intermediate transfer belt is replaced
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	Select the item to highlight it, and then press the OK key.
		OK/NG criteria	OK if the display switches to 'OK!' after 'ACTIVE' is displayed (flashing).
		Time required	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > FUNCTION > MISC-P			
Item	Level	Description	
WTNR-ALL	1	Title	All waste toner discharge operation
		Purpose of use	To discharge all the waste toner from the cleaner area to the collection buffer and from the collection buffer to the waste toner cartridge.
		When used	When the waste toner has caused a blockage somewhere between the cleaner area and the collection buffer or between the collection buffer and the waste toner cartridge When all the waste toner inside the machine is to be discharged at such times as when the machine is to be relocated
		Precautions for use	Before executing this mode, the waste toner inside the waste toner bottle must be removed. This mode can be used to discharge blocked toner when error E013-0001, 0002 or 0003 has occurred.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	'ACTIVE' is displayed during operation; 'OK!' is displayed upon completion.
		Unit	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	Select the item to highlight it, and then press the OK key.
		OK/NG criteria	OK if the display switches to 'OK!' after 'ACTIVE' is displayed (flashing).
		Time required	5 minutes
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
WTNR-BUF	1	Title	Discharge operation for waste toner from cleaner area to collection buffer area
		Purpose of use	To transport the toner which has been collected in the developing assemblies, ITB cleaning unit, drum cleaner unit and secondary transfer cleaning unit to the toner buffer.
		When used	When the toner has caused a blockage at some point along its transport path from the developers, ITB cleaning unit, drum cleaner unit and secondary transfer cleaning unit to the waste toner buffer
		Precautions for use	This mode can be used to discharge blocked toner when error E013-0001 has occurred.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	'ACTIVE' is displayed during operation; 'OK!' is displayed upon completion.
		Unit	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	Select the item to highlight it, and then press the OK key.
		OK/NG criteria	OK if the display switches to 'OK!' after 'ACTIVE' is displayed (flashing).
		Time required	5 minutes
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
WTNR-BOX	1	Title	Discharge operation of waste toner from waste toner buffer to waste toner cartridge
		Purpose of use	To transport the toner which has been collected from the waste toner buffer to the waste toner container.
		When used	When performing maintenance for the path of the toner from the waste toner buffer to waste toner cartridge, when a blockage of the waste toner has arisen, during uninstillation
		Precautions for use	This mode can be used to discharge blocked toner when error E013-0002 or 0003 has occurred.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	'ACTIVE' is displayed during operation; 'OK!' is displayed upon completion.
		Unit	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	Select the item to highlight it, and then press the OK key.
		OK/NG criteria	OK if the display switches to 'OK!' after 'ACTIVE' is displayed (flashing).
		Time required	5 minutes
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > FUNCTION > MISC-P			
Item	Level	Description	
WTN-OFST	1	Title	Offset adjustment of waste toner full sensors 1, 2
		Purpose of use	To adjust the offset of the waste toner full sensors 1 and 2. The waste toner bottle full value at the adjustment stage is fed back to control.
		When used	When the waste toner full sensor 1 or 2 is replaced, when the DC controller PCB 1-1 is replaced
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	'ACTIVE' is displayed during operation; 'OK!' is displayed upon completion.
		Unit	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	Select the item to highlight it, and then press the OK key.
		OK/NG criteria	-
		Time required	1 second
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	-		
WTNBUFOF	1	Title	Offset adjustment of buffer toner full sensor
		Purpose of use	To adjust the offset of the buffer toner full sensor. The waste toner buffer full value at the adjustment stage is fed back to control.
		When used	When the buffer toner full sensor has been replaced
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	'ACTIVE' is displayed during operation; 'OK!' is displayed upon completion.
		Unit	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	Select the item to highlight it, and then press the OK key.
		OK/NG criteria	OK if the display switches to 'OK!' after 'ACTIVE' is displayed (flashing).
		Time required	1 second
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	-		
GRID-ADJ		Title	PG output for the grid height adjustment by analog development.
		Purpose of use	To check if there is no density difference between the front side and rear side of an image using a PG output image that is created with this mode when replacing the primary charging assembly or after adjusting the primary charging wire height.
		When used	When replacing the primary charging assembly, or when adjusting height of the primary charging wire
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	'ACTIVE' is displayed during operation; 'OK!' is displayed upon completion.
		Unit	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	Select the item to highlight it, and then press OK key.
		OK/NG criteria	OK if the display switches to 'OK!' after 'ACTIVE' is displayed (flashed).
		Time required	10 seconds
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	-		

COPIER > FUNCTION > MISC-P			
Item	Level	Description	
CP-PRINT		Title	Printout mode for color management
		Purpose of use	<Printout details>Collectively print the information of product name, date of print, PASCAL paper settings, temperature/humidity/absolute humidity (COPIER > DISPLAY > ANALOG > TEMP, HUM, ABS-HUM), product serial number, counter values (total 101 or black & white 108) or 122 (full color + monochrome color/large) and (black & white/ large) + 113 (black & white/ small), EFI controller type (Canon made, imagePRESSServerQ1, T1, A3000, A2000, A1000 etc.) and the one in COPIER > FUNCTION > MISC-P > P-PRINT, ENV-PRT, HIST-PRT.
		When used	When collectively checking the service mode data items that are required for color management service.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select this item.2) Pressing [OK] printout the document.
		OK/NG criteria	If [OK!] is displayed after [ACTIVE] display (blinking), it means OK.
		Time required	-
		Related service modes	COPIER > DISPLAY > ANALOG > TEMP, HUM, ABS-HUM (level 1)COPER > FUNCTION > MISC-P > P-PRINT, ENV-PRT, HIST-PRT (level 1)
Additional description and notes	-		

18.5.1.14 COPIER > FUNCTION > SENS-ADJ

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

T-18-59

COPIER > FUNCTION > SENS-ADJ			
Item	Level	Description	
REG-SNS	1	Title	Registration sensor light intensity adjustment
		Purpose of use	To adjust the registration sensor light intensity.
		When used	When the registration sensor is replaced
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	'ACTIVE' is displayed during operation; 'OK!' is displayed upon completion.
		Unit	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	Select the item to highlight it, and then press the OK key.
		OK/NG criteria	The execution results must be OK.
		Time required	Approx. 5 seconds
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	-		
P-LENGTH	1	Title	Paper length sensor light quantity adjustment
		Purpose of use	To adjust the paper length detection sensor light quantity.
		When used	When the paper length detection sensor is replaced
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	'ACTIVE' is displayed during operation; 'OK!' is displayed upon completion.
		Unit	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	Select the item to highlight it, and then press the OK key.
		OK/NG criteria	OK if the display switches to 'OK!' after 'ACTIVE' is displayed (flashing).
		Time required	Approx. 5 seconds
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	-		

COPIER > FUNCTION > SENS-ADJ			
Item	Level	Description	
INPUT-L	1	Title	Input the measured value of the paper length that passes through when adjusting the paper length sensor
		Purpose of use	Input the length of paper that is passed through when adjusting the sensor-to-sensor interval of the paper length sensors. The input value is used for the calculation of the sensor-to-sensor interval adjustment.
		When used	When the paper length sensor is replaced due to the failure
		Precautions for use	Following papers are recommended for the adjustment: Japan: Color Laser Copier 80gsm, A4 USA: Hammermill Laser Printer 90gsm, LTR Europe: Canon High Grade 100gsm, A4 Therefore, the value, either 210 mm or around 215.9 mm, is input.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0-5000 (0-500mm) When the factory is shipped, the values of 210mm or about 215.9mm have been described.
		Unit	0.1 mm
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Measure the feeding direction length of A4 or LTR using a scale by 0.1 mm. (One sheet is enough for the measurement using a scale.) 2) Select the item to highlight it, and enter the measured value; then, press the OK key. 3) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
		OK/NG criteria	-
		Time required	-
		Related service modes	COPIER>FUNCTION>SENS-ADJ>INPUT-L COPIER>FUNCTION>SENS-ADJ>PL-SN-MD COPIER>FUNCTION>SENS-ADJ>PL-D-EXE COPIER>FUNCTION>SENS-ADJ>PL-SNS-D COPIER>FUNCTION>SENS-ADJ>PL-SNS-V ADJUST>SENS-ADJ>DUP-PLEN
		Additional description and notes	-
PL-SN-MD	1	Title	Switching of sensor when passing the 1-sided sheet
		Purpose of use	The sensor-to-sensor interval adjustment is executed by passing the 1-sided sheets in order to eliminate the influence of stretching by fixing. Thus, it is required to make the sensor active when the 1-sided sheets pass through. (At the normal job, the sensor becomes active with the 2nd side of the 2-sided print.)
		When used	When the paper length sensor is replaced due to the failure
		Precautions for use	When readjusting the interval of the paper length sensors, the sensor signal should be obtained by passing 1-sided sheets; thus, activate the sensor when the 1-sided sheets pass through. However, in reality, it is active as the default so just check it is active. Although the default is ON, with SIN-READ, the sensor detects the paper pass time at 1-sided printing.. It is valid only within the interval between the paper length sensors adjustment mode (COPIER > FUNCTION > SENS-ADJ> PL-D-EXE). In other words, even the setting is ON, the detection is executed for the 2nd side of the 2-sided printing at the normal job. (It is the specification.)
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0: ON (default) 1: OFF
		Unit	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	-
		OK/NG criteria	-
		Time required	-
		Related service modes	COPIER>FUNCTION>SENS-ADJ>INPUT-L COPIER>FUNCTION>SENS-ADJ>PL-SN-MD COPIER>FUNCTION>SENS-ADJ>PL-D-EXE COPIER>FUNCTION>SENS-ADJ>PL-SNS-D COPIER>FUNCTION>SENS-ADJ>PL-SNS-V ADJUST>SENS-ADJ>DUP-PLEN
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > FUNCTION > SENS-ADJ			
Item	Level	Description	
PL-SNS-D	1	Title	Display the adjusted value of the sensor-to-sensor interval
		Purpose of use	To check the adjusted value of the sensor-to-sensor interval
		When used	When the paper length sensor is replaced due to the failure
		Precautions for use	The adjusted value is displayed after executing the following at the paper length sensor replacement: COPIER > FUNCTION > SENS-ADJ > PL-D-EXE. Enter the value to the following: ADJUST > SENS-ADJ > DUP-PLFN, and write it down to the main station service label.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 10000 (0 to 100 mm)
		Unit	0.01 mm
		Adjusted value at the factory	Yes
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight, and enter the setting value; then, press the OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
		OK/NG criteria	-
		Time required	-
		Related service modes	COPIER>FUNCTION>SENS-ADJ>INPUT-L COPIER>FUNCTION>SENS-ADJ>PL-SN-MD COPIER>FUNCTION>SENS-ADJ>PL-D-EXE COPIER>FUNCTION>SENS-ADJ>PL-SNS-D COPIER>FUNCTION>SENS-ADJ>PL-SNS-V ADJUST>SENS-ADJ>DUP-PLFN
Additional description and notes	Using the sensor signal data obtained by passing 10 sheets as 1-sided, calculate the sheet-to-sheet interval "D" for each sheet. Then, calculate the mean of the sensor-to-sensor interval "D" of the sheets. The obtained value is displayed as the DAVG, the final sensor-to-sensor interval adjustment value.		
PL-SNS-V	1	Title	Display of feeding speed obtained when the interval between the paper length sensors is adjusted
		Purpose of use	Check the feeding speed value obtained when the interval between the paper length sensors is adjusted (COPIER > FUNCTION > SENS-ADJ > PL-D-EXE), and check if the interval between the sensors is correctly adjusted.
		When used	When adjusting the interval between the paper length sensors. The calculated feeding speed value is displayed to check if the sensor replaced when adjusting the interval between the paper length sensors does not have any fault. If the displayed feeding speed value is within 750+/-15 mm, it is normal. However, if the value is out of the range, at least one of the 4 sensors may have a fault.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 99999 (0 to 9999 mm/s)
		Unit	0.1 mm/s
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight, and enter the setting value; then, press the OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
		OK/NG criteria	-
		Time required	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Using the sensor signal obtained by passing 10 sheets as 1-sided, calculate the feeding speed "V" for each sheet. Then, calculate the mean of the feeding speed "V" of the sheets. The obtained value is displayed as the VAVG.

COPIER > FUNCTION > SENS-ADJ			
Item	Level	Description	
PL-D-EXE	1	Title	Interval between the paper length sensors adjustment mode
		Purpose of use	Execute the interval between the paper length sensors adjustment mode
		When used	When the paper length sensor is replaced due to the failure
		Precautions for use	As for the paper pass with this mode, for not executing the sensor-to-sensor interval adjustment with wrong paper pass settings, the following settings are set automatically: source of paper: left deck, mode: 1-sided, and number of sheet: 10. However, the paper type and the size have to be set separately because the recommended paper varies depending on the region.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	ACTIVE is displayed during paper pass (during calculation). Once the 10 sheets are passed, OK is displayed.
		Unit	
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Check that the setting value of SIN-READ is set to "0" by making the following selection: COPIER > FUNCTION > SENS-ADJ > PL-SN-MD. 2) Set 10 and more sheets of the recommended paper indicated below (100-sheets and more is recommended) to the left deck. Japan: Color Laser Copier 80gsm, A4 USA: Hammermill Laser Printer 90gsm, LTR Europe: Canon High Grade 100gsm, A4 3) Measure the length (vertical scanning direction) of paper set in the left deck (unit: 0.1 mm), and input the measured value to the following mode: COPIER > FUNCTION > SENS-ADJ > INPUT-L 4) Once the machine's state becomes "READY", select the item (D-START) to highlight it, and press the OK key. (Paper pass of 10 sheets as 1-sided is executed from the left deck.)
		OK/NG criteria	If ACTIVE is displayed during paper pass (during calculation), and OK is displayed once the 10 sheets are passed, consider as OK.
		Time required	-
		Related service modes	COPIER>FUNCTION>SENS-ADJ>INPUT-L COPIER>FUNCTION>SENS-ADJ>PL-SN-MD COPIER>FUNCTION>SENS-ADJ>PL-D-EXE COPIER>FUNCTION>SENS-ADJ>PL-SNS-D COPIER>FUNCTION>SENS-ADJ>PL-SNS-V ADJUST>SENS-ADJ>DUP-PLEN
Additional description and notes	-		

18.5.1.15 COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

T-18-60

COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM			
Item	Level	Description	
DOWNLOAD	1	Title	Download mode switching
		Purpose of use	To transfer to download mode switching.
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	While waiting for a command: STAND-BY While communication is in progress: CONNECTED When ended: HOLD
		Unit	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, and then press the OK key. 2) The download mode is established, and the command standby status (standby for connection) is set. ('STAND-BY' (or 'STNDBY') is displayed next to the DOWNLOAD sub-item display.) 3) Proceed with the downloading using the service support tools. ('CONNECTED' is displayed while communication with the PC is in progress.) 4) The 'HOLD' display appears when communication has ended. (The power can be turned off in the HOLD status.)
		OK/NG criteria	OK if the display switches to 'HOLD' after 'STAND-BY' or 'CONNECTED' is displayed.
		Time required	-
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	-		

COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM			
Item	Level	Description	
CHK-TYPE	1	Title	Designation of partition number when executing HD-CLEAR or HD-CHECK.
		Purpose of use	To designate the partition number when executing HD-CLEAR or HD-CHECK.
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	(0 to 65535) 0: Sector check and restoration of entire hard drive 1: Image accumulation region 2: General-purpose file storage region 3: PDL file storage region 4: Program file storage region 5: MEAP application 6: Address book, transmission settings 7: MEAP storage data 8: System log storage area
		Unit	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	When faulty transfer during continuous printing has occurred This item is used when analyzing the causes of trouble. It must be used in accordance with the instructions given by the Quality Support department.
		OK/NG criteria	-
		Time required	0: ON 1: OFF
		Related service modes	COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CLEAR (level1) COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CHECK (level1)
Additional description and notes	A general-purpose file contains the control information, etc. of the user setting data, log data, PDL spool data and image data.		
HD-CHECK	1	Title	Entire hard drive contents check and restoration processing execution
		Purpose of use	To execute the entire hard drive contents check and restoration processing.
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0: Sector check and restoration of entire hard drive 1: Image accumulation region 2: General-purpose file storage region 3: PDL file storage region 4: Program file storage region
		Unit	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	Select the item to highlight it, and then press the OK key.
		OK/NG criteria	First 2 bytes: Extent of checking progress (as a percentage) Last 2 bytes: Results of checking (only when the first bytes denote 0%) 0: Normal Other than 0: Error
		Time required	0: ON 1: OFF
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	-		
HD-CLEAR	1	Title	Initialization of partition designated by CHK-TYPE
		Purpose of use	To initialize the partition which was designated by CHK-TYPE
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	Select the item to highlight it, and then press the OK key.
		OK/NG criteria	First 2 bytes: Extent of checking progress (as a percentage) Last 2 bytes: Results of checking (only when the first bytes denote 0%) 0: Normal Other than 0: Error
		Time required	0: ON 1: OFF
		Related service modes	COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE (level1)
Additional description and notes	-		

COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM			
Item	Level	Description	
DEBUG-1	2	Title	Designation of type of log to be stored and timing at which log is to be dumped in hard drive
		Purpose of use	To designate the type of log to be stored and timing at which that log is to be dumped in the hard drive
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	This item is used when analyzing the causes of trouble. Its settings must be changed in accordance with the instructions issued by the quality support department.
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0: HOOKLOG is saved; every time Reboot/Exception is detected 1: HOOKLOG is saved; every time Reboot/Exception/Ecode is detected 2: SUBLOG is saved; every time Reboot/Exception/Ecode is detected 3: SUBLOG is saved in the overwrite mode; every time Reboot/Exception/Ecode is detected
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Value established at time of shipment	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	0: ON 1: OFF
		OK/NG criteria	Perform the processing that generates a log, and check that the type of log and timing have changed.
		Time required	-
		Related service modes	COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > DEBUG-2 (level2)
		Additional description and notes	A PLOG which is saved when a '0' or '1' setting has been established can be printed out by COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > DEBUG-2. A SUBLOG which is saved when a '2' or '3' setting has been established cannot be printed out. (It is uploaded from SST.)
DEBUG-2	2	Title	Printout of logs saved on hard drive
		Purpose of use	To print out a PLOG which is saved when a '0' or '1' setting has been established by COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > DEBUG-1 [Remarks] A SUBLOG which is saved when a '2' or '3' setting has been established is not printed out. Number of sheets printed out: Approx. 20 sheets of A4 size paper
		When used	When a PLOG is printed out
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	'ACTIVE' is displayed during operation; 'OK!' is displayed upon completion.
		Unit	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	Select the item to highlight it, and then press the OK key.
		OK/NG criteria	Check that the PLOG is printed out properly.
		Time required	-
		Related service modes	COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > DEBUG-1 (level1)
		Additional description and notes	-

18.5.1.16 COPIER > FUNCTION > HV-TR

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

T-18-61

COPIER > FUNCTION > HV-TR			
Item	Level	Description	
ITBWEB	2	Title	This mode is not used.
ITB-GLS	1	Title	ITB gloss recovery mode
		Purpose of use	A mode for recovering ITB gloss in case of drop in ITB gloss 1) Idle rotation of ITB/drum 2) Turning ON high voltages for ITB cleaning, for the secondary transfer, for the secondary transfer cleaning 3) Turn OFF high voltage for the primary transfer 4) Adjustment available for duration of idle rotation
		When used	Execute this mode in case of E194-0115/0315 due to drop in ITB gloss to increase ITB gloss.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	2-step operation of engage and disengage
		Unit	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	Select the item to highlight it, and then press the OK key.
		OK/NG criteria	OK if the display switches to 'OK!' after 'ACTIVE' is displayed (flashing).
		Time required	Approx. 300 seconds
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	-		

COPIER > FUNCTION > HV-TR			
Item	Level	Description	
S-ATVC-Y	2	Title	ON/OFF setting for primary transfer (Yellow) sheet-to-sheet interval ATVC control
		Purpose of use	To enable the primary transfer (Yellow) sheet-to-sheet interval ATVC control to be set to ON and OFF.
		When used	When faulty transfer during continuous printing has occurred This item is used when analyzing the causes of trouble. It must be used in accordance with the instructions given by the Quality Support department.
		Precautions for use	
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: ON 1: OFF
		Unit	
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting (use the +/- keys to switch between plus and minus), and press the OK key.
		OK/NG criteria	
		Time required	
		Related service modes	COPIER > ADJUST > HV-TR > S-ATVC-Y
Additional description and notes			
S-ATVC-M	2	Title	ON/OFF setting for primary transfer (Magenta) sheet-to-sheet interval ATVC control
		Purpose of use	To enable the primary transfer (Magenta) sheet-to-sheet interval ATVC control to be set to ON and OFF.
		When used	When faulty transfer during continuous printing has occurred This item is used when analyzing the causes of trouble. It must be used in accordance with the instructions given by the Quality Support department.
		Precautions for use	
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: ON 1: OFF
		Unit	
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting (use the +/- keys to switch between plus and minus), and press the OK key.
		OK/NG criteria	
		Time required	
		Related service modes	COPIER > ADJUST > HV-TR > S-ATVC-M
Additional description and notes			
S-ATVC-C	2	Title	ON/OFF setting for primary transfer (Cyan) sheet-to-sheet interval ATVC control
		Purpose of use	To enable the primary transfer (Cyan) sheet-to-sheet interval ATVC control to be set to ON and OFF.
		When used	When faulty transfer during continuous printing has occurred This item is used when analyzing the causes of trouble. It must be used in accordance with the instructions given by the Quality Support department.
		Precautions for use	
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: ON 1: OFF
		Unit	
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting (use the +/- keys to switch between plus and minus), and press the OK key.
		OK/NG criteria	-
		Time required	-
		Related service modes	COPIER > ADJUST > HV-TR > S-ATVC-C
Additional description and notes			
S-ATVC-K	2	Title	ON/OFF setting for primary transfer (Black) sheet-to-sheet interval ATVC control
		Purpose of use	To enable the primary transfer (Black) sheet-to-sheet interval ATVC control to be set to ON and OFF.
		When used	When faulty transfer during continuous printing has occurred This item is used when analyzing the causes of trouble. It must be used in accordance with the instructions given by the Quality Support department.
		Precautions for use	
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: ON 1: OFF
		Unit	
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting (use the +/- keys to switch between plus and minus), and press the OK key.
		OK/NG criteria	-
		Time required	-
		Related service modes	COPIER > ADJUST > HV-TR > S-ATVC-K
Additional description and notes			

COPIER > FUNCTION > HV-TR			
Item	Level	Description	
S-ATVC2T	2	Title	ON/OFF setting for secondary transfer sheet-to-sheet interval ATVC
		Purpose of use	To set the secondary transfer sheet-to-sheet interval ATVC to ON and OFF.
		When used	When faulty transfer during continuous printing has occurred This item is used when analyzing the causes of trouble. It must be used in accordance with the instructions given by the Quality Support department.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting (use the +/- keys to switch between plus and minus), and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		OK/NG criteria	-
		Time required	-
		Related service modes	COPIER > ADJUST > HV-TR > S-ATVC2T
Additional description and notes	-		
S-ATVCL1	2	Title	ON/OFF setting for secondary transfer sheet-to-sheet interval ATVC
		Purpose of use	To set the secondary transfer sheet-to-sheet interval ATVC to ON and OFF.
		When used	When faulty transfer during continuous printing has occurred This item is used when analyzing the causes of trouble. It must be used in accordance with the instructions given by the Quality Support department.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting (use the +/- keys to switch between plus and minus), and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		OK/NG criteria	-
		Time required	-
		Related service modes	COPIER > ADJUST > HV-TR > S-ATVCL1
Additional description and notes	-		
S-ATVCL2	2	Title	ON/OFF setting for ITB cleaning (upstream) ACVC correction voltage
		Purpose of use	To set the ITB cleaning (upstream) ACVC correction voltage to ON and OFF.
		When used	This item is used when analyzing the causes of trouble. It must be used in accordance with the instructions given by the Quality Support department.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting (use the +/- keys to switch between plus and minus), and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		OK/NG criteria	-
		Time required	-
		Related service modes	COPIER > ADJUST > HV-TR > S-ATVCL2
Additional description and notes	-		

18.5.2 FEEDER

18.5.2.1 FEEDER > FUNCTION >

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000


FEEDER > FUNCTION >			
Item	Level	Description	
SENS-INT	1	Title	ADF sensor initialization adjustment
		Purpose of use	To adjust the initialization of the ADF sensors.
		When used	Initialization must be adjusted when the ADF controller PCB, EEPROM, reverse rotation sensor (S1), registration roller front sensor (S2), registration roller rear sensor (S3), separation sensor (S4), skew sensor (S5), document sensor (S6), document trailing edge sensor (S7) or manual registration roller sensor (S9) is replaced.
		Precautions for use	
		Settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	For the detailed procedure, refer to the service manual of the DADF-R1. 1) Open ADF, and take one solid black copy using A4 copy paper. 2) Remove the ADF controller cover [2]. 3) Set the DIP switches (SW1) on the ADF controller PCB. (SW1: Set 1, 4, 6 to ON; set 2, 3, 5, 7, 8 to OFF.) 4) Place the document obtained in step 1) in the document tray with its black side face down, and cover document trailing edge sensor (S7). Do not cover document sensor (S6) at this time. 5) Press the push switch (SW2) on the ADF controller PCB. DSP1 displays 1 -> 2 -> 3 -> 4 -> 5 -> 6 -> 7 -> 8 -> 9 in this order, and finally it displays the results. 6) Upon completion of operation, press switch (SW2) on the ADF controller PCB again.
		OK/NG criteria	OK: "0" is displayed on DAPI. NG: "1" is displayed on DAPI.
		Time required	
		Related service modes	
		Additional description and notes	
		BLT-CLN	1
Purpose of use	To give the instruction to clean the separation belt of the feeder.		
When used			
Precautions for use			
Settings and adjustment ranges	-		
Unit			
Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	When this item is pressed, it is highlighted. When the OK key is now pressed, the various operations are executed. Upon completion of the adjustment, operation is stopped automatically.		
OK/NG criteria	-		
Time required			
Related service modes			
Additional description and notes			
REG-CLN	1		
		Purpose of use	To rotate only the registration roller, and clean it by inserting a sheet of white paper into the nip area.
		When used	
		Precautions for use	
		Settings and adjustment ranges	
		Unit	
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	A very dirty registration roller cannot be cleared sufficiently by cleaning it in the 'Feeder cleaning' user mode alone. As with separation roller cleaning, sliding a sheet of paper in the nip area will yield a better cleaning effect.
		OK/NG criteria	
		Time required	
		Related service modes	
		Additional description and notes	The roller will stop rotating when the feeder unit cover is closed or the reverse delivery unit cover or ADF main unit is opened during operation.


18.6 OPTION (Machine Settings Mode)


18.6.1 COPIER


18.6.1.1 COPIER > OPTION > BODY (1/5)


imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000


COPIER > OPTION > BODY			
 The value which has been set takes effect after the main power switch has been turned OFF and back ON.			
Item	Level	Description	
W-CLN-P	2	Not used	
MODEL-SZ	1	Title	Selection of standard variable size display and ADF document detection size
		Purpose of use	To select the standard variable size display and ADF document detection size.
		When used	When the user asks for the item to be provided
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: AB type (6R5E) 1: Inch type (5R4E)
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	When the reader is installed (and its connection is recognized), the value (0, 1) is automatically set in accordance with the destination.
SCANSLCT	2	Title	ON/OFF of function for calculating scanning area from selected sheet size
		Purpose of use	To set to ON or OFF the function used to calculate the scanning area from the selected sheet size.
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	If, when '1' is set, the sheet size is larger than the document size, the scanning area increases, causing the productivity to be reduced.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: OFF (scanning area is determined by the detected document size) 1: ON (scanning area is determined by the sheet size)
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
PASCAL	1	Title	Switching between using and not using contrast electric potential and gradation correction data obtained by automatic gradation correction (full correction) control
		Purpose of use	To switch between using and not using the contrast potential and gradation correction data obtained by automatic gradation correction (full correction) control.
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 3
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-


COPIER > OPTION > BODY			
 The value which has been set takes effect after the main power switch has been turned OFF and back ON.			
Item	Level	Description	
DH-SW	2	Title	Shift the automatic Dhalf control ON/OFF
		Purpose of use	At warm up rotation at the first power on or at last rotation after the 5000 sheets are printed, Dhalf control is executed. At that time, if hue variation occurs, use this switch.
		When used	If hue variation occurs at the first print or high volume print (5000 sheets)
		Precautions for use	Do not use regularly. Automatic gradation adjustment is recommended before the first print.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 1 1: Dhalf control is not implemented. 0: Dhalf control is implemented.
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
SENS-CNF	2	Title	Document sensor placement setting
		Purpose of use	To set the document detection size in accordance with the document sensor placement.
		When used	When the contents of the RAM on the reader control PCB have been cleared, when the PCB has been replaced
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: AB type 1: Inch type 2: A type
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	In the case of machines destined for inch or A type manufacturers, '1' (Inch type) or '2'(A type) must be set after the contents of the RAM on the reader control PCB have been cleared or after the PCB has been replaced. 1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
DLIFE-SW	1	Title	Photosensitive drum consumption level display selection
		Purpose of use	To select whether to display the consumption level of the photosensitive drum.
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: The remaining service life of the drum is not displayed. 1: The remaining service life of the drum is displayed.
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-


COPIER > OPTION > BODY			
 The value which has been set takes effect after the main power switch has been turned OFF and back ON.			
Item	Level	Description	
CONFIG	1	Title	Switching of country/region, language, manufacturer, destination and sheet size type
		Purpose of use	To select the multiple system software applications on the hard drive, and switch the country/region, language, manufacturer, destination and sheet size type.
		When used	When the user asks for the item to be provided
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	XXYYZZAA XX: Country/region (example: JP = Japan) YY (*): Language (example: ja = Japanese) ZZ (*): Manufacturer destination (example: 00 = CANON) AA: Sheet size type (00 = AB type, 01 = Inch type, 02 = A type, 03 = Inch/AB type)
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	<Operation procedure> 1) Select <CONFIG>. 2) Select the desired item. 3) Press the +/- keys. Each time one of the keys is pressed, the setting is switched. 4) Display the desired setting, and press the OK key. 5) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	*: The setting cannot be changed.
RAW-DATA	2	Title	Received data print mode selection
		Purpose of use	This item is used to identify whether the trouble in the images received is due to the received image data or image processing when such trouble has occurred.
		When used	When trouble in the images received has occurred
		Precautions for use	The setting must be returned to "0" after the trouble has been remedied.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: Normal printing operation 1: No image processing; raw data printed as is
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
RMT-LANG	2	Title	Remote UI language selection
		Purpose of use	To select the language for the remote UI.
		When used	When the user asks for the item to be provided
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it 2) Press the +/- keys to display the target setting, and press the OK key. 3) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > OPTION > BODY			
 The value which has been set takes effect after the main power switch has been turned OFF and back ON.			
Item	Level	Description	
IFAX-LIM	2	Title	Restriction on number of lines printed during IFAX reception
		Purpose of use	To restrict the number of lines printed during IFAX reception.
		When used	When preventing the machine from keeping on printing the attached file data in cases where error mails have been received, mail parsing has failed, etc.
		Precautions for use	
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 999 0: No mail text is created. 999: No restrictions
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	500
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	If '0' has been set, only the header and footer will be printed out on one sheet when mail containing only the main text and no attached files has been received.		
TEMP-TBL	1	Not used	
W/SCNR	1	Title	Reader availability setting
		Purpose of use	To set whether the reader (option) is available or not.
		When used	When the reader is to be removed
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: Reader is not available. 1: Reader is available.
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	If the reader is detected as being available at startup, "1" is set automatically.		
SMTPTXPN	2	Title	Change in SMTP transmission port number
		Purpose of use	To change the SMTP transmission port number.
		When used	When the user asks for the item to be provided
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 65535
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	25
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	-		
SMTPRXPN	2	Title	Change in SMTP reception port number
		Purpose of use	To change the SMTP reception port number.
		When used	When the user asks for the item to be provided
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 65535
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	25
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	-		

COPIER > OPTION > BODY			
 The value which has been set takes effect after the main power switch has been turned OFF and back ON.			
Item	Level	Description	
POP3PN	2	Title	Change in SMTP reception port number
		Purpose of use	To change the SMTP reception port number.
		When used	When the user asks for the item to be provided
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 65535
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	110
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
RUI-DSP	1	Title	Restriction on copy function option display using remote UI (to comply with the disability laws)
		Purpose of use	To select whether to display the copy function options using the remote UI (to comply with the disability laws)
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: The copy screen is not displayed over the remote UI. 1: The copy screen is displayed for the remote UI.
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
ORG-LGL	2	Title	Setting of special sheet sizes (LGL type) which cannot be recognized when ADF is used
		Purpose of use	To set special sheet sizes which cannot be recognized in the ADF.
		When used	When the user asks for the item to be provided
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: Legal-R 1: Oficio-R, Bolivia 2: Oficio-R, Argentina 3: Legal-R, Argentina 4: Oficio-R, Mexico
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-


COPIER > OPTION > BODY			
 The value which has been set takes effect after the main power switch has been turned OFF and back ON.			
Item	Level	Description	
ORG-LTR	2	Title	Setting of special sheet sizes (LTR type) which cannot be recognized when ADF is used
		Purpose of use	To set special sheet sizes which cannot be recognized in the ADF.
		When used	When the user asks for the item to be provided
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: Letter 1: Executive 2: South Korean government agency paper 3: Argentine letter 4: Government letter
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
UI-COPY	2	Title	Restriction on 'Copy' screen display
		Purpose of use	To select whether the copy screen is to be displayed.
		When used	When the user asks for the item to be provided
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: Copy screen is not displayed. 1: Copy screen is displayed.
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	1
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
UI-BOX	2	Title	BOX'screen display restriction
		Purpose of use	To switch between displaying and not displaying the BOX screen.
		When used	When the user asks for the item to be provided
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: BOX function not provided (and no storage possible using PDL to Box) 1: BOX function provided 2: BOX function provided (with restrictions; no display on operation unit screen or remote UI, but storage possible using PDL to Box.)
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	1
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-


COPIER > OPTION > BODY			
 The value which has been set takes effect after the main power switch has been turned OFF and back ON.			
Item	Level	Description	
UI-SEND	2	Title	'SEND' screen display restriction
		Purpose of use	To switch between displaying and not displaying the SEND screen.
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: SEND screen is not displayed. 1: SEND screen is displayed.
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	1
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	-		
UI-FAX	2	Not used	
STPL-SFT	1	Title	Selection of shift stacking operation in stapling mode
		Purpose of use	To select whether to implement shift stacking in the stapling mode.
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: Shift stacking is implemented during stapling. 1: Shift stacking is not implemented during stapling.
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	This setting takes effect only when stapling in one location.		
TMC-SLCT	2	Title	Selection of coefficient to be used for error diffusion processing
		Purpose of use	To select the coefficient to be used for error diffusion processing.
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 2
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	-		
CAL-SW	2	Title	Selection of calibration control execution conditions
		Purpose of use	To select the calibration control execution conditions.
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	This item must not be used during normal operation.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0/1
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	-		


COPIER > OPTION > BODY			
 The value which has been set takes effect after the main power switch has been turned OFF and back ON.			
Item	Level	Description	
DEVL-VTH	2	Title	Setting of operation condition for forced toner consumption sequences
		Purpose of use	To set the threshold for the video count which serves as the operation condition for forced toner consumption sequences.
		When used	At low duty image print (low image ratio print) [a], If graininess (coarse) occurs. [b], If user mentions the low productivity or high toner consumption.
		Precautions for use	- Do not use at the normal operation. - This mode cannot make an improvement for the aforementioned symptoms [a] and [b] at the same time. Ends up to be trade OFF.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	1 to 20 For symptom [a], increasing the value makes the symptom better; however, [b] gets worse. For symptom [b], decreasing the value makes the symptom better; however, [a] gets worse.
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	2
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
FTPTXPN	2	Title	Specification of send destination port (FTP) number
		Purpose of use	To specify the send destination port (FTP) number.
		When used	When the user asks for the item to be provided
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 65535
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	21
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
PRNT-ORD	2	Title	Selection of sequence in which to output to side tray
		Purpose of use	To select the sequence in which to output to the side tray.
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	This item must not be used during normal operation.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 2
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-


18.6.1.2 COPIER > OPTION > BODY (2/5)


imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000


COPIER > OPTION > BODY			
 The value which has been set takes effect after the main power switch has been turned OFF and back ON.			
Item	Level	Description	
PRN-FLG	2	Title	Image zone flag selection (for PDL images)
		Purpose of use	Image processing based on the image zone flag set in this mode is executed when it was not possible to compress the PDL images to the specified compression ratio at the main controller end.
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: High line number screen, gray compensation LUT 1: Error diffusion, gray compensation LUT 2: High line number screen, normal LUT
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
SCN-FLG	2	Title	Image zone flag selection (for copy images)
		Purpose of use	Image processing based on the image zone flag set in this mode is executed when it was not possible to compress the scanned images to the specified compression ratio at the main controller end.
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: Text 1: Halftone dot photo images 2: Printing paper photos
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
INTROT-2	1	Title	Set the execution interval of automatic adjustment control at the interruption control/last rotation.
		Purpose of use	To set the number of sheets to serve as the interval at which to execute automatic adjustment control during pre-rotation/post-rotation.
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 9999
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	500
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Details for the automatic adjustment control Charging wire cleaning, potential control for drum patch image, ATVC, ACVC, fixing refresh


COPIER > OPTION > BODY			
 The value which has been set takes effect after the main power switch has been turned OFF and back ON.			
Item	Level	Description	
TRY-CHG	2	Title	Change in control over tray switching when tray is fully stacked
		Purpose of use	To change the control exercised over tray switching when the tray is fully stacked.
		When used	When the user asks for the item to be provided
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	After the print job has been initiated: 1) When tray B is fully stacked, the tray is switched over to tray A. 2) Remove the paper in tray B. Now initiate the next print job. 3) Use this item setting to select the operation in 3-1) or 3-2) below. 3-1) Print out to the priority tray. 3-2) Print out to the same tray as the preceding print job. 0: The operation in 3-1) is performed. 1: The operation in 3-2) is performed.
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	-		
NWERR-SW	2	Title	Network-related error message display OFF/ON
		Purpose of use	To turn off the display of the network-related error message ('Check the network connections') when the machine is not connected to the network.
		When used	When using the machine only as a copier
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: The network error message is not displayed. 1: The network error message is displayed.
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	Normal model: 1 Self-copy model (Japan only): 0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	-		
STS-PORT	2	Title	T.O.T. synchronous type status communication port ON/OFF
		Purpose of use	To turn ON or OFF the Inquiry/Response (synchronous) type status communication port in T.O.T.
		When used	When using service NAVI
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0:OFF 1:ON When service NAVI is used, set to '1' to connect the PC and machine using a crossover cable.
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	COPIER>OPTION>BODY>CMD-PORT
Additional description and notes	T.O.T. (TUIF over TCP) A communications protocol (Canon's own protocol) which is used for the presentation (UI) of built-in applications and for communication with applications inside the machine such as COPY/SEND/BOX.		


COPIER > OPTION > BODY			
 The value which has been set takes effect after the main power switch has been turned OFF and back ON.			
Item	Level	Description	
CMD-PORT	2	Title	T.O.T. asynchronous type command communication port ON/OFF
		Purpose of use	To turn ON or OFF the asynchronous type command communication port in T.O.T.
		When used	When using service NAVI
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0:OFF 1:ON When service NAVI is used, set to '1' to connect the PC and machine using a crossover cable.
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	COPIER>OPTION>BODY>STS-PORT
		Additional description and notes	T.O.T. (TUIF over TCP) A communications protocol (Canon's own protocol) which is used for the presentation (UI) of built-in applications and for communication with applications inside the machine such as COPY/SEND/BOX.
MODELSZ2	2	Title	Setting of global support for document size detection during copyboard cover use
		Purpose of use	To turn ON or OFF the global support for document size detection while the copyboard cover is being used.
		When used	When supporting individual users (mixed stacking of AB/Inch type documents)
		Precautions for use	This item must not be normally used. When both AB and Inch type documents are stacked together, a separate document size sensor (photosensor) is required for the document size to be detected properly.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: Normal (detection operation by detected size for each manufacturer destination) 1: Detection of stacking of both AB and Inch type documents
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	When the item is set to '1', the document size is not detected while the platen is opened or closed. (The document lighting lamp does not light.)
SZDT-SW	2	Title	Switching of document size detection method during copyboard cover use
		Purpose of use	To switch the document size detection method during copyboard cover use to detection by CCD or detection by photo size.
		When used	When supporting individual users (as a means to remedy the glare from the document lighting lamp)
		Precautions for use	This item must not be normally used. A separate document size sensor (photosensor) is required for the document size to be detected.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: Detection by CCD 1: Detection by photosensor
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	When the item is set to '1', the document size is not detected while the copyboard cover is opened or closed, and so the document scanning lamp does not light.


COPIER > OPTION > BODY			
 The value which has been set takes effect after the main power switch has been turned OFF and back ON.			
Item	Level	Description	
OHP-PTH	2	Title	Setting of the execution interval of the ITB cleaning operation after passing transparency
		Purpose of use	When passing transparency, the surfactant on the surface of it attaches to the ITB, causing the decrease of transfer efficiency. Because of that, the attached surfactant is removed every patch image with the ITB cleaning blade after forming a patch image on the ITB. With this mode, set the execution interval of the ITB cleaning operation (number of print).
		When used	When transfer failure occurs while using transparency.
		Precautions for use	If setting the value too small, the productivity decreases.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 100 When the transfer failure occurs while using transparency, make the value smaller. (Shorten the cleaning execution interval.)
		Unit	Sheet
		Value established when RAM is cleared	15
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
UISW-DSP	2	Title	Display of screen selector switch on operation unit
		Purpose of use	To set whether to display the display selector switch on the standard (normal) screen and simplified screen (for self copiers).
		When used	When using a self copier after switching to the standard screen; this item is not normally used.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: The display selector switch is not displayed. 1: The display selector switch is displayed.
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
DFDST-L1	1	Title	Dirt detection level adjustment (between documents) during ADF use
		Purpose of use	To adjust the dirt detection level in the dirt detection correction control which is exercised between documents.
		When used	When black streaks caused by dirt have occurred, when users have filed complaints
		Precautions for use	Increase the value when dirt fails to be detected, resulting in black streaks. However, if the value is increased too much, even small-sized dirt of the kind which does not appear on the image will also be detected, and the cleaning instruction screen may appear frequently. Reduce the value if users complain because the cleaning instruction screen which appears when dirt is detected is displayed frequently. Conversely, if the value is reduced too much, black streaks may appear on the images.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 255 When the value is reduced, it becomes harder for dirt to be detected. When the value is increased, it becomes easier for even small-sized dirt to be detected. When '0' is set, the correction control function used when dirt is detected is set to OFF.
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	93
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	If dirt is present, black streaks will appear on the images. For this reason, when dirt is detected, image correction is executed to prevent the occurrence of black streaks.


COPIER > OPTION > BODY			
 The value which has been set takes effect after the main power switch has been turned OFF and back ON.			
Item	Level	Description	
DFDST-L2	1	Title	Dirt detection level adjustment (upon job completion) during ADF use
		Purpose of use	To adjust the dirt detection level in the dirty detection correction control which is exercised when jobs have been completed.
		When used	When black streaks caused by dirt have occurred, when users have filed complaints
		Precautions for use	Increase the value when dirt fails to be detected, resulting in black streaks. However, if the value is increased too much, even small-sized dirt of the kind which does not appear on the image will also be detected, and the cleaning instruction screen may appear frequently. Reduce the value if users complain because the cleaning instruction screen which appears when dirt is detected is displayed frequently. Conversely, if the value is reduced too much, black streaks may appear on the images.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 255 When the value is reduced, it becomes harder for dirt to be detected. When the value is increased, it becomes easier for even small-sized dirt to be detected. When '0' is set, the correction control function used when dirt is detected is canceled.
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	80
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	If dirt is present, black streaks will appear on the images. For this reason, when dirt is detected, image correction is executed to prevent the occurrence of black streaks.
NS-CMD5	2	Title	Restriction on use of CRAM-MD5 authentication system during SMTP authentication
		Purpose of use	To restrict the use of the CRAM-MD5 authentication system during SMTP authentication.
		When used	When the user asks for the item to be provided
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: Dependent upon the SMTP server 1: Not used
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	SMTP authentication has the specifications of SMTP (Simple Mail Transfer Protocol), a protocol used for mail transmission, plus a user authentication function. When mail is received, the user account and password are authenticated between the SMTP server and user, and mail transmission is permitted only when the account and password have been authenticated. CRAM-MD5 (Challenge Response Authentication Mechanism - Message Digest 5) is a user authentication system which provides encryption so that the password character string will not pass through the network in its original form.
NS-GSAPI	2	Title	Restriction on use of GSSAPI authentication system during SMTP authentication
		Purpose of use	To restrict the use of the GSSAPI authentication system during SMTP authentication.
		When used	When the user asks for the item to be provided
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: Dependent upon the SMTP server 1: Not used
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	SMTP authentication has the specifications of SMTP (Simple Mail Transfer Protocol), a protocol used for mail transmission, plus a user authentication function. When mail is received, the user account and password are authenticated between the SMTP server and user, and mail transmission is permitted only when the account and password have been authenticated. GSSAPI (Generic Security Services Application Programming Interface) is a user authentication system.

COPIER > OPTION > BODY			
 The value which has been set takes effect after the main power switch has been turned OFF and back ON.			
Item	Level	Description	
NS-NTLM	2	Title	Restriction on use of NTLM authentication system during SMTP authentication
		Purpose of use	To restrict the use of the NTLM authentication system during SMTP authentication.
		When used	When the user asks for the item to be provided
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: Dependent upon the SMTP server 1: Not used
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	SMTP authentication has the specifications of SMTP (Simple Mail Transfer Protocol), a protocol used for mail transmission, plus a user authentication function. When mail is received, the user account and password are authenticated between the SMTP server and user, and mail transmission is permitted only when the account and password have been authenticated. NTLM (NT LanMan) is a user authentication system which is shared and used by the Windows NT family.
NS-PLNWS	2	Title	Restriction on use of PLAIN, LOGIN authentication during SMTP authentication
		Purpose of use	This item is used to restrict the use of PLAIN and LOGIN authentication, which authenticate plaintext, during SMTP authentication in an environment where communication packets are encrypted.
		When used	When the user asks for the item to be provided
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: Dependent upon the SMTP server 1: Not used
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	SMTP authentication has the specifications of SMTP (Simple Mail Transfer Protocol), a protocol used for mail transmission, plus a user authentication function. When mail is received, the user account and password are authenticated between the SMTP server and user, and mail transmission is permitted only when the account and password have been authenticated.
NS-PLN	2	Title	Restriction on use of PLAIN, LOGIN authentication, which authenticate plaintext, during SMTP authentication
		Purpose of use	This item is used to restrict the use of PLAIN and LOGIN authentication, which authenticate plaintext, during SMTP authentication in an environment where communication packets are not encrypted.
		When used	When the user asks for the item to be provided
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: Dependent upon the SMTP server 1: Not used
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	SMTP authentication has the specifications of SMTP (Simple Mail Transfer Protocol), a protocol used for mail transmission, plus a user authentication function. When mail is received, the user account and password are authenticated between the SMTP server and user, and mail transmission is permitted only when the account and password have been authenticated.

COPIER > OPTION > BODY			
 The value which has been set takes effect after the main power switch has been turned OFF and back ON.			
Item	Level	Description	
NS-LGN	2	Title	Restriction on use of LOGIN authentication during SMTP authentication
		Purpose of use	To restrict the use of LOGIN authentication during SMTP authentication.
		When used	When the user asks for the item to be provided
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: Dependent upon the SMTP server 1: Not used
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	SMTP authentication has the specifications of SMTP (Simple Mail Transfer Protocol), a protocol used for mail transmission, plus a user authentication function. When mail is received, the user account and password are authenticated between the SMTP server and user, and mail transmission is permitted only when the account and password have been authenticated.
MEAP-PN	2	Title	Change in HTTP port number of MEAP application
		Purpose of use	To change the HTTP port number of the MEAP application.
		When used	When the user asks for the item to be provided
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 65535Å@
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	8000
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
TNR-DWN	2	Title	Applied toner amount reduction setting
		Purpose of use	To apply lower amount of toner than the standard amount. The kind of trouble caused by too much applied toner is avoided by reducing this amount.
		When used	When toner is sprayed, when paper becomes wrapped around the fixing roller
		Precautions for use	This mode is not used by normal servicing. This item must be used only in the conditions below when instructions have been issued by the Quality Support department. Set to '1' when the image becomes blurred or discolored due to sprayed toner because too much toner is applied or when paper becomes wrapped around the fixing roller. However, the downside of this setting is that the color tones will be less faithful.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: Standard applied toner amount 1: Lower applied toner amount for both 1-sided and 2-sided printing 2: Standard applied toner amount for 1-sided printing; lower applied toner amount for 2-sided printing
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > OPTION > BODY			
 The value which has been set takes effect after the main power switch has been turned OFF and back ON.			
Item	Level	Description	
SPECK-SW	2	Title	Selection of white plate dirt detection timing
		Purpose of use	To prevent image streaking from occurring when floating dirt sticks to the white plate after startup.
		When used	When image streaking due to dirt occurs frequently after startup
		Precautions for use	When '1' is set, FPOT (First Paper Out Time) is prolonged.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: Normal detection method 1: White plate dust is detected with each job.
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	White plate dust is normally detected when the power is turned on and when operation is restored from the sleep mode.
SVMD-ENT	2	Title	Switching of procedure for establishing service mode
		Purpose of use	To switch the procedure for establishing the service mode in order to prevent the leakage of information.
		When used	When required
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: [Initial settings/registration] -> Press [2] and [8] at same time -> [Initial settings/registration] 1: [Initial settings/registration] -> Press [4] and [9] at same time -> [Initial settings/registration]
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
ENVP-INT	1	Title	Setting of history retrieval cycle for temperature/humidity inside machine and fixing roller surface temperature
		Purpose of use	To set the cycle for retrieving (COPIER > DISPLAY > ENVRNT) the history of the temperature/humidity inside the machine and the fixing roller surface temperature.
		When used	When analyzing trouble
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 480
		Unit	1 minute
		Value established when RAM is cleared	60
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	COPIER > DISPLAY > ENVRNT
		Additional description and notes	-


COPIER > OPTION > BODY			
 The value which has been set takes effect after the main power switch has been turned OFF and back ON.			
Item	Level	Description	
SSH-SW	2	Title	ON/OFF setting of SSH server function
		Purpose of use	To set the SSH server function ON and OFF.
		When used	When required (used in Japanese machines only; not used in overseas machines)
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0:OFF 1:ON
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	SSH = Secure Shell This program is for logging in to other computers over a network, executing commands for machines in remote locations and for moving files to other machines. Since the data flowing through the network is encrypted, series of operations can be performed safely even over the Internet.		
RMT-LGIN	2	Title	ON/OFF setting of remote login operation to SSH server
		Purpose of use	To select whether to allow remote login to the debug console of the SSH server from a remote host (SSH client: DA (digital accessory)).
		When used	When required (used in Japanese machines only; not used in overseas machines)
		Precautions for use	Valid only when the COPIER > OPTION > BODY > SSH-SW (level 2) setting is '1' (ON)
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: Remote login to the SSH server is not allowed. 1: Remote login to the SSH server is allowed.
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	COPIER > OPTION > BODY > SSH-SW (level 2)
Additional description and notes	-		
RE-PKEY	2	Title	ON/OFF setting of SSH server key regeneration
		Purpose of use	To set the regeneration of the server key ON and OFF.
		When used	When required (used in Japanese machines only; not used in overseas machines)
		Precautions for use	-Valid only when the COPIER > OPTION > BODY > SSH-SW (level 2) setting is '1' (ON) - When '1' (regenerate) is set, host machine startup may take about 3 to 4 minutes longer than usual. See the Additional description and notes.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: The SSH server pair key is not regenerated at host machine startup. 1: The SSH server pair key is regenerated at host machine startup.
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	COPIER > OPTION > BODY > SSH-SW (level 2)
Additional description and notes	When '1' (regenerate) is set, the SSH server host regenerates the pair key (secret key and public key) when the power is set to OFF and back to ON, and it outputs the key pair to the key file and saves it on the hard drive. It may take about 3 to 4 minutes longer than usual at host machine startup to execute this processing.		
U-NAME	2	For future expansion (setting must not be changed)	
U-PASWD	2	For future expansion (setting must not be changed)	


COPIER > OPTION > BODY			
 The value which has been set takes effect after the main power switch has been turned OFF and back ON.			
Item	Level	Description	
CD-IDL-T	1	Title	Idle rotation time adjustment of developing assembly in all color (Y/M/C/Bk) at the first power on.
		Purpose of use	In high- humidity environment, idle rotation control of the developing assembly may be executed at the warm-up rotation. Set the execution time for this operation.
		When used	When the machine is installed in a high-humidity environment
		Precautions for use	When the value is increased (toward +), the density fluctuations starting from early in the morning are reduced, but the first warm-up rotation time in the morning will increase. When the value is reduced (toward -), the first warm-up rotation time in the morning is reduced, but the density fluctuations starting early in the morning will worsen slightly.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	-3 to +6 -3 to -1: 0sec 0: 15sec +1: 30sec +2: 45sec +3: 60sec +4: 75sec +5: 90sec +6: 105sec Increase the value when the density fluctuations starting early in the morning are to be reduced. However, the first warm-up rotation time in the morning will increase. Reduce the value when the first warm-up rotation time in the morning is to be shortened. However, the density fluctuations starting early in the morning will worsen slightly.
		Unit	15 seconds (1 unit)
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it. 2) Input the setting, use the +/- keys to switch between plus and minus, and press the OK key. 3) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	-		


18.6.1.3 COPIER > OPTION > BODY (3/5)


imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000


T-18-65


COPIER > OPTION > BODY			
 The value which has been set takes effect after the main power switch has been turned OFF and back ON.			
Item	Level	Description	
FXWRNLVL	2	Not used	
FXERRLVL	2	Not used	
DA-PORT	2	Title	Port setting when DA is installed
		Purpose of use	To set the port for communication with the DA (Digital Accessory).
		When used	When DA is installed; used in Japanese machines only; not used in overseas machines
		Precautions for use	When this item COPIER > OPTION > BODY > DA-CNCT is set to "1," the following items are also set to ON. COPIER > OPTION > BODY > STS-PORT > CMD-PORT > SSH-SW
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: Closed 1: Open (when DA is installed)
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	-		


COPIER > OPTION > BODY			
 The value which has been set takes effect after the main power switch has been turned OFF and back ON.			
Item	Level	Description	
DA-CNCT	2	Title	WPGW connection setting
		Purpose of use	To set the WPGW connection.
		When used	Used in Japanese machines only; not used in overseas machines
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0:OFF 1:ON
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	WPGW : Workplace Gateway
FXMSG-SW	2	Not used	
CHNG-ST5	2	Title	Setting of T.O.T. status connection port
		Purpose of use	To set the number of the port used for the status connection in T.O.T.
		When used	When using service NAVI
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	1 to 65535
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	20010
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
CHNG-CMD	2	Title	Setting of T.O.T. command connection port
		Purpose of use	To set the number of the port used for the command connection in T.O.T.
		When used	When using service NAVI
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	1 to 65535
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	20000
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
MEAP-DSP	2	Title	Setting to prohibit screen display switching from MEAP screen to standard screen
		Purpose of use	To prohibit the switching of the screen display from the MEAP screen to the standard screen (COPY/SEND/BOX screen, etc.).
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: Switching enabled (the display can transfer to the standard screen) 1: Switching disabled (the display cannot transfer to the standard screen)
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Even when '1' is set, the display will transfer to the standard screen when an error, jam or alarm has occurred.


COPIER > OPTION > BODY			
 The value which has been set takes effect after the main power switch has been turned OFF and back ON.			
Item	Level	Description	
ANIM-SW	2	Title	Setting to prohibit switching of display to error or jam screen while the MEAP application is running
		Purpose of use	To prohibit the switching of the display to the error/jam screen while the MEAP application is running.
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: Switching enabled (the warning screen is displayed) 1: Switching disabled (the warning screen is not displayed)
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	Setting COPIER > OPTION > BODY > MEAP-DSP to '1' alone will not prevent the transfer of the display to the standard screen. It will transfer in order to display a warning when an error, jam or alarm has occurred. Only when this item is set to '1' and then an error, jam or alarm has occurred: * Screen transfer to the standard screen will be prohibited. * A warning display urging the user to contact the service engineer in charge appears on the MEAP screen.		
CNTR-DSP	1	Title	Switching of host machine display for each print server
		Purpose of use	To switch the display according to the type of print server (imagePRESS server) when 'Printer' has been selected on the expansion screen.
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	Valid only when COPIER > OPTION > BODY > INT-FACE > IMG-CONT has been set to '3'.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: The icon is displayed on the operation unit. 1: A message prompting the user to reference the print server is displayed on the operation unit.
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	COPIER > OPTION > INT-FACE > IMG-CONT
Additional description and notes	-		
BASE-SW	1	Title	Switching from MEAP-Full model to Base model
		Purpose of use	To switch from the MEAP-Full model to the Base model.
		When used	When trouble caused by the MEAP application has occurred
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: OFF (Base model) 1: ON (Full model) Set to '0' when restricting to the operation of the MEAP application for the purposes of trouble analysis.
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	1
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	The setting of this item can be changed only from '1' to '0'.		
HDD-TMP	2	Not used	
HDD-TIM	2	Not used	
HDD-SW	2	Not used	


COPIER > OPTION > BODY			
 The value which has been set takes effect after the main power switch has been turned OFF and back ON.			
Item	Level	Description	
MEAP-SSL	2	Title	Setting of HTTPS port for MEAP
		Purpose of use	To set the port of the HTTPS server when SSL is used by HTTP of MEAP.
		When used	When required
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 65535
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	8443
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	-		
SC-L-CNT	1	Title	Setting of scan counter threshold for identifying large sheets
		Purpose of use	To set the scan counter threshold for identifying large sheets.
		When used	When required
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: Sheets exceeding B4 are counted as large size sheets (B4 and below sheets counted as small size sheets). 1: Sheets exceeding LTR are counted as large size sheets (LTR and below sheets counted as small size sheets). The actual scan counter threshold is determined as follows by combining this setting with the COPIER > OPTION > USER > B4-L-CNT setting: <When SC-L-CNT, B4-L-CNT = (0, 0)> Sheets exceeding B4 are counted as large size sheets (B4 and below sheets counted as small size sheets). <When SC-L-CNT, B4-L-CNT = (0, 1)> B4 sheets and up are counted as large size sheets (sheets under B4 are counted as small size sheets) <When SC-L-CNT, B4-L-CNT = (1, 0) or (1, 1)> Sheets exceeding LTR are counted as large size sheets (LTR and below sheets counted as small size sheets).
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	COPIER>OPTION>USER>B4-L-CNT
Additional description and notes	-		
MIX-FLG	2	Title	Selection of image zone flag (with composite images)
		Purpose of use	Image processing based on the image zone flag set in this mode is executed when the main controller could not compress the images created as a result of combination at the specified compression ratio.
		When used	When image processing is faulty
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: For PDL text mode The color of the black created by the 4 colors is used for the black lettering. The errors are diffused in these images. The color tones are cleaner than '2'. 1: For PDL photo mode The color of the black created by the 4 colors is used for the black lettering. The images are screen-processed. 2: For SCAN text mode The color of Bk only is used for the black lettering. The errors are diffused in these images. The color tones in the photo areas may be less faithful compared with '0'. 3: For PDL text mode The color of Bk only is used for the black lettering. The images are screen-processed.
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	-		


COPIER > OPTION > BODY			
 The value which has been set takes effect after the main power switch has been turned OFF and back ON.			
Item	Level	Description	
REPORT-Z	1	Title	Control of function for adding attribute flag when printing reports
		Purpose of use	To select the attribute flag to be added when reports are printed.
		When used	When the user asks for the image quality to be improved
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: For PDL text mode The color of the black created by the 4 colors is used for the black lettering. The errors are diffused in these images. The color tones are cleaner than '2'. 1: For PDL photo mode The color of the black created by the 4 colors is used for the black lettering. The images are screen-processed. 2: For SCAN text mode The color of Bk only is used for the black lettering. The errors are diffused in these images. The color tones in the photo areas may be less faithful compared with '0'. 3: For PDL text mode The color of Bk only is used for the black lettering. The images are screen-processed.
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	-		
IFXEML-Z	1	Title	Control of function for adding attribute flag when receiving and printing color iFAX and email
		Purpose of use	To select the attribute flag to be added when color iFAX and email are received and printed.
		When used	When the user asks for the image quality to be improved
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: For PDL text mode The color of the black created by the 4 colors is used for the black lettering. The errors are diffused in these images. The color tones are cleaner than '2'. 1: For PDL photo mode The color of the black created by the 4 colors is used for the black lettering. The images are screen-processed. 2: For SCAN text mode The color of Bk only is used for the black lettering. The errors are diffused in these images. The color tones in the photo areas may be less faithful compared with '0'. 3: For PDL text mode The color of Bk only is used for the black lettering. The images are screen-processed.
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	-		

COPIER > OPTION > BODY				
 The value which has been set takes effect after the main power switch has been turned OFF and back ON.				
Item	Level	Description		
BMLNKS-Z	1	Title	Control of function for adding attribute flag when receiving and printing BMLinkS	
		Purpose of use	To select the attribute flag to be added when BMLinkS is received and printed.	
		When used	When the user asks for the image quality to be improved	
		Precautions for use	-	
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: For PDL text mode The color of the black created by the 4 colors is used for the black lettering. The errors are diffused in these images. The color tones are cleaner than '2'. 1: For PDL photo mode The color of the black created by the 4 colors is used for the black lettering. The images are screen-processed. 2: For SCAN text mode The color of Bk only is used for the black lettering. The errors are diffused in these images. The color tones in the photo areas may be less faithful compared with '0'. 3: For PDL text mode The color of Bk only is used for the black lettering. The images are screen-processed.	
		Unit	-	
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0	
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-	
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.	
		Related service modes	-	
		Additional description and notes	BMLinkS (Business Machine Linkage Service) Integrated network OA equipment interface	
KSIZE-SW	2	Title	Switch supporting Chinese paper (K sizes)	
		Purpose of use	To detect and display Chinese paper (K sizes: K8, K16).	
		When used	When K size paper is used	
		Precautions for use	Valid only when COPIER > OPTION > BODY > MODEL-SZ has been set to '0' (AB type).	
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: K size paper is not supported. 1: K size paper is supported.	
		Unit	-	
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0	
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-	
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.	
		Related service modes	COPIER > OPTION > BODY > MODEL-SZ	
		Additional description and notes	8K paper: 270 x 390 mm; 16K paper: 270 x 195 mm	
LPD-PORT	2	Title	LPD port number setting	
		Purpose of use	To set the LPD port number.	
		When used	When the user asks for the item to be provided	
		Precautions for use	-	
		Settings and adjustment ranges	1 to 65535	
		Unit	-	
		Value established when RAM is cleared	515	
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-	
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.	
		Related service modes	-	
		Additional description and notes	When printing over a network, the LPD port serves as the network port for TCP/IP communication.	

COPIER > OPTION > BODY			
 The value which has been set takes effect after the main power switch has been turned OFF and back ON.			
Item	Level	Description	
CNT-TMG	1	Title	Selection of count-up specification when using delivery system option
		Purpose of use	This item is used to select the timing of the charge count-up when the delivery option is connected.
		When used	When required
		Precautions for use	Valid only when the finisher is connected
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: Counts up at the time of delivery from the delivery system option. 1: Counts up at the time of delivery from the host machine.
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes			
ORG-A4R	2	Title	Setting of special paper size (A4R) which cannot be recognized when using ADF
		Purpose of use	In machines destined for Inch/AB type manufacturers, setting a special paper size which cannot be recognized when documents are fed from the ADF makes it possible for images to be formed properly.
		When used	When using documents in a special paper size which cannot be recognized by the ADF
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: A4R 1: FOLIO-R
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	When an A4R document is detected by the ADF, it is converted to the document size set using this item, and the images are formed in the post-conversion document size.		
ORG-FLSC	2	Title	Setting of special paper size (foolscap-R) which cannot be recognized when using ADF(FOOLSCAP-R)
		Purpose of use	In machines destined for Inch/AB type manufacturers, setting a special paper size which cannot be recognized when documents are fed from the ADF makes it possible for images to be formed properly.
		When used	When using documents in a special paper size which cannot be recognized by the ADF
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: Foolscap-R 1: Oficio-R 2: Folio-R 3: Foolscap-R, Australia 4: Oficio-R, Ecuador 5: Oficio-R, Argentina 6: Legal-R, Argentina 7: Legal-R, government 8: Oficio-R, Mexico
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	When a foolscap size document is detected by the ADF, it is converted to the document size set using this item, and the images are formed in the post-conversion document size.		

COPIER > OPTION > BODY			
 The value which has been set takes effect after the main power switch has been turned OFF and back ON.			
Item	Level	Description	
PDF-RDCT	2	Title	Switch to select whether to reduce and send data when receiving and transferring images (PDF transmission)
		Purpose of use	When creating PDF files of images which have been received by iFAX and sending them as email and files, this item is used to select whether to reduce the data before sending it
		When used	When the user asks for the item to be provided
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: Images are not reduced. 1: Images are reduced.
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	-		
REDU-CNT	2	Title	Density adjustment mode switching control
		Purpose of use	To control whether to perform the density adjustment that factors in the restriction on the applying amount.
		When used	When the user asks for the item to be provided; when the color adjustment values are to be faithfully reflected in the images
		Precautions for use	When '1' is set, the color adjustment values are faithfully reflected in the images, but the toner may be sprayed in the transfer and fixing areas and the paper may wrap around the fixing area.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: A mode (when performing color adjustments (color balance, fine density adjustments), the applied toner amount is restricted to the specified amount) 1: B mode (when performing color adjustments (color balance, fine density adjustments), the applied toner amount is not restricted)
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	1
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	This function may be used in the user mode. By setting COPIER > OPTION > BODY > IMGC-ADJ to '1', the following item is displayed within the user mode, this function becomes usable. System control settings > device control settings > density adjustment mode		
REBOOTSW	2	Title	Reboot switch when E240 error has occurred
		Purpose of use	When the E240 error (communication error between the main controller and DC controller) has occurred, the drive system may still continue operating. Consequently, the machine is designed to reboot automatically. When it is rebooted, however, the spooled print jobs will be cleared. This mode is used to prevent this from happening.
		When used	For supporting individual users
		Precautions for use	- This function is not normally used. - When the function is used because the user has asked for it to be provided, the user must be given a thorough explanation (that the drive system may continue operating when the E240 error has occurred).
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: Automatic rebooting when the E240 error has occurred 1: No automatic rebooting when the E240 error has occurred
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	-		


COPIER > OPTION > BODY			
 The value which has been set takes effect after the main power switch has been turned OFF and back ON.			
Item	Level	Description	
VP-ART	2	Title	Line art process change switch
		Purpose of use	To change the outlining process of line art in scalable PDF files.
		When used	When the user asks for the item to be provided
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 99
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	1
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
VP-TXT	2	Title	Text vectorizing process change switch
		Purpose of use	To change the vectorizing process of text in scalable PDF files.
		When used	When the user asks for the item to be provided
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 99
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	1
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
UI-PRINT	2	Title	Print job screen display restriction
		Purpose of use	To select whether to display the print job screen.
		When used	When the user asks for the item to be provided
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: The print job screen is not displayed. 1: The print job screen is displayed.
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	1
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
WUEV-SW	2	Title	Sleep notice selector switch
		Purpose of use	To select whether to give sleep notice to the applications (such as imageWARE) on the network when the host machine has transferred to the sleep mode or when its operation has been restored from the sleep mode.
		When used	When required
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: Sleep notice is given. 1: No sleep notice is given.
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-


COPIER > OPTION > BODY			
 The value which has been set takes effect after the main power switch has been turned OFF and back ON.			
Item	Level	Description	
WUEV-INT	2	Title	Sleep notice interval setting
		Purpose of use	To set the sleep notice interval at which to give sleep notice.
		When used	When required
		Precautions for use	Valid only when COPIER > OPTION > BODY > WUEV-SW is "0"
		Settings and adjustment ranges	60 to 65535
		Unit	Seconds
		Value established when RAM is cleared	600
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	-		


18.6.1.4 COPIER > OPTION > BODY (4/5)


imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000


T-18-66


COPIER > OPTION > BODY			
 The value which has been set takes effect after the main power switch has been turned OFF and back ON.			
Item	Level	Description	
WUEV-POT	2	Title	Sleep notice destination port number setting
		Purpose of use	To set the port number on the sleep notice destination PC when giving sleep notice.
		When used	When required
		Precautions for use	Valid only when COPIER > OPTION > BODY > WUEV-SW is "0"
		Settings and adjustment ranges	1 to 65535
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	11427
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	-		
WUEV-RTR	2	Title	Sleep notice range setting
		Purpose of use	To set the maximum number of routers to the sleep notice destinations through which the sleep notice is to be given.
		When used	When required
		Precautions for use	Valid only when COPIER > OPTION > BODY > WUEV-SW is "0"
		Settings and adjustment ranges	1 to 254
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	3
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	-		


COPIER > OPTION > BODY			
 The value which has been set takes effect after the main power switch has been turned OFF and back ON.			
Item	Level	Description	
SJB-UNW	2	Title	Switch for selecting number of reserved print jobs among secure print jobs
		Purpose of use	To select the upper limit for the number of reserved print jobs among the secure print jobs
		When used	When the user asks for the item to be provided
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: 50 jobs 1: 90 jobs
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	-		
IMGC-ADJ	1	Title	Switch for selecting display of items related to image adjustments (in user mode)
		Purpose of use	To provide the means for performing detailed image adjustments to the users
		When used	When required
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: Image adjustment-related items are not displayed. 1: Image adjustment-related items are displayed. When '1' is set, the items related to image adjustments are displayed within the items for the sheet control settings accessed from system controls settings > device control settings.
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	-		
UI-RSCAN	2	Title	Remote scan screen display restriction
		Purpose of use	To select whether to display the remote scan screen.
		When used	When the user asks for the item to be provided
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: Remote scan screen is not displayed. 1: Remote scan screen is displayed.
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	1
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	-		
UI-EPRNT	2	Title	Expanded print screen display restriction
		Purpose of use	To select whether to display the expanded print screen (print screen for the print server).
		When used	When the user asks for the item to be provided
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: Expanded print screen is not displayed. 1: Expanded print screen is displayed.
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	1
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	-		


COPIER > OPTION > BODY			
 The value which has been set takes effect after the main power switch has been turned OFF and back ON.			
Item	Level	Description	
UI-WEB	2	Title	Web browser screen display restriction
		Purpose of use	To select whether to display the web browser screen.
		When used	When the user asks for the item to be provided
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: The web browser screen is not displayed. 1: The web browser screen is displayed.
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	1
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
UI-HOLD	2	Title	Jobs-on-hold screen display restriction
		Purpose of use	To select whether to display the jobs-on-hold screen.
		When used	When the user asks for the item to be provided
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: Jobs-on-hold screen is not displayed. 1: Jobs-on-hold screen is displayed.
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	1
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
WEBV-SW	2	Title	Switch for prohibiting use of WEBDAV function
		Purpose of use	To prohibit the use of the WEBDAV function.
		When used	This item is used as a means to reduce the amount of the used memory in the host machine when the WEBDAV function is not used.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: Use of the WEBDAV function is allowed. 1: Use of the WEBDAV function is prohibited. When 1" is set, the following items related to the WEBDAV function will not be displayed in the user mode: - Destination table specifications setting > destination registration > files > protocol > WEBDAV - Transmission specifications setting > "Use chunk division transmission for WEBDAV transmission"
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	The WEBDAV function is provided in the host machine as a standard accessory.


COPIER > OPTION > BODY			
 The value which has been set takes effect after the main power switch has been turned OFF and back ON.			
Item	Level	Description	
OPEMANT	2	Title	Operator maintenance mode switch
		Purpose of use	To select whether to activate the operator maintenance mode.
		When used	When operator maintenance is commenced
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: Not activated 1: Activated When '1' is set, the 'Operator maintenance mode' item is displayed on the user mode screen.
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	-		
PASCL-TY	2	Title	Setting of paper type used during automatic gradation correction
		Purpose of use	This item is used when performing automatic gradation correction using paper other than the ones recommended by the manufacturer to which the copier is destined.
		When used	See above.
		Precautions for use	The setting of this item must not normally be changed.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	1: CLC-SK 80 gsm paper (not for USA or EUR; mainly for Japan) 2: Hammermill 105 gsm paper (for USA) 3: NOIJIDORA??? 100 gsm paper (for EU)
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	Differs depending on the manufacturer to which the copier is destined.
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	Automatic gradation correction can be used only for the above types of paper, and only for the A3 or LGR size.		
CARD-RNG	2	Title	Setting of number of card departments (number of cards) usable with card reader
		Purpose of use	To set the number of card departments (number of cards) which can be used when the card reader is used.
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	1 to 1000
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	1000
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	-		

COPIER > OPTION > BODY			
 The value which has been set takes effect after the main power switch has been turned OFF and back ON.			
Item	Level	Description	
WUEN-LIV	2	Title	Setting of start time after sleep notice from network
		Purpose of use	To set the time when the machine is started in the sleep mode from the network without being accompanied by the introduction of any jobs, until the host machine next transfers to the sleep mode
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	10 to 600
		Unit	Seconds
		Value established when RAM is cleared	15
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	-		
COMP-PRT	2	Title	Switching of image processing memory allocation control during job contention
		Purpose of use	When two or more registered composite print jobs (involving page printing, number of copies printing, stamping, date printing, binding and/or pattern printing) are to be performed, depending on the configuration of the options and document size, priority is given to printing at the expense of image processing when allocating the memory. For this reason, there may not be sufficient memory for the scan/send and PDL input image processing, and the jobs concerned will be held until the composite printing is completed. The item is used, in such cases of job contention, to switch the method of allocating the memory for image processing from print priority to exercising control where the memory is allocated equally to all the jobs.
		When used	When the user asks for the item to be provided
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: Print priority 1: Memory allocated equally to all jobs
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	-		
SHT-DCSW	2	Title	Skipping of cool-off processing when shutdown is executed
		Purpose of use	When shutdown (in the hard disk protection mode) is executed, up to 60 minutes are required for the DC controller completion process. This item is used when the time taken until the completion of shutdown is to be reduced.
		When used	When the user asks for the item to be provided
		Precautions for use	When "1" is set, image flow may occur when printing immediately after shutdown.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: The completion of DC controller fan control is awaited, after which shutdown is completed. 1: Shutdown is completed without waiting for DC controller fan control to be completed.
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	When shutdown is to be executed, it can also be forcibly completed by hand (in which case, the same operation is conducted as in this mode).		

COPIER > OPTION > BODY			
 The value which has been set takes effect after the main power switch has been turned OFF and back ON.			
Item	Level	Description	
ARCDT-SW	1	Title	ARCDAT control ON/OFF
		Purpose of use	To set ARCDAT control to ON or OFF.
		When used	When the color tones fluctuate significantly between sheets
		Precautions for use	This item must not be normally used. It may be set to '1' (OFF) only when something is wrong with the ARCDAT control value and the problem is not rectified by replacing the developer or by cleaning or replacing the drum patch sensor. After use, the setting must be returned to '0' (ON).
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: ON (ARCDAT results are reflected in the LUT) 1: OFF (ARCDAT results are not reflected in the LUT)
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	ARCDAT: Automatic and Reciprocal Color Density Adjustment Technology LUT: Look Up Table		
ADJ-VPP	2	Title	Development AC bias Vpp adjustment
		Purpose of use	To adjust the Vpp of the development AC bias.
		When used	When faulty images (with ring marks or all white areas) have occurred
		Precautions for use	If decreasing the value in the minus direction too much, density may get lower.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	-4 to 2 If ring mark occurs, decrease the value in the minus direction. If blank area occurs, increase the value in the plus direction.
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-1
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it 2) Press the +/- keys to display the target setting, and press the OK key. 3) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON. 4) Execute auto gradation adjustment. (full correction)
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	-		
AST-SEL	2	Title	Change in advanced smoothing adjustment range
		Purpose of use	To make an adjustment when the effects of advanced smoothing are not obtained.
		When used	When faulty images (with jaggies or moire) have occurred
		Precautions for use	
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 3 Set this mode to '3' when the smoothing effect obtained is excessive when 'high' is set in the advanced smoothing UI. Set this mode to '0' when the smoothing effect is not obtained even when 'low' is set in the advanced smoothing UI.
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	2
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	The machine uses AST (Advanced Smoothing Technology).		


COPIER > OPTION > BODY			
 The value which has been set takes effect after the main power switch has been turned OFF and back ON.			
Item	Level	Description	
REGM-SEL	2	Title	Change in fine-line density correction adjustment range
		Purpose of use	To change the fine-line density correction adjustment range.
		When used	When the lines or text adjusted by fine-line density correction is too dark or too light during 1200 dpi printing
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 4 Increase the value (toward +) if the lines or text is too dark even with the fine-line density correction UI set at '+2'. Reduce the value (toward -) if the lines or text is too light even with the fine-line density correction UI set at '-2'.
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	2
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
VCONT-UP	2	Title	Trailing edge fading or graininess improvement mode
		Purpose of use	This item is used to improve the fading on the trailing edges or the grainy spots left behind.
		When used	When fading on the trailing edges (where the trailing edges have been scraped) or grainy white spots have appeared
		Precautions for use	* After '1' has been set, automatic gradation correction (full correction) must be executed. * The jaggies and ring marks may worsen slightly. * The edge enhancement effect may be exaggerated.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: OFF 1: ON When fading has occurred on the trailing edges or grainy white spots have appeared, an improvement can be expected by setting this item to '1'. By increasing the development contrast, the maximum density is raised, and by adjusting the maximum density using the LUT (look-up table), the quality of the images developed is improved.
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	This function can be used even in the user mode. By setting COPIER > OPTION > BODY > IMGCC-ADJ to '1', the following item is displayed within the user mode, this function becomes usable. System control settings > device control settings > trailing edge fading/graininess correction
ADJ-BLNK	2	Title	White gap alleviation mode
		Purpose of use	This item is used to alleviate the white gap problem (where the half-tone side near the boundary of images with dark headers immediately following half tones turns white resembling a thin line). It adjusts the blank pulse length of the development AC bias.
		When used	When white gaps have occurred
		Precautions for use	After "1" has been set, automatic gradation correction (full correction) must be executed.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	1 to 4 When white gaps have occurred, set to '2' or '1'. When '4' is set, an improvement in the development density can be expected.
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	3
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	This function can be used even in the user mode. By setting COPIER > OPTION > BODY > IMGCC-ADJ to '1', the following item is displayed within the user mode, this function becomes usable. System control settings > device control settings > white gap correction


COPIER > OPTION > BODY			
 The value which has been set takes effect after the main power switch has been turned OFF and back ON.			
Item	Level	Description	
2TR-RVON	2	Title	Trailing edge all white area alleviation mode
		Purpose of use	This item is used to alleviate the problem with all white areas on the trailing edges of the second side (trailing edge white spot) when they have occurred during printing on thick sheets or on both sides of sheets in normal-temperature and low-humidity (N/L) conditions. It sets the sheet trailing edge low bias to ON.
		When used	See above.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0:OFF 1:ON Set to '1' when all white areas have occurred on the trailing edges of the second side (trailing edge white spot) during printing on thick sheets or on both sides of sheets.
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	This function can be used even in the user mode. By setting COPIER > OPTION > BODY > IMG-ADJ to '1', the following item is displayed within the user mode, this function becomes usable. System control settings > device control settings > trailing edge all white area correction
OPLOG-SW	2	Title	Switching of error, jam or alarm log display (operator maintenance mode)
		Purpose of use	To select whether to display the error logs, jam logs or alarm-2 logs in the operator maintenance mode.
		When used	When the user asks for the item to be provided
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: The logs are not displayed. 1: The logs are displayed.
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
OP-ALMT	2	Title	Switching of warning display timing (operator maintenance mode)
		Purpose of use	To select the timing at which the 'replace parts' or 'clean counter' warnings are displayed in the operator maintenance mode.
		When used	When the user asks for the item to be provided; when warnings are to be displayed before the parts have reached the end of their specified service life or the number of sheets has reached the number which signals that cleaning is required.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: The warnings are displayed when 100% is reached. 1: The warnings are displayed when 90% and 100% are reached.
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > OPTION > BODY			
 The value which has been set takes effect after the main power switch has been turned OFF and back ON.			
Item	Level	Description	
SJOB-CL	1	Title	Switch for enabling scan job cancellation by logout
		Purpose of use	To enable scan jobs to be canceled upon completion of the scanning operation if logout is initiated.
		When used	When the user asks for the item to be provided
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: Canceling is disabled. 1: Canceling is enabled.
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Scan jobs cannot be canceled while scanning is underway even when logout is initiated.
DHCP-12	2	Title	Selecting whether to enable DHCP option 12 requests
		Purpose of use	Host name (option 12) inquiries using option 55 of DHCP are enabled by this item. * DHCP (Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol)
		When used	When the user asks for the item to be provided; this item is used to prevent the inclusion of option 12 and option 81 in the DHCP packets in an environment where the packets passing over the network are monitored
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0:OFF 1:ON
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	1
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
DHCP-81	2	Title	Selecting whether to enable DHCP option 81 requests
		Purpose of use	The dynamic changes in the IP addresses made by option 81 of DHCP are enabled by this item.
		When used	When the user asks for the item to be provided; this item is used to prevent the inclusion of option 12 and option 81 in the DHCP packets in an environment where the packets passing over the network are monitored
		Precautions for use	When '1' is set and the dynamic DNS setting of the user mode is ON, the dynamic changes in the IP addresses made by option 81 of DHCP take effect.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0:OFF 1:ON
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	1
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-


18.6.1.5 COPIER > OPTION > BODY (5/5)

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

COPIER > OPTION > BODY			
 The value which has been set takes effect after the main power switch has been turned OFF and back ON.			
Item	Level	Description	
PT3-INEX	2	Title	Enable switch for paper brand Type 3 import/export
		Purpose of use	To enable the paper brand Type 3 information to be handled by the following functions: - Import/export using remote UI - Distribution of equipment information - Import/export from iWEMC
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: Not enabled 1: Enabled
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	-		
IFX-CHIG	1	Title	Setting of operation by number of characters in iFAX incoming mail text
		Purpose of use	To ensure that mail text during iFAX reception is not printed or transmitted when it has fewer characters than the number set.
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	Mail text consisting solely of the carriage return codes is sometimes sent by another machine, and the machine will print a blank sheet in a case like this. The printing of blank sheets can be eliminated when a value of '2' or so is set for this item. However, users should be urged to exercise caution since mail text containing fewer the number of characters than the number set will no longer be printed.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 999 0: No mail text is ignored.
		Unit	Number of characters
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	* Concerning operation when a setting other than '0' is used If the incoming mail is determined to have no main text and no attached TIFF files are present, one page bearing only headers and footers will be printed and transmitted. * Chinese characters ('kanji') are calculated at the rate of 2 bytes per character, and the carriage return codes and other control codes are included in the number of characters.		
USB-RCNT	2	Title	Automatic connection setting during USB device disconnection
		Purpose of use	To set whether to initiate automatic connection when USB devices are disconnected.
		When used	When the user asks for the item to be provided
		Precautions for use	Care is required if a USB hub is provided and '1' is set since all the devices will be re-connected when one of them has been disconnected.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: No automatic connection 1: Automatic connection In the case of the '0' setting, a USB device cannot be used once it is been removed even after it has been re-installed. To re-connect the device, the power must be set to OFF and then back ON. When '1' is set, all the USB devices can be re-connected even when one device has been removed and re-installed.
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	-		


COPIER > OPTION > BODY			
 The value which has been set takes effect after the main power switch has been turned OFF and back ON.			
Item	Level	Description	
UNLMTBND	1	Title	Support switch for print jobs exceeding 400 binders
		Purpose of use	To select whether to support print jobs for which the number of binders exceeds 400. In accordance with the job attributes, the print jobs are performed while making repeated use of the binders.
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: Whether to provide support is automatically set depending on the connection status of the print server. When the print server is not connected: Not supported When the print server is connected: Supported 1: Not supported Users who do not wish to print jobs containing large numbers of binders (*) should use the '1' setting.
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	*: These are jobs that use staples or other finishing to a great extent in a single job. This does not apply to jobs which feature heavy finishing involving the output of multiple numbers of copies.		
MIBCOUNT	2	Title	Charge counter MIB switch
		Purpose of use	To change the range of the charge counter MIB scope.
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: Show all charge counter MIBs. 1: Show all charge counter MIBs displayed on the LUI. 2: Show no charge counter MIBs.
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	-		
DPTN-SW	1	Title	Restriction on dither pattern selection options (user mode)
		Purpose of use	To set whether to include 'high definition' as a selection option for the dither patterns which can be selected using 'gradation', 'resolution' and 'scanner image reproduction' for the dither pattern settings accessed by system control settings > device control settings.
		When used	When the user asks for the item to be provided, when the dither pattern for the high-definition mode have been requested
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: 'High definition' is not included as a selection option. 1: 'High definition' is included as a selection option.
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	The high-definition mode cannot be set individually for 'gradation', 'resolution' and 'scanner image reproduction'.		

COPIER > OPTION > BODY

 The value which has been set takes effect after the main power switch has been turned OFF and back ON.

Item	Level	Description	
FX1-SPD	1	Title	Fine adjustment of first fixing roller speed
		Purpose of use	To finely adjust the first fixing roller drive speed.
		When used	When trouble (such as paper creasing or jams) caused by the fixing roller speed have occurred
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	-3 to +3
		Unit	0.5%
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it. 2) Input the setting, select the sign (+ or -) using the +/- keys, and press the OK key. 3) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
FX2-SPD	1	Title	Fine adjustment of second fixing roller speed
		Purpose of use	To finely adjust the second roller drive speed.
		When used	When trouble (such as paper creasing or jams) caused by the fixing roller speed have occurred
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	-3 to +3
		Unit	0.5%
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it. 2) Input the setting, select the sign (+ or -) using the +/- keys, and press the OK key. 3) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
FX1-TMH	1	Title	Adjustment of temperature of first fixing assembly temperature control (temperature control level H)
		Purpose of use	To set the offset value in temperature control table of the first fixing assembly; to adjust the temperature control temperature of the fixing roller and externally heated roller. The setting takes effect for the temperature control table for temperature control level H.
		When used	Not to be used with the normal service. Use when a user requests the improvement for the minor wrinkle and uneven gloss.
		Precautions for use	The parts consumption and the poor nip pressure may cause wrinkle and uneven gloss. In such a case, execute the appropriate measure (e.g., replacing the parts) at first.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 3
		Unit	-5deg C
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	COPIER>DISPLAY>FIXING>FX-TM-LV
		Additional description and notes	The threshold value used to declare high-temperature errors remains unchanged even when the temperature control temperature has been offset in this mode.

COPIER > OPTION > BODY

 The value which has been set takes effect after the main power switch has been turned OFF and back ON.

Item	Level	Description	
FX2-TMH	1	Title	Adjustment of temperature of second fixing assembly temperature control (temperature control level H)
		Purpose of use	To set the offset value in temperature control table of the second fixing assembly; to adjust the temperature control temperature of the fixing roller and externally heated roller. The setting takes effect for the temperature control table for temperature control level H.
		When used	Not to be used with the normal service. Use when a user requests the improvement for the minor wrinkle and uneven gloss.
		Precautions for use	The parts consumption and the poor nip pressure may cause wrinkle and uneven gloss. In such a case, execute the appropriate measure (e.g., replacing the parts) at first.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 3
		Unit	-5deg C
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	COPIER>DISPLAY>FIXING>FX-TM-LV
		Additional description and notes	The threshold value used to declare high-temperature errors remains unchanged even when the temperature control temperature has been offset in this mode.
FX1-TMN	1	Title	Adjustment of temperature of first fixing assembly temperature control (temperature control level N)
		Purpose of use	To set the offset value in temperature control table of the first fixing assembly; to adjust the temperature control temperature of the fixing roller and externally heated roller. The setting takes effect for the temperature control table for temperature control level N.
		When used	Not to be used with the normal service. Use when a user requests the improvement for the minor wrinkle and uneven gloss.
		Precautions for use	The parts consumption and the poor nip pressure may cause wrinkle and uneven gloss. In such a case, execute the appropriate measure (e.g., replacing the parts) at first.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 3
		Unit	-5deg C
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	COPIER>DISPLAY>FIXING>FX-TM-LV
		Additional description and notes	The threshold value used to declare high-temperature errors remains unchanged even when the temperature control temperature has been offset in this mode.

COPIER > OPTION > BODY

! The value which has been set takes effect after the main power switch has been turned OFF and back ON.


Item	Level	Description	
FX2-TMN	1	Title	Adjustment of temperature of second fixing assembly temperature control (temperature control level N)
		Purpose of use	To set the offset value in temperature control table of the second fixing assembly; to adjust the temperature control temperature of the fixing roller and externally heated roller. The setting takes effect for the temperature control table for temperature control level N.
		When used	Not to be used with the normal service. Use when a user requests the improvement for the minor wrinkle and uneven gloss.
		Precautions for use	The parts consumption and the poor nip pressure may cause wrinkle and uneven gloss. In such a case, execute the appropriate measure (e.g., replacing the parts) at first.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 3
		Unit	-5deg C
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	COPIER>DISPLAY>FIXING>FX-TM-LV
		Additional description and notes	The threshold value used to declare high-temperature errors remains unchanged even when the temperature control temperature has been offset in this mode.
FX1-TML	1	Title	Adjustment of temperature of first fixing assembly temperature control (temperature control level L)
		Purpose of use	To set the offset value in temperature control table of the first fixing assembly; to adjust the temperature control temperature of the fixing roller and externally heated roller. The setting takes effect for the temperature control table for temperature control level L.
		When used	Not to be used with the normal service. Use when a user requests the improvement for the minor wrinkle and uneven gloss.
		Precautions for use	The parts consumption and the poor nip pressure may cause wrinkle and uneven gloss. In such a case, execute the appropriate measure (e.g., replacing the parts) at first.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 3
		Unit	-5deg C
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	COPIER>DISPLAY>FIXING>FX-TM-LV
		Additional description and notes	The threshold value used to declare high-temperature errors remains unchanged even when the temperature control temperature has been offset in this mode.


COPIER > OPTION > BODY





The value which has been set takes effect after the main power switch has been turned OFF and back ON.


Item	Level	Description	
FX2-TML	1	Title	Adjustment of temperature of second fixing assembly temperature control (temperature control level L)
		Purpose of use	To set the offset value in temperature control table of the second fixing assembly; to adjust the temperature control temperature of the fixing roller and externally heated roller. The setting takes effect for the temperature control table for temperature control level L.
		When used	Not to be used with the normal service. Use when a user requests the improvement for the minor wrinkle and uneven gloss.
		Precautions for use	The parts consumption and the poor nip pressure may cause wrinkle and uneven gloss. In such a case, execute the appropriate measure (e.g., replacing the parts) at first.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 3
		Unit	-5deg C
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	COPIER>DISPLAY>FIXING>FX-TM-LV
		Additional description and notes	The threshold value used to declare high-temperature errors remains unchanged even when the temperature control temperature has been offset in this mode.
FX1-TMSL	1	Title	Adjustment of temperature of first fixing assembly temperature control (temperature control level L)
		Purpose of use	To set the offset value in temperature control table of the first fixing assembly; to adjust the temperature control temperature of the fixing roller and externally heated roller. The setting takes effect for the temperature control table for temperature control level L.
		When used	Not to be used with the normal service. Use when a user requests the improvement for the minor wrinkle and uneven gloss.
		Precautions for use	The parts consumption and the poor nip pressure may cause wrinkle and uneven gloss. In such a case, execute the appropriate measure (e.g., replacing the parts) at first.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 3
		Unit	-5deg C
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	COPIER>DISPLAY>FIXING>FX-TM-LV
		Additional description and notes	The threshold value used to declare high-temperature errors remains unchanged even when the temperature control temperature has been offset in this mode.


COPIER > OPTION > BODY				
 The value which has been set takes effect after the main power switch has been turned OFF and back ON.				
Item	Level	Description		
FX2-TMSL	1	Title	Adjustment of temperature of second fixing assembly temperature control (temperature control level L)	
		Purpose of use	To set the offset value in temperature control table of the second fixing assembly; to adjust the temperature control temperature of the fixing roller and externally heated roller. The setting takes effect for the temperature control table for temperature control level L.	
		When used	Not to be used with the normal service. Use when a user requests the improvement for the minor wrinkle and uneven gloss.	
		Precautions for use	The parts consumption and the poor nip pressure may cause wrinkle and uneven gloss. In such a case, execute the appropriate measure (e.g., replacing the parts) at first.	
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 3	
		Unit	-5deg C	
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0	
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-	
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.	
		Related service modes	COPIER>DISPLAY>FIXING>FX-TM-LV	
		Additional description and notes	The threshold value used to declare high-temperature errors remains unchanged even when the temperature control temperature has been offset in this mode.	
LL-DWN	1	Title	Low-temperature conditions mode	
		Purpose of use	To reduce the productivity immediately after printing has started in order to improve the fixability under low-temperature conditions.	
		When used	When printing under low-temperature conditions, when the fixability after printing has started is poor	
		Precautions for use	-	
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: OFF 1: ON When '1' is set, the printing speed will be as follows: - For the first 20 seconds after print start: 50 ppm - 20 to 40 seconds: 60 ppm - After 40 seconds: 70 ppm	
		Unit	-	
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0	
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-	
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.	
		Related service modes	-	
		Additional description and notes	This function can be used even in the user mode. By setting COPIER > OPTION > BODY > IMGC-ADJ to '1', the following item is displayed within the user mode, this function becomes usable. System control settings > device control settings > low-temperature conditions mode	
INT-WIRE	1	Title	Number of times for cleaning primary charging wires during first warm-up rotation in morning	
		Purpose of use	To change the number of times the primary charging wires are cleaned at the time of the first warm-up rotation in the morning	
		When used	When faulty images caused by dirt on the charging wires have occurred early in the morning	
		Precautions for use	-	
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 10 Increase the value when faulty images caused by dirt on the charging wires have occurred early in the morning.	
		Unit	Once (1 return)	
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-	
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-	
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.	
		Related service modes	-	
		Additional description and notes	-	

COPIER > OPTION > BODY			
 The value which has been set takes effect after the main power switch has been turned OFF and back ON.			
Item	Level	Description	
FX-MODE	1	Title	Switching of fixing temperature control mode
		Purpose of use	To switch the fixing temperature control mode (image priority mode or productivity priority mode).
		When used	When the user asks for the item to be provided; this item is used when, because different media have been loaded, waiting periods are created which causes productivity to drop (in the image priority mode), and priority is to be given to productivity over image quality.
		Precautions for use	When '1' (productivity priority mode) is set: - The image quality (gloss, fixability) may deteriorate. - Depending on the different media loaded, the wait time may not be reduced and the productivity may not be improved.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: Image priority mode 1: Productivity priority mode When '1' is set, the temperature control temperature table for the productivity priority mode is used. In this case, the actual temperature control temperature is determined in accordance with the COPIER > OPTION > BODY > GSM-MAX and GSM-MIN settings.
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	COPIER>OPTION>BODY>GSM-MAX, GSM-MIN
		Additional description and notes	This function can be used even in the user mode. By setting COPIER > OPTION > BODY > IMGC-ADJ to '1', the following item is displayed within the user mode, this function becomes usable. System control settings > device control settings > fixing temperature adjustment mode switching
GSM-MAX	1	Title	Input of maximum basis weight of frequently used paper
		Purpose of use	To input the maximum for the basis weight of frequently used paper.
		When used	When '1' (productivity priority mode) has been set for COPIER > OPTION > BODY > FX-MODE
		Precautions for use	Valid only when COPIER > OPTION > BODY > FX-MODE is set to "1"
		Settings and adjustment ranges	64 to 300
		Unit	g/m2
		Value established when RAM is cleared	256
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	This function can be used even in the user mode. By setting COPIER > OPTION > BODY > IMGC-ADJ to '1', the following item is displayed within the user mode, and this function becomes usable. System control settings > device control settings > fixing temperature adjustment mode switching
GSM-MIN	1	Title	Input of minimum basis weight of frequently used paper
		Purpose of use	To input the minimum for the basis weight of frequently used paper.
		When used	For future expansion. No use for now.
		Precautions for use	Valid only when COPIER > OPTION > BODY > FX-MODE is set to "1"
		Settings and adjustment ranges	64 to 300
		Unit	g/m2
		Value established when RAM is cleared	80
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	This function can be used even in the user mode. By setting COPIER > OPTION > BODY > IMGC-ADJ to '1', the following item is displayed within the user mode, this function becomes usable. System control settings > device control settings > fixing temperature adjustment mode switching


COPIER > OPTION > BODY			
 The value which has been set takes effect after the main power switch has been turned OFF and back ON.			
Item	Level	Description	
MEAP-PRI	2	Title	Change of MEAP task priority
		Purpose of use	To improve performance of MEAP process
		When used	When increasing task priority of MEAP
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: OFF 1: ON
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to be highlighted, enter the setting value, and then press the OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
DCL-SW	1	Title	Switch for selecting 'Curl correction at each feed level' item display for user mode
		Purpose of use	This item is used to set the curl correction amount at each feed level.
		When used	When the user asks for the item to be provided
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: The item is not displayed. 1: The item is displayed.
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
LOW-DUTY	2	Title	Setting of toner discharge frequency during low-duty image printing
		Purpose of use	To set the frequency at which to execute the toner discharge operation which is executed during low-duty image (images with a low image ratio) printing.
		When used	When faulty images have occurred in the user machine which continuously prints low-duty images
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	-7 to +7 -6 to -7: Toner is discharged once per 18 sheets. -5: Toner is discharged once per 23 sheets. -4: Toner is discharged once per 28 sheets. -3: Toner is discharged once per 35 sheets. -2: Toner is discharged once per 50 sheets. -1: Toner is discharged once per 70 sheets. 0: Toner is discharged once per 100 sheets. +1: Toner is discharged once per 125 sheets. +2 to +7: Toner is discharged once per 150 sheets.
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it. 2) Input the setting, select the sign (+ or -) using the +/- keys, and press the OK key. 3) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > OPTION > BODY			
 The value which has been set takes effect after the main power switch has been turned OFF and back ON.			
Item	Level	Description	
SL-RATIO	2	Title	Change in development cylinder peripheral speed ratio
		Purpose of use	To change the peripheral speed ratio of the development cylinder.
		When used	When faulty images with poor text quality, excessively narrow line widths, etc. have occurred
		Precautions for use	When the value is changed significantly in the '-' direction, faint images or fogging may result.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	-2 to +2 Reduce the value (toward -) if the text quality is poor or the line width is excessively narrow.
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it. 2) Input the setting, select the sign (+ or -) using the +/- keys, and press the OK key. 3) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON. 4) Execute auto gradation adjustment. (full correction)
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
SL-DRIVE	1	Title	Change in development cylinder micro-rotation control
		Purpose of use	To change the development cylinder micro-rotation control.
		When used	When faulty images caused by deterioration of the developer have occurred
		Precautions for use	If decrease the value in minus direction too much, productivity decreases. The productivity also drops when setting the value +6 or +7.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	-7 to +7
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select an item and highlight the display. 2) Enter the setting value and change the symbol (+/-) with +/- key, then press OK. 3) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch. Setting minus value makes image fault due to developing assembly deterioration better.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
TH-OFST	1	Title	Sheet thickness sensor offset adjustment
		Purpose of use	To change the threshold at which the sheet thickness is deemed to be unacceptable when the sheet thickness is detected.
		When used	When the paper is judged as NG at paper feed even though using the thick paper within the standard (rough surface paper like embossed paper etc).
		Precautions for use	Do not use regularly. If setting the plus value (enables the thick paper out of range to be passed), fixing offset* due to poor fixing may occur. * Toner cannot be transferred onto the paper and is transferred onto the fixing roller.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	-2 to +2 If setting the value as "+1", thick NG threshold value is offset by 10um.
		Unit	10um
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it 2) Input the setting, select the sign (+ or -) using the +/- keys, and press the OK key. 3) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > OPTION > BODY				
 The value which has been set takes effect after the main power switch has been turned OFF and back ON.				
Item	Level	Description		
PDLEVCT1	2	Title	Setting of event skipping with PDL continuous jobs	
		Purpose of use	This item is used to set event skipping with PDL continuous jobs.	
		When used	When the user asks for the item to be provided	
		Precautions for use	-	
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: No event skipping 1: Skip target 1 2: Skip target 2 The performance is improved in the ascending order of 0 -> 1 -> 2. When the COPIER > OPTION > BODY > CT-TIME value has been increased and trouble has occurred in parts of the screen displays, set this mode to "0" (no event skipping) to eliminate the trouble.	
		Unit	-	
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0	
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-	
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.	
		Related service modes	-	
Additional description and notes	-			
FX1-TMM	1	Title	Adjustment of temperature of primary fixing assembly temperature control (temperature control level M)	
		Purpose of use	To set the offset value in temperature control table of the primary fixing assembly; to adjust the temperature control temperature of the fixing roller and externally heated roller. The setting takes effect for the temperature control table for temperature control level M.	
		When used	Not to be used with the normal service. Use when a user requests the improvement for the minor wrinkle and uneven gloss.	
		Precautions for use	The parts consumption and the poor nip pressure may cause wrinkle and uneven gloss. In such a case, execute the appropriate measure (e.g., replacing the parts) at first.	
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 3	
		Unit	-5deg C	
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0	
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-	
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.	
		Related service modes	COPIER>DISPLAY>FIXING>FX-TM-LV	
Additional description and notes	The threshold value used to declare high-temperature errors remains unchanged even when the temperature control temperature has been offset in this mode.			
PL-SN-SW	1	Title	ON/OFF for detecting paper length	
		Purpose of use	For not using the paper length detection result for the lead edge registration control of the 2nd side (registration decelerating timing control)	
		When used	When the paper length sensor is faulty. When using paper with fixed shrinkage amount (registration accuracy for front/back can improve by turning OFF).	
		Precautions for use	-	
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: ON 1: OFF	
		Unit	-	
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0	
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	0	
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to be highlighted, enter the setting value, and then press the OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.	
		Related service modes	-	
Additional description and notes	-			


COPIER > OPTION > BODY			
 The value which has been set takes effect after the main power switch has been turned OFF and back ON.			
Item	Level	Description	
SL-DUTY	1	Title	Setting of the number of minimal drive of developing cylinder
		Purpose of use	To set the number of minimal drive of developing cylinder
		When used	In the case of belt-like blank area on the image's solid area
		Precautions for use	Control time for paper interval gets longer despite the improvement when increasing the value.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 3 The image gets better when increasing the value in the case of belt-like blank area on the image's solid area
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to be highlighted, enter the setting value, and then press the OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
SHUT-O-Y	2	Title	Setting of operating condition in open/close sequence for Y-color developing assembly shutter
		Purpose of use	To change the threshold level in the number of accumulating supply blocks, which is the operating condition for the shutter's open/close sequence
		When used	In the case of soiled image due to large amount of toner drop from the developing assembly.
		Precautions for use	The image gets improved by increasing the value (1 to 3), however the life of the shutter motor gets shorter.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 4 (4: shutter open/close sequence is not performed) In the case of large amount of toner drop, be sure to clean the developing assembly, and then set the value '1'. Set '2' or '3' if there is no improvement on the image. In the case that there is no large amount of toner drop, setting '4' makes the shutter life longer.
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to be highlighted, enter the setting value, and then press the OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
SHUT-O-M	2	Title	Setting of operating condition in open/close sequence for M-color developing assembly shutter
		Purpose of use	To change the threshold level in the number of accumulating supply blocks, which is the operating condition for the shutter's open/close sequence
		When used	In the case of soiled image due to large amount of toner drop from the developing assembly.
		Precautions for use	The image gets improved by increasing the value (1 to 3), however the life of the shutter motor gets shorter.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 4 (4: shutter open/close sequence is not performed) In the case of large amount of toner drop, be sure to clean the developing assembly, and then set the value '1'. Set '2' or '3' if there is no improvement. In the case that there is no large amount of toner drop, setting '4' makes the shutter life longer.
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to be highlighted, enter the setting value, and then press the OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > OPTION > BODY

 The value which has been set takes effect after the main power switch has been turned OFF and back ON.

Item	Level	Description	
SHUT-O-C	2	Title	Setting of operating condition in open/close sequence for C-color developing assembly shutter
		Purpose of use	To change the threshold level in the number of accumulating supply blocks, which is the operating condition for the shutter's open/close sequence
		When used	In the case of soiled image due to large amount of toner drop from the developing assembly.
		Precautions for use	The image gets improved by increasing the value (1 to 3), however the life of the shutter motor gets shorter.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 4 (4: shutter open/close sequence is not performed) In the case of large amount of toner drop, be sure to clean the developing assembly, and then set the value '1'. Set '2' or '3' if there is no improvement. In the case that there is no large amount of toner drop, setting '4' makes the shutter life longer.
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to be highlighted, enter the setting value, and then press the OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	-		
SHUT-O-K	2	Title	Setting of operating condition in open/close sequence for Bk developing assembly shutter
		Purpose of use	To change the threshold level in the number of accumulating supply blocks, which is the operating condition for the shutter's open/close sequence
		When used	In the case of soiled image due to large amount of toner drop from the developing assembly.
		Precautions for use	The image gets improved by increasing the value (1 to 3), however the life of the shutter motor gets shorter.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 4 (4: shutter open/close sequence is not performed) In the case of large amount of toner drop, be sure to clean the developing assembly, and then set the value '1'. Set '2' or '3' if there is no improvement. In the case that there is no large amount of toner drop, setting '4' makes the shutter life longer.
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to be highlighted, enter the setting value, and then press the OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	-		
DMX-OF-Y	2	Title	Change of Dmax target value for Y-color
		Purpose of use	To change Dmax.
		When used	When the density on the image's solid area is not appropriate after auto gradation correction.
		Precautions for use	Be sure to execute auto gradation correction after changing the setting value.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	-3 to +3 Variation in a unit: 0.07% In the case of low density, increase the value and then execute auto gradation correction. In the case of high density, reduce the value and then execute auto gradation correction.
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to be highlighted, enter the setting value, and then press the OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	-		

COPIER > OPTION > BODY

 The value which has been set takes effect after the main power switch has been turned OFF and back ON.

Item	Level	Description	
DMX-OF-M	2	Title	Change of Dmax target value for M-color
		Purpose of use	To change Dmax.
		When used	When the density on the image's solid area is not appropriate after auto gradation correction.
		Precautions for use	Be sure to execute auto gradation correction after changing the setting value.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	-3 to +3 Variation in a unit: 0.07% In the case of low density, increase the value and then execute auto gradation correction. In the case of high density, reduce the value and then execute auto gradation correction.
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to be highlighted, enter the setting value, and then press the OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
DMX-OF-C	2	Title	Change of Dmax target value for C-color
		Purpose of use	To change Dmax.
		When used	When the density on the image's solid area is not appropriate after auto gradation correction.
		Precautions for use	Be sure to execute auto gradation correction after changing the setting value.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	-3 to +3 Variation in a unit: 0.07% In the case of low density, increase the value and then execute auto gradation correction. In the case of high density, reduce the value and then execute auto gradation correction.
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to be highlighted, enter the setting value, and then press the OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
DMX-OF-K	2	Title	Change of Dmax target value for Bk
		Purpose of use	To change Dmax.
		When used	When the density on the image's solid area is not appropriate after auto gradation correction.
		Precautions for use	Be sure to execute auto gradation correction after changing the setting value.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	-3 to +3 Variation in a unit: 0.07% In the case of low density, increase the value and then execute auto gradation correction. In the case of high density, reduce the value and then execute auto gradation correction.
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to be highlighted, enter the setting value, and then press the OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > OPTION > BODY

! The value which has been set takes effect after the main power switch has been turned OFF and back ON.


Item	Level	Description	
DK1-REST	1	Title	Offset adjustment of threshold for the paper remaining level in a deck (right deck)
		Purpose of use	To change the threshold to determine no-paper in the deck
		When used	When there is too many sheets of paper in the deck after the auto cassette change is performed.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 5 Reduce the value if you want to reduce the number of sheets in the deck after the auto cassette change.
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to be highlighted, enter the setting value, and then press the OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	-		
DK2-REST	1	Title	Offset adjustment of threshold for the paper remaining level in a deck (left deck)
		Purpose of use	To change the threshold to determine no-paper in the deck
		When used	When there is too many sheets of paper in the deck after the auto cassette change is performed.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 5 Reduce the value if you want to reduce the number of sheets in the deck after the auto cassette change.
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to be highlighted, enter the setting value, and then press the OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	-		
DK4-REST	1	Title	Offset adjustment of threshold for the paper remaining level in a deck (POD upper deck)
		Purpose of use	To change the threshold to determine no-paper in the deck
		When used	When there is too many sheets of paper in the deck after the auto cassette change is performed.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 5 Reduce the value if you want to reduce the number of sheets in the deck after the auto cassette change.
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to be highlighted, enter the setting value, and then press the OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	-		

COPIER > OPTION > BODY



The value which has been set takes effect after the main power switch has been turned OFF and back ON.

Item	Level	Description	
DK5-REST	1	Title	Offset adjustment of threshold for the paper remaining level in a deck (POD middle deck)
		Purpose of use	To change the threshold to determine no-paper in the deck
		When used	When there is too many sheets of paper in the deck after the auto cassette change is performed.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 5 Reduce the value if you want to reduce the number of sheets in the deck after the auto cassette change.
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to be highlighted, enter the setting value, and then press the OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	-		
DK6-REST	1	Title	Offset adjustment of threshold for the paper remaining level in a deck (POD lower deck)
		Purpose of use	To change the threshold to determine no-paper in the deck
		When used	When there is too many sheets of paper in the deck after the auto cassette change is performed.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 5 Reduce the value if you want to reduce the number of sheets in the deck after the auto cassette change.
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to be highlighted, enter the setting value, and then press the OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	-		
DK7-REST	1	Title	Offset adjustment of threshold for the paper remaining level in a deck (Secondary POD upper deck)
		Purpose of use	To change the threshold to determine no-paper in the deck
		When used	When there is too many sheets of paper in the deck after the auto cassette change is performed.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 5 Reduce the value if you want to reduce the number of sheets in the deck after the auto cassette change.
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to be highlighted, enter the setting value, and then press the OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	-		


COPIER > OPTION > BODY			
 The value which has been set takes effect after the main power switch has been turned OFF and back ON.			
Item	Level	Description	
DK8-REST	1	Title	Offset adjustment of threshold for the paper remaining level in a deck (Secondary POD middle deck)
		Purpose of use	To change the threshold to determine no-paper in the deck
		When used	When there is too many sheets of paper in the deck after the auto cassette change is performed.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 5 Reduce the value if you want to reduce the number of sheets in the deck after the auto cassette change.
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to be highlighted, enter the setting value, and then press the OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
DK9-REST	1	Title	Offset adjustment of threshold for the paper remaining level in a deck (Secondary POD lower deck)
		Purpose of use	To change the threshold to determine no-paper in the deck
		When used	When there is too many sheets of paper in the deck after the auto cassette change is performed.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 5 Reduce the value if you want to reduce the number of sheets in the deck after the auto cassette change.
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to be highlighted, enter the setting value, and then press the OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
CNTR-SW	1	Title	Switch of replacement estimated value of the parts counter
		Purpose of use	To switch the replacement estimated value of the parts counter
		When used	Not to be used in normal service
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: 50-sheet (intermittent) 1: 100-sheet (intermittent)
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	1: for USA, 0: for locations other than USA
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	Situation differs according to the locations
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to be highlighted, enter the setting value, and then press the OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
TRCLNOFF	2	For future expansion. No use for now.	

COPIER > OPTION > BODY



The value which has been set takes effect after the main power switch has been turned OFF and back ON.

Item	Level	Description	
VIB-Y-ON	1	Title	ON/OFF of developing assembly knocking motor drive for Y-color
		Purpose of use	To switch ON/OFF of the developing assembly knocking motor drive
		When used	In the case of light/uneven image due to faulty toner coating
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: OFF 1: ON The image gets improved by setting '1' in the case of light/uneven image due to faulty toner coating.
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to be highlighted, enter the setting value, and then press the OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
VIB-M-ON	1	Title	ON/OFF of developing assembly knocking motor drive for M-color
		Purpose of use	To switch ON/OFF of the developing assembly knocking motor drive
		When used	In the case of light/uneven image due to faulty toner coating
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: OFF 1: ON The image gets improved by setting '1' in the case of light/uneven image due to faulty toner coating.
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to be highlighted, enter the setting value, and then press the OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
VIB-C-ON	1	Title	ON/OFF of developing assembly knocking motor drive for C-color
		Purpose of use	To switch ON/OFF of the developing assembly knocking motor drive
		When used	In the case of light/uneven image due to faulty toner coating
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: OFF 1: ON The image gets improved by setting '1' in the case of light/uneven image due to faulty toner coating.
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to be highlighted, enter the setting value, and then press the OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > OPTION > BODY			
 The value which has been set takes effect after the main power switch has been turned OFF and back ON.			
Item	Level	Description	
VIB-K-ON	1	Title	ON/OFF of developing assembly knocking motor drive for Bk
		Purpose of use	To switch ON/OFF of the developing assembly knocking motor drive
		When used	In the case of light/uneven image due to faulty toner coating
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: OFF 1: ON The image gets improved by setting '1' in the case of light/uneven image due to faulty toner coating.
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to be highlighted, enter the setting value, and then press the OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	-		
INSRT-SW	1	Title	Switch to determine/not to determine the presence of inserter paper
		Purpose of use	To switch to execute/not to execute detecting the presence of inserter paper.
		When used	At complaint from the field (low productivity when the inserter is used)
		Precautions for use	Setting '1' makes the job to start before detecting paper presence. Thus, when there is no paper in the inserter (while there are enough sheets for signature), the machine stops the operation as a jam.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: pickup starts after confirming the presence of paper 1: pickup starts without detecting the presence of paper Set '1' in the case of complaint for low productivity when using the inserter.
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to be highlighted, enter the setting value, and then press the OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	-		
PINT-REG	2	For future use	

18.6.1.6 COPIER > OPTION > USER (1/3)

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

T-18-68

COPIER > OPTION > USER			
Item	Level	Description	
COPY-LIM	1	Title	Change in upper limit setting for number of copies
		Purpose of use	To change the upper limit setting for the number of copies.
		When used	When the user asks for the item to be provided
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	1 to 9999
		Unit	Copies
		Value established when RAM is cleared	9999
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	-		

COPIER > OPTION > USER			
Item	Level	Description	
SLEEP	1	Title	Auto sleep function ON/OFF setting
		Purpose of use	To set the auto sleep function to ON and OFF.
		When used	When the user asks for the item to be provided
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0:OFF 1:ON
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	1
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	The time taken to transfer to the sleep mode is set in the user mode. Timer settings > auto sleep time
SIZE-DET	2	Title	Document size detection function ON/OFF setting
		Purpose of use	To set the document size detection function to ON and OFF.
		When used	When the user asks for the item to be provided (as a means to remedy the glare from the document lighting lamp)
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0:OFF 1:ON
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	1
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
COUNTER1	1	Title	Display of soft counter 1 on counter check status screen
		Purpose of use	To display the counter type of the soft counter 1 which is displayed on the counter check status screen.
		When used	When the user or dealer asks for the item to be provided
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	101: Total 1 The settings cannot be changed; display only.
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	101
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
COUNTER2	1	Title	Display of soft counter 2 on counter check status screen
		Purpose of use	To display the counter type of the soft counter 2 which is displayed on the counter check status screen.
		When used	When the user or dealer asks for the item to be provided
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 999
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	108
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > OPTION > USER			
Item	Level	Description	
COUNTER3	1	Title	Display of soft counter 3 on counter check status screen
		Purpose of use	To display the counter type of the soft counter 3 which is displayed on the counter check status screen.
		When used	When the user or dealer asks for the item to be provided
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 999
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	232
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
COUNTER4	1	Title	Display of soft counter 4 on counter check status screen
		Purpose of use	To display the counter type of the soft counter 4 which is displayed on the counter check status screen.
		When used	When the user or dealer asks for the item to be provided
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 999
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	324
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
COUNTER5	1	Title	Display of soft counter 5 on counter check status screen
		Purpose of use	To display the counter type of the soft counter 5 which is displayed on the counter check status screen.
		When used	When the user or dealer asks for the item to be provided
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 999
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
COUNTER6	1	Title	Display of soft counter 6 on counter check status screen
		Purpose of use	To display the counter type of the soft counter 6 which is displayed on the counter check status screen.
		When used	When the user or dealer asks for the item to be provided
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 999
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

18.6.1.7 Soft counter specifications

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

000 to 099: Remote copy
 100 to 199: Total
 200 to 299: Copy
 300 to 399: Print
 400 to 499: Copy and print
 500 to 599: Scan
 600 to 699: Box
 700 to 799: Reception print
 800 to 899: Report print
 900 to 999: Transmission

- Explanation of symbols shown in the table -

- yes: Valid counter for this machine
 - 4C: Full color
 - Mono: Mono color (Y, M, C / R, G, B / retro monochrome)
 - Bk: Single black color
 - L: Large size (larger than B4 size)
 - S: Small size (smaller than B4 size)
 - Numbers 1, 2 indicated under "Counter Details": Number of counts for large size paper
- It can be changed by the service mode (COPIER > OPTION > USER > B4_L_CNT) so that the paper larger than B4 size can be counted as large size paper.
- Copy: Local copy + remote copy
 - Copy A: Local copy + remote copy + box print
 - Print: PDL print + report print + box print
 - Print A: PDL print + report print
 - Scan: Black and white scan + color scan

T-18-69

Valid or invalid	Number	Counter Details
yes	002	Remote copy (full color 1)
yes	003	Remote copy (full color 2)
yes	004	Remote copy (mono color 1)
yes	005	Remote copy (mono color 2)
yes	006	Remote copy (black and white 1)
yes	007	Remote copy (black and white 2)
yes	008	Remote copy (full color / large)
yes	009	Remote copy (full color / small)
yes	010	Remote copy (mono color / large)
yes	011	Remote copy (mono color / small)
yes	012	Remote copy (black and white / large)
yes	013	Remote copy (black and white / small)
yes	014	Remote copy (full color + mono color / large)
yes	015	Remote copy (full color + mono color / small)
yes	016	Remote copy (full color + mono color 2)
yes	017	Remote copy (full color + mono color 1)
yes	018	Remote copy (full color / large / double sided)
yes	019	Remote copy (full color / small / double sided)
yes	020	Remote copy (mono color / large / double sided)
yes	021	Remote copy (mono color / small / double sided)
yes	022	Remote copy (black and white / large / double sided)
yes	023	Remote copy (black and white / small / double sided)

T-18-70

Valid or invalid	Number	Counter Details
yes	101	Total 1
yes	102	Total 2
yes	103	Total (large)
yes	104	Total (small)
yes	105	Total (full color 1)
yes	106	Total (full color 2)

Valid or invalid	Number	Counter Details
yes	108	Total (black and white 1)
yes	109	Total (black and white 2)
yes	110	Total (mono color /large)
yes	111	Total (mono color /small)
yes	112	Total (black and white /large)
yes	113	Total (black and white /small)
yes	114	Total 1(double sided)
yes	115	Total 2(double sided)
yes	116	large (double sided)
yes	117	small (double sided)
yes	118	Total (mono color 1)
yes	119	Total (mono color 2)
yes	120	Total (full color /large)
yes	121	Total (full color /small)
yes	122	Total (full color +mono color /large)
yes	123	Total (full color +mono color /small)
yes	124	Total (full color +mono color 2)
yes	125	Total (full color +mono color 1)
yes	126	Total A1
yes	127	Total A2
yes	128	Total A (large)
yes	129	Total A (small)
yes	130	Total A (full color 1)
yes	131	Total A (full color 2)
yes	132	Total A (black and white 1)
yes	133	Total A (black and white 2)
yes	134	Total A (mono color /large)
yes	135	Total A (mono color /small)
yes	136	Total A (black and white /large)
yes	137	Total A (black and white /small)
yes	138	Total A 1(double sided)
yes	139	Total A 2(double sided)
yes	140	large A (double sided)
yes	141	small A (double sided)
yes	142	Total A (mono color 1)
yes	143	Total A (mono color 2)
yes	144	Total A (full color /large)
yes	145	Total A (full color /small)
yes	146	Total A (full color +mono color /large)
yes	147	Total A (full color +mono color /small)
yes	148	Total A (full color +mono color 2)
yes	149	Total A (full color +mono color 1)
yes	150	Total B1
yes	151	Total B2
yes	152	Total B (large)
yes	153	Total B (small)
yes	154	Total B (full color 1)
yes	155	Total B (full color 2)
yes	156	Total B (black and white 1)
yes	157	Total B (black and white 2)
yes	158	Total B (mono color /large)
yes	159	Total B (mono color /small)
yes	160	Total B (black and white /large)
yes	161	Total B (black and white /small)
yes	162	Total B1 (double sided)
yes	163	Total B2 (double sided)
yes	164	largeB (double sided)
yes	165	smallB (double sided)

Valid or invalid	Number	Counter Details
yes	166	Total B (mono color 1)
yes	167	Total B (mono color 2)
yes	168	Total B (full color /large)
yes	169	Total B (full color /small)
yes	170	Total B (full color +mono color /large)
yes	171	Total B (full color +mono color /small)
yes	172	Total B (full color +mono color 2)
yes	173	Total B (full color +mono color 1)
no	191	Toner replacement / yellow
no	192	Toner replacement / magenta
no	193	Toner replacement / cyan
no	194	Toner replacement / black
no	195	Toner replacement / expansion 1
no	196	Toner replacement / expansion 2

T-18-71

Valid or invalid	Number	Counter Details
yes	201	Copy (Total 1)
yes	202	Copy (Total 2)
yes	203	Copy (large)
yes	204	Copy (small)
yes	205	Copy A (Total 1)
yes	206	Copy A (Total 2)
yes	207	Copy A (large)
yes	208	Copy A (small)
yes	209	Local copy (Total 1)
yes	210	Local copy (Total 2)
yes	211	Local copy (large)
yes	212	Local copy (small)
yes	213	Remote copy (Total 1)
yes	214	Remote copy (Total 2)
yes	215	Remote copy (large)
yes	216	Remote copy (small)
yes	217	Copy (full color 1)
yes	218	Copy (full color 2)
yes	219	Copy (mono color 1)
yes	220	Copy (mono color 2)
yes	221	Copy (black and white 1)
yes	222	Copy (black and white 2)
yes	223	Copy (full color /large)
yes	224	Copy (full color /small)
yes	225	Copy (mono color /large)
yes	226	Copy (mono color /small)
yes	227	Copy (black and white /large)
yes	228	Copy (black and white /small)
yes	229	Copy (full color +mono color /large)
yes	230	Copy (full color +mono color /small)
yes	231	Copy (full color +mono color /2)
yes	232	Copy (full color +mono color /1)
yes	233	Copy (full color /large/double sided)
yes	234	Copy (full color /small/double sided)
yes	235	Copy (mono color /large/double sided)
yes	236	Copy (mono color /small/double sided)
yes	237	Copy (black and white /large/double sided)
yes	238	Copy (black and white /small/double sided)
yes	245	Copy A (full color 1)
yes	246	Copy A (full color 2)
yes	247	Copy A (mono color 1)
yes	248	Copy A (mono color 2)
yes	249	Copy A (black and white 1)
yes	250	Copy A (black and white 2)

Valid or invalid	Number	Counter Details
yes	251	Copy A (full color /large)
yes	252	Copy A (full color /small)
yes	253	Copy A (mono color /large)
yes	254	Copy A (mono color /small)
yes	255	Copy A (black and white /large)
yes	256	Copy A (black and white /small)
yes	257	Copy A (full color +mono color /large)
yes	258	Copy A (full color +mono color /small)
yes	259	Copy A (full color +mono color 2)
yes	260	Copy A (full color +mono color 1)
yes	261	Copy A (full color /large/double sided)
yes	262	Copy A (full color /small/double sided)
yes	263	Copy A (mono color /large/double sided)
yes	264	Copy A (mono color /small/double sided)
yes	265	Copy A (black and white /large/double sided)
yes	266	Copy A (black and white /small/double sided)
yes	273	Local copy (full color 1)
yes	274	Local copy (full color 2)
yes	275	Local copy (mono color 1)
yes	276	Local copy (mono color 2)
yes	277	Local copy (black and white 1)
yes	278	Local copy (black and white 2)
yes	279	Local copy (full color /large)
yes	280	Local copy (full color /small)
yes	281	Local copy (mono color /large)
yes	282	Local copy (mono color /small)
yes	283	Local copy (black and white /large)
yes	284	Local copy (black and white /small)
yes	285	Local copy (full color +mono color /large)
yes	286	Local copy (full color +mono color /small)
yes	287	Local copy (full color +mono color 2)
yes	288	Local copy (full color +mono color 1)
yes	289	Local copy (full color /large/double sided)
yes	290	Local copy (full color /small/double sided)
yes	291	Local copy (mono color /large/double sided)
yes	292	Local copy (mono color /small/double sided)
yes	293	Local copy (black and white /large/double sided)
yes	294	Local copy (black and white /small/double sided)

T-18-72

Valid or invalid	Number	Counter Details
yes	301	Print (Total 1)
yes	302	Print (Total 2)
yes	303	Print (large)
yes	304	Print (small)
yes	305	Print A(Total 1)
yes	306	Print A(Total 2)
yes	307	Print A(large)
yes	308	Print A(small)
yes	309	Print (full color 1)
yes	310	Print (full color 2)
yes	311	Print (mono color 1)
yes	312	Print (mono color 2)
yes	313	Print (black and white 1)
yes	314	Print (black and white 2)
yes	315	Print (full color /large)
yes	316	Print (full color /small)
yes	317	Print (mono color /large)
yes	318	Print (mono color /small)
yes	319	Print (black and white /large)
yes	320	Print (black and white /small)
yes	321	Print (full color +mono color /large)

Valid or invalid	Number	Counter Details
yes	322	Print (full color +mono color /small)
yes	323	Print (full color +mono color /2)
yes	324	Print (full color +mono color /1)
yes	325	Print (full color /large /double sided)
yes	326	Print (full color /small/double sided)
yes	327	Print (mono color /large /double sided)
yes	328	Print (mono color /small/double sided)
yes	329	Print (black and white /large /double sided)
yes	330	Print (black and white /small/double sided)
yes	331	PDLPrint (Total 1)
yes	332	PDLPrint (Total 2)
yes	333	PDLPrint (large)
yes	334	PDLPrint (small)
yes	335	PDLPrint (full color 1)
yes	336	PDLPrint (full color 2)
yes	339	PDLPrint (black and white 1)
yes	340	PDLPrint (black and white 2)
yes	341	PDLPrint (full color /large)
yes	342	PDLPrint (full color /small)
yes	345	PDLPrint (black and white /large)
yes	346	PDLPrint (black and white /small)
yes	351	PDLPrint (full color /large /double sided)
yes	352	PDLPrint (full color /small/double sided)
yes	355	PDLPrint (black and white /large /double sided)
yes	356	PDLPrint (black and white /small/double sided)

T-18-73

Valid or invalid	Number	Counter Details
yes	401	Copy + print (full color /large)
yes	402	Copy + print (full color /small)
yes	403	Copy + print (black and white/large)
yes	404	Copy + print (black and white/small)
yes	405	Copy + print (black and white2)
yes	406	Copy + print (black and white1)
yes	407	Copy + print (full color +mono color /large)
yes	408	Copy + print (full color +mono color /small)
yes	409	Copy + print (full color +mono color /2)
yes	410	Copy + print (full color +mono color /1)
yes	411	Copy + print (large)
yes	412	Copy + print (small)
yes	413	Copy + print (2)
yes	414	Copy + print (1)
yes	415	Copy + print (mono color /large)
yes	416	Copy + print (mono color /small)
yes	417	Copy + print (full color /large/double sided)
yes	418	Copy + print (full color /small/double sided)
yes	419	Copy + print (mono color /large/double sided)
yes	420	Copy + print (mono color /small/double sided)
yes	421	Copy + print (black and white/large/double sided)
yes	422	Copy + print (black and white/small/double sided)

T-18-74

Valid or invalid	Number	Counter Details
yes	501	Scan (Total 1)
yes	502	Scan (Total 2)
yes	503	Scan (large)

Valid or invalid	Number	Counter Details
yes	504	Scan (small)
yes	505	Black and white Scan (Total 1)
yes	506	Black and white Scan (Total 2)
yes	507	Black and white Scan (large)
yes	508	Black and white Scan (small)
yes	509	Color scan (Total 1)
yes	510	Color scan (Total 2)
yes	511	Color scan (large)
yes	512	Color scan (small)

T-18-75

Valid or invalid	Number	Counter Details
yes	601	Box print (Total 1)
yes	602	Box print (Total 2)
yes	603	Box print (large)
yes	604	Box print (small)
yes	605	Box print (full color 1)
yes	606	Box print (full color 2)
yes	607	Box print (mono color 1)
yes	608	Box print (mono color 2)
yes	609	Box print (black and white 1)
yes	610	Box print (black and white 2)
yes	611	Box print (full color /large)
yes	612	Box print (full color /small)
yes	613	Box print (mono color /large)
yes	614	Box print (mono color /small)
yes	615	Box print (black and white /large)
yes	616	Box print (black and white /small)
yes	617	Box print (full color +mono color /large)
yes	618	Box print (full color +mono color /small)
yes	619	Box print (full color +mono color 2)
yes	620	Box print (full color +mono color 1)
yes	621	Box print (full color /large/double sided)
yes	622	Box print (full color /small/double sided)
yes	623	Box print (mono color /large/double sided)
yes	624	Box print (mono color /small/double sided)
yes	625	Box print (black and white /large/double sided)
yes	626	Box print (black and white /small/double sided)

T-18-76

Valid or invalid	Number	Counter Details
yes	701	Reception print (Total 1)
yes	702	Reception print (Total 2)
yes	703	Reception print (large)
yes	704	Reception print (small)
yes	705	Reception print (full color 1)
yes	706	Reception print (full color 2)
no	707	Reception print (Gray scale 1)
no	708	Reception print (Gray scale 2)
yes	709	Reception print (black and white 1)
yes	710	Reception print (black and white 2)
yes	711	Reception print (full color /large)
yes	712	Reception print (full color /small)
no	713	Reception print (Gray scale /large)
no	714	Reception print (Gray scale /small)
yes	715	Reception print (black and white /large)
yes	716	Reception print (black and white /small)
no	717	Reception print (full color +Gray scale /large)

Valid or invalid	Number	Counter Details
no	718	Reception print (full color +Gray scale /small)
no	719	Reception print (full color +Gray scale 2)
no	720	Reception print (full color +Gray scale 1)
yes	721	Reception print (full color /large/double sided)
yes	722	Reception print (full color /small/double sided)
no	723	Reception print (Gray scale /large/double sided)
no	724	Reception print (Gray scale /small/double sided)
yes	725	Reception print (black and white /large/double sided)
yes	726	Reception print (black and white /small/double sided)

T-18-77

Valid or invalid	Number	Counter Details
yes	801	Report print (Total 1)
yes	802	Report print (Total 2)
yes	803	Report print (large)
yes	804	Report print (small)
yes	805	Report print (full color 1)
yes	806	Report print (full color 2)
no	807	Report print (Gray scale 1)
no	808	Report print (Gray scale 2)
yes	809	Report print (black and white 1)
yes	810	Report print (black and white 2)
yes	811	Report print (full color /large)
yes	812	Report print (full color /small)
no	813	Report print (Gray scale /large)
no	814	Report print (Gray scale /small)
yes	815	Report print (black and white /large)
yes	816	Report print (black and white /small)
no	817	Report print (full color +Gray scale /large)
no	818	Report print (full color +Gray scale /small)
no	819	Report print (full color +Gray scale 2)
no	820	Report print (full color +Gray scale 1)
yes	821	Report print (full color /large /double sided)
yes	822	Report print (full color /small /double sided)
no	823	Report print (Gray scale /large /double sided)
no	824	Report print (Gray scale /small /double sided)
yes	825	Report print (black and white /large /double sided)
yes	826	Report print (black and white /small /double sided)

T-18-78

Valid or invalid	Number	Counter Details
no	901	Copy scan total 1(color)
no	902	Copy scan total 1(black and white)
no	903	Copy scan total 2(color)
no	904	Copy scan total 2(black and white)
no	905	Copy scan total 3(color)
no	906	Copy scan total 3(black and white)
no	907	Copy scan total 4(color)
no	908	Copy scan total 4(black and white)
no	909	Local copy scan (color)
no	910	Local copy scan (black and white)
no	911	Remote copy scan (color)
no	912	Remote copy scan (black and white)
no	913	Transmission scan total 1(color)
no	914	Transmission scan total 1(black and white)
yes	915	Transmission scan total 2(color)
yes	916	Transmission scan total 2(black and white)
yes	917	Transmission scan total 3(color)
yes	918	Transmission scan total 3(black and white)

Valid or invalid	Number	Counter Details
no	919	Transmission scan total 4(color)
no	920	Transmission scan total 4(black and white)
yes	921	Transmission scan total 5(color)
yes	922	Transmission scan total 5(black and white)
yes	929	Transmission scan total 6(color)
yes	930	Transmission scan total 6(black and white)
no	931	Transmission scan total 7(color)
no	932	Transmission scan total 7(black and white)
no	933	Transmission scan total 8(color)
no	934	Transmission scan total 8(black and white)
no	935	Universal transmission scan total (color)
no	936	Universal transmission scan total (black and white)
yes	937	Box scan (color)
yes	938	Box scan (black and white)
yes	939	Remote scan (color)
yes	940	Remote scan (black and white)
no	941	Transmission scan / Fax (color)
no	942	Transmission scan / Fax (black and white)
no	943	Transmission scan / I Fax (color)
no	944	Transmission scan / I Fax (black and white)
yes	945	Transmission scan / E-mail (color)
yes	946	Transmission scan / E-mail (black and white)
no	947	Transmission scan /FTP(color)
no	948	Transmission scan /FTP(black and white)
no	949	Transmission scan /SMB(color)
no	950	Transmission scan /SMB(black and white)
no	951	Transmission scan /IPX(color)
no	952	Transmission scan /IPX(black and white)
no	953	Transmission scan / Database (color)
no	954	Transmission scan / Database (black and white)
no	955	Transmission scan / Local print (color)
no	956	Transmission scan / Local print (black and white)
no	957	Transmission scan / Box (color)
no	958	Transmission scan / Box (black and white)

18.6.1.8 COPIER > OPTION > USER (2/3)

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

T-18-79

COPIER > OPTION > USER			
Item	Level	Description	
DATE-DSP	2	Title	Switching of date/time display format
		Purpose of use	To switch to the date/time display which matches the format used in the country or region concerned.
		When used	When the user asks for the item to be provided
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: YYMM/DD 1: DD/MM'YY 2: MM/DD/YY
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	The value differs depending on the destination.
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	The setting is reflected in the date setting sequence for the date/time setting accessed from system control settings and in the sequence of the year/month/day printed on reports.		

COPIER > OPTION > USER			
Item	Level	Description	
MB-CCV	2	Title	Restriction on control card users for mailboxes
		Purpose of use	To restrict the control card users for mailboxes.
		When used	When the user asks for the item to be provided
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: OFF (users are not restricted) 1: ON (users are restricted)
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
		CONTROL	1
Purpose of use	To select whether to output the count pulses to the charge control unit when such a unit (a coin vender or a control card made by another manufacturer) is connected.		
When used	When the user asks for the item to be provided		
Precautions for use	-		
Settings and adjustment ranges	0: PDL jobs are not charged. 1: PDL jobs are charged. Set "1" to charge for PDL jobs.		
Unit	-		
Value established when RAM is cleared	0		
Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-		
Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.		
Related service modes	-		
Additional description and notes	-		
B4-L-CNT	1		
		Purpose of use	To select whether to count B4 size sheets as large size sheets or small size sheets in soft counters 1 to 8.
		When used	When the user asks for the item to be provided
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: B4 size sheets are counted as small size sheets. 1: B4 size sheets are counted as large size sheets.
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	COPIER>OPTION>BODY>SC-L-CNT
		Additional description and notes	-
		TRY-STP	2
Purpose of use	To set whether to suspend printing when a full tray has been detected in the finisher.		
When used	When the user asks for the item to be provided		
Precautions for use	-		
Settings and adjustment ranges	0: Normal (printing is suspended when a full finisher tray is detected) 1: Printing is suspended only during height detection.		
Unit	-		
Value established when RAM is cleared	0		
Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-		
Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.		
Related service modes	-		
Additional description and notes	-		

COPIER > OPTION > USER			
Item	Level	Description	
MF-LG-ST	2	Title	Setting of long document button display
		Purpose of use	To display the "long document" button on the application screen accessed from the copy screen.
		When used	When making ADF copies of long documents
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: The button is not displayed. 1: The button is displayed.
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Documents up to 630 mm long can be supported by using the bypass tray unit (option; not marketed as of April 2007) for the copy paper and the ADF (option) for the copy paper.
CNT-DISP	2	Title	Setting as to whether to display the serial number on the counter status check screen
		Purpose of use	To set whether to display the serial number on the counter status check screen.
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: Serial number is displayed. 1: Serial number is not displayed.
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
COPY-JOB	1	Title	Prohibition of copy job reservations when card reader/coin vender is used
		Purpose of use	To prohibit copy job reservations when the card reader or coin vender is used.
		When used	When the user asks for the item to be provided
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: Reservations enabled 1: Reservations prohibited
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
OP-SZ-DT	2	Title	Setting as to whether to detect document sizes while platen remains open
		Purpose of use	This item is used when document size detection is to be activated while the platen remains open.
		When used	When document sizes are to be detected automatically in cases where thick books, 3-dimensional objects, etc. are scanned
		Precautions for use	When COPIER > OPTION > USER > SIZE-DET (level 2) is "0," the document sizes are not detected while the platen remains open even if this mode is set to "1."
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: Document sizes cannot be detected while the platen remains open. -> The document sizes must be input from the operation unit screen. 1: Document sizes can be detected while the platen remains open. -> The document sizes are detected by pressing the start key.
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	COPIER > OPTION > USER > SIZE-DET (level 2)
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > OPTION > USER			
Item	Level	Description	
NW-SCAN	2	Title	Enabling of network scan function
		Purpose of use	To enable the network scan function.
		When used	When the user asks for the item to be provided
		Precautions for use	The setting cannot be changed on machines for the Japanese market. This item is fixed at "1" for PS/PCL machines destined for overseas.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: The network scan function is not enabled. 1: The network scan function is enabled.
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
INS-C/S	2	Title	Expansion of inserter function
		Purpose of use	To switch between support for covers only (default) in the inserter and support for a multi-inserter with covers + inserting paper.
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: Support for covers only 1: Support for multi-inserter with covers + inserting paper
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
HDCR-DSP	2	Title	Selection of data clearing method in hard drive complete deletion mode
		Purpose of use	To select the data clearing method in the hard drive complete deletion mode.
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	1: Hard drive data is cleared using all null data in one session. 2: Hard drive data is cleared using random data in one session. 3: Hard drive data is cleared using random data in 3 sessions.
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	1
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Hard drive complete deletion function: This function writes null data or random data over the file data areas at the time when the files are deleted logically (when the control information data is deleted) to clear the hard drive.

COPIER > OPTION > USER			
Item	Level	Description	
JOB-INVL	2	Title	Setting of job intervals during interrupts
		Purpose of use	With interrupt copying, it is difficult to differentiate between the sheets of one job from the sheets of another because the sheets of one job continue on from those of the previous job. As a remedial measure, gaps between the sheets are left after the last sheet of the previous job has been delivered.
		When used	When the user asks for the item to be provided
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: Standard setting (sheets of one job continue on from the sheets of the previous job) 1: Output of the following job is started after the last sheet of the interrupt copying job has been delivered. 2: The output of a job is started only after the last sheet of the previous job has been delivered for all jobs.
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
TAB-ROT	1	Title	Rotation of images by 180 degrees during PDL printing (tab sheets used, for landscape images)
		Purpose of use	To rotate the images by 180 degrees when printing landscape images on tab sheets during PDL printing.
		When used	When the user asks for the item to be provided
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: Images are not rotated by 180 degrees. 1: Images are rotated by 180 degrees.
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
PR-PSESW	1	Title	Selection of print pause function switch display
		Purpose of use	To display the "print pause" button on the system status/suspension screen.
		When used	When the user asks for the item to be provided; when quickly suspending a print job being executed or reserved
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: The "print pause" button is not displayed. 1: The "print pause" button is displayed.
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > OPTION > USER			
Item	Level	Description	
IDPRN-SW	1	Title	Switching of job types counted up by department control counters
		Purpose of use	To switch the type of jobs which are to be counted up by the department control counters.
		When used	When the user asks for the item to be provided
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: For countup by PRINT category > BoxPrint, ReportPrint, SendLocalPrint, PDLPrint For countup by COPY category > COPY 1: For countup by PRINT category > ReportPrint, SendLocalPrint, PDLPrint For countup by COPY category > COPY, BoxPrint
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
CPRT-DSP	1	Title	Selection as to whether to display count print button on sales counter check screen
		Purpose of use	To select whether to display the count print button on the sales counter check screen.
		When used	When the user asks for the item to be provided; used only for machines for the Japanese market
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: The count print button is not displayed. 1: The count print button is displayed.
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
PCL-COPY	2	Title	Binder control mode of COPIES command for PCL
		Purpose of use	To make the COPIES command control method when Canon's PCL is used identical to the COPIES command control method used in the PCLs of other manufacturers.
		When used	When the user asks for the item to be provided
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: COPIES as specified on each page Control is exercised on a page-by-page basis in accordance with the command value. 1: COPIES as specified on page 1 The command value is treated as the binding number, and the value of the COPIES command for the subsequent pages is canceled. (In the sorting mode only; in non-sorting modes, control is the same as with the "0" setting.) 2 to 65535: For future expansion "0" is the control method for Canon's PCL. To make this identical to the control method used in the PCLs of other manufacturers, use the "1" setting.
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > OPTION > USER			
Item	Level	Description	
CNT-SW	1	Title	Selection of default display item for charge counter
		Purpose of use	To select the default display item for the charge counter which is to be displayed on the counter status check screen.
		When used	When the user asks for the item to be provided; used only for machines for the Japanese market
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: Counter 1 - Total 1: 101, Counter 2 - Total (black and white): 108 Counter 3 - Copy (full color + mono color/1): 232, Counter 4 - Print (full color + mono color/1): 324 1: Counter 1 - Total 2: 102, Counter 2 - Copy (full color + mono color/2): 231, Counter 3 - Total A (full color + mono color/2): 148, Counter 4 - Copy (black and white 2): 222, Counter 5 - Total A (black and white 2): 133 2: (Version incorporating mono color with setting 0) Counter 1 - Total 1:101, Counter 2 - Total (black and white 1): 108 Counter 3 - Copy (full color + mono color/1): 232, Counter 4 - Print (full color + mono color/1): 324, Counter 5 - Total (mono color 1): 118 3: Counter 1 - Total 1: 101, Counter 2 - Total (full color + mono color/small): 123 Counter 3 - Total (full color + mono color/large): 122, Counter 4 - Total (black and white/small): 113 Counter 5 - Total (black and white/large): 112, Counter 6 - Scan (total 1): 501 4: (Version incorporating mono co
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
TAB-ACC	1	Title	Setting of auto cassette change operation for tab sheets (index sheets)
		Purpose of use	To set up so that auto cassette change (ACC) is initiated when the paper has run out while tab sheets (index sheets) are being used.
		When used	When the user asks for the item to be provided
		Precautions for use	The user must be instructed to observe the following strictly when this mode is used. - The same tab sheet must be used for the number of tabs. - Tab sheets must be installed. If these instructions are not followed, not only will the documents not be printed properly but problems such as dirt inside the machine resulting from the toner may arise as well.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: No auto cassette change is initiated between tab sheets. 1: Auto cassette change is initiated between tab sheets.
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
BCNT-AST	1	Title	Selection of job type when BoxPrint is counted by NE controller
		Purpose of use	To select the job type to be counted when BoxPrint is counted by the NE controller.
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: Jobs are counted as PDL jobs. 1: Jobs are counted as copy jobs.
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > OPTION > USER			
Item	Level	Description	
PRJOB-CP	2	Title	Setting as to whether to send count pulses during receive print and ReportPrint
		Purpose of use	To set whether to send count pulse notices for each page during receive print or ReportPrint to the charge control unit (a coin vender or a control card made by another manufacturer) when such a unit is being used.
		When used	When the user asks for the item to be provided
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: Count pulses are not sent. 1: Count pulses are sent.
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	-		
DFLT-CPY	1	Title	Color mode setting (for copying)
		Purpose of use	To set the default color mode to be used for copying.
		When used	When the user asks for the item to be provided
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: Operation complies with the Auto/ACS/printer driver setting. 1: Full color mode 2: Black and white mode
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	-		
DFLT-BOX	1	Title	Color mode setting (for BoxPrint)
		Purpose of use	To set the default color mode to be used for BoxPrint.
		When used	When the user asks for the item to be provided
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: Operation complies with the Auto/ACS/printer driver setting. 1: Full color mode 2: Black and white mode
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	-		
DPT-ID-7	2	Title	Selection of 7-digit password input for department ID registration, authentication
		Purpose of use	To set up so that the department ID and also the password are input in 7 digits for department ID registration and authentication.
		When used	When the user asks for the item to be provided
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: Input as before. 1: Input using 7 digits
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	-		

COPIER > OPTION > USER			
Item	Level	Description	
RUI-RJT	2	Title	Setting as to whether to disconnect HTTP port during illegal authentication from remote UI
		Purpose of use	To disconnect the HTTP port when illegal authentication has occurred 3 times from a remote UI.
		When used	When the user asks for the item to be provided
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: The HTTP port is not disconnected. 1: The HTTP port is disconnected.
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
SND-RATE	2	Title	Compression ratio setting switch of send system when high compression is specified
		Purpose of use	To set the compression rate when "high" has been selected for the compression rate at SEND.
		When used	When the sizes of the files sent are to be reduced
		Precautions for use	When the value is increased (compression rate is increased), the image quality deteriorates.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: 1/16 compression ratio 1: 1/20 compression ratio 2: 1/24 compression ratio
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
CTM-S06	2	Title	Setting to delete password from file transmission address export file
		Purpose of use	To set the deletion of the password from the file transmission address export file.
		When used	When the user asks for the item to be provided; when the leakage of information is to be prevented
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: The password is not deleted. 1: The password is deleted. When '1' is set, the password for the file transmission destination is deleted from the export file when the address book data is exported from the remote UI.
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
FREG-SW	2	Title	Selection of whether to display MEAP counter (for SEND) free register area
		Purpose of use	To select whether to display the free register area of the MEAP counter (for SEND).
		When used	When trouble is analyzed
		Precautions for use	- This must not be used for regular servicing. - It must be used in accordance with the instructions given by the Quality Support department.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: The free register area is not displayed. 1: The free register area is displayed.
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	The MEAP counter has a free register area in which the MEAP applications can be counted up independently.

COPIER > OPTION > USER			
Item	Level	Description	
IFAX-SZL	2	Title	Selection of whether to impose transmission size limits during IFAX transmissions
		Purpose of use	To enable data whose volume is greater than the upper limit of the transmission data size to be transmitted in IFAX transmissions which do not go through the server.
		When used	When the user asks for the item to be provided
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: The transmission size limit is imposed (both when the transmissions go through and do not go through the server). 1: The transmission size limit is released (but only when the transmissions do not go through the server). Error #830 results if data whose volume exceeds the upper limit is transmitted when '0' is set.
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	1
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	The upper limit for the transmission data size can be set in the user mode by selecting the following: system control settings > communication control settings > email/I-FAX settings > upper limit of transmission data size
IFAX-PGD	2	Title	Selection of whether to enable page division transmission during IFAX Simple mode transmissions (only when upper limit of transmission data size is exceeded)
		Purpose of use	To enable the division transmissions on a page-by-page basis when the transmission data exceeds the upper limit of the transmission data size during IFAX Simple mode transmissions.
		When used	When the user asks for the item to be provided
		Precautions for use	When '0' is set: - The page sequence at the receiving end cannot be guaranteed. - Other jobs received may interrupt between pages. The setting must be changed only after explaining to the user and having the user understand the possible problems that may arise from the change.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: Page division transmission during IFAX Simple mode transmissions is not enabled 1: Page division transmission during IFAX Simple mode transmissions is enabled
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	The upper limit for the transmission data size can be set in the user mode by selecting the following: system control settings > communication control settings > email/I-FAX settings > upper limit of transmission data size
MEAPSAFE	2	Title	Switching to MEAP safe mode
		Purpose of use	This item is used to switch to the safe mode in order to initiate the system restoration processing when the MEAP platform fails to start up properly. It controls the shutdown of the MEAP applications, and switches to the safe mode (in which the logs and other data for ascertaining the causes of MEAP trouble can be obtained).
		When used	When the MEAP platform fails to start up properly due to contention of resources among the MEAP applications, service registration or utilization sequence or some other factor
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: Normal mode 1: Safe mode
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	The safe mode is a mode for shutting down already installed MEAP applications and starting up only the system applications which are started up in the default status so that the system will start up safely. It enables the logs for ascertaining the causes of MEAP trouble to be obtained. While the safe mode is established, "MPSF" appears on the operation unit screen.

COPIER > OPTION > USER			
Item	Level	Description	
TRAY-FLL	2	Title	Setting of full notice when trays are full
		Purpose of use	To set the full notice when the trays are full.
		When used	When the user asks for the item to be provided
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: When all the trays which can deliver sheets are full 1: Only when it is detected that all the trays specified as special-purpose trays are full
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	-		
PRNT-POS	2	Title	Switch for selecting whether to initiate pause of all subsequent print jobs when a job has been canceled following an error occurrence
		Purpose of use	To initiate pause for all print jobs when, during PDL printing, job cancellation (#037, etc.) has occurred due to any error inside the machine other than a service call error.
		When used	When the user asks for the item to be provided
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: Pausing of all subsequent print jobs not initiated 1: Pausing of all subsequent print jobs initiated
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	-		
AFN-PSWD	2	Title	Restriction on access to user mode
		Purpose of use	To restrict access to the user mode by way of a password.
		When used	When the user asks for the item to be provided
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: Normal mode (the display transfers to the user mode screen without requesting a password from the user). 1: Display transfer to the user mode screen after the correct password has been entered. When '1' is set, the user is requested to input the system administrator password after pressing the initial settings/registration key (Additional Functions) key.
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	-		

COPIER > OPTION > USER			
Item	Level	Description	
PTJAM-RC	2	Title	Automatic resumption of printing switch for PDL print jams
		Purpose of use	To set whether to automatically resume printing after releasing a jam when jamming has occurred during PDL printing.
		When used	When the user asks for the item to be provided
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: OFF (printing is not automatically resumed). 1: ON (printing is automatically resumed).
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	1
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
TRAY-SEL	1	Title	Finisher delivery tray position selector switch
		Purpose of use	This item is used to select the delivery destination in cases where documents consisting of multiple sheets, deposit number of prints 1 and sorting have been designated and A&B has been specified for the special-purpose trays.
		When used	When the user asks for the item to be provided
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: The sheets are output to the sample tray. 1: The sheets are output to tray B.
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
PDL-NCSW	2	Title	PDL print job card control mode setting
		Purpose of use	To place the PDL print jobs under the control of the card reader.
		When used	When the user asks for the item to be provided
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: PDL printing is performed regardless of whether a card is inserted. 1: PDL printing is not performed when a card has not been inserted or the department ID does not match; PDL printing is performed when a card has been inserted and when the department ID matches.
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > OPTION > USER			
Item	Level	Description	
SLP-SLCT	2	Title	Network-type application use selector switch
		Purpose of use	Specific packets must be received for the machine to be reset from sleep mode 3 via the network. Since the existing network-type applications (NetSpot Accountant and imageWARE) do not send these packets, the machine cannot be reset via the network when its operation has transferred to sleep mode 3.
		When used	When the user asks for the item to be provided
		Precautions for use	- This must not be used for regular servicing. - When '1' is set, operation is no longer transferred to sleep mode 3 (2W power) so this is not disadvantageous in terms of minimizing the power consumption.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: Not used (operation can transfer to sleep mode 3) 1: Used (operation cannot transfer to sleep mode 3) Set this item to '1' if the machine is to be allowed to be reset from the sleep mode via the network.
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
PS-MODE	2	Title	Compatibility mode selection when PS is used (image processing, print specifications)
		Purpose of use	To maintain compatibility with existing machines in terms of image processing and print specifications for PS prints.
		When used	When replacing from an existing machine
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: PS compatibility mode is not used. 1: Same image processing as for iR2200, 2800, 3300 series (compatibility with existing machines) 2: Same image processing as for iR105 (compatibility with existing machines) 3: Reserved 4: Printing on both sides of the sheets when both the landscape and portrait formats are involved and a controller made by Canon is used. 5 to 65535: Reserved When '1' is set, the same printing results as those obtained from the iR2200, 2800 and 3300 series are achieved. When '2' is set, the same printing results as those obtained from the iR105 series are achieved.
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
CNCT-RLZ	2	Title	Connection serializing function ON/OFF
		Purpose of use	To set the connection serializing function to ON and OFF. Connection serializing is a function for guaranteeing the job grouping function of imageWARE Output Manager Select Edition V1.0. The job grouping function is guaranteed by means of a setting which does not allow multiple connections to be accepted at the machine end.
		When used	When the user asks for the item to be provided
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: OFF 1: ON When '1' is set, the job data of the second and any subsequent connections will not be received until the reception of the job data of the first connection is completed to prevent the rearrangement of the jobs.
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Connections: This refers to the connections established through the network between the machine and a multiple number of hosts (such as PCs). Job grouping function: This is a function of imageWARE Output Manager Select Edition V1.0 which prevents the current job from being interrupted by jobs from other PCs by means of group jobs (the transmission of a multiple number of jobs in a single job transmission session).

COPIER > OPTION > USER			
Item	Level	Description	
COUNTER7	1	Title	Setting of soft counter 7 on counter check status screen
		Purpose of use	To set the counter type for soft counter 7 which is displayed on the counter check status screen.
		When used	When the user or dealer asks for the item to be provided
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 999
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
		COUNTER8	1
Purpose of use	To set the counter type for soft counter 8 which is displayed on the counter check status screen.		
When used	When the user or dealer asks for the item to be provided		
Precautions for use	-		
Settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 999		
Unit	-		
Value established when RAM is cleared	0		
Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-		
Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.		
Related service modes	-		
Additional description and notes	-		
2C-CT-SW	2		
LDAP-SW	1	Title	LDAP server search condition selector switch
		Purpose of use	To set the search conditions when searching for email addresses, etc. from the LDAP server.
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: '(Target) including next' 1: '(Target) excluding next' 2: '(Target) same as next' 3: '(Target) not the same as next' 4: '(Target) starting with next' 5: '(Target) ending with next'
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	4
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	LDAP: Lightweight Directory Access Protocol The LDAP server registration can be performed by accessing the LDAP server registration from the system control settings. Once registered, email addresses, etc. can be searched from it. The search results (email addresses, etc.) can be registered on address lists.

COPIER > OPTION > USER			
Item	Level	Description	
FROM-OF	1	Title	From address deletion switch when sending mail
		Purpose of use	To set whether to delete the from addresses when sending mail.
		When used	When the user asks for the item to be provided
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: The from addresses are not deleted. 1: The from addresses are deleted.
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
DOM-ADD	2	Title	Switch for adding input of send destination domain when sending mail
		Purpose of use	To send the addresses which are input when mail is sent together with the domain (example: @xxx.com) which has been set in the user mode.
		When used	When the user asks for the item to be provided
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: The send destination domain is not added. 1: The send destination domain is added. Example: When the user sends mail to aaa@xxx.com When the domain is set to xxx.com in the user mode and then this mode item is set to '1', "aaa@xxx.com" is displayed simply by inputting "xxx" when mail is to be sent.
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
SPEAKER	1	Title	Switch for selecting 'speaker/headphones switching' display of voice specifications setting
		Purpose of use	To set whether to display the 'speaker/headphones switching' item on the voice specifications screen in the user mode.
		When used	When the user asks for the item to be provided
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: The 'speaker/headphones switching' item is not displayed. 1: The 'speaker/headphones switching' item is displayed.
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	The 'voice specifications setting' is displayed in the user mode only when the voice guidance kit has been installed.

COPIER > OPTION > USER			
Item	Level	Description	
FILE-OF	1	Title	Switch for prohibiting transmission to file destinations
		Purpose of use	To prohibit transmission to file destinations by prohibiting the input of file addresses from the address book.
		When used	When the user asks for the item to be provided
		Precautions for use	File addresses which are already registered must be deleted manually since it is still possible to use them even when '1' is set for this item.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: Transmission to file destinations is not prohibited. 1: Transmission to file destinations is prohibited.
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	-		
MAIL-OF	1	Title	Switch for prohibiting transmission to e-mail destinations
		Purpose of use	To prohibit transmission to e-mail destinations by prohibiting the input of e-mail addresses from the address book.
		When used	When the user asks for the item to be provided
		Precautions for use	e-mail addresses which are already registered must be deleted manually since it is still possible to use them even when '1' is set for this item.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: Transmission to e-mail destinations is not prohibited. 1: Transmission to e-mail destinations is prohibited.
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	-		
IFAX-OF	1	Title	Switch for prohibiting transmission to i-FAX destinations
		Purpose of use	To prohibit transmission to i-FAX destinations by prohibiting the input of i-FAX addresses from the address book.
		When used	When the user asks for the item to be provided
		Precautions for use	i-FAX addresses which are already registered must be deleted manually since it is still possible to use them even when '1' is set for this item.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: Transmission to i-FAX destinations is not prohibited. 1: Transmission to i-FAX destinations is prohibited.
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	-		

COPIER > OPTION > USER			
Item	Level	Description	
LDAP-DEF	1	Title	Default value selector switch for LDAP server search conditions
		Purpose of use	To change the default conditions of the search target attributes which are specified when conducting advanced LDAP server searches.
		When used	When the user asks for the item to be provided
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: 'Name' 1: 'Email' 2: 'Fax' 3: 'Organization' 4: 'Organizational unit' 5: 'To be registered 1' (set as desired by the user) 6: 'To be registered 2' (set as desired by the user)
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	COPIER > OPTION > USER > LDAP-SW
		Additional description and notes	-
JA-DPI	2	Title	Job archive record resolution referencing
		Purpose of use	To convert to the set resolution and record the images for the job archives for jobs other than those received by i-FAX, etc.
		When used	When the user asks for the item to be provided
		Precautions for use	Only referencing is possible in this mode. No changes to the settings can be made. The settings can be performed only from the MEAP application that supports job archives.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: No conversion of the resolution 1: 100 x 100 dpi 2: 200 x 200 dpi 3: 300 x 300 dpi
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	3
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
JA-COMPR	2	Title	Job archive record compression rate designation
		Purpose of use	To convert to the set compression rate and record the images for the job archives for jobs other than those received by i-FAX, etc.
		When used	When the user asks for the item to be provided
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: The compression rate is not converted (same compression tables used as for the original images) 1: 1/4 compression 2: 1/8 compression 3: 1/16 compression 4: 1/32 compression 5: 1/64 compression
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	3
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > OPTION > USER			
Item	Level	Description	
CLTI-SW	1	Title	Setting of send button for color tone-related data
		Purpose of use	To set to ON and OFF the display of the send button which is used to send the color tone adjustment-related data of the user mode to the UGW server.
		When used	The item is assumed to be used by users with color management agreements.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: The send button is not displayed on the display panel. 1: The send button is displayed on the display panel.
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
FINGM-SW	2	Title	Display selector switch for fingerprint mark removal mode button
		Purpose of use	To print after having performed the pre-printing fixing operation as a measure to prevent fingerprint marks when printing from the manual feed tray; to set whether to display the button for executing the fingerprint mark prevention mode.
		When used	When fingerprint marks appear on the images
		Precautions for use	When the fingerprint mark removal mode is activated, the productivity during printing from the manual feed tray is significantly reduced.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: The button is not displayed. 1: The button is displayed. When '1' is set, the following items are displayed in the user mode. System control settings > fingerprint mark removal key display ON/OFF When the display is set to 'ON', the fingerprint mark removal mode takes effect. However, productivity during printing from the manual feed tray will be significantly reduced.
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
DK3-ASST	1	Title	Air heater control setting selection (for side paper deck)
		Purpose of use	To select the air heater ON conditions in accordance with the media and ambient operating conditions.
		When used	When the user has pointed out the occurrence of wait times under the following conditions: a. When the paper setting is switched from non-coated paper to coated paper (when, with coated paper, the air heater is turned ON and no sheets are fed until warm air is blown onto them) b. When the ambient operating conditions are near the heater ON/OFF borderline (when air heater ON/OFF switching occurs frequently due to the ambient operating conditions)
		Precautions for use	When '1' or '2' is set, the transfer performance may lower in some cases. The setting may be changed only after explaining to the user and having the user understand that this deterioration may result from the change.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: The air heater is set to ON by the paper type and ambient operating conditions 1: The air heater is set to ON only by the ambient operating conditions (the ON setting is not dependent on the paper type). 2: The air heater is always at ON (the ON setting is not dependent on either the paper type or ambient operating conditions). In the case of condition a above, the wait time can be reduced by setting the item to '1'. However, the transferability of non-coated types of paper (such as plain paper) may deteriorate in some cases. In the case of condition b above, the wait time can be reduced by setting the item to '2'. However, the transferability may deteriorate when the humidity has dropped.
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > OPTION > USER			
Item	Level	Description	
CLR-TIM	2	Title	Selection of time to clear all data in HDD encryption kit
		Purpose of use	To select the time to clear all the data when using the HDD encryption kit. When all the data is cleared, the job processing speed may be reduced depending on the data concerned. This is because the clearing of the already processed page data is conducted in parallel with the job processing and this puts a strain on the CPU and HDD access processing. The job processing capability is improved by clearing the data after the jobs have been completed.
		When used	When the user of the HDD encryption kit has pointed out that the job processing speed is slow
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: Data is cleared during job processing. 1: Data is cleared after job processing.
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
FX-BC-SW	1	Not used	
FX-CLNLV	2	Title	Fixing roller automatic refresh level setting
		Purpose of use	If wide sheets are printed after several hundred or more narrow sheets have been printed, faint glossy streaks as wide as the narrow sheets may appear parallel to the transport direction. (Example: when A3 sheets are printed after printing A4R sheets or when 12 x 18 sheets are printed after printing 11 x 17 sheets) Although automatic refresh control for the fixing roller is exercised to prevent these streaks from forming, unevenness in the gloss still occurs. This item is used as a remedial measure for this.
		When used	When glossy streaks form on the images
		Precautions for use	When the value is increased in the '+' direction, the refresh effect is enhanced. However, the service life of the fixing roller is shortened, and marks may be made on the fixing roller.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	-5 to +5 When the value is increased in the '+' direction, the refresh effect is enhanced. However, the service life of the fixing roller is shortened, and marks may be made on the fixing roller.
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it. 2) Input the setting (use the +/- keys to switch between plus and minus), and press the OK key. 3) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	This function can be used even in the user mode. By setting COPIER > OPTION > BODY > IMGC-ADJ to '1', the following item is displayed within the user mode and becomes usable. System control settings > device control settings > fixing roller automatic refresh level
HDCR-DSW	1	Title	Selection of whether to display 'all HDD data clear ON/OFF' item in user mode
		Purpose of use	To select whether to display the 'all HDD data clear ON/OFF' item in the user mode.
		When used	When the user asks for the item to be provided
		Precautions for use	This mode takes effect only when the all HDD data clear function (licensed) is activated.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: The item is not displayed. 1: The item is displayed.
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > OPTION > USER			
Item	Level	Description	
DK1-ASST	1	Title	Air heater control setting selection (for right deck)
		Purpose of use	To select the air heater ON conditions in accordance with the media and ambient operating conditions.
		When used	When the user has pointed out that a wait time occurs under the following conditions: a. When the paper setting is switched from non-coated paper to coated paper (when, with coated paper, the air heater is turned ON and no sheets are fed until warm air is blown onto them) b. When the ambient operating conditions are near the heater ON/OFF borderline (when air heater ON/OFF switching occurs frequently due to the ambient operating conditions)
		Precautions for use	When '1' or '2' is set, the transfer performance may lower in some cases. The setting may be changed only after explaining to the user and having the user understand that this deterioration may result from the change.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: The air heater is set to ON by the paper type and ambient operating conditions 1: The air heater is set to ON only by the ambient operating conditions (the ON setting is not dependent on the paper type). 2: The air heater is always at ON (the ON setting is not dependent on either the paper type or ambient operating conditions). In the case of condition a above, the wait time can be reduced by setting the item to '1'. However, the transferability of non-coated types of paper (such as plain paper) may deteriorate in some cases. In the case of condition b above, the wait time can be reduced by setting the item to '2'. However, the transferability may deteriorate when the humidity has dropped.
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
DK4-ASST	1	Title	Air heater control setting selection (for POD top level deck)
		Purpose of use	To select the air heater ON conditions in accordance with the media and ambient operating conditions.
		When used	When the user has pointed out that a wait time occurs under the following conditions: a. When the paper setting is switched from non-coated paper to coated paper (when, with coated paper, the air heater is turned ON and no sheets are fed until warm air is blown onto them) b. When the ambient operating conditions are near the heater ON/OFF borderline (when air heater ON/OFF switching occurs frequently due to the ambient operating conditions)
		Precautions for use	When '1' or '2' is set, the transfer performance may lower in some cases. The setting may be changed only after explaining to the user and having the user understand that this deterioration may result from the change.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: The air heater is set to ON by the paper type and ambient operating conditions 1: The air heater is set to ON only by the ambient operating conditions (the ON setting is not dependent on the paper type). 2: The air heater is always at ON (the ON setting is not dependent on either the paper type or ambient operating conditions). In the case of condition a above, the wait time can be reduced by setting the item to '1'. However, the transferability of non-coated types of paper (such as plain paper) may deteriorate in some cases. In the case of condition b above, the wait time can be reduced by setting the item to '2'. However, the transferability may deteriorate when the humidity has dropped.
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > OPTION > USER			
Item	Level	Description	
DK5-ASST	1	Title	Air heater control setting selection (for POD middle level deck)
		Purpose of use	To select the air heater ON conditions in accordance with the media and ambient operating conditions.
		When used	When the user has pointed out that a wait time occurs under the following conditions: a. When the paper setting is switched from non-coated paper to coated paper (when, with coated paper, the air heater is turned ON and no sheets are fed until warm air is blown onto them) b. When the ambient operating conditions are near the heater ON/OFF borderline (when air heater ON/OFF switching occurs frequently due to the ambient operating conditions)
		Precautions for use	When '1' or '2' is set, the transfer performance may lower in some cases. The setting may be changed only after explaining to the user and having the user understand that this deterioration may result from the change.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: The air heater is set to ON by the paper type and ambient operating conditions 1: The air heater is set to ON only by the ambient operating conditions (the ON setting is not dependent on the paper type). 2: The air heater is always at ON (the ON setting is not dependent on either the paper type or ambient operating conditions). In the case of condition a above, the wait time can be reduced by setting the item to '1'. However, the transferability of non-coated types of paper (such as plain paper) may deteriorate in some cases. In the case of condition b above, the wait time can be reduced by setting the item to '2'. However, the transferability may deteriorate when the humidity has dropped.
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	-		
DK6-ASST	1	Title	Air heater control setting selection (for POD bottom level deck)
		Purpose of use	To select the air heater ON conditions in accordance with the media and ambient operating conditions.
		When used	When the user has pointed out that a wait time occurs under the following conditions: a. When the paper setting is switched from non-coated paper to coated paper (when, with coated paper, the air heater is turned ON and no sheets are fed until warm air is blown onto them) b. When the ambient operating conditions are near the heater ON/OFF borderline (when air heater ON/OFF switching occurs frequently due to the ambient operating conditions)
		Precautions for use	When '1' or '2' is set, the transferability may deteriorate in some cases. The setting may be changed only after explaining to the user and having the user understand that this deterioration may result from the change.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: The air heater is set to ON by the paper type and ambient operating conditions 1: The air heater is set to ON only by the ambient operating conditions (the ON setting is not dependent on the paper type). 2: The air heater is always at ON (the ON setting is not dependent on either the paper type or ambient operating conditions). In the case of condition a above, the wait time can be reduced by setting the item to '1'. However, the transferability of non-coated types of paper (such as plain paper) may deteriorate in some cases. In the case of condition b above, the wait time can be reduced by setting the item to '2'. However, the transferability may deteriorate when the humidity has dropped.
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	-		

COPIER > OPTION > USER			
Item	Level	Description	
DK7-ASST	1	Title	Air heater control setting selection (for secondary POD top level deck)
		Purpose of use	To select the air heater ON conditions in accordance with the media and ambient operating conditions.
		When used	When the user has pointed out that a wait time occurs under the following conditions: a. When the paper setting is switched from non-coated paper to coated paper (when, with coated paper, the air heater is turned ON and no sheets are fed until warm air is blown onto them) b. When the ambient operating conditions are near the heater ON/OFF borderline (when air heater ON/OFF switching occurs frequently due to the ambient operating conditions)
		Precautions for use	When '1' or '2' is set, the transfer performance may lower in some cases. The setting may be changed only after explaining to the user and having the user understand that this deterioration may result from the change.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: The air heater is set to ON by the paper type and ambient operating conditions 1: The air heater is set to ON only by the ambient operating conditions (the ON setting is not dependent on the paper type). 2: The air heater is always at ON (the ON setting is not dependent on either the paper type or ambient operating conditions). In the case of condition a above, the wait time can be reduced by setting the item to '1'. However, the transferability of non-coated types of paper (such as plain paper) may deteriorate in some cases. In the case of condition b above, the wait time can be reduced by setting the item to '2'. However, the transferability may deteriorate when the humidity has dropped.
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
DK8-ASST	1	Title	Air heater control setting selection (for secondary POD middle level deck)
		Purpose of use	To select the air heater ON conditions in accordance with the media and ambient operating conditions.
		When used	When the user has pointed out that a wait time occurs under the following conditions: a. When the paper setting is switched from non-coated paper to coated paper (when, with coated paper, the air heater is turned ON and no sheets are fed until warm air is blown onto them) b. When the ambient operating conditions are near the heater ON/OFF borderline (when air heater ON/OFF switching occurs frequently due to the ambient operating conditions)
		Precautions for use	When '1' or '2' is set, the transfer performance may lower in some cases. The setting may be changed only after explaining to the user and having the user understand that this deterioration may result from the change.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: The air heater is set to ON by the paper type and ambient operating conditions 1: The air heater is set to ON only by the ambient operating conditions (the ON setting is not dependent on the paper type). 2: The air heater is always at ON (the ON setting is not dependent on either the paper type or ambient operating conditions). In the case of condition a above, the wait time can be reduced by setting the item to '1'. However, the transferability of non-coated types of paper (such as plain paper) may deteriorate in some cases. In the case of condition b above, the wait time can be reduced by setting the item to '2'. However, the transferability may deteriorate when the humidity has dropped.
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > OPTION > USER			
Item	Level	Description	
DK9-ASST	1	Title	Air heater control setting selection (for secondary POD bottom level deck)
		Purpose of use	To select the air heater ON conditions in accordance with the media and ambient operating conditions.
		When used	When the user has pointed out that a wait time occurs under the following conditions: a. When the paper setting is switched from non-coated paper to coated paper (when, with coated paper, the air heater is turned ON and no sheets are fed until warm air is blown onto them) b. When the ambient operating conditions are near the heater ON/OFF borderline (when air heater ON/OFF switching occurs frequently due to the ambient operating conditions)
		Precautions for use	When '1' or '2' is set, the transfer performance may lower in some cases. The setting may be changed only after explaining to the user and having the user understand that this deterioration may result from the change.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: The air heater is set to ON by the paper type and ambient operating conditions 1: The air heater is set to ON only by the ambient operating conditions (the ON setting is not dependent on the paper type). 2: The air heater is always at ON (the ON setting is not dependent on either the paper type or ambient operating conditions). In the case of condition a above, the wait time can be reduced by setting the item to '1'. However, the transferability of non-coated types of paper (such as plain paper) may deteriorate in some cases. In the case of condition b above, the wait time can be reduced by setting the item to '2'. However, the transferability may deteriorate when the humidity has dropped.
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	-		
DK2-ASST	1	Title	Air heater control setting selection (for left deck)
		Purpose of use	To select the air heater ON conditions in accordance with the media and ambient operating conditions.
		When used	When the user has pointed out that a wait time occurs under the following conditions: a. When the paper setting is switched from non-coated paper to coated paper (when, with coated paper, the air heater is turned ON and no sheets are fed until warm air is blown onto them) b. When the ambient operating conditions are near the heater ON/OFF borderline (when air heater ON/OFF switching occurs frequently due to the ambient operating conditions)
		Precautions for use	When '1' or '2' is set, the transfer performance may lower in some cases. The setting may be changed only after explaining to the user and having the user understand that this deterioration may result from the change.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: The air heater is set to ON by the paper type and ambient operating conditions 1: The air heater is set to ON only by the ambient operating conditions (the ON setting is not dependent on the paper type). 2: The air heater is always at ON (the ON setting is not dependent on either the paper type or ambient operating conditions). In the case of condition a above, the wait time can be reduced by setting the item to '1'. However, the transferability of non-coated types of paper (such as plain paper) may deteriorate in some cases. In the case of condition b above, the wait time can be reduced by setting the item to '2'. However, the transferability may deteriorate when the humidity has dropped.
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	-		

COPIER > OPTION > USER			
Item	Level	Description	
DK9-BSTP	1	Title	Air blower fan shutdown control during continuous operation (for secondary POD bottom level deck)
		Purpose of use	During the continuous operation, even the image formation request signal is not sent at the specified timing, air is blown to a paper to make it floated and standby for the next operation. Hence, it enables to start pickup immediately. However, if the air blowing time is too long, the water volume at the area where the air is blown changes, which may cause the transfer unevenness.
		When used	When the transfer unevenness occurs.
		Precautions for use	Changing to a smaller value may be effective for the transfer unevenness. However, the productivity decreases.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 20 When the transfer unevenness occurs due to the water volume change, set a smaller value. However, the pickup preparation operation is paused. It will take a time to resume pickup (approx. 15 sec); therefore, the productivity decreases.
		Unit	Seconds
		Value established when RAM is cleared	5
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	The air blower fan stops when printing data whose RIP (conversion to bitmap data) is time-consuming. Example: When this item is set to '5' and LTR sheets are used, the air blower fan will shut down when printing data whose RIP takes more than 6 or so seconds.
DK1-BSTP	1	Title	Air blower fan shutdown control during continuous operation (for right deck)
		Purpose of use	During the continuous operation, even the image formation request signal is not sent at the specified timing, air is blown to a paper to make it floated and standby for the next operation. Hence, it enables to start pickup immediately. However, if the air blowing time is too long, the water volume at the area where the air is blown changes, which may cause the transfer unevenness.
		When used	When the transfer unevenness occurs.
		Precautions for use	Changing to a smaller value may be effective for the transfer unevenness. However, the productivity decreases.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 20 When the transfer unevenness occurs due to the water volume change, set a smaller value. However, the pickup preparation operation is paused. It will take a time to resume pickup (approx. 15 sec); therefore, the productivity decreases.
		Unit	Seconds
		Value established when RAM is cleared	5
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	The air blower fan stops when printing data whose RIP (conversion to bitmap data) is time-consuming. Example: When this item is set to '5' and LTR sheets are used, the air blower fan will shut down when printing data whose RIP takes more than 6 or so seconds.
DK2-BSTP	1	Title	Air blower fan shutdown control during continuous operation (for left deck)
		Purpose of use	During the continuous operation, even the image formation request signal is not sent at the specified timing, air is blown to a paper to make it floated and standby for the next operation. Hence, it enables to start pickup immediately. However, if the air blowing time is too long, the water volume at the area where the air is blown changes, which may cause the transfer unevenness.
		When used	When the transfer unevenness occurs.
		Precautions for use	Changing to a smaller value may be effective for the transfer unevenness. However, the productivity decreases.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 20 When the transfer unevenness occurs due to the water volume change, set a smaller value. However, the pickup preparation operation is paused. It will take a time to resume pickup (approx. 15 sec); therefore, the productivity decreases.
		Unit	Seconds
		Value established when RAM is cleared	5
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	The air blower fan stops when printing data whose RIP (conversion to bitmap data) is time-consuming. Example: When this item is set to '5' and LTR sheets are used, the air blower fan will shut down when printing data whose RIP takes more than 6 or so seconds.


COPIER > OPTION > USER			
Item	Level	Description	
DK3-BSTP	1	Title	Air blower fan shutdown control during continuous operation (for side paper deck)
		Purpose of use	During the continuous operation, even the image formation request signal is not sent at the specified timing, air is blown to a paper to make it floated and standby for the next operation. Hence, it enables to start pickup immediately. However, if the air blowing time is too long, the water volume at the area where the air is blown changes, which may cause the transfer unevenness.
		When used	When the transfer unevenness occurs.
		Precautions for use	Changing to a smaller value may be effective for the transfer unevenness. However, the productivity decreases.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 20 When the transfer unevenness occurs due to the water volume change, set a smaller value. However, the pickup preparation operation is paused. It will take a time to resume pickup (approx. 15 sec); therefore, the productivity decreases.
		Unit	Seconds
		Value established when RAM is cleared	5
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	The air blower fan stops when printing data whose RIP (conversion to bitmap data) is time-consuming. Example: When this item is set to '5' and LTR sheets are used, the air blower fan will shut down when printing data whose RIP takes more than 6 or so seconds.
DK4-BSTP	1	Title	Air blower fan shutdown control during continuous operation (for POD top level deck)
		Purpose of use	During the continuous operation, even the image formation request signal is not sent at the specified timing, air is blown to a paper to make it floated and standby for the next operation. Hence, it enables to start pickup immediately. However, if the air blowing time is too long, the water volume at the area where the air is blown changes, which may cause the transfer unevenness.
		When used	When the transfer unevenness occurs.
		Precautions for use	Changing to a smaller value may be effective for the transfer unevenness. However, the productivity decreases.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 20 When the transfer unevenness occurs due to the water volume change, set a smaller value. However, the pickup preparation operation is paused. It will take a time to resume pickup (approx. 15 sec); therefore, the productivity decreases.
		Unit	Seconds
		Value established when RAM is cleared	5
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	The air blower fan stops when printing data whose RIP (conversion to bitmap data) is time-consuming. Example: When this item is set to '5' and LTR sheets are used, the air blower fan will shut down when printing data whose RIP takes more than 6 or so seconds.
DK5-BSTP	1	Title	Air blower fan shutdown control during continuous operation (for POD middle level deck)
		Purpose of use	During the continuous operation, even the image formation request signal is not sent at the specified timing, air is blown to a paper to make it floated and standby for the next operation. Hence, it enables to start pickup immediately. However, if the air blowing time is too long, the water volume at the area where the air is blown changes, which may cause the transfer unevenness.
		When used	When the transfer unevenness occurs.
		Precautions for use	Changing to a smaller value may be effective for the transfer unevenness. However, the productivity decreases.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 20 When the transfer unevenness occurs due to the water volume change, set a smaller value. However, the pickup preparation operation is paused. It will take a time to resume pickup (approx. 15 sec); therefore, the productivity decreases.
		Unit	Seconds
		Value established when RAM is cleared	5
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	The air blower fan stops when printing data whose RIP (conversion to bitmap data) is time-consuming. Example: When this item is set to '5' and LTR sheets are used, the air blower fan will shut down when printing data whose RIP takes more than 6 or so seconds.

COPIER > OPTION > USER			
Item	Level	Description	
DK6-BSTP	1	Title	Air blower fan shutdown control during continuous operation (for POD bottom level deck)
		Purpose of use	During the continuous operation, even the image formation request signal is not sent at the specified timing, air is blown to a paper to make it floated and standby for the next operation. Hence, it enables to start pickup immediately. However, if the air blowing time is too long, the water volume at the area where the air is blown changes, which may cause the transfer unevenness.
		When used	When the transfer unevenness occurs.
		Precautions for use	Changing to a smaller value may be effective for the transfer unevenness. However, the productivity decreases.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 20 When the transfer unevenness occurs due to the water volume change, set a smaller value. However, the pickup preparation operation is paused. It will take a time to resume pickup (approx. 15 sec); therefore, the productivity decreases.
		Unit	Seconds
		Value established when RAM is cleared	5
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	The air blower fan stops when printing data whose RIP (conversion to bitmap data) is time-consuming. Example: When this item is set to '5' and LTR sheets are used, the air blower fan will shut down when printing data whose RIP takes more than 6 or so seconds.
DK7-BSTP	1	Title	Air blower fan shutdown control during continuous operation (for secondary POD top level deck)
		Purpose of use	During the continuous operation, even the image formation request signal is not sent at the specified timing, air is blown to a paper to make it floated and standby for the next operation. Hence, it enables to start pickup immediately. However, if the air blowing time is too long, the water volume at the area where the air is blown changes, which may cause the transfer unevenness.
		When used	When the transfer unevenness occurs.
		Precautions for use	Changing to a smaller value may be effective for the transfer unevenness. However, the productivity decreases.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 20 When the transfer unevenness occurs due to the water volume change, set a smaller value. However, the pickup preparation operation is paused. It will take a time to resume pickup (approx. 15 sec); therefore, the productivity decreases.
		Unit	Seconds
		Value established when RAM is cleared	5
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	The air blower fan stops when printing data whose RIP (conversion to bitmap data) is time-consuming. Example: When this item is set to '5' and LTR sheets are used, the air blower fan will shut down when printing data whose RIP takes more than 6 or so seconds.
DK8-BSTP	1	Title	Air blower fan shutdown control during continuous operation (for secondary POD middle level deck)
		Purpose of use	During the continuous operation, even the image formation request signal is not sent at the specified timing, air is blown to a paper to make it floated and standby for the next operation. Hence, it enables to start pickup immediately. However, if the air blowing time is too long, the water volume at the area where the air is blown changes, which may cause the transfer unevenness.
		When used	When the transfer unevenness occurs.
		Precautions for use	Changing to a smaller value may be effective for the transfer unevenness. However, the productivity decreases.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 20 When the transfer unevenness occurs due to the water volume change, set a smaller value. However, the pickup preparation operation is paused. It will take a time to resume pickup (approx. 15 sec); therefore, the productivity decreases.
		Unit	Seconds
		Value established when RAM is cleared	5
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	The air blower fan stops when printing data whose RIP (conversion to bitmap data) is time-consuming. Example: When this item is set to '5' and LTR sheets are used, the air blower fan will shut down when printing data whose RIP takes more than 6 or so seconds.

COPIER > OPTION > USER			
Item	Level	Description	
LOWPOWER	1	Title	Low power function ON/OFF setting
		Purpose of use	To turn the low power timer function ON and OFF.
		When used	When operation is not to be transferred to the low power mode
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: OFF (no transfer to the low power mode) 1: ON (transfer to the low power mode after the time set on the low power mode timer has elapsed)
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	1
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	-		
FX1BC-SW	1	Title	Gloss unevenness correction mode
		Purpose of use	When the temperature of the pressure belt increases too much, the image gloss unevenness occurs. Because of that, when the temperature reaches the specified upper threshold, the printing operation stops and the belt cooling is executed with the belt cooling fan. With this mode, the pressure belt upper temperature threshold can be changed.
		When used	When the gloss unevenness occurs. Especially, when printing to coated papers, and printing a solid image.
		Precautions for use	By setting the value toward the negative direction, the gloss unevenness is reduced; however, the productivity decreases. Therefore, be sure to explain about it to the user, and get his/her consensus.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	-2 to +2 By considering "0" as the reference value of the upper temperature, the relationship between the threshold and the setting value is as follow: -2: -15 deg C, -1: -5 deg C, +1: +5 deg C, +2: +15 deg C By changing the value toward the negative direction, the gloss unevenness is reduced; however, the productivity may decrease (print stop due to the overheat of the belt).
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it. 2) Press the +/- keys to display the target setting, and press the OK key. 3) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	This function can be used even in the user mode. By setting COPIER > OPTION > BODY > IMG-ADJ to '1', the following item is displayed within the user mode, this function becomes usable. System Settings > Device Management settings > Uneven Gloss Correction		
XYSZ-DSP	1	Title	Selection of XY size display when there are no user-defined sheets (indeterminate form)
		Purpose of use	With existing machines, when a user-defined size has been set on the feed levels, only the fact that it is a user-defined size is displayed when there is no paper. In this machine, it is possible to set the user-defined size (indeterminate form size) for multiple feed levels. To improve the usability, display of the XY size when there is no paper is now enabled.
		When used	When the user asks for the item to be provided
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 3 0: XY size is not displayed (conventional specification). 1: Size is displayed in millimeters. 2: Size is displayed in inches. 3: Not used (for future expansion)
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it, input the setting, and press the OK key. 2) Set the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	-		

18.6.1.9 COPIER > OPTION > USER (3/3)

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

COPIER > OPTION > USER			
 The value which has been set takes effect after the main power switch has been turned OFF and back ON.			
Item	Level	Description	
EXCNTCB	1	Title	Setting to apply/not to apply color adjustment of jobs from imagePRESS server
		Purpose of use	To control whether to apply "Color Balance" and "Density Fine Adjustment" that were set in Service Mode.
		When used	Upon user's request
		Precautions for use	No impact on user who does not use color adjustment settings. Caution required for imagePRESS C7000VP user who currently uses color adjustment (settings), and it's recommended to use default setting (0). For user who does not want to change the current color adjustment settings, be sure to explain that there can be image fault if the user stick to the current settings and set '1'.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: Color adjustment setting is not applicable at the time of calibration job (patch chart) from imagePRESS server. Applicable for other jobs (jobs other than calibration job) from imagePRESS server. 1: Color adjustment setting is applicable for jobs from all of imagePRESS servers (imagePRESS C1/C7000VP compatible mode) 2: Color adjustment setting is not applicable for jobs from all of imagePRESS servers (CLC/iR compatible mode). Set '2' if you want color adjustment for any jobs other than imagePRESS servers (e.g. copy) while there is no need to apply color adjustment for jobs from imagePRESS server.
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to be highlighted (reverse display) and enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Adjustment of "Color Balance" and "Density Fine Adjustment" are available in the following User Mode: System Settings > Device Management Settings > Color Balance This User Mode items are not displayed as default. The display is available by setting '1' for the following Service Mode: COPIER > OPTION > BODY > IMGC-ADJ
PBMAX-N1	1	For future use	
PBMAX-N2	1	For future use	
PBMAX-T1	1	For future use	
PBMAX-T2	1	For future use	
PBMAX-T3	1	For future use	
PBMAX-T4	1	For future use	
PBMAX-T5	1	For future use	
PBMAX-T6	1	For future use	
PRN-WTMD	2	Title	Switch of print timing for image composition process
		Purpose of use	To improve productivity of jobs that execute image composition, print process starts when image composition process for all pages is completed.
		When used	When the user points out the productivity drop in image composition jobs such as watermark print.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: Perform printing process while processing image composition 1: Print process starts after image composition process of all pages 2: For future use Set '1' when a user points out the drop in productivity
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	0
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to be highlighted (reverse display) and enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

18.6.1.10 COPIER > OPTION > CST

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

COPIER > OPTION > CST			
Item	Level	Description	
U1-NAME	2	Title	ON/OFF of paper name display when paper size group (U1) is detected
		Purpose	Make ON/OFF setting for paper name display when paper size group (U1) is detected
		Situation	Upon request from user
		Note	-
		Settings/Adjustment range	0: OFF 1: ON
		Unit	-
		Value at RAM clear	0
		Adjustment at factory shipment	-
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
		Relevant Service Mode	-
Supplementary info/Memo	-		
U2-NAME	2	Title	ON/OFF of paper name display when paper size group (U2) is detected
		Purpose	Make ON/OFF setting for paper name display when paper size group (U2) is detected
		Situation	Upon request from user
		Note	-
		Settings/Adjustment range	0: OFF 1: ON
		Unit	-
		Value at RAM clear	0
		Adjustment at factory shipment	-
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
		Relevant Service Mode	-
Supplementary info/Memo	-		
U3-NAME	2	Title	ON/OFF of paper name display when paper size group (U3) is detected
		Purpose	Make ON/OFF setting for paper name display when paper size group (U3) is detected
		Situation	Upon request from user
		Note	-
		Settings/Adjustment range	0: OFF 1: ON
		Unit	-
		Value at RAM clear	0
		Adjustment at factory shipment	-
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
		Relevant Service Mode	-
Supplementary info/Memo	-		
U4-NAME	2	Title	ON/OFF of paper name display when paper size group (U4) is detected
		Purpose	Make ON/OFF setting for paper name display when paper size group (U4) is detected
		Situation	Upon request from user
		Note	-
		Settings/Adjustment range	0: OFF 1: ON
		Unit	-
		Value at RAM clear	0
		Adjustment at factory shipment	-
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
		Relevant Service Mode	-
Supplementary info/Memo	-		

COPIER > OPTION > CST			
Item	Level	Description	
U-SZ-SW	1	Title	Button for switching selection button display for special paper (used outside Japan)
		Purpose	Switch to display/hide the button in User Mode that enables selection of special paper used outside Japan.
		Situation	Upon request from user. When special paper (e.g. OFFICIO, A-LTR: used outside Japan) is used.
		Note	-
		Settings/Adjustment range	0:Hide (no display) 1:Display
		Unit	-
		Value at RAM clear	0
		Adjustment at factory shipment	-
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
		Relevant Service Mode	-
		Supplementary info/Memo	-
D1-CURL	1	Title	Setting of curl correction amount on a pickup cassette basis (right deck).
		Purpose	Setting the uniformed curl correction amount for paper picked up from the right deck. Separate setting for the 1st side/2nd side is available.
		Situation	In case of setting the curl correction amount
		Note	-
		Settings/Adjustment range	1st side: -15 to 15 2nd side: -15 to 15
		Unit	-
		Value at RAM clear	0
		Adjustment at factory shipment	-
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select the item (D1-CURL) to be highlighted. 2) Between the two input fields at the right next to the item (D1-CURL), select one to be highlighted. Select the left side field in case of setting the curl correction amount for the 1st-side. Select the right side field in case of setting the curl correction amount for the 2nd side. 3) Enter the setting value and switch the code (-/+) using -/+ key, and then press OK key. 4) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
		Relevant Service Mode	-
		Supplementary info/Memo	0
D2-CURL	1	Title	Setting of curl correction amount on a pickup cassette basis (left deck).
		Purpose	Setting the uniformed curl correction amount for paper picked up from the left deck. Separate setting for the 1st side/2nd side is available.
		Situation	In case of setting the curl correction amount
		Note	-
		Settings/Adjustment range	1st side: -15 to 15 2nd side: -15 to 15
		Unit	-
		Value at RAM clear	0
		Adjustment at factory shipment	-
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select the item (D2-CURL) to be highlighted. 2) Between the two input fields at the right next to the item (D2-CURL), select one to be highlighted. Select the left side field in case of setting the curl correction amount for the 1st-side. Select the right side field in case of setting the curl correction amount for the 2nd side. 3) Enter the setting value and switch the code (-/+) using -/+ key, and then press OK key. 4) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
		Relevant Service Mode	-
		Supplementary info/Memo	See supplementary information/MEMO: COPIER>OPTION>CST>D1-CURL

COPIER > OPTION > CST				
Item	Level	Description		
D3-CURL	1	Title	Setting of curl correction amount on a pickup cassette basis (side paper deck).	
		Purpose	Setting the uniformed curl correction amount for paper picked up from the side paper deck. Separate setting for the 1st side/2nd side is available.	
		Situation	In case of setting the curl correction amount	
		Note	-	
		Settings/Adjustment range	1st side: -15 to 15 2nd side: -15 to 15	
		Unit	-	
		Value at RAM clear	0	
		Adjustment at factory shipment	-	
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select the item (D3-CURL) to be highlighted. 2) Between the two input fields at the right next to the item (D3-CURL), select one to be highlighted. Select the left side field in case of setting the curl correction amount for the 1st-side. Select the right side field in case of setting the curl correction amount for the 2nd side. 3) Enter the setting value and switch the code (-/+) using -/+ key, and then press OK key. 4) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.	
		Relevant Service Mode	-	
Supplementary info/Memo	See supplementary information/MEMO: COPIER>OPTION>CST>D1-CURL			
D4-CURL	1	Title	Setting of curl correction amount on a pickup cassette basis (POD upper deck).	
		Purpose	Setting the uniformed curl correction amount for paper picked up from the POD upper deck. Separate setting for the 1st side/2nd side is available.	
		Situation	In case of setting the curl correction amount	
		Note	-	
		Settings/Adjustment range	1st side: -15 to 15 2nd side: -15 to 15	
		Unit	-	
		Value at RAM clear	0	
		Adjustment at factory shipment	-	
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select the item (D4-CURL) to be highlighted. 2) Between the two input fields at the right next to the item (D4-CURL), select one to be highlighted. Select the left side field in case of setting the curl correction amount for the 1st-side. Select the right side field in case of setting the curl correction amount for the 2nd side. 3) Enter the setting value and switch the code (-/+) using -/+ key, and then press OK key. 4) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.	
		Relevant Service Mode	-	
Supplementary info/Memo	See supplementary information/MEMO: COPIER>OPTION>CST>D1-CURL			
D5-CURL	1	Title	Setting of curl correction amount on a pickup cassette basis (POD middle deck).	
		Purpose	Setting the uniformed curl correction amount for paper picked up from the POD middle deck. Separate setting for the 1st side/2nd side is available.	
		Situation	In case of setting the curl correction amount	
		Note	-	
		Settings/Adjustment range	1st side: -15 to 15 2nd side: -15 to 15	
		Unit	-	
		Value at RAM clear	0	
		Adjustment at factory shipment	-	
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select the item (D5-CURL) to be highlighted. 2) Between the two input fields at the right next to the item (D5-CURL), select one to be highlighted. Select the left side field in case of setting the curl correction amount for the 1st-side. Select the right side field in case of setting the curl correction amount for the 2nd side. 3) Enter the setting value and switch the code (-/+) using -/+ key, and then press OK key. 4) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.	
		Relevant Service Mode	-	
Supplementary info/Memo	See supplementary information/MEMO: COPIER>OPTION>CST>D1-CURL			

COPIER > OPTION > CST				
Item	Level	Description		
D6-CURL	1	Title	Setting of curl correction amount on a pickup cassette basis (POD lower deck).	
		Purpose	Setting the uniformed curl correction amount for paper picked up from the POD lower deck. Separate setting for the 1st side/2nd side is available.	
		Situation	In case of setting the curl correction amount	
		Note	-	
		Settings/Adjustment range	1st side: -15 to 15 2nd side: -15 to 15	
		Unit	-	
		Value at RAM clear	0	
		Adjustment at factory shipment		
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select the item (D6-CURL) to be highlighted. 2) Between the two input fields at the right next to the item (D6-CURL), select one to be highlighted. Select the left side field in case of setting the curl correction amount for the 1st-side. Select the right side field in case of setting the curl correction amount for the 2nd side. 3) Enter the setting value and switch the code (-/+) using -/+ key, and then press OK key. 4) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.	
		Relevant Service Mode	-	
Supplementary info/Memo	See supplementary information/MEMO: COPIER>OPTION>CST>D1-CURL			
D7-CURL	1	Title	Setting of curl correction amount on a pickup cassette basis (secondary POD upper deck).	
		Purpose	Setting the uniformed curl correction amount for paper picked up from the secondary POD upper deck. Separate setting for the 1st side/2nd side is available.	
		Situation	In case of setting the curl correction amount	
		Note	-	
		Settings/Adjustment range	1st side: -15 to 15 2nd side: -15 to 15	
		Unit	-	
		Value at RAM clear	0	
		Adjustment at factory shipment	-	
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select the item (D7-CURL) to be highlighted. 2) Between the two input fields at the right next to the item (D7-CURL), select one to be highlighted. Select the left side field in case of setting the curl correction amount for the 1st-side. Select the right side field in case of setting the curl correction amount for the 2nd side. 3) Enter the setting value and switch the code (-/+) using -/+ key, and then press OK key. 4) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.	
		Relevant Service Mode	-	
Supplementary info/Memo	See supplementary information/MEMO: COPIER>OPTION>CST>D1-CURL			
D8-CURL	1	Title	Setting of curl correction amount on a pickup cassette basis (secondary POD middle deck).	
		Purpose	Setting the uniformed curl correction amount for paper picked up from the secondary POD middle deck. Separate setting for the 1st side/2nd side is available.	
		Situation	In case of setting the curl correction amount	
		Note	-	
		Settings/Adjustment range	1st side: -15 to 15 2nd side: -15 to 15	
		Unit	-	
		Value at RAM clear	0	
		Adjustment at factory shipment	-	
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select the item (D8-CURL) to be highlighted. 2) Between the two input fields at the right next to the item (D8-CURL), select one to be highlighted. Select the left side field in case of setting the curl correction amount for the 1st-side. Select the right side field in case of setting the curl correction amount for the 2nd side. 3) Enter the setting value and switch the code (-/+) using -/+ key, and then press OK key. 4) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.	
		Relevant Service Mode	-	
Supplementary info/Memo	See supplementary information/MEMO: COPIER>OPTION>CST>D1-CURL			

COPIER > OPTION > CST				
Item	Level	Description		
D9-CURL	1	Title	Setting of curl correction amount on a pickup cassette basis (secondary POD lower deck).	
		Purpose	Setting the uniformed curl correction amount for paper picked up from the secondary POD lower deck. Separate setting for the 1st side/2nd side is available.	
		Situation	In case of setting the curl correction amount	
		Note	-	
		Settings/Adjustment range	1st side: -15 to 15 2nd side: -15 to 15	
		Unit	-	
		Value at RAM clear	0	
		Adjustment at factory shipment	-	
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select the item (D9-CURL) to be highlighted. 2) Between the two input fields at the right next to the item (D9-CURL), select one to be highlighted. Select the left side field in case of setting the curl correction amount for the 1st-side. Select the right side field in case of setting the curl correction amount for the 2nd side. 3) Enter the setting value and switch the code (-/+) using -/+ key, and then press OK key. 4) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.	
		Relevant Service Mode	-	
Supplementary info/Memo	See supplementary information/MEMO: COPIER>OPTION>CST>D1-CURL			
D10-CURL	1	For future extension		

18.6.1.11 COPIER > OPTION > ACC

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

T-18-82

COPIER > OPTION > ACC				
Item	Level	Description		
COIN	1	Title	Switching of coin vendor	
		Purpose	Switch coin vendor	
		Situation	When coin vendor is installed	
		Note	-	
		Setting/Adjustment range	0: Coin vendor not in use (not charged) *control card is available to use 1: Coin vendor (charged) 2: Remote counter (charged) 3: DA charging	
		Unit	-	
		Value at RAM clear	-	
		Adjustment at factory shipment	-	
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.	
		Relevant Service Mode	-	
Supplementary info/Memo	*: control card is available to use			
CARD-SW	1	Title	Switching of control panel screen when coin vendor is connected	
		Purpose	Switch the control panel screen when coin vendor is connected	
		Situation	Upon request from user	
		Note	-	
		Setting/Adjustment range	0: Screen to insert coin 1: Screen to insert card 2: Screen to insert coin and card	
		Unit	-	
		Value at RAM clear	0	
		Adjustment at factory shipment	-	
		Setting/Adjustment/Operation method	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.	
		Relevant Service Mode	-	
Supplementary info/Memo	-			

COPIER > OPTION > ACC			
Item	Level	Description	
SC-TYPE	2	Title	Switching of coin vendor-capable machine
		Purpose	Switch the type of coin vendor-capable machine
		Situation	Upon request from user
		Note	Do not use with those other than coin vendor-capable machines
		Setting/Adjustment range	-
		Unit	-
		Value at RAM clear	0: Machine introduced at convenience store 1: Machine capable of self-copy
		Adjustment at factory shipment	-
		Setting/Adjustment/ Operation method	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
		Relevant Service Mode	-
		Supplementary info/Memo	0
CC-SPSW	2	Title	Switching of control card I/F support level
		Purpose	Switch the control card (CC IV/CC V) I/F support level
		Situation	Upon request from user
		Note	-
		Setting/Adjustment range	0: No support 1: Support (priority on speed) 2: Support (priority on upper limit control of print count) Set "1" in case of giving priority on maintaining performance of printer engine. However, accurate print stop by upper limit control of print count is not available. Set "2" in case of realizing accurate print stop by upper limit control of print count. However, the performance of printer engine may drop depending of pickup position.
		Unit	-
		Value at RAM clear	0
		Adjustment at factory shipment	-
		Setting/Adjustment/ Operation method	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
		Relevant Service Mode	-
		Supplementary info/Memo	-
USB-MSK	2	Title	Switch to restrict the number of channels of USB host
		Purpose	Mask any channel of USB host
		Situation	-
		Note	-
		Setting/Adjustment range	0: No mask channel 1: CH1 mask 2: Spare
		Unit	-
		Value at RAM clear	0
		Adjustment at factory shipment	-
		Setting/Adjustment/ Operation method	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
		Relevant Service Mode	-
		Supplementary info/Memo	-

COPIER > OPTION > ACC			
Item	Level	Description	
UNIT-PRC	2	Title	Setting of currency unit handled with coin vendor
		Purpose	Make a setting of currency unit handled with coin vendor
		Situation	-
		Note	-
		Setting/Adjustment range	0: Yen 1: Euro 2: Pound 3: Swiss Franc 4: Dollar 5: No unit, no fractional unit. 6: No unit, with fractional unit.
		Unit	-
		Value at RAM clear	0
		Adjustment at factory shipment	-
		Setting/Adjustment/ Operation method	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
		Relevant Service Mode	-
		Supplementary info/Memo	-
DA-PUCT	2	Title	Setting of pickup/delivery communication at DA(Digital Accessory) charging
		Purpose	Used to prevent printing without being charged when pickup/delivery notification is faulty due to network failure.
		Situation	Same as above
		Note	The number of prints without being charged is decreased if setting a smaller value. However, productivity may drop.
		Setting/Adjustment range	2 to 10 If setting a smaller value, the number of prints without being charged is decreased. However, the productivity may drop. If setting a bigger value, the number of prints without being charged is increased. However, productivity will not drop.
		Unit	-
		Value at RAM clear	6
		Adjustment at factory shipment	-
		Setting/Adjustment/ Operation method	-
		Relevant Service Mode	-
		Supplementary info/Memo	-
TRM-CTR	1	Title	Button to switch display for replacement of trimmer blade
		Purpose	Switch whether to display/hide for replacement of trimmer blade on control panel.
		Situation	-
		Note	-
		Setting/Adjustment range	0:Hide (no display) 1:Display
		Unit	-
		Value at RAM clear	0
		Adjustment at factory shipment	-
		Setting/Adjustment/ Operation method	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
		Relevant Service Mode	-
		Supplementary info/Memo	-

COPIER > OPTION > ACC			
Item	Level	Description	
TRM-CTRH	1	Title	Button to switch display for replacement of trimmer blade guard
		Purpose	Switch whether to display/hide for replacement of trimmer blade guard on control panel.
		Situation	-
		Note	-
		Setting/Adjustment range	0:Not to display 1:Display
		Unit	-
		Value at RAM clear	0
		Adjustment at factory shipment	-
		Setting/Adjustment/ Operation method	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
		Relevant Service Mode	-
		Supplementary info/Memo	-
BND-CTR	1	Title	Button to switch display for replacement of perfect binder blade
		Purpose	Switch whether to display/hide for replacement of perfect binder blade on control panel.
		Situation	-
		Note	-
		Setting/Adjustment range	0:Hide (no display) 1:Display
		Unit	-
		Value at RAM clear	0
		Adjustment at factory shipment	-
		Setting/Adjustment/ Operation method	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
		Relevant Service Mode	-
		Supplementary info/Memo	-
BND-CTRH	1	Title	Button to switch display for replacement of perfect binder blade guard
		Purpose	Switch whether to display/hide for replacement of perfect binder blade guard on control panel.
		Situation	-
		Note	-
		Setting/Adjustment range	0:Not to display 1:Display
		Unit	-
		Value at RAM clear	0
		Adjustment at factory shipment	-
		Setting/Adjustment/ Operation method	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
		Relevant Service Mode	-
		Supplementary info/Memo	-

18.6.1.12 COPIER > OPTION > INT-FACE

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

T-18-83

COPIER > OPTION > INT-FACE				
Item	Level	Description		
IMG-CONT	1	Title	Print server connection setting	
		Purpose of use	Make the connection setting with the print server.	
		When used	At installation	
		Precautions for use	-	
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: Normal mode (print server unconnected) 1: Not in use 2: Not in use 3: Print server connected 4: Not in use 5: Not in use	
		Unit	-	
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0	
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-	
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select an item and highlight the display. Then enter the specified value and press [OK] key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.	
		Related service modes	-	
Additional description and notes	-			

When the value is set to 1, the values of the following user mode items return to the standard values.

- System administration setting > Network setting > TCP/IP setting > IP address setting > IP address
- System administration setting > Network setting > TCP/IP setting > IP address setting > Subnet mask
- System administration setting > Network setting > TCP/IP setting > IP address setting > Gateway address
- System administration setting > Network setting > TCP/IP setting > Ethernet driver setting > Communication method
- System administration setting > Network setting > TCP/IP setting > Ethernet driver setting > Ethernet type
- System administration setting > Network setting > TCP/IP setting > Activation time

The following user mode settings are set to OFF.

- System administration setting > Network setting > TCP/IP setting > IP address setting > Use of DHCP
- System administration setting > Network setting > TCP/IP setting > IP address setting > Use of RARP
- System administration setting > Network setting > TCP/IP setting > IP address setting > Use of BOOTP
- System administration setting > Network setting > TCP/IP setting > Ethernet driver setting > Automatic detection
- System administration setting > Network setting > Use of spool function

When the value is set to 3 or 4, the following settings are set to OFF in addition to the items mentioned above.

- System administration setting > Network setting > TCP/IP setting > RAW setting
- System administration setting > Network setting > TCP/IP setting > LPD setting
- System administration setting > Network setting > TCP/IP setting > IPP printing
- System administration setting > Network setting > SMB setting
- System administration setting > Network setting > TCP/IP setting > FTP print setting > Use of FTP print.
- System administration setting > Network setting > TCP/IP setting > BMLinkS setting > Use of BMLinkS.
- System administration setting > Network setting > NetWare setting > Use of NetWare.

Since the items mentioned above do not recover even when you set the value back to "0 (Normal mode)", make the setting again whenever necessary.

T-18-84

COPIER > OPTION > INT-FACE				
Item	Level	Description		
AP-OPT	2	Title	Enable/disable print setting from the application (PrintMe) with print server installed	
		Purpose of use	Make enable/disable print setting from the application (PrintMe) with print server installed	
		When used	At user request	
		Precautions for use	-	
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: Print permission with the specified account 1: Print permission without an account 2: No print permission (Only specified department ID can be printed)	
		Unit	-	
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0	
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-	
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select an item and highlight the display. Then enter the specified value and press [OK] key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.	
		Related service modes	-	
Additional description and notes	-			

COPIER > OPTION > INT-FACE			
Item	Level	Description	
AP-ACCNT	2	Title	Department ID setting of a print job from the application (PrintMe) with print server installed
		Purpose of use	Make a department ID setting of a print job from the application (PrintMe) with print server installed
		When used	At user request
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 9999999
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select an item and highlight the display. Then enter the specified value and press [OK] key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
		AP-CODE	2
Purpose of use	Make a pass code setting from the print server		
When used	-		
Precautions for use	-		
Settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 9999999		
Unit	-		
Value established when RAM is cleared	0		
Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-		
Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select an item and highlight the display. Then enter the specified value and press [OK] key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.		
Related service modes	-		
Additional description and notes	-		
NWCT-TM	2		
		Purpose of use	Make a timeout setting for keeping the network connection between the host machine and the PC application (*). (Keep alive setting)
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	1 to 5
		Unit	Minute
		Value established when RAM is cleared	5
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select an item and highlight the display. Then enter the specified value and press [OK] key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	*: Main assumed PC application: Network print application, E-mail function, remote copy printer function, MEAP network application etc.
		CNT-TYPE	1
Purpose of use	Switch the connected print server.		
When used	At print server installation		
Precautions for use	-		
Settings and adjustment ranges	1 to 999: EFI controller ID		
Unit	-		
Value established when RAM is cleared	1		
Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-		
Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select an item and highlight the display. Then enter the specified value and press [OK] key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.		
Related service modes	-		
Additional description and notes	-		

18.6.1.13 COPIER > OPTION > LCNS-TR

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

COPIER > OPTION > LCNS-TR			
Transfer Invalidation Procedure:			
1) Select the item (ST-XXXX), and highlight it.			
Enter "0", and press [OK].			
The transfer license key (24-digit) is indicated to TR-XXXX.			
Item	Level	Description	
ST-SEND	2	Title	Displaying the installation state of the SEND function upon the transfer invalidation
		Purpose of use	Display the installation state of the SEND function.
		When used	When checking for the installation of the SEND function.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: not installed 1: installed
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	See the title column in this table (Transfer Invalidation Procedure).
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
TR-SEND	2	Title	Obtaining the transfer license key of the SEND function upon the transfer invalidation
		Purpose of use	Displaying the transfer license key of the SEND function.
		When used	When replacing the HDD, or when changing the machine
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	Transfer license key: 24-digit
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
ST-ENPDF	2	Title	Displaying the installation state of the SEND encrypted PDF transmission function upon the transfer invalidation
		Purpose of use	Displaying the installation state of the SEND encrypted PDF transmission function
		When used	When checking for the installation of the SEND encrypted PDF transmission function
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: not installed 1: installed
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	See the title column in this table (Transfer Invalidation Procedure).
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > OPTION > LCNS-TR			
Transfer Invalidation Procedure: 1) Select the item (ST-XXXX), and highlight it. Enter "0", and press [OK]. The transfer license key (24-digit) is indicated to TR-XXXX.			
Item	Level	Description	
TR-ENPDF	2	Title	Obtaining the transfer license key of the SEND encrypted PDF transmission function upon the transfer invalidation
		Purpose of use	Displaying the transfer license key of the SEND encrypted PDF transmission function
		When used	When replacing the HDD, or when changing the machine
		Precautions for use	Available only in a case that the SEND function has been already installed.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	Transfer license key: 24-digit
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
ST-SPDF	2	Title	Displaying the installation state of the SEND searchable PDF transmission function upon the transfer invalidation
		Purpose of use	Displaying the installation state of the SEND searchable PDF transmission function
		When used	When checking for the installation of the SEND searchable PDF transmission function
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: not installed 1: installed
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	See the title column in this table (Transfer Invalidation Procedure).
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
TR-SPDF	2	Title	Obtaining the transfer license key of the SEND searchable PDF transmission function upon the transfer invalidation
		Purpose of use	Displaying the transfer license key of the SEND searchable PDF transmission function
		When used	When replacing the HDD, or when changing the machine
		Precautions for use	Available only in a case that the SEND function has been already installed.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	Transfer license key: 24-digit
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > OPTION > LCNS-TR			
Transfer Invalidation Procedure:			
1) Select the item (ST-XXXX), and highlight it.			
Enter "0", and press [OK].			
The transfer license key (24-digit) is indicated to TR-XXXX.			
Item	Level	Description	
ST-EXPDF	2	Title	Displaying the installation state of the PDF kit upon the transfer invalidation
		Purpose of use	Displaying the installation state of the PDF kit
		When used	When checking for the installation of the PDF kit
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: not installed 1: installed
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	See the title column in this table (Transfer Invalidation Procedure).
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	PDF kit= Encrypted PDF + Searchable PDF
TR-EXPDF	2	Title	Obtaining the transfer license key of the PDF kit upon the transfer invalidation
		Purpose of use	Displaying the transfer license key of the PDF kit
		When used	When replacing the HDD, or when changing the machine
		Precautions for use	Available only in a case that it is for inside Japan and the SEND function has been already installed.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	Transfer license key: 24-digit
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	PDF kit= Encrypted PDF + Searchable PDF
ST-PDFDR	2	Title	Displaying the installation state of the PDF direct print function upon the transfer invalidation
		Purpose of use	Displaying the installation state of the PDF direct print function
		When used	When checking for the installation of the PDF direct print function
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: not installed 1: installed
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	See the title column in this table (Transfer Invalidation Procedure).
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	
TR-PDFDR	2	Title	Obtaining the transfer license key of the PDF direct print function upon the transfer invalidation
		Purpose of use	Displaying the transfer license key of the PDF direct print function
		When used	When replacing the HDD, or when changing the machine
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	Transfer license key: 24-digit
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > OPTION > LCNS-TR			
Transfer Invalidation Procedure: 1) Select the item (ST-XXXX), and highlight it. Enter "0", and press [OK]. The transfer license key (24-digit) is indicated to TR-XXXX.			
Item	Level	Description	
ST-SCR	2	Title	Displaying the installation state of the encrypted secure print function upon the transfer invalidation
		Purpose of use	Displaying the installation state of the encrypted secure print function
		When used	When checking for the installation of the encrypted secure print function
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: not installed 1: installed
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	See the title column in this table (Transfer Invalidation Procedure).
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	-		
TR-SCR	2	Title	Obtaining the transfer license key of the encrypted secure print function upon the transfer invalidation
		Purpose of use	Displaying the transfer license key of the encrypted secure print function
		When used	When replacing the HDD, or when changing the machine
		Precautions for use	Available only in a case that "3DES+USH-H" board has been already installed.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	Transfer license key: 24-digit
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	-
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	-		
ST-HDCLR	2	Title	Displaying the installation state of the HDD encryption/erase function upon the transfer invalidation
		Purpose of use	Displaying the installation state of the HDD encryption/erase function
		When used	When checking for the installation of the HDD encryption/erase function
		Precautions for use	Available only in a case that "3DES+USH-H" board has been already installed.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: not installed 1: installed
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	See the title column in this table (Transfer Invalidation Procedure).
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	-		
TR-HDCLR	2	Title	Obtaining the transfer license key of the HDD encryption/erase function upon the transfer invalidation
		Purpose of use	Displaying the transfer license key of the HDD encryption/erase function
		When used	When replacing the HDD, or when changing the machine
		Precautions for use	Available only in a case that "3DES+USH-H" board has been already installed.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	Transfer license key: 24-digit
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	-
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	-		

COPIER > OPTION > LCNS-TR			
Transfer Invalidation Procedure:			
1) Select the item (ST-XXXX), and highlight it.			
Enter "0", and press [OK].			
The transfer license key (24-digit) is indicated to TR-XXXX.			
Item	Level	Description	
ST-BRDIM	2	Title	Displaying the installation state of the BarDIMM upon the transfer invalidation
		Purpose of use	Displaying the installation state of the BarDIMM
		When used	When checking for the installation of the BarDIMM
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: not installed 1: installed
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	See the title column in this table (Transfer Invalidation Procedure).
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
TR-BRDIM	2	Title	Obtaining the transfer license key of the BarDIMM upon the transfer invalidation
		Purpose of use	Displaying the transfer license key of the BarDIMM
		When used	When checking for the installation of the encrypted secure print function
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	Transfer license key: 24-digit
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
ST-VNC	2	Title	Displaying the installation state of the VNC upon the transfer invalidation
		Purpose of use	Displaying the installation state of the VNC
		When used	When checking for the installation of the VNC function
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: not installed 1: installed
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	See the title column in this table (Transfer Invalidation Procedure).
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
TR-VNC	2	Title	Obtaining the transfer license key of the VNC upon the transfer invalidation
		Purpose of use	Displaying the transfer license key of the VNC
		When used	When replacing the HDD, or when changing the machine
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	Transfer license key: 24-digit
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > OPTION > LCNS-TR			
Transfer Invalidation Procedure:			
1) Select the item (ST-XXXX), and highlight it.			
Enter "0", and press [OK].			
The transfer license key (24-digit) is indicated to TR-XXXX.			
Item	Level	Description	
ST-WEB	2	Title	Displaying the installation state of the WEB browser upon the transfer invalidation
		Purpose of use	Displaying the installation state of the WEB browser
		When used	When checking for the installation of the WEB browser
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: not installed 1: installed
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	See the title column in this table (Transfer Invalidation Procedure).
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	-		
TR-WEB	2	Title	Obtaining the transfer license key of the WEB browser upon the transfer invalidation
		Purpose of use	Displaying the transfer license key of the WEB browser
		When used	When replacing the HDD, or when changing the machine
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	Transfer license key: 24-digit
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	-
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	-		
ST-HRPDF	2	Title	Displaying the installation state of the high-compression PDF function upon the transfer invalidation
		Purpose of use	Displaying the installation state of the high-compression PDF function
		When used	When checking for the installation of the high-compression PDF function
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: not installed 1: installed
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	See the title column in this table (Transfer Invalidation Procedure).
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	-		
TR-HRPDF	2	Title	Obtaining the transfer license key of the high-compression PDF function upon the transfer invalidation
		Purpose of use	Displaying the transfer license key of the high-compression PDF function
		When used	When replacing the HDD, or when changing the machine
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	Transfer license key: 24-digit
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	-
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	-		

COPIER > OPTION > LCNS-TR			
Transfer Invalidation Procedure:			
1) Select the item (ST-XXXX), and highlight it.			
Enter "0", and press [OK].			
The transfer license key (24-digit) is indicated to TR-XXXX.			
Item	Level	Description	
ST-TRSND	2	Title	Displaying the installation state of the trial SEND function upon the transfer invalidation
		Purpose of use	Displaying the installation state of the trial SEND function
		When used	When checking for the installation of the trial SEND function
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: not installed 1: installed
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	See the title column in this table (Transfer Invalidation Procedure).
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
TR-TRSND	2	Title	Obtaining the transfer license key of the trial SEND function upon the transfer invalidation
		Purpose of use	Displaying the transfer license key of the trial SEND function
		When used	When replacing the HDD, or when changing the machine
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	Transfer license key: 24-digit
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
ST-WTMRK	2	Title	Displaying the installation state of the secure watermark print function upon the transfer invalidation
		Purpose of use	Displaying the installation state of the secure watermark print function
		When used	When checking for the installation of the secure watermark print function
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: not installed 1: installed
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	See the title column in this table (Transfer Invalidation Procedure).
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
TR-WTMRK	2	Title	Obtaining the transfer license key of the secure watermark print function upon the transfer invalidation
		Purpose of use	Displaying the transfer license key of the secure watermark print function
		When used	When replacing the HDD, or when changing the machine
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	Transfer license key: 24-digit
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > OPTION > LCNS-TR			
Transfer Invalidation Procedure:			
1) Select the item (ST-XXXX), and highlight it.			
Enter "0", and press [OK].			
The transfer license key (24-digit) is indicated to TR-XXXX.			
Item	Level	Description	
ST-TSPDF	2	Title	Displaying the installation state of the time stamp PDF transmission function upon the transfer invalidation
		Purpose of use	Displaying the installation state of the time stamp PDF transmission function
		When used	When checking for the installation of the time stamp PDF transmission function
		Precautions for use	Available only in a case that the SEND function has been already installed.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: not installed 1: installed
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	See the title column in this table (Transfer Invalidation Procedure).
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
TR-TSPDF	2	Title	Obtaining the transfer license key of the time stamp PDF transmission function upon the transfer invalidation
		Purpose of use	Displaying the transfer license key of the time stamp PDF transmission function
		When used	When replacing the HDD, or when changing the machine
		Precautions for use	Available only in a case that the SEND function has been already installed.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	Transfer license key: 24-digit
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
ST-USPDF	2	Title	Displaying the installation state of the digital user signature PDF transmission function upon the transfer invalidation
		Purpose of use	Displaying the installation state of the digital user signature PDF transmission function
		When used	When checking for the installation of the digital user signature PDF transmission function
		Precautions for use	Available only in a case that the SEND function has been already installed.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: not installed 1: installed
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	See the title column in this table (Transfer Invalidation Procedure).
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > OPTION > LCNS-TR			
Transfer Invalidation Procedure:			
1) Select the item (ST-XXXX), and highlight it.			
Enter "0", and press [OK].			
The transfer license key (24-digit) is indicated to TR-XXXX.			
Item	Level	Description	
TR-USPDF	2	Title	Obtaining the transfer license key of the digital user signature PDF transmission function upon the transfer invalidation
		Purpose of use	Displaying the transfer license key of the digital user signature PDF transmission function
		When used	When replacing the HDD, or when changing the machine
		Precautions for use	Available only in a case that the SEND function has been already installed.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	Transfer license key: 24-digit
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
ST-DVPDF	2	Title	Displaying the installation state of the digital device signature PDF transmission function upon the transfer invalidation
		Purpose of use	Displaying the installation state of the digital device signature PDF transmission function
		When used	When checking for the installation of the digital device signature PDF transmission function
		Precautions for use	Available only in a case that the SEND function has been already installed.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: not installed 1: installed
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	See the title column in this table (Transfer Invalidation Procedure).
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
TR-DVPDF	2	Title	Obtaining the transfer license key of the digital device signature PDF transmission function upon the transfer invalidation
		Purpose of use	Displaying the transfer license key of the digital device signature PDF transmission function
		When used	When replacing the HDD, or when changing the machine
		Precautions for use	Available only in a case that the SEND function has been already installed.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	Transfer license key: 24-digit
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > OPTION > LCNS-TR			
Transfer Invalidation Procedure: 1) Select the item (ST-XXXX), and highlight it. Enter "0", and press [OK]. The transfer license key (24-digit) is indicated to TR-XXXX.			
Item	Level	Description	
ST-SCPFD	2	Title	Displaying the installation state of the scalable PDF transmission function upon the transfer invalidation
		Purpose of use	Displaying the installation state of the scalable PDF transmission function
		When used	When checking for the installation of the scalable PDF transmission function
		Precautions for use	Available only in a case that the SEND function has been already installed.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: not installed 1: installed
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	See the title column in this table (Transfer Invalidation Procedure).
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
TR-SCPFD	2	Title	Obtaining the transfer license key of the scalable PDF transmission function upon the transfer invalidation
		Purpose of use	Displaying the transfer license key of the scalable PDF transmission function
		When used	When replacing the HDD, or when changing the machine
		Precautions for use	Available only in a case that the SEND function has been already installed.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	Transfer license key: 24-digit
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
ST-AMS	2	Title	Displaying the installation state of the ACQ upon the transfer invalidation
		Purpose of use	Displaying the installation state of the ACQ
		When used	When checking for the installation of the ACQ
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: not installed 1: installed
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	See the title column in this table (Transfer Invalidation Procedure).
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > OPTION > LCNS-TR			
Transfer Invalidation Procedure:			
1) Select the item (ST-XXXX), and highlight it.			
Enter "0", and press [OK].			
The transfer license key (24-digit) is indicated to TR-XXXX.			
Item	Level	Description	
TR-AMS	1	Title	Obtaining the transfer license key of the ACQ upon the transfer invalidation
		Purpose of use	Displaying the transfer license key of the ACQ
		When used	When replacing the HDD, or when changing the machine
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	Transfer license key: 24-digit
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	-
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	-		
ST-ERDS	2	Title	Displaying the installation state of the E-RDS 3rd party advanced function upon the transfer invalidation
		Purpose of use	Displaying the installation state of the E-RDS 3rd party advanced function (the function to send the account counter to the 3rd party's account server)
		When used	When checking for the installation of the E-RDS 3rd party advanced function
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: not installed 1: installed
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	See the title column in this table (Transfer Invalidation Procedure).
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	-		
TR-ERDS	2	Title	Obtaining the transfer license key of the E-RDS 3rd party advanced function upon the transfer invalidation
		Purpose of use	Displaying the transfer license key of the E-RDS 3rd party advanced function
		When used	When replacing the HDD, or when changing the machine
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	Transfer license key: 24-digit
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	-
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	-		

COPIER > OPTION > LCNS-TR			
Transfer Invalidation Procedure:			
1) Select the item (ST-XXXX), and highlight it.			
Enter "0", and press [OK].			
The transfer license key (24-digit) is indicated to TR-XXXX.			
Item	Level	Description	
ST-PS	2	Title	Displaying the installation state of the PS upon the transfer invalidation
		Purpose of use	Displaying the installation state of the PS function
		When used	When checking for the installation of the PS function
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: not installed 1: installed
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	See the title column in this table (Transfer Invalidation Procedure).
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	-		
TR-PS	2	Title	Obtaining the transfer license key of the PS function upon the transfer invalidation
		Purpose of use	Displaying the transfer license key of the PS function
		When used	When replacing the HDD, or when changing the machine
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	Transfer license key: 24-digit
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	-
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	-		
ST-PCL	2	Title	Displaying the installation state of the PCL function upon the transfer invalidation
		Purpose of use	Displaying the installation state of the PCL function
		When used	When checking for the installation of the PCL function
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: not installed 1: installed
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	See the title column in this table (Transfer Invalidation Procedure).
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	-		
TR-PCL	2	Title	Obtaining the transfer license key of the PCL function upon the transfer invalidation
		Purpose of use	Displaying the transfer license key of the PCL function
		When used	When replacing the HDD, or when changing the machine
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	Transfer license key: 24-digit
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	-
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	-		

COPIER > OPTION > LCNS-TR			
Transfer Invalidation Procedure:			
1) Select the item (ST-XXXX), and highlight it.			
Enter "0", and press [OK].			
The transfer license key (24-digit) is indicated to TR-XXXX.			
Item	Level	Description	
ST-PSLI5	2	Title	Displaying the installation state of the PS / LIPS4 / LIPS LX (UFR II) upon the transfer invalidation
		Purpose of use	Display in the installation state of the PS/LIPS4/LIPS LX (UFR II) function
		When used	When checking for the installation of PS/LIPS4/LIPS LX (UFR II) function
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: not installed 1: installed
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	See the title column in this table (Transfer Invalidation Procedure).
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	-		
TR-PSLI5	2	Title	Obtaining the transfer license key of the PS/LIPS4/LIPS LX (UFR II) upon the transfer invalidation
		Purpose of use	Displaying the transfer license key of the PS/LIPS4/LIPS LX (UFR II) function
		When used	When replacing the HDD, or when changing the machine
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	Transfer license key: 24-digit
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	-
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	-		
ST-LIPS5	2	Title	Displaying the installation state of the LIPS LX (UFR II for outside Japan) and the LIPS4 upon the transfer invalidation
		Purpose of use	Displaying the installation state of the LIPS LX (UFR II for outside Japan) and the LIPS4
		When used	When checking for the installation of the LIPS LX (UFR II for outside Japan) and the LIPS4
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: not installed 1: installed
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	See the title column in this table (Transfer Invalidation Procedure).
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	-		

COPIER > OPTION > LCNS-TR			
Transfer Invalidation Procedure: 1) Select the item (ST-XXXX), and highlight it. Enter "0", and press [OK]. The transfer license key (24-digit) is indicated to TR-XXXX.			
Item	Level	Description	
TR-LIPS5	2	Title	Obtaining the transfer license key of the LIPS LX (UFR II for outside Japan) and the LIPS4 upon the transfer invalidation
		Purpose of use	Displaying the transfer license key of the LIPS LX (UFR II for outside Japan) and the LIPS4
		When used	When replacing the HDD, or when changing the machine
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	Transfer license key: 24-digit
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
ST-LIPS4	2	Title	Displaying the installation state of the LIPS IV function upon the transfer invalidation
		Purpose of use	Displaying the installation state of the LIPS IV function
		When used	When checking for the installation of the LIPS IV function
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: not installed 1: installed
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	See the title column in this table (Transfer Invalidation Procedure).
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
TR-LIPS4	2	Title	Obtaining the transfer license key of the LIPS IV function upon the transfer invalidation
		Purpose of use	Displaying the transfer license key of the LIPS IV function
		When used	When replacing the HDD, or when changing the machine
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	Transfer license key: 24-digit
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
ST-PSPCL	2	Title	Displaying the installation state of the PS/PCL function upon the transfer invalidation
		Purpose of use	Displaying the installation state of the PS/PCL function
		When used	When checking for the installation of the PS/PCL function
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: not installed 1: installed
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	See the title column in this table (Transfer Invalidation Procedure).
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > OPTION > LCNS-TR			
Transfer Invalidation Procedure:			
1) Select the item (ST-XXXX), and highlight it.			
Enter "0", and press [OK].			
The transfer license key (24-digit) is indicated to TR-XXXX.			
Item	Level	Description	
TR-PSPCL	2	Title	Obtaining the transfer license key of the PS/PCL function upon the transfer invalidation
		Purpose of use	Displaying the transfer license key of the PS/PCL function
		When used	When replacing the HDD, or when changing the machine
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	Transfer license key: 24-digit
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
ST-PCLUF	2	Title	Displaying the installation state of the PCL/UFR function upon the transfer invalidation
		Purpose of use	Displaying the installation state of the PCL/UFR function
		When used	When checking for the installation of the PCL/UFR function
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: not installed 1: installed
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	See the title column in this table (Transfer Invalidation Procedure).
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
TR-PCLUF	2	Title	Obtaining the transfer license key of the PCL/UFR function upon the transfer invalidation
		Purpose of use	Displaying the transfer license key of the PCL/UFR function
		When used	When replacing the HDD, or when changing the machine
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	Transfer license key: 24-digit
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
ST-PSLIP	2	Title	Displaying the installation state of the PS and LIPS function upon the transfer invalidation
		Purpose of use	Displaying the installation state of the PS and LIPS function
		When used	When checking for the installation of the PS and LIPS function
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: not installed 1: installed
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	See the title column in this table (Transfer Invalidation Procedure).
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > OPTION > LCNS-TR			
Transfer Invalidation Procedure: 1) Select the item (ST-XXXX), and highlight it. Enter "0", and press [OK]. The transfer license key (24-digit) is indicated to TR-XXXX.			
Item	Level	Description	
TR-PSLIP	2	Title	Obtaining the transfer license key of the PS and LIPS function upon the transfer invalidation
		Purpose of use	Displaying the transfer license key of the SEND function
		When used	When replacing the HDD, or when changing the machine
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	Transfer license key: 24-digit
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	-
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	-		
ST-PSPCU	2	Title	Displaying the installation state of the PS/PCL/UFR function upon the transfer invalidation
		Purpose of use	Displaying the installation state of the PS/PCL/UFR function
		When used	When checking for the installation of the PS/PCL/UFR function
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: not installed 1: installed
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	See the title column in this table (Transfer Invalidation Procedure).
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	-		
TR-PSPCU	2	Title	Obtaining the transfer license key of the PS/PCL/UFR function upon the transfer invalidation
		Purpose of use	Displaying the transfer license key of the PS/PCL/UFR function
		When used	When replacing the HDD, or when changing the machine
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	Transfer license key: 24-digit
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	-
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	-		
ST-LXUFR	2	Title	Displaying the installation state of the LIPS LX (UFR II) function upon the transfer invalidation
		Purpose of use	Displaying the installation state of the LIPS LX (UFR II) function
		When used	When checking for the installation of the LIPS LX (UFR II) function
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: not installed 1: installed
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	See the title column in this table (Transfer Invalidation Procedure).
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	-		

COPIER > OPTION > LCNS-TR			
Transfer Invalidation Procedure:			
1) Select the item (ST-XXXX), and highlight it.			
Enter "0", and press [OK].			
The transfer license key (24-digit) is indicated to TR-XXXX.			
Item	Level	Description	
TR-LXUFR	2	Title	Obtaining the transfer license key of the LIPS LX (UFR II) function upon the transfer invalidation
		Purpose of use	Displaying the transfer license key of the LIPS LX (UFR II) function
		When used	When replacing the HDD, or when changing the machine
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	Transfer license key: 24-digit
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	-
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	-		
ST-HDCR2	2	Title	Displaying the installation state of the HDD erase function upon the transfer invalidation
		Purpose of use	Displaying the installation state of the HDD erase function
		When used	When checking for the installation of the HDD erase function
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: not installed 1: installed
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	See the title column in this table (Transfer Invalidation Procedure).
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	-		
TR-HDCR2	2	Title	Obtaining the transfer license key of the HDD erase function upon the transfer invalidation
		Purpose of use	Displaying the transfer license key of the HDD erase function
		When used	When replacing the HDD, or when changing the machine
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	Transfer license key: 24-digit
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	-
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	-		

18.6.1.14 COPIER > OPTION > ACCPST-D

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

COPIER > OPTION > ACCPST-D			
Item	Level	Description	
ACC1 to ACC8	1	Title	Setting of connection sequence of ARCNET connection accessories (delivery system)
		Purpose of use	Make the setting of connection sequence of the delivery system accessories.
		When used	At installation, after replacing the DC controller PCB/RAM clear
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	1) In ACC1 to ACC8, select and highlight an item with the relevant accessory name displayed. 2) Check the order of the connected accessory in the direction towards the upstream of the machine, and enter the order (number). 3) Press the OK key.
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select and highlight an item. Enter the setting and press the OK key. 2) Turn off/on the main power switch.
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	Delivery accessories that are connected with the equipment with ARCNET: Stacker, secondary stacker, finisher		

18.6.1.15 COPIER > OPTION > ACCPST-P

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

COPIER > OPTION > ACCPST-P			
Item	Level	Description	
ACC1 to ACC4	1	Title	Setting of connection sequence of ARCNET connection accessories (pickup system)
		Purpose of use	Make the setting of connection sequence of the pickup system accessories.
		When used	At installation, after replacing the DC controller PCB/RAM clear
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	1) In ACC1 to ACC4, select and highlight an item with the relevant accessory name displayed. 2) Check the order of the connected accessory in the direction towards the upstream of the machine, and enter the order (number). 3) Press the OK key.
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select and highlight an item. Enter the setting and press the OK key. 2) Turn off/on the main power switch.
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	Pickup accessories that are connected with the equipment with ARCNET: POD deck, secondary deck		

18.6.1.16 COPIER > OPTION > SERIAL

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

COPIER > OPTION > SERIAL			
Item	Level	Description	
SN-MAIN	1	Title	Entry of the serial number of the main station
		Purpose of use	To enter the serial number of the main station
		When used	At installation, at replacing the main controller PCB
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	00000000
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	00000000
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	The serial number of the power unit station is retained in the main controller PCB and can be displayed/checked on the counter status checking screen. On the other hand, the serial numbers of the main station and the sub station are not retained in the main controller PCB. It is recommended to enter the serial number in the case of trouble for checking the production history of the machine (with the serial number).
SN-SUB	1	Title	Entry of the serial number of the sub station
		Purpose of use	To enter the serial number of the sub station
		When used	At installation, at replacing the main controller PCB
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	00000000
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	00000000
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Refer to SN-MAIN.

18.6.2 FEEDER

18.6.2.1 FEEDER > OPTION >

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

FEEDER > OPTION			
Item	Level	Description	
DOC-F-SW	1	Title	Switching on/off of ADF stream reading mode
		Purpose of use	Switch on/off of ADF stream reading mode.
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: Implement stream reading. 1: Implement stream reading only for small size. Do not implement for large size. 2: Do not implement stream reading.
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select and highlight an item. Enter the settings and press OK key. 2) Turn off/on the main power switch.
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	-		
SLW-SPRT	1	Title	Jam reduction mode at folded document pickup
		Purpose of use	If the folding of the folded documents is not corrected and fed, they are not separated and double feeding or jam may occur. This is used to reduce double feeding and jam.
		When used	In the case of the user who does not correct the folding of the folded document and feeds papers.
		Precautions for use	When setting to '1', the document scanning speed decreases.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: Normal mode 1: Folded document mode In the case that double feeding or jam occurs at folded document pickup due to separation fault, set to '1'.
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select and highlight an item. Enter the settings and press OK key. 2) Turn off/on the main power switch.
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	-		
HS-DBL	1	Title	Switching on/off of ADF high-speed reverse mode
		Purpose of use	Used to increase the productivity of ADF 2-sided document scanning.
		When used	At user request.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: OFF (Normal mode) 1: ON (High-speed 2-sided mode)
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select and highlight an item. Enter the settings and press OK key. 2) Turn off/on the main power switch.
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	-		

18.6.3 SORTER

18.6.3.1 SORTER > OPTION

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

SORTER > OPTION			
Item	Level	Description	
SDL-PRS	1	Title	Setting of press operation of saddle stitcher
		Purpose of use	Make a setting of press operation of saddle stitcher
		When used	In case of fault at press (such as wrinkle). Especially at installation in high humidity environment or at use of thin paper.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: Press operation (1-direction only) 1: Forbidden of press operation 2: Press operation (2-direction) Select "1" in case of wrinkle at press.
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
BUFF-SW	1	Title	Setting of enabling/disabling of buffer operation
		Purpose of use	Make a setting whether to activate or disable buffer operation
		When used	In case of misalignment of paper. May likely to occur when low COF paper (e.g. coated paper) is used.
		Precautions for use	See setting/adjustment range
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: Buffer operation is available 1: Buffer operation is not available (all jobs) 2: Buffer operation is not available (staple job only) Select "1" or "2" in case of misalignment. With "1" setting, no buffer operation at entire jobs (staple, non-staple). Stackability improves, but productivity drops. With "2" setting, no buffer operation at staple job only. Select "2" when prioritizing productivity over alignment performance at non-staple job.
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Setting of this mode is available at finisher side (DIPSW PCB). Same setting value is kept between finisher side and host machine side.
TRY-EJCT	1	Title	Improve mode in stackability of thin paper
		Purpose of use	Switch delivery control (delivery speed) to tray
		When used	In case of faulty stackability with thin paper
		Precautions for use	-Setting description is reflected to delivery control of all jobs regardless of media. -This setting has a priority over upper curl mode setting (See:E32 SORTER>OPTION>CURL-SW)
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: Normal 1: Thin paper delivery control
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Setting of this mode is available at finisher side (DIPSW PCB). Same setting value is kept between finisher side and host machine side.

SORTER > OPTION			
Item	Level	Description	
PN-SKEW	1	Title	Improve mode in accuracy of punching holes position (puncher unit)
		Purpose of use	Improve accuracy of punching holes position (front/rear direction)
		When used	Accuracy of punching holes position improves if making adjustment to prevent paper skew delivered from upper stream equipment. This mode is used in case of paper skew even if making skew adjustment.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: Normal mode 1: Improve mode in accuracy of punching holes position
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Productivity does not drop when this mode is used
		CURL-SW	1
Purpose of use	Improve faulty stackability caused by paper curl. Stackability improves by changing delivery speed according to curl direction (upper curl/lower curl)		
When used	In case of faulty stackability caused by paper curl		
Precautions for use	This mode is not available even if selecting "1" (upper curl mode) when "1" is selected for the following: SORTER>OPTION>TRY-EJCT(thin paper stackability improve mode). Thin paper stackability improve mode is active.		
Settings and adjustment ranges	0: Normal operation 1: Upper curl mode setting (increase delivery speed at upper delivery/lower delivery) 2: Lower curl mode setting (decrease delivery speed at lower delivery)		
Unit	-		
Value established when RAM is cleared	0		
Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-		
Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.		
Related service modes	-		
Additional description and notes	Setting of this mode is available at finisher side (DIPSW PCB). Same setting value is kept between finisher side and host machine side.		

SORTER > OPTION			
Item	Level	Description	
TRY-OVER	2	Title	Ease of stacking limit at high volume stacking mode (extra length paper, coated paper)
		Purpose of use	Ease limit of maximum stacking volume with upper tray for extra length paper or coated paper when finisher's high volume stacking mode is active.
		When used	Upon request from user
		Precautions for use	- In case of stacking high density paper (heavy paper) to the maximum capacity, tray may not be able to lifted up. - This mode applies to upper tray only. Lower tray is excluded.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: Normal 1: Ease of stacking limit - Stacking height/volume when high volume stacking mode is "ON" and also the setting value with this mode is "0". Plain paper (extra length): 147mm/approx. 1000 sheets Coated paper (half): 216mm/approx. 1500 sheets Coated paper (large): 147mm/approx. 1000 sheets - Stacking height/volume when high volume stacking mode is "ON" and also the setting value with this mode is "1". Plain paper (extra length): 216mm/approx. 1500 sheets Coated paper (half): 423mm/approx. 3000 sheets Coated paper (large): 216mm/approx. 1500 sheets
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	- Paper size is as follows: Half: 297mm or smaller (A4R or smaller) Large: larger than 297mm up to 432mm(larger than A4R up to LDR) Extra length: larger than 432mm(larger than LDR) -Stacking height/volume is up to 147mm/approx. 1000 sheets regardless of settings of high volume stacking mode or this mode. -Same setting value is kept between finisher side and host machine side.		
ST1-LMT	1	Title	Limit in number of stacking sheets at stacking area of stacker (1st one) (mainly at 1-side prints).
		Purpose of use	Limit the number of stacking sheets at staking area to avoid the following faults due to image (amount of toner applied) or curl -Stacking fault (misalignment, tilted stacking, drop) -Jam due to faulty stacking
		When used	In case of stacking fault or jam at high volume stacking with the following paper/print mode: -At 1-side print with coated paper -At 1-side print with plain paper with 185mm or shorter paper length
		Precautions for use	Full stacking stop when meeting any of the conditions among conditions of maximum stacking volume at the setting of the following: SORTER>OPTION>ST1-LMT1, ST1-LMT2 e.g.) In case of "0" for ST1-LMT1(no limit of number of sheets), or "0" for ST1-LMT2 -> Maximum stacking volume is 2000 sheets in case the paper length is 185mm or shorter -> No limit of number of sheets with paper other than the above
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: No limit of number of sheets (stacking height 570mm) 1: 5000 sheets 2: 4000 sheets 3: 3000 sheets 4: 2000 sheets 5: 1000 sheets Select "1" to "5" in case of stacking fault
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	Maximum stacking volume is limited at the same rate regardless of paper or print mode when this mode is used .		

SORTER > OPTION			
Item	Level	Description	
ST1-LMT2	1	Title	Limit in number of stacking sheets at stacking area of stacker (1st one) (mainly at 2-side prints).
		Purpose of use	Limit the number of stacking sheets at staking area to avoid the following faults due to image (amount of toner applied) or curl -Stacking fault (misalignment, tilted stacking, drop) -Jam due to faulty stacking
		When used	In case of stacking fault or jam at high volume stacking with the following paper/print mode: a. At 2-side prints with coated paper with 105g/m2 or less grammage b. At 2-side prints with paper with 185mm or shorter of paper length
		Precautions for use	Full stacking stop when meeting any of the conditions among conditions of maximum stacking volume at the setting of the following: SORTER>OPTION>ST1-LMT1, ST1-LMT2 e.g.) In case of "5" for ST1-LMT1(1000 sheets), or "0" for ST1-LMT2 (2000 sheets of maximum stacking volume in case of paper with 185mm or smaller). -> Maximum stacking volume is 1000 sheets at any rate regardless in paper length
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: 2000 sheets as maximum stacking volume with paper of 185mm or shorter 1: 2000 sheets as maximum stacking volume in case of 2-side print with coated paper of 105g/m2 grammage or less, or with paper of 185mm or shorter. 2: 1000 sheets as maximum stacking volume in case of 2-side prints with coated paper of 105g/m2 grammage or less, or with paper of 185mm or shorter. 3: 2000 sheets as maximum stacking volume in case of 2-side prints with coated paper of 105g/m2 grammage or less. 4: 2000 sheets as maximum stacking volume in case of 2-side prints, or with paper of 185mm or shorter. 5: No limit in number of sheets (up to 570mm of stacking height) "0" is to prevent stacking fault due to occurring condition b. Select "3" to prevent stacking fault due to occurring condition a. However, there may be a stacking fault due to occurring condition b. Select "1" or "2" to prevent stacking fault due to occurring conditions a and b.
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	-		
ST2-LMT	1	Title	Limit in number of stacking sheets at stacking area of stacker (2nd one) (mainly at 1-side prints).
		Purpose of use	Limit the number of stacking sheets at staking area to avoid the following faults due to image (amount of toner applied) or curl -Stacking fault (misalignment, tilted stacking, drop) -Jam due to faulty stacking
		When used	In case of stacking fault or jam at high volume stacking with the following paper/print mode: a. At 1-side prints with coated paper b. At 1-side prints with plain paper with 185mm or shorter of paper length
		Precautions for use	Full stacking stop when meeting any of the conditions among conditions of maximum stacking volume at the setting of the following: SORTER>OPTION>ST2-LMT1, ST2-LMT2 e.g.) In case of "0" for ST2-LMT1(no limit of number of sheets), or "0" for ST2-LMT2 -> Maximum stacking volume is 2000 sheets in case the paper length is 185mm or shorter -> No limit of number of sheets with paper other than the above
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: No limit of number of sheets (stacking height 570mm) 1: 5000 sheets 2: 4000 sheets 3: 3000 sheets 4: 2000 sheets 5: 1000 sheets Select "1" to "5" in case of stacking fault
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	Maximum stacking volume is limited at the same rate regardless of paper or print mode when this mode is used .		

SORTER > OPTION			
Item	Level	Description	
ST2-LMT2	1	Title	Limit in number of stacking sheets at stacking area of stacker (2nd one) (mainly at 2-side prints).
		Purpose of use	Limit the number of stacking sheets at staking area to avoid the following faults due to image (amount of toner applied) or curl -Stacking fault (misalignment, tilted stacking, drop) -Jam due to faulty stacking
		When used	In case of stacking fault or jam at high volume stacking with the following paper/print mode: a. At 2-side prints with coated paper with g105g/m2 or less grammage b. At 2-side prints with paper with 185mm or shorter of paper length
		Precautions for use	Full stacking stop when meeting any of the conditions among conditions of maximum stacking volume at the setting of the following: SORTER>OPTION>ST1-LMT2, ST2-LMT2 e.g.) In case of "5" for ST2-LMT1(1000 sheets), or "0" for ST2-LMT2 (2000 sheets of maximum stacking volume in case of paper with 185mm or shorter). -> Maximum stacking volume is 1000 sheets at any rate regardless of paper length
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: 2000 sheets as maximum stacking volume with paper of 185mm or shorter 1: 2000 sheets as maximum stacking volume in case of 2-side print with coated paper of 105g/m2 grammage or less, or with paper of 185mm or shorter. 2: 1000 sheets as maximum stacking volume in case of 2-side prints with coated paper of 105g/m2 grammage or less, or with paper of 185mm or shorter. 3: 2000 sheets as maximum stacking volume in case of 2-side prints with coated paper of 105g/m2 grammage or less. 4: 2000 sheets as maximum stacking volume in case of 2-side prints, or with paper of 185mm or shorter. 5: No limit in number of sheets (up to 570mm of stacking height) "0" is to prevent stacking fault due to occurring condition b. Select "3" to prevent stacking fault due to occurring condition a. However, there may be a stacking fault due to occurring condition b. Select "1" or "2" to prevent stacking fault due to occurring conditions a and b.
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to be highlighted to enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
TBWRNLVL	1	Title	Setting the alarm timing for replacing blade (perfect binder)
		Purpose of use	To set the alarm timing to replace the blade (for how many cuts are made to set off the alarm)
		When used	In the case of changing the alarm timing for replacing the blade
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	10000 to 100000 Increasing the value makes the alarm display timing to replace the blade longer. Decreasing the value makes the alarm display timing to replace the blade shorter.
		Unit	-
		Variation per unit	1000
		Value established when RAM is cleared	40000
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	40000
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to be highlighted, enter the setting value, and then press the OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	-		

SORTER > OPTION				
Item	Level	Description		
TBP-COUNT	1	Title	Setting of threshold to move the blade rest (perfect binder)	
		Purpose of use	To set the number of moves to be made for the blade rest	
		When used	In the case of trimming fault	
		Precautions for use	-	
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 19	
		Unit	-	
		Variation per unit	-	
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0	
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	0	
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to be highlighted, enter the setting value, and then press the OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.	
		Related service modes	-	
Additional description and notes	-			
TBP-POSW	1	Title	To set the number of moves to be made for blade rest (perfect binder)	
		Purpose of use	To set the number of moves to be made for the blade rest	
		When used	In the case of trimming fault, use this mode to change the position of blade rest.	
		Precautions for use	Increasing the value makes the position (where the blade rest is used) upward, causing the life of blade rest shorter.	
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 19	
		Unit	-	
		Variation per unit	-	
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0	
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	0	
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to be highlighted, enter the setting value, and then press the OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.	
		Related service modes	-	
Additional description and notes	-			
TBP-MVSW	1	Title	Setting to switch the mode to move the blade rest (perfect binder)	
		Purpose of use	To make a setting to switch the mode to move the blade rest	
		When used	When the cover sheet is damaged (scarred)	
		Precautions for use	-	
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: use the blade rest for both 2-edge and 1-edge 1: Use the blade rest according to the mode: 2-edge/1-edge	
		Unit	-	
		Variation per unit	-	
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0	
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	0	
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to be highlighted, enter the setting value, and then press the OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.	
		Related service modes	-	
Additional description and notes	-			

18.6.4 BOARD

18.6.4.1 BOARD > OPTION

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

BOARD > OPTION			
Item	Level	Description	
MENU-1 to MENU-4	2	Title	Displaying the level 1 to level 4 of the printer setting menu
		Purpose of use	Displaying the level 1 to level 4 of the printer setting menu
		When used	Upon the request of the user
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: not display 1: display
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it and enter the setting value; then, press [OK] 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power supply switch
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	-		
SURF-OFF	1	Not in use	
TR-DSP	2	Title	Switching the display/non-display of the toner reduction function switch
		Purpose of use	Switching ON/OFF of the toner reduction function
		When used	Upon the request of the user
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: not displaying ON/OFF screen (Always-ON) 1: displaying ON/OFF screen and it is switchable
		Unit	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	0
		Adjusted/not adjusted at time of shipment from factory	-
		Setting, adjustment and operation procedures	1) Select the item to highlight it and enter the setting value; then, press [OK] 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power supply switch
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	The default setting of the toner reduction function is Always-ON. When using the Canon genuine profile, the number of color is restricted to 2.1 colors in the profile. On the other hand, when using the custom profile for PS data, it may exceed the 2.1 colors. Thus, it is restricted to 2.1 colors with the toner reduction function.		

18.7 TEST (Test Print Mode)

18.7.1 COPIER

18.7.1.1 COPIER>TEST>PG

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

COPIER > TEST > PG			
Item	Level	Description	
TYPE	1	Title	Test print
		Purpose of use	Input a type number for test print. Press the Start key and perform test print.
		When used	At trouble analysis
		Precautions for use	Be sure to return to 0 after completing test print.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: Image from CCD (normal print) 1 to 3: For development 4: 16 gradation 5: Halftone for the whole image 6: Grid 7 to 9: For development 10: MCYBk Horizontal stripes 11: For development 12: YMCBk 64 gradation 13: For development 14: Full color 16 gradation 15 to 100: For development
		Unit	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
TXPH	1	Title	Set an image mode for test print.
		Purpose of use	Make the setting of image mode for test print output
		When used	At trouble analysis
		Precautions for use	This mode is only valid for test print.
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: Error diffusion 1: Screen with small line number [133 to 190 lines] 2: Screen with large line number [200 to 268 lines] 3: Screen for COPY [around 220 lines] 4: Screen for REOS [no screen structure]
		Unit	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
THRU	1	Title	Set whether or not to use the image correction table for test print.
		Purpose of use	Switch the use of image correction table for test print output
		When used	At trouble analysis
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: ON (Use the table.) 1: OFF (Do not use the table.)
		Unit	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
DENS-Y	1	Title	Adjustment of the density of Y color for test print (TYPE = 5)
		Purpose of use	Adjust the density of M color for test print (TYPE = 5)
		When used	At test print (TYPE = 5)
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 255
		Unit	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	The larger the value, the larger the density.
DENS-M	1	Title	Adjustment of the density of M color for test print (TYPE = 5)
		Purpose of use	Adjust the density of Y color for test print (TYPE = 5)
		When used	At test print (TYPE = 5)
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 255
		Unit	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	The larger the value, the larger the density.

COPIER > TEST > PG			
Item	Level	Description	
DENS-C	1	Title	Adjustment of the density of C color for test print (TYPE = 5)
		Purpose of use	Adjust the density of C color for test print (TYPE = 5)
		When used	At test print (TYPE = 5)
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 255
		Unit	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	The larger the value, the larger the density.
DENS-K	1	Title	Adjustment of the density of K color for test print (TYPE = 5)
		Purpose of use	Adjust the density of K color for test print (TYPE = 5)
		When used	At test print (TYPE = 5)
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 255
		Unit	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	The larger the value, the larger the density.
COLOR-Y	1	Title	Setting of the Y color output for each TYPE
		Purpose of use	Make the setting of Y color output for each TYPE.
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0/1
		Unit	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	When setting COLOR-Y to "1" and others to "0", the output of Y single color can be performed.
COLOR-M	1	Title	Setting of the M color output for each TYPE
		Purpose of use	Make the setting of M color output for each TYPE.
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0/1
		Unit	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	When setting COLOR-M to "1" and others to "0", the output of M single color can be performed.
COLOR-C	1	Title	Setting of the C color output for each TYPE
		Purpose of use	Make the setting of C color output for each TYPE.
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0/1
		Unit	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	When setting COLOR-C to "1" and others to "0", the output of C single color can be performed.
COLOR-K	1	Title	Setting of the K color output for each TYPE
		Purpose of use	Make the setting of K color output for each TYPE.
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0/1
		Unit	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	When setting COLOR-K to "1" and others to "0", the output of K single color can be performed.

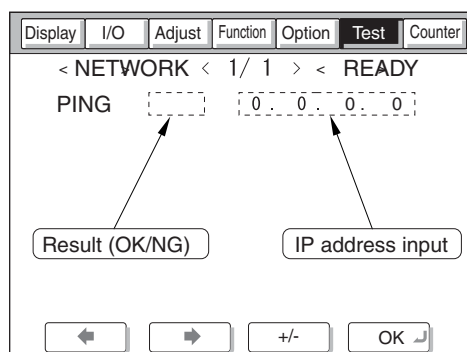
COPIER > TEST > PG			
Item	Level	Description	
F/M-SW	1	Title	Switching full color/monochrome for the PG output operation
		Purpose of use	Make available switching full color/monochrome for the PG output operation according to the value of this item.
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: Full-color output 1: Mono-color output
		Unit	-
		Related service modes	-
PG-PICK	1	Title	Select a cassette used for test print.
		Purpose of use	Select a deck for test print output.
		When used	At trouble analysis for test print output
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	1:RDK 2:LDK 3-4:Not used 5:SIDEDK 6:MULT 7:Not used 8:POD1 Upper deck 9:POD1 Middle deck 10:POD1 Lower deck 11:POD2 Upper deck 12:POD2 Middle deck 13:POD2 Lower deck
		Unit	-
		Related service modes	-
2-SIDE	1	Title	Setting of PG 2-sided mode
		Purpose of use	Make the setting of 1-sided/2-sided for the PG to output
		When used	At trouble analysis
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: Single sided 1: Double sided
		Unit	-
		Related service modes	-
PG-QTY	1	Title	Setting of PG count
		Purpose of use	Make the setting of the number of PG to output
		When used	At trouble analysis
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	1 to 999
		Unit	-
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	-		

18.7.1.2 COPIER>TEST>NETWORK

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

COPIER > TEST > NETWORK			
Item	Level	Description	
PING	1	Title	Checking the network-related connections
		Purpose of use	Check the connection between this machine and network (only for TCP/IP).
		When used	This mode is used to check the network connection at installation or to check a problem in the network connection.
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0.0.0.0 to 255.255.255.255
		Unit	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
BML-DISP	2	Title	Switching the displays for BMLinks
		Purpose of use	Set whether or not to only display a device configuration screen without displaying a job condition/history in the system status screen.
		When used	In the case of dealing with BMLinks
		Precautions for use	-
		Settings and adjustment ranges	0: Normal system status screen 1: Screen that displays only the device
		Unit	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Check to see that the job status/history is invisible at moving to the system status screen.

- 1) Turn off the main power switch.
- 2) Connect the network cable to this machine and turn on the main power switch.
- 3) Inform the system administrator of a user that installation of the main unit has been completed, and ask him/her to make network settings.
- 4) Inform the system administrator of a user that the network connection is going to be checked, and check the remote host address (IP address of a PC terminal in the user network) to send PING.
- 5) Select a service mode item (COPIER>TEST>NETWORK>PING), enter the IP address checked in Procedure 4 using numeric keys in the control panel, press the OK key, and press the Start key.
 - When the connection is made to the network successfully, OK is displayed. (Procedure is completed.)
 - When NG is displayed, first check the connection status of the network cable. If the connection is made normally, go to Procedure 6 shown below. If there is a problem in the connection, connect the cable again and perform Procedure 5.
- 6) Select a service mode item (COPIER>TEST>NETWORK>PING), enter the loopback address * (127.0.0.1), press the OK key, and press the Start key.
 - When NG is displayed, there is a problem in the TCP/IP setting for the machine. Go back to Procedure 3 and check the setting again.
 - When OK is displayed, there seems no problem in the TCP/IP setting for the machine. However, there may be a problem in the connection of the network interface board (NIC) or in the NIC itself, so check the connection in Procedure 7.
- * Since the signal of a loopback address returns before reaching the NIC, it can check the TCP/IP setting of the machine.
- 7) Select a service mode item (COPIER>TEST>NETWORK>PING), enter a local host access (IP address of the machine), and press the OK key.
 - When NG is displayed, there may be a problem in the connection with NIC or in NIC itself, so check the connection or replace the NIC.
 - When OK is displayed, there seems no problem in the network setting of the machine and the NIC. In this case, there may be a problem in the network environment of the user, so contact the system administrator and ask him/her to take measures.



18.8 COUNTER (Counter Mode)

18.8.1 COPIER

18.8.1.1 COPIER > COUNTER > TOTAL

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

COPIER > COUNTER > TOTAL			
Item	Level	Description	
SERVICE1	1	Title	Total counter 1 for service
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Count-up timing	Count-up is performed when printed paper is delivered from the machine or stacked in double-sided mode.
		Count-up specification	Large paper=1 Small paper=1
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Count-up is not performed when a blank sheet is output.
SERVICE2	1	Title	Total counter 2 for service
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Count-up timing	Count-up is performed when printed paper is delivered from the machine or stacked in double-sided mode.
		Count-up specification	Large paper=1 Small paper=1
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Count-up is not performed when a blank sheet is output.
COPY	1	Title	Total copy counter
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Count-up timing	Count-up is performed when printed paper is delivered from the machine or stacked in double-sided mode.
		Count-up specification	Large paper=1 Small paper=1
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Count-up is not performed when a blank sheet is output.
PDL-PRT	1	Title	PDL print counter
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Count-up timing	Count-up is performed for PDL printing according to the charging counter when printed paper is delivered from the machine or stacked in double-sided mode.
		Count-up specification	Large paper=1 Small paper=1
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Count-up is not performed when a blank sheet is output.

COPIER > COUNTER > TOTAL			
Item	Level	Description	
FAX-PRT	1	Title	FAX reception print counter
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Count-up timing	Count-up is performed for FAX reception according to the charging counter when printed paper is delivered from the machine or stacked in double-sided mode.
		Count-up specification	Large paper=1 Small paper=1
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Count-up is not performed when a blank sheet is output.
BOX-PRT	1	Title	BOX print counter
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Count-up timing	Count-up is performed for BOX printing according to the charging counter when printed paper is delivered from the machine or stacked in double-sided mode.
		Count-up specification	Large paper=1 Small paper=1
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Count-up is not performed when a blank sheet is output.
RPT-PRT	1	Title	Report print counter
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Count-up timing	Count-up is performed for report printing according to the charging counter when printed paper is delivered from the machine or stacked in double-sided mode.
		Count-up specification	Large paper=1 Small paper=1
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Count-up is not performed when a blank sheet is output.
2-SIDE	1	Title	Double-sided copy/print counter
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Count-up timing	Count-up is performed for the number of double-sided copy/print according to the charging counter when printed paper is delivered from the machine or stacked in double-sided mode.
		Count-up specification	Large paper=1 Small paper=1
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Count-up is not performed when a blank sheet is output.

COPIER > COUNTER > TOTAL			
Item	Level	Description	
SCAN	1	Title	Scan counter
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Count-up timing	Count-up is performed for the number of scanning when reading is completed.
		Count-up specification	Large paper=1 Small paper=1
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

18.8.1.2 COPIER > COUNTER > PICK-UP

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

T-18-95

COPIER > COUNTER > PICK-UP			
Item	Level	Description	
C1	1	Title	Total paper counter fed from host machine right deck
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	Sheet
		Count-up timing	-
		Count-up specification	Large paper=1 Small paper=1
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
C2	1	Title	Total paper counter fed from host machine left deck
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	Sheet
		Count-up timing	-
		Count-up specification	Large paper=1 Small paper=1
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
C3	1	Not used	
C4	1	Not used	
MF	1	For future expansion	
DK	1	Title	POD deck lite pickup total counter
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	Sheet
		Count-up timing	-
		Count-up specification	Large paper=1 Small paper=1
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > COUNTER > PICK-UP			
Item	Level	Description	
2-SIDE	1	Title	Double-sided pickup total counter
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	Sheet
		Count-up timing	-
		Count-up specification	Large paper=1 Small paper=1
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	-		
D1	1	Title	POD deck upper deck pickup total counter
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	Sheet
		Count-up timing	-
		Count-up specification	Large paper=1 Small paper=1
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	-		
D2	1	Title	POD deck middle deck pickup total counter
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	Sheet
		Count-up timing	-
		Count-up specification	Large paper=1 Small paper=1
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	-		
D3	1	Title	POD deck lower deck pickup total counter
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	Sheet
		Count-up timing	-
		Count-up specification	Large paper=1 Small paper=1
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	-		
D4	1	Title	Secondary POD deck upper deck pickup total counter
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	Sheet
		Count-up timing	-
		Count-up specification	Large paper=1 Small paper=1
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	-		

COPIER > COUNTER > PICK-UP			
Item	Level	Description	
D5	1	Title	Secondary POD deck middle deck pickup total counter
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	Sheet
		Count-up timing	-
		Count-up specification	Large paper=1 Small paper=1
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
D6	1	Title	Secondary POD deck lower deck pickup total counter
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	Sheet
		Count-up timing	-
		Count-up specification	Large paper=1 Small paper=1
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

18.8.1.3 COPIER > COUNTER > FEEDER

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

T-18-96

COPIER > COUNTER > FEEDER			
Item	Level	Description	
FEED	1	Title	Total counter for document feed by ADF
		When used	When checking total counter of originals fed via ADF
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	Sheet
		Count-up timing	-
		Count-up specification	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
DFOP-CNT	1	Title	ADF open/close hinge counter
		When used	When checking ADF open/close hinge counter
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	count
		Count-up timing	-
		Count-up specification	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

18.8.1.4 COPIER > COUNTER > JAM

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

T-18-97

COPIER > COUNTER > JAM			
Item	Level	Description	
TOTAL	1	Title	Total jam counter for the copier
		When used	When checking Copier total jam counter
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	count
		Count-up timing	-
		Count-up specification	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
FEEDER	1	Title	Total jam counter for the feeder
		When used	When checking Feeder total jam count
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	count
		Count-up timing	-
		Count-up specification	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
SORTER	1	Title	Total jam counter for the finisher
		When used	When checking finisher total jam counter
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	count
		Count-up timing	-
		Count-up specification	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
2-SIDE	1	Title	Jam counter for the unit for double-sided copy
		When used	When checking Duplexing unit total jam counter
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	count
		Count-up timing	-
		Count-up specification	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
MF	1	For future expansion	

COPIER > COUNTER > JAM			
Item	Level	Description	
C1	1	Title	Jam counter of host machine right deck
		When used	When checking jam counter of host machine right deck
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	count
		Count-up timing	-
		Count-up specification	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
C2	1	Title	Jam counter of host machine left deck
		When used	When checking jam counter of host machine left deck
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	count
		Count-up timing	-
		Count-up specification	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
C3	1	Not used	
C4	1	Not used	
DK	1	Title	Jam counter for the POD deck lite
		When used	When checking jam counter of POD deck lite
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	count
		Count-up timing	-
		Count-up specification	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

18.8.1.5 COPIER > COUNTER > MISC

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

Counts in the Service Mode <MISC> are categorized into the following 5 count types.

Type 1:

B&W Size S: 1 count Full color Size S: 4 counts
Size L: 2 counts Size L: 8 counts

Type 2:

B&W Size S: 1 count Full color Size S: 3 counts
Size L: 2 counts Size L: 6 counts

Type 3:

B&W Size S: 1 count Full color Size S: 1 count
Size L: 2 counts Size L: 2 counts

Type 4:

B&W / Full color: 1 count

Type 5:

B&W Not counted Full color 1 count

T-18-98

COPIER > COUNTER > MISC			
Item	Level	Description	
T-SPLY-Y	1	Title	Toner supply counter for Yellow
		When used	Count the number of Yellow toner supply (rotations of toner supply screw
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	count
		Count-up timing	When toner is supplied
		Count-up specification	1 block (1 rotation): 1 count
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
T-SPLY-M	1	Title	Toner supply counter for Magenta
		When used	Count the number of Magenta toner supply (rotations of toner supply screw
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	count
		Count-up timing	When toner is supplied
		Count-up specification	1 block (1 rotation): 1 count
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
T-SPLY-C	1	Title	Toner supply counter for Cyan
		When used	Count the number of Cyan toner supply (rotations of toner supply screw
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	count
		Count-up timing	When toner is supplied
		Count-up specification	1 block (1 rotation): 1 count
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
T-SPLY-K	1	Title	Toner supply counter for Black
		When used	Count the number of Black toner supply (rotations of toner supply screw
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	count
		Count-up timing	When toner is supplied
		Count-up specification	1 block (1 rotation): 1 count
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

T-18-99

COPIER > COUNTER > MISC			
Item	Level	Description	
ALLPW-ON	1	Title	frequency to start non-all night power supply
		When used	When checking use status of the product
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-time
		Count-up timing	When no-all-night power supply is activated
		Count-up specification	-
		Upper limit	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > COUNTER > MISC			
Item	Level	Description	
HDD-ON	1	Title	Frequency to start HDD
		When used	When checking use status of the product
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-time
		Count-up timing	When HDD is activated
		Count-up specification	-
		Upper limit	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

18.8.1.6 COPIER > COUNTER > PRDC-1

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

All values in the service mode items under COPIER/COUNTER/PRDC-1 are maintained in the main controller PCB.

Counter values in the service mode <PRDC-1> are classified into the following five types.

Type 1:

B&W Size S: 1 count Full color Size S: 4 counts
Size L: 2 counts Size L: 8 counts

Type 2:

B&W Size S: 1 count Full color Size S: 3 counts
Size L: 2 counts Size L: 6 counts

Type 3:

B&W Size S: 1 count Full color Size S: 1 count
Size L: 2 counts Size L: 2 counts

Type 4:

B&W / Full color: 1 count

Type 5:

B&W Not counted Full color 1 count

T-18-100

COPIER > COUNTER > PRDC-1			
Be sure to refer to the "Maintenance" chapter when checking the estimated replacement value of the parts. Although the upper limit value of each counter indicates the estimated value for replacement, the upper limit value is not always changed simultaneously when the estimated replacement value is changed due to design change			
Item	Level	Description	
PRM-WIRE	1	Title	Primary charging wire (Bk) counter
		When used	When replacing parts of primary charging wire (Bk)
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	Depending on the setting value of the following Service Mode
		Related service modes	COPIER>OPTION>BODY>CNTR-SW
		Additional description and notes	-
PRM-GIRD	1	Title	Primary grid plate (Bk) counter
		When used	When replacing parts of primary grid plate (Bk)
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	Depending on the setting value of the following Service Mode
		Related service modes	COPIER>OPTION>BODY>CNTR-SW
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > COUNTER > PRDC-1			
Be sure to refer to the "Maintenance" chapter when checking the estimated replacement value of the parts. Although the upper limit value of each counter indicates the estimated value for replacement, the upper limit value is not always changed simultaneously when the estimated replacement value is changed due to design change			
Item	Level	Description	
PO-WIRE	1	Title	Pre-transfer charging wire counter
		When used	When replacing parts of Pre-transfer charging wire
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	Depending on the setting value of the following Service Mode
		Related service modes	COPIER>OPTION>BODY>CNTR-SW
		Additional description and notes	-
PO-UNIT	1	Title	Pre-transfer charger counter
		When used	When replacing parts of Pre-transfer charger
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	Depending on the setting value of the following Service Mode
		Related service modes	COPIER>OPTION>BODY>CNTR-SW
		Additional description and notes	-
PRM-UNIT	1	Title	Primary charger (Bk) counter
		When used	When replacing parts of Primary charger (Bk)
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	Depending on the setting value of the following Service Mode
		Related service modes	COPIER>OPTION>BODY>CNTR-SW
		Additional description and notes	-
FIX-TH1	1	Title	Primary fixing main thermistor (TH1) counter
		When used	When replacing parts of Primary fixing main thermistor
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	1,000,000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
FIX-TH2	1	Title	Primary fixing sub thermistor (TH2) counter
		When used	When replacing parts of Primary fixing sub thermistor
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	1,000,000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
FX-TSW	1	Title	Primary fixing thermo switch(TP1) counter
		When used	When replacing parts of Primary fixing thermo switch
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	1,000,000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > COUNTER > PRDC-1			
Be sure to refer to the "Maintenance" chapter when checking the estimated replacement value of the parts. Although the upper limit value of each counter indicates the estimated value for replacement, the upper limit value is not always changed simultaneously when the estimated replacement value is changed due to design change			
Item	Level	Description	
FX-LW-TS	1	Title	Primary fixing pressure belt thermo switch counter
		When used	When replacing parts of Primary fixing pressure belt thermo switch
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	1,000,000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
FX-EX-TS	1	Title	Primary fixing external heater thermo switch counter
		When used	When replacing parts of Primary fixing external heater thermo switch
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	1,000,000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
OZ-FIL1	1	Title	ITB unit inside ozone filter counter
		When used	When replacing parts of ITB unit inside ozone filter
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	1,500,000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
OZ-FIL2	1	Title	Main station rear ozone filter counter
		When used	When replacing parts of Main station rear ozone filter
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	1,500,000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
OZ-FIL3	1	Title	Sub station rear upper ozone filter counter
		When used	When replacing parts of Sub station rear upper ozone filter
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	1,000,000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
OZ-FIL4	1	Title	Sub station rear middle ozone filter counter
		When used	When replacing parts of Sub station rear middle ozone filter
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	1,000,000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > COUNTER > PRDC-1			
Be sure to refer to the "Maintenance" chapter when checking the estimated replacement value of the parts. Although the upper limit value of each counter indicates the estimated value for replacement, the upper limit value is not always changed simultaneously when the estimated replacement value is changed due to design change			
Item	Level	Description	
OZ-FIL5	1	Title	Sub station rear left ozone filter counter
		When used	When replacing parts of Sub station rear left ozone filter
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	1,000,000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
AR-FIL1	1	Title	Primary suction filter counter
		When used	When replacing parts of Primary suction filter
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	1,000,000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
AR-FIL2	1	Title	ITB unit inside dust filter counter
		When used	When replacing parts of ITB unit inside dust filter
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	1,500,000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
AR-FIL3	1	Title	Paper delivery electrostatic filter (sub station) counter
		When used	When replacing parts of Paper delivery electrostatic filter
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	1,000,000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
TN-FIL1	1	Title	Toner filter (main station) counter
		When used	When replacing parts of Toner filter
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	100,000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
FXLW-THI	1	Title	Primary fixing inlet thermistor counter
		When used	When replacing parts of Primary fixing inlet thermistor
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	1,000,000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > COUNTER > PRDC-1			
Be sure to refer to the "Maintenance" chapter when checking the estimated replacement value of the parts. Although the upper limit value of each counter indicates the estimated value for replacement, the upper limit value is not always changed simultaneously when the estimated replacement value is changed due to design change			
Item	Level	Description	
FXEX-TH1	1	Title	Primary fixing external heater main thermistor counter
		When used	When replacing parts of Primary fixing external heater main thermistor
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	1,000,000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
PRM-W-M	1	Title	Primary charging wire (M) counter
		When used	Primary charging wire counter for Magenta
		Precautions for use	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	-
		Count-up specification	-
		Upper limit	Depending on the setting value of the following Service Mode
		Related service modes	COPIER>OPTION>BODY>CNTR-SW
		Additional description and notes	-
PRM-W-Y	1	Title	Primary charging wire (Y) counter
		When used	Primary charging wire counter for Yellow
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	-
		Count-up specification	-
		Upper limit	Depending on the setting value of the following Service Mode
		Related service modes	COPIER>OPTION>BODY>CNTR-SW
		Additional description and notes	-
PRM-W-C	1	Title	Primary charging wire (C) counter
		When used	Primary charging wire counter for Cyan
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	-
		Count-up specification	-
		Upper limit	Depending on the setting value of the following Service Mode
		Related service modes	COPIER>OPTION>BODY>CNTR-SW
		Additional description and notes	-
PRM-G-Y	1	Title	Primary grid plate (Y) counter
		When used	When replacing parts of Primary grid plate (Y)
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	-
		Count-up specification	-
		Upper limit	Depending on the setting value of the following Service Mode
		Related service modes	COPIER>OPTION>BODY>CNTR-SW
		Additional description and notes	-
PRM-G-M	1	Title	Primary grid plate (M) counter
		When used	When replacing parts of Primary grid plate (M)
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	-
		Count-up specification	-
		Upper limit	Depending on the setting value of the following Service Mode
		Related service modes	COPIER>OPTION>BODY>CNTR-SW
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > COUNTER > PRDC-1			
Be sure to refer to the "Maintenance" chapter when checking the estimated replacement value of the parts. Although the upper limit value of each counter indicates the estimated value for replacement, the upper limit value is not always changed simultaneously when the estimated replacement value is changed due to design change			
Item	Level	Description	
PRM-G-C	1	Title	Primary grid plate (C) counter
		When used	When replacing parts of Primary grid plate (C)
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	-
		Count-up specification	-
		Upper limit	Depending on the setting value of the following Service Mode
		Related service modes	COPIER>OPTION>BODY>CNTR-SW
		Additional description and notes	-
PRM-U-Y	1	Title	Primary charger (Y) counter
		When used	When replacing parts of Primary charger (Y)
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	-
		Count-up specification	-
		Upper limit	Depending on the setting value of the following Service Mode
		Related service modes	COPIER>OPTION>BODY>CNTR-SW
		Additional description and notes	-
PRM-U-M	1	Title	Primary charger (M) counter
		When used	When replacing parts of Primary charger (M)
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	-
		Count-up specification	-
		Upper limit	Depending on the setting value of the following Service Mode
		Related service modes	COPIER>OPTION>BODY>CNTR-SW
		Additional description and notes	-
PRM-U-C	1	Title	Primary charger (C) counter
		When used	When replacing parts of Primary charger (C)
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	-
		Count-up specification	-
		Upper limit	Depending on the setting value of the following Service Mode
		Related service modes	COPIER>OPTION>BODY>CNTR-SW
		Additional description and notes	-
FX2-TH1	1	Title	Secondary fixing main thermistor counter
		When used	When replacing parts of Secondary fixing main thermistor
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	1,000,000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
FX2-TH2	1	Title	Secondary fixing sub thermistor counter
		When used	When replacing parts of Secondary fixing sub thermistor
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	1,000,000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > COUNTER > PRDC-1			
Be sure to refer to the "Maintenance" chapter when checking the estimated replacement value of the parts. Although the upper limit value of each counter indicates the estimated value for replacement, the upper limit value is not always changed simultaneously when the estimated replacement value is changed due to design change			
Item	Level	Description	
FX2LWTH1	1	Title	Secondary fixing pressure roller main thermistor counter
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	1,000,000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
FX2-TSW	1	Title	Secondary fixing thermo switch counter
		When used	When replacing parts of Secondary fixing thermo switch
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	1,000,000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
FX2-LWTS	1	Title	Secondary fixing pressure roller thermo switch counter
		When used	-
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	1,000,000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
FX2-EXTS	1	Title	Secondary fixing external heater 1 thermo switch counter
		When used	When replacing parts of Secondary fixing external heater 1 thermo switch
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	1,000,000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
FX2EXTH1	1	Title	Secondary fixing external heater main thermistor counter
		When used	When replacing parts of Secondary fixing external heater main thermistor
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	1,000,000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > COUNTER > PRDC-1			
Be sure to refer to the "Maintenance" chapter when checking the estimated replacement value of the parts. Although the upper limit value of each counter indicates the estimated value for replacement, the upper limit value is not always changed simultaneously when the estimated replacement value is changed due to design change			
Item	Level	Description	
FX2-E2TS	1	Title	Secondary fixing external heater 2 thermo switch counter
		When used	When replacing parts of Secondary fixing external heater 2 thermo switch
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	1,000,000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Expected life: 1,000,000 prints
FX-E2-TS	1	Title	Primary fixing external heater 2 thermo switch counter
		When used	When replacing parts of Primary fixing external heater 2 thermo switch
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	1,000,000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
PRM-F-Y	1	Title	Primary pad holder (Y) counter
		When used	When replacing parts of Primary pad holder (Y)
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
PRM-F-M	1	Title	Primary pad holder (M) counter
		When used	When replacing parts of Primary pad holder (M)
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	Depending on the setting value of the following Service Mode
		Related service modes	COPIER>OPTION>BODY>CNTR-SW
		Additional description and notes	-
PRM-F-C	1	Title	Primary pad holder (C) counter
		When used	When replacing parts of Primary pad holder (C)
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	Depending on the setting value of the following Service Mode
		Related service modes	COPIER>OPTION>BODY>CNTR-SW
		Additional description and notes	-
PRM-F-K	1	Title	Primary pad holder (K) counter
		When used	When replacing parts of Primary pad holder (K)
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	Depending on the setting value of the following Service Mode
		Related service modes	COPIER>OPTION>BODY>CNTR-SW
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > COUNTER > PRDC-1			
Be sure to refer to the "Maintenance" chapter when checking the estimated replacement value of the parts. Although the upper limit value of each counter indicates the estimated value for replacement, the upper limit value is not always changed simultaneously when the estimated replacement value is changed due to design change			
Item	Level	Description	
PRM-S-Y	1	Title	Primary slider (Y) counter
		When used	When replacing parts of Primary slider (Y)
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	Depending on the setting value of the following Service Mode
		Related service modes	COPIER>OPTION>BODY>CNTR-SW
		Additional description and notes	-
PRM-S-M	1	Title	Primary slider (M) counter
		When used	When replacing parts of Primary slider (M)
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	Depending on the setting value of the following Service Mode
		Related service modes	COPIER>OPTION>BODY>CNTR-SW
		Additional description and notes	-
PRM-S-C	1	Title	Primary slider (C) counter
		When used	When replacing parts of Primary slider (C)
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	Depending on the setting value of the following Service Mode
		Related service modes	COPIER>OPTION>BODY>CNTR-SW
		Additional description and notes	-
PRM-S-K	1	Title	Primary slider (K) counter
		When used	When replacing parts of Primary slider (K)
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	Depending on the setting value of the following Service Mode
		Related service modes	COPIER>OPTION>BODY>CNTR-SW
		Additional description and notes	-
PO-PAD	1	Title	Pre-transfer pad holder counter
		When used	When replacing parts of Pre-transfer pad holder
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	Depending on the setting value of the following Service Mode
		Related service modes	COPIER>OPTION>BODY>CNTR-SW
		Additional description and notes	-
PO-SLD	1	Title	Pre-transfer slider counter
		When used	When replacing parts of Pre-transfer slider
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	Depending on the setting value of the following Service Mode
		Related service modes	COPIER>OPTION>BODY>CNTR-SW
		Additional description and notes	-

18.8.1.7 COPIER > COUNTER > DRBL-1 (1/4)

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

<How to see periodically replaced/durable parts counter>

This machine has periodically replaced/durable parts counter (PRDC-1/DRBL-1/DRBL-2), which can be used to check the target of replacing periodically replaced/durable parts.

<Example>

```
PRE-WIRE / 00000027 / 00500000 / 0% !! 82
  [1]          [2]          [3]    [4] [5] [6]
F-18-19
```

[1]: Parts name is displayed. Primary charging wire in the example.

[2]: Counter value (actual usage of sheets) is displayed. Clear the value by clear key at replacement of parts.

[3]: Limit value (target of replacement) is displayed. The value can be changed by selecting item and pressing the numeric pad. After changing, press OK key.

[4]: The ratio the counter value to limit value is displayed.

[5]: One (!) is displayed when the ratio is 90 to 100%. Two (!) is displayed at 100% or more. Not displayed in the example.

[6]: Predicted number of days to replacement is displayed. 82 days in the example.

<DRBL-1> items shown below are maintained in the DC controller PCB and main controller PCB.

- Main controller PCB

T-CLN-BD, TR-BLT, TR-ROLL, 1TR-STC, 2TR-INRL, CLN-BLD, CL-SUPS, BS-SL-F, BS-SL-R, C1-PU-RL, C1-SP-RL, C1-FD-RL, C2-PU-RL, C2-SP-RL, C2-FD-RL, C3-PU-RL, C3-SP-RL, C3-FD-RL, C4-PU-RL, C4-SP-RL, C4-FD-RL, M-PU-RL, M-SP-RL, FX-IN-BE, FX-WEB, FX-EX-RL, FX-EX-BE, DLV-UCLW, DLV-LCLW, FX-LB-ST, FX-LB-PD, FX-LB-PC, FX-LB-OR, FX-EX-C1, DEV-CL, BS-SL-F2, BS-SL-R2, DMR-CLN, 2TR-BLD, 2TR-CLN

- DC controller PCB

DV-UNT-C, DV-UNT-Y, DV-UNT-M, DV-UNT-K, FX-UP-RL, FX-BL-CT, TB-CLN2, ITB-CLN1



When replacing the main controller PCB or DC controller PCB, execute the service mode COPIER>FUNCTION>MISC>P-PRINT and keep the printout.

Counter values in the service mode <DRBL-1> are classified into the following five types.

Type 1:

B&W Size S: 1 count Full color Size S: 4 counts
Size L: 2 counts Size L: 8 counts

Type 2:

B&W Size S: 1 count Full color Size S: 3 counts
Size L: 2 counts Size L: 6 counts

Type 3:

B&W Size S: 1 count Full color Size S: 1 count
Size L: 2 counts Size L: 2 counts

Type 4:

B&W / Full color: 1 count

Type 5:

B&W Not counted Full color 1 count

COPIER > COUNTER > DRBL-1			
Be sure to refer to the "Maintenance" chapter when checking the estimated replacement value of the parts. Although the upper limit value of each counter indicates the estimated value for replacement, the upper limit value is not always changed simultaneously when the estimated replacement value is changed due to design change			
Item	Level	Description	
TR-BLT	1	Title	Intermediate transfer belt (ITB) counter
		When used	When replacing parts of Intermediate transfer belt (ITB)
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	1,000,000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
TR-ROLL	1	Not used	
2TR-ROLL	1	Title	Secondary transfer external roller counter
		When used	When replacing parts of Secondary transfer external roller
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	300,000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
2TR-INRL	1	Title	Secondary transfer roller counter
		When used	When replacing parts of Secondary transfer roller
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	600,000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
ITB-BLD1	1	Title	ITB cleaning blade counter
		When used	When replacing parts of ITB cleaning blade
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	Depending on the setting value of the following Service Mode
		Related service modes	COPIER>OPTION>BODY>CNTR-SW
		Additional description and notes	-
2TRCL-RL	1	Title	Print counter for replacing the secondary transfer cleaning roller
		When used	When replacing the secondary transfer cleaning roller
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	300,000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > COUNTER > DRBL-1			
Be sure to refer to the "Maintenance" chapter when checking the estimated replacement value of the parts. Although the upper limit value of each counter indicates the estimated value for replacement, the upper limit value is not always changed simultaneously when the estimated replacement value is changed due to design change			
Item	Level	Description	
ITB-E-SC	1	Title	Print counter for replacing the ITB edge scraper
		When used	When replacing the ITB edge scraper
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	Depending on the setting value of the following Service Mode
		Related service modes	COPIER>OPTION>BODY>CNTR-SW
		Additional description and notes	-
ITBCLN-U	1	Title	Print counter for replacing the ITB cleaner unit
		When used	When replacing the ITB cleaner unit
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
PT-DRM	1	Not used	
CLN-BLD	1	Title	Drum cleaning blade (Bk) counter
		When used	When replacing parts of Drum cleaning blade (Bk)
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	Depending on the setting value of the following Service Mode
		Related service modes	COPIER>OPTION>BODY>CNTR-SW
		Additional description and notes	-
DV-UNT-C	1	Title	Developing assembly (C) counter
		When used	When replacing parts of Developing assembly (Cyan)
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	1,000,000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
DV-UNT-Y	1	Title	Developing assembly (Y) counter
		When used	When replacing parts of Developing assembly (Y)
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	1,000,000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > COUNTER > DRBL-1			
Be sure to refer to the "Maintenance" chapter when checking the estimated replacement value of the parts. Although the upper limit value of each counter indicates the estimated value for replacement, the upper limit value is not always changed simultaneously when the estimated replacement value is changed due to design change			
Item	Level	Description	
DV-UNT-M	1	Title	Developing assembly (M) counter
		When used	When replacing parts of Developing assembly (M)
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	1,000,000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
DV-UNT-K	1	Title	Developing assembly (Bk) counter
		When used	When replacing parts of Developing assembly (Bk)
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	1,000,000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
C1-PU-RL	1	Not used	
C2-PU-RL	1	Not used	
M-PU-RL	1	Title	Print counter for replacing the manual feed pickup roller
		When used	When replacing the manual feed pickup roller
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	120,000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
TANDEMRL	1	Title	Print counter for replacing tandem feed roller
		When used	When replacing the tandem feed roller
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	4,500,000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
JOINU-RL	1	Title	Print counter for replacing the feed roller (merge unit)
		When used	When replacing the feed roller (merge unit)
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	4,500,000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > COUNTER > DRBL-1			
Be sure to refer to the "Maintenance" chapter when checking the estimated replacement value of the parts. Although the upper limit value of each counter indicates the estimated value for replacement, the upper limit value is not always changed simultaneously when the estimated replacement value is changed due to design change			
Item	Level	Description	
EXIT-CL	1	Title	Print counter for replacing one-way clutch (delivery)
		When used	When replacing one-way clutch (delivery)
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	3,000,000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
BYP-S-DRL	1	Title	Print counter for replacing driven roller (bypass)
		When used	When replacing the driven roller (bypass)
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	4,500,000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
EXT-DRL	1	Title	Print counter for replacing driven roller (delivery/feed)
		When used	When replacing the driven roller (delivery/feed)
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	4,500,000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
TADM-DRL	1	Title	Print counter for replacing driven roller (tandem)
		When used	When replacing the driven roller (tandem)
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	4,500,000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
EXITC-RL	1	Title	Print counter for replacing delivery feed roller
		When used	When replacing the delivery feed roller
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	4,500,000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
JOIN-DRL	1	Title	Print counter for replacing driven roller (merge)
		When used	When replacing the driven roller (merge)
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	4,500,000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > COUNTER > DRBL-1			
Be sure to refer to the "Maintenance" chapter when checking the estimated replacement value of the parts. Although the upper limit value of each counter indicates the estimated value for replacement, the upper limit value is not always changed simultaneously when the estimated replacement value is changed due to design change			
Item	Level	Description	
EXIT-RL	1	Title	Print counter for replacing delivery roller
		When used	When replacing the delivery roller
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	4,500,000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
DCURL-RL	1	Title	Print counter for replacing decurler roller
		When used	When replacing the decurler roller
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	1,000,000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
BPS-RL-A	1	Title	Print counter for bypass feed roller A
		When used	When replacing the bypass feed roller A
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	4,500,000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
BPS-J-A	1	Title	Print counter for replacing bypass feed roller A (merge unit)
		When used	When replacing the bypass feed roller A (merge unit)
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	4,500,000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
BPS-RL-C	1	Title	Print counter for replacing bypass feed roller C
		When used	When replacing the bypass feed roller C
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	4,500,000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
SWBK-RL	1	Title	Print counter for replacing delivery reverse roller
		When used	When replacing the delivery reverse roller
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	4,500,000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > COUNTER > DRBL-1			
Be sure to refer to the "Maintenance" chapter when checking the estimated replacement value of the parts. Although the upper limit value of each counter indicates the estimated value for replacement, the upper limit value is not always changed simultaneously when the estimated replacement value is changed due to design change			
Item	Level	Description	
DSWBK-RL	1	Title	Print counter for replacing duplex reverse roller
		When used	When replacing the duplex reverse roller
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	4,500,000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
CSE-RL	1	Title	Print counter for replacing foam roller (color sensor)
		When used	When replacing the foam roller (color sensor)
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	4,500,000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
JOIN-BLT	1	Title	Print counter for replacing feed belt (merger unit)
		When used	When replacing the feed belt (merger unit)
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	1,500,000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
DUP-BLT	1	Title	Print counter for replacing feed belt (duplex decurler)
		When used	When replacing the feed belt (duplex decurler)
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	1,500,000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
FLAP-SP	1	Title	Print counter for replacing flapper spring
		When used	When replacing the flapper spring
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	1,000,000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
FX-UP-RL	1	Title	Primary fixing roller counter
		When used	When replacing parts of Primary fixing roller
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	500,000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

18.8.1.8 COPIER > COUNTER > DRBL-1 (2/4)

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

T-18-102

COPIER > COUNTER > DRBL-1			
Be sure to refer to the "Maintenance" chapter when checking the estimated replacement value of the parts. Although the upper limit value of each counter indicates the estimated value for replacement, the upper limit value is not always changed simultaneously when the estimated replacement value is changed due to design change			
Item	Level	Description	
FX-LW-RL	1	Not used	
FX-WEB	1	Title	Primary fixing web counter
		When used	When replacing parts of Primary fixing web
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	count
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	300,000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
FX-EX-RL	1	Title	Primary external heater roller counter
		When used	When replacing parts of Primary external heater roller
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	750,000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
FXRF-RL2	1	Title	Secondary fixing refresh roller counter
		When used	When replacing parts of Secondary fixing refresh roller
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	250,000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
FX-RFCL2	1	Title	Secondary fixing refresh cleaning roller counter
		When used	When replacing parts of Secondary fixing refresh cleaning roller
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	250,000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
FX-RFCL	1	Title	Primary fixing refresh cleaning roller counter
		When used	When replacing parts of Primary fixing refresh cleaning roller
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	250,000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > COUNTER > DRBL-1			
Be sure to refer to the "Maintenance" chapter when checking the estimated replacement value of the parts. Although the upper limit value of each counter indicates the estimated value for replacement, the upper limit value is not always changed simultaneously when the estimated replacement value is changed due to design change			
Item	Level	Description	
FX1IN-RL	1	Title	Print counter for replacing the primary fixing internal delivery lower roller
		When used	When replacing the primary fixing internal delivery lower roller
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	4,500,000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
FX2IN-RL	1	Title	Print counter for replacing the secondary fixing internal delivery lower roller
		When used	When replacing the secondary fixing internal delivery lower roller
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	4,500,000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
FX1-SL	1	Title	Print counter for replacing the primary fixing web solenoid
		When used	When replacing the primary fixing web solenoid
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	4,500,000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
FX2-SL	1	Title	Print counter for replacing the secondary fixing web solenoid
		When used	When replacing the secondary fixing web solenoid
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	4,500,000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
FX1-RL-G	1	Title	Print counter for replacing the primary fixing drive gear
		When used	When replacing the primary fixing drive gear
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	1,000,000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
FX1-GEAR	1	Title	Print counter for replacing the primary fixing two drive gear
		When used	When replacing the primary fixing two drive gear
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	1,000,000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > COUNTER > DRBL-1			
Be sure to refer to the "Maintenance" chapter when checking the estimated replacement value of the parts. Although the upper limit value of each counter indicates the estimated value for replacement, the upper limit value is not always changed simultaneously when the estimated replacement value is changed due to design change			
Item	Level	Description	
FX1WEB-U	1	Title	Print counter for replacing the primary fixing web unit
		When used	When replacing the primary fixing web unit
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	1,000,000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
FX2WEB-U	1	Title	Print counter for replacing the secondary fixing web unit
		When used	When replacing the secondary fixing web unit
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	1,000,000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
ITB-SCRIP	1	Title	ITB inner cleaning scraper counter
		When used	When replacing parts of ITB inner cleaning scraper
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	Depending on the setting value of the following Service Mode
		Related service modes	COPIER>OPTION>BODY>CNTR-SW
		Additional description and notes	-
FX-BLT-U	1	Title	Fixing belt unit counter
		When used	When replacing parts of Fixing belt unit
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	300,000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
FX-LB-ST	1	Title	Primary fixing steering roller counter
		When used	When replacing parts of Primary fixing steering roller
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	600,000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
FX-LB-PD	1	Title	Primary fixing belt pressure pad counter
		When used	When replacing parts of Primary fixing belt pressure pad
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	300,000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > COUNTER > DRBL-1			
Be sure to refer to the "Maintenance" chapter when checking the estimated replacement value of the parts. Although the upper limit value of each counter indicates the estimated value for replacement, the upper limit value is not always changed simultaneously when the estimated replacement value is changed due to design change			
Item	Level	Description	
FX-LB-PC	1	Title	Primary fixing belt pressure pad cover counter
		When used	When replacing parts of Primary fixing belt pressure pad cover
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	300,000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
FX-LB-OR	1	Title	Primary fixing belt oil coating roller counter
		When used	When replacing parts of Primary fixing belt oil coating roller
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	300,000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
FX-EX-C1	1	Title	Primary fixing external heater cleaning roller counter
		When used	When replacing parts of external heater cleaning roller
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
FX-BL-CT	1	Not used	
ITB-CLN2	1	Title	ITB cleaning brush roller counter
		When used	When replacing parts of ITB cleaning brush roller
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
ITB-CLN1	1	Title	ITB cleaning brush roller counter
		When used	When replacing parts of ITB cleaning brush roller
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > COUNTER > DRBL-1			
Be sure to refer to the "Maintenance" chapter when checking the estimated replacement value of the parts. Although the upper limit value of each counter indicates the estimated value for replacement, the upper limit value is not always changed simultaneously when the estimated replacement value is changed due to design change			
Item	Level	Description	
2TR-CLN	1	Title	Secondary transfer cleaner kit counter
		When used	When replacing parts of Secondary transfer cleaner kit
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	Depending on the setting value of the following Service Mode
		Related service modes	COPIER>OPTION>BODY>CNTR-SW
		Additional description and notes	-
BS-SL-Y	1	Title	Drum cleaner (Y) side seal counter
		When used	When replacing parts of Drum cleaner (Y) side seal
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	Depending on the setting value of the following Service Mode
		Related service modes	COPIER>OPTION>BODY>CNTR-SW
		Additional description and notes	-
BS-SL-C	1	Title	Drum cleaner (C) side seal counter
		When used	When replacing parts of Drum cleaner (C) side seal
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	Depending on the setting value of the following Service Mode
		Related service modes	COPIER>OPTION>BODY>CNTR-SW
		Additional description and notes	-
BS-SL-K	1	Title	Drum cleaner (Bk) side seal counter
		When used	When replacing parts of Drum cleaner (Bk) side seal
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	Depending on the setting value of the following Service Mode
		Related service modes	COPIER>OPTION>BODY>CNTR-SW
		Additional description and notes	-
CL-FUR-Y	1	Title	Drum cleaner (Y) blush roller counter
		When used	When replacing parts of Drum cleaner (Y) blush roller
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	Depending on the setting value of the following Service Mode
		Related service modes	COPIER>OPTION>BODY>CNTR-SW
		Additional description and notes	-
CL-FUR-M	1	Title	Drum cleaner (M) blush roller counter
		When used	When replacing parts of Drum cleaner (M) blush roller
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	Depending on the setting value of the following Service Mode
		Related service modes	COPIER>OPTION>BODY>CNTR-SW
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > COUNTER > DRBL-1			
Be sure to refer to the "Maintenance" chapter when checking the estimated replacement value of the parts. Although the upper limit value of each counter indicates the estimated value for replacement, the upper limit value is not always changed simultaneously when the estimated replacement value is changed due to design change			
Item	Level	Description	
CL-FUR-C	1	Title	Drum cleaner (C) blush roller counter
		When used	When replacing parts of Drum cleaner (C) blush roller
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	Depending on the setting value of the following Service Mode
		Related service modes	COPIER>OPTION>BODY>CNTR-SW
		Additional description and notes	-
CL-FUR-K	1	Title	Drum cleaner (Bk) blush roller counter
		When used	When replacing parts of Drum cleaner (Bk) blush roller
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	Depending on the setting value of the following Service Mode
		Related service modes	COPIER>OPTION>BODY>CNTR-SW
		Additional description and notes	-
CL-BLD-Y	1	Title	Drum (Y) cleaning blade counter
		When used	When replacing parts of Drum (Y) cleaning blade
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	Depending on the setting value of the following Service Mode
		Related service modes	COPIER>OPTION>BODY>CNTR-SW
		Additional description and notes	-
CL-BLD-M	1	Title	Drum (M) cleaning blade counter
		When used	When replacing parts of Drum (M) cleaning blade
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	Depending on the setting value of the following Service Mode
		Related service modes	COPIER>OPTION>BODY>CNTR-SW
		Additional description and notes	-
CL-BLD-C	1	Title	Drum (C) cleaning blade counter
		When used	When replacing parts of Drum (C) cleaning blade
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	Depending on the setting value of the following Service Mode
		Related service modes	COPIER>OPTION>BODY>CNTR-SW
		Additional description and notes	-
PT-DR-Y	1	Title	Photosensitive drum (Y) counter
		When used	When replacing parts of Photosensitive drum (Y)
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	Depending on the setting value of the following Service Mode
		Related service modes	COPIER>OPTION>BODY>CNTR-SW
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > COUNTER > DRBL-1			
Be sure to refer to the "Maintenance" chapter when checking the estimated replacement value of the parts. Although the upper limit value of each counter indicates the estimated value for replacement, the upper limit value is not always changed simultaneously when the estimated replacement value is changed due to design change			
Item	Level	Description	
PT-DR-M	1	Title	Photosensitive drum (M) counter
		When used	When replacing parts of Photosensitive drum (M)
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	Depending on the setting value of the following Service Mode
		Related service modes	COPIER>OPTION>BODY>CNTR-SW
		Additional description and notes	-
PT-DR-C	1	Title	Photosensitive drum (C) counter
		When used	When replacing parts of Photosensitive drum (C)
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	Depending on the setting value of the following Service Mode
		Related service modes	COPIER>OPTION>BODY>CNTR-SW
		Additional description and notes	-
ITRLSCRIP	1	Not used	
ITR-RL-Y	1	Title	Primary transfer roller (Y) counter
		When used	When replacing parts of Primary transfer roller (Y)
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	900,000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
ITR-RL-M	1	Title	Primary transfer roller (M) counter
		When used	When replacing parts of Primary transfer roller (M)
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	900,000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
ITR-RL-C	1	Title	Primary transfer roller (C) counter
		When used	When replacing parts of Primary transfer roller (C)
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	900,000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > COUNTER > DRBL-1			
Be sure to refer to the "Maintenance" chapter when checking the estimated replacement value of the parts. Although the upper limit value of each counter indicates the estimated value for replacement, the upper limit value is not always changed simultaneously when the estimated replacement value is changed due to design change			
Item	Level	Description	
ITR-RL-K	1	Title	Primary transfer roller (Bk) counter
		When used	When replacing parts of Primary transfer roller (Bk)
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	900,000
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	-		

18.8.1.9 COPIER > COUNTER > DRBL-1 (3/4)

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

T-18-103

COPIER > COUNTER > DRBL-1			
Be sure to refer to the "Maintenance" chapter when checking the estimated replacement value of the parts. Although the upper limit value of each counter indicates the estimated value for replacement, the upper limit value is not always changed simultaneously when the estimated replacement value is changed due to design change			
Item	Level	Description	
ITB-WEB	1	Title	ITB cleaning web counter
		When used	When replacing parts of ITB cleaning web
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	Depending on the setting value of the following Service Mode
		Related service modes	COPIER>OPTION>BODY>CNTR-SW
Additional description and notes	-		
2TR-ST1	1	Title	Secondary transfer unit toner blocking sheet counter
		When used	When replacing parts of Secondary transfer unit toner blocking sheet
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	1,800,000
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	-		
2TR-ST2	1	Not used	
PCH-S-R	1	Title	Registration patch cleaning shutter cleaning pad counter
		When used	When replacing parts of Registration patch cleaning shutter
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	600,000
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	-		
PCH-S-T	1	Title	Edge registration patch cleaning shutter counter
		When used	When replacing parts of Edge registration patch cleaning shutter
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	600,000
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	-		

COPIER > COUNTER > DRBL-1			
Be sure to refer to the "Maintenance" chapter when checking the estimated replacement value of the parts. Although the upper limit value of each counter indicates the estimated value for replacement, the upper limit value is not always changed simultaneously when the estimated replacement value is changed due to design change			
Item	Level	Description	
FX2-UPRL	1	Title	Secondary fixing roller counter
		When used	When replacing parts of Secondary fixing roller
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	300,000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
FX2-WEB	1	Title	Secondary fixing web counter
		When used	When replacing parts of Secondary fixing web
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	count
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	300,000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
FX-WB-RL	1	Title	Primary fixing web roller counter
		When used	When replacing parts of Primary fixing web roller 1
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	1,000,000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
FX-WBRL2	1	Not used	
FX2-WBRL	1	Title	Secondary fixing web roller counter
		When used	When replacing parts of Secondary fixing web roller 1
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	1,000,000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
FX2WBRL2	1	Not used	
FX2-LWRL	1	Title	Secondary fixing pressure roller counter
		When used	When replacing parts of Secondary fixing pressure roller
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	300,000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > COUNTER > DRBL-1			
Be sure to refer to the "Maintenance" chapter when checking the estimated replacement value of the parts. Although the upper limit value of each counter indicates the estimated value for replacement, the upper limit value is not always changed simultaneously when the estimated replacement value is changed due to design change			
Item	Level	Description	
FX2EXRL	1	Title	Secondary fixing external heating roller 1 counter
		When used	When replacing parts of Secondary fixing external heating roller 1
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	750,000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
FX2EXRL2	1	Title	Secondary fixing external heating roller 2 counter
		When used	When replacing parts of Secondary fixing external heating roller 2
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	750,000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
FX2-EXC1	1	Title	Secondary fixing external heating cleaning roller 1 counter
		When used	When replacing parts of Secondary fixing external heating cleaning roller 1
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	750,000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
FX2-EXC2	1	Title	Secondary fixing external heating cleaning roller 2 counter
		When used	When replacing parts of Secondary fixing external heating cleaning roller 2
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	750,000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
FX-EXHTR	1	Not used	
FXEXHTR2	1	Not used	
F2EXHTR	1	Not used	
F2EXHTR2	1	Not used	
BS-SL-M	1	Title	Drum (M) cleaner side seal counter
		When used	When replacing parts of Drum (M) cleaner side seal
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	Depending on the setting value of the following Service Mode
		Related service modes	COPIER>OPTION>BODY>CNTR-SW
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > COUNTER > DRBL-1			
Be sure to refer to the "Maintenance" chapter when checking the estimated replacement value of the parts. Although the upper limit value of each counter indicates the estimated value for replacement, the upper limit value is not always changed simultaneously when the estimated replacement value is changed due to design change			
Item	Level	Description	
FX-EX-C2	1	Title	Primary fixing external heating cleaning roller 2 counter
		When used	When replacing parts of Primary fixing external heating cleaning roller 2
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	750,000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
DEV-P-Y	1	Title	Drum patch sensor shutter (Y) counter
		When used	When replacing parts of Drum patch sensor shutter (Y)
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	250,000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
DEV-P-M	1	Title	Drum patch sensor shutter (M) counter
		When used	When replacing parts of Drum patch sensor shutter (M)
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	250,000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
DEV-P-C	1	Title	Drum patch sensor shutter (C) counter
		When used	When replacing parts of Drum patch sensor shutter (C)
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	250,000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
DEV-P-K	1	Title	Drum patch sensor shutter (Bk) counter
		When used	When replacing parts of Drum patch sensor shutter (Bk)
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	250,000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
DV-P-S-Y	1	Title	Drum patch sensor (Y) counter
		When used	When replacing parts of Drum patch sensor (Y)
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	500,000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > COUNTER > DRBL-1			
Be sure to refer to the "Maintenance" chapter when checking the estimated replacement value of the parts. Although the upper limit value of each counter indicates the estimated value for replacement, the upper limit value is not always changed simultaneously when the estimated replacement value is changed due to design change			
Item	Level	Description	
DV-P-S-M	1	Title	Drum patch sensor (M) counter
		When used	When replacing parts of Drum patch sensor (M)
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	500,000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
DV-P-S-C	1	Title	Drum patch sensor (C) counter
		When used	When replacing parts of Drum patch sensor (C)
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	500,000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
DV-P-S-K	1	Title	Drum patch sensor (Bk) counter
		When used	When replacing parts of Drum patch sensor (Bk)
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	500,000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
RD-PAD	1	Title	Right deck separation pad counter
		When used	When replacing parts of Right deck separation pad
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=1 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	100,000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
LD-PAD	1	Title	Left deck separation pad counter
		When used	When replacing parts of left deck separation pad
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=1 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	100,000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
FX-RF-RL	1	Title	Primary fixing refresh roller counter
		When used	When replacing parts of Refresh roller
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	250,000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > COUNTER > DRBL-1			
Be sure to refer to the "Maintenance" chapter when checking the estimated replacement value of the parts. Although the upper limit value of each counter indicates the estimated value for replacement, the upper limit value is not always changed simultaneously when the estimated replacement value is changed due to design change			
Item	Level	Description	
SUBHOP-M	1	Not used	
PCHCLN-M	1	Not used	
SID-SL-F	1	Not used	
SID-SL-R	1	Not used	
SU-SHT	1	Not used	
T-SL-F	1	Not used	
T-SL-R	1	Not used	
2TR-E-GD	1	Title	Secondary transfer inlet guide counter
		When used	When replacing parts of Secondary transfer inlet guide
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	1,800,000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
2T-CN-BD	1	Not used	
H-SHT5	1	Not used	
EX-CREW1	1	Title	Delivery lower separation claw (first) counter
		When used	When replacing parts of Delivery lower separation claw (first)
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	1,000,000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
EX-CREW2	1	Title	Delivery lower separation claw (secondary) counter
		When used	When replacing parts of Delivery lower separation claw (secondary)
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	1,000,000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Expected life: 1,000,000 prints
FX1-SEPA	1	Title	Separation plate (first) counter
		When used	When replacing parts of Separation plate (first)
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	1,000,000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
FX2-SEPA	1	Title	Separation plate (secondary) counter
		When used	When replacing parts of Separation plate (secondary)
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	1,000,000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > COUNTER > DRBL-1			
Be sure to refer to the "Maintenance" chapter when checking the estimated replacement value of the parts. Although the upper limit value of each counter indicates the estimated value for replacement, the upper limit value is not always changed simultaneously when the estimated replacement value is changed due to design change			
Item	Level	Description	
FX1-BUSH	1	Title	Primary fixing Insulating bush counter
		When used	When replacing parts of Primary fixing Insulating bush
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	1,000,000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
FX2-BUSH	1	Title	Secondary fixing Insulating bush counter
		When used	When replacing parts of Secondary fixing Insulating bush
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	1,000,000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
FX1-BEAR	1	Title	Primary fixing bearing counter
		When used	When replacing parts of Primary fixing bearing
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	3,000,000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
FX2-BEAR	1	Title	Secondary fixing bearing counter
		When used	When replacing parts of Secondary fixing bearing
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	3,000,000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
FIEX-BUS	1	Title	Primary fixing external heating roller insulating bush counter
		When used	When replacing parts of Primary fixing external heating roller insulating bush
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	750,000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
F2EX-BUS	1	Title	Secondary fixing external heating roller insulating bush counter
		When used	When replacing parts of Secondary fixing external heating roller insulating bush
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	750,000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > COUNTER > DRBL-1			
Be sure to refer to the "Maintenance" chapter when checking the estimated replacement value of the parts. Although the upper limit value of each counter indicates the estimated value for replacement, the upper limit value is not always changed simultaneously when the estimated replacement value is changed due to design change			
Item	Level	Description	
F1-EX-BE	1	Title	Primary fixing external heating roller bearing counter
		When used	When replacing parts of Primary fixing external heating roller bearing
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	1,000,000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

18.8.1.10 COPIER > COUNTER > DRBL-1 (4/4)

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

T-18-104

COPIER > COUNTER > DRBL-1			
Be sure to refer to the "Maintenance" chapter when checking the estimated replacement value of the parts. Although the upper limit value of each counter indicates the estimated value for replacement, the upper limit value is not always changed simultaneously when the estimated replacement value is changed due to design change			
Item	Level	Description	
F2-EX-BE	1	Title	Secondary fixing external heating roller bearing counter
		When used	When replacing parts of Secondary fixing external heating roller bearing
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	1,000,000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
F2-PR-BS	1	Title	Secondary fixing pressure roller insulating bush counter
		When used	When replacing parts of Secondary fixing pressure roller insulating bush
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	900,000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
F2-PR-BR	1	Title	Secondary fixing pressure roller bearing counter
		When used	When replacing parts of Secondary fixing pressure roller bearing
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	3,000,000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
FXBLT-B1	1	Title	Primary fixing belt bearing 1 counter
		When used	When replacing parts of Primary fixing belt bearing 1
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	1,000,000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
FXBLT-B2	1	Not used	

COPIER > COUNTER > DRBL-1			
Be sure to refer to the "Maintenance" chapter when checking the estimated replacement value of the parts. Although the upper limit value of each counter indicates the estimated value for replacement, the upper limit value is not always changed simultaneously when the estimated replacement value is changed due to design change			
Item	Level	Description	
FXBLT-B3	1	Title	Primary fixing belt bearing 3 counter
		When used	When replacing parts of Primary fixing belt bearing 3
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	1,000,000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
FXBLT-B4	1	Title	Primary fixing belt bearing 4 counter
		When used	When replacing parts of Primary fixing belt bearing 4
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	1,000,000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
FXBLT-B5	1	Title	Primary fixing belt bearing 5 counter
		When used	When replacing parts of Primary fixing belt bearing 5
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	1,000,000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
ITB-SL-F	1	Title	ITB end seal (F) counter
		When used	When replacing parts of ITB end seal (F)
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	Depending on the setting value of the following Service Mode
		Related service modes	COPIER>OPTION>BODY>CNTR-SW
		Additional description and notes	-
ITB-SL-R	1	Title	ITB end seal (R) counter
		When used	When replacing parts of ITB end seal (R)
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	Depending on the setting value of the following Service Mode
		Related service modes	COPIER>OPTION>BODY>CNTR-SW
		Additional description and notes	-
CR-RL	1	Title	Cross-feed roller counter
		When used	When replacing parts of Cross-feed roller
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	500,000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > COUNTER > DRBL-1			
Be sure to refer to the "Maintenance" chapter when checking the estimated replacement value of the parts. Although the upper limit value of each counter indicates the estimated value for replacement, the upper limit value is not always changed simultaneously when the estimated replacement value is changed due to design change			
Item	Level	Description	
CR-R-CLN	1	Title	Cross-feed roller cleaning assembly counter
		When used	When replacing parts of Cross-feed roller cleaning assembly
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	500,000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
SUBH-M-Y	1	Title	Print counter for replacing Y sub hopper stirring motor
		When used	When replacing the Y sub hopper stirring motor
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	4,500,000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
SUBH-M-M	1	Title	Print counter for replacing M sub hopper stirring motor
		When used	When replacing the M sub hopper stirring motor
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	4,500,000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
SUBH-M-C	1	Title	Print counter for replacing C sub hopper stirring motor
		When used	When replacing the C sub hopper stirring motor
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	4,500,000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
SUBH-M-K	1	Title	Print counter for replacing Bk sub hopper stirring motor
		When used	When replacing the Bk sub hopper stirring motor
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	4,500,000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
PATCLN-Y	1	Title	Print counter for replacing Y patch detection cleaning motor
		When used	When replacing Y patch detection cleaning motor
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	1,600,000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > COUNTER > DRBL-1			
Be sure to refer to the "Maintenance" chapter when checking the estimated replacement value of the parts. Although the upper limit value of each counter indicates the estimated value for replacement, the upper limit value is not always changed simultaneously when the estimated replacement value is changed due to design change			
Item	Level	Description	
PATCLN-M	1	Title	Print counter for replacing M patch detection cleaning motor
		When used	When replacing M patch detection cleaning motor
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	1,600,000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
PATCLN-C	1	Title	Print counter for replacing C patch detection cleaning motor
		When used	When replacing C patch detection cleaning motor
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	1,600,000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
PATCLN-K	1	Title	Print counter for replacing Bk patch detection cleaning motor
		When used	When replacing Bk patch detection cleaning motor
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	1,600,000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
SID-F-Y	1	Title	Print counter for replacing Y side seal (F)
		When used	When replacing Y side seal (F)
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	Depending on the setting value of the following Service Mode
		Related service modes	COPIER>OPTION>BODY>CNTR-SW
		Additional description and notes	-
SID-F-M	1	Title	Print counter for replacing M side seal (F)
		When used	When replacing M side seal (F)
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	Depending on the setting value of the following Service Mode
		Related service modes	COPIER>OPTION>BODY>CNTR-SW
		Additional description and notes	-
SID-F-C	1	Title	Print counter for replacing C side seal (F)
		When used	When replacing C side seal (F)
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	Depending on the setting value of the following Service Mode
		Related service modes	COPIER>OPTION>BODY>CNTR-SW
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > COUNTER > DRBL-1			
Be sure to refer to the "Maintenance" chapter when checking the estimated replacement value of the parts. Although the upper limit value of each counter indicates the estimated value for replacement, the upper limit value is not always changed simultaneously when the estimated replacement value is changed due to design change			
Item	Level	Description	
SID-F-K	1	Title	Print counter for replacing Bk side seal (F)
		When used	When replacing Bk side seal (F)
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	Depending on the setting value of the following Service Mode
		Related service modes	COPIER>OPTION>BODY>CNTR-SW
		Additional description and notes	-
SID-R-Y	1	Title	Print counter for replacing Y side seal (R)
		When used	When replacing Y side seal (R)
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	Depending on the setting value of the following Service Mode
		Related service modes	COPIER>OPTION>BODY>CNTR-SW
		Additional description and notes	-
SID-R-M	1	Title	Print counter for replacing M side seal (R)
		When used	When replacing M side seal (R)
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	Depending on the setting value of the following Service Mode
		Related service modes	COPIER>OPTION>BODY>CNTR-SW
		Additional description and notes	-
SID-R-C	1	Title	Print counter for replacing C side seal (R)
		When used	When replacing C side seal (R)
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	Depending on the setting value of the following Service Mode
		Related service modes	COPIER>OPTION>BODY>CNTR-SW
		Additional description and notes	-
SID-R-K	1	Title	Print counter for replacing Bk side seal (R)
		When used	When replacing Bk side seal (R)
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	Depending on the setting value of the following Service Mode
		Related service modes	COPIER>OPTION>BODY>CNTR-SW
		Additional description and notes	-
SU-SHT-Y	1	Title	Print counter for replacing Y scoop-up sheet
		When used	When replacing Y scoop-up sheet
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	Depending on the setting value of the following Service Mode
		Related service modes	COPIER>OPTION>BODY>CNTR-SW
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > COUNTER > DRBL-1			
Be sure to refer to the "Maintenance" chapter when checking the estimated replacement value of the parts. Although the upper limit value of each counter indicates the estimated value for replacement, the upper limit value is not always changed simultaneously when the estimated replacement value is changed due to design change			
Item	Level	Description	
SU-SHT-M	1	Title	Print counter for replacing M scoop-up sheet
		When used	When replacing M scoop-up sheet
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	Depending on the setting value of the following Service Mode
		Related service modes	COPIER>OPTION>BODY>CNTR-SW
		Additional description and notes	-
SU-SHT-C	1	Title	Print counter for replacing C scoop-up sheet
		When used	When replacing C scoop-up sheet
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	Depending on the setting value of the following Service Mode
		Related service modes	COPIER>OPTION>BODY>CNTR-SW
		Additional description and notes	-
SU-SHT-K	1	Title	Print counter for replacing Bk scoop-up sheet
		When used	When replacing Bk scoop-up sheet
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	Depending on the setting value of the following Service Mode
		Related service modes	COPIER>OPTION>BODY>CNTR-SW
		Additional description and notes	-
EDGE-F-Y	1	Title	Print counter for replacing Y edge seal (F)
		When used	When replacing Y edge seal (F)
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	Depending on the setting value of the following Service Mode
		Related service modes	COPIER>OPTION>BODY>CNTR-SW
		Additional description and notes	-
EDGE-F-M	1	Title	Print counter for replacing M edge seal (F)
		When used	When replacing M edge seal (F)
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	Depending on the setting value of the following Service Mode
		Related service modes	COPIER>OPTION>BODY>CNTR-SW
		Additional description and notes	-
EDGE-F-C	1	Title	Print counter for replacing C edge seal (F)
		When used	When replacing C edge seal (F)
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	Depending on the setting value of the following Service Mode
		Related service modes	COPIER>OPTION>BODY>CNTR-SW
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > COUNTER > DRBL-1			
Be sure to refer to the "Maintenance" chapter when checking the estimated replacement value of the parts. Although the upper limit value of each counter indicates the estimated value for replacement, the upper limit value is not always changed simultaneously when the estimated replacement value is changed due to design change			
Item	Level	Description	
EDGE-F-K	1	Title	Print counter for replacing Bk edge seal (F)
		When used	When replacing Bk edge seal (F)
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	Depending on the setting value of the following Service Mode
		Related service modes	COPIER>OPTION>BODY>CNTR-SW
		Additional description and notes	-
EDGE-R-Y	1	Title	Print counter for replacing Y edge seal (R)
		When used	When replacing Y edge seal (R)
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	Depending on the setting value of the following Service Mode
		Related service modes	COPIER>OPTION>BODY>CNTR-SW
		Additional description and notes	-
EDGE-R-M	1	Title	Print counter for replacing M edge seal (R)
		When used	When replacing M edge seal (R)
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	Depending on the setting value of the following Service Mode
		Related service modes	COPIER>OPTION>BODY>CNTR-SW
		Additional description and notes	-
EDGE-R-C	1	Title	Print counter for replacing C edge seal (R)
		When used	When replacing C edge seal (R)
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	Depending on the setting value of the following Service Mode
		Related service modes	COPIER>OPTION>BODY>CNTR-SW
		Additional description and notes	-
EDGE-R-K	1	Title	Print counter for replacing Bk edge seal (R)
		When used	When replacing Bk edge seal (R)
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	Depending on the setting value of the following Service Mode
		Related service modes	COPIER>OPTION>BODY>CNTR-SW
		Additional description and notes	-

18.8.1.11 COPIER > COUNTER > DRBL-2

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

<DRBL-2> items shown below are maintained in the DC controller PCB and main controller PCB.

- Main controller PCB

DF-PU-RL, DF-FD-RL, DF-SP-BL, DF-F-BLT, DF-HNG-L, DF-HNG-R, DF-SP-M, DF-DL-RL, DF-DL-M, DF-TRL-U, PD-PU-RL, PD-SP-RL, PD-FD-RL

- DC controller PCB
SORT, FIN-STPR, SADDLE, SDL-STPL, PUNCH, FN-BFFRL, SDL-RL



When replacing the main controller PCB or DC controller PCB, execute the service mode COPIER>FUNCTION>MISC>P-PRINT and keep the printout.

T-18-105

COPIER > COUNTER > DRBL-2			
Be sure to refer to the "Maintenance" chapter when checking the estimated replacement value of the parts. Although the upper limit value of each counter indicates the estimated value for replacement, the upper limit value is not always changed simultaneously when the estimated replacement value is changed due to design change			
Item	Level	Description	
DF-PU-RL	1	Title	DF pickup roller counter
		When used	When replacing parts of DF pickup roller
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=1 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	250,000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
DF-FD-RL	1	Title	DF feeding roller counter
		When used	When replacing parts of DF feeding roller
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	80,000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
DF-SP-BL	1	Title	DF separation belt counter
		When used	When replacing parts of DF separation belt
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	1 count with 1 sheet pickup
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	250,000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
DF-F-BLT	1	Title	DF feeding belt counter
		When used	When replacing parts of DF feeding belt
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	1-side: Large paper=1 Small paper=1 2-side: Large paper=3 Small paper=3
		Upper limit	200,000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
DF-HNG-L	1	Title	DF left hinge counter
		When used	When replacing parts of DF left hinge
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	time
		Count-up timing	When DF opening/closing
		Count-up specification	1 count with 1 set of DF opening/closing
		Upper limit	100,000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > COUNTER > DRBL-2			
Be sure to refer to the "Maintenance" chapter when checking the estimated replacement value of the parts. Although the upper limit value of each counter indicates the estimated value for replacement, the upper limit value is not always changed simultaneously when the estimated replacement value is changed due to design change			
Item	Level	Description	
DF-HNG-R	1	Title	DF right hinge counter
		When used	When replacing parts of DF right hinge
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	time
		Count-up timing	When DF opening/closing
		Count-up specification	1 count with 1 set of DF opening/closing
		Upper limit	100,000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
DF-SP-M	1	Title	DF separation motor counter
		When used	When replacing parts of DF separation motor
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	1 count with 1 sheet pickup
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	1,000,000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
DF-DL-RL	1	Title	DF delivery roller counter
		When used	When replacing parts of DF delivery roller
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	1 count with 1 sheet pickup
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	1,000,000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
DF-DL-M	1	Title	DF delivery motor counter
		When used	When replacing parts of DF delivery motor
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	1 count with 1 sheet pickup
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	1,000,000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
DF-TRL-U	1	Title	DF turn roller unit counter
		When used	When replacing parts of DF turn roller unit
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	1 count with 1 sheet pickup
		Count-up specification	1-side: Large paper=1 Small paper=1 2-side: Large paper=3 Small paper=3
		Upper limit	1,000,000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > COUNTER > DRBL-2			
Be sure to refer to the "Maintenance" chapter when checking the estimated replacement value of the parts. Although the upper limit value of each counter indicates the estimated value for replacement, the upper limit value is not always changed simultaneously when the estimated replacement value is changed due to design change			
Item	Level	Description	
PD-PU-RL	1	Title	Paper deck pickup roller (front) counter
		When used	When replacing the pickup roller (front)
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	250,000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
PD-SP-RL	1	Title	Paper deck separation roller counter
		When used	When replacing the separation roller
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	250,000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
PD-FD-RL	1	Title	Paper deck feed roller counter
		When used	When replacing the feed roller
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	250,000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
NON-SORT	1	Title	Finisher upper delivery outlet static charge eliminator counter
		When used	When replacing parts of upper delivery outlet static charge eliminator
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	When delivering to upper tray
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	1,000,000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
FIN-STPR	1	Title	Finisher stapler counter
		When used	When replacing parts of Finisher stapler
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	count
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	500,000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > COUNTER > DRBL-2			
Be sure to refer to the "Maintenance" chapter when checking the estimated replacement value of the parts. Although the upper limit value of each counter indicates the estimated value for replacement, the upper limit value is not always changed simultaneously when the estimated replacement value is changed due to design change			
Item	Level	Description	
SDL-STPL	1	Title	Finisher saddle staple counter
		When used	When replacing parts of saddle staple Large-sized paper also counted as L
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	count
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	300,000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
PUNCH	1	Title	Finisher punch unit counter
		When used	When replacing parts of inner punch
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	count
		Count-up timing	When punching
		Count-up specification	Large paper=1 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	1,000,000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
SORT-2	1	Title	Finisher knurling belt counter
		When used	When replacing parts of Finisher knurling belt
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	When delivering to processing tray
		Count-up specification	Large paper=1 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	1,000,000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
STCK	1	Title	Finisher stack delivery upper roller counter
		When used	When replacing parts of stack delivery upper roller
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	When delivering to upper/lower stacking tray
		Count-up specification	Large paper=1 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	1,000,000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
DL-STC-L	1	Title	Finisher inside delivery guide static charge eliminator counter
		When used	When replacing parts of Finisher inside delivery guide static charge eliminator
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	When delivering to processing tray
		Count-up specification	Large paper=1 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	1,000,000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > COUNTER > DRBL-2			
Be sure to refer to the "Maintenance" chapter when checking the estimated replacement value of the parts. Although the upper limit value of each counter indicates the estimated value for replacement, the upper limit value is not always changed simultaneously when the estimated replacement value is changed due to design change			
Item	Level	Description	
DL-STC-R	1	Title	Finisher inside delivery guide static charge eliminator counter
		When used	When replacing parts of Finisher inside delivery guide static charge eliminator
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	When delivering to processing tray
		Count-up specification	Large paper=1 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	1,000,000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
STK-STC	1	Title	Finisher stack delivery roller static charge eliminator counter
		When used	When replacing parts of Finisher stack delivery roller static charge eliminator
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	When delivering to upper/lower stacking tray
		Count-up specification	Large paper=1 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	1,000,000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
SDL-STC1	1	Title	Finisher saddle feed upper guide inlet static charge eliminator counter
		When used	When replacing parts of Finisher saddle feed upper guide inlet static charge eliminator
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	When delivering to saddle processing tray
		Count-up specification	Large paper=1 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	1,000,000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
SDL-STC2	1	Title	Finisher saddle feed upper guide static charge eliminator counter
		When used	When replacing parts of Finisher saddle feed upper guide static charge eliminator
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	When delivering to saddle processing tray
		Count-up specification	Large paper=1 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	1,000,000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
SDL-RL	1	Title	saddle shift roller counter
		When used	When replacing parts of saddle shift roller
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	When delivering to saddle processing tray
		Count-up specification	Large paper=1 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	1,000,000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > COUNTER > DRBL-2			
Be sure to refer to the "Maintenance" chapter when checking the estimated replacement value of the parts. Although the upper limit value of each counter indicates the estimated value for replacement, the upper limit value is not always changed simultaneously when the estimated replacement value is changed due to design change			
Item	Level	Description	
IS-P-RL1	1	Title	Document Insertion Unit upper tray pickup roller counter
		When used	When replacing parts of Document Insertion Unit upper tray pickup roller
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	When finishing Finisher's operation
		Count-up specification	Large paper=1 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	100,000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
IS-S-RL1	1	Title	Document Insertion Unit upper tray separation roller counter
		When used	When replacing parts of Document Insertion Unit upper tray separation roller
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	When finishing Finisher's operation
		Count-up specification	Large paper=1 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	100,000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
IS-F-RL1	1	Title	Document Insertion Unit upper tray feed roller counter
		When used	When replacing parts of Document Insertion Unit upper tray feed roller
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	When finishing Finisher's operation
		Count-up specification	Large paper=1 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	100,000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
IS-TQLM1	1	Title	Document Insertion Unit upper tray torque limiter counter
		When used	When replacing parts of Document Insertion Unit upper tray torque limiter
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	When finishing Finisher's operation
		Count-up specification	Large paper=1 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	1,000,000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
IS-P-RL2	1	Title	Document Insertion Unit lower tray pickup roller counter
		When used	When replacing parts of Document Insertion Unit lower tray pickup roller
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	When finishing Finisher's operation
		Count-up specification	Large paper=1 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	100,000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
IS-S-RL2	1	Title	Document Insertion Unit lower tray separation roller counter
		When used	When replacing parts of Document Insertion Unit lower tray separation roller
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	When finishing Finisher's operation
		Count-up specification	Large paper=1 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	100,000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > COUNTER > DRBL-2			
Be sure to refer to the "Maintenance" chapter when checking the estimated replacement value of the parts. Although the upper limit value of each counter indicates the estimated value for replacement, the upper limit value is not always changed simultaneously when the estimated replacement value is changed due to design change			
Item	Level	Description	
IS-F-RL2	1	Title	Document Insertion Unit lower tray feed roller counter
		When used	When replacing parts of Document Insertion Unit lower tray feed roller
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	When finishing Finisher's operation
		Count-up specification	Large paper=1 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	100,000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
IS-TQLM2	1	Title	Document Insertion Unit lower tray torque limiter counter
		When used	When replacing parts of Document Insertion Unit lower tray torque limiter
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	When finishing Finisher's operation
		Count-up specification	Large paper=1 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	1,000,000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
TRM-CUT1	1	Title	Trimmer upper blade operation count
		When used	When replacing parts for trimmer upper blade
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	count
		Count-up timing	When delivering to trimmer delivery tray
		Count-up specification	Large paper=1 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	500,000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
TRM-CUT2	1	Title	Trimmer lower blade operation count
		When used	When replacing parts for trimmer lower blade
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	count
		Count-up timing	When delivering to trimmer delivery tray
		Count-up specification	Large paper=1 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	500,000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
TRM-BLT	1	Title	Trimmer belt counter
		When used	When replacing parts of Trimmer belt
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	When delivering to trimmer delivery tray
		Count-up specification	Large paper=1 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	150,000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
STI-STC1	1	Title	Stacker sample tray outlet static charge eliminator brush counter
		When used	When replacing parts of Stacker sample tray outlet static charge eliminator brush
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	When finishing a job
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	5,000,000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > COUNTER > DRBL-2			
Be sure to refer to the "Maintenance" chapter when checking the estimated replacement value of the parts. Although the upper limit value of each counter indicates the estimated value for replacement, the upper limit value is not always changed simultaneously when the estimated replacement value is changed due to design change			
Item	Level	Description	
ST1-STC2	1	Title	Stacker's stacking assembly outlet static charge eliminator brush counter
		When used	When replacing parts of Stacker's stacking assembly outlet static charge eliminator brush
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	When finishing a job
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	5,000,000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
ST1-STC3	1	Title	Stacker inlet static charge eliminator brush counter
		When used	When replacing parts of stacker inlet static charge eliminator brush
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	When finishing a job
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	5,000,000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
ST1-STC4	1	Title	Stacker downstream outlet static charge eliminator brush counter
		When used	When replacing parts of Stacker downstream outlet static charge eliminator brush
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	When finishing a job
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	5,000,000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
ST1-DCL	1	Title	Stacker decurler assembly sponge roller counter
		When used	When replacing parts of Stacker decurler assembly sponge roller
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	When finishing a job
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	1,000,000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
ST2-STC1	1	Title	Stacker's stacking assembly outlet static charge eliminator brush counter
		When used	When replacing parts of Stacker's stacking assembly outlet static charge eliminator brush
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	When finishing a job
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	5,000,000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > COUNTER > DRBL-2			
Be sure to refer to the "Maintenance" chapter when checking the estimated replacement value of the parts. Although the upper limit value of each counter indicates the estimated value for replacement, the upper limit value is not always changed simultaneously when the estimated replacement value is changed due to design change			
Item	Level	Description	
ST2-STC2	1	Title	Stacker's stacking assembly outlet static charge eliminator brush counter
		When used	When replacing parts of Stacker's stacking assembly outlet static charge eliminator brush
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	When finishing a job
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	5,000,000
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	-		
ST2-STC3	1	Title	Stacker inlet static charge eliminator brush counter
		When used	When replacing parts of Stacker inlet static charge eliminator brush
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	When finishing a job
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	5,000,000
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	-		
ST2-STC4	1	Title	Stacker lower outlet static charge eliminator brush counter
		When used	When replacing parts of Stacker lower outlet static charge eliminator brush
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	When finishing a job
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	5,000,000
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	-		
ST2-DCL	1	Title	Stacker decurler assembly sponge roller counter
		When used	When replacing parts of Stacker decurler assembly sponge roller
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	When finishing a job
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	1,000,000
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	-		
D1-U-PD	1	Title	POD deck upper separation pad counter
		When used	When replacing parts of POD deck separation pad
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	When feeding paper from upper deck
		Count-up specification	Paper count fed from upper deck
		Upper limit	100,000
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	-		

COPIER > COUNTER > DRBL-2			
Be sure to refer to the "Maintenance" chapter when checking the estimated replacement value of the parts. Although the upper limit value of each counter indicates the estimated value for replacement, the upper limit value is not always changed simultaneously when the estimated replacement value is changed due to design change			
Item	Level	Description	
D1-M-PD	1	Title	POD deck middle separation pad counter
		When used	When replacing parts of POD deck separation pad
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	When feeding paper from middle deck
		Count-up specification	Paper count fed from middle deck
		Upper limit	100,000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
D1-L-PD	1	Title	POD deck lower separation pad counter
		When used	When replacing parts of POD deck separation pad
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	When feeding paper from lower deck
		Count-up specification	Paper count fed from lower deck
		Upper limit	100,000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
D2-U-PD	1	Title	Secondary POD deck upper separation pad counter
		When used	When replacing parts of Secondary POD deck separation pad
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	When feeding paper from upper deck
		Count-up specification	Paper count fed from upper deck
		Upper limit	100,000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
D2-M-PD	1	Title	Secondary POD deck middle separation pad counter
		When used	When replacing parts of Secondary POD deck separation pad
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	When feeding paper from middle deck
		Count-up specification	Paper count fed from middle deck
		Upper limit	100,000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
D2-L-PD	1	Title	Secondary POD deck lower separation pad counter
		When used	When replacing parts of Secondary POD deck separation pad
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	When feeding paper from lower deck
		Count-up specification	Paper count fed from lower deck
		Upper limit	100,000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
PD-PURL2	1	Title	Paper deck pickup roller (rear) counter
		When used	When replacing the pickup roller (rear)
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	250,000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

18.8.1.12 COPIER > COUNTER > H-DRBL-1

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

T-18-106

COPIER > COUNTER > H-DRBL-1			
Item	Level	Description	
ITB-D-RL	1	Title	ITB driving roller counter
		When used	When replacing ITB driving roller overhaul parts
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Expected life: 9,000,000 prints
ITB-P-MR	1	Title	ITB pre-transfer charging wire cleaning motor counter
		When used	When replacing ITB pre-transfer charging wire cleaning motor overhaul parts
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Expected life: 9,000,000 prints
DEV-SFT	1	Title	Developer drive shaft counter
		When used	When replacing Developer drive shaft overhaul parts
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Expected life: 9,000,000 prints
DEV-I-GR	1	Title	input gear counter
		When used	When replacing overhaul parts for 4 input gears
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Expected life: 9,000,000 prints
DEV-S-GR	1	Title	Sleeve one-way gear counter
		When used	When replacing overhaul parts for 4 Sleeve one-way gears
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Expected life: 9,000,000 prints

COPIER > COUNTER > H-DRBL-1			
Item	Level	Description	
DEV-DUNT	1	Title	Developer drive unit counter
		When used	When replacing Developer drive unit overhaul parts
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Expected life: 9,000,000 prints
SUB-HOPR	1	Title	Sub-hopper counter
		When used	When replacing Sub-hopper overhaul parts
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Expected life: 9,000,000 prints
LFEED-RL	1	Title	Host machine's lower feed roller counter
		When used	When replacing overhaul parts for host machine's lower feed roller Apply grease to the bearing inner circumference when replacing
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Expected life: 9,000,000 prints
2PULL-RL	1	Title	Secondary pull-out roller counter
		When used	When replacing Secondary pull-out roller overhaul parts
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Expected life: 9,000,000 prints
RD-CF-RL	1	Title	Right deck merger roller counter
		When used	When replacing Right deck merger roller overhaul parts Apply grease to the bearing inner circumference when replacing
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Expected life: 9,000,000 prints
LD-CF-RL	1	Title	Left deck merger roller counter
		When used	When replacing Left deck merger roller overhaul parts Apply grease to the bearing inner circumference when replacing
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Expected life: 9,000,000 prints

COPIER > COUNTER > H-DRBL-1			
Item	Level	Description	
EX-CF-RL	1	Title	External merger roller counter
		When used	When replacing External merger roller overhaul parts Apply grease to the bearing inner circumference when replacing
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Expected life: 9,000,000 prints
PREG-RL	1	Title	Pre-registration feed roller counter
		When used	When replacing Pre-registration feed roller overhaul parts Apply grease to the bearing inner circumference when replacing
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Expected life: 9,000,000 prints
REG-U-RL	1	Title	Registration roller (upper) counter
		When used	When replacing Registration roller (upper) overhaul parts Apply grease to the bearing inner circumference when replacing
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Expected life: 9,000,000 prints
TRQ-LIMIT	1	Title	Torque limiter counter
		When used	When replacing Torque limiter overhaul parts Apply grease to the bearing inner circumference when replacing
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Expected life: 9,000,000 prints
FX1-ASSY	1	Title	Primary fixing assembly counter
		When used	When replacing Primary fixing assembly overhaul parts
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Expected life: 9,000,000 prints
FX2-ASSY	1	Title	Secondary fixing assembly counter
		When used	When replacing Secondary fixing assembly overhaul parts
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Expected life: 9,000,000 prints

COPIER > COUNTER > H-DRBL-1			
Item	Level	Description	
TANDM-RL	1	Title	Driven roller (tandem) counter
		When used	When replacing parts of Driven roller (tandem)
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Expected life: 4,500,000 prints
BYPAS-RL	1	Title	Driven roller (bypass) counter
		When used	When replacing parts of Driven roller (bypass)
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Expected life: 4,500,000 prints
BPS-RL-A	1	Title	Bypass feed roller A counter
		When used	When replacing parts of Bypass feed roller A
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Expected life: 4,500,000 prints
CNF-RL	1	Title	Driven roller (merger) counter
		When used	When replacing parts of Driven roller (merger)
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Expected life: 4,500,000 prints
DCUL-BLT	1	Title	Wide belt (duplex decurler) counter
		When used	When replacing parts of Wide belt (duplex decurler)
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Expected life: 4,500,000 prints
ITBWEB-M	1	Title	ITB WEB releasing motor counter
		When used	When replacing ITB WEB releasing motor overhaul parts
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Expected life: 9,000,000 prints

COPIER > COUNTER > H-DRBL-1			
Item	Level	Description	
LD-P-SNS	1	Title	Edge registration patch sensor counter
		When used	When replacing Edge registration patch sensor overhaul parts
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Expected life: 9,000,000 prints
RG-P-SNS	1	Title	Registration patch sensor counter
		When used	When replacing Registration patch sensor overhaul parts
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Expected life: 9,000,000 prints
CL-SNS	1	Title	Color sensor counter
		When used	When replacing Color sensor overhaul parts
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Expected life: 14,000,000 prints
THICK-RL	1	Title	Paper thickness sensor feed roller counter
		When used	When replacing Paper thickness sensor feed roller overhaul parts Apply grease to the bearing inner circumference when replacing
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Expected life: 9,000,000 prints
LFEED-ST	1	Not used	
GUIDE-S1	1	Not used	
GUIDE-S2	1	Not used	
WTNR-BUF	1	Title	Waste toner buffer counter
		When used	When replacing Waste toner buffer overhaul parts
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Expected life: 9,000,000 prints

COPIER > COUNTER > H-DRBL-1			
Item	Level	Description	
LIFT-MTR	1	Title	Lifter motor counter
		When used	When replacing Lifter motor overhaul parts
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Expected life: 9,000,000 prints
FX1-MTR	1	Title	Primary fixing drive motor counter
		When used	When replacing Primary fixing drive motor overhaul parts
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Expected life: 9,000,000 prints
FX2-MTR	1	Title	Secondary fixing drive motor counter
		When used	When replacing Secondary fixing drive motor overhaul parts
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Expected life: 9,000,000 prints
R-PU-SL	1	Title	Right deck pickup solenoid counter
		When used	When replacing Right deck pickup solenoid overhaul parts
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Expected life: 9,000,000 prints
L-PU-SL	1	Title	Left deck pickup solenoid counter
		When used	When replacing Left deck pickup solenoid overhaul parts
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Expected life: 9,000,000 prints
R-SIDE-F	1	Title	Right deck side fan counter
		When used	When replacing Right deck side fan overhaul parts
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Expected life: 9,000,000 prints

COPIER > COUNTER > H-DRBL-1			
Item	Level	Description	
L-SIDE-F	1	Title	Left deck side fan counter
		When used	When replacing Left deck side fan overhaul parts
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Expected life: 9,000,000 prints
R-SP-FAN	1	Not used	
L-SP-FAN	1	Not used	
R-V-RL	1	Title	Right deck Vertical path feed roller counter
		When used	When replacing Right deck Vertical path feed roller overhaul parts
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Expected life: 9,000,000 prints
L-V-RL	1	Title	Left deck Vertical path feed roller counter
		When used	When replacing Left deck Vertical path feed roller overhaul parts
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Expected life: 9,000,000 prints
R-PU-BLT	1	Title	Right deck pickup attraction belt counter
		When used	When replacing Right deck pickup attraction belt overhaul parts
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Expected life: 9,000,000 prints
L-PU-BLT	1	Title	Left deck pickup attraction belt counter
		When used	When replacing Left deck pickup attraction belt overhaul parts
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Expected life: 9,000,000 prints
R-B-SFAN	1	Title	Right deck belt suction fan counter
		When used	When replacing Right deck belt suction fan overhaul parts
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Expected life: 9,000,000 prints

COPIER > COUNTER > H-DRBL-1			
Item	Level	Description	
L-B-SFAN	1	Title	Left deck belt suction fan counter
		When used	When replacing Left deck belt suction fan overhaul parts
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Expected life: 9,000,000 prints
PFI-X-BLT	1	Title	Fixing feed belt counter
		When used	When replacing Fixing feed belt overhaul parts
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Expected life: 9,000,000 prints
PFI-X-FAN	1	Title	Pre-fixing feed suction fan counter
		When used	When replacing Pre-fixing feed suction fan overhaul parts
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Expected life: 9,000,000 prints

18.8.1.13 COPIER > COUNTER > PD1-SW

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

T-18-107

COPIER > COUNTER > PD1-SW			
Item	Level	Description	
PRM-W-A	1	Title	Primary charging wire counter display switch
		When used	Switch over the counter display in the following service modes (switch 4 modes at a time). PRM-W-Y, PRM-W-M, PRM-W-C, PRM-W-WIRE Counter can be hidden with this switch.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0: Hidden 1: Display
		Unit	-
		Count-up timing	-
		Count-up specification	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	1
		Related service modes	- COPIER>COUNTER>PRDC-1>PRM-W-Y - COPIER>COUNTER>PRDC-1>PRM-W-M - COPIER>COUNTER>PRDC-1>PRM-W-C - COPIER>COUNTER>PRDC-1>PRM-WIRE
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > COUNTER > PDI-SW			
Item	Level	Description	
PRM-G-A	1	Title	Primary grid plate counter display switch
		When used	Switch over the counter display in the following service modes (switch 4 modes at a time). PRM-G-Y, PRM-G-M, PRM-G-C, PRM-GRID Counter can be hidden with this switch.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0: Hidden 1: Display
		Unit	-
		Count-up timing	-
		Count-up specification	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	1
		Related service modes	- COPIER>COUNTER>PRDC-1>PRM-G-Y - COPIER>COUNTER>PRDC-1>PRM-G-M - COPIER>COUNTER>PRDC-1>PRM-G-C - COPIER>COUNTER>PRDC-1>PRM-GRID
		Additional description and notes	-
PO-WIREA	1	Title	Pre-transfer charging wire counter display switch
		When used	Switch over the counter display in the following service mode. PO-WIRE Counter can be hidden with this switch.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0: Hidden 1: Display
		Unit	-
		Count-up timing	-
		Count-up specification	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	1
		Related service modes	- COPIER>COUNTER>PRDC-1>PO-WIRE
		Additional description and notes	-
FILTER	1	Title	Filter counter display switch
		When used	Switch over the counter display in the following service modes (switch 9 modes at a time). AR-FIL1, AR-FIL2, AR-FIL3, OZ-FIL1, OZ-FIL2, OZ-FIL3, OZ-FIL4, OZ-FIL5, TN-FIL1 Counter can be hidden with this switch.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0: Hidden 1: Display
		Unit	-
		Count-up timing	-
		Count-up specification	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	1
		Related service modes	- COUNTER>PRDC-1>AR-FIL1 - COUNTER>PRDC-1>AR-FIL2 - COUNTER>PRDC-1>AR-FIL3 - COUNTER>PRDC-1>OZ-FIL1 - COUNTER>PRDC-1>OZ-FIL2 - COUNTER>PRDC-1>OZ-FIL3 - COUNTER>PRDC-1>OZ-FIL4 - COUNTER>PRDC-1>OZ-FIL5 - COUNTER>PRDC-1>TN-FIL1
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > COUNTER > PDI-SW			
Item	Level	Description	
PRM-U-A	1	Title	Counter display switch of primary charging assembly
		When used	To switch whether to display/hide the following counters (4 counters to be switched at a time): PRM-U-Y, PRM-U-M, PRM-U-C, PRM-UNIT
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0: Hidden 1: Display
		Unit	-
		Count-up timing	-
		Count-up specification	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	1
		Related service modes	-COUNTER>PRDC-1>PRM-U-Y -COUNTER>PRDC-1>PRM-U-M -COUNTER>PRDC-1>PRM-U-C -COUNTER>PRDC-1>PRM-UNIT
		Additional description and notes	-
PRE-W-U	1	Title	Counter display switch of pre-transfer charging assembly
		When used	To switch whether to display/hide the following counter: PO-UNIT
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0: Hidden 1: Display
		Unit	-
		Count-up timing	-
		Count-up specification	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	1
		Related service modes	COUNTER>PRDC-1>PO-UNIT
		Additional description and notes	-

18.8.1.14 COPIER > COUNTER > DB1-SW

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

COPIER>COUNTER>DB1-SW			
Item	Level	Description	
BS-SL-A	1	Title	Drum cleaner assembly side seal counter display switch
		When used	Switch over the counter display in the following service modes (switch 4 modes at a time). BS-SL-Y, BS-SL-M, BS-SL-C, BS-CL-K Counter can be hidden with this switch.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0: Hidden 1: Display
		Unit	-
		Count-up timing	-
		Count-up specification	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	1
		Related service modes	- COPIER>COUNTER>DRBL-1>BS-SL-Y - COPIER>COUNTER>DRBL-1>BS-SL-M - COPIER>COUNTER>DRBL-1>BS-SL-C - COPIER>COUNTER>DRBL-1>BS-CL-K
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER>COUNTER>DBI-SW			
Item	Level	Description	
CL-BLD-A	1	Title	Drum cleaning blade counter display switch
		When used	Switch over the counter display in the following service modes (switch 4 modes at a time). CL-BLD-Y, CL-BLD-M, CL-BLD-C, CLN-BLD Counter can be hidden with this switch.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0: Hidden 1: Display
		Unit	-
		Count-up timing	-
		Count-up specification	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	1
		Related service modes	- COPIER>COUNTER>DRBL-1>CL-BLD-Y - COPIER>COUNTER>DRBL-1>CL-BLD-M - COPIER>COUNTER>DRBL-1>CL-BLD-C - COPIER>COUNTER>DRBL-1>CLN-BLD
		Additional description and notes	-
PT-DRM-A	1	Title	Drum counter display switch
		When used	Switch over the counter display in the following service modes (switch 4 modes at a time). PT-DR-Y, PT-DR-M, PT-DR-C, PT-DRM Counter can be hidden with this switch.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0: Hidden 1: Display
		Unit	-
		Count-up timing	-
		Count-up specification	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	1
		Related service modes	- COPIER>COUNTER>DRBL-1>PT-DR-Y - COPIER>COUNTER>DRBL-1>PT-DR-M - COPIER>COUNTER>DRBL-1>PT-DR-C - COPIER>COUNTER>DRBL-1>PT-DRM
		Additional description and notes	-
ITB-BLT	1	Title	ITB belt counter display switch
		When used	Switch over the counter display in the following service mode. TR-BLT Counter can be hidden with this switch.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0: Hidden 1: Display
		Unit	-
		Count-up timing	-
		Count-up specification	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	1
		Related service modes	- COPIER>COUNTER>DRBL-1>TR-BLT
		Additional description and notes	-
TR-RL-A	1	Title	Primary transfer roller counter display switch
		When used	Switch over the counter display in the following service modes (switch 4 modes at a time). 1TR-RL-Y, 1TR-RL-M, 1TR-RL-C, 1TR-RL-K Counter can be hidden with this switch.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0: Hidden 1: Display
		Unit	-
		Count-up timing	-
		Count-up specification	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	1
		Related service modes	- COPIER>COUNTER>DRBL-1>1TR-RL-Y - COPIER>COUNTER>DRBL-1>1TR-RL-M - COPIER>COUNTER>DRBL-1>1TR-RL-C - COPIER>COUNTER>DRBL-1>1TR-RL-K
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER>COUNTER>DB1-SW			
Item	Level	Description	
2TR-IN-A	1	Title	Secondary transfer inner roller counter display switch
		When used	Switch over the counter display in the following service mode. - COPIER>COUNTER>DRBL-1>2TR-INRL Counter can be hidden with this switch.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0: Hidden 1: Display
		Unit	-
		Count-up timing	-
		Count-up specification	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	1
		Related service modes	- COPIER>COUNTER>DRBL-1>2TR-INRL
		Additional description and notes	-
ITB-FURA	1	Title	ITB cleaning brush roller counter display switch
		When used	Switch over the counter display in the following service modes (switch 2 modes at a time). ITB-CLN1, ITB-CLN2 Counter can be hidden with this switch.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0: Hidden 1: Display
		Unit	-
		Count-up timing	-
		Count-up specification	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	1
		Related service modes	- COPIER>COUNTER>DRBL-1>ITB-CLN1 - COPIER>COUNTER>DRBL-1>ITB-CLN2
		Additional description and notes	-
ITB-BLDA	1	Title	ITB cleaning blade roller counter display switch
		When used	Switch over the counter display in the following service mode. ITB-BLD1 Counter can be hidden with this switch.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0: Hidden 1: Display
		Unit	-
		Count-up timing	-
		Count-up specification	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	1
		Related service modes	- COPIER>COUNTER>DRBL-1>ITB-BLD1
		Additional description and notes	-
ITB-WEBA	1	Title	ITB cleaning web counter display switch
		When used	Switch over the counter display in the following service mode. ITB-WEB Counter can be hidden with this switch.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0: Hidden 1: Display
		Unit	-
		Count-up timing	-
		Count-up specification	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	1
		Related service modes	- COPIER>COUNTER>DRBL-1>ITB-WEB
		Additional description and notes	-
2TR-ROLA	1	Title	Secondary transfer outside roller counter display switch
		When used	Switch over the counter display in the following service mode. 2TR-ROLL Counter can be hidden with this switch.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0: Hidden 1: Display
		Unit	-
		Count-up timing	-
		Count-up specification	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	1
		Related service modes	- COPIER>COUNTER>DRBL-1>2TR-ROLL
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER>COUNTER>DBI-SW			
Item	Level	Description	
2TR-CLNA	1	Title	Secondary transfer brush roller counter display switch
		When used	Switch over the counter display in the following service mode. 2TR-CLN Counter can be hidden with this switch.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0: Hidden 1: Display
		Unit	-
		Count-up timing	-
		Count-up specification	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	1
		Related service modes	- COPIER>COUNTER>DRBL-1>2TR-CLN
		Additional description and notes	-
PCH-S-A	1	Title	Registration patch sensor cleaning pad counter display switch
		When used	Switch over the counter display in the following service modes. PCH-S-R Counter can be hidden with this switch.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0: Hidden 1: Display
		Unit	-
		Count-up timing	-
		Count-up specification	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	1
		Related service modes	- COPIER>COUNTER>DRBL-1>PCH-S-R
		Additional description and notes	-
FX12UP-A	1	Title	Fixing roller counter display switch
		When used	Switch over the counter display in the following service modes (switch 2 modes at a time). FX-UP-RL, FX2-UPRL Counter can be hidden with this switch.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0: Hidden 1: Display
		Unit	-
		Count-up timing	-
		Count-up specification	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	1
		Related service modes	- COPIER>COUNTER>DRBL-1>FX-UP-RL - COPIER>COUNTER>DRBL-1>FX2-UPRL
		Additional description and notes	-
FX-WEB-A	1	Title	Fixing web counter display switch
		When used	Switch over the counter display in the following service modes (switch 2 modes at a time). FX-WEB, FX2-WEB Counter can be hidden with this switch.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0: Hidden 1: Display
		Unit	-
		Count-up timing	-
		Count-up specification	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	1
		Related service modes	- COPIER>COUNTER>DRBL-1>FX-WEB - COPIER>COUNTER>DRBL-1>FX2-WEB
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER>COUNTER>DB1-SW			
Item	Level	Description	
FX-WBRLA	1	Title	Fixing web roller counter display switch
		When used	Switch over the counter display in the following service modes (switch 4 modes at a time). FX-WB-RL, FX-WBRL2, FX2-WBRL, FX2WBRL2 Counter can be hidden with this switch.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0: Hidden 1: Display
		Unit	-
		Count-up timing	-
		Count-up specification	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	1
		Related service modes	- COPIER>COUNTER>DRBL-1>FX-WB-RL - COPIER>COUNTER>DRBL-1>FX-WBRL2 - COPIER>COUNTER>DRBL-1>FX2-WBRL - COPIER>COUNTER>DRBL-1>FX2WBRL2
Additional description and notes	-		
FX-BLTUA	1	Title	Fixing belt unit counter display switch
		When used	Switch over the counter display in the following service mode. FX-BLT-U Counter can be hidden with this switch.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0: Hidden 1: Display
		Unit	-
		Count-up timing	-
		Count-up specification	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	1
		Related service modes	- COPIER>COUNTER>DRBL-1>FX-BLT-U
Additional description and notes	-		
FX2LWRLA	1	Title	Pressure roller counter display switch
		When used	Switch over the counter display in the following service modes (switch 2 modes at a time). FX-LW-RL, FX2-LWRL Counter can be hidden with this switch.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0: Hidden 1: Display
		Unit	-
		Count-up timing	-
		Count-up specification	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	1
		Related service modes	- COPIER>COUNTER>DRBL-1FX-LW-RL - COPIER>COUNTER>DRBL-1>FX2-LWRL
Additional description and notes	-		
FX-EXRLA	1	Title	External heating roller counter display switch
		When used	Switch over the counter display in the following service modes (switch 4 modes at a time). FX-EX-RL, FX-EXRL2, FX2-EXRL, FX2EXRL2 Counter can be hidden with this switch.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0: Hidden 1: Display
		Unit	-
		Count-up timing	-
		Count-up specification	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	1
		Related service modes	- COPIER>COUNTER>DRBL-1>FX-EX-RL - COPIER>COUNTER>DRBL-1>FX-EXRL2 - COPIER>COUNTER>DRBL-1>FX2-EXRL - COPIER>COUNTER>DRBL-1>FX2EXRL2
Additional description and notes	-		

COPIER>COUNTER>DBI-SW			
Item	Level	Description	
FX-EX-CA	1	Title	External heating cleaning roller counter display switch
		When used	Switch over the counter display in the following service modes (switch 4 modes at a time). FX-EX-C1, FX-EX-C2, FX2-EXC1, FX2-EXC2 Counter can be hidden with this switch.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0: Hidden 1: Display
		Unit	-
		Count-up timing	-
		Count-up specification	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	1
		Related service modes	- COPIER>COUNTER>DRBL-1>FX-EX-C1 - COPIER>COUNTER>DRBL-1>FX-EX-C2 - COPIER>COUNTER>DRBL-1>FX2-EXC1 - COPIER>COUNTER>DRBL-1>FX2-EXC2
		Additional description and notes	-
FX-RF-RL	1	Title	Primary fixing refresh cleaning roller counter display switch
		When used	Switch over the counter display in the following service modes (switch 4 modes at a time). FX-RF-RL, FX-RFCL, FX-RF-RL, FX-RF-CL Counter can be hidden with this switch.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0: Hidden 1: Display
		Unit	-
		Count-up timing	-
		Count-up specification	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	1
		Related service modes	- COPIER>COUNTER>DRBL-1>FX-RF-RL - COPIER>COUNTER>DRBL-1>FX-RFCL - COPIER>COUNTER>AVE-DRB1>FX-RF-RL - COPIER>COUNTER>AVE-DRB1>FX-RF-CL
		Additional description and notes	-
FX2-RFRL	1	Title	Secondary fixing refresh cleaning roller counter display switch
		When used	Switch over the counter display in the following service modes (switch 4 modes at a time). FX2-RFRL, FX2-RFCL, FX2-RFRL, FX2-RFCL Counter can be hidden with this switch.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0: Hidden 1: Display
		Unit	-
		Count-up timing	-
		Count-up specification	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	1
		Related service modes	- COPIER>COUNTER>DRBL-1>FX2-RFRL - COPIER>COUNTER>DRBL-1>FX2-RFCL - COPIER>COUNTER>AVE-DRB1>FX2-RFRL - COPIER>COUNTER>AVE-DRB1>FX2-RFCL
		Additional description and notes	-
PCH-S-TA	1	Title	Edge registration patch sensor cleaning pad counter display switch
		When used	Switch over the counter display in the following service mode. PCH-S-T Counter can be hidden with this switch.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0: Hidden 1: Display
		Unit	-
		Count-up timing	-
		Count-up specification	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	1
		Related service modes	- COPIER>COUNTER>DRBL-1>PCH-S-T
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER>COUNTER>DBI-SW			
Item	Level	Description	
FX-EXRLA	1	Title	External heating roller counter display switch
		When used	Switch over the counter display in the following service modes (switch 4 modes at a time). FX-EX-RL, FX-EXRL2, FX2-EXRL, FX2EXRL2 Counter can be hidden with this switch.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0: Hidden 1: Display
		Unit	-
		Count-up timing	-
		Count-up specification	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	1
		Related service modes	- COPIER>COUNTER>DRBL-1>FX-EX-RL - COPIER>COUNTER>DRBL-1>FX-EXRL2 - COPIER>COUNTER>DRBL-1>FX2EXRL - COPIER>COUNTER>DRBL-1>FX2EXRL2
Additional description and notes	-		
DEV-P-A	1	Title	Drum patch sensor shutter counter display switch
		When used	Switch over the counter display in the following service modes (switch 4 modes at a time). DEV-P-Y, DEV-P-M, DEV-P-C, DEV-P-K Counter can be hidden with this switch.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0: Hidden 1: Display
		Unit	-
		Count-up timing	-
		Count-up specification	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	1
		Related service modes	- COPIER>COUNTER>DRBL-1>DEV-P-Y - COPIER>COUNTER>DRBL-1>DEV-P-M - COPIER>COUNTER>DRBL-1>DEV-P-C - COPIER>COUNTER>DRBL-1>DEV-P-K
Additional description and notes	-		
DV-P-S-A	1	Title	Drum patch sensor counter display switch
		When used	Switch over the counter display in the following service modes (switch 4 modes at a time). DV-P-S-Y, DV-P-S-M, DV-P-S-C, DV-P-S-K Counter can be hidden with this switch.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0: Hidden 1: Display
		Unit	-
		Count-up timing	-
		Count-up specification	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	1
		Related service modes	- COPIER>COUNTER>DRBL-1>DV-P-S-Y - COPIER>COUNTER>DRBL-1>DV-P-S-M - COPIER>COUNTER>DRBL-1>DV-P-S-C - COPIER>COUNTER>DRBL-1>DV-P-S-K
Additional description and notes	-		
DECK-PD	1	Title	Deck separation pad counter display switch
		When used	Switch over the counter display in the following service modes (switch 8 modes at a time). LD-PAD, RD-PAD, D1-U-PD, D1-M-PD, D1-L-PD, D2-U-PD, D2-M-PD, D2-L-PD Counter can be hidden with this switch.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0: Hidden 1: Display
		Unit	-
		Count-up timing	-
		Count-up specification	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	1
		Related service modes	- COPIER>COUNTER>DRBL-1>LD-PAD - COPIER>COUNTER>DRBL-1>RD-PAD - COPIER>COUNTER>DRBL-1>D1-U-PD - COPIER>COUNTER>DRBL-1>D1-M-PD - COPIER>COUNTER>DRBL-1>D1-L-PD - COPIER>COUNTER>DRBL-1>D2-U-PD - COPIER>COUNTER>DRBL-1>D2-M-PD - COPIER>COUNTER>DRBL-1>D2-L-PD
Additional description and notes	-		

COPIER > COUNTER > DB1-SW			
Item	Level	Description	
ITB-E-SC	1	Title	Counter display switch of ITB edge scraper unit
		When used	To hide the counter display, switch whether to display/hide the following counter ITB-E-SC
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0: Hidden 1: Display
		Unit	-
		Count-up timing	-
		Count-up specification	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	1
		Related service modes	COUNTER>DRBL-1>ITB-E-SC
		Additional description and notes	-
DRM-U	1	Title	Counter display switch of drum unit
		When used	To switch whether to display/hide the following counters: (4 counters to be switched at a time) D-UNIT-Y, D-UNIT-M, D-UNIT-C, D-UNIT-K
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0: Hidden 1: Display
		Unit	-
		Count-up timing	-
		Count-up specification	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	1
		Related service modes	-COUNTER>DRBL-1>D-UNIT-Y -COUNTER>DRBL-1>D-UNIT-M -COUNTER>DRBL-1>D-UNIT-C -COUNTER>DRBL-1>D-UNIT-K
		Additional description and notes	-
FX-WEB-U	1	Title	Counter display switch of fixing web unit
		When used	To switch whether to display/hide the following counters: (2 counters to be switched at a time) FX1WEB-U, FX2WEB-U
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0: Hidden 1: Display
		Unit	-
		Count-up timing	-
		Count-up specification	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	1
		Related service modes	-COUNTER>DRBL-1>FX1WEB-U -COUNTER>DRBL-1>FX2WEB-U
		Additional description and notes	-
ITB-CL-U	1	Title	Counter display switch of ITB cleaner unit
		When used	To switch whether to display/hide the following counter: ITBCLN-U
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0: Hidden 1: Display
		Unit	-
		Count-up timing	-
		Count-up specification	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	1
		Related service modes	COUNTER>DRBL-1>ITBCLN-U
		Additional description and notes	-

18.8.1.15 COPIER > COUNTER > CLEANING

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

COPIER > COUNTER > CLEANING			
Item	Level	Description	
DV-MT-Y	1	Title	Manual cleaning counter for developer (Y) replacement
		When used	Counter for manual cleaning timing at developer (Y) replacement This counter provides the reference of the cleaning timing. Clear the counter reading after cleaning.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Expected life: 500, 000 prints
DV-MT-M	1	Title	Manual cleaning counter for developer (M) replacement
		When used	Counter for manual cleaning timing at developer (M) replacement This counter provides the reference of the cleaning timing. Clear the counter reading after cleaning.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Expected life: 250, 000 prints
DV-MT-C	1	Title	Manual cleaning counter for developer (C) replacement
		When used	Counter for manual cleaning timing at developer (C) replacement This counter provides the reference of the cleaning timing. Clear the counter reading after cleaning.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Expected life: 500, 000 prints
DV-MT-K	1	Title	Manual cleaning counter for developer (Bk) replacement
		When used	Counter for manual cleaning timing at developer (Bk) replacement This counter provides the reference of the cleaning timing. Clear the counter reading after cleaning.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Expected life: 500, 000 prints
DV-LC	1	Title	Developing assembly (near toner blocking plate) cleaning counter
		When used	Counter for cleaning timing of Developing assembly (near toner blocking plate) This counter provides the reference of the cleaning timing. Clear the counter reading after cleaning.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Expected life: 250, 000 prints

COPIER > COUNTER > CLEANING			
Item	Level	Description	
PKIT-LF	1	Title	Developer lower plate cleaning counter
		When used	Counter for cleaning timing of Developer lower plate This counter provides the reference of the cleaning timing. Clear the counter reading after cleaning.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Expected life: 500,000 prints
2TR-FDPS	1	Title	Pre-fixing feed belt cleaning counter
		When used	Counter for cleaning timing of Pre-fixing feed belt This counter provides the reference of the cleaning timing. Clear the counter reading after cleaning.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Expected life: 150,000 prints
PO-SLD	1	Title	Pre-transfer charger shield plate cleaning counter
		When used	Counter for cleaning timing of Pre-transfer charger shield plate This counter provides the reference of the cleaning timing. Clear the counter reading after cleaning.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Expected life: 150,000 prints
PO-C-RL	1	Title	Cleaning bias roller cleaning counter
		When used	Counter for cleaning timing of Cleaning bias roller This counter provides the reference of the cleaning timing. Clear the counter reading after cleaning.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Expected life: 150,000 prints
2TR-C-RL	1	Title	Secondary transfer cleaning bias roller cleaning counter
		When used	Counter for cleaning timing of secondary transfer cleaning bias roller This counter provides the reference of the cleaning timing. Clear the counter reading after cleaning.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Expected life: 150,000 prints

COPIER > COUNTER > CLEANING			
Item	Level	Description	
FX1-THTS	1	Title	Primary fixing thermistor/thermo switch cleaning counter
		When used	Counter for cleaning timing of Primary fixing thermistor/thermo switch This counter provides the reference of the cleaning timing. Clear the counter reading after cleaning.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Expected life: 250, 000 prints
FX2-THTS	1	Title	Secondary fixing thermistor/thermo switch cleaning counter
		When used	Counter for cleaning timing of Secondary fixing thermistor/thermo switch This counter provides the reference of the cleaning timing. Clear the counter reading after cleaning.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Expected life: 250, 000 prints
F-BL-OIL	1	Title	Counter for silicone oil application inside primary fixing belt
		When used	Counter for cleaning timing of silicone oil application inside primary fixing belt This counter provides the reference of the cleaning timing. Clear the counter reading after cleaning.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Expected life: 250, 000 prints
DP-GRS	1	Title	Dust-proof glass cleaning counter
		When used	Counter for cleaning timing of Dust-proof glass This counter provides the reference of the cleaning timing. Clear the counter reading after cleaning.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Expected life: 100, 000 prints
2TR-EX-S	1	Title	Secondary transfer outlet sensor cleaning counter
		When used	Counter for cleaning timing of Secondary transfer outlet sensor This counter provides the reference of the cleaning timing. Clear the counter reading after cleaning.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Expected life: 150, 000 prints

COPIER > COUNTER > CLEANING			
Item	Level	Description	
SS-RG-RL	1	Title	Cross-feed roller cleaning counter of cross-feed registration
		When used	Counter for cleaning timing of Cross-feed roller This counter provides the reference of the cleaning timing. Clear the counter reading after cleaning.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Expected life: 100, 000 prints
PRE-EXPO	1	Title	Drum cleaner pre-exposure unit cleaning counter
		When used	Counter for cleaning timing of drum cleaner pre-exposure unit This counter provides the reference of the cleaning timing
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Expected life: 500, 000 prints
ITB-EDGE	1	Title	ITB inner cleaning scraper cleaning counter
		When used	Counter for cleaning timing of ITB inner cleaning scraper This counter provides the reference of the cleaning timing. Clear the counter reading after cleaning.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Expected life: 600, 000 prints
REGP-SNS	1	Title	Registration patch sensor cleaning counter
		When used	Counter for cleaning timing of Registration patch sensor This counter provides the reference of the cleaning timing. Clear the counter reading after cleaning.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Expected life: 600, 000 prints
TREG-SNS	1	Title	Edge registration patch sensor cleaning counter
		When used	Counter for cleaning timing of Edge registration patch sensor This counter provides the reference of the cleaning timing
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Expected life: 600, 000 prints

COPIER > COUNTER > CLEANING			
Item	Level	Description	
ITB-WTNR	1	Title	ITB waste toner transfer opening cleaning counter
		When used	Counter for cleaning timing of ITB waste toner transfer opening This counter provides the reference of the cleaning timing
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Expected life: 375, 000 prints
ITB-IROL	1	Title	ITB idler roller cleaning counter
		When used	Counter for cleaning timing of ITB idler roller This counter provides the reference of the cleaning timing
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Expected life: 600, 000 prints
ITBHPSNS	1	Title	ITB HP sensor cleaning counter
		When used	Counter for cleaning timing of ITB HP sensor This counter provides the reference of the cleaning timing
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Expected life: 600, 000 prints
ITB-ESNS	1	Title	ITB edge sensor cleaning counter
		When used	Counter for cleaning timing of ITB edge sensor This counter provides the reference of the cleaning timing
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Expected life: 600, 000 prints
FX1-RFRL	1	Title	Primary fixing refresh roller cleaning counter
		When used	Counter for cleaning timing of Primary fixing refresh roller This counter provides the reference of the cleaning timing
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Expected life: 100, 000 prints

COPIER > COUNTER > CLEANING			
Item	Level	Description	
FX2-RFRL	1	Title	Secondary fixing refresh roller cleaning counter
		When used	Counter for cleaning timing of Secondary fixing refresh roller This counter provides the reference of the cleaning timing
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Expected life: 100, 000 prints
FX1-RFCL	1	Title	Primary fixing refresh cleaning roller cleaning counter
		When used	Counter for cleaning timing of Primary fixing refresh cleaning roller This counter provides the reference of the cleaning timing
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Expected life: 100, 000 prints
FX2-RFCL	1	Title	Secondary fixing refresh cleaning roller cleaning counter
		When used	Counter for cleaning timing of Secondary fixing refresh cleaning roller This counter provides the reference of the cleaning timing
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Expected life: 100, 000 prints
DV-P-S-Y	1	Title	Drum patch sensor (Y) cleaning counter
		When used	Counter for cleaning timing of Drum patch sensor (Y) This counter provides the reference of the cleaning timing
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Expected life: 250, 000 prints
DV-P-S-M	1	Title	Drum patch sensor (M) cleaning counter
		When used	Counter for cleaning timing of Drum patch sensor (M) This counter provides the reference of the cleaning timing
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Expected life: 250, 000 prints

COPIER > COUNTER > CLEANING			
Item	Level	Description	
DV-P-S-C	1	Title	Drum patch sensor (C) cleaning counter
		When used	Counter for cleaning timing of Drum patch sensor (C) This counter provides the reference of the cleaning timing
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Expected life: 250, 000 prints
DV-P-S-K	1	Title	Drum patch sensor (Bk) cleaning counter
		When used	Counter for cleaning timing of Drum patch sensor (Bk) This counter provides the reference of the cleaning timing
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Expected life: 250, 000 prints

T-18-112

COPIER > COUNTER > CLEANING			
Item	Level	Description	
DEV-U-Y	1	Title	Cleaning counter for Y developing assembly
		When used	To estimate the cleaning period
		Precautions for use	Be sure to clear the counter after cleaning
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 99999999
		Unit	-
		Count-up timing	When image is formulated
		Count-up specification	According to video count value
		Upper limit	3180000 (equivalent to 6000-print with A4-100%duty image)
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
DEV-U-M	1	Title	Cleaning counter for M developing assembly
		When used	To estimate the cleaning period
		Precautions for use	Be sure to clear the counter after cleaning
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 99999999
		Unit	-
		Count-up timing	When image is formulated
		Count-up specification	According to video count value
		Upper limit	3180000 (equivalent to 6000-print with A4-100%duty image)
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
DEV-U-C	1	Title	Cleaning counter for C developing assembly
		When used	To estimate the cleaning period
		Precautions for use	Be sure to clear the counter after cleaning
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 99999999
		Unit	-
		Count-up timing	When image is formulated
		Count-up specification	According to video count value
		Upper limit	3180000 (equivalent to 6000-printwithA4-100%duty image)
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > COUNTER > CLEANING			
Item	Level	Description	
DEV-U-K	1	Title	Cleaning counter for Bk developing assembly
		When used	To estimate the cleaning period
		Precautions for use	Be sure to clear the counter after cleaning
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 99999999
		Unit	-
		Count-up timing	When image is formulated
		Count-up specification	According to video count value
		Upper limit	3180000 (equivalent to 6000-print with A4-100%duty image)
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	-		
OZ-FIL-M	1	Title	Cleaning counter for sub station rear middle ozone filter
		When used	To estimate the cleaning period
		Precautions for use	Be sure to clear the counter after cleaning
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 99999999
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	250,000
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	-		
OZ-FIL-L	1	Title	Cleaning counter for sub station rear left ozone filter
		When used	To estimate the cleaning period
		Precautions for use	Be sure to clear the counter after cleaning
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 99999999
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	250,000
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	-		
OZ-FIL-U	1	Title	Cleaning counter for sub station rear upper ozone filter
		When used	To estimate the cleaning period
		Precautions for use	Be sure to clear the counter after cleaning
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 99999999
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	250,000
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	-		
PKIT-LFM	1	Title	Cleaning counter for M-developing assembly lower plate
		When used	To estimate the cleaning period
		Precautions for use	Be sure to clear the counter after cleaning
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 99999999
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	580,000
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	-		
PKIT-LFC	1	Title	Cleaning counter for C-developing assembly lower plate
		When used	To estimate the cleaning period
		Precautions for use	Be sure to clear the counter after cleaning
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 99999999
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	580,000
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	-		

COPIER > COUNTER > CLEANING			
Item	Level	Description	
PKIT-LFY	1	Title	Cleaning counter for Y-developing assembly lower plate
		When used	To estimate the cleaning period
		Precautions for use	Be sure to clear the counter after cleaning
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 99999999
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	580,000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
PRE-EXPM	1	Title	Cleaning counter for M-cleaner pre-exposure unit
		When used	To estimate the cleaning period
		Precautions for use	Be sure to clear the counter after cleaning
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 99999999
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	580,000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
PRE-EXPC	1	Title	Cleaning counter for C-cleaner pre-exposure unit
		When used	To estimate the cleaning period
		Precautions for use	Be sure to clear the counter after cleaning
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 99999999
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	580,000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
PRE-EXPY	1	Title	Cleaning counter for Y-cleaner pre-exposure unit
		When used	To estimate the cleaning period
		Precautions for use	Be sure to clear the counter after cleaning
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 99999999
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	580,000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
DP-GRS-M	1	Title	Cleaning counter for M-dustproof glass
		When used	To estimate the cleaning period
		Precautions for use	Be sure to clear the counter after cleaning
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 99999999
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	100,000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
DP-GRS-C	1	Title	Cleaning counter for C-dustproof glass
		When used	To estimate the cleaning period
		Precautions for use	Be sure to clear the counter after cleaning
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 99999999
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	100,000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > COUNTER > CLEANING			
Item	Level	Description	
DP-GRS-Y	1	Title	Cleaning counter for Y-dustproof glass
		When used	To estimate the cleaning period
		Precautions for use	Be sure to clear the counter after cleaning
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 9999999
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Count up at normal delivery timing
		Count-up specification	Large paper=2 Small paper=1
		Upper limit	100,000
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

18.8.1.16 COPIER > COUNTER > AVE-PRD1

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

T-18-113

COPIER > COUNTER > AVE-PRD1			
Item	Level	Description	
PRM-W-Y	1	Title	Average counter reading among primary charging wire parts (Y)
		When used	Show the average replacement timing among parts counters. Use the counter reading to judge the replacement timing (mainly for operator maintenance).
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Update the data when the counter reading is cleared by calculating the cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Count-up specification	Use the average calculated based on cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
PRM-W-M	1	Title	Average counter reading among primary charging wire parts (M)
		When used	Show the average replacement timing among parts counters. Use the counter reading to judge the replacement timing (mainly for operator maintenance).
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Update the data when the counter reading is cleared by calculating the cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Count-up specification	Use the average calculated based on cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
PRM-W-C	1	Title	Average counter reading among primary charging wire parts (C)
		When used	Show the average replacement timing among parts counters. Use the counter reading to judge the replacement timing (mainly for operator maintenance).
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Update the data when the counter reading is cleared by calculating the cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Count-up specification	Use the average calculated based on cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > COUNTER > AVE-PRD1			
Item	Level	Description	
PRM-WIRE	1	Title	Average counter reading among primary charging wire parts (Bk)
		When used	Show the average replacement timing among parts counters. Use the counter reading to judge the replacement timing (mainly for operator maintenance).
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Update the data when the counter reading is cleared by calculating the cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Count-up specification	Use the average calculated based on cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
PRM-G-Y	1	Title	Average counter reading among primary grid plate (Y) parts
		When used	Show the average replacement timing among parts counters. Use the counter reading to judge the replacement timing (mainly for operator maintenance).
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Update the data when the counter reading is cleared by calculating the cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Count-up specification	Use the average calculated based on cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
PRM-G-M	1	Title	Average counter reading among primary grid plate (M) parts
		When used	Show the average replacement timing among parts counters. Use the counter reading to judge the replacement timing (mainly for operator maintenance).
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Update the data when the counter reading is cleared by calculating the cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Count-up specification	Use the average calculated based on cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
PRM-G-C	1	Title	Average counter reading among primary grid plate (C) parts
		When used	Show the average replacement timing among parts counters. Use the counter reading to judge the replacement timing (mainly for operator maintenance).
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Update the data when the counter reading is cleared by calculating the cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Count-up specification	Use the average calculated based on cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > COUNTER > AVE-PRD1			
Item	Level	Description	
PRM-GRID	1	Title	Average counter reading among primary grid plate (Bk) parts
		When used	Show the average replacement timing among parts counters. Use the counter reading to judge the replacement timing (mainly for operator maintenance).
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Update the data when the counter reading is cleared by calculating the cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Count-up specification	Use the average calculated based on cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
PO-WIRE	1	Title	Average counter reading among secondary pre-transfer charging wire parts
		When used	Show the average replacement timing among parts counters. Use the counter reading to judge the replacement timing (mainly for operator maintenance).
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Update the data when the counter reading is cleared by calculating the cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Count-up specification	Use the average calculated based on cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
OZ-FIL1	1	Title	Average counter reading among ITB inner ozone filter parts
		When used	Show the average replacement timing among parts counters. Use the counter reading to judge the replacement timing (mainly for operator maintenance).
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Update the data when the counter reading is cleared by calculating the cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Count-up specification	Use the average calculated based on cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
OZ-FIL2	1	Title	Average counter reading among main station rear ozone filter parts
		When used	Show the average replacement timing among parts counters. Use the counter reading to judge the replacement timing (mainly for operator maintenance).
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Update the data when the counter reading is cleared by calculating the cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Count-up specification	Use the average calculated based on cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > COUNTER > AVE-PRD1			
Item	Level	Description	
OZ-FIL3	1	Title	Average counter reading among sub station rear upper ozone filter parts
		When used	Show the average replacement timing among parts counters. Use the counter reading to judge the replacement timing (mainly for operator maintenance).
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Update the data when the counter reading is cleared by calculating the cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Count-up specification	Use the average calculated based on cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	-		
OZ-FIL4	1	Title	Average counter reading among sub station rear middle ozone filter parts
		When used	Show the average replacement timing among parts counters. Use the counter reading to judge the replacement timing (mainly for operator maintenance).
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Update the data when the counter reading is cleared by calculating the cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Count-up specification	Use the average calculated based on cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	-		
AR-FIL1	1	Title	Average counter reading among ITB inner air filter parts
		When used	Show the average replacement timing among parts counters. Use the counter reading to judge the replacement timing (mainly for operator maintenance).
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Update the data when the counter reading is cleared by calculating the cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Count-up specification	Use the average calculated based on cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	-		
AR-FIL3	1	Title	Average counter reading of Sub station delivery electrostatic air filter parts
		When used	Show the average replacement timing among parts counters. Use the counter reading to judge the replacement timing (mainly for operator maintenance).
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Update the data when the counter reading is cleared by calculating the cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Count-up specification	Use the average calculated based on cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	-		

COPIER > COUNTER > AVE-PRDI			
Item	Level	Description	
TN-FIL1	1	Title	Average counter reading of 4 toner filter parts
		When used	Show the average replacement timing among parts counters. Use the counter reading to judge the replacement timing (mainly for operator maintenance).
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Update the data when the counter reading is cleared by calculating the cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Count-up specification	Use the average calculated based on cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
OZ-FIL5	1	Title	Average counter reading among sub station rear right ozone filter parts
		When used	Show the average replacement timing among parts counters. Use the counter reading to judge the replacement timing (mainly for operator maintenance).
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Update the data when the counter reading is cleared by calculating the cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Count-up specification	Use the average calculated based on cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

T-18-114

COPIER > COUNTER > AVE-PRDI			
Item	Level	Description	
AR-FIL2	1	Title	Average value of parts counter for air filter in intermediate transfer unit
		When used	To estimate replacing period of the parts
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 99999999
		Unit	-
		Count-up timing	Update the data when the counter reading is cleared by calculating the cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Count-up specification	Use the average calculated based on cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
PRM-U-Y	1	Title	Average value of parts counter for primary charging assembly (Y)
		When used	To estimate replacing period of the parts
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 99999999
		Unit	-
		Count-up timing	Update the data when the counter reading is cleared by calculating the cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Count-up specification	Use the average calculated based on cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > COUNTER > AVE-PRD1			
Item	Level	Description	
PRM-U-M	1	Title	Average value of parts counter for primary charging assembly (M)
		When used	To estimate replacing period of the parts
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 99999999
		Unit	-
		Count-up timing	Update the data when the counter reading is cleared by calculating the cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Count-up specification	Use the average calculated based on cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
PRM-U-C	1	Title	Average value of parts counter for primary charging assembly (C)
		When used	To estimate replacing period of the parts
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 99999999
		Unit	-
		Count-up timing	Update the data when the counter reading is cleared by calculating the cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Count-up specification	Use the average calculated based on cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
PRM-U-K	1	Title	Average value of parts counter for primary charging assembly (Bk)
		When used	To estimate replacing period of the parts
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 99999999
		Unit	-
		Count-up timing	Update the data when the counter reading is cleared by calculating the cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Count-up specification	Use the average calculated based on cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
PO-UNIT	1	Title	Average value of parts counter for pre-transfer charging assembly
		When used	To estimate replacing period of the parts
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 99999999
		Unit	-
		Count-up timing	Update the data when the counter reading is cleared by calculating the cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Count-up specification	Use the average calculated based on cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

18.8.1.17 COPIER > COUNTER > AVE-DRB1

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

T-18-115

COPIER > COUNTER > AVE-DRBI			
Item	Level	Description	
CL-BLD-Y	1	Title	Average counter reading among drum cleaning blade (Y) parts
		When used	Show the average replacement timing among parts counters. Use the counter reading to judge the replacement timing (mainly for operator maintenance).
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Count-up timing	Update the data when the counter reading is cleared by calculating the cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Count-up specification	Use the average calculated based on cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
CL-BLD-M	1	Title	Average counter reading among drum cleaning blade (M) parts
		When used	Show the average replacement timing among parts counters. Use the counter reading to judge the replacement timing (mainly for operator maintenance).
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Count-up timing	Update the data when the counter reading is cleared by calculating the cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Count-up specification	Use the average calculated based on cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
CL-BLD-C	1	Title	Average counter reading among drum cleaning blade (C) parts
		When used	Show the average replacement timing among parts counters. Use the counter reading to judge the replacement timing (mainly for operator maintenance).
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Count-up timing	Update the data when the counter reading is cleared by calculating the cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Count-up specification	Use the average calculated based on cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
CLN-BLD	1	Title	Average counter reading among drum cleaning blade (Bk) parts
		When used	Show the average replacement timing among parts counters. Use the counter reading to judge the replacement timing (mainly for operator maintenance).
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Count-up timing	Update the data when the counter reading is cleared by calculating the cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Count-up specification	Use the average calculated based on cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > COUNTER > AVE-DRBI			
Item	Level	Description	
BS-SL-Y	1	Title	Average counter reading among drum cleaner side sial (Y) parts
		When used	Show the average replacement timing among parts counters. Use the counter reading to judge the replacement timing (mainly for operator maintenance).
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Count-up timing	Update the data when the counter reading is cleared by calculating the cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Count-up specification	Use the average calculated based on cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
BS-SL-M	1	Title	Average counter reading among drum cleaner side sial (M) parts
		When used	Show the average replacement timing among parts counters. Use the counter reading to judge the replacement timing (mainly for operator maintenance).
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Count-up timing	Update the data when the counter reading is cleared by calculating the cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Count-up specification	Use the average calculated based on cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
BS-SL-C	1	Title	Average counter reading among drum cleaner side sial (C) parts
		When used	Show the average replacement timing among parts counters. Use the counter reading to judge the replacement timing (mainly for operator maintenance).
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Count-up timing	Update the data when the counter reading is cleared by calculating the cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Count-up specification	Use the average calculated based on cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
BS-SL-K	1	Title	Average counter reading among drum cleaner side sial (Bk) parts
		When used	Show the average replacement timing among parts counters. Use the counter reading to judge the replacement timing (mainly for operator maintenance).
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Count-up timing	Update the data when the counter reading is cleared by calculating the cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Count-up specification	Use the average calculated based on cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > COUNTER > AVE-DRBI			
Item	Level	Description	
PT-DRM-Y	1	Title	Average counter reading among drum (Y) parts
		When used	Show the average replacement timing among parts counters. Use the counter reading to judge the replacement timing (mainly for operator maintenance).
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Count-up timing	Update the data when the counter reading is cleared by calculating the cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Count-up specification	Use the average calculated based on cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
PT-DRM-M	1	Title	Average counter reading among drum (M) parts
		When used	Show the average replacement timing among parts counters. Use the counter reading to judge the replacement timing (mainly for operator maintenance).
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Count-up timing	Update the data when the counter reading is cleared by calculating the cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Count-up specification	Use the average calculated based on cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
PT-DRM-C	1	Title	Average counter reading among drum (C) parts
		When used	Show the average replacement timing among parts counters. Use the counter reading to judge the replacement timing (mainly for operator maintenance).
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Count-up timing	Update the data when the counter reading is cleared by calculating the cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Count-up specification	Use the average calculated based on cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
PT-DRM-K	1	Title	Average counter reading among drum (Bk) parts
		When used	Show the average replacement timing among parts counters. Use the counter reading to judge the replacement timing (mainly for operator maintenance).
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Count-up timing	Update the data when the counter reading is cleared by calculating the cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Count-up specification	Use the average calculated based on cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > COUNTER > AVE-DRBI			
Item	Level	Description	
TR-BLT	1	Title	Average counter reading among ITB belt parts
		When used	Show the average replacement timing among parts counters. Use the counter reading to judge the replacement timing (mainly for operator maintenance).
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Count-up timing	Update the data when the counter reading is cleared by calculating the cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Count-up specification	Use the average calculated based on cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
1TR-RL-Y	1	Title	Average counter reading among primary transfer roller (Y) parts
		When used	Show the average replacement timing among parts counters. Use the counter reading to judge the replacement timing (mainly for operator maintenance).
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Count-up timing	Update the data when the counter reading is cleared by calculating the cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Count-up specification	Use the average calculated based on cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
1TR-RL-M	1	Title	Average counter reading among primary transfer roller (M) parts
		When used	Show the average replacement timing among parts counters. Use the counter reading to judge the replacement timing (mainly for operator maintenance).
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Count-up timing	Update the data when the counter reading is cleared by calculating the cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Count-up specification	Use the average calculated based on cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
1TR-RL-C	1	Title	Average counter reading among primary transfer roller (C) parts
		When used	Show the average replacement timing among parts counters. Use the counter reading to judge the replacement timing (mainly for operator maintenance).
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Count-up timing	Update the data when the counter reading is cleared by calculating the cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Count-up specification	Use the average calculated based on cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > COUNTER > AVE-DRBI			
Item	Level	Description	
1TR-RL-K	1	Title	Average counter reading among primary transfer roller (Bk) parts
		When used	Show the average replacement timing among parts counters. Use the counter reading to judge the replacement timing (mainly for operator maintenance).
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Count-up timing	Update the data when the counter reading is cleared by calculating the cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Count-up specification	Use the average calculated based on cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
2TR-INRL	1	Title	Average counter reading among secondary transfer roller parts
		When used	Show the average replacement timing among parts counters. Use the counter reading to judge the replacement timing (mainly for operator maintenance).
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Count-up timing	Update the data when the counter reading is cleared by calculating the cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Count-up specification	Use the average calculated based on cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
2TR-ROLL	1	Title	Average counter reading among Secondary transfer external roller parts
		When used	Show the average replacement timing among parts counters. Use the counter reading to judge the replacement timing (mainly for operator maintenance).
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Count-up timing	Update the data when the counter reading is cleared by calculating the cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Count-up specification	Use the average calculated based on cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
2TR-CLN	1	Title	Average counter reading among Secondary transfer cleaner kit parts
		When used	Show the average replacement timing among parts counters. Use the counter reading to judge the replacement timing (mainly for operator maintenance).
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Count-up timing	Update the data when the counter reading is cleared by calculating the cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Count-up specification	Use the average calculated based on cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > COUNTER > AVE-DRBI			
Item	Level	Description	
ITB-CLN1	1	Title	Average counter reading among ITB cleaning brush roller parts
		When used	Show the average replacement timing among parts counters. Use the counter reading to judge the replacement timing (mainly for operator maintenance).
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Count-up timing	Update the data when the counter reading is cleared by calculating the cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Count-up specification	Use the average calculated based on cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
ITB-WEB	1	Title	Average counter reading among ITB web parts
		When used	Show the average replacement timing among parts counters. Use the counter reading to judge the replacement timing (mainly for operator maintenance).
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Count-up timing	Update the data when the counter reading is cleared by calculating the cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Count-up specification	Use the average calculated based on cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
ITB-BLD1	1	Title	Average counter reading among ITB cleaning blade parts
		When used	Show the average replacement timing among parts counters. Use the counter reading to judge the replacement timing (mainly for operator maintenance).
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Count-up timing	Update the data when the counter reading is cleared by calculating the cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Count-up specification	Use the average calculated based on cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
PCH-S-R	1	Title	Average counter reading among Registration patch cleaning shutter parts
		When used	Show the average replacement timing among parts counters. Use the counter reading to judge the replacement timing (mainly for operator maintenance).
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Count-up timing	Update the data when the counter reading is cleared by calculating the cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Count-up specification	Use the average calculated based on cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > COUNTER > AVE-DRBI			
Item	Level	Description	
PCH-S-T	1	Title	Average counter reading among edge registration patch cleaning shutter parts
		When used	Show the average replacement timing among parts counters. Use the counter reading to judge the replacement timing (mainly for operator maintenance).
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Count-up timing	Update the data when the counter reading is cleared by calculating the cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Count-up specification	Use the average calculated based on cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	-		
FX-UP-RL	1	Title	Average counter reading among primary fixing roller parts
		When used	Show the average replacement timing among parts counters. Use the counter reading to judge the replacement timing (mainly for operator maintenance).
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Count-up timing	Update the data when the counter reading is cleared by calculating the cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Count-up specification	Use the average calculated based on cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	-		
FX2-UPRL	1	Title	Average counter reading among secondary fixing roller parts
		When used	Show the average replacement timing among parts counters. Use the counter reading to judge the replacement timing (mainly for operator maintenance).
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Count-up timing	Update the data when the counter reading is cleared by calculating the cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Count-up specification	Use the average calculated based on cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	-		
FX-WEB	1	Title	Average counter reading among primary fixing web parts
		When used	Show the average replacement timing among parts counters. Use the counter reading to judge the replacement timing (mainly for operator maintenance).
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Count-up timing	Update the data when the counter reading is cleared by calculating the cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Count-up specification	Use the average calculated based on cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	-		

COPIER > COUNTER > AVE-DRBI			
Item	Level	Description	
FX2-WEB	1	Title	Average counter reading among secondary fixing web parts
		When used	Show the average replacement timing among parts counters. Use the counter reading to judge the replacement timing (mainly for operator maintenance).
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Count-up timing	Update the data when the counter reading is cleared by calculating the cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Count-up specification	Use the average calculated based on cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
FX-WB-RL	1	Title	Average counter reading among primary fixing web roller parts
		When used	Show the average replacement timing among parts counters. Use the counter reading to judge the replacement timing (mainly for operator maintenance).
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Count-up timing	Update the data when the counter reading is cleared by calculating the cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Count-up specification	Use the average calculated based on cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
FX2-WBRL	1	Title	Average counter reading among secondary fixing web roller parts
		When used	Show the average replacement timing among parts counters. Use the counter reading to judge the replacement timing (mainly for operator maintenance).
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Count-up timing	Update the data when the counter reading is cleared by calculating the cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Count-up specification	Use the average calculated based on cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
FX-BLT-U	1	Title	Average counter reading among fixing belt unit parts
		When used	Show the average replacement timing among parts counters. Use the counter reading to judge the replacement timing (mainly for operator maintenance).
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Count-up timing	Update the data when the counter reading is cleared by calculating the cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Count-up specification	Use the average calculated based on cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > COUNTER > AVE-DRBI			
Item	Level	Description	
FX2-LWRL	1	Title	Average counter reading among pressure roller parts
		When used	Show the average replacement timing among parts counters. Use the counter reading to judge the replacement timing (mainly for operator maintenance).
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Count-up timing	Update the data when the counter reading is cleared by calculating the cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Count-up specification	Use the average calculated based on cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
FX-EX-RL	1	Title	Average counter reading among primary fixing External heating roller parts
		When used	Show the average replacement timing among parts counters. Use the counter reading to judge the replacement timing (mainly for operator maintenance).
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Count-up timing	Update the data when the counter reading is cleared by calculating the cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Count-up specification	Use the average calculated based on cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
FX2-EXRL	1	Title	Average counter reading among secondary fixing External heating roller parts
		When used	Show the average replacement timing among parts counters. Use the counter reading to judge the replacement timing (mainly for operator maintenance).
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Count-up timing	Update the data when the counter reading is cleared by calculating the cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Count-up specification	Use the average calculated based on cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
FX-EX-C1	1	Title	Average counter reading among primary fixing External heating cleaning roller parts
		When used	Show the average replacement timing among parts counters. Use the counter reading to judge the replacement timing (mainly for operator maintenance).
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Count-up timing	Update the data when the counter reading is cleared by calculating the cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Count-up specification	Use the average calculated based on cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > COUNTER > AVE-DRBI			
Item	Level	Description	
FX2-EXC1	1	Title	Average counter reading among secondary fixing External heating cleaning roller parts
		When used	Show the average replacement timing among parts counters. Use the counter reading to judge the replacement timing (mainly for operator maintenance).
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Count-up timing	Update the data when the counter reading is cleared by calculating the cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Count-up specification	Use the average calculated based on cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	-		
FX-RF-RL	1	Title	Average counter reading among primary fixing refresh roller parts
		When used	Show the average replacement timing among parts counters. Use the counter reading to judge the replacement timing (mainly for operator maintenance).
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Count-up timing	-
		Count-up specification	Update the data when the counter reading is cleared by calculating the cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Value established when RAM is cleared	Use the average calculated based on cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	-		
FX2-RFRL	1	Title	Average counter reading among secondary fixing refresh roller parts
		When used	Show the average replacement timing among parts counters. Use the counter reading to judge the replacement timing (mainly for operator maintenance).
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Count-up timing	Update the data when the counter reading is cleared by calculating the cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Count-up specification	Use the average calculated based on cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	-		
FX-RF-CL	1	Title	Average counter reading among primary fixing refresh cleaning roller parts
		When used	Show the average replacement timing among parts counters. Use the counter reading to judge the replacement timing (mainly for operator maintenance).
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Count-up timing	Update the data when the counter reading is cleared by calculating the cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Count-up specification	Use the average calculated based on cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	-		

COPIER > COUNTER > AVE-DRBI			
Item	Level	Description	
FX2-RFCL	1	Title	Average counter reading among secondary fixing refresh cleaning roller parts
		When used	Show the average replacement timing among parts counters. Use the counter reading to judge the replacement timing (mainly for operator maintenance).
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Count-up timing	Update the data when the counter reading is cleared by calculating the cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Count-up specification	Use the average calculated based on cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	-		
DEV-P-Y	1	Title	Average counter reading among drum patch sensor shutter (Y) parts
		When used	Show the average replacement timing among parts counters. Use the counter reading to judge the replacement timing (mainly for operator maintenance).
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Count-up timing	Update the data when the counter reading is cleared by calculating the cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Count-up specification	Use the average calculated based on cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	-		
DEV-P-M	1	Title	Average counter reading among drum patch sensor shutter (M) parts
		When used	Show the average replacement timing among parts counters. Use the counter reading to judge the replacement timing (mainly for operator maintenance).
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Count-up timing	Update the data when the counter reading is cleared by calculating the cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Count-up specification	Use the average calculated based on cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	-		
DEV-P-C	1	Title	Average counter reading among drum patch sensor shutter (C) parts
		When used	Show the average replacement timing among parts counters. Use the counter reading to judge the replacement timing (mainly for operator maintenance).
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Count-up timing	Update the data when the counter reading is cleared by calculating the cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Count-up specification	Use the average calculated based on cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	-		

COPIER > COUNTER > AVE-DRBI			
Item	Level	Description	
DEV-P-K	1	Title	Average counter reading among drum patch sensor shutter (Bk) parts
		When used	Show the average replacement timing among parts counters. Use the counter reading to judge the replacement timing (mainly for operator maintenance).
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Count-up timing	Update the data when the counter reading is cleared by calculating the cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Count-up specification	Use the average calculated based on cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	-		
DV-P-S-Y	1	Title	Average counter reading among drum patch sensor (Y) parts
		When used	Show the average replacement timing among parts counters. Use the counter reading to judge the replacement timing (mainly for operator maintenance).
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Count-up timing	Update the data when the counter reading is cleared by calculating the cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Count-up specification	Use the average calculated based on cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	-		
DV-P-S-M	1	Title	Average counter reading among drum patch sensor (M) parts
		When used	Show the average replacement timing among parts counters. Use the counter reading to judge the replacement timing (mainly for operator maintenance).
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Count-up timing	Update the data when the counter reading is cleared by calculating the cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Count-up specification	Use the average calculated based on cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	-		
DV-P-S-C	1	Title	Average counter reading among drum patch sensor (C) parts
		When used	Show the average replacement timing among parts counters. Use the counter reading to judge the replacement timing (mainly for operator maintenance).
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Count-up timing	Update the data when the counter reading is cleared by calculating the cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Count-up specification	Use the average calculated based on cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
Additional description and notes	-		

COPIER > COUNTER > AVE-DRBI			
Item	Level	Description	
DV-P-S-K	1	Title	Average counter reading among drum patch sensor (Bk) parts
		When used	Show the average replacement timing among parts counters. Use the counter reading to judge the replacement timing (mainly for operator maintenance).
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Count-up timing	Update the data when the counter reading is cleared by calculating the cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Count-up specification	Use the average calculated based on cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
LD-PAD	1	Title	Average counter reading among right deck separation pad parts
		When used	Show the average replacement timing among parts counters. Use the counter reading to judge the replacement timing (mainly for operator maintenance).
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Count-up timing	Update the data when the counter reading is cleared by calculating the cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Count-up specification	Use the average calculated based on cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
RD-PAD	1	Title	Average counter reading among left deck separation pad parts
		When used	Show the average replacement timing among parts counters. Use the counter reading to judge the replacement timing (mainly for operator maintenance).
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Count-up timing	Update the data when the counter reading is cleared by calculating the cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Count-up specification	Use the average calculated based on cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
ITB-SCRIP	1	Title	Average counter reading among ITB inner cleaning scraper parts
		When used	Show the average replacement timing among parts counters. Use the counter reading to judge the replacement timing (mainly for operator maintenance).
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Count-up timing	Update the data when the counter reading is cleared by calculating the cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Count-up specification	Use the average calculated based on cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
ITRLSCRIP	1	Not used	

COPIER > COUNTER > AVE-DRBI			
Item	Level	Description	
ITB-E-SC	1	Title	Average value of parts counter for ITB edge scraper unit
		When used	To estimate replacing period of the parts
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 99999999
		Unit	-
		Count-up timing	Update the data when the counter reading is cleared by calculating the cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Count-up specification	Use the average calculated based on cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
D-UNIT-Y	1	Title	Average value of parts counter for Y-drum unit
		When used	To estimate replacing period of the parts
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 99999999
		Unit	-
		Count-up timing	Update the data when the counter reading is cleared by calculating the cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Count-up specification	Use the average calculated based on cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
D-UNIT-M	1	Title	Average value of parts counter for M-drum unit
		When used	To estimate replacing period of the parts
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 99999999
		Unit	-
		Count-up timing	Update the data when the counter reading is cleared by calculating the cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Count-up specification	Use the average calculated based on cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
D-UNIT-C	1	Title	Average value of parts counter for C-drum unit
		When used	To estimate replacing period of the parts
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 99999999
		Unit	-
		Count-up timing	Update the data when the counter reading is cleared by calculating the cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Count-up specification	Use the average calculated based on cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > COUNTER > AVE-DRBI			
Item	Level	Description	
D-UNIT-K	1	Title	Average value of parts counter for Bk-drum unit
		When used	To estimate replacing period of the parts
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 99999999
		Unit	-
		Count-up timing	Update the data when the counter reading is cleared by calculating the cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Count-up specification	Use the average calculated based on cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
FX1WEB-U	1	Title	Average value of parts counter for primary fixing web unit
		When used	To estimate replacing period of the parts
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 99999999
		Unit	-
		Count-up timing	Update the data when the counter reading is cleared by calculating the cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Count-up specification	Use the average calculated based on cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
FX2WEB-U	1	Title	Average value of parts counter for secondary fixing web unit
		When used	To estimate replacing period of the parts
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 99999999
		Unit	-
		Count-up timing	Update the data when the counter reading is cleared by calculating the cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Count-up specification	Use the average calculated based on cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
ITBCLN-U	1	Title	Average value of parts counter for ITB cleaner unit
		When used	To estimate replacing period of the parts
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 99999999
		Unit	-
		Count-up timing	Update the data when the counter reading is cleared by calculating the cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Count-up specification	Use the average calculated based on cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

18.8.1.18 COPIER > COUNTER > CLN-SW

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

COPIER > COUNTER > CLN-SW			
Item	Level	Description	
DV-MT-A	1	Title	Developer replacement cleaning counter display switch
		When used	Switch over the counter display in the following service modes (switch 4 modes at a time). DV-MT-Y, DV-MT-M, DV-MT-C, DV-MT-K Counter can be hidden with this switch.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0: Hidden 1: Display
		Unit	-
		Count-up timing	-
		Count-up specification	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	1
		Related service modes	- COPIER>COUNTER>CLEANING>DV-MT-Y - COPIER>COUNTER>CLEANING>DV-MT-M - COPIER>COUNTER>CLEANING>DV-MT-C - COPIER>COUNTER>CLEANING>DV-MT-K
		Additional description and notes	-
PKIT-LF	1	Title	Developing assembly lower plate cleaning counter display switch
		When used	Switch PKIT-LF display. Counter can be hidden with this switch.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0: Hidden 1: Display
		Unit	-
		Count-up timing	-
		Count-up specification	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	1
		Related service modes	COPIER>COUNTER>CLEANING>PKIT-LF
		Additional description and notes	-
2TRFDPSA	1	Title	Pre-fixing feed belt cleaning counter display switch
		When used	Switch 2TR-FDPS display. Counter can be hidden with this switch.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0: Hidden 1: Display
		Unit	-
		Count-up timing	-
		Count-up specification	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	1
		Related service modes	COPIER>COUNTER>CLEANING>2TR-FDPS
		Additional description and notes	-
PO-SLD-A	1	Title	Pre-transfer charger shield plate cleaning counter display switch
		When used	Switch PO-SLD display. Counter can be hidden with this switch.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0: Hidden 1: Display
		Unit	-
		Count-up timing	-
		Count-up specification	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	1
		Related service modes	COPIER>COUNTER>CLEANING>PO-SLD
		Additional description and notes	-
FX-THTSA	1	Title	Thermistor/thermoswitch cleaning counter display switch
		When used	Switch the following service mode display at a time. FX1-THTS, FX2-THTS Counter can be hidden with this switch.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0: Hidden 1: Display
		Unit	-
		Count-up timing	-
		Count-up specification	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	1
		Related service modes	- COPIER>COUNTER>CLEANING>FX1-THTS - COPIER>COUNTER>CLEANING>FX2-THTS
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > COUNTER > CLN-SW			
Item	Level	Description	
DP-GRS-A	1	Title	Dust-proof glass cleaning counter display switch
		When used	Switch DP-GRS display. Counter can be hidden with this switch.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0: Hidden 1: Display
		Unit	-
		Count-up timing	-
		Count-up specification	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	1
		Related service modes	COPIER>COUNTER>CLEANING>DP-GRS
		Additional description and notes	-
2TREXS-A	1	Title	Secondary transfer outlet sensor cleaning counter display switch
		When used	Switch 2TR-EX-S display. Counter can be hidden with this switch.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0: Hidden 1: Display
		Unit	-
		Count-up timing	-
		Count-up specification	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	1
		Related service modes	COPIER>COUNTER>CLEANING>2TR-EX-S
		Additional description and notes	-
SS-RGRLA	1	Title	Cross-feed roller cleaning counter display switch
		When used	Switch COPIER>COUNTER>CLEANING>SS-RG-RL display. Counter can be hidden with this switch.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0: Hidden 1: Display
		Unit	-
		Count-up timing	-
		Count-up specification	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	1
		Related service modes	COPIER>COUNTER>CLEANING>SS-RG-RL
		Additional description and notes	-
PO-C-RLA	1	Title	ITB cleaning bias roller cleaning counter display switch
		When used	Switch PO-C-RL display. Counter can be hidden with this switch.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0: Hidden 1: Display
		Unit	-
		Count-up timing	-
		Count-up specification	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	1
		Related service modes	COPIER>COUNTER>CLEANING>PO-C-RL
		Additional description and notes	-
DV-P-S-A	1	Title	Drum patch sensor cleaning counter display switch
		When used	Switch the following service mode display at a time. DV-P-S-Y, DV-P-S-M, DV-P-S-C, DV-P-S-K Counter can be hidden with this switch.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0: Hidden 1: Display
		Unit	-
		Count-up timing	-
		Count-up specification	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	1
		Related service modes	- COPIER>COUNTER>CLEANING>DV-P-S-Y - COPIER>COUNTER>CLEANING>DV-P-S-M - COPIER>COUNTER>CLEANING>DV-P-S-C - COPIER>COUNTER>CLEANING>DV-P-S-K
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > COUNTER > CLN-SW			
Item	Level	Description	
PRE-EX-A	1	Title	Drum cleaner pre-exposure unit cleaning counter display switch
		When used	Switch PRE-EXPO display. Counter can be hidden with this switch.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0: Hidden 1: Display
		Unit	-
		Count-up timing	-
		Count-up specification	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	1
		Related service modes	COPIER>COUNTER>CLEANING>PRE-EXPO
		Additional description and notes	-
ITBOUT-A	1	Title	Switch over the counter display for ITB inner cleaning at ITB replacement
		When used	Switch the following service mode display at a time. ITB-EDGE, REGP-SNS, TREG-SNS Counter can be hidden with this switch.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0: Hidden 1: Display
		Unit	-
		Count-up timing	-
		Count-up specification	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	1
		Related service modes	- COPIER>COUNTER>CLEANING>ITB-EDGE - COPIER>COUNTER>CLEANING>REGP-SNS - COPIER>COUNTER>CLEANING>TREG-SNS
		Additional description and notes	-
ITB-WTNR	1	Title	ITB waste toner feed opening cleaning counter display switch
		When used	Switch ITB-WTNR display. Counter can be hidden with this switch.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0: Hidden 1: Display
		Unit	-
		Count-up timing	-
		Count-up specification	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	1
		Related service modes	COPIER>COUNTER>CLEANING>ITB-WTNR
		Additional description and notes	-
ITBIN-A	1	Title	Switch over the counter display for ITB inner cleaning at ITB replacement
		When used	Switch the following service mode display at a time. ITB-IROL, ITBHPSNS, ITB-ESNS Counter can be hidden with this switch.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0: Hidden 1: Display
		Unit	-
		Count-up timing	-
		Count-up specification	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	1
		Related service modes	- COPIER>COUNTER>CLEANING>ITB-IROL - COPIER>COUNTER>CLEANING>ITBHPSNS - COPIER>COUNTER>CLEANING>ITB-ESNS
		Additional description and notes	-
FX12-RFA	1	Title	Primary/secondary fixing refresh cleaning roller cleaning counter display switch
		When used	Switch the following service mode display at a time. FX1-RFRL, FX2-RFRL, FX1-RFCL, FX2-RFCL Counter can be hidden with this switch.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0: Hidden 1: Display
		Unit	-
		Count-up timing	-
		Count-up specification	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	1
		Related service modes	- COPIER>COUNTER>CLEANING>FX1-RFRL - COPIER>COUNTER>CLEANING>FX2-RFRL - COPIER>COUNTER>CLEANING>FX1-RFCL - COPIER>COUNTER>CLEANING>FX2-RFCL
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > COUNTER > CLN-SW			
Item	Level	Description	
PKIT-LF	1	Title	Cleaning counter display switch of developing assembly lower plate
		When used	To switch whether to display/hide the following counters: (4 counters to be switched at a time) PKIT-LF, PKIT-LFY, PKIT-LFM, PKIT-LFC
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0: Hidden 1: Display
		Unit	-
		Count-up timing	-
		Count-up specification	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	1
		Related service modes	-COUNTER>CLEANING>PKIT-LF -COUNTER>CLEANING>PKIT-LFY -COUNTER>CLEANING>PKIT-LFM -COUNTER>CLEANING>PKIT-LFC
Additional description and notes	-		
DP-GRS-A	1	Title	Cleaning counter display switch of dustproof glass
		When used	To switch whether to display/hide the following counters: (4 counters to be switched at a time) DP-GRS, DP-GRS-Y, DP-GRS-M, DP-GRS-C
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0: Hidden 1: Display
		Unit	-
		Count-up timing	-
		Count-up specification	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	1
		Related service modes	-COUNTER>CLEANING>DP-GRS -COUNTER>CLEANING>DP-GRS-Y -COUNTER>CLEANING>DP-GRS-M -COUNTER>CLEANING>DP-GRS-C
Additional description and notes	-		
PRE-EX-A	1	Title	Cleaning counter display switch of drum cleaner pre-exposure unit
		When used	To switch whether to display/hide the following counters: (4 counters to be switched at a time) PRE-EXPO, PRE-EXPY, PRE-EXPM, PRE-EXPC
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0: Hidden 1: Display
		Unit	-
		Count-up timing	-
		Count-up specification	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	1
		Related service modes	-COUNTER>CLEANING>PRE-EXPO -COUNTER>CLEANING>PRE-EXPY -COUNTER>CLEANING>PRE-EXPM -COUNTER>CLEANING>PRE-EXPC
Additional description and notes	-		
OZ-FILTR	1	Title	Cleaning counter display switch of ozone filter
		When used	To switch whether to display/hide the following counters: (3 counters to be switched at a time) OZ-FIL-M, OZ-FIL-L, OZ-FIL-U
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0: Hidden 1: Display
		Unit	-
		Count-up timing	-
		Count-up specification	-
		Value established when RAM is cleared	1
		Related service modes	-COUNTER/CLEANING>OZ-FIL-M -COUNTER/CLEANING>OZ-FIL-L -COUNTER/CLEANING>OZ-FIL-U
Additional description and notes	-		

18.8.1.19 COPIER > COUNTER > H-DBL-A1

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

COPIER > COUNTER > H-DBL-A1			
Item	Level	Description	
D1-U-L-M	1	Title	POD upper deck lifter motor counter
		When used	Provides the estimated life of highly durable replacement parts.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	When feeding paper from upper deck
		Count-up specification	Paper count fed from upper deck
		Upper limit	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Expected life: 9,000,000 prints
D1-U-FN1	1	Title	POD upper deck side fan 1 counter
		When used	Provides the estimated life of highly durable replacement parts.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	When feeding paper from upper deck
		Count-up specification	Paper count fed from upper deck
		Upper limit	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Expected life: 9,000,000 prints
D1-U-FN2	1	Title	POD upper deck side fan 2 counter
		When used	Provides the estimated life of highly durable replacement parts.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	When feeding paper from upper deck
		Count-up specification	Paper count fed from upper deck
		Upper limit	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Expected life: 9,000,000 prints
D1-U-SL	1	Title	POD upper deck attraction solenoid replacement counter
		When used	Provides the estimated life of highly durable replacement parts.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	When feeding paper from upper deck
		Count-up specification	Paper count fed from upper deck
		Upper limit	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Expected life: 9,000,000 prints
D1-U-FRL	1	Title	POD upper deck feed rpller replacement counter
		When used	Provides the estimated life of highly durable replacement parts.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	When feeding paper from upper deck
		Count-up specification	Paper count fed from upper deck
		Upper limit	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Expected life: 9,000,000 prints
D1-U-BT	1	Title	POD upper deck attraction belt replacement counter
		When used	Provides the estimated life of highly durable replacement parts.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	When feeding paper from upper deck
		Count-up specification	Paper count fed from upper deck
		Upper limit	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Expected life: 9,000,000 prints

COPIER > COUNTER > H-DBL-A1			
Item	Level	Description	
D1-U-PRL	1	Title	POD upper deck secondary pull-out roller counter
		When used	Provides the estimated life of highly durable replacement parts.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	When feeding paper from upper deck
		Count-up specification	Paper count fed from upper deck
		Upper limit	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Expected life: 9,000,000 prints
D1-M-L-M	1	Title	POD middle deck lifter motor counter
		When used	Provides the estimated life of highly durable replacement parts.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	When feeding paper from middle deck
		Count-up specification	Paper count fed from middle deck
		Upper limit	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Expected life: 9,000,000 prints
D1-M-FN1	1	Title	POD middle deck side fan 1 counter
		When used	Provides the estimated life of highly durable replacement parts.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	When feeding paper from middle deck
		Count-up specification	Paper count fed from middle deck
		Upper limit	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Expected life: 9,000,000 prints
D1-M-FN2	1	Title	POD middle deck side fan 2 counter
		When used	Provides the estimated life of highly durable replacement parts.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	When feeding paper from middle deck
		Count-up specification	Paper count fed from middle deck
		Upper limit	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Expected life: 9,000,000 prints
D1-M-SL	1	Title	POD middle deck attraction solenoid replacement counter
		When used	Provides the estimated life of highly durable replacement parts.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	When feeding paper from middle deck
		Count-up specification	Paper count fed from middle deck
		Upper limit	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Expected life: 9,000,000 prints
D1-M-FRL	1	Title	POD middle deck feed rpller replacement counter
		When used	Provides the estimated life of highly durable replacement parts.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	When feeding paper from middle deck
		Count-up specification	Paper count fed from middle deck
		Upper limit	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Expected life: 9,000,000 prints

COPIER > COUNTER > H-DBL-A1			
Item	Level	Description	
D1-M-BT	1	Title	POD middle deck attraction belt replacement counter
		When used	Provides the estimated life of highly durable replacement parts.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	When feeding paper from middle deck
		Count-up specification	Paper count fed from middle deck
		Upper limit	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Expected life: 9,000,000 prints
D1-M-PRL	1	Title	POD middle deck secondary pull-out roller counter
		When used	Provides the estimated life of highly durable replacement parts.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	When feeding paper from middle deck
		Count-up specification	Paper count fed from middle deck
		Upper limit	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Expected life: 9,000,000 prints
D1-L-L-M	1	Title	POD lower deck lifter motor counter
		When used	Provides the estimated life of highly durable replacement parts.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	When feeding paper from lower deck
		Count-up specification	Paper count fed from lower deck
		Upper limit	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Expected life: 9,000,000 prints
D1-L-FN1	1	Title	POD lower deck side fan 1 counter
		When used	Provides the estimated life of highly durable replacement parts.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	When feeding paper from lower deck
		Count-up specification	Paper count fed from lower deck
		Upper limit	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Expected life: 9,000,000 prints
D1-L-FN2	1	Title	POD lower deck side fan 2 counter
		When used	Provides the estimated life of highly durable replacement parts.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	When feeding paper from lower deck
		Count-up specification	Paper count fed from lower deck
		Upper limit	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Expected life: 9,000,000 prints
D1-L-SL	1	Title	POD lower deck attraction solenoid replacement counter
		When used	Provides the estimated life of highly durable replacement parts.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	When feeding paper from lower deck
		Count-up specification	Paper count fed from lower deck
		Upper limit	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Expected life: 9,000,000 prints

COPIER > COUNTER > H-DBL-A1			
Item	Level	Description	
D1-L-FRL	1	Title	POD lower deck feed roller replacement counter
		When used	Provides the estimated life of highly durable replacement parts.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	When feeding paper from lower deck
		Count-up specification	Paper count fed from lower deck
		Upper limit	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Expected life: 9,000,000 prints
D1-L-BT	1	Title	POD lower deck attraction belt replacement counter
		When used	Provides the estimated life of highly durable replacement parts.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	When feeding paper from lower deck
		Count-up specification	Paper count fed from lower deck
		Upper limit	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Expected life: 9,000,000 prints
D1-L-PRL	1	Title	POD lower deck secondary pull-out roller counter
		When used	Provides the estimated life of highly durable replacement parts.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	When feeding paper from lower deck
		Count-up specification	Paper count fed from lower deck
		Upper limit	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Expected life: 9,000,000 prints
D1-U-RL1	1	Title	POD deck upper vertical path roller 1 counter
		When used	Provides the estimated life of highly durable replacement parts.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	When feeding paper from upper deck
		Count-up specification	Paper count fed from upper deck
		Upper limit	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Expected life: 9,000,000 prints
D1-U-RL2	1	Title	POD deck upper vertical path roller 2 counter
		When used	Provides the estimated life of highly durable replacement parts.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	When feeding paper from upper deck
		Count-up specification	Paper count fed from upper deck
		Upper limit	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Expected life: 9,000,000 prints
D1-L-RL1	1	Title	POD deck lower vertical path roller 1 counter
		When used	Provides the estimated life of highly durable replacement parts.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	When feeding paper from middle deck
		Count-up specification	Paper count fed from middle deck
		Upper limit	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Expected life: 9,000,000 prints

COPIER > COUNTER > H-DBL-A1			
Item	Level	Description	
D1-L-RL2	1	Title	POD deck lower vertical path roller 2 counter
		When used	Provides the estimated life of highly durable replacement parts.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	When feeding paper from middle deck
		Count-up specification	Paper count fed from middle deck
		Upper limit	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Expected life: 9,000,000 prints
D1-L-RL3	1	Title	POD deck lower vertical path roller 3 counter
		When used	Provides the estimated life of highly durable replacement parts.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	When feeding paper from middle/lower decks
		Count-up specification	Paper count fed from middle deck + Paper count fed from lower deck
		Upper limit	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Expected life: 9,000,000 prints
D1-H-RL1	1	Title	POD deck horizontal path roller 1 counter
		When used	Provides the estimated life of highly durable replacement parts.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	When feeding paper from upper/middle/lower decks, when passing through multi pass
		Count-up specification	Paper counts fed from upper deck + middle deck + lower deck + paper counts passed through the multi pass
		Upper limit	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Expected life: 9,000,000 prints
D1-H-RL2	1	Title	POD deck horizontal path roller 2 counter
		When used	Provides the estimated life of highly durable replacement parts.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	When feeding paper from upper/middle/lower decks, when passing through multi pass
		Count-up specification	Paper counts fed from upper deck + middle deck + lower deck + paper counts passed through the multi pass
		Upper limit	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Expected life: 9,000,000 prints
D1-H-RL3	1	Title	POD deck horizontal path roller 3 counter
		When used	Provides the estimated life of highly durable replacement parts.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	When feeding paper from upper/middle/lower decks, when passing through multi pass
		Count-up specification	Paper counts fed from upper deck + middle deck + lower deck + paper counts passed through the multi pass
		Upper limit	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Expected life: 9,000,000 prints

COPIER > COUNTER > H-DBL-A1			
Item	Level	Description	
D1-H-RL4	1	Title	POD deck horizontal path roller 4 counter
		When used	Provides the estimated life of highly durable replacement parts.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	When feeding paper from upper/middle/lower decks, when passing through multi pass
		Count-up specification	Paper counts fed from upper deck + middle deck + lower deck + paper counts passed through the multi pass
		Upper limit	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Expected life: 9,000,000 prints
D1-B-RL1	1	Title	POD deck escape buffer pass roller counter
		When used	Provides the estimated life of highly durable replacement parts.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	When feeding paper from upper/middle/lower decks, when passing through multi pass
		Count-up specification	Paper counts fed from upper deck + middle deck + lower deck + paper counts passed through the multi pass
		Upper limit	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Expected life: 9,000,000 prints
D1-B-RL2	1	Title	POD deck escape buffer pass delivery roller counter
		When used	Provides the estimated life of highly durable replacement parts.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	When feeding paper from upper/middle/lower decks, when passing through multi pass
		Count-up specification	Paper counts fed from upper deck + middle deck + lower deck + paper counts passed through the multi pass
		Upper limit	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Expected life: 9,000,000 prints
D1-S-RL1	1	Title	Secondary POD deck multi pass roller 1 counter
		When used	Provides the estimated life of highly durable replacement parts.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	When passing through the multi pass
		Count-up specification	Paper counts passed through the multi pass
		Upper limit	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Expected life: 9,000,000 prints
D1-S-RL2	1	Title	Secondary POD deck multi pass roller 2 counter
		When used	Provides the estimated life of highly durable replacement parts.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	When passing through the multi pass
		Count-up specification	Paper counts passed through the multi pass
		Upper limit	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Expected life: 9,000,000 prints

COPIER > COUNTER > H-DBL-A1			
Item	Level	Description	
D2-U-L-M	1	Title	Secondary POD upper deck lifter motor counter
		When used	Provides the estimated life of highly durable replacement parts.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	When feeding paper from upper deck
		Count-up specification	Paper count fed from upper deck
		Upper limit	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Expected life: 9,000,000 prints
D2-U-FN1	1	Title	Secondary POD upper deck side fan 1 counter
		When used	Provides the estimated life of highly durable replacement parts.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	When feeding paper from upper deck
		Count-up specification	Paper count fed from upper deck
		Upper limit	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Expected life: 9,000,000 prints
D2-U-FN2	1	Title	Secondary POD upper deck side fan 2 counter
		When used	Provides the estimated life of highly durable replacement parts.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	When feeding paper from upper deck
		Count-up specification	Paper count fed from upper deck
		Upper limit	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Expected life: 9,000,000 prints
D2-U-SL	1	Title	Secondary POD upper deck attraction solenoid replacement counter
		When used	Provides the estimated life of highly durable replacement parts.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	When feeding paper from upper deck
		Count-up specification	Paper count fed from upper deck
		Upper limit	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Expected life: 9,000,000 prints
D2-U-FRL	1	Title	Secondary POD upper deck feed roller replacement counter
		When used	Provides the estimated life of highly durable replacement parts.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	When feeding paper from upper deck
		Count-up specification	Paper count fed from upper deck
		Upper limit	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Expected life: 9,000,000 prints
D2-U-BT	1	Title	Secondary POD upper deck attraction belt replacement counter
		When used	Provides the estimated life of highly durable replacement parts.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	When feeding paper from upper deck
		Count-up specification	Paper count fed from upper deck
		Upper limit	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Expected life: 9,000,000 prints

COPIER > COUNTER > H-DBL-A1			
Item	Level	Description	
D2-U-PRL	1	Title	Secondary POD upper deck secondary pull-out roller counter
		When used	Provides the estimated life of highly durable replacement parts.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	When feeding paper from upper deck
		Count-up specification	Paper count fed from upper deck
		Upper limit	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Expected life: 9,000,000 prints
D2-M-L-M	1	Title	Secondary POD middle deck lifter motor counter
		When used	Provides the estimated life of highly durable replacement parts.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	When feeding paper from middle deck
		Count-up specification	Paper count fed from middle deck
		Upper limit	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Expected life: 9,000,000 prints
D2-M-FN1	1	Title	Secondary POD middle deck side fan 1 counter
		When used	Provides the estimated life of highly durable replacement parts.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	When feeding paper from middle deck
		Count-up specification	Paper count fed from middle deck
		Upper limit	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Expected life: 9,000,000 prints
D2-M-FN2	1	Title	Secondary POD middle deck side fan 2 counter
		When used	Provides the estimated life of highly durable replacement parts.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	When feeding paper from middle deck
		Count-up specification	Paper count fed from middle deck
		Upper limit	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Expected life: 9,000,000 prints
D2-M-SL	1	Title	Secondary POD middle deck attraction solenoid replacement counter
		When used	Provides the estimated life of highly durable replacement parts.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	When feeding paper from middle deck
		Count-up specification	Paper count fed from middle deck
		Upper limit	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Expected life: 9,000,000 prints
D2-M-FRL	1	Title	Secondary POD middle deck feed roller replacement counter
		When used	Provides the estimated life of highly durable replacement parts.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	When feeding paper from middle deck
		Count-up specification	Paper count fed from middle deck
		Upper limit	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Expected life: 9,000,000 prints

COPIER > COUNTER > H-DBL-A1			
Item	Level	Description	
D2-M-BT	1	Title	Secondary POD middle deck attraction belt replacement counter
		When used	Provides the estimated life of highly durable replacement parts.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	When feeding paper from middle deck
		Count-up specification	Paper count fed from middle deck
		Upper limit	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Expected life: 9,000,000 prints
D2-M-PRL	1	Title	Secondary POD middle deck secondary pull-out roller counter
		When used	Provides the estimated life of highly durable replacement parts.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	When feeding paper from middle deck
		Count-up specification	Paper count fed from middle deck
		Upper limit	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Expected life: 9,000,000 prints
D2-L-L-M	1	Title	Secondary POD lower deck lifter motor counter
		When used	Provides the estimated life of highly durable replacement parts.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	When feeding paper from lower deck
		Count-up specification	Paper count fed from lower deck
		Upper limit	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Expected life: 9,000,000 prints
D2-L-FN1	1	Title	Secondary POD lower deck side fan 1 counter
		When used	Provides the estimated life of highly durable replacement parts.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	When feeding paper from lower deck
		Count-up specification	Paper count fed from lower deck
		Upper limit	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Expected life: 9,000,000 prints
D2-L-FN2	1	Title	Secondary POD lower deck side fan 2 counter
		When used	Provides the estimated life of highly durable replacement parts.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	When feeding paper from lower deck
		Count-up specification	Paper count fed from lower deck
		Upper limit	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Expected life: 9,000,000 prints
D2-L-SL	1	Title	Secondary POD lower deck attraction solenoid replacement counter
		When used	Provides the estimated life of highly durable replacement parts.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	When feeding paper from lower deck
		Count-up specification	Paper count fed from lower deck
		Upper limit	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Expected life: 9,000,000 prints

COPIER > COUNTER > H-DBL-A1			
Item	Level	Description	
D2-L-FRL	1	Title	Secondary POD lower deck feed roller replacement counter
		When used	Provides the estimated life of highly durable replacement parts.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	When feeding paper from lower deck
		Count-up specification	Paper count fed from lower deck
		Upper limit	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Expected life: 9,000,000 prints
D2-L-BT	1	Title	Secondary POD lower deck attraction belt replacement counter
		When used	Provides the estimated life of highly durable replacement parts.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	When feeding paper from lower deck
		Count-up specification	Paper count fed from lower deck
		Upper limit	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Expected life: 9,000,000 prints
D2-L-PRL	1	Title	Secondary POD lower deck secondary pull-out roller counter
		When used	Provides the estimated life of highly durable replacement parts.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	When feeding paper from lower deck
		Count-up specification	Paper count fed from lower deck
		Upper limit	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Expected life: 9,000,000 prints
D2-U-RL1	1	Title	Secondary POD deck upper horizontal path roller 1 counter
		When used	Provides the estimated life of highly durable replacement parts.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	When feeding paper from upper deck
		Count-up specification	Paper count fed from upper deck
		Upper limit	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Expected life: 9,000,000 prints
D2-U-RL2	1	Title	Secondary POD deck upper horizontal path roller 2 counter
		When used	Provides the estimated life of highly durable replacement parts.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	When feeding paper from upper deck
		Count-up specification	Paper count fed from upper deck
		Upper limit	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Expected life: 9,000,000 prints
D2-L-RL1	1	Title	Secondary POD deck lower horizontal path roller 1 counter
		When used	Provides the estimated life of highly durable replacement parts.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	When feeding paper from middle deck
		Count-up specification	Paper count fed from middle deck
		Upper limit	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Expected life: 9,000,000 prints

COPIER > COUNTER > H-DBL-A1			
Item	Level	Description	
D2-L-RL2	1	Title	Secondary POD deck lower horizontal path roller 2 counter
		When used	Provides the estimated life of highly durable replacement parts.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	When feeding paper from middle deck
		Count-up specification	Paper count fed from middle deck
		Upper limit	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Expected life: 9,000,000 prints
D2-L-RL3	1	Title	Secondary POD deck lower horizontal path roller 3 counter
		When used	Provides the estimated life of highly durable replacement parts.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	When feeding paper from middle/lower decks
		Count-up specification	Paper count fed from middle deck + Paper count fed from lower deck
		Upper limit	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Expected life: 9,000,000 prints
D2-H-RL1	1	Title	Secondary POD deck horizontal path roller 1 counter
		When used	Provides the estimated life of highly durable replacement parts.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	When feeding paper from upper/middle/lower decks, when passing through multi pass
		Count-up specification	Paper counts fed from upper deck + middle deck + lower deck + paper counts passed through the multi pass
		Upper limit	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Expected life: 9,000,000 prints
D2-H-RL2	1	Title	Secondary POD deck horizontal path roller 2 counter
		When used	Provides the estimated life of highly durable replacement parts.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	When feeding paper from upper/middle/lower decks, when passing through multi pass
		Count-up specification	Paper counts fed from upper deck + middle deck + lower deck + paper counts passed through the multi pass
		Upper limit	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Expected life: 9,000,000 prints
D2-H-RL3	1	Title	Secondary POD deck horizontal path roller 3 counter
		When used	Provides the estimated life of highly durable replacement parts.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	When feeding paper from upper/middle/lower decks, when passing through multi pass
		Count-up specification	Paper counts fed from upper deck + middle deck + lower deck + paper counts passed through the multi pass
		Upper limit	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Expected life: 9,000,000 prints

COPIER > COUNTER > H-DBL-A1			
Item	Level	Description	
D2-H-RL4	1	Title	Secondary POD deck horizontal path roller 4 counter
		When used	Provides the estimated life of highly durable replacement parts.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	When feeding paper from upper/middle/lower decks, when passing through multi pass
		Count-up specification	Paper counts fed from upper deck + middle deck + lower deck + paper counts passed through the multi pass
		Upper limit	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	Expected life: 9,000,000 prints

18.8.1.20 COPIER > COUNTER > AVE-DRB2

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

T-18-120

COPIER > COUNTER > AVE-DRB2			
Item	Level	Description	
D1-U-PD	1	Title	Average reading of parts counters for POD deck upper separation pad
		When used	Shows the average counter reading for parts replacement timing. Use as the reference of parts replacement timing.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Count-up timing	Update the data when the counter reading is cleared by calculating the cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Count-up specification	Use the average reading calculated based on the cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
D1-M-PD	1	Title	Average reading of parts counters for POD deck middle separation pad
		When used	Shows the average counter reading for parts replacement timing. Use as the reference of parts replacement timing.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Count-up timing	Update the data when the counter reading is cleared by calculating the cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Count-up specification	Use the average reading calculated based on the cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
D1-L-PD	1	Title	Average reading of parts counters for POD deck lower separation pad
		When used	Shows the average counter reading for parts replacement timing. Use as the reference of parts replacement timing.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Count-up timing	Update the data when the counter reading is cleared by calculating the cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Count-up specification	Use the average reading calculated based on the cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > COUNTER > AVE-DRB2			
Item	Level	Description	
D2-U-PD	1	Title	Average reading of parts counters for Secondary POD deck upper separation pad
		When used	Shows the average counter reading for parts replacement timing. Use as the reference of parts replacement timing.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Count-up timing	Update the data when the counter reading is cleared by calculating the cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Count-up specification	Use the average reading calculated based on the cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
D2-M-PD	1	Title	Average reading of parts counters for Secondary POD deck middle separation pad
		When used	Shows the average counter reading for parts replacement timing. Use as the reference of parts replacement timing.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Count-up timing	Update the data when the counter reading is cleared by calculating the cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Count-up specification	Use the average reading calculated based on the cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
D2-L-PD	1	Title	Average reading of parts counters for Secondary POD deck lower separation pad
		When used	Shows the average counter reading for parts replacement timing. Use as the reference of parts replacement timing.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	-
		Count-up timing	Update the data when the counter reading is cleared by calculating the cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Count-up specification	Use the average reading calculated based on the cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

18.8.1.21 COPIER > COUNTER > AVE-CLN

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

T-18-121

COPIER > COUNTER > AVE-CLN			
Item	Level	Description	
DV-MT-Y	1	Title	Average reading for cleaning timing at developer (Y) replacement.
		When used	Shows the average counter reading for parts replacement timing. Use as the reference of parts replacement timing.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Update the data when the counter reading is cleared by calculating the cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Count-up specification	Use the average reading calculated based on the cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > COUNTER > AVE-CLN			
Item	Level	Description	
DV-MT-M	1	Title	Average reading for cleaning timing at developer (M) replacement.
		When used	Shows the average counter reading for parts replacement timing. Use as the reference of parts replacement timing.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Update the data when the counter reading is cleared by calculating the cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Count-up specification	Use the average reading calculated based on the cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
DV-MT-C	1	Title	Average reading for cleaning timing at developer (C) replacement.
		When used	Shows the average counter reading for parts replacement timing. Use as the reference of parts replacement timing.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Update the data when the counter reading is cleared by calculating the cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Count-up specification	Use the average reading calculated based on the cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
DV-MT-K	1	Title	Average reading for cleaning timing at developer (Bk) replacement.
		When used	Shows the average counter reading for parts replacement timing. Use as the reference of parts replacement timing.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Update the data when the counter reading is cleared by calculating the cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Count-up specification	Use the average reading calculated based on the cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
DV-P-S-Y	1	Title	Average reading for cleaning timing at drum patch sensor (Y) replacement.
		When used	Shows the average counter reading for parts replacement timing. Use as the reference of parts replacement timing.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Update the data when the counter reading is cleared by calculating the cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Count-up specification	Use the average reading calculated based on the cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > COUNTER > AVE-CLN			
Item	Level	Description	
DV-P-S-M	1	Title	Average reading for cleaning timing at drum patch sensor (M) replacement.
		When used	Shows the average counter reading for parts replacement timing. Use as the reference of parts replacement timing.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Update the data when the counter reading is cleared by calculating the cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Count-up specification	Use the average reading calculated based on the cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
DV-P-S-C	1	Title	Average reading for cleaning timing at drum patch sensor (C) replacement.
		When used	Shows the average counter reading for parts replacement timing. Use as the reference of parts replacement timing.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Update the data when the counter reading is cleared by calculating the cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Count-up specification	Use the average reading calculated based on the cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
DV-P-S-K	1	Title	Average reading for cleaning timing at drum patch sensor (Bk) replacement.
		When used	Shows the average counter reading for parts replacement timing. Use as the reference of parts replacement timing.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Update the data when the counter reading is cleared by calculating the cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Count-up specification	Use the average reading calculated based on the cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
PKIT-LF	1	Title	Average reading for cleaning timing at Developing assembly lower plate replacement.
		When used	Shows the average counter reading for parts replacement timing. Use as the reference of parts replacement timing.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Update the data when the counter reading is cleared by calculating the cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Count-up specification	Use the average reading calculated based on the cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > COUNTER > AVE-CLN			
Item	Level	Description	
PRE-EXPO	1	Title	Average reading for cleaning timing at Drum cleaner pre-exposure unit replacement.
		When used	Shows the average counter reading for parts replacement timing. Use as the reference of parts replacement timing.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Update the data when the counter reading is cleared by calculating the cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Count-up specification	Use the average reading calculated based on the cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
2TR-FDPS	1	Title	Average reading for cleaning timing at Pre-fixing feed belt replacement.
		When used	Shows the average counter reading for parts replacement timing. Use as the reference of parts replacement timing.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Update the data when the counter reading is cleared by calculating the cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Count-up specification	Use the average reading calculated based on the cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
PO-SLD	1	Title	Average reading for cleaning timing at Pre-transfer charger replacement.
		When used	Shows the average counter reading for parts replacement timing. Use as the reference of parts replacement timing.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Update the data when the counter reading is cleared by calculating the cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Count-up specification	Use the average reading calculated based on the cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
ITB-EDGE	1	Title	Average reading for cleaning timing at ITB inner cleaning scraper replacement.
		When used	Shows the average counter reading for parts replacement timing. Use as the reference of parts replacement timing.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Update the data when the counter reading is cleared by calculating the cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Count-up specification	Use the average reading calculated based on the cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > COUNTER > AVE-CLN			
Item	Level	Description	
REGP-SNS	1	Title	Average reading for cleaning timing at Registration patch sensor replacement.
		When used	Shows the average counter reading for parts replacement timing. Use as the reference of parts replacement timing.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Update the data when the counter reading is cleared by calculating the cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Count-up specification	Use the average reading calculated based on the cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
TREG-SNS	1	Title	Average reading for cleaning timing at edge registration patch sensor replacement.
		When used	Shows the average counter reading for parts replacement timing. Use as the reference of parts replacement timing.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Update the data when the counter reading is cleared by calculating the cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Count-up specification	Use the average reading calculated based on the cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
ITB-IROL	1	Title	Average reading for cleaning timing at ITB idler roller replacement.
		When used	Shows the average counter reading for parts replacement timing. Use as the reference of parts replacement timing.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Update the data when the counter reading is cleared by calculating the cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Count-up specification	Use the average reading calculated based on the cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
ITBHPSNS	1	Title	Average reading for cleaning timing at ITB HP sensor replacement.
		When used	Shows the average counter reading for parts replacement timing. Use as the reference of parts replacement timing.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Update the data when the counter reading is cleared by calculating the cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Count-up specification	Use the average reading calculated based on the cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > COUNTER > AVE-CLN			
Item	Level	Description	
ITB-ESNS	1	Title	Average reading for cleaning timing at ITB edge sensor replacement.
		When used	Shows the average counter reading for parts replacement timing. Use as the reference of parts replacement timing.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Update the data when the counter reading is cleared by calculating the cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Count-up specification	Use the average reading calculated based on the cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
FX1-THTS	1	Title	Average reading for cleaning timing at Primary fixing thermistor/thermo switch replacement.
		When used	Shows the average counter reading for parts replacement timing. Use as the reference of parts replacement timing.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Update the data when the counter reading is cleared by calculating the cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Count-up specification	Use the average reading calculated based on the cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
FX2-THTS	1	Title	Average reading for cleaning timing at Secondary fixing thermistor/thermo switch replacement.
		When used	Shows the average counter reading for parts replacement timing. Use as the reference of parts replacement timing.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Update the data when the counter reading is cleared by calculating the cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Count-up specification	Use the average reading calculated based on the cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
FX1-RFRL	1	Title	Average reading for cleaning timing at Primary fixing refresh roller replacement.
		When used	Shows the average counter reading for parts replacement timing. Use as the reference of parts replacement timing.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Update the data when the counter reading is cleared by calculating the cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Count-up specification	Use the average reading calculated based on the cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > COUNTER > AVE-CLN			
Item	Level	Description	
FX2-RFRL	1	Title	Average reading for cleaning timing at Secondary fixing refresh roller replacement.
		When used	Shows the average counter reading for parts replacement timing. Use as the reference of parts replacement timing.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Update the data when the counter reading is cleared by calculating the cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Count-up specification	Use the average reading calculated based on the cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
FX1-RFCL	1	Title	Average reading for cleaning timing at Primary fixing refresh cleaning roller replacement.
		When used	Shows the average counter reading for parts replacement timing. Use as the reference of parts replacement timing.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Update the data when the counter reading is cleared by calculating the cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Count-up specification	Use the average reading calculated based on the cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
FX2-RFCL	1	Title	Average reading for cleaning timing at Secondary fixing refresh cleaning roller replacement.
		When used	Shows the average counter reading for parts replacement timing. Use as the reference of parts replacement timing.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Update the data when the counter reading is cleared by calculating the cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Count-up specification	Use the average reading calculated based on the cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
DP-GRS	1	Title	Average reading for cleaning timing at Dust-proof glass replacement.
		When used	Shows the average counter reading for parts replacement timing. Use as the reference of parts replacement timing.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Update the data when the counter reading is cleared by calculating the cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Count-up specification	Use the average reading calculated based on the cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > COUNTER > AVE-CLN			
Item	Level	Description	
2TR-EX-S	1	Title	Average reading for cleaning timing at Secondary transfer outlet sensor replacement.
		When used	Shows the average counter reading for parts replacement timing. Use as the reference of parts replacement timing.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Update the data when the counter reading is cleared by calculating the cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Count-up specification	Use the average reading calculated based on the cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
SS-RG-RL	1	Title	Average reading for cleaning timing at Cross-feed roller replacement.
		When used	Shows the average counter reading for parts replacement timing. Use as the reference of parts replacement timing.
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	-
		Unit	sheet
		Count-up timing	Update the data when the counter reading is cleared by calculating the cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Count-up specification	Use the average reading calculated based on the cumulative counter reading and the number of replacements.
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

T-18-122

COPIER > COUNTER > AVE-CLN			
Item	Level	Description	
OZ-FIL-M	1	Title	Average value of cleaning counter for sub station rear middle ozone filter
		When used	To estimate cleaning period
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 99999999
		Unit	-
		Count-up timing	Update the data when the counter reading is cleared by calculating the cumulative counter reading and the number of cleaning.
		Count-up specification	Use the average calculated based on cumulative counter reading and the number of cleaning.
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
OZ-FIL-L	1	Title	Average value of cleaning counter for sub station rear left ozone filter
		When used	To estimate cleaning period
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 99999999
		Unit	-
		Count-up timing	Update the data when the counter reading is cleared by calculating the cumulative counter reading and the number of cleaning.
		Count-up specification	Use the average calculated based on cumulative counter reading and the number of cleaning.
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > COUNTER > AVE-CLN			
Item	Level	Description	
OZ-FIL-U	1	Title	Average value of cleaning counter for sub station rear upper ozone filter
		When used	To estimate cleaning period
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 99999999
		Unit	-
		Count-up timing	Update the data when the counter reading is cleared by calculating the cumulative counter reading and the number of cleaning.
		Count-up specification	Use the average calculated based on cumulative counter reading and the number of cleaning.
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
PKIT-LFM	1	Title	Average value of cleaning counter for M-developing assembly lower plate
		When used	To estimate cleaning period
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 99999999
		Unit	-
		Count-up timing	Update the data when the counter reading is cleared by calculating the cumulative counter reading and the number of cleaning.
		Count-up specification	Use the average calculated based on cumulative counter reading and the number of cleaning.
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
PKIT-LFC	1	Title	Average value of cleaning counter for C-developing assembly lower plate
		When used	To estimate cleaning period
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 99999999
		Unit	-
		Count-up timing	Update the data when the counter reading is cleared by calculating the cumulative counter reading and the number of cleaning.
		Count-up specification	Use the average calculated based on cumulative counter reading and the number of cleaning.
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
PKIT-LFY	1	Title	Average value of cleaning counter for Y-developing assembly lower plate
		When used	To estimate cleaning period
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 99999999
		Unit	-
		Count-up timing	Update the data when the counter reading is cleared by calculating the cumulative counter reading and the number of cleaning.
		Count-up specification	Use the average calculated based on cumulative counter reading and the number of cleaning.
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

COPIER > COUNTER > AVE-CLN			
Item	Level	Description	
PRE-EXPM	1	Title	Average value of cleaning counter for M-drum cleaner pre-exposure unit
		When used	To estimate cleaning period
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 99999999
		Unit	-
		Count-up timing	Update the data when the counter reading is cleared by calculating the cumulative counter reading and the number of cleaning.
		Count-up specification	Use the average calculated based on cumulative counter reading and the number of cleaning.
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
		PRE-EXPC	1
When used	To estimate cleaning period		
Precautions for use	-		
Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 99999999		
Unit	-		
Count-up timing	Update the data when the counter reading is cleared by calculating the cumulative counter reading and the number of cleaning.		
Count-up specification	Use the average calculated based on cumulative counter reading and the number of cleaning.		
Value established when RAM is cleared	-		
Related service modes	-		
Additional description and notes	-		
PRE-EXPY	1		
		When used	To estimate cleaning period
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 99999999
		Unit	-
		Count-up timing	Update the data when the counter reading is cleared by calculating the cumulative counter reading and the number of cleaning.
		Count-up specification	Use the average calculated based on cumulative counter reading and the number of cleaning.
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
		DP-GRS-M	1
When used	To estimate cleaning period		
Precautions for use	-		
Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 99999999		
Unit	-		
Count-up timing	Update the data when the counter reading is cleared by calculating the cumulative counter reading and the number of cleaning.		
Count-up specification	Use the average calculated based on cumulative counter reading and the number of cleaning.		
Value established when RAM is cleared	-		
Related service modes	-		
Additional description and notes	-		

COPIER > COUNTER > AVE-CLN			
Item	Level	Description	
DP-GRS-C	1	Title	Average value of cleaning counter for C-dustproof glass
		When used	To estimate cleaning period
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 99999999
		Unit	-
		Count-up timing	Update the data when the counter reading is cleared by calculating the cumulative counter reading and the number of cleaning.
		Count-up specification	Use the average calculated based on cumulative counter reading and the number of cleaning.
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-
DP-GRS-Y	1	Title	Average value of cleaning counter for Y-dustproof glass
		When used	To estimate cleaning period
		Precautions for use	-
		Displays, settings and adjustment ranges	0 to 99999999
		Unit	-
		Count-up timing	Update the data when the counter reading is cleared by calculating the cumulative counter reading and the number of cleaning.
		Count-up specification	Use the average calculated based on cumulative counter reading and the number of cleaning.
		Value established when RAM is cleared	-
		Related service modes	-
		Additional description and notes	-

Chapter 19 Upgrading

Contents

19.1 Outline	19-1
19.1.1 Types of System Software.....	19-1
19.1.2 Upgrading Overview	19-2
19.1.3 Outline of the Functions and Operations.....	19-4
19.1.4 Points to Note at Time of Downloading.....	19-7
19.2 Making Preparations.....	19-8
19.2.1 Installing the System Software (System CD -> SST)	19-8
19.2.2 Installing the System Software (SST -> USB).....	19-9
19.2.3 Making Connections (SST in use)	19-11
19.2.4 Making Connections (USB device in use)	19-12
19.3 Formatting the HDD.....	19-14
19.3.1 Formatting All Partitions.....	19-14
19.3.2 Formatting Selected Partitions	19-15
19.3.3 Formatting the Partitions.....	19-15
19.4 Downloading System Software	19-17
19.4.1 Batch Downloading.....	19-17
19.4.1.1 Outline.....	19-17
19.4.1.2 Downloading Procedure.....	19-17
19.4.2 Downloading the System Software (Single)	19-20
19.4.2.1 Downloading Procedure.....	19-20
19.5 Uploading and Downloading Backup Data	19-23
19.5.1 Outline.....	19-23
19.5.2 Uploading Procedure.....	19-24
19.5.3 Downloading Procedure.....	19-26
19.6 Version Upgrade using USB	19-27
19.6.1 Overview of Menus and Functions	19-27
19.6.2 Points to Note.....	19-28
19.6.3 Downloading/Writing the System Software (auto).....	19-29
19.6.4 Downloading the System Software (Confirmation execution when version is downed the same version).....	19-30
19.6.5 Downloading the System Software (all overwriting).....	19-31
19.6.6 Formatting the HDD.....	19-32
19.6.7 Other Functions.....	19-33

19.1 Outline

19.1.1 Types of System Software

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

T-19-1

Types of System Software	System Software Name	Description
Main Controller	SYSTEM	1 for inside Japan and 1 for outside Japan.
Language Module	LANGUAGE	This is the message data displayed in the local UI. This module needs to be installed for each language. Installed languages can be changed from 'User Mode > Common Settings > Language Switch'. The version of the module must be consistent with that of the system.
Remote UI Contents	RUI	This is the Remote UI contents accessed from Web browser for the operation of the main body. Installed languages can be selected from the top page of the Remote UI.
Boot Program	BOOT	Boot system software is common in all the models. This software can be upgraded by ROM-DIMM replacement.
MEAP Library	MEAPCONT	MEAPCONT is the standard library to use MEAP.
Voice Dictionary	TTS	This is the voice dictionary data used in the environment where the voice guidance board is mounted. This dictionary is used when adding the Voice Guidance Kit (optional).
WEB Browser	BROWSER	BROWSER is the data used for WEB browser display which is the optional function. This is used when adding the WEB Browser Expansion Kit (optional).
DC Controller	DCON	Downloading of DCON is performed by way of the main controller assembly. As the BootROM is installed separately, it can be re-tried even in the case of failure in downloading of DC controller PCB.
Reader Controller	RCON	Downloading of RCON is performed by way of the main controller assembly. As the BootROM is installed separately, it can be re-tried in the case of failure in downloading of reader controller PCB. (Downloading of Rcon is not available unless the DC controller is started properly.)
Media Brand Information File	MEDIA	This is the file that includes the media brand information selected as the media type. Upgrading of this file enables the addition of the available media brands.
Simple NAVI	HELP	This is the data to display Simple Navi (operation supporting function).
WebDAV Contents	WebDAV	This is the module used for the function to send input image to the WebDAV server on internet/intranet using WebDAV protocol.
OCR Dictionary	SDICT	This is the dictionary used for conversion of the image data read from the reader assembly to character codes (OCR processing). This is used when adding the Searchable PDF Kit (optional).
Encryption Communication Key, Certificate/CA Certificate	KEY	This function is used for SSL/e-RDS communication. KEY means the key and the certificate used for encrypted communication on the network.
ADF Controller	CPU	This is used when adding the DADF-R1 (optional). Special service tool (Downloader PCB: FY9-2034) is required.
Finisher Controller	FIN_CON	This is used when adding the Finisher1/Saddle Finisher(optional).
Insertion Unit Controller	INSRTR	This is used when adding the Insertion Unit (optional).
Trimmer Controller	TRIMMER	This is used when adding the Trimmer (optional). SST cannot be used. A set of program and exclusive downloading software is provided. Install to PC to download via serial port.
Stacker Controller	OP_CON	This is used when adding the Stacker (optional).
POD Controller	DK_CON	This is used when adding the POD Deck (optional).
Secondary POD Deck		This is used when adding the Secondary POD Deck (optional).
Stacker Controller(secondary)	STK	This is used when adding the Stacker (optional).
Master controller	MST_CON	This is used when adding the perfect binder (optional).
Slave controller	SLV_CON	This is used when adding the perfect binder (optional).
Cutter controller	CUTTER	This is used when adding the perfect binder (optional).
Option controller	OP_CON	This is used when adding the perfect binder (optional).

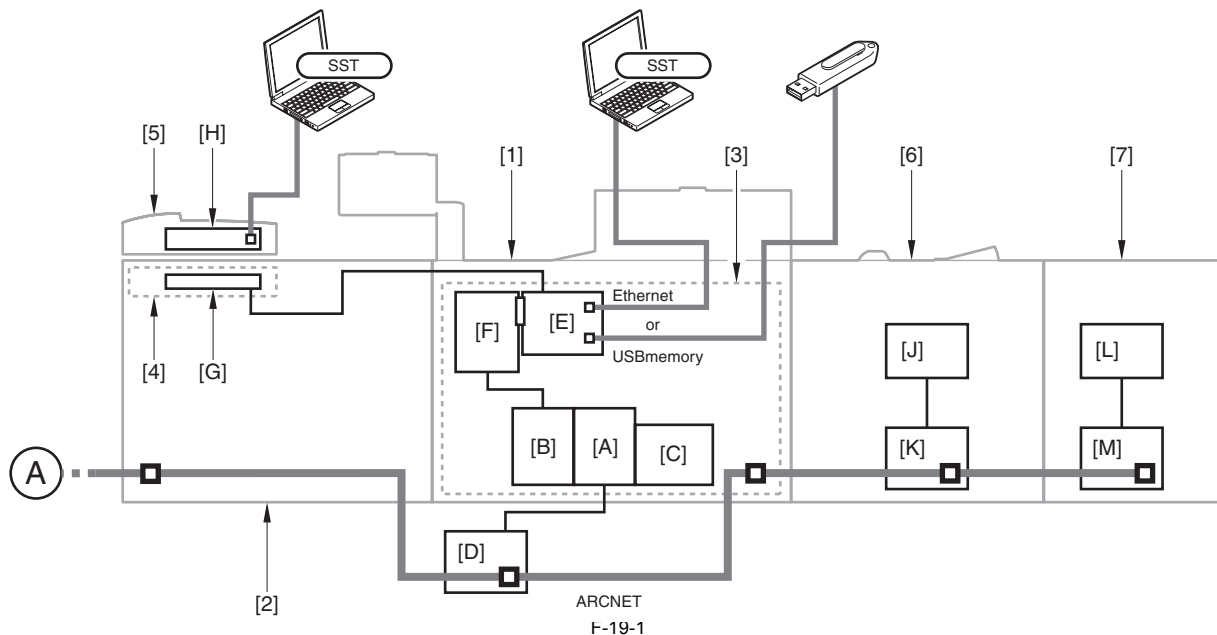
19.1.2 Upgrading Overview

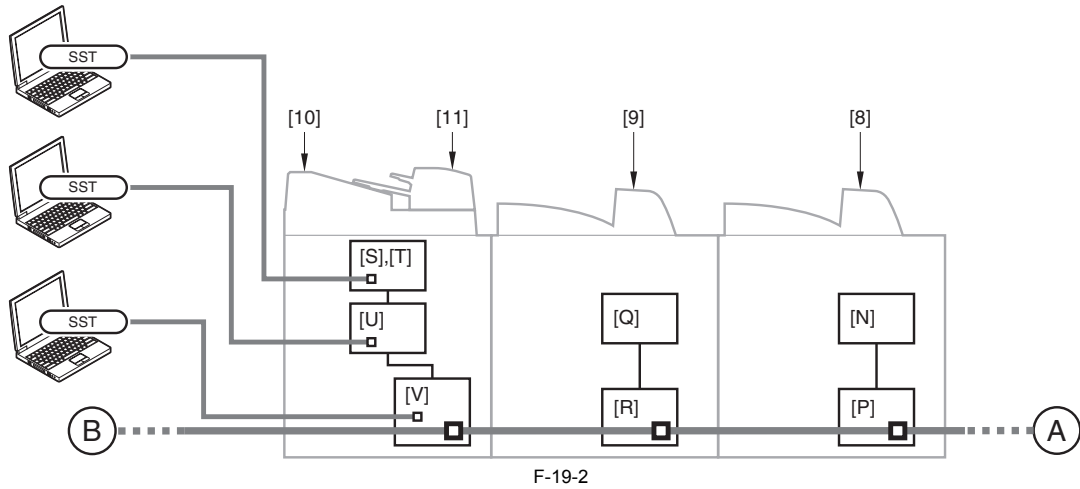
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- The main body and the optional system software can be upgraded by the procedures described below:
- by downloading from the personal computer (henceforth PC) installed with the service support tool (henceforth SST)
 - by downloading from the USB memory
 - by ROM-DIMM replacement

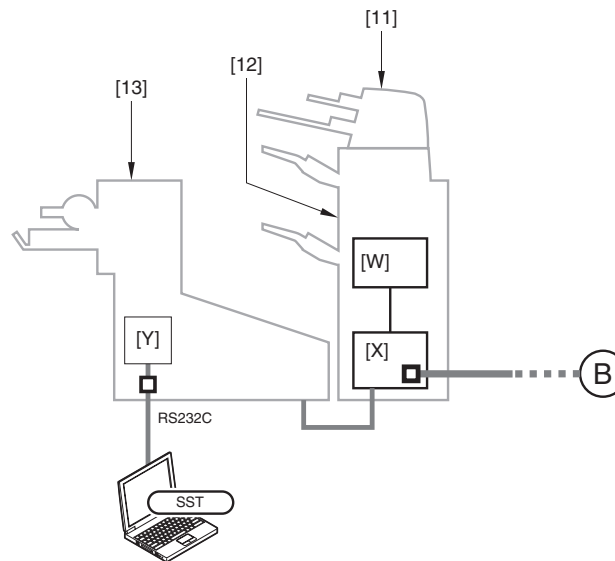
T-19-2

Machine	SST Display		Upgrading Tool			Remarks
	Product Name	System Software Name	SST	USB Memory	ROM-DIMM Replacement	
Host Machine	iPRC7000 VP	SYSTEM	Yes	Yes	-	
		LANGUAGE	Yes	Yes	-	
		RUI	Yes	Yes	-	
		BOOT	Yes	Yes	Yes	
		MEAPCONT	Yes	Yes	-	
		TTS	Yes	Yes	-	This is used when adding the voice guidance kit (optional).
		BROWSER	Yes	Yes	-	This is used when adding the WEB Browser Expansion kit (optional).
		DCON	Yes	Yes	-	
		RCON	Yes	Yes	-	
		TSTAMP	Yes	Yes	-	This is used when adding the PDF Expansion Kit (optional).
		MEDIA	Yes	Yes	-	
		HELP	Yes	Yes	-	
		WebDAV	Yes	Yes	-	
	iRCXXXX	SDICT	Yes	Yes	-	This is used when adding the Searchable PDF Kit (optional).
KEY		Yes	Yes	-		
Optional	DADF_R1	CPU	Yes	-	-	This is used when adding the DADF-R1 (optional). Special service tool (downloader PCB: FY9-2034) is required.
		FIN_AB	FIN_CON	Yes	Yes	-
	DECK_A1	INSERTR	Yes	Yes	-	This is used when adding the Insertion Unit (optional). The download tool is unnecessary.
		DK_CON	Yes	Yes	-	This is used when adding the POD Deck (optional). The download tool is unnecessary.
	HSTK_C1	OP_CON	Yes	Yes	-	This is used when adding the Stacker (optional). The download tool is unnecessary.
		ST_CON	Yes	Yes	-	
	BND_B1	MST_CON	Yes	Yes	-	This is used when adding the perfect binder (optional).
		SLV_CON	Yes	Yes	-	
		CUTTER	Yes	Yes	-	
		OP_CON	Yes	Yes	-	





F-19-2



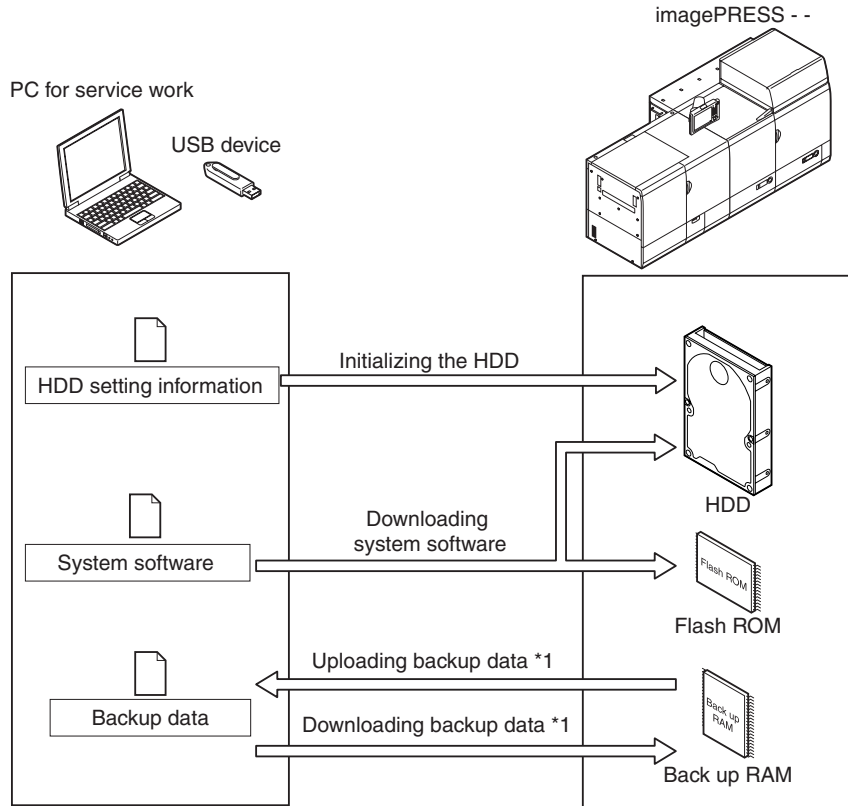
F-19-3

- [1] Main Station
 - [A] DC Controller 1 PCB
 - [B] DC Controller 2 PCB
 - [D] DC Controller 3 PCB
 - [D] ARCNET Transceiver PCB
- [2] Sub-Station
- [3] Power Unit Station
 - [E] Main Controller PCB (MAIN-M)
 - [F] Main Controller PCB (MAIN-P)
- [4] Reader
 - [G] Reader Controller PCB
- [5] ADF
 - [H] ADF Controller PCB
- [6] POD Deck
 - [J] Deck Controller PCB
 - [K] Optional Controller PCB
- [7] POD Deck (secondary)
 - [L] Deck Controller PCB (secondary)
 - [M] Optional Controller PCB (secondary)
- [8] Hi-Capacity Stacker
 - [N] Stacker Controller PCB
 - [P] Optional Controller PCB
- [9] Hi-Capacity Stacker (secondary)
 - [Q] Stacker Controller PCB (secondary)
 - [R] Optional Controller PCB (secondary)
- [10] Perfect Binder
 - [S] Cutter Controller PCB
 - [T] Slave Controller PCB
 - [U] Master Controller PCB
 - [V] Optional Controller PCB
- [11] Inserter
- [12] Finisher / Saddle Finisher
 - [W] Finisher Controller PCB
 - [X] Optional Controller PCB
- [13] Trimmer
 - [Y] Trimmer Controller PCB

19.1.3 Outline of the Functions and Operations

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

When connected to a PC (to which the SST and system software have been installed) and USB device (to which system software has been copied), the machine provides the following functions:



F-19-4

*1: Not when USB is in use.

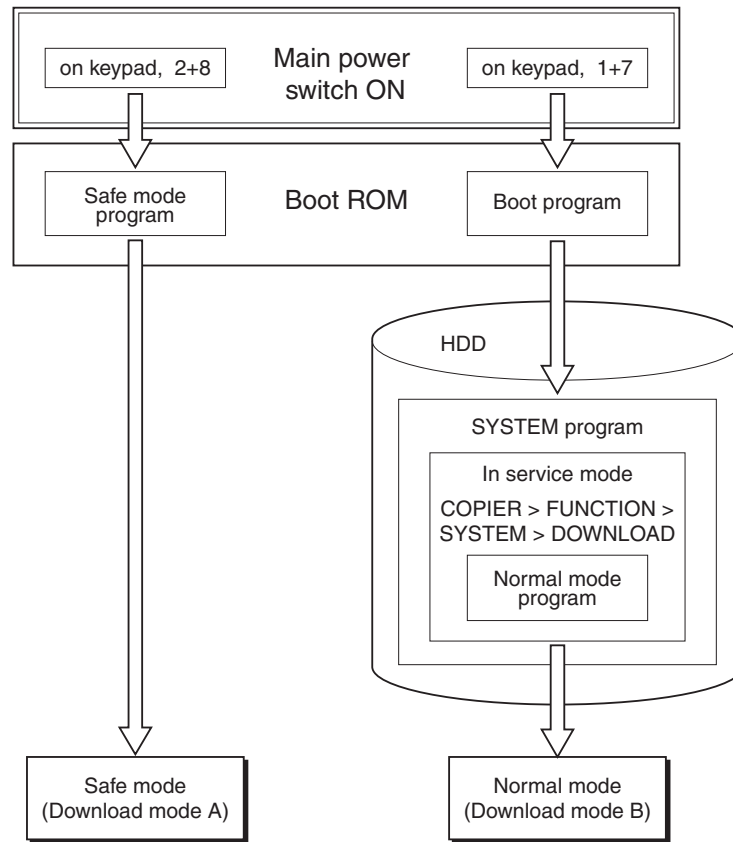
To use these functions, the machine must be in download mode, which may be either of the following:

- Safe Mode (download mode A)

Turn on the main power while holding down the keys 2+8.

- Normal Mode (download mode B)

Turn on the main power while holding down the keys 1+7; then, make the following selections in service mode: COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > DOWN-LOAD.



F-19-5



Use safe mode for the following:
 - after replacing the HDD
 - when the system fails to start up normally

The following shows combinations of download modes and functions:

T-19-3

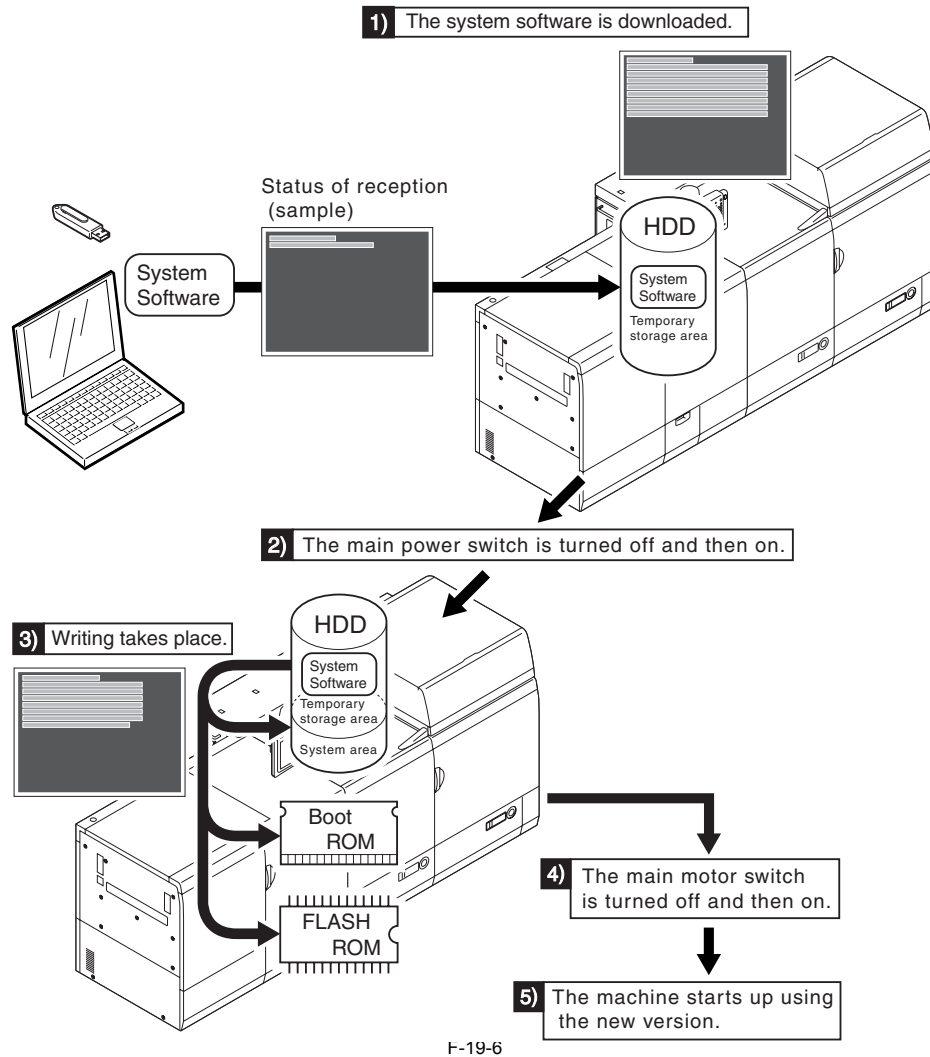
Function	Download mode	
	Normal mode (download mode B)	Safe mode (download mode A)
Formatting the HDD	- -	ALL BOOTDEV
Downloading the system software *1	System Language RUI Boot Dcon Rcon SDICT MEAPCONT KEY TTS BROWSER TSTMP MEDIA HELP WebDAV	System Language RUI Boot Dcon Rcon SDICT MEAPCONT KEY TTS BROWSER TSTMP MEDIA HELP WebDAV -
Uploading/downloading of backup data *2	- SramRCON SramDCON	Meapback - -

*1: Not all software to download may be selected for downloading while USB is in use.

*2: Not when USB device is in use.

Installing the System Software

When downloaded, the system software is stored in the temporary storage area of the HDD. At the end of downloading, the main power switch must be turned off and then back on, thus restarting the machine and writing the system software to both system area and flash ROM from the temporary storage area. When the main power switch is turned off and then back on once again, the machine will start up using the new system software.



19.1.4 Points to Note at Time of Downloading

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

⚠ Do Not Turn Off the Power During Download/Write Operation

Do not turn off the power while the system software is being downloaded/written. Otherwise, the machine may fail to start up when its power is turned back on. (If such is the case, execute HDD formatting, and download the system software. In the case of a boot ROM, replace the DIMM-ROM.)

⚠ Points to Note About Upgrading the DC Controller/Reader Controller

The DC controller/reader controller may be downloaded in either in normal mode or in safe mode. If done in safe mode, however, the controller version information cannot be obtained, causing the data retained by the SST to be written over. It is a good idea, therefore, to use normal mode (so that the software will not be replaced with software of a previous version).

19.2 Making Preparations

19.2.1 Installing the System Software (System CD -> SST)

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

Here, you will be copying the system software found on the System CD to the SST.

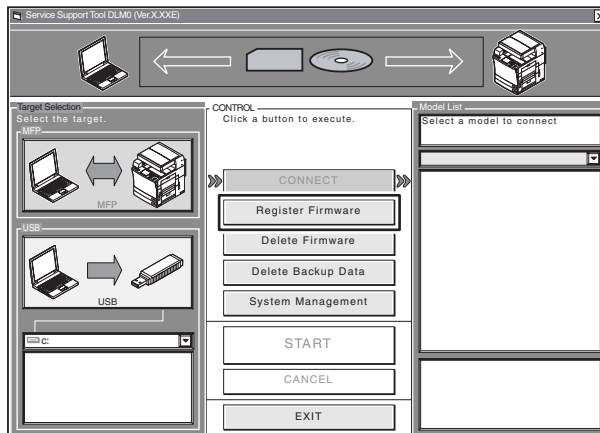
[Preparatory Work]

Requirements

- PC installed with SST version 3.35 or later
- System CD for this machine

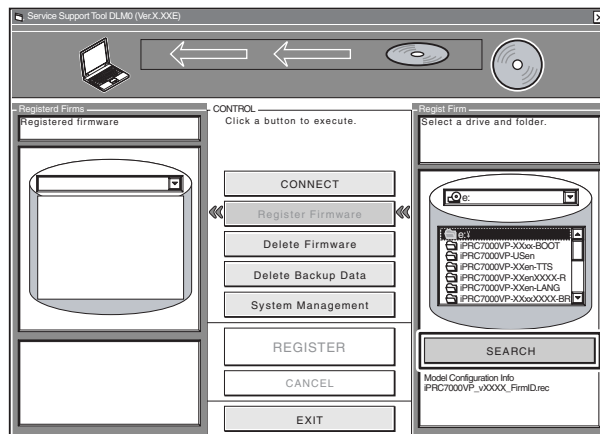
[Installing the System Software]

- 1) Turn on the PC.
- 2) Set the System CD in the PC.
- 3) Start up the SST.
- 4) Click [Register Firmware].



F-19-7

- 5) Select the drive in which the System CD has been set, and click [SEARCH].

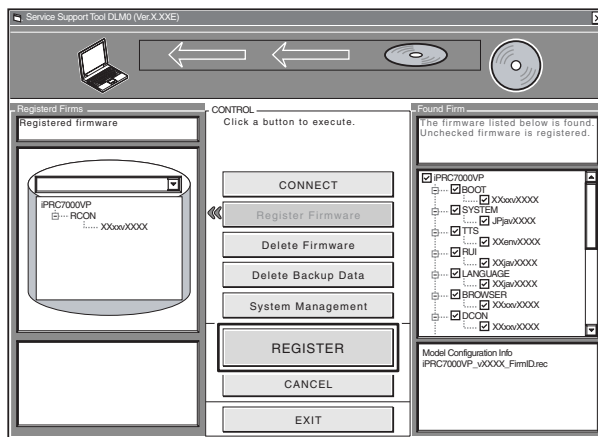


F-19-8



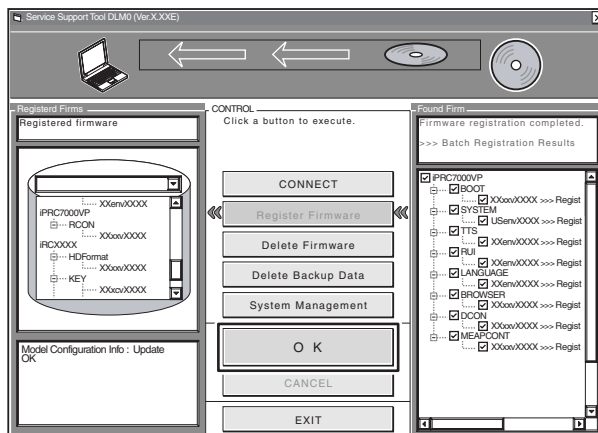
'XXXX' on the screen indicates the system software version (Same in the subsequent figures).

- 6) A list of system software found on the System CD appears. Remove the check marks from the folders and software files you do not need, and click [REGISTER].



F-19-9

7) When a message has appeared to indicate that the system software has been installed, click [OK].



F-19-10

19.2.2 Installing the System Software (SST -> USB)

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

Here, you will be copying the system software from the SST to a USB device.

[Preparatory Work]

Preparation

- PC installed with SST version 3.33 or later
- USB device (*)

*: USB Requirements

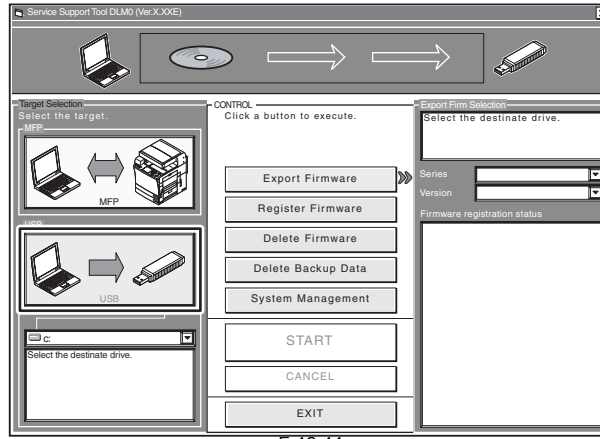
Interface	USB 1.1 or higher (USB 2.0 or recommended)
Capacity	1 GB or more recommended (A set of system software is in excess of 512 MB.)
Format	FAT (FAT16), FAT32 (It must not be NTFS or HFS.) single partition (There must not be multiple partitions.)



You will not be able to use a security-protected USB device. Be sure to remove the protection before use.

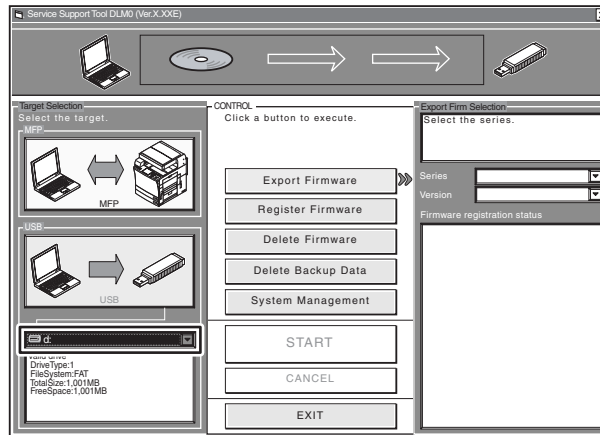
[Copying the System Software]

- 1) Start up the PC.
- 2) Connect the USB device to the USB port of the PC.
- 3) Start up the SST.
- 4) Click the USB icon on the Target Selection screen.



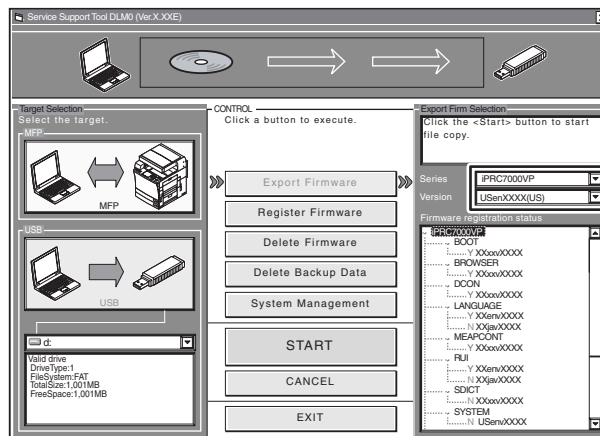
F-19-11

5) Select the drive to which the USB device has been connected.



F-19-12

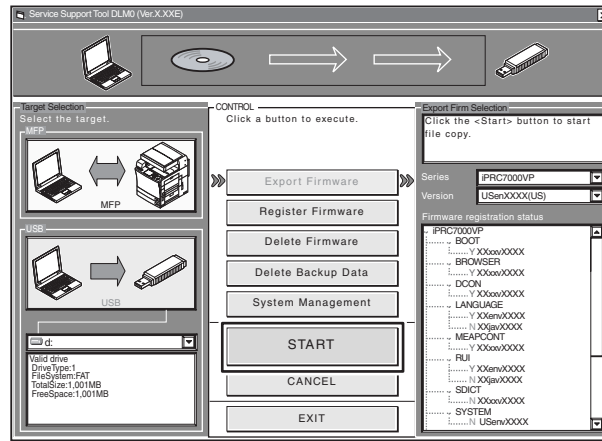
6) Select the appropriate 'Series' and 'Version' of the system software you want to copy.



F-19-13

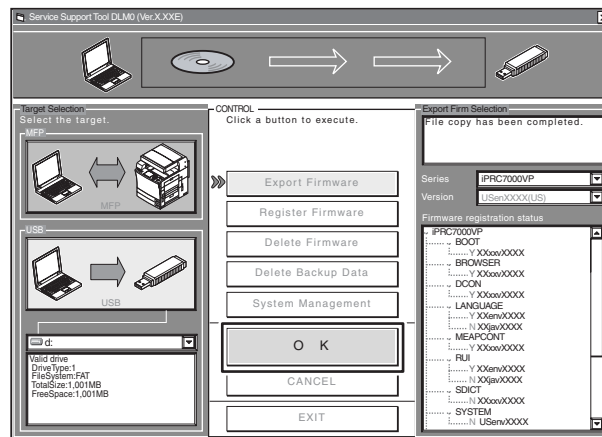
MEMO:
 The notations that appear in the column under "Firmware registration status" mean the following:
 Y: exists in the SST.
 N: does not exist in the SST.

7) Click [START] so that copying to the USB device starts.



F-19-14

8) When done, click [OK].



F-19-15

19.2.3 Making Connections (SST in use)

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

[Requirements]

- PC to which the SST (version 3.33 or later) has been installed and the system software has been copied
- twisted-pair cross cable
 - 10Base-T: Category 3 or 5
 - 100Base-TX: Category 5

[Procedure]

- 1) Start up the PC.
- 2) Check the network settings of the PC.
 - 2-1) Start the command prompt, and type in "IPCONFIG," and press the Return key.
 - 2-2) Check to be sure that the network settings appearing on the screen are as follows; if not, change the PC network settings:

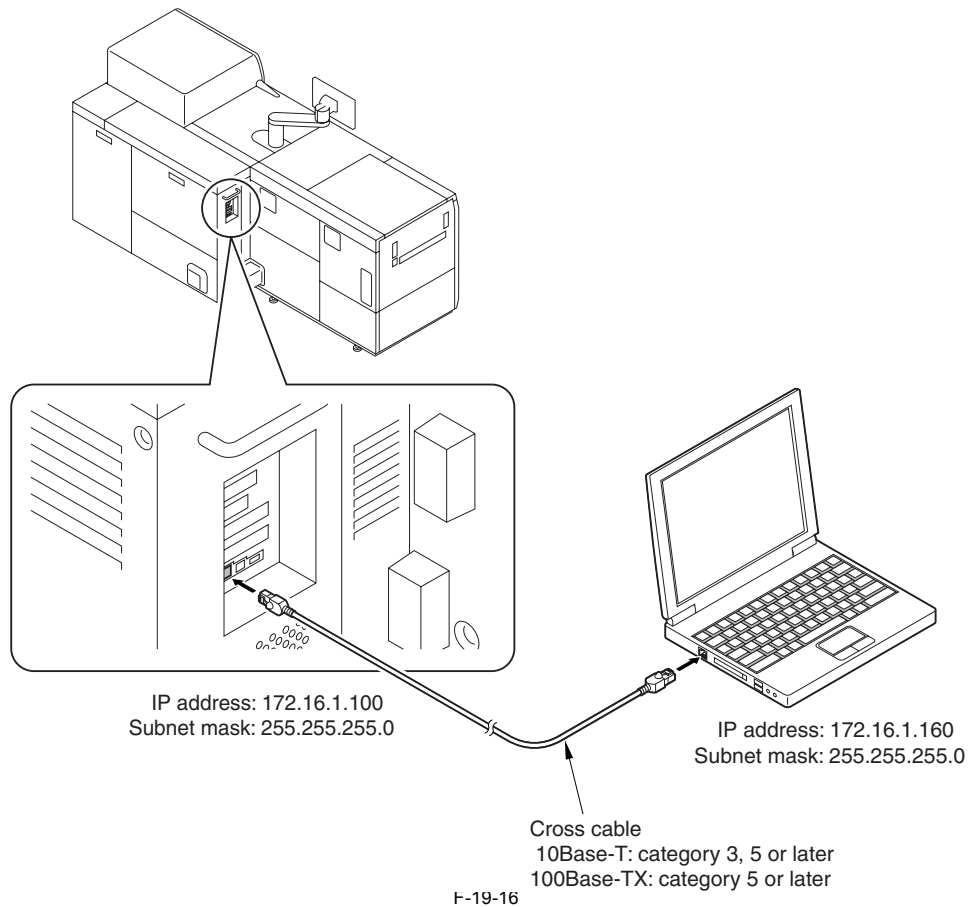
IP address: 172.16.1.160
Subnet mask: 255.255.255.0
Default gateway: any



Do not use the following IP addresses:

- 172.16.1.0
- 172.16.1.100
- 172.16.1.255

- 3) Check to make sure that the Execute/Memory lamp on the control panel is off; then, turn off the main power switch.
 - 3-1) Hold down the power switch on the control panel for 3 sec or more.
 - 3-2) Go through the shut-down instructions appearing on the control panel screen so that the main power switch may be turned off. (The main power will go off automatically.)
- 4) Connect the PC to the machine with a cross cable.



5) Set the machine to the appropriate mode:

- Normal Mode

Turn on the main power switch while holding down the keys 1 and 7.

When the machine has started, make the following selections in service mode:

COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > DOWNLOAD; then, click [OK].

- Safe Mode

Turn on the main power switch while holding down the keys 2 and 8. In response, the machine will start up in safe mode.

19.2.4 Making Connections (USB device in use)

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

[Requirements]

- USB device to which the system software has been copied.

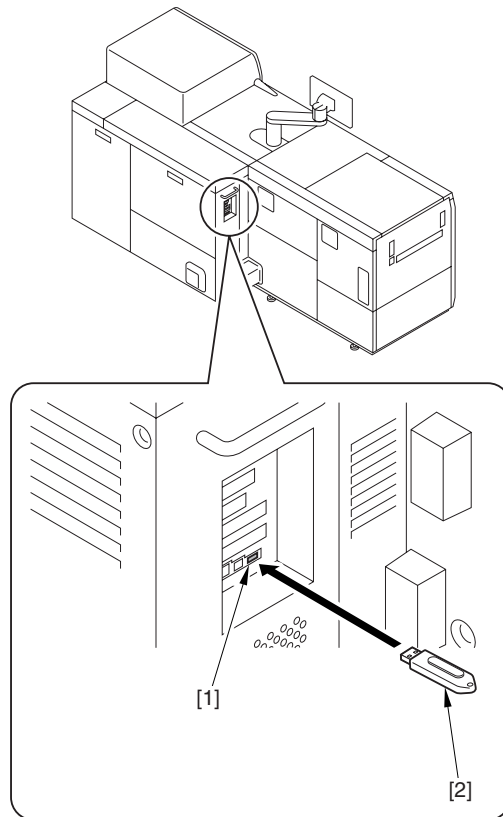
[Procedure]

1) Check to make sure that the Execute/Memory on the control panel is off; then, turn off the main power switch as follows:

1-1) Hold down the control panel power switch for 3 sec or more.

1-2) Go through the shut-down instructions appearing on the control panel screen so that the main power switch may be turned off. (The main power will go off automatically.)

2) Connect the USB device [2] to the USB port [1].



F-19-17

3) If a network cable is connected to the machine, disconnect it.

4) Set the machine to the appropriate download mode:

- Normal Mode

Turn on the main power switch while holding down the keys 1 and 7.

When the machine has started up, make the following selections in service mode, and press [OK]:

COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > DOWNLOAD.

- Safe Mode

Turn on the main power switch while holding down the keys 2 and 8 so that the machine will start up in safe mode.

5) See the following menu appearing on the control panel screen, indicating that the machine has recognized the presence of a USB device.

```
[[[[[ download Menu (USB) ]]]]]]]]]
```

```
[1]: Upgrade (Auto)
[2]: Upgrade (w Confirmation)
[3]: Upgrade (Overwrite all)
[4]: Format HDD
[5]: Backup
[6]: Restore former version
[7]: Clear downloaded files
```

```
[Stop]:Shutdown
```

F-19-18



The machine may not recognize certain types of USB device or USB device from certain manufacturers. The machine looks for a USB device for a maximum of 60 sec after its main power is turned on, not indicating the menu if it fails to detect one. (If such is the case, obtain an appropriate USB device.)



The SST cannot be run while the USB device is in use. (The machine will not communicate with the SST when it detects the presence of a USB device.)



If opening/closing the decurler while the USB memory has been connected to the host machine, the decurler may hit the USB memory. Thus, be sure to remove the USB memory before moving to next work.

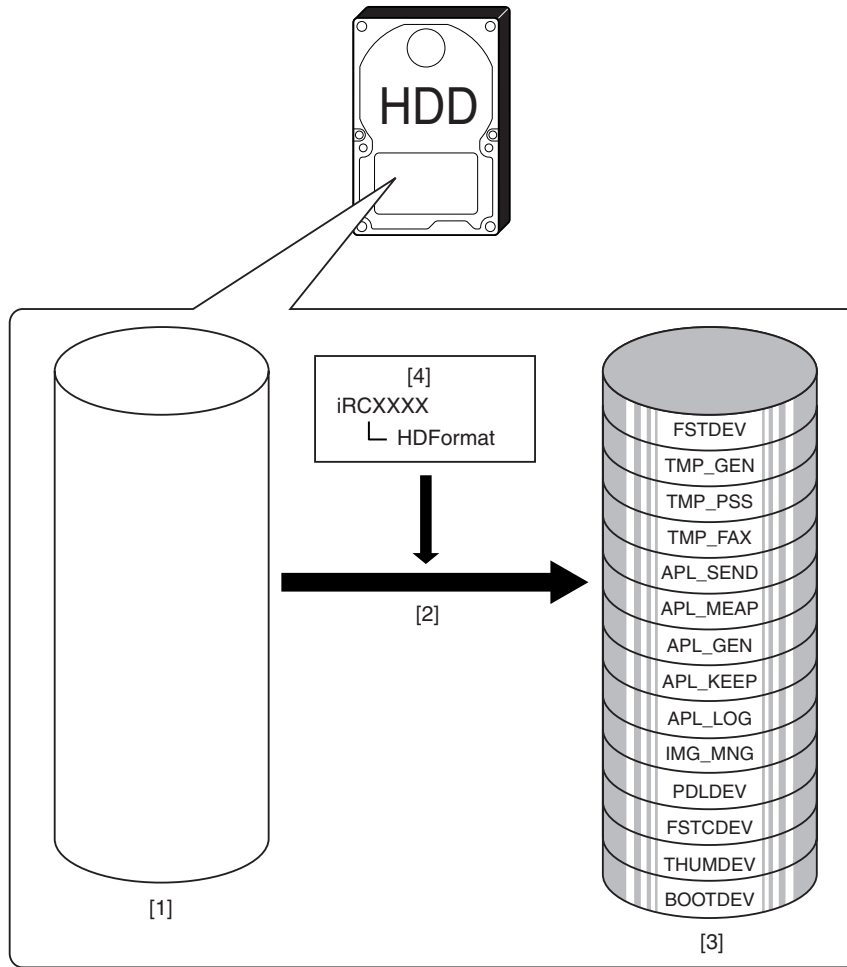
19.3 Formatting the HDD

19.3.1 Formatting All Partitions

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

When formatting the HDD for all partition, there will be partitions on the HDD and all these partitions will be formatted (initialized) and the main controller will be made ready for use.

All the information needed to set up the partition is found in the partition settings file (on the SST, 'HDFFormat' in the folder 'IRCXXXX').



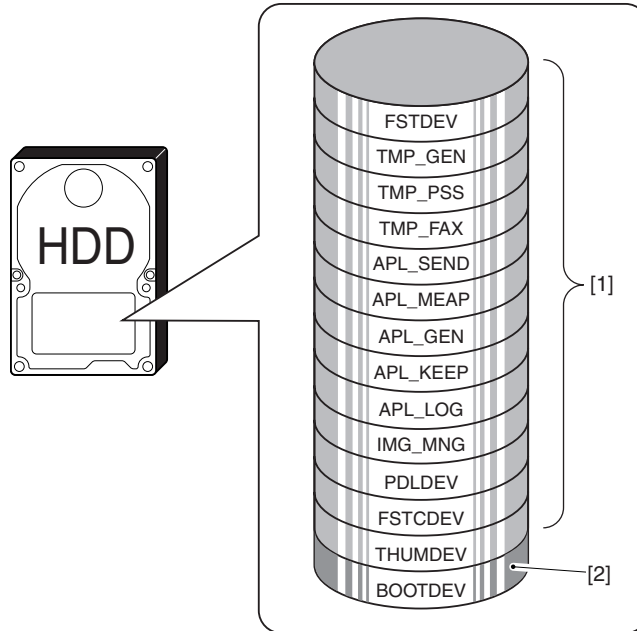
F-19-19

- [1] HDD (service part; without partitions)
- [2] Formatting for full partition (only in safe mode)
- [3] HDD after formatting
- [4] Partition settings information file

19.3.2 Formatting Selected Partitions

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

When formatting the HDD for selected partitions, only those selected partitions will be initialized.



F-19-20

- [1] Formatting not possible
 [2] Formatting possible in safe mode

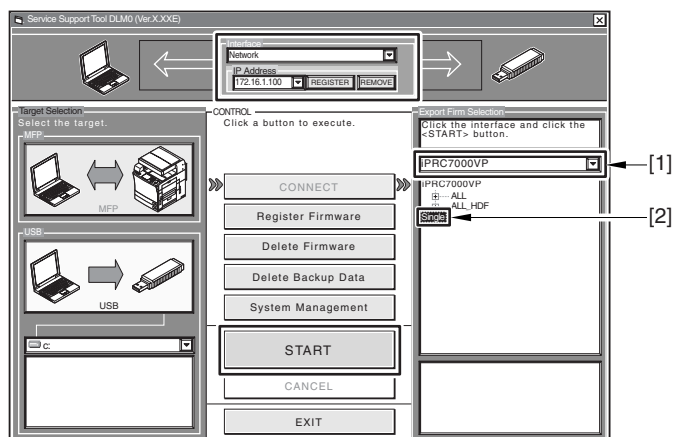
MEMO:

Partition-based formatting is possible in service mode (COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CLEAR), with the exception of BOOTDEV.

19.3.3 Formatting the Partitions

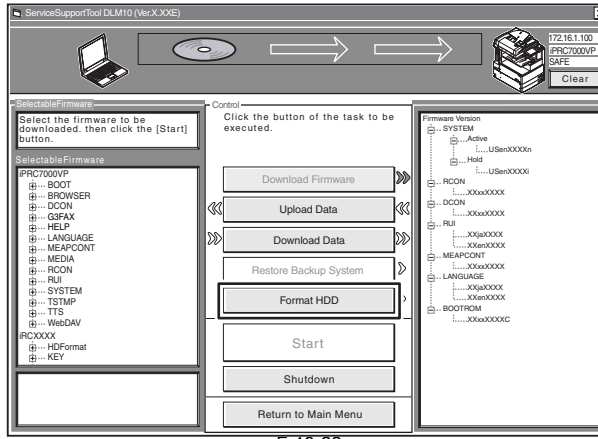
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- 1) Start up the SST.
- 2) Select the model [1] and the type of system software [2] ('Single'); then, check the network settings, and click [START].



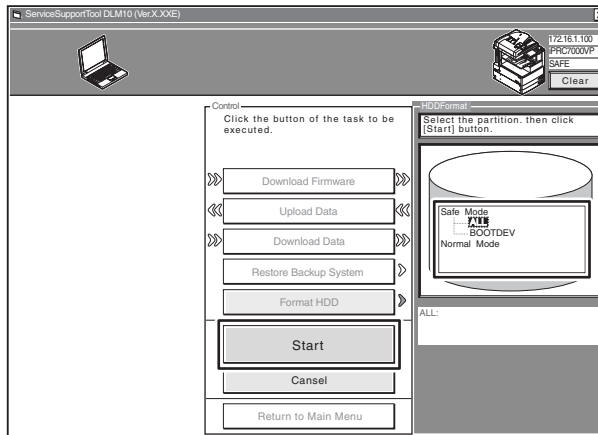
F-19-21

- 3) Click [Format HDD].



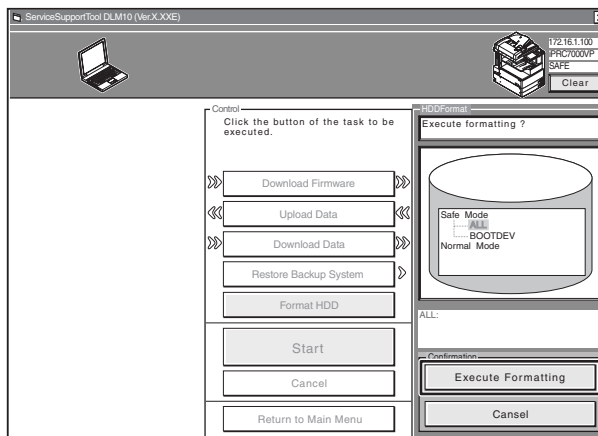
F-19-22

4) Specify BOOTDEV partition or full partition (ALL), and click [Start].



F-19-23

5) Click [Execute Formatting].



F-19-24

- 6) When formatting has ended, click [OK] to return to the Menu screen.
- 7) Move on to download the system software.

⚠ Whenever you have executed HDD formatting, be sure to download the system software; otherwise, an error (E602) will occur when the main power is turned on.

19.4 Downloading System Software

19.4.1 Batch Downloading

19.4.1.1 Outline

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

* Support from SST Ver.3.33

You can collectively download various system software files at one time. The groups of system software files that may be downloaded in a batch are identified in the batch download information file, which is found on the System CD. Copy the file to the SST to enable the batch downloading mechanism.

<Batch Download Information File>

ALL: for downloading in normal mode

Use it to collectively download all system software files that are found.

Use it as when upgrading the system software.

ALL_HDF: for downloading in safe mode

Use it to collectively download system software files other than the following:

- BOOT
- DCON
- RCON

Use it when reinstalling the system software as after formatting the HDD.

The foregoing 3 system software files may be downloaded using different steps.

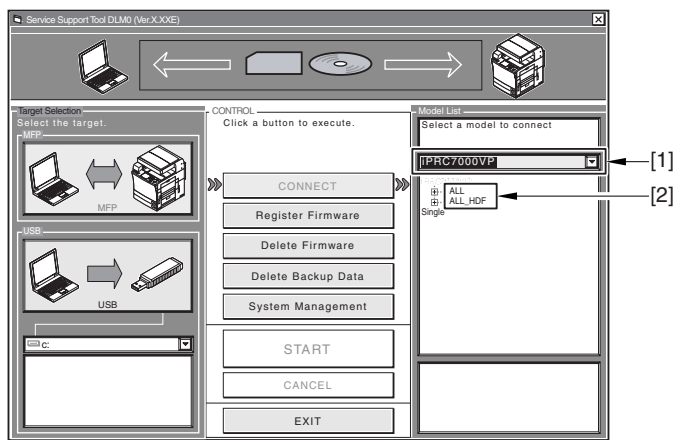
19.4.1.2 Downloading Procedure

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

* Support from SST Ver.3.33

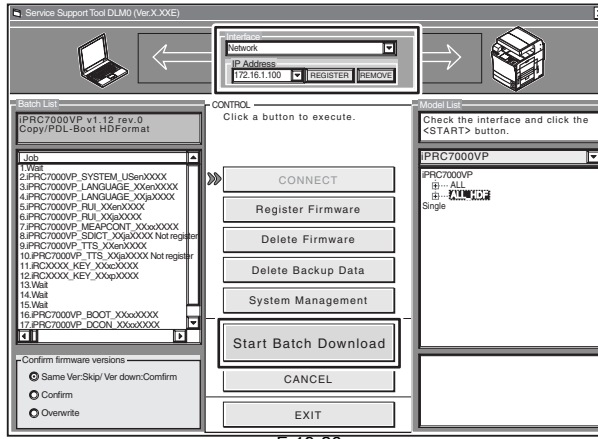
Here, the discussions are in reference to batch downloading in safe mode.

- 1) Start up the SST.
- 2) Select the model [1] and the batch download information file [2] ('ALL_HDF').



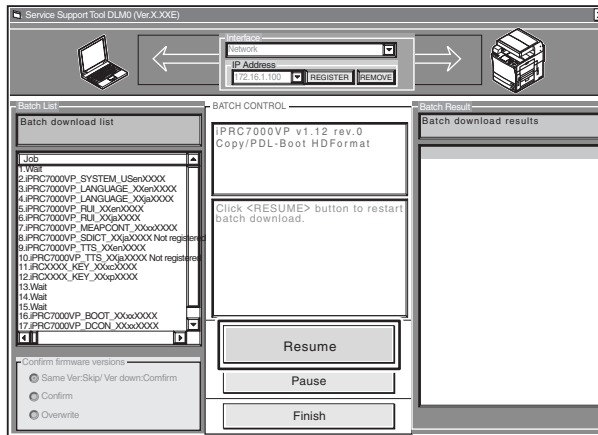
F-19-25

- 3) Make sure of the network settings, and click [Start Batch Download].



F-19-26

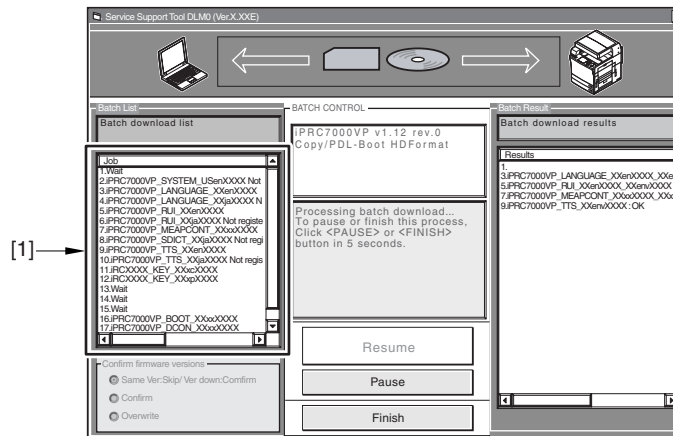
4) Click [Resume].



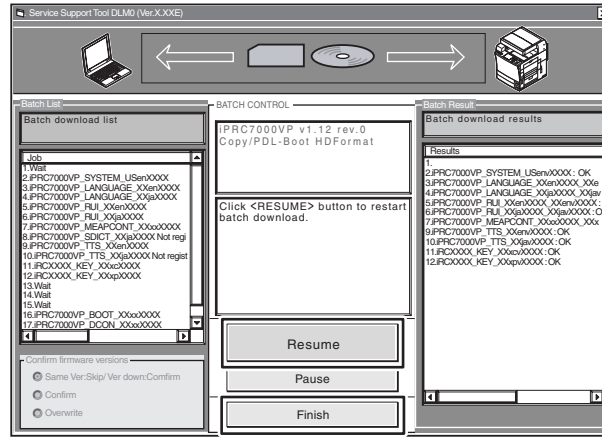
F-19-27

MEMO:

Refer to the Batch Download List screen [1] for the progress of downloading.

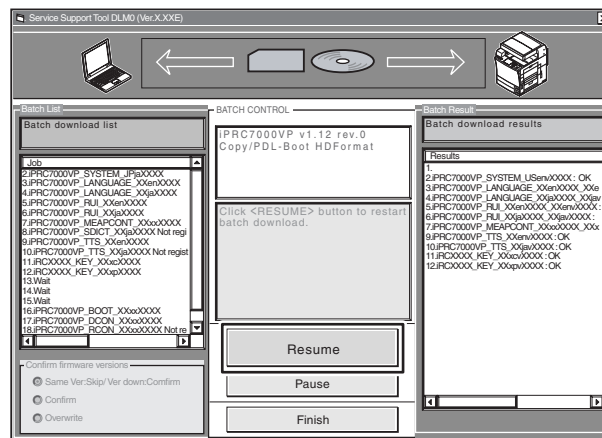


5) The Download End screen appears for the system software files to be stored on the HDD. To stop downloading, click [Finish]; if you want to download BOOT, DCON, and RCON, on the other hand, click [Resume], and go to the next step.



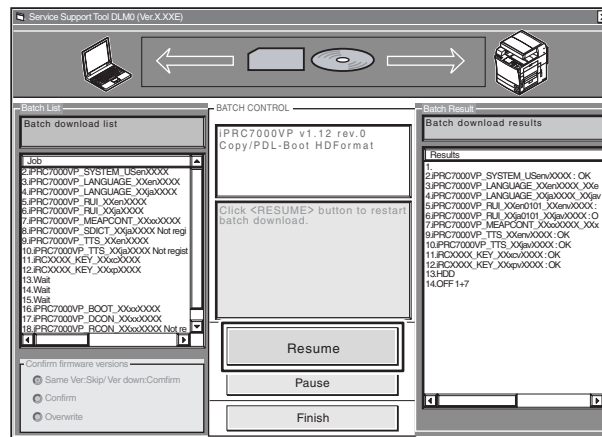
F-19-28

- 6) Turn off the machine's main power switch, and start it up in normal mode (turn on the main power switch while holding down the 1 and 7 keys; then, start download mode in service mode). Click [Resume].



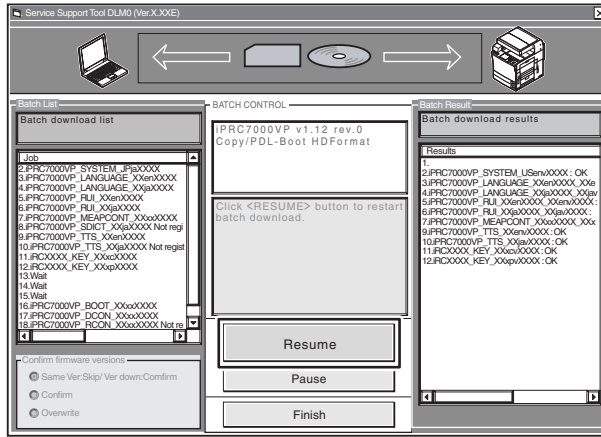
F-19-29

- 7) Click [Resume] to start downloading BOOT, DCON, and RCON.



F-19-30

- 8) Click [OK].



F-19-31

Turning Off the Power

Do not turn off the power while downloading or writing is under way; otherwise, the machine may fail to start up. If such is the case, execute HDD formatting, and download the system software once again.

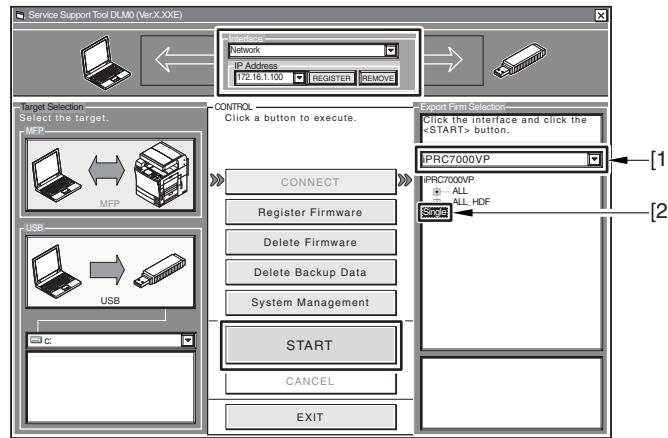
19.4.2 Downloading the System Software (Single)

19.4.2.1 Downloading Procedure

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

Here is the downloading procedure of the SYSTEM as a sample. (Same for other system software)

- 1) Start up the SST.
- 2) Select the model [1] and the type of system software [2] ('Single'); then, check the network settings, and click [START].

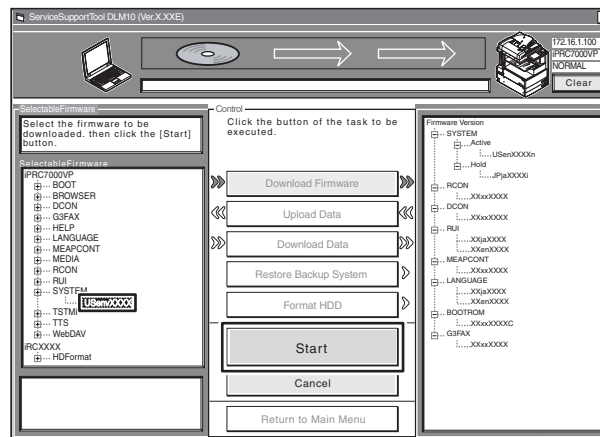


F-19-32



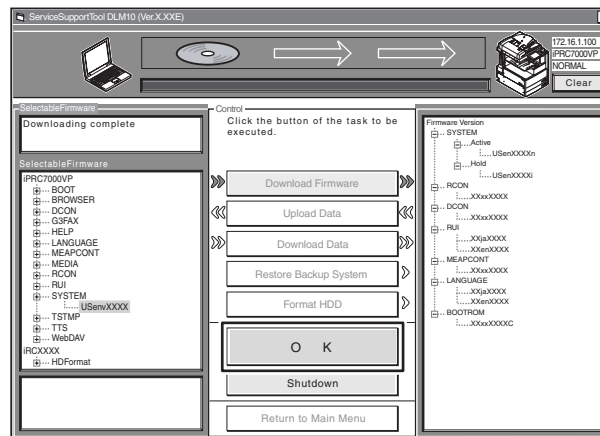
At single downloading of the POD deck/the secondary POD deck/the finisher/the stacker, be sure to select the model name of the machine ('iPRC7000VP') in step 2 'Select the model [1]'.

3) Select the version of the System software you want to download, and click [Start].



F-19-33

4) When downloading has ended, click [OK] to go back to the previous screen.

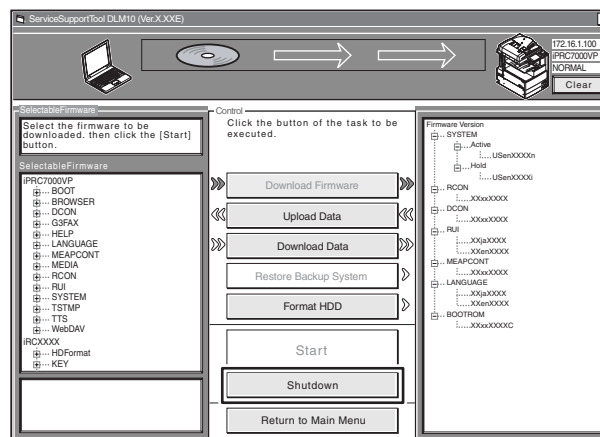


F-19-34

5) Start up the machine. The subsequent procedure differs depending on the download mode.

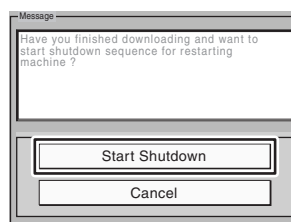
If the machine is in normal mode,

5-1) Click [Shutdown].



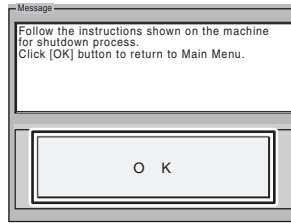
F-19-35

5-2) Click [Start Shutdown] so that the machine starts the shut-down sequence.



F-19-36

5-3) Click [OK], and back on the machine's main power switch. (The main power will go off automatically.)



F-19-37

If the machine is in safe mode.

- 5-1) Click [Start Shutdown] so that the machine starts the shut-down sequence.
- 6) When the machine starts up, it will write the system software to its HDD and flash ROM while showing the progress of writing on the control panel screen. When done, it will indicate a message asking you to turn off and then back on the power. In response, turn off and then back on the main power.

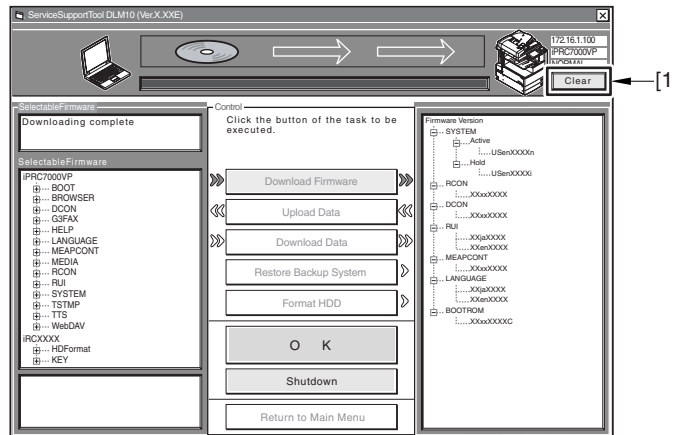
⚠ Turning Off the Power

Do not turn off the machine's power while downloading or writing is under way; otherwise, the machine may fail to start up. If such is the case, execute HDD formatting, and download the system software once again.

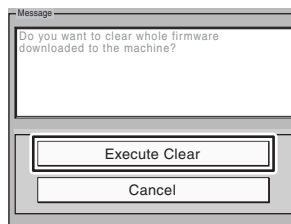
MEMO:

You can remove the downloaded system software before it is written to the HDD or flash ROM. To do so, go through the following before restarting the machine:

- 1) Click [Clear] [1].



- 2) Click [Execute Clear] so that the system software that has been stored in the temporary storage area of the HDD will be removed.



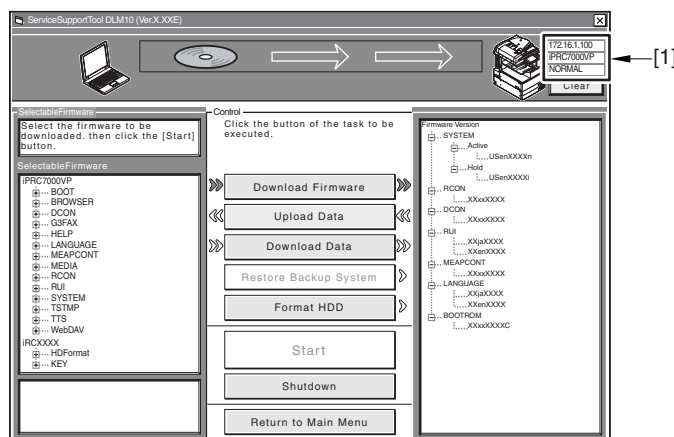
- 3) Click [OK]. Return to the previous page.



MEMO:

After connecting, the following device information [1] is displayed on the right upper area of the SST screen.

- IP address
- Product name
- Download mode



19.5 Uploading and Downloading Backup Data

19.5.1 Outline

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

The file MeapBack is a MEAP application and its data stored on the HDD.

The file SramDCON is data stored in the SRAM of the DC controller PCB.

The file SramRCON is data stored in the EEPROM of the reader controller PCB.

T-19-4

Backup data	File to select for downloading
For R&D	SramImg.bin (do not select this file)
MEAP application	MeapBack.bin (may be uploaded/downloaded in safe mode)
For R&D	Sublog.txt (do not select this file)
Reader controller PCB backup	SramRCON (may be uploaded/downloaded in normal mode)
DC controller PCB backup	SramDCON (may be uploaded/downloaded in normal mode)



Points to Note When Uploading/Downloading MeapBack

If you need to re-install the system software to correct a fault, you may upload MeapBack and then download it back after formatting the HDD (by temporarily putting aside the MEAP application).

- 1) Upload MeapBack.
- 2) Execute HDD all format.
- 3) Re-install the system software.

At this time, be sure that the system software is the same as that existed before formatting the HDD. Otherwise, you will not be able to download MeapBack you have uploaded.

- 4) Download MeapBack.

You will not be able to download MeapBack you have uploaded unless you are downloading it to the machine you have uploaded it from.

MEMO:

- If you are planning to replace the HDD or execute ALL or APL_MEAP formatting, it will be a good idea to upload the MeapBack file in advance and then download after the work by way of temporarily keeping away the MEAP application.

- If you are planning to replace the Reader controller PCB, you can upload the SramRCON file in advance, and download it after replacement so that the service mode and other settings may be inherited.

- If you are planning to replace the DC controller PCB, you can upload the SramDCON file in advance, and download it after replacement so that the service mode and other settings may be inherited.

19.5.2 Uploading Procedure

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

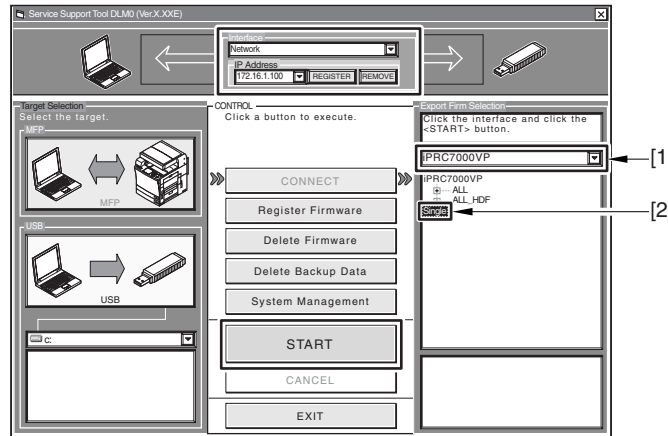
T-19-5



- When uploading the data, do not select 'SramImg.bin' or 'Sublog.txt'.
- The machine must be in normal mode for uploading/downloading SramDCON or SramRCON.
- The machine must be in safe mode when uploading/downloading MeapBack.

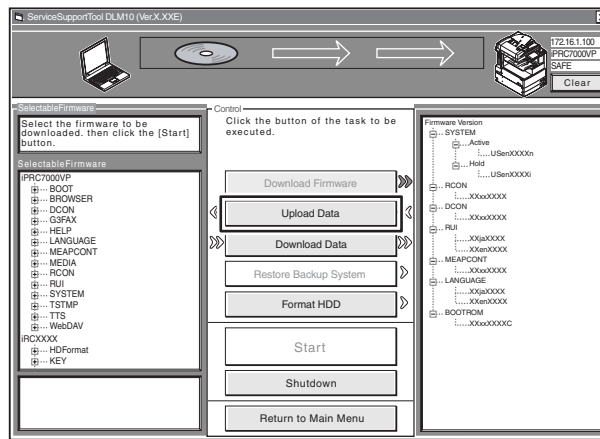
[In the Case of MeapBack]

- 1) Start up the SST.
- 2) Select the model [1] and the type of system software [2] ('Single'); then, check the network settings, and click [START].



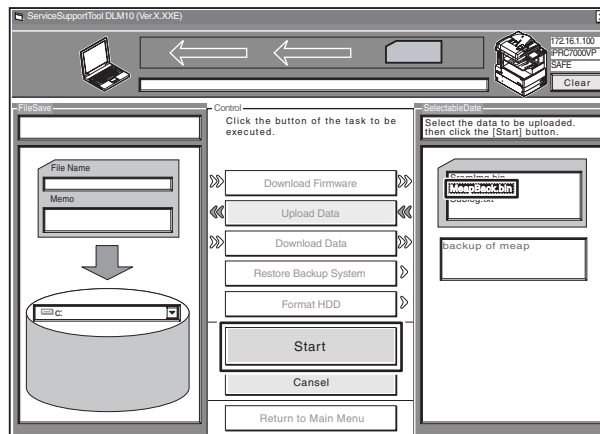
F-19-38

- 3) Click [Upload Data].



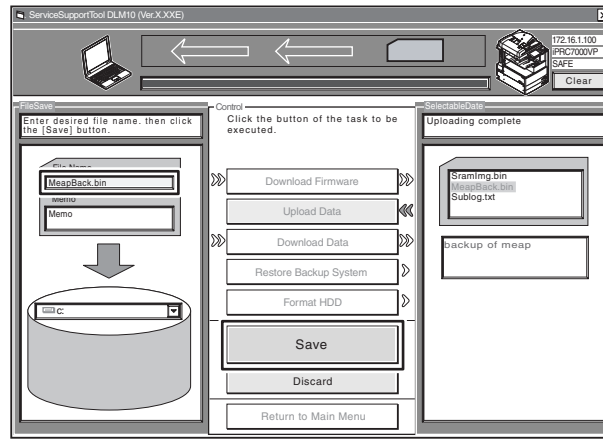
F-19-39

- 4) Select 'MeapBack.bin', and click [Start].



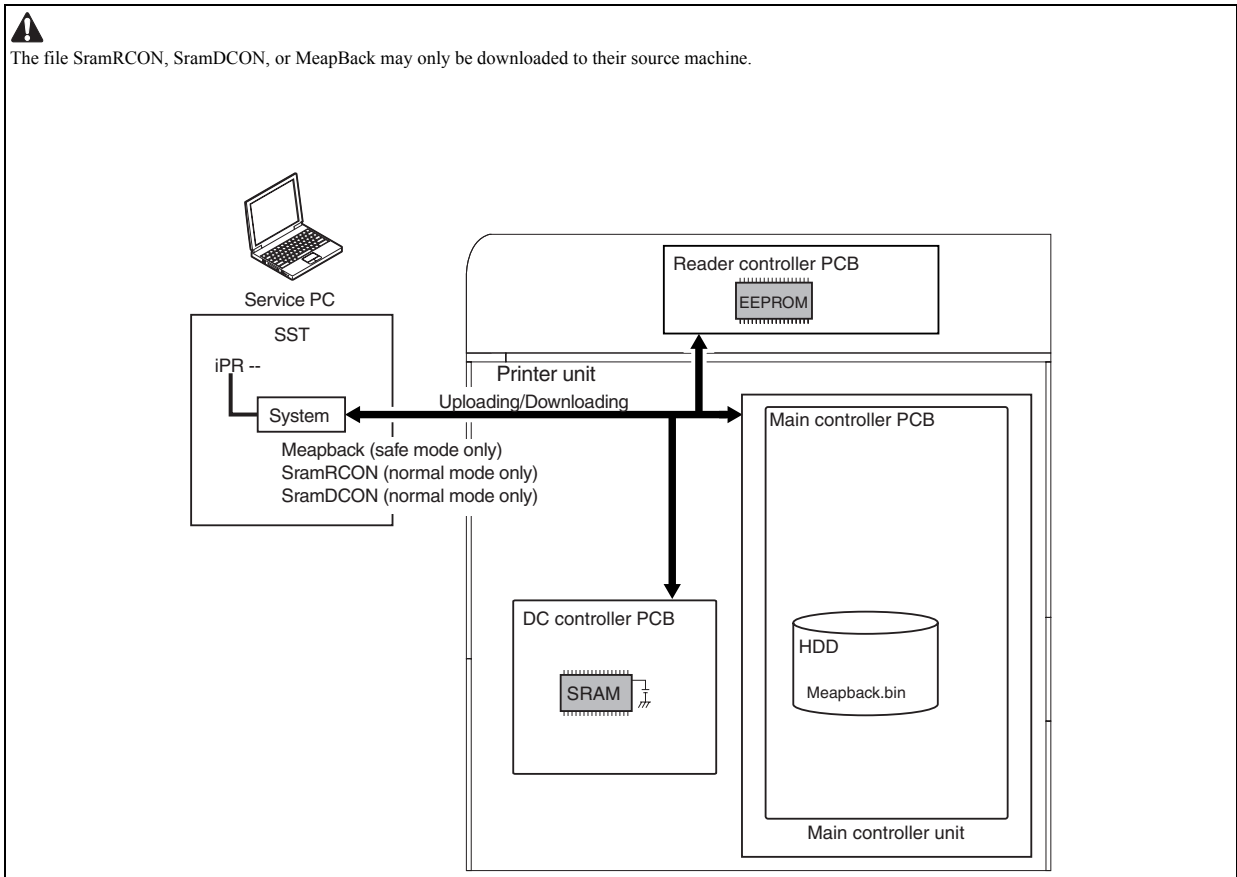
F-19-40

- 5) Type in the name of the file to store and, as necessary, a brief description; then, click [Save].



F-19-41

6) Click [OK].



19.5.3 Downloading Procedure

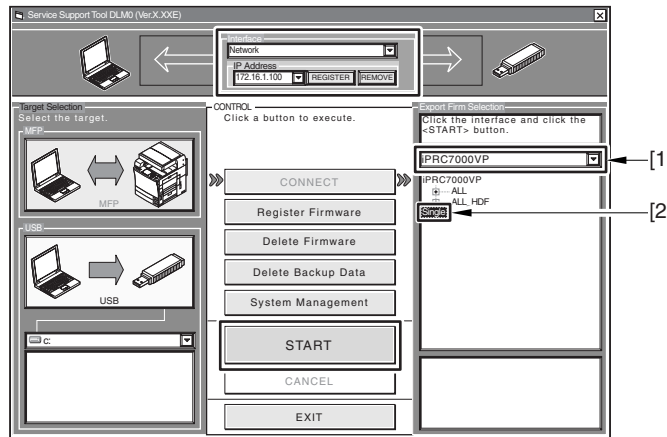
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000



- The machine must be in normal mode for uploading/downloading the file SramDCON or SramRCON.
- The machine must be in safe mode for uploading/downloading the file MeapBack.

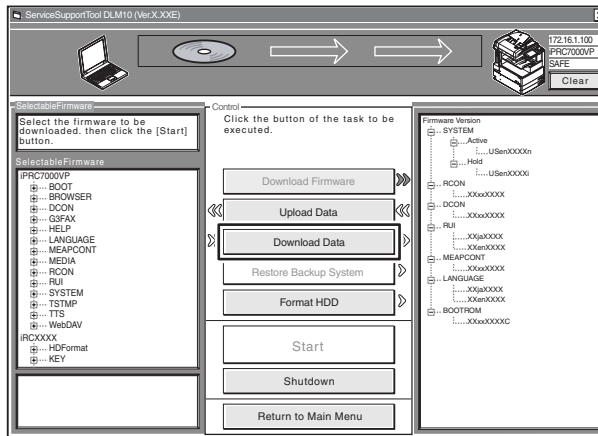
[In the Case of MeapBack]

- 1) Start up the SST.
- 2) Select the model [1] and the type of system software [2] ('Single'); then, check the network settings, and click [START].



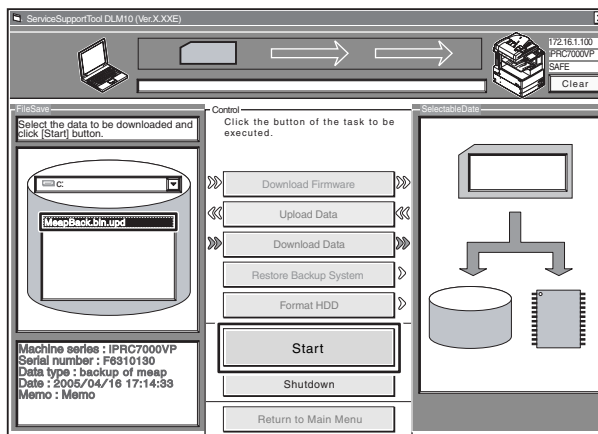
F-19-42

- 3) Click [Download Data].



F-19-43

- 4) Select the data to download, and click [Start].



F-19-44

- 5) When downloading has ended, click [OK] to return to the previous screen.

19.6 Version Upgrade using USB

19.6.1 Overview of Menus and Functions

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

```

[[[[[ download Menu (USB) ]]]]]]]]]
-----
[1]: Upgrade (Auto)
[2]: Upgrade (w Confirmation)
[3]: Upgrade (Overwrite all)
[4]: Format HDD
[5]: Backup
[6]: Restore former version
[7]: Clear downloaded files

[Stop]:Shutdown

```

F-19-45

Downloading the System Software

[1]: Upgrade (AUTO)

Use it to download/write the system software. (auto)

[2]: Upgrade (w Confirmation)

Use it to download the system software. (Confirmation execution when version is downed the same version)

[3]: Upgrade (Overwrite all)

Use it to download the system software. (all overwrite)

Formatting the HDD (only in safe mode)

[4]: Format HDD (in the presence of BOOTDEV)

Use it to format the HDD for BOOTDEV partition.

[4]: Format HDD (ALL) (in the absence of BOOTDEV)

Use it to format the HDD for full partition.

Other Functions

[5]: Backup

Do not use it. (for use by R&D only)

[6]: Restore former version (in the presence of a backup of the system software)

Use it to restore the backup of the system software.

[7]: Clear downloaded files

Use it to remove the system software immediately before downloading (before writing).

[Stop]: Shutdown (in normal mode)

Use it to execute shut-down instructions.

19.6.2 Points to Note

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

Turning Off the Power

Do not turn off the machine while downloading or writing is under way. Doing so could prevent the machine from starting up. If this is the case, execute HDD formatting (menu [4]), and download the system software. If the machine fails to start up because of failed downloading of BOOT the DIMM ROM must be replaced.

Downgrading

Be sure that the system software in the USB device is of the latest version.

The following files of the system software do not permit collection of version information. As such, they necessarily overwrite the system software on the HDD:

- KEY (in both normal and safe mode)
- TTS (in both normal and safe mode)
- BROWSER (in both normal and safe mode)
- WebDAV (in both normal and safe mode)
- TSTAMP (in both normal and safe mode)
- HELP (in both normal and safe mode)
- DCON (in safe mode only)
- RCON (in safe mode only)

The following is recommended for normal downloading (i.e., downloading of the system software, not after HDD replacement or formatting):

download mode: normal

download menu: [1]: Upgrade (Auto)

Turning Off the Power After Normal Mode

When ending download mode, be sure to execute the HDD shut-down instructions. On the Initial Menu screen, press [stop] > [0]; then, go through the shut-down instructions, and turn off the main power switch.

```

[[[[[ download Menu (USB) ]]]]]]]]]
-----
[1]: Upgrade (Auto)
[2]: Upgrade (w Confirmation)
[3]: Upgrade (Overwrite all)
[4]: Format HDD
[5]: Backup
[6]: Restore former version
[7]: Clear downloaded files

[Stop]:Shutdown

/ [Shutdown] Execute?/
- (OK):0 / (CANCEL):The other keys -

```



IF opening/closing the decurler while the USB memory has been connected to the host machine, the decurler may hit the USB memory. Thus, be sure to remove the USB memory before moving to next work.

19.6.3 Downloading/Writing the System Software (auto)

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

[1]: Upgrade (AUTO)

The system software on the HDD and that in the USB device are compared. If the latter is new, it will be downloaded to the temporary storage area of the HDD. At the end of the downloading, the machine restarts on its own to write the downloaded system software to the system area of the HDD and the flash ROM.

<Procedure>

- 1) If the machine is on, go through the shut-down instructions appearing on the control panel screen so that the main power switch may be turned off. (The main power will go off automatically.)
- 2) Connect the USB device to the sub port.
- 3) Put the machine in download mode (normal or safe).
- 4) Go through the instructions on the control panel, and press the appropriate key.
[1] -> [0]: execute download / other than [0]: go back to Menu screen

```
[[[[[ download Menu (USB) ]]]]]]]]]]]
```

```
-----
[1]: Upgrade (Auto)
[2]: Upgrade (w Confirmation)
[3]: Upgrade (Overwrite all)
[4]: Format HDD
[5]: Backup
[6]: Restore former version
[7]: Clear downloaded files

[Stop]:Shutdown
```

F-19-46

- 5) While downloading is under way, the control panel screen shows its progress. At the end of the downloading, the machine restarts on its own to start writing to the system area of the HDD or the flash ROM.
- Screen Showing the Progress of Downloading

```
////Copying files from USB-dev.///
[iPC7000V-XXenXXXX-5822-TTS.lst] OK.
[iRCXXXX-XXxcXXXX-1776-KEY.dsh] OK.
[iRCXXXX-XXxcXXXX-F4D1-KEY.dat] OK.
[iRCXXXX-XXxcXXXX-405C-KEY.lst] OK.
[iRCXXXX-XXxpXXXX-17AC-KEY.dsh] OK.
[iRCXXXX-XXxpXXXX-96D0-KEY.dat] OK.
[iRCXXXX-XXxpXXXX-0564-KEY.lst] OK.
[iPC7000V-XXxxXXXX-5C64-DCON.ird] OK.
[iPC7000V-XXxxXXXX-B1B1-DCON.prg] OK.
[iPC7000V-XXxxXXXX-DCON.ift] OK.
File transfer has been completed.
```

- Screen Showing the Progress of Writing to the HDD

```
<<<<<<<<< download-shell >>>>>>>>
[KEY xp]    ...Upgrading complete
[KEY xc]    ...Upgrading complete
[TTS en]    ...Writing to HDD XX%
```

F-19-47

- 6) At the end of writing to the HDD, a message will appear asking you to turn off and then back on the power. Turn off the power, remove the USB device, and turn the power back on.

```
<<<<<<<<< download-shell >>>>>>>>
[KEY xp]    ...Upgrading complete
[KEY xc]    ...Upgrading complete
[TTS en]    ...Upgrading complete
+++ Switch OFF the power then ON. +++
```

F-19-48

19.6.4 Downloading the System Software (Confirmation execution when version is downed the same version)

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

[2]: Upgrade (w Confirmation)

The system software on the HDD is compared against that in the USB device. Those system files that are newer will then be downloaded to the temporary storage area of the HDD. If the system software in the USB is of the same or older version, a message will appear on the screen, offering a choice. Unlike menu item [1], the machine will not restart on its own. When you turn it off and then back on manually, it will start to write the system software when it starts up.

<Procedure>

- 1) If the machine is on, go through the shut-down instructions appearing on the control panel screen so that the main power switch may be turned off. (The main power will go off automatically.)
- 2) Connect the USB device to the USB port.
- 3) Put the machine in download mode (normal or safe).
- 4) Go through the instructions indicated on the control panel, and press the appropriate key.
 - [2] -> [0]: execute download / other than [0]: go back to Menu screen

```

[[[[[ download Menu (USB) ]]]]]]]]]]
-----
[1]: Upgrade (Auto)
[2]: Upgrade (w Confirmation)
[3]: Upgrade (Overwrite all)
[4]: Format HDD
[5]: Backup
[6]: Restore former version
[7]: Clear downloaded files

/[2] has been selected. Execute?/
- (OK):0 / (CANCEL):The other keys -

```

F-19-49

MEMO:

If the system software in the USB device is found to be of the same or older version, a message will appear asking you if you want to overwrite. Go through the instructions on the control panel, and press the appropriate key.

[0]: overwrite / other than [0]: do not overwrite

MEMO:

If the system software in the USB device is found to be of the same or older version, a message will appear asking you if you want to overwrite. Go through the instructions on the control panel, and press the appropriate key.

[0]: overwrite / other than [0]: do not overwrite

```

////Copying files from USB-dev.///
[Warning] Same version or old version.
-----
[BOOT XXxx]... Same. OVERWRITE?
-- (YES):0 / (NO):The other keys--

```

- 5) While downloading is under way, the control panel screen shows its progress. At the end of downloading, a message will appear asking you to press a key. Press the appropriate key. If the machine is in normal mode, it starts the shut-down instructions.

```

////Copying files from USB-dev.///
[iPC7000V-XXenXXXX-5822-TTS.lst] OK.
[iRCXXX-XXxcXXX-1776-KEY.dsh] OK.
[iRCXXX-XXxcXXX-F4D1-KEY.dat] OK.
[iRCXXX-XXxcXXX-405C-KEY.lst] OK.
[iRCXXX-XXxpXXX-17AC-KEY.dsh] OK.
[iRCXXX-XXxpXXX-96D0-KEY.dat] OK.
[iRCXXX-XXxpXXX-0564-KEY.lst] OK.
[iPC7000V-XXxxXXX-5C64-DCON.ird] OK.
[iPC7000V-XXxxXXX-B1B1-DCON.prg] OK.
[iPC7000V-XXxxXXX-DCON.ift] OK.
File transfer has been completed.

---Please hit any key---

```

F-19-50

- 6) When a message appears asking you to turn off the power, turn off the main power switch, remove the USB device, and turn on the main power switch.
 7) Upon start-up, the machine starts to write the system software to the system area of the HDD or the flash ROM. At the end of writing to the HDD, a message will appear asking you to turn off and then back on the power. Turn off and then back on the main power switch.

```
<<<<<<<<< download-shell >>>>>>>>
[KEY xp]      ...Upgrading complete
[KEY xc]      ...Upgrading complete
[TTS en]      ...Upgrading complete
+++ Switch OFF the power then ON. +++
```

F-19-51

19.6.5 Downloading the System Software (all overwriting)

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

[3]: Upgrade (Overwrite all)

The system software in the USB device will overwrite the software on the HDD regardless of the version of the latter. Unlike menu item [1], however, the machine will not restart on its own at the end of downloading. When the power is turned off and then back on manually, the machine starts writing the system software.

<Procedure>

- 1) If the machine is on, go through the shut-down instructions appearing on the control panel screen so that the main power switch may be turned off. (The main power will go off automatically.)
- 2) Connect the USB device to the USB port.
- 3) Put the machine in download mode (normal or safe).
- 4) Go through the instructions on the control panel, and press the appropriate key.
 [3] -> [0]: execute download / other than [0]: go back to Menu screen

```
[[[[[ download Menu (USB) ]]]]]]]]]]
-----
[1]: Upgrade (Auto)
[2]: Upgrade (w Confirmation)
[3]: Upgrade (Overwrite all)
[4]: Format HDD
[5]: Backup
[6]: Restore former version
[7]: Clear downloaded files

/[3] has been selected. Execute?/
- (OK):0 / (CANCEL):The other keys -
```

F-19-52

- 5) While downloading is under way, the control panel screen shows its progress. At the end of downloading, a message will appear asking you to press a key. Press the appropriate key. If the machine is in normal mode, the shut-down sequence will start.

```
////Copying files from USB-dev.////
[iPC7000V-XXenXXX-5822-TTS.lst] OK.
[iRCXXX-XXxcXXX-1776-KEY.dsh] OK.
[iRCXXX-XXxcXXX-F4D1-KEY.dat] OK.
[iRCXXX-XXxcXXX-405C-KEY.lst] OK.
[iRCXXX-XXxpXXX-17AC-KEY.dsh] OK.
[iRCXXX-XXxpXXX-96D0-KEY.dat] OK.
[iRCXXX-XXxpXXX-0564-KEY.lst] OK.
[iPC7000V-XXxxXXX-5C64-DCON.ird] OK.
[iPC7000V-XXxxXXX-B1B1-DCON.prg] OK.
[iPC7000V-XXxxXXX-DCON.ift] OK.
File transfer has been completed.

---Please hit any key---
```

F-19-53

- 6) When a message appears asking you to turn off the power, turn off the main power, remove the USB device, and turn the main power switch back on.
- 7) Upon start-up, the machine starts writing the system software to the system area of the HDD or the flash ROM. At the end of writing, a message will appear asking you to turn off and then back on the power. Turn off and then on the main switch.

```

<<<<<<<<< download-shell >>>>>>>>
[KEY xp]      ... Upgrading complete
[KEY xc]      ... Upgrading complete
[TTS en]      ... Upgrading complete
+++ Switch OFF the power then ON. +++
    
```

F-19-54

19.6.6 Formatting the HDD

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000



This function is available only when the machine is in safe mode.

- [4]: **Format HDD** (in the presence of BOOTDEV)
Use it to format the HDD for BOOTDEV partition.
- [4]: **Format HDD (ALL)** (in the absence of BOOTDEV, as when replacing with new HDD)
Use it to format the HDD for full partition.

<Procedure>
Go through the following to format the HDD for BOOTDEV partition:

- 1) If the machine is on, go through the shut-down instructions appearing on the control panel screen so that the main power switch may be turned off. (The main power will go off automatically.)
- 2) Connect the USB device to the USB port.
- 3) Start up the machine in safe mode.
- 4) Follow the instructions on the control panel, and press the appropriate key.
[4] -> [0]: go to **Partition Selection screen** / other that [0]: go back to Menu screen

```

[[[[[ download Menu (USB) ]]]]]]]]]]]
-----
[1]: Upgrade (Auto)
[2]: Upgrade (w Confirmation)
[3]: Upgrade (Overwrite all)
[4]: Format HDD
[5]: Backup
[6]: Restore former version
[7]: Clear downloaded files

/[4] has been selected. Execute?/
- (OK):0 / (CANCEL):The other keys -
    
```

F-19-55

- 5) Go through the instructions on the control panel, and press the appropriate key.
[1] -> [0]: **execute BOOTDEV formatting** / other than [0]: go back to Menu screen
[C]: go back to Menu screen

```

[[[[[ Format HDD Manu (USB) ]]]]]]]]]]]
-----
[1]: /BOOTDEV
[C]: Return to Main Menu

/[1] has been selected. Execute?/
- (OK):0 / (CANCEL):The other keys -
    
```

F-19-56

6) At the end of formatting, a message will appear asking you to press a key. Press any key to go back to the Men screen.

```

[[[[[ Format HDD Manu (USB) ]]]]]]]]]]]
-----
[1]: /BOOTDEV
[C]: Return to Main Menu

/[1] has been selected. Execute?/
- (OK):0 / (CANCEL):The other keys -

Formatting /BOOTDEV ... OK
///Formatting HDD ... Complete///

---Please hit any key---

```

F-19-57

7) Start downloading the system software. For instructions, see "Downloading the System Software."

19.6.7 Other Functions

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

[5]: Backup



This function is for R&D purposes only. Do not use it.

[6]: Restore former version (in the presence of backup of system software)

Use it to restore the backup of the system software while saving the system software that is current as a backup.

<Procedure>

- 1) If the machine is on, go through the shut-down instructions appearing on the control panel screen so that the main power switch may be turned off. (The main power will go off automatically.)
- 2) Connect the USB device to the USB port.
- 3) Put the machine in download mode (normal or safe).
- 4) Go through the instructions on the control panel, and press the appropriate key.
 - [6] -> [0]: initialize / other than [0]: go back to Menu screen
 After execution, a message will appear asking you to turn off and then on the power.

```

[[[[[ download Menu (USB) ]]]]]]]]]]]
-----
[1]: Upgrade (Auto)
[2]: Upgrade (w Confirmation)
[3]: Upgrade (Overwrite all)
[4]: Format HDD
[5]: Backup
[6]: Restore former version
[7]: Clear downloaded files

/[6] has been selected. Execute?/
- (OK):0 / (CANCEL):The other keys -
Restore former version...Complete.
+++ Switch OFF the power then ON. +++

```

F-19-58

5) Turn off the main power switch, remove the USB memory, and turn on the main power switch.

[7]: Clear downloaded files

Use it to remove the system software files that have been saved in the temporary storage area of the HDD. Use it if you want to remove the files without writing them to the HDD after downloading (menu [2] and [3]).

<Procedure>

- 1) The power supply is turned off after the download of the system software by menu [2] or [3] is completed, and it starts in a safe mode with the USB memory connected.
- 2) Go through the instructions on the control panel, and press an appropriate key.
 - [7] -> [0]: execute / other than [0]: go back to Menu screen
 Upon execution, the Menu screen will return.


```
[[[[[ download Menu (USB) ]]]]]]]]]]
-----
```

```
[1]: Upgrade (Auto)
[2]: Upgrade (w Confirmation)
[3]: Upgrade (Overwrite all)
[4]: Format HDD
[5]: Backup
[6]: Restore former version
[7]: Clear downloaded files
```

```
/[7] has been selected. Execute?/
- (OK):0 / (CANCEL):The other keys -
```

F-19-59

[Stop]: Shutdown (in normal mode only)

Use it to start up the shut-down sequence.

<Procedure>

1) Go through the instructions on the control panel, and press an appropriate key.

[Stop] -> **[0]**: execute / other than **[0]**: go to Menu screen

The shut-down sequence will be executed, and a message will appear asking you to turn off the power.

```
[[[[[ download Menu (USB) ]]]]]]]]]]
-----
```

```
[1]: Upgrade (Auto)
[2]: Upgrade (w Confirmation)
[3]: Upgrade (Overwrite all)
[4]: Format HDD
[5]: Backup
[6]: Restore former version
[7]: Clear downloaded files
```

```
[Stop]:Shutdown
```

```
/ [Shutdown] Execute?/
- (OK):0 / (CANCEL):The other keys -
```

F-19-60

2) Turn off the main power switch, and remove the USB device.

Chapter 20 Service Tools

Contents

20.1 Service Tools	20-1
20.1.1 Special Tools	20-1
20.1.2 Solvents and Oils.....	20-2

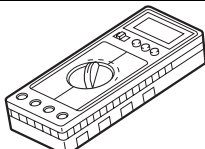

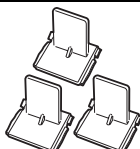


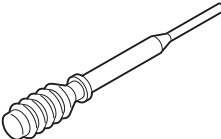
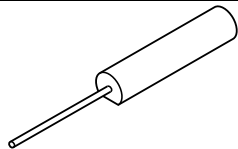
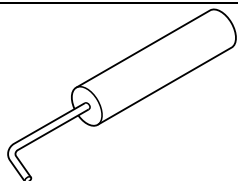
20.1 Service Tools

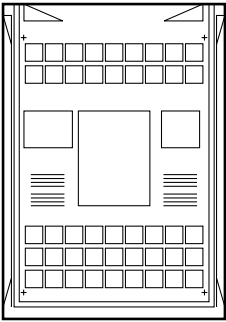
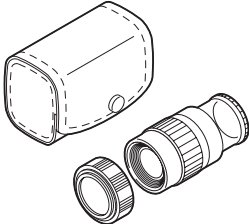
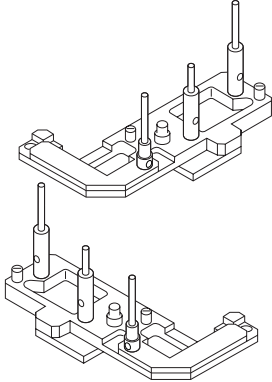
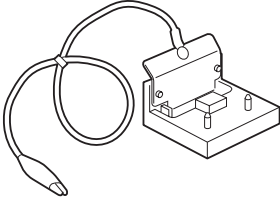
20.1.1 Special Tools

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

In addition to the standard tools set, the following special tools are required when servicing the machine:

T-20-1

Tool name	Tool No.	Ctgr	Appearance	Remarks
Digital multimeter	FY9-2002	A		Use for electrical checks; for adjustment of laser power in combination with the laser power checker.
Switch ON tool	FC7-9708	-		To switch ON the drum heater switch and the front cover switch. - This is not a service tool. - 3 of this are enclosed at shipment of the host machine.
Cleaning tool (upper)	FL2-9289	-		To clean the blocking sheet of the developing assembly - This is not a service tool. - 3 of this are enclosed at shipment of the host machine.
Cleaning tool (lower)	FL2-9290	-		To clean the developing cylinder lower cover and drum patch sensor shutter - This is not a service tool. - 3 of this are enclosed at shipment of the host machine.
Toner dispersing sheet	-	-		To disperse the coagulated toner between developing S-B - This is not a service tool. - 3 of this are enclosed at shipment of the host machine.
Dropper	FY9-1030	B		Dropper for applying fixing belt oil
Tester extension pin	FY9-3038	A		Used as a probe extension when making electrical checks.
Tester extension pin (L-shaped)	FY9-3039	A		Used as a probe extension when making electrical checks.

Tool name	Tool No.	Ctgr	Appearance	Remarks
CA7 test Sheet	FY9-9390	A		Used for adjusting/checking images.
Loupe	CK-0056	B		Used for checking images.
Mirror positioning tool	FY9-3009-040	B		Used for positioning mirror mounts.
Electrode for checking potential sensor	FY9-3057	B		Surface potential sensor for zero-level check

Reference:**Ctgr**

- A: Must be kept by each service engineer.
 B: Must be kept by each group of about five engineers.
 C: Must be kept by each workshop.

20.1.2 Solvents and Oils

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

T-20-2

Item	Uses	Composition	Remarks
Alcohol	Cleaning; e.g., glass, plastic, rubber; external covers.	-Fluoride-family hydrocarbon -Alcohol -Surface activating -Water	-Do not bring near fire. -Procure locally. -Substitute: IPA(isopropy alcohol)

Item	Uses	Composition	Remarks
Solvent	Cleaning; e.g., metal; oil or toner stain.	-Fluoride-family hydrocarbon -Chlorine-family hydrocarbon -Alcohol	-Do not bring near fire. -Procure locally. -Substitute: MEK
Heat-resisting grease	Lubrication; e.g., fixing drive areas.	-Mineral oil-family lithium soap -Molybdenum disulfide	-MO-138S -Tool No: CK-0427 (500 g/can)
Lubricating oil		-Mineral oil (paraffin-family)	-Tool No: CK-0524 (100 cc)
Lubricating oil	Lubrication; e.g., drive areas, friction areas.	-Silicone oil	-Tool No: CK-0551 (20 g)
Lubricating oil (EM-50L)	Lubrication; e.g., gears.	-Special oil -Special solid lubricating agent -Lithium soap	-Tool No: HY9-0007
Lubricating oil	Lubrication; e.g., scanner rail.	-Silicone oil	-Tool No: FY9-6011 (50 cc)
Conducting grease	Lubrication; e.g., edge of secondary transfer roller, drum heater sliding area.	-Fluorine poly wthyl -Polytetra fluorune ethylene	-Tool No: FY9-6008 (75 g)

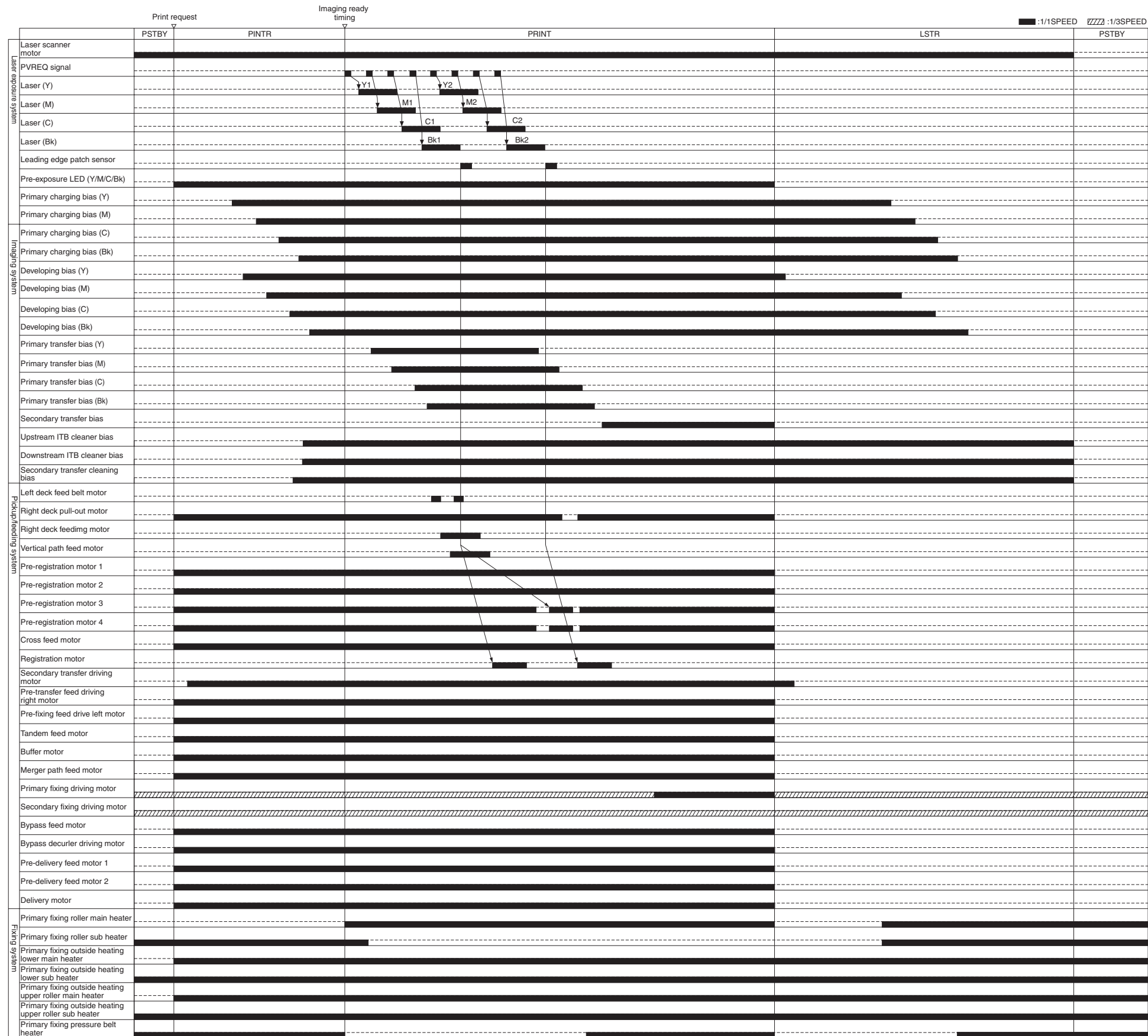
APPENDIX

1 General Timing Chart

Full color

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

- A4, plain paper (single-sided); 2 full-color prints; right deck



2 General Circuit Diagram

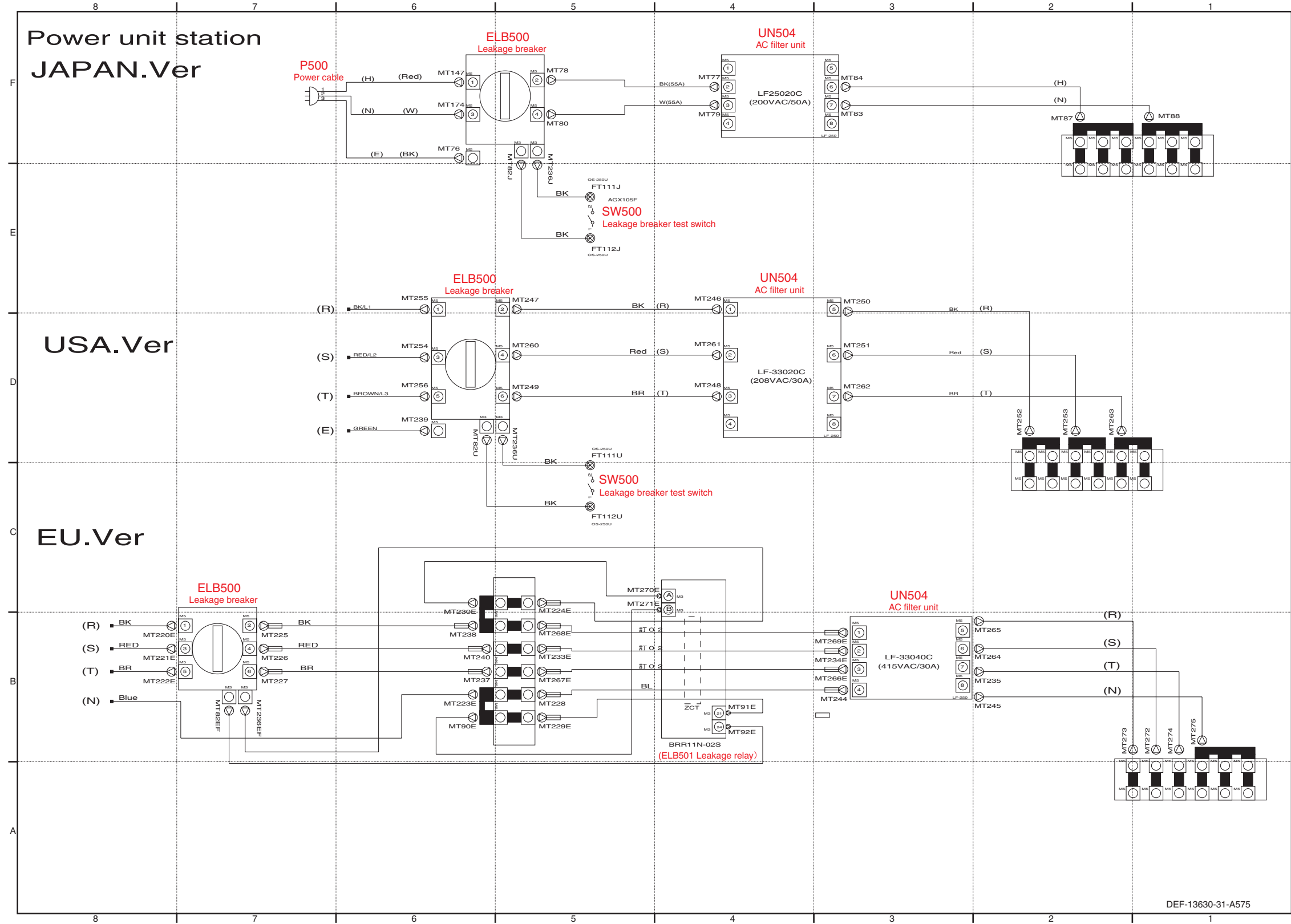
Signal Names

Definition of the signal (abbreviation)

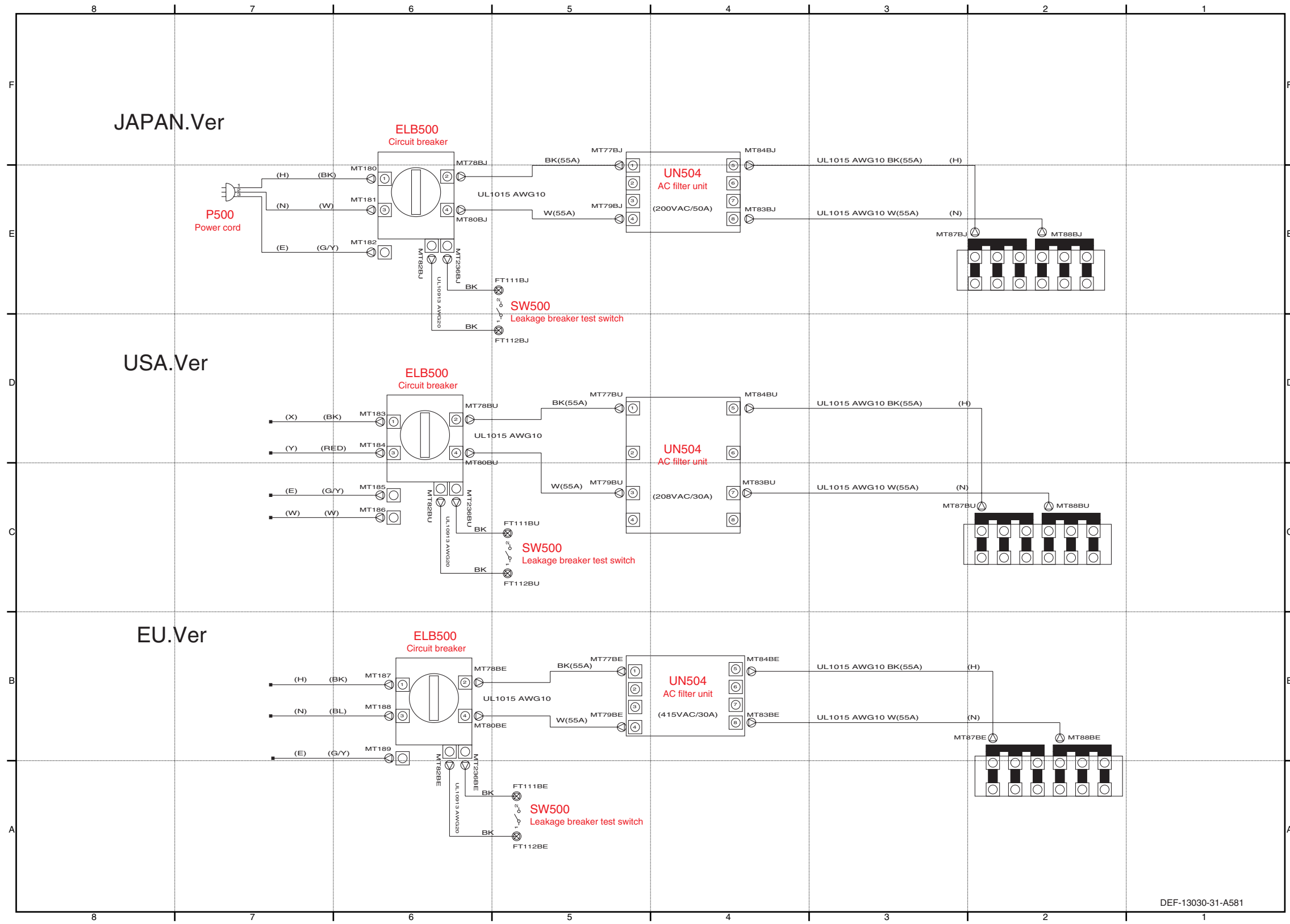
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000

T-2-1

Abbreviation	Description	Abbreviation	Description
ADC	Analog digital converter	JOIN	Joint
ANA, ANLG	Analog	L	Left
CCW	Counterclockwise	LENG	Length
CLK, CK	Clock	MINUS-SET	Negative bias select
CNCT	Connect	MTR	Motor
CONT_N	Negative bias setting	N.C.	No connect
CONT_P	Positive bias setting	NC	No contact
CRG	toner container	OHP	Transparency
CRNT_SEL	Current mode select	OUT_I	Current monitor
CRNTCONT	Current setting	OUT_V	Voltage monitor
CS	Chip select	PAP	Paper
CTRL	Control	P-KIT	Process unit
CW	Clockwise	PLUS_SEL	Positive bias select
DCON	DC controller	PRIM	Primary transfer
DECK-LITE	Side paper deck	REF	Reference
DEV	Developing	REGI	Regist
DIGI	Digital	RFS	Refresh roller
DLVY	Delivery	RVS	Reversing
DRV	Drive, Driver PCB	SEL	Select
DUP	Duplex	SHOSO	Cross feed
ENB	Enable	SIG	Signal
ENC	Encoder	SNS	Sensor
ERR	Error detect	TEMP	Temperature
GND	Grounding	THERMO-PILE	Drum surface temperature sensor
HP	Home position	TR1	Primary transfer
HUM	Humidity	TR2	Secondary transfer
I	Current	VPASS	Vertical path
JOG	Jogging	-	-

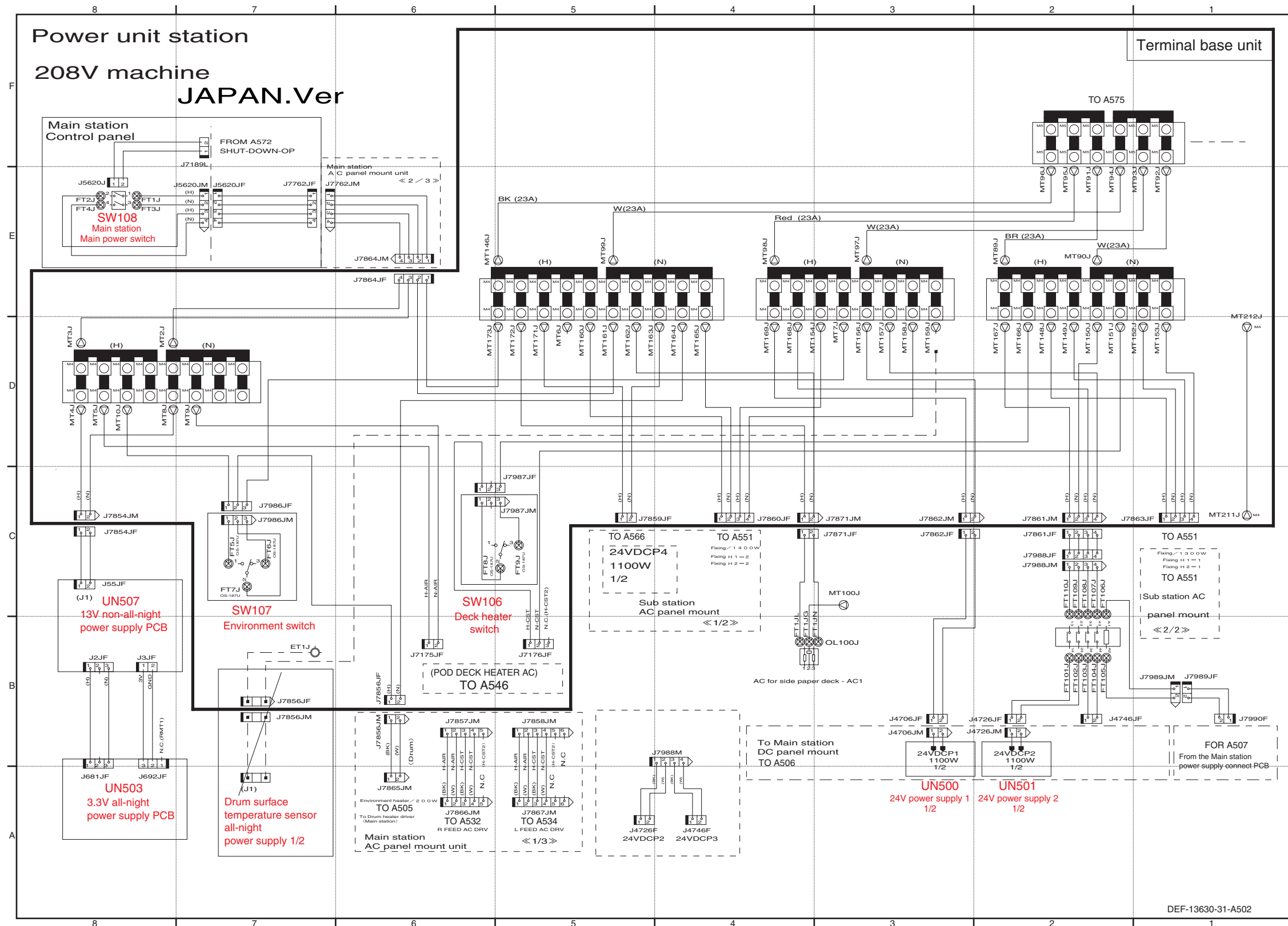


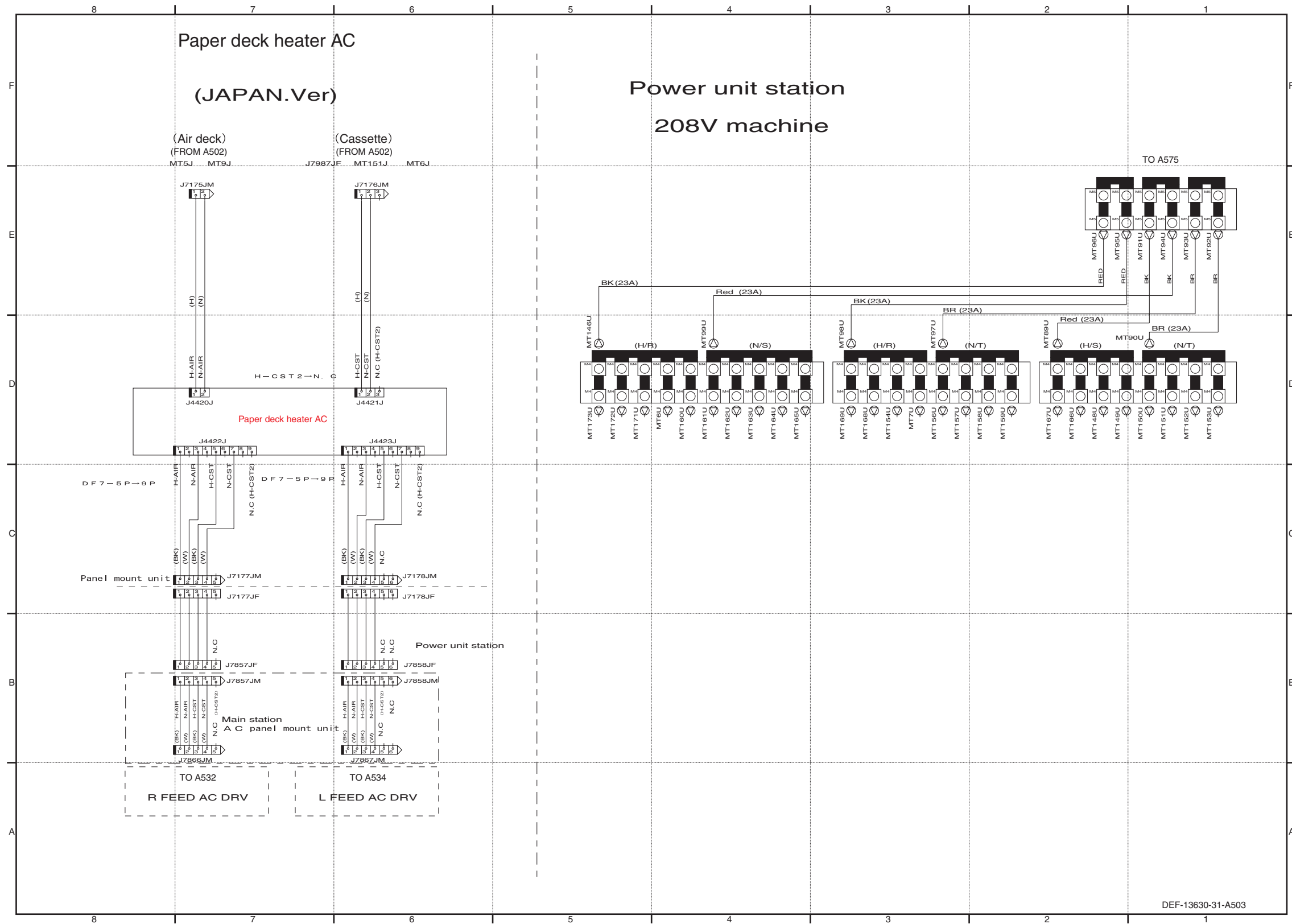
F-2-1



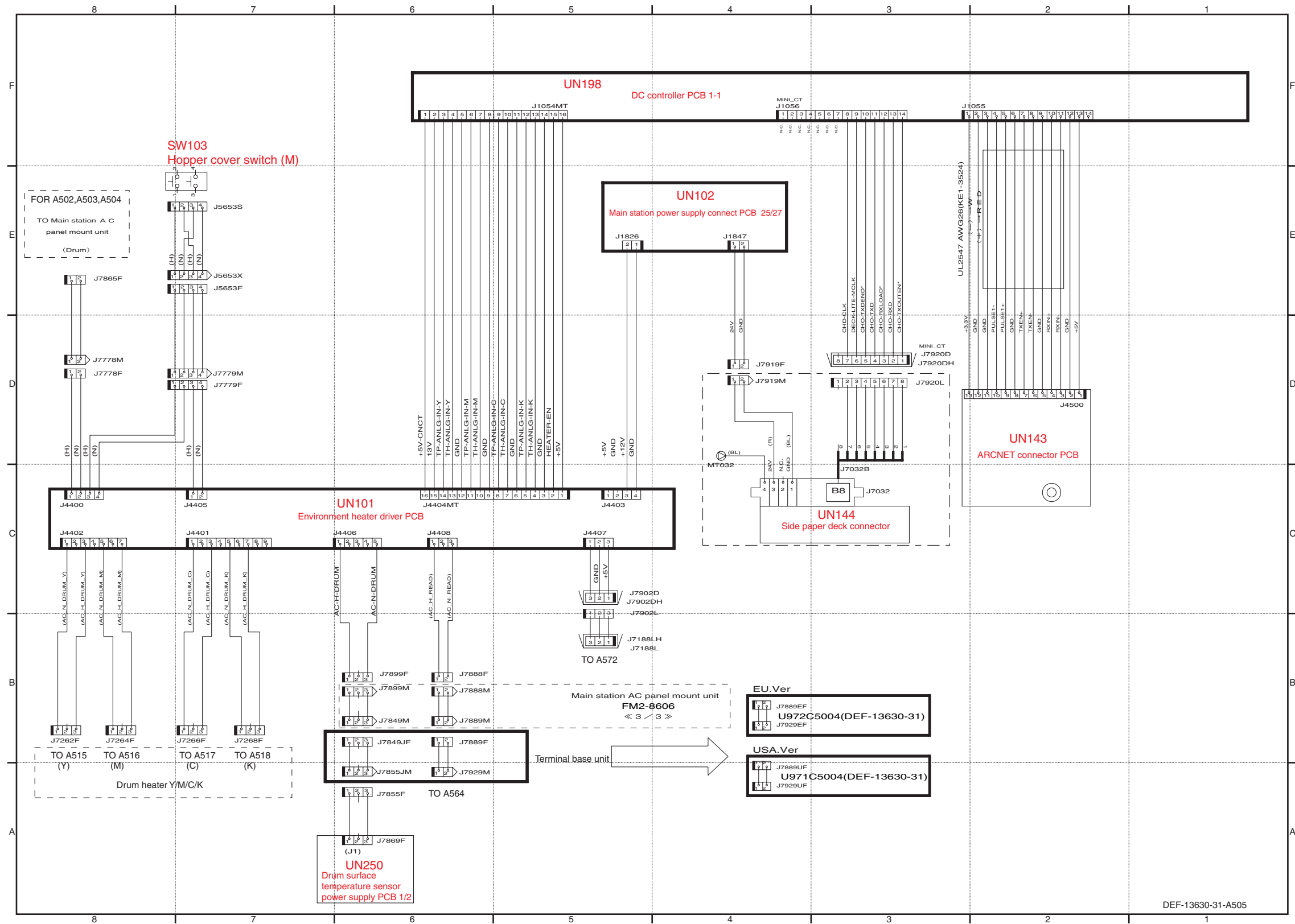
DEF-13030-31-A581

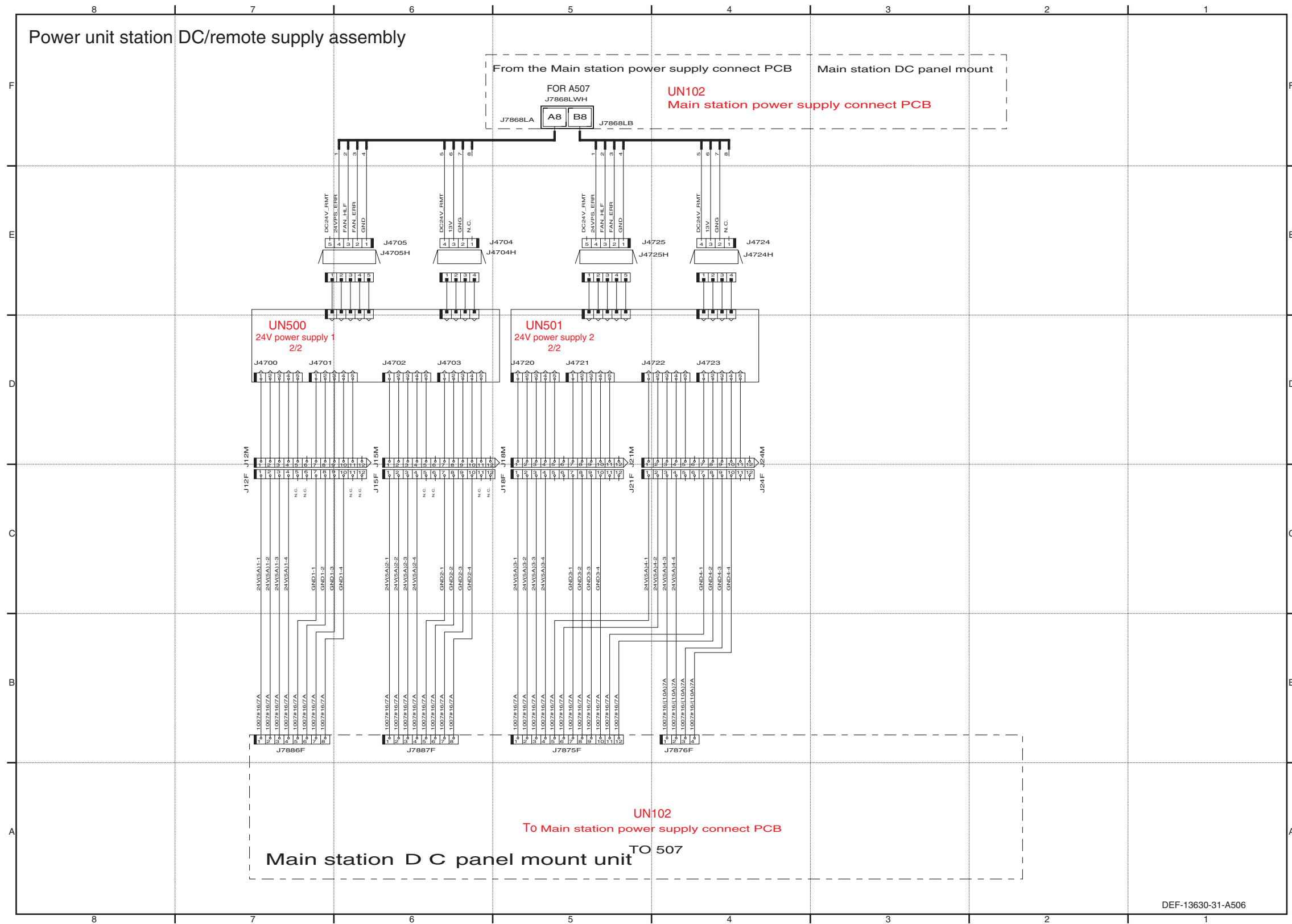
F-2-2

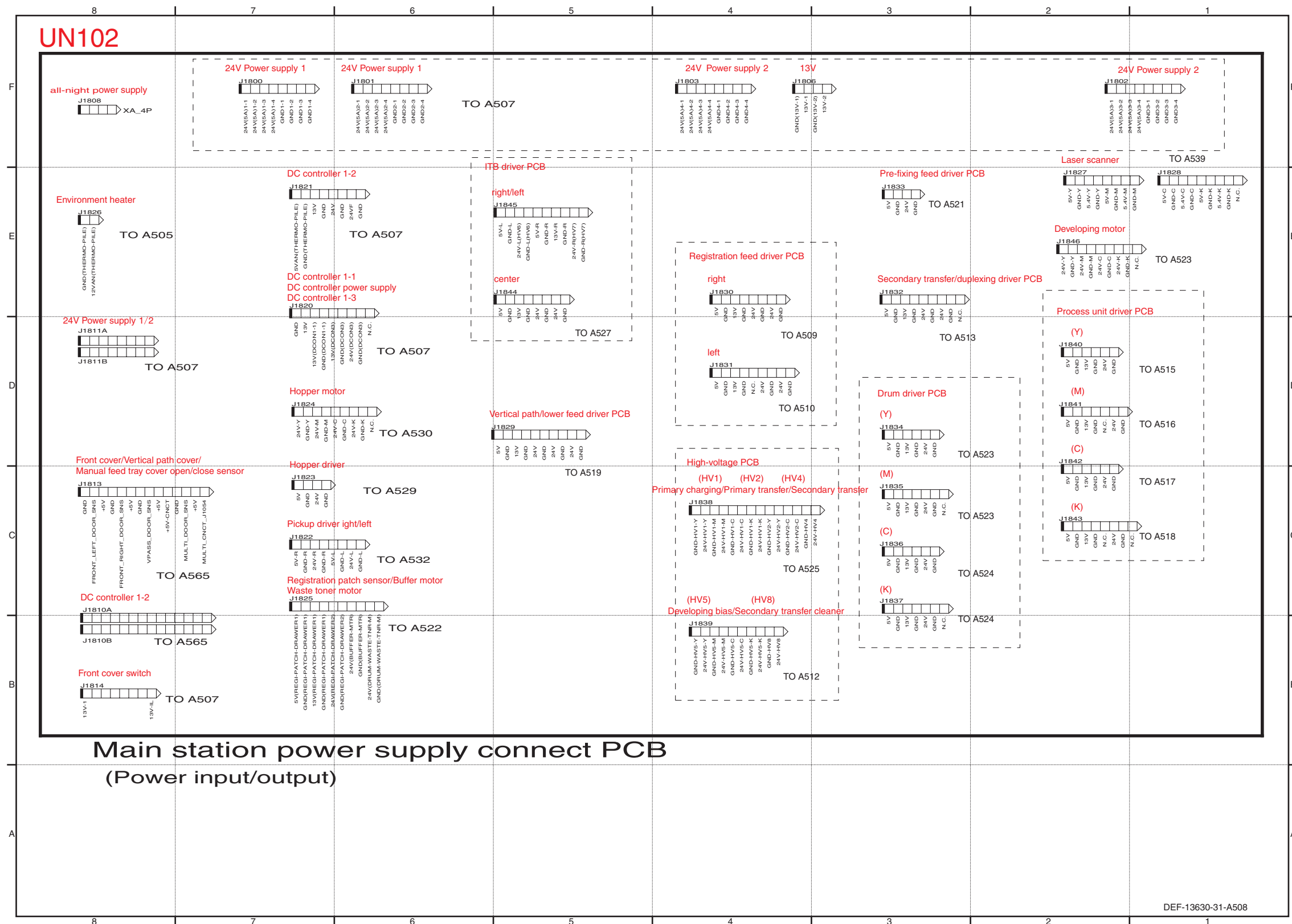




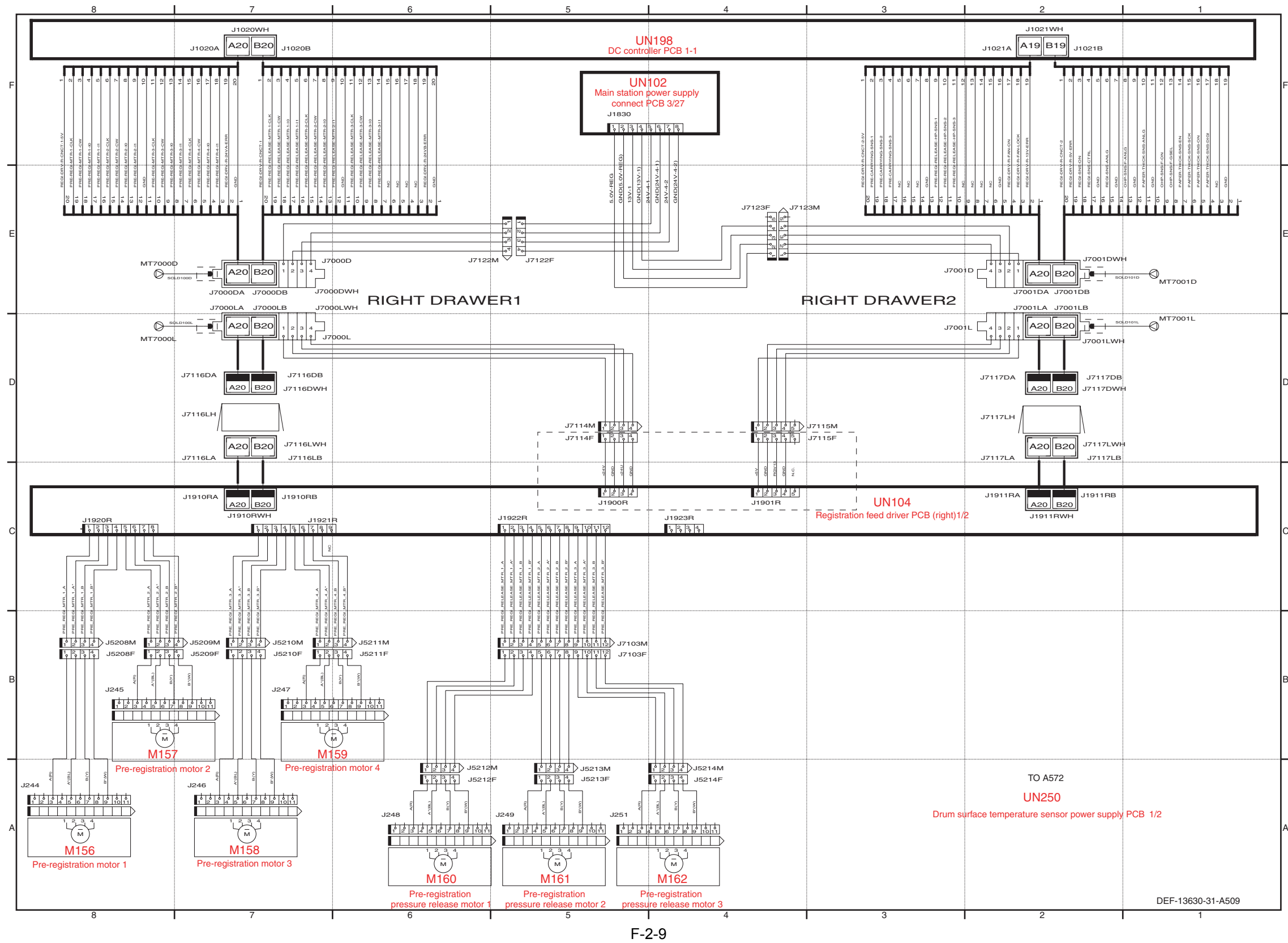
DEF-13630-31-A503

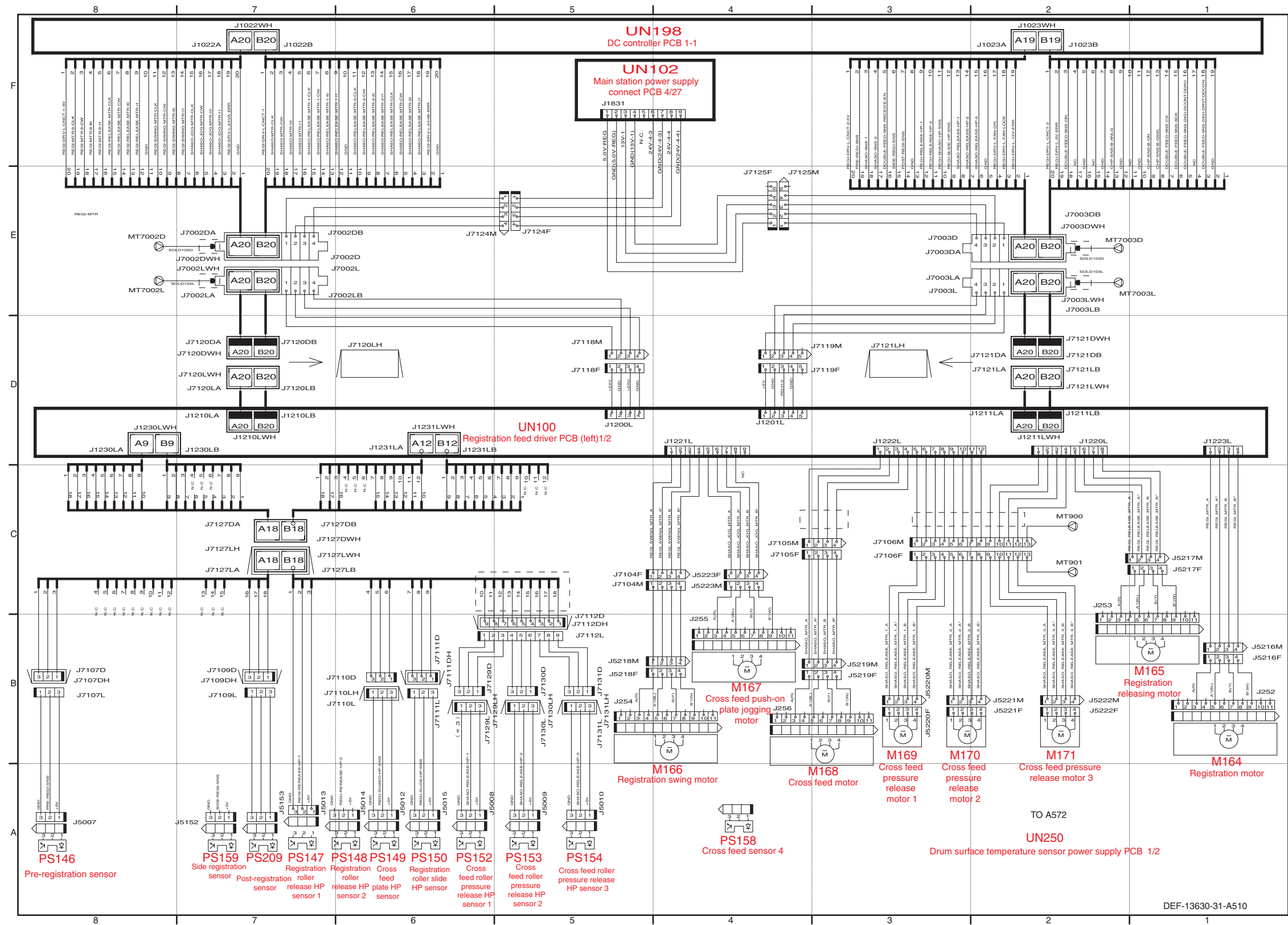


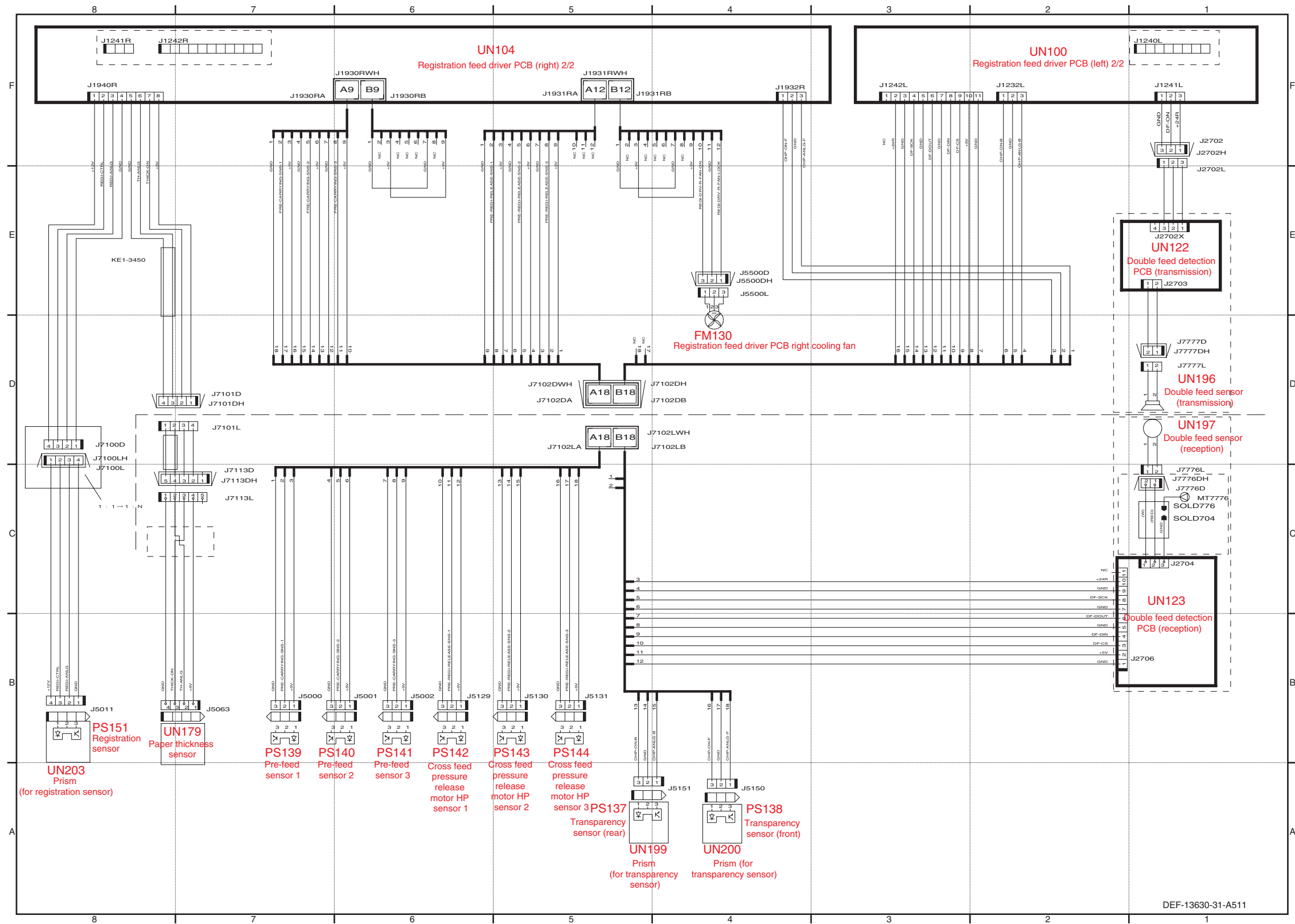




DEF-13630-31-A508

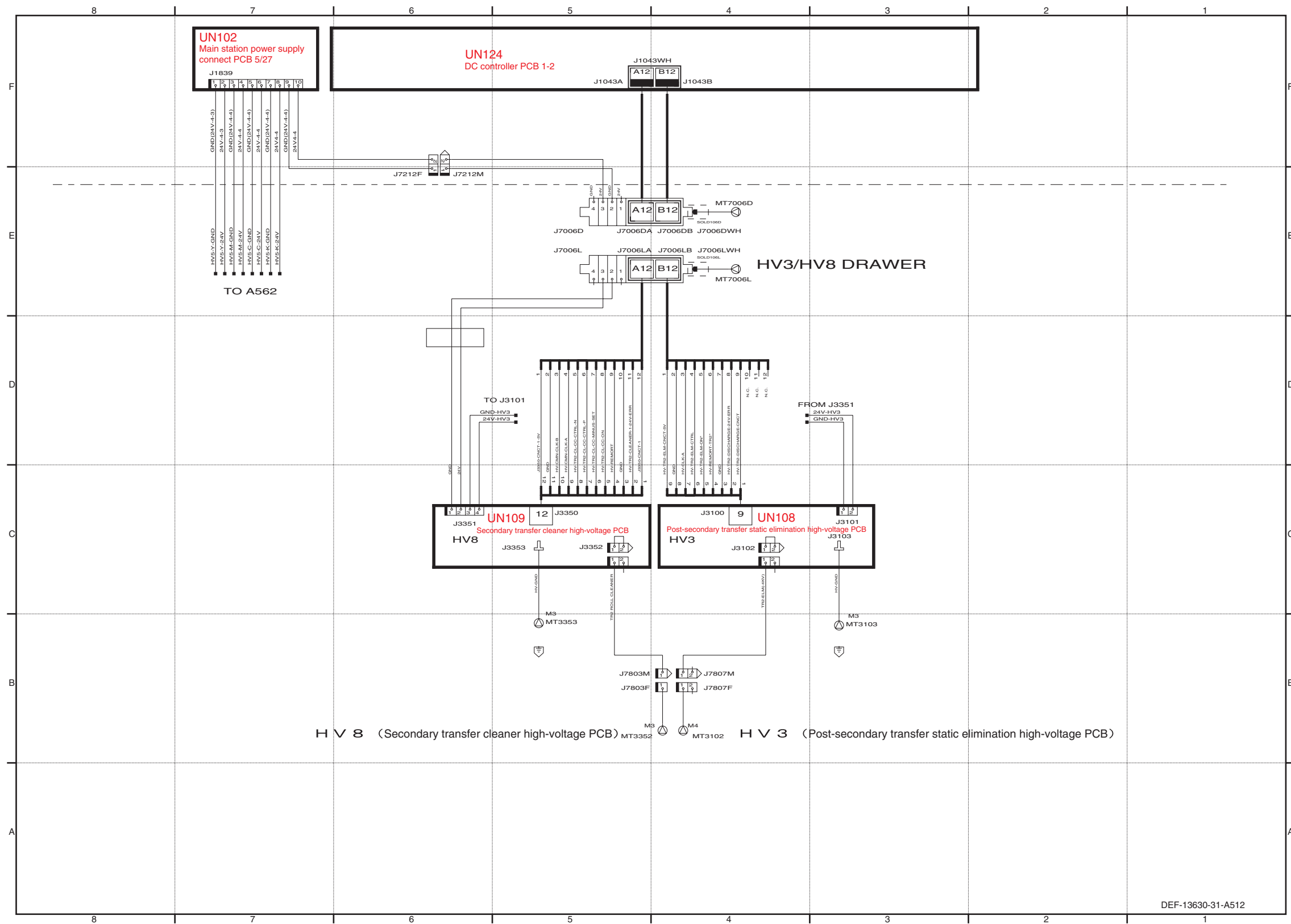






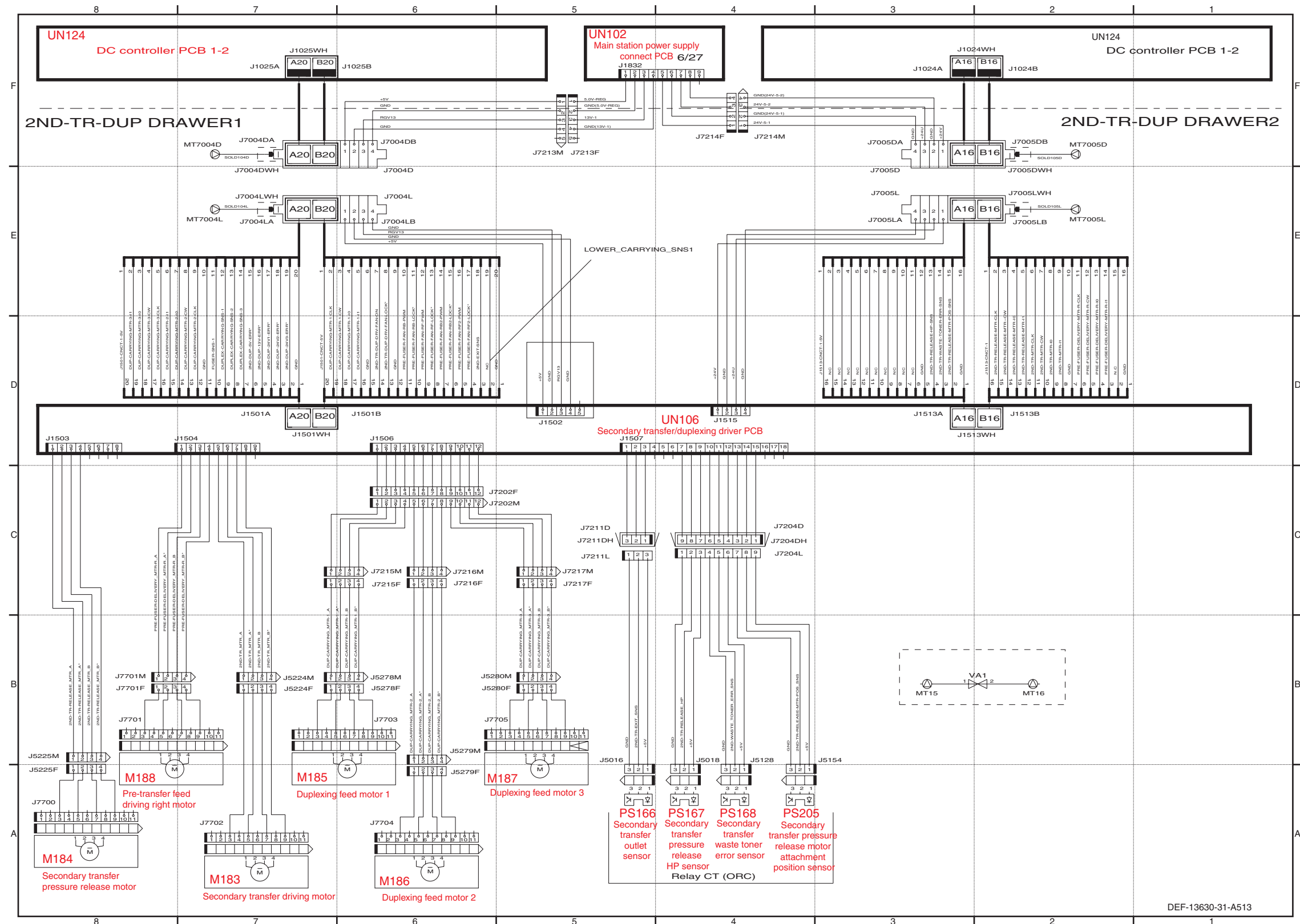
F-2-11

DEF-13630-31-A511

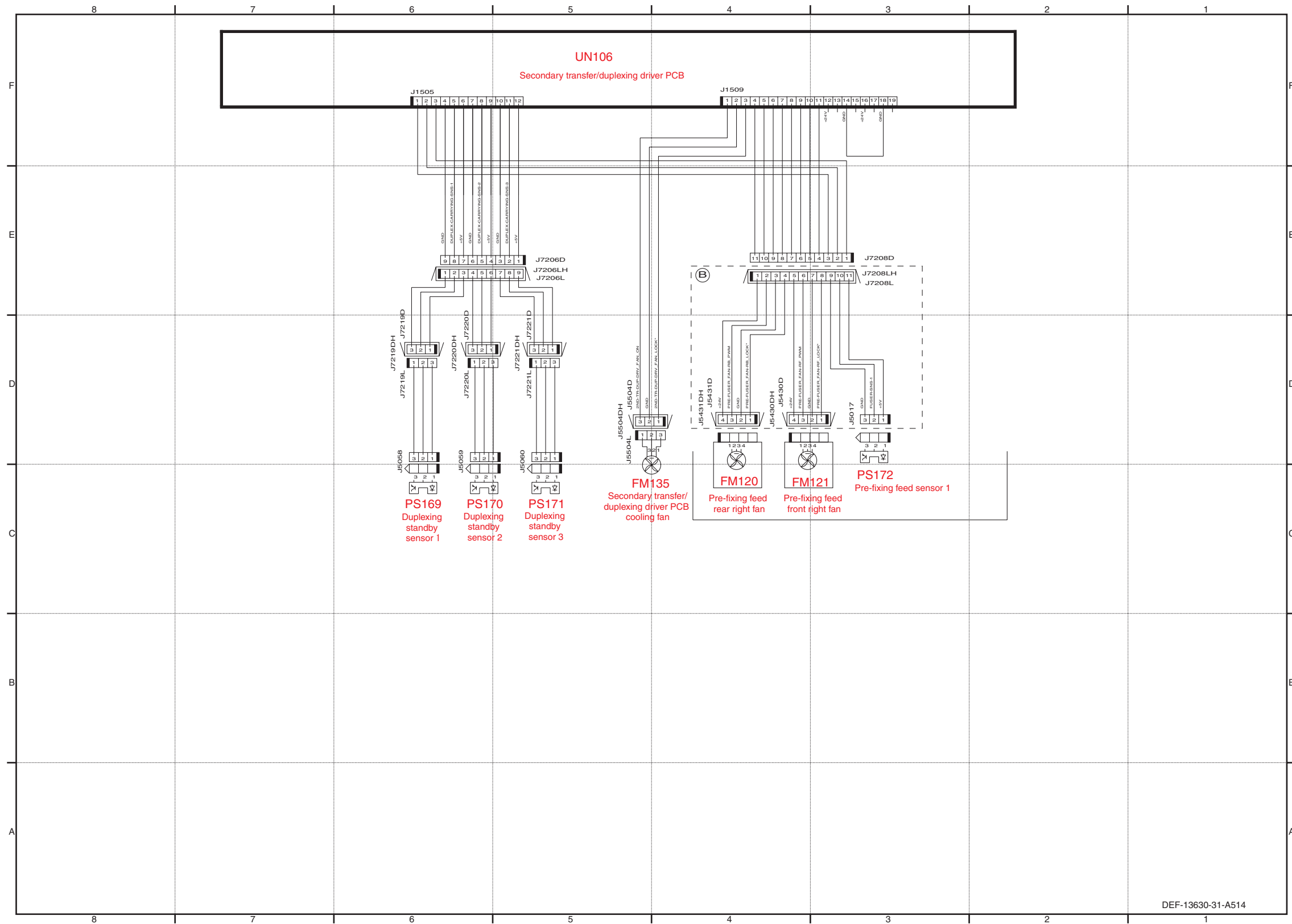


H V 8 (Secondary transfer cleaner high-voltage PCB) H V 3 (Post-secondary transfer static elimination high-voltage PCB)

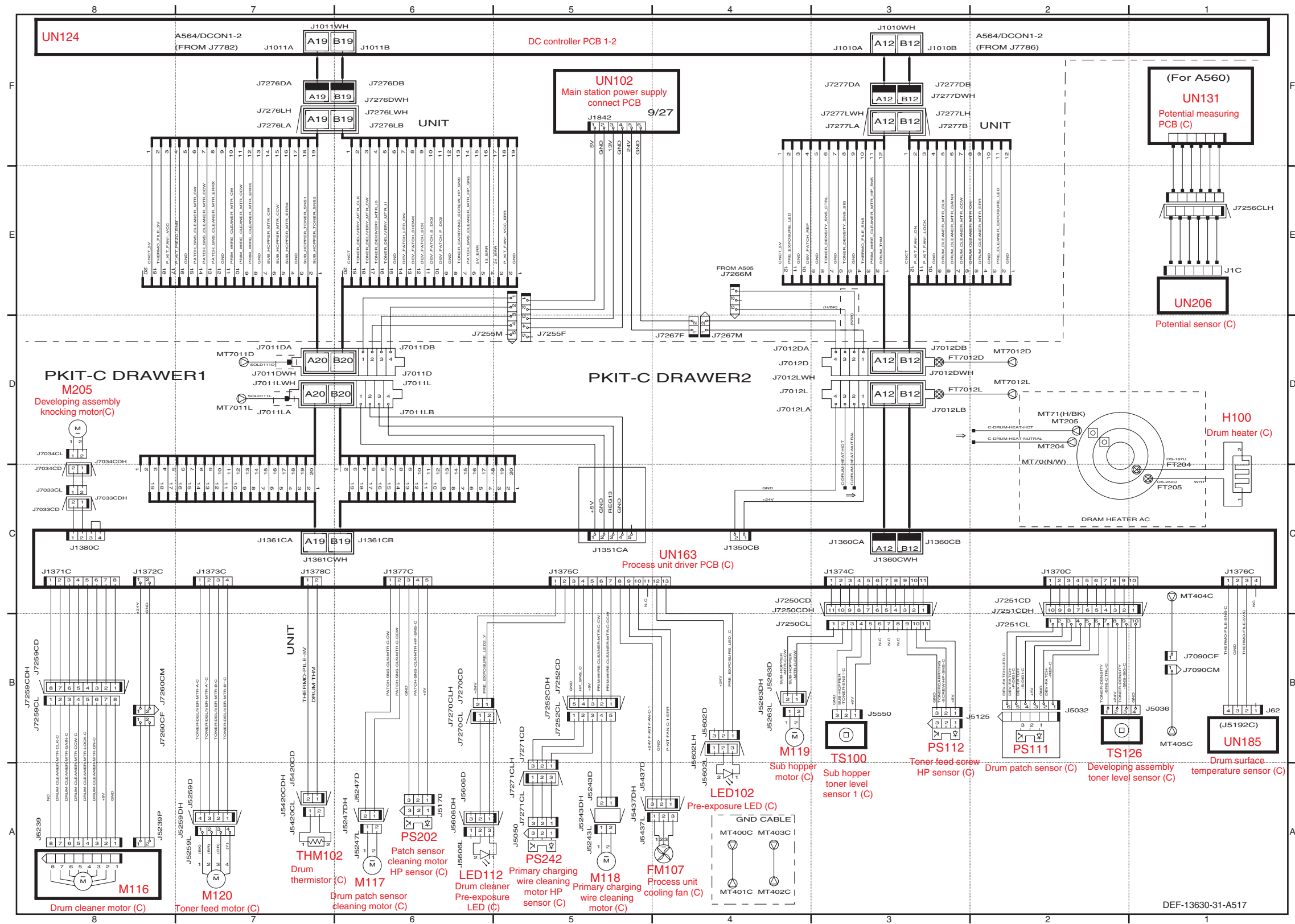
DEF-13630-31-A512



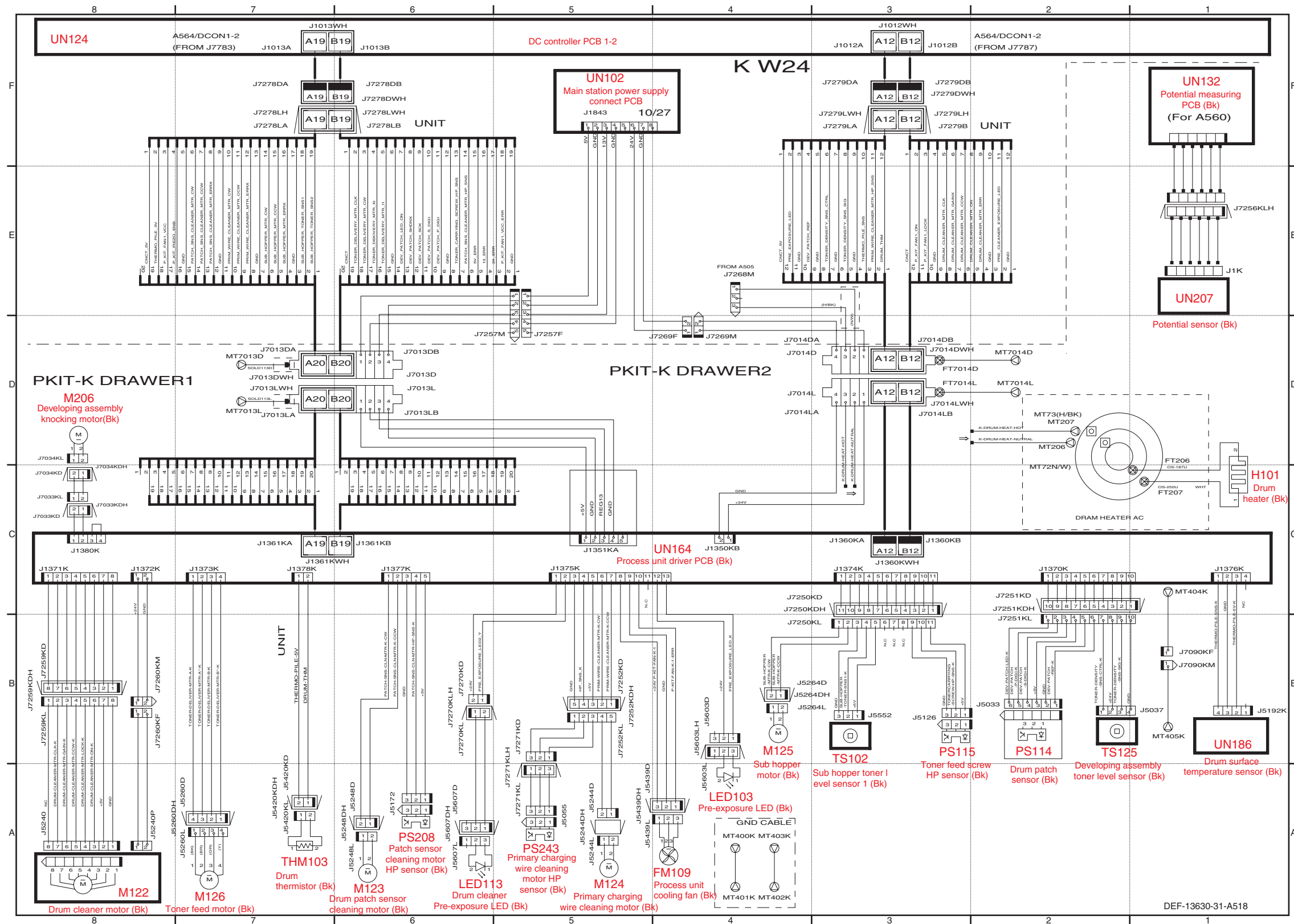
DEF-13630-31-A513



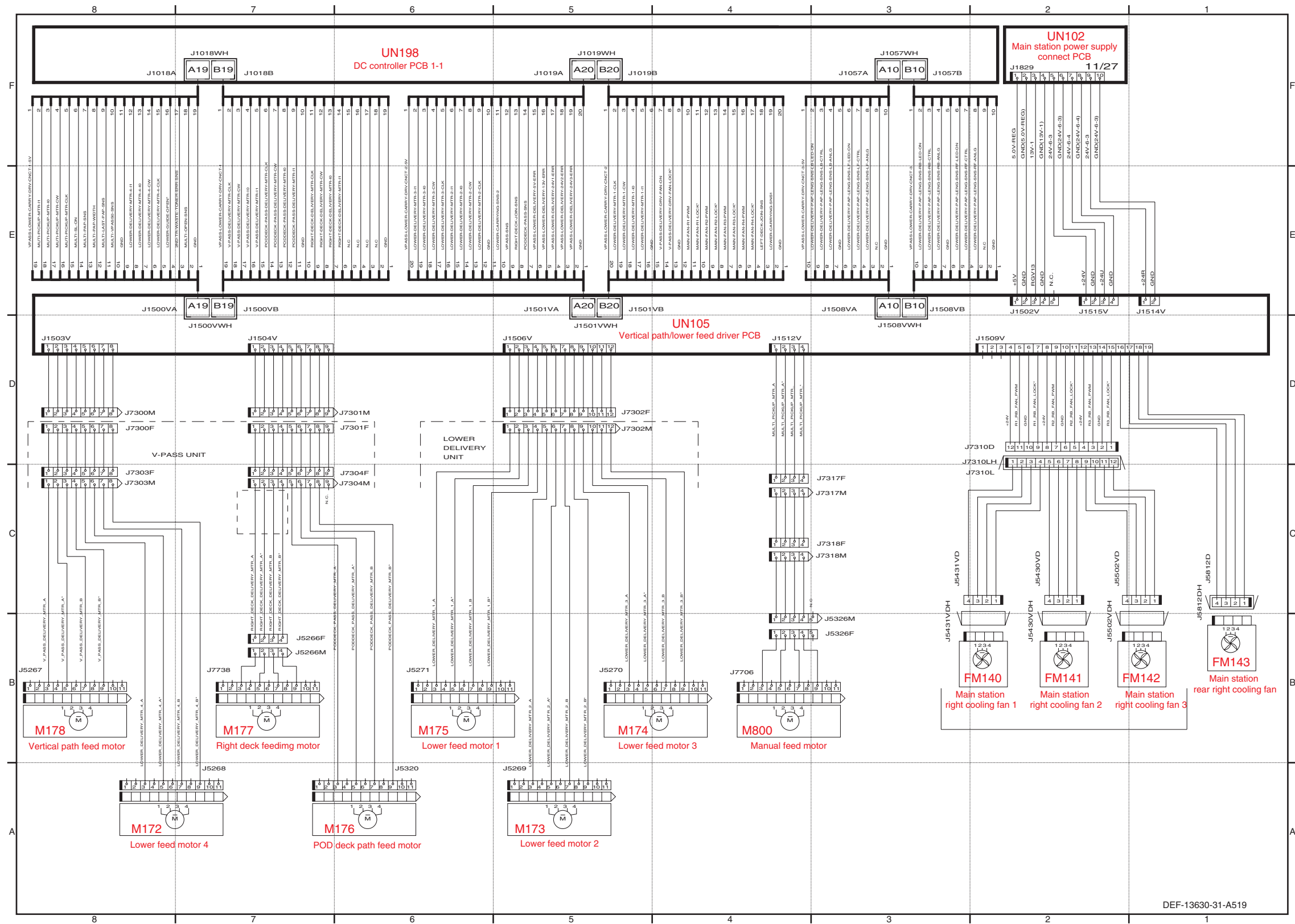
DEF-13630-31-A514

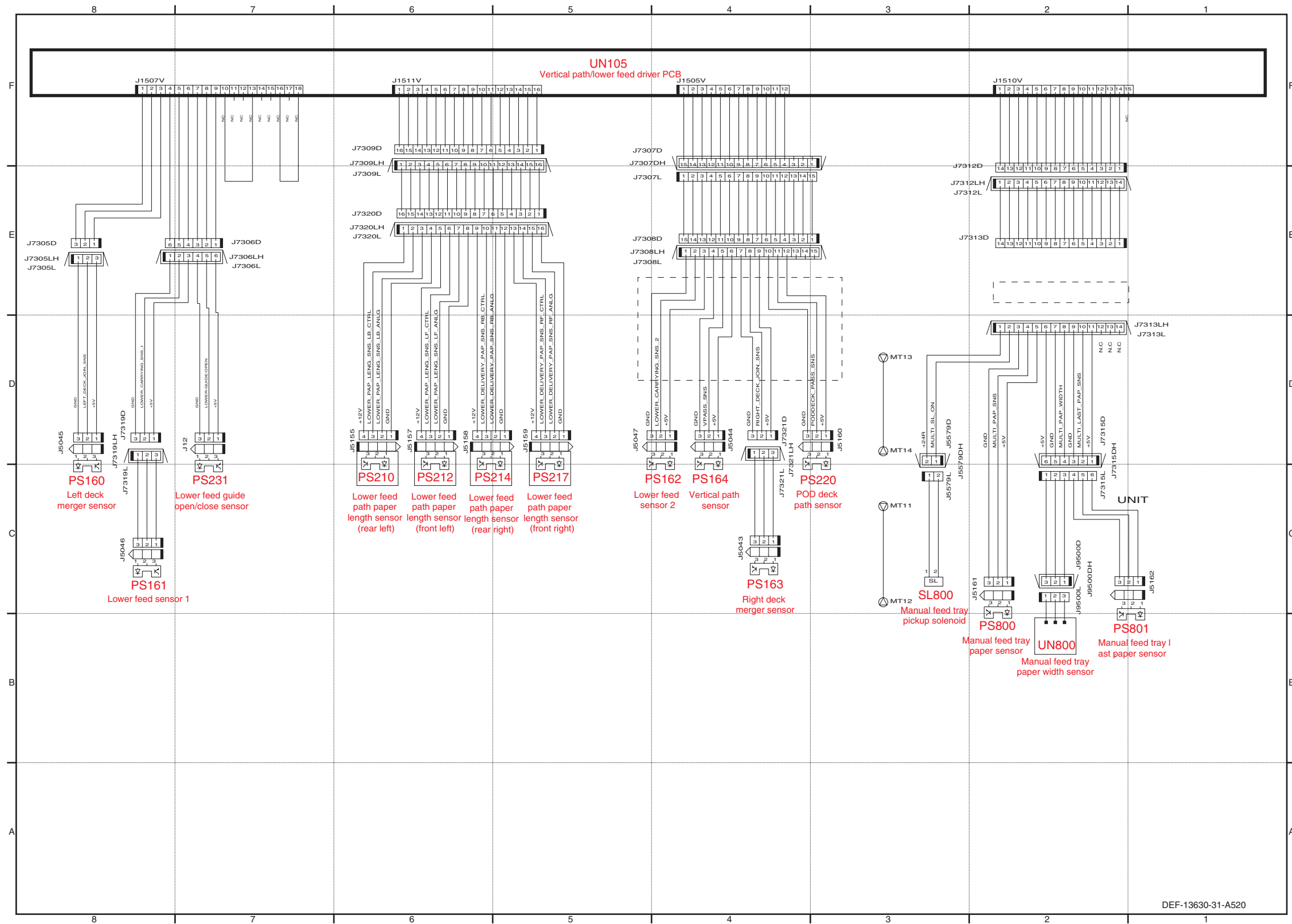


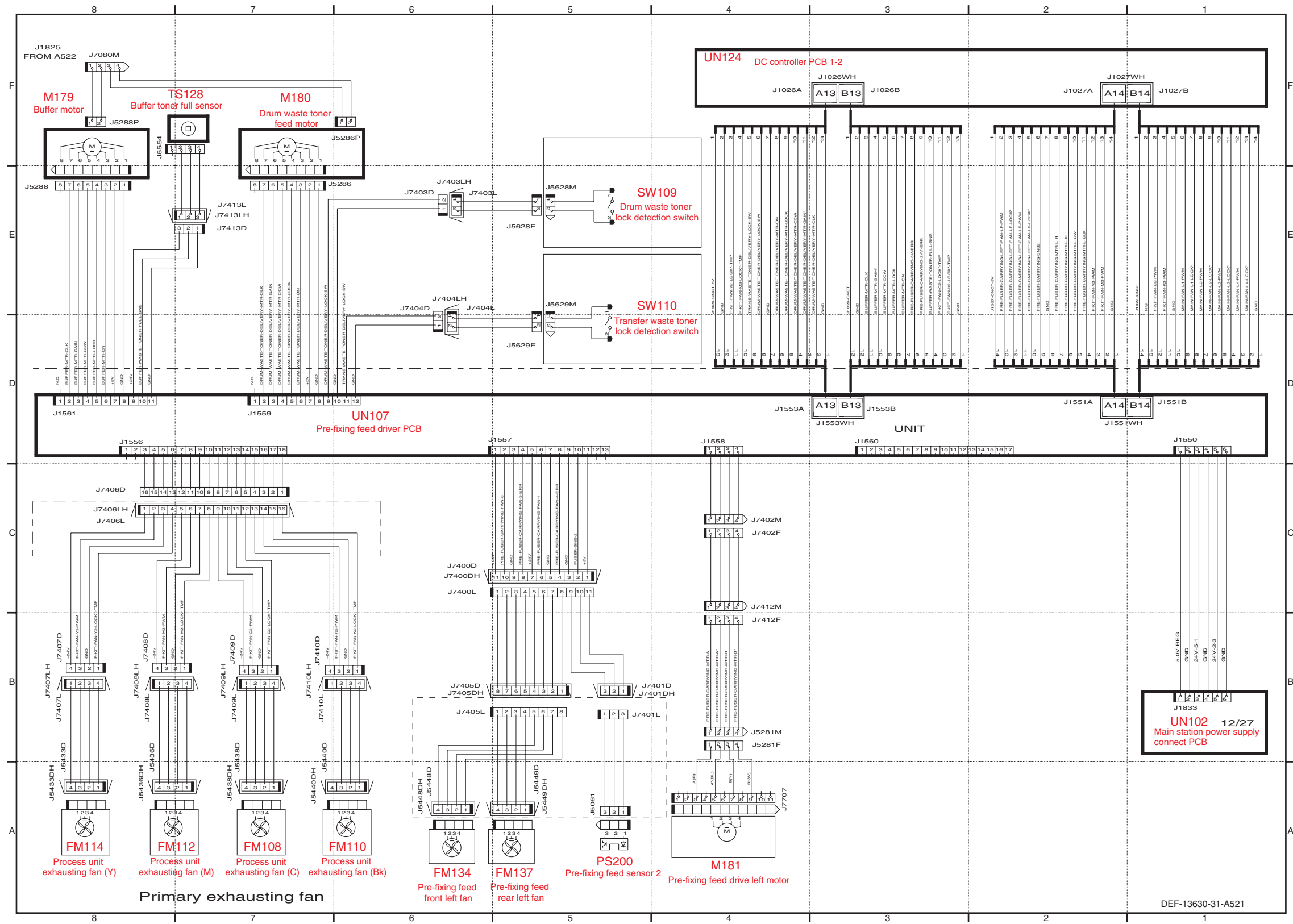
F-2-17



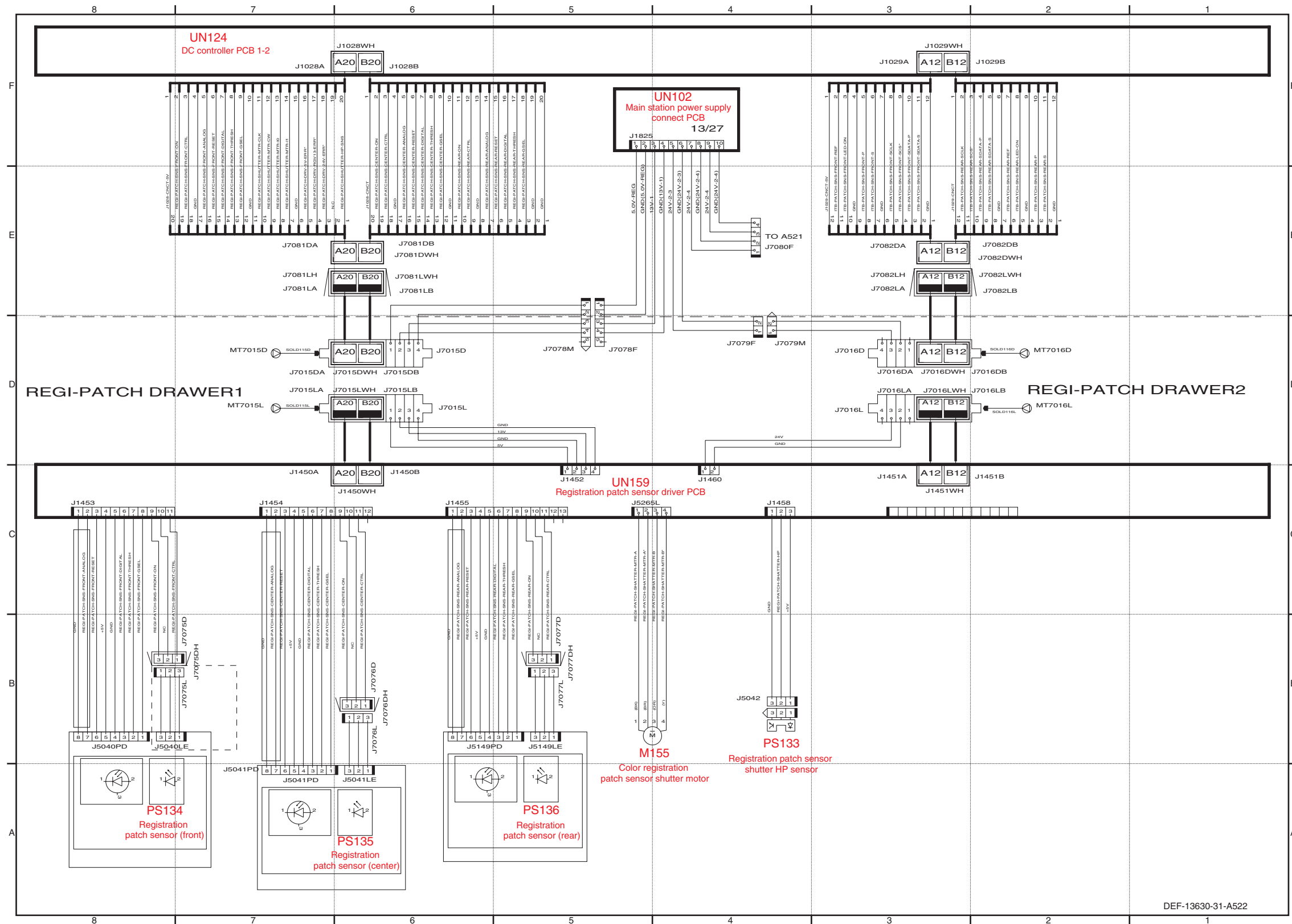
F-2-18



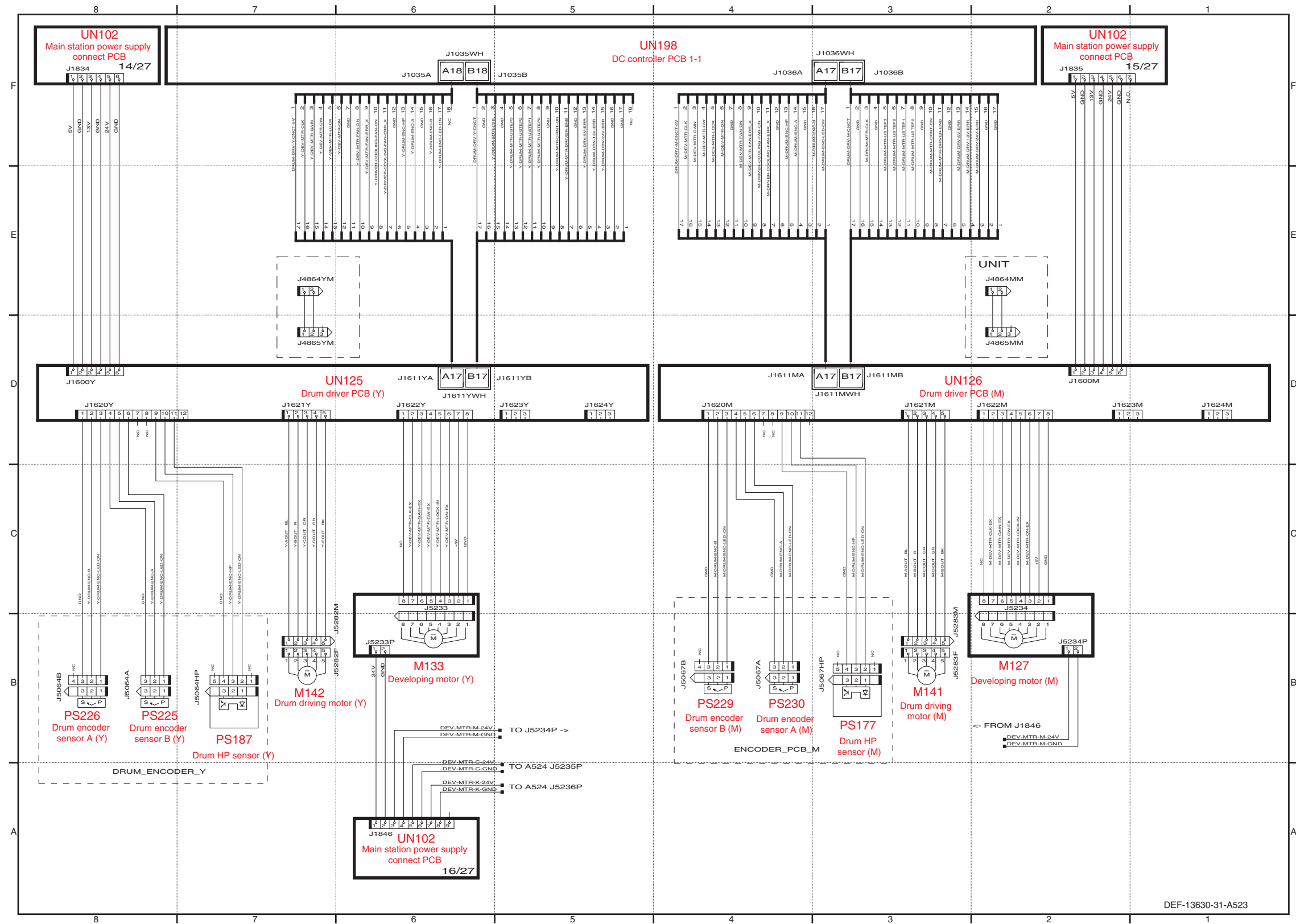


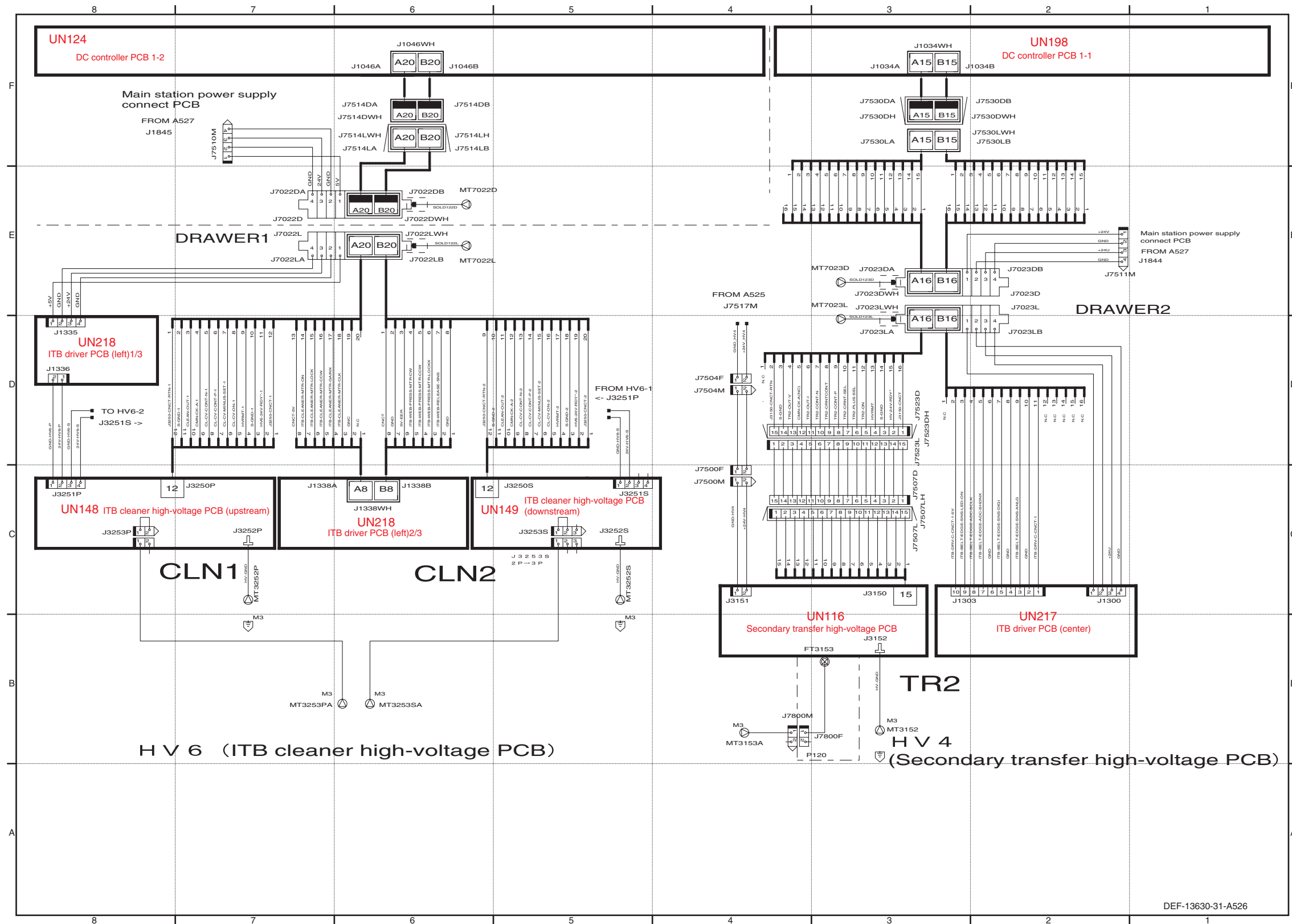


F-2-21

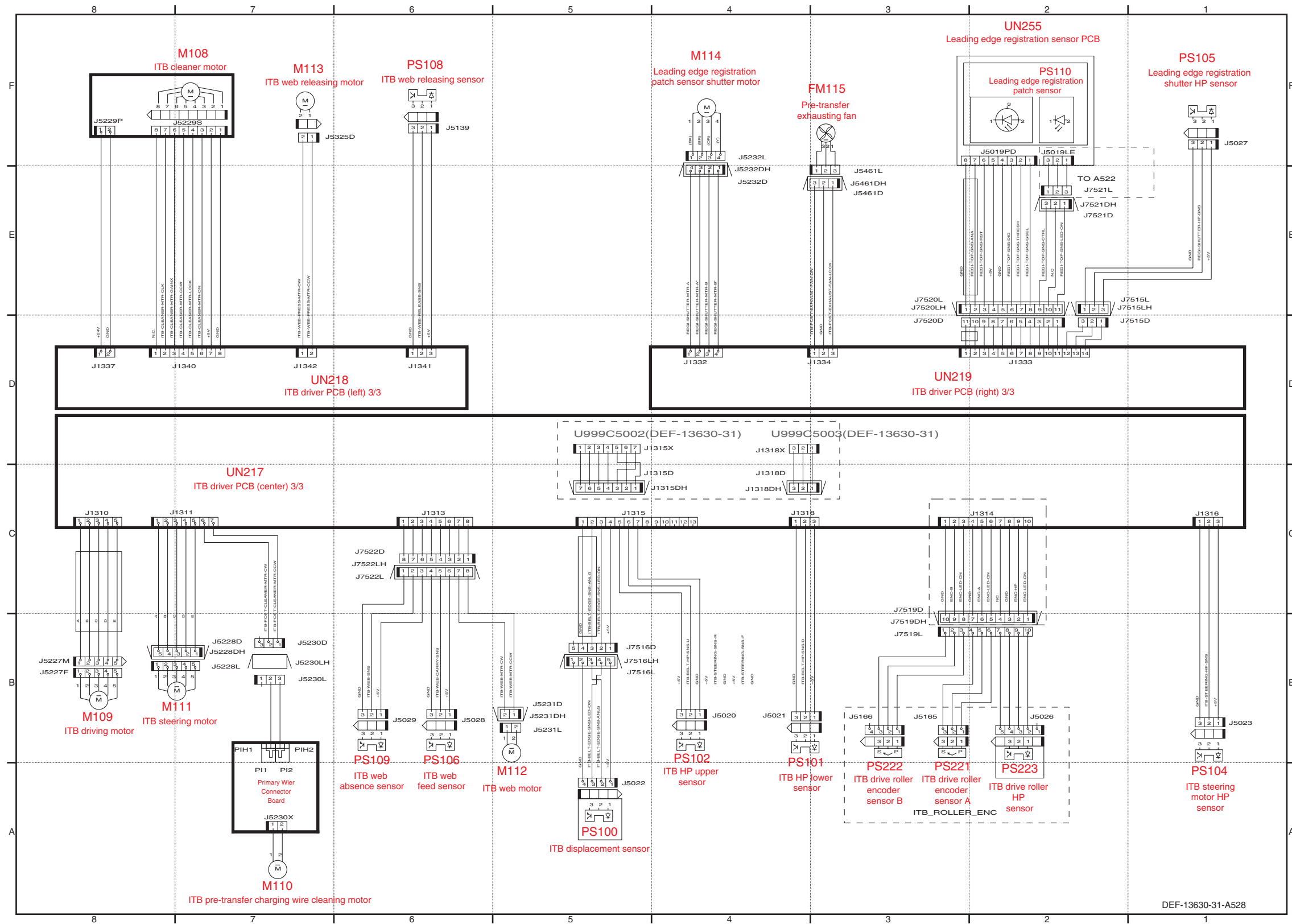


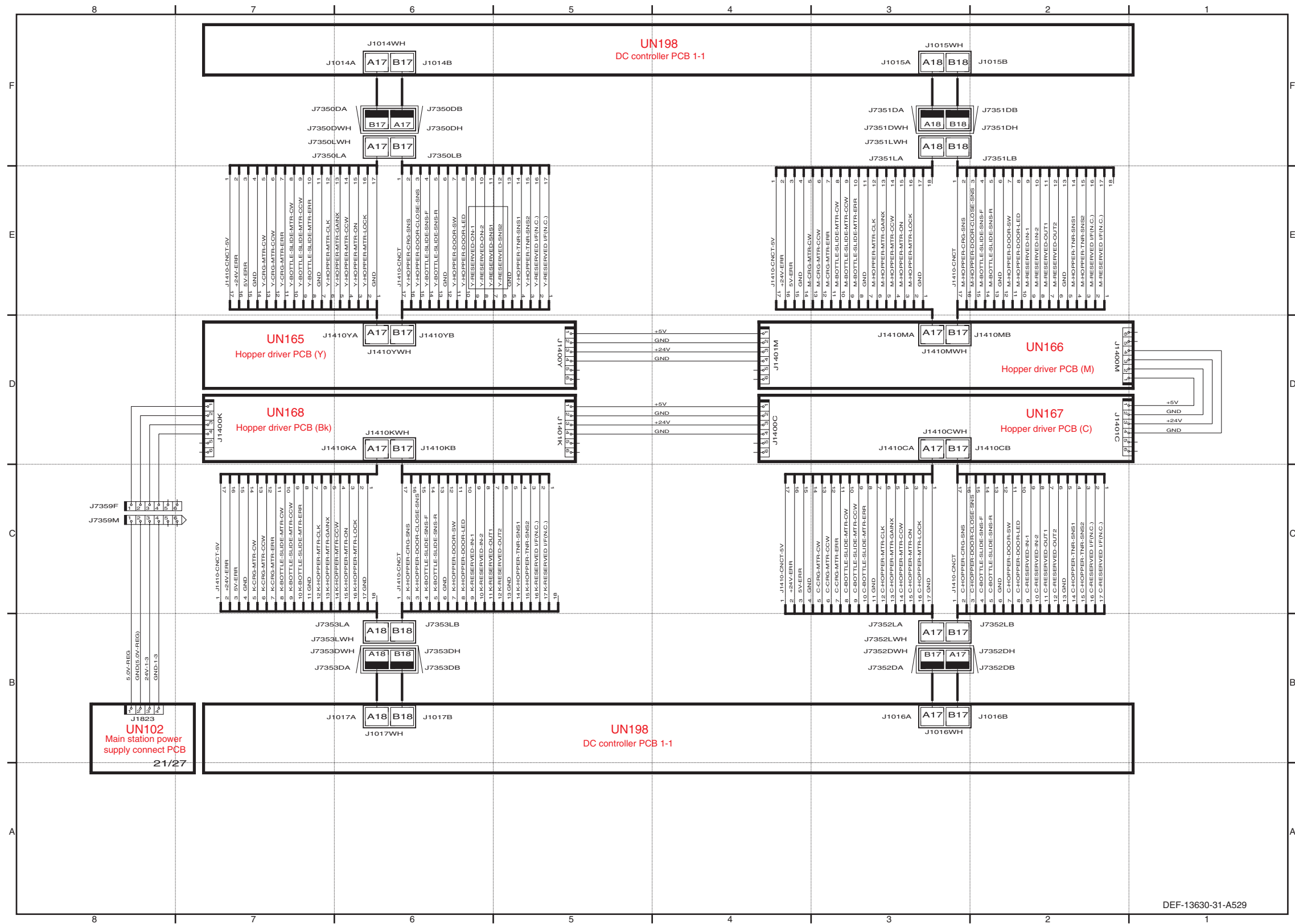
DEF-13630-31-A522



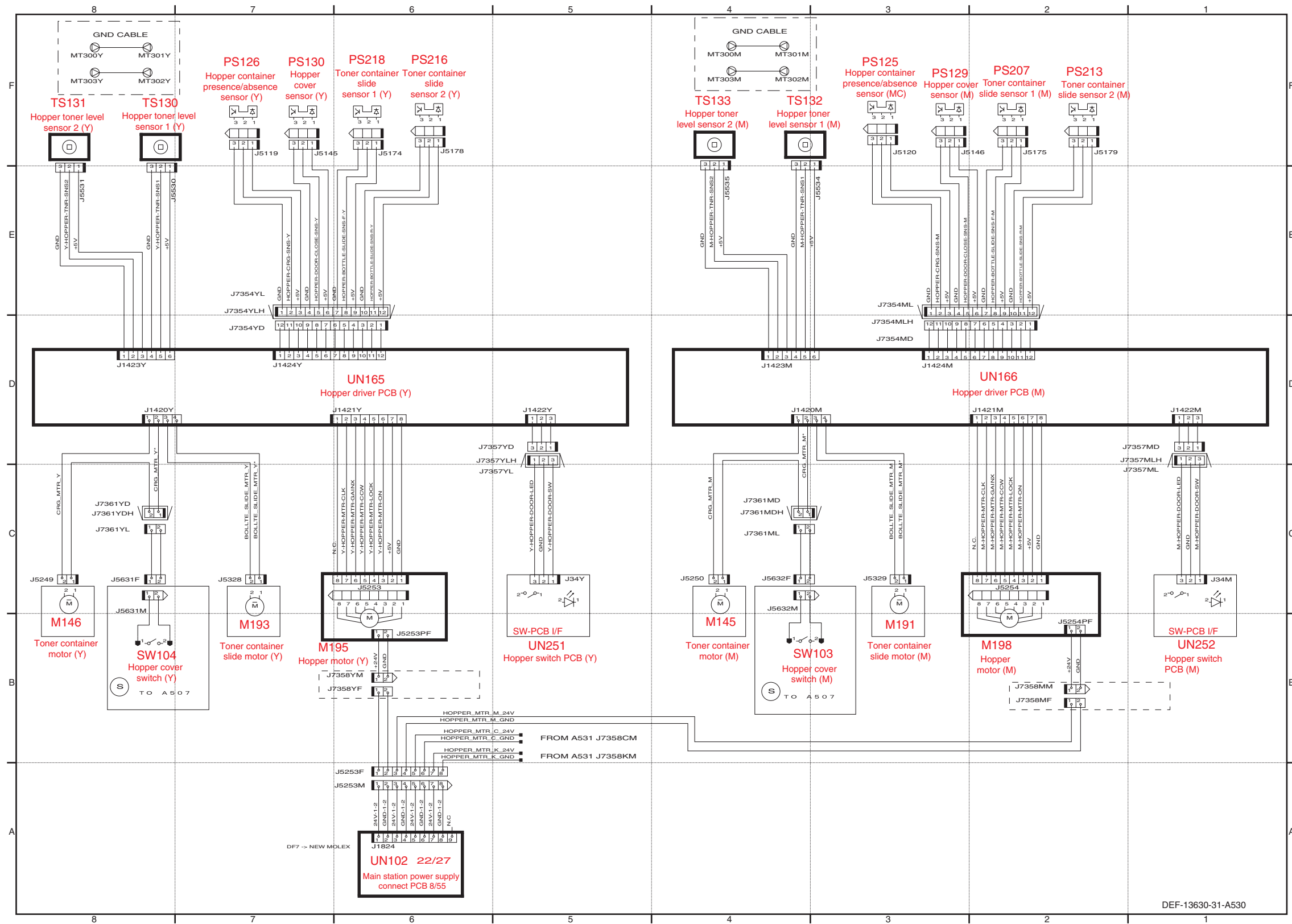


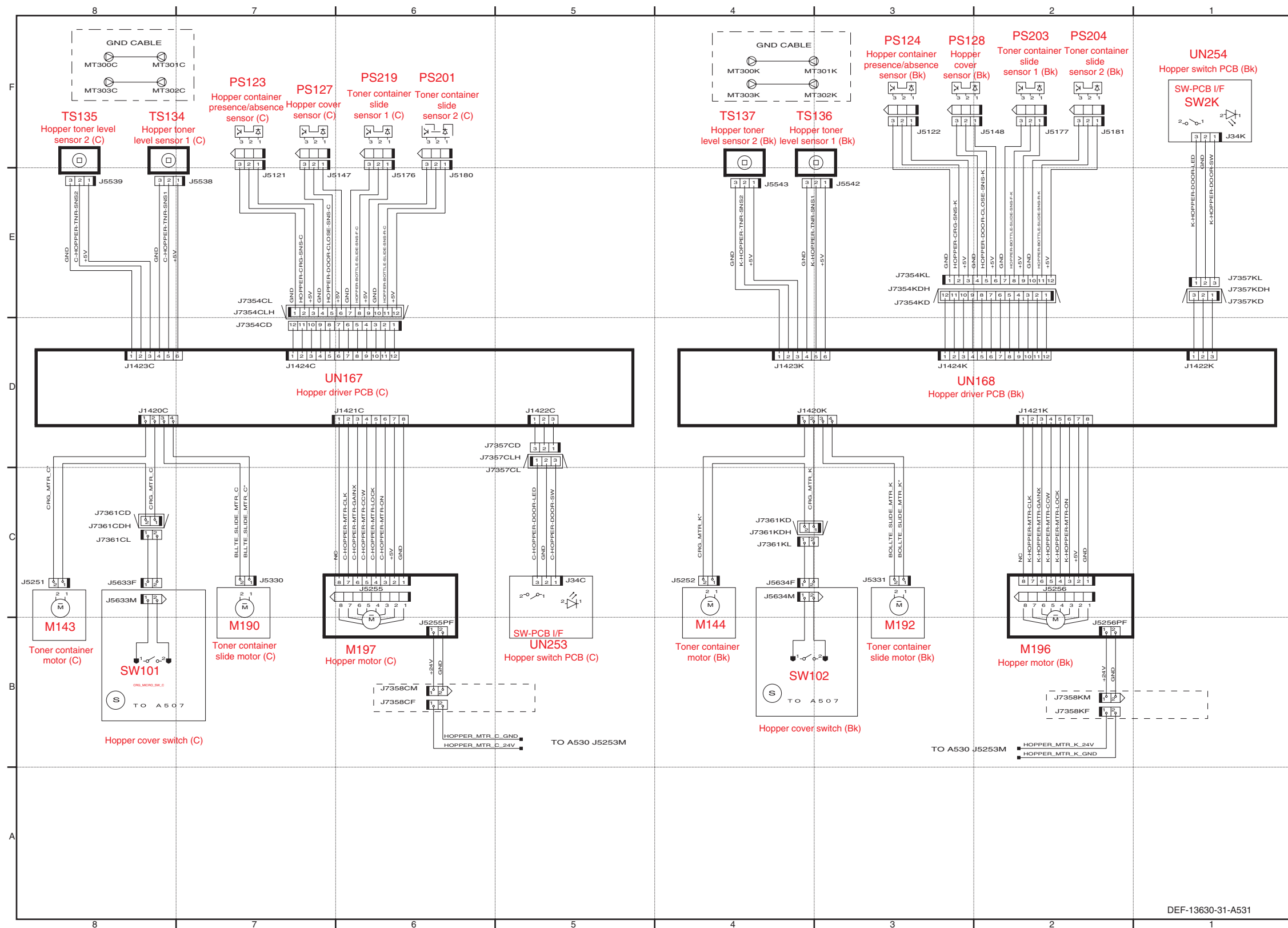
DEF-13630-31-A526

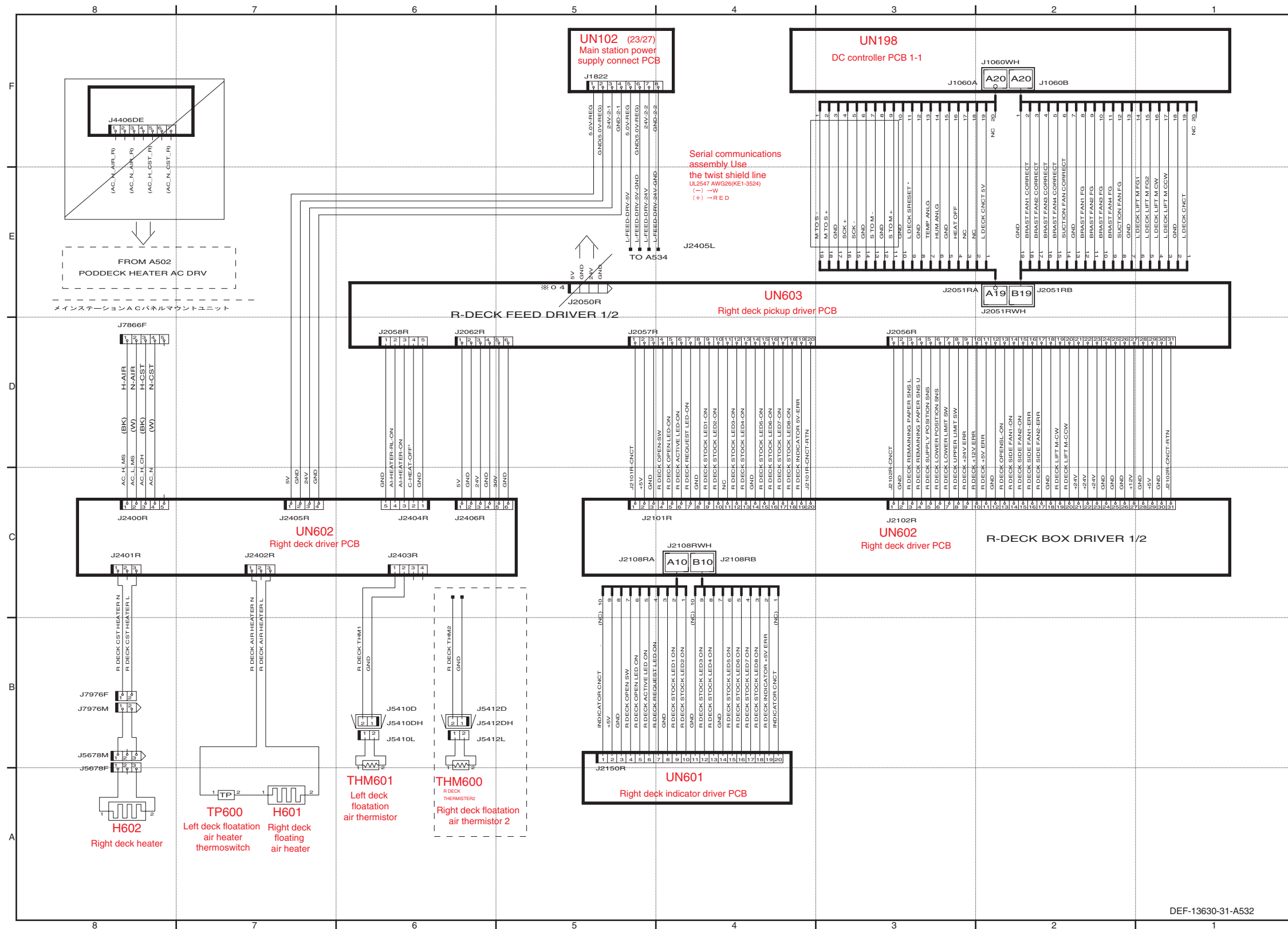




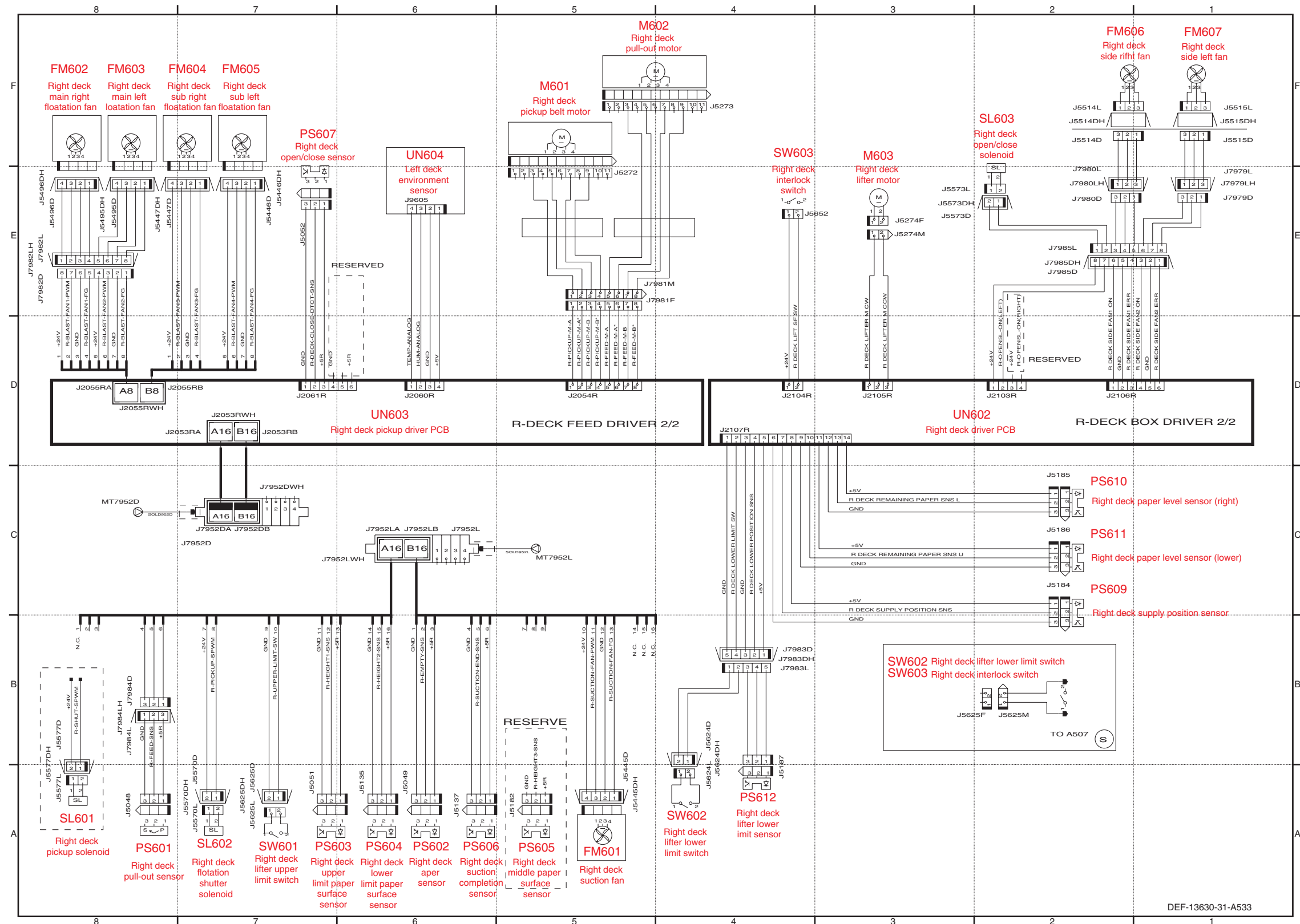
DEF-13630-31-A529





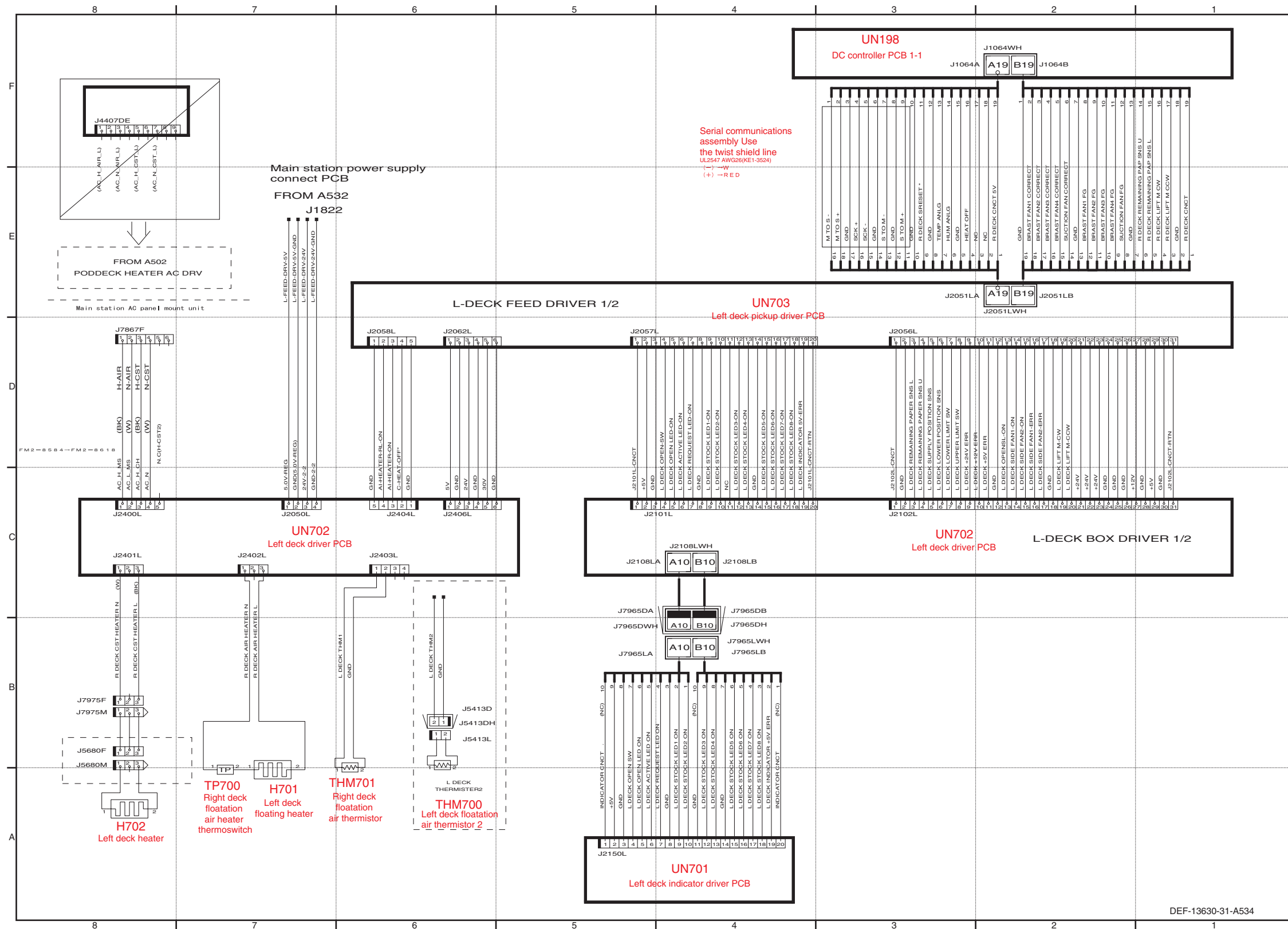


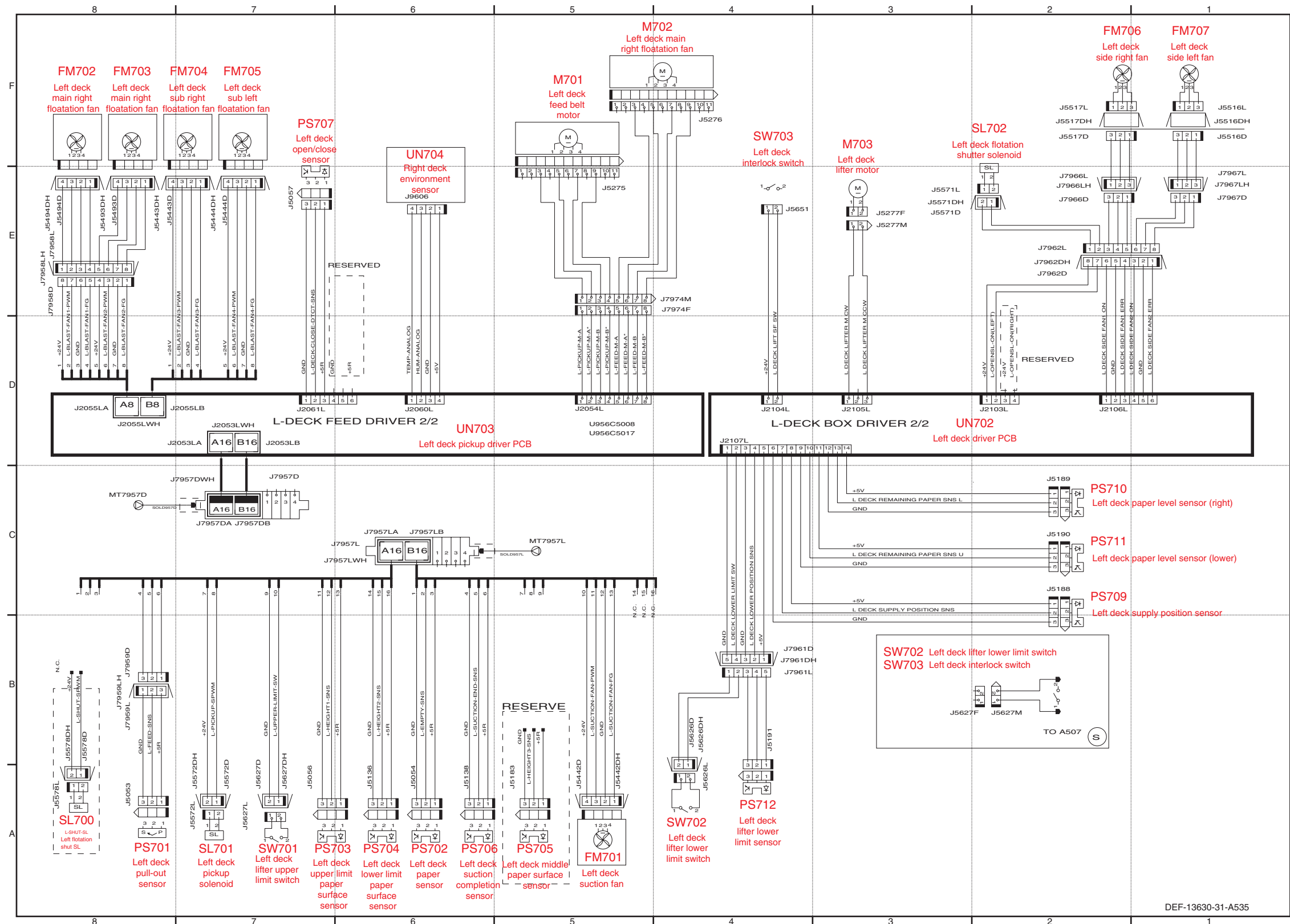
DEF-13630-31-A532

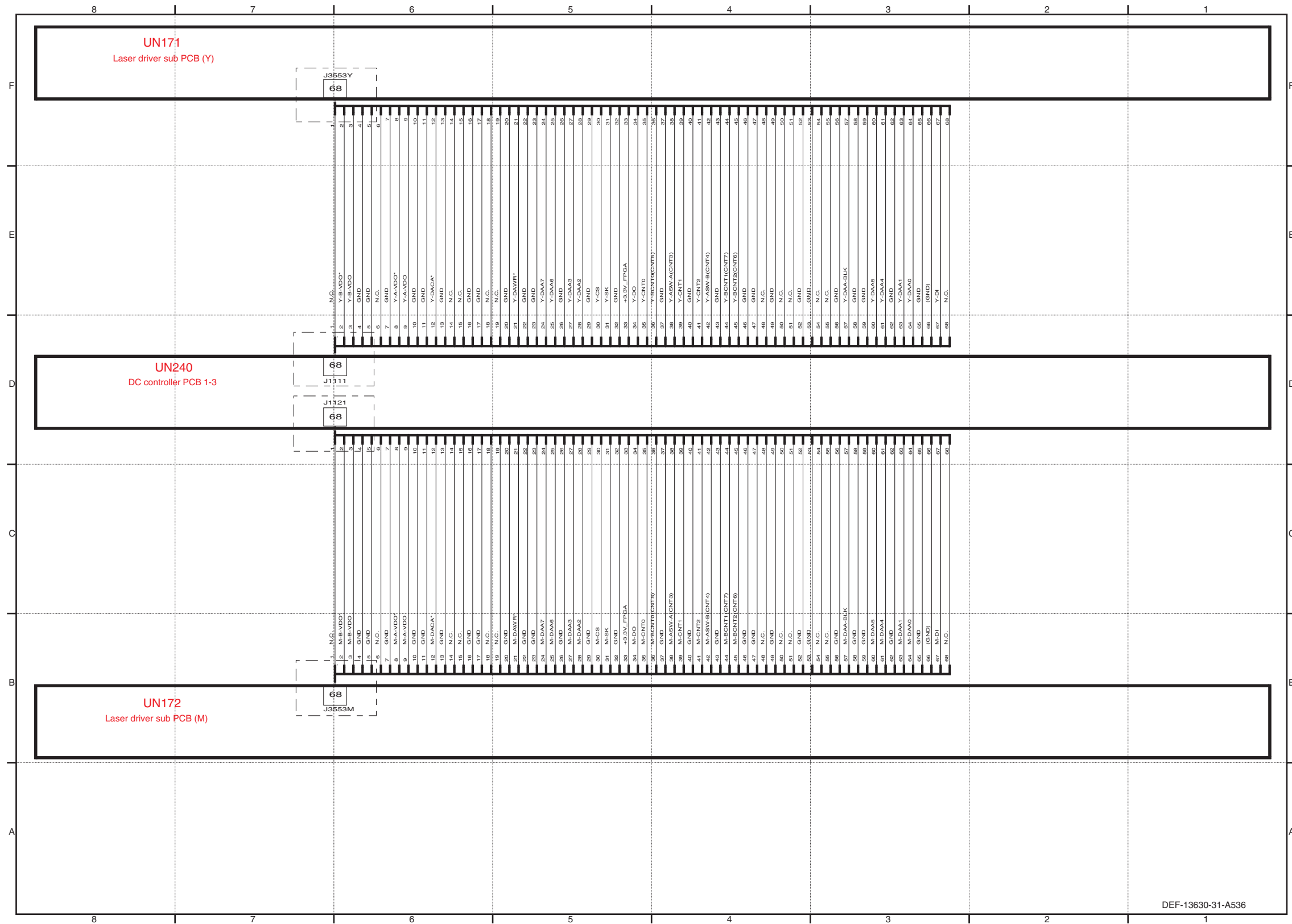


F-2-33

DEF-13630-31-A533

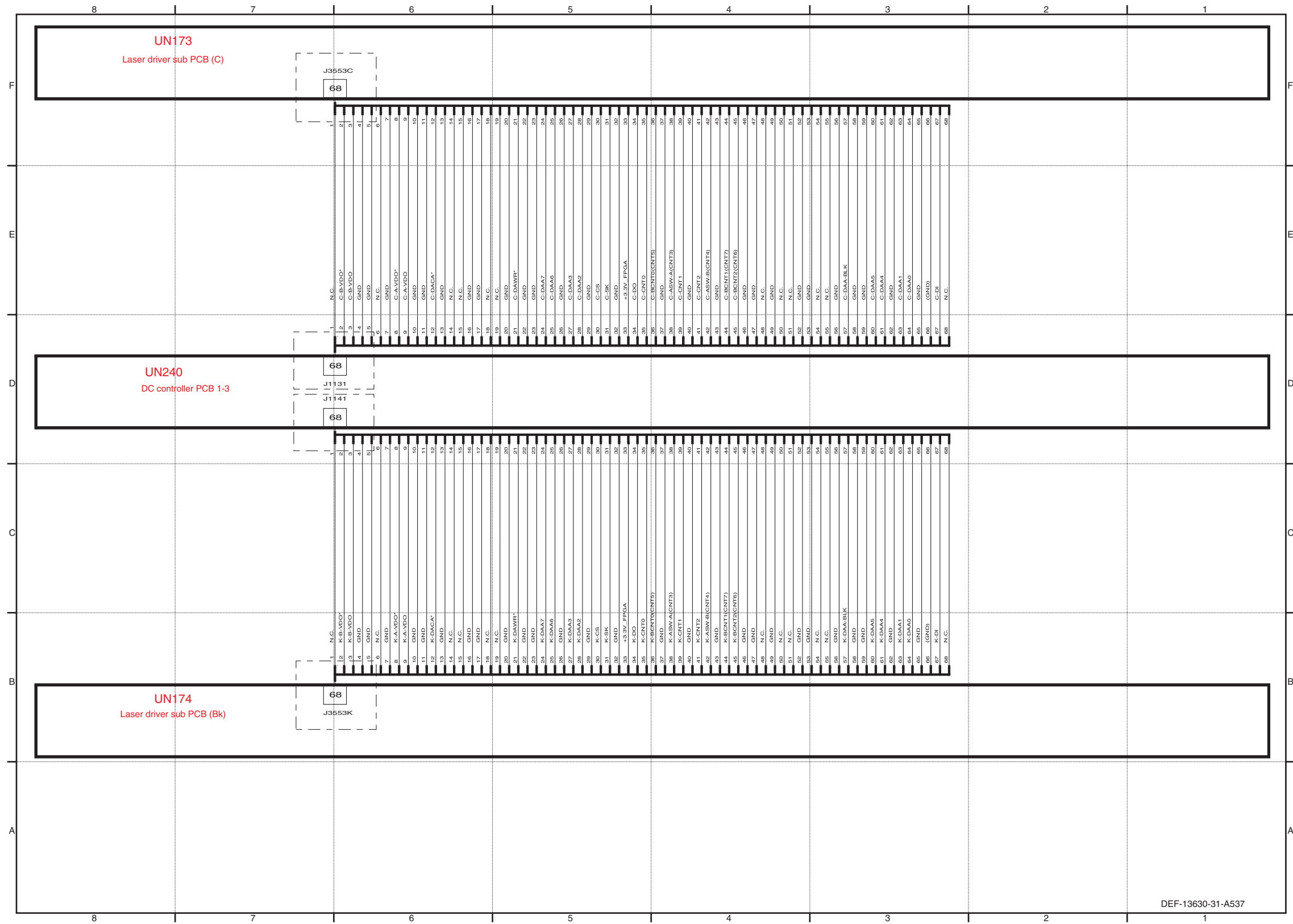






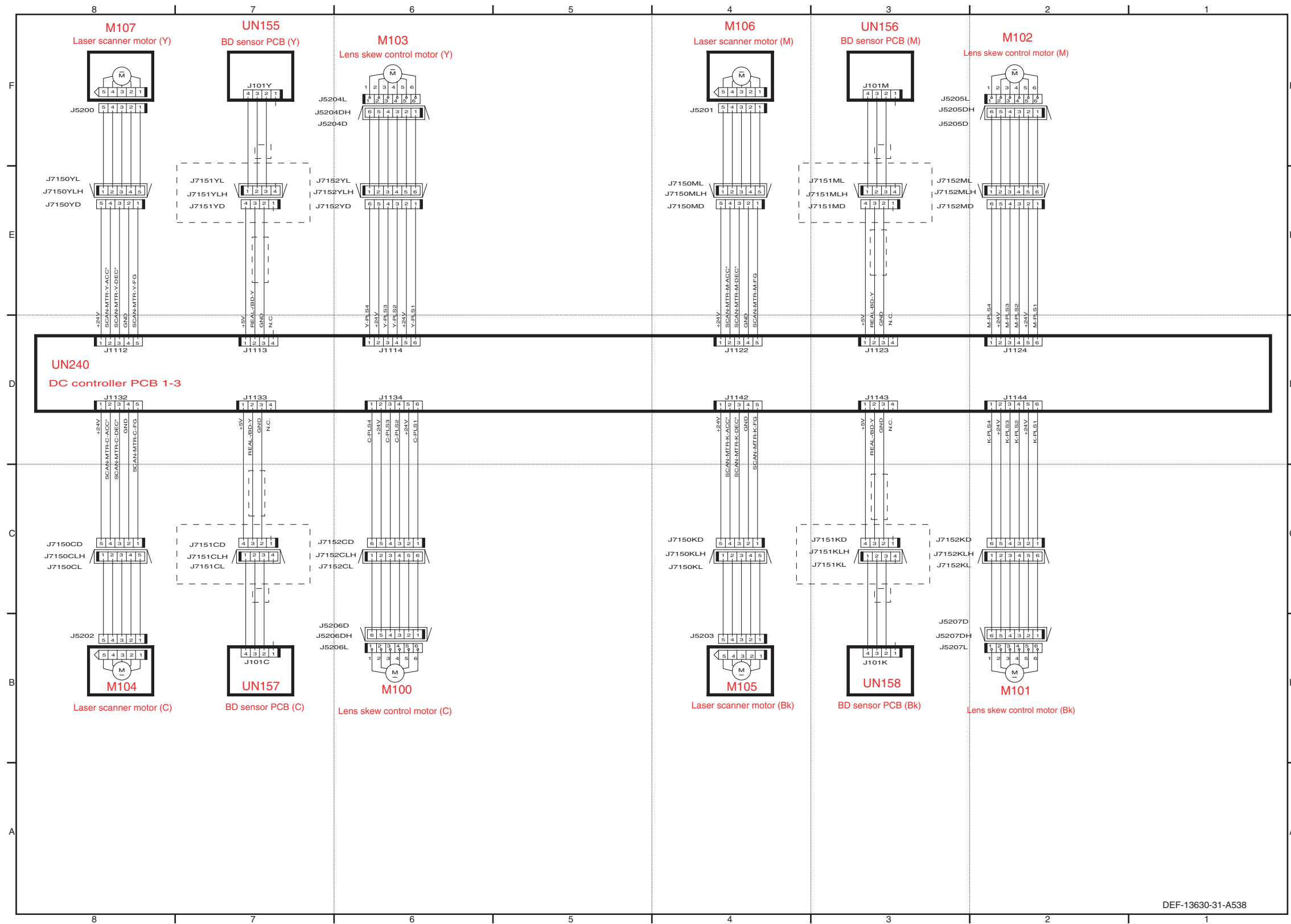
F-2-36

DEF-13630-31-A536



F-2-37

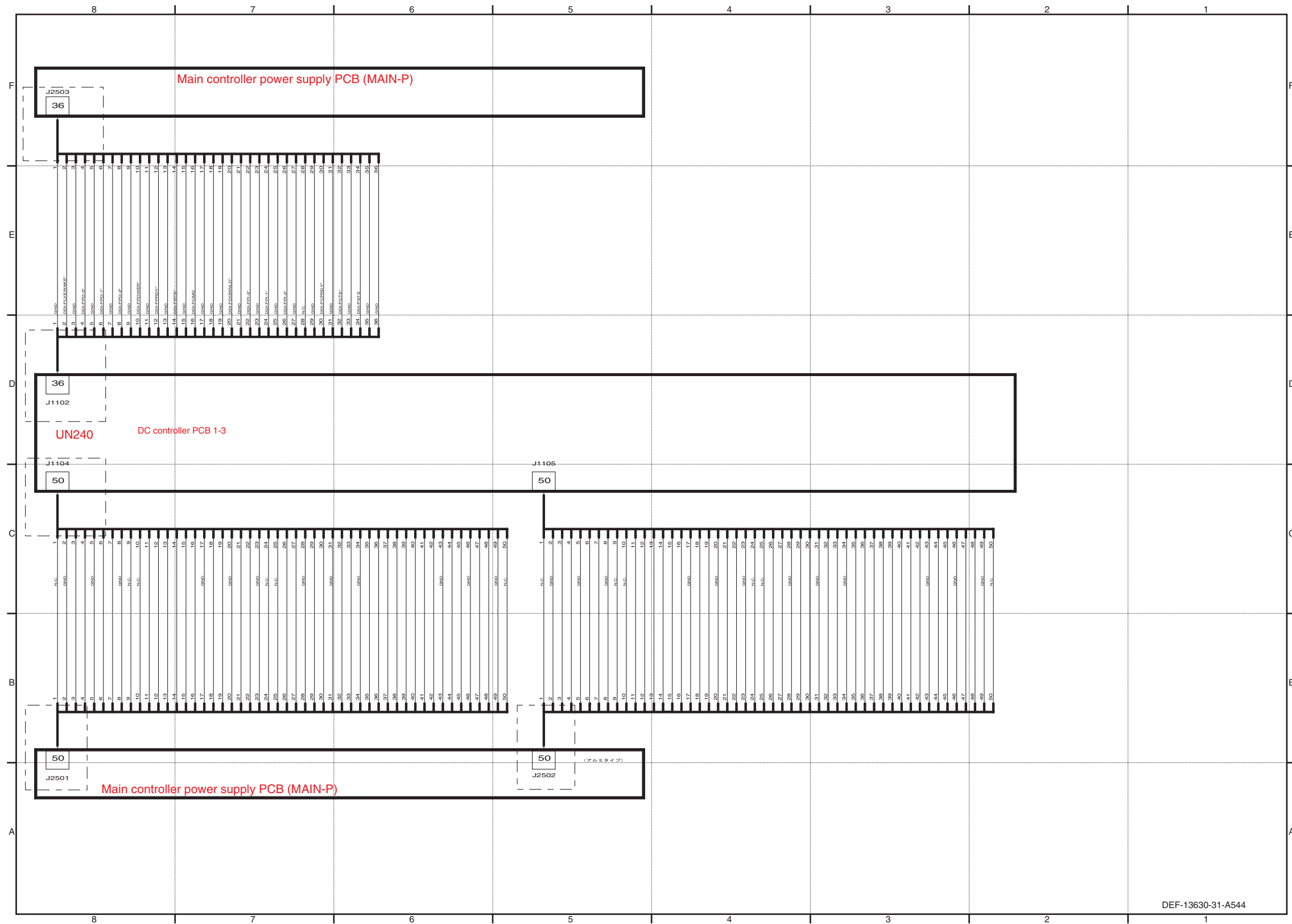
DEF-13630-31-A537

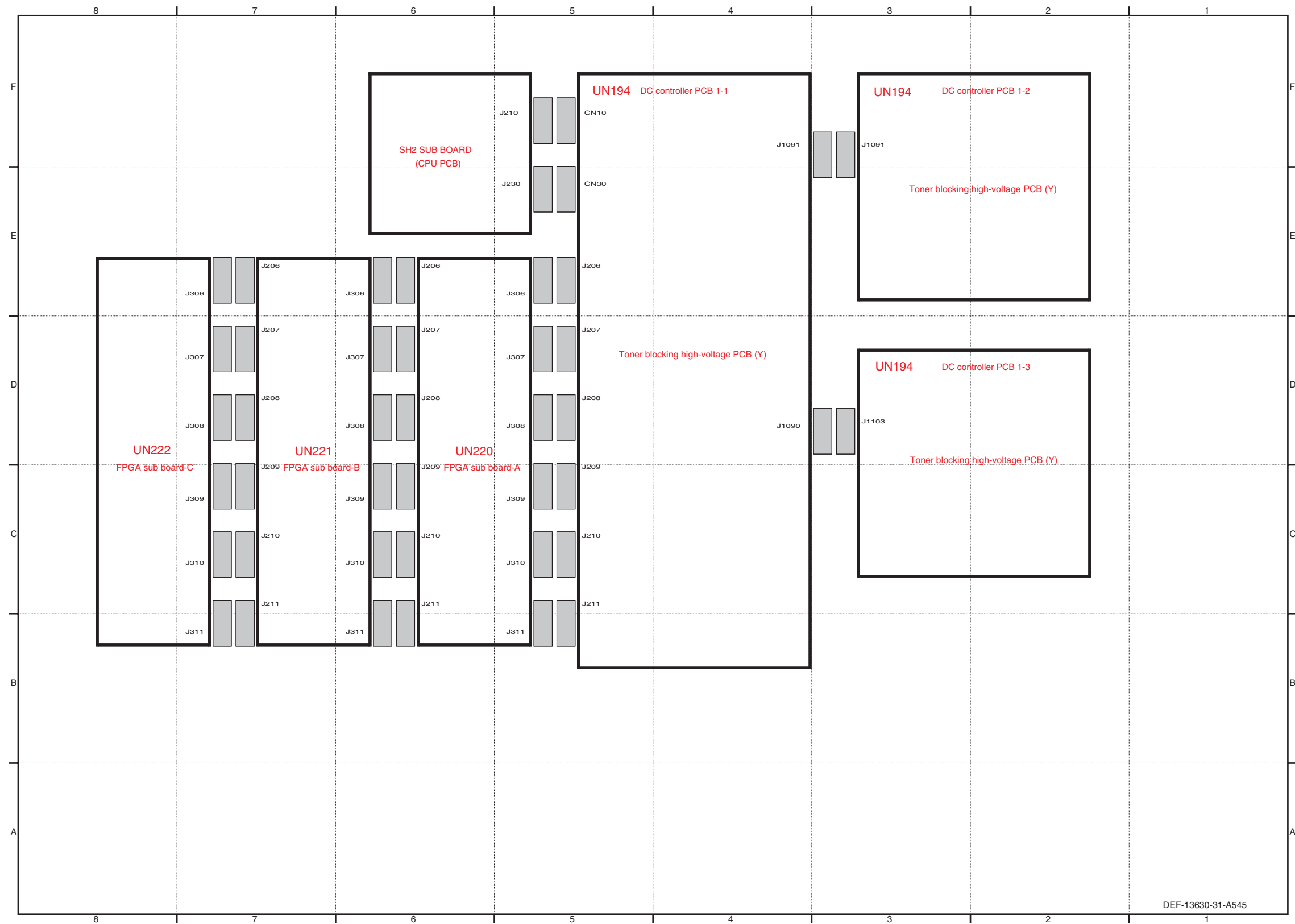


DEF-13630-31-A538

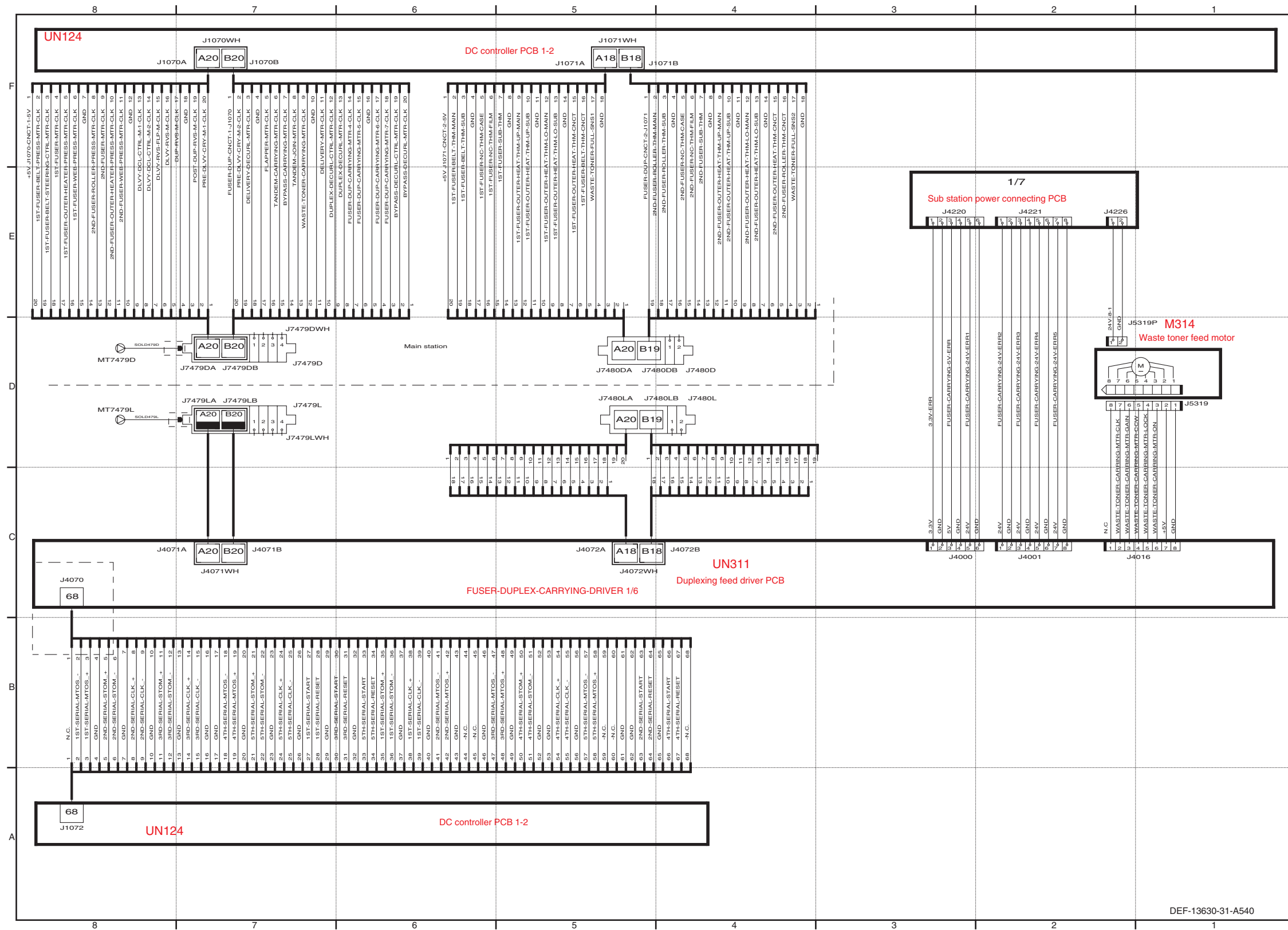
General Circuit Diagram (39/69)

imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000



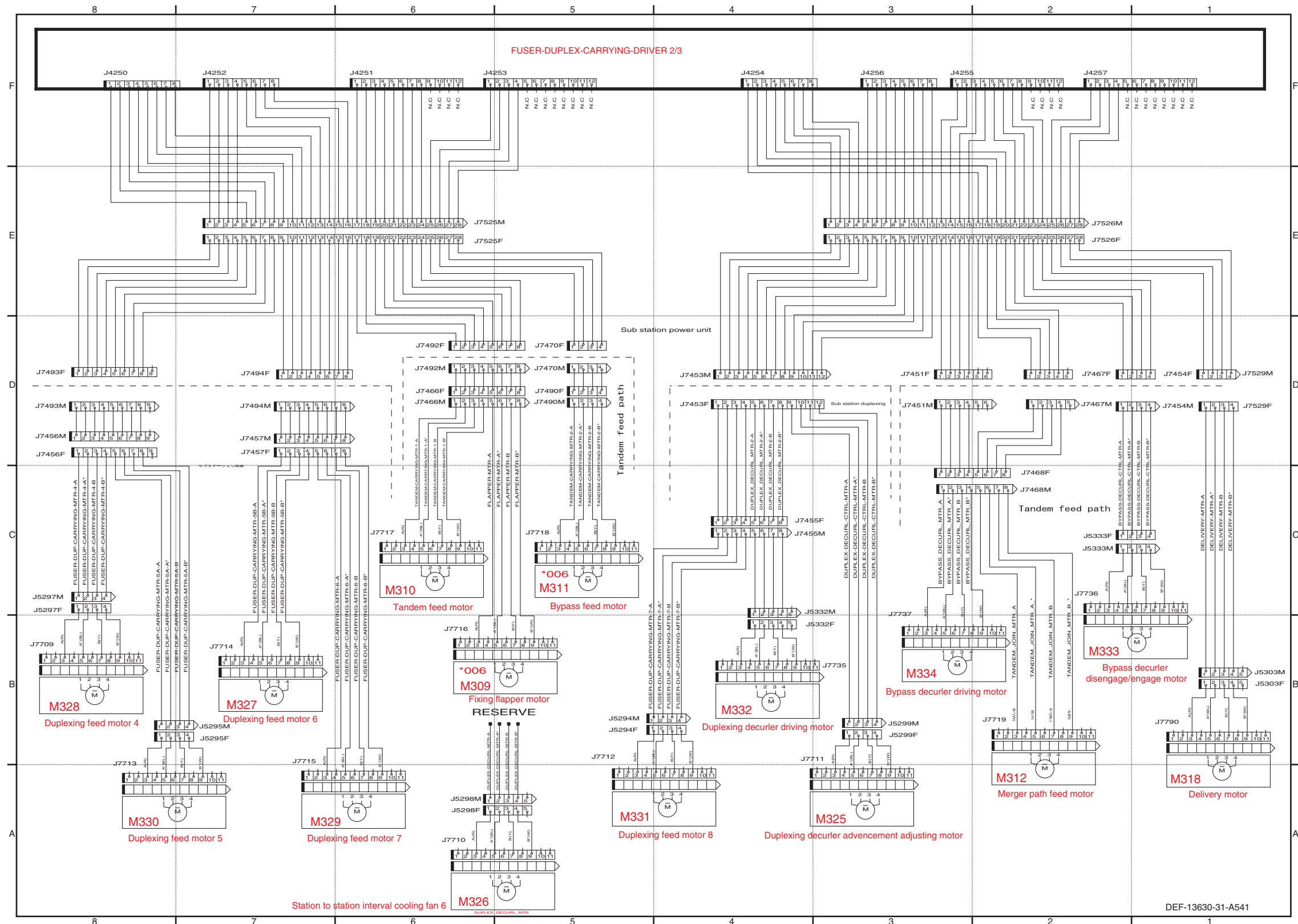


F-2-41

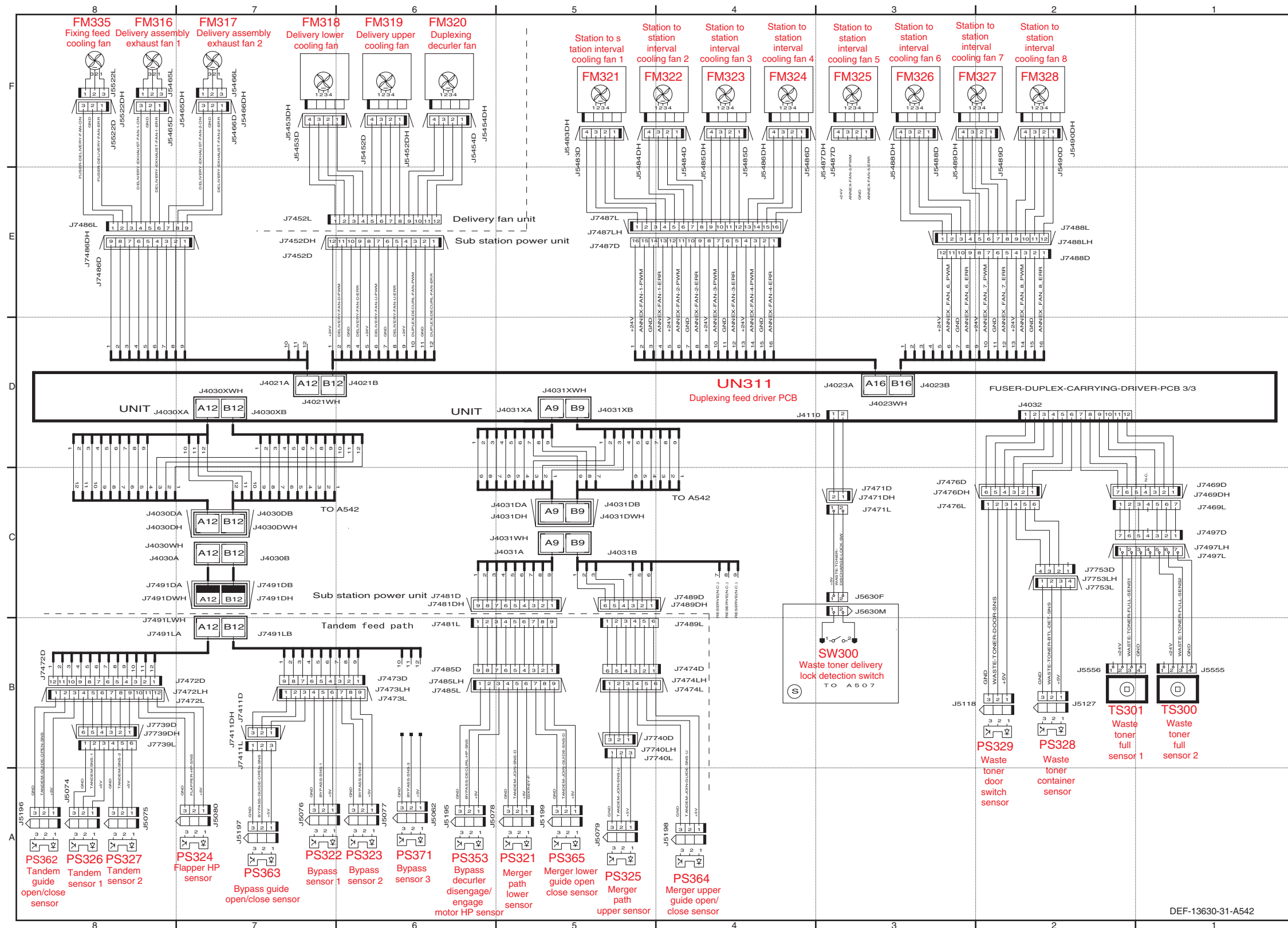


F-2-42

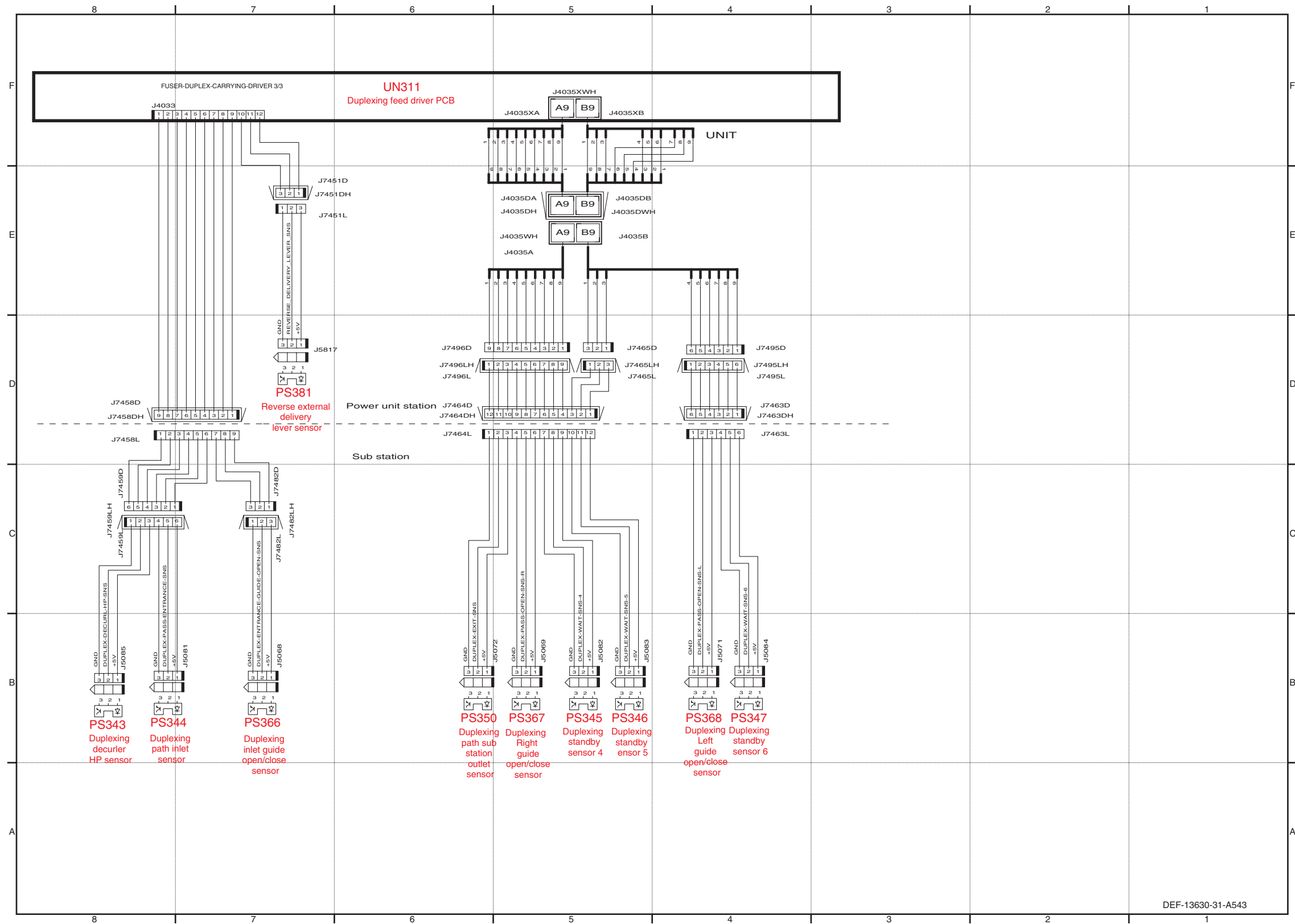
DEF-13630-31-A540



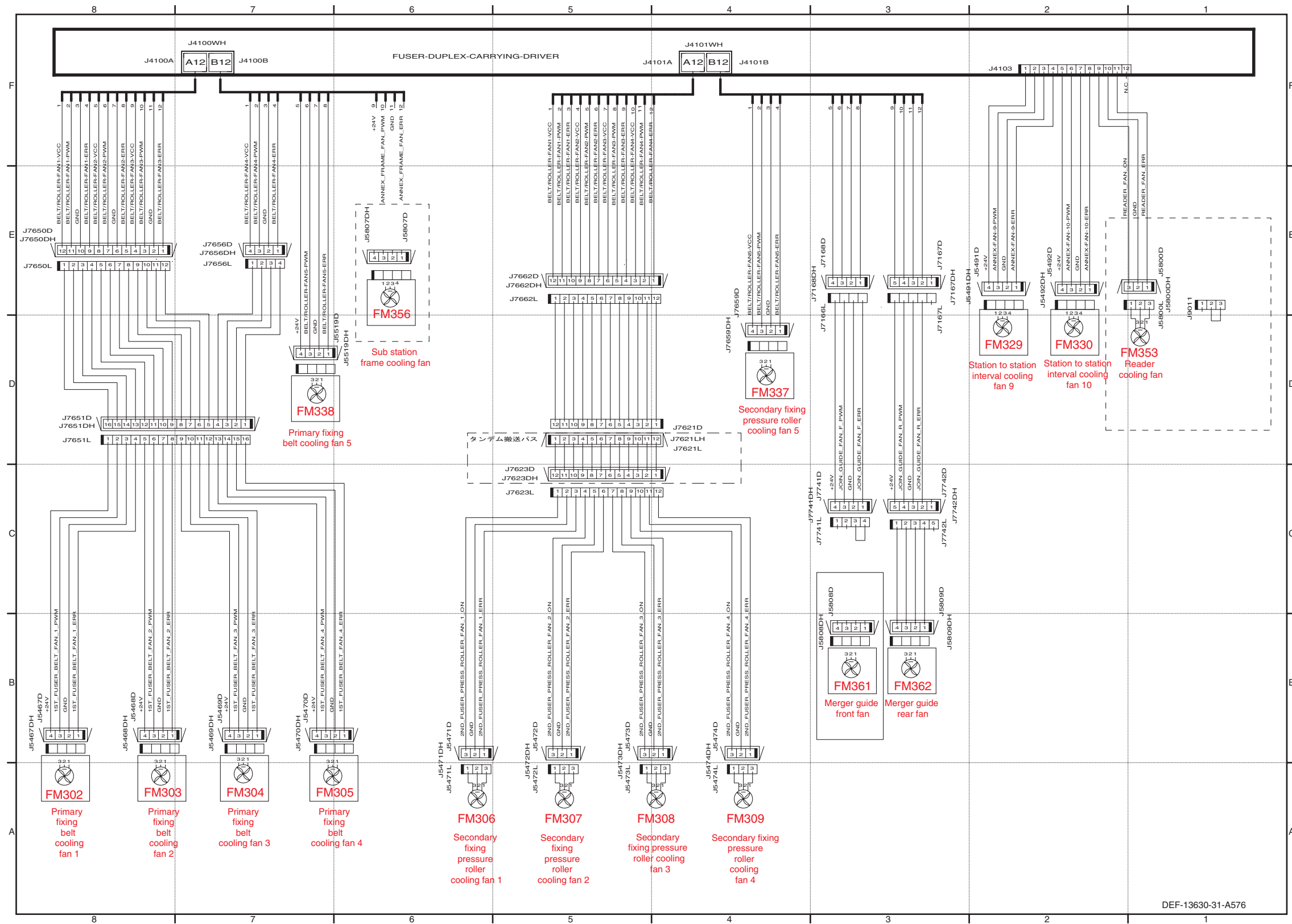
F-2-43



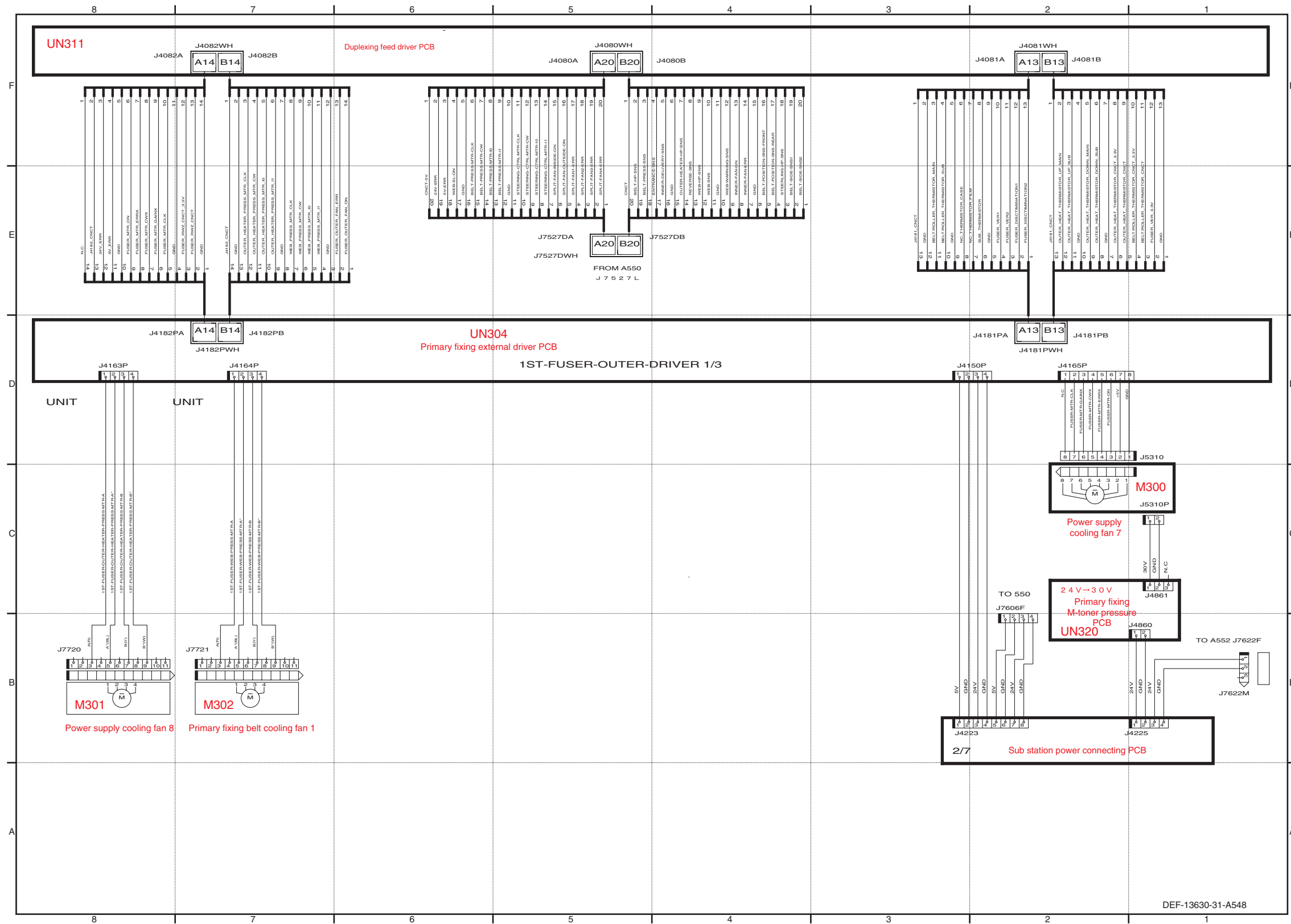
F-2-44

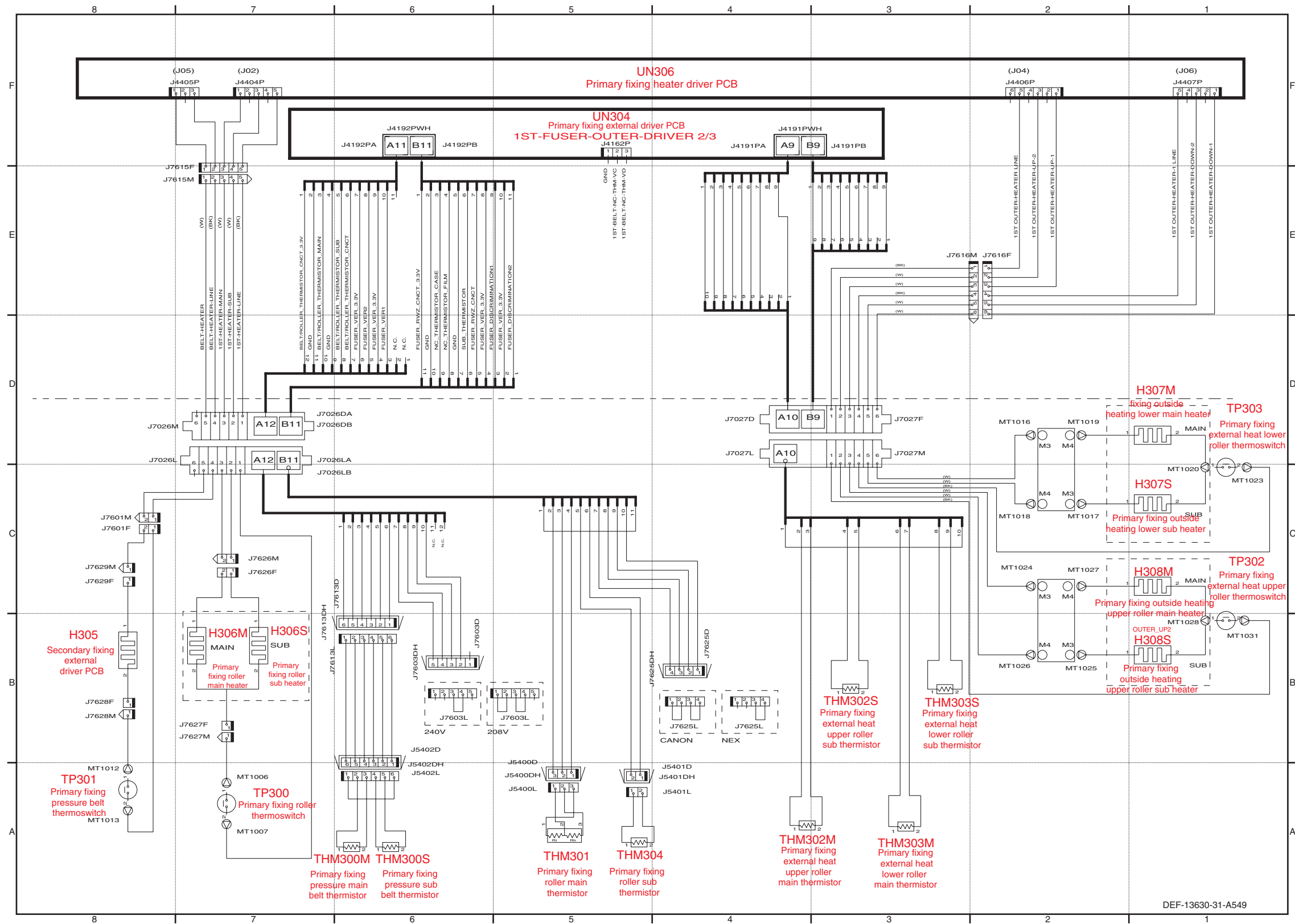


DEF-13630-31-A543



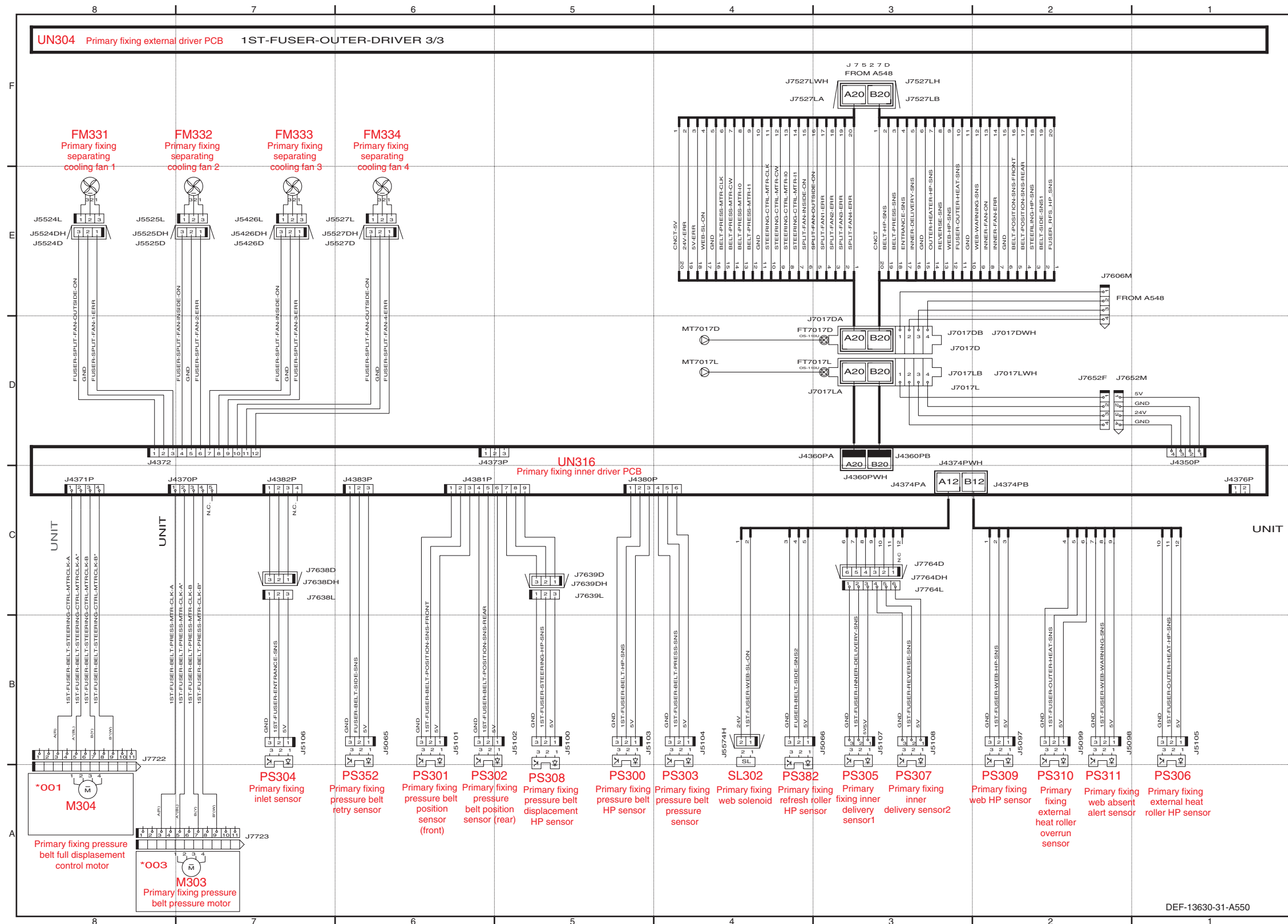
F-2-46





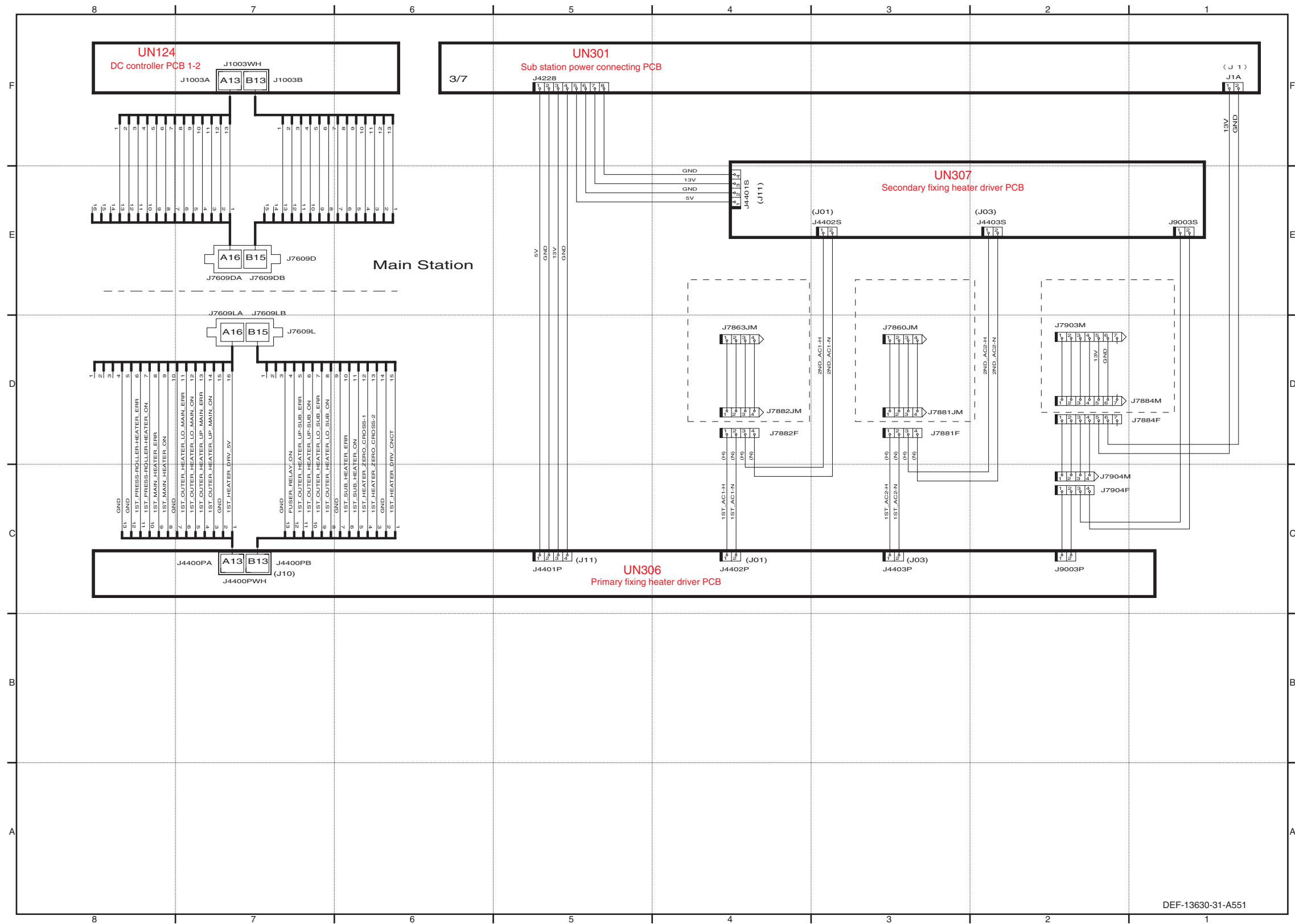
F-2-49

DEF-13630-31-A549

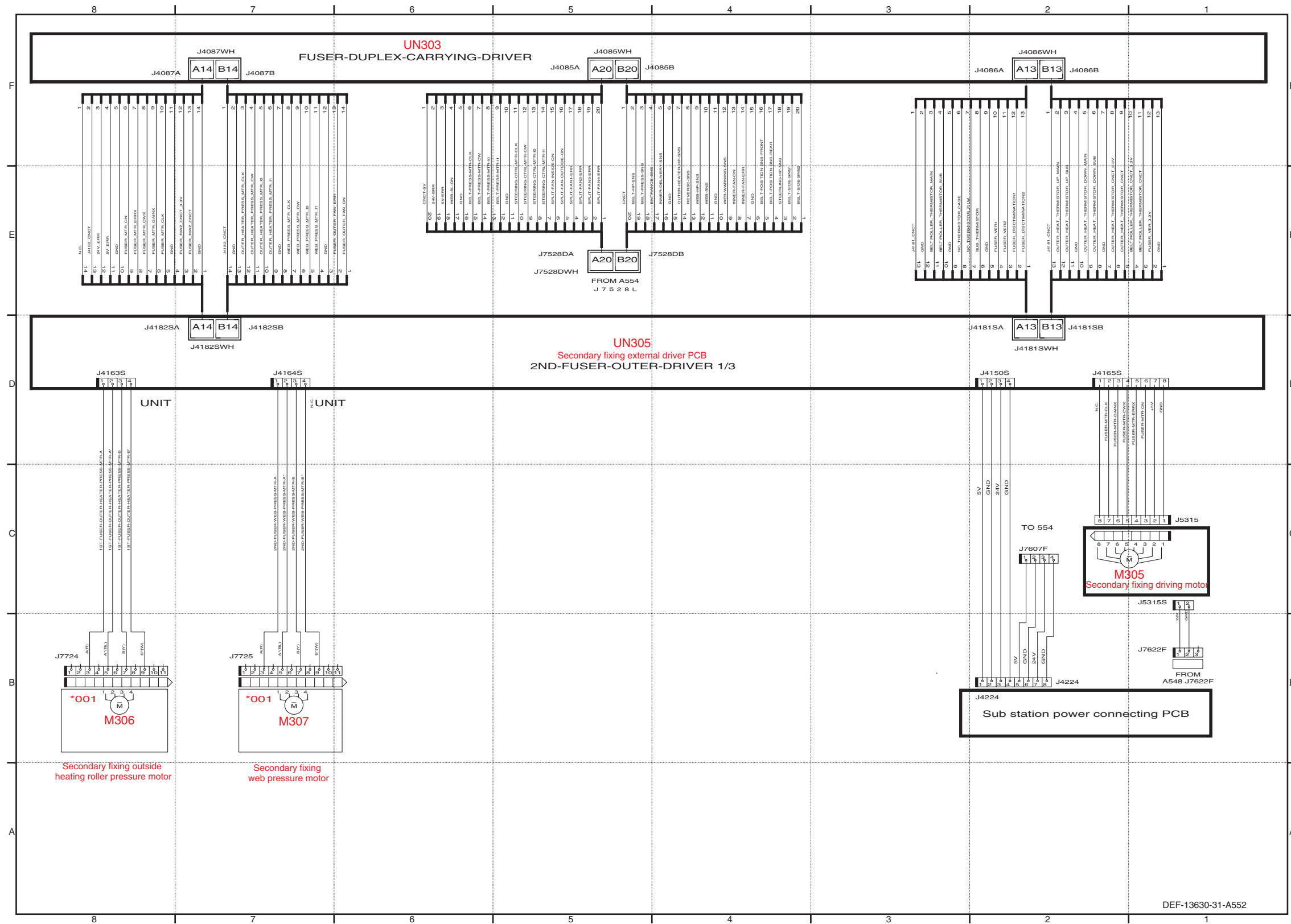


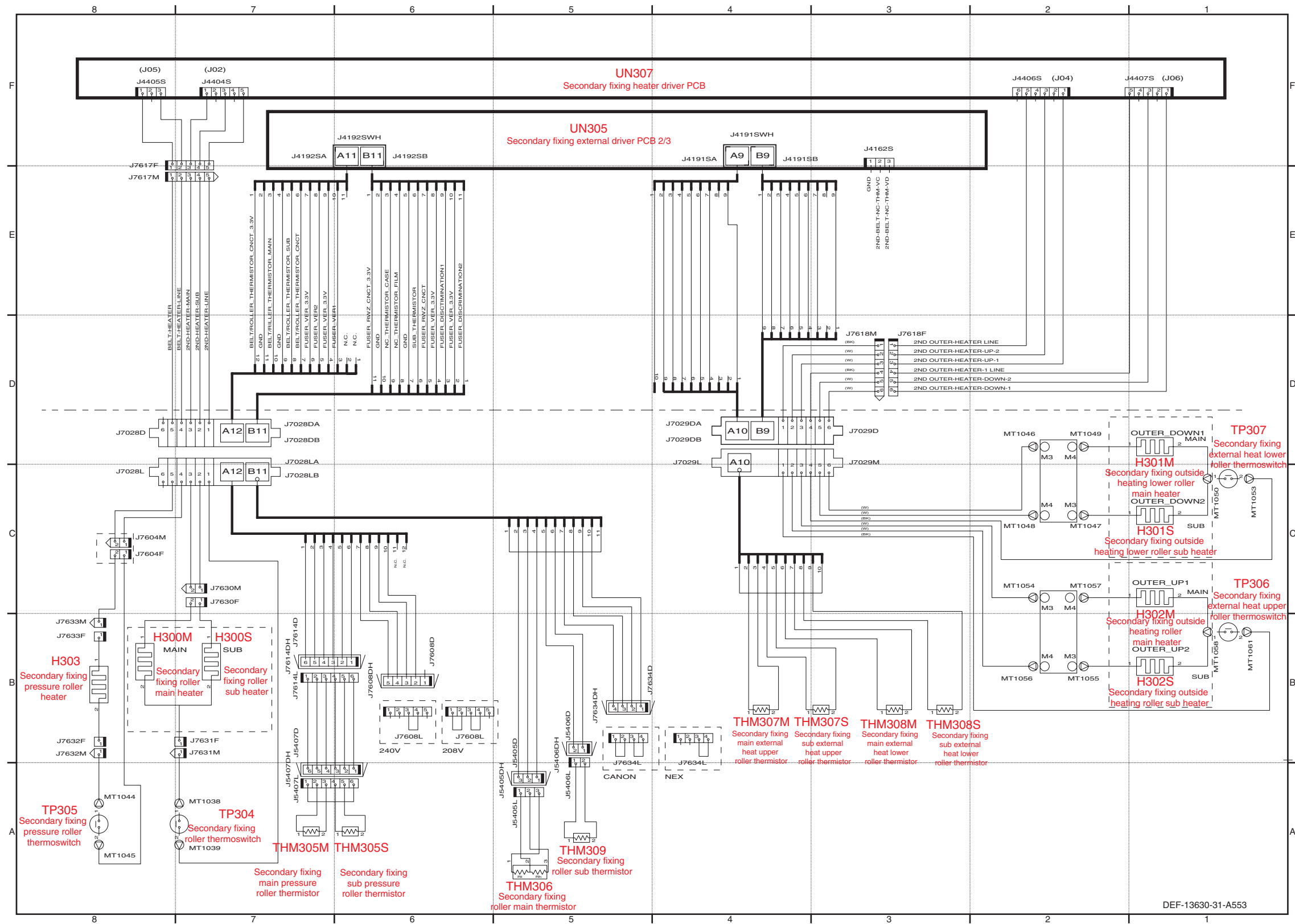
DEF-13630-31-A550

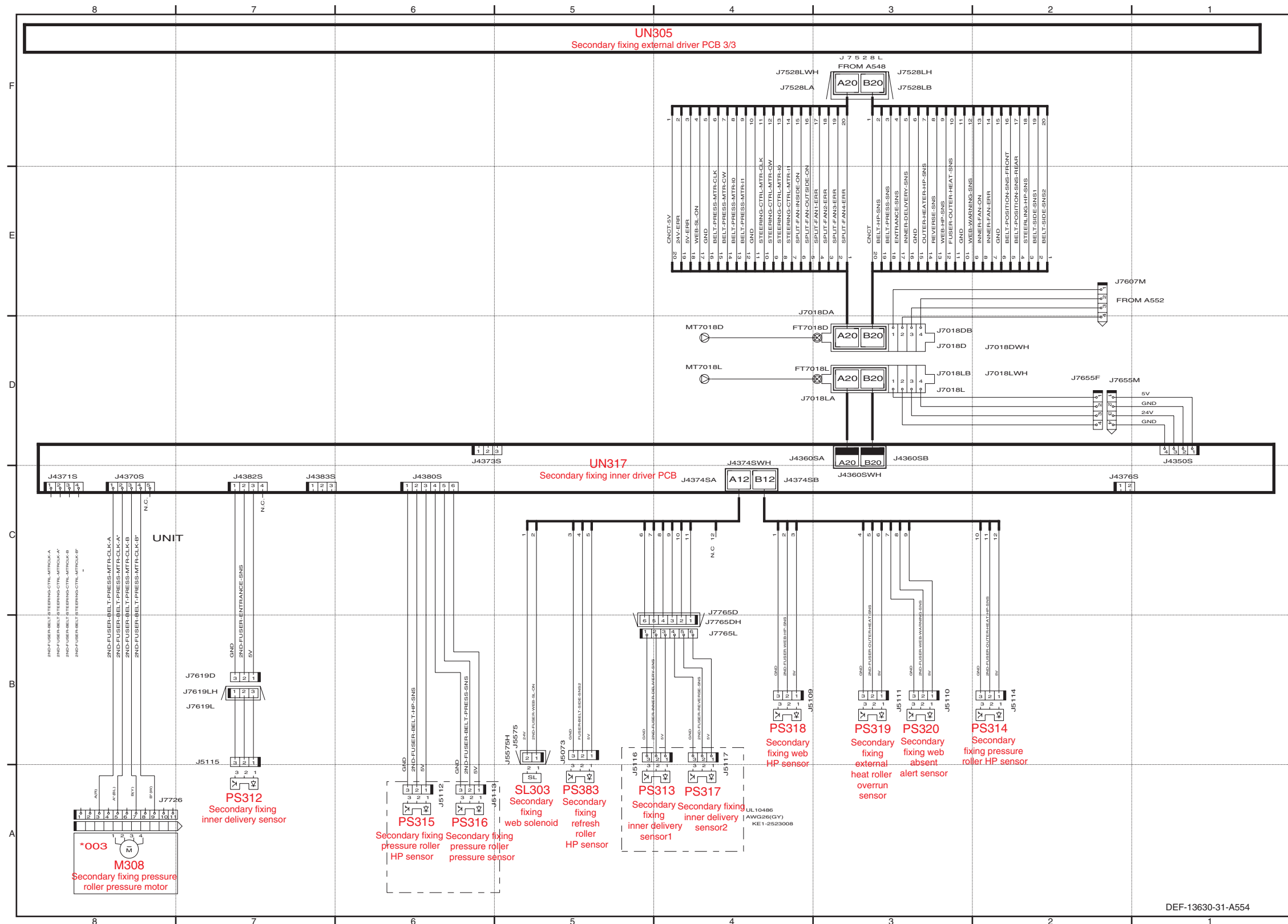
(49/69)



DEF-13630-31-A551

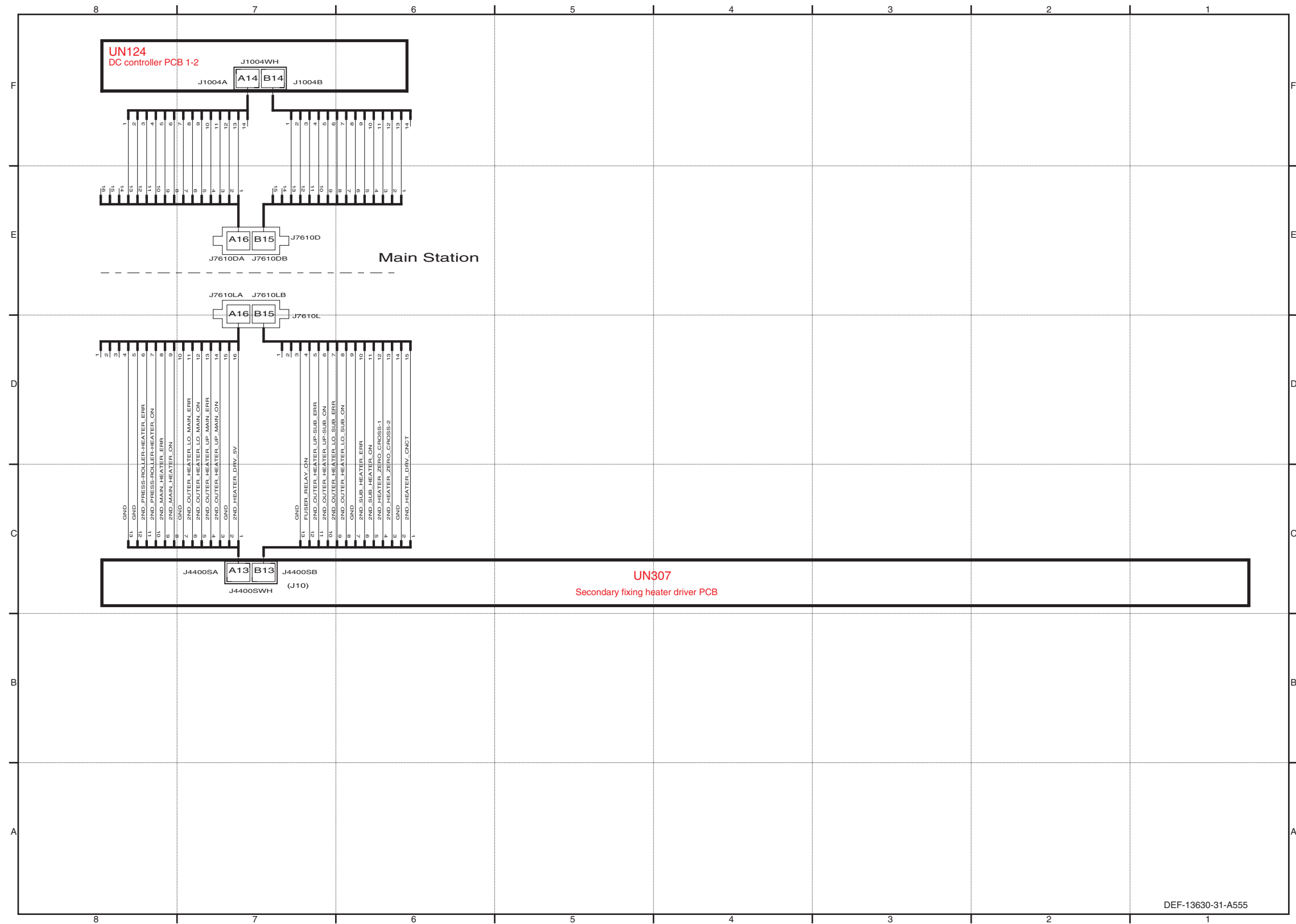




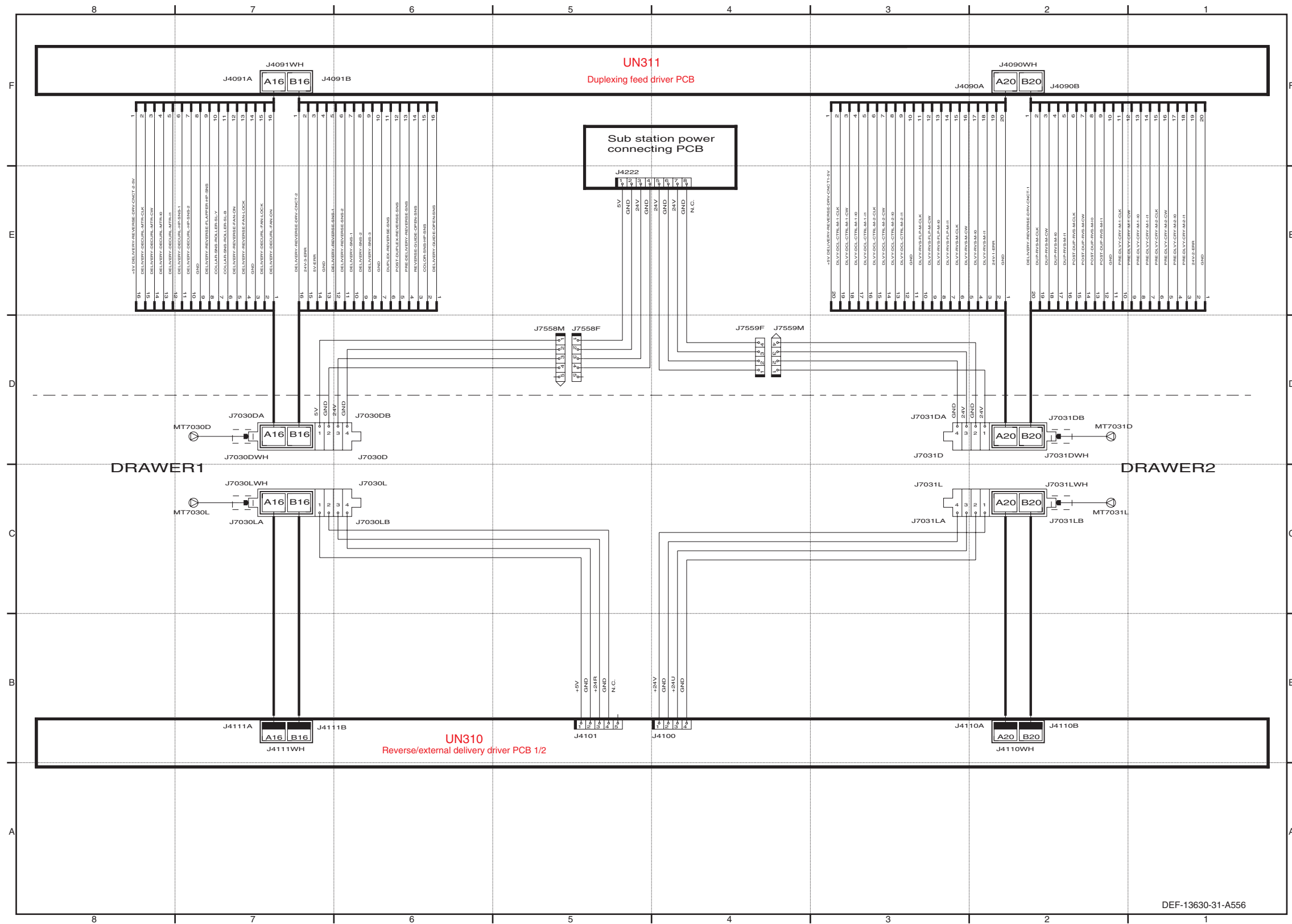


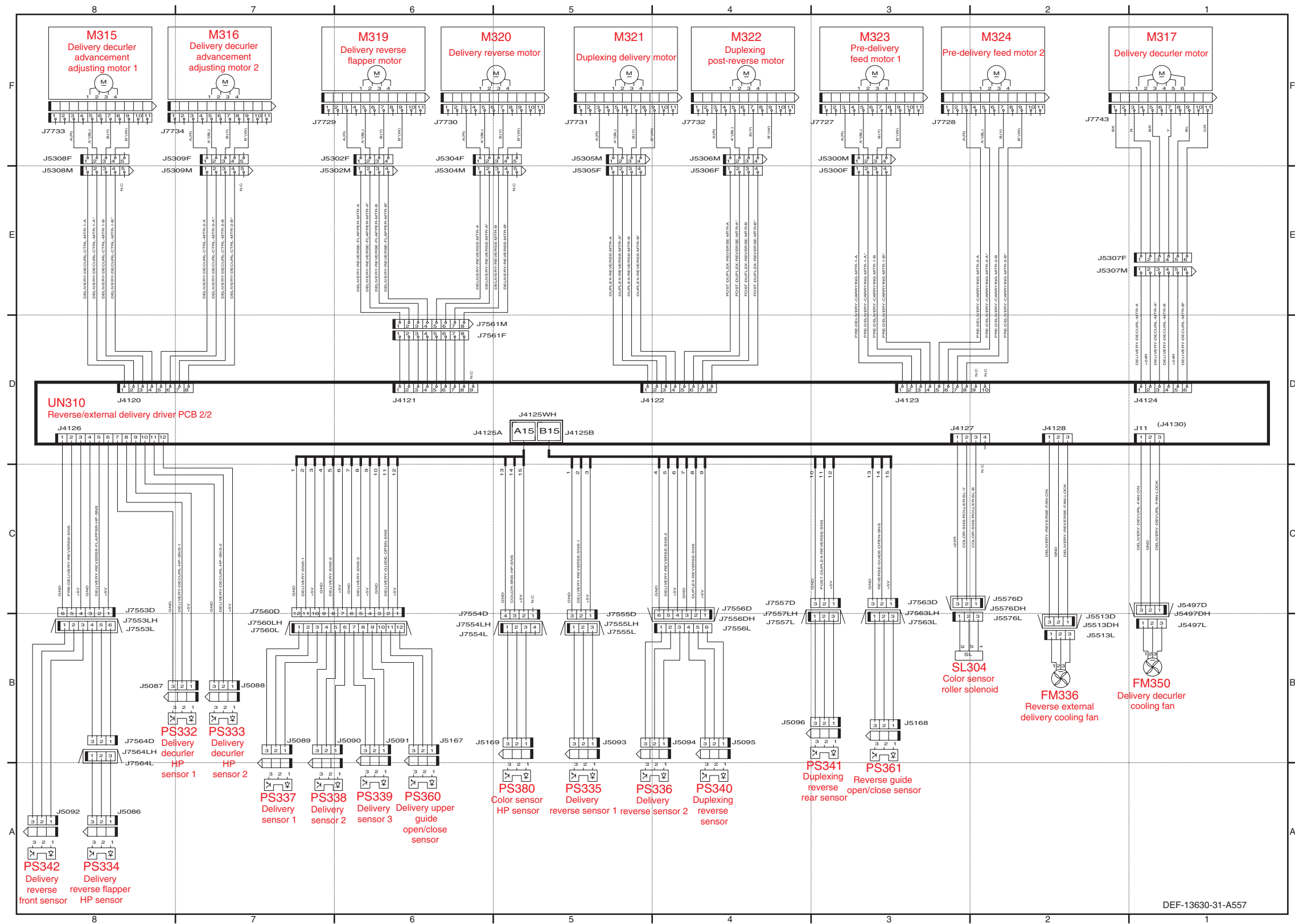
DEF-13630-31-A554

(53/69)

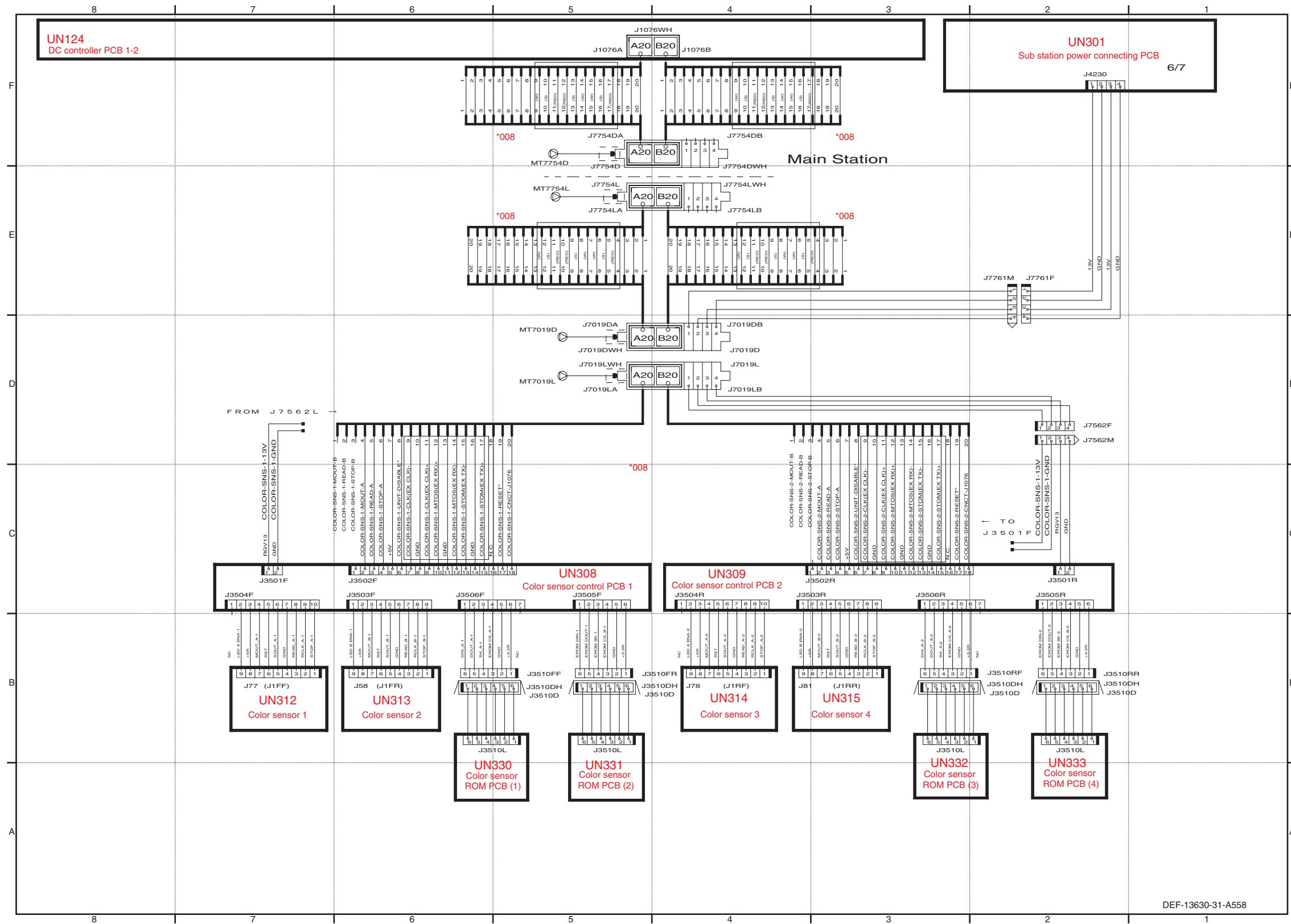


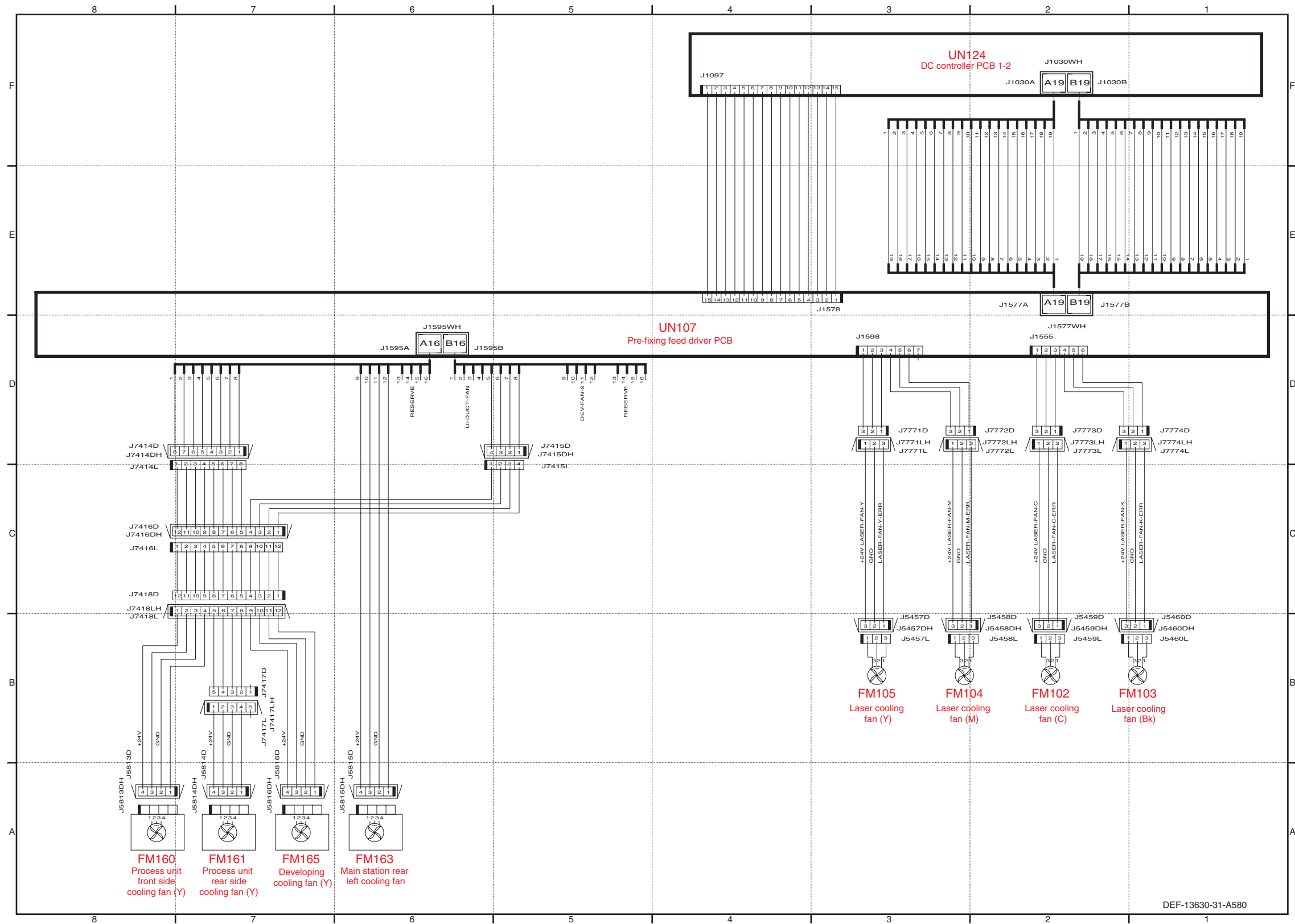
DEF-13630-31-A555





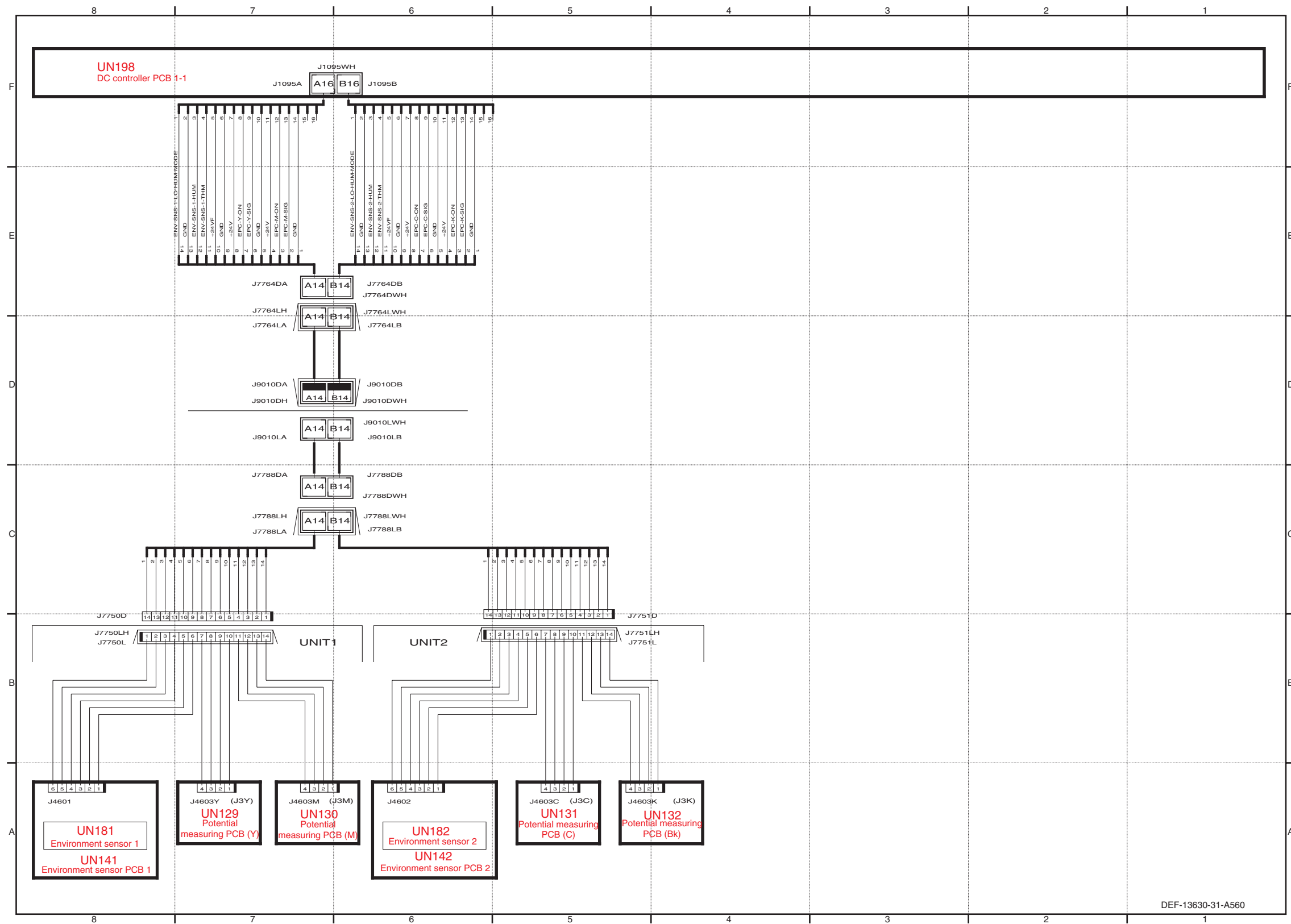
F-2-57



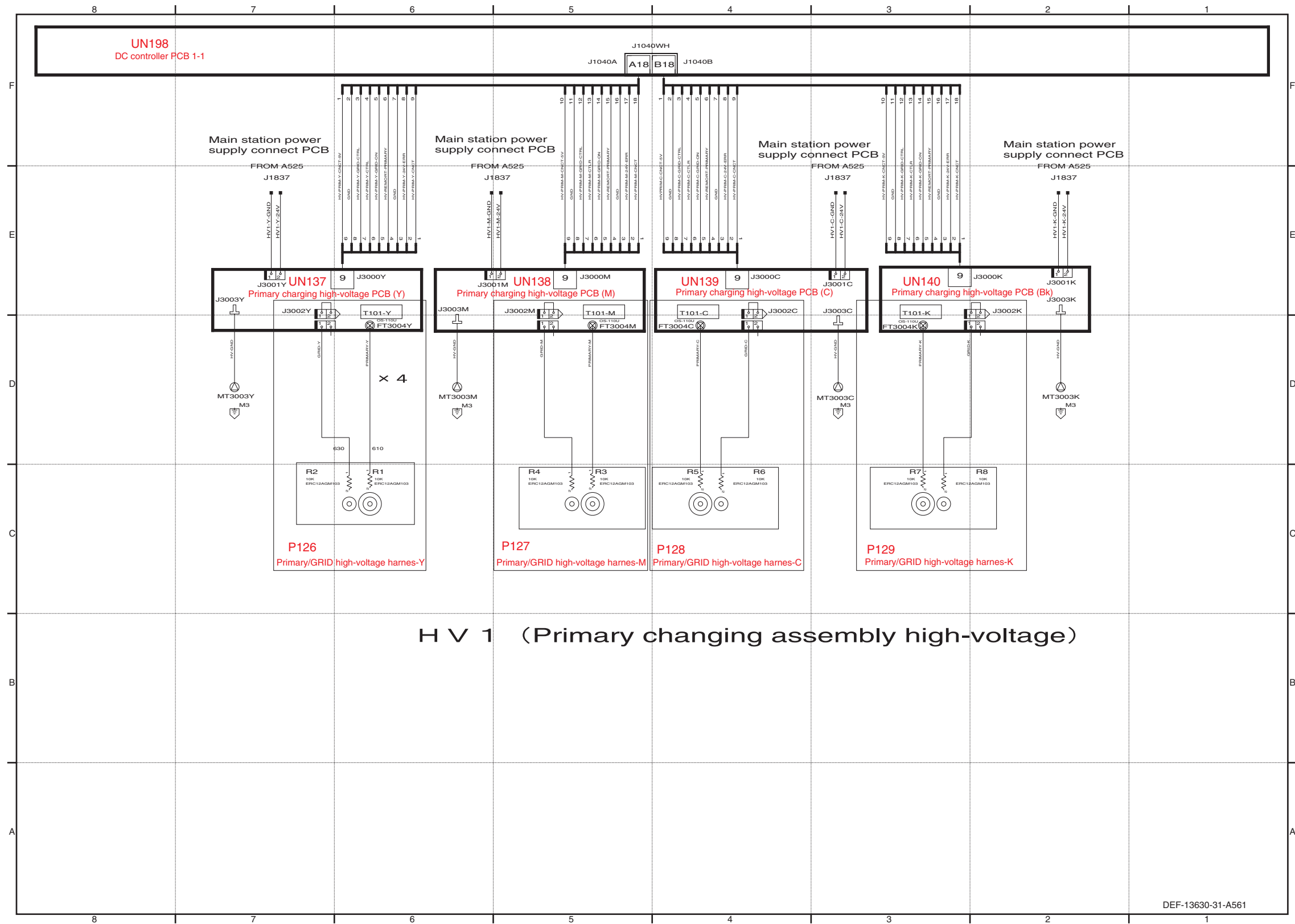


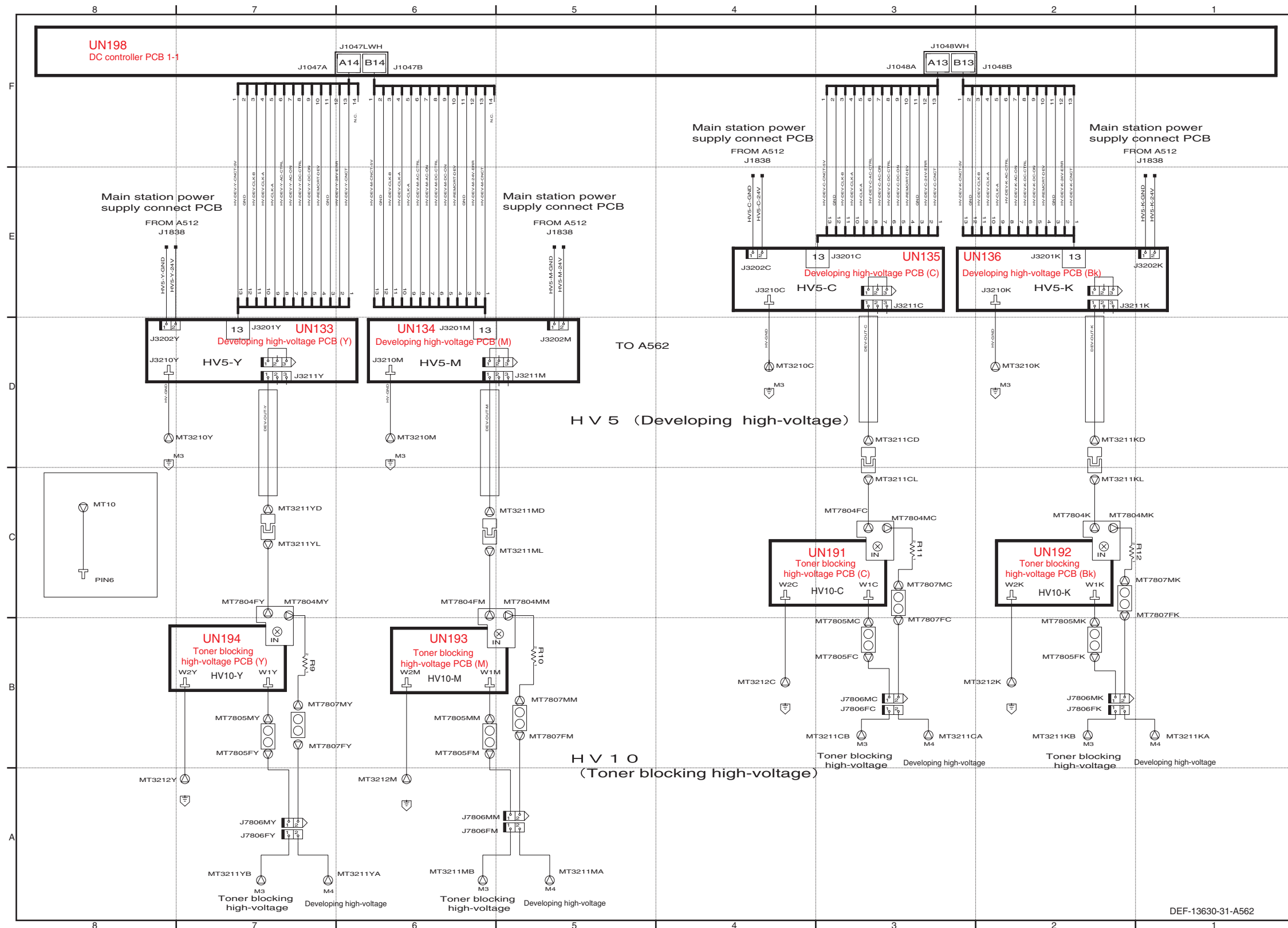
General Circuit Diagram (59/69)

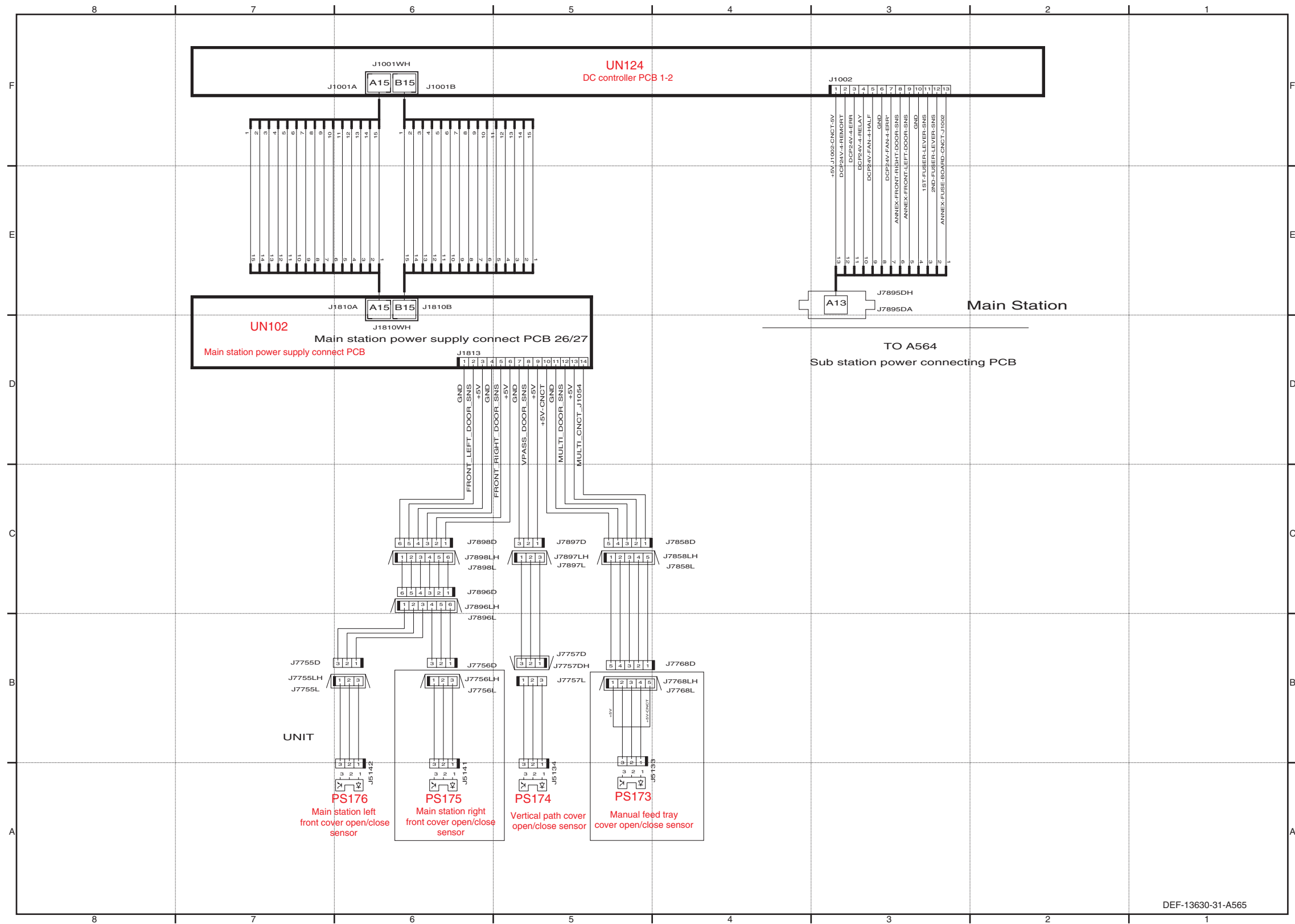
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000



F-2-60



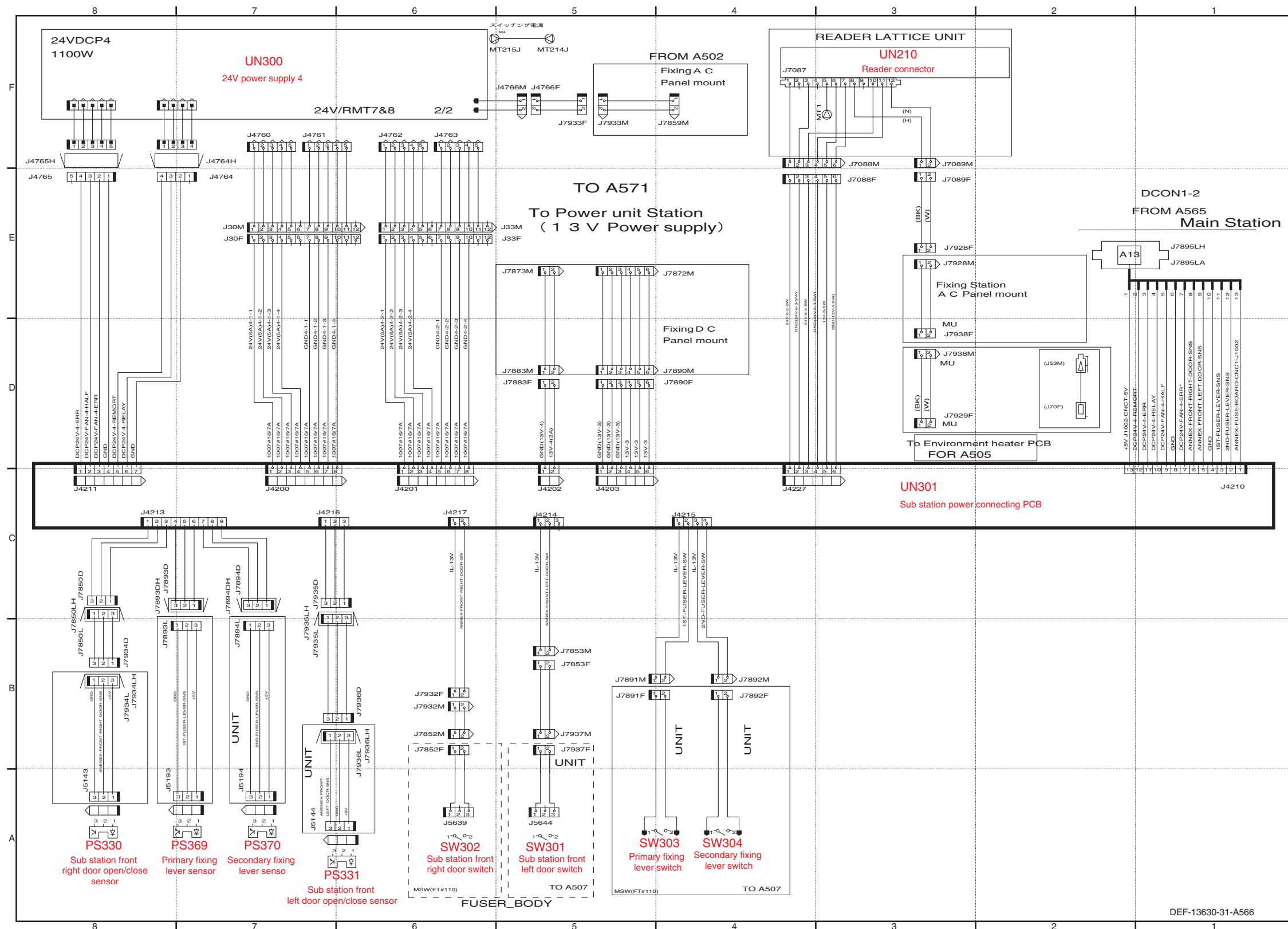




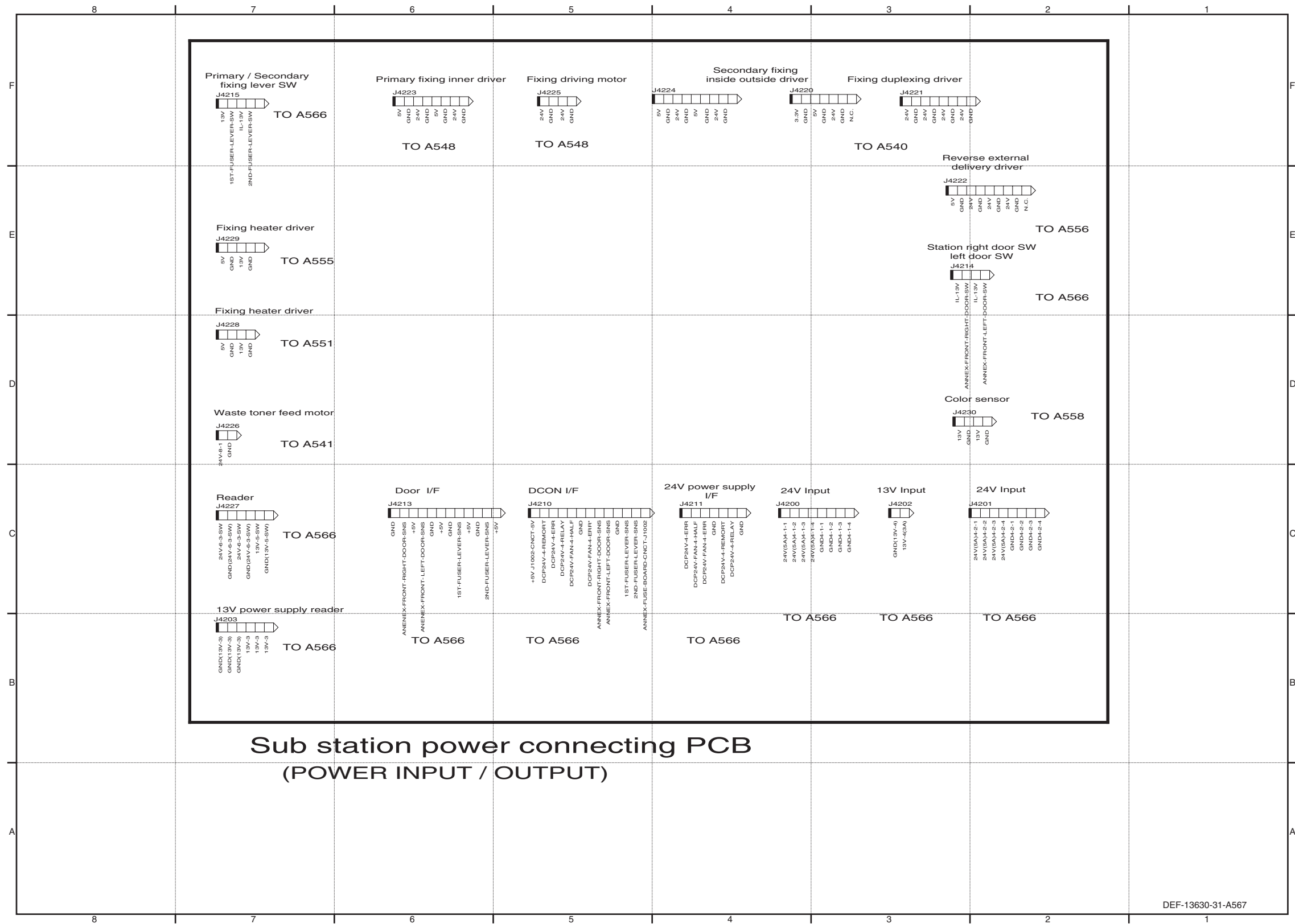
DEF-13630-31-A565

General Circuit Diagram (63/69)

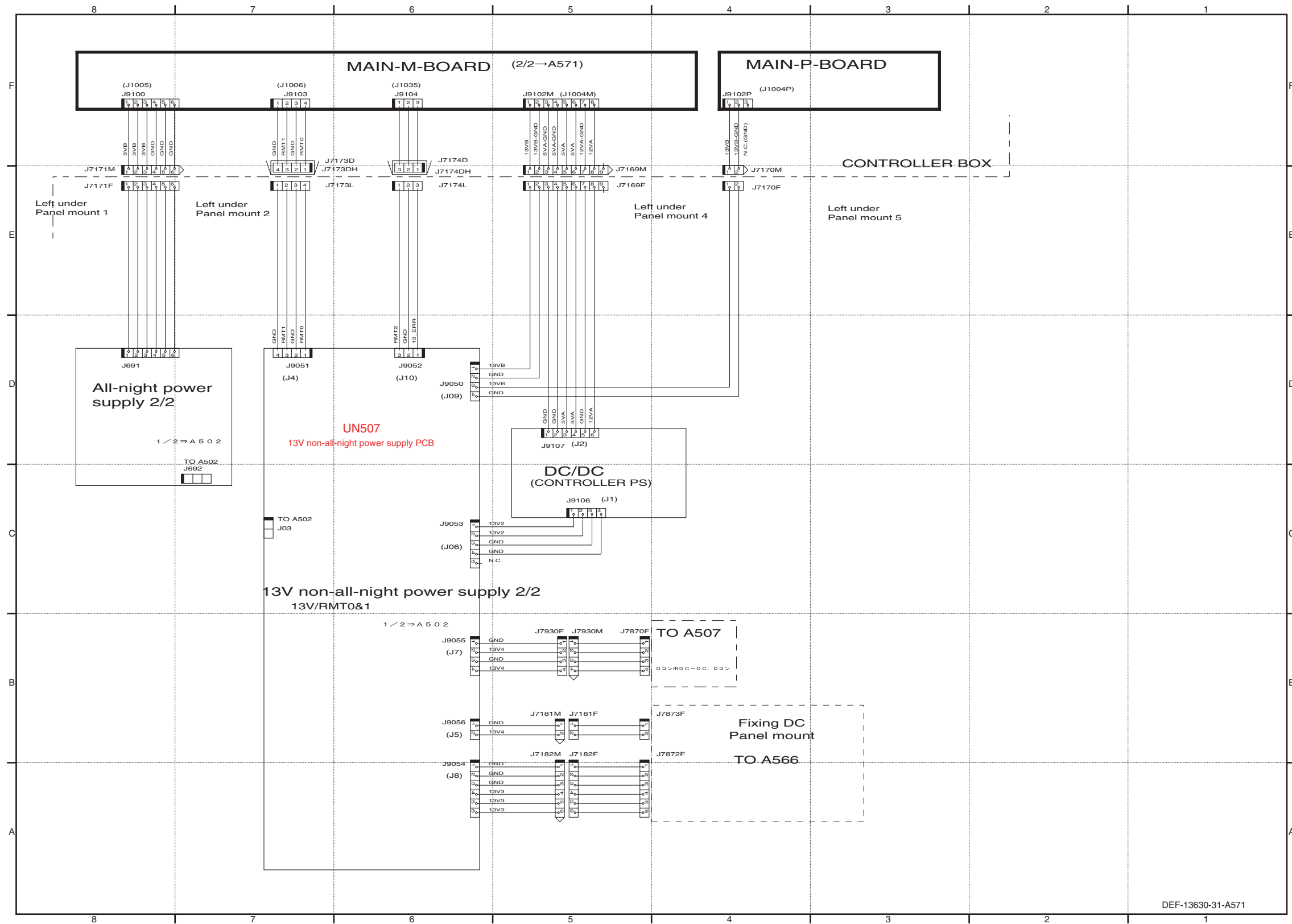
imagePRESS C7000VP / imagePRESS C6000VP / imagePRESS C6000



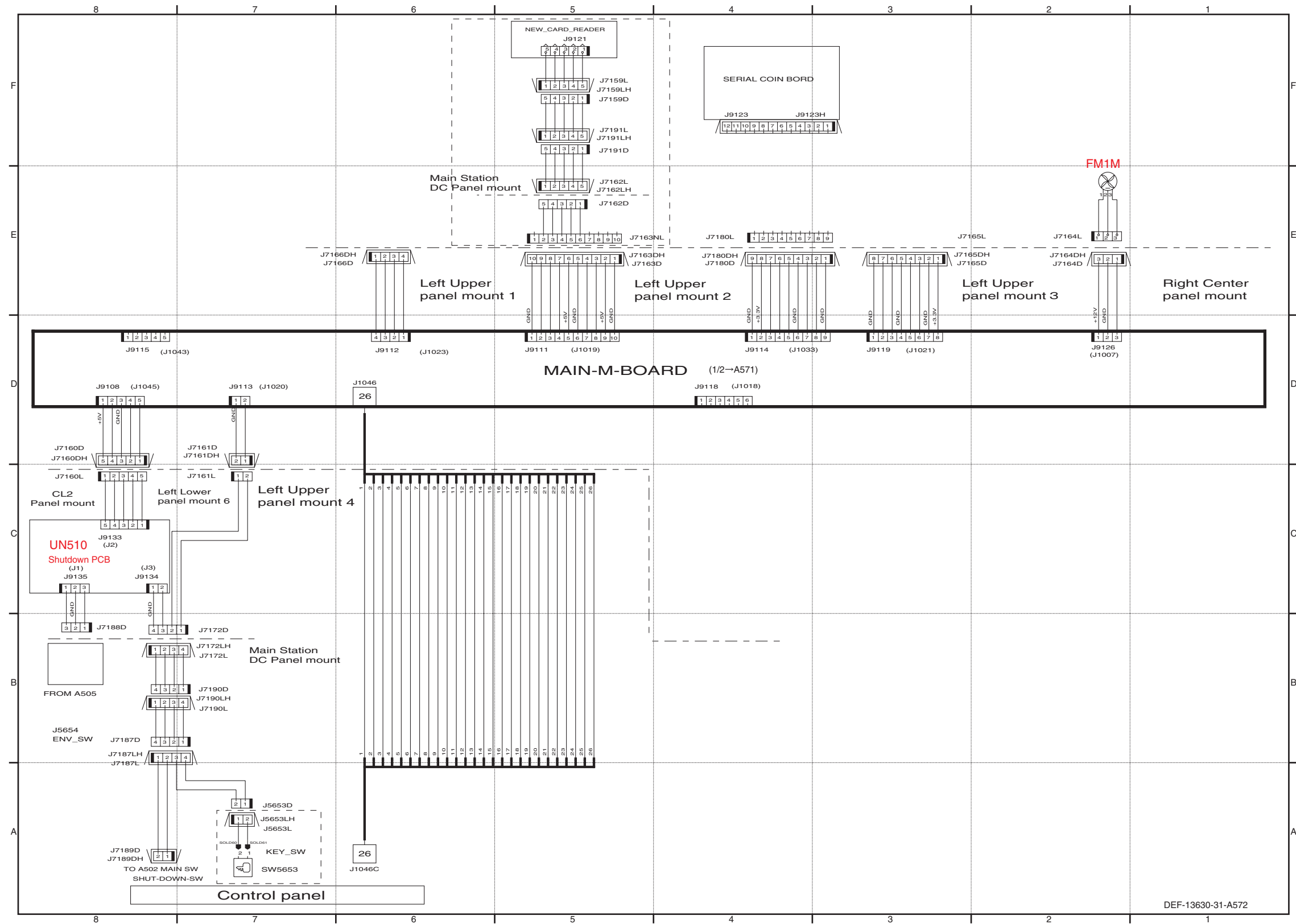
F-2-64



DEF-13630-31-A567

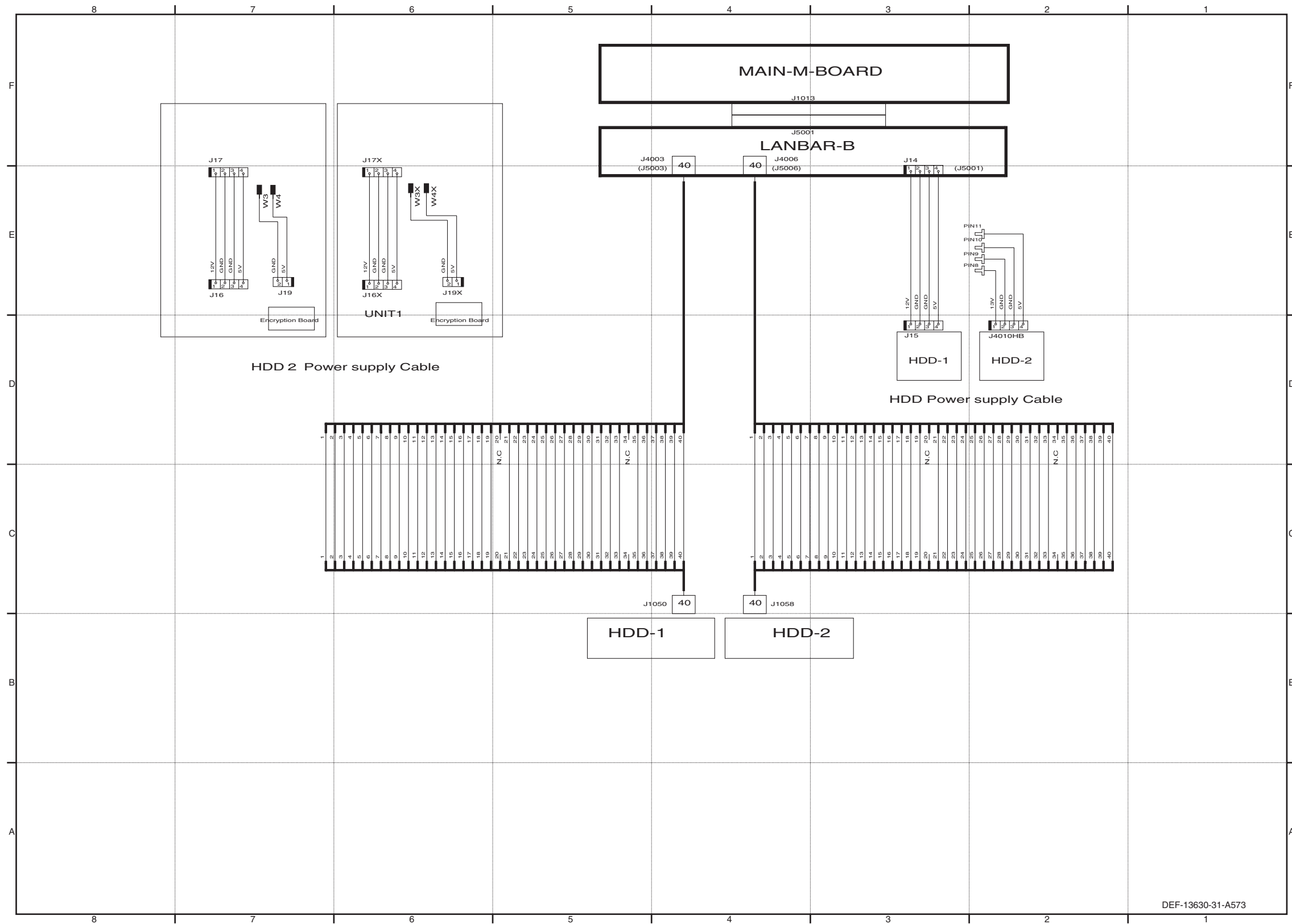


DEF-13630-31-A571

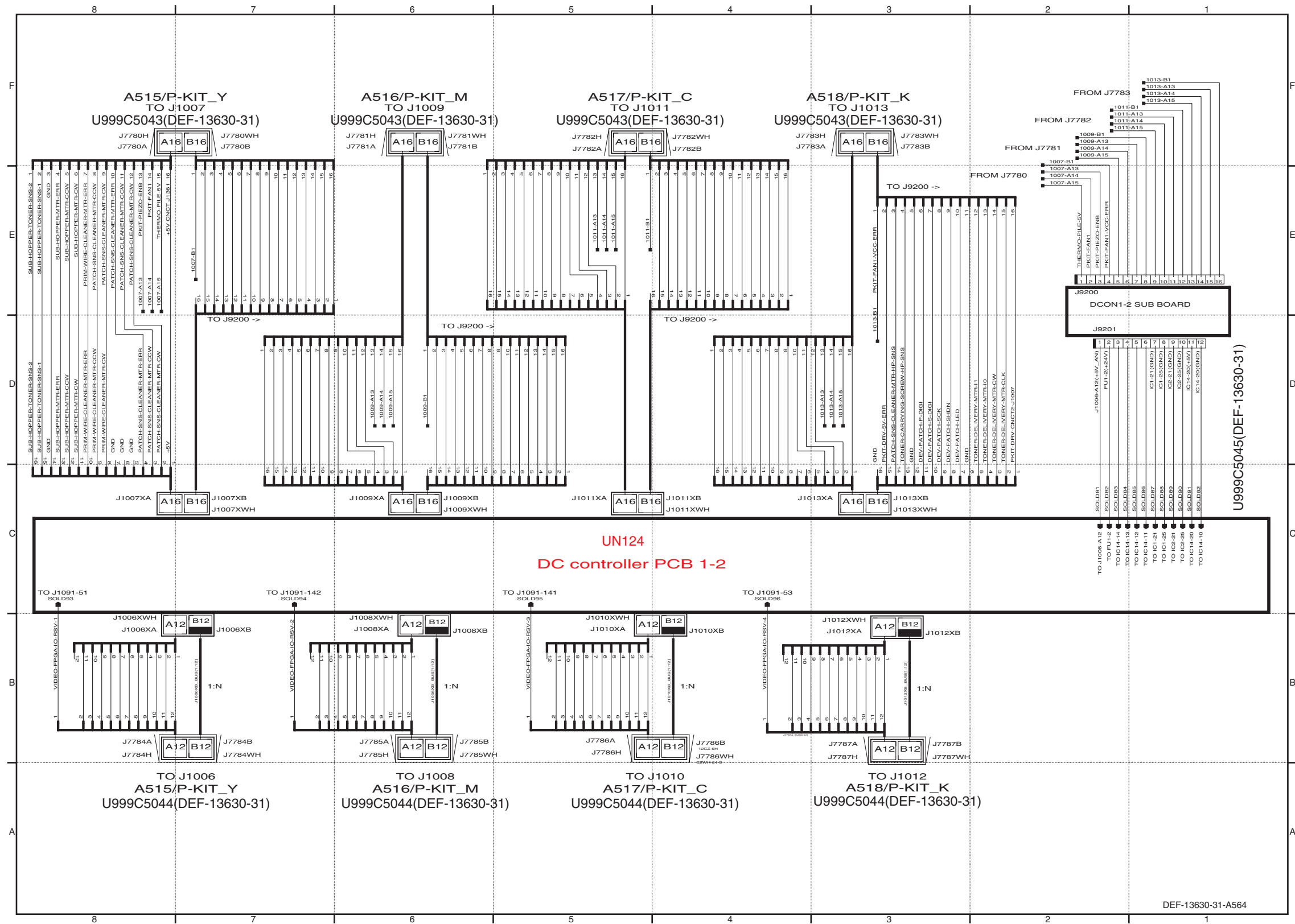


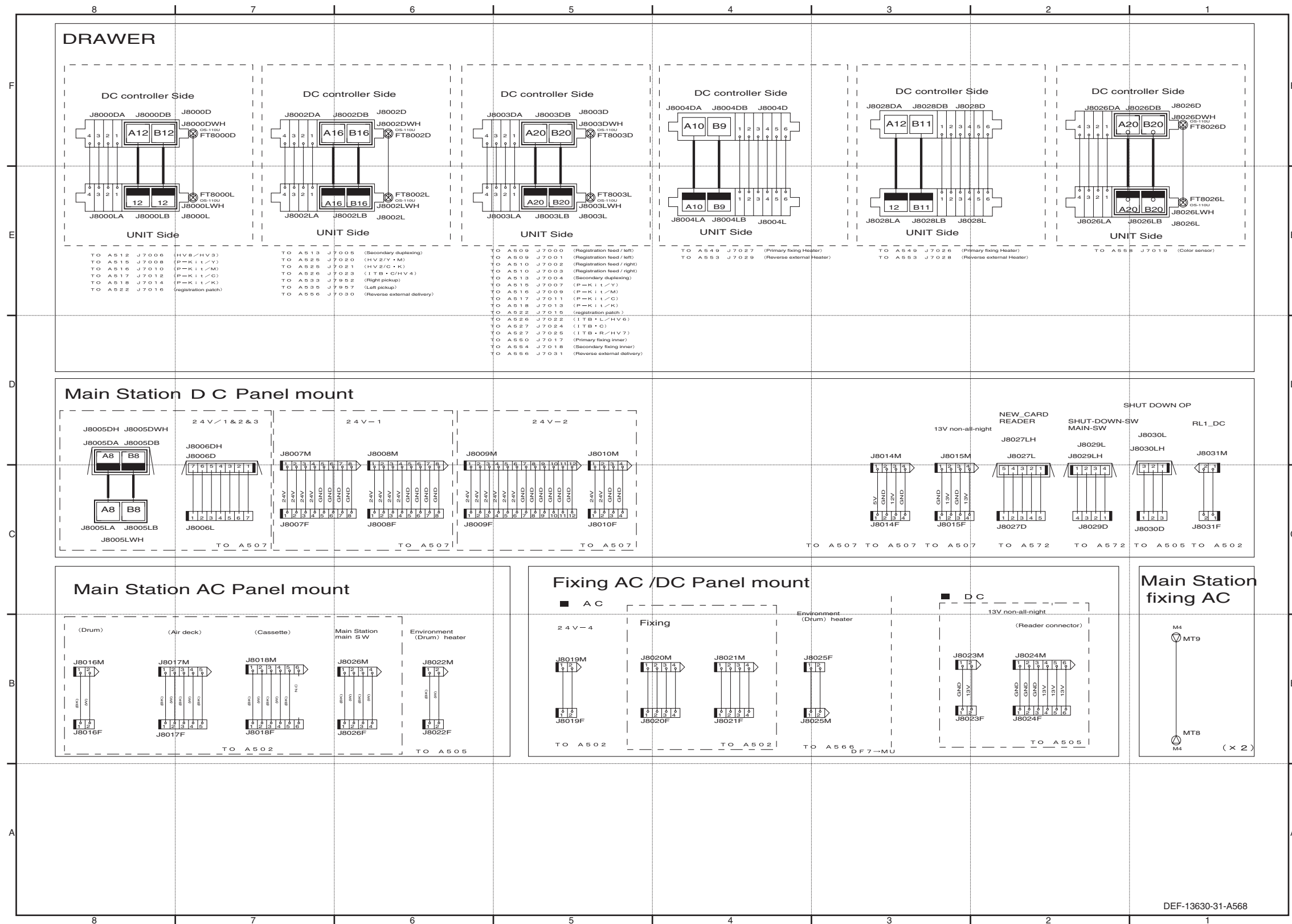
F-2-67

DEF-13630-31-A572



F-2-68





Canon